COSMOGRAPHIE

in foure Bookes

Containing the

CHOROGRAPHIE & HISTORIE

of the whole WORLD, *and all the Principall Kingdomes, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, Thereof.*

By Peter Heylyn

Virgil Aeneid: 3

Quæ regio in terris nostri non plena Laboris

The 2d Edition.

LONDON

Printed for Henry Seile *over against* St Dunstans Church *in* Fleetstreete.

1657.

Rob: Vaughan Sculp:

COSMOGRAPHIE

In Four Books.

Adams 3.65.3

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

Of the whole

WORLD,

And al the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

The second Edition.

Acts 17. 24. 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum, & omnia quæ in eo sunt; fecit ex uno omne genus hominum inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in procem. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Insulæ, insignes Urbes, ad hunc modum se habent.

LONDON,

Printed for *Henry Seile*, and are to be sold at his Shop over against St. *Dunstans Church* in *Fleetstreet*. M. DC. LVII.

94;105

TO THE
READER,
The Author rendreth this Account of his Vndertaking and Performance in the following Work.

IT is a great complaint with many, that they want time, either to undertake great matters, or to accompliſh thoſe they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not ſo much want, as waſte it. *Non parum temporis habemus, ſed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well obſerveth, *Aut malè agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or elſe things impertinent: and then crie out, that we want time convenient to perform thoſe duties, which are expected from us, in our ſeverall places. Nor have we only time enough to ſpend, but ſome time to ſpare; ſome privacies and retreats from buſineſs; ſome breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them, thoſe times of leiſure and receſs, we are to render an Accompt in *Cato's* judgement. *Otii reddendam rationem judicabat* Cato, as we read in *Tullie*. In which Accompt, as all men generally are concerned, ſo am I intereſſed therein as much as any. For being by the unhappineſs of my Deſtiny, or the infelicity of the times, deprived of my preferments, and diveſted of my Miniſteriall Function, (as to the ordinary and publique exerciſe thereof) I cannot chooſe but ſay I have leiſure enough; the opportunity of ſpending more idle hours (if I were ſo minded) than I ever expected or deſired. And though perhaps I could have ſpent thoſe times of leiſure, which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my ſelf, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did ſo over-ballance me, that I was willing to do ſomewhat which might witneſs to enſuing times, how I had paſſed away thoſe hours, and employed that leiſure. And when I was conſidering of ſome particulars within the compaſs of my power, and anſwerable to that ſmall ſtock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me and diſpoſed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requeſted by ſome friends of no common quality, to review my *Geographie*; to make it more complete and uſefull to an Engliſh Reader: My vacancy from buſineſs, uſed by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when firſt made, with neglect enough, my deſuetude from thoſe younger Studies, my great want of Books, the ſad complexion of the times, and the unhandſom entertainment which my endeavours for the publick had lately met with, ſeeming ſufficient to diſſwade me from the undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to

enjoy my own; or to employ my self in order to a *publick* service, when not alone my private fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church was destroyed and dissipated. But afterwards being pressed unto it by some Members of Parliament, whom I found loath to be denyed, and by some others of great rank, but such different *interesses*, that I wondred how they could all center upon the same *Proposall*: I thought it at the last a more *Christian* duty to satisfie the honest desires of so many men, than to sacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredness, to which I had intended to devote my self. So I resolved to venture on it, though well I saw that my condition in so doing might be resembled unto that of the *Israelites* in the Land of *Egypt*: of whom the *Task-masters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denyed them their accustomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My case in this not much unlike to that of the Duke of *Alva*. Who being under the displeasure of the King of *Spain* in quality of a prisoner, without the least assurance of recovering the Kings favour, or his own liberty, and yet employed in that Conjuncture, for the conquest of *Portugal*; was wont to say, *That he was sent to conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on.*

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befell me in the moneth of *January*, An. 1640. at what time it had been my ill fortune to suffer under some misapprehensions which had been entertain'd against me, and to be brought before the *Committee for the Courts of Justice*, on the complaint of Mr. *Prynne*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confess, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but most despightfully reviled and persecuted with excessive both noise and violence, by such as thronged about the doors of that *Committee*, to expect the issue: it being as naturall to many weak and inconsiderate men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at those they do not know, and to accompany each other in those kinds of clamors. And though I had the happinesse to come off clear, without any censure, and to recover by degrees amongst knowing men, that estimation which before had been much endangered, yet such as took up matters upon trust and hear-say, looked on me as a person forfeited, and marked out for ruin. Amongst others, I was then encountred in my passage from *Westminster* to *White-hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thrusting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his shoulder on me in a scorning manner, said in an hoarse voice these words, *Geographie is better than Divinity*; and so passed along. Whether his meaning were, that I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geographie* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But sure I am, I have since thought very often of it, and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on those younger studies, in which I was resolved to have dealt no more: and thereto, in the Preface to my *Microcosm*, had obliged my self.

And it is possible enough, that in respect of that generall promise, I may lie under the censure of inconstancy, and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had solemnly declared in the aforesaid *Preface*, that the Reader *should not fear any further inlargements, which might make him repent his* (then) *present Markets; that it had received my last hand, and that from thenceforth, I would look upon it as a Stranger only.* But it was meant withall, and expressed accordingly, unlesse it were for the *amending of such Errors, of which by the strength of mine own judgement, or any ingenuous information, I should be convicted.* And *Errors* I must needs say, I have found so many on this last perusall, and those not only *verball*, but *materiall* too; as did not only free me from that *Obligation*, but did *oblige* me to a further *Review* thereof. For being written in an age, on which the pride of youth and self-opinion might have some predominancies, I thought it freer from mistakes than I since have found it: And those mistakes, by running through eight Editions (six of them without my perusall or super-vising) so encreased and multiplyed, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in case the importunity of friends had not enforced me, in a manner, upon this Employment, the necessity of consulting my own fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me to succeeding times, would have perswaded me in the end to do somewhat in it. Which though the last, was not the least of those inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this present Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuously laid down the reasons which did induce, though not

not incourage me, unto this performance: It is now fit I ſhould declare what I have done in it, and what the Reader may expect from ſo great inlargements. And firſt the Reader is to know, that my deſign originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a *Review*, to purge it of the *Errors* which it had contracted, and not ſo much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more ſeriouſly conſidered of it, I found ſufficient reaſon to change that purpoſe, to make it new both in form and matter, and to preſent it to the world with all thoſe advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would the benefit be which might from thence redound to thoſe who ſhould pleaſe to read it: And I would willingly ſo fain comply with all expectations, that the ſhort Taper of my life ſhould give light to others in the conſuming of it ſelf; *Non nobis ſolùm nati ſumus*, may well become a *Chriſtians* mouth, though an Heathen ſpake it. But if all expectations be not ſatisfied in the completeneſs of the work, as I fear they will not, I deſire it may not be aſcribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties with I was to ſtruggle with. Books I had few to help my ſelf with of mine own; nor live I near ſo rich a *Clergie* (moſt of the Benefices of theſe parts being poor and mean) as to ſupply my ſelf from them with ſuch commodities. The greateſt helps I had was from *Oxford-Library*, which though but nine or ten miles off from my preſent dwelling, yet the charge and trouble of the journey, with the loſs of time, made my viſits to that place leſs frequent, and conſequently the Neighbourhood thereof leſs uſefull to me, than the generality of the deſign might well comport with. So that when all things are conſidered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at by an equal Reader, how I could come to write ſo much, with ſo little helps, upon a ſubject of ſuch a large and diffuſed variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to ſay truth, the work ſo proſpered in my hand, and ſwelled ſo much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may with modeſty enough uſe thoſe words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut citò occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *Engliſh* reads it.

In the purſuance of this Work, as I have taken on my ſelf the parts of an *Hiſtorian* and *Geographer*; ſo have I not forgotten that I am an *Engliſh-man*, and which is ſomewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *Engliſh-man* I have been mindfull upon all occaſions to commit to memory the noble actions of my Countrey; exploited both by Sea and Land, im moſt parts of the World, and repreſented on the ſame *Theaters*, upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the example of the great *Annaliſt*, *Baronius*. Who pretending in that great and laborious Work, a ſincere Hiſtory of the Church, and no more than ſo; yet tels the Pope in his Epiſtle, that he principally did intend the ſame, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate* Romanæ *Eccleſiæ*; to manifeſt therein the Antiquity of ſuch Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exerciſed in the Church of *Rome*. And ſo much I may alſo ſay of my ſelf in this performance, though without any by-deſign to abuſe the Reader, that though the *Hiſtory* and *Chorography* of the World be my principal buſineſs, yet I have apprehended every modeſt occaſion, of recording the heroick Acts of my native Soil, and filing on the Regiſters of perpetual Fame the Gallantry and brave atchievements of the People of *England*. Exemplified in their many victories, and ſignal ſervices in *Italie*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*, in *Paleſtine*, *Cyprus*, *Africk* and *America*, and indeed where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety in converting to the Faith ſo many of the *German* and Northern Nations; *Francontans*, *Thuringians*, *Haſsians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Friſons*; as alſo amongſt the *Scots* and *Picts*, together with thoſe of *Lituania* and the people of *Norwey*: by that means more inlarging Chriſts Kingdom than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to record the Actions, ſo have I been as carefull to aſſert the Rights of the *Engliſh* Nation: inherent perſonally in their Kings, by way of publick intereſs in the Subject alſo; as the whole body doth partake of that ſenſe and motion, which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true ſtating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*; demonſtrating the Vaſſallage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Intereſs of the *Engliſh* Nation, in right of the firſt Diſcovery or *Primier Seiſin*, to *Eſtotiland*, *Terra Corterialis*, *New-found-Land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countreys neer the *Cape of good Hope*, and ſome other places, againſt all Pretenders: inſinuating the precedency of

the *Engliſh* Kings before thoſe of *Spain*; their Soveraignty and Dominion in the *Britiſh* Ocean, with the great benefit which might from thence ariſe unto us, invaded and almoſt ingroſſed by the *Hanſe* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which ſpeaks me more an *Engliſhman*, than all theſe together; which I ſhall fall on ſoon enough, and indeed too ſoon, the ſadneſs of the ſubject being well conſidered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more eſpecial notice of the ancient and preſent face of *Chriſtianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and opinions of thoſe ſeveral Sects into which it now doth ſtand diſmembred. By which it will appear moſt clearly amongſt other things, that the Doctrine & Government of the Church were of equall ſtanding; that this government was no other than that of *Biſhops*; and that whereſoever *Chriſtianity* did finde any admittance, *Epiſcopacy* was admitted alſo as a part thereof: the Goſpel being in moſt places firſt preached by *Biſhops*, or growing to eſteem and ſtrength under their Authority. And it is found on theſe *Recherches*, that as *Epiſcopacy* was co-æval with the Church it ſelf: ſo the *Subordination* of *Biſhops* to their ſeveral *Primates*, and the *Coordination* of thoſe *Primates* among themſelves in the common Government thereof, was of ſuch antiquity (as being ſetled and confirmed in St. *Cyprians* time, who flouriſhed in the year 250.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* Epiſcopos *in commune* Eccleſiam *regere*, is a noted *Maxime* in St. *Hierome*; but practically true in the *Communicatoriæ* and *Formatæ*, of the elder Ages: Which happy courſe had it been preſerved, *Epiſcopacy* had been ſo far from being *made a ſtirrup for* Antichriſt *to mount into his throne*, as the *Smectymnuans* falſly charge it; that it had ſerved rather as a *Martingall* to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the reſt of his Brethren. And that this courſe was not preſerved, came not intentionally from the Popes (for that by *Antichriſt* they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing paſt queſtion) but from the Inundation of the barbarous Nations: though I confeſs the Popes were apt enough to make the beſt advantage of thoſe various Accidents, which the diſtreſſes of the Church did preſent unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations, *Chriſtianity* was either quite extinguiſhed, or the authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that intelligence and commerce which had been anciently amongſt them, interdicted on good reaſons of State, by ſuch *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then how eaſie was it for the Pope, in the new planting of the Goſpel in theſe Weſtern parts, (done either by his Miniſters, or by his incouragement) to give unto the Biſhops of his own appointing ſuch a limited power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his commands, and afterwards to leſſen their Authority, as he ſaw occaſion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monaſteries, Convents and Cathedrals; with *Juriſdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belong'd unto them? So that it is moſt evident in the courſe of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superſtitions and Novations on the Church of *CHRIST*; till they had weakned, by degrees, the *Epiſcopal* power. Followed in that deſign, though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and ſome others in the Ages ſince; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Epiſcopacy* as it was co-æval with the Church of *CHRIST*, ſo was it the beſt and ſtrongeſt Buttreſs in that ſacred building. The weakning or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the luſt and tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimony thereof unto ſpoyl and rapine; or finally ſubject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiouſneſs of *Heterodoxies* and confuſed Opinions. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact, in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their ſeveral Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefeſt Towns; and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the ſeveral States & Kingdoms which are here deſcribed. But upon further conſideration, how much it would increaſe the Book both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs publick uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the Reader may diſcern how each Countrey lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed; and on the other ſide may meet with many Towns of inferior note which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each

ſeveral

ſeverall Countrey, as far as I could ſee by the light of Letters, or go by probable conjectures; in finding out the place of ſuch antient Cities as are now decayed, not eaſily viſible in their ruins; and adding to ſuch Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Originall names. A thing as neceſſary to the underſtanding of the Hiſtories of thoſe elder times, as the knowledge of the preſent names is to the more delightfull reading of our modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be ſpecified and inſiſted on in a work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for ſuch a punctuall enumeration and deſcription of them, as he may meet withall in thoſe who have written the *Chorography* of ſome Countrey only; or think himſelf unſatisfied in his expectation if he find not here the ſituation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering place of every Company or Troop of Souldiers, which are preſented to him in the Weekly News-books. In all Countreys there are many places which either by the advantage of their ſituation, or ſome preſent exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of Warre; or otherwiſe remarkable for ſome ſignall battell, in theſe late buſtles and commotions of the Chriſtian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and conſequently not within the compaſſe of this Diſcourſe: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and conſiderable in the times to come as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that ſhall think the work imperfect (though I confeſs it to be nothing but imperfections) for ſome deficiencies in this kind, may be likened to the Countrey-Fellow in *Ariſtophanes* (if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrell with the Map, becauſe he could not find where his own Farm ſtood. And ſuch a Countrey-cuſtomer I did meet with one, a ſervant of my elder Brothers, ſent by him with ſome Horſes to *Oxon*, to bring me and a friend of mine unto his houſe. Who having loſt his way as we paſſed through the Forreſt of *Whichwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track; did very earneſtly intreat me to lead the way, til I had brought him paſt the Woods to the open Fields. Which when I had refuſed to do, as I had good reaſon, alleadging that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's ſtrange*, ſaid he, *I have heard my old Maſter your Father ſay, that you made a Book of all the World, and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being ſpoken out of an honeſt ſimplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the leaſt thought of putting a blunt jeſt upon me, occaſioned a great deal of merriment for a long time; but I hope to meet with no ſuch Readers. The greatneſs of the bulk, and conſequently of the price, makes me ſomewhat confident that none but men of judgement and underſtanding will peruſe theſe Papers: and ſuch as they will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a generall Diſcourſe will fitly bear. Perfection and exactneſſe is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is obſerved by *Ariſtotle* in the ſecond Book of his Ethicks, ἐφ' ὅσον ἡ τῷ πράγματι φύσις ἐπιδέχεται, as far forth, as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And ſo much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reaſon be expected from me. To look for more were as improper and abſurd (in the words of *Ariſtotle*) as for an *Artiſt* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonſtrations from an Orator.

Laſtly, as an *Hiſtorian*, I have traced the affairs of each ſeverall Countrey from the firſt Inhabitants thereof, (ſuch as the *Latines* call *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks* Αὐτόχθονες) till theſe later times. Which that I might be ſure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to ſettle all the firſt Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations: and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with the leſſe diſturbance. The reſt of their *Occurrences* I have ſummed into ſo ſhort an *Abſtract*, as may be uſefull to the learned in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the leſſe knowing man, in the way of a Tutor; Brevity in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but ſo as to avoid all obſcurity alſo. Nor have I only kept my ſelf to the ſtory of Kingdoms, or of the greater *Signeuries*, Eſtates, or Nations, which are or have been of the greateſt conſideration in the ſway of the world: but looked on the Eſtates of ſuch Dukes, Earls, and inferiour Princes, as in their times have had the Government of thoſe parts which gave Title to them; whoſe actions and ſucceſſions are diſtinctly ſpecified, and all ſuch alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruin of ſuch Eſtates, or the tranſlating of them from one Houſe to another. The Catalogues and Succeſſions of which royall and illuſtrious Families, I have drawn down unto the yeer 1648. towards the expiring of which yeer, I began to ſet my ſelf upon this employment. And there I fix as on the top of ſome dreadfull *Precipice*, which

one

one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of such a nature, that either to speak of them, or to hold our peace is alike unsafe. In such a case it is best keeping at a distance. For though truth be the best Mistress which a man can serve, (*Magis amica Veritas*, said the great Philosopher;) yet it is well observed withall, that if a man follow her too close at the heels, she may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as also out of that compassionate affection which a true *Englishman* ought to bear his native Countrey, although in my approaches towards these present times, I have took notice in some other places of such battels, sieges, and successes in the chances of War, as have hapned in these later dayes: I have forborn to take the least notice of those Tragedies of blood and death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confess, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongst our selves: in which there have been more pitched fields, more strong pieces taken, more notable traverses of State, and exploits of war, than all the world can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *English* bowels to please my self in the recitall, or to look back on those unfortunate Adventures which I should rather choose to cover with the *Act of Oblivion*, or bury in the grave of perpetuall silence. How gladly I could have recorded these exploits of war, had they been exercised on a subject more proper for them; my willingness to take notice upon all occasions, of the actions and atchievements of the *English* Nation, will bear witness for me. But the employing of that valour against our selves, as if not to be conquered but by one another, strikes such horror in me, that I cannot think thereof without much affrightment, nor intimate thus much of it without great *reluctancies*. I fear it may be said too truly of our late embroilments, as the Historian of the Civill Wars betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*; *Causa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occasioned by a surfet of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own prosperities; and that that prayer and passage in the publick Liturgy (*Give peace in our time O Lord*) did not relish with us: how happy had it been if we had found some other field to have tryed our valour in? and made some forain Country that *Aceldama*, which so fatally was made at home? The dishonour which we suffered in the Isle of *Re*, when beat thence ingloriously by the *French*; the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate* by the power of the *Spaniard*; the barbarous butchery at *Amboyna*, and the beating up of the *Spanish* Fleet within the protection of our Castles, by those of *Holland*; the insolencies of the *Scots*, and the rebellions of the *Irish*, might well have stirred some indignation in an *English* breast. And had we fought upon those scores, or on none but them, our victories had deserved the honour of a solemn *triumph*, denyed by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civill War: But our infelicity (as it seems) was like that of *Rome*, in following those unnaturall wars with such animosities; when the unrevenged death of *Crassus*, the blood of so many thousand of their slaughtered Citizens, and the shamefull loss of so many of the *Roman* Ensigns, should rather have invited them to the conquest of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which thus feelingly the Poet;

Cumque superba foret Babylon *spolianda Trophæis*,
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos.

And when proud *Babylon* should have been constrain'd
To give us back our Ensigns lately gain'd;
We rather chose such Quarrells to pursue,
For which no *Triumph* could be justly due.

But such is the condition and vicissitude of humane affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much less of certainty. The greatest Monarchies of the world, the *Babylonian*, *Persian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their *periods*, nothing remaining of them now but the name and memory. And what is now become of those mighty Cities of the East, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Susa*, with the rest mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Classicall* Authors? are not their very ruins now become invisible? Where are the puissant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Persia*, the *Seleucidæ* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolemies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæsars* of *Italy*, the *Merovingians* and *Carolovingians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of *England*? are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of story, and some antient monuments? And if it be so, as it is, with the greatest Monarchies, the most

mighty

mighty Cities of the world, we must not think that smaller Kingdoms and Estates can either be so evenly ballanced, or so surely founded, as not to be obnoxious also to the same vicissitudes. And being that saying of *Optatus* is most undoubtedly true, *Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Common wealth, we must not hope to find it in a better posture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruin of the *Civil State*, and may miscarry many times, although the *Civil State* receive no such alterations. Compared for this reason to the Moon by the antient Fathers, who had observed her in her prime, in her Increases and her Full; and finally, had not only seen her in the *Wane* also, but sometimes too under some horrible *Eclipses*. Which various condition of the *Militant* Church, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philistins*, the Temple destroyed by the *Chaldæans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apostasie of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the *Jewish* Church. And find we not the same for the *Christian* also, in the removing of the *Candlestick* from the *Asian* Churches; and making them, together with those of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilesly under the mercileſs incroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those mercileſs men that grieves not, at their sad condition: but a dead member, at the most of *Christs* mysticall Body, who feels not in himself the sufferings, of those wretched *Christians*.

If now we look into the causes of that desolation which hath hapned in the Civill State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it but their crying sins? the pride of the *Babylonians*, the effeminacy of the *Persians*, the luxury of the *Greeks*: and such an aggregation of vices amongst the *Romans* (or Western *Christians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandall unto *Christianity*. *In nobis patitur* Christus *opprobrium*, *in nobis patitur lex* Christiana *maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolatries of the ten Tribes hasten in the *Assyrians*? the shedding of the blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldæans* first, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianism* of the Eastern Churches to usher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatism* of the South to have set open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianism*, as soon almost as entertained amongst the *Britans*? If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the dayes of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the sacrilege and faction of the Churches of the Reformation, shall at the last receive the like Retribution: Or that the Divine Justice is so fast asleep that our sins must crie as loud as the Priests of *Baal* did unto their God, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly we are no less sinners than any of those on whom the *Tower* of the Divine vengeance hath so heavily fallen, whose blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and religious *sacrifices*: and therefore have no cause to hope, but that *unless we do repent*, we shall likewise *perish*.

The serious consideration of all these particulars hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For is there any of these *things*, *whereof it may be said*, Ecce hoc est novum, *Behold this is new*? *Eccl.* 1.10. Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it positively affirmed by the wisest man that ever was, *That which hath been is now, and that which is to be hath already been*; *Nihil enim novum est sub sole*, for there is no *new thing* under the Sun, *Eccl.* 3.15. & 1.11. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of my self, that the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the Extirpation of so many mighty and renowned Families, the desolation of so many flourishing *Christian* Churches, as the composing of this Book did present me with, (though formerly no strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my soul under the mighty hand of God than either the sense of my misfortune, or any other morall consideration which had come before me. And I could wish the Reader may receive so much benefit by it (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the mighty man may learn hereby not to glory in his great strength, nor the wise

to

to glory in his wisdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great designs. Let the great Leaders of these times in the Art of War, consider the sad ends of *Joab* the Generall of *David*; and of *Belisarius* the Commander of *Justinians* Armies: whereof the one was slain ingloriously at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates of the Temple*. Let the great Masters of Wit and *State-craft* have before their eyes, the unsuccessfull ends of *Achitophel*, the *Oracle* of the times he lived in; and of *Cæsar Borgias*, proposed by *Machiavel* for the pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himself, because his *Counsell was not followed*; the other, after the defailment of all his projects, and a long imprisonment to boot, forced to flie his Countrey, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all men lay unto their hearts the ebbes and floods, those alternations and vicissitudes, to which all humane power is subject; the slippery foundations of that might and greatnesse, which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maximes* of Christian Piety; and that even those which have dominion over others, have a God too above themselves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Not such a God as that of *Lewis* the 11th. of *France*. Of whom it is reported the he wore a Leaden Medail in his Bonnet in the form of a *Crucifix*: which, when he had caused any man to be killed whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one murther more, and it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a *Leaden God*, but the God of Heaven and Earth will not be so *mocked*: who being *totus oculus* and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our intents and purposes, notwithstanding those disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of sin in its ugliest shape, though apparelled with the *Fig-leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving wit of man can patch up together. God is the same God now as in former times, *Primus ad extremum similis sibi*, Yesterday, and to day, and the same for ever; and will not put up those affronts which the impieties of men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience and long suffering, they may flatter their poor souls, and say, *Tush, God doth not see it.*

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* than himself, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and incouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca, Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one man was to me in stead of all men: the Powers of all the *People* being vertually united in hm. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*; the *Body* of the *Nation* is to me, in this respect, as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A Generall survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it requiring a more generall *Patron* than particular Tractates. But because all the *People* in the Body *Collective* have not abilities to read, and much lesse to judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the list nor leisure to peruse these Papers: I look on the *Nobility, Clergy, Gentrie*, as their *Representatives* in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenuous acceptance I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small comfort to me, in the middest of so many sorrows as are round about me, that I have been usefull to the publick; or added any thing by my Studies, unto the honour and content of the *English* Nation: whose peace and happinesse is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers,

PETER HEYLYN.

To

To my Brother the Author.

These verses prefix'd before the second Edition of the former Book *Anno* 1624. I have made bold to borrow and imprint with this, to preserve the memory of the Author, who died in *February* 1640.

THY *first* preſt-grapes *did yeeld approved* Wine,
Such as did praiſe it ſelf; yet to indear
Our Approbation, thou doeſt here reſine
Thoſe former Fruits; *and for our better* Chear
Preſent'ſt us with a pure and ſtronger Vine:
Leſt elſe ſome curious taſt might it diſtaſt.
If ſo, what needs my ſecond Buſh? *'Tis* Waſt.

Yet well thy choice Minerva *merits this,*
This Ivie-Garland, *everlaſting green;*
Which like the Muſes *cup proportion'd is,*
Whereout thou drink'ſt, wherein their Liquors *been.*
Nor wouldſt thou ſcape the laſh of Nemeſis,
If with Diogenes *thou ſhouldſt refuſe,*
To let the thirſty *drink there hence. 'Twere* News.

Thy Book's an Ark *which all the* World *contains,*
And well may bear a ſhort Encomion.
'Tis ſlender meed, yet who ſuch pay diſdains?
Good Wine *may have a* Buſh, *though it* need none.
Nor let theſe lines of mine ſeem partial ſtrains.
Thy Work *ingenious is; and* Vertues *brood*
Like it, increaſeth with due praiſe. 'Tis Good.

Much pains it coſt, much coſt, and labor more;
Fames *breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchaſe* Praiſe.
The Muſes *ſeat aſcends an hundred ſcore,*
And Honours *journey lies not in plain waies.*
Who to Parnaſſus *high-crown'd top will ſore,*
Muſt with elaborate Quill climb up; and ſuch
Thy tender Genius *boaſteth thee. 'Tis* Much.

Too much indeed it were, but that in part
The Guerdon *of well-doing is the doing.*
Fame *and* Reward *but wait upon thine Art;*
Which yet deſerves that in this Forward *going,*
Thy Fortunes *may even-balance thy Deſert.*
But Fortune's baſe, and ſels the Wages *due*
To Worth, *unto her* Favourites. *'Tis* True,

The Earth *thy Ground-plot is,* Geographi'd;
Kings *ſometimes are thy ſubjects peopling it.*
Thy ſtory, Hiſtory *hath beautifi'd,*
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred *wit;*
Whoſe Art *hath travell'd all the World beſide,*
And can of every Countrey *well declare*
Th'Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.

Thus that the Earth, ſo young thou compaſt haſt:
It Rare, True, Much, Good, News; *and my* Buſh Waſt.

Edw. Heylyn J. C.
& ſoc. Int. Temp.

A GENERAL INTRODUCTION to the following Work:

Containing the Creation *of the World by Almighty God, and the* Plantation *of the ſame by the ſons of men; the neceſſary uſe of* Hiſtory *and* Geography, *as well for underſtanding the Affairs of the* Ages *paſt, as for converſe and correſpondence with the* Nations *preſent; together with a brief view of ſome* General Præcognita *which neceſſarily are required unto the knowledge of each.*

With great both Piety and Prudence did the Apoſtles in their Summary of the *Chriſtian* faith, joyn our Belief in *God the Father Almighty*, with that clauſe or Article of making or *Creating* the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (*Is not he thy Father which hath made thee?* ſaith the Prophet *Moſes*, *Deut.* 32. *v.* 6.) ſo who but an Almighty Father could by his meer word, without any preexiſtent matter, create that goodly edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with ſo much wonder and applauſe? A work ſo full of wonder to the ancient *Gentiles*, that ſome of them made the world a God. *Vis illum (i. e. Deum) mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the *World*, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the *World* a God, as God to be the Soul of the *World*, yet might they very well have ſaid as one ſince hath done, That the World is nothing elſe but God unfolded, and manifeſted in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus univerſus quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cuſanus* a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the ſpecial motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a deſire and purpoſe to manifeſt his power, to exerciſe his providence, and declare his goodneſſe. Not that God needed to have made the *World* in regard of himſelf; for the *World* we know was made in the beginning of time, but God is infinite and eternal before all times: but that it ſeemed good to him to *create* it at laſt, as a thing moſt conducible to his praiſe and glory; the *Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth ſhewing his handy-work*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. Some meaſuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing ſo agreeable to their own diſpoſitions as to be in company, conceive that God being at laſt weary of his own ſolitude, did create the *World*, that he might have the company of the *Angels* in Heaven, and make a ſtart into the Earth (when he ſaw occaſion) to recreate himſelf with the ſons of men. *Quæ beata eſſe ſolitudo queat?* What happineſſe (ſaid *Hortenſius*) can there be in ſolitude? To which *Lactantius*, Lib. 1. cap. 7. not being furniſhed with a better, doth return this Anſwer; That God cannot be ſaid to be alone; *habet enim Miniſtros quos vocamus Nuntios*, as having the ſociety of the *Angels*. But then *Lactantius* muſt ſuppoſe that the *Angels* were co-eternal with God himſelf, (which were to make all Gods, and no God at all;) or elſe his Anſwer is no Anſwer, as to that Objection. How much more appoſitely might he have thus replyed unto *Hortenſius*, That the ſupreme contentment poſſible to Almighty God is by reflecting on himſelf, and in himſelf contemplating his own infinite glories: which being co-eternal with himſelf, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done ſince. *Lactantius* being himſelf a man of a very great reading, (though indeed a better *Humanitian* than *Divine*) could not but know thoſe ſweet delights which a man habited in learning takes in contemplation, and the good ſociety he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is moſt retired from the ſight of men. And if the wiſe *Gentile* could affirm ſo ſadly, *numquam minus ſolum quam cum ſolus eſſet*, that he was never leſſe alone than when he was by himſelf, what need can any rational man ſuppoſe in Almighty God, of having more company than himſelf, to delight himſelf in? If this ſuffice not for an anſwer to that needleſſe queſtion,

What God did before he made the World; let him take that of *Auguſtine* on the like occaſion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer; *fabricaſſe inferos curioſis*, that he made Hell for all ſuch troubleſome and idle *Queſtioniſts*. Which reſolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late *Dutch* Poet, moulded into this handſom Epigram.

Dum Chriſtum Libycis *Pater* Auguſtinus *in oris*
Aſſerit, & peragit munus in ade ſuum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi,
Eſſe docens verbo cuncta creata Dei;
Impius aſſurgit, verbiſq; procacibus, Afer,
Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat, ait,
Aut quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?
Praſul ad hæc Libycus, *fabricavit tartara, dixit,*
His quos ſcrutari talia mente juvat.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

When reverend *Auſtin* did in *Africk* preach,
And in Gods Houſe the ruder people teach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd, and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought:
A ſawcy Swain upſtarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time beſtow;
And what to ſpend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:
To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made *Hell* for thee, and ſuch audacious men.

But not to ſpend more time in anſwering ſo vain a caption, ſuffice it us to know, that it pleaſed God at laſt, when it ſeemed beſt unto his infinite and eternal Wiſdome, to create the World, and all things viſible and inviſible in the ſame contained. A time it had, in which it firſt began to be, which before was not; This *Moſes* cals *Principium*, a beginning ſimply. *In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth*, in the firſt words of the Book of *Geneſis*: which is all one as if he had ſaid, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Maſs* or *Chaos* which he entituleth there by the name of *heaven and earth*, was the *beginning* or firſt draught of thoſe ſeveral things which after were created in their proper times; that is to ſay, the firſt in order of time, becauſe made before them, not in order of cauſality, as the cauſes of them. *Cœlum & terra in principio*, i. e. *ante omnia facta ſunt*, ſaith *Simon Pottius* in his *Scholies* on S. *Johns* Goſpel. So that whether we do expound thoſe words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that *Moſes* by theſe words did mean, that out of that matter which he cals *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or firſt matter, all things were created, it comes all to one: becauſe it is thereby acknowledged that the firſt matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of neceſſity to have a *beginning*. And to this truth we have not only the authority and conſent of Scripture, but of the greateſt part of the old *Philoſophers*; guided thereto by this impoſſibility in nature, that any viſible work, whether it be *natural* or *artificial*, ſhould either give it ſelf a being, or have that being which it hath from no cauſe precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his moſt excellent Book *de Natura Deorum*, that as a man coming into a goodly houſe, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice; could not conceive that either the houſe had built it ſelf, or had no other maker but thoſe Rats and Mice which were neſted in it; ſo neither can it be imagined, that either this World ſhould be eternal, of a ſelf-exiſtency; or was compoſed by any natural Agent of what ſort ſoever. And this is that which is more briefly and expreſly ſaid by the Apoſtle, *viz.* that *every houſe is built by ſome man, but he that built all things is God*, Heb. 3. v. 4. It is true, that *Ariſtotle* being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature, conceived the world to be eternal; and yet not alwaies conſtant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withall, that there was ſomething elſe that inclined him to it, than a meer admiration of the works of Nature. *Democritus* and ſome others had been of opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concurſionibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of thoſe ſeveral parcels, of which the Univerſe conſiſted; and that man himſelf was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the elements, as *Minutius* hath obſerved out of their writings. To which abſurd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongſt many of the old Philoſophers, when *Ariſtotle* knew not how to ſubmit his moſt exquiſite judgement; and yet was deſtitute of ſuch further light, as might more fully have inſtructed him in its true *Original*: he rather choſe to grant the world to be eternal, than to be made of ſuch ridiculous, and unſound, though eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno eſſe, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerſiſſe*. *Valeſius* in his Book *de Sacra Philoſophia* ſo pleads the caſe in his behalf; and I thank him for it: who am (I muſt confeſs) a great friend of *Ariſtotles*, whom ſome account for the *Præcurſor* of our Saviour Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptiſt* was *in divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reaſon tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning; but by the help of Scripture, and the works of ſome learned men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin; or to compute how many years it is preciſely from the firſt beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be moſt truly ſaid, *Citius inter Horologias*

quam

quam Chronologias, that *Clocks* may ſooner be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet moſt *Chronologers* in this point come ſo near one another, that the difference is ſcarce obſervable. From the beginning of the *World* to the Birth of *Chriſt*, in the accompt of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 years; 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*; 3960 in the eſteem of *Luther*; and 3963 in the calculation of *Melanchthon*: between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the leaſt and the greateſt) there is but 35 years difference, which in ſo long a courſe of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the trueſt, we add 1648 ſince the Birth of *Chriſt*, the total of the time ſince the worlds creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor leſs. A thing which I the rather have inſiſted on, becauſe that from this *Epoche* or *Æra* of the *Worlds creation*, we ſhall compute the times of ſuch Kings and Princes, as reigned and flouriſhed in the world before the *Incarnation* of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then reſolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that he made it in ſuch time as himſelf pleaſed; let us next look upon the *matter* and the *method* which it pleaſed the Divine Majeſty to make uſe of in this wondrous work.

Firſt, for the *matter*, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was ſaid, to be that which *Moſes* in the firſt words of *Geneſis* cals the *Heaven and the Earth*, becauſe they were ſo *in potentia*; but after telleth us more explicitely, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanis & vacua*, without form and void; and that which he called *Heaven* was but an overcaſt of darkneſſe, or *tenebræ ſuper faciem Abyſſi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confuſed Maſs we thus read in *Ovid*, who queſtionleſs had herein conſulted with the works of *Moſes*, being before his time communicated to the learned Gentiles:

Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cœlum,
Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, *rudis indigeſtaq; moles,*
Nec quicquam niſi pondus iners, congeſtaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum diſcordia ſemina rerum, &c.

Which I ſhall Engliſh from *G. Sandys* with ſome little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had nature, which they *Chaos* named;
An indigeſted lump, a barren load,
Where jarring ſeeds of things ill-joyn'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the world adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waining horns;
Nor hung the ſelf poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vaſt Shores imbrac'd.
Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth unſtable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one aſſign'd,
This that reſiſts; for in one body joyn'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The ſoft and hard, the heavie with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or firſt matter, did God raiſe the world, according to thoſe ſeveral parts and lineaments which we ſee it in, not as out of any pre-exiſtent matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or firſt Maker of it; but as the firſt preparatory matter which himſelf had made, including in the ſame *potentially* both the form and matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of man only, which God breathed into him. And therefore it is truly ſaid, that God made all things out of *nothing*; not out of *nothing* as the matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing* muſt be *ſomething*; but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving them a real and corporal being which before they had not, and did then firſt begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philoſophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that *nothing* can be made of *nothing*; that every thing which hath a being doth require ſome matter, which muſt be pre-exiſtent to it; yet this muſt either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or elſe be limited and reſtrained to *Natural agents*, which cannot go beyond the ſphere of their own activity. *Inviſible* and *ſupernatural* Agents are not tied to Rules, no not in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature conſtituted and eſtabliſhed in a certain courſe, work every thing by line and meaſure as a certain Rule. And ſo it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the world, but he made it out of nothing, by his Word alone: *Dixit & facta ſunt*, he ſpake the word and they were made, ſaith the royal *Pſalmiſt*, *Pſal.* 33. *v.* 9. There went no greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*. And this not only ſaid by *Moſes*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati ſunt Cœli, & ſpiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum, v.* 6. *i. e.* by the *Word* of the Lord were the heavens made, and all the Hoſts thereof by the *breath* of his mouth. In which it is to be obſerved, that though the *Creation* of the *World* be generally aſcribed to God the *Father*, yet both the *Son* and the *Holy Ghoſt* had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the *Word* of the Lord were the Heavens made, ſaith the Prophet *David*: *In the beginning was the Word; all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made*, ſaith S. *John* the Apoſtle. The *Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters*, ſaith *Moſes* in the book of the Law: *Et ſpiritu oris ejus*, and by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth

were all the Hosts of Heaven created, saith *David* in the Book of *Psalmes*. Made by his *Word*, and yet not made together in one instant of time. In the first day he laid the foundation, and no more; in the five next he raised the building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions; and to set forth withall unto us both his Power and Wisdome. His *Power* he manifested in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what effects he pleased, without the help of natural causes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth plants, without the influence or motion of the Heavenly bodies. And for his *Wisdome* he expressed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beasts of the field before he had provided them of fodder and sufficient herbage; nor *made man after his own Image*, before he had finished all the rest of his works, fitted his house, and furnished it with all things necessary both for life and pleasures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at last comes *Man* into the world; and he doth make his entrance with a greater pomp, than any of the rest of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the workmanship of *Man*, there was a Consultation held by the blessed *Trinity*. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make man; each Person contributing somewhat (as it were) to his composition. For God the *Father* as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and feature; in which he did imprint his own heavenly Image. The *Son* who is the living and eternal *word*, gave him voice or speech, that so he might be able to set forth Gods praises. The *Holy Ghost*, the *Lord and giver of life*, (as the *Nicene* Fathers truly call him) *breathing into his nostrils the breath of life*, whereby he became a living Spirit. In this one *Creature* was amassed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or substance of Inanimate creatures, the life of Plants, the sense of Beasts, and the understanding of Angels. In this one Creature did God shew the excellency of his power and wisdome, in printing on him his *own Image*, and giving him Dominion over all the *works of his hands*; which *Image of God* they look for in a very wrong place, who hope to finde it in mans Body, though of a gallant composition, and erected structure. The Heathen Oratour was able in this point to inform some erroneous *Christians*, *Ad Divinam imaginem propius accedit humana virtus quàm figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the endowments of his Minde, than in the structure of his body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that Dominion which God gave him over the works of his hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the first of *Genesis*. For God no sooner said, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make man after our own Image, but presently he addes this *Charter* of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the fish of the Sea, and over the fowles of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over all the Earth.* A more particular explication of those several points, wherein that *Image* and this *Power* do consist especially, I shall not take upon me or endevour now; as being not of this place and purpose: Which only is to shew, that as man in the very act of his Creation participated more of the *Divine Image*, than all other Creatures; so was he by Gods special grant infeoffed with a larger *power*, than any of the rest could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his servants, and to attend upon his pleasure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (setting aside the dignity of his first Creation) doth come into the world in a worse condition, than any of the Creatures which were made to serve him: naked, and impotent, and speechlesse, without use of reason; neither of power to help himself, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius* in my minde gives a very good reason, who telleth us, that God sends man into the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked, and weak, and undefenced against all violences and dangers; whereas all Creatures else, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata sunt*, are naturally both armed and cloathed, and able to relieve themselves. And this he doth unto this end, that man being naturally destitute of those outward helps, might make use of his inward faculties of judgement, wit and understanding, in furnishing himself with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the first original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is most plain and evident from the Book of God; in which we see, that presently upon the procreation of mankinde, *Abel* betook himself unto keeping sheep, and *Cain* to husbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and such Musical Instruments; and *Tubal-Cain* to work upon brass and iron, two metals very necessary to most kinde of Trades. The like may be supposed in all other Mysteries and Arts of living, though there be no expresse mention of them in those early daies; except it be the Art of building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no question is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain*'s City, and *Noah*'s Ark is most clearly evidenced. God made the world, and fitted it with all things necessary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himself of such Additions, as rather serve for comforts and conveniencies in the way of his living, than the necessities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be considered in pursuit of our present Argument. The works of God, in shadowing the Earth with *Trees* and *Forrests*, interlacing it with Crystall *streams*, and capacious *Rivers*; inriching it with fruitful and *delicious Vales*, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and stocking both the Hils and Vales with all sorts of *Cattel*. But nothing more sets forth the Power and Wisdome of Almighty God, as it relates to these particulars, than that most admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffique and Commerce with one amother: some Countreys being destitute of those Commodities, with which others abound; and being plentifull in those, which the others want. Insomuch that as in the Body of man, that *Microcosm*, or little World, the Head cannot say that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the rest: so neither in the Body

of

of the the World, can *Europe* say to *Asia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities; or am not wanting in those things, whereof thou boastest an abundance. Something there is in every Countrey, which may be spared to supply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandise: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his *Colonies*.

Hence come our Sugars from Canary *Isles.*
From Candie, *Currans, Muscadels, and Oyles.*
From the Moluccoes, *Spices; Balsamum*
From Egypt; *Odours from* Arabia *come.*
From India, *Gums, rich Drugs and Ivorie.*
From Syria, *Mummie; black, red Ebonie*
From burning Chus; *from* Peru, *Pearls and Gold;*
From Russia *Furs, to keep the rich from cold.*
From Florence, *Silks; from* Spain, *Fruit, Saffron, Sacks;*
From Danemark, *Amber, Cordage, Firs, and Flax.*
From France *and* Flanders, *Linnen, Woad, and Wine;*
From Holland, *Hops; Horse from the banks of* Rhine.
From England *Wooll. All lands, as God distributes,*
To the Worlds treasure pay their sundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* speaks of the present times, so questionless the same, or the like Commerce held good in the first Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furnishing all Countreys from the first beginning with some *Staple-commodities*, for the benefit of themselves and others; for the maintaining of that entercourse between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the closer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end also serve those several *Manufactures* wherewith some Countreys do abound in respect of others; but looked on in the present Book as the works of men. And of this kinde also are the several *Polities* and formes of Government. For though all *Magistracy* in it self be from God originally, and that the *Monarchical* form comes neareſt to the Government used by God himself: yet being that some *Polities* are meerly but humane inventions, and that to *Monarchy* it self, the consent of men is either explicitely or implicitely required; All *Government* or Magistracy is called an *Ordinance of man* in holy Scripture, 1 *Pet.* 11. *v.* 13. But those particular Works of men which are the most considerable part of our present subject, are *Castles, Towns*, and *Cities* of most eminent note; which thrive and prosper in the World, according as they do partake of those Conveniencies, which conduce most to their Magnificence and Greatness. Of these *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of those many we shall touch upon the principal only; passing by those of lesser note, as pleasantness of Sight, fruitfulness of Soyl, salubrity of Air, and such like obvious Observations. First then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendour of Cities, a Navigable River, or some such easie passage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourse and trade of Merchants; as at *Venice, London, Amsterdam*. Secondly, some Staple-Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like resort of Merchants, though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nurenberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; For *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all sorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long since a poor beggerly Village, is grown the most populous City in all *Spain*. Fourthly, the Residence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with stately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* so much excel ours in *England*, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the most part in their Countrey-houses. Fifthly, the Seats, or *Tribunals* of Justice, on which both *Advocates* and *Clients* are to give attendance; as in the *Parliamentary* Cities in *France*, and *Spires* in *Germany*. Sixthly, Universities and Schools of Learning to which the Youth from all parts are to make resort; which hath been long the chief cause of the flourishing of *Oxford, Cambridge, Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; most men being most desirous to inhabit there, where their In-come will be greatest, their Priviledges largest, and their Disbursements least: So *Naples, Florence, Venice*, having been desolated by Plagues, were again sodainly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And last of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the *Reliques* of Saints, or some noted Shrines, or the residence of some Famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the least *Adamant* which drawes people to it, to the great enriching of some Cities: And of this, *Rome* it self can give us two most pregnant evidences: the one in reference to the *Popes*, and these latter times, that famous Town not otherwise subsisting now, than by the constant residence of the Popes and Cardinals; whose absence while the Papal Sea was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almost in its own sad ruines. The other, in the person of *Titus Livius* the Historian, to see which man there came so many from the Coasts of *France* and *Spain*, that S. *Hierome* elegantly saith, *Quos ad sui contemplationem* Roma *non traxerat, unius hujus hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra* Urbem *quærerent.*

Such are the causes of the Greatness and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might possibly be looked at by the first builders of Cities, I mean by *Cain* before the Floud, and by *Nimrod* after it; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self-preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expresly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this fear, that *every one that found him*

would lay hands upon him and ſlay him, in revenge of the bloud of *Abel*; *He builded a City and called it by the name of his ſon* Enoch. *Gen.* 4.17. *Builded a City*? For what reaſon? To fortifie and ſecure himſelf againſt all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppreſſe his Neighbours, as *Joſephus* witneſſeth. Neither was this the only City of the firſt Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture ſaith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of ſuch as dwell in Tents*, and of ſuch as have Cattel; that is to ſay, he was the firſt of thoſe which lived upon Paſturage, and followed their cattel up and down with their movable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild *Arabs* now, and the ancient *Nomades*: is proof ſufficient, that the reſidue of all Mankinde lived a more civil kinde of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in theſe things, I think, he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Floud; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of ſtone. But whether this be ſo, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the Weſt, whereon *Joppa* ſtood, as the *Land of Nod* on the Eaſt ſide of *Paradiſe*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Floud: and ſo were moſt of the other parts of the *World* beſides: And if well peopled in all, or moſt parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for neceſſary habitation, as for ſtrength and ſafety. Now that the World was throughly peopled before the Floud, ſeems clear to me by that great and univerſal Deluge, which God was pleaſed to bring upon the *Face of all the earth*: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppreſſion, in the ſight of God? Beſides, it is expreſly ſaid in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the *Floud*, in the largeſt accompt, and not 300 in the ſhorteſt; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philiſtims*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *Ellaſar*, *Ellan*, and of the *Nations*, who queſtionleſs had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham*, had their ſeveral Cities; as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damaſcus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded alſo: Not to ſay any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the land of *Shinaar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Reſen*, *Rehoboth*, and *Chalah* in the land of *Aſſyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Geneſis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Aſſyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having ſubdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, and 10600 armed Chariots; and was encountred by *Zoroaſter* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thouſand. The credibility whereof, if it were diſputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Cteſias* for his Author, *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus* invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of men, and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and ſlain by an *Indian* King. If then within the ſpace of 400 years, we finde the Eaſtern parts to be ſo well planted, ſo many Kings poſſeſſed of their Regal Thrones, and many of them able to impreſs ſuch infinite Armies; why may we not conclude, that in the courſe of 1656 years (for ſo long it was from the Creation to the Floud) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; eſpecially conſidering the long lives of men, amounting to 800, or 900 years, and conſequently the long time they had to apply themſelves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercators* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynaſty of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Euſebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the firſt planting of that Countrey by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the *Floud*, and to reach very near the times of the firſt *Creation*. That *Miſraim* the Son of *Ham* was poſſeſſed of *Egypt* within two hundred years after the *Floud*, is a truth undoubted. Nor ſee I any cauſe to doubt, but that in the like ſpace of time from the firſt Creation, it might be planted alſo by the ſons of *Adam*: conſidering, as we ought to do, that in the infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were moſt perfect, and of greateſt vigour, they obſerved no degree of Kindred or Conſanguinity; nor tied themſelves ſo ſtrictly to one woman, as they ſhould have done. And for the names of all the Kings of thoſe ſeveral Dynaſties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, ſuch as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of ſtone, as in thoſe of *Joppa*; or *Miſraim* might have them by tradition, from the hands of *Noah*; and ſo deliver them by tale unto his poſterity: the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and ſtanding very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be ſaid of *Egypt* (as for my part I ſee no reaſon but it may) then may the like be ſaid of all Countreys elſe, that they had their ſeveral Kings and Rulers, and ſet formes of Government: The Fathers of Families in thoſe times, having the command and ſoveraignty over all that deſcended of them. Nor make I any queſtion of it, but they had ſeveral Languages and formes of Speech, at leaſt as to the *Dialect* and pronunciation; although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the ſame. But being there are no *Remainders* of this firſt *Plantation*, unleſs we will give credit to ſome *Jewiſh* Fablers, who tell us of ſome Giants who ſaved themſelves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Maſius Damaſcenus*, who ſpeaks of ſome that ſaved themſelves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in ſome part of *Armenia*) I ſhall the leſſe inſiſt upon it. Nor had I ſtood ſo long upon theſe firſt Ages, which *Moſes* paſſeth over with ſo ſhort a Narrative; but that it is affirmed by *Pererius*, a right learned *Jeſuite*, that neither *Egypt* nor *Aſſyria*, nor the reſt of the *World* was planted and inhabited before the Floud; and that upon no ſtronger reaſon, for ought I can finde, but that it is affirmed in the laſt words of the tenth of *Geneſis*, That, *by theſe* (that is to ſay, by the poſterity of the Sons of *Noah*) *were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Floud*. Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo ſignificatur talem diviſionem non fuiſſe ante diluvium*; By which it doth appear (ſaith he) that in the times before the Floud was no ſuch diviſion.

'Tis

'Tis true, that this division of the world by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the best evidence in Scripture; because there is expres Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations. But looking on the great increase of mankinde before the Flood, that saying of *Berosus* will prove *tantamont* to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas novas sedes necessitatem compulisse*, that they were driven by necessity to seek new dwellings; the necessity of providing victuals for themselves and their families, being as strong a motive unto such dispersions, as the *Confusion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which such *necessity* would have done in long tract of time, the *confusion of Tongues* did in an instant: not only making those proud *Builders* to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themselves with such, whose language came most near to that which themselves were Masters of. It was high time, no question, to desist from this proud attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his exptctation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the *Confusion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the sending out of such Colonies as were neareſt to the place where the *Ark* did rest; I think it not amisse to resolve that question touching the resting of the Ark, on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* rested on the *Mountains of Ararat*; but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Josephus*, and some other, of more eminent note, (but such as ground themselves upon his authority) affirm those Mountains of *Ararat* to be the hils of *Armenia*. Which they do chiefly on these Reasons: First, because *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confessedly; and secondly, because of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Berosus*, and some others of the ancient Writers, cited by *Josephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordiæan* Mountains in *Armenia Major*, some of the Reliques of the *Ark* were remaining in their times, and used as a preservative against inchantments. Which notwithstanding I incline rather to the opinion of *Goropius Becanus*, (who amongst many strange whimseys broached some notable truths) by whom the Ark is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasus* in the Confines of *Tartarie*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reason, is the exceeding populosity of those Eastern Countreys, into which none of those by whom the world was planted after the *Confusion* of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their several Colonies, by any who have took most pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Staurobates*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians* brought into the field against *Semiramis*; and the vast Army of *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*; are proof enough, that those Countreys were of an elder Plantation, than to be a second or third *Castling* of some other *Swarm* setled in *Persia*, or *Assyria*, after the *Confusion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchilde of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raise out of all her Dominions, should be encountred by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; If that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colonie of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Countrey peopled and inhabited before that *Confusion*. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasus*) were generally esteemed the most ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitours, with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not stood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children near the place of the *Ark*, till numbers, and necessity compelled them to inlarge their Borders. And in the inlarging of their Borders, I shal make no question, but that such parts as lay neareſt, were peopled & possessed before those which lay furtheſt off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages since. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it fals short of that which comes from the Text it self, both in authority and weight; where it is said of the Heads of those several Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel*, that, *As they went frō the* East, *they found a Plain in the land of* Shinaar, *& there they abode*, Gen. 11. v. 2. If then they came from the *East* to the land of *Shinaar*, as the Text saith plainly that they did; it might well be that they came from those parts of *Asia*, on the South of *Caucasus*, which lie East of *Shinaar*, though somewhat bending to the North; impossible they should come from the *Gordiæan* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (supposed to be the Hils which the *Ark* did rest on) which lie not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the West. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is situate in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79, and 80. the *Latitude* of the *Gordiæan* Mountains in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which accompt those Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Westwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Valley, except we make *Moses* (whose hand God guided in his Books) to speak God knowes what, or in plain terms, to speak plain non-sense. And though this Scripture be so clear, that it needs no Commentary, yet the perplexities I finde amongst those of the other opinion, in shifting out of the authority of so plain a Text, do adde in my conceit some moment and weight unto it. For some will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with some bending towards the East; which were it true, as nothing is more truly false, *Moses* had never told us that they came from the *East*, but from some Countreys of the *North*, which lay toward the *East*. Others will have a double progress of the *Heads* of their several Families: First, from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Assyria*, and *Susiana*; And secondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this first journey, there is *negry quidem*, not so much as any one syllable in all the Scripture; besides the needlesness of making them go so far about, and to cross over the great Rivers *Euphrates*,

and

and *Tigris*; whereas they had a ſhorter, and an eaſier paſſage. *Capellus*, ſingular by himſelf, quarrelleth with the Tranſlation (received without diſpute by all other *Criticks*) and will not have the *Hebrew Kedem*, to be rendred *Eaſt*, but to ſignifie that Region, whatſoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the ſon of *Iſmael*, of whom we finde mention Gen. 25. 15. But then beſides his quarrel with all other Tranſlations, he ſuppoſeth a former progreſs from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that land of *Kedem*; and conſequently falleth into a part of the Errour before refelled. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Aſſyrians* called all thoſe parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eaſtern, and thoſe on this ſide of it, the Weſtern; would thence conclude, that theſe *Heads* may be ſaid by *Moſes* to have come from the *Eaſt*, becauſe they c me from one of the *Eaſtern* Provinces of the *Aſſyrian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For beſides that the greateſt part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the leaſt part of it on the Weſt, and therefore not within the compaſs of the Eaſtern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this diviſion was in uſe in the time of *Moſes*; we may as rationally conclude, and with leſs abſurdity, that the firſt Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any writer of that time, to come out of the *Weſt* (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly *Eaſt* of it) becauſe *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *Weſt* parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reaſon, the Arguments produced againſt us will be eaſily anſwered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Countrey of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Countrey. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Aſia* the *leſs*, run as far as *India* (by the Antients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moſes* the Mountains of *Ararat*, becauſe that was the firſt Countrey of the greater *Aſia* by which they paſſed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Juſt as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it; though it waſhed many Shores beſides: Or as ſome Hils with us are called *Malvern* Hils, becauſe they are higheſt near that Village, though they extend themſelves into other Lordſhips. And as as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Teſtimony of humane Writers, which (as before was ſaid) are brought in for an help, touching ſome Reliques of the *Ark* to be ſeen on the *Gordiæan* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For firſt *Beroſus* (followed herein by all the reſt) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-ſay; which is a weak ſtaff for ſo heavie a cauſe to relie upon. Secondly, to balance the authority of *Beroſus* (if of any credit in this caſe) we have the teſtimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as ancient almoſt as he, affirming poſitively, in *Scythia Saga renatum eſſe mortale genus*, that Mankinde was repaired in that part of *Scythia* which after was poſſeſſed by the *Sacans*: And they, we know, dwelt in thoſe parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucaſus*. And Thirdly, unto one *Tradition* to oppoſe another; thoſe of Mount *Caucaſus* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah*'s Plantation; Of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Tartarie*.

It is now time I ſhould go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diſperſions; for whom it was high time to conſort themſelves with ſuch as they could underſtand; the neceſſity of diſcourſe and conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aſide their old acquaintances, and joyn themſelves to others of their own new Language. I know that many learned men, according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made ſo many Languages to have been ſpoken upon that *Confuſion*: And that of thoſe, 26 being the Poſterity of *Sem*, diſperſed themſelves about *Aſia* the greater, 30 others of the loyns of *Cham*, peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the iſſue of *Japhet*, withdrew themſelves towards *Europe*, and the leſſer *Aſia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a conceit; though many, more improbable, have paſſed for currant. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongſt them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the land of *Canaan*. And as for *Joctan* and his Sons, being 13 in number, conſidering that he was the younger brother of *Phaleg*, in whoſe time this *Confuſion* hapned; it is moſt probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the deſign for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and conſequently could not be within the curſe of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the 70 to be taken off; as poſſibly might all the Sons of *Miſraim* be, if it were worth the while to inſiſt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the diſperſion into the ſaid three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but falſe enough, if underſtood of any preſent ſeparation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts ſo far remote and diſtant from one another. For what needed any ſuch remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and ſo enjoy that civill entercourſe, and mutual ſociety which the nature of Mankinde doth moſt delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joyning themſelves to men of the ſame Language with them, did firſt ſet down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and diſperſed themſelves into further Countreys, as either the neceſſity of providing of Victuals; or ſeeking better and more fruitful habitations for themſelves and theirs; or the deſire of being out of the reach of ſome potent Neighbours, whoſe yoke they found too heavie for their necks to bear; did enforce them to it. And being ſo ſetled to their mindes, the addition of a few more years brought the like neceſſity of ſending *Colonies* further off, as they grew more or leſſe populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongſt whom one *Swarm* ſends out another, that begets a *Caſtling*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too ſmall to hold them. For thus (to ſeek no further for an inſtance of it) the *Gauls* firſt planted *Britain*, the *Britains Ireland*, the *Iriſh Scotland*, and

the

the *Iſles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to ſuſtain, and too narrow to contain their multitudes, *anguſtas ſe fines habere arbitrantes*, as in *Cæſars Commentaries*; intended to plant themſelves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phenicians* flying the dreadful ſword of *Joſuah* the ſon of *Nun*, ſought them out dwellings further off from the preſent danger, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the firſt people after the Floud diſtribute and diſperſe themſelves into ſeveral parts, as their poſterities have done ſince, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own names, or ſome names of their own impoſing, upon the Countreys planted or diſcovered by them. And though the length, and conſuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names impoſed by the firſt *Adventurers*, I mean the firſt *Planters* after the Floud: yet all the Footſteps of Antiquity are not ſo defaced, but that ſome Nations and Cities have preſerved the memory of their firſt Founders and true Parents. In the diſcovery whereof, as *Joſephus* in his Book of *Jewiſh Antiquities* did firſt lead the way, and gave good light to thoſe who have travelled in it: So a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Geneſis*, Sir *Walter Ralegh* in his excellent Hiſtory, and lately by *Bochartus* a *French* Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whoſe learned labours, and ſome Animadverſions of mine own, I ſhall here ſay ſomewhat concerning the Plantation of the world by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual deſcription of it unto the Hiſtory of thoſe ſeveral Lands and Countreys which were planted by them.

Firſt therefore to begin with the poſterity of *Sem*, as thoſe who fixed themſelves in *Aſia*, without wandring further, we finde *Sem* to have had five ſons, that is to ſay, *Elam*, *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*, of whom there is no iſſue on Record in holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of theſe two there are but four Sons given to *Aram*, *viz*, *Uz*, *Hul*, *Gether*, and *Meſech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Anceſtor of *Abraham*, and *Joktan* the father of thoſe thirteen ſons, whoſe names we ſhall rehearſe hereafter, if occaſion be. From *Elam*, who is firſt named, did deſcend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times joyned together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O* Elam; *beſiege, O* Media. *Eſ.* 21. *v.* 2. *And all the Kings of* Elam, *all the Kings of the* Medes. *Jer.* 25. *v.* 25. And in the ſecond of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond of *Maccab. cap.* 6. *v.* 2. Sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there conſecrated to *Diana*. A City ſeated on the banks of the River *Eulæus*, and neighbouring cloſe to *Suſiana*, which therefore is ſometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan.* 8. *v.* 2. *I was* (ſaith he) *in the Palace of* Suſa, *in the Province of* Elam; where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all thoſe Nations whom they after maſtered. The ſecond ſon of *Sem* is *Aſſur*, of whom there is no queſtion made amongſt the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Aſſyrians*, called *Aſſyres* in ſome old *Greek* Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unwieldy Empire, who ſometimes generally paſſe by the name of *Aſſyrians*; but of the people of *Aſſyria* ſtrictly and properly ſo called, as it denotes the Countrey about *Ninive* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circuitum Adiabene*, Aſſyria *priſcis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, lib. 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Aſſur*, and him *Joſephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldæans*, called anciently *Arphaxadæi*, if he tell us true. But others tell us, and that more probably perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Aſſyria* which was firſt called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolemie*. *Lud* the fourth ſon is generally ſaid to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Aſia* no leſſe; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or Λυδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) being much alike. And it is poſſible enough that ſome of the poſterity of this *Lud* might afterwards ſettle in thoſe parts, and call the Countrey by the name of *Lud* their common Anceſtor; as the poſterity of *Abraham* took unto themſelves the name of *Hebrewes* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* ſhould in perſon go ſo far from the reſt of the ſons of *Sem*, I cannot eaſily imagine. For *Aram* the fift and laſt (as they ſtand in order of the Text) ſets himſelf down cloſe by his Brethren, in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the ſeveral Provinces which were hence denominated, we ſhall hereafter ſpeak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this teſtimony and acknowledgement from the pen of *Strabo*, *Quos nos* Syros *vocamus, ipſi Syri* Aramenios *&* Arameos *vocant*. Thoſe (ſaith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themſelves *Arameans*, or *Aramenians*. In, and about the ſame parts, did the four ſons of *Aram* ſet themſelves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria*, which is called *Syria Damaſcena*, or *Aram Dammeſek*: the building of the great City of *Damaſcus* being generally aſcribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damaſcus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next ſon of *Aram*, whom both *Joſephus* and St. *Hierome* ſettle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: And that not improbably, conſidering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* cals *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which ſtill preſerve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimna*, *Colſa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolemie*. For *Gether*, the third ſon of *Aram*, it is not yet agreed on where to finde his dwelling. *Joſephus*, contrary to all reaſon, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer* with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* ſets him down in the Province of *Caſſiotis*, and *Seleucis*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolemie* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nation called by *Plinie Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the contro-

verſie

verſie were at an end. But being that we finde in *Ptolemie*, a City of *Albania* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the ſame Countrey called *Getras*; I ſee no cauſe why we ſhould ſeek further for the ſeat of *Gether*; though the *Greek* Copies (more ſubject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the *Latin* were) in ſtead of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to ſet him, we ſhall finde *Mas* or *Meſch*, the laſt Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern part of *Syria*, towards *Meſopotamia*, near the Hill called *Maſius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* cals *Maſieni*; and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Maſca*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left ſetled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, in, or near *Aſſyria*. Not far from which in *Suſiana*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolemies* Tables; and the 23 Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. Adde unto this the authority of *Euſtathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σάλα ἀφ' ὃ Σουσανοὶ, The People of *Suſiana* came from *Sala*. But this, as I conceive, muſt be underſtood only of that part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sala*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Suſians*, or *Suſiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebrewes* do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his firſt-born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, ſituate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolemie* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chuboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, in ſtead of *Phalga*.

But the great increaſe of *Sems* poſterity came by *Joktan*, the ſecond Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whoſe names are on record in the tenth of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount in the Eaſt*. And here I muſt crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can finde no room for them, and leſs reaſon to place them. For being that *Chus* the ſon of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his poſterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himſelf confeſſeth, it muſt needs be, that they had ſpread themſelves over all the Countrey before any of the ſons of *Joktan* were of age ſufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly ſuppoſed not to have been born when ſuch of *Noahs* poſterity as are mentioned *Gen.* 10. diſperſed themſelves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two ſeveral places. Firſt, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Joktan* were preſent at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus* Joktanis *filii poſt aliquot annos geniti*; much leſs the ſons of *Joktan* begot many years after; *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 16. And ſecondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his children came not within the curſe of *Confounded Languages*, *quia nondum erant geniti*, becauſe then unborn, *Cap.* 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Joktan* and his children ſhould finde room in the beſt parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his poſterity had inhabited ſo long before. And as it is improbable that the ſons of *Chus* would plant themſelves in the worſt part of the Countrey for ſo many Ages; and leave the beſt and richeſt of it for ſome new Adventurers: So it is impoſſible that the ſons of *Joktan* ſhould either be removed ſo far from the reſt of the houſe of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the Eaſt of the River *Tygris*, as was before ſhewed; or that they ſhould be able, had they been ſo minded, to break through the whole Countreys of the *Aſſyrians*, *Chuſites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmoſt corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, muſt have a ſtronger Faith than mine; but it ſhall never conduce any thing to his *juſtification*. Nor am I moved at all at that which ſeems to me to be his weightieſt Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joſeph Ben Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Jektan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and ſervant of *Abraham*; becauſe that people ſo report it for their greater glory.

And for the ſeveral Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whoſe original he aſcribes to the ſons of *Joktan*, I ſee ſo many tranſpoſitions of Syllables, alterations even of *Radical* Letters, ſuch and ſo many wreſted *Originations*, as by the like liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to finde place for them in any Countrey whatſoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Allumæotæ* from *Almodad*, of the *Manitæ* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobaritæ* from *Jobab*? How impoſſible is it that *Jarech* ſhould give name to the Iſle which *Ptolemie* calleth Νῆσος Ἱερέων, *Inſula Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latine* hath it, that is to ſay, the Iſle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were therein bred: There being another Iſland of the ſame name near unto *Sardinia* (ſo called for the ſelf-ſame reaſon) and a Town called *Jerax* in *Hammoniaca* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarach* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* ſhould give name to *Urphre*, a poor *Iſle* of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Æthiopia*, on the other ſide of that Gulf? Or that *Dicla* muſt be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reaſon, but becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Countrey yeelds good plenty; as if ſome other Countreys did not yeeld as much? Theſe and ſome other reaſons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whoſe induſtry and abilities I do otherwiſe honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his ſons in the Eaſt part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderneſs, or land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Geneſis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet ſo far I

muſt

muſt yeeld to that learned man, that ſome of the Deſcendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themſelves upon the Sea-coaſts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the wealth and trade of *India*, have poſſeſſed themſelves of many of the Ports and pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount of the Eaſt*; ſo that by theſe two boundaries, *Meſha* and *Sephar*, their habitation muſt be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Meſha* to be *Muſa*, a noted Port-town on the South-weſt of *Arabia Felix*; and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-Eaſt of that Countrey; that City giving name to ſome Mount adjoyning. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Moſes* wrote, I cannot ſee how this poſition can agree with the word of Scripture; & therefore we muſt look for both in ſome other place. And firſt to find out *Meſha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himſelf, who maketh *Meſh*, the laſt of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general opinion of moſt writers elſe) to be planted in the mountainous tracts of *Meſopotamia*, from him called *Mons Maſius*; more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the Eaſt*; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imaus*, by *Ptolemie* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus* to the *Cape Comari* in the hither *India*, as *Poſtellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the ſons of *Joktan*, according to the bounds laid down in holy Scripture. But for fear this may not ſatisfie, for want of ſome Seconds to *Poſtellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly Eaſt from *Mons Maſius*, or the dwellings of *Meſh*; both in the Eaſt parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moſes* writ: *Mons Maſius* being placed by *Ptolemie* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the Eaſt, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* ſuper-added to it. And this agreeth to the poſition aſſigned to the ſons of *Joktan*, by *Joſephus*, *Euſebius*, and S. *Hierome*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Joſephus* that the *Joktanites* poſſeſſed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωφῆνος ποταμοῦ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, καὶ τῆς πρὸς ἀυτῷ Συρίας πολὺ, which lieth about *Kophenus* a River of *India*, together with ſuch parts of *Syria* as did border near it. Theſe words being borrowed from *Joſephus* both by *Euſebius* and S. *Hierome*; the firſt in ſtead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no ſuch place in the world as *Jeria*; and *Syria* and *Seria* (or the Countrey of the *Seres*) lying two far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we ſhould there read *Aria*; and withall granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largeſt latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Paropamiſus* and *Arachoſia*, extendeth as far Eaſtward as the Rover *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Maſius* and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: wich probably might give name to ſome Mount adjoyning, as *Saphar* by *Bochartus* is ſuppoſed to do to ſome of the *Arabian* hils bordering near unto it. And as theſe ſituations do agree exactly with the meaning of thoſe Ancient Writers; ſo is it alſo very ſutable to the other Plantations of the Sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all diſpute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when ſo many of the reſidue of *Noah*'s poſterity removed toward *Shinaar*; kept themſelves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at leaſt wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*: till *Joktans* Sons being grown to be Fathers of *Families*, were forced to caſt about for new habitations. And when neceſſity compelled them to ſeek new ſeats, I would fain know, why they ſhould think of making themſelves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countreys peopled and poſſeſſed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the Eaſt of *Tigris*, and the unpeopled Countreys of ſome parts of *India* lay ſo near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence and as little forced for ſome of their Plantations in the Eaſtern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the *Metropolis* of *Meſopotamia*, not far from *Meſha* or *Mons Maſius* the Weſtern Boundary: and *Jarach* of the Nation of the *Arachoſians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eaſtern limit, aſſigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an eaſie change might *Obal* or *Chobal* be ſuppoſed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamiſus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* people near unto the other? But theſe North-eaſtern parts being peopled, or not very pleaſant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* ſhall we finde in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himſelf confeſſeth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I diſpute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whoſe name are found in *Sabalaſſa* one of the mouthes of the River *Indus*, *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, a River in the ſame Tract named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: beſides the whole Nation of the *Sabæi* mentioned by *Dionyſius* in his *Periegeſis*. And though ſome late Criticks read it *Sibæ* in ſtead of *Sabæi*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Sibæ*; is confeſſed on all ſides:) yet ſeeing *Euſtathius* findes the *Sabæ* in this Countrey alſo, I cannot ſee but that there ſhould be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sons of *Joktan* we finde more evident footſteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli* an *Indian* people, in *Maleta* and *Maliba* two Towns of *India*, in *Malæus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malæi Colon* a Promontory of *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, than in the *Manitæ* of *Bochartus*. For if *Abimail* ſignifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he ſaith it doth; he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally ſo called, whom we finde in *India*; than that we ſhould be forced to look for them in the *Manitæ*, or look for the *Manitæ* in the houſe of *Abimail*. If *Dicla* muſt be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reaſon, then becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Countrey; I doubt not to finde as many *Palms* to plant by amongſt

the

the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatitis* an *Arabian* Region, have ſuch reſemblance to the name of *Chatſarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did: we may conclude with equal, if not better reaſon, that the *Chadramotitæ* an *Indian* people, ſeated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whoſe ſtreams ſome of the reſidue of his Brethren had their habitations, had their firſt Original from that *Chatſarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the Ancients generally ſet him in the *Indies* alſo, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir* two of his Brethren: to whoſe authority I ſubmit, becauſe I finde a *Province* in the Golden *Cherſoneſe*, called the Kingdome of *Ava*, and thought to be ſo called from this very man. And I conceive the like alſo of the reſt of the *Joktanites*, whoſe habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Meſh* and *Sephar*, if one would take that liberty of *Criticizing*, altering and tranſpoſing letters, as *Bochartus* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this ſhort Eſſay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium* Sephar *nomine, nec ulla poſterorum* Joktan *in* Aria *aut* India *veſtigia jam ſupereſſe*; that is to ſay, that there is no ſuch place as *Sephar*, nor any track or footſtep of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is ſo clearly evidenced.

Theſe were the Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compaſs than either the Poſterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the firſt, beſides the great footing which he had in *Aſia*, did poſſeſſe all *Africk*, and the other, beſides his ſhare in the greater *Aſia*, filled almoſt all the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe* with the Iſles thereof, with his fruitful Progeny. And firſt beginning with *Cham*, we finde him the Father of four ſons, that is to ſay, *Cuſh*, *Mizraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*; of which only *Phut* the third ſon hath no iſſue aſſigned him. To *Chuſh* the eldeſt Son were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Mizraim* the ſecond Son were born *Ludim*, and *Amamim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphtuhim*, *Pathruſim*, *Caphtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, who was the Father of *Philiſtim*. Of *Canaan* and his iſſue we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. In the mean time we will diſpoſe of theſe firſt branches of the ſtock of *Cham*, beginning firſt with *Chus* the eldeſt, and ſo deſcending to the reſt of this firſt Line. And firſt for *Chuſh*, though it be generally ſaid both by the *Greek* and *Jewiſh* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better ſearch he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, poſſeſſing himſelf of a good part of that which is called *Petræa*, and ſome part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the wife of *Moſes*, was daughter unto *Iethro* the Prieſt or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod.* 2. *v.* 16, *&c.* and yet is called an *Æthiopian woman*, in the 12. of *Num. v.* 1. it muſt needs be, that by *Æthiopian* in the laſt place, muſt be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtleſs was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Joſephus* for the *Iewes*, *Ptolemie* for the *Grecians*, and S. *Hierome* for the *Latine* Writers. But we ſhall canvaſs this more throughly in its proper place: the ſtrength of reaſon ſerving for a ſupplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hils or Rivers of all that Countrey, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Seba*, the eldeſt Son of *Chus*, ſets himſelf down on the ſhores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabæans*: the ſo much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the beſt Frankincenſe, being their *Metropolis* or head City. A Nation ſeated in the moſt Southern part of this *Peninſula*, ſubject in *Solomons* time to that famous Lady, called in the old Teſtament from her Countrey, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Teſtament from the ſituation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable teſtimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the ſecond of the Sons of *Chuſh*, moſt probable it is that he poſſeſſed himſelf of that part of *Arabia*, which lay neareſt unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, *Gen.* 2. *v.* 21. Some footſteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotæi* of *Eratoſthenes*, the *Chaulaſii* of *Feſtus Avienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Plinie*; being all three but one people, though thus diverſly named; and all of them planted towards the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo to *Babylon*. On the ſame ſhore of the *Perſian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabta* the third ſon of *Chus*, where *Ptolemie* informes us of a City called *Saphta*, and of an Iſland in the ſame Gulf called *Sophtha* alſo. From whence in probability ſome of this people might paſſe over into *Perſia*, on the other ſide of the Gulf, and there give name to the *Sabtæi*, which by the tranſpoſition of the letter *T*. are by *Ptolemie* called the *Stabæi*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus* did firſt plant himſelf in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is ſo plain and poſitive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fifth ſon, I confeſſe I can finde no track in any of the ancient Authors. For why we ſhould admit of ſo great a change, as firſt, of *B.* into *M.* and then, of *T.* into *D.* (which could not eaſily be done by very careleſs Tranſcribers) and ſo finde *Sabteca* in *Samidace*, a City or Countrey of the *Carmanians* on the *Perſian* ſide of the Gulf, I can ſee no reaſon: And therefore rather chuſe to mingle him and his poſterity with the ſons of *Sabta*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the ſame ſhore of the *Perſian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *Engliſh* Bibles call him *Raama*) was ſetled on the banks of the Bay of *Perſia*, hath ſo good authority, that there is no diſpute to be made of that: *Ptolemie* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latine* Tranſlation) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* alſo in his Book *De Urbibus*, Καὶ Ῥῆγμα πρὸς τῷ Περσικῷ κόλπῳ. *And Regma, on the Perſian Gulf*, as his words there are. And not far thence we are to look for his ſon *Sheba*; both being joyned together in the Book of God; and both there ſaid to buſie and employ themſelves in the trade of Merchandizing; *The Merchants of* Shebah, *and* Raamah (ſaith the Text) *they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, Ezek. 27. v. 22. So that the Nations of the *Sabeans*, though deſcended

deſcended at the firſt from ſeverall parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other; as evidently appeareth by thoſe words of *Pliny*; where he informeth us moſt truly, that the *Sabæans*, an *Arabian* people, well known for their abundance of Frankincenſe, *ad utraque maria porrectis gentibus habitare*, had ſpread themſelves over all the Countrey, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Perſia*. Finally, in the ſame track we find *Dedan* the other ſonne of *Regma*, and the laſt of all the ſonnes of *Chus*: there being on the mouth of the *Perſian* Gulf (but on the *Arabian* coaſt thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius*, and ſome other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than ſo, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the ſame trade of Merchandiſe; *The men of* Dedan *were thy Merchants*, chap. 27. 15. Sheba, *and* Dedan, *and the Merchants of* Tarſhiſh, chap. 38. 13. *They brought thee horns of Ivory, and Ebony*, ſaith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next houſe of the race of *Cham*, was *Miſraim*, the ſecond ſonne, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Chus* and his poſterity, in the rich and delectable Countreys of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own ſons, and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no queſtion amongſt the Learned, though all the tracks and footſteps of *Miſraim* be quite worn out: unleſs any thing of it were preſerved in the word *Meſori*, by which the *Egyptians* antiently called the firſt Moneth in the year; or in that of *Meſre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt*, to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Miſraim* in the *Hebrew* Bibles, that only is ſufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his ſonne *Ludim*, whom he ſent out to people *Æthiopia*, the next Countrey to him. For that this *Ludim* was the Father of thoſe *Æthiopians*, many good reaſons are alleadged. Firſt, from the Texts of *Eſaiah*, chap. 66. 19. and *Jer.* 46. 9. where *Lud* is ſaid to be very *skillfull in drawing the Bow*; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Ethiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the antient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with thoſe of *Phul*, in the place of *Eſaiah* before cited: which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Græcians* call *Philæ*, ſituate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Ethiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Ethiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Antients witneſſe. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with thoſe of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and thoſe of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek.* 30. ver. 5. and that of *Jer.* above mentioned; (where our *Engliſh* very ſtrangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too farre off both from *Chuſh* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the Arguments being ſo ſtrong, and ſo moſt demonſtrative. I go on therefore to the next; only obſerving by the way, that the *Ethiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our *Engliſh* Bibles, are not theſe of *Africa*, but the *Chuſites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Tranſlators alwayes rendring *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unleſs they were the ſame with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Plinie*, a people ſeated on the ſea-ſide neer the greater *Syrtis*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give ſome countenance; who ſeem to be the ſame with the people of *Lybia*, a Province ſeated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Lybiægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Napthtuhim*, I am alſo at a loſſe, unleſſe we find them ſomewhere in *Cyrenaica*; and that ſome remnant of the name be in *Aptuchi fanum*, which occurs in *Ptolemie*. But for the *Pathruſin*, I think no queſtion need be made, but that they were the people of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Eſai.* 11. 11. *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. and ſeems to be that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolemie* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*. (And *Pathuris* the *Greek* or *Septuagint* term *that*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which deſcended from the ſonnes of *Miſraim*, in *Egypt*, and the Countreys adjoyning to it. And there, or thereabouts, we are to look for *Cophtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, the two ſonnes remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Caſluhim* in *Colchis*, and the *Cophtorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*; where notwithſtanding there is no track of the names remaining. But this being ſo far off from *Egypt*, in, and neer which, both *Miſraim* himſelf, and all the reſt of his ſonnes were planted; I can by no means yeeld to it, though to content ſuch learned men as would fain have it ſo, I think it poſſible enough that ſome of the *Egyptians* in ſucceeding times, moved with the fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was ſuppoſed to yeeld to ſome Adventurers; might leave their native ſoyl to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Caſluhim* were firſt planted in the Region of *Caſſiotis* (not far from *Damiata*, a chief town of *Egypt*) which retains ſomewhat of the name; and ſo doth *Coptus*, an old City of *Egypt*, of the name of *Cophtorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophti*, which at this day is given to the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its firſt riſe from *Cophtorim*, rather than that they are ſo called *quaſi Ægophti*, corruptly for *Ægyptii*, I muſt needs ſay I am not ſatisfied. Beſides, it being cleer in Scripture, that the *Caſluhim* and *Cophtorim* dwelt neer together, and that the *Philiſtims* are ſaid to deſcend from *Caſluhim*; if *Caſluhim* ſhould go for *Colchis*, and *Cophtorim* for *Cappadocia*, we muſt firſt carry them I know not how far off from the reſt of their Brethren, againſt the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philiſtims* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the land of *Egypt*, from whence their Anceſtors and Allies were ſo far remote. Whereas by ſetling theſe two Nations amongſt the reſt of their Brethren, the journey of the *Philiſtims* unto *Canaan*, and ſetling themſelves in the poſſeſſions of the *Avim* (a *Canaa-*

nitiſh people) whom they had ſubdued, *Deut* 2. 25. is both eaſie and naturall. But before we follow theſe *Philiſtims* further in their new Plantation amongſt the *Canaanites*, we will firſt ſee what became of *Phut*, the third ſonne of *Cham*. And if we guide our ſelves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquity, we ſhall find him ſetled Weſt of his Brother *Miſraim*, and ſo to the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their dominions. Some Relicts of the name there were in the time of *Joſephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Plinie* makes mention of it alſo. *Ptolemie* takes notice of a River in thoſe parts called *Pthuth*, which comes very neer it. And ſo doth *Iſidore*, Origin. l. 2. But St. *Hierome* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whoſe words I ſhall put down, and ſo leave *Africa*; Phut *Lybiæ, à quo & Mauritaniæ fluvius uſque ad præſens* Phut *dicitur, omniſque circa eum Regio* Phutenſis; *cujus rei multi Scriptores tam Græci quam Latini teſtes ſunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*; and many antient Writers both *Greek* and *Latin* called to witneſſe to it.

And now we ſhould proceed to *Canaan* and his ſonnes (eleven in all) being the fourth and laſt branch of the houſe of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or neer the land of *Canaan*, we ſhall find them there; or meet with them in ſuch Plantations and Colonies as they ſent abroad, under the title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whoſe *Tents* God promiſed to *enlarge*, as indeed he did; ſpreading his branches over *Europe*, the leſſer *Aſia*, and a great part of the greater alſo. To him were born ſeven ſonnes in all, that is to ſay, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Meſech*, and *Thyras*: Of which, the Iſſue of two only are upon record, viz. *Aſchenaz*, *Riphath*, and *Togarma*, the ſonnes of *Gomer*; *Eliſha*, *Tarſhiſh*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the ſonnes of *Javan*. And firſt for *Gomer* and his ſonnes, they firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of convenient dwellings in the *greater*, and the *leſſer Aſia*. *Gomer* himſelf firſt planting in the mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleaſant, and unfruitfull dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the dayes of *Plinie*, did preſerve his memory. For that the poſterity and people of *Gomer*, called at firſt *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongſt the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himſelf in the *Greater Phrygia*, ſo did his eldeſt ſon *Aſchenaz* in *Phrygia minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, ſpreading himſelf along upon the *Helleſpont*, and thoſe *Greekiſh* Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left ſome memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*, together with a River, and a Lake of the ſame name alſo. And in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, and the Countrey of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoyning, antiently known by the name of *Aſcania*; and the *Aſcaniæ Inſulæ* alſo on the coaſts thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Aſchenaz*, the Kings and great men of thoſe parts, took the name of *Aſcanius*. Of which name, beſides *Aſcanius* the ſon of *Æneas*, we find a King mentioned in the ſecond of *Homers Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the ſiege of *Troy*. In the ſame quarters of the World we find *Riphath* alſo, the founder of the *Riphei*, a people dwelling in the Eaſt parts of *Bithynia*, and ſpreading alſo over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are ſome remnants of his name to be found amongſt the Antients. For beſides that *Joſephus* ſaith expreſly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Riphei*; there is mention in *Apollonius Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebæus*, which riſing in *Bithynia*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Pontus Euxinus*, neer to *Paphlagonia*, of which River *Plinie* alſo doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it ſelf, but tells us alſo of a Region of the ſame name, and of a people thereabouts, which are called *Rhebæi*. Nor need we look much further to find out the ſeat of *Togarma* the third ſonne of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judæa*; Gomer *and all his bands, the houſe of* Togarma *in the North quarters and all his bands*, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not gueſſe amiſſe, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Countrey not only bordering neer to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the north of the land of *Canaan*, but very well ſtocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horſes, as *Strabo* teſtifieth in the 11 Book of his *Geography*; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the ſame Prophet tells us of them, cap. 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma*'s dwelling muſt be found in *Cappadocia*; we muſt firſt know that the *Greek* Tranſlators call him generally by the name of *Torgama*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully*, *Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Councell of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Biſhop of the *Trogmades* (Κυριακὸς Ἐπίσκοπος Τρομάδων) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the ſonnes of *Gomer*, we will next purſue the reſt of the ſonnes of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his four ſonnes we will keep together. And the next ſon of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much diſpute and difference amongſt our *Antiquaries*; ſome making him the Father of the *Scythians*, ſome of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that ſuch terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but ſuch terrible Nations. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome of his poſterity in ſucceeding times, finding their own ſeats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the founders of ſome *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nations; but that *Magog* himſelf in his firſt Plantation, ſhould wander ſo farre out of the way from the reſt of his brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongſt them, I cannot eaſily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogareus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Plinie*, that the City of *Cœle-Syria*, which the *Grecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themſelves called *Magog*: I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to look for *Magog* any where elſe, than in thoſe Countreys where they have left ſuch evident Land-marks to diſcern themſelves by.

But

But this we ſhall the better ſee by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Meſech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek.* cap. 38. 2. and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far aſunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action againſt the *Jews*, according to the ſcope and purpoſe of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Meſech*, whom the Antients named *Moſoch*, ſeated himſelf on the North and North-Eaſt of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and ſo unto the *Caſpian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Plinie*, *Ptolemie*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moſchici*, diſterminating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and moſt like to be the dwelling of *Meſech* or *Moſoch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, becauſe *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Meſech*, is by moſt Writers ſaid to have ſetled himſelf in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Joſephus* alſo telling us, that antiently the *Iberi* were called *Thobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on ſome new occaſion. And hereunto the conſtant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives ſome good authority, who boaſt of their deſcent from *Tubal*: which can no otherwiſe be granted, then as they were a Colony of theſe *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principall Rivers is ſtill called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Sonne of *Iaphet*, it is moſt plain by the autority of Scripture (were there no proof elſe) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Heſter*, are repreſented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of thoſe who fixt themſelves in either, or in both the *Aſias*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the ſonnes of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the *leſſer Aſia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous progenies. And firſt beginning with *Javan* as the Elder brother, moſt Authors make him the Originall of thoſe *Greek* Nations which paſſe under the generall name of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the aſſertion, conſidering that the *Greek* Tranſlators of the Bible, in ſtead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all thoſe who elſewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the antienteſt of the *Greeks*, named *Iaones*. Now *Javan* and *Iaon* ſound ſo like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the ſame. A name not only proper to the *Athenians*, and their *Colonies*, (though probable enough firſt belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Bœotians* and *Achæans* alſo; yea, and extending alſo into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we *Engliſh Græcia*. Nor do we much diſ-joyn *Javan* from the reſt of that ſtock, by carrying him croſs the ſeas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his ſecond Plantation; And leaving him well ſetled in the *greater Phrygia*, and his ſon *Askenaz* in the *leſſer*; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) paſſe over the *Helleſpont*, and plant himſelf in *Attica*, called at firſt *Ionia*, ſaith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theſeus*. Or if any one notwithſtanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecataus*, that the the *Iones* came out of *Aſia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpoſe) I ſhall not much contend againſt that opinion; ſo it be alſo granted on the other ſide, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the ſhores of *Aſia*, paſſed over into *Greece*, as a land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Eliſha* his eldeſt ſonne, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Aſian* ſide, as *Joſephus* hath it; and the founder of *Elis* in *Peloponneſus*, and planter of the *Grecian* Illes, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, 27. 7. are called the Iſles of *Eliſha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Iſles of *Greece*, which by the Prophet is affirmed of the Iſles of *Eliſha*; namely, that the inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blew* and *Purple*: in which ſome of the *Grecian* Iſles were ſuch excellent Artizans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porphyris*, and *Cithera* was called Πορφυρῆσσα, only from the abundance of *Purple*, which they had amongſt them. Not to ſay any thing of *Coos*, *Niſyrus* and *Gyarus*, and ſome other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that commodity.

A ſhorter journey, but withall a far ſhorter Territory fell to the lot of *Tarſhiſh* the ſecond ſonne; whom *Javan* when he travelled further upon new diſcoveries, left ſetled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*; where either he, or ſome of his Poſterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarſus*, the principall City of that Province. For that *Tarſhiſh* in thoſe early dayes ſhould go into *Spain*, and there build *Tarteſſus*, I take to be a ſtrange (if not idle) *Romance*; that Town being built by the *Phœnicians*, many ages after, without relation unto *Tarſhiſh*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations thoſe of *Cilicia* or *Tarſus* made in times ſucceeding, as I no where find, ſo is it not materiall to my preſent purpoſe; which principally is to ſettle the ſonnes of *Noah* in their firſt habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim* the third ſonne of *Javan*, whom *Joſephus* ſetleth firſt in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence ſurnamed Κιτιεύς. *Joſephus* is herein followed by St. *Hierome* in his Notes on *Geneſis*, in whoſe time (as *Pintus* telleth us in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Citium* was ſtill ſtanding; ſo do *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* ſets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. *After that* (ſaith the Author) Alexander *the ſon of* Philip, *went forth of the land of* Chethim, *and ſlew* Darius *King of the* Perſians *and* Medes, cap. 1. v. 1. And after in the 8 Chapter of the ſame Book, verſe 5. *Perſeus* King of *Macedon* is called King of the *Cittims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his firſt planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reaſon of the neighbourhood of his brother *Tarſhiſh* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarſus* lying neer unto it;) But finding in time that Iſland to be either too barren, or too ſmall for his people; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Aſia* were taken up already by the firſt Adventurers, he might finally fix himſelf, or ſome of his poſterity, in *Macedonia*, as a ſpare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his ſonnes planted firſt in *Italie*, which I ſee *Bochartus* would fain have, were againſt the method of Plantations; and he muſt give them wings to

fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the uſe of ſhipping, or not accuſtomed at leaſt to make long voyages. But that in courſe of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, ſome of the race of *Cittim* might paſſe over into *Italy*, the paſſage thither from ſome of the Ports of *Greece* being ſhort and eaſie, I am apt enough to beleeve, and in its proper place ſhall declare my ſelf for it. Nor can I otherwiſe agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom againſt all right and reaſon he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Countrey, to be named of him; whom the *Grecks*, miſtaking the letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh* (as indeed the letters are ſo like, that one may very eaſily be miſtook for the other) moſt commonly preſent unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to ſettle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Iſle of *Rhodes*, lying ſo neer the dwellings of his other brethren; till wanting room for the increaſe of his poſterity in ſo ſmall an Iſland, he might coaſt along the ſhores of *Peloponneſus*, and fix himſelf finally in *Epirus* by his brother *Eliſha*; where in the Province of the *Moloſſians*, we ſhall find a City called *Dodona*, without any ſuch miſtake or change of letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three furtheſt parts of *Europe* in reſpect of *Aſia*, ſhould be planted all at once by theſe ſonnes of *Javan*, is ſo incredible an imagination, that he muſt have a very ſtrong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally as for *Thyras* the laſt ſonne of *Japhet*, having accompanyed his brother *Javan* to the ſhores of *Aſia*, and ſeeing him paſſed over the ſeas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next ſtraight or *Fretum* (ſince called *Thracius Boſphorus*) and fixed himſelf in *Thrace*, which countrey he gave name unto, as moſt Writers teſtifie. Nor want there ſuch apparent footſteps of the name of *Thyras*, beſides the name of *Thracia* (as ſome ſpell the word) which may adde good autority to this general teſtimony; there being both a River and an Haven-town not far from *Bizantium*, which *Plinie*, *Ptolemie*, and *Mela* call *Athyras*; a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Mœſia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof moſt of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally the *Thracians* calling their God *Mars*, by the name of *Thuras*. Not to ſay any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and ſome others of the Kings of *Thrace*; whoſe names come very neer unto that of *Thyras*, as the firſt founder of their Nation.

Thus have we ſeen the ſeverall Generations and Diſperſions of the Sonnes of *Noah*, ſo far forth as their names are regiſtred in holy Scripture: theſe being the Heads and Leaders of thoſe ſeveral Tribes which joyned together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards diſperſed themſelves, as before was ſhewn. But that no more than theſe (I mean Heads of Families) deſcended in ſo long a time from the loyns of *Noah*; that they ſhould have towards the new peopling of the world, in an hundred years (for ſo long it muſt be at leaſt from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than ſixteen ſonnes in all; and ten of thoſe ſixteen go childleſſe alſo to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born ſince the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inſpiration; or being met, would joyn together in a work of ſo little profit; or that if *Noah* or *Sem* had been there amongſt them, they would not have diſſwaded them from that fooliſh enterpriſe. And therefore I ſhould rather be of their opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himſelf in thoſe parts, which lay neereſt to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eaſtward as he thought convenient, ſent out the ſurpluſage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of theſe *Undertakers*; directing them perhaps to the land of *Shinaar*, where himſelf had dwelt before the *Flood*. Where being come, and deſtitute of graver and more ſober counſells, they fell upon that vain attempt which became their ruine; and made them ſcatter and diſperſe themſelves into ſo many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walt. Raleigh* pleads the point exceeding ſtrongly, that it muſt needs be that *Noah* was ſetled in the Eaſt, and had well peopled all thoſe parts which lay neereſt to him, before he ſent this Troop abroad upon new diſcoveries. For being it is expreſly ſaid in holy Scripture, that *as they went from the Eaſt, they found a plain in the Land of Shinaar*; it muſt needs follow without controverſie, that they came from the *Eaſt* Countreys into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia* (as the Vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countreys whence they came were not left utterly deſolate upon this remove, but very ſufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by thoſe huge Armies which *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the field. Of whom the firſt being invaded by *Ninus* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, encountred him with an Army of 400000. fighting men; the other on the like occaſion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did conſiſt, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and an half of men, beſides 10000. armed Waggons; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may ſerve to prove that the Eaſt muſt needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For conſidering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in deſcent from *Nimrod*, (that is to ſay, the ſonne of *Belus*, the ſonne of *Nimrod*) it had been a moſt impoſſible thing that ſuch a vaſt increaſe ſhould be made only out of *Colonies* in ſo ſhort a time, as needs muſt be between the planting of the Countreys before ſpecified, and theſe two great actions, unleſſe God raiſed them out of ſtones, or by ſome ſuch miracle, to abate the pride of theſe Uſurpers over other Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wiſe man would expect to find) it is I ſay, a thing impoſſible that *Staurobates* ſhould exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodorus* ſaith he did; he being but a Caſtling of a ſecond Swarm, and ſhe the great Commandreſſe of that part of the world from whence he came upon a ſecond or a third Plantation. Adde unto this, that thoſe who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the great, aſſure us that he found more Cities, and ſumptuoſities in that little Kingdome of *Porus*, which lay ſide by ſide to the Eaſt of the River *Indus*, than in all his other travells and undertakings: And this may ſerve inſtead of a further evidence, that the Eaſt Countreys were

not

not planted after this diſperſion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as ſoon as any in the World. Nor know I elſe where to find either *Noah* himſelf, or *Sem* and *Iaphet*, unleſſe they ſtayd behind with their Father *Noah*, or were diſpoſed of by themſelves in their ſeverall quarters: there being none of thoſe, though moſt diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this diſperſion, that either ſpeak of any Nations planted by them, or of their ſetling in the Colonies of any one of their deſcendants. Which is to me a very ſtrong Argument that they came not with the reſt to the plains of *Shinaar*, but tarryed ſtill in thoſe habitations wherein God had placed them.

Againſt this I can ſee but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old *Tradition* amongſt the Jews. That from the Text is gathered from thoſe words of *Moſes*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sonnes of *Noah*, he adds, *And by theſe were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood*, *Gen.* 10. v. *ult.* But theſe words, as I take it, do relate only unto that diviſion which was made upon occaſion of the *confuſion* of *Languages*, when they were forced to give over their work, and ſort themſelves into ſeverall Companies; and not to ſuch Plantations as were made before: who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as ſeverall and divided Nations. For the *Tradition* of the *Iews*, 'tis this, that from the beginning of the world to the building of *Babel*, that language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the houſe of *Eber*, (whence it had the name) becauſe he joyned not with the reſt in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may poſſibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-ſpring of *Noah* which came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and conſequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curſe of *confounded Languages*; but muſt needs ſpeak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as thoſe deſcended of the loyns of *Heber*. But againſt this Tradition, and the conſequents of it, there are ſome things to be objected. For firſt it is but a *Tradition*, and therefore of no ſure foundation to build upon. And ſecondly it is ſuch a *Tradition* as holds no good coherence with the truth of Story; it being a moſt clear and demonſtrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Meſopotamia*, but that which he found ſpoken in the land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Poſterity did conform themſelves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they ſay it was, (but moſt undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a priviledge conferred on *Heber*, that he and his Poſterity ſhould ſpeak the Originall Language without alteration or corruption, it muſt have been extended to all thoſe of the houſe of *Jcktan* which deſcended from him; as alſo to the houſe of *Laban* in *Padan Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the ſeed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Iſhmaelites* and *Idumæans*, deſcended of *Abraham* and *Eſau*; and not be limited and confined only to the houſe of *Iacob*. Either all theſe muſt be partakers of ſo great a priviledge, becauſe their Father *Heber* had obtained it for himſelf and his; or elſe it was not ſuch a priviledge, or given ſo univerſally and incommunicably to the houſe of *Heber*, as they ſay it was. So the *Tradition* falls to ground as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that thoſe who ſtaid behind with *Noah* ſpake the ſame Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what elſe ſoever it was) I ſee no reaſon to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into ſeverall Languages or *Dialects* of the ſame one Language, by the commerce and intercourſe which they had with Nations of a different ſpeech; as well as thoſe of *Iudah* in ſo ſhort a time as the *Captivity* of *Babylon*, had loſt the purity of that Language which they ſo much brag of; and could not underſtand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an *Interpreter*. Of which ſee *Nehem.* c. 8. v. 7, 8.

But to proceed: On this diſperſion of the Families of the ſonnes of *Noah*, it came to paſſe, that though they all deſcended from one common Root, yet by the ſituations of their ſeverall dwellings, they came to be of ſeverall tempers and affections; in which they were ſo different from one another, that it might ſeem they had been made at firſt out of ſeverall Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O ſee how full of wonders ſtrange is Nature,
Sith in each Climate, *not alone in ſtature,*
Strength, colour, hair; but that men differ do
Both in their humours, and their manners too.
The Northern *man is fair, the* Southern *foul;*
That's white, this black, that ſmiles, and this doth ſcowl.
Th' one's blithe and frolick, the other dull and froward;
Th' one's full of courage, th' other a fearfull coward, &c.

The ground or reaſon of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of thoſe Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on thoſe ſeverall Countries: which do continue ſtill the ſame, though many times the Countries do ſhift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patriâ ſorte durantia, quæ totas in hiſtoriis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, ſaith a Modern, but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth will make it cleer and evident to a practicall judgement, which otherwiſe might appear obſcure in the ſearch of cauſes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum eſſe majorem quam virorum, ſecundum minorem quam feminarum.* Which is the ſame which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, That he begins an action like thunder, and ends it in a ſmoak. *Ut ſunt* Gallorum *ſubita ingenia*,

ingenia, ſaith *Cæſar* of the antient *Gauls*: and I believe the preſent *French* are altogether as raſh and harebraind, as the other were. *Gallia fœcunda Cauſidicorum*, was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French* by ſome late Obſervers, that there are commonly more Law-tryals amongſt them in one year, than have been in *England* ſince the Conqueſt. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the ſeverall Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britons*, *Normans*, and *Goths* being in poſſeſſion of their ſeverall dwellings. Thus alſo it is ſaid by *Tacitus* of the antient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli opprobrium*; that it was no diſgrace to any, to ſpend the whole day and night in drinking: and more than ſo, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace in conviviis conſultare*, that they conſulted over their Cups of their weightyeſt buſineſſes. Since which time though all *Germany* hath ſhifted almoſt all her old inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Suedes*, *Avares*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Sclaves*, *Hunnes*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet ſtill thoſe ill cuſtomes are as much in uſe amongſt them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off; the old Philoſopher *Anacharſis* tells us of the antient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feaſts they uſed little Goblets, πινοντες δε εν μεγαλοις πινοσι, and greater towards the end, when they were almoſt drunken: which cuſtome ſtill remains amongſt them, as *G. Sandys* obſerveth, notwithſtanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of ſtate and people, which have hapned ſince. I ſhall not ſpeak here of the effeminateneſſe of the *Aſiaticks*, or the cruelty or implacableneſſe of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithſtanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, ſucceſſively, and reſpectively, in theſe ſeverall Countreys. And therefore I conconclude this point in theſe words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quædam inconcuſſa, quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus naſci contigerit, ſua fata diviſerit.*

Nor is this all the conſequent of this *diſperſion* of the Families of the ſonnes of *Noah*; the ſeparation of their perſons producing, firſt, an alteration of affections, and that engendring naturall *Animoſities*: which ſeconded by their ſeverall intereſſes and *Reaſons* of *State*, hath left almoſt no people without ſome ſuch enemy which doth particularly and perverſly croſſe them in all their Counſels. Concerning which, take here the Obſervation of that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian, *Philip de Comines*; which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, "*In rebus humanis ita comparatum eſt, ut nullus fere ſit populus* "*quem non æmulus aliquis exerceat*, &c. It is (ſaith he) ſo ordered in the ſtate of humane affairs, that "there is almoſt no Nation without a more particular Enemy. The *Engliſh* are enemies to the *French*, "the *Scots* to the *Engliſh*; the *Portugueze* have the like inveterate hatred againſt the *Spaniards*. The "Princes of *Italy* enjoy great poſſeſſions without any good title; but are continually oppoſed by the "more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. The *Arragonian* Kings of *Naples*, have "found perpetuall Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes of *Millain*, of the houſe of *Or*-"*leans*. The Princes of *Italy*, and the *Florentines*, have a ſtitch at *Venice*; as the States of *Genoa*, and "*Sienna*, have againſt the *Florentines*. In *Germany* the animoſities have been great and of long con-"tinuance, between the houſes of *Auſtria*, and *Bavaria*; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of recon-"ciliation which is between the *Switzers*, and the *Auſtrian* Family. The Dukes of *Cleve*, and *Gulick*, "are alwayes upon ill terms with their neighbours of *Gelderland*: And in the North, the Cities on the "*Baltick* Seas have their continuall quarrels with the Kings of *Denmark*. Nor are the enmities any "thing leſſe, if they be not greater, which are diſcernible amongſt the people of *Aſia* and *Africk*, than "thoſe that are above remembred. So far and to this purpoſe ſaith that notable and judicious Writer.

The conſideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it ſelf ſufficient to ſhew the neceſſary uſe of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as well for the underſtanding the affairs of the Ages paſt, as for commerce and correſpondency with the Nations preſent. For had no *Hiſtories* been written in the former times, in what a dull ignorance had we lived of all thoſe occurrences which do ſo much concern the whole ſtate of Mankind, and are our principall directors in life and action? in which reſpect the Orator moſt truly calleth it, *Magiſtram vitæ*. For upon the credit of this *Hiſtory*, the examples of our Anceſtors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do moſt eſpecially depend, And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of matters long ago paſſed; to ſearch out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedome, and the life of expreſſion, ſuch things as are found out on a diligent ſearch; to repreſent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the characters of Perſons, the uncertainties of Counſels, and the conveyances of Actions, the ſubtilties of Pretenſions, and the ſecrets of State; muſt of neceſſity be a work of as publique uſe, as it is of great both pains and judgement. Beſides, it gives a kind of eternity to all ſuch men, who by their Counſels or Atchievements have deſerved nobly of thoſe Kingdoms, and Common-wealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the *Orator* doth not only call it *Magiſtram vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis, Teſtem temporis, Nuntiam vetuſtatis, & Vitæ memoriam.* According to which character, I find theſe Verſes ſet before a Chronicle of ſome Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book beſides.)

For though in theſe dayes Miracles be fled,
Yet this ſhall of good Hiſtories *be ſed,*
They call back time that's paſt, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to endear unto us the uſe of *Hiſtory*, beſides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the *eternity* (if I may ſay ſo) which it conferreth

on

on the *Actors* themſelves, by the preſervation of their names from the ruines of Time, and the pit of Oblivion. For firſt, it ſtirreth men to Vertue, and deters them from Vice, by ſhewing forth the glorious memories of vertuous men, and the ill ſavour which is left behinde men of ungodly life; and eſpecially keeps perſons of moſt eminent place from letting looſe the reins unto all licentiouſneſs, by repreſenting this to their conſideration, that all their actions ſhall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conſerver of moſt Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of ſo many of the old *Philoſophers*; out of which a perfect body of *Philoſophy*, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digeſted. Thirdly, it is the beſt *School-maſter* in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctual directions, than can be otherwiſe obtained; and is withall the beſt Aſſiſtant to the Stateſman or Politician, who from hence draw their Obſervations and Concluſions; and become thereby ſerviceable to their Prince and Countrey, though never travelled more than amongſt their Books. So *Archimedes* in his ſtudy, and *Demoſthenes* in his Orators Gown, endangered more the enemies of their ſeveral Countreys; than the *Athenians*, or *Syracuſans*, did by dint of ſword. And laſt of all, beſides theſe civil benefits and conſiderations, and the great help which it affords in the way of diſcourſe; there is no particular branch of knowledge more uſeful for the true and perfect underſtanding of holy Scripture, than that of *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Profane* Hiſtory; or which gives clearer light to many dark paſſages thereof, eſpecially in the *Prophetical* writings of either Teſtament.

This, as it ſhewes the neceſſary uſe and benefit which redounds from *Hiſtory*, ſo doth it ſerve to uſher in that commendation which belongs to the ſtudy of *Geography* alſo; without ſome knowledge wherein, the ſtudy of Hiſtory is neither ſo pleaſant, nor ſo profitable, as a judicious Reader would deſire to have it. 'Tis true, *Geography* without *Hiſtory* hath life and motion, but very unſtable and at random; but *Hiſtory* without *Geography*, like a dead carkaſſe, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at leaſt but ſlowly on the underſtanding. For what delight or ſatisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know ſomewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned. In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath deſerved very well of all his Readers; premiſing to the Actions of every Countrey, ſome brief deſcription of the place, and chief Towns therein. For though the greatneſſe of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and ſatisfaction unto the reading of the ſtory, which conveighs it to us. *Hiſtory* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Fires or Meteors which Philoſophers call *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, if joyned together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain ſhipwrack: and are like two Siſters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almoſt ſaid impiety) to be kept aſunder. So as that which Sir *Phil. Sidney* ſaid of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And ſhe not being, he was none;

may be as juſtly ſaid of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as of thoſe two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the ſtudy of *Geography*, which is exceeding uſeful to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in diſcovering the ſituation of *Paradiſe*, the bounds and borders of thoſe Countreys which are therein mentioned; eſpecially with relation to the travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangeliſts* and *Apoſtles*, yea of *Chriſt* himſelf; not otherwiſe to be comprehended and underſtood, but by the help of *Geographical* Tables and deſcriptions. Beſides this, it is uſefull to moſt ſorts of men, as to *Aſtronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in ſeveral Countreys; their ſeveral influences and aſpects, their riſing and ſetting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Phyſicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the *Climes* they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simples* and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Countrey under Heaven hath ſome more natural and proper to it ſelf, then to any others. Thirdly, to *States-men*, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and diſpoſition of thoſe people with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the Neighbouring Countreys, with the extent of their reſpective Dominions both by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of wars and diſcord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners* and *Souldiers*, the ſeveral Profeſſors of which kinds of life, finde nothing more neceſſary for them in their ſeveral callings, than a competent knowledge in *Geography*, which preſents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the ſtudy of *Geography*, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far leſs danger and expence, acquaint himſelf with the particular deſcriptions of Kingdomes, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Caſtles, with all things conſiderable in the ſame, together with the cuſtomes, manners, and diſpoſitions of all Forain Nations: and that too in as full a manner, as if he had ſurvey'd the one, and obſerved the other, by a perſonal viſit of the places repreſented to him.

Such is the neceſſary uſe which men of ingenuous Studies, and Profeſſions do and may make of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, in the courſe of their callings and imployments. And there are ſome things alſo neceſſary to the knowledge of each, that we may ſtudy them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *Hiſtory* it is only requiſite that it be defined, diſtinguiſhed from ſuch writings as do ſeem to challenge the name of *Hiſtories*; and that ſomewhat be premiſed of thoſe ſeverall *Epoches*, from which all people do begin their computations. But to *Geography* it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate thoſe Terms, or ſecond *Notions*, which are not obvious to the under-

underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt then for *Hiſtory*, if we conſult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τῦ ἱςορεῖν, *i. e. videre*; and therefore properly doth ſignifie a Relation of ſuch remarkable actions at which the Author was an Eye-witneſs, if not an Agent. *Apud veteres enim* (ſaith *Iſidore*) *nemo ſcribebat* Hiſtoriam, *niſi is qui interfuiſſet, & ea quæ ſcribenda eſſent vidiſſet.* But now the cuſtomary uſe of the Word hath taught it a more ample ſignification. *Hiſtory* being defined to be a *Perfect Relation of all Occurrents obſervable happning in the State whereof it is written, deſcribed by the Motives, Pretexts, Conſultations, Speeches and Events, a ſpecial care being had both of time and place.*

As for the writings which do challenge the name of *Hiſtory*, but indeed are really diſtinguiſhed from it, they are *Commentaries, Annals, Diaries*, or *Journals*, and *Chronologies*. Firſt *Commentaries* ſet down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and deſigns, the Counſels, Speeches, Occaſions and Pretexts of buſineſſes. So that *Cæſar* with more modeſty than true propriety of ſpeech, applyed the name of *Commentaries* to the beſt *Hiſtory* in the World. A Hiſtory commended by King *James* to his Son Prince *Henry*, above all other profane Authors, both for the ſweet flowing of the ſtyle, and the worthineſs of the matter ſelf. " For I have ever (ſaith he) been of this opinion, that " of all *Ethnick* Emperors, or great Captains, he hath fartheſt exceeded both in his practiſe and in his " precepts, for martial affairs. Which makes me the more wonder at the ſtrange and unjuſt Cenſure of *Juſtus Lipſius*, who cals them *Nudam & ſimplicem narrationem*; for being entituled *Commentaries*, they do (ſaith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen*; with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next, they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the cauſes and pretexts, or any of the chief Ingredients required in Hiſtory. So that *Tacitus* had no other Reaſon to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is diſtinguiſhed by the years of the Conſuls. Otherwiſe there is no great difference as unto the matter betwixt an *Hiſtory* and an *Annal*, the ſubject of them both being matter of State; and not ſuch trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants, and ſuch like, which ſtand not with the gravity and authority of Hiſtorical *Annals*: betwixt which and a *Diary* the ſame *Tacitus* (ſpeaking of ſome magnificent Structures which were built that year) doth make this difference; *Res illuſtres* Annalibus, *talia* diurnis *Urbis actis mandari*, that matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, beſides this difference in point of matter, are diſtinguiſhed from *Annals* alſo in point of time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kinde was the Chronicle called for by *Ahaſuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the relation of the treaſon intended againſt him by his Eunuchs. And of this kinde was that of King *Edward* the ſixth, mentioned in the Hiſtory of his life, by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Laſt of all, for *Chronologies* they are only bare ſupputations of times, with ſome brief touch upon the Actions therein hapning, ſuch as are thoſe of *Euſebius, Funcius, Calviſius*, and *Helvicus*; of which laſt I dare give that teſtimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid, viz.* that he is *perfectiſſimus in forma operis ſui*; though he and all the reſt are debtors to *Euſebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of theſe four, as out of the four Elements, the *Quinteſſence* of Hiſtory is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* conſent of time and co-etanity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all ſuch other Ornaments in which theſe four are found defective.

That which remains is to premiſe ſomewhat of theſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from whence particular States, Nations and People, make their computations. Theſe have been very different in former times, according to the ſeveral occaſions took in ſeveral Countreys. The *Jewes* had ſeveral *Epoches* peculiar to themſelves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Thoſe which they had amongſt themſelves were firſt from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time; Secondly, from the univerſall Deluge, which hapned *A. M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confuſion of Tongues, *A. M.* 1786. Fourthly, from *Abrahams* journey out of *Chaldæa* into *Canaan*, *A. M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *A. M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the firſt year of *Jubilee*, *A. M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomons* Temple, *An.* 2932. And laſtly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the Victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the firſt Victory which *Seleucus* had againſt *Antigonus*, which was in *A. M.* 3637. an Accompt much uſed by the *Jewes, Chaldæans, Syrians*, and other Nations of the Eaſt. But the *Chaldæans* alſo had their own *Epoche* or Accompt apart, reckoning their time from the firſt year of *Nabonaſſar* (*Salmanaſſar* he is called in Scripture) which being 438. years before this of *Seleucus*, muſt fall in *A. M.* 3201. Next for the *Grecians*, they reckoned a long while by *Olympiades*, the firſt of which is placed in the year of the World, 3174. (of which more hereafter.) But this Accompt periſhing under the *Conſtantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an Accompt deviſed by *Juſtinian*:) every *Indiction* containing 15. years, the firſt beginning *A. Ch.* 513. which amongſt *Chronologers* is ſtill uſed. The *Romans* reckoned firſt from the foundation of their City, which was *A. M.* 3213. and afterwards from the ſixteenth year of *Auguſtus* his Empire, (being that which properly is called the *Roman Æra*) *A. M.* 3936. An Accompt uſed by the *Spaniards* (where it firſt began) till the reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, *A. Ch.* 1350. followed therein by *John* the firſt of *Caſtile*; *An.* 1383. and then at laſt by the King of *Portugal* alſo, 1415. The *Chriſtians* generally do reckon from the Birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not uſe till the year 600. following in the mean time the Accompt of the Empire, And finally the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for ſo they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarchæ*; which hapned *A. Ch.* 617. Of theſe we ſhall make uſe generally but of two alone, thoſe namely of the Worlds Creation, and our Saviours

viours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to those several States.

Next for *Geography* we will first define it, and after explicate such terms or second notions, as are not obvious to the understanding of every Reader. First for the definition of it, it is said by *Ptolemie* to be a *description of the whole Earth*, or *the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it.* Ἡ Γεωγραφία μίμησίς ἐστι διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly, but corruply read) τοῦ καθολικοῦ μέρους τῆς γῆς μετὰ τῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν αὐτῷ συνημμένων, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth simply as it is an Element, for so it belongeth to *Philosophy*; but as it is a *Spherical* body proportionably composed of Earth and Water, and so it is the subject of *Geography*.

First for the *Earth*, which is the first part of this body, it is affirmed by the best Writers to be 21600. miles in compasse; which is demonstrable enough For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360. degrees, every degree being reckoned at 60. miles: let 360. be multiplied by 60. and the *Product* will be 21600. as before is said. So that if it were possible to make a path round about the Earth, an able Footman going constantly 24. miles a day, would compass it in 900. daies.

The Earth is divided { In respect of men, into the right hand and the left. / In respect of it self, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets* which turn their Faces towards the *Fortunate Islands* (so memorized and chanted by them) which are situated in the West; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our daies to *Priests* and men in holy Orders, who usually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themselves unto the East; the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Astronomers*, who turn their faces towards the South, because that way the motions of the *Planets* may be best observed; the West is the right hand, and the East the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who by reason they have so much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their faces towards the North; the East is the right hand, and the West the left.

The *Real* parts of the Earth are divided commonly into { Continents; / Islands.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land, not separated by any Sea from the rest of the World; as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Island* is a part of Earth environed round about with some Sea or other; as the Isle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Isle of *Sicilie*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latine* it is called *Insula*, because it is situate *in salo*, as some derive it.

Touching the Continent I have nothing in general to inlarge, till we come to the particular *Chorography* and description of them. But for Islands (leaving the disquisition of their being, or not being before the Floud) there are four causes to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1. An *Earthquake*, which works two waies towards their production: First, when by it one part of a Countrey is forcibly torn away from the other; and so *Eubœa* was divided from the rest of *Attica*; And secondly, when some vehement winde or vapour being shut up in such parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiseth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of most of those Islands, which are far remote from any part of the continent, is probably to be referred. 2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of gravel, dirt, and weeds; which, if the Sea be not the more working, will in time settle to an Island. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* sowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the people, and cast into *Tiber*, setled together, and made the *Holy Island*. So the River *Achelous* caused the *Echinades*, as we shall more at large declare; and so the Island of *Loanda* in the Kingdome of *Congo*, is said to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mire of the great River *Laanza*, cast into an heap, and at last formed into an Island. 3. The Sea violently beating on some small *Isthmus*, weareth it through, and turneth the *Peninsula* into a compleat *Isle*. Thus was *Sicilie* divided from *Italie*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the rest of *England*. And 4. sometimes as it eateth and worketh on some places, so it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in some time grow to be *Islands*, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Isles* of *Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea: and *Verstegan* proveth it, because that the Husbandmen in tilling and manuring the ground, finde sometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the bones of huge and great fishes, which could by no other accident come thither. To these kinde of Islands *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, saith,

——Vidi factas ex æquore terras,
Et procul à pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ,
Et vetus inventa est in montibus anchora summis.

Oft have I seen that earth, which once I knew
Part of the Sea; so that a man might view
Huge shels of fishes in the upland ground;
And on the Mountain tops old Anchors found.

As

As concerning the ſituation of Iſlands, whether commodious or not, this is my judgement. I finde in *Machiavel*, that for a City whoſe people covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; becauſe in ſuch ſeats they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from idleneſs, and by conſequence from riotouſneſs: But for a City whoſe inhabitants deſire to enlarge their confines, a fertile place was rather to be choſen than a ſteril, as being more able to nouriſh multitudes of people. The like I ſay of Iſlands. If a *Prince* deſire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Iſland; as being by it ſelf and nature ſufficiently defenſible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Iſland is no fit ſeat for him; becauſe partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longſomneſs of the waies, he is not ſo well able to ſupply and keep ſuch forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the moſt puiſſant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the cauſes above mentioned, cannot ſhew any of her winnings on the firm land, though ſhe hath attempted and atchieved as many glorious exploits, as any Countrey in the World.

The Continent and Iſland are ſub-divided into { *Peninſula.* / *Iſthmus.* / *Promontorium.*

Peninſula, quaſi pene Inſula, is a tract of land, which being almoſt encompaſſed round by water, is joyned to the firm land by ſome little *Iſthmus*; as *Peloponneſus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Iſtmus is that little narrow neck of land, which joyneth the *Peninſula* to the *Continent*; as the Straights of *Dariene*, in *America*, and of *Corinth*, in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high Mountain which ſhooteth it ſelf into the Sea, the outmoſt end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*; as the *Cape of Good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, *&c.*

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are ſuch which not being at all in the Earth, muſt yet be ſuppoſed to be ſo, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, anſwerable to them in Heaven, in name.

Theſe Circles are either the { Greater, / Leſſer, } in both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than thoſe in the leſſer; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either { Immutable, as the *Æquator.* / Mutable, as the { *Horizon.* / *Meridian.* }

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terreſtrial Globe from Eaſt to Weſt. It paſſeth through *Habaſſia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, *&c.* The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Latitude* of any *Town*, *Promontory*, *&c.* Now the *Latitude* is the diſtance of a place South or North from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and muſt be meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and firſt *Meridian* paſſeth through the Iſland St. *Michael*, one of the *Azores*. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a *City*, *Cape*, *&c.* is the Diſtance of it Eaſt and Weſt from the firſt *Meridian*, and is uſually meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, deſigning ſo great a ſpace of the earth, as a quick ſight can ken in an open field. The uſe of it is to diſcern the divers riſings and ſettings of the Stars.

The leſſer Circles either are { Noted with ſome name, as { Tropicall of { *Cancer.* / *Capricorn.* } / Polar, either { *Artick.* / *Antartick.* } } / Noted with no diſtinct name, and are the *Parallels.* }

The *Tropick* of *Cancer* (ſo called of the celeſtial ſign *Cancer*) is diſtant from the *Equinoctial* 23 Degrees Northward, and paſſeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hiſpania*.

The *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator* Southward, paſſeth through *Ethiopia inferior*, and the midſt of *Peruana*. And this is to be obſerved in theſe *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, our daies are at the longeſt; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, the daies are at the ſhorteſt. The firſt they call the Summer, the laſt they call the Winter *Solſtice*; the firſt hapning on, or about St. *Barnabies* day in *June*; the laſt on, or about St. *Lucies* day in *December*.

The *Artick* Circle (ſo called for that it is correſpondent to the Conſtellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in *Greek Arctos*) is diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer* 45 Degrees, and paſſeth through *Norway*, *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, *&c.*

The *Antartick* (ſo called becauſe oppoſite to the other) is as much diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and paſſeth through *Terra Auſtrialis Incognita*. The uſe of theſe four Circles is to deſcribe the *Zones*.

The

The *Zones* are ſpaces of earth included betwixt two of the leſſer nominate Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually ſcorched with the preſence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are ſituate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*, continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two *temperate Zones*, are betwixt the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and the *Artick*; and 'twixt the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick* Circles; enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; ſo that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

Theſe five *Zones* are diſpoſed according to the order of the *Zones* in heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamorph.* 1.

Utque duæ dextra cœlum, totidemq; ſiniſtra
Parte ſecant Zonæ, quinta eſt ardentior illis;
Sic onus incluſum numero diſtinxit eodem
Cura dei, totidemq; plagæ tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media eſt, non eſt habitalis æſtu;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; locavit,
Temperiemq; dedit, miſta cum Frigore Flamma.

And as two *Zones* do cut the Heavens right-ſide,
And likewiſe other two the left divide,
The midſt in heat excelling all the reſt;
Even ſo it ſeem'd to the Creator beſt,
That this our World ſhould ſo divided be,
That with the Heavens in *Zones* it might agree.
The midſt in heat; the outwardmoſt excell
In Snow and Ice, ſcarce fit for men to dwell.
Betwixt theſe two extremes, two more are fixt,
Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called alſo *Æquidiſtants*, circle the Earth from Eaſt to Weſt, aud are commonly ten Degrees aſunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are ſet down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another ſort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*. Theſe are called *Artificial Parallels*, becauſe they ſhew the difference of the *Artificial* daies; and are of an unequal breadth, as we ſhall ſee in the Table following. The uſe of theſe leſſer *Parallels* is to ſhew the *Climates*.

Now a *Clime*, or *Climate*, is a ſpace of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallells*, the middlemoſt whereof divideth it into two equal parts; ſerving for ſetting out the length and ſhortneſs of the daies in every Countrey. For under the *Æquator* the daies are of the juſt length of 12 hours; but afterwards they increaſe the length of half an hour for every *Clime*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they increaſe no more by hours, but by weeks and moneths, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southward: Thoſe Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Clime* doth paſs; as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Syenes*, *&c.* Thoſe on the South by the ſame names, with the condition of *Anti*, as *Anti-Dia-Syenes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, *&c.* 'Tis true, the ancient *Coſmographers* made but ſeven *Climes* in all; at the moſt but nine; Nor needed they to add more, as the caſe ſtood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being ſo fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, becauſe thoſe *Climes* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard it is impoſſible to deſcribe them under any Rule; I have thought fit to add this enſuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *John de Sacro Boſco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the uſe of the Globes*. The whole divided into 7 Columns. In the firſt whereof is ſhewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, and *Heteroſcii*, which termes we ſhall anon expound; In the ſecond is ſet down the number of the *Climes* themſelves; In the third the number of the *Parallels*; In the fourth the length of the daies in Summer; In the fifth the diſtance of every *Clime* and *Parallel* from the *Æquator*; in the ſeventh the name of the Town or place, through which the middlemoſt of the three *Parallels* doth paſs in this manner following.

Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A ſecond uſe of theſe *Parallels* and other Circles, is for diſtinction of men in their ſeveral dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in reſpect of their ſhadows into *Amphiſcii, Periſcii, Heteroſcii*; and in reſpect of their ſite and poſition, into *Antœci, Periœci*, and *Antipodes*.

1. *Amphiſcii* are ſuch as dwel between the two *Tropicks*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are both waies: ſometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; ſometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periſcii* are ſuch as dwell beyond the *Polar* circles; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadowes are on all ſides of them.

3. *Heteroſcii* are ſuch as dwell in either of the two temperate *Zones*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows reach but one way; *viz.* in our *Zone*, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antœci* are ſuch as dwell under the ſame *Meridian*, and the ſame *Latitude* or *Parallel*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the daies in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periœci* are ſuch as dwell in the ſame *Parallel*, on the ſame ſide of the *Æquator*, how diſtant ſoever they be Eaſt and Weſt: the ſeaſon of the year, and the length of daies being to both alike; but the ones midnight, being the others noon.

6. *Antipodes* are ſuch as dwell feet to feet, ſo as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, paſſeth from North to South, through the center of the World. Theſe are diſtant 180 degrees, which is half the compaſs of the Earth. They differ in all things, as ſeaſons of the year, length of daies, riſing and ſetting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned ſo ridiculous, and impoſſible (if not ſomewhat worſe) in the former times, that *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* hapning to ſee a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that ſtrange name, made complaint firſt to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *An.* 745. by whom the poor Biſhop (unfortunate only in being learned in ſuch a time of ignorance) was condemned of Hereſie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excuſed, in regard that many of his betters fell alſo on the ſelf-ſame error. For venerable *Bede*, a man whoſe books Archb. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, eſteemeth the opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *Neq; enim* Antipodarum *ullatenus eſt fabulis accommodandus aſſenſus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum, cap.* 32. And yet the marvel is the leſs, conſidering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the ſtate of learning was in its declination; when S. *Auguſtine* and *Lactantius*, and ſome others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when learning was at the very height, condemn this point of the *Antipodes* for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whoſe words I could put down at large, did I think it neceſſary. So that we of theſe Ages have very good cauſe (to uſe the words of the late L. *Verulam*) to congratulate the preſent times, in that the World in theſe our daies, have *through-lights* made in it after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly ſee thoſe things, which either were unknown, or but blindly gueſſed at by the Antients.

But to proceed, the ſecond part of the *Terreſtrial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, firſt, becauſe it is a body not ſo heavie; Secondly, it is obſerved by Saylors that their ſhips move faſter to the ſhore than from it; whereof no reaſon can be given but the height of the water above the land. Thirdly, to ſuch as ſtand on the ſhore, the Sea ſeems to ſwell into the form of a round hill, till it puts a bound upon our ſight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelm it, muſt be aſcribed only to his Power and Providence, who *hath made the* Waters *to ſtand on an heap, who hath ſet them a bound that they ſhould not paſs, nor turn again to cover the Earth*. The other affections and properties of the Sea, as motion, ſaltneſs, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philoſophers, than this preſent Argument.

The *Sea* or *Water* is divided into { 1. *Oceanus.* 2. *Mare.* 3. *Fretum.* / 4. *Sinus.* 5. *Lacus.* 6. *Flumina.*

Of which and other *Waters* thus ſaid *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*:

Tum Freta *diffudit, rapidiſq; tumeſcere ventis*
Juſſit, & ambita circundare littora terra.
Addidit & Fontes, *&* Stagna *immenſa*, Lacuſq;
Fluminaq; *obliquis cinxit declivia ripis, &c.*

Which may be Engliſhed to this purpoſe:

He ſpread the *Seas*, which then he did command
To ſwell with winds, and compaſs round the Land:
To thoſe he adds *Springs*, *Ponds*, and *Lakes* immenſe,
And *Rivers* which their winding Borders fence.
Of theſe not few Earth's thirſty jaws devour,
The reſt their ſtreams into the *Ocean* pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamie Cliffs in ſtead of Banks they lave.

And

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three sorts of Inhabitants: Pag. 24.

Inhabitants belonging to several Climates	Climes.	Parallels.	The longest summer day H. Scr.	Latitud. and elevation of Pole. Deg Sc.	The breadth of the Climats Deg. Sc.	The places by which the Climes passe.
Amphiscii.	0	0	12 00	0	4 18	The beginning from the Æquator.
		1	12 15	4 18		
	1	2	12 30	8 34	8 25	Sinus Arabicus, or the Red sea.
		3	12 45	12 43		
	2	4	13 0	16 43	7 50	Meroe an Island of Nilus in Egypt.
		5	13 15	20 33		
	3	6	13 30	23 10	7 3	Siene a City in Africa.
		7	13 45	27 36		
Heteroscii.	4	8	14 0	30 47	6 9	Alexandria in Egypt.
		9	14 15	33 45		
	5	10	14 30	36 30	5 17	Rhodes and Babylon.
		11	14 45	39 2		
	6	12	15 0	41 22	4 30	Rome and Hellespont.
		13	15 15	43 32		
	7	14	15 30	45 25	3 48	Venice and Millain.
		15	15 45	47 20		
	8	16	16 0	49 21	3 13	Podalia and the Lesser Tartary.
		17	16 15	50 13		
	9	18	16 30	51 58	2 44	Batavia and Wittenberg.
		19	16 45	53 17		
	10	20	17 0	54 25	2 17	Rostoch.
		21	17 15	55 34		
	11	22	17 30	56 37	2 0	Ireland and Muscovy.
		23	17 45	57 34		
	12	24	18 0	58 26	1 40	Bohuse a Castle in Norwey.
		25	18 15	59 14		
	13	26	18 30	59 59	1 26	Gothland.
		27	18 45	60 40		
	14	28	19 0	61 18	1 13	Bergen in Norway.
		29	19 15	61 53		
	15	30	19 30	62 25	1 0	Wiburg in Finland.
		31	19 45	62 54		
	16	32	20 0	63 22	0 52	Arctia in Sweden.
		33	20 15	63 46		
	17	34	20 30	64 6	0 44	The mouth of Darecally a River of Sweden.
		35	20 45	64 30		
	18	36	21 0	64 49	0 36	Divers places of Norwey.
		37	21 15	65 6		
	19	38	21 30	65 21	0 29	Suecia, Alba Russia.
		39	21 45	65 35		
	20	40	22 0	65 47	0 22	With many Islands
		41	22 15	65 57		
	21	42	22 30	66 6	0 17	Thereunto adjoyning
		43	22 45	66 14		
	22	44	23 0	66 20	0 11	Wanting special names
		45	23 15	66 25		
	23	46	23 30	66 29	0 5	And Landmarks.
		47	23 45	66 30		
	24	48	24 0	66 31	0 0	Island under the Artick Circle.

Periscii.	Here the Climates are accounted by the moneths, from 66 Degrees 31. min where the day is 24. hours unto the Pole it self set at 90 Degrees, where the artificial day is six Moneths.	Menses.			These Climats are supposed to passe by Divers Islands within the Artick circle, as Groenland, Island, Greenland; wherein, as yet, for the narrowness of these climates coming near together, and the uncertainty of observation, no special places have been assigned, as to the other.
		1	67	15	
		2	69	30	
		3	73	20	
		4	78	20	
		5	84	0	
		6	90	0	

And first *Oceanus*, the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh't at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a grosse absurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompassed about with the main *Ocean*. But modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture, than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Saylor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the best of the Antients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*; at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the Moon cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth; which we call the *Ebb*. And when she passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon* till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth, from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *spring*: from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *nepe*; and from the last quarter to the *prime* it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof, know well when to look for it; the next daies Tide coming for the most part, one hour 10 minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum* or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscanie*; Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus* who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight*, is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*; as the *Straight* of *Hellespont*, *Gibralter*, *Fretum Davies*, *&c.*

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, *&c.* and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf* of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no visible inrercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake* of *Thrasymene* in *Italy*, the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea* in the Land of *Canaan*. And of this kinde properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvius*, is a watercourse continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea, or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Ostium*: *Tiberinaq; longe Ostia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual sustenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chasma's* of the Earth, and congealed by the extreme cold of that Element, dissolves into water (as we see the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a pearly dew, sticking on our glasse-windowes): and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Annibal* in the *Alpes*) either finde a way, or make a way, to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joyneth it self with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish savour, yet) passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness; and by how much the spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much usually are their waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entred themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring springs and waters; by whose addition they augment their streams, till they dischannel themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use. First, that out of them drink may be afforded to man and beast; Secondly, that running through the Earth, as bloud through the body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those fruits which are necessary for the life of man. The last use of Rivers is, easiness and speediness of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions. First the *depth*, because deep waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more safe. Secondly, *pleasantness*, whereby the passage is easie both with the stream and against it: whereas in Rivers of a violent current, or such as fall down by great *locks* or *Cataracts*, the sayling or rowing up the water is as dangerous, as laborious. Thirdly, the *thickness* of the water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for navigation, by reason of its fatness, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the *broadness* of the channel, that ships and other vessels may conveniently winde and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous, that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives, than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius* and the *Rhene*; of *Africa*, *Nilus*, and *Niger*; of *Asia*,

Ganges, and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque*, and *Maragnan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are considerable in *Geographie*, and come within the compass of those *Annexaries* of each, which *Ptolemy* calleth τὰ συνημμένα: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between *Geographie* and *Chorographie*, which to some men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a *Chorographer* doth describe a Countrey by the bounds, rivers, hils, and most notable Cities; yet it is still but the description of some place or Countrey, and not of the whole *Earth* universally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorographie* differeth from *Geographie* as a part from the whole: that being as *Ptolemy* doth very handsomely expres it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or some other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of Man. But *Geographie* in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorographie* only, but *Topographie* and *Hydrographie* also. Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regulæ Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*; the chief writers in the Art of *Pilotism*.

2. *Topographie* is the description of some particular place or City; of which kinde was the Book of *Stephanus* περὶ πόλεων, or *De Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Bruinus* in these later times; *Stowes* Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kinde is the description of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and those of the *Elysian* fields, the gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Hesperides* in the antient Poets.

3. *Chorographie* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdome, Countrey, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the notion of *Topographie*. Of this kinde the description of the several estates of *Greece* written by by *Pausanias*, is of most use and reputation of all the Ancients: as that of *Camden Clarenceux*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Lewis Guicciardine*, for the *Low Countreys*; *Leander* for *Italie*, &c. are amongst the Moderns.

4. *Geographie* finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrographie* the description of Seas and Waters; From *Topographie*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places; and from *Chorographie*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdomes: which brought into a body, make up that portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof, in writing; which, according to *Ptolemies* definition before mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geographie*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolemie*, *Plinie*, and *Strabo* for the elder times; *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius* for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the Roman Emperour, *Anno Chr.* 141. or hereabouts; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Cæsar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the daies of our Fathers, about some 80 years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *Historie* as of *Geographie*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmographie*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geographie*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and excellency of which study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several parts, whereof this is only the Result: desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to bless me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgement to go through with it. *Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in Gods name.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

OF

ITALIE, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*; with the *ISLES* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

Florus in Procem. l. 1.

Populus Romanus *à Rege* Romulo *ad* Cæsarem Augustum *ita latè per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non* unius Populi, *sed* generis humani *facta discant.*

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbium Imperiorumque, *ita &* Gentium *nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.*

LONDON,
Printed by *E. C.* for *Henry Seile* over against St. *Dunstans Church* in *Fleetstreet*, M. DC. LVI.

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

Containing the *CHOROGRAPHIE* and *HISTORIE* of *ITALIE*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the *ISLES* thereof.

OF THE WORLD,

And first of

EUROPE.

OF the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantations* of the ſame by the ſons of Men, ſufficient hath been ſpoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all thoſe parts united into one *Compoſitum*; called therefore by the *Grecians* Τὰ Πᾶν, & Τὸ Ὅλον, becauſe the *Summa totalis*, and general comprehenſion of all things exiſtent. In which reſpect called by the *Latins Univerſum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united, (*Univerſi qui in uno loco verſi*, ſay the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of ſo perfect and exact a form, of ſo compleat a *Symmetrie* in reſpect of the particular parts, and all thoſe parts ſo beautified and adorned by the God of Nature; that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called Κόσμος by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*; both names declaring the Compoſure of it to be full of *Ornament*; and all thoſe Ornaments conducting mankinde to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Chriſtian Advocate* reaſoneth very ſtrongly,) As he which comes into an houſe, and ſeeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order, *utriſq; præeſſe crederet Dominum, &c.* muſt needs conceive, both that the houſe had ſome wiſe Lord and Maſter who had ſo contrived it, and that ſuch Lord and Maſter of it was of more worth and excellency than the houſe and furniture: So (ſaith he) whoſoever doth obſerve the moſt eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, muſt needs conceive there is ſome great and more glorious power who did firſt create it; diſpoſing of all things therein in ſuch excellent manner.

This contemplation, together with the notions of a *Deity*, which naturally are ingraffed in the ſoul of man; hath trained up all men in the practiſe of ſome *Religion*, though few (comparatively) ſo happy as to be practiſed in the true. For though the knowledge and worſhip of the true God, by reaſon of ſome acceſſions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffuſed than in former times; yet is the leaſt part of the World poſſeſſed by them who make profeſſion of that Worſhip. For dividing the whole World into 30 parts, it hath been found by ſuch as have laboured in this ſearch, that 19 of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worſhip ſtocks and ſtones for Gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remaining, ſix are poſſeſſed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worſhipping the Lord *that bought them*, they have no part nor portion in the true *Religion*. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion; the other three being

being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*; and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally by the name of *Protestant*, or reformed Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true *Religion*: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsly those of *Rome* make Multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude, as corresponds unto that sign. Faulty alike both in the *Position* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith; those of the *Greek* Communion, possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that Brag of *Bellarmine* (though otherwise more modest than the rest the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expresly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere*; *i. e.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of *Religion* in the several provinces of the World, to which now I hasten; premising first this scheme of those several parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two parts.
- *Unknown*, or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*: the last taking up the whole *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.
- *Known*, either
  - Anciently, as
    - *Europe.*
    - *Asia.*
    - *Africa.*
  - Lately, as *America.*

Europe is joyned to *Asia*, by that space of earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africk*, by the *Egyptian Isthmus*; *America* is divided (as most conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is separated from *Asia*, by a line drawn from the Bay of St. *Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course; then by *Palus Mæotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellespont*, and the *Ægean*. *Asia* is parted from *Africk* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Asia* than *Africk*, and *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Countrey to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy*, and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impertinent, in resembling *France*, to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium*, to a Lion; *Britain*, to an Ax; *Ireland*, to an Egge; *Peloponnesus*, to a Plantane leaf; *Spain*, to an Oxe hide spread on the ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth best proportion) to a mans Leg; with divers the like *Phantasms* of a capricious brain: these Countreys no more resembling them, than pictures made when painting was in her infancy; under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion, and this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the *temperature* of the Air, and fertility of the soyl; Secondly, from the study of *Arts*, both ingenuous and mechanical; Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies; Fourthly, from the purity and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith; Fifthly, because we dwell in it, and so first place it.

EUROPE is generally said to be so called from *Europa*, the daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others, in a ship whose beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Isle of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Island is so inconsiderable and so small a part, I must confess I see no reason. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the high *Dutch* to be the primitive language, which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name: will have it called *Europe*, *quasi Ver-hop*, by the transposition of the two last letters; *Ver* signifying excellent, and *Hop* a multitude (whence we use to say, *as thick as Hops*) because *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* tongue; will have it called *Europe*, from *Ur-appa*, which signifieth in that language, a *beautiful Countenance*; because the *Europæans* much excell'd the *Africans* in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my minde *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversie, who telleth us plainly, Ὁκόθεν τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, ὅτι ἔσῃς ἦν ὁ δίμενος, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who first called it so. And yet considering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter) why might not the *Asiaticks* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neerest to them; as the *Romans* did the name of *Africk* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they first brought under their obedience?

Or

Or as the *Europæans* gave the name of *Asia*, to the greatest of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor* (as it since was called;) or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, were the sons of *Japhet*; amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *the Isles of the Gentiles were divided*, Gen. 10. v. 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe* and the Isles adjoyning. For besides that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Isles of *Candie*, *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it self was formerly taken for an Island, as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joyned on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Ancients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countreys of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the posterity of *Japhet*, but so many *Peninsula's* or *Demy-Islands* invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children which descended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the first of their *Europæan* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Iapetus*, whom they make to be the son of *Cœlum* and *Terra*, and the father of the wise *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *satus Iapeto*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphosis*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would *inlarge the borders of Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The second part thereof, that he *should dwell in the Tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment, yet it came at last; and that both in the literal and mystical sense. First in the *literal*, when the posterity of *Japhet*, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judæa* or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to and possessed by the seed of *Sem*: Next in the *mystical*, when God was pleased to break down the *partition-wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the house of *Japhet*, into the body of the *Church*; which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the *Continent* and the *Islands*: the *Continent* lying all together; the *Islands* as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Ægean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alpes*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*, 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Swethland*, 10. *Russia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hungary*, 13. *Sclavonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and speaking of the several *Islands*, as they relate to some or other of these greater Countreys.

In all which Countreys and Islands belonging to them, besides the *Latine* Tongue which is now rather *Scholastical*, than *National*; and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but as so many corruptions of the *Latine*: and besides the *English* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine*, and *French*; there are in all 14 Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*; 2. *British*, or *Welch*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwall*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish*, in *Bascay*, about the *Pyrenæan* Hils, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean; 4. *Arabick*, in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*; 5. *Finniek*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*; 7. *Cauchian*, which the *East Friezlanders* (or *Cauchi*) speak amongst themselves, though to strangers they speak the Common *Dutch*; 8. *Sclavonish*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish* Empire; 9. *Illyrian*, on the East side of *Istria*, and the Isle of *Veggia*; 10. *Greek*, in most provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epirotique*, in the mountainous places of those Countreys; 13. *Jazygian*, on the North side of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*; and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, and other *Europæan* parts of that barbarous people. And this shall serve for *Europe* in the general notion. Descend we now to the particular Kingdomes, Regions, and Islands of it; beginning first of all with *Italie*, contrary to the usage of most *Geographers*; who commonly begin with *Spain*, or *Ireland*, as being the furthest Countreys Westward, and consequently neerest to the first *Meridian*, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well *Civil* as *Ecclesiastical*; which much depended on the power of that Empire formerly, and on the usurpations of that Church in the later dayes.

OF

ITALIE.

ITALIE once the Empreſſe of the greateſt part of the (then known) World, is compaſſed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alpes*; ſo that it is in a manner a *Peninſula*, or *Demy-Iſland*. But more particularly, it hath on the Eaſt, the lower part of the *Adriatick*, and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the Weſt the River *Varus*, and ſome part of the *Alpes*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North, in ſome parts the *Alpes* which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Seas, by which it is ſeparated from the main land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Auguſta Prætoria* (now called *Aoſt*) at the foot of the *Alpes*, unto *Otranto* in the moſt Eaſtern point of the Kingdome of *Naples*, 1020. miles: in breadth from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Province*, to the mouth of the River *Arſia* in *Friuli*, where it is broadeſt, 410. miles; about *Otranto* where it is narroweſt, not above 25. miles; and in the middle parts from the mouth of *Peſcara* in the *Adriatick* or Upper Sea, to the mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuſcan* or Lower Sea, 126. miles. The whole compaſſe by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the ſhore, comes to 3038. miles; which added to the 410. miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448. miles. But if the coaſt on each ſide be reckoned by a ſtraight Line, then it falls very ſhort of this proportion, amounting in the totall, as *Caſtaldo* computes it, to no more then 2550. miles. The whole Countrey lyeth under the fifth and ſixth *Climates* of the Northern temperate *Zone*, which it wholly taketh up: ſo that the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts is 15. hours, and three fift parts of an hour; the longeſt in the Southern parts, falling ſhort a full hour and no more of that length.

But theſe dimenſions muſt be underſtood of *Italy* in the preſent latitude, and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted of in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flouriſhing fortunes of that State: the bounds of *Italy* on the Weſt, and North-weſtern parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas, by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay Weſt-wards towards the *Alpes*, as it was poſſeſſed by the *Gauls*, ſo had it alſo the name of *Gallia*, and for diſtinctions ſake, of *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued, (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) diſtinct from *Italie*, untill the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who dividing *Italie* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Ciſalpina* into ſeverall parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the body of *Italie*.

The names hereof ſo bounded as before, are ſaid to have been very many, according to the ſeverall Nations which were antiently of moſt power and autority in it; or to the ſeverall fancies of the Name-giver: whereof ſome being the names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymie*, taken for and applyed to the whole. Of this laſt ſort, to omit others of leſſe note, were *Latium*, and *Auſonia*; the *Auſones* being a people dwelling about *Cales*, a town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lyeth on the Eaſt of *Tiber*, ſo called, as moſt Writers are of opinion, *à latendo*, from hiding, becauſe *Saturn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed;

——————*Latiumq; vocari*
Malnit, his quoniam latuiſſet tutus in oris, as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgils* fancy only, but a *Tradition* generally followed and allowed of by the greateſt Writers, as by *Eutropius*, and *Herodian*, and by *Minutius Felix* alſo: though *Varro* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium*, *quod lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Apennini*, as *Servius* in his notes on *Virgil*, becauſe it lyeth hidden (as it were) under the

Præcipices

præcipices of the *Alpes* and *Apeninne* hills; which cannot poſſibly be ſaid of *Italy* properly and antiently ſo called, no part whereof came neer the *Alpes*. The more generall names of the whole Countrey, were, 1. *Heſperia*, from *Heſperus* the ſonne of *Atlas*, as the Poets ſay, or rather as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Heſperus* the Evening Starre, as being ſeated Weſtward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the wines, wine being called οἶνος by the *Grecians*; or as moſt think, from *Oenotrius* an *Arcadian* King, one of the firſt planters of the Countrey: And 3. *Italia*, the name at firſt of that part of this Continent which was after called *Calabria*; ſhut up firſt between *Golfo de Chilaci* (called antiently *Sinus Scylleticus*) on the South; and *Sinus Lameticus* part of the Bay or Golf of *Tarentum*, on the ſouth ſide of it. For ſo ſaith *Ariſtotle* in the ſeventh Book of his Politicks, cap. 10. Τὴν ἀκτὴν ταύτην τῆς Εὐρώπης Ιταλίαν τὔνομα λαβεῖν, &c. That is to ſay, *That part of* Europe *which lyeth between the Bay* Scylleticus *and the Bay* Lameticus, *took the name of* Italie, *the Golfs being diſtant from each other about half a dayes journey*. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the beſt Antiquaries of that Countrey. The like occurres in *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, out of *Antiochus Syracuſanus* a more antient Author: the like in *Strabo*, lib. 6. So named from *Italus* a chief Commander of ſome Nations who firſt ſetled here, and by degrees communicated to the reſt of this Continent. Of theſe three laſt, thus the Poet *Virgil*.

Eſt locus, Heſperiam *Graii cognomine dicunt*,
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq; ubere glebæ,
Oenotrii *coluere viri*; *nunc Fama, minores*
Italiam *dixiſſe, ducis de nomine, Gentem*.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words.

That which the Greeks *Heſperia* call'd, a place
Great both in Arms and Wealth, firſt planted was
By the *Oenotrians*: ſince, if Fame not lie,
Was from their Chieftains name call'd *Italie*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we ſhall ſee ere long. Mean time we will take notice of the concent or harmony, which is betwixt *Ariſtotle* and this Poet: it being ſaid by *Ariſtotle* in the ſeventh of his *Politicks*, cap. 10. that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrians* the arts of Husbandry, who before were wandring Shepheards, only he cauſed them by his own name to be called *Italians*. Let us next take a view of thoſe honourary Attributes which have been given unto this Countrey, ſo denominated from him: by *Æthicus* called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empreſſe of the World; By *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyriſts*, *Gentium Dominam*, the Miſtreſſe of the Nations; by others, *Paradiſus Mundi*, the terreſtriall Paradiſe. But what need more be ſaid than is ſpoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following Panegyrick? *Italia terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parens, numine Deûm electa quæ Cœlum ipſum clarius faceret, ſparſa congregaret imperia, ritus molliret, tot populorum diſcordes linguas ſermonis commercio ad colloquia diſtraheret, & humanitati hominem daret*. *Italy* (ſaith he) the Parent, and withall the Foſter-child of all other Nations, was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if poſſible) the very Heavens themſelves more famous; to gather the ſcattered Empires of the World into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the diſagreeing languages of ſo many men by the benefit of one common tongue; and in a word, to reſtore man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtleſſe, and yet not much more than the place deſerves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The people antiently, (and to this day they ſtill partake ſomewhat of thoſe qualities) were wary of behaviour, ſparing of expence, and moſt greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras nationes ſunt Romani*: by which he doth not mean thoſe only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but alſo their *Italian* neighbours and aſſociates, *Romans* by priviledge and freedome, though not by birth. They have twice given the Law to the faireſt, and moſt puiſſant parts of the World; once by their *Valour*, when the greateſt part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the ſtanding body of whoſe Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* bands: And ſecondly, by their *Wit*, by which they have ſubdued a great part of *Chriſtendome*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the ſtanding body of whoſe Counſell (though he have Miniſters of all tempers and nations) do ſpecially conſiſt of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipioes*, one of which ſubdued *Africk*, and the other *Aſia*; *Pompey* the great, who extended the *Roman* Empire Eaſtwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæſar*, the greater of the two enlarging it Weſtward to the *Britiſh*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; beſides infinite others of leſſe note in reſpect of theſe, though moſt deſerving in themſelves. Here flouriſhed alſo the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortenſius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Hiſtorians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Saluſtius*; the memorable Poets, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus* and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyriſts, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Perſius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muſes*, that it is not eaſie to determine whether they were moſt eminent in Arts or Arms. What men of ſpeciall eminence it hath ſince produced, we ſhall ſee hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it ſtands at preſent; and to that place we ſhall defer our Obſervations of the Air, and diſpoſition of the ſoyl, with ſuch other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Ita-

Italy was antiently divided, as moſt Countreys elſe, into *Tribes* and *Nations*, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuſcans*, *Samnites*, *Campans*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we ſhall meet with in the deſcription of thoſe ſeverall States, into which it doth now ſtand divided. But all thoſe Nations being ſeverally vanquiſhed by the *Roman* puiſſance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleaſed *Auguſtus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was ſaid, that is to ſay, *Liguria*, *Hetruria*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia Tranſpadana*, *Venetia*, and *Hiſtria*. In the time of the Emperor *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were encreaſed to ſixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being ſomewhat altered; and the three Iſles of *Sicily*, *Corſica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhætias*, firſt and ſecond, added to the number. But this diſtribution alſo received ſome change in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great; who altering both the names and bounds of the former Provinces, and adding one more to them, made ſeventeen in all, that is to ſay, *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*, 2 *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3 *Campania*, 4 *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5 *Valeria*, 6 *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Brutii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corſica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the præfecture of the City of *Rome*. 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12. *Venetiæ*, 13. *Æmylia*, 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alpes Cottiæ*, 16. *Rhætia prima*, and 17. *Rhætia ſecunda*, which made up the Dioceſe of *Italy*, properly and eſpecially ſo called, whereof *Millain* was firſt the *Metropolitan* City, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was divers, according to the ſeverall Provinces and people of it. In *Apulia*, they uſed the *Meſſapian* tongue; in that which is now called *Calabria*, they ſpake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria*, they uſed the *Tuſcan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: which laſt ſo altered in ſhort time, by reaſon of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulſion of the *Tarquins*, could not be underſtood (as *Polybius* ſaith) by the beſt Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of thoſe Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, paſſed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time ſpoke generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it ſelf, as I ſee ſome hold, I can by no means be perſwaded; it being by ſpeciall favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they ſhould uſe the *Roman* language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had uſed it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* tongue in ſucceeding times came to be underſtood in moſt parts of *Italy*, by reaſon of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted amongſt them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continuall reſort to *Rome* on their ſeverall buſineſſes: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgement pronounced by the *Prætors* for the ſeverall Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the ſubject Nations, ſave only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to ſuch extent to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it ſelf; no more than the *Engliſh* tongue is naturall or nationall to the *Welch*, or *Iriſh*, though it be generally underſtood (for the very ſame reaſons) by all of the better ſort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French*, and *Spaniſh*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues, occaſioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impreſſion which the *Latin* tongue had made amongſt them, whilſt they were under the obedience of that puiſſant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now ſpoken, could not receive ſo great a change from the barbarous Nations, none of which tarryed long amongſt them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they ſo long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eaſtern parts) as to be either the occaſions or authors of the alteration. So that the preſent language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up eſpecially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*: ſome notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the *North*, and *Weſt*, ſome of the *Gothiſh*, in the middeſt, about *Rome* it ſelf; and not a little of the *Greek*, in the Eaſt of *Naples*.

And as the Language, ſo the *Religion* of the Countrey hath received ſome change. The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt preached in *Rome* it ſelf, and in *Rome* firſt preached by Saint *Peter* who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apoſtles *Peter* and *Paul*, are generally ſaid by the antient Writers, to be the firſt who preached the Goſpel in that City. *A duobus Apoſtolis* Petro & Paulo, *Romæ fundata & conſtituta eſt Eccleſia*, ſaith the old Father *Irenæus*, Lib. 4. cap. 3. To one of theſe the firſt preaching of the Goſpel there is to be referred; both being Biſhops of that City: That is to ſay, St. *Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*; St. *Paul* of thoſe which conſiſted ſpecially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Goſpel was preached there before *Pauls* coming, is evident by his Epiſtle written to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port Town of *Corinth*, ſix years at leaſt before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he teſtifieth that their *Faith was famous over all the World*; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. *Peter* was the firſt Preacher of the Goſpel at *Rome*, ſo ſent he his Diſciples to promulgate it in moſt parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Biſhops of St. *Peters* making, for ſo many of the principall Cities of this Countrey: that is to ſay, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom St. *Paul* ſpeaks of in his Epiſtle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Anxur*, *Hermagoras* for *Aquilia*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proſdocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuſe*, and *Pancratius* for *Tauromenium* in the Iſle of *Sicily*. But whether St. *Peter* planted it, or St. *Paul* watered it, certain I am that *GOD* only *gave it the increaſe*. It could not

elſe

elſe have proſpered under ſuch a tyranny, as many, if not moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, did earneſtly endeavour to ſuppreſſe it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*; the watering of it by the blood of ſo many *Martyrs*, made it grow the faſter. And this ſmall grain of Muſtard-ſeed waxed ſo great a tree, as over-ſhadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only ſtand it out againſt all Tempeſts, but in concluſion did ſuppreſſe that Superſtition and Idolatry, for whoſe ſake all thoſe Princes till the time of *Conſtantine*, did, more or leſſe, labour to deſtroy it. How much it hath receded ſince thoſe times from its primitive purity; and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the deſign and arts of thoſe who boaſt themſelves to be Succeſſors to that great Apoſtle; ſhall be a little touched at in the ſtory of the *Roman Papacy*. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that all the people of this Countrey, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquiſition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Proteſtant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monſtrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternall life, have either been ſtopped, or elſe corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this moſt flouriſhing Garden, ſtill preſerve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the ſame channels, as before they did. And of theſe *Italy* hath as many as any one Countrey, but none of any long courſe, by reaſon that all parts of it are ſo neer ſome Sea; moſt of which riſing from the *Alpes*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the ſnows in Winter, and caſuality of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often over-flow the Countrey, and for the moſt part leave an ill Air behind them. Thoſe of chief note are, 1. The River *Po*, or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is ſaid to have been drenched, when he fell from heaven. It riſeth in the *Alpes*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Ciſpadanam* and *Tranſpadanam*; and having taken in 30 leſſer ſtreams, falls with ſeven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea, not far from *Venice*. 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſutello*, antiently the North-bound of *Italy*; *Hic fluvius quondam Italiæ finis*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long ſince choaked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arnus*, which riſing in the *Apennine* falleth into the *Tuſcan* Sea, and antiently divided *Italy* on that ſide from the *Ciſalpine Galls*; on the banks hereof ſtandeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticinus*, which gave name to the City of *Pavy*, called of old *Ticinum*; it riſeth in the *Alpes*, and emptieth it ſelf into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Liris*, now called *Gariglia*, ſtained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*; and no leſs unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medices*. 6. *Cuique fuit rerum promiſſa potentia*, Tibris;

And Tiber, *unto which was given*
The power of all things under Heaven.

It riſeth from the *Apennine* Hills, not far from *Aretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuſcany* (which it parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently neer *Cita de Caſtello*, *Perugia* and the old *Ocriculum*, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tuſcan*, or lower Sea, at *Oſtia*. Here is alſo the Lake of *Thraſymene*, neer which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Conſul, and his whole Army, opening thereby his paſſage to the gates of *Rome*: and the famous River of 7. *Metaurus*, where the *Romans* overcame *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*; and thereby made a way to the ruine of *Carthage*. Others of leſs note ſhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, thoſe of moſt note are the *Alpes*, and the *Apennine*, of which the reſidue in a manner are but ſpurs and branches. Of theſe, the *Alpes* being alſo apperraining to *France*, and *Germany*; or rather containing many large and entire Provinces, which belong to neither; deſerves a Tractate by by it ſelf. The *Apennine*, being proper only to this Countrey, but ſo that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, ſhall be ſpoken of here. A ledge of hills which take beginning neer *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Countrey of *Genoa*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compaſſe Northwards, extend to the furtheſt parts of *Italy*, dividing it almoſt in the very middeſt: that part thereof which lyeth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea, being called *Ciſapennina*; *Tranſapennina*, that which lay towards the *Adriatick*. Paſſing in one entire body as far as *Aſcoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the higheſt; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the Mount of *Gargano*, and ſo unto the land of *Otranto*; the other ſpreadeth it ſelf as far as *Calabria*, thoſe being the moſt Eaſtern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apennine*, as ſome ſay, *à Penna*, by which word the *Latins* uſed to ſignifie the top or ſummit of an Hill; by reaſon of the height and ſharp points thereof: as others ſay, *quaſi Alpes Pœninæ*, becauſe firſt overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Roman* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof, by *Virgil* named *Apenninicolæ*; but otherwiſe reducible to ſome of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain moſt of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eaſtwards, are but the excurſions; which being of leſs note, ſhall be ſpoken of as they lie before us in the way.

To proceed now to ſo much of the Hiſtory of *Italy* as concerns the generalls; we are to know that the firſt Inhabitants of it (not to ſay any thing of the fiction of Hyer *Annius* under the name of *Beroſus*, who will needs have *Noah* himſelf come hither ſhortly after the Flood) were doubtleſſe of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth ſonne of *Javan*, one of the ſonnes of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was ſince called *Macedon*, and after ſpreading themſelves

further as their numbers increased, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countreys adjoyning to it: From whence desirous of a warmer and more fertile soil, they came in tract of time to the Coasts of *Dalmatia*; and thence to this Countrey since called *Italy*. That they did spring originally from the seed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the *Greek* pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Eusebius*, Κίνοι ἐξ ὧν Λατῖνοι καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι; that is to say, from the *Kitians*, or children of *Kittim*, descended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The same occurs also in the *Chronicon* of *Alexandria*. So also saith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (saith he) the sonne of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his sonne *Latinus*, ὃς τὰς Κιτταίους ἐπωνύμους Λατίνους, from whom the *Keteans* were named *Latins*. The same in other words saith *Suidas*. Nor want there some remainders of this name in approved Writers, besides these autorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionysius Halicarnasseus*; and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cumæ*, whereof *Aristotle* speaketh in his book *de Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætolians*, besides the other Arguments which *Reineccius* useth in this point, the neerness, or identity rather of the names doth seem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek Aitolia*; and the letter *O* being changed into *A* according to the *Æolick* Dialect, which was that used by the *Ætolians*: the alteration of the name from *Aitolia* and *Aitolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very easie, if not naturall; the rather, in regard there is an Island neer *Italy*, in the *Tuscan* Sea, peopled originally by these very *Ætolians*, which in antient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by such an easie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its first plantation from the *Ætolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus* the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* speaks, be no other than *Ætolus*, some man of principall mark, and eminency, amongst that people, who had the conduct of this Colony when they came for *Italy*. And this I should believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable, that *Sicily* should borrow its first planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* should borrow either name or people from so small a Kingdome: especially considering that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in those parts of *Greece*, ever since *Aitolus* the sonne of a King of *Elis*, was founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdome. The way thus shewn, and the passages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelasgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it; after whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their severall followers, came and setled there. Not to say any thing of those severall Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponnesus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themselves so thick in the East of *Italy* now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Grecia*. So that the *Grecians* made the main grosse or body of the *Italian* people; to which the coming of some *Tuscans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia*, in *Asia minor*, served but as an *Accessary*, and altered nothing of the Principall. The last that setled here, were some of the Relicts of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*, who flying from their native Countrey, and enraged Enemies, were first cast upon the coasts of *Africk*; where having staid a while to refresh his Companyes (we shall hereafter take occasion to consider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he set sail for *Italy*, being the place assigned him by the Gods for his seat and Empire; whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the Vessels then used, to the number of 1200 men. And there he landed, as it proved in an happy hour: For he was no sooner arrived, but he was lovingly cherished, and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*; whose chief City or Seat Royall was then called *Laurentum*; who mu[illegible]ming of this Stranger, as a man whose fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither m[illegible] his love sufficiently, nor bind him fast enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his [illegible] daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutili*, a former Suter; which being ended in the death of the *Rutilian* Rivall, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, in a sure possession. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentini*, into a more constant bond of Friendship, by many inter-marriages, and mutuall kindnesses, they built the Town of *Lavinium*, called so in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat Royall of the Princes of the *Trojan* line. But long it did not hold that state. For *Ascanius* the sonne of *Æneas* by his former Wife, to avoyd all occasions of contention with his Mother in Law, left her (*Æneas* being dead) in possession of *Lavinium*, and built *Longa Alba*: which being surrendred by *Iulus* the sonne of *Ascanius* to his half-brother *Silvius*, became the constant habitation of the *Silvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and finall ending of the race of the *Latin* Kings. The names of whom (for there occurs little of their actions) we are next to shew; taking along with us those few Kings which reigned in those parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Æneas*.

The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.

A. M.

2637. 1. *Janus*, the first King of the *Aborigines*, who lived in the same time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*. He received *Saturn* flying out of *Crete* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdome at his death. He is sayd to be the founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janiculus*, on which it was supposed that he had his dwelling.

2. *Saturn*, who taught the people the use of dunging of their lands, and for that cause was honoured by them as a God, under the name of *Stercutius*, as St. *Austin* hath it. He reigned first together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himself alone: the whole time of both their reigns was 33 years.

3. *Picus*,

2670. 3. *Picus*, well skilled in divination by the flight and chattering of Birds, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Pye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon. 37.

2707. 4. *Faunus*, the ſonne of *Picus*, and the husband of *Fatua*, in whoſe time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquiſhed the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*. 44.

2751. 5. *Latinus*, the ſonne of *Faunus*, who entertained *Æneas* coming from the wars and deſtruction of *Troy*, and gave him his daughter *Lavinia* to wife, with his Kingdome after him in Dower. 36.

2787. 6. *Lavinia*, daughter to *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins*, marryed to *Æneas*, whom ſhe out-lived, he being ſlain in his Wars againſt *Mezentius*, the King of *Tuſcany*; the ſonne or ſucceſſor of that *Mezentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Æneas* had before ſlain, in his war with *Turnus*, and the *Latins*. 7.

Kings of the *Latins*, of the *Trojan* or *Silvian* Race.

A. M.

1787. 1. *Æneas*, the ſonne of *Anchiſes*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, ſlain in his wars againſt *Mezentius* King of the *Tuſcans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is ſaid. 3.

2790. 2. *Aſcanius*, the ſonne of *Æneas* by *Creuſa* his former Wife, for fear of whom, *Lavinia* being great with child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a ſonne called *Silvius*. He removed the Seat Royall from *Lavinium*, to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building. 38.

2828. 3. *Silvius Poſthumus*, the ſonne of *Æneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred unto the Kingdome by the love of the people, before *Iulus* the ſonne of *Aſcanius* (the founder of the *Julian* family) from whom all the Kings of this Race had the name of *Silvii*; *Iulus* being honoured with the chief Prieſthood (an office next in dignity to that of the King) which he tranſlated afterwards unto his Poſterity. 29.

2857. 4. *Æneas Silvius*. 31.

2888. 5. *Latinus Silvius*. 50.

2938. 6. *Alba Silvius*, ſo called becauſe of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in ſome decay: Or probably becauſe there he had his birth. 39.

2977. 7. *Capetus Silvius*. 24.

3001. 8. *Capys Silvius*, ſaid to be the founder of the City of *Capua*; which ſhews that he extended his dominion further than the Province of *Latium*. 28.

3029. 9. *Capetus Silvius*. 13.

3042. 10. *Tiberinus Silvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*. 8.

3050. 11. *Agrippa Silvius*. 40.

3090. 12. *Alladius Silvius*, who to make himſelf the more terrible to his Subjects, ſtudyed a way to imitate the Thunder, but was killed at laſt by a reall Thunder-clap from Heaven. 19.

3109. 13. *Aventinus Silvius*, who gave name to the Hill *Aventine*. 37.

3146. 14. *Procas Silvius*. 23.

3169. 15. *Amulius Silvius*, the younger ſonne of *Procas*, ſetting aſide his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdome for himſelf; ſlain at laſt by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* ſetled in the Throne. 42.

3211. 16. *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the laſt King of the *Latins*, reſtored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the ſhort reign of one year only, deprived by him both of life and Kingdome. After whoſe death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themſelves as a Free eſtate till ſubdued to *Rome*. 1.

Concerning this it is to be underſtood, that *Amulius* having chaſed his eldeſt brother *Numitor* out of the Countrey, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne, cauſed his brothers daughter *Rhea* (for preventing any iſſue by her) to be ſhut up in the Temple of *Veſta*. Where ſhe proving the mother of two ſonnes, was according to the Law buryed quick, and her children by the cruel Tyrant caſt out, to be devoured of wild Beaſts. They were found by *Fauſtulus* the Kings Shepheard, nurſt by his Wife, for her infamous life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were ſuckled by a Wolf) and being grown to mans eſtate, ſlew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grandfather *Numitor* in the Royall Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of life and kingdome. Of theſe the eldeſt was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the ſhort poſſeſſion of their Grandfather *Numitor*, laid the foundation of the moſt famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* firſt hanſelled with the blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had diſdainfully leapt over the walls of his new City. This City he made an *Aſylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what deſperate eſtate ſoever, and having ranked them into order, made himſelf their King. A people of ſo baſe a nature, that their neighbours refuſed to give them any of their daughters in marriage: So they were deſtitute of Wives, and conſequently not like to continue a people long; till on a proclamation made of ſome playes and paſtimes, many of the *Sabine* women flocked thither to behold the ſports, whom the *Romans* ſeiſed on, and forced an unwilling conſent from them, to become their Wives. From ſuch a baſe and low beginning did this City riſe, to be the Empreſſe of the World.

The Kings of *Rome*.

A. M.

3213. 1. *Romulus* the founder of *Rome*: he made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabines*, coming againſt him to revenge the raviſhment of their women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory. 37.

3251. 2. *Numa*, the firſt Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies. 43.

3294. 3. *Tullus Hoſtilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the conqueſt of *Alba*, the mother-City of the *Latins*, and vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*. 32.

3326. 4. *Ancus Martius*, who built *Oſtia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City. 24.

3350. 5. *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who ſubdued many of the *Tuſcan* Nations, encreaſed the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the *triumphall* ornaments. 38.

3388. 6. *Servius Tullus*, who firſt cauſed the people to be *inrolled*, and brought into *cenſe*. 44.

3432. 7. *Tarquinius Superbus*, ſonne to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquiſhed the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Ocriculum*, and *Sueſſa Pometia*; but for his own inſolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatine* by his ſonne *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, *Anno Mund.* 3457. *V. C.* 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, cauſed two Officers to be choſen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Conſuls*, *à conſulendo*, from counſelling of, and conſulting the good of the Common-wealth, *ut conſulere ſe ſuis civibus meminerint*, ſaith the Hiſtorian, their name being a *Memento* of their charge or duty. And in this office they reſolved to have alwayes two, and thoſe but only for a year, *Ne vel ſolitudine vel morâ poteſtas corrumperetur*. And though ſome had the fortune to be *Conſuls* two or three years together, yet every new year they were anew choſen, and ſo their Offices reckoned as ſeverall; neither do we find any to have been elected for leſſe than a year, unleſs upon the death or depoſition of a former, untill the Civil wars. But then, *cùm belli civilis præmia feſtinari cœperunt*, when the ſervices done in the Civil wars required a quicker turn in requitall, the *Conſulſhip* was given only for ſome part of the year, and ordinarily for two Moneths: the firſt *Conſuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whoſe names the writings made for the whole year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only ſerved to make up a number. For ſo ambitious were the *Romans* of this honour, that when *Maximus* dyed in the laſt day of his Conſulſhip, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæſar* for that part of the day that remained: whence that ſo memorated jeſt of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Conſulem, qui toto conſulatûs ſui tempore ſomnum oculis non vidit*! And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have reſigned it, one *Roſcius Regulus* obtained the office from *Vitellius*, for the day remaining: but as the Hiſtorian noteth, *magno cum irriſu accipientis, tribuentiſq;*. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the firſt number of *Conſuls*, ſo ſometimes fell they ſhort of it. The firſt that was ſole *Conſul* was *Pompey*, in the beginning of the Civil Wars, *viz. A.V.C.* 703. The next, one *Varanes*, *A. C.* 410. This Office, from the firſt inſtitution to the finall period of it, continued at the leaſt in name (for the Emperors had of long time aſſumed the Power and Prerogatives appertaining to it) the ſpace of 1084. yeers, though not without many intermiſſions of the name and Title, by the ſeverall interpoſings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Conſular Tribunes*, of which more anon. The laſt Conſul was one *Baſilius*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, *A. Ch.* 542. The two firſt, *Collatinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whoſe inſtigation the people had took Arms againſt the houſe of the *Tarquins*. A man ſo zealous in defence of the common liberty, ſo reſolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and ſo extremely oppoſite to the Royal Race, that he not only cauſed *Collatine* to reſign his Office within the year, becauſe he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own ſonnes, for holding correſpondence and *intelligence* with them. But though the Government were changed, the old deſign was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with ſo ſlow a pace, by reaſon of their factions and diviſions, that it was full 500. yeers before they could be Maſters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our conſideration, that the *Italians* ſhould hold out ſo long a time againſt the puiſſance of the *Romans*; when in leſs then half that time enſuing, they did poſſeſſe themſelves of almoſt all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdomes and Provinces both in *Aſia* and *Africk*. So difficult a thing it was (as is ſaid by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiæ*, to contract the many limbs of *Italy* into one body, and unite them under one head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their neereſt Neighbours; whoſe overthrow, in the end of the firſt *Punick* War, *A. V. C.* 512. gave them the full poſſeſſion of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracuſa*) and the Iſle of *Sardinia*. After that being moleſted in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pirates, and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War againſt her, and brought that puiſſant people to become their Tributaries, *A. V. C.* 525. The ſecond *Carthaginian* war, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almoſt put a period to the glories of their Common-wealth. But that being alſo ended to their advantage by the conqueſt of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own terms, and after outed his ſonne *Perſeus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the reſt of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his poſſeſſion of the *Leſſer Aſia*; and finally prevailed ſo ſucceſſefully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Common-wealth that could ſtand in their way, untill the State being burdened with its too much greatneſs, began to totter of it ſelf.

Two

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatneſſe, beſides the Providence of God which had ſo diſpoſed it: which were the great encouragments which they gave their Souldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they uſed to beſtow upon their *Generals*, when they returned home with honour and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did ſo return, he was permitted to enter ſitting on a glorious Chariot, the ſpoils which he had got in war being carryed before, the priſoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Souldiers compaſſing him about with their ſeverall Crowns, according to the quality of their well-deſervings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Prieſts, and principall Ladies, going out to meet him. The firſt beginning of which cuſtome is aſcribed to *Romulus*; who in the war with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made againſt him in revenge of the rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* women, ſeeing his people give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Acron* being vanquiſhed, the Conquerer cutteth down a fair young Oak, and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquiſhed King: then girding his Gown cloſe unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his ſhoulders, and marched towards the City, his Army following him, and ſinging an *Epinicion* or ſong of victory. To this we muſt refer the originall and beginning of *Triumphs*. But *nihil eſt inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the ſaying is. *Tarquinius Priſcus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the Purple Robe, and the Triumphant Chariot drawn with four Horſes. The other pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride. Now of theſe *Triumphs* there were two ſorts, the Greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the Leſſer, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumſtances. For, 1. The *Triumpher* made his entrance in a Royall Chariot, and was met by the *Senators* in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumpher* had a Lawrel Crown, and entred with the noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Fir, with Flutes and *Haultboyes* playing before him. 3. The *Triumpher* was attyred in a Garment of State, which they called *Veſtis Trabeata*; but the *Ovator* in a plain Purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph* the Souldiers cryed out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated only *O, O, O*, from the often doubling of which word, it had (as ſome think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And laſtly, the *Triumpher* uſed to ſacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only, from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there were three caſes in which the Conquerer was to be content with this leſſer Triumph. 1. If the number of the enemies whom he ſlew in battell exceeded not 5000. men; or that he had not ſo much overcome them by force, as perſwaſion, or ſubtilty: 2. If the War had been ſlight, curſory, or not lawfully managed: And 3. If it were againſt an ignoble Enemy. And of this laſt we have a fair inſtance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* War, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*; *nè Triumphi dignitatem* Servili *inſcriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs* they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who liſt to ſee may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Aemilius* deſcribed by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been ſaid, we may conjecture ſomewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this honour was not always vouchſafed to thoſe who had beſt deſerved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denyed in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatneſs of the Men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denyed a victorious Generall, by the ſtrength of a contrary Faction; and ſo *Pompey* denyed *Metellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conqueſt of *Crete*: 2. Sometimes the Conquerer himſelf was willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And ſo *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conqueſt of *Sicily*, having *triumphed* twice before, refuſed that honour, his reaſon was, καὶ φθόνον ἄχει ὁ τεῖτος θρίαμβος, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Souldiers having been ill paid, or otherwiſe not well treated by their Commanders, oppoſed them in their ſuit for it: and this was the caſe of *Paulus Aemilius*, who queſtionleſs had miſſed this honour, for not dividing amongſt them the Spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promiſed, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own caſe, had not ſtickled hard for him with the Souldiers. 4. It was ſometimes denyed, becauſe the Generall had born no publick Office in the Common-wealth: For ſo in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconſul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers anſwered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it, *ut qui neq;* Conſul, *neq;* Dictator, *neq;* Prætor *res geſſiſſet* Triumpharet. 5. Sometimes the *Generalls* themſelves omitted it for the furtherance of ſome of their other purpoſes. And ſo *Cæſar* coming towards *Rome*, a Victor, at the ſame time the *Conſuls* were to be choſen, laid aſide his demand of the *Triumph*, to ſue for the Conſulſhip; it being the cuſtome, that ſuch as demanded the *Triumph*, ſhould abide without the City; and ſuch as ſued for the Conſulſhip, muſt of neceſſity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denyed, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the *Senate*: in which reſpect the *Triumph* was denyed unto *Manlius* on the conqueſt of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of their Empire; *quia cauſam Belli* Senatus *non approbavit*, becauſe he had no Commiſſion from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been *Civil*, becauſe in all ſuch Wars whoſoever was Conquerer, the Common-wealth was a loſer by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquiſhed *Sertorius* and his party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Forain*, not a *Civil* War, becauſe they would not loſe their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quàm* Civile *videri voluerunt, ut Triumpharent*. 8. If the victory had not been obtained without great loſſe on the *Romans* ſide; in which regard *Valerius* after his conqueſt of the *Galls* was denyed this honour; *quia magis dolor civibus amiſſis, quàm gaudium fuſis hoſtibus prævaluit*, ſaith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And laſtly the *Trimph* was denyed a *Generall*, if the ſervice had not

been performed in his own Province: And ſo we finde that when *Livius*, and *Nero*, being Conſuls had vanquiſhed *Aſdrubal*, *Livius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day; becauſe the field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Acceſſary*, or aſſiſtant to him.

And theſe are all, or at the leaſt the principal cauſes, of hindering or omitting this great honour, indeed the greateſt that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the Common-wealth was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aſide for altogether, as too great for Subjects; and was firſt purpoſely neglected by *Vipſanius Agrippa*, the Eſtabliſher of *Auguſtus* in the *Roman* Empire; who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Aſia*, and his quiet ſetling of that Countrey; to give Poſterity an example, refuſed to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occaſioned that this cuſtome was in ſhort time quite laid aſide; and that no man under the degree of an *Emperor* Triumphed ſolemnly; all others from thence-forth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, μόναις ταῖς ἐπινικίοις τιμαῖς, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Beliſarius* having ſubdued the Kingdome of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is ſaid (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet in propriety of ſpeech, it was nothing but an honourable preſenting of himſelf and his priſoners before the Emperour; and was ſo far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the ſolemnities uſed in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themſelves much affect this honour, either becauſe too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majeſty*; the laſt (as I remember) that made uſe thereof to ſet forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemyæ*, a people of *Africk*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviours birth.

In the next place look we on the incouragements and rewards of the common Souldiers: For beſides the ſetting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer ſort, in which they might reſt themſelves when they were paſt ſervice; and beſides the large *donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did beſtow upon them; they had their *mural Crown*, for him that firſt ſcaled the Wals; a *naval Crown*, for him that firſt boarded the Enemies Ships; a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Caſtrenſis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preſerved the life of a *Roman* Citizen. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe Chains, and Bracelets, which Souldiers of inferiour merit were adorned withall. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Counſels in the Senate, the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, and their Dominions were enlarged ſo immenſly, that never any Common-wealth had ſo large a growth.

And yet the greatneſs of this ſtate is neither totally, nor only, to be attributed to the *Conſular* Government. For though the wals of this great building were raiſed by the *Conſuls*, yet the foundation of the ſame was laid by the Kings, and the roof thereof laid on by the Emperors. Nay, be it ſpoken to the honour of *Monarchical* Government, whenſoever any great and imminent danger did ſeem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aſide their confidence in the rule of their *Conſuls*, and betake themſelves to the command of one Soveraign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this ſhort abſtract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbem* Romam "*à principio Reges habuere, &c.* The City of *Rome* was in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and "the Conſulſhip *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were choſe but for a time; The *Decemviri* "paſſed not two years, neither had the *Conſular* autority of the *Tribunes* of the Souldiers any long "continuance, nor *Cinnas* nor *Syllas* dominion. *Pompey* and *Craſſus* quickly yeelded to *Cæſars* forces; "*Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Auguſtus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of theſe publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were inſtituted only on a particular occaſion for the reforming of the Lawes by thoſe of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Conſular Autority* ordained to divert common people from ſeeking after the *Conſulſhip*; I ſhall here ſay nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and ſuch as made way for the Emperors in the cloſe of all; I ſhall inlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à Dictando*, becauſe they preſcribed what they pleaſed unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not diſpute. Hence that memorable jeſt of *Julius Cæſar*, who being told that *Sylla* had reſigned his *Dictatorſhip*, though by decree of Senate made *perpetual* to him; returned this Anſwer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned man, *dictare neſciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were alſo called *Populi Magiſtri*, or the peoples Maſters, becauſe from them lay no Appeal unto the people (as did from all the reſt of the *Roman* Magiſtrates) during the whole time of their command; which ordinarily continued for ſix moneths; yet ſo, that if they did in the mean time ſettle the affairs of the Common-wealth, they reſigned it ſooner; if the neceſſities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were choſen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withall, I have here ſub-joyned, together with the ſervices they did the publick, in the time of their Office.

The *Dictators* of *Rome*.

A.V.C.		
253.	1	*Titus Largius*, choſen upon occaſion of a general War, made by the *Latins* upon *Rome*; the firſt that ever had this Office.
257.	2	*Aulus Poſthumius*, choſen to purſue that war, which he ended with the ſlaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.
295.	3	*L. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, choſen to this office from the Plough, overcame the *Volſci*; choſen again *An. V. C.* 314. to ſuppreſs the ſedition raiſed by *Sp. Melius*.
318.	4	*Æmilius Mamercus*, overcame che *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.

338. 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*, and the *Lavicani*.
354. 6 *Furius Camillus*, who finally deſtroyed the City of the *Veii*, and being choſen a ſecond time, *A. V. C.* 362. preſerved his Countrey from the *Galls*: thrice choſen after this upon new occaſions.
375. 7 *Tit. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, choſen in the War againſt the *Latins*.
385. 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous peſtilence, to finde a way for the appeaſing of the gods.
396. 9 *C. Sulpitius*.
418. 10 *Martius Rutilius*, the firſt *Dictator* choſen out of the *Commons*.
11 *L. Papyrius* ſubdued the *Samnites*.
438. 12 *Coſſus*, by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquiſhed.
13 *Æmilius*, who alſo overcame the *Samnites*.
14 *Lentulus*, who triumphed alſo over the *Samnites*.
451. 15 *I. Bubulcus*, who finally ſubdued the *Æqui* and the *Volſci*.
16 *Corn. Rufinus*.
467. 17 *Q. Hortenſius*, choſen for appeaſing a difference betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified themſelves in *Janiculus*, one of the Hils whereon *Rome* ſtood.
505. 18 *Cl Glizias*, forced to reſign his office to
19 *Atilius Colatinus*, the firſt that exerciſed his office out of *Italy*: he was choſen in the firſt *Punick* War.
536. 20 *Fabius Maximus*, choſen in the war againſt *Annibal*.
537. 21 *M. Junius*, choſen upon the great defeat which the *Roman* Forces had at the battel of *Cannæ*.
545. 23 *L. Manlius Torquatus*, choſen upon the death of *Marcellus* the Conſul ſlain by *Annibal*.
672. 24 *L. Sylla* (deſcended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this office) having by force of Arms ſuppreſſed the faction of *Marius* and *Cinna*, made himſelf Maſter of the City, and cauſed himſelf to be choſen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the Office had been intermitted, for the ſpace of 127 years: which office having exerciſed with a great deal of cruelty, he reſigned with as great a confidence.
707. 25 *C. Julius Cæſar*, deſcended from *Iulus* the ſon of *Aſcanius*, who was the ſecond King of the *Trojan* Race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaule Tranſalpine* to the *Roman* Empire; and finding himſelf unworthily requited by the faction of *Pompey*, paſſed with his Army after him into *Greece*; and having vanquiſhed him in the fields of *Pharſalia*, and made himſelf abſolutely maſter of the *Roman* Empire; took to himſelf the ſupreme Government thereof under the title of *Dictator*; which having managed for the ſpace of five years, he was murthered in the Senate houſe by *Brutus* and *Caſſius*.

Before the time of theſe *perpetual Dictators*, the *Romans* having ſome enemies or other that oppoſed the progreſs of their fortunes, had not the leiſure to contend with one another, in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and ſeditions were ſoon compoſed. But being grown ſo great as to fear no Enemy; and the Eſtate ſo vaſt, that it was grown too mighty for a *popular* Government; then they began to practiſe on the peoples patience, and to project the ſharing of the Empire amongſt the great ones. Concerning which, take here this ſhort *Epitome*, which I finde in *Tacitus*. "*Rebus modicis æqua-*
"*litas facilè habebatur, &c.* While (ſaith he) our Dominions were but ſmal, Equality was eaſily main-
"tained among us. But after we had ſubdued the World, and deſtroyed all Kings and Cities that ſtood
"in our way, or might work our annoyance; when we had leiſure to ſeek after Wealth without peril,
"there aroſe hot contentions betwixt the *Nobility* and the *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes*
"carried it away; ſometimes the *Conſuls* had the better: and in the City and common *Forum*, ſome
"little skirmiſhes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were ſometimes ſeen. Afterwards *C. Marius*
"one of the meaneſt of the Commonalty, and *L. Sylla* the moſt cruel of all the Nobility, by force of
"Arms overthrowing the *Free-State*, reduced all to an abſolute Government. To them ſucceeded
"*Cn. Pompeius*, a little cloſer in his projects, but nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: *Et*
"*nunquam poſtea niſi de Principatu quæſitum*, and never after that was any other point debated, than who
"ſhould get the Soveraignty unto himſelf. So *Tacitus*, and he ſtateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the controverſie, and had found *Cæſar* a better diſputant than himſelf; *Auguſtus, Antony*, and *Lepidus* (on the death of *Cæſar*) made good the Argument, attracting all power unto themſelves by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Auguſtus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquiſhed *M. Antony* at the battel of *Actium*, became ſole Soveraign of the State, by the name of *Prince*; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus feſſa, nomine Principis ſub imperium accepit*, as that Author hath it.

But touching thoſe great alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it to a *Monarchy* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; I publiſhed a Diſcourſe in the year 1631. (but written many years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or *an* Eſſay *of thoſe Means and Counſels* whereby the *Common-wealth of* Rome *was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but ſhort, ſo pertinent to the Preſent buſineſs, and ſo well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to ſubjoyn it here. The Reader may either peruſe it, or prætermit it, as his fancy guides him. And here it followeth in theſe words.

They

Auguſtus. THey which have heretofore written of *Common-wealths*, have divided them into three *Species*: The Government of the *King*; ſecondly, of the *Nobles*; and thirdly, of the *People*. Either of theſe is again ſubdivided into *good* and *evil*: The *evil* form being only the *good* corrupted; the *bad* nothing elſe but the *good* refined. So is the Government of a *King* divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyranny*; Of the *Nobles*, into an *Ariſtocraty*, and an *Oligarchy*; Of the *People*, into a *Republick* and *Democraty*. All theſe, as well in general, as in the ſeveral couplets, have a ſecret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* tranſmigration (as it were) into each others being. I need not ſtand on many inſtances. The Common-wealth of *Rome* (into whoſe ſtories whoſoever looketh, will judge them rather to contain the acts of the whole World, than a particular Nation) will ſerve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reſerved unto himſelf the chief Soveraignty, leaving it entire to his Succeſſors. *Numa*, *Ancus Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themſelves ſo moderately, and the people ſo juſtly, that they affected not *Tyranny*; nor the Commons *Liberty*. They appeared more deſirous to fill the *Coffers* of their Subjects, than their own *Treaſuries*: And when neceſſity compelled them to a Tax, they rather ſeemed to ſheer their ſheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the ſecond, commonly called *Superbus*, a man of inſupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himſelf in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious ſpirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightful Inheritance; made his government anſwerable to his entrance, cruel and bloudy. How many men, eminent as well by their own vertue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cauſe promote, to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the *Senate* was free from ſlaughter? What corner of the City from lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miſerable *Romans* were viſited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Luſt* exorbitant in their ſon *Sextus*, a true *Copy* of the old *Originals*. Either of theſe had been more than enough to exerciſe the peoples patience. But meeting all at one time, it ſeemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedneſs of the one, and the wickedneſs of the other. *Brutus* (a name fatal to *Tyrants*) did eaſily perſwade the *Commons* to ſhake off this yoke. For they, as well deſirous of *Novelties*, as ſenſible of *Oppreſſions*, had long ſince murmured at the preſent State; and wanted nothing but a head to break out into actual Rebellion. So
*A.V.C.*244. the *People* got the *Freedome*, and the *Kings* loſt the *Soveraignty* of the City.

2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair title to the *Crown*, yet either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the firſt *Conſul* than the laſt *Prince*; inſtituted a new form of Government: Wherein the ſway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom two were annually choſen as chief of the reſt. And herein certainly he dealt very adviſedly. For had he ſought to confirm himſelf in the *Kingdome*, what could men judge, but that, not love to his Countrey was the cauſe that ſtirred him to take Armes, but deſire of Rule? Again, beſides that ſecure *Privacy* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; what hope had he to keep the ſeat long, having by his own example taught the people both the *Theory* and *Practiſe* of *Rebellion*? Under this new *Ariſtocraty* the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, their dominions were inlarged ſo immenſly, that it may well be queſtioned, whether the *Roman* fortune cauſed their greatneſs, or their valour commanded their fortune. For the Governors not ſeeking wealth but honour, or not their own wealth, but the publick, did ſo demean themſelves both in Peace and War, that there was between all, a vertuous emulation, who ſhould moſt benefit his Countrey. An happineſs which was too great to continue long. The people had as yet no written *Lawes*: *Cuſtome* bearing moſt ſway, the reſt of the *Law* locked up in the breaſt of the *Judges*. To avoid ſuch inconveniencies as might hence enſue, there were ſome men, conceived to be as ſound in judgement, as honeſt in their actions, deputed by a general Commiſſion, to take an abſtract of the *Grecian Lawes*; according to the tenor whereof, the *People* were to frame their lives, the *Judges* their ſentences. Here followed the *Obligarchy* or *Decemvirate*
*A.V.C.*304. *State* of *Rome*, but long it laſted not. For theſe new *Lords* joyning forces together, made themſelves rich with the ſpoil of the *people*, not caring by what unlawful means they could purchaſe either profit or pleaſure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He unmindful of *Lucretia* and the *Tarquins*, luſted after *Virginia*, a woman though of low condition, yet ſuch a woman in whom beauty and vertue ſtrove for the preheminence. The iſſue was, that ſhe (to ſave her honour) was ſlain by her own Father in an open Aſſembly of the people; *Appius* forced to make away himſelf in priſon; and the reſt of that *Magiſtracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Conſuls* were for a time reſtored.

3. The *people* fleſhed with this victory, and calling to minde how their Anceſtors had in like manner baniſhed the *Kings*, began to know their own ſtrength, and ſtomached it exceedingly, that they on whoſe ſhoulders the frame of the State was ſupported, ſhould be ſo much under the Command of others; that they who were *Lords* abroad, ſhould be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raiſe a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune Canuleius*. Nor could they by any perſwaſions be induced to lay down Armes, till they had obtained a decree, That from thenceforth, the
*A.V.C.*308. *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiſcuouſly be married. And this was the firſt ſtep to the *Republick*. The gaining this new *Priviledge*, put them in poſſibility of obtaining greater. They now ſue to be capable of the *Conſulſhip*. The *Fathers* conſulting of this demand, wiſely fore-ſaw, that to grant their Petition, or to deny it was alike dangerous. For were it utterly daſhed, it was to be feared the *People* would again forſake the City; and yet make their ſtay more inſolent and inſupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly propoſed a middle courſe, whereby the fury of the multitude might be appeaſed

peaſed, without blemiſh to the *Conſular* dignity. He conſtituted ſix Annual Officers, equally choſen out of the *People* and the *Nobles*, calling them *Tribuni Militum Conſularis poteſtatis*. This Office continued, but not without many *Interſtitiums*, the ſpace of 78. years. Which time expired, and ſome experience being had of the peoples Government; the *Lords* of the *Senate* did decree, That one of the *Conſuls* ſhould from thenceforth be choſen by, and out of the *Commons*; that they ſhould be capable of all *Magiſtracies*; yea, even of the *Dictatorſhip*. So that now *Vertue* was as ſpeedy a Ladder to climb unto Honours, as *Nobility of Birth*; and a *Good* man as much reſpected as a *Great*. A rare felicity of the times. *Auguſtus.* *A.V.C.*310. *A.V.C.*388

4. The *People* being thus mixt with the *Nobles*, as well in Marriages, as Honours; one would have thought that this *Common-wealth*, being thus equally poiſed, had been immortal. But as in the *Natural Body*, there can be no exact and *Arithmetical* proportion of the humours and elements, without ſome *predominancy*: ſo in the *Body Politick*, can there be no equal mixture of *Plebeians* and *Patricians*, without the ſupremacy of the one or the other. The *people* had preſently after the inſtitution of the *Conſuls*, raiſed a Commotion, and withdrew themſelves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the *City*, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*; or Protectors of the Commons. Theſe being not long after by the Common Councel pronounced to be *Sacroſancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular State* too high, and thruſt the *Ariſtocratical* too low, not regarding to loſe the love of the one, ſo they might get the applauſe of the other. Inſomuch, that matters of judgement were devolved from the *Fathers* to the *Commons*; and the authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the *people*. Nay, they proceeded ſo far, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatned to ſend *Cotta* the *Conſul* unto Priſon. And *Sulpitius* in the ſame *Office*, made the *Conſuls* forſake the *Senate-houſe*, and ſlew one of their ſons, whoſe heels were not nimble enough to flie away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of *rule*, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable neceſſity in *Nature*, as the ordinary courſe of *Polities*, there muſt be a reverting to the firſt, and *Monarchical* Authority. For queſtionleſs it fareth many times with a *Common-wealth*, as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the ſigns of the *Zodiack*, till it return to the place where its motion firſt began. And the *Platonick* year of reducing all things to the ſame beginning, continuance and period, how falſe ſoever in the Books of *Nature*, is in ſome ſort true in the change of Government. *A.V.C.*26.

5. The way down-hill is eaſie and ordinary, but to aſcend unto the top requireth both wit to frame the ſteps, and courage to give the attempt. So was it here alſo with the *Romans*. They had naturally, and almoſt inſenſibly faln from a *Monarchy* to a *Populacy*, or *Democracy*: But to aſcend from a *Populacy* to a *Monarchy*, required many ſteps and degrees in many, much induſtry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well skilled in feeding the humours of the *People*, were the firſt that attempted, and ſeverally mounted to ſuch a height of command, as never durſt any promiſe to them, nor they hope for themſelves. *Marius* was of an harſh and ſtern nature, equally cruel to the *Enemies* in war, and the *people* in peace; one whoſe birth the *Romans* might have had juſt cauſe to curſe, had he not ſaved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whoſe carriage none could enough commend before, or ſufficiently condemn after his proſperity. A man whoſe *Peace* was far more bloudy than his *Wars*; a better *Subject* than a *Prince*.

Theſe two gave way each to other, and both to death. Next theſe, as well in faction and deſigns, as bloud and alliance, ſucceeded *Cæſar* and *Pompey*: Two men never truly paralleld ſince their own times. *Cæſar* had a wit to invent ſo pregnant, a heart to execute ſo ſtout, and to both a Fortune ſo favourable, that he durſt undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were anſwerable to his undertakings. *Pompey*, a man greater than his own or his friends wiſhes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an *Equal*, he had never met *Superiour*. Had theſe two lived in divers Ages, or exerciſed their valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yeeld them imployments. But turning their forces one againſt the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was baſely murthered in *Egypt*: and *Cæſar* victoriouſly Conquerour in *Theſſalie*, was barbarouſly maſſacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of theſe four Worthies could ſettle the *Monarchy* in himſelf; yet this ſhall be to their eternal memory recorded, that they firſt opened the paſſage to others, and firſt moved the ſtone, which rowling along tumbled the *People* out of the *Government*.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæſar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Cæſar* had left no heir, and *Pompey* no children; or rather, if *Antonius*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent ſpirit, had not begun new troubles. For he, knowing the affection of the *common people* unto young *Octavius*, *Cæſars* heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his Inheritance; did by *Decree* of the *Senate* reſtore *Sextus* the ſon of *Pompey* to his bloud and honours; Hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like Pellets in a Boyes Pot-gun, drive out each other; and ſo he might remain *Lord* of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be ſo fetcht over; and had moreover more deſire to revenge his Fathers death on *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, than turn himſelf upon an enemy, that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his firſt entrance into *Rome*, he declared himſelf *Cæſars* heir; though ſome regarding more his welfare than honour, diſſwaded him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but ſmal, his behaviour gentle and courteous; ſo that all had cauſe to love him, none to fear him. His firſt buſineſs was to *Antonius*, then poſſeſſed of all *Cæſars* eſtate. His words as modeſt, as his Petition juſt. *Antonies* anſwer ſomewhat churliſh, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the *Name* of *Cæſar*; and ſo diſmiſſed him unſatisfied, and with diſcontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet ſo called) perceiving that

An-

Auguſtus. *Antonies* anſwer, though it ſhew but a *delay*, was in effect a *denial*; inſinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whoſe means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to caſt great affection towards him. Next in a ſolemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have diſtributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjuſtly detain it from them both. Certainly there is not any thing prevaileth ſooner with the ignoble many than hope of gain. No ſooner had he finiſhed his ſpeech, and given away that to them, which he thought impoſſible to get for himſelf, but all was in a tumult. None was ſo ſparing of his words, but he had ſome curſe in ſtore for *Antonius*: every one vowing the deſtruction of that man, whom they ſuppoſed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* Donative.

7. In this hurly burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of both houſes declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius*, and *Panſa*, then *Conſuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18. years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League againſt the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to be abſent from a neceſſary war, ſo he alwaies uſed to reſerve himſelf from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterpriſe unto the *Conſuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Souldiers took moſt pains to get the Victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas, if any thing fell out to the Army, not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the buſineſs, would bring his honour off without ſtain. The *Conſuls* therefore proceeded in the War againſt *Antony*: who ſeeing little poſſibility of prevailing, reſolved to ſell the loſs of his own liberty, and his Souldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was ſo equally ſhared, that as the *Conſuls* might boaſt of the vanquiſhment of *Antony*, ſo *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Conſuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could deſire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his ſervice. He therefore applies himſelf ſo to them, that giving that among them which he had in preſent; and promiſing them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour ſhould advance him, he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the firſt ſtep by which he aſcended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it beſt to ſtrangle theſe hopes even in their Cradles; and to that end, decree the honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whoſe defence (being beſieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*), their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this froſt of unexpected unkindneſſe, ſufficient to nip the bloſſome of his hopes; but they denied him the *Conſulſhip*. Theſe harſh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at ſtake) to enter *Rome* as *Conqueror*; and force the *Fathers* to grant him his deſires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at; he generally ſhewed himſelf grateful to all, and particularly to ſome of the Souldiers; paying them what was behinde by promiſe, and openly proteſting that without their aid he durſt not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his day with the *Military men*, and ſhewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their ſervice; he added ſtronger bonds to ſuch as were already his own; and won many daily to his ſide, which before were either *neutral*, or *adverſaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puiſſant Army, he poſted thither; and ſo far prevailed with the Souldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the *General* entertained him with all expreſſions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, ſoon perſwaded him to lead his Forces into *Italie*; promiſing him no leſs than the Lordſhip of the world, if he durſt but ſhew his face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual newes of this combination, and fearing much the proweſſe of *Antony*, now ſtrengthned; conceived no courſe ſo fitting and convenient to his ends, as to joyn friendſhip, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either; but becauſe being deſtitute of means to reſiſt them, and alſo to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their forces oppreſs *Caſſius* and *M. Brutus*, and after as occaſion fell out, deal with them being ſevered. This League was ſolemnly confirmed by a bloudy *Proſcription* immediately following. Wherein to be revenged on their *enemies*, they betrayed their *friends*. A lamentable and ruthfull time, good and bad, rich and poor, being alike ſubject to the ſlaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Ceſars* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*; and every one began to curſe *Brutus* and *Caſſius* as the Autors of theſe preſent miſeries; whom they but lately honoured as the Reſtorers of the Common liberty. Nay the very *Kings* were deemed tolerable, and ſuch as lived in their daies, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrants*. Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happineſs in the *fruition*, but the *want*. Two of theſe *Triumviri* glutted themſelves with bloud, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the *people*. *Auguſtus* on the contrary, ſhewed himſelf much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; ſo that his conſent ſeemed rather forced then voluntary. But this *Proſcription*, though in it ſelf cruel and tyrannical, produced ſome good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proſcription*, and the enſuing Civil war, the ſtouteſt of the *Nobles* and *Commons* were made away, few being left which durſt endevour to recover the old *Liberty*; *Auguſtus* did the more eaſily eſtabliſh his *Monarchy*, and reſtore peace to the City. Moreover the proſecution of this cruelty ſo incenſed the people againſt *Antony* and *Lepidus*; that *Auguſtus*, whom moſt held excuſable, found them alwaies his faſt friends, if not for love to him, yet in ſpight to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Auguſtus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joynt forces march againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that ſervice, as well to diminiſh *Antonies* forces, as to keep his own entire. As for him-

himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the battel. Such end had *Brutus* and *Cassius*, two men whom fortune seemed to be in love with on the sudden, and did as suddenly forsake them. *Brutus* the more accomplished man; *Cassius* the more expert souldier. I pass over *AUGUSTUS* wars in *Italie*, *Antonies* in *Asia*; the discontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, sister to the one, and wife to the other *Emperor*. As also how joyning forces together to oppress *Sextus*, then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the conquest of *Sicilia*; they received him into the *Confederacy*, and joyned the Island of *Sardinia* to his other Conquests. To recompense which kindness, *Sextus* invited the two *Generals* aboard his *Admiral Galley*: and after a bountiful entertainment, return'd them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight, among so many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my self, upon what confidence *AUGUSTUS* and *Antony* durst so far trust their persons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reason *Sextus* having both of them in his power, would let slip so slightly that advantage; greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious person. This I am sure of, that he afterward repented it, and could have wished that he had hearkned to the voice of *Menas* his old servant, who had perswaded him to make his best of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, of old enemies made new friends, had the like enterview at *Savonæ*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Guicciardine*, describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet in the like case, have many, and as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundie*, the Arch-politicians of those daies; in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himself into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who also after a short restraint, dismissed him. *Augustus.* *A.V.C.711.*

10. These solemn expressions of amity between the three *Generals*, being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*; *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the *State*, though with the ruine of his *Colleagues*. He beginneth first with *Sextus*, having by gifts and promises drawn *Menas* unto his side; who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most of his designs. By the directions of this *Menas*, and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death in *Europe*, by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Asia*, by the command of *Antony*. After this victory, *AUGUSTUS*, either having, or pretending a quarrel against *Lepidus*, entreth into his Camp, seizeth his person, and depriving him of all honors, confineth him to *Rome*. A man that half against his will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and prosperity. An action of a very high nature, and such as *AUGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italie*. He therefore advisedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief *Maxim* in *Court-policy*, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of some honourable charge, whom we intend either to cast from his present honors; or else to make less potent with *Prince* and *People*. For which cause also *AUGUSTUS* perswaded *Antonies* absence from the City, to bring him at the last into discredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than dastastful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his Sister *Octavia* to leave her husband *Antonies* house; yet privately he perswaded her to live there still, and bring up his children; that so the *Romans* seeing her noble demeanor and love to her husband, might the more heartily detest him, who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antonies* will unto the people; in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewise preferred many Bils against *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italie* amongst his own Souldiers only; that he had not restored the ships borrowed to make war against *Sextus*.

11. These discontents seconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battel. *Antony* had a Fleet consisting of 500 ships, high-built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph, than a fight. His Land Forces consisted of 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horse. *AUGUSTUS* had the like number of Horsemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good *Men of War*, snug and close, built more for use then ostentation. The *Randezvouz* is *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable designs: here being fought also in our Fathers daies, that famous battel, wherein the *Venetians* gave the world to understand, that the *Turks* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the offensive side, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were *Oracles*, perswaded him to the Sea-fight; not that she thought it more safe, but that if *Antony* lost the day, she might with more facility escape. To this resolution, when most of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Souldiers thus bluntly gain-said it. "What a miserable security art thou possessed with, most noble Emperor? Where "is that ancient fore-sight, wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all dysasters, and turned the "Enemies devices on their own heads? Consider with thy self, most noble *General*, what uncertain "friends the *Winde* and *Sea* are? To how fickle an Element thou dost trust thy fortunes? Let the "*Egyptians* and *Phœnicians*, old *Mermaids*, born and nurst up in the Sea, follow this kinde of warfare. "But let us thy true *Roman* spirits, try our valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy *Empire*, "and our own *lives*. Perhaps thou dost mistrust our faith, look here *Antony* (with that he opened his "bosome) and thou shalt see many an honourable scar got in thy service. We are now too old to "learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy resolution, and to please a woman cast not away so many "of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the unresistible powers of heaven when they decree a mans

de-

Auguſtus. deſtruction, overthrow thoſe counſels by which he ſhould eſcape it. *Antony* turneth a deaf ear to this Souldiers wholeſome advice; and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kiſſes (as if from the fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony prepareth himſelf unto the battel.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other ſide, ſeeing a neceſſity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Veſſels were more uſeful and better manned, though fewer than his enemies: that his men to him were faithful, and by reaſon of their many Victories, in good heart; From *Antony* were daily revolted ſome Kings and Captains of note, to the great incouragement of the one ſide, and diſheartning of the other. The whole charge of the war he committed to *M. Vipſanius Agrippa*; who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Galleys whatſoever might be impediments to the valiant, or ſhelter for the cowardly; all that was comberſome to his own men, or advantagious to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battels ready to joyn, *Auguſtus Cæſar* ſtanding where he might ſee and be ſeen of all, is ſaid to make this or the like Oration. "Fellowes and Companions in Arms, I ſuppoſe it needleſs to hearten you, which never were acquainted with fear; or bid you overcome, which never yet knew what it was not to vanquiſh. Conqueſt hath alwaies ſat upon the edges of your ſwords, and victory been written in your foreheads. Be not now backward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my father *Julius* of famous memory, I firſt dealt in matters of War, I rather found, than made you good Souldiers. And during this twelve year ſervice under me, neither have you been wanting in the duty of faithful followers; nor I (I hope) of a vigilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expreſſed my ſelf as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatneſs of the adverſe Galleys any waies affright you. The hugeneſs of their Bulks maketh them unapt for imployment; and the multitude, one clogging and hindring the others, may as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of *Men*, we them in number of *Souldiers*. The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown among them. And for their *Mariners*, the beſt of them are but *Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harveſtmen*, raked out of the field; the reſt the excrement of common priſons, wherewith their Veſſels are loaded, not manned. The *General* is indeed a fit *Captain* for ſuch a ſelected company. It is the ſame *Antony*, whom you once drave out of the Field, before *Mutina*. I verily perſwade my ſelf, that neither he dares think of recovering, or you of loſing your former glories. It is the ſame *Antony*, who being ſhamefully chaſed out of *Parthia*; only in that he was not *vanquiſhed*, proclaimed himſelf *Victor*. It is the ſame *Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* ſubject to the *Egyptians*; and to diſtribute the *Provinces*, purchaſed with the bloud and vertue of our Anceſtors, amongſt *Iras* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed, it is not *Antony* at all, but the ſhadow only of that ſubſtance, which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabbin. Courage then brave men of Arms; be, as you have ſtill been, *Conquerors*. To ſpeak more, were to detain you from Victory. Only this, call to minde your ancient valour. Remember that I am *Cæſar*, you *Romans*.

13. This ſpeech animated the new Souldiers, and confirmed the old; So that with a general acclamation they give the aſſault. Death, wounds, and blowes, diſhed in divers faſhions, and ſerved in by ſeveral men; were the beſt delicates prepared for theſe unwelcome viſitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battel, and doubting the ſucceſs; through the thickeſt of *Antonies* Fleet, made away with the 60 Galleys appointed for her Guard. This diſorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* ſeeing her flight, left his Squadron alſo; and being taken into her Galley, hoyſed ſail for *Egypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Souldier, whileſt each of his Souldiers executed the office of a couragious *General*. For they ſo abſolutely perſiſted in the Fight, that *AVGVSTVS* was fain to offer them mercy ſooner than they would demand it; and divers times before they would accept it. At *A.V.C.713.* laſt they all ſware Allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AVGVSTVS* (no loſer of advantages) ſpeedeth into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the people pay for fine twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this money, he ſo weakned them that they had no ability to raiſe an after-war; and by diſtributing part of it among his Souldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he ſeeing his fortunes deſperate, redeemed the honour loſt in his life, by a noble and heroick death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after alſo. A Woman more wel-favoured, than fair; wel-ſpoken, rather then either. *Antonies* Courtiers had ſeen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than the eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AVGVSTVS* entry into *Rome*; as alſo the ſtate and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he uſed ſo juſtly, that none felt the fury of the War, but ſuch as were ſlain in the *Battel*. To aſſure himſelf of *Antonies* adherents, was his firſt care: to which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been incloſed: well knowing, that as long as any thought themſelves ſuſpected Adverſaries, they would never ſhew themſelves true friends. To the *Senators* and *Magiſtrates* he made ſumptuous Feaſts; to the *Common people* he exhibited magnificent and pleaſing Stage-playes; and with all variety of pleaſure, baniſhed from both, as well ſorrow for the old *Proſcription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main deſign. There were two men moſt dear unto him, and privie to his Counſels, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*: which in the object of their love differed only in this; *Mecenas* was a lover of *AVGVSTVS*; *Agrippa* of the *Emperour*. *Mecenas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded. When his buſineſs required care, vigilant and circumſpect; at leiſure time, exceſſively riotous. *Agrippa* was the firſt of his houſe; a man alike fit for Camp and Counſel; one neither careleſs of a good name, nor covetous of a great.

For

For although he only was the man which vanquiſhed *Sextus*, and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *Auguſtus* the honour of all his Conqueſts; making the vertue, not the reward, the end of his actions. So by doing nobly, and ſpeaking modeſtly of it, he was without envie; but not without glory. With theſe two *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Cloſet, and then brake unto them in this ſort. He made firſt unto them a long diſcourſe of the Civil Wars; Then added; "That having by his fortune, and the valour of his Souldiers, put an end to the troubles; he was "unreſolved what to do; Whether to reſign the *Empire* to the *People*, or retain it ſtill in his "own hands: That in a buſineſs of ſuch importance, he durſt not relie altogether on his own wiſ-"dome; That he had made them his Judges, as men that could ſpeak ſoundly, and durſt ſpeak freely: "That he knew them to have more care of his honour, than profit; but of the *Common-wealth*, more "than both: That his Counſels, which courſe ſoever he took, would not be by them eliminated. "He therefore intreated them to conſider what was to be done, and to give up their opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a ſhort ſilence thus began. "I know, thou canſt not but marvel, O *Cæſar*, that "I, who under thine *Empire*, am ſure to be beyond precedent exalted; ſhould perſwade thee to live "private. But I eſteem more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, than my particular pre-"ferment. And yet perhaps my Counſel ſhall be as profitable, if not as plauſible as the contrary. "I know thee to be no way delighted with lies and flattery; and will therefore deal with thee freely "and plainly. Thou haſt indeed put a period to the *Civil Wars*; but to what end, unleſs thou doſt "reſtore unto the *Common-wealth* that *Liberty* for which the Wars were raiſed? What benefit can the "people reap from thy *Victory*, if thou doſt uſe it only as an inſtrument, for their greater bondage? "Doſt thou think that the *Romans* having ſo many hundred years maintained their liberty, will now "be willing to forgo it? No, *Cæſar*, no; Flatter not thy ſelf with theſe hopes. *Marius* the yonger, "and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father of "happy memory, did not long live, after his actions ſeemed to bring the *Common liberty* in hazard. "And ſhall we think that there is no true *Roman* ſpirit ſurviving; No *Brutus* living to attempt the "like againſt thee? Believe me *Cæſar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the *Empire* at "all, than to be forced to abandon it. But ſay Divine Providence will ſo protect thee, that thou "maieſt out-live ſuch practiſes; and ſhalt thou alſo not out-live thy glories? This preſent age perchance "will not cenſure thine actions, becauſe it dares not: But Poſterity, free from all reſpects of love or "hatred, cannot but call them into queſtion, and brand thy enterpriſe with *Ambition*, and perhaps "*Tyranny*. If thy deſigns proſper, they will judge thee to have riſen unjuſtly; if otherwiſe, to have "fallen deſervedly. How much better then were it, now when thine honour is without blemiſh, "and thy reputation unſtained, to reſign thy authority. Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, "and *Antony* over *Egypt*, it might have been thought want of ſpirit, to have depoſed thy ſelf from the "Government. But now to do it, when thou art without *Rival* in the *Empire*; now, when thou art "ſole *Commander* of the Worlds Forces; now when the *People* and *Senate* lie proſtrate at the feet of "thy mercy; were to ſtrike dumb detraction, and to make the World admire thy Temper. Thou "art at this preſent the joy and comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth "nor Fame. Here then fix thy foot. For go but one ſtep beyond this *Non ultra*, and thou "wilt run into a boundleſs Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and repu-"tation.

16. "Not ſo, excellent *Agrippa*, replyed *Mecenas*. I never heard good *Pilot* finde fault with *Sea-"room*; or of more veſſels caſt away in the *Ocean*, than in the *Straights*, and narrow paſſages. Our "*Republick* is a Ship fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long toſſed on the waves of *Civil "diſſenſions*, long driven up and down with the Wind of ambition; and there is now no place ſo fit "for her ſafety, as the unlimited *Ocean* of one mans power. This *Empire* at firſt riſing, ſeemed not to "require a *Monarch*; but it is now grown too unwieldy, to be without one. Take then upon thee, "O *Cæſar*, this Empire; or to ſay better, do not forſake it. I ſhould never thus adviſe thee, did I con-"ceive any poſſible inconveniences. The *Senate* doth allow thee a competent guard of valiant and "faithful Souldiers; whom then ſhouldeſt thou fear? Nay, ill may I proſper, if I ſee any cauſe of fear, "were thy Guard caſhiered. Enemies thou haſt none. For ſuch as were, are either already ſlain by thy "valour, or made thy faſt friends, by thy bounty and clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will "a little touch at thy Father *Julius*. He too good a Souldier to be a *Statiſt*, was too heady and "violent in eſtabliſhing his Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, and ſuffer the *people* in-"ſenſibly, and by degrees, to drop into bondage; but oppreſs them all at once. Again, he committed "a great *Soleciſm* in *State*, when diſcharging his *Guard*, he ſought to retain that *Empire* by fair means, "which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Cæſar*, to be of a more wary and cunning beha-"viour. Learn alſo to work out thine own ſafety, by *Pompeys* misfortunes. He after the finiſhing of "the *Pontick War*, at *Brunduſium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to be accounted "an honeſt and moderate man. Certainly, he ſhewed himſelf in the courſe of this action, rather "vertuous than fortunate or politick. For preſently he began to be contemned, and by his impro-"vident weakning of himſelf, made an open paſſage to his own ruine. I commend his modeſty, more "than his brain; neither did he himſelf, on better conſiderations, approve his own doings: and "therefore he reſolved, had he been Victor in *Pharſalia*, never to have committed the like over-"ſight. So it is, and ſo it will fall out with thee, O *Cæſar*, if in this action thou propoſe him "to be thy pattern. It is not ſafe, *Agrippa* ſaith, to take the *Empire*; leſs ſafe it is to refuſe it.

Auguſtus. "A ſetled and innative vice it is in man, never to endure that any not above our own rank ſhould "over-top us. *Romes* ſecond founder *Camillus*; *Scipio*, that ſcourge of *Carthage*, were diſgraced; and "*M. Coriolanus* baniſhed by our Anceſtors: only becauſe their worth had lifted them above the or-"dinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare better than thy Predeceſſors. Heretofore, per-"chance, thou mighteſt have ſought the *Empire*, to ſatisfie thy *ambition*. The *Empire* muſt now be "thy refuge and *Aſylum*. Credit me, the *Lords* of the *Senate*, after ſo many years of *Obedience*, know "not how to *Govern*; neither canſt thou having ſo long been a *Governor*, learn *Obedience*. True it is, "that in matters of domeſtical buſineſs, a man may ſtop and deſiſt where he will: But in the getting "of an *Empire*, there is no mean between the death of an *Enemy*, and the life of a *Prince*. Thou haſt "already gone too far to retire. Now thou muſt reſolve to be *Cæſar* or nothing. To ſay more were ſu-"perfluous. Thine own diſcretion will ſuggeſt unto thee better Arguments. Only this, I know that "thou haſt in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an *Emperor*.

17. *AUGUSTUS* ſeemed to incline to this latter opinion, whether moved with *Mecenas* Oration, eſpecially his inſtance in *Pompey*; or that he was before reſolved to follow that courſe, is uncertain. Howſoever, ſeeming with great attention to obſerve their ſpeeches, and gathering their ſeveral rea-ſons and motives together; he made this reply. "A moſt hard thing it is, for a divided minde, to "make a well-joyn'd Anſwer. Divided I am, and troubled between your two opinions; loath to fol-"low either, ſithence in ſo doing I muſt offend one. Yet ſithence there is a neceſſity of Reſolution, "I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*; to follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am "but an inſtrument of the *Deſtinies*, to put their wils in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octa-"vius* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for his skill in *Judiciary Aſtrologie*, told him once in open *Senate*, "That he had gotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As alſo, how *M. Cicero*, ſo renowned for Wit and "Eloquence, dreamed that he ſaw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitol*, with a Whip in mine "hand. Certainly, if the powers of Heaven promiſe me ſo great an *Empire*; I will not be wanting to my "ſelf; but will add by my *induſtry*, to their *influence*. To further my deſigns, I do deſire you, nay I "conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counſels; ſo you would not now be "backward in any neceſſary aſſiſtance. This ſaid, they preſently enter into a new conference, how to manage a buſineſs of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent; how to diſpoſe of the *Army*, not yet caſhiered: with what Plummet it were beſt to ſound the minds of the common peo-ple, and to oblige all ſorts unto him. This Conſultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his affabi-lity to the *People*, and reſpect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to expreſs himſelf to both. There was at that time a Famine, which ſhrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer ſort, he diſtri-buted Corn, *gratis*; to others at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both ſorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient *freedome*. Such parts of the *City* as were de-ſtroyed by caſualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houſes of *Common-aſſemblies* he repaired; Temples, conſecrated to the gods, he ſpared no coſt to adorn and beautifie. And finally, ſo freely diffuſed his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City which had not ſome taſte of it. Next, he diſmiſſed his Souldiers, aſſigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That ſo the *People* might conceive his *Reſignation* to be reall; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-aſſembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cauſe: but carefully acquainted ſome of the *Senate* with it, who ſtood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had ſtood indif-ferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* ſate, *AUGUSTUS* roſe from his ſeat, and ſpake to this, or the like effect. "When I conſider with my ſelf the infinite extent of the *Roman* Empire; I "proteſt I ſtand at a maze: marvelling how ſuch, as heretofore have raiſed combuſtions in the State, "durſt undertake the ſole adminiſtration of it. What Nation in the World, hath not either begged their "Peace at our Gates; or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? What Countreys have we not harri-"ed with Fire and Sword; making the riſing and ſetting of the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It "muſt queſtionleſs proceed from an over-weaning conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought "themſelves ſo fit to undergo that burden, which none but the immortal gods can carry. Of my "ſelf I will not ſay much. Only, I hope I may ſay with modeſty, that I am not inferior to *Cinna*, nor "it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found in my ſelf, by late experience, how unable I was to manage the "affairs of State, even then when I had two *Coadjutors*. There is no *Atlas* of ſtrength ſufficient, to "bear up this *Heaven*; No *Star* of influence ſufficient, to animate this *Sphere*; No one *form* of vertue "ſufficient, to actuate this *matter*. Neither indeed is it fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be im-"mortal, ſhould depend only on the life and wel-fare of one man. There never was, ſince the begin-"ning of time, a City repleniſhed with greater ſtore of worthy and able men, either to conſult or exer-"ciſe. Never was there ſeen ſo grave and diſcreet a *Conſiſtory*; Never ſo many of both ſorts, ſo fit to "govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of your Souldiers, put an end to all homebred "quarrels. I have been your inſtrument to reduce Peace internal and external, to your City; and de-"ſire now no other Guerdon or recompence for any former ſervices, than a quiet and a private life; "free from all ſuch dangers and inconveniences, as are inſeparably annexed to the Soveraignty. "Now therefore, and may my action be auſpicious and fortunate to my Countrey, do I reſign my "authority; committing my ſelf, and the *Common-wealth* into the hands of the *Senate* and *People* of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a ſoft and ſilent buzzing in the houſe. Some ſuppoſed this ſpeech

ſpeech not to have ſo much truth, as art and cunning: yet ſmothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were Creatures of his own making; and they hoping to *riſe* in the *fall* of their Countrey, would not hear of a Reſignation. Some few of the wiſer ſort thought it not expedient, to put the Reigns again into the hands of the *Multitude*. The reſt out of a ſluggiſh and phlegmatick Conſtitution, choſe rather the preſent eſtate with ſecurity, than to ſtrive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joynt-conſent proclaim him ſole *Emperor*; and ſolemnly entreat him to ſave the *Common-wealth*, otherwiſe running to inevitable ruine. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly perſiſted to deſire him. At laſt, wearied with the clamours of all in general, and importunity of ſome in particular; he by little and little yeelded to their requeſts, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years, with this Proviſo; that if before that time expired, he could fully ſettle and order the preſent State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with a purpoſe of performance; (for at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Leaſe of the Government;) But that the people ſeeing ſo nigh a poſſibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practiſe againſt him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the ſupreme Authority, he had no doubt haſtned his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithite *Perpetual*, was the deſtruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great reſpect was had alſo in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refuſed, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much deſired it; leſt they ſhould ſuppoſe that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; deſiring them to diſcharge him of a name ſo hated; and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbad alſo that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which leaſt loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the ſooner be diſpatched. Nor was he ignorant that the *Common people* led more by appearances, than truth; diſcerned names more plainly than executions: and that the only courſe to make greatneſs ſtand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offenſive. The name alſo of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been ſomething in him more than mortal) he refuſed not; as a Title expreſſing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleaſed himſelf in the choiſe of his Title, he next proceeded to the eſtabliſhment of his power, which he thus purſued.

Auguſtus.

A.V.C.725.

20. When firſt at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian ſouldiers* for the guard of his perſon; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* ſouldier, to make them the more vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over theſe he appointed two Prefects or Governors, (*Captains of the Guard* we may beſt term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger; to more, confuſion. *Agrippina*, to ſettle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom ſhe had at her devotion, the ſole Captain: and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of ſetting *Galba* beſides the quiſhon; deſired the command of the *Guard*, as the next ſtep to the Soveraignty. In choice of theſe Captains, he obſerved two Rules. Firſt, he ever choſe them, *ex ordine Equeſtri*, not *Senatorio*; leſt that ſo high a dignity joyned to ſo high a birth, might ſtartle their reſolutions to ſome deſigns againſt his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two ſuch, as were of contrary humours, and ſomewhat at odds; that ſo the ill intents of the one (if they ſhould harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble emulation, ſhould contend to be moſt forward in his ſervice. The next courſe which he took for his own ſecurity, was a law he made to curbe the wils and attempts of the *great ones*. For whereas it had been formerly unlawful to queſtion a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his *Lord*; *AUGUSTUS* paſſed an Act, that all ſuch *Bondmen* ſhould be firſt ſold to him, or the *Common-wealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before preſuming on the ſecreſie of their *ſlaves*, from all cloſe and private Conſpiracies againſt him. Having thus ſtrengthned his perſon, he aſſumed to himſelf the *Imperial*, *Cenſorial*, and *Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could preſs Souldiers, raiſe Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very beſt and ſtouteſt of the *Senators*. As *Cenſor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he liſted; to place and diſplace the people from an honourable Tribe, to a leſs honourable. Yet would he not be called *Cenſor*, as a name too inferior; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it, after the ſurrendry of *Manutius*, and his aſſociate; two men ſo unfit for that *Magiſtracy*, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themſelves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian authority* enabled him to hinder any thing attempted ag inſt his liking. It preſerved his perſon from all contumely and injury; giving him power to puniſh, as an execrable perſon, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whoſoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontifical Dignity*, it made him a little more reverenced, not more potent. Only it added to his title the ſtile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Biſhop*; and made him of authority amongſt the Prieſts, and in ſacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reaſon taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his people; He had been elſe but half a *Monarch*, ſuch as ſome Princes are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Forein Head*.

21. Theſe ſeveral Prerogatives annexed together, ſeemed not yet ſufficient: and therefore he ſo cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he ſeriouſly bends his thoughts to ſettle the Common-wealth; and ſo to ſettle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving ſatisfaction to all *Intereſſes*, it might not be obnoxious to ſuch frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein, when he

Auguſtus. had conſulted the ancient *Platforms*, he found no ſmall difficulty. The Form deſcribed by *Plato*, ſhewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Ariſtotle*, though bred in the *Free States* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchie*; but his diſcourſes dark, and ſpeculative, and not eaſily reduced to practiſe. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legiſlator* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Perſian* Law-makers indulged the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other ſide, *Licurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, aſcribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of ſome particular Lawes, than the Framer of a Commonwealth. *Phaleas*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpoſe; and withall conſidering with himſelf, that the unmixt Formes of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by conſequence ſubject unto change: he reſolved to frame his *Common-wealth* out of the perfections of the three good *Formes*, their imperfection being rejected, reſerving to himſelf the Supreme Majeſty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a juſt and fit proportion. And to ſay truth, he did ſo mix the *Soveraignty* of one, with the *Liberty* of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of bondage or ſedition, injoyed their accuſtomed *Freedoms*. The Conſuls and Nobles of the City aſſembled as formerly they uſed; matters of State they handled by themſelves; Ambaſſadors of forein Nations they heard, and diſpatched. The *Commons* aſſembled in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magiſtrates, as in the *free Commonwealth*. Yet ſo that nothing was done without the conſent and privity of the *Prince*, who for the moſt part, nominated the ſucceſſive Magiſtrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the *people*. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the ſilent approbation of both Eſtates, as ſeeming to conſiſt more in the alteration of the *Magiſtrate*, than of the *Lawes*.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the firſt care he took, was to confirm *Religion* in the ſame ſtate in which he found it. I mean *Religion*, as the *Romans* uſed the word, for thoſe particular, though idolatrous Forms of *Worſhip*, which to their ſeveral gods had been uſed among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Biſhop of the *City*; yet very wiſely he forbare it. It is not ſafe for Princes that are ſetled in a long deſcent of *Government*, to be too active in ſuch changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a *green State*, and in an *Empire* not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more ſenſible of the ſmalleſt alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raiſe more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* ſpecially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either *gods* or *Ceremonies*, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, *That none ſhould offer ſacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Forein faſhion.* Excellent therefore was the counſel which *Mecenas* gave him, when he firſt undertook the *Empire*, *viz.* "That "he ſhould follow conſtantly the *Religion* which he found eſtabliſhed, and compell others alſo to do "the like. For Forein and ſtrange Rites (ſaith he) will offend the people, work many inconvenient "alterations in the Civil State; yea and moſt likely will occaſion many both ſeditions and conſpira-"cies. Words which he ſpake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehenſive of the beſt advice. Nor did *AUGUSTUS* ever ſhew himſelf more careful in any one *Art* of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecenas* noted, we finde true in theſe later Ages; in times more skilful of obedience, than the moſt quiet hour of *AUGUSTUS* Government. No one thing more hath cauſed ſo frequent and ſo general *Rebellions* in the States of *Chriſtendome*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious reſolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better ſome few corruptions ſhould be ſuffered in a Church, than ſtill a change.*

23. Religion thus eſtabliſhed, in the next place the welfare of the whole *Empire* conſiſted chiefly in reforming of the *City*; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the *City* the corruption was moſt apparent in the *Senate* it ſelf. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themſelves; but by degrees become diffuſed among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and deſertleſs men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour ſuch as were moſt potent. Of theſe he expelled none by his own power; but making a ſpeech to them in the *Senate*, of the antient order and preſent confuſion of the houſe, he firſt exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for ſo honourable a room. Then he deſired ſome of them to pick out ſuch among them, as were in diſpoſition *factious*, and in life *faulty*, but loath to conceive ſo ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that *the great Thief leadeth the leſſe to the Gallows*; and as *Commines* obſerveth, that after the Battel of *Monliherry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on ſuch as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the the *Senate*, neither leſs vicious, nor leſs violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than ſome others whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the ſetling of his affairs, that none ſhould have a voice in that famous Councel, but ſuch as were of able judgements, honeſt repute, and wel-affected to his Service and the Commonwealth. An enterpriſe which he eſteemed ſo dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were ſearched: himſelf wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the moſt couragious and beſt beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kinde inexcuſable, he diſcharged from their attendance; electing ſuch in their places, which were either ennobled for their wiſdome, of noted moderation, or otherwiſe ſtrong in their de-

dependants. Yet ſo that greatneſs of *Revenue* was eſteemed neither a fit *Patronage* for any, if they were offenſive; nor a juſt cauſe to challenge intereſt in the *houſe*. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the minde, than thoſe of fortune, he relieved with honourable Penſions: and finally he beſtirred himſelf ſo reſolutely, that all confeſſed that they had need of ſuch a wiſe *Phyſician*, to cure that dull *Conſumption*, whereinto the *Common-wealth* was fallen. *Auguſtus.*

24. In other things he ſeldome did proceed againſt them as of himſelf; but when that any of them had conſpired his ruine, he referred them to the judgement of their fellowes. And this he did partly to reſerve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly, not to be Judge and party in his own cauſe: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchleſs contempt of his adverſaries; uſed when he was leaſt ſuſpected, under hand, and by publick Officers, to work their deſtruction. Many alſo of them whom the *Senate* had condemned, he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the queſtioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terror, though it argued not ſo much rigor, as the puniſhment. Yet if extremity of law was uſed towards ſome few, it was to ſettle quietneſs in the whole; and as it were a particular bloud-letting for the general health. Thoſe who had followed the factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not ſo only, but by manifeſting his words by his deeds, and adding truſts and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more ſetled, and immovable. So *Cæſar* by erecting the faln and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own ſtatues ſtand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the *Nobles*, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italie*. For well he knew, that in an Empire unſetled, and Provinces not quieted; the preſence and authority of men of that rank, might raiſe greater troubles, than could be eaſily ſuppreſſed. Examples he wanted not, that eſpecially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, ſtirred ſuch a war againſt *Cæſar* in *Africk*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to impriſon them, he licenſed them at their pleaſure, to viſit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyſe*; Provinces cloſe to the continent of *Italie*, altogether unfurniſhed for Wars; and indeed ſuch, as by reaſon of the variety of pleaſures in them uſed, were more likely to weaken their mindes, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* ſome ſweet meat to their ſowre ſawce; he as much honoured and reverenced that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-ſtate*: ſubmitting himſelf to their Judgements, and appearing of his own accord, at moſt of their daies of Seſſion. Out of thoſe he choſe 15 alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy Councel*; but then changing them for others: that ſo all of them might participate that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his ſecrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he uſed courteouſly to ſalute the *Lords*; and ſo likewiſe at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, ſo much to ſleight the *Lords* of that *Houſe*, as he alwaies did: never making to them any obeyſance, no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the *great Ones*, ſoon made the *lower ſort* more careful; both to obſerve good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to *Preſident*, but ſomewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yeeld an account of their lives; an Orders full of health and wiſdome: Idleneſs being the root of all private vices, and publick diſorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he preſcribeth Lawes and Orders as himſelf liſted. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, daſhed in the *Dictatorſhip* of *Sylla*, he would not reſtore. He ſuffered them to intercede for the *People*, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill*, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Eſtate*. Without this *Curb*, the *Common ſort* would never have ſuffered him to ſit faſt in the *ſaddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes*, and had the *Tribunes* had their ancient dignity and power, which they had uſurped: there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-people*, eſpecially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the deſigns of Soveraign *Princes*.

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors and defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleaſures; as ſhewes of Fencers, Stage-plaies, Combats of wild beaſts, publick Dancings, with variety of other delightful ſpectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing leſt their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themſelves upon his actions, and the old *freedome*. And therefore when ſome of his more ſevere and rigid Counſellors adviſed him to interdict all ſuch publick paſtimes, alledging that the meetings of the people at thoſe ſports, and in ſo great numbers might at laſt end in ſome great tumult and ſedition to the endangering of his perſon, and deſtruction of his whole eſtate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecenas* (his moſt truſty Favourite) *Expedit tibi, O Cæſar, plebem ſic occupatam eſſe*, that it beſt agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with theſe ſports and paſtimes, by which being ſweetned and appeaſed they were the leſs ſenſible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horſe-races, Tilts, and Tornaments, as he gladly cheriſhed them, ſo he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That ſo that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be ſtored with good *Horſes*, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behinde hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods; he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any *Prince* but a *Tyrant*, preſently reſtored to the Children of the deceaſed the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS*; as true a *Guardian* of *Orphans*, as a Father of his Countrey. Such Princes as gape covetouſly after other mens poſſeſſions, ſeldome enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treaſures of Kings are then greateſt, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he ſeemed to leave unto the people, which they thought moſt pleaſing; *Liberty of Speech*;

Auguſtus. Wherein ſometimes they were ſo licentious, that they ſpared not *Agrippa* himſelf, ſo potent with the *Emperor*. But he, good man, never uſing the Princes favour to the prejudice of any, ſeemed not to mark their taunts and ſlanders; whether with greater moderation or wiſdome, I cannot tell. Neither did *AVGVSTVS* ſcape their fooliſh *Paſquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature ſlighted and contemned, ſoon vaniſh of themſelves; but if repined and ſtormed at, ſeem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of wiſdome in both of them. It is the miſery of the beſt *Princes*, even when they do well, to be ill ſpoken of. And therefore many times ſuch follies are with more policy diſſembled then obſerved, by the greateſt *Kings*.

27. As for this Laviſhneſs of the *tongue*, it is a humour that ſpringeth for the moſt part, rather from a delight in pratling, than any malice of the heart: and they which uſe it are more troubleſome, than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the *fat men*, but the *lean* and *ſpare*. And ſo *AVGVSTVS* thought, that not men liberal of ſpeech, but ſilent, cloſe, and ſparing of their words, were moſt likely to raiſe tumults. Moreover, as long as the *Common People* retained this *Liberty* of *ſpeech*, they were the leſs ſenſible of the loſs of *Liberty in State*. Whereas in the daies of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their ſecret ſighs and tears were *regiſtred*: then began they to look back with a ſerious eye on the old & *Common Liberty*. *Neglect* is the beſt remedy for this *Talking vein*. When the humour is ſpent, the *People* will ceaſe on their own accords: till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Veſpaſians* revolt; that being the only way to increaſe, not diminiſh the *rumour*. And as much he extolleth (I will not ſay how fitly) the Reign of *Prince Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the ſubject to think what he would, and ſpeak what he thought.

28. Theſe courſes though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the people, yet he ſtayed not here. There were too many of both ſorts, dangerous and unquiet ſpirits, who ſtomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the *ancient Liberty*, were apt to any bold attempt, and ſudden alteration. Theſe as he winked at for the preſent, ſo he employed them (as occaſion ſerved) in his forein Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had diſpleaſed him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them preſently unto ſome deſperate and dangerous ſervice: So weakning both his *Foes* which lay next unto him, and puniſhing thoſe *Souldiers* which had diſobeyed him. For though *AVGVSTVS* had thrice ſhut the Temple of *Janus*, and cheriſhed Peace, no *Emperor* more, of ſo large a Territory: yet when he ſaw his times, and that mens mindes were active, and their thoughts diſquieted; he could find preſently occaſion for ſome new imployment. In this a *Body Politick* may be compared moſt fitly to the *Body Natural*. When we are full of bloud, and our ſpirits boyling, there is not any *Phyſick* better then *Phlebotomy*. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our eſtate commonly is dangerous, and almoſt incurable. So *Princes*, when their people are tumultuous and apt to miſchief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkning after action: do commonly imploy them in ſome ſervice far from home; that there they may both vent their *Anger*, and employ their *Courage*. For let them ſtay at home to confirm their practiſes, and grow at laſt into a Faction; the State will ſuffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer inſtance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whoſe forein Wars kept us all quiet here at home, waſted thoſe humours, and conſumed thoſe fiery ſpirits; which afterwards, the wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdome.

29. But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them ſure. Some of which he diſperſed as before I ſaid, all about *Italie*, in 32 Colonies; as well for the defence of the *Countrey*, as for their more ſpeedy reaſſembly, if need ſhould require. Abroad amongſt the *Provinces*, were maintained upon the common charge 23 Legions with their aids; beſides 10000 of his Guard, and thoſe which were appointed for the bridling and ſafety of the City. As to all of them he ſhewed an excellent thankfulneſs, for their faithful ſervices; ſo in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whoſe name the Hiſtories of that Age have not remembred. This latter had valiantly behaved himſelf at the battel of *Actium*: and being ſummoned to appear before the Lords of the *Senate*, in a matter which concerned his life, cryed to *AVGVSTVS* for ſuccour; who aſſigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breaſt, and ſhewing him the marks of many wounds; *Theſe* (quoth he) *have I received* AUGUSTUS *in thy ſervice, never ſupplying my place by a Deputy*. Which ſaid, the *Emperor* deſcending to the *Bar*, pleaded the Souldiers cauſe, and won it. Never did Soveraign *Prince*, or any that command in *Chief*, loſe any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly ſpreading it ſelf over all the *Provinces*, did ſo indeer him to the Military men, that they all thought their ſervices well recompenſed, in his graciouſneſs to that one man. And now were they ſo far given over to him, that the honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increaſe their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common *Parentage*. But ſupplying the defects of his *Birth*, with the perfections of his *Mind*; he became very potent with *AVGVSTVS*; who not only made him *Conſul*, but his *companion* in the *Tribunitian authority*, and *Provoſt* of the *City*. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecenas* perſwaded the *Prince*, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife: affirming it impoſſible for *Agrippa* to live ſafe, conſidering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious men, unleſs he were ingraffed into the Royal Stem of the *Cæſars*. On which cauſe queſtionleſs, for the ſtronger eſtabliſhment of his new honours; *Sejanus* afterward attempted, but not with the like ſucceſs, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The *Senate*, *People*, and *Men of War*, thus ſeverally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content;

the

the next labour is to alter the old, and eſtabliſh a new Government of the *City* it ſelf. To effect which, he daſhed all former Laws, by which the *Allies* and *Confederates* of the State were made free *Denizens* of the *Town*. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole *Empire* into one *City*; and by the monſtrous growth and increaſe of that, to make poor the reſt. Therefore this priviledge he communicated unto a few only: partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not ſo much feel the want of ſuſtenance; and partly that ſo antient an honour might not be diſeſteemed; but principally leſt *Rome* repleniſhed with ſo huge a multitude of ſtirring and unruly ſpirits, ſhould grow too headſtrong to be governed in due order. The greateſt and moſt populous Cities, as they are proneſt unto *faction* and *ſedition*; ſo is the danger greateſt, both in it ſelf, and the example, if they ſhould revolt. This provident courſe notwithſtanding, there were in *Rome* men more than enough; and among them not a few malecontents and murmurers at the preſent ſtate, ſuch as contemned the *Conſuls*, and hated the *Prince*. To keep theſe in compaſſe, *AVGVSTVS* (it being impoſſible for him to be ſtill reſident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be abſent) conſtituted a *Provoſt* of the City, for the moſt part choſen out of the *Senators*: aſſigning him a ſtrength of 6000 men, called *Milites Vrbani*, or the *City-ſouldiers*. To him he gave abſolute and Royal authority, both in the *Town* and *Territory* neer adjoyning, during his own abſence. To him were appeals brought from the other *Magiſtrates*; and finally to his *Tribunall* were referred all cauſes of importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greateſt part of *Italy*. *Meſalla* was the firſt *Provoſt*, but proof being had of his inſufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: who did not only ſettle and confirm the *City*, but did the beſt he could to free the adjoyning parts of *Italy* from *Theeves* and *Robbers*; and ſtopped the courſes of many other troublers of the preſent State. And yet he could not with that power either ſo ſpeedily, or ſo throughly reform all thoſe miſchiefs; which in the late unſetled times were become predominant, as he did deſire. *Auguſtus.*

31. It is recorded that in the Civil wars of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Teleſinus* of the *Marian Faction*, told his *Generall*, that he did well to ſcour the Countrey; but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was ſo fit a Forreſt, and ſo neer to retire unto. The like might have been ſpoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to cleer the *common Rodes* and *Paſſages*, but *Italy* would never want *Theeves*, whilſt *Rome* was ſo good a place of *Refuge*. For though he did, as far as humane induſtry could extend, endeavour a generall *Reformation* both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foreſee all miſchiefs. Still were there many, and thoſe great diſorders committed in the night ſeaſon; when as no eye, but that to which no darkneſſe is an obſtacle, could diſcern the *Malefactors*. For in the firſt *Proſcription*, many men uſed to walk the ſtreets well weaponed; pretending only their own ſafety, but indeed it was to make their beſt advantage of ſuch men, as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Paſſages, or travelling as their occaſions did direct them, in the Night. To repreſſe therefore the foul inſolencies of theſe *Sword-men*, *AVGVSTVS* did ordain a *Watch*, conſiſting of 7000 *Free-men*, their Captain being a *Gentleman* of *Rome*. In the day time, the *Guard* of the *Town* was committed to the *Provoſt*, and his City Souldiers; Theſe *Vigils* reſting in their ſtanding Camps. In the night ſeaſon, one part took their *ſtations* in the moſt ſuſpicious places of the City; another, in perpetuall motion traverſed the ſtreets: the reſt lying in the *Corps du Guarde*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the preſent diſorders, but preſerved the City from danger of *Fire* alſo: Yea and ſecured himſelf from all night-tumults, which carry with them (though but ſmall) more terror and affrightment, than greater Commotions in the day. Never till now were the *common people* Maſters of their own, both lives and ſubſtance. And now was travel in the Night, as ſafe, though not ſo pleaſant, as at Noon.

32 The *People* and *City* thus ſetled, his next ſtudy is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the Change. But little *Rhetorique* needed to win their liking, who had long deſired the preſent form of *Government*: miſtruſting the *Peoples* Regiment, by reaſon of *Noblemens* factions, covetouſneſſe of *Magiſtrates*, the *Laws* affording no ſecurity, being ſwayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. Theſe *Provinces* when he firſt took the *Government*, he thus divided. *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Betica*, *Narbonenſis*, *Sicilia*, *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known and faithfull obedience, he aſſigned unto the *Senate*. But the new conquered *Regions*, ſuch as had not digeſted their loſſe of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared; he retained under his own command. Such were *Tarraconenſis*, *Luſitanica*, *Lugdunenſis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitanica*, *Syria*, *Silicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to ſuſtain the danger himſelf alone, leaving unto the *Senate* all the ſweets of eaſe: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himſelf always ſtrong and in a readyneſſe. The notable effects of which Counſell did not diſcover themſelves only, by the eſtabliſhment of the *Empire* in his own perſon during life, and the continuance of it in the houſe of the *Cæſars* (though men of moſt prodigious Vices) after his deceaſe: but in ſome of the Ages following alſo. For when the Family of the *Cæſars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperiall* Provinces being ſo ſtrong, and perceiving the *Conſular* ſo weak; aſſumed to themſelves the creating, and eſtabliſhing of the following *Princes*. Thus *Galba* was made Emperour by the *Spaniſh* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *German*, *Veſpaſian* by the *Syrian* and *Pannonian*: The *Conſular Provinces* never ſtirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old man and all his Family to a *tragick* end. And yet he did not ſo appropriate thoſe Provinces to the *Senate*, but that they alſo (as well as thoſe which her eſerved unto himſelf) were ſpecified particularly in his private Regiſter. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the *Empire*) he had ſet down what *Tributes* every of them payed, what *Preſents* they

ſent

Auguſtus. ſent in, what *Cuſtoms* in them were levyed. That book alſo comprehended the wealth of the publique *Treaſury*, and neceſſary charge iſſuing out of it: What number of *Citizens* and *Allies* there were in Arms; what ſtrength there was by Sea: with all other circumſtances, the extent, ſtrength, riches, and particulars of his eſtate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his firſt entrance into *England*, when he compoſed that *Cenſuall Roll* of all this Kingdome, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which, *Taxations* were impoſed, and *Aids* exacted. The greateſt *Princes* have not thought it a diſparagement to be good Husbands; to know the riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrado*.

32. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either becauſe from hence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or elſe becauſe being more deſirous to keep than inlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it moſt expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, Mount *Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the Eaſt, and the main Ocean on the Weſt, did both bound his *Empire* and defend it. Some *Kingdomes* have their limits laid out by Nature, and thoſe which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatall. The *Perſians* ſeldome did attempt to ſtretch their *Territory* beyond *Oxus*, but they miſcarryed in the action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved *action*, or expected preferment by the *Wars*, incited him unto the conqueſt and plantation of theſe Countreys. Affirming, "That "the barbarous people were naturally bad Neighbours; and though for the preſent not very ſtrong, "nor well skilled in Arms, yet might a weak Enemy in time gather great ſtrength. That he ought to "purſue the War for his Father *Julius* ſake, who firſt ſhewed that Iſland to the *Romans*: that it yeelded "both refuge and ſupply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germany*: That he would loſe the "benefit of a wealthy Countrey, ſtored with all manner of proviſion; and the command of a valiant "Nation, born (as it were) unto the Wars. That it was an Apoſtaſie from honour, to lie ſtill and adde "nothing to the conqueſt of his Anceſtors: That he was in all equity bound as far as in him was, to re-"duce to *Civility* from *Barbariſm*, ſo many proper and able men. But to theſe motives he replyed, "That he had already refuſed to wage War with the *Parthian*, a more dangerous neighbour, and "far worſe enemy than the *Britains*: That he had waſt and deſert ground enough in his own *Domi-"nions*, for many a large *Plantation*, when he ſaw it needfull: That he had conſtantly refuſed, though "with great facility he might, to conquer any more of the *barbarous Nations*: That as in the *Natu-"rall body*, a ſurfet is more dangerous than faſting; ſo in the *Body Politick*, too much is more trou-"bleſome than too little: That the *Roman* Monarchy had already exceeded the *Perſian*, and *Mace-"donian*; and to extend it further, was the next way to make it totter and fall by its own weight. "That he had learned in the *Fable* not to loſe the *ſubſtance*, by catching at the *ſhadow*. And finally, "that many puiſſant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, againſt whom *Garriſons* muſt be kept; and "he feared the *Revennes* would not quit the *Coſt*. And ſo the enterpriſe of *Britain* was quite laid aſide.

33. For the aſſurance of the *Provinces* already conquered, he diſperſed into them 23 *Legions*, with their *Aids*; whoſe pay only, beſides proviſion of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our Engliſh pounds, and ſomewhat more, were ſo duly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read ſeldome in the Hiſtories of that *Empire*, of any *Mutiny* among the *Souldiers*, for want of pay. An happineſſe whereof theſe ages have been little guilty. For the amaſſing of this treaſure, and defraying of this charge, *AVGVSTVS* made not uſe only of his own revenue. *Wars* which are undertaken, and *Souldiers* that are levyed for the common ſafety, ought in all reaſon to be maintained on the *Common purſe*. The Grandour and ſecurity of an *Empire*, concerns in all reſpects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cauſe he erected an *Exchequer* in the City, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treaſury*; whereto the the twentieth part of every mans eſtate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was eſteemed an heavy burden at the firſt, and indeed it was, but that the people felt the ſweetneſſe and effects of it in the Common ſafety. In that reſpect, the intereſt was greater then the *principall*. *Subjects* that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more then ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that *Princes* either are able or obliged, to maintain the wars without aſſiſtance from their people: or that the treaſures which in theſe reſpects they give the *King*, they do not give unto themſelves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophiſter*, but never for a faithfull Subject, which coyns diſtinctions betwixt the welfare of the *King*, and the weal of the *Kingdome*. Theſe *Legions* he employed as occaſion was, either to curb the *Natives*, or ſecure the *Borders*. The *Roman Empire* ſeldome had ſuch perfect peace, but that there were employments alwayes for the *Souldiers*. If that they had in any place a ſhort ceſſation from the wars, yet they were not idle. *Idleneſſe* doubtleſſe is the greateſt enemy to *Martiall Diſcipline*. Therefore he kept them at ſuch times perpetually buſied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in draining *Mariſhes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *barbarous Countries*, both fruitfull in themſelves, and profitable to the *Chequer*: but thereby alſo he ſecured his own affairs, and diſarmed his enemies. For many times the *barbarous people* truſting to ſuch advantages, were apt too often to rebell; and having got themſelves within thoſe *Myres* and *Faſtneſſes*, ſtood on their *Guard*, as in ſome faſhionable or defenſible *Fortreſs*. The ſureſt means to keep a conquered people from all occaſion of revolting, is to lay waſte their *Wood-lands*, and make all parts *paſſable*. The opportunity of a ſafe retreat, makes not more *Theeves* than *Rebels*.

35. Thoſe whom he placed over his *Provinces* and *Armies*, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer ſtay might teach them too much cunning,

in

in practising on the dispositions of the people, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War; and so at last to establish in themselves a *Soveraignty*. *Cæsars* long stay in *Gaul*, (a second five years being added unto that which was first allowed him) made him so potent with the *People*, and gracious with the *Souldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his subjection. And on the other side, to take them from their charges under three years continuance, were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the *Customes* and the nature of the *Provinces*; so making them unable to instruct their *Successors*. As for the men whom he employed in those Commands, he culled them always out of the most valiant and upright in the *Camp* and *Senate*. A *Prince* more willing and desirous not to employ men likely to offend, than after the offence to punish and chastise them for it. *Augustus.*

36. Besides his forces by Land, he also maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*. The one lay at Anchor neer *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, *&c.* The other at *Misenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* Neither was this the only use of two such puissant *Fleets*, but in all probability they were to cleanse the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Customes* into the *Exchequer*; and served also for transporting *Corn*, and other necessary provisions, for the sustenance and relief of the City. In the ensuing *Civil Wars*, these two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one side, as a comfort to the other. The principal assurance of *Otho* in his Wars, was the immoveable fidelity of the *Misenian* Fleet; and the siding of the other with *Vespasian*, brake the hearts of *Vitellius* best followers.

37. Now as he thus strengthened the *Provinces* in generall, so did he cast an especiall eye on three particulars, *viz.* *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* rounded *Rome* the *Metropolis* of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well assured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum Sociale* raised by the people of that Countrey, in the *Free State*, more shook and endangered the *Empire*, than the Invasions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies*, of old and trusty Souldiers, to keep it sure unto himself; so now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magistrates* and *Under-officers*. This not so much to ease the *City Prætor*, although he had employment enough at *Rome*; but because it was thick set, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whose rising might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colonies* he kept a Garrison upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: and by his *Officers* and *Justiciers* (as I may call them) he set so strait a Watch about them, that they durst not *practise*.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Countrey, stored with a people, valiant in all attempts, and in many desperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to encrease their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had sacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people finally with whom the *Romans* durst not make war, till they had almost all the residue of the world in subjection. Remembrance of their antient Reputation, and store of money, might occasion many desperate practises against the quiet of the *Empire*. The readyest way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor: for without wealth high *stomacks* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digest it never. *Licinius* his *freedman*, was the fittest fellow for such an Office, who is presently made the *Task-master* of the *Province*. The *Galls* used to pay a Monethly Tribute, which he much inhaunced (besides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Moneths in a year. The *Solicitors* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AVGVSTVS*. He sometimes yeelded unto them, sometimes excused his *Freed-man*; some things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he dissembled. *Licinius* to make up his peace, sent to the Emperor all his *treasure*, and that huge Masse of Gold and Silver by those unlawfull means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being served, and the *French* not a little impoverished; he recalled *Licinius*, and sent *Tiberius* to settle the *Province*. So old and common a thing it is with great *Princes*, to suffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers*, to suck like *Spunges*, the Wealth of the *Subject*, till they are quite full; and then to *squeeze* them into their own *Coffers*.

39. But the *Province* whose tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not so much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the naturall strength and situation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof, to one man; fearing lest he presuming on the wealth of the *People*, and site of the *Countrey*, would settle the possession in himself. And so *AVGVSTVS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Moneths yearly with Corn) not only trusted not the rule thereof into the hands of any of the *Senators*, but expresly forbad any of that Order (without his speciall permission) to sojourn there. It is a principle in *State*, never to licence men of great houses, and credit among the *people*, to have free accesse into that *Countrey*, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakness doubtlesse in the Councell of King *Henry* the sixth, to suffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to passe at pleasure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought supply both of Men and Mony. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entring once into *Alexandria*, only to see the *Antiquities* of it, and return; stirred such suspicions, and distractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperour, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a small power, against a strong host easily defended This place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat

Auguſtus. deleat of the *Vitellian* Army; that ſo detaining the ordinary proviſion of Victuals, he might by Famine compell the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his *devotion*. The Government of this *Province* was by *AVGVSTVS* always committed to ſome one of the *Roman* Gentry, as leſſe able, by reaſon of his low condition, to work againſt the *Princes* ſafety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious attributes of *Lievtenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconſul*, or *Prætor*. *Captain* or *Preſident* of *Egypt* was their higheſt *Title*; there being even in *Titles* no ſmall motives to *Ambition*.

40. *AVGVSTVS* having by theſe meanſ reduced both the *City* and *Provinces* under his abſolute command, and being now declining in ſtrength, by reaſon of a ſudden and violent ſickneſſe; began to call his wits to Counſell, how to diſpoſe of the *Eſtate* after his deceaſe. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a woman of immodeſt carriage, never made further uſe of her fathers greatneſſe, than that ſhe ſatisfied her Luſts with the greater inſolence. *Marcellus*, his Sſters ſonne, and *Julias* husband, was a young man of an ingenious diſpoſition, and ſeemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AVGVSTVS* preferred to the *Pontificall* dignity, and *Ædileſhip*: Yet once upon his ſickneſſe, he privately determined to chooſe a Succeſſor in the Common-wealth, rather than his own Family; and not to leave the *Empire* to *Marcellus*, whom he held unable to undergo it, but to his companion in Arms, *Agrippa*; a man daunted neither with adverſe, nor altered with proſperous fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards ſo ſtomacked, that he began to grutch at *Agrippas* greatneſſe, and to bear a vigilant eye on his plots and actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa* unwilling to offend him, under whoſe future Government he was in all likelyhood to end the reſt of his dayes, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that ſo his abſence either might allay, or remove the diſpleaſure, conceived againſt him by the young *Prince*. An action full of wiſdome, and magnanimity. For though *AVGVSTVS* chief end was, to diſcountenance the popular dependencies of his *ſonne*, by the favours heaped on his *ſervant*: yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favourite ought to have ſo much in him of the *Perſian* Religion, as to worſhip the *Riſing Sun* alſo; and that he ſhould reſemble old *Janus* with the two faces, with th'one looking on the *King regnant*, with th'other on the *Prince ſucceſſive*.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, marryed his Widow, and on her begat two ſonnes, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whoſe actions afterward afforded ſuch variety for cenſure, that there was wanting neither much reaſon to commend, nor little to condemn them. On theſe two, or at the leaſt one of them, *AVGVSTVS* now grown aged, reſolves to ſettle the Eſtate; and if they failed, upon ſuch others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might *adopt*: *Adoption*, in the eſtimation of the *Roman* Laws, being indeed *another Nature*. Poſterity, whether it be *naturall*, or only *legall*, is the beſt *ſupporter* of the *Arms Imperiall*. Such as both fortifies the Prince, and aſſures the Subject. Yet this he did not without much reluctancy, and a great conflict in his mind. "Sometimes his thoughts ſuggeſted "to him, that the deſigned Succeſſors draw to them all the attendance and reſpect, from the *Prince* "in *poſſeſſion*; That they have alwayes a lingring deſire to be actually ſeated in the *Throne*; That "they ſuppoſe the life of the preſent *Prince* too tedious, not caring by what means it were ſhort-"ned; That ſometime it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Succeſſor himſelf alſo. On the "other ſide, his better thoughts prompted him to conſider, in what a miſerable diſtraction he ſhould "leave the *Empire*, if ſudden death ſhould take from him an ability to nominate his heir; The fear "conceived in the whole City, at his laſt ſickneſſe; That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all hands con-"demned, for leaving his Kingdome to the ſharpeſt *ſword*; That the Common-wealth faln into diſ-"ſenſions, could not be ſetled again without a lamentable War, and a bloudy Victory; That the "people ſeeing him *childleſſe*, would not only contemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the "old *liberty*, though with the ruin of the State; That it was the cuſtome of *Tyrants*, to deſire the "eternizing of their deaths, by the downfall of their *Countreys*. His mind thus diſtracted and perplexed, at laſt he brake in this manner. "Thou haſt, *Octavian*, a Wolf by the ears, which to hold ſtill, "or to let go, is alike dangerous. Many inconveniences may enſue, if thou doſt not declare thy "Succeſſor; more, if thou doſt. The good of the *Republique* conſiſteth in knowing the future "*Prince*; Thine own welfare dependeth on the *concealment*. The *Common good* is to be preferred be-"fore any *private*; Yet ought *Charity to begin at home*. No, *Octavian*, no; As thou haſt receiv'd, ſo "ſhew thy ſelf worthy of the title of *Pater Patriæ*. Yea, and perhaps this deſignation may ſecure "thine own Eſtate. For what will it profit the people to conſpire againſt thee; when they ſhall ſee "a Succeſſor at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy place, "and revenge thy wrongs?

40. Thus reſolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; deſiring, though he made ſhew to the contrary, they ſhould be *Conſuls Elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wiſely forecaſting the dangers incident to himſelf, if they ſhould make their abode in *Rome*; he ſendeth them with honourable charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exerciſe them in *feats* of *War*, as to take away all cauſe of faction in the Court, and ſedition in the City. Which *myſtery* of State as it was antiently practiſed by moſt *Princes*, ſo at this day by the *Grand Seignieur*: who alwayes ſendeth his eldeſt ſon unto *Amaſia*, as Governour thereof; from whence till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In theſe journeys dyed the two young *Princes*; a misfortune which *AVGVSTVS* bare nobly; neither baniſhing grief, with a *Stoicall Apathy*; nor ſpending the time in womaniſh lamentations. Having performed due rites to the dead, he adopted his Wives ſonne *Tiberius*. A man for the conveniency and ripeneſſe of his age, not *unfit*, in *feats* of *Arms*, not *unexpert*, in *humane learning*, not *ignorant*; but withall ſuſpected to be cruelly given, and poſſeſſed with the hereditary pride of the *Claudian* Family. A ſtrange medley of vertuous and vitious qualities. *Tiberius*, ſuch was the

will

will of his Father, to eſtabliſh the ſucceſſion, with more ſtayes than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Druſus* ſonne; then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*: which done, he ſpeedeth to his charge in *Illyricum*. This man *AVGVSTVS* appointed to be his Heir, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the party; but to win honour to himſelf: and to make the *Roman* people again wiſh for him; when they ſhould ſee that infinite diſproportion in all Royall and Kingly qualities, between the old and new *Emperors*. A fetch after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the the adoption of *Caius Caligula*. *Auguſtus.*

43. The laſt (though not the leaſt) help of the *Empires* eſtabliſhment, was the long life and reign of our *AVGVSTVS*: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Soveraignty*, by the *Senate* and people. All the young men in the City were born after the firſt *Decennium* of the *Monarchy*. Moſt of the old men during the Civil Wars. Few had ſeen what was the antient *form* of *Government* in the Common-wealth; many did not deſire it. For at the preſent, enjoying Peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what ſad and tragicall reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and *proſcriptions*: they contented themſelves with the new Government; as more eſteeming a ſecure and happy *ſubjection*, than a dangerous and factious *liberty*. By which long time of Empire, and the policies already recited, beſides many others, which I can neither learn by relation, nor gather by preſumptions; did *AVGVSTVS* ſo firmly ſettle the *Roman* Monarchy, that it continued ſome hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Succeſſors were in a manner Monſters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather then men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own *Tyrannies*, and their Bondmens *Extortions*; would have ruined any *Monarchy* not founded by *AVGVSTVS*.

44. To ſpeak concerning the domeſtical affairs of this *Emperor*, is beyond my *Theme*. As either how far he ſuffered himſelf to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he uſed variety of women, not ſo much to ſatisfie a diſordinate appetite, as by ſo many women to fiſh out the ſecret deſigns of many men. He was too exact a Stateſman to be perfect in *Souldiery*; and in all his Wars was proſperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his *Captains* Valour than his own. The *Common-wealth* which he found weak and in *Rubbiſh*, he left *Adamantine*, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious; in his diſcourſe, ſententious; to the good, of a moſt ſweet diſpoſition; to the lewd and diſhoneſt, harſh and unpleaſant. *Friendſhip* he contracted with few, and that ſlowly; but to them, whom he once loved, conſtant and bountifull to the laſt. Finally, ſuch a one he was, of whom I will only ſay what I find ſpoken of *Severus*; It had been an ineffable benefit to the *Common-wealth* of *Rome*, if either he had never *dyed*, or never been *born*.

Thus having drawn the Picture of this puiſſant and prudent *Prince* (though I confeſſe with too much ſhadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman* Emperours: in which I ſhall take notice of ſuch of their Actions only as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decreaſe of their Power and Empire; or point to any ſignall matter which concerns the *Church*.

The *Roman* Emperours.

A. M.

3918. 1. *Julius Cæſar* the laſt of the *Dictators*, and the firſt of the *Emperours*, in memory of whom the following Emperours were called *Cæſars*, till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the title of the heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor; the firſt who had it in that ſenſe being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3923. 2. *C. Octavianus Cæſar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Auguſtus*; who added unto the *Roman* Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdome of *Egypt*. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born. 56.

A. C.

17. 3. *Tiberius Nero*, the ſonne in Law of *Auguſtus*, ſubdued many of the *German* Nations; and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time *CHRIST* ſuffered. 23.

39. 4. *Caius Caligula*, the ſonne of *Germanicus* (ſonne of *Druſus*, the brother of *Tiberius*) and of *Agrippina* Neece to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by his daughter *Julia*. 3.

43. 5. *Claudius Cæſar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, brother of *Germanicus*, and ſonne of *Druſus* by *Antonia* Neece to *Auguſtus* by his Siſter *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the *Roman* Empire. 13.

57. 6. *Domitius Nero*, ſon of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina* daughter to *Germanicus*; the laſt of the *Cæſars*. He made the *Cottian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman* Emperours; and was the firſt that raiſed any publick perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 67. 13.

70. 7. *Sergius Galba*, choſen by the *French* and *Spaniſh* Legions.
8. *Salvius Otho*, made Emperour by the *Prætorian* Souldiers.
9. *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German* Legions.

71. 10. *Flavius Veſpaſianus*, choſen by the *Syrian* and *Judæan* Armies, ſubverted utterly the *Common-wealth* of the *Jews*, by the valour and proweſſe of his ſon *Titus*; and brought *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces. 9.

80. 11. *Titus Veſpaſianus*, the fortunate Conquerer of the *Jews*.

82. 12. *Fl Domitianus*, who raiſed the ſecond perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 96. 15.

97. 13. *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born; as all the reſt had been before him, but not many after him.

14. *Ulpius*

99. 14. *Ulpius Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carryed the *Roman* Armies over *Euphrates*, ſubduing *Armenia*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*; and raiſed the third Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 110. 19.

118. 15. *Ælius Adrianus*, who utrerly exterminated the *Jewiſh* Nation, and continued the Perſecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138. 16. *Antoninus Pius*, whoſe friendſhip was ſought by the very *Indians*. 24.

162. 17. *Marcus Antonius*, ſurnamed the Philoſopher, aſſociated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whoſe valour he ſubdued the *Parthians*. He raiſed the fourth Perſecution againſt the Church. *An.* 167. 19.

181. 18. *L. Antonius Commodus*, ſonne to *Marcus*, the firſt Emperour that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194. 19. *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperour againſt his will.

20. *Didius Iulianus*, who bought the Empire of the Souldiers.

195. 21. *Septimius Severus*, took *Cteſiphon* from the *Parthians*, ſubdued the Province of *Oſroene*; and raiſed the fifth Perſecution. *An.* 195. 18.

213. 22. *Baſſianus Caracalla*, ſonne to *Severus*.

220. 23. *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperour by the men of War.

221. 24. *Varius Heliogabalus*, the ſuppoſed ſonne of *Caracalla*.

225. 25. *Alexander Severus*, Couſen of *Varius*.

238. 26. *Maximinus*, a fellow of obſcure birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raiſed the ſixth perſecution. *An.* 237.

241. 27. *Gordian*, elected by the Senate againſt *Maximinus*. 6.

247. 28. *Philip*, an *Arabian*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be a Chriſtian. 5.

252. 29. *Decius*, ſlain in war againſt the *Gothes*; the Author of the ſeventh Perſecution raiſed againſt the Church. *An.* 250. 2.

254. 30. *Gallus Hoſtilianus*. 2.

256. 31. *Æmilianus*, the *Moor*.

256. 32. *Valerianus*, the Author of the eighth Perſecution. *An.* 259. He was taken priſoner by *Sapores*, King of *Perſia*, and made to ſerve him for a footſtool.

33. *Gallienus*, ſonne to *Valerianus*, in whoſe time the 30 Tyrants ingroſſed unto themſelves ſeverall parts of the Empire.

271. 34. *Claudius* II. who after a ſhort and troubleſome time, left it to

272. 35. *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the ſame but 17 dayes.

273. 36. *Valer. Aurelianus*, reſtored again the antient diſcipline, ſuppreſſed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquiſhed the *Gothes*; but was a great perſecutor of the Church. *An.* 278. 6.

279. 37. *Annius Tacitus*, deſcended from *Tacitus* the Hiſtorian.

38. *Florianus*, an Emperour of two moneths only.

280. 39. *Valerius Probus*. 6.

286. 40. *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two ſonnes *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

288. 41. *Diocletian*, firſt aſſociated *Maximianus* by the name of *Emperour*, or *Auguſtus*; and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Conſtantius Chlorus*, by the name of *Cæſars*. He had continuall Wars againſt the *Perſians*, and raiſed the tenth Perſecution againſt the Church, *An.* 295. Which held ſo long, and was ſo vehement withall, that as St. *Hierome* writes, there were 5000 ſlain for every day in the year, ſave the firſt of *January*. He afterwards reſigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Calona*. 20.

308. 41. *Conſtantius Chlorus*, a friend to *Chriſtians*. 2.

310. 42. *Conſtantine*, ſonne of *Chlorus*, ſurnamed *Magnus*, or the great, the firſt *Emperour* that countenanced the Goſpel, and embraced it publickly; which he is ſaid to have done on this occaſion. At the ſame time that he was ſaluted Emperour in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was choſen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Souldiers; and *Licinius* named Succeſſor by *Maximinus*, the aſſociate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being penſive and ſolicitous upon theſe diſtractions, he caſt his eyes up towards Heaven, where he ſaw in the Air a lightſome Pillar in the form of a Croſſe, wherein he read theſe words, ἐν τούτῳ νίκα, *in hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Viſion, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he ſhould overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious, from which time he not only favoured the *Chriſtians*, but became a very zealous profeſſor of the Faith and Goſpel. I know *Zoſimus* an Heathen Hiſtorian, partly out of malice to the *Chriſtians* in generall, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperour *Conſtantine*; reporteth otherwiſe of the cauſes of his Converſion: But the authority and conſent of all *Chriſtian* Writers, who deliver it as before is told; is far to be preferred before the teſtimony of one ſingle Heathen, had he not been biaſſed (as he was) by his diſaffections.

Before this time it is obſerved, that few (if at all any) of the *Roman* Emperours dyed a naturall death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæſar* unto *Conſtantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Auguſtus* made away by his wife *Livia*; as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was ſlain by *Caſſius Chereas*; *Claudius* poyſoned by his wife *Agrippina*; *Nero*,

Nero, and *Otho*, laid violent hands upon themſelves; *Galba*, and *Vitellius*, maſſacred by the Souldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Letus* and *Electus*, *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Souldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*; *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*, ſucceſſively by the men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Souldiers; *Hoſtilianus* by *Gallus*, and *Æmilianus*; and they by the Souldiers; *Valerianus* dyed a Priſoner in *Parthia*, *Florianus* was the Author of his own end; *Aurelianus* murdered by his houſhold ſervants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Tacitus*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Accompt ſuch of the Emperours as were tumultuouſly made by the Army, without the approbation of the *Senate*; as alſo the *Cæſars*, or deſigned Succeſſors of the Empire; moſt of which got nothing by their deſignation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of theſe were cut off for their midemeanours; ſome, for ſeeking to revive again the antient Diſcipline; and ſome, that others might enjoy their places. The chief cauſe of theſe continual maſſacres, proceeded originally from the *Senate*, and Emperours themſelves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Souldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evulgato* (ſaith *Tacitus*) *imperii arcano, principem alibi quàm* Romæ *fieri poſſe*: more Emperours were made abroad in the field by the *Legions*, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly from the *Emperours* alone, who by an unſeaſonable love to their *Guard-Souldiers*, ſo ſtrengthned them with priviledges, and nuſled them in their licentious courſes; that on the ſmalleſt rebuke, they which were appointed for the ſafety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: ſo truly was it ſaid by *Auguſtus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum eſt eſſe ſine cuſtode, ſed multò magis à cuſtode metuendum eſt*. The laſt cauſe (be it *cauſa per accidens*, or *per ſe*) was the largeſs which the new Emperours uſed to give unto the men of ſervice; a cuſtome begun by *Claudius Cæſar*, and continued by all his Succeſſors: inſomuch that the Empire became ſaleable, and many times he which bad moſt had it. As we ſee in *Dion*, when *Sulpitianus* offering twenty *Seſtertiums* to each ſouldier, was (as if they had been buying of a ſtock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promiſed them five and twenty *Seſtertiums* a man. So that *Herodian* juſtly complaineth of this Donative. *Id initium cauſaq; militibus fuit, ut etiam in poſterum turpiſſimi contumaciſſimique evaderent, ſic ut avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad ſanguinem uſq; proveherent*. That is to ſay; From this occaſion and beginning, the Souldiers every day grew more ſhameleſſe, and leſs regardfull of their *Prince*: ſo that their covetouſneſſe encreaſing, and the contempt they had of their Emperours waxing more and more, ended at laſt in the frequent ſhedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Succeſſor: So as the Emperour *Conſtantine* wanted not good reaſon, beſides their fiding againſt him for *Maxentius*, to caſhier theſe Guards, as grown more dangerous than uſefull to *Imperial* Majeſty. And ſo accordingly he did, levelling their *ſtanding Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers and to other Services; by means whereof they were not able to create the like diſturbances, or diſpoſe of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of theſe *Guards* which before were two (*Præfecti Prætorio* in the Latine) he encreaſed their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Juriſdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before; and caſting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own deviſing.

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman* Empire, whilſt it remained one entire Body (as it was before the time of *Conſtantine*, who at his death divided it among his ſonnes) it was in length about three thouſand miles; namely, from the Iriſh Ocean Weſt, to the River *Euphrates* on the Eaſt; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward, to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thouſand miles. And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions ſometimes farther *Eaſt*, and *North*; yet could they never quietly ſetle themſelves in thoſe conqueſts. Nature (it ſeemeth) had appointed them theſe bounds, not ſo much to limit their *Empire*, as to defend it. For the enemies found thoſe Rivers, by reaſon of the depth of the Channell, and violent current of the ſtream, as a couple of impregnable Fortreſſes; purpoſely (as it were) erected to hinder them from harraſing the *Roman* Countreys.

The Revenues of it *Lipſius* in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*, eſteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no leſſe, may be made more than probable by theſe reaſons. 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount unto one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few queſtion it) we cannot in proportion gueſs the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yeeld leſſe than one hundred and fifty millions; eſpecially conſidering what Arts-Maſters the *Romans* were, in levying and raiſing their Taxes and cuſtomary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Souldiers which were diſperſed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay, (beſides proviſion of corn, apparel, and Officers wages) five millions, 516062. pounds and ten ſhillings of our money; which amounteth unto ſixteen millions of Crowns or thereabout. In the City it ſelf, were kept in continuall pay, ſeven thouſand Souldiers of the Watch, four thouſand or ſix thouſand for the defence of the City; and ten thouſand for the Guard of the Emperours perſon. The two firſt had the ſame wages, the laſt the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier. Adde hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of diſburſals, and I think nothing of the ſum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* ſpent in one year two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; how *Nero* moſt laviſhly gave away two millions and one hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few moneths, was nine hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums* in Arrearages; every *Seſtertium* being valued at ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite ſums. 4. When *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was ſo impoveriſhed, that he profeſſed in open Senate, that he wanted to ſettle the Common-wealth forty millions of *Seſtertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our Engliſh money: which Proteſtation (ſaith *Sueton*) ſeemed probable, *quia & malè partis optimè uſus eſt*. Now unleſſe the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have ſpoken; by what means could this extraordinary ſum be raiſed? 5. We may gueſſe at the generall Revenue by the moneys iſſuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded to the *Ptolemies* twelve thouſand talents yeerly: neither had the *Romans* leſſe, they

being more perfect in inhancing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cæsar* sessed at the yeerly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the rest of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And lastly the infinite sums of money given by the Emperours in way of largess, are proofs sufficient for the greatnesse of the in-come. I will instance in *Augustus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and the rest, I will specifie his Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Testament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common sort, and the rest of the people, three pound eight shillings a man; to every souldier of the *Prætorian* bands, seven pound sixteen shillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* souldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten shillings six pence: which amounted to a mighty mass of money.

The Arms or Ensign of this Empire when it was up and in the flourish, was the Eagle: not born, as now, in colours, and a banner; but in an Image or Portraicture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleasure. This Ensign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ signa, quòd quasi labantia hastis appenderentur* labara *dixerunt*, saith *Lipsius*, *Epist. Quæst. Ep.* 5. The use as of this, so of other standards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the second of *Numb.* namely, *ut ad eorum aspectũ, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, and distribute the souldiers according to occasions. And certainly for this end and purpose were those Ensigns first invented. Afterwards they were applyed to the distinguishing of *Tribes* and *Families*; and at last bestowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well-deserving: those which had been the Ensigns of War, so becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturn*, in a Field *Sol*; which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *most rich*. It was first born by *Ca. Marius* in his second Consulship, and in his Wars against the *Cimbri*; from him conveyed to *J. Cæsar*, who was allied to him in design and person, and so derived unto the Emperours, his Successors.

But to proceed, *Constantine* having setled his affairs in peace, and cashiered the *Prætorian* Guards, fell to new modelling of the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumbersome and unwieldy to be governed by the former Polity, as indeed it was. And first of all he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordained a particular *President*, that had his residence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced these Provinces under fourteen *Dioceses*, (for so he called the greater distributions of his Empire) seven of which were in the *East* parts thereof, that is to say, the *Diocese* of *Egypt*, of the *Orient*, of *Asia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*: and as many also in the *West*, *viz.* the *Præfecture* of the City of *Rome*, (which I count for one) the *Diocese* of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. Finally in stead of the two *Præfecti Prætorio* which had the command of the *Prætorians*, he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: that is to say, the *Præfectus Prætorio Italiæ*, under whom were the Dioceses of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*; 2. *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceses* of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*; 3. The *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, who had command over the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, the *Orient*, the *Asian*, the *Pontick* and *Thracian* Dioceses; And 4. the *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*, under whose super-intendence, besides *Illyricum* it self, were the *Dioceses* of *Macedon* and *Dacia* only; each of these *Præfects* having a *Vicarius*, or Lievtenant in the several *Dioceses* under his authority, who fixed their residence in the head City of the *Diocese*. And this I have the rather noted, because of the relation which the *Polity* of the *Christian* Church had to this Division: it being so ordered in the best and purest times thereof, that in every City where the Emperours had an Officer, whom they called *Defensor Civitatis*, the *Christians* should have a *Bishop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Diocese* an *Arch-bishop*, or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And so far *Constantine* did well; if at the least the casting of the Empire into so many Dioceses was of his devising. But I have reason to believe that it was more antient: the Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome*, *Carthage*, *Alexandria*, *Antioch*, and others of the greater Churches, being setled in a preheminence of jurisdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* assigned to them long time before the Councel of *Nice*, and consequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Constantine*; who possibly might act no more in this great business, than the assigning of a *Præfectus Prætorio* to each several quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceses* unto each *Præfectus*. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that he committed divers errors, which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predecessors. First in translating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which transplantation the Empire lost much of its naturall vigour: as we see by the experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their naturall growth, lose much of their vertue which was formerly in them. On which reason, *Camillus* would not suffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it, set fire on the Town, and so consumed it, *ut nunc* Veios *fuisse laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A second fault of this *Constantine*, was the dividing of the Empire amongst his sonnes, which only concerned himself. For though it was quickly reunited in the person of *Constantius* (his brethren dying without issue) yet his example being followed by others; the Empire was after torn into many pieces, to the destruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperours used sometimes to associate some partner with them; but so that they did manage it as one sole Estate: *Constantine* (if I remember rightly) being the first which parcelled it into severall Soveraignties, each independent of the other, allotting to *Constantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, and all the Provinces of the East; to *Constans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Africk*; to *Constantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, & *Britain*. The third fault of this Emperour was his removing the *Legion*, and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eastern parts of his dominions; pretending to use them as a Bulwark against the *Persians*; laying thereby those passages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations entred, and subdued the West. For though in stead of these *Colonies* he planted Garrisons and Forts in convenient places; yet these being filled with Souldiers, for the most part out of other Countreys, fought not as in defence of their native Soyl, (as the *Colonies* would and must have done) but on the first onset of those *Barbarians*, abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zosimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he

he bewrayeth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the first Subverter of that flourishing Monarchy. To these three we may adde a fourth, which concerns the Emperours in generall; namely their stupid negligence and degenerate spirits, which shewed it self most visibly in the last of

The *Western* Emperours.

341 1 *Constans*, the youngest sonne of *Constantinus Magnus*, his brother *Constantine* being dead, in the third year of his reign, remained sole Emperour of the West. 13.

354 2 *Constantius*, the other of *Constantines* sonnes, succeeded *Constans* in his part, after his decease, uniting the divided Empire into one Estate.

3 *Valentinian* Emperour of the West, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Constantinople*, and the Eastern parts.

4 *Valentinian* II. youngest sonne of the former *Valentinian*.

399 5 *Honorius* the second sonne of *Theodosius* the Emperour, in whose time *Alarick* with the *Gothes* invaded *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, and made themselves Masters of the Countrey, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain*. 26.

425 6 *Valentinian* III. during whose time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in *Italy*, and the *Vandals* seized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* also after his decease: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whose wife he had trained into the Court, and ravished) as shall be shewn hereafter on another occasion. He was sonne unto *Constantius Cæsar* by *Placidia* Sister to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Authaulfus* King of the *Gothes*.

455 7 *Maximus* having slain *Valentinian* the third, succeeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had some inkling of the manner of her husbands death) had drawn into *Italy*, he was stoned to death by his own souldiers. 1.

456 8 *Avitus*, chosen Emperour in a military tumult.

457 9 *Majoranus*. 4.

461 10 *Severus*. 6.

467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was slain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* (a *Suevian* born) the chief Commander of the Armies; who had an aim to get the Empire for himself, but dyed as soon as he had vanquished and slain *Anthemius*.

471 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperour of four moneths only.

472 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As also was

14 *Julius Nepos*, deposed by *Orestes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his son called at first *Momillus*, but after his assuming the Imperial title he was called as in contempt *Augustulus*.

473 15 *Augustulus*, the last of the Emperours who resided in *Italy*, vanquished by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*. An ominous thing, that as *Augustus* raised this Empire, so an *Augustulus* should ruin it.

But though *Augustulus* lost the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not suffered to enjoy it long: *Zeno* the Emperour of the East sending *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, to expell him thence; and to possess himself of *Italy*, the reward of his valour. And this the Emperour did the rather, partly because the *Gothes* were Christians, and in good terms of correspondency with him: but principally to remove that active Nation somewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might dismis them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the *Roman* Empire; an honour first devised by the Emperour *Constantine*; and of so high esteem from the first Institution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedency of the *Prætorio Præfecti*, who before took place next to the Emperour himself. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* set upon it any lower estimate, in case he did not adde much unto it; when to the Title of Emperour of the *Romans* he added that of a *Patrician* in the style Imperiall. *Theodorick* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward *Italy*; and having vanquished *Odoacer*, secures himself in his new Conquests by divers politick proceedings; first by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortresses at home. To fortifie himself abroad, he took to Wife *Adelheida*, daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*; marrying his sister *Hemelfride* to *Thorismund*, King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; *Amalasunta* a second daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Neece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with these Alliances with his Neighbour Princes, (all equally concerned in the subverting of the *Roman* Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the shores of the *Adriatick*, to impeach the passage of the barbarous Nations into *Italy*. His Souldiers and Commanders he dispersed into most parts of the Countrey; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whose wavering and unconstant nature he was somewhat doubtfull; partly to unite both people in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customes; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Lust and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and setled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries: in stead whereof a generall felicity had diffused it self over all the Countrey. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthned, and beautified. In his wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* saith of *Morobodnus*) he was *Natione magis quàm ratione Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in *Italy*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman* Provinces; which he left thus confirmed and setled unto his Successors.

A. C. The Kings of the *Gothes* in *Italy*.

495 1 *Theodorick* of whom before; who to his conquest of *Italy* added that of *Illyricum*, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countries; and wrested *Provence* in *France*, from the *Gothes* of *Spain*.

527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his daughter *Amalaſunta*, who in the minority of her ſonne managed the affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing ſome danger out of *Greece*, ſhe reſtored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all thoſe Nations which had any commerce with the *Roman* Empire; inſomuch, that *pro miraculo fuerit ipſam audire loquentem*, ſaith *Procopius* of her.

534 3 *Theodatus*, the ſonne of *Hammelfride*, the Siſter of *Theodorick*, ſucceeded on the untimely death of *Athalaricus*. Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperours, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Gothes*) and deſiring beforehand to know his ſucceſſe; was willed by a *Jew* to ſhut up a certain number of Swine, and to give to ſome of them the names of *Gothes*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the ſtyes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothiſh* faction all ſlain, and thoſe of the *Roman* half unbriſtled: and thereupon the *Jew* foretold, that the *Gothes* ſhould be diſcomfited, and the *Romans* loſe a great part of their ſtrength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called Οιωνία, and hath been prohibited by a Generall Councell. The loſſe of this battell (wonne by *Beliſarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperour *Juſtinian*) drew on the loſſe of *Rome*, and the Eaſt parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occaſioned the death of *Theodatus*, ſlain ſhortly after theſe great loſſes by the *Gothes* themſelves. 3.

537 4 *Vitiges*, choſen by the *Gothes*, beſieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the ſaid *Beliſarius*. 3.

540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Beliſarius*, choſen by the *Gothes*, and by them not long after ſlain. 1.

541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable. 1.

542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predeceſſors, and ſacked *Rome* in the ſight of *Beliſarius*, then returned into *Italy*, and not able to hinder him. Vanquiſhed and killed in fight by *Narſes*, in the 11 of his reign. 11.

553 8 *Teyas*, the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, who being vanquiſhed by *Narſes* in the fourteenth year of his Reign, ſubmitted himſelf to the *Eaſtern* Emperours: but after breaking out again, he was finally diſcomfited, and ſlain by *Narſes* not far from the City of *Nocera*, *An.* 567. After which time the *Gothes* and the *Italians* mingled in blood and language, became one Nation.

But the miſeries of *Italy*, and thoſe Weſtern parts were not ſo to end. No ſooner had God freed them from the rod of his viſitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Perſecution*, formerly remembred, and given them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *ſchiſms* and *factions*: and after wallowed in thoſe ſins, which a continuall ſurfeit of proſperity hath commonly attending on it. Inſomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about theſe times, complains of that high hand of wickedneſſe, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Chriſtians* being grown ſo deplorably wicked, that they became a ſcandall to the Faith and Goſpel. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium*, *in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, ſaith that godly Biſhop. So that their ſins being ripe for vengeance, God ſent the barbarous Nations as his *Executioners*, to execute his divine juſtice on impenitent men; and made them ſenſible though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying ſuch afflictions on theſe Weſtern parts. *Ipſi fatebantur non ſuum eſſe quod facerent*, *agi enim ſe & perurgeri divino juſſu*, as the ſaid godly Biſhop doth inform us of them. On this impulſion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they firſt waſted *Spain*, and then harried *Africk*: And on the ſame did *Attila* the *Hun* inſert into his Royall Titles the ſtile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehenſion of ſome ſpeciall and extraordinary calling to this publick ſervice. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, ſome of theſe barbarous people did not ſtick to ſay, that they were put on this employment by ſome Heavenly viſions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In proſecution of the which, in leſs time than the compaſs of 80 years, this very *Italy* (though antiently the ſtrength and ſeat of that Empire) was ſeven times brought almoſt unto deſolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. Firſt by *Alarick*, King of the *Gothes*, who ſacked *Rome*, *Naples*, *&c.* 2. By *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, who razed *Florence*, waſted *Lombardy*, & not without much difficulty was diverted from the ſpoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of Pope *Leo*: 3. By *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, who alſo had the ſackage of *Rome* it ſelf: 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperour *Majoranus*: 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, who drove *Auguſtulus* the laſt Weſtern Emperour out of his eſtate; & twice in thirteen years laid the Countrey deſolate: 6. By *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, called in by *Zeno* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*: And 7 by *Gundebald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranſacked all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving poſſeſſion to the *Gothes*. As for theſe *Gothes*, being the firſt and laſt of thoſe barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the ſpoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the ſpace of 72 years, they were at laſt ſubdued by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two of the braveſt Souldiers that had ever ſerved the Eaſtern Emperours; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Juſtinian*. But *Narſes* having governed *Italy* about 17 years, and being after ſuch good ſervice moſt deſpightfully uſed by *Sophia* (never the wiſer for her name) the wife of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, abandoned the Countrey to the *Lombards*. For the Empreſs envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government; but ſent him word, *That ſhe would make the* Eunuch (for ſuch he was) *come home & ſpin among her maids*. To which the diſcontented man returned this anſwer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a Web, as neither ſhe nor any of her maids ſhould ever be able to unweave*. And therupon he opened the paſſages of the Countrey to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italy* with their Wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Countrey which antiently was

inhabited

inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Galls*, calling it by their own names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf maſter of the Countreys lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedomes, 1 of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italy*, for the admiſſion of more aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders: 2 Of *Turin*, at the foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*: 3. Of *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the incurſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern parts of that Kingdome: And 4 of *Spoleto* in the midſt of *Italy*, to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his ſucceſſors.

The *Lombardian* Kings of *Italy*.

A. C.

568. 1 *Alboinus*. 6.
574. 2 *Clephes*. 1.
Interregnum annorum. 11.
586. 3 *Autharus*. 7.
593. 4 *Agilulfus*. 25.
618. 5 *Adoaldus*. 10.
628. 6 *Arioaldus*. 11.
939. 7 *Richaris*, or *Rotharis*.
635. 8 *Radoaldus*. 5.
660. 9 *Aribertus*. 9.
669. 10 *Gundibertus*. 1.
670. 11 *Grimoaldus*. 9.
679. 12 *Garibaldus menſ*. 3.
679. 13 *Partarithus*. 18.
698. 14 *Cunibertus*. 12.
710. 15 *Luithertus*. 1.
711. 16 *Rainbertus*. 1.
712. 17 *Aribertus* II. 12.
723. 18 *Aſprandus menſ*. 3.
723. 19 *Luitprandus*. 21.
744. 20 *Hildebrandus m*. 6.
744. 21 *Rachiſius*. 6.
750. 22 *Aſtulphus*. 6.
756. 23 *Deſiderius*, the laſt of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon. In the mean time we will look into the ſtory of ſome of the former Kings, in which we find ſome things deſerving our conſideration. And firſt beginning with *Alboinus*, the firſt of this Catalogue, before his coming into *Italy* he had waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepidæ*; whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Roſumund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that deteſted Cup; which ſhe ſo ſtomacked, that ſhe promiſed one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her ſelf and the Kingdome of *Lombardy*. This when he had conſented to, and performed accordingly, they were both ſo extremely hated for it, that they were fain to fly to *Ravenna*, and put themſelves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a deſire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be poſſeſſed of that maſſe of Treaſure which ſhe was ſaid to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raiſe a beneficiall War againſt the *Lombards*; perſwaded her to diſpatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which ſhe willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for drink, and ſhe gives him a ſtrong poyſon; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the ſtrange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the reſt: ſo both dyed together. 2. *Clephes* the ſecond King extended the Kingdome of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*: but was ſo tyrannical withall, that after his death, they reſolved to admit of no more Kings, diſtributing the Government among 30 Dukes. Which diviſion, though it held not above 12 years, was the chief cauſe that the *Lombards* failed of being the abſolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once caſt off the yoak of obedience, and taſted ſomewhat of the ſweetneſſe of licentious Freedome; were never after ſo reduced to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in ſuch Atchievments as tended more unto the greatneſſe of the King, than the gain of the ſubject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14 King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled againſt him; one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thruſt himſelf into the head of the Enemy, where he loſt his own life, but ſaved the Kings. 4. *Aribert* the 17 King, gave the *Coltian Alpes* containing *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dutchy of *Millain* to the Church of *Rome*: which is obſerved to be the firſt Temporall Eſtate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatneſſe which they after came to. 5 The 19 King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*; having firſt won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof. *An*. 741. the laſt *Exarch* being called *Eutichus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conqueſts. For *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* the third, ſolicited to come into *Italy*; overthrew *Aſtulphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The laſt King was *Deſiderius*, who falling at oddes with *Adrian* the firſt, and beſieging him in *Rome*; was by *Charles* the great, Succeſſor to *Pepin*, beſieged in *Pavy*, and himſelf with all his children taken priſoners, *An*. 774. And ſo ended the Kingdome of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then made a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whoſe Emperours uſed to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Biſhops of *Millain*, with an Iron Crown; which was kept at *Modoecum*, now called *Monza*, a ſmall Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconitana*, and the Dukedome of *Spoleto*. For theſe and other kindneſſes, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* the fourth, on *Chriſtmas* day crowned Emperour of the Weſt, *An*. 801. whoſe Succeſſors ſhall be reckoned when we come to the ſtory of *Germany*. At this diviſion of the Empire, *Irene* was Empreſſe of the Eaſt; to whom and her Succeſſors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperour and his father, almoſt all the Lands which they poſſeſſe at

this day; though afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperors, or under colour of their Title: by many ſeveral waies and means brought again unto them, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *ſui juris*. The reſt of *Italie*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdome of *Naples*, together with *Tuſcanie*, *Friuli*, *Treviginna*, and whatſoever is at this day in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Millaine*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piemont*, together with *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*; was reſerved by *Charles* unto himſelf, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his ſecond ſon, with the ſtyle or title of King of *Italie*. But long it did not reſt in the houſe of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wreſting it from the line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their ſeveral factions; till in the end in ſtead of an united Kingdome, there roſe up many ſcattered Principalities, as ſhall hereafter be declared. But firſt we muſt proceed to the Kings of *Italie*, of which we ſhall endevour as exact a Catalogue, as the confuſions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italie*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1 *Pepin*, ſon of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2 *Barnard*, ſon of *Pepin*.
3 *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
841 4 *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldeſt ſon of *Ludovicus*. 15.
856 5 *Ludovicus* II. Emperor, eldeſt ſon to *Lotharius*. 20.
876 6 *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the yongeſt ſon of *Ludovicus Pius*. 2.
7 *Caroloman*, nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his ſecond ſon, ſurnamed the *Antient*.
8 *Carolus Craſſus*, or the Fat, Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the laſt King of *Italie* of the houſe of *Charles*, he died *Anno* 888.
888 9 *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, for the Kingdome of *Italie*; and in fine carrieth it againſt him.
894 10 *Lambert*, the ſon of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formoſus*.
11 *Ludovick*, ſon of *Boſon* of *Ardennes*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by ſome Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italie*, and is made King.
917 12 *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuli*, vanquiſheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italie*; and at laſt overcome by the *Hungarians*; who having waſted the Countrey returned back again.
13 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Tranſ-jurane*, called into *Italie* againſt *Berengarius*, reſigned it in exchange for the Kingdome of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Couſen,
926 14 *Hugh D' Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdome of *Italie* upon this reſignation; but after many troubles, was at laſt outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
946 15 *Berengarius* II. ſon of of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the ſon of *Hugh*; beſieging *Adelhais* the next heir of *Italie* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken priſoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
16 *Otho*, called into *Italie* by *Adelhais*, daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italie*; marrieth the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italie*.
974 17 *Otho* II. ſon of the former *Otho*, marrieth *Theophania* neece to *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower. 20.
984 18 *Otho* III. Emperor, and King of *Italie*, in whoſe minority the Kingdome was uſurped by
19 *Hardnicus*, a man of great power in *Italie*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long wars by *Henry* the ſucceeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20 *Henry*, the ſecond Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquiſhed *Harduicus*, got the Kingdome of *Italie*, and left the ſame unto the Emperors his Succeſſors: the Title of *Italie* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Countrey governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by ſuch Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time ſent thither. But long it ſtaid not in that ſtate. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Polity, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italie*, without which their own Grandour could not be maintained; ſtirred up continual factions and wars againſt them; and by that means, and by the Cenſures of the Church which they denounced according as they ſaw occaſion, did ſo aſtoniſh and diſtract them; that in the end the Emperors began to lay aſide the affairs of *Italie*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inſomuch that *Rodolfus Habſpurgenſis*, a valiant and a politick Prince, finding the ill ſucceſs which *Henry* the fourth and fifth, and *Frederick* the firſt and ſecond, Emperors of more puiſſance than himſelf, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretenſions; reſolved to rid his hands of that troubleſome and fruitleſs Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that commodity, which he ſaw he was not like to keep. And yet he ſold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but ſix thouſand Crowns, the Citizens of *Luca* ten thouſand; others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reaſon, why he went not into *Italie* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predeceſſors had done before him: he is ſaid to have returned for anſwer that conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as the other beaſts did) at the Lions Den.

—*Quia*

——— *Quia me veſtigia terrent*
Omnia me adverſum ſpectantia, nulla retrorſum.

That is to ſay,

I dare not go, becauſe no track I ſee
Of any beaſt returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident reſolution being followed by too many of his Succeſſors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themſelves the great diſpoſers of the affairs of *Italie*; but many petit Princes thereby took occaſion of getting all they could lay hold on for themſelves, and others. For by this means, the *Scaligers* made themſelves Maſters of *Verona*, the *Paſſarines* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*; and by the ſame the *Florentines* got *Piſtoia*, and *Ferrara* was poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* the 7. provoked by theſe indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron Crown; as were alſo *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles* the 4. two of his Succeſſors: yet found they in concluſion ſuch ſmall benefit by the enterpriſe, as did not quit the charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italie* was left wholly in a manner to the Popes diſpoſing, who gave away to others what they could not manage; or otherwiſe confirmed thoſe men in their uſurpations, whom they found already poſſeſſed of the Emperors Countreys: and bound them by that means the faſter to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their eſtates in fee; the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exerciſing the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquiſates, Marquiſates to Dukedoms, which they often did either for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preſerve ſome ſhadow of their ancient Intereſt.

And now we are to look on *Italie* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of ſeveral Principalities and forms of Government; but as repleniſhed with new Colonies or ſets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soyl be now as it was before, yet hath that alſo found ſome change in the different production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now beſides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the ſtaple Commodities of this Countrey; they ſupply the reſt of Chriſtendome with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffaties, Sattans, Grograins, Raſh, Fuſtians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glaſſes, and ſuch like commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the moſt part, Gentlemen of noble houſes, not only loſe not the eſteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandiſe (as in other places;) but by reaſon that they are poſſeſſed of eſtates in land, which they manage by their Bayliffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthieſt Merchants in all *Chriſtendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behinde them in all manner of affluence, which can be poſſibly enjoyed in ſo rich a Soyl. Their Lands they ſet not at a rent, but at thirds or halfs, according as the Soyl is more or leſs fruitful; ſeldome abiding in the Countrey, but only for a moneth or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themſelves with their Muſick and Miſtreſſes under the fragrant hedges and ſhady bowers, in as much ſolace and delight as may be deſired. The reſidue of the year they ſpend in Cities, and places of the moſt reſort, for change of company. But on the other ſide the Countrey Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impoſitions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any diſburſements or defalcations; inſomuch that it is proverbially, but moſt truly ſaid, that *the rich men in* Italie *are the richeſt, and the poor men the pooreſt, in all the world.*

The people generally are grave, reſpective, and ingenious Excellent men (ſaid once an *Hiſpanioliſed Italian*) but for theſe three things; that is to ſay, in their luſts they are unnatural, in their malice unappeaſable, in their actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaſpheme rather than ſwear, and murder a man ſooner then ſlander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of ſome particulars: it being obſerved by moderate and impartial men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and moſt deſirous by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In apparel they are ſaid to be very modeſt, in the furniture of their houſes ſumptuous, at their Tables neat, ſober of ſpeech, enemies of all ill reports of others; and of their own reputation ſo exceeding tender, that whoſoever ſlandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is ſure to die for it. Of money and expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more coſt, than he is ſure to ſave by, or receive great thanks for: but otherwiſe for civil carriage and behaviour, ſurpaſſing all the Gentry of the World beſides. Only in ſtrictneſs to their wives they exceed all reaſon, of whom they are ſo extremely jealous, that they ſhut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of diſcourſe with few or none. The lock uſed by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be aſſured of his wives chaſtity in the time of his abſence, is ſo known a ſtory, that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humor in moſt Southern Nations, we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially ſpoken of the women of *Italie*, the husbands have more reaſon for this ſtrict reſtraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the moſt part witty in ſpeech, and

modeſt

modeſt in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is ſaid of them in the way of proverb, that *they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the houſe, Angels in the ſtreets*, and *Sirens in the windows*, not wanting on this ground to ſet out themſelves with all advantages of Art, there being few amongſt them who uſe not *painting*, and other the ſophiſtical helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a ſaying, that, *if God make them tall and fat*, (for the title of a *goodly woman* is much prized among them) *they will make themſelves fair.*

The language of both Sexes is very Courtly and fluent, all of them ſpeaking the *Courtezan*, or Court language; notwithſtanding the diverſity of Dialects which is amongſt them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millaneſe* and the *Roman*, the *Neopolitan* and the *Genoeſe*; yet it is hard to be diſcerned by the tone or pronunciation, what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is beſt ſpoken in the great Dukes Countrey, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* eſpecially; in which City *Guicciardine* the *Hiſtorian*, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Maſters of the *Italian* language, did live and flouriſh in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms, *Italie* hath afforded many ſince the fall of the Empire, *viz.* *Æneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the ſecond; 2. *Marſilius Patavinus*, a ſtout defender of the Imperial Rights; 3. *Petrarch*, a *Roman* born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Reſtorer of polite Literature in *Italie*; 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; and 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Aſtrologer; 8. *Arioſto*, and 9. *Taſſo*, the moſt renowned Poets of their times, and the later never followed ſince; 10. *Sixtus Senenſis*, one of the beſt Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmine*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttreſſes and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Armes, 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the firſt Reſtorer of the honour of the Italian Souldiery; 2. *Forti-Bracchio*, and 3. *Nicolao Picinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry; 4, 5. *Sforza* the father, and the ſon; of which the ſon attained by his valour to the Dukedom of *Millain*: 6. *Chriſtopher Columbus*, a *Genoeſe*; *Americus Veſputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebaſtian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Diſcoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D' Oria*, Admiral of the Navie to *Charles* the fifth; and 10. *Ambroſe Spinola* (both *Genoeſe*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*: Which laſt being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as iſſued from a Race of Merchants (though otherwiſe of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and ſudden Anſwer, that *he thought it a greater honour to him, being a* Merchant, *to have the command of ſo many* Princes; *than it could be unto the other, though a* Prince *by birth, to be under the command of ſo many* Merchants.

The uſual Diviſion of *Italie* is into ſix parts, 1. *Lombardie*, 2. *Tuſcanie*, 3. the Land of the *Church*, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is paſſed this Cenſure according to the principal Cities, *i. e. Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for beauty, *Genoa* for ſtatelineſs, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for riches. But take it as it ſtands at the preſent time, and

Italie is beſt divided into
- The Knigdoms of { *Naples.* *Sicilie.* *Sardinia.* }
- The Land or Patrimony of the *Church.*
- The great Dukedoms of { *Urbin.* *Tuſcanie.* }
- The Common-wealths of { *Venice.* *Genoa.* *Luca.* }
- The Eſtates of *Lombardie*, *i. e.*
  - The Dukedome of { *Millain.* *Mantua.* *Modena.* *Parma.* *Montferrat.* }
  - The Principality of *Piemont.*

The Kingdome of NAPLES.

THe Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all ſides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, excepting where it joyneth on the Weſt to the *Lands of the Church*: from which ſeparated by a line drawn from the mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which accompt it taketh up all the Eaſt of *Italie*; the compaſs of it being reckoned at 1468. miles.

It hath been called ſometimes the Realm of *Pouille*, from *Pouille* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the firſt poſſeſſion of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdome) in theſe parts of *Italie*: but called moſt commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this ſide of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Iſle of *Sicil*, lying on the other ſide of the *Phare* or Strait of *Meſſana*. The reaſon of which improper appellation proceeded from *Roger* the firſt King hereof, who being alſo Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary reſidence; when he obtained the favour to be made a King, deſired (in honour of the place where he moſt reſided) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient name of the Kingdome, the name or title of King of *Naples*

not

not coming into use till the *French* were dispossessed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdome, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdome of *Naples*; and by some of the *Italian* Writers, the *Kingdome* only. *Naples.*

This is esteemed to be the most fertile place in all *Italie*, abounding in all things necessary for the life of man, and in such also as conduce to delight and Physick; *viz.* Many Springs, and Medicinall waters, Baths of divers vertues, sundry Physical herbs. It hath also an excellent breed of Horses, which may not be transported but by the leave of the King, or at least the *Vice-roy*; great store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choicest Wines, called anciently *Vina Massica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mentioned by the *Poets*. And as for Merchandise, to *Alexandria* they send Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wine, and to *Venice* Oyl, &c.

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live of all men the most careless and contented lives; and like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder stories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marquesses, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and those not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their several Countreys; insomuch that the yearly income of the Prince of *Bisignan* is said to be an hundred thousand Crowns, one year with the other; the Princes of *Salerne*, and St. *Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to serve the King in his Wars, which gives them many priviledges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the abler to assist the King, upon any forein invasion; so are they in condition also of raising and countenancing such defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as sorted best with their ambitious and particular interesses. For not alone the *Nobles*, but in general as many of the common people as can be spared from husbandry; are more addicted to the Wars than they are to Merchandise: The *Nobles* in pursuit of honour, and the *Paisant* out of desire of being in action; so that the greatest part of the Forces which serve the *Spaniard* in the *Low Countreys*, are sent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the highest to the lowest, of going bravely in Apparel, serves exceeding fitly. An humour which is so predominant in both sexes, that though the *Paisant* lives all the rest of the week in as great servility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundaies* and *Saint-daies*, he will be sure to have a good Suit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, she that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be so pranked up on the Sundaies and other Festivals, or when she is to shew her self in some publick place; that one who did not know the humour, might easily mistake her, for some noble Lady.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1 *Sybaris*, 2 *Basentus*, 3 *Pescara*, 4 *Trontus*, 5 *Aufidus*, 6 *Salinellus*, 7 *Vomanus*, 8 *Salinus*, and 9 *Gariglian*. The most famous of which, are *Aufidus* and *Gariglian*. The first as being the only River of *Italie*, which rising South side of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great battel fought on the banks thereof, called the battell of *Cannæ*, of which more hereafter. The other no lesse famous for those many battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniard*, for the Kingdome of *Naples*: especially that famous Battel between the Marquesse of *Saluzzes*, General of the *French*, and *Gonsalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loss of which Victory by the *French*, was the absolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being banished his Countrey at the comming of King *Charles* the 8. into *Italie*, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loss of the day, took ship with others, to fly to *Cajeta*; but over-charging the vessel, she sunk and drowned them all. But most famous is it, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himself stark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had not layen long, but *Sylla*'s Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off. These men, to please *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the vertue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again, crying, he could not kill *C. Marius*. This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoyning.

It is divided into the Provinces of 1 *Terra di Lavoro*, 2 *Abruzzo*, 3 *Puglia* or *Apulia*, 4 *Terra de Otranto*, 5 *Calabria Superior*, 6 *Calabra Inferior*, and 7 the Isles of *Naples*. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoyning to them, which we shall meet withall as they come in our way.

TERRA DI LAVORO is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which separated by the *Apennine* Hils; on the East with the River *Silarus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Sea; and on the West with *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*; from which divided by the River *Gariglian*, called in old times *Liris*. Called anciently *Campania Felix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the seat or dwelling of the *Campans*; by some modern *Latinists* named *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campagna di Roma*, or *Campania Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continuall labour of the Husbandman in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof; but neither the reason, nor the name so new, as some men suppose. But I am sure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth these parts sometime by the name of *Laboriæ*, sometimes of *Campus Laborinus*; and gives this reason of the name, *quòd ingens in eo colendo sit labor*, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Countrey so exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Historian it is called

led *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may see large and beautiful fields overshaded with rich Vines, thick and delightfull Woods, sweet Fountains, and most wholsome Springs of running waters; useful as well for the restoring of mans health, as delight and pleasure: and in a word, whatsoever a covetous minde can possibly aim at, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1 *Cajeta*, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought by *Strabo*, to have took the name; the word in the *Laconian* language signifying crooked. Others will have it so called from Καίω, *Uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Æneas* by the *Trojan* Ladies; for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extremely tossed in their former voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furthest coasts of *Sicil*, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of *Italie*, I can see no reason, and therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the nurse of *Æneas*; in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Æneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib.* 7.

Tu quoque Littoribus nostris, Æneia nutrix,
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, dedisti.

That is to say,

Æneas Nurse, *Cajeta*, by her death,
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequence; and of so special importance for the estate of this Kingdome, that (as *Comineus* hath observed) if King *Charles* the 8. had but only fortified it, and the Castle of *Naples*; the Realm had never been lost. 2. *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdome, a beautiful City, containing seven miles in compass. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things, here is an Hospital, the revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns, wherewith, besides other good deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdome, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the disease called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was first known in *Christendome*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with four strong Castles, *viz.* 1 Castle *Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was; 2 *Ermo*; 3 Castle *del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egge, and 4 Castle *Novo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art; the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they serve on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended yeeld a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the seat of the *Vice-roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of most of the great men of the Realm; which makes the private buildings to be very graceful, and the publick stately. And yet it had increased much more in buildings, than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it special by Edict. And this he did, partly at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not laid upon them, their vassals would forsake the Countrey to inhabit here, so to enjoy the priviledges and exemptions of the Regal City: but principally upon jealousie and point of State, the better to prevent all revolts and mutinies, which in most populous Cities are of greatest danger. 3 *Capua*, once the head of the *Campans*, seated in a delicious and luxurious soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the seat of the Empire; the other two being *Carthage*, and *Corinth*. Being distressed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to cast themselves into the Armes of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Lawes, as a Free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject-State. Which freedome they enjoyed, till after their revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their obedience by force of Armes, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly scaped its fatal and final ruine: drawing the whole nation of the *Campans*, with divers lesser States, which depended on them, into bondage with it, *A. V. C.* 542. *Appius* and *Flaccus* being Consuls. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Cannæ*; whence came the saying, *Capuam esse* Cannas *Annibali*. 4. *Cuma*, a City once of great power and beauty, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*; after which it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the stink whereof is said to have poysoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Æneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghosts, to talk with his Father. 5 *Nola*, where *Marcellus* discomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible. 6 *Puteoli*, a small Town standing on a Creek of the Sea, just opposite to *Baiæ*, on the the other side of it; from which distant about three miles and an half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, composed of sundry vessels joyned together in such sort, that there was not only fair and large passage over it, but victualling houses on both sides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made subject to him. And this he did (as himself afterwards affirmed to some of his friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and

Darius,

Campania

Darius, mentioned in the ancient Writers; as also to terrifie the *Britains* and the *German* Nations, with the report of such a notable exploit; or (as some thought) to fulfil the Propheſie of one *Thraſibulus* a fortune-teller of those time, who had been often heard to say in the lifetime of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predeceſſor) that it was as impoſſible for *Caius* to ſucceed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on horſeback from *Baul* to *Puteoli*. 7 Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, ſtands the City of *Baiæ* (whereof *Baul* before mentioned is a part) ſo called, as they ſay, from *Baius* one of the companions of *Ulyſſes* in his Navigations. A City in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire of five miles in length, and two in breadth; ſo wonderfully endued by nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the world was thought comparable to it:

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis *prælucet amœnis.*

Few places in the world there are
With pleaſant *Baiæ* to compare. As it is in *Horace*.

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitudes of *Baths*, or *Bannias*, Imperial Palaces, ſtately buildings, and the adjoyning Manor-houſes of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleaſures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and ſenſible a monument of the laſciviouſneſs and luxury of that proſperous people, of which the *Ambubaiæ* mentioned in the *Satyriſt* is ſufficient proof; (though ſome fetch the *Etymologie* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*, a *Syrian* word ſignifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latines* give this name to their Minſtrels) now ſo demoliſhed by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered ruines. 8 *Miſenus*, ſeated near a great hill or *Promontory* of the ſame name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious harbour; where *Auguſtus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman* Empire. But theſe were places of renown in the former times, all which, exepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it ſelf) *Seſſa*, the *Sinueſſa* or *Suiſſa* of the ancients, and now the title of a Dukedome to the houſe of *Cordova* in *Spain* derived from *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2 *Averſa*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence, ſecond to few in all the Kingdome; but forced to yeeld (though the Earl of *Monpenſier* then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles* the 8. were in perſon in it) to the good fortune of *Gonſalvo*, ſpoken of before: the whole Kingdome following after. 3 *Ceano*, 4 *Salvi*, 5 *Venafre*, and 6 *Caſerte*, with others, to the number of 22, beſides 166 Caſtles or defenſible places. Here is alſo in this Tract the Hils called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal* that great Maſter in the Art of War, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the ſtratagem of two thouſand Oxen, carrying fire in their horns; by which device he freed himſelf out of thoſe difficult *Straights*, in which he was at that preſent. And in this Countrey there is alſo the Hill *Veſuvius*, that caſteth out flames of fire, the ſmoke of which ſtifled *Plinie ſenior*, coveting to ſearch the cauſe of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly alſo during the reign of *Titus*, caſting out not only ſuch ſtore of ſmoke, that the very Sun ſeemed to be in the *Eclipſe*, but alſo huge ſtones: and of aſhes ſuch plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italie*, were overwhelmed with them. There were heard diſmal noiſes all about the Province; and Giants of incredible bigneſs ſeen to ſtalk up and down, about the top and edges of the mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cauſe, or preſage of the future Peſtilence, which raged in *Rome* and *Italie* long after.

On the Eaſt ſide of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was eſteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonſo* King of *Naples* cauſed to be called the *Principate*; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Baſilicate*; from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends in length 33 miles, and 16 in breadth: and was of old the ſeat of the *Picentini*, a colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principal places of it, 1 *Maſſa*, by the *Italians* called *Marſo*, of more note for the Hils adjoyning, than any great beauty or antiquiuy it hath in it ſelf. Thoſe hils now called *Monte Marſo*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Maſſici*; of ſpecial eſtimation for the rich Wines, called *Vina Maſſica*. 2 *Nuceria*, nine miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious ſoyl. 3 *Rivelli*, a City not long ſince built, which for the elegancy of the buildings hardly yeelds to *Naples*. 4 *Malſi*, or *Amalphi*, an Arch-biſhops See, in which it is ſuppoſed that the Mariners Compaſs was firſt found out. It is ſituate on the Sea ſide, and giveth name to the coaſt of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hils or Mountains of ſo great an height, that to look down into the Valleys or the Sea adjoyning, makes men ſick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing elſe to commend it to our obſervation) for the finding out of the *Mariners Compaſs* (as before is ſaid) deviſed and contrived here about the year 1300, by one *John Flavio*, a native or inhabitant of it. 5 *Salern*, about a mile from the Sea, the title of the Prince of *Salern*, and an Univerſity, but chiefly for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to K. *Henry* the 8. as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the year 1313) muſt needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* the firſt, or King *Edward* the firſt, who in their journeys towards the *Holy Land*, might beſtow a viſit on this place, and give ſome honourary incouragement to the Students of it. Beſides theſe there are ſaid to be in this ſmall Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Caſtles or walled places; but theſe the principal.

II. *North* of *Campania*, lyeth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the *Eaſt* with

Puglia,

Abruzzo. *Puglia*, or *Apulia*; on the *West*, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the *North*, with the *Adriatick* Sea; and on the South, with the *Appennine*. It is called *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, but the Reason of the name not agreed upon: divided anciently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites*: the *Picentes* taking up those parts which lay next the *Adriatick*; the rest (being far the greater part) was possessed by the *Samnites*. These last (for of the others we shall speak elsewhere) a people which held longer wars with the state of *Rome*, than almost all *Italie* besides; as keeping them in continual action for the space of 70 years together, besides many after-claps. In which long course of Wars, the *Romans* were so hardly put to their shifts, that they were four times fain to have recourse to the last refuge; which was the choosing of *Dictators*; and yet came off so often with success and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty Triumphs. But these *Samnites*, as they were a potent, so they were also a compound Nation; consisting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Præcatini*, *Vestini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites* properly so called; into which name the rest of the inferiour Tribes were after swallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their name; which in the conclusion of the War was so defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Consul, *ut hodie* Samnium *in ipso* Samnio *requiratur*; that not improperly (saith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Samnium* stood, even in the middle of the City. Which hapned *A. V. C.* 481.

The River of *Pescara* runneth through the midst of it, and divideth it into two parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Castles, or walled places; the other, 184 Castles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates*, and the Countrey of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2 *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we finde in *Pliny*, because the Winds hereabouts were so fierce and violent, that men could not sit upon their horses; but had at last that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleasant Plains and spacious Valleys which lye round about it; in like manner as the Countrey of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvoy*, into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedomes which the *Lombards* erected, when they first came into *Italie*, for the better assuring of their Conquest; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* the ninth to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the said Emperor was born; and is still under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 3 *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, King of *Naples*, to assure the Realm upon that Quarter. 4 *Lanciano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much resorted to by Merchants at her Annual Marts. 5 *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciano*. 6 *Teranum*, or *Teran* (*Ptolemy* cals it *Inter-amna*) anciently the *Metropolis* of the *Precatini*. 7 *Citta di Chieti*, situate on a Hill some seven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8. *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great School-man, who first brought the scattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here stood also 9 the old Town *Corfinium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Ænobarbus* against *Julius Cæsar*, in his first following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And seven miles hence, 10 *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himself testifieth,

Sulmo *mihi Patria est, gelidis uberrimus undis,*
Millia qui novies distat ab Urbe, *decem.*

Full of cool streams *Sulmo*, my native land,
From the great City ninety miles doth stand.

There belongeth also to *Abruzzo* the Countrey of *Molisi*, in which are 104 walled places or Castles, and four considerable Towns; the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Bishops See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans* by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum* to difference it from another in this Tract of the same name, which he cals *Bovianum vetus*. 2 *Luparetha*, of which little memorable. In this Countrey also (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the straights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their confederates had so inclosed the *Romans*, that there was no possibility to escape, they sent to *Herennius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wisdome much followed by them, to know what they should do with the captive Enemy. Word was returned, that they should send them home safe, and without dishonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the state of the business, they sent to him again, and he advised, that they should put them all to the sword. These contrary answers made them judge amiss of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they spoyled the *Romans*, and disarmed them, and despightfully used them, and so sent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of so rash an action; but much more the destruction of his Countrey, as a consequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a safe and honourable deliverance from the present danger, they had made them their friends for many Ages; or had they put unto the sword so many of their Souldiers and chief Commanders, they had disabled them for long time from pursuing the War: The middle which they had taken, would be their undoing; and so accordingly it proved For the *Romans* not being made their Friends by so odious a benefit, but hatching revenge for the disgrace, soon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* subdued the Countrey, and handled the poor conquered people with the like despight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and those in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which must be, *either not to strike at all, or to strike home and to the purpose*. *Nic. Machiavil* in his *Florentine* History taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Solœcism* in point of State, in that hating *Cosmo*

de

de Medices, and desiring to remove him from the publick managery of affairs, he thought it was sufficient to procure his Banishment: which *Cosmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better coyn. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aphorism*, that *Great Persons must not at all be touched, or if they be, must be made sure from taking Revenge.* Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any supreme Governors, the use of *Mercy*. I know it is the richest Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the use of that excellent vertue. Only I shall observe what usage hath been commonly afforded towards such persons after their *Delinquencies*; whose liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The first is present Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the saying is: a course more to be allowed of where it cannot, than commended where it may be spared. The second is either close imprisonment under trusty Guards, or else confinement to the house and custody of some trusty Statesman: in which great caution also is to be observed. For besides that nothing is more ordinary than the escape of great Prisoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers; We find in our own Histories, how Dr. *Morton* Bishop of *Ely*, being committed to the Duke of *Buckingham* by King *Richard* the 3. not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The last, which is in all times the gentlest, and in some cases the safest, is not only an absolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty; but an endearing of the party *delinquent*, by giving him some place of honour, or committing unto his fidelity some office of trust; it being the nature of most men, that where they are not trusted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under suspect and jealousies, they will be apt to entertain some thoughts of their lost condition. And of this kinde of dealing with a person *Delinquent*, we have a pregnant instance in the Emperor *Otho*: who not only pardoned *Marius Celsus* one of *Galba*'s faction, and a chief one too; but put him in place nearest to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War against *Vitellius*. His reason was, *Ne hostis metum Reconciliationis adhiberet*, lest lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but badly made up. And on the other side, *Marius Celsus* proved so sensible of the obligation, that he continued faithfull to him to the very last; and lost his life in the pursuance of his quarrel: shewing thereby, that persons of a generous and noble disposition, are more obliged by favours, than restrained by terrour. But it is now time I should free my self of these *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and sport my self a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

Apulia.

But I must note, before I take my leave hereof, that these two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greatest, richest, and best peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdome was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority, both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to these two for wealth and greatness, and were assigned over to the *Spaniard*, as lying most conveniently for the Realm of *Sicilie*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the West, with *Abruzzo*; on the East, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Countrey called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians*, and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Countrey containeth in it besides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note. The most considerable of which we shall meet withall in our *Chorographie* of the several parts, divided anciently by *Ptolemie*, and since him, by *Leander*, into *Apulia Daunia*, and *Apulia Peucetia*: the former subdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille the Plain*; the later into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it self) did sometimes pass in the accompt of *Apulia*; seems to me most probable in that all the East parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names then those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: and by no other names then those were assigned over unto *Otho* the 2. of *Germany*, on his mariage with *Theophania*, Neece to one of those Emperors. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather then to *Calabria*, first, in regard that the old inhabitants were the same in both; the *Iapyges*, *Messapians* and *Salentini*, possessing promiscuously all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Daunia*, to the Promontory called *Iapygium* in the most Eastern angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And secondly, in regard that the people of both, have a disease peculiar only to themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent called a Tarantula, not curable but by musick only. This said, we will proceed in our Survey of the parts. And first,

APULIA DAVNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted, by the River *Phiternus* (now called *Fortore*) and so extending East-wards to the River *Ausidus* (*Lofanto*, the *Italians* call it) where it meets with *Peucetia*. The reason of the name is not yet agreed on. But I finde no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Daunus*, the son of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Countrey; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perseus* whom she had by *Jupiter*, was by his Father the King *Acrisius*, exposed to the mercy of the Seas; by which she was waited with her young son to the coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became so enamoured of her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Daunus*. But *Daunus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or composition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*: who at the end of the *Tojan* War, wherein he was a principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous courses of his Wife *Ægiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and so came with his people to this Countrey; where he fixt his dwelling, and built the City of *Argirypa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Daunus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Countrey, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief or head of the *Rutuli*,

Apulia. *tuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief ſeat at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italie*; betwixt whom, and *Turnus* the ſon of this *Daunus*, grew that deadly ſewd, ſo celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Leſina*, ſo called from a City of that name adjoyning to it, made of the waters of *Phiternus* and ſome other Rivers, which there loſe themſelves; in compaſs 40 miles, and well ſtored with fiſh: the Eeles hereof the largeſt that have been ſeen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable though not ſo great, it being ſaid hereof by *Pliny*, that the waters of it are neither diminiſhed by drawing, nor increaſed by Land-flouds. Here is alſo the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil* but now called S. *Angelo*, high, ſteep, and full of cragged rocks: 20 miles in compaſſe, but that extent diverſified into hils and moſt pleaſant vallies; well wooded, and well ſtored with waters: here being one Lake (beſides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, ſaid to be 30 miles in circuit. A place defenſible by nature, and ſo ſtrong by art, that it is commonly the laſt piece in the the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many years, after the *Normans* had poſſeſſed themſelves of the reſt of the Kingdome.

The whole divided by *Alfonſo* (in his new modelling of this Kingdome) into two parts, the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing called *Pouille* the *Plain*, from the condition of the ſoyl which is plain and level, not ſo much ſwelled with hils as the reſt of *Apulia*: for which cauſe called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italian*. Interjected betwixt which and *Abruzza*, lieth a ſmall Territory, by the ſaid King *Alfonſo* called the *CAPITANATE*, deſtitute both of Woods and Rivers, and conſequently not ſo populous as the reſt of this Province: well furniſhed notwithſtanding with all ſorts of grain, and ſtored with large and ſpacious paſtures, which breed ſuch infinite herds of Cattel, that the Tribute thence ariſing was valued at 80000 Crowns *per annum* in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckoned one of the beſt Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which Tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reaſon that on the diviſion which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (ſpoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open war, pretending that the Countrey appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a juſt occaſion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent nation, and more intent upon their work, to worm them by degrees out of all the Kingdom.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*, 1 *Luceria*, the *Nuceria* of *Ptolemie*, and the *Rudra* of *Suetonius*; as rich as it is ancient, and honoured with an Epiſcopal See. 2 *Aſcoli*, of old called *Aſculum*, and ſometimes *Aſculum Satrianum*, to difference it from another of that name in *Anconitana*; the ſtile and honour of a Duke. 3 *Troia*, a Dukes title alſo, built by the Eaſtern Emperors in a place of ſtrength and great advantage to reſtrain the inſolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infeſting this Countrey. Theſe three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part called *Pouille* the *Plain*. 4 *Sipontum*, once a *Roman* Colony and an Archbiſhops See, which honour it enjoyed till deſtroyed by the *Saracens*. 5 *Manfredonia*, founded near the place of the former, by *Manfred* the Baſtard, King of *Naples*, the better to aſſure theſe parts of his Kingdome. A ſtately and magnificent City, the Seat of the Archbiſhop of *Siponto*; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Caſtle for defence thereof. 6 *Salpe* of great antiquity, but not elſe obſervable. 7 *S. Severine* of a newer date, but more rich and populous. 8 As ancient and as famous as the beſt amongſt them the poor Village of *Canna*, ſituate near the mouth or influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis* Apuliæ *vicus*, as it is in *Florus*, but ſuch as afterwards grew more notable for the great defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus Æmilius* and *Terentius Varro* the *Roman* Conſuls, of whoſe Army he ſlew 42700 on the very place. Which victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly ſubverted the State of *Rome*: ſo that it was moſt tartly (as moſt truly) ſaid by *Maharbal* General of his Horſe, *Vincere ſcis* Annibal, *victoriâ uti neſcis*; that he knew better how to get, then to uſe his victory. 9 But of moſt note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town of *Argyripa*, or *Argyrippa* as ſome call it, founded by *Diomedes* in the skirts of Mount *S. Angelo* towards the Sea, and in that part of this Countrey which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Iapyges*. Of which thus *Virgil* in the 11. of the *Æneids*:

Ille urbem Argyripam, *patriæ de nomine Gentis*
Victor Gargani *condebat* Iapygis *arvis*.

And being Victor he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in the *Iapygian* fields,
And called it *Agyrippa*, by the name
Of ſome known place in the land from which he came.

By which we alſo may conclude, that it took this name with reference to ſome Town of *Etolia*, which was the native Countrey of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers, ſuppoſe it to have been firſt called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that name in *Peloponneſus*; and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam* yet theſe words of *Patriæ de nomine gentis*, do perſwade me otherwiſe. *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Countrey of *Argolis*, where that City ſtood; nor in the whole Demy-Iſland of *Peloponneſus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called alſo *Diomedia*, and *urbs Diomedis*, becauſe of his foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in this Countrey; but at the laſt it came to be called *Arpy*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs. Now no where to be found but in the ruines of time,

time, and the Records of Antiquity, unleſs it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy* whence *Niger* findeth it. *Terra di Otranto.*

APULIA PEUCETIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the Weſt, to the land of *Otranto* on the Eaſt. So called as ſome conceive from *Peucetius* the Brother of *Oenotrus*; which may be probable enough, this being the firſt Countrey at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came into *Italie* with his people. *Bochartus* a great Enemy of all Traditions, will have it called *Peucetia*, ἀπὸ τῆς πεύκης, for that great quantity of Pitch which theſe Countreys yeeld, as the word ſignifieth in the Greek. But whatſoever was the reaſon of the ancient name, that of the preſent is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barry*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Barri*, ſeated near the Sea, but without an Haven, but ſeated in ſo rich a ſoyl, and ſo well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. 2 *Barlette*, by the modern *Latiniſts* called *Barulum*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Canuſium*; an Haven Town, and of great importance, reckoned for one of the four ſtrong holds of *Italie*, in theſe latter Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardie*, *Prato* in *Tuſcanie*, and *Fabrianum* now called *Fabiano* in *Ancenitana*. 3 *Monopolis*, a Port-town alſo, not very large, but of a neat elegant building; new built, and the Title of a Marqueſs. 4 *Tranum*, an ancient City, and an Archbiſhops See, but at this time better built then peopled, by reaſon of ſome defects in the Harbour upon which it ſtandeth. Theſe three laſt together with *Manfredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when firſt invaded by the *French*) to the ſtate of *Venice*: but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, when poſſeſſed of that Kingdom. 5 *Bitonto*, an Archbiſhops See alſo, one of which was a notable ſtickler in the Councel of *Trent*. 6 *Polignano*, on a rocky hill, the Honourary title of a Marqueſs, and a See Epiſcopal. 7 *Molfette*, which gives title to a Prince, but not elſe conſiderable. 8 *Vigilia*, now called *Biſigli* a Biſhops See, ſituate near the *Adriatick* amongſt craggie rocks. 9 *Venſa*, a ſtrong piece and of great importance; one of the laſt Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles* the 8. The *Venuſium* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venuſinus*. Nothing conſiderable of theſe people in point of ſtory, but that confederating with *Tarentum* againſt the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Brutii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to ſubmit to the power of *Rome* at the end of that war, *A. V. C.* 481. *Papyrius Curſor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the ſecond time Conſuls.

IV. *TERRA DI OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eaſtern part of *Apulia Daunia*, unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a line drawn from *Brunduſium* to *Tarentum*, of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto* the chief Town hereof, the ſeat and habitation in the elder times of the *Salentinia*, the *Japiges*, and the *Meſapiani*, and is accordingly intituled in ancient Authors by the ſeveral names of *Japygia*, *Meſapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the laſt people of *Italie* which held out againſt *Rome*, and ſunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whoſe Fate they did depend, *Anno V. C.* 487. *Junius Pera* and *Fabius Pictor*, the two Conſuls then triumphing for it. Of theſe three Nations the *Japyges* were of greateſt Fame or of greateſt Infamy. *Cretans* originally ſent in queſt of *Glaucus* the ſon of *Minos*, whom when they could not finde, and durſt not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling, *Japyx* the ſon of *Dedalus*, being their Captain, and conductor, and from him denominated. Growing into eſtate and power, they became not only ſo luxurious in their courſe of life, and effeminate in their dreſs and habit, that they were a ſcorn and ſcandal to the neighbour nations; but ſo regardleſs of their gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and deſtroyed their Temples: puniſhed at laſt for theſe high inſolencies by balls of fire falling on them from the heavens, with which the whole ſtock of them were almoſt extirpated. The Promontory called *Japygium*; being the extreme point of this Countrey towards *Greece*, now better known by the name of the *Cape* of St. *Mary* did take name from this people; and from thence the North-weſt wind (or the Weſt-north-weſt) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this coaſt, had the name of *Japyx*; occurring by that name in the 8. of *Eneids*, and in *Horace*, *Carm. l.* 1. *ode.* 4.

But to proceed, this Countrey is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, ſaving where it joyneth to *Apulia* by an *Iſthmus* of about 30 miles in bredth; reaching from *Brunduſium* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulfe or Bay thence named in the *Ionian* Sea. And is from land to land, as you go by water, about 200 miles in compaſs. The ſoyl hereof is very fruitfull if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oyl, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other commodities of good price; for which they never want the company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endangered by *Graſhoppers*, which commonly devour all whereſoever they come, and would in one night conſume whole fields of ſtanding corn, if divine Providence by ſending the birds called *Gaines* amongſt them, did not provide a remedy for ſo great a miſchief. The greateſt defect hereof is the want of waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Siticuloſa Apulia*, ſpoken of by *Horace*; which notwithſtanding they have very rich paſtures. The people are conceived to be the ſimpleſt or moſt void of craft, of any in *Italie*; perhaps becauſe they have ſo little commerce with their own Countreymen, and ſo much with ſtrangers.

The chief Towns are, 1 *Lecci*, *Aletium* in Latine, a rich Town well built, and very well peopled. 2 *Caſtro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by Art or nature, which hath made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3 *Gallipolis*, a Town built on ſo craggie a rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4 *Brunduſium*, the head town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the moſt capacious Haven of all the world; from whence there was continual paſſage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the reſt of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ſhip to flie from *Cæſar*, and *Cæſar* took ſhipping alſo to purſue after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was affraid of the ſtorm, he cryed out, *Cæſarem vehis &*

Calabria. *fortunam ejus.* It was first bult by the *Aetoliant*, under the conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Brontesion*, which in the *Messapian* Tongue signifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much resembleth: from whence the *Latines* gave it the name of *Brondusium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being so choked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very antient Town, and yet still reasonably well peopled, having a strong Castle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious Port for Traffique; the principal at the present of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latinists*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of such importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *An.* 1481. put all *Italy* into such a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned. Not well inhabited again till the expulsion of the *Turks* in the year next following.

Passe we on next to the two *Calabrias*, so called from the *Calabri* an antient people of this Tract, inhabiting that part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Grecia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with part of the Countrey of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern side of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperours being possessed of these parts of *Italy*, when the more Western parts thereof were under the *Gothes* and *Lombards*, extended the name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Messana*, taking the County of the *Brutii*, now *Calabria Inferior*, into the accompt: and making but two Provinces of their whole Estate which was left in this Continent by the names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which *Apulia* contained all the Countrey on the coast of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme point or Promontory in the land of *Otranto*, called antiently *Iapygium*, now the Cape of St. *Mary*; *Calabria*, all the rest of these parts of *Italy*, which lie between the *Tuscane* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the antient *Calabria* was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3 *de Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old *Ennius* his Garden tills
Among the steep *Calabrian* Hills.

Now called the *Basilicate*, and reckoned as a member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving these matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Countrey as it standeth at the present; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which distinct capacities we shall look upon it. Premising only by the way, that this Countrey is the title of the eldest Sonne of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was subjected to these Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whose daughter *Flora* was marryed unto *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, being King hereof, *An.* 1098.

IV. *CALABRIA SUPERIOR*, called formerly *Magna Grecia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the East the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the West *Lucania*, from which it is divided by the *Apennine* and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillaci*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principall Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcastro*, eight miles from the Sea, where once stood *Petilia*. 2. *Besignan*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Castle, and endowed with the best Revenues of any principality or other Noble-man of Title in all the Kingdome. 3. *Macera*, an Arch-bishops See, a rich Town, and well peopled. 4. *Rosanum*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitfull and pleasont Soil. 5. *Altavilla*, which gives title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the title of Duke to *Gonsalvo Fernandes de Cordova*, commonly called *the great Captain*, as a reward of his signall service in the conquest of the Realm of *Naples*: and still enjoyed (together with the title of Duke of *Sessa*) by the house of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the Greeks in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Zaleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the losse of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Sonne, as the first offender. Therefore to shew the love of a Father, and the sincerity of a Judge, he put out one of his Sonnes eyes, and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws that no woman should be attended in the street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; that she should not go abroad at night, but when she went to play the Harlot; that she should not wear gold or embroidered apparell, but when she meant to set her self to open sale; and that men should not wear Rings and Tissues, but when they went about the prostituting of some woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were restrained from all extraordinary trains of Attendants, and excesse of Apparell; the common consequents of a long and prosperous tranquillity. It was also famous in old times for the victory which *Eunomus* an excellent *Musician* obtained against *Aristonus* of *Rhegium*, another of the same profession. For though *Aristonus* had made his prayers unto *Apollo* the God of *Musick* for his good successe; yet *Eunomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against him in that contention, which had made all the Grashoppers mute on that side of the water. And so accordingly it hapned. For when the day appointed came, *Eunomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harpstrings, even in the middle of his Musick; when presently a *Grashopper* leaped upon his Harp, and supplyed most melodiously the place of the broken string; and by that means obtained the victory to *Eunomus*. An accident not unworthy of the Muse of *Strada*, in his personating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I

bind

bind not any man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo*'s telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one ſide of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the Graſhoppers do merrily ſing; but on the other ſide, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always ſilent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no leſs note, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; firſt built by the *Spartans*: the people whereof having a great command on the Countrey adjoyning, were one of the laſt *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis poſt* Tarentinos *auderet*? For who durſt ſtir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquiſhed? ſaith the Hiſtorian. For in the ruine of this Eſtate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Brutii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, *A. V. C.* 578. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* war ſome nine years before) were either a free people, or in a kind of ſubjection to this mighty City; but never felt the force of the *Roman* puiſſance. So that the war began but *A. V. C.* 472. and ended in the totall ſubjection of theſe ſeverall Nations, *An.* 481. *Papyrius Curſor*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the ſecond time Conſuls, as before was ſaid. In defence of this people did *Pyrrhus* war againſt the *Romans*; the hopes of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loſſe of *Capua*; and finally here lived *Archytas* ſo famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotona*, the Inhabitants whereof were once ſo active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a battell againſt the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thouſand of them and their Confederates, were vanquiſhed by fifteen thouſand of the enemy. 4. *Amycle*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoreans*, who having been often terrified with a falſe report of the approach of their Enemies, publiſhed a Law prohibiting all ſuch reports. By which means, their Enemies coming unawares poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Hence grew the proverb, *Amyclos ſilentium perdidit*; and hence that notable ſaying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be ſilent, returned this Anſwer: *Mihi neceſſe eſt loqui, ſcio enim* Amyclos *ſilentio periiſſe*. 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Grecians* after the deſtruction of *Troy*; the people whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could Arme 30000 men. A people ſo effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no not ſo much as a cock to live amongſt them, becauſe they would not have their ſleeps diſturbed: but the Fidlers, and Muſitians were in high requeſt, (which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in hoſtility) they entred the Town in the habit of Muſitians, and ſo maſtered it. Before which accident there had been a Propheſie, that the Town ſhould never be taken, till men were more eſteemed then the Gods themſelves. It hapned that a ſlave being grievouſly beaten by his Maſter, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods ſake, upon whom he called, fled to the monument of ſome of his Maſters Anceſtors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philoſopher, he forſook the Town, moſt men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave ſo delicate a ſeat: whence came the Proverb, *Amyris inſanit*, applyed to ſuch as under the pretence of madneſſe or folly do provide for their ſafety. *Calabria.*

VI. *CALABRIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the North with *Calabria ſuperior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Meſſana*; on the Weſt with that part of *Campania* which is called the Principate: and on the Eaſt with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was antiently the habitation of the *Brutii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*; and their Countrey *Bretania*; upon which ground, ſome of our modern Criticks (envying ſo great an honour to the Iſle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Conſtantine*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Emperour. Theſe *Brutii* being firſt conquered by the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Cannæ*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had ſhut up in this corner. A Countrey not much ſhort in fruitfulneſſe of the reſt of the Kingdome; and having the advantage of ſo much Sea, is the better ſituate for Trafique. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Ptolemy*, *Leuco Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, eſpecially in the moneth of *May*, are taken great ſtore of *Tunnies* (a fiſh which much reſembleth mans fleſh) which being barrelled up are ſold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers alſo of a very ſtrange nature; of which the one calleth *Crathis*, makes a mans hair yellow, and dyeth ſilke white; the other named *Buſentus*, cauſeth both hair and ſilk to be black and ſwarthy.

The principall Cities of it are, 1. *Conſentia*, an antient Town, comprehending ſeven little Hills, and a Caſtle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and the Countrey adjoyning. It is built betwixt the ſaid two Rivers, and is ſtill reaſonably rich, though not ſo wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea-ſhore, oppoſite to *Meſſana* in the Iſle of *Sicily*, which is ſuppoſed to have been broken off from the reſt of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word ῥηγνύω, which ſignifieth to break off, or to tear aſunder. A Town in former times very well traded, but left deſolate in a manner ſince the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Caſtrovillare*, ſeated upon the top of a very high Mountain. 4. *Belmont*, and 5 *Altamont*, two very fair Towns, whoſe names ſufficiently expreſſe their pleaſant and lofty ſituations. 6. St. *Euphemie*, from whence the Bay which antiently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lametirius*, is now called *Golfo de* St. *Euphemie*. 7. *Nichaſtro*, three miles from the ſea, the ſame with *New-caſtle* in *Engliſh*.

On the Weſt ſide of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, ſtandeth that mountainous Countrey, which in the ſubdiviſion of theſe Provinces by King *Alfonſus*, was called the *BASILICATE*; antiently the ſeat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latiniſts*. Divided from the *Principate*, or Weſt parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Countrey heretofore very unſafe for Travellers, by reaſon of the difficult wayes, and aſſured company of Theeves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it 93 walled

Naples.

places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, *Poſiidonia*, or *Peſt*, a City ſituate in ſo clement and benign a ſoyl, that Roſes grow there thrice a year. 2 *Polycaſtro*, on the Sea-ſhore, as the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedome. And 3 *Dian*, or *Diunam*, a more midſand City, neer which there is a Valley 20 miles in length, and four miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulneſs, yeelds to none in *Naples*.

VII. The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Illands of *Diomedes*, right againſt *Apulia*, where it encountereth with *Abruzzo*: ſo called from *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was ſo great a ſtickler) ſetled himſelf in ſome part of *Apulia*; the principall whereof are, St. *Maries*, St. *Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2 The Iſland of *Acates*, over againſt the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3 St. *Andrews*, in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4 And finally the two Illands of *Dioſcoros* and *Calypſo*, over againſt the Cape of *Lacinia*, now called *Colonnes*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Iſlands of *Pontia* and *Panditaria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; ſave that the laſt is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the wife of *Germanicus*, and mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperour *Tiberius Nero*.

Thoſe in the *Gulf* or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are 1 *Iſchia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as alſo with Allom, Sulphur, and moſt excellent Fruits. It is in compaſſe 18 miles, and ſo begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is acceſſible at one entrance only; and that too fortified with a ſtrong and impregnable Citadell: and therefore choſen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of refuge, when he was outed of his Kingdome by *Charles* the 8. Here is alſo good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2. *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about ſix miles in circuit, wherein are very wholſome Bathes, good ſtore of Conies, Hares, and Pheaſants; the ſhore repleniſhed with Fiſh, and the land with Fountains. *John de Prochita*, who plotted the *Sicilian Veſpers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that ſervice, made *Vice-roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdome of *Spain*. 3. *Capreæ*, a ſmall rocky Iſland, having no Haven, nor convenient ſtation for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air; much beautified by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, in regard that an old ſapleſſe tree upon his caſual landing here, did bud forth afreſh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much diſhonoured by *Tiberius* his next Succeſſor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and moſt filthy Luſts. It hath a little City of the ſame name, having a ſtrong Fortreſſe, and a Biſhops See; and another Town called *Anacapræ*, inhabited by Fiſhermen, and Ship-wrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Iſland they uſed to confine offenders in former times, and ſometimes alſo at this day. 4. *Ænaria*, a ſmall Iſland given by *Auguſtus* to the *Neapolitans*, in exchange for *Capreæ*, whoſe before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have ſuffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdome. For being at the firſt a mixture of ſeverall Nations, ſome of them preyed upon the others, till they were all ſubdued (as hath been ſhewn before) by the power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes, they followed for the moſt part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was ſubdued by the *Gothes*, it became ſubject to that people, as *Sicil*, and the reſt of thoſe Iſlands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the *Greek* Emperours having conquered from the *Gothes* with the reſt of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themſelves. In the diviſion of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, theſe two laſt Provinces only were aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, the reſt to *Charles*, and his Succeſſors: both outed of their ſeverall parts by the prevailing *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Sabba*, and other ſucceſſive Generalls. Theſe partly diſpoſſeſſed by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, and his *Almain* forces; challenging a right herein, as King of *Italy*; that right confirmed and enlarged by the marriage of *Otho* the 2d. with *Theophania*, Neece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eaſtern Emperour, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower or Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, joyning together againſt them as a common Enemy; who afterwards held bitter wars againſt one another, for the ſole command. During theſe wars, it hapned that one *Drangot* a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the preſence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conquerer) ſlain one *Repoſtel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the juſtice of the Prince, and the practices of *Repoſtels* kindred, fled into this Countrey, attended by ſuch of his followers, as either did depend upon his fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke of *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eaſtern Emperour, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raiſed withall that the *Greeks* hearkned after men of valour and action; cauſed many private Gentlemen to paſſe over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themſelves out a more proſperous fortune, than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate ſucceſſe of which laſt Adventurers, drew thither alſo *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*; who with his twelve ſonnes came into *Apulia*, *An.* 1008. and in ſhort time not only drove the *Saracens* thence, but the *Grecians* alſo, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the diviſion of the Booty. For *William* the ſonne of *Tancred*, combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperour, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, men of power and honour, for the conqueſt of *Sicil* (which the *Saracens* then wholly held) agreed amongſt themſelves to divide the places conquered by them into four equall parts; one, for each Adventurer. But when the *Saracens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new

ſup-

ſupplies ſent him out of *Greece*, ſeized on the poſſeſſion of the whole Iſland in the Emperors name. Which injury *William* cunningly diſſembled till *Melorco*'s Forces were diſperſed, and then he ſuddenly ſet upon him; firſt took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees, moſt of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italie*: of which both he and his Succeſſors kept poſſeſſion by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of theſe (though all of eminent vertue) there were two beſides this *William*, of ſpecial fame. 1 *Robert Guiſcard*, the third ſon of *Tancred*, the moſt valiant Captain of his time, and chief eſtabliſher of the *Normans* power in *Italie*; to which he added in concluſion the Iſle of *Sicil*, together with the City of *Naples* it ſelf, and all the Lands which lie betwixt it and *Rome*. 2 *Bohemund* the eldeſt ſon of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* and others of the Weſtern *Chriſtians* to the *Holy Land*, was for his ſignal merits inveſted with the Kingdome of *Antioch*; inherited by his children after his deceaſe. *Naples.*

But to proceed, this *Guiſcard* at his death, (but not without ſome wrong to the children of his Brother *William*, whom he had diſpoſſeſſed of all by the Popes Authority) gave *Sicil*, with the title of Earl, to his ſon *Rogero*; and his eſtates in *Italie*, to his other ſon *William*: who going to *Conſtantinople* to marry with the Emperors daughter, was outed of his part by his brother *Roger*; made not long after, by the Pope, the firſt King of this Familie.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

1125 1 *Roger*, Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Anacletus* 2 King of both the *Sicilies* at the Town of *Benevent*; which City, in requital of ſo great a favour, he reſtored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the firſt Donation of it) by the *German* Emperors. 24.

1149 2 *William*, the ſon of *Roger*, who to aſſure himſelf of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* the 4. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

1170 3 *William* II. ſon of the former *William*, who left a daughter called *Conſtance*, who became a Nun. 26.

1196 4 *Tancred*, the baſe ſon of *William* the 2. excluded his Siſter from the Crown, but was ſententially depoſed by Pope *Celeſtine* the 3. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himſelf. But when he ſaw that *Tancred* was too ſtrong for him, out of meer ſpight to be defeated of his purpoſe, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Conſtance*, then almoſt fifty yeers of age, in mariage unto *Henry* the 6. 2.

The *German* Line.

1198 5 *Henry*, the ſixth of that name, Emperor, and Duke of *Schwaben*, ſucceeded on his mariage with the Lady *Conſtance*. 4.

1202 6 *Frederick*, ſon of the Emperor *Henry* and Queen *Conſtance*, crowned at the age of three years; afterwards Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the 2. He had to wife the daughter of *John di Bren*, the titulary King of *Hieruſalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever ſince had the title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*.

1250 7 *Conrade*, the ſon of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as alſo Emperor and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*; poiſoned (as it was conceived) by his baſe brother *Manfred*. 4.

1254 8 *Munfroy*, or *Manfred*, baſe ſon of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, firſt governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the ſon of *Conrade*; but after took it to himſelf againſt the will of Pope *Urban* the 4. who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. of *France*: it being uſual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) to call new men into *Italie*, and ſtir up new wars for their own ambition; not ſuffering any to poſſeſs that long which themſelves (through their weakneſs) could not hold, and practiſing the overthrow of thoſe very men, whom themſelves had raiſed to power and greatneſs.

The *French* Line.

1261 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urban* the 4. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Succeſſors ſhould aſſume the Empire; and that they ſhould pay fifty thouſand Crowns *per annum* as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did alſo vanquiſh *Conradine* the ſon of *Conrade*, the laſt of the royal houſe of *Suevia*, whom he cauſed to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloudy Act, neither he nor any of his poſterity, did either quietly or long injoy theſe Kingdoms. For in his own time *Peter* King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdome of *Naples*, in right of *Conſtance* his wife, the daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a ſingle combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, to decide the Controverſie. But whileſt *Charles* there expected him, he ſeized on *Sicil*, *Anno* 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.

1284 10 *Charles* II. ſon of *Charles* the firſt, formerly priſoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ranſomed by the procurement of King *Edward* above-named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen children: the moſt pertinent of

Naples.

which (to our purpose) were *Charles* surnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*, *John* of *Durazzo*; and a daughter (whose name I finde not) maried to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310 11 *Robert*, the second son of *Charles* the 2. 32.

1342 12 *Joane*, the Neece of *Robert* by his son *Charles*, first maried *Andrew*, the second son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom she hanged at her window for insufficiency; and for her second husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-straining himself to satisfie her carnal appetite, died. Her third husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom she beheaded for lying with another woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunswick*, a tough Souldier, who had the good fortune to outlive her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdome by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her first husband: restored the first time by the power of Pope *Clement* the sixth; but at the second time taken and hanged at the same window where she had hanged her first husband. But first, out of an hatred to her next heirs of the house of *Hungary*, she adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, (descended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* spoken of before) for her heir and successor.

The *Hungarian* Line.

1371 13 *Charles* III. son to *Lewis*, and nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban* the fifth, was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, succeeded in that Kingdom also; but long he had not reigned therein, when poisoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her daughter to that Throne. 15.

1386 14 *Ladislaus*, son of *Charles* the 3. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which displeasure the Pope called in *Lewis* the 2. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladislaus* a great overthrow. Insomuch, as *Ladislaus* used to say, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the first day, he had been Master of his Kingdome and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdom, but not of his Person: but not pursuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flie to *Rome*, and give over the enterprise. 29.

1415 15 *Joane* II. Sister of *Ladislaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former *Joane*, observing the unprosperous successes of the house of *Anjou*, she adopted for her heir, *Alphonso* the fifth of *Aragon*; who had some claime unto the Kingdom, as the direct heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3. and *Constance* the daughter of King *Manfred*, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own right, and to be too forwards in taking a possession of it, before her death; she revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of the Estate to *Lewis* the fourth, Duke of *Anjou*, and after his decease to his brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: both vanquished by the *Aragonians*.

The *Aragonian* Line.

1434 16 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom; left it well setled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural son. 24.

17 *Ferdinand*, the base son of *Alfonso* (the lawful sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, *Sicil*, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494 18 *Alfonso* II. son of *Ferdinand*, in whose time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predecessors were of the Order of the Garter.

1494 19 *Ferdinand* II. Son of *Alfonso* the second, outed of his Estate and Kingdome by *Charles* the eighth, son of King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*, whom *Rene* the last Duke of *Anjou* had made the sole Heir of all his Titles, and Possession. And though *Charles* upon this Conquest was solemnly crowned, yet posting back again into *France* before he had setled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much discontented the chief men of *Anjouvin* Faction; he lost it suddenly to the same *Ferdinand* from whom he had so suddenly won it.

1497 20 *Frederick* II. brother of *Alphonso* the second, and Unkle of this last *Ferdinand*, succeeded him in his Estates; and was the sixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compass of three years: that is to say, *Ferdinand* the first, *Alfonso* the second, *Ferdinand* the second, *Charles* of *France*, the second *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himself betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he submitted himself to *Lewis* XII, King of *France*, and yeelded up his Kingdome to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own bloud, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when *Charles* made his passage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, sent *Gonsalvo*, (who was afterward for his valour surnamed the *Great Captain*) with some Forces, to resist the *French* Invaders. But when the *French* were expelled, *Gonsalvo* would not leave the Countrey, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France*, and this

Fer-

Ferdinand, that they ſhould joyntly ſet upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it; the *French* ſhould poſſeſs *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabria's*: That the firſt ſhould be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept ſecret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonſalvo* poſſeſſed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themſelves Maſters of the Countrey. An Action in which the *French* dealt very unadviſedly, in bringing into *Italie* where he was before the ſole *Moderator*, another King as great as himſelf; to whom as to his *Rival*, his enemies might have recourſe on all occaſions; and the *Spaniard* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moity of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own bloud, under pretence and promiſe of ſuccours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnerſhip. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, ſoon picked a quarrel with the *French*, within two or three years drave them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his ſucceſſors *Francis* the firſt and *Henry* the ſecond, have divers times, and with great effuſion of bloud, attempted the recovery of it. *Sicil.*

The *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian* Line.

1503 22 *Ferdinand* III. ſurnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 13.
1516 23 *Charles* V. Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
1558 24 *Philip* the 2. of *Spain*, and the firſt of *Naples*. 40.
1598 25 *Philip* II. of *Naples*, 3. of *Spain*. 22.
1621 26 *Philip* III. of *Naples*, 4. of *Spain*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Seme* of *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-rent; and the reſt ſo exhauſted in maintaining Garriſons upon the Natives, and a ſtrong Navie againſt the *Turks*; that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
Arch-Biſhops 20. Biſhops 127.

The Kingdome of SICILIA.

BEfore we can come into the Iſle of *Sicilie*, we muſt firſt croſs that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Straight of *Meſſana*; where the paſſage it ſo ſtrait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and an half. In other parts, as the Sea growes wider, it is diſtant from the main land of *Italie* near 300 miles; that is to ſay, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicilie*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is ſo called becauſe it interlaceth the midſt of the earth; extending from the Straights of *Gibraltar* on the Weſt, to the Coaſt of *Paleſtine* on the Eaſt; and ſo dividing *Africk* both from *Europe*, and *Aſia Minor*. In the Scriptures, *Joſh.* 1. 4. it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the *great Sea*: great in compariſon of the *dead Sea*, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other ſide of the land of *Paleſtine*; but ſmall enough if compared to the *Ocean*, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Beſides which general name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath alſo many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Libycum*, where it runneth by the ſhores of *Africk*; with reference to *Italie* called in ſome places, *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Liguſticum*; in ſome parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, *&c.* And as the *Chameleon* is ſaid to apply it ſelf to the colour of the neareſt adjacent body; ſo this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the neareſt ſhores. Theſe Seas are alſo called by ſome modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; becauſe in reſpect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, *&c.* they lie toward the Eaſt; the word *Levant* ſignifying in the *French*, a riſing up after ſleep, and more eſpecially the Sun-riſing. The principal Iſlands of this Sea which relate to *Italie* (for of others we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) are thoſe of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and ſome Iſles adjoyning unto theſe.

SICILIE, environed round with the *lower*, or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains ſeven hundred miles in compaſs; and is ſuppoſed to have been joyned to *Italie* in former times, being then a *Peninſula*, or Demy-Iſland, ſuch as *Peloponneſus*; and joyned unto the Continent by as narrow an *Iſthmus*. The reaſon of that name we ſhall ſee anon.

The ſeparating of it from the main Land of *Italie*, is by the Poets aſcribed to *Neptune*, who with his three-forked Mace or *Trident* broke it off from the land, in favour of *Jocaſtus* the ſon of *Æolus*; that ſo he might inhabit there with the greater ſafety, being invironed round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with ſome help from the *Mythologiſts*, may be made a ſtory. For if by *Æolus*, and *Neptune*, we underſtand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the reſt of *Italie*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of ſome Earthquakes, to which this Iſland is ſtill ſubject; which might in time conſume and wear away the Earth. Nor want there very good reaſons for this ſuppoſition; as, 1 the narrowneſs of the Straight, exceeding not a mile and a half; inſomuch as at the taking of *Meſſana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the people ſaved themſelves by

Sicil. by ſwimming over this Straight, into the oppoſite parts of *Italie*. 2. The ſhallowneſs of it, being found upon a diligent ſounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis obſerved, that the land on both ſides is very brittle, full of caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this ſeparation; and that on the *Italian* coaſt where the ſtreight is narroweſt, there ſtands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which ſignifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word Ῥήγνυμι, which ſignifies to break off, or violently to pull aſunder; and is ſuppoſed to be ſo called upon this occaſion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is ſo great and dangerous in this narrow channel, ſo ſubject unto bluſtring winds iſſuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Iſland from the reſt of *Italie*, is a thing moſt credible. Which dangerous nature of the paſſage, being alſo full of Rocks, and unſafe by reaſon of the Whirl-pools, occaſioned it to be called by *Florus* the Hiſtorian, *Fabuloſis infame monſtris fretum*; chiefly ſo called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which ſo many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of theſe, *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicilie* ſide, which violently attracting all veſſels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and caſteth up their necks at the ſhore of *Tauromeni*, not far from *Catina*. Oppoſite to this in *Italie*, ſtandeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks ſhoot out; on which the water ſtrongly beating, make that noiſe, which the Poets feign to be the barking of dogs. The paſſage between theſe two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who ſeeks *Charybdis* for to ſhun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicilie* famous in old times, beſides theſe two, as *viz.* the puniſhment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt againſt the gods: the frequent burnings of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be ſhut up) being ſuppoſed to proceed from his ſulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Iſle; and thirdly, the Rape of *Proſerpine*. To theſe two laſt the Iſle was conſecrated in thoſe daies; to *Ceres*, in regard ſhe firſt taught the people to ſow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often uſed in the Poets to ſignifie *Bread*, and other neceſſary proviſions for life, as *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*: To *Proſerpine*, becauſe beſtowed upon her by *Pluto*, to pleaſe her after the Raviſhment committed on her.

It is ſituate under the fourth Climate, the longeſt day being 13 hours and an half. And was once called *Trinacria*, becauſe it ſhoots forth into the Sea with three *Capes* or *Promontories*: *viz.* 1 *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*, to the North; 2 *Pachinus*, now *Cape Paſſaro*, to the Weſt; and 3 *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Coro*, to the South. This laſt looketh towards *Carthage*, and the ſhores of *Africk*, from which diſtant 180 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of a quick and ſtrong ſight getting up into a Watch-tower that ſtood in this *Cape*, deſcryed a Fleet ſetting ſayl out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybitanians* their bigneſs and number. That this is true, I dare not ſay: for beſides the unlikelyhood of kenning at ſo great a diſtance; we are taught by by Philoſophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, ſwelleth it ſelf into the faſhion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-ſight. From theſe three corners, this Countrey was (as we have ſaid) called *Trinacris* or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

Terra tribus ſcopulis vaſtum procurrit in æquor;
Trinacris *à poſitu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Iſland with three corners braves the main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth again.

The firſt Inhabitants that we finde to have dwelt in this Countrey, are the huge Giants ſo often mentioned in the *Odyſſes* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Laſtrygones* and *Cyclops*; of which laſt rank was the ſo much famouſed *Polyphemus*, who with ſo much humanity entertained *Ulyſſes* and his companions. Theſe were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, ſome derive it from *Sicileus*, a ſuppoſed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Countrey. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Iſland: to which, having Maſtered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the Weſt and the Northern part, to the Eaſt and South, they left their name. At their firſt landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Meſſana*, together with *Nea*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another *Italian* people named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and ſate down in that part of the Iſland where ſtood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their firſt arrival. The firſt of all the *Greeks* who ſet footing in it (not to ſay any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither, in the purſuit of *Dædalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Hiſtorical truth) were the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Iſle *Eubœa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Archias* of *Corinth*, with his fellow Adventurers, by whom *Syracuſe* was either firſt built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* ſent ſome Colonies hither, the firſt Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation ſent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens

of

of *Megaris*, another ſtate of *Greece*, ſent a Colony alſo, who built *Selinus*. And ſo did thoſe of *Meſſene* alſo, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it ſo repaired the name of *Meſſana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians*, being ſo great undertakers of publick buſineſſes, and very powerfull in ſhipping, would ſit ſtill, when ſo fair a booty did invite their induſtry: who ſeiſing on the *Promontories* of *Pachinus* and *Lilibæum*, and ſome of the adjoining Iſlands; did fortifie them for the better ſecuring of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all theſe ſeverall Adventurers having ſeverall intereſſes, joyned not together in the work of an abſolute Conqueſt; but planting themſelves only on the Sea-ſhores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither. *Sicil.*

The people are ingenious, eloquent, and pleaſant, but withall very unconſtant, and ſo full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerræ Siculæ*. They are alſo ſaid to be of a very envious, ſuſpitious, and diſtruſtfull nature, uncapable of injuries, and vehement in purſuit of revenge, as appears by that great ſlaughter which they made of the *French*; yet withall courteous enough to ſtrangers, and *Paraſiticall* enough to their ſuperiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Ariſtotle* aſcribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and firſt making of *Paſtorall Eclogues*; *Plinie* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glaſſes; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which laſt were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here, by ſome of the Diſciples of St. *Peter*, whom he ſent hither at his firſt coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly St. *Pancrace*) is ſaid to have been the firſt Biſhop of *Tauromenium*, and *Marcianus* of *Syracuſe*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek* Church being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thouſand ſouls, but looked on by the reſt as *ſchiſmaticall* people. For the moſt part they uſe the *Italian* Language, but very much altered, by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French*, and *Spaniſh* tongues; to which Nations they have been ſeverally ſubject, ſince the time of the *Romans*. The totall number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The ſoyl is incredibly fruitfull in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which laſt commodity the Natives ſell in the Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting ſtrangers go away with the beſt part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize, which they permit to be exported, rather than put themſelves to the trouble of Traffiqueing abroad in Forain Nations. There are alſo Gems of *Agates*, and *Emralds*. It yeeldeth alſo great ſtore of the richeſt Silks, which grow plentifully about *Meſſana*; variety of moſt excellent and delicious fruits, both for taſte and colour: with ſuch abundance of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman* Empire; and doth now furniſh ſome parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, beſides *Malta*, and the adjacent Iſles, with that which ſhe can ſpare of her ſuperfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and ſtore-houſe of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but addes that it was accounted for a well-furniſhed *Treaſury*; as being able of it ſelf without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furniſh the greateſt Army, with Leather, Corn and Apparell. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and ſome other places, Wheat did grow of it ſelf, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in ſome parts of the Iſle, the ſoyl is ſo exceeding fruitfull, that it yeelds unto the Husbandman an hundred meaſures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Countrey muſt needs yeeld a wonderfull increaſe, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thouſand Crowns yearly for the Cuſtome of Wheat. In this Countrey is the Hill *Hybla*, ſo famous for Bees and Honey; neer which there was a City of the ſame name alſo, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is alſo the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Montgibel*, which continually ſendeth forth flames of Fire, to the aſtoniſhment of all beholders. The moſt famous conflagrations in the former times were preſently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicil*, which the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum ſervile*; not pacified but by the ſlaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms againſt *Rome*: and ſhortly after the death of *Julius Cæſar*, portending thoſe proſcriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day ſuch extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it ſelf is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottome, and may be eaſily diſcerned by Saylers at an hundred miles diſtance: the lower parts thereof being very fruitfull; the middle ſhaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, notwithſtanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But theſe eruptions of fire are not now ſo ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being waſted by continuall burnings: ſo that the flames which iſſue hence are hardly viſible but by night, though the ſmoak ſhew it ſelf the moſt part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years, it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoyning, to the deſtruction of the Vintage, and great loſs of the Countrey. But that, they ſay is recompenſed by the plenty of the following years; the aſhes thereof ſo batling and enriching the ſoyl, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongſt our ſelves, that the Turf taken from the ground and burnt to aſhes, and ſo ſpread on land and ploughed into it, doth yeeld a very great improvement, even to barren ſoyls. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonſhiring* of land, becauſe there firſt uſed; but in *Hampſhire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a ſtranger there) by the name of *burning* and *beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*. Into this fiery Furnace the Philoſopher *Empedocles* caſt himſelf, that he might be reputed a God.

Deus

Sicil.

——Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem frigidus Ætnam
Insiluit—— as *Horace* in his Book *de Arte Poetica.*

Empedocles to be a God desires,
And casts himself into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimstone, contained in the bosome of the Hill; which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it: as we see that water cast on coals in the Smiths Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame is thus set down by *Ovid.*

Ista bitumineæ *rapiunt incendia vires,*
Luteaq; exiguis ardescunt sulphura *flammis.*
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, absumptis per longum viribus ævum;
Naturæq; suum nutrimen deerit edaci;
Non feret Ætna *famem, desertaq; deseret ignes.*

A rozen mould these fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimstone aids that fire within:
Yet when the slimie soyl consumed, shall
Yeeld no more food to feed the fire withall,
And Nature shall restrain her nourishment,
The flame shall cease hating all famishment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Gyant *Enceladus* to have been buryed, as before is said, whose hot breath fired the mountain lying on his face. Others suppose it to be the Shop of *Vulcan,* and the *Cyclops*; and the gross Papists take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike unfallible.

The principall Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta,* antiently called *Terius.* 2. *Himera,* neighboured by Mount *Hybla,* much famed for Honey. 3. *Isaurus.* 4. *Hypsa.* 5. *Acasius,* of great note for its precious stones. None of them much observable for length or breadth, but that defect supplyed by the commodiousnes of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Island; and by the benefit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro,* (now *Napthia*) which for three moneths doth cast forth water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny,* by the name of *Ephintia.* 2. A Fountain neer the foot of *Ætna,* the water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar,* and sometimes boyleth; into which a piece of cloth cast, being before steeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain neer *Drepanum,* the water of which, as soon as drunk, provoketh loosnes. All which effects proceed from that sulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Island is exceeding full. 4. *Arethusa,* of greater fame among the Antients, than all the rest, especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having swallowed up one hundred and forty lesser streams, and losing it self under the ground; is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and seems to be sufficiently proved, by the severall instances of a wooden dish or cup lost in the River *Alpheus,* and found rising up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek* River, and swimming on this in great abundance; there being none of these trees in all *Sicil. Dicitur* Alpheus (saith *Mela*) *se non consociare pelago; sed subter maria, terrasq; depressus, huc agere alveum, atq; hîc se rursus extollere.*

This Island is famous for the worthy Scholars she once produced, *viz. Æschylus,* the first *Tragedian* of fame; who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a shell-fish fall on it, of that bigness, that it beat out his brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus,* that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles* the first Inventer of *Rhetorick;* and his fellow *Gorgias.* 4. *Euclide,* the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris.* 5. *Archimedes,* a most worthy *Mathematician,* the first Author of the Sphere; of which instrument he made one of that art and bigness, that one standing within, might easily perceive the severall motions of every celestiall orb. He made also divers military Engines, which in the siege of *Syracusa* sorely vexed the *Romans*; and was at last slain in his study by a common Souldier in the sack of the Town, to the great grief of the Generall *Marcellus.* 6. *Epicharmus,* the first Inventer of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus,* the first Author of Pastorall *Eclogues.* In the later times, *Nicolas* Abbot of *Palermo,* a learned *Canonist,* and Cardinall of the Church of *Rome,* commonly called *Panormitanus,* was of greatest fame.

In *Plinies* time there were reckoned in this Island seventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three small Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Val de noto.* 2. *Mazara,* and 3 *Mona*; to which the Isles adjoyning may adde a fourth.

1. *VALLIS DE NOTO* taketh up the Eastern parts of the Island. The chief Cities of which are, 1. *Syracusa,* once the Metropolis of the whole Island, and a most flourishing Common-wealth, it was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possess'd by the *Greeks,* for

for ſituation very ſtrong; and of an excellent proſpect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both ſides of it, was for the moſt part environed with beautifull buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both ſides banked up, and ſuſtained with very fair walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodlyeſt City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us, but the greateſt alſo of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmoſt wall thereof, (for it was environed with three walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compaſſe, which of our meaſure cometh to eighteen miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to ſay, *Inſula* (or the Iſle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*; beſides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the reſt; the greatneſſe of all which, the ruins and foundations of it do ſtill demonſtrate. It ſtandeth North of the Promontory called *Pachinus*, and was built by *Archias* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*; who being for an unnaturall Rape committed on a young Gentleman, baniſhed his Countrey, together with his friend and Companion *Miſcellus*; conſulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they ſhould diſpoſe of themſelves. The Oracle demanding whether they moſt affected wealth, or health; *Miſcellus* anſwered health, and *Archias* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to ſettle himſelf at *Crotona* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reaſon of its beautifull and commodious Port, proving of greateſt trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it ſelf, in thoſe times of the World. It was the cuſtome of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to baniſhment for five years; and was called *Petaliſme*, from the *Greek* word πέταλον, ſignifying a leaf. Yet could not this device ſo well ſecure them, in the poſſeſſion of their ſo much deſired Freedome, but that this City fell oftener into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Auguſtus*, who after a ſecond deſtruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, ſent a Colony hither, and built upon the *Iſle* and the parts neer unto it. But now the whole Iſle (*Ortygia* the Antients called it) is taken up with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the whole City alſo being very well walled, and held by a Garriſon of *Spaniards*. 2 *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Diviſion. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuſe* in point of greatneſſe: Situate on a very high Rock, unacceſſible on all ſides but by one narrow paſſage; and having under the Cape of *Paſſari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that ſide. 3 *Auguſta*, ſituate on the ſhore alſo, and of ſo large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4 *Caſtro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thouſand Families, ſituate in a wholſome air, and a fruitfull Soyl, which they hold to be the very Navell and exact middle of the Iſland. It is alſo much prized for Mines of moſt excellent Salt. 5 *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whoſe fiſhing is farmed for eighteen thouſand Crowns yeerly. It was antiently called *Leontium*, and ſtood ſomewhat North of *Syracuſa*; with which continually in war, either to preſerve their own Liberties, or get the Soveraignty of the other. 6 *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is ſaid to have raviſhed *Proſerpine*: In after times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who ſtirred up the *Roman* Slaves againſt their Lords; and having broke open the common Priſons, and received all ſuch as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty thouſand. This war the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at laſt, but with no ſmall difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rupilius*.

Sicil.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the Weſt-parts of the Iſland. The chief Cities whereof, 1 *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the deſtruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*.

——— Nec enim lex juſtior ulla eſt,
Quam necis Artifices arte perire ſua.

Moſt juſt it is a man ſhould be tormented
With that, which firſt his cruel wit invented.

It was ſaid antiently of the people of this City, that *they built as if they ſhould never dye, and eat as if they were ſure to live no longer.* 2 *Palermo*, antiently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*; now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the Seat of the *Spaniſh* Vice-roy. Situate on the Weſt Cape of the Iſland looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate buildings, ſtrong walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no naturall Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* ſerving antiently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*; a work of vaſt expence, and worthy of the greatneſſe of *Rome*. It is alſo an Arch-biſhops See, and an Univerſity. 3 *Monreal*, commonly called *Morreal*, famous for the Church, the Arch-biſhops See. It is called in *Latine Mens Regalis*. 4 *Drepanum*, now called *Trapani*, ſituate on a Promontory thruſting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on theſe coaſts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are ſaid to be the beſt Sea-men of *Sicil*. 5 *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, ſituate South of *Lylibæum*, and not far from *Selinus*. 6 *Eryx*, ſituate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, ſaid by the Antients to have took this name from *Eryx* the ſonne of *Venus*, ſlain here by *Hercules*: memorable in thoſe elder times for being the Seat of K. *Aceſtes*, who ſo kindly entertained *Æneas*, and his wandring *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worſhiped, who from thence was called *Erycina*; as *Sive tu mavis Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the laſt Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*. On the ſurrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the

Sicil.

Father of *Annibal*, at the end of the first *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things, that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the claime or title which they had to any part of this Island; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracusa* excepted only). Who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition, and covetousnesse. And therefore in my mind *Florus* states it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *specie quidem juvandi Socios, re autem sollicitante præda*; *i. e.* under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now and long since a ruin only, the place on which it stood being called *Mount S. Julian*. 7 *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, neer unto which the *Trojan* Ladies weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*; on which occasion it was built. Peopled at first by such of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longævosq; senes, & fessas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who chose rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas*, in his quest of *Italy*. Called then *Acesta*, in honour of King *Acestes* spoken of before, part of whose Kingdome it was made; afterwards *Egesta*, from *Ægestus* one of *Trojan* race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at last *Segesta*.

3. *MONA* lyeth on the North-east of the Island, opposite unto *Vallis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1 *Nicosia*, in the mid-land. 2 *Milase*, on the Northern Promontory. 3 *Messana*, a City of great strength and beauty, just opposite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the first Town which the *Romans* had in this Island, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Souldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themselves too strong for the *Citizens*, made themselves Masters of the place; but being withall too weak to hold it, chose rather to surrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper owners. Hence the beginning of the first War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the most beautifull building of any in *Sicil*; and peopled by the wealthyest sort both of Merchants and Gentlemen; who live here in great pleasure (if not voluptuousnesse) as having plenty of all necessary provisions, fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and snow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elsewhere in the Countrey. On the West side, there stands a strong Citadell, highly mounted, and well Garrisoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn, where lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of such Mariners, as are to passe those dangerous Straights; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Messana*. The Haven of this Town is the fairest of *Sicil*, whose entrances are so strongly sconced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in derision of the *Turks*) stand alwayes open. It is also an Arch-bishops See. 4 *Catina*, so often vexed by *Dionysius* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*: more antient than beautifull: seated on the North side of a great (but hollow) Bay, not easily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garrison, nor much traded by Merchants; the riches of the place consisting principally in the fruitfulnesse of the Soyl, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a small University. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And so was also *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Island; called sometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruine only of what was in the former dayes; a place by nature of great strength, but over-topped by *Syracusa* and *Messana*, betwixt which it standeth. It was in this part of the Countrey that the *Cyclops* dwelt, there being three little rocky Islands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*.

4 On the West part of *Sicil* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Islands, heretofore only seven, and all almost of equall bigness; now eleven in number. The first name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them; who being well skilled in divining from what coasts the winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the smoak ascending from them) occasioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan*, the God of Fire; by reason of the continuall flames of fire from thence evaporating in those elder dayes. But now the matter of those flames being wasted in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STOMBOLO*; by some Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundnesse of it. An Island of about ten miles compasse, but such as seems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof issueth continually a flame like a burning *Beacon*, easily discernible far off, but at nights especially: a place so full of horror to the neighbouring Islanders, that they and many others of the *Romish Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it self. And yet in those parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitfull soil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the fairest and best peopled of those Islands, is that of *LIPARA*, some ten miles in circuit, (from whence the rest are called the *Liparean* Isles) so named from *Lipara* the chief Town, said to be built in the time of *Josiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Bishop, under the Arch-bishop of *Messana*. The Island generally fruitfull, well furnished with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with some hot medicinall Bathes, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermessa* by the antient Writers. It was formerly of so great wealth, that falling into the displeasure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuse*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the sum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which sum they had no sooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewell, robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor sped it better with the *Turks*, who in the year 1544. laid the Countrey desolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the fifth repleniſhed it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very strongly against all invasions.

3. Not far off lyeth another of these Islands, now called *FAVOGNANA*, or *Fauciana*, but antiently *Ægusa*, conceived to be the same which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægates*; in which there

is

is a fair and capacious Bay able to receive the greateſt Navies; and neer to which *Lucſatius Catulus* the Conſul gave the *Carthaginians* their laſt blow at Sea, which drew along with it the ſurrendry of *Eryx*, and the loſſe of *Sicil*. *Dedyme*, *Ericoſa*, *Eunymos*, and *Phœnicuſæ*, four other of theſe Iſlands, but of leſſer note, I paſſe over willingly; and make haſte to *Sicil.*

4. *HIERO*, the ſeventh and laſt of theſe Iſlands of any conſideration, and the eighth in tale, called alſo *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worſhipped; ſaid to have firſt appeared above the water at ſuch time as *Scipio African* dyed. A barren, ſtony, and uninhabited place, by reaſon of the fires which formerly have flamed ſo hideouſly (eſpecially in the year 1444.) that it made not only the reſt of theſe Iſlands but all *Sicily* tremble. Neer unto this Iſle was fought the firſt Navall fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never uſed the Seas, as being totally employed in the conqueſt of *Italy*; inſomuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exerciſe their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats neer the water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithſtanding, having deviſed an Engine like a Grapling-hook, they ſo faſtened the Adverſe Fleet unto them, that the whole fight ſeemed a Land-battell fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Conſul then commanding in Chief; and honoured with the firſt *Navall Triumph* that was ever ſolemnized at *Rome*.

After this Iſland was once known to the *Greeks*, they ſent from all their chief Cities ſeverall Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coaſts of the Countrey, as before we noted. But ſo as they never united themſelves in a body together, but had their ſeverall eſtates and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at laſt made themſelves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panatius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuſe*, *Cleander* at *Gela*; and when one Faction grew too weak to reſiſt the other, they called in ſeverall Forain Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground, the *Carthaginians* were firſt called into *Sicily* by the *Meſſanians*, againſt the *Agrigentines*. And on the ſame was managed here a great part of the *Peloponneſian* wars; the *Athenians* ſiding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracuſans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generalls *Nicias* and *Demoſthenes*, murdered in priſon. But becauſe *Syracuſe* was a City of the greateſt Authority, and of greateſt influence over the reſt of *Sicily*, we ſhall more punctually inſiſt on the State and affairs thereof. The Government of which at firſt was popular, as it was in moſt of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Ariſtocraticall*, when *Gelon* made himſelf King of it, about 26 years after the expulſion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom with as many as ſucceeded in the Royal dignity, take along as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracuſe*.

A. M.

3465 1 *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuſa*, betwixt the Magiſtrates and people, made himſelf Maſter of the City; and was choſen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were ſlain in battle, for their firſt welcome into *Sicil*. 7.

3472 2 *Hiero*, the brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King alſo, but a rude and covetous man, whereby he loſt the love of his people. 11.

3484 3 *Thraſibulus*, brother of *Hiero*, whoſe Government proved ſo cruel and unſupportable, that he held it not above 10 moneths; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracuſans*, the people did a while enjoy their liberty; but withall fell into thoſe Factions, which after 60 years made them loſe it again.

3544 4 *Dionyſius*, that ſo famous Tyrant, from being Generall of the Forces of the *Syracuſans*, made himſelf their King: A man of great vices, but great vertues withall. He brought almoſt all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*; reigning in all 38 years.

3582 5 *Dionyſius* II. ſucceeding his Father in his Kingdome and vices, but not in valour or wiſdome, was firſt outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuſe*; and afterward taken Priſoner by *Timoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was ſent, and there dyed in exile.

3635 6 *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Souldier; 20 years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himſelf King of *Syracuſa*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, he paſſed over into *Africk*, and beſieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.

3681 7 *Hiero* II. of a Commander of their Armies choſen King of *Syracuſe*, by a party which he had made amongſt them. In his time brake out the firſt *Punick* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertones*, who held *Meſſana* againſt the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that time of the greateſt part of the Iſland. 56.

3737 8 *Hieronymus*, the ſonne of *Hiero*, after whoſe death *Syracuſe* and all *Sicil* became ſubject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of theſe eight Kings, the ſix firſt commonly paſſe under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence, and from ſome others of like diſpoſition, who Lorded it over the reſt of the free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionyſii*, who were ſo odious, that there were continuall execrations powred on them; only one old woman praying for the life of the later. Who being asked the cauſe, made anſwer, that ſhe knew his Father to have been a monſtrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the curſes of the people had prevailed, and obtained his death, this his ſonne ſucceeded, worſe by far than he; for whoſe life ſhe was reſolved to

Sicil.

pray, leſt after his death the Devil himſelf ſhould come amongſt them. But to proceed, after theſe *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Iſland was conquered by *Marcellus*; it alwayes followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire; till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whoſe greatneſſe, this Iſland having been miſerably pilled and ſpoyled by the Emperour *Conſtans*, *An.* 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdome, ſubject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* lines, till the death of *Conrade*; no interruption intervening. After whoſe death when *Munfroy* or *Manfrede*, the baſe ſonne of the Emperour *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himſelf King of theſe Countreys; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry* the third of *England*: a Prince of ſuch riches, that he was able to diſpend an hundred Marks *per diem*, for ten years together; which according to the Standard of thoſe times, was no ſmall ſum. But the conditions which the Pope propoſed were ſo impoſſible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well ſay to his Maſter, *I will give thee the Moon; climb up, catch, and take it.* The Earl refuſing it, it was offered the King for his ſecond ſonne *Edmund*, who was inveſted by the gift of a Ring, and money coyned in his name by the Popes appointment, with the inſcription of *Almundus Rex Siciliæ*. But the King not being able to purſue the buſineſſe, becauſe then overburdened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having ſucked no ſmall ſtore of Treaſure from him; it was in the year 1261, given unto *Charles* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. Under him thoſe Countreys joyntly continued ſubject till the year 1281. in which his Competitour, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his wife the daughter of *Munfroy* before mentioned, promiſing him to fight a ſingle combat before our K. *Edward* the firſt, at *Bourdeaux*; fail'd of his word; and in the mean time ſo contrived it, that at the ſound of a Bell tolling to prayers, all the *French-men* in *Sicily* were cruelly maſſacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Veſperi Siculi*; and was managed by *John de Prochita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had diſpoſſeſſed of the Iſle of *Prochita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him ſuch a piece of injuſtice, added a further inſolency to it, in the forcing of his Wife. Provoked with theſe two injuries, the abuſed Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Maſter of the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he had very good intelligences; and where the *French* by reaſon of their Luſts and Inſolencies had ſo exaſperated the Natives; that they were capable enough of any ſuch impreſſions, as a man ſharing with them in their ſufferings, could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggeth out his Navy, under pretence of ſome exploit againſt the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out ſo agreeably to his expectation, that in one inſtant as it were, on the ſignall given, the *French* were univerſally murdered in all parts of the Iſland: the people being ſo enraged, that they would not ſpare women great with child, if ſuppoſed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the generall conſent of all ſorts of people, crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, I confeſſe, which as the Actors learned of the *Engliſh Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; ſo did they teach it to the *French*, who practiſed it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Maſſacre of *Paris*, *An.* 1572. An Act which ſo provoked the Pope, that he ſolemnly accurſed the King, and cauſed many of the neighbouring Princes to Arme againſt him. But the Fox fared never the worſe for that: who did ſo order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Countrey of thoſe Enemies which on the Popes curſe had come in againſt him; and ſetled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Iſland hath belonged to the houſe of *Aragon*, but not alwayes in poſſeſſion of the Kings thereof; being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whoſe ſucceſſion followeth.

Kings of *Sicily* of the Houſe of *Aragon*.

1281 1 *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3d. King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicily* in the right of his Wife, the choice of the people, and the Legacy of *Corradine* (the laſt of the Royal line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the ſword.

1285 2 *James*, the ſecond ſonne of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*; after the death of his brother *Alfonſus*, ſucceeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Iſle of *Sardinia*.

1291 3 *Frederick*, the brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got poſſeſſion of *Sicily*. By *Frederick-Alfonſo*, a younger ſonne of this *Frederick*, the title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.

1336 4 *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. Sonne of *Frederick*.

1342 5 *Frederick* II.

6 *Peter*, or *Pedro* III.

7 *Lewis*, Sonne to *Peter* III.

8 *Frederick* III. in the life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death ſucceeded in the Kingdome of *Sicily*.

1389 9 *Martin*, ſonne to *Martin* the firſt, King of *Aragon*, ſucceeded in the right of his wife *Blanch*, daughter of *Frederick* the third; and dying without iſſue, gave the Kingdome unto *Martin* his Father.

1409 10 *Martin* II. of *Sicily*, and the firſt of *Aragon*, of which laſt he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his ſonne. After which time the Iſle of *Sicily* being again united

united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never ſeparated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his ſonne, the better to fit him for the bed of *Iſabel* Princeſſe of *Caſtile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperour *Charles* the fift gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldeſt ſonne, on his marriage with *Mary* Q. of *England*, who thereupon was ſtyled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Hieruſalem*. But this held only for a year; his Father ſhortly after reſigning to him all his Kingdoms, whereby it became joyned to *Spain* again. *Sardinia.*

The Revenues of this Kingdome are by ſome ſaid to be but 800000, but as others ſay, a million of Ducats; moſt of which is again diſburſed on the entertainment of the *Vice-roy*, and the defence of the Iſland. The Arms are, *Or*, four Pallets *Gules* (being thoſe of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches *Argent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Manfroy* King of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, ſpoken of before, who gave thoſe Arms with reference to his deſcent from the *German* Emperours.

This Iſland for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 13 Marqueſſes, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barons: Men of authority and power in their ſeverall Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Iſland; the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in the Court of *Spain*; but more to ſatisfie that King upon reaſon of State, than any affection of their own to ſo long an exile. And for the Government of the Church,

Here are

Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 9.

The Kingdome of SARDINIA.

THE Iſland and Kingdome of *SARDINIA* lyeſt Weſt from *Sicily*; from the neereſt point whereof called Cape *Boii*, or Cape *Coro*, it is diſtant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is ſituate under the 4th. *Climate*, the longeſt day being 14 hours.

In the time of *Ariſtotle* it was called *Ichnuſa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the reſemblance which it hath to a mans ſhooe or Sandals; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the ſonne of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* poſſeſſed the ſame. For this there is ſufficient authority amongſt the Antients. Of the firſt names ſaith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timæus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*; and *Myrſilus*, *Ichnuſa*, from the ſimilitude which it hath to the Shooe-ſole, or impreſſion of a mans foot on the ground; *Sardiniam Timæus*, Sandaliotin *appellavit ab effigie ſoleæ*; *Myrſilus*, Ichnuſam *à ſimilitudine veſtigii*. And for the laſt nothing can be more plain than that of *Pauſanias*, who tells us that the firſt who came by ſhipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the ſon of *Maceris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Iſland then called *Ichnuſa*, τὸ ὄνομα ἀπὸ τοῦ Σάρδου τότε μεταβαλεῖν ὁ νῆσος, cauſed it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latin* tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoyning Sea, *Mare Sardoum*. And to this name it was ſo conſtant, that no following Plantations from other Countreys, were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and ſetled here, where they built *Olbion*, and *Agrillis*: leaving a memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in ſome places, which remained in the time of *Pauſanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themſelves for his ſake, the name of *Iolatenſes*. And after the deſtruction of *Troy*, ſome of that ſcattered Nation came and planted in ſome voyd parts of the Iſland, kept to themſelves the name of *Ilienſes*, and by that name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of theſe Nations did attempt the change of the name, becauſe not of ability to ſuppreſſe or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puiſſant Nation than the former were; and ſuch as by the neerneſſe of their habitation (*Sardinia* being diſtant but 160 miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at laſt they did) a full Conqueſt of it: building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*; and holding it untill it was unjuſtly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War: at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and ſo not able to reſiſt.

But of the name and firſt Plantations of this Iſland we have ſaid enough. Let us now look upon the place; in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtfull Beaſt, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and thoſe very plentifull of Fiſh; but generally ſo deſtitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the rain which falls in Winter for their uſe in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no paſſage for the Northern Winds, being obſtructed by the high Mountains neer Cape *Lugudori*, the Air is generally unhealthy, if not peſtilentiall: Inſomuch that *Tully* writing to his brother *Quintus* being then in this Iſland, adviſeth him to remember, as in point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and ſpeaking of *Tigellius*, a *Sardinian* born, ſaith of him, that he was more peſtilent than the Countrey which bred him.

The ſoyl is very fertile in reſpect of *Corſica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*; which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any naturall defect in the ſoil it ſelf. Well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheeſe, and Hides,

Sardinia.

which are ſent hence yearly into *Italie* and other places. The Horſes hereof, hot, head-ſtrong, and hard to be broken, but will laſt long. The Bullocks naturally amble, ſo that the Countrey-man rideth them as familiarly, as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Aſſes. Here is alſo the Beaſt called *Mufrones*, or or *Muſcriones*, found in *Corſica* alſo, but in no other part of *Europe*; ſomewhat reſembling a Stag, but of ſo ſtrong an hide, that it is uſed by the *Italians* in ſtead of Armour: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dreſſed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is ſaid that he will dye with laughter; Whence came the Proverb, *Riſus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I ſhall not diſpute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poyſonous nature, cauſeth men to dye with ſuch a Convulſion or attraction of Sinews, that they ſeem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are ſmall of ſtature, of complexion inclining unto ſwarthineſs; and that either by reaſon of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people alſo. So ſlothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now eſteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and ſo prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable amongſt themſelves, and in ſome meaſure courteous unto Strangers alſo. Their language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and groſs; their apparel in the Towns (eſpecially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages ſordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make moſt ſhew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their neighbourhood to the Pope, and their Subjection to the *Spaniard*, have impoſed upon them. But in their practiſe of it they are looſe enough, going to *Maſs* on Sundaies and Saints daies; which done, they fall to dancing in the midſt of the *Church*, ſinging in the mean times ſongs too immodeſt for an Ale-houſe. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it ſelf is the moſt rude, ignorant and illiterate of any people in *Chriſtendome*; ſaying their Maſſes rather by rote, than reaſon, and utterly unable to give any accompt of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudore*, towards *Corſica*, and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*: the firſt the leaſt, and withall mountainous and barren; the laſt the larger, level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1 *Calaris*, firſt built by the *Carthaginians*, and ſituate in that point of the Iſland which lieth neareſt to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of ſuch fame, when it was firſt taken by *Gracchus* for the uſe of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs Urbium*; and was deſtroyed by the ſaid *Gracchus*, the better to diſable the Natives from rebelling againſt the Conquerors. Being new built again in more ſetled times, it was a ſecond time deſtroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Piſans*, at ſuch time as they were Maſters of this part of the Iſland. Very well fortified by Nature, as ſeated on the top of an hill; and hath under it a ſpacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it ſelf adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Arch-biſhop, many fair Turrets, and the conſtant reſidence of the Vice-roy: from whoſe authority it is exempt by eſpecial priviledge, as to the legal Government of it, and ordered by a Common Councel of its own Citizens. 2. *Boſſa*, on the Weſt ſide of the Iſland, another Arch-epiſcopal See. 3 *S. Reparata* on the North, looking towards *Corſica*. 4 *Aquilaſtro*, on the Weſtern ſhores. 5 *Saſſari*, a Town of conſequence, where they have an *Aquedũct* twelve miles long, reaching from thence unto S. *Gavius*. *Alghes-Boſa*, a good Town, ſituate in a wholſome air, and a fertile ſoyl; and having a fair Haven of ſix miles in length, in which the ſhips of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do moſt commonly ride. 7 *Oreſtagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reaſon of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens; the Countrey about which gives title to the Marqueſs of *Oreſtagne*. 8 *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruine; yet giving title to the third Arch-biſhop of this Iſland, who is called in Latine *Turritanus*. Here are alſo in divers parts of this Iſland the remainders of ſundry Towers and Forts, which the people call *Noracks*, from *Nora*, one of the ſons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Countrey, and built the firſt dwelling or manſion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath ſo much in it of Hiſtorical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; ſomewhat before the expedition of the *Attick*s under *Iolaus*, as *Pauſanias* teſtifieth.

This Iſland taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is ſaid, was firſt under the immediate Juriſdiction of the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*: but after by *Juſtinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceſe of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saracens*, *Anno* 807. From them recovered by the joynt-forces of the *Piſans*, and *Genoeſe*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Piſans*, and the Northern towards *Corſica*, to thoſe of *Genoa*. But the *Genoeſe* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Iſland being leſs in quantity, and worſe in quality) began to quarrel with the *Piſans*, and at the laſt to break into open wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface* the 8. beſtowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoeſe*, (*Anno* 1324. became Maſter of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend ſome Title to it, in right of the Kingdome of *Sicil*, then in his poſſeſſion; to ſome preceding Kings whereof it had once been ſubject: and having backed that Claim by the Popes Donation who challenged it as a part of S. *Peters* Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Burbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpoſe of performance; that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered;

adhered; and was as ſuddenly laid by, as it had done the feat intended in the Propoſition. *Land of the Church.*

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who reſides at *Calaris*, and muſt of neceſſity be a *Spaniard*; under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* alſo; the one for Cape *Cagliari*, the other for Cape *Lugudori*. Inferior Officers of command may be of the Natives. What profits ariſe hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The *Arms* hereof are ſaid to be *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, betwixt four *Saracens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but firſt taken (as ſome ſay) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occaſion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found ſevered from their Bodies in the battel of *Alcoraz*, *Anno* 1094. won by *Don Pedro* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers ſmall Iſlands about *Sardinia*, as 1 *Iſola Roſſa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2 The Iſle of *Hercules*, now called *Aſinaria*. 3 S. *Peters*, anciently *Hierucum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which, as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Iſland,
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 15.

The Land of the CHVRCH.

WEſt of the Realm of *Naples*, lyeth the *LAND OF THE CHURCH*, extended North and South, from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuſcan* Seas. Bounded on the North-eaſt with the River *Trontus*; on the South-eaſt, with the *Axoſenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-weſt by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which ſeparated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-weſt with the River *Piſco*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuſcany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Accompt the Popes Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italie*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above one hundred miles, and in the length above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth moſt fitly for the command of all the reſt, it being very eaſie for the Popes to convey their forces by Sea or Land, into what part thereof they pleaſe. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of ſeveral factions; and that the Succeſſor purſueth not the deſigns of his Predeceſſors, but hath his own ends to himſelf, which for the moſt part are driven on without conſideration of increaſing the publick *Patrimony*; it is not poſſible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, conſidering the extraordinary fertility of the ſoyl, able to ſpare proviſions for the greateſt Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are ſo ſeldome conſumed by wars; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly thoſe of *Rome*, and the parts adjoyning) are conceived to be the beſt Souldiers of *Italie*; as retaining ſome ſparks of their Anceſtors valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatneſs of courage, which ſeems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preſerve alſo to this day ſo much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life, before Trades or Merchandiſe. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dreſſed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both ſides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little coſt might be made very uſeful: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of *Traffick*; which is the main defect of the *Papal Politie*, and filleth a rich Countrey full of poor and indigent perſons. But to proceed to the deſcription of the Popes Eſtate, it containeth the Provinces of 1 *Romandiola*, 2 the Territory of *Ferrara*, 3 the eſtate of *Urbine*, 4 *Marca Anconitana*, 5 *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabinia*, 6 S. *Peters Patrimony*, and 7 *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from the Dukedome of *Urbine* on the Eaſt, to the Dukedome of *Parma* on the Weſt, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*: and from the *Apennine* on the South, to *Padus*, and the *Adriatick*, on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Conſul, who having won it from the *Galls* planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he purſued this war againſt the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better paſſage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Cauſey, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, which are only borderers, 1 *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2 *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1 *Bononia*, (or *Boulogne*) ſeated in a ſpacious plain neer the *Apennine* hils, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building antick, ſeeming for the moſt part to be the work of the *Lombards*; the foundation of the houſes of Free-ſtone, the reſt of Bricks; built with Arched Cloyſters towards the ſtreet, under which one may walk dry in the greateſt rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief Univerſity of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much ſtudied here, inſomuch that from hence proceed the famous Civilians, *Johannes Andreas*, *Aza*, *Bartolus*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Caſtles in the air, which aſcribe the founding of this Univerſity to *Theodoſius* the 2. The Charter of this foundation

Romandiola.

tion dated *Anno* 423. is an idle and fooliſh thing. For there it is ſaid, that at the inſtitution there were preſent *Gualter* Earl of *Poictiers*, Embaſſador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither thoſe Earldoms, or thoſe Kingdoms were in *rerum natura*. It is ſituate on the River *Apoſa*, and was by former writers called *Felſina*. Near unto this Town in a Demy-Iſland called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome*, among themſelves: Which combination was confirmed by the enſuing Proſcription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proſcribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2 *Rimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and ſeated in a plentiful and pleaſant ſoyl, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs, and Olives: wealthy withall, the trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the moſt part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs; but joyned together by a fair and ſtately Bridge, built over it by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who alſo erected in the City a *Triumphal* Arch. It is ſituate ſomewhat Eaſt of the River *Rubicon*, which in thoſe times divided *Italie* from *Gaule*: upon the bank whereof looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar having on it a *Latine* Inſcription to this purpoſe, *viz. Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and paſs not with thy Forces beyond the* Rubicon; *whoſoever goeth againſt this command, let him be held an Enemy to the people of* ROME. Which Rule when *Cæſar* had tranſgreſſed, and ſurprized this City, he ſo frighted *Pompey* and his faction, that they abandoned *Italie* and *Rome* it ſelf, and withdrew themſelves into *Epirus*. It is ſaid that *Cæſar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Sooth-ſayers gathered, that he ſhould be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and ſeveral prodigies hapning at the ſame time with it, did ſo incourage him in his enterpriſe, that he is ſaid, at the paſſing over *Rubicon*, to have ſaid theſe words, *Eámus quo nos Deorum oſtenta, &c.* Let us go, whither the ſins of our Enemies, and the prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he cauſed a monument to be erected in this City, with his name and Titles. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and in the buſtles happning betwixt the Pope and the Emperor, was ſeized on by the *Malateſti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of theſe parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 3 *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made ſo much Salt, that they furniſh therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardie*: the Pope receiving for his Cuſtomes of this one commodity, no leſs than 60000 Crowns *per annum*. 4 *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, ſeated in a very pleaſant air, and a fruiful ſoyl, betwixt two freſh ſtreams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus*. 5 *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which groweth in the adjoyning fields, and the Earthen Veſſels which they vend to moſt parts of *Italie*. It was firſt given unto the Popes by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, whom they but ſorrily requited for ſo great a courteſie. 6 *Sarſina*, an old City, ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth-place of *Plautus* the Comedian. 7 *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelii*; and 8 *Ceſena*, Cities both of them of no ſmall Antiquity; but this laſt the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more ſtrongly fortified: there being a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an hill, the work of *Frederick* the 2, Emperor and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarſina* ſpoken of before, ſeem to be ſeated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*. 9 *Ravenna*, ſituate in the embracements of two rivers called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was once beautified with one of the faireſt Havens in the world, and for that cauſe made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Auguſtus* kept alwaies manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Miſenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* the other at *Miſenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* The wals of this City are ſaid to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Cæſar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Gothes*, who built here a moſt ſtately and magnificent Palace; the ruines whereof are ſtill eaſily diſcernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but ſtately ſtructure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of S. *Mary the Round*, whoſe roof was of one entire ſtone, and honoured with the rich Sepulchre of the ſaid King *Theodorick*: which the Souldiers (in the ſack of this City by the *French*, *Anno* 1512.) pulled down, together with the Church it ſelf, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the preſent, is the Church of S. *Vitalis*, the pavement whereof is all of Marble, and the wals all covered with precious ſtones of many ſorts, but unpoliſhed as they were taken out of Mines; which ſheweth as well the magnificence as Antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was ſo long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency, with the Popes themſelves: not brought to yeeld the place to the proud pretenders, til *Donus* the 2d. in the ſhort time of his Papacie about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reaſons, this City having been anciently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperor *Honorius*, and his ſucceſſors; next of the *Gothiſh* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and laſt of its Patriarchs. And it was choſen for this purpoſe, becauſe of the plentiful Territory, ſince covered with water; and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choked: though lately by expence of a great deal of treaſure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in ſome places turned to fruitful Fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleaſure.

As

As for the Fortunes of this Countrey, it was anciently, together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and some part of *Trevigiana*, the habitation of the *Boii*; who with the *Senones*, the *Insubres*, and the *Cenomanni*, made up the whole body of the *Cisalpine Galls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to bestir themselves, especially after the defeat given them by the Consul *Minutius*, who carried the war home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Cerolamus* their King, they set upon *Marcellus* the Consul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquished and subdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquished again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula*, with the loss of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Insubrian* and *Transalpine Galls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquished also at the battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardie*) *A. V. C.* 528. they were followed home, and utterly subdued by the Consul *Flaminius*, as before was said: after which times this Countrey following the same fortunes with the rest of *Italie*, became subject to the *Gothes*, as a part of their *Italian* conquests: whose Kingdome here was no sooner destroyed by *Narses*, but the *Lombards* entred. To give a stop to whose successes, and preserve so much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Justine* the second, to send thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the title of *Exarch*. His residence setled at *Ravenna*, as standing most commodiously to hinder the incursions of the barbarous Nations; and withall to receive such aids from the Eastern parts, as his occasions did require. These *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each some supreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it self (so far then was it from being subject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kinde (accomptable to the *Exarch*, and subordinate to him) whose Government was called the *Roman* Dukedom. That which they kept unto themselves, as their own *peculiar*, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Classi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarcino*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *District*, which properly was called the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Histories of the middle times, by reason of the continual wars which they had with the *Lombards*; but newly entred when this Magistracy had its first beginning. The names of these *Exarchs* are as followeth. *Romandiola.*

The *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*.

A. C.		
570	1	*Longinus.* 21
591	2	*Smaragdus.* 4.
595	3	*Romanus Patricius.*
596	4	*Callinicus.* 13.
609	5	*Smaragdus.* 3.
612	6	*Joh. Lamigius.* 4
616	7	*Eleutherius.* 5.
921	8	*Isaacus Patricius.* 24
645	9	*Theodorus Calliopa.* 10.
655	10	*Olympius.* 2.
657	11	*Theodorus Calliopa.* II. 30.
687	12	*Joh. Plotina.* 15.
702	13	*Theophylactus.* 25.
727	14	*Paulus.*
728	15	*Eutipenus.* 12.

In the daies of this *Exarch*, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, *Anno* 740. But regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*; as a requital for the Kingdome of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the consent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates; changed the name of the Countrey from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes injoyed not long the possession of it: the Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italie*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the last Popes conspiring with the *French* Kings, *Lewis* the 12 and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italie*, *Anno* 1509. and by their aids, and by the censures of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petit Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to S. *Peters* Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

2. The *Territory* of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*; extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: the soyl thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowings of the River *Po*; which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholsome. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the waters: yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a spring, and seconded with so great Landflouds (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuscany*, near the *Apennine*. 2 *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedome; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lords hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5. incorporated into this estate. 3 *Commachia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Esto*, were at first called only Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yeelded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fishing of Eeles. 4 *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for

Carpi.

Ferrara. *Carpi.* Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polesine*, the cause of so many quarrels and contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara*, and the State of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom, is in the Capital City, that which denominates the whole, *Ferrara*; a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth, and violent swiftness of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious mote. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty streets, all of them half a mile in length; and all so straight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Neer to this Market-place is a little Island, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone; not joyning unto one another as in other Cities, but at a pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Arioſto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioſo*, and *Hierome Savanarolo* the Prophetical Frier, were both of them Natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City, together with *Favenza*, was given by *Deſiderius*, their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the House of *Schwaben*, it was again recovere by the prowess of the Countess *Mathildis*, *Anno* 1107. who took it, with many other Towns in *Italie*, from the Emperor *Henry* the 4. and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the House of *Este*, a man of great sway in the affairs of *Italie*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the 2. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in *propriety*: His Ancestors being called before the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Popes of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grand-child of this first *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the first (who was willing to make what money he could of his lands in *Italie*) the Cities of *Rhegium*, and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes consent, *Anno* 1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of war; but none of them continued constant in their possession, but these three Cities and the Territories adjoyning to them. As for this Family *de Este* (*Familia Ateſtina* it is called in *Latine*) it took this name from *Este*, or *Ateste*, a small Town in the Signeury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the chiefs or Princes of it, they have been men of great authority and power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and sometimes the Popes: great favourers of learned men, and advancers of learning; insomuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Arioſto* and *Taſſo*, two of the greatest wits of *Italie*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of Christendom. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here subjoyned.

The Dukes and Marquesses of *Ferrara*.

1236	1	*Actius*, or *Azo de Este*, the ninth of that name, but first hereditary Marquess of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.
1264	2	*Obizo*, the sixth of that name, Grand-son to *Azo* by his son *Rinaldo*, second Marquess of *Ferrara*.
1293	3	*Azo* the tenth of *Este*, and II. of *Ferrara*, son to *Obizo*.
1308	4	*Franciſco*, brother to *Azo* the 2. after whose death, *Anno* 1312. *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.
1312	5	*Alobrandinus*, brother of *Franciſcus*, who had the Title to, but not the possession of *Ferrara*.
1315	6	*Reinaldo* the 3. of *Este*, and the first of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and cast out his Garrisons. 1317.
1335	7	*Obizo* II. brother of *Reinaldo*.
1352	8	*Alabrandino* II. son of *Obizo*.
1361	9	*Nicolao* the 2. of *Este*, and first of *Ferrara*, brother of *Alabrandino*, whose children being yong, he dispossessed of the Estate.
1388	10	*Albertus* brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the University of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1392.
1393	11	*Nicolas* II. base son of *Albertus*.
1441	12	*Leonellus* the base son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Estate, and held it.
1450	13	*Borſius*, another of the base sons of *Nicholas* 2. succeeded *Leonel* in the Estate; who being made Duke of *Mutina* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* also, *Anno* 1470.
1471	14	*Hercules*, the lawful son of *Nicolas* the 2. made Knight of the Garter by King *Edward* 4.
1505	15	*Alphonſo* the son of *Hercules*.
1534	16	*Hercules* II. son of *Alphonſo*.
1559	17	*Alphonſo* II. who dying without lawful issue, *Anno* 1595. Pope *Clement* the 8. challenged

lenged this Estate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by composition (whereof we shall say more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*. *Urbine.*

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns; now not so much worth unto the Pope, by reason of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of these Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illustrious Family, and for the strangeness of the Coat, I shall here put down) were Pale-wise of three pieces, 1 *Partie per Fesse*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle displayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Base *Azure*, three Flowers *de Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2 *Gules*, two keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Fesse* with an Escocheon of pretence *Azure*, supporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the second. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garnished with sundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3 as the first Counter-placed. Which Coat upon the falling of the House of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as descended of it.

3 From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Estate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and distinct Estates till these later times: this last the yonger of the two, and consequently (as in the ordinary course of Nature) the sinviver also; but swallowed at last into the Popedome as the other was. Bounded on the West with the River *Isaurus* (now called *Figli*.) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the East from *Marca Anconitana*; on the North with the *Adriatick*; and on the South with the *Apennine* hils, by which parted from *Tuscanie*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 miles, 35 in breadth: Some pieces and Estates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Signeuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The soyl is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholsome, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossombrune*, by reason of the low flats and overflowes of the water. The principal commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Pesaro*, sold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dryed Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that great battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Asdrubal* the brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which after a long and hot dispute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livie* writeth) and 5400 taken prisoners. *Polybius* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is, that *Livie*, to advance the honour of that Family, might inlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as secure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italie*. This famous River riseth in the *Apennine* hils and passing by *Fossombrune*, a Town of this Dukedom, fals into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Episcopal Sees) and three hundred Castles. The principal of which are, 1 *Urbine*, one of the most ancient Cities of *Italie*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Dukes ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* hils, in a very rich and pleasant soyl, built in the fashion of a *Miter*, and therefore called *Urbinas, quod urbes binas continere videbatur. Francisco Ubaldi* the first Duke, built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, repleniſhed with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with gold, silk, and silver; all scattered and dispersed, in the time that *Cæsar Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England*, which passeth under his name, was a Native here: an History of worth enough as the times then were, except only in such passages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whose *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whose credit and Authority he preferreth sometimes, before truth it self. 2 *Pisaurum*, now called *Pesara*, the strongest town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern art of war: the fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo* his son and successor; the ordinary seat of the Duke in winter, well garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armory. It is seated near the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Isaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handsome buildings, and a very strong wall; the soyl exceeding rich, but the air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here then Funerals, especially in the moneth of *August*; few of the inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3 *Senogaille*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, a strong and well-fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches; made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Channel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent water. 4 *Fossombrune*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for air and soyl of the same nature with *Pisaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateste*, for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5 *Cabo*, or *Cagli*, on the Sea. 6 S. *Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Countrey of *Montfeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7 *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Episcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortunæ*, from a Temple there erected to goddess *Fortune* (*Te facimus* Fortuna *deum*, as the Poet hath it.) 8 *Engubium* (now called *Angubeo*) a Town belonging

Urbine. longing to theſe Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and there we ſhall hear further of it. Of the Caſtles the principal are, *Marivola*, and the Rock of S. *Leon*, which were the laſt that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* againſt *Cæſar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinois*, ſon to Pope *Alexander* the ſixth; and the firſt which did return again under his obedience. For which cauſe when he fled the ſecond time from the ſaid *Borgia*, he diſmantled all his other Caſtles, as being more likely to admit than reſiſt the Invader; and theſe two laſt being very well fortified, he left to keep poſſeſſion of the Countrey for him.

Here is alſo within the limits of this Eſtate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINE*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a ſtrong natural ſituation amongſt the hils: an Eſtate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Varena*, till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Varena* the heir hereof, conveyed it by Mariage unto *Guido Ubaldi* Duke of *Urbin*. But the Pope pretending an Eſcheat for want of heirs males, made himſelf Maſter of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his ſon *Piero Farneſi*, whom afterwards with the conſent of the Colledge of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and ſetled *Camerine* on the Church, as it ſtill continues.

As for the fortunes of this Countrey, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, who only had the honour of ſacking *Rome*, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at laſt (of which more in *Lombardie*) and the Countrey peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italie*; till the time of *Conradin*, the laſt Duke of the Imperial Houſe of *Schwaben*, when *Urbine* was the firſt ſubdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whoſe Succeſſors increaſing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Engubio* to it. And in the buſtles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the ſixth, *Anno* 1345. *Gelaſſo di Montfeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperors *Vicegerent*. This Family injoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montfeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine*; when *Frederick Ubaldi*, for his ſingular and ſurpaſſing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the firſt Duke hereof: to hold as Feudataries of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of ſuch repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the ſixth made *Knight of the Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *Engliſh* to this day injoy many priviledges in theſe Dominions. *Guido Ubaldi* this Dukes ſon loſt his Eſtate to *Cæſar Borgia*; after whoſe death he did recover it again by the Power and favour of Pope *Julio* the ſecond; to whom ſucceeded *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, his ſiſters ſon, in whoſe Family it ſtill continues, as will appear by this enſuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of *Urbine*.

1444 1 *Frederick Ubaldi*, of the ancient Family *de Monte feltro*, the firſt Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the *Garter*.

2 *Guido Ubaldi*, ſon of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cæſar Borgia*. He was Knight alſo of the *Garter*.

3 *Franciſco Maria de la Rovero*, ſiſters ſon and next heir to *Guido Ubaldi*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Piſauro* from the Pope in reward of his many ſervices done unto the Church; diſſeized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.

4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catharine di Medices* the *French* Queen, and of *Alexander* the firſt Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the tenth, (being of that Family) but loſt it ſhortly after to Duke *Franciſco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Eſtates again, and died poſſeſſed of the Dukedom.

1538 5 *Guido Ubaldi* II. ſon of Duke *Franciſco*.

6 *Franciſco Maria* II. ſon of *Guido* the ſecond.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns *per annum*; but might have been raiſed to a greater ſum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and eaſe of their Subjects, before the filling of their own coffers. He is to raiſe 1200 good Souldiers out of this Eſtate; and more the people would ſupply, if they had occaſion. The Arms hereof *Azure*, a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces *Or*.

4 *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the Weſt with the ſtate of *Urbine*; on the Eaſt, with River of *Trontus* or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South, with the *Apennine* Hils, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North, with the *Adriatick*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, who poſſeſſed all theſe parts on the coaſts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the Eaſt, to that of *Auſidus* on the Weſt. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their war againſt *Rome*, they were invaded and ſubdued by the *Romans*, *A. V. C.* 485. which was about five years before the firſt *Punick* war, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were ſo great and multitudinous a nation, that they were numbred to amount to 360000, which were then brought under the command and vaſſallage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italie* was divided into no more then eight Regions, theſe *Picentes* only made up one; ſo did they alſo when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the ſixteen Provinces, into which *Italie* was divided by thoſe Emperors; and the ſame repute it held in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Piceaum* making alwaies one: *Aſculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* cals it, which was the head of their Nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province. Called in thoſe times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by

by reaſon of the abundance of grain which it did produce; and partly to diſtinguiſh it from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearneſs unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was firſt called *Marcha Firmiana*, from *Firmo*, once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of moſt importance in the Countrey; but by transferring the chief ſeat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, beſides thoſe named already, which are only borderers, are, 1 *Chientus*, 2 *Sentinus*, and 3 *Potentia*; all riſing in the *Apennine*, and paſſing with a ſwift courſe to the *Adriatick*. *Anconitana.*

The chief Towns, 1 *Ancona*, ſeated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, ſhooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor; one of the faireſt in the world, not ſo much for capacity, as the pleaſantneſs and beauty of it: the deſcents down unto the water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all ſides of it. The City it ſelf is begirt with hils; on one of which Pope *Clement* the ſeventh built a very ſtrong Caſtle, *Anno* 1532. under pretence of defending the Town againſt the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full ſubjection, who till that time, did yearly chooſe their own Magiſtrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Common-wealth. 2 *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Recina*) ſeated upon the banks of the River *Muſio*, renowned for the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Marts; and a vein of the moſt excellent Wines. 3 *Firmo*, ſurnamed the *Strong*, in former times of moſt eſteem in all the Province, which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*; and to this day, a place of great ſtrength and conſequence; and an Archbiſhops See. 4 *Macerata*, now of moſt credit, by reaſon that the Popes *Legat* keeps his reſidence there, and with him the Chancery for this Marquiſate. 5 *Loretto*, called in *Latin Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified againſt the *Turks*, and other Pirats who once ſpoyled the ſame, and might be eaſily tempted thither on the like occaſions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whoſe Chamber hither, in our deſcription of *Paleſtine*, you ſhall meet with a very proper Legend. 6 *Aſcoli*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, ſeated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furtheſt ſide of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is ſaid, and then called *Aſculum*, conquer'd by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, *A. V. C.* 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the ſecond battel between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one ſide, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having ſlain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with ſuch loſs on his ſide alſo, that he affirmed to ſome of his friends and followers, *that ſuch another Victory would quite undoe him*; and with ſuch apparency of valour and vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation; *O quam facile eſſet orbem vincere, aut mihi*, Romanis *militibus*, *aut me rege*, Romanis. This Town alſo was the ſeat of the War called *Bellum ſociale*, raiſed by the people of *Italie* againſt the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They, for a while, ſorely ſhaked the ſtate of *Rome*; but at laſt were vanquiſhed, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and ſpoyled. 7 *Adria*, now not otherwiſe famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoyning Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8 *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The ſucceeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5 Having ſurveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we muſt next croſſe the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedome of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Weſtern part of that Province which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the the deſcription of this, we muſt a little look on the ſtate of that. A Countrey bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the Eaſt parts of *Latium*; on the Weſt with *Tuſcia* or *Hetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with *Pareach* or winding of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*; and with part of *Tuſcanie*, which is now called S. *Peters Patrimonie*. So called, becauſe being ſituate under the ſhade of the *Apennine* Hils, it was *Regio Umbroſa*. Some give another reaſon of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, *quaſi* Ὄμβροι, as men that had eſcaped the Deluge; becauſe ſo ancient a people, that no body could tell the original of them.

But whatſoever was the reaſon of the name, they were a ſtout and valiant people, and gave the firſt check to *Annibals* career, after his great Victory at *Thraſymene*; repulſing him with loſs and ſhame from the wals of *Spoleto*: yet not of power ſufficient, for all their valour, to preſerve their Countrey from the *Tuſcans*, who are ſaid to have deſtroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly ſubject, yet ſo obnoxious to the will and pleaſure of the *Victors*, that at their inſtance or command they ſided with them in a war againſt the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours): and by the *Romans* were ſubdued together with the reſt of the Confederates then in Arms againſt them, *A. V. C.* 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Conſuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Countrey. After which time in ſuch eſteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italie* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; and finally together with *Tuſcia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedome of *Speleto*, it taketh up the Weſtern parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was ſaid, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which laſt (now called *Neora*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Countrey of a mixt nature, equally compoſed of very rough hils, and yet moſt delectable vallies; exceeding plentiful of all neceſ-

 ſaries,

Spoletano. saries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fœcundity of the women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the best of *Italie*.

De Spoletanis *quæ ſunt cariosa lagenis*
Malueris, quam ſi muſta Falerna *bibas.*

That is to ſay,

If with *Spoleto* bottles once you meet,
Say that *Falerno* Muſt is not ſo ſweet.

Places of greateſt note herein, 1 *Spoletum*, built partly on the hill, and partly on the lower ground; the reſidence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord Preſidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence the Countrey round about it was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is ſtill a Town of good eſteem, populous, and of handſom building; and hath a ſtrong Fortreſs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*: to which men paſs over a great bridge of ſtone, upheld by 24 great pillars, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Vally, but narrow and without any water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narſes*, but ſince ruined. 2 *Eugubium* (now called *Augubio*) ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently ſtood that City which *Pliny* cals *Iuginium*, *Ptolemy*, *Iſuvium*, utterly ſubverted by the *Gothes*. A Town well ſeated in a fruitful and wealthy ſoyl, and bleſſed with an induſtrious people: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that eſtate was ſwallowed up into the Popedome. 3 *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Plinies* time called *Alfatenia*, at the foot alſo of the *Apennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden veſſel. 4 *Aſſiſium*, or *Aſſiſe*, deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italie*, and only famous at this time, for a See Epiſcopal, and being the birth-place of S. *Francis*; the founder of the *Franciſcans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Gray Friers*. 5 *Citta de Caſtello*, anciently *Tiphernum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6 *Tudertum*, now called *Todi*, ſeated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful hill.

The reſt of *Umbria* towards the Eaſt, not being within the compaſs of the *Spoletane* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Romo*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, becauſe the dwelling in times paſt, of the ancient *Sabines*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius* then the King of this people; for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War againſt it, they were ſubdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Conſul, and made a ſubject Province of that Common-wealth, *A. V. C.* 463. But though the *Sabines*, at this time bare away the name, yet were they not the ſole Maſters of it in theſe elder times; the greateſt part hereof being poſſeſſed by ſome nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri* (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body, ſubdued together with the reſt of the *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the diviſion of *Italie* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nurſia*; and in that made by *Conſtantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*, *Reate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines, and Fig-trees: watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very midſt of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Lago di Pedeluco*) eſteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italie* by ſome ancient Writers, the waters of which are of ſuch a nature, that in ſhort time they will clothe a piece of wood with a coat of ſtone, and yet yeeldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fiſh. The Towns and Cities of moſt note, are, 1 *Reate* (now called *Riete*) an ancient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nurſia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2 *Nurſia*, a City no leſs ancient, ſeated amongſt the Hils, which for the moſt part are covered with know; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the Province of *Nurſia*, ſpoken of in the *Itinerarie* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3 *Magliano*, a pleaſant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. 4 *Ocriculum*, built amongſt many Fruitful hils, a mile from *Tiber*. 5 *Narnia*, the Countrey and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the firſt of all the Emperors not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The ſoyl about it is of ſo different and ſtrange a nature, that it is ſaid to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and duſty by Rain: the City well-peopled, and a Biſhops See, ſeated upon a very ſteep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got poſſeſſion, never left practiſing till they had got into their power all the reſt of the Countrey. Little elſe famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Weſtern part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dolobella* overthrew ſuch of the *Senones*, a valiant nation of the *Galls*, as had eſaped the ſword of *Camillus*, *Quinctius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the wars againſt them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (ſaith the Hiſtorian) *qui incenſam à ſe* Romam *gloriaretur*: a former ſlaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eaſtern limit of theſe *Umbri*.

5 S. *PE-*

5. S. *PETERS PATRIMONIE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is that part of *Tuſcanie*, which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the Weſt, with the River *Piſeo*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario*, and parteth it from the eſtate of the great Duke of *Tuſcanie*; on the North, with the *Apennine*, and the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the South, with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name preſently on the donation of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An.* 110. *Paſchal* the ſecond ſitting in the Chair of *Rome*, to be the *Patrimonie* of S. *Peter*, and his ſucceſſors in that See. A Countrey not inferior unto any in *Italie*, for the fertility of the ſoyl; but for the moſt part of an unhealthy Air, by reaſon of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanſe it. S. Peters Patrimony.

The principal Cities, and places of moſt obſervation, are, 1 *Perugia*, formerly called *Peruſia*; a famous Town, in which *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*; who, when they had in vain attempted to ſeduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which alſo at the laſt, yeelded to the more fortunate Emperor. *Auguſtus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, cauſed it to be called *Auguſta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. It is ſeated very pleaſantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful ſoyl; well built both for the publick and private ſtructures; a Biſhops See, and made an Univerſity *An.* 1090. In the diſtractions of *Italie* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, this City was ſeized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an oppoſite Faction to them, having got together a ſtrong party of Malecontents, ſo ſuddenly entred one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly: nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Maſters of the Palace, but the chain which was drawn croſſe the gate. One of the Souldiers going about to cut this chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cryed aloud, *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well underſtood by thoſe furtheſt off, put them to their heels; and the foremoſt, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was ſaved. 2 *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it is no ſmall terrour to look down from the top of it, into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightneſs, and yet the windowes of the ſame (if we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of Alabaſter, in ſtead of Glaſs. 3 *Viterbo*, famous for the long reſidence of the Popes, at ſuch time as they were affronted by the *Romans* Senators. 4 *Civita Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcellæ*) the only uſeful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of their Shipping. 5 *Porto*, ſeated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over againſt *Oſtia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both: a Biſhops See, who is one of the ſeven Cardinals which is alwaies aſſiſtant to the Pope. 6 *Farneſe*, the ancient ſeat and Patrimony of the *Farneſis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7. *Bracciano*, which gives the title of a Duke to a branch of the *Urſins*, a well-known Family of thoſe parts. 8 *Bacchano*, near the laſt in ſound, although not in ſite: compaſſed round about with Hils in the form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the middeſt; out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, neer which the *Fabii* were ſlain.

Here was in this Countrey alſo the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but queſtionleſſe of great wealth and power; in a War againſt which, managed for the moſt part by the aforeſaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were ſlain in a day, at the battell of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuſcans*: only one little child of them being left at home, who reſtored the houſe; and was the Anceſtor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preſerved *Italy*, in the wars with *Annibal*. Of which great ſlaughter, thus ſaith *Ovid*.

———*Veientibus Arvis*
Ter centum Fabii, *ter cecidere duo.*

———On the *Veientine* plain
Three hundred and ſix *Fabii* were ſlain.

This City of the *Veii* was at laſt, after a ten years ſiege, taken by *Furius Camillus*, and by him levelled with the earth; becauſe he found that the common people of *Rome* had a minde to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is alſo that fatal River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, (that people, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italie* by the ſweet taſte of the *Italian* Wines) ſlaughtered the *Romans*: the *Roman* Army at that time conſiſting of 40000 Souldiers, moſt of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withall ſo big-boned, that it ſeemeth they were born to be the terrour of mankind, and the ruine of Cities. Which overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquiſhment of the *Fabii*, hapning in one day, though in divers years, occaſioned the old *Romans* to put that day among thoſe unfortunate daies, on which they never did attempt any buſineſſe of importance. The like cuſtome, whether on ſuperſtition, or fear of ill luck, is uſed by many *Chriſtians*; and eſpecially on *Childermas* day: on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us that *Lewis* the 11. uſed not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a ſign of ſome great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvellouſly diſpleaſed with thoſe that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatſoever. In this particular, little leſs ſuperſtitious (if not more) then the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thraſymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearneſs

Campagna di Roma.

of it to that City) where *Annibal* slew *Flaminius* the Consul, and 15000 of his *Romans*: which fight continued three hours, with so great an eagerness, that the Souldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time hapned.

6 *CAMPAGNA DI ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italie*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and seat of *Rome*; so called for that it is adjoyning to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and precinct thereof. It is sometimes also called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly so called; the seat and dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the East with the said *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Axofenus*; on the West, with *Tiber*; on the North, with *Umbria*, or the new *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South, with the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Soveraignty and possession of the City of *Rome*; to which it alwaies did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is said, but subdivided into many petit and inferiour Tribes, such as the *Æqui*, *Volsci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquished piecemeal by the *Romans*, first under the conduct of their Kings and then of their Consuls and Dictators. Broken at last by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A. V. C.* 295. they became associates with the *Romans*, and so continued for the space of 100 years and upwards. But growing insolent on the sack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Consul yearly should be chosen by and from themselves; they drew the *Romans* into Arms: by whom subdued under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus*, and *Decius Mus*, then Consuls, *A. V. C.* 413. Subject from that time forwards to the state of *Rome*, but enjoying greater priviledges than the rest of the conquered nations did; excepting such to whom the like were granted by especiall favour.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-royal of the *Latin*, or *Silvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which war *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the stake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans*, to the *Horatii*; to the *Curatii*, by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each side; in which it hapned that two of the *Horatii* were first slain, and the third counterfeiting a flight severed his enemies, and so slew them; whereby the *Albans* ever after became subject to *Rome*. 2 *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his wife *Lavinia*. 3 *Antium*, honoured many times with the seat and retirement of the Emperors; the Countrey round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very strong in shipping, till the taking of the Town by *Mævius* a *Roman* Consul; who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with him into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other vessels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*) which have generally ever since been called *Rostra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volsci*, a people very strong in shipping, though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their retirements from the City, so that for pompous and stately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town long ago destroyed, sprang the new City called *Neptunum*, situate on a rock near unto the Sea: the steepness of which gives it natural strength enough; and yet it is fortified besides with two strong Castles, surveying the Sea, and commanding the shore. 4 *Ardea*, the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and seat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Æneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the last King of the *Romans*; to which when the *Galls* had taken *Rome*, the miserable Citizens were compelled to fly. 5 *Gabii*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose son *Sextus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*; by whom improvidently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6 *Ostia*, anciently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martius*, the 4th King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the enemies Ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7 *Præneste*, first conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much endamaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: for when the *Romans* in the times of sedition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others, *Marius* the yonger made it the seat of war, against *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unsuccessefulness of his affairs, here killed himself; and *Sylla* entring it as conqueror, put 12000 of the Citizens to the sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8 *Tibur*, and ancient City also, an seated in an healthy Air. It is now called *Tivol*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civil Nations may pretend a share; so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*: whose Master-pieces in this kinde do far exceed the rest of *Europe*. For in the Kings house at St. *Germains*, seven miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a Nymph, sitting before a pair of *Organs*: whose fingers by the help of water, are taught to manage the keys in so due an order, and the instrument to yeeld such a Musick to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the same; her head in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old Fidlers at a *Wake*; there being also not far off, the counterfeits of divers Mils, who very busily plyed their work till the Musick sounded, and then stood still as if inchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of water; each of them with a shell in his hand, which enterchangeably and in turns served in stead of Trumpets. In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth,

fourth, *Orpheus in ſylvis poſitus*, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wilde Beaſts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the waters only; the pretty Birds in every place ſo chirping out of their ſeveral and reſpective notes, that the hearer would conceive himſelf to be in ſome pleaſant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9 *Velitri* (called anciently *Veliterꝛ*, and then a City of the *Volſci*) famous for the birth of the Emperor *Auguſtus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place moſt delectably ſeated amongſt the Vines, which yeeld as rich Wines as moſt in *Italie*. 10 *Anxur*, ſo called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*; ſurnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardleſs*; firſt built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the ſeverity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here ſeat themſelves; after, a Colony of the *Volſci*, and at laſt of the *Romans*. But this town being deſtroyed by the tyranny of time, there ſtarted up 11 *Taracina* in the place thereof, ſeated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*): this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on the other, which is the firſt Port-town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Countrey hereabouts hath moſt pleaſant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the ſame time both ripe and Green Fruits, and repreſents a kinde of Summer in the dead of Winter. *Campagna di Roma.*

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the preſent, are 1 *Tuſculum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here compoſed his excellent Book, called the *Tuſculan Queſtions*. 2 *Formiæ*, built by the *Laconians*, heretofore the delight and ſolace of the ancient *Romans*, now viſible only in its ruines. 3 *Priverꝛum*, once the chief City of the *Volſci*, and the ſeat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulian*, in his ſharp war againſt *Æneas* and the *Trojans*, where ſhe loſt her life. 4 *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now ſtands S. *Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that ſo much celebrated *Sorcereſs*; of whom, and her chanting of *Ulyſſes* and his companions, there is ſo much upon record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circæan Promontory*, the repercuſſion of the Waves by whoſe Southern *Baſis* makes a dreadful noiſe; and gave occaſion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, *&c.* which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italie* only but of all the World, was that the famous City of *ROME* was ſeated in it, being built on the Eaſt ſide of *Tiber*; now much inlarged by the increaſe of 42 leſſer ſtreams or Rivers. It is diſtant from the ſea about 15 miles, firſt built, as Fryer *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma*, Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forſaken & forlorn, by reaſon of the unwholſom air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleaſed with the natural ſtrength of the ſituation, and therefore like to make a good Town of war. And this tradition I ſhould rather ſubſcribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleaſed to challenge to he honour thimſelf, might better have cauſed it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatſoever greatneſs it did after come to; it was ſmall enough (God knows) at firſt; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a mile in compaſs: the Territory not extending, as *Strabo* witneſſeth, above ſix miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the firſt general *Muſter*, amounting at the moſt to 3300 men. So inconſiderable they were, as well in quality as numbers, that their neighbours thought it a diſparagement to beſtow their daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themſelves wives by a ſleight of wit: proclaiming ſolemn Playes and Paſtimes to be held in *Rome*; and raviſhing the women which came thither to behold the ſports. The Kings ſucceeding much inlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other ſide of the water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Eſquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Cœlius*, came not in till afterwards. But at the laſt it was improved to ſuch an height, that in the flouriſhing times of that Common-wealth, the men increaſed to the number of 463000, and the compaſs of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the wals 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither ſervants, women, nor children, but men able to bear Arms, *Free-Denizens*, and ſuch as were inrolled into *Cenſe*, or the Subſidie Books. To which if we ſhould add their wives, children, and ſervants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and ſo *Lipſius* is of opinion, in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The moſt memorable buildings of it, were firſt the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the ſpoyls of their conquered Neighbours; ſaved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geeſe. *Tacitus* calleth this houſe, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, auſpicatò à majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the wars of *Veſpaſian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Veſpaſian* carried the firſt basket of earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the ſervice: and perhaps the cuſtome of laying the firſt ſtone in a building, or driving the firſt nail in a timber-work, by him whoſe edifice it is; hath from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2 Here was the Temple of *Janus*, open in the time of wars, and ſhut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely, during the reign of *Auguſtus*, after the firſt *Punick* war, and in the time of *Numa*. 3 Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* reſiſted the whole Army of King *Porſena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuſcans*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him ſwimming to the bank with joyfull acclamations, and ſaved their City from preſent ruine. Here lived the famous Warriers, ſo much renowned in the ſtories of elder times; here flouriſhed the exact Martial diſcipline, ſo memorized by ancient Hiſtoriographers; and finally here were laid up the ſpoyls and Tropheys of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it ſtandeth lower on the bank of *Tiber*, upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was

ROME. built after the inundation of the *Gothes* and *Vandals*) is in compaſs about eleven miles, within which compaſs is not a little waſt ground. The Inhabitants of all ſorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergy-men and Courtiers; that is to ſay, ſuch as have their dependence on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his perſon, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwiſe being of the retinue of ſuch Forein Ambaſſadors as are alwaies commorant in the City to follow the Negotiations of their ſeveral Maſters; all which muſt needs amount to a very great number. It was firſt built on the Eaſt ſide of the River, in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there ſome Churches and ſcattered houſes (except it be a little on the North-Eaſt of the River, from the Gate called *Del Populo*, to the Iſland of *Tiber*): the reſt, eſpecially toward the South, being taken up with Paſtures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it ſtands, is on the Weſt ſide of the water, and the *Holy Iſland*; conſiſting of three diſtinct parts or members. Of theſe the leaſt is that which they call *La Iſola*, but anciently the *Holy Iſland*; firſt made an Iſland by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*; which the Senate not vouchſafing to convert to any publick or private uſe, commanded to be flung into the River; where it ſunk and ſetled to an Iſland, called afterwards the *Holy Iſland*, from a Temple herein built unto *Eſculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurus* in the ſhape of a Serpent. This Iſland is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half ſo much in breadth; but full of ſtately Churches and beautiful houſes. Next to this is that which they call *Traſtevere*, or *Tranſ-Tiberina*, but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it. Called alſo *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Souldiers which *Auguſtus* kept at *Ravenna* againſt *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City; which by reaſon of the unwholſomneſs of the air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor people; yet compaſſed about with wals, except on that ſide next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and ſome handſome buildings. But the chief glory of the City conſiſteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North ſide of the other, but disjoyned from it; compaſſed about with wals by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1 the Church of S. *Peter*, which were it once finiſhed, would be one of the rareſt buildings in all the World. 2 The Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, impregnable unleſs by Famine. 3 The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compaſſed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the 5. and had this name from the fair proſpect which it hath: in the ſame ſenſe, as *Belvoir* Caſtle here in *England*, the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4 The Library of the hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican* Library: a Library firſt founded by *Sixtus* the 4. who not only ſtored it with the choiceſt Books he could pick out of *Europe*; but allowed alſo a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam* Palatinam *in* Vaticano, *toto terrarum orbe celebrem, advectis ex omni* Europa *libris conſtruxit*; *proventuſq; certos &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* ſacked *Rome*, *Anno* 1527, it was much defaced and ranſacked; but by the ſucceeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an Univerſity, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whoſe requeſt *Thomas Aquinas* profeſſed here. Pope *Nicolas* the fifth was a ſpecial benefactor to the ſame; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the *Greek* Learning and Language, which were in theſe parts almoſt forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treaſures of thoſe parts of Chriſtendom ſubject to the Popes authority: partly for the expence of ſtrangers, which do there remain on their ſeveral pleaſures or occaſions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhopricks, and *Buls* of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of *Court-holy-water*; and partly in the Penſions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Miniſters of thoſe Kings and Princes, which know beſt how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly ſaid, there came not more Tributes into *Old Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the *New* from the ſubject Churches, which have ſubmitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of *Religion*, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it ſaid by *Proſper* of *Aquitane* (if my memory fail not)

Roma *caput mundi, quicquid non poſſidet* Armis,
Religione *tenet.*——

That is to ſay,

What *Rome* ſubdu'd not with the Sword,
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the ſame againſt the bravery and aſſaults of all Forein Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but ſince *Pontifical*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was beſieged by any that did not take it. In a word, the City of *Rome* as now it ſtandeth, is but the carkaſs of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruines, and the cauſe of them, her ſins.

The Popes much brage of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of S. *Peter*; whoſe being there is indeed conſtantly atteſted by moſt ancient Writers; inſomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum conſenſum*, in regard of the unanimous conſent of

of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against so great a *Cloud* of unquestioned *Witnesses*, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Popes *Supremacy*, because he sits in *Peters* seat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tullies* eloquence, or *Cæsars* power, because he maried *Tullies* widow, and bought *Cæsars* chair: though the poor Gentleman did befool himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Lib. LVII.* And yet the Popes relie so much upon this fancy, of being the direct heirs of S. *Peter*, and all his preheminences; that all things which they say or do, must be entituled to S. *Peter*. Their Throne must be S. *Peters Chair*, their Church S. *Peters Ship*, their Lands S. *Peters Patrimony*, their Tributes and exactions must be called *Peter-pence*, their Excomunications fulminated in S. *Peters* name; and all their Buls and Faculties sealed *Annulo Piscatoris*, with S. *Peters* Signet. Nay they went so far at the last, that Pope *Steven* not being contented to be *Peters* Successor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himself. For being distressed by *Astulphus* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following stile. *Petrus Apostolus* JESU CHRISTI, &c. *i. e.* Peter *the Apostle of* JESUS CHRIST *to you the most illustrious King* Pepin, *and to all Bishops, Abbots*, &c. *I the Apostle* Peter, *whose adopted sons you are, admonish you that you presently come and defend this City*, &c. And *doubt you not, but trust assuredly, that I my self, as if I stood before you, do thus exhort you* &c. and *that I* Peter *the* Apostle *of God, will at the last day yeeld you mutual kindnesses, and prepare you* Tabernacles *in the heavens*. *Baronius* who records this Letter, *Anno* 755. num. 17. was it seems, pretty well perswaded it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Paræneſis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he stileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus idemq;* Petrus *vicem* Christi *agens in terris*, i. e. *Paul*, who is also *Peter*, and Christs Vicegerent. But leaving these imaginary claimes and challenges of S. *Peters* priviledges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages; two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of *Christianity*. Of which the principal, was the Orthodoxie of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere profession of the Faith of *Christ*; when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schism*, or wasted and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the *communion* of it much desired by all true *Christians*; and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this condition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and set it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of S. *Cyprian*, Romanos *esse ad quos perfidia non potest habere accessum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, Romanam *fidem* (*i. e. Romanorum fidem*) *Apostolica voce laudatam, ejusmodi præstigias non recipere*, in *Apol. cont. Ruffin.* and many others of that kinde. Which passages it were as foolish and ridiculous to apply to all following times; the condition of that Church being different, from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Elogies* and commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and *Panegyrists* of the elder times have *hyperbolically* ascribed to old *Rome*, in her greatest glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of suiters and attendants from all parts of the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honour to be resident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Disciples*, to solve more doubts of conscience, and decide more controversies, than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in S. *Irenæus*, in which he saith, *Ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potentiorem* Principalitatem, *necesse est omnem convenire Ecclesiam*, i. e. *eos qui sunt undiq; Ecclesias*. And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Principality*, than other Cities. But when that more potent *Principality* failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, first to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*; then did the Bishops of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, dispute with those of *Rome* for Superiority; the chief Seat of Religion most commonly following the seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the permission of *Mauritius* the Emperor, he took upon him the title of *Universal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is said that he was the worst Bishop of all that went before him, and the best of all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*: who sharply inveighed as well against the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for this Title; and plainly maintained, that whosoever called himself *Universal Bishop*, was the fore-runner of *Antichrist*. As for himself, it is probable that he took the title of *Servus servorum Dei*, more in opposition to him of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be so truly. To which though those of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not absolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John* the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch, for assuming to himself that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then either in the old Buls of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope *Gregory* would have assumed it to himself, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one succeeded *Gregory*, having further aims, applyed himself to *Phocas* that bloudy Tyrant: who having murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his wife and children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of *Italie*, which he feared was ready to revolt, declared this *Boniface* to be the *Oecumenical* Bishop, and *Head of the Church*. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron, do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

The Papacy.

Now

The Papacy. Now as the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency, of the Popes of *Rome*; by reaſon that they were reſpectively honoured with the Seat *Imperiall*: ſo were there divers other Biſhops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yeeld them any ſuperiority. For triall of whoſe claim, we muſt look back on ſomewhat which hath been ſaid before; where it is ſhewn that the *Roman* Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioceſes*, each *Dioceſe* being ſubdivided into ſeverall Provinces, each Province comprehending many ſeverall Cities: then that in every of thoſe Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defenſores*, the *Chriſtians* alſo had a Biſhop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the ſeat of the *Roman Preſident*, the *Chriſtians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each ſeverall *Dioceſe*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Dioceſe* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Chriſtians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim* of *Optatus*, *Reſpublica non eſt in Eccleſia, ſed Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth, and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Councell of *Chalcedon*, raiſed this ſuperſtructure, Ἐκκλησιαστικὸν τὸν τάξιν, *&c.* that the honours of the Church ſhould be accommodated unto thoſe in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equall power, each of them limited and reſtrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he preſumed once to act, he moved *irregularly*, and in his *Eccentricks*. And for thoſe *Primates*, I ſhall give you once for all this generall Muſter, that is to ſay, the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Dioceſe or Præfecture of that City; the Primate or Arch-biſhop of *Millain*, for the Dioceſe of *Italy*; of *Syrmium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *York*, for *Britain*; of *Toledo*, for *Spain*; and of *Carthage*, for *Aſrick*. Then for the Eaſt parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the Dioceſe of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Arch-biſhop of *Epheſus*, for the Dioceſe of *Aſia*; of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, or *Conſtantinople*, for that of *Thrace*; of *Theſſalonica*, for the Dioceſe of *Greece*; and of *Juſtiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongſt all which there was a mutuall correſpondence and *Co-ordination*, for the generall Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourſe, which they called *Literas Formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no ſubordination, and much leſſe ſubjection, unto one another; as doth appear moſt evidently by the Canons of the Councell of *Nice*, aſſigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the cuſtome of the former times. As for the *Dioceſe* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it thoſe ten Provinces, which were immediately ſubject to the Præfect or *Provoſt* of that City (an Officer inſtituted firſt by *Auguſtus Cæſar*) that is to ſay, the Provinces of *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucana* and the *Brutii*, in the main land of *Italy*; and the three Iſlands of *Sicily*, *Corſica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of thoſe Provinces by the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ*, by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer; ſo antiently the Pope himſelf was called *Urbicus*, or the City-Biſhop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. Bnt the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up dayly by a ſteddy and conſtant watchfulneſſe upon all occaſions, to encreaſe the Grandour of that See; and taking to themſelves the honour to be *Vindices Canonum*, the ſtrict and punctuall preſervers of the antient Diſcipline, which took extremely well with all ſorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at laſt the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at laſt obtained by the foreſaid *Boniface*, whom that cruell and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the ſixty ſixth Biſhop and firſt Pope of *Rome*: the *Latine* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* Πάππας, ſignifying a Father. A Title at the firſt common unto other Biſhops, as is evident to any one who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto thoſe of *Rome*. Of theſe Popes, their Succeſſion, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to ſee, agreeing exactly with another. The reaſons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1 The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2 the many *Schiſms* which have hapned in it; and 3 the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of thoſe times accounting him only among the Popes, to whoſe faction they were moſt devoted. This Catalogue enſuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmine*, and *Onuphrius*, whoſe differences I have reconciled as well as poſſibly I could: premoniſhing the Reader, that where the number of yeers which every Pope is found to ſit in the *Papall Chair*, make not up the full number from his firſt admiſſion, to the coming in of his Succeſſor; it muſt be underſtood of ſome *Schiſm* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Intervall, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occurre amongſt the Antients, in the firſt Succeſſion, ſome placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; ſome *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally ſome others putting *Clemens* the firſt: I know no better way to compoſe the ſame, than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that S. *Peter* and S. *Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; S. *Peter* of the Church of the *Circumciſion*, and S. *Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Biſhop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succeſſion in this manner following.

The Bishops of *Rome*.

A. Ch.		
44	1	S. *Peter*, Bishop of the Churches of the *Circumcision*.
70	2	*Cletus*, or *Anacletus*, Successor to S. *Peter* in the Churches of the *Circumcision*. 23.

A Ch.		
59	1	S. *Paul*, Bishop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.
70	2	*Linus*, Successor to S. *Paul* in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.
81	3	*Clemens*, having succeeded *Linus* first in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after, *An.* 93. succeed *Cletus* also in the Church of the *Jews*; reckoned by some the next Successor to S. *Peter*, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not distinguished from the other, till some years after *Peters* coming.

103	4	*Anacletus* 9
112	5	*Euaristus* 9
121	6	*Alexander* 16 *m.* 5 *d.*
131	7	*Sixtus* 10
142	8	*Telesphorus* 12
154	9	*Hyginus* 4
158	10	*Pius* 9
167	11	*Ancetus* 8 *m.* 9
175	12	*Soter* 4
179	13	*Eleutherius* 15
194	14	*Victor* 9
203	15	*Zepherinus* 18
221	16	*Calistus* 5
226	17	*Urbanus* 6 *m.* 7 *d.*
233	18	*Pontianus* 5
238	19	*Antherus* 1
239	20	*Fabianus* 14
253	21	*Cornelius* 2
255	22	*Lucius* 1 *m.* 8
256	23	*Stephanus* 3 *m.* 3
260	24	*Sixtus*, or *Xistus* II. 2
262	25	*Dionysius* 10
272	26	*Felix* 2 *m.* 5 *d.*
275	27	*Eutychanus* 8
283	28	*Caius* 13
296	29	*Marcellinus* 8
304	30	*Marcellus* 5
309	31	*Eusebius* 2
311	32	*Miltiades* 3
314	33	*Silvester* 22
336	34	*Marcus m.* 8
337	35	*Julius* 15 *m.* 5
352	36	*Liberius* 15. *cui vivo Felix suffectus.*
367	37	*Damasus* 18
385	38	*Syricius* 13
398	39	*Anastasius* 4
402	40	*Innocentius* 15
417	41	*Zosimus* 1 *m.* 4
419	42	*Bonifacius* 5
424	43	*Celestinus* 8 *m.* 5
432	44	*Sixtus* III. 8
440	45	*Leo magn.* 21
461	46	*Hilarius* 6 *m.* 10
468	47	*Simplicius* 15 *m.* 5
483	48	*Felix* III. 9
492	49	*Gelasius* 4
597	50	*Anastasius* II. 2
499	51	*Symmachus* 15
514	52	*Hormisda* 9
523	53	*Joannes* 2 *m.* 9 *d.*
526	54	*Felix* IV. 4
530	55	*Bonifacius* II. 1
532	56	*Joannes* II. 3
535	57	*Agapetus* 1
536	58	*Silverius* 1
537	59	*Vigilius* 18
555	60	*Pelagius* 5
560	61	*Joannes* III. 13
573	62	*Benedictus* 4
578	63	*Pelagius* II. 12
590	64	*Gregorius Mag.* 14
605	65	*Sabinianus* 1. the last of the *Roman* Bishops, not having that arrogant Title of *Universall Bishop*, or *Head of the Church.*

The Popes of *Rome* challenging a supremacy over all the Church.

606	1	*Bonifacius* III. 3
607	2	*Bonifacius* IV. 8
615	3	*Deus-dedit* 3
618	4	*Bonifacius* V. 5 *m.* 10
624	5	*Honorius* 13
634	6	*Severinus* 2
639	7	*Joannes* IV. 2
641	8	*Theodorus* 7 *m.* 5
649	9	*Martinus* 6
654	10	*Eugenius* 2 *m.* 9
657	11	*Vitalianus* 14
671	12	*A-Deo-datus* 5
677	13	*Domnus* 1 *m.* 5 *d.*
679	14	*Agatho* 4
683	15	*Leo* II. *m.* 10
684	16	*Benedictus* II. 1
685	17	*Joannes* V. 1
686	18	*Conon m.* 11
688	19	*Sergius* 13
701	20	*Joannes* VI. 3
704	21	*Joannes* VII. 3
707	22	*Sisinnius d.* 20
707	23	*Constantinus* 7
714	24	*Gregorius* II. 17
731	25	*Greg.* III. 10 *m.* 9
742	26	*Zacharias* 10
752	27	*Stephanus* II. *d.* 4
752	28	*Stephanus* III. 5
757	29	*Paulus* I. 10
767	30	*Constans* II. 1
768	31	*Stephanus* IV. 4
772	32	*Adrianus* I. 23
796	33	*Leo* III. 20
816	34	*Stephanus* V. *m.* 7
817	35	*Paschalis* 7
824	36	*Eugenius* II. 3
827	37	*Valentinus d.* 4
827	38	*Gregorius* IV. 16
843	39	*Sergius* II. 3
846	40	*Leo* IV. 8
854	41	*Joannes* VIII. *vulgò* POPE JOANE. 2
856	42	*Benedictus* III. 2
858	43	*Nicolas* 10
868	44	*Adrianus* II. 5
873	45	*Joannes* IX. 10
883	46	*Martinus* II. 1
884	47	*Adrianus* III. 1
885	48	*Stephanus* VI. 6
891	49	*Formosus* 4
895	50	*Bonifacius* VI. *d.* 15
896	51	*Stephanus* VII. 1
897	52	*Romanus m.* 4
897	53	*Theodorus* II. *d.* 20
897	54	*Joannes* X. 2
899	55	*Benedictus* IV. 2
903	56	*Leo* V. *d.* 40
903	57	*Christophorus m.* 7
903	58	*Sergius* III. 7
910	59	*Anastasius* III. 2
912	60	*Lando m.* 6
912	61	*Joannes* XI. 15
928	62	*Leo* VI. *m.* 6
929	63	*Stephanus* VIII. 2
931	64	*Joannes* XII. 5
936	65	*Leo* VII. 4
940	66	*Stephanus* IX. 3
943	67	*Martinus* III. 3
946	68	*Agapetus* II. 9
956	69	*Joannes* XIII. 8
964	70	*Leo* VIII. 1
965	71	*Benedictus* V. 1
966	72	*Joannes* XIV. 7
973	73	*Benedictus* VI. *m.* 6
974	74	*Domnus* II. 1 *m.* 3
975	75	*Bonifacius* VII. 1
976	76	*Benedictus* VII. 8
984	77	*Joannes* XV. 1
985	78	*Joannes* XVI 10
995	79	*Joannes* XVII. *m.* 4
996	80	*Gregorius* V. 3
999	81	*Silvester* II. *dictus Necromanticus* 4
1003	82	*Joannes* XVIII. *m.* 5
	83	*Joannes*

The Papacy.

1003	83	*Joannes* XIX. 6	1188	115	*Clemens* III. 3	1410	148	*Joannes* XXIII. 5
1009	84	*Sergius* IV. 3	1191	116	*Celestine* III. 6	1417	149	*Martin* V. 13
1012	85	*Benedictus* VIII. 12	1198	117	*Innocent* III. 17	1431	150	*Engenius* IV. 16
1024	86	*Joannes* XX. 8 *m.* 9	1216	118	*Honorius* III. 10	1447	151	*Nicolaus* V. 8
1033	87	*Benedictus* IX. 12	1227	119	*Gregorius* IX. 14	1455	152	*Callistus* III. 3
1045	88	*Silvester* III. *m.* 1	1241	120	*Celestin* IV. *d.* 17	1458	153	*Pius* II. *ante dictus Æneas Silvius* 6
1045	89	*Benedictus* X. *m.* 1	1243	121	*Innocent* IV. 11			
1045	90	*Gregorius* VI. 1 *m.* 7	1254	122	*Alexander* IV. 6	1464	154	*Paulus* II. 7
1047	91	*Clemens* II. *m.* 9	1261	123	*Urbanus* IV. 3	1471	155	*Sixtus* IV. 12
1047	92	*Damasus* II. *d.* 23	1265	124	*Clemens* IV. 3	1484	156	*Innocent* VIII. 7
1049	93	*Leo* IX. 5	1271	125	*Gregorius* X. 14	1492	157	*Alexander* VI. 11
1055	94	*Victor* II. 2	1275	126	*Innocent* V. *m.* 5	1503	158	*Pius* III. *d.* 26
1057	95	*Stephanus* X. 1 *m.* 6	1276	127	*Adrian* V. *d.* 19	1503	159	*Julius* II. 10
1059	96	*Nicolaus* II. 2 *m.* 6	1276	128	*Joannes* XXI. *d.* 8	1513	160	*Leo* X. 9
1062	97	*Alexander* II. 11	1277	129	*Nicolaus* III. 4	1522	161	*Adrian* VI. 2
1073	98	*Gregorius* VII. *dictus Hildebrandus.* 12	1281	130	*Martinus* IV. 4	1524	162	*Clemens* VII. 10
			1285	131	*Honorius* IV. 4	1534	163	*Paulus* III. 15
1086	99	*Victor* III. 1	1288	132	*Nicolaus* IV. 4	1550	164	*Julius* III. 5
1087	100	*Urbanus* II. 12	1294	133	*Celestin* V. *m.* 6	1555	165	*Marcellus* II *d.* 22
1099	101	*Paschalis* II. 18	1295	134	*Bonifacius* VIII. 8	1555	166	*Paulus* IV. 5
1118	102	*Gelasius* II. 1	1303	135	*Benedictus* IX. *m.* 8	1560	167	*Pius* IV. 6
1119	103	*Calistus* II. 6	1305	136	*Clemens* V. 9	1567	168	*Pius* V. 5
1125	104	*Honorius* II. 5	1316	137	*Joannes* XXII. 18	1572	169	*Gregorius* XIII. 13
1130	105	*Innocens* II. 13	1334	138	*Benedict.* X. 7	1585	170	*Sixtus* V. 5
1143	106	*Celestin* II. *m.* 5	1342	139	*Clemens* VI. 10	1590	171	*Urban* VII. *d.* 12.
1144	107	*Lucius* II. *m.* 11	1352	140	*Innocent* VI. 10	1590	172	*Gregorius* XIV. *m.* 9
1145	108	*Eugenius* III. 8	1362	141	*Urban* V. 8	1591	173	*Innocent* IX. *m.* 1
1153	199	*Anastasius* IV. 1	1371	142	*Gregorius* XI. 7	1592	174	*Clement* VIII. 13
1154	110	*Adrian* IV. 4	1378	143	*Urban* VI. 11	1605	175	*Leo* XI. *d.* 26
1159	111	*Alexand.* III. 22	1389	144	*Boniface* IX. 14	1605	176	*Paulus* V. 16
1181	112	*Lucius* III. 4	1404	145	*Innocent* VII. 2	1621	177	*Greg.* XV. 2
1185	113	*Urban* III. 2	1406	146	*Gregorius* XII. 2	1623	178	*Urban* VIII. 21
1187	114	*Gregorius* VIII. *m.* 2	1409	147	*Alex.* V. *m.* 10	1644	179	*Innocent* X. now living.

To these 179 Popes, adde the 65 Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of *Universall*, and they make up the full number of 244. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withall Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name S. *Malachy* one of the first Apostles of the *Irish* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Massinghams* collection of the *Irish* Saints, a certain number of *Mottos*, in the *Latin* tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those severall *Mottoes*: and thereunto this Propheſie annexed, that when so many Popes had sate in S. *Peters* Chair, either the World should end, or the Popedome fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared as well as my memory would serve me, and found the *Mottoes* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was, *Lilium & Rosa*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principall Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English Rose*, and the *French Lily*; in the Marriage of *Charles* K. of *England*, and Madam *Henrietta Maria* the Princess of *France*; which that Pope earnestly promoted, in his speedy and cheerfull granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of Impostur, this *Massingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Flemming*, and printed neer 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottoes* stood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottoes* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto*, to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottoes* more to come; by consequence if this *Malachy* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachy* was, just so many Popes, and then the Popedome to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* sake will abridge those dayes, and not permit the superstitions and corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Assertors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies*, tobe added to the former number. Out of the stories of all which (pretermitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some particular passages, for the better understanding of their state and story.

1. *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schismaticks* should be punished with temporall death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Eccleſiasticall dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long since antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus*, first brought *Organs* into the divine service of the Church of *Rome*, to be used with the singing or vocall Musick formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. *Constantine* was so generally beloved of all men, that going to *Constantinople*, *Justinian* the second kist his feet in sign of honour: which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example; and at last brought into a custome, as it still continueth.

4. *Paſcal* the firſt, cauſed the Prieſts of certain Pariſhes in *Rome*, by reaſon of their neerneſſe to his perſon, their preſence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now mates for Kings, and numbred about 70. but more or fewer at the ſole pleaſure of the Popes. *The Papacy.*

5. *Eugenius* the ſecond took to himſelf within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls, and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had uſed to do.

6. *Sergius* the ſecond, was the firſt that changed his name. For, thinking his own name, *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swines-mouth*, not conſonant to his dignity, he cauſed himſelf to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Succeſſors following, do alſo vary their names. So that if one be a Coward, he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheiſt, *Pius*, or *Innocent*; if a Ruſtick, *Urbanus*; and ſo of the reſt.

7. *John* the eighth is by moſt men confeſſed to be a woman, and is uſually called Pope *Joane*. To avoyd the like diſgrace, the *Porphiry chair* was ordained; *Ubi ab ultimo diacono, &c.* ſo that both in a literall and myſticall ſenſe, this woman may be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romiſh Chronologers* have not inſerted into the Catalogue; the reaſon, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & ſexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, theſe Popes that have called themſelves *Johns*, are ſo ill ordered; ſome making that *John* which ſucceeded *Adrian* the ſecond, *An.* 872. to be the 8th. and others the 9th. *Platina* only of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joane* as the 8th. of the *Johns*, and ſo forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might ſuffer that proud See to fall into ſuch an infamy, the better to humble the enſuing Popes, in the times of their greateſt ruff and flouriſh; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succeſſion, they ſo much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the ſtory in matter of Fact) he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in Mr. *Cooks* Book of Pope *Joane*; who moſt induſtriouſly hath anſwered all objections, which hath been made againſt it by thoſe of *Rome*.

8. *Nicolas* the firſt, the better to faſten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the leſs obnoxious to their naturall Princes; was the firſt who did by Law reſtrain them from marriage. Saying that *it was the more honeſt to have to do with many women privately, than openly to keep a wife*: and ſome of his Succeſſors followed it ſo cloſe, that a Prieſt of *Placentia* being accuſed to have wife and children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that ſhe was the wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again reſtored unto it.

9. *Adrian* the third ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth ſhould have no more to do with the Election, or confirmation of the Pope; but that it ſhould be left wholly to the *Roman* Clergy.

10. *Formoſus* was ſo ill beloved, and of ſuch a generall diſeſteem, that Pope *Steven* the ſeventh cauſed his body to be unburyed, all his Acts reverſed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carkaſs to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though theſe Acts of *Steven* were adjudged illegall, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Succeſſors; and the doings of *Formoſus* juſtified: yet *Sergius* the third cauſed his corrupt and putrified body to be taken once more out of the grave; and his head to be cut off, as if ſtill alive. So little did the *infallibility* of St. *Peters* Chair preſerve theſe Popes from falling into groſs and irreconcileable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the ſecond, that changed his name; a very wicked cruel, and libidinous man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatneſſe, cut off the Noſe of one Cardinall, and the hand of another, for that they had ſignified to the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, what a ſcandall all the Church did ſuffer by his deteſtable life; and finally being taken in Adultery, was ſlain by the husband of the woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperour, as long as it continued in a way of ſucceſſion, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withall incenſed againſt the *Romans*, who till that time retained ſome ſhadow of an Empire; projected the election of the future Emperours, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were diſtracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakned; and ſo a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Steven* the tenth brought the Church of *Millain* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for ſome time had challenged the *precedency* of them.

14. *Gregory* the ſeventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who firſt adventured to draw the *premiſes* layd down by ſome of his Predeceſſors into a *concluſion*: Excommunicating the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, for medling with the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhops, and cauſing *Rodulph* Duke of *Suevia* to rebell againſt him. A man much favoured againſt the Princes of her own Houſe by the Counteſſe *Mathildis*; who is ſaid to be ſo much his friend, that for his ſake ſhe left the company of her husband, and diſherited her right Heirs, ſetling her whole eſtates in *Italy* on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperour had the better of this Pope, and made him fly out of *Rome*, and dye in exile; yet he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf to Pope *Paſchal* the ſecond, (who had armed his own ſonne againſt him) to attend bare-foot at his door and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third ordained the bearing of *Candles*, in the Feaſt of the *Purification* of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemaſs* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth was the firſt that on *Chriſtmaſs* night, with divers Ceremonies did conſecrate Swords, Roſes, or the like; to be ſent as tokens of love and honour to ſuch Princes as deſerved beſt

of

The Papacy. of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requesting him to banish *Luther*: and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fift of *Scotland*, to engage him in a war against *Henry* the 8th. who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdome, from the Popes commands.

17. *Nicolas* the second took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the Colledge of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celestine* the second, was the Inventer of that mad manner of *cursing*, or *Anathematizing*, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, excommunicated the Emperour *Frederick* the first; and by raising war against him in every place, brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostrate himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, said aloud, *super Aspidem & Basiliscum*, &c. profanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperour, to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replyed, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoyned as angerly, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Councel in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes; and that no Emperour should be acknowledged, till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*; who when he hath dined, commands his Trumpeters to sound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a *Pix* made to cover the consecrated (but now *transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Auricular Confession* upon the people.

21. *Nicolas* the third was the first Pope who practised to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscany*; and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavil* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Popes kinsfolks or posterity; so afterwards they studyed no one thing more than to preferre their own blood; insomuch that they have not only laboured (as he saith) to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedome to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For so dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they use to call their Bastards) that it was very justly said by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Laws forbid us to get* Children, *and the Devil hath given us* Nephews *in their stead.*

22. *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is said, *that he entered like a Fox, reigned like a Lyon, and dyed like a Dog*; by his generall *Bull*, exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and payments, unto Temporall Princes. Which being complyed with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* the first put them out of his protection; and so the Popes Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the *Canon* Law, called the *Decretals*, to be first set out: and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee*, to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the sixt it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourse of people which repaired to *Rome*, to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperour; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all power *Eccleasiasticall* and *Temporall* did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that one drop of our Saviours blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet all that his blood was shed; the *over-plus* was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by St. *Peter* and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhausted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the insolencies of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papall See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the space of seventy years.

24. *Clement* the sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperour gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to such as formerly had usurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Malatesti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaffi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julio* the second; though conquered from the present owners in the time of *Alexander* the sixth, by *Cæsar Borgias* his sonne; who had an aime of setling them, and perhaps the Papacy it self, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh returned the Papall Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himself by Sea, in private, for fear of being withheld by the *French*: and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City so over-grown with bryers and bushes, and the principall buildings of it so decayed and ruinous; that a little longer absence would have made it desolate.

26. *Paul* the second endeavoured to encrease the Majesty of the Popedome by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predecessours in pomp and shew: causing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphirs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the splendour of the Cardinalls with a scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the 4th. had graced with *red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from 50 years to 25.

27. *Sixtus* the fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the first founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other side

he

he is said by some, to have set all offices and preferments to sale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stewes of both sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies *Psalter*. *The Papacy.* 1

28. *Alexander* the sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his sonnes. By one of which, the *Cæsar Borgias* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other estates from the present owners, on a design of setling them in his own Family, as before is said; and to that end called in the *French*, who after made such foul work in *Italy*.

29. *Julio* the second had more in him of the *Souldier*, than the *Prelate*, recovering many Towns unto the Church which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæsar Borgias*; and keeping *Italy* in his time in continuall wars. This is the Pope who passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keyes into the River; saying, that if *Peters* Keyes would not serve his turn, then *Pauls* Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Favourer of Learning, but of great prodigality, and vast expence. For maintenance whereof, he sent his saleable *Indulgences* into *France*, and *Germany*: which business being indiscreetly handled by his *Ministers*, occasioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luthers* Books, whom he declared for an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg*, with the Popes *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Persecuter, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichrist*. Which flame encreased so fast, and inlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the fourth continued the Councell formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and layd aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby setled and confirmed the *Interest* of the Church of *Rome*, caused it to be received as *Oecumenicall*: though the *Italian* Bishops being most of them the Popes creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest; and yet some of the rest also were but meerly *Titulars*. He added also a new *Creed* consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of these Ghostly Fathers we have said enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinall, for giving to St. *Peters* picture too much of the *red*, replyed, that he *had made him so, as blushing at the lives of those who were called his Successors*.

As for the *Temporall* power and greatnesse of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperour *Constantine*; by which the City of *Rome* it self, most part of *Italy*, and *Africk*, and all the Islands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Cracanthorp*, in his discourse upon that subject. But that *Donation* might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the same; considering how fearfull the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: insomuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned. For in that place the Historian not only denyeth the said feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned men reported, that *Constantine* and *Silvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then sheweth, how base and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it self, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2 That in the institution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporall* Sword, but lived as subject to the Emperours. 3 That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spirituall*, by reason of the corruption of their manners. 4 That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperours now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5 That *Pepin* of *France*, and his sonne *Charles* having overthrown the Kingdome of the *Lombards*; gave unto the Popes, the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about *Rome*. 6 That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, expressed the date of them in these following words; *Such a one the Lord our Emperour reigning*. 7 That long after the translation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open protestation, that the *Pontificall* dignity was rather to give Lawes to the Emperours, than receive any from them. 8 That being thus raised to an earthly power, they forgot the salvation of souls, sanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raise Arms, to make war against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to profane sacred things for their own ends, and to inrich their kindred and children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guicciardine* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principall importance; so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, so unlikely is it to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his sonne, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperour was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis* surnamed *Pius* is said to have been the first *Donor* of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*, subscribed by the Emperour, his three sonnes, ten Bishops, eight *Abbots*, fifteen Earls, and the Popes *Library-Keeper*: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasius* the Popes *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witnesse to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Politician and Statesman, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath observed in this case. "*Rome* (saith he) was always subject to the Lords of "*Italy*, till *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* were "enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, *An.* 430. or thereabouts. And talking of the estate

The Papacy.

" of the Popedome, *An.* 931. he ſtates it thus. In *Rome* were elected yeerly out of the Nobility two " *Conſuls*, who according to the antient Cuſtome ruled that City. Under them was appointed a Judge " to miniſter juſtice to the people. There was alſo a Councell of twelve men, which gave Governours " unto the Towns ſubject to *Rome*. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or leſſe Authority, accor- " ding to the favour which he found with the Emperours, or others then moſt mighty; but the lea- " ving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperours, ſetled the Pope in a more abſolute Soveraignty over the " City. And yet it ſeems they were not of ſuch abſolute power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard " with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells us in another place, That the ambition of " the people of *Rome* did at that time (*viz. An.* 1010.) make much war with the Popes; and that having " helped the Pope to drive out the Emperour, and altered the Government of the City as to them " ſeemed good, ſuddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more injuries at their " hands, than at any other *Chriſtian* Princes; and that even in thoſe dayes when the Cenſures of the " Popes made all the Weſt of the World to tremble, yet even then did the people of *Rome* rebell, and " both the Popes and the people ſtudyed for nothing ſo much, as how one of them might overthrow " the Authority and Eſtimation of the other.

But for the method and degrees by which the Popes aſcended to their temporall greatneſſe take here an extract of the Story collected out of the beſt Authors, by the moſt reverend Father in God the late Lord Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuit*. " The Pope (ſaith he) being choſen antiently by the *Clergy* and people of *Rome*, uſed alwayes to re- " ceive from the Emperours hands a ratification of that choice: inſomuch that about the yeer 579. " when all *Italy* was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the ſecond conſtrained through the ne- " ceſſity of the times, to enter upon the Popedome without the Emperours leave; S. *Gregory* then a " Deacon, was ſhortly after ſent in an *Embaſſie* to excuſe it. But when the *Lombards* grew ſo great " in *Italy*, and the Empire was ſo infeſted with the *Saracens*, and ſuch changes hapned in all parts of " the world, as that neither for the preſent the *Homage* of the Pope was uſefull to the Emperour, " nor the *Protection* of the Emperour available for the Pope: by this means was the Biſhop of *Rome* " left to play his own game by himſelf. A thing which as it pleaſed him well enough, ſo both he and " his Succeſſors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the " Emperours, and the greatneſſe of that City and place of his abode; he then found himſelf the more " free, the greater the Tempeſt was that beat upon the other. And then firſt he ſet himſelf to alie- " nate the hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperour; in which he did prevail ſo far, that *Theophylact* " the *Exarch* coming into *Italy*, was oppoſed by the Souldiers, who wiſhed better to the Pope, than " to the Emperour; and the Emperours own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Soul- " diers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten intereſt in them againſt their own Maſter. Next " he oppoſed himſelf againſt him; and about the yeer 710. Pope *Conſtantine* the firſt did openly af- " front *Philippicus* the Emperour, in defence of *Images*, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him *Gregory* " the 2d. and 3d. took up his example, and did the like by *Leo Iſaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* be- " gan to pinch very cloſe, and to vex on all ſides not only *Italy*, but *Rome* too. This drives the Pope " to ſeek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in *France*, that famous Warrier " againſt the *Saracens*. Him he employeth in defence of the Church againſt the *Lombards*, and the " Addreſſe ſeems very adviſedly taken, it proved ſo fortunate to them both. For in ſhort time it diſ- " ſolved the Kingdome of the *Lombards*, having then ſtood two hundred and four yeers, which was " the Popes ſecurity: and it brought the Crown of *France* into the Houſe of *Charles*, and ſhortly after " the Weſtern Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepyn*, the " ſon of *Charls*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to " ſay, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River of *Po*. So that now he " became a Temporall Prince. But when *Charles* the great had ſet up the *Weſtern* Empire, then he re- " ſumed the Antient and Originall power, to govern the Church, to call Councells, and to order Pa- " pall Elections. And this power continued for a time in his poſterity; for *Gregory* the ſeventh was " confirmed in the Popedome by the ſame *Henry* the fourth, whom he afterwards depoſed. And it " might have continued longer, if the ſucceeding Emperours had had *Abilities* enough to ſecure, or " vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a ſtrong Councell about him, and meeting with " ſome weak Princes, and thoſe oft-times diſtracted with great and dangerous wars, grew ſtronger till " he got the better; yet was it carryed in ſucceeding times with great changes of fortune, and diffe- " rent ſucceſſe; the Emperour ſometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperour; " winning and loſing ground, as their ſpirits, abilities, aids and opportunities were; till at laſt the " Pope ſetled himſelf on the grounds laid by *Gregory* the ſeventh, in that great power which he now " uſeth in and over theſe parts of the *Chriſtian* World. A power firſt exerciſed (ſaith he in another " place) by this Pope *Gregory* the ſeventh, and made too good upon the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, as " by Pope *Adrian* the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with ſome others, upon *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. And " others of the Emperours were alike ſerved when they did not ſubmit. And for this I hope his Holy- " neſſe was not to be blamed. For if the Emperour kept the Pope under for divers yeers together, " againſt all reaſon, the Popes, as *Bellarmine* affirms, being never ſubject to the Emperour, and wanting " force to ſtand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got power enough, may keep the " Emperours under foot, and not ſuffer them any more to ſtart before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of *Rome* was firſt obtained; let us next conſider of thoſe policies, by which this *Papall* Monarchy hath been ſo long upheld in eſteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1 Thoſe by which they have

inſi-

insinuated and screwed themselves into the affections and affairs of the greatest Princes: 2 Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate; And 3 those by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance. *The Papacy.*

1. Concerning the first. First the Donation of severall Kingdomes to them which have no right nor title, but by these Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them fast to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claime to that which they are possessed of. Of which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdome of *France* to the house of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the house of *Schawben*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2 The readynesse of their Ministers to kill such as resist them, cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their friendship, and hold fair with them: especially since by a Writ of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Soveraign; and without the charge of levying one Souldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent wars raised by them against the Emperours of *Germany*, and that against King *John* in *England*, by these *Papall fulminations* only; the poysoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Swinestead*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of *France*, by *Jaques Clement*; are full proofs of this. 3 Then followeth their allowance of Mariages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves uncapable of the estates they are born unto: And by this means they do more strengthen themselves by the unlawfull Mariages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawfull mariage of his own. Nothing more fastened Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the question that was raised about the Mariage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth; the lawfulnesse of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope *Julio* the second. 4 Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themselves induced upon reason of State, to flie off from those Leagues, and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, becaus dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankfull unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and stories. 5 Next comes the choosing of the younger sonnes of great Princes, into the rank of *Cardinalls*; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papall Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regall Patrimony. 6 And as by these courses he holds in with all *Christian* Princes generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; so hath he fastned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Countrey.

2. Concerning the second. So it is that their Estate hath the firmest foundation of any, as being built on the Consciences of men possessed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2 Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their disposing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks in *Italy*, half of those in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all such as are that way studyed, in a perpetuall dependence upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Priviledges, which those of the *Temporalty* are not capable of. 3 Consider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Fryers*, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monastery* and *Convent* being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spirituall Janisaries*; men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other mens cost, themselves not disbursing a penny towards it. 4 Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000 yeers to all that could say such a Prayer of S. *Augustines*; and that for every day, *Toties, quoties*. 5 Their practising on *Penitents*, whom they perswade in the very agony of their souls, that there is no salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6 Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony, by the invention of *Spirituall Fraternities*; which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equall them. Into these the *Lay-people* of all sorts, men and women, marryed and single, desire to be inrolled; as hereby injoying the spirituall prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more speedy dispatch out of *Purgatory*.

3 Concerning the third. 1 They deter the people from reading the Scripture, alleadging unto them the perils they may incur by mis-interpretation. 2 They *breed an Antipathy* between the *Papists* and the *Protestants*; insomuch that a *Papist* may not say *Amen*, unto a *Protestants Deo gratias*. 3 They debar them from all *sound of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatises, in which the Tenent of the *Protestants* is recited, only to be confuted: insomuch that in all *Italy* one shall seldome meet with *Bellarmines* works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4 They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from *Travell* and *Traffick* with *Hereticall* Countreys, or such places, where those contagious sounds and sights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5 The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquisition*, (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to *Spain*) crusheth not only the beginnings, but the smallest suspicions of being this way addicted. And 6 the People thus restrained from Travell, are taught to believe that the *Protestants* are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a professed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later examples of their dealing in this kind. First, the grosse slander of the *Apostasie* (or as they call it, the Reconciliation)

The Papacy. tion) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God Dr. *King*, not long ſince the Lord Biſhop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a faith and zeal, to give occaſion for ſuch a calumny. The ſecond, a book by them publiſhed, and commonly ſold in *Italy* and *France*, containing a relation of Gods judgements, ſhown on a ſort of *Proteſtant Hereticks*, by the fall of an houſe in St. *Andrews* Pariſh in *London*, in which they were aſſembled to hear a *Geneva* Lecture, *Octob.* 26. *A. D.* 1623. By which dealing the ſimple people are made to believe that to be a judgement on us of the *Proteſtant* party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a calumny in regard of us; and a ſad chance (I will not ſay a judgement) which befell their own, by the fall of a Chamber in *Black-Fryers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Druris*, a *Popiſh* Prieſt, and that too on the fifth of *November* in their own accompt, being the 26 of *October* before mentioned.

The Popedome being thus cunningly and ſtrongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been choſen young, or of the ſame Family, (ſo that the Succeſſor had not often croſſed the deſigns of his Predeceſſor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better eſtabliſhed, than ever the old *Roman* Empire was in her greateſt glory. And to ſay truth, I have oft wondred with my ſelf, that ſome of the more active Popes, eſpecially ſuch as were choſen young, and had the happineſſe to deſcend of noble Families; did never ſeek the ſetling of this Eſtate in their own Poſterity: eſpecially conſidering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in ſacred and in civil ſtories. The *high Prieſthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Sonne; and why ſhould any man think it inconvenient, to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the *high Prieſthood* in the Church of *Chriſt* to be alſo *hereditary*, not *elective*? The *Saracens* who were as great Maſters for wit and policy, as any thoſe Ages did produce, purſued that precedent; governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many yeers together, untill the *Sultans* their *Vicegerents* (ambitiouſly affecting the Supreme Command) rooted out their races. And if the ſame Obligation lie on the *Maſters* of *Religious* or mixt Orders, for preſerving the Rules and Statutes of their foundations; as is upon the Pope by the fundamentall Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it ſeems to do; why might not the Popes as well diſpenſe with thoſe *Conſtitutions*, and turn the Popedome into an *Hereditary* Eſtate; as *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, and *Gotardus* of *Denmark*, Maſters of the *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I ſee, but that ſuch an alteration as I ſpeak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of *Chriſtendome*, as the like change from an unſetled popular Government to an hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that notable Hiſtorian and Stateſman *Tacitus*, *Neque Provinciæ illum rerum ſtatum abnuebant, ſuſpecto* Senatus populique *imperio ob certamina potentium, & avaritiam Magiſtratuum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, poſtremo pecunia turbabantur.* The Provinces (ſaith he) diſliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the *Senate* and *People* had been long diſtaſted, by reaſon of the factions of the great ones, and covetouſneſſe of their Officers: the Laws affording no ſecurity at all, as being ſwayd up and down by force, ambition and corruption. The *Popedome* ſetled in one houſe, would prove more conſtant in the preſervation of all Leagues and Treaties, more carefull to preſerve the *intereſt* of their Eſtate, more uſefull to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occaſions, than it is at preſent: where the Popes ſo often change their ſides, and ſhift their factions; the Succeſſor many times eſteeming it his greateſt glory, to reſcind all the Acts of his Predeceſſor. And poſſible enough it is that *Cæſar Borgia* the ſonne of *Alexander* the ſixth, might have ſome ſuch ends; when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, that being declared Generall of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conqueſt of *Millain*; he ſhould be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malateſti*, *Baillons*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of leſſe note, did poſſeſſe in *Italy*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers ſudden death, and his own dangerous ſickneſſe hapning at the ſame time, cut off his deſign; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himſelf abſolute Maſter of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the ſame eſtabliſhed in the *Borgian* Family. 'Tis true, that ſuch an alteration would be very diſtaſtfull to the ambition of the *Cardinals*, who by the deaths (naturall or violent, it matters not) of the preſent Pope, aſpire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot ſee how all the wit in the *Concluve* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpoſe to poyſon ſome of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a meer miſtake of his Cup-bearer, had not poyſoned himſelf, (even in the very heat of the buſineſſe then almoſt effected) and ſo made fruſtrate the device.

But paſſing by this imagination of an *Hereditary* Popedome, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order obſerved in it. Now the election of the Pope is made moſt commonly, in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Vatican*, are among other buildings five Halls, two Chappels, and a Gallery ſeventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for conference, one *Chappel* for the Maſs, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the *Cardinals* lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purpoſely for the time, made of green or violet cloth. To each *Cardinal* is allowed four ſervants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unleſs they be ſick, ſtill to continue there; and ſuch as are once out, are no more permitted to go in: leſt by that means, the Cardinals ſhould maintain intelligence with any forain Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four locks, and as many keys. One key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Biſhops; one, of the *Roman* Nobility; and one, of the *Maſter of the Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at dinners and ſuppers, whereof the *Maſter*

of

of the Ceremonies keepeth a key. At this hole the *Cardinals* ſervants receive their meat; every diſh being firſt diligently ſearched, leſt any Letters ſhould be conveyed in them. As for the lodgings; they have neither holes nor windows to give light; ſo that there they make day of wax-candles: And leſt the Pope ſhould be made by force, both the City and *Conclave* are ſtrongly guarded. When the *Cardinals* are going to Election, the priviledges of the *Cardinals* are recited: which every one ſweareth to obſerve, in caſe he be choſen Pope. Then the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Maſſe: which ended there is brought to every *Cardinall* a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the *Cardinals* names. Before the Altar is ſet a Table covered with a Purple cloth, whereupon is ſet a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it ſix ſtools, on which ſit two Cardinal-Biſhops, two Cardinal-Prieſts, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every *Cardinal* writeth his voyce in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voyce into the Chalice, and departeth to his ſeat. The firſt Biſhop taketh out all the papers, and delivereth them to the firſt *Deacon*; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elector*) the name of the elected: and every *Cardinal* in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voyces every one hath. The accompt being made, the *firſt Prieſt* having the like Scroll, pronounceth who hath moſt voyces: which done, the *Prieſt* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* bring in a pan of coles, and burneth all the little papers, wherein the names of the *elected* were written. He that hath the moſt voyces (ſo that his voyces exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the reſt of the Cardinals: but if they exceed not this number, they muſt begin all anew. If in the ſpace of thirty dayes the Election be not fully ended, then muſt the *Cardinals* be kept from fire, light, and victualls till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which ſtand an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, beſtoweth his Fatherly benediction, and remitteth to them all their ſins. Then ſtriketh he continually on the ſame door with a *Golden Mallet*; which whilſt he is doing, workmen without break it open. The chips, ſtones, duſt, and dirt which falleth from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preſerved as choiceſt *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is uſually given to that Cardinal, who is in moſt grace with the new Pope. *The Papacy.*

This is the ordinary way of the Popes Election; but ſubject to much Faction and Diviſion amongſt the Cardinalls, and that in times of leſs deceit than the preſent are: Inſomuch as after the death of Pope *Clement* the fourth, the differences amongſt them held for two years and more. Which gave occaſion to one of them to ſay in ſcorn, that *they muſt uncover the roof of the houſe, to make way for the* Holy Ghoſt *to come upon them.* And there is now much more corruption and abuſe in it, than ever formerly; as buying of Voyces, ſetting up ſome for ſtales, and tearing Scrutinies; every Cardinall deſiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Princes Faction. So that we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinall, who after long abſence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that inceſſant prayers, as in times of old, ſhould have procured ſome fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Chriſt*: that finding nothing but canvaſſing, promiſing rewards, and threatning for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc modum* (ſaith he) *fiunt Pontifices Romani?* and ſo returned into his Countrey, and ſaw *Rome* no more.

The ordinary *Temporall* Revenue of the Papacy ariſing out of Land-rents, Impoſts upon Commodities, and ſale of Offices, *Boterus* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spirituall*, to be far beyond. For it is ſaid of *Pius Quintus*, who ſate Pope ſix years only, that he got from the *Spaniſh* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great builder, which ſpent him a great deal of money; yet he ſo managed his Eſtate, that he layd up four millions of Crowns in the Caſtle of S. *Angelo*. *Sixtus* the fifth took from the *Jeſuits* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent, (becauſe they were too rich for men profeſſing poverty:) and having ſate but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Succeſſor *Gregory* the fourteenth ſpent in leſſe than a yeer. Out of *France* they receive no leſſe than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England*, when it was the Popes *Puteus inexhauſtus*, they and their followers extracted no leſs than 60000 Marks *per an.* which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our preſent money; and was more than the Kings ſtanding Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of K. *Henry* 3d. before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late dayes, no longer than ſince the reign of K. *Henry* the 8th. beſides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual rent upon every chimny in the Realm, firſt granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, *An.* 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf* the ſecond Monarch of *England*; beſides their firſt Fruits, Tenths, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in ſome few years then laſt paſt, the Popes had received out of *England* no leſs than 160000 *l.* ſterling, for the confirmation of Epiſcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vaſt ſums they drew hence on all other occaſions. Let other Countreys ſubject to the Popes authority be accordingly rated, and the totall wil amount to a ſum incredible. Next adde to this the ſums of money they receive from particular perſons, for pardons, for diſpenſations with unlawfull Mariages; the profits ariſing from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great perſons, from the Indulgencies granted to Abbies and Convents; in all which the Popes have a ſhare; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to ſtate his *Intrado*. So truly was it ſaid by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, that *a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a pen in his hand.* Yet notwithſtanding, their Treaſury for the moſt part is but low and empty. For 1 the State they keep, becauſe of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for *the more worſhip the more coſt*, as the ſaying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards ſtanding them in no leſſe than 30000 Crowns *per annum*. 2 The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their *Legates*, *Nuncios*,

The Papacy. and other Miniſters, keep their coffers low; the entertainment of their ordinary *Nuncios* in the Courts of *Chriſtian* Princes, amounting to no leſs than 1200 Crowns a moneth to each. And 3 their greedy deſire to enrich their Sons or Kinſmen with the treaſures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus* the fifth, being of poor and obſcure birth, was never touched) keeps them alwaies bare. Add unto theſe the exceſſive gorgeouſneſs of the Papal veſtments (in which vanity every one ſeeketh to excel the other) eſpecially that of their *Triple Crown*; which muſt needs put them to great charge, and continual iſſues of their treaſure. And for an evidence of this laſt, we find that *Clement* the fifth, who firſt transferred his See to *Avignon*, to ſhew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine ſights) had his Crown thick ſet with *Carbuncles* and precious ſtones; one of which being loſt by a fall from his horſe, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the *Forces* of the *Church*, the Pope is able to impreſs as great a number of Land-ſouldiers out of his eſtate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italie*. *Paul* the 3d ſent to the aid of *Charles* the 5th in the Wars of *Germany*, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horſe; and yet raiſed his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*. *Pius* the fifth ſent to the aid of *Charles* the ninth, againſt the *Hugonots*, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe; which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raiſed out of his eſtate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, in leſs than a moneth; which was more then moſt Princes in *Europe* could poſſibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain ſo much (as before was ſaid) of their Anceſtors vertues; that there are thought to be many Families in the eſtate of the Church, able to furniſh all the Common-wealths and Princes of Chriſtendom, with ſufficient Captains. What, and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be beſt ſeen out of the aid which he ſent to the *Venetians*, at the famous Battel of *Lepanto*, wherein he furniſhed them with no more than twelve Gallies; and thoſe too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tuſcan* Seas, having all the Trade, and conſequently all the power in the Seas of *Italie*. 'Tis true the Pope was bound by the capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the war, and with the help of the reſt of the Princes of *Italie* (who were to march under his colours) to ſet forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horſe: which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by land, as the other is of his weakneſs at Sea.

Having a purpoſe in the proſecution of this Work, to mention ſuch particular Orders of Knighthood, as moſt Countreys have given beginning to; I will here ſet down the Orders of ſuch *Popiſh Spiritual Knights* or *Friers*, which his holy benediction hath erected, and fat allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monaſtical life*; and then we will make ſpecial mention of ſome of the *Romiſh* Votaries of both ſexes. Know then that under the ſeventh perſecution raiſed againſt the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus*, born at *Thebes* in *Egypt*, retired to a private cave under the foot of a Rock, *Anno* 260. Here he is ſaid to have lived one hundred years, and to have been ſeen of no man but one *Anthony*, who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the firſt that followed the example of *Paulus*; a man of a noble houſe, and one that ſold all his eſtate, that he might the more privately injoy himſelf. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the *Father of the Monks*. To theſe beginnings, doth *Polydore Virgil* refer the original of the *Monks*, and religious orders; the name *Monk* coming from the *Greek* μόνος, becauſe of their lonely and ſolitary lives. Thoſe of the religious orders are called *Fratres*, and in *Engliſh Friers*, from the *French* word *Frere*, which ſignifieth a Brother; and that either becauſe of their brotherly cohabitation; or elſe becauſe they are *Fratres in malo*, brethren in miſchief and deſign.

The foundation of *Monaſtical* life thus laid by *Paulus*, and *Anthony*; the world increaſed ſo faſt in *Monks* and *Eremites*, that it ſeemed neceſſary to preſcribe them orders. Hereupon Saint *Baſil* gathered them together, living formerly diſperſed; and is ſaid to be the firſt that built them Monaſteries. He is alſo ſaid to have ordained the three Vowes of *Poverty*, *Chaſtity*, and *Obedience*; to have inſtructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the ſervice of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this order there are not many in the *Latin* Church, but good plenty of them in the *Greek*. They are bound to abſtain from all kinde of fleſh, and are called *Monks* of S. *Baſil*, by the name of that Father; amongſt the Writings of which Father, the Rules for theſe *Monaſticks* are ſet down at large.

2 The next who preſcribed Orders was S. *Auguſtine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is ſaid to have obtained a Garden without the wals of *Hippo*, for private contemplations. Twelve only he aſſumed into his ſociety, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to diſtinguiſh them from *Monks*. Hence came the preſent *Auſtin Friers*, or the *Eremites* of S. *Auſtin*, as others call them. Of ſuch eſteem formerly in the Univerſity of *Oxford*, that all who took the degree of a Maſter of Arts, were to ſubmit themſelves to their *Oppoſitions* in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Auguſtinenſibus reſponderit vel oppoſuerit*, ſtill retained among them. Their houſe in *London* ſtood in *Broadſtreet*, of which a part of the Church ſtill ſtandeth, converted to a Church for the uſe of the *Dutch*; the reſt demoliſhed, and in the place thereof a ſtately Manſion erected by Sir *William Pawlet* the firſt Marqueſſe of *Wincheſter*, and Lord Treaſurer of *England*. Theſe make the firſt order of the *Friers Mendicants*. The firſt Monaſtery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William* Duke of *Guien*, *Anno* 1155: and *Anno* 1200, they began to flouriſh in *Italie*, by the favour of *John* Lord of *Mantua*. The other branches of this Tree, are 1 the *Monks* of S. *Hierom*, 2 the *Carmelites*, 3 the *Crouchet Friers*, and 4 the *Dominicans*.

1 The *Monks* of S. *Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, ſo called. They flouriſh eſpecially in *Spain*, where there are thirty two Monaſteries of them; their chief

chief House being St. *Bartholomews* of *Lupiena*; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of St. *Austin*. Their Robe is a white Cassock, under a tawny Cloak. *The Papacy.*

2 The *Carmelites*, so called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John* the *Baptist*. They only allowed at first the Rule of S. *Basil*; and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to S. *James*, where they had their first *Convent*; and by us, the *White Friers*, from the colour of their habit. Their House in *London* stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of S. *Austin*, by *Donna Eresba* (or *Teresa*) a *Spanish* woman; who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1565.

3 The *Friers* of S. *Crosse*, *Crossed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Hierusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the Cross was hidden; hence this Order; which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Urban* the second, and afterwards by *Innocent* the third, under the rule of S. *Austin*. Their Robe is Watchet, and in their hands they carry the figure of the Cross. Their house in *London* near the *Tower*, still retains its name.

4 The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were instituted by S. *Dominick* a *Spaniard*. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of S. *Austin*, *Anno* 1206, and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the fartheſt parts of the world; which both they did, and their successors since have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black Friers*, from the colour of their habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their house in *London* stood neer *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is still called *Black Friers*; though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

3 The third that prescribed Orders was S. *Benedict*, born at *Nursia*, in the *Dutchy* of *Spoleto*, *Anno* 472. He gathered the *Monks* of *Italie* together, gave them a Rule in writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks* of S. *Benedict*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, and 50000 Canonized Saints. Their habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the same; an under-garment of white woollen, and boots on their legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1 the *Monks* of *Clugnia*, 2 of *Carthusia*, 3 of *Cisteaux*, 4 the *Celestines*.

1 The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are so called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*; the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, *Anno* 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperors, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reformations (which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregation* of *Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapiters, and dispatch their common businesses, when and as often as they pleased.

2 The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a *German* Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Daulphine*, *Anno* 1080. His followers, which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no flesh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together but on Sundaies. Their house in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-house* (the *Monks* themselves being corruptly called the *Charter-house Monks*) now better known by the name of *Suttons Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3 The *Monks* of *Cisteaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Molesme*, *Anno* 1090 or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the most religious of his Covent, retired to *Cisteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order; who built and repaired for them 160 Abbeys. Their Robe is a white Cassock, girt with a Girdle of wool, the rest black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their habits.

4 The *Celestines* owe their original to *Peter de Moron*, a *Samnite*, born *Anno* 1250; who being afterwards for his sanctity chose Pope, was called *Celestine* the fifth. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* the 11. There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

4 The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was St. *Francis* of *Assis* in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his first profession, unto the study of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himself very penitently: whereupon, great store of Disciples following him, he gave them a Rule in writing; by which they are bound to profess absolute beggery, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more victuals then will for the present serve themselves and their Brethren. This they observe punctually in their own persons, but give themselves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without scruple. S. *Francis* desired they should be called *Minors*, to shew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciscans* by the name of their Founder. By the *French* called *Cordeliers*, because of the knotty Cord which they wear about them instead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their house in *London* stood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloysters, and some other the publick Offices do still stand entire; the whole converted to an Hospital for poor Children by King *Edward* the sixth, in the latter end of his reign, now best known by the name of *Christ Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent* the 3d *Anno* 1212, and is the fourth and last of the *Friers mendicants*.

The Papacy. cants, or *begging Friers*. The other principal children of this Father, are 1 the *Minimes*; and 2 the *Capouchins*.

1 The *Friers Minimes*, were first founded by *Franciscus de Pola*, a *Neapolitan*, *Anno* 1450. according to a corrected copy of the Rule of S. *Francis* of *Assis*. His followers keep alwaies a true Lenten fast, unless in case of sickness. Their Robe is a dark tawney, an hood of the same hanging to their girdles.

2 The *Capouchins*, (so called from their cowle or *capouch*) were ordained by one *Matthew Basci* of *Ancona*. Frier *Lewis* his companion, obtained for them of the Pope, the habit and rule of S. *Francis*, *Anno* 1526. In the space of 42 years they increased to 2240 associates, had 222 Monasteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to spend their time in prayer; and are generally thought to be the devoutest of all the Orders *Monastical*.

I should now speak of the *Jesuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any rule; as being a people neither simply *Lay* nor *Priests*, nor meerly *secular*, nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the wars, was lamed in one of his legs: after which maim betaking himself to the study of Religion, he framed this order, consisting at the first of ten only. *Paul* the third did confirm it, *Anno* 1540. confining the number within sixty: which he after inlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greatest Politicians, soundest Scholars, and chiefest upholders of the *Romish* See: so that the only way to re-establish the *Romish* Religion in any Land, is to plant a Colledge of *Jesuites* in it. To the three vowes of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chastity*, common to all other orders; *Ignatius* at the institution of this, added the vow of *Mission*: whereby his followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reason, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatsoever, whether it be undertaking some tedious voyage, for the propagation of the *Romish* Religion, or the massacring of any Prince whose life is a hinderance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jesuite* being in the midst of his Mass, which they call the sacrifice of the Altar, was sent for by *Ignatius*; to whom leaving off his Mass he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no business wherein to imploy him, told him, he only sent for him to try his obedience; and withall profanely added, that *obedience is better than sacrifice*: and this is called the blinde obedience of the *Jesuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greatest disturbers of the quiet of *Europe*, I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, say many times, that till the *Jesuites* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peevish *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in Christendome; with what a true presaging spirit, the event hath shewed.

Corrivals with the *Jesuites* in power and learning, and almost coætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, *Anno* 1564. Who marking the great sway which the *Jesuites* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally ballanced by some other of as much ability; first established this, consisting altogether of Priests; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cæsar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Bishop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three first whom he admitted to his Rule: initiated in S. *Hieroms* Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius* the fourth with great zeal and cheerfulness; to whom, as to some of his Predecessors, the power and practises of the *Jesuites* were become suspicious. They increased speedily (being countenanced on so good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue: as much esteemed of for their knowledge in *Ecclesiastical History*, and *Practical Divinity*; as the others for Philosophy, Tongues, and the study of Controversies; and more accepted of in most places, because not usually intermedling in affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jesuites* could not obtain the *Canonization* of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* also: which hapned in the short Popedom of *Gregory* the 15. *Anno* 1622.

To conclude this discourse of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will say somewhat of the severest kinde of *Recluse*, which is the *Anachoret*, or *Anchoret*, so called from ἀναχωρέω, because they use to live retired from company. They are kept in a close place, where they must dig their graves with their nails; badly clad, and worse dieted; not to be pitied for all that, because their restraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be sorrowed for in this, that after such an earthly *Purgatory*, they shall finde in stead of an *Euge bone serve*, a *Quis quæsivit hæc de manibus vestris*.

But concerning these Orders of Monks and Friers, certain it is, that at their first institution they were a People much reverenced for their holy life; as men that for Christs sake had abandoned all the Pomps and Vanities of the world. And questionless they were then a People altogether mortified, and who by their very aspects would gain upon the affection of the hardest heart; insomuch that not only mean men, but great personages also did desire to be buried in a Friers weeds; as *Francis* the 2d Marquess of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italie*, *Isabel* the renowned Queen of *Castile* and *Aragon*, wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholick; and in late times the great Scholar *Christopher Longolius*. But as *Florus* saith of the Civil Wars between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, *Causa hujus Belli, eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; we may say also of these Friers. The greatness of their wealth, which many on a superstitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them first to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchlesness of their credits, and consequently into contempt: so that there was not a people under heaven that was more infamous in themselves, or more scornfully abused by others. Hence the vulgar sayings of the people, that *Friers wear crosses on their breasts, because they have none in their hearts*; and that, *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*;

and

and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas Moor*, who loſt his head in the Popes quarrel, ſticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errones maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and ſturdy Beggers. Now to ſhew both the humours of Reſpect, and Contempt, uſed ſeverally to theſe *Monks* and *Friers*, as men ſtood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir *Thomas* his wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle, ſhewed it to her husband with great joy, ſaying, *Behold*, Sir *Thomas*, *a ſtep towards Heaven*: whereunto with a ſcornful laugh he returned this anſwer, that *he feared that ſtep would not bring her a ſtep higher*. And as for their retiredneſs and ſolitary courſe of life; ſo it is that many Kings, eſpecially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchie*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Barclay* in his *Argenis*, under the perſon of *Anarcheſtus*, hath defended it in ſuch Princes, as have cloyſtered themſelves to enjoy the ſolitude of a Convent. Which notwithſtanding, Philoſophers have defined a man to be ζῶον πολιτικὸν, a Creature principally made for civil converſation; the Poets ſay, *Naſcitur indignè per quem non naſcitur alter*; that he dyeth indebted to the world, who leaveth no poſterity behinde him: and the *Jewes*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it ſelf, abhor this unſociable kinde of living, and prefer a civil ſociableneſs much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and conſequently to God more acceptable. And having ſpoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, deſcend we now unto the *Nuns*

The Papacy.

And indeed I ſhould much wrong the *Friers*, if I ſhould deprive them of the company of their deareſt *Votaries*; and therefore take ſomewhat of them alſo. Called anciently *Moniales* from the *Greek* word Μόνος, from their living alone; whence we alſo had the names of *Monks* and *Monaſteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Egyptian* word, (for *Ægypt* in old times was not meanly furniſhed with ſuch *Eremites*) which alſo ſignifieth a ſolitary and lonely life. A word in ſome of the barbarous *Latines* very much in uſe. *Scholaſtica* the Siſter of S. *Benedict*, was the firſt who collected them into companies, and preſcribed them Rules. They are ſhaved as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetual poverty and *Virginity*. Which laſt how well they keep, let *Clemangis* teſtifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam* velare *idem eſt ac publicè eam ad* ſcortandum *exponere*: to veil a Nun, and proſtitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinſon*, who lived for a time in the *Engliſh* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us that he found an hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many new-born children, which their unnatural Mothers had murthered and thrown in there. But of theſe I will inſtance only in two Orders, *viz.* that of S. *Clare*, as being the ſtricteſt; and that of S. *Brigit*, which injoyeth moſt liberty.

1 S. *Clare* was a Knights daughter of *Aſſis*, where S. *Francis* was born, with whom ſhe was co-temporary, and with whoſe auſtere life ſhe was ſo affected, that ſhe forſook her Fathers houſe, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirris* of that *Frier-monger*, ſhe deviſed an Order of Religious women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius* the third, *Anno* 1225. Her followers vow *Poverty* and *Virginity*; as before was ſaid, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more ſtraightned in their courſe of life, than thoſe of any other Order. By their Foundreſs, out of a deſire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of S. *Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Minores*, and gave name to the place near the Tower-hill in *London*, where they had their houſe, called from them the *Minories*.

2 S. *Brigit* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban* the third, *Anno* 1370. or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in ſome places live together. For being a Woman and a Widow ſhe knew beſt, (as it ſeemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and ſo deviſed ſuch a Rule, as contented both. But little needed this cohabitation or living together, under the ſhelter of the ſame roof. For they had formerly been joyned in carnal affections, though parted by wals, neither were the *viſitations* of the *Friers* ſo fruitleſs, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. Theſe *Friers* and *Nuns* though they lived under the ſame roof, are prohibited from coming to one another, but on ſpecial occaſions: the *Foundreſs* ſo ordering it that the *Nuns* ſhould lie in the upper rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confeſſor* alſo is denied acceſs into their chambers, but ſhrieveth them through an *Iron-Gate*, by which his lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbeſſe's*. And herein lyeth the *Myſtery of Iniquity*. For *Robinſon*, whom before I named, tels us, that at the time of his ſervice in the *Engliſh Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, he was ſhewed a way, by which this uncharitable Grate, which ſeemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *female friends*, might be and was on ſuch occaſions uſually removed, and the acceſs made free and open to each others beds. Which if it be truly ſaid of theſe, may be ſuſpected alſo in all the reſt of this Order, and in moſt alſo of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which beſides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their preſent ſubſiſtence; are kept in a continual hope and poſſibility of attaining to the higheſt honours which that Church can give, if they continue conſtant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2 *Provincial* of his Order, in that Countrey where he liveth; 3 and then the General of his Order. Next, none more likely then the Generals to be choſen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of neceſſity muſt be choſen (and why not he, as well as any of the pack?) to be Pope of *Rome*. So firm and ſweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the laſt thing which leaves him, it makes all toyls ſupportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Arch-Biſhops 44 Biſhops 57.

The

Venice.

The Signeurie of VENICE.

NOrth of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alpes*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*; bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romandiola*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedom of *Millaine*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alpes*; and on the Eaſt, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arſia*, by which laſt parted from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province. Beſides which it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Iſlands of *Candi*, *Corfu*, *Cephalenia*, *Ithaca*, *Zant*, *Cithera*, and certain others of leſs note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thouſand miles, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The nature of the ſoyl, and the principal Rivers which refreſh it, we ſhall ſee anon in the deſcription of the Provinces into which divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may beſt be taken: it being ſaid proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themſelves are ſtately, crafty, and greedy; the *Veronians*, ſtudious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincentians* eager on revenge; thoſe of *Friuli*, grateful, but inconſtant; thoſe of *Hiſtria*, neither long-livers, nor of very great courage. That in the conduct of a war, thoſe of *Venice* bring ſilver, thoſe of *Treviſo* ſwords; that the *Breſcians* are fit to dig in trenches, thoſe of *Bergomo* to lay ambuſhes, thoſe of *Padua* to manage horſes. And of the women it is ſaid, that thoſe of *Crema* are deceitful, thoſe of *Venice* inſolent, thoſe of *Vincentia* conſtant, thoſe of *Verona* gracious, thoſe of *Treviſo* jealous, thoſe of *Breſcia* diligent, and the *Bergomaſque* crafty.

But not to dally longer in theſe proverbial characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is that the *Venetians* themſelves do affect a great deal of gravity in their actions, ſpeak very little at the table; very ſevere where they have authority, and many times in the exceſs. And yet ſuch is the conſtant temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing Juſtice, that they are very well well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their ſubjects (notwithſtanding the heavie preſſures which are laid upon them) as well in *Italie* as without. Eſteemed in former times good Souldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining wars continually with the *Turks* in *Paleſtine*; the Emperors of *Conſtantinople* in *Greece* it ſelf; the *Genoeſe* by ſea, and their neighbours of *Italie* in this Continent. But of late times they have more ſtudied to preſerve, than inlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of money, than the loſs of bloud; and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this laſt kinde of practiſe, that *Machiavel* obſerved of them in his time, that *whatſoever they loſt by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we ſhall ſee anon.

To proceed now to the deſcription of ſuch of the Provinces and Eſtates of this Common-wealth, as paſs under the accompt of *Italie*, they are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, 1 *Marca Trevigiana*, 2 *Friuli*, 3 *Hiſtria*, 4 the *Italian* Iſles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Eſtate to be conſidered in their proper places.

1 *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South, with the River *Atheſis*, and the moſt Northern Branch of the *Po*, which from ſome lime-kils near adjoyning, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romagna*; on the Weſt, with the Rivers *Mincius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda* from a little Town of that name adjoyning) by which parted from the *Dutchy* of *Millaine*; on the Eaſt, with *Friuli*, and the *Golf* of *Venice*; and on the North, with the *Alpes* which divide it from *Tirolis*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Auguſtus Cæſar*, this tract together with *Friuli* the next neighbouring Province had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants hereof; and by that name made one of thoſe eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italie*. How it obtained this new name, we ſhall ſee anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1 *Brenta*, called anciently *Medvacus Major*, which riſing in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, paſſeth into the Sea near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2 *Bachilio*, called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riſeth alſo in the *Alpes*, and paſſing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Brenta*. And 3 *Atheſis*, now called *Adige*, which ſpringeth alſo out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many leſſer ſtreams into its channel, paſſeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one fals into the Sea, the other loſeth it ſelf in the midſt of the Mariſhes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1 *Vincentia*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians* on this ſide of the *Apennine*; pleaſantly ſeated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all ſtore of fruits, and yeelding an excellent kinde of wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the moſt part of poliſhed ſtone, whereof the fields adjoyning afford ſpecial Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an induſtrious people, making great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themſelves, and ſupply their Neighbours. 2 *Treviſo*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midſt of a large and ſpacious plain, abounding even to admiration, with moſt excellent wheat, and all other neceſſaries. A City of no ancient name, not mentioned by *Ptolemie*, or others of the old *Geographers*: but of ſufficient note in the later times, for being the reſidence or ſeat of thoſe Provincial Governors (*Marqueſſes* they are ſometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings ſent hither to defend their borders. Hence it gave name to all the Countrey, in *Latine* called *Marca Treviſiana*, or *Tarviſana*, as ſome call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and loſt again divers times; but was finally conquered *Anno* 1380. or thereabout, *Antonio Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. 3 *Padua*, formerly called called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whoſe Tomb

Tomb is ſtill here to be ſhown. From him named *Antenoria*, as ſome report, but after called *Patavium* quaſi *Padavium*, from its nearneſs to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in ſo delectable and ſweet a ſoyl, that *Conſtantinus Palæologus* was uſed to ſay, that did not the authority of the Scriptures perſwade him otherwiſe, he ſhould look for *Paradiſe* no where elſe, then *in perſuavi* Patavina *amœnitate*, amongſt the flouriſhing and delightful ſweetneſſes of the *Paduan* field. The Town of great eſteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much reſorted to the ſame: and much frequented at the preſent for the Univerſity here eſtabliſhed *Anno* 1220. famous for Phyſicians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; of good name alſo for the birth of *Livy* the Hiſtorian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Co-temporary, *L. Aruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus* two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the later times, of *Marſilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Frier, who wrote ſo learnedly in behalf of the Emperour, againſt the Pope; *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanorola* the Phyſician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the men, and chaſtity of the women; which laſt ſo eminent and famous, that as *chaſt as one of Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, ſpeaking of his laſcivious writings. *Trevigiana.*

Tu quoq; nequitias noſtri luſuſq; libelli,
Uda puella leges, ſis Patavina *licet.*

Young maids my wanton lines will long to ſee,
And read them or'e, though *Patavines* they bee.

The City after much viciſſitude of fortune, fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compaſs one hundred and eighty miles, *Anno* 1400. *Michael Steno* then Duke; *Vicenza* being won about the ſame time alſo. 4 *Breſcia*, the ſecond City for bigneſs and beauty, in all *Lombardy*. It is alſo the ſeat of an Arch-biſhop, who is an Earl, a Marqueſs, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty miles; which the Citizens, together with their freedom, bought of *Otho* the *German* Emperor, but loſt it to *Philip Maria Viſconti*, Duke of *Millaine*, *Anno* 1421. to whom they yeelded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themſelves unto the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, *Anno* 1434. *Francis Foſcari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air ſound and good, the ſoyl exceeding plentiful of corn, wine and fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuſcans* hence, and ſeated themſelves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is ſituate on a litle River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is ſaid to contain at this time 50000. Inhabitants. 5 *Verona*, ſo called (as ſome conceit it) *quaſi vere una*; or as others, *quaſi Brenona*, becauſe built by *Brennus*; both falſe and frivolous alike. It is ſituate on the banks of the River *Atheſis*, and is counted the firſt City of the ſecond rank of the Cities of *Italie*: proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet, and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatneſs) able to contain 80000. perſons. The Territories hereof are ſixty five miles in length, forty miles in breadth; enriched with many *medicinal* herbs, (eſpecially on Mount *Baldus*, an hill therein) where the Phyſicians go a Simpling. 6 *Bebriacum*, or *Bedriacum*, as ſome Writers call it, two daies march from *Verona*, now a ſmall Burrough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the beſt. Remarkable in the *Roman* ſtories, for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho*'s Army; and after by *Veſpaſians* forces unto thoſe of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus* Romanis *cladibus notus & infauſtus Vicus*. 7 *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but ſituate in a wealthy ſoyl, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: ſo ſtrongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeury of *Venice*, againſt the *Millaneſe*, on the borders of which State it ſtandeth. Firſt built about the year 970. by ſome remnants of the *Anthropomorphites*, who on the deſtruction of *Pornaſſus* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their hereſie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in ſucceeding times with a See Epiſcopal; and either the birth-place or preferment of *John Cremenſis*, a *Roman* Cardinal. Who being by Pope *Honorius* ſent into *England*, *Anno* 1225. to diſſwade the Clergy-men from Mariage; and having in a *Convocation* of the Clergy called for that purpoſe, highly advanced the honour of the ſingle life, and ſhewed the inconvenience and unfitneſs of Mariage, in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*; was the night following (to the great diſcredit both of his cauſe and perſon) taken in Adultery. 8 *Bergomo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, ſeated upon the ſide of an hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggie Mountains, the Spurs and excurſions of the *Alpes*; but withall many rich and delightfull valleys, intermingled with them. The people of this City and Countrey are ſaid to ſpeak the courſeſt language, of any in *Italie*; but to have as fine wits as the beſt. Places of more inferior note are, 1 *Eſte*, (*Ateſte* in moſt *Latine* Writers) whence came the Family *D' Eſte*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2 *Liniacum*, a ſtrong Garriſon on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3 *Caſtel-France* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4 *Seraval*, of moſt remarkableneſs, for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5 *Feltri*, which ſtill preſerves its old name of *Feltria*; moſt memorable at the preſent for a See Epiſcopal. 6 *Altina*, a Biſhops See alſo, but deſtroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Ciſalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* war: and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till firſt the *Gothes*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Maſters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardie*, it fell firſt unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances,

Friuli. ances, it came at last to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*: whose Predecessor probably had been seized hereof, from the time that *Henry* son of *Eugelbert*, Præfect of *Histria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epperstein* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, succeeded him in that Estate. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg* (then Emperor of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold* the ninth, to the *Cararas*, then Lords of *Padua*; in the ruine of whose estate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who still hold the same.

2 *FRIULI* hath on the East the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Histria*; on the West, *Marca Trevisana*, and a branch of the *Alpes*; on the North, the main body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Golf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is derived) from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town so named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoyning, as 'tis thought, had the name of *Julie*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegiensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperors *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part, *Patria*, or the Countrey; because from these parts they derive their first Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was said.

The Countrey is in a manner square, each side fifty miles; watered with the Rivers of 1 *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the silver Mines. 2 *Tiliaventum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and navigable towards the latter end of its course: but broken into many channels (seven at least in number) which makes it not so navigable as it would be otherwise; most of these channels being shallow, and easily forded, but swift and violent withall, by reason of their fall from the neighbouring hills. 3 *Natisco*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4 *Timavus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneids*; which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Channels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Lareina*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soyl sufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yeelding a very pleasant Wine, which *Plinie* did prefer before any in *Italie*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1 *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as some call it, made the *Metropolis* first of the Province of *Histria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperor *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Diocese of *Italie*, by the Western Emperors. Honoured in that regard with the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant: translated from *Millaine* to this City, as the Gate of *Italie*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never so like to be shut out, as by the power and presence of so great an Officer. After this time, and on this occasion the Bishop hereof had the title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued when the City was destroyed by *Attila*, that furious *Hun*; 37000 of the Citizens being slain with the sword, the rest removing to some places of more safe abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Narses*, but never able to recover its former lustre. After which time fearing the like miseries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice*, as the safer place, and setled in the Isle of *Grada*; yet so, that the succeeding Bishops of *Aquileia* (for they stayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do still retain the dignity, and name of *Patriarchs*, as well as those of *Grada* do, and with better reason. For besides the honor which it had in being made the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the residence of *Augustus Cæsar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a *second Reme*; and of *Tiberius*, who lived here with *Julia* the daughter of the said *Augustus*, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it self, it is situate on the River *Natisco*, but not well inhabited at the present; partly because of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reasons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great resort of Bishops, and others of the Clergy of his Jurisdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it self. Most memorable in old story for enduring that famous siege against *Maximinus*, for the safety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperors *Maximus* and *Balbinus*. In whose cause the Citizens hereof were so resolutely faithful, that they bereaved the women (willing to lose that invaluable ornament of their sex, for the common good) of the hair of their heads, to make Bow-strings withall. Nor did this pious constancy of theirs want an happy issue. For they beheld the Tyrant headless under their wals (slain by the hands of his own Souldiers) and saw the *Metropolis* of the World preserved by their loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant; the Souldiers and people laying hands on his children also, and putting all unto the sword. Of which cruelty being asked the reason, they returned this Answer, *That not a whelp was to be spared of so ill a litter*; none of the brood of such a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Pessimi Canis Catulus non est relinquendus*. 2 *Trieste*, of old called *Tergestum*, from whence a spacious Bay adjoyning had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergestinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieste*. The Bay repleni shed principally with the water of the River *Timaus*, which with many streams doth fall into it; and is therefore by the inhabitants of that Golf or Bay, called *Fons Maris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The town of greater Antiquity then observation, mentioned by *Plinie* and some others of the Ancient Writers, but not else considerable. 3 *Montfalcon*, famous for its medicinal herbs. 4 *Porto Gruare*, of old called *Portus Romatinus*, an Haven-town, as the name importeth. 5 *Concordia*, in former times of no small esteem; but so demolished by *Attila* the *Hun*, that it is now nothing but a ruin. The people hereof betaking themselves to the Islands in the Marishes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Tourcellan*, *Muriano*, *Constantiaca*, and some others were adjoyning to them,

them, of which more hereafter. 6 *Utina*, or *Uden*, the faireſt and largeſt at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compaſs, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at ſome ſiege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is ſtill the ordinary ſeat of the *Procurator* or Provincial Governor, ſent from *Venice* hither. 7 *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer ſince than the year 1583, but held to be the beſt fortified of any in *Italie*. 8 *Cividad de Auſtria*, firſt built by *Julius Cæſar*, in ſome of his marches towads *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Diſtrictus Foro-Julienſis*, as the *Latins* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by ſome Princes of the *Auſtrian* Family (on the borders of whoſe Eſtate it ſtandeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Auſtria*. *Hiſtria.*

This Province anciently was the ſeat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But thoſe being vanquiſhed by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, it became finally ſubject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italie*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of ſpecial fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdome of *Italie*. But this Family being ſuppreſſed by the Emperor *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Countrey to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almoſt all the reſt was added by the Emperor *Conrade*; yet ſo that there were divers petit Lords, who had good eſtates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto ſome of the ancient race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increaſe of Dominion, made war againſt them; which ended in the loſs of his Countrey, *Anno* 1020, or thereabouts; ever ſince ſubject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whoſe authority in this Countrey began to decline, in the riſing of the ſtate of *Venice*) ſurrendring all his intereſs alſo to that powerful *Signeurie*, as better able to defend it againſt all Pretenders, *Anno* 1420. But notwithſtanding this ſurrendry, the Patriarch hath ſtill large poſſeſſions and revenues here, and ſtill retains his Juriſdiction over the Prelates of this Countrey, and thoſe of *Hiſtria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) ſix only which are thoſe of the Iſles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is environed on the Eaſt, Weſt, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, ſave where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North, is parted from *Carinthia*, with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Countrey very woody, and full of Quarries, affording materials to *Venice* both for ſhips and houſes; not comparable for fertility to the reſt of *Italie*; and of air ſo ſickly and unwholſome, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immunities. It is two hundred miles in compaſs, watered with the Rivers of *Formio*, which they now call *Riſano*; 2 *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3 *Arſia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Countrey from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Cape de Iſtria*, called in *Plinies* time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Juſtin*, was called *Juſtinopolis*. But being taken and deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe*, and re-built again, it took the name of *Caput Hiſtriæ*, or *Cape d' Iſtria*; becauſe the principal of the Province, and a Biſhops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Biſhop, about the time of *Luthers* firſt preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Arch-biſhop of *Spalato*, were of moſt note of any of theſe parts of the world, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the *Proteſtant* party, and therefore ſhall be ſpoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great induſtry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany*, againſt *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himſelf with ſuch dexterity, and gave ſuch content unto the Pope, that *Paul* the third, *Anno* 1541. intended to have made him *Cardinal*; had not ſome who envyed him that honour, accuſed him of *Lutheraniſm*. To purge himſelf he began to write a Book, entituled, *Againſt the Apoſtata's of Germany*; in the purſuit whereof, pondering *Luthers* reaſons he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Juſtinople*. He ſubmitted himſelf and his cauſe to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no-where finding protection, he retired unto the *Griſons*, and there preached; till *Chriſtopher* Duke of *Wittenberg*, *Anno* 1548, placed him in his Univerſity of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a ſufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Juſtinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Juſtinian* the Emperor, as a fortreſs againſt the incurſions of the barbarous people. 2 *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their firſt coming hither; the name in their language importing as much as the place of baniſhment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*: but being firſt deſtroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoeſe*, it recovered the old name again; and ſtill continueth with the title of a See Epiſcopal. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Golf of *Quevero*. 3 *Parenze*, 4 *Pliun*, 5 *Cita Nova*, all of them ſeated in the Mid-lands, and not much obſervable, but that *Parenze*, and *Cita Nova* are Epiſcopal Sees: this laſt being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Biſhop hath the name of *Emonienſis*. 7 *Rovigno*, in a little Iſland, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitful in Olives; beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended alſo by a very ſtrong Caſtle. The Town but poor, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which diſtant not above twenty miles; inhabited for the moſt part by Mariners, and skilful Pilots, hired by ſuch ſhips as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them ſafely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The Countrey adjoyning mountainous and ſomewhat wilde; but thoſe mountains covered on the outſide, with *Phyſical* Simples; and yeelding many Quarries of moſt excellent Marble, which ſo adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

The Adriatick Isles of Venice.

It is recorded that the *Histrians* were a people of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Æetas* to pursue *Jason* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venture their weak vessel to so long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came; stayed in this Countrey. It was after that time called *Iapidia*, from *Iapis* an *Aetolian*, who first planted here; and took the name of *Istria* from the *Istri*, a people on the banks of *Ister*, or *Danubius*; who made up a considerable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Aetolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many inrodes and excursions on them; they were invaded first by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with such a fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell roundly to it; till *Manlius* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place; their miserable King deing so hotly pursued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno V. C.* 575. *Cl. Pulcher* the next Consul perfected the conquest. *Sempronius* long time after that, *sc. Anno V.C.* 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who joyning it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italie*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilest that Empire stood, and after the decay thereof regained their liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy molesting the *Venetians*, they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *Anno* 938; and the whole Countrey was made Tributatary, by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo*, about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4 The fourth member of this estate with respect to *Italie*, are some *ISLANDS* in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Common-wealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 miles, in breadth 140 miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven-town (as before was said) at the mouth of *Eridanus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though this Golf or Bay of the *Adriatick* extended no farther then the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-west-ward till it meeteth with the *Tuscan* Seas; and South-wards, till it come to the coast of *Africk*; insomuch as *Mare Libycum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*; as he doth the Isle of *Crete*, on the South side of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *quod &* Adriaticum *vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are. The like might also be made evident out of other Authors both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here, because *Pauls* being tossed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is said *Act.* 27. 27. and being after cast on shore in the Isle of *Malta*; occasioned some to think this *Melite* or *Malta*, to be that Island of *Dalmatia* which is now called *Melida*; being seated in the Bay or Golf of *Adria*: whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Isle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the coasts of *Africk*. But to return to this Golf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe, as appeareth by *Improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*; the *Minax Adriaticum*, in *Catullus*, and the *Ventosi tumor Adriæ*, in *Seneca's Thyestes*. But when the Empress *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, she caused one of the three Nails with which his body was fastned to it, to be thrown of purpose into this Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Silvester* (and cites Saint *Ambrose* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the second nail being made into a Bridle for her son *Constantines* horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. But not to trust too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it, by reason of their Naval power: and that it is every year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn casting in of a Wedding-Ring; and every year Baptized on *Epiphany* day, by the Bishop of *Zant*. When this last ceremony took beginning, I am yet to seek. But for the first, which is performed with a great deal of state, every *Holy-Thursday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bucentaure* (which is a rich and stately Gallie made for such solemnities, and capable of 200 persons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebastian Cyani* being then Duke: in prosecution of whose quarrel, the *Venetians* encountred *Otho* the Emperors son, vanquished him, and restored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royall Prisoner, was thus saluted by the Pope. *Cyani take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day* (the Ascension day) *shall be yearly observed, both by thee and thy Successors; that so posterity may know that you have purchased the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it subject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principall Islands of this Sea, lie on the other side thereof, on the coast of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this side (but those, as well as these under the command of this *Signeury*) neither great, nor famous. Of these the chief are, 1 *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Methuacum*, situate at the South-west end of the bank or causey called *Il Lido*; now only considerable for the Haven, which is large and deep made by the influx of *Meduacus* before mentioned; in which the greater ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to cross the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Dukes Palace, and an Episcopal See: the See of *Padua* being translated hither, at the sack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Dukes Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Episcopal See to the Island of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the most part by none but Sea-men. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the same name, honoured with a Bishops See, (the Bishop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the said *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reason

reason of the ill air, not very well peopled. 3 *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles in compass, and but one from *Venice*, of a sound air, and very well inhabited; the people whereof make the best *Venice* Glasses, so much used in all parts. 4 *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Fossa Clodia*, a little West of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Mariss es from the *Adriatick*: distant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it serveth instead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the same name, to which the Bishops See was removed from *Malamocco*, *Anno* 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits, which yeeld great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-weal h. Near to this Island, the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Venetians* in a fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Island following shortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoese* being grown too insolent on their good success, made the City desperate; who putting all to hazard fell again upon them, beat them, pursued them home, and there utterly crushed them; as we shal tell you more at large, when we come to *Genoa*. 5 *POVEGIA*, five miles from the City, first peopled by some who had raised a commotion in the City, on the death of *Petro Tradonico* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increased both in wealth and buildings, till destroyed by the *Genoese*. It is called *Pupilia* by the *Latins*. 6 *JUDECHA* (in *Latin* called *Judaica*) so named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furnished with most pleasant gardens. These and the rest reckoned as members of *Trevigiana* or appendents on it. *Venice.*

Betwixt these Islands and the main land of *Friuli*, lyeth a shoal of little Islets, in and amongst which standeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italie*. These Islets 72 in number, but joyned together by many Bridges, of which here are said to be 4000 at least, besides 10000 boats for passage from one Isle to the other. The compass of the whole aggregate body said to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with glass windows; an Ornament not common in *Italie*; where the windows for the most part, are made with paper to let in the light; and that paper oyled all over, to keep out the wet. The number of the inhabitants estimated at 300 thousand. By the situation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* signifieth the seething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exæstuatio est quæ ad littus veniat*, saith the old *Glossarie* upon *Isidore*, out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was so called from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatning *Italie*, abandoned the main land, and built this City in the bogs and marishes of the sea adjoyning. And that it might afford them the greater safety, they not only built it in the most inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midst of many Lakes of salt-water, extending ninety miles in compass, and having on the East the said *Adriatick Sea* for the length of 550 miles: betwixt which and the said Lakes, there is a bank or causey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature, to defend the Islands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Causey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in seven places only; which serve as well to keep the Lakes alwaies full of water, as for the passage of Vessels to and from the City: known by the the names of the Ports of 1 *Brondolo*, 2 *Chioza*, 3 *Malamocco*, 4 the *three Castles*, or the Castles of *Lio*. 5 S. *Erasmus*, 6 *Lito Maggiore*, or the great shore, and 7 the *Treports*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth most to the Southwest, and that of *Treports* to the Northwest of the said great Causey. And through every one of these there is safe passage for Ships and Barks of smaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor, on the South side of the City, near to the ports of *Malamocco*, and the Castles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified; and there must remain till they are brought in by skilful Pilots, who know the passages, which, by reason of the shifting of the sands, change very often. On the West and North sides, it is compassed with very deep *Marishes*, about five miles distant from the land; and on the South with many Islands, in which are severall Churches and Monasteries, like so many Forts; which lie between it and those parts of *Italie*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that is impossible to be taken, but by an Army which can stretch 150 miles in compass. It is built, as before is said, on 72 Islands, 60 of which lie close together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater distance. Of these the principall, 1 *Heraclea* near the Firm Land of *Trevigiana*, peopled at first by such as followed *Magnus* Bishop of *Oderza*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Island and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heraclius* the Eastern Emperor, in whose time it hapned. Made by this means a Bishops See, and being grown populous withall, it was honoured with the first seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodotus* the seventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Destroyed by *Pepin* King of *Italie*, son of *Charles* the Great, it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiatio* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Bishops See, then the number of Citizens. 2 *Jesulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, first planted by some Countrey people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horses, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Bishops See also, by the name of *Jesulanus* or *Equilicnsis*. 3 *Grada*, on the same part of the City also, but more towards the North, inhabited at first by such of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themselves thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards* transported to this Island the Relicks and Treasures of his Church; and setled where the Church of S. *Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 2d *Anno* 580. that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be esteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Countrey of *Venice*: yet the *Aquileian* would not so be robbed of his ancient priviledges, and therefore stirred up many suites and disputes about it. The business compromi-

Venice. sed at last to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* should enjoy his ancient Jurisdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him: and that he of *Grada*, with the title and stile of Patriarch, should have like jurisdiction over the Churches in the Islands; that is to say, the Bishopricks of *Heraclea*, (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilia*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprulæ*, and *Castello Olindo*. His habitation near the Church of S. *Silvester*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4 *Caprulæ*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Bishops See before the time of *Charles* the *Great*, but not else observable: none of these four, nor of the residue of the twelve, which lie remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the present. 5 *Castello Olindo*, or *Olivaller* as some call it, situate at the East end of the City, not far from the Causey called *Il Lido*. Of old a City of it self (as the former were) now joyned by a Bridge to the rest of *Venice*; of most note for the Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Bishops See by Pope *Adrian* the first, *Anno* 774. with jurisdiction over the Isles of *Olivolla*, *Rialto*, *Lupria*, and *Dorse-dura*. His title first *Castellonensis*, but afterwards the Bishop of *Venice*, because the best part of the City did belong unto him, invested by the Duke, but confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whose suffragans they were till the year 1450. At what time Pope *Eugenius* the 4th (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Bishops hereof to the dignity and name of Patriarch; assigning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were entituled Primates) for their Jurisdiction. By means whereof, and by perswading him of *Aquileia* to fix his dwelling here also, as before is said, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their constant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6 *Rialto*, which is of most esteem and reputation, so called *quasi Rivo alto*, because the Marishes are there deeper than in other places; or *quasi Ripa alta*, because it lay higher above the waters, than the other Islands. For which reasons that Island getting reputation above the rest, most of the Gentlemen setled their dwellings in the same; and drew thither in the end, the Dukes Palace also; insomuch that in some ancient writings, the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many of the old *Records* being dated in such and such a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increase in numbers, so were they fain to spread themselves from one Isle to another; till in the end they built on all the Islands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joyned by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the passage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces, and some forty in breadth; adorned on both sides with stately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with an incredible number of Boats called *Gondolos*, very neatly built, and veiled over with cloth, so that the passengers may go unseen and unknown, without the molestation of sun, wind, or rain. For publick buildings it hath in it 70 Parish Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloysters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, besides Chappels and Almes-houses.

The principal Church of this City is that of S. *Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whose body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein: Affirmed by some to be the richest and goodliest Church in all the World. The building, of *Mosaick* work, of which they boast themselves to have been the Authors. A kinde of work, by the *Grecians* called Λιθόστρωτα, and by the *Latin* Writers *Musiva*, *Musica*, and *Musaica*; wrought out of stones or metals of divers colours, into the shape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beasts, and other fancies of the Workman; yet done with such exactness of skill and judgement, that it seemeth to be all one stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of most rare pieces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, because it is speckled like a snake; adorned on the outside with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; besides 600 Marble pillars of a lesser size, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magistrates and others of the principal Citizens, behold such shews as are presented in the Market-place, adjoyning to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* measure, nor above 50 in breadth; the roof thereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italie* are exceeding dark, either to strike in the spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles shew the better. And for the inside of the Church, the riches of it are so great, the Images so glorious, the furniture of the Altars so above comparison; that all the treasures of the State, may seem to be amassed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is still unfinished; and as some think, is kept unfinished on purpose; partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whose liberality may be employed unto the use of the publick Treasury; and partly lest the Revenues which are given already should be resumed by the Heirs of the deceased, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the sumptuousness, and beauty of the Church it self.

Of other of the publick buildings, the Councel-house, the Ducal Palace, Monasteries, Churches, and the like, though stately and magnificent structures, I forbear to speak. Nor shall I here say any thing of their private houses, so large and beautified, that here are said to be no fewer than 200 (most of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the best King in Christendom. All I shall add, and so leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arsenal*, and publick *Magazine*. In the first of which they have in readiness 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Masts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all sorts; able thereby to set out a Navie to the Sea, on the shortest warning. And in the other it is said, that they have Arms sufficient for 100000 Souldiers of all sorts; amongst which are affirmed to be a thousand Coats of plate, garnished with gold, and covered with velvet; fit for the use and wearing of the greatest Princes. But of their power and forces both by Sea and Land, we shall speak more shortly. In the mean time

time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarius*, one of our late *Italian* Poets, *viz.* *Venice.*

Viderat Adriacis *Venetam* Neptunus *in undis*
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:
Nunc mihi Tarpeias, *quantumvis* Jupiter, *arces*
Objice, & illa tui mœnia Martis, ait.
Si Pelago Tibrim *præfers*, urbem *aspice utramq;*:
Illam homines dices, hanc posuisse deos.

In English thus:

Neptune saw *Venice* in the *Adrian* stand,
And all the Sea brought under her command;
Now *Jove*, said he, thy *Roman* Towres object,
And those proud wals which *Mars* did once protect.
Before the Sea if *Tiber* thou preferre,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt averre,
That men built *Rome*; the gods plac'd *Venice* there.

Proceed we now unto their story: and if we look upon them in their first original, we shall finde them to have been a people of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Asia* the lesser) called the *Heneti*, who aiding *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his ten years wars against the *Greeks*, where they lost their King named *Philamenes* (or *Philemon*, as some call him) chose rather to seek out new dwellings than return with shame unto their old. Upon this resolution they joyn themselves to *Antenor*, who with some remnant of the *Trojans* had the same design; and sayling as the wind and sea conducted them, arrived at last in those parts of *Italie*, now called *Friuli*. So witnesseth the Poet, saying,

Antenor *potuit*, *mediis illapsus* Achivis,
Illyricos *penetrare Sinus*, *atque intima* tutus
Regna Liburnorum, *& fontes superare* Timavi.

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And safely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Cross the *Liburnian* Realms; and conquer all
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fall.

Here landing they subdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this tract) and possessed their dwellings: the name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till subdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Cisalpina*; agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, opposite to the Isle of *Britain*. When those *Galls* were vanquished by the *Romans*, the name and nation of these *Veneti*, was so considerable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia*; and together with *Histria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and safety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible noise of the great preparation of the *Hunnes* for the conquest of *Italie*, occasioned many of the principal men, with their several Retinues, to betake themselves to the Islands, and inaccessible Marishes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March* 25. *Anno* 421. exceedingly increased by the destruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila* and the said *Barbarians*, *Anno* 456. at what time it began to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much increased in power or greatness, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom; though so considerable at that time, that in the division of *Italie* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himself, the Popes, and the Eastern Emperors; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Estate: and they deserved to be left in a free condition, considering how notably they had freed themselves from *Pepin*, the son of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puissant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at first successful. After which, making use of their situation, they grew not only rich in trade, but strong in shipping; and thereby did good service to the Western Princes, in their wars against the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they served themselves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely in which the Empire of *Constantinople* was made a prey unto the *Latines*, *Anno* 1200.) all the Islands which they have at the present, in the *Ægean*, and *Ionian* Seas; many in those Seas which they have lost, and not a few good Towns in *Peloponnesus*, since conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoese* for the Soveraignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received so great a blow at the Naval battel near *Chioggia*, (spoken of before) that they had utterly lost all, if the Enemy could have used his fortune with moderation. But being recovered of that blow, after many various successes and events of War, *Anno* 1381. they got the better of them, and made them quiet: by means whereof, being Lords *Paramont* at Sea, they next cast their eyes on the main land of *Italie*, which now they were at more leisure to look after, than they had been formerly.

Venice. The *Hiſtrians* had before infeſted them with Piracy, and were puniſhed for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loſs of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390, the whole Countrey is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great Part of *Trevigiana* then appendent on it, they extorted from the noble family of the *Carrari*, *An.* 1400. The City of *Vincentia* they poſſeſſed themſelves of in the ſame year alſo; and not long after fully perfected their Conqueſt of *Hiſtria*, with the revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they moſt improved their eſtate was by a conſtant watching of their opportunities, taking advantage of the factions and fractions amongſt their neighbours, and working their own greatneſs out of others ruins. By means whereof they came poſſeſſed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as alſo of ſome Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain*; and four of the beſt Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving aid to any of their diſtreſſed neighbours, without the mortgage or direct ſale of ſome piece or other. Which ſordid kinde of merchandizing, drew all the Princes, of thoſe parts, (confederated together in a league at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1508) to make war upon them; every one to recover by ſtrong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them, in their neceſſity. And the confederates thrived ſo well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Trieſt*, *Friuli*, and whatſoever elſe he laid claim unto; the Popes in right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Arminum*) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* the 12. of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Millaine*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trano*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Aſula*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) ſtripped of all their feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themſelves unto the Iſles and Mariſhes of their City; having not one foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italie*, but their Seas and Iſlands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope, to whom they quitted all their intereſt in the Towns aforeſaid; and partly by dividing the reſt of the confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had loſt, in a little time: except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Ariſtocratical*, managed only by the principal men of all the City, both for birth and breeding; the common people having no authority in affairs of State. Their chief Officers at the firſt were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confuſion, which a multitude of Governors carrieth for the moſt part with it, in the year 709. they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their Duke. Under theſe Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now injoy: The authority of which *Dukes* was at firſt more abſolute, but by degrees reſtrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port, and the reſpect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more abſolute and ſupreme. But look upon him in the exerciſe and powers of Government, and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithſtanding that he injoyeth ſo great a dignity, yet hath he a full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the preſence of his *Counſellors* (being ſix in number) who alwaies ſit with him, and diſpatch affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambaſſadors from Forain States, receiving Letters from their own Miniſters, granting of Priviledges, and the like; in which the *Duke* can do juſt nothing, if four (at leaſt) of theſe *Counſellors* be not preſent with him. And yet theſe *Counſellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is ſo reſtrained in all things to the power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their conſent; and by them is preſcribed an Order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Priſoner, when within the City; and a Traytor, if he ſtir abroad: at the beſt but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treaſury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the *Soveraignty* of the State, that reſides wholly in the *Senate*; but repreſentatively in the *Duke*, the ſix *Counſellors*, and the three Heads or Preſidents of the Forty; which are thoſe Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Councel*, conſiſts of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount unto the number of 2500. though ſeldom half that number do aſſemble at once, by reaſon of their ſeveral imployments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places: who uſually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the mornings of other *Feſtivals*, where they chooſe Magiſtrates, and diſtribute Governments, and order matters of the State. But becauſe ſuch great bodies move but ſlowly, and are not very capable of truſt and ſecrecy, they parcel this great Councel into leſſer Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Councel of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* conſiſteth of 120 in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greateſt importance; and therein conclude commonly of ſuch principal points, as formerly have been propoſed and treated of in the great Aſſembly: And in this Councel, beſides the 120 before mentioned, the *Duke*, the ſix Counſellors, and the Councel of Ten, and all ſuch as have born any publick Office, have their voice or ſuffrage. This is that Councel which properly and more ſpecially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or paſſed into Acts, except four of the ſix *Counſellors* be preſent at them, and that ſixty at the leaſt of the whole number, give their ſuffrage to it. Then for the *Councel of Ten*, their power is univerſal, over all affairs, ſuch as the other Councels may not meddle with, as to conclude of war, or peace, to put in execution what they think moſt neceſſary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment:

which

which if they were firſt treated of in the General Councel or Aſſembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common courſe; could not be poſſibly managed with ſuch ſpeed and ſecrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Councel, with the *Prince* and his ſix Aſſiſtants, the *Supreme Majeſty* of the State doth reſide eſpecially. Some other Officers there are, and thoſe of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of S. *Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treaſures; and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all; one of which muſt be alwaies preſent in all conſultations, leſt any thing ſhould paſs to the prejudice, and infringement of the Priviledges of the common people. *Venice.*

For the whole body of the City conſiſteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. Theſe laſt are the deſcendants and progeny of ſuch as came to ſettle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by ſeveral Priviledges and Immunities which were offered to them; and theſe they neither admit into any of their Councels, nor into any of the Offices of Truſt and Power, except it be two; that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the iſſue or deſcendants of thoſe, who firſt laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and theſe they have in ſuch reſpect, and ſo high eſteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent ſoever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greateſt honour they can beſtow; and not beſtowed but upon the beſt deſerver. *Henry* the 3d of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himſelf graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and ſparing of, it being they higheſt honour which they vouchſafe to impart to ſuch commanders of their own, and Ambaſſadors of other Princes, as have well deſerved it. And that this *honour* may be kept up to the very height, and their nobility not grow too cheap, by being too numerous; neither the younger ſons of theſe *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen* in the Countrey, are permitted to marry. But otherwiſe the ſuffer them to ſatisfie their luſts, with too much impunity; and for their ſakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be voided on the former grounds.

Now as *Otho* in *Tacitus* ſaid to the *Pretorian* Souldiers, *Princeps è Senatu oritur, Senatus è vobis*: ſo out of theſe Gentlemen are choſen the Senators, out of them the *Duke*. His election by *Contarenus* is deſcribed in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are aſſembled. So many as meet, caſt their names into a pot; and in another, are juſt ſo many bals, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn; for which thirty the child draweth again the ſecond time out of another pot, that hath only nine guilt bals. The nine ſo drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again ſelected by the ſame kinde of lot. Theſe twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot ſet apart. Theſe nine nominate five and forty, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. Theſe eleven chooſe forty one of the beſt and chiefeſt of the *Senators*; who after an oath taken ſeverally, to chooſe whom they judge worthieſt, write in a ſcrole every one whom he beſt liketh. The ſcrols are mingled together, and then drawn; the fitneſs of the perſons then drawn is diſcuſſed; and he that hath moſt voyces above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudge with due ſolemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kinde of Lottery do the chooſe Gentlemen into the Senate, and make publick Officers; inſomuch that *Contarenus*, who hath committed unto writing theſe publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not ſay how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato*'s platform.

But whether this be ſo or not, certain it is, that this Commonwealth thus conſtituted, and modelled, as before is ſaid; hath laſted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preſerved it ſelf in the ſame condition, but may moſt juſtly be accompted one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom* againſt the incroachments of the *Turks*: the wars whereof hath procured peace, and the peace thereof procured plenty, to the reſt of *Europe*. Inſomuch, that it may well be ſaid, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italie* the Face of *Europe*; ſo *Venice* is the Eye of *Italie*; the faireſt, ſtrongeſt, and moſt active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by ſome *Pythagorical* tranſmigration had paſſed into the body of this powerful State; and animated it with all the vertues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and conſtant temper. From ſo baſe and abject a beginning, is this City grown to be one of the beſt *Supporters* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themſelves profeſs no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with ſuch caution and reſpect to their own authority, that they ſuffer not the Clergy to injoy thoſe priviledges, which they poſſeſs in other Countreys, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and Pope *Paul* the fifth; in which the Signeury ſtood ſtifly to their ancient Rights, and cauſed Maſs to be duly ſaid, notwithſtanding all their Churches were under the Interdict; baniſhed the *Jeſuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for ſtickling too buſily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed ſo far by their conſtant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cauſe, and reconcile them to the Church, without any *ſubmiſſion*. A notable example to all Chriſtian Princes, how to behave themſelves towards thoſe of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon, but by ſuch reſiſtances. So eaſie a thing it is for men of conſtancy and courage, to ſhake off that yoke, which Papal Tyranny and Superſtition hath impoſed upon them.

In managing their wars they anciently obſerved two Rules, which much conduced to the inlargement and ſecurity of their Common-wealth. The firſt was the exempting of their own *Citizens* from the wars (not out of jealouſie, but care of their preſervation) unleſs compelled to the contrary by extreme neceſſity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the *Provincial* Subject, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof, they did not only keep their City in the ſame condition, able at any

time

Venice. time, and at all times, to give Law to the reſt of their Dominions: but waſted the hot and boyling ſpirit of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwiſe might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of ſome neighbouring Prince to be the generall of their Forces; whom in the concluſion of the ſervice they diſmiſſed with honour and reward. And by this courſe they avoyded faction, and prevented ſervitude: Either or both of which might have happned by employing any of their own great ones in the chief command; who (after the example of *Julius Cæſar* in the ſtate of *Rome*) having a ſtrong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himſelf their Prince. But this was only in the Conduct of their wars in *Italy*, and in ſuch times when the State was not ſo well ballanced as it hath been ſince.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea, or Land. Their Land-forces which they have in continuall pay, for defence of their Dominion, conſiſt of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and beſides thoſe they have a choice band of 4000 Muſquetiers: for exerciſing of which they keep yeerly Muſters, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them ſome gratuities, according to their well-deſervings. And as for *Horſe*, they maintain conſtantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet beſides this conſtant and ordinary eſtabliſhment, they are able to bring great Forces into the field; as appeareth by their Army againſt *Lewis* the twelfth: in which without diſfurniſhing any of their Forts and Garriſons, they had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horſe, 30000 Foot, moſt of their own naturall Subjects; ſaving that they were interlined with ſome bands of *Switzers*, to which people they give yeerly penſions, to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions. Then for the *Sea-forces*, beſides that they keep fifty Gallies in continuall action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no leſſe then 200 more laid up in the *Arſenall*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to ſerve at the *Oar*, and may raiſe as many as they pleaſe for thoſe kind of ſervices, out of thoſe parts of *Sclavonia*, which are ſubject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet ſet out againſt the *Grand Signeur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall ſhips, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of leſſer burden; being in all one hundred and eighty ſeven ſail, fit for preſent ſervice. To give the totall ſum in brief, they held a war by Sea and Land for ſeven yeers together, againſt all the Princes of *Chriſtendome* (excepting *England*) confederated againſt them by the League of *Cambray*; in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the leaſt loſers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture alſo at the greatneſſe of the publique Treaſury, and of the yeerly income which ſupplies the ſame. For though it be conceived that their ordinary ſtanding Revenue be but four millions of *Ducats* yeerly (which yet is more than any Chriſtian Prince can boaſt of except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treaſury, by laying new Impoſts on Commodities, as they ſee occaſion; Which needs muſt riſe to vaſt and moſt conſiderable ſums, in a City of the greateſt Traffick of any in *Europe*; and perhaps in all the world beſides. And yet beſides ſuch Cuſtoms and Impoſts as they lay on Merchandize, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not ſomething to the publick Treaſury: over and above which, the pooreſt Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money* alſo. Inſomuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Chriſtians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without ſuch helps, (though heavy and burdenſome to the Subject) they could not poſſibly have ſpent twelve millions in the war againſt *Selimus* the ſecond; and as many a little before that, in the enterprize of *Ferrara*, and the war raiſed againſt them by the League of *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Soveraign Princes*, nor ſuch as do ſucceed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are alwayes men of moſt eminent note, and that in their names all the buſineſſe of State is acted, and all writings dated, I will ſubjoyn a Catalogue of them to this preſent time; to the end that meeting with their names in the courſe of *Hiſtory*, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of *Venice*.

697	1	*Paulus Anafeſtus* 20
718	2	*Marcel Tegalian* 10
727	3	*Hippateus Urſus* 11
		An Interregnum of ſix yeers.
742	4	*Theodatus Hippateus*
755	5	*Galla of Malamocco*
756	6	*Dominico Monegarta*
760	7	*Maurice Galbata*
783	8	*John Galbata*
799	9	*Obelerius*
804	10	*Angelus Partitiarius*
822	11	*Juſtinian Partitiarius*
824	12	*John Partitiarius*
832	13	*Petro Tradonico*
859	14	*Urſus Partitiarius*
876	15	*John Partitiarius*
881	16	*Petro Candiano*
	17	*Dominico Tribuno*
	18	*Petro Tribuno*
905	19	*Urſus Badoarius*
925	20	*Petro Candiano* II.
932	21	*Petro Badoario*
935	22	*Petro Candiano* III.
950	23	*Petro Candiano* IV.
970	24	*Petro Urſeola*
972	25	*Vital Candiano*
973	26	*Tribuno Meme*
985	27	*Petro Urſeola* II.
1003	28	*Otho Urſeola*
1020	29	*Petro Barbolani*
1021	30	*Dominico Flabenico*
1031	31	*Dominico Contareni*
1059	32	*Dominico Silvie*
1072	33	*Vitalis Falerius*
1084	34	*Vitalis Michaeli*
1090	35	*Ordelaſius Falerius*
1105	36	*Dominico Michaeli*
1118	37	*Petrus Polanus*
1136	38	*Dominico Moroſini*
1143	39	*Vitalis Michaeli* II.
1160	40	*Sebaſtian Ziani*
1165	41	*Auria Maripiere*

42 *Henrico*

1179	42	*Henrico Dondolo*	1355	01	*Andrea Contarene*	1533	80	*Francisco Donati*
1193	43	*Petro Ziani*	1371	62	*Michael Morosini*	1540	81	*Antonio Trevisani*
1216	44	*Jacobo Tepuli*		63	*Antonio Venieri*	1541	82	*Francisco Vivieri*
1236	45	*Marino Morosini*	1389	64	*Michael Steno*	1543	83	*Lorenzo Prioli*
1240	46	*Renieri Zeno*	1402	65	*Thomazo Mocenico*	1547	84	*Hierome Prioli*
1256	47	*Lorenzo Tepuli*	1412	66	*Francisco Foscari*	1555	85	*Petro Loredani*
1263	48	*Jacobo Contareni*	1447	67	*Paschal Malipiere*	1560	86	*Lewis Mocenico*
1267	49	*Giovanni Dondolo*	1452	68	*Christophoro Moro*	1567	87	*Sebastian Venieri*
1276	50	*Petro Gradenico*	1461	69	*Nicolao Troni*	1578	88	*Nicola di Pont*
1298	51	*Marino Georgio*	1463	70	*Nicolao Marcelli*	1586	89	*Paschal Cicogne*
1299	52	*John Sourance*	1464	71	*Petro Mocenico*	1596	90	*Marino Grimani*
1315	53	*Francisco Dondolo*	1465	72	*Andrea Vendramine*	1606	91	*Leonardo Donati*
1329	54	*Barthol. Gradonico*	1467	73	*John Mocenico*	1612	92	*Antonio Memmo*
1330	55	*Andrea Dandolo*	1474	74	*Marco Barbadico*	1615	93	*Giovanni Bembo*
1342	56	*Marinus Falerius*		75	*Augustino Barbadico*	1618	94	*Nicolao Donato*
	57	*John Gradonico*	1489	76	*Leonardo Loredani*	1618	95	*Antonio Priuli*
1343	58	*John Dauphin*	1509	77	*Antonio Grimani*	1623	96	*Francisco Contareno*
1348	59	*Lorenzo Celso*	1511	78	*Andrea Gritti*		97	*Giovanni Correlio*
1352	60	*Marco Cornaro*	1527	79	*Petro Laude*		98	*Francisco Erizzo* now living, *An.* 1648.

The principall Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are, 1 Of S. *Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the yeer 1330. and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) *An.* 1562. The honour is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for learning in the *Netherlands*. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman; the Word or Motto of the Order, is *Pax tibi Marce*.

2. *Of the glorious Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholomew* of *Vincentia*, *An.* 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the fourth, *An* 1262. The Arms of this Order, are a Purple Crosse, between certain Stars. The habit a white Surcote over a Russet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious, as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this Common-wealth, before described,
Patriarchs 2 Bishops 16.

The great Dukedome of TVSCANIE.

HAving thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or *Lower Sea*, from the said *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedome of *Florence*, or the Estate of the great Duke of *Tuscany*; divided on the East from S. *Peters Patrimony*, by the River *Pisco*; on the West, from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarezana*; on the North from *Romandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*, by the *Apennine* Hills; and on the South side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greatest and goodlyest part of all that which antiently was called *Tuscany*, from the *Greek* word θύειν, which signifieth to sacrifice; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *Sooth-sayings*, and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Gentilism*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidentall. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus* the sonne of *Atys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Countrey and people, though in divers Languages, and with respect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tusci*, and *Tuscia*, by their neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Hetrusci*, and the Countrey *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was so entituled. Antiently it extended as far Eastward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation; and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains; that is to say, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of esteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carryed an *Offensive* War to the Gates of

Rome,

Tuſcany. *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porſena*; and held it out on the *Defenſive* as long as any: No people in all *Italy* ſtanding more ſtiffly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Faliſci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hetrurian* Tribes. But nothing could withſtand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who from hence brought to *Rome*, the *Faſces* and Triumphall Ornaments, and other embelliſhments of State: the *Veii* and *Faliſci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the Conqueſt perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Centumalus A. V. C.* 455. So the *Tuſcans* were ſubdued at laſt, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 years; that is to ſay, from *Tarchon Priſcus* their firſt King, *A. M.* 2550, to *Turenus Ceſo* their laſt King, *A. M.* 3668.

The chief Towns of it in thoſe times were 1 *Veii*, and 2 *Peruſia*, ſpoken of before. 3 *Feſulæ*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4 *Agyllina*, ſituate not far from the Lake of *Thraſymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum*: the chief Town of the *Tuſcans* at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*, and the Seat Royall of *Mezentius* that noted Tyrant, ſo often mentioned by *Virgil*. Firſt built by the *Pelaſgi*, a *Greek* people, and by them thus named; afterwards by miſtake called *Cære*: by like miſtake as *Peru*, *Yucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their preſent names: as ſhall there be ſhewn. For the *Tuſcans*, or the *Romans* as others ſay, demanding in their language of a Countrey fellow, the name of the place, was anſwered in his language, χαῖρε, that is to ſay, God ſave you, or God ſpeed you: which word they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cære*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoyning, from hence called *Balnea Cæretana*; more for the preſervation of the *Veſtal* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the priviledges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Cenſors* uſed to inroll the names of thoſe, whom they deprived of their Votes in Senate, or any other publick Counſell, were called *Carites Tabulæ*. 5 *Phalcria*, on the ſea-ſide, the principall Town of the *Faliſci*, of which there is ſome remainder extant in the Village called *Falaris*. 6 *Cluſium*, the Seat-royall of King *Porſena*, for aiding which againſt the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themſelves the fury of that turbulent people. *Piſa*, *Aretium*, and ſuch others as are ſtill in being, we ſhall ſpeak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the ſoyl do remain as formerly, though the firſt altered in their names. The principall of which are, 1 *Arnus* ſpoken of before, in the generall ſurvey of *Italy*. 2 *Sercius*, by *Ptolemy* called *Boactus*, a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes ſome amends unto the people for its violent Land-floods. 3 *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not ſo profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, neer *Orviette*. 4 *Martha*, by *Ptolemy* called *Oſa*. Here is alſo the Lake *Volſinius*, which is twenty four miles in compaſſe; and that called antiently *Sabatinus*, but now *Laco Braciani*, from which water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reaſon of theſe and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Countrey in former times was full of Bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the wayes unpaſſable; it being in the Flats and Mariſhes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was ſo turmoiled, loſing herein the greateſt part of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But ſince thoſe times partly by the induſtry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes; the Fens in moſt places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm land: whereby the air is rectified, and the wayes made pleaſant; care being alſo taken, by great banks and ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the moſt part within their channels. So that the Countrey is now full of very ſpacious fields, and fruitfull vallies, ſwelled here and there with pleaſant mountains, little inferior in fertility to the richeſt vales; abundantly well ſtored with delicious wines, and plentifull, in a word, of all the bleſſings of nature: ſave that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is ſupplyed from the fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themſelves and their neighbours; though no ſuch ſuperfluity, as to ſpare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the ſtory, *Tuſcany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the ſecond of thoſe eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In the diviſion of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Conſtantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, it became a member of the Kingdome of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times it was governed by an Officer of truſt and power, whom I find ſometimes called the *Marqueſſe*, ſometimes *Duke* of *Tuſcany*; who had here more or leſs authority, as they could work on the neceſſities of their ſeverall Princes. *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards* had been Duke of *Tuſcany*, and ſo was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called Marqueſs of it, under the reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German* Emperour. Afterwards as the Popes grew in power and greatneſſe, ſo they made bold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province: giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*; another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making ſome challenge to that Kingdome. In which diſtractions the *Florentines* firſt bought their own liberty, of the Emperour *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*; and after purchaſed the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florens*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their affairs ſo well, that they became one of the moſt conſiderable Eſtates in *Italy*; and at the laſt by taking in *Piſa* and *Sienna*, they got the abſolute dominion of the beſt and largeſt part of *Tuſcany*: which now is under the command of the *great Duke*, and may be branched moſt fitly into theſe four parts; that is to ſay, the Cities and Territories of 1 *Florence*, 2 *Piſa*, 3 *Sienna*, and 4 the *Iſlands* ſituate in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* ſeas.

1. And firſt the Territory or Eſtate of *Florence*, taketh up the North part of this great Dukedome, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Eſtates of *Piſa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called from

from the City of *FLORENCE*, ſituate nigh unto the conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*; the former paſſing through the middeſt of the City, which is joyned together with four Bridges of ſtone: environed with mountains, which do ſerve as a Fortreſs againſt Invaſions, and for defence againſt the Winds. Firſt built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; from the flouriſhing ſituation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon ſome diſpleaſure razed it to the ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*; to whom and whoſe Succeſſors they continued faithfull, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*: but after, they betook themſelves to the *Papall* faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now ſtands, and is indeed a very fair and flouriſhing City, agreeable unto the name; the ſtreets being very ſtraight and large, paved with ſquare ſtone, and alwayes kept exceeding clean: the ordinary buildings beautifull above any in *Italy*, beſides many fair and ſtately Palaces adorned with *Statua's*. The principall of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of 50 houſes which were wont to ſtand there; capable of a great retinue: and for the largeneſs of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as alſo for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acceſſaries, equalling, if not ſurpaſſing the goodlieſt Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may alſo be affirmed of the *Cathedrall*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanſhip, but that eſpecially of the Steeple, which both for ſtuff and ſtructure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*; in which City there are beſides ſo many excellent pieces and curious rarities, that the Arch-duke *Charles* was wont to ſay, that it was *a City not to be ſeen but on Holy-dayes*. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoyning, they are a very induſtrious people, and generally ſaid to be of a very great wit, ſubtile heads and of much inſight into buſineſſe: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was uſed to ſay, *Non ſapeve dove conſiſteſſe l'ingegne tanto celebrate di Fiorentini*, that he could never find where that great wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine* the Hiſtorian, was without doubt a notable Stateſ-man; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as ſhrewd a brain as any; and ſo were the two *Coſmo's* of the houſe of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the *major* part of them, be of ſuch extraordinary wits as they ſay they are, I am not very well reſolved of; nor is it much materiall to enquire into it. *Florence.*

The other Cities and chief places of this firſt diviſion, are 1 *Feſulæ*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a ſmall Village called *Fieſoli*; ſituate in the ſtraights of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have riſen chiefly from the ruins of it: moſt memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Gothes*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadaguſus*. 2 *Pizoria*, or *Piſtoia*, ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruinated with its own diſſenſions: of which the greateſt and moſt laſting, were thoſe betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines*, which here took beginning, and for a long time exerciſed the peace of *Chriſtendome*. This laſt began (as ſome ſay) upon the quarrel of two brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo*, ſtood for the Pope; the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperour. The quarrel ſpreading into parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at laſt the wonder and amazement of all good people: inſomuch as ſome are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we uſe to fright young children, was derived from hence. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſeated in a fair and goodly plain, compaſſed with mountains; the ſtreets paved with free-ſtone, and the Church (which is Cathedrall) with Marble. It was firſt walled by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to ſubmit it ſelf to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was ſubdued *An.* 1150. when as yet themſelves were not the abſolute Maſters of their own City. 3 *Volterra* built among the mountains, the birth-place of *Linus* ſucceſſor to St. *Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It ſtandeth on the top of an hill, the walls thereof made of ſquare ſtone ſix foot long, which are very neatly joyned together without Mortar: and in thoſe Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having neer unto it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and ſome Epitaphs in *Tuſcan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very antient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterranus*, one of the greateſt Reſtorers of Learning in the Weſt parts of the World. 4 *Monte Pulciano*, in *Latin* called *Mons Politianus*, a well fortified City, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman* Elegancies. 5 *Prato*, another ſtrong piece of this part alſo. Neighboured by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleaſant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace; in which beſides many other ſingularities, are moſt curious Water-works, equall, if not ſuperior unto thoſe of *Tivoli*. 6 *Cortona*, an antient City of the *Tuſcans*, ſituate at the foot of the *Apennine*; ſold to the *Florentines* by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*. 7 *Aretium* or *Arezzo*, one of the antient Cities of the *Tuſcans* alſo, and ſold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florins* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Popes *Vicegerent* in this Countrey. 8 *Borgo San Sepulcro*, ſeated on the *Tiber*, neer, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedome; added to this *Signeury* by *Coſmo de Medices*, the firſt of that name: by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* the fourth for the ſum of 25000 *Florins*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Commonwealth; to which it ſerveth for a Bulwark on that ſide of this Countrey.

To this Diviſion alſo we may beſt refer the ſmall, but rich Signeury of *Maſſa*, ſituate on the borders of the ſtate of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Maſſa* it ſelf, which gives the title of a Marqueſs to the Lord hereof, of the Family of the *Maleſpines*. 2 *Carara*, three miles off from *Maſſa*, and more neer the Sea; of great fame for its Quarries of whiteſt Marble (much uſed in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs) and a breed of the faireſt Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*, but amongſt his own vaſſals abſolute enough.

2 The

Piſa and Sienna.

2. The ſecond member of this eſtate, is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoeſe* on the Weſt, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the Eaſt. The City firſt built by the *Piſæ*, a people of *Elis* in *Greece*: who following old *Neſtor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the wind driven upon this coaſt; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchius*, did erect this Town. In the diſtractions of the Empire it ſtood up for it ſelf, and grew ſo potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians*, and *Genoeſe*. They were once Maſters of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being diſcomfited by the *Genoeſe* neer the Iſle of *Giglio*, *An.* 1369. they ſubmitted themſelves to the protection of *Charles* the fourth, by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*, (*An.* 1404. by *John Marid* his ſonne and Succeſſor ſold unto the *Florentines*; from whoſe command they freed themſelves by a popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this beſieged them, and brought them to ſuch extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be ſtarved. Yet ſuch was the humanity of the Beſiegers, that when they entred the Town, every man carryed victuals in his hand in ſtead of weapons, to beget as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valour and conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being firſt a Taylor in *Eſſex*, aftewards ſerved *Edward* the third in his *French* wars, where he was knighted. And when, upon the peace concluded after the battel of *Poictiers*, he wanted employment; he entred with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himſelf into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in war with this City: who for his valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles* the 8th. went into *Italy*, the *Piſans* again revolted; and were not without much labour and great charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it ſelf, it is almoſt as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compaſs, and that but ſix; but very ſhort of it in the numbers of people, *Florence* being ſaid to contain 90000 ſouls, *Piſa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to ſay, the publick *Arſenal* for ſhipping, an Univerſity for Students, and the See of an Archbiſhop: the Cathedrall Church of which is a very beautifull peece of work, the Gates thereof are braſs, and the Steeple of it of ſuch artificiall and exquiſite building, that it ſheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholſomeneſs of the air over-ballanceth all theſe fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City, is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn* (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latin*) ſeated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified againſt the *Genoeſe*, by whom the works were once ſlighted, *An.* 1297. Upon a Reconciliation made between thoſe States it returned again to its old Maſters. And when the *Piſans* were ſold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Fregoſa* Duke of *Genoa*, ſeized upon this place, and ſold it alſo to the ſame Chapmen, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Coſmo* and his two ſonnes, it is much improved in ſtrength and beauty; and ſo well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt Cities in *Chriſtendome*: Cities I ſay, and not Caſtles, the Caſtles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the ſtrongeſt Forts in the World. After this comes in 3 *Peira Sancta*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Arnus*, a place of great conſequence and ſtrength; one of the beſt pieces of the *Piſans* when a Free-eſtate, againſt their old enemies the *Genoeſe*, towards whom it ſtandeth. 4 *Terraciola*, Eaſtward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Caſtellona*, an Epiſcopal See. And 6 *Porto Berrata* bordering on the Signeury of *Sienna*; now nothing but a ſtation for Ships (nor much uſed for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the beſt Cities of the *Tuſcans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedome is the City and Territory of *SIENNA*, lying betwixt the Eſtate of *Piſa*, and the land of the Church. The City ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old ſickly men to ſojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Æneas Silvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* the ſecond; of *Francis Picolomini*, after Pope *Pius* the third; and of *Sixtus* (hence ſurnamed) *Senenſis*, the greateſt Scholar of the three, if not of all the age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Senæ Juliæ*; to difference it perhaps from another of that name neer the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built neer the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treiſſa*; but built (which makes the ſituation of it exceeding pleaſant) upon an high hill, on which there is a Caſtle that commands the Town; the ſtreets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and ſpacious Market-place; neer to which is a very fair Palace, uſed for a Senate-houſe in the Free-Commonwealth: and on the South ſide neer the Walls, the Cathedrall Church, reputed to be one of the faireſt in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an aſcent by fair Marble ſtairs, of which the Pavement is made alſo. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperiall faction, it bought its liberty at an eaſie rate, of the Emperour *Rodolphus* the firſt. After it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Coſmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, *An.* 1558. in conſideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*; and other ſervices expected for the time to come. *Coſmo* being thus inveſted in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the firſt Prince who had the abſolute command of it, after the conſtitution of their Commonwealth: neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their ſeverall factions; and ſuffered to have Garriſons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their party. And to ſay truth, it ſtood with good reaſon of State, that the *Florentine* ſhould uſe all his wit to get this City; and having got it, uſe all means to aſſure it to him. For beſides that great acceſſion which it made unto his Eſtate; by adding thereunto the yeerly income of a hundred and fifty thouſand Ducats, above all expences: it was alſo to be carefully looked on as a Rivall, which had long time ſtood in competition with it, for the ſoveraign command of *Tuſcany*. Beſides there had been mighty animoſities be-

between the Cities; the *Florentine* being alwayes of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennoys* of the *Gibelline* faction. A faction at last so generally distasted in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on an *Ashwednesday*, when the Pope being to cast Ashes on the heads of the Cardinals, was to have said, *Memento O homo quòd cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*; according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibelline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him, *Memento O homo quòd* Gibellinus *es, & cum* Gibellinis *morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1 *Montalcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latin*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. 2 *Castro Cartaldo*, seated upon a lofty Hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the best wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. 3 *Soana*, an Episcopall City; as also are 4 *Pienza*. 5 *Crossetto*, and 6 *Chiusi*; this last the *Clusium* of the antient *Tuscans* spoken of before. Besides these there are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great observation in the course of businesse. *The Tuscan Islands.*

There belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Peeces on the Sea; which when it was consigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion; but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keyes of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramont of those Seas. Of those the principall, if not all, 1 *Piombino*, in *Latin* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead; adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentifull Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole rents of the Estate. 2 *Port Telamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Telamon* an adjoyning Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscany* in those elder times, but most remarkable for the great battell fought neer unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Galls*, *A. V. C.* 529. the Army of the *Galls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Attilius* one of the Consuls being slain, the victory was gotten by *Æmilius* his Colleague, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Aneroestus* and *Congolianus* two Kings of the *Transalpine Galls* being slain or taken. A victory which drew after it the totall subjugation of the *Cisalpine Galls*, which followed within three years after. 3 *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the East, the *Cossa* of the antient Writers. 4 *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninsula*, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbitello*; by the *Latins* called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by some, who have observed the situation, strength and extent thereof, to be the fittest place for a Royall City to be built in, to command those Seas. 5 *Port Hercule*, which still retains its antient name, imparted to it from some Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; situate neer the Eastern *Isthmus* of the said *Peninsula*. 6 *Porto-Longone*, a piece of speciall consequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cause of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the conquest of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now possess it.

The fourth and last member of this Estate, are the Islands in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principall whereof is 1 *Ilva*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*; called antiently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmed it to contain in compasse a hundred miles, but it proves upon a just ameasurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furnished with Corn, and less with fruits; but plentifull in Mines of Iron, as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, especially for Steel, of great esteem in the time of *Virgil*; as appeareth by that passage in the tenth of the *Æneids*, where it is called

Insula inexhaustis Chalybum generosa metallis.

A noble Isle, and known full well,
For unexhausted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is supplyed by Iron; which Iron is of so strange a nature, that every 25 yeer it renueth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilst it is in the Island, but must be carryed somewhere else. It affordeth also Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in some parts, the Loadstone also. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it against the *Turks*, if they should at any time invade it; resigned it, by the Counsell of *Charles* the fifth, unto *Cosmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: reserving to themselves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except those that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither; and therefore if the *Turks* or *Moors* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the coasts adjoyning, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable; having also good store of Canon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Cosmopolis*; well fortified, and made the seat of his new order of St. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Island of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* antiently, just opposite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having some 25 miles in compass; neer unto which the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Pisans* in a Fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puissance. 3 *Capraria* not far from *Ligorn*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the same reason *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers:

The Tuſcan Iſlands.

as 4 *Gallinaria* not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the reſt nothing memorable, but that ſome of them do occur in the antient Writers: of which ſort are *Melorta*, heretofore *Lanellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2 *Lanuſi*, formerly *Artemiſia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3 *Gorgona*, 4 *Troia*, and 5 the ſmall Illands which are called *Formicæ*. 6 To theſe we may adde alſo the Iſle of *Planaſia*, more memorable than the reſt, for the baniſhment and death of *Agrippa Poſthumus*, the Nephew of *Auguſtus Cæſar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State Imperiall: ſituate ſomewhat nearer unto *Corſica*, than the reſt of theſe Iſlands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whoſe poſterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-ſtate* (as *Machiavil* informs us in his *Florentine* Hiſtory) accounted in the chief rank of the Popular Nobility: thoſe being ſuch of the antient Nobles, as to be capable of the Magiſtracy, and publick Offices (then wholly ſhared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themſelves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the yeer 1410, *John de Medices* (the firſt great raiſer of this houſe) ſtoutly maintaining the Liberties of the people againſt the great ones; was by them ſo honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great party, but almoſt a Soveraignty in the City. To him ſucceeded his ſonne *Coſmo*, one of the greateſt Stateſmen of thoſe times; who did not only much reforme the civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Caſentino*, *Burgo* St. *Sepulchro*, and ſome other pieces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his ſonne, whoſe whole time was conſumed in ſuppreſſing ſuch Factions, as had at home been raiſed againſt him: and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater meaſure of his Fathers vertues) to *Lawrence*, and *Julian*, his two ſonnes. The people after his deceaſe, either deſirous of Novelties, as moſt people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerfull Family; ſeemed to incline to one of the *Soderini*, a man of plauſible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciouſly conſidering, that new houſes as they are eaſily honoured, ſo are they as ſoon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependences which were caſt upon him, on theſe two young men of the *Medices*: as being deſcended from a Family which had long governed the City. Againſt theſe two, the *Pazzi*, a potent houſe in *Florence*, conſpired, and at Maſs they ſlew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* eſcaped: the blows which were ſtruck at him, being received by one of his ſervants, whom two dayes before he had delivered out of priſon. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Arch-biſhop of *Piſa*, who had been of the conſpiracy. To revenge the death of this Biſhop, Pope *Paul* the 2d. excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo* to divert this miſchief, went in perſon to *Naples*; where he grew ſo much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetuall League made between them. After his death 1492, his ſonne *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Piſa*, and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, baniſhed. *John di Medices* the ſonne of *Lawrence*, and Brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo* the 10th. reſtored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exil'd. This diſgrace *Julio di Medices* ſon to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* the 7th. not enduring; procured *Charles* the fifth to beſiege it: which requeſt was granted, and the City after two yeers reſiſtance, yeelded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Grand-child to *Peter*, by his ſon *Lawrence*) *An.* 1531. And he to reſtrain the inſolencies of the people, built a ſtrong Citadell in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Luſt and Wantonneſſe; which being obſerved by *Lawrence di Medices* his own Couſen, he trained him to a ſecret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautifull Lady, and there baſely murdered him. Which done, in ſtead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their loſt Liberty, as he firſt intended; he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the Accident, the heads of the *Medices* conſulted together, and ſent for *Coſmo di Medices* dwelling in the Countrey with his Mother (and then about 18 yeers of age) to be their Prince: as being the next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Coſmo* proving an excellent Stateſman, and a fortunate Commander, ſo ſwayed the affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain* to be aſſured of his friendſhip, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* the 4th. had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuſcany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwiſe his ſpeciall friend) thwarted that intent, as loath to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himſelf. After in the yeer 1570. *Pius* the fifth crowned the ſaid *Coſmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the title of *Great Duke* of *Tuſcany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Dukes Coronet he cauſed to be engraven theſe words, *Pius quintus Pont. max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque juſtitiæ ſtudium, donavit.* Thus forward were theſe Popes to honour this Family; but their ſucceſſors have been otherwiſe affected to it. For when one of Duke *Coſmo*'s ſucceſſors did ſince intreat a ſucceeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuſcany*; the Pope not liking ſo Lordly a title, made anſwer, that he was content, *He ſhould be a King in Tuſcany, but not King of Tuſcany.* A Scholar-like diſtinction, but not ſo ſatisfactory to the point propoſed.

The Princes of the houſe of *Medices*, in the *Free-eſtate*.

1410 1 *John di Medices*, the firſt advancer of the Family to publick greatneſs.
1433 2 *Coſmo di Medices*, the ſonne of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.

3 *Peter*,

1464 3 *Peter*, the ſonne of *Coſmo*.
1472 4 *Lawrence di Medices*, ſonne of *Peter*, the great Advancer of Learning in *Italy*.
1492 5 *Peter di Medices* II. exiled upon the coming in of *Charles* the 8th.
6 *Lawrence di Medices* II. ſonne of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of *Urbin* by Pope *Leo* the 10th. He was Father of *Catharine de Medices*, *French* Queen.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great Dukes* of *Tuſcany*.

1531 1 *Alexander di Medices*, the ſonne of *Lawrence*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*.
1537 2 *Coſmo* II. the next heir of *Alexander*, deſcended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the firſt *Coſmo*; the wiſeſt Stateſman of his time.
1574 3 *Francis di Medices*, ſonne of *Coſmo* the 2d Father of *Mary* the *French* Queen.
1587 4 *Ferdinand di Medices*, the Brother of *Francis*.
1609 5 *Coſmo* III. ſonne of *Ferdinand*.
1621 6 *Ferdinand* II. ſonne of *Coſmo di Medices*, the twelfth of this Family, the ſixth Duke of *Florence*, and the fifth of *Tuſcany*.

The length of this Eſtate is 260 miles, the breadth in ſome places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one conſiderable Port on the main land, which is that of *Ligorn*; ſo that his ſtrength in ſhipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not ſuffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Countrey) and carryed thence in forain Veſſels. For otherwiſe being an induſtrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea muſt needs be greater than it is: the *Great Dukes* Fleet conſiſting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaſſes. And for his power by land, he hath in readineſs ſixteen thouſand Foot, of his own ſubjects, well trained and muſtered under experienced Commanders, to ſerve him upon all occaſions; and a hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horſmen, well paid, as well in times of Peace, as in time of War. And beſides theſe, he keeps ſo many Forts and Towns in continuall Garriſon, that his Eſtate is ſaid to *be made of Iron*.

The only Order of *Knighthood* in this Eſtate is that of S. *Stephen*, inſtituted by *Coſmo di Medices*, *An.* 1561. and dedicated to S. *Stephen*, becauſe upon the Feſtivall of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the 6 of *Auguſt*, he won the famous battell of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* the fourth confirmed it the ſame yeer, and granted them all the Priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that thoſe of this Order ſhould make a vow of Charity, of conjugall Chaſtity, and Obedience. They are to be nobly born, and in lawfull Wedlock; of the *Romiſh* Church, and without note of infamy. Their Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Croſs on their left ſide, as well upon their Military Garments, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally againſt the *Turks* and *Moors*, for which cauſe ſetled firſt at *Piſa*, being neer the Sea; but after at *Coſmopolis* in the Iſle of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain, the *Great Duke* the Supreme Maſter of it. Other Orders are commonly ſimple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honourary.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free-Eſtate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifeſt, in that having in thoſe five yeers, wherein they waged War againſt the Duke of *Millain*, ſpent three millions and an half of Florens; their Treaſury was ſo far from being exhauſted, that the next yeer they beſieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Commonwealth into a Dukedome, and the addition of the Territory and City of *Sienna*; the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raiſed yeerly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*; 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*, the cuſtoms ariſing out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yeerly to 130000 Ducats, the toll of Milſtones only unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not ſhort of that: in all a million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his ſtock going amongſt the Bankers, and trades as much as any, in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countreys he loſeth the priviledges of a Nobleman, that betakes himſelf to Trade and Merchandize. He uſeth alſo to buy up almoſt all the Corn, which is brought into the Countrey out of other parts, and ſell it again at his own price: forbidding any to be ſold till all his be vended. The reſt is made up by *Exciſe* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor eſpecially: inſomuch, that is was tartly ſaid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui ſub* Medicis *vivit, miſerè vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new ſenſe.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three Flower *de Lyces* of the firſt.

Here are in this Eſtate,
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 26.

The State of LVCA.

IN the Weſt part of *Tuſcany*, betwixt the Eſtate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *LVCA*, ſo called from *Lucamo*, a King of the *Tuſcans*, who is ſaid to have built it: ſit ſate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Countrey

Luca. is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three miles in compaſſe, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a curteous and modeſt people, men of good judgement, and diſcreet, and by their wiſdoms have preſerved themſelves a free Common-wealth, notwithſtanding the attempts of more powerfull Neighbours: and they are very induſtrious alſo, and well ſeen in *Manufactures*, eſpecially in weaving ſilks and cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City ſeated in a Plain, compaſſed with Mountains on all ſides except towards *Piſtoia*: ſo ſtrongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Iſle of *Candy*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was leſs known) to be the four ſtrongeſt Towns in the *Chriſtian* World. The ſtreets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad free-ſtone, and moſt eaſie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of free-ſtone alſo, and beautified with pleaſant Gardens. On the North-weſt ſtands a very ſtrong Caſtle, neer which lieth the Cathedrall, ſtately paved with Marble, but very dark, as moſt of the *Popiſh* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cæſar*, *Pompey*, and *Craſſus*, ſo pernicious to the *Roman* Republick. For *Pompey* deſirous to maintain his authority, *Cæſar* to get honour, and *Craſſus* to encreaſe his wealth, here united their Counſels: *Pompey's* authority to be upheld by *Cæſar's* Arms, and *Craſſus* his riches; *Cæſar's* continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey's* power, and *Craſſus* his money; and *Craſſus* his eſtate to be ſecured by *Pompey's* greatneſſe, and *Cæſar's* military reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themſelves, aſſigning *Gaul* to *Cæſar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Craſſus*, *Syria*: which ſtrong confederacy was the cauſe of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Craſſus* being ſlain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæſar* wanting a third man to poize the ballance, fell firſt to diſcontents, then to civil Wars; which at laſt made *Cæſar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which ſucceeded afterwards, was grounded that ſo memorated ſpeech of *Cicero*, that is to ſay, *Utinam* Pompeius *cum* Cæſare *ſocietatem aut nunquam iniiſſet, aut nunquam diremiſſet.*

But to return again to the affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became poſſeſſed by the *Gothes*, from them recovered by *Narſes* with the reſt of *Italy*. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface*, the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Counteſs *Mathildis*: who being deceaſed without iſſue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Eſcheat, the Citizens made a common purſe, and bought their Liberty of the Emperour *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some ſay the money was diſburſed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithſtanding this purchaſe and their title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* ſeized upon it again; under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Caſtruccio*, who had made himſelf abſolute Maſter of it. By a *German* Garriſon there left, it was ſold to the *Genoeſe*; and having paſſed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles* the fourth got it once again: of whom they once more purchaſed their deſired Liberties, for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to ſecure themſelves thereof, demoliſhed the Caſtle built by *Caſtruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper ſtrength, they have put themſelves under the protection of their potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conduced moſt to their preſervation: and finding no ſecurity from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they ſeverally tryed; they put themſelves at laſt into the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compaſſe eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it ſelf, being that of *Luna*, a Biſhops See; all the reſt ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yeeld a Revenue to the publick Treaſury of 80000 Crowns *per annum*; and out of which the State is able to raiſe (if there be occaſion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe. A great ſtrength for ſo ſmall a *Signeury*, but all too weak to ſave them from the *Great Dukes* clutches, if he did ſeriouſly attempt to force it, and would venture on the diſpleaſure of the *Catholick* King: beſides that it is thought, that he receives more profit thence in gifts and preſents, by letting it ſtand as it is; than it would yeeld (conſidering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principall Magiſtrate is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every ſecond moneth; aſſiſted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every ſixth moneth alſo; during which time they live together in the Palace, or Common-hall. Other inferior Officers I inſiſt not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Biſhops only, which acknowledge the Arch-biſhop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan*.

The Common-wealth of GENOA.

DIrectly Weſt of *Tuſcany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lyeth the Countrey antiently called *Liguria*, now *Riviere di Genoa*, the coaſt of *Genoa*, becauſe it lyeth all along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by ſome *Il Genovoſate*, from *Genoa*, the *Metropolis* of this Countrey and Common-wealth. A common-wealth once of a larger reputation and authority, than it is at the preſent; commanding heretofore the Iſlands of *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Chio*, with ſome others in the *Greekiſh* Seas; the Town of *Caffa* or *Theodoſia*, in the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*; *Pera*, on the other ſide of *Conſtantinople*; and a good part of *Tuſcany*.

It was alſo then ſo ſtrong both in men and ſhipping, that they ſent ſeven ſeverall Armies to the wars of

of the *Holy Land*: and in the ſpace of three daies only armed once upon occaſion of preſent ſervice, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being veſſels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and ſixty Oars apiece); and at another time, one hundred and ſixty ſixe Gallies, at a ſudden pinch. By the advantage of this ſtrength, they beat the *Piſans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling them to pay 135000 Crowns for their peace; they got a good ſhare in the diviſion of the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latines*; and held a very ſtrong hand over the *Venetians*. Theſe laſt they had once in ſo great an exigence, having vanquiſhed their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Iſland of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*; that the Senate ſent them a blank Charter, bidding them write down what conditions they pleaſed, which ſhould be readily condeſcended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unſeaſonably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own diſpoſal. Whereupon the *Venetians* now made deſperate aſſault the ſecure *Genoeſe*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they alwaies had the worſt, loſing their Iſlands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha*, and *Pera*, with their Iſlands in the *Greek* Seas, to the great *Turk*; moſt of their holds in *Tuſcany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the laſt being ſo broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to ſet out a Navy fit for any enterprize. But theſe misfortunes were occaſioned principally by their own diviſions; the City being miſerably torn in pieces by continual factions: firſt betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli*, on the one ſide, the *Fliſci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, *An.* 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri*, and *Mollani*, againſt the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, *Anno* 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themſelves, *Anno* 1336. And fourthly, between the Nobility and the Commons, *Anno* 1339. Which Factions did ſo weaken them both at home and abroad, that having loſt the greateſt part of their Eſtate, they were fain to put themſelves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the reſt; having now nothing left them but *Liguria*, and the Iſle of *Corſica*.

1 *LIGURIA* hath on the Eaſt, the River *Varus*, riſing about the edge of *Provence*; on the Weſt, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuſcany*; on the North, the *Apennine* hils; and on the South, the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. It is in length a hundred and forty miles; that is to ſay, from the Port of *Luna* in the Eaſt, to that of *Monaco* in the Weſt, which lyeth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not anſwerable to the length: and is divided generally into two parts or Provinces, the Eaſt, and the Weſt, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a ſtout and warlike Nation, light and ſwift of body, well practiſed in laying Ambuſhes, and not diſcouraged by any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Countrey ſerved them very well, being rough, mountainous, and woody, and full of ſtraight and dangerous paſſages; and in this tract few open Towns, but many wel-fortified Caſtles; ſo that without much labour they could neither be taken, nor beſieged. And if at any time they were vanquiſhed in the open field, they had recourſe unto theſe Caſtles, and other Faſtneſſes, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains; in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades*, and *Inganni*; all at laſt vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, after the ſecond *Punick* war: but not without much labour and pains, by reaſon of the Woods, Mariſhes, and Mountains, within and behinde which they retired and ſaved themſelves. Inſomuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty, to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quàm vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this, much moleſt the *Romans*, till at laſt *Poſthumius* ſo diſweaponed them, that he ſcarce left them inſtruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Maſters. In the diviſion of whoſe large Territories by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italie*; as it was alſo one of the ſeventeen Provinces, into which *Italie* was divided by the Emperor *Conſtantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kinde of men they were in the breaking of the Weſtern Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea and Land, ſpoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandiſe than war, but moſt of all to uſury. A vice which the Chriſtians learned of the *Jewes*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the ſaying of a merry fellow, that in Chriſtendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when anſwer was made, that of all theſe there was rather too great a plenty, than any ſcarcity; he replyed, that if there were *Scholars* enough, ſo many would not be double or treble beneficed; if Gentlemen enough, ſo many Peaſants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jewes* enough, ſo many *Chriſtians* would not profeſs *Uſury*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the moſt their hair in treſſes, which they caſt over their backs: they wear no upper garments but of cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under-garments of the pureſt ſtuffe. The women here are priviledged above all in *Italie*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publickly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at ſuch time as the *French* were Maſters of this Eſtate; who do allow their wives ſuch exceſs of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtezan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Countrey or the City it ſelf, do abuſe this Liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be paſt all ſhame; as they eſteem the *Genoan* Merchants, (who make little reckoning of their promiſes, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which, and other things concerning this Eſtate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne ſenza legni*, &c. that is to ſay, *Mountains without wood, Seas without fiſh, Men without faith, and Women without ſhame.*

The Countrey, as beforeſaid, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy rocks towards the Sea: ſo that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidſt thoſe hils are vallies of as rich a vein, as moſt others in *Italie*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits;

Genoa. with ſuch variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are ſeldome unfurniſhed of them in the moneth of *December*. It yeeldeth alſo great plenty of moſt pleaſant wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Chriſto*, or *Lachrymæ Chriſti*: this laſt ſo pleaſing to the taſt, that it is ſaid, a *Dutchman* taſting of it as he travelled in theſe parts, fetch't a great ſigh, and brake out into this expreſſion; How happy had it been with us, *Si Chriſtus lachrymatus eſſet in noſtris* Regionibus, if *CHRIST* had ſhed ſome of his tears in the Countrey of *Germany*! Their greateſt want is that of Corn, and therewith do ſupply themſelves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eaſtern part, are 1 *Sarezana*, a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Florentines*, and one of the beſt pieces of this Republick. 2 *Pontremuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latines* call it) of as great conſequence as that, but poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*. 3 *Lerigi*, an Haven in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4 *Seſtri*, a reaſonable good place, remarkable for as white bread, and as pleaſant wine, as any in *Italie*. 5 *Fino*, an Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, antiently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatneſs: but they are ſet ſo thick, and intermingled with ſo many goodly houſes both on the hils and the vallies, that for the ſpace of twenty miles, the whole Countrey ſeems to be one continual building.

In the weſt part the Towns of moſt importance are, 1 *Monaco*, of old called *Monoecus*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long ſince to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of its proper owner; but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a later Contract. 2 *Ventimiglio*, a good Town, and ſweetly ſeated. 3 *Savona*, taken by the *Genoeſe*, *Anno* 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the *interview* betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and *Lewis* the 12th of *France*, *Anno* 1507. Who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here moſt ſtrangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* firſt boording *Ferdinands* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers daies feaſting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his poſſeſſion, as Protector of the Eſtate of *Genoa*. Which kinde of *interviews* (I note this only by the way) as they chance but ſeldom; ſo when they do, they prove for the moſt part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enmities not being eaſily forgot by perſons of a publick *Intereſs*. Nay, that Notable Stateſman *Philip de Comines* utterly diſliketh all ſuch meetings of Princes, though in Amity and good correſpondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* the 11th of *France*, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*; who meeting purpoſely, *Anno* 1463, to change ſome friendly words together, took ſuch diſlike at each others perſon, and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward* the fourth of *England*, and the ſame King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperor, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His reaſons I purpoſely omit, as not pertinent to my preſent undertaking, and make haſt again unto the Town; which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many ſtately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoeſe* by the *Viſconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at laſt recovered again by thoſe of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yeelded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, *viz.* *Gregory* the 7th, *Julio* the 2d and *Sixtus* the 4th, which is as much as *Genoa* it ſelf can brag of. 4 *Nola*, upon the Sea ſide, a commodious Haven, 5 *Finali*, a goodly Port-town alſo, and very well fortified; honoured of a long time with the title of a Marquiſate, one of the ſeven founded by the Emperor *Otho* (of which more hereafter): but taken from the laſt Marqueſs by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governor of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and garriſoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*; the poor Marqueſs being put off with an Annual Penſion, *Anno* 1602. 6 *Mileſimo*, a ſmall Town adjoyning, poſſeſſed upon the ſame right by the *Spaniard* alſo; who by theſe pieces hath a ſtrong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7 But the great Ornament of thoſe parts of *Italie*, is the City of *Genoa*, firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Janus* the ſon of *Saturn*; as others ſay, by *Janus Genius Priſcus*, an *Italian* or *Tuſcan* King. But by whomſoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miſerably deſtroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Surius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whoſe cauſe and quarrel it was ruined: once again ſpoiled and waſted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, *Anno* 660. or thereabouts; but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great. On his Foundation it now ſtands, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Liguſtick*, or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill, full of ſtately Palaces, it giveth a moſt pleaſant and magnificent proſpect. It is in compaſs ſix miles, of an orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land, by Art and Nature, there being but one way to come to it by land, and that over ſteep and craggy Rocks. The ſtreets are narrow, paved with Flint, and moſt of them on the ſides of the hill; which is the reaſon that they uſe Horſe-litters here in ſtead of Coaches, and moſt of the better ſort are carried on mens ſhoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs: which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nueva*, or the *New-ſtreet*, reaching from the Weſt to North-eaſt, is of a very fair breadth: each houſe whereof is built with ſuch Kingly magnificence, that it is thought to be the faireſt ſtreet in the World. In all the reſt, the buildings for the height of two ſtories are made of Marble, curiouſly wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be uſed any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, ſafe from the violence of Tempeſts, and well fortified: ſo that the *Spaniards* uſe to ſay, that were the Catholick King abſolute Lord of *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italie*, he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the people here continued ſubject to his ſucceſſors; till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italie*, made them free, *Anno* 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318, when being ſhrewdly weakned in their Eſtate, they were fain to give themſelves to Pope *John* the 22d; after to

Robert

Robert King of *Naples*. But being ſoon weary of a forein Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Bocca negra*, to be their Duke, *Anno* 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the reign of *Charles* the 7th; under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many inſolencies, they put themſelves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, *Anno* 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of thoſe Princes, in great tranquillity, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; ſave that once D. *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great maſs of money. But, as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the houſe of a *Genoeſe*, and walking in a Garden with him, was ſhewed an herb growing there, called *Baſil*, which ſtroaking gently, he ſmelt thence a moſt pleaſing ſavour, but as unſavoury a ſmell, when he ſtrained it hard The *Genoeſe* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently ſtroke the hand of his puiſſance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious, if he do oppreſs it. But *Lodowick* being taken priſoner by King *Lewis* the 12th, they firſt came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*; according as thoſe Nations had poſſeſſion of the State of *Millain*: and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedome of King *Francis* the firſt. Which being not able to preſerve by their proper ſtrength, they finally put themſelves under the ſhelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector, and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, *Anno* 1600, a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes authority; that ſo the King might be indebted to that See; for moſt of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Maſters of this City. The ſame courſe of non-payment, the King took with the reſt of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the reſt, inſomuch that it was commonly ſaid in *Italie*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, then *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his life. And thus you ſee this great City which commanded the *Ocean*, the Lady of ſo many Iſlands, and a great Moderator of the Affairs of *Italie*; fain to put her ſelf into the protection of a forein Prince; and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treaſure; which he continually raiſeth from them in the way of Loán, of which he often proves but a ſorry Pay-maſter. And if the Wars he had with *England* did ſo drain their Purſes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him ſo indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no queſtion but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the laſting Wars made againſt him by the *French*, in ſo many places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithſtanding this people do ſo thrive under his protection, and draw ſo great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treaſury never fuller then it is at the preſent.

Corſica.

CORSICA is an Iſland in the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Sea, oppoſite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is diſtant about ſixty miles; and lying juſt North of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, from which it is diſtant ſeven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, ſeventy in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longeſt day being almoſt fifteen hours.

The people are ſtubborn, poor, unlearned; ſuppoſed to be more cruel than other Nations, and ſo affirmed to be by *Cæſar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as ſome ſay, of the 52 daughters of *Theſpius*, who being all got with childe in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Iſland, after peopled by them. From one of theſe ſons named *Cyrnus*, the Iſland had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in ſome old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Euſtathius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corſica* from a woman ſo named, dwelling in the coaſt of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the firſt that diſcovered it. But theſe Originals I look on, the firſt eſpecially, as the worſt kind of *Romances*: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which ſignifies a horn or corner, by reaſon of the many Promontories with which it ſhoots into the Sea. *Corſica inſula multis promontoriis anguloſa eſt*, as it is in *Iſidore*, Lib. 14. cap. 6. And for the name of *Corſica*, I ſhould derive it rather from the *Corſi* by which name the inhabitants hereof are called in moſt *Latin* Writers) one of the two Nations of moſt note in the neighbouring Iſland of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populorum Balari, & Corſi*, as we finde in *Plinie*. Which *Corſi*, or ſome of them, being overborn by ſome new Invaders (which the Iſland of *Sardinia* was ſeldom free of) were fain to ſhift their ſeat, and came over hither.

This Countrey yeeldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horſes, fierce Maſtiffs; and a beaſt called *Mufoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Iſland, and *Sardinia* only, but there called *Mufrones*, or *Muſriones* (for I conceive they are the ſame under divers names) ſaid to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of ſuch an incredible hardneſs, that the Beaſt being caſt headlong againſt a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemy to his den.

The ſoyl by reaſon of the mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing Corn in leſs plenty, but the beſt Wines, and ſuch as the old *Romans* well reliſhed, in good meaſure. It produceth alſo Oyl, Figs, Raiſons, and Honey: the firſt three in a mediocrity of goodneſs, the laſt ſomewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholeſom. It aboundeth alſo with Allom, Box-tree, Iron-mines; and the tree called *Taxus*; whoſe poyſonous Berries though in taſte pleaſing, are much fed on by Bees; and therefore thought to be the cauſe of the bitterneſs of the Hony. In ſome few places where the Rivers have their currents, eſpecially towards *Liguria*; it recompenſeth, by its fertility in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenneſs of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midſt of it, divide the whole Iſland into *Ciſmontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Tranſmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet ſo, that the people on each ſide call themſelves the *Ciſ-*

montanes,

Corſica. *montanes*, and the other the *Tramontanes*. Both of them ſpeak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spaniſh*.

For Rivers, there are none of note, the principall of thoſe which the Iſland yeelds, being called *Gelo* and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, ſome of the Ancients reckoned 33, which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Caſtles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of ſome Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Biſhops See. But now the place of moſt importance, is the Town of *Baſtia*, ſeated in the North-eaſt part of the Iſland, oppoſite almoſt unto *Alleria*; with a commodious Haven to it, and a ſtrong Garriſon to defend it: as being the ordinary ſeat of the Governor ſent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Biſhop of *Alleria*, who makes there his reſidence. 2 *Aiazze*, a reaſonable ſtrong Town, and a Biſhops See; and ſo is alſo 3 *Nebbio*, called *Cherſunum* by *Ptolemy*. Then there is 4 *Porto Vrechio*, built not long ſince in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony ſent from *Genoa*. 5 S. *Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midſt betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*: and 6 S. *Boniface*, called by *Ptolemie Portus Syracuſanus*, juſt oppoſite unto it in the South corner of the Iſle; both of them places of good ſafety, and capable of the greateſt veſſels that frequent thoſe Seas.

Who were the firſt Inhabitants is not eaſily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had ſome footing here, is manifeſt by that of *Callimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it Φοίνισσα Κύρνος, the *Phœnician Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which queſtionleſs he miſtook for *Tyrii*) caſt the *Phocenſes* out of this Iſland. But whether theſe *Phocenſes* did firſt inhabit it, or only had a Colony in ſome part thereof, is not demonſtrable from thoſe Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a conqueſt of it, and held it till the time of the firſt *Punick War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally ſubdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till ſome time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Papyrius*, *A.V.C.* 541. This Iſland and *Sardinia* at the firſt being joyned together, and governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two diſtinct Provinces, immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and conſequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who uſed to ſend their condemned perſons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for ſhipping; the Countrey even till then being very much over-grown with Woods. Afterwards with the reſt of the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, againſt whom *Ademar* the Count or Governor of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquiſhed them in a fight at Sea, but loſt his life in the action: which notwithſtanding the *Genoeſe* followed their good fortune, ſeiſed on the Iſland, and carried thence 13 of the Enemies Ships. The *Piſans* after this got poſſeſſion of it, but being vanquiſhed by the *Genoeſe* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that it hath alwaies followed the fortune of *Genoa*, ſave that it remained ſomewhat longer than that City did in the hand of the *French*, who in the year 1554, ſeized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great diſhonour of Chriſtianity) they entertained in their wars againſt *Charles* the fifth; but in the end, reſtored it to the Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. And for ſecuring of this Iſland to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handſom project: imploying none but natural *Genoeſe* to ſerve in the Garriſons of the Iſland, the better to keep under this untractable people; and filling all their Garriſons upon the *Continent* with natural *Corſicans*, whereby the Iſland is unfurniſhed of its ableſt men, who alſo ſerve for *hoſtages* of the *publick Faith*.

Having thus took a brief view of the ſeveral parts and members of this *Common-wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. Firſt for the *Government*, the principal of their Magiſtrates hath the name of Duke; as *titular* as the Duke of *Venice*, but of leſs eſteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called moſt properly the *Mayore* of *Genoa*. For thoſe two years he dwels in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the guard of his perſon; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth ſome reſemblance of a *Negative voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his houſe as a private perſon, but ſo, that during life he hath the office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are aſſiſtant eight principal Officers, who ſit upon the ſame fourm with him, and continue in their office for two years alſo; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeurie*: but he and they in matters of moſt weight and moment, ſubordinate to the *General Councel*, conſiſting of 400 perſons, all of them Gentlemen of the City; who with the nine before remembred do conſtitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued, ever ſince by the power and goodneſs of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himſelf their Prince) they were diſcharged of their ſubjection to the *French*, *Anno* 1528, never in danger of relapſing to their former ſervitude, but in the treaſonable practiſe of the *Fliſchi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to poſſeſs themſelves of the *Principality* under protection of the *French*, had ſo laid their plot, that *Auguſtine di Fliſchi*, who was deſigned to be their Duke, had in the night time ſeiſed on the Navie, and ſlain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one Gallie to another to make ſure of all, ſtumbled and fell into the Sea; where he and his ambitious treaſons were both drowned together.

As for their *Forces*, there are within the *Signeurie* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they ſee occaſion; 25 Gallies alwaies ready in the publick *Arſenal*, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient ſtrength to ſave them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a ſtrong Invader. But the chief ſtrength which they relie on is the King of *Spain*;

whoſe

whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of S. *George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns *per ann.* *Lombardy.*

As for the *Treasury* of S. *George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct: yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with the benefit which from hence redoundeth unto this Estate, I cannot better represent to the Readers view, than in the words of *Machiavel* the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus. "*Post diuturnum illud bellum quod* Genoenses *multis abhinc annis cum* Venetis *gessere, &c.* After that "tedious war between the *Genoese* and *Venetians* was ended in the year 1381. and that the *Genoese* found "themselves unable to repay those moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in pur-"suit thereof; they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that so in tract of "time the whole debt might be satisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common-hall, there to de-"liberate and determine of their affairs. These men thus made the Masters of the publick Taxes, elect "among themselves a Common-Councel of an Hundred; and over them eight Officers of especial "power, to order and direct the rest, and to dispose of the *Intrado*: which Corporation so established, "they entituled S. *Georges Bank*. It happened afterward, that the *Republick* wanting more moneys, "was glad to have recourse unto S. *George*; who growing wealthy by the orderly managing of his "stock, was best able to relieve them in their necessities: and as before they assigned their Taxes over "to him, so now, *ditionem suam oppignorabant*, they *Mortgaged* also their Demain. So that S. *George* "continually waxing richer, and the State poorer; this Corporation became possessed at last, of al-"most all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth: all which they governed by their own "Magistrates, chosen by common suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, that the "common people bearing less respect unto the publick, applyed themselves unto S. *George*: this "being alwaies orderly and prudently governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny: this never "changing Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the proud and ambitious lusts of each "Usurper, whether Domestical or Forein. Insomuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fre-*"*goси* and *Adorni*, contended for the Soveraignty in this Estate; most of the People looked upon it as "a Quarrel which concerned them not: S. *George* not medling more in it, than to take an Oath of "the prevailing Faction, to preserve his Liberties. *Rarissimo sanè exemplo, &c.* A most excellent and "rare thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old *Philosophers*, in their *Imaginary* Forms of a "Common-wealth: that in the same State, and the same People, one may see at the same time, both "Tyranny and Liberty, Justice and Oppression, Civility and Misgovernments: This only Corporation "preserving in the Common-wealth its ancient lustre. So that in case S. *George* should in the end be-"come possessed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible it may; the "State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose, that great Master of *State-craft*; a man of less impiety, and more regular life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Arch-bishops 1. Bishops 14.

The Estates of LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the East, with *Romandiola*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italie* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lyeth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Cisalpina*, whereof we shall speak more anon; and took this new name from the *Lombards*, or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already spoken, but shall speak more at large when we come to *Hungary*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* possessed themselves of a great part of *Italie*, but left their name to this Tract only. A tract of ground of which it may be truly said, that as *Italie* is the garden of *Europe*, so *Lombardy* is the garden of *Italie*, or the fairest flower in all that garden. A Countrey of so rich a mixture, that such another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for fields and pastures shaded with such excellent fruits, for plenty of fowl, fish, corn, and wine, cannot be found again in our Western World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have strived so eagerly and with such effusion of Christian bloud for the Dutchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richest part) of this goodly Countrey; and but a spot of earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing besides the principalites hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Cisalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over

Lombardy. over the *Alpes* by the taſte of the ſweet *Julian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Belovesus* ſon of *Ambigatus* King of the *Celtæ*, ſubdued the Natives, and poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Countrey, from the Weſt parts of the *Tuſcan* Sea and *Apennine* hils to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpes* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-eaſt, and the River *Arnus* on the South-eaſt. *Ciſalpina* it was called becauſe it lay on that ſide of the *Alpes* which was next to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other ſide of the Mountains, which had the name of *Tranſalpina*. It was alſo called *Gallia Togata*, becauſe the people of it being civilized, conformed themſelves to the *Roman* habit: that on the other ſide of the *Alpes* being called *Braccata*, becauſe they kept themſelves to their former Mantles (reſembling thoſe now worn by the vulgar *Iriſh*) which by the *Latines* were called *Braccæ*. For though the word *Braccæ* in ſome of our common Dictionaries be rendred Gally-ſlops or Breeches (and poſſibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me heretofore conceive that the habit of thoſe *Galls* was a kinde of *Trouzes*, ſuch as thoſe uſually worn by the *Iriſh* Foot-men: yet when I finde in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago impoſita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Caſſocks, I conceive I had good reaſon to tranſlate it otherwiſe.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to ſay, 1 The *Inſubres*, inhabiting from the *Alpes* to the River *Arnus*, and conſequently ſpreading over the Dukedoms of *Millaine*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Florence*: 2 The *Cenomani* who lay next the *Inſubres* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of *Trevigiana*: 3 The *Boii*, taking up the reſt of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and ſo much of *Romandiola* as lyeth on the North-weſt See of the River *Rubicon*: 4 the *Senones* who paſſing over the *Rubicon* inhabited the reſt of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbine*. Of theſe the *Senones* (or *Semnones* as *Ptolemie* cals them) were of greateſt fame. Theſe were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the battle of *Allia*, followed their victory unto *Rome*, which they ſacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which alſo had been taken by them, *ni Anſeres diis dormientibus vigilaſſent*, as S. *Auguſtine* ſcoffs it, if the Geeſe had not been more watchful then their gods, or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of gold to forſake the City: but before the money was received, they were aſſaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town and vanquiſhed in a ſet battel, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Rome ſecond Founder*. This happned *An. V. C.* 364. Vanquiſhed again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quinctius* the Dictator; and after that *An. V. C.* 404. by the ſaid *Camillus*, being then 80 years of Age, in the *Pontine* fields: they got the *Boii* to aſſiſt them: and after joyned with the *Samnites*, *Tuſcans*, and other Nations in a common war. But being for the moſt part beaten, and the war carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italie*, by *M. Curius* the Conſul: they were by him driven out of their own Countrey; and finally ſo ſlaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimon*, *An. V. C.* 470. that there was ſcarſe any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Anceſtors had ſet fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus deſtroyed, the *Romans* ſuffered the reſt of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet, till the end of the firſt *Punick* War, when being grown of more ſtrength, and at very good leiſure, they took up Armes againſt the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their aid both the *Inſubrians* and *Tranſalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe. *An. V. C.* 528. Diſcomfited by *Aimilius* the *Roman* Conſul, near *Telamon* a City of *Tuſcanie*, with the ſlaughter of 40000 of their men; they were ſet upon in their own Countrey ſhortly after by the Conſul *Flaminius*, vanquiſhed and mulcted with the loſſe of one half thereof: moſt of them after this dyſaſter paſſing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Inſubres* and the *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themſelves (the remainders of the *Tranſalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next year after, (*An. V. C.* 431.) under the Conſuls *M. Claudius Marcellus* and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loſs of their Armies, and ſome of their beſt Towns, they did yeeld themſelves: the *Romans* ſo becoming Maſters of all this Countrey. And yet it was accompted as a Province diſtinct from *Italie*, until the ſetling of the Empire in *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who dividing *Italie* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Ciſalpina*; that is to ſay, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Tranſpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the ſeven Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Italie*, according to the diſtribution of it which was made by *Conſtantine*. How it came with the reſt of *Italie* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the reſt of that Kingdom; hath been ſhewen already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*, it did ſo far preſerve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperors were ſometimes crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdome of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a ſilver Crown, for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a golden Crown at *Rome*, for the ſacred Empire. But the Empire being weakned by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Countrey was torn from it; and parcelled in concluſion, amongſt many Princes, as it ſtill continueth.

The *Lombards* being maſters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po*, into *Longobardia Ciſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine* Mountains: and *Tranſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the firſt of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder of the City of *Regio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconſul of it. In the diviſion of *Italie* by *Aug. Cæſar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Tranſpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentiſſimum Italiæ latus*, the moſt flouriſhing part of all *Italie*. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of uſe, and the whole Countrey being cantoned into many Eſtates, as before was ſaid;

we

we will conſider it at the preſent as it ſtands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevigiana*, deſcribed already, make up *Transpadana*: and thoſe of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*. *Millain.*

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THe Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the Eaſt, the Eſtates of *Mantua*, and *Parma*; on the Weſt, *Piemont*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North, *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Inſubres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui* inhabiting in thoſe parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedome of *Burgundie*: but croſſing the Mountains with the reſt of the *Gallick* Nation ſpoken of before, they ſetled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greateſt Tribes of the *Ciſalpine Galls*: from thence this Countrey hath the name of *Inſubrium Ducatus* in ſome of the neater Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanenſis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1 *Padus*, 2 *Addua*, 3 *Ollius*, and 4 *Ticinus*; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already; and beſides thoſe it hath alſo in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Come* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1 *Modoecum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatneſs; the fame thereof ariſing from the Iron Crown (kept in a Monaſtery here) wherewith ſome of the Emperors have been crowned by the Arch-biſhops of *Millain*. A cuſtome taken up from the Kings of the *Oſtrogothes*, who are ſaid to have firſt uſed the ſame, in teſtimony that they had won their Eſtates by *Iron*. 2 *Pavie*, or *Papia*, ſeated on the Floud *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke thereof; made an Univerſity by *Charles* the fourth, *Anno* 1361. and famous for the Battel, in which *Francis* the firſt of *France* was taken priſoner by *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1525. It is ſeated, as before was ſaid, on the Floud *Ticinus*, about four miles from the *Po* or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City ſo great a breadth, that the bridge over it is no leſs than 200 walking paces long, built of Free-ſtone, and covered over head with a roof ſupported all along with pillars. From this River the City it ſelf was anciently called *Ticinum*; and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Patria piorum* (the two firſt ſyllables of thoſe words being joyned together) by reaſon of the many godly men it did produce. It lyeth in length from Eaſt to Weſt, a new fair ſtreet dividing it in the very midſt: on the Weſt ſide whereof are two handſom Market-places, and a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*; whoſe Tomb, together with that of *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here ſtill remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being ſo pleaſed with the ſituation of the place, that they made it the Seat-royal of their Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the beſt indowed in *Italie*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns *per annum*. 3 *Como*, the Birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handſom Town, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle; that of the River paſſing over thoſe of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair houſes, and handſom Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midſt thereof an Iſland called *Comacina*, in which there was a ſtrong Fortreſs in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preſerve their Treaſury. 4 *Lodi*, or *Landa* in the *Latin*, ſeated in a proſperous ſoyl, and bleſſed with a painful and induſtrious people. 5 *Novara*, ſituate upon an high hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, conſigned over upon ſome conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is ſituate within the Dukedom of *Mont-ferrat*; and ſo is 6 *Alexandria* alſo, once a poor ſmall village, known by the name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oakes adjoyning to it: afterwards being raiſed to its preſent greatneſs, by the joynt purſes of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*, in honour of the Emperour it was called *Cæſarea*. But in ſhort time theſe people ſiding with the Popes, drew on themſelves the anger of the Emperor *Frederick Babaroſſa*: who having in a manner deſolated the City of *Millain*, the people thereof at the deſtruction of the City, retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander* the third, whoſe part they then took againſt the Emperor, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it ſtill retaineth. It is now the ſtrongeſt outwork of the whole Dutchy, well fortified againſt all aſſaults and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7 *Marignan*, ſituate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis* the firſt; and now the title of a Marqueſs. 8 *Cremona*, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthy ſoyl; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of ſuch fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of *Cremona* the faithful. It was built in the firſt year of the ſecond *Punick* War, and burnt to the ground by *Veſpaſians* ſouldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his forces: which defeat was given under the wals of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Veſpaſians* General, firſt after his victory entered into it, he went into a Bath to waſh away the ſweat and bloud from his body: where finding the water ſomewhat too cold, he ſaid by chance, that it ſhould anon be made hotter. Which words the ſouldiers applying to their greedy deſires, ſet fire on the Town, and ſpent four daies in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Veſpaſian* it was

again

Millain again re-edified, and is now grew famous for the high Tower; from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus portus in Ancona.* 9 *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Dioceſe of *Italie*; called therefore Μητρόπολις τῆς Ἰταλίας, the *Metropolis* or Mother City of *Italie*, as *Dionyſius* one of the Biſhops hereof is called the Metropolitan of *Italie*, by S. *Athanaſius*. At this time the faireſt and the biggeſt of all *Lombardy*, having a Caſtle ſo ſtrongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 perſons; and of great Trade, here being private ſhops equalling the publick ſtore-houſes of other places; the people conſequently ſo rich, that the wife of every mechanick will flant it in her ſilks and taffeties. This City is ſaid to have been built by the *Galls*, 359 years before Chriſt. It is ſeven miles in circuit, and honoured with an Univerſity, wherein flouriſhed *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Cælius Rhodiginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is in as commodious a ſoyl as any in *Italie*, environed with water by two great channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Teſis* or *Atheſis*: which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in ſo great abundance, that things there are at very cheap rates; and add much alſo to the induſtry of the inhabitants in the vending and diſperſing of their Manufactures, which are of great eſteem in moſt parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and ſtately, but three eſpecially commended for their magnificence; that is to ſay, the Caſtle, the Hoſpital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth uſe to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apoſtle was its firſt Biſhop, and St. *Ambroſe* one of his Succeſſors; that formerly their Biſhop ſtood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much priviledged as that; and that ſince thoſe times they have given unto the world four Popes, that is to ſay, *Alexander* the 2d, *Urban* the 3d, *Celeſtine* the 5th, and of late, *Gregory* the 14th.

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the Kings of *Italy* of that Nation, from the deſtruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italie* fell from the houſe of *Charles* the Great, and came at laſt into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, from whoſe obedience it revolted *Anno* 1161, in behalf of Pope *Alexander* the third; the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the people ſtill miniſtring freſh occaſions of diſlike and quarrel. *Beatrix* the wife of *Frederick* coming to ſee the City, without any ill intentions to it; was by the irreverent people firſt impriſon'd, and then moſt barbarouſly uſed. For ſetting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold in ſtead of a bridle; and having thus ſhewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperor beſieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but ſuch as would undergo this ranſome. Between the Buttocks of a skittiſh and kicking Mule, there was faſtned a bunch of figs; one or more of which, ſuch as deſired to live muſt ſnatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the ſtreets. A condition which moſt of them accepted; and thereupon gave occaſion to the cuſtome uſed among the *Italians*: who when they intend to ſcoff or diſgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, ſaying *Ecco la Fico*; a diſgrace anſwerable to that of making horns (in *England*) to him that is ſuſpected to be a Cuckold. The City after this, rebelling and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the wals; and cauſed the whole ground on which it ſtood, to be ploughed up, and ſowed with ſalt; ſeeming to threaten by that *Emblem*, that it ſhould never be re-edified. Which notwithſtanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope with the help of theſe *Millaneſe* and the *Venetians*, had at laſt the better of the Emperor; whom he enjoyned, after a vile ſubmiſſion, to undertake a journey to the *Holy-land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of a *Republick*; in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Otho*, ſurnamed *Viſconti* (*quaſi bis Comes*, becauſe he was Lord of *Millain*, and *Angerona*) aſſumed the title to himſelf, and ſetled it upon that Family after his deceaſe; but ſo, that for the moſt part they were under the command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeaz* the firſt, ſo called (as ſome write) becauſe the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Eſtate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the perſon of *John Galeazo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready Money; which *John* increaſed ſo mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his command; and dyed as he was going to *Florence*, to be crowned King of *Tuſcany*. To him ſucceeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had maried his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Franciſco Sforza*, the beſt commander of his times; and at his death, appointed *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his heir and ſucceſſor. Before *Alfonſo* could take any benefit of this deſignation, *Sforza* was quietly poſſeſſed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I muſt needs crave leave to tell this ſtory) was the ſon of *James Altendulo*, a plain Countreyman, who going to his labour with his Axe in his hand, whileſt a great Army was paſſing by him, compared the miſery and unpleaſingneſs of his preſent condition, with thoſe fair poſſibilities which a martial life did preſent unto him. And being in a great diſpute within himſelf what were beſt to do, he preſently fell upon a reſolution of putting the queſtion to the determination of the *Heavenly Providence*; by caſting his Axe unto the top of a tree next to him: conditioning with himſelf, that if the Axe came down again, he would contentedly apply himſelf to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himſelf unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in paſſage. He did ſo, the Axe hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived ſo well in that imployment, that he became one of the beſt Captains of his time; ſurnamed *de Cetoniogla* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatneſs of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the Daughter of *Francis di Caſalis*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the father of this *Francis*

Sforza

Sforza whom now we ſpeak of; who was ſo fortunate a Commander in the wars of *Italie*, that to oblige him to his party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* beſtowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Eſtate, which he ſucceſſively obtained againſt all pretenders. In his line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, the ſon of *Charles*, and nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* the ſole daughter of *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Switzers*) into his hands, carried him priſoner into *France*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the eſtate. Outed not long after by the confederate Princes of *Italie*, who were jealous of ſo great a neighbour; he left the cauſe and quarrel unto *Francis* the firſt, his next ſucceſſor in that Kingdom: in purſuance whereof, it is ſaid by *Bellay* a *French* Writer, that the uſe of Muskets was firſt known. But *Francis* being in concluſion taken at the battel of *Pavie*, and carried priſoner into *Spain*; for his releaſe, was forced to releaſe all claim unto this Eſtate. A releaſe long before endevoured by ſome *French* Politicians, becauſe the pretenſions hereunto had brought ſuch damage to that Crown: and no leſs eagerly oppoſed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the ſame reaſon that *Scipio Naſica* did oppoſe the deſtruction of *Carthage*, that is to ſay) becauſe it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual diſcipline of War; but ſerved for a purgation of idle and ſuperfluous people. Yet notwithſtanding this releaſe, *Francis* renewed the War again; and laid ſiege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spaniſh* Garriſon: during which war, the wretched *Millaneſe* endured the worſt of miſeries. For firſt the Governor, under colour of Providing pay for his ſouldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Caſtle, to be ſold again at his own price: which many of the poorer ſort not able to pay, periſhed of famin in the ſtreets. And on the other ſide, his ſouldiers which were quartered in moſt parts of the City, uſed when they wanted money, to chain up their Hoſts, and then to put them to a ranſom. Such as upon this barbarous uſage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiſcate: on which there followed ſuch a diſconſolate deſolation, that the chief ſtreets were over-grown with nettles and brambles. In this miſerable eſtate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, reſtored it to *Francis Sforza*; brother to the laſt Duke *Maximilian*, and ſon of that *Ludowick*, who to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, had moſt improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italie*. But this *Francis* dying without iſſue, and the houſe of *Sforza* failing in him; the Emperor entred on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the ſame to his ſucceſſors in the Realm of *Spain*. This ſaid, we will ſum up the whole ſtory of this Eſtate, in the enſuing Catalogue of

Millain.

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

1277 1 *Otho*, Archbiſhop of *Millain*.
1295 2 *Matthew*, Brothers ſon to *Otho*, confirmed in his command of *Millain*, by *Albertus* the Emperor.
1322 3 *Galeaze Viſconti*, ſon of *Matthew*, diſſeized of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
1329 4 *Actio Viſconti*, ſon of *Galeaze*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the ſame *Lewis* the Emperor.
1339 5 *Luchino Viſconti*, brother to *Galeaze*.
1349 6 *John Viſconti*, the brother of *Luchino*.
1354 7 *Galeaze* II. ſon of *Stephen* the brother of *John*.
1378 8 *John Galeaze*, ſon of the firſt *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *Ann.* 1395.
1402 9 *John Maria*, ſon of *John Galeaze*, ſlain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
1412 10 *Philip Maria*, the laſt of the *Viſconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in ſwaying the affairs in *Italie*. He died *Anno* 1446; the *Millaneſe* for ſome years reſuming their former liberty.
1446 11 *Francis Sforze*, in right of his wife *Blanch* the baſe daughter of *Philip*, ſeconded by the power of the ſword, admitted Duke by the general conſent of the people of *Millain*; one of the Knights of the noble Order of the *Garter*.
1461 12 *Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant, but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
1477 13 *John Galeaze Sforze*, privately made way (as it was ſuppoſed) by his Unkle *Lodowick*.
1494 14 *Lodowick Sforze*, the ſon of *Francis*, and brother of *Galeaze*, who to ſecure himſelf of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italie*.
1501 15 *Lewis* the XII. of *France*, ſon unto *Charles*, and nephew to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* daughter to the firſt Duke of *Millain*; vanquiſhed *Ludowick*, carried him priſoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himſelf.
1513 16 *Maximilian Sforze*, the ſon of *Ludowick*, reſtored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers*, and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* the firſt, Son-in-law and Succeſſor to King *Lewis* the 12th in the Kingdom of *France*.
1529 17 *Francis Sforze*, brother of *Maximilian*, reſtored to the Eſtate, and the *French* expelled by the puiſſance of *Charles* the 5th; who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the laſt of the *Sforzes*) *Anno* 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of ſuch great extent, and power, as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of thoſe 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof; the reſt being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Chriſtendom* (as *Flanders* was accompted the prime Earldom of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it

Mantua. come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the discharge of his Garrison-souldiers, the defraying of his Vice-roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Ministers; it is conceived that he spends more on it than he getteth.

The Armes hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquished by *Otho* the first of the *Visconti*, in the *Holy-land*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbishop 1. Bishops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTVA.

THe Dukedom of *MANTVA*, is bounded on the West, with *Millain*; on the East, with *Romandiala*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Countrey about *Mantua* is reasonably good, and yeeldeth all sorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Pastures, the very High-waies by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place; as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be so civil, and well-bred, as the rest of *Italie*; childish in their apparel, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from strangers.

The places in it of most note are, 1 *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2 *Bozilia*, a small, but pleasant habitation, belonging to some Princes of the Ducal family; built with fair Cloysters towards the street, in which passengers may walk dry in the greatest rain. 3 *Petula*, a smal Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born: but generally said to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* Virgilio *gaudet*, as the old Verse is) because this Village is so near the City of *Mantua* (being but two miles distant) that his birth might very well be ascribed unto it. 4 *Mantua*, seated on the River *Mincius*, now called *Sarca*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a passage unto *Venice*. By nature strong, environed on three sides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth side with a Wall. The Dukes to take their pleasure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaure*, five stories high, and capable of two hundred persons (whence it had the name) furnished very richly both for state and pleasure. *Ocnus* the son of *Manto* the Propheteſs, the daughter of *Tiresias*, is said to have been the founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mothers name; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of those parts do report it so; this City being one of those which the *Tuscans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the soundest Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whomsoever built at first) in the declining times of Christian purity, for a Councel holden in it, *Anno* 1061, wherein it was decreed, that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was first by *Constantine* the third surnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and people of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict* the second, *Ann.* 684. resumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the Colledge of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town; on the East-side of a bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, stands the Dukes Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mirmirollo*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens; able to lodge, and give content to the best Prince in Christendome. Here are also many other Towns, as 5 *Caprena*, and 6 *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Western* Empire; till given by *Otho* the second to *Theobald* Earl of *Canosse* for the many good services he had done him. *Boniface* who succeded him, had to Wife *Beatrix* the sister of *Henry* the second; and by her was the Father of *Mathildis*, that famous Warrioures, who carried so great a stroke in the State of *Italie*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry* the third, she joyned in faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembred from the Empire many goodly Territories; which at her death (having had three husbands, but no issue) she gave it in fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1115. After her death *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under by the family of the *Bonacelsi*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Passavino* the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who presently with great applause took to himself the Goverment of the Estate, *Anno* 1328, which hath continued in his house to this very day, with a great deal of lustre. Whose successors take here as followeth, under the several titles of

The Lords, Marquesses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

A. Ch.
1328 1 *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
1366 2 *Guido*, son of *Lewis*.

1369

1369 3 *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* II. son of *Guido*.
1382 4 *Francis Gonzaga*, son of *Lewis* 2d, highly extolled by *Poggie* the *Florentine* for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulsed the attempts made against his Estate, by *John Galeaze*, the first Duke of *Millain*.
1407 5 *John Francisco Gonzaga*, created the first Marques of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigismund*.
1444 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick*, and the King of *Danemark*, with great magnificence.
1478 7 *Frederick* son of *Lewis* the third.
1484 8 *Francis* II. son of *Frederick*.
1519 9 *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* the fifth with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marques of *Montferrat*, in right of his wife.
1540 10 *Francis* III. son of *Frederick* the second, Duke of *Mantua*, and Marques of *Montferrat*.
1550 11 *William* the brother of *Francis* the third, created the first Duke of *Montferrat*.
1587 12 *Vincent*, son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.
13 *Francis* IV. son of *Vincent*, had to wife *Margaret* the daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf, the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the war against her Uncle, for *Montferrat*.
1613 14 *Ferdinand*, the brother of *Francis* the fourth, succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15 *Vincent* II. the brother of *Ferdinand* and of *Francis* the fourth.
1628 16 *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers line; and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*; succeeded on the death of *Vincent* the 2d: but not without great opposition of the *Spanish* Faction, who sacked *Mantua*, distressed *Casal*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the business was at last composed by the power of the *French*, and the investiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperor.

The chief order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is, of the *The bloud of our Lord JESUS Christ*, instituted *An.* 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Mariage was solemnized between his son *Francis*, and the Lady *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Soveraigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul* the fifth. The Collar hath threads of Gold laid on fire, and inter-woven with these words, *Domine probasti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of bloud, and circumscribed with, *Nihil isto triste recepto*. It took this name, because in St. *Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are said to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our *Saviours Bloud* (thou canst not, O Reader, but beleeve it) with a piece of the *sponge*.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 500000 *Ducats* only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdensom to his subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides land-locked from navigation and traffick.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Patee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the second, under an Escocheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules* a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom.
Archbishops 1 Bishops 4

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THe Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoyning to them: both of them situate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Cispadana*; and consequently partake of the pleasures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are said to be better-natured than most of *Italie*: those of *Modena* being quick in their resolutions; easie to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of present wits, and fit for any thing they can be imployed in: the women in both Towns of a milde disposition, neither too courtly, nor too froward, as in other places.

The first and principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in those times for the first battel betwixt *Antony* and *Augustus Cæsar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League against *Antonius*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirtius* and *Pansa* then Consuls; the fortune of the day so equall, that *Antony* left the field, and the Consuls their lives; leaving *Augustus* the absolute command of a powerful Army, into whose favours he so cunningly did work himself, that he made them the foundation of his future greatness. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Gothes* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, situate near the *Apennine* in a very good

Parma. ſoyl, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the diſtractions of *Italie* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, *Guido* the Popes Legat, and then Biſhop thereof, conſigned it over to *Azo* of the houſe of *Eſte*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1304; the Pope himſelf conſenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: ſince which time it hath been for the moſt part in the power of that houſe: *Borſius* the Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Mutina*. 2. *Reggio*, the ſecond Town of note, hath taſted much of the ſame fortune; at firſt a *Roman* Colony called *Regium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Gothes* when they came firſt into *Italie*; repaired and compaſſed with a Wall by its own inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canoſſe*. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in thoſe buſtling times, they gave themſelves unto *Obizo* the Father of *Azo*, *Anno* 1292, and after that in the year 1326 to the See of *Rome*. Paſſing through many other hands, it was at laſt ſold for 60000 *Ducats* to the *Viſconti*, Lords of *Millain*, *Anno* 1370, and in the end recovered by the houſe of *Eſte*, *Anno* 1409, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforeſaid *Borſius*, whom *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Modena*, and *Reggio*, 1452.

The ſucceſſors of this *Borſius* are before lad down in the ſucceſſion of *Ferrara*; who held the whole eſtate together till the death of *Alphonſo* the laſt Duke. He dying without lawful iſſue, *Anno* 1595, left his eſtate to *Ceſar de Eſte*, his Nephew by a baſe ſon, called *Alphonſo* alſo; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement* the 8th a war was threatned for the whole: but at laſt compromiſed upon theſe conditions, that the Church of *Rome* ſhould have *Ferrara*, with all the lands and territories appertaining to it, as an Eſtate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena*, and *Reggio*, being *Imperial Feifes*, ſhould remain to *Cæſar*; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cæſar* to have leave to carry away all his movable goods, to ſell ſuch of his lands as were not of the ancient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, diſtinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garriſoned, and furniſhed with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yeeld unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raiſe out of his Eſtates, I cannot poſitively determine: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*; I conceive they cannot yeeld leſs than 100000 Crowns of yearly in-come. The Armes of this Duke the ſame with thoſe of *Ferrara*, before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE *Dukedom* of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*; on the South, the *Apennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the Eaſt, the Countrey of *Modena*, and *Romandiola*, from which laſt parted by the River *Scultenna* now called *Panaro*; on the Weſt, *Montferrat*: ſituate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Ciſpadana*; and much of the ſame nature both for ſoyl, and air, and other the commodities of thoſe parts of *Italie*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the ſame time were. It is ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name, which runneth almoſt through the midſt of it; beautified with very handſom buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themſelves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent paſturage, and yeeld great plenty of the Cheeſe which is called *Parmeſan*. 2 *Placentia*, ſeated on the *Po*, one of the firſt Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongſt the *Ciſalpine Galls*; and famous for the reſiſtance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Aſdrubal*, who ſeverally in vain beſieged it: made afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Æmilia*, yet nothing the leſs beautiful for ſo great an age. The fields adjoyning have the ſame commendation with thoſe of *Parma*, for moſt excellent Cheeſe; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3 *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Conſtans* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudataries to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4 *Briſcello*, called anciently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City *Parma*; of no great note at the preſent time, but memorable in the *Roman* ſtory for the death of the Emperor *Otho*, who here killed himſelf. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens*, and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather choſe to fall by his own ſword, than that the *Romans* ſhould be forced, for his ſake, to renew the war. And this he did with ſo much honour to himſelf, that many of his ſouldiers ſlew themſelves at his *Funeral Pile*; not out of conſciouſneſs of crime, or for fear of puniſhment, but to teſtifie their affections to him, and to follow ſuch a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly ſay of him, as he is ſaid by *Tacitus* to have ſaid of himſelf, *viz. Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit.* 5 *Monticella*, in the middle way almoſt between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and oppoſite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

Theſe Towns (as others in theſe parts) have been partakers of the diverſities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Weſtern Empire) ſometimes under the *Venetians*, moſt times under the *Millanoys*; and at laſt conquered by Pope *Julius* the 2d in the confuſions and diſtractions of the Duke-

dom

dom of *Millain*, under the two laſt Princes of the houſe of *Sforza*. By *Paul* the third, being of the houſe of the *Farneſis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his ſon *Petro Aluigi* (or *Petrus Aloyſius*, as the *Latins* call him) with the title of Duke, *Anno* 1549. The Signeury of *Camerine*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbin*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of moſt vicious life, had amongſt other villanies committed an unſpeakable violence, on the perſon of *Coſmus Chirius* the Biſhop of *Janum*; and ſoon after poyſoned him. For which moſt deteſtable fact, he received no other chaſtiſement of his Father than this, *Hæc vitia me non commonſtratore didicit*, that he was ſure he had not learnt thoſe vices by his example. But going on in theſe wicked courſes, he was ſlain at laſt by Count *John Aguzzola*; and *Placentia*, after a ſhort ſiege, yeelded to Ferdinand *Gonzaga* (*Vice-roy* in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles* the fifth) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Octavian* the ſon of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had happned, fortified himſelf in *Parma* as well as he could: but being hated by the new Pope, and diſtruſtful, not without good cauſe, of the Emperors purpoſes, he had quite loſt all, if *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithſtanding that *Octavian* had maried his baſe daughter) to have made himſelf Lord of the Town: and the *French* King was loth to ſee ſo great a ſtrength added to the Emperors poſſeſſions in *Italie*. When the war had now laſted four years, *Philip* the ſecond which ſucceeded *Charles*, conſidering how neceſſary it was for his affairs in *Italie*, to have this *Octavian* his friend; reſtored unto him the City of *Plaiſance* or *Placentia*, and ſo withdrew him from the *French* faction, *Anno* 1557. Yet becauſe he would be ſure to keep his houſe in a perpetual dependence on *Spain*, he reſtored it not abſolutely at the preſent, but held the Citadel thereof with a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, till the year 1583: when in regard of the good ſervices, which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars againſt the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he cauſed it to be ſurrendred into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his ſetling upon this houſe the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other perſonal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of *Spain* ſeem to have given ſome ſatisfaction to this houſe for ſtepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made ſuch a probable title, as would have troubled his Eſtate, had they ſtood upon it. *Parma.*

The Dukes of *Parma*.

1549 1 *Petro Luigi Farneſis*, ſon to *Paul* the third, made by the Pope, his Father, the firſt Duke of *Parma*.

1550 2 *Octavian Farneſis*, ſon to *Petro Luigi*, maried *Margaret* baſe daughter to *Charles* the fifth; afterwards Governeſs of the *Netherlands*.

3 *Alexander*, ſon of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Auſtria*, one of the moſt renowned Souldiers of his time, Governor of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip* the ſecond.

1592 4 *Rainutio Farneſis*, ſon of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldeſt daughter of *Edward* ſon to King *Emanuel*; one of the competitors for that Crown.

5 *Edoardo Farneſis*, ſon of *Rainutio*.

Of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of theſe Princes I have little to ſay, but think them to be of good conſideration in both reſpects: their Territories lying in the beſt and richeſt part of *Italie*, and their Eſtates, environed by more puiſſant neighbours; which both neceſſitate and inable them, to defend their own.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THe Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT*, is ſituate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the Eaſt, and Weſt: extended North, and South, in a line or branch, from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which laſt it was ſometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Ciſapennina* for diſtinction ſake.

It took this name either *à Monte ferrato*, from ſome mountain of it ſtored with Iron; or elſe *à Monte feraci*, as ſome rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to ſay truth, though the whole Countrey ſeem to be nothing elſe than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of ſueh wonderfull fruitfulneſs, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus*, above mentioned, which ſpringing out of the hils about *Barceis*, a Town of the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Alba*, called by *Plinie*, *Alba Pompeia*, ſituate on the banks of the ſaid River, in a rich and fertil ſoyl, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor village called *Zobia*, the Emperor *Pertinax* was born. Who being of mean and obſcure parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conſpirator to the *Roman* Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Souldiers, he was by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their vertues, as much as formerly for their vices) moſt cruelly murdered; and the Imperial dignity ſold to *Julianus*, for 25 *Seſter-*

Montferrat tiems a man. 2 *Caſal*, vulgarly called Saint *Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to Saint *Evaſius* (or Saint *Vas*, as they ſpeak it commonly) the ſtrongeſt Town in all this Countrey; well built, and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of St *George* is one of the principal; and made a Biſhops See by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, *Anno* 1474. It was in former times, the chief ſeat of the houſe of *Montferrat*, and for that cauſe compaſſed with a ſtrong wall, and a fair Caſtle: but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and ſtrengthned with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzago*, as the ſureſt Key of his eſtate; in which new Citadel the Governor of the Province holds his uſual reſidence. 3 *Aique*, in Latin *Aquenſis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and medicinal waters. 4 *Saint Saviours*, where there is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, as there is alſo in 5 *Ponſture*, or *Pont di Stura*, ſo called of the River *Stura*. 6 *Oſoniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old ſeat of the firſt Marqueſſes of this *Montferrat*. 7 *Villa nova*. 8 *Belzale*. 9 *Liburn*, and many others of leſs note.

Here are alſo within the limits of this Kingdom, the Towns of *Aſt*, *Cherian*, and *Chivaſco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the deſcription of whoſe Countrey we may ſpeak more of them; together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have ſpoken of already. And hereunto alſo I refer the ſtrong (and in thoſe times) impregnable Fortreſs, by the *Latin* Hiſtorians called *Fraxinetum*, from ſome Grove of Aſhes near unto it: ſituate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the ſea, by conſequence better able to defend it ſelf and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at ſuch time as they had footing in theſe parts of *Italie*. Firſt took and fortified by them in the year 891, recovered afterwards by the proweſs and good fortune of *Otho* the Emperor, deſervedly ſurnamed the Great, about ſixty years after. Of great note in the ſtories of thoſe middle times. By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander* near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Cottian Alpes*: and ſo moſt fit to be referred unto this Countrey, though now ſo deſolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Countrey was made a Marquiſate by *Otho* the ſecond, *Anno* 985. one of the ſeven by him erected and given to the ſeven ſons of *Waleran* of *Saxonie*, who had maried his daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conſpicuouſly eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-land*; where they did many acts of ſingular merit: inſomuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, iſſuing from a ſecond branch hereof, were made Kings of *Hieruſalem*; and *Boniface* one of the Marqueſſes, got the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*, and many fair Eſtates in *Greece*. But the Male-iſſue failing in Marqueſs *John*, the Eſtate fell to *Theodorus Palæologus*, of the Imperial family of *Conſtantinople*, who had maried the Heir-general of the houſe; continuing in his name till the year 1534, when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the perſon of Duke *William Gonzaga* raiſed to the honour of a Dukedom, as it ſtill continueth; the beſt and richeſt part of that Dukes Eſtate, and the faireſt flower in all his Garden. The reſidue of the ſtory may be beſt collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *Montferrat*.

A. C.		
985	1	*William*, one of the ſons of *Waleran* and *Adelheide*, made the firſt Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.
	2	*Boniface*, the ſon of *William*.
	3	*William* II. who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade* the III. and St. *Lewis* of *France*, to the *Holy-land*.
1183	4	*Boniface* II. ſon of *William* the II. his younger Brother *William* being deſigned King of *Hieruſalem*, and *Reyner* another of them made Prince of *Theſſaly*; ſucceeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the ſon of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*; he was took priſoner by *Guy* of *Luſignan*: Competitor with him for that title.
	5	*William* III. ſon of *Boniface*, poyſoned in the *Holy-land*, where he endevoured the reſtoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languiſhing Kingdom.
	6	*Boniface* III. ſon of *William* the third, for his valour in taking of *Conſtantinople*, made King of *Theſſalie*.
1254	7	*Boniface* IV. ſon of *Boniface* the third, added *Vercelli* and *Eporedium* unto his Eſtate.
	8	*John*, ſurnamed the *Juſt*, the laſt of this houſe.
	9	*Theodore Palæologus*, ſon of the Emperor *Andronicus Palæologus* the elder, and *Yoland* his wife, daughter of *Boniface* the fourth.
	10	*John Palæologus*, ſon of *Theodore*.
	11	*Theodorus* II. ſon of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houſes.
	12	*Jacobus Johannes*, ſon of *Theodore* the ſecond.
	13	*John* III. eldeſt ſon of *Jacobus Johannes*.
1464	14	*William* IV. brother of *John* the third, founder of the City and Monaſtery of *Caſal*.
1487	15	*Boniface* V. brother of *John* and *William*, the two laſt Marqueſſes, inveſted by the Emperor *Frederick* the fourth, *Blanca Maria* the daughter of *William* ſurrendring her Eſtate unto him.
	16	*William* V. ſon of *Boniface* the fifth.
1518	17	*Boniface* VI. ſon of *William* the fifth.
1530	18	*John George*, brother of *William* the fifth, ſucceeded his Nephew in the Eſtate; which he held

held but four years. After whose death, *Anno* 1534, this Marquisate was adjudged to *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*, who had maried *Margaret* daughter of *William* the fifth, and next heir to *George*. Whose successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

Montferrat

The Armes hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Estate.
Arch-Bishops 0 Bishops 4.

And now according to my method, I should proceed to the description and story of the *Principality* of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Cottiæ*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer it till we come to those *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for *Italie*, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Arch-B. 35. Bishops 292.
Universities 17.
viz.

In the Land of the Church,
Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Perusia.
In *Sicil*,
Palermo.
Catana.

In the Signeury of *Venice*,
Venice.
Padua.
Verona.
In the Dukedom of *Tuscanie*,
Florence.
Pisa.
Sienna.

In *Naples*,
Naples.
Salern.
In *Lombardie*,
Millain.
Pavie.
Mantua.

And so much for *Italie*.

OF

OF THE
ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of *Italy* into *France*, we muſt croſſe the *Alpes*; a ridge of Hills wherewith (as with a ſtrong and defenſible Rampart) *Italy* is aſſured againſt *France*, and *Germany*. They are ſaid to be five dayes journey high, covered continually with ſnow, from the whiteneſſe whereof they took this name: that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguſtick* Seas, and croſſing all along the borders of *France* and *Germany*, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Iſtria*; and are in ſeverall parts called by ſeverall names, which we will muſter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to to the *Adriatick*. And firſt thoſe which lie neereſt to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cauſe called *Maritimæ* from their neerneſſe to *Liguria*, called by ſome *Liguſticæ*. 2 Then follow thoſe called *Cottiæ*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3 thoſe named *Graiæ*, from the paſſage of *Hercules* and his *Græcian* followers; of which, both amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians, there is very good evidence. 4 After we come to the *Pœninæ*, ſo named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latine* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, worſhipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5 Next come we to the *Lepontiæ*, ſo named from the *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6 the *Rhæticæ*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhæti*, once a powerfull people of that mountainous tract. 7 Then follow thoſe called *Juliæ*, from the paſſage of *Julius Cæſar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and ſo at laſt we come unto thoſe called *Carnicæ*, extending to the ſhores of the *Adriatick*; denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabit, and who gave name alſo to *Carniola*, an adjoyning Province.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe mountainous Countreys, beſides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhæti*, and *Carni*, ſpoken of before; were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenſes*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of leſſe note and eſtimation: all vanquiſhed by the indefatigable induſtry of the *Romans*. After whoſe ſubjugation, and the ſettlement of the *Roman* Empire, theſe Mountains, and ſome part of the vales adjoyning, made five ſeveral Provinces; *viz.* The Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Walliſland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhætia Prima*, comprehending the *Griſons*, and part of the Dukedome of *Millain*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Switzers*; both which were members of the Dioceſe of *Italy*. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Daulphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graiæ* and *Pœninæ Alpes*, and the greateſt part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including ſome part of *Savoy*, and moſt part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*; comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts neer hand; which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people antiently, as now, by reaſon of their drinking ſnow-water, diſſolving from the tops of the hills, and ſometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are ſaid to do; were generally troubled with a ſwelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*: being the ſame with that, which we call the *Kings Evil*; becauſe by ſpeciall priviledge curable by the Kings of *France*, and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of theſe vaſt hills, the loweſt are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying neereſt to the ſeverall Seas before remembred: The *Cottiæ* and the *Graiæ* not ſo high, but that the paſſages lie open for the moſt part of the year. The reſt, by reaſon of their deep and dreadfull *præcipices*, their tedious and ſteep aſcents, narrow wayes, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of ſnow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains; are hardly paſſable by horſe, not at all by Waggon. And yet amongſt theſe dreadfull hills, there are obſerved to be ſome Vallies of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulneſſe to the beſt in *Europe*; and for the ſweetneſs of the temperature going much beyond them. With ſuch an equal hand, doth the heavenly providence diſpenſe the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation; that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleaſure.

And

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of these *Alpine* passages, covetousness, or curiosity, or desire of conquest, have found a way to make them passable in many places; and that not only for private and particular passengers, but for vast multitudes and numerous Armies, such as those led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæsar*. But especially the barbarous people found out five waies to break into *Italie*, which have been since much travelled by divers Nations; of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germany*. The first from *France* is through *Provence*, and so close to the *Ligustick Seas*; easiest for private Passengers, but too strait and narrow for great Armies: there being many passages in the Countrey of *Nizze*, so narrow, that ten men may make head against ten thousand; as in that called the *Pace* of the *Virgin*, for one. The second is over the hils called *Geneure*, into the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and so to the other parts of *Lombardie*; which was the way that *Charles* the eighth marched towards *Naples*; and by the *Italians* is called commonly *Strada Romana*, because the ordinary passage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater *Cenis* (which some call the lesser S. *Bernard*) to *Aost*, or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with fire and vinegar; whence that so memorable saying, *Viam* Annibal *aut inveniet aut faciet*. From the passage of those Worthies, this tract, and that adjoyning were called *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his march; then these *Pœninæ* must take name from the passage of *Asdrubal*, or of some part of *Annibals* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or else from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is through the Countrey of the *Grisons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* seized into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he also erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this passage: not only to the discontent of the Natives, but to the distast of his neighbours the *Savoyards*, and *Venetians*. The other way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is through the Countrey of *Tirolis*, by the Towns of *Inspruch* and *Trent*. This passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eresberg*, seated on the confines of this Countrey towards *Suevia*, and from *Inspruch*, is two daies journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Protestant* Princes made against Charles the fifth, was surprized by Captain *Scherteline*, so to hinder the coming of the Popes Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperor so hated him, that when all the rest of that faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoyning, by D. *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the said *Charles* then being in *Inspruch*, to fly out of *Germany*; and shortly after to resign his Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the springs of many of the most renowned Rivers in these West parts of the world; as, 1 The *Rhene*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Neerer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontiæ*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rheticæ*; which meet together about a *Dutch* mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grisons*, and so go on by *Constance* to *Germany*. 2 *Rhosne*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontiæ*, which is called *Die Furchen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Neerer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* into *France*. 3 *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Coctian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Vesulus*, and so through *Piemont* into *Italie*. Out of them also spring the Rivers of *Russe*, *Durance*, and *Athesis*; the first a *Dutch*, the second a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River also; not to say any thing of others of inferior note. The great Lakes which are found in this mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countreys and Estates here situate, which bordering upon *Italie*, *France*, and *Germanie*, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Estates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these *Alpine* Countreys, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as some parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belong to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lie intire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe nor suit nor service unto any other; we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine Provinces*, call them which you will, are bound on the East with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italie*; on the West with *Provense*, *Daulphine*, and *La Bresse*, parts of the Continent of *France*; on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schwaben* in High *Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdome of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Basil*, and not far from the *Rhene*, passeth South-westward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Nuwenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almost unto the *Rhosne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh: so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours, and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soyl and People; which will best shew it self in the Survey of the several Provinces, into which divided; that is to say, 1 the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2 the Signeury of *Geneva*, 3 the Resorts of *Wallisland*, 4 the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*, and 5 the Leagues or the *Grisons*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to be-

belong to the *German* Empire, and that the Biſhops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Baſil* are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are ſubject to the publick Taxes; nor comprehended within any of thoſe ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein ſpoken, partakes ſomewhat of all three, as before was ſaid: the *French* being wholly ſpoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Walliſland*, and generally by the *Switzers* bordering on the Lake *Lemane*; the *Dutch* being common to the greateſt part of the *Switzers*, the *Griſons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Walliſland*: and finally the *Italian*, uſed by the generality of the *Griſons*, the Præfectures appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both, in *Piemont*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principall Souldiers of theſe mountainous Provinces, 1 *Rodolph*, Earle of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family. 2 *Thomas*, and 3 *Peter*, Earles of *Savoy*, this laſt ſurnamed *Charlemain* the ſecond. 4 *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5 *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, Generall of the Imperiall Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more ſpeciall note for which we are beholding to theſe Countreys, we have 1 *Philip Theophraſtus Bombaſtus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelſus*, the Author, or *Inſtaurator* of *Chymicall* Phyſick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he ſaith himſelf: a man of moſt prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2 *Zuinglius* one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3 *Muſculus*, and 4 *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his ſeconds. 5 *Henry Bullinger*, one of the ſame profeſſion alſo. 6 *Sebaſtian Caſtellio*, of as much Learning as the beſt of them, though of different judgement. 7 *Dan. Toſſanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may adde 8 *Calvin* alſo, who though he had his birth in *France*, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was ſetled in *Geneva*.

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition alſo, in all theſe Countreys: that of the *Romiſh* only having publick countenance in the Dukedome of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but ſo that the Reformed is tolerated in ſome parts thereof, eſpecially in the parts next *Dauphine*, to which the neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great encreaſe. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the *Reformation*, *viz. Zurich*, *Bern*, *Baſil*, and *Schaffhauſen*: Seven that ſtand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, *i. e. Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Griſons* are confuſedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Præfectures admit no other but the *Romiſh*. The cauſe of which diviſion came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a *Canon* of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther*'s good ſucceſſe in *Germany*, began about the year 1519 to preach againſt the *Maſs*, and *Images*, and other the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. In which, his party ſo increaſed, that on a publick Diſputation which was held at *Zurich*, the *Maſſe* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the authority of the Senate, *Anno* 1526. and *Images* deſtroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which proſperous beginnings, the *Reformation* began to ſpread it ſelf amongſt the *Confederates*; and had prevailed further both in *France*, and *Germany*, but for a difference which aroſe betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *Reall preſence*, but a *Conſubſtantiation* alſo in the ſacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare ſign and repreſentation of Chriſts bleſſed body. For reconciling of this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph; a conference was held between them at *Marpurg*, a Town of *Haſſia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without ſucceſſe: *Luther* profeſſing that he durſt not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *ne Principes ſuos interpretatione tantopere* Pontificiis *exoſa*, *magis inviſos redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred, on the Princes of his own profeſſion. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally caſt upon one another; to the great hinderance of the cauſe, which they had in hand: yet ſo that the *Lutheran* opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongſt theſe Mountains, and in *France* it ſelf; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts of *Germany* alſo. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the ſtory of thoſe Countreys, before they were divided into ſo many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered ſeverally by the *Romans*: as ſhall be ſhewen in the deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces. Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, they became a member of their Kingdome; except the Countrey of the *Griſons*, and ſome parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdome of *Burgundy*, of the *French* erection, when ſubdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the *Bald*, the laſt of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdome of *France*, divided that Kingdome into three Eſtates; that is to ſay, the Dukedome of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, and the Dukedome of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This laſt containing the greateſt part of all theſe *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the ſaid *Charles* given to *Conrade*, a *Saxon* Prince; the ſonne of *Witikind* the third, and younger brother of *Robert*, the firſt Earle of *Anjou*; by the name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*, or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his ſonne and ſucceſſor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Couſin *German*, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equall at the leaſt, with *Boſon* Earle of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, whom *Charles* the *Groſſe*, about the ſame time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offenſive to the *German* Emperours, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himſelf the title of Duke. The reſidue of the ſtory we ſhall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earles, Dukes, and Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane.*

1 *Conrade*, the firſt Earle of *Burgundy Transjurane.*

890 2 *Rodolph*, Earle, King, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane.*

912 3 *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*; which title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was choſen by another Faction, for the poſſeſſion of the Kingdome of *Arles* and *Burgundy*; on the aſſuming of which Crown, he reſigned this Dukedome to his Brother *Boſon.*

4 *Boſon* the Brother of *Rodolph* the ſecond, ſucceeded his brother in the Dukedome of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he ſucceeded *Rodolph*, his Brothers ſonne, in the Kingdome of *Arles* and *Burgundy.*

965 5 *Conrade* II. ſonne of *Boſon*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane.*

990 6 *Rodolph* III. ſonne of *Conrade*, who dying without iſſue, left his eſtates to *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, the ſonne of his ſiſter *Giſela*, by *Conrade* the ſecond Emperour and King of *Germany*: united ſo unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of ſome following Emperours, it was cantoned into many parts; of which more anon. It is now time to lay aſide this diſcourſe as to the generall condition and affairs of theſe *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning firſt with the eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*, ſituate wholly in theſe Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedome of SAVOY.

THE Dukedome of *SAVOY* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Millain* and *Montferrat*, in *Italy*; on the Weſt, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Countrey of ſo different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one character: and therefore we muſt look upon it in the ſeverall parts into which divided; that is to ſay, 1 the *Principality* of *Piemont*, and 2 *Savoy*, ſpecially ſo called.

1 *PIEMONT*, in *Latine* called *Regio Pedemontana*, becauſe ſituate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Millain*, and *Montferrat*; on the Weſt, with *Savoy*; on the North, with the *Switzers*; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow valley, to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one ſide, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Countrey wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferior to the reſt of *Italy*. It containeth, beſides Baronies, and Lordſhips, 15 Marquiſates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Caſtles or walled places: and is ſo populous withall, that once a *Piemonteſe* being demanded the extent of his Countrey, made anſwer, thas it was *a City of* 300 *miles compaſſe.*

The principall Cities of it are, 1 *Turin*, called of old *Auguſta Taurinorum*, becauſe the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini* it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as ſome conceive from the River *Duria*, on whoſe banks it ſtandeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy*, (who is the Lord of this Countrey) the See of an Arch-biſhop, and an Univerſity, in which the renowned Scholar *Eraſmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is ſituate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cauſe the *Romans* ſent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoyning to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, ſix miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleaſant Fountains; which make it one of the ſweteſt ſituations in *Europe*. 2 *Mondeni*, ſeated on the ſwelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chappell to the bleſſed Virgin; intended for the buriall place of the Dukall Famly. It is the beſt peopled Town, for the bigneſſe of it, of any in *Italy*. 3 *Auguſta Prætoria*, now called *Aoſt*, ſituate in the furtheſt corner of *Italy* to the North and Weſt. 4 *Vercelli*, a ſtrong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given firſt in Dower with *Blanch* the daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* the third Duke of *Savoy*; antiently the chief Town of the *Libyci*, who together with the *Salaſſi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey. 5 *Inuria* called by *Ptolemy Eporedia*, ſituate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Epiſcopall City. 6 *Nicæa*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedrall Church, the Biſhops Palace, a Monaſtery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place ſo naturally ſtrong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it reſiſted the whole Forces of *Barbaroſſa* the *Turkiſh* Admiral, *An.* 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred ſayl, and battering it continually with incredible fury. Firſt fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occaſion of ſome words of the Duke of *Burbon*; who paſſing this way with his Army, *Behold*, ſaith he, *a ſituation of which they know not the importance*: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and garriſoned for the moſt part with 400 ſouldiers. 7 *Suſe*, ſeated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*; and honoured in thoſe times with a ſtately Sepulchre of K. *Coctius*, King of the *Allobroges*:

one

Savoy. one of the seven Marquisates in the middle times erected by the Emperour *Otho*. 8 *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Castle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoyning vallies; sold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis* the 13th of *France*, together with the Fort and vally of *Perousa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the summe of 44000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* commodious passe from *Daulphine* into *Italy* upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9 *Quiers*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10 *Ville Franche*, a place of great strength, more towards the sea. 11 *Savillan*, seated in so pleasant a Countrey, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpose to settle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12 *Busque*, a Marquisate, another of the seven erected for the sons of *Waleran*. 13 Hereunto we may adde the City of *Ast* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) antiently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of *Lombardy*; situate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich, and populous.

Here is also in this Countrey the Marquisate of *Saluzzes* (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principall Town whereof is called also *Saluzze* (from the *Salassi* questionless who dwelt hereabouts) seated about the Spring of the River *Po*: reasonably big, and fortified with a very large Castle, fitted with rooms for all uses, and for every season. 2 *Carmanlogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carryed so great a sway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3 *Ravelle*, a well-fortified place. 4 *Doglian*, the thorowfare for the greatest part of the trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Countrey were the *Salassi*, *Libyci*, and *Taurini*, as before is said; all vanquished by the *Romans*, and their Countrey made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of *Alpes Coctiæ*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The present are descended, for the most part, of the *Heruli*, who under the Conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themselves, but *Odoacer* being vanquished neer *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Heruli* had this Countrey allotted to them by the Conquerer, for their habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the *Lombards*, of whose Kingdome it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the seventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by some to be the first *temporall* Estate, that ever the Popes of *Rome* had possession of. But lying far off, and the donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdome of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*, of the house of *Charles* the Great; and afterwards of his successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into severall Estates and Principalities. *Thomas*, and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the later in the year 1256. Since that time the first sonne of *Savoy* is styled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was added by the marriage of a daughter of this Marquisate, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, *An.* 1481. Of which marriage though there was no issue, yet the *Savoyard* alwayes held it as their own; till the *French* upon as good a title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard*, *An.* 1588. the Civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it against *Henry* the fourth (who looked upon it as a door to let his forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, *An.* 1600. the Countrey of *Bresse* being given in exchange for this Marquisate: Of which, together with the residue of *Piemont*, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedome of *Montferrat*; that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Crosse *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2 *SAVOY*, strictly and specially so called, is bounded on the East with *Wallisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the West, with *Daulphine*, and *La Bresse*; on the South, with some parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Countrey is for the most part hilly and Mountainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill-countreys are, but not very fruitfull; except some of the vallies which lie neerest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow wayes, and those full of Theeves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the passages being opened by the cost and industry of the people, and purged of theeves by good Laws and exemplary justice, it gained the name of *Savoy*, or *Salvoy*, *quasi salva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latins* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the antient Writers; who knew it by no other name then that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The Common people are naturally very dull and simple, so grosse of understanding for all their continuall converse with other Nations, who take this Countrey in their way to *Italy*; that they beleeve the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prnce in the World: and so unwarlike, that a few men of another Nation well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flie. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exercise: so as there may be dayly seen in *Chambery* as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts taking in *Piemont* (who are not interessed in the first part of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The

The chief Cities are, 1 *Chambery*, ſituate on the banks of the River *L' Arch*, in a very pleaſant valley, compaſſed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedome on that ſide of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he reſideth in this Countrey, the ordinary ſeat of Juſtice, and many neat houſes which belong to the Gentry: fortified of late with a ſtrong Caſtle and ſufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received *An.* 1600. when it was forced by King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2 *Tarentuiſe*, an Arch-biſhops See, ſituate in the middeſt of the Mountains; heretofore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*; and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this Tract. 3 *Lunebourg*, in the Countrey of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suſe*, a Town of *Piemont*, lyeth the moſt ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4 *Aque belle*, ſituate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5 *Rapaille*, a ſweet and fruitfull ſituation, on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Foſſigny*: where *Amadee* the firſt Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Eſtate, lived a Monaſtick life, and was thence choſen Pope by the Fathers of *Baſil*, *An.* 1440. 6 *Nun* or *Nevidum*, (by ſome of the old *Latins* called *Noviodunum*) an antient City, layd deſolate, in, or before the time of *Julius Cæſar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Veſpaſian*; the ſeat of late times of the Biſhops of *Geneva*, ſince their expulſion out of that City. 7 *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhoſne*. 8 *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9 *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwiſe of ſmall importance. 10 *Annunciada*, not much obſervable, but for being the ſeat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11 *Maurienne*, or St. *John de Maurienne*, an Arch-biſhops See, ſituate in a valley of the *Alpes* ſo called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this houſe were firſt entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12 *Charboneers*, a well-fortified place. Here is alſo the ſtrong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four moneths againſt *Henry* the fourth, and many thouſand ſhot of *French* Cannon, *An.* 1600. and the impregnable Fortreſs of St. *Catharines*, which yet ſubmitted to that King; the Government whereof being denyed to the Duke of *Byron*, plunged him in diſcontent and treaſon, to the loſſe of his head.

Savoy.

The many Tribes in and about this mountainous Countrey, of which we have mentioned ſome before, paſs generally in moſt antient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; becauſe the moſt powerfull of them all. Of whom the firſt mention which we find in ſtory, is the Atonement made by *Annibal* in his paſſage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the ſucceſſion of the Kingdome. Afterwards ſiding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War againſt *Marſeilles*, then a confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs: by whom they were in fine ſubdued, with the loſs of no leſſe than 120000 *Galls*, under the ſeverall conducts of *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*; by which laſt, *Bituitus*, or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Countrey and people at that time were much alike, *Cœlum atrox pervicaci ingenio*, a ſharp air, and a ſtubborn people, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for diſcovering *Catilines* conſpiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruin. After which we find *Cottius* one of the Kings of theſe *Allobroges*, to have been in ſpeciall favour with *Auguſtus Cæſar*: affirmed to be the founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous tract, whence it had the name of *Alpes Cottiæ*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdome of *Burgundy*; and paſſed with other rights of that falling Kingdome, to the Emperours of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the laſt King. To them it did continue ſubject til the year 999. in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, brother to *Otho* the third, for killing *Mary* the laſcivious Wife of his Unkle, fled from *Germany*; and ſetled himſelf here, neer *France*. His ſonne *Humbert*, (ſurnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *White-hand*) was by the ſpeciall favour of the Emperour *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Countrey, *An.* 1027. And by this marriage with *Adela*, the daughter and heir of the Marqueſs of *Suſe*, added that noble Marquiſate (one of the ſeven erected by *Otho* the ſecond, and given amongſt the ſonnes of *Waleran*) unto his eſtate. *Humbert* the ſecond gained by conqueſt the Town and Territory of *Tarentaiſe*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the third did the Counties of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, *An.* 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the fourth, by the Mariage of *Sibille* daughter and ſole heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Breſſe*, added that Earldom to his houſe: as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the ninth, did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*; upon the contract betwixt *Philibert* his ſonne and Succeſſor, with *Blanch* the baſe daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was marryed unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the ſecond Earle of *Maurienne* was by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth, inveſted with the title of Earl of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* the eighth, created the firſt Duke, by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, *An.* 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this Houſe, came by the valour and good ſucceſs of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210. and *Peter* one of his ſonnes and ſucceſſors (for his manifold Conqueſts, ſurnamed *Charlemaine* the *Junior*) An. 1256. by conqueſt got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was united by a Marriage of the daughter of the Marquiſate, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*: And though he dyed without iſſue by her, An. 1489. yet his ſucceſſors ſtill kept the poſſeſſion of it, till *Francis* the firſt, pretending ſome title to it in the right of his Mother (a daughter of the houſe of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*: from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civil Wars, An. 1588. and now is peaceably poſſeſſed. The Countrey of *Breſſe* being given to the *French*, for their pretenſion to the Marquiſate, An. 1600. Theſe Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the faction of *Spain*, eſpecially ſince the *French* Kings took in the leſſer ſtates

Savoy. bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, &c. *Charles* the third ſided ſo conſtantly with the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, that denying *Francis* the firſt a paſſage for his Army through the Countrey into *Italy*; he was by the ſaid King diſpoyled of his Eſtates, *An.* 1536. The Emperour to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountring his force in the open field, vanquiſhed them, with the ſlaughter of fifteen thouſand of his men. In the year 1558. peace being made between *Henry*, and *Philip*, ſucceſſors to thoſe great Princes; *Emanuel Philibert*, ſonne to Duke *Charles*, was reſtored to all his Rights. His ſonne and ſucceſſor having marryed *Catharine* the daughter of King *Philip* the ſecond, depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithſtanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his ſonnes receiving thence many great penſions and preferments. For at the ſame time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the ſecond ſonne, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that Kings Gallies; and had in penſion a hundred thouſand Crowns *per annum*; *Philibert* the third ſonne, was Vice-roy of *Sicil*; *Maurice* the fourth a Cardinall, had a moity of the Revenues of the Arch-biſhoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomazo*, though then young, had his penſions alſo. But *Amadee Victorio*, who ſucceeded him, marrying Madam *Chriſtiane*, a daughter of King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, changed his dependences; and held more cloſe to *France* than any of his Predeceſſors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Eſtates, future times will ſhew. For leaving his Heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his Mother; the *French* upon pretence of preſerving the Countrey for him, againſt the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themſelves maſters of the greateſt parts of it; which when they will reſtore to the proper owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999	1	*Beral* of *Saxony*.
1027	2	*Humbert*, the firſt Earle of *Maurienne*.
1048	3	*Ame*, or *Amadee* I.
1076	4	*Humbert* II.
1109	5	*Ame*, or *Amadee* II. the firſt Earl of *Savoy*.
1154	6	*Humbert* III.
1201	7	*Thomas*, ſonne of *Humbert*.
1234	8	*Ame*, or *Amadee* III.
1246	9	*Boniface*, ſonne of *Ame* III.
1256	10	*Peter*, a younger ſon of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the *leſſe*, won *Turin*, *Vaulx*, &c.
1268	11	*Philip*, brother of *Peter*.
1285	12	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. Nephew of *Thomas* the 7th. Earl, by a ſon named *Thomas*.
1323	13	*Edward*, ſonne of *Ame* IV.
1329	14	*Ame*, or *Amadee* V. the brother of *Edward*.
1342	15	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VI.
1385	16	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VII.
1397	17	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VIII. the firſt Duke of *Savoy*.
1434	18	*Lewis*, ſonne of *Ame* VIII.
1461	19	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IX.
1475	20	*Philibert*, ſonne of *Ame* 9th.
1481	21	*Charles*, brother of *Philibert*.
1489	22	*Charles* II.
1495	23	*Philip* II. ſonne of *Lewis*, the ſecond Duke.
1496	24	*Philibert* II.
1504	25	*Charles* III. the brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Eſtate by King *Francis* the firſt.
1559	26	*Emanuel Philibert*, reſtored upon his Marriage with *Margaret* the daughter of King *Francis* the firſt, made Knight of the Garter by Qu. *Mary*.
1580	27	*Charles Emanuel*.
	28	*Ame* X. called alſo *Amadee Victorio*, ſonne of *Charles Emanuel*, marryed *Chriſtiane* the daughter of King *Henry* the fourth.
1637	29	*Charles Emanuel* II. ſonne of *Amadee Victor*, or *Ame* the 10th. at the age of three years ſucceeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke conſiſt eſpecially in his Forts, and Garriſons, whereof he hath good ſtore in *Savoy*, and *Piemont*, well fortified and plentifully furniſhed with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him ſo to have, conſidering what dangerous neighbours he hath neer him, and that his Countrey is a continuall thorow-fare, for the Armies both of *France*, and *Spain*, upon all occaſions. Nor doth it leſſe conduce to his preſervation, that he hath ſo many retreats of naturall ſtrength, as are not eaſily acceſſible by a conquering Army: of which laſt ſort is, amongſt many others, the valley of *Aoſt* (which ſome reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and ſome of *Piemont*) ſo ſtrong by reaſon of the narrow entries, the uneaſie paſſages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that thoſe who have made themſelves maſters of the reſt of the Countrey, durſt never attempt it. And of the firſt, beſides thoſe formerly deſcribed, is the Town of *Nizze*, ſo fortified and flanked upon all acceſſes, that it ſeems rather to be an aſſembly of Forts, than a ſingle Fortreſſe. Out of which Garriſons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for preſent ſervice;

ſervice, beſides the readyneſſe of the *Piemonteſe* upon all occaſions, which are for the moſt part given to Arms. *Geneva.*

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedome (taking *Piemont* in) are ſaid to be above a Million of Crowns *per Annum*. But his extraordinary is ſo great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during his Wars with *Henry* the fourth, in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* only eleven Millions of Crowns; beſides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Souldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want money to ſerve their turns, when they ſhall deſire it of the Subject; and yet not charge them more then they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Eſtate is that of the *Annunciada* ordained by *Amade* the firſt Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *An.* 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to ſhew the fifteen myſteries of the Virgin: at the end is the portraiture of our Lady, with the hiſtory of the *Annunciation*. In ſtead of a Motto, theſe letters, *F. E. R. T*, *id eſt*, *Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar: each link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights is fourteen, beſides the Duke, who is the Soveraign of the Order: the ſolemnity is held annually on our *Lady-day*, in the Caſtle of Saint *Peter* in *Turin*. So from this victory (for every repulſe of the beſieger, is a victory to the beſieged) there aroſe a double effect; firſt, the inſtitution of this Order; ſecondly the aſſumption of the preſent Arms of this Dutchy, which are *G.* a Croſs *A*. This being the Croſs of Saint *John* of *Hieruſalem*, whoſe Knights at that time were owners of the *Rhodes*. Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules* ſupporting in *Feſſe*, an Eſcotchion of *Saxony*, that is Barrewiſe ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. A Coat belonging to the Emperours of the houſe of *Saxony*, from whom the firſt Earls of *Savoy* did derive themſelves.

3. *The Signeury of* GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedome of *Savoy*, formerly ſubject to its Biſhops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Eſtate*, bordering cloſe upon the *Switzers*, and with them confederate; and ſo more properly within the courſe and compaſſe of theſe *Alpine* Provinces. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemane*, oppoſite to the City of *Lozanne* in the *Canton* of *Bern*, from which it is diſtant ſix Dutch miles: the River *Rhoſne* (having paſſed through the Lake with ſo clear a colour, that it ſeemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) running through the lower part thereof, over which there is a paſſage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is ſeated on a flat or level, the reſt on the aſcent of an hill: the buildings fair and of free-ſtone, well fortified on both ſides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretenſions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they ſuffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealouſies of State. The compaſs of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are ſuppoſed to be about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand ſouls. One of their Bridges is more antient, and better fortified than the other, belonging antiently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old inhabitants of that tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæſar*, to hinder them from paſſing that way into *France*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick buſineſs, but not very courteous towards ſtrangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modeſt and thrifty in apparell, and ſpeak for the moſt part the *Savoyard*, or worſt kind of *French*. So that the great reſort of young Gentlemen thither, is not ſo much to learn that Language (which is no where worſe taught) as out of an opinion which their parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where ſo purely practiſed and profeſſed as there. By means whereof, the *frie* or *ſeminary* of our Gentry being ſeaſoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles; have many times proved diſaffected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchicall* as *Epiſcopall*) which they found eſtabliſhed here at home: to the great imbroilment of the State, in matters of moſt near concernment. The women are ſaid to be more chaſt (or at leaſt more reſerved) than in any other place in the World: which poſſibly may be aſcribed to that ſeverity, with which they puniſh all offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick, or private; *Adultery* expiated by no leſſe than death: *Fornication*, for the firſt offence with nine dayes faſting upon bread and water in priſon; for the ſecond, with whipping; for the third with baniſhment. But notwithſtanding this ſeverity, they make love in ſecret, and are as amorous in their daliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very ſmall, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the ſoyl, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all ſorts, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of paſture and feeding grounds, which furniſh the City with fleſh-meats, butter and cheeſe, at very reaſonable rates: the neerneſs of the Lake affording them both Fiſh, and Wild-fowl in good meaſure; and amongſt others (as ſome ſay) the beſt *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the induſtry of the people, and the convenient ſituation of the City it ſelf: the City being ſituated very well for the trade of Merchandiſe, in regard it is the ordinary paſſage, for tranſporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the Marts at *Lyons*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Italy*. And for the induſtry

Geneva. of the people, it is discernable in that great store of Armour, and Apparel and other necessaries, brought from hence yearly by those of *Bern*; and their Manufactures in Satten, Velvet, Taffata, and some quantities of Cloth, (fine, but not durable) transported hence yearly into other places.

The Soveraignty of this City was antiently in the Earls hereof, at first *Imperiall Officers* only, but at last the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt these and the Bishops (Suffragans to the *Metropolitan* of *Vienna* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the absolute command thereof. In fine, the Bishops did obtain of the Emperour *Frederick* the first, that they and their successors should be the sole Princes of *Geneva*; free from all Taxes, and not accomptable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithstanding, the Earls continuing still to molest the Bishops, they were fain to call unto their aid the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him first as Protector only, but after by degrees as the *Lord* in *chief*. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Mariage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*, with *Beatrix* a daughter of these Earls, fell into that house; then *Ame* or *Amadee* the sixth of that name, obtained of the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, to be *Vicar-generall* of the Empire in his own Countrey, and in that right superior to the Bishop in all *Temporall* matters: and *Ame*, or *Amadee* the first Duke, got from Pope *Martin* (to the great prejudice of the Bishops) a grant of all the *Temporall* jurisdiction of it. After which time, the Bishops were constrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Soveraign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown so great (notwithstanding that the people were immediately subject to their Bishop only) that the Money in *Geneva* was stamped with the Dukes name and figure: Capitall Offenders were pardoned by him; no sentence of Law executed till his Officers were first made acquainted; nor League contracted by the people of any validity, without his privity and allowance: and finally the Keyes of the Town presented to him as often as he pleased to lodge there; as once (for instance) to Duke *Charles* the third, coming thither with *Beatrix* his Wife, a daughter of *Portugall*. And in this state it stood, till the year 1528. the Bishop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis jurisdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himself confesseth in an Epistle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton* of *Bern*, near adjoyning to them, *Viret*, and *Farellus* did endeavour it in *Geneva* also. But finding that the Bishop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they skrewed themselves into the people, and by their aid in a popular tumult, compelled the Bishop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Bishop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be restored to his Estate; yet would they never hearken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thrust out. Nor did they only in that tumult alter the Doctrine, and Orders of the Church before established; but changed the Government of the State also: disclaiming all allegiance both to Duke and Bishop, and standing on their own Liberty, as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farellus*, before *Calvin*'s coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536. yet being come, *suffragio meo comprobavi*, as he saith himself, no man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongst them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he first negotiated with them to abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Bishop; to which he found a cheerfull and unanimous consent in all the people. Then finding that no *Ecclesiasticall Discipline* was in use among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own composing: which at last he obtained also, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate *July* the 20th. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this new yoak, and he and his Colleagues (*Farellus*, and *Coraldus*) as resolute to hold them to it; they were all three banished the Town in a popular humor; and with like levity sued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yeeld, except they would oblige themselves by a solemn Oath, to admit of such a Form of Discipline, as he with the advice of the other Ministers, should prescribe unto them. This being condescended to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to *Geneva*, *September* the thirteenth, 1541. and got his new Discipline established on the twentieth of *November* following. The sum of the device was this. All *Ministers* to be equall amongst themselves; two *Lay-men* to be super-added unto every Minister; the Minister to continue for term of life; the *Lay-Elders* to be annually chosen: these being met together to be called the *Presbytery*; and to have power of *Ordination*, *Censures*, *Absolution*, and whatsoever else was acted by the Bishop formerly. Hitherto it related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City, and a small one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbytery*. The names and notions of *Classicall*, *Provinciall*, and *Nationall* Assemblies, came not in till afterwards; as it got ground in Kingdomes, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpose framed to content the people; yet since the *Lay-officers* were to be but annuall, and after subject to the lash like other *Mortals*; it gave but sorry satisfaction unto wiser men. And being built withall on a false foundation, was for a long time hardly able to stand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a support from *Zurich*, and others of the *Protestant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earnestly solicited to allow his project, against which one *Perinus*, and some principall Citizens, had begun to spurn. And so we have the true beginning of the *Genevian* Discipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nursed up by Faction.

Being born into the World by the means aforesaid, some other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of, in other Churches. As first the great content it gave to the *common people*, to see themselves entrusted with the weightyest matters of *Religion*; and thereby an *equality* with, if not (by reason of their number, being two for one) a *superiority* above their *Ministers*: Next, the *great reputation*, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Dictates* as authentick amongst some Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipse dixit* in the Church of *Rome*.

Whereby

Whereby it came to paſſe, in a little time, that only thoſe Churches which embraced the Doctrines and Diſcipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: thoſe in high *Germany*, and ellewhere, which adhered to *Luther*, being generally called by no other name than the *Lutherans*, or the *Lutheran* Churches; as not *reformed* enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his *endeavours* to promote that Platform, in all other Churches, which he had calculated for the *Meridian* of *Geneva* only: commending it to *Gaſper Olevianus*, Miniſter of the Church of *Triers*, as appears by his Letters dated *April* the twelth 1560. congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the laſt help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the uſe of the Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) impoſed it as a matter neceſſary upon all the Churches: ſo neceſſary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipſius* Religionis *placitis*; that it was utterly as unlawfull to recede from this, as from the moſt materiall points of the *Chriſtian Faith*. So he Epiſt. 83. By means whereof their followers in moſt of the *Reformed* Churches drove on ſo furiouſly, that rather than their Diſcipline ſhould not be admitted, and the *Epiſcopall Government* deſtroyed in all the Churches of *CHRIST*; they were reſolved to depoſe Kings, ruin Kingdoms, and to ſubvert the fundamentall conſtitutions of all civil States. And hereunto their *own Ambition* gave them ſpur enough, affecting the *ſupremacy* in their ſeverall *Pariſhes*; that they themſelves might Lord it over Gods Inheritance, under pretence of ſetting *CHRIST* upon his Throne. Upon which love to the preheminence, they did not only *prate* againſt the Biſhops, *with malitious words*, (as *Diotrephes* for the ſame reaſon did againſt the Apoſtles) but not therewith content, *neither would they themſelves receive them, nor permit them that would, caſting them out of the Church*, with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary *Parochiall* Miniſter, was cunningly fomented by ſome great perſons, and many *Lay-Patrons* in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raiſe themſelves great fortunes, out of Biſhops Lands; the other to keep thoſe Tithes themſelves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate ſome deſerving Perſon. Such were the helps, by which this new device of *Calvin* was diſperſed and propagated. *Geneva.*

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetuall *Moderator*, and *Beza* too, untill *Danæus* ſet him beſides the Cuſhion: yet after that the power of the *Presbytery* was ſhrewdly leſſened in *Geneva*, and the good Members ſo reſtrained in the exerciſe of it; that they have no power to convent any man before them, but by the authority of a *Syndick* or *Civil* Magiſtrate. And as for maintainance, they hold their Miniſters ſo ſtrictly to a ſorry pittance, as would be ſure to keep them from preſuming too much on their power in *Conſiſtory*. *Tithes* of all ſorts were to be taken up for the uſe of the State, and laid up in the publick Treaſury; and ſtipends iſſued out to maintain the *Miniſtry*: but thoſe ſo mean, that *Bezaes* ſtipend whilſt he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pound *per annum*, the reſidue of the *City-Miniſters* not to ſixty pound, thoſe of the Villages adjoyning, having hardly forty pound; enough to keep them alwayes poor, and miſerably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizen. And that they may not *ſteal the Gooſe, and not ſtick up a feather*, the State doth uſe to make ſome poor allowance to the wives and daughters of their deceaſed *Miniſters*, if they die poor, or leave their children unprovided; or otherwiſe have deſerved well in the time of their lives. In reſpect hereof though the *Miniſters* are very ſtrict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts againſt it; yet to give ſome content to the common people (who have not leaſure to attend it at other times) they allow all Man-like exerciſes on the *Lords-day*, as ſhooting in pieces, long-bows, croſs-bows, and the like, and that too in the morning, both before and after the *Sermon*; ſo it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civil* or *Imperial* Lawes; the Judge whereof is called the *Lievtenant-criminall*; before whom all cauſes are tryed, and from whom there lyeth no *Appeal*; unleſs it be unto the Councell of two hundred, whom they call the *Gredt Councell*, in which the ſupreme power of the State reſideth. Out of this *Councell* of two hundred, there is choſen another *leſſer Councel* of five and twenty, and out of them four principall Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*; who have the ſole managing of the Common-wealth; except it be in ſome great matter, as making Peace or War, *offenſive* or *defenſive* Leagues, hearing Appeals, and ſuch like generall concernments; which the great Councell of two hundred muſt determine of. They have a cuſtom ſuperadded to the *Civil Law*, that if any Malefactor from another place fly to them for refuge, they puniſh him after the cuſtome of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwiſe, their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples hereof I will aſſign two: the firſt of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home to be the welcomer hither, were at their firſt acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The ſecond is of a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, who having fled his Countrey for clipping and counterfeiting the Kings Gold, came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alleadged, that he underſtood their City being free, gave admiſſion to all Offenders; *True* (ſaid they) *but with an intent to puniſh them that offended*: a diſtinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to ſixty thouſand pound *per annum*; which they raiſe upon the *demain* of the Biſhop, and the *Tithes* of the Church, and on ſuch *impoſitions* as are laid upon fleſh and Merchandiſe. But they are able to raiſe greater ſums if there be occaſion, as appears plainly by the ſending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry* the third, before they had been long ſetled in their own eſtates.

And as for *Military forces*, they are able to impreſs two thouſand men, and have Arms of all ſorts for ſo many in the publick *Arſenall*: as alſo twelve or fourteen peeces of Ordnance, with all man-

Wall ſland. ner of Ammunition appertaining to them; and on the Lake ſome Gallies in continual readineſs, againſt the dangers threatned them from the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater ſafety of their Eſtate, and the preſervation of their *Religion*, they joyned themſelves in a conſtant and perpetual League with the *Canton* of *Bern*, *Anno* 1528, communicating to each other the Freedom of their ſeveral Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a member of the Common-wealth of the *Switzers*, which is no ſmal ſecurity to their affairs. But their chief ſtrength, as I conceive, is that the neighbour Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Potentate, of more ſtrength than he. Inſomuch that when that Duke beſieged it, *Anno* 1589, they were aided from *Venice* with four and twenty thouſand, and from *England*, with thirteen thouſand Crowns, from *Florence* with Intelligence of the Enemies purpoſes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French* King, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had deſigns upon it; the Emperor offered them aſſiſtance both of Men and Money: yea and ſometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have aſſiſted them againſt the others, as being being more deſirous that the Town ſhould remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for ſuch petit States, to be more ſafe by the intereſs of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Armes of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof, were *Or*, a Croſs *Azure*. But for the title of *Geneva* after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip* youngeſt ſon of *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, to *Janus* the third ſon of *Lewis* the ſecond Duke; and finally to *Philip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth ſon of *Philip* the ſeventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whoſe poſterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth ſtill continue.

4. *WALLISLAND.*

EAſtward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottome of the *Alpes Pœninæ*, lyeth the Countrey of *WALLISLAND*: ſo called either *quaſi Wallenſland*, or the land of the *Valenſes*, once the inhabitants of the Countrey about *Martinacht*, a chief Town hereof; or *quaſi Vallis-land*, or the *Land of Vallies*, of which it totally conſiſts. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furcken*, to the Town of St. *Maurice*, where again the hils do cloſe, and ſhut up the valley; which is ſo narrow in that place, that a bridge laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhoſne* doth paſs) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Caſtle and two ſtrong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual wall of ſteep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a cruſt of Ice; not paſſable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by ſingle paſſengers; ſo that having but that one entrance to it, which before we ſpake of, no Citadel can be made ſo ſtrong by Art, as this whole Countrey is by Nature. But in the bottom of thoſe craggy and impaſſable Rocks, lies a pleaſant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and moſt delicate fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and moſt excellent Paſtures, which yeeld a notable increaſe of Cheeſe and Butter: And in the Countrey about *Sion* they diſcovered in the year 1544 a Fountain of Salt; and have alſo many hot *Bathes*, and medicinal waters very wholſom. Of Springs, and River-water, they are very deſtitute; having ſcarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhoſne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people uſing ſnow-water for the moſt part for domeſtick uſes): which made one pleaſantly obſerve, that they *pay there dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine*. Cattel they have ſufficient to ſerve their turn, and amongſt others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigneſs, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a fallow Deer, leaping with wonderful agility from one precipice to another, and ſo not eaſily caught but in Summer time; for then the heat of that ſeaſon makes him blinde.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Walliſland*; the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *de Furcken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the Lower ſtretching out to the Town of St. *Maurice*, which is at the opening of the ſame: the length of both ſaid to be five ordinary daies journey, but the breadth not anſwerable. The *Upper Walliſland* containeth the ſeven *Reſorts* of 1 *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2 *Leuck*, 3 *Brig*, 4 *Nies*, 5 *Rawren*, 6 *Sider*, 7 *Gombes*; in which are reckoned thirty Pariſhes: the *Lower* comprehending the ſix *Reſorts* of 1 *Gurdis*, 2 *Ardoa*, 3 *Sallien*, 4 *Martinacht*, 5 *Jutremont*, and 6 St. *Maurice*; in which are 24 Pariſhes. The people in both parts ſaid to be courteous towards ſtrangers, but very rough and churliſh towards one another.

The ſeveral reſorts before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns; which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1 *Sedunum*, *Sittim* or *Sion*, a Biſhops See, ſuffragan to the *Metropolitan* of *Tarentuiſe*; the chief of all this little Countrey: of no great beauty in it ſelf, but neat and gallant in reſpect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhoſne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which, being the lower, is ſeated the Cathedral Church, and the Canons houſes; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very ſtrong Caſtle, the dwelling place of the Biſhop in the heats of Summer: which being built upon an hill of ſo great an height, and of ſo hazardous an aſcent, is impoſſible almoſt to be took by force; the ſharpneſs of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of aſſaults, and the highneſs of the hill from the reach of Gun-ſhot. 2 *Marchinacht*, by *Cæſar* called *Octodurus*, and *Civitas Valenſium* by *Antoninus*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3 Saint *Maurice*, or Saint *Morits*, anciently *Augaunum*, the Key of the whole Countrey; but in Winter eſpecially, when all the other

other paſſages are ſo frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town: which for that cauſe is very well manned and fortified to avoid ſurpriſal; and therefore alſo choſen for the ſeat of the Governor of the *Lower Walliſland*

Switzerland.

This Countrey now called *Walliſland*, is in moſt *Latin* Writers called by the name of *Valeſia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valenſia*, as the *Dutch* or *Engliſh* name for *Wallinſland*: which name I ſhould conceive it took from the *Valenſes*, the old inhabitants of this valley, of whom *Octodurus* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antoninus* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made ſubject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cæſar*, at ſuch time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Weſtern parts of the *Roman* Empire unto *Charles* the *great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Biſhop of *Sion*, *Anno* 805. Under his ſucceſſors they continue to this very day; but ſo, as that the Deputies of the *ſeven Reſorts* have not only voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being choſen and inveſted into the place, they joyn with him alſo in the *Diets* for chooſing Magiſtrates, redreſſing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Walliſland* obeyeth the upper, made ſubject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no ſway at all in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governors agree of. The ſame *Religion* is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themſelves with the ſeven Popiſh *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, *Anno* 1572, or thereabouts: as alſo for their mutual defence and preſervation againſt Forein Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongſt one another.

5. *SWITZERLAND.*

NExt unto *Walliſland* lyeth the Countrey of the *SWITZERS*, having on the Eaſt, the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the Weſt, the Mountain *Jour*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy*, and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia* or *Scwaben*, another Province alſo of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Walliſland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Countrey heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to ſay, 1 *Argow*, ſo called from the River *Aar*, whoſe chief Town was *Lucern*: 2 *Wiſliſpurgergow*, ſo called from *Wiſliſpurg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3 *Zurichgow*, ſo named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this preſent the Town of moſt note in all this Tract; but ſince the falling off of theſe Countreys from the houſe of *Auſtria*, divided into many *Cantons*, and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but ſuch as for the moſt part have graſſie tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nouriſhing paſtures, which breed them a great ſtock of Cattel, their greateſt wealth. And in ſome places yeelds plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increaſe of Corn alſo, if care and induſtry be not wanting on the Husband-mans part; but neither in ſo great abundance, as to ſerve all neceſſary uſes, which want they do ſupply from their neighbouring Countreys. And though it ſtand upon as high ground as any in *Chriſtendom*, yet is no place more ſtored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yeeld them great abundance of Fiſh, but ſerve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to diſperſe their ſeveral Commodities from one *Canton* to another. Of which the principal are, *Bodenſee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genſor-ſee*, or the Lake of *Geneve*, by the *Rhoſne*; *Walldſtet-ſee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Ruſſe*; *Namonburger* and *Bieter-ſees*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich-ſee*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundered and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the higheſt Countrey in *Europe* (as before is ſaid) the Rivers which do iſſue from it running through all quarters of the ſame; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italie* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Weſtern Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius* paſſeth through *Germany*, and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Countrey is, ſuch are the Inhabitants, of rude and rugged diſpoſitions, more fit for Armes than any civil occupations; capable of toyl and labour, which the neceſſities of their Countrey do inure them to, not able otherwiſe to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them ſeek for ſervice, which they ſhift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their ſuperfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to ſpare greater multitudes to a Forein War, than a man would eaſily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honeſt, frugal and induſtrious, impartial in the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and great lovers of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of ſuch a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himſelf able to take the field, or ſtand his own ground in defence of his Dominions if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italie* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, ſerved exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Countrey, they could be hired better cheap by the *French*, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France*, or *Spain*. And having had ſome good ſucceſſes to increaſe their fame, they grew ſo terrible at laſt; that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien* were more afraid of one band of *Suiſſe*, than of all the reſt of the *French* Army. But being found withall to be falſe and treacherous, and

eaſily

Switzerland.

eaſily brought off by the better purſe (which they moſt evidently diſcovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforze*, who had put himſelf and his eſtate into their hands); and thoſe *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay ſo faſt in their reputation, that firſt the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at laſt uſed them not at all, or at leaſt very ſparingly. And now it is their honour that they are choſen of the Guard to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; and that the greateſt Princes of *Europe* give them yearly penſions. Which penſions were given heretofore to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other ſide.

For matter of *Religion* it is proportionably mixt, ſome of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popiſh*, ſome wholly *Proteſtant*; in others both Religions uſed promiſcuouſly. At firſt the differences were ſo eagerly purſued on both ſides, that notwithſtanding the mediation of ſome potent neighbours, it broke out into a *Civil* War; the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug* (which the *Latin* Writers of this ſtory call the *Quinquepagici*) arming againſt *Urich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War, the *Proteſtant* party was diſcomfited, *Zuinglius* himſelf ſlain in the head of the battel, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midſt of the fire, whole and untouched (as Archbiſhop *Cranmers* alſo did) when all the reſt of his body was conſumed to aſhes. But thoſe of the *Reformed* party would not ſo give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverſe party. Wearied at laſt with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the buſineſs, indulging each to other the free exerciſe of their own *Religions*. So it continueth at this day, diverſity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick *intereſs*, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was ſo firmly knit amongſt them in their firſt *confederacies*.

Now for the body of their State, it conſiſts of three diſtinct parts, or members, which are to be conſidered in this diſcourſe; *viz.* the *Swiſſe* themſelves, the *Præfectures* which are ſubject to them, and the States that are confederate with them. The *Swiſſe* are ſubdivided into thirteen *Cantons*, that is to ſay, *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Baſil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris* and *Schaffhauſen*. Theſe properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many rights, priviledges and preheminences which the others do not; as power to determine of war and peace, to diſpoſe of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongſt themſelves the ſpoyl of the Enemy. The firſt confederacy was made betwixt the *Cantons* of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the moſt potent, the moſt exaſperated, and that which did moſt hotly proſecute the combination, gave to the reſt the name of *Switzers*, firſt made for ten years only, in defence of themſelves againſt the violences of *Albert* the firſt, Emperor and Duke of *Auſtria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by ſtrong hand to his own Eſtates, *Anno* 1309. but made perpetual after their great victory obtained againſt Duke *Leopold*, the ſon of *Albert*, in the fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, *Anno* 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the confederacy till the year 1352; nor *Bern* untill the year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in *Anno* 1481. *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* united with them in the year 1501. and *Apenzel*, which was the laſt which was admitted into their *confederacy*, *Anno* 1511. So that there paſſed within little of two hundred years, from the firſt beginning of theſe *Leagues*, to the finiſhing of them.

The ſecond Member of this body, are the Towns and *States*, *Confederates* with them, for the preſervation of their common Liberties, *viz.* the Town and Abbot of Saint *Gall*, the Towns of *Rotwell*, *Mulhaſen*, *Nuenberg*, and *Biel*, ſituate on the Lake thence named: (of which the firſt belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in *France*, the latter to the Biſhops of *Baſil*) with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of theſe, *Rotwell* and *Mulhaſen* are confederate with all the *Cantons*; the reſt, with ſome particulars only. The Abbot of Saint *Gall* firſt entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Swiz*, and *Glaris*, for the preſervation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, and *Glaris*, the better to preſerve themſelves from the power of their *Abbot*; who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in *Anno* 1452. *Rotwell*, and *Mulhauſen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the *Cantons*; the firſt, *Anno* 1515. the other, *Anno* 1519. *Newenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are ſuch leſſer parcels and additaments, as have accrewed to their Eſtate, and are ſubject unto their authority; either by gift, purchaſe, or the chance of war: ſome lying in *Switzerland* it ſelf, ſome amongſt other parts of the *Alpes*, and ſome in *Italie*. Theſe are the Towns and Countreys of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenſwyll*, *Wagenthall*, interpoſed here and there amongſt the *Switzers*: the Town and Countrey of *Sargans*, lying amongſt the *Rhætian Alpes*, not far from the *Griſons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a valley of the *Alpes*, on the left ſhore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Conſtans*; and finally the valleys of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano*, *Mendriſio*, and *Belinzano*, ſituate in and amongſt the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden* and *Mellingen* appertain to the eight firſt *Cantons*: *Wagenthall*, the *Sargans*, and *Rheineck* to the ſeven firſt *Cantons*: *Rappenſwill* to *Uren*, *Swits*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*; and *Turgow*, unto the ten firſt *Cantons*; *Belinzano* to the three firſt only; and all the reſt of the *Italian* Præfectures to the Cantons generally, excepting *Apenzell*, which was not entred into the confederacy when theſe Præfectures were given unto the *Switzers* by *Maximilian Sforza* Duke of *Millain*; which was in *Anno* 1513, ſome moneths before the taking in of *Apenzell* to the reſt of the *Cantons*.

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Præfectures*, and *States confederate*, amongſt all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the Cantons of *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate ſituate amongſt the *Switzers*, but Saint *Gall* only; nor in any of the *Præfectures* but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of conſi-

de-

deration are not like to be many. Of thoſe that are, the principall are, 1 *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned Univerſity, ſituate on both ſides of the River *Limat*, where it iſſueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had anciently two Monaſteries in it, in one of which *Huldericus Zuinglius* was a *Canon*, ſlain near this Town in the battel ſpoken of before, *Anno* 1531. now giving name to the moſt honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the authority of ſummoning the general *Diets*, as of thoſe alſo of the *Proteſtants*; the Legats thereof preſiding in both Aſſemblies. 2 *Friburg*, ſituate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by *Bertold* the fourth Duke of *Zeuringen*. 3 *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurum* of *Antoninus*) on the River of *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of S. *Urſus*, and his 66 *Theban* Souldiers, in the time of the Emperor *Diocletian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not ſo old by far as the people make it; who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4 *Baſil*, ſo called either of a *Baſilisk* ſlain at the building of the City; or of the *German* word *Paſel*, ſignifying a path; or of Βασιλεία ſignifying Kingly. It was built *Anno* 382, and is famous for an Univerſity founded by *Pius* the ſecond, *Anno* 1459. It was made a *Canton Anno* 1501; and is honoured with the Sepulchres of *Oecolampadius*, *Eraſmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarienus*, and *Hottoman*, the famous Civilian. In this City, *Anno* 1431, was held that notable Councel, wherein though the *Papall* authority was then at the height, it was decreed that a *general Councel was above the Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practiſe; the Councel depoſing Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, and placing in his room *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the fourth; who having held the See nine years in a time of *Schiſm*, did willingly in order to the peace of *Chriſtendom*, reſign the Popedom to *Nicolas* the fifth, who had before been choſen by the oppoſite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, ſometimes a Town *Imperial*, ſtill a Biſhops See; the Biſhop being ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Beſanſon*, in the County of *Burgundie*: ſeated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Weis* and *Byrſa*, two leſſer brooks) by which it is divided into the *greater Baſil* lying towards *France*, and the *leſſer* lying towards *Germany*. 5 *Lucern*, ſituate on both ſides of the *Ruſſe*, where it iſſueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; ſo called from *Lucerna*, *i. e.* the *Lantern*, which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water-men in the night. A City well traded and frequented by ſtrangers, becauſe the ordinary road from *Germany* into *Italie*, paſſing from hence through the Countrey of the *Griſons*; and in regard that the *Diets* for the *Popiſh Cantons*, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whoſe ghoſt (as the common people are made to believe) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake, in his Judges Robes. And to be ſure the fiction ſhall not be confuted, they add, that whoſoever ſeeth him ſhall die that year. 6 *Bern*, compaſſed almoſt round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little mountain; the houſes of free-ſtone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives name to the largeſt and moſt potent of all the *Cantons*; one of the firſt which did embrace the *Reformation*, and the firſt of all which purged it ſelf of Images, thoſe excellent Inſtruments of Superſtition and Idolatry; defaced here in a popular tumult, *Anno* 1548. 7 *Lauſanna*, in the Canton of *Bern*, a Biſhops See, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Beſanſon*; ſeated on the banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compaſſed with mountains alwaies covered with ſnow, which open themſelves on the Eaſt ſide only, which is towards *Italie*. 8 *Schaffhauſen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lyeth on the other ſide of the *Rhene*; of right belonging unto *Sueva*, or *Scawben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this *Confederacy*.

Switzerland.

Next for the *Præfectures*, and *confederate* States, they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rotwell*, and *Mulhuſen*, two *Imperial* Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of thoſe which be, the principal amongſt the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Countrey, is the Town of Saint *Gall* (*Sengall* as they corruptly call it) an *Imperial* City, ſituate amongſt the Mountains near the *Boden-See*. A rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monaſtery of S. *Gall*, a famous *Scot*, and the Apoſtle of thoſe parts, *Anno* 630, or thereabouts; the *Abbot* of which having great poſſeſſions in this tract (before *Apenzell*, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptiſts* were once very prevalent here, inſomuch that one of them cut off his brothers head in the preſence of his Father and Mother, and ſaid (according to the humour of that ſect, who boaſt much of dreams, viſions, and *Enthuſiaſms*) that *God commanded him ſo to do*. The principal amongſt the *Præfectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquiſate in *Germany*) the *Upper Baden*: ſeated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almoſt in the middle of the Countrey; and for that cauſe the place of meeting for the Councel of *Eſtate* of all the *Confederates*. It taketh name from the Bathes here being, two of which only are publick, the reſt in private houſes: conſcious, as it is thought, to much laſciviouſneſs. For whereas it is ſaid of *Adrian*, that *Lavacra pro ſexibus ſeparavit*; here men and women promiſcuouſly bathe together; and which is worſt, in private: where, as *Munſter* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem ſolam cum ſolo*; and yet are not any of them diſturbed with jealouſie. Theſe *Bathes* are much frequented, yet not ſo much for health as pleaſure. Their chiefeſt vertue is the *quickning* power they have upon *barren* women. But as the *Friers* uſe to ſend men whoſe wives are fruitleſs, in pilgrimage to Saint *Joyce*, the Patroneſs of fruitfulneſs; and in the mean time to lie with their Wives: ſo it may be with good reaſon thought, that in a place of ſuch Liberty as this is, the luſty and young gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath it ſelf. No other Town of eminent note amongſt the *Præfectures* of the *Swiſſes*, except *Rhineck* it ſelf, the ſeat of the Governor for the *Switzers*, ſituate near the Lake of *Conſtance*: and none of any note at all amongſt the *Italian Præfectures*, except *Belinzana*, and *Locarno*, neither of them containing 400 Houſes, and thoſe none of the handſomeſt.

Within

Switzerland.

Within the limits of this Countrey, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Swits*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*; with some of the adjoyning parts of *Germany*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*: from the Lords whereof the house of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottopert* the third Prince of this line, at or before the year 700; as others say, by *Rapato* the son of *Betzeline*, about the year 1020. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now so decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, descended in a direct line from *Sigebert* the eldest son of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, or *Austrasia*; first setled in these parts by *Clotaire* the second, King of the *French*, with the title, as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, an adjoyning Province of *Germany*) Being soon weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were sometimes called Earls of *Habspurg*, by the name of this Castle; sometimes Earls of *Altemburg*, another Castle not far off, of their own foundation. And after closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Countrey of *Argow*; from which some of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known distinctly by the title of Earls of *Habspurg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned; when those of *Altemburg* and *Argow* became discontinued. However we will here lay down the whole succession of this famous family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The Earls of *Habspurg*.

635 1 *Sigibert*, son of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, by *Clotaire* the second of that name, *French* King, dispossessed of the Kingdom of his Father; and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of those Countreys, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.

2 *Sigibert* II. son of *Sigibert* the first, Duke of *Upper Almain*.

3 *Ottopert*, or *Otbert*, the son of *Segibert* the second, the founder, as some say, of the Castles of *Altemburg*, and *Habspurg*, of which promiscuously called Earl.

4 *Bebo*, the son of *Ottopert*, the last Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habspurg*.

5 *Robert*, or *Rother*, as some call him, the son of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

766 6 *Hertopert*, the son of *Robert*, who added unto his Estate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Brisgow*.

7 *Rampert*, the son of *Hertopert*, who flourished *Anno* 814, at what time he procured the Canonization of S. *Trutpertus*.

8 *Guntram*, the son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

9 *Luithard*, the son of *Guntram*.

909 10 *Luitfride*, the son of *Luithard*.

929 11 *Hunifride*, the son of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Estates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alsatia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his decease by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

950 12 *Guntram* II. son of *Hunifride*, the first who took unto himself the title of Earl of *Argow*: from whose second son named *Berthilo*, descended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brisgow*, and good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the son of *Gebiro* the third son of *Guntram*. Who having founded the Castle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great possessions in the adjoyning parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his decease (being childless) to *Berthold* the son of *Berthilo*, and his Cousen *German*.

13 *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldest son of *Guntram* the second, Earl of *Argow*.

14 *Rapato*, son of *Betzeline*, the founder or repairer of the Castle of *Habspurg*, from whence both he and his successors were constantly called Earls of *Habspurg*. Great Grand-father, by *Theodorick* his youngest son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperor (at the instigation of the Pope) against *Henry* the fourth.

15 *Warner*, by some called *Berengar*, or *Berengarius*, the son of *Rapato*.

1096 16 *Otho*, the son of *Warner* or *Berengar*.

1108 17 *Warner* II. son of *Otho*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, with some fair Estates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

18 *Albert*, the son of *Warner* the second, surnamed the *Rich*.

19 *Albert* II. surnamed the *Wise*, son of *Albert* the first, added to his Estates a great part of the *Upper Alsatia*; which he had by the right of *Heduigis* his wife, one of the daughters and heirs of *Simon* the last Earl thereof.

1238 20 *Rodolph*, the fortunate son of *Albert* the second, added to his estate the rest of the *Upper Elsate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, *Anno* 1273. Of which he made so good advantage, that he added unto his Estates the great Dukedom of *Austria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the first foundation of the *Austrian* greatness; of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that besides the following Princes of the house of *Austria*, those of the line Collateral still retained the title of Earls of *Habspurg* (according to the ill custome of *Germany*) increased with the addition of the Earldome

Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and ſo continued till the expiring of that line in the perſon of *Rodolph* the fourth, the laſt that bare the title of Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Anno* 1356. by whoſe death many fair Eſtates were added to the *Auſtrian* Family. *Switzerland.*

Having on the occaſion of theſe Earls of *Habſpurg*, beheld ſo much of the affairs of this Countrey, as related to that puiſſant and illuſtrious family, let us go forward to the reſt: firſt taking in our way the ancient Eſtate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many ſeveral Nations (ſome of them ſpoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greateſt and moſt populous of all the reſt: ſo called, as *Verſtegan* will have it, *quaſi Hil-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Cherſonneſe*, which is now called *Juitland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into forein parts, to ſo great a multitude, that the Countrey, barren of it ſelf, was no longer able to maintain them; they ſet fire on their Towns and Houſes, and with a general reſolution went to ſeek new dwellings. The total number of men, women and children, which went upon this deſperate action, are ſaid to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 900000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Caſſius* a *Roman* Conſul, ſlain the Conſul himſelf, and ſold his Souldiers for Bond-ſlaves: upon the apprehenſion of which good ſucceſs, they thought no body able to withſtand them. But they found *Cæſar* of a ſtronger metal than *L. Caſſius*. Who having ſtopped their paſſage by hewing down the bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown ſtrong enough to bid them battel; ſo waſted them in ſeveral skirmiſhes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild thoſe Towns and Villages which they had deſtroyed before this enterpriſe: which he upon delivery of Hoſtages, did vouchſafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the leaſt two Millions of them periſhed in this journey, not ſo much by the ſword (though that ſpared them not) as for want of neceſſaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* the third, by the *Burgundians* and *Almans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Ruſs* parting their dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; ſome parts firſt taken out, and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habſpurg*, as before was noted. Given with the reſt of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade* the ſecond, by *Rodolph* the laſt King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their cuſtome was) into divers States; moſt of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habſpurg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenberg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Auſtria*. By means of which united titles the *Auſtrian* family was poſſeſſed of ſo much of this Countrey, as now make up five *Cantons*, and as many of the principal *Præfectures*: that is to ſay, the *Cantons* of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffehauſen*; the *Præfectures* of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenthall*, *Roperſwyll*; together with a great part of the Countrey of *Targow*, wherein ſtands the City of S. *Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; ſome of the reſt, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the ſon of *Rodolph*, who had a purpoſe to unite them to the houſe of *Auſtria*; became obnoxious alſo to the power of thoſe Princes. But the People being at laſt over-burthened by the tyranny of thoſe Governors, whom the Dukes of *Auſtria* and their other Lords had ſent among them; ſeeing withall the Empire by the Popes Fulminations diſtracted into many Factions, and the *Auſtrian* Family weakned by a ſub-diviſion of that great Eſtate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League amongſt themſelves, for defence of their Liberty: into which firſt entred thoſeof *Switz*, *Uren* and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1387. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1511, as before was noted. At their firſt beginning to take Armes, *Frederick*, one of the many Dukes of *Auſtria* (to whoſe ſhare they fell) ſent his Brother *Leopald* againſt them with a puiſſant Army; which they encountred with near *Mortgarton* a village of the now Canton of *Underwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of thoſe narrow paſſages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no ſmall help to them, that the waies were all ſo filled with Ice, that he was able to do no ſervice with his Horſe; and his Souldiers ſo amazed at the preſent difficulties, that the *Confederates* only caſting ſtones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoyning. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this ſucceſs, they brought the new Canton of *Lucern* into their confederacy by force of Armes, *Anno* 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, *Anno* 1351. in which year thoſe of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five, and willing to diſcharge themſelves of their Lordly Maſters, were united to them, as was the new Canton of *Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381. the Towns of *Solothurn* and *Friburg*, deſcending from the houſe of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that line) upon thoſe of *Habſpurg*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted *Cantons*, occaſioned *Leopold* ſon of *Albert* the *ſhort*, and brother of *Albert* the fourth, Dukes of *Auſtria*, to make war upon them: in which war being vanquiſhed and ſlain neer *Sempacha* a village of the Canton of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, *Anno* 1386, and the ſucceeding Dukes not venturing any more againſt them, the reſidue of the Cantons and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themſelves of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, they continued free and unmoleſted, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the war made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they diſcomfited in three great battels, and ſlew him alſo in the third. A war commenced by him at the firſt on ſmall occaſions, and leſs hopes: the Countrey being ſo barren and the people

Switzerland.

people so poor; that their Ambassador to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Country-men were taken; they would not be able to pay a ransome, to the value of the spurs and bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what riches was. For having won the first battel at *Granson* (the other two were those of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodliest *Pavilions* in the World was by them torn in pieces, and turned into breeches and side-coats: divers silver plates and dishes they sold for a *French Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an *English* penny) supposing them to be but pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewel in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest for a *Guilder*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Countrey, for three *Franks*. After their valour shewed in these battels, *Lewis* the 11th took them into pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, *viz.* twenty thousand to the Cities, and twenty thousand to particular persons: and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to term himself one of the *Bourgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these arts, and the nearness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary* the daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* the twelfth won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiously betrayed, as was said before. Upon the merit of these services, they required an augmentation of their pensions: which when this *Lewis* the twelfth denyed, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the *French*, and entred into the service of Pope *Julio* the second; who therefore stiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, *Anno* 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the son of *Ludowick*, was solemnly re-instated by the Confederates: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Valleys in the Alpes of *Italie* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*; reckoned amongst the *Præfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis* the first in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the battel of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards considering what damage his Realm had sustained by the revolt of these Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them; on condition that he should restore the ancient pension of forty thousand Crowns; secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; thirdly, that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns: fifthly, that he should give them three moneths pay before-hand; sixthly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had estated in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossesse, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thousand *Frankes* of yearly revenue, and maried to a daughter of the bloud royal. On these conditions, as honourable to them as burdensom to the King, was the League renewed *Anno* 1522. since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Countrey are to be of the *French* Kings Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Court, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not so ingross the Market, though they raised the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their money: the Kings of *Spain* and other bidding fair for them, but never going so high as the *French* had done. At last, upon the differences which grew amongst themselves in point of *Religion*, they grew to be divided also in point of *Pension*: the *Popish Cantons* taking pensions of the Pope, and the King of *Spain*; the *Protestants* of the *French*; the *mixt* of both; and all of the *Venetians*. By which means, being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be trusted of none. Which sudden sinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reasons of it; that notable Statesman and Historian *Guicciardine* doth describe as followeth: "The name "(saith he) of this wilde and uncivil Nation hath got great honour by their concord, and glory by "Arms. For being fierce by nature, inured to war, and exact keepers of Military discipline, they have not "only defended their own Countrey, but have won much praise in forein parts: which doubtlesse had "been greater, if they had sought to inlarge their own Empire, and not for wages to inlarge the Em-"pire of others; and if nobly they had propounded unto themselves any other ends, than the gain of "money, by the love whereof being made abject, they have lost the opportunity of becoming fearful "to *Italy*. For since they never came out of their confines, but as *mercenary* men, they have had no "publick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetousness have become intolerable in their exactions "where they overcame, and in their demands with other men; yea, at home froward and obstinate in "their conclusions, as well as in following their commands under whose pay they serve in War. Their "chief men have pensions of several Princes to favour them in their publick meetings: and so private "profit being preferred before the good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at dis-"cord amongst themselves, with great lessening of the reputation which they had gotten amongst "strangers. So he, relating the affairs of the year 1511. which the following issue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the *Government* of this State, it is meerly *popular*, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Councel: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in those long Wars which were betwixt them and their *Vassals*, justly provoked by those intolerable pressures and exactions which they laid upon them; or else worn out of memory and observation, for want of sway and suffrage in the Councels of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffehausen*, *Basil* and *Zurich*, are some Gentry left, not capable of any place or *suffrage* in the *Senate* of the said *Cantons* (from which they are excluded by the Common people, because they joyned not with them in their first revolt) unless they wave their *Gentry*, and be enrolled amongst the number of *Plebeians*. The rest they have (it seemeth) in so poor esteem,

eſteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meaneſt Trades, in all occaſions of War are numbred with, and amongſt theſe *Gentlemen*; making up one ſociety only, and joyning with them in electing the *Maſter of their Company*, who is one of the Senate. But becauſe that every *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatneſs, or in the number of its ſeverall *Reſorts*, or ſub-diviſions; it will not be amiſſe to ſhew what number of *Reſorts* are in every *Canton*: that is to ſay, in *Underwalden* only two, in *Switz* ſix, in *Uren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* ſix, in *Lucern* ſeven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* but one apiece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themſelves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one hundred forty and eight. Of theſe conſiſts the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrate, choſen by the commonalty of that *Canton* (whom they call the *Wuaman*) together with a ſtanding Councel aſſiſtant to him, choſen out of the people, for the directing and diſpoſing of their own affairs; which meet and ſit in the chief Town or Village of that *Diſtrict*. But if the cauſe concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* ſendeth one or more Commiſſioners to the general *Diets*; where they determine of the buſineſs which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Votes*: the Commiſſioners of every *Canton* having one Vote only, though many may be ſent from each, to adde the greater weight to their conſultations. The place of meeting is moſt commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in reſpect of the commodity of the Inns and houſes, the pleaſant ſituation and famous *Medicinal Bathes*: and becauſe it is ſeated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and ſubject to the eight firſt *Cantons*. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of ſending, receiving, and anſwering Ambaſſadors; of Governments, and diſtributing the publick Offices; and finally of difficult cauſes and Appeals, referred unto the judgement of the *great Councel*. In which the City *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the firſt place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old cuſtom hath the greateſt authority of calling together this *great Councel*, ſignifying by letters to each *Canton*, the cauſe, time, and place of meeting: yet ſo, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commiſſioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the ſame. That which the greater number do reſolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of theſe *Suiſſe* conſiſt altogether of Foot, Horſe being found unſerviceable in this Mountainous Countrey. And of theſe Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raiſe ſixſcore thouſand. Which poſſibly may be true enough, if it be underſtood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwiſe *de facto*, the greateſt Army that ever they brought into the field, conſiſted but of one and thirty thouſand men, which was that wherewith they aided the confederate States of *Italie* againſt the *French*, and reſtored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedome of *Millain*. Their ordinary ſtanding Forces are conceived to be ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand, which they may bring into the field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furniſhed. And for their *Revenue*, it is not like to be very great, conſidering the poverty of their Countrey, and their want of traffick with other Nations. That which is *ordinary* and in common, ariſeth out of the Annual penſions which they receive from Forein States; the profits ariſing out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Præfectures, the Impoſt laid on Wines ſold in Taverns, and Corn uſed by Bakers; and the Rents of a diſſolved Monaſtery called *Kings field* (or *Conings field*) becauſe many Kings and Queens have been cloyſtered there, amounting to forty thouſand Guldens yearly. Which Monaſtery was built in the year 1380, in memory and honour of the Emperour *Albertus*, ſlain by his Nephew at *Spantback* not far from *Baſil*. Their *extraordinary* doth conſiſt of ſpoyls that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* only, the reſt can claim no ſhare in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themſelves. For otherwiſe taking in the *Confederate* States, as well without as within the bounds of that Countrey, they are able to raiſe fifty or threeſcore thouſand men: that is to ſay, the *Switzers* themſelves ſeventeen thouſand men, the *Griſons* ten thouſand, thoſe of *Walliſland* ſix thouſand, the Abbot and Town of S. *Gall* four thouſand, the City of *Geneva* two thouſand; beſides what *Rotwell* and *Mulhuſen*, two *Imperiall* Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their antient Leagues to aid them with ſix hundred Horſes at his own charges; beſides two thouſand ſix hundred Crowns in Annual penſions. But the *Revenue* of thoſe States is ordered by it ſelf apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unleſs it be on the repulſing of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which caſe, and others of a general *intereſſe*, they communicate both heads and purſes: the Delegates and Commiſſioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to conſult of the common cauſe, which meeting they entitle the *greateſt Councel*. But this is very ſeldome held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commiſſioners of the *Switzers* only: though they themſelves diſclaim that name of *Switzers* as too mean and narrow, and call themſelves *Eidienoſſen*, that is to ſay, *Partakers of the ſworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in *Simler*, who purpoſely and punctually hath deſcribed the ſame.

Griſons.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THe Countrey of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Atheſis*, and *Adua*: being bounded on the Eaſt, with the Countrey of *Tirol*; on the Weſt, with *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Countrey far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having leſs natural commodities to boaſt it ſelf of, more than the Fountains of thoſe Rivers before mentioned.

The people of it by moſt *Latin* Writers of theſe times, are called by the name of *Rhæti*, the Countrey *Rhætia*: and ſo far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rhæti* did inhabit all the lands poſſeſſed by the *Griſons*: though the *Griſons* do not inhabit a fourth part of thoſe lands, which were poſſeſſed heretofore by the ancient *Rhæti*: For anciently the *Rhæti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italie*, to the River of *Danow*; comprehending beſides this of the *Griſons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and ſo much alſo of the *Switzers* as was not in poſſeſſion of the old *Helvetii*. Within which tract there were not only many rich valleys and fruitful fields; but a moſt pleaſant race of Wines called *Vina Rhætica*, much drank of by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Countrey. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, mountainous fields, which the continuall ſnow made look of an hoary hue: and by alluſion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the preſent by the name of *Graunpuntner*, that is to ſay, the hoary or *gray Confederates*.

As for the *Rhæti*, take them in the former latitude, they were ſubdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius* the ſons-in-law, and adopted children of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *A. V. C.* 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, *viz.* *Rhætia prima*, and *Rhætia ſecunda*, both of them appertaining by *Conſtantines* new model, to the *Dioceſe* of *Italie*. A Nation in the firſt original, of *Italian* race, and ſo more properly to be aſſigned to that *Dioceſe*; but had inhabited this tract, from the time that *Belloveſus* the *Gall* ſeiſed on part of *Tuſcany*, expelling thence the ancient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhætus*, a great man amongſt them, poſſeſſed themſelves of theſe mountains, and afterwards of the vales adjoyning, which they called *Rhætia*, by the name of their Captain General. This hapned in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, in the firſt cradle as it were of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* the third, and *Anaſtaſius*, thoſe parts which lay neareſt unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were ſubdued by the *Almains*, and *Boiarians*; by them incorporated with the reſt of their ſeveral States. The reſidue of this mountainous tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire; till given by *Charles* the Great to the Biſhop of *Chur*; whoſe ſucceſſors, being ſeveral waies moleſted by their potent neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual aid and preſervation, *Anno* 1497. By whoſe aid they ſo valiantly made good their ground againſt the *Auſtrians*, that at the laſt, after the loſs of 20000 men on both ſides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the ſubſtance of this ſtory, as to former times; to which there cannot much be added in the way of *Hiſtory*; little or no alteration hapning in their affairs, but a more perfect ſetling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we muſt obſerve that this whole Tract is caſt into three *Diviſions*; that is to ſay, the *Upper League* or *Liga Griſa*; 2 *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the houſe of God; 3 The *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eight *Italian Præfectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three firſt being cold and mountainous, are of free-ſtone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with ſnow: the windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the ſaid three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of glaſs, and preſently ſhut it cloſe again; the outſide of the windowes having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their ſtowes from going out, or any cold from comming in. And as for travelling, the waies are for the moſt part unſafe and dangerous, by reaſon of the ſtraight paſſages, dreadful precipices, and thoſe almoſt continuall bridges which hang over the terrible falls, and *Cataracts* of the River *Rhene*, deſcending with great violence from the higheſt mountains: huge hils of ſnow tumbling into the valleys, with a noiſe as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the higheſt and moſt mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italie*, having therein thoſe vaſt mountains of *Locknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two ſtreams of the *Rhene* have their firſt original. By the *French* it is called *Liga Griſe*, or the *Gray League* (the word *Gris*, or *Griſe*, in that language, being *Gray* in ours) in the ſame ſenſe as the *Dutch* call it *Graunpuntner*, that is, *Confœderati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Griſle-pates*: either becauſe the mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of *hoary Iſicles*, or from the heads of this people, *Gray* before their time. It conſiſteth of nineteen *Reſorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages; of which four only ſpeak the *Dutch*, all the reſt a corrupt *Italian*: and was the firſt which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Griſons* came unto the reſt, who after joyned with them in the ſame con-

confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1 *Ilanter*, the place ſometimes of the *General Diets* for theſe *Leagues*. 2 *Diſentis*, where is a very rich Monaſtery. 3 Saint *Bernardino*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4 *Maſox*, ſometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley of *Maſoxer-tal*. 5 *Galanckter*, whence the vale ſo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6 *Ruffla*, ſituate on the River *Mueſa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italie*. *Griſons.*

2 The ſecond *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the houſe of God*, ſo called becauſe it was the proper *Patrimony* of the Biſhop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *middle League*, as being ſituate between the *Upper League* on the Weſt, and the *Lower League* upon the Eaſt. It is the greateſt of the three, containing twenty one *Reſorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this ſide the tops of the Mountains, towards *Germany*, the reſt towards *Italie*: and yet two only ſpeak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of moſt note are, 1 *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated amongſt high and inacceſſible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2 *Mur* (called *Murus* by the ſame *Antoninus*) in the valley of *Bergel*; a valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian* Præfectures. 3 *Stalla*, called *Bevio* by the *Italians*, becauſe the way doth in that place divide it ſelf. 4 S. *Jacomo* (in the valley of *Compoltſchin*) called *Travaſede* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Sinnada*, in the valley of *Engadin*. And 6 *Chur*, by ſome *Ccira*, but more truly *Curia*, ſo called from the long ſtay that *Conſtantine* the *great* made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended againſt the *Germans*; built afterwards by ſome part of his forces which continued here, *Anno* 357. about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two ſtreams of the *Rhene*; in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themſelves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill, in one corner of which ſtandeth the *Cloſe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a ſtately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives who have ſeen no fairer, than it is with ſtrangers: and near the Church, the Biſhops Palace, and the Houſes of the *Canons*, all well built, and handſomly adorned. The Biſhop of this City, and of all the Countrey of theſe *Leagues* (for they received their *Biſhop* and the *Faith* together, *Anno* 489) acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole League: but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themſelves from their obedience to the Biſhop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free-ſtate*. So far conformable to him, for their own preſervation, that as the Biſhop and his Canons, with the reſt of this *League*, upon occaſion of the wrongs done them by the houſe of *Auſtria*, Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in confederacy with the ſeven firſt *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498): So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themſelves from the command of their Biſhops, concur with them at laſt in that mutuall *League*.

3 The third *League* of theſe *Griſons*, is the *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*; ſituate cloſe upon *Tirol*, in the North-eaſt part of the whole Countrey. Of all the ten, two only, which are thoſe of *Malans* and *Meienfeld*, obey the joynt commands of the three Leagues of the *Griſons*: the other eight being ſubject to the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, under whom they are ſuffered to enjoy their ancient priviledges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, *Anno* 1436: conditioning their mutual defence againſt all Enemies, preſervation of their peace, and maintenance of their priviledges; reſerving notwithſtanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which reſpect, and by reaſon of the intereſs and ſociety which they have with the reſt of the *Griſons*, they are in friendſhip with the *Swiſſe*, but in no confederacy. City or Walled-town they have none. The chief of thoſe they have, are 1 *Caſtels*, the ſeat of the Governor for the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*. 2 *Malans*, and 3 *Meienfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4 *Tanaas*, giving name to the firſt and greateſt of the ten Juriſdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the ſame; and where are kept Muniments and Records which concern their Priviledges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhætico-mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, becauſe it is at the end of the valley which the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4 As for the *Italian Præfectures*, they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Griſons* by *Maximilian Sforze* Duke of *Millain*, *Anno* 1513. at ſuch time as he gave the like preſent to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of theſe the firſt is called *Plurs*, ſo called from the chief Town of the ſame name, in Latin *Plura*, once ſeated in a plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of ſundry villages lying in the ſame bottome; now nothing but a deep and bottomleſs Gulf. For on the 26 of *Auguſt* 1617. an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, and left no ſign or ruin of a Town there ſtanding; but in the place thereof a great Lake of ſome two miles length. 2 *Chiarama*, ſituate in a pleaſant vally ſo called, near the River *Maira*, and ten *Italian* miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch Clevener-tal*, or the valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the ancient name. 3 The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Telina* in the *Latine*, a pleaſant Valley, extending threeſcore miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently tranſported on this ſide the *Alpes*. It is divided into ſix Præfectures, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof are 1 *Bormio*, ſeated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2 *Teio*, the chief Fortreſs of the whole Valley. 3 *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the ſeat of the Governor, or Lieutenant General of the whole Countrey. This Valley lying opportunely for the paſſage of the King of *Spains* Forces, out of *Millain* into

Grisons. *Germany*, by the practices and treasons of *Rodolfus Planta*, one of the natives of it, and of the *Romish* Religion; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governor of *Millain*, *Anno* 1622. the whole Countrey brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* setled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyard*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Grisons* re-estated in their just possessions, *Anno* 1630. save that the *Spaniard* still holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be.

Such is the state of the *three Leagues*, considered severally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Common-wealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *general Diet*, once in every year, consisting of threescore and three Commissioners: that is to say, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the house of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Jurisdictions*. These have authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common Præfectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Ambassies, and Lawes, which concern the publick: yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to Appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority, if need be, to reverse the sentence; the causes being severally proposed, and passed by the major part of voyces. The Government of each League, *popular*, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces
Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.
Universities 4.
i. e.
1 *Turin.* 2 *Geneva.* 3 *Basil.* 4 *Zurich.*

OF

OF

FRANCE.

HAving thus croſſed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently diſpoſe our ſelves for *France* or *Germany*. But we will follow the courſe and fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which firſt paſſed into *France*, before it medled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain*, and *Britain*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater diſtance.

FRANCE then according to the preſent dimenſions of it, is bounded on the Eaſt with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as alſo with the Countreys of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*; on the Weſt with the *Aquitain Ocean*, and a branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North with the *Engliſh* Ocean, and ſome parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the reſt of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it is almoſt ſquare, each ſide of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 miles in length. But they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* miles, the breadth 570 only, the whole *Circumference* to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the fifth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 15 hours, and the middle *Parallel* of the eighth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this preſent name of *France* from the *Franci* or *Frankes*, a people of *Germany*, who ſeized upon thoſe parts of it which lay neareſt to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third; and having afterwards ſubdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-royal of their growing Empire, they cauſed the Countrey thereabouts to be called *France*. Which name, as they enlarged their borders, they impoſed on, or communicated rather to the reſt of this Countrey; and to thoſe parts of *Germany* alſo which were conquered by them. At which time, for diſtinction ſake, they called the Eaſt parts of their whole Empire by the name of *Ooſten-reich* or *Auſtraſia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is ſubject to the King of *Spain*: and for the Weſt parts thereof, they had the name of *Weſten-reich*, or *Weſtraſia* (in the barbarous *Latin* of that Age) *Weſt France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the name of *France* was at laſt appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently it was called *Gallia*, and the people *Galli*, and by that name occurs moſt commonly in the Writers of the *Roman* ſtory; and *Gallia Tranſalpina*, becauſe ſituate on the further ſide of the *Alpes* from *Italie*, to difference it from the Countrey of thoſe *Gauls*, which being planted in thoſe parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Ciſalpina*. Sometimes it was called *Galatia* alſo, and by that name known amongſt the *Greeks*: by *Ptolemy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatian* of the *Celtæ*, a potent nation of old *Gaul*; to diſtinguiſh it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Aſia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians* or *Gauls* of this Countrey. Whence it became ſo named is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word Γάλα, (*Gala*) ſignifying milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebat*, for the milky and white complexion of the people, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans* who firſt impoſed it. Others, and amongſt them *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a ſon of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was ſometimes in this Countrey, is affirmed alſo by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further addes, That after he had ſuppreſſed thoſe Tyrants which oppreſſed the People, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eos, partes quibus imperitabant nominibus ſuis appellaſſe. Lib. XL.* Who gave their own names to thoſe parts over which they ruled. But in another place acknowledging that the *Grecians* call this People *Galatæ* (*ita enim* Gallos *ſermo* Græcus *appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the ſearch of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines* or firſt Inhabitants hereof, called themſelves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured. *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas*, and *Galatæ* from the name of his Mother *Galata*: who probably enough might be a daughter of *Hercules*, miſtook by *Diodorus* for one of his ſons.

Of the Original of this People more anon. In the mean time we may take ſo much notice of the ancient *Gaul*, as to affirm him (out of *Cæſar* and other Authors) to be quick witted, of a ſudden and nimble apprehenſion, but withall very raſh and hare-braind, (*ut ſunt ſubita* Gallorum *ingenia*, is a note ſet upon them by the pen of *Cæſar*:) ſo full of Law-ſuites and contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted

work. *Gallia Cauſidicos*, &c. this Poet hath it: of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well Military as Civil; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and preſently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, ſecundus minor quam fœminarum*, was a part alſo of their Character in the time of *Florus* the Hiſtorian. And though the preſent *French* be generally of another Original; yet there is ſo much of the old *Gaul* ſtill left among them, either by the Impreſſion of the Heavenly Bodies, or by inter-mariages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them, that all theſe qualities are ſtill predominant in the *French*, not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Compariſon, homely I muſt confeſs, but to the life expreſſing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spaniſh*, in matters of War. The *French* is ſaid to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Countrey, and ſoon leaping out of it, as was the Expedition of *Charles* the eighth into *Italie*. The *Dutch* is ſaid to be like a *Lonſe*, ſlowly maſtering a place, and as ſlowly (yet at laſt) driven out of their hold, as was their taking and loſing of *Oſtend*, and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is ſaid to be like a *Crab* or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is ſo rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of violence can fetch him out again. In which I think I need not inſtance, it being generally obſerved, that the *Spaniards* will endure all poſſible hardſhip, before they will part with any thing that they are poſſeſſed of. It is uſed alſo for a By-word, *that the* Italian *is wiſe before-hand, the* Dutch *in the time of action, and the* French *after it is done*; a wiſdome much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they leſs Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: Inſomuch as it is thought that there are more Law-ſuites tryed among them in ſeven years, than have been in *England* from the Conqueſt till the time of King *James*. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of *Religion*, as appeareth by the ſtory of a *Gentleman* lying ſick on his death-bed; who when the Prieſt had perſwaded him that the *Sacrament of the Altar* was the very Body and Bloud of CHRIST, refuſed to *eat thereof becauſe it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the ſame extremity, who ſeeing the *Hoſt* (for ſo they call the Conſecrated Elements) brought unto him by a lubberly Prieſt, ſaid that CHRIST *came to him, as he entred into* Hieruſalem, *riding upon an Aſſe*. As for the Women, they are ſaid to be witty, but Apiſh, wanton, and incontinent: where a man at his firſt entrance may finde acquaintance, and at his firſt acquaintance may finde an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View of France*, deſcribeth them. But I have ſince heard this *Cenſure* condemned of ſome uncharitableneſs, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all thoſe graces which may beautifie and adorn that Sex. And it is poſſible enough that it may be ſo in ſome particulars, though it be more than any man would gueſſe at, that cometh amongſt them. For generally at the firſt ſight, you ſhall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are ſo full of Chat and Tattle, even with thoſe they know not, as if they were reſolved ſooner to want breath than words, and never to be ſilent but in the Grave.

As to the perſons of this People, they are commonly of a middle ſtature, and for the moſt part of a ſlight making; their complexion being generally hot and moiſt, which makes them very ſubject to the heats of luſt, and eaſily inclinable unto thoſe diſeaſes which are concomitants thereof. Their conſtitution ſomewhat tender, if not delicate, which rendreth them impatient of Toil and labour; and is in part the cauſe of thoſe ill ſucceſſes which have hapned to them in the Wars; in which they have loſt as much for want of conſtancy, and perſeverance in their enterpriſes, as they have gained by their Courage in the undertaking. And for the *Women*, they are for the moſt part very perſonable, of ſtraight bodies, ſlender waſts, and a fit *Symmetry* of proportion in all the reſt; their hands white, long, and ſlender, and eaſily diſcernable to be ſo; for either they wear no *Gloves* at all, or elſe ſo ſhort, as if they were cut off at the hand-wriſt. To theſe the *Complexion* of their faces, and the colour of their hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true *Decorum*. 'Tis true the Poets commend *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily; *Leda fuit* nigris *conſpicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was ſpecially, becauſe it ſet off with the greater luſtre, the amiable ſweetneſs of her *Complexion*: For in that caſe the Hair doth ſet forth the Face, as ſhadows commonly do a picture; and the Face ſo becometh the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*, which kinde of Coat our *Critical Heralds*, call the *moſt fair*. But when a Black hair meets with a Brown or ſwarthy Complexion, it fals ſhort of that attractiveneſs of beauty, which *Ovid* being ſo great a *Crafts-maſter* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Leda*.

The chief exerciſes they uſe, are 1 *Tennis*; every Village having a Tennis-court, *Orleans* 60. *Paris* many hundreds. 2 *Dancing*, a ſport to which they are ſo generally affected, that were it not ſo much enveighed againſt by their ſtrait-laced *Miniſters*, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholicks* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For ſo extremely are they bent upon this diſport, that neither Age nor Sickneſs, no nor poverty it ſelf, can make them keep their heels ſtill, when they hear the Muſick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their rags hang ſo looſe about them, that one would think a ſwift *Galliard* might ſhake them into their nakedneſs, will to the *Dancing Green* howſoever, and be there as eager at the ſport, as if they had left their ſeveral infirmities and wants behinde them. What makes their *Miniſters* (and indeed all that follow the *Genevian Diſcipline*) enveigh ſo bitterly againſt *Dancing*, and puniſh it with ſuch ſeverity when they finde it uſed; I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this diſcourſe. But being it is a *Recreation* which this people are ſo given unto, and ſuch a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of company, and before many witneſſes and ſpectators of their carriage in it; I muſt needs think the *Miniſters* of the *French* Church more nice than wiſe, if they chooſe rather to deter men from their *Congregations* by ſo ſtrict a *Stoiciſm*, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural *gaiety* of this people, in matters not *offenſive*, but by *accident* only.

The Language of this people is very voluble and pleaſant, but rather *Elegant* than *Copious*, and there-

therefore much troubled for want of words to find out *Periphraſes*; beſides that very much of is expreſſed in the action; the head and ſhoulders move as *ſignificantly* toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to ſpeak with any good grace, muſt have ſomewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, conſequently a great help to the *French* humor of Scoffing: and ſo naturally diſpoſed for Courtſhip, as makes all the people complementall; the pooreſt Cobler in the Pariſh hath his *Court-cringes*, and his *Eau beniſte de Cour*, his *Court-holy-water* (as they call it) as perfectly as the beſt *Gentleman-Huiſher* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the *Language of the* Spaniards *is ſaid to be Manly, the* Italian *Courtly, and the* French *Amorous*. A ſweet language it is without queſtion, the people leaving out in their pronunciation many of their *Conſonants*, and thereby giving occaſion to this By-word, that *the Frenchman pronounceth not as he writes, ſingeth not as he pricketh, nor ſpeaks as he thinketh*. In the Originall thereof it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues: the old *Gallick* being queſtionleſs the ſame with the *Welſh* or *Britiſh*, as appeareth clearly by theſe reaſons. 1 The *Latin* words are known to have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words at the coming in of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*; but of the *Welch* words which they have, we can give no reaſon, but that they are the remainder of their antient Language; of which *Welch* words which ſtill continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2 It is ſaid by *Tacitus* that the *Britans* were the Deſcendants of the *Gauls*, and this he proveth as by other Arguments, ſo from the identity or neer reſemblance of the Language which both Nations ſpeak. *Utriuſque ſermo haud multum diverſus*, as his own words are. And 3 it is ſaid by *Cæſar*, That the *Gauls* uſed to paſſe into *Britain*, to be inſtructed in the Rites and learning of the *Druides*; which ſheweth that both People ſpake but one common tongue, there being in thoſe times no one learned Language, which other Nations ſtudyed beſides their own.

The Soyl is extraordinary fruitfull, and hath three Load-ſtones to draw riches out of other Countreys, Corn, Wine, and Salt; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000 *li.* Sterling, the cuſtome of Salt only to the King being eſtimated at 700000 Crowns *per annum*. And indeed the benefit ariſing on this one commodity is almoſt incredible, it being conſtituted by the Kings Edict (which is all in all) that no man ſhall have any Salt for Domeſtick uſes (except by ſpeciall priviledge, and that dearly paid for) but what he muſt buy of the Kings Officers, and that upon ſuch prices too as they pleaſe to ſell it. Nor can it but be very well ſtored with *Fiſh*; for beſides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are ſaid to be 135000. Their other Merchandiſes are Beeves, Hogs, Nuts, Woad, Skinnes, vaſt quantities of all ſorts of Linnen. And to ſay truth, there are not many Countreys in the Chriſtian World, to which Nature hath been ſo prodigall of her choiceſt bleſſings, as ſhe hath to this; the fields thereof being large and open, and thoſe ſo intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every hedge-row ſo beſet with choice of fruits, that never any covetous or curious eye had a fairer object. And yet ſo miſerable is the condition of the common Paiſant, partly by reaſon of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King, and partly by thoſe great, but uncertain Rents which are ſet upon him by his *Landlord* (for the poor Husbandman is *Tenant* only at the *will of his Lord*) that there is many one amongſt them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, or eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was planted firſt amongſt the *Gauls*, by ſome of St. *Peters* Diſciples, ſent hither by him at his firſt coming to *Rome*: *Xyſtus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the firſt Biſhops of *Rhemes*, *Perigort*, and *Mants*, (*Cenomanenſium* in the *Latine*) being ſaid to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on ſurer grounds) of *Trophimus* the firſt Biſhop of *Arles*. For on a controverſie betwixt the Arch-biſhops of *Vienna*, and *Arles*, for the dignity of *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo* the firſt; it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Biſhop of *Arles*, *quod prima inter Gallias*, *&c.* That *Arles* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did firſt obtain the happineſs of having *Trophimus*, ordained Biſhop thereof by the hands of St. *Peter*. Nor is St. *Paul* to be denyed the honour, of ſending ſome of his Diſciples thither alſo to preach the Goſpel: *Creſcens* ſent by him, as he telleth us 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the firſt Biſhop of *Vienna*, ſpoken of before; as not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennenſis*, an antient Writer of that Church, doth expreſly ſay. And that it was into this Countrey, that he ſent that *Creſcens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia*, in *Aſia minor*; the teſtimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret* which affirm the ſame, and that which hath been ſaid before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm ſufficiently. But *Chriſtianity* being deſtroyed by the *French* at their firſt coming hither, was again planted by the induſtry of S. *Remigius* the firſt Biſhop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis* or *Clodivæus* the fifth King of the *French*, giving way unto it for his Wives ſake, who was zealous in it; and after taking on himſelf that holy calling, on a great victory which he won againſt the *Almains*: By whom being overlaid in the day of battel, he made his prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Crotilda* worſhipped; vowing to be of that *Religion* if he gat the victory; which vow he had no ſooner made (as the ſtory telleth us) but *Alemannos invaſit timor*, a ſudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerours.

At this time they are divided in *Religion*, as in other places; ſome following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, and others that of thoſe *Reformed Churches*, which adhere to *Calvin*. But this diviſion is more antient than *Calvin*'s dayes; the ſame opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romiſh* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenſes*, the *Waldenſes*, or *Pauperes de Lugduno* (the *Vaudoys*, as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, that the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* firſt preached againſt the ſuperſtitions of the Maſs, and the worſhip of Images, and *Calvin*

tra-

travelled in advancing the *Reformation*; though much ſuppreſſed as to the outward profeſſion of it. But being revived by their endeavours, it ſprung out again, and ſpread it ſelf ſo ſpeedily in this Kingdome; that there were reckoned in the year 1560. above 1250 Churches of them; which cannot in ſuch a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though ſcarce any of them have ſcaped ſome *maſſacre* or other. Of theſe *maſſacres*, two are moſt memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindoll* and *Chabriers*, as being the firſt, and the maſſacre at *Paris*, as being the greateſt. That of *Merindoll* hapned in the year 1545. The inſtrument of it, being *Minier*, the Preſident of the Councell of *Aix*. For having condemned this poor people of *hereſie*, he muſtered a ſmall Army, and ſet fire on the Villages. They of *Merindol*, ſeeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the woods; but were there butchered, or ſent to the Gallies. One boy they took, placed him againſt a tree, and ſhot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themſelves in a Cave, were in part ſtifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers* they ſo inhumanely dealt with the young wives and maids, that moſt of them dyed immediately after. The men and women were put to the Sword; the children were *rebaptized*; 800 men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 women put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea ſuch was the cruelty of theſe Souldiers to theſe poor women, that when ſome of them had clambred to the top of the houſe, with an intent to leap down, the Souldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The *Maſſacre* of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the *Proteſtants*; for the aſſurance whereof, a mariage was ſolemnized, between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the *Proteſtant* party, and the Lady *Marguerite* the Kings ſiſter. At this Wedding there aſſembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admirall *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not ſo much wine drank, as Blood ſhed at it. At midnight the Watch-bell rung, the King of *Navarre*, and the Prince of *Conde* are taken Priſoners, the Admiral murdered in his bed; and 30000 at the leaſt of the greateſt and moſt potent men of the *Religion*, ſent by the way of this *Red Sea* to find the neereſt paſſage to the Land of *Canaan*, *An.* 1572. Yet notwithſtanding theſe *Maſſacres*, and the long and frequent Wars which were made againſt them by their Kings, they grew ſo numerous, and got unto ſo great a power; that partly by *Capitulations* with the *French* Kings at the end of every *Civil War*, but principally by the connivence of K. *Henry* the fourth, who was ſometimes the *Head* of their party, they had gotten above three hundred walled Towns and Garriſons; and were abſolute maſters in effect of all thoſe Provinces which lie along the *Aquitain* ſhoare, and the *Pyrenees*, from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River of *Loyre*. But being grown too inſolent by reaſon of ſo great a ſtrength, and ſtanding upon terms with the King as a *Free Eſtate* (the *Common-wealth of Rochell*, as King *Henry* the fourth was uſed to call it) they drew upon themſelves the jealouſie and fury of King *Lewis* the thirteenth. Who ſeeing that he could not otherwiſe diſſolve the knot of their combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at laſt: And was ſo fortunate in the ſucceſs of his Undertakings, that in two years (*viz.* *An.* 1621. 1622.) he ſtripped them of all their walled Towns, except *Montalban*, and *Rochel* only; and thoſe two he reduced not long after by the power of his Arms: Leaving them nothing to relie on for their future ſecurity, but the grace and clemency of their King, promerited by their obedience and integrity. And it hath ſped ſo well with them ſince that time, that they never had the exerciſe of their *Religion* with ſo much freedome, as they have hitherto enjoyed, ſince the reducing of their Forts and Garriſons to the Kings obedience.

The other Party in *Religion*, having the Countenance of the *State*, and the preſcription and poſſeſſion of ſo many yeers to confirme the ſame, is in as proſperous a condition both for *power* and *patrimony*, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*. In point of *Patrimony*, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythes and Temporall Revenues of the *Clergy*, beſides proviſions of all ſorts, to 80 millions of Crowns; but this Accompt is diſallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth, from the mouth of *Monſieur Alemant*, one of the *Preſidents* of *Accompts* in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* money; and he himſelf conceiveth that they poſſeſſe ſeven parts of twelve, of the whole revenues of that Kingdome. The Book entituled *Comment d' Eſtat* gives a lower eſtimate: and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 millions of *Arpens* (which is a meaſure ſomewhat bigger than our *Acre*) aſſigneth 47 millions, which is neer a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallican Clergy*. And then it is reſolved by all, That the *Baiſemain*, (as they call it) which conſiſts of Offerings, Churchings, Burialls, *Dirigies*, and ſuch like Caſualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their ſtanding Rents: Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computeth their *Revenue* at ſix millions yearly. And to ſay truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdome, 13 Arch-biſhops, 104 Biſhops, 1450 Abbies, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friers, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta*; beſides the Colledges of the *Jeſuits*, which being of a late foundation are not here accompted. And for the *Pariſh-Prieſts*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all ſorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all thoſe of inferior Orders, which have ſome Miniſtery in their Churches: the number of which was reckoned in the time of King *Lewis* the 11th. to be little leſſe than 100000. But then 'tis like that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that Accompt; or elſe the *Hugenots* in the Wars, have deſtroyed more Churches, than they are like to build again in haſt; there being found in *France* on a juſt Accompt, no more than 27400 Pariſh Churches, beſides *Oratories* and *Chappels of Eaſe* appertaining to them. In which, there are ſuppoſed to live 15 millions of people, whereof the *Clergy* and the Miniſters depending on them do make up up three millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their *power*, the *Gallican Clergy* ſtands more ſtoutly to their naturall rights, againſt the uſurpations and encroachments of the ſee of *Rome*, than any other that live under the Popes Authority: which they acknowledge ſo far only as is conſiſtent with their own priviledges, and the rights of their Soveraign. For neither did they in long time ſubmit to the Decrees of the Councell of *Trent*; nor have they

they yet admitted of the *Inquiſition*; nor yeeld ſuch ſtore of Griſt to the Popes Mill, as probably might redound to him from ſo rich a Clergy. And for his *Temporall power* over Kings and Princes, it is a doctrine ſo averſe from the Poſitions and Principles of the *Gallican Church*; that in the year 1610. the Divines of *Paris* publiſhed a *Declaration*, in which it was affirmed, That the doctrine of the *Popes Supremacy* was an Erroneous doctrine, and the ground of that helliſh poſition of depoſing and killing Kings. And this indeed hath conſtantly been the Doctrine of the *Gallican Church*, ſince the time of *Gerſon*, maintaining the Authority of a Councell above that of the Pope.

But to proceed. The men moſt eminent for learning of either ſide have been (beſides thoſe mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence by the pen of *Balſac*; *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine, *Chamier* the Controverſer, and *Philip de Morney Lord* of *Pleſſis*. Of the other party *Claudius Eſpencæus* a *Sorbon* Doctor, the famous Cardinall of *Peron*, *Genebrard* the Hiſtorian, *Petavius* a learned *Jeſuite*, &c. In the middle times S. *Bernard* Abbot of *Clarevalle*, *Pet. Lombard* Biſhop of *Paris*, *John Gerſon* Chancellor of that Univerſity. More antiently *Proſper* of *Aquitain*, *Caſſianus* the Hermit, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons* (though not here a Native.) And as to men of other Studies, *Auſonius* the Poet, *Hottoman* and *Gotfredus* the Civilians, *Duarenus* the Canoniſt, *Barn. Briſſonius* the great Antiquary, *Iſaac Caſaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budæus* that great Maſter of the *Greek* Language, *Thuanus* the Hiſtorian, *Laurentius* the Anatomiſt, &c. And as for Military men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, *Charles Martell* that ſtout Champion of the Church againſt the *Saracens*; and *Charles* the great, the Founder of the Weſtern Empire: In the middle times for *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, one of the Nine Worthies (as they call them) the ſonne of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogn* in *Picardy*; and in theſe later dayes for King *Henry* the 4th. *Francis* and *Henry* Dukes of *Guiſe*, *Charls* Duke of *Mayenne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdome are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleaſure; or *Fundamentall*, which neither King nor Parliament (as they ſay) can alter. Of this laſt ſort the principall are the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage*, the younger Sonnes of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdome with their Elder-brother; which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whoſe time we find the Children of the Kings eſtated in their ſeverall Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdomes. But by this Law they are to be entituled to ſome Dutchy or County (though they are content ſometimes with Annual penſions) with all the rights and profits thereunto belonging; all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coynage, and the like) excepted only; which upon the failing of the maſculine line, do return again unto the Crown. The name thereof derived from *Abannage*, a *German* word ſignifying a portion.

But the main Law they ſtand on is the *Salique* Law, by which the Crown of *France* may not deſcend unto the Females, or fall *from the Lance to the Diſtaff*, as their ſaying is: Which Law one undertaking to make good out of holy Writ, urged that Text of St. *Matthew*, where it is ſaid, *Mark the Lillies*, (which are the Arms of *France*) *and ſee how they neither labour nor Spin*. This they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond* the firſt King of the *French*, and that the words *Si aliqua* ſo often uſed in it, gave it the name of the *Salique* Law. But *Haillan* one of their beſt Writers affirms, That it was never heard of in *France* till the time of *Philip* the *Long*, *An.* 1315. and that it could not poſſibly be made by *Pharamond*, who though he was the firſt King of the *French*, had not one Foot of Land in *France*; *Clodion* the ſonne of *Pharamond* being the firſt of the *French* Kings which paſſed over the *Rhene*; their third King *Merovee*, the firſt that ever fixt his ſeat in the modern *France*. Others ſay it was made by *Charles* the Great, after the Conqueſt of *Germany*: where the incontinent lives of the Women living about the River *Sala* (in the modern *Miſnia*) gave both the occaſion and the name. *De terra verò* Salica, *nulla portio hæreditatis* mulieri *veniat, ſed ad* virilem *Sexum tota terræ hæreditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour*, Engliſheth *Knights Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux* cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Teſtament being once produced, in which the *Teſtator* had bequeathed unto his Sonne all his *Salique* Land, it was reſolved by the Court, that thereby was meant his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the ſenſe thereof muſt be, that in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military tenure, the Male Children ſhould inherit only: becauſe the Females could not perform thoſe ſervices for which thoſe Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reaſon; though in *England* we deal not ſo unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the Age of 15 years to enjoy ſuch Lands; becauſe they may then take ſuch Husbands as are able to do the King thoſe ſervices, which the Law requireth. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine ſoever indeed it be) cannot ſtand with the *French* Gloſs. For then the Crown being held of none but God, and ſo not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feife*, could not be brought within the compaſſe of the *Salique* Law, becauſe not to be counted for *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Gloſs, their own Etymology, and Originall; and let us ſee by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their ſucceſſion to the Diadem. For firſt, ſuppoſing that to be the *Salique* Land which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the modern *Miſnia*: I would fain know how it could reach unto the Kings Daughters in *France*, ſo far diſtant from it; or with what honeſty they can lay on them the like brand of incontinency, as was ſuppoſed to have been found in thoſe Women of *Germany*. And next, ſuppoſing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applyed to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor ſo much as one foot of Land on that ſide of the *Rhene*. And finally, ſuppoſing that the Law was made in ſuch generall terms, as to extend to all the Countreys, which

the

the *French* in time to come ſhould conquer, and conſequently unto *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all ſubordinate Eſtates which were holden of it. If unto all Eſtates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give ſentence in behalf of *Charles* of *Blais*, againſt *John de Montfort*, in the ſucceſſion to the Dukedome of *Bretagne*: *Charles* of *Blais* claiming by his Mother, the Neece of *Arthur* the ſecond, by his ſecond Sonne *Guy*: Whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Sonne (and the next Heir-male) of the ſaid Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedome from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutcheſſe: whoſe Daughter and Heir the Lady *Claude*, being marryed unto *Francis* the firſt, had iſſue *Henry* the ſecond, and other Children. Which *Henry*, beſides *Francis* the ſecond, *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* the third, and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without iſſue, had a Daughter named *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* marryed to *Philip* the ſecond King of *Spain*, by whom ſhe was made the mother of *Iſabella*, the late Arch-dutcheſs, and of *Katharine* the Wife of *Charles Emanuel* the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to ſay any thing of the pretenſions of the houſe of *Lorrein*, deſcending from the Lady *Claude*, the ſecond Daughter of King *Henry* the ſecond, and Siſter of *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth* Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find that the *French* ſo ſtand upon this Law, as not to think that a Succeſſion by and from the Females, is in ſome caſes their beſt Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thruſt his Maſter *Childerick* into a Monaſtery, to make good his Title to the Crown (or ſome colour for it) derived his Pedegree from *Plythilda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire* the firſt, maryed to *Anſpert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the firſt *Mayer* of the Palace of *Pepins* Family. As alſo how *Hugh Capet*, putting aſide *Charles* of *Lorrein* the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawleſs Action the more ſeemingly lawfull, drew his deſcent from ſome of the Heirs Generall of *Charles* the Great; his Mother *Adeltheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Fowler*; who was the ſonne of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis* the Daughter of the Emperour *Arnulph*, the laſt Emperour of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the houſe of *Charles*. And it is ſaid of *Lewis* the ninth, ſo renowned for ſanctity amongſt them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conſcience, till it was proved unto him that by his Grandmother, the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, he was deſcended from *Hermingrade* the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorrein*. Adde here, that this ſuppoſed *Salique Law* not only croſſeth the received Laws of all Nations elſe, which admit of Women to the Succeſſion in their Kingdomes, where the Crown deſcends in a Succeſſion: and have a great reſpect both unto their perſons and poſterities in ſuch Kingdomes alſo, where the Kings are ſaid to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*: but that even *France* it ſelf hath ſubmitted to the Imperious command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the preſent, to the Government of a *Spaniſh* Princeſs. So that it is evident that this Law by whomſoever made, and how far ſoever it extended, is of no ſuch force, but that the *Labels* of it may be eaſily cut in pieces by an *Engliſh* ſword well whetted; if there were no other bar to the title of *England*, than the authority and antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

But for my part (if it be lawfull for me to diſpute this point) I am not ſatisfied in the right of the *Engliſh* title; ſuppoſing the *Salique* Law to be of no ſuch force, as the *French* pretended; and meaſuring the ſucceſſion in the Crown of *France*, to be according to ſucceſſions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* the third ſeemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude ſucceſſion by the *Females*, as the *Engliſh* did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a Siſter of the 3 laſt Kings, which reigned ſucceſſively before *Philip* of *Valois*, againſt whom he claimed, be ſerved in courſe, before the Daughters of thoſe Kings (or the *Males* at leaſt deſcending of them) had had their turns in the ſucceſſion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren, two left iſſue, viz. *Lewis*, and *Philip*. *Lewis* ſurnamed *Hutin*, Son of *Philip* the fair, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, maryed to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which mariage iſſued all the ſucceeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Burbon*. *Philip*, the ſecond Brother, ſurnamed the *Long*, by *Joan* the Daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a Daughter named *Marguerite*, maryed to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*; from whom deſcended thoſe great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique* Law to exclude the Women and their ſons, *Charles* King of *Navarre* the ſon of Queen *Joan* and of *Philip de Eureux*, deſcended from *Lewis Hutin* the elder brother; and *Lewis de Malaine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the ſon of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the Daughter of *Philip* the *Long* the ſecond Brother; muſt have precedency of title before King *Edward* the third of *England* deſcended from a Siſter of the ſaid two Kings; their iſſue, ſeverally and reſpectively, before any claiming or deſcending from the ſaid King *Edward*. So that K. *Edward* the third had ſome other claim than what is commonly alledged for him in our *Engliſh* Hiſtories; or elſe he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive ſo wiſe a King, would not have ventured on a buſineſs of ſo great conſequence, without ſome colourable Title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore that he went upon ſome other grounds, than that of *ordinary ſucceſſion* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown, as the *eldeſt heir-male* and neereſt Kinſman to the laſt King. For being Siſters ſon to the King deceaſed, he was a degree neerer to him than either the King of *Navarre*, or the Earl of *Flanders*, who were the Grand-children of his Brethren: and having priority of either in reſpect of age, had a fair Title, before either, to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on theſe grounds King *Edward* might the rather go, becauſe he found it a *ruled caſe*, in the diſpute about the ſucceſſion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though King *Edward* the firſt meaſuring the order of ſucceſſion by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who ſhould hold it of him; gave ſentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grand-child of the eldeſt daughter of the Earl of *Huntingdon*:

yet

yet was this ſentence diſavowed, and proteſted againſt by the other *Competitors*. *Robert Bruce* Son of the ſecond Daughter of the ſaid Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree neerer to the laſt King, though deſcended from the younger Siſter, not only thought himſelf wronged in it, but had the whole *Scottiſh* Nation for him to aſſert his right: by whoſe unanimous conſent his ſon was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. *Proximity* in blood to the King deceaſed, was meaſured by neerneſs of degrees, not deſcent of birth; and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly poſſeſſed himſelf of the Crown of *Scotland*; ſo on the ſame, though different from the Laws of *Caſtile*, did *Philip* the ſecond ground his claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being eldeſt ſon of *Mary*, the Siſter of *Henry* the laſt King (and this was juſt King *Edwards* caſe to the Crown of *France*) he thought himſelf to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the Daughters of *Edward* the ſaid Kings Brother; becauſe the eldeſt Male of the Royal blood, and neerer to the ſaid King *Henry* by one degree. In the purſuance of which title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Caſtile*: ſo in like caſe, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to King *Edward*, than the Lawes of *England*. In claims to Crowns, the Rules of *Regall Succeſſion* differ in many Countreys; and in few Countreys are the ſame with that of the Succeſſion into mean Eſtates: as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*; as in the Caſe of *Parceners*, the *whole blood*, (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure by courteſie*, and ſome others; were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; whether the *Salique* Law were in force or not, it made not much unto the prejudice of King *Edward* the third; though it ſerved *Philip* the *Long* to exclude the Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles* the *fair* to do the like with the Daughter of *Philip*; as it did *Philip* of *Valoys*, to diſpoſſeſs the whole Linage of King *Philip le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique* Law to be a great happineſs to the *French* Nation, not ſo much in relation to the unfitneſs of Women to Govern (for therein ſome of them have gone beyond moſt men) but becauſe thereby the Crown of *France* is not endangered to fall into the hands of ſtrangers. Such men conſider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empreſs being maryed to *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Maine*, conveyed thoſe Countreys to the Diadem of *England*; nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by the Match of the Lady *Joan*, to Arch-duke *Philip*: neither do they ſee thoſe great advantages of power and ſtrength which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like mariage. Yet there is a ſaying in *Spain*, that as a man ſhould deſire to live in *Italy*, becauſe of the civility and ingenious natures of the People; and to die in *Spain*, becauſe there the *Catholique Religion* is ſo ſincerely profeſſed: ſo he ſhould wiſh to be born in *France*, becauſe of the nobleneſs of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Countrey.

The chief enemies to the *French* have been the *Engliſh* and *Spaniards*. The former had here great poſſeſſions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdome; but being called home by civil diſſenſions, loſt all. At their departure, the *French* ſcoffingly asked an *Engliſh* Captain, When they would return: Who feelingly anſwered, *When your ſins be greater than ours*. The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Millain*: they diſplanted them in *Florida*; poyſoned the *Dauphin* of *Viennois* (as it was generally conceived;) murdered their Souldiers in cold bloud, being taken priſoners in the Iſles of *Tercera*; and by their Faction, raiſed even in *France* it ſelf, drave *Henry* the third out of *Paris*, and moſt of his other Cities; and at laſt cauſed him to be murdered by *Iaques Clement*, a *Dominican Frier*. The like they intended to his ſucceſſor King *Henry* the 4th. whoſe coming to the Crown they oppoſed to their utmoſt power, and held a tedious War againſt him. Concerning which laſt War, when they ſided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the reſt of thoſe Rebels, which called themſelves the *Holy League* (of which the Duke of *Guiſe* was the Author) againſt the two Kings *Henry* the third and fourth; a *French* Gentleman made this excellent *alluſion*. For being asked the cauſe of theſe *civil broils*, he replyed they were *Spania* and *Mania*; ſeeming by this anſwer to ſignifie Σπανία, penury, and Μανία, fury, which are indeed the cauſes of all inteſtine tumults: but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: ſince which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithſtanding the croſs mariages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their ſeveral Siſters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*; outing them by their plots and practices of the whole Kingdome of *Portugal*, and the Countrey of *Catalogne* in the main land of *Spain* it ſelf, and of many of the beſt parts of *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little conſtancy there is, either in the affairs of Fortune, or the affection of great Princes, that no wiſe man can truſt the one, or depend ſafely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Cominæus*, there were no Princes more friendly than theſe two, the Kings of *Caſtile* and *France* being the neereſt confederated Princes in Chriſtendome. For their league was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great curſes to keep inviolable. But of late times, eſpecially ſince the beginning of the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the firſt, for the Dukedome of *Millain*; there have not been greater *animoſities*, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which ſeconded by the mutuall jealouſies they have of each other, and the diverſity of Conſtellations under which they live: hath produced ſuch diſſimilitude betwixt them in all their wayes, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage and affections, betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is between theſe Neighbours, parted no otherwiſe from one another, than by paſſable Hills. Firſt in the *Actions* of the *Soul*, the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one ſociable and diſcourſive; the other reſerved and full of thought; the one ſo *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a ſecret; the other

ſo

ſo *cloſe*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the world cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Faſhion* and Apparel, the *French* wears his hair long, the *Spaniard* ſhort; the *French* goes thin and open to the very ſhirt, as if there were continuall Summer, the *Spaniard* ſo wrapt up and cloſe, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the laſt alwayes conſtant to his Faſhion, the firſt intent ſo much on nothing as on new Fancies of Apparell. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walk faſt, as if purſued on an *Arreſt*, the *Spaniard* ſlowly, as if newly come out of a *Quartane Ague*; the *French* go up and down in cluſters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the moſt; the *French Lackqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spaniſh* alwayes in the *Van*; the *French* ſings and danceth as he walks the ſtreets, the *Spaniards* in a grave and ſolemn poſture, as if he were going a *Proceſſion*. The like might be obſerved of their tune, their ſpeech, and almoſt every paſſage in the life of Man: for which I rather chooſe to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howel*'s Book of *Inſtructions for Travell*, than inſiſt longer on it here. Only I adde, that of the two ſo different humours, that of the *Spaniard* ſeems to be the more approveable. Inſomuch as the *Neopolitans*, *Millanois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had triall of both Nations, chooſe rather to ſubmit themſelves to the proud and ſevere yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the luſts and inſolencies of the *French*, not ſufferable by men of even and well-ballanced ſpirits. And poſſible enough it is, that ſuch of the *Netherlands* as have of late been wonne to the Crown of *France*, will find ſo little comfort in the change of their Maſters; as may confirm the reſidue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Countrey, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*; the *Jour* or *Jura*, which ſeparates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vauge* or *Vogeſus*, which divides it from *Lorrein*; are thoſe which *Cæſar* calleth *Gebenna*, *Ptolemy Cimmeni*; being the ſame which ſeparate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the moſt part is plain and champain; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Countrey is wonderfully ſtored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1 *Sequana* or *Seine*, which ariſing in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Roane*, and receiving into it nine navigable ſtreams, diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Britiſh* Ocean. 2 *Some*, in *Latine* called *Samona*, which riſing neer the Town of St. *Quintin*, firſt cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artoys*, afterwards paſſeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight leſſer ſtreams, loſeth it ſelf into the ſame Sea alſo. 3 *Ligeris*, or *Loyre*, on which are ſeated *Nantes*, and *Orleance*. It riſeth about the mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greateſt in *France*) and having runne 600 miles, and augmented his channel with the entertainment of 72 leſſer rivulets, mingleth his ſweet waters with the brackiſh *Aquitane* Ocean. 4 *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhoſne*, which ſpringing from the *Alpes*, three Dutch miles from the head of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Lyons* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen leſſer Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5 The *Soaſne*, by the old *Latins* called *Araris*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, in the borders of *Lorrein* and *Alſatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhoſne* at the City of *Lyons*. 6 *Garumna*, or the *Garond*, which iſſuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, paſſing by *Iholouſe* and *Burdeaux*, and having ſwallowed up ſixteen leſſer Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Aquitane* Ocean, neer the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordonne*, being called the *Giarronne*. Of theſe it is ſaid proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richeſt, the *Rhoſne* the ſwifteſt, the *Garond* the greateſt, and the *Loyre* the ſweeteſt. And by theſe and many other Rivers this Kingdome is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the Properties of a good Harbour; that is to ſay, 1 Room, 2 Safety, 3 Eaſineſſe of defence, 4 Reſort of Merchants.

As for ſo much of the ſtory hereof as concerneth the whole, it was firſt peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothes* the ſixth Sonne of *Japhet* (affirmed by them, and ſuch as adhere unto them, to be that ſonne of his, who in the Scripture is called *Meſech*) in the year of the World 1806. But thoſe which are better converſant in the courſe of Hiſtory, have utterly laid aſide this deviſe of *Annius*. Even *Funccius*, though a great *Beroſian*, doth confeſſe ingenuouſly, *Quis hic* Samothes *fuerit incertum eſt*, that it is unreſolved who this *Samothes* was. And *Vignier* a *French* Antiquary doth confeſs with *Funccius*, *Mais un ne ſcay qui il eſtoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better ſtudyed this point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhets* eldeſt ſonne, whoſe off-ſpring were firſt called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at laſt *Cimbri*: firſt planted (as before was ſaid) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preſerved his memory; and after changing that unfruitfull and unpleaſant dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain ſomewhat of his name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his poſterity proceeded further in the *leſſer Aſia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, and *Gaul*, and *Britain* with his numerous iſſues: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the ſame Originall, though known amongſt the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celtes*, and *Galatæ*, hath been ſhewn before. It ſhall ſuffice us now to adde, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having ſomewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whoſe love, no King could ſecure himſelf from imminent dangers. They were very ſparing in their diet, and uſed to fine any one that outgrew his girdle. With theſe men the *Romans* fought at firſt for their own preſervation, rather than out of any hope by the conqueſt of them to improve either their fame or their Dominions. Inſomuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, under the conduct of *Aneroeſtus* and *Congelianus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Telamon* a City of *Tuſcany*; the *Romans* thought they had

had done enough in diſcomfiting their Forces, and cleering their own Provinces of them; holding it for a point of Wiſdome to purſue them, or invade their Countrey; though by the conqueſt of *Liguria* but few years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great Atchievments in the Warres, theſe were they who under the conduct of *Belloreſus*, paſſing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neereſt parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Ciſalpina*; and under that of *Segoveſus*, over-run all *Germany*; and following their ſucceſſes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythæ*. Theſe were the men, whoſe iſſue under the command of *Brennus*, diſcomfited the *Romans*, at the River *Allia*; ſacked the City, and beſieged the Capitoll, *An. M.* 3577. *V. C.* 365. In which action they ſo terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulſion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made that the Prieſts, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, ſhould be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally theſe were the men, who under the command of *Belgius* and another *Brennus*, ranſacked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they ſpoyled and plundered the Temple of *Delphos*; for which ſacriledge they were viſited with the Peſtilence. Such as ſurvived this Plague, went into *Aſia*, and there gave name to that Countrey now called *Galatia*; of whom thus *Du Bartas*:

The ancient *Gaul* in roving every way,
As far as *Phœbus* darts his Golden Ray;
Seiz'd *Italy*; the Worlds proud Miſtreſs ſackt,
Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.
Then ſpoyls *Piſidia*, *Myſia* doth inthrall;
And mid'ſt of *Aſia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at laſt the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almoſt all the reſidue of the (then known) World. Attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a *Roman* Conſul, called in by the *Maſſilienſes* to aſſiſt them againſt the *Salii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A. V. C.* 628. that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonenſis*, being brought into the form of a *Roman* Province at the concluſion of the War againſt the *Allobroges*, and *Arverni* (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally ſubdued untill the time of *Julius Cæſar*, and not eaſily then. For though the War was managed then by the ableſt Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more eaſily vanquiſhed, by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correſpondence among themſelves. Nor did they ſell their liberty ſo good cheap, as thoſe other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal; *Cæſar* himſelf affirming, that he had ſlain 1192000 of them, before they would ſubmit to the *Roman* yoak. But at the laſt they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Countrey was divided into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1 *Narbonenſis*, called ſo from the City of *Narbon*, then a *Roman* Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and ſome part of *Savoy*; called alſo *Braccata* at the firſt conqueſt by the *Romans*, from the uſual habit of the People (reſembling the Mantles uſed by the wild *Iriſh*) called in *Latine Braccæ*: attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War againſt the *Salii*, as before is ſaid; and finally ſubdued, *A. V. C.* 633. by *Fabius Maximus*, and *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, in their War againſt the *Allobroges*, and their confederates before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæſar*. 2 *Aquitanica*, ſo called from the City of *Aquæ Auguſtæ* (now *D' Acqs*, in *Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean; which comprehended the Provinces of *Gaſcoyn*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoygne*, *Limoſin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Bourbonoys*, and *Auvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River of *Loyre*, and conſequently ſtretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3 *Celtica*, ſo named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*; (called alſo *Lugdunenſis*, from the City of *Lyons*; and *Comata* from the long hair worn amongſt this people) extending from the *Loyre* to the *Britiſh* Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourin*, *Main*, *La Beauſſe*, the Iſle of *Frante*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedome of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnoys*. 4 *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that tract, taking up all the Eaſt parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the reſt of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with ſo much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lyeth on this ſide of the *Rhene*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the ſeat of one of the four *Præfecti Prætorio*, deſigned for the four quarters of it. His title *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceſes of *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*: this Dioceſe of *Gaul* being caſt into ſeventeen Provinces, that is to ſay, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, 2 *Secunda*, 3 *Tertia*, 4 *Quarta*, 5 *Belgica Prima*, 6 *Secunda*, 7 *Germania Prima*, 8 *Secunda*, 9 *Narbonenſis Prima*, 10 *Secunda*, 11 *Aquitania Prima*, 12 *Secunda*, 13 *Novempopulonia*, 14 *Viennenſis*, 15 *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16 *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, 17 *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of theſe ſeventeen, *Germania Prima & Secunda*, all *Belgica Prima*, and a great part of *Secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, and ſo much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lyeth in *Switzerland*; are now diſmembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principall Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the preſent *France*, the reſt contained; ſhall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it ſtood not in this ſtate. For within ſixty years after the death of *Conſtantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodoſius*, the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lievtenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, to keep the borders of the Empire againſt the *French*; then ready with ſome other of the barbarous Nations to invade the ſame. The *Gothes* not

France. long after by agreement with the ſame *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were veſted in *Gaul Narbonoys*, by the gift of that Emperour; with a good part of *Tarraconenſis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the ſervice they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impreſſion on that Countrey. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the diſtractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; firſt made themſelves Maſters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after ſpread themſelves over all the reſt of the Provinces which had not been ſubdued by the *Gothes*, and *Burgundians*: excepting a ſmall corner of *Armorica*, then poſſeſſed by the *Britans*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Countrey, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality then could be imagined: The *Gothes* poſſeſſing all *Aquitaine*, and *Narbonenſis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedock*, *Gaſcoigne*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoigne*, *Poictou*, *Berry*, *Limouſin*, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their ſhare the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolais*, *Forreſt*, the Countreys of *Lyonois*, *La Breſſe*, *Daulphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them ſo denominated. The reſt (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was poſſeſſed by the *French*, who in ſhort time repulſed the *Viſigoths* or Weſtern *Gothes* (then buſie in the Conqueſt of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the valour of *Clovis* the Great, their firſt Chriſtian King, before they could challenge a Proſcription of 60 years. Nor was it long before *Provence* alſo was reſigned to *Theodorick* the *French* King, of *Mets* by *Amalaſunta*, Q. of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*, nothing being left unto that Nation of all their *Gallick* Conqueſts but *Languedock* only. In which reſpect, the *Gothiſh* Provinces of *Gall* (except *Provence* only) together with ſo much of the *Burgundians* which was after layd to Weſt *France*, ſhall paſſe in the accompt of the *French* part of this Countrey; the reſt of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts which lie within the bounds of the modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) ſhall be conſidered by themſelves in the deſcription and affairs of the Kingdome of *Burgundy*; a diſtinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but piece-meal, and by ſeverall titles (and yet not wholly ſo neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themſelves, and the ſucceſſion of their Kings, we will ſpeak at laſt, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flouriſhing Countrey, into their poſſeſſion. The principall Provinces are, 1 *France*, ſpecially ſo called, 2 *Champagne*, 3 *Picardy*, 4 *Normandy*, 5 *Bretagne*, 6 The Eſtates of *Anjou*, with its members, 7 *La Beauſſe*, 8 *Nivernois*, 9 The Dukedome of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it, being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the firſt acqueſts of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom, that is to ſay, 10 *Berry*, 11 *Poictou*, 12 *Limoſin*, 13 *Perigort*, and 14 *Quercu*, 15 *Aquitain*, with the members of it, and 16 *Languedoc*: And laſt of all the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 17 *Provence*, 18 *Daulphine*, 19 *La Breſſe*, 20 *Lionnois*, 21 The *Dutchy*, and 22 the County of *Burgundy*, 23 The Iſlands in the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the cloſe of all. Of ſome of which *La Nove*, a *French* Author hath paſſed this cenſure: The men of *Berry* are Leachers, they of *Tourein* Theives, they of *Languedoc* Traytors, they of *Provence* Atheiſts, they of *Rhemes* (or *Champagne*) ſuperſtitious, they of *Normandy* inſolent, they of *Picardy* proud, *& ſic de cæteris*. But here we are to underſtand, that all theſe Provinces (though paſſing by the name and accompt of *France*) are not under the command of the *French* King; the Iſles of *Jarſey* and *Guernzey* being poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois* by the King of *Spain*; the Dutchy of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the houſe of *Naſſaw*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other ſide, the *French* Kings are poſſeſſed of ſome Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperiall Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedome of *Lorrein*, the Fort and Paſſe of *Pignerolle* in the Dukedome of *Savoy*: and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Baſe Navarre*, in *Spain*: not to ſay any thing of their late acqueſts in *Spain*, and *Flanders*; which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

FRANCE, *ſpecially ſo called.*

THE firſt place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their fixt habitation, was by that people honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the firſt *green turf* of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and *ſeiſin* of all the reſt. A Province now bounded on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, on the North with *Normandy*, on the Weſt and South with *La Beauſſe*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called *the Iſle of France*; as being circled almoſt round with ſeverall Rivers: that is to ſay, the *Oiſe* on the North, the *Eure* on the Weſt, the *Velle* on the Eaſt, and a vein-riveret of the *Sein*, towards the South. A Countrey not ſo large as many of the *French* Provinces, but ſuch as hath given name unto all the reſt; it being the Fate of many ſmall, but puiſſant Provinces, to give their name to others

others which are greater then they, if conquered and brought under by them. For thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mastered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*; as that of *Mosco*, to the Provinces of *Asiatica*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered, and denominated almost all the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island being the seat Royall of the *French*, in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Countrey generally so fruitfull and delectable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equall to the Vallies in most places of *Europe*; but the vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce to be fellowed in the World. An Argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100000 men; neither the Assailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any scarcity of victuals; and yet the Citizens, besides Souldiers, were reckoned at 500000. *The Isle of France.*

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica secunda*, and *Lugdunensis quarta*, the chief Inhabitants thereof being the *Parisii*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to say, the Dukedome of *Valois*, 2 *Gastinois*, 3 *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Isle of France*, by some the *Prevoste*, or *County of Paris*.

1 The Dukedome or County of *VALOIS*, lyeth towards *Picardy*, the principall Cities of it, 1 *Senlis*, (in *Latin Silvanectum*) a Bishops See. 2 *Compeigne* (*Compendium*) seated on the River *Oise*; a retiring place of the *French* Kings, for hunting, and other Countrey pleasures. 3 *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cæsaromagus*, a fair, large, well-traded Town, from which the Countrey round about hath the name of *Beauvoisin*. The Patrimony in former times of *Roger*, the third son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Odon* the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvois*: and at his death gave it for ever to the Bishops hereof; for antiently this City was a See Episcopall; the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip* one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a military man, and one that had much damnified the *Englisb* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* the first. The Pope being made acquainted with his Imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an *Ecclesiastical* person, and one of his *beloved Sonnes*: The King returned unto the Pope the Armour which the Bishop was taken in, and these words engraven on the same, *Vide an hæc sit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* children spake unto him, when they presented him with the Coat of their brother *Joseph*: Which the Pope viewing, swore, That it was rather the Coat of a Sonne of *Mars*, than a Sonne of the *Church*; and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4 *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County *Beauvoisin*: memorable for giving the title of Earl of *Clermont*, to *Robert* the fifth Sonne of the King St. *Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*; afterwards to the eldest Sonnes of that Princely Family: and finally to *Catharine de Medices*, created Countesse of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her maryage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Successor to King *Francis* the first in the Realm of *France*. 5 *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soissons*. 6 *Brenonville*. 7 St. *Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to S. *Lupus*, Bishop of *Troys* in *Champagne*, sent into *Britain* with *Germanus* to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France* nothing more observable, then that it gave denomination to the Royall Family of the *French* Kings (13 in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, *An.* 1328. and ending in *Henry* the third, *An.* 1589. As for the Earls hereof (from whom that Adjunct or denomination had it's first Originall) the first who had the title of Earle of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Sonne of *Philip* the third; in right of his Wife, Earl of *Anjou* also: After whose death it descended upon *Philip de Valois* his eldest Sonne, who carryed the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* the third. On his assuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his second Brother: and he deceasing without issue, *An.* 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Sonne of *Charles* the fifth, amongst the titles of which house it lay *dormant*, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* the twelfth; and lately given unto the *Monsieur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis* the 13th, and Unkle to K. *Lewis* the 14th, now reigning, upon the first reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother: adding thereby to his Estate no lesse than 10000 pounds sterling of yearly rents, which make up 100000 *Franks* or *Livres* in the *French* accompt. I only adde that *Charles* the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip* the third, Brother of *Philip* the fourth, surnamed the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: So was he Unkle to *Lewis Hutin*, *Philip* the *Long*, and *Charles* the *Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard, it was said of him, that he was the Sonne, Brother, Father, and Unkle of Kings, yet no King himself.

2 The second part of this Province is called *HEVREPOIX*, beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris* on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*, which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Charenton*, three miles from *Paris*, where the *French Protestants* of that City have their Church for *Religious* exercises; it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any walled Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any suudden surprize, which so great a multitude might easily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parisians*, on the newes of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, slain at the siege of *Montalban*, *An.* 1622. was presently reedified by the command of the Duke of *Mombazon*, then Governour of the Isle of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the *Reformed* party understand, that it was their disobedience and not their *Religion*, which caused the King to arm against them. 2 *Corbeil*, seated on the confluence of *Sein*, and *Essons*. 3 *Moret*, which gives the Title of an Earle

The Isle of France.

to one of the naturall ſonnes of *Henry* the fourth, begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4 *Melun*, by *Cæſar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the ſeat of the *Bailif* for this Tract. Here is alſo in this part the Royall Palace of *Fountain-bel-eau*, ſo called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongſt which it ſtandeth; but otherwiſe ſeated in a ſolitary and woody Countrey, fit for hunting only: and for that cauſe much viſited by the *French* Kings in their times of leaſure; and beautified with ſo much coſt by King *Henry* the fourth, that it is abſolutely the ſtatelyeſt and moſt magnificent pile of building in all *France*.

3 *GASTINOYS*, the moſt drie and barren part of this Province, but rich enough if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris* and the Countrey of *Orleanoys*. The chief places of it are, 1 *Eſtampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it towards *La Beauſſe*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a College of *Chanoins*, with the ruines of an antient Caſtle: which together with the Walls and demoliſhed Fortifications of it, ſhew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given with the title of an Earl by *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard* the third ſonne of *John* of *Montfort*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in mariage with his Siſter the Lady *Marguerite*; from which mariage iſſued *Francis* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*. 2 *Montleherry*, famous for the battle betwixt King *Lewis* the eleventh, and *Charls* Earl of *Charolois* (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both ſides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it ſelf the Victor. It ſtandeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Eſtampes*. And ſo doth 3 *Caſtres*, of the bigneſſe of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a *Chamber* or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here ſetled by King *Henry* the 4th, for the uſe and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latin* called *Camera-Caſtrenſis*. 4 *Nemours* upon the River of *Loing*, the chief of *Gaſtinoys* in name, but not in beauty, (wherein inferior to *Eſtampes*) a Town which hath given the title of Duke to many eminent perſons of *France*. Here is alſo in this part the County of *Rotchfort*, and the Towns of *Milly*. 2 *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Countrey, but that being part of the poſſeſſions of *Hugh* the Great, Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*: it was given by him together with the Earldome of *Anjou*, to *Geofry* ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a right Noble Warrier, and a great ſtickler in behalf of the houſe of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it ſelf, which at laſt they carryed. Continued in his line till the time of *Fulk* the ſecond (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might poſſeſſe himſelf of the Earldome of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, in Fact or Title.

4 But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and ſometimes κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Iſle*, cauſed by the Circlings and embracements of the Rivers of *Sein* and *Marn*; the abſtract of the whole beauties, and glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleaſant Valley are ſummed up together.

Chief places in it, S. *German*, ſeated on the aſcent of an hill, ſeven miles from *Paris*, down the water: a pretty neat and handſome Town, honoured with one of the faireſt Palaces of the *French* Kings; which being built (like *Windſor*) on the top of a fine mountainet on the Rivers ſide, affordeth an excellent proſpect over all the Countrey. The excellent water-works herein, have been deſcribed on occaſion of thoſe of *Tivoli*, ſo much extolled by the *Italians*. It was firſt built by *Charles* the fifth, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*; beautified by the *Engliſh* when they were poſſeſſed of this Countrey; but finally re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry* the fourth, who brought it into that magnificence in which now we ſee it. It took name from S. *German* Biſhop of *Auxerre*, companion with S. *Lupus* before mentioned, in the *Britiſh* journey againſt *Pelagius*. 2 *Poiſſie* upon the ſame River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marn* which falleth into the *Sein*; ſituate not far from S. *Germans*, a Bayliwick belonging to the *Provoſt* of *Paris*, and one of his ſeven daughters, as they uſe to call them. 3 *Chantilly*, the chief ſeat of the Dukes of *Montmorency*, the antienteſt and moſt noble Family of all *Chriſtendome*: whoſe Anceſtors were the *firſt fruits of the Goſpel* in this part of *Gaul*, and uſed to ſtyle themſelves *Les primiers Chriſtiens et plus veilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The firſt *Chriſtians* and moſt antient Barons of *France*. A Family that hath yeelded unto *France*, more *Admiralls*, *Conſtables*, *Marſhalls*, and other like Officers of power, than any three in all the Kingdome: now moſt unhappily extinct in the perſon of *Henry* the laſt Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinall of *Richelieu*, for ſiding with the *Monſieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) againſt King *Lewis* the thirteench, his Brother. The Arms of which illuſtrious and moſt noble Family (for I cannot let it paſſe without this honour) were *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, cantonned with ſixteen *Allerions Azure*, four in every *Canton*. What theſe *Allerions* are we ſhall ſee in *Lorrein*; take we notice now, that from the great poſſeſſions which this noble Family had in all this tract, it was, and is ſtill called the Vale of *Montmorencie*. 4 S. *Denis*, ſome three miles from *Paris*, ſo called of a Monaſtery built here by *Dagobert* King of *France*, about the year 640. in memory of S. *Denis*, or *Dionyſe*, the firſt Biſhop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr* an hill adjoyning) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French* Kings, becauſe it lay ſo neer to *Paris*, beſtowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defenſible: nor otherwiſe of any conſideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French* Kings and Princes; neither for workmanſhip, nor coſt, able to hold compariſon with thoſe at *Weſtminſter*. But being their ſepulture of their Kings, the *French-men* uſe to ſay facetiouſly, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town alſo is the Church of S. *Maclou*, where the Kings with a Faſt of nine dayes, and other Penances uſe to receive the famous gift of healing the *Kings-evil*, with nothing but a Touch; a priviledge enjoyed only by thoſe Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5 St. *Cloud* (or the Town of St. *Claudus*) un-

unfortunately memorable for the murder of King *Henry* the third: who lying here at a ſiege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flie by the *Guiſian* Faction, was wretchedly aſſaſinated by *Jaques Clement* a Monk, employed in that ſervice by the heads of the *Holy League*. 6 *PARIS*, the chief City not of this Iſle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæſar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Pariſiorum*, from the *Pariſians*, a Nation of *Gaul-Celtick*, whoſe chief City it was: by *Strabo* called *Lutetia*, *Lucotetia* by *Ptolemy*, *quaſi in Luto ſita*, as ſome conjecture, from the dirtineſs of the ſoyl in which it ſtandeth. A ſoyl ſo dirty (as commonly all rich Countreys are) that though the ſtreets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Auguſtus*) yet every little daſh of rain makes them very ſlippery; and worſe than ſo, yeelds an ill ſavour to the noſe. The Proverb is, *Il deſtaint comme la fauge de Paris*, it ſtaineth like the dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il peut*, &c. *It ſtinks like the dirt of* Paris; no ſtink being more offenſive than thoſe ſtreets in Summer. It is in compaſſe about eight miles, of an Orbicular form, pleaſantly ſeated on the diviſions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far ſhort of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh to contain 500000 people of all ſorts and Ages; which muſt be the leaſt: the ſame King at the entertainment of the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadors, ſhewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Caſſocks with white Croſſes. A gallant ſight, though poſſibly the one half of them were not fit for ſervice: The *Pariſians* being for the moſt part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occaſions, but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their ſuffering K. *Henry* the 4th. to hold S. *Dennis* ſo long againſt them, with no conſiderable Garriſon, and by that means to ſhut them up from all relief on that ſide of their City. And yet their multitudes, which ſince the time of that King, muſt needs be very much encreaſed, are the chief ſtrength of the Town; the fortifications being weak and of ill aſſurance: Inſomuch, that when once a *Pariſian* bragged that their Town was never took by force; an *Engliſh* man returned this Anſwer, That it was, *becauſe on the leaſt diſtreſs it did uſe to capitulate*. It is ſeated (as before was ſaid) on the River *Sein*, which ſerveth it with Boats and Barges (as the *Thames* Weſtward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no nigher than *Pont del' Arche*, 75 miles diſtant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts, the Town, the City, the Univerſity, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is ſituate on the North ſide of the River; the biggeſt, but pooreſt part of the four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradeſmen of the meaner ſort. In this part are the *Hoſtell de Ville*, or the *Guild-hall* for the uſe of the Citizens; the *Arſenall*, or Armory for the uſe of the King; and that magnificent building called the *Place Royall*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry* the fourth for Tilts and Turnaments, and ſuch ſolemnities of State. And in this alſo, neer the banks of the River, ſtands the Kings Palace of the *L'ouvre*, a place of more fame than beauty, and nothing anſwerable to the report which goes commonly it. A building of no elegance or uniformity, nor otherwiſe remarkable but for the vaſt Gallery begun by King *Henry* the 4th. and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoyning to it. *The City* is that part of it which takes up the circumference of a little Iſland, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joyned to the other parts on both ſides, by ſeverall Bridges. The *Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old *Gauls* was no more than this: the *Town* on the one ſide, and the *Univerſity* on the other, being added ſince. This is the richeſt part, and beſt built of the whole *Compoſitum*. And herein ſtand the *Palace*, or *Courts* of *Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and the Church of *Noſtre-dame*, being the Cathedrall; of antient times a Biſhops See, but of late raiſed unto the dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South-ſide of the River lyeth that part which is called the *Univerſity*, from an Univerſity here founded by *Charles* the Great, *An.* 792. at the perſwaſion of *Alcuinus* an *Engliſhman*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the firſt Profeſſor of Divinity here. It conſiſteth of 52 *Colleges* or places for ſtudy, whereof 40 are of little uſe; and in the reſt the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or *Innes* of *Court* or *Chancery* at *London*; there being no endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which poſſibly may be the reaſon why the Scholars here are generally ſo debauched and inſolent: a ruder rabble than the which are hardly to be found in the *Chriſtian* World. Senſible of this miſcheif and the cauſe thereof, *Francis* the firſt, whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muſes*; at the perſwaſion of *Reuchline* and *Budæus*, thoſe great reſtorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a College for 600 Student; and therein to have placed *Profeſſors* for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yeerly Revenue, for their conſtant maintenance. But it went no further than the purpoſe; prevented by the inevitable ſtroak of death from purſuance of it. In bigneſſe this is little inferior to the *Town* or *Ville*, and not ſuperior to it for wealth or beauty; few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of ſo little Government. The fourth and laſt part is the *Suburbs*, (or the *Faux-bourgs* as the *French* call them) the principall whereof is that of S. *Germans* (ſo called from an antient Abby of that name:) the beſt part of the whole body of *Paris*, for large Streets, ſweet Air, choice of the beſt Company, magnificent Houſes, pleaſant Gardens; and finally, for all thoſe contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of moſt populous Cities.

Here are alſo in this Iſle the Royal houſe of *Madrit*, a retiring place of the Kings, built by King *Francis* the firſt, at his return from his impriſonment in *Spain*. 2 *Ruall*, a ſweet Countrey houſe of the late Queen Mothers: And 3 *Boys de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry* the 5th. I adde this only and ſo end, That this Iſle hath alwayes followed the fortune of the *Crown* of *France*; never diſmembred from the Soveraignty of the ſame, though ſometimes out of the poſſeſſion of the

Champagn. *French* Kings; as when the *Engliſh* kept it againſt *Charles* the 7th, and the *Leaguers* againſt *Henry* the 4th. A thing which hardly can be ſaid of any other of the Provinces of this flouriſhing Countrey: the *French* Kings of the race *Merovee*, and *Charles* the great, alienating from the Crown many goodly Territories; contented only with a bare and titulary *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was ſhared firſt amongſt the great Princes of the *French*: which afterwards by inter-marriages, and other titles fell into the hands of ſtrangers; moſt of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandour and power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiſcations, Mariages, and ſuch other means, they reduced all theſe *Riverets* to their firſt and original *Channel*; as ſhall be ſhewn in the purſuance of this work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North, with *Picardie*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundie*; on the Eaſt, with *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, with *France* ſpecially ſo called.

The Countrey for the moſt part very plain and pleaſant (whence it had the name) adorned with ſhady Woods and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat in elder times of the *Tricaſſes*, *Catalauni*, *Rhemi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which laſt Tribe or Nation were thoſe *Ciſalpine Gaules*, who ſacked *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*;) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*, and ſo accordingly diſpoſed of: the *Belgians* into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*; the *Celts* into *Lugdunenſis quarta*, of which the Metropolis was *Sens*; both Cities ſeated in this Countrey. The chief Rivers of it *Bloiſe*, 2 *Marne*, 3 *Yonne*, 4 *Sault*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1 *Chalon* on the River *Marne*, an Epiſcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*; called anciently *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2 *Joinville*, ſituate on the ſame River, belonging to the houſe of *Guiſe*; the eldeſt ſon of which Family is called *Prince* of *Joinville*: in the Caſtle whereof ſeated upon an high and inacceſſible Hill, is to be ſeen the Tomb of *Claude* the firſt Duke of *Guiſe*; the richeſt Monument of that kinde, in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third ſon of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bovillon*, for her Dower or portion; and brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorrein* and Kings of *Hieruſalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bovillon*, or that he had it by his wife, a daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his deceaſe to *Godfrey* his youngeſt ſon (*Thierry* the eldeſt ſon ſucceeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*): upon the failer of whoſe line, it fell unto the Dukes of *Lorrein* as next heirs thereof, and ſo unto the Dukes of *Guiſe* as deſcended from them. 3 St. *Urben*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two leagues diſtance. 4 *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Caſtle of ſo great ſtrength, that in the civil Wars of *France*, *Anno* 1614. it indured 1100 ſhot of Canon, and yet was not taken. 5 *Vaſſey*, upon the River *Bloiſe*, a Town of as ſweet a ſituation as moſt in *France*. Theſe laſt ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: ſo named, as I conceive, from the River *Vaſle*. 6 *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Balliage of that part, which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Pertenſis* in the *Latine*); ſo called of 7 *Perte* another Town thereof, but now not ſo eminent. 8 *Chaumont* upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Baſſigni*; and ſtrengthned with a Caſtle mounted on a craggie Rock. 9 *Dedior*, or St. *Deſier* (*Fanum Sancti Deſiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, *Anno* 1544. 10 *Rhemes* (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Archbiſhops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, ſituate on the River of *Vaſle*. At this City the Kings of *France* are moſt commonly crowned, that ſo they may enjoy the Unction of a ſacred Oil, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof, which, as they ſay, came down from Heaven, and never decreaſeth. How true this is may be eaſily ſeen, in that *Gregory* of *Tours*, who is ſo prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it: but ſpecially (for *Argumentum ab autoritate negativè parum valet*) ſince the *Legend* informeth us that this holy *Oil* was ſent from Heaven, at the annointing of *Clovis*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*. Whereas *Du. Haillan*, one of their moſt judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the great, to have been their firſt anointed King; and that there was none *de la primiere lignee cinct, ny ſacre à* Rhemes, *ny allieurs*, none of the firſt or *Merovignian* line of Kings, had been anointed at *Rhemes* or elſewhere. But ſure it is (let it be true or falſe, no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their ſacred) *Oil*; and fetch it with great ſolemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, ſitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent: the Archbiſhop hereof (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and ſuch Biſhops as are preſent, going to the Church-doors, to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, ſome competent pawn; and on the other ſide, the King when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himſelf before it with great humility. But to return unto the Town: it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of theſe parts, whoſe chief City it was; and now an Univerſity of no ſmall eſteem: in which among other Colledges there is one appointed for the education of young *Engliſh* Fugitives. The firſt Seminary for which purpoſe (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, *Anno* 1568. A ſecond at *Rome*, by *Pope Gregory* the thirteenth. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain*, by K. *Philip* the ſecond; A fourth in *Lovaine*, a Town of *Brabant*; and a fifth, here (ſo much do they affect the gaining of the *Engliſh* to the *Romiſh* Church) by the Dukes of *Guiſe*. 11 *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunenſis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief note

note are, 1 *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by consequence the See of an *Archbishop* also. The Countrey hereabouts called *Le Pais Senonois*, was part of the habitation of the ancient *Senones*, some of which passing over the *Alpes* with other nations of the *Galls*, planted those parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Cisalpina*. Of which the *Senones* were the most valiant, though far less in numbers: as those which had not only the honour of sacking *Rome*, but of managing an offensive War against that State for the space of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been shewn already, when we were in *Lombardie*. 2 *Langres*, or *Civitas Lingonum*, (by *Ptolemy*, called *Audomaturum*) situate in the confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or spring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Bishop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*. 3 *Troys*, *Civitas Tricassium*, seated on the *Seine*, a fair, strong, and well traded City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*; a See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne*, next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French*, and *English* Histories, for the meeting of *Charles* the sixth, and *Henry* the fifth, Kings of *France*, and *England*; in which it was agreed, That the said King *Henry* espousing *Catharine* Daughter of that King, should be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he should succeed on the said Kings death, and be the *Regent* of the Realm for the time of his life: with divers other Articles, best suiting with the will and honour of the Conqueror. 4 *Province* (by *Cæsar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Countrey, abounding in all fragrant flowers; but especially with the sweetest Roses, which being transplanted into other Countreys are called *Province Roses*. 5 *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract: now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighboured by 6 *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Catharine de Medices*, Queen Mother of the three last Kings of the house of *Valois*. 7 *Montereau*, a strong Town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8 *Chasteau-Thierri*, (*Castrum Theodorici*, as the *Latins* call it) situate on the River *Marne*. These five last situate in that part of *Champagne*, which lieth next to *France* specially so called, known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here, 9 *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*, of which more hereafter. And 10 *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerrois* in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 841. between the sons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Fathers Kingdoms. In which so many thousands were slain on both sides, that the forces of the *French* Empire were extremely weakned; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a peace between them; alotting unto each some part of that vast estate, dismembred by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italie*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorrein*, and *Burgundy*; never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Champagne

Adjoyning unto *Champagne* also where it looks towards *Lorrein*, lies the Countrey and Dutchy of *BAR*; belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*. The Countrey commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the most part with the two streams of the River *Marne*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the Borders of *Lorrein*, do meet together at *Chalons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Bar le Duc*, so called to distinguish it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2 *La Motte*. 3 *Ligni*. 4 *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what Antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom first founded and made an absolute Estate, I am yet to seek, though probable it is that it might take its first rise (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruin and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; or otherwise might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of some part of that Estate. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that it came first to the present house of *Lorrein*, by the gift of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, *&c.* who succeeded in it in the right of *Yoland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of *Don John* the first King of *Aragon* and of *Yoland* or *Violant* the Heir of *Bar*: and dying gave the same, together with the Towns of *Lambesque* and *Orgon*, to *Rene* Duke of *Lorrein* his *Nephew*, by the Lady *Violant* his *Daughter*. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis* the eleventh, who having put a Garrison into *Bar*, repaired the Wals, and caused the Arms of *France* to be set on the Gates thereof. Restored again by *Charles* the eighth, at his going to the Conquest of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I guesse aright) of his pretensions to that Kingdom, which were fair and specious; since which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, til the year 1633. when seized on by *Lewis* the thirteenth, upon a Judgement and Arrest of the Court of *Parliament* in *Paris*, in regard the present Duke had not done his Homage to the King, as he ought to have done.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, *Or*; *Seme* of Crosse Crossets *Fitche*, of the second.

But to return again to *Champagne*, it pleased *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the same to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, (whose Daughter he had married in his private fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the rights and priviledges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble *Dane*, to whom *Charles* the Simple gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920. and not long after the time, that he conferred the Countrey of *Neustria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whose Kinsman and assistant this *Gerlon* was in harassing and wasting the coasts of *France*. In the person of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, descended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Sister and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth. *Anno* 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Countess of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of *France*, surnamed the *Fair*, both these Estates were added to

the

Picardie. the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without ſome prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* ſucceeding in the Crown of *France*, he reſtored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the ſaid Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be truſted in a forein hand) he gave unto her and her poſterity, as in the way of exchange, ſome certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to ſo rich a Patrimony.

Count *Palatines* of *Champagne*.

999	1	*Odo*, Earl of *Champagne*, *Brie*, *Blais*, and *Toureine*, Son of *Theobald* the elder, Earl of *Blais*.
1032	2	*Stephen*, Earl of *Champagne*, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.
1101	3	*Theobald*, eldeſt Son of *Stephen*.
1151	4	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1181	5	*Henry* II. an Aſſociate of the Kings of *France*, and *England* in the *Holy Wars*; King of *Hieruſalem*, in right of *Iſabel* his Wife.
1196	6	*Theobald* II. Brother of *Henry*, added unto his houſe the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his Mariage with the Lady *Blanche*, ſiſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th.
1201	7	*Theobald* III. Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the 2d, and the Lady *Blanche*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1234.
1269	8	*Theobald* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 3d, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne* and *Brie*.
1271	9	*Henry* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1284	10	*Philip* IV. King of *France*, in right of *Joan* his Wife King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1313	11	*Lewis Hutin*, Son of *Philip*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1315	12	*Philip* the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1320	13	*Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, and the laſt Earl of *Champagne*; united after his deceaſe by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoleſme*, being given for it in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre*; maried to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre* of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of theſe *Palatines* of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, potencee and counter-potencee of three pieces, *Or*.

3. *PICARDIE*.

PICARDIE hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, ſome part of *Normandie*, and the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the *North*, the Counties of *Artois*, and *Hainalt*; and on the South, *Champagne*, and *France* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. A Countrey ſo well ſtored with Corn, that it is accounted the *Granarie* or Store-houſe of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harſh, and of no good reliſh, eſpecially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Sueſſiones*, *Ambiani* and *Veromandui*, conſiderable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to ſeek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, ſome of the which are groundleſs, and the reſt ridiculous; I only ſay, as *Robert* Biſhop of *Auranches* hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaq; ætas noſtra* Picardos *appellat*, *verè* Belgæ *dicendi ſunt*, *qui poſtmodum in* Picardorun *nomen tranſmigrarunt*.

The whole Countrey as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorrein*, is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* ſubdivided into *Sainterre*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guiſnes*; the *Higher* into the *Vidamate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rethelois*, and *Tieraſche*; in every of which there are ſome places of importance and conſideration.

In *LOWER PICARDIE* and the County of *GUISNES*, the chief Towns, 1 *Calais*, by *Cæſar* called *Portus Iccius* (as the adjoyning *Promontorie*, *Promontorium Itium*, by *Ptolemie*) a ſtrong Town cloſe upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *Engliſh* Channel: taken by *Edward* the third after the ſiege of 11 moneths, *Anno* 1347. and loſt again by Queen *Mary* in leſs than a fortnight, *Anno* 1557. So that had *Monſieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wiſh; who uſed to ſay, that *he would be content to lie ſeven years in* Hell, *on condition that* Calais *were taken from the* Engliſh. The loſs of which Town was a great blow to our Eſtate, for till that time we had the *Keyes* of *France* at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Q. *Mary*, who ſickning preſently upon it, ſaid to thoſe which attended her, that *if ſhe were opened, they ſhould finde* Calais *next her heart*. 2 *Hamme*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt Out-works of *Calais*. 3 *Fiennes*, on the borders toward *Artois*, which with the Countrey joyning to it made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times part of the Earls of S. *Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of S. *Paul* and Conſtable of *France*, (of whom more hereafter) and from that family conveyed to the houſe of *Egmond* by the mariage of *Francis* heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528. and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alva*,

Alva. Anno 1568. 4 *Ardres*, more towards the Borders of *Boulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the eighth, and *Francis* the first; and many meetings of the *Engliſh* and *French* Commiſſioners. 5 *Guiſnes*, which gives name to this Diviſion, called the County of *Guiſnes*, (of which the Land of *Oye* whereon *Calice* ſtood (by the *French* called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was eſteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illuſtrious houſe of *Craie*, of which more anon. *Picardie.*

2. In *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Countrey of *Guiſnes*, the places of moſt note, 1 *Blackneſs*, a ſtrong Fort on the Sea ſide, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2 *Chaſtillon*, oppoſite to *Boulogne* on the other ſide of the water. 3 *Bonllenberg*, more within the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4 *Boulogne*, by *Plinie* called *Portus Geſſoriacus*, part of the Countrey of the *Morini*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*; divided into the *Baſe* or *Low Town* lying on the ſhore ſide, well built, and much frequented by Paſſengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town*, ſtanding on the riſe of an Hill, well garriſoned for defence of the *Port* beneath it, and honoured with a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither from *Tourney* when that City was taken by the *Engliſh*. The Town and Countrey taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of treaſure, *Anno* 1544. but yeelded not long after by K. *Edward* the ſixth: the *French* redeeming it at leſs then a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had coſt the Crown of *England*. As for the fortunes of this Countrey, it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, during which time it gave one King unto *Hieruſalem*, and another to *England*. The firſt Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Euſtace*, who by his mariage with *Ida*, the daughter of *Geofrie* or *Godfrey* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, added the Dutchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him ſucceeded in both theſe Titles and eſtates, *Godfrey*, ſurnamed of *Bovillon* his eldeſt ſon: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third his Couſen-german attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, and finally was the firſt and moſt renowned King of the Weſtern Chriſtians reigning in *Hieruſalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Euſtace* the youngeſt of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whoſe daughter *Maud* brought this eſtate and title to *Steven* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Euſtace* the only ſon of *Steven* dying without iſſue, the rights hereof remained in his ſiſter *Mary*, the Abbeſſe of *Ramſey*, married to *Matthew* Brother of *Philip* of *Elſats* Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to reſtore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Countrey for her children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldeſt daughter of this bed to *Reginald* of *Chaſtris* her third husband; by *Maud* his daughter to *Philip* ſecond ſon of *Philip Auguſtus* K. of *France*, by another *Maud* (he dying without iſſue) to *Alfonſo* of *Portugal*, who ſucceeding after in that Kingdom, ſent her back to *Boulogne*: and finally by *Joan* daughter and heir of *William*, this *Alfonſus* Grandchilde to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*, the ſon of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*; to whom ſhe brought *Philip* their only ſon, ſucceſſor to his Grandfather in the ſaid Eſtates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceaſing without iſſue, *Anno* 1361. and *Joan* not leaving any children by King *John* of *France*, whom ſhe maried after the death of her firſt Husband, it fell by ſome other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tours* of *Auvergn* (the Anceſtors of the now Dukes of *Bovillon*) continuing in that family till the year 1477. when bought by *Lewis* the 11th of *France* of *Bertrand de la Tour*, the better to aſſure his Kingdom on that ſide againſt the *Engliſh* then poſſeſſed of the Countrey of *Guiſnes*. The purchaſe being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietar, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Noſtre Dame*, bareheaded, on his knees, without ſpurs or girdle: and offered to her Image a maſſie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Succeſſors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vaſſal preſent her with a golden heart of the ſame weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving title unto any but to *Catharine de Medices* wife of *Henry* the 2d, created Counteſs of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when firſt maried to him, he being then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Armes hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne* were *Or*, a Banner *Gules*, tuffed *Purple*: thoſe of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattelled *Sable*; but the colour of the Field I do no where finde.

3. *PONTHEIU*, ſo called from the Bridges, built for conveniency of paſſage over the mooriſh Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *Engliſh*; To whom it came by the Mariage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, by *Joan* the daughter and heir of *Simon* the laſt Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the firſt. Towns of moſt note in it, 1 *Abbeville*, ſeated on the *Some*, well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one ſide unaſſaultable by reaſon of a deep and mooriſh Fen, which comes up cloſe to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatis Villa* in the *Latin*) and the See of a Biſhop. 2 *Monſtreuille*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Boulogne*, and a ſtrong out-work unto *Paris*. 3 *Crecie*, where King *Edward* the 3d defeated the great Army of *Philip de Valois*, in the firſt onſets for that Kingdom, *Anno* 1343. And 4 *Treport*, a ſmall Haven on the Eaſt of S. *Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of S. *Paul* in this Countrey of *Ponthieu*; others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Armes hereof were *Or*, three Bends *Azure*.

4. And as for the *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardie*, the chief Towns of it are 1 *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the 11th, the greateſt Maſter of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himſelf moſt improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundie*, who as improvidently diſmiſſed him. 2 *Roy*, and 3 *Mont didier*, (*Mons Deſiderii* in *Latin*) both of them ſtrong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwiſe of little fame in former Stories.

In the *Higher Picardie* being that part of this Countrey which lieth furtheſt from the Sea, the firſt diviſion which occurreth, is the *Vidamate* of *AMIENS*, ſo called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame* or chief Governor of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the *French* only; ſo *Milles* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in *France*, *viz.* this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Gerber y*,

Picardie. *beroy*, and that of *Chartroy*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, *&c.* and formerly as many as it had Bishops; the *Vice-dominus* or *Vice-dame*, being to the Bishop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Viscounts*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an example nearer home and of more resemblance, these *French Vidames* were unto their several and respective Bishops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Bishoprick of *Ely*, to those several Bishops.

Places of most note herein, 1 *Corbie*, a Town of great importance and strongly Garrisoned, situate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*; 2 *Chaune*, on the same Frontier also, but of less consideration, the Honorary seat and title of the present *Vidame*; 3 *Piquigni*, situate on a pretty ascent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River, betwixt *Amiens* and *Abberville*, the ordinay seat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the enterview of *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Lewis* the 12th, than for giving the name of *Picardie* to all the Province; which *Mercator* only of all Writers, doth ascribe unto it. 4 *Crouy*, an obscure village now, but formerly of special note for a goodly Castle, commanding over the adjoyning Territory, and giving name to the illustrious Family, hence surnamed of *Crouy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungarie*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Arschoh* and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their translating to which Countreys by the Dukes of *Burgundie*, they were entituled Earls of *Guisnes*. 5 *Amiens* it self, seated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the use and service of the Town; well built, with very strong wals and deep ditches: the loss whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the 4th; and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the faireſt and most lovely structure in the West of *Europe*: so beautified within, and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Cost and Architecture, seem to be met together in the composition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glass in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the costly Imagery, and arched Buttresses in the Chappel at *Westminster* (before the late defacements of those *Cathedrals*) might serve as helps to set forth the full beauties of it. The Town and Territories, anciently under the command of the Bishops of it, whose Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-domini* or *Vidames*, were at first eligible by the Bishops, and accomptable to them, but by degrees engrossing all power unto themselves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamate* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardie*. The present *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaune*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monsieur de Luyne* (chief favourite to King *Lewis* the 13th) obtained in mariage the daughter and heir of the former *Vidames*, with whom he had the Town and Castle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of these parts, and a rent of 9000 *l. per annum*; honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaune* and Peer of *France*, *Anno* 1620. or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, pass we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Veromandui*: the faireſt and largest part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferiour to the best of *France*, in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Scissons*, called anciently *Augusta Suessionum*, the chief City of the *Suessones* or *Suessiones*: and the last Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; lost by *Siagrius*, Governor for the Western Emperor, to *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the division of his Kingdome, made the Seat Royal of *Clotair* the son of this *Clovis*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick*, the sons of *Clotair*, from hence entituled Kings of *Scissons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardie* and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Scissons* having long since lost the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of late times been made the honourarie Title of the Counts of *Scissons*, a branch of the royal stock of *Bourbon*; a Bishops See, and situate on the River of *Aisne*. 2 *Laon*, a Bishops See also, the Bishop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, and Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3 *Noyon*, in *Latine*, *Noviodunum*, an Episcopal See also. 4 *Chapelle*, a strong piece, one of the best outworks of *Paris* against the *Netherlands*. 5 *D' Ourlans*, 6 *La Fere* and *Han*, places of great strength also, but more near the Frontiers. And 7 S. *Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Augusta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards S. *Quintin*, from that Saint here worshipped, as the *Patron* and *Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and so esteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundie*) and King *Lewis* the 11th: the first of which never digested the restoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no less then 400000 Crowns; the later never would forgive the Earl of S. *Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his service. A Town of greater note in succeeding times, for the famous battel of S. *Quintins*, *Anno* 1557. wherein King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the help of the *English*, under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themselves Masters of the Town, and thereby grew so formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guise* was in post haste sent for out of *Italie*, (where his affairs began to prosper) to look unto the safety of *France* it self. As for the fortunes of this part, it was once an Earldom of it self, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the most in *France*; it being by one *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in pursuance of the quarrel of the house of *Anjou* surprised *Charles* the Simple, and carried him prisoner to *Peronnes*, where he after died; for which deservedly hanged by *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine* the son of *Charles*, when he became possessed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the daughter and heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in mariage unto *Hugh* surnamed the Great, one of the younger sons of King *Henry* the first of *France*, succeeding in her right

into

into the title and Eſtate of Earl of *Vermandois*, and by that name renowned in the firſt wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Neece of this *Hugh*, the daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldeſt ſon maried to *Philip* of *Elſatz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that Eſtate; but ſhortly after given by the ſame *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dower with *Iſabel* his Neece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*, unto *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, and ſince united to that Crown; not giving ſince that time the title of Earle or Duke to any, for ought I can finde. *Normandy.*

III. More towards *Hainalt* and *Lorrein* lieth the Countrey of *RETHELOIS*, ſo called of *Rethel* the chief Town: well fortified as the reſt of the Frontier places; but of moſt note amongſt the *French*, in that the eldeſt ſons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have uſually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Rethel*; united to that Family by the mariage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, *Anno* 1312, or thereabouts. 2 St. *Monhaud*, a Town of conſequence and ſtrength. 3 *Sygni*, a ſtrong piece belonging to the Marqueſs of *Vieu-ville*. 4 *Chaſteau-Portian*, of more beauty but of like importance. The Armes of the Earls and Dukes of *Rethel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented *Or*.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIERASCHE*, the laſt part of the *higher Picardie*, we have the Town of *Guiſe*, of ſome note for the Caſtle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorrein* (on the borders whereof it ſtandeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guiſe*. A Family which within a little compaſs of time produced two *Cardinals*, the one entituled of *Guiſe*, the other of *Lorrein*; ſix Dukes, that is to ſay, the Dukes of *Guiſe*, *Mayenne*, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Cheureuſe*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and beſides many daughters maried into the beſt houſes in *France*, one maried to *James* the 5th King of the *Scots*. The firſt, and he that gave the riſe unto all the reſt of this potent Family, was *Claud*, ſon to *Rene* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, and husband to *Antoniette* Daughter to the Duke of *Vendoſme*; in reſpect of which alliance, he was honoured with this title. The Father (amongſt other children) of *Mary* Q. of *Scots*, Wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the ſixth, the firſt Monarch of *Britain*. The ſecond was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, reſiſted the ſiege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Mets*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Q. *Mary*, and was at laſt treacherouſly ſlain at the ſiege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltrot*, (on the inſtigation of ſome of the chiefs of that faction) *Anno* 1563. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the *Proteſtants*, who contrived the great *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and almoſt diſpoſſeſſed *Henry* the third, of all *France*; He began the holy league, and was finally ſlain at *Blois*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we muſt know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorrein*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guiſe* to *Frederick* the ſecond ſon of *John*, and *Charles* the third ſon of *Rene*, both the firſt of thoſe names; before *Claud* of *Lorrein* was advanced to the title of Duke: as being part of the Eſtate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Join-ville*, of whom we ſpake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of moſt note next to *Guiſe* it ſelf, is 2 *Ripemont* on the South of *Guiſe*. 3 *Chaſtelet* upon the border towards *Luxembourg*, a ſtrong Town and one of the beſt outworks of *France*. 4 *Mazuers*, upon the *Maes* or *Meuſe*, a place of great ſtrength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Nevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their deſcent from the houſe of *Rethel*: fortified with a ſtrong Citadell for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garriſoned by the *French* King, for defence of this border: layed to the Government of *Champagne* though a Town of *Picardie*, and therefore made by ſome to belong to that Province alſo.

As for the ſtate of this whole Province, I do not finde that it was ever paſſed over by the *French* Kings unto any one hand: as almoſt all the reſt of *France* had been at ſome time or other, but diſtracted into divers Seigneuries and ſeveral Lordſhips (all of them abſolute in themſelves, and ſcarce affording to the *French* King the ſlight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have ſeen before: ſome of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiſcations, ſome by lawful mariages, and others by conqueſt; ſome held of *England*, ſome of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and laſtly of the Dukes of *Burgundie*, as Lords of thoſe Provinces: thoſe which depend upon *England*, being ſeized on by *Charles* the 7th, on the loſs of *Normandy* by the *Engliſh*; as thoſe which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his ſon, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the battel of *Nancie*, *Anno* 1476.

4. *NORMANDIE.*

NORMANDIE is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Some* and part of *Picardie*; on the Weſt, with *Bretagne*, and ſome part of the Ocean; on the North, with the *Engliſh* Channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* ſpecially ſo called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunenſis ſecunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Roven*: and in the greatneſs of the *French* Empire had the name of *Neuſtria*, corruptly ſo called for *Weſtria*; the name of *Weſtria* or *Weſtenrich*, being given by ſome to this part of the Realm of *Weſt-France*, as that of *Auſtria* or *Oſtenrich* to a part of *Eaſt-France*. Afterwards being beſtowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles* the *Simple*, it was called *Normandie*.

In this Countrey is the little Seigneury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore ſaid to be a free and abſolute Kingdome; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the ſeventh King of the *French*. Who having abuſed the wife of one *Gautier de Ividot* (ſo called becauſe of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himſelf; to make ſome ſatisfaction to his Family for ſo great an injury, erected the Lordſhip of *Ividot* to the eſtate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*)

Normandy. ter) all the prerogative of a free and absolute Monarch; as to make Lawes, coyn money, and the like. From hence the *French* call a man that hath but small demains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d' Ividot*. At last, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the house of *Bellay*, in *Bretagne*.

But to proceed from the poor Kingdom of *Ividot*, to the rich Dukedom of *Normandie*, for largeness of Extent, multitudes of People, number and statelines of Cities, fertility of Soyl, and the commodiousnes of the Seas, it may worthily be accompted the chief Province of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through it; as do also 2 the *Orne*, and 3 the *Aven*: not to say any thing of 4 *Robee*, 5 *Ante*, and 6 *Reinelle*, and many others of less note. In length it reacheth 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narrowest: containing in that round the largest and fairest Corn-fields that are to be seen in all *France*. Of all other naturall commodities it is extreme plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldnes of the *Climate* admits not of, or sparingly at the best, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the East: at this time thought to be of a more sharp and subtil wit, than the rest of the *French*; *Scavans au possible en proceces & plaideries* (saith *Ortelius* of them) especially in the quillets and quirks of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*, the *Lower* containing the Sea coasts, and the *Higher*, the more Inland parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Constance*, a Bishops See, the Spire or Steeple of whose *Cathedral*, is easily discernible afar off, both by Sea and Land; and serveth Saylers for a Landmark. From hence the Countrey hereabouts hath the name of *Constantin*. 2 *Auranches*, situate on a rock with a fair prospect over the *English* Channel, but more near to *Bretagn*, than the other; the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolemy*; now a Bishops See. 3 *Caen*, (*Cadomum* in *Latin*) an Episcopal See, as the other; Strong, populous, and well built, seated upon the River *Orne*, second in reputation of the the whole Province: but more especially famous, for the Sepulchre of *William* the *Conqueror*, the University founded here by King *Henry* the 5th, and for the long resistance which it made against him, in his Conquest of *Normandie*. 4 *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocassium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Countrey round about hath the name of *Belsin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Episcopal. One of the Bishops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the *Conquerour*, by the Mothers side, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on some just displeasure committed prisoner. For which, when quarrelled by the *Pope*, (the Clergie being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this answer, that he had committed the Earl of *Kent*, not the Bishop of *Bayeux*: By which distinction he avoided the *Popes* displeasure. 5 *Roven*, of old *Rothomagum*, pleasantly seated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Riverets of *Robee*, and *Reinelle*, which keep it very sweet and clean. The City for the most part well built, of large circuit, and great trading; the second for bigness, wealth, and beauty in all *France*: anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, and an Archbishops See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a Reverend but no beautiful fabrick) is to be seen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the sixth: which when an envious Courtier perswaded *Charles* the eighth to deface; *God forbid* (saith he) *that I should wrong him, being dead*, whom living *all the power of* France *was not able to withstand*; adding withall, that he deserved a better Monument than the *English* had bestowed upon him. And to say truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, short of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to so great a vertue. 6 *Falaise*, upon the River *Ante*, once of strength and note; the dwelling place of *Arlette*, a Skinners Daughter, and the Mother of *William* the Conquerour: whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town took such notice of (as he beheld her in a dance amongst other Damosels) that he sent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodesty that night said to be so great, that either in regard thereof, or in spite to her Son, the *English* called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*; the word continuing to this day. 7 *Verneville* (*Vernolium* in *Latin*) in former times accompted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandie*, against the *French*. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the first, that *Philip* surnamed *Augustus*, the *French* King had laid siege unto it, he should say these words; *I will never turn my back till I have confronted those cowardly French men*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*; and came so unexpected upon his Enemies, that they raised their siege, and hastned homewards. 8 *Alanson*, of most note for giving the title of Earl, and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*; beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and continuing for eight successions till the death of *Charles* the fourth Duke of this line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9 *Lysieux*, on the *North-east* of *Alanson*, a Bishops See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10 *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæsar* in these parts. 11 *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Ptolemie* called *Mediolanium*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and still a rich and flourishing Town: the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the person of *Lewis* a younger son of *Philip* the third; whose son called *Philip* by his marriage with *Joan* daughter of *Lewis Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town with many fair Estates in this Countrey which depended on it, being seised on by the *French* in the time of *Charles* the son of this *Philip*, for some practises against that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the third and last King of this house in compensation for the same, *Anno* 1406. the title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good sum of ready money, and a pension of 1200 *l.* sterling yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie*, and *Champagne*. 12 *Grisors*, a strong Frontire Town towards *France*, whilest *Normandie* was in the hands of the

English,

Engliſh, or under its own *Dukes* and *Princes*; notable for the many repulſes given unto the *French*; And 13 *Pontoyſe*, another Frontire upon *France*, ſo called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyſe* (which divides *France* from *Normandie*) on which the Town is ſituate, and by which well fortified on that ſide; but taken at the ſecond coming of *Charles* the 7th, after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noiſe only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, commander at that time of the Province, and the *Engliſh* Forces. 14 *Albemarl*, contractedly *Aumerl*, moſt memorable for giving the title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderneſs* in *England*; and of *Duke*, to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *York*. More towards the Sea 15 S. *Valeries*, ſeated on a ſmall but ſecure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-Haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River ſo named, opening into a large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, eſpecially for the *Newfound-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the 4th in the midſt of his troubles; When the Confederates of the *Guiſian* faction called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almoſt all the reſt of his Cities, compelled him to betake himſelf hither, (from whence he might more eaſily hoiſe Sail for *England*) and called him in deriſion the *King* of *Dieppe*. 17 *New-Haven*, the Port Town to *Roven* and *Paris*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Roven*; by leſſer unto *Pont de l' Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Roven* formerly broken down by the *Engliſh*, to ſecure the Town, lying unrepaired to this day by means of the *Pariſians*, for the better trading of their City. By the *French* it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franciſcopolis* by the *Latines*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the *Engliſh*) by King *Francis* the firſt, and from thence ſo named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde* and his faction into the hands of Q. *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of *caution*, for the landing of ſuch forces as ſhe was to ſend to their relief, in the firſt civil War of *France* about Religion: and by the help of the ſame faction taken from her again, as ſoon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakned for the preſent, but made uncapable of any ſuccours out of *England* for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18 *Harflew*, and 19 *Honflew*, both ſituate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the preſent, becauſe not capable of any great ſhipping, nor uſeful in the way of Trade by reaſon of the interpoſition of *New-Haven*, betwixt them and the Sea; the former famous notwithſtanding in our *Engliſh* Stories, as the firſt Town which that victorious Prince K. *Henry* the fifth attempted and took in, in *France*. 20 *Churburg* (the *Latines* call it *Cæſaris Burgum*) on the Sea ſide alſo, the laſt Town which the *Engliſh* held in the Dukedom of *Normandie*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till aliened by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the compoſition before mentioned; but being garriſoned by the *Engliſh* for K. *Henry* the ſixth, it held out a ſiege of ſeven moneths againſt the forces of *France*. Here are alſo in this Dukedom, the Towns of 21 *Tankerville*, and 22 *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earls, to the Noble Families of the *Greyes*, and *Bourchiers* in *England*: as alſo thoſe of 23 *Harcourt*, 25 *Longueville*, and 25 *Aumal*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to ſome of the beſt Houſes in *France*. *Normandy*.

There belonged alſo to this Dukedom, but rather as ſubject to the Dukes of *Normandie* than part of *Normandie* it ſelf, the County of *PERCH*; ſituate betwixt it & the Province of *La Beauſſe*, of which now reckoned for a part: and was divided into the higher, and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1 *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch Govet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou* the ſecond Earl of this County, the Founder or repairer of it; to difference it from another of that name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2 *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*, of moſt note in the higher *Perch*, eſpecially for giving the title of an Earl, to *John*, the youngeſt Son of K. *Henry* the ſecond, after King of *England*; as in the times ſucceeding to the Lord *Edmund Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerſet*. The whole firſt made a diſtinct eſtate, in the perſon of *Arnulph* of *Heſdin* the firſt Earl hereof. Whoſe ſon and ſucceſſor named *Rotrou* (of great note in the wars of *Spain* againſt the *Moors* in behalf of *Alfonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, *Anno* 1110) by *Maud* the natural daughter of *Henry* the firſt of *England*, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William* as they croſſed the Seas, had one only daughter named *Magdalen*, (or as ſome ſay *Margarite*) the wife of *Garcias* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of K. *Sancho* ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have ſince deſcended. But this Family being extinct in a ſhort time after, the Eſtate fell unto the *Engliſh* as Dukes of *Normandie*, and ſo continued till the ſeizure of *Normandie* by the *French* in the time of K. *John*. After which time the title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanſon*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Amou*, and of *Charles de Valois* Earl of *Alanſon*; in which houſe of *Alanſon* it continued, and was commonly the title of the eldeſt Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Countrey of *Normandie*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, ſpoken of before; the *Bellocaſſi*, or *Venelocaſſi*, about *Roven*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenſes* about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered firſt by the powerful *Romans*, the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. Theſe laſt a people of the *North*, inhabiting thoſe Countreys which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Sweithland*, and *Norwey*: united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their *Northernly* ſituation; as in our Hiſtory and deſcription of thoſe Kingdoms we ſhall ſhew more fully. Out of thoſe parts they made their firſt irruptions about the year 700. when they ſo ranſacked and plagued the *maritime Towns* of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inſerted in the Letany, *From Plague, Peſtilence, and the fury of the Normans, good Lord &c.* To quit theſe people, and to ſecure himſelf, *Charles* the *Simple*, gave them a part of *Neuſtria* (from them ſince called *Normannia*) or *Normandie*, together with the Soveraignty of *Bretagne*, enjoyed by them and their poſterity for many ages. Their firſt *Duke* was *Rollo*, *Anno* 912. from whom in a direct line, the ſixth was

Normandie *William* the Baſtard, Conqueror, and King of *England*, *Anno* 1067. After this, *Normandie* continued *Engliſh* till the daies of King *John*: when *Philip Auguſtus* ſeized on all his Eſtates in *France*, as forfeitures, *Anno* 1202. The *Engliſh* then poſſeſſing the Dukedoms of *Normandie* and *Aquitaine*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Tourreine*, *Maine*, *Poictou*, and *Limoſin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Countrey, than the Kings of *France* themſelves poſſeſſed. The *Engliſh* after this recovered this Dukedom by the valour of King *Henry* the fifth, and having held it 30 years, loſt it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the ſixth: the *Engliſh* then diſtracted with domeſtick factions. After which double Conqueſt of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* diſtruſting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withall a ſtubborn and untractable people, have miſerably oppreſſed them with tolls and taxes, keeping them alwaies poor and in low condition: inſomuch as it may be ſaid of the generality of them, that they are the moſt *beggerly* people that ever had the luck to live in ſo rich a Countrey. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandie*.

912	1	*Rollo* of *Norwey*, made the firſt Duke of *Normandie*, by *Charles* the *Simple*; by whoſe perſwaſion baptized, and called *Robert*.
917	2	*William* ſurnamed *Longeſpee*, from the length of his Sword.
942	3	*Richard* the Son of *Longeſpee*.
980	4	*Richard* the II. Son of the former.
1026	5	*Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the ſecond.
1028	6	*Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the third.
1035	7	*William* the baſe Son of *Robert*, ſubdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the *Conqueror*.
1093	8	*Robert* II. eldeſt Son of *William* the *Conqueror*, put by the Kingdome of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refuſed the Crown of *Hieruſalem*, then newly conquered by the forces of the *Chriſtian* Princes of the Weſt. Outed at laſt, impriſoned and deprived of ſight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miſerable life in the Caſtle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloceſter*.
1102	9	*Henry* the firſt King of *England*.
1135	10	*Stephen* King of *England*, and D. of *Normandie*.
	11	*Henry Plantagenet* D. of *Normandie*, and after King of *England*, of that name the ſecond.
1161	12	*Henry* the III. ſurnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the ſecond, made D. of *Normandie* by his Father.
1189	13	*Richard* IV. ſurnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, King of *England* and D. of *Normandie*, Son of *Henry* the ſecond.
1199	14	*John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandie*, outed of his eſtates in *France* by King *Philip Auguſtus*, *Anno* 1202. before whom he was accuſed of the murther of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the ditches of the Caſtle of *Rowen*, where he was impriſoned; but ſentenced *cauſa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this *Normandy* ſtill remained united to the Crown of *France* (the title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the 5th (during the life time of his Father) till the Conqueſt of it by the valour of K. *Henry* the 5th, *Anno* 1420. which was 218 years after it had been ſeized on by King *Philip Auguſtus*; and having been holden by the *Engliſh* but 30 years, was loſt again *Anno* 1450 in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*; ſaving that *Lewis* the 11th, the better to content the confederate Princes, conferred it in *Appennage* on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, *Ann.* 1465. but within two Moneths after took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Aſſociates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly ſay. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who ſaith, that he had ſeen raiſed in *Normandie*, 95000 *l.* ſterling money, which was a vaſt ſum of money in thoſe times. As alſo by this teſtimony of the D. of *Burgundie*, who held King *Lewis* the 11th to be weakned a whole third part in his eſtate, by giving *Normandie* in portion to the D. of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much, as the Kings *Treaſurers* and *Tollmaſters* are pleaſed to draw out of it.

The Armes of *Normandie* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the ſingle *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy* of *Aquitain*, make the Armes of *England*.

5. *BRETAGNE.*

BRETAGNE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Normandie*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poictou*; on all other parts with the *Engliſh*, or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South ſide with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but ſo as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South ſide of that River, betwixt it and *Poictou*.

It was firſt called *Armorica* from its ſituation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The general opinion

is

is, that it took this name from the neighbouring *Britans*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling againſt the Emperor *Gratian*, *Anno* 385. by whom this Province was ſubdued, and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this people hath ſtill no ſmall affinity with the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; there being a tradition alſo, that the *Britans* who firſt came over hither and maried the Women of this Countrey, cut out their tongues for fear they ſhould corrupt the Language of their poſterity. And to this Conqueſt by the *Britans*, theſe old Verſes give ſome further countenance, *Bretagne.*

Vicit Aremoricas *animoſa* Britannia *Gentes*;
Et dedit impoſito, nomina priſca, jugo.

That is to ſay,

Gaul-Armorick, the *Britans* overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Notwithſtanding, the moſt probable opinion ſeemeth to be, that it took this name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* People, mentioned by *Plinie* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the invaſions and incurſions of the barbarous Nations: though poſſibly thoſe *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica* might be as well ſome Colony of the *Iſland-Britans*, as the *Belgæ* a great Nation in the Iſle of *Britain*, are ſaid to have been a People of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reaſon is, becauſe there was no Author before *Geofry* of *Monmouth* who takes notice of this tranſporting of the *Inſular-Britans* by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no ancient Author *Greek* or *Latin* making mention of it. And for the *Welch* or *Britiſh* words which are ſtill remaining in the language, they are conceived to be no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* tongue; which was originally the ſame with the antient *Britiſh*, as is elſewhere proved.

The Province is in compaſs 200 *French* Leagues: Pleaſant and fruitful, beautified with many ſhady Woods, and ſpacious Downs; ſufficiently well ſtored with all manner of grain, but deſtitute of Wine and the choicer fruits, by reaſon of the Northerly ſituation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High Bretagne*, and *Baſſe* or *Low Bretagne*: the firſt containing the more Eaſtern, and the laſt the Weſtern parts hereof. Neither of the two much furniſhed with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the neighbourhood of the Sea ſupplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens, thoſe of moſt note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1 S. *Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is incompaſſed. A Biſhops See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French*, and *Spaniſh*, who uſe here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes ſpoyled by the *Engliſh*, in their Wars with *France*, eſpecially ſince the time of King *Henry* the ſeventh. 2 *Blavet*, a ſafe but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the ſame name alſo. Impregnably fortified by the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1590. when taking opportunity of the broile in *France*, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the male iſſue of King *Henry* the ſecond, he thought by this door to have entred on the whole Eſtate, but quitted it again on the general peace made between the Crowns. 3 S. *Brieu*, (by the *Latins* called *Fanum Sancti Brioci*) a Biſhops See, and a well-traded Port, ſeated upon the *Engliſh* Channel. 4 *Vannes*, a Biſhops See alſo, ſituate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cæſar* placeth in this tract, and makes them to be the mightieſt People of all the *Armoricans*, ſtrongeſt in ſhipping, and beſt ſeen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Croiſſie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Weſtern parts hereof, there is 6 *Breſt*, ſeated upon a ſpacious Bay of the Weſtern Ocean; the Key and Bulwark of this Countrey, and the goodlieſt Harbour of all *France*. 7 *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8 S. *Pol de Leon*, and 9 *Triguier*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſituate on the Sea-ſhore, and both the chief Towns of the *Oſſiſmi*, whom *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coaſt: the firſt of them neighboured by the *Promontory* which they call *Le Four*, the *Govæum* of *Ptolemy*. 10 *Kemper Corentin*, a Biſhops See alſo, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cournovaille* (and called ſo for the ſame reaſon as *Cornwall* in *England* is) ſituate not far from the *Foreland* which they call *Penmarch*, oppoſite to *Le Four* ſpoken of before. A Sea Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can finde. 11 *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Breſt*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1 *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nannetes*, by *Ptolemy* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, ſtrong, and populous City, ſeated upon the *Loir*; a Biſhops See, and the *Metropolis* of *Bretagne*. 2 *Renes*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones* (called *Condate* by *Ptolemy*) now a Biſhops See, and the Parliament City for this County, eſtabliſhed here *Anno* 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great Reſort, though not fully two miles in compaſs. 3 *Dol*, an Epiſcopal City alſo, but unwholſomly ſeated amongſt Mariſhes. 4 *Dinan*, a rich and pleaſant Town on the River *Rance*. 5 *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*. 6 *Rohan*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, deſcended from a branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the ſecond Daughter of Duke *Francis* the firſt, and Wife of *John* then Viſcount of *Rohan*. 7 *Anſenis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and the head of his Eſtates in *Bretagne*. Of which poſſeſſed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mercoeur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of the branches of this Ducal Family. 8 *Chaſteau-Briant*, a ſtrong piece on the borders of *Normandie*. 9 *Cliſſon*, the chief Town of the Dutchy of *Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-ſide of the *Loir*; a ſtrong Town, and fortified with a very good Caſtle.

Bretagne. The *Britans*, whosoever they were in their first Original, were questionless one of the first Nations that possessed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conquest of the *Romans*. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the sute of the *Insular Britans*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, as (*Geofrey* of *Monmouth* telleth the story) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a complete Army to their aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, *Anno* 433. Of whose posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken by the puissance of *Charles* the *Great*, abandoned the name of Kings, and satisfied themselves with the title of Earls; assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, *Anno* 874. but as some say, *Anno* 859. which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter* of *Dreux*, the sixteenth Earl, challenging his Estate in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy* of *Thouars* her third Husband, the better to secure his title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassallage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the ninth; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of *Bretagne*; as being of the Bloud Royal of *France*, descended lineally from *Robert* the first Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Grosse*. Yet notwithstanding this subjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reserved unto themselves the Soveraign powers; as to write themselves, *By the Grace of God*, the priviledge of coyning Gold, &c. and stood so high upon their termes, that *Francis* the last Duke, denyed to do his Homage to *Charles* the seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former custome. For which bring quarrelled by *Lewis* the eleventh, the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business than his Father was, he joyned himself with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie* in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruine, which he endevoured to avoid. For in conclusion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poysoned; *Charles* of *Burgundie* lost his life at the Battel of *Nancie*, 1476. and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis* this Duke having embarked himself in the same troublous Ocean, must needs suffer shipwrack with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*; The Duke overcharged with melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne*, his Daughter and Heir, in the power of *Charles* the eighth, the Son and Successor of that *Lewis*: who contracts a mariage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many impediments which might have hindred this mariage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Archduke *Maximilians* Daughter; but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of age, at the time of the Contract. 2 *Anne* the Dutchess was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held unvalid also, because that being his Homager, she could not bestow her self without his consent. 3 *Maximilian* had by proxie maried her, which mariage he consummated by a Ceremony in those daies unusual. For his Ambassador attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutchess, taking possession thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Lawes of the Church, and therefore of no power to hinder his pursute of this mariage, so advantagious to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we shall see anon: having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under several Titles have governed the Estate thereof; according the best light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britans *of* Gaul-Armorick.

385 1 *Conan* placed her by *Maximus*.
2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conar*.
3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*.
4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Son of *Solomon*.
5 *Bodis*, Son of *Auldran*.
6 *Hoel*, Son of *Bodis*.
7 *Hoel* II. Son of *Hoel* the first.
8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the second.
9 *Hoel* III. Son of *Alain*.
10 *Solomon* II. Son of *Hoel* the third.
11 *Alain* II. Grandchild to *Solomon* the second, the last King of *Bretagne*, of the race of *Conan*: who dying without Issue, left his Kingdom unto many *Competitors*, by whom distracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at last subdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next succeeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Insomuch, as after the murther of two or three Usurpers of the royal title, *Alain*, surnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aside that invidious name of King, and would be called only Earl of *Bretagne*. His Successors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

874 1 *Alain le Rebre*.
2 *Indicael* and *Colodock* Sons of *Alain*.
3 *Mathrudon*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
4 *Alain* II. Son of *Mathrudon*.
5 *Conan*, descended from King *Solomon* the third.
6 *Geofry*, Son of *Conan*.
7 *Alain* III. Son of *Geofry*.
8 *Conan* II. Son of *Alain*.
9 *Hoel*, Sisters Son of *Conan* the second.
10 *Alain* IV. called *Fergent*, Son of *Hoel*.
11 *Conan* III. Son of *Alain*.
12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
1131 13 *Conan* IV. Son of *Eudon*.
1172 14 *Geofry* II. Son of *Henry* the third, King of *England*, Husband of *Constance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the fourth.

1186

1186 15 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofrey*.
1202 16 *Peter* of *Breux*, in right of *Alice* his wife the half Sister of *Arthur*.
1250 17 *John*, the first Duke of *Bretagne*.
1287 18 *John* II. Son of *John* the first.
1305 19 *Arthur* II. Son of *John* the second.
1312 20 *John* III. Son of *Arthur* the second.
1341 21 *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Brothers Son of *Arthur*.
1399 22 *John* V. Son of *John* of *Montfort*.
1442 23 *Francis* the Son of *John* the fifth.
1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
1457 25 *Arthur* III. second Son of *John* Earl of *Montfort*.
1458 26 *Francis* II. Son of *Richard* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* the 3d, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom ſufficiently before.
1484 27 *Charles* the 8th, *French* King, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis* the 2d.
1498 28 *Lewis* the 12th, *French* King ſucceeded on the death of *Charles*, in the right of the ſaid *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himſelf from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11th.
1515 29 *Francis* the III. of *Bretagne*, and the firſt of *France*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Lewis* the 12th and of *Anne* of *Bretagne*: by whom being made the Father of ſo many Children, that he had little cauſe to fear that the Crown would be ſeparated from his Houſe; in the year 1532 being the ſeventeenth of his reign and Government, cauſed an Act to paſs, with the conſent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inſeparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means diveſted his poſterity of it. For his male iſſue failing in King *Henry* the 3d, the rights hereof deſcended on the Heirs general; that is to ſay, on *Iſabel*, Daughter of *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſecond, and Neece to the ſaid *Francis* the firſt; and after her deceaſe (dying without iſſue) on the Lady *Katharine* her Siſter, maried to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. For whom when *Philip* of *Spain* claimed this Eſtate, the *French* pretended a Law againſt it of their own deviſing, *viz.* That no Eſtate being incorporated to that Crown, could be aliened from it. A proper Law, and couſen *German* to the *Salique*; but ſuch as ſerved their turn by the help of the *Engliſh*, who deſired not to have the *Spaniards* ſo near Neighbours to them.

Moſt of our former Earls of *Richmond* were Earls and Dukes of this Houſe. Their Armes were *Ermins*.

6. *The Eſtates of* ANJOU.

THe Eſtates of *ANJOU*, taking them in the full latitude and extent thereof, bounded on the Eaſt with *La Beauſſe*; on the Weſt, with *Bretagne*, and part of *Poictou*; on the North, with *Normandie*; and on the South, with part of *Berry*, and *Poictou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three ſmall Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; moſt commonly accounted of as parts and members of *La Beauſſe*, the ancient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andes*, as *Cæſar* (or the *Andegavii*, as *Plinie*) cals them, the *Turones*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunenſis Tertia*.

The Countrey for the moſt part is very fruitful and pleaſant, eſpecially in *Tourein*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loir*. *Anjou* is ſomewhat the more hilly, but otherwiſe little inferior to *Tourein*, affording plenty of white Wines, the beſt in *France*; and yeelding from thoſe Hils above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence: the chief whereof are *Mayenne*, 2 *Vienne*, 3 *Dive*, and 4 *Sartre*.

1 *ANJOU*, called *Andegavia* by the *Latines*, is ſituate in the midſt betwixt *Maine* and *Tourein*, ſo called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of theſe parts. Principal Cities are, 1 *Angiers*, (by *Ptolemie* call *Juliomagns*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Biſhop, reckoning in it 15 Pariſhes beſides the Cathedral. It is ſeated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore choſen for the ſeat of an *Univerſity*, founded here by *Lewis* the ſecond Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, *Anno* 1388. 2 *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaſter*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* ſo much delighted, that he cauſed all the Children that he had by *Katharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterward Dukes of *Somerſet*, and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorſet*. This Town came to the houſe of *Lancaſter*, by the mariage of *Blanch* of *Artoys*, unto *Edmund* ſurnamed *Crouchback*, ſecond Son to our *Henry* the third; created by his Father, the firſt Earl of *Lancaſter*. Memorable in theſe latter times for giving the Title of a Dutcheſs to Madam *Katharine*, the beloved Miſtreſs of K. *Henry* the 4th, by whom ſhe was mother of *Cæſar* now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and of *Alexander*, not long ſince the *Grand Prior* of *France*. With reference to which, the ſecond Son of the Duke of *Vendoſme* is honoured at this preſent with the title of Duke of *Beaufort*: as the eldeſt with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercoeur*. 3 *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Engliſh* and the *French*, wherein the *Engliſh* loſt the day, and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* the fifth, was there unfortunately ſlain, *Anno* 1422. 4 *Saumur*, pleaſantly ſituate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of thoſe of the *Reformed* Religion: of whom it is the only entire Univerſity in this Kingdom; eſpecially famous for the learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Pleſſis*, ſometimes the Governor hereof. 5 *Loches*, ſeated on the River *Indre*, the Caſtle whereof being mounted on a ſteep high Rock, is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt

Anjou. peeces of all *France*. 6 *La Fleſche*, of ſpecial name at the preſent for a Colledge of *Jeſuites*, one of the faireſt in this Kingdome. The word in the *French* tongue ſignifieth an Arrow (whence thoſe who make Bowes and Arrowes have the name of *Fleſchers*.) At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another Colledge of them, called *D' Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily compoſed this enſuing *Diſtich*;

Arcum Nola *dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam*
Gallia: *quis Funem, quem meruere, dabit?*

That is to ſay,

Nola *the* Bow, *and* France *the* Shaft *did bring:*
But who ſhall help them to the Hempen-ſtring?

2 On the South-eaſt of *Anjou*, lieth the Countrey of *TOUREIN*, the ancient Seat of the *Turones*: which, for the wholſomneſs of the Air, the pleaſantneſs of the Countrey, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by ſome called *The Garden of France*. Principal Cities in it, 1 *Amboiſe*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the faireſt Caſtles in *France*, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulneſs of the Proſpect. 2 *Tours*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cæſarodunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*; the Metropolis of *Lugdunenſis tertia*, and an Archbiſhops See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, ſituate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a moſt ſweet and pleaſing Countrey. Famous in that thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of S. *Hugo*, at which they uſed to iſſue out to their Aſſemblies in the Fields, had the name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as ſome others think, as the Diſciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Goodfellow*) which they call S. *Hugo*, in regard they had their firſt meetings, for the moſt part, in the nights; as had the Primitive *Chriſtians* in the times of their Perſecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculouſly) derive the name from the firſt words of an Apologie which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were *Huc nos venimus*: fancying, that as the *Proteſtants* did derive that Appellation from the words *Proteſtantes*, and *Proteſtamur*, ſo often uſed by them in their *Apologie* to *Charles* the fifth; ſo from thoſe words *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Huonots*. But more aſſuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by *Charles Martell*, *Mayre* of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of *France*, againſt an Army of 400000 *Moors*, led by *Abderamen*, Lieutenant General in *Spain*, for *Evelid* or *Iſcam* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 loſt their lives in the place, *Anno* 734. 3 *Laudun*. 4 *Richelieu*, pleaſantly ſeated in a rich and flouriſhing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note till the time of the late great Cardinall of *Richelieu*, who took name from hence; by whom it was made one of the neateſt Towns (for the bigneſs of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the titles of a Dukedom and *Pairrie* of *France*.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we ſhall ſpeak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls, of the houſe of *Blais*; conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald* or *Thibauld* his eldeſt Son, (his ſecond Son named *Stephen* ſucceeding in *Champagne*); who in the year 1043. was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Charles Martell* Earl of *Anjou*, and this Province ſeized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Reſidence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the ſeizure of *Anjou*, and all the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces in *France*, on the ſentence paſſed upon King *John*. After which time diſmembred from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Son of King *Charles* the ſixth, with the ſtile and title of Duke of *Tourein*; and he deceaſing without Iſſue, it was beſtowed with the ſame title, on *Charles* the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the life of his Father); the ſame who afterwards ſucceeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Priſoner by the *Engliſh* at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept priſoner 25 years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* the twelfth.

3 On the North ſide of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandie*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomannenſis* in our *Latine* writers. So called of the *Cenomanni* the old Inhabitants of this tract in the time of *Cæſar*; ſome of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other nations of the *Galls* had in the former time paſſed over the *Alpes*, and there poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe Countreys, which now paſſe under the name and accompt of *Lombardie*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Mans*, *Cenomannenſium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolemie* called *Vindinum*; ſeated on the meeting of *Huine* and *Sartre*; the principall of the Province, and a Biſhops See: moſt memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Siſters Son of *Charlemaigne*, one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*; (the Subject of many notable Poems, under the name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioſo*, beſides many of the old *Romances*) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2 *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a river of the ſame name, (*Meduana* in *Latine*) the title of the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Guiſe*: famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the *League* againſt *Henry* the 4th; A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in ſo ill a cauſe. 3 *Vitrun*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4 *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*: of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *Laval*, an ancient Family, allied unto the houſes of *Vendoſme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and others of the beſt of *France*. Few elſe of any note in this little County; which once ſubſiſting of its ſelf under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at laſt united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the mariage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie*, the laſt Earl hereof, to *Foulk*

Earl

Earl of *Anjou*, *Anno* 1083. or thereabouts: the Fortunes of which great Eſtate it hath alwaies followed, ſince that time. *Anjou.*

But as for *Anjou* it ſelf, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles* the *Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his valour ſhewn againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 870. Which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundie*, and of *Robert* who ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles* the *Simple* for the Crown it ſelf, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the purſuit of this great quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretenſions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, ſurnamed the *Great*: who to make good his claim to the Crown, againſt *Lewis* the 4th, Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Countrey of *Gaſtinois*, on *Geofry* ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great ſtickler in his cauſe, in whoſe race it continued near 300 years. How the two Counties of *Main* and *Tourein* were joyned to it, hath been ſhewn before. *Geofry* the Son of *Foulk* the third, maried *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the fourth Emperor: from whom proceeded *Henry* the ſecond, King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Eſtates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* the ninth, on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* the fourth, was made King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* the fifth, (*Tourein* being firſt diſmembred from it) in the perſon of *Lewis* of *France* his ſecond Brother, to whom this fair Eſtate was given, as ſecond Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and conſequently the next Heir to *Charles de Valois* the laſt Earl hereof (the King his Brother yeelding up all his right unto him) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the eleventh. The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veſted with the Diadems of ſeveral Countreys, following in this order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the Line of *Saxonie*.

870 1 *Robert* of *Saxonie*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*.

875 2 *Robert* II. Competitor for the Crown of *France* with *Charles* the *Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the laſt King.

922 3 *Hugh* the *great*, Lord of *Gaſtinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Conſtable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.

926 4 *Geofry Gryſogonelle*, by the Donation of *Hugh* the *great*, whoſe party he had followed in the War of *France*, with great fidelity and courage.

938 5 *Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, the Son of *Geofry*.

987 6 *Geofry* II. ſurnamed *Martell*, for his great valour.

1047 7 *Geofry* III. Nephew of *Geofry* 2d by one of his Siſters.

1075 8 *Foulk* II Brother of *Geofry* 3d gave *Gaſtinois*, (which was his proper inheritance) to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might recover the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his Brother *Geofry*.

1080 9 *Geofry* IV. Son of *Faulk* 2d.

1083 10 *Foulk* III. Brother of *Geofry*; King of *Hieruſalem* in the right of *Meliſend* his Wife.

1143 11 *Geofry* V. ſurnamed *Plantagenet*.

1150 12 *Henry* the II. King of *England*, Son of Earl *Geofry* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry* the firſt.

1162 13 *Geofry* VI. third Son of King *Henry* the 2d, made Earl of *Anjou* on his mariage with *Conſtance*, the Heir of *Bretagne*.

1186 14 *Arthur* Son of *Geofrey* and *Conſtance*.

1202 15 *John*, King of *England*, ſucceeded on the death of *Arthur*; diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtates in *France* by *Philip Auguſtus*, immediately on the death of *Arthur*, *Anno* 1202.

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

1262 1 *Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis* the ninth, Earl of *Anjou*, and *Provence*, King of *Naples* and *Sicilia*, &c.

1315 2 *Charles* of *Valois*, Son of *Philip* the third; Earl of *Anjou* in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Son and Heir of the ſame name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.

1318 3 *Lewis* of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of *Charles*, died without iſſue, *Anno* 1325.

1376 4 *Lewis* of *France*, the 2d Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, created the firſt Duke of *Anjou* by King *Charles* his Brother; and adopted by Queen *Joan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1385 5 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, and *Main*; titulary King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Hieruſalem*.

1416 6 *Lewis* IV. ſucceſſor to his Father in Eſtate and Titles.

1430 7 *Renè*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of Qu. *Joan* the 2d, was for a while poſſeſſed of *Naples*; but preſently outed by *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, and died the titulary King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*; the Father of Queen *Margarite*,

Wife

La Beausse. Wife of *Henry* the ſixth; and Duke of *Bar*, in right of *Violant* his Mother.

1480 8 *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, Nephew to *Renè* by his third Brother *Charles*, at his deceaſe left *Anjou*, and all the reſt of his Eſtates to King *Lewis* the 11th, *An.* 1481. Since which never otherwiſe aliened, than as an honourary title of the third Sonne of *France*.

It is to be obſerved here (according to our method in other places) that *Renè* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, inſtituted an Order of *Knight-hood*, called of the *Croiſſant*: the Knights whereof carryed a *Creſcent*, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L' Os en Croiſſant*; encouraging them thereby to ſeek the increaſe of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedome, were *France*, a Border *Gules*.

7 LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE (not reckoning in the Provinces laſt before deſcribed) is bounded on the Eaſt wth *France* ſpecially and primarily ſo called; on the Weſt, with *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Tourein*, and ſome part of *Berry*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with *Nivernois*, and the reſt of *Berry*. It is called *Belſia* in *Latine* Writers; both names derived from the pleaſantneſſe and beauties of it; this Countrey being not only looked on as the Garden of *France*, but the Nurſe of the great City of *Paris*, which from the breaſts thereof receiveth the beſt part of its ſuſtenance.

The principall Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greateſt part, and the *Samnitæ* neer the *Loire*; part of *Gallia Celtica*, and caſt into the Province of *Lugdunenſis quarta* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediate*.

1 The *HIGHER BEAUSSE* is that part which lyeth next to *Normandy*, of which the principall Towns are, 1 *Dreux*, ſeated upon the River *Eureux*, ſuppoſed to be the ſeat of the antient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Seſſions* for adminiſtration of Juſtice. The title and inheritance of *Robert*, one of the younger ſonnes of K. *Lewis* the *Groſſe*, and Grandfather of that *Peter* of *Dreux*, who ſucceeded *Arthur*, the Sonne of *Geofrie Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. 2 *Montfort*, an Earldom, the title and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Montfort*, ſurnamed the *Valiant*, who ſucceeded in the Dukedome of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *Engliſh*, *An.* 1341. 3 *Chartres*, called antiently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolemy*, *Atricum*) from whence the Countrey hereabouts was called *Le Pais Chartrain*: ſeated in an uneven place, varyed with fertile riſing Hills, ſo that the Eaſt ſide ſtands upon the top of an Hill, and the Weſt ſpreads it ſelf in the bottom of a Plain, through the midſt whereof runs the River *Eure*, which as ſoon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South-ſide, divides it ſelf into three branches, two whereof encompaſſe the City round about, and the third running thorow the middeſt thereof, ſerveth the Town with many Mills for the uſe of the people; doth afterwards unite it ſelf with the reſt into one main Channell. A very fair and goodly City, a Biſhops See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France*; antiently giving the title of an Earldom alſo to the houſe of *Blois*, from the time that *Theobald* the ſecond Earl of *Blois* extorted it by ſtrong hand from the Biſhops hereof, about the year 950. continuing in the poſſeſſion of that Family till the year 1300. or thereabouts, when ſold by *Maheult* or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietar hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chaſtillon*, in her right called Earl of *Blois*, to King *Philip* the *Fair*, for an Annuall penſion of 4000 *Livres*. 4 *Auneau*, a Town of the territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great ſlaughter made here by *Henry* Duke of *Guiſe*, of the *German* Auxiliaries, invading *France* with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonots*.

2 The *LOWER BEAUSSE* is that which lyeth towards *Nivernois* and *Berry*; and is ſubdivided into *Sologne*, and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lyeth cloſe to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1 *Romorantin*, ſeated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2 *Mallenzay*. 3 *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte* S. *Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lyeth more Northwards upon the River of *Loyre*, are, 1 *Iargeau*, a Town once of very great ſtrength, and one of the out-works of *Orleans*. 2 *Cleri*, called alſo *Cleri* of *Noſtre-dame*, from the Church there built unto *our Lady*. 3 *Tury*; and 4 *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* and 5 *Orleans*, the principall City of all *Beauſſe*, called *Genabum* in the time of *Cæſar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperour *Aurelius*, *An.* 276. from thence named *Aurelia*, the Countrey round about it *Aurelianenſis*, now *Orleans*, and *Orleanois*. The Countrey generally very fruitfull, and yeelding a moſt excellent and delicious Wine; which for the ſtrength, and intoxicating power thereof, is baniſhed the *French* Kings Cellar by eſpecial *Edict*. The City very pleaſantly ſeated on the River *Loyre*, wel built, ſituate in a ſweet Air, and planted with a civil and ingenuous People; who are ſaid to ſpeak the beſt Language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a diſtinct Kingdome, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovignians*) the lot of *Clodomire* Sonne of *Clovis* the *Great*, and of *Guntram* Sonne of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*; as alſo was *Theodorick*, the ſecond Sonne of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Guntram*. But *Sigibert* his ſonne being vanquiſhed by *Clotaire* the ſecond, this Kingdome extending to the ſhores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of *France*. *Orleans* ſince that time content with a lower title, hath of late oftentimes with greater prudence, been made the honourary title of the ſecond Sonnes of *France* called Dukes hereof; the firſt who had the title being *Philip* the 2d. ſonne of *Philip de Valois*, from a Baſe ſonne of whoſe, the

Earls

Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longeville* do derive themſelves, and *Lewis* the ſecond ſonne of *Charles* the firſt, Grandfather of *Lewis* the 11th. *French* King. It is a See Epiſcopall, a Bailywick; or *Seige Præſidial*, and an Univerſity. The *See Epiſcopal* founded in the Church of St. *Croſſe*, miſerably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Siege Præſidial* ſetled here by King *Henry* the 2d, 1551. for the eaſe of his Subjects of theſe parts, in ſutes not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The Univerſity erected by King *Philip le Bel*, *An.* 1312. though, to ſpeak properly, it be an *Hall* only for the reading of the *Civil Lawes*, the only learning there profeſſed, and for that conſiderable. A Town now not of ſo great ſtrength as in former times, when for ſome moneths it held out againſt the whole power of the *Engliſh*; reſcued from them at laſt by the valour of *Ioan* the *Virgin*, whoſe *Statua* (like a man of Arms) is ſtill preſerved on the Bridge-gate of this City; neer which great *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury* had his Fatal blow. *Berry.*

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEAUSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1 *Blois*, ſeated alſo on the *Loire*, in a ſound Air, and fruitfull Countrey; the Nurſery for the moſt part of the Kings Children, for that cauſe much reſorted to by the Nobility, and honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the Kings themſelves: it being in the Councel-chamber of the Kings houſe here, that *Henry* of *Lorrein*, Duke of *Guiſe*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*; was ſlain by the command of King *Henry* the 3d, *An.* 1589. 5 *Chaſteau-Dun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the honour and Eſtate of *Iohn* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*, one of the beſt Souldiers of his time, and ſo approved by his exploits againſt the *Engliſh*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loire*, and *Aigre*. 3 *Lavardin*, moſt remarkable for giving name and honour to a noble Family, which depending on the houſe of *Vendoſme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monſieur de Laourdin*, a faithfull and couragious follower of K. *Henry* the 4th, in his long War againſt the *Leaguers*. 4 *Vendoſme* (*Vindocinum* in *Latine*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendoſme*; not otherwiſe of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title: of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fitte to adde the enſuing Catalogue; premiſing firſt, that this Earldome came to the houſe of *France* by the mariage of *Katharine* daughter and Heir of *Iohn*, the laſt Earle of the former Race, to *Iohn* the firſt, the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*.

1386 1 *Iohn* of *Bourbon*, Granchild of *Lewis* the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, the firſt Earl of *Vendoſme* of this Family.

1432 2 *Lewis* of *Bourbon* a Confederate with *Ioan* the *Virgin*, in her actions againſt the *Engliſh*.

1446 3 *Iohn* of *Bourbon* II. from whom deſcended the Princes of *Roch-ſur-yon*, and the Dukes of *Montpenſier*.

1472 4 *Francis* of *Bourbon*.

1495 5 *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*, from whoſe youngeſt ſon called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, deſcend the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soiſſons*.

1532 6 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* and King of *Navarre*.

1562 7 *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and King of *Navarre*; afterwards King of *France* alſo, by the name of *Henry* the 4th.

8 *Cæſar de Vendoſme*, one of the Sons of *Henry* the 4th, by the Dutcheſs of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendoſme*, and once deſigned his Succeſſor in the Crown of *Franee*. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, maryed to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, D. of *Mercoeur*, (a younger branch of the houſe of *Lorrein*) poſſeſſed of a fair and goodly Eſtate in the Dukedome of *Bretagne*, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the houſe of *Martignes* (a branch of the Family of thoſe Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendoſme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Countrey.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*, were and are, *Azure*, ſix Flower de Lyces *Or*, 3. 2. 1. Thoſe of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been *France*, on a Bend *Gules*, three Lyons *Or*.

But the great Lords of this Countrey, were the Earls of *Blois*, poſſeſſed not only of the Earldom of *Chartreſſe* (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the higher *Beauſſe*; but alſo of the whole Countrey of *Toureiu*, a better Patrimony and Eſtate than that; which how they were alienated from this Houſe, we have ſeen before. And as for the Earldome of *Blois* it ſelf, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle *Beauſſe*, thereunto belonging; which being after ſold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the firſt greatneſſe to that Houſe. As for the Earls of *Blois* themſelves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble *Dane* (companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the firſt Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedome, by *Charles* the *Simple* created the firſt Earl hereof, *An.* 920. or thereabouts, branching it ſelf into the houſes of *Blois* and *Champague*; ſometimes united in one perſon, but for the moſt part, and at laſt, divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blois*, derived both his name and parentage from the Earls of this houſe, as being ſon of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blois*, by *Maud* one of the daughters of *William*, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, ſurnamed the Conquerour. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blois* continued in the maſculine Line, till the year 1219. under nine Princes in the totall, of the houſe of *Gerlon*: And then it fell by the Heirs Generall, to the noble Family of *Chaſtillon*, continuing theirs till the year 1391. when ſold by *Guy de Chaſtillon* the laſt Earl of that Houſe, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleance*, he being then

Nivernois. then Childleſſe, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the houſe of *Namurre*) who could not otherwiſe maintain her great prodigality, but by ready money. United finally to the Crown, by *Lewis* the Grand-ſon of this *Lewis*, on his ſucceſſion to the Kingdom, after *Charles* the 8th.

The Arms of theſe great Earls were, *Gules*, three *Palls*, *Vaire*, a *Chief*, *Or*.

8 *NIVERNOIS.*

NIVERNOIS is bounded on the North with *La Beauſſe*, on the South with *Burbonois*, on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, and on the Weſt with *Berry*; ſo called from *Nivernium*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof.

This is the ſmalleſt Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, becauſe not eaſily reducible unto any other, as all the reſt of the leſſer Provinces may be. The Soyl not very fruitfull of Corn or Wine, but plentifully ſtored with rich Paſtures, and well ſhaded with Woods, in which are found ſome Mines of Iron, interſperſed with Silver, and many quarries of good Stone, of much uſe for building. The territory being but ſmall, we cannot look for many Towns of note, and conſequence. Of thoſe that be, the principall are, 1 *Pontigni*, remarkable for an antient Abby, the buriall place of ſome of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2 *Nevers* it ſelf upon the *Loyre*, beautified with a Bridge of 20 Arches, but otherwiſe not great or fair, though the chief of this ſmall Countrey, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath proceeding ſpecially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts, and from them won by the *French*, it came to have Princes of its own, almoſt as early as any other Countrey in the Realm of *France*. Who was the firſt that had the title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithall the Lordſhip of this Eſtate, I can no where find; but ſure I am, that in the year 1001. both the Eſtate and title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a noble man of the *Burgundian* race, who on the death of *Henry* the 4th, Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have ſeized on that Eſtate, in deſpight of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it. Paſſing through many Families, it came at laſt to the Houſe of *Burgogne*, in the perſon of *Odo*, ſon of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir Generall of *Nevers*, and from that to the houſe of *Flanders*, by the mariage of *Yoland* of *Burgogne*, to *Robert* of *Bethune* Earl of *Flanders*, 1312. whoſe ſon named *Lewis*, maryed the Heir of *Rethell*; uniting by that maryage theſe Eſtates under his command. Together with the reſt of the rights of *Flanders*, it came again by maryage to *Philip* the *Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and conſent of his elder Sons (otherwiſe well provided for) conferred both it and *Rethel*, on his third Son *Philip*, whoſe Neece *Elizabeth*, daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve* her Husband, *An.* 1484. In the perſon of *Francis*, the 4th Earl of this Houſe, it was made a Dukedome, and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, ſiſter and Heir of *Francis* the laſt Prince of this Family, was brought in Dower to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, ſecond ſonne of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, *An.* 1563. whoſe ſonne *Charles* ſucceeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedome of *Nevers*; and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Couſin German, in the Dukedome of *Mantua*. And here it is to be obſerved, that though this Eſtate hath paſſed through ſo many Families, yet the rights and Regalities thereof, have been ſtill continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the reſt of that Kingdome is, but ſuch parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or elſe enjoy the Priviledges of a Free Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compone*, *Gules* and *Argent*, three Flower de Lyces, *Or*.

9 *The Dukedome of* BOVRBON.

THE Dukedome of *BOVRBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forreſt*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1 *BOVRBONOIS* hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedome of *Burgundy*; on the Weſt, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a corner of *Gaſtinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*: So called from *Bourbon* (for diſtinction ſake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town thereof. The Countrey very well wooded, and of excellent paſturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loyre*, *Yonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; beſides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lanbois*, and ſome leſſer ſtreams.

It is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*. In the *Higher* which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note, than that of *Montaigne*, ſituate in the County of *Combraille*; the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michael de Montaigne*, the Author of the Book of *Eſſaies*. But in the *Lower Bourbonois* are, 1 *Molins*, eſteemed the Center of all *France*, ſituate on the *Allier*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this Countrey: the River yielding great plenty of Fiſh, but of Salmons ſpecially; the Town adorned with a fair Caſtle, and that beautified with one of the fineſt Gardens in *France*, in which are many Trees of Limmons and Oranges. 2 *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3 *Bourbon Ancie*: the former of the two ſeated upon the *Loire*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great reſort by reaſon

of

of its *medicinal* waters. 4 S. *Porcin*, and 5 *Varennes Ganat* upon the Frontiers of *Auvergn*, 6 *Chancelle*, 7 *Charroux*, 8 *Paliſſe*, 9 *Souvigni*, 10 St. *Amand*, *&c.* *Forreſt.*

The antient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waſted in their warres againſt the *Romans*, a great part of their Countrey was by *Julius Cæſar*, conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the requeſt of the *Hedui*, who deſired it of him: and poſſibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have theſe *Boii* dwell amongſt them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waſte Grounds of their Countrey, but in regard of ſome neerer tie, that was between them: it being conceived by many learned men, that theſe *Boii*, which together with theſe *Cenomanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations croſſed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of theſe parts, and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence ſent thoſe Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their journey ſpoken of before. Made ſubject to the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Gallia*, and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitanica*, it continued under their command, till the coming in of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was ſubdued and made a part of their Kingdome, in the ſubverting of which Kingdome, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) ſubdued by the more powerfull *French*, and how diſpoſed of afterwards, we ſhall ſee anon, having firſt taken a view of the other Provinces.

2 *FORREST*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Beau-jolois*; on the Weſt, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonois*; and on the South, with a part of *Languedoc*. The Countrey populous and large, but not very fruitfull; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The Air a little of the coldeſt to afford good Wines, but that ſufficiently recompenſed by abundance of pit-coal; by which they have good fires at a very cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wiſeſt, but withall very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it are, 1 *Mont-briſon*, ſeated on the *Loyre*. 2 *Feurs*, ſeated on the ſame River, called antiently *Forum Seguſianorum*, the chief Town of the *Seguſiani*, or *Seruſiani*, whom *Cæſar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3 St. *Stephen*, (or *Eſtienne*) in *Feurian*, neer the head of that River. 4 St. *Germans*. 5 St. *Rimberg*. 6 St. *Bennet le chaſteau*. 7 St. *Guermiter*, *&c.* of which little memorable.

This Countrey of *Forreſt* was antiently a part of the Earldome of *Lyons*, diſmembred from it at or about the ſame time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long ſucceſſion of Earls *Proprietaries* of it, as a State diſtinct: till *Regnand* Lord of *Forreſt*, the Sonne of Earl of *Guy*, by the mariage of *Iſabel* Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together, which was about the year 1265. parted again after his deceaſe, *An.* 1280. *Guy* being his eldeſt Sonne ſucceeding in *Forreſt*; and *Lewis* his ſecond ſonne in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the houſe of *Burgundy*, we ſhall ſee anon.

3 *BEAU-JOLOIS*, ſo called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Soaſne*; and betwixt *Lionnois*, and *Forreſt*. A Countrey of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been men of great eminence in their ſeverall times. The chief Town of it is *Beau-jeu*, beautified with a goodly Caſtle, pleaſantly ſeated on the brow of a riſing Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Caſtle, was in the ſame ſenſe, and for the ſame pleaſant ſituation, called *Ioyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake*, whoſe that Caſtle was. Which appears further by a Tower built at *Conſtantinople*, by *Guiſchard* the third of that name Lord hereof (being then Ambaſſadour to the Emperour from King *Philip Auguſtus*) with this inſcription, *Turris Bellijocenſis*; which there continued to be ſeen, a long time after. 2 *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* the ſecond, *An.* 1158. 3 *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* the fourth; whoſe Sonne *Guiſchard* the third above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciſcans* called to this day *Minorétte*. 4 *Noironde*. 5 St. *Maurice*. 6 *Ulſie*. 7 *Obches*, concerning which there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forreſt*, and theſe Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Countrey, as that other of *Forreſt*, was once part of the Earldome of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Eſtate it fell to *Omphroy* one of the Brothers of Earl *Artaud*, *An.* 989. whoſe Succeſſors had no other title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were moſt of them men of great piety, founders of many *Collegiate* and conventuall Churches; ſome of them men of action alſo: *Humbert* the ſecond and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard* the ſecond, in thoſe againſt the *Engliſh*; *Guiſchard* the fourth, made *Conſtable* of *France*, by King *Lewis* the ninth. But the houſe failing in this *Guiſchard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forreſt*, as before is ſaid, in the perſon of *Regnand* Earl thereof: whoſe Sonne and Succeſſor called *Lewis*, was alſo Conſtable of *France*; as *Edward* the Grand-child of this *Lewis*, a *Marſhall* of it. But at the laſt it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* the ſecond: who being impriſoned at *Paris* for his great offences, and overlayd with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*; made a donation or free gift of all his *Signeuries* to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, ſurnamed the *good*; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earle of *Forreſt*, the eldeſt Sonne of *Regnand* Earl of *Forreſt* and Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and conſequently of next Kin to him. *An.* 1400.

4 *AUVERGNE* hath on the Eaſt *Forreſt*, and *Lyonois*; on the Weſt, *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry* and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher*, and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitfull in a very eminent degree; the *Higher* mountainous and barren. In this laſt the Towns of chief note are, 1 St. *Flour* a Biſhops See, of

Auvergn. of an impregnable ſituation. 2 *Arilla*, on the River *Iourdain*, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of a Rock. 3 *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4 *Carlat*. 5 *Murat*. 6 *Billon*, of which little obſervable in antient ſtories. In the *Lower* called *Limaigne*, from a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*; there is, 1 *Clermont*, a Biſhops See, fair and pleaſing for the ſituation, and Fountains deſcending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergn*, the chief city of the whole Province. Moſt memorable in theſe later Ages for the Councell here called by Pope *Urban* the ſecond, *An.* 1067. in which, by the artifice of the Pope, the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt ingaged themſelves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories, and their power. It was firſt raiſed out of the ruines of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cæſar*, and the ſeat Royall of *Vercingetorix* King of that Nation, who ſo long put him to his trumps with an Army of 138000 men; now a ſmall Village called *Gergeau*. 2 *Riom*, in which reſides the Seneſchall or chief Governour of the Lower *Auvergn*. 3 *Montpenſier*, of great note for the Princes of the houſe of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof: beginning in *Lewis* the firſt Earl, Sonne of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An.* 1415. and ending in *Henry* the laſt Duke; whoſe Daughter and Heir was maryed to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* the thirteenth. 4 *Montferant*. 5 *Yſſoire*. 6 *Brionde*. 7 *Aigueperſe*. 8 *Turenne*, the antient Seat and Patrimony of the *De La Tours*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bovillon*; to whom it hath for ſome Ages ſince given the title of Viſcount. A Family deſcended from the Heirs generall of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.

The Countrey firſt inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whoſe King *Bituitus* was taken Priſoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War againſt the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and others of their Confederates: Not fully conquered, till *Cæſar* had ſubdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, retaining in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergn*. Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*, remaining ſubject to thoſe Dukes till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whoſe name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither, of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms againſt *Lewis* the ſixth, who began his Reign *An.* 1110. By the Heir generall of this houſe it was conveyed in mariage to *John* the ſecond ſon of *Guigne* the 4th, and *Beatrix*, Daulphin of *Viennois*; in whoſe Line it continued under the title of the Daulphins of *Auvergn*, till *Beyault*, the laſt Earl or *Daulphin* of it. Who having maryed the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forreſt*, the ſonne of *Regnaud* above mentioned; had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Eſtates, maryed to *Lewis* the *Good*, the third Duke of *Bourbon*: to whom *Edward* the laſt Lord of *Beau-jeu* made a Donation or ſurrendry of that Signeury alſo; uniting in his perſon the diſtinct Eſtates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forreſt*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonnois* it ſelf, in the diſtractions of the *French* Empire, by the poſterity of *Charles* the Great, who moſt improvidently *cuntqued* it into many great Eſtates, and petit Signeuries: it fell unto the ſhare of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, deſcended from the antient houſe of *Burgogne*, who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* the ninth, for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauvoiſin*) his fifth Son; maryed him to *Beatrix* Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre* the laſt of that houſe. *Lewis* the ſonne of this *Robert* was the firſt Duke of this Line; whoſe ſucceſſors and their atchievements follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Bourbon*.

1308 1 *Robert*, Sonne of King *Lewis* the 9th, Earle of *Clermont*, the firſt Lord of *Bourbon* of the houſe of *France*.

1317 2 *Lewis*, the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*.

1341 3 *Peter*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, ſlain in the Battle of *Poictiers*, *An.* 1356.

1356 4 *Lewis* II. called the *Good*, in whoſe perſon all theſe Eſtates were firſt united; *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*; and Governour of King *Charles* the ſixth.

1410 5 *John*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain taken Priſoner at the Battle of *Agincourt*, and dyed in *England*; the Root of the Family of *Montpenſier*.

1434 6 *Charles*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, Generall of the Army againſt the *Engliſh* in the Iſle of *France*.

1456 7 *John* II. *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Conſtable of *France*.

1487 8 *Peter* II. Brother of *John*, *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the abſence of *Charls* the 8th.

1503 9 *Charles* Earl of *Montpenſier*, Duke of *Bourbon* in the right of *Suſan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the ſecond, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whoſe death, being ſlain at the ſack of *Rome*, *An.* 1527. without Iſſue, his Eſtate fell unto the Crown; and ſo continued, till by the Sentence or *Arreſt* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergn*, *Forreſt*, and *Beau-jeu* were adjudged to Madam *Loviſe*, Mother of *Lewis* the firſt Duke of *Montpenſier*, and daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de Bourbon* Earl of *Montpenſier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon* (the firſt of that name) of which houſe ſhe was the only ſurviving heir, from whence deſcended *Henry*, the laſt Duke of that Family, ſpoken of before. And for the title of *Auvergne*, it was

uſed

used customarily by the eldest Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* the ninth, called from hence the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*: who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made Prisoner by King *Henry* the fourth, released by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angolesme*; in whose posterity it remaineth. *Berrie.*

The Armes of these Dukes were 1 *France*, a Baston *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*; 2 *Or*, a Daulphin *Palme*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*; 3 *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Labell of fine pieces of the same, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Armes of the Earldom of *Forrest* I am yet to seek. But anciently the Armes of *Bourbon* when under the *Dampierres*, were *Or*, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle-shels of *Azure*.

10. *BERRIE.*

HAving thus taken a survey of those several provinces, which (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the *French* in the modern *France*, and so much of the *Burgundian* Conquests, as were either layed to the Kingdom of West *France*, or else were necessarily to be passed over in the course of our Journey, let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Gothes*. And first we will begin with *BERRIE*, (as next in situation unto those before described) bounded on the East with *Bourbonois* and *Nivernois*; on the West, with *Poicton* and part of *Toureine*; on the North, with *La Beausse*; on the South with *Limousin*, in *Latin* called *Biturigum regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Isci*, dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Countrey watered in the East with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Cher*; and in the Inland parts with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withall anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it; affording it the benefit of fat pastures, and flourishing meadows; which breed great multitudes of cattel, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Fie sir, there are not so many sheep in Berrie.*

It containeth in it 33 walled Towns, the chief whereof are, 1 *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by nature, and as well fortified by Art; situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marishes, caused by the overflowings of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*; small Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together. By means whereof it may be easily drowned, at the approach of an Enemy; for that cause made the fastness and retreat of *Charles* the seventh, in his long wars against the *English*, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time, fain to feast it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high daies neither: from his constant abode here, and that withall he had been Duke of this Countrey, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *English* in derision called King of *Berrie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Archbishop; a siege presidial, and one of the best Universities in *France*, especially for the study of the Civil Lawes, first founded by King *Lewis* the ninth, and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berrie*, the Brother of King *Lewis* the eleventh. Some fabulous Founders, and ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it; as that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchilde of *Noah*, by whom called *Bytogyges*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forsooth) unto *Bituriges*: which Etymologie, were it as dear bought as it is far fetcht, *might be good for Ladies*; and then it would be good for somewhat. Others no less absurdly, will have it called *Bituris*, *quasi Bi-turris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here; one of the two, in part still standing: and unto this, they say, alludeth an old *Grammarian*, thus:

Turribus à binis inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The name of *Bituris* I beare.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges* (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name in the division of old *Gaul* by the Emperour *Constantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, of which this Countrey was a part. 2 *Wiarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleasantly seated amongst Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeure*, meeting hereabouts. Built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great note and strength in the time of *Cæsar*: the revolt whereof gave such a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to stretch his wits, and valour on the very tenterhooks, before it was again recovered. 3 *Concressant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a strong and magnificent Castle. 4 *Chasteau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5 *Issanden*, on the River *Theo*, the Balliage for that part of the Countrey. 6 *Montfalcon*, an antient Barony. 7 *Argenton*, on the River *Creuse*, the Title and Estate of *Philip de Comines*, here called *Seigneur de Argenton*, who writ the History of *France* under *Lewis* the 11th, in which he dived so far into, and writ so plainly of the greatest affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medices* used to say, that he had made as many *Heretickes* in *State-policy*, as *Luther* had done in *Religion*. 8 *Sancerre*, seated on an high hill near the River *Loire*, by some Latin writers called *Xantodorum*, but most gene-

Poicton. rally ſaid to be called, *quaſi ſacrum Cereris*, from the Goddeſſe *Ceres*, herein worſhipped in the times of *Gentiliſme*. A Town of great conſequence and ſtrength, and as ſuch aſſigned over to the *Hugonots*, *An.* 1569. as a Town of caution for their ſecurity, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon: Famous not long after for enduring a moſt deſperate and tedious ſiege, under *Charles* the 9th, by whom theſe Articles were almoſt no ſooner made than broken. Before which time, it was not under the command of the *French* Kings, but under the direct dominions of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Soveraignty thereof; but being taken by the Kings Forces, upon this occaſion, *An.* 1573. and the Walls thrown down, a Garriſon was put into the Caſtle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the rents and profits of it ſtill remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is alſo in this Province the Town and Signeury of *Aubignie*, adorned with many priviledges, an ample territory, and a beautifull Caſtle. Beſtowed by *Charles* the ſixth on *Robert*, the ſecond Sonne of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many ſignall ſervices againſt the *Engliſh*, and is ſtill the honourary title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond Branch of that noble and illuſtrious Family; hence called by the name of Lords of *Aubignie*.

But as for *Berry* it ſelf, and the Fortunes of it, we may pleaſe to know that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Biteriges Liberi*, as ſome Writers call them) ſubdued but not without great difficulty by the matchleſs *Cæſar*; in the firſt diviſion of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*, and in the new modelling of that Province by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, a part of *Aquitania Prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *French*, it was for long time under the command of Provinciall Governours; one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*, and his Poſterity enjoyed that Office, under the Kings of *France*, till the dayes of King *Henry* the firſt; of whom the Inheritance and Eſtate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the deſcendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own right, when deſirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he ſold it back again to King *Philip* the firſt (the better to furniſh himſelf for that expedition) *An.* 1096. to be united to the Crown after his deceaſe. Since which time, the Soveraignty of it hath been alwayes in the Crown of *France*; but the poſſeſſion and Revenue ſometimes given with the title of Duke, for a portion to ſome of the Kings younger Sonnes, to be holden of them in *Appennage*, under the Soveraignty and command of the *Doner* and his Succeſſors. The firſt of thoſe that held this title, was *John*, a younger Sonne of King *John* of *France*, and Unkle unto *Charles* the 6th, during whoſe Reign, betwixt this Duke, and thoſe of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miſerably diſtracted into Broils and Factions. The ſecond was another *John*, Sonne of *Charles* the 6th, who dying in his minority, was ſucceeded in this title, by his Brother *Charls*, Succeſſor to his Father in the Crown it ſelf. The fourth and laſt, (for it had no more then four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngeſt Sonne of King *Charles* the 7th, who ſiding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did ſo much trouble the affairs of *France*, under *Lewis* the 11th, by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienne* afterwards, but held neither long. After whoſe death it was united to the Crown, never ſince ſeparated from it; but though it never had Duke ſince, it hath had three Dutcheſſes: firſt giving the title of Dutcheſs to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11th, and Wife to *Lewis* the 12th, then Duke of *Orleans*, eſtated herein by her ſaid Husband, when coming to the Crown, he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Dutcheſſe of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles* the 8th, his Predeceſſor. Conferred after her deceaſe, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis* the firſt, on the Lady *Margaret* his ſiſter, firſt marryed to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*, and after his deceaſe to *Henry* of *Albret* King of *Navarre*: the laſt that had this title, being another *Margaret*, a Daughter of the ſaid King *Francis*, maryed to *Philibert Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

II. *POICTOU.*

POICTOU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Tourein*, *Berry*, and *Limoſin*; on the North, with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*; on the South, with *Xaintoigne*, a member of the Dukedome of *Aquitain*; and on the Weſt, with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolemy*, *Cæſar*, and ſome others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof: and is a Countrey ſo great and plentifull, that there are numbred in it 1200 Pariſhes, and three Biſhopricks. A ſtrong argument of the populouſneſs and largeneſs of it. Beſides the goodneſs of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to ſay, a large Sea coaſt, ſome capacious Harbours, not a few navigable Rivers, emptying themſelves into the ſea; beſides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin*, or *Clavius*, the *Creviſe*, and *Vienne*, three Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which alſo glides along on the North hereof.

The principall Towns and Cities of it are, 1 *Poictiers*, in *Latine Pictavis*, ſeated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavius*, by *Ptolemy* called *Auguſtoritum*: the largeſt City for compaſſe of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it ſelf; but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waſte grounds. It is an Univerſity, eſpecially for the ſtudy of the *Civil Lawes*, and a See *Epiſcopall*: one of the Biſhops hereof being S. *Hilarie*, ſurnamed *Pictavenſis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a ſtout Champi-

Champion of the *Catholick* Faith againſt the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Hereſie by the Emperour *Conſtantius*. 2 *Souri*, upon the River *Charente*, neer the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3 *Talmont*, upon the ſhores of the Ocean. 4 *Beaumoir*, a Sea-town alſo, and a reaſonable good Port, neer the confines of *Bretagne*. 5 *Roch-ſur-yon*, which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royall race of *Bourbon*. 6 *Luſignan*, on the River *Ion*, denominating the noble Family of *Luſignan*, ſometimes Kings of *Hieruſalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which laſt they had in exchange for the firſt, by the donation of King *Richard* the firſt of *England*. 7 *Lucon*, or *Luſſon*, ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the Sea: ſufficiently famous in being the Epiſcopall See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who ſo long managed the affairs of *France*, for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8 *Mailleſais*, a Biſhops See alſo. 9 *Thovars*, which gives the title of Duke to the antient Family of *Tremovile*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themſelves; from the time that *Conſtance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofrie Plantagenet* her firſt Husband, had *Guy* of *Thovars* for her ſecond. 10 *Chaſtell Herauld*, (or *Caſtrum Heraldi*) on the River *Vienne*, of which *James Hamilton*, Earl of *Arran* in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, the better to aſſure him to the *French* Faction there, againſt the *Engliſh*, had the title of Duke. *Poictou.*

In the *Vine-Fields* of this Countrey, within two Leagues of *Poictiers*, was fought that memorable Battell, between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the Sonne of King *Edward* the third, ſurnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being diſtreſſed by the number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable terms; which the *French* not accepting, in ſtead of conqueſt, found a Fatall overthrow. For they preſuming on their own ſtrength, to their own diſadvantage, bereft the enemy of all opportunity of retiring: whereas ordinary policy would inſtruct the Leader of an Army, to make his enemy, if he would flie, a Bridge of Gold; as Count *Petillan* uſed to ſay. Hereupon *Themiſtocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Helleſpont* by *Xerxes*; leſt the *Perſians* ſhould be compelled to fight, and ſo happen to recover their former loſſes: and *Charles* the ſixth loſt his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth in his march to *Calice*. For where all way of flight or retreat is ſtopt, the baſeſt Souldier will rather die with glory in the Front of his Battell, than flie and be killed with ignominy. So true a Miſtreſſe of hardy reſolutions is Deſpair; and no leſs true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil.* On the contrary, it hath been the uſe of divers politick Captains, to make their own Souldiers fight more reſolutely, by taking from them all hope of ſafety, but by Battell. So did *William* the Conquerour; who at his arrivall into *England*, burnt the Ships which tranſported his Army: thereby giving his Souldiers to wit, that their lives lay in the ſtrength of their Arms, and courage of their hearts, not in the nimbleneſs of their heels. *Tariff*, the leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewiſe all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reſerved to carry tidings of his ſucceſs. So when *Charles Martell* encountred that infinite hoſt of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the banks thereof certain Troops of Horſemen, to kill all ſuch as fled out of the field: Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France* than what they fought on; unleſs they were Conquerours. In like manner, the ſame *Themiſtocles*, cunningly working the *Perſians* to encloſe the *Greek* Navy on every ſide; inflamed the *Grecians* with ſuch courage, by a neceſſity of fight, that they gave their enemies the moſt memorable defeat that ever hapned on thoſe ſeas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gall*, than any in *France*; as lying ſo betwixt the borders of the *Gothes*, and *French*, that it was never throughly planted, or poſſeſſed by either. An Argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, ſubtile, crafty, and contentious than the reſt of their Countrey men; and have a *Dialect* by themſelves much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it (queſtionleſs ſome remainders of the antitient *Gallick*) which the naturall *French* man underſtands not. In the diviſion of *Gaul* by the Emperour *Conſtantine* they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania ſecunda*: and as a part thereof won from the *Romans*, with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, by *Euricus* King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. Of whoſe Kingdome it continued part, till thoſe *Gothes* were diſpoſſeſſed of their hold in *France*, by *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*, ſurnamed the Great. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People; by the Poſterity of *Charles* the Great; aſſigned to ſome Provinciall Governours with the title of Earls. One of which being named *Ebles* (of the old *Gothiſh* race, if I gueſſe aright) by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *William* the *Debonair* Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earle of *Auvergne*, ſucceeded in that fair Eſtate. *Poictou* by this means made a part of the Dukedome of *Aquitain*, came with it at the laſt to the Kings of *England*, as ſhall there be ſhewn: and being theirs was given with the title of Earl by King *Henry* the ſecond, to *Richard* ſurnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French* in the unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces, *An.* 1202. *Alphonſo*, brother to *Lewis* the 9th, is made Earl of *Pictou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons* Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germany*, of which by ſome of the *Electors* he was choſen Emperour: it was fully conquered by the *French*, and never ſince diſmembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, ſome of the beſt Towns and pieces of it were poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*: yet were they loſt again ſoon after, according to the various ſucceſſes and events of War.

Limoſin.

12 LIMOSIN, 13 PERIGORT, 14 QUERCU.

THeſe Provinces I have joyned together, becauſe for the moſt part they have followed the ſame fortune; being ſometimes *French*, and ſometime *Engliſh*, according to the ſucceſſes of either Nation.

1 *LIMOSIN*, the largeſt of the three, hath on the Eaſt, *Bourbonnois*; on the Weſt, *Perigort*; on the North, and North-weſt, *Poictou*, and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limoſin*; and the *Lower*, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts, but ſpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous and not very fruitfull; but of a free and open Air; inhabited by a people of a more ſtaid and ſober nature, than the reſt of the *French*; frugall in expence, and moderate in diet; only ſo great devourers of bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*.

The chief Towns in *La March*, or the *Lower Limoſin*, are, 1 *Tulles*, ſeated in a rough and hilly Countrey, a Biſhops See. 2 *Uzarche*, ſeated amongſt the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current; with which ſo fortified on all ſides, that it is thought to be a very ſtrong and ſecure dwelling. 3 *Treinac*. 4 *Douſenac*. 5 *Belmont*. 6 *Meiſſac*. 7 *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limoſin* the chief Towns are, 1 *Limoges* a Biſhops See, the principall of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated; by *Ptolemy* called *Ratiaſtum*. A neat, but no large City, rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of ſo great an induſtry, that they compell every one to work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Priſon of Beggers*. Seated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it when revolted, *Edward* the *Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diſtreſſed Citizens, till purſuing his enemies, he ſaw three *French* Gentlemen make head againſt his Army; the conſideration of whoſe magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he had vowed revenge. 2 *Chaluz*, at the beſieging of which, our *Richard* the firſt was ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt*; the uſe of which Warlike Engine, he firſt ſhewed to the *French*. Whereupon a *French* Poet made theſe Verſes, in the perſon of *Atropos*.

Hoc volo, non aliâ Richardum *morte perire,*
Ut qui Francigenis *Baliſtæ primitùs uſum*
Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitùs experiatur:
Quamq; aliis docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.

It is decreed thus muſt great *Richard* die,
As he that firſt did teach the *French* to dart
An *Arbaliſt*; 'tis juſt he firſt ſhould trie
The ſtrength, and taſte the fruits of his own Art.

The man that ſhot him was called *Bertram de Gurdon*, who being brought before the King (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Aſſault till he gained the place) boldly juſtified his Action, as done in the ſervice of his Countrey, and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had cauſed to be ſlain. Which heard, the King not only cauſed him to be ſet at liberty, but gave him an hundred ſhillings *ſterling*, in reward of his Gallantry. 3 *Soubſterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4 *Confaulat*. 5 *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 6 *Boiſſon*. 7 *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2 *PERIGORT*, hath on the Eaſt, *Auvergn*, and *Quercu*; on the Weſt, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limoſin*; and on the South, ſome part of *Gaſcoigne*. The Countrey and people are much of the ſame condition with that of *Limoſin*, ſaving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and thoſe woods plentifull of *Cheſnuts*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perigeux*, the principall City of the *Petrogorii*, by *Ptolemy* called *Veſſena*, now a Biſhops See; ſome footſteps of which name remain in a part of *Perigeux*; (for the Town is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Veſune*; in which ſtandeth the Cathedrall Church, and the Biſhops Palace. The whole City ſeated in a very pleaſant Valley, environed with *Downs*, affording a moſt excellent Wine; and having in it as a mark of the *Roman* greatneſs, the ruins of a large and ſpacious *Amphitheatre*. 2 *Bergerac*, ſeated on the great River of *Dordonne*. 3 *Sarlat*, a Biſhops See. 4 *Nontron*, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 5 *Miramont*. 6 *La Roche*. 7 *Marſac*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulſe of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8 *Angoleſme*, in the North-weſt, towards *Xaintoigne*, the ſeat of the *Engoliſmenſes* in the time of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See: ſeated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoſt encompaſſed; the other ſide being defended by a ſteep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance, when poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, being one of their beſt out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*: one of the Gates hereof being to this day called *Chande*, ſeems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandois* Banneret, one of the firſt Founders of the moſt noble Order of the *Garter*, then Governour hereof for King *Edward* the third. Being recovered from the *Engliſh* by *Charles* the fifth, it was beſtowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the firſt, with the title of an Earldome only, *An.* 1408. Afterwards made a Dukedome in the perſon of the ſaid King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoyning Countrey was layd unto it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 *French* Leagues in length, and 15 in breadth: Within which circuit

circuit are the Towns of *Chaſteau-neif*, and *Coignac*, on the River of *Charente*. 3 *Roche Faulcon*, 4 *Chabannes*. 5 *Meriville*. 6 *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, *An.* 1618. the Baſe Sonne of *Charles* the ninth, conſequently extracted from the houſe of *Angoleſme*. *Aquitain.*

3 *QUERCU*, is encompaſſed about with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Countrey for the bigneſſe (being one of the leaſt in all *France*) and very fruitfull withall, though ſomewhat mountainous. The principall places in it, 1 *Cahors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; ſtill a great, ſtrong, and well traded Town, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporall* Lord of it; ſeated upon the River *Loch*. From hence deſcended and took name the noble Family of *Chawort*, *De Cadurcis* in *Latine*: out of which by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly* in the Marches of *Wales*, maryed to *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaſter*, come the Kings of *England*, and moſt of the Royall houſes in *Europe*. 2 *Montalban*, a Biſhops See alſo, built on the top of an high Mountain, and ſo well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the moſt defenſible of any in *France*: of which it gave ſufficient proof in that notable reſiſtance which it made to King *Lewis* tha the thirteenth, in his Wars againſt thoſe of the *Religion*, *An.* 1622. 3 *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4 *Nigrepelliſſe*, another of the Towns poſſeſſed by the Proteſtant party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *An.* 1621. but in *Novemb.* following, they murdered the Kings Garriſon, and the next yeer denyed admiſſion to the King. Taken at laſt, *An.* 1622. by the King in perſon; the puniſhment did exceed the crime. For the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deſerved; but many of the Women alſo: ſome of them having their ſecret parts rammed with Gun-powder, and ſo torn in pieces, by the unpattern'd barbariſm of the mercileſs and revengefull Souldiers. 5 *Chaſteau-Saraſin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Garond*. 6 *Nazaret*. 7 *Burette*, &c.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci*, before mentioned: of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were caſt into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engoliſmenſes*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, ſeized on by the *Gothes*, but from them ſpeedily extorted by the conquering *French*. Afterwards when King *Henry* the third of *England* releaſed his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; *Lewis* the ninth to whom this releaſe was made, gave him in ſatisfaction of all former intereſſes, 300000 *l.* of *Anjovin* money, the Dukedome of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limoſin*. And on the Capitulations made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Priſoner to him; *Perigort* and *Quercu* (among other conditions) were conſigned over to the *Engliſh*, diſcharged of all *Reſort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times reſpectively they remained all three in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, untill their finall expulſion by King *Charles* the 7th, never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown thereof.

15 *AQUITAIN.*

THE Dukedome of *AQUITAIN*, the greateſt and goodlyeſt of all *France*, contained the Provinces of *Xaintoigne*, 2 *Guienne*, 3 *Gaſcoigne*; with the Iſles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Iſlands in the *Aquitanick* or Weſtern Ocean.

1 *XAINTOIGNE* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Limoſin*, and *Perigort*; on the Weſt, with the *Aquitanick* Ocean; on the North, with *Poictou*; and on the South, with *Guienne*: So called from *Sainctes*, one of the principall Cities of it; as that from the *Santones*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whoſe chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle, and ſo on the North border of it, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, juſt oppoſite to the Iſle of *Oleron*; having firſt taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two leſſer Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Sainctes*, by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanium*, by *Antonine*, *Civitas Santonum*, ſeated upon the *Charente*, a Biſhops See, and the *Seneſchalſie* for the County. 2 S. *John d' Angelie*, ſituate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnably fortified; whereof it hath given ſufficient teſtimony in the *Civil Wars* of *France* about *Religion*, untill the Fatall time was come, in which the great power of that party was to be diſſolved; at what time, (*viz.* *An.* 1621.) after a ſiege of forty dayes it was taken by King *Lewis* the 13th. the Fortifications demoliſhed, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards to be called by the name of *Lewis-Bourg*. 3 *Bourg ſur la mer*, upon the *Dordonne*, which for the wideneſs of it is here called a Sea. 4 *Retraicte*, ſeated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*. 5 *Blaye*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Countrey, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a good Garriſon, for ſecuring the paſſage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being ſeated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6 *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the preſent *Latine*, but antiently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santones*, a well noted Port in the moſt northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Countrey hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town ſeated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay, the entrance of which is well aſſured by two very ſtrong Forts, betwixt which there is no more ſpace, than for the paſſage of a good ſhip; every night cloſed up with a maſſie Chain: and the whole Town either environed with deep Mariſhes, or fortified with ſuch Bulwarks, trenches, and other works of modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the ſafeſt retreat for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion* in the time of their troubles; as may be ſeen by

Aquitain. the ſtory of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the ſecond *Civil Wars*, *Anno* 1568. many Towns conſidering how ill the former Peace had been obſerved, refuſed to take in any of the Kings Garriſons, or permit any of the Papiſts to bear Armes amongſt them; of which *Rochel* was one: which alſo, contrary to the Kings command, maintained a Navie for their ſafety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre* and her Son retired, as to a place of ſafety. *Anno* 1570, *Rochel* alone, of all the *French* Towns held good for the *Proteſtants*, and is by *Monſieur Joinville* on all ſides blocked up: but the ſiege ſoon raiſed, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Sancerre*, with others, made cautionary for the peace enſuing. *Anno* 1575, beſieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery; *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the Duke of *Aumal*, &c. being alſo preſent at the ſervice: It held out from the beginning of *March*, till the ſeventh of *June*, and was then freed; the City having in one moneth endured 13000 ſhot, and the King loſt 20000 men, amongſt them Duke of *Aumal* for one. *Anno* 75, & 78, it was attempted by *Landerean*, the Iſle of *Ree* taken, but ſoon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after that defeat, being received in, in triumph. *Anno* 1577, beſieged to Sea-ward by *Lanſac*; who being alſo beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former ſtrength. In the troubles of 85, & 88. the Princes abovenamed made it their Retreat; and from thence iſſued to divert the purpoſes of the Duke of *Mercoeur*. The next year, *Henry* the third being ſlain, and the King of *Navarre* ſeated in the Throne, the *Proteſtant* party increaſed exceedingly in power and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themſelves apart as a *Free Eſtate*, *Rochell* being made the head of their Common-wealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal *Baſtions* of Free ſtone, with double ditches, deep and broad in the bottom, abundantly furniſhed with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of *Canon*, beſides Culverins and ſmaller pieces, with victuals, and all other neceſſaries to endure a ſiege; and grown unto ſo great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or ſixſcore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns a piece. This drew upon them the great War, in the years 1621, & 1622. Which ended in the loſs of all their Garriſons, except *Rochell*, and *Montalban*: thoſe to remain in pledge with the *Proteſtant* party, but for three years only. Which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again beſieged both by Sea and Land, the Iſle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven ſo barred up with Ships chained together, and ſunk into it, and other works of ſtupendious greatneſs, in the very Ocean, that no forein ſuccours out of *England*, (however really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious ſiege, they yeelded themſelves to the Kings mercy, *Anno* 1628. *Montalban*, *Nimes*, and other places newly fortified, ſubmitting at the ſame time alſo. 7 *Marans*, a great Town, and of great importance, ſeated by the Ocean Sea in a low fenny place, as it were in a *Peninſula*, and ſo incompaſſed on every ſide with mariſh watry grounds, that there is no acceſs to the works thereof, but by very few, and thoſe narrow paſſages. 8 *Chaſtillon*; and 9 *Saubize*, places of good ſtrength alſo, but of greater note; the firſt, for giving ſurname to a noble Family, out of which iſſued formerly the Earls of *Blois*, and of late times *Gaſper de Colligni* and *Monſieur D' Andalal* his Brother, much mentioned in the wars of *France* about Religion; the later giving the title of a Duke to a younger Son of the Houſe of *Rohan*, as great a ſtickler in that cauſe, as thoſe Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the ſecond Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South, with *Gaſcoigne*; on the Eaſt, with *Perigort*; and on the Weſt, with the *Aquitanick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* hils to the River of *Bourdeaux*. The reaſon of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name, *Aquitain*; but not very probably. The Countrey generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The people, as thoſe of *Xaintoigne* alſo, tall of ſtature, of able bodies, haters of ſervitude and baſeneſs, and well practiſed in armes; which qualities of the minde, and conſtitution of body, (being therein ſo different from the reſt of *France*) it is poſſible enough, they might have from the *Engliſh*; who for 300 years were poſſeſſed of the Countrey, and have left many tracks of their language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province are, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean: the Countrey betwixt theſe two Rivers being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*, or, The Countrey betwixt the two Seas; the Rivers hereabouts reſembling a ſmall Sea in wideneſs. Of leſſer note are, 1 *Jearne*, 2 *Baize*, 3 *Lot*, and 4 *Liſle*, falling into the *Garond*, in their ſeveral places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Bourdeaux*, ſeated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongſt the mariſhes. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who poſſeſſed this tract; and for diſtinctions ſake, were called *Bituriges Ubiſci*, thoſe of *Bourges* being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalenſium*; the *Metropolis* at that time of *Aquitania ſecunda*; conſequently an Archbiſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. A fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with many goodly buildings, an Univerſity founded here by K. *Lewis* the 11th, and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoyning, by K. *Charles* the 7th. *Anno* 1453, not long after the expulſion of the *Engliſh* thence: and is one of the moſt noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom, frequented very much by the *Dutch*, and *Engliſh* for *Gaſcoigne* wines; over which laſt, the *French* are ſo jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordnance* at the Port of *Blaye*. The Countrey hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdelois*. 2 *Fronſac*, lying in the Countrey betwixt the two Seas (as they call it,) which gives the title of a Duke to the noble Family of the

the Earls of S. *Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronſac*; and to the Countrey round about, the name of *Fronſadaze*. 3 *Libourn*, at the confluence of the two great Rivers, oppoſite to *Retraicte* in *Xaintoigne*. 4 *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninſula*, or demi-Iſland: called the Countrey of *Medoc*. 5 *Baionne* a Sea Town, and Epiſcopal See, frontiering on the coaſt of *Spain*. 6 St. *John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* Mountains, all about which, the people ſpeak the *Baſquiſh*, or old *Gaſcoigne* language, being the ſame with that of *Biſcay*. 7 *D' Acqs*, an Epiſcopal See, by *Ptolemie* called *Aquæ Auguſtæ*, (*Civitas Aquenſium*, by *Antoninus*) from whence this part of *Gaule* had the name of *Aquitain*. Theſe three laſt being all of them Frontier Towns, are ſtrongly fortified. 8 *Bazas*, (called *Coſſium* by *Ptolemie*) the chief City of the *Vaſates*, whom *Antoninus* placeth in this tract; now a Biſhops See, ſituate on the borders of *Gaſcoigne*, in the Countrey from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of leſs note, 1 *Eſparrez*: 2 St. *Baſil*. 3 *Reule*. 4 *Chaſteau-Muron*. 5 *Monſeguer*. 6 *Sainctterre*, &c. Here is alſo in this Province the Countrey of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-coaſt from *Baionne* to *Medoc*, a barren, poor, and wretched Countrey, the worſt piece of *France*; only remarkable for the Lords or owners of it, formerly of the houſe of *Foix*: of which the moſt remarkable were *Gaſton de Foix*, for his many ſignal ſervices againſt the *French*, created Earl of *Longueville*, and Knight of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the ſixth; and his Son *John de Foix*, created Earl of *Kendall*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by the ſaid King *Henry*; but better known in *Engliſh* ſtories by the name of *Capital*, or *Capdau de Buche*, the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

Gaſcoigne.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largeſt part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the Eaſt *Languedoc*, from which parted by the River *Garond*; on the Weſt, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and ſome part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Countrey generally fruitful, but of Wines eſpecially; brought hence to *Bourdeaux* as the Staple for that commodity, and thence tranſported into *England* in great abundance.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Auſcii*, *Laſtoraces*, *Convenares*, *Conſerani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*: united in this name of *Gaſcoigne* on the conqueſt of it by the *Vaſcones*, a *Spaniſh* Nation, who fell in here, during the reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though ſubdued by *Clovis* the ſecond, Son of *Dagobert*, yet they left their name unto the Countrey; divided afterwards according to the chief *Seigneuries* and Eſtates thereof, into 1 the Principality of *Bearn*, 2 the Earldoms of *Foix*, 3 *Comminges*, 4 *Bigorre*, 5 *Armaignac*, 6 *Albret*, and 7 the Countrey of *Agenois*.

1 The *Principality* of *BEARN*, is ſituate at the Foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; ſo called from *Benearnum*, a principal City of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Countrey of good paſturage, though amongſt the mountains, affording plenty of Cattel, butter and cheeſe; and in ſome places wines alſo, little inferiour in taſt and colour to the beſt of *France*; and many *medicinal* ſprings iſſuing from the hils adjoyning.

The *Religion* here, as generally in all *Gaſcoigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*, introduced about the year 1560; or rather then confirmed by publick authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*: at what time the *Maſs*, *Tithes*, Church-lands, and the *Prelates* Votes in Parliament (according to the *Genevian* way of *Reformation*) were condemned together. And ſo it ſtood untill the year 1620, when by the power and authority of *Lewis* the 13th, King of *France* and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were reſtored to their *Votes* and Lands, the Clergy to their *Tithes*, and *Maſs* cauſed alſo to be ſaid in ſome of their Churches: yet ſo, that thoſe of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exerciſe of their own *Religion*, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Orthes*, the ſame which anciently was called *Benearnum*. 2 *Leſcar*, a Biſhops See, the ancient ſeat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3 *Oleron*, a Biſhops See alſo, mounted upon an high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Countrey. 4 *Sainctterre*, well garriſoned ſince the reduction of this Countrey to the Kings obedience. 5 *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Countrey; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Albret*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till the coming of King *Henry* the fourth to the Crown of *France*. 6 *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Countrey for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general diſmembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the abſolute Lords of it, acknowledging no Superior for ought I can finde. The principal of which was that *Gaſton* (a name very frequent in this Family) who in the year 1118 accompanied with many noble perſons of *France*, aſſiſted *Alphonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon* at the ſiege of *Saragoſſa*: in the courſe of which action he did ſo good ſervice, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his poſterity enjoying many priviledges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaſton*, maried to *William de Moncada* Seneſchall of *Catalogne*, and of great poſſeſſions in that Countrey, the Lordſhip and Soveraignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family, about the year 1220. but long it did not tarry in it. For *William* being ſlain in the conqueſt of the Iſle of *Majorca*, *Anno* 1228. left his Eſtates to *Gaſton de Moncada* his eldeſt ſon; who much increaſed them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly pieces, accrowing to him in the right of his Wife *Martha*, heir thereof; whereof more anon. Grown by this means to ſuch authority and eſteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without iſſue male) *Conſtance* his eldeſt daughter was thought a match of great advantage to *Alphonſo* eldeſt ſon to King *James* the firſt. But dying without iſſue by her, *Anno* 1260. the Soveraignty of *Bearn* with all the Appendixes thereof both in *France* and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of

Foix

Gascoigne. *Foix* (an Estate equall to it both in power and patrimony) by the mariage of *Roger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who succeeded in that Earldom, *Anno* 1262. with *Margaret de Moncada* another daughter of this *Gaston*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increased both in power and honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Comminges*, the Visconty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guyenne*, to this house of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the mariage of *Gaston* Earl of *Foix*, and Soveraign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, *Anno* 1481: descending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the name of *Henry* the fourth; but governed by him alwaies as a *State distinct*, without relation or resort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the thirteenth his Son, finding some inconvenience in that distinction, incorporated it for ever to the rest of his Dominions, *Anno* 1620, though not without some opposition from the subjects of *Bearn*: which he was fain to over-bear by his personal presence, and the advantage of such Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, awed, as the rest of *France*, by Forts and Garrisons, and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament established at *Pau*; the Judges and Counsellors thereof at the Kings appointing.

2 The Earldom of *FOIX*, is situate on the West of *Languedoc*; *Commingeois* interposing betwixt it and *Bearn*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Maseros*, on the *Garond*, a Bishops See. 2 *Pamieres*, a Bishops See also, seated on the River *Lagiere*. 3 *Foix*, on the same River, called in *Latin*, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxienses*; the chief seat of the *Flussates* in the times of the *Romans*, now giving name to all the Countrey. 4 *Mirande*, in the County of *Esterac*, and the chief thereof; but otherwise of no great accompt. 5 *Savardun*, and 6 *Monthault*, two strong pieces. 7 *Mirepoix* (*oppidum Miropense*) a Bishops See also, but of no note otherwise. The old Inhabitants of this tract, besides the *Flussates* above mentioned, were called *Vaccæi*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the pastures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Armes, 3 Cowes passant *Gules*, horned and hoofed *Azure*, in a Field *Or*.

The first of these Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcassone*, advanced to this honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouse*, who had then the Soveraignty hereof, *Anno* 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increased by mariage, (no one Family more) many fair lands in the Marishes of *Province* being added to it by *Estmiette*, wife of *Roger* the second; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cerile* daughter of Earl *Raimond*, wife of *Roger* the third; the Earldom of *Castelbon*, by *Brunicen* wife of *Roger-Bernard* the first; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the wife of *Gaston* the second. Besides all which, in or about the year 1262, *Roger Bernard*, the nineth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Estate, as before is said; whose Grand-childe *Isabel* (the male issue failing) conveyed the whole Estate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaston*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldest Son *John*, was for his many good services to *Charles* the seventh, made a Peer of *France*: and did not only purchase the Visconty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was descended by *Mainguard*, wife of *Roger-Bernard* the second; but by his mariage with *Eleanor* or *Leanora* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his house, though he enjoyed it not in his own person. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Estate, this Family grew to so great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time descended from it: *viz. Katharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, and *Anne* Queen of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*. Before which time (I mean the addition of *Navarre* to their other Estates) the Earls of *Foix* were in so high esteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendosme*, though extracted from the Royal bloud, and lived in a condition equal to most Kings in Christendom. In which regard, as also that the later Kings of *Navarre* and present Kings of *France*, are descended of them; it will not be amiss to subjoyn here the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Foix*.

A. Ch.		
1062	1	*Bernard* the younger Son of *Roger* Earl of *Carcasson*, the first Earl of *Foix*.
1096	2	*Roger*, the Son of *Bernard*, an adventurer in the first war for the *Holy Land*.
1111	3	*Roger* II. Son of *Roger* the first.
1144	4	*Roger* III. Son of *Roger* the second.
1188	5	*Raymond-Roger* son of *Roger* the third, a great stickler for the Earls of *Tholouse*, in favour of the *Albigenses*, and their opinions.
1223	6	*Roger-Bernard*, the inheritor of his Fathers opinions, as well as of his Estates and fortunes.
1241	7	*Roger* IV. surnamed *Rotfer*, a companion of the King S. *Lewis* in the *Holy Land*.
1255	8	*Roger-Bernard* II. Son of *Rotfer*.
1262	9	*Roger Bernard* III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendixes unto his Estates.
1306	10	*Gaston* the Son of *Roger-Bernard* the third, and of *Margaret de Moncada* the Heir of *Bearn*.
1315	11	*Gaston* II. Son of *Gaston* the first, a great Enemy to the *English* in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a friend to the King of *Aragon* against the *Moors*, in which war he was slain.
1344	12	*Gaston* III. for his beauty surnamed *Phœbus*, inferiour for Revenue and the port he lived in, to few Kings in Christendom.
1390	13	*Matthew* Earl of *Castelbon*, Son of *Roger-Bernard* Earl of *Castelbon* the second Son of *Gaston* the first: designed

designed ſucceſſor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whoſe eldeſt Daughter he had maried, but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Duke of *Momlanc*.

1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Iſabel* Siſter and Heir of *Matthew*, Earls of *Foix*.

1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Charles* the ſeventh of *France*: his younger Brother *Gaſton*, as great a friend unto the *Engliſh*, ſucceeding in the Eſtate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the ſecond Son of this *John*, deſcended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lautrech*, ſo renowned in the wars of *Italie*.

1436 16 *Gaſton* IV. Son of *John* a principal Agent in the Conqueſt of *Guienne* from the *Engliſh*; by his mariage with *Eleanor* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his houſe unto that Kingdome: Grandfather by *John* Viſc. of *Narbone* his ſecond Son to *Gaſton de Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, ſlain at the taking of *Ravenna*, *Anno* 1512.

1472 17 *Francis Phœbus* Nephew of *Gaſton* the fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre* by their Son *Gaſton* Prince of *Viane*, ſucceeded his ſaid Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about 7 years after. Gaſcoigne.

1483 18 *Katharine* the Siſter and Heir of *Francis*, by her mariage with *John* Earl of *Albret*, added that Earldom alſo to the houſe of *Foix*.

1517 19 *Henry* of *Albret* Son of *John* and *Katharine*, King of *Navarre*, Soveraign of *Bearn* and Earl of *Foix*, by his marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter to King *Francis* the firſt, added the greateſt part of the lands of *Armaignac* unto his Eſtate.

1556 20 *Antonie* of *Burbon* Duke of *Vendoſme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albret*, Kings of *Navarre*, Soveraigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.

1572 21 *Henry* II. Son of *Joan* and *Antonie*, King of *Navarre*, Soveraign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Kingdom by the name of *Henry* the fourth, *Anno* 1589, the Father of *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Grandfather of King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, *Anno* 1648. And ſo having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France*, it is time to leave them. The Arms of theſe great Earls we have ſeen before.

3 The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is ſituate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* mountains: ſo called from the *Bigerrones*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoyning Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people, of noyſome breaths, deformed bodies, and ghaſtly viſages: in which regard, not ſuffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themſelves to drudgery, and the baſeſt of mechanick trades. From their great miſhapen heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Baigneres*, famous for *medicinal* Bathes. 2 *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3 *Tarbe*, (by *Antonine* talled *Turſaubica*) ſeated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a ſtrong Caſtle, an Epiſcopal See, and the Seneſchalſie for all the Countrey of *Begorre*. Which Countrey having for long time its own *Proprietary* Earls, under the Soveraignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or thoſe Kings from them; was at the laſt, by the mariage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eſquibat* the laſt Earl, to *Boſon* Vicount of *Marſan* and *Gabardan*, added to that houſe. Whoſe Daughter *Matthee*, marying to *Gaſton* Prince of *Bearn*, increaſed that *Principality* with thoſe goodly pieces of *Marſan*, *Gabardan* and *Begorre*; all brought unto the houſe of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaſton*, maried to *Roger-Bernard*, as before is ſaid.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*. By *Inigo Ariſta* the Son of *Simon*, Earl of this Countrey, called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Armes of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Armes thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Croſs in chief, *Gules*. Which Armes are ſaid to be took by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King of *Navarre*, from ſuch a ſign appearing to him in the Skie, before his firſt battel with the *Moores*.

4 The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lyeth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eaſtward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher*, and more mountainous part, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*; and the *Lower*, which hath ſomewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenæ*, and *Conſerani*. The principal places at preſent in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1 *Lombes*, a Biſhops See, but of late erection. 2 *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3 *Samathan*. 4 *Liſle en Dodon*. And in the *Higher*, there is 1 *Conſerans*, once the chief Town of the *Conſerani*, now a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* hils. 2 S. *Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Biſhops See alſo, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3 St. *Beat*, 4 St. *Fregou*, 5 *Monregeau*, or *Mons Regius*, 6 *Silliers*, &c.

Of the eſtate of this Earldom I have little to ſay, but that it was united to the houſe of *Foix*, by the mariage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaſton* the ſecond of that name, and the eleventh Earl of this Houſe. Given afterwards notwithſtanding to a *Spaniard* called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by *Charles* the ſeventh. But in the end reſtored again to the houſe of *Foix*, by the prowes and great ſervices of *Gaſton* the fourth, who cauſed his uncle *Matthew*, the youngeſt ſon of *Archembald* and *Iſabel* Earls of *Foix*, to be ſetled in it, according to the will and purpoſe of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on *John* of *Leſcon*, a Baſtard of the Earl of

Ar-

Armaignac *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the *Marſhals* of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Armes of theſe Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5 The Earldon of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greateſt of all theſe Eſtates conſidered ſeverally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and ſo extendeth it ſelf to the banks of the River *Garond*. Principal Towns are, 1 *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Auguſta Auſciorum*; the Metropolis or head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; by conſequence an Archbiſhops See: The Revenues whereof are ſaid to be the greateſt of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no leſs than 40000 *l. per annum*. 2 *Lectoure*, a Biſhops See, called of old *Leſtoracium*, in our moderne *Latine Lectodurum*. A Town ſo well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a ſiege of three moneths againſt the forces of *France*: but ſince it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, ſo ſtrengthned and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the Kingdom on this ſide, and their ſureſt Fortreſs againſt *Spain*. 3 *Liſle de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1421. 4 *Auvillar*. 5 *Auzan*. 6 *Chaſtel-neau*. 7 *Malbourquer*, 8 *Neſtes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*: *Sancho* the great, having ſubdued ſome Lands in *Gaſcoign*, which he conferred on *Garſias* a younger Son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1014. On which foundation it increaſed ſo faſt, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof, came to be Conſtable of *France*. And ſo did *John* the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the ſeventh: who alſo writ himſelf, *By the Grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the ſtile of Soveraign Princes. A man of ſo conſiderable power in theſe parts of *France*; that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the ſixth, was thought the beſt means for eſtabliſhing his Eſtate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking off this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cauſe of the loſs of the Kings pieces in *France*. This greatneſs made him ſubject to the jealouſie of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Eſtate and his life together. *Charles*, Brother of this *John*, ſucceeded by the favour of King *Charles* the eighth. After whoſe death this fair Eſtate was ſeized on to the uſe of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the firſt to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*, whoſe grand-father had maried with a Siſter of the ſaid Earl *John*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the ſaid Kings Siſter: who, after the deceaſe of the Duke of *Alanſon*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albret*, and King of *Navarre*, her ſecond Husband; returning ſo to the *Original* from whence firſt it came.

The Armes of theſe great Princes, were Quarterly 1 *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard-Lyon *Or*. The 3, &c.

6 The Earldom of *ALBRET* is ſituate on the North-weſt of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1 *Nerac*, ſeated on the River of *Baize*; the only place of ſtrength and moment in all this eſtate. 2 *Chaſtell-Jalone*, well ſeated to diſturb the Trade betwixt *Bourdeaux* and *Gaſcoigne*, but not able to endure a ſiege. 3 *Mont de Marſan*, and 4 *Tartas*, both ſeated on the River *Ladour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Countrey is ſo full, that the *Popiſh Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the ſmalleſt of the ſix, and of leaſt Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the reſt into it. For *John*, the Son of *Alan* Earl of *Albret*, by his mariage with *Katharine*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Gaſton*, Son of *Gaſton* of *Foix*, and of *Leanora* Princeſs of *Navarre*, added to his Eſtate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albret* his Son, by marying the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of King *Francis* the firſt, united to it thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Jean* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Eſtate was brought to *Antonie* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and Father to King *Henry* the fourth, becoming ſo united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at firſt diſmembred.

The Armes of theſe Earls, were Quarterly 1 *France*; 2 *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The 3d, &c.

7 As for the Countrey of *AGENOIS*, the laſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be *French*) than the Dukes of *Aquitaine*. The principal Cities of it, 1 *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, ſeated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Countrey: A Biſhops See, a Seneſchalſie, and held to be the faireſt in *Gaſcoigne*. 2 *Condon*, a Biſhops See alſo, from which the parts adjoyning are called *Condonnois*. 3 *Villeneufne*, 4 *Claerac*, 5 *Marmand*, 6 *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of thoſe ſeveral members which made up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*; let us next look on the eſtate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Gothes*, before poſſeſſed of all *Gallia Narboneuſis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their ſervice in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Gothes* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clovis*, the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his Succeſſors, till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngeſt Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Sons of this *Pepin*, being diſpoſſeſſed by *Charles* the *Bald*; it was by him conferred on *Arnulph*, of the houſe of *Burgundie*, for his many good ſervices againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 844. Whoſe Succeſſors take here in this order following.

The

The Dukes of *Aquitain*.

844	1	*Ranulph* of *Burgundie*, firſt Duke of *Aquitaine*.
875	2	*William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.
902	3	*Ebles*, Earl of *Poictou*, ſucceeded in *Aquitaine* and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Teſtament of Duke *William*.
911	4	*Ebles* II. Son of *Ebles* the firſt.
935	5	*Willam* II. the Son of *Ebles* the ſecond.
970	6	*William* III. Son of *William* the ſecond.
1619	7	*Guy*, the Son of *William* third.
1021	8	*William* IV. Son of *Guy*.
1086	9	*William* V. Son of *William* the fourth.
1156	10	*Lewis* the ſeventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, ſole Heir of *William* the fifth.
1152	11	*Henry*, Duke of *Normandie*, and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of ſome conſanguinity; after King of *England*.
1169	12	*Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry*.
1199	13	*John* King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*; who forfeiting his Eſtates in *France*, on a judicial

ſentence pronounced againſt him for the (ſuppoſed) murther of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitaine* and the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces were ſeized on by the *French*, *Anno* 1202. But notwithſtanding this *Arreſt*, the *Engliſh* ſtill continued their pretenſions to it, till at the laſt it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, and *Henry* the third of *England*, *Anno* 1259. That the *Engliſh* ſhould reſt ſatisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein alſo the Countrey of *Limoſin*; and that on his inveſtiture into this Eſtate, he ſhould relinquiſh all his rights in *Normandie*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Maine*, &c. In conſideration whereof, he ſhould have 150000 Crowns in ready money. On this accord the Kings of *England* became Homagers to the Crown of *France*, which ſometimes they omitted, ſometimes did it by Proxie, but never in perſon, till *Philip de Valois* required it of K. *Edward* the third: and becauſe ſuch duties are not often perſonally done by Soveraign Princes, *Du Serres* ſhall deſcribe the formality of it. The place deſigned for this exploit was the Church of *Amiens*, " to which *Edward* came (ſaith he) with " ſuch a Train, as was entended rather to the honour of himſelf than the *French* King. Royally attired " he was, with a long Robe of Crimſon Velvet, powdred with *Leopards* of Gold; his Crown upon his " head, his Sword by his ſide, and golden ſpurs upon his heels. *Philip*, attended by the chief Officers of " the Realm, ſat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long robe of purple Velvet, powdred with *Flower de* " *Lyces* of Gold; his Crown upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Vicount *Melun*, the great " *Chamberlain* of *France*, commanded *Edward* to take off his Crown, ſword, and ſpurs, and to kneel " down: which he did accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joyning them together, he ſaid " unto him; *You become a* Liege-man *to the King my Maſter, who is here preſent, as Duke of* Guienne, *and* " *Peer of* France, *and promiſe to be faithful and loyal to him*; *ſay yea*: *and* Edward *ſaid yea, and aroſe.* But the Hiſtorian notes withall, that *Philip* paid dearly for this *Pageant*; the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made *France* a field of bloud. And here it is to be obſerved, that though the Kings of *England* by this new inveſtiture, were entituled Dukes of *Guienne* only, yet they had all the power and priviledges of Dukes of *Aquitaine*; excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of *Gaſcoigne*, which formerly belonged unto them. Inſomuch as *Richard* the ſecond, though Duke of *Guienne* only in ſtile and title, inveſted his Uncle *John* of *Gaunt* in that brave eſtate, under the ſtile and title of Duke of *Aquitaine*; ſummoned to Parliament by that name by the ſaid King *Richard*. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the *Engliſh* had poſſeſſion of the Dukedome of *Guienne*, according to the order of their Succeſſions, from the fortieth of King *Henry* the third, *Anno* 1259, to the twenty ninth of King *Henry* the ſixth, *Anno* 1452 (the intercalation of *John* of *Gaunt* excepted only:) when outed of all their old rights in *France*, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of *Charles* the ſeventh; the *Engliſh* then divided in Domeſtick Factions, and not at leaſure to look after the affairs of *France*. Nor do I finde, that *Guienne* being thus recovered, was ever diſmembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the eleventh aſſigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joyning with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundie* in a new confederacy; who held it but two years, and died the laſt Duke of *Guienne*, *Anno* 1472.

The Armes of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon *Or*; which joyned to the two Lyons of *Normandie*, make the Armes of *England*.

16. *LANGUEDOC.*

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenean* hils, the Land of *Ronſillon*, and the *Mediterranean*, on the South; on the North, with *Forreſt*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergu*; on the Eaſt, with *Provence* and *Daulphine*; on the Weſt, with *Gaſcoigne*. Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation ſay *Ouy*, theſe of this Countrey ſay *Oc*; and therefore *Ortelius* conjectures it was called *Languedoc*. But the truth is, it took denomination from the *Gothes*, who reigning long in this Countrey, left behinde

them

Languedoc. them a ſmack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphoniæ gratiâ*, termed *Languedotia*, or *Languedoc*, that is, the *Gothes* Language.

The Countrey on thoſe parts which lie next to *Auvergn*, is like the *higher* parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful; in all the reſt, as rich and pleaſant as the beſt Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of Olives, Raiſins, Figs, Orenges, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring *Province*. In that participating the commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The people have ſomewhat in them of the ancient *Gothes*, and draw nearer to the temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themſelves, affecting bravery above their condition and eſtates; not caring how they pinch it on the working daies, or at home in private, ſo they may flaunt it in the ſtreet, and be fine on *holy-daies*. The humour alſo of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this *Province*, are 1 *Aurance*, 2 *Lieran*, and 3 *Orbe*, emptying themſelves into the *Rhoſne*; and *Alby* which disburdeneth it ſelf into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Niſmes* (in *Latin Nemauſus*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See; where there remain ſome marks of the *Roman* greatneſs, eſpecially the ruines of a ſpacious Palace built by the Emperour *Adrian*. 2 *Mont-pelier* (in *Latine Mons Peſſulanus*) ſituate on an high mountain, as the name imports, ſome twelve miles diſtant from the Sea; an Univerſity for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, and for that very happily ſeated, the Countrey round about affording great variety of *medicinal* herbs. An Earldom of it ſelf in the former times, conveyed by *Mary* Daughter of *William* the laſt Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her husband; next, made a Member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and finally by *James*, the laſt King of *Majorca*, ſold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the ſtrongeſt holds which thoſe of the *Reformed* Religion had in this Countrey; and memorable for the notable reſiſtance which it made againſt the whole forces of *Lewis* the 13th in the laſt *Civil* Wars about *Religion*. 3 *Aleth*, and 4 *Carcaſſonne*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſeated on the River *Aude*; the people of both ſpeaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of ſome *Spaniſh*. Which intermixture of *Spaniſh* with that broken *French*, they either have originally from the *Gothes* of *Spain*, of whoſe Kingdom this was once a part: or from their long ſubjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair eſtates in this part of *France*, by the mariage of *Raymond Borenger* the ſeventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of ſome of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the year 1040. And to theſe Towns, as alſo unto thoſe of *Niſmes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Soveraignty (though they had loſt the poſſeſſion of them) as thoſe of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual releaſes made on both ſides of each others claims, by *James* the firſt of *Aragon*, and the King St. *Lewis*, *Anno* 1260, or thereabouts. 5 *Alby*, commodiouſly ſeated on the River ſo called, the *Civitas Albigentium* of *Antoninus*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkable in *Church-hiſtory* for thoſe great oppoſites to the corruptions and errors of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenſes*. 6 *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betira* of *Ptolemie*, and *Civitas Beterraſium* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colonie of old, now a Biſhops See. 7 *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient writers, remarkable for a Councel held there in the year 450, and for a well-frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Egbaud*. 8 *Narbon*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phocenſes*, and the firſt *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italie*. In *Italie* it ſelf; (to obſerve ſo much by the way) were no leſs than 150 Colonies; 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, in *England* 4 only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countreys ſome, but very few in reſpect of the largeneſs of the Territories. Theſe *Colonies* were inſtituted partly to repreſs Rebellions in the conquered Countreys; partly to reſiſt a forein enemy, partly to reward the ancient Souldiers, partly to relieve the poorer ſort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the ſuperfluity and redundance of her people. Now if the queſtion be asked, whether a *Colony* or a *Fortreſs* be more behooveful, I anſwer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio de ſtato*, that a *Fortreſs* is more fit for ſuddain uſe, and a *Colony* for continuance: the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as ſoon loſt; the other require ſome time of ſetling, and are after of a good ſufficiency to defend themſelves. As we ſee in our times, the *Spaniſh* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tanger* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the laſt Town we loſt on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the moſt populous and greateſt Town of all *France*: inſomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonenſis*. A Province, of which *Pliny* delivered us this cenſure: Narbonenſis Gallia *agrorum cultu, morum virorumq; dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli provinciarum poſtponenda; breviterq;* Italia *potiùs quàm provincia*; that is to ſay, that for fruitfulneſs of the ſoil, and the civility of the people, it was inferiour to no province in the *Roman* Empire. But to return unto the Town, being antiently the *Metropolis* of this Province, it had withall the honour of being an Archbiſhops See, which it ſtill continueth: well fortified at the preſent as a Town of war, frontiering *Catalonia* and the land of *Rouſillon*. 9 *La Puy*, the See of a Biſhop, who in *Latin* is called *Podienſis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Velay*, the ancient ſeat of the *Velauni*. 10 *Viviers*, on the River *Rhoſne*, (by *Plinie* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Countrey adjoyning hath the name of *Vivarets*. 11 *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Biſhops See; from whence the Countrey round about hath the name of *Rouvergn*; though ſome account this *Rouvergn*, a diſtinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12 *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectoſages*, and the *Toloſates*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greateſt in all *France*. The ſeat of an Archbiſhop, and an Univerſity: ſo ancient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael*. Here was a *Parliamentary* Court erected, for the adminiſtration of Juſtice in theſe parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Souldiers having ſtole ſacrilegiouſly

ſome

ſome Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Conſul) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applyed to unhappy men. *Languedoc*

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are the large and ſpacious fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which fields, [An. 435. was fought that terrible Battle between *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*; *Ætius* was ſtrengthned by the *Gothes*, *Francks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila's* Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, and *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day loſt their lives: *Attila* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a funeral pile of *Horſe Saddles*, he would have burned himſelf. But his enemies weary of wel-doing, or *Ætius* politickly fearing, that if *Attila* were quite deſtroyed, the *Gothes*, *Franks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too inſolent; gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*: which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Ætius*, notwithſtanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian* the Emperor of the *Weſt*, rewarded with the loſs of his head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right hand with his left*. And indeed ſo it happened. For not long after, he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three reaſons. Firſt the improbability that *Ætius* having got the victory, ſhould ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France*, from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Countrey, to break into *Italy*. And ſecondly the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an antient writer, who telleth us, firſt, that before this fight, *Attila* had beſieged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Toriſmund* the King of the *Gothes*, (his Father *Theodorick* being ſlain) *in Campis Catalaunicis ubi & pugnaverat*; *Regia Majeſtate ſubvectus* Tolotam *ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in thoſe very fields, entred with great ſtate and triumph into *Tholouſe*, the Regal City at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the place of battle to be near this City: though poſſible by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Countrey of *Languedoc*.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vellauni*, the *Tectoſages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembred, were the *Agatenſes*, *Beterenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcæ*, and the *Arecomici*; all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, and ſome part of *Spain*, to *Atholfus* King of the *Gothes*, whom *Honorius* by this gift and by beſtowing on him his Siſter *Placidia*, bought out of *Italy*. The *Gothes* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds by taking in the moſt part of *Aquitain*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergn*: but forced to quit them to the *French*, who Conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their firſt Donation. After this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; loſing *Provence* to *Theodoric*, King of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes of Italy*; whoſe ſucceſſor *Amalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her intereſs in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the *French* King of *Mets*. Nothing now left unto the *Gothes* of their *Gallick* purchaſes, but this *Languedock* only; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the great given to one *Thurſin*, of the race of the antient Kings, with the title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be *Chriſtened*. But long it continued not in his race, nor in any other, not being ſetled in a way of Lineal Deſcent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of St. *Giles* (a Town of *Guienne*) whoſe Grand-child *Hugh*, being an adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting money to provide himſelf for that expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of St. *Giles* before mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of St. *Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that name frequently remembred in the *Eaſtern ſtories*; as for his great valour in the courſe of the *Holy wars*, eſpecially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Chriſtian) with the title of Earl. This *Raymond* worthily named the *Great*, Earl of *Tholouſe*, St. *Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three Sons all all of them ſucceeding; of which the eldeſt was *Bertrand*, had a Baſe ſon called *Ponce*, who ſucceeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grand-father of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both ſuſpected to be falſe to the Chriſtian Princes in the continuance of thoſe wars. *Alfonſo* the third Son was alſo the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great maintainer of the *Albigenſes*: and in purſuance of that cauſe murdered the Legat of the Pope ſent to Excommunicate him, and ſtrangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cauſe Warred upon, and Vanquiſhed by *Simon de Monfort*, Father of *Simon de Monfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*; and after many troubles and continual Wars, left his eſtate and quarrell to his Son named alſo *Raymond* the laſt Earl of this Houſe; who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a *Heretick*, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French*

Provence. Kings, *Philip* the ſecond, *Lewis* the 8th, and St. *Lewis*. This laſt willing to make a peaceable compoſition, maried his Brother *Alphonſo*, to *Jane* daughter and heir to Count *Raimond*, with this clauſe, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raimond* agreed, the mariage was ſolemnized, An. 1249. They both died without iſſue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the days of *Philip* the third.

The names and Succeſſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were *Peers* of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt part men of action, take in order thus.

The Earls of *Tholouze*.

An. Ch.		
779	1	*Turſin*, the firſt Earl of *Tholouze*.
803	2	*William* made Earl by *Charlemaigne*, Peer of *France* at the firſt foundation of that Order.
828	3	*Iſauret Thurſin*, Sonne of *Thurſin* the firſt Earl.
841	4	*Bertrand*, Sonne of *Iſauret Thurſin*.
894	5	*William* II. of ſome other houſe.
919	6	*Ponce*, a great *Juſticiar*, but of unknown race.
963	7	*Almaric*, of as obſcure parentage as *Ponce*.
1003	8	*Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of S. *Giles*, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
1052	9	*William* III. Duke of *Aquitaine*, ſucceeded in right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
1086	10	*Hugh Aymon*, Sonne of *William* the third, ſold his Eſtate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
1096	11	*Raymond* II. Earl of S. *Giles*, *Tholouze*, and *Tripoli*; of great note in the Warre of the *Holy-Land*.
	12	*Bertrand*, Sonne of *Raymond* the *Great*.
	13	*William* IV. Brother of *Bertrand*.
1101	14	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *William* the fourth.
1146	15	*Raymond* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*.
1185	16	*Raymond* IV. Sonne of *Raymond* the third, the Great Patron of the *Albigenſes*.
1222	17	*Raymond* V. Sonne of *Raymond* the fourth, vanquiſhed and compounded with, by King *Lewis* the Saint.
1249	18	*Alfonſo* II. Brother of St. *Lewis*, and Husband of *Joan*, daughter and heir of the laſt *Raymond*: after whoſe death, and the deceaſe of *Joan* the Counteſs, An. 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of *France*; according to the Capitulations before mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Croſs *Pommelè*, of 12 points, *Or*.

17 PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the Weſt; *Daulphine*, on the North; the *Mediterranean*, on the South; and on the Eaſt with the *Alpes*, and the River *Varus*; which divide it from *Piemont*, the neereſt of the *Alpine* Provinces.

It took this name from the *Romans*, who being called in by the *Marſilians*, to revenge a private wrong done them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, wholly poſſeſſed themſelves of this Countrey; calling it κατ' ἐξοχὴν, The *Province*. Under their Empire it continued, making up the whole Province of *Narbonenſis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritimæ*. How it was given unto the *Viſigothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*, and from them taken by the *Oſtrogothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*; hath been ſhewn in *Languedoc*. Being reſigned unto the *French*, it became a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. Made a diſtinct Eſtate in the perſon of *Hugh de Arles*, (who afterwards ſucceeded in the Kingdom alſo) by *Boſon* the firſt. And by this *Hugh de Arles* upon his reſignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*; given unto *William* his Son, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Provence*; confirmed therein by the Emperor *Conrade* the ſecond, on whom the rights of that Kingdom had been transferred; to be held of him, and his Succeſſors in the Empire. In his poſterity it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of *Barcelone*, by the mariage of the Lady *Doulce* with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, Anno 1082. Caryed, together with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*; and finally by *Beatrix*, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, the laſt Earl of this Family, conveyed in mariage to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Lewis* the 9th of *France*, An. 1262. whom *Urban* the 4th not long after crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the firſt, the fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and reſtored again by the power of Pope *Clement* the fifth; the City and Territory of *Avignion* (where the Pope reſided at that time) is diſmembred from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompenſe that favour, and partly for diſcharge of ſome old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome*, for the Realm of *Naples*. A City which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that title in the Actual poſſeſſion of many of the Popes of *Rome*; ever ſince the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, to whom it formerly belonged,

but

but held by them in Fee of the Earls of *Provence*. Not long after this Donation, the ſaid *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Succeſſor, *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* the fifth of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*: poſſeſſed by this Adoption of the Earldom of *Provence*, and a title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no iſſue-male ſurviving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, the Prince of *Orange*, (another Signeury in this Countrey): and gave him therewithall full power to make Laws, coin money, and pardon all crimes; to write himſelf *Prince of Orange by the Grace of God*, with all the other Prerogatives of an abſolute Prince. This was in the year 1415. So that now the Countrey ſtands divided betwixt the *French* King, the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them abſolute and independent in his own Eſtate: as long at leaſt as the *French* King is pleaſed to give way unto it. *Provence.*

The whole is much of the ſame nature with *Languedoc*, before deſcribed, but in one part thereof, that namely between *Marſeilles* and *Arles*, different from all the reſt of *France*. By the *French* commonly called *La Craux*; by the elder Writers *Campi lapidei*, becauſe all in a manner overſpread with ſcattered ſtones. Suppoſed by *Mela* to be the place in which *Hercules* encountred *Albion* and *Bergeon* the ſons of *Neptune*: whom when he could not otherwiſe vanquiſh, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided with a ſhower of ſtones; of which theſe were faigned to be the Remainders. A Countrey which takes up a good ſpace of ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it, but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of ſpecial note, are, 1 *Aix*, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonenſis ſecunda*, and at that time called *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from *Sextius* the Founder of it (by whom the *Salii* were ſubdued in the ſecond year of that war) and the hot Bathes here. Now, and of long time, an Archbiſhops See, and the chief City of this Province; and for that reaſon made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Countrey An. 1501. Moſt memorable in old ſtory for the great diſcomfiture of the *Cimbri* by *C. Marius*. Who not willing to venture on the enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000 fighting men, and lately fleſhed in the overthrow of *Manlius* and *Sepio*, (two *Roman* Conſuls); permitted them quietly to paſs by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imputed it to fear or cowardize, ſcornfully asking his Souldiers, what ſervice they would command them to *Rome*. But when, for their eaſier paſſage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themſelves into three Companies; *Marius* ſeverally ſetting on them all, put them all to the ſword. *Ea victoria viſus meruiſſe ne ejus nati Rempub. pœniteret*, by this Victory, and this only, giving cauſe to the *Romans* (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be ſorry for his birth. 2 *Arles*, in *Latine*, *Arelatum*, by *Auſonius* called the *Rome* of *France*, and in thoſe times ſo highly prized, that *Conſtantinus Flavius* being choſen Emperor by the *Britiſh* Legions, in the declining times of the Weſtern Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not leſs memorable in Church-ſtory for a Council here held in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, Anno 313, in which was preſent *Reſtitutus* the Biſhop of *London*, and certain other Biſhops of the *Britiſh* Church. It was antiently a *Roman* Colony, and now the See of an Archbiſhop; ſituate on the River *Rhoſne*, in a low and mariſhie ſituation: which natural ſtrength ſeconded by the new works of King *Henry* the fourth, have made it one of the beſt Bulwarks of *France*, on that that ſide of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat Royal of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, who from hence were called Kings of *Arles*; as the Kings of *Auſtraſia* (or *Eaſt France*) were called Kings of *Mets*, becauſe they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other ſide of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite charge and induſtry by *C. Marius*, for conveyance of victuals into his Camp, in his war againſt the *Cimbri* before named; by *Ptolemie* called *Foſſæ Marianæ*, by the *French*, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius*: the Countrey about which, called alſo by the ſame name for the ſpace of 24 miles, is of excellent paſturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horſes; the chief Town of which is called 3 St. *Gillis*. 4 *Marſeilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, firſt built by the *Phocenſes*, a *Greek* Nation of *Aſia Minor*, who being baniſhed their Countrey, came and planted here, about the reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the laſt King of *Rome*. It was firſt only a Confederate City of the *Romans*, for whoſe ſake, being moleſted by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the *Roman Legions* firſt entred *Gaul*: afterwards, ſiding with *Pompey* in the *Civil* Wars, or at leaſt deſirous to ſtand neutral, it was forced by *Cæſar*, and made a Colony. In the proſperity hereof it drove a great trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the mother of many fair and flouriſhing Colonies, *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicæa*, *Olbia*, diſperſed in the adjoyning ſhores of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. 5 *Glandeves*, antiently called *Glanum*, a Biſhops See, ſeated upon the *Maritim Alpes*. 6 *Taulon*, by *Ptolemie* called *Tauroentium*, and by ſome *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well ſtored with Oil, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Iſle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off; and a kind of *Almonds*, called *Provence Almonds*; made by this means one of the moſt frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7 *Antibi* (in *Latin Antipolis*) a Sea-coaſt Town neer the River *Varo*, one of the fartheſt of this Countrey towards *Italy*. 8 *Feriols* (the *Forum Julium* of the antients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Maſſilians* as before was ſaid; after a Colony of the *Romans*. 9 *La Grace*, a Biſhops See, more within the Continent. 10 *Ciſteron*, on the borders of *Daulphine*. 11 *Brignols*, 12 *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongſt the Mountains, towards *Daulphine*; not otherwiſe of note but for the horrid Maſſacre of the *Proteſtants*, before deſcribed.

II. The *Principality* of *Orange* lieth on the North-Weſt of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1 *Durance*, 2 *Seile*, 3 *Meine*, and 4 *Ecque*; all helping to augment the *Rhoſne*. The chief places of it are, 1 *Aurange*, ſeated on the *Meine*, an Epiſcopal See, famous for many rare and won-

Orange. dertul Antiquities, demonſtrating the *Roman* Greatneſs, of whom once a Colony; but of moſt note in Church ſtory for a Council held here againſt the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the year 444. called *Arauſicanum*; the *Latine* name of this City being antiently *Arauſia*, in ſome Writers *Auriacus*, and of late *Aurangia*. 2 *Eſtrang.* 3 *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly St. *Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vencienſum* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwiſe memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were antiently of the Noble Family of the *Bauſſii*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the laſt of this Family, it was conveyed in mariage to *John de Chalons*, one of the moſt noble houſes of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* tht Son of this *John* obtained of *Rene* Duke *Anjou* and Earl of *Provence*, the Soveraignty hereof, as before was ſaid. By *Claude* the Heir general of this houſe, beſtowed in mariage by King *Francis* the firſt on Count *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Ambaſſador from *Maximilian* Emperor of *Germany*, An. 1514. it was tranſlated to that Family, where it ſtill remaineth.

The Princes of *Orange*.

1475 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, firſt abſolute Prince of *Orange*.

2 *William de Chalons* who ſubmitted his Eſtate to the Parliament of *Daulphine*, to ſatisfie King *Lewis* the 11th, by whom reſtored again to his former Soveraignty.

3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the rights of *Mary* Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*.

1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, ſlain at the ſiege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the fifth: *Claude* his only Siſter, and next heir of that houſe, being maried to *Henry* Earl of *Naſſaw*, An. 1515.

1536 5 *Rene* of *Naſſaw*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he ſucceeded in this Eſtate, ſlain at the ſiege of *Landrecie* in the *Netherlands*.

1544 6 *William* of *Naſſaw*, Couſen german of *Rene*, by whoſe laſt Teſtament left Heir unto his Eſtates, the great Patron and Aſſertor of the *Belgick Liberties* againſt the *Spaniard*, ſlain by a Partiſan of *Spain*, called *Balthazar*, at *Delfe* in *Holland*, An. 1584.

1584 7 *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, kept as an Hoſtage all his life by the King of *Spain*.

8 *Maurice* of *Naſſaw*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the *United Provinces*.

1625 9 *Henry* of *Naſſaw* II. Succeſſor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Eſtates, and Honors.

1648 10 *William* of *Naſſaw* II. the Son and Succeſſor of *Henry*, maried the Princeſs *Mary*, eldeſt Daughter of *Charles* King of great *Britain*, &c. on *May day*, 1641.

The Revenues of this principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2 *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, ſtringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all an Eſcocheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus, Quarterly *Chalons* and *Aurange*, under an Eſcocheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lyeth the County of *VENASCINE*, as the *French* call it, *Comitatus Veneſſinus* in the *Latine*; ſo called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Antiently it had Lords of its own called Earls of *Venize*, (*Veniſſæ Comites* in the *Latine*) united to the houſe of *Savoy* by the maria e of *Laurenha* a daughter hereof with Earl *Humbert* the ſecond, An. 1080. or thereabouts. But this family of the firſt Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what right I find not) to the Earls of *Tholouſe*, but held by them as *Homagers* (for this eſtate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Hereſie, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more abſolute Soveraignty hereof and of the City *Avignon*, being ſetled on them by Queen *Joane*, as before is ſaid. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1 *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and *Mela*, a very fair and flouriſhing City, pleaſantly ſeated on both ſides of the River of *Rhoſne*: famous for being the reſidence of the Popes for 70 years, which times the *Romans* remember till this day by the name of the *Babylonian captivity*; adminiſtring ever ſince an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The firſt Pope that removed hither was *Clement* the 5th, An. 1303. when as yet, the Popes had no more right in it than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory* the 11th, An. 1377. In this City are ſaid to be 7 Palaces, 7 Pariſh Churches, 7 Monaſteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Innes, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any *myſterie* in the number of *ſeven*, or any credit to be given to ſuch *Pythagorean divinity*; the Archbiſhop of this City may as well be entituled *Antichriſt*, as the Pope of *Rome*; if there be nothing but the *myſterie* of this number to affix it to him. It was made an Univerſity at the time of the Popes firſt ſetling here, and ſo ſtill continueth; *Alciate* the great *Emblematiſt* being here Profeſſor. 2 *Carpentras*, by *Ptolemie* called *Carpentoracte*, a Biſhops See; as is alſo 3 *Cavaillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a *Roman* Colonie, on the River *Durance*; and 4 *Taraſcon*, on the *Rhoſne*, opopoſite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedoc*: for the Popes dwelling here ſo long, could not be otherwiſe attended than by mitred Prelates. 5 *Vaſon*, *Civitas Vaſionenſium*, of *Antoninus*.

The *Revenues* of the Pope here are not very great, and thoſe expended all in keeping of Forts and Garriſons, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Proteſtants* of *Orange*. So that it is ſuppoſed that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them than he gathereth from them. The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Venize*, were *Gules*, two keys in Saltire *Or*, ſtringed *Azure*.

Which

Which ſeems to have in it ſome preſage, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it ſhould one day become ſubject to the See of *Rome*. *Provence.*

The old Inhabitants of the whole Countrey, were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maſſilienſes*, *Vaſionenſes*, and *Vencienſes*, before mentioned; beſides the *Deceates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*, and *Sigeſtorii* about *Ciſteron*: all conquered by the *Romans*, in their firſt war in *Gaule*, called in to aid thoſe of *Marſeilles* againſt the *Salii*. The fortune of it ſince, hath been ſhewn before. Nothing remains now, but the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Provence*.

1 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Auſtraſia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine; made the firſt Earl of *Provence* by *Boſon* the firſt, King of *Burgundie*. He was after King of *Burgundie*, and *Italy* alſo.

2 *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.

3 *William* II. ſurnamed the younger, Son of *William* the firſt.

4 *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.

1082 5 *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Husband of the Lady *Doulce* of *Provence*.

1131 6 *Berengar Raymond*, the ſecond Son of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*; his eldeſt brother *Raymond* ſucceeding in *Barcelone*.

7 *Raymond* II. Sonne of *Berengar Raymond*.

1173 8 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelone*, the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldeſt Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*.

1196 9 *Alfonſo* II. ſecond Son of *Alfonſo* the firſt, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Provence*; his elder Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.

10 *Raymond* III. Son of *Alfonſo*, the laſt Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

1261 11 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence*. He was alſo King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c.

1282 12 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310 13 *Robert*, King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Counteſs of *Provence*.

1371 15 *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*, Earl of *Provence*, and titulary King of *Naples*, &c. (Of whoſe deſcent from *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have ſpoke elſewhere.)

1385 16 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416 17 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1430 18 *Renè* Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, the Brother of *Renè*, ſucceeded in all the eſtates and titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* the 11th, his Couſin *german*: as being the Son of *Charles* the ſeventh, and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* the ſecond, Duke of *Anjou*, Siſter of *Lewis* the third and *Renè*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the laſt Earl of *Provense*. Immediately on whoſe deceaſe, *Decemb.* 19th. An. 1481. the King ſent a Commiſſion to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take poſſeſſion of the Countrey in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant General. Since which time *Provence* never was diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſo much as in the way of *Apennage*, or any honorary title amongſt the Kings Children.

What the *Revenues* of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to ſay, having no good autority to proceed upon. Only I find, that beſides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other cuſtomary and caſual Taxes, there was a Tax called the *Royal impoſt*, being ſixteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500 fires, (for ſuch the eſtimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is ſubject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the reſt of *France*. And ſo much of thoſe Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Gothes*; let us next look on thoſe which at the ſame time were ſubdued by the *Burgundians*; whoſe Hiſtory, Kingdom, and Eſtate, are to be conſidered, before we come to the deſcription of their ſeveral Provinces.

The Kingdom of *BURGUNDY*.

THe Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their firſt ſettlement in *Gaul*, contained all thoſe Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graiæ* and *Pœninæ*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, and *Viennenſis*; now paſſing under the new names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Griſons*, *Walliſland*, *Savoy*, *La Breſſe*, *Daulphine*, *Lionois*, *Nivernois*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt, and ſatisfie an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaule* of their one accord; though of their own accord they drew ſomewhat neer it. In their Original they were a people bordering neer the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them; and dwelling in thoſe parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Meclenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Druſus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they

Burgundians.

were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own language called *Burgs*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongst the *Romans*; in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scenitæ*, amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 416. at the instigation of the *Vandals* they left their own seats, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marquesses of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that Enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the *Christians*, and were universally baptized. After which falling on the *Hunnes*, they slew no less than 30000 of them in one battel: from that time forwards never troubled with that barbarous Nation. *Christians* then they were, and *Orthodox* in their profession, before their coming into *Gaule*: and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatning an invasion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, possessing themselves of all which lay from the farthest shore of the *Rhosne*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*; and from the mountain *Vauge*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about the same time planted by the *Gothes*. Their Government was under Kings; Many, according to their tribes, when they lived in *Germany*; *Monarchical*, when setled in the Realm of *France*, where they had these five

Kings of the *Burgundians*.

A. Ch.

408 1 *Tibica*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaule*.

2 *Gundioch*.

3 *Gundebault*, who harassed *Italy*, then in possession of the *Gothes*, with fire and sword, the Uncle of *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clovis*, the fifth King of the *French*, by her perswasion made inclinable to the *Christian* Faith.

4 *Sigismond*.

5 *Gundomar*, the Son of *Sigismund*, first set upon by *Clodomire*, the Son of *Clovis*, King of *Orleans*, whom he slew in battel neer *Autun*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotair*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Clodomire*. And so the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Guntram*, the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clovis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the first, being in their times, honored with the titles of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the first time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* setled amongst the *French*, in the way of succession, was in the partage of that vast Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongst the children and posterity of *Ludovicus Pius*: In constituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this answerable to the other parts of that broken *Monarchie*. The first of these *French* Kings was *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldest Son of the said *Lewis* the *Godly*. The succession in this order following.

The *French* Kings of *Burgundy*.

A. Ch.

855 1 *Charles*, youngest Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without issue.

858 2 *Lotharius*, the second King of *Mets*, and *Lewis* the second Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, succeeded in *Burgundy*; the mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Estates.

876 3 *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor, Unkle to the three former Kings, all dying without issue, succeeded in the whole Estate; which he again divided in three Governments or Members: that is to say, *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Masçon*. 2 *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland*, and the Estates of the *Grisons*; and 3ly, *Burgundy* on the other side of the *Soasne*, lying betwixt the other two; containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Bresse*, and *Daulphine*. This last conferred with the title of Earl, on *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the *Bald*, who had married his Sister *Judith*; and not long after in the person of the said Earl *Boson*, raised unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Gross*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings, these that follow.

4 *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the second, Emperor, and King of *Burgundy*, was first by *Charles* the *Bald* made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Soasne*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Cross* created the first King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Successors, of the *German* Emperors.

5 *Lewis* II. Son of *Boson* and *Hermingrade*; chosen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Berengarius*.

917 6 *Hugh de Arles*, supposed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; succeeded by the gift of *Lewis*; and was chosen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* also. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he resigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.

926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, succeeded on the resignation of *Hugh de Arles*: his Brother *Boson* being setled beyond the *Jour*.

937 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*; a Prince of so short a reign, or so little note, that he is by some left out of the catalogue of these Kings.

9 *Boson*

9 *Boſon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the firſt, by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. *Daulphine.*

965 10 *Conrade* Son to *Boſon* the ſecond.

990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Conrade*, who having no iſſue of his Body, gave his Eſtate to *Conrade* the ſecond, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, whom he had by *Giſela*, the Siſter of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, An. 1032. In the diſtractions whereof, following not long after his deceaſe, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the *German* Emperors, made themſelves Maſters and *Proprietaries* of their ſeveral Provinces (the *Dukedom* of *Burgundy* excepted, ſetled long before) out of which roſe the great Eſtates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy*, and *Provence*, the *Daulphins* of *Viennois*, and Lords of *Breſſe*, together with the Common-wealths of the *Switzers* and *Griſons*: every poor Bird ſnatching alſo ſome feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithſtanding the diſmembring and *cantoning* of this fair Eſtate, the ſucceeding Emperors of *Germany*, claimed not only a ſuper-intendence over, but a diſpoſal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of a King of *Burgundy*: Inſomuch that the Emperor *Henry* the ſixt, receiving no ſmall part of the money which our *Richard* the firſt paid to the Duke of *Auſtria* for his ranſom, gave unto the ſaid *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Soveraignty of *Provence*, *Viennois*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lyons*; together with the homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digion*, and S. *Giles*. A royal gift, if either the Emperor had had any dominion over thoſe Countreys, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are ſaid to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg*, armed *Gules*. Which being ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of thoſe Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the reſt which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been ſpoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole continent of the *Tranſ-jouran Burgundie*.

18 *DAULPHINE.*

NOrth of the Countrey of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAULPHINE*, having on the Eaſt, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the Weſt *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhoſne*; and on the North, *La Breſſe*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie towards *Piemont*. So called, as ſome report, from *Dauphinè* wife of *Guigne* the ſecond; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed moſt probably to have took that name from *Flandrina* wife of *Liderick* the ſecond, then one of the laſt of thoſe Princes who governed in that Countrey by the name of *Forreſters*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; that mountainous, ſtony, and unfruitful, of the ſame nature with the *Alpes*, with whoſe branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the reſt of *France*. The people of the *Higher*, and more mountainous parts, are generally groſs and rude; not capable of learning, but well enough inclined to Arms and traffick, and have a cuſtom, that on the coming on of Winter they ſend abroad all thoſe which are fit for Travel, (whom they call *Bics*, or *Biſonards*) who ſeldom return back till *Eaſter*: none ſtaying at home, but old men, children and impotent perſons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Thoſe in the *Lower*, are more civil, but not more given to labour than the Mountainers are; nor very covetous of gain, ſo they may live at eaſe, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Souldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Daulphine*, together with that part of *Provence* which lies next to the *Rhoſne*, and the adjoyning parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennenſis*, from *Vienna* the *Metropolis* of it, ſituate on the *Rhoſne*, honored with the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; ſtill the chief City of this Countrey, an Archbiſhops See, and a Siege *Præſidiall*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the title of the firſt *Proprietaries* of this Countrey, entituled *Daulphins* of *Viennois*. To this Town *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 2 *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a *Roman* Colony; now a Biſhops See, and a Univerſity for the *Civil Laws*; a rich, ſtrong, and well-traded Town, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*. The Countrey hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given honorary title to two perſons of more Fame, than Honor: the firſt of which was *Cæſar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, who caſting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois* by *Charles* the eighth; the other Madam *Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the ſecond, under whom ſhe much ſwayed the affairs of *France*, and honored with the title of Dutcheſs of it. 3 *Grenoble*, (in *Latine*, *Gratianopolis*,) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Accuſiani*, the moſt populous and beſt built of all this Province; and much reſorted to by the Lords and Nobleſs, by reaſon of the Court of *Parliament* here erected, An. 1453. About this lyeth the Countrey called *Griſinaudan*, 4 *Ternay*, 5 *Roſſillon*, 6 *La Roche*, 7 *Montelimar*, all along the *Rhoſne*; 8 *Romons* upon the confluence of the *Rhoſne*, and the *Iſere*. 9 *Cremien*, 10 St. *Marceline*, 11 St. *Andre*, 12 *Beaurepaire*, more within the Countrey.

The *Higher Daulphine*, together with thoſe parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Matritimæ*, the *Metropolis* whereof, was, 1 *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Archbiſhops See, and Siege *Præſidiall*; ſeated on an high rock, in the midſt of a pleaſant valley ſurrounded with mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The hilly Countrey hereabouts, is the higheſt of *France*. 2 *Brianſon*, neer the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*.

3 *Gappe*,

Viennois. 3 *Gappe*, now a Biſhops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenſes*; the track of whom is ſtill found in the name of the adjoyning Territory, called *Le Pais Gapencois*: Memorable for a Synod or Aſſembly of the *French Proteſtants* here holden An. 1603. in which it was determined, as and for an Article of Faith, that the *Pope was Antichriſt*, and where the Miniſters then aſſembled, gave audience to the Ambaſſadors of forein States, as to a Common-wealth diſtinct from the Realm of *France*, audaciouſly importuning their King by their ſeveral Agents for liberty of going (whenſoever they liſted) or ſending whenſoever they pleaſed unto the Councels and Aſſemblies of all Forein Nations which profeſſed the ſame Religion with them; the preamble to thoſe encroachments on the Royal authority which after proved the ruine of their power and party. 4 *Tricaſſin*, ſo called of the *Tricaſſini*, the old Inhabitants of theſe parts. 5 *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Droſne*: from whence come thoſe ſmall, but good ſtomack-wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagn*, moſt plentifully growing in the fields of a Town called *Hey*, from whence it hath the name of *Vin De Hey*, and ſo contractedly *Vin Day*. 6 *Chorges*, 7 *Mombrum*, 8 *Eſſiles*, of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, beſides the *Tricaſſini*, *Apencenſes*, *Vacontii*, and *Accuſtani* before mentioned, and the *Allobroges*, ſpoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were *Segalauni* about *Valence*, the *Decenſes* abovt *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at laſt by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the ſurrender of the ſame to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued, till the year 1100. when *Guigne*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Griſinaudan*, ſeeing the Emperor *Henry* the fourth overborn by the Popes, and not able to aſſert his own rights; ſeized upon this Province, under the title of Earl of *Viennoys*; to which *Guigne* the ſecond, his Son and Succeſſor, gave the name of *Daulphine*; either from his Wife ſo called, as ſome, or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others ſay. In this Family it continued, till the year 1349. under the power and government of theſe following Princes, entituled

The *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

A. Ch.		
1100	1	*Guigne* ſurn. the *Fat*, Earl of *Albon* and *Griſinundan*, at the time of the diſſolution of the kingdom of *Burgundie*.
1135	2	*Guigne* II. the firſt and abſolute proprietary Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Venice*.
1146	3	*Guigne* III. ſon of *Guigne* the ſecond.
1152	4	*Beatrix* daughter of *Guigne* the third, firſt maried to *Reymond* the third, Earl of *Tholouſe*, next to *Hugh* the third Duke of *Burgundie*, and finally to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the houſe of the former Earls: all in her right entituled *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.
1208	5	*Andrew* the ſon of *Beatrix* and of *Guigne* the fourth.
1242	6	*Guigne* V. ſon of *Andrew*.
1283	7	*Humbert* the firſt, in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the fifth.
1305	8	*John* the ſon of *Humbert*, exerciſed in continual wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoy*.
1322	9	*Guigne* VI. ſon of *John*, taken Priſoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, An. 1329. and at laſt ſlain, An. 1342.
1342	10	*Humbert* II. the younger ſon of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the ſixt,

the laſt *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, who beeng ſurcharged with wars by *Ame* (or *Amade*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friers at *Lyons*; ſelling his Countrey at a ſmall rate to *Philip de Vaiois*, *French* King, upon condition, that the eldeſt Son of *France* ſhould be entituled always *Daulphin* of *Viennois*; and quarter the Arms of *Daulphin* with thoſe of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted, and *Charles*, the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the title and eſtate in the very year of the ſurrendry. Since this time, the eldeſt Son of *France* is called generally the *Daulphin* of *France*, ſometimes the *Daulphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times the *Prince Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Count-Daulphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps ſome others. A title ſo annexed unto them, that it is not uſually laid by on the acceſſion of a greater or ſuperior dignity: inſomuch as *Francis* the eldeſt Son of *Henry* the ſecond, (whom he ſucceeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his wife, was by the *French* commonly called *Le Roy Daulphin*, or the *King Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare title of this Countrey only, but the command, profits, and poſſeſſion of it; ſending their own *Governors* thereunto; who by an antient indulgence, have the greateſt priviledges, (conferring all Offices within the Province) of any Governors of *France*.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Dolphin hauriant, *Or*.

19 *LA BRESSE*.

LA BRESSE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Savoy*; on the Weſt, with *Lionois*; on the North, with *Charolois* in the Dutchie of *Burgundie*, and ſome part of the *Franche County*; and on the South, with *Daulphine*. The reaſon of the name I find not. The Countrey is very fruitful and pleaſant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soaſne* and *Roſne*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1 *Bellay*, a Biſhops See. 2 *Bourg*, (for diſtinctions ſake called *Bourg en Breſſe*) a Town ſo well fenced, and fortified with ſo ſtrong a Citadel for command of the Countrey, that it was thought little inferior

rior to the two impregnable Fortreſſes of St. *Katherines* and *Montmelian* in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earneſtly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governor of *Burgundy*, after a repulſe on the like ſute for that of St. *Katherine*: but being ſuſpected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time on ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was alſo denyed him; which drew him into diſcontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lewis* the 13th demoliſhed, by eſpecial order of the Councel of *France*, for fear of being ſurpriſed by the Duke of *Savoy* during thoſe confuſions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secuſianorum*, from the *Secuſiani*, the antient Inhabitants of this tract. 3 *Caſtillon*, 4 *Mont-Real*, 5 *Bugey*, 6 *Veromen*, of which, nothing obſervable.

This little Province, being antiently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* & *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, *Proprietary* Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285: at what time *Sibyll*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric*, Earl of *Breſſe* and *Baugie*, (or *Baſgee*, as ſome Writers call it) conveyed the Eſtate in mariage to *Ame* or *Amadee*, the 4th of that name, Earl of *Savoy*. In which Houſe it continued till the year 1600, and then ſurrendred by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to King *Henry* the 4th, to ſilence the pretences which that King had made unto the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end unto the war then begun about it; the politick Duke chooſing rather to part with an Eſtate on this ſide of the Mountains, than to give that active King occaſion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* muſt have been a Thorow-fare. *Piemont* an ordinary Paſs; and where no end could be expected, but the loſs of all. Surrendred then it was on good reaſon of State, and upon that Surrendrie united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digion*, as it ſtill continueth.

Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermines*, armed and Langued, *Or*.

20 *LIONOIS.*

THe Countrey of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Breſſe*; on the Weſt, with *Beaujolois*, *Forreſt* and *Auvergn*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Dutchie; and on the South, with *Daulphin*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City, and under that title made an Earldom by *Charles* the *Groſſe*, in the *cantoning* and diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*: The Earldom containing at that time, not only *Lionois* it ſelf, but alſo *Forreſt* and *Beaujolois*, before deſcribed. The Earls hereof were at firſt only *Provincial* Governors, but under the diſtractions of the *German* Empire they ſhifted for themſelves, and became *hereditary*; but long it held not in one hand. For firſt, the Earldom of *Forreſt*, and the Lordſhip or Signeury of *Beaujeu* being taken out of it, about the year 990. the reſt of the Eſtate fell in ſome tract of time to the Biſhops and Church of *Lions*, but under the Soveraignty of the *French* Kings, as *Lords Paramount* of it.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1 *Maſcon*, (*Matiſconum*) a Biſhops See, ſituate on the *Soaſne*, antiently a diſtinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*: one of the Earls hereof called *William*, flouriſhing in the year 1000 or thereabouts; whoſe ſon and ſucceſſor named *Otho*, maried *Elizabeth* daughter of *Humbert* the firſt Earl of *Maurienne* (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*.) Continuing for ſome ages after in this poſterity, it was purchaſed of *William* the laſt Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9th; and afterwards ſubjected to the Juriſdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it ſtill continueth. 2 *Eſchalas*, on the *Rhoſne*, on the South of *Lions*, oppoſite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Daulphin*. 3 *Dandilli*, 4 *Francheville*, 5 *Chaumont*, and 6 *Lebrelle*, all ſomewhat Weſtward of that River, but not much obſervable. 7 *Lions* it ſelf, pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Soaſne* and the *Rhoſne*, antiently a *Roman* Colony, (teſtified by many old Inſcriptions) and honored with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France* to *Auguſtus Cæſar*: now the moſt famous Mart of *France*, and an Univerſity; by our *Latin* Writers called *Lugdunum*. Theſe Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the ſecond had excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apoſtolical autority that they ſhould be returned to *Geneva* again; but therein his pleaſure was never obeyed: the Marts continuing ſtill at *LIONS*, as a place more couvenient and capacious of that great reſort of *French*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the ſame. As for the *Univerſity*, queſtionleſs it is very antient; being a ſeat of learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in thoſe times, before an Altar conſecrated to *Auguſtus Cæſar* in the Temple ſpoken of before, this *Caligula* did inſtitute ſome exerciſes of the *Greek* and *Roman* eloquence: the *Victor* to be honored according to his merit; the *vanquiſhed* either to be *ferulated*, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoyning. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *ut Lugdunenſem Rhetor dicturus ad Aram*, applyed to dangerous undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* firſt coming into *Gaule*, it was the chief City of the *Hedui* and *Secuſiani*; afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunenſis Prima*. The Archbiſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was ſo in the time of S. *Ireneus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Biſhop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor of *Germany*: who being a devout and conſcientious man, ſenſible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, diſtributed the greateſt parts of his riches amongſt the poor, and betook himſelf to meditation and ſtudying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRISTS* body, the ſubſtraction of the Cup in the bleſſed Sacrament, in matter of *Purgatory*, the Supremacy, adoration

of

Burgundie Dukedom.

of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment; he held opinions contrary unto those of *Rome*, and little different from those of the present *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongst some good Wheat there were many *Tares*; which gave the juster colour to their Adversaries to exclaime against them. Being much followed, in regard of his piety and charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor men of Lions*, given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed, and writ against by Frier *Thomas* of *Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of Pronunciation, drowning the L. and changing the W. into V. call them commonly *Vaudois*; by which name they occurre in the stories of that State, and Language. But *Lions* proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desert parts of *Languedoc*, and spreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of *Tholouse*, they became very masterfull and insolent: Insomuch, that they murdered *Trincanell* their *Viscount* in *Beziers*, and dashed out the teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in S. *Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high outrage, the divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croisadas*, under the conduct of the *French* Kings, and many other noble Adventurers; who sacrificed them in the self-same Church, wherein they had spoiled the bloud of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloudy War, they were almost rooted out of that Countrey also. The remnants of them being bettered by this affliction, betook themselves unto the mountains lying betwixt *Daulphine*, *Province*, *Piemont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious life; painfully tilling the ground, re-building Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good pasturage to their Cattel: insomuch, as places which before their coming thither scarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their care and industry. *Lasciviousnesse* in speech they used not; *Blasphemy* they abhorred, nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very enemies could not but confess, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alleged against them were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the *Saints*; nor bowed before such *Crosses* as were erected in the high-ways, and streets of Towns. Great crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced. And so they lived, neither embracing the *Popes doctrines*, nor submitting unto his *Supremacie*, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King *Francis* the first. But then the Persecution raging against the *Lutherans*, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Chabriers* before mentioned. After which time, joyning themselves with the rest of the *Protestant* party, they lost the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before; and passe in the accompt of the *Reformed* Churches of *France*; enjoying the same privileges and freedom of Conscience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on these men and their Congregations, as founders of the *Protestant* Church, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do: yet I behold them as *Assertors* of some doctrinall truthes, and professed Enemies of the errours and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predecessours of the present *Protestants*.

The old Inhabitants of this tract were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overspreading not this Countrey only, but *Bourbonois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundie*. And of these *Hedui*, the *Insubres* are thought by some learned men to have been a Tribe; who passing over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick* Nations, possessed themselves of those parts of *Italie* which now make up the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoyning. The residue of the story which concernes this Countrey, we have had before.

21. The Dukedom of *BURGUNDIE.*

THe *Dukedom* of *BURGUNDIE* hath on the East, the *French County*, and some part of *Savoy*; on the West, *Bourbonois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionois*, and some part of *Beau joulois*. A Province so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as Qu. *Katharine de Medices* used to say of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers then all *Europe*; so we may say of this Countrey, That it had more fine Riverets then all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1 *Armacan*, 2 *Serum*, 3 *Curi*, 4 *Torney*, 5 *Valence*, 6 *Dove*, 7 *Brune*, 8 *Sein*, 9 *Louche*, and 10 *Soasne*, (the *Araris* of the antient Writers) this last dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of waters, the Countrey generally is lesse fruitful then the rest of *France*; hardly yeelding sufficient for its own inhabitants, except wines only.

Chief Cities in it, are, 1 *Dijon*, the birth place of S. *Bernard*, seated upon the *Soasne* and *L'ouche*, in a champian Countrey: the Town large, populous, and of much resort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province; a *Parliament* being here erected, *Anno* 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but specially defended by a strong Castle called *Talente*, situate on an hill adjoyning. It is called *Divio* in the *Latine*, the Bishop hereof *Divionensis*. 2 *Chalons*, (in *Latine*, *Caballinum*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalons* upon *Soasne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Bishops See also, as the other is; and gives name to that noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four antient families of *Burgundie*; the other three,

Vienne,

Vienne, *Neufchatell*, and *Virgie*. 3 *Autun*, by *Ptolemie* called *Auguſtodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Biſhops See: heretofore the chief of all the Countrey, ſome marks of the old ſplendour being ſtill to be ſeen; now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with ſome fair Churches, which the ruins of time have not yet demoliſhed. 4 *Beaune*, ſeated on the *Burſoize*, in the beſt and richeſt ſoil of all *Burgundie*; and yielding the beſt Wines in *France*: remarkable for an Hoſpital of ſo fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Caſtle built by King *Lewis* the 12th. 5 *Alize*, now a ſmall Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cæſar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortreſs of *Vercingetorix*, beſieged herein by the ſaid *Cæſar*; but ſo beſieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place; and an Army of 300000 *Galls* at the back of *Cæſar*, to relieve their fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Wals, the one againſt them within the City, and the other againſt them without: which done, he kept ſuch diligent watch and ward on both ſides, that the beſieged heard ſooner of the diſcomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatall news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæſar*, then ſitting in his Chair of State, diſarmed himſelf, took off his Horſes capariſons, and laying all upon the ground, ſat down at *Cæſar* feet and became his Priſoner. 6 *Tournus*, encompaſſed with the *Soaſne*. 7 *Semur*, conſiſting of three parts, each of them ſeverally Walled, and ſtrongly fortified. 8 *Verdun*, 9 Nayz. 10 St. *Ligier*, famous for medicinal Bathes. 11 *Noyers*, on the Borders towards *Champagne*. 12 *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antiſiodorum*; of moſt note for the Councill held here, *Anno* 627: the Countrey about which is called *Auxerrois*, and was an Earldom of it ſelf. The Title and poſſeſſion of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*; to whom it came in mariage with his firſt Wife *Agnes*, the daughter of the laſt Earl of the former Race. On the failer of which houſe, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the mariage of *Iſabel* Neece of the ſaid *Peter* by his brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons* Earl of *Burgundie*: to whom ſucceeded *John de Chalons* his eldeſt Son by that *Venter* (his ſecond wife) and finally was ſold by *John* of *Chalons*, great Grandchild of the ſaid *John* Earl of *Burgundie*, to *Charles* the fifth of *France*, *Anno* 1370; by whom united to the Crown, ſubjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is alſo within this Countrey the great and famous Monaſtery of *Ciſteaux*, the mother of ſo many *Religious* houſes, diſperſed up and down in *Europe*, from hence denominated, and ſubject to the diſcipline and Rules hereof. *Burgundie Dukedom.*

Within the limits of this Dukedom (on the South parts of it) ſtands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, heretofore the title of the eldeſt Son of the Dukes of *Burgundie*; ſo called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate in the borders of it, towards *La Breſſe*: ſeized upon, with the reſt of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* the 11th, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the *Warlike*; reſtored again to *Philip*, the ſecond, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the ſecond, of *France*, on the peace made at *Cambray*; and ſubjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundie*, as a part or member of that Eſtate. So that neither the *Governour* of the Dukedom for the *French* King, nor the *Parliament* of *Digion*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion paſſant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the moſt potent Nations of all *Gaule*: who called in the *Romans*, to aid them in their quarrels againſt the *Sequani* and *Arverni*, made them all ſubject unto *Rome*. In the proſperity whereof they made up the Province of *Lugdunenſis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the *Metropolis* or principall City. Afterwards, in the diviſion of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundie*, by *Charles* the *Bald*; this part thereof, being called the Dukedom of *Burgundie* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, was *cantoned* into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Maſcon*: whereof the three firſt laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, were given unto his brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the ſtyle and title of Duke of *Burgundie*. The iſſue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*: and the male iſſue failing of that Line alſo, it was involved partly by eſcheat for want of heirs male, and partly in the right and title of the heir Generall, to King *John* of *France* the ſon of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his wife, one of the daughters of *Robert* the third, who with the conſent of *Charles* his eldeſt Son, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, gave it unto his ſecond Son *Philip*, (more worthily ſurnamed the *Hardie*) together with the mariage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundie*. An Argument of no great wiſdom, as was judiciouſly obſerved by King *Lewis* the 11th. For by this means, thoſe great Eſtates being united in one perſon, and afterwards theſe Eſtates improved by as proſperous mariages; this houſe of *Burgundie* grew formidable to the Kings themſelves: who never left practiſing againſt it, till they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Eſtate from which at firſt it was diſmembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundie*.

890 1 *Richard* of *Saxonie*, the ſecond Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph* Kings of *France*.

938 2 *Gilbert*, the ſecond Son of *Richard*.

964 3 *Otho*, Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, ſurnamed the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundie*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.

976 4 *Henry*,

Burgundie County.

976 4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.
1001 5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Unkle *Henry*.
1004 6 *Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
1075 7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert* by his Sonne *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
1097 8 *Odo*, or *Otho* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
1102 9 *Hugh* II. Son of *Otho* the 2d.
1124 10 *Odes*, or *Otho* III. Son of *Hugh* the 2d.
1165 11 *Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the firſt, in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.
1192 12 *Odes* or *Otho* IV. Son of *Hugh* the 3d.
1218 13 *Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the 9th in the *Holy-Land*.
1273 14 *Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* the 4th, which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis Hutin* King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardie*, after, Duke of *Burgundie*.
1308 15 *Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the 3d.
1315 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundie* alſo in right of his Wife.
1349 17 *Philip*, the Grand-child of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie* by deſcent (who if he had lived, had been alſo Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois* in right of *Margaret* his Wife) But dying young and without iſſue, he was ſucceeded in all his titles and eſtates by
1363 18 *Philip* II. ſurnamed the *Hardie*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the 3d, by King *John* his Father, with the conſent of *Charles* the 5th his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundie*, and maried *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Malaine* (and conſequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundie*) the Widow of his Predeceſſor.
1404 19 *John*, ſurnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the 2d, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.
1419 20 *Philip* III. ſurnamed the *Good*, who added moſt of the *Netherlands* to his Eſtate.
1467 21 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Carolois*, Son of *Philip* the *Good*. After whoſe death, ſlain by the *Switzers*, at the battell of *Nancie*, *Lewis* the 11th ſeized upon this Dukedom, *Anno* 1476. pretending an Eſcheat thereof, for want of *Heirs males*; and ſo uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Eſcheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Eureux* deſcended from the daughter and heir of *Lewis Hutin*, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Siſter of the Mother of the ſaid King *John*.

Of the great wealth and potencie of theſe laſt Dukes of *Burgundie*, we ſhall ſpeak further when we come to the deſcription of *Belgium*: the acceſſion whereof to their Eſtates, made them equall to moſt Kings in *Chriſtendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as *Dukes* of *Burgundie*, they were *Bendwiſe* of *Or* and *Azure*, a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is uſually marſhalled in the Scutchions of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their poſſeſſion. The reaſons of which are probably (for I go but by gueſs) partly becauſe this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of his Title to the *Dukedom* it ſelf, in right of which he holdeth ſuch a great Eſtate.

22. The County of *BURGUNDIE*.

The County of *BURGUNDIE* hath on the Eaſt, the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the Weſt, the *Dutchie* of *Burgundie*, from which divided by the *Soaſne*; on the North, a branch of the Mountain *Vauge*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorreine*; on the South, *La Breſſe*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Daulphine*, *La Breſſe*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundie* beyond the *Soaſne*; on the Eaſtern ſide of which it is wholly ſituate. This part thereof, now generally called the *Frenche Comtè*, or the *Free County*, becauſe not under the command of the *French* Kings; but living in a more free Eſtate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The Country in ſome parts very Mountainous, but thoſe Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards; and having in recompence of a little barrenneſs, an intermixture of moſt pleaſing and fruitful vallies: ſwelling with plenty of all naturall commodities uſefull unto the life of man; and for the variety of freſh ſtreams, and delightfull Riverets, inferiour only to the *Dutchie*.

The principall Towns and Cities of it, are, 1 *Beſanſon*, called by *Cæſar*, *Veſontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province entituled *Maxima Sequanorum*; by conſequence an Archbiſhops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almoſt encompaſſed; ſuch artificiall Fortifications being added to it, as make it very

ſtrong

ſtrong both by art and nature. But this is an Imperiall City, not ſubject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundie*; honoured with a ſmall Univerſity founded here, Anno 1540. by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, and *Charles* the fifth. 2 *Dole*, ſeated on the ſame River *Doux*, for riches, ſtrength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament City, and conſequently of moſt reſort for diſpatch of buſineſſe. Antiently it was an Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civill Lawes*; but now the Univerſity is devoured by a *Colledge* of *Jeſuites*: who fearing leſt the Doctrine of the *Reformed* Churches might creep in amongſt the people, not only have debarred them the uſe of the *Proteſtants* Books; but have expreſſely forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good ſort or in a bad. 3 *Salins*, ſo called from its ſalt fountains, out of which came the greateſt part of the Earls *Revenue*; in which reſpect, or that it was the title of *Otho*, the Son of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, before he did attain the Earldom: the Earl of *Burgundie* ſince that time, and the Emperours of *Germany* in their right, retain the name of Lords of *Salines* in their uſual ſtyle. A City honoured for a while with the ſeat of the *Parliament*, removed hither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh at ſuch time as he held this Countrey; beholding to him (being a wiſe and politick Prince) for many wholeſome Ordinances, ſtill obſerved amongſt them. 4 *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the *Lower*; as 5 *Veſcal* is of the *Higher Burgundie*. 6 *Arboiſe*, noted for the beſt Wines; and 7 *Luxoal* for medicinable Bathes. 8 *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the ordinary ſeat and retreat from buſineſſe of the firſt Princes of *Orange*, of the houſe of *Chalons*, who had great poſſeſſions in this Countrey. 9 *Gray*, and 10 *Chaſtel-Chalon*. 11 *Quingey*. 12 *Orgelet*. Here is alſo the great and famous Abby of *Clugny*, neer the Town of *Beaum*; out of which ſo many Monaſteries in the Weſtern Church, had their firſt Originall.

The old Inhabitants of this County were the *Sequani*, a potent name, contending with the *Hedui* and *Arverni* for the Soveraignty of *Gaul*; till the ſtriſe was ended by the *Romans*; under whom it made together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the laſt King of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundie*, was given to *Conrade* the ſecond Emperour of *Germanie*. After that reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, and governed by ſuch Earls or *Provincial* Officers, as thoſe Emperours ſent hither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Son to a Siſter of the Emperour *Conrade*, was the firſt that held it as *Proprietary*: the other three whom *Paradine* ſets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundie*, being meerly *Official*. It was firſt united to the *Dutchy* by the mariage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Counteſs. But no iſſue coming of this bed, it fell into the houſe of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardie*, the firſt Duke hereof, of the Royall Race of *Valois*, Anno 1369. *Philip* the Grand-child of this *Philip*, united moſt of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Eſtate: after whoſe death, and the death of *Charles* his Son at the battle of *Nancie*; the *Dutchie* was ſurprized by King *Lewis* the eleventh, as holden of the Crown of *France*, eſcheated to him for want of Heirs males. But the *County*, holden of the *Empire*, though ſubdued alſo by this *Lewis*, was reſtored again to *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*; continuing hitherto in her iſſue, as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundie*.

1001 1 *Otho Guillaume*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundie*, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of *France*.

1118 2 *Reinald*, Couſin and Heir of *Otho*.

1157 3 *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperour, in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundie*.

1183 4 *Otho*, the youngeſt Son of *Frederick*.

1200 5 *Otho* II. *Duke* of *Meranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundie* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.

1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalons*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the ſecond Daughter of *Otho* the firſt, and Siſter of *Beatrix*, acknowledged by his faction there for Earl of *Burgundie*, in the life of *Otho* the ſecond, whom he diſpoſſeſſed; and left the ſame unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.

1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen de Chalons*.

1269 8 *Hugh* the Son of *John*, maried to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Meranie*, ſo getting in that pretention alſo.

1270 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*; Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.

1315 10 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundie* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.

1331 11 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundie*, husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſſe.

1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*, Grand-child of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.

1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and ſecond Daughter of *Philip* the *Long*,

French Islands.

and of *Joan* the Counteſſe, was Counteſſe of *Burgundie* and *Artois*, after the death of her Couſin *Philip*.

14 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundie* and *Artois* by his Mother.

1383 15 *Philip* II. called the *Hardie*, Duke of *Burgundie* by the gift of King *John* his Father, with the conſent and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth; was Earl of *Burgundie*, *Flanders*, and *Artois*, as alſo Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.

1404 16 *Antony* the *Proud*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*; his younger Brother *Philip* ſucceeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.

1419 17 *Philip* III. called the *Good*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundie*.

1467 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Dake and Earl of *Burgundie*.

1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, maried to *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, Son of *Frederick* the third, Emperour of *Germanie*, in which honour he ſucceeded his Father.

1482 20 *Philip* IV. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, King of *Caſtile*, in right of his Wife *Joan*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel* King of *Caſtile*, &c.

1506 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of *Germany*, by the name of *Charles* the fifth.

1558 22 *Philip* V. of *Burgundie*, and the II. of *Spain*.

23 *Philip* VI. of *Burgundie*, and the III. of *Spain*.

24 *Philip* VII. of *Burgundie*, and the IV. of *Spain*; in whom reſteth the poſſeſſion of the County of *Burgundie*, and the Earldom of *Charalois*: herein not troubled by the *French* upon the death of *Charles* the *Warlike*, partly becauſe it was accompted as a Feif of the Empire; but principally for fear of giving offence to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth; jealous enough already of the greatneſſe and power of *France*, and ſo not willing to admit ſuch a potent Neighbour.

The Armes of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lion rampant *Or*, Seme of Billets *Argent*.

23. The ISLANDS in the *AQUITAN* and *GALLICK OCEAN*.

HAving thus took a view of the ſeveral Provinces, within the *Continent* of *France*, let us next look upon the *ISLANDS* which belong unto it; diſperſed in the *Mediteranean* Sea, and the Weſtern Ocean. Thoſe in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note, as the Iſles of *Eres*, and 2 *Pomegues*, lying againſt *Provence*; 3 *Maguelone*, lying againſt *Languedoc*; and 4 *L' Anguellade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhoſne*: of which there is nothing to be ſaid, but that thoſe of *Eres* are thought to be the *Stoechades* of *Ptolemie*, and his *Blaſcon*, to be *Anguillade*. And of as little note in the *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Belle Iſle*, againſt *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Iſle de Deiu*, having in it two or three good Villages; and *Marmoſtier*, plentifull in Salt, and beautified with a Monaſtery called the *White Abbie*. Of which three laſt, that of *Belle-Iſle*, hath been of late ſo fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be inpregnable; the Abby of the laſt, endowed with ſo plentifull a Revenue that it was thought a competent preferment for *Anthonine*, of *Burbon*, Baſe Brother to King *Henry* the fourth, to be made Lord Abbat of the ſame. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1 *Oleron*, and 2 *Ree*, on the Coaſt of *Aquitaine*; and thoſe of 3 *Jarſey*, 4 *Gernſey*, 5 *Sarke*, and 6 *Alderney*, on the ſhores of *Normandie*: Of which, the four laſt are under the Kings of *England*, the reſt poſſeſſed by the *French*.

1 *OLERON*, is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the Provence of *Xaintogne*, and South unto the Iſle of *Ree*, from which little diſtant. It is the biggeſt of the two, and makes yearly very great quantity of Salt, wherewith moſt of the Provinces on the *Weſtern Ocean* uſe to be furniſhed. But it is eaſie of acceſs, and not very defenſible, which makes it of leſſe note both in antient and modern ſtories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the name of the Iſland. One thing there is, for which indeed this Iſland is of ſpeciall fame, and that is, that the *Marine* Laws, which for neer 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Chriſtian World, which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian* Laws being antiquated and worn out of uſe) for regulating of Sea affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controverſies, were declared and eſtabliſhed here; and from hence called the *Laws of Oleron*. And here they were declared and eſtabliſhed by King *Richard* the firſt of *England*, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy-Land*: this Iſland being then in his poſſeſſion, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitaine*. *Quæ quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum* Richardum *quondam Regem* Angliæ, *in reditu à* Terra Sancta, *correcta fuerunt, interpretata, declarata, & in Inſula de* Oleron *publicata & nominata in* Gallica *Lingua* La Loy d' Oleron, &c. ſaith an old Record which I find cited in a M. S. Diſcourſe of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs* (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principall King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entituled, *The Soveraignty of the* Britiſh *Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Laws to all that traded on the Ocean.

2 The

French Islands.

2 The Isle of RE, is situate over against *Rochel*; to which it served for an Outwork, on that side thereof. It is in length ten *English* miles, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep marishes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great strength. Chief places in it, are, 1 *La Butte de Mont.* 2 St. *John de Mons.* 3 St. *Hillary.* 4 St. *Martins*, the largest and strongest of them all, from whence the whole Island hath sometimes been called St. *Martins*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis* the 13th, Anno 1622. (The Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for those of *Rochell*) it was very well fortified; and since made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the *English* Forces under the command of *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, sent thither to recover the Town and Island, on the instigation of *Soubize*, who before had lost it, Anno 1627.

3 JARSEY, by *Antonine* called *Cæsarea*, is situate about ten miles from the Coast of *Normandie*, within the view and prospect of the Church of *Constance*, part of which *Diocese* it was: in length containing 11 miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitfull of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themselves, but some overplus to barter at St. *Malos*, with the *Spanish* Merchants: and of an Air not very much disposed to diseases, unless it be an Ague in the end of Harvest, which they call *Les Settembers*. The Countrey stands much upon inclosures, the hedges of the ground well stored with Apples, and those Apples making store of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleasant Rivulets, and good store of Fishponds, yeelding a Carp for taste and largeness inferiour unto none in *Europe*, except those of *Gernsey*; which generally are somewhat bigger, but not better relished. The people for the most part, more inclinable to husbandry, then to trades or merchandise; and therein differing very much from those of *Gernsey*, who are more for *merchandize* than *tillage*. It containeth in it 12 Parishes, or Villages, having Churches in them, besides the Mansions of the *Seigneurs*, and chief men of the Countrey. The principall is St. *Hilaries*, where is the *Cohu*, or *Court of Justice* for all the Island. It is about the bigness of an ordinary Market Town in *England*; situate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one side with a small Block-house called *Mount St. Aubin*; but on that side which is next the Town with a very strong Castle called Fort *Elizabeth*, situate upon craggy Rocks, and encompassed with two armes of the Sea: so named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to assure the Island against the *French*, and furnished it with 30 piece of *Ordinance*, and all other necessaries. There is also on the East side, opposite to the City of *Constance*, high mounted on steep and craggy Rocks, the strong Castle of *Mont-Orgueil*; of great antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the fifth, now furnished with 40 piece of Cannon, and made the ordinary residence of the Governours for the Kings of *England*.

4 On the North-west of *Jarsey*, lyeth the Island of GERNSEY, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*, in form *Triangular*, each side of nine miles in length. The Countrey is of as rich a soil as the other of *Jarsey*, but not so well cultivated and manured: the poorer people here being more given to *manufactures*, (especially to the knitting of Stockings and Wast-coats) and the rich to *merchandize*; many of which are Masters of good stout Barks, with which they traffick into *England* and other places. The whole Island containe ten Villages with Churches; the Principall of which St. *Peters Port*, a very neat and well-built Town, with a safe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the securing of the Haven, capable of handsom Barks: a Market Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie* or *Court of Justice*. Opposite whereto, in a little Islet standeth the Castle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimensions of it; environed on all sides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furnished with no lesse then 80 pieces of Ordinance for defence of the Island; but chiefly to command the adjoyning Harbour, capable of 500 as good ships as any sail on the Ocean. A piece of great importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly destructive of the trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were strong in shipping. For that cause made the Ordinary Seat of the *English* Governours; though of late times not so much honoured with the presence of those Governours, as a place of that consequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gernsey* are two little Islets, the one called *Jet-how*, the Governours Park, wherein are some few Fallow Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, some three miles in compass, a dwelling heretofore of *Franciscan Friers*; now not inhabited but by *Pheasants*, of which, amongst the shrubs and bushes, there is very good store.

5 ALDERNY, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*, is situate over against the Cape of the *Lexobii* in the Dukedom of *Normandie*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: distant from which but six miles only. Besides many dwelling houses scattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the same name with the Island, consisting of about an hundred Families; and having not far off an Harbour, made in the fashion of a *Semi-Circle*, which they call *La Crabbie*. The whole about 8 miles in compass, of very difficult access, by reason of the high rocks and precipices, which encompass it on every side; and with a small force easily defensible, if thought worth attempting.

6 And so is also SARK, the adjoyning Island, being in compasse six miles; not known by any special name unto the Antients: and to say truth, not peopled till the fifth year of Q. *Elizabeth*: who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Signeur* of St. *Oen* in the Isle of *Jarsey*, who from thence planted it, and made Estates out of it to severall *Occupants*; so that it may contain now about 50 Housholds. Before which time it served only for a Common or Beasts pasture to those

of *Gernsey*; save that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the use of such, as the solitarineſſe of the place invited to thoſe retirements.

Theſe two laſt Iſlands, are ſubject to the Governour of *Gernsey*, all four to the Crown of *England*, holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandie*; to which they antiently belonged, and of which now the ſole remainders in the power of the *Engliſh*. Attempted often by the *French* (the two firſt I mean) ſince they ſeized on *Normandie*, but alwayes with repulſe and loſſe: the people being very affectionate to the *Engliſh* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Priviledges; which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their language is the *Norman-French* (though the better ſort of them ſpeak the *Engliſh* alſo): their Law, the *Grand Cuſtomaire* of *Normandie*, attempered and applyed to the uſe of this people in their ſuites and buſineſs, by the *Bailiffs*, and *Juſticiars* of the two chief Iſlands. Their *Religion* for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Jarſey* by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Biſhop of *Conſtance*, now to the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*; in *Gernſey*, by a mixt *Conſiſtory* of *Clergie* and *Lay-Elders*, according to the *new Modell* of *Geneva*, a Government firſt introduced in both Iſlands, Anno 1565. being the eighth year of Queen *Elizabeth*; and aboliſhed again in *Jarſey*, Anno 1619. being the ſeventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the ſtory of *France*, thorow which we have now made our Progreſs, both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Frankes* or *French*, a *German* People, who in the Wane of the *Roman Empire* poſſeſſed themſelves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Cæſar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemie*, or any of the more antient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolemie*: the firſt expreſs mention of them occurring in the reign of *Gallienus*; then ranſacking the coaſts of *Gaul*, and joyning with *Poſthumus* the Rebell, againſt that Emperour. Afterwards often ſpoken of in the courſe of the *Roman* ſtories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Diocletian*, and the Sons of *Conſtantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in thoſe times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Franckford*, where they confined upon the *Almans*, to the *German* Ocean: containing the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cheruſci*, *Friſii*, and *Tuctteri*, beſides ſome others of leſſe note: and taking up the Countries of *Weſtphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and ſo much of *Cleve*, as lyeth on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia*, the Dutchie of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-yſell*, both *Frieſlands*, and ſo much of *Holland* as lyeth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Frankes*, to ſhew that Liberty or Freedom from the yoak of ſervitude which the *Romans* had endevoured to impoſe upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other ſide of the River, were ſuppoſed to ſuffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the year 420. when *Pharamond* firſt took upon himſelf the name of King. *Meroveus* their third King, having diſpoſſeſſed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Pharamond*, was the firſt that fixed his ſeat in *Gaul*: when ſeeing the *Romans*, on the one ſide put to the worſt by *Theodorick* and the *Gothes*; and on the other ſide, by the *Burgundians*; they paſſed over the *Rhene*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* ſide of that *River*, together with the *Diſtrict* of *Colen*, *Gulick*, and the reſt of *Cleve*, then paſſing in the account of *Gaul*. His victories and fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Succeſſor, who added *Picardie*, *Champaine*, and the Iſle of *France*, to the former conqueſt; took *Paris* and made it the ſeat of his Kingdom. Afterwards when they had fully ſeated themſelves here, and thereby opened a free paſſage to the reſt of the Countrey, they quickly made themſelves Maſters of all that which formerly had been poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their laſt hold in *Soiſſons*, under *Clovis* their fifth King; who alſo took *Aquitain* and the parts adjoyning, from the *Viſi-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*: for theſe and many ſignal victories againſt the *Almans*, deſervedly ſurnamed the *Great*; but greater in ſubmitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving *Baptiſm*, than by all his victories. *Childebert*, and *Clotaire*, the Sons of this *Clovis*, vanquiſhed the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdom to their own: as *Theodebert* his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*, did the Countrey of *Provence*, reſigned unto him by *Amalaſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*; by whom it had been wreſted from the *Gothes* of *Spain*. In the perſon of *Clotaire* the ſecond, the Realm of *France* improvidently diſmembred into many Kingdoms, amongſt the Children of *Clovis* the firſt, that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soiſſons*, *Orleans*, and *Auſtraſia*, (of which *Orleans* and *Auſtraſia* were of long continuance) were again united: Whoſe Succeſſor *Dagobert* the firſt, was the laſt conſiderable Prince of the *Merovignians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this line, began to diminiſh, ſcarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to ſucceeding Ages; or leaving any monument behind them but their empty Names; which I ſhall repreſent in the following Catalogue according to their ſeverall times: firſt taking notice, that though the Kings of this firſt race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was ſaid; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but thoſe that had their Royal ſeat in the City of *Paris*; the reſt being called only Kings of *Soiſſons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the name of their Principal Cities. And therefore leaving thoſe to their proper places, we will here only take a ſurvey of thoſe, who paſſed in common eſtimate for the Kings of *France*.

The

The Kings of *France* of the *French* or *Merovignian* Line.

449 1 *Merovæus*, Maſter of the horſe to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*, from whom this line of Kings were called *Merovignians*. 10.

459 2 *Chilperic*, the Son of *Merove*. 26.

485 3 *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*. 30.

515 4 *Childebert*, eldeſt Son of *Clovis*, his other Brethren Reigning in their ſeveral places. 45.

560 5 *Clotaire*, Brother of *Childebert*, firſt King of the *Soiſſons*, afterwards ſole King of the *French*.

565 6 *Cherebert*, Son of *Clotaire*.

574 7 *Chilperic* II. King of *Soiſſons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom. 14.

588 8 *Clotaire* II. Son of *Chilperic* the ſecond. 44.

632 9 *Dagobert*, Son of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 14.

645 10 *Clovis* II. Son of *Dagobert*. 17.

663 11 *Clotaire* III. Son of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 4.

667 12 *Chilperic* III. Brother of *Clotaire* the third, and Son of *Clovis* the ſecond.

680 13 *Theodorick*, Brother of *Chilperic*. 14.

694 14 *Clovis* III. Son to *Theodorick*. 5.

698 15 *Childebert* II. Brother to *Clovis* the third. 15.

716 16 *Dagobert* II. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond. 5.

722 17 *Chilperic* IV. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond, and Brother of *Dagobert* the ſecond, oppoſed by *Charles Martell* in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth Son of *Theodorick*, and Brother of *Childebert* the ſecond. 5.

727 18 *Theodoric* II. Son of *Dagobert* the ſecond. 15.

742 19 *Chilperic* V. Son of *Theodorick* the ſecond, the laſt of the *Merovignian* Family, depoſed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel* were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings: which *Mayres* were originally *Controllers* of the Kings Houſe, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the third, to eaſe himſelf and his ſucceſſors of a burden ſo weighty, made the *Mayres*, Vicars generall of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleaſures, ſhewing themſelves only on May-day: and then being ſeated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth packets, heareth and diſpatcheth forain Ambaſſadors, giveth remedy to the complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws and repealeth them. An authority ſomewhat like that of the *Præfecti Prætorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire, or that of the Sultans under the *Mahometan Caliphs*, and the Vice-Roys of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*. An office which had been long born by the Anceſtors of this *Martel*, ever ſince the reign of *Clotaire* the ſecond: in whoſe time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, deſcended lineally from *Utilo* the ſecond Son of *Theodon* the firſt Duke, and Nephew of *Aldagerie* the laſt King of the *Boiarians*, or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a military Prince, and having done good ſervice to *Theodorick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, or *Metz*, againſt the *Danes* then grievouſly infeſting the Coaſts of the *Lower-Germany*; was by him made Warden of thoſe Marches, honoured with the mariage of his Daughter *Clotilde*, and liberally endowed with fair poſſeſſions in that tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulph*, the firſt *Mayre* of this houſe; which office having long enjoyed, he reſigned it to *Anſegiſus* his eldeſt Son (the firſt who drew unto himſelf the Managery of the whole Eſtate) and bidding farewell to the affairs of the World became a Prieſt, and dyed Biſhop of *Mets*, Anno 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Anſegiſus* dying in the year 679. left his authority and office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Ferdulphus* his younger Brother. But he being ſlain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it; *Pepin* ſurnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Anſegiſus*, revenging his Couſens death upon *Ebroinus*, and cruſhing all the oppoſite factions which were raiſed againſt him, obtained that honour for himſelf. And having much advanced the affairs of *France*, by the conqueſt of the *Sueves* and *Friſons*, dyed in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office after his deceaſe, (for *Grimold* his only lawful Son, and *Theobaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had ſucceſſively ſubſtituted in the ſame, dyed not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albieda* his Concubine; from his *martial* proweſs called *Martel*. Who in his time, did to the Kings of *France* great ſervice, eſpecially in routing that vaſt Army of the *Moores* and *Saracens*, in the battel of *Tours* before mentioned: thereby not only freeing *France* from the preſent danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in poſſeſſion of the *Gothes* and *Moores*; for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*, yet would he not uſurp the Kingdom, or the title of King, though both at his diſpoſal wholly; it being his ordinary ſaying, that *he had rather Rule a King, then be one.*

To him ſucceeded *Caroloman* his eldeſt Son, Anno 741. who held the office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*. Who being of leſſe moderation then his Father was, made ſuch uſe of his power; that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zacharie* the firſt, he took the Kingdom to himſelf: and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his poll ſhaven, and was thruſt into a Monaſtery. For this inveſtiture both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good ſervices for the *Popes*, deſtroying on their quarrel the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them moſt of the Lands, which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other ſide the Popes to requite theſe curteſies, confirm'd the former in this Kingdom by

their Papal Power (which then began to bear ſome ſway in the Chriſtian World): and gave the laſt (beſides the opportunity of attaining the Weſtern Empire) the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian King*, continued ever ſince unto his ſucceſſors. And to ſay truth, he well deſerved thoſe honours, had they been far greater, by many victories obtained againſt the Enemies of the Goſpel; the ſeveral Heathens, by his means converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*; the great abilities he had of eſtate and judgement, inabling him to ſupport the Majeſtie of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was ſole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times ſucceeding, into ſeveral petit Kingdoms and Principalities; but had added thereunto by his own proper vertue the greateſt part of *Italy*, the beſt part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vaſt Empire falling into weak hands which were not able enough to manage it, decaied in as little time as it was in raiſing: partly by the unnaturall Ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis* the *Godly*, the next Succeſſor of this *Charles*, who to make themſelves all Kings, firſt depoſed their Father, and then divided his Eſtate amongſt them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundie*, *France*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*; four of which falling at laſt into the hands of ſtrangers, ceaſed to be *French*, and paſſed into ſuch Families as proved the greateſt enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the beſt and goodlieſt Provinces of *France* it ſelf, never again united till theſe later days; which made the *French* Kings leſſe conſiderable, both at home and abroad, which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakneſs and unworthineſs of the Kings of his Race; there being no queſtion to be made, but *Lewis* the *Stammering*, *Charles* the *Bald*, the *Groſs*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Attributes*, if they had deſerved them. For by this means, the iſſue of this brave Prince grew ſo deſpicable, in the eyes of their Subjects, that firſt *Eudes* the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*: and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes*; (both of the race of *Witikindus* the laſt Prince of the *Saxons* (and conſequently both Aliens to the houſe of *Charles*) poſſeſſed themſelves ſeverally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depreſſed and overborn by their oppoſite factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on. Who being Son of *Hugh* the *Great*, Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger brother of *Eudes*, and neer kinſman of *Rodolph*; never left practiſing his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got poſſeſſion of the Regall Diadem, wherewith two Princes of his houſe had been inveſted formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this ſecond Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjuſt grounds of an uſurpation; they are theſe that follow.

The ſecond Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Carolovinian* or *Boiarian* Line.

A. Ch.		
751	1	*Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, ſucceeded in the Office of *Mayre*, Anno 742, and having got the Regal Crown, vanquiſhed the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and cruſhed the *Saxons*. 18.
769	2	*Charles*, ſurnamed the Great, the Son of *Pepin*, ſubdued the Kingdoms of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians*, and *Avares*, and vanquiſhed the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperour of the Weſt, upon *Chriſtmas* day, by Pope *Leo* the third, Anno 800. 46.
815	3	*Lewis* the *Godly*, Son of *Charles* King of *France* and Emperour, the laſt ſole Monarch of the *French*, depoſed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French* after his deceaſe, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorrein*; and *France* it ſelf diſtracted into many Soveraign Eſtates, and Principalities. 26.
841	4	*Charles* II. ſurnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngeſt Son of *Lewis*, King of *France* and Emperor; vanquiſhed by *Charles* the *Groſſe*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
879	5	*Lewis* II. ſurnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour.
881	6	*Lewis* III. with *Caroloman* his Brother, the baſe Sons of *Lewis* the *Stammering*; Uſurpers of the Throne in the infancy of *Charles* the *Simple*.
886	7	*Charles* III. ſurnamed *Craſſus*, or the *Groſſe*, King of *Germany* and Emperour; called into *France*, and elected King, during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*. 5.
891	8	*Odo* or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the race of *Witinkindus* the laſt King of the *Saxons*; elected by an oppoſite Faction, outed *Charles* the *Groſſe*. 9.
900	9	*Charles* IV. ſurnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Poſthumus* Son of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, reſtored unto the Throne of his Fathers: which after many troubles raiſed againſt him by *Robert* the ſecond, Earl of *Anjou* (whom he ſlew in battel) he was forced to reſigne. 27.
927	10	*Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, Son of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy* the Brother of *Eudes*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Charles* the *Simple*. 2.
929	11	*Lewis* IV. Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*; reſtored unto the regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: oppoſed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.
958	12	*Lotharius*,

958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* the 4th, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Hugh Capet*, the eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Hugh*, on the pretenſions of that houſe, by which at laſt he got the Kingdom.

977 13 *Lewis* V. Son of *Lotharius*, the laſt King of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great. After whoſe death (being King only for a year) the Crown was ſeized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles* Duke of *Lorreine*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the preſent race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*, ſo called from the greatneſs of his head; Son of *Hugh* the Great, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the ſecond Earl of *Anjou*: which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Couſin german of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakneſs of the mungrel iſſue of *Charles* the Great, having got the Diadem; tranſmitted it unto his poſterity: the Crown deſcending in a direct line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, ſurnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to underſtand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time ſhut up within narrower bounds, than it is at the preſent: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; beſides thoſe Provinces which conſtituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being alienated and diſmembred from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be diſcerned in the enſuing Hiſtory, and Succeſſion of

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Capetine* or *Saxon* Line.

988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom ſufficiently before. 9.

997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* alſo. 34.

1031 3 *Henry*, the eldeſt Son of *Robert*; his younger Brother *Robert* being ſetled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.

1061 4 *Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.

1110 5 *Lewis* VI. Son of *Philip*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*. 28.

1138 6 *Lewis* VII. Son of *Lewis* the ſixth, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*: as alſo was his Son and Succeſſor.

1181 7 *Philip* II. ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their ſeveral *Appendixes*, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.

1224 8 *Lewis* VIII. Son of *Philip Auguſtus*. 3.

1227 9 *Lewis* IX. ſurnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy-Land*. He reſtored *Guienne* to the *Engliſh*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholouſe* and *Maſcon*, to the Crown of *France*. 44.

1227 10 *Philip* III. Son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.

1286 11 *Philip* IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre* in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.

1314 12 *Lewis* X. ſurnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, An. 1305. After whoſe death the Kingdom of *France* was to have deſcended on *Joan* his Daughter. 2.

1315 13 *Philip* V. called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promiſes, and other practices, cauſed a Law to paſs (to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*) for diſabling Women from the Succeſſion to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brothers Daughter; ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf, by his Brother *Charles*; who following his example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Neeces *Joan*, and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.

1320 14 *Charles* IV. but in true accompt the fifth of that name, moſt commonly called *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis* the two laſt Kings. After whoſe death began the Wars of the *Engliſh* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by King *Edward* the third, as Son and Heir of *Iſabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip* the *Fair*, and Siſter to the three laſt Kings. 7.

1328 15 *Philip* VI. ſurnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the three laſt Kings; ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique* Law: of which *Charles* it is ſaid, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himſelf was no King. In this Kings days was fought the famous Battle of *Crecie*, An. 1343. in which the *French* Army conſiſted of about 70000 Souldiers; the *Engliſh*, of 11800 only; yet the victory fell unto the *Engliſh*: by whoſe valour fell that day *John* King of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Souldiers. He added unto his Eſtates, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the Countrey of *Daulphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.

1350 16 *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, in whoſe reign was fought the battel of *Poictiers*, wherein *Edward* the black Prince, (ſo called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Souldiers (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* Army conſiſting of 40000 men: of which they ſlew beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Souldiers, and took Priſoners King *John* himſelf, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.

1364 17 *Charles*,

1364 17 *Charles* V. the Son of *John* recovered all thoſe peeces (except only *Calice*) which the *Engliſh* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wiſe*, but *Lewis* the 11th, would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming that it was but a fooliſh part, to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withall the Heir of *Flanders* to wife. And ſo it proved in the Event.

18 *Charles* VI. a weak and diſtracted Prince, in whoſe reign *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the faction of *Burgundy* againſt that of *Orleans*; maried the Lady *Catharine* Daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France* during the Kings life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had firſt won the great battel of *Agincourt*, An. 1415. in which the *Engliſh* having an Army but of 15000, vanquiſhed an Army of the *French* conſiſting of 52000 men; of which were ſlain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *Engliſh* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Souldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his predeceſſor *Philip* the ſecond had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* the ninth.

1423 19 *Charles* VII. Son of *Charles* the ſixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *Engliſh* (then divided by domeſtick diſſenſions) all their Lands and Signiories in *France*, except *Calice* only.

1461 20 *Lewis* XI. Son of *Charles* the ſeventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithall a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicil*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great wants, or ſuch ſordid parſimony; that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accompts in *Paris* of two ſhillings for new ſleeves to his old doublet, and three half pence for liquor to greaſe his Boots.

1484 21 *Charles* VIII. Son of *Lewis* the 11th, who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the houſe of *Anjou*. By the mariage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.

1498 22 *Lewis* XII. Son of *Charles*, and Grand-ſon of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of *Charles* the fifth;) ſucceeded as the next Heir-male of the houſe of *Valois*. He diſpoſſeſſed *Ludowick Sforze* of the Dutchie of *Millaine*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; but held neither long. By his mariage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predeceſſor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his Houſe; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death the *Engliſh*, to prevent the growing greatneſs of *Spain*, began to cloſe in with the *French*, and grew into great correſpondencies with them; inſomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis* the 13th (except *Francis* the ſecond, a King of one year and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.

1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angoleſme*, Grand-ſon of *John* of *Angoleſme*, one of the younger Sons of the ſaid *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*; ſucceeded on the death of *Lewis* the twelfth, without iſſue male. Took Priſoner at the battel of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual wars; he being as unwilling to endure a ſuperior, as the Emperor was to admit an equal. 32.

1547 24 *Henry* II. Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *Engliſh*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three *Imperial* Cities; ever ſince Members of this Kingdom. 12.

1559 25 *Francis* II. Son of *Henry* the ſecond, King of the *Scots* alſo, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.

1560 26 *Charles* IX. Brother of *Francis* the ſecond, the Author of the Maſſacre at *Paris*. 14.

1574 27 *Henry* III. elected King of *Poland* in the life of his Brother, whom he ſucceeded at his death. The laſt King of the Houſe of *Valois*, ſtripped of his life and Kingdom by the *Guiſian* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.

1589 28 *Henry* IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendoſme*, ſucceeded as the next Heir-male to *Henry* the third, in the right of the Houſe of *Bourbon*, deſcended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son of *Lewis* the ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Breſſe* unto the Crown, together with the Eſtates of *Bearn*, and *Baſe Navarre*; and after a ten years time of peace, was villainouſly murdered by *Ravillac*, in the ſtreets of *Paris*. 21.

1610 29 *Lewis* XIII. Son of *Henry* the fourth, the moſt abſolute King of *France* ſince the death of *Charles* the Great. For to the reduction of the ſcattered and diſmembred Provinces (the work of his many Predeceſſors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garriſons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the leaſt in number) ſeized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and ſurprized that of *Lorreine*, both which he held untill his death. 32.

1642 30 *Lewis* XIV. Son of *Lewis* the 13th, and of the Lady *Anne*, eldeſt Daughter of *Philip* the third of *Spain*, ſucceeded at the age of four years under the Government of his Mother: the 30th King of the Line of *Capet*, the 43d from *Charles* the Great, and the 64th King of *France* (or rather of the *French*) now living.

As for the *Government* of theſe Kings, it is meerly *Regal*, or, to give it the true name, *Deſpotical*; ſuch as that of a Maſter over his Servants: the Kings will going for a Law, and his *Edicts* as valid as a Sentence

Sentence of the Court of *Parliament*. *Quod Principi placuerit* Legis *habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the *Roman* Emperors, as *Juſtinian* tels us in his *Inſtitutes*: and the *French* Kings, deſcending from *Charles* the Great, claim it as their own. The *Kings Edicts* always ending with theſe binding words, *Car tel eſt noſtre Plaiſir*, for ſuch is our pleaſure. And though he ſometimes ſends his *Edicts* to be *verified*, or approved, in the *Parliament* of *Paris*; and his *Grants* and *Patents* to be ratified in the *Chamber* of *Accompts*, there holden: yet this is nothing but a meer *formality*, and point of circumſtance; thoſe *Courts* not daring to refuſe what the King propoſeth. It is *Car tel eſt noſtre Plaiſir*, which there goeth for *Law*. And by this intimation of his Royal pleaſure, doth he require ſuch *Taxes*, as the neceſſity of his affairs, the greedineſs of his Officers, or the importunity of Suters doe ſuggeſt unto him: The *Patrimony* of the Crown being ſo exhauſted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garriſons, reward ſuch as deſerve well of him, and ſupport thoſe that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaſeth on the backs of his Subjects; againſt which there is no diſpute by the *common People*, though many times the *Great Princes* have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them alſo inſtrumental to the *publick ſlavery*, the Kings are willing to admit them to ſome part of their ſpoyl, to give them ſome *exemptions* from thoſe common burdens; and to connive at the oppreſſing of their Tenants, againſt all good conſcience: that being ſo *priviledged* themſelves, they may not interrupt the King in his *Regal Courſes*.

As for the *French* Parliaments or Aſſembly of the three Eſtates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publique liberty, being firſt diſcontinued by reaſon of the ſharp and continual wars which the *Engliſh* made in this Kingdom for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakned by the policy of King *Lewis* the 11th, and the Kings ſucceeding, and finally by King *Lewis* 13th, were layed by for ever. For finding them to retain ſomething ſtill of their antient ſtomack, and apt enough to claſh with that abſolute Soveraignty which his Predeceſſors had attained to, he reſolved to make no more uſe of them for the times to come; in ſtead whereof he ordained another kind of meeting, which he called *La Aſſemble des Nattables*, that is to ſay, the Aſſembly of ſome principal men, compoſed of ſome ſelected perſons out of every Order or Eſtate (of his own nomination) whereunto ſhould be added ſome Counſellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which being fewer in number would not breed ſuch a confuſion, as the others did, and be withall more pliant and conformable to the Kings deſires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as ſo many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Weſtminſter*) are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, the Parliament, 1 of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of *France* ſpecial, *Champagne*, *Picardie*, the Provinces and eſtates of *Anjou*, *La Beauſſe*, *Berry*, *Poictou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bourbon*; with the Countrey of *Lionois*; 2 of *Rowen*, for the Dukedom of *Normandy*; 3 of *Renes*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*; 4 of *Bourdeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limouſin*, and *Perigirt*; 5 of *Tholouſe*, for the Earldom of *Languedoc* and *Quercu*; 6 of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Provence*; 7 of *Grenoble* for the Countrey of *Dauphin*; and 8 of *Anjou*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundie* and the ſmall Countrey of *La Breſſe*; to which added of late times by King *Lewis* the 13th, the little Parliament of *Pau* for the Countrey of *Bearn*. Beſides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in ſome principal Cities, called Courts Preſidial, reſembling thoſe with us at *York*, and the Marches of *Wales* whilſt they continued in that power and juriſdiction, which at firſt they had. And for the better ordering of the whole eſtate (with reference eſpecially to matters military) it is divided into 12 ſeveral and diſtinct Governments, that is to ſay, 1 of the Iſle of *France*, 2 *Burgundy*, 3 *Normandy*, 4 *Guien*, 5 *Bretagne*, 6 *Champagne*, 7 *Picardy*, 8 *Languedoc*, 9 *Provence*, 10 *Daulphine*, 11 *Lionois*, and 12 *Orleanois*, for in this order they were named by the laſt King: over every one of which is placed a Governor with ſuch autority as the Lords Lieutenants had in *England* in their ſeveral Countreys; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand, on the common people, and ſometimes ſtanding on tearms alſo with the Kings themſelves, but inſtrumental notwithſtanding to the common ſervitude which hath been laid upon this Nation generally as before is ſaid.

The *power* of the *French* King over his Subjects being ſo *tranſcendent*, it cannot be, but that his *Forces* muſt be very great; and would be greater then they are, but that they dare not truſt the common people with the uſe of Arms, for fear they ſhould refuſe to pay the accuſtomed Taxes, or forſake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords: But for an *Eſſay* of what a *French* King is able to doe in this kind, It is ſaid, that *Charles* the 9th, in Gariſons and ſeveral Armies in the field, had 15000 Horſe, and 100000 Foot of his own Nation; beſides 50000 Horſe and Foot of *Swiſſes*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more then what was done by *Lewis* the 13th, within few years paſt, who had at once five Royal Armies in the field in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer then 120000 fighting men in pay and action for ſome years together. Nor did this laſt King keep up the military power of *France* for Land-ſervice only at ſo high a pitch, but he alſo brought the Naval power thereof into eſtimation. For whereas the *French* Kings before his time were very weak and inconſiderable on the Seas, and had ſcarce any men of war but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations; this King became ſo ſtrong in ſhipping in a little ſpace (I doubt ſome neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigge and arm 10000 ſail of good Ships and upwards fit for any ſervice. But to return

turn again to the power at land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially, it is conceived by some and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a sudden service, no less then 60 Companies of *Men of Arms*, 20 Cornets of *Light Horse*, and five Companies of *Harquibusiers* on Horse-back; which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Enfignes of *French* Foot, and 40 of *Swisses*; and yet leave his *Garrisons* well manned, and his *Forts* and *Frontiers* well and sufficiently defended.

What the *Revenues* are in a State so subject to the will and pleasure of the King, it is hard to say; being also more or less, as the times and their occasions vary: according unto which the *Revenues* of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* the 11th, gathered one *Million* and a half of Crowns; *Francis* the first, brought them to 3 *Millions*; his successor *Henry* the second, to six; *Charles* the ninth, to seven; *Henry* the third, to ten; afterwards they were inhanced to fifteen. And in the time of *Henry* the 4th, the Treasurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not shame to say, That his Master had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him; advancing it from two to five Millions *Sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far short of those infinite sums, which are extorted from the People; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings *Exchequer*. But what need more be said, than that of *Lewis* the 11th, who used to say, that *France* was a Medow which he moved every year, and as often as he listed: and indeed their Impositions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 under-officers imployed to gather them. Hence I believe sprung that wish of *Maximilian* the Emperor, which was, that *he* (if it were possible) *might be a God*; and *that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him, and the second, King of* France. And this was also the cause, that in the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the first, when the Emperors Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Archduke of *Austria*, &c. with the rest of his titles: The King commanded the Heralds to return the challenge from *Francis* King of *France*; commanding them to repeat *France* as many times, as the other had petty Earldoms in his stile. And on the other side of no less bravery and fancy, was the saying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being disswaded by one of his Commanders from the War with the *Netherlands*, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of *England*, the King of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunswick*, the Earls of *Nassaw*, &c. Tush man (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side, then theirs, that is to say, the Emperor of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Kings of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Milain*, the Earls of *Habspurg*, *Charolois*, &c. But letting pass these flashes and conceits of wit; certain it is (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the soyl, the incredible multitudes of People, and the conveniency of situation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, the name of *France* might ballance all the others titles.

The chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, were first of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the *French Palace*: and so called, either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it; or from the *Gennets* of *Spain*, over whom he triumphed at the battel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the days of St. *Lewis*. The Knights of the order wore a Ring wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2 Of the *Pairrie* or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inter se*, said to be instituted by *Charles* the Great in his Wars against the *Saracens*. Six of these were of the *Clergy*. 1 The Archbishop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2 the Bishop and Duke of *Laon*, 3 the Bishop and Duke of *Langres*, 4 the Bishop and Earl of *Beavois*, 5 the Bishop and Earl of *Noyon*, and 6 the Bishop and Earl of *Challon*; and six others of the temporality. 1 The Duke of *Burgundy*, 2 Duke of *Normandy*, 3 Duke of *Guienne*, 4 Earl of *Tholouse*, 5 Earl of *Champagne*, 6 Earl of *Flanders*. These are they so much memoriz'd in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but sallly, and on no ground: it being impossible that those should be of the foundation of *Charles* the Great, in whose time there were none of those Dukes & Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouse* only. Therefore with better reason it may be thus concluded on, that the *twelve Peers* were instituted by *Charles* the Great, though that honor not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal merit of the best deservers: it being most sure, that neither *Rowland*, nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the titles abovementioned. But for the fixing of this dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said by some to have been done by *Hugh Capet*, others refer it to *Lewis* the 7th; in whose times all those Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum natura*. But by whomsoever first ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct; and others, of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they see occasion, to gratifie a well deserver. Only at *Coronations*, and such publick *Triumphs*, the custom is to choose some principal persons out of the Nobility to represent those *Temporal Peers*; as at the *Coronation* of *Lewis* the 13th, the places of the *Temporal Peers* were supplyed by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soissons*, the Dukes of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Espernon*: the *Ecclesiastical Peers* remaining as at first they were. So that though *Charles* the great might devise this Order, and institute the first *twelve Peers*, as is commonly said: yet was not that high honor fixed in any of those *Temporal* Princes, till the times succeeding; but given to men of several houses, according to the Kings pleasure, and their well deservings.

3 Of the *Star*, begun by *John* King of *France*, An. 1352. They wore about their necks a collar of gold, at the which hanged a *Star*: the word, *Monstrant Regibus astra viam*. This Order was disgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his *Guard*; and so it ended.

4 Of

4 Of S. *Michael*, inſtituted by King *Lewis* the eleventh, An. 1469. It conſiſted firſt of 36 Knights, which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask down to the ground, with a border interwoven with *Cockle ſhels* of gold, interlaced and furred with *Ermines*; with an hood of crimſon Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a collar woven with Cockle-ſhels: the word, *Immenſi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the picture of Saint *Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the collar. Some think, that the invocation of S. *Michael*, was in alluſion unto the tenth of *Daniel*. Others ſay, he took S. *Michael*, in regard of an apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the ſeventh, on *Orleans* Bridge in his wars againſt the *Engliſh*. The Seat thereof was firſt at S. *Michaels Mount* in *Normandy*, a place which had held longeſt for the *French* Kings againſt the *Engliſh*; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. S. *Michaels* day, the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount S. Michael* the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order; which in moſt things was precedented by that of the *Garter*.

5 Of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, ordained by *Henry* the third, An. 1579. to rectifie the abuſes which had crept into that of S. *Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy perſons: to reduce which to its firſt eſteem, he ordered that the Collar of S. *Michael* ſhould be given to none who had not firſt been dignified with this of the *Holy-Ghoſt*; into which none to be admitted, but ſuch as can prove their Nobility by three deſcents. Their Oath is to maintain the *Romiſh-Catholick* Religion, and perſecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe a black Velvet Mantle, powdred with Lillies and Flames of Gold: the Collar of *Flower de Lyces*, and Flames of Gold, with a Croſs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, becauſe he was on a *Whitſunday* choſen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit orders, as thoſe of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorencie*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*; and of the *Thiſtle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the days of *Pharamond* and his three firſt Succeſſors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clovis* the *Great* altered them to *Azure*, Seme of Flower de Lyces, *Or*; and *Charles* the ſixt to *Azure*, 3 Flower de Lyces, *Or*. In which laſt changes they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did: and by the *Princes of the blood*, who bare the Arms of *France*, with ſome difference only, for the diſtinction of their Houſes.

There are in *France*,
Archbiſhops, 17. Biſhops, 107.
And Univerſities 15.
Viz.

1 *Paris*,	6 *Caen*,	11 *Montpelier*,
2 *Orleans*,	7 *Rhemes*,	12 *Avignon*,
3 *Bourges*,	8 *Bourdeaux*,	13 *Lions*,
4 *Poictiers*,	9 *Tholouſe*,	14 *Beſancon*,
5 *Angiers*,	10 *Niſmes*,	15 *Dole*.

And ſo much for *France*.

THE

THE
PYRENEAN HILS.

BEtwixt *France* and *Spain* are the Mountains called *Pyrenei*, the reaſon of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the Original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*, ſaid by old Fablers to have been here raviſhed by *Hercules*: others conceive they were ſo called, becauſe much ſtricken with Lightnings, thoſe *Celeſtial Flames*. But being the name doth moſt undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* word which ſignifieth *Fire*; the more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (theſe Hils being then extremely overgrown with woods:) the Flame whereof raged ſo extremely, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran ſtreaming down the Mountains many days together; the fame of which invited many Forein Nations to invade the Countrey. Which Accident they place 880 years before the birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer addes no ſmall authority, who ſpeaking of this conflagration (as *Ariſtotle* and *Strabo* alſo do,) addeth withall, τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκὸς κληθῆναι Πυρηναῖα, ἀπὸ τῆς πυρὸς συχνὰς ἡμέρας συνεχῶς ἐπιφλέξαντος, that is to ſay, theſe Mountains had the name of *Pyrenees*, from the fire, which many days together ſo extremely raged. And this tradition backed by ſo good autority, I ſhould rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying dark or ſhadie; though true it is, that theſe Mountains antiently were very much overgrown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatſoever was the reaſon why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural bound, betwixt the great and puiſſant Monarchs of *France*, and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their deſires and purpoſes againſt each other, as well as their Dominions: if any thing could put a bound to the deſigns of ambitious Princes. Yet not more ſeparated by theſe Mountains, than by thoſe jealouſies and fears, which they have long ſince harboured of one another; each of them manifeſtly affecting the Supreme command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Hiſtorian doth of others, on the like occaſion, *Aut montibus, aut mutuo metu ſeparantur.* The Mountains alſo make that *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoyn *Spain* to the reſt of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-Weſt, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently waſhing the South-Eaſt thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarco*, (the *Ocaſo* of *Ptolemie*) not far from the City of *Baionne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*: From thence continued South-Eaſt-wards betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the antients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Roſas*, one of the Port Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spaniſh* leagues, at three miles to a league. The higheſt part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latines*, named *Canus*: from which (as it is ſaid by ſome) there is a Proſpect in a clear day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt, the higheſt part of all theſe Mountains; and took this name from the whiteneſs and hoarineſs thereof, as having on its top or ſmmit a Cap of ſnow for moſt part of the year. In which reſpect, as the *Alpes* took their name *ab albo*; that in the *Sabine Dialect*, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latines* was called *Album*, which before we noted: ſo did Mount *Lebanon* in *Syria* take its name from *Leban*, which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth white, and *Lebanah* whiteneſs. Such people as inhabit in this Mountainous tract, have been, and ſhall be mentioned in their proper places. I only adde, and ſo go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous people of theſe Mountains compelled *Sertorius* in his haſty paſſage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla's* Faction, to pay them *tribute* for his paſs; at which when ſome of his Souldiers murmured, as thinking it diſhonorable to a *Proconſul* of *Rome* to pay tribute to the barbarous Nations; the prudent General replyed, that he *bought only time*; a Commodity, which they that deal in haughty Enterpriſes muſt needs take up at any rate.

OF

SPAIN.

HAving thus croſſed the *Pyrenees* we are come to *Spain*, the moſt Weſtern part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *France*, from which ſeparated by the ſaid Mountains: but more particularly bounded upon the North, with the *Cantabrian*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, with the ſtraits of *Gibraltar*; on the Eaſt, with the *Mediterranean*; and on the North-eaſt with thoſe *Pyrenees*. The Figure of it compared by *Strabo* to an Oxes Hide ſpread upon the ground; the neck whereof being that *Iſthmus*, which unites it to *France*.

This Countrey hath in divers Ages been as diverſly named. 1 *Heſperia*, either from *Heſperus* a ſuppoſed King hereof; or from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, under which it was ſuppoſed to be ſituate, as being the furtheſt Countrey Weſt-ward: to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Heſperia* alſo, named *Heſperia minor*. 2 It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Countrey of *Aſia* which we now call *Georgia*: as *Celtiberia*, from the mixture of thoſe *Aſian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and ſometimes in *Strabo*. 3 *Hiſpania*, as the ſoundeſt judgements agree, from *Panus* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Græcians* call it Σπανία *Spania*, as may be proved in many places, that eſpecially of the 15 to the *Romans*, verſe 28. Απελεύσομαι δ' ὑμῶν ἐς τὴν Σπανίαν, *I will come by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Grecians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the name of *Spania*, which they often uſed: to which the *Spaniards* according to their cuſtome adding E, (as in *Eſcola*, *Eſcuda*, &c.) made it *Eſpania*, and now *Hiſpania*. In like manner as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at firſt *Spalis*, (according hereunto the Biſhop hereof in the Councel of *Eliberis* ſubſcribed himſelf by the name of *Sabinus Spalenſis*) in tract of time was called *Hiſpalis*. And yet I muſt not pretermit the fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the names of moſt places from the *Punick* Language will have it to be called *Spauija*, or *Sphanija*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phœnicians*, at their firſt diſcovery; from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* tongue ſignifies a *Conie*; with which that Countrey much abounded in the former times, the *Romans* being hence furniſhed with them. Let the Reader like it as he liſt.

The greateſt length hereof is reckoned at 800 miles, the breadth where it is broadeſt, at 560; the whole circumference 2480 *Italian* miles: But *Mariana* meaſuring the compaſs of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea; makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 miles of *Italian meaſure*. And though according to the ſmalleſt computation, it be above 460 miles in compaſs more than *France*, yet is it far ſhort thereof in numbers of people: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 millions of living ſouls; whereas *Spain* is reckoned to contain but 8 millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reaſons of which diſproportion are, 1 The *continual wars* which they had for 900 years together againſt the *Moores*, in their own Countrey; by which they were conſumed in the very growth. 2 The *Expulſion* of ſo many thouſand Families of *Jewes* and *Moores*, 124000 Families of the one in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; and 110000 of the other by King *Philip* the third: which was as the lopping off of a main limb from the body *Politick*, though without any loſs to the *Eccleſiaſtical*. 3 The *unneceſſary* wars maintained againſt all the reſt of Chriſtendom, ever ſince the time of *Charles* the fifth, out of meer ambition; before they were well cured of their former wounds. 4 The *infinite Plantations* made by them in the *Eaſt* and *Weſtern Indies*, and all along the Sea-coaſts of *Africa*; and thoſe great Garriſons maintain'd in *Milan*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-countreys*, and their Towns in *Africk*; conſiſting for the moſt part of natural *Spaniards*. 5 The *barrenneſs* of the Countrey in many places,

unable to ſuſtain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour and manure the Land. And 6 and laſt of all, the *Impotency of both Sexes* for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their luſts, than able for Generation; and the women for the moſt part beginning to be Mothers ſo extremely young, that nature is decay'd, and ſpent in them, before they have run half their courſe. And 'tis a moſt true and undoubted Maxime, that the greatneſs of Cities, and populouſneſs of Kingdoms and Common-wealths, do much depend on the *generative vertue* of the men, and the *nutritive vertue* of the ſoyl in which they live.

It is ſituate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate *Zone*, and almoſt in the midſt of the fourth and ſixth *Climates*: the longeſt day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the moſt Northern parts hereof; but in the extreme South near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which ſituation of this Countrey rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, ſeldom obſcured with miſts and vapours, and not ſo much ſubject to diſeaſes as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt People, deſcending from the *Gothes*, *Moores*, *Jewes*, and the ancient *Spaniards*. From the *Jewes* they borrow Superſtition, from the *Moores* Melancholy, Pride from the *Gothes*, and from the old *Spaniards* the deſire of Liberty. The *Jewes* firſt planted here by the Emperor *Adrian*, who having totally baniſhed them their Native Countrey, ſent them hither to dwell: the total number of which Plantation is ſaid to amount to 500000 men, women, and children; and yet their numbers much increaſed in the time of *Ulidor Ulet* the great *Caliph* of the *Sarazens*, who having made a Conqueſt of *Spain*, ſent hither 50000 Families of *Moores* and *Jewes*, the better to aſſure it to him. And ſo we have the coming in of the *Moores* and *Jewes*; the Conqueſt of it by the *Gothes*, and their ſetling here, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter: which ſeveral Nations by long time, and intermariages together, were at laſt incorporated into one. For their condition, it is ſaid that they are highly conceited of themſelves, great Braggards, and extremely proud, even in the loweſt ebbe of Fortune. Which laſt appeareth by the tale of the poor Cobler on his death-bed, who (as *Barklay* in his *Icon Animorum* reporteth the ſtory) commanded his eldeſt Son, coming to him for his laſt bleſſing, *to endevour to retain the majeſty worthy ſo great a Family*; *Memineris* (ſaid he) *in majeſtatem aſſurgere familia tua dignam*. The ſame Author relateth another ſtory to the like purpoſe. A woman of this Countrey attended on by three of her brats, went a begging from door to door. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her caſe, offered her to take into their ſervice the bigger of her boyes. But ſhe proud though poor, ſcorning, as ſhe ſaid, that any of her lineage ſhould endure a Prentiſhip, returned this anſwer: *Qui aut tu, aut ego, ſciamus, in quæ fata ſit genitus? For ought that ſhe or any knew, her Son* (ſimply as he ſtood there) *might live to be King of Spain.* Not much unlike to theſe is that tale of a *Spaniſh Cavaleiro*, who being for ſome faults by him committed, whipped through the principal ſtreets of *Paris*; and keeping a ſober pace, was adviſed by a friend to make more haſt, that he might the ſooner be out of his pain: But he half in choler replyed, *That he would not loſe the leaſt ſtep of his pace, for all the whipping in Paris.* For indeed their gate is Gennet-wiſe, very ſtately and majeſticall.

Of temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for *Generation*. And this ſtrong inclination unto women which they finde in themſelves, makes them ſo jealous of their *Wives*, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church: and then too veiled and ſo hooded, one can hardly ſee them; and not that neither, but attended with their Damoſels, and ſome truſty ſhe-friend, that is to give an accompt of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambaſſador from *Spain*, in *Queen Elizabeths* time, uſed to finde fault with the promiſcuous ſitting of men and women in the *Church*, uſed here in *England*; accounting it to be a very great *incentive* unto *laſciviouſneſs*. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of *the Maſters of the Requeſts*, is ſaid to have replied, that indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service* could not abſtain from impure thoughts, and unclean geſtures, that mingled kinde of ſitting was not ſo allowable: but the *Engliſh* were of another temper, and did not finde any inconvenience in it. And it is poſſible, this humour of jealouſie might be derived on them from the *Moores*, who in the ſtrict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors: it being death in *Barbarie*, to this very day, for any man to ſee one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they ſee a man, though but through a caſement, they do not preſently cry out. A frenzie which much rageth in moſt *Southern* people, but not predominant in the *Northern*; who do not only ſuffer their Wives to ſit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Bathes alſo; two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather die an hundred deaths, than give conſent to. But though the *women* are not permitted to ſtir abroad, the men take liberty enough; and are as good ſmel-feaſts as in any Countrey: it being obſerved of them by a very good Writer, that howſoever in their own houſes they are temperate and content with little; yet when they go unto a Feaſt, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and deſirous to make good cheer, as any people whatſoever.

But not to conceal their vertues, and make our ſelves merry at their follies, (wherein all other Nations have a ſhare with them) they are queſtionleſs a people very grave in their carriages, in offices of piety very devout, and to their King very obedient; whoſe greatneſs they affect more cordially than any ſubjects in the world: exact in doing juſtice upon all Offenders, which commonly they adminiſter without partiality; indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindfull. But that which deſerveth the greateſt commendation in them, is an unwearied patience in ſuffering adverſities, accompanied with a reſolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Diſcoveries they ſhewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious rewards: withall of very daring ſpirits, great undertakers for the moſt part, and to ſay truth, the greateſt inlargers of their Dominions (according to the advantages

of

of their ſituation) of any Nation under heaven. For having firſt either exterminated or ſubdued the *Moores*, which for many hundreds of years were poſſeſſed of this Continent, the *Aragonians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added to their eſtate the Iſlands of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, the Kingdoms of *Sicilie*, and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*; the *Caſtilians*, lying on both ſides of the Straits, firſt took in ſome of the oppoſite Towns on the coaſt of *Africk*, next conquered the *Canaries* or *Fortunate* Iſlands, and finally diſcovered and ſubdued the moſt part of *America*; the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea coaſt on the Weſtern Ocean, poſſeſſed themſelves of the *Azores*, moſt of the Sea Towns of *Morocco*, and the land of *Guinnia*, and doubling the *Cape of good hope* made themſelves Maſters of many Ports and Iſlands of great conſequence in the *Eaſt-Indies*, adding thereto in fine the large Countrey of *Brazill* in that part of *America* which lay fitteſt for them; and the *Navarrois* (to conclude) (though locked up by their greater neighbours from all trade at Sea and conſequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their eſtates the moſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France* thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is ſaid that *the French are wiſer than they ſeem*, and the Spaniards *ſeem wiſer than they are*: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to the Philoſopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non eſſe, quam eſſe & non videri.*

In matters of war the *Spaniards* are obſerved to be generally too heavy, ſlow, and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one loſing as many fair occaſions by delaies, as the other overthroweth by too much haſte: but between them both they make one good ſouldier; who according to the preſent opportunities, is to make uſe of the ſpur of courage, or the bit of reſpect. But of the ſtrange and many differences in temper, humour and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have ſpoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are ſober, loving their husbands or friends; wonderful delicate, curious in painting or perfuming: and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *Engliſh* Proverb, that *none are worſe ſhod than the ſhoomakers wife*. Herein in worſe condition than the Women of *France*, who though they are reſtrained from Wine before their marriage; yet after that they take what liberty they liſt, and are no more reſtrained from it than the other ſex. But this is the leaſt liberty, which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniſh*: theſe being ſo watched and overlooked, that it is hardly poſſible for them to hold ſpeech with any man, in buſineſs of moſt importance, and much leſs in matters of *civilities* only; thoſe having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the preſence of their husbands, without any diſtruſt or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous ſtrong, and beyond belief, patient of the throwes of Childbed: *Strabo* relating how one of theſe women being hired for harveſt work, and finding her travel come upon her, becauſe ſhe would not loſe her daies wages, withdrew her ſelf into a buſh; where being eaſed of her burden, ſhe returned from one labour to another. And many of them at this day uſe not to keep their Chambers, above three daies after their delivery, and then apply themſelves to their houſhold buſineſs without either danger or delay.

The language is not the ſame in all places, though all called the *Spaniſh*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and ſome parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in theſe parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and ſome parts of *Andaluzia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the mountains of *Alpuxarras*, the *Arabick* or *Mooriſh* language ſtill remains in uſe. The Countreys bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biſcay* ſpecially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made ſubject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latine*; *Breerwood* in his *Enquiries* reporting that he hath ſeen a letter, every word whereof was both good *Latine* and good *Spaniſh*. *Merula* ſhewes a Copy of the like, *pag.* 300. By reaſon of which conſonancy with the *Latine*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue are generally the *Gothiſh*, *Arabick*, and old *Spaniſh*, and in ſome places the *French* alſo, as before is ſaid; thoſe people having made great conqueſts, and having had great negotiations in this Countrey. It is ſaid to be a very lofty ſwelling ſpeech, as if it were faſhioned to command.

And as their Language, ſo their Lawes do owe a great part of themſelves to the Lawes of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Lawes being generally uſed amongſt them, but intermixt with many cuſtomes of the *Gothes*, and the Edicts or conſtitutions of their ſeveral Kings. Thoſe of the *Gothes* being firſt committed unto writing, and reduced to order by *Euricus* the firſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*: thoſe of *Caſtile* digeſted by the command of *Ferdinand* the third, *Anno* 1296. into ſeven Books called the *Partidos*; not finiſhed till the time of his Son *Alfonſo*. *Leges* Hiſpaniarum *quas Partitas vocant, in volumen redegit*, as *Tarupha* hath told us of him in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. The like done by King *James* the firſt for the Realm of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1248. reſpectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings ſucceeding. Authoriſed to be read and diſputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*, the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Lawes.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the fruits of Nature, yeelds not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleaſures, and commodities; which here appear in greater ripeneſs and perfection than in other places. But for the moſt part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbred with wilde and rocky Mountains, or of ſo hot a nature, and ſo ſandy withall, that it is not very fit for tillage; and ſo deficient in Water, as not good for Paſturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremie*, where it is *good*, no Countrey *better*; where *bad* and barren, few ſo inconvenient, and not any *worſe*. But this defect of outward beauty and Commodities, is recompenſed

by thoſe within; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and ſome Mines of Silver: of which laſt ſo abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations; and it is ſaid of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Countrey of the *Turdetani* (now part of *Andaluzia)* he received 3000 pound weight daily, for long time together. The principal commodities which they vend into other Countreys, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Liquoras, a fine ſort of Wool, Cork, Roſin, Limmons, Raiſins, Orenges, and fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the ſtaff of life, they are ſo defective, that they receive the greateſt part of what they ſpend, from *Italie*, *Sicilie*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair nor many, the Countrey being not able to breed them, ſo that their Diet is on Salads, and fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what fleſh he ſhall buy for himſelf and his Family: which if he ſend for to the Butcher, or Poulterer by the ſmalleſt childe, able to do the Errand for him; he is ſure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they ſurfeited with the plenty of all proviſions: handſomly checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Souldier Sir *Roger Williams*. Of whom it is ſaid, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus fooliſhly bragging of his Countrey ſalads, he gave him this anſwer, *You have indeed good* ſawce *in* Spain, *but we have dainty* Beefs, Veals, *and* Muttons *to eat with that* ſawce; *and as God made* beaſts *to live upon the* graſs *of the earth, ſo he made* men *to live upon them*. And it is obſerv'd, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good diſh to his Supper, you ſhall finde all the feathers ſcattered before his door by the next morning.

And as it is in private houſes, ſo for travelling alſo, the Innes and *Vents* of this Countrey are very ill provided: inſomuch, that moſt men that would not go ſupperleſs to ſleep, carry their proviſion at their ſaddle bowes; and men of worth, their bedding alſo. So poor and mean is the entertainment in theſe places.

Here lived in ancient times the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quell'd by *Hercules*: and in the flouriſhing of the Empire, 1 *Seneca* the *Tragœdian*,, and 2 the *Philoſopher* of the ſame name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the ſame order that they were rehearſed: as alſo 3 *Quintilian* the Oratour, 4 *Lucan*, and 5 *Martial*, excellent in their kindes, 6 *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7 *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator 8 *Juſtin*, and 9 *Paulus Oroſius* the Hiſtorian, this laſt a *Chriſtian*. In the middle times 10 *Iſidore* Biſhop of *Sevill*, 11 *Julian*, and 12 *Hildephonſus* Biſhops of *Toledo*; and after them *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1 The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximines*, and 2 *Arias Montanus*, famous for the Editions of the holy Bible; 3 *Maſius*, a learned Commentator; 4 *Oſorius*, well ſeen in the *Latine* elegancies: and before all, as well in induſtry as time, 5 *Toſtatus* Biſhop of *Avila*, a man ſo copious and induſtrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more ſheets than he lived daies. But of late times we finde but few of their Works which have paſſed the Mountains, the *Latine* which they write being very courſe, and ſavouring too much of the *Schoolman*, (wherein their excellency conſiſts) and therefore they ſet out their Works moſt commonly in their own tongue only. The chief for *Souldiery* amongſt them were formerly *Viriathus*, who held out ſo long againſt the *Romans*; *Trajan* and *Theodoſius*, both *Roman* Emperours; *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Gothes*, the victorious Conquerour of the *Swevians*; *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their atchievements againſt the *Moors*: and in late times, *Gonſalvo* the *Great Captain*; who ſubdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Chriſtian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spaniſh* Tradition, was firſt here planted by S. *James* the Apoſtle, within four years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very conſtant a long time together, yet of late daies, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do moſt deſervedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpoſe of coming hither, is evident in his 15 Chapter to the *Romans*: and that he did come hither accordingly, is poſitively affirmed by S. *Chryſoſtom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in *Anno* 61, as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great ſervice, but joyned with St. *Paul*, though not in the journey, yet in the ſending of *Biſhops* and other *Presbyters*, to ſecond the beginnings made by that Apoſtle. For it is ſaid expreſly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Cteſiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaletius*, *Heſychius*, and *Euphraſius*, being at *Rome* ordained *Biſhops* by the two *Apoſtles*, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in* Hiſpanias *directi*, were diſpatched into *Spain* to preach the Goſpel. Biſhops moſt likely, of thoſe Cities where they ſuffered death, the names of which occurre in the *Martyrologie*. Under the Empire of the *Gothes*, the faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming hither they found right and *Orthodox*, was defiled with *Arianiſm*: not ejurated till the year 588. when that whole Nation did ſubmit to more *Catholique* tendries. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moores* under the conduct of *Muſa* Lieutenant General to *Ulidor Ulit* the *Arabian Caliph*, and *Mahometaniſm* overſpreading the whole face of the Countrey: ſuch *Chriſtians* as remained under their obedience, but few and inconſiderable both for power and quality, had the name of *Muſarabes*. Increaſing in eſtate and numbers by the fortunate ſucceſſes of the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*, and other *Chriſtian* Principalities growing up apace; they ſtill retaining their old name and their ancient *ſervice*; diſtinct from that obſerved in the Church of *Rome*: this being called the *Muſarabique*, the others the *Gregorian* Miſſal; the one pretending S. *Iſidore* Archb. of *Sevil*, the other S. *Gregorie* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this State, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo* by *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1083. At what time *Bernard* a *French* man being made Archbiſhop of that City and Primate of *Spain*, endevoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service; but therein was oppoſed by the other Prelates, & generally by all the People, ſufficiently tenacious of their ancient Formes. At laſt it was concluded (as the ſtory telleth us) to commit the deciſion of the Controverſie to a fiery triall: both Books being

being cast into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the flames. Convinced by this experiment that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God, they yeelded so far to the desires of the King (who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in six of the Churches of *Toledo* (where it is sung to this day in a Chappell of the Great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service should be entertained in the rest of *Spain*. According unto which decree the *Musarabique* (but not untill some tract of time) came to be disused: and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedrall of *Toledo*, *May*, 29. *An.* 1091 and after by degrees in the rest of the Countrey.

Since that they have been constant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of *Jewes* and *Moors*; especially since the setting up of the *Inquisition*: devised at first about the year 1478. by *Pedro Gonsales de Mendoza*, Arch-bishop of *Toledo*, against such converted *Jewes*, and *Moors* as did return again to their superstition. But he and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that in the compasse of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocese only; in the year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigor of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some *Jacobins* or *Dominicall* Friers; who in the first place were to have an eye unto such Apostates, and to Hereticks, Magicians, Sodomites, Blasphemers of the name of God, *&c.* Confirmed in this Authority by Pope *Sixtus* the 4th. This institution in it self was not only necessary (as the condition of affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late in stead of being used on the *Jewes* and *Moors* it hath been turned upon the *Protestants*, and that with such violence and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greatest tyranny, and severest kind of persecution under heaven. Insomuch that many Papists who would willingly die for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withstand the bringing in of this slavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebell; Countreys where the people are all of the Papall side: and this was it which caused the irremediable revolt of the *Low Countrey*, the greatest part of that Nation at the time of their taking Arms being *Romish Catholiques*; yet it is planted and established in *Spain* and all *Italy* (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous Friers, and rigorous Friers in the whole pack; the least suspicion of heresie, affinity or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books prohibited, or discoursing in matters of Religion, are offences sufficient. Nay they will charge mens Consciences under pain of damnation, to detect their neerest and deerest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great secresie and severity: For first, the parties accused shall never know their accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2 If they be but convinced of any errour in any of their opinions, or be gainsayed by two witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3 If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite tortures and miseries be kept in the house divers years, for a terror unto others. And fourthly, if they escape the first brunt with many torments, and much anguish; yet the second questioning or suspicion brings death remedilesse. And as for torments and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his fellow Tyrants come far short of these Bloud-hounds.

The administration of this office, for the more orderly Reglement and dispatch thereof, distributed into twelve Courts, or supreme Tribunals, for the severall Provinces of *Spain*; no one depending on another, but in some, sort subordinate to the generall Inquisition, remaining in the Court near the Kings person, which hath a kind of superintendency over those Tribunals: in all of which those of the secular Clergy sit as Judges, the *Friers* being only used as *Promoters* to informe the Court, and bring more Grist unto the Mill. Of these Inquisitors every one hath the title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peasants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordships, desirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor mans Orchard, not far off, sent for the man to come unto him, which put the poor soul into such a fright, that he fell sick upon it, and kept his bed: Being afterwards informed that all his Lordships businesse with him, was to request a dish of his Pears, he pulled up the tree by the roots, and carryed it unto him with the fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reason of that rash and improvident action, he returned this answer. That he would never keep that thing in his house, which should give any of their Lordships cause to send further after him. Certain it is that by this means the people of this Kingdome are so kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Priests and Friers shall be pleased to teach them, or entertain the truth if it come amongst them, or call in question any of those palpable and grosse impostures which every day are put upon them.

For by this means the people of this Kingdome have been and still are punctuall followers of the Church of *Rome*, and that too in the very errors and corruptions of it; taking up their Religion on the Popes authority: and therein so tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth suffer none to live in his Dominions, which professe not the *Roman Catholique* Religion. Of which they have been, since the times of *Luther*, such avowed *Patrons*, that one of the late Popes being sick, and hearing divers men to moan his approaching end; uttered some words to this effect: *My life* (said he) *can nothing benefit the* Church, *but pray for the prosperity of the King of* Spain, *as its chief Supporter.* And though he spoke these words of King *Philip* the 2d, yet they hold good in his Successors ever since; being esteemed the greatest Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cause*: Which is indeed the proper interest of this King. For seeing that they have framed to themselves an hope of the *Western Monarchy*; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporall*, than by concurring with the Pope in uphold-

upholding his Spirituall Empire; they have linked themselves most fast to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them, to be the Executioners of the Popes *Excommunications*, by which Office *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* surprized *Navarre*; not without hope of working the like effect, in some course of time, on the rest of the inderdicted Estates of *Europe*; as may be seen, by the eager following of the *French* War against *Henry* the 4th, till he had reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many years together, against Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*. And the pursuite of this *Spanish* Monarchy is so hotly followed by the *Jesuits*, who in all their perswasions speak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they do of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and subdue that great enemy of *Religion*, the *Turk*. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a project of the *Jesuits* only, but a *design* avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licensed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *supreme Councel* of the *Inquisition*; but by Order from the *Lords* of the *Councell*, with the Kings *Privilege* and Commendation prefixt before it, The Book entituled, *La Convenientia de los dos Monarquias Catolicas, &c.* The agreement of the two Catholick Monarchies of *Rome* and *Spain*; set out in the year 1612. by one *John de Puente*. In the *Frontispice* whereof are set two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Crosse-Keyes* of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Castile* and *Leon*; *in Vinculo pacis* for the Motto. On the one side of this there is a Portraiture representing *Rome*, with the Sun shining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keyes, with this Inscription, *Luminare majus ut præsit Orbi et Urbi*, the Greater light to govern the City and the World. On the other side, another Image designing *Spain*, with the *Moon* shining over that, and darting her Rayes on the *Spanish* Scutcheon, with this Impresse; *Luminare minus ut subdatur Urbi et dominetur Orbi*, i. e. The lesser light made to be subject to the City, (understand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World besides. Over all in the top of the Front or *Title-page*, in *Capitall* Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large *Folio*, is but a Comment on this Text; which for substance is contained wholly in the *Frontispice*, but more at large discoursed of in the *Volume* it self; and plainly shewes what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jesuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation: and if the project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himself *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the spoyl; and glad to borrow all his light from the *Sun* of *Spain*. For though the Kingdome of *Spain*, and Popedome of *Rome* be thus straitly combined, yet herein the Popes have overshot themselves; in that leaning so much to the *Spaniard*, and so immoderately encreasing his dominion, they do in a manner stand at his devotion; and may peradventure in the end, be forced to cast themselves into his arms as their good Lord and Master. For certain it is, that the *Spanish Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to see the day, wherein the King should offer to the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuse any; and that they themselves should choose no *Pope*, but one of their *Masters* naming. So great an inconvenience it is more than possible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and only string to their bow; and fastning the dependencies of his *Roman Catholiques* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all other Kings in Christendome, of the *Romish* party, from the honour of it. And yet so firm they are to their *Spanish* Principles, that no *favours* either granted to their persons, or *Religion*, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptation; if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace* than the *Court of Spain*. Insomuch as I have heard from a great Minister of State, that when some favours were obtained for the *English Papists*, on the treaty of the Match with *Spain*; they were ready with great greedinesse to embrace the same. But when the same *favours* were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a man of them would accept them. For which some of their Chiefs being asked the reason, returned this answer. That *by applying themselves to the* French, *they might lose the* Spaniard; *and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and constant* Friend, *who had never failed them, for one of whose affections they had no assurance; and such a one as by tolerating* Hereticks *in his own Dominions, shewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholicks to relie upon.*

The chief Rivers are, 1 *Tagus*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed by some Writers to be made, but I have not Faith enough to believe the same. The head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, neer to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then smoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2 *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterward under the ground, the space of 15 miles: and hence the *Spaniards* use to brag, that they have a Bridge, whereon 10000 Cattle dayly feed. An accident common to many other Rivers, as to *Mole*, a small River in *Surrey*; *Erasinus* in *Greece*; and *Lycus*, in *Anatolia*; of which last thus *Ovid*:

Sic ubi terreno Lycus *est epotus hiatu,*
Existit procul hinc, alioque renascitur ore.

So *Lycus*, swallowed by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, it loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean; on the South of *Portugal*, which it separateth from *Extremadura*. 3 *Bætis*, now called *Guadalquivir* (which in the *Arabick* Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*; and passing by *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of S. *Lucars*

de

de Barameda. 4 *Iberus*, which having its head amongſt the Mountains of *Biſcay*, paſſeth on Eaſtwards by *Saragoſſa*, and *Tortoſa*, into the *Mediterranean*: the whole courſe thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of ſuch note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Countrey into *Citeriorem*, and *Ulteriorem*; of which more anon. 5 *Duerus*, which riſing in the ſame Mountains paſſeth through *Portugal*, and ſo unto the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6 *Minius*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the *Pyrenees* ſpoken of before, 1 The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Aſturum*; which riſing out of a ſpur or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overſpread the Provinces of *Biſcay*, *Aſturia*, and *Gallicia* (coaſting along the ſhores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at laſt they end. 2 *Idubeda*, *Iubalda*, or *Aurantius Saltus*, ſo called by *Ptolemie*, and others of the ancient Writers; which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the courſe of that River by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3 *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæſar* called *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolemie*; which beginning about the Town of *Alcoraz*, coaſteth along the right-hand ſhores of the River *Bætis*, to the Southern Seas. 4 *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolemie* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Oroſpeda* by *Strabo*, but by the *Moors* the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of hils which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada*, from Eaſt to Weſt; and amongſt which the people, to this day, ſpeak the *Arabick* tongue.

The Countrey is ſaid to have been firſt inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Beroſus* of Frier *Annius*, and by ſuch Chronologers as he hath impoſed on by the name of that Author; that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Floud, he ſeated himſelf in the *Aſturias*, a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of S. *Uval*. A device ſo fooliſh and abſurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal*, muſt come hither by Sea or by Land. If by Land, then muſt he in the compaſs of a year or two, travel not leſs than 4000 miles (for ſo far it is at leaſt from *Biſcay* to the valley of *Shinaar*) with women and children; through moſt unpaſſable Woods and Mountains: which no underſtanding man can give belief to. If by Sea, beſides the ſhort time he had to provide ſhipping for ſo great a company, and ſo long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a ſober man, than that he ſhould leave *Italie* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermit the opportunity of poſſeſſing *Valentia*, *Andulazia*, *Portugal*, being fruitful Countreys; to fix himſelf in the moſt mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet moſt of our *Beroſians* are ſo confident in it, that they make him the firſt King of *Spain*, from whom to *Gargarus Melicola*, they numbred 25 Kings more, who laſted 988 years: the chief of which are ſaid to be, 1 *Heſperus*, who ſubduing alſo *Italie*, named both Countreys *Heſperia*: but ſo, that *Italie* was called *Heſperia* the greater; and *Spain*, *Heſperia* the leſs. 2 *Hiſpanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hiſpania* to be derived. 3 *Tagus*, 4 *Bætus*, and 5 *Anus*, whence the three famous Rivers in *Spain* ſo called, muſt by all means be derived. 6 *Idubeda*, *God-father* no doubt, to the great Mountain ſo named. 7 *Sicileus*, from whom the Iſle of *Sicilie* is ſaid to take denomination. 8 *Hiſpalis*, who is reported to have built the City *Sevill*, or *Hiſpalis*. 9 *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavis-Briga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10 *Luſus*, who gave name to *Luſitania* or *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings I deſire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Caſſibeline*. A Catalogue ſo ill contrived, that whereas *Juſtin* ſpeaks of *Habis*, and *Herodotus* of *Argunthonius*; *Macrobius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*; all Kings of *Spain*; none of all theſe are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in perſon) hither, is a ſilly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or ſome nations of them, may derive their Pedegree from *Tubal*, as being the deſcendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Joſephus* ſaith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*: a name in which are all the *Radical* Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in ſound. For ſomewhat before the ſuppoſed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are ſaid to come in under *Panus*: divided after his deceaſe amongſt many petit Kings and Princes, for the ſpace of 900 and odd years, even till the firſt Attempts which the *Carthaginians* made upon it: who found here no ſuch Univerſal or Supreme Monarch, as the *Beroſian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we finde nothing more obſervable and certain in the *ſtory* of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coaſts by divers Nations, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe elder times. Of which ſort were the Towns of *Emporia*, and *Dianium*, founded by the *Maſſilians*; *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zant*; *Rhodope*, by the *Rhodians*, as ſome think; the City and Iſle of *Gades*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after ſpread themſelves over all the coaſts of *Andaluzia*. The firſt that came in bodies hither, in the way of Conqueſt, were the *Celtæ*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*; who mixing themſelves with the *Iberi*, cauſed the whole Countrey to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it, is very uncertain. Of the invaſion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicil* by the conquering *Romans*, *Ann. U. C.* 512. and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the Weſt; and paſſing through the ſtraights of *Gibraltur*, by the Iſle of *Gades* (their own long before) landed in *Spain*, under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loſs of *Sicilie*. In leſs than 20 years following, *Amilcar*, *Aſdrubal* his Son-in-law, and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almoſt all *Spain* ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Weſtern Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; deſtroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and ſtrook ſo great a terror into all the Countrey, that had not *Annibals* deſign carried him to *Italie*, the State of *Carthage* had been abſolute Maſters of it without further oppoſition or reſiſtance. But *Annibal* having taken all his old Souldiers with him; and thoſe that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts ſufficient to go through with it; they loſt it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in leſs time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The laſt that here commanded

for

for the State of *Carthage* was *Asdrubal* the Son of *Gisco*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Island of *Gades*, left that also to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deserted, it forthwith yeelded to the *Romans*; the *Carthaginians* after this never possessing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Masters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ulteriorem*, lying from the River *Iberus* Westward, because the furthest off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the said River, and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally subdued it, they divided it into three main parts, 1 *Tarraconensem*, so called of *Tarragon* the chief City of it, containing *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2 *Baticam*, so named of the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it, comprehending the now Countreys of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3 *Lusitanicam*, denominated from the *Lusitani*, the most potent people of that part, differing in extent from the present *Portugal*, (though this called *Lusitania* by our modern *Latinists*.) For the old *Lusitania* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and some part of the two *Castiles*; and no more of the present *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana* being laid to *Batica*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconensis*. Of these three parts, *Batica* was in most esteem under the *Romans*; insomuch, that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the rights and priviledges of the *Latins*. The reason thereof was, that the people of this Countrey having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the rest, for a long time resisted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in *Spain*, *Scipio Africanus* laid the first foundation of the *Roman* Government in this Countrey: which building, though undertaken by many excellent work-men, was not throughly finished till the daies of *Augustus*, being almost 200 years since the first attempt. He roofed it, strengthned it, and made it a principal building in his *Monarchical* City. For the old *Incolæ* were exceeding valiant and resolute, sometimes disgracing, sometimes endangering the *Roman* reputation; insomuch that there were more Commanders lost in those wars, than any other. At first the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*: then perished both the *Scipio*'s, *viz.* The Father and the Unkle of *Africanus*. *Viriathus* held war for 20 years, *Numantia* held out 15, the *Astures* remained unconquered till the time of *Augustus*; and also resolutely maintained their particular liberties, *ut dijudicari non poterat* (saith *Paterculus*) Hispanis *an* Romanis *plus esset in armis roboris, & uter populus alteri pariturus foret*. Such manner of men were the ancient *Spaniards* under *Rome*, and *Carthage*; the first people of the Continent of *Europe* (excepting *Italie*) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire; and the last that wholly were subdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the last, and brought under the form of a Province by *Augustus Cæsar*; it was governed by their *Proconsuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magistrates, according to the division before-mentioned. But *Constantine* the *Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying some part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Diocese* of the Empire; made subject to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Gaul*, by whose *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into these seven Provinces, *viz.* 1 *Batica*, 2 *Lusitania*, bounded as before; 3 *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicia*, *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the greatest part of the *Old Castile*, and so much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*. 4 *Carthaginensis*, so called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Castile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia*, with part of the *Old Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Andalusia*. 5 *Tarraconensis*, embracing all *Biscay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogn*, with the greatest part of the Kingdome of *Aragon*. 6 *Tingitana*, so called from *Tingis* (now *Tangier*) a Town of *Africk*, on the opposite Coast, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*: And 7 the *Province of the Islands*, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebusa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which seven Provinces, the three first were *Consulares*, governed by *Proconsuls*; the other four from their being under *Presidents* were called *Presidiarie*. Being thus setled, it continued a *Roman* Diocese till about the year 400, when it was subdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, atchievements, and final Period, we will speak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themselves: invited thereunto, partly to eschew the ill neighbourhood of the *Gothes*, who began to grow too potent for them; and partly to satisfie the desires of *Boniface*, Governor of that Province for the Emperor of *Valentinian* the third, against whom he had then rebelled, and wanted such support to make good his action. These being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long subsist; but were finally broken by the *Gothes*, and afterwards dispossessed of their Kingdoms also, (though suffered to remain in the Countrey still) as shall be shewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Gothes* (of whom we shall speak more in *Sweden*, and have already made some mention when we were in *Gaul*) having sacked *Rome*, and wasted *Italie*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were bought out of that Countrey by the gift of *Narbonensis* in *Gaul*, and so much of *Tarraconensis* in *Spain* as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the composition being ratified by the mariage of *Athaulfus*, the Successor of *Alaric*, with *Placidia*, Sister to *Honorius* the Western Emperor. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note (for *Sigeric* who interposed reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Successor of *Athaulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania* and *Carthaginensis*, added those Provinces also unto his Estates, and confined the *Vandals* within *Batica*; was the first of the *Gothes* which entituled himself King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. By their Agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep those Provinces for the use of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations: but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania*, by the prowess of *Vallia*, and the *Swevi* out of *Batica*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Torisimund*; they fell upon the *Romans* themselves; whom *Euricus*

cus and his Succeſſors, by little and little, diſpoſſeſſed of all *Spain* on this ſide of the Straights. *Tingitana* held out longeſt, as furtheſt off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of the *Gothes*; whoſe Souldiers being ſet upon by the *Romans* on the Lords day, or Sunday, refuſed to fight in their own defence; and were ſo miſerably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry newes of the overthrow. So early did the Superſtition of a *Lords day Sabbath* prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the ſhort time of his Reign, *An.* 642. made the Conqueſt abſolute.

Let us next look upon the *Gothes* as Lords of *Spain*, and we ſhall find them to have been *Chriſtians* in Religion; and ſomewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and converſation with the *Græcians*, before they turned their Forces into the Weſt. Their company more deſired in this reſpect than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But theſe *Gothes* being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievouſly afflict and perſecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildis* as ſome call him) the laſt Patron and Aſſertor of it. Their Government *Monarchicall*, but the Kings *Elective*, (though for the moſt part they kept themſelves to the Regall Family:) an Excommunication being laid on ſuch, by the fifth Councell of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that eſtabliſhed courſe. Their Rule of Government was *Cuſtom*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Lawes being firſt made by *Euricus*, which the enſuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What elſe concerneth them, we ſhall find in the cloſe of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*.

A.	*C.*	
420	1	*Vallia* 20.
440	2	*Theodoric* 13.
453	3	*Thoriſmund* 3.
457	4	*Theodoric* II. 14.
470	5	*Henry*, or *Euricus* 18.
493	6	*Alaricus* 21.
513	7	*Genſalaric* 3.
511	8	*Amalaric* 11.
526	9	*Theudes* 18.
543	10	*Theodogiſdus* 3.
546	11	*Agila* 5.
551	12	*Athanagildus* 14.
565	13	*Luiba* 3.
568	14	*Leonigild* 18.
586	15	*Richared* 15.
601	16	*Luiba* II. 2.
603	17	*Victoricus* 7.
610	18	*Gundebaris* 20.
630	19	*Siſebulus* 9.
639	20	*Richared* II. 2.
641	21	*Suintiſſa* 3.
644	22	*Siſeranda* 7.
651	23	*Suintilla* II. 4.
655	24	*Tulgas* 2.
657	25	*Vidiſuindus* 10.
667	26	*Receſuind* 13.
680	27	*Bamba* 9.
689	28	*Ering* 7.
696	29	*Egypea* 7.
703	30	*Vitiza* 13.
716	31	*Roderick*, the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, elected to the prejudice of the Sonnes of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruine and overthrow of the Kingdome.

For though the Kingdome went for the moſt part by Election, and that they had reſpect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland*, and *Bohemia*) very few *interlopers* being here admitted: yet ſome there were, who either by their merit, or ſome opportunity, got the poſſeſſion of the Kingdome; though not at all relating to the Royall Family. Of which kind were *Thendes*, an *Oſtro-Goth*, ſometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdome, in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudegiſolus*, Nephew to *Totilas*, one of the Succeſſors to *Theodoric*. The reſt of principall note were, 1 *Theodoric* the firſt, ſlain in the battell neer *Tholouze* againſt *Attila* the *Hunn*; in defence of his own Countreys, and the *Roman* Empire. 2 *Theodorick* the ſecond, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Bætica*; and 3 *Leonigild* or *Leutigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* alſo. 4 *Reccaredus* the firſt, who firſt embraced the *Catholick* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianiſme*; and for that cauſe firſt honoured with the title of the *Catholick* King; afterwards reſumed by *Alfonſus* the firſt King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5 *Euricus*, or *Henricus* as ſome call him, as remarkable for *Civil Polity*, as *Reccaredus* for piety: as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legiſlator* of this people, not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain cuſtomes, or at the pleaſure of ſuch Officers as the Kings ſet over them. 5 *Suintilla*, Son of *Reccaredus* the ſecond, who having in the ſhort time of his Reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana*, *An.* 642. was the firſt Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana* (though on the other ſide of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, as before was ſaid. And of this Province was *Iulianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the ſonnes of *Vitiza*, ſtomacked his advancement to the Kingdome; and therby got the greater portion of the Kings diſpleaſure. Who ſending him upon an Embaſſie to the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the mean time defloured his Daughter named *Cana*: which the Father took in ſuch indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongſt whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This requeſt they performed under the conduct of *Muſa* and *Tariffe*; and having made a full Conqueſt, ſubjected it to the great *Caliphs* or *Mahometan* Emperours. It is recorded in a *MS.* Hiſtory of the *Saracens*, that at the firſt coming of *Tariffe* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Countrey being willingly taken Priſoner, fell down at his feet, kiſſed them, and told him, that ſhe had heard her Father (who was lettered) ſay, that *Spain* ſhould be conquered by a people whoſe Generall ſhould have a Mole on his right ſhoulder,

and

Navarre. and in whom one of his hands ſhould be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers againſt the next encounter, uncloathed himſelf, and ſh ewed the mark; which ſo encouraged them that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe. *Tariff* had 30000 Horſe, and 180000 Foot. The battell continued ſeven dayes together, from morning to night; at laſt the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepheard; with whom the King, after the diſcomfiture, had changed clothes. It is written alſo in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of thoſe *Saracens*, King *Roderick* upon hope of ſome treaſure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched: but found nothing but Pictures which reſembled the *Moors*; with a Propheſie, that whenſoever the Palace was there opened, the people there reſembled ſhould overcome *Spain*; and ſo it happened, *An.* 724.

The *Moors*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treaſon of *Iulian*, (who having ſeen the miſerable death of his wife and children, was ſtarved in Priſon by the *Africans*) permitted the free uſe of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants; leſt they ſeeking new dwellings for the liberty of Conſcience, ſhould leave their native Soyl deſolate. The *Moors* finiſhed their conqueſt in five years, ſay ſome; others in two, and ſome again in eight Moneths. To keep the new conquered Countrey in ſubjection, no way was ſo convenient as to plant Colonies: but the *Moriſco* women would not abandon their old ſeats. Hereupon *Muſa* and *Tariffe*, by gifts, pardons, and perſwaſions, drew many *Chriſtian* women to forſake their *Religion*, whom they maryed to the Souldiers. Not long after *Vlidor Vlit*, the great *Caliph*, ſent over about 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jewes*; aſſigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great immunities, and upon ſmall rents. Theſe politick courſes notwithſtanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the ſole Soveraignty herein: for the *Chriſtians* having now recovered breath, choſe themſelves Kings; and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petit Royalties: So that at laſt *Spain* fell into a fifteenfold diviſion, *viz.* into the Kingdomes and proprietary Eſtates of 1 *Navarre*, 2 *Biſcay*, and 3 *Guiprſcoa*, 4 *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5 *Gallicia*, 6 *Corduba*, 7 *Granada*, 8 *Murcia*, 9 *Toledo*, 10 *Caſtile*, 11 *Portugall* and the Members of it, 12 *Valentia*, 13 *Catalonia*, 14 the Kingdome of *Majorca*, and 15 that of *Aragon*: not to ſay any thing of the petit Kingdoms of *Iaen*, *Algozire*, and *Sevill*, beſides others of like nature to them; erected by the factious and divided *Moors*, but of ſhort continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Caſtile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Eſtates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biſcay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Caſtile*; *Portugall* with *Algarve*, and the Iſles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it ſelf; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Aragon*.

1 *NAVARRE.*

NAVARRE, the ſecond Kingdome for antiquity in *Spain*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdome of *France*; on the Weſt firſt with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after with a little River falling into it, neer *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Caſtile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuſcoa*; and the South, with the River *Aragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent antiently than it is at the preſent, the little Province of *Alara*, lying towards *Guipuſcoa*, and the whole Countrey of *Rioye* (on the Weſt ſide of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned Members of *Caſtile*, by *Alfonſo*: Howſoever, we ſhall look upon it in its antient bounds, and ſhall accordingly take notice of the Cities and chief Towns thereof.

It was called at firſt the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, ſituate in the moſt inacceſſible part of the *Pyrenees*; and therefore choſe by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King hereof, for the ſeat of his Kingdome, as moſt defenſible againſt the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, ſignifying a plain and champagn Countrey: firſt uſed by *Inigo Ariſta* the ſixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the hill Countreys, and betook himſelf unto the *Plains*; or from *Navarriere*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Countrey though environed on all ſides with mighty Mountains, yet of it ſelf is ſaid to be reaſonably fruitfull; well watered, and for the moſt part plain and level, as before is ſaid. It taketh up ſome parts of both ſides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spaniſh* ſide being fertile, and adorned with trees; the *French* ſide generally very bare, and naked. That on the *Spaniſh* ſide, and on the ſummits of the Mountains, now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the *French* ſide, now called *Baſe*, or *Low Navarre*, eſtimated at a ſixth part of the whole Kingdome, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13th, to the Realm of *France*, *An.* 1620.

Places of moſt importance in *Baſe Navarre*, 1 S. *Palai*, formerly the place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdome; but in the year 1620. removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Baſe Navarre*, which had before been governed as diſtinct Eſtates, from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2 *Navarreux*, a Town of great importance, ſeven Leagues from *Pau*; well fortified, and as well munitioned: King *Lewis* the 13th, finding in it at his coming thither, *An.* 1620. no fewer than 45 Canons all mounted, beſides 40 Culverins and ſmaller Peeces;

Peeces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals anſwerable thereunto. 3 *Pied de Port*, or S. *John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France*, againſt which formerly a Peece of eſpeciall ſtrength. 4 *Roncevallis* or *Roncevaux*, ſituate in the moſt pleaſant Countrey of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a ſmall but delightfull Valley: famous for the great battel fought neer unto it, in the Straights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this Valley; betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which battel, by the treachery of *Gavelon*, 40000 of the *French* were ſlain; and amongſt them *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*, of whom ſo many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*, the firſt Author of which Fables paſſeth under the name of Archb. *Turpin*, ſaid to be one of thoſe twelve *Peers*; who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof the noble Acts of that puiſſant Emperour, and his gallant Followers, are much obſcured and blemiſhed by thoſe very pens, which in the times ſucceeding did employ themſelves to advance the ſame. *Navarre.*

Of ſpeciall note in *High Navarre*, 1 *Victoria*, firſt built or rather reedified by *Sancho* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, *An.* 1181. by whom thus named in memory of ſome victory obtained thereabouts, againſt the *Caſtilians*, whereas before his time it was called *Gaſteiz*: as in like caſe there had been many Towns built by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victorie*, which we ſhall meet withall hereafter. Situate in the place of the antient *Vellica*, but graced with the priviledges, and name of a City by *John* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, after it came under the command of that Crown, *An.* 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongſt the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An.* 1200, by *Alphonſo* the 4th, of *Caſtile*, it was in the yeer 1332 incorporated into that Crown as a part thereof; as were ſome other Towns and Members of this Kingdome alſo, won by the *Caſtilians*. 2 *Viane*, on the Eaſt of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Legragno* on the other ſide of the water (from which diſtant not above a League) as the Frontier Town againſt *Caſtile*. Of greateſt note for being the title of the eldeſt Sonne of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An.* 1421. in imitation of the like cuſtom in *Caſtile*, where the eldeſt Sonne was called Prince of the *Aſturias*: but not leſſe memorable for the death of *Caſar Borgia*, ſlain neer unto it in an ambuſh, after all his wanderings, and interchangableneſs of fortunes. For being ſonne of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquiſhing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France* created Duke of *Valeatinois* in the Province of *Danlphine*: during his Fathers life, he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Eſtates which antiently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*; but after his deceaſe impriſoned by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, who was jealous (not without good cauſe) of his plots and practiſes. From *Rome* he ſtole unto *Gonſalvo*, then Vice-roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholique*; who notwithſtanding his ſafe conduct, ſent him priſoner to *Spain*: but breaking Priſon (deſperately ſliding down a window) he came at laſt into this Kingdome, and was here ſlain in an *Ambuſcado*, as before was ſaid. So many times was *Machiavels* great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers. 3 *Sobrarbe*, in the moſt inacceſſible parts of the *Pyrenees*, for that cauſe made the firſt ſeat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a diſtinct Kingdome from *Navarre* by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonſales* his youngeſt Sonne: after whoſe death (not having iſſue) it was ſeized on by *Don Raymir* the firſt King of *Aragon*, and made a Member of that Crown. 4 *Sangueſſa*, a Town of a large Territory and juriſdiction, priviledged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Eſtates, and a ſtrong Fortreſſe on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cauſe formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it ſometimes in their hands. 5 *Pampelun*, in the *Champagn* Countrey, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the *Metropolis* of this Kingdome; and the ſeat Royall of its Kings ſince the Conqueſt of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Ariſta* the ſixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts, that is to ſay *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having ſeverall Officers and Juriſdictions (the cauſe of many quarrels and much blood amongſt them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magiſtrate, by King *Charles* the third. An antient Town firſt built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars againſt *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeiopolis* by our modern *Latiniſts*; but *Pampelon*, more neer unto the preſent name, by *Ptolemy* and *Antoninus*: now an *Epiſcopall* See, the ſeat of the Vice-roy, and one of the beſt fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6 *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuſcoa*, a place of principall importance: the Caſtle whereof was one of the laſt peeces on this ſide of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Albret* againſt *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, in his ſurprizall of this Kingdome. 7 *Montreal*. 8 *Olite*, and 9 *Tafalla*; all yeelded with the reſt of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: Who had the happineſs to ſubdue this Realm to the Crown of *Caſtile*, as his Sonne *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugall*. 10 *Tudele*, on the Eaſtern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the *Moors*, by a ſurprize by *Rotrou* Earl of *Perch*, (a *French* man) coming with many other noble perſons to the aid of *Alfonſo*, K. of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the ſiege of *Saragoſſa*, *An.* 1110. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his ſervice; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the mariage of *Magdalen* Daughter of Earl *Rotrou*, with *Garcia* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, Succeſſor in that Kingdom to the ſaid *Alfonſo*. Of late times honoured with a little Univerſity there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, on his ſurprizall of that Kingdome. 11 *Calahorra*, ſituate on the Weſtern banks of the *Iberus* or *Ibro*, by *Ptolemy* called *Calagorina*, by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*, now a Biſhops See; taken from *Raimir* the ſecond King of *Navarre*, by *Alfonſo* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, and made a Member of that Kingdome.

As

Navarre. As also was 12 *Logrogno*, in the Countrey of *Rioye*, on the same banks of the River also. 13 *Estella*, bordering on *Castile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eastern side of the River) by *Lewis* the 11th, of *France*; made Umpire for the atonement of some differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Castile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to satisfie that King for his charges in the former quarrell.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vascones*, possessed not only of this tract, but of *Biscay* and *Guipuscoa* also, from them denominated: who passing over the *Pyrenees*, made themselves masters of that Province which is now called *Gascoigne* by the *French*, and *Vascovia* in *Latin*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximines*, a noble man of the *Gothish* blood: who with 600 men only began to make head against the *Saracens*, *An.* 716. first under the title of the Kingdome of *Sobrarbe*, and after that of *Navarre*; for the reasons formerly delivered. The sixth from *Garcia Ximines*, was *Inigo* surnamed *Arista*, (so named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Sonne of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gascoigne*; elected to this Kingdom, on the death of *Ximines* the fifth King, *An.* 840. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collaterall Line) of *Don Garcia Ximines* the first King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of *Pampelune* is ascribed most generally, though *Turquet* in his History referre the same to *Garcia* the second King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors* till forced from them by the prowess of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who possessed himself of it. To this King also is ascribed the first beginning of the ceremony of Crowning and Anointing, after the manner used by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provinciall* cited in the *titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth no such honour to these petit Kings; communicated only, in that time, to the Emperours of the East and West, the Kings of *Hierusalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicil*. And therefore probable it is, that the custom came into *Navarre* with the house of *Champagne*. Other Kings of most note in the course of Story were, 3 *Fortun*, the second, Nephew of *Inigo Arista*, by his sonne *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Estate the Earldom of *Aragon*, descended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Asnarius*, or *Aznario*, the last Earl thereof. 4 *Sancho* the fourth, surnamed the *Great*, who first assumed unto himself the title of King of *Spain*: his Predecessors using no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* or *Navarre*; his Cotemporaries calling themselves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*, according to the names of their severall Kingdoms; the *Gothes*, Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and so the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelone*, at their first erection by the *French*, entituled themselves the Dukes and Marquesses of *Spain*, as if all were theirs; with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had some good ground for it, as being by inheritance possessed of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; of *Castile*, in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Elvira*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the last Earl thereof; and by conquest of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: so that almost all *Spain*, not possessed by the *Moors*, was become his own. Had these Estates remained entire to his Successors, the *Moors* no doubt had sooner lost their hold in *Spain*; and the whole Continent being brought under the obedience of one sole Monarch. But this King either loving all his sonnes alike, or else offended with the eldest, who most unnaturally had accused his own innocent mother of the crime of Adultery; divided his Estates amongst them: giving to *Garcia* his eldest Sonne, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by conquest; to *Ferdinand* his second Sonne, *Castile*; and *Aragon* to his base Sonne *Raymir*; both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonsales* his third sonne, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*, then first dismembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick course, his Sonnes being all of equall title and Estates, in stead of opposing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the quarrell as a Legacy to their severall Successors: which mischief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings; or left the rest as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5 *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his sonne *Garcia de Nagera*, unnaturally and traiterously slain by his Brother *Raymir*. After whose death and the short interposition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was seized on by the Kings of *Aragon*: three of which, viz. *Sancho Ramyres*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonso*, did severally and successively enjoy the same. 6 *Alfonso* the last of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, surnamed the *Warriour*, who for a time was King of *Castile* also in right of *Urraca* his Wife: in which respect he took unto himself the title of *Emperour* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged so by others. But finally dying without issue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond* called the *Monk* succeeding in *Aragon*; the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir* Lord of *Monsen*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calahorra* his younger Sonne. 7 *Sancho* the 8th. the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Sonne *Sancho* the 7th, surnamed the *Wise*, the last King of the masculine and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*: the Kingdome after his decease passing by the Females, or Heirs generall, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and so unto the Kings of *France*, the Houses of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albret*, and *Vendosme*; but never holding above three descents in any one Family. By means whereof, these Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moors*, by the interposition of the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings and Adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spanish* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the person of *Gaston* of *Foix*; as those of *Armaignac* and *Albret* in the person of *John* Earl of *Albret*; all lying together on the other side of the *Pyrenees*, all added to this Crown by mariage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Estate than *Navarre* it self; inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to say any thing of the accession of the County Palatine of *Champagne*, exchanged

exchanged afterwards for some Lands in the County of *La March* in *Limosin*; or of the Earldoms of *Navarre*, *Eureux*, and the Dutchy of *Vendosme*; as lying further off, and of lesse importance: Nor of the great Kingdom of *France* now herewith incorporate, as to the person of the King, though not in the possession of this Kingdom also. With so much judgement and successe did the ensuing Kings (not otherwise able to enlarge their Territories) bestow their Daughters; that the *Distaffe* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8 *Charles*, the second of that name, and the 30th King of *Navarre*, whom I mention not for any glorious Actions atchieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the strangeness and hideousness of his death. He was a Prince much given to *voluptuousness*, and sensuall pleasures; which so wasted his spirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benummed joints, he was bound and sewed up naked in a sheet, steeped in boyling *Aqua-vitæ*. The *Chirurgion* having made an end of sewing the sheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the threed; took a wax-candle that stood lighted by him: but the flame running down by the threed, caught hold on the sheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vitæ*) burned with that vehemency, that the miserable King ended his dayes in the fire. 9 *John* of *Aragon*, the second sonne of *Ferdinand* the first, in the life of his Brother *Alfonso* was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the 3d, and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* also. And though his Queen dyed long before him, in whose right he reigned, yet he kept possession of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning 54 years in all) notwithstanding the opposition made against him by *Charls* Prince of *Viana*, his only Sonne by that mariage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquished, imprisoned, and at last poysoned. 10 *John*, Earl of *Albret* in *Gascoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whose reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was seized on by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, Sonne of the said *John* King of *Aragon*, and *Navarre*, by a second Wife. The manner of it we shall relate with more particulars, when we have summed the whole Succession of

The Kings of *Navarre*.

A. Ch.		
716	1	*Garcia Ximines*. 42.
758	2	*Garcia* II. Son of *Garcia Ximines*.
822	3	*Fortunio*. 13.
815	4	*Sancho Garcia*. 17.
832	5	*Ximines Garcia*, the last of the direct Line of *Garcia Ximines*.
		An *Interregnum* of 4 years.
844	6	*Inigo* surnamed *Arista*, Earl of *Begorre* the next Heir Male of the house of *Garcia Ximines*. 23.
867	7	*Garcia* III. surnamed *Inigo*. 18.
885	8	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*. 16.
901	9	*Sancho* II. called *Abarca*, Brother of *Fortunio* the second. 19.
920	10	*Garcia* IV. 49.
969	11	*Sancho* III. 24.
993	12	*Garcia* V. surnamed the *Trembler*.
1000	13	*Sancho* IV. surnamed the *Great*, of whom sufficiently before.
1034	14	*Garcias* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldest Sonne of *Sancho*. 20.
1054	15	*Sancho* V. slain by
1074	16	*Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the fifth, dispossessed by
1076	17	*Sancho* VI. surnamed *Ramires*, King of *Aragon*. 18.
1094	18	*Pedro* King of *Aragon*.
1104	19	*Alfonso*, called the *Warriour*, the last of the Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*.
1134	20	*Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera*. 16.
1150	21	*Sancho* VII. surnamed the *Wise*.
1194	22	*Sancho* VIII. the last of the Male issue of *Garcia Ximines*. 40.
1234	23	*Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Sonne of the Lady *Blanch*, Sister and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th. 19.
1253	24	*Theobald* II. Earl of *Champagne*. 18.
1271	25	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald* the 2d. 3.
1274	26	*Joane*, the Daughter of *Henry*, maryed to *Philip* the *Fair* of *France*. 31.
1305	27	*Lewis Hutin*, King of *France*. 10.
1315	28	*Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*. 5.
1320	29	*Charles* the *Fair* King of *France*. 8.
1328	30	*Joane* II. Queen of *Navarre* the Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*. *Philip* II. Earl of *Eureux*.
1349	31	*Charles* II. Sonne of *Joane* and *Philip* of *Eureux*. 37.
1386	32	*Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux*. 39.
1425	33	*John*, Prince of *Aragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Aragon* also; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daughter of *Charles* the 3d. 54.
1479	34	*Leonora*, Daughter of *John* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaston* Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 dayes only.
1479	35	*Francis Phœbus*, Grandchild of *Leonora* and *Gaston* of *Foix*, by their Son *Gaston*, Prince of *Viane*.
1483	36	*Catharine* Sister of *Francis*. *John* Earl of *Albret*.
1517	37	*Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Sonne of *John* and *Catharine*.
1556	38	*Joane* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret*. *Antony* of *Burbon*, Duke of *Vendosme* in *France*.
2572	39	*Henry* III. the Sonne of *Antonie* and *Joane*, after the death of *Henry* the third of *France*, succeeded also in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the 4th.
1610	40	*Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*.
	41	*Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV. of *France*, now living, with

whom remain the rights, but not the possession of this Kingdom. For in the Reign of *Catharine*

Biſcay & Guipuſcoa.

and *John* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moors*, and ſurprized this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and deſtitute of means to make the ſmalleſt reſiſtance *An.* 1512. The pretended reaſon of this ſurprizall, was an *Excommunication* laid on theſe Princes by the *Pope*, of which this King took upon him to be *Executioner*: but the true cauſe was an antient deſire which this King had to poſſeſſe this frontire Kingdome; it being a ſtrong Bulwark againſt *France*. It hapned then that *Lewis* the 12th, having incurred the diſpleaſure of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, was together with all his adherents, excommunicated; and his, and their Eſtates given to ſuch as could or would ſubdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were at this time both *French* Subjects: he in reſpect of *Albret*, his paternall inheritance, and ſhe of her Eſtates of *Foix* and *Bearn*; and therefore ſided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we ſaid) levyed an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moors*, turneth upon the *French* King; and demanded of theſe Princes, not only a free paſſage through their Countrey, but alſo to have certain places of ſtrength put into his hands, for his better aſſurance. Theſe unjuſt demands the *Navarroys* denyed. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greateſt part of which he took without a blow given: the *French* King being as backward in affording due aſſiſtance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* netled with this loſſe, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniard* ſtill keepeth thoſe parts of it which lie on that ſide of the *Pyrenees*; leaving the reſt, which lyeth on the *French* ſide of thoſe Mountains (being about a ſixth part of the whole) to the Deſcendents of thoſe Princes whom he had diſſeized.

The Arms of *Navarre* are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed *Or*. Which Carbuncle having a reſemblance unto chains of Gold, is ſaid to have been firſt taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had firſt broken the Fortification made with chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Meramomolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*: before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Croſſe *Argent*.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the ſixth; their Blazen a Pot of *Lillies* with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it; their duty to defend the Faith, and dayly to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

3 *BISCAY* and *GUIPUSCOA*.

OF theſe two we ſhall ſpeak together, becauſe of the ſimilitude and reſemblances which are between them, both in the Countrey and the people; the names being alſo forged from the ſame Originall: Bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Leon*; on the Eaſt with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guienne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre*, and old *Caſtile*. Thus named from the *Vaſcones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdome of *Navarre* in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people in the year 640. or thereabouts, paſſed over unto the further ſide of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up thoſe parts of *France*, ſince from them called *Gaſcoigne*. The reſt continuing in their old Seats, or ſpreading more into the Weſt towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to thoſe parts the name of *Guipuſcoa*, and *Viſcaia*, (for ſo the *Spaniards* write and ſpeak it) now by us called *Biſcay*: their language alſo (which is much different from the reſt of *Spain*) being called the *Baſquiſh*, more neer in ſound to that of *Vaſcons*, the Originall name.

The whole Countrey is very Mountainous and Woody, yeelding but little ſtore of Corn, and leſſe of Wine: the defect of the firſt being ſupplyed from other Countreys, of the laſt by *Sider*; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from thoſe Woods they draw continually great ſtore of Timber, for the building of Ships: and from thoſe Hills there do not only iſſue pleaſant Rivers, (ſome ſay 150 in number) of which *Iberus* and *Duero* are ſaid to be two; but ſuch infinite ſtore of *Iron* and *Steel*, that no Countrey yeeldeth better or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cauſe, the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occaſion unto *Pliny* to report, that there was in this Countrey, a whole Mountain of Iron: *In Maritima Cantabriæ parte Mons præruptè altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia eſt*, lib. 34. cap. 45. Nor they only furniſh all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into Inſtruments of War, and others for domeſtick uſes; but with Timber alſo for their ſhipping: with which ſo ſtored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Countrey only.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Eaſtern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the Weſtern bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrico* ſtanding in the confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the ſame Originall, though by ſeverall means united to the Crown of *Caſtile*; both ſpeak the ſame *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Baſquiſh*; the people of both being more rude, and ſimple, than the reſt of *Spain*; but ſtanding much upon their Gentry, according to the cuſtom of moſt mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that thoſe of *Guipuſcoa*, by reaſon of their traffique and commerce with other Countreys, ſavour a little more of *Chriſtianity*, than the others do: in which the common *Biſcains* are ſo far to ſeek, that though they have ſome generall notions of God and *CHRIST*, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable meaſure. And thus a view being taken of thoſe generall notions in which both Countreys are concerned; let us next look upon them in their ſeverall and diſtinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And firſt for *GUIPUSCOA*. The places of chiefeſt note in it are, 1 S. *Sebaſtians*,

(*Don*

(*Don Baſtia*, as the Vnlgar call it) a noted and well-traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurvineo*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two ſtrong Caſtles founded upon the oppoſite Rocks; and honoured with an *Epiſcopall* See. 2 *Toloſa* (commonly called *Toloſette*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria*, and *Duarzo*. 3 *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Black-ſmiths*, who do attend their Hammers with ſuch endleſſe diligence, that *Vulcans* Forge may ſeem to be tranſlated hither out of the Iſle of *Lemnos*. 4 *Guetaria*, beautified with a ſafe and convenient Haven, defended from all winds by a little Iſland lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebaſtian del Cano* that famous Pilot, the firſt that ſailed about the World; *Magellanus* who went chief in that expedition periſhing in the Action. 4 *Fonterabia* at the mouth of the River *Vidoſa*, which divides this Countray from *Guyenne* in *France*; for that cauſe very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned. 6 *Renteria*, ſituate neer a Brook abounding with moſt excellent Salmons. 7 *Montrico* at the mouth of the River *Denia*, the fartheſt Town hereof on the edge of *Biſcay*. Moſt of which ſtand upon or neer the Sea; there being but few Towns of note within the Land (though ſtore enough of ſcattered Villages, as in *Biſcay* alſo) becauſe of the roughneſſe of the Mountains. *Biſcay.*

As for the Fortunes and affairs of this part of the Countrey, after the ſubverſion of the Kingdome of the *Gothes* in *Spain* (for till that time they followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of this continent) it was at firſt a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wreſted from King *Sancho* the ſixth, by *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1079. by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biſcay*. Reſtored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon ſome following Capitulations; it ſo continued till the year 1200. when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Caſtile*, they offered themſelves to the ſubjection of *Alfonſo* the fourth; who without ſo much as one blow ſtrook, became Maſter of all the Countrey, and left it ſetled and confirmed unto his Succeſſors, as it hath ever ſince remained.

2 For *BISCAY* next, the Principall Towns thereof are, 1 *Larrabecua*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times, in the chief Church whereof the Kings of *Spain*, as Lords of *Biſcay*, uſe to be ſolemnly inaugurated; here making Oath to maintain the liberties of the Countrey, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2 *Berneo*, an old Town alſo, and amply priviledged; the franchiſes whereof the Kings are ſolemnly ſworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of S. *Euphemia*. 3 *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of theſe Countreys. Then of a later date we have 4 *Bilbo*, or *Bilbao*, ſituate ſome two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep *Creek* thereof; on the other ſide ſurrounded with Mountains; built out of the ruines of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Haro* Lord of *Biſcay*, *An.* 1300. and ſituate the beſt of any Town in this Countrey for plenty of Victuals, eſpecially for fleſh and moſt excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all ſorts of weapons (their chiefeſt Manufacture) the *Bilbo* Blades in ſuch requeſt being brought from hence. Beſides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal alſo in Wooll, by the vent of which Commodities they are grown ſo wealthy, that here are many private Merchants, which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5 *Laredo*, a Sea Town alſo with a capable Port: The landing place of *Charles* the 5th, when he had relinquiſhed the Empire, and all his other Eſtates, with reſolution to ſpend the reſt of his life in *Spain*, in a private manner: it being obſervable, that he was no ſooner landed, but the Admirall Shippe in which he came, and the greateſt part of the Navy which came with him, periſhed in the Haven, to ſhew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this reſolution. 6 *Portugaletre*, commodiouſly ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houſes; and ſerveth them exceeding fitly, for the lading and unlading of their commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this tract before the coming in of the *Vaſcones*, were the *Cantabri*; theſe ſubdivided into the ſeverall Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Cariſti*, the *Antrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly ſo called. From theſe deſcend the modern *Biſcains*. An Argument whereof may be their Language, different from the reſt of *Spain*, and ſaid by ſome to have continued in this Countrey ever ſince the confuſion at *Babel*. And though they over-ſhoot themſelves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedegree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the antient Language of *Spain*, is more than probable: becauſe this people have ever continued without any mixture of forrein Nations, as being never throughly ſubdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Gothes*, or *Moors*; and ſo they remained, as in their liberties not Maſtered, ſo in their language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*; the Tongue of the old *Britans*, in our *Wales*; and the antient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Countrey. And though thoſe of *Guipuſcoa* ſpeak the ſame Language alſo, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words (by reaſon of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with ſtrangers) than it is in *Biſcay*; where the old naturall Language, whatſoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biſcains* differ from the reſt of *Spain* in *language* only, but in *Cuſtoms* alſo, four of which I will here ſet down as a light to the reſt. Firſt they account themſelves free from taxes, and contributions to the Kings of *Spain*; yeelding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purſes*. And when any of the *Spaniſh* Kings in their *Progreſſes*, come to the Frontiers of this Countrey, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entreth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him ſome few ſmall Braſs pieces (*Maravides* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leathern Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance; but withall they tell him, that he muſt not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey.

Biſcay. Secondly, they admit no Biſhops to come amongſt them: and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* came in *Progreſs* hither, accompanyed amongſt others by the Biſhop of *Pampelune*; the people aroſe in Arms, drave back the *Biſhop*, and gathering all the duſt on which they thought he had trodden, caſt it into the Sea. Which averſneſſe unto Biſhops, as they firſt took up in all probability, on ſome hard uſage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and ſtill retain it out of a ſtubbornneſſe of nature, moſt peculiar to them: ſo poſſible enough it is, that the want of Biſhops, and of Epiſcopall *Viſitations* amongſt the *Biſcains*, is not the leaſt cauſe of that ignorance and rudeneſſe (ſpoken of before) which is found amongſt them. Thirdly, they allow not any Prieſts to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it unpoſſible for them to keep their Wives unto themſelves, if the *Curate* hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, the Women at all meetings do firſt taſt of the Cup, and ſo diſpoſe of it to the men; which Cuſtom they have had amongſt them ever ſince *Ogne*, the Counteſſe of *Caſtile*, attempted to have poyſoned her Sonne *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Countrey againſt the *Romans*, when the reſidue of *Spain* was ſubdued; and were at laſt, not without great effuſion of blood, and manifeſt tokens of manly reſolution, and heroick ſpirits on their parts, vanquiſhed by the darling of Fortune, *Auguſtus*. Such hilly and mountainous people are alwayes the laſt that are conquered, and the firſt that ſtand on their own guard: as beſides theſe *Biſcains*, the *Navarrois* and *Aſturians*, here in *Spain*, in reſpect of the *Moors*; and our *Britans*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a ſharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occaſion good and able men; or that the Forts of Natures own building are not ſo eaſily wonne, as defended; or that the unpleaſantneſs of the Countrey, and unfruitfulneſs of the ſoyl, yeeld no occaſion to ſtrangers, to deſire and adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at laſt, they were firſt caſt into the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; and ſo continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Gothes*, but reſigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the reſt of that Province. Nor loſt they any thing of their antient and naturall courage, by the intermixture of the *Vaſcons*; continuing ſtill good Souldiers both for Sea and Land: a ſtubborn, fierce, and couragious people; impatient of ſervitude, and not eaſie to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The laſt of all the *Spaniards* that ſubmitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting thoſe of the *Aſturias* never conquered by them) and one of the firſt Provinces which ſhook off that yoak: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, deſcended of the blood Royall of *Scotland*, *An.* 87. made upon that good ſervice the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*. After this they continued a free and diſtinct Eſtate under their own *Proprietary* Lords and Princes of the noble Family of *Haro*; til that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Ieanne*, the right heir of it, *An.* 1358. From which *Donna Ieanne*, the eldeſt Daughter maryed to *Ferdinand* the younger Sonne of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, iſſued the Lady *Ieanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the ſecond, and Mother of *John* the firſt, both Kings of *Caſtile*: by which laſt, this Countrey was united to that Crown for ever, *An.* 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Eſtate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biſcay*.

870 1 *Soria*, the ſonne of *Lope* of *Biſcay*, but Nephew by the Mothers ſide to a King of *Scotland*, the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*.
2 *Manſo Lopes* the ſonne of *Soria*.
3 *Inigo* the Deaf, ſonne of *Manſo Lopes*.
4 *Lopes Diaz*, the ſonne of *Inigo*.
5 *Sancho Lopes*, the ſonne of *Lopes Diaz*.
6 *Inigo* II. the baſe ſonne of *Lopes Diaz*; the two ſonnes of *Sancho Lopes* by reaſon of their tender years, being ſet aſide.
7 *Lopes Diaz* II. ſonne of *Inigo* the ſecond.
8 *Diego Lopes* ſurnamed the *White*, ſonne of *Lopes Diaz* the ſecond.
9 *Lopes Diaz* III. ſonne of *Diego Lopes*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the ſurname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name of his Foundation.
10 *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*, ſonne of *Lopes Diaz* the 3d.
11 *Lopes Diaz* IV. ſonne of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.
1257 12 *Diego Lopes Diaz* II. aſſiſted *Sancho* the ſecond ſonne of King *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde* his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after ſlain. A reward not unſuitable to his bold attempt.
1289 13 *Diego Lopes de Haro*, the ſonne of *Diego*.
1290 14 *Diego Lopes* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the 2d the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
1309 15 *John* of *Caſtile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the 2d.
1319 16 *John* the Blinde, ſo called becauſe he had loſt an eye, ſonne of *John* of *Caſtile*, and *Mary Diaz* of *Haro*, ſlain by King *Alfonſo*.
1329 17 *John Nugnes* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *John* the Blind (whoſe name I find not) ſucceeded after the deceaſe of *Donna Maria Diaz*.

1350

1350 18 *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two yeers old, ſucceeded *John Nugnes* of *Lara* his Father. *Leon &*
1351 19 *Jean* and *Iſabel*, the Siſters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, ſeized upon by *Don Pedro*; and *Oviedo.*
the whole Signeury of *Biſcay* ſubjected by ſtrong hand to the Crown of *Caſtile*, with many other fair Eſtates which depended on it.

The Arms of theſe Lords of *Biſcay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the ſecond.

4 *LEON*, and *OVIEDO.*

THE Kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO* hath on the Eaſt, the Countrey of *Biſcay*; on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean; on the South, *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and firſt ſeat of their Kings; the antienteſt Kingdome in all *Spain*. By a more antient name it was called *Aſturia*, from the *Aſtures*, who poſſeſſed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two generall names of *Auguſtani*, and *Tranſmontani*; but comprehending the particular tribes or Nations of the *Peſici*, *Gigari*, *Zoelæ*, and *Lancienſes*.

The Countrey mountainous and woody, but formerly of ſome eſteem for thoſe ſmall, though ſwift Horſes which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Aſturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Gueldings: *Aſturco Macedonicus* being uſed for a *Macedonian Nag*, by *Petronius Arbiter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts, that is to ſay, *Aſturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the Weſt; and 2 *Aſturia Santillana*, confining on *Biſcay*, towards the Eaſt. From which diviviſion of the Countrey, the eldeſt Son of *Caſtile* is called Prince of the *Aſturias*, in the plurall number; which Title ſome ſuppoſe to be given unto them, becauſe it was the firſt Countrey which held up againſt the *Moors*. But indeed the true Originall hereof is referred by the beſt *Spaniſh* Writers, to the time of the mariage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and in right of her Mother *Conſtance*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*; unto *Henry* Sonne of *John* the firſt, then in poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. For to this new maryed Couple it was granted, ſaith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they ſhould be called Princes of the *Aſturias*. In times ſucceeding the Towns of *Iaen*, *Ubeda*, *Biatia*, or *Baeca*, and *Andujar*, all ſituate neer together in *Andaluſia*, and each of them inveſted with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Eſtate hereof; and ſo continue to this day.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Sublanco*, now a ſmall Village, but once a Town of ſo great ſtrength, that it was deſtroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, leſt it might animate theſe Mountainers unto a revolt. 2 *LEON*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the place of the old *Sublanca*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedrall; the Biſhop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, *An.* 722. Afterwards made the *Regal* Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by ſome called *Legio*, becauſe the ſeventh *Legion* was here lodged; by *Ptolemy* called *Legio Germanica*, and by others *Gemina*. 3 S. *Andera*, ſo named from a Church there built to the honour of S. *Andrew*; by *Ptolemy* called *Flavionavie*, now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4 *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eaſtern part of *Aſturia*. 5 *Llanes*, where the two *Aſturias* meet together. 6 *Cividad Real*, in the Weſtern part of *Aſturia*, called *Aſturia de Oviedo*. 7 *Villa Vicioſa*, the only-noted Port in this part of the Countrey. 8 *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, neer the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Scythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9 *OVIEDO*, called for a time the City of Biſhops, becauſe many of the Biſhops of *Spain*, diſpoſſeſſed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preſerved the Line of Epiſcopal Succeſſion, till their Sees were filled again with Biſhops in more happy times. Antiently it was called *Lucus Aſturum*, and was of old a Biſhops See; reedified by King *Fruela* the firſt, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the title of a Kingdom to the firſt *Chriſtian* Princes, after the Conqueſt by the *Moors*; called from hence Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, *An.* 896. in the time of K. *Ordogno* the firſt, they began to be ſtyled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at laſt Kings of *Leon* only: *Oviedo* being quite left out of the *Regal* ſtile by *Raymir* the 2d, *An.* 940. More toward the Inlands of this Kingdome (now reckoned part of old *Caſtile*) are 10 *Palenza*, the *Pallantia* of *Ptolemy* and *Antoninus*, ſeated on the River *Carrion*; once a ſmall Univerſity, till the tranſlation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town firſt felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they maſtered theſe parts of *Spain*. 11 *Aſtorga*, antiently called *Auguſta Aſturica*, whence the *Aſtures* of this tract were called *Auguſtani*; a Biſhops See, frontiring on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the luſtfull King *Vitiza*; who to ſecure himſelf in his unlawfull pleaſures, and to weaken his ſubjects, if they ſhould attempt any thing againſt him, diſmantelled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Aſtorga*. 12 *Benevent*, on the South-eaſt of *Aſtorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the Baſe ſon of K. *Henry* the 2d, (of *Caſtile*) the ſtemme of the moſt potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in. 13 *Toro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Kingdom; and for that ſo well fortified againſt the encroachments of the *Caſtilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms; made afterwards (as lying neereſt to *Caſtile*, and the Court or the King) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey hath been ſhewn already. When conquered by *Auguſtus*

Leon. *guſtus Caſar* they were made part of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; part afterwards of the Province of *Gallicia*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *Moors*, though long they did not lie under their command. For as the luſt of *Roderick* the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, occaſioned the coming in of the *Moors*; ſo the luſt of *Magnutza*, a *Mooriſh* Vice-roy, occaſioned (though in long courſe of time) their expulſion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius* a young Prince of the *Aſturias*, on an Embaſſie to *Muſa*, the Lievtenant Generall of the *Moors*, then reſiding at *Corduba*; in his abſence raviſhed his Siſter, and at his return dyed by the edge of his ſword. Deſpairing of pardon for this Act, he was fain to ſtand upon his Guard, and fortifie himſelf in the mountainous places of this Countrey; to which many of the old Inhabitants reſorted, put themſelves under his command, and elected him to be their King: firſt by the name of King of the *Aſturias*, and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of moſt note, and the ſtrongeſt hold that he was poſſeſſed of. The Kingdome at the firſt beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Aſturias*; enlarged a little further South on the taking of *Leon* by this firſt *Pelagius*. Afterwards by the valour of *Ordogno* the 2d, it extended over both *Aſturias*, *Gallicia*, and the *old Caſtile*: divided from the *Moors* by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by thoſe Mountains. Kings of moſt note, beſides the two before remembred, were 1 *Mauregate*, the baſe Sonne of *Alfonſo* the firſt, who having by the help of *Abderamen* King of the *Moors* obtained the Kingdome, came to a baſe agreement with them, in which he bound himſelf to pay them as an yeerly tribute 50 *Virgins* of noble Families, and as many of inferior birth; for which he dyed hated and deteſted of all men. 2 *Raymir* the firſt, who ſo diſcomfited the *Moors* at the battell of *Clavigio*, neer *Calahorra*, in *Navarre*, *An.* 836. that from that time the power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languiſh. 3 *Alfonſo* the 3d, who refuſed to pay unto the *Moors* the ſaid tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many victories againſt the *Moors*, was ſurnamed the *Great*: who being outed of his Kingdome by his Sonne *Garcia*, not only patiently digeſted ſo great a wrong; but willingly became his Sonnes *Lievtenant* againſt the *Moors*. 4 *Veramund* the 2d, choſen King in the minority of *Raymir* the 3d, in whoſe time the *Moors* took *Leon*, and ſpoyled the Church of S. *James* in *Gallicia*; but were after beaten to their homes, with the loſſe of many of their own places. 5 *Veramund* the 3d, who making war againſt *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile*, was by him ſlain in battel; the Conquerour ſeizing on his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha*, his Wife, the Siſter of *Veramund*; the three Kings next ſucceeding being Kings of both. 6 *Ferdinand* the 3d, Son of *Alphonſo* the 9th, and of *Berengaria* the younger Siſter of *Henry* King of *Caſtile*; by the power and policy of his Mother, ſeized on the *Caſtiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Siſter, Wife of *Lewis* Sonne to *Philip* the 2d, King of *France*: and after the death of his Father; ſucceeded in *Leon*. Of whom we ſhall hear more when we come to *Caſtile*. After this time theſe Kingdoms never were divided; but incorporate into one Eſtate, called for long time the Kingdom of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regall ſtyle; and only that of *Caſtile* mentioned; except in *Legal* Inſtruments, *Letters Patents*, and *Inſtruments* of Negotiation with forain Princes. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe Kings, the Hiſtories of *Spain* thus preſent unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*.

A. Ch.		
716	1	*Pelagius*, of whom ſufficiently before. 20.
735	2	*Faſila*, the Sonne of *Pelagius*. 2.
737	3	*Alfonſo*, for his piety ſurnamed the *Catholick*, the Son in Law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormiſind*.
756	4	*Phroilla*, the ſonne of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, the Founder or Repairer rather of *Oviedo*.
768	5	*Aurelius*, the brother of *Phroilla*. 6.
774	6	*Sillo*, the Sonne-in-law of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, by his Daughter *Odeſinde*. 9.
783	7	*Mauregate*, an Uſurper, the baſtard Sonne of *Alfonſo*. 6.
789	8	*Veramund*, Sonne to *Froilla*. 6.
795	9	*Alfonſo* II. ſurnamed the Chaſt, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
825	10	*Raymir*, the Sonne of *Veramund*. 6.
831	11	*Ordogne*, Sonne to *Raymir*. 10.
841	12	*Alfonſo* III. ſurnamed the *Great*, the Sonne of *Ordogno*. 46.
886	13	*Garcia*, Sonne to *Alfonſo* the 3d. 3.
889	14	*Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.
897	15	*Phroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1.
898	16	*Alphonſo* IV. Sonne of *Ordogno*. 6.
904	17	*Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonſo*. 19.
924	18	*Ordogno* III. Sonne of *Raymir*. 5.
929	19	*Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*, Brother of *Ordogno* the 3d. 12.
941	20	*Raymir* III. Sonne of *Sancho*. 24.
965	21	*Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 17.
982	22	*Alfonſo* V. Sonne of *Veramund*. 46.
1028	23	*Veramund* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*. 9.
1037	24	*Sanctia*, Siſter of *Veramund*, *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile*. 30.
1067	25	*Alfonſo* VI. the youngeſt Sonne of *Ferdinand* and *Sanctia*, firſt King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sanctius* his elder Brother, he ſucceeded alſo in *Caſtile*. 41.
1108	26	*Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo*. *Alfonſo* VII. King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*. 13
1122	27	*Alphonſo* VIII. the Son of *Urraca* by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in *Leon* and *Caſtile*. 35.
1157	28	*Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonſo*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
1188	29	*Alfonſo* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
1230	30	*Ferdinand* III. Sonne of *Alfonſo*, by *Berengaria* or *Berenguela*, Siſter

Siſter of *Henry* of *Caſtile*, by the power and practiſes of his Mother ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, whileſt his Father lived, *Anno* 1217. to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Siſter, maried to *Lewis* the eighth of *France*, by whom ſhe had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth on the mariage of *Blanch* his eldeſt daughter, with *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth, ſurrendred all rights in the Crown of *Caſtile*, and ſo confirmed the ſame more abſolutely to the houſe of *Leon*, *Anno* 1267. though neither this *Ferdinand* nor *Blanche*, nor any of their Heirs did attain that Kingdom; diſſeized thereof by *Sancho* a younger Son. The Kingdoms never ſince that time disjoyned, as they had been twice before ſince the firſt uniting. *Gallicia.*

The Armes of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lion *Paſſant*, crowned *Or*. Which Armes when it was joyned to the Kingdom of *Caſtile*, were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the firſt time, (as *Camden* notes) that ever Armes were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himſelf the title of King of *France*, but (to ſhew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lices*, with his *Engliſh* Lions.

5. *GALLICIA.*

GALLICIA, or *GALLÆCIA*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Aſturias*, from which parted by the River *Mearo*; on the South, with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian*; and on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Gallaici*, (whence it had the name) diſtinguiſhed into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Cilini*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*.

The Countrey like that of the *Aſturias*, mountainous and almoſt inacceſſible, overſpread with the *Cantabrian* hils; and ſo the fitter to hold out againſt forein invaſions, in defence of *Liberty* and *Religion*; in that regard choſen for a retiring place by the diſtreſſed and vanquiſhed *Chriſtians*, in their firſt wars againſt the *Moores*. Not well inhabited to this day, not ſo much for the hillineſs of the Countrey, as for want of Water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards the Sea, where they improve their fortunes by trade, and fiſhing. The barrenneſs of the Countrey recompenſed heretofore by the rich mines of Gold and Silver; which in this Countrey, and the *Aſtures*, and ſome part of *Luſitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of Gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns; but now no mines found in it of any value. In ſtead of which, it yeeldeth the beſt mines for *Iron*, of any Province of *Spain*, for which their Waters are ſo proper, that they are ſaid to fortifie and improve the *metal*.

Places of principal importance are, 1 *Compoſtella*, an Univerſity and Archbiſhops See, vulgarly called St. *Jago*, in honour of St. *James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here; and of whom there is denominated an *Order* of Knights: his *Relicks* ſaid to be kept in the chief Church of it, worſhiped by the *Romaniſts* with great devotion; and drawing to this place a wonderful concourſe of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2 *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3 *Corunna*, by *Ptolemie* called *Flavium Brigantium*, by us *Engliſh*, the *Groyn*; often mentioned in the ſtory of our Wars with the *Spaniard*, in Q. *Elizabeths* time; then taken by the *Engliſh*, but ſince very well fortified to avoid the like ſurpriſal. Divided then as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*: ſituate on the *Cantabrian* Sea betwixt the Promontory *Trilencum*, now *Cabo Ortegal*, lying towards the Eaſt; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis terre*, as being the moſt Weſtern end of the then known World. 4 *Oreus*, upon the *Minia*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolemy* called *Aquæ Calidæ* from the *Bathes* here being; now much commanded for the beſt Wines. 5 *Tui*, on the River, frontiring upon *Portugal*; a Biſhops See, in ancient Writers called *Tude*. 6 *Ponte-vedre*, 7 *Ribadeo*, both upon the ſea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, as before is ſaid, were the *Gallaici*, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the power of the *Romans*: by whom firſt made a part of *Tarraconenſis*, after a Province of it ſelf, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Aſturias*, and ſome part of the *Old Caſtile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi* a potent Nation of *Germanie*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *tranſmigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of this Countrey. But not content with their Eſtate, they warred on the *Silinges* (a *Vandal*-tribe) then poſſeſſing *Bætica*; whom they vanquiſhed, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their ſecond King. They added ſhortly after, *Luſitania*, to their former conqueſts: ſtopped in their careere, by *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Gothes*, by whom vanquiſhed, and confined again within *Gallicia*; which they enjoyed, till the final ruine of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, *Anno* 858. reduced then to a Province of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eaſtern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their *Religion* at the firſt, under *Recciarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and ſound. But vanquiſhed by the *Gothes*, and obliged unto them for the reſtoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianiſm*: perſiſting in that *Hereſie* for the ſpace of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholick* Faith, under *Theodomire* their King; therein continuing conſtant till their finall overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are theſe that follow.

The

Corduba.

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1 *Hermenericus*, who firſt brought the *Suevians* into *Spain*, and poſſeſſed *Gallicia*, *Arcadius* and *Honorius* then Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt.
2 *Rechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and ſubdued *Bætica*.
3 *Recciarius*, the firſt Chriſtian King, who won *Luſitania*; afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Suevians* for a time becoming ſubject to that King.
4 *Maſdras*, reſtored unto the Kingdom by *Theodorick*.
5 *Frumarius*, the Son of *Maſdras*.
6 *Remiſmundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recovered ſome part of *Luſitania*, and fell off to *Arianiſm*.
7 *Theodomirus*, the Reſtorer of the *Catholick* Faith amongſt the *Suevians*.
8 *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodomire*.
9 *Ebericus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, depoſed and ſhorn *Monk* by *Andeca*.
10 *Andeca*, the laſt King of the *Suevii* in *Gallicia*, or rather the *Uſerper* of the *Regall* title; ſerved in the ſame kinde by *Leutigildis* King of the *Gothes*, as he had ſerved *Ebericus* his Lord and Maſter. After which time *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothiſh* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times enſuing it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moores*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alphonſo* the third, ſurnamed the *Great*, *Anno* 886. and given unto *Ordogno* his ſecond Son: by whoſe Succeſſion to the Crown on the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*, but ſo as to continue a Realm diſtinct. In the year 955. the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raimir* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordogno*, the third and right heir of the Kingdom: who coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raymir*, did once again unite it unto that Eſtate. Diſmembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngeſt Son, *Anno* 1067. but conquered ſhortly after by *Sancho* the eldeſt Son of *Ferdinand*, by whom *Garcia* was diſcomfited and impriſoned, *Anno* 1081. Never ſince ſeparated from the Crown of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, but when *Leon* was ſevered from *Caſtile*; going along with *Leon* in thoſe ſeparations, till the laſt union of thoſe Kingdoms in the perſon of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1230. the *Caſtilians* being then grown better Stateſmen, than to canton Kingdoms.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, ſemee of Croſſets *Fitchee*, a Chalice crowned *Or*.

6. The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*.

HAving thus ſurveyed thoſe Provinces under the Government of *Caſtile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenes*, and on the ſhores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on thoſe which lye more toward the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*. And ſo come round at laſt to *Caſtile* it ſelf. And firſt we will begin with the Kingdome of *CORDUBA*, which at the firſt erection of it, contained all thoſe parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moores*, and not again recovered by the Kings of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds when ſubdued by the King of *Caſtile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andaluſia*, *Extremadura*, *Granada*, and the Iſle of *Gades*. We will conſider it notwithſtanding in both capacities; in the firſt and largeſt notion, as unto the ſtory and affairs thereof, till diſtracted by the *Moores* into many Kingdoms; in the laſt and ſtricteſt, as to the *Chorographie*, and Deſcription of it.

The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, as it ſtood when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the Eaſt with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Portugal* and the Ocean; on the North, with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Caſtile*; and on the South, with the Ocean, the ſtraights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas: ſo called from *Corduba* the chief City of it and the Seat Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was ſaid, the Provinces of 1 *Andaluſia*. 2 *Gades*. 3 *Extremadura*, and 4 *Granada*. But becauſe *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the reſt were conquered, we will conſider it by it ſelf: and here proceed to the deſcription of the other three.

1 *ANDALUSIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Granada*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve*, in *Portugal*; on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*; on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubenſis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andaluſia*, *quaſi Vandaluſia* from the *Vandals*, who having won it from the *Romans*, had for ſome time, (and till their expulſion into *Africa*) poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

This is the moſt rich and fertile Countrey of all *Spain*, extremely fruitful of Wine, Oyl, and Orenges (which laſt being ſhipped at *Sevil*, and ſo brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Orenges) and better furniſhed with corn then moſt part of this continent; watered with the Rivers 1 *Anas*, 2 *Odier*, 3 *Bætis*, and 4 *Tenos*: which makes it flouriſh with a continual greenneſs of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hils, though watered only with the dew of Heaven,

do

do partake alſo in reaſon meaſure. The *Air* hereof, by ſome of its Southernly ſituation, is exceeding hot, in ſo much that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but thoſe exceſſive heats much moderated by thoſe conſtant refreſhings which the cool winds breathing from the North, do beſtow upon it. In which reſpect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* did uſe to ſay, that it was *beſt living in the Summer at Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reaſon of theſe cool refreſhings; and in *the winter time at Burgos in old Caſtile*, which though ſituate more Northernly, in a very ſharp air, had yet many notable defences againſt the cold. *Corduba.*

The Principal Cities and Towns hereof are, 1 *Corduba*, ſeated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left ſhore of *Guadalquiver*, over-looking towards the South, a ſpacious and fruitful Plain. Firſt founded by *Marcellus* a *Roman* Conſul, *Ann. V. C.* 601. employed at that time in the wars of *Spain*: the firſt Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the chief City of *Bætica*. For a long time the ſeat of the *Mooriſh* Vice-Royes, Lieutenants to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace a magnificent Caſtle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, it was reſtored unto the honour of an Epiſcopal See, which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great Circuit, but of very few houſes, by reaſon of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*.

Duoſque Senecas, *unicumque* Lucanum
Fœcunda loquitur Corduba: ſaith *Martial*.

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field,
One *Lucan*, and two *Seneca's* did yeeld.

Nor was it leſs fruitfull of good wits in the times ſucceeding. For not to ſay any thing of *Hoſius* that renowned Confeſſor, who was Biſhop here in the time of *Conſtantine* and before; it was a flouriſhing Univerſity in the time of the *Moores*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhaſis*, *Almanſor*, *Meſſahalah*, thoſe famous Philoſophers and Phyſicians being Students or Profeſſors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* leather, made of the skin of a *Sardinian* beaſt. Near unto this City is a wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but *Olive* trees. 2 *Iaen*, a Biſhops See, remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever ſince the firſt Recovery of it, have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Iaen*; and uſe it to this day amongſt the reſt of their Titles; it having been before that time, the ſeat and title of ſome petit Kings amongſt the *Moores*. Not far hence ſtood the famous Town of *Illiturgis*, (by *Ptolemy Illurgis*) mentioned ſo often in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3 *Oſſuna*, of moſt note for the Dukes hereof, and a ſmall Univerſity founded here, *Anno* 1549. 4 *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*, of more eſteem formerly than at the preſent; by *Ptolemy* and *Antoninus* called *Aſtygi*, by *Pliny*, *Auguſta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Juridical Reſorts* of *Bætica*. 5 *Marchena*, ſituate on an Hill, where is ſaid to be the beſt breed of *Gennets* (a ſwift race of Horſes) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Bætis* (as it was thought) conveying ſome ſecret virtue into them. Of this race was the Horſe which *Cæſar* ſo loved, that he erected his ſtatue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Luſitani* thought they were begotten by the wind. 6 *Xeres*, ſituate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeres de la Frontera*, (the *Aſta* of *Ptolemy* and *Antoninus*) famous for plenty of that wine, which we call *Xeres* Sack; but more for that great and fatal battel fought near unto it, betwixt K. *Roderick* and the *Moores*, the loſs of which drew along with it the loſs of *Spain*. 7 *Medina Sidonia* (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from a Town of *Caſtile*, called *Medina Cœli*); the Duke whereof was *General* of all the Forces, both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conqueſt of *England*, *Anno* 1588. The Town called anciently *Aſinda*, and *Aſido Cæſariana*: the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greateſt Prince for Revenue in all *Spain*, his Intrado being eſtimated at 130000 Crowns *per annum*. 8 *Algezire*, on the Sea ſide, a Town of ſuch ſtrength and conſequence, that it held out a ſiege of 19 moneths for the *Moores* of *Africk*, againſt *Alfonſo* the 5 of *Caſtile*; to whom ſurrendred at the laſt upon Compoſition, *Anno* 1343. Since which the Kings of *Caſtile* have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet diſcontinued. 9 *Conil*, a Town on the ſea-coaſt, beyond the Iſle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the D. of *Medina Sidonia*. 10 *Gibraltar*, a ſtrong Town ſeated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the mountain of *Calpe*, ſuppoſed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furtheſt point Southwards of all *Europe*. 11 S. *Lucar de Barameda* (the *Luciferi farum* of the Ancients) the Port-Town to *Sevill*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a Wind to put to Sea; or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*. 11 *Tariffa*, ſeated at the end of the Promontory, which looks toward *Africk*; and ſo called, becauſe *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moores* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moores* by *Sancho* the third of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1291, or thereabouts; the firſt Governor thereof being *Alfonſo Peres de Guzman*, the firſt Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Suppoſed by ſome to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if ſo, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on ſome unmaried *Spaniſh* women by the *Roman* Souldiers) placed here and indulged the priviledges of the *Latines*, by Decree of the Senate, *Ann. V. C.* 600. Not far from theſe laſt Towns, in a little Iſland made by two branches of the *Bætis*, where it falleth into the Sea, ſtood the famous 13 *Tarteſſus*, celebrated in moſt ancient Writers for the abundance of ſilver, which the mines of it did produce. Which was ſo great, that (as we read in *Ariſtotle's* Book *de Mirabilibus*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* firſt came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχειν σιδήρου, μήτε ὁπλίζειν τὴν ἄργυρον, that their

ſhips

Gades. ſhips were neither able to contain it, or tranſport it thence: inſomuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors*, and other *Utenſils*, of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention *Lib.* IV. Hereupon ſome have been perſwaded that the ſhips which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarſhiſh* (whereof we read 1 *King.* 10. 22.) were bound no further than this place. But we will not enter at this time upon that diſpute. As for the ſituation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as ſome, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture; (though where *Carteia* was be alike uncertain, if it were not the ſame with *Tariff*) but in a ſmall Iſland at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, as before is ſaid; doth appear by *Strabo*. Who telleth us that *Bætis* fals into the Sea with two mouthes or channels, πόλιν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ χώρῳ κατοικεῖσθαι, ἣν καλεῖσθαι Τάρτησσον, &c. and that in the midſt thereof there is a City called *Tarteſſus*, of the ſame name with the River (for *Bætis* anciently was ſo named) from whence the whole Countrey thereabouts is called *Tarteſſis*. The like *Pauſanias* ſaith expreſly in his *Eliaca*. Which ſituation of this Town in an Iſland, at the mouth of *Bætis*, occaſioned *Pliny* and ſome others of the ancient Writers, to give the name of *Tarteſſus* to the Iſle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14 *Sevil*, (in *Latine*, *Hiſpalis*) the faireſt City, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compaſs ſix miles, divided into the parts by two River *Bætis*, but joyned together by a ſtrong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful wals, and adorned with many magnificent and ſtately buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monaſteries: amongſt which, that of the *Gertoſins*, or *Carthuſians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly revenue. It is alſo the See of an Archbiſhop, under whoſe Juriſdiction are ſaid to be 20000 Villages; and a moſt flouriſhing Univerſity, wherein ſtudied *Avicen* the *Moore*, that excellent and learned Scholar, Pope *Sylveſter* the ſecond, and *Leander*, who was Archbiſhop hereof, about the year 580. a ſtout defender of the *Catholick* tendries of the Church againſt the *Arians*. The univerſity adorned with one of the greateſt and goodlieſt Libraries in the *Chriſtian* world; furniſhed by *Diego*, the Son of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the firſt founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in ſeveral Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care; and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and inlargement of it. Famous in former times for two Provincial Councels holden here, the firſt *Anno* 584, the laſt *Anno* 636, and at the preſent, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the ſervice of the King; but moſt of all for the great traffique of the place. For from this Town the *Caſtilians* ſet forwards towards *America*, and here they do diſcharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagna*, and the Emeralds of S. *Martha*, the Cochineile of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hiſpaniola*; and in a word, the whole treaſure of the *New-found-World*. He is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Orenges, and Oyles; ſent from hence in ſo great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the People uſe to ſay in the way of a *By-word*, That *if there enter not into* Sevill 4000 *Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the* Farmer *of the Cuſtomes is ſure to break*: inſomuch as the Reveaue coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholick* King; *Maginus* reckoning it at no leſs than a Million of Crowns yearly. Laſtly, here reſteth the body of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the fortunate diſcoverer of the *New-world*, with a *Latine* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but ſhort (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: of which more hereafter.

As for the fortunes of this City as they relate to Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Archbiſhop (as before is ſaid) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*; his revenue eſtimated at 100000 Crowns *per annum*, his Juriſdiction reaching over all *Andaluſia* and the fortunate Iſlands, in which are ſaid to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceſes of which being ſaid to comprehend 2000 Benefices, beſides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hoſpitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages ſubject to his power as a *Metropolitan* of more eaſie credit. Yet not ſo much conſiderable for its wealth and revenue, as for being once the See of *Iſidore*, ſo much renowned (conſidering the times he lived in) for the Univerſality of his learning, who was Biſhop here, called uſually *Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis*, to diſtinguiſh him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Peluſiota*. As for the civil fortunes of it in the declining of the *Moores*, when their Eſtate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdome of it ſelf under a noble *Moor* named *Allcorrexi*, *Anno* 966. one of the Kings whereof called *Almuneanuz*, was of ſo great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greateſt part of *Andaluſia* under his command, made ſubject with the reſt of the *Moores* in *Spain*, to the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco*, *Anno* 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaſer* unto *Africk*, *Anno* 1214. After which once more made a Kingdom in the perſon of *Abeulable* a great Prince of the *Moores*, but no longer continuing in that Royal dignity and eſtate, than till the year 1248. when taken and ſubdued by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*; and made a part of his Eſtates; but ſo, that it remaineth a Realm diſtinct in the Regal ſtile, in which the Kings of *Spain* are called Kings of *Sevill*.

2 South of *Andaluſia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, ſtands the Iſle of *GADES*, diſtant from the main land 700 paces, and joyned unto it with a Bridge called *Puento de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful ſoyl; beſides the riches which it gets by Fiſhing, and making of Salt. Firſt peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the Birth of *CHRIST*; ſubdued by the *Carthaginians*, *Ann. V. C.* 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defenſive War againſt the *Spaniards*: and was the laſt hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*, out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here ſtood in ancient times a Temple conſecrated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Seafaring men (at their being here) uſed to pay their vowes, and offer ſacrifice, as being arrived at the furtheſt parts of all the World.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1 *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town

of

of *Cadiz*, and the main Land of *Andaluſia*. 2 *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3 *Cadis*, or *Gades* the chief Town of the Iſland, and giving name unto the whole. Situate in the Weſtern part of the whole Iſle, on a large Bay ſerving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet, by the reſort and trade whereof it is much enriched. Firſt founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City by the *Romans*, and one of the *Juridical Reſorts* for the Province of *Bætica*: in whoſe times it was held to be the nobleſt and richeſt in all *Spain*, not yeelding to any in the Empire for greatneſs, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. Inſomuch that here lived at one time 500 *Roman* Knights, which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: beſides the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great reſort, occaſioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to adde a new Town to the old; the whole circumference of both being 20 furlongs. By the *Moores* at their conqueſt of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but ſince repaired, well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the *Spaniſh* Navies. Taken notwithſtanding in one day by the *Engliſh*, under the conduct of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Walter Ralegh*: in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, conſiſting of 40 ſhips, whoſe lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spaniſh* Navie, conſiſting of 57 Men of War; took the St. *Michael*, and the St. *Andrew*, two great *Gallcons*, with their luggage; ſpoyled and carried away more martial furniture, than could be ſupplyed in many years; and forced the Town, in which they ſlew and took Priſoners 4000 Foot and 600 horſe, and brought thence a very great booty in the ſackage of it, *Anno* 1596. The fortunacy of which enterpriſe gave occaſion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame this excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Eſſex*, (who was looked on as the greateſt *Adventurer* in it) viz. *Devereux*, *Vere dux*. Which he afterwards caſt into this *Diſtich*: *Gades.*

Vere dux *Devereux*, & verior *Hercule*; *GADES*;
Nam ſemel hic vidit, vicit at ille ſimul.

Alcides yeelds to *Devereux*; he did ſee
Thy Beauties (*Cales*) but *Devereux* conquer'd thee.

Neer to this *Iſle*, is that ſo celebrated Straight called by ſome *Fretum Gaditanum*, from the nearneſs of it to this Iſland; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not becauſe *Hercules* did there break out a paſſage to let the *Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*, as the *Poets* fabled; but becauſe of the two Pillars which he cauſed to be erected on each ſide of it, with the inſcription of *Nil Ultra*, this being ſuppoſed to be the furtheſt Countrey Weſtward. But when that ſuppoſition was proved untrue by the diſcovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in thoſe parts, cauſed two new pillars to be placed where the old ones ſtood, or rather where he thought they ſtood, and *Plus ultra* to be written on them. As for thoſe Pillars ſo much memorized in the ancient Writers, ſome place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Iſland; others on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*; and ſome again in two little Iſlands near thoſe Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Straight*; called now the *Straight of Gibraltar*, from the Town and Caſtle of *Gibraltar*, ſituate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length 15 miles, and in breadth, where it is narroweſt, ſeven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the Eaſt and North *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Portugal*; and on the South, *Andaluſia*. It was firſt called *Bæturia*, from the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; and for diſtinction ſake, *Bæturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract: to difference it from *Bæturia Turdulorum*, containing thoſe parts of *Granada*, and *Andaluſia*, which lye neareſt unto *Tarraconenſis*. And when firſt it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time of the Kingdom of the *Moriſcos*; ſo called by the *Chriſtians*, as lying on the *extremities*, or furtheſt ſide of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1 *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, ſituate near the ruines of *Norba Cæſarea*, deſtroyed by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey*'s Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cæſar*: now of moſt note for an *Order* of *Knights* here ſeated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2 *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3 *Merida*, ſituate alſo on the *Tagus*, firſt called *Auguſta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who placed herein his old Souldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Luſitania*, and by *Auſonius* preferred before any in *Spain*; now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatneſs. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, and *Atace* King of the *Alani* and *Silinges* (this laſt a people of the *Vandals*): the victory whereof falling to the *Gothes*, cauſed the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4 *Medelino*, neer which the River *Guadiana* hideth it ſelf under the ground, for the ſpace of 10 leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Diſcoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5 *Badaios*, a Biſhops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6 *Guadalupe*, on a River of the ſame name, renowned amongſt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, for the miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much reſorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* is in *Italy*. 7 *Placenza*, a Biſhops See, near the Hils of *Caſtile*; amongſt which hils (by reaſon of their ſtrength and ſafety) *Sertorius* made his laſt retreat, when perſecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary faction, and where he was moſt wickedly ſlain by *Perpenna* and ſome other of his own aſſociates: not far from whence, if it be not in the ſelf-ſame place, in a retired and ſolitary valley ſtandeth the Monaſtery of S. *Juſtus*, remarkable for a greater

Miracle,

Extremadura.

Miracle, than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boast of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that most puissant Monarch, having resigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the second, did here bid farewell unto the World; spending the residue of his time in prayers and devout Meditations. The greatest Monument and example of *Self-denial* which these later Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our cloystered Monks; or any quitting of their Crowns by some Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the time of Ignorance and Superstition, saw not so clearly what they did (or did it out of weakness, and want of spirit); as this Masculine and Heroick Emperor.

The old Inhabitants of these Countreys, were the *Turduli*, the *Bastuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and some part of the *Lusitani*, in *Extremadura*; all vanquished by the *Romans*, during the second *Punick* war, under the fortunate command of *Scipio African*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who passing over into *Africk* left it to the *Suevians*; lost by them to *Theodorick* the fourth King of the *Gothes*, who hereby added all *Bætica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Gothes* it remained subject till their fatall overthrow by the *Moores*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the *Great Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracenical* Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Ulidor Ubit*, under whom they first made this Conquest, *Anno* 714, to *Abdalla* of the House of *Alaveci*, *Anno* 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the *Impostor*, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humeia* (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moores*, cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors; and making it an absolute Kingdom of it self. In his Race it continued without any fractions or subdivisions, till the time of *Hizen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moores*: after whose death distracted amongst many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moores* of *Africk*; of which more anon. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moores* of *Spain*, called commonly from *Corduba* their Royal Seat

The Kings of *Corduba*.

A.	*Ch.*	
757	1	*Abderamen*, the first Soveraign Prince of the *Moores* in *Spain*. 31.
787	2	*Hizen*, the second Son of *Abderamen*, by whom *Zuleima* his elder Brother was put by the throne. 7.
794	3	*Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hizen*. 24.
819	4	*Abderamen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, discomfited by the Christians in the memorable battel of *Clavigio*, *Anno* 836.
839	5	*Mahomet* Son of *Abderamen* the 2d, who reduced *Toledo* then revolted under his Command. 5. 3.
874	6	*Almundie* the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
876	7	*Abdalla* Brother to *Almundie*, and as little memorable.
889	8	*Abderamen* III. Surnamed *Almansor*, too fortunate in his wars against the Christians. 50.
939	9	*Hali Haten* II. Son of *Alderamen* the 2d.
956	10	*Hizen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, in the 33 year of his reign deposed for his sloth and negligence, by
989	11	*Zuleima* an *African Moor* of the Family of *Alaveci*; and he expelled by
993	12	*Mahomet* II. surnamed *Almohadi* of the old house of *Humeia*; outed again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt these three and their several factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never restored again to its ancient lustre: & finally made a prey to
1001	13	*Hali*, another *African Moor*. 2.
1003	14	*Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
1007	15	*Hiaia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. Mens. 4.
1007	16	*Abderamen* IV. a K. of 7 weeks only.
1008	17	*Mahomet* III. poysoned by his own servants. 1.
1010	18	*Hizen* III. deposed by the *Moores*, grown weary of the house of *Humeia*, of which house he was.
1011	19	*Ioar* of *Algezire*. 3.
1014	20	*Mahomet* IV. the Son of *Ioar*, the last King of the *Moores* in *Corduba*, before the second Conquest of these parts of *Spain* by the *Moors* of *Africa*.

Concerning which we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigio*, against *Abderamen* the second, by *Raymir* King of *Leon*, *Anno* 836. in which the *Moor* lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moores* began to decline: brought utterly to nothing, by the sloath and negligence of *Hizen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleimea*, who succeeded. But the *Moores* not easily brooking the command of a new *Usurper*, fell into many Fractions, and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevill*, another of *Toledo*; a third at *Valentia*; a fourth of *Cordova*, *&c.* the names of which last only do occur in the former Catalogue; as they which did pretend a Soveraignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: there passing from the deposing of *Hizen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time we finde no fewer than 10 Kings. The often change of Princes, and short lives of Kings are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration;

tion: as may be ſeen by the ſhort lives and reigns of the laſt *Weſtern* Emperors, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years; as alſo of the Kings of the *Gothes* in *Italie*, of which the ſix laſt held the Throne no longer, than the nine *Weſtern* Emperors had done before them. But to proceed, *Mahomet* the laſt King of this firſt Rank, having left the ſtage in the thirteenth year of his reign, *Anno* 1027. we find no good *conſtat* of his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconſiderable by the withdrawing ſo many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and inſolency of which Roytelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at laſt to call unto their aid the Kings or *Miramomolines* of *Morocco*; by whom themſelves and all the reſt of their Corrivals, were in fine ſubdued. Under ſeven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spaniſh Moores* continued ſubject about 120 years, that is to ſay from the firſt coming in of *Joſeph Telephin* the *Miramomoline*, *Anno* 1091, unto the going out of *Mahomet*, ſurnamed the *Green*, *Anno* 1214 During which time the affairs of the *Moores* in *Spain* were ſo well conducted, that they loſt nothing to the *Chriſtians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonſo* the ſecond in the accompt of *Caſtile*, the ſeventh in accompt of *Leon*, *Anno* 1147; and the City of *Lisbon*, taken from them in the ſame year alſo by *Alfonſo*, the firſt King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquiſhed in the great fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joynt Forces of the confederated *Chriſtians*, *Anno* 1214. left off all further care of the *Moores* in *Spain*; after his going thence diſtracted once again into many Kingdoms, almoſt as many as great Towns; all of them ſwallowed up in a little time by the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongſt them the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to ſtand long on this new foundation, was ruinated and brought under the command of the *Caſtilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

Granada.

The Armes whereof were *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, armed and Crowned of the firſt, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Andaluſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Caſtile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief City and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compaſs: a Kingdom of no great extent, but ſuch as contained in it more fair Towns, ſtrong Fortreſſes, and defenſible Lakes, then the like quantity of ground in the world beſides. The North part of the Countrey plain; the South parts over-ſpread with the *Alpuxarras*, and other ſpurs and branches of the *Oroſpeda*. In the time of the *Moores* wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all ſorts of commodities; the Hils planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys ſwelling with Corn and Gardens: ſince their expulſion, neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dreſs and manure the Land.

The principal Cities of it, are 1 *Granada*, ſituate on two Hils, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; conſiſting of four ſeveral parts, called *Alhambre*, *Sierre de ſol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*: the two firſt ſtanding on the Hils, the two laſt in the Valley; the whole circuit being about ſeven miles, and containing in the time of the *Mooriſh* Kingdom, about 200000 of ſouls. Fenced with ſtrong wals, fortified with 130 Turrets, and repleniſhed with abundance of wholſom and pleaſant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the beſt ſort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*; the houſes of which are for the moſt part built of free ſtone, with delicate and artificial Maſonry, ſhewing great magnificence. Herein ſtandeth the *Cathedral* Church, a work of admirable ſtructure; of Figure round, as having ſometimes been a *Mahometane Moſquit*. Here is alſo the place which they call *Alcazar*, repreſenting a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambre* is the Palace of the *Mooriſh* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Moiſaical* work; and which by reaſon of the ſtructure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongſt the *Wonders* of the World; having withall a goodly proſpect over all the Town, lying under it upon the Eaſt; a ſpacious Champian towards the North, and the ſnowie tops of *Sierra Novade* towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Juſtice for all the Southern parts of *Spain*; as *Valladolit* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the higheſt Court, having juriſdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town firſt raiſed out of the ruines of *Illiberis*, ſituate not far off on the hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the ſtories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer ſort. 2 *Alhama*, ſeated amongſt ſteep and craggie rocks, out of which iſſue *Medicinal* Waters, occaſioning a great reſort of the *Spaniſh* Gentry: the firſt Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their laſt long war againſt the *Moores* for the recovery of this Kingdom, *Anno* 1482. and looked on by the *Moores* as a ſad preſage of a ruinated and expiring Empire. 3 *Guadix*, an Epiſcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*, 4 *Veles Malaga*, by *Ptolemie* called *Cex*, by *Antoninus*, *Sexicanum*) ſituate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxarras*, a large branch of the *Oroſpeda*, over-ſpreading a great part of this Countrey; heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who choſe to dwel there for the ſtrength and ſafety of the ſituation; ſince their expulſion, deſolate and unfrequented, nothing remaining of them now but the *Arabick* Language; which is ſtill ſpoke by thoſe few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this tract ſo high, that from the tops hereof a man may eaſily diſcern the whole courſe of the *Straight of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Ceuta*, and *Tangier*, in *Africk*. 5 *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Oroſpeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*.

Granada. *Ronda.* Not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very ſmall Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Cæſar* and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which fell to *Cæſar*, who then made an end of the *Civil* Wars, which that very day four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* ſlain, and his Forces broken: *Cæſar* himſelf being ſo put to it, that ſeeing his Souldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *remember, that at* Munda *they forſook their General.* The ſhame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onſet, which was honoured with a ſignal and remarkable Victory: this being the laſt fight that *Cæſar* was in, murdered not long after in the Senate-houſe. And of this fight he uſed to ſay, *That in all other places he fought for his honour, but in this for his life.* 6 *Antiquera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering cloſe upon *Caſtile*. 7 *Maxacra*, on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, ſuppoſed to be the *Margis* of *Ptolemie*. 8 *Vera*, on the ſame ſhore, the furtheſt Town of *Bætica*, and of this Countrey towards *Murcia*: ſuppoſed to be the *Virgao* of *Plinie*, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgitanus*. 9 *Loxa*, on the River *Darion*, enjoying a ſituation both ſtrong and pleaſant. 10 *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, ſituate at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, once ſacked by *Craſſus* the rich *Roman*; who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had ſlain his Father and Unkle, hid himſelf and his Companions in a Cave hereabouts, for eight moneths together: but after hearing of their deaths, iſſued out, and ranſacked, amongſt many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great traffick, and much reſort, eſpecially for Raiſins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and to the great prejudice of the *Moores* taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, *Anno* 1487. the conqueſt of the whole Kingdom of *Granada* following not long after. It was ſince made a Biſhops See, or reſtored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11 *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a Biſhops See. 12 *Carthema*, 13 *Coin*, and 14 *Baſa*, more within the Land: this laſt the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-eaſt whereof it ſtandeth. A place of great ſtrength both by Art and nature, and by the *Moores* defended with ſo great a gallantry, that it held out a ſiege of ſeven moneths againſt an Army of 13000 Horſe, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* being there in perſon: and yeelded at the laſt, *Decemb.* 4. 1489. upon better conditions then any Town had done before it.

As for the fortunes of this Countrey, after the Conqueſt of it by the *Moores* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*; and ſo continued till that Kingdom was ſubdued by the *Spaniards*. But the *Moores* were too ſtout to yeeld all at once. Having yet ground enough both to ſecure themſelves in, and endow their King: they are reſolved, though they had loſt one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruinated, the *Moores*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar* their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themſelves unto *Granada*, and there renew their ſtrength and Kingdom; which laſted 256 years, under 20 Kings, whoſe names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of *Granada*.

A.	*Ch.*		*A.*	*Ch.*	
1236	1	*Mahomet Alcamir*, the laſt King of *Corduba*, and the firſt King of *Granada*. 36.	1379	10	*Mahomet Guadix*. 13.
			1392	11	*Joſeph* II. 4.
			1396	12	*Mahomet Aben Balva*. 11.
1272	2	*Mahomet Mir Almir*. 30.	1407	13	*Joſeph* III. 16.
1302	3	*Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 7.	1423	14	*Mahomet Aben Azar*. 4.
1309	4	*Mahomet Aben Evar*. 10.	1427	15	*Mahomet* the little. 5.
1319	5	*Iſmael*. 3.	1432	16	*Joſeph Aben Almud*. 13.
1322	6	*Mahomet*. 12.	1445	17	*Mahomet Oſmen*. 8.
1334	7	*Joſeph Aben Amet*. 20.	1453	18	*Iſmael* II. 9.
1354	8	*Mahomet Lagus*. 23.	1462	19	*Muley Alboacen*. 20.
1377	9	*Mahomet Vermeil*. 2.	1482	20	*Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King of the *Moores* in *Spain*.

Of all which there is little left upon Record, their whole time being ſpent in defending their borders againſt the encroachments of *Caſtile*; or elſe in *Civil* Wars and diſcords amongſt themſelves: in which they were ſo frequent, and ſometimes ſo violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Ezar* the fourth King, depoſed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thruſt out by *Iſmael* the Son of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treaſon. *Mahomet*, Son of *Iſmael*, murdered by his Subjects; *Joſeph*, the Son of *Mahomet* ſlain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again depoſed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miſerably ſlain by *Pedro* the *Cruel* of *Caſtile*, to whom he had fled for help and ſuccour. After this time they ruined and depoſed one another till the end of their Kingdom; the Succeſſor never ſtaying for the death of his Predeceſſor, but violently making way for himſelf to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin* the laſt King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but ſetting him beſides the Throne, as he himſelf was for a time, by *Muley Boabdelin* his Unkle: and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces, to the ſubduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdome, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile*: ſo it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile* alſo. In the firſt year then of this mans Reign did the war begin, or rather in the laſt year

year of his Father, who by taking *Zahara* from the Christians gave the first occasion: and in the tenth year of the war (for so long it lasted) *Anno* 1492, the Empire of the *Moores* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, and *Isabel* his Wife; after their first entrance into it, more than 760 years. *Granada.*

Such of them, as after the decay of their Kingdom had a desire to stay in *Spain*, which had for so long time been their native Countrey, were suffered so to do by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a desolation of the Countrey, if they should abandon it); conditioned that they would be *Christned*. And that they might be known to be as they professed, the *Inquisition* was established in the City of *Granada*, consisting of a certain number of Dominican Fryers: who finding any counterfeit, or Apostate *Christians*, were first gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict such punishment on them as was accustomed in like cases. By the terror of which *Inquisition*, many professed in shew the *Christian* Faith. But being *Christians* only in the outward shew, and practising on all occasions against the State, the Kings of *Spain* resolved long ago on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a peace with *England*, and a truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moores* of *Africk* so embroyled in wars, that they were not able to disturb him; put that extreme rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their consultations: 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Countrey, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themselves from the *Inquisition*, and to recover their old Liberty lost so long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada* in the times of their greatest power were able to raise, were far beyond the Ameasurement and extent of their Kingdom; not above 700 miles in compass, as before is said: but so exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of necessaries, that within two daies space, the King hereof was said to have been able to draw together 50000 Horse and 200000 Foot, for defence of his Kingdome. *Turquet* reports it so in his *Spanish* History. But this proved more then they were able to do in their greatest need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at last subdued, by *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* Kings of *Spain*: though possibly by reason of their divisions at that time, some following the party of *Mahomet Boabdelin*, and others that of his Unkle *Muley* chosen King against him; they might not joyn together in a common interest for the defence of their Estate. The Armes whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranat (or apple of *Granada*) slipped, *Vert*.

8. *MURCIA.*

MURCIA is bounded on the West, with *Granada*: on the East, with *Valentia*; on the North, with *Valentia*, and a part of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; so called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times esteemed a rich and wealthy Countrey, stored with all sorts of fruits; and so abounding in *Silver* Mines, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 *Drachmas* of daily profit; now for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in so small a Countrey. The principal, 1 *Murcia*, by *Ptolemie* called *Menralia*, seated upon the River *Segura*; a Bishops See, situate in a pleasant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranats, and other excellent fruits: from this, the Countrey had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2 *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, first built by *Asdrubal* of *Carthage*, the Brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of such aids, both of men and money, as should come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Island, in the very jawes of the *Mediterranean*; by which, and by a deep Marish on the West side of it, so impregnably fortified; that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the siege thereof, had not been shewed a way over that *Marish*, at a dead low water, by poor Fishermen of *Tarragon*, who knew the secret; he had there lost both his time and Honour. Nothing more memorable, in the sackage and spoyl thereof, (though there was found abundance of Armes and Treasure) than the vertue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spanish* Ladies of great birth, and beauties, left there as Hostages for the *Spaniards* with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him; for fear it should betray him to some inconvenience. Being reedified it was made a *Roman* Colony, and one of the seven Juridical Resorts of *Tarraconensis*: by *Constantine* made the chief City of the new Province of *Carthaginensis*, which was hence denominated: Afterwards twice sacked by the *Gothes* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruines. And though again new built and peopled, it is still but small; containing at the most but 600 Housholds: and would be utterly abandoned, but for the safety of the place, and the strength thereof, garrison'd, and fortified very strongly by King *Philip* the second, for fear of surprisal by the *Turks*; and the security of the Haven (which is withall very large and capacious) coming from a little Island, lying at the mouth thereof; by which assured from tempestuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occasion of that Saying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, that *there were but three safe Ports in the Mediterranean*; that is to say, *August*, *July*, and this *Carthagena*: meaning as I conceive, that those two moneths being commonly free from tempestuous weather, were of as great safety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3 *Lorca*, another Port Town, situate on a Creek more within the Land. 4 *Almanca*, 5 *Sarazal*, two strong Towns bordering on *Valentia*; well fortified, when *Murcia* and *Valentia* were in several hands. 6 *Cervillan*. 8 *Alhama*. 8 *Ric*, &c.

Toledo. This Countrey being part of the Province of *Carthaginenſis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their firſt entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes*, in this part of *Europe*. Together with the reſt of *Spain*, it was ſubdued by the *Moores* of *Africk*, in the diſtractions of whoſe Empire after the going hence of the *Moores* of *Africk*, it was made a diſtinct Kingdom by *Aben-Hut*, of the race of the Kings of *Saragoſſa*, who had ſeized upon it, *Anno* 1228, and for a time was the moſt puiſſant King of the *Moores* in *Spain*, commanding over this Countrey, *Granada*, and a great part of *Andaluſia*. Invited to a Feaſt, made drunk, and then baſely murdered by *Aben Arramin* a falſe ſervant of his, *Anno* 1236. one *Aben Hudiel* ſeized on the Realm of *Murcia*, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Alboaquis*, the laſt King hereof. But he not able to defend himſelf againſt his Competitor, ſurrendred it to *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, whom he put into poſſeſſion of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Alboaquis* ſhould enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Soveraignty of *Caſtile*; and that *Ferdinand* ſhould enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the ſtate of a Kingdom, but 12 years only, united to *Caſtile* without bloud or trouble, and ſo remains ever ſince.

9. TOLEDO.

THe Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, ſo called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greateſt part of that Countrey which is now Called *New-Caſtile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or Member. The Countrey lying next unto it was anciently the Seat of the *Carpentani*; the nature of the ſoyl we ſhall finde elſe-where.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Toledo*, of great Antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prætor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many Pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with 30 Towers ſtanding on the wals. By reaſon of the ſituation of it in the very midſt almoſt of *Spain*, it is paſſing well inhabited, as well by the Nobility, who reſide there for pleaſure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their ſtudies; as by Merchants, who reſort thither for their profit: beſides ſuch Souldiers and their Officers, who are continually garriſoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean, and ordinary; though by farre more handſom in the inſide than the outſide promiſeth: moſt of them being furniſhed with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable inventions of one *James*, a native of *Cremona* in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The ſtreets narrow, cloſe, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troubleſom to walk or go upon, eſpecially in ſlippery or dirty weather, by reaſon of its ſteep and uneven ſituation on the ſide of a rocky hill: by which, and by the River which almoſt ſurrounds it, it is naturally very ſtrong, and well helped by Art. For that cauſe made the ſeat of the *Gothiſh* Kings: by one of which called *Bamba*, ſo repaired and beautified (beſides the addition of a ſtrong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by ſome accounted for the founder of it. For ſo we finde it in theſe old verſes.

Erexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclytus Urbem
Bamba, *ſuæ celebrem portendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to ſay,

King *Bamba* (God aſſiſting) rais'd this Town,
Extending to the ancient *Gothes* renown.

When the *Gothes* fell, it was in chief eſtimation amongſt the *Moores*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both (as it continueth to this day) the See of of an Archbiſhop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and Preſident for the moſt part of the *Inquiſition*. his revenue anſwerable to his place; the greateſt of any *Clergy-man* in the *Chriſtian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being eſtimated at 300000 Crowns *per annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Gothes*; and is now a famous Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon* Lawes, and hath to this day the temporal Juriſdiction over 17 walled Towns, beſides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is ſituate on the River *Ana*, of moſt fame in theſe later times for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Caſtile*. Neighboured by the ruines of a ſtrong and famous City *Caſtulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreſoeni*, a people that dwelt on the other ſide of the River, ſuddenly entred, and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the ſame Gate, put them all to Sword: and cauſing his men to apparel themſelves in the cloathes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyreſoeni*; who ſuppoſing them to be their own party, opened their Gates, and were all either ſlain or ſold for ſlaves. More of this Town anon when we come to *Caſtile*; to which now belonging. 3 *Talbora*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queens *Talvera*: and called ſo on occaſion of an execrable murder, committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Guzman*, her husbands Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*; ſuppoſed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolemy*, and now belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof.

thereof. 4 *Medina Zelim*, commonly called *Medina Celi*, of great importance when poſſeſſed or neighboured by the *Moores*. Now of moſt note for giving the title of Dukes to the illuſtrious Family *De la Cerde*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fift; claiming by that deſcent a title to the Crown of *Caſtile*. What other Towns belonged unto it we ſhall ſee anon.

As for *Toledo* in ſelf, it the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; after that the ſeat Royal of the *Gothiſh* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouſe* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moores* at their firſt entrance into *Spain*, *Anno* 716. more prudently aiming at the head, than the *Gothes* poſſibly expected from ſuch *Barbarians*. In the Confuſions of that Kingdome, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the ſecond coming in of the *Moores* of *Africk*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf; continuing in that eſtate, till taken from *Haia Alcaduchir* the laſt King hereof, by *Alfonſo* the firſt, King of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1083. This *Alfonſo* being the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Caſtile*, he lived in exile with the *Moores*, kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Hyaia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1073. he picked a quarrel with his Hoſt, and beſieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his deſigns: which notwithſtanding held him a ſiege of five years, before he could make himſelf Maſter of it; by him incorporated preſently on the taking of it, with the reſt of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Caſtile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well thoſe who held it but for life, as thoſe who left the ſame unto their Poſterity, they are theſe that follow.

The *Mooriſh* Kings reigning in *Toledo*.

A. Ch.

1 *Galafroy*, King of *Toledo* in the time of *Charlemaigne*, under the Vaſſalage of the great *Caliphs* of *Damaſcus*, ſubdued by *Abderamen* the firſt King or Miramomolin of the *Moores* in *Corduba*, of the Houſe of *Humeia*.

787 2 *Zuleima*, eldeſt Son of *Abderamen* King of *Corduba*, being diſpoſſeſſed of the Realm of *Corduba* and the reſt of his Eſtates in *Spain* by *Hizen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which outed alſo not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the ſecond. At what time

833 3 *Aben Lope* (the Son of *Muſa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and deſcent, but a *Moor* by profeſſion, who had cauſed the *Toledans* and others of the *Moores* of *Spain* to rebell againſt *Abderamen*) aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Toledo*: a ſtrict confederate of *Ordogno* the 11th King of *Leon*, by whom ſupported in his wars againſt thoſe of *Corduba*, but at laſt vanquiſhed and diſſeized by *Mahomet* the Son of *Abderamen*, *Anno* 848.

990 4 *Abdalla*, a great man among the *Moores*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the ſecond for the Realm of *Corduba*, ſeized on the City of *Toledo* which he held as King: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during thoſe contentions, by whom ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

995 5 *Mahomet* ſurnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya* King of *Corduba*, and diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*, and was kindly entertained by King *Abdalla*, whom he ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

999 6 *Obeydalla* the Son of *Mahomet*, ſlain in his wars with *Hizen* the King of *Corduba*, in the firſt or ſecond year of his reign.

1000 7 *Hairam* of the ſame houſe of *Aben Humeya*, and probably the next kinſman of *Obeydalla*, ſucceeded him in this Eſtate, and left the ſame unto his poſterity, till ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

1010 8 *Hizen* the Son of *Hairan*, of whom nothing memorable.

1045 9 *Ali Maynon*, or *Almenon* as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alphonſo* the ſixt of *Leon*, when diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by his Brother *Sancho*.

1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maymon*.

1078 11 *Hiaya* ſurnamed *Alcadarbile*, the Son of *Ali Mainon* and Brother of *Hizen*, a cruel Prince and ill beloved of his ſubjects; which gave occaſion unto *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon* ſpoken of before to invade this Kingdom, by whom at laſt it was ſubdued, and *Toledo* with its Territories added unto *Caſtile* as before is ſaid, *anno* 1083. By which means there accrewed to the Realm of *Caſtile*, beſides *Toledo* it ſelf, and the Towns ſpoken of already, thoſe of *Illeſcus*, *Eſcallona*, *Magneda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Conſuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalaiara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now paſſing in the eſtimate of *New Caſtile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the Chriſtians, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain* (in regard of Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Gothes*: and ſhortly after honoured by *Alphonſo* with the title of the Imperial City, that King upon the conqueſt hereof, having aſſumed unto himſelf the ſtile of Emperor of *Spain*, but ſomewhat too affectedly, as the caſe then ſtood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which reſpects he gave unto this City for the Armes hereof, in a Pile *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperial *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry precious Gems *Proper*; changed afterwards by *Alphonſo* the 3d of *Caſtile* and 8th of *Leon*, affecting the ſame title of Emperor, to an Emperor ſitting on his throne in a Robe

Castile. of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a sword in his right. But the Blazon of these Armes I finde not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his decease.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the East, with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the West, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biscay*, *Guipuscoa*, and the *Asturias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andelusia*, and *Granada*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent, to which the rest are all united either by Mariages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the *New* and the *Old*, parted from one another by the hils of *Sevogia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the ancient Patrimony of the first Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo* and other pieces from the *Moores*. The *old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two, more fit for pasturage than Corn; but better stored with that, and all sorts of fruits, than the neighbouring Countreys, which lie betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the new more plain and Champain, better stored with fruits; and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn and other provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of 1 *Relaunos*, rising not far from *Burgos*; 2 *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*; 3 *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others: The *New* with 4 *Zaruma*, honoured with the Neighbourhood of *Madrid*; 5 *Tavina*, and 6 *Tagus*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is situate on the North of the *New*, and hath for the chief Cities of it 1 *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numantia*, which for the space of fourteen years withstood the whole forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding at the last no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money and Goods, laid them in an heap, then set fire unto them, and finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adorn his triumph. 2 *Avila*, situate under the great Mountains, which are call'd from hence the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*, and by that name giving the title of *Abulensis* to the renowned *Tostatus*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Counsell to *John*, King of *Aragon*; yet could finde leisure enough not only to attend his Episcopal charge, but to compile those learned and painfull Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which and his other abilities (besides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Casaubon* hath given him, in his Book against *Baronius*, saying, *Laudo acumen viri, si in meliora incidisset Tempora, longè maximi*, 3 *Valodolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the antienteſt Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time by Students, and then restored again by King *Philip* the second, whose birth-place it was; and who erected here a Colledge (among others) for the education only of young *English* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the Kings Court here residing in the Summer times, it became in little space, a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort; not yeelding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbone* and *Sevill*. It is called in *Latine*, *Vallis oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it; but by *Ptolemie*, *Pintia*. 4 *Segovia*, a Bishops See, of great trade in cloathing; situate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence the hils of *Segovia*. 5 *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relaunos*, or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d'Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*; built out of certain Villages lying hereabouts by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Son-in-law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those Kings, since of the Arch-bishops hereof, the Cathedral being one of the faireſt in *Spain*; built with such Art, that Mass may be sung aloud in five several Chappels, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency (in *Civil* matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote, in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to satisfie *Toledo*, the Controversie is still undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, saying, that *he would first speak for* Toledo, *and then* Burgos *should speak for it self*. Without the Wals of this City is a famous Nunnery, called *De las Huelgas*, consisting of 150 Religious women, all of noble Houses. 6 *Cividad Rodrigo*, a Bishops See, on the River *Gada*. 7 *Zamora*, a strong and well-built City, and a Bishops See, the *Sentica* of *Ptolemie*; situate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the best Bag-pipes. 8 *Tordesillas*, the *Segisana* of the Antients. 9 *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief seat of the Dukes so called, a Prince of great possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Roias* and *Sandoval*. 10 *Salamanca*, the most famous University of *Spain*, especially for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Lawes; first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, *Anno* 1240. and by an Order of the Popes, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italie*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Arabick* Tongues, besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmantica*, is now a Bishops See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grandfathers, was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Paneços* or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before.

before. The occaſion this. An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva*'s which he very much valued, flew over thoſe Mountains; and his men not being able to finde her at firſt, they were ſent back by the Duke to ſeek her. Clambring from one hill to another, they hapned at laſt upon a large and pleaſant Valley, where they ſpied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongſt many craggy Rocks. The *Salvages* gazing a while upon them ran into their Caves, made in the hollowes of the Rocks, the beſt houſes they had: which being obſerved by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that in ſtead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him newes of a *New World* in the midſt of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they ſaid, they obtained belief. And the Duke ſhortly after went with a Company of Musketiers, and ſubdued them eaſily; they having no offenſive Weapons but only Slings. They worſhipped the *Sun* and *Moon*, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good ſtore of excellent fruits, roots, and ſprings of water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their language was not altogether underſtood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Baſquiſh*. Reduced on this diſcovery to *Chriſtianity*; but eaſily diſcernible by all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occaſioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams from thoſe rocky Mountains, wherewith on all ſides they are encompaſſed. The Truth hereof, beſides the Credit of *James Howell* in his *Inſtructions for Forein Travel*, I have upon inquiry, found to be atteſted by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick intereſs. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly ſatisfied in the men. Whom I conceive to be ſome remnant of the ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themſelves amongſt theſe Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their language and Idolatry ſpeak them to be ſuch. For had they either fled from the *Gothes* or *Moores*, there had been found ſome *Croſs*, or other Monument of *Chriſtianity*, as in other places; or ſome ſuch mixture in their ſpeech, as would have ſavoured ſomewhat of the *Gothes*, or *Romans*. But it is time I ſhould proceed.

NEW CASTILE is ſituate on the South of the old. The chief Cities there, 1 *Signenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Biſhops See, beautified with a fair Cathedral; ſuppoſed to be the *Condabora* of *Ptolemie*. 2 *Madrid*, upon the *Guadarama*, now the ſeat of the Kings; whoſe reſidence there, though the Countrey be neither rich nor pleaſant, hath made it of a Village the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. It is a cuſtom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their houſes do belong to the King, except ſome compoſition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do uſe to brag to ſtrangers, that they have a *City walled with Fire*; and then make good the boaſt by ſaying, That it is ſituate in the midſt of Quarries of Flint. 3 *Alcala de Henares* (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an Univerſity of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Franciſco de Ximines*, Cardinal and Archbiſhop of *Toledo*; and by him furniſhed with the ableſt men both for Divinity and the tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whoſe joynt diligence and ſtudy in turning over ſo many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he publiſhed the *Complutenſian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and vulgar *Latine*, with the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint* into *Latine* alſo. A work of very great charge and pains (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof an Hebrew Dictionary for the underſtanding of that language. 4 *Alcaraz*, amongſt the mountainous tracts of *Oroſpeda*, called *Sierra de Alcaraz*; memorable for a great diſcomfiture given unto the *Moores*, *Anno* 1094. 5 *Molina*, in the ſame mountainous tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*; remarkable for giving the title of Lord to the Kings of *Caſtile*, who in the Regal ſtile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeury hereof accrewing to that Crown, by the mariage of *Sancho* the third with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the laſt Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of ſtrength: well fortified in the times fore-going, both by art and nature. 6 *Cuenca*, ſeated at the ſpring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of the *Tagus* alſo, amongſt the Mountains of *Oroſpeda*; built by the *Moores* on the top of thoſe craggie hils, whom it ſerved for an impregnable Fortreſs againſt the *Chriſtians*, till taken by *Sancho* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1177.

Here alſo is the *Eſcuriall*, or *Monaſtery* of S. *Laurence*, built by King *Philip* the ſecond. A place (ſaith *Quade*, who ſpendeth 13 pages in its deſcription) of that magnificence, that no building in times paſt, or this preſent, is comparable to it. The front toward the Weſt is adorned with three ſtately gates; the middlemoſt whereof leadeth into a moſt magnificent Temple, a Monaſtery in which are 150 Monks of the order of S. *Jerome*, and a Colledge: that on the right hand openeth into divers offices, belonging to the *Monaſtery*; that on the left, unto *Schooles* and out-houſes, belonging to the Colledge. At the four corners there are four turrets of excellent workmanſhip; and for height, majeſtical. Towards the North, is the Kings Palace; on the South part, divers beautiful and ſumptuous Galleries; and on the Eaſt ſide, ſundry gardens and walks, very pleaſing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 ſeveral quadrangles, every one incloyſtred; and is indeed ſo brave a ſtructure, that a voyage into *Spain* were well imployed, were it only to ſee it, and return. Here is alſo in this tract the old Town of *Caſtulo* (the *Caſtaon* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce* the Wife of *Annibal*; from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*, and ſo called by *Cæſar*: now a poor Village, known by the name of *Caſtona la Veia*; in which is ſomewhat to be found of the ancient ruines. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*, to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of theſe *Caſtiles* were the *Vaccai*, *Ventones*, *Arevaca*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which the name of *Caſtile* can be deduced: ſo that we muſt fetch it either from the *Caſtellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from ſome ſtrong fortified Caſtles erected in the frontiers againſt the *Moores*. This laſt conjecture may ſeem probable, becauſe the Armes of this Kingdom

are

Caſtile. are *Gules*, a *Caſtle* triple-towred, *Or*. Neither is it any way ſtrange for Provinces, eſpecially ſmaller ones, ſuch as at firſt this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Caſtle. For (to go no further) even with us *Richmondſhire* was ſo called from the Caſtle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alun* Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flintſhire* took denomination from a Caſtle built of *Flint*-ſtones, by *Henry* the 2d. We may ſee hereby how much *Celius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth that *Alfonſo* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enaſer* King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; aſſumed theſe Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Baſtitanes*; becauſe that victory, like a ſtrong Caſtle, had confirmed his Eſtates unto him. Whereas, in caſe there were no other Error in his ſuppoſition; the *Baſtitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Caſtile*, but of *Valentia*, and *Murcia*: Provinces far enough off from the *Old Caſtile*, at the firſt taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth moſt evidently, in that the people are by the *Latines* called *Caſtellani*, the Countrey *Caſtella*; the ſame name with thoſe elder *Caſtellani*, which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to ſtand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof having been conquer'd by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire; fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Gothes*, as hath been ſhewn already on ſome other occaſion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*; recovered foot after ſo ot by the Kings of *Leon*: governed, under them, at firſt by *Provinciall* Earls; Commanders of ſo many Caſtles in the Countrey of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended againſt the *Moors*. *Ordogno* the ſecond harbouring ſome ſuſpicions againſt theſe Earls, cauſed them all to be cruelly murthered. The people upon this revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; governed firſt by Judges, then by Earls again, as an abſolute and free Eſtate. *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt that re-aſſumed the title of Earl of *Caſtile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave retinue; ſold to King *Sancho*, an Hawk, and an Horſe, of excellent kinds, for a ſum of money: conditioned, that if the money were not paid at the time agreed on, it ſhould be doubled and redoubled, till the debt were ſatisfied. This money by the negligence of the Kings Officers, who looked upon the contract as a matter of jeſt, became ſo great a ſumme; that the King, to ſatisfie *Gonſales*, made him the firſt *Proprietary* Earl of *Caſtile*, *An.* 939. releaſing that Eſtate from all acknowledgement to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as ſome call her, Siſter and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Eſtate by marriage to *Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, *An.* 1028. by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Sonne, *An.* 1034. Kings of moſt note and obſervation in the courſe of their ſtory, are, 1 *Ferdinand* their firſt King, who added *Leon* to his Kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Veramund* the laſt King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2 *Alfonſo* the firſt, who ſubdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it by the name of *New Caſtile*, unto his Eſtate. 3 *Alfonſo* the third, who conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatſoever lay on the *Caſtilian* ſide of the River *Iberus*: and grew ſo great, that he cauſed himſelf to be ſolemnly crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedrall Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*; and gave his Sonne *Sancho* the title of King of *Caſtile* in his own life time. 4 *Alfonſo* the 4th, the chief of the Confederates againſt *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Miramomoline* of *Morocco*; whom he vanquiſhed in the famous battell of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Morena*, *An.* 1214. added *Alava* and *Guipuſcoa* to his other Eſtates. 5 *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Caſtile* into one Eſtate; and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 6 *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperour of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in *Aſtronomy*; the Author of the *Alfonſine Tables*; compiled by many learned men aſſembled together by his means in the City of *Toledo*, where in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spaniſh* Writer that he ſpent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 7 *Sancho* the third, Sonne of this *Alfonſo*, the Author of the great breach in the Line of *Caſtile*; for having the hap to ſurvive *Ferdinand* ſurnamed *de la Cerde* his elder Brother, he made himſelf ſo ſtrong a party in his Fathers life-time that he ſucceeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brothers Children of their right therein, though many attempts were made in their favour afterwards. *Don Alfonſo* eldeſt Sonne of which *Ferdinand* maryed into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*, who by *Leonora de Guſman* a Duaghter of the now houſe of *Medina Sedonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John*, and *Iſabella de la Cerde* (in which laſt the male Iſſue being quite extinct) the whole rights of that Line remained; brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a baſe Sonne of the houſe of *Foix*, created by King *Henry* the ſecond, the firſt Earl of *Medina Celi*, whoſe ſonne called *Gaſton* left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himſelf that of *de la Cerde* continued ever ſince in his poſterity (advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi* in the perſon of *Lewis* the fifth Earl) the better to preſerve in memory their deſcent from, and lawfull title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preſerving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the cuſtome of this Houſe, once at the leaſt in the life-time of every Duke, to put up a petition to the King then reigning, for reſtitution to the throne, which the King receiving as of courſe, doth of courſe ſubſcribe this anſwer to it, *viz. No eſt ligar*, that is to ſay, there is no room for him. 8 *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of his Kingdom by *Henry* of *Tranſtamare* his Brother; reſtored again for a time by the valour of *Edward* the *Black Prince*, Sonne of *Edward* the third. 9 *John*, ſonne of *Henry* of *Tranſtamare*, who maryed his ſonne *Henry* to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, by *Conſtance* one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*; ſo uniting both titles into one. The times in which theſe Princes and the reſt did reign, appeareth in theſe Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Caſtile*, which are theſe that follow.

The

Caſtile.

The Earls of *Caſtile*.

A. Ch.

910 1 *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt Proprietary Earl.
932 2 *Garcias*, Sonne of *Ferdinand*.
980 3 *Sancho*, or *Sanctias*, Sonne of *Garcias*.
1018 4 *Garcias* II. Sonne of *Sancho*, ſlain by treaſon, without iſſue.
1028 5 *Nugna*, or *Elvira* the Siſter of *Garcias* the ſecond, maryed to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the firſt King of *Caſtile*.

The Kings of *Caſtile*.

1036 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon* in right of his Wife. 33.
1067 2 *Sancho*, Sonne of *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* only, his younger Brother *Alfonſo* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 6.
1073 3 *Alfonſo*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Caſtile* alſo.
1108 4 *Urraca* Queen of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. / *Alfonſo* II. King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*. } 15.
1122 5 *Alfonſo* III. King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, the Sonne of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy* her former Husband.
1157 6 *Sancho* II. the elder Sonne of *Alfonſo* the third; his younger Brother *Ferdinand* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 2.
1159 7 *Alfonſo* IV. ſurnamed the *Noble*, Son of *Sancho* the 2d. 55.
1214 8 *Henry*, Son of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 3.
1217 9 *Ferdinand* II. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Siſter of *Henry* ſucceeded his Father in *Leon* alſo, *Anno* 1230. the Kingdoms never ſince diſ-joyned, though the title of *Leon* in ſhort time became diſcontinued.
1252 10 *Alfonſo* V. furnamed the *Wiſe*, Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; and Emperour Elect. 32.
1283 11 *Sancho* III. the 2d Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fifth; the children of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother being ſet beſides. 12.
1295 12 *Ferdinand* III. of *Caſtile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.
1312 13 *Alfonſo* VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.
1350 14 *Pedro*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo*, for his infinite Tyrannies ſurnamed the *Cruel*. 18.
1368 15 *Henry* II. the Baſtard Sonne of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, Earl of *Tranſtamare*. 11.
1379 16 *John*, the Sonne of *Henry* the ſecond. 11.
1390 17 *Henry* III. Sonne of *John*, and huſband of *Catharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and the Lady *Conſtance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.
1406 18 *John* II. Sonne of *Henry* and *Katharine*. 48.
1454 19 *Henry* IV. Son of *John* the 2d. 21.
1475 20 *Iſabel*, Siſter of *Henry* the fourth, maryed to *Ferdinand* V. Sonne of *John* King of *Aragon*.

Of whoſe Acts and Iſſue we will make more ample mention, when we ſhall come to ſpeak of the *Monarchy* of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been ſince continued in their Poſterity. The Arms of theſe Kings we have ſeen before.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within theſe Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, long ſince united into one, were three in all, partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious perſons, not known in any Countrey but *Spain* alone.

This of the laſt ſort is called the Order of *Mercie*, or *de la mercede*; firſt inſtituted by K. *James* of *Aragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelone*, *An.* 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdoms of *Caſtile*, where of moſt eſteem; but ſo that in remembrance of their firſt foundation they ſtill retain their antient Arms, which are thoſe of *Aragon*, *viz.* a Croſſe *Argent*, and four Bends *Gules*; in a field *Or*. Their habit white; the Rule of their Order, that of S. *Auguſtine*: The practice and profeſſion of it to gather Alms amongſt the People, wherewith to redeem ſuch *Chriſtian* Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by ſome other means are enthralled to the *Turks*, and *Moors*: ſending their Agents yeerly to *Algeers* and *Feſſe*, to inform them of the ſtate, age, and quality of each ſeverall Captive; and after on Inſtruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A buſineſſe which they manage with great care and faithfulneſſe, and are accordingly truſted with great ſums of money, given and collected to that end; few men here dying, who give not ſome Legacy or other to this pious uſe. Nor are the Kings behind hand in ſo good a work, promoting it with a liberall purſe, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Eſtate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* beſides. And to ſay truth, it doth concern him more then others, becauſe they are his Subjects chiefly, for whoſe redemption the whole ſumme is given and gathered: *Religious perſons* ranſomed firſt, and then the *Laity*; the young and ſerviceable men before old and impotent: if after the *Redemption* of the *Spaniſh* Captives they have any ſtock left, they keep it not till another year; but therewith ranſome Captives of ſome other Nations. So that this ſeemeth to ſucceed

in

Portugal. in the place of the now antiquated and uſeleſs *Orders* of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power, that is to ſay,

1 Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, to whom the defence thereof belonged, on the approach of the *Moors*; made good by *Raymond* the Abbot of *Piſaria*, and the Monks of *Ciſteaux*. *An.* 1157. For the future preſervation and defence whereof, they ordained this *Order*; which in proceſs of time grew to ſuch eſtate, that beſides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no leſs than 61 Towns and Caſtles. The Knights hereof do wear for their Habit, a *White Robe* with a *Red Croſſe* upon their breaſts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the 3d, *An.* 1164, under the Diſcipline of *Ciſteaux*. Their reſidence is at *Caſtle-Covo*, bound by their Order to ſerve in the Wars againſt the Infidels; upon which ſervices they have been ſeen ſometimes in the field, with 300 great Horſe.

2 Of S. *Jago*, inſtituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Caſtile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the ſecurity and entertainment of *Chriſtian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of S. *Jago*: confirmed by the ſaid Pope *Alexander* the 3d, *An.* 1175. under the Rule of S. *Auguſtine*. Their habit is a *White Robe*; with a *Red* Croſſe like a Sword: the companions of it according to the firſt Founders, being part *Eccleſiaſticall*, and part *Secular*; whereof theſe laſt are only tyed unto the vow of conjugall Chaſtity. They grew in little time unto ſuch eſteem, that beſides two Colleges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a Colledge in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hoſpitalls* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Caſtles in ſeverall parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, beſides *Friers* ſerving in their Cures, and other Miniſters, is above 600. Their firſt reſidence at the Hoſpitall of S. *Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*; on a diſlike with *Ferdinand* the ſecond King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Caſtile*, beſtowed upon them by *Alfonſo* the 4th. Upon this occaſion being divided, they have ſince two Maſters or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who reſides at S. *Marks*; the other the *Commendador* of *Caſtile*, who reſides at *Ucles*.

3 Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon* againſt the *Moors*, where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, *An.* 1183. Others aſcribe it to *Alfonſo*, the Succeſſor of that *Ferdinand*, *An.* 1217. by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians* in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the Superiority thereof, and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. Their device at firſt was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a Field *Or*; to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a ſign of their ſubjection to them of *Calatrava*; changed *An.* 1411. to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Croſſe* on th eir Breaſts.

I omit the Order of the *Dove* and *Reaſon*, inſtituted by K. *John* of *Caſtile*, becauſe of ſmall eſteem, and but ſhort continuance. And ſo much for *Caſtile*, the firſt of thoſe three greater kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the reſt are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Eſtates before deſcribed, amounting to two third parts of the whole; and many large eſtates elſewhere, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter in its proper place. Paſs we on next to *Portugall*, the ſecond in repute of the ſaid three Kingdoms; not ſo much for the largeneſs of the Territories, which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendixes* in all other parts of the World.

11 The Kingdom of *PORTUGAL*.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth 1 *Portugal* it ſelf; 2 *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*; and 3 the *Terceras* or Iſles of *Azores*: theſe laſt not reckoned parts of *Spain* by any of our Writers either old old or new; but made by us a part hereof, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Portugal*, one of the firſt additions which was made unto it on the Ocean; and finally, becauſe I know not under what other head to reduce them better.

And firſt for *PORTUGAL* it ſelf, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio*, and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the Eaſt, with the two *Caſtiles*, and *Extremadura*; from which divided by a line drawn from *Ribadania*, ſtanding on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas* or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coaſt from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it in the broadeſt place (not taking in the Iſlands into this accompt) 100 miles; in the narroweſt, 80; the whole circumference 879 miles, and in that compaſs 1460 Pariſhes.

It was firſt called *Luſitania* from the *Luſitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof, and took the name of *Portugal*, either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called *Caia*, ſometimes a very rich and flouriſhing *Emporie*; or rather from the Haven Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*, where the *Galls* (or the *French* rather) uſed to land their Merchandiſe: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*, and which Town was given in Dower with *Tereſa*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, to *Henry* of *Lorain*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whoſe Succeſſors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all thoſe Countreys which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Countrey for the moſt part hilly, and bare of Corn, ſupplyed from *France* and other parts of the North; that which they have being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The ſoyl, and people, in all places not rich alike. For where the *ſoyl* is *richeſt*, as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*, there the *People* are *pooreſt*; in regard of the great diſtance thereof from *Lisbon*, and ſo not benefited by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the *ſoyl* is *pooreſt*, there the

the *People* be richeſt, helping themſelves by trade and *manufactures*; eſpecially by making of Silks, and Salt, ſufficient for themſelves, and for other Countreys. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwiſe ſufficiently recompenſed with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fiſh, Salt, white Marble, and ſome Mines of Silver, &c. *Portugal.*

The people are of a more plain and ſimple behaviour, than the reſt of *Spain*; and (if we beleeve the old *Proverb*) none of the wiſeſt. For whereas the *Spaniards* are ſaid to ſeem wiſe, and yet to be Fools; the *French* to ſeem Fools, and yet to be wiſe; the *Italians* both to ſeem wiſe and to be ſo; the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wiſe indeed, nor ſo much as to ſeem ſo. But little different from which is the *Spaniſh* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*, few and fooliſh; which others vary with the addition of another part of their *Character*; ſaying they are *Pocos, Sotos, y Devotos*, few and fooliſh, but withall devout. They have great animoſities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathie*) againſt the *Caſtilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but when *moſt Fools*, were counted for good *Sea-faring* men, and happy in the diſcovery of forain Nations.

Rivers it hath of all ſorts, both great and ſmall, almoſt 200. Thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Minius*, full of red Lead, (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latins*) navigable with ſmall Veſſels 100 miles. 2 *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3 *Muliadas*, now *Mondego*. 4 *Tagus*. 5 *Duerus*, and 6 *Anas*; theſe three laſt common alſo to the reſt of *Spain*: *Anas*, or *Guadiana* paſſing by *Portugal* but for ſeven Leagues only, *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long ſpace by ſhips of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally ſwift of courſe, reſtrained within narrow Channels, banked on both ſides with very ſteep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: Inſomuch that it is reckoned for a great Prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great ſhips 15 or 20 miles within the Continent. But here that want is ſomewhat tolerably ſupplyed with three excellent Havens. 1 That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*, and 2 *Porto* on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*, of which more anon; 3 of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, ſituate on a Golf of 20 miles in length, and three in breadth; a place of principal importance to thoſe parts of the Realm. Rivers however of great fame, according to whoſe courſe the whole Countrey was divided by the *Romans*, into *Ulteriorem*, lying beyond *Duero* Northwards; 2 *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*; and 3 *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1 *Lisbon*, ſeated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for traffick, the *Portugals* in all their Navigations ſetting ſayl from hence. By the *Latines* called *Olyſippo*, and *Uliſſippo*, becauſe as ſome ſay *Ulyſſes* built it, coming hither in the courſe of his ten years travel; a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found, that *Ulyſſes* did ever ſee the Ocean. But like enough it is, that this Town being ſeated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Sea-faring men, might at the firſt be conſecrated to the memory of ſo great a Traveller; as *Athens* being a place of *Learning*, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athene*. It is in compaſſe ſeven miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Pariſhes, and in them 20000 houſes; all of neat and elegant building. Turrets, and Towers it numbreth upon the Walls about 76, Gates towards the Sea-ſhore 22. And towards the Continent ſituate upon five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the higheſt Hill an antient Caſtle, not ſtrong, but by reaſon of the ſituation, ſerving now only for a Priſon for men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Caſtle of *Caſcais*; and neerer to the City by the Fort of *S. Julians*, and the Rock of *Belem*, munitioned with 20 Peeces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honoured with the Seat of the Kings, ſince of the Vice-roys, an Arch-biſhops See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beſides: ſaid by ſome *French* Writers to be the beſt peopled City in *Chriſtendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Conſtantinople*, *Paris*, *Moſco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous and well-traded as the beſt of them all. 2 *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, ſo called from S. *Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monaſtery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did uſe to be crowned) here martyred by the *Moors*; by *Ptolemy* called *Scabaliſcus*, then a *Roman* Colony. 3 *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of the huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whither by reaſon of the cool refreſhings from the Sea, and pleaſure of the Woods adjoyning, the Kings of *Portugal* uſed to retire in the heats of Summer. 4 *Conimbre*, on both ſides the River *Mondego*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Vineyards and Woods of Olives, a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity; the *Maſters* whereof made the Commentary on moſt part of *Ariſtotle*, called from hence *Schola Conimbricenſis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5 *Braga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Bracaria Auguſta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*; the Royall ſeat when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Arch-biſhop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6 *Porto*, the Haven of the *Galls*, on the mouth of *Duero*. 7 *Miranda*, a Biſhops See on the ſame River. 8 *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is ſo great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the People of *Portugal* are his Vaſſals, and live on his Lands; originally deſcended from *Alfonſo*, naturall Sonne to *John* the firſt; created by his Father Earl of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the later Dukes, ſince the time of King *Emanuel* being withall of the right Royall Blood: two ſteps of main advantage to the Regall Throne, lately aſcended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarbe*, there is 9 *Ebora*, in the middeſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, an Arch-biſhops See, and an Univerſity; this laſt of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinall. 10 *Portelegre*, a Biſhops See. 11 *Olivenca* on the *Guadiana*. 12 *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Iulia*, now *Meau*, and not very well inhabited, but antiently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridicall Reſorts of *Luſitania*.

2 The

Azores.

2 The Kingdom of *ALGARVE*, lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line, drawn from *Aſcorin* on the Weſtern Sea, to *Odechere* a Caſtle on the *Guadiana*; on the Eaſt bounded by *Andaluzia*; on the Weſt, and South, by the main *Atlantick*. This the moſt wild and deſert part of all this Kingdom, barren and drie: peopled with few Towns, nor thoſe very populous: hilly and Mountainous withall, but yeelding by the benefit of the Sea a great trade of fiſhing, of *Tunny* ſpecially; whereof more caught upon this coaſt than in all the Kingdom.

The name it took from the Weſtern ſituation of it, for ſo the word *Algarve* ſignifieth in the *Arabick* tongue. The utmoſt end of it called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*, now the Cape of S. *Vincent*; becauſe the bones of S. *Vincent* religiouſly preſerved by the Chriſtians, were here burnt and ſcattered about by the *Moors*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Mefad*, once a King of this Countrey. 2 *Silvis*, an Epiſcopall See, ſeated in the In-land parts. 3 *Villa nova*, ſituate beyond the Cape. 4 *Tavila*, the *Balſa*, and 5 *Faro*, the *Oſſonoba* of *Ptolemy*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*. 6 *Lagos*, another Haven Town alſo.

This Countrey conquered by the *Moors* with the reſt of *Spain*, in the diſtractions of their power, was for a time under the ſoveraignty and command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became ſubject unto them till they left this Countrey, and after their retreat was parcelled among many Princes. One of which called *Aben Mefad*, reigning in *Niebla* and the parts adjoyning, being diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, moſt of the other Towns and Princes ſubmitted to him, and became his Vaſſals, *An.* 1257. More abſolutely ſubdued, and made ſubject to the Crown of *Portugal* by *Alfonſo* the third, An. 1260. to whom the ſaid *Alfonſo*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Caſtile*, had given the ſame in Dowry with *Beatrix* his Daughter. From which maryage iſſued *Dionyſius* or *Denys* King of *Portugal*, the firſt that ever uſed the title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, An. 1279.

3 The *AZORES* are certain Iſlands lying in the *Atlantick* Ocean, oppoſite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which diſtant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern *Latitude*; and one of them in the firſt *Longitude*, which is commonly reckoned from theſe Iſlands, as being the moſt Weſtern part of the *World*, before the diſcovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goſ-Hawks* which were found there in the beginning; (the word *Azor* in the *Spaniſh* tongue ſignifying a *Goſ-Hawk*): though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called alſo the *Flemiſh Iſlands*, becauſe firſt diſcovered by the *Flemings*, and the great numbers of them in the Iſle of *Faial* (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet ſome Families which reſemble the *Flemings*, both in their complexion and habit; and not far from the place of their abode a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Riberados Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are alſo called the *Terceras*, from *Tercera* the chief Iſle among them.

The Air of thoſe Iſlands is generally good, and ſubject unto few diſeaſes, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an impoſtumation of the blood breaking out at the Eyes or other parts of the Body. Some other inconveniences they are ſubject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and ſtorms, of ſuch a violent and ſtrange kind of working, that barres of Iron as big as a mans Arm, have in ſix years been worn as little as a ſtraw. All of them well ſtored with Fleſh, Fiſh, and other things neceſſary, except Salt and Oyl; with which they are furniſhed out of *Portugal*. Wines they have alſo for their own uſe, but not to be tranſported far becauſe of their weakneſs: for which cauſe alſo, the richer men provide themſelves of *Canary* Wines; or thoſe of the Iſland of *Madera*. Of like nature is their Wheat, and other fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them ſubject unto Earthquakes, and ſome to breathings out of fire; which continually ſendeth forth fuming vapours. The chief commodities which they tranſport unto other Countreys, are *Canary* birds for Ladies, Oad for the Diers, Joyners-work which they ſell to the *Spaniards*, and Beeves for the victualling of ſuch ſhips as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; inſomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks; much given to *Joynery*, by which they make many pretty fancies, much eſteemed by the *Spaniards*; but not ſo expert at it as thoſe of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach their Cattell underſtanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Maſter calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their cuſtoms and apparell; but with ſome ſmattering of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Iſlands nine in number, and diſtinguiſhed by the ſeverall names of, 1 *Tercera*, 2 S. *Michael*, 3 *Faial*, 4 *Gratioſa*, 5 S. *George*, 6 *Pico*, 7 *Corvo*, 8 *Flores*, and 9 S. *Maries*, of which S. *Michaels* and St. *Maries* lie next to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the North-weſt of of thoſe; (by conſequence the third in Order, whence it had the name) S. *Georges*, *Gratioſa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, on the Weſt of that; and finally thoſe of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, neereſt to *America*.

1 *TERCERA*, the chief of all the reſt, 18 miles in compaſſe, well ſtored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges: and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Batato-roots* (which are the beſt food the people have) as any be in the World; but more eſteemed in *Portugal* than they be in this Iſland, by reaſon of their great abundance. Here is alſo great quantity of the beſt kind of Woad, (which from hence is called *Iland-Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which bears no Fruit, but hath a Root as profitable as thoſe that do: out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattreſſes, in ſtead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the uſe of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any ſafety in it but that of *Angra*; and that made ſafe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which ſtick out like

a

a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who ſhall venture over them. Places of moſt im- *Azores.*
portance in it, 1 *Praye*, on the Sea-ſide, well walled, but not but not very well peopled. 2 S. *Barbara*, 3 S. *Sebaſtians*, 4 *Gualne*, and 5 *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6 *Angra*, the chief not of this Iſland only, but of all the nine; the Reſidence of the Governour, and an Arch-biſhops See, who hath in it his Cathedrall Church. Seated on a convenient Bay made in the form of a *Creſcent*, with two Promontories on each ſide, (like the two horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle for defence of the Haven; the Town it ſelf alſo well-walled about, and environed with ſharp Rocks on all ſides. Both Town and Caſtles well garriſoned, and no leſs diligently guarded. This in regard of its great ſtrength, and commodious Haven, is eſteemed the principall of theſe Iſlands, and communicates its name unto all the reſt: though neither neereſt unto *Spain*, nor the greateſt in compaſs.

2 S. *MARIES*, ſo called from the Saint (as S. *Georges* and S. *Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the moſt Southern of theſe Iſles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* only, and thoſe much given unto the making of Earthen Veſſels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be eaſily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it hath the name of St. *Maries* alſo, which it either giveth unto the Iſland, or borroweth from it.

3 S. *MICHAELS*, directly North of S. *Maries*, from which little diſtant, the biggeſt in the whole pack; as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not anſwerable: much ſubject unto Earthquakes and fiery vapours. Of moſt note amongſt our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the firſt *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into Eaſt and Weſt) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Iſlands*; where it was fixed in the time of *Ptolemy*, and others of the antient Writers.

And this remove ſeems countenanced even by Nature it ſelf, it being obſerved that the *Compaſſe* when it cometh under the *Meridian* drawn through this Iſle, hath little or no *Variation* at all, but pointeth almoſt directly towards the North; whereas in all other places or leſs *Meridians*, Eaſt and Weſt, it pointeth not ſo directly North, but more or leſs to the *North-eaſt*, or the *North-weſt*; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-eaſting*, and the *North-weſting* of the Compaſs. And yet it is obſerved of late, that there is ſome more ſenſible variation of it in this Iſle of S. *Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*: which therefore is conceived more fit for the firſt *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, beſides many Burroughs and leſſer Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, ſeated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers than the Port of *Angra*, becauſe here they may go in and out as they pleaſe, but not ſo in the other.

4 *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length, plentifully provided with all things neceſſary for the life of man, and well furniſhed with Woad; for which Commodity much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it *Dorta*, defended with a Caſtle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*; both Town and Iſland taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *An.* 1597. This Action was called the *Iſland-Voyage*, undertaken as well to divert the War which the *Spaniards* threatned to bring to our own doors; as by ſeizing ſome of theſe Iſlands, to intercept the *Spaniſh* Fleets in their return, and to hinder them in their ſetting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their neighbour Nations. And though the *Engliſh* were not able to hold it long, yet it was ſaid, that the booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 400000 Crowns; beſides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took this name from its abundance of *Beeches*.

5 *GRATIOSA*, not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs; but ſo well furniſhed with fruits, that they ſend much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but ſo poor that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6 S. *GEORGES*, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of *Forreſts*: but thoſe *Forreſts* ſo well ſtored with *Cedars*, that they uſe them many times for ſhipping, and ſometimes for Fewell. The chief Town of it called S. *Georges*, as the Iſland is.

7 *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Iſle of S. *George*, and took this name from an high Hill in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Repleniſhed with fruits, ſome *Cedars*, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty: the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within and waved; ſo admirably beautifull, that it is allowed only to the Kings Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the uſe of it (but on ſpeciall licence) by a publick Edict. In bigneſs it is ſecond only unto that of S. *Michael*, if not equall to it; hardly ſo much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1 S. *Sebaſtians*, 2 *Callota de Neſquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the Eaſt parts of the Iſland.

8 *FLORES*, directly Eaſt from *Fayall*, ſo called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratioſa* from the like flouriſhing Verdure of it) is in compaſs not above 8 miles; but plentifully furniſhed with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it *Santa Crux*. The Iſle (though ſmall, yet) twice as big as the Iſle of 9 *CORVO*, ſo called from its abundance of Crowes, ſituate on the North hereof, and but little diſtant: both very unſafe, and both moſt miſerably poor, by reaſon of the many Pirates which lie betwixt them, to intercept ſuch ſhips as trade towards *America*. But this, though much ſmaller than the others, may in time be of more eſteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the moſt naturall place for the firſt *Meridian*; as before was noted: the *Needle* here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. Which whether it proceed from ſome ſecret inclination of the *Load-ſtone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being ſituate betwixt the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magneticall* vertue of the Earth it ſelf: I leave to be diſputed by more able judgements.

Portugal. These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Sonne of *John* the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were also the last Members of the Crown of *Portugal* which held out for *Don Antonio* the Bastard, against *Philip* the second of *Castile*: against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the last by the Marqueſſe of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promise of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garrisoned at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on some reason of State, to make sure of the best Islands by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castles of *Angra*, in *Tercera*; the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in S. *Michaels*; and *Dorta* in *Fayall*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be carefull of them, these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Æthiopia*, *Brasil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: because the *Fleets* which come from those Countreys to *Lisbon*, or *Sevill*, must in a manner of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their course if they come from the West, as in recovering such winds as are usefull to them, if they come from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know, that the antient Inhabitants of it were the *Lusitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duerus*, the old *Lusitania* being bounded within those Rivers; the *Celtici*, and *Turditani*, who took up also some part of *Bætica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*; and the *Gallaici Bracarii* (so called to difference them from the *Gallaici Lucenses* who possessed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Duerus*. Subjected first unto the *Romans*, by whom accompted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Suevians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royall seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* lost it to the *Gothes*, and the *Gothes* to the *Moors*, as hath been shewn already in their severall stories. Recovered in part by the Kings of *Leon*; to whom that part continued subject, till given by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his base Daughter *Terasa*, to *Henry* of *Lorrein*; whose vertue and good service merited no less reward, *An.* 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl, for the space of 12 years, left his Sonne *Alfonso*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of *Portugal*, by the Soveraigns of *Leon*, for his most gallant demeanor shewn in the battell of *Obrique*, *An.* 1139. He had before the *Assumption* of the Regall Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here with no less, 45 years after that *Assumption*, reverenced by his Friends, and feared by his Enemies. So that the whole time of his sitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Soveraignty, than any Prince, since the first beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Successors we shall have in order, in the following Catalogue. But we must first tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of most note in the whole succession, are, 1 *Henry* of *Lorrein* (whom some make a *Burgundian* of the City of *Besancon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deserving nobly in the same; was honoured by *Alfonso* the sixth, with his Daughter *Terasa* and the Town of *Portio* for her Dower: given to him with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Estate as far as *Conimbre*, on the South of the River *Duero*; that River being before that time the utmost bound of it that way. 2 *Alfonso* the first King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, *An.* 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdom, which he extended South-ward as far as *Algarve*. 3 *Alfonso* the 3d, who partly by Conquest, and partly by Mariage, added *Algarve* to his Estate; getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He also did prevail so far with *Alfonso* the *Wise*, (never the wiser for so doing) as to get his Realm discharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*, *An.* 1270. 4 *Alfonso* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the same name in *Castile*, against *Alboacen* the *Miramomolin* of *Africk*, at the fight neer the River *Salado*, not far from *Tariff*; where they discomfited the vast Army of *Moors*, consisting of 470000 Horse and Foot. 5 *John* the first, the base sonne of *Pedro* the first, setting aside the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, and the Lawfull Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his mariage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*; a strong Competitor at that time for the Crown of *Castile*: on which relation, this King, the four Kings next succeeding, and two of this Kings younger Sonnes, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6 *Edward* the sonne and Successor of *John* the first, of whom there goes a story, that on the day of his Coronation, he was advised by a *Jew*, (one of his Physitians) learned in Astrology, to defer the Ceremony untill noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his Reign would be very short and full of trouble. But the King either out of magnanimity or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony; the *Jewes* prediction was found true: for he reigned not fully five yeers, and with ill successe in his attempts against the *Moors*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Viseo* (*Visontium* the *Latines* call it) the second sonne of *John* the first, created Knight of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the sixth, *An.* 1444. By whose encouragement, and example, the *Portugueze* began to be affected to forain Voyages: discovering in his time, (and for the most part under his conduct also) the Islands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, those of *Capo Verde*, and a great part of the coast of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*; He dyed *An.* 1465. 8 *Alfonso* the fifth, who warring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the strong Towns of *Tanger*, *Alcaser*, and *Arzilla*. 9 *John* the 2d, under whose reign, the *Portugals* fully setled themselves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; discovering all the Coasts and Isles of *Africk*, (not before discovered) as far as to the *Cape of Good-hope*, *Anno* 1487. planting, and fortifying as they passed: the whole Discovery of *Africk*, the *East-Indies*, and *Brasil*, being perfected in the

Reign

Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*; under whom also they discomfited great Armies of the *Turks*, and *Sultans* of *Egypt*, bringing by Sea the riches of the *East* into the *West*. 11 *Sebastian*, the Granchild of King *John*, Sonne of *Emanuel*, embarking himself unadvisedly in the Wars of *Africk*, lost his life (as it is generally supposed) at the battell of *Alcasar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for shame and sorrow he returned not home; wandring from one place to another, and at the last was found and avowed at *Venice*: thence carryed to *Naples*, where he was kept three dayes in a dark Dungeon, without any sustenance but a knife and a halter; brought into *Spain* by the Kings command, where at last he dyed. A man in whom so many circumstances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* used to say, that either he was the true *Sebastian*, or else the Devil in his likeness. But whether true or not, is not now materiall, death having put an end to that disputation; though the controversie which ensued upon his death for the Crown of *Portugal* be not yet decided. For though King *Philip* the 2d of *Spain* succeeded in next after *Henry* the *Cardinal King* (who only came upon the Stage that the Competitors might have time to declare their Titles); and claimed the Crown as eldest Heir male, and neerest Kinsman to King *Henry*: yet all the World was not well satisfied, in the Justice and Equity of his demands. In the carrying on of which affairs he seemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biassed by their proper *Interest*: offering to submit his Title to a Disputation, professing that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Castile*; and openly acknowledging, that if he should chance to die before the said *Henry*, his eldest Sonne, as being a degree further off, would come behind some others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himself had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make sure work after his decease, (*Antonio* the Bastard having got possession of *Lisbon*, and taking on himself as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raised an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and subdued all that stood against him; *Katharine* the Dutchess of *Braganze*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, surrendring also all her interests and pretensions to him; so entring by a mixt title of descent and Arms, *An.* 1580. Threescore yeers it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when sodainly dispossessed by a potent faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Braganze*, descended from the youngest Sonne of King *Emanuel*: which brought so cunningly and successively in his behalf, that the K. of *Spain* was sooner disseized of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practise set on foot against him, *An* 1639. In which it is to be observed, that as King *Philip* the 2d, for the better obtaining of this Crown, had embroyled the *French*, ingaging that King in a bloody war against the *Protestants* of that Kingdom; to make him sure enough from troubling him in his present Enterprize: so the *French* Ministers had caused a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was busied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themselves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the *Antipathie* betwixt the Nations made lesse pleasing to them. Nor was it a partiall defection only, or the loss of *Portugal* and no more; but a generall falling off of the whole Estate, in *Africk*, *Asia*, *America*, in the Isles and Continents: the *Accessories*, (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*) going the same way, as the *Principall* did. And here me thinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be justly taxed, for committing a greater *Solœcism* in point of State, than ever people did before them: in that having got the full and peaceable possession of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garrisons and strong holds of the whole Estate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it self fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hæsitancie: which, had some of the chief peeces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, being brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Castilians*; might have been easily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing materiall, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever since so overlaid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leizure to attend that business. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is now time to represent you with a Catalogue of

The Kings of *Portugal*.

1139	1	*Alfonso*, the second Earl, and first King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184	2	*Sancho*, the Son of *Alfonso*. 28.
1212	3	*Alfonso* II. Son of *Sancho*. 11.
1223	4	*Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonso* the 2d. 34.
1257	5	*Alfonso* III. Brother of *Sancho* the second. 22.
1279	6	*Denys*, the Son of *Alfonso* the 3d. 48.
1325	7	*Alfonso* IV. the Son of *Denys*. 32.
1357	8	*Pedro*, the Sonne of *Alfonso* the fourth. 19.
1367	9	*Ferdinand*, the Sonne of *Pedro*, the last King of the lawfull issue of *Henry* of *Lorein*. 18.
1385	10	*John*, the base Sonne of *Pedro*, of whom sufficiently before. 48.
1433	11	*Edward*, the Sonne of *John*, and of the Lady *Philip* of *Lancaster*. 5.
1438	12	*Alfonso* V. the Sonne of *Edw.* 43.
1481	13	*John* II. the Sonne of *Alfonso* the fifth. 14.
1495	14	*Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Sonne *Ferdinand* Duke of *Viseo*. 26.
1521	15	*John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38.
1557	16	*Sebastian*, the Nephew of *John* the 3d, by his Sonne *Don John*; unfortunately slain in the fields of *Africk*. 21.
1578	17	*Henry* the Cardinall, Son of King *Emanuel*, the last of the male issue of *Henry* of *Lorein*. 2.

Valentia.

1580 18 *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, Sonne of *Charls* King of *Caſtile* and Emperour, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.

1598 19 *Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*.

1621 20 *Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. During his Reign the *Portugueze* weary of the *Spaniſh* Government, choſe for their King

1636 21 *John* Duke of *Bragance*, the IV. of that name, a Prince of great poſſeſſions, and of Royall race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better ſee by what title, both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Bragance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of *Sebaſtian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Baſtard (but alleadging a ſentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the Houſe of *Savoy* did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following *Scheme*.

Emanuel had theſe Children.

1 *John*, King of *Portugal* — *John* Prince of *Portugal* — *Sebaſtian*, King of *Portugal*.

2 *Lewis* — *Don Antonio* a Baſtard. — *Chriſtopher* and others.

3 *Henry* the Cardinall, King of *Portugal*.

4 *Edward*: 1 *Mary*, wedded to *Alexander* Duke of *Parma*. — *Rainuccio Farneſis*. 2 *Katharine*, maryed to *John* Duke of *Bragance*.

5 *Mary*, maryed to *Charles* the fifth, King of *Caſtile*. — *Philip* the II. King of *Spain*.

6 *Beatrix* maryed to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the claims are grounded; but whether title will prevail cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royall line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, ſo it ended in an *Henry* alſo: the male line failing in the perſon of the Cardinall-King, and the Crown falling (on whomſoever it ſhall faſten) on the Heirs of the Females.

The principall Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are, 1 Of *Avis*, ſo called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the ſeat thereof; founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the firſt, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whoſe *Green Croſs* they wear; but equall to it neither in power nor riches.

2 Of *CHRIST*, inſtituted by *Denys* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the exautorated *Templars*; confirmed by Pope *John* the 22d. *An.* 1321. Their Robe is a *Black Caſſock* under a *White Surcoat*; over which a *Red Croſs*, ſtroaked in the midſt with a white line: their duty to expell the *Moors* out of *Batica*, the next Neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown they have added many gallant Countreys in *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *Braſil*; and ſo improved their own Eſtates, that all the Iſles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them: beſides the rents of the Mine of S. *George* in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Eſcocheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the firſt, pointed *Sable*, within a Border *Gules*, charged with ſeven Towers, *Or*. Which five Eſcocheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonſo* the firſt King ſlew at the battell of *Obrique*, *An.* 1139. the Border with the Towers or Caſtles, being added by *Alfonſo* the third, on his Inveſtiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1257. whoſe Daughter *Beatrix* he then maried, and ſo conceived himſelf to have ſome relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And ſo proceed we on to thoſe Provinces, which are under the Government of *Aragon*; the third great body of this State.

12 *VALENTIA.*

VALENTIA hath on the Eaſt, the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, parts of *Caſtile*, and *Aragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia*, upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers 1 *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron*, and *Surus*; 2 *Guadalander*, ſignifying a River of pure water; and 3 *Millar*.

This Countrey ſtandeth in the moſt temperate and pleaſing Air of all *Spain*, full of Gardens, and places of wonderfull delight; where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garniſhed all the yeer long with ſweet-ſmelling flowers, and miraculouſly fruitfull of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath alſo Mines of Silver at *Buriol*, of Gold at *Lodar*, of Iron at *Finiſtrat*, of Alabaſter at *Piacent*, and of Allom, Lime, and Plaiſter in many places. From thence alſo come the beſt Silks in the World, Cotton of *Marcia*, Crimſon, Scarlet, and other precious colours, and rich perfumes. Finally, all the ſenſes of man may be delighted, and refreſhed, with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality and ſweetneſſe much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleaſures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought leſſe warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Countrey alſo bear the fineſt Fleeces, of any in *Spain*; firſt ſtocked with *Cotſwold* ſheep from *England*, at the requeſt of *John* King of *Aragon*, *An.* 1465. by the imprudent courteſie of K. *Edward* the fourth.

Places of moſt note in it are, 1 *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our

true

true *Alicant* Wines, made of the juice of Mulberies; by *Ptolemie* called *Illicias*, by *Mela*, *Ilice*; from whence the Bay adjoyning is called *Sinus Ilicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2 *Orivela*, a Bishops See, on the River *Segura*, which divides this Province from *Murcia*. 3 *Segorve*, a Bishops See, by *Ptolemie* named *Segobriga*, the chief City in old times of the *Celtiberi*. 4 *Xelva*, supposed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livie*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5 *Valentia*, a fair, pleasant, and well-traded City, the See of an Archbishop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its first glory, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in these parts of *Spain*; in its last, the Royal Seat of the *Mooriſh* Kings of this Countrey. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Dureas*, now called *Guadalander*: and is by some said to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which signifieth strength. But when the *Romans* mastered it, to distinguish it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*: which in the *Latine* Tongue, is of the same signification with the *Greek* ἡ Ρώμη. Here is an University, in which S. *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, studied. 6 *Laurigi*, now a smal Village, once a Town of great strength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* besieged, took and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whose confederates the *Lauronites* were, stood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the flame to warm his hands; and yet durst not succour it. 7 *Cullera*, a Sea Town standing at the mouth of the River *Xucar*. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey*'s Army being not only overthrown, but himself with life hardly escaping. 8 *Morvedre*, situate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*; the People whereof when besieged by *Annibal*, continued so obstinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they chose rather to burn themselves, than yeeld up the Town: the occasion of the second War betwixt *Rome*, and *Carthage*. First Founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this destruction of it, repaired, or re-edified by the *Romans*, (they could not possibly do less) by whom made a *Colonie*. 9 *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the house of *Borgia*, and was the stile of *Francisco Borgia*, the eldest Son of Pope *Alex.* the sixth (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine* by the name of the Duke of *Gandie*. 10 *Denia*, seated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly prospect; the Marquisate of the Duke of *Lerma*. First Founded by the *Massilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*, the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars against *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged, and of much experience; the other young, and of high resolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himself more troubled with the old mans gravity, than the young mans gallantry: insomuch as he was used to say, That *had it not been for the old Woman* Metellus, *he would have whipped the Boy* Pompey *home with Rods*. For he had twice overcome this *Great Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyned in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both he was over-matched; and yet seemed rather to retire than flie before them: the *Spaniards* behaving themselves very valiantly in the time of these Wars under him; to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit* Hispani *militis Vigor, quàm* Romano *duce*. At the last when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* faction, he was traiterously murthered by *Perpenna* one of his *Associates*; for which *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Triumph* at *Rome*. So high an estimate did they set upon the casual death of this poor *Proscript*.

Catalonia.

The Ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Bastitani*, the *Edetani*, *Contestani*, and some part of the *Celtiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarraconensis*, afterward (in the sub-dividing of that Province by *Constantine*) of *Carthaginensis*. In the declining of the Empire first subdued by the *Alani*, who were scarce warm in their new dwellings, when dissetsed by the *Gothes*. From the *Gothes* taken by the *Moores*, of whose Kingdom reckoned as a Province; till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enasir* at the battel of *Sierra Morena*, and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco* to their own Countrey, which followed presently upon it. By *Zeit Aben-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self, *Anno* 1214. but taken from him by one *Zaen* a Prince of the *Moores* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Aragon*, (as indeed he did) *Anno* 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new raised Kingdom, by *James* King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1238 Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never dismembred from the body of it since the first uniting. But still so overgrown with *Moores* (not to be blamed for loving such an excellent seat) that at the final expulsion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer, than 22000 Families of them in this little Countrey.

The Armes hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattelled *Argent* purfled (or pennond) *Sable*.

12. *CATALONIA.*

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Rousillon* and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South, with *Valentia*; and on the North and North-west, with *Aragon*. The Countrey somewhat mountainous and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholding more in that respect, for Corn, Fruits, and other necessary provisions unto the courtesie of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countreys, than to the Goodness of the Land. And yet it is as well watered as most parts of *Spain*, having in it besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1 *Tardera*, 2 *Lobregat*, 3 *Segre*, 4 *Francolino*, 5 *Besons*, and 6 *Onhar*.

Catalonia. The name of *Catalonia* ſome derive from the *Caſtellani*, who formerly inhabited ſome part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Gothes* and *Alani*, ſucceſſively the Maſters of it: and ſome more improbably from one *Carthalot*, a Noble man of this Countrey, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* people of *Languedoc*, the adjoyning Province; from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici* near unto *Tholouſe*, took denomination. But from what root ſoever they came, certain it is that they are generally a ſtout and couragious People, as may be ſeen by their exploits in moſt parts of *Greece*, which they miſerably ſpoyled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the ſecond, to whoſe aid called in. But then withall they are a very perverſe and obſtinate people, little obſervant of the pleaſure or profit of their *natural Princes*; but on the other ſide, ſo zealous in defence of their own *Priviledges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the reſt of the ſubjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other inſtance than their late revolt unto the *French*, *Anno* 1638. which drew after it the loſs of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the reſt of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it are, 1 *Barcelone*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spaniſh* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italie*. The Town adorned with large ſtreets, handſome buildings, ſtrong wals, and a very pleaſant ſituation: called *Barcino* by the ancient writers, in whoſe time it was a *Roman* Colony; now honoured with a Biſhops See, and the Seat of the *Vice-roy*. 2 *Tarragone*, ſeated alſo on the *Mediterranean*, Eaſt of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified and peopled by the two *Scipio's*, the Father and Unkle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthagena* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the *Metropolis* of *Tarraconenſis*, hence denominated; but ſtript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compaſs, and containing not above 700 Families. Yet ſtill it holdeth the reputation of an Archbiſhops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* alſo doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*): the controverſie being undecided to this very day. 3 *Ampurias*, on the ſame ſea alſo, once of great eſteem, founded by the *Maſſilians*; a *Roman* Colony, and a well Traded Town, as the name doth ſignifie: this being the *Emporia* ſpoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolemie*; now not obſervable for any thing but a ſafe Road for ſhips. 4 *Blanos*, 5 *Palamos*, and 6 *Roſas*, all Ports on the ſame Sea, but ſubject unto divers winds, and not very ſpacious. More in the Land are 7 *Girone*, a ſmall but handſomly built, and a well traded Town; a Biſhops See, and the title of the eldeſt Son of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which title was firſt given to *John*, the eldeſt Son to King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his birth, *Anno* 1351. and hath ſince continued. 8 *Tortoſa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the moſt rich and pleaſant part of all the Countrey; recovered from the *Moores* by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone* and Prince of *Aragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Monenda*, Seneſchal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good ſervice in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garriſoned by the *French*, ſince the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whileſt it continueth in their power, or the poſſeſſion of their party. 9 *Urgel*, a Earls honour, and a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10 *Momblane*, which heretofore gave the title of Duke, to the ſecond Sons of the Kings of *Aragon*. 11 *Moncada*, once a Town of ſtrength, but of more note for giving denomination to the noble Family *de Moncada*, Hereditary Seneſchals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is alſo on the Eaſt part where it joyneth with the land of *Rouſillon*, the Promontory called of old *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Ceux*. And not far from *Barcelone* the Mountain called *Moniſerrato*, on the ſides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* cells; and having towards the ſummit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and reſorted to by *Pilgrims* from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enſhrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province were the *Caſtellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Coſetani*, with part of the *Ilercones* and *Iaccetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconenſis*. In the declining of the *Empire*, ſeized on by the *Alani*; and they ſoon after vanquiſhed, if not diſpoſſeſſed, by the power of the *Gothes*. Loſt to the *Moores* in the general ruine of the whole; from them recovered by the puiſſance of *Charles* the Great: who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, *Anno* 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a *Frenchman*, with the title of Earl, who Governed the Countrey for that Emperor; as *Wifredus*, or *Godfredus* his ſucceſſor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus* Son to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Groſs*, was the firſt Proprietary; united unto *Aragon*, by the mariage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. Firſt held in Vaſſalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgement releaſed to King *James* the firſt, *Ann.* 1260. by the King St. *Lewis*, the King of *Aragon* releaſing at the ſame time his pretenſions and rights of Soveraignty to *Carcaſſon*, *Beziers*, *Albi*, *Niſmes*, and ſome other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that the *Catellans* had neglected the acknowledgement of their ſubjection to that Crown, it being ordered by *Alfonſo* the ſecond King of *Aragon*, about the year 1180. that the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France* ſhould no more be uſed in any inſtruments or writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which in effect was to diſclaim the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*.

The

The Earls of *Barcelone*.

A. Ch.		
884	1	*Godfredus*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, Son of *Wifrede*, the *Provincial* Governor for the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*.
914	2	*Miron* Son of *Godfredus*.
933	3	*Godfredus* II. Son of *Miron*, by ſome called *Seniofrid*.
971	4	*Borellus*, Brother of *Miron*, and Unkle of *Godfred* the ſecond.
993	5	*Raymond*, Son of *Borellus*.
1017	6	*Berengarius*, ſurnamed *Borellus*, Son of *Raymond*.
1035	7	*Raymond* II. Son of *Berengarius Borellus*.
1076	8	*Raymond* III. Son of *Raymond* the ſecond.
1082	9	*Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence* alſo, in right of *Doulce* his wife.
1131	10	*Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the fourth, and *Doulce* Counteſs of *Provence*, maried *Petronilla* Daughter of *Raymir*, or *Raymond* the ſecond, King of *Aragon*; whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, *Anno* 1134. Uniting theſe Eſtates together, never ſince diſ-joyned: the chief Procurer of this match being *William Raimond* of *Moncada* ſpoken of before.

The Armes hereof were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field *Or*; now the Armes of *Aragon*. Which Armes were given to *Geofrie*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, the firſt Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperor and King of *France*, to whoſe aid he came againſt the *Normans* with a Troop of Horſe: and being bloudy in the fight, deſired of the Emperor to give him ſome Coat of Armes, which he and his Poſterity might from thenceforth uſe. Who dipping his four fingers in the bloud of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield (which was only of Plain *Gold*, without any Deviſe) ſaying, *This ſhall be your Armes hereafter.*

11. The Kingdom of *MAIORCA.*

THE Kingdom of *MAIORCA* contained the Iſlands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuiſa*, and *Frumentaria*, in the *Mediterranean*; the Land of *Rouſillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*, in the Continent of *Spain*; and the Earldom of *Montpelier*, in *France*.

The Land of *ROUSILLON*, which is the firſt Member of this Kingdom, is ſituate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*; bounded on the South with the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Catalogne*; on the North, with the ſaid *Pyrenees*; on the Eaſt, with *Languedoc* in *France*. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Helna*, a Biſhops See on the River *Techo*. 2 *Collibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a ſafe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, ſo often mentioned in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3 *Perpignan* (in *Latine*, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068. by *Guinard* Earl of *Rouſillon*, in a pleaſant Plain on the River *Thelis*: now a rich Town, well traded, and as ſtrongly fortified againſt the *French*; to whoſe fury in the time of war it is ſtill expoſed. Beſieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the firſt, with a puiſſant Army, *Anno* 1542. Partly to be revenged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marſeilles* in *Provence*; and partly to get into his hands a chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdom. But he found here ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, with as little honour, as *Charles* had gotten by the Expedition which he made into *Provence*. 4 *Salſus* (the *Salſulæ* of *Strabo*) a ſtrong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc*; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks againſt the *French*. 5 *Rouſillon*, a Caſtle of more honour and antiquity, then ſtrength or beauty, by *Plinie*, and other Ancients, called *Ruſeino*, the Countrey *Comitatus Ruſeinonenſis*, now *Rouſillon*, and the Land of *Rouſillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gaule Narbonenſis*, and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Gothes*. On the death of *Gerrard*, the laſt *Proprietary* Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Aragon* by *Alfonſo* the ſecond; by *James* the firſt, laid to the Kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that ſold (or rather pawned) by King *John* the ſecond, to *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* for the ſum of 300000 Crowns, *Anno* 1462. and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the ſecond, (after called the *Catholick*) by King *Charles* the eighth, *Anno* 1493, conditioned that he ſhould not hinder him in the Conqueſt of *Naples*. Joyning hereto as part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Countrey of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*; the habitation of the *Cerretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Aragon*. The chief Town of thoſe *Cerretani*, called *Julia Lybica*; the principall now being hath the name of *Cardona* (or *Sardona* as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce) retaining ſome reſemblance to the name of the Nation. The Countrey lying in the Valleys of the *Pyrenees*, and conſequently in a corner ſomewhat out of the way; was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Rouſillon* (for the better endowment of this Kingdom): the fortunes of which it hath ſince followed, as appendent on it; pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that reſtored.

2 The Earldom of *MONTPELIER* is ſituate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoyning to the Land of *Rouſillon*; ſo called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the deſcription whereof, we muſt ſend the Reader back to *France*, having ſpoken of it there already. All I ſhall here repeat is this, that *Mary* the Daughter of *William* the laſt Earl thereof, brought it by mariage to her Husband *Peter* the ſecond, King of *Aragon*: and that it was ſold to *Philip de Valoys* the *French* King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory and affairs of this little Earldom, but

the

Majorca. the fortunes of the two last Countesses of it. Of which the first being Daughter of *Emanuel Comnenus* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and affianced to *Alfonso* the second, King of *Aragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier* in her way towards *Spain*, and there lodged with her whole retinue in the house of *William* then Earl thereof, *Anno* 1174. But hearing that *Alfonso*, contrary to his word and promise, was in treaty of another mariage with the Princess *Sancha* of *Castile* (which he celebrated very shortly after) and ashamed to return to the Court of her Father after such an injury; she hearkned to the counsel of her Lords and followers, who perswaded her to mary with Earl *William*, then a lusty Batchelor; which was done accordingly. To him she brought a Daughter named *Mary* (their only childe) afterwards maried to *Don Pedro* the second, Son of *Alfonso*, and successor to him in that Kingdom: so that although the Mother could not have the happiness to be Queen of *Aragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no very great beauty, the King her husband grew weary of her, and would have been divorced, had the Pope consented: whose consent not being to be had, he forsook her bed, and betook himself to other women. Which the Queen not being otherwise able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his chamber called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his bed (when some other Mistress was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, neither well pleased, nor much offended at the honest fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*; successor to his Father in the Kingdom of *Aragon*, and to his Mother (the last Countesse of it) in the Earldom of *Montpelier*: united in his person into one Estate, and by him finally parted from it in the erection of the new Kingdome of *Majorca*, as before was said.

3 The Island of *MAJORCA* is situate in the *Mediterranean*, just over against *Valentia*; from which distant about 60 miles: about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth somewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land on all sides towards the Sea is somewhat mountainous, and barren withall: the In-lands more Champian and fruitful; yeelding sufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the use of its people. The whole Island is divided into 50 parts, (as so many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and those not hurtful but by accident, of which more anon.

Places of chief note in the former times were 1 *Palma*, and 2 *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens. 3 *Cinium*, and 4 *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latines*; and 5 *Bochri* (or *Bocchorum*) which was in the condition of a Town *confederate*; besides divers others not so priviledged. Of these none left at this day but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorca*, by the name of the Island; a Bishops See, the Seat of the *Vice-roy* for these Isles, and an *University*: the birth-place of *Raymundus Lullius*, a man of great wit, and profound judgement, the Author of some Books in the Art of *Chymistrie*; whose Works are read and studied in that University, as *Aristotles* are in others. This is the greater of the two Islands called *Baleares*, whence it had the name. Adjoyning hereunto two others of inferiour note, called *Dragonera*, and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4 *MINORCA*, so called because it is the *lesser* of the *Baleares*, is situate Eastward of *Majorca*, from which distant near 100 miles; of about 60 miles in length and 150 miles in Circuit. More fruitful than the other, though less in quantity; of a rich soyl, which breedeth them great herds of Cattel, and Mules of the largest size of any in *Spain*: accommodated also with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farnessus*. Other considerable places are 1 *Minorca*, now so called by the name of the Island, but anciently known by the name of *Mago*: situate in the East part thereof, first founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And so was also 2 *Jamno*, seated in the West (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus a* Pœnis *indita nomina*, saith *Severus*, Bishop of these Isles, *Anno* 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella* or the little City. Here was also in the mid-land a third Town called *Saniſera* by *Pliny*, of which I finde now no track remaining.

5 *EBUSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land and the *Baleares*, opposite to the Promontorie of *Ferraria* in the Realm of *Valentia*; from which distant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles in compass. The Countrey plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits; breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only; which many times destroy their Harvest. The chief Town here, is *Yvica*, (of old called *Ebusus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great store of Salt; wherewith they do not only furnish *Spain*, but some parts of *Italie*.

6 *FRUMENTERA*, so called from the plenty of Corn, is distant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of *Spain*; in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited by reason of the multitude of Serpents; for which called qy the *Grecians Ophiusa*, and *Colubraria* by the *Latines*. Both Islands anciently known by the name of *Pityusæ*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About these Islands are six others of little worth, called 1 *Vedra*, 2 *Conirello*, and 3 *Dragonago*; 4 Another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the influx of the River *Iberus*. 5 *Alsaques*, lying in the very mouth of that River: and 6 *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Island of *Hercules*) over against *Carthagena*; so named from a kind *Tunny* in *Latine* named *Scombri*, of which great shoales use to lie about it. All these, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Islands, the seventh Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of these Islands were the *BALEARES*, so called (as the general conceit is) from the *Greek* word βάλλειν, which signifieth to throw; because the people were so expert in *throwing* their Slings or Darts: but as *Bochartus* will needs have it (to the same effect) from *Baal-iare*, a *Punick* or *Phœnician* word, signifying a *master in the Art of slinging*. An Art so naturall and innative to the

them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some fit age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings*, from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the Ancient Writers, as well Historians as Poets. And from this exercise they had the name also of *Insulæ Gymnasiæ*; or else because the people of it used to go *naked* to the wars, (and possibly enough in those first Ages of the world, at other times also) from the *Greek* word γυμνὸς, the same with *Nudus* in the *Latine*. Nor were they good at *slinging* only, but at *swimming* too, an exercise not ordinarily performed but by *naked* people; at which the very women are at this day expert: *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, that being becalmed about these Islands, there came a Woman swimming from one of them with a Basket of fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies, which here, and in the neighbouring Continent increased so wonderfully: that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain* undermined by them; and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their trees. Insomuch that the Inhabitants did request the *Romans* to give them some new seats to inhabit in; ἐκβαλλειν γὰρ ὑπὸ πλήθους ζώων τὰ τῶν, being ejected by those creatures out of their possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Plinie* telleth us) for some aid against them; who in stead of *Souldiers*, sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities; one of which in the Isle of *Ebusus* had the name of *Phœnissa*: From them also they derived the Art of Slinging. Made subject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Himilco*, *Anno M.* 5500 or thereabouts; at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under that State they remained subject till the end of the second *Punick* war: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themselves; till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who subdued *Creet*. The people were much given to Piracy, and seeing the *Roman* Navy saying by their Coasts, supposed them to be Merchant men; assaulted them, and at first prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the shore, discovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling submission; for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they always after that followed the fortunes thereof. In the distraction of the Empire of the *Moores* in *Spain*, they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majorca*; won from the *Moores* by *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, with the help of the *Genoese*, 1102. By the *Genoese* delivered to the *Moores* again; and from them reconquered by *James* King of *Aragon*, descended from that *Raymond*, *Anno* 1228.

Of these Estates consisted the Kingdom of *Majorca*, erected by King *James* the first, immediately almost on his recovery of these Islands from the hands of the *Moores*; and by him given unto *James* his second Son, who fearing the displeasure of his Brother King *Peter* the third, submitted his new Kingdom to the *Vassalage* of the Crown of *Aragon*. Yet could not this so satisfie the ambition, or jealousies of those mightier Kings, as to preserve his Successors in possession of it: By *Pedro* the 4th extorted from King *James*, the fourth and last King thereof, under colour of denying his accustomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the House of *Aragon*.

A. Ch.		
1276	1	*James* the first, Son to *James* the first, King of *Aragon*.
1312	2	*Sancho*, Son of *James* the first.
	3	*James* II. Son of *Ferdinand* the Brother of *James* the 2d.
	4	*James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and slain in battel by *Pedro* the 4th King of *Aragon*. *Majorca* and other members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever since unted unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, sold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdom. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was discomfited and slain in the Isle of *Majorca*, Anno 1348. as before is said.

The Forces of this little Kingdom may be best estimated by the Army which the *Moores* brought into the field against *James* the first, for defence of the Island of *Majorca*, consisting of 50000 Horse: but better by the Army of *James* the last King hereof, in defence of his Estates against *Pedro* the 4th; (for the *Moors* might possibly be aided by the rest of their Nation) consisting of 3000 Horse, and 15000 Foot, of his naturall Subjects.

13. *ARAGON.*

ARAGON, hath on the East, the Land of *Rousillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the West, the two *Castiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South, and South-East, *Catalonia*, and some part of *Valentia*. So called from the River *Aragon*, by which it is divided from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the first Princes of this house, having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themselves for that reason, the Earls

of

Aragon. of *Aragon*: ſpreading the name as they enlarged their bounds, by enſuing conqueſts: as in like manner the great Earldom of *Moſellets*, founded by the diſherited Sons of *Clodion* ſecond King of the *French*, was named from that River, upon the courſe whereof, and the parts adjoyning, it was firſt erected.

The Countrey lyeth on both ſides of the River *Iberus*, and hath alſo ſeveral Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like ſo many veins through the body of it, yet is generally ſo deſtitute of waters, and ſo ill-inhabited, eſpecially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many dayes, and find neither Town, nor houſe, nor people. But where the Rivers have their courſe, the Caſe is different; the Valleys yeelding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, eſpecially about *Calatainb*, where the air is good, and the ſoil fruitful.

The antient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconenſis*; divided into leſſer Tribes, not here conſiderable. Theſe ſprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is ſaid) the greateſt and moſt potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Countrey, or willing to employ themſelves upon new Adventures, paſſed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themſelves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according unto this of *Lucan*.

——————— *profugique à gente vetuſta*
Gallorum, Celtæ *miſcentes nomen* Iberi.

Who being chas'd from *Gaul*, their home, did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of leſſe conſideration were the *Jaccetani*, and *Lacetani*, with parts of the *Edetani*, and *Illergetes*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1 *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jaccetani*, ſeated amongſt the *Pyrenees*; and for that cauſe choſen for the chief ſeat and reſidence of the firſt Kings of *Aragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragoſſa*, by *Alfonſo* the firſt. 2 *Calatainb*, ſeated on *Xalon* in the beſt Countrey of *Aragon*; ſo called from *Aiub* a *Mooriſh* Prince, the firſt Founder of it. Not far from which upon an hill, ſtood the old Town *Bilbilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martiall*. 3 *Venaſque*, amongſt the *Pyrenees*. 4 *Balbaſtro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtina*, now a Biſhops See. 5 *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as ſome ſay, but others place it on the *Senga*: which riſing in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Aragon*, and ſo paſſeth into *Iberus*. Now an Univerſity, called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the Incounter hapning nigh unto it betwixt *Herculeius* Treaſurer or *Queſtor* to *Sertorius*, and *Manilius* Proconſul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was ſo diſcomfited, and his Army conſiſting of 3 Legions of Foot, and 1500 Horſe ſo routed; that he almoſt alone was ſcarce able to recover this City, few of his Souldiers ſurviving the overthrow. 6 *Moſon*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: At which time the people of *Aragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, preſent the King with 600000 Crowns, *viz.* 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Aragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times the ſit *Rent-Free* as it were: only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the head of their *Common-wealth*. This Revenue is proportionably 200000 Crowns a year, all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Royes* in their ſeveral Provinces. 7 *Hueſca*, (called of old *Oſca*) ſomewhat South of *Iaca*, an Univerſity, a place long ſince dedicated to learning. For hither *Sertorius* cauſed all the Noblemens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-maſters for the *Greek* and *Latine* tongues: bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it only to make them fit to undergoe charge in the Common-wealth; but indeed to have them as hoſtages, for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8 *Saragoſſa*, on the River *Iberus*, called at firſt *Salduba*, by reaſon of the Saltpits there: but being afterwards re-edified by *Cæſar Auguſtus*, it had the name of *Cæſarea Auguſta* (whence that of *Saragoſſa* had its origination) by whom firſt made a Colonie of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium* or *Free-Burough*, ſuffered to live according to the Laws of the Countrey. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the ſeven *Juridical Reſorts* of *Tarraconenſis*; under the *Moores* a peculiar Kingdom of it ſelf; and now a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity. Amongſt the Kings of it, when it was a Kingdom, two are chiefly famous, *viz.* 1 *Marſilius*, who joyned with the confederate *Moores* and *Chriſtians*, againſt *Charles* the *Great*, in the battel of *Roncevaux*. 2ly, *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale in Archbiſhop *Turpine*, that being by the ſaid *Charles* perſwaded to become a *Chriſtian*; he came unto the Emperours Court very well accompanyed, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars* and poor People before the Gates, attending for their uſuall Alms from the Emperours Table; he asked what and who they were, and was anſwered, that they were the poor ſervants of God: upon which words he ſpeedily returned again, Proteſting that *he would never ſerve that God, who could keep his* Servants *no better*. Took from the *Moores* by *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, Ann. 1118. it was made the ſeat Royall of the Kings of *Aragon*, removed hither from *Iacca*: and of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which together with the being an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, hath ſo enriched it, that it is one of the faireſt Cities in all *Spain*, for handſomneſſe of ſtreets, and ſumptuouſneſſe of Palaces, and publick buildings; containing 17 Pariſh Churches, and fourteen Monaſteries, beſides divers Chappels, erected in moſt parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been ſhewn before; toſſed from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*, from them to the *Gothes*, and finally unto the *Moores*. Recovered from the *Moores* about the firſt beginning of the Kingdoms of *Leon*, and *Sobrarbre*. At which time one *Aznar*, a man of great puiſſance and action, poſſeſſed himſelf of ſome Lands on the Banks of the River *Aragon*, to be holden by him and his Succeſſors of the Kings of *Sobrarbre*, or *Navarre*, *Anno* 775; the Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their greater honour. The ſixth of which from *Aznar* was *Fortunio Ximines*, whoſe Daughter *Urraca* being maried to *Don Garcia Inigo* King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 867, conveyed this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, *Anno* 1034. The whole ſucceſſion I ſhall borrow from the *Spaniſh* Hiſtories; firſt taking (as in other places) ſome ſhort notes of the Princes which have been moſt obſervable in the courſe of the Story. Of which the principal were, 1 *Aznarius* the firſt Earl, his Eſtate then containing ſome few Towns on the River of *Aragon*: not much enlarged when made a Kingdom by *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, ſurnamed the *Great*, deſcended from *Fortunio* the ſecond of *Navarre*, and *Urraca* the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunius Ximines*, the laſt Earl of *Aragon*. 2 *Raymir* the firſt King, baſe Son to *Sancho* the *Great*, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho*; for ſtanding ſo generouſly in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unnaturally accuſed of Adultery, by the ſaid *Garcia* her own Son: againſt whom he undertook to maintain her honour in a ſingle Combat. 3 *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by mariage with *Petronilla* the Heir of *Aragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdom. 4 *Peter* the ſecond, who on a ſuperſtitious zeal, firſt made his Kingdom tributary to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1214. But preſently repenting of it, he ſided againſt the Pope with the *Albigenſes*; ſlain in their cauſe by *Simon de Montfort*, and the reſt of his Aſſociates in that war. 5 *James* the firſt, who conquered the Kingdoms of *Valentia*, and *Majorca*; and was the firſt that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas: being ſhut up from making any further impreſſion on the *Moores*, by the interjection of *Caſtile* betwixt him and them. 6 *Peter* the third, pretending a title unto *Sicil*, in right of *Conſtantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred* King thereof, and by the laſt Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that and *Naples*, extorted that Iſland from the *French*, maſſacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Veſpers*. 7 *James* the ſecond, by whom the Iſle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Aragon*. 8 *Martin* the laſt of the *maſculine* race of the Houſe of *Barcelone*; to whom ſucceeded, 9 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, Son of *John* King of *Caſtile*, and *Leonora* the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Aragon*. 10 *Alfonſo* Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the ſecond, got the Kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, ſurnamed the *Catholick*, we ſhall ſpeak more anon in the cloſe of all.

The Earls of *Aragon*.

	1	*Aznarius*, the firſt Earl, cotemporary with *Garcia* the ſecond King of *Navarre*, under whom he held.
775	2	*Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the firſt.
	3	*Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the ſecond.
	4	*Ximines Aznario*, Son of *Galindo*, ſlain in the battel of *Roncevall* againſt *Charles* the Great.
803	5	*Ximines Garcia*, brother to *Galindo*.
	6	*Fortunio Ximines*, Son of *Ximines Garcias*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Aznarius*.
	7	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in right from his Mother *Urraca*, the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the laſt Earl of the Houſe of *Aznarius*.
901	8	*Sancho*, ſurnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*.
920	9	*Garcia*, Son of *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, &c.
969	10	*Sancho* II. of *Aragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.
993	11	*Garcias*, ſurnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, Son to *Sancho* the third.
1000	12	*Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in his own right, and of *Caſtile* in the right of *Elvira* his Wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Chriſtians*, except the Kingdom of *Leon* only: erected the Earldom of *Aragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it for the reaſon before ſpecified, to his Son *Raymir*.

The Kings of *Aragon*.

1034	1	*Raymir*. 42.
1076	2	*Sancho* Son of *Raymir*. 18.
1094	3	*Pedro*. 14.
1108	4	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *Pedro*. 26.
1134	5	*Raymir* II. the Brother of *Alfonſo*.
1137	6	*Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the ſecond. *Raymund*, Earl of *Barcelone*.
1162	7	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Raymund* and *Petronilla*. 34.
1196	8	*Pedro* II. Son of *Alfonſo*.
1213	9	*James*, Son of *Pedro* the ſecond. 43.
1276	10	*Pedro* III. Son of *James*. 9.
1285	11	*Alfonſo* III. Son of *Pedro* the third. 6.
1291	12	*James* II. Brother of *Alfonſo* the third. 36.
1328	13	*Alfonſo* IV. Son of *James* the 2d. 8.
1336	14	*Pedro* IV. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 51.
1387	15	*John*, Son of *Pedro* the fourth. 8.
1395	16	*Martin*, the Brother of *John*. 17.

1412 17 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the 4th. 4.
1416 18 *Alfonſo* V. 42.
1458 19 *John* II. Sonne of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alfonſo*, King of *Navarre* alſo in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
1478 20 *Ferdinand* II. of that name of *Aragon*, Sonne of *John* the ſecond, King of *Aragon* and *Navarre* by a ſecond Wife: and the fifth of that name of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, which Kingdoms he obtained by the mariage of *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth*, Siſter and Heir of *Henry* the fourth; uniting thereby the great Eſtates of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard he may well challenge the firſt place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of *Spain*, to be preſented in due ſeaſon.

In the mean time to draw to a concluſion of the affairs and Eſtate of *Aragon*, we are to underſtand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniard*, it is the moſt priviledged, and free from the abſolute command of the Kings of *Spain*: having in it ſuch a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well-nigh *titular*; of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the firſt erecting of this Eſtate, the better to encourage the people to defend themſelves againſt the *Moors*, they had many *Priviledges* indulged them; and amongſt others the creating of a *Juſticiar* or *popular Magiſtrate*; which, like the *Ephori* of *Sparta*, had in ſome caſes, ſuperiority over their Kings, reverſing their judgements, cancelling their Grants, and ſometimes cenſuring their proceedings. And though King *Philip* the ſecond in the buſineſs of *Antonio de Perez* had made a Conqueſt of that Kingdom, and annulled all their *Priviledges*; yet after of his own meer goodneſs he reſtored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, are, 1 Of S. *Saviour*, inſtituted by *Alfonſo* the firſt, *An.* 1118. to animate the Members of it againſt the *Moors*. Of the habit and cuſtoms of this Order I have met with nothing.

2 Of *Monteſa*, inſtituted by *James* the firſt, King of *Aragon*, *An.* 1270. or thereabouts. Endowed with all the Lands of the *Templars* (before diſſolved) lying in *Valentia*; together with the Town and Caſtle of *Monteſa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at firſt, unto the Maſter of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th, they quitted themſelves of that ſubjection; and in ſign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they uſed, to a *Red Croſs* upon their Breſts, now the badge of the Order.

The Arms of *Aragon* ſince poſſeſſed by the Earls of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules*: before which, they were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

The Monarchie of *SPAIN*.

THus having ſpoke of *Spain*, and the Eſtate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body: effected for the moſt part by *Ferdinand* the laſt King of *Aragon*, before mentioned. Before which time *Spain* being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little famous, and leſs feared; the Kings thereof as the Author of the *Politick Diſpute*, &c. hath well obſerved, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole puiſſance was then turned againſt one another; and ſmall Atchievments had they out of that Continent, except thoſe of the Houſe of *Aragon* upon *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the Hiſtory of his own times, (if in ſome things he favour not more of the *Partie* than the *Hiſtorian*) telleth us, that before this Kings Reign, the name and glory of the *Spaniards* was like their Countrey; hemmed in by the Seas on ſome ſides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiuſq; patuiſſe exteris invadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra ſuos fines geſſiſſe.* 'Tis true, that *Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, aſſumed unto himſelf the Title of King of *Spain*; and that *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, and the ſixth of *Leon*, cauſed himſelf to be crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedrall Church of *Leon*: Titles ambitiouſly affected upon no good ground, and ſuch as ended with their Perſons. But this Prince worthily named the *Great*, ſeized on the Kingdom of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moors*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Aragon* to *Caſtile*, baniſhed 124000 Families of the *Jewes*; began by the conduct of *Columbus*, the diſcovery of the *Weſtern Indies*: and finally, by marying his Daughter *Joan* to *Philip*, Sonne of the Emperour *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greateſt part of the *Netherlands*; laid the Foundation of the preſent *Auſtrian* greatneſs. Continued ſince by ſo many intermariages, betwixt the *Spaniſh* and *Imperiall* Branches of that potent Family; that *Philip* the ſecond might have called the Arch-duke *Albertus*, Brother, Couſin, Nephew, and Son. A ſtrange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puiſſance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became firſt conſiderable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen* Hiſpanicum *obſcurum antea et Vicinis pene incognitum*, (ſaith the ſame *Thuanus*) *tum primùm emerſit, tractuq; temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidoloſum ex eo, & terribile toti terrarum Orbi eſſe cœperit.* And he ſaith true, with reference to the *French*, and *Italian* Nations; to whom the *Spaniards* have adminiſtred no ſmall matter of fear and terrour: though unto others they appear no ſuch dreadfull *Bugg-bears*. But ſure it is, and we may warrantably ſpeak it without any ſuch impreſſions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom ſince that time is wonderfully both enlarged and ſtrengthned: ſtrongly compacted in it ſelf with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over

over all parts of the World, his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and setting of the Sun; which before the *Spaniard* no Monarch could ever say. A greater change, than any man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first year of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and the last year of *Charles* the fifth.

Concerning the title of the *most Catholick King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find that *Alfonso* the first of *Oviedo*, was so named for his *sanctity*: with whom it died, and was revived in *Alfonso the Great*, the twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the grant of *Pope John* the 8th. After it lay dead till the days of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope *Alexander* the sixth: either because he compelled the *Moores* to be baptized, banished the *Jews*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Christianity*; or because having united *Castile* to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and subdued that of *Granada*, he was in a manner the *Catholique*, or general King of all *Spain*. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the restauration of this attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the sixth; the King of *Portugal* exceedingly stomached at it: *quando* Ferdinandus *imperio* universam Hispaniam (saith *Mariana*) *non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes* Reges *alios*. It seems *Emanuel* could not think himself a King of *Portugal*, if the title of the *Catholick* King did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the same mind, as was *Gregory* the *Great*, who when *John* of *Constantinople* had assumed to himself the title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholique* Bishop; advised all Bishops of the World to oppose that *arrogancy*: and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam si ille est* Catholicus, *vos non estis Episcopi*, for if *John* were the *Catholique* Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration soever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity: to whose Crown as *hereditary* and in common use, as the most *Christian* King to *France*, the *Defender of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was some further reason, why the *Spaniard* might affect the title of *Catholique* King, his Empire being *Catholique* in regard of extent (though not of *Orthodoxie* of doctrines) as reaching not over all *Spain* only, but over a very great part of the World besides. For in right of the Crown of *Castile* he possesseth the Towns of *Mellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Masalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canary* Islands in *Africk*; the Continent and Islands of all *America* except *Brasil*, and some plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Islands, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the right of the Kingdom of *Aragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the right of the house of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plombino*, and many other pieces of importance in *Italy*, held by investiture from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added which accrewed to *Philip* the second by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortresses of *Arguen* and S. *George* in *Guinea*, the Islands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Capes Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the *Cape*, and of *Mesambique* on the other: in *Asia* all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Persia* unto *China*, and many strong holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantan*, *Zeilan*, and other Islands; and finally in *America* the large Countrey of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the stile of *Catholique*.

The Monarchs of *Spain*.

A. Ch.

1478 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Aragon*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Valentia*, Earl of *Catalogne*, surprized *Navarre*, and conquerred the Realm of *Naples*.
Isabel, Queen of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Gallicia*, *Toledo*, *Murcia*, Lady of *Biscay*, conquered *Granada*, and discovered *America*.

1504 2 *Joan*, Princess of *Castile*, *Granada*, *Leon*, &c. and of *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Sicily*, &c.
Philip Archduke of *Austria*, Lord of *Belgium*.

1516 3 *Charles*, King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, *Naples*, &c. Archduke of *Austria*, Duke of *Millain*, *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, &c. Earl of *Catalogne*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c. Lord of *Biscay*, *Friseland*, *Utrecht*, &c. and Emperor of the *Germans*. He added the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Dukedoms of *Gelderland* and *Millain*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Signeuries of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssell*, and *Groyning*, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not *Francis* the first in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all *Europe*. He was also for a time of great strength and reputation in *Tunis* and other parts of *Africa*, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure: but the Turk broke his power there, and being hunted also out of *Germany*, he resigned all his Kingdoms, and died private. 42.

1558 4 *Philip* II. of more ambition, but less prosperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of *Portugal*, but that sufficiently ballanced by his ill successes in the *Netherlands*, and against the *English*. For the *Hollanders* and their Confederates drove him out of eight of his *Belgick* Provinces: the *English* overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleets*, and by awing the Ocean had almost impoverished him. And though he held for a time an hard hand upon *France*, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *Leaguers*: yet upon casting his Accompts, he found that himself was the greater loser by that undertaking. So zealous in the cause of the *Romish* Church, that it was thought that his eldest Son *Charles* was put to death with his consent in the *Inquisition* house, for seeming favourably inclined to the *Low-Countrey-*

Hereticks, as the *Spaniards* called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.

1598 5 *Philip* III. Finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Fathers long and chargeable Wars, first made peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for twelve years with the States of the *Netherlands*: which done, he totally banished all the *Moores* out of *Spain*, and was a great stickler in the Wars of *Germany*.

1621 6 *Philip* IV. Son of *Philip* the third, got into his power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but lost the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his best Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and some Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown, from the power of the *French*.

This Empire consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had Queen *Elizabeth* followed the counsel of her men of War, she might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men, she might have taken away his *Indies* from him: without whose Gold, the *Low Countrey* Army (which is his very best) could not be paid, and by consequence must needs have been dissolved. Nay Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 l. continued but for two years, or three at the most, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perswaded to live in peace; but that all their swelling and overflowing streams, might be brought back to their natural channels, and old banks. Their own proverb saith, the Lion is not so fierce as he is painted: yet the *Americans* tremble at his name, it's true; and it is well observed by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that *things which seem to be, and are not, are more feared far off, than neer at hand.* Nor is this judgement built upon weak conjectures but such as shew the power of *Spain* not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed: which I find marshalled to my hand in this manner following. 1. The *disjointedness* of his Realms and other Estates, severed by infinite distances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2ly, The *slowness of his Preparations* in *offensive* or *defensive* Wars, his Forces of necessity being long a gathering in places so remote from the *Royal* Seat; and being gathered no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3ly, The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his *Forinsique Revenues* are subject to, many times intercepted by *Pirates* and open Enemies; sometimes so long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4ly, The *different tempers* and affections of a great part of his Subjects, not easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them. 5ly, The *discontentedness* of the *Aragonians*, *Portugueze*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reasons, unto the *Castilians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Ministers* of neighbouring Princes, whom *jealousies of State* keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his power. 6ly, And last of all, the *want of people* of his own natural Subjects, whom he may best relie on for the increase and grandour of his Estates; exhausted and diminished by those ways and means, which have been touched upon before; without any politique or provident course, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the *Spanish* Government: therein directly contrary to the antient *Romans*. Who finding that nothing was more necessary for great and important enterprizes than multitudes of Men, employed all their studies to increase their numbers by Mariages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth: by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became so great (all being equally interessed in the preservation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibals* judgement) by any forces but her own. But on the other side the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations but their own *native Subjects*, and so many of them also in all their enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of ten returning home, and those few which return, either lame or old: the Countrey is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the first of *Portugal*, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raise 40000 Men, for the War of *Africk*: whereas *Emanuel* who lived after those undertakings, had much ado to raise 20000 foot and 3000 horse on the same occasion; and *Sebastian* after that found as great a difficulty, to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his preparations for the Conquest of *England*, *France* and *Flanders*. In his design for *England*, An. 1588. he had a Fleet consisting of 150 sayl of Ships, whereof 66 were great *Galleons*, 4 *Galeasses* of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels: fraughted with 20000 Souldiers for land service, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 400 Pioneers, 2650 peeces of Ordinance: not reckoning into this accompt the Commanders and Voluntaries, of which last there were very great numbers, who went upon that service for *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the design of *Charles* the fifth for the Conquest of *Provence*, he had no less than 50000 in the field; and in that of *Philip* the second for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his first setting forward out of *Italy*, consisting of 8800 *Spanish* foot, and 1200 horse; all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Dutchie of *Millain*, 3600 *German* foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harcubusiers on horseback of the County of *Burgundy*, all old Souldiers also; besides many Voluntiers of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the *Belgick* Provinces; a strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Countrey.

Of standing forces in this Countrey, he maintaineth in these Realms of *Spain*, but three thousand horse, and in his Forts and Garrisons no more thrn 8000 Foot: his Garrisons being very few, and those

thoſe upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns; his Gallies ſerved with ſlaves out of *Turkie*, and *Barbary*. And yet he is able on occaſion to raiſe very great forces, partly becauſe the ordinary ſubjects are ſo well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is ſo great a number of *Feudataries* and Noblemen, who are by *Tenure* to ſerve perſonally at their own charges for defence of the Realm. And certainly it muſt be a conſiderable force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raiſe, conſidering the greatneſs of their Revenue, and the number of Vaſſals which live under them: it being ſuppoſed that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my author lived) were able one with another to diſpend yearly from 50000 Ducats to a 100000, ſome going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marqueſſes and 50 Earls, the pooreſt had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent; and ſo aſcending unto 50 and 60000. The Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and others of the greater *Clergie*, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Eſtates, than in moſt places of *Europe*; are alſo bound to ſerve (though not perſonally) on the like occaſions. And to theſe ſervices the Noblemen are for two reaſons more forwards than the other *Feudataries*. 1 Becauſe their honors deſcend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unleſs confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgement and compellation: which makes them more obſervant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2 Becauſe out of the groſs body of theſe Noblemen, the King doth uſe to honor ſome with the title of *Grandees*; priviledged to ſtand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the higheſt honor which that State can yeeld, keeps thoſe great perſons in a readineſs to obey his pleaſure, in hope to come to an honor of ſo high eſteem.

For the *Revenues* of this King, which ordinarily ariſe out of his Eſtates (taking *Portugal* into the accompt) they are computed at 11 millions of Crowns yearly, that is to ſay, four from his *Dominions* in *Italy*, two from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the *Weſt Indies*, and the other two remaining from his Kingdoms in *Spain*. Beſides this he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Maſterſhips of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, not without good Policy and reaſon of State: the Maſters (or *Commendadors*, as they call them) of thoſe ſeveral Orders drawing after them ſuch troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their power began to be ſuſpected by the Kings themſelves. By which addition there accreweth to the Crown (beſides the opportunity of preferring ſervants of the greateſt merit) above 150000 l. of yearly Rents. As for his Caſualties and extraordinary ways of raiſing money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *General Hiſtory of Spain* to amount (according to divers opinions) to 14. 18. and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up which ſum, he puts in the *Firſt Fruits*, and ſome, part of the *Tenths* of Rectories; and other Church preferments, amounting to three millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Diſpute*, &c. affirmeth the *Pardons* ſent to the *Indies*, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Adde hereunto the fall and diſpoſal of all *Offices*, which make up a good round ſum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good *Revenue*. For the Kingdom of *Naples* preſents him every third year with a million and 20000 Crowns; and *Caſtile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions, to be paid in four years: his Subjects generally being ſo well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reaſon of them which they are not ready to grant; the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperor *Maximilian* the *King of Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in treaſure, his expences being very great. Firſt, in keeping Forts and Garriſons in many parts of his Eſtates againſt the revolt of the Natives; Secondly, maintaining ſo many Frontier places, againſt forein Invaſions; Thirdly, in the continual pay of an *Armada* for Conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*; And laſt of all the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the ſecond, ſo plunged the Crown in the Gulfes of Bankers and Money-changers, that much of the *Revenues* of it ſtand ingaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*
Archbiſhops 11. Biſhops 52.
Univerſities 18.
i. e.

1 *Sevill*,	7 *Salamanca*,	13 *Valentia*,
2 *Granada*,	8 *Alcala de Henares*,	14 *Lerida*,
3 *S. Jago*,	9 *Signenca*,	15 *Hueſca*,
4 *Toledo*,	10 *Ebora*,	16 *Saragoſſa*,
5 *Valladolit*,	11 *Lisbon*,	17 *Tudela*,
6 *Majorca*,	12 *Conimbre*,	18 *Oſſuna*.

And ſo much for *Spain*.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES OF BRITAIN.

BEfore we can arrive in *Britain*, the laſt Weſtern *Dioceſe*, we muſt croſs the OCEAN, that *ingens* and *infinitum pelagus*, as *Mela* calleth it; in compariſon of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or *Gullets*: a Sea in former times known more by fame than tryal, and rather wondred at on the ſhore ſide, than any more remote place of it. The *Romans* ventured not on it with their Veſſels, unleſs in the paſſage from *France* to *Britain*: and much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous voyage on this unruly Sea, he having ſayled in all but 400 Furlongs from the ſhore. The name and pedegree take here both from the *Poets* and *Etymologiſts*. The *Poets* make *Oceanus* to be the Son of *Cœlum* and *Veſta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the father of all things, as, *Oceanumq; patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, becauſe moiſture was neceſſarily required to the conſtitution of all bodies: and uſually painted him with a Buls head on his ſhoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him Ωκεανὸς Ταυρόκερως, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the *bellowing* and fury of the Winds; which from it come to the ſhore, and to which it is ſubject. As for the *Children* attributed unto him, they are doubtleſs nothing but the *clowds* and *vapours* hence ariſing. The name of ὠκεανὸς *Oceanus*, ſome derive from ὠκὺς, *celer*, becauſe of its *ſwiftneſs*; ſome from κέω, *fundo*, *divido*, becauſe it *cleaveth* and interlaceth the Earth: and others make it ὠκεανὸς, *quaſi* ὠκυαυὸς παρὰ τὸ ὦκυ ῥέειν, *celeriter fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the firſt. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the ſhore by which it paſſeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Iſles of it, appertaining to *Europe*, beſides thoſe called the *Azores* or *Iſles of Tercera*, which we have ſpoken of when we were in *Portugal*; thoſe of the *Aquitain* Ocean, deſcribed in our Hiſtory of *France*; thoſe of the *Netherlands*, and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be deſcribed hereafter in their proper places, are the *Britiſh* Iſlands: by many of the moſt antient and approved Writers called ſimply *BRITAIN*, becauſe united all in that common notion; though afterwards diſtinguiſhed into the particular appellations of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the reſt. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather as the next *Dioceſe* of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorio Præfectus* of *Italy*, I am next to ſpeak.

Of *BRITAIN*.

BRITAIN, according to the largeſt latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all thoſe Iſlands both great and leſs, which lie in compaſs about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly ſo called: by *Ptolemie* called *Britanniæ*, in the plural number. For ſpeaking of *France* he thus ſubjoyneth, *Ex adverſo hujus* Britannia *Inſula*, Albion *ipſi nomen fuit, cum* Britanniæ *omnes vocarentur*. i. e. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iſland of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper name was called *Albion*, the name of *Britain* comprehending all the Iſles adjoyning. And in this *Latitude* and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of theſe Iſlands, diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral names, being united in the perſon and under the command of the King of *Great Britain*: that name including all the reſt, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the *Iſles* of *Britain*, or the *Britiſh Iſlands*. Thus *Ariſtotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari duæ Inſulæ* Britannicæ *ſitæ ſunt, quarum maximæ* Albion *&* Ierna; i. e. In which Sea there are ſituate two *Britiſh* Iſlands of great note and com-

compaſs, *Albion*, (or *Britain* properly ſo called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolemie* goeth to work more punctually, and he ſtates it thus; *Complectitur prima hæc* Europæ *tabula duas* Britannicas *inſulas, quas Dionyſius* Bretanides *vocat*, Hiberniam *nempe &* Albionem, *cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus inſulis, ut ſunt* Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, *& reliquæ ſuis nominibus expreſſæ*: that is to ſay, This firſt Table of *Europe* comprehendeth the two Iſlands of *Britain*, which *Dionyſius* call the *Britanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with ſome leſſer Iſlands joyning to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleſey*, (or *Man*) and others called by diſtinct names. By which we ſee, firſt that the general name of *Britain* or the *Britiſh* Iſlands, comprehendeth all thoſe which are ſituate in the *Britiſh* Ocean: and ſecondly, that the greateſt and moſt famous of them, more ſpecially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was antiently called *Albion*, by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as my Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergion*, the Son of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Aeſchylus*, *Dionyſius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper that the greateſt Iſland of the *Ocean*, ſhould be denominated from a Son of the greateſt Sea-god: or from the old word Ἄλφον, ſignifying *White* amongſt the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Album*,) by reaſon of the white chalkie cliffs, ſeen by the Mariners a far off as they ſayled thoſe Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the ſeveral Iſlands which that name includeth, we may diſtinguiſh them into the *Greater*, and the *Leſſer*; the *Greater* ſubdivided into 1 *Great Britain*, or *Britain* ſpecially ſo called, and 2 *Ireland*; the *Leſſer* 1 the *Orcades*, 2 the *Hebrides*, 3 *Man*, 4 *Angleſey*, 5 the Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 6 the *Sorlinges*, or Iſles of *Silly*, 7 *Wight*, 8 *Thanet*, 9 *Sunderland*, and 10 *Holy Iſland*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO ſpeak much of *GREAT BRITAIN*, or *BRITAIN* ſpecially and properly ſo called, I hold ſomewhat ſuperfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no ſtrangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once ſaid of *Italy*, *De* Italia, *magis quia ordo exigit, quam quia monſtrari egeat, pauca dicentur, nota ſunt omnia*, ſo ſay I of *Britain*. It is ſo obvious to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the ſpectacles of Letters. Yet ſomething muſt be ſaid, though for methods ſake, rather than neceſſity. Firſt then, we will begin with laying out the bounds thereof (as in other places); which are, on the Eaſt, the *German* Ocean, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the Weſt, S. *Georges* Channel, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or Weſtern Ocean, of which the Antients knew no ſhore; on the North, with the *Hyperborean* or *Deucaledonian* Ocean, as *Ptolemie* cals it, extending out to *Iſeland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *Engliſh* Channel, which divides it from *France*.

The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian* miles; the greateſt breadth from Eaſt to Weſt, meaſured in a right line, no more than 250 of the ſame miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-coaſt, comes to 320 miles: the whole circumference accompted 1836 miles. The greateſt Iſland in the World, except *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagaſcar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and ſome other Antients (to whom thoſe Iſlands were not known) called the *other world*: by others of late times, the *Lady and Miſtreſs of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th *Climes*: ſo that the longeſt day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall* (being the moſt Southernly part hereof) containeth 16 hours and a quarter; at *Barwick* which is the Border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters; and one hour more at *Straithby head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where ſome obſerve that there is ſcarce any night at all in the ſummer *Solſtice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, ſaying, *Et minima contentos nocte Britannos*: and the *Panegyriſt* in the time of *Conſtantine*, amongſt other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, ſaith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any ſcorching heats in Summer, and that which is moſt comfortable, *long days*, *and very lightſome nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyriſt* tell us only of the temperateneſs of the Air, or the length of the days; but of the fruitfulneſs of the ſoyl: "affirming *Britain* to be bleſſed with all the commodities of Heaven and "Earth; ſuch an abundant plenty of Corn, as might ſuffice both for Bread and Wine; the Woods "thereof without wild Beaſts, the Fields without noyſome Serpents, infinite number of milch-"Beaſts, and Sheep weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whereto adde that of *Alfred* of *Beverley*, a Poet of the middle times, ſaying thus of *Britain*.

Inſula prædives, quæ toto vix eget orbe;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Inſula prædives, cujus miretur & optet
Delicias SOLOMON, *Octavianus opes.*

A wealthy Iſland, which no help deſires,
Yet all the World ſupply from her requires:
Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleaſures,
And ſurfet great *Auguſtus* with her treaſures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etymologies*, ſome forced, ſome fabu-

England. lous and fooliſh, and but few of weight. That which hath paſſed for currant in former times, (when almoſt all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his friends and followers; after a long voyage, and many wandrings, is ſaid to have fallen upon this Iſland, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Soveraignty thereof unto his poſterity, who quietly enjoyed the ſame, till ſubdued by the *Romans*. This is the ſum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: Which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in theſe more learned days hath been laid aſide, as falſe and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no ſuch man as *Brutus*, 1 From the newneſs of his Birth, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, who lived in the reign of King *Henry* the ſecond, being the firſt Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately queſtioned by *Newbrigenſis*, another Writer of that *Age*. 2ly, By the ſilence of of all the *Roman* Hiſtorians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident ſo remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (eſpecially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in ſo great an Iſland. 3ly, By the Arguments which *Cæſar* uſeth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Gals*; as Speech, Laws, Cuſtoms, Diſpoſition, Making, and the like. 4ly, And leſt it might be ſaid, that though the *Britans* in *Cæſars* time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a former and more antient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*: *Tacitus* putteth off that diſpute with an *Ignoramus*, *Qui mortales initio coluerint parum compertum eſt*, ſaith that knowing writer. And 5ly, By the Teſtimony of all *Roman* Hiſtories, who tell us that *Cæſar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the command of one ſole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli adminiſtrandi communi conſenſu commiſſa eſt* Caſſivellauno, as it is in *Cæſar*: *Dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons* as unlikely, but of leſs autority: the name of *Britain* is moſt probably derived from *Brit*, which in the antient *Britiſh* ſignifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain*, ſignifying a Nation: agreeable unto the cuſtom of the antient *Britans*, who uſed to diſcolour and paint their bodies, that they might ſeem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; ſuch as the *Romans* called *Picts* in the times enſuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bochartus*, a right learned man, but one that wreſteth all originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language: by whom this Iſland is called *Britain* or *Bretannica*, from *Barat anac*, ſignifying in that language a land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Weſtern parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Iſle of *Britain*, ſhall be obſerved in the deſcription of thoſe parts into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay, 1 *England*, 2 *Wales*, and 3 *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *German*; on the Weſt, with the *Iriſh*; on the South, with the *Britiſh* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inacceſſible Rocks: and where thoſe want, preſerved againſt all forein invaſions by ſtrong Forts, and a puiſſant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh Fryth* on the Eaſt, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the Weſt, (for ſo far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient ſpace being ſhut up with a wall of Turfes by *Lollius Vrbicus*, in the time of *Antoninus Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrower bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carlile* to the River *Tine*, the track whereof may eaſily be diſcerned to this very day. A Wall ſo made, that at every miles end there is ſaid to have been a Caſtle, between every Caſtle many Watch-Towers; and bewixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Braſs, conveying the leaſt noiſe unto one another without interruption: ſo that the news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, and reſiſtance accordingly provided. In following times the ſtrong Towns of *Barwick*, and *Carlile*, have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the backdoor ſhut: and as for other Forts, we had ſcarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea Coaſts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occaſioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings: till in the latter end of the reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and thoſe few which remained diſmantled, and made unſerviceable. The Maritime parts were thought ſufficiently aſſured by thoſe Rocks and Cliffs, which compaſs the Iſland in moſt parts: and hardly any Caſtle all along the ſhore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the eighth, conſidering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, by his divorce from Queen *Catharine*; and incurred the diſpleaſure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as alſo that the *French* King had not only maried his Son to a Neece of the Pope, but a Daughter to the King of *Scots*; thought fit to provide for his own ſafety, by building in all places where the ſhore was moſt plain and open, Caſtles, Platforms, and Blockhouſes; many of which in the long time of peace enſuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter Queen *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For ſhe not only fortified *Portſmouth*, and placed in it a ſtrong Garriſon; but walled the Kingdom round with a moſt

moſt ſtately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which ſhe always commanded the Seas, and vanquiſhed the mightieſt Monarch of *Europe*; whereas her predeceſſors in their Sea ſervice, for the moſt part, hired their men of War, from the *Hanſmen*, and *Genoeſe*. Yet did neither of theſe erect any Caſtles in the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beaſts; or ſome Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordinances on the Wals, Bulwarks, and Out-works; leaving the reſt by theſe ſufficiently guarded. *England.*

The whole Iſland was firſt called *Albion*, as before is ſaid, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being firſt found in *Athenæus*, amongſt the *Grecians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæſar*, amongſt the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and all other antient writers, except *Ptolemie* only, by whom called *Albion* as at firſt; continued till the time of *Egbert* the firſt *Saxon Monarch*, who called the Southern parts of the Iſland by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a ſoil equally participating of ground fit for tillage, and paſture: yet to paſture more then to tillage are our people addicted, as a courſe of life not requiring ſo many helpers, which muſt be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moore* in his *Utopia* complaineth, ſaying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houſes and Towns. *Oves* (ſaith he) *quæ tam mites eſſe, tamq; exiguo ſolent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomitæ eſſe cœperant, ut homines devorent ipſos, agros, domos, oppida vaſtent, ac depopulentur.* To prevent this miſchief, there was a Statute made in the fourth year of *Henry* the ſeventh, againſt the converting of Arable Land into Paſture ground: by which courſe Husbandry was again revived, and the ſoil made ſo abounding in Corn, that a dear year is ſeldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and ſeldom come to maturity; and are more uſed for the pleaſantneſſe of the ſhade, than for the hopes of wine. Moſt of her other plenties and Ornaments, are expreſſed in this old verſe following.

Anglia, 1 Mons, 2 Pons, 3 Fons, 4 Eccleſia, 5 Fœmina, 6 Lana.

That is to ſay;

For 1 Mountains, 2 Bridges, 3 Rivers, 4 Churches faire,
5 Women, and 6 Wooll, *England* is paſt compare.

1 For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant proſpect to the lower Grounds; the principal are thoſe of *Mendip* in *Somerſet*, *Malvern* hils in *Worceſterſhire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamſhire*, *Cotſwold* in *Gloceſterſhire*, the *Peak* of *Darbyſhire*, *Yorke Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact deſcription of which, would require more time then I can ſpend upon that Subject. Proceed we therefore to

2 The *Bridges*, which are in number 857. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rocheſter*, over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Briſtoll*, over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London*, over *Thames*. This laſt ſtanding upon 19 Arches of wonderfull ſtrength and largeneſſe, ſupporteth continual ranges of buildings, ſeeming rather a ſtreet then a Bridge; and is not be paralleld with any Bridge of *Europe*; though of late by ſome defacements made by fire, Anno 1632. the buildings are not ſo contiguous, as they were before.

The *Rivers* of this Countrey are in number 325. The chief is *Thamiſis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Iſis*; whereof the former riſing ſomewhat beyond *Tame* in *Buckinghamſhire*, and the latter beyond *Cyrenceſter* in *Gloceſterſhire*, meet together about *Dorceſter* in *Oxfordſhire*: the iſſue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamiſis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamſhire*, *Middleſex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Eſſex*; and ſo weddeth himſelf to the Kentiſh *Medway*, in the very jawes of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more then any River in *Europe*; ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles: about whoſe banks are ſo many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly ſpoke.

Tot campos, ſylvas, tot regia tecta, tot hortos,
Artifici excultos dextra, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Auſonio Thamiſis *cum* Tibride *certet.*

We ſaw ſo many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and ſtately Towers:
So many gardens, dreſs'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The ſecond River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Pinlimmon* hill in *Montgomeryſhire*, and his end about ſeven miles from *Briſtoll*: waſhing in the mean ſpace, the wals of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, and *Gloceſter*. 3 *Trent*, ſo called, for that 30 kind of Fiſhes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 leſſer Rivers: who having his Fountain in *Staffordſhire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *York*; augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the moſt violent ſtream of all the Iſle. Yet *Humber* is not, to ſay truth, a diſtinct River, having a ſpring head of his

his own; but rather the mouth or *Æſtuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Youre*, *Darwent*, and eſpecially *Ouſe* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, having received into its Channell the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiſcus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Iſter*: So alſo the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4 *Medway*, a *Kentiſh* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy. 5 *Tweede*, the North-eaſt bound of *England*, on whoſe Northern bank is ſeated the ſtrong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*. 6 *Tine*, famous for *Newcaſtle* and her inexhauſtible Coal-pits. Theſe and the reſt of Principal note are thus comprehended in one of M. *Draytons* Sonnets.

Our Flouds Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,
And ſtately *Severn* for her ſhore is prais'd,
The Cryſtal *Trent* for Fords and Fiſh renown'd,
The *Avons* fame to *Albions* cliffes is rais'd.
Carlegion Cheſter vaunts her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouſe* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whoſe banks ſo fertile be,
And *Kent* will ſay her *Medway* doth excell.
Cotſwoll commends her *Iſis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern borders boaſts of *Tweeds* fair flood;
Our Weſtern parts extoll their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of the *Daniſh* blood.

4 The *Churches*, before the generall ſuppreſſion of Abbies, and ſpoiling the Church ornaments, were moſt exquiſite, the chief remaining, are 1 the Church of S. *Paul* founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple conſecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick of the largeſt dimenſions of that kind, of any in the Chriſtian World. For whereas the ſo much celebrated Temple of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*, hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of S. *Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead, was by the careleſneſs of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the reign of Q. *Elizabeth*, conſumed with fire; which happning in a thundering and tempeſtuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was ſo generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years ſince to diſ-abuſe the world, he confeſt the truth of it; on which diſcovery the burning of S. *Paul's* Steeple by lightning was left out of our common Almanacks; where formerly it ſtood amongſt the ordinary *Epoches*, or accounts of time. A Church of ſuch a gallant proſpect, and ſo large dimenſions, that had not the late reparation of it been diſcontinued, it would have been the ſtatelieſt and moſt majeſtical Fabrick in the Chriſtian World. 2ly, The Collegiate Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, (wherein I have the honour to be a *Præbendary*) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombes whereof are the moſt ſumptuous, and the Chappell the moſt accurate piece of building in *Europe*. 3ly, The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4ly, For a private Church, that of *Radcliffe* in *Briſtoll*. 5ly, For a private Chappell, that of *Kings Colledge* in *Cambridge*. 6ly, For the curious workmanſhip of the glaſs, that of *Chriſt Church* in *Canterbury*. 7ly, For the exquiſite beauty of the Fronts, thoſe of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8ly, For a pleaſant lightſome Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9ly, For an antient and reverend Fabrick, the Minſter of *York*. And 10ly, to comprehend the reſt in one, our *Lady-Church* in *Salisbury*, of which take theſe Verſes.

Mira canam, ſoles quot continet annus, in unâ
Tam numeroſa, ferunt, æde feneſtra micat.
Marmoreaſq; tenet fuſas tot ab arte columnas,
Comprenſas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot menſibus annus abundat:
Res mira, at verâ res celebrata fide.

How many days in one whole year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we ſee.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours thoughout the fleeting year.
So many Gates as Moons one year do view,
Strange tale to tell, yet not ſo ſtrange as true.

5 The Women generally are more handſome then in other places, ſufficiently endowed with naturall beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophiſtications. In an abſolute Woman, ſay the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch-Woman*, from the girdle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the girdle to the ſhoulders; over which muſt be placed an *Engliſh* face. As their beautes, ſo alſo are their Prerogatives the greateſt of any Nation; neither ſo ſervilely ſubmiſſive as the *French*, nor ſo jealouſly guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping ſo true a *decorum*, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of *Horſes*; ſo it is acknowledged the *Paradiſe* of *Women*. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if *there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the Women*

of

of Europe *would run into* ENGLAND. For here they have the upper hand in the ſtreets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands eſtates, and their equall ſhare in all Lands, yea even ſuch as are holden in *Knights ſervice*: priviledges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high eſteem in former times amongſt forain Nations, for the modeſty and gravity of their converſation; but of late times ſo much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have loſt much of their antient honour and reputation amongſt the knowing and more ſober men of forain Countries, who before admired them. *England.*

6 The Wooll of *England*, is of exceeding fineneſs, eſpecially that of *Cotſwold*, in *Gloceſterſhire*; that of *Lemſter*, in *Hereforeſhire*; and of the Iſle of *Wight*. Of this Wooll are made excellent broad-clothes, diſperſed all over the World, eſpecially *High-Germany*, *Muſcovie*, *Turkie*, and *Perſia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of ſo much money which is made of them, as in ſetting to work ſo many poor people, who from it receive ſuſtenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *Engliſh* men had not the art, or neglected the uſe of making cloth: till whoſe time our Wooll was tranſported unwrought. And as his Succeſſors have laid impoſitions on every cloth ſold out of the Realm; ſo his Predeceſſors had, as their occaſions required, ſome certain Cuſtomes granted on every ſack of Wooll. In the beginning of this *Edwards* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars againſt that King. And he for his part by the compoſition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money, to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart Towns of *Chriſtendome*, the *Staple* for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King; and he having by experience ſeen what the benefit of thoſe Staples were; removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the eaſe as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of ſuch Forain Merchants as came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exceſter*, *Briſtoll*, *Wincheſter*, *Weſtminſter*, *Chicheſter*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcaſtle*, for *England*; at *Caermarden for Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredah*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *Engliſh*, *Iriſh*, or *Welch* men ſhould tranſport this Stapled commodity, no not by Licenſe (if any ſuch ſhould be granted) on pain of Confiſcation, and Impriſonment during the Kings pleaſure. Laſtly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of clothes, (who are now grown the beſt Clothworkers in the World:) and to encourage men in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, enacted to be Felony, to carry any Wools unwrought. When *England* had ſome ſhort time enjoyed the benefit of theſe *Staples*, the King removed them to *Callice*, which he had conquered, and deſired to make wealthy. From hence they were at ſeverall times and occaſions tranſlated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town, in what Countrey ſoever, where the *Engliſh* kept a houſe for this Traffick; the confluence of all people thither to buy, infinitely inriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *Engliſh* Merchants, till upon ſome diſcontents between King *Henry* the ſeventh, and *Maximilian*, Archduke, and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with ſolemn Proceſſion, Princely Triumph, ſumptuous Feaſts, rare Banquetings, and other expreſſions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of ſome *Cotſwold* Sheep by *Edward* the fourth, to *Henry* of *Caſtile*, and *John* of *Aragon*, Anno 1465. is counted one of the greateſt prejudices, that ever hapned to this Kingdom.

The Wooll tranſported bringeth into the Kingdom no leſs than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the ſum, ſo that *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that before the Wars of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *Engliſh* bartered wares yearly for 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the *Wooll*, though not mentioned in the verſe fore-going, are the rich and inexhauſtible *Mines* of *Cole*, *Lead*, and *Tin*: to ſay nothing of the *Mines* of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the ſpoil of Woods, then profit to particular perſons in the increaſe of their Eſtates. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcaſtle* in *Northumberland* and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns beſides: which could not poſſibly ſubſiſt in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this commodity. The Mines of *Lead* are moſt conſiderable in the *Peak* of *Darbyſhire*; thoſe of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferiour to Silver in fineneſſe. A commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elſewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the Tin-workers, flying out of *England* for a murder, paſſed into *Germany*, Anno 1240. and there diſcovered ſome Tin Mines in *Miſnia*, not known before, and ſet on foot that trade amongſt them, to the great prejudice (ſaith my Author) of the *Earls* of *Cornwall*, who had before the ſole *Monopoly* of that uſeful metal.

To theſe particulars being matters of profit and neceſſity, if I would add ſuch things as are for delight and pleaſure; I might ſubjoyn the *Bels* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among forain Nations, as for any of thoſe mentioned in the ſaid old Verſe. The *Bels* ſo many, tunable, and of ſuch excellent Melody to a Muſical eare (bronght more to the command of the skilful ringer than in former times) that it is thought there are more good Rings of *Bels* in this part of the Iſland than in half Chriſtendom beſides. *Parkes* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The firſt of which kind for the incloſing of Veniſon, being that of *Woodſtock*, made by King *Henry* the firſt: whoſe example being followed by his Succeſſors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number ſo increaſed in a little time, that at the laſt, beſide 55 *Forreſts*, and 300 *Chaſes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parkes* in *England*; all well repleniſhed either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleaſure, and the Sheep with ſafety, great care was taken by our progenitors for the deſtruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, that

England

England. *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not so: here being store of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 *l.* of Gold, 300 *l.* of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel imposed as an yearly tribute by King *Athelstane* upon *Idwallo Prince of Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time the Welch protesting at the last they could find no more.

The Air of this Countrey is very temperate, neither so hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, because of its northerly situation; nor so cold in the Winter; because the aire of this Kingdom being gross, cannot so soon penetrate as the thin air of those Countries. For to say truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much disposed to mists; especially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: insomuch that many times, the Sun is not seen to shine out clearly for some weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a tale, that the great Constable of *Castile* being Ambassador to King *James* in the first Winter of his reign, and tarying here about a moneth; is said not to have seen the Sun all the time of his stay: which occasioned him at his going on ship-board, to desire such Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *present his humble service to the King their Master, and to the* blessed Sun of Heaven *when they chanced to see him.* And something also touching the temperature of the Air, may be ascribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they passe unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be said, that we were come from Gods blessing into the warm Sun: but it is not so. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of fish then ours. Our Oysters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*; to whom, the *Englishmen*, reserving to themselves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by custom demand liberty to fish of *Scarborough Castle in Yorkshire*) have yielded up the commodity; By which those States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoverished, and condemned for lazines and sloth. Besides the losse of imployment for many men, who using this trade might be a seminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and discoveries; cannot but be very prejudicial to the strength and flourishing of the Common-wealth and Empire of *England.*

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I shall extract some passages out of a M. S. discourse of the late learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principall King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Soveraignty of the* British *Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fishing in those Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fish, at all times of the year: and that too in so plentiful a manner, that not long since neer *Minnegal* on the Coasts of *Devonshire* 500 Ton of Fish were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another neer S. *Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 lasts of Herrings. 2ly, That almost all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and those of the *Hanse*, do mightily improve themselves both in power and wealth, by the benefit of the *English* Fishing; insomuch as 10000 Sail of Forain Vessels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *East-Friseland* only) are thought to be maintained by this trade alone. 3ly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yeerly 8000 Vessels of all sorts for this trade of *Fishing* on our Coasts, whereby they have a Seminary of 150000 Saylers and Mariners, ready for any publick service: all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women and Children, of severall trades upon the Land. 4ly, That for the holding up of this trade, the said *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not so big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furnish all the parts of the World (even as far as *Brasil*,) with our commodities; returning home those of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they sell to us many times at their own prices. 5ly, That the said *Hollanders*, (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon these Coasts, the sum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Customs, and tenth Fish, advancing to the publick Treasury no lesse then 800000 *l.* Sterling): it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by those of the *Hanse* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a sum as that. 6ly, and finally, that by erecting only 250 *Busses*, (Vessels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not swift of sail) for the *Herring-Fishing*, (which is not a sixth part of those which are imployed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or by private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated; there would be found imployment yearly for 1000 ships, and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradesmen and Labourers at Land: by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now at such a losse, there would arise in Customes, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Imposts, no lesse than 300000 *l. per Annum* to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Atturney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: so do I heartily commend it to the care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part, Flesh, in *London* only there are no fewer the 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-flesh, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, Suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers *Free* of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Forainers in the Suburbs & Villages sell four for their one. Lastly, count for every Oxe ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gondamor*, once the *Spanish Lieger* here, having in some severall Market daies seen the severall Shambles of this great City, said to them who made the discovery with him, That there was more flesh eaten in a moneth in that Town, than in all

all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this provision of Flesh consumed in the head, guess at the quantity of that which is spent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The usual and natural drink of the Countrey is *Beer*, so called from the *French* word *Boire*. (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) Which, without controversie, is a most wholesome and nourishing beverage; and being transported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is so purged, that it is amongst them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Beere d' Angle Terre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Oela*, it is questionless in it self, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholesome drink; howsoever it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the third, thus to descant on it:

Nescio quid monstrum Stygiæ *conforme paludi,*
Cervisiam *pleriq; vocant; nil spissius illa*
Dum bibitur, nil clarius est dum mingitur, ergo
Constat quòd multas fæces in ventre relinquit.

In *English* thus;

Of this strange drink so like the *Stygian* lake,
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and piss it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* must needs remain within

Now to conclude this generall discourse concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Councell, to pursue his title unto *France*; returned this Answer: that France *indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom*; *but* England *in his mind was as fine a Seat for a* Countrey Gentleman, *as any could be found in* Europe.

Having staid thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also, (as the method of the old Verse led me on:) it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-ey'd, pleasant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous; and much resembling the *Italians* in habit, and pronunciation. In matters of war, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and resolute to undertake the hardest enterprises: in peace quiet, and not quarrelsome; in advice or counsell, sound and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and chearfull. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little travell in *France*, have grown so *un-Englished*, and so affected or besotted rather on the *French* Nation, that they affirm the *English*, in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16 Chap. of his 3d Book *De re Poëtica*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English*, and *Scotish*, this base and unmanly Character, *Gothi belluæ*, Scoti *non minùs*; Angli *perfidi, inflati, feri, contemptores, stolidi, amentes, inertes, inhospitales, immanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal*, is an ignoble victory. Besides *Socrates* resolution in the like kind, in my opinion was very judicious. εἰ δέ με ὄνος ἐλάκτισε, δίκην αὐτῷ ἐλάγχανον; If an Asse kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confute his censure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too a great labour; it being a task, which of it self would require a Volume. The best is, many shoulders make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrell against that proud Man, as ours: for so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *English*, and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scaliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

Tres sunt Convivæ, Germanus, Flander, & Anglus,
Dic quis edat melius, quis meliúsve bibat.
Non comedis Germane, *bibis*; *tu non bibis* Angle,
Sed comedis; *comedis* Flandre, *bibísq; benè.*

Dutch, *Flemmings*, *English*, are your only guests,
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.
Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill,
Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

This

England. Thus was it in his time with the *Engliſh* Nation; though ſince, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more then needs of the *Flemming* alſo.

The Nobility of this Countrey is not of ſo much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marqueſſes*, being meerly titular: whereas in other places they have ſome abſolute, ſome mixt government; ſo that upon any little diſtaſt, they will ſtand on their own guard, and ſlight the power of their *Soveraign*. And on the other ſide, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Privileges above all other Nations; being moſt free from Taxes, and burdenous Impoſitions, but what they take upon themſelves by their own conſent. They have twice in a year (a laudable cuſtome no where elſe to be ſeen) Juſtice adminiſtred even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order firſt inſtituted by King *Henry* the ſecond. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them ſavour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a ſtranger honeſtly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergy* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, againſt the temporal revenues of the Church; in which it was ſuggeſted, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Alms-houſes, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l. per Annum* into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot ſay. But after this, King *Henry* the eighth took his Oppotunities, to pare away the excreſcencies of it; demoliſhing the Monaſteries, and Religious houſes, and paring off the ſuperfluities of Biſhopricks and Cathedrall Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongſt the Miniſters and great Officers of Seate, and Court in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet leſt they not the *Clergy* ſo poor and naked, or deſtitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been ſtill the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harpies* left them being thought too much): though for abilities of learning (I dare boldly ſay it) not to be paralleld in the World. For beſides 5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and beſides the *Vicarages*, moſt of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas: there were left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Queen *Elizabeth*, 21 *Biſhopricks*, (taking thoſe of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; moſt of which, places of faire revenue. And as for the maintenance of Prieſts, Monks, and Friers, before the *Reformation*, there were reckoned 90 Colleges, beſides thoſe in the Univerſities, 110 Hoſpitals, 3374 Chanteries and free Chappels, and 645 Abbeys and Monaſteries: more then half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l* in old rents, many above 2000, and ſome 4000 almoſt. So ſtudious were our *Anceſtors* both in thoſe times of blindneſſe, and theſe of a clearer ſight, to encourage men to learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the *Land*, or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land* are moſt apparent, over the *Iriſh*, *Scots*, *Cypriots*, *Turks*, and eſpecially *French*; whoſe Kingdom hath been ſore ſhaken by the *Engliſh* many times, eſpecially twice by King *Edward* the third, and *Henry* the fifth: this latter making ſo abſolute a conqueſt, that *Charles* the ſeventh like a poor *Roy d' Ividot*, confined himſelf to *Bourges*, where (having caſheered his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton and two Chickens. And ſo redoubted even after our expulſion from *France*, (our *civill diſſenſions* rather cauſing that expulſion, then the *Frenchmens* valour) was the *Engliſh* name in that *Countrey*: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to ſtrike a terror into his enemies, apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the armes and Croſs of *England*. But as the Aſs, when he had on the Lions skin, was for all that but an Aſs and no Lion: ſo theſe *Britons*, by the weak reſiſtance they made againſt their Enemies, ſhewd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Engliſhmen*. *Spain* alſo taſted the valour of our Land-Souldiers, when *John* of *Gaunt* purſuing his title to *Spain*, was ſent home with 8 Waggons laden with gold, and an annual penſion of 10000 marks; as alſo when the *Black Prince* re-eſtabliſhed King *Peter* in his Throne. And then alſo did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puiſſance of the *Engliſh*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* ſurprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuſcoa*, 6000 *Engliſh* Foot, who lay there, to joyn with this *Ferdinand* in an expedition againſt *France*. Concerning which *Guicciardine* giveth this *Item*, That *the Kingdom of* Navarre *was yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the* Engliſh *Forces that were at hand, then by any puiſſance of the King of* Aragon. Since thoſe times the *Spaniard* much eſteemed us, as appeareth by this ſpeech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*. *You are all tall Souldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blowes; but as for thoſe baſe and cowardly* French, *when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or ſleep on our Ramparts.* The like the *Netherlanders* can teſtifie, only this is the grief of it, The *Engliſh* are like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to ſay any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *Engliſh* Souldiery hath gotten by the *Civill* broiles among themſelves. At which my heart ſo aketh, and my hand ſo trembleth, that I ſhall only adde in the words of *Lucan*,

Heu quantum potuit cœli pelagiq; parari,
Hoc quem Civiles *fuderunt ſanguine dextræ!*

That is to ſay,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By that dear blood, which *Civil wars* have drain'd!

As for their valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the battel of *Scluſe*, wherein King *Edward* the 3d, with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet conſiſting of 500 Sail; of which he ſunk 200, and ſlew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the battel in 88. wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquiſhed the *invincible Armado* of the *King of Spain*, conſiſting of 134 *great Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigneſs. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships, took from the *Spaniard* one million, and 189200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships, he awed the Ocean, ſacked S. *Jago*, S. *Dominico*, and *Cartagena*; carrying away with him, beſides Treaſure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candiſh*; and the voyage to *Cales*: as alſo how one of the Queens Ships named the Revenge, in which Sir *Richard Greenvile* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were ſick on the ballaſt) maintained a Sea-fight for 24 hours againſt above 50 of the *Spaniſh* Galleons. And though at laſt, after her Powder was ſpent to the laſt barrel, ſhe yeelded upon honorable terms; yet ſhe was never brought into *Spain*: having killed in that fight more than 1000 of their Souldiers, and ſunk four of their greateſt Veſſels. I omit alſo the diſcovery of the Northern paſſages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Frobiſher*; concluding with that of *Kekerman*, *Hoc certum eſt, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi induſtria & peritia ſuperiores eſſe Anglos; & poſt Anglos, Hollandos*: Though now I know not by what neglect, and diſcontinuance of thoſe honorable imployments, the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our antient Glories, and would fain account themſelves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been ſo indeed, had not His Majeſty by the timely reinforcing of his Naval Power, An. 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The *Engliſh* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch*, *French* and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to adde to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; ſince out of every Language we have culled the moſt ſignificant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither ſo boyſterous as the *Dutch*, nor ſo effeminate as the *French*; yet as ſignificant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one, little inferior to the *Greek*.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted, as ſome ſay, by S. *Peter* and *Paul*; more probably (as others ſay) by *Joſeph* of *Arimathea*, whoſe body they find to have been interred in the Iſle of *Avalonia*, where the Abby of *Glaſtenbury* after ſtood. But that of his plantation being almoſt rooted out by long Perſecutions, and no ſupply of Preachers ſent from other places; *Lucius* a King of *Britain* (and the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Europe*,) An. 180. or thereabouts, ſent his Ambaſſadours to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome* to be furniſhed with a new ſupply of *Paſtors*, if not to plant, yet at the leaſt to water, and confirm the *Goſpel* planted here before; but almoſt rooted out again by prevailing *Gentiliſm*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himſelf, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the firſt Preachers ſent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britans*) it ſpread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in ſome tract of time over all the Iſland. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Chriſt*, was forthwith furniſhed with *Biſhops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Chriſtianity* it ſelf. For not to truſt herein to the autority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, we find three Biſhops of this Iſle ſubſcribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz. *Eborius* Biſhop of *York*, *Reſtitutus* Biſhop of *London*, and *Adelfius*, Biſhop of *Colcheſter*, there called *Colonid Londinenſium*: and ſome of them alſo preſent in the Council of *Sardira*, An. 358. concurring with the reſt in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Hereſies; and the ſame or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britans* were expulſed their native Countrey, or ſhut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Chriſtianity* and *Biſhops* along with them: *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, finding no fewer than ſeven Biſhops in the *Britiſh* Church, when he was ſent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *Engliſh*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as ſome men ſuppoſe) to ſay that *Auguſtine* the Monk firſt preached the Goſpel in *England*; becauſe it muſt be underſtood, not with Relation to the *Britans*, but the *Engliſh Saxons*: from whom theſe parts of the Iſle had the name of *England*; and from whom both the *Britans*, and the Faith it ſelf were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwal*, and Heatheniſm introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleaſed God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) ſeeing ſome handſom youths to be ſold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was anſwered they were *Angli*: and well may they be ſo called (ſaith he) for they ſeem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongſt the *Angli*; and anſwer being made of the Province *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (ſaid he) *de ira Dei ſunt liberandi*. And laſtly, underſtanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (ſaid he) may he ſing *Allelujahs* to the moſt High God? After which time he ſeriouſly endeavoured the Converſion of the *Engliſh* Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. And ſo well did the work proſper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Goſpel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Haſſians*, *Franconians*, and

England. *Turingians* being converted by *Winifred*; the *Friſons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Weſtphalen*, by *Weldrode*, the firſt Biſhop of *Breme*; all of them being *Engliſh Saxons*, as we we find in *Beda* and ſome others.

Now as theſe parts of *Britain* were the firſt which generally entertained the Goſpel; ſo were they the firſt alſo in theſe latter times, which univerſally ſubmitted to the Reformation of ſuch corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*. Endeavoured firſt in *France*, by the *Albigenſes*, and *Waldenſes*, as was ſaid before. Who being ſuppreſſed and ruinated by the ſword of the Kings of *France*, ſheltred themſelves in the mountainous parts of *Gaſcoigne* and *Guienne*, then in poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publickly by *Wiclef*, and ſpreading under-hand amongſt the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther*, and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in moſt other Countries received tumultuouſly, by the power of the People; was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and conſent of the Prince and Prelates: the *Architects* in this great work, without reſpect unto the Dictats of *Luther*, or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Word and the Primitive Patterns, aboliſhing ſuch things as were repugnant unto either, but ſtill retaining ſuch *Ceremonies* in Gods publick worſhip, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did obſerve a greater meaſure of Chriſtian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a meer deteſtation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in uſe amongſt them, becauſe defiled with *Popiſh* Errors and abuſes: and thereby utterly averting thoſe of the *Papal* party from joyning with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correſpondency in theſe extrinſecals of Religion, with the Church of *Rome*; their party in the world had been far greater, and not ſo much ſtomached as it is. And ſo it was conceived by the Marqueſs *de Rhoſne*, after Duke of *Sally*, and Lord High-Treaſurer of *France*, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being ſent Ambaſſadour to King *James*, from King *Henry* the 4th, he had obſerved the Majeſty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in ſome *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom; Religion would be ſoon defaced, and trod under foot; if not preſerved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church ſince the laſt *Converſion*, as by the piety and example of *Lucius* there were founded three *Archbiſhopricks*, and 25. Biſhopricks, according to the number of the *Archi-Flamines* and *Flamines* (whoſe great Revenues were converted to more ſacred uſes) in the times of *Idolatry*: So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whoſe means this laſt Converſion happned; Archbiſhopricks, and Biſhopricks were deſigned to convenient places. The number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, beſides the two *Archbiſhops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happineſs to have his deſires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till theſe later days, nor with ſuch equal diſtribution, as he did intend For in the Province of *York* laid waſt and deſolate by the *Danes*, and not ſo ſoon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan Biſhops came not up to his purpoſe, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: eſpecially when King *Henry* the 8th had incorporated *Wales* with *England*; and founded five Epiſcopal Sees out of the ruines and Revenues of ſome principal Monaſteries: of which none but the Biſhoprick of *Cheſter* (and that of the Iſle of *Man*, which maketh up the 27th) were laid unto the Provine of *York*. And ſo it ſtood, notwithſtanding the alterations of *Religion*, without any diſpute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbyterie*, and recommended it to the uſe of all *Chriſtian* Churches (the Hiſtory whereof we had ſuccinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in moſt places to decry this Order, though conſonant to the Word of God, and moſt pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not ſo much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamors of their Diſciples, which cauſed the *Epiſcopal* Order to grow out of credit; as the *Avarice* of ſome great perſons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Poſſeſſions. It had been elſe a miracle that *Calvins* Plat-form, made only for the uſe of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the firſt, to the eſtate of other Churches, eſpecially where the Biſhops had been inſtrumental in the Reformation; ſhould be ſo headily received in ſome Kingdoms, and ſo importunately and clamorouſly deſired in others.

The moſt valorous Souldiers of this Countrey, when poſſeſſed by the *Britains*, were 1 *Caſſibelane*, who twice repulſed the *Roman* Legions, though conducted By *Cæſar*; and had not a party here at home been formed againſt him; he had for ever done the like. 2 *Pratuſagus*, King of the *Iceni*. 3 *Conſtantine* the Great. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*, 5 *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*, 6 King *Edmund Ironſide*; and 7 *Canutus* the *Dane*. Under the *Normans*, of moſt note have been, 1 *William*, ſurnamed the Conqueror, 2 *Richard*, and 3 *Edward*, both the firſt of thoſe names, ſo renowned in the wars of the Holy-Land; 4 *Edward* the 3d, and 5 *Edward* the Black Prince, his Son, *Duo fulmina belli*, as famous in the wars of *France*; 6 *Henry* the fifth, and 7 *John* Duke of *Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8 *Montacute* Earl of *Saliſbury*. 9 S. *John Faſtolf*, and 10 S. *John Hawkwood*, of great eſteem for valour in *France*, and *Italy*: not to deſcend to later times. And for Sea Captains, thoſe of moſt note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinſon*, *Drake*, *Frobiſher*, *Cavendiſh* and *Greenvile*; of ſome of which we have ſpoke already, and of the reſt may have an opportunity to ſay more hereafter.

Scholars of moſt renown amongſt us, 1 *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the Univerſity of *Paris*. 2 *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knaviſhly conducted him to preach to an head of ſtones; & that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very ſtones concluded, ſaying *Amen*,

Amen, Amen Venerabilis Beda. But other of the Monkiſh writers do aſſign this reaſon, & both true alike; that at his death ſome unlearned Prieſt intending to honour him with an *Epitaph*, had thus far blundered on a verſe, viz. *Hic ſunt in foſſa* Bedæ *oſſa*: but becauſe the verſe was yet imperfect, he went to bed to conſider of it, leaving a ſpace betwixt the two laſt words thereof; which in the morning he found filled up in a ſtrange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and ſo he made his Verſe, and *Beda* (pardon this diverſion) obtained that Attribute. 3 *Anſelm*, and 4 *Bradwardin*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*, men famous for the times they lived in. 5 *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6 *Thomas* of *Walden*, the profeſſed enemy of *Wiclef*, againſt whom he writ. 7 *John Wiclef* parſon of *Lutterworth*, in the County of *Leiceſter*, who ſo valiantly oppoſed the power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*; though he vented many of his own. Then ſince the times of the *Reformation*, 1 *John Jewel*, Biſhop of *Saliſbury*, to whoſe learned and induſtrious labours, in defence of the Religion here by law eſtabliſhed, we are ſtill beholding. 2 Dr. *John Reynolds*, and 3 Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Chriſti* Colledge in *Oxon*; the firſt, a man of infinite reading, the ſecond of as ſtrong a judgement. 4 Dr. *Whitakers* of *Cambridge*, the *Antaganiſt* of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5 Dr. *Thomas Bilſon*, and 6 Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Biſhops of *Wincheſter*, the Ornaments of their ſeveral times. 7 Biſhop *Montagne* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8 Dr. *John Whitguift*, and 9 Dr. *William Laud*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*. Of which laſt, and his diſcourſe againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuite*, Sir *Edward Dering*, his profeſſed enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had *muzled* the Jeſuits, *and ſhould ſtrike the* Papiſts *under the fift rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, whereſoever his grave ſhould be,* PAULS (whoſe reparation he endeavoured, and had almoſt finiſhed) *would be his perpetual Monument, and his own Book his laſting Epitaph.* And as for thoſe who have ſtood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, thoſe of moſt note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagoniſt of Biſhop *Jewel*. 2 *Nic. Sanders*, and 3 Dr. *Thomas Stapleton*, to whoſe writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmine* doth ſtand much indebted. 4 *Campian*, and 5 *Parſons*, both *Jeſuites*, 6 and *William Reynolds* a *Seminary* Prieſt, and the Brother of Dr. *John Reynolds* ſpoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very obſervable, that *William* was at firſt a *Proteſtant* of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in *Popery* beyond the Seas. *William* out of an honeſt zeal to reduce his Brother to this Church, made a journey to him: where on a conference betwixt them it ſo fell out, that *John* being overcome by his brothers arguments returned into *England*, where he became one of the more ſtrict or rigid ſort of the *Engliſh* Proteſtants; and *William* being convinced by the reaſons of his Brother *John*, ſtaid beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papiſt*. Of which ſtrange accident Dr. *Alabaſter*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongſt many notable whimſeys had ſome fine abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the excellency thereof, and the rareneſs of the argument, I ſhall here ſubjoyn. *England.*

Bella inter geminos pluſquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ *Fidei pro partibus inſtat;*
Iſte reformandam *denegat eſſe fidem,*
Propoſitis cauſæ rationibus, alterutrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem *capit alter-uterque;*
Quod fuit in fatis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini ſine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi tranſuga caſtra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugnæ eſt, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter ſe ſuperaſſe dolet?

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great diſadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus tranſlated:

In points of Faith ſome undetermin'd jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil wars.
One for the Churches *Reformation* ſtood:
The other thought no *Reformation* good.
The points propos'd, they traverſed the field
With equal skill, and both together yield.
As they defir'd, his Brother each ſubdue's;
Yet ſuch their Fate, that each his Faith did looſe.
Both Captive's, none the priſoners thence to guide;
The *Victor* flying to the Vanquiſht ſide.
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd, (ſtrange to ſay)
And yet both mourn'd becauſe both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1 *Lindwood* the Canoniſt, 2 *Coſins*, and 3 *Cowel*, eminent in the ſtudies of the *Civil Laws*; 4 *Bracton*, and 5 *Briton* of old times; 6 *Dier*, and 7 *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of *England*. 8 *Johannes de Sacro Boſco*, the Author of the Book of the *Sphere*, and 9 *Roger Bacon*, a noted *Mathematician* in the darker times. 10 Sir *Francis Bacon* the learned Viſcount of S. *Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11 Sir *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellor, one of

England. the Reſtorers of Learning to the Iſle of great Britain. 12 Sr. *Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chryſoſtom*, 13 Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right learned antiquary, and a religious aſſertor of the Churches rights. 14 *Camden*, *Clarentieux*, the *Pauſanias* of the *Britiſh* Iſlands. 15 *Matthew Paris*, 16 *Roger Hoveden*, 17 *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18 *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19 *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, and 20 *Thomas* of *Walſingham*; all known Hiſtorians. And finally for Poetry, 1 *Gower*, 2 *Lidgate*, a Monk of *Burie*, 3 the famous *Geoffry Chawcer*, Brother in Law to *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaſter*; of which laſt Sir *Philip Sidney* uſed to ſay, that *he marvelled how in theſe miſtie times he could ſee ſo cleerly, and others in ſo cleer times go ſo blindly after him.* 4. Sir *Philip Sidney* himſelf, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5 The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Faerie Queen* in another place. *6 Sam. Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7 with *Michael Draiton*, the *Ovid* of the *Engliſh* Nation. 8. *Beaumount*, and 9 *Fletcher*, not inferiour unto *Terence* and *Plautus*; with 10 My friend *Ben. Johnſon*, equal to any of the antients for the exactneſs of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the *Dramatick* Poems, never before obſerved on the *Engliſh* Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as thoſe here ſpecified, of whom, as being ſtill alive, I forbear to ſpeak; according to that caution of the Hiſtorian, ſaying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita* Cenſura *eſt difficilis*.

But from the men to return again unto the Countrey, we find it to be ſubject (according to the ſeveral reſpects of Church and State) to a treble diviſion: *viz.* 1 into *6 Circuites* deſtinated to the *Itinerary Judges*; Secondly, into 22 *Epiſcopal Dioceſes*; Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was firſt divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the ſecond, who appointed twice in the year, two of the moſt grave and learned Judges of the Land, ſhould in each *Circuit* adminiſter Juſtice in the chief or head Towns of every Countrey. Of theſe Judges one ſitteth on matters *Criminal*, concerning the life and death of Malefactors; the other in actions *Perſonal*, concerning title of Land, Debts, or the like, between party and party. The firſt *Circuit* (for we will begin at the Weſt) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerſet*, *Devon*, *Cornwal*, *Dorſet*, and *Southampton*; the ſecond containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Gloceſter*, *Munmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*; The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Suſſex*, *Kent*, *Eſſex*, and *Hartford*; The fourth conſiſteth of the Shires of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*; The fift of the Shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leiceſter*, and *Warwick*; And the ſixt and laſt, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and *Lancaſter*. So that in theſe ſix *Circuits* are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middleſex*, and *Cheſhire*: whereof the firſt is exempted, becauſe of its vicinity to *London*; and the ſecond as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Judges and Counſellours to it ſelf.

The ſecond diviſion, but more antient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceſes*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Epiſcopal* Sees: each Dioceſe having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for diſpatch of *Eccleſiaſtical* buſineſs; and every *Arch-Deaconrie* ſubdivided into *Rural Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigneſs and extent thereof. Of theſe there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to ſay, the Dioceſes of *York*, *Cheſter*, *Durham*, and *Carlile*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In reſpect of which great authority and juriſdiction, the Archbiſhops of *Canterbury* had antiently the titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England*; for ſome ages before the Reformation, uſed to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right foot. Which cuſtom took beginning at the Council of *Laterane*, when *Urban* the ſecond called *Anſelm* the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* from amongſt the other Prelates then aſſembled, and placed him at his right foot, ſaying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe noſtro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam.* This hapned An. 1099. They were antiently alſo *Legati nati*; which honourable title was firſt given to Archbiſhop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the ſecond, and continued unto his ſucceſſors. And both to honour their calling in the courſe of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Counſel being men of learning; both the Archbiſhops and the Biſhops, were antiently priviledged to have their place and ſuffrage in the High Court of Parliament (ever ſince any Parliaments were firſt held in *Eegland*) as Peers of the Realm; and that too in a double reſpect: firſt in relation had to their ſacred Office, and ſecondly to thoſe temporal eſtates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greateſt power and flouriſh, all the Prerogatives and Priviledges of the temporal Barons: as neither being tryed by their *Peers* in Criminal cauſes, but left to an Ordinary *Jury*; nor ſuffered in examinations to make a *Proteſtation* upon their honour, to the truth of a fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their *Eccleſiaſtical* Courts, it was antiently Ordered alſo, that beſides ſuch as appertained to the Archbiſhops themſelves; beſides thoſe holden by the *Chancellours* and *Archdeacons* of every Biſhop, in their ſeveral *Dioceſes*; and ſome in many private Pariſhes which they called *Peculiars*; and finally beſides the Courts of *Viſitation*, held every two years by the Archdeacons or their Officials, and every third year by the Biſhop himſelf in perſon, or his lawful Deputy: there ſhould be alſo *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, aſſembled primarily for the Reforming of the Church in *Doctrine* and *Diſcipline*; and ſecondarily for granting Tenths and Subſidies to the King: Which Synods whether they be National or Provincial only, do naturally conſiſt of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, the Deans, Archdeacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for every Dioceſe) elected by the reſt to ſerve for them in that great Aſſembly; the Clergy not being bound antiently by any Act, to which they had not given conſent by thoſe their *Proxies*: Of which ſo called and met together, the Biſhops ſitting by themſelves make the Upper Houſe, the Deans, Archdeacons, and the reſt, doe conſtitute the Lower Houſe of Convocation.

The third and laſt Diviſion, though the ſecond in courſe of time, is that of *Shires* made by King *Alfride*,

Alfride, both for the easier Administration of justice; and to prevent such Outrages and Robberies, as (after the example of the *Danes*) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For over every one of these *Shires* or Counties, he appointed an *High-Sheriff* and divers *Officers*, to see into the behaviour of private men, and to punish such as were *delinquent*: and in times of war either already begun, or intended, he instituted a *Prefect* or *Lieutenant*; to whom he gave authority to see their musters, their provision of arms; and if occasion served, to punish such as rebelled or mutinied. This wise King ordained also, that his Subjects should be divided into tens or *tithings*, every of which severally should give bond for the good abearing of each other; and he who was of that dissolute behaviour, that he could not be admitted to these *tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the house of correction. By this course every man was not careful only of his own actions, but had an eye to all the nine for whom he stood bound; as the nine had over him: insomuch that a poor girl might travel safely with a bag of gold in her hand, and none durst meddle with her. The antientest of these ten men were called κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Tithingmen*. Ten of the nighest and neighbouring *tithings*, made the lesser Division which we call *hundreds*: which name cannot be derived from the like number of villages, for none of our *hundreds* are so large: and one of them there is in *Berk-shire*, which containeth five hamlets only. We have then a division of the Realm into 40 Shires; of the Shires into divers *hundreds*; and of the *hundreds* into ten *tithings*. And this division made by *Alfride* still remains in force: as also doth the *High Sheriff*, and the rest of the subordinate Officers: the office of the *High Sheriff* consisting especially at this time, in executing Arrests, assisting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the Kings Fines and Amerciaments, and raising the *Posse Comitatus*, if occasion be. But for the *Civil* part of government in the several Counties, it is most in the hands of such as we call *Justices of the Peace*, authorised by Commission under the Great Seal of *England*: appointed first by that prudent Prince King *Edward* the first, by the name of *Custodes Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, and first called *Justices of the Peace* in the 36 of King *Edward* the 3d, *Cap.* 11. A form of Government so much conducing to the prosperity of the Countrey, and the security of the People; that King *James*, the first Monarch of *Great Britain*, established it by Law in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts, which are still kept in every Shire, they are either the *County Court* holden every moneth, wherein the *Sheriff* or his sufficient *Deputy* commonly presideth; or the *Assizes* and Court of *Gaol-delivery* held twice a year by the *Judges Itinerant*, assisted by the *Justices of the Peace*, and others in Commission with them. There are also two *Officers* in every *hundred* chosen out of the *Yeomanrie*, whom we call the *Constables* of the *hundred*: who receiving the *Precepts* or Warrants of the *Sheriff*, or *Justices*, dispatcheth them to the *Tithingman* or Petit Constable of each town, and village, in their several Divisions. And in each *hundred*, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by the Steward of the *hundred*, or his Deputy, capeable of Pleas or Actions under the value of 40*s.* though in some few of these Courts also (as in that of *Slaughter-hundred* in *Gloucestershire*) the value of the Action, by some special Charter, be left unlimited. The like Courts also holden in some antient Burroughs. And besides these in every Village are two several Courts, and these two holden twice a year, if occasion be, held by the Steward of the Manour: in the one of which called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquirie made into Treasons, Felonies, Murders, and other Cases, falling between the King and the Subject; and in the other, which we call by the name of *Court Baron*, such only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and these last for the most part summoned at the will of the Lord: So that *Comines* had (we see) good reason for this Affirmation, that *of all the Signeuries in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of* England *was the Countrey in which the* Common-wealth *was best governed.*

To return again unto the Shires, some of them take their names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* from the *Cymbri* or antient *Britans*; *Essex*, and *Sussex*, from the East and South *Saxons*: some from the situation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Suthfolk*, *Devonshire*; this last so called from *Devinam*, a *Welch* or *British* word, signifying Low Vallies, of which it very much consisteth: Some from the form or figure of them, as *Cornwall*, from the resemblance which it hath to an horn; and *Kent*, (in Latin, *Cantium*) because it lieth in a *Canton* or Corner of the Island: Some from some Accidents therin, as *Berkshire* or *Berockshire* from the abundance of *Boxe*, which the *Saxons* call by the name of *Beroc*: the most part from the principal Town of all the County, as *Gloceſter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of these Shires the biggest beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 men may be raised for present service, if need so require. And in them all are comprehended 8709 Parishes (besides those of *Wales*) not reckoning in such Chappels as we call *Chappels of Ease*, in greatness not inferiour to many Parishes; 22 Cities, and 585 Market Towns which are no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 145 Castles, or ruines of Castles; few of them places of importance, and such as are belonging generally to the Kings, who suffer not any of their Subjects to nest themselves in Strong Holds and Castles.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *London*, seated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoyned together by a stately and magnificent Bridge, spoken of before. The River capeable in this place of the greatest Ships, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the most famous Mart Towns in Christendom: and not long since, had so much got precedency of all the rest, that the greatest part of the wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A City of great note in the time of the *Roman* conquest; to whom it was first known by the name of *Londinum*: a Town at that time of great trade and riches; and by them honoured with the title of *Augusta*. Increased of late very much in buildings; contiguous to some Towns and Villages, from which in former times disjoyned by some distant *intervals*. So that the Circuit may contain 8 miles at least: in which space are 122 Parish Churches; the Palace of the King, the houses of the Nobility, Colledges for the study of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to

England. this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing welnigh 600000 people, which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus: *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more antient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I doe not think that *London* is the more populous; so neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we measure them by the Wals. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that passeth in Accompt by the name of *London*: I cannot but conceive, that if *London* were cast into the same orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of building, *Paris* indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled also in some tract of time, if the design begun in King *James* his reign, tending to the advancement of such *uniformity*, be not interrupted. For other things, certain it is that *London* is the antienter City, as being an Archbishops See in the time of the *Britains*, when the name of *Paris* was scarce heard of; a Bishops See at the first conversion of the *Saxons*: increased so much in wealth and honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at last too big for the Kingdom; which whether it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a question. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Melt* in the body natural; the monstrous growth of which impoverisheth all the rest of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* spirits, which should give nourishment unto them; And in the end cracked or surcharged by its own fulness, not only sends unwholesom fumes and *vapours* unto the *head*, and heavy *pangs* unto the *heart*, but draws a *consumption* on it self. And certainly the over-growth of great Cities is of dangerous consequence, not only in regard of Famin, such multitudes of mouthes not being easie to be fed: but in respect of the irreparable danger of *Insurrections*, if once those multitudes, sensible of their own strength, oppressed with want, or otherwise distempered with faction or discontent, should gather to an head, and break out into action. Yet thus much may be said to the honour of *London*, though grown by much too big now for the kingdom, that it is generally so well governed, and in so good peace; that those Murders, Robberies, and outrages so frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here seldom heard of. 2. *York*, in the West Riding of that County, the second City of *England*, as the old Verse hath it.

Londinum *caput est & Regni urbs prima Britanni,*
Eboracum *à primâ jure secunda venit.*

That is to say,

In *England*, *London* is the chiefest Town;
The second place *York* claimeth as its own.

And so it may, being indeed the second City of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatness. A pleasant, large, and stately City, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich, and populous withall. Seated upon the River *Ouse*, or *Vre*, which divides it in twain; both parts being joyned together with a fair stone Bridge, consisting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great estimation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Provine or *Diocese* of *Britain*; remarkable for the death and burial of the Emperour *Severus*, and the birth of *Constantine* the *Great*: by consequence the Seat of the Primate of the *British* Church, as long as *Christianity* did remain amongst them. Nor stooped it lower when the *Saxons* had received the *Faith*: and notwithstanding those mutations which befel this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it still preserved its antient lustre; and increased it too. Adorned with a stately and magnificent *Cathedral*, inferiour to few in *Europe*; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Manour-house) the dwelling in these later days, of the Lord *President* of the Court or Councel here established by King *Henry* the 8th, for the benefit of his Northern Subjects, after the manner of the *French Parliaments*, or *Presidiall Seiges*. 3. *Bristol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *England*, situate on the meeting of the *Frome* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the *Ocean*: in that regard commodiously seated for trade and traffick; the Ships with full sayl coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full purses trading into most parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sewers* made under ground, for the conveyance of all filth and nastiness, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of *Ratcliff*. The *Cathedral* first built by *Rob. Fitz. Harding*, Son to a King of *Denmark*, once a *Burger* here, and by him stored with Canons *Regular*, Anno 1248. but made a Bishops See by King *Henry* 8th, Anno 1542. The principal building next the Church, an antient Castle, a piece of such strength, that *Maud* the Empress having took King *Steven* Prisoner, thought it the safest place to secure him in. 4. *Norwich*, the fourth City of the first rank, of which more hereafter. 5. *Oxford*, the first of the second rank of *English* Cities seated upon the *Ouse* or *Isis*: but whether so called as *Vadum Isidos*, Ouseford, or the *Ford* of *Ouse*; or *Vada boum* (as the *Grecks* had their *Bosphori* in former times) I determine not. An antient Town, and antiently made a seat of Learning, coeval unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the University hereof being restored rather than first founded by King *Alured*, Anno 806. after it had been overborn a while by the *Danish* Furies; but hereof as an University, more anon. This only now, that for the stateliness of the Schools and publick library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colleges, all built of fair and polished stone; the liberal endowment of those houses, and notable encouragements of Industry and Learning in the salarie of the Professors in most Arts and Sciences, it is not to be parallelled in the *Christian* World. The City of it self well built, and as pleasantly seated, formed in the Figure of a Cross, two long streets thwarting one another, each of them near a mile in length;

containing

containing in that compaſs 13 Pariſh Churches, and a See Epiſcopal founded here by the King *Henry* 8th, An. 1541. The honorary Title of twenty of the noble Family of the *Veres*, now Earls of *Oxon*. 6. *Saliſbury*, firſt ſeated on the Hill, where now ſtands *old Saliſbury*, the *Sorbiodunum* of the Antients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very ſuddenly into great Renown; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Avon*, (a name common to many *Engliſh* Rivers) which watereth every ſtreet thereof; and for the populouſneſſe of the place, plenty of Proviſions, number of Churches, a ſpacious Market-place, and a fair Town-hall, eſteemed the ſecond City of all the Weſt. 7. *Gloceſter*, by *Antonine* called *Glevum*, by the *Britains Caer Glowy*, whence the preſent name; the *Saxons* adding *Ceſter*, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and trade of the place: well Built, conſiſting of fair large Streets, beautified with a magnificent *Cathedral*; and ſituate in ſo rich a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the uſe of man, except only Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8. *Cheſter*, upon the River *Dee*, built in the manner of a quadrate, incloſed with a wall, which takes up more than two miles in compaſs; containing in that compaſs 12 Pariſh Churches, and an old *Cathedral* dedicated antiently to S. *Wereburg* Daughter of *Wolfere* K. of the *Mercians*, and Viſitreſs of all the Monaſteries of *England*. But made a Biſhops See by King *Henry* the 8th. The buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every door, under which a man may walk dry from one end to the other. The reſt of chief note ſhall be ſpecified on another occaſion, with this advertiſement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with thoſe of *France*, and *Italy*: Firſt becauſe the Nobles and Gentry of thoſe Countries live for the moſt part in the Cities, ours in Country-Villages; And ſecondly, becauſe the *Londoners* ſo ingroſs all trading, that they draw thither all the Wealth and treaſure of the Kingdom. By means whereof, that every day increaſeth in wealth and beauty; the reſt (except *Briſtol* only) doe decay as ſenſibly: that City being like the *Spleen* in the body natural, the monſtrous growth whereof ſtarveth all the reſt of the Members. *Liene excreſente, reliquum corpus contabeſcit*, as the *Doctors* have it. *England.*

There are in *England* but two *Univerſities*, which may equal ſix, nay ten of all other Countries, (ſo that *Paris* be not in the number) moſt of them being no better than our Colleges of *Weſtminſter*, *Eaton*, or *Winchеſter*; and none ſo liberally endowed, as ſome one of theſe in the Univerſities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, ſome of them called only by the name of *Hals*, but theſe endowed with Lands and Fellowſhips as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colleges endowed with Lands, beſides ſix *Hals*, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them, Profeſſors of the Arts and Sciences, as alſo of Divinity, Law, Phyſick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries; and in each to the number of 3000 Students, ſo regular in their lives and converſations, as are not to be found in the World beſides. The fairer and more antient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale ſtudium*. For that the Univerſity of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her ſiſter of *Oxford*, ſhe may take place of all the Univerſities in the World beſides) is not of ſo long ſtanding, as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the teſtimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Maſter *Camden*, viz. *Regnante* Edwardo *primo*, (It ſhould rather be read *ſecundo*) *de ſtudio* Grantbridge *facta eſt Academia, ſicut Oxonium*: where the word *ſicut* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern. We ſee this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* 2d, as I find in the work of that great Searcher of *Academical* Antiquities, Mr. *Brian Twine*. *Apoſtolica authoritate ſtatuimus* (ſaith the Bull) *quod Collegium magiſtrorum & ſcholarium ejudem ſtudii* (ſpeaking of *Cambridge*) *Univerſitas ſit cenſenda*, &c. But what need more than the Reſolution of the *Commons* of the firſt Parliament holden under King *James*? For when the Clerk of that Houſe had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking diſdainfully that *Hyſteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Univerſities to be ſearched, and after ſearch made gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the Univerſity of *Cambridge* as it was much of a later Foundation, ſo was it long before it grew into eſteem: inſomuch that when *William* of *Wainflete* Biſhop of *Winchеſter*, and Founder of *Magdalen* College in *Oxon* (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perſwaded King *Henry* the ſixth to erect a College in *Oxford*, as ſome of the Kings his Predeceſſors had done before him: *immo potius* Cantabrigiæ (replyed the King) *Ut duas ſi fieri poſſit in Anglia Academias habeam*. No ſaid the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that ſo, if poſſible, I may have two *Univerſities* in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Story of this Countrey, that it was firſt peopled out of *Gaul* is affirmed by *Cæſar*, and proved by many ſtrong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Cuſtoms, and the neerneſs of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are ſaid to have reigned here ſucceſſively before the coming of the *Romans*; Certain it is, that *Cæſar* found the countrey cantoned into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) & the people to be very rude & illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breſts of the *Druides*; who committed nothing unto writing, and by that means kept the People in continual ignorance: communicating what they knew to none but thoſe of their own Order, and therein being ſought to by the *Druides* or Prieſts of *Gaul*; who came over into this Iſland to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their ſacred Myſteries. Being conquered or diſcovered rather by *Julius Cæſar*, it was not ſo much as looked after by the two next Emperours: *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wiſdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durſt not follow it. But *Claudius*, his Succeſſor, undertook the Enterpriſe; ſollicited thereunto by *Bericus* a noble *Briton*, who for ſedition and ſome practices againſt the publick, was expelled the Countrey. Hereupon *Aulus Plautius* is ſent over with ſome *Roman* Forces, by whom and *P. Oſtorius Scapula*

England. *Scapula*, his Succeſſor, *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus*, two Kings of the *Britans*, were ſeverally overcome in battel, a *Roman* Colony planted at *Camalodunum*, and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a *Province*. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarten* and *Edenburgh*: *Agricola* in the time of *Domitian*, having the happineſs, and good fortune, to goe beyond the furtheſt of his Predeceſſors; and ſo much moderation not to venture further, where there was nothing to be got but blows, cold, and hunger.

At the firſt entrance of the *Romans*, the Iſland was divided into ſeveral Nations, each governed by its own own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and counſels, and ſo more eaſily ſubdued by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needleſs to make mention of inferiour *Clans*) were 1 the *Danmonii*, containing *Devonſhire*, and *Cornwal*; whoſe chief Cities were *Iſca*, now *Exeter*, and *Volcha* neer the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*. 2 The *Durotriges*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorſet*; whoſe chief City was *Danium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorcheſter*. 3 The *Belgæ*, planted in the Counties of *Somerſet*, *Southampton*, and *Wilts*, whoſe chief Cities were *Aquæ calidæ*, now *Bath*; *Venta Belgarum*, now *Wincheſter*; and *Sorbiodunum*, the ſeat of *old Saliſbury*. 4 The *Attrebatii*, confined within *Barkſhire* only, the chief City of whom was *Gualena*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5 The *Regni*, poſſeſſed of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, whoſe chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelſey*; and *Neomagus*, ſituate ſome ten miles from *London*. 6 The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentiſh*, having *Durovernum*, now *Canterbury*, *Dubris*, now *Dover*, and *Rhutupiæ*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7 The *Trinobantes* of *Middleſex*, and *Eſſex*, where *London* called afterwards *Auguſta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum* the firſt *Roman* Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat Royal of *Cunabelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the *Romans* 8 The *Catieuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford* and *Hartford*, whoſe Towns of moſt importance were *Magivintum*, now called *Dunſtable*; and *Verulamium*, (neer S. *Albans*) the ſtrongeſt Hold the *Britains* had in their wars with *Cæſar*. 9 The *Iceni*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Faſtini*, now S. *Edmundsbury*, *Sitomagus*, now *Thetford*, *Durolis*, now *Godmancheſter*; and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10 *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Darby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*, *Rhugo*, where now is *Leiceſter*, *Gunſennæ* not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Caſterten*; *Agelocis*, now *Littleburough*, a ſmall Village neer *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Tripontium*, now *Torceſter*, not far from *Northampton*. 11 The *Brigantes*, the greateſt Nation of the Iſland, filling all *Yorkſhire*, the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*, in a word all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the 12 *Oltadini*, whoſe chief Town was *Bremenium*, thought now to be *Ribcheſter* in *Ruddisdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation, were *Iſaurium*, now *Aldborrow* in the North Riding; *Eboracum*, or *York*, in the Weſt Riding; and *Petuaria* thought to be *Beverley*, in the Eaſt Riding of *Yorkſhire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Bincheſter*, in the Biſhoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Pap-Caſtle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wheallop-Caſtle* in *Weſtmerland*; and *Rhigodunum*, now *Rible-Cheſter* in the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*. 13 The *Cornavii*, ſeated in the counties of *Cheſter*, *Salop*, *Worceſter*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whoſe principal Towns were, *Deuvania*, or *Legio viceſima Victrix*, now *Weſt-Cheſter*; *Uricomium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble village; *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*; *Brannogenium*, now *Worceſter*; *Mandueſſedum*, now *Mancheſter*, on the River *Anker*. 14 And laſt of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford* and *Gloceſter-ſhires*; principal places of the which were, *Dorcinia*, now *Dorcheſter*, ſeven miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrenceſter*, neer the heap of the *Thames*. Such names as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, ſhall be remembred when we come to ſpeak of thoſe Countries.

Theſe, and the reſt of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed) being once ſubdued; *Britain* became a Member of the *Roman* Empire; yet ſo that many of the *Tribes* had their own Kings, and were ſuffered to govern by their own Laws: it being a known cuſtom amongſt the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere ſervitutis inſtrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings ſometimes in the conquered Countries, making them inſtrumental to the peoples bondage. And it is ſaid of *Lucius Verus* the *Roman* Emperour, that having put an end to the *Parthian* war, *Regna* Regibus, *Provincias* Comitibus *ſuis regendas dediſſe*: he gave thoſe Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Pratuſagus*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; *Lucius*, before-mentioned, the firſt Chriſtian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Conſtantine* the great. But as afterward in the *Heptarchie* of the *Saxons*, that King who over-ruled the reſt, and was of moſt power and eſtimation, was called the Monarch of the *Engliſh*: ſo probable enough it is, that he amongſt the *Britiſh* Kings, who was in moſt credit with the *Romans*, or of moſt power amongſt his neighbours, might be permitted to aſſume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Caſſibelane* to *Conſtantine*, I have here ſubjoyned, according to the tenor of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory.

The Kings of *Britain* after the coming in of the *Romans*.

A. Ch.		
	1	*Caſſibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britans* in the war againſt *Julius Cæſar*.
	2	*Theomantius*.
	3	*Cymbeline*.
	4	*Guiderius*.
45	5	*Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius* called *Pratuſagus*, in whoſe time *Britain* was ſubdued by *Aulus Plautius*, ſent hither from the Emperour *Claudius*.
73	6	*Marius*.

125 7 *Coilus*, the ſuppoſed Founder of *Colcheſter*.
180 8 *LUCIUS*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Britain*, and of all the World; who dying without iſſue, left the *Roman* Emperor his Heir.
207 9 *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.
211 10 *Baſſianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperor of *Rome* after his Father; who loſt the Kingdom of *Britain* to
218 11 *Carauſius*, a Native of the Iſland, who rebelling againſt *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himſelf.
225 12 *Alectus*.
232 13 *Æſclepiodorus*.
260 14 *Coilus* II. the Father of *Helena*.
289 15 *Conſtantius*, Emperor of *Rome*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, ſucceeded on the death of *Coilus* the 2d.
16 *Conſtantine* the great, the Son of *Helena* and *Conſtantius*, who added his Eſtates in *Britain* to the *Roman* Monarchy.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman* Empire, it was at firſt divided into three Provinces only, that is to ſay, *Britannia prima*, (ſo called becauſe firſt ſubdued) containing all the Countries on the South ſide of the *Thames*, and thoſe inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, and *Cattieuchlani*, whoſe *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2 *Britannia Secunda*, comprising all the Nations on the further ſide of the *Severn*, whoſe chief City was *Caer-Leon* upon *Uſk*, in the County of *Munmouth*; and 3 *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, including all the reſt to the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*: each Province having ſeveral Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof eight and twenty Biſhops, reſiding in thoſe ſeveral Cities: three of the which reſiding in the principal Cities, were honored with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a ſuperiority over all the Biſhops of their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of *Conſtantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Countrey from the *Frith* of *Solway*, and the *Picts wall* on the South, to the *Friths* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton* North; and *Flavia Cæſarienſis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the reſt betwixt the *Humber* and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, though now made leſs than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he made the whole a full and complete *Dioceſe* of the *Roman* Empire, (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was ſhewn) ſubordinate, as *Spain* was alſo, to the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant General. By which diviſion or rather ſubdiviſion of the *Roman* Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the *Eccleſiaſtical* government, but that the *Britiſh* Church became more abſolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each *Dioceſe* had) reſiding in the ſame City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General (which was then at *York*) of as great power and juriſdiction in the Iſle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their ſeveral *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number ſhould not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman* Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continual pay, as well to keep their Coaſts and Frontires againſt the Enemy, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Panciroll* be not miſtaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: three Legions keeping here their conſtant and continual Reſidence, that is to ſay, the ſixt Legion, ſurnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the 20th Legion ſurnamed alſo *Victrix*, at *Weſt Cheſter*; and the ſecond Legion ſometimes at *Iſca Dannoniorum*, which we now call *Exeter*, ſometimes at *Iſca Silurum*, which is now *Caer-Leon* upon *Uſk*. Which *Legions* with their *Aides* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number ſpoken of before. Of ſo high eſtimation was this Iſland in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all theſe Forces ſo preſerve the Countrey from forein Enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great ſpoils on the coaſts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern borders: againſt all which the *Romans* held out well enough; and made good their ground; till the recalling of the *Legions* out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it ſelf, then waſted and deſtroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which hapned in or about the year of Chriſt 407, and ſome 470 years from the firſt invaſion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Victorinus* the laſt Governor for the Empire, in the Iſle of *Britain*. For though the noble *Ætius*, on the Petition and complaint of the ſlaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the *Scots* and *Picts*, ſent ſome ſmall Forces to aſſiſt them againſt thoſe Enemies: yet were they preſently called back for defence of *Gaul*, againſt the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains* hopeleſs of all help from *Rome*, and being unable, by their own ſtrength to repel the Enemy, by reaſon of their long eaſe and diſuſe of Arms; applyed themſelves to *Aldroenus*, King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the ſame ſtock, for relief and ſuccour. Whoſe Brother *Conſtantine* (according to the *Britiſh* ſtory) paſſing over with a competent Army; and having valiantly repulſed the barbarous people, was crowned King of *Britain*: the firſt of a new race of Kings, which ſwayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts, either againſt the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally ſubdued and ſhut up in *Wales*. Thoſe of moſt obſervation in the courſe of the ſtory, were, 1 *Conſtantine* the firſt King, and the reſtorer of the Countrey to Peace and quiet, traiterouſly murdered by a *Pict*. 2 *Vortiger*, E. of the *Gevilles*, (now *Cornwal*) Protector of *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine*, taken out of a Monaſtery;

after

Saxons after whoſe death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himſelf: but being unable to defend it againſt the Enemy, and make his title alſo good againſt the other children of *Conſtantine*, firſt called in the *Saxons*. 3 *Vortimer*, eldeſt Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many battels; but in the midſt of his Succeſſes was poyſoned by *Rowena* a *Saxon* Lady, ſecond Wife of *Vortiger*. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkiſh* writers, and other *Legendaries*, report ſo many idle and impoſſible actions. Doubtleſs he was a Prince of moſt perfect vertue, a great preſerver of his Countrey from approaching ruine, & worthy the pen of an able *Panegyriſt*; by whom his brave atchievements might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of thoſe feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round-table*. For by the overſtraining of ſome *Monkiſh* Writers, *Geofry* of *Monmouth* and the reſt, they have given too juſt occaſion to poſterity to ſuſpect that vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the ſtory, as admiration of the perſons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur* and his Nobles only; *Charlemagne* and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, men of great vertue and renown, ſuffering as deeply in the ſame kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the cuſtom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with ſuch paſtimes and ſports as are (or have been uſed of late) by the *Lords of Miſrule* in ſome Gentlemens houſes: an Inſtitution which the *Scotiſh* Writers of thoſe times much blame, perhaps not unjuſtly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than ſuch rude diſports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to 5 *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his neereſt kinſman, ſlain by *Aurelius Conanus*, his own Nephew, who ſucceeded after him: which fraction did ſo weaken the diſtreſſed *Britans*, that they were forced to withdraw themſelves beyond the *Severn*; as 6 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joynt forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn*, for the ſafer, but more fruitleſs Mountains. Of the reſt, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the ſecond race of

The Kings of *Britain* after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A.C.				
433	1	*Conſtantine*. 10.	542	9 *Conſtantine* II. 4.
443	2	*Conſtantius*. 3.	546	10 *Aurel. Conarus*. 30.
446	3	*Vortiger*. 18.	576	11 *Vortipor*. 4.
464	4	*Vortimer*, his Son. 7.	580	12 *Malgo*. 6.
471	5	*Vortiger* (again) 10.	586	13 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*. 27.
481	6	*Aurelius Ambroſius*. 19.	613	14 *Cadwan*. 22.
500	7	*Uter Pendragon* 6.	635	15 *Cadwallan*. 43.
506	8	*Arthur*. 36.	687	16 *Cadwallader*, the laſt King of the *Britans*,

who on a ſuperſtitious zeal travelled in a pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the habit of a *Religious* Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*, where he dyed not long after, Anno 689. After whoſe death, his Succeſſors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we ſhall be ſure to find them.

And ſo the *Britans* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongſt the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many people, under their name and ſervice, than in themſelves: the *Juites* and *Angles* joyning with them, and paſſing in Accompt as the ſame one Nation. Their Countries different as their names, until this Conjunction; but neighboring neer enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the firſt in that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe*, which we now cal *Selſwick*, where ſtill the Town called *Angolen* doth preſerve their memory; the *Juites* upon the North of them, where there is ſtill a Province called by the name of *Juiteland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, ſituate in the very neck of that *Cherſoneſe* where it joyneth with *Germany*. Joyning their powers they ſpread themſelves with good ſucceſs, to the South and Weſt; of which more hereafter. And growing Maſters of the Seas, infeſted with continual Piracies the Coaſts of *Britain*; occaſioning herein an Officer of great truſt and power, appointed to defend and ſcour thoſe Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongſt the *Britans*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him againſt the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched field neer *Stamford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for ſo far had the barbarous people marched without any reſiſtance. Rewarded for this victory with the Iſle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their hoſts: whom by degrees they diſpoſſeſſed of all the Countrey on this ſide of *Severn*; parcelling it into ſeven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchie*, that is to ſay, 1 Of *Kent*, 2 of the *South-Saxons*, 3 of the *Weſt-Saxons*, 4 of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, 5 of the *Eaſt-Angles*, 6 of the *North-Humbers*, and 7 of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which ſeveral Kingdom, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to ſhew.

1. The Kingdom of KENT, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengiſt*, who with his Brother *Horſus* had the leading of the *Saxon* Forces, at their firſt entry into *Britain*, An. 455. being the ſixt year after their firſt coming in: who reſtoring *Paganiſm* to this Countrey, when the reſt of the Iſle was *Chriſtian*, occaſioned the diſtinction of *Kent* and *Chriſtendom*. The *Kentiſh*, afterwards the firſt of the *Saxons* who received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the Apoſtle of the *Engliſh Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Canterbury*, once the Regal ſeat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his converſion, to *Auguſtine* the firſt Archbiſhop thereof, and his Succeſſors: afterwards the See of thoſe Archbiſhops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reculver*. Seated in the Eaſt part of the Countrey, about ſeven or eight miles from

from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Ethelbert* before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now stands by Archbishop *Lanfrank*, *Will. Corboyle*, and some other of their Successors in the said See. The Archiespiscopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruines of S. *Augustines* Monastery shew what once it was. 2 *Dover*, antiently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-shore, where the passage is shortest into *France*; for that cause fortified with a strong and (in those days accounted an) impregnable Castle; esteemed one of the keys of *England*, and the chief of the *Cinque-Ports*; now giving the title of an Earl to the house of *Hunsdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, neerly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memory. 3 *Rochester*, seated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham*, (the station of the Royal Navy) an antient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the name *Roff-chester*; a Bishops See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island. 4 *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway* also neer the head thereof, the largest and most beautifull in all this Countrey, and most commodiously seated for publick business.

The Kings of *Kent*.

A.	Ch.			
455	1	*Hengist*, the first King.	673	9 *Lotharius*.
488	2	*Esk*, or *Osca*.	686	10 *Edrick*.
512	3	*Octa*.	693	11 *Wightred*.
532	4	*Immerick*.	720	12 *Egbert* II.
561	5	*Ethelbert*, the first Christian King of this Countrey.	749	13 *Ethelbert* II.
			754	14 *Alricus*.
617	6	*Edbald*.	793	15 *Ethelbert* III.
641	7	*Ercombert*.	797	16 *Guthred*.
665	8	*Egbert*.	805	17 *Baldred*, the last King of *Kent*, who lost

both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *West-Sex*, or the *West-Saxons*, An. 824. The progeny of *Hengist* having been before extinguished in the person of *Alricus*, overthrown and slain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdom of SOUTH-SEX, or of the SOUTH-SAXONS, was began by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that people, An. 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Sussex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated: the first so called *quasi South-Sex*, the Countrey of the *South-Saxons*; the second *quasi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as S. *Maries* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of *London*) is called S. *Mary Over-Rey*. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbishop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it, were, 1 *Chichester*, built by *Cissa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Cissan-cester*, encompassed almost round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Sussex*, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Sealsey*, a Demy-Island, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfride*. 2 *Hastings*, one of the *Cinque*-ports, in *Sussex* also; the landing place of the *Normans*, and famous for the overthrow of King *Harold* in the fields adjoyning. 3 *Guildford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4 *Arundel*, in a *Dale* or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Testament of King *Alfride* unto *Anthelm*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albeneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, that in the year 1641. there were no fewer than eight *Howards*, in the House of *Peers*. 5 *Kingston* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kingston* upon *Hull* in *Yorkshire*: heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *English Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingston*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crushed in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

The Kings of the *South-Saxons*.

A.	Ch.	
488	1	*Ella*, the first King.
514	2	*Cissa*, the Son of *Ella*, who lost his life and Kingdom to *Cerdic* King of the *West-Saxons*.
590	3	*Cheulin*, King of *West-Sex*, called himself King of the *South-Saxons*.
	4	*Edelwach*, or *Ethelwolf*, the first Christian King, overcome and slain in battel by *Ceadwall*, King of the *West-Saxons*, An. 687. After whose death *Berthan* and *Authun*, two Brethren, took

on themselves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the *West-Saxons*, this Kingdom was subdued by *Ina*, the Successor of *Ceadwall*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of WEST-SEX, or of the WEST-SAXONS, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the rest; contained the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerset*, *Dorset*, *Wilts*, *Southampton*, and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, An. 495. who having overcome the *Britans* of this Western tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himself King of the *West-Saxons*, An. 522. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as elsewhere, was restored again in the time of *Kingils*, their first Christian King; by the preaching of S. *Birinus*, Bishop of *Dorchester* neer *Oxford*, then a great City of no fewer than ten Parishes,

now

Saxons. now reduced to one. Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Ex-ceaſter*; environed with deep ditches, and very ſtrong wals, in compaſs about a mile and half beſides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Pariſh Churches, beſides the Minſter, a beautiful and ſtately Fabrick. 2 *Bath*, ſo called from the *Bathes* there being, the chief City of *Somerſet*; by the *Latines* called *Aquæ Solis*, by the *Greeks* Θέρμα Σέρμαλα, for the ſelf ſame reaſon. Situate in a low Vallie, environed about with Hils very ſteep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and freſh Springs, to the great commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monaſtery, partner with *Wels*, the Biſhops See, in the ſtile Epiſcopal; and gives the Title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3 *Falemouth*, in *Cornwall*, ſeated upon a large and capacious Bay, ſo full of Creeks and Roads, capeable of the beſt Ships, that it is ſaid, an hundred ſayl of Ships may be lodged therein with ſuch convenience, that from the top of the one, the Maſt of another is not to be ſeen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater ſafety with two very ſtrong Caſtles built by *Henry* the 8th; that of S. *Mandits* on the Eaſt, and that of *Pendinas* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the Weſt. 4 *Dorcheſter*, the chief Town of *Dorſetſhire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and conſequently of no great trading: not ſo much famous for ought elſe as giving the Title of a Marqueſs to *Henry* Earl of *Kingſton*, of the noble Family of the *Pierrepoints*. 5 *Wilton*, the head Town, in thoſe times, of *Wiltſhire*, and a Biſhops See, honored with the reſidence of nine ſeveral Biſhops. But by tranſlating of the See to *Sarum*, (or *Sariſbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithall the thorow-fare which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market-Town. 6 *Wincheſter* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons Vent-ceaſter*, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant River, the ſeat Royal of the *Weſt-Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolves-eye*: ſo named from the Kings of the *Wolphian* Family, and the ſituation of it in the circlings of the fore-ſaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wool-Staple* here kept, as ſome; much leſs from Cardinal *Wolſey*, as others moſt abſurdly think. The houſe given after to the Biſhops, and made their Palace. The Town in compaſs two miles, beſides the Suburbs; commodiouſly ſeated in a low place, between very ſteep Hils, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much ſince thoſe times both by war and fire, half of the ground within the Town being fields and gardens: but ſtill adorned with a magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Caſtle, bravely mounted upon an hill for defence and proſpect; beſides a *College*, and an *Hoſpital* added ſince thoſe days. 7 *Southampton*, conveniently ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richeſt Towns in thoſe parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large ſtreets, beautified with five Pariſh Churches, and fortified with high wals, a double ditch, and a right ſtrong Caſtle: but the Caſtle now decayed and ruined. 8 *Reeding*, on the Banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great trade for clothing, well-built, and of three Pariſh Churches: heretofore beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle and a goodly Monaſtery, but both now decayed. 9 *Windſor*, called *Windleſhores* in the old *Saxon*, ſituate neer the Banks of the *Thames* on a riſing ground, which gives it a fair proſpect over all the Countrey; adorned in ſucceeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the ſeat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10 *Wallingford*, the *Gualleua* of the Antients, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berks*: a mile in compaſs at that time within the wals, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and adorned with twelve Pariſh Churches. So deſolated by a Plague, An. 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the wals left (as not much of the Caſtle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the *Weſt-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
522	1	*Cerdic*, the firſt King. 17.
539	2	*Kenric*. 29.
565	3	*Celingus*, or *Cheuline*. 10.
595	4	*Celric*. 5.
600	5	*Ceolwolf*. 14.
614	6	*Kingil*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
646	7	*Kenewalchin*. 31.
677	8	*Sigebert*. 1.
678	9	*Eſewin*. 2.
680	10	*Centwin*. 7.
987	11	*Ceadwall*.
690	12	*Ina*, who firſt gave the *Peterpence* to the Church of *Rome*.
725	13	*Ethelard*. 14.
739	14	*Cuthbert*. 16.
755	15	*Sigebert* II. 1.
756	16	*Kinulph*. 31.
787	17	*Bithric*. 13.
800	18	*Egbert*, the moſt puiſſant King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who united all the *Heptarchie* into one Eſtate, of whom ſee more amongſt the Monarchs of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*.

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchenwin*, deſcended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wedneſday*, or *Wodenſday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middleſex*, *Eſſex*, and ſo much of *Hartfordſhire*, as is in the *Dioceſe* of *London*. The *Chriſtian* Faith expulſed here aa in other places, was reſtored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, by the preaching of *Mellitus* the firſt Biſhop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*; ſuppreſſed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but ſetled ſtronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Biſhop there. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, beſides *London*, ſpoken of already, were

1 *Weſtmin-*

1 *Weſtminſter*, ſituate in thoſe times, a mile from *London*, now adjoyning to it. The See of the Archbiſhop of *London* in the time of the *Britans*: afterward by the *Saxons*, called *Thorn-eye*, or the Thorny Iſland; till the new *Minſter* built by *Sebert* as before is ſaid, and the *weſtern* ſituation of it in regard of S. *Pauls*, built at the ſame time by *Ethelbert* the King of *Kent*; gained it this new name. A City honored with the ſeat of the Kings of *Eaſt-Sex*, and ſince thoſe times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the *old Palace* of the one, and the *new Palace* of the other, ſtill remaining there; beautified upon that occaſion with more ſtately and magnificent houſes, belonging to the King, Biſhops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom; having of late a new Town added to it in the *Convent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the Monks of *Weſtminſter*) for uniformity of building, and handſome ſtreets, inferior to no City of *France*, or *Italy*. 2 *Colcheſter*, the chief Town of *Eſt-ſex*, ſituate neer the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinenſium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Biſhops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaſter*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colcheſter*. A fair and well built Town, and of good reſort, fortified with an old *Roman* wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3 *Ithanceſter* in *Dengy* Hundred, where S. *Ceadda* the ſecond Biſhop of *London*, baptized the relapſed *Eaſt-Saxon*. 4 *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County ſo called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Chriſtianity amongſt the *Saxons*; in which S *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Apoſtle of that people, had a conference or conſultation with the Britiſh Biſhops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illuſtrious Family, ſurnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honor, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*; and at this time, the title of Earl, and Marqueſs, to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *Eaſt Saxons*.

A. Ch.			A. Ch.		
527	1	*Erchenwin*, the firſt King.	664	8	*Sighere*.
587	2	*Sledda*.	664	9	S. *Sebba*.
596	3	S. *Sebert*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.	694	10	*Sigheard*.
	4	*Seward* and *Sigebert*.		11	*Seofride*.
623	5	*Sigebert* II. or the Little.	701	12	*Offa*.
	6	*Sigebert* III.	709	13	*Selred*.
661	7	*Swithelme*.	774	14	*Suthred*, the laſt King of the *Eaſt-Saxons*,

ſubdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *Weſt-Sex*, Anno 828. and his Kingdom made a member of that riſing Monarchy.

V. The Kingdome of the *EAST-ANGLES*, ſo called from the *Angli* or *Engliſh*, which poſſeſſed theſe parts, and the *Eaſtern* ſituation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, Anno 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeſhire*, and the Iſle of *Ely*. The *Chriſtian* Faith firſt planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Miniſtry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the firſt Biſhop of the *Eaſt-Angles*; the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of moſt importance in it, were 1 *Dunwich* on the Sea-ſhore, the firſt Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that Dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greateſt part worn into the Sea. 2 *Ipſwich* in the ſame County of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the Countrey, a rich, populous, and well traded Empory, conſiſting of no fewer than twelve Pariſh Churches. 3 *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, ſituate on the River *Yare*, which runs thence to *Yaremouth*; lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 30 Pariſhes; well walled about with many a Turret, and 12 Gates for entrance; but hath within it much waſt ground, the City ſuffering great loſs both in wealth, and buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth. Recovered of the firſt blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the laſt ſtill languiſhing: yet ſtill it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Biſhops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*; and the ruines of an antient Caſtle of the *Saxons* building. 4 *North Elmham*, the Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for thoſe parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this, and that of *Dunwich* ruinated in the *Daniſh* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years, and here continuing; both Sees united unto one; till removed to 5 *Thetford*, another Town of this County, ſituate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the leſſer *Ouſe*: a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at laſt removed to *Norwich*. 6 *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Camboritum*, whence the modern name: unleſs we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for ſome call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reaſon of the Univerſity, ſaid to be founded by *Sigebert*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda* that he Founded a School for the education of children in the ways of good Learning; but he ſpeaketh neither of *Univerſity*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7 *Ely*, ſituate in the Iſle ſo named, occaſioned by the divided ſtreams of *Ner* and *Ouſe*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Marſhes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as ſituate in a foggy and unhealthful air; but only for a fair Monaſtery, built by S. *Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and repleniſhed with Monks by *Ethelwold* Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, An. 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Biſhops See in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, Anno 1109.

Saxons.

The Kings of the *East-Angles*.

A.	Ch.				
575	1	*Uffa*, the firſt King.	654	8	*Ethelbert.*
582	2	*Titullus.*	656	9	*Edelwald.*
593	3	*Redwall*, the firſt Chriſtian King.	664	10	*Alduffe.*
624	4	*Erpenwald.*	683	11	*Elſwolph.*
636	5	S. *Sigebert.*	714	12	*Beorn.*
638	6	*Egric.*	714	13	S. *Ethelred.*
642	7	*Anna.*	749	14	*Ethelbert* II. treacherouſly murdered by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, to whoſe Court he came an invited Gueſt, An. 793. after whoſe death this Kingdom became ſubject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *Weſt-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no conſtat till the time of
870	15	S. *Edmund*, deſcended from *Anna*, the 7th King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his ſtout and conſtant perſeverance in the Faith of *CHRIST*; from whence the fair Town of S. *Edmundsbury*, in the County of *Suffolk* took denomination. After whoſe death the Kingdom poſſeſſed by the *Danes*, till vanquiſhed by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the reſt of *England.*			

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHUMBERLAND*, ſo called from the ſituation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaſter*, *Durham*, *Weſtmorland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland* properly ſo called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Occa*, the Son, and *Ebuſa*, the Brother of *Hengiſt*, Conducters of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*; under pretence of guarding theſe Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Twede*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Twede* to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned: both Governed a long while by Dukes, under the Soveraignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547. Duke *Ida* takes unto himſelf the title of King of *Bernicia*, and Anno 559. Duke *Ella* doth the like in *Deira*. Towns of moſt notice in this laſt (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) beſides *York*, ſpoken of before, were 1 *Loncaſter*, the chief Town of that County, ſituate on the River *Lon*, which with addition of *Ceaſter* much uſed by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the ſame reaſon *Longovicus* by the Emperor *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled, nor much frequented, but of ſufficient fame in our *Engliſh* Annals for thoſe noble perſons, which have ſucceſſively born the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greateſt Princes for revenue, of any Subjects in *Chriſtendom*. 2 *Kendall*, or *Candale*, ſituate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Weſtmorland*: built in the manner of a Croſs, two long and broad ſtreets thwarting one another. A rich, populous, and well-traded Town, eſpecially for the making of fine woollen cloth; but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the ſixth. 3 *Carlile*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontire Town betwixt the *Romans* and the *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *Engliſh*: conſumed to aſhes in the time of the *Daniſh* furies; afterwards re-built by *William Rufus*, made an Epiſcopal See in the reign of K. *Henry* the firſt, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the perſwaſion of *Athelwolfus*, the firſt Biſhop thereof. 4 *Monck-cheſter*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a ſafe and capacious Haven. Of no great note, till the *Norman* conqueſt, when from a Caſtle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Caſtle*: growing from that time forwards to ſuch wealth and trading, by the neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodlieſt Town in all the North; fortified with ſtrong wals, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. *Will. Cavendiſh*, Viſcount *Mansfield*, the honorary titles of Earl and Marqueſs. 5 *Hagueſtade*, or *Hextold*, by the *Romans* called *Axelodunum*, by the *Normans*, *Hexham*; a Biſhops See in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* amongſt theſe *Northumbers*, ſpecially ſo called, converted to the faith in the time of *Oſwald* their tenth King, by the Miniſtry of *Aidan* the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*: *Eata* the fifth Biſhop, erecting here an Epiſcopal See, for the better propagation of the Goſpel amongſt this people; after a ſucceſſion of ten Biſhops ruinated and ſuppreſſed by the *Daniſh* furies. 6 *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, ſituate on an hill as the name importeth, a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither with the body of S. *Cutbert*, An. 990. or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarn*, a ſmal Iſland on the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, where it was firſt erected by S. *Aidanus*, the firſt Biſhop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarn*, becauſe of the ſolitude of the place; tranſlated hither to avoid the fury of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in theſe Quarters. And being ſetled here, was fortified with ſuch ample priviledges, and poſſeſſions, by the *Saxon* Kings; that the Biſhops were reputed for *County Palatines*, at and before the *Norman* Conqueſt. 7 *Halifax*, in the *Weſt Riding* of *Yorkſhire*, of great wealth by making of cloth. 8 *Rippon*, in the ſame, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, ſubordinate to that at *York*. 9 *Godman ham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmandin Gahaun*) famous in thoſe days for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly deſtroyed by *Coife*, the chief Prieſt thereof, converted to *Chriſtianity* by *Paulinus* the firſt Archbiſhop of *York*, and the Apoſtle of the *Northumbers* in theſe parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nation, by reaſon of the diviſion of it into two Kingdoms, as before is ſaid, is very intricate and confuſed; the Kingdoms being ſometimes united, and ſometimes diſ-joyned. But in regard that the moſt prevalent King of either was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I ſhall accordingly ſubjoyn them in this order following.

The

The Kings of *Northumberland*.

A. Ch.

547 1 *Ida*, the first King.
560 2 *Ella*, King of *Deira*.
589 3 *Ethelrick*, Son of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.
593 4 *Ethelfride*.
617 5 *Edwin*, Son of *Ella*, the first *Christian* King.
633 6 *Ofrick*.
634 7 S *Oswald*.
645 8 *Ofwy*, who having subdu'd and slain *Ofwin* King of *Deira*; was the first absolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.
671 9 *Egfride*.
686 10 S. *Alfride*.
705 11 *Ofred*.
716 12 *Kenred*.
718 13 *Osrick* II.
729 14 *Ceolnulph*.
738 15 *Ogbert*.
758 16 *Eswulph*.
759 17 *Edilwald*.
765 18 *Alured*.
774 19 *Ethelred*.
778 20 *Alfwald*.
789 21 *Ofred* II.
794 22 *Ethelred* II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predecessors had been before) the kingdom became distracted into parts and factions; invaded by the *Danes* on the one side, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other, who during these distractions had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the *Twede*. At the last An. 827. they yeelded themselves to *Egbert*, the most potent King of the *West Saxons*; ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the *Danes*, and finally recovered to the Crown of *England*, by *Athelstan* and *Edred* An. 950. or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent persons, both of *English* and *Norman* races: as it hath done since the first year of King *Richard* the 2d to the noble Family of the *Percies*, descended by *Joscelin* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adelize* the second Wife of King *Henry* the first, from *Charles* the *Great*, Emperor, and King of *France*.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Creodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *English* Nation; who setling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were last used to Arms, made themselves masters of the Counties of *Glouceſter*, *Worceſter*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Cheſter*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*. *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the rest of *Hartfordſhire*: which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which signifieth a bound or limit. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was restored again in the reigns of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wolfhere*, by the Preaching of *S. Chad*, the first Bishop of *Lichfield*. Places of most observation in it, 1 *Hereford*, seated on the banks of the River *Wye*, in the midole of most flourishing meadows, and no less plentiful Corn-fields; raised out of the ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the *Britans*, restored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, An. 680. the honorable title of the *Bohuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2 *Worceſter*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, An. 679. beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, neat buildings, the industry of the Inhabitants, and giving the title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Somersets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3 *Lichfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there An. 646. by *Ofwy* King of the *Northumbers*, but fixed and setled by S. *Chad* in the reign of *Wulfhere*, King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very infancy with such fair possessions, that in the year 793. *Adulfus*, the Bishop hereof, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a personal honor, and died with him. 4 *Coventry*, so called from an old *Covent* or Religious house, which gave name unto it. Situate in *Warwickshire*, and now the principal of that County, though esteemed a County of it self. Beautified with a goodly wall, two fair Parish Churches, large streets, and very handsom houses. A City of great trade and riches, though destitute of all advantages, which a navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great fame for a stately monastery, to which the See Episcopal was for a while removed from *Lichfield*; now a ruine only. 5 *Leiceſter*, once a Bishops See, the *Dioceſe* taken out of *Lichfield*, An. 733. removed to *Dorcheſter* neer *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abby, and a strong Castle; all decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of these later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for trade and buildings, as most Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Montfort* the *Catiline* and great *Incendiary* of this Kingdom; the Princes of the house of *Lancaſter*, who bore this title; with some others since. 6 *Darby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good resort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly stone bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henry* the 7th. 7 *Nottingham* seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill, which over-looks it: For buildings, fair streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Royal and magnificent Castle, which for strength, stateliness and prospect, may justly challenge the precedency of most in *England*. 8 *Lincoln*, a Town in those days of great strength and note, one of the best peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great merchandize and traffick both by Sea and Land: insomuch that *Remigius*, then Bishop of *Dorcheſter*, thought fit to translate hither the Episcopal See. Now much decayed,

Saxons. and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is*, &c. The chief fame which now it hath is for the *Minſter*, one of the ſtateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Chriſtendom*; high ſeated on an hill, and from thence diſcerned over all the Countrey. 9 *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great ſport the *Hunters* found in the neighbouring *Forreſt*; commodiouſly ſeated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouſe*, riſing unto the North with a ſoft aſcent, conſiſting of four Pariſh Churches, and ſhews the ruines of a Caſtle built by *Edward* the Elder, An. 917. 10 *Peterburgh*, ſeated in a Nook or *Angle* of *Northamptonſhire*, where formerly had been a gulf or whirl-pool of exceeding depth: but made firm ground by *Wolfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the foundations of the Monaſtery, An. 633. dedicated to S. *Peter*, whence it had this name, before then called *Medanſhede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great eſteem, as ſtanding out of the way for trade, and in no plauſible place for health or pleaſure: yet ſhewing two handſom ſtreets, a large Market-place, and a fair Pariſh Church (beſides the Abby) made an Epiſcopal See by King *Henry* the 8th. 11 *Northampton*, built on the Northern bank of the River *Antona* (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and ſeated in ſo good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpoſe to remove their Univerſity hither. The noble Familie of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12 *Bedford*, ſo called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both ſides thereof, for the uſe of Travellers; growing in time to ſo great bigneſs as to contain in it five Pariſh Churches: famous in former times for the great battel fought in the adjoyning fields, An. 572, in which *Cuthwolf* the *Saxon* vanquiſhed the *Britans*, and became Maſter of the Countrey. But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaſter*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixt, and *Jaſper* of *Hatfield*, Uncle to King *Henry* the 7th. 13 S. *Albans*, ſo called from a famous Monaſtery here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honor of S. *Alban*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, neer adjoyning to it: out of the ruines whereof, decayed by Age, and deſtroyed by War; aroſe the preſent greatneſs of S. *Albans*, the faireſt and beſt-traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14 *Buckingham* the chief Town of the County ſo called, ſituate on the River *Ouſe*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder againſt the *Danes*, Anno 915. otherwiſe not much obſervable, but for thoſe many noble perſonages which have had the title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of *Mercia*.

A. Ch.		
582	1	*Crudda*, the firſt King.
593	2	*Webba*.
614	3	*Cheorl*.
626	4	*Penda*.
656	5	*Peada*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
659	6	*Wulfhere*.
675	7	*Etheldred*.
704	8	*Kenred*.
709	9	*Chelred*.
716	10	*Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthert*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, at a fight neer *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, the place ſtill called *Battelage* hill.
758	11	*Offa* the great.
796	12	*Egfride*.
797	13	*Kenwolf*.
819	14	*Kenelm*.
820	15	*Cheolwolf*.
821	16	*Bernulf*.
824	17	*Ludecan*.
826	18	*Withlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predeceſſors) by *Egbert* King of *Weſt-Sex* became his tributary.
839	19	*Berthulf*.
852	20	*Burdred*, a Subſtituted King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the laſt King of the *Mercians* (the ſhort reign of his ſix Predeceſſors portending that fatal period to be neer at hand.) After whoſe death, An. 886. this Kingdom for ſome few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alured*, to the *Engliſh* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succeſſion of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or diviſion of it into ſeven Kingdoms; continuing ſeparate and diſtinct till the prevailing fortune of the *Weſt-Saxons*, brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But ſo, that they were ſubject for the moſt part unto one alone, who was entituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: thoſe which were ſtronger than the reſt, giving the Law unto them in their ſeveral turns; and are theſe that follow.

The *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons* in the time of the *Heptarchy*.

A. Ch.		
455	1	*Hengiſt*, King of *Kent*, who firſt brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
481	2	*Ella*, the firſt King of the *South-Saxons*.
495	3	*Cerdic*, the firſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
534	4	*Kenrick*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
561	5	*Cheuline*, or *Celingus*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
562	6	*Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *Saxons*.
616	7	*Redwald*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*.
617	8	*Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
634	9	*Oſwald*, King of *Northumberland*.
643	10	*Oſwy*, King of *Northumberland*.
659	11	*Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
675	12	*Ethelred*, King of *Mercia*.
704	13	*Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
709	14	*Chelred*, King of *Mercia*.

716 15 *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia*.
758 16 *Offa* the Great King of the *Mercians*.
794 17 *Egfride*, King of *Mercia*.
796 18 *Kenwolf*, King of *Mercia*.
800 19 *Egbert*, the Son of *Alcmond*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who having vanquiſhed all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kings, and added moſt of their Eſtates unto his own; cauſed the whole united body to be called *Engel-lond*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Councel held at *Wincheſter*, An. 819. being the 19th year of his Reign over the *Weſt-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the preſence of his Nobles, and the reſt of his Subjects; leaving it unto the reſt of his Succeſſors.

But before we come to the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next conſiderable *Actors* on the Stage of *England*; who in the time of this *Egbert* firſt invaded the Countrey, and after exerciſed the patience of his Poſterity, till in fine they got the kingdom to themſelves. Of the Original and firſt Succeſſes of this people, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Iuites* and *Engliſh* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; they thought it not amiſs to follow them into *Britain* alſo; making a Diſcovery of ſome part of the Coaſts thereof with three Ships only, Anno 787, being the firſt year of *Bithric* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *Weſt Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themſelves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Iſle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coaſts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings ſucceeding, having vanquiſhed the *Northumbrians*, *Eaſt-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected in thoſe kingdoms many petit Tyrannies: By *Alfred* firſt ſtopped in their Career; by *Edward* the *Elder* outed of the *Eaſt-Angles*, and by *Athelſtan* of *Northumberland* alſo; the *Danes* for ſome time after being ſubject to the *Engliſh* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporate with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the perſon of *Canutus* obtained the kingdom: who having impolitickly ſent back his *Danes* into their Countrey (as if a kingdom got by force could be held by favour) opened a way to their excluſion from the Crown; which happened within ſeven years after his deceaſe. Which ſaid, we come to the Succeſſions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

819 1 *Egbert*, the laſt King of the *Weſt Saxons*, and the firſt of *England*. 18.
837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the Eldeſt Son of *Egbert*. 20.
857 3 *Ethelbald*, the Eldeſt Son of *Ethelwolf*. 1.
858 4 *Ethelbert*, the Brother of *Ethelbald*. 5.
863 5 *Ethelfred*, the Brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwolf*, and as much moleſted by the *Danes*, as his Brethren were. 10.
873 6 *Alfride*, the fourth Son of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon Heptarchie* into one Eſtate; vanquiſhed the *Danes*, whom he made ſubject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into ſhires, and reſtored the Univerſity of *Oxon*.
900 7 *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Elder*, the Son of *Alfride*, who recovered the *Eaſt Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he ſhut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
924 8 *Athelſtan*, the Son of *Edward*, who ſubdued the *Britans* of *Cumberland*, and *Cornwall*; and compelled the *Danes* to ſubmit themſelves to the *Engliſh* Government. In his time lived S. *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Daniſh* Champion (the great *Goliah* of that people) neer the Wals of *Wincheſter*. 10.
940 9 *Edmund*, the Brother of *Athelſtan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience; and the kingdom of the *Britans* in *Cumberland* utterly ſubverted.
946 10 *Edred* the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelſtan*, ſo fortunate againſt the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be chriſtened. 9.
955 11 *Eawy*, the Son of *Edmund*.
959 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, ſurnamed the *Peaceable*, the moſt abſolute *Monarch* of *England* ſince the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money impoſed by *Athelſtan* on the *Welch*, was exchanged into a tribute of Wolves. 16.
975 13 *Edward* II. Son of *Edgar*, treacherouſly murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her Son, hence ſurnamed the *Martyr*. 3.
978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly which he got unjuſtly. Oppreſſed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; inhanced to 48000 pounds within ſhort time after; which moneys were raiſed upon the ſubjects, by the name of *Danegelt*. Weary of theſe exactions, he plotted warily with his ſubjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they ſlept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on S. *Brices* night, Novemb. 12. Anno 1012. To revenge this out-rage and diſhonor, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 ſhips, came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuiſſant Prince, to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Daniſh* Tyrant, who miſerably plagued them till his death. To whom ſucceeded his Son *Cnute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmund Ironſide*, a moſt valiant King, did in the end poſſeſs himſelf of the whole kingdom.

England. 1016 15 *Edmund* II. ſurnamed *Ironſide*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom; at laſt divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherouſly and baſely murdered. By *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Out-Law*, his Eldeſt Son, he was Grand-father of *Edgar Atheling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

The *Daniſh* Kings.

1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, after the death of *Edmund* the 2d, ſole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred*, and daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.

1037 2 *Harald* the baſe Son of *Canutus*, ſurnamed *Harfuger*. 4.

1040 3 *Canutus* II. commonly called *Hardy-Cnute*, the lawful ſon of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the 2d, and Mother of *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*; the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whoſe death, that People having tyrannized in *England* for the ſpace of 255 years, (of which they had Reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Countrey, or paſſed in the Accompt of *Engliſh*; *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, the youngeſt Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the abſence of the Children of *Edmund Ironſide* his elder Brother, Anno 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence, as they did, I obſerve three cuſtoms yet in uſe amongſt us. Firſt, each Engliſh houſe maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we ſee an idle fellow, we call him a *Lordane*. 2 The *Danes* uſed when the *Engliſh* drank, to ſtab them, or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requeſted ſome of the next unto him, to be his ſurety or *pledge*, whilſt he paid nature her due: and hence have we our uſual cuſtom of *pledging* one another. 3 The old *Romans* at the expulſion of their Kings, annually ſolemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *Engliſh* having cleared the Countrey of the *Danes*, inſtituted the annual ſports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *ſcorning*, or triumphing. This *ſolemnity* conſiſteth in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in thoſe days, during which the *Feſtival* laſted, and was celebrated by the younger ſort of both ſexes, with all manner of exerciſes, and paſtimes in the ſtreets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath ſo corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no ſign of the firſt Inſtitution.

The *Saxons* reinthroned.

A. Ch.

1042 16 *Edward* III. ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironſide*, and *Hardy-Cnute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandie*, where he lived with the Dukes his Couſins, ſucceeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Daniſh*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one univerſal and general Law; whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its Original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *cuſtomary* and unwritten Laws; theſe being certainly more antient. He was in his life of that Holineſs, that he received power from above to cure many Diſeaſes; amongſt others the ſwelling of the throat, called by us the *Kings Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his Succeſſors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a *Saint*; and dyed, having reigned 24 years.

1066 17 *Harald* II. Son to Earl *Godwin*, was choſen King in the nonage of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironſide*, the true Heir of the kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend ſome title as being born unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the baſe daughter of *Canutus* the firſt, Siſter by the whole blood to *Harald Harfuger*, and of the half blood to *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt Kings of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have ſpoke already when we were in *France*, and ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the laſt *Actors* on the *Theatre* or Stage of *England*: This *William* I ſay) pretending a Donation from his Couſin, King *Edward* the *Confeſſor*; invaded *England*, ſlew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *Engliſh* Souldiers, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the kingdom; uſing ſuch Policy in his new Conqueſt, that he utterly diſheartned the *Engliſh* from hopes of better Fortune. From him beginneth the new Accompt of the Kings of *England*, thoſe of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the firſt, ſecond, or third, *&c.*

The *Norman* Kings.

1067 1 *William*, ſurnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquiſhment and death of *Harald*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the antient Laws of *England*, and eſtabliſhed thoſe of *Normandy* in place thereof: governing the people abſolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and ſuch as were ingaged in the Action with him; from whom moſt of our antient *Families* doe derive themſelves; thoſe Lands to be holden in *Knights-ſervice*, which drew along with it the *Wardſhip* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089 2 *William* II. ſurnamed *Rufus*, ſecond Son to the Conqueror, ſucceeded by the appointment of his Father, and was crowned King; ſlain afterwards in the *New Foreſt*, by an arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102

1102 3 *Henry*, for his learning ſurnamed *Beau-clerk*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the abſence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land* Wars) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him alſo the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-iſſue, he left one only Daughter whoſe name was *Maud*; firſt maried to the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, and after to *Geofry Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136 4 *Stephen*, ſecond Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blais*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, ſucceeded; who to purchaſe the peoples love, releaſed the tribute called *Danegelt*: he ſpent moſt of his reign in War againſt *Maud* the Empreſs. 19.

The *Saxon* blood reſtored.

1155 5 *Henry* II. Son to *Maud* the Empreſs, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret*, Siſter to *Edgar Atheling*; reſtored the *Saxon* blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *Engliſh* Empire, as alſo the Dutchie of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poictou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by conqueſt. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.

1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, ſurnamed *Ceur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy-Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almoſt driven out of *Syria*; took the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy atchievements, returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* againſt the *French*, was by Tempeſt caſt upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Auſtria*, was taken Priſoner, put to a grievous ranſom; and after his return, ſlain at the ſiege of *Chaluz*, in the Province of *Limoſin*. 12.

1201 7 *John* Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better; as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Diſtreſſed for a great part of his reign, by Wars with his Barons; outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom alſo he was likely to have loſt the Realm of *England*: Finally, after a baſe ſubmiſſion of himſelf and his kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is ſaid to have been poyſoned at *Swinſtede* Abby. 17.

1218 8 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a Compoſition with King *Lewis* the 9th, was reſtored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Succeſſors till the reign of King *Henry* the ſixt. Exhauſted by the Pope, and oppreſſed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons, but at laſt victorious. 56.

1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, ſubdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into ſubjection; of whoſe King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308 10 *Edward* II. Son of *Edward* the firſt, a diſſolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the vulgar, for his immeaſurable love to *Peirce Gaveſton*, and the *Spencers*; was twice ſhamefully beaten by the *Scots*: and being depoſed by a ſtrong faction raiſed againſt him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*; was barbarouſly murdered in *Berkley* Caſtle. 19.

1327 11 *Edward* III. Son of *Edward* the 2d, a moſt vertuous and valorous Prince, brought the *Scots* to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great Battails, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair Poſſeſſions in that kingdom. 50.

1377 12 *Richard* II. another of our unfortunate Kings, loſt many of his Peeces in *France*, and at laſt bein over-awed by his two great Uncles of *Lanceſter* and *Gloceſter*, and taken Priſoner by his Couſin, the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to reſign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Caſtle.

The *Lancaſtrian* Line.

1399 13 *Henry* IV. Son to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, the fourth Son to *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the conſent of the people, ſetled in the Throne; and ſpent his whole Reign in ſuppreſſing home-bred Rebellions. 15.

1414 14 *Henry* V. the mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true vertue, purſued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to poſſeſſe the kingdom. 9.

1423 15 *Henry* VI. a pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*; which he held during the life of his *Uncle John* of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* of *Gloceſter*; after whoſe deaths, he not only loſt *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Yorkiſh* Faction. 38.

The *Yorkiſh* Line.

1461 16 *Edward* IV. Son of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grand-ſon of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fifth Son of King *Edward* the third; challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grand-mother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer*

England.

Mortimer Earl of *March*, the Son of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, and of *Philippa* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the third Son of the ſaid King *Edward*, and Elder Brother of *John* of *Gaunt*. The claim firſt ſet on foot by his Father, the Duke of *York*, who loſt his life in purſuance of it in the Battail of *Wakefield*; with better fortune and ſucceſs perſued by King *Edward* himſelf, who finally after nine bloody Battails, fought between the Houſes (eſpecially that of *Towton*, in which were ſlain 36000 *Engliſh*) was quietly ſeated in the poſſeſſion of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.

1484 17 *Edward* V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.

1484 18 *Richard* III. Brother of *Edward* the 4th, a moſt wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the 6th, and Prince *Edward* his Son. 3 *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his Brother. 4 *Haſtings* a faithful ſervant to King *Edward*. 5 *Rivers*, *Vaughan*, and *Gray*, the Queens kindred. 6 *Edward* the 5th his Soveraign, with his Couſin *Richard*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greateſt Coadjutor in theſe his ungodly practices; and his Wife *Anne*; ſo to make way to an inceſtuous marriage with his Neece *Elizabeth*, the Eldeſt Darghter of *Edward* the 4th, but before the ſolemnity he was ſlain at *Boſworth*. 3.

The Union of the *Families*.

1487 19 *Henry* VII. Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, (as Son of *Margaret* Daughter of *John* Duke of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* Earl of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, maried *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* 4th, uniting by that mariage the divided *Families*. He was alſo extracted from the *Britiſh*, and *French*, Royal blood, as being Son to *Edward Tudor* Earl of *Richmond*, Son to *Owen Tudor* (deſcended from *Cadwalladar*, the laſt King of the *Britans*) and *Katharine* of *France*, Widow of *Henry* the 5th. His whole wars was againſt home-bred Rebels; the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.

1509 20 *Henry* VIII. Heir to both *Families*, between which were fought for the Diadem, 17 pitched Fields; in which periſhed 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marqueſſes, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, beſides Barons, and Gentlemen. This King baniſhed the uſurped *Supremacy* of the *Popes*, and began the *Reformation* of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book againſt *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*, afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs, and Succeſſors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater vertues. 38.

1547 21 *Edward* VI. the Son of *Henry* the 8th by *Jane Seymour* his 3d Wife; out of whoſe womb he was fain to be cut, to come into the world, as *Cæſar* was: but he had neither *Cæſars* Fortune, nor length of life; dying very young, and his affairs conducted by divided Counſels; though otherwiſe of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of judgement above his yeers. 6.

1553 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by *Katharine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, reſtored the Popes Supremacy baniſhed by her Father, with the whole maſs of Popery aboliſhed in her Brothers Reign. To which Religion ſo addicted, that in the ſhort time of her Reign there was more blood ſhed, than in the whole 44 years of her Siſter *Elizabeth*. In the laſt year of her Reign ſhe loſt *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loſs of her life alſo, as it was ſuppoſed. 5.

1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by the Lady *Anne Bullein* his ſecond Wife; a moſt gracious Heroick Princeſs; was by the divine providence of God preſerved from the practices of her Enemies in her Siſters reign, to ſway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She purſued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt coin brought in by her Father; furniſhed the Royal Navy with all kind of warlike Ammunitions; encreaſed the Revenue of the Univerſities; by the Statute of *Proviſions*; ſuccoured the *Scots* againſt the *French*, the *French* Proteſtants againſt the Papiſts, and both againſt the *Spaniard*: defended the *Netherlands* againſt the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muſcovite*; and was famous for her prudence and government amongſt the *Turks*, *Perſians* and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally ſhe died in the 45 year of her reign, and the 70th of her life, on the 24th of *March*, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the new year with the Feaſt of the *Annunciation*. To whom ſucceeded *JAMES* the ſixth King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted heir of the Crown. Of whom we ſhall ſay more when we come to ſpeak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*; of which he was the firſt ſince the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and ſuch more properly than the greateſt of all thoſe Emperors had been before; None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it ſelf, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Iſles adjoyning, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State diſtinct, we will conſider it and the Kings thereof, with

with reference to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And first for *Reputation*, when all Christendom in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*; and had its vote of equal balance with the Nations of *France*, or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the doctrine, discipline, and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in those *General Councils*, and the rank they held among other *Christian* Princes; I find that the Emperor of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Ecclesiæ*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*; and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius*, *& adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *General Councils*, had place next the Emperor, on his right hand; the King of *England* on his left hand; and the King of *Scotland*, next before *Castile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being so much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogateth to himself the place above all other Princes: but in the time of Pope *Julius*, the controversie arising between the Ambassadors of the two Princes, for precedency; the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the fourth, upon the like controversie, arising between the Ambassadors of *France*, and *Spain*, adjudged the precedency to the *French*.

Touching the *Souldierie* of *England*, and their most notable atchievements, both by Sea and Land, sufficient hath been said already. What *Forces* the Kings hereof have been able to raise, and may command for present service, will best be seen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th at *Bullen*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88. and the numbers of the trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th, he had in his *Avant-guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in *blew Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horse and Foot; and in the main Battail 20000 Foot and 2000 Horse, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 100 great Peeces, besides small ones; and for conveyance of their *Ordinance*, Baggage, and other necessaries, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on the Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both sorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the command of the Earl of *Leicester*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse: and for the Guard of her own person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all, the number of 84000 men: besides those goodly Troops, which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mustered to be ready upon all occasions: in the 8th year of King *James*, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 296150 able men, 144300 Armed men, 935 Demilances, 677 Light Horse, 16545 Pioneers; besides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, supposed to amount to 20000 Armed men, and 4000 Light Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the *Navy Royal* consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels); the best and bravest, that any Prince in *Christendom* can boast of, as his own propriety: there are such store of *Colliers* and *Merchants* ships, fit for any service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sayl of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniard*; and 20 more, to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597. she set out for the Island Voyage, no fewer than 120 Sayl of all sorts, of which 60 were men of war.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more then 400000 Crowns *per Annum*; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more, by King *Henry* the 8th; the dissolution of Monasteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of *Wards*, making that improvement. And to say truth, the Universal dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time so mightily increase his annual Income; that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being wasted by his own exorbitant expences, and the several Alienations made by King *Edward* the sixth; those Courts of new Erection were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12 year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaster*) came to no more than to 188197 l. 4 s. Of which 110612 l. 13. s. went out that year upon the Navy, the charge of Houshold, and other necessary Assignments. Since which time the great increase of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World; hath added very much to the *Intrado*: The certainty whereof as I doe not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hear-say.

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, 3 Lions *passant Gardant*, *Sol*. The reason why these Arms quartered with the *French*, took the second place, are 1 becaus that *France* at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous kingdom. 2 That the *French* seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the *English Title*. 3 Because the *English* Arms, were compounded of the Lion of *Aquitaine*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both *French* Dutchies.

The principal Orders of *Knight-hood* are, and were, 1 of the *Round Table*, instituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britans*, and one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. It consisted of 150 Knights, whose names are recorded in the History of King *Arthur*, there where Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight, came to be cured of his hurts: it being his Fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgeon*. The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Bara*, the *French* Herald. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Tristrum*, Sir *Lamorock*, Sir *Gawin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The

Round

England. Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Winchester*, is falsely called *Arthurs Round-Table*, it being not of sufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of these Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablaies*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread, and a phillop on the nose.

2 Of S. *George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King *Edward* the third, to increase vertue and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or, as some will, in honor of the Countess of *Saliburies* Garter, of which Lady, the King formerly had been inamoured. But this I take to be a vain aud idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the *Order*; first published by *Polydore Virgil*, a stranger to the affairs of *England*, aud by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for so great a building; Common bruit, being so infamous an Historian, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this *Order*, in testimony of that Bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound severally unto one another, and all of them joyntly to the King as the *Soveraign* of it. So saith the *Register* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did so fit the habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*: But to return unto the *Order*, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of *England* are *Soveraigns*: and is so much desired for its excellency, that 8 Emperors, 21 forein Kings, 22 forein Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noble-men of other Countries, have been *Fellows* of it. The Ensign is a blew Garter, buckled on the left leg, on which these words are imbroydered, viz. *Honi soit qui mal y pense*. About their necks they wear a *blew Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth the Image of S. *George*; upon whose day the *Installations* of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3 Of the *Bath*, brought first into *England*, 1399, by *Henry* the fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Installation* of the Princes of *Wales*: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof distinguished by a *Red Ribband*, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights *Batchelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedency; unless they be also the Sons of Noble-men, to whom their birth gives it before all *Orders*.

4 Of *Baronets*, an Order instituted by King *James*, in the 9th year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulster*. They have Precedency of the *Knights* of the *Bath*, but not of those of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being *Hereditary*, not *personal*, and rather *civil* than *military*; is not so properly to be ranked amongst *Orders* of Knighthood.

There were in *England*, at and since the time of the Reformation,
Archbishops 2. Bishops 20.

WALES.

WALES is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards *England*, on the East; from which separated by the river *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the River *Severn*, till the puissance of *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britans* were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, aud forced to betake themselves to the Mountains: where he caused them to be shut up and divided from *England*, by an huge Ditch, called in *Welch*, *Claudh Offa*; i. e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie*, into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepstow*; extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as *Chester*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harald*, That if any *Welchman* was found with a weapon on this side of it, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* some derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallader*, who with the small remainder of his *British* Subjects, made good the fastnesses of this Countrey, and was the first who had the title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the name of *Welch*, and *Wales*, was given them by the *Saxons*: who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Countrey, called the *Britans*, who lived here, by the name of *Walsh*, which in their language signifieth as much as *Aliens*; because they differed from them both in Laws, and Language: which is the general Opinion. Most probable it is, that as the *Britans* derive their Pedigree from the *Gals* (as before was proved) so they might still retain the name; and were called *Wallish* by the *Saxons*, instead of *Gallish*: the *Saxons* using in most words W. for G. as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, because the *Frenchmen* to this day, call the Countrey *Galles*; and the Eldest Son of *England*, *Le Prince de Galles*: as also that the *Dutch* or *Germans* (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the skirts of *France*, by the name of *Wallons*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures*, possessing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Glamorgan*, all *Glocester-*

Glocesterſhire beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worceſterſhire* on the ſame ſide alſo: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*, (not reckoned ſince the time of *Offa* as a part of *Wales*;) *Balleum*, now *Buelth*, in *Brecknock*; *Gobannium*, now *Abargevenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County ſo named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2 The *Dimetæ*, poſſeſſing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*; and *Pembrokeſhires*, whoſe chief Towns were, *Loventium*, now *New-Caſtle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it ſelf: and *Octopitæ*, where now ſtands S. *Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Menew*, whence that Biſhop hath the name of *Menevenſis* in *Latine*. 3 The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worceſterſhire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropſhire*, on the ſame ſide of the River. Their chief Towns were, *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont*, in *Carnarvonſhire*; *Cononium*, now *Conwey*, in the ſame County; *Bonium*, where after ſtood the famous Monaſtery of *Banchor*, in *Flintſhire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By theſe three Nations was all that tract poſſeſſed, which lyeth on the other ſide of the *Severn*, A very ſtout and hardy people, and ſo impatient of the yoke, that two of the three *Legions* which the *Romans* kept conſtantly in *Britain*, as before is ſaid, were planted in and neer theſe people, the better to contain them in due obedience: that is to ſay, the ſecond Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Uſk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuvana*, where now ſtands *Weſt Cheſter*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation ſubject to the power of *Rome*; and no leſs difficult to bring them under the command of the *Saxons*: whom they withſtood, when all the reſt of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to ſee their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themſelves had yeelded to a forrain yoke. *Wales.*

The *Chriſtian* Faith planted amongſt the *Britans*, in the time of *Lucius*, they ſtill retained, when all the reſidue of the Iſland had been relapſed to *Paganiſm*: and they retained it not in ſecret, as afraid to own it, but in a well conſtituted Church. Inſomuch that *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he firſt preached the Goſpel to the *Engliſh Saxons*, found here no fewer than ſeven Biſhops; that is to ſay, *Herefordenſis*, *Tavenſis*, *Paternenſis*, *Banchorenſis*, *Elwienſis*, *Wiccienſis*, and *Morganenſis*, (or rather *Menevenſis*): all which, excepting only *Paternenſis*, do ſtill remain amongſt us, though in other names, *Hereford* and *Worceſter* (*Wiccienſis*) reckoned now in *England*; S. *Davids* or *Menevenſis*, *Tavenſis* or *Landaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwyenſis* or S. *Aſaph*, in *Wales*, according to the preſent boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, ſo they retained it after the *tradition* of their Predeceſſors; neither ſubmitting unto *Auguſtine* as Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came, as *Oecumenical*, or chief Paſtor of the Church of *Chriſt*; nor receiving any new doctrines or traditions from them: but ſtanding on thoſe principles of *Liberty*, and *Religion*, which they were poſſeſſed of; till all the world almoſt had yeelded to that powerful See. Not manumitted from the vaſſalage and thraldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England*, in Doctrine, Diſcipline, and Worſhip: the Liturgy whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, tranſlated into the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; as the Bible alſo was by vertue of an Act of Parliament in the fifth of that Queen; the care thereof committed to the Biſhop of *Hereford*, and the four Biſhops of *Wales*. But becauſe the Bible then ſet forth was only in the large Church volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the coſt and charge of my Couſin Mr. *Rowland Heylyn*, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who alſo cauſed the book called *The Practice of Piety* to be printed in that language for the inſtruction of the People; and a *Welch* or *Britiſh* Dictionary to be made and publiſhed, for the underſtanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the ſame, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceſes (beſides that of *Hereford*) for the exerciſe of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*; thoſe Dioceſes ſubdivided into 9 *Archdeaconries*, as before in *England*: all ſubject heretofore to their own *Primate* or Archbiſhop, reſiding in the City of *Iſca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the *Province* of *Britannia Secunda*; called by the *Welch* or *Britans*, *Caer Leon*, or the City of the *Legion*, from the *ſecond Legion* fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon upon Uſk*, becauſe ſituate on the River ſo named. But this City being too much expoſed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiſcopal See was tranſlated to *Menew*, ſtanding on a Promontory in the extreme Angle of *Pembrokeſhire*, by *David* then Archbiſhop thereof, and neer of kin to *Arthur* that renowned King of the *Britans*: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Menew* being left off, the See and City came to be called S. *Davids*. From *David* unto *Samſon*, tha 26 Archbiſhop of the *Welch*, (being above 400 years) did they hold this dignity: but then the *Peſtilence* extremely raging in theſe parts, Archbiſhop *Samſon* caried with him the Epiſcopal *Pall*, and therewith the dignity it ſelf, to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbiſhop in *Wales*, in name and title, though the power proper thereunto ſtill remained amongſt them: the *Welch* Biſhops acknowledging no other *Primate*, nor receiving *conſecration* from any other hands, than their own Biſhop of S. *Davids*; till Biſhop *Bernard* was compelled to ſubmit himſelf to the power and juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt.

But it's time to look upon the face of the Countrey as it ſtands at the preſent, which we find mountainous and barren; not able to maintain its people, but by helps elſewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were ſome Silver mines diſcovered in it not long ſince, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honor of his own Countrey, but to the profit and renown of the whole Iſland of *Great Britain*. Their chief commodities are courſe Clothes, entituled commonly by the name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottons; which Merchandiſe was heretofore brought to *Oſweſtre* (the

Wales. (the furtheſt Town of *Shropſhire*) as the common *Emporie*; and there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewſbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Countrey, occaſioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their commodities: till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and inforced them to ſettle the whole trade at *Shrewſbury*, where it ſtill continueth.

To ſpeak of Mountains in a Countrey which is wholly mountainous, were a thing unneceſſary: yet of moſt note are thoſe of 1 *Snowdon*, 2 *Brechin*, 3 *Rarduvaure*, and 4 *Plinlimmon*. Not much obſervable but for their vaſt height, and thoſe many notable Rivers which iſſue from them. The principal whereof are, 1 *Dee*, in *Latine* called *Deva*, ariſing out of *Rarduvaure* hils in *Merionethſhire*; and running into the Sea not far from *Cheſter*. Over this River *Edgar* King of *England* was rowed triumphantly in his Barge, by eight inferior Kings, Vaſſals and Tributaries to him, that is to ſay, *Kenneth* King of the *Scots*, *Maleolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Mac-cuis* King of the Iſles, *Dufwall*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Jago*, and *Indethel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales*: uſing theſe words to ſuch as attended on him, *that then his Succeſſors might call themſelves Kings of* England, *when they did the like*. This was in the year 973, and the laſt of his reign. 2 *Wie*, in *Latine* called *Vaga*, ariſing from *Plinlimmon* hils, and emptying it ſelf into the *Severn* at *Chepſtow*. More in the heart of the Countrey (for theſe are but borderers for the greateſt part of their courſe) 3 *Conwy*, which riſing in *Merionethſhire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4 *Tyvie*, which riſing in *Montgomeryſhire*, and paſſing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Carmarthen*; runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5 *Chedlady*, which running quite through *Pembrokeſhire*, emptieth it ſelf into *Milford* Haven; one of the moſt capacious and ſafeſt havens, not of *England* only, but of all the world.

The men are of a faithful carriage towards all men, eſpecially towards one another in a ſtrange Countrey, and towards ſtrangers in their own. Of a temper queſtionleſs much inclining to choler, as being ſubject to the paſſion by *Ariſtotle* called ἀκρασκολία, by which men are quickly moved to anger, and as ſoon appeaſed: of all angers the beſt and nobleſt. Their Language (the old *Britiſh*) hath the leaſt commixture of forein words of any in *Europe*; and by reaſon of its many Conſonants and guttural Letters, is not ſo pleaſing as ſome others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much ſtudyed by thoſe of other Nations; in regard that ſuch of the Inhabitants who have addicted themſelves to learning, have rather choſe to expreſs themſelves in the *Latine* or *Engliſh* tongues, than that of their own Native Countrey. The principal of which (not to ſay any thing of *Merlin*, the *Tages* of the *Welch* or *Britiſh*) were 1 *Gildas*, for his great knowledge ſurnamed *Sapiens*; 2 *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and 3 *Giraldus Cambrenſis*, the Hiſtorians; and of later times, 4 *William Morgan*, the Tranſlator of the Bible into *Welch*, for which performance moſt deſervedly made Biſhop of *Landaff*. 5 Sir *John Price* the Antiquary. 6 *Owen* the Epigrammatiſt, *&c.*

The whole Countrey (not taking the Counties of *Shropſhire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) contain in it 12 Shires only: of which, ſeven were ſet out by King *Edward* the firſt, that is to ſay, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Angleſey*, and *Carnarvon*. The other five, *viz.* the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the *Marchlands*, by King *Henry* the 8th. Theſe 12 Shires are again contracted or ſubdivided into 4 *Circuits*, for the adminiſtration of Juſtice. Of which the firſt containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the ſecond thoſe of *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, and *Merioneth*; the third thoſe of *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth thoſe of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In theſe 12 Shires are reckoned one Chaſe, 13 Foreſts, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain alſo 1016 Pariſhes, amongſt which, four Cities, 55 Market-Towns, and 41 Caſtles of the old erection. The Cities ſmall, poor, and inconſiderable. The Market-Towns, thoſe ſpecially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Countrey, very fair and ſtrong; as being not only built for commerce and trade, but fortified with Walls and Caſtles to keep in the *Welch*: and ſo employed, till the incorporating *Wales* with *England*, took away all occaſion of the old hoſtilities. And for the Caſtles in the In-lands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *edax rerum*, but chiefly by the policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not ſuffer any places of ſtrength to remain in a Countrey almoſt inacceſſible, and amongſt men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly; the four Cities (or Epiſcopal Sees) are 1 S. *Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, ſituate on the promontory in *Pembrokeſhire*, by the Antients called *Octopitæ*; in a ſafe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* moſt feared; but incommodious enough for all the reſt of the *Clergie* to repair unto it: and not ſo ſafe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in reſpect of ſundry other Nations, who have often ſpoyled and defaced it. For ſtanding neer the Sea, it hath been frequently viſited and ſpoyled, by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other *Pirats*; inſomuch that the Biſhops were inforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen*; which brought the City, (ſmall enough before, when it was at the biggeſt) to the condition of a Village. 2 *Llandaffe*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the name, *Llan* in the *Welch* or *Britiſh* ſignifying a Church; *Llandaffe*, the Church upon the *Taffe*: the Biſhops whereof derive their Lineal ſucceſſion from thoſe of *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*; though the Primacy or Archbiſhops See were removed to *Menew*. A ſmall Town now it is, God wot, nothing to rank it for a City, but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends houſes. 3 S. *Aſaph*, a ſmall Town in *Flintſhire*, ſo called from S. *Aſaph*, the ſecond Biſhop hereof; left here by *Kentigern* a *Scot*, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the year 560. Situate on the banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *Llan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Biſhop *Elwyenſis* in ſome *Latine* Writers.

4 *Bangor*,

4 *Bangor*, upon the *Menai*, a branch of the *Iriſh* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the *Cathedral* founded here, by the firſt Biſhops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards reedified by *Henry Dean*, Biſhop hereof, An. 1496.

Towns of chief note, (for theſe Cities have not ſo much in them which is worth the noting) are, 1 *Shrewsbury*, counted now in *England*, but heretofore the ſeat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, who had here their Palace: which being burnt in ſome of their broyls with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the uſe of the Townſmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *Engliſh*, the common Empory of both; well built, and ſtrongly ſituate on a riſing ground, almoſt encompaſſed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery* the firſt Earl hereof, An. 1067. Over the River for convenience of paſſage, it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welch-bridge*, which is towards *Wales*; built by *Leoline*, or *Llewellen* the firſt, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*; whoſe they conceive to be that *Statua*, which is there ſtanding on the Gate. Remarkable ſince the times of King *Henry* the ſixth, for giving the title of Earl to the Noble Family of the *Talbots*: a Family of great honor, and as great an Eſtate, till the parcelling of the lands betwixt the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Gilbert Talbot*, late Earl hereof; according to the ill cuſtom of *England*, where many times the Eſtate goes to the Females, and the Honor (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir Male. 2 *Banchor*, by *Beda* called *Bancornaburg*, a famous Monaſtery of the *Britans*; containing above 2000 *Monks*, attending their devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelyhood: moſt cruelly and unmercifully ſlaughtered by the *Saxons*, at the inſtigation of *Auſtin* the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yeeld unto his autority. 3 *Carnarvon*, on the *Menai* before mentioned, not far from *Bangor* (the Monaſtery of *Banchor* being in *Flintſhire*); well walled, and fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, by King *Edward* the firſt, after his conqueſt of the Countrey; formerly much reſorted to, for the *Chancery* and *Exchequer* of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4 *Denbigh*, well ſeated on the banks of the River *Iſtrad*, which from thence runs into the *Cluyd*; the faireſt River of all thoſe parts. A Town well traded and frequented, eſpecially ſince it was made by King *Henry* the 8th the head-Town of a County: before which time of great reſort, as being the head-Town of the Baronie of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodlieſt territories in *England*; having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5 *Matravall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore a fair and capacious Town, honored with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, thence called *Kings* of *Matravall*; now a poor Village. 6 *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* antiently, whence the modern name, the *Britans* adding *Caer* unto it: not called ſo from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, inchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fablers and *Romances* tell us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church; to which there was a purpoſe in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth, of removing the Epiſcopal See from S. *Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, ſtands *Dinevour* Caſtle, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevour*; who had their *Chancery* and *Exchequer* in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7 *Haverford Weſt*, ſituated in the *Cherſoneſe* or Demy-Iſland of *Pembrokeſhire*, by the *Welch* called *Roſs*, by the *Engliſh*, *Little England beyond Wales*, by reaſon of the *Engliſh* tongue there ſpoken: a Town the beſt traded and frequented of all *South-Wales*. 8 *Milford*, in the ſame County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving name to the moſt ſafe and capacious Haven in all the Iſland; conſiſting of ſundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greateſt Navy: the landing place of *Henry* the 7th when he came for *England*. 9 *Monmouth*, ſituate at the mouth or influx of the River *Munow* (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the name. A Town belonging antiently to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, the birth place of King *Henry* the fift, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we ſhall adde no more. 10 *Ludlow*, a Town of great reſort, by reaſon of the *Court and Councel of the Marches*, kept here for the moſt part, ever ſince the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the eaſe of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their ſuits at Law. Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very ſtrong Caſtle: the Palace heretofore of ſome of the Princes of *Wales* of the blood Royal of *England*, at ſuch times as they reſided in this Countrey (of which more anon); and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *Preſident of Wales*: now reckoned, as all *Shropſhire* on that ſide the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Angleſey* and the Towns thereof, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royal Seat ſometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, called thence *Kings of Aberfraw*.

The Story of the *Britans* till the time of *Cadwallader* their laſt King, we have had before. After whoſe retirement unto *Rome*, the whole name and Nation became divided into three bodies; that is to ſay, the *Corniſh-Britans*, the *Britans* of *Cumberland*, and the *Britans* of *Wales*. The *Corniſh-Britans* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the firſt Monarch of *England*; by whom ſubdued, An. 809. and made a Province of that Kingdom. The *Britans* of *Cumberland* had their own Kings alſo (ſome of whoſe names occur in Story) till the year 946. when conquered by *Edmund* King of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtan*; their laſt King being named *Dummilus*, as *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* informs us. But the main body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preſerve the name and reputation of their Countrey; although their Princes were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but of the *Walliſh-men* or *Welch*; and much adoe they had to make good that title: all the plain Countrey beyond *Severn* being taken from them, by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*; and themſelves made Tributaries for the reſt by *Egbert* before mentioned, by *Athelſtan* afterwards. Which laſt impoſed a tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattel

Wales. yearly; exchanged in following times for a tribute of Wolves. But howſoever, they continued for a time the title of Kings, whoſe names are thus ſet down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, publiſhed by *Miles*.

The Kings of *Wales*.

A. Ch.			A. Ch.		
691	1	*Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*.	818	4	*Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.
720	2	*Rodorick*, Son of *Idwallo* 25.	843	5	*Rodorick* II. ſurnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom,

ſmall enough before, amongſt his Sons: giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarawdh* his eldeſt Son; to *Cadel* his ſecond Son, *Deheubarth* or *South-Wales*; and *Powis-land* to his youngeſt Son, *Mervin*: conditioned that the two younger Sons, and their Succeſſors, ſhould hold their Eſtates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the Soveraignty thereof, as *Liegemen* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Conſtitutions of *Howell Dha*, the *Legiſlator* of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in way of tribute to the Kings of *London*; ſo the Kings of *Dynevour*, and *Matravall*, ſhould pay in way of tribute the like ſum to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithſtanding the Reſervation of the *Soveraignty* to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solœciſm* in point of State, by this diſmembring of his Kingdom; eſpecially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occaſions to work upon the weakneſs of the neighbouring *Welch*: which had they continued under one ſole Prince, might have preſerved their Liberty, and themſelves a Kingdom; as well as thoſe of *Scotland*, for ſo long a time, againſt the power and puiſſance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worſt of the miſchief neither; his Succeſſors ſubdividing (by his example) their ſmall Eſtates into many parcels, inſomuch that of the eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we muſt follow in our ſtory, according to the Diviſion of the Countrey made by him into three Eſtates, of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powys land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvon*, the Iſle of *Angleſey*, and the greateſt parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-ſhires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Carnarvon*, *Aberfraw*; ſpoken of before; and ſome in *Angleſey*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. The Countrey (*Angleſey* excepted) the moſt barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withall the ſafeſt, and furtheſt from the danger of the incroaching *Engliſh*: which poſſibly might be the reaſon why it was ſet out for the portion of the Eldeſt Son, in whom the Soveraignty of the *Welch* was to be preſerved, by the Kings or

Princes of *North-Wales*.

A. Ch.			A. Ch.		
877	1	*Amarawd.* 36.	1120	7	*Owen Guinedth*, Son of *Gryffith*.
913	2	*Idwallo*, Son of *Amarawdh*.	1178	8	*David ap Owen*, Son of *Owen Guinedth*.
	3	*Merick*, Son of *Idwallo*.	1194	9	*Llewellen ap Jorweth*, the Nephew of *David*.
	4	*James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick*.			
1067	5	*Conan*, Son of *James*, or *Jago*.	1240	10	*David ap Llewellen*.
1099	6	*Gryffith ap Conan*.	1246	11	*Llewellen* II. Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David ap Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales* of the *Britiſh* Race. Of whom it is ſaid, that once conſulting with a *Witch*, he was told by her, that it was his deſtiny, to be caried in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his head. Herepon making ſome excurſions on the *Engliſh* Borders, he drew upon himſelf the whole power of King *Edward* the firſt, which not being able to withſtand, and the King as willing on the other ſide not to fight with Mountains; Commiſſioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and ſome others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welch* Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great man of that Countrey, deſcended from *Brockwell Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom, if *Camden Clarentieux* be of any credit, the Author of theſe Papers doth derive his Pedegree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-Bearer*, and from thence their name; (*Heylyn, Promus, ſive à poculis, quæ vox in proprium nomen abiit*, ſaith the *Welch* Dictionary) By thoſe Commiſſioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* ſhould enjoy a part of the Countrey with the title of Prince, during his life: the reſt in preſent, and the whole after his deceaſe, to be ſurrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David* the Brother of *Llewellen*, finding himſelf excluded by this agreement, from the hope of ſucceſſion, incenſed his Brother and the *Welch* to a new Revolt: the iſſue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of juſtice; and the death of *Llewellen*, ſlain in Battail, neer the *Buelth* in *Brecknockſhire*. Whoſe head being pitched upon a ſtake, and adorned with a *Paper-Crown*, was by a Horſeman caried triumphantly through *London*, An. 1282. And ſo the *Propheſie* was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the ſpace of 405 years reſiſted not only the private undertakers and *Adventurers* of *England*, but the Forces of many puiſſant Monarchs; whoſe attempts they always made fruſtrate, by retiring into the heart of their Countrey, and leaving nothing for the *Engliſh* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period of the *Britiſh* Liberty being come, they were conſtrained to yeeld to the ſtronger. What followed after this, we ſhall ſee anon.

The

The Arms of theſe Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Paſſant gardant counterchanged. *Wales.*

2 *POWIS LAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery*, and *Radnor*, all *Shropſhire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the reſt of *Denbigh* and *Flint-ſhires*; comprehending by the eſtimate of thoſe times, 15 *Cantreds* or *hundreds* of Villages: the word *Cant* ſignifying an Hundred, and *Tiet* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns of it, were, S. *Aſaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matravall*, ſpoken of before. A Countrey more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but alwayes lying in harms way, by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *Engliſh*: and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngeſt Son, partly becauſe he was the youngeſt; but chiefly becauſe he was a man of approved valour, and ſo more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and diſmembred by the Earls of *Cheſter*, and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropſhire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who caſt many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Succeſſors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Conſtat*, more than of *Brockwell*, *Skythrac*, before remembred. The laſt that held it all entire was *Meredyth ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc*, and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Madoc* dyed at *Wincheſter*, An. 1160. in the time of King *Henry* the ſecond; his part hereof depending after his deceaſe, on the Fortunes of *Guynedth*: and *Gryffith* was by *Henry* the firſt made Lord of *Powys* (the ſtile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his race it continued till the time of King *Edward* the firſt: to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith* the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredith* before mentioned, ſurrendred his place and title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the cuſtom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was maried unto *John Charleton*, *Valect* (or *Gentleman of the Privy Chamber*) to King *Edward* the ſecond, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powis*. *Edward* the fifth alſo of this Line of the *Charletons*, was the laſt of that Houſe; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Eſtate and Title to the Houſe of the *Greyes*: and of them alſo five enjoyed it, the laſt Lord *Powis* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who dyed in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And ſo the title lay extinct, until revived again in the perſon of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red caſtle*, deſcended from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys* by King *Charles* the firſt, An. 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powyſland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

2 SOUTH-WALES, or *Deheubarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greateſt and moſt fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more expoſed to the invaſion of Forrein Nations, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea-Coaſts were from time to time moſt grievoully plagued: Inſomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were inforced to remove their ſeat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at firſt; unto *Dynevour* Caſtle, as a place of greater ſtrength and ſafety: where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence Kings of *Dynevour*, as before is ſaid. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, S. *Davids*, ſpoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are theſe that follow.

The Princes of *South Wales*.

A. Ch.		A. Ch.	
877	1 *Cadel*, the ſon of *Rodoric Mawre*.		7 *Theodoret* the Great.
	2 *Howel*.	1077	8 *Rheſe ap Theodore*.
907	3 *Howel Dha*, Soveraign King of *Wales*.	1093	9 *Gryffith ap Rheſe*.
948	4 *Owen*, the ſon of *Howel Dha*.		10 *Rheſe* II. *ap Gryffith*.
	5 *Meredith*, ſon of *Owen*.		11 *Gryffith ap Rheſe*, the laſt Prince of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*, after they
998	6 *Aeneas*, or *Enave*, brother of *Meredith*.		

had with great ſtrugling maintained their liberty for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards: but ſo, that though they ſtill preſerved the title of *Princes*, they loſt a great part of their Countrey to the *Norman-Engliſh*. For in the reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Newmark* a Noble *Norman*, ſeized upon thoſe parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordſhip: and *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with ſome other noble adventurers, made themſelves maſters of *Glamorgan*; in which the poſterity of ſome of them are ſtill remaining. Incouraged by their good ſucceſs, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeſhire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the ſame times did prevail exceedingly in the conqueſt of *Cardigan*, and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no one Countrey left intire, but *Caermarthen* only; too little to maintain them in ſo a high a title. And though this laſt *Gryffith*, in the time of the wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empreſs, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of this loſt Eſtate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himſelf deceaſing ſhortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith* being taken by King *Henry* the ſecond, who moſt cruelly put out their eyes: Yet did the *Welch*, as well as poſſibly they could, endevour to preſerve the liberty which their Fathers left them; till the felicity and wiſdom of King *Edward* the firſt, put an end unto the war of *Wales*, and ſetled them in ſome degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to ſpeak of this, we are to ſhew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the ſucceſſion of them before laid down; and made according to the Hiſtory

Wales. of *Wales* writ by *Humfrey Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the Succeſſion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Guynedh*, *Deheubarth*, or *Powyſland*; ſuch as gave law unto the reſt, and had the honor to be called Kings of *Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchie*. Only we ſhall find ſome in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expreſſed in the former Tables: but ſuch as by ſtrong hand had intruded into thoſe Eſtates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, over-powered by them.

The Kings and Princes of *Wales*, according to the *Welch* Hiſtory.

A. Ch.		
688	1	*Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwalladers* departure uſurped the Kingdom.
690	2	*Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwallader*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne.
720	3	*Roderick Molwinnoe*, the Son of *Idwallo*.
755	4	*Conan Tudaethwy*, the Son of *Roderic*.
820	5	*Mervin Urich*, in right of *Eiſylht* his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.
843	6	*Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Eſtates) the Son of *Mervin*.
877	7	*Amarawdh*, Prince of *Guynedth*, the Son of *Roderic Mawre*.
913	8	*Edwall Voel*, Prince of *Guynedth*, Son of *Amarawdh*; made tributary to *Athelſtan* K. of *England*.
940	9	*Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Deheubarth*, and *Powys*.
948	10	*Jevaf*, and *Jago*, Sons of *Edwal Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did releaſe the tribute ordained by King *Athelſtan*, to be paid in mony, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we ſpake before when we were in *England*.
982	11	*Howel*, the Son of *Jevaf*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being ſtill alive, and of right Prince of *Guinedh*.
984	12	*Cadwallan*, the brother of *Howell*.
986	13	*Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*.
992	14	*Edwall* III. Son of *Merick*, the Eldeſt Son of *Edwall Voel*; which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
1003	15	*Aedan ap Blethored*, an Uſurper.
1015	16	*Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, deſcended from *Amaraudh*, the firſt Prince of *Guinedh* or *North-Wales*.
1021	17	*Jago ap Edwall*, Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Edwall* the third.
1037	18	*Gryffith ap Llewellen*, the Son of *Llewellen ap Sitſylht*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
1061	19	*Blethyn* and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Deheubarth*, by a ſecond Husband.
1073	20	*Trahaern ap Caradoc*, Couſin to *Blethyn*.
1078	21	*Gryffith* Prince of *Guynedh*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Jago ap Edwall*, one of the Princes of the ſame, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the laſt that had the title of King of *Wales*.
1137	22	*Owen Guinedh* Prince of *Guinedh*, and Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, Eldeſt Son of *Gryffith*.
1169	23	*David ap Owen* Prince of *Guinedh*, the youuger Son of *Owen Guinedh*.
1194	24	*Llewellen*, Son of *Jorwerth*, Eldeſt Son of *Owen Guinedh*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
1242	25	*David ap Llewellen* Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Llewellen ap Jorwerth*.
1246	26	*Llewellen*, Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the laſt Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwallader*; overcome and ſlain in battel by King *Edward* the firſt, An. 1282. as before is ſaid: by means whereof the *Principality of Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great buſineſs, he gave unto his *Engliſh* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signeuries and Eſtates; as well to reward them for their ſervice in the conqueſt, as to engage ſo many able men, both in purſe and power, for the perpetual defence and ſubjugation of it. As for the Lordſhip of *Flint*, and the Towns and Eſtates lying on the Sea-coaſts; he held them in his own hands, both to keep himſelf ſtrong, and to curb the *Welch*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperor *Auguſtus*) pretending the eaſe of ſuch as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himſelf only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into ſeven Shires, viz. 1 *Glamorgan*, 2 *Carmarden*, 3 *Pembroke*, 4 *Cardigan*, 5 *Merioneth*, 6 *Carnarvon*, and 7 *Angleſey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of theſe, as he placed a particular *Engliſh* Lieutenant, ſo he was very deſirous to have one general *Engliſh* Vicegerent, over the whole body of the *Welch*. But this when they mainly withſtood, he ſent for his wife, then great with child to *Carnarvon*: where ſhe was delivered of a Son. Upon the news whereof, the King aſſembled the *Britiſh* Lords, and offered to name them a Governor born in *Wales*, which could not ſpeak one word of *Engliſh*, and whoſe life no man could tax. Such a one when they had all ſworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; ſince which time our Kings Eldeſt Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. Their *Inveſtiture* is performed by the impoſition of a cap of eſtate, and a *Coronet* on his head that is inveſted, as a token of his *Principality*; by delivering into his hand a *verge*, being the Emblem of government; by putting a *ring* of gold on his finger, to ſhew him how now he is a *Husband* to the Countrey, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a patent, *to hold the*

ſaid

ſaid Principality, to him and his heirs Kings of England. By which words, the ſeparation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themſelves ſo excellent an occaſion, of obliging unto them their eldeſt Son, when they pleaſe. In imitation of this cuſtom, *more ex* Anglia *tranſlato* (ſaith *Mariana*) *John* the firſt of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Aſturia's*; which is a countrey ſo craggie and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spaniſh* Princes even to theſe times, are honored with this title of *Prince of the Aſturia's*. *Wales.*

Notwithſtanding this provident care of *Edward* the firſt, in eſtabliſhing his Empire here; and the extreme rigor of Law here uſed by *Henry* the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welch* bloud) they ſeldom or never contained themſelves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by Act of Parliament) one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame preferments, and privileged with the ſame immunities. He added alſo 6 Shires to the former number, out of thoſe Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and *Marches* of *Wales*; and enabled them to ſend Knights and Burgeſſes unto the *Engliſh* Parliaments: ſo that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*; an happy Union.

The ſame King *Henry* eſtabliſhed for the eaſe of his *Welch* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are miniſtred according to the faſhion of the Kings Courts of *Weſtminſter*. The Court conſiſteth of one *Preſident*, who is, for the moſt part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord Preſident of Wales*; of as many Counſellors as it ſhall pleaſe the King to appoint; one Attourney, one Sollicitor, one Secretary, and the four Juſtices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town it ſelf (for this muſt not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Caſtle, which hath been the Palace of ſuch Princes of *Wales*, of the *Engliſh* blood, as have come into this Countrey, to ſolace themſelves among their people. Here was young *Edward* the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldeſt Son to *Henry* the 7th: both being ſent hither by their Fathers to the ſame end, *viz.* by their preſence to ſatisfie and keep in order the unquiet *Welchmen*. And certainly, as the preſence of the *Prince* was then a terror to the rebellious, ſo would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the *Revenues* of this *Principality* are, I cannot ſay: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very ſmall, by theſe reaſons following, *viz.* 1 By the Compoſition which *Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the firſt: who being Prince of *North Wales* only, and diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of that, was fain to redeem the reſt, of the ſaid King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our preſent money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the reſidue to pay 1000 *l. per annum*. And 2dly, by thoſe two circumſtances, in the mariage of the Lady *Katharine* of *Spain*, to the above named Prince *Arthur*. For firſt, her Father *Ferdinando* being one of the warieſt Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for her Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Cheſter*. And ſecondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perſwaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that ſo great a Treaſure as the yearly *Revenue* of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from thoſe of *England*, only by the addition of a *Labell* of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with three *Oſtrich* Feathers, and inſcribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I ſerve: alluding to that of the Apoſtle, *The Heir while he is a child differeth not from a Servant*. This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the black Prince, at the battel of *Grecie*, from *John* King of *Bohemia*; who there wrote it, and whom he there ſlew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now ſhut up my diſcourſe of *Wales*, with that teſtimony of the people, which *Henry* the 2d uſed in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*; *The Welch Nation is ſo adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to ſpend their blood for their Countrey, and pawn their life for praiſe*: and adding only this, that ſince their incorporating with the *Engliſh*, they have ſhewed themſelves moſt loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King; and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the beſt of their fellow-ſubjects; whereof they have given good proof in theſe later times.

There are in *Wales*
Archbiſhops 0. Biſhops 4.

The Borders.

The BORDERS.

BEfore we come into *Scotland*, we muſt of neceſſity paſs through that Battable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called THE BORDERS; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, ſubtile, nimble, and by reaſon of their often skirmiſhes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the *Engliſh* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the Eaſt, and that of *Dunbritton* on the Weſt (the firſt *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodotria*, and the latter *Glotta*:) betwixt which, where now ſtandeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an antient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*; on a Croſs ſtanding whereupon, was writ this *Paſport*.

I am *Free march* as paſſengers may ken,
To *Scots*, to *Britans*, and to *Engliſh men*.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Daniſh* oppreſſion, the *Scots* well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but alſo took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Weſtmorland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered theſe Provinces, making the *Borders* of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, Eaſt; the *Solway*, Weſt; and the *Cheviot* hils in the midſt. Of any great wars made on theſe *Borders*, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the firſt; who taking advantage of the *Scots* diſagreements, about the ſucceſſour of *Alexander* the 3d, hoped to bring the Countrey under the obedience of *England*. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end; the Wars ſurviving the Author: ſo that what *Velleius* ſaith of the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, I may as well ſay of the *Scots* and *Engliſh*; for almoſt 300 years together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli præparatio, aut infida pax fuit.* In moſt of theſe conflicts the *Scots* had the worſt. So that *Daniel* in his Hiſtory ſeemeth to marvail how this Corner of the Iſle could breed ſo many, had it bred nothing but men, as were ſlain in theſe wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the 2d, the *Scots* (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became ſo terrible to the *Engliſh Borderers*, that an hundred of them would fly from three *Scots*. It is a cuſtom among the *Turks*, not to beleeve a *Chriſtian* or a *Jew* complaining againſt a *Turk* except their accuſation be confirmed by the Teſtimony of ſome *Turk* alſo; which ſeldom hapning, is not the leaſt cauſe why ſo little Juſtice is there done the *Chriſtians*. In like manner, it is the Law of theſe *Borderers*, never to beleeve any *Scots* complaining againſt any *Engliſh-man*, unleſs ſome other *Engliſh-man* will witneſs for him; and ſo on the other ſide. *Ex jure quodam inter limitaneos rato* (ſaith *Camden in his Elizab.*) *nullus niſi Scotus in Scotum, nullus niſi Anglus in Anglum, teſtis admittitur.* This Cuſtom making void in this faſhion, all kinds of accuſations; was one of the greateſt cauſes of the Inſolencies of both ſides committed. Beſides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but ſometimes were *Scots*, ſometimes *Engliſh*, as their preſent crimes and neceſſities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and ſecure the *Borders*, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*: one being placed over the Eaſt, the other over the Weſt, the third over the middle *Borders*. In *England*, the *Warden* of the Eaſt *Marches* had his Seat at *Barwick* (a Town of great ſtrength, and which for the conveniency of its ſituation, was the firſt thing which the *Engliſh* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to ſurpriſe) of which he was alſo Governor. The *Warden* of the Weſt Marches, had his Seat in *Carlile*, which *Henry* the 8th for that cauſe well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle Marches had no ſet place of reſidence, but was ſometimes in one place, ſometimes in another, according as occaſion required; the Office being executed for the moſt part, by the Wardens of the Eaſtern or Weſtern Marches. But *Imperii medium eſt, terminus ante fuit*, by the bleſſed mariage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; theſe Officers, and the cauſe of them, the wars, are quite extinguiſhed.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, ſeparated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*; and the *Cheviot* Hils, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place diſtant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Countrey ending like the ſharp point of a Wedge. And for the length aſſigned unto it by *Polydore*, it muſt be made up by meaſuring the crooks and windings of the ſhores, every where thruſting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land. For meaſuring in a ſtrait Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Frith* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten Italian miles; and from *Barwick* unto *Straitby-head*, is a great deal ſhorter. So that there is no ſuch over-ſight in the Maps of *Britain*, nor ſuch neceſſity to correct them, as was ſometimes thought.

It

Scotland.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the most usual name is *Scotia*, or *Scotland*; though the reason of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Ægyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reason (though that none of the best) from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmatian* people, of noted fame; whom they will have to seize first on some parts of *Spain*, from thence to transplant themselves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is; that they were no other then meer *Irish*, (whose language, habit, and the most barbarous of their customs, the *Highlanders*, or natural *Scots* do still retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* signifying in their Language, a body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*. *Scot illud dicitur, (*saith *Camden* out of *Matthew* of *Westminster*) *quod ex diversis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. First mentioned by this name in some fragments of *Porphyrie* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*) as they are cited by S. *Hierome*: after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in harassing the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Irish Scots*, inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the West parts of the Continent adjoyning to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Irish* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as King *JAMES* observed in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron*) *but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots* among them. The *Lowlanders* or *English Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Frythes* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countries all along the *German* Ocean; are the more civil of the two, as being of the same *Saxon* race with the *English*. This is evident, first, by their Language, being only a broad Northern *English*, a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2ly, by the testimony of the *Highlanders* themselves, who are the true *Scots*, and speak the old *Irish* language, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *English* are called by the same name of *Saxons*: 3ly, by the general consent of all Historians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *English Saxons* beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Frithes* before-mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 years: and 4ly, by the confession of some ingenuous Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, that the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the same time; the *Saxons* might extort the Eastern shore, lying next their Countrey, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Western parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Western Islands*, from whence they first passed into *Britain*.

The Countrey for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the *Natives* of it; were they not a people patient of want and hunger; temperate in diet, and not accustomed unto that riot and excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countreys. Fruit they have very little, and not many trees either for building or for fewel: the people holding, as in *France*, at the *Will of the Lord*, and therefore not industrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are course cloth, Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two last their mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The people have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous customs entertained amongst them. One of which was, if any two were displeased, they expected no law; but bang'd it out bravely, one and his kindred, against the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word so barbarous, that were it to be expressed in *Latine*, or *French*, it must be by *circumlocution*. These deadly *Feides*, King *James* in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron* adviseth his Son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a life as to see it in his own days remedied: wherein he got a greater victory over that stubborn people, than ever did any forein Prince, or any of his Predecessors could do before him; an act indeed truly royal, and worthy himself. Another custom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongst the Heathen, and much less in *Christendom*, which took beginning as the *Scottish* Historians affirm, in the reign of *Ewen* the 3d, who is the fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the first *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto lasciviousness, made a Law, that himself and his successors should have the *maidenhead*, or first nights lodging with every woman, whose husband held land immediately from the Crown: and the *Lords* and Gentlemen of all those, whose husbands were their tenants or *homagers*. This was, it seems, the *Knights service* which men held their states by; and continued till the days of *Malcolm Connor*: who at the request of his wife *Margaret*, (she was the sister of *Edgar Atheling*) abolished this Law; and ordained, that the *tenants* by way of commutation, should pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which tribute the *Historians* say is still in force. It was called *Marcheta mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horse in the old *Gallique*, (implying the obscene signification of *Equitare*) as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or from *Marca*, the sum of money by which it was afterward redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this last custom was of such a barbarous and brutish nature, that the custom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramines* the first nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in prostituting their Wives and Daughters to the lusts and pleasure of their *Guests*; have not more *unchristianity* in them, than this of those *Scottish* Christians, if I may so call them.

These Customs shew the antient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neighboring Nations; nor are they so broken of the former, but that they are observed by a *modern Writer*, to be still greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as also to be a subtile and politick people, inclined to Factions and Seditions among themselves; which he that reads their Stories cannot

Scotland. cannot chooſe but ſee. A people, as King *James* obſerveth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, ever weary of the preſent ſtate, and deſirous of novelties; accuſtomed to judge and ſpeak raſhly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always caried themſelves with ſuch untractableneſs, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered, and depoſed by the *Scots*; than by all the Nations in the world. But take them in themſelves without theſe relations, and they are ſaid to be an induſtrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well verſed in *Grammatical* Learning, of which moſt of their *Gentry* have a ſmattering. And of moſt note in point of Learning, have been 1 *Marianus* (ſurnamed) *Scotus*, and 2 *Hector Boetius*, the Hiſtorians; 3 *John Major*, a well-known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4 *George Buchannan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unſound *Stateſ-man*; whoſe Hiſtory, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more miſchief in the World, than all *Machiavels* works. Not to have been remembred here, but becauſe he was Pædagogue to 5 King *James*, of moſt famous memory; whoſe printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6 *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiſton*. 7,8 *Barclay*, the Father and the Son. 9 *John Skene*, the beſt Antiquary of this Nation. 10 Doctor *John Maxwel*, the late learned Biſhop of *Roſs*, and my very good friend; beſides ſome others of leſs note.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was here planted by divers men, according to the ſeveral Nations who did here inhabit; amongſt the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan*, the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*, or *Holy Iſland*; amongſt the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eaſtern parts, by *Ninias*, Biſhop of *Candida Caſa*, or *Whit-herne*, in *Galloway*; amongſt the *Northern-Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongſt the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, ſent to them hither for that purpoſe by Pope *Celeſtine*, An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the *Reformation* of *Religion*, overgrown with the ruſt and rubbiſh of the *Romiſh* Church, (degenerated from it ſelf in the later days) it was here made by a ſtrong hand, according to the judgement of *Knox* and others: not taking counſel with the *Prelates*, nor ſtaying the leiſure of the Prince, as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates* out of all autority; made by that means, more naturally ſubject unto alterations than it had been otherwiſe; or only to be made good by the ſame violence, which firſt introduced it. Tis true, that for a while, being in danger of the *French*, and of neceſſity to ſupport themſelves by the power and favour of the *Engliſh*; they bound themſelves by a ſolemn Subſcription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to obſerve that form of Worſhip, which was there eſtabliſhed. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus ſubſcripſerunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchannan*, their own State-Hiſtorian. But no ſooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leiſure to effect their ends; and have endevoured ever ſince by practices, and correſpondency with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thruſt their own Conſtitutions and Form of Worſhip on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Biſhops, (as in all parts elſe); but ſo as they exerciſed their Functions and Juriſdictions in all places, equally, whereſoever they came: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceſes*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third, An. 1070, or thereabouts. Nor had they any Archbiſhops till the year 1478. The Archbiſhop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the Metropolitan of *Scotland*. But being once ſetled in an orderly and conſtant *Hierarchy*, they held the ſame until the *Reformation* began by *Knoxe*: when he and his aſſociats approving the *Genevian* plat-form, took the advantage of the Minority of King *James* the ſixth, to introduce *Preſbyterian* Diſcipline, and ſuppreſs the Biſhops; forbidding them by their own ſole autority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the *Church*, and *Cantoning* the Kingdom into *Preſbyteries* of their own aſſigning. And that the King might not be able to oppoſe their doings, they kept him under by ſtrong hand, impriſoned him at *Sterlin*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithful ſervants, and ſeized upon his principal Fortreſſes: and in a word ſo baſled and affronted him upon all occaſions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*. Which doubtleſs he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by ſome of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the laſt to the Crown of *England*, made him ſtay it out: So that his *Maxim* of *No Biſhops no King*, was not made at random, but founded on the ſad experience of his own condition. And though upon the ſenſe of thoſe inconveniencies, which that alteration brought upon him; he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, reſtore again the *Epiſcopal* Order, and ſetled it both by *Synodical* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the ſame reſtleſs ſpirit breaking out again in the reign of his Son, An. 1638. did violently eject the Biſhops, and ſuppreſs the calling; and ſet up their Presbyteries throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Couutrey are, 1 the Lake of *Mirton*, part of whoſe waters do congeal in Winter, and part of them not. 2ly, That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3ly, That when there is no wind ſtirring, the waters of the ſaid lake are ſo tempeſtuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. 4ly, That there is a ſtone called the *Deaf ſtone*, 12 foot high and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Muſket ſhot off on the one ſide, cannot be heard by a man ſtanding on the other. If it be otherwiſe (as he muſt have a ſtrong Faith who believes theſe wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot* Hils upon the *Borders*; and Mount *Grampius* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; the ſafeſt ſhelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britans* againſt the *Romans*, and of the *Scots* againſt the *Engliſh*; now called the hils of *Albany*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of theſe ſpringeth the 1 *Tay* or *Taus*, the faireſt River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the Eaſt ſide; and 2 the *Cluyd*, emptying it ſelf into *Dunbritton Frith*, on the Weſtſide of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of moſt note, are, the 3 *Banoc*, emptying it ſelf into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*;

on

on the banks whereof was fought that fatall battell of *Banocks-bourn*, of which more anon. 4 *Spey*, 5 *Dee*, the *Ocaſa* of *Ptolemie*: none of them of any long courſe, by reaſon that the Countrey Northward is but very narrow. *Scotland.*

In reference to *Eccleſiaſtical* affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceſes, to which the Dioceſe of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of S. *Andrews*) hath been lately added: and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneſchalſies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the moſt part hereditary, are no ſmall hinderance to the due execution of Juſtice. So that the readieſt way to redreſs the miſchief (as King *James* adviſed) is to diſpoſe of them as they fall or Eſcheat to the Crown, according to the laudable cuſtom (in that caſe) in *England*.

The greateſt *Friends* of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots* ſhewed themſelves ſo faithful, that the *French* King committed the defence of his perſon to a ſelected number of *Scottiſh* Gentlemen: and ſo valiant, that they have much hindered the *Engliſh* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the ſmart of the *Engliſh* puiſſance alone, have continually heartned the *Scots* in their attempts againſt *England*, and hindered all means of making union betwixt them: as appeared, when they broke the match agreed on, between our *Edward* the ſixth, and *Mary* the young Queen of *Scots*. Their greateſt enemy was the *Engliſh*, who overcame them in many battels, ſeized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and unacceſſible woods had not been more advantagious to the *Scots*, than their power: for ſo much King *James* ſeemeth to imitate in his ſpeech at *Whitehal*, 1607. *And though*, ſaith he, *the* Scots *had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the* defenſible *ſide; and may in part thank their hils and inacceſſible paſſages, that ſaved them from an utter overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them.* But

Jam cunctì gens una ſumus, ſic ſimus in ævum:

One only Nation now are we,
And let us ſo for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Caſtrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Court of Juſtice. It conſiſteth chiefly of one ſtreet, extending in length one mile, into which run many prety lanes; ſo that the whole compaſs may be nigh three miles: extending from Eaſt to Weſt on a riſing ground, at the Summit or Weſt end whereof ſtandeth a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep and precipitious Rock, which commandeth the Town; ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtrum Alatum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*. Under the command or rather the protection of which Caſtle, and through the neighbourhood of *Leith*, ſtanding on the *Fryth*, and ſerving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Juſtice, and the Court Royal called *Holy-Rood-Houſe*, it ſoon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withall factious and ſeditious, conteſting with their Kings, or ſiding againſt them upon all occaſions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Soveraign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it the priviledges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear then all the Plagues that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the *Engliſh Saxons*, (as all the reſt of the Countrey from the *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom, oppreſſed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, Ann. 800. or thereabouts. 2. *Sterling*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom ſo called; a ſtrong Town, and beautified withall with a very fair Caſtle, the birth-place of King *James* the ſixt, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*. Neer to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, hapned the moſt memorable diſcomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *Engliſh*: who beſides many Lords, and 700 Knights and men of note, loſt in this Fight (as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Souldiers (our *Engliſh* Hiſtories confeſs 10000, and too many of that) the King himſelf (*Edward* the 2d) being compelled to flie for his life and ſafety. Some of the *Scotiſh* Writers tell us, that the purer ſort of ſilver, which we call *Sterling* money, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our ſilver *Bullion* comes from *Bovillon* in *Luxemburgh*, or from the Port of *Boulogne* in *France*; the truth being, that it took that name from the *Eaſterlings*, or Merchants of *Eaſt Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *John*, to refine our Coin. 3. *Glaſco*, in *Cluidsdale*, honoured with an Archbiſhops See, and a publick School (to which ſome give the name of an Univerſity) founded here by Archbiſhop *Turnbal*, Anno 1554. 4. S. *Andrews*, the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiſcopall See, and an Univerſity; by the *Latines* called *Fanum Reguli*: which, and the *Engliſh* name, it took from the bones of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, tranſlated firſt from *Patras* in *Peleponneſus* where he ſuffered death, unto *Conſtantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the year 378 (if they be not miſtaken in the time, who made the ſtory.) Over which *Relicks* he is ſaid to have built a Monaſtery, which after grew to be a City: called from the Founder, *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint, S. *Andrews*. The Biſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *Scotland*; the City ſeated on the Ocean, neer the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a ſtrong and goodly Caſtle, the Archbiſhops ſeat. 5. *Falkland*, in the ſame Province of *Fife*, beautified with a retiring houſe of the Kings, reſorting often thither on *receſs* from buſineſs, or for the commodity and pleaſure of hunting, which the place affords. 6. *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Taodunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Tay*, the chief Town of *Anguis*. 7. *Aber-don*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it hath the name, (the word *Aber* in the *Britiſh* ſignifying the mouth or influx of a River) an Univerſity, and Biſhops See. 8. *Perth*, or St. *Johns Town*, ſeated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and repleniſhed with an induſtrious people: the chief Town of the Sheriffedom of *Perth*. 9. *Scone*, on

the

Scotland. the further side of the *Tay*, adorned heretofore with a famous *Monastery*; the usuall place for the Inauration of the *Scotish* Kings: the fatall stone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scotish* Kingdom) here kept, till the removall of it unto *Westminster*, by King *Edward* the first. Upon which stone there were of old ingraven these Verses.

Ni fallat fatum, Scoti *quocunque locatum*
Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.

Translated in old Meeter thus;

The *Scots* shall brook that Realm as natif ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, whaire ere this *Stane* is found.

Most happily accomplished in the Succession of King *James* the sixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10. *Dunbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) seated in a grassie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Cluyd*, upon two steep and precipicious Rocks, flanked on the West with the said two Rivers, and on the East with a myery Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the strongest hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famine or Treason, and the chief Town of the West side of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoyning.

The Antient Inhabitants of this Countrey dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, possessing *Tevidale*, *Twedale*, *Merch*, and *Lothien*, whose chief City was *Castra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2 The *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*, and *Menteith*, whose chief City was *Vanduara*, now *Renfraw*; *Lindum*, now *Linlithquo*. 3 The *Selgovæ*, inhabited in *Liddisdale*, *Eusedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, and *Nidisdale*, whose chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4 the *Novantes*, containing *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*; principal places of the which were, *Leucopibia*, now *Whit herne*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the *Province*, amongst the *Picts* or *barbarous Britans*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatæ*, the Nations of most note were, 5 the *Caldedonii* properly so called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6 The *Vermines* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7 The *Taizali* of *Buquhan*. 8 The *Vacomagi* of *Loquhabre* and *Murray*. 9 The *Cantæ* of *Ross* and *Sutherland*. 10 The *Cantini* of *Gathness*; and 11 the *Cornubii* of *Strathnavern*, the furtheft Countrey Northward of all the Island. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatia*, *Orca*, *Devana*, and *Tuesis*; which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been shewn before. On the withdrawing of whose Forces, so much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was possessed by the *Saxons*, the residue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*: save that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themselves masters also of the plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the passage out of *Germany* was both short and easie. By which accompt, besides those places in the East, they were possessed of the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Teifidale*, *Tweedale*, *Merch*, *Lothien*, *Liddisdale*, *Eusedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Nidisdale*, *Cluydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richest, and most flourishing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part, had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorn*, *Loquhabre*, and *Strathnavern*, lying on the West and North: the other Northern moity (excepting some parts neer the coast of the *German* Ocean possessed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Gathness*, *Southerland*, *Ross*, *Murray*, *Buquhan*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Athol*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into these parts hath been shewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of those who will have them to descend from the *Agathyrsi*, a people of *Scythia*) they were no other than such of the naturall *Britans*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but still preserved their Countrey in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Tertullian*, *inaccessa* Romanis *loca*, as indeed they were: and using still their antient custom of painting their bodies, after the rest of their Countreymen had conformed themselves to more civill courses, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*; and by that name first mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Eunomius*, in the time of *Constantine* the *Great*. They long possessed these parts without an *Inmate*, even till the year 424. when the *Irish-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly possessed themselves of the Western Isles, first set foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continuall Warre, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Western parts, and withdraw themselves into the Eastern. Afterwards growing into better terms with one another, and willing to enlarge their borders toward the more flourishing *South*; they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League against the *Britans*; whom on all sides they most miserably tortered, till vanquished and beat back by the conquering *Saxons*, against whom they contracted a new *Confederacy*. Taking the advantage of the death of *Etheldred*, King of the *Northumbers*, and the invasion of the *Danes* on the rest of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or so much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Twede*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forward as a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt these two Nations. It hapned at the last, that *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, maried *Fergusia*, Sister unto *Hungust* King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hungust*, dying without issue, and having none of a neerer kindred, was in the judgement of the *Scots*, to succeed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alleging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, chose one *Ferreth* of their own Nation, to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, victorious for the most part, in conclusion slain. The quarrell notwithstanding did remain betwixt the unfriendly Nations, till at the last, after many bloudy battels,

and

and mutual overthrows (the *Scots* being for the moſt part on the loſing ſide) *Kenneth*, the ſecond of that name, vanquiſhed *Donsken*, the laſt King of the *Picts*, with ſo great a ſlaughter of his People, that he extinguiſhed not their Kingdom only, but their very name; paſſing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictiſh* Nation: unleſs perhaps we will believe that ſome of them paſſed into *France*; and there, forſooth, ſubdued that Countrey which we now call *Picardy*. *Scotland.*

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I ſhall begin the ſame with *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name in the Accompt of their Hiſtorians: leaving out that rabble of 38 Kings (half of them at the leaſt before *Chriſts* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchannan*, and others of their *Claſſick* Authors. Neither ſhall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more judicious and underſtanding men of the *Scotiſh* Nation, (and for others I take little care) ſince I deal no more unkindly with their firſt *Fregus*, and his Succeſſors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his. The firſt *Scotiſh* King that ſetled himſelf in the North of *Britain*, is, according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyle* governed the *Britans*, came (forſooth) into theſe parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued ſucceſſion: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is ſaid to have been expelled the Iſland, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britans*, and *Picts*. Twenty and ſeven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their poſſeſſion here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scotiſh* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the ſtories of the former 39 Kings, to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this aſſertion, this expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain*, being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*; at what time the beſt Writers of the *Roman* ſtory for thoſe times, report the *Scots* to have firſt ſeated themſelves in this Iſland.

The Kings of chief note in the courſe of the whole Succeſſion are, 1 *Achaius*, who died in the year 809 and in his life contracted the offenſive and defenſive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The conditions whereof were, 1 Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2 Let the enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 3 If the *Saxons* or *Engliſh-men* invade *France*, the *Scots* ſhall ſend thither ſuch numbers of Souldiers as ſhall be deſired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4 If the *Engliſh* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* ſhall at his own charges ſend competent aſſiſtance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully obſerved, or longer continued, than this between theſe two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occaſions ſo readily aſſiſting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb, or by-word, *He that will* France *win, muſt with* Scotland *firſt begin*. 2 *Kenneth* the ſecond, who having utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the preſent *Scotland*, deſervedly to be accompted the firſt *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or ſo few in number, that they paſſed afterwards in the name and accompt of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3 *Malcolm* the firſt, who added *Weſtmorland*, and *Cumberland*, unto his Dominions; given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtane*, to have his aid againſt the *Danes*, or to keep him neutrall. After which time, thoſe Counties were ſometimes *Scotiſh* and ſometimes *Engliſh*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the ſecond, and united to the Crown of *England*; never ſince disjoyned. 4 *Kenneth* the third, who by conſent of the Eſtates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *hereditary*, to deſcend from the Father to his Eldeſt Son; before which time (keeping within the compaſs of the Royall Family) the *Uncle* was ſometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldeſt in years, though further off, before the younger Kinſman, though the neerer in bloud. After which time (the oppoſition and interruption made by *Conſtantine* the third, and *Donald* the fourth, excepted only) the Eldeſt Sons of the Kings, or the next in birth, have ſucceeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of thoſe Tributary and *Vaſſal Kings*, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, neer *Cheſter*, in ſuch pomp and majeſty. 5 *Macbbeth*, of whom there goeth a famous ſtory, which ſhall be told at large anon. 6 *Malcolm* the third, the Son of *Duncane*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbbeths* tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only ſome *Civilities* of the *Engliſh* garb; but the honourary titles of *Earls* and *Barons*, not here before uſed. At the perſwaſion of the Lady *Margaret* his wife, (Siſter of *Edgar*, ſurnamed *Atheling*, and after his deceaſe the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he aboliſhed the barbarous cuſtom ſpoken of before. He did *homage* to *William* the *Conquerour* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards ſiding againſt him with the *Engliſh*, was ſlain at *Alnwick*. 7 *David*, the youngeſt Son of *Malcolm* the third, ſucceeded his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* (dying without iſſue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *Edgar Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldeſt Son of *Edmund* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Ironſide*, King of *England*, had the beſt title to that Kingdom alſo: but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the *Norman Conquerours*; with whom, by reaſon of the great puiſſance of thoſe Kings, and the little love which the *Engliſh* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to diſpute their Title by force of Armes. From *Maud* the Siſter of this *David*, maried to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, deſcended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeths* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the ſixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, ſucceeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his deſcent from another *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the ſeventh. So that in his perſon there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a reſtoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir) to the Crown of *England*; the poſſeſſion whereof had for ſo long time continued in the Poſterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this deſcent it followeth moſt undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conquerer got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund*

the

Scotland. the second, surnamed *Ironside*; and that his Successors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeths* death: yet *James*, the first Monarch of *Great Britain*, succeeded by a right descent from the *Saxon* Line: without relation to the Conquest of the *Norman* Bastard. 8 *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry* (who died in the life of his Father) being taken prisoner at the Battail of *Alnwick*; did *homage* to King *Henry* the second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon restored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the succeeding Kings, when their affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more considerable, we shall see anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the story of *Macbeth*, than which for variety of action, and strangeness of events, I never met with any more pleasing. The story in brief is thus. *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principall men, whom he employed in all matters of importance; *Macbeth*, and *Banquho*. These two travelling together through a Forrest, were met by three *Fairies*, Witches (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the first making obeysance unto *Macbeth*, saluted him *Thane* (a title unto which that of *Earl* afterward succeeded) of *Glammis*: the second, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, saith *Banquho*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made answer, That he indeed should not be King, but out of his loyns should come a Race of Kings, that should for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus said, they all suddenly vanished. Upon their arrival to the Court, *Macbeth* was immediately created *Thane* of *Glammis*; and not long after, some new service of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the two former; he resolved not to be wanting to himself in fulfilling the third: and therefore first he killed the King, and after, by reason of his command among the Souldiers, and common people, he succeeded in his Throne. Being scarce warm in his seat, he called to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*: whom hereupon suspecting as his supplanter, he caused him to be killed, together with his whole Posterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons, escaping only with no small difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed, as he thought, from all fear of *Banquho* and his issue, he built *Dunsinan* Castle, and made it his ordinary seat: and afterwards on some new fears, consulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Estate; was told by one of them, that he should never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being some miles distant) came to *Dunsinan* Castle; and by another, that he should never be slain by any man which was born of a woman. Secure then, as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the space of 18 years, for so long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the measure of his iniquities, *Mac-duffe* the Governour of *Fife*, associating to himself some few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny; privily met one evening at *Bernane* Wood: and taking every one of them a bough in his hand, (the better to keep them from discovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunsinan* Castle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Macbeth* escaping was pursued by *Mac-duffe*, who having overtaken him, urged him to the combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in scorn, returned this Answer, That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *destinie* never to be slain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then said *Mac duffe*, is thy fatal end drawing fast upon thee, for I was never born of Woman, but violently cut out of my Mothers belly: which words so daunted the cruell Tyrant, though otherwise a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very easily slain; and *Malcolm Conmer*, the true Heir of the Crown, seated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* so prospered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Countrey; and on her begat a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his descent once known, he was not only restored to the Honours, and Estates of his Ancestors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the house of *Edgar*, the Son of *Malcolm* the third, surnamed *Conmer*; the name of *Stewart*, growing hence hereditary unto his Posterity. From this *Walter* descended that *Robert Stewart*, who succeeded *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned successively in that kingdom. But it is now time to leave off particulars, and look into the generall Succession of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conquest of the *Picts*.

424 1 *Fergus.*
2 *Eugenius.*
449 3 *Dongal.*
4 *Constantine.*
5 *Congall.*
6 *Goran.*
7 *Eugenius* II.
8 *Congall* II.
9 *Kinnatel.*
10 *Aidan.*
604 11 *Kenneth.*
12 *Eugenius* III.
622 13 *Ferchard.*
14 *Donald.*
15 *Ferchard* II.
16 *Malduine.*
17 *Eugenius* IV.
18 *Eugenius* V.
19 *Amberkeleth.*
20 *Eugenius* VI.
21 *Mordac.*
730 22 *Etfinus.*
23 *Eugenius* VII.
24 *Fergus* II.
25 *Solvathius.*
26 *Achaius.*
809 27 *Congall* III.
28 *Dongall* II.
29 *Alpine*, slain in a Battail by the *Picts*, in pursuit of his quarrell for that kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in Right of his Mother, Sister and Heir of *Hungius* the last King thereof.
30 *Kenneth* II. Sonne of *Alpine*; who utter subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scotish* Kingdom, from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*;

Scotland; of which deſervedly accounted the firſt *Monarch*; the Founder of the new Succeſſion of *Scotland*.

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

A. Ch.

839 1 *Kenneth* II. the firſt ſole King of all *Scotland*. 17.
856 2 *Donald* II. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.
862 3 *Conſtantin* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 2d.
875 4 *Ethus*, Brother of *Conſtantin* the 2d.
890 5 *Donald* III. Sonne of *Conſtantin* the 2d.
903 6 *Conſtantin* III. 30.
933 7 *Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the 3d.
949 8 *Ingulph*, an Intruder. 12.
961 9 *Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm* I.
961 10 *Kenneth* III. Brother of *Duffe*.
994 11 *Conſtantin* IV. an Intruder, againſt the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.
1004 12 *Malcolm* II. Sonne of *Kenneth* the 3d. oppoſed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.
1035 13 *Duncan*, Sonne of *Grime*, ſucceeded *Malcolm* the 2d dying without iſſue.
1040 14 *Macbeth*, the Tyrant and Uſurper.
1057 15 *Malcolm* III. Son of *Duncan*.
1096 16 *Donald* IV. ſurnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3d.
1198 17 *Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the 3d.
1107 18 *Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar*.
1124 19 *David*, Brother of *Alexander*.
1133 20 *Malcolm*, Son of *David*.
1166 21 *William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 4th.
1213 22 *Alexander* II. Son of *William*.
1250 23 *Alexander* III. Son of *Alexander* the 2d. after whoſe death, dying without any iſſue, An. 1285. began that tedious and bloody Quarrell about the ſucceſſion of this Kingdom, occaſioned by ſundry Titles and Pretendants to it: the principal wereof were *Bruce*, and *Baliol*, deſcended from the Daughters of *David*, Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the 3d, the laſt of the Male iſſue of *Kenneth* the 3d, thoſe of neerer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compoſe the difference, among themſelves; it was taken into conſideration by King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, as the Lord Paramouus of that Kingdom: who ſelecting 12 *Engliſh*, and as many of the *Scots* to adviſe about it, with the conſent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Dervorguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of the ſaid *David*; who having done his homage to the ſaid King *Edward*, was admitted King.
1300 24 *John Baliol*, an *Engliſh-man*, but forgetfull both of *Engliſh* birth, and *Engliſh* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hoſtile manner, and was taken priſoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himſelf Maſter of all *Scotland*, which he held during the reſt of his life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.
1306 25 *Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce* Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland* in Right of *Iſabel* his Mother, the ſecond Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and conſequently a degree neerer to the King deceaſed than *Baliol* was, though deſcended from the elder Siſter) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the firſt; but not fully poſſeſſed thereof untill after his death: confirmed therein by the great defeat given to *Edward* the ſecond, at the fight of *Bannocks-bourn*, not far from *Sterling*, ſpoken of before. But he being dead, Anno 1332. *Edward* the third confirmed the Kingdom on
1332 26 *Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*, rejected by the *Scots* for adhering ſo firmly to the *Engliſh*; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with fire and ſword. 10.
27 *David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *Engliſh*. Invading *England*, when King *Edward* was at the ſiege of *Calice*, he was taken Priſoner by Q. *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windſor*; where he was Priſoner, for a while, with King *John* of *France*. Releaſed at laſt on ſuch conditions as beſt pleaſed the Conquerour. 29.
1371 28 *Robert* II. ſurnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by deſcent from the eldeſt Siſter of *David Bruce*, was extracted alſo from the antient Princes of *Wales* (as was ſaid before): reſtoring thereby the *Britiſh* blood to the Throne of *Scotland*.
1390 29 *Robert* III. Sonne of *Robert* the ſecond, called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own brother the Duke of *Albanie*, who had an aim at it for himſelf. 16.
1406 30 *James*, Son of *Robert* the third, taken priſoner by King *Henry* the fourth of *England*, as he was croſſing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practiſes of his Uncle. Reſtored unto his Countrey in the beginning of the reign of King *Henry* the ſixth, after 18 years abſence, he was at laſt moſt miſerably murdered by the Earl of *Athol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.
1448 31 *James* II. ſlain by the *Engliſh* at the Siege of *Roxborough* Caſtle. 24.
1462 32 *James* III. ſlain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

Scotland. 1491 33 *James* IV. maried *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the ſeventh, but at the ſoliciting of the *French*, (againſt the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the abſence of King *Henry* the eight) with 100000 men: but was met with by the Earl of *Surry* (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto *Flodden*; where he was ſlain, together with two Biſhops, twelve Earles, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 *James* V. ſon of *James* the fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time ſuch good correſpondencie with the *Engliſh*, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred againſt them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of *Weſt Marches*. The battels being ready to joyn, one S. *Oliver Sincleer* the Kings favorite, though otherwiſe of no great parentage, was by the Kings directions proclaimed *General*: which the *Scotiſh* Nobility took in ſuch indignation, that they threw down their weapons, and ſuffered themſelves to be taken priſoners; there being not one man ſlain on either ſide. The principal priſoners were the Earls of *Glencarn*, and *Caſſiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, with divers others: beſides many of the principal Gentry. 28.

1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten child of *James* the fifth, ſucceeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promiſed in mariage to King *Edward* the ſixth of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where maried to *Francis*, then *Daulphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the ſecond. After whoſe death, ſhe maried *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, eldeſt Son of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox*. Outed of her Dominions by a potent Faction, ſhe was compelled to flie into *England*; where after a tedious impriſonment, ſhe was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Caſtle in *Northamptonſhire*, and interred at *Peterburg*, Anno 1586.

1567 36 *James* VI. The Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, was crowned King in his Cradle alſo. He maried *Anne*, the Daughter of *Chriſtiern* the third, King of *Denmarke*; was choſe of the Order of the Garter, Ann. 1590. and ſucceeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, March 24. Ann. 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent foreſight of *Henry* the ſeventh, who having two Daughters, beſtowed the Eldeſt (contrary to the mind of his Councell) on the King of *Scots*, and the younger on the King of the *French*: that ſo, if his own Iſſue male ſhould fail, and that a Prince of another Nation muſt inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the leſſer Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which ſucceſſion of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecie of the fatall *Stone*, ſpoken of before, did receive accompliſhment. And ſo perhaps might that aſcribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Egelreds* time, which is this, Engliſhmen, *for that they wonneth them to* drunkenneſs, *to* treaſon, *and to* retchleſneſs *of Gods houſe, firſt by* Danes, *and then by* Normans, *and the third time by* Scots, *whom they holden leaſt worth of all, they ſhall be overcome. Then the world ſhall be unſtable, and ſo divers and variable, that the unſtableneſs of thoughts ſhall be betokned by many manner* diverſity *of Clothing*. For on this union of the Kingdoms, this prediction ſeems to have been accompliſhed; the circumſtances mentioned in the ſame ſo partly agreeing, and the *Scots* never ſubduing *England*, but by this bleſſed Victory. Unleſſe perhaps the Accompliſhment thereof be ſtill to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great defeat at *Banocks-bourn*, in which was ſlain 50000 *Engliſh*, as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing ſo terrible for a time, that an hundred of the *Engliſh* would flie from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* eſtimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 ſterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure ſtrangers to traffick: the Domain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Countrey in moſt places, barren; and many of the Subjects, thoſe eſpecially of the Out-Iſles, and the Weſtern parts, ſo extremely barbarous, that they add very ſmall improvement to the publick Treaſury.

And anſwerable to the ſhortneſs of their ſtanding Revenue, were their Forces alſo. For though the Countrey be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardſhip; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces ſeldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal ſooner, did diſband themſelves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to ſerve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them ſuch and ſo many of their *Vaſſals*, as the preſent ſervice did require: uſed to provide for themſelves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, proviſion of all ſorts, and all other neceſſaries; the King ſupplying them with nothing. Which being ſpent, they uſually diſbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reaſon, why the *Scots* in the time of hoſtility betwixt the Nations, made only ſudden and tumultuary incurſions into *England*; without performing any thing of ſpecial moment: and that they have not acted any thing elſewhere in the way of conqueſt; but only as Mercenaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the fourth, when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the eighth, being then in *France*) conſiſted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populoſity: few of thoſe men being armed

or

or trained up to ſervice; and therefore eaſily diſcomfited by a far leſſe Army. It's true, that in the year 1643 the *Scotiſh Covenanters* raiſed an Army conſiſting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, and 1000 Dragoons; with Armes, Artillery and Ammunition correſpondent to it: which was the gallanteſt Army, and the beſt appointed, that ever that nation did ſet out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained and payed, by the two Houſes of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 *l. per menſem*, and an advance of 100000 *l.* before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare neceſſaries of it; without any charge unto themſelves. And though the Army which they ſent into *England* above five years after, under *James* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferiour unto this in number, but far ſuperiour to it both in Horſe and Arms, and other neceſſary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the Horſe and Arms being ſuch as they had gotten out of *England*, in the former war. *Scotland.*

In point of reputation amongſt forain Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambaſſadors and Agents, had place in all General Councels, and Eccleſiaſtical Aſſemblies, before [thoſe of *Caſtile*: and by the *Statiſts* of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for abſolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only ſince the firſt years of King *Edward* the third, when they had quitted that ſubjection and vaſſallage to the Crown of *England*. For that antiently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonſtrated by theſe following Arguments. 1 By the Homages, and other ſervices, and duties, done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto thoſe of *England*: *Malcolm* the third doing Homage unto *William* the Conquerour; as *William* one of his Succeſſors, did to K. *Henry* the ſecond: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by ſome pretended) but for the very Crown it ſelf: *Kenneth* the third, being alſo one of thoſe eight Tributary or Vaſſal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interpoſing of King *Edward* the firſt, and the ſubmiſſion of the *Scots* to that interpoſing, in determining the controverſie of ſucceſſion betwixt *Bruce*, and *Baliol*: as in like caſe, *Philip* the *Fair* adjudged the title of *Artoys*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in queſtion betwixt the Lady *Maud*, and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the third, in the right of the ſaid Crown of *France*, determined of the controverſie betwixt *John* Earl of *Montford*, and *Charles* of *Blois*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 3ly, By the confeſſion and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Eſtates of *Scotland*, ſubſcribed by all their hands and ſeals in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the ſuperiority of the Kings of *England*, not only in regard of ſuch advantages as the ſword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Rol was treacherouſly delivered into the hands of the *Scots*, by *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, in the beginning of the reign of King *Edward* the third. 4ly, By the tacit conceſſion of the Kings themſelves, who in their Coins, Commiſſions, and publick Inſtruments, aſſume not to themſelves the title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is ſome ſuperiour Lord (King Paramount as we may cal him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgements and Arreſts of the Courts of *England*, not only in the times of King *Edward* the firſt, but in ſome times ſince. For when *William Wallis* a *Scotiſhman* by birth, and the beſt Souldier of that Countrey, was taken *Priſoner* and brought to *London*, he was adjudged to ſuffer death as a Traytor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgement, had he been a Priſoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the caſe of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom, in the ſame Kings reign. In like manner, in the time of King *Edward* the third, it was reſolved by the Court, in the Lord *Beaumonts* caſe, when it was objected that one of the Witneſſes was a *Scot*, and therefore as an *Alien* not to give his evidence; that his teſtimony was to be allowed of, becauſe the *Scots* in the Law of *England*, did not go for *Aliens*. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen *Elizabeths* reign, deſired a *Medietatem linguæ*, becauſe he was a *Scotchman*, and ſo an *Alien*; it was denied him by the Court, *becauſe the* Scots *were not reputed here as* Aliens, *but as* Subjects *rather*. So alſo, when *Robert Umfranville*, Lord of *Kyme*, was ſummoned to the Parliament of *England*, in the reign of King *Edward* the third, by the name of *Robert* Earl of *Angus*, (which is a dignity in *Scotland*); and after in a Writ againſt him was called only by his own name of *Umfranville*, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if *Scotland* had not been reputed to be under the Vaſſalage of the Kings of *England*. 6ly, and laſtly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my cuſtody) granted by King *Edward* the firſt, in the laſt year of his reign, to *Peter Dodge* of *Stopworth* in the County of *Cheſter*, one of the Anceſtors of my Mother: in which it is expreſſed, that the ſaid Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent ſervices, *encontre ſon grand Enemy et Rebel*, Baliol, *Roy d' Eſcoſſe et Vaſſal de* Angleterre; that is to ſay, againſt his great Enemy and Rebel *Baliol* King of *Scotland*, and Vaſſal of *England*. A thing ſo clear, that if King *James* had not been extremely tender of the honour of his native Countrey, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a *New invention*, in hammering the Caſe of the *Poſt-nati* for him; to make the *Scots* inheritable unto Lands in *England*. The acknowledgement and *Reviver* of their *old Subjection* would have ſerved his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable perſon of that Kingdom of *Scotland*, employed unto the Court in a buſineſſe of no mean conſequence to the peace and quiet of his Countrey: I found him ſo ſenſible of the inconveniences of their preſent Government, by reaſon of the Kings abſence, and the frequent diviſions and partialities of his Councell there; that he confeſſed that Nation could

Ireland. be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the *Engliſh* Empire; and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as *Ireland* was.

The principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. *Andrew*, inſtituted by *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, to incourage his Subjects in the war againſt King *Athelſtane* of *England*. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thiſtles, with the picture of St. *Andrew* appendant to it: The Motto, *Nemo me impunè laceſſit*. It took this name becauſe after the battle, *Hungus* and his Souldiers went all bare-foot to S. *Andrews*, and there vowed that they and their Poſterity would thenceforth uſe his Croſſe as their Enſign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whenſoever they took in hand any warlike enterpriſe.

2 But this Order being expired many Ages ſince, there is now no Order of Knighthood in it, (except *Knights Bachelers*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King *James*, Ann. 1622. for the planting of that Countrey by *Scotiſh* Colonies; in imitation of the order of Baronets in *England*, for the plantation of *Ulſter*. Hereditary, as that alſo is, but the Knights hereof diſtinguiſhed by a Ribband of *Orange-Tawnie*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Treſſure *counter-flowred*: Which Treſſure *counter flowred* was added to the Lyon by *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*: ſignifying (ſaith *Hector Boetius* one of their Hiſtorians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the *Scoteh* Lion ſhould be guarded by the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in *Scotland*, with
the Iſles of it.
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 12.
Univerſities two,
S. *Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is invironed on all ſides with the Ocean; parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. *Georges* Chanel. Situate on the Weſt of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggeſt Iſland of *Europe*, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 miles: and is ſeated under the 8th and 10th *Climates*; the longeſt day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland*, in the Iſle of *Britain*. But the generall name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latins* called *Hibernia*, by the *Greeks*, *Iernia*. And though ſome frame a wreſted *Etymologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spaniſh* Captain and ſome from *Irnaulph*, once a ſuppoſed Duke hereof; as others *ab Hyberno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which ſignifyeth in their own language a Weſtern land. And yet I muſt not pretermit the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more neer the name than moſt of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying the furtheſt Habitation: there being no Countrey known amongſt the Antients, which lay Weſt of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cæſarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was ſubdued by *Bartholanus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither: and laſt of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters; who muſt needs name this Iſland *Scotia*. But not to honour ſuch *fopperies* with a confutation, doubtleſly the firſt inhabitants of this Iſland came out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the nigheſt Countrey unto it, and ſo had a more ſpeedy waftage hither; Secondly, the antient Writers call this Iſland a *Britiſh Iſland*; and thirdly, *Tacitus* giveth us of this Countrey this verdict; *Solum, cœlumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum à Britannia differunt*; the Soil and Air, the habits and diſpoſition of the people, were not much unlike the *Britans*. For further evidence whereof, it was obſerved, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England*, by King *Edward* the firſt, that many of their Laws and Cuſtoms were thoſe of the *Iriſh*: which ſhews that they did both deſcend from the ſame Original. But then we muſt obſerve withall, that they were counted far more barbarous and ſavage by moſt antient Writers, than thoſe of *Britain* are deciphered at the firſt diſcovery: ſaid by *Strabo* to be man-eaters; accuſtomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the blood of thoſe whom they ſlew in fight. Nor were the women, though the ſofter and more tender Sex, free from ſuch wild and ſavage cuſtoms: it being a conſtant courſe amongſt them, when they were delivered of a man childe, to put ſome meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a ſword; wiſhing therewith it might not die but in the middeſt of Arms, and the heat of battel. Both Sexes uſed to trim themſelves with the Teeth of Fiſhes, white as the driven Snow, or the poliſhed Ivory; and therein placed the greateſt part of their pride and bravery.

Nor

Ireland.

Nor are the modern *Iriſh* much abhorrent from ſuch barbarous cuſtoms, as plainly ſhew from what Originall they deſcend; altered but litele by converſe with more civill Nations. Of naturall conſtitution generally ſtrong and nimble of body, haughty of heart, careleſs of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, conſtant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory: and in a word, *if they be bad, you ſhall no where find worſe; if they be good, you ſhall hardly meet with better.* The Diet, eſpecially of the *meer Iriſh*, is for the moſt part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with oat-flowre, milk, and beef-broth: eating fleſh many times without bread, which they digeſt with *Uſquebaugh*; and give their bread-corn to their horſes in ſtead of *Provender*. But more particularly, thoſe of the richer ſort in all parts, and of all ſorts thoſe which inhabit within the *Pale* (as they themſelves call it) and in ſuch places where the *Engliſh* Diſcipline hath been entertained; comformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparell: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the *wild Iriſh* of the poorer and inferiour ſort) moſt extremely barbarous; not behaving themſelves like *Chriſtians*, ſcarcely like men. All of them ſo tenacious of their antient cuſtoms, that neither power, nor reaſon, nor the ſenſe of the inconveniences which they ſuffer by it, can wean them to deſert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their uſe of *Ploughing*, not with ſuch geares or harneſs, as in other places; but by tying the hindmoſt horſes head to the tayl of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unſerviceable by the ſoon loſing of their tails; and withall is a courſe of ſo ſlow a diſpatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week, as a good Teem well harneſſed would performe in a day; yet no perſwaſion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtfull and ridiculous cuſtom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord *Deputy*, had damned it by *Act* of *Parliament*, and laid a penalty on ſuch as ſhould after uſe it: the people thought it ſuch a grievance, and ſo injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a *Pacification* of the preſent troubles, their *Agents* and *Commiſſioners* inſiſted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we ſhall hereafter meet with, in another place. Neer of kin to which, is a lazie cuſtom that they have of burning their ſtraw (rather then put themſelves to the pains to threſh it) by that means to part it from the corn. From which no reaſon can diſſwade them, nor perſwaſions win them. They have among them other cuſtomes as abſurd, though leſſe inconvenient: as placing a green buſh, on *May-day* before their doores, to make their kine yeeld the more milk; kneeling down to the *New Moon* as ſoon as they ſee it, deſiring her to leave them in as good health as ſhe found them; and many others of like nature.

They uſe a language of their own, but ſpoken alſo in the Weſt of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands; which though originally *Britiſh*, or a Dialect of it, by reaſon of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Eaſterlings* or *Ooſt-mans*, and *Engliſh-Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welch*, for ought I can learn.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt preached among them by S. *Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. *Martin* of *Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civill parts, and the *Engliſh* Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or naturall wild *Iriſh*, (and many of the better ſort of the Nation alſo) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own ſuperſtitious fancies, as in former times. And to ſay truth, it is no wonder that they ſhould; there being no care taken to inſtruct them in the Proteſtant Religion: either by tranſlating the Bible, or the *Engliſh Liturgie*, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*; but forcing them to come to Church to the *Engliſh* Service, which the people underſtand no more then they do the Maſs. By means whereof, the *Iriſh* are not only kept in continuall ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Proteſtant* Churches: but thoſe of *Rome* are furniſhed with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not underſtand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when theſe diſtempers are compoſed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Chriſtian* inſtruction, in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it ſelf is abundantly fruitfull, but naturally fitter for graſs and paſturage, then it is for tillage: as may be ſeen in ſuch places where the induſtry of man is aiding to the natural goodneſs of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Countrey is either over-grown with Woods, or encombred with vaſt Boggs and unwholeſom Mariſhes; yeelding neither profit nor pleaſure unto the Inhabitants. In ſome places, as in the County of *Armagh*, ſo rank and fertill; that the laying of any ſoil or compoſt on it, doth abate its fruitfulneſſe, and proves the worſt Husbandry that can be.

It hath been antiently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongſt whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apophthegm*: when offered many fair preferments to leave his Countrey, he returned this Anſwer, *It becomes not them to imbrace other ments goods, who for* Chriſts *ſake had forſaken their own.* Of no leſſe piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Rafe*, Archbiſhop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flouriſhed about the year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Iſland that (amongſt other privileges which it hath above other Iſlands) it foſtereth no venomous Serpent, and that no ſuch will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her ſelf we find her ſpeaking in the Poet.

Ireland.

Illa ego ſum Graiis *Glacialis* Hibernia *dicta;*
Cui Deus, & melior rerum naſcentium Origo,
Jus commune dedit cum Creta *altrice* Tonantis,
Angues ne noſtris diffundant ſibila in oris.

I am that Iſland which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Hibernia*, ycie-cold:
Secur'd by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother dear;
That poiſonous Snakes ſhould never here be bred,
Or dare to hiſs, or hurtfull venom ſpred.

The other miracles of this Iſland, are, 1 That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thruſt a piece of Wood, he ſhall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned into Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-ſtone: richly deſerved by him, if the tale be falſe, who did firſt report it. 2 That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at leaſt their Calves skins ſtuffed with ſtraw or Hay. It is ſaid alſo, that all the breed of this Country are of leſs ſize than they be in *England*, except Women and Greyhounds, and thoſe much bigger then with us.

As for the *Clergy* of this Countrey, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons*, in former times: ſome of their Biſhops being ſo poor, that they had no other Revenues then the Paſture of two Milch-beaſts. And ſo far had the Monaſteries and Religious houſes invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches rights; that of late times in the whole Province of *Connaught*, the whole ſtipend of the *Incumbent* was not above 40 ſhillings, in ſome places not above 16. So that the poor *Iriſh* muſt needs be better fed then taught: for *ad tenuitatem* Beneficiorum, *neceſſariò ſequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*; Poor Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Prieſts, ſaid *Panormitan* rightly. But this is remedied in part by his Sacred Majeſty King *CHARLES*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, who liberally (at the ſuit of the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*) reſtored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been veſted in the Crown. An action of moſt ſingular piety, and Princely bounty.

Principall Rivers of this Countrey, are, 1 The *Shannon* (the *Senas* of *Ptolemie*) which ariſing in the Mountains of *Letrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it paſſeth forwards; loſeth it ſelf, after a courſe of 200 miles (of which 60 navigable) in the Weſtern Ocean. 2 The *Liff*, by *Ptolemie* called *Libnius*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3 *Awiduffe*, or *Blackwater*, as the *Engliſh* call it. 4 *Sione*, ſuppoſed to be the *Medona* of the antient Writers. 5 The *Showre*. 6 The *Slanie*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue, out of the Canto of the mariage of the *Thames* and *Medway*, in the *Faierie Queen*.

There was the *Liffie* rowling down the lea,
The ſandie *Slane*, the ſtony *Aubrian*,
The ſpacious *Shenin* ſpreading like a ſea,
The pleaſant *Boyne*, the fiſhie-fruitfull *Banne*,
Swift *Awiduffe*, which of the *Engliſhman*
Is call'd *Blackwater*; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Slewlogheer* ſteep,
And *Mallo* mine, whoſe waves I whilom taught to weep.

There alſo was the wide-embayed *Mayre*,
The pleaſant *Bandon* crown'd with many wood;
The ſpreading *Lee*, that like an Iſland fair
Incloſeth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And baleſull *Oure*, late ſtain'd with *Engliſh* blood,
With many more, ——

So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the mariage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But beſides theſe Rivers, this Iſland is in moſt places well ſtored with Lakes, yeelding great plenty of Fiſh to the parts adjoyning. The principal of which, 1 *Lough-Erne*, containing 15 miles in breadth, and 30 miles in length; ſhaded with woods, and ſo repleniſhed with fiſh, that the Fiſhermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their nets. It hath alſo in it many Iſlands, one moſt remarkable for the ſtrange and horrid noiſes which are therein heard; called therefore by the Vulgar St. *Patricks Purgatory*. Almoſt as big as this is 2 the Lake of *Corbes*, which loſeth it ſelf in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 miles in length, and four in breadth; ſaid to have in it 30 Iſlets, abounding with Pine-trees. 3 *Lough-Foyle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolemie*. 4 *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well ſtored with Salmons, hath its firſt Originall. And beſides theſe and many others of leſſe note, there are ſaid to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far aſunder, and having an entercourſe of waters: but of ſo different a temper, that the

the Fish which are proper to the one (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar sorts) will not live in the other: but either dieth, or by some secret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought. *Ireland.*

It was divided antiently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it self; that is to say, 1 *Leinster*, 2 *Meth*, 3 *Ulster*, 4 *Connaught*, and 5 *Mounster*: but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinster*.

1 LEINSTER, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the East, the *Irish* Channel, (commonly called S. *Georges* Channel) by which parted from the Isle of *Great Britain*; on the West, the River *Newrie*, (*Neorus*, as the *Latines* call it) which divides it from *Mounster*; on the North, the Province of *Meth*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally then the rest of *Ireland*, because better cultivated and manured, as having been longest in the possession of the *English*: from whom a great part of the Inhabitants doe derive themselves, and for that reason more conformable to the civilities and habit of the *English* Nation. Well watered, besides a large Sea-coast, with many fair and pleasant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1 the *Barrow*, called in *Latine Birgus*; 2 the *Newrie*, 3 the *Showre*, and 4 the *Liffie*, (the *Libnius* of *Ptolemie*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth Counties of 1 *Dublin*, 2 *Kilkenny*, 3 *Caterlough*, 4 *Kildare*, 5 *Lease*, or Queens County, 6 *Ophalie*, or Kings County; and 7 *Weisbford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Castles, well fortified, and able to make good resistance against an Enemy; the *English* being forced to fortifie themselves in their Plantations with strong holds and fortresses, against the incursions of the Natives.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Dublin*, supposed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolemie*; by the *Irish* called *Balacleigh*, because being seated in a fennie and moorish soil, it was built on piles, as the word doth signifie in that language. Situate at or neer the mouth of the River *Liffe*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbred with heaps of Sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Island, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbishops See, and an University, besides the benefit redounding from the Courts of Justice. In those respects well-fortified against all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publique. The principal of which, are the Castle, wherein the Lord Deputy resideth, built by *Henry Loandres* once Archbishop here; a College founded by Queen *Elizabeth*, to the honor, and by the name of the blessed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to S. *Patrick*, the Apostle of the *Irish* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Christ Church*; besides thirteen others destinated to Parochial meetings. Being destroyed almost to nothing in the *Danish wars*, it was re-edified by *Harald*, surnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Masters of most parts of the Island; and after the subjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colonie of *Bristol* men. 2 *Weisbford* or *Wexford*, the *Menapia* of *Ptolemie*, situate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, supposed to be the *Modona* of the same Author: the first of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colonie of *English* 3 *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newre*, the chief Seat of the Bishop of *Osserie*, and the fairest Town of all the Inlands: so called, *quasi Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monastery of *Canicus*, a man of great renown for piety, in these parts of the Countrey. 4 *Kildare*, an In-land Town also, and a Bishops See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the antient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honored with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 8th, as a man of so unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adversaries closed their charge against him with this expression; *Finally, all* Ireland *cannot rule this Earl*; the King replyed, that *then this Earl should rule all* Ireland: and so for his Jests sake made him *Lord Deputy* of the Kingdom. 5 *Resse*, once populous, well traded, and of large Circumference, now a ruine only; nothing remaining but the Wals, which were built by *Isabell*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow* Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Island for King *Henry* the second. 6 *Philips Town*, the principal of the County of *Ophalie*, or Kings County; so called in honor of King *Philip*; as 7 *Marieburg*, the chief of *Lease*, or the Queens County, was in honor of Queen *Mary*. 8 *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified against the incursion of the *Irish*, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9 *Caterlogh*, commonly, but corruptly *Carlough*, a Town of great strength, and the chief of that County. 10 *Rheban*, not otherwise of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolemie*.

2 METH, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; because situate in the midst of the Island, hath on the South *Leinster*; on the West, *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulster*; on the East, the *Irish* Sea, or S. *Georges* Channel. A small, but rich and pleasant Province: well stocked with people, and stored with all things necessary for their sustentation; and for a sweet and wholesom air, not inferiour to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to say, 1 *East Meth*, 2 *West-Meth*, and 3 *Long ford*; containing 13 Towns of note, and 44 Castles of good esteem. By reason of which strength, it is called by some writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of most consequence herein, are 1 *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *East-Meth*, the antient Baronie of the *Lacies*; possessed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greatest part of *Ulster*. 2 *Tredah*, more properly *Droghedah*, situate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulster*, to which Province belongs so much of the Town as lieth on the North side of that River: a very fair and populous City, as well by Art as Nature very strongly fortified, and furnished with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Droghedah* from the Bridge there built upon the River, for the conveniency of passage (as the word signifieth in that Language) and therefore called *Pontana* by some *Latine* writers. 3 *Mulinga*, the

Ireland. the chief Town of *West-Meth*. 4 *Delvin*, in the same County also, the Barony of the *Nagents*, an antient Family in this tract. 5 *Longford*, of most note in the County so named, but not else observable.

As for the fortunes of this Province (for *Leinster* since the first Conquest of it, hath been inseparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was first granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the second, to *Hugh Lacy*, a man of great merit and imployment in the Conquest of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter*, his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Neeces of this *Walter* by his Son *Gilbert*, one moity hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*, and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the fourth: and the other moity to the *Verduns*, by whom dispersed and scattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the 8th, in whose reign it was divided into *East-Meth*, and *West Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3 ULSTER, by the *Latines* called *Ultonia*, is the largest Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South, with *Meth*, and *Connaught*; on the West, with the vast *Irish* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolemie* gives the name of *Hyperborean*; and on the East, with S. *Georges* Channel. A Countrey fruitful of it self, but in most places formerly over-grown with woods, and drowned in Marishes and great bogs, by the natural slothfulness of the people: made more responsal to the husbandman both for corn, and pasturage, since the late Plantation of the *British*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1 *Louth*, 2 *Cavon*, 3 *Fermanath*, 4 *Down*, 5 *Monaghan*, 6 *Armagh*, 7 *Colrane*, 8 *Tirconnel*, 9 *Tir-Oen*, and 10 *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 30 Castles for the defence of the Countrey, and keeping under the wild *Irish*; wilder and more untractable in these Northern parts, than the rest of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and spacious Sea, on three sides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, besides the Rivers of 1 *Boyne*, called in *Latine Boanda*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2 the *Bann*, 3 *Moandus*, and 4 the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of most importance it, 1 *Armagh*, on or neer the River *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County so called, and the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An antient City, but so miserably defaced by fire in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion, that it can scarse preserve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2 *Carlingford*, and 3 *Dundalk*, both situate on the Sea side, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4 *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*, more properly *Rock Fergus*, (and in that sense called *Carig-Fergus* by the *Irish*) so called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Irish Scots*, who there suffered Shipwrack. Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vinderius* of *Ptolemie*) which giveth it both a safe and commodious Port; as well by natural situation, as the works of Art, very strongly fortified; by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Cantire*, from which little distant. 5 *London-Derry*, a Colonie of the *Londoners*, best built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6 *Dungannon*, the principal seat and residence in former times, of the great *Oneales*. 7 *Dunfall*, the principal of *Tir-Connell*. 8 *Robogh*, a small Village at present, but antiently a Bishops See: fit to be mentioned in this place in regard it still preserveth some footsteps of the old *Robogdii*, an *Irish* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolemie* in this tract, where they gave name unto the promontory by him called *Robogdium*, now the *Faire-Fore-land*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Camden*.

This, as it is the largest Province of all this Kingdom, so was it with most difficulty subjected to the Crown of *England*, and reduced to good order and civility. First conquered by *John Curcie* a valiant *Englishman*, in the reign of King *Henry* the second, by whom created Earl of *Ulster*. But being maligned for his eminent vertues, and after proscribed by King *John*, this Title and Estate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacie*, the Lord and Conqueror of *Meth*, whom before we spake of. By an Heir General of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the mariage of *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the last Earl of that Family, it came to *Leonel* Duke of *Clarence*, the second Son (then living) of King *Edward* the third; as by his Daughter, *Philip* to the Earls of *March*, from them by the like mariage to the house of *York*, and in the person of King *Edward* the 4th, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *English*, in the whole course of their Government, especially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaster*, it was cantoned into many Estates and Principalities, by the great Lords of the natural *Irish*, (who had born too great sway here in the former times): and so estranged from the civilities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if it had never been in subjection to it. In which estate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more power or profit, than the great ones of the Countrey were pleased to give them): till the Rebellion first, and afterwards the vanquishment of *Hugh Oneal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full subjection to the *English* government, of which more hereafter.

4 CONNAUGHT, in *Latine* called *Connacia*; by the *Irish*, *Connaght*, is bounded on the North, with *Ulster*; on the West, with the main Ocean; on the South, with *Munster*, from which parted by the River *Shanon*; and on the East, with *Meth*, and some part of *Leinster*. So called from the *Nagnatæ*, an old *Irish* Nation, or from *Nagnata* a Port-town; both placed by *Ptolemie* in this tract. The soil of the same temper with that of *Ulster*; as woody and as full of bogs till these later times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniencies.

It hath been also called by our *English* Writers, the County of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Glocester*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the first: and is divided at the present, into these five Shires, that is to say, 1 *Letrim*, 2 *Roscommon*, 3 *Maio*, 4 *Slego*,

4 *Slego*, and 5 *Galloway* and *Twomond*. In which are comprehended but ſix Towns of any conſequence, for commerce and traffick, (an argument of the imperfect plantation of it by the *Engliſh* Conquerors); and about 24 Caſtles, for defence of the Countrey, of old erection, beſides ſuch Fortreſſes as have been raiſed occaſionally in theſe later troubles.

Places of moſt note and obſervation, 1 *Toam*, an Archbiſhops See. 2 *Athenry*, an antient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of moſt renown for being the Baronie of *John de Bermingham*, a noble *Engliſhman*, who had great poſſeſſions in this tract. 3 *Letrim*, the chief Town of the County ſo named, neighbored by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *Engliſh*, in *Tir-Oens* rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shenin* or *Shanon*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 4 *Slego*, and 5 *Roſcommon*, the chief Town of their ſeveral Counties. 6 *Athlone*, a peece of great ſtrength, and the Key of *Connaught*. 7 *Twomond*, not otherwiſe much obſervable, but for giving the title of an Earl to the noble Family of *O-Brian*, (deſcended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honor by King *Henry* the 8th. 8 *Galloway* the principal of this Province, a Biſhops See, and the third City of the Kingdom for beauty and bigneſs. Situate neer the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbes*, in the Weſtern Ocean, defended on that ſide from the turn of the Sea, and the fear of invaſions, by the interpoſition of ſome Iſlands (called the Iſles of *Arran*) very ſtrongly fortified. A noted Emporie, and lately of ſo great fame with forein Merchants, that an out-landiſh Merchant meeting with an *Iriſhman*, demanded *in what part of* Galloway, Ireland *ſtood*; as if *Galloway* had been the name of the Iſland, and *Ireland* only the name of ſome Town.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, as the reſt of thoſe Provinces; the laſt King whereof was *Rodorick*, ſurnamed the *Great*, who having a great hand over the reſt of the Roytelets, entituled himſelf ſole Monarch or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to ſubmit himſelf to King *Henry* the ſecond, his Countrey at the laſt was brought into ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloceſter*, *William de Bermingham*, and other noble Adventurers of the *Engliſh* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greateſt part of the ſpoyl, together with the title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was ſhewn. Cantoned again amongſt the *Iriſh* and degenerate *Engliſh*, as *Ulſter* was, by the ſupine neglect of the Kings of *England*: till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the Chiefs of the *Iriſh* Nation in the ſame cauſe with him, involved them alſo conſequently in the ſame deſtruction.

5 MOUNSTER, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North, with *Connaught*; on the Eaſt, with *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* or Weſtern Ocean; and on the South, with the *Vergivian*. By the natural *Iriſh* it is called *Mown*, whence the *Engliſh* had the name of *Mounſter*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the ſoyl, yeelds not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into ſix Counties, *viz.* 1 *Limerick*, 2 *Waterford*, 3 *Cork*, 4 *Deſmond*, 5 *Kerry*, and 6 *Tipperarie*; which two laſt antiently enjoyed all the rights of a County Palatine: And in theſe Shires are comprehended (beſides many ſafe Stations and Rodes for Shipping) 24 Towns of note and trading, and 66 Caſtles of old erection.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1 *Coſſiles*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbiſhops See, advanced unto that honor by Pope *Eugenius* the third, about the year 1150. 2 *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in eſtimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Iſland compaſſed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Emporie, and a Biſhops See; diſtant from the main Ocean about 60 miles, but ſo accommodated by the River, that Ships of burden come up cloſe to the very wals. The Caſtle and the Bridge peeces of great both ſtrength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the ſituation. 3 *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperarie*, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 4 *Holy Croſs*, in the ſame County alſo, once flouriſhing by reaſon of the great reſort of Pilgrims, to ſee & worſhip there a peece of the holy Croſs, as it was ſuppoſed: which ſuppoſition as it drew much wealth unto the Town, ſo it obtained the rights of a County *Palatine* for the County alſo. 5 *Thurles*, in the ſame County, which gives the title of a Vicount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not elſe obſervable. 6 *Waterford*, on the River *Showre*, a well traded Port, a Biſhops See, and the ſecond City of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *Engliſh* ſince the conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that cauſe endowed with many ample priviledges. Firſt built by ſome *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the moſt barren parts and moſt foggy air of all the Country, yet they made choyce of ſuch a ſafe and commodious ſite for the uſe of ſhipping, that of a neſt of Pirats it was eftſoons made a Receipt for Merchants, and ſuddenly grew up to great wealth and power. 6 *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principal of that County, and a Biſhops See: well walled, and fitted with a very commodious Haven; conſiſting chiefly of one ſtreet reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and induſtrious people. 7 *Dunk-Eran*, an old Epiſcopal See, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Ivernia* of *Ptolemie*, but not elſe obſervable. 8 *Kinſale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir Oens* Rebellion by a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, under the command of *Don John de Aquilar*: but ſoon recovered (after the deſeat of that Grand Rebel neer the wals hereof) by the valour and indefatigable induſtry of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9 *Baltimore*, 10 *Youghall*, and 11 *Bere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of ſafe Roads or convenient Havens. 12 *Leſmore*, of old a Biſhops See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it ſtandeth. Nothing in point of ſtory ſingular which concerns this Province; but that it was ſo carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to

the

Ireland.

the *Deputy* himſelf) called the *Lord Preſident* of *Mounſter*: by whoſe vigilancy there have hapned fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Iſland.

The antient Inhabitants of this Iſland, being originally *Britans* (as before is ſaid) were in the time of *Ptolemie*, diſtinguiſhed into the Nations of *Rhobognii*, *Darnii*, *Voluntii*, *Venicnii*, and *Erdini*, poſſeſſing the Northern parts, now *Ulſter*, the *Auteri*, *Gangani*, and *Nagnatæ*, inhabiting *Connaught*: the *Velibori*, *Uterni*, *Vodii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounſter*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinſter*. Principal Cities of the which, were, *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolemie* honored with the title of *Urbs inſignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolicum*, *Laberus*, *Ivernis*, &c. not eaſily diſcernible by what means we may call them now: this Countrey never being ſo happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Maſters of *Civility* and good Letters in the Weſt of *Europe*: and by that means, the actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and ſilence. Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be ſeated here, and from hence firſt to take poſſeſſion of the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſles, next of the Weſtern part of *Britain* on the North of *Solway*. Afterwards ſome of the *Saxon* Monarchs caſt their eyes upon it, and made themſelves maſters of *Dublin*, and ſome other places; but being incumbred with the *Danes* could not hold them long: being hardly able to defend their own againſt that people. The next that undertook the conqueſt, were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all paſſing in the Chronicles of that time, under the name of *Norwegians*: who firſt only ſcowred along the Coaſts in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakneſs of the Iſland, divided amongſt many petit and inconſiderable Princes, they made an abſolute conqueſt of it under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, whom they elected for their King: ſoon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the only *Iriſh* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King, by name *Omo-Gaghlon*, had a daughter of renowned beauty, whom *Turgeſius* demanded of her Father to ſerve his luſts: and he ſeeming willing to condeſcend to the motion, as it honored by it, made anſwer, That beſides his Daughter, he had at his diſpoſing many others of more exquiſite beauties, which ſhould all be ready at command. *Turgeſius* ſwallowing this bait, deſired him with all ſpeed to effect this meeting. But the King of *Meth* attiring in the habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durſt for the common liberty adventure their ſeveral lives; conducted them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber. And they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modeſty ſake he had in him, he had commanded all his attendants to avoid the room) aſſaulted him, now ready for, and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Methian* King had by this time, acquainted divers of the better ſort with his plot; all which upon a ſign given, ruſh into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Roytelets* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the year 1172. in which *Dermot Mac Morogh* King of *Leinſter*, having forced the Wife of *Maurice O Rock* King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for ſuccour. To this Petition, *Henry* the ſecond then King, condeſcended; ſending him aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, ſurnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who reſtored King *Dirmot*, and brought a great part of the Iſland under the *Engliſh* ſubjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the firſt who was entituled *Lord of Ireland*; which ſtile was granted him by Pope *Urban* the third, who for the ornament of his royalty, ſent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: and when *Tir-Oen* ſtiled him *Defender of the Iriſh Liberty*, he was by *Clement* the 8th honored with the like plume. But here we are to underſtand, that though the Kings of *England* uſed no other title then *Lords of Ireland*; yet were they Kings thereof in effect and power, *Lords Paramount*, as we uſe to ſay. And though themſelves retained only the name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *Engliſh* Subjects, the honorable, but invidious title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this title of *Lords*, till the year 1542; in which *Henry* the 8th, in an *Iriſh Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a name more ſacred, and repleat with Majeſty, than that of *Lord*: at which time alſo he was declared to be the *Supreme Head* under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended juriſdiction of all forein Powers, eſpecially the uſurped autority of the Pope of *Rome* renounced by Law, though ſtill acknowledged by too many of this ſuperſtitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Countrey, ſince the firſt Conqueſt by the *Engliſh*, hath been moſt commonly by one Supreme Officer, who is ſometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*, moſt generally the *Lord Deputy* of *Ireland*; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater power, or comes nearer the Majeſty of a King in his Train and State. For his aſſiſtance he hath a Privy Councel attending on him, though reſident for the moſt part at *Dublin*: and in emergencies, or caſes of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the ſtanding Rule of all civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *Engliſh* Parliaments. For in the reign of King *Henry* the 7th, Sir *Edward Poynings*, then *Lord Deputy*, cauſed an Act to paſs in the *Iriſh* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and ſtand in force as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which foundation they have raiſed many *Superſtructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, ſummoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment: in which, by an other Statute made in the time of the ſaid *Poynings*, the people are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were firſt tranſmitted to the Court of *England* to be conſidered of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the Houſes of the *Iriſh* Parliaments. Which Laws commonly called *Poynings Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongſt them; though the laſt much ſtomacked and repined at; not only as a badge of their Subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb or Martingil to hold them in.

Yet

Yet notwithſtanding theſe goods *Laws*, and the ample power of their Commiſſion, the Lord Deputies could never abſolutely ſubdue the Iſland, or bring the people to any civil courſe of life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy curſe on all their poſterity, if ever they ſhould ſow corn, build houſes, or learn the *Engliſh* tongue. To this indiſpoſition of the *Iriſh* themſelves, let us adde the defects of the Kings of *England*, and *Iriſh* Deputies, in matters of civil policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy diſcourſe of this Subject. I will only glean a few of them. Firſt then ſaith he, a *barbarous* Countrey is like a field over-grown with weeds, which muſt firſt be well broken with the *Plough*, and then immediatly *ſown* with good and profitable ſeed: ſo muſt a wilde and uncivil people, be firſt broken and ploughed up by war, and then preſently *ſown* with the ſeed of *good Laws* and diſcipline; leſt the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the firſt defect in our *Engliſh* Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomachs and pride of this people, though either civil or forrein wars perhaps occaſioned this neglect: and alſo the *Iriſh* Deputies, who at ſuch times as the people upon a ſmall diſcomfiture, were creſt-faln, neglected the ſo keeping of them by ſeverity of diſcipline. The ſecond overſight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave ſuch large poſſeſſions and *regalities* unto the firſt Conquerors, that the people knew no Autority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of *England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Iriſhrie*, but to ſome particular Families and Provinces only: inſomuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of *England*, that is to ſay, *O Neal* in *Ulſter*, *O Connohor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Morrough* in *Lemſter*, *O Malaghlin* in *Meth*, *O Brian* in *Twomond*; known by the name of *Quinque Sanguines* in ſome old Records. By means whereof the reſt of the people being in the condition of *Out-laws*, or at the beſt of *Aliens*, had no incouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themſelves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies* or Lords *Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholeſom Laws againſt the barbarous cuſtoms of the Common people, and the mercileſs oppreſſions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terror, not for reformation. Fifthly, adde unto theſe (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of *England* in the choyce of their *Deputies*: ſometimes conferring that high Office as a Court-preferment, without Relation unto the merits of the perſon; and ſometimes ſending men of weak or broken fortunes, who attended more their own profit than their Maſters ſervice, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. Sixthly, And yet beſides theſe Errors of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themſelves: who building all their Forts and Caſtles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Faſtneſſes to the natural *Iriſh*; the ſtrength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occaſions: but ſerved too fitly to continue them in their antient *Barbariſm*.

Ireland.

In theſe terms of wildneſs and non-ſubjection ſtood *Ireland*, till the later end of Queen *Elizabeths* reign; at what time the rebellion of *Hugh O Neal* Earl of *Tir Oen* had engaged almoſt all the *Iriſhrie* in that deſperate action: which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his partizans, not only cruſhed the overmuch powerableneſs of the *Iriſh* Nobility; but made the final and full conqueſt of the whole Nation. So true it is, that *Every Rebellion when it is ſuppreſt, doth make the Prince ſtronger, and the Subjects weaker*. *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies, and left the *ſowing* of it unto her ſucceſſor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skilful *Seedſman*. 1 Then there was an ἀμνηστία or *Act* of *Oblivion* made, whereby all the offences againſt the Crown were remitted, if by ſuch a limited day the people would ſue out their *Pardons*, and by the ſame Act, all the *Iriſhrie* were manumitted from the ſervitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate *protection*. 2ly, The whole Kingdom was divided into *Shires* and *Judges itinerant* appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed that the exactions of the Lords are laid aſide, the behaviour of the people narrowly looked into, the paſſages before unknown unto our Souldiers, are laid open by our *Vnder-Sheriffs* and Bayliffs; and the common people ſeeing the benefit and ſecurity they enjoy by the *Engliſh* Laws, and loth to plead always by an *Interpreter*, begin to ſet their children to School, for the learning of the *Engliſh* tongue. 3ly, The *Iriſh* were not rooted out, as in the firſt plantation in *Lemſter*, and the *Engliſh* only eſtated in their rooms; but were only removed from the woods, bogs, and mountains, into the plain and open countrey; that being like *wild trees* tranſplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And 4ly, whereas there was but one *Freeholder* in a whole Countrey, which was the Lord himſelf, the reſt holding in villenage, and being ſubject to the Lords immeaſurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build or plant; now the *Lords eſtate* was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himſelf, which was ſtill left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenant*, who had eſtates made in their poſſeſſions, according to the Common Law of *England*, paying in ſtead of uncertain *Iriſh* taxations, certain *Engliſh* rents: whereby the people have ſince ſet their minds upon repairing their houſes, and manuring their lands, to the great increaſe of the private and publick *revenue*.

But that which moſt advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a ſetled and civil Government, and rooted it in a ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone*, & *Tirconnel*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great men of the North, poſſeſſed of large territories and great juriſdictions. Who being both uncapable of Lyalty, and impatient of ſeeing the Kings *Judges*, *Juſtices*, and other Miniſters of State, to hold their *Seſſions*, and execute their Commiſſions of *Oyer* and *Terminer*, within the parts where they commanded: without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conſcience, forſook the Countrey, and left their whole eſtates to the Kings diſpoſing. By whoſe directions, their Lands were ſeized upon and ſold to ſeveral Purchaſers, the City

of

Ireland.

ot *London* infeoffed in a great part of them, a great plantation made in *Ulster* of *Engliſh*, *Welch*, and *Scots*, by the united name of a *Britiſh Plantation*; and a new Order of Knights *Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England* for raiſing money to advance and indear the work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the *Engliſh*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned ſo great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not eaſily brook) and the uniting of both people in the bonds of amity: the *Iriſh* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *Engliſh* as his old Maſter, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howſoever, ſo great a part of the Countrey (and that which heretofore was the neſt of the *Rebels*) being thus diſpoſed of, it came to paſs, that *Ireland*, which before ſerved only as a *grave* to *bury* our beſt men, and a *gulf* to ſwallow our greateſt treaſures; being governed neither as a Countrey *Free*, nor conquer'd: was brought in ſome hope, by the prudence and policy of her laſt Kings, and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Commonwealth*; civil in it ſelf, profitable to the Prince, and a good ſtrength to the *Britiſh* Empire. For to ſuch Order it was reduced, in a little time, that the *wayfaring* men might travel without danger, the *ploughman* walk without fear, the laws adminiſtred in every place alike, the men drawn unto Villages, the woods and faſtneſſes left to beaſts; and all reduced to that civility, as our fathers never ſaw, nor could we well ſample out of antient Hiſtories.

The *revenues* of this Kingdom are ſaid by *Walſingham*, in the time of *Edward* the 3d, to have been yearly 40000 pounds; but his ſucceſſors, till of late, have ſcarce got ſo much as the keeping of it coſt them: King *Richard* the ſecond being by the ſame *Walſingham* reported to have ſpent 30000 marks out of his own purſe, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Countrey were ſo profitable to *Edward* the third, or no, I determine not, though I find good reaſons to perſwade me, that *Walſingham* was not well acquainted with the ſtate of that *Exchequer*. But ſure I am that the Revenues of the Crown are more than double what they were in the ſaid Kings reign, and more duly paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the *Cuſtomhouſe* amounting to 30000 *per Annum*, in the laſt year of King *James* his reign. Not to ſay any thing of the great improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, becauſe they fell together with him.

The ſtrength of this Kingdom conſiſteth partly in the ſituation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Caſtles firſt built and fortified by the *Engliſh* Planters; and partly in a ſtanding Army continually kept up by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and intereſts againſt the Rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raiſe both of Horſe and Foot, could never be conjectured at till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually poſſeſſed only of thoſe four Counties which they called the *Pale*, that is to ſay, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Louth*, *Kildare*, and *Meth* (which laſt hath ſince the time of King *Henry* the 8th been ſubdivided into three) were not able to raiſe any great power out of that Eſtate, but were forced to ſend Souldiers out of *England* (as occaſion was) to preſerve their Soveraignty in *Ireland*. The greateſt Levie which I read of, was that of 1500 *Iriſh*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry* the fifth, then being at the ſiege of *Harflew* in *Normandie*. And on the other ſide, the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, and degenerate *Engliſh*, being divided into factions amongſt themſelves, and never joyned in any one principle of common intereſt; were more inconſiderable, than the weak but united forces of the Kings of *England*. And though moſt of them at the laſt, were drawn into a confederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his rebellion: yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 men; and thoſe not well appointed neither. So that the beſt eſtimate which can be made of the forces of *Ireland*, muſt be meaſured by the Armies raiſed in the late Rebellion, when the *Iriſhrie* had both time, and leiſure, to get themſelves ſome reputation in the world, and make proviſion for a War. In proſecution of which, he who conſiders the many Armies they have raiſed, ſince their firſt muſtering under the command of Sir *Phelim O Neal*; the many defeats which have been given them, and thoſe as many new recruits after each defeat; all of them raiſed out of the bodies of their own people, without ſupply from other Countries (beſides ſuch as have ſerved againſt them for the King): muſt needs conclude that they want not men enough for ſervice; nor ſkill nor courage to attempt the moſt difficult enterpriſes.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harpe *Or*, ſtringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to ſhew himſelf the firſt abſolute King of *Ireland*) firſt cauſed to be marſhalled with the Royal Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckoned in *Ireland* at, and ſince the *Reformation*,

Archbiſhops 4 Biſhops 19

One Univerſity, *Viz.*

Dublin.

The

The LESSER ISLANDS.

AND now we come at laſt to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, diſperſed in ſeveral parts of the *Britiſh* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1 The *Orcades*, 2 *Schetland*, 3 The *Hebrides*, 4 *Man*, 5 *Angleſey*, 6 The Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 7 The *Sorlinges* or Iſles of *Silly*, 8 *Wight*, 9 *Thanet*, 10 *Sunderland*, 11 *Holy Iſland*.

I. The ORCADES or Iſles of *Orkney* are in number 32, ſituate over againſt *Cathneſs*, the moſt Northern Countrey of all *Scotland*; and ſeparate from one another by ſome narrow Straights. The ſoil indifferently fruitful, exceedingly well ſtored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentiful in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans: but deſtitute of Wheat, and unfurniſhed both of woods and trees. But their chief commodity is their Fiſh, which the inhabitants catch upon the coaſts in great abundance. Thoſe of moſt note in all the cluſter, are, 1 *Heth*, conceived to be the *Ocetis* of *Ptolemie*: as 2 *Fair Iſle*, on good reaſon thought to be the *Dumna* of *Plinie*; the chief Town of it being ſtill called by the name of *Dumo*. 3 *Hey*, taken or miſtaken for the *Dumna* of *Plinie*, but not elſe obſervable. 4 *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles, in breadth, where it is broadeſt, ſix. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honored with a Biſhops See, and ſtrengthened with two Caſtles. This Iſland is well ſtored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day by the inhabitants called *Mainland*.

The people of theſe Iſles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no drunkards; *bibaciſſimi ſunt incolæ, nunquam tamen inebriantur*. They uſe the *Gothiſh* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whoſe poſſeſſion they once were; and of whoſe qualities they ſtill retain ſome ſmack. The Iſles themſelves in the time of *Solinus* were not inhabited, baing then overgrown with ruſhes; (now in a meaſure, populous and fertile, as before was ſaid) and were firſt diſcovered by *Julius Agricola*, the firſt that ever ſailed about *Britain*. In later times they were poſſeſſed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the year 1266; when *Magnus* King of *Norwey* ſurrendred them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, which ſurrendry ſome of the ſucceeding Kings did afterwards ratifie: the claim hereto being finally relinquiſhed by *Chriſtiern* the firſt, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, on the marriage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James* the third, An. 1474. ſome money being added to make good the contract, without which the *Danes* would not forgoe their pretenſions to them.

II. Two days ſayling North of theſe *Orcades*, lyeth SCHETLAND, an Iſland belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*: and is by many learned men, upon very good reaſons, ſuppoſed to be the *Thule* of the Antients. For firſt it ſtandeth in the 63 degree of *latitude*, in which *Ptolemie* placed *Thule*. 2ly, It lieth oppoſite to *Bergen* in *Norwey*; againſt which *Pomponius Mela* hath ſeated it. And 3ly, *Caſper Peucerus* hath obſerved, that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylenſell*; a name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couched. That *Iſe-land* was not *Thule* (as moſt ſay) we ſhall ſhew you when we come to *Norwey*, and the Northern Iſlands. Here we adde only, that the Antients did report many ſtrange things of it, and ſome of them beyond all belief. *Plinie* affirming that they had no day here for all the winter (*nulli per brumam dies*, as his own words are): with whom agree *Solinus* and many others, as to that particular. *Iſidore* addes (*Origen.* lib. 14. c. 6.) *nullum ultra eam diem eſſe*, that beyond this Iſle there was no day in any place; as if here had been the end of the world and nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Iſle there was no diſtinction of Earth, Air, and Water: ἀλλὰ σύγκριμά τι ἐκ τούτων, but a confuſed mixture of all together, like the primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reaſon of which ſtrange reports, was the audaciouſneſs of thoſe who had ſeen the Iſland, and thought that whatſoever they ſaid of it would not be diſproved, becauſe of the remoteneſs of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciouſly ſpoken was that of *Syneſius*, a right learned Prelat, Ἡ Θόλη δέδοται τοῖς διαπλέουσιν αὐτὴν ἀνευθύνως καὶ ἀνελέγκτως ψεύδεσθαι. *Thule* (ſaith he) gave thoſe who had ſailed unto it, the opportunity of lying without control. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers have made too much uſe of in theſe laſt times alſo.

III. The HEBRIDES, HEBUDAE, or *Weſtern Iſlands*, ſituate on the Weſt of *Scotland*, are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1 *Ella*, 24 miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattle, and herds of Deer. 2 *Jona*, famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scotiſh* Kings; whoſe chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Biſhops See, called hence *Sodorenſis*; his juriſdiction comprehending theſe Iſlands with the Iſle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th, An. 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the moſt part in the Iſle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleaſant part of his *Dioceſe*; till the conqueſt of it by the *Engliſh*; at what time thoſe of the *Weſtern Iſlands*, withdrew themſelves from his obedience, and had a Biſhop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sodorenſes*; but at laſt this took the name of *Inſulanus*, Biſhop of the Iſles, which he ſtill retains. 3 *Mela*, by *Ptolemie* called *Maleos*, (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good mines of Lead and Copper; 25 miles more in compaſs than that of *Ila*. 4 *Leunes*, or *Leviſſa*, the largeſt of all the *Hebrides*, ſaid to be 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth, the more Weſtern of the two *Ebudaes* ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*: the other being now called 5 *Skye*, famous for multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6 *Racline*, the *Recina* of *Ptolemie*, the ſmalleſt of the *Hebrides*, and moſt neer to *Ireland*. The reſt of leſs note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at the preſent, I forbear to name: ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, others ſcarſe having graſs enough to hide their bareneſs. The people of them all, as well in language as behaviour, reſemble

Man. semble the *wild-Iriſh*, and are called *Redſhanks*: a people, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all ſhew of Civility; ſuch as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Diſcipline. *Legum ſeveritate, & judiciorum metu, ſe alligari non patiuntur*, ſaith judicious *Camden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norwey*, and King *Alexander* the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the ſame time alſo.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton Frith*, lieth the Iſle of *Rothſay* (now called *Buthe*) which gives the title of a Duke to the *Prince* of *Scotland*: and the Iſle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl, to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. MAN is ſituate juſt over againſt the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is diſtant 25 miles; and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*, becauſe it foſtered venemous Serpents brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolemie* it is called *Monœda*, or the further *Mona*, to difference it from that which we call *Angleſey*; by *Plinie*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Oroſius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas* an old *Britiſh* Writer. The *Welch* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *Engliſh Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in ſome places. The people hate theft, and begging; and uſe a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Iriſh* tongues. The ſoyl is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they uſe to ſupply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it ſelf, yet queſtionleſs the *Weſtern Iſles*, which are a member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke* late Biſhop of this Iſland, in a letter to Mr. *Camden*, at ſuch time as he was compoſing his moſt excellent *Britannia*. *Our Iſland* (ſaith he) *for cattel, for fiſh, and for corn, hath not only ſufficient for it ſelf, but ſendeth alſo good ſtore into other Countries*: Now what Countries ſhould need this ſupply (*England* and *Ireland* being aforehand with ſuch proviſion) except *Scotland*, or ſome members thereof, I ſee not.

Venerable Bede numbred in it 300 Families, and now it is furniſhed with 17 Pariſh Churches. The chief Towns are, 1 *Balacuri*, and 2 *Ruſſin*, or *Caſtle-Town*, the ſeat of a Biſhop, who though he be under the Archbiſhop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *Engliſh* Parliament. In this Iſland is the hill *Sceaful*, where on a clear day one may ſee *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: here alſo are bred the *Soland* Geeſe, of rotten wood falling into the water. This Iſland was taken from the *Britans* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* ſeized on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and ſome part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the 3d of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms and purchaſe. After which time it was ſometimes *Engliſh*, ſometimes *Scotiſh*, as their fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the year 1340. *William Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, deſcended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and ſold it to the Lord *Scrope*; who being condemned of Treaſon, *Henry* the fourth gave it to *Henry Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*, but he alſo proving falſe to his Soveraign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Darby*.

The Kings of *Man* of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

1065	1	*Godred*, the Son of *Syrric*.
1066	2	*Fingall*, Son of *Godred*.
1066	3	*Godred* II. Son of *Harald*.
1082	4	*Lagnan*, Eldeſt Son of *Godred* the ſecond.
1089	5	*Donald*, Son of *Tado*.
1998	6	*Magnus*, King of *Norwey*.
1102	7	*Olave*, the third Son of *Godred*.
1144	8	*Godred* III. Son of *Olave*.
1187	9	*Reginald*, baſe Son of *Godred* the third.
1226	10	*Olave*, the lawful Son of *Godred* the third.
1237	11	*Harald*, Son of *Olave*.
1243	12	*Reginald* II. Brother of *Harald*.
1252	13	*Magnus* II. Brother of *Reginald*.
1266	14	*Magnus* III. King of *Norway*; the laſt King of *Man* of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of *Man* of the *Engliſh* Blood.

1340	1	*William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
1395	2	*William* Lord *Scrope*, King of *Man*.
1399	3	*Henry*, Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
1403	4	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Iſle of *Man*.
	5	*John* Lord *Stanley*.
	6	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*.
	7	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1503	8	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1521	9	*Edward* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1572	10	*Henry* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1593	11	*Ferdinando* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
	12	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
	13	*James* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*, Lord of the Iſle of *Man*, now living Anno 1648. King in

in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of *Civil* power and jurisdiction over the inhabitants, under the *Feife* and *Soveraignty* of the Crown of *England*; together with the nomination of the *Bishop*, whom he presents unto the *King* for his *Royal assent*, then to the Arch bishop of *York* for his consecration. And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honor, but such as held immediately of the King himself; nor was it reason that they should. *Angleſey.*

V. ANGLESEY, is an Island situate in the *Irish* Sea, over against *Carnarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Straight, which they call the *Menai*. By the *Britans* themselves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Mona*: but being conquered by the *English*, it obtained the name of *Angleſey*, as one would say, the Island of the *English* Men, (*eye* in the *Saxon* language signifying an *Island*) A place of such a fair revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellen* the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward* the first, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 *per Annum* for this Island only.

And to say truth, the Island is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattle; from whence the *Welch* are liberally stored with both: and therefore it is said Proverbially, *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Angleſey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West, about 20 miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compass 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, and hath in it only two market Towns: that is to say, 1 *Beaumaris*, seated on a flat or marish ground, near the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the first to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2 *Newburg*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Rossur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked with sand. The other places of most note are, 3 *Aberfraw*, a small village now, but heretofore the Royal seat of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4ly, *Holybead*, seated on an head-land or *Promontory* thrusting into the Sea, made *holy* (or thought so at least) by the religious retirement of Saint-*Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Disciples of St. *Hilarie* of *Poictiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer Cuby*: of most note for the ordinary passage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Antiently this Island was the seat of the *Druides*, and brought with no small difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the people fighting in other parts of *Britain*, for their liberty only; but here *pro Aris & focis* too, for their *Religion*, *Liberty*, and their Gods to boot: Being deserted by the *Romans* with the rest of the *Britain*, it remained in the possession of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State; when added to the Crown of *England* by the puissance of King *Edward* the first, by whom made one of the shires of *Wales*, as it still continues.

Not far from *Angleſey*, somewhat inclining to the South, is the Isle of *Bardsey*, by *Ptolemie* called *Edri*, by *Plinie Adros*, by the *Welch Enlhy*; extending towards the East with a rocky *Promontory*, but rich and fruitful towards the West: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in the former times. Southwards from hence, and over against St. *Davids*, are two other Islands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild honey; the other named by the *Welch Lymen*, by the *English Ramsey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolemie*, the *Silimnum* of *Plinie*, but not else remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I must take them in my passage to the Isles of *Silly*. Of those the first is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level; the 2 *Stepholm*, from the steep and craggie disposition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both situate over against the County of *Somerset*. More towards the opening of the *Channel*, lyeth the Isle of 3 *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen Inis Pir*, of as small note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Isle of 4 *Lundey*, over against *Devonshire*, the principal Island of this Sea: extending two miles every way; of excellent pasturage, well stored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good distance from any part of the land, in the midst of the salt and brackish Ocean, and yet yeeldeth many Springs of *Fresh-Water* for the use of the people; inhabiting for the most part in a Town of the same name with the Island. A place of very great strength and safety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks; and having but one way of access into it, and that so narrow that two men cannot go a breast.

VII. The Isles of SILLY, in number 145, are situate over against the most Western *Promontorie* of *Cornwall*, from which distant 24 miles; and lie round together in the manner of a ring or *Circle*. Discovered first by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, opposite against which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and resorted to by the said *Phœnicians* from the Isle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhaustible Mines of *Tinne*, which they found amongst them. A Trade so great and gainful to them, that they held it a great point of State: κρύπτειν ἅπασι τὸν πλοῦν, to keep it as a secret from all the world, as we find in *Strabo*: who addes the story of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, incountred in his voyage hither by some *Roman* Vessels; and splitting his ship on the next shore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; rewarded for his honest care, and recompensed for the loss of his ship & goods, out of the publick Treasury. From this abundance of *Tinne*, the *Græcians* when they came to know them, called them *Cassiterides*: (*Cassiteros* in that language signifying *Tynne*) accordingly *Herodotus* ὅτι νήσους οἶδα Κασσιτερίδας ἐούσας ἐν τῷ πρὸς ἑσπέρην ἡμῖν φοιτῷ, affirming that he knew not those Islands called *Cassiterides*, from whence *Tynne* was brought. The richness of this commodity, the pleasures of the place, and the Western situation of them; makes many of the *Grecians* call them the *Hesperides*: mistaking them for the *Fortunate Islands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*, as before is said, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antoninus*; *insulæ Sillinæ*, by *Severus Sulpitius*, from whence we have the name of the *Isles* of *Silly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, besides the treasures hid within: well stored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and most sorts of wilde Fowl. Ten of them

Wight and Thanet.

them more esteemed than the rest, are called by the names of 1 *Armath*, 2 *Agnes*, 3 *Sampson*, 4 *Silly*, 5 *Brefar*, 6 *Rusco*, 7 S. *Helens*, 8 *Arthur*, 9 S. *Maurice*, and 10 S. *Maries*: Of which the most famous in the accompt of former times, was that of *Silly*, as giving name unto the rest; but in the present estimate St. *Maries* is accompted the chief of all: 8 miles in compass, fruitful of all necessaries, and fortified with a very strong Castle built by Queen *Elizabeth*; well manned and *Garrisoned*, for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongst these Islands, capable of the greatest Navies.

These Islands first discovered by *Himilco* a *Carthaginian*, sent by that State to search into the West Coasts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece*, and *Italy*; by reason of the Mines of *Tinne* spoken of before. So beneficial to the *Romans*, that they used to send hither their condemned Prisoners to work in the Mines; as the best service to be done by their forfeited lives. And hither, amongst others, *Justantius*, a fierce *Priscillianist*, for his factious and seditious cariage, was sent by *Maximus*; *ad Sillinam insulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forsaken their hold in *Britain*, they returned again into the power and possession of the *Natives*; from whom subdued, and added unto the *English* Crown by *Athelstan* the eighth King of *England*. Now ordered for *Civil* matters, as a part of *Cornwall*; for military, by their own Captain, subordinate to the Lord *Lieutenant* of that Countrey; and for the *Tin-trade*, by the Lord *Warden* and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwall*, who by reason of their imployment in these *Mines* have many priviledges and exemptions more than other Subjects; but of late limited and restrained by Act of Parliament.

VIII. The Isle of WIGHT lieth over against *Hampshire*, from which it seemeth to have been divided; the passage betwixt it and *Hurst-Castle* on the opposite shore, being very narrow; and the name of it intimating some such division. For by the *Britans* it was antiently called *Guith*, which signifieth a breach or separation, from whence the *English* have their *Wight*; the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* people: and from the same root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vectis*; *Vecht*, *Wight*, and *Guith*, being words of such neer resemblance, that we need not travel further for an *Etymologie*. The Island of an *Oval* form, 20 miles in length, and 12 miles broad about the midst; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the East and West. Naturally fenced about on all sides, on the South especially, where it looks towards *France*, on which side inaccessible by reason of the steep and craggie Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much less safe on the North-West, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingles*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or since the first *separation* from the other shore, make the passage dangerous; except to single ships, and those not unacquainted with the course of the Channel. Towards the North-East more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Castles of the *Cowes*, and *Sandham*. There is also the Castle of *Yarmouth* in the West parts of the Island, and that of *Garesbrook* in the midst (but more towards the North): in which last there is said to be Armour for 5000 men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, besides many Market Towns) a peece of Ordnance. Yet doe not all these Arms and Castles adde so much to the strength of it, as the natural courage of the People; warlike and stout, and trained unto the postures of War from their very childhood.

The soil hereof abundantly answereth the pains of the Husbandman, so plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of a good *pasturage*; that they have not only enough for themselves, but furnish the markets of *Southampton* and *Portsmouth*, (but the last especially) with the greatest part of the Wheat, Flesh, Cheese, and Butter, which is spent amongst them. Insomuch that the Souldiers of *Portsmouth* presuming on the strength of the Town, have been used to say, That if *they had the Isle of WIGHT to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World besides.* Their Sheep here of so fine a fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the second place of esteem next to that of *Lemster* (in the County of *Hereford*), and precedency of that of *Cotswald*.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Yarmouth*, on the North-West of the Island, seated on a convenient Haven, which is said to have some resemblance to that of *Rochel*; and that Haven defended with a Castle. 2 *Brading*, another Market-town. 3 *Newton*, an antient *Burrough*, and priviledged with sending Burgesses to the *English Parliament*. 4 *Garesbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an antient Castle. 5 *Newport*, now the chief of all the Isle, called in the times past *Medena*, afterwards *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at last *Newport*; seated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of lesser burden to the very key; and by that means populous, well traded, and inhabited by a civil and wealthy People.

The Island first subdued to the *Romans* by the valour of *Vespasian*, (afterwards Emperor of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Cerdick*, King of the *West-Saxons*; and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almost rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the last Countrey of the *Saxons* which received the Gospel, and then upon compulsion too; forced to it by the power as well as the perswasion of *Cedwalla*, the *West-Saxon* King. Took from the *English* in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the first Lord thereof. From whose Family, by the gift of *Henry* the second, it passed to that of *Redvars*, or *Rivers*, (*de Riparius*) then Earls of *Devonshire*: and on the failing of that House returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward* the first. Never so much ennobled as by *Henry* the sixth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his reign crowned him *King* of *Wight*, An. 1445. Which title ended with his life about two years after.

IX. THANET, is a little Island in the North-East of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea; into which it shooteth with a large Promontory called the *North-Fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the antient Writers: and towards the West, severed from the main land of *Kent* by the River *Stoure*, which is here called *Tenlade*, but severed so, that by the benefit of a Causey

and

and passage to the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent or main Land of *Kent*. The quality, site, and figure of it, take in these old Rhythmes (for I dare hardly call them Verses) extant not long since in a window of the chief Church there, viz. *Sunderland & Holyland*

Insula rotunda Thanatos quam circuit unda,
Nobilis & munda, nulli est in orbe secunda.

That is to say,

Thanet is round with cirling waters bound,
A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in some Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in other things, so in these particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they first came into *Britain*; the first *Liverie* and *Seisin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bounty of *Vortiger*, to whose aid called in; and the landing place of *Augustine* the *Monk*, when he brought the Gospel to the *Saxons*. The whole about two miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in those times, 600 Families; now very populous for the bigness, and plentiful of all commodities necessary, but of corn especially. The people generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by *Sea* and *Land*; well skilled, as well in steering of a ship at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both industrious. Of most note in it, 1 *Stonar*, a Port-town, the usual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britans*; who having vanquished the *Saxons* in many battels, and finally driven them out of the Island, desired to be here interred; on a conceit, that his dead corps would fright them from landing any more upon these Coasts. And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a fortunate hand against those of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coasts of *Italy*.

X. SUNDERLAND is an Island only at an high-water, when environed on all sides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an easie passage from the one to the other: pulled by some tempest, or by the working of the Sea from the rest of the Land; whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-East part of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, over against the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhaustible mines of *Coal*, and for that cause seldom without the company of forein Merchants: yet not to have been here remembred, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Soveraign Lord King *Charles*, the second Monarch of *Great Britain*, to confer the title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*; the first in the third year of his reign, An. 1627. the second in the 18th, An. 1642.

XI. THE HOLY ISLAND lieth upon the Coast of *Northumberland*, not far from *Barwick*; stretched out in length from East to West, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a strong Castle, and of great saiety, but more famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Christianity* amongst the *Northumbers*, made a Bishops See, by S. *Aidanus*, one of the first *Apostles* of that potent Nation. Selected for this dignity by that godly man, for the *solitude* and privacy of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious lives* of so many pious Bishops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy Island*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to say, from the year 637, to 990, under 22 Bishops, hence called Bishops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the insolencies of the *Danes*, (who then raged terribly on those coasts) compelling them to abandon that *religious solitude*.

Thus have we taken a survey of the *British Islands*, and shewn by what means *Ireland* and all the *lesser Islands* became united either to the Crowns of *England* or *Scotland*; and those two Kingdoms to each other: joyned in the person of the same King, and the participation of his favours, though different still in Laws, and some forms of Government; as most of the Estates of *Spain*, at the present time. United also in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being swallowed up, or incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleased King *James* to own for his Stile *Imperial*. And for a memory thereof, to cause a peece of Gold to be coyned of 20 s. (since raised to 22 s.) which he called the *Unity*; stamped on the one side with his picture, and this *Inscription*, *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ, FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other side with his Arms, crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to doe, is to lay down the names of those puissant Princes, whom God hath raised to be

The Monarchs of *Britain*.

1602 1 *James*, the sixth of that name, King of the *Scots*, Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, Daughter of *James* the fifth, the Son of *James* the fourth, and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Henry* the seventh of *England*: which *Margaret* being after maried to *Archembald Douglass* Earl of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* also (the only child of her Parents) maried to *Matthew Stewart* Earl of *Lennox*; by whom she was made the mother of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *James* the sixth, by the said *Mary* Queen of *Scots*. So that King

King *James* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the 7th, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the 8th, in the perſon of Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memory; was the next heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyful acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. Anno 1602. (according to the accompt of the Church of *England*) A learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nurſing Father of the Church*, and a lover of learning. He dyed at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four days over.

1625 2 *Charles*, ſecond Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63d King in deſcent from *Cerdick* King of the *Weſt-Sexons*; the 45th King of *England*, in deſcent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman* Conqueror; the 64th Monarch of the *Engliſh*, and the ſecond Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his reign he maried the Princeſs *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* the 4th, and Siſter to *Lewis* the 13th, *French* Kings; by whom bleſt with a *Royal Iſſue* of Sons and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe *Britiſh* Monarchs we cannot put the eſtimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each ſeveral part; out of which *Items* the *ſumma totalis* of the whole both in *power* and *treaſure*, will be eaſily gathered. For though theſe Monarchs never had any occaſion, to muſter and unite the *Forces* of their ſeveral Kingdoms upon any one Action: yet by conſidering what they have been able to doe divided; we may conclude of what they may doe, if need be, being now united. And ſo we are to doe in marſhalling the Arms of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, which are 1 Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2ly *Scotland*, 3ly *Ireland*; the fourth as the firſt. I ſhut up this diſcourſe of the *Britiſh* Empire, with thoſe words of *Scripture* (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QUÆ DEUS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET.*

And ſo much for *Britain*.

A

A TABLE

Of the Longitude and Latitude of the chief Cities mentioned in this First Book.

	Lon.	Lat.
A.		
Aberdene.	22 20	57 20
Alcala de Henares.	23 0	40 30
Alicante.	28 40	39 0
Almodine	34 0	33 40
Ancona.	43 10	43 50
S. Andrews.	21 10	56 20
Angoleſme.	27 0	46 0
Angiers.	18 10	47 25
Aquilegia.	42 50	46 40
Armagh.	14 50	54 9
Avero.	17 30	41 10
Avignon.	23 40	43 50
Aux.	22 40	43 40
St. Anderos.	22 20	43
Aix.	22 20	42 10
Arls.	22 45	43 20
Amboiſe.	20 35	47 35
B.		
Badaios.	19 40	38 30
Baione.	24 20	42 10
Baſil.	28 10	48 30
Beſanſon.	26 30	47 50
Bilbao.	23 30	41 10
Baden in Switzerl.	31	48 44
Blavet.	21 15	47 50
Bononia	35 50	43 33
Breſt.	20	48 50
Bath.	20 56	51 20
Bragance.	6	45
Barwick.	22 43	55 48
Barcelone.	17 15	41 36
Burdeaux.	18	45 10
Burges.	24 10	48 20
C.		
Cambridge.	23 25	52 10
Calice.	26 2	52
Canterbury.	24 50	51 16
Cartagena.	28 20	38 20
Cane.	21	50
Carlile.	21 31	52 57
Cheſter.	20 23	53 11
Chicheſter.	26 10	51
Clermont.	30 15	45 50
Chur.	32	42
Corck.	15 40	41 40
Corduba.	9 4	37 50
Conimbre.	5 45	50 19
Compoſtella.	17 15	44 18
Coventrie.	25 52	52 23
D.		
Dieppe.	28 40	49 30
Digion.	25 45	47
Dole.	28 3	49 5
Dover.	26 10	51
Dublin.	16 40	54 27
Dunbritton.	19 24	57 10
Durham.	22	54 55
E.		
Edenburgh.	22	55 50
Embrum.	28	44
Elie.	25 20	52 40
Exeter.	22 10	51
F.		
Florence.	41 10	43 40
Ferrara.	44	36
Fayall.		48 40
G.		
Geneva.	33 40	46 20
Galway.	13 17	54 6
Gloceſter.	19	53
Gades.	15 10	37
Granada.	11	37 50
Groine.	16 50	43 20
Genoa.	37 50	45 0
Grenoble.	27	45 30
H.		
S. Hilary in Guernzey.	22 20	49 40
Hull.	25 20	53 40
L.		
Leon.	21 10	42 15
Lisbon.	9 10	38 38
Lions.	23 15	45 10
Lincoln.	22 15	53 12
London.	23 25	5 34
Luca.	42 10	40
Ligorn.	40 20	43 30
M.		
Majorca.	39 50	33
Malaga.	23 50	37 22
Marſeilles.	24 30	43 16
S. Malo.	19	49
Medina Cæli.	23 30	41 10
Millaine.	38 30	46 10
Modena.	41 50	35 40
Montpelier.	25 30	44 10
Montalban.	23	45
Meſſana.	45 50	37 50
Minorca.	40 30	40 0
N.		
Naples.	46	39 30
Nantes.	24 10	47 10
Narbon.	30 20	42 20

	Lon.	Lat.
Nevers.	25	47
Newcaſtle.	22 30	54 57
Niſmes.	26	44 2
Norwich.	24 55	52 40
O.		
Oleron.	24 30	45 30
Orleans.	28 30	48 0
Orange.	26 20	43 20
Oxford.	22	51 50
Otranto.	49 30	40 20
P.		
Pampelun.	24 30	43 3
Paris.	23 30	48 40
Pavie.	44 1	33 5
Padua.	44 45	36 20
Parma.	39 20	45 10
Peſcara.	43 0	30 10
Palermo.		
Peragia.	42 20	43 10
Peter-port in Jarſey.	23 0	49 20
Piſa.	40 30	43 40
Placentia.	20 40	40 0
Poictiers.	26 30	47
R.		
Ravenna.	41 20	44 20
Rhemes.	25 25	48 30
Renes.	19	48
Rochel.	18 15	45 50
Rome.	42 30	42
Roven.	23 40	48 50
Rhezo.	47 0	38 20

	Lon.	Lat.
S.		
Salisbury.	18 3	51 10
Salmanca.	8 5	40 15
Saragoſſa.	24 15	41 45
Sevill.	7 15	37
Sion, or Sittia.	29	45
Sterling.	20 10	56 20
Siena.	42 20	36 16
Siguenca.	18 2	
Syracuſe.	40 30	37 30
T.		
Tarantaiſe.	29	45
Tarragon.	78 30	38 20
Tholouſe.	28 40	43 10
Toledo.	16 20	39 40
Trieſte.	44 10	46 10
Tredagh.	16 34	54 10
Turin.	31 30	43 45
Tarentum.	48 0	40 30
V.		
Valladolid.	16 10	42 5
Valentia.	19 20	39 4
Venice.	41 40	45 50
Verona.	40 40	45 50
Viterbo.	41 50	42 4
Weymouth.	23 50	51 0
Wincheſter.	22	52
Wexford.	16 44	53
Y.		
Yarmouth.	27 30	53 0
York.	22 25	54 10
Z.		
Zurick.	30 20	47

The End of the firſt Book.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE AND HISTORIE OF

BELGIUM, GERMANIE, DENMARK, SWETHLAND, RUSSIA, POLAND, HUNGARIE, SCLAVONIA, DACIA, and *GREECE*;

With the *ISLES* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

TACIT. HIST. l. 4.

Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-Alpinis *gentibus portendi,* Druidæ *canebant.*

SENEC. de Consolat. ad ALBINUM.

Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium *fundamenta jaciuntur, nova* Gentium *nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.*

LONDON,
Printed by *E. C.* for *Henry Seile* over against St. *Dunstans Church* in *Fleetstreet.* M. DC. LVII.

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE AND HISTORIE OF

Belgium, Germanie, Denmark, Swethland, Muſcovie, Poland, Hungarie, Dalmatia, Dacia, Greece; with the *Iſles* thereof.

OF BELGIUM.

HAving purſued the fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the 4 *Weſtern Dioceſes* or Diviſions of it, wholly ſubdued to the command of that conquering State: let us next look on thoſe Countries which lay further North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but conquered in part; or els were reckoned as the members of ſome greater Province. Of this laſt ſort was all that tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded on the East with *Weſtphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of of the *Higher Germanie*; on the Weſt, with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North, with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *East-Friezeland*; on the South, with *Picaride* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-eaſt, with the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.

By the *Latines* (especially of these last times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belgæ*, the most potent people of all these parts; and sometimes also *Germania Inferior*, or the *Lower Germanie*, (in the same sense as by the *English* it is called the *Low Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low situation; and the conformity which they have with the other *Germans* in Laws, Language, Customes and Manners. By some it hath been called by the aggregate name of *the seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of severall and distinct Estates united under the command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which though but one of the 17 Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great trade and traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*; or in respect that lying nearer then the rest to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *England*, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Countrey was under the command of many Princes, of which the Earls of *Flanders* were esteemed most potent. And though this name continued also after the incorporating of most of these Provinces in the house of *Burgundie*, at which time they were called the *Estates* of *Flanders*: yet since the falling off of *Holland*, and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath lost this honor; the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most currant amongst the *Latines* of this age, yet I see little reason for it. For first, old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large *Estates*, which are not now within the compasse of these *Belgick* Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedomes of *Lorreine*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and great part of *Cleve*; the Bishopricks of *Triers*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*; and so much of the Kingdome of *France*, as takes up all *Picardie*, with parts of *Champagne*, and of *France* specially so called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat further yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Elsass*, the whole County of *Burgundie*, and so much of *Switzerland*, as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Friseland*, *Groyning*, *Over-ysel*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, as lieth on the further side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never accounted of either as parts of *Belgium*, or of *Gallia Belgica*, (though now within the compasse of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germanie*; clearly without the limits of the antient *Gaul*, of which body *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belgæ*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium*, and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*: esteemed by *Cæsar* to be the valianteſt of the *Gallick* nations for these three reasons; First, they were the fartheſt from *Provence*, where the *Roman* civilities, and more affable course of life was embraced. Secondly, they dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to effeminacie, which are in Countries of traffique. And thirdly, they bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike nation; with whom they were continually in armes. This people seeing the prosperous successe of *Cæsars* victories in *Gaul*, joyned together in a League, and mustered an Army of 269000 fighting men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his *Fortresses*, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three *Legions*, (for no more was *Cæsars* Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this *Cæsar* fighting against them severally, overcame them all; and made their Countrey, and the Countrey of the Bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great made part of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*, and by him cast into four *Provinces*, that is to say, 1 *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, and the land of *Triers*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Triers*; 2 *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardie*, and the Countrey of *Chambray*, with parts of *Campagne* and *France Speciall*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Rhemes*; 3 *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsatia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* the *Metropolitan* City of that Province; and 4 *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Luxembourgh*, *Limbourgh*, and the land of *Colen*; which last was honoured with the title of *Metropolitan*. 5 *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundie*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, of which *Besancon* was the mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the accompt and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these later ages, by the house of *Burgundie*; some petie Signeuries and Estates, which properly do belong to *Germanie*, being added to it; that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Friseland* given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the *Bald*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, united unto that of *Guelders* by Earl *Otho* of *Nossaw*; and finally the Estate of of *Groyning*, *Over-ysell*, and some part of *Utrecht*, by *Charles* the fifth. Under which name and notion, we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compasse 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* miles: and is situated in the northern Temperate Zone, under the 7, 8, & 9. *Climates*: the longest day in the midst of the 7 *Climate* where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 9 *Climate* increased to 16 houres three quarters, or neer 17 hours. The Aire in these later days grown more wholesome then formerly; partly by the wonderfull increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible industry of the people: who by draining the Marishes, and converting the standing waters into running streams, have purged the aire of many grosse and unhealthy Vapours; which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The

The Countrey is very populous, containing welnigh three millions of ſouls, the men being for the moſt part well proportioned, great lovers of our *Engliſh* Beer, unmindfull both of good turns and injuries: of good wit for inventing, and of a moſt indefatigable induſtry for perfecting the rareſt Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as alſo for *Arras hangings*, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the *Mariners* Compaſſe. They reſtored *Muſick*, and found out divers *Muſicall* Inſtruments, being naturally good *Muſicians*; and generally ſo given unto it, and ſo perfect in it, that heretofore (till the Art of Muſick grew more common) there were not many great mens houſes, which had them not to teach their Children. To them belongeth alſo the invention of Chariots, the laying on of colours with oil, the working of Pictures in glaſſe, and the making of Worſteds, Saies, and Tapeſtries: the making of which and other Stuffes, being driven out of their Countrey by the Duke of *Alva*, they firſt taught the *Engliſh*. The women generally are of a good complexion, well proportioned, eſpecially in the leg and foot; honourers of vertue, active, and familiar. Both within doors and without, they govern all; which conſidering the naturall deſire of women to bear rule, maketh them too imperious and burdenſome.

They uſe for the moſt part the *Germane* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoyning to *France*, that is to ſay, *Luxembourg*, *Mamurce*, *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and ſome parts of *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, they uſe the *French*; but ſpeak the ſame very corruptly and imperfectly by reaſon of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *German*; yet ſo, that one may eaſily diſcern thoſe people to be *French* originally; or ſome remainder of the old *Gauls*, maſtered by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their language or firſt originall called to this day by the name of *Wallons*; the *Germans* uſually changing G into W. as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like caſe *Wales* for *Galles* I know there is another *Etymologie* of the name of *Wallons*, ſome making them to be of the *Burgundian* race; who at their firſt paſſing over the *Rhene* enquired their way of the Countrey people in theſe word, *Ou allons*, *i. e. Whither go we?* which being oft repeated by them, occaſioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtleſſe, but of no ſolidity; nor to be further honoured with a confutation.

The Countrey in thoſe parts which lie towards *Germanie*, eſpecially on the South-eaſt bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorrain*, is ſomewhat ſwelled with hils, and overſhaded with woods; the reliques of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof. But towards the Weſt and North, where it joyns to the Sea, it is plain and levell, full of flats and mariſhes, affording very little corne, but abounding in paſturage, which yeeld a great increaſe of Butter and Cheeſe, good ſtore of beeves, and horſes of more then ordinary bigneſſe. By reaſon of which low and levell ſituation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troubleſome and unruly ſea, it hath been formerly much ſubject to inundations; inſomuch as in the time of King *Henry* the 2d, *Flanders* was ſo overflown, that many thouſands of people, whoſe dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new ſeats; and were by that King firſt placed in *Yorkeſhire*, and then removed to *Pembrookeſhire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* ſwallowed eight of the Iſlands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whoſe Churches and ſtrong buildings, are at a dead low water, to be ſeen. And as once *Ovid* ſaid of *Helice*, and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, ſo may we of theſe,

Invenies ſub aquis, & adhuc oſtendere nautæ
Inclinata ſolent cum mœnibus oppida verſis.

That is to ſay,

The waters hide them, and the Saylers ſhow
The ruin'd wals and ſteeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into other Countries, are Linnen, Scarlets, Worſted, Saies, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffes; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheeſe, *&c.* Of which, excepting Cheeſe and Butter, there is nothing of the naturall growth of the Countrey: the reſt being *Manufactures*, which they make out of ſuch materials, as they fetch out of forein Regions. But the Commodity which yeeldeth them moſt benefit is that of Fiſh, not caught upon their own coaſt neither, but either in the Northern ſeas, or the coaſt of *England*: the very *Herrings* which they catch on the ſhores of *England* (to the no ſmall diſhonour of the *Engliſh* nation) bringing them a revenue (beſides what is purſed up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds *per annum*; and that of *Codfiſh* which they catch on the coaſts of *Friſeland*, amounting to 150000 *l.* ſterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the people living till of late in perpetuall peace. The chief of thoſe whoſe names have been tranſmitted to us, 1 *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for ſubtilty of wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long war againſt the *Romans*, in the time of *Veſpaſian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2 *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germanie*; 3 *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*; 4 *Philip* the good, and 5 *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundie*; 6 *Charles* the the fifth, Emperour and King of *Spain*:

Spain: and of late times the Princes of the house of *Nassaw* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian*, out of higher *Germany*. And to say truth, their *Genius* doth not lie so much, for land-service as it doth for the seas; in which they have been very famous, and not lesse fortunate. For of this nation was *Oliver de Noort*, the fourth that compassed the world; *Jacob le Maire*, the first discoverer of the Straight, or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name; besides divers others. And generally the people are so expert in Navigation, (especially those bordering on or neer the coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which being born on shipboard and bred up at sea, know no other Countrey; and brook the Land as ill, as a fish doth the dry ground. Which naturall inclination to it, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way, (the Countrey not being otherwise able to provide sustenance for those multitudes of men, which it doth abound with) hath so exceedingly increased their shipping; that it is thought that they are masters of more vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, then almost all the rest of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1 *Erasmus*, the great Restorer of learning in these parts of the World. 2 *Justus Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 4 *Joseph Scaliger*, the son of *Julius*, ὁ πᾶν πεπαιδευμένος, a man not to be followed in all parts of learning; but of equall arrogance. 4 *Rodolphus Agricola*. 5 *Levinus Lemnius*. 6, 7 *Janus Douza*, the Father and the Son. 8 *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9 *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 11 *Geo. Cassander*, 11 Dr. *James Harmin*, 12 *Gerard Vossius*, eminent Divines, and 13 *Hugo Gretius*, of as great parts, (but seasoned with more modesty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14 *Jansenius*, and 15 *Pamelius* two right learned men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

The *Christian* Religion was planted in severall Provinces, by severall men: in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friezeland*, by *Willibrode* an *Englishman*, the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Countrey: these being the first people of the *Frankes*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the primitive purity, participating of the Errours and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were therein opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of *civill rights*, invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards*; affecting a more absolute Dominion over them, then their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Countrey doth stand divided betwixt the *States* and the *Spaniards*; so stands it with *Religion* also: the *Spaniard* permitting only the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, within the Provinces and Estates under his command; and the *States General* indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the *Reformed Churches*, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief *Forests* of this Countrey are, 1 that of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæsar*, extended from the banks of *Rhene*, as far as *Tourney* one way, and *Champagne* another way; and was in compasse 500 miles, in the least accompt. In which circuit there were comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxembourg*, *Luychland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*; together with the land of *Guliek* in the higher *Germanie*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gaul Belgick*, it reacheth but from *Leige* to *Theonville*, 30 leagues in length; and yet not all that *Woodlands* neither, though within the *Vierge* of the *Forest*: there being much tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground; the principal of which is the Town of S. *Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2 *Niepe*, and 3 *Numen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Ypris*. 4 *Pendsberg* in the Confines of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mount Gerrard*: all of them parts of this great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once overshadowed all this Countrey. 5 *Normault* in *Hainalt*, in which is much Char-coal made; supposed for that reason to be a part of that Forest, which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6 *Echterwald* in *Guelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1 *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two springs in the *Lepontian Alpes*, amongst the *Grisons*; united into one stream near *Chur*: thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, is again divided about the confines of *Guelderland*, into four branches or channels. Of which the first is called the *Wael*, which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimmegen*, and *Bomel*, loseth it self in the *Maes*: the second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted channell to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leiden*: the third called the *Lecle*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht*, and *Holland*; and so into the sea betwixt *Dort*, and *Roterdam*; and the fourth called the *Ysel* which passing by the towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer*, betwixt *Guelderland*, and *Over-ysel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean, near *Amsterdam*. And of these branches I have given the exact reckoning, partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these Provinces, dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River: it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leiden*) which antiently divided *Germanie* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River of such reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belgæ* used to cast the children which they suspected to be *Illegitimate*: for were they born of lawfull bed, they floated on the waters, if of an unlawfull, they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding saith, *nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great searcher of Antiquities, *Verstegan*, is of opinion, that thereby they only inured their children to hardnesse, and made tryall of their strength; *adultery* being rarely found among them, and so these kindes of experiments needlesse. 2 *Mosa*, the *Maes*, as the *Dutch*, or the *Meuse* as the *Frenchmen* call it, which springing from the mountaines of *Vauge*, in the confines of *Lorraine*, and

not

not far from the fountaines of the *Seine*, and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorraine*, *Luxemburg*, *Luychland*, and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond*, and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Guelderland*, where turning towards the West, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maestreicht*, divides *Brabant* from *Holland*; watering the Town of *Grone* in the one, and of *Dort*, in the other; and falleth into the sea not far from *Bril*, with so great a violence, that the waters of it for a long space do continue fresh. 3 *Ems*, in *Latine* called *Amisus*, dividing the two *Frislands*; of which more in *Germanie*. 4 *Scaldis*, which arising in *Picardie*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainalt* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5 *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferiour note (which we shall meet withall in their proper places) here are great store of lakes, pools, and marishes; which do both fortifie the Countrey, and provide it of fish: besides many navigable channels, made by the hand of man, from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their commodities.

The shore of this Countrey hath been much worn out by the Sea, especially that of the Islands of *Zeland*, and such as lye scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with banks and ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom. They are made of the hardest clay that may be gotten; in the inside stuffed with wood and stone, on the outside covered with mats strong and thick made.

The former inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their severall Countries; that is to say, the *Attrebates* in the greatest part of *Artois*, the *Morini* in the rest of *Artois*, and those parts of *Flanders*, which make up the *Imperial* and *Dutch Flanders*; the *Nervii* in *Hainalt*, *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicant*; the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, as lies on the South side of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii*, intermixt in the Dukedom of *Guelders*, the *Mattiaci* in the Isles of *Zeland*, the *Aduatici*, and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with parts of the *Treveri* in *Luxembourg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luich land*, and the Dukedom of *Limburg*: all which were *Belgick* Nations, and therefore antiently accompted or as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle channell of the *Rhene*, there dwelt the *Frisii Minores* in *North-Holland*, and so much of the District of *Utrecht*, as lies on the further side of that channell; the *Frisii Majores* in *West-Friseland*, and the State of *Groyning*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the rest of *Guelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-yssel*: all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the accompt and name of *Belgæ*, being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the valour and good fortune of *Julius Cæsar*; continued subject to the *Romans*, without any notable disturbance unto their affaires, but the Rebellion raised against them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians*, in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the Empire, they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz*, or *Ostenreich*; united by *Childerick* the third, to the rest of *France*, and made a member of that Kingdom: as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the *Godly*, son of *Charles* the Great, in the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countries on this side of the *Rhene*, made up a speciall part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*. Those on the further side of the middle channell of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the division of the spoil spoken of before, fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the *Antient*, the first King of *Germanie*, and after his decease to his Successors in that Estate, whether Kings or Emperours. And so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorrein*, and *Germany*; by which means subdivided into lesser parcels, (no fewer then nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up in *Belgica* two great Estates, founded by *Auberon*, *Regnault*, and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*: who being disherited of their Fathers Kingdom by *Merove* Master of his horse, to whose tuition and guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the banks of the River *Mosselle*; where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Mosselle* we shall speak elsewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and some part of *Brabant*, together with all *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Lemburg*, *Luxemtourg*, and the Dukedom of *Bovillon*. Grown to this greatnesse by the withdrawing of the *French* forces into richer conquests, and the dismembring of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and trusting too much to that greatnesse, they drew upon themselves the jealousie of those mightier Princes: occasioning *Clotaire* the second, to give their Countrey unto *Dagobert* his eldest Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furnished with convenient Forces for the conquest of it: *Brunulph* the then Prince hereof, being by him discomfited, and slain in Battel. By *Sigebert*, who succeeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainalt* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert* one of the youngest Sons of *Brunulph*. By *Dagobert* himself succeeding in the Realme of *France*, (and whilest he lived sole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, formerly belonging to these Princes, were dismembred from it, and laid unto two new Estates of his own erecting. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great house, or to complie with the ill customes of those times, the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the same time also, for the portion of some other of the younger

Brethren.

Brethren. The reſt of the Eſtate, with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldeſt Son: whoſe poſterity, notwithſtanding this great diminution, grew to ſuch eſteem, that *Judith* the Widow of *Bovis* and ſiſter of *Boſon* Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit wife for *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour: by whom (the more to honour his family) the ſaid *Boſon* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundie*. During the Empire of *Otho* the firſt, the Earldom of *Luxembourg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefride* one of the younger Sons of *Ricuine* the preceding Prince; and ſo perhaps was *Limbourg* alſo for another of them. The reſt remained to *Godfrey* the eldeſt ſon, who by *Matilda* a daughter to *Otho* the ſecond, was Father of another *Godfrey*, who ſucceeded after *Charles* and *Otho*, the third Duke of *Lorrein*: that Dukedom ever ſince enjoyed by the houſe of *Ardenne*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. This ſaid, and ſo much of the ſtory opened as concerns the generall, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*; divided at the preſent into ſeventeen Provinces; beſides the two great Biſhopricks of *Leige*, and *Cambray*; which being always under the protection of the *Belgick* Princes, partakers of their fortunes either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their eſtates; ſhall have their turn in the deſcription of theſe Countries, divided generally

into
- 2 Biſhopricks
  - 1 *Leige* or *Luick*.
  - 2 *Cambray*.
- 4 Dukedoms
  - 1 *Limbourg*. 2 *Luxembourg*.
  - 3 *Guelderland*. 4 *Brabant*.
- 1 Marquiſate; viz. of *the holy Empire*.
- 7 Earldoms
  - 1 *Flanders*. 2 *Artois*.
  - 3 *Hainalt*. 4 *Namur*.
  - 5 *Zutphen*. 6 *Holland*. 7 *Zeland*.
- 5 Baronies
  - 1 *Weſt-Friſeland*.
  - 2 *Utrecht*. 3 *Over-yſel*.
  - 4 *Machlin*. 5 *Groyning*.

Of theſe nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders*, and *Artois*: the Earls whereof were *Homagers* unto that Crown; but ſeldome did deſcend ſo low as to do their *Homage*; quitted at laſt to *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, and his Succeſſours, by King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, in the treaty at *Cambray*, Anno 1558. The reſt were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germanie*, and Regent of thoſe Countries for his ſon *Philip*, (who had a purpoſe to ſubject them to the Empire again) were made the tenth *Circle* of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundie*. But neither ſince, nor before that time, would the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundie* acknowledge any ſuch ſubjection; but governed theſe Eſtates as *abſolute Princes*, without relation to the Empire, or ſubordination to the Emperor, or Imperiall Officers: never appearing at the *Diets*, nor contributing to any *Taxes* there impoſed, nor holding themſelves bound by any *Conſtitutions*, which were made therein. So that theſe ſeverall Relations being out of uſe, we muſt behold it at this time as it ſtands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *States*: beginning firſt with thoſe Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein firſt with *Flanders*, as of moſt eſteem.

1. FLANDERS and 2. ARTOIS.

THese two I have thought fit to joyn together, becauſe at firſt but one Eſtate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or ſix deſcents were again united, and have ſo continued ever ſince.

1. *FLANDERS* is bound on the Eaſt, with *Hainalt* and *Brabant*; on the Weſt, with the *Engliſh* or *German* Ocean; on the North, with the Seas of *Zealand*, and a branch of the *Scheld*; and on the South, with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interpoſing betwixt *Calice* and *Graveling*. So called, as ſome ſay, *à Flando*, becauſe it lieth open to the winds; as others ſay, from *Flandbert* the Son of *Bleſinda* Daughter of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*: Some fetch it from a Town of this name, ſituate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenbourg* ſtands; ſo long ſince ruined, that very few except themſelves could ever hear of it; and others (which I think moſt probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* the ſecond, the firſt who governed in theſe parts by the name of *Foreſter*.

The Soyl indifferently fruitfull in Corn and Paſtures; the air healthfull, temperate and pleaſant. The whole Country not in length above 90 miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compaſſe above thirty Cities (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) 1154 Villages, which ſtand ſo thick (as needs they muſt in ſo narrow a compaſſe) that the *Spaniards* at their firſt comming in with King *Philip* the ſecond, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into *Imperialem*, 2. *Gallicam*, and 3. *Teutonicam*: or *Flanders Imperial*, 2. *Flanders Gallicant*, and 3. *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. *FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT*, which is the greateſt of the three, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Imperial Flanders*, and the River *Scheld*; on the Weſt, with the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North, with the Seas of *Zealand*; and on the South, with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallicant*: The chief Towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, ſeven miles in compaſſe; but taking in the *Suburbs* which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at leaſt. One of the greateſt Cities of *Europe* for extent of ground; but not ſo populous as many of a leſſe capacity; there being made waſte ground even within the walls. Commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Scheld*, and the *Ley*, both which run thorow it, and make in it 26 Iſlands, joyned together with 98 Bridges: and had not her many ſeditions ruinated her beauties, ſhe might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, commonly called *John* of *Gaunt*; and *Charles* the fifth Emperour, and King of *Spain*: which laſt, to reſtrain the people from their old ſeditions, which had been very troubleſome to his predeceſſors (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a ſtrong Citadell in the place where ſtood the Abby of S. *Bavons*. For Churches, Monaſteries, and other places of devotion, there were numbred in it 55; all of them anſwerable to the grandeur and renown of the City; the private buildings being alſo very ſtately, if not majeſticall. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often ſeditions of this people drawing upon themſelves the vengeance of their angred Prince; and their wealth much empaired by the long wars, and the diverſion of their trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the ſeas. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brug*, more within the land. A Town that hath neither Port, nor River; yet formerly of ſuch wealth, and the people in thoſe times ſo willing to ſhew it; that Queen *Joan* the wife of *Philip* the *fair*, having been there and marked the pomp of the women, complained, that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four miles circuit within the walls, wonderfully well peopled; the buildings fair and ſumptuous, (amongſt which 60 Churches and Religious houſes) the ſtreets large and ſtreight, and a ſpacious Market-place; from which the ſix principal ſtreets of the City do paſſe directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleaſant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port, nor River, as before was ſaid, yet was it antiently of ſo great trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-towns of *Chriſtendom*; flouriſhing chiefly by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Cloth, and ſenſibly decaying when the *Engliſh* traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was walled by Earl *Baldwin*, *An.* 890. is diſtant three leagues from the ſea, and ſeated on a fair and deep chanel made by Art, and filled with the waters of all the adjoyning Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial chanels are in theſe Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3. *Ypres*, a Town ſeated very ſtrongly, and almoſt impregnable, on a ſmall river ſo named; a reaſonable rich Town, and well built, though moſt of the houſes be of timber: very well ſerved with water, conveyed into every houſe almoſt in leaden pipes; of which there is ſo great a number, that the foundations of it ſeem to be laid in lead. 4. *Bourbourg*, a fine ſtrong town, but little; pertaining to the *French* King, in the rights of the Houſe of *Burbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River *Lis* or *Ley*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable States-man and Hiſtorian. 6. *Courtray*, on the ſame River of *Ley*, one of the antienteſt towns in *Flanders*, yet ſtill continueth well built, and of very great ſtrength both by art and nature famous for a great overthrow given the *French*, *Anno* 1301. for which the Town was called of long time, the *Sepulchre* of the *Frenchmen*. 7. *Ardembourg*, (called in times paſt *Rodemburgh*) a pretty Town, inriched every year with a great Horſ-fair every *June*, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part hereof, which properly is called *Flanders*; that name firſt given to the parts hereunto adjoyning, as ſome conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the reſt of the Country. 8. *Bierulies*, both a Town and Iſland, and furniſhed with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mentioned in this place, but that the ſalting of *Herrings* was here firſt invented, by one *William Beukeleme*, who died *Anno.* 1397. 9. *Winocksberg*, ſo called of a goodly Abby built upon an Hill, in the honour of St. *Winock* an *Engliſh* man of an holy life: ſacked by the *French*, *An.* 1538. but ſince re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. 10. *Graveling*,

Flanders. on the Sea ſide, which ſince the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the ſtrongeſt Town in the Low Countries. 11. *Oudenard*, ſeated on the *Scheld*, a fair ſtrong town, and of very great traffique, eſpecially for Tapeſtry, and the fineſt Linnens; which are herein made: The birth-place of *Margaret*, *Dutcheſſe* of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, that renowned Souldier.

The Principal Ports of *Flanders* being four in number, are all of them ſeated in this part, *viz.* 1. *Dunkerke*, a ſmall but ſafe Port, belonging to the *French* King (as doth *Graveling* alſo) in the right of the houſe of *Vendoſme*; both taken lately by the *French*, and ſo returned *ex poſt-liminio*, to the proper owner. Moſt memorable in theſe days, in that the people of it, in the times of war, ſo infeſted the ſeas. 2. *Scluſe*, ſeated at the mouth of the Chanel of *Bruges*; beautified with a very fair Haven, able to contain 500 good Ships, and is now Subject to the *States*, with whoſe ſafety it could not well ſtand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any ſafe and large habours ſo near unto them. Over againſt it lyeth the Iſle of *Caſſandt* (famous for the birth of *George Caſſander*, a moderate and learned Papiſt) Formerly as big again as it is at the preſent, having then a fair town in it, and many rich villages; of which there is but one remaining (of the ſame name with the Iland) the reſt all ſwallowed by the Sea. 3. *Newport*, a pretty Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built on a well-frequented Haven, but not very ſafe, and therefore not much uſed by the men of war, nor made rich by Piracies, as *Dunkerke*. Near to this town, *An.* 1603. was fought the field-battell betwixt the Arch-duke *Albert*, and the *States*; the victory next under God, being gotten for the *States* by the valour of the *Engliſh*, and the excellent conduct of the *Veres*. 4. *Oſtend*, not walled till the Low-countrey wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finiſhed till the Arch-duke ſate down before it; Inſomuch as the Arch-dutcheſſe *Iſabell* is ſaid to have ſworn, that ſhe would not ſhift her ſmock till the Town were taken: who, had ſhe kept that raſh oath, had been very lowſie; the Town (then garriſoned with *Engliſh*) holding out againſt the ſaid Arch-duke, a a ſiege of three years, and as many moneths.

2. *IMPERIALL FLANDERS*, ſo called, becauſe it was long under the obedience of *Emperors*, is ſevered from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders*, by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was ſometimes called *Bracant* of a Caſtle of that name, deſtroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire* Earl of *Flanders*: and is now called the County of *Aloſt*, from the chief Town thereof ſo named; the juriſdiction whereof containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the walls of *Gaunt*, and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The town ſtrong, and indifferently fair, ſituate on the River *Dender*, moſt famous in theſe times for a Fair of Hops, which is kept there yearly. 2. *Hulſt*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being 3. *Axele*, 4. *Mouchant*, 5. *Aſſeneds*, of which little memorable; but that they were all taken from the Empire, by the ſaid *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the 4th. 6. *Dendremond*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Dender* where it entreth into the *Scheld*; a ſtrong town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making *Fuſtians*, and a weekly Market of Flax. A diſtinct *Signeury* of it ſelf, with many rich villages belonging to it; incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Mariage of Earl *Lewis de Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which houſe it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel* where it falleth into the *Scheld*: famous in former times for an antient Caſtle in which were kept the Minuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times, for being the birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned *Coſmographer*. 8. *Mont-Gerhard*, called by the *French*, *Grandmont*, a fine and pleaſant town ſeated on the *Dender*. Which three laſt Towns, together with *Bornhen*, a fair large village having ſome juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning, made up that eſtate, which was called the *Propro*, or *Domaine* of *Flanders*; becauſe not holden of the Empire, or the Kings of *France*, but in the ſoveraignty alone of the Earls hereof.

3. *FLANDERS GALLICANT*, ſo called from the *French* language there ſpoken, lyeth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the Eaſt, *Artois* on the Weſt, and the Country of *Cambray* on the South. The chief towns of it, are 1. *Liſle*, in *Latine*, *Inſula*, ſo called from its Iland-like ſituation, amongſt ponds, pools, mariſhes; dryed up, and made firm land by Earl *Baldwin de Barbu*, who built the town *Anno* 1007. which afterwards was walled by *Baldwin de Liſle*, his ſon, (born in this town, and hence ſo named) *Anno* 1066. The town made rich by manufactures, and reſort of Merchants; accompted the beſt town of traffick next *Amſterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be ſeen the ruines of an antient Caſtle called *Brug*, the Seat or Mannor houſe of the ancient *Forreſters*, who had the government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. 2. *Doway* (*Duacum* in *Latine*) a fair and ſtrong town ſeated on the *Scharpe*, having many fountains, good bulldings, and a great number of Churches; made an Univerſity by King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or College for *Engliſh* Fugitives. 3. *Orchies*, a pleaſant town, and well traded for the making of *Serges*; which, with the other two, make up the three Eſtates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled town, but of very great trading; here being yearly 25000 pieces of Cloth ſent hence to *Italie*, and thence to *Conſtantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the *Dutch* call it) a great, rich, mighty, and ſtrong town, ſeated on the *Scheld*: well built, and full of ſtately and magnificent Churches, and religious Houſes; and antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. A town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the *French*; but finally fell unto the *French*, as the more puiſſant Prince; taken from them by *Henry* the eighth of *England*, *Anno* 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Duckets for their preſent ranſome; reſtored by him unto the *French*, *Anno* 1518. for the ſum of 600000 Crowns: and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the fifth, who reſtored it to the body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long diſmembred; but ſo that it is governed as a State apart, and is called the *Signeury* of *Tourneſis*, having a goodly juriſdiction over the Country round about it. 6. S. *Amand*, in the Country of *Tourneſis*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Scharp*; in which is one of the richeſt Abbies in all *Flanders*; the Abbat thereof having the *temporal* and *ſpiritual* juriſdiction over it, and

the

the parts about it. And ſo much for the *Choregraphie* of the Earldom of *Flanders*; inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini*, in the time of *Cæſar*. *Artois.*

11. *ARTOIS*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Flanders Gallicant*, and the Countrey of *Cambray*; on the South, and Weſt, with *Picardie*; on the North, with *Flanders Flammegant*, and the River *Lis*. The name derived from the *Attrebates*, the old Inhabitants hereof: the air exceeding temperate, and the ſoyl ſo fruitfull, that it ſerveth as a *Granary* to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the Weſt part hereof towards *France*, lyeth the Earldom of S. *Paul*, ſo called from the chief town thereof; a goodly *Signeurie*, and of great juriſdiction and revenue: containing beſides many Villages, the good town of *Pern*, a walled town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walthſilan*, brother of *Henry* the 7th. Emperor of *Germany*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*; the laſt of which was *Lewis* of *Luxembourg*, made Conſtable of *France*, by K. *Lewis* the 11th. With whom, as alſo with *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he plaid ſo many croſs tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual jealouſie of one another, he was at laſt by Duke *Charls* taken and beheaded. After whoſe death, this goodly *Signeurie* fell to the houſe of *Vendoſme* in *France*, by the marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendoſme*, with *Mary* the daughter of this *Lewis*: to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the *French Kings*; the Heirs Males being made uncapable of ſucceſſion in it, by the Attaindure and Confiſcation of the ſaid laſt Earl. By means whereof the houſe of *Vendoſme* were entituled to many fair Eſtates in *Artois* and *Flanders*, and much good lands in *France* which they were poſſeſſed of: *Francis* the 2d. ſon of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only ſon of this, being entituled whilſt they lived, Earls of S. *Paul*, and Dukes of *Toutevilla*.

The Armes of theſe Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gules* armed and Crowned *Or*, his tail forked of the ſecond.

As for the reſidue of *Artois*, the towns of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Arras*, in *Latine Attrebatum Civitas*, the chief City of the *Attrebates*, the old inhabitans hereof in the time of *Cæſar*, and ſtill the chief City of this Province; a large, populous, and well-fortified City, antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopal, and ſtocked with an induſtrious people; the firſt makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took name from hence. Divided into two diſtinct towns, both of them walled, and called by two ſeveral names: the leſſer called *La Cite*, ſubject to the Biſhop, beautified with a fair and ſtately *Cathedral* Church, and a *Library* containing many excellent *Manuſcripts*; the leſſer called *La Ville*, ſubject to the Prince, having large ſtreets, and a rich Monaſtery of the yearly revenue of 20000 crowns. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Regiacum*, ſeated within a bow-ſhoot of the River *Scharp*; and heretofore the *Metropolitan* town of *Flanders*, til *Artois* was diſmembred from it: ſince which time the chief City of this Province, as before is ſaid. 2. S. *Omer*, a fair town, and well peopled, ſeated upon the River *Aa*, ſome 8 *Dutch* miles from the *Ocean*; ſo called from S. *Omer*, or *Audomarus*, Biſhop of the *Morini*, who built a Monaſtery in this place, from which grew the town; the ſecond of eſteem and rank in all the countrey. Near to it is a goodly lake of freſh water, in which are many little Ilands affording good paſturage for cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by faſtning a cord unto the buſhes which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of fiſhes, who bed themſelves there for ſhelter againſt the Weather. 3. *Betune*, a ſtrong town, and ſeated amongſt excellent paſtures, of which the people make great plenty of the beſt cheeſe: which, with the territory hereof, fell to *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, in right of *Mand* his wife, daughter and heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this town: honoured in that regard with the birth of their eldeſt ſon, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Betune*. 4. *Aire*, on the *Lys*, a ſtrong town, with a Caſtle of great antiquity. 5. *Bapaulme*, a little, but well-fortifyed town; and yet more ſtrong, becauſe it cannot be beſieged for want of freſh water, which is not to be had within three leagues of it. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled town, but fenced with a very ſtrong Caſtle, beſieged by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. but being overcome in a ſet-field by *Charls the fift*, they were fain to raiſe the ſiege and go home again. 7. *Hedinfert*, on the confluence of two little Riverets, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a frontier town on the edge of *France*, one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible places of all the *Netherlands*; built by *Charles* the 5. out of the ruines of old *Heſdin*, which having taken from the *French*, he commanded it to be razed as no longer ſerviceable; and raiſed this town inſtead thereof, ſomewhat nearer *France*. 8. *Terwin*; or *Theroven*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolemy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a frontire town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom thought impregnable, til taken by King *Henry* the 8. *Anno* 1513. they changed their opinion. A ſiege not only memorable for the iſſue of it, but for two other matters of great moment: The one, that the Emp. *Maximilian* came and ſerved in perſon under the colours of S. *George*, with the *Engliſh* croſſe upon his breaſt; The other, that the *French* intending to victual the town, had ſo great an overthrow, that had the *Engliſh* followed their fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themſelves maſters of all *France*; the *French* King being ſo aſtoniſhed on the news hereof, that he prepared to flie into *Britain*. But the *Engliſh* more minded the ſpoyls and riches of *Terwin*, than the ſequel of an abſolute victory; *Et frui maluerunt victoria, quam uti*, as the Hiſtorian ſaid of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of fortunes in the hands of the *French*; and by ſome reckoned and accounted of as a part of *Picardie*. There are beſides theſe, four walled towns more, that is to ſay, *Lilliers*, *Pern*, *Lens*, and *La Baſſei*, of which little memorable; and to the number of 854 Villages.

Theſe Countries of *Flanders*, and *Artois*, were antiently, if not a part (as the parts hereof about *Tournay* moſt undoubtedly were) yet much of the ſame nature with the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waſt of Woods and Deſerts, till the Conqueſt of it by the *French*: the Sea-coaſts

Flanders and Artois.

being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent *Piracies* did much vex those shores; and the inland countries meanly planted, for want of corn and other necessaries, for the life of man. Subject in part to the great Princes of *Ardenne*, till the discomfiture of Earl *Brunulph* by *Dagobert* sole King of the *French*. By whom about the year 621. this wild country extending then as far as the River *Some*, and comprehending besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardie*, was given unto one *Lideric le Bucq*; with the title of *Forrester*, to be holden under the Soveraignty of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Forresters*, till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Forresters*, whose names occurre upon record; there being a long intermission of their names and memories, during the ravagements and depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married *Judith*, sister to *Charls the Bald*, *King of France* and Emperour, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Soveraignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name, gave unto *Philip Augustus* K. of *France*, the country of *Artois*, with the Earldom or country of *Veromandois*, parts of *Picardie*, in marriage with *Isabel* his Niece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*. By *Lewis* the 8th son and successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in portion to his youngest son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by K. *Lewis* the 9. *An.* 1234. And by the marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders*, with *Margaret* the heir of *Artois*, and of the Earldom of *Burgundie*, both these Estates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of estate, it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millain* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being privileged to write themselves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to so great esteem, that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the marriage of *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the *Hardie* Duke of *Burgundie*, this great estate became united to that house: and afterwards was conveyed unto that of *Austria*, as shall be shewn hereafter, in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* and *ARTOIS*.

864	1	*Baldwin* the first Earl of *Flanders*.
879	2	*Baldwin* II.
918	3	*Arnulph*, son of *Baldwin* the 2.
960	4	*Baldwin* III. son of *Arnulph*.
964	5	*Arnulph* II. son of *Baldwin* 3d.
988	6	*Baldwin* IV. son of *Arnulph*.
1029	7	*Baldwin* V.
1067	8	*Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1070	9	*Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1071	10	*Robert*, son of *Baldwin* the 5th, and brother of *Baldwin* the 6.
1093	11	*Robert* II. son of *Robert* the first.
1111	12	*Baldwin* VII.
1118	13	*Charls*, son of *Canutus* K. of *Denmark*, and *Adelize* the daughter of *Robert* the first.
1127	14	*William*, son of *Robert*, the son of *William* the bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his wife, daughter of *Baldwin* the 5th.
1132	15	*Theodorick* of *Elsas*, Nephew of *Robert* the first by his daughter *Heltrude*.
1169	16	*Philip* of *Elsas*, son of *Theodorick*.
1191	17	*Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainalt*, succeeded in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Theodorick*, and sister of *Philip*.
1199	18	*Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, and Emperour of *Constantinople*.
1205	19	*Joan*, eldest daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperor, first married to *Ferdinand* son of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas*, the third son of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.
1244	20	*Margaret*, sister of *Joan*, and 2d. daughter of the Emp. *Baldwin*; widow of *Wil.* of *Dampierre*, governed the Estate of *Flanders* as long as she lived; admitting *William* her eldest son to the title of Earl, which he continued till

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

1234	1	*Robert* of *France*, grandson of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
1245	2	*Robert* II. son of *Robert*.
1302	3	*Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his wife, the daughter of *Robert* the 2d.
1315	4	*Philip* the *Long*, K. of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife

his death (being many years before his Mother) *Anno* 1255.

1278 21 *Guy* of *Dampierre*, the second son of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the estate it self on the death of his Mother.

1304 22 *Robert* III. surnamed of *Betune*, who married *Yoland*, Heir of *Odon* of *Bourgogne*, Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary*, daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*.

1323 23 *Lewis*, son of *Lewis*, and grandson of *Robert* the 3. in right of his mother, Earl of *Rethel*, in right of his Grandmother, Earl of *Nevers*; and of *Flanders* in right of his father and Grandfather.

wife, the daughter and heir of *Maud* and *Otho*, or *Otheline*.

1331 5 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundie*, Earl of *Burgundie* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife, the eldest daughter of *Philip*.

6 *Philip*, the only son of *Eudes*, in right of his mother Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Fathers life time.

1349 7 *Philip* III. son of *Philip* the 2. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young, and without issue, *Anno* 1361.

1361 8 *Margaret*, daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Countesse of *Artois* and *Burgundie*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. Succeeded *Philip* the 3. (being then a widow) in the Earldomes of *Burgundy* & *Artois*, *An.* 1361

1347 24 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers*, and *Rethel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois*, and *Burgundy* in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded at her death, but the time I find not.

1369 25 *Philip* II. surnamed the *Hardie*, Duke of *Burgundie*, succeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, &c. in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter and heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married solemnly at *Gaunt*, *Anno* 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Successors in these Estates, we shall hereafter speak in a place more proper.

The Arms of *Flanders* were *Or*, a *Lion* sable, langued and armed *Gules*. Those of *Artois* being *Seme* of Flower de Lyces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a file of three Labels *Gules*, charged with as many Castles of the first.

HAINALT.

HAINALT is bounded on the East, with *Namur*; on the West, with *Flanders*; on the North, with *Brabant*; on the South, with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was antiently called *Saltus Carbonatius*; by some writers of the middle times, the *lower Picardy*; by the *Latin* writers of these times called *Hannonia*; It seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Haine*, or *Hania*, which passeth through it; and the word *Holt* signifying a wood, as being over-spread in a manner with the Forrests of *Normault*, S. *Amand*, *De Faigna*, and that of *Poodsberg*. And then *Hainault* will be *quasi Haine-holt*, *i. e.* a Country of Woods and Forrests on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French* (as the word importeth) but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Hennegouw*, *i. e.* the County bordering on the *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compasse 950 villages, and 24 towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms, or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marshal, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The air hereof is very good, and the soil fruitfull; by reason the Country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser streams, besides divers lakes, marishes, ponds, and pools, which do much inrich it; the country abounding in most places with fresh Meddows and sweet Pastures, good fruits, and profitable trees, but especially with great plenty of corn. Here are also in some parts of it, notable *Mines* of iron and lead; and excellent *quarries* of the best stone, fit for all kind of buildings.

The principal of the towns are 1. *Monts*, situate at the confluence of the *Haine*, and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it; fortified besides with a very strong wall, three large deep ditches, and an antient Castle. The Town great, beautifull, and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants, and men of trade: the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charls* the Great, and sometimes used for the stile of the Earls of *Hainalt*. In this town is the noble Nunnery of St. *Valdrude*, once a a Dutchesse of *Lorr in*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of noble families; in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns; in the afternoons according to their birth and qualities; who when they please may leave the Cloister, and be married. The Abbesse hath both *jurisdictions*, in the town and country about it; and antiently did put the Earls of *Hainault* into possession of the state. Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large Revenues) there is at 2 *Maubuige* on the *Sambree*, a good town of Merchandise. 3. *Valenciennes* seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*; which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but passe almost under every mans house, to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The site hereof so strong by nature, (besides the fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapprochable by water; and on the other sides so defended by hils, that it can hardly be besieged, but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large, and beautifull town, especially for publick buildings, the chief whereof are the Church of *our Lady*,

Hainalt built after the antient manner of *Architecture*, with sumptuous arches, and goodly Pillars of *Marble* and *Porphyrie*; the Earls Palace and the Town-hal, buildings of great magnificence and excellent workmanship: the birth-place of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany*; of *Mary* daughter of *Charls* the *Warlike*; and of *Froissart* the great *French Historian*. Finally a town, which for the eminence thereof, is governed as a *State* apart by it self, having under the jurisdiction of it 3 towns, and 132 villages; which on occasion of *appeal* resort not to the Provincial Councel at *Montz*, but the great Councel at *Machlyn*. 4. *Chimay* upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleasant Forrest, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldest son of the Duke of *Arschot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who have here a very goodly Pallace. 5. *Halle*, seated on the *Seine*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongst the Papists, by reason of an Image of the blessed Virgin, famed for many miracles. Of which, see *Lipsius* on that Subject. 6. *Beauvais*, an old town, at a pillar whereof begin all the ways leading into *France*, made of paved stones by *Brunehault* the wife of *Siggebert* King of *Mets* and *Austrasia*, who with *Fridegonde* the wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katherine Medices* the wife of *Henry* the 2. are said to be the three *Furies* of *France*. 7. *Landrecie* on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable resistance which it made to *Charles* the 5. 1543. 8. *Mariemburg*, built by *Mary* Queen of *Hungarie*, Governesse here for the said *Charles*, *Anno* 1524. to serve as a Bulwark against *France*, on which it frontireth. 9. *Phillippe Ville*, built and well fortified for the same reason by King *Philip* the 2. 10. *Bouchant* upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Ostrivand*, which County is the title of the first son of *Hainalt*: and by that name *William* the eldest son of *Albert* Earl of *Hainalt* and *Holland* was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2. 11, *Conde* a good little town seated on the *Scheld*, the moitie whereof belonged heretofore to the house of *Montpensier* in *France*; as 12 *Anghien* a town of great trade for *tapestrie*, to the house of *Vendosme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghien* do derive their titles. 13. *Beaumont* upon the knap of a goodly hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the present to the Dukes of *Arschot*; but antiently the *partage* of the second son of the Earls of *Hainalt*. 14. *Bins* or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the jointure-towns of the Countesses of *Hainalt*; much beautified and made a place of pleasures by *Mary* Queen of *Hungarie*, to who it was given by *Charles* the 5, (commonly called the *Queens Paradise*) but burnt and utterly destroyed by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. 15. *Ath*, seated on both sides of the *Dender*, a little, but a pleasant and wealthy town; ; here being held the *staple* of Linnen for all this country, and the cloth here sold amounting to 200000. crowns *per annum*.

As for the Hiflory of *Hainalt*, the antient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the most valiant and most potent people of all the *Galls*, possessed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and some part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the field, when the *Belgæ* mustered up their united forces against *Julius Cæsar*, no fewer then 50000 fighting men; won from the *Romans* by the *French*, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing so till the death of *Brunulph*, discomfited and slain in battel by *Dagobert* sole King of the *French*, whom his Father in his life time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and designed unto the conquest of it, but the fury of the war being over, the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it, estated upon other houses, and the rest allotted out amongst his children: *Alberic*, surnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger sons was by *Sigebert* King of *Mets* or *Austrasia*, enfeoffed of this country, by the name and title of Earl of *Hainalt*. Twice this estate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1. In the person of *Baldwin the* 5th. Earl of *Flanders*, succeeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his wife, daughter of *Regnier* the 3d. And 2ly. by the marriage of *Baldwin* the 6. of *Hainalt*, with *Margaret* Countesse of *Flanders*, sister and heir of *Philip* of *Elsas*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the first time by the usurpation of *Flanders*, wrested from *Arnulph* the 3d. by his Uncle *Robert*; and the second time by the intrusion of *John de Avesnes*, natural son of *Margaret* the second daughter of the Emperour *Baldwin*, into the Estate and Earldom of *Hainalt*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the marriage of *John de Avesnes* to *Adelize* or *Aleide*, daughter, (and at the last) heir of *Florence* the 4th. Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *&c.* from which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundie*.

The EARLES of *Hainalt*.

1 *Alberic*, one of the younger sons of *Brunulph*, Earl of *Ardenne*.
2 *Waultier*, son of *Alberic*.
3 *Waultier* II. son of *Waultier* the first.
4 *Waultier* III. son of *Waultier* second.
5 *Albon* in right of his wife, eldest daughter of *Waultier* the third.
6 *Albon* II. son of the said *Albon* by that wife.
7 *Manassier* son of *Albon* the second.
8 *Regnier* son of *Manassier*.
9 *Regnier* II. son of *Regnier* the first.
10 *Regnier* III. son of *Regnier* the second.
11 *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the first of that name in *Hainalt*. succeeded in right of *Richild* his wife, the sole daughter to *Regnier* the third.
1070 12 *Arnulph*, son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, despoiled of his estate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who seised on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
1071 13 *Baldwin* II. brother of *Arnulph*, succeeded in *Hainalt*.

14 *Bald-*

14 *Baldwin* III. ſon of *Baldwin* the ſecond.
15 *Baldwin* IV. ſon of *Baldwin* the third.
16 *Baldwin* V. ſon of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17 *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainalt*, ſon of *Baldwin* the fift, and the 8th of that name in *Flanders*, into which alſo he ſucceeded, in right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter and heir of *Philip* of *Elſas* Earl of *Flanders*.
1199 18 *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainalt*, and IX of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.
1295 19 *Joan* Counteſſe of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, firſt married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
1244 20 *Margaret* the younger ſiſter of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon* Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom ſhe had *William* and *Guy*, both Earls of *Flanders*.
21 *John de Aveſnes*, baſe ſon of *Margaret*, begot before her marriage by *Buſchart* her Guardian, the Prior of S. *Peters* in *L'Iſle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainalt* from his Brethren born in lawful wedlock; and married *Aleide* daughter and heir of *Florence* the 4. Earl of *Holland*: whoſe ſucceſſors in both Eſtates we ſhall meet with there, and amongſt them, with *William* the 2d. father of Queen *Philippa*, wife of *Edward* the 3. one of the moſt conſiderable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

The *Biſhoprick* of *CAMBRAY*.

SOuthward from *Hainalt* lieth the *Biſhoprick* of *CAMBRAY*, containing a goodly town and territory, reckoned of antiently as a part of *Hainalt*, now a ſtate diſtinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, then ſubject to them.

The Principal City hereof is *Cambray* (called in *Latin*, *Cameracum*) ſeated on both ſides of the River *Scheld*; a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them induſtrious; eſpecially in making that fine linnen Cloth, from hence called *Camerac*, or *Cambrick*. The private buildings very fair, but the publick much fairer, eſpecially the Monaſteries and other Churches of which the moſt remarkable is that of *our Ladie*, an ancient and ſumptuous fabrick, and the See Epiſcopal. From hence the countrey and territory hereunto adjoyning is called *Cambreſis*, in which are divers Villages and places of importance. The chief of which are 1. *Chaſtean Cambreſis*, ſix leagues from the City, remarkable for the treaty held there, betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. in which a peace was happily ſetled amongſt all the chief Princes of *Chriſtendom*, after a long & tedious war between thoſe *Kings*, and the Confederats of each; and before that, for the Confederacy there made by the ſaid Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperour, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, againſt the *Signeurie* of *Venice*, Anno 1508. called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Aveſnes le ſec* (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Aveſnes* in *Hainalt*) near which are digged excellent white ſtones for building, little inferiour unto *Marble*.

This *Biſhoprick* was founded in the perſon of S. *Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, *An.* 390. or thereabouts. Whoſe Succeſſors in tract of time became ſo potent, that at the laſt the Biſhop hereof became both the Lord *ſpiritual* and *temporal* of the town and territory; honoured with the title of a Duke, and *Prince* of the Empire; and in the end made an Arch-biſhop by Pope *Paul* the 4th. *Anno* 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made *Imperial* by the *German* Emperors, afterwards by *Henry* the fift given in protection to *Robert* of *Hieruſalem*, Earl of *Flanders*; and finally ſetled and confirmed on all his Succeſſors, by the Emperour *Frederick*, *An.* 1164. Which notwithſtanding, the *French* finding it convenient for them, divers times poſſeſſed it: but governing with too great inſolence, they were driven out by the people, in the time of *Lewis* the 11th. and the town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, governor of theſe countries for his ſon *Philip*. *Charls* the 5th. in the year 1743. built a ſtrong *citadel* in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the town againſt the *French*; but indeed to keep it for himſelf. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alenſon*, (brother of *Henry* the 3d. of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, *Anno* 1582. but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the town for want of victuals. Since that continually poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom ſtrongly garriſoned; but ſo, that the people ſtill enjoy their ancient priviledges, and are governed by their own Laws, and Biſhops, as in former times.

5. *NAMVR*.

THe Earldom of *NAMVR* hath on the Eaſt, *Hainalt*; on the Weſt, the Biſhoprick of *Leige*; on the North, *Brabant*; and on the South, *Luxenbourg*. So called from *Namur* the chief town of it; *Namurcum*, and *Namurcenis comitatus* in our *Latin* Writers. The countrey very ſmall, containing only 182. Villages, and four walled Towns; but plentiful of all commodities, and repleniſhed with a loyal and induſtrious people. Particularly the air hereof is very wholeſom; the countrey watered with many rivers and pleaſant brooks, (amongſt which the *Sambre*, and the *Maes*) which beſides the benefit of portage, yeeld great plenty of fiſh. The hils, whereof it hath not many, cloathed with woods, abounding with all kind of fowl and veniſon; the vallies eminently fruitful of all ſorts of grain, rich mines of Lead, quarries of Marble of all colours, as alſo of *Porphyrie* or *Jaſper*, and great plenty of *Coal*. In mines of Iron ſo abounding, and that continually hammered by a painful people, that *Vulcans* Forge may ſeem to be reſtored to the world again, and ſeated here; which as it makes the people wealthy,

ſo

Namur. so it keeps them from idleneſſe. And as for the Nobility, they are generally valiant, given to all military exerciſes fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their *Princes*, the greateſt virtue of a ſubject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was ſaid, that is to ſay, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where reſideth the *Council* for the country, from which lyeth no appeal but to *Machlyn* only. Seated between two hils on both ſides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuſe*. The City rich, inhabited for the moſt part by the Nobility, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, founded here in the Church of S. *Albin*, *Anno* 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Monſtier*, are two Nunneries of Ladies: like thoſe of *Montz* and *Maubuige* ſpoken of in *Hainalt*. 2. *Bovines* upon the *Meuſe*, ſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. ſince repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a ſmall Town, but of moſt exact Fortifications, built by *Charls* the 5th. *An.* 1555. to oppoſe the *French*; who had then poſſeſſed themſelves of *Martemburg*, a Town of *Hainalt*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but ſtanding in a goodly and fruitful countrey. Of the Villages the chief is *Done*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and honoured with the title of a *Viſcomtie*; 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vaſcie*, and 4. *Sauſin*, of much beauty and greatneſs.

The antient Inhabitants of this countrey were a part of the *Nervii*; firſt made an Earldom by ſome of the deſcendents of the ſons of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*: who being diſpoſſeſſed of their Fathers kingdom by *Meroveus*, the Maſter of his horſe (to whom he had committed the guardianſhip or tuition of them) were forced to betake themſelves to the moſt defenſible places of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, and the parts adjoyning, where they founded the great Earldoms of *Ardenne* and *Moſelle*, as before is ſaid. Divided in ſucceeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls poſſeſſed, I am yet to learn; the Eſtate being ſmall, and conſequently the Princes of it not much conſiderable. Allied to the Royal houſe of *France* by the marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof, with *Irmingrade* daughter of *Charls* of *France*, the firſt Duke of *Lorreun*: and after unto the houſe of *Flanders*, by the marriage of N. the daughter and heir of *Peter* the laſt Earl of that Race, to *Henry* ſecond, ſon of *Baldwin* the 8th of *Flanders*, and brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the firſt Emperour of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*, whom he ſucceeded in that Empire. After whoſe death, it came by *Yoland* his daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who ſucceeded alſo in the Empire, and after his deceaſe to *Philip* his younger ſon. But he deceaſing without iſſue, and *Robert* his elder brother reigning in *Conſtantinople*, it was ſeized on by *Philip* the brother of *Henry*, who to aſſure himſelf thereof took to wife *Mary* daughter of *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*. By a Neece or Couſin of this *Philip*, conveyed in marriage to *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg*, (the Father by a former wife of *Henry* the 7th, Emperour and Earl of *Luxembourg*) and finally brought back again to the houſe of *Flanders* by the marriage of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Iſabel* daughter of that *Henry* by the heir of *Namur*. And in his iſſue it continued (for ought I can find) til it was ſwallowed up, with the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces by the houſe of *Burgundy*: So that the higheſt we can goe in ſearch of the Earls of *Namur*, is to the time of *Hugh Capet* and *Charls* of *Lorrein*; which was 540 years after the coming in of the ſons of *Clodion*. From which time downwards the ſucceſſion is confuſed and broken; and towards the later end diſcontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record, I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good Order as I could; and here preſent them in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *Namur*.

1 *Albert*, the Co-temporary of *Hugh Capet*, ſpoken of before.

2 *Godfrey*, the ſon of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice* wife of *Baldwin* the 5th of *Hainalt*, and mother of *Baldwin* the 6th of *Hainalt*, and the 8th of *Flanders*.

3 *Peter*, the ſon or brother of *Godfrey*.

4 *Henry* the ſecond ſon of *Balwin* the 8th of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his wife, the heir of *Peter* Emp. of *Conſtantinople* alſo on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th, his elder Brother.

1216 5 *Peter* II. ſon-in-Law of *Henry* Emp. of *Conſtantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.

6, 7. *Philip* the younger ſon of *Peter*, and *John* the elder brother of *Henry*, both taking to themſelves the Title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Conſtantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceaſing without iſſue.

8 *Philip* II. brother of *John* and *Henry*, without iſſue alſo.

9 *John* II. ſurnam'd of *Dampierre*, the 3d. ſon of *William* of *Dampierre*, by *Margaret* Counteſſe of *Flanders*, daughter and heir of the Emperour *Baldwin*, ſucceeded by the gift of his Mother, chaleng-ing the diſpoſing of it, as next heir of *Philip* the 2. or in the right Paramont of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better title by

10 *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, and elder brother of *John* the 2d. in right of *Iſabel* his wife, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg* by the heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her name nor Parents

11 *John* III. ſon of *Guy* and *Iſabel*.

12 *John* IV. ſon of *Guy* by a former wife: the Brothers of *John* the 3d. by the whole bloud being abſent or unfriended, and ſo put beſide.

13 *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the 4th. by the ſame *Venter*.

14 *John* V. ſon of *Guy* the 2d. who in the year 1307. married a Neece of *Lewis* the 9th. of *France*, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* a younger Son.

15 *John* VI. who in the year 1429 ſold this

this estate to Duke *Philip* the *Good*, to be enjoyed by him on the death of *Theodorus* the next heir hereof, infirm, and (as it seems) without hope of Children. *Luxenbourg.*

16 *Theodore* or *Theodorick*, the last Earl of *Namur*, after whose death Duke *Philip* entred on this Earldom by the former contract, and as the next heir of the house of *Flanders*, continued ever since unto his Posterity.

The Armes hereof are, *Or*, a Lion *sable*, debruised with a Bend *Gules*.

6. LVXENBOVRG.

LUXENBOURG is bounded on the East, with the *Mosette*, and the land of *Treves*; on the West, with the *Meuse* or *Maes*, and a branch of the Forrest of *Ardenne*; on the North, with *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainalt*; and on the South, with the Dutchie of *Lorrein*; So called from the Castle, near the Town of *Luxembourg*, selected by *Sigifride* the first Earl hereof for his seat and residence.

The whole divided into two parts; the Eastern part being called *Fanenne*, fruitfull of corn, and yeelding withall some wines, some mines, and many excellent quarries of goodly stone; the Western called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spacious Forrest, which sometimes overshadowed all this Country; barren of corn, but very plentifull of Venison, and of Fowl good store.

The people of this Country are not all of one language, those nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxenbourg*, *Arlune*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville*, and the rest on that side, speaking the *Dutch*; as those of *Ivois*, *Mommedi*, *Morvill*, and *Damvilliers*, with the rest bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*. In which regard the pleadings held before the *Council* residing in *Luxenbourg*, are made in both languages; that so they may be understood by all that have businesse there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of virtue, curtesie and hospitality towards one another; and of great truth and faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst *Landlords* in all these countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the *Pesants* of *France*, contrary to the use and liberties of the rest of the *Netherlands*. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both *Law* and *Lawyers*; and for the most part end their controversies amongst themselves, without any *processe*.

The whole country containeth in compasse about 70 leagues, or 200 *Italian* miles; in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The Principal of which are 1. *Lucembourg*, built in the place where antiently stood the *Augusta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolomy*; and took this new name *quasi Lucis burgum*, from the image of the *Sun* there worshiped; seated on the *Alsinutius* or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large, and of a strong situation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the spoils, which the long wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it, before the treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, hononred with the residence of the *Councill* hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* K. of *Bohemia*, slain in the battel of *Crecie* against the *English*, *Anno* 1348. 2. *Arlune*, on the top of an high hill, so called *quasi Ara lunæ*, from an Altar consecrated to the *Moon* in the times of *Paganism*. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Moselle*, over which it hath a goodly bridge; a frontier Town near *Metz*, and the border of *Lorrein*; and for that cause made marvellous strong, but taken by the *French*, *Anno* 1558, and restored the next year by the peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Bostonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it standeth. 5. *Mommedi*, on an high hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Danvilliers*, once a very strong place also; both taken and ransacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1552. 7. *Morville* upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorrein*, the other to the King of *Spain*, as Duke of *Luxenbourg*, for which cause called *La ville commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. *Ivoys*, a place once of great importance, sacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1552. and restored by the treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. *La Ferte* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the same condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* standeth the principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the banks the river *Maes*, from the borders of *Lorrein* on the South, to the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, and the Dukedom of *Bovillon* on the North. A small but very fair estate of fruitfull soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some towns of note, the principal whereof, 1. *Jamais*, upon the borders of *Lorrein*, by the Duke whereof it was taken, after a long season, from the Lady *Charlotte*, the last heir general of the house of *Mark*, *Anno* 1585, and laid unto that Dukedome as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchiery*, a strong town of war, bordering on *Torasobe* in *Picardy*, to which by some it is ascribed. 3. *Sedan*, in *Latin* called *Sedunum ad Mosam*, because situate on the banks of the *Maes* or *Mosa*, the usual residence of the Prince; a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 brasse peeces of Ordnance; honoured also with a seat of learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar School, and an University; is in the *Criticism* of these times called a *Schola illustris*, to which men may send their children to learn good letters, though they can take in them no *Degrees*, that being a privilege reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Wincheſter*, and *Eaton*; but that the younger Students in these last named, are more restrained to *Rhetorick* and *Grammar*, than in the other; though these more liberally indowed for the incouragement and reward of learning, than all the *Scholæ illustres* of either *Germany*. 4. *Mouson*, A Town of great strength and consequence on the River *Maes*; upon some jealousies of State, garrisoned by the *French*, as also is *Sedan* it self, and most of the other good Towns belonging unto his Principality;

Bouillon cipality; but so that the revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other rights of Soveraignty are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This Estate antiently was a part of the Dukedome of *Bouillon*; from which dismembred for the portion of some younger Prince, at such time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* succeeded in the Dukedome of *Lorrein*, after *Charles* and *Otho* the first Dukes; or else excepted and reserved by *Godfrey* (surnamed) of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hierusalem*, when he sold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Bishop of *Liege*. By many mean conveyances and alterations of the Owners, it came at last to the house of *Arimberg*, a familie of great wealth and power in *Westphalen* (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the heir generall of which house it was brought in marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, about the year 1330. from whom descended *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Soveraign of *Sedan*, with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the estates of *Sanct* and *Florenge*, *Feifs* holden of the Dukedome of *Bouillon*, and eagerly affecting to unite the estates together (as they had been antiently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon*, of *Eberhard* Earl of *Mark*, his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and consequently Duke of *Bouillon* also. Proud of his honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the rights of his new Dukedom, against a sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a sute there depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up arms against the Empire, with far more courage than discretion. For being in the course of that war worsted by *Charles* the fifth (for whom he was too weak an enemy) the Town of *Bouillon* being taken by the conquering Emperour, was afterwards restored to the Bishops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the protection of the *French* (as his Ancestors, from the time of *Charles* the 8th. had done before) and died *Anno* 1535. leaving his titles and estate unto *Robert* his son, one of the *Marshals* of *France*; whose grandson, called also *Robert*, being a dear friend and companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* K. of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* also, dying without issue at *Geneva*, *Anno* 1588, committed to him the disposal of his estates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Sister. And he so well discharged his trust, that (having setled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turene* in *France* (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long war against the Leaguers) and with her the possession of *Sedan*, and title of *Bouillon*; whose posterity do still enjoy it. The whole succession of these Princes we shall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again to the *Dutchie* of *Luxembourg*, it was at first a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, dismembred from it in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the first, by *Sigifride* the son of *Ricuinus* Prince thereof; who in the division of that estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his portion, with the title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good record, in a constant Order of Succession, until the time of *Henry* the 1. father of *Henry* the 7th. Emperour of *Germany*, and of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are most considerable, though all of them of eminent quality in their several times, *viz.* 1. *Henry* elected and crowned Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the 7th. said to be poisoned by a Frier in the Holy Chalice, to prevent some designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial power in *Italie*. 2. *John* the son of this *Henry* chosen King of *Bohemia*, in regard of his marriage with *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Wenceslaus*, King thereof; the possession of which Realm he left unto his posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles* the 4th. the eldest son of this *John*, in the person of *Wenceslaus* his younger brother. What else concerns it, we shall find in this following Catalogue of

EARLES and DUKES of *LUXEMBOURG.*

1 *Sigifride*, the sone of *Ricuine*, Prince of *Ardenne*; the first Earl of *Luxembourg*.

2 *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine* wife of *Baldwin* the 4th. of *Flanders*; but whose son I find not.

3 *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was also Earl of *Luxembourg* by the right of marriage. Father of *Agnes*, the wife of *Simon* 2d. Duke of *Lorrein*.

4 *Conrade*, perhaps the Son of *Godfrey* by the daughter of *Luxembourg*, Father of *Catherine*, wife of *Matthew* the 2d. Duke of *Lorrein*.

5 *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg*, slain in the quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Gueldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchie of *Limbourg*.

6 *Henry* II. son of *Henry* the 1st. by means of his brother *Baldwin* Elector of *Triers*, was chosen Emperour of the *Germans*, the 7th. of that name, *Anno* 1308. first crowned at *Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the last Emperours that medled in the affairs of *Italy*.

1313 7 *John*, son of *Henry* II. Earl of *Luxembourg*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Wenceslaus* the elder, King of *Bohemia*; of which he was upon that marriage elected and crowned King, *An.* 1311. in the life of his father; slain by the *English* in the battel of *Crecie*, *Anno.* 1346.

1346 8 *Wenceslaus*, the younger son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxembourg* by his elder brother *Charles* the 4th. Emperour, and King of *Bohemia*.

1383 9 *Wenceslaus* II. eldest son of the said *Charles* the 4th. Emperour, and King of *Bohemia* also, succeeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.

1419 10 *Sigismund*, brother of *Wenceslaus*, succeeded *Wenceslaus* in all his estates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the marriage of *Mary* daughter of King *Lewis* the first.

11 *Elizabeth*, daughter of *John* Duke of *Garlitz*, (a Town of *Lusatia*) the brother of *Sigismund*, by the gift of *Sigismund* her Uncle, being then alive; the better to fit her for the bed of

An

Anthony of *Bourgogn* Duke of *Brabant*; after whose decease she married *John* the 3d. Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. But having no issue by either of them, she sold her interest in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good. *Limbourg*

12 *Philip* the Good, succeeded on the sale aforesaid, made by the said *Elizabeth*, in pursuance of the contract and agreement made at her first martiage, for setling this estate in the house of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Successors in these *Belgick* Provinces, we shall speak hereafter.

The Arms are *B.* fix Barrulets *A*, supporting a Lion *G*, crowned and armed *Or*.

7 *LIMBOVRG.*

THe greatest of the Estates of *Belgium*, for extent of territory, at the time of their incorporating in the house of *Burgundie*, was that of *Brabant*; comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces, that is to say, the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, the Marquisate of the *holy Empire*, and the Seigneury of *Machlyn*, with the Soveraignty of *Leige* or *Luick-land*.

7. *LIMBOURG*, hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Gulick* in *High Germany*; on the West, the Bishoprick of *Leige*; on the North, *Brabant*; and on the South, the Dukedom of *Luxembourg*. The Soil fruitfull of all necessary commodities, excepting wines, the want whereof is recompensed with most excellent wheat, great store of fewell, and plenty of the best Iron mines in all these countries: all which commodities it hath of so great excellency in their several kinds, that it is said of them proverbially, that *their Bread is better than bread, their Fire hotter than fire*, & *their Iron harder than iron*. It is also well stored with medicinable simples, and enriched with a mine of *Copperas*, (by *Plinie* called *Lapis ærosus lib.* 34. *c.* 10.) which being incorporated with brasse makes *Latin*, and increaseth the brasse by one third part. *Lapis ærosus multum æris habet*, & *ex eo fuso fit æs*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the least of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities, *viz.* 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole estate, pleasantly seated on a hill amongst shady woods, under which runneth the river *VVesdo*; which having watred the whole Country emptieth it self into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very strong Castle, mounted upon a steep *Precipice*, of no easie accesse. 2. *Walkenbourg*, called by the French *Fauquemont*, a reasonable fair Town, with a large territory, two Dutch miles from *Maestricht*; conquered from *Reynold* Lord hereof by *John* the 3d. Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Castle, the territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the second. 4. *Rhode le Duck*, a little old Town, with as old a Castle, half a league from *VValkenbourg*. 5. *Carpen*, situate between *Gulick* and *Colen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church, and a strong Castle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garrison for defence of the place. Each of these Towns hath jurisdiction on the parts adjoyning; but with appeal unto the *Chancery* at *Brabant*.

The antient Inhabitants of this tract, and the Bishoprick of *Leige* adjoyning, were the *Eburones*. When it was first made an Earldom, I am yet to seek. Most probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, it was at first a member of that Earldom also; dismembred from it for the portion of some younger Son, as *Luxembourg* and *Namur* were, or seized on by some strange Pretender (as *Gulick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorrein*, and the direct heirs of the house of *Ardenne*, were absent in the wars of the *Holy Land*. But whensoever, and by whomsoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, *Anno* 1172. *Henry* one of the Dukes hereof, married his daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the 3d. Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that house some colour to pretend unto it: backed with a better title on the death of another *Henry*, the last Duke of *Limbourg*, whose next heir *Adolph*, sold it to *John* Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former marriage, *Anno* 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Gueldres*, thinking himself to have a better title than *Adolph*, in right of *Ermingrade* his wife, the daughter of *Herman* a late Duke hereof; put in his plea, and challenged it by force of Arms: but being vanquished and taken prisoner by the said Duke *John*, in the battel of *VVorancan*, was fain for his release, to release all his claim and title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*; after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the house of *Burgundie*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or*, and *Gules*.

8. *LVICK-LAND.*
OR
The *Bishoprick* of *LEIGE.*

VVEstward of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier estate than it, lieth *LUICK-LAND*, as the Dutch, or the *Bishoprick* of *LEIGE*, (*Leodiensis*) as the *Latin* and *French* writers call it: antiently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the house of *Burgundie*, as Lords of that country. By some accompted of, and described as a part of *Germany*; but for the reasons before mentioned I shall place it here: environed on all sides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to say, with the Dukedome of *Limbourg*, and the Earldome of *Namur* on the East; with *Brabant* on the North and West; on the South, with *Luxembourg*.

The Air hereof is very wholsome, and the Earth as fruitfull, abounding with all kind of grain and fruits, some store of Wine; and as for flesh, fish, fowl, and venison, it hath very great plenty, and that

Leige. that too of an excellnt taſt: leſſe fertile in ſuch parts hereof as lye towards *Luxembourg*, in which it is more ſwelled with Hills, and over-ſpread with ſhady Woods, remainders of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, within which it ſtood. But the chief riches of this Countrey is under ground, conſiſting in mines of Lead, and Iron, and ſome few of Gold; quarries of *Alabaſter*, mingled with all ſorts of *Marble*; rich veins of *Brimſtone*, and unexhauſtible pits of Coal; which laſt it hath in ſuch abundance, that there is digged within the compaſſe of one league of the City of *Leige*, not only ſufficient for that great City; but ſo much overplus as being ſold at mean prices about the countrey, amounts unto 100000 ducats of yearly value. The Coal much ſweeter than elſewhere, and of a nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oyl; and the ſtrong fervour of it taken off, by caſting ſalt on it.

The whole Countrey containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800. Villages, the principal of which are 1 *Leige* or *Luick*, (in *Latine Leodium*) ſituate in a pleaſant valley environed with hils, the *Meuſe* entring it in two branches, accompanied with four leſſer Riverets, which make in it many delightfull Ilands. The compaſſe of it about four miles, the ordinary buildings very fair, all built of ſtone; the Biſhops Palace a magnificent and ſumptuous piece: the Churches in number forty, of which eight are *Collegiate*, 32 *Parochiall*; all of them for their riches and beauty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germanie*. Beſides theſe, there are ſo many *Convents*, *Monaſteries*, and religious houſes about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred: all of them of ſuch fair revenues, ſo well endowed, and the Religious perſons there of ſo great authority, that it is called the *Paradiſe of Prieſts*, and that deſervedly. It is alſo an Univerſity of good antiquity, wherein were Students at one time, 9. Kings Sons, 24. Dukes Sons, 29. Earls Sons, beſides Barons and Gentlemen; the greateſt part of which were *Canons* of the Church of S. *Lambert*, which is the *Cathedrall* of the City. Yet notwithſtanding it hath taſted of the malice of fortune, as well as others, being firſt deſtroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundie*, *Anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Biſhop as Lord *temporall* of it; from whom (being long ſince made an *Imperiall* City) there lieth an *Appeal* to the Chamber of *Spires*. 2. *Dinand* upon the *Meuſe*, near *Namur*, of very great traffick till deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundie*, in the ſame year with *Leige*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again ſacked by K. *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, *Anno* 1854. 3. *Muſeck*, upon the *Meuſe* or *Maes* alſo, a league from whence is the fair *Nunnery* of *Thuren*, of the ſame nature with that of *Mentz*, and others ſpoken of before: the like to which there is near 4. *Bilſen*, another Town of this Biſhoprick; the *Abbeſſes* of each having the privilege of coyning both gold and ſilver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borelom*, in the County of *Dioſtein*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the *Great*, the title and poſſeſſion of *Ogier* the *Dane*, ſo famous in the Hiſtory of *Gallen* of *France*, and others of the old *Romances*. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the title of a Marqueſſe to the Biſhop of *Leige*. 7. *Centron* or S. *Truden*, a fair Town, ſo called of the Abbie dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoey*, ſo called of a violent River, which there runs into the *Meuſe*. 9. *Tungres*, the chief City of the *Tongri*, which together with the *Eburones* were) once the Inhabitants of this tract; in which are ſtill the ruines of a Temple conſecrated to *Hercules*. Antiently an Epiſcopall See, tranſlated hence to *Maeſtricht*, and at laſt to *Leige*: and in thoſe times ſo great, and of ſuch renown, that *Attila* the *Hun* deſtroyed it in 100 Churches; now but a very ſmall Town, and not worth the mentioning but for theſe antiquities. Eight leagues from hence, amongſt the ſhady thickets of the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, is that ſo celebrated 10 Village, and thoſe famous hot Baths, frequented from all the places of *Europe*, called the *Spa*: not ſo pleaſant, as wholſome; not ſo wholſome, as famous. Yet are they good for ſundry diſeaſes, as the *Tertian Ague*, and *Dropſie*, the *Stone*, the exulceration of the Lungs, the *Sciatique*, &c. They are of moſt virtue in *July*, becauſe they are then hotteſt; and to ſuch as taſt them, they reliſh much of Iron, from ſome Iron mines, it ſeemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. Theſe Baths of great fame in the time of *Plinie*, who doth thus deſcribe them. *Tungri Civitas fontem habet inſignem, plurimis bullis ſtillantem, ferruginei ſaporis, quod ipſum non niſi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas diſcutit, calculorumq; vitia.* So he, *lib.* 31. *cap.* 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this preſent time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this accompt) followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Belgica*, till the conqueſt of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; in the diviſion of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the ſhare of the Kings of *France*, as lying almoſt wholly on the Weſt or *French* ſide of the River *Maes*, which parted their poſſeſſions in that broken Kingdome. VVon from *Lotharius* the *French* K. (the laſt but one of the Caroline Race) by *Otho* the 2d, it was by him made part of the Dukedome of *Lorrein* then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till ſold by *Godfrie* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrein* to the Biſhops of *Leige*, (of which more anon) ſince which time it hath been the Patrimony of thoſe wealthy Prelates. As for the Biſhoprick of *Leige*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was ſaid; after the ſackage of which City by *Attila*, removed *Anno* 498. by S. *Servatius* unto *Maeſtricht*. But the people of *Maeſtricht* having Martyred S. *Lambert*, their Biſhop, *Anno* 710. by *Hubert* his deſigned Succeſſor, with the leave of Pope *Conſtantine*, it was tranſlated to this place, and a Cathedrall Church here founded by the name of S. *Lambert*. His Succeſſors did ſo well husband their advantages, that they did not only buy the Dukedome of *Bouillon*, but the City and territory of *Leige*, ſold unto *Speutus* and *Obertus* ſucceſſively Biſhops of it, by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, at his departure hence to the *Holy-land*: not much increaſed ſince that in lands, though he be in titles, the Biſhop being ſtiled a *Prince* of the *Empire*, Duke of *Bouillon*, Marqueſſe of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Lootz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinary revenues above 30000

Du-

ducats yearly, his subjects living very well under him, at easie rents, and growing for the most part unto good estates: An argument whereof may be, that when the *Leigeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, (under whose *Clientele* they were, as Duke of *Brabant*) they bought their peace of him at the price of 600000 *Florens* of the *Rhene*, to be paid in six years. After which again rebelling against *Charles* the *warlike*, (as they have been observed to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gaunt*, they were able to wage 30000 men, but not being able to withstand the forces of their Lord *Protector*, they fell into that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the house of *Austria*: but counted *neutral* in the quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain*, and the *States confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniard*, and the *French*; though many times they suffer in the contestations. *Bouillon.*

Southward hereof, betwixt it and *Luxembourg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, subject unto the Bishops of *Leige*; but a State distinct, and holden by a different title. It taketh up a great part of that Country, which more particularly and specially is called the Forrest of *Ardenne*, with the woods whereof in many places overshadowed; but not unfurnished of fair Towns, and wealthy Villages. The principal of which 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Muson Court*, destroyed by *Charles* the fifth in his war against *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Duke of *Bouillon*; but on the peace ensuing repaired again. 3. *Sanst*, and 4. *Floringe*, *Feifs*, as before is said, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but possessed by the Soveraigns of *Sedan*, since the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Soveraign of *Sedan*, had them in marriage with *Joan* his wife, the right heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the first Duke of *Bouillon* of that family. The last a pretty town till destroyed by the *French*, in the wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the seconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, since passing in accompt as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, in the Forrest of *Ardenne*, the cause of the great war betwixt *Charls* the fifth, and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, spoken of before; the Emperour having passed sentence in behalf of the *Embries*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretensions of the house of *Chinay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the side of a Hill near the River *Senoy*, a fair large Citie, and beautified with a goodly Castle on the top of the said Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, so strong, as well by Art as Nature, that, before the use of great Ordnance, it was held impregnable. Much spoiled in the war betwixt *Charls* the fifth, and *Robert* of *Mark*, and tossed from on Master to another in a little time: For being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, *Anno* 1552. and finally restored to the Bishop of *Leige* by the treaty of *Cambray*, *Anno* 1559. but without prejudice to the claim and title of the Prince of *Sedan*: So that there are no fewer than three distinct families, which at this time enjoy the title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to say, the Bishops of *Leige*, who hath precedency of title, and the possession of the City; the house of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sanst*, and some other peeces; and the heirs males of the Collateral line of the house of *Mark*, who hold *Lumainge*, *Rochfort*, and some other places; but of lesse importance.

This Dukedom once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the division of that estate betwixt the Children of *Ricuini*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the share of *Godfrey* his eldest Son, (*Sedant*, with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his son, united to the Dukedom of *Lorein*, succeeding into that estate after *Charles* and *Otho*; and by another *Godfrey* the first Duke of *Lorrein* dismembred from it, and given in Dower with his Sister *Ida*, at her marriage with *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of these was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, either because he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof, before he did attain to the Dukedome of *Lorrein*; who to provide himself of necessaries for the wars of the *Holy-land* (so fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) sold first this Dukedome unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole County of *Luick-land* to *Speutus* Bishops of *Leige* successively, and their successors for ever; which though accounted by most writers for a part of *Luick-land*, or of the Bishoprick of *Leige*, call it which you will, was notwithstanding held by those great Prelates as a State distinct, and governed under them by the Estates of the Country, from whose sentence there lay no Appeal: The maintenance of which Privileges, on an Appeal made by the *Embries* unto *Charles* the fift, cost *Robert* Earl of *Mark* so dear, who had not long before purchased this Estate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Bishop and Cardinal of *Leige*, as was said before. The rest of the story we have had already in our description of *Sedan*; we will now look upon the Princes which have born these titles.

The Dukes of *Bouillon* of the house of *Ardenne*.

1 *Godfrey*, the eldest son of *Ricuine*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a daughter of the Emperor *Otho* the 2d.

2 *Godfrey*, II. son of *Godfrey* the first, who in the year 1004. by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Cousin, and the power of *Henry* the 2d. Emperour, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*.

1019 3 *Gozelo*, brother of *Godfrey* the 2d. Duke of *Lorrein* and *Bouillon*.

1044 4 *Godfrey* III. son of *Gozelo*.

5 *Eustace*, Earl of *Boullogne*, and *Ida* his wife, daughter of *Godfrey* the 3d. by whom endowed at her marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.

6 *Godfrey* IV. surnamed of *Bouillon*, son of *Eustace* & *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, *An.* 1078. and died King of *Hierusalem*. Going unto the wars of the *Holy Land*, he sold this Dukedom to *Obert*, Bishop of *Leige*, and his Successors, *Anno* 1509. who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1096. or thereabouts; when sold by *Eberhard* of *Mark* to his brother *Robert* of whose descent & Successors, you may take

Brabant

this view in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Soveraigns of *Sedan* and Dukes of *Bouillon* of the House of *Mark*.

1 *Engelbert* the 9th Earl of *Mark* in *Germany* by marrying with the daughter and heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jamais*, &c. to the house of *Mark*.
2 *Everhard*, second Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3 *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4 *Everhard* II. Brother of *John*, Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5 *John* II. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* the 2d.
6 *Robert* of *Mark*, the second Son of *John* the 2d. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* succeeding in the estates of *Aremberg*, he added *Florenge* and *Sanfi*, Towns of the Dukedome of *Bouillon* to his other pieces.
7 *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the first, Soveraign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedome he purchased of *Everhard* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinall of *Leige*.
1535 8 *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the second, one of the Marshals of *France*, Soveraign of *Sedan* and *Tuslarie* Duke of *Bouillon*.
1556 10 *Henry-Robert*, Son of *Robert* the 3d.
11 *Robert-William* Son of *Henry-Robert*, zealous in the reformed Religion, and a great follower of *Henry* of *Vendosm*, K. of *Navarre*, to whom dying at *Geneva*, *Anno* 1588. he bequeathed the care of his estates.
12 *Charlotte* the Sister of *Robert-William*, married by *Henry* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne*.
13 *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne* in *France*, descended from the Heirs Generall of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* the fourth of *France*, succeeded in the Soveraignty of *Sedan* and title of *Bouillon*; A Protestant and the founder of the *Schola Illustris* in *Sedan*.

De la Tour Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William*, Prince of *Orange*, succeeded his Father, in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which to ingratiate himself with the *French* King he exchanged for *Papistrie*, made thereupon one of the Marshalls of *France*, and now living, *Anno* 1648.

9. BRABANT. 10. The MARQUISATE, And 11. MACHLYN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time followed the same fortune, and that the two last do no otherwise differ from the first, then the parts from the whole: the *Marquisate*, and *Machlyn*, being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

9. *BRABANT* is bounded on the East, with *Luickland*, or the Bishoprick of *Leige*; on the West, with the River *Scheld*, and a part of *Flanders*; on the North, with the *Maes*, which severeth it from *Holland*, and *Guelderland*; and on the South, with *Hainalt*, *Namur*, and a part of *Luickland*. So called *quasi Beuckland*, that is to say, a barren Land, as at first it was; or from the old *Bratispantium*, which *Cæsar* placeth in this tract, but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholsome, and good, and the Soil naturally fruitfull, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it self, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattell, Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in most freedome, and are the best privileged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholding to the Princes goodnesse, than their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most men learn wisdome. *Brabanti quo magis senescunt, eo magis stulteseunt*, as *Erasmus* telleth us.

The length hereof, from S. *Gertrudenberg* to *Genblaurs*, North and South, is 22 *Dutch* or *German* miles; from *Helmont* to *Berghen ap Some*, East and West, 20 of the same miles; the whole compasse 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns; and Villages with Parish Churches 718. of which the odde 18 called *Franks*, or Market-towns, enjoy the privileges of walled Towns, or Cities, though unwalled themselves.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Shertogen Bosch*, or the *Bosch*, as the *Dutch*; *Bois le Duc*, or *Boldue*, as the *French*; and *Silva Ducis*, or *Boscum Ducis*, as the *Latines* call it: each name derived according to their severall Languages, from a pleasant wood belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now stands, situate on a little River called *Deese*, some two leagues from the *Maes*, neer the borders of *Guelderland*: a large and well built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly, in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper; Made an *Episcopall* See *Anno* 1559. the Cathedrall, which is fixed in the Church of Saint *John*, being fair and large; and beautified with one of the goodliest *Dials* in the *Christian* world. This is the principall Town of *Brabant* (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maesland*, *Peeland*, and *Osterwick*; and was taken by the *Confederate Estates* from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable siege, *Anno* 1628. 2.

Tilmton,

Tilmont, on the little River *Geet*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long ſince decayed. 3. *Aſchot* on the little River *Dennere*, which gives the title of Duke to them of the Noble houſe of *Croy*, and deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary*, (of which we ſpake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the fift) being men of greateſt Religion and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen ap Zome*, ſo called from the River *Zome*, upon which it is ſituate, about half a league from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reaſonable good Haven. A Town of great ſtrength by nature, but more ſtrongly fortified: Famous for being made a *Marquiſate* by *Charles* the Fift, *Anno* 1553. more for the notable reſiſtance which it made to the Marquis *Spinola*, *Anno* 1622. 5. *Breda*, upon the River *Merck*; a Town pleaſantly ſeated, well fortified, and of great Revenue; having under it the Town and Territory of *Steenberg*, the Franchiſe of *Roſindale*, and the Seigneury of *Oſterhout*, the reſidence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of thoſe wars, it was again recovered by ſome venturous Gentlemen, who hiding themſelves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Caſtle, which they eaſily maſtered, and made the Prince Lord of it again. After re-taken by the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1625. but now in the poſſeſſion of its naturall owners: to whom it came by the right of the houſe of *Naſſaw*, by the marriage of *Engelbert* the 7th Earl of that houſe, with *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the laſt Lord hereof, about the year 1400. 6. *Dieſt* on the River *Dennere*, a good Town, and inveſted with a goodly Territory, belonging to the Prince of *Orrange*, whoſe anceſtors of the Houſe of *Naſſaw* had it in a exchange for ſome other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof is *Burgrave* of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grinbergen*, an antient Barony, with a large juriſdiction, deſcendible on the youngeſt ſon only, after the manner of *Burg Engliſh*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertrudenburg*, ſtanding on the *Douge*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the furtheſt Town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joyns to *Holland*: which makes it a matter of diſpute betwixt thoſe Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for fiſhing, plenty of *Salmons*, & *Sturgeon* being taken here; but of *Shads* eſpecially; whereof 18000 are ſometimes caught in a day, ſalted, and ſent abroad into forreign parts: It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth alſo 9. *Grave*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by theſe Princes of the King of *Spain*, with conſent of the *States*; without whoſe approbation, no part of the *Domain* is to be diſmembred. 10. *Maeſtreicht* (in *Latine Trajectum ad Moſam*) ſo called of a ferry over the *Maes* in former times; ſupplied now with a goodly Stone bridge in the place therof. A fair and goodly town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were alwaies *Canons*, ſubject in part to the Biſhop of *Leige*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*: the Children are ſubject to that Prince to whom the Mother was ſubject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father; according to that *Maxim* of the Civill Law, *Partus ſequitur ventrem*: And if a Stranger come to live there, he muſt declare to which of the two he will be ſubject, yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Soveraign of it, he only having the power of Coynage, and of granting pardon to Offenders: and as a Town of this Dukedom, beſieged and taken by the confederate *States*, Anno, 1632.

Here is alſo within the limits of this Dukedome, the town and *Signeurie* of *Raveſtein*, ſituate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve*, of the Duke of *Brabant*; but no otherwiſe ſubject: and on the ſame River, the Town and Country of *Horn*, a *Fief Imperiall*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Territory; in which is *Wiert*, the reſidence of the Earls *Horn* deſcended of the antient houſe of *Montmorency* in *France*.

The Marquiſate.

2. *THE MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE*, ſo called, becauſe the fartheſt bounds and *Marches* of the *German* Empire, frontiering on *Flanders*, which apperrained unto the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*; comprehendeth four of the beſt Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and ſpacious Territories adjoining to them, *viz.* 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dyle*, about four *Engliſh* miles in compaſs; but in that compaſs much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows, and pleaſant Fields; which make the ſituation far more delightfull, than if all built, and peopled. It was the Mother Town of *Brabant*, and ſometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards made an Univerſity by Duke *John* the 4th. *Anno* 1426, wherin are contained about 20 Colleges, ſuch as they be; much privileged, and inriched with penſions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2d. 2. *Bruſſells*, (*Bruxella*) the ſeat of the antient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundie* alſo, after they came to be Lords of thoſe Countries; ſeated upon the *Sinne*, and other ſweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in all *Europe*: having withall, a goodly chanell made by Art from *Bruſſells*, to the River *Dele*, and from thence to the *Scheld*: the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the ſame compaſſe with *Lovain*, the buildings ſumptuous, and the Town very rich: not only in regard that it is the ordinary ſeat of the Prince, or his *Regent*, and of the *Chancery* for all *Brabant*, and the Dutchy of *Limbourg*; but in regard of the rich *Manufactures* of Armour and Cloath of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there induſtriouſly purſued. 3. *Nivello*, on the borders of *Hainalt*, in a very rich and fruitfull ſoil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linnen, which is therein made; but moſt of all for a very rich *Nunnery* (or rather a *Nurſery*) of Noble Ladies; of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mentz*, and others before deſcribed. 4. *Antwerp*, ſituate on a goodly plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furniſhed with eight Chanels cut out of the River for the tranſport of Commodities; one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private buildings very handſome, but the publick ſumptuous; the chief wherof were reckoned the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, the *Bourſe*, the *Town-houſe*, and the houſe of the *Eaſterlings*, or Eaſtern Merchants; well peopled, and of ſo great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richeſt *Empory* of the Chriſtian world; the Commodities here bought and ſold,

a-

Machlyn amounting to more in one moneth, than that of *Venice* in two years. The causes of which sudden growth, and increase of Trading, are said to be these, 1. The two *Maris* holden here every year, either of them during six weeks, in which time no mans person could be arrested, or his goods distrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the year 1503. diverted the course of Merchandise from *Alexandria* and *Venice*, to the City of *Lisbon*; kept here his Factories, and sent hither his Spices, and other *Indian* commodities: for which cause the Merchants, in the year 1516. forsook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and setled here. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody wars betwixt *France* and *Spain*, forsook their Country houses, and repaired hither; by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time, grew bigger by 3000 houses than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was sudden, so the fall sensible; occasioned through the yoking of it with a *Citadel* by the D. of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to resort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom, & less security; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven, and intercepting the trade at Sea, by the more powerfull *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great traffick to *Amstedam*, and other towns of their Country. So that now the chief support of it is the reputation which it hath of being an *Imperial City*, the place of receipt for the Kings Revenues, and a Bishops See founded here in the year 1559, which draweth hither some resort of Lawyers and Church-men.

3. The *Signeurie* of *MACHLYN*, consisteth only of that City, and a small Territorie of 9 Villages adjoyning to it. The City seated on both sides of the River *Dele*, which ebbeth and floweth to the Town, and a league above it: and running through the very midst, maketh in it a number of small Islands, to the great ornament and commoditie of it. A goodly Town, containing seven Parish Churches, besides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbishop, founded here in the year 1559. strong, in regard it may be easily drowned on all sides; and of great wealth by reason of the many *manufactures* of linnen, great Artillery of Brasse and Iron, Bels, painted works, and others of like use and ornament. And being situate in a manner in the Center of *Brabant*, distant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, was made by *Charles* the *Warlike* (who loved the place) the ordinary seat of the great *Council* of State, to which *appeals* are made from the other Provinces. But yet more beautifull in former times than it is at the present; the City being much defaced by firing 200 barrels of powder, *Anno* 1546. and by the sackage of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force, *Anno* 1572. Most memorable at this time for a famous *Nunnerie*, like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are sometimes 1600 Nuns; who when they please may leave their Cloister, and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State distinct: for which cause many women at the time of their child-birth, use to lay down their bellies in some Village of *Brabant*, that their children may be capable of the priviledges and immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leest*, or *Heyst*, pleasantly seated on an Hill, the residue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages the Patrimony heretofore of the noble family of the *Bertholds*: which failing in the person of *Gualter*, slain in the battel of *Worançan*, by *John*, Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Bishop of *Leige*, who sold his moiety to *John* the second Duke of *Brabant*; the other, to the Earl of *Gueldres*, who in the year 1333. sold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, E. of *Flanders*. But he sold nothing but the title, *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having seized upon it, and added it to his estate: the occasion of some quarrel between those Princes, composed by the marriage of that *Lewis*, with the heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it self, the antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Advatici*, and some part of the *Tungri*; accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania secunda*; and by the *French*, a Province of the Kingdom of *East-France*, or *Austrasia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault*, under the governance and command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts, lying towards the Sea, and terribly infested with the depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of some principal Officers, whom they called *Lord Wardens of the Marches*. *Theodebert* Sonne of *Theodorick* the first King of *Austrasia*, accompanied with *Utilo* a *Boiarian* Prince, having repulsed these common Robbers, obtained for *Utilo*, of his Father, the command of those Countries, and possession of a great part of them also, by the title of Lord Marquesse of *Antwerp*: the fourth from whom called *Arnulph*, was the first Mayor of the Palace (of this house) to the Kings of *France*, made as it were hereditary unto his Successors. By *Dagobert* the first, sole King of the *French*, that part of this Country, which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them; the whole estate was conferred on *Ansegisus*, the son of *Arnulph*, with the title of Duke of *Brabant*. The actions and atchievements of so many of them as were Mayors of the Palace, we have already seen when we were in *France*. The whole succession follows here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses of *ANTWERP*, and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the *German* or *Boiarian* Race.

1 *Utilo*, son of *Theodore*, the first Duke, and Nephew of *Aldiagerius*, the last King of the *Boiarians*.

2 *Hugopert*, son of *Utilo*.

563 3 *Asopert*, the son of *Hugopert*, and Husband of *Plythilda*, daughter of *Clotaire* the first of *France*.

579 4 *Arnoldus*, the son of *Asopert*.

601 5 *Arnulph*, son of *Arnoldus*, the first Mayor of the Palace, of this family.

641 6 *Ansegisus*, son of *Arnulph*, Marquesse of *Antwerp*, and Mayor of the Palace, by *Dagobert* the first, made Duke of *Brabant*.

679 7 *Pepin*, surnamed the *Fat*, son of *Ansegisus*, succeeded to his Father in his honours, offices, and estates, and was herein succeeded by

714 8 *Charles*, the Base son of *Pepin*, for his valiant acts surnamed *Martel*, there being

being no lawfull iſſue of his Father living. 741 *9 Pepin* II. ſurnamed the *Short*, ſon of *Charles Martel*, having managed the affairs of *France*, from the death of his Father, for the ſpace of ten years, uſurped the Kingdom, and was ſolemnly crowned King at *Soiſſons* by *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, on *May day*, *Anno* 751. The Dukedome of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of *France*, continued a Province of that Kingdom, till the diviſion of the *French* Empire among the ſons and nephews of *Lewis* the *Godly*; when made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuſe*, betwixt the Emperours of *Germany*, and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themſelves the Title of Kings of *Lorrein*) it was by *Lotharius* the 3d. of *France*, in whoſe ſhare it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the title of Duke of *Brabant*. But indeed this donation proved of little worth, the greateſt part hereof, together with the reſt of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, which of right belonged unto the *French*, being conquered by the Emperour *Otho* the 2d. and by him added to the Empire: And yet this alſo fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Cozen German to this *Otho* the 2d. by the Lady *Gerburg* (ſiſter of *Otho* the firſt, and wife of *Lewis*, ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, King of *France*, the Father of *Charles*,) was by him inveſted into the great Dukedom of *Lorrein*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lorrein*, *Gulick*, and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luick*, with parts of the lands of *Triers* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Baſſe* (or *Low*) *Lorrein*, and as a memory thereof, there is a Court for *criminal* and *civil* cauſes held at *Genappe* (one of the *Franks* or Market Towns of *Brabant*) called, *La Court de Lorrein*, to this day. An Eſtate firſt erected, as before is ſaid, by the Emperour *Otho* the 2d. who giving it to the ſaid *Charles* of *France*, reſerved out of it, as a Dower for his ſaid Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle*, and *Antwerp*, lying on the *Marches* of his Dominions, towards *France*; which (with reference perhaps to the old Marquiſate of *Antwerp*) he honoured with the title of *Marquiſate* of the holy Empire, *Anno* 981. *Gerburg* the ſiſter, and after the death of her Brother *Otho*, the heir of *Charls*, diſſeiſed of *Lorrein*, and the right of that fair inheritance, by the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond (who gave it to *Geofrey* of *Ardenne*) ſucceeded her Grandmother, the firſt *Gerburg*, in the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelle*, and *Bruxels*, which ſhe conveyed in marriage to *Lambert*, one of the ſons of *Reyner* in *Hainalt*, with the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his ſon having made himſelf Maſter of *Antwerp* alſo, was by that means poſſeſſed of the whole *Marquiſate*, but ſtill retained the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6 Earl having inlarged the bounds of his Dominions, by the conqueſt of the reſt of this Country, *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorrein*, being then abſent in the wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperour *Henry* the fift (whoſe ſiſter he had maried) created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the firſt Duke of that name, added hereunto the Dutchie of *Limbourg*; and *John* the third, the *Signeurie* of *Malines* or *Machlyn*. How it became united to the houſe of *Burgundy*, is to be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of *Machlyn.*

The EARLES of *LOVAIN*, and DUKES of *BRABANT* of the Race of *CHARLEMAGNE*.

104 1 *Lambert*, one of the ſons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainalt*, made the firſt Earl of *Lovain*, in right of *Gerburg* his wife.

1015 2 *Henry*, the ſon of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the *Marquiſate* of the *holy Empire*.

1046 3 *Lambert* II. ſon of *Henry*

1054 4 *Henry* II. ſon of *Lambert* the ſecond.

1068 5 *Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.

6 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third.

1096 7 *Godfrey*, ſurnamed *Barbatus*, brother of *Henry* the fourth, created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*, in right of his deſcent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorrein*, challenged the Country, and recovered it from the houſe of *Ardenne*: and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, *Anno* 1108. father of *Adelize*, the ſecond wife of our *Henry* the firſt, and of *Joſceline de Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (now) Earl of *Northumberland*,

1140 8 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. ſon of *Godfrey*.

1143 9 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* III. ſon of *Godfrey* the ſecond.

1183 10 *Henry* V. ſon of *Godfrey* the third.

1230 11 *Henry* VI. ſurnamed the *Good*, ſon of *Henry* the fifth.

1247 12 *Henry* VII. ſurnamed the *Magnanimous*, by whoſe marriage with *Sophia* Daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, Lantgrave of *Turingia*, the Lantgravedome of *Haſſia* came into this houſe; inveſted on it in the perſon of *Henry* his ſon, by the ſaid *Sophia*.

1260 13 *John*, ſon of *Henry* the ſeventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and deſtroyed the potent family of the *Bertholds*: his younger brother *Henry*, by another *venter*, ſucceeding in *Haſſia*.

14 *John* II. ſon of *John* the firſt, bought of the Biſhop of *Leige*, the moyety, or one half of *Machlyn*.

1312 15 *John* III. ſon of *John* the ſecond, added the whole eſtate of *Machlyn* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*

1355 16 *Joan*, the eldeſt daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceſlaus* the firſt Duke of *Luxembourg*, but died without iſſue.

Holland. 1406 17 *Anthony* of *Burgogne*, ſon of *Philip* the *Hardie*, and the Lady *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the ſiſter and heir of *Joane*; after the death of the ſaid *Wenceſlaus* and *Joane* his wife, ſucceeded in the Dukedome of *Brabant*; his elder brother *John*, giving way unto it, at the requeſt of their great Aunt *Joane*, the proprietary of it.

1415 18 *John* IV. ſon of *Anthony* by his firſt wife *Joane*, daughter of *Waleran* Earl of Saint *Paul*.

1426 19 *Philip*, the ſecond ſon of *Anthony*, and brother of *John* the 4th.

1430 20 *Philip* II. called the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, ſon and heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundie*, elder brother of *Anthony*; on the death of his two Couſin Germans *John* and *Philip*, ſucceeded in the Dukedome of *Brabant*, as the direct heir of the Lady *Margaret*, wife of *Lewis de Malain*, and daughter of *John* the third; the laſt Duke of *Brabant* of the houſe of *Lovain*. Of whoſe ſucceſſors more in another place.

The Arms here of are *Sable*, a Lion *Or*.

12. *HOLLAND*, 13. *ZE LAND*, 14. *WEST-FRISELAND*

Having thus ſpoken of thoſe Provinces which ſtil continue in ſubjection to the King of *Spain* (except ſome few towns in *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, before mentioned;) let us next look on thoſe which have withdrawn their obedience from him; beginning firſt with *Holland*, and its Appendixes; as of more power and conſideration than all the reſt. Which though diſtinct Provinces, and acting in their ſeveral capacities at the preſent time: yet having been always under the command of the ſame Princes, they muſt be joyned together in the ſtory of them: but ſhall be ſeverally handled as to the *Chorography*.

HOLLAND hath on the Eaſt, the *Zuider See*, *Utrecht*, and ſome part of *Guelderland*; on the Weſt and North, the *German* Ocean; on the South, the Iſlands of *Zeland*, and ſome part of *Brabant*. So called, as ſome think, *quaſi Holt-land*, that is to ſay a woody Country; as others, *quaſi Hollow-land*, from the Bogs and Mariſhes and unſound footing on the ſame; and ſome will have it called ſo, *quaſi Hoy-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius* not reliſhing any of the three, conceives, that both this Country, and the Iſles of *Zeland*, being planted by ſome Colonies of *Danes*, and *Normans*, (at the time of the irruption of thoſe Northern Nations,) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland* two Iſlands of the *Baltick* Sea out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may pleaſe himſelf.

The Country for the moſt part lyeth very low, in ſo much that they are fain to fence it with Banks and *Ramparts* to keep out the Sea, and to reſtrain the Rivers within their bounds; ſo that in many places one may ſee the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulſed with thoſe Banks: and is withall ſo fenny and full of mariſhes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable dikes and chanells, to make it firm land, and fit for dwelling; yet not ſo firm to bear either trees or much grain. But ſuch is the Induſtry of the People and the trade they drive, that having little or no *corn* of their own growth, they do provide themſelves elſewhere; not only ſufficient for their own ſpending, but wherewith to ſupply their neighbours: having no timber of their own, they ſpend more *timber* in building ſhips, and fencing their water-courſes, than any Country in the World; having no *wine*, they drink more than the people of the Country, where it groweth naturally; and finally, having neither *Flax* nor *Wool*, they make more Cloth of both ſorts, than all the Countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The preſent Inhabitants are generally given to Sea-faring lives, ſo that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Weſt-Friſeland*, there are 2500 ſhips of war and burden. The women for the moſt part laborious in making ſtuffs. Nay you will hardly ſee a Child of four years of age, that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their government. The greateſt of their naturall Commodities is Butter and Cheeſe; of which, beſides that infinite plenty which they ſpend in their own Houſes, and amongſt their Garriſons; they ſell as much unto other Countries, as comes to 100000 Crowns *per annum*. By which means, and by the greatneſſe of their fiſh-trade ſpoken of before, they are grown ſo wealthy on the Land, and ſo powerfull at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*; ſo now *Holland* is taken generally for all the *Provinces confederated* in a league againſt the *Spaniard*.

The whole compaſſe of it is no more than 180 miles, no part thereof being diſtant from the Sea, above three hours journey: and yet within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns, and 400 Villages; ſome ſituate in the North, and others in *South-Holland*, as it ſtands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lyeth next to *Zeland* and the middle chanell of the *Rhene* paſſing from *Utrecht* unto *Leiden*) the principall Towns are, 1. *Dort*, (in *Latine Dordrectum*) formerly the Staple for *Rheniſh* wines, a large, rich, and well-peopled Town: antiently joined to the firm Land, but in the year 1421. rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Iland; of great command upon the traffique of the *Maes*, and the *Wael*, upon whoſe confluence it ſtands; but of moſt note in theſe later times, for an *Aſſembly of Divines* out of divers Countries following *Calvins* Doctrine, for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Univerſall Grace and Predeſtination, *Anno* 1618. 2. *Gorichem*, ſituate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*: a Town of great trade and riches, by reaſon of a daily Market of Cheeſe and Butter, brought hi-

hither in very great quantiy. Beautified antiently with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a fair Church, from the Steeple wher eof one may behold 22 walled Towns, beſides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it, called by that people *Van Arckel*, or the land of *Hercules*, from an opinion that *Hercules* the *German* did there appoint his Camp; or rather from ſome Temple dedicated to him; in the place whereof the Lords of this tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arcuſei* they are called in our *Latine* writers) founded a Church unto the honor of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time *Thierrie* the 2d Earl of *Holland*, by whom firſt ſetled in this country. And here they flouriſhed as Lords of *Gorichem*, *Lerdum*, and the parts of adjoining, til the year 1416. when falling to *John* L. of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his wife, daughter of *John* of *Arckellandt*, the laſt Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond* D. of *Gueldres*, It was by him ſold to *William* the ſixt, Earl of *Holland*, and ſo again united unto that Eſtate. 3. *Rotterdam*, ſeated on a dike or channel called the *Rotter*, not far from which, at a place named *Rempen*, the *Leck*, one of three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a ſtrong, fair, and well-traded Port; the birth-place of the learned *Eraſmus*. 4 *Schoon-hoven*, ſituate on the *Leck*, a fair Town, having a commodious haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the ſix principal Towns of *Holland*, rich, and well fortified; ſeated on the River called *Yſſel*, which riſing about *Yſſel-ſtein* ſpoken of anon, falleth into the *Leck* at a place called *Iſſelmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene*, ſo called, which giveth name to *Overyſſel*. On the ſame River alſo ſtand, 6. *Oudwater*, and 7. *Yſſel-ſtein*, this laſt belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the firſt of great trade for making Cables and Cords for ſhipping. 8. *Leiden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an Univerſity, founded *Anno* 1564. The Town conſiſteth of 41 Iſlands, to which they paſſe partly by boats, partly by bridges, whereof there are 144. and of them 104 builded with ſtone. Here is in this Town a Caſtle, ſaid to have been built by *Hengiſt* the *Saxon*, at his return out of *England*. And not far off ſtood the famous *Nunnerie* of *Rainsburg*, of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mentz* and *Nivelle*, before deſcribed; ſo liberally indowed, that 2000 perſons did there dayly receive relief. 9. *Vianen* on the *Leck*, a Seigneury diſtinct from *Holland*, pertaining antiently to the Lords of *Brederode*: And ſo was alſo, 10. *Heuſden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fa ir Caſtle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which houſe it had Lords of its own, as knowledging no ſubjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the year 850. or thereabouts, to the year 1290. at which time *Theodoric* the 9th. of *Cleve*, at a merry meeting transferred the Soveraignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the poſſeſſion of 20 Lords of that familie, on the expiration of that line, in the perſon of *John* the 9th. dying without iſſue, *Anno* 1334. it was made a member of this Earldom (after ſome ſharp diſputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a reſignation of the laſt Lord *John*) by *William* of *Buvurin*, Earl of *Holland* and *Hainalt*, *Anno* 1361. or thereabouts. 11. *Lerdum*, upon the River *Linge*, which together with *Yſſel-ſtein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, in right of his deſcent from the Earls of *Buren*. 12. *Delfe*, a Town of great trade for cloathing, large, and well-built, beautified with ſpacious ſtreets, and goodly Churches; the birth-place of that monſtrous Heretick *David George*, who called himſelf *King*, and *Chriſt Immortal*. He fled with his wife and Children, *Anno* 1544. to *Baſil*, where he ſet up this Doctrine: the points whereof were, 1. That the Law and the Goſpel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to ſave ſuch as receive it. 2. That he was the true *Chriſt* and *Meſſias*. 3. That he had been till that preſent, kept in a place unknown to all the Saints: and 4. that he was not to reſtore the houſe of *Iſrael* by *death* or *tribulation*, but by *love* and *grace* of the Spirit. He died in the year 1556. and three days after, his Doctrine was by them of *Baſil* condemned, his goods confiſcate, and his bones taken up and burned. He bound his Diſciples to three things, 1. To conceal his name; 2. Not to reveal of what condition he had been; and 3. Not to diſcover the *Articles* of his Doctrine to any man in *Baſil*.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle chanel of the *Rhene*, and the *Zuider-See*, the Towns or Cities of moſt importance are, 1. *Alkmar*, encompaſſed with deep fens and mariſhes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and cheeſe, which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*; and famous for the defeat which the D. of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* troubles, having with the loſſe of 20000 of his own men, forced *Harlem*, laid his ſiege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Souldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandoned: but having invironed them round, he put them to ſuch a reſolution, or deſperation (chooſe you whether) that manfully they reſiſted three of his aſſaults; and in the end made him depart with great loſſe, as well of his Souldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amſterdam*, a very fair Haven Town, where divers times at one tide, 1000 ſhips of all ſorts have been ſeen to go out and in: So truly ſaid a modern Poet,

Quod Tagus, *atq;* Hermus *vehit*, *&* Pactolus, *in unum*
Vere hunc congeſtum dixeris eſſe locum.

What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,
One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby made ſo rich, that if a Fleet of 300 ſail ſhould come into the Port, fraught with all kind of commodities, in five or ſix days they would be ready to buy all the lading. Situate it is on the Gulph called the *Tie*, and the dike or chanel called *Amſtel*, whence it hath the name of *Amſteldam*, in Latine *Amſtelodunum*; built upon piles like *Venice*, and reſembling it in ſo many poins, that

it

Holland. it may justly be called the *Northern Venice*. First fortified with Towers and ramparts by *Giselbert* of *Amstel*, about 300 years agone. But being burnt through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled, *Anno* 1482. Grown to this wealth since the diverting of the trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cause inhabited by men of all Nations, and of all *Religions*; and those not only *tollerated*, and *connived* at in private, but openly and freely *exercised* without any dislike. A greater confusion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of *Religions*, that of *Languages* only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlem-meer*, the greatest Town of all *Holland*, and the second for dignity: well built, and very pleasantly situated amongst many goodly meadows, near a delightfull forest, and round about environed with wealthy Villages: famous for the invention of printing, invented here; but perfected at *Mentz* in *higher Germany*; the first book which was ever printed being *Tullies Offices*. 4. *Naerden* on the *Zuider See*, fortified with a strong Castle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, to whom it antiently belonged. 5. *Enchuisen*, on the very point of the Gulph of *Zuider-See*, opposite to *Friseland*, from which not distant above two leagues. A town of great consequence to the Prince of *Orange*, in the first revolting of these Countries from the King of *Spain*. For siding with him in that war, and standing conveniently to obstruct the passages by Sea, unto *Amsterdam*, it compelled that City, in short time, by stopping all supply of victuals and other necessaries, to yeeld it self unto the Prince. 6. *Hoorn*, on the same Gulf also, a rich Town with a very good Haven; and of so great strength by reason of the Multitude of Dikes and Chanells which are round about it, that it seems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the same Gulf (of *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of ships which are built yearly in it: and an incredible number of the best *Holland Cheeses* made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick*, on the Ocean, seated in the best Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattell: unwalled, but enjoying all the privileges which a walled town hath, and fortified with a right strong Castle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague* or *Graven Hague*, in Latine *Haga Comitis*, because formerly the Court and residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautifull Palace, founded by Earl *William* King of the *Romans*, and therein a chief and excellent Library gathered together by *John Harie* a *Canon Regular* of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the fift. In former time the residence of the *Councill* for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or *Delegates* of the *confederate Provinces*, called by the name of the *States-Generall*. Now much increased in buildings, of what it was, and yet so great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 housholds. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Wassenar*, which antiently gave names to three Noble families; of which none so illustrious and renowned as that of *Egmond*, descended lineally from *Radbold*, son of *Adgillis* the K. of *Frizons*, the first Lord of *Egmond*, who died, *Anno* 791. Advanced by marriages to the Dukedome of *Guelderland*, the Signeuries of *Yssel-stein* and *Buren*, and finally made Earls of *Egmond*, by *Maximilian* the Emperor, *Anno* 1592. But both this house and that of *Wassenar* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Brederode*, for ought I can learn. Neer to the last stood the famous Fortresse called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battel upon this Shore. For making shew of a voyage into *Britain*, to subdue that Island, he borded his Galley, embattelled his souldiers, caused his Trumpets to sound, give them the Signall; and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortresse was at the fall of the *Roman* Empire, overwhelmed by the Sea; the ruins whereof at a dead low water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm Land or *Continent*, there are some Islands, which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the generall name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against *Holland*; *Voorn* signifying as much as *before*, or in old *English Bevorne*: but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somersdike*, 2. *Gaurede*, 3. *Purschille*, so called of their principall Towns: and 4. *Voorn*, specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitfull soyl, and plentifull of most sorts of grain. The principall Towns whereof are 1. *Briel* (which we call the *Brill*) a strong Town, and the first that revolted against the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1572. *Cautionarie* to the *English* with the Town of *Flushing*; chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the passage to *Gertrudenburg* and the rest of *Brabant*; as also to *Delfe*, *Dort*, and *Roterdam*, the greatest Towns of trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Gerulit*, a small Town, but having a jurisdiction over many Villages. There are also on the North side of *Holland* the Isles *Wyerengeh*, and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the last is furnished with a safe and capacious Bay for receipt of shipping.

One speciall accident concerning *Holland*, I cannot over-passe in silence, namely, how *Margaret* Countesse of *Hennenberg*, an Sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half males, the other females, the odde one an *hermaphrodite*; all christened at the Church of *Lasdune*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Basins, still to be seen in the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all which immediately after died, and with them the Mother.

The Arms of *Holland* of it self, as a State distinct, are *Or*, a Lion *Gules*.

ZELAND consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18 which the Sea hath swallowed; and in them 300 inhabited Towns. Severed from *Flanders* with the left branch or arm of the *Scheld*, which they called *Honte*; and on the East, from *Brabant*, with the right branch of the said River, which still keeps his name; on the North, from *Holland*, with the Gulph called the *Flack*; and on the West, with the main Ocean, from the Kingdome *England*. So called, as some say, *quasi Sea* and *Land*; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Iland of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The

The Country generally more fruitfull than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent corn, plenty of *Coriander* and abundance of *Mader*, used in dying; the soil also very rich in pasture, but low and marishy, which makes the air to be very unhealthy; and the whole destitute both of fresh water, and wood, the want of which last is supplied with coal out of *England*, and *Scotland*, or by Turf digged amongst themselves, but very sparingly for fear of weakning the Sea-banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain, are commonly divided into the Western, and the Eastern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Western *Islands*, four in number, that is to say, 1. *Walcheren*, (*Valachria* in *Latine*) lying to the South-west of *Sluys* in *Flanders*, the richest and most populous of all this Province, in compasse 10 *Dutch*, or 40 *Italian* miles. The principal Towns of which are 1. *Middleburg*, seated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the streets spacious, the houses and Churches well built: inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and illustrious tradesmen; and of late times (since the removing of the *English* trade from *Antwerp*) a most flourishing *Emporie*. So called because built in the midst of the Island; or because built (as saith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Flushing*, of great note for its good Port, and invincible strength. One of the first Towns which the *Low-Countrymen* took from the Spaniards, by the diligence of *Voorst* a Seaman, and *Monsieur de Berland*, then the Bayliff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *English*, as a Town of Caution: the first Governour of it being the renowned *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without whose license no ship can passe either to or from the City of *Antwerp*, insomuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his government had bestowed that pains in fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns, as he did in the strengthning *Antwerp*, and some mid-land Cities; he had in all probability, hindred the remediless revolt of these flourishing Countries. Not far off standeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once cautionary to the *English* also, together with the *Brill*, the chief Town in the Isle of *Voorn*, (an Isle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniard*, *An.* 1572. made Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth*, *An.* 1585. and finally surrendred by King *James* to the *States* united, *An.* 1615. *Robert* Lord *Liste* (afterwards created Earl of *Leicester*) the brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Flushing*. 3. *Ramne*, or *Armynygden*. an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodliest and most frequented Havens in all the World: out of which one may sometimes see 500 sail of ships of great burden, set forwards on their voyages to several parts. 4. *Vere*, or *Camfere*, seated in the North part of the Island; which once gave title to a Marquesse, and from the which the noble Families of the *Veres* (now, and of long time, Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that so many of that Family have ventured their estates and lives, in the wars of this Countrey, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence transplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, situate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greatest of the Isles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 Dutch miles in compasse, but now much diminished by the rage and fury of the Sea; by which the Town and Signeury of *Borsule*, with all the Countries round about it, was swallowed up, *An.* 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods, and pleasant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beasts for hawking and hunting. Chief Towns here are, 1. *Romerswal*, seated on the East, towards *Bergen ap Some*, severed at the same time from the rest of the Island, and made an Island of it self; defended with continual charge from following the sad fate of the Town of *Borsule*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coast, a strong Town, well-privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Island.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Isle of *Schowen*, in former times esteemed the Paradise of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort-Cheen*; but so destroyed by the Sea-breach spoken of before, that there is nothing now remainining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying betweeu the two *Beverlands*, the smallest of the *Western* Islands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but replenished with good store of Pasture.

And these are all which fall in the division of the *Western* Islands, so called because they lye Westward of the River *Scheld*; as those which they call the *Eastern* Islands, on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the Northwest of *Holland*, so near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other: but now the Sea hath set them at a greater distance. It containeth in compasse six *Dutch* miles. Chief Towns wherein are 1. *Strickzed*, the antientest Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with beach; yet still reputed for the second Town of all the Province: the whole trade thereof consisting in Salt and *Mader*, of which it yeelds good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius* that renowned Philosopher, and Physician. 2. *Brewers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, so named from the multitude of *Doves* or Pigeons, situate between *Schowen* and *Tolen*, in compasse about 4 *Dutch* miles; hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages, and Gentlemens Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, *An.* 1530. but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy*, and Lord of *Boforeres* in *Flanders*, recovered again; and at the excessive charge of the people hitherto preser ed.

3. *TOLEN*, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls *toll* was wont to be paid, whence it had the name; is situate over against the North-west of *Brabant*, from which dis-

joyned

West-Friseland.

joined by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the ſecond Town of note being called S. *Martins D.ke*, walled, but not otherwiſe conſiderable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland*, are the Arms thereof; being *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, riſing out of a Sea, wavie, *Argent* & *Azure*.

WEST-FRISELAND hath on the Eaſt, *Groyning-Land*, and a part of *Weſtphalen* in *High Germany*; on the South, *Over-yſſell*, and the *Znider-See*; on the North and Weſt, the main Ocean. The Country generally mooriſh and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yeelding great ſtore of Paſturage: which mooriſhneſs of the ground makes the air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any fewell wherewith to rectifie it (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Wolden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which addes but little to the ſweetneſſe of an unſound air. Nor are they better ſtored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leuwars*; the want of which is ſupplyed by great chanels in moſt places, which do not only drain the Mariſhes, but ſupply them with water. Which notwithſtanding, their Paſtures do afford them a good breed of horſes fit for ſervice; plenty of Beeves both great and ſweet, the beſt in *Europe* next theſe of *England*: and thoſe in ſuch a large increaſe, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three lambs at a time.

The Country divided into three parts. In the firſt part called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principal Towns are 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven town upon the Ocean, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Hindeloppen* on the ſame Coaſt alſo. 3. *Staveren* an *Hanſe Town*, oppoſite to *Enchuiſen* in *Holland*; the Town decayed, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle which ſecures the Haven. 4. *Franeker*, a new Univerſity, or a *Schola Illuſtris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck*, in a low and inconvenient ſituation; but both for largeneſſe and beauty the beſt in this part of the Province, and the ſecond in eſteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGO*, or the Eaſt parts lying towards *Groyningland*, the Towns of moſt note are 6. *Leuwarden*, ſituate on the hinder *Leuwars*, the prime Town of *West-friſeland*, and honored with the ſupreme Court and *Chancery* hereof, from which there lyeth no *appeal*: a rich town, well built, and ſtrongly fortified. 7. *Doccum*, bordering upon *Groyning*, the birth-place of *Gemma Friſius*. In *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of ſeven Foreſts, ſo called from ſo many ſmall Foreſts joining neer together, is no Town of note, being long time a Woodland Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the Walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs 345.

To this Province belongeth the Iſle of *Schelink*, the ſhores whereof are plentifully ſtored with *Dog-fiſh*, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The men of the Iland attire themſelves with beaſts skins, and then fall to dancing; with which ſport the Fiſh being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them; nets being pitched preſently betwixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their diguiſes, and the frighted Fiſh haſtning towards the ſea, are caught in the toyls.

Touching the *Friſons*, heretofore poſſeſſed of this Country, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *East-Friſeland*, poſſeſſed alſo by them, and ſtill continuing in the quality of a *free Eſtate*, governed by its own Laws and Princes: here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friſeland* are *Azure*, ſemy of Billets *Argent*, two Lions *Or*.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Batavi*, and *Caninefates*, inhabiting the Iſland of the *Rhene* ſituate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utrecht*, and ſome part of *Gueldres*; the *Friſii* dwelling in *West-Friſeland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Iſles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the *Bald*, theſe Countries being almoſt unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, ſon of *Sigebert* a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the title of Earl: his Succeſſors acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4th Earl, who atturned *Homager* to the Empire. In *John* the 2d. they became united to the Houſe of *Hainalt*; and in *William* the 3d. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Eſtates of the Dukes of *Burgundie* in the perſon of the Duke *Philip* the *Good*, as appeareth by this ſucceſſion of

The EARLS of *HOLLAND*, *ZELAND*, and LORDS of *WEST-FRISELAND*.

863 1 *Thierrie* or *Theodorick* of *Aquitain*, the firſt Earl, &c.
903 2 *Thierrie* II. ſon of *Thierrie* the 1.
3 *Thierrie* the III. the ſon of *Theodorick* the 2d.
988 4 *Arnulph*, who made firſt this Eſtate to be held of the Empire; ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*. From *Sigefride* the ſecond ſon of this *Arnulph* came the Lords of *Brederode*, advanced by marriages to the Signeuries of *Geneppe*, and *Viallen*, and many other fair Eſtates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.
993 5 *Thierrie* IV. ſon of *Arnulph*.
1039 6 *Thierrie* V. ſon of *Theodorick* the 4th.
1048 7 *Florence*, brother of *Thierrie* the 5th.
1062 8 *Thierrie* VI. ſon of *Florence*, in whoſe minority the Eſtate of *Holland* was uſurped by *Godfrey le Boſſu* Duke of *Lorrein*, by ſome accompted of as an Earl hereof.
1092 9 *Florence* II. ſurnamed the Fat, ſon of *Thierrie* the 6th.
8123 10 *Thierrie* VII. who tamed the ſtomachs of the *Friſons*.
1163 11 *Florence* III. a companion of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the wars of *Holy-Land*.

1190

1190 12 *Thierrie* ſon to *Florcene* the 3d.
1203 13 *William*, the brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *Eaſt-Friſeland*, which Country he had before ſubdued, ſupplanted his Neece *Ada* his Brothers daughter; but after her deceaſe, dying without iſſue, ſucceeded in his own right unto the Eſtate.
1223 14 *Florence* IV. ſon of *William*.
1235 15 *William* II. ſon of *Florence* the 4th. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*; ſlain in a war againſt the *Friſons*.
1255 16 *Florence* the V. the firſt, as ſome write, who called himſelf Earl of *Zeland*: the title to thoſe Iſlands formerly queſtioned by the *Flemings*, being relinquiſhed to him on his marriage with *Beatrix*, the Daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*.
1296 17 *John*, the ſon of *Florence* the 5. ſubdued the rebellious *Friſons*; the laſt of the male-iſſue of *Thierre* of *Aquitaine*,

Vtrecht and *Over-Yſſel.*

EARLES of *HAINALT, HOLLAND, &c.*

1300 18 *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainalt*, ſon of *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainalt*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, ſiſter of *William* the 2d. and daughter of *Florence* the 4th. ſucceeded as next heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.
1305 19 *William* III. ſurnamed the *Good*, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, wife of our *Edward* the 3d.
1337 20 *William* IV of *Holland*, and the II. of *Hainalt*, ſlain in a war againſt the *Friſons*.
1346. 21 *Margaret*, ſiſter and heir of *William* the 4th. and eldeſt daughter of *William* the 3d. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperour of the *Germans*, forced to relinquiſh *Holland* unto *William* her ſecond ſon, and to content her ſelf with *Hainalt*.
1351 22 *William* V. ſecond ſon of *Lewis* and *Margaret*, (his elder Brother *Steven* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his wife, daughter and coheir of *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Leiceſter*.
1377 23 *Albert* the younger brother of *William* the fift, fortunate in his wars againſt the *Friſons*, Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c.
1404 24 *William* VI. Earl of *Oſternant*, and by that name admitted Knight of the *Garter* by King *Richard* the 2d. eldeſt ſon of *Albert*.
1417 25 *Jaqueline*, only daughter of Earl *William* the ſixth, firſt married to *John* the 4th. Duke of *Brabant*, the ſon of *Anthony of Burgogne*; from whom divorced under colour of Conſanguinity, ſhe was married after to *Humfrey* Duke of *Glouceſter*, and then to *Frank* of *Borſelles*, a private Gentleman; being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundie*, ſurrendred her eſtates to Duke *Philip* the *Good*.
26 *Philip* the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundie*, ſon of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret* ſiſter of Earl *William* the ſixth, and daughter of *Albert*, Earls of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. ſucceeded on the reſignation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Couzin *Germain*, tranſporting theſe Eſtates to the houſe of *Burgundy*; his Succeſſors we ſhall meet with ſhortly in another place.

15. *VTRECHT.* 16. *OVER-YSSELL.*

THe Biſhoprick of *VTRECHT*, I mean the temporal juriſdiction and eſtate thereof, contained once all that tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, & *Groining*. But *Groining* was long ſince diſmembred. *Utrecht* and *Over-Yſſel* remaining parts thereof till the year 1528. when added to the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, by *Charles* the fifth.

UTRECHT hath on the Eaſt, *Guelderland*; on the Weſt, North, and South environed with *Holland*. The Country very fruitfull, much dryer than *Holland*, and ſo fitter for all ſorts of grain. It containeth 70 Villages, and 5 walled Towns; that is to ſay, 1. *Wick* at *Duerſteed*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, where it diverteth into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified anciently with a good Caſtle; ſuppoſed to be the *Batavoducum* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, the manſion at that time of the ſecond *Legion*. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the ſame branch or Chanel, whence it hath the name: about which is digged abundance of turf for fewel. 3. *Amesfort* on the River *Ems*, (called in *Latine Amiſus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Montfort*, upon the *Yſſel*, pleaſantly ſeated, and of great ſtrength, as being anciently a frontier Town againſt the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, firſt called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*; but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Ultrajectum*, we now call it *Utrecht*) becauſe there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town large, beautifull, and very ſumptuouſly built, having in it many goodly Churches, of which 5 were anciently *Collegiate*; beſides two famous Monaſteries of noble women, ſuch as thoſe ſpoken of elſewhere: the private houſes well contrived, moſt of them having goodly Cellars, vaulted with wonderfull art and skill, to which the people may reſort in all times of danger. Sometimes the Seat-Royal of *Radbold*, King of the *Friſons*, then of the Biſhops; honoured of old with a *Juridical reſort* for the parts adjoyning, and now the principal of this Province. A City, ſo miraculouſly ſeated amongſt walled Towns, that a man may goe from hence in one day, to any one of 50 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally diſtant; or to any one of 26 Towns to Dinner, and come home to bed.

OVER-

Over-Yssell, and Guelderland.

OVER-YSSEL, in *Latin*, *Transisulana*, so named from its situation beyond the *Yssell*, is bounded on the East, with *Westphalen*; on the West, with *Zuider-See*; on the North, with *West-Friseland*; on the South, with *Guelderland*. The Country very plain, and without Hils, but wet, and moorish, affording excellent good Pastorage, and not defective in Corn. Divided into three parts, that is to say, *Tuent*, confining upon *Westphalen*; *Ysselland* on the River *Yssell*, and *Drent* beyond the River *Vecht*; in all which are contained 11 Towns and 100 Villages. The principall of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yssell*, strong and well fortified, and withall beautifull and well peopled; an *Hanse town*, and the chief of all this Province: first taken for the States by the Earl of *Leicester*, then Governour of those countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1586. treacherously re-yeelded to the *Spaniard* by Sir *William Stanley*; but in the year 1590 again recovered by the States. 2. *Swoll*, standing on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double ditch and very strong ramparts: an *Hanse town*, as is also 3. *Campen*, situate on the left shore and fall of the *Yssell* into the *Zuider-See*; a fair and large Town, and of very great strength by reason of those in accessible marishes amongst which it is situate. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Ysselland*, and by some *Saland*, by whom (erroneously) supposed to be the Country of the antient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Tuent*, we have the Towns of 4. *Oldensel*, 5. *Ensehede*, 6. *Delden*, 7. *Almeloo*; of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Castle of *Vallenhoven*, standing upon the *Zuider-See*, well served with all sorts of victuals: for which cause made the ordinary residence of the *Governour* and supream Councell for the whole Province.

The antient Inhabitants of these two Provinces, were some parts of the *Batavi* and *Frisii minores*, for that of *Utrecht*; the *Bructeri*, and (as some say) the *Salii*, in *Over-Yssell*. Both Provinces belonging antiently to the Episcopall See of *Utrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories; the first Bishop being *Willibald* an *Englishman*, who converted these parts to *Christianity*. His Successors grew to so great power, that they were able to bring 40000 men into the Field, and with great courage did maintain their Estate and Patrimony, against the incroaching Earls of *Holland*. But at the last, having continued for the space of 900 years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Bishop hereof, being extreemly distressed with war by the Duke of *Gueldres* and driven out of the City of *Utrecht* by his own subjects (perhaps upon some humour of *Reformation*) alienated all the *temporalities* of his Bishoprick to *Charles* the fift, *Anno* 1527. And the next year, the *Imperialists* by one of the factions were let into *Utrecht*; at what time both the *Estates* of the Country, and Pope *Clement* the 7th. confirmed the *Alienation* made by the Bishop. After which solemn acts of theirs, the Emperour caused himself to be invested in this Estate by the *States* of the Empire, (for *Utrecht* was of old an *Imperiall Fief*,) and for the better government and administration of it, divided it into two Provinces, as it still continueth. But what this Bishop lost in power, his successours not long after gained in title: the Bishop of *Utrecht* being made an Arch-bishop or *Metropolitane*, *Anno* 1561. but by reason of the change of *Religion* which was then working, and the falling off of these Countries, which soon after followed; he had but little joy in his new preferment.

17. *GVELDERLAND*. 18. *ZVTPHEN*, and 19. *GROINING*.

THe *Dukedom* of *Guelderland*, at such time as it was first taken in by *Charls* the fift, contained under it, the Dutchy of *Guelders* properly and specially so called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Town and *Signeurie* of *Groining*: held by distinct titles, and governed, ever since their union with the *Belgick* Provinces, as distinct estates.

GUELDERLAND is bounded on the East, with *Cleveland*, and the Earldom of *Zutphen*; on the West, with *Holland* and *Utrecht*; on the North, with *Over-Yssell*, and the *Zuider-See*; and on the South with *Brabant*, and the land of *Gulick*. The Country flat, having few hills in it, but many pleasant and Commodious woods, especially that called *Echterwalt*; of corn and cattell very fruitfull.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts. 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-See*, the middle chanell of the *Rhene*, and the *Yssell*; the barrener of the two, and the worse inhabited, the people hereof preferring health before wealth as in other places, but affording a more pure air and a pleasanter dwelling than the other, the woods and forrests well repleniished with most kinds of game. 2. The *Betuwe* (so called of the *Batavi* who possessed these parts) intercepted betwixt the said middle chanel of the *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceedingly fruitfull in corn; and of so excellent a pasturage for the feeding of Cattel, that in the year 1570. there was a *Guelderland* Bull sold in *Antwerp*, which weighed 3200 pounds.

In both divisions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled towns, besides some fortified of late since the wars began. The chief whereof are 1. *Nimmegent* (in *Latine Noviomagus*) an *Imperiall City*, ordained by *Charls* the great to be one of the three *Seiges* of the Empire for these outer parts; the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxemburg*, & *Aix* or *Aken* in the land of *Gulick*. And as a Town *Imperiall* it had antiently the privilege of *coyning* money: for which and other free doms or immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other service to the Emperours, then once a year to send a man to *Aix* or *Aquisgrane*, with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being sold to the *Gueldrois* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans*, for 21000 marks of Silver, *Anno* 1248. the power of *coynage* fell to those Princes; and yet the town was brought

to

to do better ſervice, than formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town high mounted on the top of an hill, the *Wael*, which is there large and deep, running at the foot of it; rich, great, and populous, having beſides the modern fortifications an antient Caſtle, with ſo goodly a proſpect, that from thence one may behold the beſt part of the countrey; built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar*, to command thoſe parts. Under the juriſdiction of it, are 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both ſituated on the *Wael*, both ſtrong, and having many rich villages under their command; and 4. *Gheut*, on the *Wael* alſo, an unwalled Town, but having all the privileges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the firſt meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, ſtands the ſtrong Fort of St. *Andrews*, raiſed by the Arch-duke *Albert* to command the paſſage of thoſe Rivers; but in the year 1600. taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Naſſaw* (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever ſince garriſoned by the *States* to ſecure that paſſage. 5. *Ruermond*, ſeated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautifull and well-peopled City, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and ſeated in a fruitful countrey: heretofore of the Dioceſe of *Leige* (as *Nimmegen* antiently of *Colen*) but made a See Epiſcopal by King *Philip* the 2d, *An.* 1559. This is the ſecond *Capital* City of *Guelderland*, and hath under the juriſdiction of it, 6. *Venlo*, a ſtrong Town on the *Maes*, in which the Duke of *Cleve* yeelded himſelf to *Charls* the fift, *An.* 1543. 7 *Gueldres*, heretofore of ſuch reputation that it gave name to all the countrey, and well it doth deſerve to do ſo ſtill; being the only Town in all this Dukedom, which neither firſt nor laſt hath been won by the *Hollanders*, but ſtill preſerved themſelves in their obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well-fortified piece; but which, according to the chances of War, hath oft chang'd its maſters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in thoſe times the manſion of the 10th *Legion*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Chanel, which *Druſus* to keep his ſouldiers from idleneſſe cauſed them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into thoſe of the *Yſſell*; called therefore by the Antients *Foſſa Druſiana*, by the Moderns *Yſſell-Dort*. The Town large and well-built; the ordinary reſidence heretofore of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other ſupreme Courts of Juſtice. This is the third *Capital* City of *Gueldres* (antiently of the Dioceſe of *Utrecht*) and hath under the juriſdiction of it, beſides divers Villages, 10. *Wagheninghen* on the *Rhene*, the ſame which *Tacitus* calls *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick*, on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground, *Anno* 1503. but ſince re-edified, and now more ſtrong and beautiful than ever formerly. 12. *Huttem* upon the *Yſſell*, a good town of war, but not elſe obſervable.

Within the limits of this Dukedom ſtands the Town and County of *Culembergh*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the 2d. by reaſon of the fair territory which belonged unto it: formerly held in *Fee* of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, but otherwiſe not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Buren*, ſituate on the River *Linghe*, having a ſtrong Caſtle antiently, and a goodly territory, holden immediatly of the Empire, as a *Fief Imperial*. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of *Frederick* Lord of *Egmond*, brothers ſon to *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the ſixt Duke of *Gueldres*, created Earl of *Buren* by *Maximilian* the firſt, Anno 1492. which *Frederick* was grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, who died *Anno* 1549. after whoſe death it fell at laſt to *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, eldeſt ſon of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Anne* the daughter and heir of the ſaid *Maximilian*, upon the death of the ſaid *Anne*, *Anno* 1551.

ZUTPHEN, accompted formerly for the 4th *Capital* City of *Guelderland*, now a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, with that part of *Guelderland* which is called the *Velluwe*; on the North, with *Over-yſſell*; on the South, with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8. walled Towns, beſides many Villages; that is to ſay, 1. *Doetecum*, ſtanding on the old *Yſſell*, riſing out of *Weſtphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yſſell* falleth into the new *Yſſell*, or the trench called *Foſſa Druſiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Brookhurſt*, a County of it ſelf, which antiently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochen* upon the River *Berkell*. 5. *Tſheerenbergue*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll*, taken by the Prince of *Orange* for the States Confederate, *Anno* 1627. 7. *Brederverd*, a town of war, and ſubject to the change of Maſters, as ſuch places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidfen*, ſo called of the Southern ſituation of it amongſt the Fennes, on the right ſhore of the *Yſſell*, where it receiveth in it the River *Berkel*, which runs thorow the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick edifices; a diſtinct State in *Civil* matters, but in *Spiritual* ſubject (in former times) to the Biſhop of *Munſter*: a thing obſervable, and not to be paralleld elſewhere, that the four chief Towns and quarters of one Province only, ſhould appertain (as here in *Guelderland*) to four ſeveral *Dioceſes*. Of which there may ſome reaſon be aſſigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more antient than that of *Guelderland* it ſelf, and not depending antiently on the fortunes of it: united to it by the marriage of *Otho* of *Naſſaw*, the firſt Earl of *Guelderland*, with *Sophia* daughter and heir of *Wickman*, the laſt Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldom ended when that firſt began. After this it continued ſubject to the Earls and Dukes of *Gueldres*, til the revolt of *Holland*, and the other Provinces, from the King of *Spain*; at what time it was beſieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leiceſter*: at the ſiege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *Britiſh Epigrammatiſt* thus verſifieth.

Zutphen.

Digna legi ſcribis, facis & digniſſima ſcribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tua, facta probum.

Thou writ'ſt things worthy *reading*, and didſt doe
Things worthy *writing* too;
Thy Acts thy valour ſhow,
And by thy works we do thy learning know.

Groining-land.

And though upon the losse of that gallant man (nephew and heir unto that Earl) the siege was raised at the present; yet was it re-inforced again, *Anno* 1590. and the Town then taken: continuing ever since in the confederacy of the *States united.*

GROINING-LAND, hath on the East, *East-Friseland*; on the West, *West-Friseland*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, *Over-Yssel*; so wedged in as it were betwixt both *Frieselands*, that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It conraineth under it the Country called the *Ommelands*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, because lying along the River *Ems*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief whereof are 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *East-Friseland*. 2. *Keykirk*. 3. *Old-Haven*, standing on the Sea. 4. As for the Town of *Groning* it self, it is rich, great, and very well built, situate amongst divers small streams which run thorow it; and having also divers Chanels for conveyance of waters, which adds much to the safety and strength thereof. A Town of great jurisdiction, both within and without, judging absolutely without *appeals*, in causes both *Civil*, and *Criminal*; in *Spirituals* subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Munster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks, by King *Philip* the second, *Anno* 1559. And though the Prince in *Civil* causes had his Officer or Lieutenant there; yet in *Criminal* the Town was *Soveraign*, and granted pardons as *Soveraign* of the whole estate, paying to the Prince for all duties yearly, but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country antiently belonged to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, by whose negligence in defending them, they submitted their estate to the Dukes of *Guelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxonie* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *East-Friseland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession, sold his estate therein to the Duke of *Gueldres*, *Anno* 1514. to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536. they put themselves under the command of *Charles* the fifth, but with the reservation of all their Privileges, and antient Liberties; for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the rest of the *united States*, *Anno*, 1594. and so still continue.

The antient Inhabitants of these Countries were the *Menapii*, and *Sicambri*, very valiant people possessing *Guelderland*; and the *Majores Frisii*, which were planted in *Groyning*, and the rest of *Friseland*. Of these the *Sicambri* were accompted the most valiant people, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name, possessing with the rest of those Nations, the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof, by the posterity of *Charles* the *Great*, these Countries were first part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, afterwards of the *German* Empire: governed at the first by *Guardians*, or *Protectors*, created by the people in the reign of *Charls* the *Bald*; the two first being *Wickard*, and *Lupold*, (or *Leopold*) two Brethren; who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Gueldres*, occasioned the whole Country to be called *Guelderland*. But they, and their Successors, by what name or title soever called, were in effect but *Provincial Officers*, accomptable to the Emperours for their administration; the first *free Prince* hereof being *Otho* of *Nassaw*, who having to his first wife the *Lady Aleide*, daughter of *Wickard*, the last *Guardian*; was by the Emperour *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Guelderland*; adding thereto the State of *Zutphen*, by a second marriage, as is said before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a *Dukedom*, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1339. sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly incensed at his ungracious son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie*, for 92000 *Florens* of ready money, and an Annual pension, *An.* 1472. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charls*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his son; who finally surrendred it unto *Charls* the fift, *Anno* 1547.

EARLES and DUKES of *GVELDERLAND.*

1079 1 *Otho* of *Nassaw*, the first Earl.
2 *Gerard*, the son of *Otho* by his first wife *Aleide.*
1131 3 *Henry*, the son of *Gerard.*
1162 4 *Gerard* II. son of *Henry.*
1180 5 *Otho* II. brother of *Gerard.*
1202 6 *Gerard* III. son of *Otho* the second.
1229 7 *Otho* III. son of *Gerard*, who walled the Towns of *Ruermond*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick.*
1271 8 *Rainold*, son of *Otho* the third, taken and imprisoned till his death, by
1326 9 *Rainold* II. his own son, created the first Duke of *Gueldres*, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, at *Franfort*, Anno 1339. liberal to the poor, and a great Patron of the *Muses.*
1343 10 *Rainold* III. son of *Raynold* the 2d. molested with continual wars with his brother *Edward*, by whom taken, and imprisoned till his dying day.
1371 11 *Edward*, the son of *Rainold* the 2d. by *Eleanor* the daughter of *Edw.* the third of *England*, his 2d. wife, dyed the same year with his brother; the last of the male issue of *Otho* of *Nassaw.*
1371 12 *Mary*, (by some called *Joan*) Sister of *Edw.* by the same *venter*, and wife of *Wil.* E. of *Gulick.*
13 *William*, son of *William* Duke of *Gulick*, and *Mary* of *Gueldres*, admitted Knight of the *Garter* by King *Richard* the second.
14 *Rainold* IV. the brother of *William.*
15 *Arnold* of *Egmond*, son of *John* Lord of *Egmond*, and *Mary* his wife, daughter of *Joan*, the sister of *Rainold*, and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the estate of *Gueldres*; the

Duke-

the Dukedom of *Gulick* being ſeized on by *Adolph*, ſon of *William* the firſt Duke of *Berg*, as the next heir male to the two laſt Dukes. Being afterwards taken, impriſoned, and moſt babarouſly handled by his own ſon *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke of *Burgundie*, he ſold to him his eſtates of *Gueldres*, and *Zutphen*, to be injoyed by him after his deceaſe, *Anno* 1472.

1473 16 *Adolph*, the wicked ſon of *Arnold*, diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtate by the ſaid agreement which Duke *Charls* enjoyed for his life; after the death of the ſaid *Charls*, was reſtored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, *Anno* 1467. and made the General of their forces againſt *Lewis* the eleventh.

1477 17 *Charles*, ſon of *Arnold*, after long wars with the Princes of the houſes of *Burgundie*, and *Auſtria*, pretending the ſale and legacy of Duke *Arnold*, to *Charles* the *Warlike*, ſurrendred his eſtates unto *Charles* the fifth, to be enjoyed by him after his deceaſe, if he left no iſſue. According to which contract the Emperour *Charles* ſucceeded him in *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, *An.* 1538, being the year of his deceaſe; after that time accompted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were Quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Guelderland*; 2. *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we ſeen a Country, which at the firſt erecting of theſe Eſtates, was nothing in a manner but *bogs* and *mariſhes*; and at the beſt but a continual wilderneſſe of woods and forreſts; by the great *providence* of the Princes, and extreme induſtry of the people, made the moſt populous, beſt-planted, and the wealthieſt Eſtate (for the bigneſſe of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have ſeen thoſe ſeveral Eſtates and *Principalities*, by Marriages, and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the houſe of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illuſtrious Family, inferiour to no Kings of *Chriſtendome* for Power and Riches (eſpecially under Duke *Philip* the *Good*) the ſubjects hereof did ſo abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip de Commes*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country ſeemed like the *land* of *Promiſe*. Some thought there was a purpoſe in this Duke *Philip*, of erecting theſe States into a Kingdom. Diverted from it by the difference and variety of Lawes and Privileges which thoſe people ſeverally lived under: not to be brought without great difficulty and diſtaſt, to one form of Government; yet might have done it if he would, as himſelf openly affirmed to the Embaſſadours of King *Lewis* the 11th. But *Charles* his ſon being more bent on the deſign, negotiated to that end with the Emperour *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, *Anno* 1473. and doubtleſſe had obtained his purpoſe, upon the marriage of his daughter with *Maximilian*, *Fredericks* ſon (which was then propounded) had not his raſh engagement againſt the *Swiſſers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the courſe of theſe projects; which projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had but for that engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both ſides of it, from the *Alpes* unto the *German* Ocean, and been the moſt conſiderable Prince at that time in *Chriſtendome*: all *Elſats* in *high Germanie*, being ſold, or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Auſtria*, the Dukedom of *Lorrein* at his mercy; beſides, the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way to the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its *diſtinct Laws*, and living according to their ancient *Privileges*; till the attempt of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, moſt reſolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancell all their privileges, and new mould the Eſtate, according to his own will and pleaſure: occaſioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country; and the ſetting up of a new Eſtate, oppoſite unto him, and deſtructive of his intereſſe in it. But before we come unto this change, we will firſt look upon the Princes, Power, Revenue, and other things conſiderable touching this Eſtate, whilſt it ſtood entire, under the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundy*, and

LORDS of *BELGIUM*.

1369 1. *Philip* the *Hardie*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the firſt great raiſer of this Houſe.

1404 2 *John* the *Proud*, Duke of *Burgundie*, *&c.*

1419 3 *Philip* the *Good*, added to his eſtates the Dukedoms of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the *Marquiſat*, and *Machlyn*, by the death of his Couzin *Philip*; the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordſhip of *Weſt-Friſeland*, by the reſignation and death of the Counteſs *Jaqueline*, whoſe next heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for money.

1467 4 *Charles* the *Warlike*, who bought the Eſtates of *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*; and held them peaceably all his life.

1476 5 *Mary*, the daughter and heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, ſon of the Emperour *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, and the greateſt parts of the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Artois*; unfortunately killed with a fall from her horſe, and an unſeaſonable modeſty in not ſuffering the *Chirurgions* to dreſſe her wound; the hurt which ſhe had taken being on her thigh.

1482 6 *Philip* III. ſon of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charls* the 8 of *France* reſtored all the

Guelderland.

places in *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy* taken by his Father; married *Joan* daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* Kings of *Spain*.

1505 7 *Charles* II. Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperor of that name the fift: added to his Estate in these Countries, the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, the Lordships of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssell*, and *Groning*.

1558 8 *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the II. of *Spain*, invading these Countries against their privileges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, *Anno* 1581. which made him after a long and a bloody war, to surrender all his interests in them to

1599 9 *Isabella Clara Eugenia* his daughter, and *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*, whom he married to her: during whose Government, a truce for 12 years was made, and in the preface to that Truce, the *Confederate Estates* declared to be treated with as a *Free Estate*, to whom the Kings of *Spain* could pretend no title.

16 10 *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the IV. of *Spaine*, on the decease of the Arch-Dutchesse *Isabella* his Aunt, succeeded in the possession of some, and the title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

The ordinary *Revenue* of these Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundie*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the breach, were estimated at three millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in Christendom at those times received, the *French* only excepted: the very measuring of corn in the City of *Antwerp*, being farmed yearly for 100000 Crowns in ready mony; But the *extraordinary* was far greater: the *Estates* of these Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* the fift an Aide, which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 crowns a moneth; and yet the Provinces of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, *Gueldres*, and *Groyning*, were not rated to it; And it is said, that *Philip* the second at his first coming to the *Estate*, was presented with a grant of 40 millions of *Florens*, to be paid in few years. So that these Countries were the true *Correlative* of both his *Indies*: the loss of which, before the making of the truce, *Anno* 1609. cost him above 100 millions of Crowns, and the loss of 400000 men.

The *Forces* of these Princes by Land, may best be seen in the expedition of *Charls* (then Earl of *Charolois*) against *Lewis* the eleventh, whom Duke *Philip* the *Good* his Father furnished to that enterprise with 9000 Archers, and 1400 men of Arms, every one of which had five or six great horses attending on him: and at his setting forward, was told by his Father, (never accompted for a *Braggart*) that if he fell into any danger, he should not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting men. The said Duke having thus sent away his son, and being provoked by the indignities of those of *Leige* and *Dinand*, who revolted from him, suddenly raised an Army of 28000 horse, and a proportionable number of foot, for the chastisement of that proud and rebellious people. And *Charls* himself, succeeding on the death of his Father, in his unprosperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no less than 80000 men at the siege of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any standing Navy, nor needed they so to do, as the case stood with them; considering that when they had occasion of any such service, they used to take up all the Ships which they found in their harbours (of which there never wanted good store) employing as many as they pleased, and dismissing the rest.

The principal order of *Knighthood* ordained by these Princes, was that of the *Golden Fleece*, first instituted by Duke *Philip* the *Good* (in imitation of the Order of S. *George* in *England*) *Anno* 1430. The name and fancy borrowed, as some conceive from *Gedeons Fleece*, from *Jasons Fleece*, as others think; but more probably from the *Golden Fleeces* of *England*, which brought him in so much gold and treasure in the way of custom. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with irons, seeming to strike fire out of a Flint, (*ex ferro flammam* being the word:) at the end whereof hung the *Toison d'Or*, or *Fleece of Gold*. Their number at the first was but 25. (which is the number of Knights of the *English Garter*) increased afterwards by the same *Duke Philip* unto thirty one. *Charls* the first raised them to fifty one: And now the King of *Spain* hath assumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaseth: this being the only *Military*, or *Civil* Order of which those Kings have the bestowing; the orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the rest of *Spanish* institution, being rather *Religious* and *Monastical*, at the best but mixt. St. *Andrews* day, the day of the Installation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did these Princes live, as long as they continued in good terms with the subject Provinces; being masters of more goodly *Jewels*, magnificent furniture for their houses, and costly movables than any three of the greatest Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other side, the subjects whilst they lived in duty under so great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly happiness: in their *Apparell* excessively gorgeous, in their Feasts and Banquets over-sumptuous, in their *Manners* dissolute; vices which usually accompany that kind of felicity. An happinesse too great to continue long. By the ambition and violence of *Charls* the *Warlike*, they were first plunged into a war against *Lewis* the eleventh; of which they did not only feel the present miseries, but lost all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better grounded Ambition of *Charles* the fift, they were exercised in continual wars against the *French*, who miserably harrowed and ransacked the Countries of *Luxemburgh*, *Hainalt* and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the especial care of *Philip* his son, advising him to use them kindly, as those that were the chief supporters of his State and Glory: adding, that if he should deal otherwise with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other side, the People, to obtain his favour, presented him at his first entrance on the Government

vernment, with a grant of 40 millions of *Florens*, as before was ſaid. But he, tranſported with ambition, and a *Catholick* zeal, not only forgot their love, but his Fathers counſell; and had no ſooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the treaty of *Cambray*, *Anno* 1559. but preſently he caſt his thoughts on the ſubjection of this People to his will and pleaſure. For they were ſo fortified with privileges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had been ſworn to obſerve; that he wanted much of that abſolute and uncontrollable command, which he ſtrongly aimed at. Some of which privileges were, that the Prince could place no ſtranger, amongſt them, with juriſdiction over their Eſtates and perſons, in Offices of war or juſtice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the *Clergy*; nor 3. leavy any *ſubſidies*, without the *States* of the Country. 4. But the main *Prerogative* was, that if the Prince by violence or wrong, did infringe any of the ſaid *Charters* and *Franchiſes*; the people after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that ſuch baſe and unworthy people (for ſo they eſteemed them) ſhould in ſuch liberty poſſeſſe ſo brave and rich a Country; their King bearing no title of Majeſty, or abſolute command over them. Beſides, the *Reformation* of *Religion*, which then began to grow to ſome ſtrength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome*, by the power and terrour of the *Inquiſition*; and by the erecting of ſome new *Epiſcopall* Sees amongſt them (for before there were but three in all) to ſettle ſome more conſtant courſe of *Eccleſiaſticall Diſcipline*. Againſt both which, when the people violently oppoſed, he then reſolved of bringing them by *Spaniſh* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Canon) to their old obedience. To theſe ends he ſends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain (as having 60 years been a Souldier) with a puiſſant Army, to be his *Vice-roy* among them. He alſo gave him a Commiſſion of that large extent, that he might place and diſplace whom he would, and execute all ſuch as he could find oppoſite to his deſigns. At that time the two chief men among them were the Prince of *Orange*, and Count *Egmont*: the firſt more potent with the People; the latter, with the Souldiers. Had theſe two joyned together, they might eaſily have prevented D. *Alva's* entrance; but *Egmont* was ſo ſoothed up with Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had, concerning the Dukes Commiſſion. The Earl exhorted the Prince to ſubmit himſelf to the pleaſure of the King, and ſo to prevent the ruine of his Houſe. The Prince deſired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country; as for himſelf, *He had rather be a Prince without a Houſe, than a Count without an Head.* Being thus reſolved, the Prince retires to his friends at *Naſſaw*, in high *Germany*; the Earl ſtayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no ſooner ſetled himſelf, but he intrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmond*, and beheaded them, *Anno* 1567. Being thus rid of theſe two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindred his proceedings; he quartered his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces; ſpoiled the people, not of their *Privileges* only, but their *Liberty*. Amongſt the reformed he brought in the bloudy *Inquiſition*, and indeed ſo tyrannically did he behave himſelf, that the people were forced to a *defenſive war*, as well for their lives, as ſubſtance. This was a war of *State* not *Religion*; the moſt part of the *Hollanders* being Papiſts, at the time of their taking arms, During theſe troubles, the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but he in one place, and Count *Lodewick* his brother, in another, kept Duke *Alva* imployed; though divers times not with ſuch fortunate ſucceſſe as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Fluſhing* was ſuppriſed by *Voorſt*, and *Berland*, as we have before ſaid. So alſo was the *Brill* in *Voorne*, an Iſland of *Holland*, by the *Count de la March*; and not long after, all *Holland*, except *Amſterdam*, followed the fortune and ſide of the Prince; together with all the towns of *Zeland*, *Midleburg* excepted, *Anno* 1573. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requiſens* was appointed governor, during whoſe rule many of the *Belgians* abondoned their Country; ſome flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, moſt into *England*. After his death, and before the arrivall of *Don John*; the Prince and his party recovered ſtrength and courage again; till the comming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into worſe caſe than ever. Yet *Anno* 1581. they declare by their writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain* was fallen from the *Government*: and take a new oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spaniſh* obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no ſmall hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to ſettle a Tyranny in himſelf, than to drive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the town; but was by the valour of the *Burgers* ſhamefully repulſt, Shame of this ignoble enterpriſe, eſpecially grief for its ill ſucceſſe, took him out of the world. About which time, the eſtates of theſe Countries was thus by this *Hieroglyphick* expreſſed. A Cow repreſented the body of *Belgium*: there ſtood the King of *Spain* ſpurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but ſhe foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, eſpecially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherouſly ſlain with a Piſtoll, *Anno* 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miſerable; deſperate of pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but ſuch as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only ſanctuary they had now left; to which they ſue, offering the Queen thereof the ſoveraignty of their Provinces; who had, if not a true, yet a plauſible title to them; As being generally deſcended from *Edward* he third, and *Philip* his wife, who was Siſter, and (as ſome ſay) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. If *Margaret*, from whom the right of *Spain* is derived, were daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to ſucceed after *Philip*; who was rejected: if that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger ſiſter, then was our Queen the undoubted Heir; her Predeceſſor *Philippa* being Earl *Williams* eldeſt ſiſter. But that

He-

Heroick Queen not disputing the right of the title, nor intending to herself any thing, save the honour of relieving her distressed neighbours, and providing for her own estate, by this diversion; took them into her protection. Under which the *Belgian* affairs succeeded so prosperously (I will not now stand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any treaty of peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this conclusion, that he treated with them as with a Free Estate, abstracted from all right and title, which he might pretend unto the places which they were possessed of. This peace was concluded *Anno* 1609. since which time, they have kept Garrisons well disciplined, and as well paid: so that these Countries have in these late dayes been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence for all Christendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to see the manner of Fortifications, and learn the art of war. Thus did they for 40 years hold the staff against a most puissant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with great advantage; that it is observed, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by war, these only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to consider into what follies and extremities Princes run, by using their people to the war. The Kings of *France* place most of their hopes in their *Cavalrie*, because in policy they would not that the Vulgar should be exercised in arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedemonians*, that they should never fight often with one enemie: the breaking whereof, made the *Thebans*, a small Common-wealth, to be their equals in power; Whereupon it was tartly said by *Antalcidas* to *Agesilaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them, and fighting with them, *he had made the* Thebans *good Souldiers against their wills*. The *Turks* won the vast Empire they now possess, by making many and speedy wars. But now that *policy* being worn out of fashion, we see that (to omit *Persia*) the little and distracted Kingdom of *Hungarie*, hath for 200 years resisted their Forces. So was it between the Dukes of *Austria*, and the *Switzers*; and so it is betwixt the *Spaniard*, and *Low-country* men; who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the wars; by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of action, and great managers of causes appertaining to fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby also perceive, what advantage a small *State* gaineth by *fortifying* places and passages: there being nothing which sooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince, than to *beleagner* a well fortified town: for that herein he consumeth his time, and commonly loseth his men, credit, and money; as the *Romans*, before *Numantia*; the great *Turk*, in *Malta*; and *Charls* of *Burgundie*, before *Nancie*; For where war is drawn out of the field unto the wals, the *Mattock* and *Spade* being more necessary than the *Sword* and *Spear*; there the valour of the assailant is little available, because it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought these several *Estates* and Provinces into one hand; so now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themselves as a *State* apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, (some few towns excepted) the *Marquisate* of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders* (except only St. *Sluys*) and the Lordship or *Signeurie* of *Machlyn*; with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Gueldres*, to countervail the towns with-held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitfull in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing; but as much inferiour to the other in power, and riches, by reason of their strength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea; and thereby draw the whole trade of Christendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amsterdam*, and other towns of their confederacy.

For the government of these Provinces, there is a *Regent* sent from the Court of *Spain*, whose authoritie is generally as great as that of the Kings; save that all matters of moment pass under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great trust and concernment are appointed by him: and that all laws, decrees, sentences and negotiations are dispatched in his name. For the assistance of the *Regent* there is a *Privie Councel*, a *Councel of State*, and a *Councel of Finances*, by whom all things are ordered which concern the publick, the *Regents* authority co-operating and concurring with them: without which, though they may consult, they can execute nothing. And for the governance and well ordering of the several *Provinces*, there is in every one of them a Lieutenant, or Provincial Governor; subordinate to the *Regent*, and accomptable to him: and in each Province a particular Councel held in the Kings name, consisting of more or less Counsellors, (as the bigness of the Province is) for the most part *Doctors* or Licentiates of the *Civill-Laws*, with a President as the head thereof; which in some places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, and in some the *Chancery*. To these Courts all the Subjects do resort for justice, in causes both *Criminal* and *Civil*: to these are brought *appeals* from inferiour *Judicatures*, such as the Courts of great Towns, and particular *Franchises*: and from these lieth an *appeal* to the great *Councel* at *Machlyn*, supreme and superintendent unto all the rest.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwise is of publick moment, the Regent sendeth out letters in the Kings name to command the *Estates*, that is to say, the *Clergy*, the *Nobility*, and the principal *Towns* of every Province (except those of *Luxembourg*, *Guelders*, *West-Friseland* and *Over-Yssell*, who by special privilege cannot be called out of their own countries) to come before him. The place of their Assembly is for the most part at *Bruxels*, the Court and residence of the *Regent*; because the *Brabanters* are also privileged not to be summoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the *States* assemble not all together; but those of one Province at a time, so one after another: to whom the President or some one of the Councell of *State* proposeth in the Princes name, that which he demandeth: To which if any town oppose, then all which the rest have done is of no effect; nothing being granted by the Deputies, or *States*, of

any

any Province; but with this condition, that all the reſt of the *Eſtates* do agree unto it. Without this punctual conſent of all parties intereſſed, the Prince can impoſe nothing, by their Laws, upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publick government.

And as the people are thus privileged in regard of the Prince, ſo are the Princes and Prelates privileged in regard of the Pope: it being agreed upon between them,

1. That the Prince is to give *Clergie Beneſices*, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-perſon may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to ſend his Delegates or Commiſſioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a *Beneſice*, nor grant a Pardon, nor ſend a *Bull* into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no *Clergy man* can buy lands or other immoveables, without the Princes conſent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to viſit the *Clergie*, to ſee if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the abuſes.

Great privileges, if conſidered rightly; greater than which few Proteſtant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the *Revenue* raiſed by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Eſtate, it is not eaſie to be gueſſed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his Coffers. The expences of his Court there, is as great as ever, under any of the former *Regents*; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garriſons, greater than before. Nor doth it now ſtand with reaſon of *State* to lay any arbitrary taxes upon the people, leſt he exaſperate them to a ſecond *Rebellion*, or ſtartle them to ſome new *Confederacies* againſt his quiet.

Under the government of the *Confederate Eſtates*, are the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, excepting ſome few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Zutphen*, the *Signeuries* of *Weſt-Friſeland*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, *Groining*, the Town of *Sluyes*, with the Iſle of *Caſſandt* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchie of *Brabant*. This is the leſſer part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the ſoil, but the more populous of the two, and by the induſtry and great trading of the people, the more rich and powerfull. Govern'd after their own old Laws, by the *particular Eſtates* of every Province, not yet united into one entire body of a Commonwealth; ſaving that for the better preſervation of their *confederacie*, the Commiſſioners of the ſeveral Provinces doe conſult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The *Eſtates* of the *particular Provinces*, elected out of the principal Towns and places of moſt importance, do order the affairs thereof according to their antient *privileges*, rights, and cuſtoms, as well by themſelves as by their Colleagues and Officers whem they do appoint: and that as well for matters of *State*, as in point of *Juſtice*. For adminiſtration of the which, the *Governour*, *Preſident* and *Counſellors* of the *Provincial* Courts, have the cognizance of all caſes both *civil* and *criminal*; and in all cauſes of *appeal* from inferiour Courts, in each of which they do proceed without *appeal*, making their Acts and Commiſſions in the name of the ſaid *Governours*, *Preſident*, and *Councel*; but pronouncing ſentence and executing judgment, in right of the Soveraignty of the ſaid Province. And theſe *Provincial States* are choſen generally out of the *Plebeians*, or common people, and the *Burgers* (at the beſt) of the greater Townſhips: the Nobility and Gentry being ſo worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above 3 families of Gentlemen; and thoſe compelled to live after the *Plebeian* faſhion for fear of envy, and to avoid the inſolency of the ſaucie *Clowns*; who out of rudeneſſe and the deſire of equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of theſe *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleaſure of the *communtie* for which they ſerve, are choſen one or more for each ſeveral Province, according to the condition and capacity of thoſe which are choſen to reſide at the *Hague*, there to conſult of the affairs which concern the publick: but ſo, that be they more or leſſe out of every Province, they make amongſt them but one *ſuffrage*, when any thing is to be put unto the Vote. And theſe they call the *States General*, firſt, becauſe a collected body out of all the Provinces; & ſecondly, becauſe they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable abſolutely by the *States Provincial*, but only in ſuch things as concern the *general* good of the whole Eſtate, as treating with Ambaſſadours, making war and peace, &c. For their aſſiſtance in the which, there is a *Councel of State* made up of the Governours and ſome eminent men of every Province (in which the Ambaſſadour of *England*, as long as we held *Fluſhing*, and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or *ſuffrage*) by whoſe advice they diſpoſe of all things which concern the publike. But ſo, that if any difficulty do appear in the buſineſſe, they conclude nothing, till they have the approbation and conſent of the particular *Cities*, and *Provinces* for which they are choſen; to whom they are *accomptable* for their adminiſtration, and by whom *revocable* whenſoever they pleaſe.

The *Revenue* of this *Eſtate* doubtleſſe is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment, conſiſting of no leſſe than 30000 men; which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided: yet ſo well paid, that we never read of any mutiny amongſt them for want thereof. The whole charge, with the entertainment of Captains and ſuperiour Officers, is ſaid to amount to 500000 l. *per annum*, raiſed on the people by *Exciſe* laid upon all commodities, and many *taxes* of like nature, ſo inſupportable in themſelves, and amongſt men, which would be thought to live in a free *State*; that ſhould the *Spaniard* or any Prince in *Chriſtendom* lay but half ſo much upon their Subjects, it would occaſion a *Revolt*. So that whereas one of the firſt cauſes of their falling off from the King of *Spain*, was to free themſelves from taxes and impoſitions, illegally (as they ſaid)

ſaid) inforced upon them; they have drawn upon themſelves more arbitrary and illegal payments, than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of government. Touching their power at Sea, we have ſpoke already. All I ſhall now adde to it, is by way of inſtance, which is, that in the year 1587. the King of *Denmark* on pretence of ſome diſpleaſure, arreſted 608. ſhips of theirs, of all ſorts at one time, in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they ſet out upon very ſhort warning, an hundred good men of war to joyn with *England*, againſt the invincible *Armada*, which then threatned both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to theſe Countries, wherewith the God of all bleſſings doth enrich a Nation, but a *gracious Prince*, *unitie of Religion*, and *a quiet Government*: which if it pleaſed the Almighty to confer upon them, they would ſurpaſs all neighbouring States in treaſure, potency, content, and all worldly happineſs.

There are in theſe Countries,
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 15.
Univerſities 7.
Viz.

Lovain, *Leige*, *Harderwick*, *Groyning*,
Doway, *Leyden*, *Franeker*.

And thus much for *Belgium*.

OF GERMANIE.

GERMANIE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pruſſia*, *Poland*, and *Hungarie*; on the Weſt, with *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Belgium*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Seas, and ſome part of *Denmark*; on the South, with the *Alps*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germany* much differeth from that deſcribed by *Tacitus*, and others of the *Roman* writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, with ſo much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this ſide of the River *Viſtula*; but bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germanie* containing on the further banks of thoſe Rivers, five whole *Roman* Provinces, that is to ſay, *Noricum Ripenſe*, and *Mediterraneum*, *Rhœtia ſecunda*, *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, with ſome parts of *Rhœtia prima*, and *Germania ſecunda*; but terminated with the *Danes* and the *Baltick* Sea.

It was firſt called thus by the *Romans* (as ſome conceive) who ſeeing the people both in cuſtoms, ſpeech, and courſe of life, ſo like thoſe of *Gallia*, called them the *Germans* to the *Gauls*: the word *Germanus* in the *Latine*, ſignifying a brother of the whole bloud, (as our Lawyers phraſe it) that is to ſay, a brother both by father and mother; thoſe which have the ſame mother, but divers fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who ſpeaking of the great reſemblance which was betwixt theſe Nations, in manners, ſpeech, cuſtoms, and way of life; concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reaſon call them *Germans*, *cum fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent oſtendere*; intending to ſignifie by that name, that they were the brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be underſtood of thoſe people only, which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vaſt Continent, according to the ancient extent thereof, it being very well obſerved by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at firſt *Nationis non Gentis nomen*, the name of ſome of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in proceſs of time ſpreading over all that large tract of ground, and thoſe ſcattered Nations which were either conquered by them, or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which ſignifieth all, and the word *man*, ſignifying in that language as in ours; whence alſo they derive the name of *Almans*, by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them, *nihil niſi virile*, nothing not worthy of a *man*. *Bocartus* ſomewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the antient *Gallick*, did ſignifie as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*; would have them at their firſt coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans*, by the *Gauls*, that is to ſay, *men of war*, (or *Gens d'Armes* in the preſent *French*) by reaſon of the great and many victories obtained by them.

The like diverſity I find for the name of *Almans*; For though ſome gave them the name of *Almans* from the ſame original, from whence they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was ſaid before: yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name becauſe they conſiſted of ſo many ſeveral Nations, coming

coming out of the North and North-east hither; that they seemed to be a Hotch-poth of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation, which is the conceit of *Asinius Quadratus*. But for my part I do conceive (supposing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain*, till such time as the Princes of the Dukedom of *Almain* (since called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did possesse the Empire: which continuing in that potent familie near 100 years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain* race; and so impart that name to the Empire also. And for the *Almains* naturally and properly so called, (of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Suevia*) I see no *Etymology* more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus*, the son of *Tuisco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuisconem Deum, & filium Mannum, originem gentes conditoresq;*,) as is said by *Tacitus*: the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double *n*) in all antient writers, as men that did derive themselves from this *Mannus*, the son of *Tuisco*. In like sort, as I think, the *Marco-manni* inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were so called, as the *Manni of the Marches*, or out-borders of *Germanie*; and not the *Markmans*, as if they were men of *mark*, the only men of fame and honour of all those Nations, which might as well be prefixed from the *Dutch* original, as that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am swayed the rather, because I find the Dutch Nation generally so much inclined, to derive their original from *Tuisco*, (from whom the *Teutones* inhabiting about *Brandenbourg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of *Dutch-land*, or *Dutch-men*, coming near in sound to *Tuisc-land*, and *Tuisc-men*: In which I shall subscribe to *Verstegans* opinion, though for the most part I look upon him, but as the second part of *Goropius Becanus*.

But being the *Etymologies* of the names of most ancient Nations, are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on conjectures only; let us leave the name a while and survey the Country; the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say, from the *Vistula*, or *Wixell*, to the *Rhene*, is estimated at 840 *Italian* miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the same miles. So that the figure of it being near a square, it may take up 3160 miles in compasse, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and tenth *Climates*, the longest day in the most Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half; and in the most Northern, 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compasse and extent of ground are supposed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer sort laborious, painfull, and of a sincere and honest carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Souldiers, and true lovers of honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwise resolved it, affirming that the *Gaules* fight for liberty, the *Belgians* for honour, and the *Germans* for gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Souldiers, who if they fail of pay, fail in courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great bones, much flesh, and large sinews; but commonly of such a phlegmatick constitution, that they have not spirit enough to manage such a masse of flesh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humour, makes them for the most part to be men of a bright, or light-brown hair, and fair complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum est bibere*; and the old Verses,

Germani possunt cunctos tolerare labores,
O utinam possent tam bene ferre sitim.

The *Dutch* themselves to labour well inure;
O would they thirst could half so well indure.

This love unto their liquor, together with their natural temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julio* the second, stiling the *Spaniards* birds of the air, because of their ambition; the *Venetians* and *Genoeses*, fishes of the sea, because so much accustomed to Navigation: called the *Germans*, by the name of the Beasts of the field. And when *Augustus* was resolved to take unto himself the Supream government of *Rome*, he was advised by *Agrippa* to choose a guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reason was (as *Dion* giveth it) because in those great bodies there was little *malice* hidden, and lesse *subtilety*; and that they were a people that took more pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters of war this people have been formerly in a measure famous; yet not so much by the valour or conduct of their *Captains* (for they have had but few such) as by their own hardinesse. They withstood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that space, than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*; and even at the last (saith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis sum quam victi*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lansknights* of *Germany* (for so they call their horse and foot) have been much imployed: but more by reason of their numbers, easily raised out of so large a Country, than any opinion of their valour; being slow of motion, dull of apprehension, fearfull of putting any thing to the chance of war. By reason of which fearfullnesse as they are very cruell upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex when they get the victory: so are they apt to run upon any *Alarm*; not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any perswasions. Insomuch as *Charles* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting men, but most of this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of 10000 *Turks* to passe by his trenches, being then strongly encamped before *Strigonium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungarie*, and to victual the Town before his face: not daring to set upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear lest being lustily charged, his *Germans*

would

would give back and indanger all. And yet beſides theſe weakneſſes they have ſome great faults. One of which is a cuſtome, if their wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midſt of a battell) to cry *Guelt*, *Guelt*, throw down their weapons, and ſuffer themſelves to be cut in pieces by the Enemy. And ſo they ſerved *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the battell of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of ſpoil and *plunder*: on which they are ſo bent whereſoever they come, that ſuch as entertain them have juſt cauſe to ſay, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their enemies. Two undeceiveable notes of mercenarie valour.

The women are of a good complexion, but by reaſon of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to corpulency: women of a good carriage (as the ſaying is) good Bearers, and as fruitfull breeders. Severely *obſequious* to their *Husbands*, whom many of good rank ſerve at the table with *Trenchers* and other neceſſaries, and take away when he hath done; eating the reſidue apart with and amongſt their Maids: ſcarce ſitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at ſome ſuch diſtance. And though the women by their Laws, have a *property* in the goods which they bring with them at their marriage, or are given them after, (ſo as the *Husband* hath but the uſe of them only;) and may diſpoſe of them by their *laſt Will*, at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better; the Husband being no leſſe churliſh and imperious than he would be otherwiſe. Which made *Caracalla* to ſay often, that only that *Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the Feminine Article to the Sun, and the Maſculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* do. Moſt of them, as well *Wives* as *Virgins*, (except perſons of honour) uſe to go bare footed within doors, and ſeldome put on ſhoes or ſtockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occaſions. A thing that ſeems the more ſtrange in regard of the extreme coldneſs of the Country, which is ſo fierce, that generally they lodge within two Feather beds both in ſummer and winter: and in moſt houſes have their *ſtoves*, of which the doors and windows are kept very cloſe, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be uſefull and inoffenſive in Gentlemens Houſes; yet in the *common Innes* where all ſorts of people are neceſſitated to throng together, the il ſmels, never purged by admitting any freſh air, are ready to ſtifle and choak up the ſpirits of raw Travellers, not accuſtomed to them.

The diet of *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus cenſured: the *Germans* have much meat, but ſluttiſhly dreſt; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to ſay truth, the *Germans* have meat enough: the people being generally of good ſtomachs, and either by nature or ill cuſtome, exceſſive both in eating or drinking; ſeldom riſing from the table till they have conſumed all which was ſet before them. Inſomuch as in ſome places it is provided by Law, that in their feaſts they ſhall not ſit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by intemperance either in eating or drinking, a man diſgorge his foul ſtomach in his fellows lap, or piſſe under the Table, it is no diſgrace to him; nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and exceſſive drinking, is not only cheriſhed among the Vulgar, but even among their greateſt Princes: who beſide what they do in this kind themſelves, have their *drinking champions*, as well to anſwer all challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whoſe Cellar ſhall afford the greateſt and moſt capable Veſſels.

The title of the Father deſcends to all the Children; every ſon of a Duke being a Duke; and every Daughter a Dutcheſs; a thing which the *Italians* hold ſo ridiculous, that they put it in the forefront of this facetious *Satyre*. The *Dukes* and *Earls* of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Meunſieurs* of *France*, the Biſhops of *Italy*, the Nobility of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the Knights of *Naples*, and the younger brethren of *England*, make a poor company. For by this common aſſuming of the Fathers honour, and parting his Lands among all the brethren, the Nobility is beyond reaſon multiplyed, and no leſs impoveriſhed: there being not long ſince, 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfield*; to moſt of which, their Arms have been the beſt part of their riches; *& nihil niſi arma & manus, & in his omnia*; as *Tacitus* once ſaid of the antient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchſafe to marry with the daughter of the *wealthieſt Merchant*; or ſuffer any of their ſiſters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman: nor any juſter cauſe of a diſheriting their children, then *ignoble marriages*; never permitting the iſſue of ſuch a Bed to ſucceed in any of their *Fees*, Eſtates, or titles, by means whereof though they debar themſelves of ſuch acceſſions of wealth, as matches of that kind might bring them: yet, to the great honour of their generoſity in this particular, they preſerve the *pure ſtream* of their bloud from running into *muddy chanels*; and keep the *ſpirits* of brave men, though they want the *fortunes*.

The *Languages* here ſpoken are the *French* in *Lorrein*, and ſome Towns of the Biſhop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the higheſt parts of *Turol*, which lye next to the Common-wealth of *Venice*; the *Scalvonian* ſpoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and ſome part of *Luſatia*: and the *high Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A language very antient doubtleſs (though I am not ſo much a *Goropian* as to think it ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, or before the *Flood*,) and ſuch as by reaſon of the little or no impreſſion which the *Roman* armies made upon this country, hath leſs Commixture with the *Latine*, than any which is uſed in theſe Weſtern parts, (the *Welch* excepted) and is very harſh by reaſon of its many Conſonants.

This Country was eſteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Foreſts, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthfull Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, aſperam cœlo, triſtem cultu aſpectuque*, as he further addeth. And ſuch no doubt it was in thoſe times wherein *Tacitus* lived: the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectifie the ſharpneſs of that Nothern air. But he who doth obſerve it now, cannot but confeſs that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or repleniſhed with more goodly and Gallant Cities:

being

being alſo in moſt parts both pleaſant, healthy and profitable, abounding with mines of ſilver, and inferior metals, plentifull in corn and wines, with which they ſupply the defect of other Nations; as alſo with Fleſh, Fiſh, Linnen, Quickſilver, Allom, Saffron, Armour, and other Iron-works. The Arable lands ſo ſpacious in the Eaſtern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turned not back again till noon; ſo making but two furrows for his whole dayes work. For this *Verſtegan* is my Author, and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of moſt eminency in the elder times, were 1. *Arminius*, the Prince of the *Cheruſci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus*, and the *Roman* Legions, 2. *Witikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*: for the middle ages, 3. *Otho* the firſt, 4. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, 5. *Rodulph* of *Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*, 6. *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*. 5. And in the laſt Century of years, 6. *Frederick* the ſecond Electour *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* againſt the *Turks*; 7. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter; 8 *Erneſt* Earl of *Mansfield*, 9. *John George* of *Jagerndorf*, 10. *Albert Wallenſtein* Duke of *Frideland*, and divers other of late days.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; learning being here ſo rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Biſhop of *Salizburg* was condemned of hereſie for holding that there were ſome *Antipodes*. In the next age there flouriſhed *Rhabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberſtade*, *Walufriaus Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a ſtout defender of the rights of the Empire, againſt the Encroachmenss of the Pope; *Otho Friſingenſis* the Hiſtorian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philoſopher; of which laſt it is ſaid, that he made the *Statua* of a man, which with the help of artificial Engines could ſpeak articulately; and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers, we have, 1. *Martin Luther*, that great inſtrument of the reformation. 2. *Philip Melanchthon* his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phœnix* of that Age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitius*, a ſolid and laborious writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*. 6. *Sebaſtian Munſter*, an induſtrious Coſmographer, and a learned Linguiſt. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxdorfius*, as great *Linguiſts* as he: not to deſcend to further inſtances in thoſe, who have ſo filled the Marts of *Francfort* in theſe later times.

But the greateſt excellency of this people lieth in the *Mechanical* part of learning, as being eminent for many *Mathematical* experiments, ſtrange water-works, *Medicinal* extractions, *Chymiſtry*, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no leſſe benefit than admiration of the World. Amongſt which I cannot chuſe but inſtance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent *Mathematician*, and a cunning Artizan, ſpoken of by *Keckerman*; who at the coming of the Emp. *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a *wooden Eagle*, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and ſo accompanied him to his lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuſe the world with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that miracle of a *flying Dove*, for which *Archytas* is ſo famed amongſt the Antients. Exceeded only by himſelf in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, becauſe leſſe in quantity) which at a Feaſt, to which he had invited ſome of his eſpecial friends, flew from his hand about the room, and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*. Expreſſed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*.

Once as this *Artiſt*, more with mirth than meat,
Feaſted ſome friends, whom he eſteemed great;
From his learn'd hand an *Iron Flie* flew out,
And having flown a perfect Round, about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Maſter,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a ſmall Flie could find ſufficient room
For all thoſe Springs, Wheeles, Counterpoiſe, and chains,
Which ſtood inſtead of life, and ſpur, and reigns.

And amongſt theſe I reckon *Bertholdus Swart*, a *Franciſcan* Fryer, the inventer (though by accident) of the fatal inſtrument, the Gun, Studious in *Chymiſtry*, he mingled dryed earth, ſulphur, and ſome other ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar, covered with a ſtone; and ſtriking fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a ſpark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the *Sulphur* and other minerals, with great violence blew up the ſtone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial ſeverally of theſe ingredients, to find out which of them it was which produced that effect, which having diſcovered, he cauſed an iron pipe to be made, crammed it with *Sulphur*, *Saltpetre* and ſtones; and putting fire to it, ſaw with what violent noiſe and fury it diſcharged it ſelf. This invention he is ſaid to have firſt communicated to the *Venetians*, *Anno* 1330. or thereabouts, who having been often vanquiſhed by the *Genoys*, and driven almoſt to a neceſſity of yeelding to them, by the help of their *Guns*, (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable diſcomfiture. And this was the firſt battel that ever thoſe warlike pieces had a part in; which, not long after, put to ſilence all the *engines* and devices wherewith the antients were wont to make their batteries. The next that made uſe of this inſtrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea; and not long after them, the *Engliſh*, at the ſiege of *Calice*, *Anno* 1347. about which time, they began alſo to be uſed in *Spain*. The *French*, it ſeemeth, learned the uſe of them from the *Engliſh*:

and

and the first benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the siege of *Orleance* was slain with a great shot, *Anno* 1425. Twenty years after this, *An.* 1445. they were first used in *Spain*, at the siege of *Septenil*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Castilians*, and after by degrees made common to the rest of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jewes* and *Moors* as unto the *Christians*, it was not long before they taught it to the *Turkes*. For the Jews being forced to abandon *Spain*, *Anno* 1492. betook themselves to *Greece*, and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions, to whom they shewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Herquebuzes, sufficiently since used to the hurt of Christendom. But somewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholding for them, to the wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholding I say, for notwithstanding the harm received by them at first, yet afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Ussan Cassanes*, and *Hysmael*, two of the most mighty Emperours of *Persia*, two memorable overthrows, by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Persians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperour objected against them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain *Herquebuciers*, but also sent him workmen to shew him the use and making of *Artillery*. These great pieces at the first invention were rude, unwieldy, and charged with stone bullets only: but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall, and the hand, which they now have. Whether now *Archery* or *Gunning* be to be preferred, I stand not here to determine; only this I am sure of, that victories have been of late purchased with lesse expence of blood and life, than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we shall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into consideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not easie to name, considering so many are here allowed; *Jewes* being intermixt with *Christians*, and these divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the latter also divided into *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, &c. The *Christian* faith first planted here, if *Dorotheus* Bishop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by S. *Tho.* surnamed *Didymus* one of the Twelve. But being there is little trust unto his *Relations*, the best were to say with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the same *Apostle*: That the *Gospel* was first preached amongst the *Rhœtians* and *Vindelici* by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*; amongst those of *Noricum*, by S. *Mark*; by S. *Crescens* at *Mentz*, S. *Clemens* at *Mets* in *Lorrein*; all of them *Apostolical* men, and of the number of the 70. after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the faith was planted very early in these Countries, *Irenæus* the renowned Bishop of *Lyons*, *Anno* 170. is sufficient evidence; who takes notice of it: and that it prospered very well, and took very good root, appeareth by the Bishop of *Ments*, *Triers*, *Wormes*, *Spires*, *Basil*, and *Strasbourg*, subscribing to the Council of *Colen* in the reign of *Constantius* the son of *Constantine* the Great, *Anno* 347. But the light hereof being extinguished for a time, by those barbarous Nations, who fell upon these out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to shine again, on the conversion of the *French*, in all parts of this Country: the Conquests and example of this puissant Nation, giving great incouragement thereunto. In which, as those of other Countries doe not want their honour, so the greatest part thereof belongs to the *English Saxons*: *Willibrod* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, *Willibald* of *Aichstat*, *Swibert* of *Virden*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and specially *Boniface* the Archbishop of *Mentz*, being most gloriously fortunate in that sacred service. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and others farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the faith, they began to suck in the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; discerned and opposed by *John Husse*, and *Hierom* of *Prague*, *Bohemian Divines*: who by reason of the marriage of King *Richard* the second of *England* with the daughter of *Wenceslaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the preachings of *Wiclef*; the points of whose Doctrine they approved and propagated. But these two being burnt at *Constance*, by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not so give over; but after many sufferings and much bloodshed, obtained at last a toleration of the Emperour *Sigismund* their King: more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had been to save the two *Martyrs* from the fire at *Constance*; to whom he had granted his safe conduct, for their coming and going. In this condition they remained, under the name of those of the *Sub utraque*, or *Calistini*, because of their administring the Sacraments in *both kinds*, till the rising of *Luther*: who justly offended at the impious and unwarrantable assertions of Frier *Tekel*, and others of the Popes *Pardon-mungers*; first opposed their doings, and after questioned that authority by which they acted: falling from one point to another, till he had shaken the foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the successe of his undertaking we shall speak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to say, that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally imbraced in the great Kingdomes of *Denmark* & *Swethland*, with the Provinces and Islands appertaining to them, in great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*, as far almost as to the banks of the *Euxine* Sea; but for the progresse of it here, (which we are more especially at this time to inquire into) it was so well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunswick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*; the Marquesse of *Brandenbourg*, the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, and most of the *Free* and *Imperial Cities* did adhere unto it, who from their *Protestation* made at *Spires* (the *Imperial Chamber*) to that effect, *Anno* 1529. had the name of *Protestants*. The next year following they delivered in the *Confession* of their faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confessio Augustana*; authorized, or tolerated at least, after a long war, with variable successe on both sides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the *Pacification* made at *Passaw*, *Anno* 1552. and afterwards more fully at *Ausbourg*. (where their Confession had first been tendred) *Anno* 1555.

But not to pass over this great matter in these Generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530. the Protestant Princes having tendred their Confession at *Ausburg* (as before is said) and find-

finding it not ſo well received as they did expect, entred into a Confederation at the Town of *Smallard* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxonie*) for defence thereof, and for the defence of one another in purſuance of it. Into this confederacy firſt entred *John-Frederick* the Duke of *Saxonie*, and his ſon; *Erneſt*, and *Francis*, Dukes of *Lunebourg*; *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, *George* Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, the Cities of *Strasbourg*, *Nurenberg*, *Heilbrune*, *Ruteling*, *Ulmes*, *Lindaw*, *Conſtance*, *Mening*, and *Campedune*. Afterwards, Anno 1535. there entred into it *Barnimus*, and *Philip*, Princes of *Pomeren*; *Ulrick* Duke of *Wertenberg*, *Robert* Duke of *Zweibracken*, (or *Biponts*, as ſome writers call him) *William* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *George*, and *Joachim*, Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Franckford*, *Hamborough*, *Auſpurg*, *Hannolder*; and not long after the *Palſgrave*, and King of *Denmark*. But this confederacy was like to have daſhed the buſineſs. For *Charles* the Fift looking upon it as a matter of dangerous conſequence to the power and ſafety of the Empire, and withall inſtigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whoſe intereſs was no leſſe concerned in it; conſidering that he could not otherwiſe untie this *Gordian* knot, reſolved to cut it with the ſword. At firſt the war ſucceeded luckily with the Proteſtant Princes, who armed themſelves upon the noiſe of his preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John-Frederick* and *Philip* the Lantgrave, the one ſometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the others Projects, the end proved not anſwerable. Beſides, the politick Emperour knowing full well that the forces of confederate States are oftner broken by delayes than Battel, avoided all occaſions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which without performing any notable exploit disbanded it ſelf, every man haſting home to defend his own. But none had more reaſon ſo to doe, than the Duke Elector. For in his abſence, his couſin *Maurice* forgetting the education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and eſtated him in thoſe parts of *Miſnia* (maugre all oppoſition of the Popiſh party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle; combined himſelf with the Emperor, and invaded the Electors Country: who notwithſtanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part alſo of thoſe lands and territories in which he had before Eſtated his ungratefull Kinſman. But while he was in this career, the Emperor ſuddenly fals upon him not far from *Mulberg*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the ſuddenneſs of his coming routeth his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himſelf with ſome few reſolute Gentlemen making head againſt him, till the moſt of them were ſlain, and the Duke taken Priſoner. The next morning he was condemned to loſe his head, but pardoned at the laſt upon ſome conditions: amongſt which it was none of the leaſt, that he ſhould ſurrender his Eſtates, and reſign the Electoral dignity to be diſpoſed of by the Victor. As alſo that he ſhould without ranſome releaſe Marqueſſe *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, (a buſie and unquiet man) who was then his Priſoner. This done, the Emperour fraudulently intrappeth the *Lantgrave*, as we ſhall ſhew more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the war from one Free City to another, compelled them to receive the Maſs, and to ſubmit to ſuch compoſition as he pleaſed to grant them; inſomuch as it was thought that the Emperour gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But theſe ſucceſſes were too great, and too unjuſtly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice* the new Duke Elector, who had married the Lantgraves daughter, and engaged himſelf unto his Children both by word and Bond (and that too at the Emperours inſtance) for his ſafe returning, conceived himſelf unworthily dealt with ſo to be made the inſtrument of his Fathers thraldom; and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untried, which might gain his libertie. And withall, finding cauſe to fear, that the courſe of the Emperours great ſucceſſes might end at laſt in the ſubverſion of the Common liberty, he ſecretly by an under-hand practice, called in the *French*; and raiſing forces under colour of the Emperours ſervice, gained Marqueſs *Albert* before-mentioned (who had then a running Army in the field) to aſſociate with him, and fell ſo ſuddenly on the Emperour lying then at *Inſpruch*, that he compelled him to run away in poſt-haſte by torch-light, and the Prelates to break off the Council of *Trent*, where at that time they were aſſembled. Upon which turning of the ballance a Peace ſoon enſued, which brought forth the Edicts of *Paſſaw*, and *Ausbourg*, ſpoken off before, the beſt and ſureſt Pledges of the Peace of *Germanie*.

In the mean time, while the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there ſtarted up another party, began at firſt by *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, of whoſe both Doctrine and ſucceſſe we have ſpoken there. Theſe not communicating Councels went two ſeveral wayes, eſpecially in the points of *Conſubſtantiation* and the *Real preſence*; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongſt their followers. For *Calvin*, riſing into the eſteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added ſome *Tenets* of his own to the former doctrines, touching *Predeſtination*, *Free-will*, *Univerſal Grace*, *Final perſeverance* (points fitter for the *Schools* than a popular Auditory;) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the cauſe being followed on both ſides with great impatience, as if they did not ſtrive ſo much for *truth*, as *victory*. And of the two, thoſe of the *Lutheran* party ſeemed more violent (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuſe but ſtomach it, to ſee themſelves undermined and blown up by a new form of doctrine, not tolerated in the Empire, but under colour of conformity to the *Confeſſion* of *Ausbourg*. For *Zuinglianiſm* being entertained amongſt the *French*, a buſy and active people, ſpread it ſelf further in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers* (men of the ſame temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Inſomuch as it did not only prevail in *France*; but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and even in *Germanie* it ſelf: in which it got footing in all the territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in ſome of the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, in the Imperial City of *Strasbourg*, many of the *Hanſe-*

towns, and amongst other Princes and Free Cities of inferiour note. The rest of *Germanie*, containing the Patrimonial Estates of the house of *Austria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorrein*, the territories of the three *Spiritual Electors*, and of all the other Bishopricks in the hands of the Clergie, some of the Marquesses of *Baden*, part of the subjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperial Cities (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Gmund*, *Uberlinque*, and *Dinkell-Spuell* (unlesse some more be added by the late great successes of the house of *Austria*) remain in their obedience to the See of *Rome*: all which together, will hardly make up one fift part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the *Protestant* party; yet so, that there be many *Protestants* in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, and in other the Estates of the *Popish* Princes; as there be *Papists* in the *Free Cities* of *Frankford*, *Nurenberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40. years it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it; but had once also got some footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the Promoting of this work, by which it came to spread so far in so little time; and next upon the stops and hindrances which were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading further. 1. For the means used in the advancement of this work (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The translating of the Scripture into Vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministery, both in Towns and Villages, for the Expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the capacities of the meanest Auditors, which gained exceedingly, both on the judgement and affections of the Common People, the course of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the begging Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other duties, then to tell over their *Credoes*, and *Pater-nosters*, and to keep a just account of their *Ave Maries*, and that most commonly in a tongue which they understood not. 4. The education of youth, especially in Catechismes, containing the whole body of Christian Religion, which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up or removed thence by any contrary perswasions. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party, in a publique audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundnesse of the one side, as of the falshood, and weaknesse of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies, and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy, both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by those brave examples which therein were presented to them. One point of prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the composing of the differences which have grown between them: and this I look on as the first, and greatest stop to the *Reformation* from proceeding farther, many men (not improbably) thinking that there must be some want of truth in the *foundation* of that building, which had such wide and open breaches in the *Superstructures*. The *Tyranny* and terrour of the *Inquisition*, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italie* and all other parts of the Popes obedience; together with those other policies both to discountenance and suppress it (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then adde to these the care and diligence of the *Jesuites*, and *Seminary Preists*, in applying themselves to all their means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only countermining their indeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the self-same weapons: And last of all, the plots and practices of the *Papal Ministers*, in working on the humors of the opposite parties, thereby enraging them not only into tongue-combats, and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open war once I am sure, that by this means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation, but would faign give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendor which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of *Europe*. But of these and such self-Flatteries, I shall say with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applyed to my own Intention,

—— *Hæ manus* Trojam *erigent?*
Parvas habet spes Troja, *si tales habet.*
That is to say,
Shall these small jarres restore the ruin'd Pope?
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in obedience of the See of *Rome*, are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops; co-æval in all *Germanie* (as in most places else) with the faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglianist* now also passeth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for doctrine, discipline, and forms of worship, to *Calvins* Model; whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the *Episcopal* function from the *Revenues*: giving those last to some of their younger Princes, with the title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the function or jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers; which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberal maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as *order*, *habit*, and *title of dignity*, they differ not at all from the other *Ministers*:

And

And over them in the place of Archbishops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accomptable to the supreme *Ecclesiastical Consistory* (as formerly to the *Provincial* or *National Synod*) made up of Counsellors of State, and the heads of the *Clergy*: So that the form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be, a great part of the Alteration being in the names; and that no other in a manner, than by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopus*, into the new *Latine* word *Superintendens*: both signifying an *Overseer*, though in different languages. And so *ex Græcis bonis, Latinas fecere non bonas*; in the Poets words: which brings into my minde the story of a people of *Africk*, who having received much hurt by *Tigers*, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth should call them *Tigers*, but give them a more harmless, or less hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of government: so do they also come up to them in their forms of worship; retaining still a setled and prescribed *Liturgie* for all their Churches, most of the *holy dayes* observed in the former ages, the *Cross* in Baptism, *kneeling* at the Communion, and many other innocent and *significant* Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance as defective as the *Calvinists* are; few of their Ministers having *Tithes*, most of them *pensions* or stipends, and those small ones also; seldom exceeding two or 300 *Guldens*, besides wood for fewel, corn, and some other necessaries.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse-towns* and *Imperial Cities*, we are to understand that the Cities of this Countrey are of three sorts 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their patrimony and estates, as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munchen*, *Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self, which are called *Free Cities*, for their great *Prerogatives* of coyning money, and governing themselves by their *local* Ordinances; *Imperial* in regard they know no Lord or protector but the Emperour only, to whom they pay two third parts of such contributions, as are assessed in the Assemblies or general *Diets*, and 1500 *Florens* yearly for themselves and their territories. They are in number about 60. many of which are of a fair and large estate, such as are *Nurenberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolstade*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*. Those (saith he) are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate tribute the authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own laws, not seeking to amplifie their *territories*, but defend their *Liberties*. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse-towns*, or *Hansteden*, that is (say some) *An zee steden*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entred into this *confederacy*; but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great trading; joyned with them in a league for their common defence and preservation. A league made first against the *Danes*, and the Earls of *Holst*, by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them; that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hambourg*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, *Stralesund*, and *Luneburg*: but afterwards many other of the *Imperial Cities* and Towns of trade, associated with them in an *offensive* and *defensive* league against all enemies whatsoever. In number about 72. those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to sea 150 good sail of ships; such as lie more within the land, contributing in money or otherwise to the common charge. First hanselled by *Waldomar* the 3d. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquished in a Naval battel. After that growing into credit, and driving a great trade in most parts of *Christendom*, they enjoyed many large and ample privileges, wheresoever they came: called amongst us sometimes by the name of *Easterlings*, from their *Easterly* dwellings; & Merchants of the *Steel-yard*, from the place where they stowed their commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum* in regard of their nation, for the most part *Dutch*. But the *English* learning so much wit at the last, as to make use of their own shipping, they began here by little and little to decay; and are now almost worn out of memory with us, though still of good esteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof, are 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which rising out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwartzen Wald*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Don Eschingen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the shores of the *Rhene*; passeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensberg*, *Passaw*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda* and *Belgrade*. Beyond which it beginneth to be called *Ister*, by which name most generally known amongst the *Grecians*: and receiving into its chanel, from the long tracts of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian* and *Carpathian* mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, besides lesser Brooks, disgorgeth his full stomach by several mouths (the names whereof we shall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine sea*; the whole length of his course 1500 miles. Insomuch as we may say with a modern Poet,

Cedere Danubius se tibi Nile negat.

O seven-mouth'd *Nile*, I plainly see,
Danow will scarce give way to thee.

2 *Rhene*, (of whose original and course we have spoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a course of 800 miles, emptieth it self into the *German Ocean*. All which shall here be added, is, that it gives the title of the *Rhine-Grave* to some Princes, of as good bloud as the best in *Germany*, whose possessions and Estates bordered near unto it, and from thence so called; but of late times decayed (almost to nothing) in their Estates, and living for the most part on the enterainment of other Princes, whom they serve in their wars; the Palsgraves of the *Rhene*, and two at the least of the three Bishops Electors, raising themselves upon the ruine of this House. 3. *Elb*, (*Albis*) which springing out of the mountain of *Riseuberg* in the skirts of

Bohemia runneth a course of 400 miles, and passeth by the Cities of *Dresden*, *Misen*, *Torgan*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lauenbourg*, Cities of the Electoral and Antient *Saxony*, and so betwixt the Dukedom of *Holstein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the rest of *Germany*. 4. *Odera*, which hath its fountain in the hithermost parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its course through *Brandenburg*, and *Pomerania*, of some 300 miles in length, falleth at last into the *Baltick* sea. 5. *Visurgis* or the *Weser*, which issuing out of the hils of *Turingia*, runneth through *Hassia* and *Westphalen*, to the City of *Breme*; not far from which it falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Vistula*, or the *Wixel*, which rising out of the *Carpathian* mountains, betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, first passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*; then betwixt *Pomeren* and *Prussia*, and so into the *Baltick* sea, the antient boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, and the *Europæa Moselle*, which rising out of the mountain *Vauge*, in the confines of *Lorrein*, and the County of *Burgundy*, passeth directly thorow *Lorrein*, and the District of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toule*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it self, beyond which last it falleth into the *Rhene* at the Town called *Confluentz*. 8. *Sala*, or *Salta*, which rising in the mountains of *Fitchelberg*, in the borders of the upper Palatinate, and passing by the skirts of *Misnia* and *Saxonie*, specially so called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having first watered the Cities of *Naumberg*, *Mersbourg* and *Jene*, very observable for being the most Eastern bounds of the *Saxon* Conquests, by this River parted from the *Sclaves*. 8. *Manus*, or the *Maine*, which had its spring in the mountains of *Bohemia*, and passing by the Cities of *Bambergh*, and *Weirtzberg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Francford*. 9. *Amisus*, or the *Ems*, which hath its fountain near *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*; and passing between the two *Frislands*, falleth into the *German* Ocean, not far from *Emden*.

Chief mountains of this mighty Country, besides the *Alps* spoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartze wald*, (the present name both of this Mountain and the Forrest of *Martiana*, which doth overshadow it) out of which rise the Springs of *Danow*, and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. the *Sudeta*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the woods called antiently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds of *Passaw* and *Behaimer* from the places adjoyning. 3. *Cetius* in *Austria*, now called *Culemberg*, the antient bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogesus*, commonly called *Vauge*; and by some *French* writers *Le Mont de Faucities*, which encircling *Lorrein*, divideth it on the East and South from *Elsats*, and the County of *Burgundie*. As for the *Forrests* of this Country, besides those spoken of already, that of most note was the Forrest of *Hercinia* (of which all the rest were but limbs or branches. The beginning whereof was about the borders of *Switzerland* and *Alsatia*, from thence running Eastward along the course of the *Danow* unto *Transilvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vast Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moscovites* and *Russes*, in which last there are still many vast deserts of it; the greatest part thereof in *Germanie* being long since consumed; in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields, and well-built Cities. A wood so formidable to the *Romans* that they durst never venture to search the end of it; the length thereof after the end of 60 days journey being undiscoverable, and the further search into it quite laid aside.

These *Boundaries* and *Landmarks* being thus described, we shall the better follow the *Chorography* of this great continent, according to the several *Principalities* and Estates therein: having first taken a survey of the antient condition of it, with so much of the story as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into so many hands. The Country first planted by the posterity of *Gomer*, who descending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their first seat, in memory thereof first called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by which name known to *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and others of the antient writers: removed into the more fruitfull plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris* which *Pliny* speaks of. But that small Province proving of too narrow a compasse to contain his Off-spring, and the adjoyning Countries being taken up in the former *Plantations*; they removed unto the Northwest of the *Euxine sea*; where we find a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; and the adjoyning streight or *Fretum*, called by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. Driven from these dwellings by the more powerfull *Scythians*, they spread themselves into the West, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under those of the *Ambrones*, and *Teutones*, several branches of them, intended an invasion and conquest both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *nisi isti seculo Marius contigisset*, had not *Marius* happed to have lived in that Age; by whom discomfited and destroyed. That these *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the first Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the learned; divided into several nations, and those also subdivided into lesser tribes, and more obscure families: amongst which those of *Teutones*, or *Tuiscones*, from which the *Dutch* doe so affect to derive themselves; might be some of the principal. There setled, and not pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt nearest to the *Rhene* passed over that River; and beating the *Gauls* further up into the Country, possessed themselves of their dwellings: enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Cæsar*) without any Rivall. But *Cæsar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Ariovistus* a King of the *Germans* (for by that name for the Reasons aforesaid, the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so afraid of this dreadfull Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principiis scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their *testaments* at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Cæsar*, and *Ariovistus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans* by command of their General, made a bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*: more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus*, the adopted son of *Augustus Cæsar*, from thence called *Germanicus*; by whom not only the *Rhæti* and *Norici* then lying out of the bounds of

Ger-

Germany (now included in it) were ſubdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces, but the whole Country, in a manner to the very Ocean, was forced to yeeld obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for ſo ſhort a time, that it was both won and loſt during the reign and government of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. So that the whole eſtabliſhed Conqueſts of the *Romans* upon this Country, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica prima*, with part of *Germania ſecunda*, belonging unto the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*; the greateſt part of the two *Rhætia's* being under the *Dioceſſe* of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum*, and *Ripenſe*, with ſome parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*. But none of theſe (as lying on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever paſſe in the accompt of the antient *Germanie*, the *Germans* not enduring the yoke ſo long, as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the luſt and inſolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who ſucceeded *Druſus* in that charge, they ſet upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongſt them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions. After which defeat *Auguſtus* laid aſide the affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Druſus* had extended to the banks of the *Ocean*. *Hac clade factum, ut imperium quod in littore* Oceani *non ſteterat in Ripa* Rheni *fluminis ſtaret*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this loſſe, by making a new war upon them; but ſeemed more carefull to defend themſelves againſt their invaſions, than to incurre the hazard of a new defeat: quartering eight *Legions* with their ſeveral wings and Aides, on the ſhores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep theſe people from incroaching on the *Romans* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on apace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through thoſe Guards, diſpoſſeſſe the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhætia*, and *Noricum*, which they ſhare amongſt them: till in the end, the *French* prevailing over the reſt, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles* the *Great*, created *Emperour* of the Weſt by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4th. on *Chriſtmaſs-day*, *Anno* 801. So that now the old Prophecie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the Weſt, came to be accompliſhed; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle prediction. For when *Civilis* raiſed a Rebellion amongſt the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoyning) againſt *Veſpaſian* then newly made Emperour: *poſſeſſionem rerum humanarum*, Tranſalpinis *gentibus portendi*, Druidæ *canebant*; the *Druides* prophecied of the tranſlation of the Empire to the *Tranſalpine* nations, Accompliſhed, as before is ſaid, in the perſon of *Charles* the *Great*, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom divided, (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *Weſt-France*, or *Weſt-reicks*, in the barbarous *Latine* of thoſe times called *Weſtraſia*; containing the modern *France*, and ſo much of the *Netherlands* as lyeth on the *French* ſide of the River *Maes*; and *Oſten-rich* (*i. e.* the Eaſtern Kingdom) in the *Latine* of thoſe times *Auſtraſia*, containing ſo much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia*, as was poſſeſſed by the *French*, with the reſt of the *Netherlands*. This afterwards ſubdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorrein* and *Germany*; whereof the firſt contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before deſcribed, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the reſt. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the ſon of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrein* and *Germany*; diſtributed amongſt his ſons and nephews, with the title of Kings: By means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorrein*, united in the the perſon of *Lewis* the *Antient*, in little time were alien'd from the houſe of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*; poſſeſſed by the great Princes of *Lorrein*, *Saxonie*, *Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by whom diſmembred into many principalities and inferiour ſtates, all paſſing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

The KINGS and EMPEROURS of *GERMANIE*.

Anno Chr.

801 1 *Charles* the *Great* Emperour, K. of *France* and *Germanie*.

815 2 *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germany*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.

841 3 *Lewis*, ſurnamed the *Antient*, ſecond ſon of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which, *Anno* 876. he united that of *Lorrein* alſo.

4 *Charles* the *Groſſe*, ſon of *Lewis* the *Antient*, reigned at firſt joyntly with *Caroloman*, and *Lewis* his elder Brethren; after their deaths ſole King of *Germany*, *Anno* 880. he ſucceeded *Ludovicus Balbus* in the title of Emperour, continued unto his Succeſſors; and during the minoritie of *Charls* the *Simple*, by a faction of the *French* Nobility, was choſen King of *France*: the whole eſtate of *Charles* the *Great*, becomming once again united in the perſon of one Soveraign Prince.

891 5 *Arnulph*, the natural ſon of *Caroloman*, the brother of *Charls*, King of *Germany* and Emp.

903 6 *Lewis*, or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the brother of *Charls* and *Caroloman* being reckoned for one) King of *Germany* and Emperour, the lawfully begotten ſon of *Arnulph*.

913 7 *Conrade*, the ſon of *Conrade*, the brother of *Lewis* the 4th. the laſt Prince of the maſculine iſſue of *Charles* the *Great*. After whoſe death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, ſeeing *Charles* the *Simple*, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the houſe of *Anjou*, took that advantage to transferre the Empire to themſelves; and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperour. A worthy Prince, by whom ſome Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorrein* were ſubdued, or added to the Empire.

929 8 *Henricus*, ſurnamed *Auceps*, or the *Fowler*, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but diſreigned by *Conrade*, as being eldeſt ſon of *Otho* Duke of *Saxonie* by *Luitgardis*, Daughter to the Emperour *Arnulph*, and conſequently a branch of the *Caroline* ſtock.

938 9 *Otho*, ſurnamed the *Great*, the ſon of *Henry*, Emperour, and King of *Italy* 36.

974 10 *Otho* II. ſon of *Otho the* 1. Duke of *Saxony*, and the laſt of that houſe which had the title of Emperour, and King of *Italy*. After whoſe death, all right of ſucceſſion being diſclaimed, the Emperours became *Elective*; but for the moſt part wholly ingroſſed or Monopolized (ſince the Failer of the houſe of *Saxonie*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*, notwithſtanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The buſineſſe firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours leſſe powerfull, and diſtract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into ſides and factions: confirmed by a decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.

984 11 *Otho* III. ſon of *Otho the* 2. Duke of *Saxony*, and the laſt of that houſe which had the title of Emperour, and King of *Italy*. After whoſe death, all right of ſucceſſion being diſclaimed, the Emperours became *Elective*; but for the moſt part wholly ingroſſed or Monopolized (ſince the Failer of the houſe of *Saxonie*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*, notwithſtanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The buſineſſe firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours leſſe powerfull, and diſtract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into ſides and factions: confirmed by a decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.

1002 12 *Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Saint*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the firſt Emperour elected according to the conſtitution of *Gregory* the fift, but ſo elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of blood, as being the grand-child of *Henry* ſurnamed *Rixoſus* (the firſt Duke of *Bavaria*, of the *Saxon* race) the ſecond ſon of *Henry* the firſt, and conſequently the next heir male of that houſe after *Otho* the 3d. compelling ſome of the Electors who oppoſed his title by the force of Arms to yeeld unto it: So that the firſt Emperour who came in by a clear election; but not without pretenſion of a title alſo, was

1025 13 *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, ſurnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Lui gardis* one of the daughters of *Otho* the firſt, and conſquently not a ſtranger to the former *Family*.

1040 14 *Henry* III. ſurnamed *Niger*, the ſon of *Conrade*.

1056 15 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third, in whoſe days the Popes began to uſurp authority over the Emperours: inſomuch as *Leo* the ninth having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himſelf of it, put off his Papall veſtments, went to *Rome* as a private perſon, and was there new choſen by the Clergie. This done by the perſwaſion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7th. excommunicated this *Henry*, the firſt Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254. there were continual wars and thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours; ſome of them being *excommunicated*, ſome forced to put their necks under the Feet of the Pope; others to quit the care of the Commonwealth, and betake themſelves unto the wars of the *Holy-land*, leaving the Pope to do what he liſt in *Germany*.

1106 16 *Henry* 5. ſon of *Henry* the 4th. armed by the Pope againſt his father; whom he had no ſooner ſucceeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too ſtiff in the buſineſſe of *inveſtitures*, and raiſed up the *Saxons* againſt him, by whom vanquiſhed, and otherwiſe afflicted by the Popes practiſes, he was forced to ſubmit unto his commands, and was the laſt Emperour of the houſe of *Franconia*.

1125 17 *Lotharius*, Duke of *Bavaria*, ſeiſed on the Empire without any *election*, reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of S. *Bernard*. He ſetled the affairs of *Italy* in two journies thither. 13.

1139 18 *Conrade* III. ſon of *Frederick*, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Sueve*, or *Schwaben*, and ſiſters ſon unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquiſhed *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*; and going to the *holy-wars* with *Lewis* King of *France*, diſcomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.

1153 16 *Frederick*, ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4th. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. to whom he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf, the Pope inſolently treading on his neck. He went after to the *Holy-Land* (where he dyed) having diſcomfited the *Turks* in three great battels. 39.

1190 20 *Henry* VI. ſon of *Frederick* King of *Sicil*, in right of *Conſtance* his wife, crowned by Pope *Celeſtine*, who imployed him in the wars of the *Holy-Land*; in his journey towards which he died at *Meſſina*. 8.

1198 21 *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, brother of *Henry* the 6th. excommunicated by the Pope (who loved not this Family) by whoſe means *Otho*, the ſon of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxonie*, was ſet up againſt him. The occaſion of great wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by marriage of *Otho* with a daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207 22 *Otho* IV. ſon of *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3d. by whom not long after excommunicated, for taking into his hands ſome Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquiſhed in *Brabant* by the faction raiſed up againſt him, he relinquiſhed the Empire to his Competitor.

1212 23 *Frederick* II. King of *Sicil* and *Naples*, ſon of *Henry* the 6th. having ſetled *Germanie*, diſpoſed himſelf for the wars of the *Holy-Land*, where he recovered the poſſeſſion of the Realm of *Jeruſalem*; excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*; not long after poiſoned.

1250 24 *Conrade* IV. ſon of *Frederick*, the laſt Emperour of the houſe *Schwaben*. After whoſe death, the Empire being diſtracted by the Popes Practiſes into many factions, each faction choſe an Emperor or King of the *Romans*: ſo that at one time there were elected, *Henry*

Earl

Earl of *Turingia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile*, the renowned author of the *Alfonſive* Tables, and

1254 25 *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, brother of *Henry* the 3d. of *Englend*, the beſt-monyed man of all his time, ſuppoſed therewith to buy the ſuffrages of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*, and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *An.* 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whoſe death, or an *Inter-regnum* of 12 years from his *Exit* rather, the Title was at laſt accepted by

1273 26 *Rodolph* Earl of *Hapsburg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Eſtates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raiſer of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family.

1292 27 *Adolph* Earl of *Naſſaw*, who ſerved in perſon under King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, againſt the *French*; for which diſrelliſhed by the *Germans*, he was encountred and ſlain near the City of *Spires*.

1298 28 *Albert*, Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8th gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip the Fair*. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it.

1308 29 *Henry*, Earl of *Luxembourg*, made a journey into *Italy* to recover the rights of the Empire, (where an Emperour had not been ſeen in 60 years) ſuppoſed to be poiſoned in the *Chalice*, by a Friar at *Benevent*, a town of the Popes. 6.

1314 30 *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; oppoſed by *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, choſe by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a town of the Archbiſhop of *Coleno*; but being defeated, *Lewis* remained ſole Emperour, excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.

1346 31 *Charls* IV. ſon of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and grandſon of *Henry* the 7th, crowned with the iron Crown at *Millain*, 1354. the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.

1378 32 *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, deformed and vicious; depoſed by the *German* Princes. 22.

1400 33 *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, paſſed into *Italie* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, ſold by *Wenceſlaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzes*, and ſo returned. 10.

1410 34 *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marqueſs of *Moravia*, uncle to *Wenceſlaus*.

1411 35 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, crowned at *Rome* on Whitſunday, 1432. travelled exceedingly for eſtabliſhing the peace of Chriſtendom, diſtracted at that time with three Popes at once; a great promoter of the Council of *Conſtance*.

1439 36 *Albert* II. Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon-in-law of *Sigiſmund*, whom he ſucceeded in all his eſtates and titles excepting *Luxembourg*, 1.

1440 37 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Auſtria*, the ſon of *Erneſt* of *Auſtria*, and next heir of *Albert* the 2d, procured the calling of the Council of *Baſil* for the peace of *Chriſtendom*; travelling for that cauſe to *Rome*, where declared Emperour, *Anno* 1442. 54.

1494 38 *Maximilian*, ſon of *Frederick*, Duke of *Auſtria*, who firſt united the Eſtates of *Burgundy* to the houſe of *Auſtria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thorow with none. 25

1519 39 *Charls* V. King of *Spain*, ſon of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puiſſant Prince, who had priſoners at the ſame time, the *French* King, and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the *Proteſtants* at *Smalcade*, took priſoners the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, drave the great Turk from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*; and in the end reſigned all his Eſtates, and dyed in a Monaſtery. 39.

1558 40 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, the brother of *Charls*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charls*, *Anno* 1531. Upon whoſe reſignation he was choſen Emperour, *Anno* 1558. 7.

1565 41 *Maximilian*, the ſon of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *Anno* 1562. ſucceeding in the Empire after his deceaſe.

1577 42 *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Maximilian*, had great wars againſt the *Turk*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a peace; but being undermined by his brother *Matthias*, was forced to ſurrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, and to content himſelf with *Auſtria* and the Empire only. Theſe eight laſt Emperours were all of the order of the Garter.

1612 43 *Matthias* brother of *Rodolphus* K. of *Hungarie*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; in whoſe time were ſown the ſeeds of that terrible war, which had almoſt deſtroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, to be declared Succeſſor into his Eſtates. 36.

1619 44 *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Charles* of *Gratz*, the younger ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt, ſucceeded *Matthias* in all his Eſtates and titles. A Prince more zealouſly affected to the See of *Rome*, than any of his Predeceſſors; and a great enemy of the Proteſtant Religion; occaſioning thereby that long and bloudy war in the Empire of *Germanie*, not yet fully ended.

1637 45 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2d. broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (called in for the ſupport of the *German* liberty, and againſt the violent reſolutions of his Father) at the

battel

battel of *Norlingen*; the 12th Emperour of the house of *Hapsburg*, and the 9th of the house of *Austria* without intermission. The cause of which is to be attributed to *Charls* the fift, who procured in his life time, that his brother might be chosen *Rex Romanorum*, as his successour in the Empire: A policy which hath been ever since continued by his successors; and the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, because the *Austrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Countrey, but better able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majesty, than any of the rest of that Nation are.

And to say truth, it is but need that some great Prince or other be *elected* to it, who by the power and reputation of his own estate, may preserve the honour of the *Empire*: confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there so weakned by the alienating of whole Countries from it (some titulary acknowledgement excepted only;) that it is nothing in effect, but *magni nominis umbra*, the shadow of a mighty body, a meer empty title. For if we look upon the present state and condition of it, we shall find it otherwise too weak, to support the great and swelling title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it self, it hath some Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no subjection; as *Belgium*, *Switzerland*, and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the *Imperial Diets*, as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorrein*, and some of the *Italian* Potentates. Finally, some both confess the Emperour to be their Soveraign, and that they owe service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but those so priviledged, so exempted from his commands, so absolute and incontrollable in their own estates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his person; of which we shall speak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occasions the Empire became so infeebled; it may be said, that the reasons and occasions of it have been very many. As first, the weakness and improvidence of the *Caroline* race, dismembring from it many powerfull and wealthy Provinces; reserving only a bare *Homage*, and some slight acknowledgement. 2ly, The cunning of the *Popes*, who from the time of *Henry* the 4th, to *Rodolph* of *Hapsburgh*, had by their *Excommunications* and other practises, so exercised the Emperors with intestine troubles, that they forced them in a manner, to abandon *Italy*: insomuch that the said *Rodolph*, finding the inconvenience of it, sold most of his Estates there to the fairest Chapmen. 3ly, This done, and the *Popes* knowing well enough that they could not wax strong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperours estate in *Germany*, first wrested out of their hands the *Investiture* of the *Bishops*, *Abbots*, and other *Ecclesiastical preferments*: who being now made their own creatures, were so increased both in revenue and power by little and little, and fortified with so many immunities, that some of them grew in time to be *Free Estates*, all of them *Princes* of the *Empire*. 4ly, But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they baited them with continual factions and perpetual broyls: which put them to a necessity of making what friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and taking up what moneys they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in *exemptions* and Royal privileges, when they could not otherwise cancel or discharge the debt. 5ly, And unto this, the making the Empire *Elective* gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire, but as *Tenants* for *term of life*; and therefore were more likely to discharge such debts by impairing the Publike *Patrimony*, which they had no hold in, than to diminish any thing of their own estates. 5ly, But being the title of Emperor was the greatest honor, which any of that Nation could be capable of, and such as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their posterity, (as we see what good uses have been made of it by the *Austrian* family, ever since the time of *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*:) who would not part with some of the *Imperial* rights, to advance his own house to an equal greatness? And herein many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who to get the Empire to themselves, or leave it after them unto their posterity, dismembred from the same many Towns and fair possessions, given by them to the *Electors* for their Votes and Suffrages. 7ly, A thing which the *Electors* understood sufficiently, and therefore were resolved to make the best of the market, knowing that the commodity could be bought of none but themselves: as in the *Election* of *Wenceslaus* son of *Charles* the 4th, of whom it was but *ask and have*, what they had a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time so strong, that there were few of them who durst not undertake a war against their Emperours. And this appeareth by the story of *Charls* the fifth, who though the most puissant Emperour which had reigned in *Germany* since *Charls* the Great, yet found himself so over-matched by these ruffling Princes, that he was willing to resign the Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed. By these and every of these means, the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Estates, and those Estates to be made absolute and *independent*, as before is said. The principal whereof, which being described will make up the *Chorographie* of this great Continent, are those of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. the Estates of the three spiritual Electors, 3. the Palatinate of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alsatia*, 5. *Lorrein*, 6. *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Austria*, and its *appendixes*, 9. The confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wittenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the Palatinate of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia*, and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenberg*, 17. the Marquisate of *Brandenberg*, 18. *Saxonie* and the Members of it, 19. the Dukedoms of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the Lantgravedom of *Hassia*, 21. *Westphalen*, 22. *Eastfriseland*. Such lesser States as being absolute and free, are of lesser moment, shall be reduced (together with the *Imperial* Cities) to those several Provinces, in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holstein* or *Holsatia*, though it be *Imperial*, in which respect by some accounted as a Province of *Germany*: yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom; I shall there speak of it. Some of these are thus censured by *Aubanus* a late

late writer. They of *Suevia*, (saith he) are Whores; they of *Franconia*, Ravishers and Buggers; they of *Bohemia*, Heretiques; those of *Bavaria*, Thieves; they of *Saxony*, Drunkards; they of *Friseland*, and *Westphalia*, Swearers; and they of the *Palatinate*, Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than so. I know there is another division of this Country, made by the Emperor *Maximilian* at the Diet of *Colen*, *Anno* 1522. who for the better raising both of men and money for all Publick services, caused it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1. *Lower Saxony*, 2. *Upper Saxony*, 3. *Westphalia*, 4. of the *Rhene*, 5. of the *four Electors* of that part, 6. *Franconia*, 7. *Suevia*, 8. *Bavaria*, 9. *Austria*, and 10. *Burgundie*. But that before proposed being the more particular, I shall follow that, according to the order before laid down: beginning first with those, which together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, contained antiently the Provinces of *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, and some part of *Germania secunda*; and made up the Kingdom of *Austrasia* strictly and specially so called. Cleveland

CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Estates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before dismembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom, on the death of the last Duke hereof, *Anno* 1609. conteined the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though these two last lye on the other side of the *Rhene*, and so not properly within the old precincts of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named: yet being they belonged all to the same Prince, not parted by the interposition of other Countries, they shall be handled here together as the same Estate.

1. The Dukedom of *CLEVE*, properly and distinctly so called, hath on the East, the Countries of *Mark* and *Berg*, with some part of *Westphalen*; on the West, *Guelderland*, and some part of *Limbourg*; on the North, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the land of *Over-Yssell*; and on the South, *Gulick* and the land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief town of it.

The Countrey very fruitful both for Corn and pasturage, well stocked with cattel of all sorts, for necessary use and pleasure; good store of *Fowl*, both tame and wild: blessed also with an healthy air, and in a word, with all things needfull for the life of man; well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Roer*, the *Dussell*, the *Ezfat*, and the *Nirst*, common to this and the rest of the incorporate Provinces.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. *Cleve*, (in *Latine Clivia*) so called, because built on the sides of three little hills (which the *Latines* call *Clivi*,) gently descending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it self into several chanels. An antient town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old foundations, and other monuments of Antiquity, continually digged up in the fields adjoyning; but chiefly by an old fore-square Tower, built on the highest of the three hills, of great height and state; founded by *Julius Cæsar* as a bulwark against the *Germans*, inhabiting the further side of the River. For proof of which, besides the old tradition constantly maintained, there is an *Inscription* on the Gates of the Dukes Palace, neer adjoyning to it, which saith, *Anno ab Urbe* DCXCIIX. C. Julius Dictator, *his partibus Jubactis, hanc Arcem fundavit*, *i.e.* that in the year 698 from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Cæsar* the *Dictator*, having subdued those parts of the Countrey, caused this *Tower* to be built. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a town of great antiquity, as the ruines of it doe declare; supposed by *Pighius* to be the *Trajana Colonia*, of the Antients. 3. *Wesel*, (in *Latine Vesalia*) a fair & rich town, seated on the confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Lippe*; which rising in *Westphalia*, doth here lose it self: of great note for a College of secular Canons, built here by *Eberard* the ninth Earl, *Anno* 840. or thereabouts; and an Hospital liberally endowed for old impotent persons, founded by *Henry de Baers*, the Dukes *Chancellour*. A town not subject to these Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an *Imperial City*, and one of the *Hanse-towns*; now neither so *Imperial* nor so *Free*, as formerly: possessed first for the *Spaniard* with a Garrison of 3000 men, (at the beginning of the war of *Cleve*) by D. *Lewis Velasco*; and from them taken by the *States* of the *United Provinces*, *Anno* 1628. 4. *Burich*, on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, over against *Wesel*, amongst goodly corn-fields, and pleasant pastures. 5. *Duisberg*, or *Tuitchberg*, in *Latine* called *Teuto-burgum*, a town of the antient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) situate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Ruer*, two noted Rivers. A town formerly of great trading, and notably well built: *Imperial*, and one of the *Hanse*, but ceased to be *Imperial* when sold by *Rodolph* of *Habspurg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*; together with 6 *Cravenburg*, another town of this Dukedom, but of lesser note. 7 *Emmerick* on the *Rhene*, a well-frequented town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8 *Rees*, 9 *Griet*, and 10 *Griethusen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11. *Calcar*, a town more within the land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of clothing and the best *beer* or *ale* in all these parts, sold thence abundantly into the Countrey round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auf de Baern*, it is supposed that *Cæsar Germanicus* built his bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetera Castra* against the *Marsi*, a Nation of *Germany*. 12 *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* or *Nirst*, not far from its influx into the *Maes*: which together with *Duiffele* and *Riexwald* were bought of *Sigismund* the Emperour by *Adolph* the first Duke of *Cleve*, for a great sum of money.

South of the land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lyeth the County of *MUERS*, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a distinct State, the Earl of which is subject to no other Prince, but the Emperour only: so called from *Muers*, the chief town of it, situate on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, over against *Duysburgh*. Next towns to which are, 2. *Orsey*, 3. *Augur*; of which little memorable. A small territory, but in a very fruitfull soil. The neighbourhood whereof to the land of *Colen* (to which

Gulick-land which it ſerveth as an Outwork upon that ſide) preſerving it in former times from the Dukes of *Cleve*; who otherwiſe, no doubt, either by Arms or marriage had been maſters of it; as they were of the adjoyning Provinces, on both ſides of the River.

2. *GULICK-LAND*, or the Dukedome of *Gulick*, hath on the Eaſt, the County of *Muers*, and the land of *Colen*; on the Weſt, *Guelder Land* and *Limbourg*; on the North, *Cleve*; and on the South, the reſt of the land of *Colen*. The Air and Soil much of the ſame nature as in *Cleve*; ſave that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of horſes than in the other. The Seat of the *Menapii* in the times of old.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Gulick*, in *Latine Juliacum*, (whence the *French* call it *Juliers*) known by that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, ſufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof; but not otherwiſe famous. Seated upon the River *Roer*; the chief ſeat heretofore of the Dukes of *Gulick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*: and ſince the diſſolution of that Eſtate poſſeſſed ſometimes by the States of the *United Provinces*, and ſometimes by the *Spaniards*; called in by the Competitors to aſſert their Titles. 2. *Dueren*, on the ſame River, the *Marcodurum* of the old writers; and of late memorable for the long ſiege which it held againſt *Charles* the fifth, in his wars againſt *William*, Duke of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, for the Dukedom of *Gueldres*. 3. *Munſter Eyphelt* (in *Latine*, *Monaſterium Eyphaliæ*) ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from *Munſter* of *Weſtphalen*; pleaſantly ſeated in a valley begirt with Mountains, not far from the ſpring or fountain of the River *Erfae*. 4. *Caſter*, ſo called of a ſtately and magnificent *Caſtle*, built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. *Berken*, on the River *Erp*. 6. *Meroden* beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which gives name to an honourable and antient family. 7. *Euskerch*. 8. *Berklen*, &c.

There is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom, the famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it: famous of old times for the *hot Baths* both within and without the Town; whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquen*, (in *Latine*, *Aquiſgranum*) ſituate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitfull ſoil; but the buildings nothing anſwerable to the fame of the place. Inhabited for the moſt part by *Smiths* and *Braſiers*, who drive the greateſt trade herein; working continually on Iron and other metals, with which they are ſupplyed abundantly out of *Leige*, and *Limbourg*. The Town *Imperial*; but under the protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which family, under colour of ſome quarrels about *Religion*, it was ſeiſed on; and garriſoned by Marquis *Spinola* for the King of *Spain*. Of great fame formerly for the death and ſepulture of *Charles* the *great*, by whom made one of the three Seats of the Weſtern Empire, and deſigned by him to be the place in which the *King* of the *Romans* ſhould receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany*, at the hands of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*. The Town ſuppoſed to be formerly the wintring Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis*, in the beginning of his rebellion againſt *Veſpaſian*; during which wars it is often mentioned by the writers of thoſe times. They were built and ſtrengthened by *Auguſtus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; *quippe illis hybernis obſideri premique* Germanias Auguſtus *crediderat*; as *Tacitus*. At this day this Town and *Triers* are reputed famous for holy reliques: here being ſaid to be amongſt others the *bearing cloth* wherewith our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his ſwadling clouts; which the Emperour ſolemnly worſhipreth at his *inauguration*. Concerning the ambition which the Papiſts have to be thought poſſeſſors of theſe *reliques*, ſee I beſeech you how pittifully they have mangled the head of S. *John Baptiſt*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his face, and ſo do they of S. *John D' Angelie*. The reſt of his head is at *Malta*, yet is the hinder part of his ſcull at *Namur*, and his brain at *Novum Roſtovienſe*. Another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*, his jaw at *Weſel*, his ear at S. *Flowres*, his fore-head and hair at S. *Salvadores* in *Venice*, another part of his head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*; yet is his whole head intire and unmaimed in S. *Sylveſters* Church at *Rome*: and ſo no doubt is this bearing-cloth at more places than one.

But to return again to *Gulick*, It was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Dukes of *Lorrein*, whether layed to it at the firſt erection of that Dukedom, as ſome writers ſay, or added to it by the Princes of the houſe of *Ardenne*, when they ſucceeded in the ſame, I dare not poſſibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the antient Verge or perambulation of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, makes the laſt in my opinion not to be improbable: Firſt made an *Earldom* of it ſelf in the perſon of *Euſtace*, brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, who ſeiſed upon it as his part of the Eſtate on the death of *Godfrey*; his elder brother *Baldwin* being abſent in the *Holy-Land*. In the perſon of *William* the 4th. of that name, it was made a Marquiſate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1329. created not long after Duke of *Gulick* by *Charles* the 4th. *Anno* 1355. His eſtate much augmented about that time, or but ſhortly after, by his marriage with *Mary*, Siſter and heir of *Rainold*, and *Edward* Dukes of *Gueldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two ſons *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes ſucceſſively, dying without iſſue; the Eſtate fell to *Adolphus*, Duke of *Berg*, or *Mont*, as the next heir male, *Anno* 1425. and finally, together with that of *Berg* was added to the Dukedome of *Cleve*, by the marriage of *Mary* heir hereof, with *John* the 3d. Duke of *Cleve*, with which conjoyned till the expiration of that noble family; whereof more anon.

As for the Eſtates of *Berg* and *March*, they had one original, begun by two brothers, the ſons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Teiſterbant*, of the houſe of *Cleve*; out of which houſe as they diſcended, ſo into that they finally were again reſolved, as their firſt materials. Of theſe two brothers, *Adolphus* being the Elder, was by the Emperour *Henry* ſurnamed the *Fowler*, made Earl of *Altena*, *Anno* 930. or thereabouts

abouts: and *Eberard* the younger, by the ſame Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard*, entering a Monaſtery of his own Foundation, left his Eſtate and Earldom of *Berg* to the Elder brother. United thus into one eſtate, they became again divided betwixt the ſons of *Adolph*, the 3d. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*: *Engelbert* the younger ſon enjoying the eſtate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder ſucceeding his father, in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the houſe of *Cleve*, we ſhall ſee hereafter; having firſt looked over the *Corographie* or *Deſcription* of them. *Gulick and Berg.*

3. The Dukedom of *BERG*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, and the Country of *March*; on the Weſt, with the *Rhene*, from *Weſel* up as high as *Colen*, by which parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*; on the North, with the River *Lippe*, which ſeparates it from the reſt of *Cleve*; and on the South, with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the hilline ſſe of the Country, *Berg* in *Dutch* ſignifying an hill, (as *Bourg* doth a Town or Burrough) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenſes* in *Latine*, and *Les Contes*, and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Country for the moſt part, in the Vales eſpecially, yeelds a great ſtore of the beſt wheat, and conſequently of the pureſt bread; and in the hill Countries rich mines of Coal, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1 *Duſſeldorp*, ſo called of the River *Duſſel*, upon which it is ſituate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*. 2. *Adenbourg* built by *Eberhard*, the firſt Earl of *Berg*, the ſeat of him and his Succeſſors, till removed to *Duſſeldorp*. 3. *Keiſerſwerd*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, belonging antiently to the Empire, but bought for a great ſum of mony of *Charles* the 4th. by *John*, Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* alſo, juſt againſt *Colen* on the other ſide of the water; fortified in the year 1614. and made the Receptacle of the Proteſtants of that Biſhoprick, prohibited the free exerciſe of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marquis *Spinola* on complaint made by thoſe of *Colen* to the Emperour *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, amongſt the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermond*, on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Eſſen*, or *Eſſendia*, on the borders of the Countie of *March*, once an *Imperial*, but under the protection of the Earls of *Berg*. Of moſt note for a Monaſtery here built by *Alfride* the 4th. Biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, for 52 Nuns and 20 Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the *Dorps* adjoyning.

How *Berg* at firſt was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoined again, hath been ſhewed before. No ſooner made a State diſtinct, but it was added to the patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the marriage of Earl *William* with the daughter and heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William*, and *Adolphus*, ſons of *Gerrard* the 2. *Anno* 1247. the firſt ſucceeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the laſt in *Berg*. During this partage, made a Dukedom in the perſon of *William* the firſt of that name, by *Wenceſlaus* the Emperour, *Anno* 1389. whoſe ſon *Adolphus*, as next heir, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, *Anno* 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve*, hath been ſaid already.

The DUKES and EARLS of

A. Ch.	*BERG.*	A. Ch.	*GULICK.*
	1 *Engelbert* the firſt Earl of *Berg*, diſtinct from *March*.	1129	1 *Euſtace* the firſt Earl of *Gulick* diſtinct from *Lorrein*.
	2 *Adolphus*, ſon of *Engelbert*.		2 ſon of *Euſtace*.
	3 *N.* the ſiſter of *Adolphus*.		3 *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
	4 *Gerrard*, Earl of *Gulick* and *Berg*.		
	5 *William* II. ſon of *Gerrard*.		
	6 *Gerrard* II. ſon of *William* the 2d.		
1247	7 *Adolphus* II. younger ſon of *Gerrard* the the 2d. took Priſoner by the Archbiſhop of *Colen*, (whom not long before he had held in cuſtody) ſhut up in an Iron veſſel daubed with honey, and moſt miſerably ſtung to death by Bees.	1247	7 *William* III, eldeſt ſon of *Gerrard* the 2d.
			8 *Gerrard* III. ſon of *William*.
			9 *Gerrard* IV. ſon of *Gerrard* the 2d.
1296	8 *William* III. ſon of *Adolphus*.	1325	10 *William* IV. created firſt Marqueſſe, after Duke of *Gulick*.
1337	9 *Gerrard* III. ſon of *William* the 3d.	1366	11 *William* V. Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*, this laſt accruing to him in the right of his Mother *Mary*, heir of that eſtate.
	10 *William* IV. created the firſt Duke of *Berg*, *Anno* 1389. outed of the greateſt part of his eſtate by his ſon *Adolphus*.	1404	12 *Rainold*, Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*, who died in the year 1423.
A. Ch.			
	11 *Adolphus* III. the ſon of *William* the firſt Duke of *Berg*, ſucceed alſo unto *Rainold* the laſt Duke of *Gulick*, dying without iſſue, as the next heir male, the Dukedom of *Guelderland* falling by the heirs general to the houſe of *Egmond*.		

1434 12 *Ger-*

Cleve and Mark

1434 12 *Gerrard* IV. of *Berg*, and V. of *Gulick*, ſon of *William*, and brother of *Adolphus*

1475 13 *William* V. of *Berg*, and VI. of *Gulick*, ſon of *Gerrard*.

1511 14 *Mary*, daughter and heir of *William*, Dutcheſſe of *Gulick*, and *Berg*, conveyed the whole eſtate in marriage to *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, continuing in that family till the expiration of it in the perſon of *John William*, the laſt Prince hereof, *Anno* 1610.

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the Eaſt, and North, *Weſtphalia*; on the Weſt, the Dukedom of *Cleve*; on the South, that of *Berg*, or *Mont*. So called as being ſeated in the *Marches* of *Weſtphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Countty for the moſt part like the reſt of *Weſtphalen*, more fit for paſturage than corn: woodie, and yeelding ſtore of *pawnage* to thoſe herds of Swine, with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Werden* upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Weſtphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattle. 2. *Soeſt* (in *Latine*, *Suſatum*, for wealth and greatneſſe not inferiour to any in *Weſtphalen*, (except *Munſter* only) conſiſting of ten pariſhes, and lording it over many rich and pleaſant Villages. Antiently it belonged to the Biſhops of *Colen*; but in the year 1444. did voluntarily yeeld it ſelf to the Duke of *Cleve*, (being then Earl of *March* alſo) and by Duke *John* the 4th. couragiouſly defended againſt thoſe Prelates. 3. *Arnsberg*, a fine and pleaſant ſite, uſed for a retiring place by the Electours of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4. *Dortmond*, (in *Latine*, *Tremonia*) a Countie antiently of it ſelf, and held immediatly of the Empire; poſſeſſed by the *Trotmanni*, a tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence firſt called *Trotmania*; and at laſt *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancoſtein*, built commodiouſly by *Adolphus* the fifth of that name, and firſt Earl of *March*; as was alſo 6. *Ham*, or *Hammone*. 7. *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the firſt title of the Earls of this houſe, before they aſſumed that of the Earls of *March*, aſſumed firſt by *Adolphus* the 4th, on the Conqueſt of ſome Lands in the *Marches* of *Weſtphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, & to which the reſt of thoſe eſtates did in time accrew; it was one of the moſt antient Eſtates or Principalities in theſe parts of the world; continuing in a direct line for the ſpace of 900 years: held by them of the Kings of *France*; and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorrein*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the *German* Empire. Begun firſt by *Elias Grallius*, companion to *Charls Martel*, in his wars againſt the *Friſons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*; whoſe ſon *Theodorick* added hereto by marriage the Countie of *Teiſterbant*, containing the Towns and *Signeuries* of *Altena*, in *Weſtphalen*; as alſo of *Bornel*, *Heuſden*, *Buren*, *Culemberg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the ſixth Earl was added the territory of *Twentzen* (in *Latine*, *Regio Tuentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and *Signeurie* of *Duiſlack*, ſetled upon him on his marriage with *Matilda*, the heir thereof: by *Theodorick* the 9th. the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys*, in the land of *Colen*; together with the Towns of *Duysbourg*, and *Culembourg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*: by *John* his ſon, the Town and territory of *Keiſarſwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4th. By *Adolph* the 29th. Earl, the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united: by *Adolph* his ſucceſſor, (made the firſt Duke hereof by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, *Anno* 1417) the Lordſhips of *Gennep*, *Duiffels*, and *Reixwald*, bought of the ſaid Emperour; together with the County of *Ravenſtein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers* and *Hatteren*, for the ranſom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other noble perſons taken priſoners by him, *Anno* 1397. By *John* the firſt Duke of that name, the Town and Territory of *Soeſt*; and finally by *John* the 3d. the Dukedomes of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as heir thereof by his mother *Mary*, ſole daughter and heir of *William* the fifth and ſixth, the laſt Duke thereof. To which great height this antient and noble family had not long attained, and thereby made themſelves and their ſons and daughters fit matches for the greateſt Princes: But it pleaſed God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to diſſipate this brave eſtate in the hands of ſtrangers; as ſhall be ſhewed in the concluſion of this Catalogue of

The EARLS and DUKES of *CLEVE*.

A. Ch.

717 1 *Elias Grallius*, companion in the wars of *Charls Martell*.

732 2 *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teiſterbant*.

755 3 *Rainold*, ſon of *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teiſterbant*.

767 4 *Conon*, of great fame in Arms, under *Charles* the great.

778 5 *John*, ſon of *Conon*, married the daughter of *Michael Curopalates* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.

790 9 *Robert*, the eldeſt ſon of *John*.

798 7 *Baldwin*, the brother of Earl *Robert*. After whoſe death, *Anno* 830. the Earldom of *Teiſterbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger ſon; from whom deſcended

descended the two houses of *March* and *Berg*.

830 8 *Ludowick*, son of *Baldwin*.
834 9 *Eberard*, brother of *Ludovick*; who gave *Teisterbant* to his brother *Robert*.
843 10 *Luithardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.
878 11 *Baldwin* II.
928 12 *Arnold*.
968 13 *Wignan*, son of *Arnold*.
1004 14 *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire, in the life of his father.
1045 15 *Theodorick* II.
1088 16 *Theodorick* III. companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the *Holy Land*.
1114 17 *Arnold* II. brother of *Theodorick* the 3d.
1161 18 *Theodorick* IV.
19 *Arnold* III.
1205 20 *Adnold* IV.
1218 21 *Theodorick* V.
1229 22 *Theodorick* VI.
1247 23 *Theodorick* VII.
1255 24 *Theodorick* VIII.
1271 25 *Theodorick* IX.
26 *Otho*, son of *Theodorick*.
1309 27 *Theodorick* X. brother of *Otho* II.
1325 28 *John*, brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the last of the masculine issue of *Elias Grallius*.
29 *Adolphus*, the VII. of *March*, son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen*, (as six of this house of *March* had been (almost) successively before him) succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John*, to the Earldom of *Cleve*; inaugurated thereunto by *Charls* the 4th.
1389 30 *Adolph* II. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperour *Sigismund*, at the Council of *Constance*, *Anno* 1417.
1443 31 *John* III. son of *Adolph* Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenstein*.
1481 32 *John* II. of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.
1521 33 *John* III. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his wife, daughter and heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.
1539 34 *William*, son of *John* the 3d. and *Mary* his wife, daughter and sole heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*: father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the fift for the Dukedom of *Gueldres*; but being too weak for so great an Adversary, made his submission to him at *Venlo*, and so saved his estates.
1584 35 *John William*, son of the former *William*, during the life of *Charls Frederick* his elder brother, was Bishop of *Munster*; on whose death, *Anno* 1575. he resigned that dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole estates; which he managed with great piety and prudence til the year 1610. and then died issueless. The last of that antient and noble family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death, much quarrel and contention grew about the succession, betwixt the several competitors and pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold* Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an investiture from the Emperour *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom for want of heirs males, the estate was said to be escheated. 2. *John George*, Duke of *Saxonie*, descended from *Sibyll*, daughter of Duke *John* the third: at whose mariage with *John Frederick* the Elector of *Saxonie*, *Anno* 1535. it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the heirs males of *Cleve*, the issue of that mariage should succeed therein. 3. *George William*, Duke of *Prussia*, son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenbourg* by the Lady *Anne* his wife, eldest daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenbourg* Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldest sister and next heir of the Duke deceased. 4. *Wolfgangus Gulielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, son of *Magdalen*, the younger sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the estate as nearest kinsman, one degree, to the said last Duke. And though the right seemed most apparently on the side of *Brandenbourg*; the *Estate* in *tayl* pretended by the Duke of *Saxonie*, being formerly cut off by *Imperial* authority; and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg*, not of force in *Germany*: yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a possession of *Juliers*, and of most parts of that Countrey; the two Princes of *Brandenbourg* and *Newburg* soon agreed the controversie, and by the help of the *Protestant* Princes their *Confederates*, recovered the greatest part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg* not content with his partage, first maried with a daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*; called in the *Spanish* Arms under the command of Marquess *Spinola*, to abet his quarrel:

EARLS of *ALTENA* and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.
834 1 *Robert*, son of *Baldwin*, to whom the Country of *Teisterbant* was given by *Eberhard*.
2 *Theoderick*, son of *Robert*, the first Lord of *Altena*.
3 *Adolphus* I. Earl of *Altena*.
4 *Adolphus* II. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
5 *Conrade*, Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
4 *Adolph* III. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.
5 *Eberhard*, Earl of *Altena*; his younger brother *Engelbert* succeeding in *Berg*.
6 *Frederick*, Earl of *Altena*.
7 *Adolphus* IV. created the first Earl of *March*.
1249 7 *Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena*.
8 *Adolphus* V. son of *Engelbert*.
9 *Engelbert* II. from whom by a second wife the daughter and heir of *Aremberg*, descended that branch of the house of *March*, which till of late, were Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*.
10 *Adolph* VI. husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) daughter and heir of *Theodorick* the 9th Earl of *Cleve*.

Colen. which made *George William*, ſon of the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the *forces* of the *States*, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Naſſaw*, after Prince of *Orange*. The iſſue of which war was this, that *Spinola* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Weſel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Duſſeldorp*, and moſt other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; and the States got into their power the Towns of *Gulick*, with *Rees* and *Emmerick* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*; and almoſt the whole County of *Mark*. And though moſt parts of theſe Eſtates have been delivered ſince to the rightful Owners: yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which, notwithſtanding that they both pretend to keep them for the uſe of thoſe Princes, in whoſe cauſe they ſtood; yet when ſuch ſtrong parties keep the Stakes, it is moſt eaſie to determine who will win the *game*: Such alterations as have hapned in the chance of war, by the reciprocal winning and loſing of ſome Towns on both ſides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of theſe Princes were 1. *Gules*, over an Eſcocheon in Feſſe *Argent*, a Carbuncle peirced, Pomerted, and flowred *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*, 2ly. *Or*, a Lion *Azure* armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Armes of *Berg* and *Mark* I have no where found.

2. *The Eſtates of the three* ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

Adjoyning to the Eſtates of *Cleve* are thoſe of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Ments*, and *Triers*; not ſo contiguous and conterminous as thoſe of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out ſeverally by their metes and boundaries: And firſt for

1. *COLEN-LAND*, or the Eſtate of the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Colen*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Dukedom of *Berg*, from which divided by the *Rhene*; on the Weſt, with *Gulick*; on the North, with *Cleve* it ſelf, and the County of *Muers*; and on the South, extending to the land of *Triers*. The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times poſſeſſed of the Countreys of *Berg* and *March*; But being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own ſecurity againſt that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, *Anno* 412. or thereabouts; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, *An.* 949. By *Otho* the 2d, made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, or at the leaſt given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke thereof, after his death, to weaken the great houſe of *Ardenne* deſigned by *Otho* ſon of *Charles* to that goodly Patrimony, it was ſeized on by *Otho* the 3d, and by him reſtored to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained *Imperial*, and of late times incorporated amongſt the *Hanſe-towns*; but the territory near unto it, and a great part of *Weſtphalen*, ſubject immediately to the Biſhop. The Biſhops See firſt founded here by S. *Maternus*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Peter*, as hath been conſtantly affirmed by old tradition: but howſoever an Epiſcopal See without all queſtion, in the time of *Conſtantine*; *Maternus*, Biſhop hereof, ſubſcribing amongſt others to the Council of *Arles*, *An.* 326. And being *Colen* was in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania ſecunda*, the Biſhop had the power of a *Metropolitan*, according to the rule and obſervation ſo often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made *Elective*, theſe Biſhops, with their brethren of *Ments* and *Triers*, were made three of the ſeven, which were to nominate and *elect* the ſucceeding Emperour: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in power and Patrimony.

Places of moſt importance within this *Electorate*, are 1. *Bonn*, ſituate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the moſt pleaſant and fruitfull place of all the Countrey; the ordinary reſidence of the Archbiſhop, whoſe houſe or *Palace* here, is ſaid to be one of the faireſt in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* called *Bonna*, and ſometimes *Caſtra Bonnenſia*, the wintering Camp in his time, of the ſixt Legion. 2. *Nuys*, by the ſame writer called *Noveſium*, (*Niveſia* by *Antoninus*) ſeated on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charls* Duke of *Burgundy*: who being reſolved to get this town into his hands, as a convenient paſs into *Germany*, lay ſo long before it, that he loſt the opportunity of joyning with King *Edward* the 4th of *England*, whom he had purpoſely invited to the war of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew ſo low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorreiner*, forſook by the *Engliſh*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at laſt overthrown and ſlain by that beggerly nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andermach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Amenacum*; one of the ten Garriſons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to ſecure their Provice from the *Germans*: the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Bopport*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Selts*, *Strasburg*, and *Waſſenberg*. 4. *Lintz*, ſeated on the ſame River alſo. 5 *Sontina*, a town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a village of no eſteem, but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tolbiacum*; moſt memorable for the great victory which *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* (upon a vow made in the heat of the fight to embrace the Goſpell) obtained againſt the whole power of the *Almans*, never preſuming after that to inva de his territories. 7. *Rhineburg*, commonly called *Ferck*, the moſt northern town of all the Biſhoprick, ſituate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the lands of this Biſhop, as alſo of the Dukes of *Cleve*, and the Earls of *Muers*, meet upon a point. A Town which for theſe 60 years hath been of little uſe or profit to the right owner, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes by the confederate *States*; for each commodiouſly ſeated, as opening a paſſage up the River, and receiving great cuſtomes on all kind of Merchandiſe paſſing to and fro. But having finally been poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606, till 1633. it was then regained for the *States* by *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loſſe of no more than 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 Braſſe peeces of Ordnance,

70.

70 barrels of powder, with victuals and ammunition of all sorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, situate on the *Rhene*, first built by the *Ubii* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*; afterwards in honour of *Agrippina* (daughter of *Germanicus*, and wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colonie, and called *Colonia Agrippina*; and sometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous, and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compasse; in which are numbred 19 Hospitals, 37 Monasteries of both Sexes, 30 Chapels of our Lady, 9 Parishes, and 10 Collegiat Churches, besides the Cathedral, being a Church of vast greatnesse, but of little beauty, and not yet finished: the *Metropolitan* whereof is Chancellour of *Italy*, the second of the three Electors; and writes himself Duke of *Westphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cæsar* with incredible expedition make a bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy than the reports of his valour: so powerfull is laborious industry, that it overcommeth all disasters, and maketh the most unpassable waters yeeld to Heroick resolutions. *Triers.*

In this Town also is said to lie the bodies of the *three wise men*, which came from the *East* to worship our Saviour; vulgarly called the three Kings of *Colen*. The whole story is at large written in *tables*, which are fastned unto their Tombes. The pith whereof is this. The first of them called *Melchior*, an old man with a large beard, offered *Gold* as unto a *King*; The second called *Gasper*, a beardlesse young man, offered *Frankincense*, as unto God: The third called *Balthasar*, a *Blackmoor* with a spreading beard, offered *Myrrhe* as unto a *Man* ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the tale saith, is probable; first because they came from the East, and so is *Arabia* in respect of *Hierusalem*: And 2ly. because it is said in the 72 *Psalm*, *The Kings of* Arabia *shall bring gifts*. As for their bodies, they are there said to have been translated by *Helena*, the mother of *Constantine* unto *Constantinople*; from thence by *Eustorsius*, Bishop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus* Bishop hereof, *Anno* 1164. This is the substance of the History; which for my part I reckon amongst the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their comming from some part of *Arabia*) but have not leisure in this place to refell the Fable.

As for the temporal estate of the Bishops of *Colen*, it came unto them specially by the munificence of the Emperours of the house of *Saxonie*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Westphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbishop hereof, one of the younger sons of the Emperour *Henry* the first, surnamed the *Fowler*, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder brother. To which was added, not long after, the whole land of *Colen* (as we have formerly described it) by *Otho* the 2d. which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, was taken out of it, and setled on the Bishops hereof, at such time as the Dukedom of *Lorrein* was erected by him: Such peeces only as are found on the other side of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the wit and industry of the following Bishops: Exceedingly increased both in power and patrimony by the addition of *Leige* to this Electorate: it being of late the constant custom of the Canons of *Leige*, to choose the Archbishop of *Colen* for their Prince and Pastor.

Next to the Bishoprick of *Colen* lieth the land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the course of the *Mosselle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrein* on the South, beyond the influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the land of *Colen*: and being bounded on the East with *Luxembourg*; as on the West, with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the said two Rivers, and is now called *Rhinegouw*; more Southward on that side with the Country of *Westreich*, and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the Palatinate of the *Rhene*. The Country towards *Lorrein*, and *Luxembourg*, somewhat wild and barren; more fruitfull about *Triers* it self, and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleasant than profitable, the greatest riches of it lying in woods and *Mineralls*. The Bishops See here first erected by *Eucherius*, a Disciple and follower of S. *Peter*. The reality whereof, not only testified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a writer of approved credit; who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next successors; the line Episcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, *Anno* 326. *Agritius* Bishop of *Triers* subscribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Bishop had the reputation and authority of a *Metropolitan*, the City of *Triers* being antiently the *Metropolis* of *Belgica prima*, within which it stands. Increased exceedingly by being made one of the three *Electors* of the *Spiritualty*, though the last in order, and *Chancellour* to the Emperour for the Realm of *France*: the fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wrested from it, with the rest of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, by the *German* Emperours.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Confluents*, now *Cobolentz*, the *Confluentes* of *Antoninus*, so called because seated on the *confluence* or meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Mosselle*; the station antiently of the first *Legion*. A populous and well-built Town; and seated in a pleasant and fertill Country. 2. *Embretstein*, over against *Cobolentz*, on the other side of the *Rhene*, beautified with a strong Castle of the Bishops, mounted upon a lofty hill, which not only gives a gallant prospect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3. *Boppart*, seated on the *Rhene*, and called so *quasi Bonport*, from the commodiousnesse of the Creek (upon which it standeth) for the use of shipping: one of the forts (as *Confluents* before mentioned was) erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; occasioning in time both Towns. It was once miserably wasted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, and King of the *Romans*, because the Bishop of *Triers* agreed not unto his *Election*; but soon recovered of those hurts. The antient name hereof in the *Itinerarie* of *Antoninus*, is supposed to be *Bodobrica*: pawned to the Bishops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7th. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrein* (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarvix*) seated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Mosselle*: possessed at the present by a branch of the house of *Nassaw* (but *Homagers* of this *Electour*) entituled hence according to the *Dutch* fashion,

Triers Counts of *Naſſaw* in *Sarbruck*. 5. *Veldents*, and 6. *Belſtern* on the *Moſelle*, of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine Treveris*, the principal City of the *Treveri*, who poſſeſſed this tract; ſeated upon the *Moſelle* alſo, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the reſidence of the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General, for the whole Dioceſe of *Gaul*; by conſequence the ſeat of a *Metropolitan* when it ſubmitted to the Goſpel. Of ſuch antiquity, that it is ſaid to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it ſelf, and as little trading; the River not being capable of ſhips of burden; and the air generally ſo cloudy and inclined to rain, that it is by ſome called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It paſſed ſometimes among the number of *Imperial Cities*, but now acknowlegeth the *Elector* for the Lord thereof; by whom made an *Univerſity*, one of the antienteſt in all *Germany*, and of as much reſort for the ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences, as the beſt amongſt them. 8. *Obert-Weſel*, or *Veſalia Superior*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Weſel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Veſalia inferior*, or the *Under-weſel*: the furtheſt place of this Diſtrict, ſeated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccharach*, a Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accompted for a Town *Imperial*.

This Countrey antiently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moſelle*, denominated from the River *Moſelle*, along the courſe whereof it was firſt erected. An Eſtate founded by the diſherited ſons of *Clodion*, ſecond King of the *French*, at the ſame time (and on the ſame occaſion alſo) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them; of which we have already ſpoken when we were in *Belgium*. This of the two the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and ſo more in ſight: the other being further off, in Countries far leſs cultivate, but more defenſible. This Earldom comprehending, beſides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Sweibrucken* and *Weſt-reich*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, occaſioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their port to the very laſt; inſomuch that *Giſlebert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moſelle*, in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Fowler*, was thought by him a fit Husband for his daughter *Gerberg*; maried after his deceaſe to *Lewis* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine* King of *France*, and *Gertrude*, daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, maried to *Henry* ſurnamed *Gozelo* Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, and by him made the mother of another *Henry*, Succeſſor unto *Otho* the 3d, in the *Roman* Empire. Impoveriſhed not a little both in power and patrimony by the erection of the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, there grew ſome *feuds* between thoſe houſes; occaſioning the death of *Albert* another of theſe Earls, ſlain (as is ſaid by *Lazius*) by *Godfrey* ſon to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrein*: more probably by ſome other Prince of the houſe of *Ardenne*, it not being found in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the Father of any Children. But this difference being reconciled by the mariage of *Bertha* daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierry*, the 9th Duke of *Lorrein*, and the familie of theſe Earls expiring in a ſhort time after; this part of the Eſtate was ſeized on by the Biſhops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallick* ſide of the *Rhene*, by the Biſhops of *Mentz*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the reſt being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, who do ſtill enjoy it: the Emperours of thoſe times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

3. The Biſhoprick of *MENTZ*, is not laid out by bounds and limits as the other; becauſe the Patrimony and eſtate thereof doth not lie together: diſperſed for the moſt part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Biſhops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the *temporal* Eſtate of this Elector is every way inferior unto thoſe of *Triers*, and *Colen*; ſuperior unto both in place and dignity: he being the firſt in rank of the whole *Electoral College*, *Chancellor* for the Empire, and in all meetings ſitteth at the right hand of the Emperour. The Biſhops See firſt placed here, as ſome report, by S. *Creſcens*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Paul*, of whoſe being ſent by him into *Gallia* (for ſo the antient writers underſtand *Galatia*) the Apoſtle ſpeaketh, 2 *Tim.* 4. Though others with more probability ſeat him at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that antiently this City was a See Epiſcopal; *Martine* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, *Anno* 347. And if a Biſhop, certainly a *Metropolitan* Biſhop, this City being in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Chriſtianity being worn out of theſe parts of *Germany*, by the conqueſts of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again reſtored in this tract by *Boniface*, an *Engliſhman*, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Mentz* of this new plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*, *Maire* of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and father of *Martel*) who for the *Orthodoxie* of his doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deſervedly honoured with the title of the *Apoſtle of Germany*.

Towns of moſt note belonging to the Biſhops hereof are, 1. *Mentz* it ſelf, the *Moguntiacum* of the Antients, ſo called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Moganus* in the *Latine* (now better known by the name of *Mœnus*) oppoſite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old; ſo having the command of both Rivers: for that cauſe made the ſeat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the *Frontiers*; and eſpecially of thoſe ten Garriſons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, ſpoken of before. Stretched out in great length on the River ſide, but not of anſwerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not ſo well inhabited. The publick buildings generally very large and beautifull, the houſes built according to the old *Roman* model; the moſt magnificent whereof is the Biſhops Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both ſides of the *Rhene*, fruitfull in all naturall commodities, and abounding with moſt excellent wines. Of good note alſo for an Univerſity here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the *Electors*: but eſpecially for the Art of Printing which was here invented, or perfected at the leaſt, and made fit for uſe. 2. *Bing* ſeated on the *Rhene*, another of the

the Gariſon towns, erected by the *Romans* on the banks of that River. In a ſmall Iſland of which, not far from this town, is a Tower, or Caſtlelet, called the *Mouſeturn*, *i.e.* the tower of Mice: built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *An.* 900. or thereabouts. Who in a year of great ſcarcity pretending to relieve the poor people oppreſſed with Famine, cauſed them to be gathered together into an old barn, where he burnt them all; ſaying, they were the *Rats* and *Mice* which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was ſo perſecuted by thoſe *Vermin*, that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midſt of the *Rhene*, whither the *Rats* and *Mice* followed him, and at laſt devoured him. 3. *Lauſteine*. 4. *Hasford*. 5. *Oxenford*. 6. *Alderburg*. 7. *Middleburg*. 8. *Carloſtadt*, the birth-place of *Corolostadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Biſchoffſtein*. 10. *Koningsberg* (*mons Regius* in *Latine*) the birth-place of *Johannes de Monte Regio*, a famous *Mathematician*, as appeareth by this Comment upon *Ptolemies Almageſt*. Moſt of which Towns being in *Frankenland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in groſſe by theſe Electors, as were the Land of *Colen*, and Diſtrict of *Triers*, but piece-meal in a manner, and by retrailer, party upon the failer of the houſe of *Shwaben* Dukes of *Franconie* alſo, partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperors, but ſpecially by making the beſt uſe of their Votes and Suffrage in the Change of Emperors, which they did not part withall for nothing: Such Towns hereof, as lie on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, gained by like means upon the expiration of the houſe of *Moſelle*.

Palatinate of Rhene.

3. The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE*.

The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE* is bounded upon the Eaſt, with the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, and ſome part of *Franconie*; with the reſidue thereof, and the River *Main*, upon the North, on the South, with *Elſats*, or *Alſatia*; and on the Weſt, with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gemerſheime*, north and ſouth, 72 miles; and in breadth from *Sweibrucken* to *Landen*, eaſt and weſt, 90 miles.

It it called alſo the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*: the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, becauſe lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is ſaid to be the moſt pleaſant part of all *Germany*, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits and metalls, abounding with thoſe cool wines, which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rheniſh*, adorned with many goodly Towns, both for ſtrength, populouſneſſe, and beauty, and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Moſpach*, a pretty neat town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a *Prefecture*, not far from the borders of *Wirtenberg*; 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the ſame River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperour and *Palatine*, of the Earls of *Hoenloe*, *Anno* 1371. the other moiety belonging to the Biſhop of *Wormes*. 3. *Winheime*, a ſmall town not far from *Ladeberg*, belonging once to the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*; but on ſome controverſie ariſing about the title, adjudged unto the ſaid *Rupertus*, and his heirs for ever. 4. *Scrieſſen*, in the ſame tract, well ſeated, but not very large, ſold with the Caſtle of *Stralnberg* to the ſaid *Rupertus*, by *Sifride* (or *Sigifride*) of *Stralnberg*, the right heir hereof, *Anno* 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right ſhore of the *Neccar* (going down the water) compaſſed on three ſides with Mountains, and lying open only towards the Weſt, which makes the air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one long Street, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt: on the South-eaſt ſide whereof is a fair and pleaſant Market-place; and not far off a very high mountain called *Koningſtall* (that is to ſay, the *Kingly ſeat*) upon the middle aſcent whereof is the *Caſtle*, where the Princes *Electours* uſe to keep their Courts; and on the very *ſummit* or top thereof, the ruines of an old Tower blown up with gun-powder. A town of no great bigneſſe, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was uſed in the time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the reſt being either ruined, or imployed unto other uſes, if not repaired again ſince the *Spaniards* became maſters of it, for more frequent Maſſes. Howſoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this Palatinate; not long ſince furniſhed with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (eſpecially *Manuſcripts*) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, til matched, if not over-matched by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*: moſt of them, to the great prejudice of the *Proteſtant* cauſe, being carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1620. Finally for the Town it ſelf, it was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Biſhop of *Wormes*; from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; and it is now famous, for being the ſeat of the *Palſgraves*, the ſepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for an Univerſity founded by the Emperour, and Palatine *Rupertus*, *Anno* 1346. 6. *Baccharach*, on the Banks of *Rhene*, ſo called, *quaſi Bacchi ara*, for the excellent wines. 7. *Coub*, on the other ſide of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Caſtle called *Pfalts*, from whence the name *Pfalts-grave* or *Palſgrave*, ſeemeth to ſome, to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a ſtrong Town, which together with *Keiſars Lanterne* and *Ingelheim*, were given to the Palatines by *Wenceſlaus*: and after ſetled on them, by *Rupertus* the Emperour and *Palatine*, for 100000 Florens, *Anno* 1402. 9. *Cruintznacke*, called anciently *Straurones ſus*. 10. *Frankendale*; lately a Monaſtery only, but being well peopled by ſuch of the Netherlands, which to avoid the fury of the Duke *Alva*, fled hither; is now a town of principall ſtrength. 11. *Gemerſheim*, and 12. *Manheim*, a well fortified Town, ſeated on the confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*.

On the Eaſtern part of the Country ſtandeth 13 *Laden*, ſituate on the little River *Tuberus*, the furtheſt bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-eaſt, there adjoining to the reſt of *Frankenland*. And on the Weſt ſide the Towns of 14 *Newſtat*, 15 *Keiſars Lautern*, in Latine called *Cæſarea Lutra*, once a

Palatinate of Rhene.

town Imperiall; from which, and from its ſituation on the River *Luter*, it received this name. 16 *Sweibrucken*, inveſted with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Sweibrook*; the patrimony and title of a younger Houſe of the *Pfaltsgraves*, whom the Latine writers call *Principes Bipontani*: the *French*, the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17 *Simmeren* on the North-weſt point of it, where it meets with the Diſtrict of *Triers*; the title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Dukes of *Simmeren*; ſituate in that part of the Country which is called *Weſt-reich*, of which *Zweibrucken* is alſo part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: moſt of which they have added to their eſtate within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own eſtates, ſo potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in war and peace, and ſo ingraffed themſelves into the moſt notable families of *Germany*, that I may well ſay with *Irenicus*, *Non eſt alia* Germaniæ *familia*, *cui plus debeat nobilitas*.

Within the limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*; are the Biſhopricks of *Spires* and *Worms*; both antient, and of great *Revenue*, but *feudatories* for a great part of their eſtates, to theſe *Electors*. Of theſe, more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* ſide thereof, ſtands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newneſſe of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetum*, from the *Nemetes*, who poſſeſſed this tract; and ſometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth ſtill continue. A town *Imperiall*, and antiently a Biſhops See; *Teſtis* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Councill of *Colen*, *Anno* 347. A neat Town, and very delectably ſeated. Of great reſort, by reaſon of the *Imperiall Chamber*, the ſoveraign Court of *Judicature* of all the Empire; capable of *Appeals* from the Tribunals of all the Princes, and free States thereof. A Court which firſt followed the Emperour in all his Removes (as antiently the *Kings Bench in England*) by *Maximilian* the Emperor firſt made *Sedentary*, and fixt at *Franckfort*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charls* the fift. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Proteſtants* was here taken up, given to the Princes, & free Cities following the *reformed Religion*, upon their legal *Proteſtation* here exhibited. More down the water and on the ſame ſhore thereof, ſtands the City of *Wormes*, one of thoſe built upon the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; by *Ptolomy* called *Borbegomagus*; by *Antonine*, *Civitas Wormenſis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of thoſe parts, whoſe chief City it was. A Town *Imperiall* as the former, and a See Epiſcopal as that is, and as antient too; *Victor* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Councill of *Colen*, before mentioned. A Town to be obſerved for the firſt appearance, which *Luther* made before *Charls* the fift, (the *Imperial* Chamber then being holden in this City:) who being diſſwaded from that journey by ſome of his Friends, returned this reſolute anſwer; That *go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town, as there were tiles on the Houſes.* Chief towns belonging to theſe Biſhops, are 1. *Vdenheim*, a town belonging to the Biſhop of *Spires*, whoſe reſidence it ſometimes is: conveniently ſeated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon ſome deſign which was then in hand, fortified ſtrongly by the Biſhop. But this new *Fortification* being begun in a time of peace, gave great occaſion of diſtruct to the neighbouring Princes; who interpoſed with *Frederick* the fift, then Prince *Elector*, (of whom held in chief) to cauſe the Biſhop to deſiſt from the finiſhing of it. Which when he had refuſed to do, pleading a *Placard* from the Emperour *Matthias*, to compleat the work; the Prince *Elector*, with the reſt of the *Confederates*, beat it down by force: for this contempt, cited to *Spires* the *Imperiall* Chamber, in which it was alſo reſolved to proceed ſuddenly, and ſeverely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occaſioned that unfortunate Prince, to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*; and conſequently a chief cauſe of the *German* warrs. In managing whereof this Town was thought ſo commodious, that Marquis *Spinola* cauſed the works to be raiſed again, made it the ſtrongeſt hold in all thoſe Countries, and cauſed it to be called by the name of *Philipsberg*. 3. *Rotenberg*, originally belonging to the Biſhops of *Spires*, but of late times poſſeſſed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of leſſer note I forbear to mention.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, were the *Nemetes*, and *Vangiones* ſpoken of before; on the other ſide, the *Intuergi*. That on the Weſt ſide of the River, firſt conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*; of whoſe Empire it remained a part, but ſo that it was ſubject more immediately to the Earls of *Moſelle*, firſt under the Soveraignty and vaſſallage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorrein*. In the dividing of which Kingdome between the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became ſubject to the Empire, but ſtil poſſeſſed by thoſe of *Moſelle* as it was before. Eſcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of arms, partly by paying down ready mony, and partly too by ſelling of their voices, as they ſaw occaſion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and ſo was alſo that part of it, which lies on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, which being antiently and properly a part of the *Frankenland*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the fall of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, and then divolved unto the Empire as the other did. By little and little got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperours Houſhold (ſuch as the *Maires of the Palace* to the *French* Kings at the firſt inſtitution) had firſt the honour of Counts *Palatine* beſtowed upon them; and afterwards the place of an *Electour*, in the choice of the Emperour. But where their eſtates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what provinces or people they had ſubject to them, *à nullo inveni ſcriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, ſaith the learned *Munſter*: their habitation & poſſeſſion in & of theſe parts (acquired, for the moſt part by Arms and Mony) not being above 450 years ſtanding at the utmoſt. Likely it is, they had their reſidence, for the moſt part, in the Emperours *Palace*, living upon their rents, (as other great Officers of Court in theſe later times) the dignity and authority of ſo great a

place

place seeming sufficient to content them: but called *Count Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their *Jurisdiction* and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire, which were towards that River. Afterwards on the marriage of *Otho*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this office, with the *Electorall* dignity, fell into that House: possessed at that time of those parts of *Francovia* and the Earldom of *Mosselle*, which not long after on the dividing of that estate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the sons of *Ludovick* the 2. Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperour and *Electour Palatine*; partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*; and partly by the valour of *Frederick*, the Prince Electour. Of these the first bought in the Towns of *Winhein*, *Ladeberg*, *Scrienssen*, and the Castle of *Stralnberg*, with their lands and territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their voices in his election, three strong Towns of the Empire, *viz.* *Keisars Lanterne*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*: and the last took in Battell, *Anno* 1452. the Earl of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquesse of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spires*, and the Arch-bishop of *Mentz*; and ransomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtenberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) payed for his ransome 100000 *Florens*. The Bishop of *Mentz* re deemed himself for 450000 *Florens*. The Bishop of *Spires* gave for his liberty, the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Wersaw*: And the Marquesse of *Baden* yeelded up in lieu of his freedome, the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Cruitznack* is a part; the Towns of *Besiken*, and *Binheim*; the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a town over against *Gemersheim*; and his royalties between this *Gemersheim* and *Selts*, a Town of *Alsatia*, in fishing and hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their estate; let us next take a view of those, who have successively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story. *Palatinate of Rhene.*

ELECTORS *Palatine* of the *RHENE*.

A. Ch.

1 *Henry*, Count of *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by whom ordained to be one of the six Electors.
2 *Sigefride*, the son of *Adelheild*, wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former husband.
3 *Ezeline*, and *Conrade*, sons of *Sigefride*.
4 *Ludolphus*, son to *Ezeline*.
5 *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fift.
6 *Frederick*, son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperour *Conrade* the third.
7 *Henry* II. surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*.
1295 8 *Henry* III son of *Henry* the *Lion*, and Husband of *Clementia*, daughter of *Conrade* Duke of *Schwaben*, and Elector *Palatine*.
9 *Henry* IV. son of *Henry* the third, in the life of the Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperour, the dignity from hence forwards becomming *hereditary*.
10 *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, *Elector Palatine* of the *Rhene*, in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, sister and next heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the *Electorall* dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperour *Frederick* the second.
1269 11 *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, the son of *Otho*.
1294 12 *Rodolphus*, the eldest son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and *Electorall* dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the scale: his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.
1315 13 *Adolphus*, surnamed the Simple, resigned the *Electoral* dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.
1327 14 *Rodolphus* II. on the resignation of *Adolphus*.
1337 15 *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, *Anno* 1346.
1385 16 *Rupertus* II. son of *Adolphus* the Simple.
1398 17 *Rupertus* III. elected Emperour in the place of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.
2410 18 *Ludovicus* II. surnamed *Caecus*, and *Barbatus*, the eldest son of *Rupertus* the Emperour, married *Blanch*, daughter to King *Henry* the fourth of *England*.
2439 19 *Ludovicus* III. son of *Lewis* the second.
1451 20 *Frederick*, brother of *Ludovicus*, during the minority of *Philip* his said Brothers son, succeeded in the *Electorall* dignity; and added much to that estate by his personall vertue.
1078 21 *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedome of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his wife; but, after a long and bloody war, forced to go without it.
1508 22 *Ludovicus* IV. son of *Philip*.
1544 23 *Frederick* II. brother of *Lewis* the fift, who first introduced the *Reformed Religion* into the the *Palatinate*.
1556 24 *Otho-Henry*, son of *Rupertus*, the brother of *Frederick*, and *Lewis* the last of the direct line and

of this house of *Bavaria*.

Palatinate.

1559 25 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, descended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweibruck* or *Bipont*, younger son of the Emperour *Rupert*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho-Henry* without issue.

1576 26 *Ludovicus* V. son of *Frederick* the third, a munificent benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*.

1583 27 *Frederick* IV. son of *Lewis* the fift, married *Ludovica*, or *Loise*, daughter of *William*, and sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.

1610 28 *Frederick* V. son of *Frederick* the 4th, maried the Princesse *Eliz.* daughter of *James*, King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the works of *Videnheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worsted at the battel of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he lost both that, and his own native estates and Dignities; of which deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperour: the *Lower Palatinate* being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*, the *Upper Palatinate*, with the *Electoral* dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Country, by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*. November 29. 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the power and government of the former Conquerours.

1631 29 *Charles Ludowick*, the heir both of his Fathers estates, and misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his honours (contrary to the *fundamentall constitutions* of the Empire, by which the sons of the *Electors* and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences:) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the *Pacificationes* made at *Munster* this present year, 1648. which I pray God to prosper for the peace of afflicted *Christendome*.

The *Religion* of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate* which depends upon it, hath much varied since the first Reformation, established by *Frederick* the second, according to the form and doctrine of the *Confession of Auspurg*: the doctrine and discipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutherans* forms restored again by *Lewis*, or *Ludowick* the first: after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*; as more conducing to the ends of some needy *Statists*; who could not otherwise raise their fortunes than by invading the *Tithes* and *Glebe*, and other poor remainders of the Churches *Patrimony*. Of which the *Clergie* being Universally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miserable short stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became so contemptible, and neglected by all sorts of men, that at the last the Church of the *Palatinate*, was in the same condition with the Church of *Israel*, under the reign of *Jeroboam*, when *Priests were made out of the meanest of the people*. And for the Government of their Churches, though moulded to the *Genevian* plat form as near as it might be, yet were those Princes loath to leave too much power in the hands of the *Elderships*, and therefore did appoint some superiour Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inspectores & Præpositos*, their power being much the same with that of the *particular Superintendent* amongst the *Lutherans*; and over them a standing *Consistory* consisting of three Ministers, and as many *Counsellers of State*, of the Princes nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A *temperament* for which they were beholding to *Erastus*, a Doctor of *Physick*, in the University of *Heidelberg*; who made this *Pill* to purge *Presbytery* of some *Popish* humours, which secretly lay hid in the body of it: But this whole modell and Religion of the Country is much changed of late, and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* restored in most parts thereof, since the Conquest of them by the *Spaniards*, and *Bavarians*, which before we spake of.

But to return again to the *Civil State*, and the concernment of those Princes. The *Palsgrave* hath many prerogatives above the *Electors* of either sort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxonie*, and Marquesse of *Brandenburg*; because *Henry the Palatine*, was descended of *Charls* the great: for which cause he is also in the vacancy of the Empire. *Governour* of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which office he had power to alienate, or give offices, to take *fealty* and *homage* of the subjects; and which is most, to sit in the *Imperial Courts*, and give judgement of the Emperour himself. And look whatsoever shall in the vacancy of the Empire, be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are bound by oath to confirm, and ratifie.

The *Revenues* of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000 l. *per annum*; nor could they be supposed at lesse: the silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate*, yeelding 60000 Crowns a year, and the passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more, besides the demeasn Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the *Reformation*) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a Lion *Topace*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

4. *ALSATIA.*

ALSATIA or *ELSATS*, as the *Dutch* call it, is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the *Marquisate* of *Baden*, and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West, with the Mountain *Vauge*, or *Vogesus*, which separateth it from *Lorrein*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South, (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Countrey for the pleasantness and fertility of it, inferior to none in *Germanie*: called therefore *Elsats*, (as some think) *quasi Edelsats*, that

that is to ſay, a *noble Seat*; derived more probably by others from the river *Ill*, the only River of note in all this tract; and called ſo, *quaſi Ill-ſats*, the *ſeat* or ſituation on the river *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower* and *higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, ſo called, becauſe further off from the Mountains, and down the water in reſpect of the courſe of the *Rhene*. A Country ſo aboundantly fruitfull in wine and corn, (with which it furniſheth ſome parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour Countries) that it is generally called *Germaniæ nutrix*, or the nurſe of *Germanie*; by *Winphelegius*, the *Epitome* or Abſtract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1 *Strasburg*, ſo called from the multitude of *Streets* (the *Dutch* call them *Strats*) antiently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the *Roman Exchequer*, or Receipt, here kept in the time of their greatneſſe; or from ſome Mines of ſilver which were found about it. A ſtately, rich, and populous City, well ſtored with publick garners and cellars of wine, againſt times of dearth. Situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Bruſch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*; by which, and by the helps of Art, very ſtrongly fortified: Deſigned from the firſt foundation for a Town of war; this being another of the Towns which the *Romans* built, to defend the *Rhene* againſt the *Germans*. Now an Imperial City, and a *See* Epiſcopal, the Biſhop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alſatia*. The Church Cathedral, one of the faireſt in all *Germany*: much famed for a *Clock* of moſt admirable workmanſhip, and a *Steeple* of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the higheſt of any in Chriſtendom; higher (if the meaſure of it be not miſtaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of S. *Pauls* in *London*, before the firing of it. Of this thus ſaith the *Poet* in *Adrianus*,

Urbs præclara ſitu, ripis contermina Rheni,
Maxima cui celſæ metiuntur mœnia turris.

Strasburg on *Rhenes* inamell'd banks doth lie,
Whoſe Tower even bids defiance to the skie.

2 *Zabern*, or *Elſatz Savern*, the *Tabernæ* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old *Roman* Garriſons; deſtroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, then Emperour. Now the chief place of Reſidence for the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Juſtice, kept by his Officers in this City, for the *Lower Alſatia*. 3. *Altrip*, ſo called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the river, on which it is ſeated; another of the Towns or Forts, which the *Romans* like politick conquerors built on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the incurſions of the barbarous Nations. And ſo was 4 *Selts*, ſeated on the *Rhene* betwixt *Strasburg* and *Zabern*; and 5 *Weiſſenberg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a town *Imperial*, but ſeated on the river *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompaſſed with little hils and delightful groves, the River gently waſhing the walks thereof, and adding much to it both of ſtrength and beauty. 6 *Hagenaw*, between *Selts* and *Strasburg*, but not ſo near unto the *Rhene* as either of them: firſt walled by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1164. and ſince that time of great importance for command of the Countrey; but ſeated in a ſandy and unfruitful ſoil, frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elſats*, for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhene*, 7 *Stechfield*, corruptly ſo called for *Steffansfield*, from the Monaſtery of S. *Stephen* there founded. 8 *Haſle* on the *Bruſch*, &c.

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA*, are 1. *Rufach*, on the river *Ombach*, belonging to the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb. In antient times of great reſort by the *Roman* nobility, much taken with the fruitfulneſs and pleaſures of it: and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it, by reaſon of their vigorous proceedings againſt Theeves; from whence the *Germans* have a *Proverb*, that the *old gallows at Ruffach is made of oak*. 2 *Enſheim*, or *Enſiſheim*, on the river *Ill*, antiently the ſtation of the tenth *Legion*, and then called *Aruncis*; now of moſt note for the *ſupreme Court* of juſtice there held for *Briſgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alſatia*, by the Archdukes of *Auſtria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3 *Colmar*, an *Imperial City* raiſed out of the ruines of old *Argentaria*, deſtroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*: well built, and ſituate almoſt in the very Navel of *Alſatia*, not above an hours journy from the foot of the Mountains; but in a fruitfull and rich ſoyl both for corn and paſturage, the Countrey hereabouts being very well watred with the *Louch*, *Duro*, *Fecht*, and *Ill*. 4 *Schleſtad*, in the modern *Latine*, *Seleſtadium*, but by the antients called *Elcebus*, the ſtation at that time of the 19 *Legion*; afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutcheſs of *Schwaben*, *An.* 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Hieruſalem*; which in tract of time became the richeſt *Monaſtery* in all theſe parts. Situate in a very fertile and delightful ſoil, having the *Rhene* on the one ſide, and ſome ſpurs of the Mountain *Vauge*, ſhadowed with Groves of Cheſnuts upon the other: walled in the time of *Frederick* the 2d. about the year 1216. and on the Eaſt defended with impaſſible fens. 5 *Gebwiler*, and 6 *Watweil*, both ſeated near the aforeſaid Mountains, and both ſubject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7 *Keiſersberg*, 8 *Turchein*, two *Imperial* towns, but not otherwiſe memorable; as neither are many of the reſt, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this ſmall Province of *Elſats*, (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with walls, beſides Caſtles, Forts and Villages, almoſt innumerable; and amongſt them more *Free* and *Imperial* Cities, than in any one Province of the Empire.

The Southern part of *Elſats* bordering on the *Canton* of *Baſil*, is commonly called by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latine Sungovia*, and *Sungoia*; but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirts*, from *Pfirt* the

Lorrein the chief Town of it, and the Dukes ſeat: the Country very plentifull in corn and wine (as the reſt of *Elſats*, affording good ſtore of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof, are 1 *Mulhanſen* on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, as were alſo *Keiſerſberg* and *Colmar*: but being taken in by *Rodulph* of *Habſpurgh*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made *Imperial*; and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls, and as many Counteſſes. 3. *Maſz-munſter*, ſo called from a *Monaſtery* of *Nuns* there found by *Maſo*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Engleberg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty hill. 5. *Morſ-munſter*, ſo named of an ancient Monaſtery there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*; moſt of them great builders of Religious houſes. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7. *Pfirt* it ſelf, ſeated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore over-grown with *Woods* and *Forreſts*, whence it had the name. Called by the *French le Pais de Ferrette* (corruptly for *le Pais de Forreſt*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirt*: by which name (of the Countie of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines*, and other *French* writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigiſmund* the Archduke, to *Charls* Duke of *Burgundie*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Weſtward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundie*, lieth the Town and Earldom of *MONTBELGARD*, (*Montis Belligardum* in the *Latine*) united by the mariage of *Henrica*, daughter and heir of *Henry* the firſt Earl hereof, *Anno* 1396. to the houſe of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof, are, 1. *Clarewang*. 2. *Paſſewang*, 3. *Grans*, all antiently beautified with Caſtles, and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great ſtrength, proud of a Caſtle Royal on the top of a fair and lofty *Mountain*, whence it took that name; once the ſeat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the houſe of *Wirtenberg*; but, now both Town and Caſtle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, cauſed a good Garriſon of their own to be put into them, *Anno* 1633. under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenbergs*, to whom the inheritance belonged.

The antient Inhabitants of this tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Ranraci*; firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then ſubdued by the *Almains*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*: in the full of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German* Empire. Governed for the Emperours by *Provincial* Earls, in the *Dutch* language called *Landgraves*: at firſt *officiarie* only, and accomptable to the Emperours under whom they ſerved; in the end made *hereditarie*, and ſucceſſional unto their poſterities. The firſt *hereditarie* Landgrave ſaid to be *Theodorick* in the reign of *Otho* the third; after whoſe death the Empire being made *elective*, gave the *Provincial* Governours ſome opportunities to provide for themſelves. In his male-iſſue it continued till the reign of *Frederick* the 2d. who began his Empire *Anno* 1212. and dyed *Anno* 1250. during which interval this Eſtate was conveyed by daughters to *Albert*, the 2d. Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Ottingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, ſon of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperour of the *Germans*, marying with *Anne* the daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became poſſeſſed alſo of his part of the Countrie: which added to his own, made up the whole *Upper Elſats*; continued ſince that time in poſſeſſion of the houſe of *Auſtria*, deſcended from him. The third part comprehending all the *Lower Alſatia*, was not long after ſold by the Earl of *Ottingen*, to the Biſhop of *Strasburg*; whoſe Succeſſors hold it to this day, aſſuming to themſelves the title of the *Landgraves of Elſats*. But as for *Sungow*, or the County of *Pfirt*, that belonged antiently to the Princes of the houſe of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illuſtrious Familie, by the death of *Conradine*, the laſt Duke, *Anno* 1268. that great eſtate being ſcattered into many hands, it was made a diſtinct Earldom of it ſelf. And ſo it continued till the year 1324. when *Ulrick* the laſt Earl dying without iſſue male, left his eſtate betwixt two daughters: whereof the one named *Anne*, conveyed her part in mariage to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed the *Short*, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperour before mentioned; the other named *Urſula*, ſold her moiety to the ſaid *Albert*, for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Auſtria* (ſave only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alſatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundie*) governed in *Civil* matters and points of Judicature, by the Parliament, or Court of *Enſheim* in the *Upper Elſats*.

5. *LORREIN.*

The Dukedome of *LORREIN* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Elſats*, and that part of the Lower *Palatinate*, which paſſeth by the name of *Weſt-reich*; on the Weſt, with the River *Mueſe* or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Dukes hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North, with *Luxembourg*, and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South, with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elſats*, parted by the *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, wherewith incompaſſed on thoſe ſides. Aſſigned unto *Lotharius*, ſecond ſon of *Lotharius* the Emperor, (who was eldeſt Son of *Lewis* the *Godly*) with the ſtile of a *Kingdome*: from thence called *Lot-reich* by the *Dutch*, *Lot-regne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorrein*, and the *Latine*, *Lotharingia*, are to fetch their Pedegree.

The Country is in length about four daies journey, almoſt three in breadth: much over-grown with Forreſts, and ſwelled with Mountains, the ſpurs and branches of *Vogeſus*, and the once vaſt Wilderneſſe of *Ardenne*; yet ſo ſufficiently ſtored with all manner of neceſſaries, that it needeth no ſupply out of other places. Some lakes it hath, which yield great quantity of fiſh; one more eſpecially 14 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh whereof yields to the Dukes coffers 20000 *l.* yearly.

It

It affordeth alſo divers metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in ſome places Pearls: *Calcidonians* alſo of ſuch bigneſs, that whole drinking cups are made of them; and a matter, of which they make the pureſt glaſſes not to be paralleld in *Europe*. They have alſo a goodly breed of Horſes, equal to thoſe of *Barbary*, or the Courſer of *Naples*.

The people, by reaſon of their neighbourhood to, and commerce with *France*, ſtrive much to imitate the *French* in garb and faſhion; but one may eaſily ſee that it is not natural: and have much in them alſo of the *Dutch* humour of drinking; but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themſelves. Generally they are a politick and an hardy Nation; not otherwiſe able to have held their eſtate ſo long, againſt the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppreſſed with taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and uſeful unto one another. Their language for the moſt part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxembourg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not ſo refined and elegant, as is ſpoke in *France*; nor ſo corrupt and coarſe as that of *Montbelgard*, and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in reſpect of the *French* language ſpoken here among them, accompt this Country among the Provinces of *France*, and uſually deſcribe it ſo in their Charts and writings: but I have placed it with more reaſon (as I conceive) amongſt thoſe of *Germany*. Firſt, in regard that the Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire: but ſpecially becauſe that in the diviſion of the Kingdom of *Lorrein* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatſoever lay on the Eaſt ſide of the River *Meuſe*, (as this Dukedom of *Lorrein* for the moſt part doth) was reckoned in the ſhare or portion of the *German* Emperors.

The rivers of chief note, are 1. *Marta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and paſſing with a ſwift ſtream by the wals of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good ſpace within ſight of the *Moſelle*; into which at laſt it fals near *Conde*. 2 *Moſa*, the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, whoſe ſpring and courſe hath been already deſcribed in *Belgium*. 3 *Moſelle*, famous for the deſign which *Lucius Verus*, Governor for the Emperor *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariſeth in the mountain *Vauge*, not far from the head of the River *Soaſne*, and diſburtheneth it ſelf into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*; he intended to have cut a deep chanel from the head of this unto the other, ſo to have made a paſſage from the *Ocean* to the *Mediterranean*: the *Soaſne* emptying it ſelf into the *Rhoſne*, a chief River of *France*; as the *Moſelle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4 *Selle*, which mingleth waters with the *Moſelle* not far from *Mets*. 5 *Sora*, 6 *Martane*, 7 *Voloy*, others of leſs note; all of them plentiful of *Salmons*, *Perches*, *Tenches*, and the beſt ſorts of fiſh: as in their Lakes great ſtore of *Carps*, ſome of them three foot long, and of excellent taſt.

Principal Cities in it, are 1 *Mets*; by *Ptolomy* called *Divodurum*; *Metis*, and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices* who poſſeſſed this tract. Seated in a pleaſant plain at the confluence of the *Sore* and *Moſelle*: the Royal Sea, in former times, of the *French* Kings of *Auſtraſia*, hence called Kings of *Mets*; long before that a Biſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. 2 *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolemie*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, ſo called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it, and the tract about it: pleaſantly ſeated on the *Moſelle*, and antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. 3 *Verdun*, an antient Epiſcopal See alſo, the *Civitas Verodonenſium* of *Antoninus*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*: the Town and Territory adjoyning in preceding times belonging to the Great Princes of the houſe of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorrein*; but whether they had it in right of their Patrimonial Eſtate, as lying in the North part of this Countrey towards *Luxembourg* it well might, or that it came to them in the right of mariage with ſome daughter of the houſe of *Moſelle*, or other heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howſoever it came to them, it gave unto this houſe the title of Earls of *Verdun*, uſed in their Stile, till ſwallowed with the reſt in that of *Lorrein*. The Biſhop whereof, as alſo thoſe of *Mets* and *Toul* (being the only ones of this Countrey of *Lorrein*) acknowledge the Archbiſhops of *Triers* for their *Metropolitan*. All of them in the number (heretofore) of *Imperial Cities*, poſſeſſed of large and goodly territories, and of great revenue: but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2d, *Anno* 1552. during the wars between *Charls* the fift and the *Proteſtant* Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them againſt the Emperor. And though *Charles* tryed all wayes to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and deſperate ſiege againſt the City of *Mets*: yet was the Town ſo gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guiſe*, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, and go off with diſhonour. Since that, they have been alwayes under the ſubjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Mets* for the eaſe of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of ſuch Towns as immediately belonged to the Duke of *Lorrein*, the principal are *Nancey*: not great, but of a pleaſant and commodious ſite: well watered by the river *Meurte* or *Marta*; and fortified better than before, in the year 1587. on occaſion of a great Army of the *Germans* paſſing into *France* to aid the *Proteſtants*: moſt commonly the Dukes ſeat, and famous for the diſcomfiture which *Charls* Duke of *Burgundy* here ſuffered, with the loſs of his life. 2 S. *Nicolas*, a town ſo populous, well ſeated, and neatly built; that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedency unto *Nancie* it ſelf: ſo called from a Church here built to the honour of S. *Nicholas*, Biſhop of *Myra* in the leſſer *Aſia*, whoſe body they pretend to be buried here, or at leaſt ſome part or Relick of it to be here inſhrined, occaſioning a great reſort of Pilgrims and other People. 3 *Pont a Mouſon*, about 4. leagues from *Nancie*: So called from a bridge on the River *Mouſon*, upon which it ſtandeth; of eſpecial note for a ſmall Univerſity lately founded in it; and for giving the title of a Marqueſs to the eldeſt ſon of the Dukes of *Lorrein*, called commonly and contractedly Marqueſs *du Pont*, (*Marchio Montiſſimo Pontis*, by our Modern

Lorrein Modern Latiniſts. 4. *Vaucoleur*, the birth-place of *Joane* the Virgin, to whole miracles and valour, the *French* attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the *Engliſh*: but being at laſt taken priſoner, ſhe was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burned for a Witch. Of which crime I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwiſe conceive of her and her brave exploits, than of a luſty laſſe of *Lorrein*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*; and ſo preſented to *Charles* the ſeventh, *French* King, as if ſent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpoſe (as the moſt intelligent of the *French* writers ſay) *pour fair revenir la courage aux Francois*, to revive the drooping ſpirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raiſed again but by help of a miracle. Upon the ſight of her *Statua* on the bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of verſes in her commendation; too long to be inſerted here: but they ended thus.

She di'd a *Virgin*; 'Twas becauſe the earth
Bred not a man whoſe valour and whoſe birth
Might merit ſuch a *bleſſing*. But above
The Gods provided her an equal *Love*,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lillies*, and their Diadem.
You then about whoſe *Armies* ſhe doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her *match*.
And when in field your *ſtandards* you advance,
Cry loud, *Saint Denys* and *Saint Joan* for *France*.

Next theſe we have, 5. *Vandemont*, which gave the title of an Earl to a younger branch of the houſe of *Ardenne*, ſucceeding at the laſt in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, in perſon of Duke *Rhene* 2d. and ſince a Title of the younger ſon of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Neuaf-Chatteau*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amance*, ſeven leagues on the South of *Mets*, ſometimes the Chancery of *Lorrein*. 8. *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garde lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9. *La Mothe*, ſeated on a River which falls preſently into the *Moſelle*. 10. *Churmes*, ſeated on the *Moſelle*, the place of treaty between the Duke of *Lorrein*, and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the reſult whereof was the ſurrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by conſequence of all the Dukedom into the hands of the *French*, *Septemb.* 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extream North of all this Country, a well fortified Town, and of great conſequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedome of *Lorrein*, or wreſted from the Soveraignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of leſſe note there are, 1 Saint *Die*, 2. Saint *Hippolit*, 3. *Bouquenon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the firſt Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633. in the war againſt *Lorrein*. 5. Saint *Miel*, 6. *Oden Chaſteau*, 7. *Mirecour*, all taken the ſame year by the *French*, in the proſecution of that war, before the treaty, at *Churmes*. 8. *Romberville*, 9. *Eſpinul*, 10. *Gerbrevillier*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrices*, and the *Leuci* ſpoken of before; together with the *Vindonenſes*, all of them conquered by the *Romans*: under whom this Country and the *Diſtrict* of *Triers*, made up the whole Province of *Belgica Prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the reſt of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania Prima & Secunda*, (containing all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, and ſo much of the *Netherlands*, as lie on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called firſt, from the Eaſtern ſituation, by the name of *Ooſtenreic*, or *Auſtraſia*; the portion of *Theodorick*, the fourth ſon of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*; from the chief City of his Kingdom, called the King of *Mets*, whoſe ſucceſſors follow in this order.

The KINGS of *AUSTRASIA*, or *METS*.

514 1 *Theodorick*, the baſe ſon of *Clovis* the Great, vanquiſhed the *Turingians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Haſſia* and *Turingia*, as we call them now.

537 2 *Theodebert*, the ſon of *Theodorick*, repulſed the Danes infeſting the Coaſts of the Lower *Germany*; and added *Provence*, (taken from the *Gothes* of *Italy*) unto his Eſtates.

548 3 *Theobaldus*, the ſon of *Theodebert*, ſubdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.

555 4 *Clotaire*, King of *Soiſſons*, the youngeſt ſon of *Clovis* the Great, ſucceeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom; as afterwards his brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, *Anno* 560. uniting in his perſon the whole *French* Dominion.

565 5 *Sigebert* the ſon of *Clotaire*, vanquiſhed the *Hunnes*, then falling into his Eſtates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.

577 6 *Childebert*, the ſon of *Sigebert*, ſucceſſor to his Uncle *Guntrum* in the Realm of *Orleans*.

598 7 *Theodebert* the II. the ſon of *Childebert*, vanquiſhed and outed of his Kingdom by *Clotaire* the ſecond of *France*, from whoſe eldeſt ſon *Sigebert*, deſcended the illuſtrious family of the Earls of *Habſpurg*.

617 8 *Clotaire* II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Auſtraſia*, and his brother *Theodorick*, King of *Orleans*, the ſole King of the *French*.

9. *Dagobert*,

9 *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia*, whom he ſucceeded, at his death, in the Realm of *France*. *Lorrein.*

645 10 *Sigebert* II. the eldeſt ſon of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom, for his part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *Weſt-France*, or *France* it ſelf, which he left to *Clovis* the 2d. his younger brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and ſubdued the *Sclaves*.

656 11 *Childebert* II. ſon of *Grimoaldus*, Mayre of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Mets*; *Dagobert* the ſon of *Sigebert* being ſhorn a Monk, and ſent into *Scotland*.

12 *Clovis* the 2d. King of the *French*, having vanquiſhed and beheaded *Grimoald*, diſpoſſeſſed *Childebert* of the Kingdom, which he took himſelf.

662 13 *Childerick*, the 2d. ſon of *Covis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder brother, ſucceeding in the Kingdome of *France*, united all the *French* Dominions into one Eſtate. In which condition it remained (but with ſome inlargement of the bounds) till the partition made by and amongſt the Children of *Lewis* the *Godly*; the name of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great, over all *Pannonia*, and ſo much of *Germanie* as was under the command of the *French*. In which diviſion, *Lewis* the 2d. ſon, ſurnamed the *Antient*, being inveſted in the Kingdom of *Germanie*, or ſo much of *Eaſt-France*, or *Auſtraſia*, as lay on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Rhene*: *Lotharius* the eldeſt ſon had for his ſhare, the title of Emperour, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundie*, and ſo much of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, as lay on the *French* ſide of the River. Afterwards ſubdivided into three Eſtates; *Italie*, with the title of *Roman* Emperour, being given to *Lewis* the eldeſt ſon; to *Charls* the youngeſt, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundie*; and to *Lothaire* the ſecond ſon, *Auſtraſia* on this ſide of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-regne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was ſaid. But *Lothaire* dying without iſſue, the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, became divided betwixt *Charls* the *Bald*, Emp. and K. of *France*, and *Lewis* ſurnamed the *Antient*, K. of *Germany*; the one calling himſelf K. of *Lorrein* on that ſide, the other K. of *Lorrein* on this ſide of the *Maes*, the river *Maes* or *Muſa* parting their poſſeſſions. But this Partition held not long amongſt their ſucceſſors; For *Lewis* and *Caroloman* Kings of *France* (the ſons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) reſigning their part hereof to *Charls* the *Groſſe*, Emp. of the *Romans*, and K. of *Germany*, the ſaid *Charls*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis*, and *Conrade*, ſucceſſively Emperors of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*, (together with *Zwentobald* the Baſtard ſon of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themſelves. And ſo did alſo *Charls* the *Simple*, King of *France*, on the death of *Conrade*, till forced thereto by *Henry* the firſt (who ſucceeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) he gave way to the old partition ſpoken of before: the *Germans* after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much viciſſitude and interchangeableneſs of affairs) both Princes laid aſide the title of Kings, incorporating ſo much as they held hereof into the reſt of their Eſtates: *Otho* the third of *Germany*, and *Lewis* the fift of *France*, being the laſt that pleaſed themſelves with that broken title. In the mean time, this Countrey of *Lorrein* it ſelf, as it is now bounded, together with the Countrey of *Luickland*, a great part of *Brabant*, ſome parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as ſome ſay, the Country of *Gulick* alſo, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur, as before was ſaid) being taken out of it, were by *Otho* the ſecond made a Dukedom, *Anno* 981. and by him given with the title of Duke of *Lorrein*, to *Charls* of *France*, ſon of *Gerberge* his Aunt, by *Lewis* the 4th ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, ſon of *Charls* the *Simple*. *Charls* thus advanced by his Couſin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his brother; ſhewed himſelf ſo alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*; that the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fift (whoſe next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho* the ſon of this *Charls*, dying without iſſue, left his eſtate to *Geofrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, (his neat kinſman by the mothers ſide:) from whom the Dukes of *Lorrein* do derive themſelves. From *Hermingrade* one of the daughters of this *Charls*, maried to *Albert* (ſome call him *Charls*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their daughter, maried to *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainalt*, deſcended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, the Father of the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, wife of *Philip* the 2d. King of *France*; therby uniting the bloud of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9th her Nephew: of whom it is ſaid, that being a man of a tender conſcience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved that he was lineally deſcended by his Grandmother, from *Charls* of *Lorrein*, whom *Hugh Capet* had ſo unjuſtly diſpoſſeſſed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, I find not any great improvement made of the Eſtate by any of them, more than the acceſſion of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne*, in the perſon of *Godfrey*, or *Geofrey*, the third Duke hereof: and the adding of the Dutchy of *Barr*, in *France*, by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titulary King of *Naples*; but on the contrary, a great weakning and diſtraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luickland* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* being ſold unto the Biſhops of *Leige*, by *Godfrey*, ſurnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hieruſalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geofrey* Earl of *Lovain* in the time of *Baldwin*, brother of *Godfrey*; and *Gulick-land*, by *Euſtace* the brother of *Baldwin*; the Biſhops of *Triers* not being negligent all this while, of the opportunity. Beſides which, ſomewhat had been done by the Emperor *Otho* the 3d. to the diminution of this Eſtate, who ſeeing that *Otho* the ſecond Duke, ſon of *Charles* of *France*, intended to transfer this Dukedom to the houſe of *Ardenne*, diſmembred from it both the City of *Colen*, and and ſome other pieces on the *Rhene*. But here it is to be obſerved, that this great Eſtate was either taken out of ſuch part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein* which of right belonged unto the *French*, and had been

Lorrein. conquered by the ſword of *Otho* the 2d. or otherwiſe had been regained unto the Empire by his Father and Grandfather; and ſo might lawfully be diſpoſed of as to him ſeemed beſt: And 2ly. that it was not ſtrange, nor without good reaſon, that he ſhould beſtow it on a Prince of the houſe of *France*: For having no other ſon than *Otho* the ſecond (his next ſucceſſor in the Empire) nor any great hopes of Poſterity by him, who in fine died childleſſe; he might conſider *Charles* of *France*, ſon of the Lady *Gerberge* his fathers ſiſter, as moſt near in bloud, and conſequently as capable of his favours as any other whoſoever. Which ſaid, we have no more to do but to preſent the Reader with the Catalogue of

The DUKES of *LORREIN*.

A. Ch.	
981	1 *Charles* of *France*, took priſoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which ſtate he died. He maried *Bona*, daughter of *Ricuine*, and Siſter of *Godfrey* the elder, Earls of *Ardenne*.
1001	2 *Otho*, ſon of *Charls* and *Bona*.
1004	3 *Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Son of *Godfrey* the elder, and Couzin of *Otho* by his mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emperour *Henry* the 2d.
1019	4 *Gozelo* of *Bouillon*, the brother of *Godfrey*.
1044	5 *Godfrey*, II. ſon of *Gozelo*.
1070	6 *Godfrey* III.
1078	7 *Godfrey* IV. of *Bouillon*, ſon of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*, and of *Ida* his wife, the daughter of *Godfrey* the 2d. created King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1099.
1100	8 *Baldwin*, brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.
1119	9 *Thierrie*, ſon of *William* the brother of *Baldwin*.
1128	10 *Simon*, ſon of *Thierrie*.
1141	11 *Matthew*, ſon of *Simon*.
1176	12 *Simon* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1207	13 *Frederick*, brother of *Simon*.
1213	14 *Theobald*, ſon of *Frederick*.
1219	15 *Matthew* II. ſon of *Theobald*, no great friend of the Popes.
1259	16 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1303	17 *Theobald* II. ſon of *Frederick*.
1311	18 *Frederick* III. ſon of *Theobald*.
1329	19 *Rodolph*, ſon of *Frederick*.
1346	20 *John*, ſon of *Rodolph*.
1382	21 *Charls*, ſon of *John*.
1430	22 *Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Iſabel* his wife, the daughter of *Charls*.
1452	23 *John* II. ſon of *Rene* and *Iſabel*, ſucceeded on the death of his mother.
1470	24 *Nicolas*, ſon of *John*.
1473	25 *Rene* II. ſon of *Frederick* Earl of *Vandemont*, and of *Violant*, or *Yoland*, daugh- of *Iſabel* and *Rene* the firſt; the Vanquiſher of *Charls* of *Burgundie*, at the battel of *Nancy*.
1508	26 *Anthony*, ſon of *Rene* the 2d.
1544	27 *Francis*, ſon of *Anthony*.
1545	28 *Charles* II. ſon of *Francis*.
	29 *Henry*, ſon of *Charles*, maried *Katherine*, ſiſter to *Henry* the 4th. of *France*.
1624	30 *Francis*, brother of *Henry*.
1630	31 *Charles*, Nephew to *Francis*, by his brother the Earl of *Vandemont*; and ſon-in-law to him by the mariage of his daughter and heir: ſucceeded by a mixt title of deſcent and mariage. Being reſolved to hold it in his own right, he put away his wife, the daughter of *Francis*; and took another to his bed, which he better fanſied: puniſhed not long after by the loſſe of his whole eſtate; for immediatly he ingaged himſelf in the wars of *Germanie*, in behalf of *Ferdinand* the ſecond: but being beaten by the *Swedes* at the battel of *Pſaffenhofen*, in the County of *Hanaw*, he loſt a great part of his Country to the *Victors*, who purſued him home. And on the other ſide, *Lewis* the 13th. of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the *Monſieur* his brother, and the mariage of the *Monſieur* with the Lady *Margaret* the Dukes ſiſter; deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*: and falling into *Lorrein* with a puiſſant Army, at ſuch time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by conſequence all the reſt of his eſtates, *Septemb.* 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been reſtored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Mothe* (if that) togerther with a good cauſe, many hearts, and an invincible courage.

The Arms of *Lorrein* are *Or*, a Bend *Gules*, charged with 3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I find *Bara* an old *Herald*, to differ from *Paradine* the moſt exact *Genealogiſt* of the *French* Nation. For *Bara* chargeth the Bend, not with 3 *Allovettes* Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*: which are in Blazon, ſmall Birds, wanting beaks, feet and legs. Of this laſt opinion is the moſt worthy Antiquary *Camden Clarenceux*: who withall telleth us, that when *Godfrey* of *Bulloigne* was at the ſiege of *Hieruſalem*, ſhooting at S. *Davids* Tower there; he broached three feetleſſe birds, called *Allerions*, upon his arrow, and thereupon aſſumed this Arms.

The revennes of the Prince are 700000 Crowns; whereof 200000 ariſe from the cuſtoms of the ſalt made in his Country; and the other 500000, from his Coronet lands. He is an *abſolute Prince*, and giveth for his device, an armed hand comming as it were from Heaven, and graſping a naked ſword: to ſhew that he holdeth his eſtate by no other tenure, than God and his ſword; the only hope, at this time, of the preſent Duke. For though he be accompted a *Prince of the Empire*, and

and his Dukedom reckoned for a part of the fifth *Circle* thereof, which is called the *Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the *Diets*, nor hath himself bound by any of the *Orders and Decrees* which are made therein, as doe the rest of the great Princes of *Germanie*; his neighbourhood to the *French*, formerly securing his estate against any force which the Empire durst bring against him, for those neglects. *Suevia*

SVEVIA or *SCHWABEN*

The Dukedom of *SUEVIA* or *SCHWABEN*, according to the antient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North, with *Frankenland*, and the *Lower Palatinate*; on the South, with the *Switzerland*, and the *Alpes* of *Tirol*; on the East, with the River *Lech*, parting it from *Bavaria*; and on the West, with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow*, and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, and other lesser estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower bounds: having on the East, *Bavaria*; on the West, the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungow*, and the *Upper Elsats*; on the North, *Francovia*, or *Frankenland*; and on the South, a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Country for the most part mountainous and hilly, overspread with some spurs of the *Alpes*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Swartzenwald*: recompensed notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers, (and amongst them the *Neccar*, and the renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them; which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitfull, sufficiently stored with all necessary provisions. Nor are the woods and mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of fewel, and the pleasures of hunting, they do afford some *Mines* of iron, and other metals.

The people, in regard of their mountainous situation, more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *Germans*, and so accompted of by *Plutarch* in former times: industrious in several Trades and *Manufactures*, especially in the weaving of Linnen Cloath, which is made here in great abundance: and who by reason they have so much in them of the South, are *supra modum in* Venerem *proni*, as *Aubanus* tels me, at least more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans* are; the women also being said to be very forwards in this kind, as tractable and easie as the men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow*, lying next to the lake of *Constance*; the *Algow*, extending to *Bavaria*; *Brisgow*, upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and *North-Schwaben*, on the northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW*, are 1. *Lindaw*, situate like an Iland in the Lake of *Constance*; encompassed almost with the waters thereof, but joyned to it with a Causey of 290 paces long: one of the *Free*, or *Imperial* Cities; made so for money, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, *Anno* 1166. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Uberlingen*, on the same lake, both *Imperial* also. 4 *Scaffhausen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of the lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Archdukes of *Austria*, but antiently by the name of *Lacus Venetus*:) and near those dreadfull falls or *Cataracts* of that River, no lesse than 50 cubits downwards, with great noise and violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene*, are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town; where they imbark them again. Which as it yeeldeth great benefit unto the Town by tols, and impots, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other Vessels; whence it hath the name of *Scaff-haussen*, that is to say, the *house* of *Skiffes*, or the Town of *Ship-boats*. The Town conveniently seated amongst rich pastures, and sweet groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant hills, and those well planted with vines, near adjoyning to it: *Imperial* once, but now a *Canton* of the *Switzers*, as hath there been shewn. 5. *Arbon*, upon the lake it self (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Merspurg*, the ordinary seat and residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the lake, called from hence the *Lake* of *Constance*; but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-zee*, from the Castle of *Bodmin*; by *Plinie* and other Antients *Lacus Acronius*, and *Brigantinus*; made by the confluence of the *Rhene*, and some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town *Imperial*, an *Episcopal* See, and a flourishing *Emporie*. Famous for the Council here holden, *Anno* 1414. of great renown as well for the multitude and quality of the people which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled: The people of most note there assembled, were *Sigismund* the Emperour, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbats and Doctors, 10000 secular Princes and Noble men, 450 Common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The businesse there handled, was first the pacifying of a *Schism* in the Church, there being at that time 3 Popes (or rather *Anti-Popes*) *viz.* *Gregory* the 12th. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23d. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13th. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Council, and *Martin* the 5th. made sole Pope, by the unanimous consent of the *Council*; declaring both by matter of fact, and by a publike *Constitution* here made and ratified, that a *Council is above the Pope*. The other main businesse was the proceeding against *John Hus*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, (spoken of before) both which, notwithstanding the Emperours *safe conduct*, were here condemned of *Heresie*, degraded, and burnt. Now the manner of *degrading* a Priest is this. (I hope to be excused for this *digression*.) The party to be *degraded* is attired in his Priestly Vestments; holding in the one hand a *Chalice*, full of wine and water, and in the other a guilt plate (or *Paten*, as they call it) with a *Wafer*. Then kneeling down, the Bishops Deputy first taking from him all those things, commands him to say no more *Masses* for the quick and dead. 2. Scraping his fingers ends with a piece of glasse, he commandeth him from that time forwards not to hal-

Suevia.

hallow any thing: and 3. ſtripping him of his Prieſtly habit, he is clothed in a *lay* attire, and ſo delivered over to the *Secular* Magiſtrate. But to return again to the City of *Conſtance*, being proſcribed by *Charles* the fifth for refuſing the *Interim*, and not able to withſtand ſuch forces as were raiſed againſt them; they put themſelves under the *Protection* of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the *Frying-pan into the fire*, as the ſaying is: For *Ferdinand* being poſſeſſed of the Town, ſeiſed on the common Treaſury, and upon all *Records* and writings which belonged unto them; ſet out an Edict, that all the *Miniſters*, within eight days, ſhould depart the City, and that no Citizen from thenceforth ſhould wear any weapon. And ſo inſtead of a *Protector*, he became their *Maſter*.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria*, which is called the *ALGOW*, are 1. *Buchaw*, on the lake called *Feder-zee*, a Town *Imperial*. 2. *Ravenſpurg*, a *Free City*, ſeated amongſt mountains, whereof one hangeth over it; the River *Ach* running by it in a bed ſo narrow, that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the hills, it much endamageth all the Country by frequent *Landfloods*. 3. *Woongen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) *Imperial* alſo. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*: and 5. *Mimmegen*, the *Druſomagus* of *Ptolemy*, both *Imperial* Cities; the laſt about 3 miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*. 7. *Zenkirk*. 8. *Bibrach*; all three *Imperial*; the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Bragodurum* of the Antients. 9. *Ausburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, firſt made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him called *Auguſta Vindelicorum*. The principal City in thoſe times of the *Vindelici*, a potent people of this tract. A City of great wealth and ſtate, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very ſtrongly fortified; by nature on the Eaſt and North, where the ground lies low, and under water; and on the Weſt and South by Art. The buildings for three parts of it, are of clay and timber; but on the Weſt part ſeated on an hill, built of *Free-ſtone*, ſix or ſeven ſtories high; in which are many fair houſes of the principal Citizens, and many ſtately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggars*, a family of very great (almoſt Princely) Revenues; poſſeſſed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the ſuburbs, and adjoyning territories. Who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their wealth; ſtill keep themſelves (contrary to the cuſtom of *Germanie*, where traffick is counted a diſgrace to a *Noblemen*) to the trade of *Merchandiſe*. The publick Edifices of it very decent, eſpecially the *Cathedral* Church, a majeſtick building; the other Churches, ten in number, and the *Religious* houſes, correſpondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worſhipped, from whence (or from the fruitfullneſſe of the ſoil) the City gives a *ſheaf of corn* for the Armes thereof: Since their converſion unto Chriſtianity made a Biſhops See. Deſtroyed by *Attila* and his *Hunnes*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at laſt made *Imperial*, and the Miſtreſſe of as large a territory as moſt Cities of *Germanie*. Famous for the *confeſſion of Faith*, exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5th. by the *Proteſtant* Princes, hence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*, *Anno* 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing ſome points of *Proteſtantiſm*, but moſt of *Popery*; here tendred to both parties by the ſaid Emperour (but received by neither) to be ſubſcribed too, and obſerved, till the differences could be ſetled by a *General Council*; And 3. for the publick allowance here given by *Decree* of all the States of the Empire, to the *Proteſtant* party, to profeſſe openly their *Religion* without any impeachment, *Anno* 1555. a Limitation only laid on the *Eccleſiaſticks*, that if they changed their *Religion*, they ſhould loſe their preferments; which were to be beſtowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof called *BRISGOW*, lying on the Eaſt of the River *Rhene*, and the Weſt of *Wirtenberg*, and on the South cloſed in with the Canton of *Baſil*; Places of moſt importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Trieſſe*, and other ſtreams deſcending from the mountains of *Swartzen-wald*, under which it lyeth: founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Zeringen* (the Caſtle of *Zeringen* founded by *Berthold* the firſt, ſon of *Gebizo*, the youngeſt ſon of *Guntrum*, the 2d. Earl of *Habſpurg*, once the chief ſeat of thoſe Princes, being then near adjoyning to it) in the reign of *Henry* the fifth Emperour, *Anno* 1112. or thereabouts. Famous in thoſe days for ſilver mines, now for an Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *Anno* 1459. and being in preſent eſtimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*, 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintrich*, and both Towns *Imperial*: the firſt ſo named from *Offa* an *Engliſh Saxon*, the *Apoſtle* of theſe parts of *Germanie*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the title of a Marqueſſe to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zel*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth alſo 6. *Badenwiller*, to the Marqueſſe of *Baden*, this laſt accruing to them by the mariage of *Rudolphus* the ſixth of that name, Marqueſſe of *Hochberg*, with a ſiſter of *John*, Earl of *Friburg*, the then Eord thereof. 7. *Waldſhut* upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold, and mountainous Country, but well ſtored with woods. 8. *Briſach*, by *Antonine* called *Mons Briſiacus*, a garriſon in his time againſt the incroaching *Almans*; and ſituate at that time on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, the courſe of the River being ſince turned on the other ſide, where now it runneth. Built Caſtle-wiſe on the top of a round hill, in which there is alſo a ſtrong Tower or Fortreſſe, raiſed by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place; otherwiſe ſtrong enough by its own natural ſituation: and might be made impregnable, but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town fair, populous, and well built; once of moſt note in all the Country, from hence called *Briſac-gow*, or *Briſe-gow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the 4th. it grew by little and little to be leſſe frequented; the other being ſeated more conveniently for trade and buſineſſe. Here alſo not far off from the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, ſtood that of *Kiburg*, ſomewhat the antienter of the two; of ſuch authority and repute in thoſe elder times, that the Emperours do ſtill retain the title of Earls of *Kiburg*, in the Stile Imperial: deſcended on the houſe of *Habſpurg* by the mariage of

Eliza-

Elizabeth, daughter and heir of *Hartman* the laſt Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habſpurg*, Couſin German to the Emperor *Rodolph*, on the expiring of which line, *Anno* 1356. it fell, together with many fair Eſtates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed the *Short*. *Suevia.*

Finally, in the fourth and laſt part hereof called [*NORTH-SCHWABEN*, becauſe on the North ſide of the *Danow*, the places moſt obſervable are 1. *Gmund*, on the *Rhems*; 2. *Dinkel-Spuel*, on the *Warnitz*, two *Imperial* Towns: which with *Vberlinque* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, territory, or eſtimation) ſpoken of before; are the only three *Imperial* Ciries in all *Germany*, which totally adhered unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Boptingen*, on the *Egra*, an *Imperial* City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the ſame River, but in a low and mooriſh ground, yet of great reſort, populous, and well traded. Moſt memorable for the great defeat here given the *Swedes*, by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his firſt entrance on the Government: in which, *Bannier*, one of the principal commanders of that nation, was ſlain on the place; *Guſtavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Priſoner, their whole forces routed; and thereupon ſo ſtrange an alteration of the affairs of *Germany*, which they had almoſt wholly conquered (though not for themſelves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before reſtored to its proper owner, was again poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankenland* by the *Imperialiſts*, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their holds, on the *Baltick* ſeas, *Anno* 1637. 6. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an *Imperial* City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 7. *Donawerdt*, ſeated on the confluence of the *Donaw* and the *Werdt*, whence it had the name; moſt commonly called only *Werdt*, an *Imperial* Town: the habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a *Brewer* herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the forces of the Duke of *Bavaria*, in the late *German* wars. 8. *Villengen*, on the *Bregen*, a ſmall River falling into the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*. Not far from which ſtands 9. *Furſtenburg*, an antient Caſtle, the Earls hereof are *Princes* of the *Empire*, and Lords of a great part of the Country; deſcended lineally from *Eginon*, or *Eggon*, the youngeſt ſon of the Lady *Judith*, ſiſter and heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*, and conſequently a branch of the illuſtrious houſe of *Habſpurg*: exceedingly increaſed both in power and patrimony, by the marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charls* the fifth, under whom he ſerved in his wars againſt the Proteſtants) with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Chriſtopher* the laſt Earl of *Werdenberg*, poſſeſſed of many fair eſtates amongſt the *Zwitzers*, and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl called *Don-Eſchingen* is the head of *Danubius*. 10. *Ulme*, an *Imperial* City, ſituate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*; the principal City of *North-Schwaben*: about ſix miles in compaſs, rich, populous, well fortified; and ſtored with an Armory, for Ordinance and all manner Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town but new, taking its firſt riſe from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charls* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulme* from the *Elmes* about it. At firſt it belonged unto the *Monks*; of whom having bought their freedome in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became *Imperial*. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having ſo violent a ſtream that the Boats which go down the water uſe to be ſold at the place where they land; it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alpes*, and amongſt them, the old Caſtle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the ruine of the houſe of *Schawben*, became poſſeſſed of a great eſtate here, and in *Upper Elſats*; ſold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, the founder of the now *Auſtrian* Family.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixantes*, *Suanetes*, *Ruguſci*, and *Calucones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other tribes of the *Rhæti*, (of whom ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in the *Alpine* Provinces) poſſeſſed themſelves of that Country which lyeth betwixt the River *Inn*, and the head of the *Rhene*, eaſt and weſt; *Danubius*, and the *Alps* of *Italy*, north and ſouth. Within which compaſs are the greateſt part of the *Griſons*; the Dukedomes *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, on this ſide the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tirol*; and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius Nero*, ſons-in law of *Auguſtus*, it was made a province of the *Romans*: divided into a *Rhætia Prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhætia Secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which accompt all *Schwaben* on the South ſide of the *Danow*, was part of the Province of *Rhætia Prima*, continuing ſo till vanquiſhed, and ſubdued by the *Almans*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Weſtern parts. As for the *Almans* who ſucceeded in poſſeſſion hereof, they were originally ſome tribes and families of the *Suevi*, the moſt warlike nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River of *Albis*: who jealous of *Cæſars* great ſucceſſes, brought againſt him 430000 fighting men; of which 80000 were ſlain, and many drowned. They uſed to ſtay at home, and go to the war by turns: they which ſtaied at home, tilling the Land; to whom the reſt returning, brought the ſpoil of the Enemies. But after this blow, we hear little of them, till the time of *Caracalla*, the ſon of *Severus*; During whoſe reign, deſcending towards the banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other nations as they paſſed along; they aſſumed firſt the name of *Almans*; either from that promiſcuous mixture of all ſorts of men; or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the ſon of *Tuiſco*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germans*. And though well beaten by him at their firſt comming down, near the River *Mœnus*; and afterwards more broken by *Dioclesian*, who ſlew at leaſt 60000 of them at one time, in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infeſt the Provinces of the Empire, which lay neareſt to them: till in the end, following the tract of the *Hunns*, who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garriſons which were in their way; they made themſelves Maſters of *Rhætia Prima*, *Germania Prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing beſides the Countries ſpoken of before, *Alſatia*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate*,

Suevia. as lies on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French* their next neighbours (of whoſe growth and greatneſſe they began to be very ſenſible) they were firſt vanquiſhed by *Clovis* the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*, in that great and memorable fight at *Zulph*, near *Colen*: and afterwards made wholly ſubject to the Conqueror, by whom oppreſſed with an heavy and laſting ſervitude. About this ſame they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*; their eſtate being erected into a *Dukedome*, called many times the *Dukedome* of *Almain*: and when ſo called, divided into the *Upper Almain*, comprehending the Country of the *Griſons*, with ſome parts of *Switzerland*, and *Tirol*; and the *Lower* or the *Proper Almain*, which contained the reſt of the Eſtates of the antient *Almans*, called for the moſt part by the name of the Dukedome of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally tranſmitting that name to this Province only, the beſt part thereof. Theſe Dukes at firſt officiary only, removeable at the will of the Emperor, and accomptable to him: not ſeldome many at one time, eſpecially whileſt under the command of the *French*; ſome of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their ſucceſſion nor much care to be taken in ſearching after it; though otherwiſe men of great Authority and Command in their ſeverall times. The moſt remarkable amongſt them was *Rudolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, (deſcended from the Earls of *Habſpurg*) in the reign of *Henry* the fourth; againſt whom he was choſen Emperour, by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*: but overcome and wounded at the battel of *Erſter*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great repentance for rebelling againſt his Soveraign. After his death, ſome Provinces being diſmembred from it, and other leſſer eſtates firſt erected out of it: it was made *Hereditary* in the perſon of *Frederick*, Baron of *Hohenſtauffen*, ſurnamed the *Antient*, by the munificence and bounty of the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, whoſe daughter *Agnes* he had maried. His ſucceſſors follow in this order.

The DUKES of *SWABEN*.

1 *Frederick* the antient, the firſt *Hereditary* Duke of *Schwaben*.
2 *Frederick* with one eye, ſon of *Frederick* the Antient.
3 *Frederick* III. ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*, ſon of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor; he ſucceeded the Emperor *Henry* the fift, in the Dukedome of *Franconia*; and left the ſame unto his ſucceſſors.
1190 4 *Frederick* IV. ſecond ſon of *Barbaroſſa*; his elder brother *Henry* ſucceeding in the Empire, by the name of *Henry* the ſixt.
5 *Conrade*, brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6 *Philip*, brother of *Conrade*; after the death of *Henry* the 6th, elected Emperor.
1207 7 *Frederick* V. ſon of *Henry* the ſixt; elected Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the ſecond; King of *Naples* and *Sicil* alſo in the right of his mother.
1250 8 *Conrade* II. ſon of *Frederick* the fift, King of both *Sicils*, and Emperor of *Germany*, after the death of his Father; poiſoned, as was ſuppoſed, by his baſe brother *Manfred*, who ſucceeded in his Kingdome of *Sicil*.
1254 9 *Conradine*, the ſon of *Conrade*; purſuing his right unto the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil*, was overcome and taken priſoner by *Charls* of *Anjou*, ſucceſſor unto *Manfrede* in thoſe eſtates; and by his command beheaded at *Naples*, *Anno* 1268. After whoſe death (being the laſt of that powerfull and Imperial Family:) this vaſt eſtate was brought unto a ſecond diſmembring, and divided amongſt the Biſhops, Princes, and *Free Cities* hereof: of which laſt there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedome, than in all *Germany* beſides. So that beholding it in the firſt and ſecond dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Eſtates (beſides what belongeth to the Cities and Epiſcopal Sees) to have been raiſed out of the ruines of this great Dukedome: that is to ſay, the Dukedomes of *Zeringen* and *Wirtenberg*, with the Marquiſate of *Baden*, diſmembred from it, when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenſtauffen*; the Earldoms of *Pfirt*, *Hohenberg*, and *Friburg*, (beſides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habſpurg*) advanced out of the ſecond ruine. How *Pfirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the houſe of *Auſtria*, hath been ſhewn already; and what becomes of *Wirtenberg* and *Baden*, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of *Zeringen* poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and great part of *Switzerland*, ow their Original to *Berthold*, the ſon of *Gebizo*, a younger ſon of *Guntram* the 2d. Earl of *Habſpurgh*. Which being extinguiſhed after a ſucceſſion of ſeven Princes only, in the perſon of *Berthold* the fifth (who died the ſame day in which the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* was born) *Anno* 1218. the rights hereof deſcended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country. *Cuno* the firſt that bare the title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldeſt ſon of *Judith*, ſiſter and heir of *Berthold*, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*. *Eggon*, the laſt Earl of which houſe, being overlaid by his undutifull and rebellious Subjects, ſold his eſtate therein, for 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold*, Dukes of *Auſtria*, ſons of *Albert* the *Short*; whoſe ſucceſſors enjoy all *Briſgow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were *Argent*, 3 Leopards *Sable*, as is ſaid by *Bara*, But *Paradine* will have them to be three Leopards *Sable*, crowned *Gules*, in a Field *Or*.

7. *BAVARIA*.

BAVARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Auſtria*; on the Weſt, with the river *Leck*, or *Lycus*, which

which parts it from *Schwaben*; on the North, with *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*; and on the South, with the Earldome of *Tirol*, and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhætia Secunda*, and so much of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, as now maketh up the Bishoprick of *Saltsburg*: and by a distinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the antient habitation of the *Vindelici*; so named from the two Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus* (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus versified by a *German* Poet. *Bavaria.*

Respicit & late fluvios Vindimque, Lycumque,
Miscentes undas, & nomina Litoris; unde
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Urbemque *vocarunt*
Vindelicam.——

In *English* thus:
Vindis and *Lycus*, floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their streams and name;
To which the old *Vindelici* do own,
The name both of their Nation, and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Augusta Vindelycorum*, their *Metropolis* or Capital City. But after such time as the *Boii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got possession of this Country; the name of *Vindelicia*, and *Rhætia secunda*, grew into disuse: that of *Boiaria* succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the present name of the Country amongst the *Latines*; but by the *Dutch* called *Bayeren*, by the *French Bavier*.

The whole divided into three parts; the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alpes* of *Tirol*; the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the *District* of *Saltzburg*, situate betwixt the *Inn*, and the Dukedome of *Austria*: all three much over-spread with woods and forests, remainders of the *Hercinian forest* described before. But more particularly the *Higher* lying towards the *Alpes*, is cold and barren, affording no wines, and but little corn: the *Lower* being more fruitfull, and better planted, for some parts (especially about *Regensberg*, and *Landshut*) inferior unto none in *Germany*, for the richness and pleasantnesse of the situation. Of the *District* of *Saltzburg* we shall speak by it self; because by some not reckoned as a part hereof. In all, great quantity of *fewel* for the fire, and of *Timber* for building; no less of *Swine* fatted in the woods, and sent away by numerous herds into other Countries.

The *Christian* Faith first preached here amongst the *Boiarians*, by *Rupertus* Bishop of *Wormes*; driven from his See by *Childebert*, King of the *French*, *Anno* 540. or thereabouts; and here made the first Bishop of *Saltzburg*: corrupted at this time with the *Leaven* of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (setting aside the *Imperial Cities*) is more intirely devoted, than any other in all *Germany*.

Principal Cities in the *Higher*, are 1. *Munchen*, (in *atine Monachium*) the Dukes seat; seated on the *Iser*, or *Isarus*, in a very sweet and delightfull soil, among Ponds and Groves; daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and inriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleld in all this Continent. First founded by *Henry* Duke hereof in the time of *Otho* the first, *Anno* 972. now grown a large and populous City; the publick buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-house or *Guild-hall*, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure; that they serve not only for use and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none more eminent than the *Library* in the Ducal Palace, wherein is conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the most part of them *Manuscripts*. A town made choise of by *Maximilian* the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the spoils, got by him in the wars of *Germany*: here being found (at such time as the town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 brasse Peeces (besides other great Guns) hid under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landsberg*, upon the *Leck* or *Lycus*, near the *Alpes* of *Tirol*; once of great strength, because a Frontire towards *Schwaben*: but proving a dangerous neighbour to the *Swedish* Garrison planted in these parts, during that war against the Duke of *Bavaria*; was by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of note or beauty; heretofore the *Inutrium* of *Ptolemy*, seated near the *Alpes*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* the second, for a Bulwark against those of *Ausburg*. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of *Schyre*, built by *Arnulph*, 2d. son of *Arnolph* the first Duke of *Bavaria*; the Seat and honorary title of his posterity (*Dynastæ Schyrenses*, in the *Latine*) till *Otho* of *Wiltersback*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbarossa*, and his own good fortune, did atturn that Dukedome.

In the *LOWER Bavaria*, there first offers it self to consideration, the town of 1. *Rain*, seated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*: memorable for the skirmish near to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians*, at the first passing of the *Swedish* forces over that River; in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, so famous for his long and fortunate conduct, received his deaths wound, of which he died at *Ingolstad* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg* upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the first town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes*, after the said defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolstad*, said to be built by a Tribe, or Nation of the *Sueves*, called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angeloſtadium*, or *Angleſtade*: first made a City by *Ludovick* of *Bavaria*, Duke and Emperor; and in the year 1410. made an University, much privileged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fift, and Pope *Pius* the second. A Town so strong-

Bavaria. ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it ſeems impregnable: and indeed proved ſo to *Guſtavus* the late King of *Sweden*; who here found the firſt check to his proſperous fortunes, being forced to raiſe his ſiege without endangering it, and find work elſewhere. 4. *Regensberg* (in *Latine Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* alſo, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Auguſta Tiberii*, ſo called of a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius Cæſar*, about the time of our Saviours paſſion; afterwards called *Rhætopolis*, or the City of the *Rhetians*, the chief of *Rhætia ſecunda*. At this time a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houſes: antiently an Epiſcopall See; and of late made the ordinarie place for the *general Diets* of the Empire. In former times the ſeat of the Kings and firſt Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made *Imperial*; and now mixt, or both. For being ſtill *Imperial*, at the leaſt in name, it was ſeiſed on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*; when the *Swedes* firſt got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a very ſtrong Garriſon, after the loſſe of *Munchen* his chief place of reſidence, till at laſt won from him by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633. 5. *Paſſaw*, by the modern *Latiniſts*, *Patavia*; but by ſome thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolemie*, then a Roman Gariſon. Seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn*, and the *Ills*; by which divided into three Towns, *Paſſaw*, *Innſtade*, and *Ilſtade*: the whole *Compoſitum* being a rich, fair, and well-traded City. A See Epiſcopal, and ſubject immediatly to the Biſhop, as chief Lord hereof; who hath his dwelling in the Caſtle of *Oberhuſen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Ilſtade*: A place remarkable for many meetings and conſultations of the *German* Princes: eſpecially for that of the year 1552, in which all former quarrels being laid aſide, the *Proteſtants* were firſt permitted the *free Exerciſe* of their Religion, by the conſent and edict of *Charls* the fift, who had moſt laboured to ſuppreſſe it. More in the Land is 6. *Friſing*, on the ſwelling of a fine round hill, near the River *Ambra*, which runs beneath it; called antiently *Fraxinum*: conceived to be built by ſome of the Preſidents, or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperors; honored with an Epiſcopall See about the year 710. One of the Biſhops whereof, commonly called *Otho Friſingenſis*, was the beſt Hiſtorian of his time. 7. *Landſhut*, upon the River of *Iſar*, in the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Countrie of all *Bavaria*; a beautifull and well-built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208. adorned with a Church of moſt curious building for the ſervice of God, and a magnificent Palace for the uſe of the Duke. 8. *Freiſtet*, the only *Imperial* Town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedome. The whole number of Cities and great towns in both *Bavaria's*, is ſuppoſed to be 80; that is to ſay, 34 Cities, 46 great Towns: of which theſe the principal.

The *Biſhoprick* or *Diſtrict* of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former diviſion of it) extendeth from the *Inn*, or *Oenus*, towards the confines of *Auſtria*. The ſoil hereof rocky, drye, and barren, excepting ſome few valleys only, as ſeated in the midſt of the *Julian Alps*; the habitation heretofore of the *Norici Mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, ſeated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name: raiſed out of the ruines of *Iuvania*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the ſtation of a cohort of *Roman* Souldiers belonging to the firſt *Legion*. An *Alpine* City, ſtrongly ſituate among the Mountains; but no leſſe beautifull than many of the lower grounds. The *Royall* ſeat of ſome of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Arch-biſhops hereof; the moſt powerfull Prelates for Revenue or Juriſdiction of any in *Germany*: the See firſt fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Rutbertus*, the firſt Apoſtle of theſe parts, ſpoken of before; whoſe image or impreſſe is ſtamped to this day on the coins of this Biſhoprick. At the time when *Luther* firſt endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthæus Langius* was Biſhop here; who did ingenuouſly confeſſe, that the Maſſe did not want its faults, that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Prieſts and Friers fit to be reformed: *Sed quod miſellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non eſſe tolerabile*; but that ſuch a ſorry fellow as *Luther* ſhould attempt the work, that by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the ſame River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rotenbourg*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunſhaim*, upon the *Traun*, riſing out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildeſmet*, one of the fartheſt Northwards; and 6. *Biſhops-ſtoffe*, one of the moſt Southern, in all this tract.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforeſaid: A people ſo reſolvedly bent to maintain their freedome, againſt the incroachment of the *Romans*; that when *Druſus* the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*, and Father of *Germanicus Cæſar*, made war upon them, the very women thereof took the alarm; *& deficientibus telis, infantes in ora militum adverſa miſerunt*; and when their darts were ſpent, threw their young Infants (ſaith the Hiſtorian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, ſucceeded the *Boiarians*, ſome of the many tribes of the *Boii*, the moſt diffuſed and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul*, and *Germany*. Originally of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedome of *Bourbon*, from whence ſome of them paſſed with the *Senones* and others of the *Gauls*, to the further ſide of the *Alps*, (in reſpect of them;) where they took up the Country between the *Apennine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many bickerings, at laſt with ſharp and bitter wars againſt the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country; ſome of them paſſed into *Germany*, and mingled themſelves with the *Tauriſci*, then dwelling in thoſe parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing further, thruſt themſelves into the *Norici*, (of whom more anon) and ſome retired themſelves into the ſhelters and faſt places of the *Hercinian* Foreſt. Driven from this laſt by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermanduri* and *Noriſci* (now the *Upper Palatinate*) who mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and by that name firſt known in the time of *Clovis*, the 5th King of the *French*: by whoſe perſwaſion, in the 17 year of *Anaſtaſius* Emp. of the Eaſt, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Vindelicia*, or the ſecond *Rhætia*, with ſome part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was ſignified. Governed

firſt

first by Kings (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius* (and he the laſt of that race) ſlain, fighting on the ſide of the *Almans* againſt the *French*, at the great battel of *Zulp*, near *Colen*: after which made ſubject to the Conquerors, as their neighbors and confederates the *Almans* were; but ſuffered to live under the command and government of their own Princes, by the name of *Dukes*. Of theſe, from *Theodo*, the ſon of *Aldigerius*, to *Taſſilo* the laſt Duke, outed of his eſtate and honours by *Charls* the Great, for conſpiring with the *Lombards* againſt him; are reckoned fifteen Duke in all: whoſe names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we ſhall ſubjoin in the enſuing Catalogue of the

DUKES of the *BOIARIANS*.

493 1 *Theodo*, ſon of *Adalgerius* the laſt King; from whoſe younger brother *Utilo*, deſcended *Pepin* the Father of *Charls* the Great.
511 2 *Theodo* II. ſurnamed the Great.
537 3 *Theodebert*.
4 *Theodo* III. the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Boiarians*.
565 5 *Taſſilo*, ſon of *Theodebert*.
598 6 *Garibaldus*.
612 7 *Theodo* IV.
630 8 *Taſſilo* II.
650 9 *Theodo* V.
10 *Theodebert* II.
11 *Theodo* VI. ſon of *Grimoldus*, the brother of *Theodebert* the ſecond.
708 12 *Grimold*.
13 *Hugobert*, brother of *Grimold*.
735 14 *Utilo*.
765 15 *Taſſilo* III. the laſt Duke of the *Boiarians*. Of whom more anon.

Amongſt theſe, few of any note, but 1. *Theodo* the firſt, ſon of *Adalgerius*, who abandoning the name of King, becauſe leſſe pleaſing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, aſſumed that of Duke: and paſſing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhætia ſecunda*, with part of *Noricum*, from the *Romans*, *Anno* 508. or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the ſecond, named the *Great*, for his great and many victories againſt the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum*, and *Vindelicia*; and whatſoever they held on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Alpes*. 3. *Theodo* the 3d of that name, and the 4th in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Chriſtian Faith, by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, *An.* 580. 4. *Taſſilo* the 3d of that name, and the laſt of their Dukes of the race of *Adalgerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* bloud: who being depoſed by *Charls* the Great, the whole countrey became immediatly ſubject to the *French*, governed at firſt by their *Lieutenants*. Diſmembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the *Godly*, it was made a Kingdom (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom conferred on *Lotharius* his eldeſt ſon, who was afterwards Emperor of the *Romans*: after his death poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a diſtinct Kingdom both in name and title, till the deceaſe of *Lewis* the ſon of *Arnulph* the laſt of the direct line of *Charls* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a ſubject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*; one *Arnulph* of the iſſue of the ſaid *Charls*, with the generall liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himſelf the title of King; but being oppoſed therein by *Conrade* the brother of *Lewis*, Emp. and King of *Germany*, as alſo by *Henry* the firſt who ſucceeded; he changed the title of King into that of Duke, the Founder of the preſent houſe of

The DUKES of *BAVARIA*.

1 *Arnulph*, of the houſe of *Charls* the *Great*, firſt Duke of *Bavaria*.
2 *Eberhard*, ſon of *Arnulph*, depoſed by *Otho* the firſt.
3 *Berchthold*, the brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the eſtate by the ſaid Emperor *Otho*. After whoſe death, it was conferred on *Henry*, the brother of *Otho* the 1. who had maried *Judith*, daughter of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke, and ſiſter to *Eberhard*.
4 *Henry*, brother of *Otho* the firſt, ſurnamed *Rixoſus*, or the *Quarrellſom*.
5 *Henry* II. ſon of the former *Henry*, ſurnamed *Hezelo*.
6 *Henry* III. ſurnamed the *Saint*, ſon of *Henry* the 2d, the firſt Emperor who came in by *election*, according to the *Order* made by Pope *Gregory* the 5th. After whoſe coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 ſucceſſions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleaſure of the preſent Emperor, in manner following.
7 *Henry* IV. ſurnamed *Hezzel*, brother to *Cunegund* the renowned wife of *Henry* the *Saint*; by whom preferred to this Dukedom, and by him depoſed.
8 *Henry Guelph*, ſon of *Robert* Earl of *Altorfe* in *Schwaben*, (of the ſtrange Original of which Family we ſhall ſpeak in *Brunſwick*,) made Duke by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2d.
9 *Guelpho*, ſon of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the 5th.
10 *Erneſt*, created Duke hereof by the ſame *Conrade* the 2d, by whom depoſed again for conſpiring againſt him.
11 *Henry* VI.

Bavaria.

12 *Cuno*, accuſed of conſpiracy, and diſplaced by *Henry* the 3d. to make room for
13 *Henry* VII. ſon of the ſaid Emperor *Henry* the 3d. whom he ſucceeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4th.
14 *Agnes*, the mother of the ſaid *Henry* the 4th. by the gift of her ſon.
15 *Otho*, by the gift of the Empreſs *Agnes*, depoſed not long after by *Henry* the 4th.
16 *Welpho* III. ſon of *Coniza* the daughter of *Guelph* the 2d. by *Azon*, an *Italian* Marqueſs; made Duke hereof by the ſaid Emperor *Henry* the 4th.
17 *Welpho* IV. ſon to *Welpho* the 3d.
18 *Henry* VIII. ſurnamed the *Proud*, brother of *Guelpho* the 4th. by the marriage of *Gertrude* daughter of *Lotharius* the 2d. Duke of *Saxony* alſo. Deprived of both by the Emperor *Conrade* the third.
19 *Leopold*, ſon to *Leopold* the 4th. Marqueſs of *Auſtria*, made Duke by the ſaid *Conrade* the 3d.
20 *Henry* IX. brother of *Leopold*, after Marqueſs, and at laſt Duke of *Auſtria*.
21 *Henry* X. ſurnamed the *Lion*, ſon of *Henry* the *Proud*, reſtored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* (the Duke of *Auſtria* being otherwiſe ſatisfied:) by whom not long after proſcribed and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this eſtate became fixed and ſetled, in the perſon and poſterity of

1180 22 *Otho* of *Wittlesbach*, ſo called from the place of his birth or dwelling; deſcended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper *Bavaria*, and 2d ſon of *Arnulph*, the firſt Duke hereof; advanced unto this honour by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſenſible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this eſtate being reduced by this time, to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.

1183 23 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis*, ſon of *Otho*.

1231 24 *Otho* II. ſon of *Lewis*, who by marying *Gertrude* the ſole daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral dignity into the houſe of *Bavaria*.

1290 25 *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the ſon of *Otho* the 2d.

1294 26 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* II. brother of *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.

1312 27 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* III. ſecond ſon of *Lewis* the 2d. ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph*, the eldeſt ſon, ſucceeding in both *Palatinats*, and the Electoral dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperor, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavarus*.

1347 28 *Stephen*, the eldeſt ſon of *Ludovick* the Emperor; *William* and *Albert* his two brethren ſucceſſively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their mother.

1375 29 *Stephen* II. ſon of *Stephen* the 1ſt. his brothers *Frederick* and *John* ſharing with him parts of the eſtate.

1413 30 *Ludovick* II. ſurnamed *Barbatus*, depoſed and impriſoned by his own ſon *Ludovick*, who yet died before him without iſſue.

1447 31 *Henry* II. ſon of *Frederick*, the ſecond brother of *Stephen* the 2d. ſucceeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.

1450 32 *Ludovick* V. ſurnamed the *Rich*, the ſon of *Henry* the 2d. baniſhed the Jews out of his eſtates, and ſeiſed their goods.

1479 33 *George*, ſurnamed the *Rich* alſo, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ingolſtade*: whoſe ſole daughter and heir was maried to *Rupertus* Prince *Elector Palatine*; with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperor not liking ſo much greatneſs in the *German* Princes, confirmed the ſame on

1503 34 *Albert* III. ſon of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John* of *Munchen*, by his ſon *Erneſtus*: which *John* was youngeſt brother to *Stephen* the 2d. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperor, ſucceeded unto *George* the *Rich*: The cauſe of a long and unhappy war betwixt the *Electors* of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worſt whereof, beſides the loſſe of this Eſtate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proſcribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel; but upon their ſubmiſſion, reſtored again.

2508 35 *William* the ſon of *Albert* the 3d.

1577 36 *Albert* IV. a great Champion of the *Doctrines* and *Traditions* of the Church of *Rome*; and ſo extreamly affected unto the *Jeſuits*, that he built Colleges for them at *Landsberg*, *Ingolſtade*, and *Munchen*, his three principal towns.

1579 37 *William* II. ſon of *Albert* the 4th. as zealous as his Father, in the cauſe of the Church of *Rome*; in which exceeded very much by

38 *Maximilian*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the 2d. who chiefly out of the ſame zeal ſided with *Ferdinand* the 2d, in the wars of *Germany*, *An.* 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the ſaid Emperor, againſt *Frederick* Count and Elector *Palatine*, choſen King of *Bohemia*. In which having done great ſervice to the *Imperial* and *Romiſh* intereſte, he was by the ſaid *Ferdinand* inveſted in the *Upper Palatinate*, called antiently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the *Electoral* dignity: This laſt conferred at firſt upon him but for term of life, in the Diet at *Regensberg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxonie*, and *Brandenbourg*, then proteſting againſt it; but afterwards in the Diet at *Prague*, *Anno* 1628. conferred upon him and his heirs for ever: to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reaſon of their *ſimultaneous inveſtiture* with the firſt of their houſe, are not to be deprived of their eſtates and dignities for the

the offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being to extend beyond the person of the offender. But notwithstanding their pretensions, and allegations, the Duke is still possessed of the title and dignity; confirmed therein by the conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*: a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes. *Austria.*

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 peeces in *Bend*, *Argent*, and *Azure*.

The ARCHDUKEDOM of *AUSTRIA*.

The *Archdukedom* of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces, and Members of it, is bounded on the East, with *Hungarie*, and a part of *Sclavonia*; on the West, with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the *Switzers*, and the *Grisons*; on the North, with *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; and on the South, with *Histria*, and some part of *Friuly*, in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the several Provinces of *Austria*, properly so called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tirol*: the quality of the whole will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole, were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of *Sevates*, *Alauni*, *Ambisontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidrauni*: subdued by *Drusus*, son-in-law to *Augustus Cæsar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts of *Tirol*, with the Bishoprick or District of *Saltzburg*; of which *Solyun* was the *Metropolis*, or Capital City: and *Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Inn*; extended all along on the banks of the *Danow*. Known by no other names while possessed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avares*, and other Nations, it gained those several names, and appellations, specified before.

1 *AUSTRIA*, properly so called, hath on the East, the Kingdom of *Hungarie*, from which parted by the River *Rab*; on the West, *Bavaria*; on the North, the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and on the other side, the *Teya*, which separates it from *Moravia*; on the South, *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. Called by the *Dutch*, *Oostenreich*, and contractedly *Oostrich*, that is to say, the Eastern kingdom (a part assuming to it self the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *East-France*, or the Eastern Kingdom of the *French*: in the barbarous Latine of those times, called by the name of *Austrasia*, whence the modern *Austria*.

The air is generally very healthy, and the earth as fruitful; yielding a plentiful increase, without help of *compost*, or other soiling; and of so easie a tillage to the husbandman, that on the North side of the *Danow*, it is ploughed and managed by one horse only. Exceeding plentifull of grain, and abundant in wine, with which last it supplyeth the defects of *Bavaria*: great store of *Saffron*, some provision of Salt; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Haimbourg*, some *Ginger* also. Nor wants it Mines of *Silver* in a large proportion. Divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North side of the River, towards *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; this on the South side, towards *Stiermark*.

Places of most importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA*, are 1. *Gmund*, seated on a Lake called *Gemunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the efflux of the river *Draun*, which ariseth out of it. 2. *Lints*, seated on the confluence of the said *Draun*, with the famous *Danow*; the *Aredate* of *Ptolemy*: A Town before the late wars almost wholly *Protestant*; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other side. 3 *Walkenstein* on the *Ens* or *Anisus*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4. *Ens*, on the fall of that river into the *Danow*; raised out of the ruines of *Laureacum*, sometimes the *Metropolis* of *Noricum Ripense*, the Station at that time of the second Legion: afterwards an Archbishops See, made such in the first planting of *Christianity* amongst this people, by S. *Severine*, *Anno* 464. On the reviver whereof, (suppressed by the *Hunnes*, *Boiarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of S. *Rupertus*, the Metropolitan dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5. *Waidhoven*, near the head of the river *Ips*. 6. *Ips*, seated at the influx of that river, and from thence denominated; the *Gesodunum* of *Ptolemy* and other antients. 7 *Newfull*, on a great Lake so named. 8. *Wels*, on the main stream of the *Danubius*. 9 *Haimburg*, on the confluence thereof, and the river *Markh*: Near to which at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg* (from the town adjoining) but antiently named *Mons Cognamus*, is some store of *Ginger*: a wonderful great raritie for these colder Countries. 10 *Newstat*, first called so from the newness of it, being built of late. 11. *Vienna*, by the Dutch *Wien*, the principal of all these parts, by *Ptolemy* call *Juliobona*; *Vindebona*, by *Antonine*; the station in their times of the tenth *Roman Legion*; of whose being setled here, there are many Monuments, both within the City, and without. Seated it is on the banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick edifices: each private house having such store of cellarage for all occasions, that as much of the City seems to be under the ground, as is above it. The *streets* for the most part spacious, and all paved with stone, which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of winter: fenced with a mighty wall, deep and precipicious ditches on all parts of it; and many Bulwarks, Towers, and Ramparts, in all needfull places: the wals hereof first raised with some part of the money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, for the ransom of King *Richard* the first of *England*, taken prisoner by him as he passed homewards through this Countrey, from the *Holy Land*. Esteemed at this day the strongest hold of *Christendom* against the *Turks*, and proved experimentally so to be, in that most notable and famous repulse here given them, *An.* 1526. At what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, besieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the second,

Austria second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes, gallantly resisted, and compelled to retire, with the losse of 80000 souldiers. Nor doth the strength hereof so diminish the beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodliest Towns in all the Empire, the residence for these last ages of the Emperours; made an University by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, revived and much advanced by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, *anno* 1356. Adorned with an Episcopal See, many magnificent Temples, and stately Monasteries: but above all with a most sumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperours use to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Austria*. In the middle ages, as appears by *Otho Frisingensis*, it was called *Fabiana*; but being ruined by the *Hunnes*, and again re-edified, was first called *Biana* (the first syllable omitted by mistake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch Wien*, and the *Latine Vienna*.

We should now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Country having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great *antiquity*; nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Austrian* Princes, since it came into their possession: the only one of note being *Crems*, or *Cremia*, on the left-hand shoar of *Danubius*, going down the water. 2. *Rets*, on the River *Teya*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Freistat*, at the foot of the mountains on the Skirrs of *Bohemia*. The old Inhabitants of this tract are supposed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lyeth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in those parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the *Second Rhatia*, and so much of *Noricum* as lyeth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, leaving the rest to the *Avares*. who possessed that and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire.

But these *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the *Great*, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*; both Provinces became members of the *French* Empire, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some *Guardians*, or *Lords Marchers*, were appointed by the Kings and Emperours of *Germany*, with the title of *Marquesses* of *Ostreich*. At first *Officiarie* only, but at last *hereditarie*. Made so by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, surnamed the *Illustrious*, the son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the house of *Schwaben*; and therewithall the title of *Marquesse*, *Anno* 980. This *Marquisate* was by *Frederick Barbarossa* raised to a *Dukedom*, 1158. *Henry* being the first Duke, whose brother *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England*, prisoner, in his return from *Palestine*: for whose ransome he had so much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neobourg*, and *Liutz*; and walled *Vienna*. His son *Fredericus*, surnamed the *Warlike*, was made King of *Austria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, *anno* 1225. Eleven years he continued in this dignity; at the end of which he was spoiled of his royal ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperours summons, unto whom for some outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246. discomfited and slain in battel by the King of *Hungarie*. Leaving no issue of his body, this estate of right should have descended on *Frederick*, son of *Hermannus*, Marqueste of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his wife, the Neece of this *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by his brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, *anno* 1268. But *Ottacar*, son of *Primislaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his wife, one of the Sisters of the said *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by a strong hand possessed himself of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which he increased by the addition of *Carinthia*, and *Trevigiana*; all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, till the year 1278. in which he was vanquish'd & slain by *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus possessed of these great estates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldest son, who had then maried *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol*, by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his wife, the daughter of *Gertrude*, and sister and sole heir at last of *Frederick*, so cruelly murdered at *Naples*, as before was said. By means of which marriage and investiture, *Albert* was quietly possessed of the Dukedoms of *Austria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Marca Trevigiana*, to which the Earldom of *Tirol*, and many other fair estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsatia* were after added. By whom it was first raised to the title of *Arch-duke*, is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, at the investitue of his son *Albert* into these Estates, *anno* 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that honour *Rodolph* the *Ingenious*, *anno* 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert* Duke hereof, in the year 1430. and others post it lower to the mariage of *Philip*, son of *Maximilian* of *Austria*, and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princesse of *Spain*. But by whomsoever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary title of all this Family: the successive Princes whereof from the first investiture, follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSES, DUKES, KINGS, and ARCH-DUKES of *AUSTRIA*.

926 1 *Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the first Marquesse.
988 2 *Henry*, son of *Leopold*.
1014 3 *Albert*, son of *Henry*, surnamed the *Victorious*.
1056 4 *Ernestus*, son of *Albert*.
1075 5 *Leopold* II. son of *Ernest*, a companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
1096 6 *Leopold* III. son of the second, founder of the Abby of *Nenbourg*.

1136 7 *Leo-*

1136 7 *Leopold* IV. ſon of the third, by his half brother *Conrade* the third, then Emperour of the *Germans*, made Duke of *Bavaria*. *Stiria.*

1141 8 *Henry* II. brother of *Leopold*, Marqueſſe of *Auſtria*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; made the firſt Duke of *Auſtria* by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1158. the whole Country betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, being added by the ſaid Emperour unto his eſtate, on his relinquiſhing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.

1177 9 *Ludovick*, ſon of *Henry*, built *Ens* and *Newſtat*; of great note in the wars of the *Holy Land*.

1193 10 *Leopold* V. ſon of *Ludovick*, the irreconcilable enemy of our *Richard* the firſt, taken priſoner by him in his paſſage homewards, and put unto a grievous ranſome, the Dukedom of *Stiermark* being purchaſed with a part thereof.

1230 11 *Frederick* the *Warlike*, ſon of *Leopold* the fifth, made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond; the laſt of the male iſſue of the houſe of *Bamberg*.

1246 12 *Ottocar*, ſon of *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter of *Frederick*, poſſeſſed himſelf of this Eſtate: adding thereto the Countries of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick*, the laſt Prince thereof; but diſpoſſeſſed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*.

1283 13 *Albert* II. ſon of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, by his father made Duke of *Auſtria*, maried *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Neeces, and (on the death of that *Frederick*, who was ſlain at *Naples*) the next heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Auſtria*; after his fathers death choſen Emperour alſo.

1308 14 *Rodolph* the *Ingenuous*, his other brother ſharing with him in the eſtate.

1315 15 *Albert*, ſurnamed the *Short*, the youngeſt and ſurviving brother of *Rodolph*, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; a great advancer of his houſe.

1358 16 *Albert* IV. ſon of *Albert* the *Short*.

1395 17 *Albert* V. ſon of *Albert* the fourth.

1404 18 *Albert* VI. ſon of *Albert* the fifth, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter and heir of *Sigiſmund* the King thereof.

1439 19 *Ladiſlaus*, ſon of *Albert* and *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*.

1457 20 *Frederick* II. on the death of *Ladiſlaus* without iſſue, ſucceeded into the Dukedom of *Auſtria*, as the direct heir of *Leopold* the 9th. one of the younger ſons of *Albert* the *Short*; choſen alſo Emperour.

1493 21 *Maximilian*, ſon of *Frederick*, enriched his houſe with the mariage of the heir of *Burgundy*.

1519 22 *Ferdinand*, Grandchild to *Maximilian* by his ſon *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; ſucceeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom: King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperour of *Germany*.

1565 23 *Maximilian* II. ſon of *Ferdinand*.

1577 24 *Rodolphus* III. ſon of *Maximilian* the ſecond.

1612 25 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*.

1619 26 *Ferdinand* II. ſurnamed *Gratz*, ſon of *Charles* Duke of *Auſtria*, of the houſe of *Gratz*, the youngeſt ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt (the numerous Off-ſpring of *Maximilian* the ſecond being all dead without iſſue) ſucceeded in the eſtates of *Auſtria*, choſen Emperour alſo, King of *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*, &c.

27 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, now living *Anno* 1648. Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Germans*. Of whole eſtate and the *Concomitants* thereof, we ſhall ſay more, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces.

2. *STIRIA* or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North, with *Auſtria*; on the South, with *Carinthia*; on the Eaſt, with *Hungary*; and on the Weſt with *Carinthia*, Extended in length 110 miles, but in breadth not above 60. or thereabout. For the moſt part mountainous and barren, as being overſpread with the ſpurs and branches of the *Alpes*, and rich only in Minerals. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1 *Gratz*, ſeated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third branch of the houſe of *Auſtria* (ſince the time of *Ferdinand* the firſt) was called *De Gratz*, and had the Government of the Country for their part of that Patrimonie. A Town once full of *Proteſtants*, and thoſe ſo ſtrong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindred from the free exerciſe of their Religion, till the year 1598. in which *Magaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, Siſter to the Archduke *Ferdinand du Gratz*, was by the Citizens ſolemnly entertained; with whom entred ſo many ſouldiers, that the City was taken; and 14 Miniſters of the Reformed Religion preſently baniſhed. 2. *Rachelſpurg*, and 3. *Pruck*, both ſituate alſo on the *Mur*. 4. *Stechaw*, an Epiſcopal See ſeated on the *Dra*, or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5. *Petaw*, the *Patovio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated ſomewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6. *Lamboch* the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* alſo. 7 *Voiteſperg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Cely*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, of great antiquity, as appeareth by many *Roman* Inſcriptions, and other evident ſigns of Age which are upon it; for which cauſe thought by ſom to be that *Celia*, or built at leaſt out of the

Stiria. ruines of it, which *Ptolomie* placeth in this Tract. It is ſituate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large juriſdiction over the adjoyning Countries. 9. *Canifia*, ſeated in a mariſh on the edge of this Country, a place of great ſtrength, both by art and nature; once one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks againſt the *Turks* in all theſe parts, and a great eye-ſore to them for many years: but taken by them at the laſt, *Anno* 1600. And never ſince re-gained by the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*, though many times in vain attempted.

The whole Countrey mountainous and hilly, generally overſpread with the ſpurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in *minerals*; was antiently the habitation of the *Tauriſci* (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Steirmark*: the *Germans* calling that a *Steir*, which the *Latins* call *Tauriſcus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Steirmark*, is nothing but the borders or *Marches* of the *Tauriſci*, the utmoſt bounds of their poſſeſſions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Pannonia* in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honor of *Valeria* the daughter of *Diocleſian*. But once diſmembred from the Empire, it fell upon the name of *Steirmark*, with reference to the *Tauriſci*, ſpoken of before. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of one *Ottocarus*, advanced unto that honor by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2d. *Leopold*, the 4th. from this *Ottocarus*, (two other *Ottocars* intervening) was made Marqueſs of *Stiermark*; and his ſon, *Ottocar* the 4th, was made Duke hereof, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. But being without hope of iſſue, and infected with the uncurable diſeaſe of the *Leproſie*, he ſold this Country to *Leopold* the fift of *Auſtria*; bought with ſome part of that vaſt ſum of money which he extorted for the ranſom of King *Richard* the firſt. Continued ever ſince in the poſſeſſion of this potent Family, but ſo, that it hath many times been aſſigned over for the portion of the younger brethren: as namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger ſons of *Albert* the *ſhort*: *Erneſt*, the youngeſt ſon of that *Leopold*; and laſtly to *Charls*, the youngeſt ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt, called *Charls* of *Gratz*, father of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, ſucceſſor to *Matthias* in *Auſtria* it ſelf, and all the reſt of the Eſtates *incorporate* with it: not like hereafter to be ſo impolitickly diſmembred from the chief of the houſe, as in former times.

3 *CARINTHIA*, by the Dutch called *Karnten*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Steirmark*, and the River *Levandt*; on the Weſt, with the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*, and the River *Saltzach*; on the North, with *Auſtria* it ſelf; and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*: which having its original in the skirts hereof, paſſeth through theſe *Auſtrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at laſt into the *Danow*. The Country being ſituate in the worſt part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in *minerals*: extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 *Engliſh* miles, and 47 in breadth betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it, are 1. St. *Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief town of the Country, ſituate at the meeting of the *Glan*, and the *Wunics*, two ſmall Rivers; adorned with a ſpacious market place, and a beautiful Conduit. 2. *Vittach*, ſeated on the *Dravus* in a pleaſant valley, encompaſſed about with rocks; the houſes hereof adorned on the outſide with painted ſtories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurch*, a ſmall Town, but an Epiſcopal See. 4. *Clagnfoot*, on the Lake called *Werd-Zee*; a well fenced place; called antiently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolſperg* upon the *Lavandt*, ſo near to *Steirmark* that it is by ſome reckoned a Town thereof. 6. *Lavamundt*, on the ſame border, an Epiſcopal See; ſituate at the influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7 *Freiſach*, a town of much antiquity, ſeated on the *Oleza*. 8. *Spital*, &c. The ſtory and ſucceſſion of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the houſe of *Auſtria*, (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Eſtate between them) we ſhall ſee anon.

4. *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia*, Eaſt: *Friuli*, Weſt; *Carinthia*, North; and *Iſtria*, South. It is in length, from Eaſt to Weſt, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 *Italian* miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being Lower, and leſs cold and rockie, than more towards the Weſt; which maketh it to be the more rich both in corn and wine, and other the productions of nature, than it would be otherwiſe.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmarckt*, 2. *Eſling*, 3. *Marſperg*, 4. *Pogonock*, and 5. *Saxenfelt*, all upon the *Savus*; which ariſing in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6. *Laibach*, ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name, by *Ptolemy* called *Pamportus*; but by *Pliny*, *Nauportus*: famous in old *Mythologie*, for the tranſport of the ſhip called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his *Comrades* brought the *Golden Fleece*: who coming out of *Pontus*, or the *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danow*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this town; hence carried over land into the *Adriatick*, from thence ſailing into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, called antiently *Noreja*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreja* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſontio*, an *Italian* water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A town of ſo much note, that antiently it was an Earldom; and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol*, (to whom it formerly belonged) was given to *Albert* his ſecond ſon, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Goritz*: continuing in his houſe till the year 1500. when on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earl hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next heir unto it; whoſe Succeſſors, not only in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*, but the Empire alſo, doe ſtill retain the title of Earls of *Goritz* in their uſual ſtile.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Kruin*, and *Karnten*, were the *Carni*, of *Pliny* and other Antients, who make them part of *Venetia*, the tenth region of *Italy*: but afterwards in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, caſt into *Noricum*, and made a member of the *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern Illyricum*; but ſubject, or ſubordinate rather to the *Prafectus Pratorio* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alpes* adjoining had the name of *Carnicæ*; but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they go. United of long time, in the perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon good

good record, was *Henry* ſon to *Berchthold*, a Noble man of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperor *Otho* the third: by whom advanced unto this honour and eſtate, diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the will of the Emperors, and given from one family unto another, as their fancies ſerved them. Not fixed in any houſe, till it came to *Henry* the ſon of *Engelbert*, Preſident or *Prafect of Hiſtria*: in which family it continued under this *Henry*, and his brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof: who by his marriage with *Agnes*, ſiſter and heir of *Otho* the 2d. Duke of *Meran*, added that eſtate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without children, he ſold his whole eſtate to *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*; by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the peace which was made between them. And though *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tirol*, (in right of whoſe daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the ſon of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*:) yet on the death of *Henry*, the ſon of *Mainard*, without iſſue male, it fell (according to the contract) unto *Albert* the *Short*, eldeſt ſon of *Albert*, and Granchild of *Rodolphus*; continuing ever ſince in that family, though not alwaies in the chief houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*. *Tiroll.*

The ſtrange and obſervable *ceremonies*, with which the Archdukes of *Auſtria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carinthia*, take here out of *Munſter*. In the meadows adjoyning to the Town of *Vite*, a certain Country-man to whom that office by *inheritance* belongeth, ſitteth on a *Marble* ſtone there being, holding in his right hand a cow, with a black calf; and in his left hand, a mare as lean as a rake. Then cometh the new *Duke*, attired in a plain ruſtick *habit*, his Courtiers attending him in their richeſt apparel: at whoſe approach, the Country-man above mentioned, demandeth, *What he is that ſo* majeſtically *cometh thitherward*; and the people anſwer, that *it is the future Duke*. He again asketh, *whether he be a* juſt Judge, *and one that will maintain the liberty of the country, & ſincerity of the Religion*; the people anſwer, *he will*: then he asketh, *by what right he will diſplace him of his marble ſeat*; to whom the *Steward* of the new Dukes houſe replyeth, *he ſhall give thee 60 pence in ſilver, the cattel now ſtanding by thee, the cloathes which he hath at this time on, and thy houſe ſhall ever be free from tax and tribute.* The fellow upon this, taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle *cuff* on the ear, ſetteth him on the *marble ſtone*, and taking away the cattel, departeth. This done, the new Duke goeth to Saint *Vites* Church, and having done his devotions, putteth off his *ruſtick* weeds, and dreſſeth himſelf in clothes befitting a Prince: for ſuch after their *ceremonies* he is acknowledged.

The Arms of theſe Dukes were *Argent*, 3 Lions Leopards *Sable*.

TIROLIS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Friuly*, and *Marca Trevigiana*; by the interpoſing of which or ſome parts thereof, disjoyned from *Carniola*; on the Weſt, with the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Bavaria*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*. Extended over the greateſt part of the *Alpes Rhæticæ*, and ſome part of the *Juliæ*: yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful valleys, thoſe ſpecially which lye on the banks of the *Inn*, and the River of *Adiſe*. Nor are the hills ſo void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good ſtore of metals digged out of them, eſpecially of *Braſſe*, and *Silver*; which laſt have yeelded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Oenipons*, or *Inſpruch*, ſo called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the ſecond branch of *Auſtria*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the ſecond ſon of the Emperour *Ferdinand*: the houſe of *Gratz* iſſuing from *Charls*, the third ſon of that Emperor. Moſt memorable for the haſty flight of *Charls* the fift, upon the news that Duke *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming againſt him with his Forces. Which ſo terrified him, that he fled away by *torch-light*, with ſome few of his followers; the reſidue of his Court (moſt of which were perſons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the *Black Guard* and the Skullerie. The Town being many times the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, who have here a very Royal and magnificent Palace. And to ſay truth, the Town deſerveth to be ſo honoured; amongſt pleaſant Meadows, ſpacious cornfields, and ſhady mountains ſweetly ſeated: the houſes fairly built of ſtone, enriched by the Courts of *Judicature* here ſetled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant *Armorie*. 2. *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) ſituate in the confines of *Germany*, and *Italy*; for which cauſe the Inhabitants ſpeak both languages. Built on the banks of the River *Atheſis*, or *Adiſe*: honoured with an Epiſcopal See, but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *Anno* 1545. againſt the *Lutherans*. For 22 years together before their meeting, daſhed by one Pope, and intimated by another; advanced by *Charls* the fifth upon wordly *Policies*, and for as worldly *Policies* retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this firſt Convention of it, at ſundry times, aſſembled, ſuſpended, and diſſolved. And finally, when fixed here ſeriouſly by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1562. managed with ſo much art and cunning by the *Papal* party, that nothing was determined among the *Prelates*, but what had formerly been reſolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by eſpecial Poſts: occaſioning that moſt bitter jeſt of one of the *Hungarian* Biſhops who was preſent at it, that the *Holy Ghoſt was ſent unto them in a Cloak-bag from Rome*. The effects of which Council, ſo artificially carried on by the ſtrength of wit, I cannot better deſcribe than in the words of the Hiſtory of it, which are as followeth. This Council, deſired and procured by "godly men to reunite the Church which began to be divided, hath ſo eſtabliſhed the Schiſm, and "made the parties ſo obſtinate, that the diſcords are irreconcileable. And being managed by Prin-"ces for Reformation of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*, hath cauſed the greateſt *deformation* that ever was "ſince *Chriſtianity* did begin: and hoped for by the *Biſhops* themſelves to regain the *Epiſcopal* Autho-"rity, for the moſt part uſurped by the *Pope*, hath made them loſe it altogether, bringing them into

Veteravia. "greater ſervitude. On the contrary feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to "moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from ſmall beginnings, by divers degrees, to "an unlimited exceſſe; it hath ſo eſtabliſhed and confirmed the ſame over that part which remaied "ſubject unto it, that it was never ſo great, nor ſoundly rooted. So far the words of the Hiſtory. The next of note is, 3. *Falkenſtein*, remarkable for mines of *Braſſe*; as 4. *Hal* upon the *Inn* for *Saltwiches*; and 5. *Schwas* for the richer mines of *Silver*. 6. *Malk*, near the head of the River *Atheſis*. 7. *Pollen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people whereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolſano*. 8. *Tirol*, an antient Caſtle, the firſt ſeat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reaſon to the Country adjoyning. 9. *Meran*, neighbouring the old Caſtle of *Tirol*, which gave the title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* race, deſcended from *Rathboldus*, a baſe ſon of the Emperour *Arnulph*; poſſeſſed of many large eſtates in theſe *Alpine* Countries, now appertaining to the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*. From one of which Dukes called *Otho* of *Meranie*, maried to *Beatrix*, heir of the County of *Burgundie*, the Earls of *Burgundie* (ſince that time) doe derive themſelves.

The Earls hereof, were at the firſt no other than *Provincial* Officers; when made *Proprietaries*, I am yet to ſeek. The firſt of whom we have any certainty, was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tirol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258, leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard*, who by *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis* was enfeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the ſon of this laſt *Mainard* dying without iſſue male; his daughter *Margaret*, by the conſent of all her people, ſetled her eſtate therein on the ſons of *Albert*, called the *Short*: continuing ever ſince in the houſe of *Auſtria*, though ſometimes made the portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the firſt, it was given in *Appennage* to his 2d. ſon *Ferdinand*, ſurnamed of *Inſpruch* for that reaſon, who by marrying with *Philippina* a *Burgers* daughter of *Augsburg*, ſo diſpleaſed his Brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her; it was finally agreed upon amongſt them all, that *Tirol* ſhould not deſcend upon his Children of that *venter*. In purſuance whereof after his deceaſe, *Tirol* fell to the houſe of *Gratz*: his eldeſt ſon *Charles* being made Marqueſſe of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngeſt, Cardinal of *Brixia*.

The Arms of theſe Earls when diſtinct from the houſe of *Auſtria*, were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membred *Or*.

Thus have we ſeen by what means all theſe Provinces belonging unto ſeveral Lords, became united and incorporated into one Eſtate. Beſides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, all the *Upper Elſats*, the Caſtle and Territory of *Habſpurg* it ſelf, with many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*; by *Albert* the *Short*, the Country of *Sungow*; and by his ſons, the *Advocateſhip* of *Friburg*, or the Country of *Briſgow*. So that theſe Princes are undoubtedly the greateſt for power and patrimony, of any in *Germany*: and would be of a great revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks* did not put them to continual charges; and make the borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very thorowly manured. Howſoever, it is thought that they may yeeld yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards, to the Archdukes Coffers.

The Armes of theſe Princes are *Gules*, A Feſſe *Argent*; aſſumed by Marqueſſe *Leopold* at the ſiege of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*; becauſe his whole Armour being covered with bloud, his *Belt* only remained *white*. The Arms thereof in former times having been ſix Larks *Or*, in a field *Azure*; ſuppoſed to have been taken by the firſt Marqueſſes, becauſe they poſſeſſed thoſe ſix Provinces, for defence of which the tenth *Legion* called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we ſhall meet withall no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the North ſide of *Danubius*, and the Eaſt ſide of the *Rhene*, being almoſt as ſoon abandoned, as conquered by them. So that in our ſurvey of theſe Northern Countries, we are not like to find ſuch matter of *Antiquity* as we had before; but muſt content our ſelves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a leſſe continuance. In which we ſhall begin with thoſe Countries which lie on the other ſide of *Rhene*, bordering on the Eſtates of *Cleveland*, and the *Biſhop-electors*; and ſo proceed on Eaſtward till we come to the furtheſt parts of *Germany*, and the confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North till we meet with *Denmark*, which is next of all to be conſidered.

9. VETERAVIA

VETERAVIA, or *WETERAW*, is bounded on the Weſt, with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*; on the Eaſt, with *Frankenland*; on the North, with *Haſſia*, and *Weſtphalen*; and on the South, with the *Lower Palatinate*. It containeth a combination of many ſmall eſtates, which being joyned in a common leagüe for defence of each other for the preſervation of their *Laws Liberties*, and *Religion*; are called the *Confederation of Weteraw*. The Principal of the States which are thus confederated, are the Earls of 1. *Naſſaw*, 2. *Hanaw*, and 3. *Stolms*, 4. the Lord of *Lichteberg*, and the *Imperial* Cities of 5. *Friberg*, and 6. *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *NASSAW* (for fruitfulneſs of ſoyl, and delightſomneſs of ſituation, not inferiour to moſt parts of *France*) lyeth at the foot of the Mountains, which divide *Haſſia* from *Engern*, and *Weſtphalen*; antiently called *Melibocus*: a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof are 1. *Naſſaw*, ſituate on the South ſide of the River *Lou*, not far from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the firſt ſeat and honourary Title of this famous family, and ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the Princes of *Orange*, the firſt branch hereof. 2. *Dillingbourg*, the uſual ſeat of the Earls of *Naſſaw*, before their ſetling in the *Low Countries*; hence named the Earls of *Naſſaw* of the houſe

of

of *Dillingberg*, to difference them from others of the same family. 2. *Catzenelbogen*, which gives the title of an Earl to the owners of it; in *Latine*, *Catti Melibocci*, which shews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently possessed of these parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The possession of this town much controverted between the Earls of *Nassaw*, and the Lantgraves of *Hassia*. Concerning which, we are to know, that *Henry* the second son of *Lewis*, Lantgrave of *Hassia*, surnamed the *Mild*, maried with *Anne*, daughter and heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, and by her had a son called *William*, who died without issue; and a daughter named *Elizabeth*, maried to *John* the 3d. of *Nassaw*, to whom she brought *Henry* and *William*, Earls of *Nassaw*. *Elizabeth* on the death of her brother *William*, laid claim to the estate, as the next heir to him; followed in the pursute thereof, by *William* Count of *Nassaw*, her surviving son. Against which, *William* the 2d. of *Hassia* did allege a grant or donation of it from his Cousin *William*, the brother of *Elizabeth*, as before is said, and having possession of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the last it was surrendred by Count *William* of *Nassaw* (father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charls* the fift, for the sum of 600000 Crowns: the house of *Nassaw* notwithstanding retaining it amongst their Titles. 3. *Herborn*, a small University, or *Schola Illustris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Nassaw*: in which *Piscator* was Divinity Reader, and *Alstedius* (both famous in their times Professor for the Arts and Sciences. 4. *Idstein*, lying south to *Catzenelbogen*; and 5. *Wisbad*, directly south of *Idstein*, betwixt that and the *Mein*; these being the title and possessions of the second branch of this Family. 6. *Weilborough* on the *Lou*, not far from *Witzelver*; which gives Title to the third branch of this house, called the Earls of *Nassaw* in *Sarbruck*, and *Weilborough*.

Franconia

As for the Princes of the house of *Nassaw*, they are very antient; *Otho* of *Nassaw* being made Earl of *Guelderland* in the year 1079. Another *Otho* of this house, but proceeding from a different branch of it, dying *Anno* 1190. the founder of the present Family of the Princes of *Orange*; and of the house of *Wisbad* and *Idstein*; out of which descended *Adolphus* Earl of *Nassaw*, chosen Emperor, in the year 1292. By the mariage of *Engelbert*, the seventh Earl of this house of *Dillingberg*, with *Mary* daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came first to be possessed of Estates in the *Netherlands*: and by the mariage of *Henry*, great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the *Principality* of *Orange* in *France*. A family as much honoured for the *personal merit* of the Princes of it, as any other in *Europe*; of some of which, although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the description and story of *Provence*) as Princes of *Orange*; yet take here the whole succession of them, as

The COUNTS of *NASSAW*.

1 *Otho*, the son of *Henry*, and nephew of *Waleran*, the first Earl of *Nassaw* of this line.

1190 2 *Henry*, the son of *Otho*, who added *Dillemberg*, *Wisbad*, and *Ibstein* unto his estate. Grandfather by *Waldradus* his 2d. son, to *Adolphus* the Emperor.

3 *Otho* II. son of *Henry*.

4 *Henry* II. son of *Otho* the 2d.

5 *Otho* III. son of *Henry* the 2d.

6 *John*, son of *Otho* the 3d.

1362 7 *Engelbert*, the son of *John*, by *Mary* his wife, daughter and heir of *Philip* Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair estates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.

8 *John* II. son of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Nassaw*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.

1475 9 *John* III. son of *John* the 2d.

1516 10 *Henry* III. son of *John* the 3d. Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, maried *Claude* of *Chalons*, sister of *Philibert* Pr. of *Orange*.

1536 11 *Rene*, son of *Henry* the 3d. and of *Claude* of *Chalons*, successor to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, *Anno* 1530. and to his Father in the Earldom of *Nassaw*, *Anno* 1536.

1544 12 *William*, the son of *John* the 3d. by *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter of *Hen:* Lantgrave of *Hassia*, and of *Anne* daughter and heir of *Philip* E. of *Catzenelbogen*; reformed the Religion in this Country according to the *Lutheran* doctrins.

1559 13 *William* II. son of *William* the first, succeeded Pr. of *Orange*, by the Will of *Rene* his Cousin-German, *Anno* 1544. and Earl of *Nassaw*, by the death of his Father, *An.* 1559. What else concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that *William* the first besides this *William*, had 3 other sons; that is to say, Count *John*, the Father of *William* of *Nassaw*, Governor of *West-Friseland*; Count *Ludowick*, of great renown in the first wars of the *Netherlands*, in the course whereof he lost his life, *An.* 1574. and Count *Adolphus*, slain in the same wars also, *Anno* 1568.

1584 14 *Philip*, eldest son of *William* the second, and of *Anne* his wife, daughter and heir of *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, succeeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his mother, *An.* 1551. Prince of *Orange*, and Count of *Nassaw*, by the death of his Father.

15 *Maurice*, son of *William* the 2d. and of *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Maurice* Duke-Elector of *Saxonie*, Prince of *Orange*, and Count of *Nassaw*. At the age of 18. years made General of all the forces of the United *Netherlands*, which place he managed for the space of 37 years, with great both courage and success.

1625 16 *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice*, (but by another *Venter*, the daughter of *Gaspar Coligni*, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the forces of the States united,

1648. 17. *Willi-*

Franconia 1648 17 *William* III. ſon of *Henry* the 4th. ſucceſſor to his Father in all his Honours and commands; A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Arms of the Earls of *Naſſaw* are Quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, Armed *Gules*; 2ly. *Or*, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, armed and Crowned *Azure*; 3ly. *Gules*, a Feſſe *Argent*; and 4ly. *Gules*, two Leopards *Or*, armed and membred *Gules*.

Bordering on *Francovia* or *Frankenland*, lyeth the County of *HANAW*, ſo called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of moſt note, are 1. *Hanaw* it ſelf, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illuſtris* alſo; and much enriched by the trade of *Printing*, with which they uſe to furniſh annually the *Marts* of *Frankefort*, diſtant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2. *Pfaffenhoſen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembred in the ſtories of ſucceding times, for the great defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorrein*, *July* 31. 1633. who loſt his whole Forces, all his Ordinance, Ammunition, and baggage; and which was worſt of all, his Country: taken in part from him by the Conquering *Swedes*, who followed him cloſe into his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3. *Lichteberg*, which gives title to a ſecond branch of the houſe of *Hanow*, called the Lord of *Lichteberg*. A familie of good eſteem, ſince the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the title of Earl thereof, which was about the year 1392. before that, *Princes of the Empire*; and after that, advanced unto greater fortunes, by the addition of the *Barony* of *Minzeberg*, in the perſon of *Philip* the firſt Earl; of the County of *Rheineck*, in the perſon of another *Philip*, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former *Philip*; and finally, of the Lordſhip and Eſtate of *Lichteberg*, accrewing to this houſe by the mariage of a third *Philip*, the youngeſt ſon of *Reynard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Ludovick*, Lord of *Lichteberg*. The Title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Lichteberg*, and *Hocſenſtein*, and Earls of *Bitſch*: this laſt being an eſtate in *Lorrein*, accrewing to them by the mariage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fifth in name and order of the houſe of *Lichteberg*) with *Margaret*, ſole daughter and heir of *Ludovick* the laſt Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Naſſaw*, and *Hanaw*, on both ſides of the River *Lou*, lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*, the firſt Earl whereof, (of whom there is any good *Conſtat*) was *Henry*, honoured with this title, *Anno* 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the *Counts Imperial*, made before that time, I muſt conclude them to be antienter than the date aforeſaid; though that ſufficient to ennoble a far greater family. By the mariage of *Conrade* the ninth from *Henry*, firſt with *Elizabeth*, one of the daughters of *Wil.* of *Naſſaw*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of ſuch authority amongſt the *Netherlands*, as to be privileged with a place and ſuffrage in the *Council* of the *States General*: there ſetled at the preſent in their greateſt honour, eſpecially ſince the mariage of *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Prince of *Orange*, with a daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his ſecond wife; the mother of *William* of *Naſſaw*, now Prince of *Orange*, and husband to the Princeſſe *Mary*, the eldeſt daughter of *Great Britain*. But beſides their Eſtates there, they are poſſeſſed in this tract, of 1. *Brannfels*, which gives title to the firſt branch of the houſe of *Solms*. 2. *Croneberg*, the poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of this Family; and 3 *Solms*, on the North ſide of the *Lou*, the root of both.

Of the *Imperial Cities* in this *Confederation*, the firſt is *Friberg*, called for diſtinction ſake, *Friberg in Wederaw*; to difference it from another Town of that name in *Briſgow*; ſituate in the middle of delicious and moſt fruitfull fields, and memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Naſſaw*, at that time Emperour: who when he could not get it by force, or famine, obtained it by fraud; and put to death no leſſe than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Caſtle. So hated for that bloody fact, that he was ſhortly after deprived of the Empire, and ſlain in fight by *Albert* of *Auſtria*, his *Competitor*. The 2d. of the two is *Witzelaer*, ſeated on the *Lou*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which riſing near *Dillenberg*, a Town of the Earl of *Naſſawes*, doth here loſe its name into the greater. A Town *Imperial*, confederate with *Friberg*, and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common liberties, and the *Religion* publickly profeſſed amongſt them; being that of the *Reformed Churches* of *Calvins* Platform.

10. *FRANCONIA*.

FRANCONIA or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Upper Palatinate*, and part of *Voitland*; on the Weſt, with the *Confederates* of *Wederaw*, and part of the *Rhene*; on the North, with *Haſſia* and *Thuringia*; and on the South, with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, and ſome part of *Schwaben*. So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whoſe poſſeſſion it was, when they were firſt known unto the *Romans*; the reſidence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province, appropriating the name unto it. Called alſo *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France*, which lay more towards the Weſt. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the preſent, comprehending ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*; but ſubdued from it, and made a Province of it ſelf in theſe later Ages.

The Country on the out parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Foreſts, and environed almoſt with mountains, part of the old *Hercinian Wolds*; is within, pleaſant, plain, and fruitfull: ſufficiently plentifull both of corn and wines, but abundantly well ſtored with *Rape* and *Licoras*, and yeelding good paſture for Cattel. So that we may compare it to a fine piece of *Cloth*, wrought about with a coarſe *Liſt*; or an excellent fine piece of *Lawn*, with a canvaſe *Selvrge*.

Chief

Chief Rivers of it, are 1. The *Main*, or *Mœnus*, which running thorough the midst of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankfort*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoyning *French* had the name of *Salii*; and *Conrade*, Emperor of the *Germans*, the surname of *Salicus*. 3. *Radiantis*, 4. *Sinna*, 5. *Tubero*, 6. *Æstus*, *&c.* *Franconia*

The People of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The off-spring of the antient *French*, who having over-mastered *Gaul*, and the parts adjoyning, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their antient Princes: *Marcomir*, brother of *Pharamund* the first King of the *French*, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the estate and title unto his posterity. The catalogue of which Princes, take in order thus:

The PRINCES of the *FRANKS*, and DUKES of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *FRENCH* Race.

A. Ch.

326 1 *Genebaldus*, the son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Frankes*; having subdued those parts which lay towards the River *Mœnus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern *Frankes*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.

356 2 *Dagobert*, the son of *Genebaldus*, who added the District of *Triers* unto his Estates.

377 3 *Clodovæus*, or *Ludovicus*, the son of *Dagobert*.

398 4 *Marcomir*, the son of *Clodovæus*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*.

402 5 *Pharamund*, or *Waramund*, the son of *Marcomir*, the first of this line which took unto himself the title of King of the *French*: on the assuming wherof, (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *East France*, with the Title of Duke, to his brother *Marcomir*.

419 6 *Marcomir*, the brother of *Pharamund*.

423 7 *Prunmesser*, by some called *Priamus*, the son of *Marcomir*.

435 8 *Genebaldus* II. the son of *Prunmesser*.

455 9 *Sunno*, the son of *Genebald* the second.

478 10 *Clodomirus*, or *Luitomarus*, the son of *Sunno*.

515 11 *Hygobaldus*, the son of *Clodomir*, who became a *Christian*, and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Estates.

541 12 *Helenus*, by some called *Hermericus*, a *Christian* also, who passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorrein*, which the Dutch call *Westerich*.

571 13 *Gotofridus*, the son of *Helenus*, a *Christian* also, but not able to perswade his people to the same belief.

595 14 *Genebaldus* III. the son of *Gotofrede*.

615 15 *Clodomir* II. the son of *Genebald* the third.

638 16 *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.

668 17 *Clodovæus*, or *Clovis* II. the Cousin-german of *Heribert*.

680 18 *Gosbertus*, the son of *Clovis* the second.

706 19 *Gosbertus* II. the son of *Gosbert* the first.

720 20 *Hetavus*, the son of *Gosbert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this line: Who dying without issue male, *Anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charls* the great; according to a former contract made between those Princes. And *Charls* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Burchard* the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 752. made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Arch-bishop of *Mentz* (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishos of *Wurtzburg* by this grant were possessed hereof, as long as any of the house of *Charls* the Great did possess the Empire. But his posterity failing in the person of *Conrade*, *Anno* 910. *Otho* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invested *Conrade*, husband to *Luitgardis* his daughter, with this Country; giving him withall the title of Duke of *Francony*. Four Princes of this house possessed it: that is to say, this *Conrade* surnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henries*, father, son, and nephew, successively enjoying the Imperial dignity, by the name of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fift. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male line of *Conrade*, dying without issue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next heir to *Henry*, by the Lady *Agnes* his sister, maried to *Frederick* the *Antient*, Duke of *Schwaben*, the grand-father of *Barbarossa*. But that house being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, *Anno* 1268. and no one heir pretending to the rights therof; the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former grant: content to let some great ones have a part of the spoil, that he and his successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antienly so much of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquess of *Onolsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenberg*, *Henneberg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the *Free* or *Imperial* Cities as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the title of Duke of *Francony*, remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. *WURTZ-*

Franconia.

1. *WURTZBURG*, the *Metrypolis* of *Franconia*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop, who is *Titular*, Duke hereof, is ſituate on the *Mein*, or *Mœnus*, in a pleaſant plain environed with Meadows, gardens, and fruitfull Mountains; and very well fenced with walls, trenches, bulwarks, and other Arts of modern fortification: well peopled, and for the moſt part handſomely and neatly built. Paſsing over the Bridge built of free ſtone on many large and ſpacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though antient) Caſtle; the ordinary dwelling of the Biſhop: and yet ſo ſtrong, that the many vain attempts of the *Boores* and *Citizens*, apt to pick quarrels with their *Prince*, made it thought impregnable; to which the ſituation of it on the top of a hill added ſome advantage, but it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1631. who after a ſhort, but ſtout reſiſtance, took it by aſſault. Other towns of moſt note which belong to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, are 2. *Forchein*, where it is ſaid that *Pontius Pilate* was born. 3. *Gemand*, at the meeting of the *Mein* and the *Sal*, or *Sala*. *Bretta* upon the *Salz* or *Sala*, not far from *Gemand*: remakable enough, if for nothing elſe, for being the birth-place of *Melanchthon* that renowned Schollar; the *Phœnix* of *Germany* as ſome call him and that not unfitly. 4. *Chronac.* 5 *Stapheilſtein.* 6. *Hocſtad.* of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Biſhop as chief Lord of all; he is called in the refined *Latine* of theſe times, *Herbipolitanus*, but commonly *Wurtziburgenſis*; differing in ſound, but not in ſence: For *Wurtzburg* is no other than a *town* of *Worts*, ſituate among plants and gardens, as before is ſaid; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of ſeveral languages, doth ſignifie no more than a *City* of *Herbs*. By whom the Epiſcopal See was here firſt erected, and how the Biſhops hereof came to be entituled unto their Eſtates, hath been ſhewn already. The manner how the new Biſhop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the deceaſe of the former Biſhop, the *Lord Elect* attended with a great train of horſe is to make his entrance. Aſſoon as coming within the Gates, he alights off his horſe, and putteth off his robes, and being attired in a poor and deſpicable habit, begird about with a rope, bare-headed alſo, and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Caſtel Wortheim*, and *Reineck*, to S. *Saviours* Church, being his Cathedral. The *Dean* and *Canons* there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modeſtly replyeth, that though unworthy, he is come to diſchatge the office unto which he is called. Then the *Dean* thus, *I admit thee in the name of this whole* Chapter, *committing to thy care this Church of Saint* Saviours, *and the Dukedome thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and holy Ghoſt.* Which done he putteth on his *Epiſcopal* habit, ſayeth *Maſs*, and from thence paſſeth to the Caſtle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The *living* Biſhop thus inveſted, proceed we next unto the burial of the *dead*: whoſe body being imbowelled, is kept in the Chapel of his Caſtle, his heart preſerved in a veſſel of glaſs. The next day he is carried to the Monaſtery of Saint *James*, holding a *Crozier Staffe* in his right hand, and a *ſword* in his left; buried with which the next day after, in the Church of S. *Saviour*. As for the *Revenues* of the Biſhop, they muſt needs be great; the Biſhop heteof, in the time of *Charls* the fift, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready mony, and entring into a bond to pay all his debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly gueſs at the richneſs of his *Exchequer*, and partly at the greatneſs of his *Intrado*.

2. The ſecond great Lord of *Franconie* is the Biſhop of *BAMBERG*, a City ſeated on the *Mein*, not far from *Wurtzburg*; the little River *Regnite* falling there into it: ſuppoſed by *Mercator* to be the *Granionarium* of *Ptolemy*, and to have took this new name from the hill *Baba* (ſo called from *Baba*, daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is ſituate: the right name being *Babemberg* (remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* ſignifieth an *Hill*) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably ſeated amongſt mountains and pleaſant gardens, and in a ſoil exceeding fruitfull of all neceſſaries, and yielding *Liquorice* in great plenty: the birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great lights of *Germany*, and a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, ſubject immediatly to the Pope, and Lord of many fair towns and territories in this Country; but much diminiſhed ſince the time of *Charls* the fift: the Biſhop thereof then being, giving to Marqueſs *Albert* above mentioned, for a ceſſation from arms, *Anno* 1530. no leſs than 60 of his Lordſhips (moſt of which fall unto the ſhare of the Marqueſs of *Onaldsbach*) beſides the *titulage* or *Guardianſhip* of his *Wards* and *Clyents*. Of thoſe which are remaining in the hands of the Biſhops, the principal are 1. *Gragingliac*, 2. *Schleiſtat*.

3. The third great Lord to be conſidered is the Marqueſs of *Onaldsbach*, or *Ansbach*, who is Maſter of no ſmall part of this Country, but his Eſtate (as thoſe of the other *German* Princes,) confuſed and intermixed with his Neighbours. His chief Towns, 1. *Onaldsbach* or *Ansbach*, the uſual reſidence of theſe Marqueſſes, and the birth-place of moſt of their Children. 2. *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirtenberg*; walled in about in the year 1085. and honored with ſome publick Schools there founded by Marqueſs *George Frederick*, *Anno* 1482. 3. *Pleinfelt*, not far from *Nuremberg*. Such places as they hold in *Voiteland*, we ſhall meet with there.

Theſe Marqueſſes are of the puiſſant family of *Brandenbourg*, by whom this fair eſtate was wreſted from the Female Heirs of *Wolframius*, the laſt Lord hereof. The firſt who did enjoy this Eſtate and Title was Marqueſs *George Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*; the Father of *Albert* the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *George*, the firſt Marqueſs of *Jagendorf*; and the Grandfather of that Marqueſs *Albert*, who in the daies of *Charls* the Fift ſo haraſſed this Country. But his Male-iſſue by *Caſimir* his eldeſt ſon, failing in that *Albert*, *Anno* 1557. it returned to the Electoral houſe: and by *Sigiſmond*, a late *Elector*, was given to *Joachim Erneſtus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the *Princes of the Union* for defence of the *Palatinate*, was made chief Commander of their Forces, *Anno* 1620. A charge in which it was ſuppoſed

poſed, that he carried himſelf neither ſo faithfully nor ſo valiantly, as he ſhould have done; being much condemned for ſuffering *Spinola* with his Army to paſs by unfought with, when he had all advantages that could be wiſhed for, to impede his march: the greateſt part of the *Palatinate* being loſt immediately upon that neglect; and by degrees the reſt of the *United Provinces*, either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a conſtancie. To him ſucceeded his Son *Chriſtian* now poſſeſſed hereof. *Franconia*

As for the other ſecular Princes which have any conſiderable eſtates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtell*, *Wortheim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenbourg*, together with the Lords of *Lemburg*, and *Rheichisberg*: all of them named ſo from the chief Town of their Eſtates, and all thoſe Towns enriched with ſome ſuitable Territory. Of theſe the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtell*, and *Wortheim*, are *Homagers* to the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him ſervice at his Inthronization: the Earldome of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanow*, as was ſhewn before; and that of *Henneberg* moſt famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increaſe of Children (as many as there be daies in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as moſt in *Germany*, fetching their Pedegree as high as to *Charls* the *Great*, without help of the *Heralds*. But they of greateſt power and parentage amongſt them, are the Earls of *SWARTZENBURG*, deriving themſelves from one *Witikindus*, of the houſe of *Saxony*: who fighting for his Country againſt the *French*, *Anno* 779. was taken Priſoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized at the perſwaſion of *Lewis* the *Godly*, ſon of *Charls* the *Great*. *Witikindus* his Son and Succeſſor, being baptized at the ſame time alſo by the name of *Charles*, was the firſt Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Caſtle of his own building on the edge of *Turingia*, *Anno* 796. whoſe poſterity do ſtill hold the ſame, but much improved in their Eſtates by mariages and other accrewments. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*: amongſt them *Gunther* Earl of *Schwartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, againſt *Charls* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*. By which laſt ſolemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquiſgrave*) *Anno* 1349. But being unworthily poyſoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made ſo weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to ſurrender his pretenſions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compenſation for his charges 22000 marks in *ſilver*, and ſome Towns in *Turingia*.

Of the *Imperial* Cities, which ſhare amongſt them the remainders of *Frankenlandt*, the principal are 1. *Frankford* on the *Meine*, ſo called from its ſituation on the River *Meine*, to difference it from *Frankford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. Divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridge of ſtone; the leſſer part, ſituate on the right-hand ſhore of the River, being called *Saxen-hauſen*, the greater part, properly called *Franck-ford*, ſeated on the other. Both under one Magiſtrate, and both together making up a fair, rich, populous, and well-traded Town, of great both riches and repute, by reaſon of the famous *Marts* here held, in the miſt of *Lent* and *September* yearly; and the *Election* of the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*, as occaſion is. The City of a round form, compaſſed with a double wall, beautified with ſome walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongſt Vineyards, meadows, and ſweet groves: called thus, as ſome ſay, from *Francus* the ſon of *Marcomir*, ſuppoſed to be the founder of it; or *à Francorum vado*, as the *Ford* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2. *Schweinford*, on the *Meine* alſo, in a fruitfull ſoil. 3. *Rotenburg*, on the River *Tuber*. 4. *Winsheim*. Here is alſo the Town of 5. *Koburg*, which belongeth to the houſe of *Saxony*, and gives title unto ſome of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxen-koburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nurenburg*, conceived by moſt to be within the *Upper Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the *Circle* of *Franconie*, in regard moſt of the Eſtates and poſſeſſions of it lye within this Country. Of which indeed they have ſo plentifull a ſhare, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony*, and his confederates had driven *Charls* the fift out of *Germany*, Marqueſs *Albert* before mentioned (whoſe ſword was his beſt Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no leſs than an hundred Villages belonging to it, 70 Mannors and Farm-houſes appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Woods; and after all this havock made of their eſtate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Cowns in Mony, and ſix pieces of Ordinance. But being the City it ſelf ſeems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we ſhall there meet with it.

Amongſt theſe *Prelates*, *Princes*, and *Imperial* Cities is the great Dukedome of *Franconia*, at this time divided; the title ſtill remaining in the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and ſome part of the Country: but both the Country and the title of Duke of *Francony*, not long ſince otherwiſe diſpoſed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 1631. as before is ſaid, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them; conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon-Weymer*, with the ſtile and title of Duke of *Franconia*. Inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, *July* 19. 1643. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing *homage* to him, and all the *Magiſtrates* and Officers of the ſeverall Cities taking the *oaths* of *Allegiance*; the new Duke alſo making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their rights and *Privileges*. In the ſolemnities of which day, the firſt great Gun diſcharged in the way of triumph, broke in the going off without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Souldier only. An *omen* that all this ſolemn *Act* would prove but a *Pageant*, and break in pieces at the firſt giving fire unto it. And ſo accordingly it did: the victory at *Norligen*, which followed not long after this, putting the *Biſhop*

Wirtenberg, and Baden.

shops once more into their possessions; and leaving nothing to the new Duke, but an hungry title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here adde the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full possession of the Country.

DUKES of *FRANCONIA* of the *DUTCH* or *GERMAN* RACE.

974 1 *Conradus*, surnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the first, whose daughter *Luitgardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the second, elected Emperour, by the name of *Conrade* the second, *Anno* 1025.

1040 2 *Henry*, the son of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the third.

1056 3 *Henry* II. of *Franconia*, and IV. of the Empire.

1106 4 *Henry* III. of *Franconia*, and V of the Empire.

1125 5 *Frederick* (surnamed *Barbarossa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the *Antient*, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his wife, the sister and next heir of *Henry*; succeeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrade* the third, his Uncle, *Anno* 1153.

1190 6 *Frederick* II. the second son of *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.

7 *Conrade* II. brother of *Frederick* the second, succeeded in both estates.

8 *Philip*, the younger brother of *Conrade*, succeeded in both Dukedoms after his decease; and on the death of *Henry* the sixth his eldest brother, was elected Emperour, *Anno* 1198.

1207 9 *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, son of the Emperour *Henry* the sixth, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, *Anno* 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, *Anno* 1212. was elected Emperour, of that name the second.

1250 10 *Conrade* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the son of *Frederick* the third, whom he succeeded in all his Titles and Estates.

1254 11 *Conradine*, son of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*; dispossessed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicil* by *Manfred* the Base brother of his father: and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who succeeded *Manfred* in those Kingdoms, *Anno* 1268. After whose death this Royal house being quite extinguished; the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* did again resume the titles of Dukes of *Franconia*; content to let some of the greater Lords and Prelates which lived near unto him, to share in the possession of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the antient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the house of *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight peeces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or*, which, why it is new born by the *Landgraves* of *Hassia*, we shall tell you there.

11. *WIRTENBERG*, and 12. *BADEN*.

These I have joyned together, though distinct Estates, because both of them taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*; erected both about one time, and lying very close in a round together: bounded upon the East, and South, with the *Schwabea* properly so called; on the North, with the *lower Palatinate*; on the West, with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Brisgow*: parted asunder by the Mountainous ridge of hils called *Schwartzwald*; *Wirtenberg* lying on the East-side thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And first for *WIRTENBERG*, the air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the West, and the *Alpes* of *Suevia* on the South, of it self barren and unprofitable; but in some places by the industry of the *Ploughman*, made to yeeld good corn. But in the middle parts thereof which lye towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfullness both of corn and wine, unto any in *Germany*; besides some silver mines near *Wiltberg*; and about *Puellach*, a small Town, such abundance of *brasse*, that the Foundation of the houses seem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Castle of *Wirtenberg*, the first seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Intuergi*, inhabiting the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virthungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gellio* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg* being added for a termination, made it first *Tuergin-berg*, or *Virthun-berg*, and after *Wirtenberg*.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Stutgard*, the Dukes seat, a fair, rich, and populous town, and the chief of the Dukedom; seated in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of wine almost incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair stone Bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich soil, and finally adorned with an University here founded by *Eberhard*, the first Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1477. in which *Leonardus Fuchsius*, that great *Herbalist* and *Restaurator* of *Physick*, was once a Professor of tha Faculty. 3 *Constat*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which on the top of an hill, stands the old Castle of *Wirtenberg*,

berg, before mentioned. 4. *Wiberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6. *Schorndorf* upon the *Rheems*, much resorted to by reason of the *hot baths* there; as is also 7. *Newnburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Heidenheim*, 9. *Grieningen*, 10. *Marbach*, of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns *Imperial*, as 1. *Wimpsen*, and 2. *Haibrum* on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gepping*, upon the river *Vils*. 4. *Weil*. 5. *Reutling*, on the *Neccar* also, made *Imperial* by *Frederick* the 2d. *Anno* 1240. otherwise of no great note but for the Paper mills. 6. *Esling*. *Wirtenberg.*

The first Inhabitants hereof, were the *Charini* of *Ptolomy*, and part of the *Intuergi*, spoken of before; made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almains*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembred in the time of *Henry* 4th. after the dangerous war raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practise of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne *Imperial*, it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrade*, in the year 1100. by the grace and favour of the said Emp. *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelguard*, and many other accrewments, it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. *Anno* 1495. The Earls and Dukes whereof follow thus in order:

The EARLS and DUKES of *WIRTENBERG.*

1 *Conrade* the first Earl.
2 *Ulric*, son of *Conrade*.
3 *John*, son of *Ulric*.
4 *Lewis*, son of *John*.
5 *Henry*, son of *Lewis*.
6 *Eberhard*, son of *Henry*.
7 *Ulric* II. son of *Eberhard*.
8 *Eberhard* II. son of *Ulric*.
1325 9 *Ulric* III. son of *Eberhard*.
1344 10 *Eberhard* III. son of *Ulric*.
1394 11 *Ulric* IV. son of *Eberhard*.
12 *Eberhard* IV. son of *Ulric*.
1417 13 *Eberhard* V. son of *Eberhard* the 4th, by his mariage with *Henrica*, or *Henriette*, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelguard*, added that Earldom to his house.
1419 14 *Lewis*, or *Ludovick* II. son of *Eberhard* the 5th.
1456 15 *Eberhard* VI. son of *Lewis*, Founder of the University of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the 1st. the first Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1495. He deceased without issue, *Anno* 1496.
1496 16 *Eberhard* VII. son of *Ulric*, the younger brother of *Lewis* the 2d. succeeded on the death of *Eberhard*, his Cousin-German.
1504 17 *Henry*, the brother of *Eberhard* the 7th.
1519 18 *Ulric* V. son of *Henry* the 2d. expulsed out of his Dukedom by *Charls* the 5th. for the sack of *Reutling* an *Imperial* City; and his Estate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, the brother of *Charls*: but after 15 years exile, restored to his Dukedom, by *Philip* Lantgrave of *Hassia*. He reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the Universitie of *Tubingen*. 31.
1550 19 *Christopher*, the son of *Ulric* the 5th. a follower of his Fathers steps in Reformation of the Church, and Advancement of Learning.
1568 20 *Ludovick* or *Lewis* III. son of *Christopher*,
21 *Frederick*, son of *George* Earl of *Montbelguard*, the brother of *Ulric* the 5th. made Knight of the *Garter* by Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1597.
22 *John Frederick*, son of *Frederick* the first.
23 *John Eberhard*, eldest son of the former Duke, now living, *Anno* 1649.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are supposed to be equal unto those of the *Electors Palatine*, spoken of before; and were it not for the *silver* mines in *Saxonie*, little inferiour to those of that Duke. But for provisions of war, (excepting *Powder* only) he is meanly furnished. A main defect, considering the ill terms he stands in with the *Imperial* Cities, betwixt whom and the house of *Wirtenberg*, there have been always open wars, or secret jealousies.

His Arms are *Or*, 3 Attires of a Stag born Palie-barrie, *Sable*.

As for the Marquisate of *BADEN*, lying on the West side of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the most part, except towards those *Wolds*, a very pleasant and fruitfull Country; and much of the same nature, with the rest of *Wirtenberg*; so called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquesse keeps his seat in Winter; and that so named from the hot Baths there, as is also *Baden* (called for distinction sake, the *Upper Baden*) amongst the *Switzers*; in which respect the City of *Bath* in *Somersetshire* had antiently the name of *Caer-Baden* also. Of these *Baths* it is supposed that there are in this City at least 300, profitable for many diseases and exulcerate sores, drawing a great resort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquisate; from whence the Princes have the Title of Marquesses of *Baden*. The next to this is 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a second branch of this house; called also sometimes Marquesses of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marquesses of *Baden-Durlach*. 3. *Liebenzel*, amongst the hills of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot *medicinal* Springs. 4. *Lichtall*, remarkable for a Monastery, the burial place of the first Marquesses. 5. *Gerspach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6. *Pfortheim*, adjoyning to the Wood *Hagenscheis*, a branch of *Schwartzenwald*. 7. *Retelen*, 8 *Badenwile*, and 9. *Susenburg*, all seated in the

Up-

Northgoia

Upper-Baden, being that part hereof which lies next to *Brisgow*. 10 *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Castle, the usual retiring place of these Princes in the heats of Summer.

This *Marquisate* being also taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the person of *Herman*, of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deserving well of the Emperour *Henry* the 5th. was by him settled in some Lands about these parts, *Anno* 1120. and after marying with the daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa* created the first Marquesse of *Baden*, *Anno* 1155. The Estate was after much increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg*, and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Christopher* the 13th. Marquesse hereof, succeeded on the death of his Couzin *Philip*, the last Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes descending originally from two brothers: of which the eldest in right of the Lady *Judith* his wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the second by the favour of the said *Frederick Barbarossa*, was made Marquesse of *Baden*. They were Masters also of many fair Estates in the *Lower Palatinate*, which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there said) are since possessed of. Other particulars shall be shewn (if occasion be) in the ensuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSES of *BADEN*.

1155 1 *Herman*, the first Marquesse.
2. *Herman* II.
3 *Herman* III.
4 *Herman* IV.
1281 5 *Rodolph*, son of *Herman* 4.
1295 6 *Herman* V. son of *Rodolph*.
7 *Rodolph* II. son of *Herman* the 5th.
1356 8 *Frederick*, son of *Rodolph* the 2d.
9 *Rodolph* III. son of *Frederick*.
1372 10 *Barnard*, son of *Rodolph* the 3d.
1431 11 *James*, son of *Barnard*.
1453 12 *Charls*, son of *James*; the first of these Marquesses which was possessed of the County of *Spanheim* in the *Lower Palatinate*, descending on this house by *Matild* wife of *Rodolph* the 2d.
1475 13 *Christopher*, son of *Charls*, who after the death of *Philip*, the last Marquesse of *Hochberg*, succeeded also in that estate.
1515 14 *Barnard*, son of *Christopher*, his brother *Ernest* succeeding in that of *Hochberg*.
15 *Christopher* II. son of *Barnard*, his elder brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* son of *Philebert*, dying in the life of *Barnard*.
16 *Edward*, son of *Christopher*, intending the sale of his Estates to pay his debts, was forcibly deprived of all by
17 *Ernest*, Marquesse of *Hochberg*, nephew of *Ernest* above mentioned; who by that means not only preserved the Marquisate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it; and removed his ordinary seat to *Durlach*.
18 *George*, brother of *Ernest*, Marquess of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
19 *Frederick*, the son of *George*, born in the year 1594. succeeded his Father in both Estates; and (if living) hath a son called also *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his decease.

NORTHGOIA, or The *UPPER PALATINATE*

The Countrie of *NORTHGOIA*, so called from the *Northern* situation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is sometimes also called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, because antiently belonging to that Estate; but general *Ober Psalts*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is boumded on the East, with *Bohemia*; on the West, with *Franconia*, and part of *Schwaben*; on the North, with *Voiteland*; and on the South, with *Bavaria*. The Country for the most part somewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in mines of iron, which it yeeldeth in most places, and some of silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimbourg* to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the hill *Felchtelberg* in the edge of *Voiteland*, to *Weisenberg* near the banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Observable things touching this Province, are chiefly two. First, that out of the mountain *Felchtelberg*, before mentioned, arise 4 Rivers running to the four quarters of the world; that is say the *Eger* towards the East, the *Mein* or *Mœnus* towards the West, the *Sala* or *Saltza* to the North, and the *Nab Nabus* to the South; so that it may be probably thought, to be the higest hill in all *Germany*. 2ly. That in the South west cotner of it are two little Rivers, the one called *Almul*, which falleth into the *Danow*; and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Mein*, and finally into the *Rhene*: between the heads whereof, being not much distant, *Charls* the *Great* once began to dig a Chanel, for making a passage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thousand men: but partly by excesse of rain, and partly by some strange *affrightments* (all which they did in the day, being undone in the night) he was fain to desist. Some parts of the intended water-course are to be seen near *Wassenburg*, spoken of before, which standeth in the middle way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief places of this Country which belong to the *Electoral* Familie, are 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of iron digged out of the neighbouring hils; here fashioned into all sorts of *Utensils*, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoyning; but prouder of its mines of *silver* than those veins of *iron*, affording to the Princes Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Monheim*, in the midst of a fruitfull valley, near a wood of *Juniper*. 3. *Newburg* upon the River *Swartzach*, which gives title to the second branch of the *Palatine* house, called the Count *Palatines*

of

of *Newburg*, competitors with the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg* for the Dukedom of *Cleveland*. 4. *Kelhaim*, at the meeting of the *Danow*, with the River *Almul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which paſſing thence falleth into the *Danow*, near the City of *Regensberg*. 6. *Caſtel*, where the *Electors* for the moſt part hold their *Reſidence*, when they are in this Country. 7. *Awerbach*, 8. *Saltsbach*, 9. *Welden*, 10. *Newmarckt*. *Northgoia*

There are alſo in this Country ſome Towns belonging to the *Lantgraves* of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old *Lantgraves* of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Haſſia* and *Alſatia*: ſo called from *Lutchenberg* an old Caſtle, ſituate on a lofty hill not far from *Pfriemd*, the chief Town and ordinary ſeat of theſe *Lantgraves*, ſeated on the River *Nab*. 2. *Gronsfelden*, 3. *Schonkuffen*, an ordinary paſs and baiting place, in the way from *Prague* to *Nurenberg*.

But the chief City of this Country, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nurenberg* it ſelf, *Norimbega* in the modern, but *Noricum* in the antient *Latine*. So called from an antient caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, the ruines of which are ſtill remaining: encompaſſed with a deep but dry ditch, now of no uſe nor ornament to the City at all; but reverenced for its antiquity as the Mother of *Nurenberg*. The Caſtle ſaid by ſome to be built in the time of *Claudius Ceſar*. More probably by ſome of the *Norici*, who terrified with the invaſion of *Attila*, in the decline and wain of the *Roman* Empire, relinquiſhed *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt, and paſſed over the *Danow*, there to provide themſelves of a ſafer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerours, ſubject to the *French*: in the time of *Lewis* the 3d. it became *Imperial*, and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charls* the 4th. From that time it encreaſed ſo faſt both in wealth and beauty, that it is counted the greateſt and wealthieſt City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 ſtone bridges for paſſage over the River *Pegnits*, which runneth through it; 12 Conduits of freſh water; 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wels, and 128 Streets. Of figure ſquare, environed with a triple wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully ſtored with all ſorts of *Ammunition*. The Marqueſſes of *Brandenburg* in former times were the *Burgraves* of it; at office of great power and juriſdiction; but ſold for a good ſum of mony by *Frederick* the 3d. *Anno* 1414. *Albert* his ſon attempting to recover the old office again, beſieged the Town, having no leſſe than 17 Princes on his ſide, and yet could not force it. That for an Argument of its ſtrength. A proof and evidence of the wealth of it we have ſeen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great ranſom they were put to by another *Albert*, ſpoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people, that this great wealth is gotten by their indefatigable *induſtrie*; the Town being ſituate on a barren and ſandie ſoil, and deſtitute of thoſe helps which commonly a *navigable* River brings into a City: thoſe great poſſeſſions which belong to the State hereof, being gotten out of the fire, as the ſaying is, by their continual working of iron and other manufactures; occaſioning a reſort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germanie*.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate*, are 1 *Altorf*, where the *Nurenbergers* founded an Univerſity for the ſtudy of all Arts and Sciences, *Anno* 1575. 2. *Erſpruck*, a great Town and well ſeated, belonging to the State of *Nurenberg* alſo. 3. *Eiſted* (*Aichſtadium* in the *Latine*) an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the River *Almul*. 4. *Waſſenburg*, an *Imperial* City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was alſo in this Province (if not ſtill remaining) the Town of *Winsberg*, memorable for the piety and gallantry of the women of it. For the Town being beſieged and diſtreſſed by the Emp. *Conrade* the 3d. for ſiding againſt him with the *Guelfs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the ſurrendry of it, but that the women might have leave to depart in ſafety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their husbands on their backs, and ſo left the Town: and by that noble act ſo moved the affections and compaſſion of the angry Prince, that he ſpared the Town, and gave them all a general pardon. It is ſaid by ſome, that the odious names of *Guelfs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of *Chriſtendom* was ſo long diſtracted) took their beginning at this ſiege: the firſt ſo called from *Guelfo*, brother of *Henry* the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whoſe cauſe they fought; the other from *Veibling*, (the *French* and *Italians* ſpeak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperour was born. Another original hereof, we had in our deſcription of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two, though neither certain.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nariſci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards ſome of the *Norici* fearfull or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoak, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, where now ſtands *Nurenberg*. Overpowred by the *Boii*, and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339. when *Ludovick* the Emperour and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the eſtate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his eldeſt brother, relinquiſhed it for ever to the houſe of the *Palatines*. Returned for the preſent to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom conferred, together with the *Electoral* dignity, by the Emperour *Ferdmand* the 2d. in recompenſe of the great ſervice don him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof, in the war of *Bohemia*; and the great charge he had been at, in the reduction of that Kingdom to the houſe of *Auſtria*. How long it will continue thus, is known only to God, the diſpoſer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* ſince, have been ſo fully Maſters of it, but that the Landgrave of *Luchtenberg*, and the City of *Nurenberg*, have put in for a ſhare.

The Arms of which great and puiſſant City are *Azure*, an *Harpie* diſplayed, crowned, crined, and armed, *Or*.

Bohemia.

3. The KINGDOM of *BOHEMIA.*

The *Kingdom* of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it ſelf, with the incorporate *Provinces*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Poland* and *Hungarie*; on the Weſt, with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voiteland*, and *Miſnia*; on the North, with the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, and ſome part of *Miſnia*; and on the South, with *Auſtria*, and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, beſides *Bohemia* it ſelf, the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Sileſia*, and *Luſatia*.

1 *BOHEMIA*, encompaſſed about with woodie Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Moravia*; on the Weſt, with the *Upper Palatinate*, and *Voiteland*; on the North, with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and ſome part of *Sileſia*; on the South, with parts of *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof. By *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the Addition of *Gens magna*; by *Tacitus* they are called *Boiemi*, who makes them the Deſcendants of the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, who to avoid the ſervitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themſelves into theſe *Hercynian* Deſerts, which from them was named *Boio he mum*; by which name it occurreth in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* firſt, and the *Sclaves* and *Croatians* afterwards, became Maſters of it, theſe laſt continuing their poſſeſſion to this very day: yet it retaineth ſtill the name of *Bohemia* amongſt the *Latines*, as that of *Bohemerland* amongſt the *Dutch*.

It contains in compaſs about 550 *Engliſh* miles. The ſoil indifferently fruitfull, and enriched with mines of all ſorts, except of *gold*. *Tinne* they have here in good plenty, the mines whereof were firſt found out by a *Corniſh*-man, baniſhed out of *England*, *Anno* 1240. which diſcovery of *Tinne* in theſe parts, was, as ſaith my Author, *in magnam jacturam Richardi Comitis Cornubiæ*, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*:) and no marvail, for in thoſe times there was no *Tinne* in all *Europe*, but in *England*. Wood they have here good ſtore; and in ſome of their Foreſts a Beaſt called *Lomie*, which hath hanging under its neck a bladder full of ſcalding water; with which, when ſhe is hunted, ſhe ſo tortureth the Dogs, that ſhe eaſily eſcapeth them. Of corn they have ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſometimes alſo an increaſe above their ſpending, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want wine, the Air here being too ſharp and peircing to produce a good *Vintage*. And it yields alſo ſtore of *Saffron*, no where to be bettered; with plenty of *medicinable* drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof, are 1. the *Elb*, or *Albis*, having here its ſpring; of whoſe courſe we have ſpoken elſewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldaw*, or *Muldavius*, and 4. the *Warts*; all three exonerating themſelves into the *Elb*, which runneth through the midſt of the Country.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties, and Provinces; but into the Territories and poſſeſſions of ſeveral Lords; who have great authority and command over their Vaſſals. The figure of the whole in a manner *Circular*, the *Diameter* whereof reacheth every way ſome 200 miles: containing in that compaſs 700 Cities, walled Towns, and Caſtles; and (as ſome ſay) 30000 Villages. Inhabited by a people given to drink and gluttony; and yet valiant, and with ſenſe of honour: this laſt belonging to the Nobility, and Gentry; the former to the common people; but more moderately than moſt others of the *German* Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebians, rich, poor, noble, and baſe, uſe the *Sclavonian* language, as their mother tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of, was *Ziſca*; who in eleven battels fought in the defence of the *Huſſites*, againſt the Pope and his confederates, prevailed, and went away victorious: inſomuch, that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flea him, and make a drumm of his skin; perſwading himſelf, if they ſo did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer*, King of *Britain*, ſpoken of before. Scholars of moſt note, *John Hus*, and *Hierome* of *Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here preached by S. *Methodius*, the firſt Biſhop and Apoſtle of the *Moravians*, (whom ſome call *Borſinous*) *Anno* 900. or thereabouts: *Borzivoius*, the 8th Duke from *Crocus*, being the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince; and next to him, *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond. This laſt moſt cruelly murdered by *Boleſlaus*, his brother, at the inſtigation of *Drahomira*, an obſtinate Heathen, mother to them both: who having cauſed the Miniſters of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was ſwallowed, coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this prodigy, they continued conſtant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of ſome notable vanity. For one *Picardus* coming out of the *Low-countries*, drew a great ſort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the ſame ſtate of perfection, that *Adam* was in before his fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no reſpect unto mariage; yet could they not accompany any women, until the man coming to *Adam*, ſaid unto him, *Father* Adam, *I am inflamed towards this woman*; and *Adam* made anſwer, *Increaſe and multiply*. They lived in an Iſland which they called *Paradiſe*, and went ſtark naked; but they continued not long: for *Ziſca* hearing of them, entred their *fools Paradiſe*, and put them all to the ſword, *Anno* 1416. But to make amends for this folly, they were exceeding zealous of the *Reformation*. For much about the ſame time, the works of *Wickliff* were brought into *Bohemia*, by a certain ſcholar who had been Student in the Univerſity of *Oxford*, which happning into the hands of *John Huſſe* and *Hierom* of *Praque*, two men whereof the Country doth much boaſt, wrought in their hearts a deſire to reform the Church. A buſineſs which they proſecuted ſo earneſtly, that being ſummoned to the Council of *Conſtance*, they were there condemned for *Hereticks*, and burned, *Anno* 1414. yet had

their

Bohemia.

their doctrine ſuch deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be deſtroyed by the Tyrannies of war, or perſecution (though both were uſed) to this very day; multitudes of the Profeſſors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Caliſtini*, and *Sub utraque*, as before is ſaid; but much both ſtrengthned and increaſed by the writings of *Luther*, *Melanchthon*, *Calvin*, and ſuch other of the *Proteſtant* Doctors, as travelled in the work of *Reformation*. But this increaſe of ſtrength and number proved their greateſt weakening. For growing inſolent upon the ſenſe of their ſtrength and power, they formed themſelves into a party, got many of the *Romiſh-Catholicks* to adhere unto them under colour of aſſerting their Civil rights, and in the heat of ſome diſputes, cauſed certain of the Emperors Counſel to be thrown out of the windows of the Counſel-chamber; and finally about the later end of the reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they brake out into open Arms. In the courſe whereof, the *Calvinians* being of moſt power, and having got a King of their own opinions, ſo diſobliged the *Lutherans*, and more moderate Papiſts, who had concurred with them at the firſt: that being invaded on the one ſide by a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of *Saxonie*, and a Popiſh Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were, in fine, utterly ſuppreſt, and made inconſiderable: the conquering and ſucceſsful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2d.) taking this occaſion, to extirpate the *Proteſtant* Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobodurum* of *Ptolomy*) a town towards *Auſtria*. 2. *Auguſt*, near the head of the *Elb*. 3 *Tabor*, a ſtrong Town built by *Ziſca*, to be a retreat for the *Huſſites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Molmuck*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomiſſel*, an Epiſcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pulſen*, the laſt town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, in the late long war about that Crown: and then alſo betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a ſum of money, by ſome of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then abſent, and had ſo long defended it againſt the Enemy. 8. *Elbogen*, much eſteemed for the hot *medicinable* Bathes; ſituate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, ſo called of the ſame River, on which (neer to the borders of the *Upper Palatinate*) it is ſtrongly ſituate: a large fair City, containing three miles in compaſs. *Imperial* once, but ſold by the Emperour *Ludovicus Bavarus*, to *John*, King of *Bohemia*, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compaſs leſs, for ſweetneſs of the place, elegancy of the buildings, pleaſantneſs of ſite, and richneſs of ſoil, ſuperiour farre to *Prague* it ſelf. 10. *Prague*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom; ſituate in the middeſt thereof, on the River *Muldaw*: conſiſting of four ſeveral Towns, each of which hath its ſeveral Cuſtoms, Lawes, and Magiſtrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly buildings, a ſpacious Market-place, and a ſtately Counſel-houſe: the ſecond called the *New Town*, ſeparated from the *Old*, by a Ditch of great depth, and wideneſſe. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the *Old*, by the River *Muldaw*, joyned to it by a beautiful Bridge, conſiſting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the hill *Rachine*; on the ſides of which are many fair and ſtately houſes belonging to the *Nobility*, over-looked by the ſtrong Caſtle of S. *Wenceslaus* (ſituate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings, and the later Emperors, have kept their Reſidence. The fourth town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five *Synagogues*, and live according to their own Law. The whole City rather large than fair, the ſtreets being in winter very dirty, of ill ſmell in the ſummer; the buildings for the moſt part of clay and timber, clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though incompaſſed with walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open town (ſo poor and weak are the defences) inſomuch, that whoſoever is maſter of the Field, will be maſter of the City alſo. And yet beſides the honour of being the *Royal* Seat; it hath alſo of long time been an Archbiſhops See; and by *Charls* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, made an Univerſity. Neer unto this Town was fought that memorable battel, between the Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, with 50000 men on the one ſide; and *Frederick* newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurne*, and 30000 men, on the other ſide. It was fought on the eighth of *November*, *ſtylo novo*, wherein (ſuch was the unſearchable will of God) the victory fell unto the Imperials: the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Saxon-Weimar*, with divers others, being taken priſoners; the *Bohemian* Ordnance all ſurpriſed, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen, compelled to flie unto *Sileſia*. A moſt lamentable and unfortunate loſs, not to this people only, but to the whole cauſe of the *Reformed Religion*. Yet it is not unworthy of our obſervation, that this great battel was fought upon a Sunday, the 8th. of *November*, about the time of the morning Prayer: in the Goſpel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after Trinity Sunday) is that famous paſſage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ ſunt CÆSARIS, i. e.* Render unto *Cæſar*, the things which are *Cæſars*; which ſeemed to judge the quarrel on the Emperors ſide.

But whether of the two Prerendents had the juſter Cauſe, may beſt be ſeen by canvaſſing the Records of that State and Nation (for the ſucceſs of *War* is no ſtanding Rule for meaſuring the equity, and juſtice of the cauſes of it:) by which it will be clearly ſeen, that ſince the erecting of this Kingdom by the *Sclaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore diſpoſed at the will of the Emperour, or by *election* of the States, and People. But I intend not at the preſent to diſpute that point, but only lay down the ſtory of the Kings and People, as in other places; ſince the firſt coming of the *Sclavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Juſtinian*; at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Iſter*; but on the further ſide thereof, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good ſucceſſes againſt that Empire, their name was taken up by the reſt of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; who either wanting room, or not liking of their colder Countries, paſſed on more Weſtwards: and by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Germany*, which formerly

Bohemia.

had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians*, and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forsaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of those people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. Divided at, or after their coming thus far west, into four main bodies; that is to say, the *Winithi*, possessed of the (now) Marquisates of *Brandeubourg*, *Misnia*, and *Lusatia*, as also of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the *Lower Austria*, and the *Upper Hungary*; the *Poles*, possessed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Silesia*; and finally, the *Bohemian Sclaves*, confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what form of Government they lived at their first coming hither, is not certainly known. But being setled in these Countries of *Poland*, and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into several Kingdoms: occasioned by the coming of a new body of *Sclaves*, *Croatians*, and others of those scattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongst them; who about the year 640. together with his brother *Leches*, was banished *Croatia* for a murther. And being very acceptable to the *Sclaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own Original extraction, one of the same Language, Laws, or Customs that themselves were of; they admitted him to be their *Chief*, or supreme Governour, by whatsoever name he was called at first: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own language, do call themselves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapsed again into a confused *Anarchie*, till the year 670. at what time not respecting the Progeny of *Zechius*, the founder of their Commonwealth, and first estate, they fastned upon *Crocus*, a man of good esteem amongst them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir justus, & magnæ apud* Bohemos *opinionis Princeps electus est*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libussa*, his youngest daughter; and of her government soon wearied, they made choice of *Primislaus* for their Prince, and made him husband to *Libussa*. A man taken from the *Plough* (as their stories tell us) to espouse the Princess: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suiters, that he (whosoever he was) before whom an horse purposely let loose, did first make a stand, should be the Husband of the Lady, and have the government of the State. The Horse first makes a stand before *Primislaus*, being then at *plough* (having perhaps some Mare in his Teem;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. These with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocus*, the first *Legislator* of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus.

The DUKES of *BOHEMIA.*

1 *Crocus*, the Law-giver or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia.*
2 *Libussa*, youngest daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primislaus* her husband, (a second *Quinctius*) Founder of *Prague.*
3 *Neramislaus*, son of *Primislaus* and *Libussa.*
4 *Mnatha*, one of the sons of *Neramislaus*; Co-temporary with *Charls* the Great.
5 *Voricius*, son of *Mnatha.*
6 *Wenceslaus.*
7 *Bela.*
8 *Nastricius*, son of *Bela.*
9 *Bozzivoius*, the first Christian Prince of the *Bohemians*; Co-temporary with the Emperor *Arnulph.*
10 *Sbitignæus*, sonne to *Bozzivoius.*
11 *Uladislaus*, brother to *Sbitignæus.*
12 *Wenceslaus* II. surnamed the *Saint*, slain by his brother *Boleslaus.*
13 *Boleslaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14 *Boleslaus* II. son of the former, a great advancer of Christianity amongst his people.
15 *Boleslaus* III. one of the sons of *Boleslaus* the second.
16 *Jaromir*, son to *Boleslaus* the third.
17 *Udalricus*, brother of *Boleslaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir.*
18 *Predislaus*, son to *Udalricus.*
19 *Sbitignæus* II. son to *Predislaus.*
1061 20 *Vratislaus*, brother of *Sbitignæus*, whom for his manifold deserts, the Emperour *Henry* the 4th. created the first King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1086. whose Successors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius.*

The KINGS and DUKES of *BOHEMIA.*

A. Ch.
1086 1 *Uratislaus*, the brother of *Sbitignæus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4th at *Metz* created King.
2 *Conrade*, brother to *Uratislaus*, notwithstanding that his brother had three sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia.*
3 *Brecislaus*, son to *Uratislaus*, the two sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* chosen Duke.
1100 4 *Borivorius*, the 4th son of *Brecislaus*, is chosen by the *Bohemians*; his eldest brothers then all living.
1109 5 *Sutopulcus*, Cousin-German to *Borivorius*, by the consent and favour of the people, deposed *Borivorius*, and caused himself to be elected in his place.

6 *Uladislaus*

6 *Vladislaus* II. brother to *Borivorius*, preferred by the people to the throne, before *Otho* the brother, and *Henry* the son of *Sutopulcus*, the last Prince.

7 *Sobeslaus*, brother to *Vladislaus*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Vladislaus*.

1159 8 *Vladislaus* III. son to *Vdislaus* the 2d. (the four sons of *Sobeslaus* omitted) is chosen and crowned the second King of *Bohemia*, by *Frederick* the Emperor; but deposed by the States, because he was not by them formally elected, according to their *privileges*, and customes.

9 *Vldericus*, the third son of *Sobeslaus*, his elder brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of *Vdislaus*, and his son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force established in the throne.

10 *Sobeslaus* II. second son to *Sobeslaus*, was by *Frederick* above named expelled; and he also by the *Bohemians*.

11 *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Otho* the brother of *Sutopulcus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual war.

12 *Wenceslaus*, Unkle unto *Conrade*, and son of *Otho* aforesaid, was preferred before many nearer the succession. Him *Primislaus* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.

13 *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, a stranger to the bloud, was by a general consent elected Duke.

14 *Vladislaus* IV. brother to *Primislaus* the son of *Wenceslaus*, being but by, succeeded *Henry*; and soon after resigned.

1199 15 *Primislaus*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip*, crowned the 3d. King of *Bohemia*, at *Mentz*, was brother to *Vladislaus* the 4.

1248 16 *Ottocarus*, notwithstanding that *Wenceslaus* his elder brother had been Crowned in his Fathers life time, was acknowledged King. He was slain in battel by *Rodolphus* the Emperor, near *Marckh* a River of *Moravia*, *Anno* 1278.

1278 17 *Wenceslaus* II. son to *Ottocarus*.

1284 18 *Wenceslaus* III. son to *Wenceslaus* the 2d. the last of the *Bohemian* Princes of the masculine race.

1304 19 *Rodolphus*, son to the Emperor *Albertus*, is by the potency of his Father, and the election of the *States*, seated on the Throne; being otherwise a Stranger to the blood-royal of *Bohemia*.

1305 20 *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the son of *Meinard*, Earl of *Tirol*, and husband to *Anne* the second daughter of *Wenceslaus* the 2d. is chosen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John* Earl of *Luxenbourg*. Finally, *Henry* was murdered by one of his Nephews.

1311 21 *John*, Earl of *Luxenbourg*, son to *Henry* the 7th Emperor, and husband to *Elizabeth* youngest daughter to *Wenceslaus* the 2d. is elected; the Lady *Anne* yet living.

1346 22 *Charls*, son to *Iohn*, and Emperor of that name the 4th. the Author of the Golden *Bull*.

1362 23 *Wenceslaus* the IV. Emperor also, in whose time the troubles of the *Hussites*, and the valour of *Zisca* was famous.

1418 24 *Sigismund*, brother to *Wenceslaus*, maketh himself King by force; and at his death commendeth *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, the husband of his daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the *States* of the Kingdome.

1437 25 *Albertus*, Duke of *Anstria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigismund*, by the *Bohemian* Lords.

1440 26 *Ladislaus*, son to *Albert*, who being the brother of two sisters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the *States*, as fittest to succeed him.

1458 27 *George Pogibrachius*, neither by affinity or consanguinity of the blood, succeeded. And he, though he had three sons, yet for the benefit of his Country, advised the Nobles, after his death, to elect their King from *Poland*.

1471 28 *Ladislaus* II. son to *Casimire* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth*, the younger daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, the issue of *Anne* the elder sister still living; elected King of *Bohemia*.

1516 19 *Ludovicus*, son to *Ladislaus*, elected and crowned by the means of his Father, then living; King of *Hungary* also.

1526 30 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, brother to *Charles* the 5th. and husband to *Anne* sister to *Ludovicus*, by his *letters reversal*, acknowledged that he was chosen King of *Bohemia*, not of any right, but of meer free-will, according to the liberties of that Kingdome.

1565 31 *Maximilian*, eldest son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Fathers life time, and at his sute, elected King, *Anno* 1540. into which he actually succeeded on his Fathers death.

1575 32 *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldest son to *Maximilian*, elected King.

1608 33 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint sute of them both, nominated and appointed King of *Bohemia*, by the generall consent of the *States*, during his Brothers life time, *Anno viz.* 1608. which nomination they both protest in their *letters reversal*, should not be to the prejudice of the liberties and antient customs of that Kingdom.

1618 34 *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Austria*, and of the house of *Gratz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his son, and declared successor to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cause amongst others, he was by the *States* rejected, in like case as *Vladislaus* the 3d. had formerly been.

Moravia 1619 35 *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the ſtrongſt *German* Prince of the *Calviniſts*, and moſt potent by his great alliances; was elected King of *Bohemia*, and crowned at *Prague*, together with his wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his deſcent from the Lady *Sophia*, ſiſter to *Ladiſlaus* the 2d. King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, daughter to *James* King of great *Britain*, and *Anne* of *Denmark*; which *Anne* deſcended from the Lady *Anne*, daughter of *Albertus* of *Auſtria*, and elder ſiſter to *Elizabeth*, mother to *Ladiſlaus* the 2d. above named; from whom the claim of *Auſtria* is derived.

1621 35 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2. elected King of *Bohemia*, during the life both of his Father, and of *Frederick* the Prince *Elector* alſo; after whoſe death he ſucceeded in this Kingdome both in right and fact: King of *Hungary* alſo, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Emperor of *Germany*, now living, *Anno* 1648. more moderate in his Counſels than his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to peace; (though honored with a more ſignal victory againſt the *Swedes*, in the battel of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his life;) which the Concluſions made at *Munſter* are ſufficient proof of.

Of the *Revenues*, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdome, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Hungary*; on the Weſt, with *Bohemia*; on the North, with *Sileſia*; and on the South, with the *lower Auſtria*, and the river *Teia*: fenced on the Weſt by the, Woods and Mountains of *Bohemia*, parts of the *Hercynian*, Forreſt; on the North, by ſome ſpurs or branches of it, called *Aſciburgius* by *Ptolemy*; on the two other ſides open like an half moon, or ſemi-circle. The moſt fruitfull place of corn in all *Germany*, and hath no ſmall ſtore of *Frankincenſe*; which, contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a tree, but out of the earth: and that too (which addes much to the miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the ſhape and figure of thoſe parts, which men and women do moſt endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni*, and part of the *Quadi*, againſt whom, when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made war, he had unawares run himſelf into ſuch a ſtraight, that his army was environed with Mountains one way, and enemies the other. To this (as calamities ſeldome go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. To the Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the *Captain* of his *Guard*, telling him, that he had in his army a *legion* of *Chriſtians* (*Melitens* he calleth them) which by prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor ſendeth for them, deſiring them to make *ſupplication* for the Army; which they did, and God almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the prayers of his ſervants, when they are either for his glory, the Churches, or their own good; ſcattered and vanquiſhed the *Quadi*, with *thunder ſhot* and *artillery* from heaven; and refreſhed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleaſant ſhowre. This miracle purchaſed to that *legion* the ſurname of κεραυνοφόλος, *i. e.* the *thunderer*; and induced the Emperor to honor men of that holy profeſſion, and to make an end of the fourth perſecution, A. Ch. 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*; which comming from the pen of an Heathen, as his Author was, is of more credit in a matter of ſuch concernment unto *Chriſtianity*, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other *Eccleſiaſtical* Writer.

Places of moſt note herein, are 1. *Olmunts*, on the River *Marck* (or *Mora*) the chief town of the Country, and a ſmall Univerſity; near which, out of the hill *Odenberg* bordering on *Sileſia*, ſpringeth the great river of *Odera*, whoſe courſe we have before preſcribed. 2. *Brinn*, on the river *Schwats*, the ſeat of the antient Marqueſſes. 3. *Radiſch*, and 4. *Cremſer*, both upon the *Marck* or *Mora*. 5. *Swaim*, on the *Teia*; 6. *Niclasberg*; (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the *Lower Auſtria*. 7. *Iglaw*, 8. *Newburg*, 9. *Weiskorchem*, 10. *Boſerlitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Gradiſco*, near to which (and to this place only) the *Frankincenſe* is found to grow in the ſhape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is ſaid) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*; after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who from their habitation on the river *Mora*, called themſelves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia* (the *Dutch* call it *Merheren*.) Extended at that time over all the *Lower Auſtria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiſcus* (over-ſpreading a great part of the *Upper Hungary*) towards the Eaſt. Governed at the firſt by their own Kings, the firſt, whoſe name occurs, being *Raſtai*, in the time of the Emperor *Lewis* the *Godly*; by whom taken Priſoner, and his Realm made *Tributary* to the Empire. After him ſucceeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suantopulcus*, in whoſe time the *Moravians* and other Nations of the *Sclaves*, received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius* two *Grecian* Doctors: officiating all divine ſervices in the *Sclavonian*, or vulgar Language. For which when they made ſute to the Pope then being, to whoſe authority (as a part of the Weſtern Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delaid the buſineſs; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, ſaying theſe words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet dominum, et omnis Lingua confiteatur ei.* Upon which miracle their ſute was granted at the laſt, and a Letter *Decretal* ſent unto that effect from *Pope Iohn* the 8th. to *Suentopulcus* (or *Sfentopulcher* as ſome call him) above mentioned. A privilege by them enjoyed full 200 years, and then reverſed by *Gregory* 7th. commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his letters to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1086.

But to return unto the ſtory, *Suantobegius* ſon to *Suantopulcus*, ſucceeded next, depoſed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor *Arnulph*, for denying the accuſtomed *tribute*. A prince of great

ſpi-

ſpirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him, not *Moravia* only, according to the largeſt limits, but *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* alſo. *Arnulph* not able otherwiſe to effect this purpoſe, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time *Pagans*) by whoſe help the *Moravian* was ſubdued, and his Kingdome ſhattered into pieces: ſeiſed on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations; and finally reduced to the preſent limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquiſate, (but by whom we find not) one of the Marqueſſes hereof being *Iodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperor *Anno* 1410. After whoſe death, *Sigiſmund* his next heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his ſon-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *Anno* 1417: who in the end ſucceeded him in all his Eſtates, ſince which time it hath alwaies gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*. *Sil ſia and Luſatia.*

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it, were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the ſame.

2. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESI*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Poland*; on the Weſt, with *Luſatia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Moravia*. Wholly encompaſſed with Mountains, except towards the North; which lets in a ſharp air upon them: the midland part being full of Woods, but withall of Mineralls.

Chief Cities are *Jagendorfe*, or *Jegerndorfe*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenbourg*, commonly called the Marqueſs of *Jagendorfe*. The Lands and Eſtates in his poſſeſſion, firſt given by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, to *George* ſurnamed *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Frederick* of *Brandenbourg*, the firſt Marqueſs of *Anſpach* of this houſe, for the many good ſervices he had done him. But his poſterity being extinct, they fell to the ſaid *Iohn Georgius*, brother to *Sigiſmund* the Elector: proſcribed by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine: A Prince of great note and activeneſs, in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* wars. 2. *Munſterberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the poſterity of *George Pogebraccio*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this honor and a fair Eſtate. 3. *Glatz* or *Gletz*, the laſt town of *Bohemia*, which held out for *Frederick* the Elector, againſt that Emperor. 4. *Glogaw*, a ſtrong town on the River *Odera*. 5. *Nieſſe*, on a River ſo named, an Epiſcopal See. 6. *Breſlaw*, in *Latine Uratiſlavia*, ſo called from *Uratiſlaus*, the founder of it; once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whoſe procurement it was made an Epiſcopal See, *Anno* 970. or thereabouts. It is ſituate on the River *Odera*, all the water wherein could not ſave it from being burnt down to the ground, *Anno* 1341. but it was preſently re-edified with fair Free ſtone, and is now one of the prettieſt Cities (for the bigneſs of it) in all *Germany*: fair, populous, and well contrived, with open and even ſtreets; the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppolen*, on the *Odera* alſo, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the Weſt, and on the Eaſt with good out-works, ſtrong walls, and a fair Caſtle. 8. *Straten*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made towns of war, ſince the beginning of the *Bohemian* troubles.

There are alſo within this Province the two *Seigneuries* of *Prignitz*, and *Croſſen*, ſo called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*; the two Dukedomes of *Oſwitz*, and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as alſo the Dukedome of *Lignitz*, and *Sueinits*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns; of which two laſt, *Sueinits* is in the immediate poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an *Homager* and *Tributary* of that King.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Marſigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and ſome part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eaſtern parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, laid unto the Dukedome or Kingdome of *Poland*; continuing part thereof till the time of *Vdaliſlaus* the ſecond: who being driven out of his Kingdome, by his brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, eſtated in this Country, to be held under the Soveraignty of the Kings of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his three ſons, and afterwards ſubdivided amongſt their poſterities, according to the ill cuſtome of *Germany*, it became broke at laſt into fourteen Dukedomes, of 1 *Breſlaw*, 2 *Oppolen*, 3 *Ratibor*, 4 *Ceſſin*, 5 *Bethom*, 6 *Glogaw*, 7 *Segan*, 8 *Olents*, 9 *Steinaw*, 10 *Falkenbourg*, 11 *Sueinits*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13 *Oſwits*, and 14 *Zator*. Of all which only the two laſt do remain to *Poland*; the five firſt being made ſubject to the Kings of *Bohemia*, by *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond; the five next, by King *Iohn* of *Luxembourg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the poſſeſsion of a *Proprietary* Duke (as before was ſaid) and *Sweinits* given to *Charls* the fourth Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Teſtament of *Boleſlaus* the laſt Duke: all *Schleſi* by this means, (except the Dukedomes of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*: of which it is rather an incorporate, than a ſubject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Lauſnitz*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Sileſia*; on the Weſt, with *Miſnia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Bohemia*. The Country rough and full of Woods, yet plentifull enough of corn, and of ſuch fruits, as naturally ariſe out of the earth: ſo populous and thick ſet with people, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot, as good as any in *Germany*. Moſt commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the firſt confining on *Bohemia*, the laſt on *Brandenbourg*.

Places of moſt note in the higher *Lauſnitz*, are 1 *Bautſen*, (*Badiſſinum* the *Latines* call it) the firſt Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*, when he took upon him the execution of the Emperors *Bann*, againſt *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly choſen King of *Bohemia*: The poor Prince in the mean time in all ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*; and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popiſh* party, arming both againſt him. So jealous are both ſides of the active and reſtleſs *Calvinian* ſpirit; as to leave no means unaſſaied for the ſuppreſſing of it. Seated it is upon the

Spre.

Brandenburg.

Spre, and for the moſt part is the ſeat of the *Governor*, for the King of *Bohemia*. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Niſſe*, which gave the title of Duke to *Iohn*, brother of *Sigiſmund* Emperor and King of *Bohemia*; and Father of *Elizabeth* the laſt Dutches of *Luxembourg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and ſtrongly fortified: founded about the year 1131. and not long after ſo conſumed by a mercileſs fire, *Anno* 1301. *ut ne unica domus remanſerit*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one houſe left of the old foundation. But it was preſently re-built in a more beautifull form, and more ſtrong materialls, than before it was; both publick, and private buildings, very neat and elegant. 3. *Zittaw*, on the ſame River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lauben*, 5. *Lubben*, 6. *Camitz*, of which little memorable: but that together with the former they make up thoſe ſix towns which are *confederate* together in a ſtricter league, for their mutuall defence and preſervation; but under the protection, and with the approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *LOWER Luſatia* there is 7. *Sprenberg*, ſo named from its ſituation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country; and in antient times was called *Sucvus*; ſuppoſed by ſome (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation, inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elb*. 6 *Trabell*, upon the *Niſſe*. *Cotthuſe* upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*; which together with ſome parts of the *Lower Luſatia* belongs unto the Marqueſſes of *Brandenbourg*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof are by ſome ſuppoſed (and but ſuppoſed) to be the *Senones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of theſe parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, made ſubject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt and moſt ſpreading Nation of all theſe People. When, and by whom firſt made a *Marquiſate*, I am not able to ſay for certain, but ſure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Maſters. It had firſt a Marqueſs of its own. *Conrade* the Marqueſs hereof, who dyed in the year 1156. being by the Emperor *Henry* the fift made Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, added it unto that Eſtate: remaining for ſome time united to it. After, being ſeized on by the *Poles*, it was ſold to *Frederick* the ſecond, Marqueſs and *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*: who keeping *Cotthouſe* and ſome other towns bordering next upon him, in his own poſſeſsion, ſurrendred the reſt on compoſition, to *George* King of *Bohemia*; claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the fourth to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt *Bohemian* King, *anno* 87. A grant on which no poſſeſsion followed, unleſs it were the *Homage* and acknowledgment of the Princes of it; holding it afterwards of that *Crown*, as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought theſe four Provinces into the power and poſſeſsion of the Kings of *Bohemia*: remaining ſtill diſtinct in their Laws, and Governments (as ſeveral limbs of the great body of the *Sclaves*, made up into one Eſtate) though joined together in the perſon of one ſupreme Governor: who is ſeverally admitted and acknowledged by each Province diſtinctly, for it ſelf; and not by any one of them, in the name of the reſt. Out of all which ſo laid together, there may be raiſed the ſum of three millions of Crowns yearly, for the Kings *Revenues*; towards the defrayment of all charges.

The Arms of this Kingdome are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked tail, *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which *Arms* were firſt given by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* to *Vladiſlaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good ſervice he had done him at the ſiege of *Millain*. And though *Vladiſlaus* was depoſed by the States of that Kingdome, becauſe never formally and legally *elected* by them; yet his ſucceſſors keep thoſe Arms to this very day.

14 *BRANDENBOVRG.*

The *Marquiſate* of *BRANDENBOVRG*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Kingdome of *Poland*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedome of *Saxony*; on the North, with *Pomerania*, and parts of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the South, with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and *Sileſia*. So called from *Brandenbourg* the chief town of it, and becauſe once the *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *middle Marches*; according as they were extended further towards *Poland*, by little and little as the Emperors were able to get ground of thoſe potent people.

The Country containeth in length from Eaſt, to Weſt, 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correſpondent breadth; the whole compaſs making up 540 miles of the laſt accompt. Within which tract are comprehended 55 Cities or walled Towns, 80 Towns of trade, (*Mark-ſtecken*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them:) 38 Caſtles or Manſion-houſes of Noblemen, 17 Monaſteries, and 10 Parks well ſtored with beaſts of game: the Country otherwiſe (conſidering the extent thereof) but thinly inhabited; nor well provided of neceſſaries, excepting corn, of which theſe North-Eaſt Countries afford very great plenty.

1. *ALTE MARK* or the *OLD MARK*, ſo called becauſe the antient *Marches* of the Empire, againſt the *Sclaves*, lyeth betwixt *Lawenbourg* and the *Elb*; with which it is bounded on the Eaſt. Chief Towns thereof. 1. *Tangermond*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tonagra* or *Angra*, honoured ſometimes with the *Reſidence* of *Charls* the fourth. 2. *Stendall*, the chief of theſe *Old Marches*. 3. *Soltwedel*, divided into two Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gurdeleben*, fortified with the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſhimpe*. 5. *Oſterberg*. 6. *Senhunſen*, ſaid by ſome, but falſely, to be ſo called from the *Senones* whom they would make the old Inhabitants of this Country (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation,) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable

In the *MIDDLE-MARCHES* or *UPPER MARCH*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Odera*, the Towns of moſt note are 1 *Butzaw*, a *Commendatory* of the *Templers* in former times. 2 *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well fortified piece. 3 *Oderburg*, called ſo from that River, on which it

is ſit uate: remarkable for a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Marqueſſe Albert* the ſecond, at which all paſſengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenbourg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence. By ſome ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, Captain of the *Gaules*, more truly by one *Brando* a Prince of the *Franconians*, *Anno Ch.* 140. 5. *Frankefort* (for diſtinction ſake named) *ad Oderam*, on which River ſituate; the ſoil about it being ſo plentifully ſtored with Corn and Wines, that it is not eaſie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be moſt enamoured of it. It was made an *Univerſity* by Marqueſs *Joachim*, *Anno* 1506. and is alſo a flouriſhing and famous *Emporie*, though not comparable to that of the other *Franckefort*, ſeated on the *Mein*. 6. *Berlin*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Marqueſs, ſituate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which riſing in *Luſatia* falleth into the *Albis*. 7. *Havelbourg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, who acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg* for his Metropolitan. *Brandenbourg.*

3. In the *NEWMARCK*, extending from *Odera*, to the borders of *Poland*; and called ſo, becauſe laſt conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire; there is *Cuſtrine*, a very ſtrong and defenſible Town, ſeated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*; fortified with great charge by *John*, ſon of Marqueſs *Joachim*, and by him intended for his ſeat. 2. *Sunnerberg*; and 3. *Landsberg*, both upon the *Wart*. 4. *Soldin*, in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenberg*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with as ſtrong a Caſtle towards *Pomerania*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great Nation of the *Suevians*: and after them, the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greateſt nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of it. But *Brandenbourg* being won from them by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, *Anno* 920. (at what time the Goſpel was firſt preached amongſt them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim* (eldeſt ſon of *Theodorick*, the ſecond Earl of *Oldenburg*) a valiant Gentleman, with the title of *Marqueſs*, or *Lord Marcher*, *Anno* 927. conditioned that he ſhould defend thoſe *Marches* (the *old Marck*, as they now call it) againſt the *Sclaves*. Theſe Marqueſſes at the firſt *Officiary*, at the appointment of the Emperour, and to him accomptable. *Sigard* the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the firſt *Elector* of theſe *Marqueſſes*, and *Eudo* the ſecond of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the laſt that held this honour at the Emperours pleaſure; that dignity after his deceaſe being made Hereditary, in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, ſurnamed *Urſus*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his border, by the conqueſt and extermination of the *Sclaves*; cauſed their unpeopled Country to be planted with new *Dutch* Colonies, out of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Flanders*, and thoſe parts of the *Netherlands*. The houſe of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, to *Lewis* his ſon; by *Otho*, the brother of that *Lewis*, ſold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charls* the fourth; by *Sigiſmund* the ſon of *Charls*, to *Iodocus*, Marqueſſe of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the ſaid *Sigiſmund* conferred on *Frederick Burgrave* of *Nurenberg*, in recompenſe of his faithfull ſervice in the wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his poſterity it remaineth, but much increaſed in power and patrimony, by the additions of the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Marquiſates of *Anſpach*, and *Iagendorfe*; the Earldom of *Marck* in *Weſtphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*; the Lordſhips of *Prignits*, and *Croſſen*, in *Sileſia*; the Towns of *Hoff*, and *Colmebach*, in *Voiteland*; with the County of *Rapin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cothus* in the *Lower Alſatia*. Inſomuch that this is now the moſt powerfull Family in all *Germany*. The Marqueſſes hereof from *Sigifride* to *Albert*, the ſon of *Urſe*, &c. follow in this order.

The MARQUESSES of *BRANDENBOURG*.

A. Ch.

927 1 *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim*, made the firſt Marqueſſe of this border, by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt.
2 *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the firſt.
3 *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created Marqueſſe hereof by the ſame Emperour.
4 *Hugh*, the ſon of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5 *Sigard*, the brother of *Hugh*, made by the ſame Emperour, the firſt Marqueſſe Elector.
6 *Theodorick*, the ſon of *Sigard*, outed of his command by *Miſtivoius*, one of the Princes of the *Sclaves*, named *Obotriti*.
7 *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel* (the *Sclaves* being beaten and expulſed) created Marqueſſe and Elector, by *Conrade* the ſecond,
8 *Udo* II. ſon of *Udo* the firſt, proſcribed by *Henry* the fourth, for joyning with *Rodulph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the war againſt him.
9 *Primiſlaus*, King of the *Obotriti* (the Anceſtor of the Dukes of *Mecklinbourg*) advanced unto theſe honours by the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, and by him held unto his death. After which made hereditary by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the ſon of *Urſus*.
1152 10 *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the firſt *Hereditary* Marqueſſe; father of *Barnard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.
11 *Otho*, ſon of *Albert*.
12 *Otho* II. ſon of *Otho* the firſt.

13 *Albert*

Brandenbourg.

13 *Albert* II. brother of *Otho* the 2d.
14 *John*, ſon of *Albert* the 2d.
15 *John* II. ſon of *John* the firſt.
16 *Conrade*, brother of *John* the 2d.
17 *John* III. ſon of *Conrade*.
18 *Waldemar*, brother of *John* the 3d.
19 *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the firſt, by his brother *Henry*.
20 *John* IV. brother of *Waldemar* the ſecond, the laſt Marqueſs of the houſe of *Anhalt*; the Marquiſate eſcheating to the Empire, for want of heirs.
21 *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, by his father the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the ſaid eſcheat.
22 *Lewis* II. ſurnamed the *Roman*, on the reſignation of his brother, ſucceeds in the Marquiſate, and Electoral dignity.
23 *Otho*, brother to *Lewis* the firſt and ſecond, who ſold the Marquiſate and Electoral dignity to *Charles* the fourth.
24 *Wenceſlaus*, ſon of *Charls* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.
25 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperour of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenbourg*; who ſold this Marquiſate to *Iodocus*, Marqueſs of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the ſame on
1417 26 *Frederick* *Burgrave* of *Nurenberg*, ſolemnly inveſted herein at the Council of *Conſtance*, *Anno* 1414. for which inveſtiture he paid unto the Emperour the ſum of 400000 Crowns.
1440 27 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Frederick* the firſt, to whom the Emperour *Frederick* the 3d. gave the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.
1470 28 *Albert*, brother of *Frederick* the 2d, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquiſhed to *Bugeſlaus* the 10th. the poſſeſſion of *Pomeren*; but his Succeſſors ever ſince have retained the Title, and kept on foot their pretenſions to it. From *Frederick* his ſecond ſon, deſcended *Albert*, the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Frederick* the firſt Marqueſſe of *Auſpach*, *George* the firſt Marqueſs of *Jagendorf*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who ſo haraſſed *Franconia* in the days of *Charls* the fifth.
1486 29 *John*, ſon of *Albert*.
1499 30 *Joachim*, ſon of *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Frankford*, *Anno* 1506. and authorized the *Reformation* of Religion in his time begun.
1535 31 *Joachim* II. ſon of *Joachim* the firſt.
1571 32 *John George*, ſon of *Joachim* the 2d.
33 *Joachim Frederick*, ſon of *John George*.
34 *John Sigiſmund*, ſon of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to wife the Lady *Anne*, daughter of *Albert Frederick*, the ſecond Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *William* the firſt, Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, &c.
1620 35 *George William*, ſon of *John Sigiſmund*, and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right, the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Marck*, and *Ravenſpurg*, and the ſeigneurie of *Ravenſtein*; which he poſſeſſed a while, divided with his Couſin *Volfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, ſon of *Magdalen* the younger ſiſter of *Mary Eleanor*. But falling out about their *partage*, the Palatine of *Newburg*, called in the *Spaniard*; and the Father of this Marqueſs in behalf of his Son, called in the *Confederate States* of the *Netherlands* to aſſert their titles. After the death of *Bugeslaus* the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have ſucceeded alſo in that eſtate, then poſſeſſed by the *Swede*. Of the agreement made between them, and the great accrewment thereby following to the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, we ſhall ſpeak more there.
36 *Frederick William*, ſon of *George William*, now *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*.

The *Religion* of this Country is for the moſt part according to the form and doctrine of *Luther*: firſt introduced and authorized by Marqueſs *Joachim* the firſt. In which eſtate it continued till the breach betwixt *George William*, the Father of the preſent *Elector*, and the *Palatine* of *Newburg*. At which time the *Palatine* having maried a daughrer of *Bavaria*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Popiſh* party, reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aid of *Spain*: and this *Elector* having maried a ſiſter of *Frederick* the fifth, *Elector Palatine*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himſelf to be of that that party and opinion, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aids of *Holland*, *Anno* 1614. But when, on the perſwaſions of his wife, he ſet out an *edict* for ſuppreſſing the *Lutheran* forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was the year 1615) the people of this *Marquiſate* roſe in Arms againſt him: the difference being thus compoſed, that the *Lutheran* formes only ſhould be uſed in all the *Churches* of the *Marquiſate* of *Brandenbourg*, for the contentation of the people; and the Marqueſs have the exerciſe of his new *Religion*, for himſelf, his Lady, and thoſe of their opinion, in his private Chapels.

The Territories of this Family are the greateſt, as before is ſaid, of any in *Germany*; but a great part of it is very barren, and his ſubjects in thoſe parts as poor as the Country: much of his new acceſſions yeelding little but the titles only. So that neither in *Revenue* or *Power*, he is able to keep rank with the

the Duke of *Saxony*: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmoſt to 200000 l. *per annum*, which is but half of the receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*. *Pomerania.*

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membred and beaked *Or*.

15. POMERANIA.

POMERANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pruſſia*, from which parted by the River *Weſel*, or *Viſtula*; on the Weſt, with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coaſt hereof for the ſpace of 200 *Engliſh* miles; and on the South, with the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerani*, a nation of the *Sclaves*, to whoſe ſhare it fell; or from the ſituation of it on the Sea ſhore, as the word in the *Sclavonian* doth ſeem to import.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, abundantly fruitfull in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzig*, and tranſported thence to all parts of *Chriſtendom*, in their times of ſcarcity: yeelding alſo good ſtore of paſturage, and great herds of Cattel; with plenty of butter, cheeſe, honey, and ſome reaſonable quantities of flax. Populous, and thoſe people of ſtrong conſtitution, as living under a ſharp and peircing air. The whole divided into the Continent, and the Ilands; the Continent into the *Upper Pomeren*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze*, to the River *Odera*; the *Lower*, reaching from the *Odera*, to the borders of *Pruſſia*.

Chief places in the UPPER, are 1. *Barth*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the ſeat of the Dukes of this hithermoſt *Pomeren*. 2. *Wolgaſt*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over againſt the Iſle of *Uſedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeren*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeren-Wolgaſt*: the firſt Town taken in by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous war for relief of *Germany*, *Anno* 1630. 3. *Straelſund*, a Town of great Trading, and much reſort, ſeated upon the ſame Sea alſo, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the courſe of the *German* wars. 4. *Griſpswald*, on the ſame Sea, betwixt *Wolgaſt*, and *Straelſund*, made an Univerſity, *Anno* 1456. 5. *Anclaw*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Tribſca*, ſituate on a lake, out of which the ſaid River hath its courſe.

Then in the LOWER *Pomeren*, there is *Camin*, an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the *Baltick* ſhore, over againſt the Iſle of *Wollin*. 8. *Colberg*, a ſtrong Town on the ſame ſhore alſo, at the fall of the *Perſant* into the Sea. 9. *Coſtin*, the laſt Sea-Town of this tract, lying towards *Pruſſia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the land, as is alſo 11 *Griffenberg* upon the *Roga*, and 12 *Stetin*, on the *Odera*, once a poor fiſher-Town, now the *Metropolis* of this part of the Country; riſing to this greatneſſe (after the embracing of *Chriſtianity*) by the fall of *Wineta*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all theſe parts. The ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of the *Lower Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomeren Steten*, as for diſtinction ſake they are uſed to call them.

The *Ilands* hereunto pertaining, are thoſe of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Uſedom*, touched upon before; but now more punctually to be handled. That of moſt note is *RUGEN*, over againſt *Straelſund*, from which divided only by a narrow ſtrait, in length ſeven *Dutch* miles, and as much in breadth; ſo that the compaſſe of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or an hundred *Italian* miles; and yet once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309. by the force of an outragious tempeſt, a great part of it lying towards the South-eaſt, as far as to the Iſle of *Budon* (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and ſunk ſo deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greateſt ſhips that be ſail over it. The Iland plentifull of Corn, the *Granary* of *Straelſund*, as they call it commonly; and reaſonably well ſtored with Cattel; full of Bayes, Creeks, and winding ſhores, with many and vaſt Promentories thruſting into the Sea, which gives them great increaſe of fiſhing; Antiently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third, to *Bugislaus*, and *Barnimus*, Dukes of *Pomeren*; continuing ever ſince part of that eſtate. The chief Town of it is called *Berga*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iland, but not containing above 400 Families; others of leſſe note and eſtimation, being, 2. *Sugart*, 3. *Vick*, 4. *Bingſt*, &c. ſmall Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the beſt they have. And yet ſo populous is the Iland, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men, if there be occaſion.

The ſecond of the three, in repute and bigneſſe, is that of *Wollin*, ſituate over againſt *Camin*: ſo called from *Wollin*, the chief Town (*Julinum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Epiſcopal See by *Wartislaus*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of this nation, and on the ſackage of this City removed to *Camin*. A Town which once ſo flouriſhed in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Conſtantinople*; The *Ruſſians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandales*, &c. having here their particular ſtreets. But being miſerably ſacked by *Waldemar*, King of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1170. moſt of the trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, ſince which time it never could come near its former glories. The laſt in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, ſeated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgaſt*; ſo called from *Uſedom*, the chief Town in it, of which little obſervable. All three the habitation of the antient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer*, King of the *Heruli*, ſubverted the Weſtern Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themſelves maſters of it, till ſubdued by the *Gothes*. Thoſe which remained in theſe Ilands became after ſubject to the *Sclaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the firſt whoſe name occurs in ſtory, being *Crito*, the ſon of *Ratze*, a puiſſant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holſt*, *Ditmarſh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built, about the year 1100. afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Adolph* the ſecond, Earl of *Holſt*, by ſome eſteemed the Founder of it. But his iſſue male failing in the year 1326. it fell by compact made between

them

Pomerania. them, to the Dukes of *Pomeren*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject.

And as for *Pomeren* it self, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-navi*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with parts of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*: into whose void rooms, the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, (the most potent Nation of the *Sclaves*) did in fine succeed; extending their Dominions to the banks of the *Vistula*, which to difference it from *Pomeren*, was called *Pomerella*. But that part of it being given by *Mestovinus* the last Prince thereof, dying without issue, *Anno* 1295. to *Primislaus* Duke of *Poland*: the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania*, became confined within the bounds before laid down. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on good record, was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, *an.* 933. whose Grandson *Suantiborus*, commanded over all this tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his sons, *Bugislaus* who had *Pomerella*, retained the language and old customs of the *Sclavonians*; *Wartislaus*, who possessed the residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*; the Countrey by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*: added unto the Empire and accompt thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, sons of *Wartislaus*, were made Princes of the *Empire*, and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otho*, sons of *Barnimus* the first; and the house of *Otho* failing in the person of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, to *Frederick* the second, Marquesse and *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*: the cause of much contention amongst these Marquesses, and the other house of the Dukes of *Pomeren*, but thus agreed upon at last; that both Princes should continue the *Arms* and title, the possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whose issue male, it should descend upon the heirs of the house of *Brandenbourg*. The succession of these Princes followeth in this order.

The DUKES of *POMERANIA*.

1 *Wirtislaus*, the first *Christian* Prince of the *Pomeranians*, baptized by *Otho* Bishop of *Bamberg*, *Anno* 1124.

1128 2 *Bugislaus*, son of *Wartislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of *Pomeren*.

1188 3 *Bugislaus* II. son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.

1222 4 *Barnimus*, son of *Bugislaus* the second, after whose death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

DUKES of *Wolgast*.

1277 5 *Bugislaus* II. son of *Barnimus*.
1319 6 *Wartislaus*, son to *Bugislaus*.
1326 7 *Barnimus* II.
1365 8 *Wartislaus* II.
1394 9 *Barnimus* III.
1405 10 *Wartislaus* III.
1456 11 *Ericus*, son of *Wartislaus*.
12 *Bugislaus* III. commonly called the tenth, the younger Princes of both houses making up the tale, succeeded *Otho* the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting so the whole into one estate.
1523 13 *George*, son of *Bugislaus* the tenth.
1531 14 *Philip*, son of *George*, in whose time the *Reformation* made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.
1583 15 *Bugislaus* IV. but the 13th. in the *Dutch* accompt, son of *Philip*; his younger brother *Ernestus Ludovicus* having that of *Stetin* for his share.
16 *Bugislaus* V. and 14th. son of *Bugislaus* the fourth, born in the year 1580. succeeded in *Pomeren* of *Wolgast*; as *Philip Julius* son of *Ernestus Ludovicus* did in that of *Stetin*. After whose death *Bogislaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*; in a fair way to have lost all to the prevailing *Imperialists*, had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* stopped their violent Progress. But *Bogislaus* dying without issue in the time of the war, and in him the male issue of the house of *Bugislaus* the tenth being quite extinguished, *George William* Marquess and *Elector* of *Brandenbourg* put in his claim for the Estate; according to the compact and agreement spoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes*, (who under colour of aiding the last Duke, had possessed themselves of all the strong places in the Countrey) it was accorded and concluded at the *Treaty* of *Munster*, that all the *Higher Pomerania*, with the Isles of *Rugen*, and *Wollin*, and the town of *Stetin*, should from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*; the *Lower Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the house of *Brandenbourg*, so long as the male issue lasteth; on default whereof, that also to be added unto that *Crown*; the Arms, and Titles, to be used by both promiscuously. And in regard the Marquess of *Brandenbourg* was to part with the *Upper Pomeren*, for the contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm peace could be made in *Germany*:) it was also there agreed upon, that the *temporal* estates of the Bishopricks of *Halberstad*, *Minden*, and *Camine*, together with that of *Magdeburg*, (after the decease of the present Bishop) should be for ever added to the possessions of that house; the Marquesses and *Electors* of it to be thenceforth entituled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Halberstad*, and *Minden*. But what will be the

DUKES of *Stetin*.

1277 1 *Otho*, Duke of *Pomeren-Stetin*.
1345 2 *Casimir*, son of *Otho*.
1368 3 *Casimir* II. son of *Casimir*.
1374 4 *Suantiborus*, brother of *Casimir* the 2d.
1413 5 *Casimir* III. son of *Suantiborus*.
1433 6 *Joachim*, son of *Casimir* the 3d.
1451 7 *Otho* III. son of *Joachim*, dyed without issue, *Anno* 1464.

the issue of these conclusions, future times must shew.
The Arms of *Pomeren*, are A *Gryphon*.

16. *MECKLENBOVRG.*

The *Dukedom* of *MECKLENBURG*, is bounded on the East, with *Pomerania*; on the West, with *Holstein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Denemark*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South, with *Brandenbourg*, and *Saxen-lawenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*, (both names in several languages of the *Dutch*, and *Greeks*, signifying a great City,) a great town of that name here being, in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, (the old Inhabitants of these parts) whose chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Countrey, decayed to nothing. The Country of the same nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in corn.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Wismar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea; raised out of the ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. the Haven hereof capable of the greatest vessels, to which it gives a safe and assured *Station*, whence the name of *Wismar*; the word signifying in the *Sclavonian* language *idem ac certum mare* (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or safe Sea. Now one of the *Hanse-towns*, and being it lies conveniently for the use of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the treaty of *Munster*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof, to have the temporalities of the Bishopricks of *Swerin*, and *Ratzenburg*. 2. *Swerin*, seated upon the South side of the Lake so named; an Episcopal See, and honoured with giving the title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3. *Malcaw*, first walled by *Niclot*, Prince of the *Vandals*, *Anno* 1270. 4. *Ratzenburg*, an Episcopal See, spoken of before. 5. *Rostoch*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanse*-towns, to *Lubeck* and *Dantsick*. Large, rich, and much frequented by all sorts of Merchants; in compass almost six *English* miles, situate on the River *Warn*, neer the fall thereof into the *Baltick*. Honoured with an University, here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1419. the first Professors in it being brought from *Erdford* in *Saxony*. 6. *Stargard*, which once gave the title of Duke, to the younger Princes of this house. 7. *Sarentine*, memorable for a Nunnery, there founded by Duke *Magnus* the second. 8. *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the second, as an out-work to *Rostock*, which he had lately bought of *Christopher*, then King of *Denmark*. 9. *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10 *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeren*, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenstein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and prosperous Commander of the *Imperial* Forces, in the late war of *Germany*: but miserably murdered after all his services, by command of the Emperour. 11. *Fitchtel*, both pleasantly and strongly seated, on the edge of a Lake. 12. *Dammin*, a strong Town on the *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the rest of the *Heruli*, and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians* being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their irruptions on the borders of the *Roman Empire*, made them more considerable: the Princes of these Nations using no other title than Kings of the *Heruli*, and *Vandals*. Of these the first is said to be one *Anthyrius*, son of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learned his first rudiments of warfare under *Alexander* the *Great*. Out of his loins descended a long race of Kings, amongst whom *Rhadaguise*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth*, invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick* the seventeenth of these Kings, weary of so cold a dwelling, passed towards the South; and having harassed *Gaul* and *Spain*, shipped himself over the Straits of *Gibralter*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*: whose successors we shall meet with there. By *Vitalaus*, the youngest son of *Genericus*, the son of *Gunderick*, the line of these Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti*, and other of the *Sclaves*, succeeding into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the title of *Kings of the Vandals*, and called themselves Kings of the *Heruli*, and *Obitriti*: continuing it to *Pribislaus*, or *Primislaus* the second, who wrote himself *Pribislaus Dei gratia, Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circipanorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kissinorum, Vandalorumque Rex*. Making herein a general muster of those tribes of the *Sclaves* and *Heruli*, which remained under his command. But he being vanquished by *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the title of King was laid aside; his successors contenting themselves with that of *Princes*. Divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribislaus*, by his son *Henry*, into two Estates: *Henry* assuming to himself the title of Prince of the *Obotriti*; and *Niclot*, that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the posterity of *Niclot* failing in *William*, the last of that line, *Anno* 1430. his title, with the lands thereunto belonging, fell to *Henry* the *fat*, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*; to which honour, *Albert* and *John*, the sons of *Henry* the fourth, descended from the elder house, had been advanced by the Emperour *Charls* the fourth, at *Prague*, *Anno* 1348. The succession of which family from *Pribislaus*, take in order thus.

The PRINCES of the *HERVLI*, and DUKES of *MECKLENBURG*.

1158 1 *Pribislaus*, the last King, and first Prince of the *Heruli*, after their subjection to the *Saxons*; restored to this title and his former estate by the bountiful conquerers, to be held under the right and *homage* of the house of *Saxony*.

1179 2 *Henry*, son of *Pribislaus*, baptized, with all his people, in his fathers life-time, by the perswasion of *Henry*, Duke of *Saxony*, and *Bavaria*; by whom restored to their Estates.

3 *Henry* II. son of the former *Henry*, dividing the estate with his brother *Niclot*.

Saxonie.

1228 4 *John*, ſurnamed the *Divine*; ſo called, becauſe created *Doctor of Divinity* in the Univerſity of *Paris*, whither he was ſent by his Father to learn good Arts.

1260 5 *Henry* III. ſurnamed of *Hieruſalem*; becauſe of his expedition thither againſt the *Saracens*.

1302 6 *Henry* IV. ſurnamed the *Lion*, for his valour and undaunted conſtancy.

1319 7 *Albert* and *John*, the ſons of *Henry*, going to *Prague* with a Princely train, to attend on the Emperour *Charls* the fourth, were by him created *Princes* of the *Empire*, and Dukes of *Mecklenberg*, *Anno* 1348.

1380 8 *Magnus*, ſon of *Albert*.

1384 9 *John*, ſon of *Magnus*, the founder of the Univerſity of *Roſtock*, *Anno* 1419.

1423 10 *Henry* V. ſurnamed the *Fat*, who on the death of *William* the laſt Prince of the *Vandals*, ſucceeded into his Eſtate.

1447 11 *Magnus* II. ſon of *Henry*, founder of the Cathedral Church of *Roſtock*.

1503 12 *Albert* II. ſon of *Magnus* the ſecond.

1547 13 *John Albert*, ſon of *Albert* the ſecond, endowed the Univerſity of *Roſtock* with the lands of ſome diſſolved *Monaſteries*; and authorized in his Eſtates, the *Reformation* of Religion begun by *Luther*.

1578 14 *John* III. ſon of *John Albert*.

1592 15 *Adolph Frederick*, and *John Albert*, ſons of *John* the third, diſpoſſeſſed hereof by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1628. their Eſtates, with the title of Duke of *Mecklenberg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Fridland*. Who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the *Aſſertor* of the liberties of *Germany*, reſtored it to the proper owners. The heirs to whole Eſtates is *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the only ſon and heir of *John Albert*; the other of theſe two Brothers being without iſſue.

The DUKEDOM and ESTATES of *SAXONIE.*

The Dukedom and Eſtates of *SAXONIE* (not reckoning thoſe which now paſs under other names, and ſhall hereafter be deſcribed in their ſeveral places) are bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and parts of *Lunenbourg*, and *Holſtein*; on the North, with other parts of *Brandenbourg*, and part of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the South, with *Franconia*, and ſome parts of the Upper Palatinate.

It is (we ſee) an aggregate body, conſiſting of two General limbs, 1. The Dukedom of *Saxonie*, 2. The Eſtates of *Saxonie*, or *Saxonie* properly ſo called; The firſt containing the whole Provinces of 1. *Oberſax*, or the *Upper Saxonie*, the proper ſeat of the Duke-Elector; 2. *Miſnia*, 3. *Voiteland*, and 4. *Turingia*; The other, thoſe of 1. *Anhalt*, 2. *Mansfield*, 3. *Meydebourg*, and 4. *Lawenbourg*. And as it is an aggregate body, ſo is it comprehenſive of all thoſe honourary Titles, by which the Princes of *Germany* are diſtinguiſhed from one another; that is to ſay, the Electorſhip of *Saxonie*, the Dukedom of *Lawenbourg*, the Biſhoprick of *Meydebourg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, the Lantgravedom of *Turingia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Seigneurie or Lordſhip of *Voiteland*. Of theſe eight Provinces, the 4. firſt mentioned are wholly ſituate without the limits and precincts of the antient *Saxonie*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxonie*, becauſe they make up the whole Patrimony and Eſtate of the Dukes Electors, who ſince the proſcription and deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, *Anno* 1180. in ſome or other of theſe Countries have had their fixed ſeat and habitation. The 4. laſt being parts of the antient *Saxonie*, and heretofore in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes hereof, do ſtill paſs under the accompt and name of *Saxonie*, though in the hands of ſeveral owners; all of which do acknowledge a ſuperiority in the Duke Elector, if not ſome great relation to him, and dependance on him: ſo that we have an Heterogeneous body to diſcourſe upon, and therefore muſt conſider ſeverally of the parts thereof, but ſo, that either firſt or laſt we ſhall find them all in the ſucceſſion and affairs of the Dukes of *Saxonie*, 1. then

The Dukedom of *Saxonie* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Haſſia*, and part of the Proper *Saxonie*; on the North, with the Proper *Saxonie* only; and on the South, with *Franconia*, and the Upper *Palatinate*. So called, becauſe the proper Seat, and Patrimony of the Duke Elector; of very different nature both for Air and Soyl; but the laſt eſpecially: as we ſhall ſee by looking over the particular Provinces of 1. *Oberſax*, 2ly. *Miſnia*, or *Meiſſen*, 3ly. *Voiteland*, 4ly. *Turingia*, by the *Dutch* called *Duringen*.

1. *OBERSAX*, or the *Upper Saxonie*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Marches of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Mansfield*, from which parted by the River *Salza*; on the North, with *Meydebourg*; on the South, with *Miſnia*. The Reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. The Air hereof ſomewhat ſharp and peircing, the ſoyl ſufficiently fruitfull, but therein not to be compared with *Miſnia*, and much leſſe with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Torge*, or *Torgow*, by ſome placed in *Miſnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province. Built on the weſt ſide of the *Elb*, in form *Orbicular*, and falling every way from the ſides of a mountain: beautified with a ſtately and pleaſant Caſtle, belonging to the *Elector* of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof; built by *John Frederick* the *Elector*, *Anno* 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compaſſe; for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke, 500 *Guldens*. 2. *Warlitz* upon the *Elb* once a *Commandery* of the *Templars*. 3. *Weiſſenberck*, lying towards *Brunſwick*. 4. *Kemberg*, on the weſt ſide of the *Elb*. 5. *Butefelt*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Mulda*; and 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*; in an open plain; but ſtrongly fenced with walls, ramparts, and deep ditches. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one fair ſtreet, extending the whole length of the City; in the midſt whereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market-place, and the common Council-houſe. In former times the ſeats of the *Dukes Electors*, till the *Electoral* dignity was conferred on the houſe of *Meiſſen*, who liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dreſden*. But ſo, that *Wittenberg* is ſtill acknowledged for the head City of the *Electorate*; and was made an Univerſity for *Divines* by Duke *Frederick*, *Anno* 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as ſome conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greateſt: famous for the ſepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the walls of Popery broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderfull ſucceſſe whereof we have ſpoke already. *Miſnia.*

Of the affairs of this little Country we can ſay but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxony*, and conſequently to the name which it ſtill retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, whoſe greatneſſe was grown formidable even to the Emperours themſelves: the Dukedom of *Saxony* was diſmembred into many parcels; *Brunſwick* and *Luneburg* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived; the lower parts of *Weſtphalen* ſeazed on by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*; the parts thereof about the *Weſer* by the Biſhop of *Paderborn*; *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Turingia* laying hold of that part of this eſtate which was neareſt to him; *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made imperial, or governing themſelves as Free Eſtates; the Anceſtors of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*, endowed with large poſſeſſions alſo out of this great Patrimony, the Emperours not only conniving at it, but willingly conſenting to that diſſipation, the better to reward and content thoſe Princes, who had aſſiſted him in his warrs againſt the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the antient *Saxony* to be eſtated upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbaroſſa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* ſo deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good ſervices to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Witteberg* by *Conrade* the 3d. and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lawenbourg*, yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector. It pleaſed the Emperour *Frederick* to beſtow upon him all thoſe Lands and Territories which lay between the *Salza*, and the *Elb*, on the North of *Miſnia*, to make *Witteberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the Country thus united to it, the name of *Oberſax*, or *Upper Saxonie*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meiſſen*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Luſatia*; on the Weſt, with *Duringen*; on the North, with *Saxonie*, ſpecially ſo called, and ſome part of *Brandenburg*; on the South, with *Voiteland*, and ſome part of *Bohemia*. The Country once overſpread with woods, and full of bogs, rendring the air unwholeſom, and the ſoil unprofitable: both rectified by the care and induſtry of the people; now yeelding ſome mines of ſilver, and great plenty both of Corn and Paſturage: well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Pliſſes*, *Elſter* and *Mulda*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1. *Dreſden*, ſeated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks, 150 Pieces of Ordnance; a ſtable of the Dukes, in which are 128 horſes of ſervice; and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horſe and Foot, may be armed at a days warning. The Town it ſelf ſituate on both ſides of the River, by which divided into the old Town and the new, joyned into one by a bridge of 800 paces in length: the Country round about it very rich and pleaſant, able to ſuſtain great multitudes; for that cauſe made the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Mersburg*, both ſeated on the River *Salza*, two Epiſcopal Sees. 4. *Lipſique*, as famous a Univerſity for *Philoſophers*, as *Jene* in *Lorrein* is for *Phyſicians*. It ſeemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not ſuffer their *Beer* to periſh, of which here is ſo much drunk and exported; that the very cuſtom of it due unto the Duke, amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly: yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the moſt part of fair free ſtone, honoured with the Courts of Juſtice for all the Country. Though ſeated on the meeting of *Pleſs*, *Parde*, *Elſter*, 3 Rivers, which lie almoſt on all ſides of it: yet it is not ſtrong, having been thrice taken by the *Imperialſts* in leſs than 2 years, during the late *German* wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing elſe) for the great battel fought near it, between the late K. of *Sweden*, and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 of both ſides, and the loſs of all the baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the *Imperials*) freed all theſe parts of *Germany* from that civil and ſpiritual bondage, which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5. *Mulberg*, on the *Elb*, where *John Frederick* the Elector was diſcomfited and taken priſoner by *Charls* the fifth, by whom deprived not long after of his ſtate and dignity. 6. *Meiſſen*, on the weſt ſide of the ſame River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, for defence of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: a Biſhops See, and the firſt ſeat of the Marqueſſes of this Country, both which, together with the *Burgrave* of the Town, had their Palaces or Manſion-houſes ſtanding cloſe together on the top of a hill, over-looking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meiſſen*. 7. *Friberg*, near the

Voiteland, and *Turingia*.

Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in mines of silver. 8. *Roclite*, not far from which are rich mines of Tinne; discovered first in these parts by a *Cornish-man* spoken of before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanduri*, and *Suardones*, subdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Sclaves*, surnamed *Winithi*: first conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who built the strong Town of *Meissen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Sclaves* from any incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germanie*, it was a while governed by such Officers, as by the Emperours were appointed to guard these *Marches*: the first *Proprietary* Marquesse being one *Echard*, son of the Earl of *Oostland*, (descended from a younger son of *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third: not made hereditary, till the time of *Henry* the fifth, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade*, Marquesse of *Landsberg* and *Lusatia*, whose Nephew *Theodorick*, by his son *Otho*, surnamed the *Rich*, maried *Judith*, daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which match, *Duringen* accrewed to the house of *Meissen*, *Henry* their son succeeding in both estates. To this *Henry* succeeded *Albert* his son, and after him successively four *Fredericks*: the last whereof, on the failer of the house of *Anholt*, was by the Emperour *Sigismund*, created *Elector*, and Duke of *Saxony*; either because descended from the house of *Wittikindus*, or as most able to pay for the Investiture, or else best able to sustain the estate and dignity of a Duke Elector, which had but weakly been supported by the former Family. In his posterity these honors and estates do as yet continue. But neither all nor always in the possession of the Dukes Electors. For in the partage made between *Ernestus* and *Albert*, the sons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greatest part of it, was assigned to *Albert*, succeeded in the same by *George* and *Henry* his two sons: which was Father of that *Maurice*, who being setled and confirmed herein by the Duke *John Frederick*, did after most unworthily take up arms against him, supplanted him, and finally possessed himself of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

VOITELAND, is bounded on the East, with *Bohemia*; on the West, with *Frankenland*; on the North, with *Misnia* or *Meissen*; on the South, with the *Upper Palatinate*. So called, as some say, from the *Iuites* or *Vites* (some of that people, who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered *Britain*) of whom it had the name of *Viteland*, that is to say, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did spread so far Eastward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Sclaves*, who finding it deserted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland*, is both plain and obvious. It is the smallest Province of all *Germany*, and never of such repute as to have any particular Prince, as most others had; but always reckoned as an accessory to some greater Estate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities of great estimation: the chief of those which are, being 1. *Olnits*, 2. *Worda*, 3. *Cornah*, 4. *Sebneberg*, near the mountains called *Sudeta* by *Ptolemie*, famed for silver mines. 5. *Gotzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*, and 7. *Hoffe*, not much remarkable; but only for the Princes of it of the house of *Brandenbourg*; called formerly *Curia Pegniana*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nertereates* and *Danduti*: succeeded to by the *French* and *Sclaves*, as they severally descended Southwards into warmer Countries. Possessed and planted by the *Sclaves* it obtained this name. But being a small Nation, and a small Estate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince: but did most probably belong to the Lords of *Meissen*, upon which it bordereth; and now, in their right, to the Duke of *Saxonie*. But so that the Duke of *Saxonie* is not the sole Lord hereof: the Marquesses of *Ansbach* of the house of *Brandenbourg*, possessing the Towns of *Hoffe* and *Colmbach*, and some other parts of it: the Patrimony at present of *Christian*, son of *Joachim Ernest*, the late Marques of *Ansbach*, who now enjoyeth them, with the title of the Marques of *Colmbach*.

4. *TURINGIA* is bounded on the East, with *Misnia*, and the River *Salza*; on the West, with *Hassia*; on the North, with the wood *Hartz*, and the Proper *Saxonie*; on the South, with the mountainous Forest of *Duringer-wald*, by which parted from *Frankenland*: the Forest and the Country both so called from the *Turingians*, the antient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country invironed round about with woody mountains, but within those mountains plain and pleasant, fruitfull in Corn, and very plentifull of woods, which yeeld great profit to the people; not without some mines of gold and silver, and rich pits of salt; able to furnish out a feast, but for wine only, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more, yet is it so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Salza*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of *Physicians*, founded in the year 1555. by the sons of *John Frederick* the Elector, taken prisoner and deprived by *Charls* the 5th. 2. *Erdford*, on the River *Gers*, out of which are cut so many chanels, that every street hath almost the benefit of it. A rich, populous, and well-built City, accompted amongst the best of *Germanie*, and made an University in the time of the Emperour *Wencesslaus*, *Anno* 1382. Many times burnt, but still reviving, as the Phenix out of the Ashes, into greater glory. At first immediately subject to the Archbishops and Electors of *Mentz*, the first founders of it; as being built by *William*, son of the Emperor *Otho* the first, and, then Archbishop of that City, of whom

whom more anon; but having freed themſelves from him, they have ſince governed themſelves as a free eſtate, and one of the *Hanſe Towns*, not ſubject to the Duke of *Saxonie* as their Lord, but their Patron and good neighbour only. 3. *Mulhuiſen*, and 4. *Noorthuiſen*, two imperial Cities; but elſe not obſervable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the levy here made *Anno* 1530. between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof and of one another in the purſuance of that work, by which famous confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his ſhoulders; but the Religion by him reformed, grew to that ſtrength, that no force or policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kala*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falza*; of great reſort for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended into other places; at which Town *Philip* the Lantgrave was treacherouſly taken Priſoner, as you ſhall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town, which together with the Caſtle of *Galha* were aſſigned for the Eſtate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate, Pr. *Jo. Frederick*, D. of *Saxonie*, after his diſcomfiture and impriſonment by *Charles* the 5th. the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of the *Saxon Weymar*, who live here in a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle, made of poliſhed ſtone, moſt artificially contrived, and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleaſures; but made more pleaſant by the watering of the River *Ilma*, upon which it ſtandeth. 8. *Gotha*, upon the River *Lonne*, ſaid by *Rathaimerus* to be built by the *Gothes*, and by them thus named. A place not long ſince of great importance, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle called *Grimmenſton*, that being made the retiring place of one *Grunbachius*, and other ſeditious perſons, under the protection of *John Frederick*, one of the ſons of the deprived Electors; it was taken after a long ſiege by *Auguſtus* the Elector of *Saxonie* (to whom the ſtrength of this peece being in the hands of the injured family, was a great eye-ſore) and by the command of the Eſtates of the Empire in the Diet at *Regensberg*, *Anno* 1567. demoliſhed, and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chaſnari* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Turingi*, who with the *Heruli*, under the conduct of *Odoacer*, conquered *Italy*, called by ſome *Turcilingi*; by others ſuppoſed to be the *Tirangetæ* of *Ptolemy*. Not heard of in this Country till the reign of *Childerick*, the fourth King of the *French*; then taking up the whole Provinces of *Haſſia*, and *Turingia*, under one *Biſſinius* their King. Their Arms at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion *Barri*, *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great battel of *Zulph*, near *Colen*, where they joyned with the *Almans*, they were afterwards totally ſubdued by *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Metz*, their King *Hermanfridus* taken, and moſt perfidiouſly ſlain; part of their Country taken from them and given to the *Saxons* (who aſſiſted in that war againſt them) becomming ſubject for the reſt to the Kings of *France*. But ſo, that for ſome time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfroy*, two brothers, Kings hereof ſucceſſively, being Uncles to *Radegond*, a Princeſſe of great piety, the wife of *Clotaire* King of *France*, *Anno* 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the firſt, conferred not long after by *Otho* the firſt (the ſon of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger ſons, then Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*, which he left to his ſucceſſors in that See; governed by their *Vidames*, and Provincial *Officers*, till the time of *Conradus Salicus*; when *Ludovicus Barbatus* one of theſe *Vidams* (or *Vicedomini*) made himſelf the proprietary of it, and left the ſame unto his children after his deceaſe. But in the time of *Conrade* the 2d. the iſſue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or diſpoſſeſſed, it was by the Emp. conferred on *Lewis* of *Orleance*, ſon to a ſiſter of his Empreſs, the title of Lantgrave being given to them of this family for their greater honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five ſucceſſively had the name of *Lewis*, this eſtate continued: next falling to *Herman*, a brother of the fifth *Lewis*, who by contributing to the ruine of *Henry* Duke of *Saxonie*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, in favour of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, had for his ſhare (in the dividing of the ſpoil) thoſe parts of his eſtates which lay neareſt to him, called then the Palatinate of *Saxonie*, recovered for the moſt part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead this Country fell to a ſixt *Lewis*, and laſt of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the male iſſue failed, having continued for the ſpace of 252 years. To pleaſe all parties intereſſed in the ſucceſſion, the eſtate before entire, was divided into two parts or Provinces, of which this now called *Duringen* or *Turingia*, was allotted to *Henry* Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, ſon of *Judith*, the daughter of *Herman*: The Weſtern part thereof, with the title of the Lantgravedom of *Heſſen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth; in the deſcription of which Countries we ſhall hear more of them. United thus to the houſe of *Meiſen*, in the perſon of *Henry* the then Marqueſs, *Anno* 1263. It flouriſhed in long peace and happineſſe under the Princes of that houſe; finally, much increaſed both in power and dignity by the addition of *Oberſax*, and the Electorſhip of *Saxonie*, conferred on *Frederick* the 4th. Marqueſſe and Lantgrave of theſe Countries, *Anno* 1423. in which eſtate it ſtill continueth, the 4th. and faireſt of all theſe Provinces, which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxonie*, (as for the reaſons above mentioned it hath long been called) though none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the bounds and limits of the antient *Saxonie*, as before was ſaid.

2. *SAXONIE*, properly ſo called, or the *Proper SAXONIE*, is bounded on the South, with *Duringen*, and the great wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Hercynian* Foreſt, and from thence ſo named; on the Eaſt, with part of *Miſnia*, *Oberſax*, and the Marches of *Brandenbourg*; upon the North, with the Dukedom of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the Weſt, with that of *Brunſwick*, *Lunenburg*, and part of *Holſtein*: So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof (of whom more anon) and the ſole part of all their great and many conqueſts, which retains their name.

The Air hereof ſomewhat ſharp, but healthy: the ſoyl in the South-weſt parts hilly and uneven,

Anhalt, and *Mansfield*.

chiefly rich in Minerals, elsewhere sufficiently fruitfull: Divided into 4. Estates; that is to say, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Mansfield*, 3. the Bishoprick of *Meydebourg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lawenbourg*.

1. The Principate of *ANHALT*, is bounded on the South, with *Duringen*, and the Wood called *Hartz*; on the West, and North; with the County of *Mansfield*; on the East, with *Misnia*, much shaded, if not too much over-grown with woods; parts of the *Hartz* or old *Hercynian* Forrest, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the *Dutch* signifying a wood or Forest; and the Princes of this house created to this dignity by the stile of *Principes Hercynniæ* in *Anhalt*. Chiefer Towns of it are, 1. *Berneberg*, the Dynastie and usual title of this house, before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2. *Builenstede*, part of the antient Patrimonie of the first Princes hereof. 3. *Dessaw*, the birth-place of some, and the burial-place of others of this familie; beautified with a strong Castle built by Pr. *Albert* the 2d. *Anno* 1341. 4. *Sterveſt*, the usual place of the Princes residence. 5. *Coeten*, a well-fortified place, in vain besieged by the joynt forces of the Archbishop of *Meydebourg*, and the Earl of *Schwartzenwald*. 6. *Candt*, here sometimes also stood the old Castle of *Ascandt*; the first seat of these Princes, but long since destroyed, now only to be visited in Records and Histories.

We shall be sent no higher than the first besieging of the *Roman Capitol* by the antient *Galls*, to find out the pedigree and descent of the Earls of *Lyppe*; but we must go as high as the *Ark* for the Princes of *Anhalt*; some fetching them from *Askenaz*, the son of *Gomer*, and nephew of *Japhet*; from whom and no other this *Ascanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedegree. But to content our selves with more sober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodorick* K. of *Metz* undertook the Conquest of the *Turingians*, he was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000. men; under the conduct of one *Bernewall*, or *Bernthobald*, a man of great power and rank amongst them; the *Saxons* recompenced for that service, with such parts of the conquered Countrey as lay neerest to them, and *Bernthobald* himself rewarded with the Town of *Ascandt*, *Ballenstede*, and the Lands adjoyning, *Anno* 524. to be holden by them under the soveraignty of the *French*. From which Town and the Castle of *Ascandt*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Pepin* K. of the *French*, (for denying the accustomed tributes) *Anno* 747. most probable it is that the name of *Ascanian* Family was assumed by them: So that we may behold it as a Family, of as great antiquity as the most in *Europe*, little inferiour unto any of the greatest Monarchs. His Successors for the most part busied in wars against their neighbours of *Misnia*; but rather upon hope of spoyl and plunder, than in way of Conquest: Their power and Patrimony being very little improved, till the time of *Albert* surnamed *Ursus*, descended by a long succession of Princes from *Bernewald*, or *Bernthobald* before remembred. This *Albert* having done many signal services unto *Conrade* the 3d. and his son *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, (especially in taking the Cities of *Breme*, and *Lunebourg*) was by the last created Marquess and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, *Anno* 1153. the Father of that *Bernard*, who by the munificence and bounty of the same Emperor, was created Duke Elector of *Saxonie*, in the room of Duke *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, *Anno* 1180. becomming so the stem of the two greatest Princes of all the Empire. *Henry* the 2. son of this *Bernard*, was by the same Emperour not long after inriched with much of the lands and territories lying neerest to him, which had before belonged to Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, and created the first Prince of *Anhalt*, the first of all this antient and illustrious Family, which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his race to this very day. The two Electorates of *Saxonie*, and *Brandenbourg*, being in the mean while translated unto other Families; the most considerable of which Princes, though all men of *Eminence*, were 1. *Rodolph*, General of the forces of the Emperour *Maximilian* the first, against the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in battel. 2. *George* the *Divine*, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whose Sermons and other tractates (learned for the times he lived in) are still extant. 3. *Christian*, born in the year 1569. Commander of the forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the warres of *Bohemia*.

2. The Earldom of *MANSFIELD*, is bounded on the East, with the river *Salza*, parting it from *Oberſax*; on the West, with the river *Wyeper*, which divides it from *Brunſwick*; on the North, with the Bishoprick of *Meydebourg*; and on the South, with *Anhalt*, and part of *Duringen*; so called from *Mansfield*, once the chief Town of it, situate on the river *Wyeper*, but now much decayed; the other Towns of note herein being, 2. *Isleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cause more convenient for the seats of Justice, first setled here by Earl *Voldradus*, *Anno* 1448. and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom; By some affirmed to have took this name from the Goddess *Isis*, who after the death of her husband (as is said by *Tacitus*) visited these parts. Famous more certainly for the birth of *Luther*, transplanted hence for the study of good Arts to *Meydebourg*, and chosen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Witteburg*; where he hammered out that great work of the Reformation, as before was said; born here in the year 1483. and here deceasing in the house of the Earl of *Mansfield*, Anno 1546. 3. *Wyeper*, (or *Wypra*) so called of the river on which it standeth. 4. *Querefort*, the honourary title of the Ancestors of the Earls of *Mansfield*. 5. *Rotenberg*. 6. *Absted*. 7. *Helderung*, bought of the Earls of *Houstein*.

Some who delineate the Pedegree of these Earls of *Mansfield*, fetch it out as high as from one *Heger* one of King *Authurs* Knights of the round table, born at *Mansfield* in *Nottingamshire*: who setling himself in *Germany*, gave that name to his house; a military original, and very suitable to such an active and warlike *Family*. But those that do not soar so high high, derive them from the Earls of *Quereford*, men of authority in these parts; made more considerable by *Lotharius* Emperor and and

Duke

Dnke of *Saxony*, but moſt of all by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who conferred many goodly Lordſhips, lying hereabout (once part of the Eſtate of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof; a conſtant follower of his, not only in his wars againſt Duke *Henry* before named, but in thoſe alſo which he managed in the *Holly-land*, in the courſe whereof he died at *Antioch*, *Anno* 1187. His Nephew *Burchard* by a ſon of the ſame name, was the firſt of this Family that had the title of Earl of *Mansfield*, about the year 1250. Continued ever ſince unto his poſterity (but under ſome acknowments to the Electors of *Saxony*.) Of theſe the moſt eminent were *Valeradus* one of the council of Eſtate to the Emperor *Sigiſmond* Anno 1411. a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof. 2. *John George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3. *Peter Erneſt*, Governor of *Luxembourg*, under *Charles* the 5th. and *Philip* the 2d. by whom much exerciſed and employed in their wars with *France* and their baltick Rebels. 4. *Albert*, a conſtant Friend of *Luthers*, and a faithfull follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived Elector, in whoſe quarrel being outed of his Eſtate, he retired to *Meydebourg*, which he moſt gallantly defended againſt the Emp. and 5. *Erneſius*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his ſon *John*, ſo famous for the war which he maintained in moſt parts of *Germany*, againſt *Ferdinand* the 2d. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine, and the States of *Bohemia*, with ſo great conſtancy and courage. *Meydebourg and Lawenbourg.*

3. On the North of *Mansfield* and *Oberſax* lyeth the Biſhoprick of *MEYDEBOURG*, having on the Weſt, parts of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*; and on the North and the Eaſt, the Marches of *Brandenbourg*. So called from the Epiſcopall See founded in *Magdeburg* the chief City; by ſome called *Meydburg*, and *Meydenburg*: whence by a *Greek* name *Parthenopolis*; and *Virginopolis*, by a mungrel word, made of *Greek* and *Latine*. A City ſeated on the *Elb*, divided into three parts, but all ſtrongly fortified; begirt with high walls, deep ditches, and almoſt unconquerable Bulwarks; yet very beautifull withall (before the laſt deſolation of it) of elegant buildings, fair ſtreets, and magnificent Temples. Built in the form of a *Creſcent*, by the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, the founder of it, who having tranſlated hither the *Archiepiſcopal* See, for the greater honor of the place, built the Cathedrall of Saint *Maurice*, where his wife lies buried, *Anno* 948. teſtified by the inſcription to be the daughter of *Edmund*, King of *England*. A Town which hath long flouriſhed in a great deal of glory, and taſted of as much affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refuſing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could firſt take it. It was firſt hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Meglenberg*; but he was in a *Camiſado* taken Priſoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made Captive, and 260 horſe brought into the City. Next, it was beſieged by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxony*, who on honourable terms, was after a long ſiege received into it, *Anno* 1550. when it had ſtood on its own guard the ſpace of three years. Which long oppoſition of one Town, taught the *German* Princes what conſtancy could do; it held up the coals of Rebellion in *Germany*, and indeed proved to be the fire which burned the Emperours *Trophies*. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that confederacy, by which not long after this great Emperour was driven out of *Germany*. At laſt it yielded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whoſe ſucceſſors it hath ſince enjoyed a long courſe of felicity, till the year 1631. in which moſt miſerably burnt and ſacked by the Earl of *Tilly*: of whom it is obſerved, that after that fact he never proſpered, being ſhortly after totally routed at the battell of *Leipſick*; and wounded to the death not long after that, near the River *Leck*. Other places of note in this Biſhoprick, are, 2. *Wormſted*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary ſeat, or retiring place of the Biſhop. 3. *Grabatz*, upon the River *Struma*. 4. *Mockern*, on the ſame River. 5. *Barleben*, beneath *Meydebourg* on the *Elb*. 6. *Lunburg*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Struma*; not much obſervable.

The *Archiepiſcopal* See being tranſlated hither from *Valerſleve*, and *Ureſe*, (places too obſcure for ſo great a dignity) by *Otho* the firſt; and by him endowed with great *Revenues*, and a goodly territory round about it: the Arch-biſhop hereof was alſo by his procurement made the *Primate* of *Germany*; acknowledged ſo by all, but the Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, and the three *Spiritual Electors*. For the Adminiſtration of Juſtice in matters *Criminal* and *Civil*, the ſaid *Otho* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgrave*; conferring that office firſt on *Gero*, Marqueſſe of *Luſatia*. Through many hands it came at laſt to *Burchard*, Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*; many of which enjoyed this honour: ſetled at laſt by the Emperour *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Eſtate. The *Archbiſhops* notwithſtanding continued Lords of it, and the whole territory or Diſtrict adjoyning to it; till the *Reformation* of *Religion*: when the *Revenues* ſeparated from the juriſdiction, were given to *Lay Princes*, (for the moſt part of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*) with the title of Adminiſtrator. Finally, by the *Pacification* made at *Munſter*, this fair eſtate is to be ſetled for ever on the *Electors* of that houſe, to be poſſeſſed by them, and their Heirs and Succeſſors, by the title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*; the better to content them for the conceſſion which they made to the Crown of *Sweden*, of a great part of their right and title to the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

4. On the Northweſt of *Magdebourg*, and on both ſides alſo of the *Elb*, lyeth the Dukedom of *LAWENBOURG*, bounded on the North, with *Mecklenbourg*; on the Eaſt, with part of *Holſtein*; and on the South, with the River *Elb*, and part of *Lunenbourg*; So called of *Lawenbourg* the chief Town thereof, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The Town firſt built, as ſome conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxonie*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, the better to aſſure his Conqueſts on that ſide of the River, by whom it

was

Lawenburg. was called *Leopolis*, or *Leobourgum*, and *Lawenbourg* for the ſame reaſon by the *Dutch* or *Germans*: on the proſcription of which Prince, the Country being waſted, and the Towns deſtroyed, *Barnard* of *Anhalt* deſigned his Succeſſor in the Dukedom of *Saxonie*, liking the ſituation of it, cauſed it to be re-edified in ſtronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the town of *Erdenbourg*, being carried croſs the water to inlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the ſaid Duke *Henry*, in the courſe of that war, it was re-built again by D. *Barnard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by ſome writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein, are 2. *Erdenbourg*, a well-fortified piece, oppoſite to *Lawenbourg*, on the hither ſide of the *Elb*; not ſo large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lawenbourg* being made greater by the leſſening of this. 3. *Raceburg*, an Epiſcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lion*, upon his gaining of the *Sclaves* to the Chriſtian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4. *Moeln*, on the further ſide of the *Elb*, not far from *Lawenbourg*, the cauſe of much contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a title thereunto.

This Country being for the moſt part under the command of the *Sclaves*, was from them Conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, and by his care converted to the Chriſtian Faith: but he being proſcribed, and this Seigneurie extorted from him, by Duke *Barnard* of *Anhalt* his ſucceſſor in the Electoral dignity, it was by *Albert*, the ſon of this *Barnard*, conferred on *John* his ſecond ſon, from whom the Dukes of *Saxonie*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon-Lawenbourg*, do derive themſelves; who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigiſmund* at the death of *Albert* the 3d. the laſt of the direct line of *Barnard*; or elſe not caring for a title, which carried with it too great ſail, for ſo ſmall a veſſel, as the Eſtate of the Elector at the preſent was, have ſince contented themſelves with their antient Patrimony.

It is now time we ſhould proceed to the Story of *Saxony*; the antient Inhabitants of which tract were the *Longobardi*, or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*; and part of the *Cheruſci* about *Mansfield*, and *Witeberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is: containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eydore* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſſe*; and from the River *Saltza*, to the *German* and baltick Oceans. Theſe ſaid by ſome to be a people of *Aſia*, and there called the *Sacæ*; who finding that ſmall territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forſook their Country, and at laſt fixed themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſs*; where they firſt took the names of *Sicaſons* (or *Sac-ſons*) that is to ſay, the ſons of the *Sacæ*. The improbality of this we have there diſputed. Omitting therefore that and the like *Originations* of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*; ſome tribe of that moſt populous and potent people of the *Suevi*; but for the reaſon of the name, let every man enjoy the pleaſures of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolemies* time, they were poſſeſſed of thoſe parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eydore*; part of which tract is now known by the name of *Holſtein*: and were accompted in that time to be no new-commers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they inlarged their quarters, and paſſing over the *Elb* in the time of the later *Roman* Emperors, poſſeſſed themſelves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then buſied in the conqueſt of more fruitfull Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine, they ſtrecht themſelves from the River *Saltza* on the Eaſt, to the *German* Ocean on the Weſt, and took up the now Dukedomes of *Holſtein*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Brunſwick*; the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Verda*, *Hilderſheim*, *Halberſtad*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, the Earldome of *Mansfield*, *Weſtphalen*, both *Friſelands*, *Overyſſell*, with as much of *Guelderland* and *Holland*, as lay on that ſide of the *Rhene*. By which accompt the preſent *Electoral* Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony*, in their poſſeſsion: the ſeat and Patrimony of the *Electors* being removed into other Countries, upon the alterations and changes which have hapned in that Eſtate: the name and title of *Saxony*, being given to the Country about *Witteberg*, or no other reaſon, but becauſe it was the chief ſeat of the Duke *Electors*. But to proceed, a ſtout and valiant Nation queſtionleſs they were, the conquerors of the Iſle of *Britain*; and the laſt people of the *Germans*, which yielded up their Countrey unto *Charls* the Great; by whoſe means gained unto the Goſpell, *Anno* 785. Their laſt King was called *Wittichindus*, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France*, ſince the time of *Hugh Capet*; the preſent Kings of *Denmark*, of the houſe of *Oldenburg*; the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and *Savoy*; the Marqueſſes of *Montferrat*; beſides many other noble and illuſtrious Families, though of leſſer note. The right or direct line of the male iſſue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charls* the great created, of a King, the firſt Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the perſon of *Otho* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenburg*, (but the preciſe time I find not:) *Henry* ſurnamed the *Saint*, who ſucceeded this *Otho* in the Empire, the next in the collateral line, being pretermitted, either becauſe at that time ſetled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or becauſe there was no hope of Poſterity by him, or for ſome other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this line, till on the forfeiture incurred by his poſterity, in the perſon of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, it was beſtowed by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, upon *Barnard* of *Anhalt*, Anno 1180. whoſe iſſue in the right line failing, it was finally eſtated by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, on *Frederick* Lantgrave of *Turingia*, and Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, Anno 1423. In his Family it hath ſince continued, but not without a manifeſt breach in the courſe of the ſucceſſion: which hapned, when *John Frederick* being deprived of the Electoral dignity and eſtate; his couſin Duke *Maurice* was inveſted in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious but unfortunate Prince (if he may juſtly have the title of unfortunate who ſuffered in ſo good a cauſe, for ſo good a Conſcience) being diſcomfited and taken priſoner at the bat-

tel

tle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die; but pardoned at the last upon the intercession of some powerfull friends, upon condition that he should resign the Electoral dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperour: Which done, the Emperour gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gotha*, and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the lands & territories thereunto adjoyning; from which last place his posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon Weymar*. It was also much insisted on that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he opposed with such Christian stoutnesse, that in the end it was omitted. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperour (with the general consent of the Electors) invested *Maurice*, Cousin German to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Signeuries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him; which though it were a great wrong both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John Frederick*; yet is it observed by some grave writers, to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John Frederick*, whose Christian patience and magnanimity during the whole time of his imprisonment, added great reputation to the cause for which he suffered. 2. In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in pursuing of it, as the other was. And 3. In relation to the children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment; insomuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quod filios reliquerit sui dissimilimos*. It is now time we should proceed to the investiture of the new Elector. And because these *translations* of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the ceremonies thereat used, as I have collected them out of *Sleiden*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which sate the Emperour, and the *Princes Electors* in their Robes. On the back side of the State, were placed the Trumpeters; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of horsemen; The first in a full career run their horses up to the pavilion: Out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, *Wolfang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. These when they had in like manner coursed their horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the *Electorship*. He consulted with the *Electors*, made answer by the Bishop of *Mentz*, that he was content, so Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice*, with the whole troup; before him were born *ten ensignes* bearing the *Arms* of as many *Regions*, wherein he desired to be invested. When he came before the Throne he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly desired the Emperour to bestow on him the *Electorship* of *Saxonie*, and all the lands of *John Frederick* late *Elector*. His Petition was granted. Then the Bishop of *Mentz* read unto him the oath, by which the *Electors* are bound unto the Empire: which Oath, when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect *investiture*. Duke *Maurice*, now the *Elector* of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperour thanks, promised his *fidelity*, made obeysance, and took his place amongst the *Electors*. This solemnity was on the 24 day of *Feb. Anno* 1548. Which said, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of *SAXONIE*.

785 1 *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*, vanquished, and created the first *Duke* by *Charls* the *Great*.

825 2 *Bruno*, the brother of *Wittikind*.

843 3 *Luitulphus*, son of *Bruno*.

855 4 *Bruno* II. son of *Luitulphus*.

876 5 *Otho*, brother of *Bruno* the second.

916 6 *Henry*, surnamed the *Fowler*, son of *Otho*, Emperour of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*.

938 7 *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxonie*, and Emperour, called *Otho* I.

974 8 *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxonie*, and Emperour, called *Otho* II.

984 9 *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxonie*, and Emperour, called *Otho* III.

10 *Barnard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of *Saxonie*, and the first *Elector*, by *Otho* the third, who was the last Duke of the race of *Wittikind*.

1021 11 *Barnard* II. son of *Barnard* the first.

1063 12 *Ordulphus*, son of *Barnard* the 2d.

1073 13 *Magnus*, son of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodulphus* of *Schwahen* against *Henry* the fourth, was taken prisoner and deprived.

14 *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxonie* by *Henry* the fourth. He was also Emrour of the *Romans*.

1125 15 *Henry Guelph*, surnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the husband of *Gertrude*, daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom created Duke *Elector*.

1139 16 *Henry* II. surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, son of *Henry* the *Proud*, by his first wife *Walfildis*, the daughter of *Magnus*, added to this estate the Country of *Mecklenbourg* and *Lawenbourg*, which he had conquered from the *Sclaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his duty to the Emperour *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, and siding with the *Pope* against him, he was by him publickly proscribed, his neighbour Princes armed against him, and by their joynt forces outed of all his estates every one

lay-

Brunſwick and Lunenb.

laying hold of that which lay neareſt to him, by means whereof this great Eſtate being parcelled and divided into many parts; the title of the Duke *Elector* of *Saxonie*, was given by the ſaid Emperour to

1180 17 *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, ſon of *Albert*, Marqueſs of *Brandenb.* and grandchild of *Elica*, another daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his ſeat and habitation, the Emperour gave the City of *Wittenberg*; the head, ſince that time, of this *Electorate*.

1212 18 *Albert*, ſon of *Barnard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lawenburg* doe derive their Pedegree.

1273 19 *Albert* II. ſon of *Albert* the firſt.

1327 20 *Rodolph*, ſon of *Albert* the 2d.

1356 21 *Rodolph* II. ſon of *Rodolph* the firſt.

1373 22 *Wenceſlaus*, ſon of *Rodolph* the 2d.

1389 23 *Rodolph* III. ſon of *Wenceſlaus*.

1419 24 *Albert* III. ſon of *Rodolph* the third, the laſt *Elector* of *Saxonie* of the houſe of *Anhalt*.

1423 25 *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, (on the failing of the houſe of *Anhalt*, *Anno* 1422.) created Duke of *Saxonie* by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*; the houſe of *Lawenburg* pretermitted for want of putting in their claim; by the advancement of which Prince, the title of Duke of *Saxonie* returned again to the houſe of *Wittikind* (the firſt King and laſt Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other families for the ſpace of 200 years.

1428 26 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Frederick* the firſt.

1464 27 *Erneſt*, ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond.

1486 28 *Frederick* III. ſon of *Erneſt*.

1525 29 *John*, brother to *Frederick* the third.

1532 30 *John Frederick*, ſon of *John* the firſt; a great advancer of the *Reformation* of *Religion*; impriſoned, and deprived of his *Electorſhip* by *Charles* the fifth.

1547 31 *Maurice*, Couſin German once removed to the Duke *John Frederick*, as being the Grandſon or nephew of *Albert*, the younger brother of *Erneſtus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the fifth, whom afterwards he drave out of *Germany*; and was ſlain in the battel of *Siffridhuſe*, againſt Marqueſs *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*.

1553 32 *Auguſtus*, brother of *Maurice*.

1586 33 *Chriſtian*, ſon of *Auguſtus*.

34 *Chriſtian* II. ſon of *Chriſtian* the firſt.

35 *John George*, brother of *Chriſtian* the 2d. who firſt ſided with the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond againſt the Elector *Palatine*; and after with the King of *Sweden* againſt the Emperour.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are thought to be the greateſt of any one Prince of *Germanie* (the *Imperial* family excepted) amounting at the leaſt to 400000*l. per annum*; though in multitude of Vaſſals, and greatneſs of territory he come ſhort of ſome of them. And to make up this ſum (or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariſeth to him out of *ſilver mines*, is no leſſe than 130000*l.* yearly; the *impoſt* laid on *Beer* in *Leipſich* only, a City but of two Pariſh Churches (by which conjecture at the reſt) being farmed at 20000*l. per annum*. Then hath he the *tenths* of all ſorts of increaſe, as of corn, wine, &c. the *Salt-houſes* at *Hall*, and ſome other places; very fair lands belonging unto his domain; and beſides this, a ſtanding and perpetual tax laid upon the Subject, towards the maintenance of the war againſt the *Turk*; granted at firſt in times of danger and hoſtility; but gathered ever ſince in the times of peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared againſt him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* ſo he keeps his State, well ſerved, and better attended, than any other of the *Electors*: there being at one time in the Court of *Chriſtian*, the Father of the preſent Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations (beſides the Nobility of his own) all Penſioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the *Saxon*, being two of the number.

The Arms of *Saxonie*, are Barre-wiſe of ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, when he confirmed *Barnard* of *Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Barnard* deſiring of the Emperour to have ſome difference added to the Ducal coat; (being before only Barry, *Sable* and *Or*) to diſtinguiſh him and his ſucceſſors from thoſe of the former houſe: the Emperour took a Chaplet of *Rue*, which he had then upon his head, and threw it croſs his Buckler or *Escheocheon* of Arms, which was preſently painted on the ſame.

18 *BRVNSWICK*, and 19. *LVNENBOVRG*.

The Dukedoms of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBOURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxonie*, extracted both from the ſame root, and many times united in the perſon of the ſame one Prince; ſhall be joyned together in the ſtory, though ſevered in the *Chorographie*, or deſcription of them; bounded on the Eaſt, with *Magdebourg* and *Mansfield* in the Upper *Saxonie*; on the Weſt, with *Weſtphalia*; on the North, with *Denmark*; on the South, with *Haſſa*. The Air in all parts hereof very cold and comfortleſs, but ſound and healthfull; the ſoil towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, but meanly fertile; towards *Duringen* and *Haſſia*, mountainous & woody;

in

in other parts very plentiful of corn, and well provided also of such other commodities, as usually doe grow in those colder climates. *Brunswick*, and *Lunenburg*.

But to take the *Chorographie* of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East, with the Earldom of *Mansfield*; on the West, with *Westphalen*; on the North, with *Lunenburg*; on the South, with *Hassia*. So called from *Brunswick* the chief City, and the head of this Dukedom.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Goslar*, upon the River *Gose*, whence it had the name; Of a poor Village, made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a stately Palace. Now one of the *Imperial* Cities. 2. *Helmstat*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*; first fortified by *Charls*, son of *Charls* the *Great*, for a bridle to the neighbouring *Sclaves*: and being after given to the Abbats of *Werda*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick*. 3. *Quedelnberg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the *Abbesse* whereof had formerly the priviledges of a *Prince* of the *Empire*. 4 *Hildesheim*, an antient City, honoured with an *Episcopal* See by *Charls* the *Great*, at the first conversion of the *Saxons*. 5. *Grubenhagen*, which gave title to a younger branch of the house of *Brunswick*; a *principality* and a member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover*, on the River *Lem*, well built, very strongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onacter*, which passeth through it, passed over by many handsom Bridges; the *Metropolis* of the antient *Saxonie*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom: though of it self *Imperial*, and one of the *Hanse*. The City of a *Quadrangular* form, seated in the midst of a plain very fruitful of corn; in compass about two *Dutch*, or eight *English* miles; somewhat larger than *Nurenberg*, and less than *Erdford*: containing in that compass not above twelve Churches, whereof two have steeples covered with lead, a third with brass, all the rest with tile. Rich, populous, and strongly fortified, on some sides with a double, on others with a treble wall; within which walls are five Cities, distinguished by *privileges*, but united by *Laws*. The whole first built by *Bruno*, son to *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxonie*, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the first, about the year 861. from whence it had the name of *Brunswick*, or *Brunonis Vicus*; by the more elegant *Latinists*, *Brunopolis*. 8. *Hamelen*, on the East side of the *Weser*, or *Visurgis*, encompassed with a deep moat, (occasioned by a stream cut out of the River) round about which are divers fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this town is the mountain called also *Hamelen*, unto which the *Pied-piper* (as they call him) led the children of *Halberstad*, where they all sunk, and were never more seen; but of this story more hereafter, when we come to *Transylvania*. 9. *Wolfehaiten*, or *Wolfen buttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunswick* giverh him his title, yet will it not yield him any obedience, but reputeth her self among the *Hansetowns*; for which cause there have been great wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Halberstade*, a Bishops See; the late Bishop (or *Administrator* of the Bishoprick) being *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, that noble young souldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Cousin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the *Garter*. A Bishoprick of great revenue, and a very large territory, since the alteration of *Religion*, given with the title of *Administrator*, to the sons of *Brunswick*: but now by the conclusions at *Munster*, assigned over to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, with the title of Prince of *Halberstade*, the Family of *Brunswick* being to be recompenced with an alternate succession in the Bishoprick of *Osnaburg*, and some other additionals. 11. *Hetfield*, the seat sometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxonie*; but not else observable. 12. *Amelungsbame*, another town of the said *Palatines*, by one of which called *Sigifridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abby; the principal towns (in those dayes) of this *Palatinate*; which bordering on that part of the *Turingians* which is now called *Hassia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Lantgraves of that Country, on the proscription of Duke *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*; but on the failer of his line, recovered for the most part by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBOURG* hath on the East, the Diocese of *Magdebourg*; on the West, the Diocese of *Bremen*, a part of *Westphalia*; on the North, the *Elb*; and on the South, the Dukedom of *Brunswick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chief City, once the seat of the Dukes.

Places of most observation in it, are 1 *Lunenbourg* it self, situate on the River *Elvenaw*, an *Imperial* City, and one of the principal of the *Hanse*; so called from the *Moon* here worshipped in the times of *Idolatry*. Of a round form, and seated in a pleasant valley; but with mountains near it: on one of which called *Calberg*, is a very strong Castle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens; who without this Fort, could not be master of their *Liberties*. The walls about it are of earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep; the buildings generally fair (for the most part of brick) the chief whereof is the *Common-Councel* house; the streets broad and long, with two spacious Market-places; but of no very pleasing smell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, half a mile in breadth; containing six Parish Churches. But the thing most considerable in it is the *Fountain* of *Salt*, (the greatest riches of this City) and the *house* in which the *Salt* is boiled, containing 52 rooms, and in each room 8 leaden pans, in which are boiled daily 8 tuns of *Salt*, every tun being sold for 8 *Flemish* shillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; some part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, some to the City, the rest to the *Adventurers* who employ their stocks on it. 2. *Cella*, the seat of the Duke of *Lunenburg*. 3. *Gethern*, of no great bigness or estimation, but for a strong Castle of the Dukes. 4. *Oldendorp*, situate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Esca*, memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 1633. betwixt the *Imperialists* and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, besides such as were found dead in the fields and high wayes, all covered over with dead bodies; took

1500.

Lunenburg. 1500 of them prisoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of *Ordnance*, good store of Ammunition, and three mules laden with silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this victory drawing in *Hamelen*, and other places of importance, which stood out before. 5. *Verda*, an *Episcopal* See, but made a *Lay fee*, as most other *Bishopricks* amongst the *Lutherans*; the profits thereof being received commonly by a son of *Danemark* with the title of *Administrator*: and lastly by the treaty of *Munster*, appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*; the Kings whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Verden*. 6. *Ratenburg*, the chief seat of the Bishops of *Verda*.

The antient Inhabitants of these Dukedoms were the *Dugublini* of *Tacitus*, with some parts of the *Chauci* and *Cherusci*: these last of most fame for the blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany*, after *Drusus*, for *Augustus Cæsar*. Who behaving himself with great insolency towards the Natives, was set upon by these *Cherusci*, and their confederates, under the conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongst them; himself slain, and his whole Army consisting of three Legions, miserably cut off, and despightfully used: which loss, and the shame thereof, so distracted the Emperour, (not formerly accustomed to the like misfortunes) that he was many times observed to tear his beard, knock his head against the posts, and cry out in the bitterness of his passion, *Redde mihi legiones Quintili Varo*. Having long time after this maintained their liberty (for the *Romans* kept themselves from that time forwards, on the *French* side of the *Rhene*) they were at last subdued by the *Saxons*: continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the 3 *Othoes*, Emperours of the *Romans*, and Dukes of *Saxonie*; who looking on the Empire as a state of Inheritance, diminished both the Grandure and Revenue of their antient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or endowment of many Bishopricks, and partly by the Erection of many petit Seigneuries, to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongst which, that of *Lunenbourg* was none of the least, continuing as a State distinct, till such time as *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenbourg* was by the Emperour *Otho* the 3d. made Duke of *Saxonie*, and created the first Duke Elector, whereby again united to the rest of that Dukedom, the greatest part whereof he held in his actual possession, together with a Superiority or Jurisdiction over all the residue (the great Bishopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is said, and it continued thus united, till the proscription of *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, spoken of before: whose reconciliation being made, by means of *Henry* the second of *England*, whose daughter *Maud* he had formerly maried, the Emperor *Barbaroſſa* restored to him again the Cities of *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg*, with their severall Territories; of which his two sons *Henry* and *William* were first created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunswick*, and the other of *Lunenbourg*, by the Emp. *Frederick* the second. Which honours and Estates do still remain unto their Posterities. Before I come to the successions of which Princes, I shall crave leave to speak of the Original of the *Guelsian* Familie, Dukes at the same time, of *Bavaria* and *Saxonie*; of which they are at this time the sole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus* (whence it had the name) the son of *Isenberdus* Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*; whose wife called *Jermintrudis*, having accused a poor woman of Adultery, and caused her to be grievously punished, for having 12 children at a birth; was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them sons. Her husband being absent at the time of her delivery, she commanded the *Nurse* to kill 11. of them; fearing (it seems) the like shame and punishment, as by her instigation was inflicted on the other woman. The *Nurse* going to perform this ungodly command, was met by the old Earl, then returning homewards: who asked her what she had in her Apron, she made answer *Whelps*; he desired to see them, she denyed him. Angry at this refusal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own sons, pretty sweet babes, and of most promising countenances. Examining the matter he found out the truth, and enjoyning the *old Trot* to be secret in it, he put the children out to Nurse; six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feast most of his own and his Ladies kinred, and attiring the young boyes all alike, presented them unto their mother. Who suspecting by the number of them, what the matter was, confessed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: Whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelpes*, alluding to the *Whelps* or Puppies, which the Nurse told him she had in her Apron. From the eldest of these *Guelphs* or *Guelpes* succeeded that *Henry Guelph*, son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorf*, whom *Conrade* the second made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whose posterity enjoyed that Dukedom: increased at last by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxonie*, in the person of Duke *Henry* surnamed the *Proud*, Father of *Henry* called the *Lion*, and Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the first Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, whose succession followeth in this Order.

The DUKES of *BRVNSWICK* and *LVNENBVRG*.

1 *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, the last Duke of *Saxony*, and the first of this Title.

Brunswick.		*Lunenburg.*	
1195	2 *Henry*, first Earl, after Duke of *Brunswick*.	1195	2 *William*, first Earl, after Duke of *Lunenburg*.
1213	3 *Otho*, son of *William* Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry*, Duke of *Brunswick* also.		
1254	4 *Albert*, son of *Otho*.	1252	4 *John*, son of *Otho*.
1279	5 *Albert* II. son of *Albert*.	1261	5 *Otho* II. son of *John*.
1318	6 *Otho* II. son of *Albert* the second.	1330	6 *Otho* III. son of *Otho* the second.

1334 7 *Magnus*

1334 7 *Magnus*, ſon of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other houſe, enjoyed both Eſtates.
1368 8 *Magnus* II. ſon of *Magnus* the firſt.
1373 9 *Henry* II. ſon of *Magnus* the ſecond.
1415 10 *William*, ſon of *Henry*.
1482 11 *William* II. ſon of *William*.
1503 12 *Henry* II. ſon of *William* the 2d.
1514 13 *Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.
1568 14 *Julius*, ſon of *Henry* the third.
1589 15 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Julius*, who maried the Lady *Elizabeth*, ſiſter to *Anne* Queen of *England*.
16 *Frederick Ulric*, ſon of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark*, and of *Henry Julius*.
1634 17 *Auguſtus*, ſon of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenbourg*, ſucceeded on the death of of *Frederick Ulric*, and the failer of the houſe of *Brunſwick* in him, in this Dukedom.

10 *Barnard*, brother of *Magnus* the ſecond.
1434 11 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Barnard*.
1478 12 *Otho* III. ſon of *Frederick*.
1514 13 *Henry* III. ſon of *Otho* the third.
1532 14 *Otho* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third.
15 *Erneſt*, the brother of *Otho*, ſucceeded in his brothers life time: ſurrendring his Eſtate for an Annual penſion.
1546 16 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Erneſt*.
1590 17 *Erneſt* II. ſon of *Henry* the fourth.
18 *Wolfgangus*, the brother of *Henry* the fourth, and Uncle of *Erneſtus* the ſecond, now Duke of *Lunenbourg*, *Anno* 1648.

The Arms of theſe Dukedoms were firſt the ſame, that is to ſay, *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reaſon of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandie*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* without any addition. But thoſe of *Lunenbourg* have added three Coates more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2. *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion *Azure*, Armed and Crowned *Or*; 3. *Azure*, a Lion *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*; and 4. *Gules*, within a Border Componie *Or*, and *Azure*; a Lion of the *ſecond*, Armed of the *third*.

HASSIA.

HASSIA, is bounded on the North, with *Brunſwick*; on the South, with *Veteravia*, or the State of *Wederaw*; on the Eaſt, with *Turingia*; and on the Weſt, with *Weſtphalia*. So called from the *Heſſi*, who having vanquiſhed the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Country, poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by *Boniface* or *Winifred*, an *Engliſh Saxon*, (afterwards Archbiſhop of *Mentz*) *Anno* 730. or thereabouts: Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old times there were golden Prelates and wooden Chalices; but in his time wooden Prelates and golden Chalices.* Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, *viz.* that *once the* Chriſtians *had blind Churches, and lightſome hearts*; but now they have *lightſome Churches, and blind hearts.*

The Country is very fruitfull of corn, and affordeth good *paſturage* for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great droves and herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags, and other Deer for the pleaſures of hunting, harboured in the woods hereof; with which in many parts of it, it is very much ſhaded. It breedeth alſo on the *Downs* good ſtore of ſheep, enriched with the fineſt fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple commodity of this Country: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Braſſe, Lead, and other metals; which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are 1. *Alendorf*, on the *Weſer*, (or *Viſnegis*) of much eſteem for the ſprings or Fountains of *Salt* which are thereabouts. 2. *Friſlar*, upon the *Eder*, well walled, and ſituate in a fruitfull and pleaſant ſoil; belonging to the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Mentz*; but in regard of the convenient ſituation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and ſometimes forcibly poſſeſſed, both by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and Dukes of *Saxonie*. 3. *Fuld*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the *Monaſtery* there founded by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by the name of Saint *Saviours*, the *Abbot* of which, is a *Prince* of the *Empire*, *Chancellor* of the *Empereſs*, and Lord of a goodly territory in this Country; called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* alſo, ſo called from the *French*, who incamped there in their wars againſt the *Saxons*; firſt founded by *Theodorick* the *French* King, *Anno* 520. but much enlarged by *Charls* the *Great*, about the year 804. 5. *Eſchewege*, on the brow of an hill near the River *Wert*; of great trading for the *Woad*, of which the fields adjoyning yeeld a rich increaſe. Being deſtroyed by the *Hungarians*, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond: and having ſuffered much miſery in the long war between *Adolph*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, it fell at laſt into the poſſeſſion of the *Lantgrave*, *Anno* 1387. 6. *Melſingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7. *Darmſtad*, lately, if not at the preſent, the ſeat and inheritance of Count *Ludovick*, of the younger houſe of the *Lantgraves*, taken priſoner by Count *Mansfield*, *Anno* 1622. and his whole Country expoſed unto ſpoil and rapine: becauſe (beſides many other ill offices) he was the chief perſwader of the *Princes of the Union*, to diſband their forces, provided for defence of themſelves and the *Palatinate*; and to reconcile themſelves to the Emperour. 8. *Marpurg*, the ſeat of the ſecond houſe of the *Lantgraves*, deſcending from that *Philip*, who was *Lantgrave* in the time of *Charls* the fifth, whom he ſo valiantly withſtood; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Lon*, amongſt Viny downs, and ſhady Mountains; honoured with an Univerſity founded here by *Lewis*, Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1426. and beautified with a magnificent Caſtle (the ordinary dwelling of thoſe Princes) ſituate on an high hill ſomewhat out of the Town, which gives it a very

Hassia gallant prospect over the Town and Country. 9. *Geisen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Cassels*, and a small University also. 10 *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging also to the house of *Cassels*, 11. *Cassels*, the chief Town and ordinary residence of the Lantgraves of the elder house, who are hence sometimes called the Lantgraves of *Cassels*: commodiously seated in a pleasant and fruitfull soil, and well fortified with strong earthen walls, and deep ditches; but the houses in it of no great beauty, being composed for the most part of wood, thatch and clay.

Within the limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, nor subject to the *Lantgraves* of *Hassia*, though included within the bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Western parts thereof, where it meets with *Westphalia*: in figure very near a square, each side of which is of the length of six ordinary *Dutch*, or 24 *English* miles. The soil much of the same nature with the rest of *Hassia*, save that it hath some veins of Quicksilver, and inexhaustible mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; these last in greatest plenty about *Veldung*, and the strong Castle of *Eisenburg*, two of the best Towns and places of it. Others of chief note, 3. *Waldeck*, it self on the River *Eder*, the first seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an antient Castle, from wheuce the whole Country takes its name. 4. *Mengerhuse*, in a fair Castle whereof live the present Earls. 5. *Witterberg*, in a pleasant and fruitfull Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twist* and *Abra*. 6. *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus*, for its golden Mines, yielding great profit to these Earls. The Pedegree of which Earls is fetched from one *Witichind* Earl of *Swalenberg*, whom *Charls* the Great made Advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, being an Office in these times of great jurisdiction. By *Witichind* the second, one of his Successors, this Office was surrendred into the hands of the Chapter, for the sum of 300 marks in silver: and to cut off all further claims, *Henry*, the nephew of this *Witichind*, by his son *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the first Earl: whose nephew *Henry*, surnamed *Ferreus*, subdued *Corbach*, *Anno* 1366. and added it to his Estate. By a third *Henry*, grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or man of Iron, this Earldom formerly held in fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was first put under the patronage and protection of the *Lantgraves* of *Hassia*, *Anno* 1428. as it continueth to this day: the Earls hereof content with their own estates, and more addicted to the Book, than unto the sword, have acted little in the wars to improve their fortunes.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the rest of *Hassia*, and also of the County of *Nassaw* in *Veteravia*, near unto adjoyning, were the *Catti*, or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Antients: first conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* forces) by the *Hessi*, and both subdued not long after by the *Thuringians*. Subject unto the *Lantgraves* of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry*, the last of the male issue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the division of whole estate, the Western moiety of *Duringen* fell to the share of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitours, who leaving the title of *Lantgrave* of *Duringen* to the Marques of *Misnia*, took to himself the title of the *Lantgrave* of *Hessen*, in memory of the *Hessi* spoken of before. Of his Successors the most puissant was that *Philip*, who in the time of *Charles* the fifth, much swayed the affairs of *Germany*, *Anno* 1520, he discomfited King *Ferdinand*, and restored *Ulrick* to the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*; *Anno* 1530. he united all the *Protestant* Princes and Cities of *Germany* in a *common league* at *Smalcald*; for the defence of the Protestant *Religion*; *Anno* 1545, he undertook the cause of *Goslaria* against the Duke of *Brunswick*, whom in a set battel he took prisoner, together with his son, and possessed his Country; *Anno* 1548. he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an *offensive* and *defensive* league against *Charls* the fifth. But that war succeeded not prosperously. For the Duke of *Saxonie*, his perpetual *Confederate*, being taken prisoner, he submitted himself to the Emperour at *Kale*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*, his sons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marques of *Brandenbourg*, and *Wolfang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their bonds for his return. The conditions of his pardon were, first, that he should dismantle all his Towns except *Cassel*. 2. That he should yeeld up unto the Emperour all his munition. 3. That he should pay unto the Emperour 150000 Crowns. The same night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to supper, his sons-in-law of *Saxonie* and *Brandenbourg* accompanying him. After supper, he was contrary to the Laws of *Hospitality*, and the Emperours exact promise, detained prisoner. The fallacy stood thus. In the Emperours compact with the three Princes, the words were, that the *Lantgrave* should be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in any prison*: which the Emperours Secretary by a small dash of his pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in everlasting Prison*. Well, in prison he staid five years; which being expired, he was again set at large by Duke *Maurice*, the overthrower and restorer of the *German* liberty. The residue of these *Lantgraves* in their several times, occur in the ensuing Catalogue of

The LANTGRAVES of *HASSIA*.

1263 1 *Henry* of *Brabant*, son of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, *Lantgrave* of *Thuringia*; after a nine years war betwixt him and the Marquesse of *Misnia*, divided the estate, and took unto himself the title of *Lantgrave* of *Hessen*.

1308 2 *Otho*, and *John*, sons of *Henry*.

1323 3 *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, sons of *Otho*.

1376 4 *Herman*, the son of *Lewis*.

1414 5 *Lewis* II. son of *Herman*, surnamed the *Milde*.

1458 6 *Lew-*

1458 6 *Lewis* III. ſon of *Lewis* the *Milde*.
7 *William*, the eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* the third, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by
8 *William* II. his youngeſt brother.
1509 9 *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave ſpoken of before, ſon of *William* the ſecond.
1567 10 *William* III. eldeſt ſon of *Philip*, ſucceeded in one moiety of the eſtate, and reſided at *Caſſiles*: the other moiety being divided betwixt his brethren *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmſtad*, father of *Ludowick* of *Darmſtad* before mentioned.
1590 11 *Maurice*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the third.
12 *William* IV. ſon of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

Weſtphalia.

The Arms of theſe Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Gules*, Crowned *Or*. Which being properly and originally the Arms of the antient Dukes of *Franconie*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperor, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at ſuch time as he inveſted him in the Lantgravedom of *Turingia*: on the expiration of whoſe line, challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6th. and his brother *Henry*, the laſt made Princes of that houſe.

WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenburg*; on the Weſt, with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, *Cleveland*, *Overyſſell*, *Weſt* and *Eaſt-Friſeland*, and the *German* Ocean; on the North, with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; and on the South, with *Wetteravia*, and ſome part of *Haſſia*.

It was thus called of the *Weſtphali*, a tribe or diviſion of the *Saxons*, diſtinguiſhed heretofore into the *Tranſalbinos*, inhabiting in the County of *Holſtein*, now a part of *Danemark*: the *Ooſtphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Saltza*, and the *Weſer*; taking up the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Verden*, *Hildeſheim*, *Halberſtat*, and *Meydburg*, with the Dukedoms of *Lunenburg* and *Brunſwick*: the *Angrivarians*, taking up the north-weſt part of the modern *Weſtphalen*, betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Breme*, and the Earldom of *Colen*: and finally, the *Weſtphali*, or *Weſtern-Saxons*, inhabiting the reſt of the modern *Weſtphalen*, with the Earldoms of *Mark*, *Berg*, *Zutphen*, the ſeigneury of *Over-yſſell*, and ſome parts of *Guelderland*, and *Holland*: But the *Saxons* being ſubjugated by the power of the *French*, and ſeveral new eſtates erected out of that old ſtock; the remnant of the *Weſtphali* and *Angrivarians*, (the Biſhoprick of *Breme* being added unto the accompt,) were comprehended and united in the name of *WESTPHALEN*.

The ſoil, according to the ſeveral parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoyning to the *Weſer* being deſert, and barren; thoſe towards the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Bergen*, mountainous and full of woods; the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry ſands, heaths, and unfruitfull thikets, like the wild parts of *Windſor Forreſt* betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts exceeding plentifull of corn, and of excellent *paſturage*; ſtored with great plenty of wild fruits, and (by reaſon of the many woods) abundance of *Acorns*: with infinite herds of ſwine (which they breed up with thoſe natural helps) of ſo good a relliſh, that a *Gammon* of *Weſtphalian Bacon*, is reckoned for a principal diſh at a great mans Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Majores* about *Bremen*, the *Chanani*, *Angrivarii*, and *Bructeri*, inhabiting about *Munſter*, *Oſnaburg*, and ſo towards to the land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cheruſci* (before ſpoken of) taking up thoſe parts which lie neareſt unto *Brunſwick*, and *Lunenbourg*. All of them vanquiſhed by *Druſus*, the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*; but ſoon reſtored to their former liberty, by the great overthrow given by the *Cheruſci*, and their aſſociates, to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expulſed the *Romans* out of *Gaul*: leaving their forſaken, and ill-inhabited ſeats, to be taken up by the *Saxons*; with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themſelves, both in name and nation. Of that great body it continued a conſiderable Member (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the proſcription and deprivation of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*; At what time, the parts beyond the *Weſer* were uſurped by *Barnard* Biſhop of *Paderborn*; thoſe betwixt the *Weſer*, and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*, whoſe ſucceſſors ſtill hold the title of Dukes of *Weſtphalen*: the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Munſter*, *Paderborn*, and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly territories, had ſome accrewments alſo out of this eſtate: every one catching hold of that which lay neareſt to him. But not to make too many ſubdiviſions of it, we will divide it only into theſe two parts; *viz.* 1. *Weſtphalen* ſpecially ſo called, and 2. the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*.

In *WESTPHALEN* ſpecially ſo called, which is that part hereof which lyeth next to *Cleveland*, the places of moſt obſervation are, 1 *Geſeke*, a town of good repute; 2. *Brala*, a village of great beauty; 3. *Arusberg*; and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the title of *Prefectures*; 5. *Wadexborch*; 6. *Homberg*, lording it over fair and ſpacious territories. All which, with two Lordſhips, and eight *Prefectures* more, diſperſed in the Dukedom of *Engern*, and County of *Surland*, belong unto the Biſhop of *Colen*; the titulary Duke of *Weſtphalen*, and really of *Angrivaria*, (*Engern*) as he ſtiles himſelf: the title and poſſeſſion of Duke of *Engern*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archb. hereof, ſon of *Henry* the firſt, Emp. and King of *Germany*, ſurnamed the *Fowler*, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt his elder brother. 7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) ſeated in that part hereof, which is called *Weſterwald*; a town of conſequence, belonging to the *Elector* of *Triers*. 8. *Rhenen*, 9. *Schamlat*;

Westphalen, and *Breme*.

9. *Schamlyt*, and 10. *Beckem*, reasonable good towns, all of the Bishoprick of *Munster*. 11. *Munster* it self, famous for the Treaty, and conclusions made upon that treaty, for the peace of *Germany*; seated upon the River *Ems*, and so called from a *Monastery* here founded by *Charls* the great, which gave beginning to the Town; supposed to be that *Mediolanum*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this tract. A beautifull, and well fortified City, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the *Temporal* Lord of it. Famous for the woefull Tragedies here acted by a lawlesse crew of *Anabaptists*, who chose themselves a King (that famous Taylor, *John* of *Leiden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jerusalem*; proclamed a community both of goods and women, cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings: and after many fanatick and desperate actions, by the care and industry of the Bishop and his confederates, brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in *Sleidan*, Mr. *Hookers* Preface, and some modern pamphlets; wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly see the face of the present times. 12. *Osnaburg*, first built, as some say, by *Julius Cæsar*; as others, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither so antient as the one, nor of so late a standing as the others make it; here being an Episcopal See founded by *Charls* the *Great*, who gave it all the privileges of an *University*. Liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved, both in Power and Patrimonie, that an *alternate* succession in it by the Dukes of *Brunswick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munster*, as a fit compensation for the Bishoprick of *Halberstad*, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13 *Quakenberg*, on the River *Hase*. 14. *Warendorp*; and 15. *Wildshusen*, towns of that Bishoprick. 16. *Paderborn*, an Episcopal See also, founded by *Charls* the *Great*, at the first conversion of the *Saxons*; more antient than strong, yet more strong than beautifull. 17. *Ringelenstein*; and 18. *Offendorf*, belonging to the Bishop of *Paderborn*. 19. *Minden*, upon the *Weser*, another of the Episcopal Sees founded by *Charls* the *Great*, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to *lay-uses* since the *Reformation*, under colour of *Administration* of the goods of the Bishoprick; and now by the conclusions at *Munster*, setled for ever on the *Electors* of *Brandenbourg*, with the title of *Prince* of *Minden*. 20. *Rintelin*, a strong town, conveniently seated on the *Weser*, not far from *Minden*; to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Westphalen* had formerly been a part of Saint *Peters Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the *Clergy*; but there are some Free Cities, and secular Princes, which have shares therein. As 1. *Warburg*, a neat town, but seated on an uneven piece of ground, near the River *Dimula*; a town which tradeth much in *good Ale*, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls hereof, now governed in the nature of a *Free Estate*, and reckoned an *Imperial* City. 2. *Brakel*, accompted of as *Imperial* also. 3. *Hervorden*, a town of good strength and note, governed by its own Laws and Magistrates, under the protection of *Colen*. 4. *Lemgow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*; but by them so well privileged and enfranchised, that now it governe h it self as a *Free Estate*. Here is also 5. The town and County of *Ravensburg*, belonging antiently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the rights of that house, to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*: As also 6. the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the west side of the *Weser*; the Pedegree of the Earls whereof some fetch from that *Sp. Manlius*, who defended the *Roman* Capitol against the *Galls*, (they might as well derive it from the *Geese* which preserved that Capitol;) others with greater modesty look no higher for it, than to the times of *Charls* the Great; one of the noble Families of the antient *Saxons*. 7. Here also stands the town and Castle of *Aremberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereunto adjoyning; which being much increased by the accession of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir general of his house conveyed in mariage to *Engelbert*, the 9th Earl of *Mark*, whose second son, called *Eberhard* (but the only one he had by this venter) succeeded in his Mothers Estates and honours; which were kept undivided till *Eberhard* the 6th Lord thereof of the house of *Mark*, contenting himself with the titles and Estates of *Aremberg*, left *Sedan* and the peeces which belonged unto it, to his younger brother *Robert*. The Great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called also *Robert*, created the 1. E. of *Aremberg*, left his estates and titles to his sister *Margaret*, maried to *John* Lord of *Brabanson*, a person of great note and power in the *Belgique* Provinces, and faithfull to the last in the cause and quarrel of King *Philip* the 2d. in which finally he lost his life, *Anno* 1568. leaving both his Estates and title unto *Charles* his son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles* Earl of *Aremberg* in the Stories of the *Belgique* Wars, in which he was no lesse considerable for his Eminent valour, than for his singular fidelity to his Lord and Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but these most considerable: all of them *Homagers* of the Empire but their acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real services; the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2d. after the surprize of *Holstein*, and some part of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1627. gaining so far upon this Countrie, that had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute master of it; and by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the *United States* to some great extremities. As for the title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Colen*: as also (but with better right, as to that of *Westphalen*) by the house of *Lawenburg*, descended from the antient *Electoral* Family; writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxonie*, *Westphalen*, and *Angrivaria* or *Engern*.

2. The *Bishoprick* of *BREME* lyeth on the other side of the *Weser*, extending as far as to the *Elb*, and the *German* Ocean. So called of 1. *Breme* the principal City, seated on the *Weser*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous, and rich; beautified with fair and even

even ſtreets, and very ſtrongly fortified, againſt all invaſions, both by Art and Nature; the Town being ſo ſeated amongſt *Fens*, occaſioned by the overflowings of the River, that it may be eaſily drowned on all ſides, to keep off an enemy. Adorned alſo with a ſpacious Market-place, a fair Counſel-houſe, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Arch-biſhop; who is the *temporal* Lord of the Town and Territory. Other towns of ſpecial note are 2. *Oſenbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England*, and other places. 3. *Aruſten*, on the *Weſer* alſo. 4. *Oterenberg*, on the River *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Ocean*. 5. *Buxtertrude*, on the *Elb*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the hither ſide of the water. 6. *Stode*, *Stadt*, or *Stadium*, ſeated on the River *Zuinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accompted the antienteſt town in all *Saxony*, and one of the firſt which was enrolled amongſt the *Hanſe*; and by eſpecial privilege had the pre-emption of all the *Rheniſh* wine that paſſed by them, and the right alſo of coining mony. But being over-topped by the power and trade of *Hamburg*, (5. *Dutch* miles from it) it grew at length ſo poor, and in ſuch decay, that their yearly *Revenues* came but to 90 *l. per annum*. ſo that they were fain to ſell their privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themſelves under the protection of the Biſhops of *Breme*. Revived again upon the comming thither of the *Engliſh* Merchants, who finding ſome hard meaſure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their *Staple* here: by means whereof the Citizens in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy; the buildings fair and beautifull, the Town ſtrongly fortified. Situate in a place ſo eaſily overwhelmed with water, that the people in oſtentation of their ſtrength and ſecurity, uſed to have Ordinance of *Stone* planted over their Gates. But the late *German* wars have made them ſenſible of their folly: when notwithſtanding their new works, and an *Engliſh* Gariſon under Sir *Charls Morgan*, they were compelled to ſubmit themſelves to the Earl of *Tilly*, *Anno* 1627. recovered after by the *Swedes* in the courſe of their victories.

East-Friſeland.

As for the *Biſhoprick* of *Bremen* it was firſt founded by *Charles* the *Great*, in the perſon of *Willibode* an *Engliſh Saxon*, one of the firſt Preachers of the Goſpel in theſe parts of this Country. The town before that time a poor Village only, being made an *Archiepiſcopal* See, and the *Metropolitan* of all the Churches of the *North*, quickly grew up into eſteem, as the Biſhop did in power and patrimony, till they became Lords of this tract. Governed ſince the *Reformation* of *Religion*, by *Lay-Biſhops* or *Adminiſtrators* of the Rents of the Biſhoprick; which under that title they inverted to their proper uſe. And now of late by the *Concluſions* made at *Munſter*, ſetled as an Inheritance on the Crown of *Sweaen*, to be enjoyed, together with the Biſhoprick of *Verda*, by the Kings thereof; with the title of Dukes of *Breme*, and *Verden*: the antient liberties of thoſe Cities, formerly granted by their Biſhops, being ſtill preſerved.

EAST-FRISELAND.

EAST-FRISELAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Weſer*, by which parted from *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, with the River *Ems*, which parteth it from *Groyninger*, and the reſt of *West-Friſeland*; on the North, with the *German* Ocean; and on the South, with the Earldom of *Mark*, a part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Friſii*, who caſting out the old Inhabitants, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and called it by their own name, *Friſeland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amiſus*, into the Weſtern, ſpoken of amongſt the *Netherlands*; and the Eaſtern or *East-Friſeland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the ſoil we ſhall ſee anon, when we come to the ſubdiviſions of it. Chief Rivers, beſides thoſe of *Ems*, and 2. *Weſer*, ſpoken of elſewhere, 3. *Jade*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *Die Jadie*. 4. *Dalliart*, on which ſtandeth the City of *Emden*, 5. *Delm*, and 6. *Honta*, neighboured by *Delmenhorſt*, and *Oldenborch*, towns of this Country. The whole divided into 1 the County of *Emden*, or *East-Friſeland* properly ſo called; and 2 the Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1 *EAST-FRISELAND* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the Weſt, the River *Ems*; on the North, the Ocean; on the Eaſt, and South, the Earldome of *Oldenbourg*: called alſo the County of *EMDEN*, from the fair town of *Emden*, the chief City of it. The ſoil hereof is very fruitfull both in corn and paſturage; ſending great ſtore of Oxen, Horſes, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe, and all ſorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not eaſily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatſoever. Chief towns herein are 1 *Emden*, ſo called from the *Ems*, on which it is ſituate; *Dollaert* a ſmall River falling here into it: a noted and well-traded town, beautified with a Haven ſo deep and large, that the greateſt ſhips with full ſail are admitted into it. The people rich, affirmed to have 60 ſhips of 100 tuns apiece, and 600 leſſer Barks of their own; beſides 700 Buſſes and Fiſher boats, maintained for the moſt part, by their Herring fiſhing on the Coaſts of *England*. The buildings generally fair, both private and publick, eſpecially the Church, the Town Hall, and Earls Palace. This laſt a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle, ſituate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all ſides compaſſed by the Sea, and yet not ſtrong enough to preſerve the Townſmen in their due obedience: who about 50 years ago, taking advantage on the abſence of their Earl, kept him out of their Town, becauſe he ſeemed not to approve the *Calvinian* humor; and have ſince governed in the nature of a *Commonwealth*, confederate with the *States* of the *United Provinces*, for their better eſtabliſhment and ſupport. So eaſily is *Religion* made a maſk to diſguiſe *Rebellion*. 2 *Auricks*, by ſome called *Oſeling*, ſeated in the *Inlands*, rich, and well walled, of great reſort by reaſon of the pleaſure of hunting, afforded very liberally in the *Foreſts* and Woods adjoining; drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. *Eſen*, on the Sea ſhore, which gives the title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth

East-Friseland.

also 4. *Jevere*, situate on the West of the River *Iada*, but both Earls subject to the Earl of *East-Friseland*. 5. *Vredeburg* (that is to say, the *Free Village*) so called from some immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of *Brunswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the 2d. Earl. 6. *Broick*, the seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broickmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another *Præfecture* or Captain-ship of the said Ancestors. 8. *Dunort*, a strong Castle and retiring place of the Earls. 9. *Linghen*, upon the *Ems*, a strong town well fortified and as well garrisoned; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friseland*, even to *Ditmersh* and the confines of *Danemark*. A dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5th. of the Emperor *Frederick* the 3d. in right whereof, the King of *Spain*, as heir of the House of *Burgundy*, hath some preheminence over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they join together: some of them being withall so large, so well peopled, and of streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*; of all which the most City-like is named *Leere*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Minores*, described by *Plinie* to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessarie provision for the life of man, that they had no drink but rain water, preserved in great troughs before the doors of their Cottages. These outed or subdued by the *Frisons*, a neighbouring people, possessing *North-Holland*, the *District* of *Vtrecht*, with the Countries of *Groyning* and *West-Friseland*: who having once passed over the *Ems*, extended their Dominions as far as *Danemark*. Governed by Kings, but intermingled with, and overpowered by, the *Saxons*, til the time of *Charls* the Great, by whom the last King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perswaded to receive the Sacrament of holy Baptism. But being told that his friends and kinsfolks were in hell, because no Christians: neither will I (saith he) be of that profession, *for I love to be amongst my kindred*. After this, *Friseland* was a member of the *French* Kingdome, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charls* the Bald, *Anno* 893. at which time all *Friseland* on the West side of the *Ems*, was conferred upon him; possessed, but not without much war and bloudshed, by his Successors; the *Frisons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Ems*, remained unto the *German* Empire; governed by *Deputies*, Lieutenants, and *Provincial* Earls, accomptable to the Emperors for the Administration, till the year 1453. in which *Ulrick* Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friseland*; transmitting the Estate & title unto his posterity.

Earls of *EAST-FRISELAND*.

1453 1 *Ulricus*, son of *Enno*, the son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governors for the Empire in *Broick* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friseland* by the Emperor *Frederick*.
1466 2 *Ezard*, the son of *Ulrick*, who got *Vreburg* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
1528 3 *Enno*, the son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzil*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Gueldres*.
1540 4 *Ezard* II. son of *Enno*, who maried *Katherine* daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Sweden*.
5 *Enno* II. son of *Ezard* the 2d. and the Lady *Katherine*.
1586 6 *Rudolphus Christianus*, son of *Enno* the 2d. who being well affected to the *Lutheran* forms, (first introduced in the time of *Enno* the 1.) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that City, *Anno* 1592.
1608 7 *Enno Ludovicus*, son of *Rudolphus Christianus*, succeded in this Earldome on the death of his Father, and is still living for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friseland*, are *Augent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Heurts *Or*, 4. 3. 2. 1.

2. The Earldome of *OLDENBOURG*, containeth that part of this Country which lyeth on the West side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friseland*, specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenbourg* the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldome.

The soil hereof exceeding rich, but in pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel; and furnish not this Country only, but some of their *German* neighbours, and many of the more Nothern nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley, and Oats; plenty of fruits and trees of all sorts. Large Woods, and those well stored with *Venison*, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of hunting. But the air cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenborch*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the *Great*, who founded the Church of S. *Iohn Baptist*. A Town of no great state or beauty, the houses generally of clay, but the Castle (the dwelling place of the Earls) of well-hewn stones; of an *orbicular* form with deep ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2. *Delmonhorst*, on the River *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247. by *Otho* brother of Earl *Christian* the 2d. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprised on *Palm Sunday* morning, by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, *Anno* 1547. continuing ever since part of this estate. 3. *Beck-husen*, on a River, which falleth not far off, into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea, which is called *Die Jade*. 4. *Equarten*. 5. *Ovelgard*, both seated on a long *Languet* or *Demy-Iland*, be-

betwixt the said *Die Jade*, and the River *Weser*, called *Butiada*: both taken, and the last well fortified by *Iohn* Earl of *Oldenborch*, *Anno* 1520. belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East-Friseland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Westerberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious territory. 7. *Vriesiade*, a strong piece, on the River *Iade*, built by Earl *Christiern*, one of the younger branches of the house of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*, 9. *Iadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Iade*, the other near the *Ocean*. Here is also within this Earldome the Province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the seat of the *Ambrones*; who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marius*. *Oldenbourg*

As for the Earls of *Oldenbourg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Witikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*: who having about the year 850. built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his wife *Altenburg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Attenburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*. But his male issue failing in *Frederick* the 7th. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud; who had maried *Richsa*, the daughter of *Iohn*, the fift Earl of this Family. From him in a direct line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest son of *Theoderick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1448. left his Estate in this Earldome (but reserving the title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretensions to the Dukedome of *Sleswich*, and the Earldome of *Holst*; in which he did pretend a share. The patrimony of it much improved, by the additions of the Countries of *Rustingen*, *Oystingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea; bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jevere* in *East-Friseland*, to *Iohn* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal line of *Danemark*, and by consequence of *Great Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoined, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The EARLS of *OLDENBOVRG*.

850 1 *Walpert*, of the race of *Witikind* the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
856 2 *Theoderick*, the son of *Walpert*.
3 *Theoderick* II. the son of *Theoderick* the first.
4 *Otho*, son of *Theodorick* the 2.
5 *Iohn*, the son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperor *Henry* the 2d. in his wars against the *Greeks*; and *Saracens*, *Anno* 1007.
6 *Huno*, surnamed the *Glorious*, son of *Iohn*.
7 *Frederick*, son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisians*; the last of the male line of this house.
8 *Elimarus*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud, and of *Richsa* his wife, the daughter of *Iohn* the fift Earl.
1120 9 *Elimarus* II. son to *Elimar* the first.
10 *Christianus*, son of *Elimar* the 2d. surnamed the *Couragious*, or the *Warlike*, a professed enemy of *Henry* the *Lion* Duke of *Saxony*; from whom he took the City of *Breme*.
11 *Maurice*, the son of *Christian*, an associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holstein*, in his wars with *Danemark*.
12 *Christian* II. son of *Maurice*.
13 II. *Iohn*, son of *Christian* 2d.
14 *Iohn* III. son of *Iohn* the 2d.
15 *Conrade*, the son of *Iohn* the 3.
16 *Christian* III. son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Colen*, where initiated into *holy Orders*, which he relinquished much against the will of his Brother *Maurice*, on the death of his Father.
17 *Theodorick*, son of *Christian* the 3d. the first Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicholas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger son of *Iohn* the 2d.
1440 18 *Christian* IV. son of *Theodorick*, and of *Hedunigis* sister and heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus* Dukes of *Sleswick* and Earls of *Holstein*; elected, on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, to the Crown of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1448.
1448 19 *Gerrard*, the brother of *Christian* the 4th. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, alwaies in wars, and alwaies worsted; he lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Munster*.
1500 20 *Iohn* IV. son of *Gerrard*, repaired the ruines of his estate, and setled the distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Butiada*.
1526 21 *Antony*, the son of *Iohn* the 4th. by a sudden surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Munster*, *Anno* 1547. which he strongly fortified.
1573 22 *Iohn* V. son of *Antonie*, enlarged this Earldome with the Provinces of *Fustingen*, *Oystingen*, and *Wangerland*; bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countesse of *Jevere* in *East-Friseland*.
23 *Anthonie* II. brother of *Iohn* the 5th. in whose life time he was Earl of *Delmenhorst*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* also: still living, *Anno* 1648. for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And

East-Friseland. also 4. *Jevere*, situate on the West of the River *Iada*, but both Earls subject to the Earl of *East-Friseland*. 5. *Vredeburg* (that is to say, the *Free Village*) so called from some immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of *Brunswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the 2d. Earl. 6. *Broick*, the seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broickmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another *Prefecture* or Captain-ship of the said Ancestors. 8. *Dunort*, a strong Castle and retiring place of the Earls. 9. *Linghen*, upon the *Ems*, a strong town well fortified and as well garrisoned; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friseland*, even to *Ditmersh* and the confines of *Denemark*. A dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5th. of the Emperor *Frederick* the 3d. in right whereof, the King of *Spain*, as heir of the House of *Burgundy*, hath some preheminence over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falliug off of the *Belgick* Provinces More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they join together: some of them being withall so large, so well peopled, and of streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*; of all which the most City-like is named *Leere*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Minores*, described by *Plinie* to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessarie provision for the life of man, that they had no drink but rain water, preserved in great troughs before the doors of their Cottages. These outed or subdued by the *Frisons*, a neighbouring people, possessing *North-Holland*, the *District* of *Virecht*, with the Countries of *Groyning* and *West-Friseland*: who having once passed over the *Ems*, extended their Dominions as far as *Denemark*. Governed by Kings, but intermingled with, and overpowered by, the *Saxons*, til the time of *Charls* the Great, by whom the last King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perswaded to receive the Sacrament of holy Baptism. But being told that his friends and kinsfolks were in hell, because no Christians: neither will I (saith he) be of that profession, *for I love to be amongst my kindred*. After this, *Friseland* was a member of the *French* Kingdome, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charls* the Bald, *Anno* 893. at which time all *Friseland* on the West side of the *Ems*, was conferred upon him: possessed, but not without much war and bloudshed, by his Successors; the *Frisons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Ems*, remained unto the *German* Empire; governed by *Deputies*, Lieutenants, and *Provincial* Earls, accomptable to the Emperors for the Administration, till the year 1453. in which *Ulrick* Governor hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friseland*; transmitting the Estate & title unto his posterity.

Earls of *EAST-FRISELAND*.

1453 1 *Ulricus*, son of *Enno*, the son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governors for the Empire in *Broick* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friseland* by the Emperor *Frederick*.
1466 2 *Ezard*, the son of *Ulrick*, who got *Vreburg* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.
1528 3 *Enno*, the son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzil*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Gueldres*.
1540 4 *Ezard* II. son of *Enno*, who maried *Katherine* daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Sweden*.
5 *Enno* II. son of *Ezard* the 2d. and the Lady *Katherine*.
1586 6 *Rudolphus Christianus*, son of *Enno* the 2d. who being well affected to the *Lutheran* forms, (first introduced in the time of *Enno* the 1.) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that City, *Anno* 1592.
1608 7 *Enno Ludovicus*, son of *Rudolphus Christianus*, succeded in this Earldome on the death of his Father, and is still living for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friseland*, are *Augent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Heurts *Or*, 4. 3. 2. 1.

2. The Earldome of *OLDENBOURG*, containeth that part of this Country which lyeth on the West side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friseland*, specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenbourg* the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldome.

The soil hereof exceeding rich, but in pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel; and furnish not this Country only, but some of their *German* neighbours, and many of the more Nothern nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley, and Oats; plenty of fruits and trees of all sorts. Large Woods, and those well stored with *Venison*, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of hunting. But the air cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenborch*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the *Great*, who founded the Church of S. *Iohn Baptist*. A Town of no great state or beauty, the houses generally of clay, but the Castle (the dwelling place of the Earls) of well-hewn stones; of an *orbicular* form with deep ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2. *Delmonhorst*, on the River *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247. by *Otho* brother of Earl *Christian* the 2d. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprised on *Palm Sunday* morning, by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, *Anno* 1547. continuing ever since part of this estate. 3. *Beck-husen*, on a River, which falleth not far off, into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea, which is callen *Die Jade*. 4. *Equarten*. 5. *Ovelgard*, both seated on a long *Languet* or *Demy-Iland*, be-

betwixt the said *Die Jade*, and the River *Weser*, called *Butiada*: both taken, and the last well fortified by *Iohn* Earl of *Oldenborch*, *Anno* 1520. belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East-Friseland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Westerberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious territory. 7. *Vriesiade*, a strong piece, on the River *Iade*, built by Earl *Christiern*, one of the younger branches of the house of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*, 9. *Iadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Iade*, the other near the *Ocean*. Here is also within this Earldome the Province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the seat of the *Ambrones*; who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marius*. *Oldenbourg*

As for the Earls of *Oldenbourg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Witikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*: who having about the year 850. built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his wife *Alteburg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*. But his male issue failing in *Frederick* the 7th. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud; who had maried *Richsa*, the daughter of *Iohn*, the fift Earl of this Family. From him in a direct line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest son of *Theodorick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1448. left his Estate in this Earldome (but reserving the title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretensions to the Dukedome of *Sleswich*, and the Earldome of *Holst*; in which he did pretend a share. The patrimony of it much improved, by the additions of the Countries of *Rustingen*, *Oystingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea; bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jevere* in *East-Friseland*, to *Iohn* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal line of *Danemark*, and by consequence of *Great Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoined, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The EARLS of *OLDENBOVRG*.

850 1 *Walpert*, of the race of *Witikind* the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
856 2 *Theoderick*, the son of *Walpert*.
3 *Theoderick* II. the son of *Theoderick* the first.
4 *Otho*, son of *Theodorick* the 2.
5 *Iohn*, the son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperor *Henry* the 2d. in his wars against the *Greeks*; and *Saracens*, *Anno* 1007.
6 *Huno*, surnamed the *Glorious*, son of *Iohn*.
7 *Frederick*, son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisians*; the last of the male line of this house.
8 *Elimarus*, the son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* bloud, and of *Richsa* his wife, the daughter of *Iohn* the fift Earl.
1120 9 *Elimarus* II. son to *Elimar* the first.
10 *Christianus*, son of *Elimar* the 2d. surnamed the *Couragious*, or the *Warlike*, a professed enemy of *Henry* the *Lion* Duke of *Saxony*; from whom he took the City of *Breme*.
11 *Maurice*, the son of *Christian*, an associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holstein*, in his wars with *Danemark*.
12 *Christian* II. son of *Maurice*.
13 II. *Iohn*, son of *Christian* 2d.
14 *Iohn* III. son of *Iohn* the 2d.
15 *Conrade*, the son of *Iohn* the 3.
16 *Christian* III. son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Colen*, where initiated into *holy Orders*, which he relinquished much against the will of his Brother *Maurice*, on the death of his Father.
17 *Theodorick*, son of *Christian* the 3d. the first Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicholas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger son of *Iohn* the 2d.
1440 18 *Christian* IV. son of *Theodorick*, and of *Heduigis* sister and heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus* Dukes of *Sleswick* and Earls of *Holstein*; elected, on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, to the Crown of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1448.
1448 19 *Gerrard*, the brother of *Christian* the 4th. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, alwaies in wars, and alwaies worsted; he lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Munster*.
1500 20 *Iohn* IV. son of *Gerrard*, repaired the ruines of his estate, and setled the distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Butiada*.
1526 21 *Antony*, the son of *Iohn* the 4th. by a sudden surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Munster*, *Anno* 1547. which he strongly fortified.
1573 22 *Iohn* V son of *Antonie*, enlarged this Earldome with the Provinces of *Fustingen*, *Oystingen*, and *Wangerland*; bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countesse of *Jevere* in *East-Friseland*.
23 *Anthonie* II. brother of *Iohn* the 5th. in whose life time he was Earl of *Delmenhorst*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* also: still living, *Anno* 1648. for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And

And thus we see the present estate of *Germany*, distracted and divided amongst many *Princes*, *Prelates*, and *Incorporate Towns*, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note, and smaller Territories, which yet are *absolute* and *free*: insomuch, that in one daies riding, a *Traveller* may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws, and divers coins; every *free Prince* and *free City* (whose laws the Emperors are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what laws, and coin what money they will. And hence in the censure of Kingdomes, the King of *Spain* is said to be *Rex hominum*, because of his Subjects reasonable obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Asinorum*, because of their infinite taxes and impositions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often insurrection against, and deposition of their Princes: but the Emperor of *Germany*, is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli*, or *Free Princes* which live under his command; or rather at their own command, (for they do even what they list) as the Emperor *Maximilian* the first, well noted.

And to say truth, the publick Government hereof is nothing lesse than *Monarchical*: the Emperor being accompted amongst the Princes, but as the chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of by *Bodin* and others of our great *Statists* and *Civilians*, as an absolute *Monarch*; such as the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*, are confessed to be. For the privileges of the *Free Cities* being made perpetual, the great Estates *hereditarie*, and the Empire *eligible*; the Emperors were brought at last to such low condition, as to be made accomptable to the *States* of the Empire: who if they be perswaded in their consciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by his *mal-administration* to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Cæsarea majestate privari potest* (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the *Electors*, and a more fit and able man chosen into the place: and that too, as the Emperor *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his *Constitutions*, *Anno* 1410, *sine infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of treason or disloyalty. So that the supreme power and majesty of the Empire, seems to reside especially and contractedly in the *Electoral* College; diffusedly, in the *Imperial Diets*; by way of execution in the *Chamber of Spires*, and other the supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that *body* which they call the Empire, is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commissioners of the Free Cities, in their Diets or *Parliaments*; the Emperor presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his royal Robes, with the *Imperial* Crown and Scepter, with the titles of *Cæsar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole action did take life from him: whereas indeed he hath not so much privilege as a *negative* voice, but is to put in execution such *Decrees* and *Sanctions*, as these estates assembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own authority, which may speak him *Emperor*. But on the other side, the *Princes* take power unto themselves, of making laws for, and imposing taxes on their subjects: of raising war upon one another, or against a third, and doing many other acts of *supreme* authority, which in the Emperor would be counted matters of *mal-administration*. Such points as these, together with the appointing of *Judges* and the like chief *Magistrates*, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of, but in *general Diets*; which may be summoned by or without the Emperor, as occasion serveth. And to this weakning of the majesty and power *Imperial*, the neighbouring Princes have afforded their best assistance; jealous of their own interesse and decrease of power, if that vast body so well limbed should be strongly joynted; and all the several members of it united under the command of one *Supreme* head. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn leagues, and confederations, made in their several times against *Charls* the fift, and the late Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d. as soon as they began to be in some possibility of setling the imperial Majesty in its proper Splendor, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been by the way of Election, as before was noted. The businesse first projected in the Court of *Rome*, by *Gregory* the first, then Pope, who being a Native of this Country, thought it the most expedient course to continue the Imperial Title among those of his nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the design of it chiefly was to make the Emperors less powerfull, and distract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into parts and factions: that so the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italie*. And that the Emperor might be such as the Pope should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the Electors should be alwaies of the Ecclesiasticks, who being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the most part driving on their interesse, were very like to serve him on all occasions. The Electors only six in number, that is to say, 1. The Arch-bishop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire; 2. The Archbishop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy*; 3. The Archbishop of *Triers*, Chancellor of *France*; 4. The Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer; 5. the D. of *Saxony*, L. Marshal; and 6. the Marques of *Brandenburg*, L. Chamberlain. Upon equality of voyces the D. of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a Seventh; who by Office is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great solemnities. For upon daies of great solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first daies of the Imperial Diets, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only: and then performed in this manner following, either in person, or by Proxy. Before the Palace gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the D. of *Saxony* rideth; having in his hand a Siver wand and a Silver measure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke still sitting on his horse, filleth up the measure with Oats, then sticks his wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand neerest unto him; and so attends the Emperor into the Court. The Emperor being entred and sate down at the Table, the three spiritual Electors standing orderly together, say the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marques of *Brandenbourg* on Horse-back also, with a Basin of water in his hand (the basin being

ing

ing of the weight of 12 Marks of silver) and a fine clean Towell on his arm; which, alighting from his horse, he holds to the Emperour till he wash. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene*, mounted on his horse, with four silver platters full of meat, every one of the weight of three marks of silver; which, descending from his horse, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entring the great Hall on Horseback, as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his hand of the weight of 12 Marks in silver, alighteth from his horse, and presenteth the Cup unto the Emperour. But we must know, that of late times these offices are seldom or never performed by the Electors in their own persons. It is enough if they send their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the Emperours Court to doe it for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Frankford* on the *Main*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair, upon the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*; (whose office it is, (as being Chancellour of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assemblie. In their passage unto *Frankford*, they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince, thorow whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met they goe into S. *Bartholmews* Church (the most capacious of that City) where, after the high Mass is said, the three Spiritual Electors laying their hands upon their brests, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make oath to choose a fit temporal Head for the People of *Christendom*. Upon equalitie of voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the casting voice, and concludes the business; If in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance, but of bread and water, nor be suffered to goe out of the City, till that necessity compelleth them unto some agreement; which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperour not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope; though since the time of *Charls* the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves, or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title both of Emperour and Imperial Majesty is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The election being finished and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held antiently at 3 several places, *viz.* 1. At *Aquisgrave*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gulick*, where he received the silver Crown for the Kingdom of *Germanie*. 2ly. At *Millain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown for *Lombarie*, or the Realm of *Italy*. 3ly. At *Rome*, where, at the hands of the Pope himself, he was crowned with the Golden Crown for the *Roman* Empire. But since, those journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by; the Emperours holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their title to that dignity, being meerly titular, and their inauguration at *Aken*, to be as effectual, as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Privileges of the Electors, and other fundamental Constitutions of the *German* Empire, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charls* the 4th. by whom first promulgated, *Anno* 1359. But we must know, that since the publishing of that Bull, the business of election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the Parties interessed. For first it pleased the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2d. on the Proscription of *Frederick* the first Elector *Palatine*, to transfer the Electoral dignity, with the Office of *Archi-Dapifer*, or *Arch-Sewer*, from that house to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the powers and privileges which belonged unto it, to be infeoffed upon him and his heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperor being protested against by some of the Electors, in favour of the *Palatine* Family, and in due care unto themselves, in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come; it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster*, *Anno* 1648. that the Duke of *Bavaria* and his heirs enjoying the said Electoral dignity, with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the translation of it from the *Palatine* family spoken of before; an eighth Electorate should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate*, by *Charls Ludovick*, the now Prince Elector Palatine, and his heirs, who also on the failer of the Line of *Bavaria*, are to be repossessed of their antient rights, the Title of *Arch-Treasurer*, being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Archi-Dapifer*, or *Arch-Sewer*, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Austrian* Family, it was cunningly projected by *Charls* the fifth (having received the *Imperial* Crown from Pope *Clement* the 7th.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* should be chosen King *of the Romans*, whilst himself was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his decease. Which policy being followed by all his Successors, the title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæsar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the antient *Romans*. Insomuch as *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one, who is already so far estated in the Empire, that on the death, deprivation, or resignation of the present Emperour, he is immediatly to succeed. And so accordingly it hath happened since this act of *Charls*. Who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his son and heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an honour: yet he could not do it; it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to transmit the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Prince *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germanie*, as in brief he did. As for reasons, or to say better, the pretences, upon which *Charls* did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, the (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetrate the Empire in the *Austrian* Family) they were these that follow. 1. Because that having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally at-

attend the affairs of *Germanie*. 2ly. The troubled eſtate of *Chriſtendom*, of the Empire ſpecially, occaſioned by the preachings and works of *Luther*. 3ly. The late *Rural* war raiſed by the *Boors* of that Country, on the coming out of theſe new doctrines, and not yet throughly extinct. 4ly. The violent power of the *Turks*, who by his conqueſt of a great part of *Hungary*, was grown too near a neighbour to them. And 5ly. The imminent diſobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly ſeemed to require ſome Prince both of Power and Title, to aſſiſt him in the bearing of ſo great a burden; and by theſe and the like ſuggeſtions he effected his deſign herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Stile: For whereas the firſt Emperours of the houſe of *Charls* the *Great*, were Emperours of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*; the later Emperours of the houſe of *Charls* the fift, may not improperly be called Emperours of *Germany*, and Kings of the *Romans*. It is true indeed, that the wiſe and underſtanding Duke of *Saxonie*, ſaw further thorow theſe pretences, than the reſt of the Electors either did or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make *Germany* (as *Galba* ſaid in his Oration unto *Piſo*, of the Empire of *Rome*) *unius quaſi familiæ hæreditatem*, hereditary in times following to the houſe of *Auſtria*: and thereupon did openly deny his ſuffrage to the ſaid Election. But finding that the Major part of the Electors were reſolved upon it, he moved for an Act to paſs, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family, more than three Succeſſions: in which not able to prevail (as the Game was plaid) he left the Electors to themſelves, by whom *Ferdinand* was choſen *King of the Romans*, and not long after crowned at *Aken*, with the uſual rites, *Jan.* 16. *Anno* 1531. The ſame courſe followed by this *Ferdinand*, when poſſeſſed of the Empire, in cauſing his ſon *Maximilian* to be elected *Rex Romanorum*, whilſt himſelf was living; and ſo by all the reſt ſince then, as before is ſaid.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to meaſure the abilities and power of *Germanie*; we may diſcern them by thoſe *Levies* which have been raiſed upon particular occaſions, or by the joint conſent of the *Free Eſtates* aſſembled in the *Imperial Diets*. Firſt for particular *Levies* made by private perſons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horſe, raiſed by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweybruck*, for aid of the *French Hugonots* againſt their King; and on the other ſide, no fewer than 7000 Horſe, under the conduct of the Duke of *Aumal*, and the Earl of *Mansfield*, for the ſervice of that King againſt the *Hugonots*. And as for *Levies* made by conſent of the *States*, we find that *Charls* the 5th. had under his Enſigns at *Vienna*, 90000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe; *Maximilian* the 2d. at *Javerin* in *Hungarie*, 34000 Horſe, and full 100000 Foot: and finally, that in the war betwixt *Charls* the 5th. and the Proteſtant Princes, there were no leſſe than 150000 men on both ſides; which numbers, no one Country in *Europe* is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived, that the Empire is able to raiſe 200000 Horſe and Foot, with Arms, Canon, and ammunition of all ſorts, proportionable; which the inſtances before brought do moſt plainly evidence.

Touching the *Revenue* of the Empire, I find them eſtimated by *Boterus*, and ſome others ſince, at ſeven millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, with the hereditary Eſtates of *Auſtria*, into the accompt. But ſince they are not ſo united unto the *Empire*, but they may at ſome time or other be disjoyned again, no reaſon they ſhould come into the reckoning, unleſs it be as the *Revenue* of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the *Revenue* of the Empire it ſelf, taken abſtractedly from the perſonall and *patrimonial* Eſtate of the Emperour, whoſoever he be, it can amount to no ſuch ſum: the *tribute* paid by the *Free* or *Imperial* Cities (at leaſt 60 in number) amounting to no more *per annum*, then 15000 *Florens*, or 1500 l. *Engliſh*; and what is that, but like a *Pepper-corn* for a *quit-rent* in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the reſt may come to. And though in the way of ſaving charges (which may be reckoned as a part of his income alſo) the *Princes* and *Free Cities* be bound to aid him in the time of war againſt the *Turk*, with 3842 Horſe, and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the *Diets* for it: yet war is ſuch a great devourer, that if the *Diets* do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a ſorry gainer by the undertaking; beſides the ſmallneſs of thoſe forces conſidered with the numbers they are able to raiſe, and the puiſſance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the *Arms* of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Saturn*, armed and crowned *Mars*: the two heads ſignifying (as ſome think) the Eaſtern and the Weſtern Empires. *Cuſpinian*, a learned *German*, conceives rather, that theſe Arms are two Eagles conjoyned, and not one Eagle with two heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation, in memory of the three *Legions* of *Quintilius Varus* diſcomfited by them; at what time they ſeiſed on two of the *Roman Eagles* (the Military Enſign of that people) the third being caſt into the *Fennes* by the *Standard-bearer*. But whether it be one or two, certain it is, that the one head is quire pulled off, and the whole body quite ſtripped of all its Feathers; the *Imperial* dignity being little more than *titular*, deſpoyled and ſtript of all Authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germanie*,

Archbiſhops 6. Biſhops 34.

Univerſities 21. *Viz.*

1 *Colen.*	7 *Vienna.*	13 *Prague.*	19 *Lipſique.*
2 *Triers.*	8 *Herborn.*	14 *Olmunts.*	20 *Wittenberg.*
3 *Ments.*	9 *Hanaw.*	15 *Frankford.*	21 *Marpurg.*
4 *Heidelberg.*	10 *Wirtenberg.*	16 *Roſtock.*	
5 *Tubingen.*	11 *Friberg.*	17 *Gripſwald.*	
6 *Ingolſtade.*	12 *Altorf.*	18 *Jene.*	

And ſo much for *Germany*.

OF

OF
DENMARK

THE Kingdom of *DENMARK*, or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the additions of the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the great continent of *Norway*, with the Isles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Estate, is bounded on the East, with the *Baltic* Sea, and some part of *Sweden*; on the West, with the main Western Ocean; on the North-East, with a part of *Sweden*; full North, with the main *Frozen* Seas; and on the South, with *Germanie*, from which divided on the South-west, by the River *Albis*; and on the South-East, by the *Trave*; a little *Isthmus* or neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Possessors of it; so called *quasi Danorum tractus, sive Regio*, (as *Mercator* hath it,) because the Country of that people: but rather *quasi Danorum limes*, the bounds or *marches* of the *Danes*, bordering close upon the *Dutch*; from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the situation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate *Zone*, and partly within the *Artick* Circle: extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth *Clime*, or 55 degree of Latitude, where it joyneth with *Germanie*, as far as the 71 degree, where it hath no other bound but the *Frozen* Ocean. By which accompt, the longest day in the most Southern parts hereof, is 17 hours and a quarter, but in the parts extremely North, they have no night for two whole months, three weeks, one day, and some seven hours over; as on the other side, no day for the like quantitie of time, when the Sun is most remote from them, in the other *Tropick*. The air hereof by consequence must be sharp and bitter, even in the very warmest places. Of which, and of the nature of the soil, we shall speak more punctually, in the Description and Survey of the several parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good stature, clear of complexion, well coloured, for the most part healthfull and long-lived: for though they eat and drink beyond measure, they have good digestions. In manners very severe, crafty and provident in the managing of their affairs; but proud withall, and (as the *Historian* said of another person) *Omnium quæ dixerant fecerantve Ostentatores*, great Vaunters of whatsoever they do or say, highly opinionated of their own actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own opinions; Religious observers of their words and contracts, and strict in executing Iustice; especially in punishing of *Theeves* and *Pirats*. Such of them as do follow the wars, prove reasonable good Souldiers both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the sea than field service: the Magistrate wise rather by experience, than studie; though they love learning, and easily attain all languages which they give their minds to: the old men covetous, the young men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as antient families, as most in Christendom, here being some of those houses still remaining, which were present at the pacification made betwixt *Charls* the *Great*, and *Hemingus* King of the *Danes*: and, which adds much unto their honour, they keep their blood unmixt from mariages with the Vulgar sort; and reckon it for an high disgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The *women* are fair, discreet and courteous, and know well how to govern their households; exceeding fruitfull in bearing children, but delivered of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes speak the *Dutch*, or *German* common (but with some difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norway* and *Swethland*.

Of no great note for men of learning in the former times; It hath been fortunate in these last, for 1. *Tycho Brahe*, that renowned Astronomer. 2. *Hemingius*, a well-known Divine. 3. *Bartholinus*, a Physician and Philosopher of good esteem. 4. *John Cluverus*, the Historian, &c. More famous for great Captains, and men of war; especially for 1. *Godfry* or *Gottricus*, who setled the government of this Kingdom, and endangered the great Realm of *France*. 2. *Sueno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Conquerours

Cimbrick Cherſoneſe.

querours of *England*. 4. *Waldemare* the 3d. a right valiant Prince; but unſucceſsfull in his wars againſt the *Hanſe-Towns*, then newly entred into league. 5. *Chriſtiern* the 2d. a great Commander in the wars; but of greater cruelty. 6. *Chriſtiern* the 4th. little inferiour unto any of his Predeceſſors; to whom we may ſubjoyn (though of different ſex) Qu. *Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of theſe Northern Countries; a Lady of a Maſculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all enterpriſes, as ſhe declared in the conqueſt of *Sweathland*, and ſubjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached to thoſe of *Holſtein* (the next neighbouring Country unto *Germanie*) by S. *Angarius*, Biſhop of *Bremen*, the general *Apoſtle* of thoſe Northern parts, in the year 826. *Lewis* the *Godly* then being Emperour of the Weſt. In whoſe time *Harald* King of *Denmark* being expulſed his Kingdoms by the ſons of *Godfrey* or *Gottricus*, was baptized at *Mentz* with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that ſervice: the converſion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, aſſiſted by the Miniſtry of one *Poppo*, the firſt Biſhop of *Arthuſen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongſt the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, *Anno* 1055. or thereabouts: the *Engliſh* aſſiſting in the work, and the good King ſo zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint, after his deceaſe. Relapſing for the moſt part to their antient *Gentiliſm*, they were finally regained unto *Chriſtianity*, by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an *Engliſh man*, about the year 1156. before his aſſuming of the Popedom, called *Nicolaus Breakſpear*. But by whomſoever firſt converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend ſome power and juriſdiction over them. Which when they began to exerciſe with too much authority, *Waldemar* the third is ſaid to have returned this anſwer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitias à Parentibus, Religionem à* Romana *Eccleſia, quam ſi nobis invides renunciamus per præſentes*; that is to ſay, We hold our life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Anceſtors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by theſe preſents. But this *renunciation* though then threatned, was not made till afterwards: when the whole maſſe of *Popery* was aboliſhed by King *Frederick* the firſt, uſing therein the Miniſtry of *Bugenhage*, a *Divine* of *Pomeren*; by whom *reformed* according to the doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches.

As for the *Government* of the *Church* ſince that *Reformation*, it continueth as before it was, by *Archbiſhops* and *Biſhops*, in number as before; but much abridged of their *Revenues*, and a great part of their power. For *Frederick*, though he found it neceſſary to remove the old *Biſhops*, (not one of which would be perſwaded to the change of *Religion*) yet he ſubſtituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient maintenance, with a power of *Preſidence* in all *Church-Aſſemblies*, where they are to take the advice of other *Presbyters* along with them; and out of ſuch *Aſſemblies*, to receive complaints, to provide remedie againſt ſcandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar *Inſpectors*, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbiſhops, and thirteen Biſhops: that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Londen*, the Biſhops of *Roſchilt*, *Odenſee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthuſen*, *Sleſwick*, and *Haderſleve*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; the Archbiſhop of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norwey*; and the Biſhops of *Halar*, and *Schalholt*, for the Iſle of *Iſeland*: the Churches of *Holſtein*, (formerly under the Biſhops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by *Super-intendents*, as the reſt of the *Lutherans*.

The whole body of the eſtate (as appears by this) conſiſteth chiefly of three members; *viz.* 1. the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarſh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holſtein*, ſpecially ſo called: 2. the Kingdom of *Denmark*, comprehending both *Juitlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Iſlands: and 3. the Kingdom of *Norwey*, conſiſting of *Norwey* it ſelf, and the Iſlands of the *Northern Ocean*. Which parts we ſhall ſurvey in order, as before laid down, premiſing firſt a word or two of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, in which the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the two *Juitlands* are contained.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.*

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Baltick* Sea; on the Weſt, the main *German* Ocean; on the North, the narrow Strait or *Fretum*, which they call the *Sundt*; on the South-weſt, the great River of *Albis*; on the South-Eaſt, the ſmall River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the neck or *Iſthmus*, which unites it to *Germanie*. I know that ſome contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South, with the River *Eydore*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more reſemblance to a *Cherſoneſe* or *Demy-Iſland*, than the other doth; diſſenting in this point from the common opinion. It had the name of *Cherſoneſus* ἀπὸ τῆς χερσὸς καὶ νήσου, *à terra & inſula*, it being the ſame with a *Peninſula* in the *Latine*; of which name there are 5 moſt famous, that is to ſay, firſt, *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*. 2. *Thracia Cherſoneſus* in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*. 3. *Taurica Cherſoneſus* in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartarie*. 4. *Aurea Cherſoneſus* in *India*, which we now call *Malaca* (of all which we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) and 5. *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, where now we are. This laſt ſo called from the *Cimbri*, the firſt Inhabitants hereof, originally deſcended from *Gomer*, the ſon of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii*, and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia*, as too narrow for them, they ſought out new dwellings, and are ſaid to have firſt dwelt in the banks of *Palus Mœotis*; where they gave name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their ſeats more Northward, into a Country boun-

bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great *Ocean*, on the one side; and the forest of *Hercynia*, on the other; within which bounds is the *Peninsula* or country where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary big stature, having blew and red eyes, and lived most upon theft: so that for their sakes, Κίμβρους ὑπονομάζουσι γέρμανοι τοὺς λῃστὰς, the *Germans* called all theeves *Cimbers*. It hapned that the *Ocean* overflowing a great part of their Country, compelled them to seek new seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This request being denyed, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their swords, what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Consuls, perished by them; so that now (saith *Florus*) *Actum esset de* Imperio Romano *nisi illi seculo* Marius *contigisset*: for he, as we have elsewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Juites*, and *Angles*; upon whose removal into *Britain*, the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possess it. *Holstein*.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the same miles in the breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of ground, 30 walled towns, 6 Episcopal Sees, (besides those of *Hamburg*, and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbishop of *Bremen*) and 20 Royal Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great men of the Country, as the private retirements of the King. The soil naturally more fit for pasturage than tillage; feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are sent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at the present into the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Juitland*.

1. *HOLSTEIN.*

The Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, where it joins to *Germanie*, extending as far North, as the River *Eydore*, which divides it from *Jutland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*; which signifies a Wood, or Forest, according to the nature of it; the Countrey being low, marishie and full of *Woods*, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these four Provinces, 1 *Wagerland*, 2 *Stormarsh*, 3 *Ditmarsh*, and 4 *Holst*, or *Holstein* specially so called.

1 *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein*, which lies on the South East of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East, with *Mecklenbourg* and the *Baltick* sea; on the West, with *Holstein* specially so called; on the North, with the Sea *Baltick* also; on the South, with some part of *Mecklenbourg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who possessed this tract; from whence the name of *Wagria*, in our *Latine* writers.

Chief towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billew*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which distant five *Italian* miles. The River capable of ships of a thousand Tun, which commonly they unlade at *Tremuren*, the Port Town to the City; seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was first built by *Adolph*, the second Earl of *Holstein*, *Anno* 1143. but so well privileged by him and his next successors, that in short time it bid defiance to its founders, (the cause of many differences betwixt it and those Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it self. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the Empire, after whose death they chose themselves another Duke; who having governed them five years, was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdom: remaining so, till delivered by the Emperour *Frederick* the second. By whom again once infranchised, it became *Imperial*: afterwards listed amongst the *Hanse-towns*, and the first in estimation of all the company; having above 600 ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Tun and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from *Pirats*, they are most of them built for burden, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City, it is built upon all the sides of a rising hill, on the top whereof standeth the Church of Saint *Mary*, (once the *Cathedral* of the City, for it was *Episcopal*) whence is a descent to all the gates of the City, affording to the Eye a most pleasing prospect. The buildings very beautifull, and all of brick, the streets streight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent imagerie, and much admired even by skilfull workmen: and unto every private house a pipe of water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the pattern whereof, it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London*, and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany*, or the more Northern Countries, which can equallize it, either for the beauty and uniformity of the houses, the pleasant gardens, fair streets, delightfull walks without the wals, or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their civility to strangers, and strict execution of justice without partiality. The whole in compass about six miles, fortified with a double wall, deep ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, four *Dutch* miles from *Lubeck*, and near the head of that River. 3. *Oldesloe*, on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. 4. *Gronneburg*, and 5. *Newkerk* on the *Baltick* shore: and 6. *Stendorp*, more within the land; near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

Southwest of *Wagerland*, lyeth *STORMARSH*, betwixt the *Elb* and two lesse Rivers called the *Billen* and the *Store*: from which last, and the marishness of the situation, or from that River and the *Marsi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Storemarsh*. Places of most importance are 1. *Crempe*, on a little River so named, which falls not far off into the *Store*, and both together not much further into the *Elb*. A town well fortified by *Christian* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the resistnce which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, against

Cimbrick Cherſoneſe.

querours of *England*. 4. *Waldemare* the 3d. a right valiant Prince; but unſucceſsfull in his wars againſt the *Hanſe-Towns*, then newly entred into league. 5. *Chriſtiern* the 2d. a great Commander in the wars; but of greater cruelty. 6. *Chriſtiern* the 4th. little inferiour unto any of his Predeceſſors; to whom we may ſubjoyn (though of different ſex) Qu. *Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of theſe Northern Countries; a Lady of a Maſculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all enterpriſes, as ſhe declared in the conqueſt of *Sweathland*, and ſubjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached to thoſe of *Holſtein* (the next neighbouring Country unto *Germanie*) by S. *Angarius*, Biſhop of *Bremen*, the general *Apoſtle* of thoſe Northern parts, in the year 826. *Lewis* the *Godly* then being Emperour of the Weſt. In whoſe time *Harald* King of *Denmark* being expulſed his Kingdoms by the ſons of *Godfrey* or *Gottricus*, was baptized at *Mentz* with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that ſervice: the converſion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, aſſiſted by the Miniſtry of one *Poppo*, the firſt Biſhop of *Arthuſen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongſt the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, *Anno* 1055. or thereabouts: the *Engliſh* aſſiſting in the work, and the good King ſo zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint, after his deceaſe. Relapſing for the moſt part to their antient *Gentiliſm*, they were finally regained unto *Chriſtianity*, by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an *Engliſh man*, about the year 1156. before his aſſuming of the Popedom, called *Nicolaus Breakſpear*. But by whomſoever firſt converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend ſome power and juriſdiction over them. Which when they began to exerciſe with too much authority, *Waldemar* the third is ſaid to have returned this anſwer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitias à Parentibus, Religionem à* Romana *Eccleſia, quam ſi nobis invides renunciamus per præſentes*; that is to ſay, We hold our life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Anceſtors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by theſe preſents. But this *renunciation* though then threatned, was not made till afterwards: when the whole maſſe of *Popery* was aboliſhed by King *Frederick* the firſt, uſing therein the Miniſtry of *Bugenhage*, a *Divine* of *Pomeren*; by whom *reformed* according to the doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches.

As for the *Government* of the *Church* ſince that *Reformation*, it continueth as before it was, by *Archbiſhops* and *Biſhops*, in number as before; but much abridged of their *Revenues*, and a great part of their power. For *Frederick*, though he found it neceſſary to remove the old *Biſhops*, (not one of which would be perſwaded to the change of *Religion*) yet he ſubſtituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient maintenance, with a power of *Preſidence* in all *Church-Aſſemblies*, where they are to take the advice of other *Presbyters* along with them; and out of ſuch *Aſſemblies*, to receive complaints, to provide remedie againſt ſcandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar *Inſpectors*, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbiſhops, and thirteen Biſhops: that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Londen*, the Biſhops of *Roſchilt*, *Odenſee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthuſen*, *Sleſwick*, and *Haderſleve*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; the Archbiſhop of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norwey*; and the Biſhops of *Halar*, and *Schalholt*, for the Iſle of *Iſeland*: the Churches of *Holſtein*, (formerly under the Biſhops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by *Super-intendents*, as the reſt of the *Lutherans*.

The whole body of the eſtate (as appears by this) conſiſteth chiefly of three members; *viz.* 1. the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarſh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holſtein*, ſpecially ſo called: 2. the Kingdom of *Denmark*, comprehending both *Juitlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Iſlands: and 3. the Kingdom of *Norwey*, conſiſting of *Norwey* it ſelf, and the Iſlands of the *Northern Ocean*. Which parts we ſhall ſurvey in order, as before laid down, premiſing firſt a word or two of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, in which the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the two *Juitlands* are contained.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.*

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Baltick* Sea; on the Weſt, the main *German* Ocean; on the North, the narrow Strait or *Fretum*, which they call the *Sundt*; on the South-weſt, the great River of *Albis*; on the South-Eaſt, the ſmall River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the neck or *Iſthmus*, which unites it to *Germanie*. I know that ſome contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South, with the River *Eydore*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more reſemblance to a *Cherſoneſe* or *Demy-Iſland*, than the other doth; diſſenting in this point from the common opinion. It had the name of *Cherſoneſus*, ἀπὸ τῆς χερσὸς ἧ νῆσος, *à terra & inſula*, it being the ſame with a *Peninſula* in the *Latine*; of which name there are 5 moſt famous, that is to ſay, firſt, *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*. 2. *Thracia Cherſoneſus* in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*. 3. *Taurica Cherſoneſus* in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartarie*. 4. *Aurea Cherſoneſus* in *India*, which we now call *Malaca* (of all which we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) and 5. *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, where now we are. This laſt ſo called from the *Cimbri*, the firſt Inhabitants hereof, originally deſcended from *Gomer*, the ſon of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii*, and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia*, as too narrow for them, they ſought out new dwellings, and are ſaid to have firſt dwelt in the banks of *Palus Mœotis*; where they gave name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their ſeats more Northward, into a Country boun-

bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great *Ocean*, on the one side; and the forest of *Hercynia*, on the other; within which bounds is the *Peninsula* or country where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary big stature, having blew and red eyes, and lived most upon theft: so that for their sakes, Κίμβρους ἐτυνομάζουσι γείτονες τὴς λῃστὰς, the *Germans* called all theeves *Cimbers*. It hapned that the *Ocean* overflowing a great part of their Country, compelled them to seek new seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This request being denyed, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their swords, what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Consuls, perished by them; so that now (saith *Florus*) *Actum esset de* Imperio Romano *nisi illi seculo* Marius *contigisset*: for he, as we have ellewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Juites*, and *Angles*; upon whose removal into *Britain*, the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possess it. *Holstein*

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the same miles in the breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of ground, 30 walled towns, 6 Episcopal Sees, (besides those of *Hamburg*, and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbishop of *Bremen*) and 20 Royal Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great men of the Country, as the private retirements of the King. The soil naturally more fit for pasturage than tillage; feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are sent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at the present into the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Jutland*.

1. *HOLSTEIN.*

The Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, where it joins to *Germanie*, extending as far North, as the River *Eydore*, which divides it from *Jutland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*; which signifies a Wood, or Forest, according to the nature of it; the Countrey being low, marishie and full of *Woods*, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these four Provinces, 1 *Wagerland*, 2 *Stormarsh*, 3 *Ditmarsh*, and 4 *Holst*, or *Holstein* specially so called.

1 *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein*, which lies on the South East of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East, with *Mecklenbourg* and the *Baltick* sea; on the West, with *Holstein* specially so called; on the North, with the Sea *Baltick* also; on the South, with some part of *Mecklenbourg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who possessed this tract; from whence the name of *Wagria*, in our *Latine* writers.

Chief towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billew*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which distant five *Italian* miles. The River capable of ships of a thousand Tun, which commonly they unlade at *Tremuren*, the Port Town to the City; seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was first built by *Adolph*, the second Earl of *Holstein*, *Anno* 1143. but so well privileged by him and his next successors, that in short time it bid defiance to its founders, (the cause of many differences betwixt it and those Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it self. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the Empire, after whose death they chose themselves another Duke; who having governed them five years, was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdom: remaining so, till delivered by the Emperour *Frederick* the second. By whom again once infranchised, it became *Imperial*: afterwards listed amongst the *Hanse towns*, and the first in estimation of all the company; having above 600 ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Tun and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from *Pirats*, they are most of them built for burden, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City, it is built upon all the sides of a rising hill, on the top whereof standeth the Church of Saint *Mary*, (once the *Cathedral* of the City, for it was *Episcopal*) whence is a descent to all the gates of the City, affording to the Eye a most pleasing prospect. The buildings very beautifull, and all of brick, the streets streight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent imagerie, and much admired even by skilfull workmen: and unto every private house a pipe of water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the pattern whereof, it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London*, and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany*, or the more Northern Countries, which can equallize it, either for the beauty and uniformity of the houses, the pleasant gardens, fair streets, delightfull walks without the wals, or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their civility to strangers, and strict execution of justice without partiality. The whole in compass about six miles, fortified with a double wall, deep ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, four *Dutch* miles from *Lubeck*, and near the head of that River. 3. *Oldesloe*, on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. 4. *Gronneburg*, and 5. *Newkirk* on the *Baltick* shore: and 6. *Stendorp*, more within the land; near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

Southwest of *Wagerland*, lyeth *STORMARSH*, betwixt the *Elb* and two lesse Rivers called the *Billen* and the *Store*: from which last, and the marishness of the situation, or from that River and the *Marsi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Storemarsh*. Places of most importance are 1. *Crempe*, on a little River so named, which falls not far off into the *Store*, and both together not much further into the *Elb*. A town well fortified by *Christian* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the resistnce which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, against

Holſtein. whom it held out 13. moneths, and yeelded at the laſt upon good conditions, *Anno* 1628. 2. *Tychenberg*, (*Tycbopol s* my Auchor calls it) a *Dutch* mile from *Crempe*, but on the very bank of the river *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhin*, a ſmall River, upon which it is ſeated: firſt built, and afterward well fortified by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, of purpoſe to command the *Elb*, and put a ſtronger bridle in the mouths of the *Hamburgers*, *Anno* 1603. now held to be the ſtrongeſt piece of all his Dominions; the only Town of all this Dukedom, which yeelded not to the prevailing *Imperialiſts* in their late wars againſt the *Danes*, *An.* 1628. 3. *Bredenberg*, a ſtrong town, belonging to the *Rantzovés*, one of the beſt pieces of the Kingdom; remarkable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Wallenſtein*, (Duke of *Fridland*) in the war aforeſaid: who at laſt taking it by aſſault put all the ſouldiers to the ſword. 4. *Pippenberg*, another ſtrong place, and of very great conſequence. 5. *Jetzeho*, on the River *Store*. 6. *Gluck-Stade*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the ſaid *Chriſtiern* the fourth (who much delighted in the place) to command the paſſage up the *Elb*. 7. *Store*. 8. *Hamburg*, upon the *Billen*, where it falls into the *Elb*; an antient City, built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charls* the *Great*, and walled by the Emperour *Henry* the fourth. Accounted ſince that time an *Imperial* City, and made one of the *Hanſe*, on the firſt incorporating of thoſe Towns. Which notwithſtanding, on a controverſie ariſing about that time, betwixt the Earl of *Holſtein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to belong to the Earls of *Holſt*; and that determination ratified by *Charls* the fourth, *Anno* 1374. In purſuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the *Oath of Allegeance*, to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of *Denmark* of that houſe, as Earl of *Holſt*; acknowledging him and his ſucceſſors for their lawfull Lords: though ſince they have endeavoured to ſhake off that yoak, preſuming very much on their power at Sea, and the aſſiſtance which they are aſſured of upon all occaſions from the reſt of the *Hanſetowns*. As for the Town it ſelf, it is ſeated in a large plain, with fat and rich paſtures round about it: well fortified by art and nature; the *Haven* being ſhut up with a ſtrong iron chain. The buildings for the moſt part of brick, but more beautifull than well contrived, and the ſtreets ſomewhat of the narroweſt. The publick ſtructures very fair, eſpecially the Counſel-houſe, adorned with the *Statua's* of the *Nine Worthies*, carved with very great Art; the *Exchange*, or meeting place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens generally rich, maſters of many as great ſhips as ſail on the Ocean, ſome of them 1200 tun in burden; which bring in great profit; beſides the great reſort of Merchants, and their *Factors*, from moſt places elſe; ſometimes the *Staple town* for the *Cloth* of *England*, removed on ſome diſcontents to *Stode*, and from thence to *Holland*. It is obſerved, that there was in this town at one time 177 *Brewers*, and but 40 *Bakers*, nor more than one *Lawyer* and one *Phyſician*. The reaſon of which diſproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their only *Phyſick*; their differences ſooner ended over a *Can*, than by order of *Law*; *Bread* being accounted but a *binder*, and ſo not to be uſed, but in caſe of neceſſity.

Betwixt the Rivers *Store* and *Eydore*, coaſting along the *German Ocean*, lies the Province of *DITMARSH*, moſt properly called *Tuitſchmarſh*, from the mariſhneſs of the ground, and the *Dutch* Inhabitants; or from a mixture of thoſe people, with the *Marſi*, ſpoken of before. The people being naturally of the *Saxon* race, retain much of the ſtomach and animoſity of the antient *Saxons*: never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holſt* (as *Wagerland*, and *Storemarſh* were) till *Holſt* it ſelf was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of that houſe, *An.* 1474, yet would they not ſubmit unto his authority: but held it out againſt him and ſome of his ſucceſſors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquiſhed in the open field; till broken, and made ſubject, by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1559. Chief places in it are 1. *Meldorp* upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are ſo wealthy, that many of them cover their houſes with *copper*. 2. *Londen*, oppoſite to a *Peninſula* or *Demi-Iſland* called *Eldenſtede* on the Weſt ſide whereof it ſtandeth. 3. *Heinincksſte*, and 4. *Tellincksſte*; of which nothing memorable.

And as for *HOLSTEIN* it ſelf, the fourth and laſt member of this Eſtate, though the firſt in power and reputation, it taketh up the *Inland* parts, betwixt *Storemarſh* and *Juitland*, ſave that it hath an outlet into the *Baltick*, on the Northweſt of *Wagerland*. Chief places in the which are, 1. *Kyel*, (*Chilonium* in *Latine*) ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick Sea*, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious haven, ſeldom without good ſtore of ſhipping, from *Germany*, *Lifeland*, *Sweden*, and the reſt of *Denmark*. 2. *Rendesberg*, the beſt fortified piece in all this Province. 3. *Niemunſter*, on the Northweſt of the *Store*, not far from the head of it. 4. *Wilſtre*, on a ſmall River ſo called. 5. *Bramſtede*, 6. *Borſholm*, not much obſervable, but for a *Monaſtery* in which *Henry* one of the Earls hereof (of a younger houſe) turned Monk and dyed, *Anno* 1241.

The antient Inhabitants of this and the other three, were the *Saxons*, *Sigalones*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Ptolemie*; whom I conceive to be no other than ſome Tribes of the *Cimbri*, of whom this *Cherſoneſe* took name. The two laſt paſſing into the name of the firſt, and in the declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and ſpreading all along the Coaſts of the *German* Ocean, moleſted with their piracies and depredations, the ſhores of *Britain*. Known by that means unto the *Britains*, they were invited to aſſiſt them againſt the *Scots*: which action with the aid of the *Jutes* and *Angli*, (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*) they performed ſo honeſtly, as to make themſelves maſters of the beſt part of the Iſland. Such as remained behind not being able to defend their own againſt the *Sclaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*: which being peopled by the *Wagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquiſhed

by

by *Charls* the *Great*, these on the North side of the *Elb*, became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxonie*; and so continued [illegible] dismembred by *Lotharius* both Duke and Emperour: who gave the proper *Holst* (or *Holstein*, specially so called) with the Province of *Storemarsh*, to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his wars, with the title of Earl of *Holstein*, *Anno* 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his successor, setled in this house, who having made a full conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans*, from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friseland*; by which means the name of *Sclaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth, the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose wars he served. *Adolph* the last Earl of this house dying without issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, son of *Theodorick*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Heduigis* his wife, sister and heir to *Adolph* before mentioned: who being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his brother *Gerrard* for the sum of 50000 Marks: and having gotten *Ditmarsh* also of the Emperour *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far, as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, *Anno* 1474. to be held by him and his successors of the *sacred Empire*. Which said, we will next add the Catalogue of *Iuitland.*

The EARLS and DUKES of *HOLSTEIN.*

1114 1 *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperour, and Duke of *Saxonie*, made the first Earl of *Holstein.*

1137 2 *Adolph* II. son of *Adolph* the first,

1164 3 *Adolph* III. son of *Adolph* the second, vanquished by *Canutus*, King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Country.

1232 4 *Adolph* IV. in his fathers life time recovered his estate from *Waldemar* the successor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well-fought battel, *Anno* 1226. his father then prisoner to the *Danes.*

1261 5 *Gerrard*, the 2d. son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, succeeded in *Holstein.*

1281 6 *Henry*, the son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Custome-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his *tols* and *taxes.*

1310 7 *Gerrard* II. son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes.*

1339 8 *Henry* II. son of *Gerrard* the second.

1381 9 *Gerrard* III. son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick*, by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark.*

1404 10 *Henry* III. son of *Gerrard* the third.

1427 11 *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this house.

1459 12 *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his wife *Heduigis*, sister of *Henry*, and *Adolphus*, the two last Earls, succeeded in the Earldome of *Holstein*: inlarged with the addition of *Ditmarsh*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick* the third, *Anno* 1474. But seeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schaumberg*, pretended a right unto the whole, as the next heir male, according to the constitutions of the *Empire* of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the brother of *Christiern* put in for his share, according to the ill custom of *Germanie*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both: giving to *Otho* 43000 *Florens* in ready mony, with the Towns of *Pinnenberg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramstede*, the antient possessions of the Earls of *Schaumberg*; and 50000 marks to his brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole interest in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holstein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings whereof as Dukes of *Holst*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither send unto the *Diets*, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick *taxes*, nor acknowledge any kind of subjection to it, more than meerly *titulary.* Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects, when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance, or unjust sentence in the *ordinary Courts* of *Justice*, wherein they found no remedie in the *supreme Council* of the *Province*; it might be lawfull for them to *appeal* to the *Imperial Chamber*, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient caution; so hath it seldom or never been put in practice: the very grant or *privilege* (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of the two Estates, the title of Duke of *Holstein*, and a good part of the Country, was given unto *Adolphus*, brother of *Christiern* the 3d. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the *Garter*, *An.* 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns: after whose death, and the death of all his children dying without issue male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, son of *Frederick* the second, and brother of *Christiern* the fourth; created Knight of the *Garter* by King *James*, *Anno* 1605.

IUITLAND.

IUITLAND, containeth all the rest of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holst* by the River *Eydore*, the antient boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*: but principally by a long trench and wall from one Sea to the other, of such breadth that a chariot or two horse-

Juitland.

men a breaſt might ride upon it. Firſt built in imitation of the *Picts wall* in *England*, by *Godfred* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the *Great*: either to hinder the dayly incurſions of the *Saxons*, as ſome, or to ſtop the current of the victories of the ſaid *Charles*, as others think. The tract whereof, ſtill very eaſie to be ſeen, is called *Dennewerck*, (or the *Danes work*) to this very day.

It was ſo called from the *Juites*, who together with the *Angli*, and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a conqueſt of the beſt part of *Britain*. The Country ſo abounding in Cattel, that it ſendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, beſides great ſtore of Butter, Cheeſe, Tallow, Hides and Horſes: divided commonly into *North-Juitland*, and *South-Juitland*; or *Juitland* ſpecially ſo called, and the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*.

SOUTH-JUITLAND, or the Dukedome of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* which lies next to *Holſtein*: called *South-Juitland*, from the *Southern* ſituation of it; and *Sleſwick*, from the chief Town of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the moſt part, plain, little ſwelled with mountains: the fields whereof do interchangeably yeeld both fiſh, and corn. For during one three years they ſow it conſtantly, and reap the fruits of it; and for the next three let the *Pooles* overflow the land, to the end the fiſh may eat up the graſs (whom they catch as often as they pleaſe) and the mud which is left behind inrich the ſoil. But beſides their *Pools*, they have alſo on the *Baltick* ſhores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well-ſtored with fiſh, and with Salmons ſpecially.

Chief Towns herein are 1. *Flensburg*, ſeated amongſt very high Mountains, on the ſhore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port ſo deep, ſo ſafe, and ſo commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their ſhips, cloſe to their houſes. 2. *Huſem*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eydore*. 3. *Haderſleve*, a Biſhop See, if not rather ſome Town or Manor of the Biſhops of *Sleſwick*, ſituate on a navigable inlet of the *Baltick* Sea, where with it is almoſt incompaſſed: beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldeſt ſon of King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, then Duke of *Holſt*; but finiſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Denmark*. 4. *Londenberg*, in the *Peninſula* called *Elderſtede*, over againſt *De Sorants*, an Iſland of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gottorp*, a ſtrong Fort or Caſtle of the Duke of *Sleſwicks*, at the end of a large Bay or in-let of the *Baltick* alſo: remarkable for the *Toll-booth*, or cuſtom-houſe there erected, at which there, is *Toll* paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen, ſent out of *North-Juitland* into *Germanie*. 7. *Sleſwick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Heydebui*, built, as they ſay, by *Hethe*, a Queen of that Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleſwick*, as the Town upon the River *Slea*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Epiſcopal See, and being made the head of the Dukedom; ſo giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom firſt erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel*, a former King, *Anno* 1280. to be held by him under the right and *ſoveraignty* of the Kings thereof. But the male-iſſue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, conferred on *Gerrard*, Earl of *Holſtein*, as before was ſaid, *Anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, ſhe extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his ſon *Adolphus*. After whoſe death it fell, together with *Holſtein*, upon *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, as before related; by whom incorporated with that Crown; never ſince aliened, but aſſigned ſometimes in portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the ſons of *Alexander*, ſurnamed of *Sunderburg*, (the place of his Nativity) ſon of *John*, one of the younger ſons of King *Chriſtiern* the third.

NORTH-JUITLAND, the moſt Northern part of all the *Cherſoneſe*, hath on the South, the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*; but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the *Biſhopricks*, into four *Dioceſes*, or *Diſtricts*, that is to ſay,

1. the Dioceſe of *RIP* or *Ripen*, bordering next to *Sleſwick*, containeth 30 *Prafectures* or *Herets*, (as they uſe to call them) ſeven Cities, or walled Towns, and ten Caſtles. The chief of which are 1. *Ripen*, the Epiſcopal See, ſituate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Koldins*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Chriſtiern* the third, built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an Univerſity.)

2. The *Dioceſe* of *ARTHUSEN* lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, ſeven Cities, or walled Towns, and five Caſtles. The chief whereof are 1. *Arthuſen*, the Epiſcopal See, ſeated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port, and well-frequented; the firſt Biſhop hereof being that *Poppo*, who converted this Nation: *Chriſtianity* and *Epiſcopacy* going, for the moſt part, hand in hand together. 2. *Schunderburg*, on the South of *Arthuſen*. 3. *Kalla*, a ſtrong Caſtle of the Kings, ſeated in the inmoſt part of a large Bay, occaſioned by the *Premontorie*, or Cape of *Hillenis*; extending hence two *Dutch* miles to the high hill of *Ellemanberg*. Oppoſite whereunto, and pertaining to this Juriſdiction, lie the Iſlands of 1. *Samſoe*, 2. *Hiolm*, 3. *Tuen*, 4. *Hiarnee* (perhaps *Gerno*) 5. *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The *Dioceſe* of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arthuſen*, containeth ſixteen *Herets*, the Iſlands of 1. *Jegen*, 2. *Hanſholm*, 3. *Oſtholm*, 4. *Ciſland*, 5. *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*: three Cities, or walled Towns, and as many Caſtles. The principal of which are 1. *Wiborch*, the Epiſcopal See, an Inland City; but ſituate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limford*. The ordinary ſeat of *Judicature*, for both the *Juitlands*; for all Cauſes, as well *Criminal*, or *Civil*: the Court continually ſitting from one day to another, unleſs perhaps the *Judges* doe ſometimes adjourn it for their own refreſhments.

4. The

4. The *Diocese* of *BYRGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying furtheſt North, is commonly ſubvided into four parts or members; that is to ſay, 1. *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limford*, on the *Baltick* ſide, whoſe chief Town is 1. *Alborch*; the ordinary ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times ſtiled *Alburgenſis*; ſituate on the Bay aforeforeſaid, which opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth thorow the main Land Weſtwards, almoſt as far as the *German* Ocean 2. *Morſee*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three *Prefecturet*, or *Herets*, the Town of *Nicopen*, the Caſtle of *Lunſted*, and the Iſle of *Ageroe*. 3. *Hanhwet*, on the horthweſt of the Bay of *Limford*, containing four *Herets*, the Town of *Thyſtad*, where *Chriſtiern* the third founded a publick School, or ſuch another Univerſity as that of *Kolding*; the Caſtle of *Orumne*, and the Iland of *Oland*, and *Oxcholm*. There is in this part alſo, the high Rock called *Skaringelim*, a noted Sea-mark; fitly ſerving to give notice to the Sayler, of the *Quickſands* which lye underneath it, and about this Coaſt. 4. *Venſyſſel*, *Venſilia*, or *Wenſlie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vandalorum ſedes*, the ſeat of the *Vandals*; taketh up all the reſt of the north of *Jutland*, containing ſix *Prefectures*; the Ilands of *Groyſholm*, 2. *Hartzholm*, and 3. *Tydſholm*; three towns, and one Caſtle, the moſt remarkable of which is *Schagen*, with the moſt northerly point of all this *Cherſoneſe*. In this part is a very high mountain called Mount *Alberg*, in which are found ſome marks and remainders of the antient Gyants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

Baltick Iſlands.

The Inhabitants of both *Jutlands* in the time of *Ptolemy*, and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phunduſii*, *Charudes*, and in the moſt Northern tracts the *Cimbri*; of whom the four firſt were but *Tribes* or Nations. Theſe moving towards the South in that great expedition againſt *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals*, on the *Roman* Empire, occaſioned the *Jutes* and *Angli* to inlarge or ſhift their dwellings: each taking up the parts which lay neareſt to them. The *Jutes*, or *Gutæ*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolemy*, took up the Nothern parts thereof from them, named *Jutland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, poſſeſſed them of thoſe parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old friends and confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleſwick*) where *Angelen*, now an obſcure village, once of greater note, doth preſerve their memory. But theſe uniting with the *Saxons*, in the conqueſt of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep poſſeſſion of the Country againſt new *Invaders*; gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them. By whom theſe Countries being conquered, as far as to the River *Eydore*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdome; of whom we ſhall ſay more in the cloſe of all: firſt taking a ſurvey of the *Baltick* Ilands, and ſuch Provinces on the main land of *Scandia*, as properly make up the Kingdome of *Denmark*.

2 The *BALTICK* ILANDS.

The *BALTICK ILANDS* are in number 35. and are ſo called, becauſe they lye diſperſed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans*, *De Ooſt zee*; antiently by ſome, *Mare Suevicum*; by *Pomponius Mela*, *Sinus Codanus*; by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally, *Mare Balticum*: becauſe the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by ſome Writers of the middle and darker times, called *Baltbia*. It beginneth at the narrow paſſage called the *Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia*, and *Lituania*. The reaſons why this Sea being ſo large, doth not *ebbe* and *flow*, are 1. the *narrowneſs* of the ſtrait, by which the *Ocean* is let into it; and 2. the Nothern ſituation of it, whereby the *Celeſtial* Influences have leſſe power upon it. The principall of this great ſhole of Ilands, are 1. *Seland*, 2. *Fuinen*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Langeland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falſtre*, 6. *Azze*, 7. *Alen*, 8. *Toſinge*, 9. *Wheen*, 10. *Fimera*, and 11. *Bornholim*. Some other of leſs note we ſhall only name, and ſo paſſe them over.

1. *SELAND*, the greateſt Iland of the *Baltick* Seas, is ſituate near the main Land of *Scandia*, from which parted by a narrow *Strait* or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt*, or *Sound*. A *Strait* thorow which all ſhips which have any trading to, or from the *Baltick*, muſt of neceſſity take their courſe: all other paſſages being barred up with impaſſable Rocks; or otherwiſe prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their goods. So that being the only ſafe paſſage which theſe Seas afford, one may ſometimes ſee two or 300 ſhips in day paſs thorow it: all which pay a *toll* or *impoſition* to the King according to their bils of lading. And to ſecure this *paſſage*, and command all *Paſſengers*, there are 2 ſtrong Caſtles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helſinbourg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Iland, which is called *Croneberg*.

But before we come unto this Caſtle, we muſt view the other parts of the Iland, being in length two daies journey, and almoſt as much in breadth: the ſoil ſo fertile, that without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all neceſſaries for the life of man. It was antiently called *Codonania*, and containeth it in fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Caſtles. The principal whereof, are 1. *Haffen*, or *Hafnia*, the *Metropolis* of the Ilands; by the Dutch called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven* of *Merchants*, ſituate near the Sea, with an handſome Port; the Iſle of *Amager* which lyeth on the Eaſt-ſide of the Town, making a very ſafe road for all kinds of ſhipping. The town of an *orbicular* form, and reaſonably well fortified; but the buildings mean, for the moſt part of clay and timber, only to be commended for a ſpacious *Market-place*. Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdome, and ſituate in the heart of thoſe dominions, is the *Palace Royal*; built of Free ſtone, in form of a *Quadrangle*, but of no great beauty or

Baltick Ilands.

magnificence. Moſt memorable for the *Univerſity* here founded by *Henry* or *Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, by whom, and the ſucceeding Princes, liberally endowed. 2. *Frederikſburg*, amongſt Woods of Beech, built for a place of pleaſure by *Frederick* the ſecond, where the King hath a fine houſe, and a little Park; in which (amongſt other forein Beaſts) are ſome fallow Deer tranſported hither out of *England*, in the 24 year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Roſchild*, not walled, but counted for a City, as a See Epiſcopal; the Biſhops whereof have antiently had the honor of *Crowning*, and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denemark*. In the *Cathedral* Church whereof are to be ſeen the Tombs of many of the *Daniſh* Kings; ſome of them very fair and ſumptuous, the moſt mean, and ordinary. 4. *Sore*, of old times beautified with a goodly *Monaſtery*, the *Revenues* whereof, at the alteration of *Religion*, were converted to the maintenance of a *Free-School*, built here by *Frederick* the firſt. But in the year 1623 *Chriſtiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other *diſſolved Monaſteries*, the one in the Ile of *Lawland*, and the other in *Juitland*, founded here a new *Univerſity*: for the better ſupply of learned Miniſters for the Churches of *Denemark*, and *Norwey*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*;) and furniſhed it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences, for its firſt Profeſſors. 5. *Elſinure*, or *Helſingore*, a village only, but much frequented by Sea-faring men, as their Ships paſſe by the *Sound*, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle of *Croneberg*, built with uncredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the ſecond; the foundation of it being laid on huge ſtones ſunk into the Sea, and ſo faſtned together, that no ſtorm or tempeſt, how violent ſoever, is able to ſhake it. Well fortified, as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace, and a Fort, being ſince the firſt building of it the moſt conſtant reſidence of the Kings of *Denemark*: who from hence may eaſily diſcern each ſhip which ſails thorow the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or leſs unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleaſing proſpect. By the Commodity of this, and the oppoſite Caſtle, the King doth not only ſecure his *Cuſtomes*, but very much ſtrengthen his Eſtate: the *Caſtles* being ſo near, and the *Strait* ſo narrow, that by the addition of ſome few Ships, he may keep the greateſt *Navy* that is, from paſſing by him.

Unto the Government and Juriſdiction of this Iland belong many others, the principal whereof are 1. *Amagria*, or *Amagger*, which helps to make up the *Port*, or *Road* of *Copenhagen*, ſpoken of before; planted with *Hollandyrs* brought hither by the procurement of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond. 2. *Mund*, or *Moem-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stegoe*. 3. *Huene* or WHEEN, a little South of *Croneberg* Caſtle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite ſo broad: remarkable only for the ſtudies of that famous Aſtronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom *Frederick* the ſecond gave this Iland; that living in a private and ſolitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day moſt obſervable for the Caſtle of *Uranopolis*, or *Urenbourg*, in which the greateſt part of his *Mathematical* inſtruments are preſerved in ſafety.

III. *FIONIA*, or *FUINEN*, the ſecond Iland of accompt in all the *Baltick*, is ſituate betwixt *Seland*, and *Juitland*; from which laſt parted by a *Strait* called *Middlefar Sundt*, ſo narrow, and of ſo ſmall a Sea, that the Iland and the *Cherſoneſe* ſeemed joined together. A Country of a pleaſant and delightfull ſituation, and as fruitfull withall: containing twelve *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 *Herets*, or *Prefectures*, 16 Towns, and ſix Royal Caſtles, beſides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens houſes. The chief whereof are 1 *Odenſee*, or *Othenſche* (called in *Latine Othonia*) an Epiſcopal See, founded here, at the firſt converſion of this people, by *Otho* the *Great*, whence it had the name. The Town not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Canute*, the other to Saint *Francis*; ſituate in the midſt of the Iland, from which the reſidue of the Towns are almoſt equally diſtant; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated for trade and Merchandiſe, as they do not only traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norwey*, *Ruſſia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2. *Nibourch*, 3. *Faborch*, 4. *Suibark*, 5. *Middlefar*, whence the ſtrait ſo named: 6. *Bogens*, and 7. *Kertominde*; all ſeated on ſome *Haven*, or convenient *Greek*: the principal of the Caſtles being 1. *Newbourg*, 2. *Hagenſcow*, 3. *Eſchebourg*, 4. *Hinſgagell*, 5. the Court of *Rugard*. In this Iland, not far from the Caſtle of *Hagenſcow*, is the mountain *Ochenberg*, where *Iohn Ranzovius*, *Anno* 1530. diſcomfitted the great Army of *Chriſtopher*, the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in thoſe unſetled times to invade the Kingdom, under colour of reſtoring *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, formerly depoſed: in which fight the Earl of *Hoye*, and *Teckleburg*, were both ſlain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like pretenders.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 leſſer Ilands, moſt of them inhabited; the chief of which are

IV. *LANGELAND*, ſeven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, beſides many Villages, and Gentlemens houſes, we have the Town of *Raidkeping*, and the Caſtle of *Franeker*.

V. *LALAND*, disjoined from *Selandt*, by a little narrow ſtrait called *Groneſundt*; ſo plentifull of corn and Cheſnuts, that ſhips full fraighted with them, are ſent yearly hence. An Iland, which beſides many Caſtles, Villages, and Manſion houſes of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, *viz.* 1. *Nyſtadt*, 2. *Naſco*, 3. *Togrop*, 4 *Richus*, and 5. *Mariboans*; in which laſt antiently was a very rich *Monaſtery*, the *Revenues* whereof are now imployed for the indowment of the new *Univerſity* of *Sora*, founded by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, as before was noted.

VI. *FALSTRE*, four *Germau* miles in length, affording plenty of corn yearly to ſome neighbouring Ilands. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Nicopen*, which for the elegancy of the place, and pleaſantneſſe of the ſituation, is called the *Naples* of *Denemark*. 2. *Stabecopen*, from whence there is

the

the ordinary paſſage into *Germany*, ſeven *Dutch* miles hence. "*Scandia.*

VII. *TUSINGE*, not far from *Suiborch*, or *Swineburg*, a Town of *Fionia*, a Dutch mile in length ſituate in a dangerous and troubleſome Sea; from whence is no ſafe paſſage either to *Selandt*, *Fuinen*, or *Juitland*, though much diſtant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Aſcens*, towards *Juitland*, 2. *Niburg*, towards *Selandt*, and 3. the *Court* of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Roſencrantz*.

VIII. *FIMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitfull and well-peopled Iland, having in it the Towns of 1. *Denborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Pietterſborn*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not ſo much in danger of being made ſubject to the *Imperialiſts*, by the taking of *Holſtein*, and both *Juitlands*; as by planting a ſtrong Garriſon in this ſmall Iland: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, againſt all invaſions, *Anno* 1628. Of the remaining Ilands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*. 2. *Romſo*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agernis*, 9. *Hellenis*, 10. *Ierdo*, 11. *Birkolm*; of which nothing memorable.

Amongſt theſe Ilands, but not ſubordinate to *Fionia*, are,

IX. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, conſiſtiug of three pariſhes, ſome Gentlemens houſes, and the Town and Caſtle of *Koping*; ſuppoſed to be the habitation of the *Arii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, but a Colony rather of them, as I ſuppoſe. And not far off,

X. *ALSEN*, another little Iland, but of more repute, called in *Latine*, *Elyſia*; oppoſite to the Gulf, or Bay of *Flensburg*, in the Dukedome of *Sleſwick*, to which it alſo appertaineth. Well ſtored with Beaſts for profit, and Game for pleaſure; ſo populous, that ſome thouſands of men may be eaſily and ſuddenly raiſed in it: conſiſting of 13 Pariſhes, and four Towns, that is to ſay, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Oſterholm*, 3. *Norborch*, and 4. the good Town and Caſtle of *Sunderburg*, one of the ordinary reſidences of the Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and honoured with the birth of many of the Princes of the *Royal Family*. Some think it was the habitation antiently of the *Elyſii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*. But being the *Angli* in thoſe times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when ſome Colonies of the *Angli* ſeated themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as before was ſaid; ſome of the *Arii* and *Elyſii* might go along for company, and plant themſelves near them, in theſe *Ilands*.

XI. *BORNHOLM*, the laſt of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is ſituate more Eaſtward, oppoſite to that part of *Scandia*, which is called *Blecking*, betwixt it and *Pomeren*. An Iſle of excellent paſturage, breeding plenty of Cattel, wherewith, as alſo with butter, cheeſe, wool, hides, and ſome ſtore of fruits, they ſupply the wants of ſome of their neighbours; beſides good quantities of powdered Beef, and Mutton, which they barrell up, and ſell to Mariners. It containeth many good Towns, and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Iland. Both Town and Iland pawned by ſome former Kings unto thoſe of *Lubeck*; from whom redeemed by King *Frederick* the ſecond, for a great ſum of money, after it had been in their poſſeſſion about 50 years.

Theſe Ilands in the time of *Pomponius Mela*, were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be ſeven; the reſidue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no where mentioned in the Antients. Of theſe ſeven, the greateſt and beſt peopled, was called *Codonania* (ſuppoſed to be *Selandt*,) in which the ſaid Author placeth the *Tentoni*. By *Ptolemi* it is called *Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, ſuppoſed by him to be an Iland. From this, or from the Sea adjoining, called *Sinus Codanus*, the people of theſe Iſlands, and the next Eaſtern Continent, took the name of *Danes*; ſpreading their name afterwards, as they did their Conqueſts; of wh ch more anon. In the mean time we muſt croſſe over the *Sound*, and take notice of ſuch other parts of this Kingdom, as lye on the other ſide thereof, in the vaſt Continent, or *Demi-Iland* (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which ſomewhat muſt be firſt premiſed, in regard, that not only ſome parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norwey* (the Nothern Ilands excepted) are contained in it.

SCANDIA.

SCANDIA, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandivania*, by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the Eaſt, that Bay or branch of the *Baltick*, which is called the *Finniſch*, and *Bodner* Seas; on the North, and Weſt, the main *Ocean*; on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick*, or *Ooſt-Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it: joined to the main continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner See*, not far from *Wardhuys*. In regard of ſo great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Antients thought to be an Iland, but *incomperta magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatneſs, as both *Pytheas*, and *Xenophon Lampſacenus* do affirm in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Baſilia*, by the other *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoining. But later *Navigations*, and experience, have confuted that opinion; by which it is found to be no Iland, but a part of the *Continent*, and a great one too; containing the whole Kingdome of *Norwey*, the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and ſome part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark*, ſituate in the South-eaſt of this great *Peninſula*, and divided into the three Provinces, of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleſcida*: and in them 23 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, and fifteen Cities.

1. *HALLANDIA* or *HALLANDT*, hath on the Eaſt, the wild Woods which part it from

Goib-

Scandia. *Gothland*; on the West, the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juitland*; on the North, *Sweden*, properly and specially so called; on the South, *Scania*, or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulnesse of the Ayr, pleantnesse of the soil, commodiousnes of Havens, plenty of Fish, pleasure of hunting, for inexhaustible mines of Brasse and Lead, (with some veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and villages, and civility of the Inhabitants, not inferiour to any. Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Laholm*, 2 *Halmstad*, 3 *Falkendorch*; all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable streams, whose names I find not: 4. *Warburg*, upon the Sea side also, but fortified with a very strong Castle on the top of an hill. Taken and garrisoned by the *Swedes*, Anno 1569. and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, *Anno* 1569.

II. *SCANIA*, or *SCHONEN*, hath on the East, *Blesida*, or *Blecking*; on the West, the *Sound*, running along the shore hereof for the space of twenty *German* miles; on the North, *Hallandt*; on the South, the *Baltick* or *Oost Zee*. The Country of the same nature with *Hallandt*, as before described; the Character of that pertaining to all the three: this having over and above, as peculiar to it, that the Sea shores are stored with such sholes of *Herrings*, that sometimes Ships are scarce able with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour. It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which, are 1 *Lunden*, an Archbishops See, the *Metropolitan* of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, advanced unto that honor by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the first, who purposely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that business: the Church of *Danemark* being before that time subject to the Archbishops of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is situate somewhat within the Land; but the *Cathedral* easily discernible by Mariners as they sail along. The City mean, and were it not for the *Cathedral*, of no beauty at all. But that indeed affirmed to be a work of much magnificence and Art; especially for the *Clock*, the *Diall*, and some outward adjuncts. For in the *Diall* curiously set out with divers colours, are to be seen distinctly, the year, month, week-day, and hour of every day, throughout the year; with the Feasts, both *moveable* and *fixed*, together with the motion of the Sun and Moon, & their passage through each degree of the *Zodiack*. Then for the *Clock*, it is so framed by *Artificial* Engines, that whensoever it is to strike, two horse-men encounter one another, giving as many blows apiece, as the Bell sounds hours: and on the opening of a door, there appears a *Theatre*, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Christ* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi*, (with their several trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and presenting severally their gifts; two *Trumpeters* sounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that procession. 2 *Malmoge*, or *Elbogen*, (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, just opposite to *Coppenhagen* in *Seland*, a well-traded Port: the birth-place of *Gaspar Bartholinus*, otherwise called *Malmogius Danus*, that great *Mathematician*; supposed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial, before described. 3. *Trelleberg*, on the North of *Elbogen*. 4 *Landiscron*, on the Sea side, of great strength and consequence. 5 *Helsemburg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Castle, just opposite to *Helsinare*, and *Croneberg* in *Seland*; the other of the two keyes which openeth into the *Sound*. 6 *Radneby*, a frontire Town bordering on *Verendia*, a province of *Swethland*. 7 *Christiania*, or *Christendopp*, a strong piece built by *Christiern* the fourth, *anno* 1604. compassed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marshes, thought to be impregnable.

III. *BLESCICA* or *BLECKING*, is bounded on the East and South, with the *Baltick* Sea; on the North, with *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*; on the West, with *Scania* or *Schonen*: more mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking somewhat of the former *character*, which we had of *Hallandt*. Chief Towns here of are 1 *Usted*, on the mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Christenberg*, in *Latine Christianopolis*, on the borders of *Swethland*; raised out of the ground by *Christiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdome on that side, *Anno* 1602. but not long after by a warlike stratagem surprised by the *Swedes*, in the late war betwixt those Kingdomes, in the year 1611. Destroyed and dis-peopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleasant object, but since repaired and repleni shed. 3 *Abuys*, upon the River which divides the Kingdomes, not far from *Christernberg*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Gutæ* and *Dauciones*, taking up the South parts of this great *Peninsula*. *Meridionalia tenent Gutæ & Dauciones*, as we find in *Ptolemy*, *Geogr.* l. 2. c. 11. which in all probability must be meant of these Provinces. Of these the *Gutes* passing over into the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, possessed themselves of the North parts of it, since from thence called *Juitland*. The rest uniting with the people of those many Islands, which lye together in the Bay or Gulph called *Sinus Codanus* (now the Baltick Sea) took the names of *Danes*: and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof, above a thousand years before the birth of our Saviour. First taken notice of by that name in *Gornandes de Rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Justinian* the first; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived, that they made themselves Masters of so much of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, as had been formerly possessed by the *Juites* and *Angli*; whose forsaken or ill-peopled seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the *Great*, living in a confused estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, somtimes to the *Swedes*, but alwaies without Law and order; till by their King *Godfrey* or *Gotricus* they were regulated by *Laws*, and reduced to an orderly kind of life, *Anno* 797. About this time they first began to infest the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friseland*, with a Fleet of 200 sail: and had much weakened and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*; and the quarrels which arose about the succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their affairs at home being again well setled, they imployed their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker enemy: over which they tyrannised 250 years, and reigned 26. under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terror of their name being over,

they

they have been moſt buſied with their neighbours of *Sweden*, and *Germany*: improving their eſtate, but rather by mariages and civil contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norwey*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; their pretenſions to, and for a time the poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Sweden*, getting them nothing in concluſion but blows and loſſes. So that we have no more to do, than to ſumm up a catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; leaving the reſt that follow to another place. *Scandia*

The KINGS of *DENMARK*.

A. Ch.		
797	1	*Gotricus*, the firſt *Legiſlator* of the *Danes*, and the eſtabliſher of their Kingdom, a prudent and valiant Prince.
	2	*Olaus*, ſon of *Gotricus*, or *Godfrey*.
	3	*Henningus*, ſon of *Olaus*.
873	4	*Siward*, ſon to a daughter of *Godfrey* by the King of *Norwey*.
	5	*Regnier*, ſon of *Siward*.
	6	*Siward* II.
	7	*Ericus* or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz*, at the ſame time with his brother *Harald*, recovered the kingdom to his houſe (of which they had been outed by the race of *Godfrey*.)
	8	*Canutus*, the ſon of *Ericus*, the heatheniſh ſon of a *Chriſtian* and pious Father.
880	9	*Froto*, the ſon of *Canutus*, a profeſſed *Chriſtian*.
886	10	*Gormo* (our *Engliſh* writers call him *Gormund*) ſon of *Froto*.
889	11	*Harald*, the ſon of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.
900	12	*Gormo* II. ſon of *Harald*, an enemy of the *Chriſtian Faith*.
927	13	*Harald* II. ſon of *Gormo* the ſecond, a good *Chriſtian*.
975	14	*Sueno* or *Swain*, ſon of *Harald*, at firſt a great Enemy of the *Goſpel*, an Uſurper of the throne in his Fathers life-time, and a great ſcourge unto the *Engliſh*. Outed of his Eſtate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the *Goſpel*, regained his Kingdom, and eſtabliſhed *Chriſtianity* in this Countrey, his war on *England* ſtill continuing.
1010	15	*Olaus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*.
1020	16	*Canutus*, brother of *Olaus*, the firſt King of *England* of the *Danes*, ſucceeded his brother in the kingdomes of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; to which he added alſo the Crown of *Sweden*.
1037	17	*Canutus* III. ſonne of *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt King of *England* of the race of the *Danes*.
	18	*Magnus*, ſon of *Olaus*, King of *Norwey*.
1051	19	*Sueno* II. ſiſters ſon of *Canutus* the ſecond, by *Ulfo* an *Engliſh* Duke.
1074	20	*Harald* III. baſe ſon of *Sueno* the ſecond.
	21	*Canutus* IV. an other of the baſe ſons of *Sueno*, murdered at the Altar in the Church of *Ottenſee* in the Iſle of *Fionia*; afterwards *canonized* a Saint.
1088	22	*Olaus* II. another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*.
1096	23	*Ericus* II. another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*, the founder of the Archiepiſcopal See of *Lunden*.
1102	24	*Harald* IV. baſe ſon of *Henry* or *Ericus* the ſecond.
1133	25	*Nicolas*, another of the baſe ſons of *Swain*.
1135	26	*Ericus* III. another of the baſe ſons of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1140	27	*Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth (ſome of the younger houſes being reckoned in) nephew of *Ericus* the ſecond.
1150	28	*Sueno* III. ſon of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings; the firſt reigning in *Scandia*, the other in *Juitland*: both dead without iſſue, *Canutus* being ſlain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.
1157	29	*Waldemar*, ſon of *Canutus*, the lawfull ſon of *Ericus* the ſecond, after the interpoſition of ſo many *Baſtards*, ſucceeded at the laſt in the throne of his Fathers. By his means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the *Goſpel*.
1185	30	*Canutus* V. ſon of *Waldemar*.
1203	31	*Waldemar* II. brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleſwick*, before his comming to the Crown.
1243	32	*Ericus* V. called the VII. ſon of *Waldemar* the ſecond, ſlain by the practices and treaſon of his brother *Abel*.
1251	33	*Abel*, brother of *Ericus*, ſlain by the Paiſants of *Friſeland*.
1252	34	*Chriſtopher*, brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.
1260	35	*Ericus* VI. (VIII) ſon of *Chriſtopher*.
1287	36	*Ericus* VII. (IX) younger ſon of *Ericus*, ſupplanted his elder brother *Chriſtopher*,
1327	37	*Chriſtopher* II. eldeſt ſon of *Ericus*, firſt diſpoſſeſſed of his birth-right by his brother *Ericus*; after whoſe death, he ſucceeded in the Crown, by the help of his half Brother the Earl of *Holſt*.
1334	38	*Waldemar* III. ſon of *Chriſtopher* the ſecond, againſt whom and his encroachments, the Sea-towns, commonly called the *Hanſe*, did firſt confederate, and vanquiſhed him in many battels.

1376 39 *Mary*

Norwey. 1376 39 *Margaret*, daughter and heir of *Waldemar* the third, maried with *Aquin* King of *Norwey*, ſo uniting the kingdoms: of whom and their ſucceſſours we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; when we have took a view alſo of the kingdom of *Norwey*, and the *Appendixes* thereof.

NORWEY.

NORWEY is bounded on the East, with *Swethland*, from which parted by a perpetual ridge of rough and wild mountains, called the *Dofrine* hills; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to ſay, by the *frozen Sea* upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the Weſt; and on the South, with the *Daniſh* Sea, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*. Being in breadth from *Schagen*, the moſt Northern point of *Juitland*, to *Congell*, the moſt Southerly town of *Norwey*, no leſs then 250 miles.

It is called *Norwey*, *quaſi tractus ſeu via Septentrionalis*, from the *Northern* ſituation of it, containing in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above half ſo much: inhabited by a people given to hoſpitality, plain dealing, and abhorring theft. Antiently they were great warriers, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom called *Normans*, (that is to ſay, *Homines Boreales*, or *Northmen*, as *Willielmus Gemiticenſis* rightly hath it:) being at that time a mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders* apart from the *Danes*; whoſe ſteps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual *Piracies*, on the Coaſts of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the ſame ſenſe, they are called *Nordluidi*, a name made into *Latine*, out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *leiu*, ſignifying men of a Northern place or Nation.

Of the poſition of it in regard of the Heavens we have ſpoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the firſt *Parallel* of the twelfth *Clime*, where the *Pole* is elevated 58 degrees 26 minutes, as far as to the 71 degree of *Latitude*. By which accompt the longeſt day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being ſituate furtheſt North of all this Countrey, they have no night for almoſt three whole moneths together.

The Country for the moſt part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vaſt woods, extreme cold, and but ill inhabited. In the beſt parts thereof it affords little corn; and in the moſt northern none at all: inſomuch that the common ſort of people are fain to uſe dried fiſh (that which we commonly call *Stock-fiſh*) inſtead of bread. But the better (that is, the richer ſort) buy corn of ſuch Merchants as come to traffick with them. Their chief commodities are *Stock-fiſh*, rich furres, train-oyl, pitch, and tackling for ſhips, as maſts, cables, deal-boards, and the like; which the Inhabitants exchange for corn, wine, fruits, beer, and other neceſſaries for mans life. The Countrey is exceedingly troubled with certain little beaſts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigneſs of a *field mouſe*, and are by the Inhabitants ſaid to drop out of the clouds in tempeſtuous weather. They devour, like the *Locuſts*, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time dye all in heaps (as it were) together: and with their ſtench ſo poiſon the air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the *Jaundies*, and with a giddineſſe in the head. But theſe beaſts come not ſo often to infect the land, as the *Whales* doe to terrifie and moleſt the ſhores, the Weſtern Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for thoſe great *Leviathans*: againſt whoſe violence and fury, the Mariners and people of the Sea coaſt have found a *Remedie*, which is by caſting out ſome water intermixed with the oyl of *Caſtor*; the ſmell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no fiſhing on theſe Coaſts, which is the greateſt Staple commodity (beſides materials for ſhipping) which the Countrey yeeldeth.

The Towns here, are exceeding thin, and in them the houſes for the moſt part very poor and miſerable; commonly patched up of durt and hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage houſes in the *Fen*-Countries. Diſtributed into five *Prefectures* or *Governments*, according to the number of the Caſtles which command the ſame. Of theſe,

1 The firſt moſt towards the South is the Caſtle of *BOHUS*, to which are ſubject the towns of 1. *Marſtrand*, ſeated in a *Demi-Iſland* begirt with Rocks; of moſt note for the infinite quantity of *herings* caught hereabouts. 2 *Congel*, upon the Sea, a town of Merchandiſe, oppoſite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3 *Oddewald*.

2. *AGGERHUIS*, the ſecond of the five *Royal Caſtles*, hath under its command the Towns of 1 *Anſlo*, or *Aſloia*, on a Bay or Gullet oppoſite to *Juitland*, an Epiſcopal See, and of moſt eſteem of all the Countrey, by reaſon of the Courts of *Judicature* which are therin held. 2 *Tonsberg*, or *Koningsberg*, that is to ſay, the *Kings* or the *Kingly* mountain, formerly a retiring place of the Kings of *Norwey*. 3 *Fredrichſtrad*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Danemark*. 4 *Schin* or *Schon*, remarkable for its mines of iron and copper. 5 *Saltzburg*, 6 *Hammar* the greater, and 7 *Hammar* the leſſe, divided by the interpoſing of the Bay called *Sinus Mœſianus*, in former times the See of a Biſhop, ſince removed to *Aſloia*; or rather thereunto united in theſe later times, as many poor Biſhopricks be in *Ireland*.

3 *BEGGER-HUSE* is the third Caſtle of command herein. Subordinate whereunto are 1 *Bergen*, the principal Town of the countrey, an *Epiſcopal* See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*; ſituate amongſt high mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or arm of the Ocean called *Carmefunt*. A noted Port, and much reſorted to by Merchants of moſt forein Nations; bringing in corn, meat, bread, beer, wine, and *Aqua vitæ*, to ſupply the natural wants and defects hereof; and in exchange tranſporting hence fiſh, furrs, cordage, and other materials for ſhipping

ping. In which regard, accounted formerly one of the four chief *ſtaple* Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanſe*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novogrod* in *Muſcovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath loſt moſt of its trade, removed hence to *Wardhuis*, neerer unto *Muſcovie*: as the great town of *Novogrod*, by reaſon of the change of navigation through the *Baltick* into the Northern paſſage, hath given way to S. *Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amſterdam*. For the *Hollanders* by blocking up the haven, but eſpecially by keeping *Bergen ap Zome*, have ſuch a command over the river, that no Veſſell can paſſe or repaſſe without their licence. 2 *Staffanger*, an Epiſcopall See alſo, but not elſe obſervable. *Iſeland.*

4 The Caſtle of *TRUND-HEIM*, is the fourth, ſituate in the Town of *Trondheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine*, *Nidroſia*; the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the *Metropolitan* of *Norwey*. A beautifull City heretofore, but ſince the ſubjection of this Countrey unto the *Danes*, reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is ſeated, and *Roſa* the name then of the principal Church: which in time gave place to the Cathedral, for greatneſſe and neatneſſe of the fabrick, all of poliſhed ſtone, not giving place to any in *Europe*; about the year 1530. much defaced with fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being eſtimated at 7000 Crowns. A great ſum of money in thoſe times, and ſo poor a Countrey. So that by caſting up our reckoning, we find in *Norwey*, one Archbiſhop, and four Biſhops, that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Trundheim* or *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger* and *Hammar*: Of the ſame power, juriſdiction, and revenue, ſince the *Reformation*, as thoſe of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the firſt converſion of this people to the *Chriſtian Faith*, we have ſpoke already.

5 The fifth and laſt Caſtle which commands this country, is that of *WARDHUYS*, ſo called of the town of *Wardhuys*; as that is from the Iſle *Ward*, in which it is ſeated. A ſmall Caſtle, and the town in former times but mean and poor, ſituate in the extreme North point of all this Kingdom; but in thoſe times accounted (as it eaſily might) for the chief of this *Prefecture*, and honoured in the ſummer time with the ſeat and reſidence of the *Governour*; retiring more Southwards in the winter; at what time, by reaſon of the extremity of the cold, and long abſence of the Sun for months together (the Town lying within the *Artick Circle*) it is hardly habitable. But of late times it is much improved both in wealth, and building; by reaſon of the removal of the *Engliſh* trading from *Novogrod* near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of St. *Nicolas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the trade of *Muſcovie*, and *Norwey*, more neer together. So that now it is not only uſefull unto the *Danes*, in regard that it ſomewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives; for that cauſe fortified very ſtrongly by King *Frederick* the ſecond: but made very profitable to him alſo, by the reſort of *Dutch*, and *Engliſh*, who muſt of neceſſity touch at it (if they make no ſtay here) in their way to *Muſcovie*. Other Towns in theſe two laſt Prefectures are not worth looking after.

And ſo much for the *Continent* or mainland of *Norwey*; let us next look upon the *Iſlands* in the *Northern* Ocean, wich belong unto it.

The ISLANDS in the *NORTHERN* OCEAN.

The NORTHERN SEA, ſo named from its northern ſituation, is by ſome called *Mare Scythicum*, becauſe it coaſted along the ſhores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal* called *Oceanus glacialis*, becauſe often frozen; by *Pliny* in the ſame ſenſe, *Mare Amalchium*, the word in the *Scythick* language ſignifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Ruſſes*, or *Muſcovites*, *Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians* in their tongue, *Mari moruſa*, that is to ſay, the *dead Sea*, becauſe of the ſlowneſſe of its motion, often clogged with ice; and in the ſame ſenſe, *mare pigrum* by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth beſt deſcribe it, from whom take it thus, *Trans* Sueones *Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum, &c.* Beyond the *Swedes*, there is another Sea, ſo ſlow and almoſt immovable, that many think it to be the bounds which compaſs the whole world. Some are perſwaded that the ſound of the Sun is heard, as he ariſeth out of this Sea; and that many ſhapes of gods are ſeen, and the beams of his head, *Illuc uſque (& fama vera) tantum natura*, At this Sea (the report is credible) is the end of nature and the world. The *Engliſh* were the firſt of all civil people, who adventured to open and diſcover the paſſages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Ruſſia*, *An.* 1553. and tracing out the way, which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemings*, *Hollanders*, and ſome towns of the *Hanſe*, have ſince followed. Of which more in *Muſcovie*. The principal Iſlands diſperſed in it, are 1 *Groenland*, 2 *Iſeland*, 3 *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norwey*, to be ſurveyed at the preſent; *Nova Zemla*, and Sir *Hugh Willoughbies* Iſland, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muſcovie*; of which more hereafter.

I. *ISELAND*, is ſituate under the *Artick Circle*, in length 144 *German* miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of ice in it, and about it, frozen continually for the ſpace of 8 months, and ſo vehemently chilled with *Northern* winds, that it yeeldeth neither corn nor trees, except *Juniper* only: yet there is graſs in ſuch aboundance, that the people are of opinion, that if they doe not ſometimes keep their cattell from feeding, they are in danger to ſurfeit and dye with fulneſſe. Beaſts for labour here are, both Horſes and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without hornes, but the Sheep not ſo: and they have alſo here a fine breed of little Doggs, known amongſt us by the name of *Iſeland doggs*, the *delight of Ladies*; as alſo white Faulcons, and white Ravens, Eagles with white tails, with Hares and Bears of the ſame colour. By reaſon of their want of corn, the people eat

Stockfiſh

Freezland. *Stock-fish* (as in *Norwey*) instead of bread; yet notwithstanding, by reason of the benefit of the sea, and accesse of strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them (even to wood and timber) of which the richer sort make use: giving the Merchant in return, sometimes the flesh of Beeves and Mutton; but ordinarily, butter, skins, horses, hawks, brimstone, and fish especially, the *staple* commodity of the Country. Of which they have such plenty, and of so good condition, that a piece of *Iseland Ling* is counted with us, as a fit dish for a Noblemans Table.

The people, for the most part, are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the *Golden Age*) on that which nature gives them, without help of Art, more than that of making cheese and butter: the mountains serving them for Towns, and the Rivers for drink, and lodging all under one roof, with their horses and oxen. They use neither *Physick*, nor *Physicians*, yet live so long (and probably the longer for it) and many of them attain to the age of 150 years and more. The women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in apparel betwixt the *Sexes*, so that it is not easie to know one from another. Few of them but have some *familiar Spirit* to doe them service: and notwithstanding the endeavour of the *Ministers* to purge them from this *impiety*; yet it is so graffed in them, that they cannot leave it.

It is observable, that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of heats, and fire under the ground; which by the *Antiperistasis* of the cold air, stopping the pores of the earth, and taking from it the liberty of evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: insomuch that there are three high Mountains, whose tops are always covered with snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecle*, *Helge*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principal; by some called *Heclefort*, which sometimes casts out fire, sometimes flaming water, then black ashes, and *pumice stones* in so great abundance, that it darkneth the Sun, and makes the Country for six miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of *Aetna*, than of these three mountains: and here the superstitious people have the same opinion which they have in *Sicil. viz.* That underneath must needs be hell, and the habitations of the damned. But to judicious men the natural reason of these flames is plain and obvious; occasioned by those veins of *brimstone* (great quantity whereof they send into forein parts) on which the foundation of the hills is laid: here being many *Bathes*, and fountains of hot water, which have sulphur swimming at the top.

At the first planting of this Island, the people did not trouble themselves with building Towns, but every one seated himself where he thought convenient; and dwelling in *cels*, and *caverns* digged in the bottom of the rocks. By means whereof the inland parts have not many houses: but the Sea coasts, since the coming of so many strangers to them, begin to be built in many places; the buildings for the most part being of timber, roofed with flags, with an hole on the sides of the roof to let in the light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are, being 1. *Halar* in the North, and 2. *Schalholt* in the southern part; both *Bishops* Sees; having petty *Schools*, consisting of 24 scholars a piece, to whom the *Latine* tongue is taught at the charge of the Bishops. 3. *Haffenfordt*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their commodities: and 4 *Bedstede*, a Castle, the ordinary residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule*, which the Poets so often speak of; as, *Tibi serviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec sit Terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca*, the *Tragedian*: nor did there want some reason to perswade them to this opinion; this being indeed the furthest part of the old known world. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Solinus* saith, *multæ sunt circa* Britanicum *insulæ, è quibus* Thule *ultima*; I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British* Isles. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola, insulas quas* Orcadas *vocant domuit, despecta est &* Thule; I am sure that *Iseland* is so far from being kenned by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least eight degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be sought for in another place, and where that is hath been shewed already. As for *Iseland* it was so far from being known unto the Antients, that it was hardly known unto those of *Norwey*, till the year 874. when some of the *Norwegians* driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressing the many petit Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new dwellings, of which some few arrived here: where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their dwelling, they invited many of their friends and Country-men to come unto them, *Anno* 1070. they were converted to the *Gospel* by some Preachers sent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whose perswasion and procurement they founded two *Episcopal* Sees; adding thereto in tract of time, eight *Religious houses*: that is to say the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Remestede*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*. under the Government and jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Hallar*; and those of *Vedey*, *Pernebar*, *Kirckebar*, and *Skirde*, under the Bishop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260. it was first brought under the Crown of *Norwey*, following since that the fortunes of it, in all changes both of Church and State: made subject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*; together with it *reformed* in matters of *Religion*, according to the confession *Ausbourg*; retaining still their *Bishops*, with a limited power, and turning the *Revenues* of their *Monasteries* unto other uses, as there they did, according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

II. Southwest of *Iseland* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FREEZELAND*, from the continual *Frosts* unto which it is subject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frizlandia*, to distinguish it from *Frisia*, or *Friseland*, in *Germany*. Situate under the North *frigid zone*, but not so much within the *Arctick* as *Iseland* is: the longest day here in the height of summer, not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the soyl so cold and barren that it beareth neither corn, nor fruit, the Inhabitants living most on fish; which as it their only food, so is it also their chief com-

commodity, wherewith to entertain or invite the *Merchant*. And hereof there is such abundance caught upon their coasts, that they are never without the company of *Hanſemen*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *Engliſh*; by which laſt ſo frequented in theſe later times, that it hath been called by ſome, the *Weſtern England*. For quantity it is ſomewhat bigger than *Iſeland*; but by reaſon of the bitter air, and the defects above mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezeland*, by the name of the Iland; ſituate on the Eaſtern ſhore of it. Beſides which, there are ſome others ſet down in the maps; as 2. *Sameſcot*, 3. *Andefort*, 4. *Sorund*; but not much obſervable. Weſtward hereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a leſs Iſland called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoyning: ſo called (by his miſtake or tranſlation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the ſon of *Dædalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over theſe Iſlands. *Groenland.*

III. *GROENLAND*, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from the *greenneſſe* of it in the Summer; as others ſay by *Antiphraſis*, becauſe never *green*, by reaſon of the ſharpneſs of winter. But the former *Etymologie* is more agreeable to the ſtate of the Country. For though it be continually covered with ſnow, except in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, (inſomuch that though the people be always clad with *Furres* and *Skinnes*, yet they feel no heat) yet in thoſe months it is exceeding freſh and *green*, and affords good paſturage. It is ſituate for the greateſt part, within the *Arctick*, between the 65 and 77 degrees of Northern Latitude: ſo that the longeſt day in the Southern part is 21 hours and an half; and in the moſt Northern, they have no night for three moneths and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than ſo for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect diſcovery made of it hitherto; though much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, (two great Sea-faring Nations) for the benefit of *Whale-fiſhing*, much there in uſe. Their chief commodities are Fiſh, white bears, wild Deer, and ſome ſtore of Cattel there bred upon their Paſtures; but houſed for the moſt part all the Winter: the greateſt part of the people dwelling in Caves, and delighting in *Necromancy*, to which more willfully addicted than thoſe in *Iſeland*, becauſe leſs acquainted with the Goſpel.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1. Saint *Thomas*, (in which there is a Monaſtery of *Dominican Friers*) ſeated in the North-Eaſt part of the Iland; concerning which *Mercator* ſpeaks of one thing which is very obſervable: relating, that it is not far from a flaming or burning mountain, ſeated upon hot *ſcalding ſprings*, conveyed by pipes of ſtone into the Monaſtery, and ſerving both as a *ſtove* to warm them, and for a *fire* to boyl their Victuals. The walls of the Monaſtery built of *Pumice* ſtones caſt out of that Mountain; which being tempered with the water of thoſe burning ſprings, doth make a glutinous ſubſtance, ſerving in ſtead of *Lime*, and as long durable. The Gardens of the *Convent*, in regard of this heat, flouriſh all the year with herbs, and ſweet-ſmelling flowers: and the adjoyning Sea for the ſame reaſon being never frozen, affords good plenty of fiſh and fowl, the whole year about; not only for the *Monks*, but the neighbouring Ilanders. So far, and to this purpoſe he. The ſecond Town of Note, is *Ilva*, not far from this *Monaſtery*: and 3. *Munderpre* on the South-Eaſt point. Others, as in a Country not well diſcovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years ſince *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, caſt by tempeſt on the Coaſt of *Freeze-land*, and by the King thereof employed upon new diſcoveries, *Anno* 1380. firſt made it known to us of *Europe*; immediately on that diſcovery poſſeſſed by the *NORWEGIANS*, and made a Member of that Crown.

As for the *NORWEGIANS* themſelves, now their fellow Subjects, they were firſt known in the time of *Ptolemy*, by the name of *Chedini*; poſſeſſing then the Weſtern parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swethlanders*, they became better known in the flouriſhing times of the *French* Empire, by the name of *Normans*; firſt called ſo by *Eginhartus* in his Hiſtory of the life of *Charles* the *Great*, infeſting then the Sea-coaſts of *France*, and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell ſo heavily on the *French*, eſpecially in the times of *Charls* the *Simple*, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, ſince of them called *Normandy*; conferred on *Rollo*, firſt Duke thereof, *Anno* 912. whoſe Succeſſors much increaſed their glory by the Conqueſt of *England*; as ſome private adventurers of them did, by the Conqueſt of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards ſetling on their own bottom, every one of theſe Northern Nations acting by it ſelf, they were called *Norwegians*: ſometimes, as formerly commanding over all three Kingdoms, ſubject ſucceſſively to each; but moſt an end governed by their own Kings, till their final ſubjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting ſolely, and by it ſelf, they ſubdued *Ireland*, under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, who tyranized there for a time; as alſo all the *Orcades*, and the Iſle of *Man*, ſold, or ſurrendred by them, upon good conditions, to the *Engliſh* and *Scots*, who by thoſe Titles ſtill poſſeſs them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all thoſe of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute*, and the firſt *Scotiſh Fergus*) as meerly fabulous; we will begin with King *Suibdagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongſt his three ſons; whoſe Succeſſors *Munſter* thus reckoneth.

The KINGS of *NORWEY*.

1 *Suibdagerus*.
2 *Haddingus*.
3 *Hetharius*.
4 *Collerus*.
5 *Frogerus*.
6 *Gotarus*.

7 *Rotherus.*
8 *Helga.*
9 *Haſmunus.*
10 *Reginaldus.*
11 *Gumaraus.*
12 *Oſmundus.*
13 *Olaus.*
14 *Oſmundus* II. not long after whoſe time, *Anno ſcil.* 800. the *Normans* began their irruptions.
15 *Aquinus.*
16 *Haraldus.*
17 *Olaus* II.
18 *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norwey* by Conqueſt.
19 *Olaus* III. ſon of *Swain*, or *Sueno*, ſucceeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; *Canutus* his younger brother being King of *England*. In this Kings time the *Norwegians* firſt received the Goſpel.
20 *Canutus*, King of *England*, ſucceeded his brother *Olaus* in the Kingdom of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, to which he alſo added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21 *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was reſtored to the *Norwegians*.
22 *Canutus* II.
23 *Magnus.*
24 *Harald* II.
25 *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*.
1326 26 *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldeſt ſon, conferred that of *Norwey* on *Hacquin*, or *Aquinus* his ſecond ſon.
1359 27 *Aquinus*, King of *Norwey*, younger ſon of *Magnus* the third, maried with *Margaret*, eldeſt daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King of *Denmark*; ſo uniting the Kingdoms. And though *Olaus* the only ſon of this bed died young, without any iſſue; yet the *Danes* having once got footing in *Norwey*, ſo aſſured themſelves of it, that they have ever ſince poſſeſſed it as a ſubject Kingdom: keeping the *Natives* ſo poor and low, that they are not able to aſſert their former liberties; and not permitting them to uſe any ſhipping, ſo much as for tranſporting their own commodities, for fear they ſhould grow wealthy and ſtrong at Sea. Beſides, the ſtrong Garriſons maintained in moſt parts of the Country, keep it in ſuch an abſolute awe, that they dare not ſtir againſt the *Danes*, if their ſtomachs ſerved them. So that now *Norwey* being made ſubject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made fellow-ſubjects to the ſame King: We muſt next look upon theſe Kings, not as Kings of each, diſtinct and ſeparate from the other; but as they are in fact and Title.

The KINGS of *DENMARK* and *NORWEY*

1376 1 *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*; of this laſt by deſcent, of the other by mariage.
1380 2 *Olaus*, ſon of *Aquinus* and *Margaret.*
1383 3 *Margaret*, wife of *Aquinus*, mother of *Olaus*, and daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her ſon (in whoſe time ſhe governed as his *Guardian*) took upon her the Kingdom in her own right; not only keeping *Norwey* in the ſtate ſhe found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the vanquiſhment of *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germanie.*
1411 4 *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeren*, and Knight of the Garter, ſon of the Lady *Mary*, Dutcheſs of *Pomeren*, daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the ſiſter of *Margaret*, by whom adopted for her Heir; ſucceeded after her deceaſe in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death, by a ſtrong Faction made againſt him, and his eſtates conferred on
1439 5 *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria* (but in title only) the ſon of *Margaret*, ſiſter of *Ericus*; choſen by the joynt conſent of all the States of theſe kingdoms. After whoſe death, (without iſſue) the *Danes* conſidering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norwey*; pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, and Earl of *Holſt*, for the next ſucceſſor: that they might get in thoſe eſtates to their kingdom alſo. Who excuſing himſelf by reaſon of his Age, and want of Children, commended to them *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, his kinſman, and next heir, who was choſe accordingly.
1448 6 *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; ſucceeded his ſaid Uncle in the eſtates of *Holſt*, and *Sleſwick*, continuing ſince united unto that Crown: and added alſo thereunto by conqueſt the kingdom of *Sweden.*
1482 7 *John*, ſon of *Chriſtiern*, ſucceeded in all three kingdoms; knight of the Order of the Garter.
1514 8 *Chriſtiern* II. ſon of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norwey*, and *Sweden*, which laſt he held under with great cruelty: hated, by reaſon of his Tyranny towards all ſorts of people, and outed of his kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, *Anno* 1522, by whom at laſt taken, and kept in priſon till he died, *Anno* 1559.

1523 9 *Fre-*

1523 9 *Frederick*, brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, choſen King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*, on the abdication of his Nephew; reformed *Religion* in both Kingdoms, according to the *Confeſſion* of *Ausbourg*.

1535 10 *Chriſtiern* III. ſuppreſſed with great trouble, the party formed againſt him in behalf of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond; perfected the *Reformation* begun in the time of his Father, and was a great *Benefactor* to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

1559 11 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Chriſtiern* the third, ſubdued *Ditmarſh*, before unconquered by the *Danes*, or the Earls of *Holſt*, and added it unto that Dukedom: both being united to that Crown, though held of the *Empire*; Knight of the Garter.

1588 12 *Chriſtiern* IV. ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond, brother of *Anne*, Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the *Garter*; engaging in a warre againſt the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond for the liberty of *Germany*, was ſuddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* by the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, but compounded the buſineſſe upon very good terms, and was reſtored to all his own.

1648 13 *Frederick* III. the youngeſt ſon of *Chriſtiern* the fourth, his elder brethren being all dead without iſſue, ſucceeded in the Crowns of *Denmark*, and *Norway*.

Having thus muſtered up the Kings of theſe ſeveral Kingdoms, taken diſtinctly, and conjunct; we muſt next look upon the way of their coming to their Regal throne, their form of Government, together with the powerableneſſe and revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their *coming* to the *Regal Throne*, the *Danes* pretend the Kingdom to be *Elective*, and not *Hereditary*: yet ſo as they have alwayes ſet the eldeſt ſon on the throne of his *Father*; unleſs ſome extraordinary occaſion have diſpoſed it otherwiſe. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times, can ſee no ſuch matter: the Kingdom going generally in the way of *Succeſſion*, unleſſe by Faction or uſurpation ſome popular and powerfull Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath hapned in ſuch other Eſtates, as are *hereditary* meerly, without claim or colour of *Election*. Tis true, that the male iſſue failing in *Olaus*, the ſon of *Margaret*; and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her deceaſe, not being of ſufficient power to aſſert their titles: the Kingdom was transferred to the houſe of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of *election*. Which being an extraordinary caſe, is to make no Precedent; though ſeconded by the outing of King *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Eſtate: being acts of violence and force, and juſtified only by the falſe *Topick* of ſucceſſe. But whoſoever loſt by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon ſuch conditions as have made him and his ſucceſſors little more than *Titulary*. For he was fain to ſwear at his *Coronation*, that he would put none of the Nobility to death, or baniſhment, but by the judgement of the Senate; that the great men ſhould have power of *Life* and *Death*, over their *Tenants* or *Vaſſals*; that no *Appeal* ſhould lie from them to the Kings *Tribunal*, nor the King be partaker of the Confiſcations; nor finally, advance any to Commands and Honours, but by conſent of his *Great Council*. Which Oath being alſo taken by his Succeſſors, made *Bodinus* ſay, *Non tam re ipſa quam appellatione Reges eſſe*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the *Nobility* (ſo they call their *Gentry*) have but ſmall Eſtates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except only the Princes of the Bloud) and that degree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to croſſe or oppoſe their King, but when ſome of the *Royal Family* (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the caſe of *Chriſtiern* the 2d. depoſed by the people, but thoſe people headed, and ſet on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the *Senate*, or *Great Council*, ſpoken of before, it conſiſts wholly of men choſen out of the *Nobility*, (who are to prove their *Gentry* by a long deſcent) ſeldom exceeding the number of 28, to each of which, there is allowed a convenient *Salary*, with ſome fair Caſtle in the Country for his retirements, during his being of that body: his whole eſtate being freed alſo for that time, from all publick payments. Without their *counſel* and advice, the King is neither to determine of *Peace* or *War*, or to enter into any new Leagues, or Confederacies, nor impoſe any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King joyntly, is the laſt *Appeal*: ſuch being the conſtitution of this Eſtate, that all *Cauſes* and *Controverſies* are firſt decided in the *Prefecture* or *Heret* (184 in number) where they firſt ariſe; from whence it is lawfull to *appeal* to the *Judge* of the *Province*, from him to the *Chancellour* of the Kingdom, and finally to the *King* and *Council*. By the Lawes of *Waldemar* the firſt, who firſt reduced the Laws into fet form, and writing, the *Biſhops* were to ſit with this *Council* in all cauſes of moment: diſcharged from that employment by King *Chriſtiern* the third, by whom it was alſo ordained, that the *Clergy* ſhould not ſell any of the Church-lands, without leave of the *King*.

The *Forces* which this King or kingdom are able to raiſe, may beſt be ſeen by ſome of their particular undertakings: thoſe ſpecially of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, who at the requeſt of *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, ſent a Navy of an hundred ſail into *Scotland* againſt the *Engliſh*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holſt*, who in his war againſt this *Chriſtiern*, (whoſe removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field, to make good his quarrell. And queſtionleſſe, conſidering the many *Ports*, and Ilands, that this Crown is Maſter of, both within the *Baltick*, and without, it cannot be but he may ſuddenly raiſe a ſtrong power at Sea: And then conſidering that each of the *Nobility*, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horſe upon all occaſions; as are thoſe alſo who hold lands of the Kings, which the *Danes* call *Verlehninge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good *Levies*,

for a ſudden ſervice; eſpecially in defence of their own dominions.

The *Revenue* of this *King* conſiſteth principally in the great *impoſt* laid upon all ſhips which paſſe through the *Sound*: the greatneſſe whereof may eaſily be conjectured at by the multidude of ſhips, which of neceſſity muſt paſſe by it in the trade of the *Baltick*; though of late ſomewhat leſſned of what it was, ſince the *Engliſh* found out, and frequented the *Northern* paſſage into *Muſcovia*. There are alſo ſome *Crown-lands*, and a great yearly *Toll* made of the Cattel, which paſs into *Germany*; as alſo of the *fiſh* tranſported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived, that the Treaſures of this *King* are not very great: partly becauſe there is no other important commodity, but *fiſh*, to draw Merchants thither; and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms, for the entertaining of commerce.

The chief Order of *Knighthood* in it, is that of the *Elephant*, inſtituted by *Frederick* the ſecond. Their badge, a *Collar* powdred with *Elephants* towred, ſupporting the *Kings Arms*, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1 *Or*, three Lions Paſſant *Vert*, crowned of the firſt, for the kingdom of *Denmark*: and ſecondly *Gules*, a Lion Rampant *Or*, Crowned and Armed of the firſt, in his pawes a *Dansk* hatchet *Argent*, for the kingdom of *Norwey*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holſt*, and *Sleswick*, I am yet to ſeek.

There are in *Denmark*,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.
Univerſities 2. *Viz.*
Copenhagen. *Sore.*
And ſo much for the kingdom of *DENMARK*.

OF SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Muſcovie*; on the Weſt, with the *Dofrine* hills, which divide it from *Norwey*; on the North, with the great *Frozen* Ocean, ſpoken of before; on the South, with *Denmark*, *Liefland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Sueci*, *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, and the word *Land* added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length from *Stockholm*, unto the borders of *Lapland*, above a 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner Sea*, to the borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good dayes journey on horſeback: inſomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this ſide of *Lapland*, and the *Gulf*, or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little leſs than all *Italy* and *France* together: but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the *Gulf*, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The ſituation of it in regard of the heavenly bodies, is the ſame with *Norwey*, under the ſame *Parallels* and *Degrees*; but of ſo different a temper, both for ſoil and air, as if diſpoſed of under ſeverall and long diſtant *Climes*. For the Air here is very pure, but not ſo ſharp and inſupportable, as it is in *Norwey*: though in ſome places, where the *Moors* and *Waters* ſettle, for want of care to open and cleanſe the *water-courſes*, they have great *foggs* and miſts, which do ſomewhat putrifie it. And for the ſoil, it is more fertile than any of the other *Northern* Provinces: ſo that beſides thoſe neceſſaries which they keep for themſelves, they uſually tranſport into other Countries ſtore of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Braſs, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and coſtly Furrs. They have alſo ſome *Mines of Silver*, not mixt with any other metal; plenty of fiſh, in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of *Pine-trees*, Firre, Oaks, both for ſhips and houſes;

yielding

yielding besides, among the woods, good store of *Tarre*, and Honey, and some other necessaries. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the several Provinces.

The principal mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* hills, a vast and continuall ridge of mountains, which divide it from *Norwey*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uses, yet partly by reason of their great frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of trees which lie cross their *Chanels*, they have not many *Navigable*, or of any great fame. The principal of such as be, are 1 *Meler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*; 2 *Lusen*, 3 *Dalecarlie*, giving name to the Province so called, or as denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of most note is the Lake of *Werett*, which receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it self at one mouth, into the *Baltick*; with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devils head*.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient, and industrious; *hospitable* towards strangers, whom they entertain with great humanity: so *healthy*, that if they do not shorten their dayes by excess and riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and so laborious, that a *Beggar* is not seen amongst them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing, not much addicted to the one, and so kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other; but much improved in both respects in these later dayes: *Ericus*, the first King of the present race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Gustavus Adolphus* the last King, who freed the *Germans* from the yoke of the house of *Austria*, not being easily to be matched in the Arts of Warre. And since they began to give themselves to the sweets of learning, this Countrey hath produced (amongst some other learned men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbishop of *Upsal*, of great note for his History of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; the *first fruits* of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable, by reason of their late commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better testimony to the world hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the *Arts Mechanical*, every man in a manner being his own *Artificer*, without imploying Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other *manual trades*: very valiant both on foot and horse-back, which their long wars against the *Danes*, and their late wars in *Germany*, haven given good proof of. Their women are discreet and modest, free from that intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern kingdoms: except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Bodner* sea, where they partake somewhat of the *Muscovite*, or *Russian* language.

The *Christian Religion* was first planted amongst them, by the care and diligence of *Ansgarius* Archbishop of *Breme*; the *Apostle* general of the *North*. Corrupt with *Popish* superstitions, it was *reformed*, according to the *Augustane Confession*, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of the present Royal famile; sollicited thereunto by one *Petre Nevicius*, a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence* the *Archdeacon* of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the *goods* of the *Church*. And this appears to have had some strong *influence* upon him in it, in that he presently seised upon what he pleased; and made a *Law*, that *Bishops* should enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well lessened their *Revenues*, he was content they should remain as formerly, both in *power* and *number*, reserving to himself and his successors the *nomination* of the persons; but so as the *approbation* of the *Clergy* (in a kind of *election*) doth usually go along with the Kings appointment.

The *Bishops* are in number seven; that is to say, 1 of *Lincopen*, containing in his Diocese 226 Parishes; 2. of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3. of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches; 4. of *Strengnes*, under whom are an hundred only; 5. of *Aboe*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Parishes; 6. of *Wiburg*; and 7. of *Habsay*, whose *Dioceses* for the most part lye out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Muscovie*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out parts of *Poland*: all of them under the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as their *Metropolitan*, whose *Diocese* extending into *Lapland*, and *Finmarch*, containeth 171 Parish Churches. By which accompt there are in all the kingdom of *Swethland*, but 1417 Parishes; but many of them of a thousand, or eight hundred families: the people being dispersed in *Forests* and other places, where they have store of *timber* to build them houses, and store of *pasturage* for their Cattell; which is the reason why they have not so many great towns, nor so well-inhabited, as is usual in far lesser Countries. As for the *Authority* of these *Bishops*, they still retain their *voice* in *Parliament*, and with them so many of the *inferior Clergy*, as are from every *Socken*, (a certain number of Parishes like our *Rural Deaneries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the affairs whereof the *Bishops* do direct and order, as well in as out of publick meetings, according to the *Ecclesiastical Constitutions* formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their *Consistorials*, or call a *Diocesan Synod*, (as they think most fit) and therein make such *Lawes* and *Canons*, as they conceive to be most proper for their own edification.

The whole kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West side of the *Bay*, or Gulph of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*, being a large and spacious branch of the *Baltick Sea*, extending from the most southernly point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the north. According to which division, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Sweden*, lying on the West side of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, shutting it up upon the North; 4. *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland*, on the East side thereof; and 6 the *Swedish Islands*, where it mingleth with the rest of the *Baltick*.

Goths.

1. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND, is bounded on the East, with the *Bodner* Sea; on the West, with the Mountains which divide it from *Norwey*, and so much of *Denmark* as lies in the same continent with it; on the North, with *Sweden*; on the South, with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quasi* good *lande*, from the goodness and fertility of the soyl; *Goot landia*, *quæ Germanice* Terra bona *sonat* (as *Maginus* out of *Munster* hath it) the soyl being very fruitfull for Corn and Cattel, affording plenty of *Mines*, with great store of *Fish*; and generally a better conditioned Country, than any of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ostrogoth*, or *East-Gothland*; *Westergoth*, divided from the former by the great lake of *Weret*, spoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiscia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns whereof in *Ostrogoth*, are 1. *Lincopen*, a *Bishops* See; 2. *Loduse*, adorned with a very fair *Haven*: in *Westergoth*; 3. *Scara* on the lake *Weret*, a *Bishops* See also; 4. *Elseburg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*; a place of consequence, and flankerd with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoyning, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5. *Tragualle*, remarkable for iron works, occasioned by the *mines* adjoyning. And finally in *South Gothland*, there is 6. *Vexim*, or *Vexio*, another of the *Episcopal* Sees. 7. *Walburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8. *Elcholm* in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the confines of *Denmark*. 9. *Colmar*, a noted and well-traded Port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Castle, not inferior to that of *Millain*; and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1611. there were found mounted on the works 108 brass peeces of Ordnance, six men of war to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10. *Gottenberg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth, enjoying a commodious Haven on the *Baltick* also, and very much frequented for the trade of *Germany*, to which it serves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cause the ordinary seat or residence of the Governour for the King of *Sweden*.

The first Inhabitants of these South parts of *Scandia*, are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*; whom *Jornandes* in his Book *de Rebus Geticis*, makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North banks of the *Ister*, near the *Euxine* Sea, some time before the *Trojan* war: ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old writers of the antient *Scythians*, as their encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sesostris*, the King of *Egypt*, the Act and atchievements of the *Amazons*: their congress with *Alexander* the *Great*, in his *Persian* war, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes* being himself a *Goth*, is no more to be credited than *Geofrie* of *Monmouth*, a *Welchman*, in the story of *Brute*, and his successors, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sack of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the brother of *Belinus*, a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch*, or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the land of *Prussia*. Who finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the *Baltick*, into the next adjoyning Regions; and not well liking that cold clime, might afterwards in some good numbers goe to seek new dwellings, and at last seat themselves on the banks of the *Ister*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and those of *Ostrogothes*, and *Wisigothes*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodorick*, *Riccared*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. By the name of *Gothland*, here still remaining; 2ly. by the title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the *Royal stile*; and 3ly. by some inscriptions in antient unknown *Characters*, engraven on the rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wisby* in the Isle of *Gothland*; supposed by learned men to be some monument of that people. And finally, that their fixt dwellings, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North side of the *Ister*; is evident by the testimony of all antient Writers, from the time of *Antoninus Caracalla*, with whom they had some *tumultuary* skirmishes in his way towards *Persia*; till their violent irruption into *Italy* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this *interval* for a great fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperour, whom they overcame and slew in battel, *Anno* 253. In the time of *Valens*, and *Valentinian*, the *Roman* Emperours, a quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus*, the leaders of the opposite factions; *Phritigernes* overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*; from whom he received such succours, that giving his adversary another day for it, he obtained the victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the *leaven* of *Arianism*, by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* teachers, to whom and their factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister*, by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out parts of *Thrace* for an habitation; on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperour, and become *Christians*: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one party only. *Ulphilas* a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who for their better edification in the way of *godliness*, invented a new *Gothick Character*, and *translated* the *Scriptures* into that language: in the study whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first *conversion*, suffered death for it, at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted *Martyrs*. Burdned by *Valens*, and denied their accustomed pay, they harasse and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, marching

ing towards *Constantinople*: encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame, and killed after all his favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperour in many battels, they became good neighbours, inlarging their bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Franita*, two of that Nation, did obtain the *Consulship*; not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour, which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court it self. Made insolent by so great honours, and apt to pick quarrels with their *Patrons*, they invaded *Italy* in two great bodies, consisting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men: the first whereof under the conduct of *Rhadaguisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces, by *Stilico* Lieutenant to *Honorius* the *Western* Emperour, at *Fesulæ* in the straits of the *Appennine*. The other by his treachery permitted to passe, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediatly after this great victory, left the fruits of it to his son *Athaulfus*; who marying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperours sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gaul Narbonnoise*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis* assigned unto him; where he erected the kingdom of the *Westgothes*, or *Western Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana*, for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that kingdom to the *Moors*, as hath there been said. In the mean time, the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ostro-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamar*, freed from that subjection, not intermedling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence, and good fortune, by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italy*, and held it above 60 years; when broken in many set battels by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperour *Justinian*; their kingdom and name there came unto an end. *Goths.*

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes*, from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East; till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with so little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it, than to the stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharaohs* daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession, are these few that follow:

The KINGS of the *GOTHS*.

344 1. *Athanaricus* king of the *Goths*, in the time of *Constantius* and *Constans*, the sons of *Constantine* the *Great*.

357 2 *Alaricus*, the first of that name, in the time of *Constantius*.

3 *Phritigernes*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first *Christian* Prince among that People.

370 4 *Athanaricus* II. in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian*, the second; under whom the *Goths* were first setled on this side of the *Ister*.

379 5 *Rhadaguisus*, who in the time of *Honorius*, first led the *Goths* into *Italy*; slain at the battel of *Fesulæ*.

410 6 *Alaricus* II. who pursuing the war of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.

412 7 *Athaulfus*, the son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the kingdom of the *Wisigothes* in *Gaul*, and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upwards: the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this stock.

417 8 *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the East, at the departure of *Rhadaguise* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their plantations, by the name of *Ostrogothes*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became subject to the *Huns*, in the time of *Theodosius* the second, and *Valentinian* the third Emperours of the East, and West.

9 *Wilamir*, one of the blood Royal of the *Goths*, Vassal to *Attila* at the first, whom he assisted or served rather, in the great battel near *Tholouse* against the *Romans*: but taking advantage of some quarrels amongst the sons of *Attila*, shook off that yoke, and recovered the kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperour *Marcianus*.

10 *Theodomir*, son of *Winithar*, and brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperour of *Constantinople*.

11 *Theodorick*, son of *Theodomir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth, as a Pledge or *Hostage* for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* learning, and made the adopted son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperour *Zeno*; by whom he was sent into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, erecting there the kingdom of the *Ostrogothes*; which continued till the reign of *Justinian*, when destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, as before is said; the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their blood intermixt with the best *Italian*. The sum of their whole story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilom issued forth
From the cold *frozen* Islands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Vistula*; but th' Air almost
Being there as cold as in the *Bahick* Coast,

He

Lapland.

He with victorious Arms *Sclavonia* gains,
The *Tranſilvanian*, and *Valachian* plains.
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,
Greedy of ſpoil, four times he bravely ſeeks
To pluck from *Rome*, then *Mars* his Minion,
The Plumes which ſhe from all the world had won:
Guided by *Rhadaguiſe*, and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus*, and *Theodorick*.
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulſt, his Legions
Reſt ever ſince upon the *Spaniſh* Regions.

The Arms of theſe Kings are ſaid to have been *Or*, three Ravens with diſplayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this ſuffice for the original, ſucceſſes, and final period of the *Goths*; reſerved by me unto this place, becauſe moſt commonly conceived to be their original Countrey; at leaſt the place out of which they iſſued, when they firſt moved towards the Eaſt to ſeek new dwellings.

SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Bodner* Sea; on the Weſt, with the *Dofrine* Hils, which part it from *Norwey*; on the North, with *Lapland*; on the South, with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, the old Inhabitants hereof, of whom more anon. A Country ſufficiently fruitfull, but for the goodneſs of the ſoil inferiour to *Gothland*; and not ſo well planted or inhabited as that is, by reaſon of the vaſt Woods which they will not ſuffer to be deſtroyed, and the greatneſs of ſome *mariſhes* hitherto undrained: but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of corn growing amongſt the woods, though much hindred by their ſhade and thickneſs, both from Sun and rain. But for the *character* of this Country we had it formerly, when we ſpake of *Swethland* in the general; relating ſpecially to this, as the principal part.

And as the largeſt and principal part of this great body, it contains in it many Provinces, and ſubdiviſions, as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Suderman*, 3. *Noricia*, 4. *Weſtman*, 5. *Dalecarle*, 6. *Wermelund*, 7. *Coperdale*, 8. *Geſtricia*, 9. *Helſingen*, 10. *Middelphat*, 11 *Angerman*, bordering on *Lapland*, the furtheſt of theſe Provinces towards the North. Many of which have no Towns or Citles of any greatneſs, or beauty, the people living thin, and ſcattered, where they have *wood* for building, *paſturage* for their Beaſts, and elbow room enough for themſelves and their Cattel. Of theſe the principal are, 1. *Upſal*, an *Archbiſhops* See, and an *Univerſity*, ſituate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*: beautified with a large *Cathedral*, wherein many of the antient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is ſtiled *Archiepiſcopatus Upſalenſis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Ruſſians Stecolnè*; the Royal ſeat of the Kings, a noted and well-traded Port, and the chief of the kingdom: exceeding ſtrong both by Art and Nature, as being ſituate in the *Mariſhes*, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake, or River of *Meler*, the paſſage to it out of the *Bay*, being very narrow, and by conſequence eaſily defended; and yet ſo deep withall, that the greateſt ſhips of burden may ſail up to the City: the Port within the Strait being ſo ſafe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 ſail, which uſually ride there without any Anchor. The Caſtle of this City is conceived to be one of the ſtrongeſt holds in the world; fortified for the more aſſurance of it with 400 braſs peeces, many of which are double *Canons*. 3. *Nicopen*, a Sea Town on the ſame *Bay* alſo. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4 *Strengnes*, an *Epiſcopal* See; and 5. *Telge*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Suderman*: the title and eſtate of *Charls*, Father of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, late King of *Sweden*; before his getting of the Crown, called Duke of *Suderman*. Next, in the Province of *Weſtman*, there are 6. *Arbogen*, on the Weſt ſide of the ſaid Lake of *Meler*; and 7. *Aroſe*, rich in *ſilver mines*; out of which are made the beſt Dollars of *Sweden*: the mines here being ſo rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of *ſilver*, the workmen draw a pound weight of *gold*. 8. *Helſinge*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helſingen*, taking name from hence. 9. *Ozebo*, or *Ourbou*, a ſtrong piece in *Neriſia*; and 10. *Leſinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the furtheſt North of *Sweden*, diſtinctly and ſpecially ſo called.

LAPLAND.

LAPLAND, the moſt Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the Eaſt, *Ruſſia*; on the Weſt, the Province or *Prefecture* of *Wardhuys*, in the kingdom of *Norwey*; on the North, the main *frozen* Ocean; and on the South, *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both ſides of the *Bay* ſo called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it; as they are from their blockiſh behaviour; the word *Lappon* ſignifying the ſame with *ineptus* or *inſulſus* in *Latine*, for ſuch they are: rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of *Arts* or *Letters*, as alſo without corn and houſes, or any certain habitations (except only in *Finmarch*:) feeding for the moſt part on fiſh, and the fleſh of wild beaſts, with the skins whereof ſowed together they hide their nakedneſs. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving divine honour all day following to that living creature whatſoever it be, which they ſee at their firſt ſetting out in the morning: great *Sorcerers*, and abhorring

ring the sight of strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from, at their first approach; but within few years past beginning to be more sociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendants of the antient *Finni* (possessed in old times of all that tract, which lyeth between the Bay of *Finland*, and the *Frozen* Ocean) whose natural rudenesse and barbarity, unmixt with the conditions of more civil people, they do still retain. *Finland.*

It is divided into the *Eastern* and the *Western Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or great *Duke* of *Muscovie*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikilopti*, or the *wild Lappians*; is subdivided into *Biarmia*, and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into 2. parts also, that is to say, *Finmarch*, and 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1 *FINMARCH*, being that part hereof which lyeth next unto *Norwey*, is the more populous of the two; the people for the most part *idolatrous*, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of strangers unto *Wardhuys*, and the parts adjoyning, somewhat *civilized*; and in the borders of both kingdoms savouring of *Religion*; possessed of *sheds* or sorry houses, and those houses reduced to parishes, under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which, (if there be any chief amongst them) are named 1. *Samman*, and 2 *Hielso*. Called *Finmarch*, as the antient bounds and *Marches* of the *Finni*, (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Magnus*, made a part of the kingdom of *Norwey*.

2 *SCRICFINNIA*, lyeth between *Finmarch* and *Russia*. The name derived from the *Finni*, a great people of *Scandia*, and *Scriken* a *Dutch* word signifying *leaping*, *sliding*, or bounding, for such is their gate. An *etymologie* not much improbable, in that the *wooden-soled shoes*, with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy *sliding* over the ice, of which this countrey is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Schrikeshoenen*, or sliding-shoes. The antient Writers call this people *Scricfofinni*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanders*; and unto these the former *character* doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than *Pygmies*, but strong and active; well skill'd in *Archerie*, and patient of cold and labour. Much given to hunting of wild beasts, whom they kill with their bowes, devour the flesh, and cloath themselves with their skins, which they tie at the top of their heads, and leave no place open but for the sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write, that they are *hairie* all over, like kine or horses. Such *Deer* (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkilled, they make to draw in little *carts*, as they shift their *Quarters*. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden*, in the way of *tribute*. Three companies of these *Laplanders*, so clad and armed as aforesaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630. to serve *Gustavus* in those wars; looked on with admiration by all spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no houses be: and yet there are some *sheds* and *cabbins* on the Sea shore; which Mariners having made for their refreshment when they came on land, have bestowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good towns, now not worth the naming.

BODIA.

BODIA, *BODEN*, or *BODNER*, is situate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or *Gulf* hence named; extending southwards on the West side of it, till it joyns to *Sweden*, and on the East side, till it meet with the Province of *Finland*. Hence the division of this countrey, into the *Eastern*, *Northern*, and *Western Bodden*; with reference to the situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The countrey not very plentifull of grain or fruits, but full of great variety of wild beasts, whose *rich skins* yeeld great profit unto the Inhabitants; and by reason of the commodious situation on all sides of the *Bay*, well stored with Fish. Antiently it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence soever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the *Gulf* adjoyning, is called *Sinus Bodicus*, *Bodner Zee*, by the *Dutch* or *German*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Barkara*, in *West Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable lake; 2. *Gernia*, a well-traded *Emporie* at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North Bodden*; 3. *Helsingeliac*, more North than that, towards the borders of *Lapland*, and 4 *Kerlaby*, in *East Bodden*, on the bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a town of Trade.

3. *FINLAND.*

FINLAND hath on the North, *Bodia*; on the South, the *Baltick Sea*, or *Mare Sucvicum*; on the East, *Sinus Finnicus*; on the West, *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munster* thought to be called *Finland*, *quasi* fine land; *quod pulchrior et amœnior sit Suecia*, because it is a more *fine* and pleasing countrey than *Sweden* it self. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni*, or *Fenni*; a potent Nation, who have here dwelt; whose character is thus framed by *Tacitus*. Finnis *mira feritas*, *fœda paupertas*, *non arma*, *non equi*, *non penates*; *victui herba*, *vestitui pelles*, *cubile humus*, *sola in sagittis spes*. The *Finnes*, saith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miserably poor, without Arms, Horse, or Houshold Gods: Herbs their food, the ground their bed, and the skins of beasts their best apparell, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially

ſpecially thoſe of *Scricfinnia*, and ſome parts of *Finmarchia*; who are not ſo well reclamed to *civility*, as the other are; but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) entercourſe with forein Nations; telleth us of them, that they were *Scanziæ Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suethidi* themſelves. If ſo, they did deſerve to live in ſo good a Countrey, more plentifull and plain than *Sweden*, and neither ſo hilly nor ſo mooriſh.

The principal places in it are 1. *Abo*, an *Archbiſhops* See, ſituate on the moſt Southern point of it, ſhooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wiburg*, a *Biſhops* See alſo, whoſe juriſdiction for the moſt part is without this Province, on ſome part of *Ruſſia*; all *Finland* being in the *Dioceſe* of the Biſhop of *Abo*. A town conveniently ſeated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulph of *Finland* (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*: well fortified, as the chief Bulwark of this kingdom, againſt the *Muſcovite*; and ſo well garriſoned withall, that the keeping of this town, and *Rivallia*, in the borders of *Liefland*, do coſt the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a point or *Promontory* of the ſame *Gulf*, oppoſite to *Narve*, another Garriſon of this king, in *Liefland*. 4 *Verma*, upon the *Bodner Zee*. 5 *Cronaburg*, more within the land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Puente*. 6 *Deckala*, on the banks of the great Lake called *Hoſela*. 7 *Varta*, more northwards towards *Lapland*: of which laſt four, I find not any thing obſervable in the way of ſtory.

6. *The* SWEDISH ILANDS.

And now at laſt I come to the *Swediſh Ilands*, here and there interſperſed in the *Baltick* Seas, betwixt the Iſle of *Bornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Liefland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*: the principall of which, are 1. *Gothia*, or the Iſle of *Gothland*, and 2. *Inſulæ Ulandæ*, or the Iſles of *Oelands*.

1. *GOTHIA*; or the Iſle of *GOTHLAND*, is ſituate over againſt *Colmar*, a ſtrong town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch miles*, and five in breadth. Of a rich ſoil, but more fit for paſturage than tillage, yeelding great herds of Cattel, ſtore of game for hunting, plenty of fiſh, excellent marble, and aboundance of pitch, which it ſends forth to other Countreys. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages; beſides the Haven town of *Wisbich*, heretofore rich, and of very great trading, as much frequented by the *Merchant* as moſt in *Europe*; but now much decayed, and neither ſo well peopled, nor ſo rich as formerly. The trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Pomerania* (deſtroyed by *Waldemar* the firſt of *Denmark*, *An.* 1170.) made it flouriſh mightily; the greateſt traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that, by reaſon of the long and continual wars, betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poſſeſſion of this Iſle, it became unſafe; the *Factorie* was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently ſeated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and ſometimes poſſeſſed it; but at the preſent is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By ſome conceived to be che *Eningia* ſpoken of by *Pliny*.

2. *OELAND*, or the Iſles of *Ulandt*, ſo called in the plurall number, becauſe there are many of them, of which this the principall; is ſituate over againſt *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouſly ſeated to invade, or annoy this kingdom; and therefore very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned: here being the good towns of 1. *Viburg*, 2. *Vames*, and 3. the ſtrong Caſtle of *Caſtrolm*.

Beſides which Countreys here deſcribed, the King of *Sweden* is poſſeſſed of the ſtrong townes of *Narve*, and *Rivallia*, and *Pernow* in *Liefland*; of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in *Corelia*, a Province of *Ruſſia*; with very fair and ample territories appertaining to them: ſubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the ſecond, *Anno* 1581. except *Rivallia*, which voluntarily ſubmitted to *Ericus* the ſecond King of this preſent Race, *Anno* 1561. But being theſe Towns and Territories are not within the bounds of *Swethland*, we ſhall defer all further diſcourſe thereof, to a place more proper.

The firſt Inhabitants of this kingdom, beſides the *Goths* and *Finni*, ſpoken of already, were the *Sitones*, and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavonæ*, the *Phiræſi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Ptolemie*, placed by him in the Eaſt and middle of this great *Peninſula*. Which being the general names of ſome mighty Nations, are by *Jornandes* branched into leſſer tribes, of the *Suethans*, *Theuſtad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Athelnil*, *Galirigoth*, *Raumaricæ*, *Rauragnicii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzia*, *Ibnixia*, *Arochitamii*, *Enageræ*, *Othingi*, and divers others by him named. But from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes*, or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally, and the whole kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor ſpoken of at all by *Munſter*, or *Crantzius*, which two, (but ſpecially the laſt) have written purpoſely of this people. *Gaſpar Peucerus* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who antiently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom, the *Baltick* ſea was called *Mare Suevicum*: which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the *Goths* and *Daci*, into this countrey; and by the change of one letter only to be called *Suci*. But this hath no good ground to ſtand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thoſe colder countreys, they fell into theſe parts, which are ſtill called *Suevia* (the *Schwaben* of the modern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Cæſar*. And after, *in fatali illa gentium commigratione*, when almoſt all the Northern Nations did ſhift their ſeats, we find ſuch of them as had ſtaid behind, to have accompanyed the *Vandals* in their on-falls into *Gaul*, and *Spain*. Of any expedition of theirs croſſe the *Baltick* ſeas, *ne gry quidem*; nothing to be found, in more antient Authors. We muſt therefore reſerve the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*,

or

or perhaps to both: both being antiently setled in these Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the book of *Tacitus*, inscribed *De Moribus Germanorum*; by whom reported to be strong in men, armour, and shipping: and that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two circumstances in that Author. 1. That the people were not permitted to wear weapons, *quia subitos hostium incursus prohibet Oceanus*, because the Ocean was to them a sufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the antient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the situation of this present Country, defended by the *Baltick*, and vast Northern Ocean, from the sudden assaults of any enemy. 2. Because the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmost bound of the World; *trans* Suiones *mare aliud, quo cingi claudique terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country. Adde unto these this passage of the old Annals of the Emperour *Lewis* the second, where it is told us of the *Danes, relicta patria apud* Suiones *exulabant*, that they were banished into the Countrey of the *Suiones*, which cannot so well be understood of any place, as of this *Sweden*; being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And 4ly, that this people, both by *Munster* and *Crantzius*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci*, or *Suedi*; which sheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethans* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* speaks of in his book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Isle of *Scandia* (for such this great *Peninsula* was esteemed to be by most antient writers.) Now that these *Suethidi* are no other than the present *Swethlanders*, appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the names; 2. In that he maketh the *Finni*, and *Finnaithæ*, the next neighbours to them; And 3. in that they are affirmed by the same Author, to have furnished the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the skins of wild Beasts, with which commodities this country is abundantly well stored. Now to which of these two Nations, either the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, those of *Sweden* are most indebted for their original, will (I conceive) be no great controversie: the *Suethans*, and *Suethidi*, of *Jornandes*, being no other than a tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greatest and most powerfull of all those *tribes*; placed therefore in the front to command the rest, and so most like to give the name unto the whole.

Their government was antiently under Kings, affirmed so to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us also that they were absolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*; not bound in *Covenant* with their people, nor holding their Estates at the will of the Subject. But their *Historians* have gone for *Antiquity* hereof, beyond the story of *Brute*, or the *Trojan* warre, (beyond which very few of that strain have dared to pretend;) as high as unto *Magog*, the son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the flood. But letting pass these dreams and dotages of the *Monkish* times, certain it is, that sometimes they were under the *Danes*, sometimes under the *Norwegians*, sometimes had distinct Kings of their own: and finally sometimes were comprehended with the *Danes*, and *Norwegians*, under the general name of *Normans*; conducted by one King, or Captain, upon forein actions. Omitting therefore the succession of their former kings, of whose very being there is cause to make great question; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jermanicus*, who entertained *Harald* King of *Denmark*, and his brother *Regenfride*, driven out of that kingdom by *Gotricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemagne*; of whose successors *Munster* giveth us more certainty.

The KINGS of *SWEDEN*.

1 *Jermanicus*
2 *Frotho.*
3 *Herotus.*
4 *Sorlus.*
5 *Biornus.*
6 *Wichsertus.*
7 *Ericus.*
8 *Ostenus.*
9 *Sturbiornus.*
10 *Ericus* II.
11 *Olaus.*
12 *Edmundus.*
13 *Stinkalis,*
14 *Halstenus.*
15 *Animander.*
16 *Aquinus.*
17 *Magnus.*
1150 18 *Sherco* 13.
1160 19 *Carolus* 8.
1168 20 *Canutus* 54.
1222 21 *Ericus* III. 27.
1249 22 *Bingerius* 2.
1251 23 *Waldemarus* 26.
1277 24 *Magnus* II. 13.
1290 25 *Byrgerius* II. 23.

1313 26 *Magnus* III. son to *Ericus* the brother of *Byrgerius*, was also chosen King of *Norwey*.

1326 27 *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, which last he gave in his life time to *Haquin*, of *Aquinus*, his second son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldest son (his designed successor in this Crown) was outed of this kingdom, by the practice of

1363 28 *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, son of *Euphemia*, the sister of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*, made King of *Sweden*; on that quarrell vanquished by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, widow of *Aquinus*, *An.* 1387. to whom, desirous of liberty, he resigned his kingdom, and dyed in his own countrey, *An.* 1407.

1387 29 *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three kingdoms under her command; caused an Act of State to be passed in *Colmar*, a chief town of *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Successors: the Lawes and Privileges of each kingdom, continuing as before they were.

1411 30 *Ericus* IV. Duke of *Pomeren*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whose sister *Ingelburgis* he was descended; was in her life time chosen King of the three kingdoms, into which he succeeds actually after her decease: but outed of them all by a strong faction raised against him, *Anno* 1439, he dyed in a private estate in *Pomeren*, *anno* 1559.

1439 31 *Chri-*

1439 31 *Christopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavier* (in title only) son of the Lady *Margaret*, sister of *Ericus*, succeeded in all three kingdoms. After whose death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Danish* Government, broke the agreement made at *Colmar*, for the uniting of the three kingdoms under one Prince; and chose one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, *Anno* 1448.

1448 32 *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleasing to the great ones: whose displeasure when he had incurred, and feared the consequents thereof, he gathereth together all the treasure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his dayes.

1455 33 *Christiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but outed again under colour that he had not kept conditions with them: the kingdom governed after that (for a time) by Marshals.

1458 34 *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, the son of *Christiern*, received king by the *Swedes*, then overpowred by the *Muscovite*: but their turn being served, they expelled him again; returning to their former Government under Marshalls. Of which Marshals (descended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mothers side) there were three in number; *viz.* 1 *Steno*, 2 *Suanto*, and 3 *Steno Stur* the second: of which the two first dyed natural deaths, and the last being by *Christiern* the second slain in battell, this kingdom was again possessed by the *Danes*.

1519 35 *Christiern* II. King of all three kingdoms, used his victory so cruelly here, and his subjects so insolently at home, that here he was outed by *Gustavus Ericus*, and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.

1523 36 *Gustavus Ericus*, descended from the antient race of the kings of *Sweden*, having vanquished and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that action chosen king of *Swethland*; which still continueth in his house.

1561 37 *Ericus* V. son to *Gustavus* 8.

1569 38 *John* II. brother of *Ericus*, maried *Catharine* the sister of *Sigismund* the second, king of *Poland*.

1593 39 *Sigismund*, the son of *John* the second, in the life time of his Father chosen king of *Poland*, *Anno* 1586. but was dispossessed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long warre) by his Uncle *Charls*.

1607 40 *Charls* II. Duke of *Suderman*, the youngest son of *Gustavus Ericus*, and brother of *John* and *Eric*, the two former kings; first governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigismund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raised up a *Calvinian* party within that *Realm*; according to whose *principles*, he began first to withdraw his obedience from his naturall Prince, and afterwards to assume the Government to himself: speeding so well in his design, that after a long war, he forced his Nephew to desist from all further enterprises, and made himself king, *Anno* 1607.

1611 41 *Gustavus Adolphus*, sonne of *Charles*, having setled his affaires in *Sweden*, and made peace with the king of *Denmark*, with whom his father was in warre at the time of his death; fell first upon his Cousin *Sigismund*, the king of *Poland*, from whom hee took many places of importance in *Prussia*, and *Livonia*; and in pursuance of that warre was made *Knight* of the *Garter*. Afterwards, having setled a Truce with him, he passed into *Germanie*, then in great danger of being absolutely inthralled to the house of *Austria*. In which he prospered so beyond all expectation, that in one year he passed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Danow* (which no Conquerour ever did before:) and having twice vanquished the *Imperialists* led by *Tilly*, and restored many of the *German* Princes unto their estates; was in the current of his victories, slain in the battell of *Lutzen*, *Novem.* 1632. his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and there interred.

1632 42 *Christina*, sole daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age of seven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*; the estate governed by the Counsails of the Nobility. After a long war, with variable successe, in *Germany*, they came at last to this Accord in the Treaty of *Munster*; That she and her Successors, Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, should peaceably enjoy all the *Higher Pomeren*, with the Isles of *Rugia*, *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stettin*, in *Lower Pomerland*; the Town and Port of *Wismar*, in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Bishoprick of *Bremen*, *Pomeren*, and *Verden*, and the *Prefecture* of the Town of *Wilchusen*; with the title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomerea*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wismar*; and by those titles to have place, as *Princes* of the Empire, in all *Diets* and Assemblies which concern the publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not only got a good footing in *Germanie*, a strong influence upon all the Counsels of the *Empire*, a dore open for more forces (if occasion be) and a free passag into the *Western Ocean*, which before they wanted: but may in time prove absolute Matters of the *Baltick* sea; and make the *Hamburgers*, those of *Lubeck*, and possibly the kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it self, be at their devotion.

But leaving these things to the doubtfull issue of *contingencie*, let us next look upon the *Forces* and *Reveunes* of the Crown of *Sweden*, before the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, or as he found it at his succession to that Crown. For though the *Swedes* pretend their kingdom to be *Elective*, especially

especially since the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert* of *Mecklenbourg*: yet still the eldest son, or next heir, succeedeth; unless put by, by faction and strong hand, as in the case of *Sigismund*, and his Uncle *Charls*; Which *Charls* so ordered his affairs, that having engaged the kingdom in a war against his nephew, he was sollicited at the last to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yeeld, till a Law was made, for the entailing of the same for ever unto his posterity, whether male or female, as an *Hereditary* Crown. But whether *Hereditary* or *Elective*, the King once setled in the Throne, is an *absolute Monarch*: having not only power to *levie taxes* on his subjects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight *dollars*, or more, yearly upon every Housholder, according to the proportion of his estate; but also to grant a certain number of *Paisants* unto such as he means to favour, to be as *subjects* and *vassals* to him, according to his well-deserving. And whereas in the *constitution* of this Government, every *Parish* hath a *Lanasman* or *Consul* to decide the controversies of the same; as every *Territorie* hath its *Vicount*, and each *Province* his *Lamen*: there lyeth an *Appeal* from the *Landsman* unto the *Vicount*, and from the *Vicount* to the *Lamen*; who if they be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the *Appeal* lies unto the *Counsel*, and from the *Counsel* of *Estate* to the *King* himself, (in whom is fixed the *Soveraignty*, and *DERNIER RESORT*) and not unto the *King* and *Counsel*, as before in *Denmark*.

The *Forces* of this King are either by Sea, or Land. By Sea, he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great power in all the rest of the *Balick*: being able to set out 70 good *Men of War*, as *John* the second did in the year 1578. seven of which were good *Gallions*, and all the rest did carry above 50 cast peeces of all sorts; besides many other good Vessels fit for service. And if a *Navie* of this size will not serve the turn, he is not only furnished with timber, cordage, and all other necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store of *Ordnance* and Ammunition for present use; but is able to raise upon a sudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more: all which he entertaineth at no other charges in a manner, than to find them victuals, insomuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to say, that that *which cost the King of* Spain *a million of Crowns, cost not him* 100000 *Dollars*.

For his *Land forces*, they may best be estimated by the *Trained Bands* (as we may call them) in every Province: there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Ensigns) of *Foot* constantly trained and mustered in the several Provinces; each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the total to 20000 Foot, all in a manner *Musketiers*, ready to march whensoever the Kings occasion shall so require. And then for *Horse*, there are eleven *Cornets* in continual readiness, for *Sweden*, and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the charges of those Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this King is able to doe, without putting his estates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his kingdom: we find that *John* the second in his Navy of 70 Ships spoken of before, had above 18000 *Land-Souldiers*, besides Mariners. And in the Army which *Gustavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germanie*, there were mustered no fewer at one time, than 12000 *Horse*, and 34000 *Foot*, all *Finnes* and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with *Artillerie*, and the like Engines of war, it is thought that the Kings hereof are masters of 8000 great peeces, for the most part brass, with Mortar peeces and Granadoes in proportion to them.

But that which makes his *Land forces* most considerable, is their hardness in enduring the extremities of wind and weather; insomuch that it is usual with them, to stand *Centinel* a whole Winters night of 18 hours long, without being *relieved*: their exact Discipline, and obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable industry in making their own shoes, apparel, stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the wars; but keeps them from idleness, and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies, of sloth and ease. Nor do they want incouragement on the Kings part neither; who first, gives to every Souldier victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and that according to his obedience and desert; 2. If a Souldier be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually redeem at his own charges; and 3. if a Souldiers horse be slain under him, the King supplyeth him with another: which makes the Souldiers (very sensible of such obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his commands, how dangerous soever they may seem to be.

Finally, as for his *Revenues*, they must needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amasse his treasures. First, the *Revenues* of the Church, consisting before the *Reformation* of seven Bishopricks, and sixty Monasteries, which enjoyed very great possessions; all seized on by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown; excepting only what is given back to maintain the Bishops. 2ly. *Mines*, which are here of all metals in very great plenty, except of *Gold* and *Silver*, which they have more sparingly; the *tenth* whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yeelds him such a fair *Intrado*, that in the year 1578. the Kings part out of two or three *Mines* of *Copper* only, amounted to 30000 *Dollars*. 3. *Tenths* out of all increase, as Rie, Wheat, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skins, and the like commodities; the sum whereof though not certainly known (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the *tenth* of the Oxen only, came in one year to 18000 *Dollars*, besides provision for his housholds. 4. And lastly, *Customs* imposed on *Merchandise*, and paid in all his Haven Towns for all commodities imported, or exported, of what sort soever. Besides all which, he hath his *Contributions* in all times of war, power of imposing taxes (though moderately used) as his necessities require: and on the *mariage* of a *daughter*, the kingdom is to provide her portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain sum of 100000 *Dollars*, besides Plate and moveables. Out of which several *Items* to sum up the *total*: It was observed, that in the year 1578. King *John*

the second (all charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being first deducted) did lay up in his Treasury no less than 700000 *Dollars*: which was a vast sum for those times, considering especially the great charge which he king had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70 sail, and raising 18000 *Land-souldiers*, (besides Horse) for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by some knowing men, that his *Revenues* would be much greater than they are, if he did employ strangers to work the *mines*, which the Natives do not husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearfull to discover them to other Nations, upon some *jealousies*, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn *Merchant*, and in his own ships send out *Corn* and *Cordage*, with Masts and Timber fit for building; and in them bring back salt and other necessaries, which his kingdom wants, setting them at a far less price than now they goe at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns, *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*
Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.
Universities but one,
viz. Upsal.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND.*

OF
RVSSIA.

RUSSIA, is bounded on the East, by *Tartarie*; on the West, with *Livonia*, and *Finland*, from which divided by great mountains, and the River *Poln*; on the North, by the *Frozen* Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South, by *Lituania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim Tartars* inhabiting on the banks of *Palus Maotis*, and the *Euxine Sea*. It standeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanais* or *Don* running through it; the common boundary of those great and noted parts of the world.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a people of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Chersonesus* (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire, possessed themselves of some parts of it; and being the prevailing people, imposed their name on all the rest. Called also *Russia Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*, *quod incolæ omnium gentium ipsius imperio subjectarum* (as one observes discoursing of the affairs hereof) *vestibus albis & Pileis plerunq; utantur*, because the Inhabitants use to wear white caps and vestments. And why not thus? sithence the people of *Margiana*, and *Sogdiana* in *Asia*, have the name of *Jeselbasse*, only because they wear *green turbants*, as the word imporeth. Finally, it is called *Moscovie*, from *Moscovie* the chief Province of it; as that denominated from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is said by some to be situate betwixt the 8th. and 20th. *Climates*; the longest day in the Southern parts, being but 16 hours and an half; and almost 22 hours and an half in the Northern parts. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovie*, properly and specially so called; and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovite*, acccording to the bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as East *Lapland*, *Condora*, and *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctick* Circle, the longest day in Summer will be full 6 months (for so long do those Countries see no night at all) which is a mighty disproportion, from the length of the longest day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 hours and a half, as before is said. And by this *rule* we are to take the dimensions also. For though some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Cala* in the North, to *Astrachan* near the *Caspian* Sea, to be no more than

2260 *Verſts*, or 3690 *Italian* miles; yet they confeſs, that reckoning forwards from *Tromſchna*, the furtheſt point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh ſo much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narve*, on the Bay of *Finland* (now in poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia* in the Eaſt, it amounteth to 4400 *Verſts*, or 3300 *Italian* miles; each *Verſt* being eſtimated at ¾ quarters of an *Engliſh* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled anſwerable to ſome other parts of the world, would either make it too great for one Prince too hold; or make that Prince too great and puiſſant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty, and deceitfull in all their bargains, falſe-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their promiſes, and ſtudying nothing more than ways to evade their Contracts. Vices ſo generally known, and noted in them, that when they are to deal with ſtrangers, they diſſemble their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear leſt no body ſhould truſt them. Deſtitute of humane affections, and ſo unnatural, that the Father inſults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother: So *malicious* one towards an other, that you ſhall have a man hide ſome of his own goods in the houſe of ſome man whom he hateth, and then accuſe him for the ſtealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inſomuch that all heady and intoxicating drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the moſt part they are ſtrong of body, ſwift of foot, of a ſquare proportion, broad, ſhort, and thick; grey-eyed, broad bearded, and generally furniſhed with prominent paunches. The *Commons* live in miſerable ſubjection to the *Nobles*, and they again in as great ſlavery to the *Duke* or *Emperour*; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediatly exhibit a Petition, or make known his grievances: nay the mean *Lords* and Officers are ſqueamiſh in this kind, and but on grea ſubmiſſion, will not commend unto the *Duke* a poor mans cauſe. They are altogether *unlearned*, even the *Prieſts* meanly indoctrinated; it being cautionated by the great *Duke*, that there be no *Schools*, leſt there ſhould be any *Scholars* but himſelf; ſo that the people uſe to work commonly on the Lords day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to ſay in a difficult queſtion, *God and our great* Duke *know all this*; and in other talk, *All we enjoy* health *and* life, *all from our great* Duke, According to whoſe pleaſure every man is preſcribed what habit he ſhall wear, both for matter and faſhion ſuitable unto their condition. In the time of my Author, their habit was a long garment without plaits, which hung down to their heels; commonly of white or blew, with very ſtrait ſleeves; on their legs wearing *buskins* up as high as the calf, for the moſt part red, high at the heels, and beſet with nails of iron. The ſtuff, and trimming of the dreſs is the only difference betwixt the *Noble* and the *Paiſant*.

The women are attired alſo much after this manner; but if great and noble, ſuffered to ſet forth themſelves with ſtore of pearls and precious ſtones, which hang ſo thick about their ears, that they do almoſt pull their ears from their heads. A ſecond mariage is conceived no blemiſh in point of *chaſtity*, but the third condemns them of *incontinence*: naturally ſubject enough to the luſts of the fleſh, but private, and fearfull to offend; if once laſcivious, then moſt intollerably wanton. It is the faſhion of theſe *women* to love that *husband* beſt which beateth them moſt; and to think themſelves neither loved nor regarded, unleſs they be two or three times a day well favouredly ſwadled. The Author of the *Treaſury of times*, telleth a ſtory of a *German* Shoomaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marying a widow, uſed her with all kindneſs that a woman could (as he thought) deſire; yet did not ſhe ſeem contented. At laſt learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cauſe of her *penſiveneſs*, he took ſuch a vein in cudgelling her ſides, that in the end, the hangman was fain to break his neck for his labour.

They uſe the *Sclavonian* language but ſo corrupt and mixt with other languages, that they and the *Sclavonians* underſtand not one anothers meaning, but by circumſtance only: yet in *Jugaria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have iſſued) they ſpeak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petzora* and the Country of *Czeremiſſians*, they have a language to themſelves, diſtinct from others.

They firſt received the *Chriſtian Faith* in the year 987. or as ſome ſay, *Anno* 942. by the preaching and miniſtry of the *Greeks*; ſent hither by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: of which Church they are conſtant followers, both for rites and doctrine; but not without ſome ſuperſtitions of their own ſuperadded to them, *viz.* not coming near a *Croſs*, Church or Monaſtery, but they kneel down, and make the ſign of the *Croſs*, ſaying, *Miloy Hiſpodi*, i.e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; nor entring into any *Church*, until waſhed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the Jews, whom they ſuffer not to live amongſt them; and ſo great friendſhip unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his fleſh. Their Church is governed by 18 Biſhops, and 2 Metropolitans; all of them ſubordinate to their Archbiſhop or *Patriarch*; as he, in former times, to the *Conſtantinopolitan*, by whom he uſed to be *confirmed*. But about an hundred years agoe they withdrew themſelves from that ſubjection; the *Patriarch* being nominated by the Great *Duke*, and conſecrated by two or three of his own *Suffragans*. Without the counſel and advice of this *Patriarch*, the *Emperour* or *Great Duke* doth nothing of any moment. The Biſhops are all choſen out of the *Monaſtick* or *Regular* Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the Order of S. *Baſil*) to live very religiouſly; in hope to be advanced to the *Epiſcopal* dignity. And for the *Secular* Clergy, or *Parochial* Prieſts, there is not much required of them, but to ſay their Maſſes (which being in their own language they may eaſily do,) and to read now and then one of S. *Chryſoſtoms* Homilies, tranſlated heretofore for the uſe of thoſe Churches: after the death of their firſt wives not permitted to marry, in other things little differing from the reſt of the people. Once in the year it is lawfull and uſual with them to hold a *Synod*, at which the *Patriarch* hath his *Crozier* or *Paſtoral* ſtaff carried before him, as the Popes *Legate* hath the *Croſſe*; where they make *Conſti-*

tutions for the publick government, and the regulating of Divine matters; most punctually and carefully observed by the Prince himself.

As followers of the *Greek* Church (but so as to be counted a Church distinct) they differ much both from the *Romish*, and *Reformed*: 1. Denying the *Holy Ghost* to proceed from the Father and the Son; 2ly. Denying *Purgatory*, but praying for the dead; 3ly. Beleeving that holy men enjoy not the presence of God, before the resurrection; 4ly. Communicating in *both kinds*, but using leavened bread, and mingling warm water with the wine, which both together they distribute with a spoon; 5ly. Receiving children of 7 years old to the *Sacrament* of the *Eucharist*, because then they begin to sin; 6ly. Forbid extreme *unction*, *confirmation*, and fourth mariages; 7ly. Admitting none to Orders but such as are *married*, and yet prohibiting *mariage* to them that are actually in Orders; 8ly. Rejecting carved *Images*, but admitting the painted; 9ly. Observing four *Lents* in the year; 10ly. Reputing it unlawfull to fast on *Saturday*, or to *eat blood*, or any thing that hath been *strangled*, according to the first Council holden at *Hierusalem*; 11ly. And finally, dissolving mariage by divorcement, upon every slight occasion, or conceived displeasure. Which diversity betwixt the *Romanists* and this people, in point of Religion, ha h bred such a difference betwixt them in point of Affection, and made them so ill conceited of one another; that if a *Muscovite* be known, or but suspected to have conversed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted person, and must be solemnly purged, and purified, before he be admitted to partake of the blessed Sacrament.

In mat ers of war the people are indifferent able, as being almost in continual broils with their Neighbours: and have a custom, that when they go to the wars, every Souldier giveth to the Emperour, or great Duke, a piece of money, which at the end of the war he receiveth again; and by that means the number of the slain is exactly known. At their funerals they use to put a penny into the mouth of the party deceased, a pair of shoes on his feet, and a Letter in his hand, directed (such is their superstition) to S. *Nicholas*, whom they deem to be the *Porter* of Heaven: an opinion doubtless very prejudicial to the *Popes*, and S. *Peters prerogatives*.

This Country is not so populous, as spacious. The *Eastern* parts are vexed with the *Tartars*; who like *Æsops* dog, will neither dwell there themselves, nor suffer the *Moscovites* to plant Colonies in them: the *Western* parts almost as much molested by the *Sweden* and *Polonian* Kings; the *Southern*, by the *Turks*, and *Precopenses*; and the *Northern*, by the coldness of the air, which is of such vehemency, that water thrown up into the Air, will turn to ice before it fall to the ground. The better to resist the extremity of this cold, not only the clothes of this people, but their very houses are lined with thick *Furs*. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his dwelling house a *stove* or *hot-house*, in which they keep, as it were, to thaw themselves. Such as travel on the way, use often to rub their nose or ears, with snow or ice, to settle and recall the motive *spirits* into those parts; which otherwise they would be in danger to lose: the ignorance of which preventing *Chirurgery*, was not the least cause, that in the year 1598. of 70000 *Turks* which made an inrode into *Moscovie*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reason of these extremities of frosts and cold, it is the custom of this people to lay the bodies of their dead all the winter long, on heaps in the *Belfrees* of their Churches; where they lie without *putrifying*, or any ill savour, till the end of *March*; at what time the air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging, each family looks out their dead bodies, and takes care to bury them. This excess of cold in the air, gave occasion to *Castilian* in his *Aulicus*, wittily, and not incongruously to feign, that if two men being somewhat distant, talk together in the *Winter*, their words will be so frozen, that they cannot be heard; but if the parties in the *Spring* return to the same place, their words will melt into the same order that they were frozen and spoken, and be plainly understood. Such is their *Winter*, neither is their *Summer* less miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice, which in a manner covered the whole surface of the Country, are at the first approach of the Sun suddenly dissolved, the water quickly dried up, and the earth dressed in her *holy-day* apparel: such a mature growth of fruits, such flourishing of herbs, such chirping of birds, as if here were a perpetual *Spring*. The reason of which strange and sudden alteration, is conceived to be the long lying of the snow on the face of the earth; keeping it from the rigour of the winter frosts; which being dissolved by the Sun in the beginning of the *Spring*, doth so thorowly drench and soke the ground, (being of a light and sandie mold) and consequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun, shining hotly on it; that it forceth in a manner the *Herbs* and *Plants* to shoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a shorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much over-spread with *Woods*, parts of the great *Hercynian* Forest, heretofore over-running all the North, and still more visible here than in other places: either by reason of the idleness of the people, naturally given to sloth and ease; or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them; or that there is already ground enough for tillage to supply their necessary uses. For here do grow the goodliest and tallest trees of the world, through which, by reason of their thickness, the brightnes of the Sun-beams can hardly peirce; affording shelter to great multitudes of Cattel, but of wild beasts especially, whose skins are better than their bodies: as *Bears*, *Marterns*, *Zibellines*, *Wolves*, *black Foxes*, whose skins are of very great estimation. Of the timber of these trees are squared all necessaries, both for Forts and Houses; the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge beams fastned together, (the chinks filled with earth) not easily shaken by battery, though much subject to fire. And out of them issueth an unspeakable quantity of *Pitch* and *Rozin*, which are hence distilled: besides an everlasting fountain of wax and honey; the *Bees*, without the Midwifry of the Art of men, building their Hives or houses in the hollow trees. Concerning this there goeth a story (reported and beleeved for a certain truth) of a Country-

man

man, who accidentally had ſlipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he ſtood up to the breſt in honey; continuing there two daies without other ſuſtenance: at the end whereof a *Bear* comming to partake of the bootie, he laid hold of his legs; and ſo terrified him with his cries, that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Country yieldeth alſo great ſtore of *Flax* and *Hemp*, which is tranſported yearly into other Countries; and would make them very excellent *cordage*, if the people had any skill in *manufactures*, or *mechanical* Arts: and in ſome places rich paſtures, and ſuch ſtore of Corn, that therewith they do furniſh *Lapland*, and the North parts of *Sweden*. *Fiſh* they have alſo in good plenty, which they ſalt and drye, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in ſtore for their Forts and Families. By which accompt it will appear that the principall commodities which they ſend abroad, are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales greaſe, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Rozin, Nuts, Fiſberds, and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* buy of them at the Port of S. *Nicolas*, or the *Armenians* at *Aſtrachan* near the *Caſpian* Sea: giving them in return, Cloth, Silks, Tapeſtry, and ſome other Merchandiſe, tranſported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 *poad* (every *poad* containing 40 *Engliſh* pounds) of Tallow 100000 *poad*, 100000 *hides*, 100 ſhips laden with Flax and Hemp; the reſt of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author: ſince whoſe time the trade hereof hath been much increaſed.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by ſome it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are 1. the *Don*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It disburtheneth it ſelf into *Palis Mæotis*, and hath its fountain not out of the *Riphean* Mountains, as was thought of old; but out of a great Lake called *Iwanowefero*, in the Foreſt of *Okonitzkilies*, or *Jephapinolies*, ſome 20 *Engliſh* miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eaſtward, turneth back again, and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Mæotis*, as was ſaid before. 2. *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nieper*, whoſe ſpring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now diſcovered to be near *Daieperk*, a Village of *Muſcovie* (ſpecially ſo called) in the Foreſt of *Wolkonskie*. Whence paſſing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongſt them that of *Doſna*, (by the antient Writers called *Hipanis*) notwithſtanding whoſe muddy waters, it ſtill retains its natural clearneſs, and ſo falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3. *Tarunus* (ſo called by *Ptolemy*) or *Daina* the leſſe (to difference it from *Duina* the greater:) which riſing not far from the head of *Boryſthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and waſhing the walls of *Riga*, the chief Town of *Livonia*; loſeth it ſelf in the *Baltick* Sea. 4. *Dſina*, or *Dwine* (commonly called *Duina* the greater) ſo called from the meeting of two Rivers, the *Juch* and the *Sachan* (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longeſt courſe, not known unto the antients, hath its head in the Province of *Permia*, and its fall into the *Frozen* or Northern Ocean, at the Port of S. *Nicholas*. 5. *Occa*, or *Ocyne*, riſing in the Territory of *Miſceneck*, and making all the Country fruitfull through which it paſſeth; emptieth it ſelf into the *Volga*. 6. *Volga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Rha*, by the *Tartars*, *Edil*; which riſeth 25 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, towards *Lituania*; and fetching a great compaſs in and out, after it hath ſwallowed up many leſſer Rivers, diſchargeth it ſelf with 70 mouths into the *Caſpian* Sea, now called *Mer di Bachu*. Here are beſides theſe Rivers many notable Lakes, as thoſe of *Duina*, and *Volga*, out of which the ſaid two Rivers iſſue; that called *Ilmen*, not far from *Novogrod* the Great, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; that of *Ladoga*, 100 *Dutch* miles in length, and 60 in breadth, in which are many pleaſant Iſlands: and that called *Bideloyeſero* (*Lacus Albus* in *Latine*) about 12 *German* miles long, and as many broad, into which 360 Rivers are ſaid to diſcharge their ſtreams; in the midſt whereof is a very ſtrong Caſtle, ſaid to be impregnable, in which the great Duke keeps the moſt part of his treaſure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of danger and ſedition.

As for the Mountains of this Country, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphæi*, and *Hyperborei*, ſo much talked of, and ſo little known amongſt the Antients. A continual and craggie chain of hils running croſs *Sarmatia Europæa*, South and North; and thence Eaſtwards, into *Aſiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Boryſthenes* into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*. Afterwards bending for a long ſpace, towards the North-eaſt, they are called *Riphæi*; and then paſſing on directly Eaſt, by reaſon of their Nothernly ſituation, called *Hyperborei*. And though Sir *Walter Rayleigh* ſay, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphean* Mountains in *Rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this tract, and telleth us, that in regard of their being alwaies covered with ice and ſnow, they are hardly paſſable: calling theſe and the ſaid *Hyperborei* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terræ*, or the *Girdle* of the *Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do ſeem to compaſs.

It is divided, for the better Government hereof, into four parts (by them termed *Chetfords*) and thoſe governed by four Lieutenants, not reſident upon their charges, but attending on the Emperors perſon whereſoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts; but eſpecially at *Moſco*, the prime ſeat of the Empire: where from their *Under-Deputies* they receive the complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperors Counſel of the buſineſs, and from them again receive inſtructions for *Reformation*. But as to the *Chorography* of it, it is divided into the Provinces of *Muſcovie* ſpecially ſo called, 2 *Novogrod* the *Great*, 3 *Smolensko*, 4 *Moſaiskie*, 5 *Pleſcow*, 6 *Corelia*, 7 *Biarmia*, 8 *Petzora*, 9 *Condora*, 10 *Obdora*, 11 *Jugra*, 12 *Severia*, 13 *Permia*, 14 *Rhezan*, 15 *Wiathka*, 16 *Caſan*, 17 *Aſtrachan*, 18 *Novogordia inferior*, 19 the *Mordwits*, 20 *Worotine*, 21 *Tuvir*, 22 *Wolodomir*, 23 *Dwina*, and 24 the *Ruſſian Ilands*. Others of leſs note (of which there is no want) are reduced to theſe. In my Deſcription whereof I ſhall not be ſo exact and punctual as I have been hitherto: the Country not being much travelled by Strangers; nor any of the Natives ſuffered to go into forein Nations; or permitted (out of *jealouſies*

Muſcovie. ſies of State) to hold diſcourſe with the Ambaſſadors of neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperors hearing. By means whereof the *Chorography* of this vaſt Empire is come but lamely to our hands; though the *Power*, *Politie*, and *Revenues* of it, being points diſcernible by the *Miniſters* of other Princes, and by the courſe and conduct of their affairs; are as well known as thoſe of leſſe diſtance. Which ſaid, we will firſt begin with *Muſcovie*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the ſituation and poſition of the reſt of the Provinces, is ſet forth unto us in our Authors.

1. *MUSCOVIE.*

1 *MUSCOVIE*, ſpecially ſo called, is ſeated in the very center of this Eſtate, and ſo more fit to order the affairs thereof; the largeſt Province of the whole, extending from Eaſt to Weſt 600 *Dutch* or 2400 *Engliſh* miles: ſo populous with all, that beſides 30000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen, bound to ſerve on Horſe-back at their own charges (like the *Turks Timariots*;) the *Great Duke* is able to raiſe 70000 Foot (which is a great matter for a Country ſo little cultivated.)

The ſoil hereof is ſtiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in moſt parts elſe of this large Dominion, the people are accuſtomed to ſow no more of their land, than what they dig with the ſpade, or can break up with a ſtick very ſharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the field, that when one breaks they may uſe another.

Chief places in this Province are 1 *Moſco*, the *Imperial* ſeat, and the See of the *Patriarch*, ſo called of the River *Moſco* upon which it is ſituate. Exceedingly improved both in ſtate and beauty, ſince the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Muſcovie*, removed the ſeat Royal hither, from *Valadomire*, where before it was: inſomuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compaſs, containing then 41500 Families; but being fired by the *Tartar*, Anno 1571. (at what time there were burnt 800000 perſons) it is reduced to five miles only. The houſes for the moſt part, of wood and dirt, the ſtreets very miry; without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart to defend it againſt an Enemy. In ſtead whereof there are two Caſtles, in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kitagorod*, the other *Balſigorod*; environed with the River *Moſco*, and another water called *Neglinna*, which here fals into it. It contains 16 Churches, moſt of them of the ſame *materials* as the houſes are: and the *Palace* of the great Duke ſituate in the midſt hereof, (which for the greatneſs of it may be thought a little City) fortified with 17 Towns, 3 Bulwarks, & a continual Garriſon (if the great Duke be there) of 25000 men for the guard of his perſon. 2. *Sloboda*, a Biſhop See, North-eaſt to *Moſco*, on the banks of one of the greateſt Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3. *Ruſtchow*, the Title of a Dukedome, fortified with a Caſtle of wood (of which ſtuff moſt of the fortreſſes of this Country are made) ſituate 23 leagues from *Moſco* towards the Weſt, on the banks of the *Volga*; which hath its fountain in the Territory and precincts herof. 4. *Jaroſlave*, on the *Volga* alſo, a Town and Caſtle diſtant about 46 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, formerly the eſtate and patrimony of the ſecond ſons of the *Great Duke*, but united to the Royal Domain, by *Iohn Waſiliwick*, and by him added alſo to the ſtyle Imperial. It is alſo one of the Sees *Epiſcopal*. 5. *Ruſtow*, the See of one of the two *Metropolitans*, ſituate in a fruitfull ſoil, well ſtored with fiſh, and yielding good plenty of ſalt. One of the antienteſt *Principalities* of all this Empire, and held accuſtomably by the ſecond ſon of the *Great* Duke, as a ſtate diſtinct: but conquered by *Iohn Vaſiliwick*, Anno 1565. and added to the ſtyle and Patrimony of the Great Duke himſelf, the younger ſons being from thenceforth put off with penſions. 6. *Vologda*, a Biſhop See, ſituate in a fenny and woody Country; very ſtrong by nature, and beautified with one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles of all this *Eſtate*, where the *Great* Duke doth ſometime lay a part of his treaſure: that part eſpecially which is raiſed of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchandiſe; which being landed at the Port of St. *Nicolas*, is firſt brought hither, where having paid a new toll or cuſtome, it goeth on to *Moſco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Jaroſlave* before mentioned, for the ſpace of an hundred *Engliſh* miles, where ſtood in former times 50 goodly Villages, (ſome of them of a mile in length) the Country in a manner is left wholly deſolate, and without inhabitant; abandoned by the people, by reaſon of the inſurportable preſſures which were layd upon them.

2. *SMOLENSKO.* 3. *MOSAISKI.* 4. *PLESCOW.*

The Dukedome of *SMOLENSCO*, is ſituate on the courſe of the River *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, full of many thick Foreſts, from whence they carry a great number of rich skins yearly. Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1. *Smolensko*, ſituate on the *Nieper*, a Biſhops See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Moſco*; begirt on every ſide with Mountains, and ſpacious Woods. A large Town, and of great eſteem in theſe parts of the Empire; and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free condition under the patronage and protection of the Kings of *Poland*: in the time of *Alexander* a late King therof, by *Baſilius* the Great Duke conquered, and added unto this Eſtate. Taken by the *Polanders*, in the year 1610. after a long ſiege of two years, with the ſlaughter of 200000 *Muſcovites*, and the loſs of many of the beſiegers; but reſtored again to *Michael Fedrovitius* the Great Duke, on the making of the peace between them. 2. *Biela*, a principality of it ſelf, having the honour of a Caſtle, and reckoned in the uſual ſtyle of the *Knez* or Emperor.

3. *MOSAISKI*, hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth, ſo called from *Moſaiskie*, the chief Town hereof, and a Biſhops See; taken, together with the Territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *Iohn* the Great Duke, Father of *Baſilius* before mentioned.

4.

4. PLESCOW or PSKOW, contains in length 350 *Italian* miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts; so called from *Plescow* or *Pskow*, the chief City of it, and a Bishops See: great, powerfull, and well walled about, the only walled City of all this Empire. So large within the walls, that when it was besieged by *Stephen* King of POLAND, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, besides the natural Inhabitants of it; which in all ordinary computation must be many more. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the right of the Dukedome of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Basilius* the Great Duke of *Muscovie*, *Anno* 1509. by whom and his successors used in the Royal style. *Novogrod.*

5. NOVOGORD

5 NOVOGORD or NOVOGROD, is one of the largest Provinces or Dukedomes in all *Russia*; bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus*, or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and lesse fruitfull than that of *Muscovie*, because situate somewhat further North: the longest Summer day in *Mosco* not being above 18 hours, whereas in *Novogrod* the chief City hereof, it is very neer 20. By consequence the winter nights being of that length, must make the Air exceeding cold, and the soil as comfortless: Here is in this Province the great Lake *Ilmen*, spoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compass; as also that called *Ladoga*, before also mentioned.

Towns of most estimation in it are 1. *Novogrod* it self, the wealthiest and goodliest City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatness not inferiour to *Rome*; called therefore *Novogrod* the *Great* (to difference it from another of the same name near unto *Valodomir*:) an Archbishops See, and one of the four *Mart-Towns* of the *Hanse-Merchants*, resorted to from all parts for the trade of *Muscovie*, brought thither by land, and thence transported through the *Baltick* to most parts of *Christendom*. So confident in those times of their power and strength, that they used to say, that *men could do nothing against God and them:* but found the contrary when taken from the Crown of *Poland*, by the Great Duke of *Muscovie*. The trade thereof since much decayed, by the finding out of the North-east passage to the Port of St. *Nicolas*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muscovite*. Yet still it keeps the reputation of the principal City, situate on the River *Naf*, which the Dutch call *Ny*; the buildings for the most part of wood and clay: distant from *Mosco* 120 *Dutch* miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*; betwixt which and this City lyeth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the entrances whereof upon the *Dwina*, (which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified with the strong Towns and Garrisons of *Narve*, and *Rivallia*, both in the hands of the King of *Sweden*; which is another great hinderance to the trade of this Town. 2. *Narve*, on the North bank of *Dwina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland*, or *Sinus Finnicus*, in the Province or Territory of *Wichidaw*: heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*, but being taken by *Basilius* the Great Duke, with the rest of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it self, *Anno* 1477. it was impregnably fortified by the care of his son *Vasiliwich*, who for a reward unto the *Architect* being a *Polonian*, put out both his eyes, to disable him from building the like again. But having left all the *natives* in their own habitations, without abating either their strength or number, the Town and Castle not long after was betrayed to the King of *Sweden*, who still holds it. 3. *Pozow* or *Pozovia*, and 4. *Volocolue*, two strong pieces, situate in the borders against the *Polanders*. 5. *Vobsco*, besieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, with an Army of 100000 men; forced to retire without taking it, with the loss of many of his best Captains and common souldiers. It is distant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles, the Country about it called *Volsk*: where they say for certain, that all Cattell which are brought thither, of what hair or colour soever they be, upon a little stay there become all *white*. The people of this tract have a Language (or some *Dialect* rather) peculiar only to themselves. 6. *Juvanogrod*, a strong Castle not far from *Vobsco*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*; a frontire Castle against the *Swedes* garrisoned in *Narve*, to repulse whose inrodes it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable battell betwixt the *Sarmatians*, and their *Slaves*. For when the *Asiatick Scythians* went to plant themselves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining; some of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this tract, went along for company. Their long stay, caused their wives, despairing of their return, to comfort themselves with their *slaves*, both at bed and board; to whom they brought a lusty increase of youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together against them; the *slaves* to retain that wealth and freedome which they were possessed of; the *women* for fear of the displeasure of their Husbands; and the *young men* for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joint forces they go out to meet them, before their entrie into the Country; neither are the *Masters* slow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the first sight of each other. The *Masters* scorning to defile their swords on so ignoble an Enemy, assault them with *whips*; and by the terror thereof got a signall victory. In memory of which battell, the people of that City have ever since stamped their mony with the figure of an *Horseman* shaking a *whip* in his hands: And it is the custome of all *Muscovie*, that the *maids* in the time of wooing, send such a *whip*, curiously wrought by her own hands, to that *Suter*, whom she resolves on for her husband; in token of her future subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. CORELIA. 7. BIARMIA.

6. Sixty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod*, lyeth the Province called *Corelia*, extending Northwards as far as to a branch of the *Frozen* Sea, where the longest day is 20 hours and a half: the nights propor-

Petzora. tionable in the Winter, make it cold and barren. It bordered on the East of *Finland*, from which parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reason of which situation betwixt two great princes, the people are enforced to pay tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Muscovie*. Chief Towns whereof are *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*; and 2. *Corelnburg*, the chief Town of the Province, belonging with the rest of the Country, unto the *Moscovite*. By some this Province is made a part of the *Eastern Lapland*; but, I think, erroneously: the people having some good Towns, and savouring of some *humanity*; neither of which are known or heard of amongst the *Laplanders*. 3. *Nordenberg*, on the mouth of a lake, which by the River called *Warfuga*, emptieth it self into the Bay of S. *Nicolas*.

On the North side of that branch or Arm of the *Frozen* Ocean, which bounds *Corelia*, lyeth the Western part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the country of the *Dikiloppi* or *wilde Lappians*, as the *Moscovites* call them, to whose Duke or Emperor they are subject. We had their *character* before, when we were in *Swethland*; nor shall we need to repeat it here: as barborous and as rude as the worst sort of those mentioned in *Scricfinnia*, and as *Idolatrous* as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to lustfullnesse, than the others. In the winter *Solstice*, when the Sun entreth into *Capricorn*, they have night for three whole months together: during which time lurking in their Caves, they have leisure to consult with the Prince of *Darknesse*; being very great *Sorcerers*, able (as some affirm) to raise Winds, Clouds, Tempests, and do many strange things. Towns here are none. Some sheds and Cabbins on the Sea Coasts, patched up by the *Saylers*, for their reception and refreshment as they came on land, and named according to their fancies; but not here considerable.

8. *PETZORA*. 9. *JUGRIA*. 10. *OBDORA*.
11. *CONDORA*.

Opposite to *Biarmia*, or *East-Lapland*, on the other side of the *Bay* leading towards the Port of S. *Nicolas*, lyeth a large *Promontary* or *Headland* stretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctick*; comprehending in it four Provinces of the *Russian* Empire: that is to say, *Petzora*, *Jugria*, *Obdora*, and *Condora*; belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Russian* Emperors; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in *power* or *Patrimony*. Howsoever somewhat must be said of them, because parts of this great body which we are to dissect.

1. *PETZORA*, so called from a River of that name, is fenced on every side by Mountains and unpassable rocks; extending Northwards to the Sea, and crossed with a vast chain of hils, part of the *Hyperborei*, spoken of before: so high, that a certain man having travelled in the ascent of them 17 daies together, is said to have returned back again, despairing to attain the top of them. Covered in the winter time with perpetual *snows*, in the summer with as scorching heats, by the continuall lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and simple nature, and received the *Russian faith* and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it 1. *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea; a small Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof though otherwise sufficiently simple, as before is said, do in the summer time catch Patrich, Ducks, Swans, Geese, and other fowl, which they salt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a *Tutor* is the *Belly*, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the titles of *Artis Magister*, and *Ingenii largitor venter*; whereof this may serve for one example.

7. *CONDORA* lyeth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the *Pole*; by consequence a colder Country, and of worse condition; in one half of the Country being continual day, and the other half as long a night. The people Universally *Idolaters*, worshipping some *Images* (or *Idols*) in the shape of a man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the richest furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Russes*: who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt those parts for *Sables*, *Foxes*, and *Bevers*; take away their *Furs*, and bestow a greater heat upon them in fires. The chief Town hereof is *Pustozrea*, over against *Nova Zemla*, on or near the great lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; situate in the 68 Degree of *Northern Latitude*, 50 minutes over.

10 *OBDORA*, so called from the River *Ob*, on both sides of whose banks it lyeth, is the most North-Eastern Province of all these Dominions: won to the obedience of the *Russes*, in the Reign of *Theodore* the son of *John*, Great Duke of *Muscovie*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in *Hoords* or *Companies*, eat the Beasts they took, knew no corn nor bread. They were then very good *Archers*, sharpening their Arrows with fish bones; with which bones and the sinews of the Beasts, they sewed *Furs* together for their *Clothing*; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the summer, covering their Houses with *Elks-skins*. By this *Theodore* were some Castles built on the River side, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the form of a petit Kingdom. But his successor *Boris* built *Tooma*, the chief town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the water, not worth naming here. But notwithwanding this subjection to the *Muscovite*, they continue still in their *Idolatry*, worshipping an antient Idol, in form of an old woman, holding in each Arm a *Child*, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatu Bahu*, or the *Golden old wife*; to which they offer pretious *Furs*, sacrifice Harts, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some accompt this for a Fable, or a meer mistake.

11. *JUGRIA* or *JUHAR*, lyeth also on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other; betwixt *Petzore* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longest day in Summer being

not

not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people for the most part *Idolaters*, and worship the same Images as do those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*; who coming out of this Countrey over-ran all *Pannonia*, and their fixed there dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they speak the old *Hungarian* language; not used but in this countrey, and the North parts of *Hungarie*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*: Which more learned men affirm to be the *Jazigian*, the language of the *Jazyges*, who anciently possessed that countrey in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is, that they are subject to the *Moscovite*: but so poor and miserable a people, that they have few towns, and not many houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay *Furs* for tribute to their Emperour. *Severia*, &c.

12. *SEVERIA*. 13. *PERMIA*. 14. *RHEZAN*.

12 *SEVERIA*, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Moscovites* called it, lieth in a long tract on the banks of the River *Ob*, or *Oby*, south of *Obdora*, and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Country very fruitfull, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Deserts, and some Forests also: but those Forests well stored with *black Foxes*, *Ermines*, *Sables*, and the like wild beasts; which yeeld more profit by their *rich Furs*, than any more fertile Countrey doth by its Corn and fruits. Insomuch that in the year 1589. there were collected out of this Province only, in the way of tribute for the Emperour, 466 timber of *Sables*, (every *Timber* containing 40 skins) five *Timber* of *Marterns*, 180 *Cases* of *Black Foxes*, (every *Case* containing 40 skins) besides other commodities. The woods also do afford good plenty of *Honey*, and the plains of *Herbage*; well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Borysthenes*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are 1. *Sibier*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province; 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3. *Starodus*, 4. *Potuvolo*, and 5. *Czeznigo*.

The people hereof, by reason of their continual skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most warlike Nation of all the *Russes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superiour; but afterwards was severally and successively *Tributary* to the *Lituanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moscovite*; and finally, the last Duke being falsly accused of treason, was outed of his estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke; who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

13. *PERMIA* is situate on the South-west of *Sibior*, or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*: so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief town hereof, situate on the River *Vischore*, or *Vistorna*. The second Town of note is called *Siewiarskey*. The people (as also those of *Sibior*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild beasts, whose *flesh* they eat, and make good merchandise of their skins, many of which they pay yearly to the great Duke in way of tribute; who makes a good commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but in stead of bread, eat the flesh of *Stags*, dryed and prepared in the Sun: speaking a language of their own, different from the rest of the *Russes*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great *dogs* and *stags*, whom they train up to draw their *sleds*, from one place to another. There is good store of *woods* amongst them; but they want *Cedars*, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vasiliwich* meaning to pick a quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of *Cedar wood*, whereof he knew there grew none in their Countrey; and upon word returned that they had no such *wood*, he fined them at 12060 *Rubbles*.

14. *RHEZAN*, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tanais*, and that of *Ocke*; the most fruitfull Countrey of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole world also: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of corn doth bring forth six ears; the stalks hereof growing so thick, that an horse can hardly passe through them, or a *Quail* flie out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of *Honey*, fish, fowl, and other commodities: besides *Ermins*, *Bevers*, and the like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the fountain or spring-head of the River *Tanais*, which ariseth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim Tartar*. 3. *Corsira*, a Bishops See; as is also 4. *Rhezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, seated upon the banks of the River *Ocque*. A Country populous and well-planted, affording to the Great *Duke* 15000 *Boyares*, or Gentlemen which serve on horseback, and betwixt 30 and 40000 foot.

15. *WIATHKA*, 16. *CASAN*, 17. *ASTRACHAN*.

15. South-east of *Rhezan*, beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*, lyeth the Province called *WIATHKA*; fennie and barren, but well stored with fish and honey, and wild beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expulsed, it was made subject by *Basilius* to the Dukes of *Moscovie*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do still retain so much of the *Tartar* with them, as to live in *Hoords*, and *Companies*, without any fixt dwellings: or at the best, in scattered houses, not hitherto united into Towns

Novogordia inferior.

Towns and Villages: except it be the Town of *Wiathka* it ſelf, built ſince the ſubjection of it to the *Muſcovite*; and made a Gariſon to defend theſe out-parts of this Empire, againſt the incurſions of the *Tartars*.

16. *CASAN*, a kingdom formerly of *Tartaria Deſerta*, lyeth on the Southeaſt of *Wiathka*, the moſt Civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that civility to their converſation with the *Moſcovites*, (though none of the civilleſt themſelves,) tilling their lands, and building houſes where they may with ſafety. For although the ſoil hereof be tolerably fruitful, and fit for habitation, yet the Country for the moſt part is deſolate and ill inhabited; partly by reaſon of ſome vaſt deſerts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim Tartar*, who will not ſuffer the *Moſcovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the *Natives* to live there in quiet, except only in the Weſtern parts, where protected by Garriſons. Chief Towns hereof are 1. *Caſan* upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the kingdom; ſince the ſubjection of this people to the great Duke, and their converſion to the faith, made a Biſhops See. 2. *Surick* upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vaſt deſerts betwixt *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*; built by *Baſilius* the Great *Duke*, for a ſtage or reſting place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repoſe themſelves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was ſaid; the laſt of which named *Chelealcesk*, ſubmitted himſelf unto *Baſilius* the Great Duke, and became tributarie: but afterwards revolting, he was vanquiſhed by *John Vaſiliwich*, *Anno* 1553. and this kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Ruſſia*; the Emperors ſince that time writing themſelves *Czar Kaſanski*, or King of *Caſan*. And poſſible enough it is, that *Baſilius*, who firſt made it tributary, might from hence take the name to *Baſilius Caſan*, according to the cuſtom of the antient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremiſſi*, a people that live in great Foreſts without any houſes, living for the moſt part of honey and the fleſh of wild beaſts, with the skins of which they are apparelled. Their language different from the reſt, ſwift of foot, and very good *Archers*, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practiſing their children ſo timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after ſuch an age) untill they can hit a white which is ſet before them.

17. *ASTRACHAN* lyeth alſo South-eaſt of *Caſan*, more near unto the *Caſpian* Seas; parted from *Caſan* by thoſe deſerts ſpoken of before, but ſituate on the ſame branch of the River *Volga*: which having run a courſe of 2000 *Italian* miles, diſchargeth it ſelf into this Sea with no leſſe than 70 mouths or chanels. It took this name from *Aſtrachan*, the chief town hereof, ſituate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of thoſe 70 mouths or chanels, into the *Caſpian*: by the commodiouſneſſe whereof, it is one of the beſt towns of trade in all theſe dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their ſilks, and *manufactures*, for the *furs* and other natural commodities of the *Ruſſes*, or *Moſcovites*. A kingdom formerly, but a kingdom of leſſe eſteem than that of *Caſan*; conquered (together with it) by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, *Anno* 1494. and by him made Chriſtian. But afterwards revolting, they were more abſolutely ſubdued by *John Vaſiliwich*, who brought into the field againſt them, no fewer than 120000 horſe, and 20000 foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terrour of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Ruſſia*; the Emperour whereof hath ſince ſtyled himſelf, the King of *Aſtrachan*.

18. *NOVOGORDIA* Inferior,
19. The *MORDWITS*.

But it is now time we return towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the skirts of *Aſia*, in tracing out the ſeveral Provinces of this Empire; ſince our firſt croſſing over the Bay of *Grandvic*, or Saint *Nicolas*, into the Countrie of *Petzora*. But in our way we muſt firſt take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*; ſo called, to difference it from *Novogrod* (ſurnamed the *Great*) ſpoken of before: ſituate almoſt in the midſt betwixt *Caſan* and *Moſco*, diſtant from the laſt 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country generally very rich, both for tillage and paſturage; inferiour unto none in all this eſtate, but *Rhezan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief town, ſituate at the confluence of the *Ock* and *Volga*, beſides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which ſtoreth it plentifully with fiſh. A City of great eſteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of houſes, in which not eaſily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Caſtle, cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges, in the time of *Baſilius* the Great Duke; but principally for a ſtately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 years agoe, in imitation (or emulation, as ſome ſay) of the famous Church of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*. To this Town the ſtory of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* ſlaves, ought, in my mind, to be aſcribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod*, in the Weſt parts of this Empire. My reaſon is, becauſe it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the borders of the *Baltick* Sea, ſhould croſſe all this Country, to join with the *Aſiatick Scythians* ſo remote from them, in a needleſſe war: which thoſe of this tract might well do, as near neighbours to them, if not of the ſame Nation or extraction with them.

Subject to the Eſtate hereof are the *Mordwit Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga*, and the *Don* or *Tanais*, where it beginneth to return Weſtwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the ſame nature with the *Czeremiſſes*, but that they have ſome villages, & ſcattered houſes, which the other either

either want, or else care not for. *Idolaters* for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their *Idols* in their *Carts* whersoever they goe: *worshipping* that beast all day, which they first see in the morning; and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest *deity*. *Worotine &c.*

20 WOROTINE, 21 TUVER, 22 WOLODOMIR.

And now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles, as Towns with Territorie: four of them (besides some before) either situate in the Province of *Moscovie*, or else so intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for members of it. The principal are,

20 *WOROTIN*, seated on the West side of the River *Ocque*, a distinct Dukedom of it self; so called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Colluga* in the Province of *Rhezan*, lying on the further bank thereof; beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant soil. The 2 *Miscneck*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the head of the Rider *Ocque*, which ariseth in the fields adjoyning.

21 *TUVER* or *OTUVER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the banks of the River *Volga*: so populous, that it is said to contain 40000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback; and double that number of the common or inferiour sort. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and is so called from *Twerde* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishops See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately City than *Mosco* it self, from which distant 36 *Dutch* miles.

22 *WOLODOMIR* is one of the most fruitfull Countries in all *Russia*, not paralleld by many Countries in the world; the soil here (if all be true, which is said of it) yielding such an increase, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty and sometimes twenty five for one. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and hath precedency before *Moscovie* in the style Imperial. So called from *Wolodomir* the chief City of it, and a Bishops See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Valadomir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. The City situate 36 *Polonian* miles on the East of *Mosco*, antiently the chief seat and residence of the Great *Duke*; and so continued till the time of *John*, the son of *Daniel*, who first transl ated it to *Mosco*; that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose irruptions and invasions, both he and his predecessours had long been troubled. Under the government hereof is the City of *Susdali*, of great esteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal seat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Rostow* it is seated. After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its antient lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation, but a Bishops *See*.

23 DWINA

23 *DWINA*, so called from the chief Town, situate on the confluence of two Rivers *Juch* and *Sachano*, whence it hath the name: *Dwine* in the language of that Countrie signifying two, (as *twain* doth with us amongst Country people) A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages hereof to stand very thin; the Towns (considering the great compass of it) to be very few; and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried fish, and the flesh of wild beasts, which they have no want of. The chief commoditie is in salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are 1. *Dwine*, spoken of before, situate in the midst of the Province, on the meeting of the said two Rivers, which here united into one stream, take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean, in the Bay of *Grandvic*. 2 *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is seated. 3. *Colmagro*, 4. *Pinnegue*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following; that is to say, 1. *Usting*, a Bishops *See*, situate on the western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country so ill furnished with necessaries, that the people eat dryed fish instead of bread, but have salt enough to season it from those of *Dwine*. 2. *Gargapol*, a Bishops See also, on the same side of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3. S. *Nicolas*, a well-known Port, and a Bishops See; situate at the influx of *Dwina*, into the Gulph of *Granvicus*, or the Bay of S. *Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded, since the discovery of the North-East passage by the *English* and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* trafique from *Novogrod* hither: from hence dispersed with more ease and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4. S. *Michael*, on the Sea side, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great trade, by the *English* specially; who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reason where of the *English* Merchants have not only great privileges and immunities (as the Authors of so great a benefit unto this Estate) not granted to others; but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them, than any others have received. The cause of which, was primarily the great opinion which their Emperours had of Queen *Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them, continued ever since by mutual *Ambassies* on both sides; and secondly the conformable behaviour of the *English* themselves, so acceptable to those *Barbarians* (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasiliwich* nailed the hat of another

ther forein *Embassador* to his head for his too much perverseness, he used our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindness imaginable. Another time, when the *Jesuite Possevine* began to perswade with him, to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*: upon the information of the *English Embassadour*, that the Pope was a proud *Prelate*, and would make Princes kiss his feet; he grew into such a rage, that the *Jesuite* was afraid he would have beat out his brains. But to return again to the Port of S. *Nicolas*, it is so called from an Abbie there built unto that Saint, the *tutelary Saint*, and *local Patron* of the Nation. Which said, I will set sail from this Port to the *Russian Islands*, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

The *RVSSIAN* Ilands.

The *RUSSIAN ILANDS* are but two; both of them in the Northern or *Frozen* Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1. Sir *Hugh Willoughbies* Iland, and *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Moscovie*.

1. *WILLOUGHBIES ILAND* was so called from Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*, because he first discovered it, *Anno* 1553. and was hereabouts found *frozen* to death, the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the 6. to find out a new way to *Moscovie*, *Cathaie*, and *China*, he proceeded so far as to this Island (situate almost opposite to the Bay of S. *Nicolas*) where the weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the ice, and all his people, with himself, *frozen* to death; in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their voyage, and fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the enterprize was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *English* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East boundar of *Russia*) but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floting Ilands of Ice, and perpetual nights, for many months together in winter, could advance no further.

2 *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughbies* Iland opposite to *Pustozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was first discovered by such *Adventurers*, as followed *Willoughbies* design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pygmies*: not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes* who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither *Religion*, nor *Civility*, nor the prescripts of any *Law*; but that they worshipped the *Sun*, *Moon*, and Northern *Star*, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their *Deer*; that the Iland is woody, desert, and not easie for travel, having in it neither green bough nor grass; yet harbouring great store of Bears, and such ravenous and dangerous beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentson*, and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders* for this discovery, *An.* 1594. and 1596. in which last year, after many dreadfull combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Island, where they built an house, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in snow, as from being devoured by the Bears, (some of them 13 foot in length) which with the losse of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *October* following. And though they seemed to give some hope, that a way might be found unto *Cathaie* on the North of this Iland (themselves having gone as far North as the 81 degree of Latitude, within 9. of the *Pole*) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the successe impossible.

And so I leave it to return to the story of *Russia*, called antiently by the name of *Sarmatia Europæa*, but known no further Northwards than the head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europæa*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemie*, by the *Baltick* Sea, and some *Terra Incognita*, on the North; the *Jazyges Metanastæ* (now *Transylvania*, and the *Upper Hungarie*) upon the South; the River *Vistula*, or *Wexel*, (which divided it from *Germany*) upon the West; and the *Tanais*, upon the East. Beyond that all along the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, to the *Mare Caspium*, and as far North as any Conquerour had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Asiatica*: the Countries further Eastward being then called *Scythia*. By which accompt, as *Russia* containeth not all *Sarmatia Europæa*, of which *Prussia*, and the rest of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland*, passeth for a part: so neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Asiatica*. The antient Inhabitants called by a general name *Sarmatæ*, by the *Greeks Sauromatæ*, were subdivided (for so much of this part of it as was then made known) into the *Agathyrsi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Osyli*, *Alauni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarous Nations, these were some of the principal. And from these *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the rest, *Matthias à Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the original of the *Rosses*, (which we now call the *Russians*) seconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of antient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Chersonesus* (from which the passage into this Country is both short and easie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. Ταύρους τοὺς Ῥῶς καλεῖσθαι, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he saith from *Tsetzes*. Which *Rhos*, or *Rhosi*, first mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* people, might get the name of *Roxolani*: and afterwards possessing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Rosi* of Mount *Taurus* (from whom those of *Taurica* descended) in their enterprizes on *Constantinople* and the parts adjoyning; return to their old name of *Rosi*. The *Rhosi*, or *Russians*, were then the first Lords of this Country generally, the *Moscovites* no other but of a Province only: so called from the *Moschi*, spoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharsalia*; and placed by *Plinie* near the head of the River *Phasis* which rising from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mesech* (or *Mosoch*, as the Antients called him) the son of *Japhet*, planted originally

nally in the North and North-East of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Cholcis* and *Armenia*; where *Plinie*, as before is said, hath fixed the *Moschi*, and where there is a long chain of hills, which most of the old writers call *Montes Moschici*. But to return unto the *Rossi*, we hear not of them by this name, till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperour of *Constantinople*, in whose reign they infested the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldnesse to attempt the Imperial City, *Anno* 864. said by *Cedrenus*, and some others of the Eastern Writers, to be a people of Mount *Taurus* (next neighbours to *Mesech* or the *Moschi*.) Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to goe home again, they spread themselves, with their confederates and associates in this expedition, upon the North-west banks of the *Euxine* Seas; enlarging their bounds Norrhwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted, in the reigns of *Constantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auceps*. Converted to the *Christian Faith*, or growing into better terms with the Eastern *Emperours*, *Helena* daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is maried to *Valadomirus* one of their Kings; from that time forwards turning their forces on the *Polanders*, and their weaker neighbours; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private quarrel, they made another fruitless journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their estate to the West and South, they became masters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europæa*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Nigra Russia*, and other Provinces, now subject to the Crown of *Poland*; being then parts of their Estate. *Anno* 1240. the Tartars, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, son of *Occata Chan*, broke in upon them, and subdued them: the Country before this entire, under one sole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferiour Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the insolent *Victors*. The principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Volodomir*, *Mosco*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other title than that of Lords of *Moscovie*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the rest. Their seat originally at *Walodomir*, till the time of *John* the son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Russes*, descended of the old Regal line, taking a good liking to the River and Town of *Mosco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Russes*, united in succeeding times unto this Estate, by mariages, fraud, and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their Power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vassals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous insolency. Under which thraldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians* being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their power and command here, by the valour of *John*, son of *Basilius* the second, who thereupon changed the Title of Lord, into that of Duke, and after into that of *Great Duke*, as his fortunes thrived. Yet not so *great*, but that he was contented to be an *Homager* of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their *Holds* in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great *Duke* standing on foot, should feed the Horse of the *Crim Tartar* with Oats, out of his own Cap. This *Homage* was by *Basilius* changed to a tribute of Furres; which being also denied by his successors (as they grew in power) occasioned the long wars betwixt the Nations: the *Tartars* alwayes pressing on them by sudden inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithanding all their power, and the friendship of the *Turk* to boot; the *Moscovite* is not only able to assert his *Soveraignty*, but hath also wrested from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I shall not trouble my self (as I see some doe) in tracing a Succession of them, as far as from the times of *Augustus Cæsar*: when neither the *Rossi*, nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore goe no higher than the time of *George*, whose daughter *Anne* I find to have been maried to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct line descended another *George*, with whom we doe intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russes*, before the coming of the *Tartars*. Who wisely yeelding to the storm, waved the title of king, contented only with the title of Lord, as more safe for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*: the fifth from whom called *John* (as before is said) having removed his seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief seat of that power and *Soveraignty*, which he transmitted afterwards to his posterity: affecting for that cause the title of *Dukes* of *Moscovie* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his style) as much as that of Emperour of *Russia*; which some of them have assumed also; since the time of *Basilius*, who styled himself *Basilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperour and Lord of *Russia*, Great Guke of *Volodomir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod* the great, *Plescow*, *Smoiensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiathka*, *Bulgar*, *&c.* Lord and great Prince of the *Lower Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rhozan*, *Wologda*, *Rsow*, *Biele*, *Rostow*, *Yaroslane*, *Poloskie*, *Biellozziere*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, *&c.* King of *Casan* and *Astrachan*. But leaving them unto their swelling and *voluminous* Title (little inferiour unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the succession from the time aforesaid, of

The LORDS of *MOSCOVIE* of the old Royal *RVSSIAN* Line.

Ao Ch.

1 *George*, the last King of the *Russes*, and first Lord of the *Russes* of the Royal Line.
2 *Jaceslaus*.
3 *Alexander*.
4 *Daniel*.
5 *John*, who transferred the seat to *Mosco*.
6 *John* II.
7 *Basilius*,
8 *Demetrius*.
9 *Georgius* II.
10 *Basilius* II.

The Great DUKES of *MOSCOVIE*.

1 *John*, the first great Duke, who strook off the *Tartarian* bondage.
2 *Basilius Casan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roscovia*, and *Smolensko*.
3 *John Basilsus*, conquered *Livonia*, and *Lituania*, both which his successor
1548 4 *Johannes Basiliades*, or *Wasilwich*, lost in his age: though in his youth he had subdued the *Noyhacensian Tartars* to his Empire; and vanquished *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1569. With this King the *English* first began to confederate.
1583 5 *Theodorus Johannides*, the last of the old Royal Line of *Moscovie*.
1595 6 *Boris Theodorus*, brother to the wife of the last *Great Duke*, partly by the last will of his Predecessor, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire; but being an unmercifull Tyrant, was dispossessed by the *Polanders*, coming in favour of one
1605 7 *Demetrius*, pretending himself to be the son of *John Vasilwich*, (and generally believed to be so) preserved in a Monastery from the Tyranny of *Boris*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperour in the City of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords disdaining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in Arms against him, and at last vanquished, and slew him in open field: his wife a noble *Polonian* Lady, sent poorly home; and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.
1606 8 *Basil Juanniwich*, surnamed *Sniskins*, the chief of the Conspiratours, was by the rest of his faction chosen *Cnez*, or Emperour; and held the State with great trouble, till the year 1610. when
1610 9 *Demetrius* II. another pretender to the State, as the son of *John Vasilwich* also, in opposition unto *Sniskius*, set up by a stronger faction; gave occasion to the *Polander* to work upon this distemper; by whom *Sniskius* was taken prisoner *Demetrius* slain, *Smolensko*, and other great Towns subdued; and *Uladislaus*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Russians* to be chosen Emperour. But the *Russes* loth to fall under the power of the *Polander*, and weary of their own confusions, made choice at last, of
1615 10 *Michael Fredrovitz*, son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Mosco*, who at last setled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Swethlander*, than any of his Predecessors had done before him.
1646 11 *Alexius Michoilywitz* (or the son of *Michael*) succeeded his Father in the Empire, troubled at first with some distempers in the State (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly setled, *Anno* 1648.

The Formalities with which these great Emperours are invested, or setled in the Throne, are not many nor stately; such as they be, I here afford you out of the history of the life of *Johannes Basiliades*, written in *Latine* by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the 2. of *June*, *Anno* 1583. *Theodorus Johannides* went towards the Temple of S. *Michael*, being the principal Church in all *Mosco*: the streets all covered with flowers, the doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the air ecchoing with the noise of *Flutes* and *Trumpets*, and the people so crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Country (*Cneses* they there call them) went out to meet him: and the Archbishop of *Mosco*, clad in his *pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the stalls adorned with costly hangings. The *Great Duke* sate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of silk, buttoned down with golden buttons: on his head he wore a purple cap, spangled with rich jewels, and on his fingers abundance of rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God, to bless him, his people, and his government; which was seconded by the joyfull shouts and acclamations of his Subjects: amongst whom no small store of silver mony was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the *lives*, *lands*, and *goods* of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their *Petitions* to him, by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, *Sclaves*. Whereupon *Mahomet* a *Turkish Bashaw* was used to say, that his Master and the *Muscovite* were the two most absolute Princes in all the world. First, for their *goods*, when any Embassadour returns home, the *Great Duke* takes from him all the presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small reward, perhaps none at all

all: and as for *lands*, they passe not from father to son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *John Vasiliwich* sent a command to *Mosco*, to provide a Coal-pack of *live Fleas* for a medicine; and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 *Rubbles* for their disobedience. Another time he laid a mulct of 300000 *Rubbles* upon his Nobility, because he had no good sport in his hunting; which they again extorted from the common people: and under colour of want, commanded from some *Bishops*, and *Monasteries*, the sum of 100000 *Rubbles*, from some 50000, more or less from others, according unto their *revennes*. And it is usual with the best of them, to cause the *Boiars* (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the Citie to find out the Felon; and on a *non est inventus*, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 *Rubbles*. Then for their *lives*, there is a story, that *Vasiliwich* having found that one of his *Secretaries* had received a Goose, stuffed full silver for a Bribe; caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Mosco*: where, without any *legal trial*, he commanded the *Executioner*, first to cut off his legs about the shins, and then his arms about the elbows (still asking the miserable man how he liked *Goose-flesh*) and in the end, to cut off his head; in similitude of a *Goose* ready for the spit. And that they may the better preserve this *power*, the *Great Dukes* seldom shew themselves unto the people, but in apparel of inestimable value, joyning the ornaments of a *Bishop* unto the Majestie of a *King*, by wearing a *Mitre* on their heads shining with Diamonds and rich stones: and when they wear it not on their heads, they place it before the *chair of state* (over which are the images of *Christ* and the *blessed Virgin*) holding in his hand a most rich *Crozier staff*, and all their fingers full of rings. And upon solemn festivals and entertainments, the *Great Chamber* is beset with Cubboards of plate, of infinite value; and filled with men cloathed with cloth of gold, to the very foot; all of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperours *Wardrobe*; which to such as do not understand the fraud, look like so many *Princes*, and causeth no small wonder at his magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such *royal state*, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home; reverence him as *slaves*, not *subjects*, and look upon him rather as a *God*, than a *King*.

Having so absolute a command on their *lives* and *goods*, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what *forces*, and amass what *treasures* he hath a mind to. First, for his *Forces*, it is said that he is able to raise 300000 Horse, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *John Vasiliwich* in his war against those of *Astrachan*, had actually 120000 Horse; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiares*, bound by their *Tenure* to serve with horse whensoever he pleaseth. And that there are 110 men chosen by the Emperour, and by him enfeoffed with lands, (during pleasure only) who for these lands are to find 65000 horse, with all things necessary for the wars; and those in a continual readinesse, fit for present action. Then for such horse as he himself doth keep in continual pay, there is not fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his person; all of them well-experienced men, and fit for service: which added to the 65000 spoken of before, makes up a standing body of 90000. Had he *foot* answerable unto this proportion of *horse*, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vasiliwich* to his great Army of 120000 *horse*, having but 20000 *foot*; the *foot-men* which he hath in continual pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing body of *horse*, as before we spake of. And this defect hath been the reason why the *Polanders*, with far lesse armies have prevailed against them: the *Great Duke* not being able with all his power, to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne*, or besiedging *Plescow*, (though his Army was not above 60000 both in horse and foot) for want of standing bands of *foot* to make good his ground. Generally both *horse* and *foot* are very obedient to their Captains and superiour Officers; patiently enduring all discommodities of cold, rain, and hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a *Fortresse*, than serve in field) and so regardlesse of their lives in the day of battel, that they will rather lose them, than either yeeld themselves *Prisoners*, or demand *Quarter*.

For his *Revennes*, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his subjects before mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amassing *treasure*: as, *viz.* the *forestalling* of homebred commodities, and *ingrossing* the forein; selling them at what price he list, and hindering all men else from trade, till his own be sold; provision of rent-corn, and victual, raised in some years to 200000 *Rubbles*, rent-wood, and Hay to 30000; *pol-mony* to 400000, customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting moneys, and the *Domain* of his Crown, though he raise vast sums; yet it is thought, that his household charges being deducted, there remaineth not towards all other expences, three millions of *Rubbles*, every *Rubble* being as much as an *English* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two leaves, and as many Degrees, *Or*.

There are in *RUSSIA*
Patriarch 1. Archbishops 2.
Bishops 18.

And so much for *RUSSIA*.

OF POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the East, with *Russia*, and the *Crim Tartar*, from whom parted by the River *Borysthenes*; on the West, with *Germany*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea, and some part of *Russia*; on the South, with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungarie*, and *Walachia*.

It is an Aggregate body, consisting of many distinct Provinces, united into one Estate; of which *Poland* being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called all together the Realm of *POLAND*: and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* language (the common language of the Countrey) signifieth *plain*; because but little swelled with hills. Of figure round, in compass 2600 miles; situate under the eighth and twelfth *Climates*: so that the longest day in the Southern parts is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

The Countrey *plain*, but full of woods, which serve to rectifie the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes: in stead whereof they use that kind of drink called *Ale*; in former times the usual Beverage of *England*, and this Countrey only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such aboundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly: nor yeeld they any thing at all to *Denmark*, or *Hungarie*, for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The people are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine*; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarse a mean man, who is not able in some measure, to express himself in it. According to their abilities, rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good souldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable servitude unto their Lords; the Lords in such equality of estate amongst themselves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 *Ducats* of yearly rent. Proud in their garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their humours, and delicate in diet: these last conditions common to the women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather wittie than well spoken. But this being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the people of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The *Christian* faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times, and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth: in *Poland* specially so called, in the time of their Prince *Miecislaus*, son of *Nemomislus*, *An.* 963. in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Meinardus*, *Anno* 1200. or thereabouts; In *Lituania*, not until the year 1386. at the admission of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas* of *Walden*, (or *Waldensis*) an *English* Frier. In *Samogitia*, and *Volhinia*, at the same time with *Lituania*. In the rest at other times, and on other occasions: yet so that in many places of it, *Idolatry* was never totally rooted out, the seeds and practice whereof in many points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the *superstitions* of the Church of *Rome*, a *Reformation* was endevoured, at such time as *John Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring kingdom: but by the rigour of *Ladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his *Bishops* and *Noblemen*, at that time hindred. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who had studied at *Lipsique*, and *Wittenberg*, (Universities of *Saxonie*) brought his opinons home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as some *Dutch* Merchants (with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Town of *Prussia*, *Anno* 1525. from whence it spread it self over most part of that Country. According as it was favoured or disliked, by the *Palatines*, *Chastellans*, and other great men of the Realm; so was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Grecians* in the mean time taking opportunity, to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it; who being originally members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still

continue

continue in conformity and obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-great *liberty* of the Nobility and people, and *want* of *power* in the King to controul their doings, every man took up what *Religion* he best liked, some following the *Augustane Confession*, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome*: and some inclining to new *Sects*, or rather to old *Heresies* under new disguises, have brought in such a *miscellanie* or *Babel* of *Religions* into this estate, (*Jesuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptists*, and indeed what not, being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a By-word, *that if any man had lost his* Religion, *he might find it in* Poland, *or else believe it to be vanished.* A By-word afterwards applyed unto *Amsterdam*; communicable since unto other places: *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the *Liberty* of *Prophecying* being now as much allowed of in some parts of *Christendome*, as *Libertas opinandi*, was in *Rome* under *Nervas* Government; *ubi & sentire quæ velis, & quæ sentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he listed of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *Rara temporum felicitas*, such a *felicity* of these our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of those, future times will shew. *Livonia.*

But to return again to *Poland*, notwithstanding this mixture of *Religions*, yet that most publickly allowed and countenanced, is the *Religion* authorised by the Church of *Rome*; asserted here by the *zeal* of the *Kings* unto that cause, and the great *power* of the *Bishops*; who seeing how those of their *Order* have sped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of *Reformation* of some things amiss, have hitherto upheld the *Ecclesiastical* Estate, in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church as formerly, by 3 *Archbishops*, and 19 *Bishops*: who challenge a jurisdiction over all the Kingdome, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them: those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther*, or *Calvin*, following the *forms* of *Government* by them established; as others do some *new ones* of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lye towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Russian Empire*, and still hold a *Communion* with those Churches; they have Archbishops and Bishops of their own *Religion*: that is to say, the Archbishops of *Vilne*, and *Lemburg*, the Bishops of *Polozko*, *Luzko*, *Pinsko*, *Volodomire*, *Premisl*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government, there is this *conformity*, that whensoever the *Gospell* is read openly in the Congregation, the *Nobility* and Gentry use to *draw their swords* (according to an antient custome which they had among them) signifying their readinesse to defend it against all opposers. Which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the *Creed*, and *Gospell*, in the primitive times; retained still in the Church of *England*: whereby we do declare, how prepared and resolute we are to defend the same; though some of late, holding it for a *Relick* of *Popery*, with greater nicety than wisedome, have refused to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Country in the Art of war, 1. *Cassimir* the third, the great establisher of this Kingdom after long dissentions. 2. *Jagello*, or *Uladislaus* the first, who first brought down the pride of the *Dutch* Knights in a famous victory. 3. *Cassimir* the 4th. the fortunate conqueror of the Knights of *Prussia*, brought by him under the command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4. *Sigismund* the first, by whose valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally suppressed, and the greatest part of *Prussia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigismund* the second, surnamed *Augustus*, fortunate in his wars against most of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of most special note for learning, *Hosius*, a Divine of the Papal party, whose great abilities advanced him to the State of a Cardinal; 2. *Crellius*, and 3. *Volchelius*, of the contrary party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unsound opinions; 4. *Cromerus* the Historian; 5 *Barth: Keckerman* the Professor at *Dansk* or *Dantzick*, a man of universal studies, but of greater industry than exactnesse.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are 1. *Vistula* or *Wixel*, the antient Boundary betwixt *Germany*, and *Sarmatia Europæa*, which rising in the *Carpathian* Mountains, passeth by *Cracovia* the chief City of *Poland*: and dividing *Prussia* from *Pomerella*, falleth into the *Baltick* Sea not far from *Dantzick*, and is navigable for the space of 400 miles: of old called *Vandalis*. 2 *Warta*, which runneth through the lesser *Poland*; 3. *Duina* the *lesse*, watering *Livonia*: and 4. *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* passing through *Podolia*, both spoken of before when we were in *Russia*, 5. *Niester*, by *Ptolemy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having first parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by some called the *lesser Tanais*, arising in *Lituania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don*. Of less note note there are, 1. *Reuben* or *Reuhon*, 2. *Cronus* now called *Pregel*, 3. *Bogh*, said by some to be the *Hipani* of the Antiens. 4. *Minnael*, 5. *Niemen*, the *Maander* of these Northern parts. 6. *Winde*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the most part being *plain* and *Champain*: and those which be are rather boundaries betwixt this and some other Kingdome, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are those called *Sarmatici*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europæa*; by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolemy* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common *metes* and *Land-marks* being thus laid down, we will next take a view of those several Provinces, of which this Kingdome doth consist; being ten in number: that is to say, 1. *Livonia*. 2. *Samogitia*, 3. *Lituania*, 4. *Prussia*, 5. *Poland*, specially called. 6. *Massovia*, 7. *Podlassia*, 8. *Russia Nigra*, 9. *Volhinia*, and 10. *Podolia*: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europæa*.

1. *LIVONIA.*

1. *LIVONIA* or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the East, with the Empire of *Russia*; on the West, with the *Baltick* Sea; on the North, with the *Gulf* or Bay of *Finland*; on the South, with *Samogitia*, and *Lituania*. Extended in length along the shore of the *Baltick* for the space of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian* miles, &c

Livonia. 40 *Dutch* or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Lenovi*, a people of *Germani*, inhabiting not far from the River *Viſtula*.

The Country for the moſt part plain, without any mountains; furniſhed with corn and fruits in ſo great aboundance, that they ſend part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much ground untilled in it, by reaſon of the bogs and mariſhes which are very frequent. Here is alſo ſtore of wax, *hony*, and pitch, but they have neither oyl nor wine; the want of which laſt is ſupplyed by *Meth*. Of tame Beaſts fit for mans ſervice they are well provided; as alſo of ſuch whoſe skins are of more value with the Merchant, than their *fleſh* at the Market, as *Ermins*, *Sables*, *Caſtors*, others of that kind; beſides good ſtore of game for hunting, the Country having in it many large woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for Rivers, there are few Countries which have more; watered by the *Winde*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Ruho*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Beybas*, 45 miles long, and full of fiſh.

The people are much given to *glattony* and *drunkenneſs*, eſpecially in rich mens Houſes; where it is to be had: for the *paiſant* lives in want enough, meer *ſlaves* to their tyrannicall Landlords, who ſpend in riot and exceſſe, what theſe get by drudgery. And when at any time the poor wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with ſome other; the *Lord*, if he can overtake him, will cut off his foot, to make him ſure for the future. They are a mixture of many Nations, as the *Eſtones*, which are the naturall Inhabitants, (derived from the *Eſtii*, a *Dutch* people, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*) of which Nation are almoſt all the Paiſants: the *Muſcovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch*, and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, comming in upon ſeverall conqueſts, and planting themſelves in the beſt parts of it, in which they ſtill *Lord* it over the *Native*, but the *Dutch* eſpecially for long time *Maſters* of the whole.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt there planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck*, imployed herein (in the time of *Frederick* the firſt) at the perſwaſion of ſome *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbiſhop of *Breme*; by whom made the firſt Biſhop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time governed by the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, the Biſhops of *Derpt*, *Aſilia*, *Oſel*, *Curland*, and *Rivallia*, in thoſe parts which remain ſubject to the *Polander*; where the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such parts of it that are under the *Swedes*, or *Danes*, are for the moſt part, of the *Lutheran* profeſſion; planted with Colonies of that people. But the *Eſtones*, or *original* Inhabitants, as they have a language, ſo they have a *Religion* by themſelves alſo; mixt of the *Chriſtian* and the *Pagan*: extremely well affected unto their Prieſts, to whom they preſent ſalt, candles, and fruits, when they come to them for their *bleſſings*; great lovers of *Confeſſion*, eſteemers of holy water, and diligent frequenters of their *Churches*; but ſo extremely ignorant in all points of *Religion*, that there is hardly one in a village that can ſay his *Pater-noſter*. When they bury any of their dead, every one drinketh an health to him, and powreth his part upon him when his turn comes to drink; putting into the grave with him an hatchet, wine, meat, and a little mony for his voyage. And in ſome places they are wholly *Idolatrous* (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jeſuites*) ſome of them worſhipping the Sun, other ſtocks and ſtones, and ſome *Serpents* alſo. The Langnage of the Country is for the moſt part the *High Dutch* (being the Language of thoſe Nations who firſt Lorded over them;) the *Eſtones* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others underſtand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland*, *Eſtland*, *Semigal*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Letteland*; but theſe ſix, ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three: *Harland*, and *Virland*, being united unto *Eſtland*; and *Semigallia*, unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Eſtland* are 1. *Rivalle*, a Biſhops ſee, and a well-traded Port, ſituate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swede*; the keeping whereof and of *Virburg*, on the borders of *Muſcovie*, ſtand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. 2. *Habſay*, or *Habſes*, (*Aſilia* in *Latine*) a Biſhops See, and 3. *Pernow*, a well fortified place, belonging to the *Swethlander* alſo, ever ſince the conqueſt of theſe parts of the Country by *John* the ſecond. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as all other pieces of this nature are, which ſtanding in an Enemies Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adverſaries. For they are not only *dores*, to open a further paſſage into their *Territories* whenſoever we ſhall ſee occaſion: but whilſt the Enemy is beſieging thereof, or otherwiſe buſied in recovering them into his power, our own ſtate is preſerved in quiet; and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them, if they be diſtreſſed, without waſting any part of our proper Countreys. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *Engliſh*; the Garriſons which the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* have in *Afric*, and *India*: the charge of keeping them being ſufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the income, as ſometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4. *Velin*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with an impregnable Caſtle; betrayed by the *Dutch* Garriſon, at that time in it, together with *William* of *Furſtenberg* the great Maſter, into the hands of *John Baſilius* the great Duke of *Muſcovie*; who ſtill holds it. 5. *Derpt* or *Derbren*, (in *Latine Tupatum*) a Biſhops See; ſituate on the *Beck*, or *Einbeck*, betwixt two *Lakes*, in the midſt of the Province; and taken at the ſame time by the *Muſcovite*; who tranſporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted theſe parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Terneſt*, a Caſtle of great ſtrength, taken then alſo by the *Ruſſes*: but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with *Gun-powder*, that it might no more come into the hands of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; theſe that follow do: that is to ſay, 7. *Borchlom*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Rivalle*, ſince the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Weiſenberg*, incommodiouſly ſeated betwixt two ill neighbours, *Narve*, and *Rivalle*; but ſerving very well to prohibit the incurſions of thoſe Garriſons

risons further into the Country. 9. *Werneber*, in that part of *Eſtland*, which is called *Odinpen*; and *Wittenſtein*, in that part thereof, which is named *Jervia*. *Livonia.*

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midſt betwixt *Eſtland* and *Curland*, the places of moſt note are 1. *Rica*, (the people call it *Rig*) ſeated on the mouth of the River *Dwina*, falling there into the *Baltick*: firſt built, and planted, at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbiſhops See, the ordinary reſidence of the great Maſter, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified according to the modern Rules of fortification, with a ſtrong wall, large Bulwarks, double ditches, *Paliſadoes*; and well provided of all manner of *Ammunition*: a famous *Emporie*, of great reſort by forein Merchants, who carry hence, Pitch, Wax, hemp, Flax, and ſuch other commodities. Governed (notwithſtanding their ſubjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own *Laws*; and ſuch ſtout defenders of their liberties, that they will by no means admit of any foreiner, to have command of the City; obedient in all other things to the will of that King. 2. *Dunamund*, an impregnable fortreſs, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garriſoned by the *Polanders*, who here take *toll* of all forein Merchants. 3. *Blokaws*, a Gariſon of the Kings betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are *tolled* over again. 4. *Winden*, more within the Land, on the River ſo called. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the River *Treiden*. 6. *Kokenhan*, a ſtrong Town on the banks of the *Dwina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and ſtood firm for him in the war made by *Charles* Duke of *Suderman*, againſt his Nephew *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*: when almoſt all *Eſtland* had ſubmitted to him.

CVRLAND, the third and laſt member of this diviſion, containing *Semigallia* alſo, lyeth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia*, and *Lituania*: an entire Dukedome of it ſelf, but holden under the *Soveraignty* and homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Canden*, 2. *Goldingen*, 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Wenden*) the ſeat of the *Great Maſter* of the *Teutonick* order in times paſt; now moſt frequented as the place of *Parliament* or General Aſſembly, for affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*, 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea ſide, but of no trade at all. 6. *Halenpar*. And then in *Semigall*, 7. *Mitow*, the Court and reſidence of the Dukes of *Curland*. 8. *Selborch*, 9. *Boſſembourg*, 10. *Dobelin*. No town in all this Dukedome of any trading, though lying for a great ſpace all along the *Baltick*; becauſe none of them furniſhed with commodious Havens. A Dukedom firſt begun in the perſon of *Gothardus Ketler*, (of one of the Noble Families of *Danemark*) the laſt *Great Maſter* of the *Dutch Knights*, in this Country: who in the year 1562. ſurrendering his order, and the whole poſſeſſion of *Livonia*, to *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*; received back again for him and his heirs for ever, the Dukedom of *Curland* and *Semigall*, to be held by them of that Crown: the Nobility of theſe Countries doing then preſently their *homage* and allegiance to him, as their *Hereditary* Prince. Since which time the Princes of this houſe have continued *Feudataries* unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the body thereof; not coming to the Diets, not liable to the publick charges, nor having any thing to do in the Kings Election: in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the Kings of *Poland*, then ſubjects to them. The preſent Duke like to be much increaſed in Eſtate and power, if the now Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg* (whoſe ſiſter is his Mother) ſhould depart without iſſue. For by that means there will be added to this houſe the great Dukedome of *Pruſſia*, thoſe of *Cleve* and *Gulick*; together with ſuch other Countries poſſeſſed now by that Marqueſs, as he holds by deſcent from the Heirs General of thoſe Dukedomes: which makes him caſt an eye already upon thoſe Eſtates.

There belong alſo to *Livonia*, ſome few Ilands ſituate in the *Baltick* Sea, that is to ſay, 1. *Oſilia*, 2. *Dogeden*, 3. *Mona*, 4. *Wormſe*, 5. *Wrangen*, and 6. *Kien*. Of which the four laſt do belong to the King of *Poland*; *Dacuden*, *Dogeden*, to the King of *Suethland*; and *Oſilia* or *Oeſel*, to the *Dane*. This laſt the chief of all the ſix, diſtant from the main land of *Livonia*, 12 *Dutch* miles; 14 of the ſame miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns hereof being *Oſel*, a Biſhops See, which gives name to the Iland, 2. *Sunberg*. The Iland made ſubject to the *Dane* by *Magnus*, brother of *Frederick* the ſecond King of *Denmark*, who being choſen Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick of *Derpt*, in *Eſtland*, made himſelf Maſter of this *Iland*, and ſome other pieces; which, dying without iſſue, he bequeathed to the King his brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it ſelf, it was firſt under the *Levoni*, and *Eſtii*, two *German* Nations; from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the people, of *Eſtlanders* or *Eſtones*. Diſtracted into many petit principalities, it was made acquainted with the *Chriſtian* Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was ſaid. *Meinard* their firſt Biſhop being dead, and *Bertold* his Succeſſor ſlain by ſuch of the people, as had not yet received the *Goſpel*: the Knights of the *Port-glaive*, or the *ſword*, were ſent hither, to defend the Preachers and their Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themſelves too weak to effect the buſineſs, they united with the *order* of *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia*; to whom from that time forwards they became ſubordinate: the *Great Maſter* of *Livonia*, acknowledging him of *Pruſſia* for his *Superiour*. Theſe Knights continued *Maſters* of it without contradiction, till the year 1557. (embracing in the mean time the opinions of *Luther*, *Anno* 1528.) when quarrelling with the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, becauſe he would not adhere unto their opinions; who to ſecure his own eſtate, was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Moſcovite*, who had taken from them almoſt all their Country; they were fain to put themſelves under the protection of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Furſtenburg* the *Great Maſter* being betrayed by his own *Mercenaries* into the hands of the *Moſcovite*; *Gothardus* his ſucceſſor (following the example of *Albert* the *Great Maſter* of *Pruſſia*) tranſacted with the ſaid *Sigiſmund* for the whole Eſtate; which he ſurrendred to his uſe in the Caſtle of *Riga*, *March* 5. *Anno* 1562. together with his *Croſſe*, the *ſeal* of the

Or-

Samogitia, &c.

Order, the *Charters* and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperors, which concerned the ſame; as alſo the *Keies* of the City and Caſtle of *Riga*, the Office of *Great Maſter*, the rights of *coynage*, and all the powers and privileges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ruzevill* the Kings *Commiſſioner*, the Dukedome of *Curland*, to him and his heirs for ever, as before is ſaid. By this *tranſaction* the Kings of *Pole* became Maſters of *Liefland*, more abſolutely ſetled in it after a long war, betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland*, and *John Vaſilwick* the *Great Duke* of *Muſcovie*; who in the end ſurrendred all his claim therein to the ſaid *Stephen* and his Succeſſors, *Anno* 1582. reſerving only ſome few Towns on the Eaſtern borders: the *Danes*, and *Swethlanders*, taking occaſion by their troubles, to impatronize themſelves of *Narve*, *Rivallia*, *Oſel*, and ſome other pieces.

2. SAMOGITIA.

2. *SAMOGITIA* is a ſmall Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia*, and *Lituania*, having *Livonia*, on the North; *Lituania* on the Eaſt, and South; and the *Baltick* Sea upon the Weſt: in length extending 50 miles from Eaſt to Weſt, but not of anſwerable breadth. It is ſo called from the lowneſſe of the ſituation (the word *Samogits* in the language of the Inhabitants ſignifying *terram inferiorem*, or the *Lowlands*,) by the *Moſcovite* in the ſame ſenſe called *Samotzkaſemla*. This lowneſs of ſituation makes it very watery, and almoſt continually *frozen*: but withall it hath many *foreſts*, which yield unto the people aboundance of honey; better, more pleaſing to the taſt, and leſſe mixt with wax, than in other places.

The people are ſuppoſed to be of the *Saxon* race, of a good ſtature, well ſet, bold and apt for war, but withall, boyſterous, rude, and barbarous; *Chriſtians* in generall, but many who do ſtill retain their old *Idolatries*: nouriſhing amongſt them a kind of four-footed *Serpents*, about three handfulls in length, which they *worſhip* as their *Houſhold Gods*, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repaſt; and if any miſchance do happen to any of the *family*, it is imputed preſently to ſome want of due obſervation of theſe ugly Creatures. Naturally inclined to *Divinations*, *Charmes*, and *Sorceries*; and frequently abuſed (as for the moſt part ſuch people are) by *diabolical* illuſions. Nay they which profeſſe the name of *CHRIST* are ſo ill inſtructed, that they uſe to marry many wives, without conſideration of *blood* or *parentage*: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his brothers widow, and not unuſual to marry the *Relict* of their fathers, (a *fornication* not ſo much as heard of in St. *Pauls* time, amongſt the *Gentiles*.) They have ſome cuſtomes alſo, as *unprofitable*, as theſe are *heatheniſh*; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Muſcovie*, with ſpades or ſticks. And when one of their Governors obſerving the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them to the uſe of the *plough*; it fortuned that for two or three years, either by the indiſpoſition of the weather, or ſome other *accident*, they had not ſo much corn as they uſed to have. Which want, the people attributing to the uſe of the *plough*, *nec quicquam aliud in cauſa eſſe putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cauſe of it, grew ſo much incenſed, that the Governor fearing ſome ſedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like that of the preſent *Iriſh*, in ploughing with their *Horſes-tayles*, ſpoken of before. So pertinacious for the moſt part, are ignorant and ſuperſtitious people, in ſtanding to their antient cuſtomes, though abſurd and hurtfull.

Towns they hath few, their houſes for the generality being poor and low, covered with ſtraw or durt, with an hole open in the roof to let in the light. The principal of thoſe they have, (but rather Villages than Towns) are 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Swiete*, 2. *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath alwaies followed the fortunes of *Lituania*; ſubject, when that was ſo, to the Kings of *Ruſſia*; converted when that was, to the *Chriſtian* Faith; and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. LITVANIA.

LITVANIA hath on the Eaſt, the Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the Weſt, *Pruſſia*, *Maſſovia*, and *Poland*; on the North, *Livonia*, and *Samogitia*; and on the South, *Volhinia*, and *Podalia*. So called from *Lituus* the *ceremanial ſtaff*, uſed antiently by the *Augures* in their *divinations*: to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the *Goſpel*, were called *Lituani*. But this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it ſhould be peopled by ſome baniſhed *Italians*, firſt named *Italia*, then *Litalia*; and after by a moſt unlikely corruption, come to *Lituania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have it.

The Country for the moſt part full of *Moores*, Foreſts, ſome great *Lakes*, like a Sea for bigneſſe, and many navigable Rivers: which *frozen* over in the Winter, make the waies more travellable at that time of the year, than they are in ſummer. The air in moſt places exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have ſome aboundance) to be ſeldome ripe; and other fruits of the Earth to come ſlowly forward. Their foreſts yield them *Bugles*, *Ermins*, *Sables*, Deer, wild Horſes, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of cattel is leſſe here, and of ſmaller ſtature, than it is in *Germany*. Theſe Foreſts alſo are the ſtorehouſe, out of which the *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*, furniſh themſelves with timber, both for ſhips and building; returning to them in exchange ſalt, wine, and other neceſſaries, which are wanting here.

The

The people antiently had Fire, and Serpents, for their Gods; nouriſhing the laſt in their houſes, and keeping the other continually burning: the *Prieſts* and Miniſters of the Temples alwayes adding fewell, that it might not fail. The *Veſtal fire* not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater ceremonie. To this God whom they called *Diſhpan*, or the *Lord of the Smoke*, they uſed to ſacrifice young pullets; to the other, their Cocks: the ſeed of this *Idolatry* is ſo implanted in them, that it is ſaid, that in a Village of the Kings called *Lovaniski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worſhip *Serpents*. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the *Chriſtian* Faith, *An.* 1386. they yet retained ſuch cuſtomes as are inconſiſtent with *Chriſtianity*: marying, and unmarying, when, and as often as they pleaſe; no *bond* being ſo ſoon cancelled as that of *Matrimony*. For a maried man to uſe the body of an harlot is accounted, (as indeed it is) an opprobrious crime; but for the wife to have her *Stallions* and *Adulterers*, is a thing ſo ordinary and unblameable, that the husbands call them their *Co-adjutors*; and prize them far above the reſt of their Acquaintance. The common people in a miſerable ſervitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occaſion; yet muſt not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a crime deſerving death, he muſt hang himſelf as ſoon as the ſentence is ſignified to him; or elſe is beaten and tormented in ſo cruel a manner, that death at laſt is looked on as a better life. *Lituania.*

The countrey is divided into ten parts or Provinces, ſubject unto the juriſdiction of ſo many *Palatines*, that is to ſay, the *Palatine* of 1 *Vilna*, 2 *Trock*, 3 *Minsko*, 4 *Novogrod*, 5 *Breſtia*, 6 *Volhinia*, 7 *Kiovia*, 8 *Mueſlaw*, 9 *Vitebſco*, 10 *Polotzkie*. But *Novogrod*, and *Polotzkie*, being conquered by the *Great Duke* of *Muſcovie*, and added unto that eſtate; and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, not depending of it: the remaining number is but ſeven; moſt of them taking names from their principal Towns. The chief of thoſe, and others which deſerve place here, are 1 *Vilna*, a Biſhops See, equal in bigneſſe to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; ſo called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is ſeated; built there in the year 1305. by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of theſe parts: well-walled, but the gates thereof open night and day large, rich, and well frequented by forein Merchants, eſpecially by thoſe that drive the trade of *Mojcovie*, who have here their *Hall*; one of the chief ornaments of the City. They have in it alſo ſome Churches built of ſtone (but the moſt of wood;), the principal whereof is the Monaſtery of S. *Bernard*, which is a very comely ſtructure. The *Natives* call this Town *Vilenski*; the *Dutch*, *Die Wilde*. Situate in the very heart of the countrey, the longeſt day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter: whereas in the moſt ſouthern parts of the countrey, it is but 16; and in the moſt northern, not fully 18. 2 *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, ſituate on the *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, where the River *Deſna* falls into it: heretofore a beautifull and moſt ſtately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which ſome remain unto this day; the ruines of the reſt to be traced out amongſt ſhrubs and buſhes, the receptacles of wild beaſts. The ſeat at that time of the *Metropolitan* of the *Ruſſian* Empire; containing alſo under his juriſdiction the countreys of *Walachia*, in *Dacia*; and *Nigra Ruſſia*, in *Poland*. But being deſtroyed by *Bathu* or *Boydo* the *Tartarian*, in the conqueſt of theſe parts by that people; it never could come neer its former luſtre: yet ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his *Metropolitan*; and conſequently of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. 3 *Grodna*, on the River *Chronus*, the chief Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* K. of *Poland*. 4 *Grumwald*, more memorable for the great defeat given near it, by *Jagello* the Duke of *Lituania* and King of *Poland* to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* knights invading this Province: ſo confident of their ſucceſſe in the undertaking, that they brought with them aboundance of *chains* and *torches*; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a *Chriſtian*, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained ſouldiers ſo tamed their pride, that he ſlew 40000 of them; never recovered of that blow whilſt their *Order* ſtood. 5 *Ponsko*, in the Palatinate of *Breſt*; 6 *Klow*, reckoned a countrey of it ſelf; and 7 *Striſſin*, fortified with a Caſtle, both under the Palatine of *Mieſlaw*. The reſt of the chief Towns may be known by the *Palatinates*, which they give their names to; but not elſe obſervable.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorſi*, *Pagarini*, *Savari*, tribes of the *Sarmatæ Europæi*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became ſubject to the Kings of *Ruſsia*; till the breaking of that kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvill*, then their Prince, (but an *Homager* and *Tributary* to the *Ruſsians*) withdrew himſelf from their command; as did alſo many others of the conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a *Chriſtian*, was by Pope *Innocent* the third honoured with the title of a King; but returning again unto his vomit, he loſt that title. In the end, *Anno* 1386. *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, marying with *Heduigis* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three conditions choſen King of that Realm. 1 That he ſhould immediately receive the *Chriſtian Faith*; 2ly, That he ſhould draw all his ſubjects to the ſame *belief*; and 3ly, That he ſhould unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of theſe the two firſt were performed without any delay; though the ſecond not without ſome difficulty; the people being obſtinate in their old *Idolatry*, eſpecially in the religious conceit they had of *high trees*; which to cut down was held both unſafe and impious. Not to be weaned from this conceit, till by the authority of the King their *loftieſt trees* were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they ſaw done without any danger to the Prince; or any of thoſe whom he employed in that ſervice; *Regis mandato & autoritate cedere caperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his commands, and generally received the Goſpel, and were *Baptized*. In the laſt point there was a longer time of deliberation. For the Princes of the houſe of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themſelves of their *Patrimonial* eſtate, which was *hereditary*

unto

Volhinia.

unto their posterity; and to subject it to the election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their family might be pretermitted: deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lituanians* would revolt, if they went about it. But *Sigismund Augustus*, in whose person the male issue of *Jagello* failed, foreseeing what divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Moscovites* would renew their old pretensions, united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the *Bishops*, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chastellans* by him established, should have their place and suffrage in the *Great Council* of *Poland*; power in the chusing of the King, and all other *privileges* which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that, accounted a chief Member of that *Body Politick*: subject to those corruptions, changes, and innovations in matters of *Religion*, which have been predominant in the other; excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece* or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the rites thereof.

4. *VOLHINIA.*

VOLHINIA, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania*, (as once it was) but by others, a distinct Province of it self; is bounded on the North and East, with *Lituania*; on the South, with *Podolia*; and on the West, with *Russia Nigra*, and *Podlassia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who dwelling on the banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this countrey, calling it *Volgaria*; whence by degrees it came unto *Volwonia*, and at last to *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The countrey yeelds good plenty both of grain and fruits, *Pools* which abound with very good fish, Forests which do afford them store of game and honey; and much good pasturage for their cattel. The people of the same nature with the *Lituanians*, but more strong, and warlike; and better weaned from their old superstitions and *heathenish* customes, than the others are. Of the same language and *Religion* with those of *Russia*; to which, together with the rest of *Lituania*, it did once belong: It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it; that is to say, 1 *Luzke*, in *Latine* called *Luceozia*, a town of above 1000 families, where 127 onely, in the time of my Author, were of the *Romish* Religion; the residue being *Russians*, *Grecians*, and some *Armenians*: the seat and residence of two Bishops, of which one being of the *Communion* of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemburg*, in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his *Metropolitan*. 2 *Valodomir*, a Bishops See also, of the same condition. 3 *Keromenze*, which (as the rest) hath under it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole once part of *Lituania*, as before was said; but of late dismembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State distinct. But so, that the greatest part of it is immediately subject to the Duke of *Ostrogoye*, who is said to have 4000 *Feudataries* in this Countrey; the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. *PODOLIA.*

PODOLIA hath on the North, *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*; on the South, *Moldavia*, from which parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Niester*; on the West, *Russia Nigra*; extending Eastward through vast uninhabited countries, as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no where guessed at; the people for the most part of the same nature and original with the *Russians*, to whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gained (if such a subjection as they give the King, may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such times as the *Russes* were in thralled to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Countrey generally so fertile, that the husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one ploughing for three years together: the countreyman being put to no further trouble, than at the end of the first and second years, to shake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls, serving as seed for the next year following. The meadow grounds so strangely rich, and luxuriant, and the grasse so high, that a man can hardly see the heads or horns of his Cattel: of so swift a growth, that in three days it will cover a rod which is thrown into it, and in few more so hide a *plough*, that it is not an easie work to find it. If these things seem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the *miracle*, the ground in most places so hard and stony, that there need six yoke of Oxen to break it up: to the great toyl both of the Cattel and the men. It is also said, that in this countrey there are great flocks of sheep, many herds of Oxen, abundance of wild beasts, and great store of honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited; by reason of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it. Who have so wasted it in times past, and thereby so discouraged the people from building, planting, and all other works of peace and husbandry; that in so large and rich a Country, there is nothing to be seen but some scattered houses, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, *viz.* 1 *Orczakow*, at the influx of the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* sea. 2 *Vaszow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3 *Braclaw*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4 *Camienecz*, on the borders of *Russia nigra*, built by some divine hand, as it were, amongst the precipices of high and inaccessible Rocks; and so well fortified withall, that it is impregnable: as is apparent by the many and great repulses, which

the

the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians*, have received before it, with much ſhame and loſſe. 5 *Lemburg*, remarkable for the ſawces or ſalt-meats, which they ſend thence into other Countries. *Ruſſia Nigra, &c.*

6. RVSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the Eaſt, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Molldavia*; on the Weſt, *Mazovia*, and *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called; on the North, *Lituania*, and *Podlaſsia*; and on the South, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian Mountains*. It is called alſo *Roxolania* from the *Roxolani*, a chief people of *Sarmatia Europæa*, and by ſome *Ruthenia*: but generally *Ruſſia*, from the *Roſsi* ſpoken of before, in the Empire of *Ruſsia*, who ſpread themſelves over all theſe parts. Some hold that it was firſt called *Roſſeia*, which ſignifieth in the *Sclavonian* language, a *ſcattered Nation*, or a Nation diſſeminated, and diſperſed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that ſpake the *Sclavonian* tongue, and followed the *religion* and rites of the Church of *Greece*: extended from the *frozen* Seas to the *Adriatique*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This, and a greater tract of ground, I grant to have been heretofore poſſeſſed by divers Nations, under the name of *Sclavonians*; a very conſiderable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Ruſsia*, given at firſt to all the *Ruſsian* Empire, diſtinguiſhed now into *Ruſsia Alba*, and *Ruſsia Nigra*, I *adhere* unto my *former Vote*; conceiving that it came from the *Roſsi*, an *Armenian* people, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864. or thereabouts, attempted the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and after placed themſelves on the Northern banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Sclavonians* to the North and Eaſt, till they had made themſelves maſters of all *Ruſsia Alba*, *Lituania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Ruſsia Nigra*. Diſtinguiſhed from the former by the *adjunct* of *Nigra*, after the deſtruction of that great *Empire*, by the coming in of the *Tartars*; either from the colour of their garments, or their black and more ſouthernly complexion. In which regard called alſo *Ruſsia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Ruſsia*.

The Country is generally fruitful, abounding in Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: ſuch ſtore of Bees, that they breed not only in *Hives* and *hollow Trees*, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of fiſh; more naturally ſpawning here than in other places; inſomuch, that if a Pond be digged, and ſpring accordingly, the fiſh will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other waters. The greateſt want hereof is wine, either ſupplyed with *Mede*, or from other places. And it is ſaid, that in the Territory of *Chelme*, the branches of the *Pine trees* left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into ſtone.

The people are generally valiant, and ſo ſtrong of body, that they uſe Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the kings of *Poland* to ſend Colonies of natural *Polonians*, into moſt parts of the Country: inſomuch as moſt of the Knights and *Gentry* of it are of that extraction, and follow the religion of the Church of *Rome*; the *Paiſants* and original inhabitants of it, being more generally affected to the Rites and doctrines of the Church of *Greece*

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Chelme*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed, that the branches of Pine trees left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to ſtone. 2. *Premiſten*, 3. *Halitz*, 4. *Belzo*, 5. *Grodeck*, and 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Moſcovite*; a Town of great traffique, and an Archbiſhops See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Moſco* hath here alſo an Archbiſhop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it ſelf, and all *Ruſsia* generally (as before was ſaid) which are of the communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are alſo in this City ſome *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Biſhop, and ſome Prieſts of their own *religion*.

Of the affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Ruſsian* Empire, hath been ſaid already. Diſmembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or *Provincial* Governours, ſubject and tributary unto thoſe Barbarians: as had alſo *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by ſtrong hand, and the power of *Garriſons*. But being upon all occaſions apt to revolt, by reaſon of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom treated rather like *ſlaves* than *ſubjects*:) they were aſſured unto the State, by giving them the ſame *liberties* and *immunities*, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made fellow-members of that Common-wealth. The Act of *Ladiſlaus* the 6th. the ſon of *Jagello*, imitating therein the antient *Romans*; who much augmented their forces, and aſſured their Eſtate, by communicating the *freedom* of *Rome*, and the privileges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces: and was herein imitated by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and *Stephen*, his ſucceſſours, in their incorporating of *Pruſſia*, *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lituania*; on the Weſt, with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with *Pruſſia*, and *Podlaſsia*; on the South, with *Ruſsia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maſſo*, one of the Dukes hereof; who in the year 1045. being vanquiſhed by *Caſimire* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Pruſsia*, and there unfortunately dyed.

The Country large, and for the moſt part full of woods, where they find ſtore of *Bugles*, and wild Buls. The people ſtrong, valiant, and couragious in war; differing little from the *Polonians* in ſpeech, manners, or apparel, ſave that they uſe a kind of whiſtling, which the others do not. The prin-

Podlaſsia, &c.

principal Towns of it, are 1. *Marſchow*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the reſidence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the beſt *Mede*, or *Metheglin*. 2. *Egrod Czirko*, 3. *Poltowoskie*, 4. *Gadziek*, 5. *Lozara*, 6. *Droic*, the ſeat of a *Palatine*, but not elſe obſervable.

This Province was once ſubject to Princes of its own, not ſubject or ſubordinate unto any *Superior*. Of which number that *Maſſo* was one, from whom named *Maſſovia*. In the years 1246. and 1260. being ſtrangely waſted and diſtreſſed by *Mindey* Duke of *Lituania*; they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Polander*: by whom made the portion of the ſecond ſon of that Kingdom. But *John*, and *Staniſlaus*, the two laſt Dukes hereof, dying without iſſue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*; by whom incorporate to that Crown, and privileged in the election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, *Anno* 1526.

8. *PODLASSIA.*

PODLASSIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Volhinia*; on the Weſt, with *Pruſsia*; on the North, with *Lituania*; and on the South, with *Maſſovia*, and *Ruſsia Nigra*. The reaſon of the name I know not. The Country not much differing from thoſe before; the people a mixt generation of *Ruſſes*, *Moſcovites*, and *Polonians*, partake a little of the manners and garb of thoſe ſeveral Nations, from which they lineally are deſcended.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Bielsko*, 2 *Brunsko*, 3 *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4 *Tykdiskin*, ſtrongly fortified and well garriſoned, as being the place where the Kings Treaſures are kept. 5. *Knyſsin*, beautified with a royal Palace and a pleaſant Park; wherein are ſtore of wild beaſts for hunting, and fiſh-ponds very well repleniſhed. 6 *Narew*, 7. *Vaſilkow*, and 8 *Auguſtow*, a very ſtrong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and by him thus named, *Anno* 1569. at what time he diſmembred this Province from *Lituania*, to which before it appertained; uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. *PRVSSIA.*

PRUSSIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lituania*, and *Podlaſsia*; on the Weſt, with *Pomerania*; on the North, with the *Baltick* ſea; and on the South, with *Poland*, and *Maſſovia*. Called firſt *Boruſsia* from the *Boruſsi*, who ſubdued it (of whom more anon;) which by an eaſie alteration was changed into *Pruſsia*, by which name ſtill called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Dantzick* in the Weſt, to *Labian* on the mouth of the *Maillank*, Eaſt; for the ſpace of 50 *Poliſh* miles: and from *Torune* bordering on *Maſſovia*, to *Memel* in the confines of *Lituania*, 58 miles of the ſame meaſure. The air thereof very mild and temperate, the ſoil both profitable and pleaſant; full of *Lakes* and *Rivers* ſtored with fiſh, plentiful of corn and other neceſſaries, and well clad with Foreſts, which yield them game for hunting, rich skins for profit, and abundance of honey. Of which laſt they make *Mede* for their own uſe, (their ordinary drink where there is no wine) and ſell the reſt unto the Merchant. But the commodity wherein they do excell their neighbours, is their plenty of *Amber*, which is the juice of a ſtone which groweth like a *Coral* in a Mountain of theſe *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water; and ſhunned by Mariners three leagues off, for fear of Shipwrack: the Mountain reaſonable large, about 50 yards high of *Engliſh* meaſure. And when any tempeſt riſeth in theſe Northern Seas, eſpecially in *September* and *December*, the *liquor* by violence thereof is rent from the rock, and caſt into divers Havens, and on divers Coaſts of this Countrey, and ſometimes upon thoſe of *Sweden*, and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth moſt, whence they take up firſt ſome ſtore of weeds, after that this *Liquor*; which being taken out of the water hardneth like to *Coral*. Beſides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting ſtraws and iron, as the *Adamant* doth; burning like pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for ſtopping bloud, all kind of Agues, falling-ſickneſſe, dropſies, ſtone, collick, weakneſſe of ſtomach, head-ach, and the yellow jaundiſe.

The people, eſpecially the Gentry, deſcend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature: having more art and induſtry than the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their antient cuſtoms. Idolaters for long time together, converted firſt unto the Faith, in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the 2d. by whoſe ſetting on they were ſubdued by the order of the *Dutch* Knights, *An.* 1215. and either won or forced to the *Chriſtian* Faith. As *Chriſtians*, governed ſince the plantation of the Goſpel, by the Biſhops of *Culme*, *Warme*, *Sambia*, and *Pomeſan*, ſuffragans to the Archbiſhop of *Gueſna*: under whom thoſe parts of it doe ſtill continue, which have not yet forſaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other ſeparate Congregations diſtinct from them, having their own *forms* both of doctrine and diſcipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered, than this is, both for *Lakes* and *Rivers*: ſome of the Lakes 7. *Dutch* miles in compaſſe, and well ſtored with fiſh. The Rivers 12. in number, that is to ſay, 1 The *Viſtula*, 2 *Chronus*, 3 *Nogat*, 4 *Elbing*, 5 *Vaſera*, 6 *Paſſaria*, 7 *Alla*, 8 *Pregel*, 9 *Oſſa*, 10 *Drebnicz*, 11 *Lica*, and 12 *Lavia*, all plentifully ſtoted with fiſh; beſides a large Sea-coaſt both for trade and fiſhing, no ſmall commodity to the Natives.

The Country formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (ſo they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the induſtry of the *Dutch Knights* ſo adorned and beautified (after they had once brought it under their obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Caſtles, and 62 good Towns of their foun-

dation.

dation. Which number being much increased in these later times, hath made it the most flourishing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the *Order* of these Knights being suppressed in this Country, by an agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the last *great Master* of the *Order*; both Town and Country are divided between the Successors of the said *Albert*, as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or divisions of *Hogerland*, *Warme*, *Galnidia*, *Micklow*, *Calmigeria*, with the City of *Mariemberg*, the Soveraignty of *Dantzick*, and *Melvin*, with the whole Country of *Pomerella*, lying on the West-side of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue containing the divisions of *Schalavonia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomesania* (except the City and Territory of *Mariemberg*) to the Dukes of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke, are 1. *Mimel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart Town for the commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the forein Merchant: part of this Province interposing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Coningsberg*, as the *Dutch*; *Regimont*, as the *French*; and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulph or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch Knights* in the year 1260, and made an University by *Albert*, the first Duke hereof, 1525. the seat and principal residence of his successors; as also of the Bishops of *Sambia*, in *Latine* called *Sambiensis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch Knights*, *Anno* 1279. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South side of that bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I guesse, by some of the *great Masters* of that family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the furthest Town of note towards *Lituania*. 6. *Angersburg*, in *Sclavonia*; as was also *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg* in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ottelburg* in *Galnidia*, of which little memorable. 9. *Marienwerder*, the furthest of the Dukes estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary residence of the Bishop of *Pomesan*. Besides which, there are reckoned in this division, 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Castles, though not of much observation in the course of story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are 1. *Braunsburg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, which they call *Frisch Haffe*; a Town of good trade by reason of the commodious Haven; and the ordinary residence of the Bishop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frawenburg*, on the same Bay, not far from *Braunsburg*. 3. *Elbinge*, on the same Bay, not far from a fair and fishfull Lake; well-traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants. 4. *Resel*, the chief Town of the Dioceese and Dukedom of *Warmie*. 5. *Strasburg*, in *Micklow*, confining on *Poland*, specially so called; at the siege whereof by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1628. *Elias Tripe*, one of the *Engineers* of that King, found out the use of *Leather Ordnance*, which afterwards did that King great service in the wars of *Germany*. 6. *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishops See. 7. *Mariemburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch Knights*, *Anno* 1302. and made the seat of the *Great Masters* of their *Order*, translated first from *Ptolemais*, or *Acon* in *Syria*, to the City of *Venice*; from thence to *Marpurg*; and at last to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth *Great Master* of it: whose constant residence in this Town, occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built city, the chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by whom so well garrisoned, and furnished with such store of victuals, ammunition, and other necessaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a six years siege. But it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in lesse space than so many months; on the setling of a peace betwixt the Crowns, rendred again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleasant Iland, made by the *Nagot* and the *Wixell*; for the fertility of the soil, and the great number of houses, Villages, and people, not equalled (for the muchnesse of it) in all this Country. 8. *Newburg*, on the West side of the *Vistula*, or *Wixel*, in the Country called *Pomerella*; once part of *Pomerania*, but given by *Suantibore* Duke of *Pomeren*, *Anno* 1107. to *Bugeslaus* his second son: whose posterity enjoyed it till the year 1295. when *Mestevin* the 2d dying without issue male, gave it to *Primislaus*, D. of the *Polonians*, whose successors have ever since enjoyed it by that donation. 9. *Dirschaw*, or *Darsaw*, (in *Latine Darsovia*) a well-fortified Town, and of great importance, on the same side of the River, and the same Country of *Pomerella*. 10. *Dantzick*, in *Latine* called *Dantiscum*, and sometimes *Gedanum*, situate on the same side of the *River* also, a fair and well-built City, the houses for the most part of brick, and the rest of stone, raised with great beauty and magnificence six or seven floores high: beautified with a fair Council-house for affairs of State, and many publick gardens for disport and exercise. It consisteth of three Cities, governed by as many *Senates*; the one called *Furstat*, or the fore-City, the second *Altstat*, or the old City, and the third *Reichstat*, or the Emperours City; but all encompassed with one wall, and governed by one chief *Senate*, or Common-Council chosen out of all three. A Bishops See, and the second in esteem and rank, of all the *Hanse-Towns*; of so great trade, and such a noted *Granary* of all sorts of corn issued from hence to supply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 measures of wheat (besides other commodities in proportion) are here dayly sold. Heretofore it was reckoned as *Imperial*, but now esteemed a *Free-Estate*, acknowledging the Kings of *Poland* for their *Protectors*; to whom they allow many *customs* upon their merchandise, and permit his Officers to abide there for receiving of them. The first Town in the Kingdom of *Poland*, which gave entrance to the doctrines of *Luther*, *Anno* 1525. but in so tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his opinions, deposed the old Common-Council-men and created new ones of their own; prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their ornaments, and shamefully abused the *Priests*, and *Religious* persons, abolished the *Masse*, and altered all things at their pleasure. But by the coming of the King they grew somewhat quieter; Having one Convent of *Black Friers*, and two of *Nuns*, who still enjoy the exercise of their *Religion*. 11. *Melvin*, a noted Port Town, and of great resort, especially by the *English* Merchants, who had here their *Staple* for the *Baltick*

Pruſsia. *tick.* A ſmall, but fair, and well-built City, and fortified with a very good wall, governed like *Dansk*, after the manner of a free Eſtate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and protection of the Kings of *Poland*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the moſt potent Nation of this tract, extended all along the coaſt of the *Baltick*; from them by *Ptolemie* called *Sinus Venedicus*: containing under them the *Gythones*, *Phinni*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungud.ones*, *Avarini*; and more within the land, the *Sudini* and *Galindæ*, whoſe name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth ſtill retain. But great and potent though they were, they were ſubdued by the *Boruſſi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphean* Mountains: who weary of their own cold and barren dwellings, removed into the Weſtern parts; and vanquiſhing the *Venedi*, and thoſe other Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, which they called *Boruſsia*, now by us named *Pruſsia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes, having 12 ſons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every ſon: continuing by that means diſtracted into divers petit principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, ſent hither by *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1215. by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michlow*, and the greateſt part of *Nadravia*, were laid waſt and deſolate; the reſt ſubmitted to their power, and received the Goſpel. After this it continued ſubject to this order of Knights, till the year 1419. when weary of their extortion, and the continual change of *Maſters*, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their obedience: ſeconded by the yeelding up of *Mariemberg*, with many other Towns and Caſtles, ſold to King *Caſimir* by the Garriſon Souldiers, *Anno* 1457 for 476000 *Florens*. But the *Knights* diſdaining to be ſo dealt withall, and refuſing to ſwear allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open war; managed with variable ſucceſſe on both ſides; *Ludovicus* the then *Great Maſter*, being ſo ſucceſſefull at the firſt, that he once beat the King out of the field, routed his whole Army, ſlew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: not vanquiſhed at laſt, but by the treachery and rebellion of his own people. In the end wearied and worn out on both ſides by continual wars, *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, then *Great Maſter*, having for 14 years together courageouſly maintained the honour of his *Order*; and for the four laſt years importuned in vain the aſſiſtance of the Emperour and Princes of *Germanie*: began to think of ſome expedient to compound the buſineſs. Being inclined to *Luthers* doctrines, and willing to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate; he ſecretly practiſed with *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, to end the war to the advantage of both parties. By whom at laſt it was agreed, that *Albert* ſhould relinquiſh his *Order*, and ſurrender all *Pruſsia* into the hands of the King; that the King poſſeſſing the Weſtern parts with the Town of *Mariemberg*, and the Soveraignty of *Dansk*, and *Melvin*, ſhould inveſt *Albert*, with the Title of Duke of *Pruſsia*, eſtating on him and the heirs of his body, the whole Eaſtern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedomes before ſpecified; and finally, that *Albert* and his heirs ſhould hold the ſaid Eſtate, as *Homagers* to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all *Aſſemblies* at the Kings right hand. According to this agreement, *Anno* 1525. *Albert*, attired in the compleat Habit of *Maſter* of the *Dutch Order*, preſents himſelf humbly on his knees, before King *Sigiſmund* at *Cracow*, the King then ſitting on his Throne. The King raiſing him from the ground, cauſed him to put off thoſe robes, and attire himſelf in a *Ducal Habit*; which done, an inſtrument was read and publiſhed, whereby the King conferred upon him and the heirs of his body, the Dukedom of *Pruſsia*, to be held of him and his Succeſſors Kings of *Poland*. An act at which the whole *Order* were extremely incenſed; but they could not help it: and thereupon retired into *Germanie*, where there were ſome good lands left, to maintain ſuch of them as had no mind to quit that *militarie honour*: leaving their old Eſtates in *Pruſsia* to the King, and the Duke; whoſe ſucceſſors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

DUKES of *PRUSSIA*.

1525 1 *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, ſon of *Frederick* Marqueſſe of *Onalsbach*, or *Ausbach*, created *Maſter* of the *Order* by the Emperour *Maximilian*, *Anno* 1511. and the firſt Duke of *Pruſsia*, by *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, *Anno* 1525. founded the Univerſity of *Conings-berg*, *Anno* 1544.

1568 2 *Albert Frederick*, ſon of *Albert* the firſt Duke, maried *Mary Eleanor*, daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, *&c.*

3 *Anne*, Eldeſt daughter of Duke *Albert Frederick*, Dutcheſſe of *Pruſsia*, brought the Eſtate in mariage to

4 *John Sigiſmund*, Marqueſſe and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, confirmed therein by *Sigiſmund* the 3d. of *Poland*, pretending an *Eſcheat* thereof for want of heirs males of the body of *Albert* the firſt Duke.

5 *George William*, Marqueſſe and Electour of *Brandenbourg*, in right of his Father; Duke of *Pruſsia*, in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother; and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by deſcent from *Mary Eleanor* his Grandmother.

6 *Frederick William*, ſon of *George William*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, Duke of *Pruſsia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*; of whole inveſtiture in the Dukedom of *Pomeren*, and other large and goodly Signeuries, we have ſpoke elſewhere.

As for the Government of this Province, ſtanding thus divided, that of the Duke is more *Monarchical* than that of King; the one being abſolute and uncontrollable in his Eſtates, the other ſubject

to

to the great *Council* of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, *Delegates* appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal justice, either at *Mariemberg* or *Elbing*, do compound the busines: who together with some other of the Dukes nomination, receive all *Appeals*, in which the Duke is interessed as one of the parties. *Poland.*

The *Revenues* of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 *Ducats* yearly.

The Arms thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, Membred and Crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10 POLAND.

POLAND, properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Massovia*, *Podlasia*, and *Lituania*; on the West, with *Silesia*, and the Marquisate of *Brandenbourg*; on the North, with *Prussia*; and on the South, with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* miles, 300 of the same miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is said) from the word *Pole*, signifying as much as *plain*; the Country being *plain* and level, little swelled with hils.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but sharp and cold; the Country *plain*, shaded with thick dark woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild beasts for hunting, and of Bees for honey, which they have here in great abundance: together with such plenty of grain, but of *Rie* especially, by reason of the continual breaking up of new grounds gained out of the *Forests*, that it may be called the *Granary* or Store-house of the *Western* parts of *Europe*; sent down the *Wixel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence transported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their several wants.

The Character of the people we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of war they are stout and resolute: so forwards in giving the charge and pursute of the enemy, that *John Vasilowich* the *Great Duke* of *Moscovie*, comparing them with the Souldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to say, that the *Moscovites wanted a spur to drive them forwards*; *and the Polanders had need of a bridle to hold them back*: Their language is the *Sclavonian* tongue; most generally spoken also in the rest of the Provinces; but with some difference in the *dialect* or pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the *Greater* and the *Lesser Poland*. The *Greater* lying wholly on the Western side of the *Wixel*, and so accounted antiently as a part of *Germany*, contains 9 divisions, under the jurisdiction of the *9 Palatines* of 1. *Posna*, 2. *Kalisch*, 3. *Siradia*, 4. *Lancitia*, 5. *Uladislaw*, 6. *Brestus*, 7. *Rava*, 8. *Ploczko*, and *9 Dobrzin*: each of them so called from some Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the rest contained in them, are 1 *Posna*, a Bishops See, and the principal of the *Greater Poland*, seated amongst hills on the River *Warta*; built of free-stone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River; but much subject unto inundations, which add much strength unto the place: of great resort by reason of the *Marts* or *Fairs* holden twice a year. 2. *Koscien*, situate amongst *Marishes*, and fortified with a double wall. 3. *Ostresow*, bordering on *Silesia*, begirt with woods. 4. *Guesna*, the antientest Town of *Poland*, founded by *Lechus* their first Prince, the seat of him and his successors, till removed to *Cracow*: situate in *Kalisch*, and by old prescription, the first place for the inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*; in regard that here Prince *Boleslaus* the King, received the *Regal Diadem* at the hands of *Otho* the third. The Town well-walled, and the See of the Archbishop; who is the *Primate* of the kingdom, by antient privilege the *Popes Legat* for all *Sarmatia Europæa*, and in the absence of the King or *interregnums*, the *Vicar General* of the kingdom, having power to summon the *Diets*, to conclude and publish their Decrees. 5. *Petrocow*, a walled Town, in the *Palatinate* or division of *Siradia*, situate on a *moorish* soil; the place in former times of the General *Diets*, since removed to *Warsaw*. 6. *Uladislaw* on the *Wexel* or *Vistula*, a Bishops See. 7. *Bedgost*, a walled Town on the *Bard*, a navigable River; conveying the Merchandise of these parts into the *Vistula*. 8. *Kruswick*, in *Brestv*, built of wood, standing on a great Lake named *Gopla*, in the Castle whereof *Popiclus* the second Duke of *Poland*, was after a strange manner devoured with Rats, swarming out of the Lake. 9. *Ploczko*, upon the *Vistula*, a walled Town, and a Bishops See, with a Castle to it. 10. *Warsaw*, upon the banks of the same River: of no great note in former times, but of late grown the best-frequented and most traded Town in all this Province: honoured for the most part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publique Diets (removed from *Petrocow*, to this place) and the Transaction of all businesses both of peace and war; which must needs draw to it great resort of all sorts of people; the fruitfullnesse of the soil, and commodiousnesse of the situation rendring it very capable of those publique meetings. 11. *Mlawa*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Prussia*.

The *LESSER POLAND* lying on the South of the *Greater*, and divided by the River *Wixel*, comprehendeth only three divisions, under the Government of the Palatines of *Cracow*, 2. *Sendomir*, and *Lublin*. Principal Cities of the which, are 1. *Cracow*, upon the *Wixel*, (called in *Latine Cracovia*) a Bishops See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the seat of the Prince, and the Sepulture of the former Kings. By *Ptolemy* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double wall (of the old fashion) a deep ditch, the Castle of *Vanel* situate on the top of an high rock; and beautified with an University, or general study of good Arts and Sciences. The buildings are more fair than elsewhere in *Poland*, of free stone, and four stories high; but for the most part covered with *Shingles*, or tiles of wood: in the midst a large *market-place*, in form quadrangular; and in the middle of that the *Common-Council* house, about which are many shops of Merchants. On one side of it standeth the *Cathedral* Church; and on the East-side of the City, the *Palace Royal*, high seated on an hill overlooking both the Town and Countrey: fair and well built, of form somewhat near a *Quadrangle*, but lying open to the

South without any buildings above the wall; affording thereby to the *Gallery*, being on the North side of the Castle, the more excellent prospect. 2 *Lelow*, a walled Town with a Castle, on the River *Bialo*. 3 *Sendomir*, a walled Town with a Castle also, seated on a hill, under which the *Vistula* or *Wixel*. 4. *Wislicza*, a walled town amongst Marishes, encompassed with the River *Nid*. 5 *Lublin*, a walled Town, but more strongly fortified by the *marishes* and waters, with which environed: remarkable for three yearly *Marts*, drawing hither Merchants from most parts adjoyning, as also *Muscovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, and *Grecians*: the *Jews*, inhabiting the greatest part of the suburbs, have here their *Synagogue*; making the Town, especially at time of those *Marts*, a *medley* of all Nations and Religions. 6 *Casimir*, on the *Wixell*, so named from the founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Arii*, *Helveronæ*, *Elysii*, and the *Naharvali*, parts of the *Suevi Lygii* spoken of by *Tacitus*; all of them lying on the *Dutch* side of the *Wixel*, by consequence, within the bounds of the antient *Germany*: the people of all the rest of the Provinces before described, being of the *Sarmatian* race, next neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in persons, customs, or conditions. But these dispersed and scattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, being united in the common name of *Sclaves*, part of them setled in that part which we now call *Poland*; at that time reckoned and accompted of as a part of *Germany*. The time of their first comming hither, and the manner of their government when first setled here, is not very well known. But for the first it is most certain, that it was some time, and that not long after the death of *Mauritius* the Eastern Emperour: and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who fled his countrey for a murder, with his brother *Zechius*, they setled into a more constant form of *Government*, than before they did. For *Lechus*, seeing his brothers good successe in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince, passed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as cheerfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof: who looked upon him as a Prince of their own *extraction*, and without quarrel or competition, submitted themselves to his commands, *Anno* 650. or thereabouts. Of this there is good *constat* amongst our Authors. But neither the names or number of his successors do occur in story, till the time of *Crocus*, the founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the *Legislator* of this people. After this, the succession of their Princes, and the successe of their affairs, becomes more certain: the Estate hereof being much improved, by the conquest of many *Sarmatian* countreys; all which together constitute and make up the kingdom of *Poland*; so called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The summ of their affairs is this. The posterity of *Crocus* failing in *Popielus* the second, *Piastus* is elected Duke, the Princes from that time forwards becoming *Elective*, but alwayes with respect to the next of bloud. In the time of *Miecislaus*, son of *Nemomyslus*, they received the *Gospel*, *Anno* 963. *Boleslaus* the son of *Miecislaus*, was the first who had the title of a King, conferred upon him by the Emperour *Otho* the third, about the year 1001. relinquished by *Uladislaus* the first, and not resumed again till the time of *Primislaus*, Duke of *Posna*, Anno 1300. after which perpetual. In the person of this *Primislaus*, *Pomerella* is united to the state of *Poland*, Anno 1295. In that of *Jagello*, or *Uladislaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lituania*; incorporated into this body as a Member of it, in the time of *Sigismund Augustus*. By *Uladislaus* the sixt, son of *Jagello*, *Podolia* and *Russia Nigra*, are also added; by *Sigismund* the first, *Prussia* and *Massovia*; *Podlassia* by *Sigismund Augustus*, who also took *Volhinia* out of *Lituania*: by *Stephen*, the actual possession of the greatest part of *Livonia*; by *Sigismund* the third, a title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this Order.

DUKES and KINGS of *POLAND*.

A. Ch.

649 1 *Lechus* of *Croatia*, the first Duke; whose posterity failing, twelve *Palatines* were chosen to direct affairs, and the state became *Aristocratical*.
2 *Crocus*, the *Legislator* of *Poland*.
3 *Lechus* II. son of *Crocus*.
4 *Venda*, the daughter of *Crocus*, and sister of *Lechus* the second.
5 *Lescus* the first,
6 *Lescus* II.
7 *Lescus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the great.
8 *Popielus*, son of *Lescus* the third.
9 *Popielus* II. devoured in most horrid manner by *rats* and *mice*, together with his wife and children; the last of the posterity or house of *Crocus*.
800 10 *Piastus*, the first Duke *elected*.
11 *Zemovitus*, son of *Piastus*.
12 *Lescus* IV. son of *Zemovitus*.
13 *Nemomyslus*, son of *Lescus* the fourth.
14 *Miecislaus*, son of *Nemomyslus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Polonians*, founded the Bishopricks of *Cracow* and *Guesna*.
1000 15 *Boleslaus*, son of *Miecislaus*, the first who had the title of King conferred on him by *Otho* the third.
1025 16 *Miecislaus* II. son of *Boleslaus*.
1041 17 *Casimir*, son of *Miecislaus*.

1059 18 *Bo-*

1059 18 *Boleslaus* II. ſon of *Caſimir*, depoſed, and dyed an Exile in *Hungary*.
1082 19 *Uladislaus*, brother of *Boleslaus* the ſecond, abandoned the title of King, and only uſed that of *Prince* or *Duke*.
1103 20 *Boleslaus* III. ſon of *Uladislaus*, Duke of *Poland*.
1140 21 *Uladislaus* II. ſon of *Boleslaus* the third, outed by his Brethren, and at laſt eſtated in *Sileſia*; united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.
1146 22 *Boleslaus* IV. brother of *Uladislaus* the ſecond.
1174 23 *Miecislaus* III. brother of *Boleslaus* and *Uladislaus*, depoſed by his brother *Caſimir*.
1178 24 *Caſimir* II. brother of the three laſt Princes.
1195 25 *Leſcus* V. ſon of *Caſimir* the ſecond, depoſed by *Miecislaus* the third.
1203 26 *Uladislaus* III. ſon of *Miecislaus* the third, depoſed by *Leſcus* the fift; who again ſeiſed on the Eſtate.
1243 27 *Boleslaus* V. ſurnamed *Pudicus*.
1280 28 *Leſcus* VI. ſurnamed *Niger*, the adopted ſon of *Boleslaus*, and his *Couſin German* once removed; after whoſe death, *Anno* 1289. the eſtate being diſtracted into many factions, was for ſome time without a Prince: ſetled at laſt on
1295 29 *Primiſlaus*, ſurnamed *Poſthumus*, Duke of *Poſna*, who again aſſumed the name of *King*; continued ever ſince by his ſucceſſors.
1296 30 *Uladiſlaus*, ſurnamed *Loctticus*, brother of *Leſcus Niger*, outed by *Wenceſlans* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1300. after whoſe death, *Anno* 1306. he reſumed the eſtate.
1333 31 *Caſimir* III. ſurnamed the *Great*, ſon of *Uladiſlaus* the fourth, the firſt eſtabliſher of the kingdom, after all thoſe troubles dyed without iſſue.
1371 32 *Lewis*, king of *Hungarie*, ſon of *Charls* king of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the ſiſter of *Caſimir*.
1383 33 *Heduigis*, the youngeſt daughter of *Lewis*, her elder ſiſter *Mary* ſucceeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, choſen Queen of *Poland*; maried to *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, Chriſtened and called *Uladiſlaus* the fift.
1386 34 *Uladiſlaus* V. Duke of *Lituania*, elected King upon his mariage with Queen *Heduigis*.
1435 35 *Uladiſlaus* VI. ſon of *Jagello*, or *Uladiſlaus* the fift, by *Sophia* daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*. He was king of *Hungarie* alſo; ſlain at the battel of *Varna* by *Amurath* the ſecond, king of the *Turks*, without iſſue.
1447 36 *Caſimir* IV. brother of *Uladiſlaus*, firſt brought the knights of *Pruſſia* under his command; knight of the Order of the Garter.
1493 37 *John Albert*, the ſecond ſon of *Caſimir*; his elder brother *Uladiſlaus* being pretermitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungarie*, and *Bohemia*.
1502 38 *Alexander*, the third ſon of *Caſimir*.
1507 39 *Sigiſmund*, the fourth ſon of *Caſimir*, his elder brethren dying without iſſue; ſuppreſſed the Order of the *Dutch Knights* in *Pruſſia*, and added part thereof unto his eſtate.
1548 40 *Sigiſmund* II. ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Jagello*.
1574 41 *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, ſon of *Henry* the ſecond, *French* King, choſen on the death of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, the only Stranger to the bloud in all this Catalogue. On the death of his brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed ſecretly into *France*, where he ſucceeded by the name of *Henry* the third.
1579 42 *Stephen Bathour*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third, Emperour of the *Turks*, having firſt maryed *Anne*, ſiſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, is elected King; he united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Moſcovite*.
1587 43 *Sigiſmund* III. ſon of *John* king of *Swethland*, and of *Catherine* his wife, another of the ſiſters of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, king of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly oppoſed *Oſman* the *Great Turk*, invading his Dominions, with an Army of 300000 fighting men.
1633 44 *Uladiſlaus* VII. eldeſt ſon of *Sigiſmund* the third; after whoſe death the kingdom was extremely embroyled by factions, eſpecially by the mutinous and ſeditious *Coſaques*; not fully ſetled by the election of
1648 45 *Caſimir* V. brother of *Uladiſlaus* the ſeventh, now king of *Poland*, *Anno* 1648.

The Government of this kingdom is nothing leſſe than *Monarchical*. For though the firſt Dukes hereof were *abſolute* Princes, and ruled after a *Deſpotical* manner; having power not only of the eſtates of their ſubjects, but of life and death, without *formalities* of Law: yet when they once became *elective*, they loſt much of that power; which decayed ſo by little and little, that at the laſt the King is counted little better than a *Royal ſhadow*; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poets language. A diminution which began firſt in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungarie*, and *Jagello* of *Lituania*: who to gain the ſucceſſion to the kingdom contrary to Law, the one for his daughter, the other for his ſon, departed with many of their *Royalties* and *Prerogatives*, to buy the voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the *Nobility* in all their *elections* have ſo limited and reſtrained the Kings authority, and enlarged their own, that without their conſent in Council, he may neither make warre, nor treat of peace, nor impoſe taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeans: nor do any thing of importance which

concerns the Publick: in so much as *Botterus* a great *Statesman* doth expressely say, that the Government of *Poland* doth rather seem an *Aristocracie* than a *Monarchie*, a Commonwealth rather than a kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes a solemn Oath at his Coronation, to confirm all the rights and Privileges, which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessours: but addes this clause, *Quod si Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam nobis obedientiam præstare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any obedience. Which as *Bodinus* well observeth, doth rather savour of the condition of a *Prince of the Senate*, than of the Majestie of a King; respected accordingly by the great ones: who look not on him as their *King*, but their *elder Brother*, (or perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three dayes lasting. Which notwithstanding, the King once chosen and inthroned, hath sole power in many things, without consulting with the *Senate*; as *viz.* in assembling *Diets*, choosing the secular Counsellers, disposing absolutely of his *Vassals*, and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleaseth; being *sole Judge* of the Nobility in *Criminal* causes, which is a strong bridle to reign them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the *Clergy*, or the well-forming of his party amongst the *Nobility*, he may doe many things not allowable in strictnesse of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government, being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the *Clergy*, and *Nobility*, have any suffrage in the *election* of the King: that is to say, the 26 *Palatines*, and 60 *Chastellans*, with the four *Marshals*, and some others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the *Nobility*; and the Archbishops and Bishops, in the name of the *Clergy*; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason, why there is so much care taken to preserve the privileges of the two first Orders; without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third: most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as *Boudmen* than *Tenants* in respect of their Lords, and not so much subjects, as plain *Slaves*, in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the *Common people* excluded only out of these *elections*, but have no *place* nor *vote* in the Counsel of State, or in any of the *General Diets*: the first consisting onely of the *Prelates*, *Palatines*, *Chastellans*, and principal Officers, spoken of before, the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the other aggregated of all persons of those several Orders, and the *Delegates* of each Province and principal City, sent thither for the rest of the *Nobility*, whom they represent. Yet notwithstanding this exclusion of the *Commons* from this *Common-Council*, they there conclude of all matters of publique interesse, not properly determinable by the *great Council* or *Council of State*: in which perhaps (especially in the case of taxes) the *Commons* may be more concerned than any other.

The *Forces* of this Kingdom or Common-wealth relate unto *Land-service* only. For though they have a large Sea-coast upon the *Baltick*; yet the *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Hanse-towns*, having got the start of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for *Land-forces*, they consist of Horse especially, whereof they are able to raise eightscore thousand, (that is to say, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lituania*) of which one half at least are thought to be fit for action. And this seems probable enough, in regard of those great bodies of Horse, which *Stephen* and *Sigismund* the third, had against the *Moscovite*; whereof the one had 40000. and the other 30000. besides draught horses,) very well appointed. But for their *Foot*, they are not at so good a pass, their *Infantery* being for the most part *Germans*, or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for money; of which two Nations King *Stephen*, in his enterprise upon *Livonia*, had no lesse than 16000, to convey his Ordnance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horse, and their readinesse to serve upon all occasions, the *Polanders* bear themselves so high, that they neither fear the power of a forein Enemy, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of *Fortresses* on their *Frontires*: boasting that they are able to defend their countrey, without such helps, against any Nation whatsoever; and trusting more to a *Castle of bones*, (as was couragiously said by *Savage* an *English* Gentleman) than to a *Castle of stones*. And for the raising of these Horse, the Gentlemen of the Countrey are bound by their tenure, (like the *Turkes Timariots*) not only to serve in person for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horse in continual readinesse: especially in those parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great; and with whom many times they joyn to afflict and harass their own countrey, though in pay against them. Of these, some serve in the manner of our *men of Arms*, some like unto our *Light-horse*, others like the *Tartars*. And these they call commonly by the name of *Cosacques* (or *Adventurers*:) a race of men trained up to steal, wast and depopulate, where-soever they come, having little but their *swords* to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their drunkennesse, and that not only towards strangers, but their natural Countreymen. The cause of that sedition, which for some years past, hath more depopulated and distracted that flourishing kingdom, than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

As for the *Revenues* of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt, and some Mines of Silver: the profits arising from the *Demeasns* of the Crown, being for the most part, given away in pensions and gratuities, to the *Palatines*, *Chastellans*, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his desires. Most of which summ is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchase of estates for his younger sons; his daughters being maryed at the publick charge, and the expences of his household defrayed by the *Lituanians* and most part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongst them. Nor do the wars at any time exhaust his *Treasure*, in which case by decree of the *Diets*, he is inabled to lay impositions and taxes upon the people, levied in the way of *Excise*, or upon their lands: which do amount to such a sum, that by means here-

hereof, King *Stephen* maintained war three years against the *Moscovite*, without expending any thing of his own *Revenue*.

Chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this kingdom are,

1 The *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, instituted under the wals of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, in the *Holy land*; in a Church whereof dedicated to the blessed *Virgin*, their Order was first allowed; from thence called *Equites Mariani*. The institution was in the year 1190. The first *great Master*, *Henry Walpot*. The *Christians* being beaten out of *Syria*, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Hassia*; where, and in some other parts of *Germany*, they were endowed with fair *Revenues*, from which named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch Knights*; sent into *Prussia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1239. or called in, as some say, by the *Muscovite* against the *Prussians*; they fixed their seat at *Maxiemberg*, under *Sigefride*, the second *Great Master*, *Anno* 1340. or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus* the 18th *Great Master*, they were forced to submit to *Casimir* the fourth of *Poland*, *Anno* 1450. the occasion of the long war betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, the 24. and last *Great Master* in this Countrey; who surrendered his order (as before said) to *Sigismund* the first, by whom he was created the first *Duke* of *Prussia*. Such of the *Knights* as disrelished this action, retired into *Germany*, where they chose one *Walter Croneberg* master of the Order: the title afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger sons of *Maximilian* the second; but the *Order* sensibly decaying, and at this time of little estimation in the world.

2 Of the *Port-glaive*, or *Sword-bearers* (*Ensiferi* in *Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third; by whom sent into *Livonia* to defend the Preachers of the *Gospel* against the *Infidels*, at the first conversion of that country. Being too weak to effect that businesse, they united themselves with the *Dutch Knights* by the Popes authority, and in stead of *Knights of the sword*, were called *Knights of the Cross*. Separated from it in the time of *Ulnivus* their *Great Master*, *Anno* 1541. the *Dutch Knights* being then dispossessed of *Prussia*, and these inclining wholly to the opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves: what became of them afterwards, and how the *Order* was extinguished, hath been shewen allready in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this kingdom are quarterly, 1 *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and Armed *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2 *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pea*, advancing his sword *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courser of the *second*, for the Dukedom of *Lituania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*,

Of the *Romish* Church, Archbishops 3.	Bishops 19.
Of the *Greek* Church, Archbishops 2.	Bishops 6.

Universities 4.
Viz.

Cracow,	*Dantzick*.
Vilna,	*Regimont*.

And so much for *POLAND*.

OF

THE CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungarie* (whether now we goe) we muſt of neceſſity paſſe over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the antient boundarie of *Sarmatia Europæa*, from the reſt of *Europe*. A long and craggie ledge of hils, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the borders of *Auſtria*, paſſe on in a continual courſe till they come to the very *Euxine* Sea: and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called; but parting *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Ruſſia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolemie* in his ſecond Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici* (*Sarmatica Rupes*, by *Solinus*) becauſe diſterminating the *Sarmatian* Nations, (who poſſeſſed the moſt part of it) from *Germanie*, and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, ſo called (as ſome think) from the Greek word Καρπὸς, ſignifying *Fruit*; from the fruitfullneſſe of it, compared with other Mountains in thoſe Northern Countries. At the preſent known by divers names, according to the Provinces and people which it paſſeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or a Garden of Herbs) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*: by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the higheſt, it is called in the *Sclavonian* tongue, by the name of *Tatri*; in the *German*, *Schneberg*: where it parteth *Tranſylvania* from *Ruſſia Nigra*, the *Roſſes* call it *Bieſcid*; and the *Dutch* men, *Crapack*. A chain of hills, of more length than fame: not much obſervable in ſtory, but for the ſhutting up the *Hungari*, *Sclaves*, and others of thoſe Northern Nations, which afterward invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the preſent, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers, which water the Countries lying on both ſides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will paſſe them over, and deſcend unto the Plains of *Hungary*.

OF

OF
HVNGARIE.

HUNGARIE is bounded on the East, with *Transylvania*, and *Walachia*; on the West, with *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*; on the North, with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland*; and on the South, with *Sclavonia*, and some part of *Dacia*. Extended in length from *Presburg* along the *Danow*, to the borders of *Transylvania*, for the space of 300 *English* miles; and 190 of the same miles in breadth. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lyeth in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the 7th and 9th *Climates*, so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts most North: taking up all that tract of ground on the North side of *Danubius*, possessed by the *Jazyges Metanastæ*, a *Sarmatian* people; and part also of *Pannonia Superior*, and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it passeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know, that the *Romans* having made themselves Masters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Diocese of *Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to say, *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the *Higher Austria*, and the most Western parts of the present *Hungarie*, on the South side of the *Danow*. 2 *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eastern parts of *Hungarie*, on the same side of the River. 3 *Valeria*, antiently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Austria*. And 4 *Savia*, so called of the River *Savus*, antiently part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Windeschland*, one of the Provinces or Subdivisions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Masters; it took a new name from the Nations who possessed themselves of it; and was called *Hungaria*, *quasi Hunni-Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either successively or conjunctly were possessed thereof: or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the Emperour *Arnulph* to aid him in his war against *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*. This last I look on as most probable; the first as more probable than that of *Aventine* and others of our later Writers: who finding a poor Province in the most North-east point of the *Russian* Empire called *Jugra*, (and by them *Jugaria*;) would have the name of *Hungarie* to be thence derived.

The people are strong of body, and rude of behaviour, respecting neither the *liberal Arts*, nor *mechanick* Trades. The greatest aspersion is the name of a *coward*, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are privileged to wear a feather, and by the number of their feathers to shew how many *Turks* they have slain in battel. They desire wars, and like no trade better, being naturally slothful (like the *Irish*) and therefore best approve of that course of life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens labour, than take pains for their *living*. Extremely covetous; yet having rather desire than art to enrich themselves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingross all their trading, and manage such commodities as the Countrey yeeldeth: which is the cause (seconded by the oppressions of the *Turk* and the *Austrian* Princes under whom they are) that none of them rise to any considerable wealth. And for such as have estates in land they grow every day more poor than others. For though the *Females* be excluded from inheriting their fathers possessions (to whom they give no portion, but new Cloaths on the wedding day:) yet being the sons do equally inherit the Estate (as such who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it must needs be that by so many divisions and subdivisions, the greatest patrimony that is, will be brought to nothing. Both Sexes in the way of their education are inured to hardness, not suffered to lie in beds till the night of their mariage.

The Christian faith was first planted here in the time of *Stephen*, surnamed the *Saint*, the first King

of

of this Countrey; invited thereunto by the ſpecial means and procurement of the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond, giving him upon that condition his ſiſter *Giſla* in mariage: and through the preaching and induſtry of *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Prague*, *Anno* 1016. or thereabouts. Since which time *Chriſtianity* hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*) but broken into fractions and ſubdiviſions among themſelves: ſome pertinaciouſly adhering to the Church of *Rome*, ſome following the doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin*; and ſome, new fancies and opinions diſavowed by all the reſt: free exerciſe of Religion firſt granted by *Maximilian* the 2d. and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus* his ſon and ſucceſſor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, *Anno* 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the II. in the beginning of his reign, occaſioned great wars and troubles betwixt him and this people, not quieted in a long time after: yet all theſe different parties do agree in this, to puniſh *adultery* and *fornication* with no leſs a puniſhment than death; the father forcing his daughter, the husband his wife, and the brother his ſiſters, to the place of their *Execution*.

The language generally here ſpoken, is a kind of *Sclavonian*, differing in *dialect* from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoyning to *Germanie*, the *Dutch* is ſpoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, the antient ſeat of the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*.

The ſoil is wonderfull fruitfull, yielding corn and fruits in great abundance; the graſs in ſome places (as in the Iſle of *Comara*) if it be ſuffered to grow to its full length, before the cutting of it down, being ſaid to exceed the height of a man: which doth breed ſuch a number of Cattel, that this Countrey alone, is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with fleſh. They yearly ſend into *Germany* and *Sclavonia*, 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheaſant, in ſuch ſuperfluity, that any man that will may kill them; which in other places is utterly prohibited, theſe creatures being reſerved as game for Gentlemen. For at that great inſurrection of the *Boors* in *Germanie* (before the end of which, 50000 of them were ſlain in fight) their chief demands were, 1. That they might chuſe their own *Miniſters*; 2ly, That they might pay no *tithes* but of corn; 3ly, That they might be free from the power of *Magiſtrates*; 4ly, that wood, timber, and fewel might be common; 5. And eſpecially, That they might hunt and hauk in all times and places. The other commodities of the Countrey are Gold, Silver, whereof they have ſome very rich *veins*; as alſo of Tin, Lead, Iron; good ſtore of Fiſh, Copper, Wine; this laſt as good as that of *Candie*.

The worthieſt Scholar that ever this kingdom produced, was S. *Hierome*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church, born in *Stridon*. The moſt worthy of all their Souldiers, were *Johannes Huniades*, who ſo valiantly reſiſted the incurſions of the *Turks*, and ſlew of them 50000 at the battel at *Maron*. And 2ly, *Matthias Corvinus*, his ſon, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet:

——— *Patriæ decus, unica ſtirpis*
Gloria, Pannonicæ *cædis fortiſſimus ultor*.

His Countries pride, the glory of his race,
Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late diſgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1 *Danubius*, ſpoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2. *Savus*, which riſing in *Carniola*; 3. *Dravus*, which riſing in *Carinthia*; and 4. *Tibiſcus*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiſcus* the *Hungarians* uſe to ſay, that two parts are *water*, and the third *fiſh*. Beſides which, and ſome others of inferiour note, there is the famous *Lake* called *Balaton* (by the *Dutch Platſe*) 40 *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequal: in ſome places being ten miles broad, and in ſome but three. There be alſo many *medicinal* waters, and more hot *Baths* than any one Countrey hath in *Europe*: ſome waters alſo of a ſtrange Nature; whereof ſome falling on the ground is turned to ſtone; others (about the Town of *Smolnice*) which falling into Ditches make a kind of mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and ſome again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Biſtrice* or *Menſol*, a ſpring or fountain, out of which cometh a green water, whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Countrie are 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains ſpoken of before. 2. *Matzan*, near the City *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 3. *Erdol*, *omnium ampliſſimus*, the largeſt of the three, ſaith the *Atlas minor*. Which words if true, muſt needs be underſtood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without queſtion it comes ſhort of *Carpatus*.

The Countrey is commonly divided into the *Upper Hungarie*, and the *Lower*: the *Upper* lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the bounds and territories of the *Roman* Empire; the *Lower* lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Superior*, two *Roman* Provinces. The *Upper* again ſubdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or *Juridical Reſorts*, that is to ſay, 24 on the Weſt ſide of *Tibiſcus* (or the *Tiſſe*) and 8. on the Eaſt ſide of it: the *Lower* (at the ſame time) into 18 onely; Of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other ſix betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*. But this *Diviſion* and the *Subdiviſions* depending on it, being ſince the coming in of the Turks almoſt out of uſe; we will now look upon it as it ſtands divided at the preſent, betwixt the Emperor as King of *Hungarie*, by a mixt title of *deſcent* and *election*; and the *Great Turk*, as Lord of the moſt part of it, by *Arms* and *conqueſt*, two parts of three at leaſt being forced into his *poſſeſſion*. But here wee are to underſtand, that

by

by reason of the great jealousies and distrusts betwix these great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garrisoned like a Town of war, and so are almost all the houses of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Countrey: so that it were an infinite labour to specifie in this place all those Towns and Fortresses, which do occur in reading the *Hungarian* Histories of these later times. Some of the principal for strength, antiquity, or other mark of estimation which is set upon them, we shall here subjoyn.

And first in the Emperours part of the Lower *Hungarie*, we have 1. *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Rab*, coming out of the Lower *Hungarie*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabon*, by the *French*, *Javarine*, by our present *Latinists*, *Javo inum*. Memorable heretofore for being the boundary of the two *Pannoniaes*, *Inferiour* and *Superiour*, hereabouts divided: of late most principally for a strong Fortress against the *Turks*, by whom once taken, *Anno* 1594. but within four years after again recovered, by the industry of *Monsieur de Vaudre Court*, a *French* Gentleman, as the *Frenchmen* say; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenbourg*, at that time Governor of *Komora*. 2 *Altembourg*, in the road leading towards *Austria*, a strong town, and the best Out-work of *Vienna*, for which cause much aimed at by the Turks, but without success. 3. *Castle-Novo*, a new-erected Fortress, as the name importeth, but of special strength, erected purposely in the time of the Emperor *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, antiently the *Metropolis* of *Pannonia Superior*; the birth-place of St. *Martin* Bishop of *Tours*; now of less accompt; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarorubath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnits*. 5. *Stridon*, the *Sidron* of *Ptolemie*, in the confines of *Hungary* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A town of good repute, till destroyed by the *Gothes*; but after made of more esteem by the birth of St. *Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church; and for all parts of humane learning, nothing inferiour to the best of the *Grecian* Sages. 6. *Sopran*, (*Sopronium* in *Latine*) on the borders of *Austria*. 7. *Komora*, a strong piece in an Iland of the same name, made by the *Circling* of the *Danow*; oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungarie*, we have 8. *Presburg*, on the edge of *Austria* also, but on the North side of the River, the *Carnuntum* of *Antoninus*; but by the modern *Latines* called *Posonium*: seated in a pleasant healthfull Countrey on the River *Lyet*, whose waters the *Danow* there receiveth; in the suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, standeth a goodly Castle, the ordinary residence of the Emperours, as Kings of *Hungarie*. For though it be a little City, and not very beautifull; yet, being safe by the neighbourhood of *Austria*, it hath been made the *Metropolis* of this kingdom, since the losse of *Buda*. Before the walls hereof dyed Count *Dampierri*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the second, in the wars of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Fileck*, a place of great strength and consequence, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his first attempts upon this kingdom, and lost by *Amurath* the 3d. the Turks in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Nitri*, a Bishops See on the River *Boch*. 11. *Vaceia*, a Bishops See also on the River *Danubius*, once in possession of the Turks, but restored again unto the Christians at the making of the peace between the Emperour *Rodolphus* and *Sultan Achmet*. 12. *Cassovia*, a strong piece towards *Transylvania*. 13. *Lippe*, in the borders of that Country also, commanding the entrances thereof, and therfore much affected by the Princes or *Vaivods* of that Province; possessed by whom in the later times of the Emperor *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Transylvania*; but how long it continued so, I am not able to say. 14. *Tokai*, a place of great strength, and as great fidelity, the people and Garrison hereof holding out for the Emperor *Rodolphus*, *Anno* 1605. against some of his rebellious subjects, in the time of so extreme a Famine, that the souldiers did not only eat two boyes, but many times cast lots who should eat one another. 15. *Eperia*, a place of no lesse consequence, and exemplary loyalty. 16. *Newsoll*, or *Newheusel*, a strong Town, and as strongly fortified, not far from the spring head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621. proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*; who at the siege hereof (the Town being then in rebellion against *Ferdinand* the second, Emperor and King of *Hungary*) lost his life. For going privately to view some places of advantage for a general assault, he fell into an Ambush of *Hungarians*, who suddenly set upon him, discomfited his small party, killed first his horse under him, and at last himself, having in that skirmish received 16 wounds. Slain with him at the same time also, *Torquato* an *Italian* Prince, Count *Verdugo* a *Spanish* Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the house of *Mantua*.

Places of most importance in the *Turks* possession, are 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Hoffen*, supposed by some to be the *Curta* of *Ptolemie*; by others, the *Abrincum* of *Antoninus*: and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the brother of *Attila*, said to be the re-founder of it; or from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* people, mentioned in *Herodotus*. Unevenly seated amongst hills, on the Southern shore of the *Danow*, but in the most fruitfull part of all the Countrey; exceedingly well fortified, especially by a strong Castle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous Turk; adorned with many buildings both private and publick: and furnished with some *medicinal Bathes*, which owe much of their pomp and sumptuousnes to their new Masters the *Turks*; who took it from the *Christians*, *August* 20. 1591. *Solyman* the *Magnificent* then present at the taking of it. Before that time the *Seat Royal* of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City of the Kingdom; as now the seat of the chief *Bassa*, or Lord Lieutenant for the *Grand Signeur*. 2. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weisenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Drayus*; strongly, but unwholesomly seated, in the midst of an inaccessible *mariſh*: joyned to the firm land by three broad *Causeys*, blocked up at the ends with three great *Bulwarks*; but for all the strong situation of it, taken by the Turks, *Anno* 1543. before that time the usual place both for the *Coronation* and interment of the Kings of *Hungary*, recovered from the *Turks*, *Anno* 1601. and lost again unto them in the next year after. 3. *Walpo*, or *Val-*

po

po, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the siege of that City. 4. *Gran*, in *Latine* called *Strigonium*, seated up on the *Danow*, but opposite to the mouth of *Gran*, which arising in the *upper Hungary* doth there end its course, whence the name of *Gran*; honoured of a long time with the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all business which concerns the State, took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1534; *Solyman* the *Magnificent* being in person at the siege, and lost *An.* 1595. at what time S. *Tho. Arundel* of *Wardour* Castle in *Wiltshire*, carried himself so gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkish* Banner, that the Emperour *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire; K. *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of the *Wardour*; but the *Christians* were not suffered to keep it long; for being many times after besieged by the *Turks*, who were resolved not to end the war without it, it was finally recovered by them, *Anno* 1605. 5. *Fiefe-kirken*, in *Latine* called *Quinque Ecclesiæ*, from 5 Churches in it, a Bishops See, conceived to be the *Tentiburgium* of *Antoninus*; took by the *Turkes*, *Anno* 1566. and giving them a great command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is seated. 6. *Sirmisch*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a vein of the best wines, but otherwise of no estimation at the present, though heretofore of most accompt in all this Province; the *Metropolis* (as I conceive) of *Pannonia inferior*; the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*; before the division of the Empire, honoured with the personal residence of many of the Emperours, and made in those respects, the Stage of many great and memorable actions. For here *Vetranio*, or *Bretanio* as others call him, took on himself the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperour, by the *Illyrian* Souldiers, lying here in Garrison: here being deserted by his own Souldiers, he submitted himself unto *Constantius*, the son of *Constantine* the *Great*; here *Gratian* the Emperour, son of *Valentinian* the first, was born. And finally here was held a Council against *Photinus*, Bishop of this City, who held, that *CHRIST* had no existence of God the Father, till he was conceived and born of the Virgin, which Tenent being contrary as well to that of the *Arian*, as the *Orthodox* Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the said *Constantius* (who was there in person) *Anno* 356. 7. *Zigoth*, a strong Town, situate in a marish ground, on the North side of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1566. who there ended his days. 8. *Mursa*, upon the confluence of the *Dra*, and the *Danow*, once a *Roman* Colonie, and as remarkable in the stories of elder times; as 9. *Belgrade*, on the confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This last a Town of divers names, first called *Taururum*, or *Taurunum*; after, *Alba Græca*; by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greichs Wessenburg*; by the *French* and modern *Latinists*, *Belgrade*, and *Belgradum*, from the beautifull situation of it, hemmed in upon the North, with the *Danow*, on the East, with the *Saw*; on the other sides defended with strong walls, deep ditches, and impregnable Ramparts. Belonging antiently to the *Despots* of *Servia*, by whom consigned over to *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, as best able to keep it; the *Despots* being satisfied with lands and territories of a better value. The *Bulwark* heretofore of *Christendome* against the *Turkes*, who received before it many great and notable repulses, (of which the most memorable were those of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet* surnamed the *Great*:) taken at last to the great losse and shame of the *Christian* world, not succouring the defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1520. Then on the North side of the River, in the *upper Hungary*, there is 10 *Pesth*, over against *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11. *Colocza*, an Archbishops See, on the same River also. 12 *Zegedin*, on the West side of the River *Tibiscus*. 13. *Agria*, an old Bishops See, and strongly fortified, having a great command over all those parts of the Country; in vain besieged by *Haly* the *Bassa* of *Buda*, with an Army of 36000 Turks in the time of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1552. But taken by *Mahomet* the 3d. himself lying at the siege in person, *Anno* 1578. not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the Christians so great an overthrow, that if he had pursued his victory, it is thought that he had finished the conquest of *Hungary*; as on the other side the Turks were so worsted, and disordered (*Mahomet* himself, and most of his Commanders flying out of the field) that had the *Christians* followed the chase, and not betook themselves to the spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed the kingdom from the Turkish Tyranny. This battel, from a Village near unto which it was fought, called the battel of *Kerestur*e, a battel of so strange a fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the field, and the vanquished Army ran away with the victory. 14. *Hatroan*, a very strong Town, and as strongly garrisoned, recovered by the *Christians* after two long sieges, and many sharp assaults, *Anno* 1558. and presently again abandoned, upon the noise of *Mahomets* comming into *Hungary* with a dreadfull Army. 15. *Temeswar*, on the East of that River towards *Transilvania*; the ordinary residence of a *Turkish Bassa*. 16. *Gyula*, a strong Town on the borders of *Transilvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Keresken* Governour hereof, in the last year of *Solyman*, on a promise of some great reward. But *Selimus* the son of *Solyman* caused him to be put into a barrel stuck full of nails, with the points turned inwards; and so to be tumbled up and down, till he (most miserably) died: there being on the barrel this inscription written; *viz*, *Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and treason*; Gyula *thou soldest for gold; if thou be not faithfull to Maximilian thy natural* Lord, *neither wilt thou be true to me*. 17. *Singidon*, on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the fields of *Maron*, memorable for the slaughter of 50000 *Turks*, slain here in battel, under the fortunate conduct of *John Huniades*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the North side of the *Danow*, and the West of the *Tisse*, or *Tibiscus*, where the *Iazyges*, *Metanastæ*; and on the East side of the *Tisse*, the *Daci*; known, but not conquered by the *Romans*: on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannones* (by some called the *Peones*) subdivided into the *Azali*, *Latovici*, *Werciani*, *Jassii*, *Oseriates*, and some others inhabiting the West

parts

parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneales*, *Braci*, *Arcifci*, and *Scordisci*, dwelling in the *Eastern* parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. First conquered by the *Romans*, *Anno V. C.* 719. L. *Cornificius*, and *Sext Pimpeius*, being *Consuls*; but many times rebelling, and not fully subdued till 40 years after the insurrection of *Bato*, being then crushed by *Augustus Cæsar*, and thereby the whole Province setled in obedience. Divided first into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia* and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till subdued by the *Huns*, a people not heard of in the time of the *Roman* greatnesse, unlesse we take them, as some doe, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolemie*. But being those *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Bastarnæ*, and the *Roxolani*, on the South-west of *Borysthenes*, I see not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Huns*, who were shut up within the *Fenns* of *Palus Mæotis*; and by all the Writers of those times accompted for a Nation not so much as heard of, when they first set footing into *Europe*. Letting that therefore passe as an improbable and ill-grounded conjecture, certain it is, that from the *Fenn-Countries* of *Asia*, on the other side of the *Tanais*, they came first into *Europe*: living in their own Country a poor and miserable life, till God thought fit to make use of them as a scourge, to chastise the *Christians* of the West, then grown luxurious, and almost incorrigible by too much felicity; and to that end miraculously opened them a passage, never found before. For having neither mind nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which possibly they had not heard of; not knowing how to clear themselves of that uncomfortable Country, in which they dwelt; it pleased the great disposer of all things, by following an *Hart* or *Stag* which they had in chase, to shew them a safe passage into *Europe*, through the *Fenns* of *Mœotis*; which before they thought to be unpassable. The report made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleasant Land which they had so fortunately discovered; invited the chief heads of their *Clans*, with all the several *Rascalities* depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell so suddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North side of the *Ister*, to fly over that River, and supplicate to the Emperour *Valens* for new habitations. This hapned in the year 373. *Athanaricus* the second, or *Ermanaricus* (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir*, Captain of the *Huns*. Fleshed with this victory, *Balamir* or *Balhember*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of *King*, *Anno* 386. or thereabout: and following the course of the *Ister* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at; found a great Army raised on the other side of the River, of purpose to encounter with him: commanded by *Detricus* General for the *Roman* Empire, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals presuming too much on the depth and wideness of the River, and knowing well that the *Huns* had neither boat nor ship to passe them over; betook themselves unto their rest, with too much security. But the *Huns*, to the number of 100000, having crossed the River upon *bladders*, fell on the quarters of the *Romans*, whom they slew like sheep. *Macrinus* after this fought two battels with them, in the first whereof he was victorious, there being lost on both sides about 30000 men: but in the second being slain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* possessed themselves of both *Pannonias*; buying this victory with the losse of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his sons succeeded, *Anno* 436. and *Bleda* dying also in the year 450. left *Attila* sole King of the *Huns*, that great *scourge* of the *Christian* world; who having first wasted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperour *Theodosius* the second, to buy his peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of gold, and an yearly tribute. Invited afterwards by *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, to war upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*; and beating down all the Towns and Fortresses on the River *Rhene*, on that side of the *Roman* Empire, entered that Province in the reign of the 3d. *Valentian*: divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Discomfited by *Aetius*, and the kings of those Nations then in league against him, in that famous battel near *Tholouse* spoken of before, (with the loss of 180000 of his men,) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he sacked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincentia*, *Pavie*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of *Pope Leo*: committing in all places such unspeakable cruelties, that he was always after called (as he styled himself) *Malleus orbis*, & *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a quarrel with *Marcianus* the Eastern Emperour, as if the tribute promised him by *Theodosius*, had not been well paid. But being pacified for the present, and mindfull of his former project upon the *Goths*; he resolved once again to try his fortune with that people; and was again defeated by them under the conduct of *Thorismund*, the third King of the *Visigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and so returned ingloriously to his Country. Choaked after with his own bloud, violently breaking out at his nose-thirls, on his wedding night; he left *Pannonia* to his sons named *Hernac*, *Aladurius*, and *Chaba*: who disagreeing amongst themselves about the Kingdom, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then possessed of *Dacia*, to make themselves masters of this also; scarce thorough warm in their new estates, when sent by *Zeno* the Emperour into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, where they finally setled. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any where of the *Huns* at all; unless acting under the *Avares*, or joining with them in the name of *Hun-Avaria*, as some think they did.

The Country being thus left to the next *Invader*, was presently possessed by the *Longobards*, said to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia*, *Jornandes* speaketh) afterwards *ob longas barbas Longobardi*. But concerning this last name, take along with you this *old wives tale*, recited, but not approved of by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili*, went unto *Goddan* (he should rather have said *Woden*) to sue for the victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and sent *Gambata* the mother of their King *Aiou*, on the like business to *Frea*

Goddans wife. So it was, that *Goddan* had promised the *Vandals*, that they should be victorious, whom he saw first in the morning: whereupon *Frea* willing to please *Gambara*, and not loving, as it seemeth, the sight of men, gave order, that all the women of the *Winnili*, parting their hair, bringing one half over one cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their chin, should appear betimes before the window the next morning. This they did, and she shewing them to her husband, he demanded of her, *Qui sunt isti Longobardi?* Hence the occasion of the name. And like enough they might be called so from the length of their beards; though otherwise the whole tale be vain and foolish. Compelled by scarcity of victuals to seek new habitations, they seised first on the Iland *Rugia*, and the adjacent Countries; setled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in those parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Bishopricks of *Meydburg*, and *Halberstat*. Afterwards finding that Country too narrow for them, they left their dwellings there, and fell next upon some parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at last having tarried in *Pannonia* 42 years, or thereabouts, at the solicitation of *Narses* (provoked by many indignities from the Empress *Sophia*, the wife of *Justinus* the second) *Anno* 568. under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*, and there fixt their kingdom: at the end of 206 years overthrown by the power of *Charls* the *Great*, the most mighty Monarch of the West. Of their Kings before their coming into this country, I shall only make mention of *Lamissus*, their third King, and of him this story. *Agilmund* the second King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a hunting. As he was riding by a fish-pond, he spied seven children sprawling for life, which one, as saith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many harlots) had been delivered of, and most barbarously thrown into the water. The King amazed at this *spectacle*, put his *Bore-spear* or *hunting-pole* among them. One of the children hand fasted the spear, and the King softly drawing back his hand, wasted the child to the shore. This boy he named *Lamissus*, from *Lama*, which in their language signifieth a *fish pond*. He was in the Kings Court carefully brought up; where there appeared in him such tokens of vertue and courage, that after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* chosen to succeed him. This *Lamissus*, together with his predecessors, and successors, we find thus recorded.

The *LONGOBARDIAN* KINGS.

An. C.					
383	1 *Aiou*, 10	473	6 *Godohoc*, 12	525	11 *Adoinus*, who first brought the *Longobards* into *Hungary*, *Anno* 1526.
393	2 *Agilmond*, 33	485	7 *Dophon*, vel *Claffo*, 5		
426	3 *Lamissus*, 3	490	8 *Thanius*, 10		
429	4 *Labe*, vel *Lethe*, 40	500	9 *Vacon*, 18	543	12 *Alboinus*, who in the year 583. by the
469	5 *Hildehoc*, 4	518	10 *Vaccharius*, 7		

solicitation of *Narses* went into *Italy*, and erected there the *Longobardian* Kingdom; which 206 years after was destroyed by the puissance of *Charls* the *Great*.

The *History* of this people epitomized by *Du Bartas*, thus:

The *Lombard* strong who was in *Scowland* nurst,
On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* seised first.
Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
The death of *Agilmond*; the bold *Barbarian*
Surprized *Poland*: thence anon he presses
In *Danows* streams to rinse his amber tresses.
When he straight after had surrendered
The double-named *Isters* flowry bed,
To scarre-fac'd *Hunnes*: he hunteth furiously
The rest of *Galls* from wealthy *Insubrie*.
There reigns 200 years, triumphing so,
That Royal *Tesin* might compare with *Po*.
Which after fell in *Frenchmens* hands again,
Won by the sword of worthy *Charlemain*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage, the *Avares* entred. Some say the *Avarini* of *Ptolemie*, a *Sarmatian* people; but most probably, (as *Nicetas*) a people of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Maeotis*. They first began to stir in the reign of *Tiberius* the 2d. (driven by the *Turks*, their next neighbours, to passe further Westward) and gave that Emperours forces a great overthrow at the mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithstanding did somewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next successor. Their King at that time called *Caganus*, we may English it *Chan*; as not being the proper name of any one, but the common *Attribute* of all their *Chiefs*. This *Caganus* made his first wars upon the *Turks*, which people were about that time first made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*; and with the help of the remainder of the *Huns*, invaded and possessed *Pannonia*; vanquishing both the Emperours Forces, and the *Goths*, and *Gepidæ*, who had still kept some footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards*, were of no small power; the name of *Goths* being swallowed up in that of the *Gepidæ*, though not

quite

quite extinct. After this blow, *Mauritius* raised a second war, but more with an intent to revenge himself on his own Souldiers, which had formerly offended him; than with hope of prevailing against the enemy. *Comentiolus*, according to the Emperours directions, betrayeth his Army, 12000 of them were slain, and the rest taken. *Caganus* an heroick and merciful Conquerour, offers to ransom them for 8 *s.* 6 *d.* a piece, (for so much was that *nummus*, or νόμισμα, which he demanded for them.) When the Emperour as much loving his gold as hating his souldiers, had denied that condition: he offered them all for one *nummus*, and after for half a one: but being also here unsatisfied, he put them all to the sword. For this cause, the rest of the Souldiers not long after made *Phocas*, one of the *Centurions*, Emperour; and he most barbarously stewed the *Emperour* in his own broath, putting him, his wife, friends, and children to the sword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, forraging *Thrace* to the very walls of *Constantinople*; afterwards setled in *Pannonia*, and part of *Noricum*, containing now the *Upper Hungary*, and some part of *Austria*; divided from the *Boiarians* by the River *Ems*. Possessed hereof till the time of *Charles* the *Great*, by whom after a war of eight years, they are utterly subdued, and driven out of these parts; their Country being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies; the remainders of them forced to betake themselves into *Transylvania*, or that part of *Hungaria* which lyeth beyond the river *Tibiscus*, where subject for a time to *Suantobogius* King of the *Moravians*; in whose overthrow by the *Hungarians*, they were so broken, that their name was never after heard of.

And so we come to the *Hungarians*, the last and principal *Actors* on the *Stage* of this Kingdom, the givers of the present name: before whose coming into this Country, it had no other name than that of *Pannonia*, for ought I can find, in any Authors of those times. A *Scythian* people, as the *Huns*, and *Avares* were; by *Jornandes* called the *Hunugari*; first known in *Europe* by their acts in the time of the Emperour *Arnulphus*; when wandring in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain abode, they were by him called into this Country, against *Suantabogius* King of the *Moravians* before mentioned; from whom they took *Transylvania*, and so much of the *modern Hungarie*, as lyeth on both sides of *Tibiscus*; inhabited at that time, by the *Sclaves*, and some scattered remnants of the *Avares*, whom they killed up, or forced to seek new *habitations*, planting themselves in those places which they took from them; now the *Upper Hungarie*. In the right of *Lewis* the 4th. successor to *Arnulphus*, they passed over the *Danow*, and subdued *Pannonia*; dismembring it from the Empire and name of *Germany*: after that ranging with unmercifull cruelty over all *Germany*, *Italie*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, till broken by the forces of the *Dutch* Emperours, and mollified by the softness of the *Christian* Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the first was under Dukes: *Stephen* the 4th. Duke, on his receiving of the Gospel, being honoured with the Title of King: enjoyed by his successors to this very day. In the time of *Ladislaus*, surnamed the *Saint*, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungary*, bequeathed to him by his Sister *Zelomira*, the widow of the last King. In that of *Bela* the 4th. the *Tartarians* to the number of 500000 fighting men, brake into this Country, and like a violent whirlwind carried all before them, *Anno* 1248. tyrannizing here for 3 years space committing mercilesse massacres, and making horrible spoils whereloever they came. In that of *Stephen* the 4th. *Mysia*, and *Bulgaria* were made tributary. By the daughters of *Bela* and *Stephen*, both the 4th. of those names, the houses of *Naples*, and *Bohemia*, came to claim the Kingdom of *Hungarie*; as *Lewis* the first by *Elizabeth* his mother, sister of *Casimir* the 2d. did the kingdom of *Poland*. The rest of their affairs shall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The DUKES and KINGS of *HUNGARIE*.

A. Ch.

1 *Cusala*, the first Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungary*, subdued *Transylvania*, and the *Upper Hungary*, and passed over the *Danow*; slain in his wars against the *Dutch*, then possessed of *Pannonia*.
2 *Toxus*, subdued *Pannonia*, or the *Lower Hungarie*.
3 *Geisa*, son of *Toxus*.
1000 4 *Stephen*, the fourth Duke, and first King of *Hungarie*.
1039 5 *Peter*, surnamed the *Alman*, nephew of *Stephen*; deposed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, sons of *Ladislaus*, son of *Geisa* the first, and brother of *Stephen* the first King.
1047 6 *Andrew*, eldest son of that *Ladislaus*.
1059 7 *Bela*, the brother of *Andrew*.
1062 8 *Solomon*, the son of *Andrew*, expelled his kingdom by
1075 9 *Geisa* II. son of *Bela*.
1078 10 *Ladislaus*, surnamed the *Saint*, brother of *Geisa* the 2d.
1096 11 *Coloman*, son of *Geisa* the 2d.
1114 12 *Stephen* II. son of *Coloman*.
1132 13 *Bela* II. nephew of *Geisa* the 2d. by his son *Almus*.
1142 14 *Geisa* III. son of *Bela* the 2d.
1162 15 *Stephen* III. son of *Geisa* the 3d.
1172 16 *Bela* III. brother of *Stephen* the 3d.

1191 17 *Emaricus*, ſon of *Bela* the 3d.
1201 18 *Ladiſlaus* II. ſon of *Emaricus*, reigned but 6 months, being ſlain by treaſon, very young, and without iſſue.
1201 19 *Andrew* II. ſon of *Bela* the 3d. and brother of *Emaricus*.
1236 20 *Bela* IV. ſon of *Andrew* the 2d.
1271 21 *Stephen* IV. ſon of *Bela* the 4th.
1273 22 *Ladiſlaus* III. ſon of *Stephen* the 4th.
1290 23 *Andrew* III. nephew to *Bela* the 4th. by his brother *Stephen*.
1302 24 *Charles*, ſurnamed *Martel*, ſon of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Marie*, daughter to *Stephen* the 4th. againſt whom was choſen *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, ſon of *Wenceſlaus* the 2d. and of *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Bela* the 4th. and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, deſcended from *Elizabeth*, another of the daughters of *Bela* the 4th. choſen alſo by a faction againſt *Wenceſlaus*. But *Wenceſlaus* ſurrendring his claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after forced to renounce his title; *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole
1343 25 *Ludovicus*, nephew to *Charles Martel* by his ſon *Carlobert*, ſucceeded King of *Poland* alſo, in right of *Elizabeth* his mother, ſiſter of *Caſimir* the 2d.
1383 26 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, deſcended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Marie*, daughter of *Stephen* the 4th. before mentioned, by their ſon *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger brothers of *Charles Martel*; poiſoned after a ſhort reign by the widow of the former King, to make a way for her daughter to the Crown.
1387 27 *Sigiſmund*, Emperour, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxembourg*, ſucceeded in right of *Marie* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Lewis* or *Lodovicus*; her younger ſiſter *Edwigis* being Queen of *Poland*.
1438 28 *Albert* of *Auſtria*, Emperour, and King of *Hungarie*, and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, the daughter of *Sigismund*.
1440 29 *Ladiſlaus*, or *Uladiſlaus*, ſon of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladiſlaus* the ſon of *Albert*, choſen King of *Hungarie*; unfortunately ſlain at the battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people: and perhaps his perjury might deſerve it. For having made and ſworn a Truce with the *Turke*; the Popes *Legate* upon a ſeeming advantage, abſolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the field. At the beginning the *Chriſtians* had the better; But at the laſt *Amurath* the 2d, againſt whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to heaven, and deſiring *Chriſt* to look upon the *perfidious dealing wherewith his followers had diſhonored him*; re-encouraged his men, and ſo got the victory.
1444 30 *Ladiſlaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the ſon of *Albert*, by *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Sigiſmund*, and *Mary*.
1458 31 *Matthias Corvinus*, ſon of the famous *Huniades*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus* the 5th. King of *Hungarie*.
1491 33 *Uladiſlaus* II. or *Ladiſlaus* VI. ſon of *Caſimir* the 4. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Albert*, ſucceeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungarie*, and *Bohemia*; his three younger brothers ſucceſſively in that of *Poland*.
1517 33 *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungarie*, and *Bohemia*, both born and dead before the ordinary courſe of nature: in the 21 year of his age, and the 10th. of his reign, unfortunately drawn into the field, to encounter *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, one of the hardieſt Captains in his time. the battel was fought at a Village called *Mogachz*, or *Mugace*, juſt betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*: in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were ſlain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A moſt lamentable diſcomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepuſio*, *Vaivod*, or Governour of *Tranſylvania*, was by the States choſen King of *Hungarie*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and brother unto *Charles* the 5th, challenged the kingdom in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter to *Uladiſlaus*, an diſter to *Lewis*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this pretence he invaded the kingdom, and drove out *John* his competitour, who to recover his right, called *Solyman* the *Magnificent* into the Country, who took ſo faſt footing in it, that his Succeſſors could never ſince be removed.
1527 34 *John Sepuſio*, *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania* choſen King upon the death of *Ludovicus* the 2. outed by *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, reſtored by *Solyman* the great *Turk*, died *An.* 1540. after whoſe death the *Hungarians* cauſed his ſon *Stephen* an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradel, of wch immediatly deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who under colour of preſerving that kingdom for him, ſeiſed *Buda* and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himſelf.
1540 35 *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in reſpect to the Lady *Anne* his wife, ſiſter of *Ludovicus* the 2. *Anno* 1527. did in the ſame right lay claim to the Crown of *Hungarie*, choſen to which by a party prepared for him; he was always in contention with *John de Sepuſio*; each of them acknowledged King by their ſeveral factions; but by both ſides received on the death of *John*.
1562 36 *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Ferdinand*.
1572 37 *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. ſon of *Maximilian*.
1608 38 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

1618 39 *Fer-*

1618 39 *Ferdinand* II. of *Gratz*, next heir unto *Matthias* of the houſe of *Auſtria*, afterwards Emperour, *&c.* againſt whom a party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they ſaid) to crown him alſo. But the affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperours ſide, *Gabor* relinquiſhed his pretenſions, and hearkned to a peace betwixt them.

1625 40 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2d. choſen and crowned king in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627. King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeding after him in the Empire, and now living *Anno* 1648.

This Kingdom doth pretend it ſelf to be *Elective*, and to have ſpecial *Privileges* indulged them by their former Princes; and antiently indeed it was ſo in both reſpects, the laſt eſpecially: King *Andrew* giving authority to his *Prelates*, *Peers*, and other people, *Ut ſine nota alicujus infidelitatis, &c.* that without any imputation of diſloyalty, they might contradict, oppoſe and reſiſt their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of *Elections*, and pretence of *Privileges*, had been ſo ſhaken and reſtrained by their Kings of the houſe of *Auſtria*, that the *Elections* are become a matter of formality only, their *Privileges* depending wholly on their Princes pleaſure: now grown too potent for them to contend withall, unleſſe they ſhould betray their Country into the hands of the *Turk*. To which ſome of them have expreſſed ſome ſtrong inclinations; the oppreſſions laid upon them by the *Auſtrian* family being deemed unſufferable.

The forces of this kingdom when it was entire, may beſt be ſeen by thoſe great Armies which they have brought into the field againſt the *Turk*. By whom 2 parts of three being ſince ſubdued, that which remains muſt not be thought able to anſwer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reaſonably expected from it. For at the battel of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1596. there were 6000 *Hungarian* horſe, and 10000 foot of this Nation only; beſides thoſe of *Germany* and *Tranſylvania*: and the next year, notwithſtanding the diſcomfiture of that Army, they raiſed no leſſe than 20000 horſe and foot, on the noiſe of ſome preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their *foot* are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the people: who can but bring their bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their *Horſe* (whom they call *Heiducks*) maintained in continual readineſs, at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Couſins to the *Coſacques*, almoſt as miſchievous as they, and hold as ſtrict intelligence with the *Turks*, as thoſe doe with the *Tartars*.

The chief *Revennes* of this Kingdom come from the *ſilver mines*, out of which is yearly raiſed about a million and a half of *Guldens*. *Maximilian* the 2d. made it up two millions, by ſeizing on the lands of *Cathedral* and *Collegiate* Churches; and aſſigning annual penſions to the Biſhops, Canons, and other Religious perſons. Moſt of which ſum comes clearly to the Emperours *Cofers*, the *Preſidiary* Souldiers being paid with *Contribution* money, raiſed upon the Country; and the Lieutenant General, whoſe entertainment comes to 30000 *Dollars* yearly, defrayed upon their purſes alſo.

The chief *Order* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, was that of the *Dragon*, inſtituted by *Sigiſmund* Emperour and King hereof; at ſuch time as by the Council of *Conſtance*, againſt *John Hus*, and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the ſharpneſſe of his ſword proved upon their followers; he had caſt down (as he conceived) the *Dragon* of *Hereſie* and *Schiſm*. But the device proved of no long continuance, expiring almoſt with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hun*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are ſaid to have been *Gules*, a Falcon diſplayed *Or*, membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdon at this time, are Barre-wiſe of 8 peeces, *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in *HUNGARIE*.

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.

And ſo much for *HUNGARIE*.

OF
SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East, with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*; from which parted by the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*: on the West, with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Histria* in the Signeury of *Venice*; from which last divided by the River *Arsia*; on the North, with *Hungary*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Sclaves* or *Sclavi* a *Sarmatian* people; of whom more anon.

It contains in length from *Arsia*, to the River *Drinus*, according to *Plinies* computation, 800 *Italian* miles; the greatest breadth being 325 of the same miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 miles; who may be reconciled with *Plinie*, by supposing this, that these last measure in a strait and direct line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coasted by the Creeks and reaches of the *Adriatick*. Situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the sixth and seventh *Climates*; so that the longest day in Summer is about 15 hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitfull of all those commodities, which are found in *Italy*, to which little inferiour; yielding not only *wine*, and *oyl*, in very good plenty, but good store of Cattel, and of wild beasts of pleasure no want at all; some rich veins also of *gold* and *silver*. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold, for the most part lying under snows; not capable of *wine*, or any the like productions which require much heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are shorn four times. Nor doth the Sea Coasts come behind in advancing the profit of the people, not only yielding store of fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The people are couragious, proud, stubborn and untractable, of strong bodies, and able constitutions, fit for works of drudgery; and so imployed by the *Venetians*, when first brought under their command: who using them in all servile offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their *Villains* or *Bond-servants*, as they of *Venice* did, by the name of *Sclaves*; that being originally as to this people, the name, not of their condition, but of their Ancestors and Country.

The *Christian* faith was first here planted, I mean in reference to this people, who do now inhabit it, about the time of *Charls* the *Bald*, Emperor of the West, *Anno* 877. *Sucropilus* being the first of their Kings, who embraced the Gospell. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church, are both allowed of: that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western. But here it is to be observed, that though this people, according to their division into East and VVest, follow the Rites and Ceremonies of those severall Churches; yet on both sides, it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the usage of the Church of *Rome* in all places else. And yet the People are not all of the Christian faith, the *Turkish* and *Mahometan*, prevailing in those Towns, and Territories, under their obedience.

But though they be not of one religion, they are all of one Language; which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Sclavonian*) Tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Histria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other souldiers of the *Turkish* Empire: the Language generally spreading over all those Countries, which either were *Sarmatian* in their first originall, or made theirs by conquest under the united name of *Slaves*; or otherwise intermixt with them by the necessity of commerce and trade, or dispatch of their common businesses. Insomuch as taking in the subdivisions of the Princes and Countries before specified; it is affirmed by *Gesner* a right learned man, that there

there are no fewer than 60 Nations, which have the *Sclavonian* Tongue for their Vulgar Language. *Windiſch-land.*

Chief Mountains in this Country are thoſe called *Scardonici* (from *Scardona*, one of the beſt Towns of *Illyris*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midſt, and extending along the Coaſts thereof; by *Ptolemy* called *Ardium*. Of Rivers thoſe of ſpecial note amongſt the Antients, were 1. *Titius*, now *Varicchia*, ſeparating *Illyris* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Arſia*, now *Arſa*, the utmoſt bound upon the Weſt; as 3. *Drinus* is upon the Eaſt: of which the firſt falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quevero*, (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Antients;) the other into the *Saw* or *Savus*, ſomewhat weſt of *Belgrade*. 4. *Narſo*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and *Landmarks* being thus ſet out, I ſhould proceed to the diviſion of the Country as now it ſtandeth. But I muſt firſt look on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: in whoſe time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arſia* to the *Titius*, was named *Liburnia*, and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus*, was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the ſtouter and more warlike people, and ſuch as created greateſt troubles to the *Romans*, it pleaſed the Conquerors when they had fully ſubdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Illyricum*: and not ſo only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*; for ſo far the Juriſdiction of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Illyricum*, did at firſt extend. *Huic Præfecto* (ſaith *Zoſimus*) Conſtantinus *ejus inſtitutor, Macedones attribuit, Theſſalos, Cretenſes, Græciam, & circumjacentes inſulas, Epirum utranque, Illyricos, Dacos, Triballos, & Pannonios, Valeriam ſquè & Myſiam ſuperiorem.* And that all theſe did then paſs by the name of *Illyricum*, appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the life of *Claudius* the ſecond, expreſly ſaying *Illyricum, Thracas, Myſos, Dacos, Dalmatias & Pannonias continebat*; as by that of *Socrates* the Hiſtorian, who *lib.* 32. *cap.* 10. calleth *Sirmium*, the chief town of *Pannonia Inferior*, & lib: 5. cap. 6. *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon, urbes Illyricas*, or *Illyrian* Cities. By which accompt *Illyricum* in the largeſt extent of that name, contained no leſs than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to ſay, 1. *Norricum Mediterraneum*, 2. *Noricum Ripenſe*, 3. *Pannonia Superior*, 4. *Pannonia Inferior*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Savia*, 7. *Dalmatia*, 8. *Mœſia ſuperior*, 9. *Dardania*, 10. *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11. *Dacia Ripenſis*, 12. *Macedonia*, 13. *Theſſaly*, 14. *Achaia*, 15. *Crete*, 16. *Epirus vetus*, 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Prevelitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three *Dioceſes*, *viz.* the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*, ſpecially ſo called, containing the ſeaven firſt; 2ly. the *Dioceſe* of *Macedon*, containing the ſeaven laſt; and 3ly. the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four: were governed by the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief ſeat and reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the diviſion of the Empire betwixt the ſons *Theodoſius* the Great, into the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern*; the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the *Weſtern* Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*; and thereupon the ſeat or reſidence of the *Prætorio Præfectus* for *Illyricum*, removed, from *Sirmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter notion, as a *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern* Empire, containing the ſeaven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonias*, and *Valeria* (if at leaſt *Stiermarch* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remain only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this Country lying on both ſides of the *Savus* (whence it had the names;) the laſt, thoſe parts hereof which lye towards the Sea, known by the antient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called, being added to it. But as *new Lords* give *new Laws*, ſo they give *new names*. The Country being divided by the *Sclavi* in two Kingdomes, *viz.* of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*; of which the firſt conteined the Province of *Savia*; the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelf alone; being indeed the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi*, is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*; we find it ſubdivided into theſe ſix parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Windiſchland*, 2. *Croatia*, 3. *Boſnia*, 4. *Dalmatia*, 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Sclavonian Iſlands*.

1. *WINDISCHLAND.*

WINDISCHLAND is bonnd on the Eaſt, with part of the *Lower Hungary*, from which ſeparated by a line drawn from St. *Nicolas* near the River *Dravus*, to the town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which fals into the *Savus*: on the Weſt, with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedome of *Auſtria*; on the North, with the River *Dravus*; on the South, with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch* as the *Land* or Country of the *Winithi*, or *Vendi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windeſch*: and antiently for ſo much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*; till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their poſſeſſions; from whom named *Windiſchland*, as before.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1 *Windiſch-greits*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Vinundria* and *Vindomana* of the Antients. 2. *Sagona*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiſka*, on the South, and *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5, *Novigrod*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petrowya*, ſituate at the foot of the mountains, which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*, and divide *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7. *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſakhen*, (the *Siſſia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) ſituate on the *Saw*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Zulp*; famous for the notable reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found, *Anno* 1593. Who hoping by the conqueſt of this Province, to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entred

it

Croatia, &c.

it with a puiſſant army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowits*) and the ſtrong Town of *Wihits* in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intreched before this Town. But the Town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their batteries and aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccour them: by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were ſlain in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus*, as they fled haſtily, and (through that great haſt) blindly, from the ſword of the Conqueror.

This Province, for the moſt part, is under the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: thoſe parts of it which lye next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the tyranny and bondage of the *Turkiſh* Gariſons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North, with *Windiſchland*, from which parted by the River *Vna*, or *Wana*; on the Eaſt, with *Boſnia*; on the South, with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the Weſt, with *Carniola*. The reaſon of the name I find not among my Authors; but only it was impoſed by the *Sclaves* at their firſt comming hither: who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the Mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*; including *Boſnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Country for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the branches of the Mountains *Babii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; yet reaſonably fruitfull, ſtored with all neceſſarie proviſions for the life of man: and would yield more increaſe and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*; to whoſe tyranny and oppreſſions it hath been, and is ſtill expoſed. The people for the generall are held to be good ſouldiers, mentioned in our modern ſtories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Towns in it are 1. *Maſch* or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Antients. 2. *Oſtrowits*, a ſtrong port Port of the ſame Frontire; 3. *Wihits*, by the *Duch* called *Bihigen*, by the Antients *Funium*, the *Metropolis* or chief place of the Country, encompaſſed like an Iland by the River *Vna*, and fortified with ſtrong works by the help of Art: but taken by the *Turk*, *Anno* 1592. and all the ſouldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the ſurrendry. 4. *Zeng*, 5. *Wackat*, 6. *Tarnaw*, 7. *Modriſch*, of which little memorable.

This Country with the reſt included antiently under this name, was one of the two Kingdomes of *Sclavonia*; the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007. the *Venetians* having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Towns on the Sea ſide, firſt ſet footing there. How the whole Country of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*, ſhall be ſhewn anon. Held, part of it in the right thereof, by the houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turks* in the way of conqueſt: the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Servia*, a province of *Dacia*; on the Weſt, with *Croatia*; on the North, with the River *Savus*, and the Eaſt parts of the *Lower Hungary*; on the South with *Dalmatia*. So called as ſome think from the River *Boſna*, which runneth thr ough it; as others, from the *Beſſi* a people of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither; by the change of a Vowel called *Boſſi*, whence the Country *Boſnia*.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1. *Jaitza*, by the *Latines* called *Jazyga*, ſituate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottome whereof almoſt encompaſſed with two rivers, which there uniting paſs from thence unto the *Savus*. The town by reaſon of the rocky præcipices, of the Hill, the unformableneſs of the River, and an inacceſſible Caſtle, held to be impregnable: the *Metropolis* in former times of this petit Kingdome, and the ordinarie Sepulture for the Kings thereof. 2. *Warboſons*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3. *Cazach*, the uſual reſidence or retiring place of the *Boſnian* Kings. 4. *Schwanica*, not much obſervable. 5. *Dorobiza*, the firſt Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his conqueſt of this Kingdom; as 6. *Clyſſa* was the laſt; the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken it it.

This Country, antiently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*; under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdome: but the preciſe time when, I find not. Some ſay, about the year 1420. If ſo, a Kingdome of late date, and ſhort continuance. For in the year 1464. *Mahomet* the Great, firſt Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Conſtantinople*, and almoſt all the reſt of *Greece*, caſt his eye upon it, ſuddenly ſuppriſed it: and and having taken *Stephen* the laſt King hereof, moſt barbarouſly commanded him to be flead alive. After whoſe death this Kingdome was converted to a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and governed by one of the *Baſſas* of it; as it ſtill continueth.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Albania*, from which parted by the River *Driſo*; on the Eaſt, with the *Titius* (now *Variecha*) which divides it from *Liburnia*; on the North, with *Boſnia*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Sclavonia*, retaineth its antient name and bounds. So called from *Dalminium* the chief town hereof in the time of the *Romans*,

from

from which the people were called *Dalmatæ*, and the Countrey *Dalmatia*. *Dalmatia.*

The Countrey in the time of the *Romans* was full of woods, and those woods of *Robbers*, who from thence issued out to make spoil and booty. *Dalmatæ sub sylvis agunt, inde ad latrocinia promptissimi*, saith the Historian. And by the advantage of these woods, they intercepted and discomfited *Gabinius*, one of *Cæsars* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 *horse*, and 15 Companies of *foot* towards *Macedonia*, to the aid of his General against *Pompey*. But their woods being destroyed, they became more peaceable; and instead of *Robberies* by Land, began to exercise themselves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coasts and commodious Havens served exceeding fitly.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Sebenic*, on the Sea-side, not far from the influx of *Titius* or *Variecha*: by *Ptolemie* called *Sicum*, in whose time a Colonie of *Roman* Souldiers, sent hither by the Emperour *Claudius*. 2. *Salona*, a *Roman* Colonie also, one of the *Juridical Resorts* for these parts of the Province, and the ordinary *Arsenal* for their Navies. Renowned in antient stories for the retreat of *Diocletian*, a Native of this Country: who having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much felicity, but a great deal of cruelty, deposed himself, and retired to this City; where he followed the trade of a *Gardener*, working with his own hands, and observing with great content the productions of nature. Insomnch that when *Maximianus Herculius* his associate (who at his perswasion had done the like) invited him to resume the Empire, he returned this answer. *Utinam possitis visere olera nostris manibus plantata, &c.* that if he would come unto *Salona*, and see how well the *Worts* which he had planted with his own hands, did thrive and prosper; he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expression of a setled and contented mind. The name, and some of the ruines doe still remain, to preserve the memory of so remarkable a place. 2. *Spalato*, East of *Sebenic*, a Sea town, and an Archbishops See, who writes himself *Primate* of *Dalmatia*; as antiently and of right he was, till the Bishop of *Venice* being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the 4th, *Anno* 1450. assumed that title to himself, together with a superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as subordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who seeming to loath the *Romish* superstition, came for refuge in *England*, *Anno* 1616. and having here both by preaching and writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what projects, he declared himself to be of another mind, *Anno* 1622. and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may say of him, as *Socrates* in his Ecclesiastical History saith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Constantius*, was a Christian; under *Julian*, a Pagan; and a Christian again under *Jovinian*; τοιοῦτος ὢν τὴν γνώμην καὶ ἐν ἀρχῇ καὶ ἐν τέλει Ἐκεβόλιος πρότερόν τι καὶ ὕστερον. *So wavering and unconstant a turn-coat was* Ecebolius, *from his beginning to his end.* But *Ecebolius* sped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his repentance; but this infatuated man imprisoned in the Castle of *Angelo*, and his dead body burnt to ashes. A just reward for so great levitie, and so grosse *Apostacy*, as he had shewed unto the world in his going hence. 4 *Almissa*, the *Piguritium* of *Ptolemie*, mounted on a high rock, and defended with an impregnable Castle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and spatious *Chersonese*, not far from which the River *Naron*, (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Castle Novo*, a strong Fortress within the Gulf of *Catharo*, now in possession of the *Turks*. 7. *Antibari*, on the further or Eastern side of the Bay, an Archbishops See; but that and the Sees of his *Suffragan* Bishops, being seven in number, now in possession of the *Turks*. 8. *Catharo*, on the same side of the Bay, by *Ptolemie* called *Ascravium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a strong hold for the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and giving name unto the *Gulf*: which, formerly called *Sinus Rhizoniscus*, from *Rhizana* (now *Rhizins*) situate at the bottom of it; is at this time called from this Town, *Golfo de Catharo*. 9. *Dolcigno*, by *Ptolemie* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians*. 10. *Scutari*, more within the land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolemie* and *Antoninus*) strongly seated on a steep Rock, memorable for the stout resistance which it made for a whole year, against the whole puissance of *Mahomet* the 2d. battered for the most part of that time, with 70 pieces of *Ordnance* of wondrous bigness, especially that called the *Princes peece*, which carried a stone or bullet of 1200 *l.* weight; but taken at the last, *Anno* 1578. Not far from this Town, is the great Lake, called by *Strabo*, *Labeates*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compass, and environed on all sides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which issueth the *Drinus*, now called *Driana*, which parting *Sclavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, passeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Alessio*, the *Lissus* of *Ptolemie*, the furthest town of all *Dalmatia*, towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here; whereof more hereafter. 12. *Medon*, raised out of the ruines of *Diocles*, an antient and famous City, the birth-place of the Great Emperour *Diocletian*, spoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province, situate on the River *Drinus*; first sacked by *Marcius Figulus* a *Roman* Consul, *An. U. C.* 689. and after, on a new revolt by one *Nasica*, spoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two such ruines to revive again; nothing being now left of it, but the name and memory.

Betwixt the *Chersonese* of *Stagno*, and the *Gulf* of *Catharo*, stands the town and territory of *RAGUSI*; not subject, as all the rest are, either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themselves by their own Lawes and Magistrates, as a *Free Common-wealth*: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Zechins* yearly in way of tribute, and as much in Presents; discharged in that regard of *Customs* and *Impositions*, in all his Dominions. It was antiently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponnesus*.) But that town being razed by the *Gothes*, the Inhabitants (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themselves, built this in the place of it, at the foot of a steep Mountain; enjoying a pleasant situation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port; forced

out

Liburnia. out of the water, by the art and industry of workmen. The town well built, fortified with walls, and a well-furnished Castle; now an Archbishops See, and a noted *Emporie*: rich, and strong in shipping, commanding over a small and barren territory within the land, and some pleasant *Ilands* in the Sea. So that the riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues rising out of the *Earth*, but by the benefit of their traffique upon the *Waters*: secured therein by the protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other side preserved by the State of *Venice* from being a prey to their *Protectors*. Of more wealth heretofore, than they are at the present. At what time they traded to most parts of this Western world, in those great Vessels which from hence were called *Raguses*, but corruptly *Argosies*: the last of which (their number lessening with their trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the war of *England*, *An.* 1588. in which action it was lost and wracked on the *Coast* of *Ireland*.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Countrey of *Zara*, called antiently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* specially so named, is bounded on the East, with *Dalmatia*; on the West, with *Histria*; on the North, with *Croatia*; and on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long discontinued) from *Zara*, the chief town thereof, the *Jadera* of *Ptolemie* and the antients; a *Roman* Colonie at that time, now an Archbishops See; enjoying a safe and large Port, and situate on a low *Chersonese* thrusting out like a *Promontorie* into the *Adriatick*; belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom well fenced and fortified against forein invasions. For the possession and command of this Town, there have been great wars betwixt the *Hungarians*, and the *Venetians*: to whom it seemeth to be of such importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns, of *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*, pretending against *Sigismund* of *Luxembourg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this town is the Church of S. *John de Malvatia*, which was built by a company of *Saylors*; who being in a tempest, made a vow, that if they escaped, they would consecrate a Temple to S. *John de Malvatia*, whose morter should be tempered with *Malmsey*: and accordingly they paid their vows. Far lesse did another Master of a ship intend to perform his promise, though he spoke bigger; who in a like extremity of danger, promised our *Lady* to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main mast of his ship. For when one of his *mates* jogging him, told him he had promised an impossibility: Tush *fool* (replyed the Master) we must speak her fair in time of need; *but if ever I come a shore, I will make her be content with a Candle of eight to the pound.* And in a like fit of devotion was he, who on the same occasion plainly told God, That he was no common beggar, he never troubled him with prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other towns herein considerable, are 1 *Albona*, retaining still the old name (the *Alvona* of *Ptolemie*) situate near the River *Arsia*, the dividet of this Province from *Histria*. 2 *Flavona*, or *Flanona*, situate against the Gulf of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongst Saylors for frequent tempests raised on every winde. 3. *Zegna*, by *Ptolemie* and *Plinie* called *Senia*, situate on a flat or level. 4. *Nona*, of old called *Aenona*, compassed with the Sea. 5. *Scrifia*, now a poor Village, in the place where stood the *Argyrutum* of *Plinie*. 6. *Scardona*, now a mean Village also, heretofore of great note, and the *Juridical Resort* for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring mountains had the name of *Scardonici*; the bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The antient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is said, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium*, or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividentia* of the whole *Illyricum*. The people hereof called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to *Piracies*; and for their better speed therein, the Authors and Inventors of those swift vessels which were called *Liburnicæ*, and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*,

Ibis Liburnis *inter alta navium*
Amice propugnacula.

That is to say:

In a *Liburnian* shalt thou be
Amongst the stoutest ships at Sea.

In imitation of which Vessels being swift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their wealth and pride, invented a kind of *Chair* or *Litter*, (such as those we call *Sedans*) wherein they were carried on mens shoulders with such ease and pleasure, that they could not only sleep or read, but write in them also: the Porters or Bearers of them of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the fashion of the Vessel which they did resemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of these thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyre:

Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret super ora Liburno.
Atque obiter leget, *aut* scribet, *vel* dormiet *intus*,
Namque facit somnum *clausa lectica fenestra.*

Thus

Thus *Engliſhed* by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent tranſlation of that harſh *Satyriſt*.

When buſineſs calls, a crowd the rich man ſhuns,
And o'r mens heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, *writes*, and *ſleeps* within it as he goes,
For *ſleep* will come if he the curtains cloſe.

Beſides which office of *Chair-carriers* or *Sedan-men*, as we call them now; this people being, when once conquered, a ſervile Nation, furniſhed the *Romans* with thoſe *Beadles*, whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the fields to their publick buſineſſes; to which the ſame Poet alludeth, in the next *Satyre*, ſaying, *Clamante* Liburno, *Currite*, *jam ſedit*, *&c.* But to proceed, the nearneſs of this Countrey to the *Adriatick*, occaſioned the Bay of *Quernero*, commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be ſometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other ſide of it, to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a ſhole of Ilands lying on the coaſt hereof, 60 at leaſt in number, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. To which and other Ilands of the *Adriatick*, we are now to haſten, leaving the ſtorie of *Illyricum* to the cloſe of all.

6. The *SCLAVONIAN* ILANDS.

Along the Coaſts of *Sclavonia*, lie a cluſter of ILANDS, to the number of a thouſand, as is ſaid by *Plinie*: moſt of which (if indeed ſo many) are but rocks, not Ilands, or not inhabited at all, or of any note. The principal whereof, and ſuch as deſerve place here, are 1. the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abſyrtides*. 3. The Iſles of *Raguſi*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Liſſa*, and *Brazzia*; the reſt not worth the looking after, as to our deſign: the whole number of the Inhabitants reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 perſons.

1. The *LIBURNADES* ſaid by *Strabo* to be 60 in number, lie all along the Coaſt of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zaro*. The chief whereof are 1 *ISSA*, now called *Pago*, conteining 100 miles in compaſs, having a town of the ſame name; but in all that tract of ground not above 1500 inhabitants in the time of my Author, by reaſon of the ſharp air, and great want of fewell. The Salt-pits here yield great commodity, not only to the people themſelves, but alſo to the State of *Venice*, ſupreme Lord hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Tran* and *Trahu*, ſo called from the chief Town hereof, built by thoſe of *Iſſa*: ſo near the Continent, that it ſeems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with ſome little difference. 3. *Pharus*, ſo called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom once a Colonie, long ſince come to ruine. It is now called *Lezina*, the greateſt of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 miles in compaſs, and very fruitfull for the bigneſs. It hath a town of the ſame name, which enjoys a ſafe and ſpacious Harbour; unwalled, and of no great beauty, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the ſhipping in it. The birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, ſo often mentioned in the ſtories of *Greece*, and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, ſo called from the River *Abſyrtus*, which thereabout falls into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*,

Et cadit Adriacas *ſpumans* Abſyrtus *in undas*.

Abſyrtus foaming with his haſt,
Into the *Adria* falls at laſt.

But whether that river were ſo called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abſyrtus* the ſon of *Aetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to ſeek; or for ſome other reaſon, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be ſo named from the ſcattering of his limbs hereabouts by *Medea* his unnatural ſiſter, as is ſaid by *Plinie*: that cruel fact being done on the ſhores of the *Euxine*; the place called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occaſion. But for theſe Ilands, being in number many, as before was ſaid, two only are of ſpecial note, that is to ſay, 1. *Vegia*, or *Viglio*, not far from *Zegna* on the firm land, containing in compaſs betwixt 80. and 100 miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants; the moſt populous of all theſe Seas. It hath a town of ſame name, with a very fair harbour: the Iland, by *Plinie*, called *Curieta*, the chief towns of it in his time being *Pſulſinium*, and *Curicum*. 2. *Abſorus* as *Ptolemie*, *Abſyrtium* as *Plinie* calls it; in whoſe time it was one Iland only, but now divided into two, by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherſo*, the other *Oſero*: Both joyned together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together making up 140 miles in compaſs; each of them having one town only, and that of the ſame name with the Iland; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 perſons. Stored with ſufficiency of corn, plenty of wine, and abundance of wood, great quantities whereof are ſent yearly to *Venice*. They have alſo goodly herds of Cattel, and great flocks of ſheep, affording by their fleſh, wool, cheeſe, and butter, a good increaſe of profit to the owners of them.

3. The

Illyricum

3. The *Ilands* of *Raguſi*, (for ſo I call them which belong to that Common-wealth) are but three in number. 1. *Gravoſa*, a very pleaſant place, full of Gardens of Orenges, Lemmons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Languſte*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Raguſians* Farms, made rich by the great charge and induſtry of the ſeveral *Occupants*, ſo as to yeeld them wine, oil, and moſt excellent fruits: which they receive more plentifully from a goodly plain, ſituate in the midſt hereof, and naturally more fruitfull than the other parts. Near to this laſt Iland is good fiſhing for *Sprats*: and in both an Art of making their trees to bring forth *Oyſters*, by bending down their boughs, and ſtaying them under the water with ſtones; ſo as in two years there are ſo many *Oyſters* faſtned unto them, as is ſtrange to ſee, and in the third year they are very good meat. 3. *Melida*, lying betwixt *Raguſi* and the Iſle of *Curzola*, by *Pluie* called *Melita*, and on that ground ſuppoſed by ſome to be that Iland on which S. *Paul* did ſuffer ſhipwrack, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarous*, which the Text joyns to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Iland betwixt *Greece* and *Italy*, in the times of S. *Paul*; and his landing when he parted thence in *Syracuſa*, an Haven of *Sicil*, ſo far from this, ſo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, ſufficiently refell this fancie, though otherwiſe not improbably grounded.

4. Of thoſe which are known only by one ſingle name, the chief are *ARBE*, ſo called in the time of *Pliny*, from the beſt Town of it; but by *Ptolemy* it is named *Scardona*. A pleaſant Iland, in compaſſe about 30 miles, and containing ſome 3000 Inhabitants, the only Haven-leſſe Iſle of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect abundantly recompenſed by the natural ſweetneſs of the place. Which ſo enticed certain diſſolute Rovers of *Auſtria*, that they ſeiſed upon it, *Anno* 1618. and had like to have occaſioned an heavy war betwixt *Ferdinand*, Archduke, of the Houſe of *Graiz* (not long after choſen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*; if *Philip* the 3d. of *Spain* had not made up the breach.

5. *CURZOLA*, by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melana*, more rightly *Corcyra Melana*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the Sea *Ionian*: the chief Town of it being of the ſame name with the Iland, was founded by the *Gnidians* of the Iſle of *Crete*. Sufficiently fruitfull, but of wine eſpecially; 40 miles long, in compaſſe 90. and very populous, for the bigneſs; notwithſtanding that the people being Sea-faring men, doe much uſe the Seas, and build many ſhips. In the year 1571. a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluz Aly*, General of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with a Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenus* the *Venetian* Governour, together with the Townſmen and Garriſon Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The ſilly women thus forſaken, and preferring death before diſhonour, defended the walls; and with fire, ſtones, and ſuch other weapons as they had, they beat off the enemy: till at the laſt a violent tempeſt forced the *Turkiſh* General to remove his Gallies further off, to a place of ſafety.

6. *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three ſmall Iſles, not otherwiſe memorable, but for their misfortunes; ſpoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carried thence 1600 *Chriſtians* into cruel bondage. The reſt I purpoſely omit, rather Rocks than Ilands; barren and ſtonie for the moſt part, and not much inhabited.

§ The antient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia*, and *Dalmatia*, were the *Japodes* bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtari* confining upon *Macedon*; the *Mazæi*, in the midſt about *Salona*; the *Peiruſtæ*, lying towards *Pæmonia*; the *Derri*, *Ceraunii*, *Daurſii*, *Vardæi*, *Siculotæ*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of inferiour note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*; and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of theſe the *Liburnian Illyrians*, (*Illyrici ſeu Liburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the firſt who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent *Piracies*; but more by murdering the *Ambaſſadours* which were ſent unto them to require ſatisfaction; *Teuta* their Queen, a proud and Imperious Dame, commanding execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for ſo many injuries, under the conduct of *Centimalus*, one of their *Conſuls*, they were overthrown (as having more of the *Pirate* than the ſouldier in them) ſome of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the wrong done to the *Ambaſſadours*; an yearly tribute impoſed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greateſt part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their *Confederates*. But he proving unfaithfull to them in their war with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their laſt King, who commanded over *Illyricum*, ſiding againſt them with *Perſeus*, King of *Macedonia*; *Anicius* the *Prætor* is ſent with a ſufficient Army, to make an end of that work. Who uſed ſuch diligence therein, that *Scordra* the chief town of the Kingdome, was taken; and the king himſelf, together with his wife and children made priſoners: by conſequence the whole war ended, *antequam geri Romæ nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet ſubjects, the whole Country, on the taking of *Gentius*, being made a *Province* of the *Romans*, *Anno V.C.* 586. employed at *Rome* in many ſervil offices, as before was ſaid; and then the *Dalmatians* began to caſt off the yoke. But *Dalminium* their chief City being firſt ſacked by *Marius Figulus*, and after by *Naſica* before mentioned; they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, when they again rebelled at the inſtigation of one *Baato*, a man very potent with the people, who

Who having ten years together maintained the liberty of his countrey, at last broken and wearied by the forces of *Germanicus*, and *Tiberius*, he submitted himself unto the two *Generals*: who asking the reason of his revolt, were answered, because the *Romans* sent not *shepherds to keep, but* wolves *to devour their flocks*. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his command; as the *Gothes* also did having vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Masters of *Italy*, and the rest of his purchases. But the kingdom of the *Goths* being brought to an end, by the good fortune of *Justinian*, and the valour of *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of his Commanders (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the *Eastern* Empire: continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperors, till the time of *Phocas* that bloudy Tyrant; when made a prey to the *Sclaves*. *Illyricum.*

Of these though we have spoken before in several places, as their fortunes and affairs have led us: yet being this is the only countrey which preserves their name, we will here speak more exactly of them, than we have done hitherto; especially as to their manners, name, and first *Original*; and finally of their successes in this countrey. And first for their *Original*, I take it for a thing past question that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Ister*; uniting themselves under this name, in their undertakings and attempts on the *Eastern* Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Franks*, and *Almans*, in their actions and atchievements against the *Western*. But why they took this name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the original of it from *Slowo*, which in the *Sclavonian* tongue signifieth a *Speech* or *word*, because they were all of one common language: others from *Slawa*, signifying in that language *Fame* or *Glory*, in regard of that great fame and honour which they had atchieved, by their successes on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winithi*, *Winuli*, or *Vendi*, a *Sarmatian* people, called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, possessed in his time, of the further shores of the River *Ister*, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*; and by that name wasting and foraging these Provinces, and other parts of that Empire in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I see no reason why we should look further for the name of *Sclaves*, than from these *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* subdued this Countrey, and called it *Sclavinia*, or *Sclavonia*, after their own name: by that and other fortunate successes on the *Eastern* Empire, and the honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the rest of the scattered tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in name and action; and try their fortunes in the conquest of the *West* of *Europe*, as these had done already on the *East* parts of it. In which design they sped so well, that they became Masters of almost all those countreys, which lie betwixt the River *Vistula*, and the *Euxine* Sea; the *Adriatick*, and the *Baltick*: communicating their language unto all the Provinces and Nations, conquered by them; and to most, their manners, rites, and customs. Their Government at first by Kings, but so that the succession seldom held in a Race or Family; and those that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongst themselves, that he who killed a Tyrant should succeed in his place: they had few Kings whom some or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then dispatch him out of the way; that a greater Tyrant than himself (as it commonly happeneth in such cases) might possess the Power. Insomuch that they had a new king almost every year, none of them for the space of an hundred years dying natural deaths; and all that while the People (as it needs must be) most miserably torn in pieces by intestine wars. Not cured of this distemper, til the several Tribes and Nations of them, (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, these here, and those of other Countries) had their several Princes, succeeding one another in a Regular way. Their Religion *Gentilism* at the first. For being originally Heathens, they worshipped such Gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jessan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had also a Goddess called *Pagode*, to whom they prayed for fair weather, and a temperate Air. To their children they used to give no name, till they began to grow great, and then conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their first hair, and offered it as a pledge of their future service: at which solemnity they called together their friends and kinsfolk to make merry, with bankets, dancing, singing, and all kind of sports; offering in sacrifice an Hog, and wine mixed with honey, somewhat like *Metheglin*.

The Gospel was first generally received amongst them by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, two right godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circassians*, two great *Asian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. With good success as to the work, and with no small honour and advantage to those Patriarchs also: the Eastern *Sclaves* inhabiting those parts of this Country which lye next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Transylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The rest, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungarie*, and the *German* Emperors, submitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never sowed.

But to return unto the story, the *Sclaves* thus setled in this Countrey (since called *Sclavonia*) continued absolute Masters of it, under the Title of Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, til the year 970. when growing unsufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having ravished or surprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies; they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make war upon them: which ended in the loss of *Lezina* and *Curzola*, two of their best Ilands, and almost all the Sea-towns on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, possessed for the most part, since that time, by the State of *Venice*: a tribute also of 100 barrels of Wine, and a present to the Duke of 3000 Coney-skins, being laid upon them; *Petro Orseola* being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir*, King of the *Sclavoni-*

ans. Afterwards *Zelamirus* the laſt king, dying without iſſue, bequeathed the kingdom to his wife; and ſhe as freely to her brother *Ladiſlaus*, King of *Hungary*, ſurnamed the *Saint*: the right hereof accrewing by his means to the Kings of *Hungary*; but the poſſeſſion of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*; the cauſe of much war and bloodſhed betwixt thoſe Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the fray, and got the greateſt part for himſelf, by their diſagreements. Betwixt theſe three, *Sclavonia* at this time doth ſtand thus divided: the *Venetians* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of the *Ilands*, and all the Sea-Coaſts from the River *Arſia*, to the Bay of *Catharo*, (the City and Common-wealth of *Raguſi*, excepted only) the houſe of *Auſtria*, in right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windſchland*, and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who firſt ſet footing here in the reign of *Mahomet* the ſecond) the whole kingdom of *Boſnia*, the Patronage of *Raguſi*, ſome Towns in *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*, and all the reſidue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Catharo* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Sclavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinals Hat, the ſtrings pendant, and platted in a true Loves-knot, meeting in the Baſe, *Gules*.

There are in *Sclavonia*
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 26.

And thus much for *SCLAVONIA*.

OF
DACIA.

DACIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and ſome part of *Thrace*; on the Weſt, with *Hungarie*, and *Sclavonia*; on the North, with *Podolia*, and ſome other Members of the Realm of *Poland*; on the South, with the reſt of *Thrace*, and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here firſt inhabited: in *Strabo* better known by the name of the *Davi*, who proving, when firſt known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themſelves to ſervice in hope of gain; occaſioned the *Romans* in their *Comœdies*, and common Speech, to call a *Sycophant* or *Servant*, by the name of *Davus*.

It lyeth on both ſides of the *Danow*, frontiring all along the *Upper* and the *Lower Hungary*, and ſome part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7th. *Climate* to the 10th. ſo that the longeſt Summers day, in the moſt Northern parts thereof, is near 17 hours; and in the moſt Southern, 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this accompt with reference to the other limits before laid down, it differeth much in ſituation and dimenſions, from the antient *Dacia*, deſcribed by *Ptolomie*; that lying wholly on the North ſide of the *Danow*, but taking in ſo much of the *Upper Hungary*, as lyeth on the Eaſt ſide of *Tibiſcus*: this comprehending all the reſt of the antient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſias* and *Dardania*, and in a word, the whole *Dacian* Diocele in the largeſt extent thereof, the Province of *Prævalitana* excepted only; which though a Member of this Dioceſe, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer underſtanding whereof we may pleaſe to know, that *Dacia* properly ſo called, was ſituate on the North ſide of *Danubius*, as before was ſaid; extending as far Weſtward as the River *Tibiſcus*, where it frontired on the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*: inhabited by a military and valiant people, who many times, eſpecially when the froſt did favour them, paſſed over the River, and infeſted the *Roman* Provinces. And though repreſſed and made tributary by *Julius Cæſar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Auguſtus*; who ſending *Lentulus* againſt them with a puiſſant Army, compelled them to retire on the other ſide of the River, planting the Southern banks thereof with ſtrong Towns and Garriſons to reſtrain them from the like incurſions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia tunc non victa, ſummota atque dilata eſt*, ſaith the Hiſtorian; though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was remo-

ved

ved somewhat further off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that people. After this, from the time of *Cotiso*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the reign of *Decebalus* their last King, a man both ready in advice, and quick in execution. Against him, *Domitian* made war by *Julianus* his Lieutenant; who gave *Decebalus* a great overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his wit had not better befriended him than his sword. For, fearing that the *Romans* making use of their victory, would enter and take possession of his Country; he pitched in the way a great number of stakes in battel aray, putting on them the old Corslets of his Souldiers; which looking like so many men of arms, frighted the enemy from approaching the Countrey. *Trajan* was the next that made war against him, and brought him to that exigent, that having with much loss endured some few skirmishes, he yeelded himself, and is acknowledged a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But being one of a high spirit, and born in a *free air*, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own destruction: for seeing by the valour of *Trajan*, his kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and destroyed; he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Galienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*. Who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil sort of the *Natives*, on the other side of the River; placing them betwixt the two *Mysias*, (in some part of each) and calling the Country given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*: leaving the *Old* unto the *Gothes*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose *thorow-fare* it was in all their enterprises and designs on the *Roman* Empire. Divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*; this lying on the banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the land: which with the Provinces of *Mœsia superior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. Subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this state till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Country, subducted it from the command of that *Præfect*, & instituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Diocese only in Civil matters, and a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church; both setled in the City of *Justiniana*, of his own foundation: enlarging the *jurisdiction* of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all those preheminences, which had been antiently enjoyed by the greater *Patriarchs*. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Sclaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars*, and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dismembred it peece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the soil and people, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills, and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief guides in the *Chorographie* or description of them.

Transylvania.

The Rivers then of most note are, 1. The *Danow*, which here, at *Axium*, or *Axiopelis* a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister*, continuing it from thence to its *Æstuarium*, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with 7 mouths or chanels: that is to say, 1. *Pence*, 2. *Naracustoma*, 3. *Calostoma*, 4. *Plendostoma*, 5. *Spireostoma*, 6. *Boreostoma*; the name of the last I find not amongst my Authors, *quia languidissimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemie*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Marisch*, 3. *Termes*, 4. *Alluta*, keeping its old name, 5. *Hierasus*, all of old *Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Ister*. As do also *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Servia*; and 6. *Sucoma* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Mysia*. Chief Mountains of it are 1. the *Carpathian*, 2. *Scardus*, 3. *Ozbelus*; whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said, we will proceed to the description of the several Provinces, which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1. *Transylvania*, 2. *Moldavia*, 3. *Walachia*, 4. *Rascia*, 5. *Servia*, 6. *Bulgaria*: the first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North side of the *Danow*; the two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA, is bounded on the East, with *Moldavia*; on the West, with the *Upper Hungarie*; on the North, with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South, with *Rascia*, and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungarie*, the name in *Latine* signifying the Country beyond the woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Seben Burgen*, from seven Castles or strong holds antiently built in it, to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcastrensis*, in some *Latine* Authors, upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists*, it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The soil doth naturally abound with wine, corn, and fruit, of which it was so plentifull in the times of the *Romans*, that the Emperour *Trajan* caused a piece of money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-copia*, and in the other a plain *Tablet* with this inscription, *Abundantia Dacia*. Particularly besides great plenty of wheat, and most excellent wines, it yeeldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacotoons, Musk-melons, not inferior to those of *Italy*; and also *Centaurie* good store, and many other *Medicinal* plants; some mines of gold and silver, many of Iron, Brasse, and Copper; and not a few veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of cattel such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a *Floren*, or half a Crown a peece; and a most notable breed of Horses: not to say any thing of that variety of wild beasts, which they have in their Woods and Forests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for food and pleasure. So populous withall (for

Transylvania.

the moſt fruitfull Countries are commonly populous alſo) that *Caſtaldo* Governour hereof in the minority of *Stephen*, the 4th. ſon of *John de Sepuſio*, *Anno* 1551. advanced an Army of 70000 able men, conſiſting of the Natives of this Country only, for the ſiege of *Lippe*, a ſtrong Town of *Hungarie*, but on the borders of this Country.

The people are much of the ſame nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time ſubject; but ſomewhat more ſtubborn and untractable; ſpeak the ſame language that they do, with ſome difference in the *Dialect* only: converted at the ſame time to the *Chriſtian* Faith, and under the ſame forms of *Eccleſiaſtical* government. In former times they uſed to read, as the Jews do, from the right hand to the left; but of late herein conform to the Weſtern Nations, from whom they are generally deſcended.

For that the people of this Country are the progenie of the *Saxons*, is evident by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2ly. We find that *Charls* the *Great*, like a *politique Conquerour*, placed many of that Nation here, weakning ſo their ſtrength at home, and fortifying the bounds of his Empire. And 3ly. by a ſtory recited by *Verſtegan*, which we touched in our deſcription of *Brunſwick*; the whole narration is this. *Halberſtade* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Muſician whom they called the *Pied-piper*, undertaking for a great maſſe of money to deſtroy; they agree: hereupon he tuned his pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after them, are drowned in the next River. This done, he asketh his pay, but is denyed; whereupon he ſtriketh up a new fit of mirth: all the children male & female of the Town follow him into the hill *Hamelen*, which preſently cloſed again. The Parents miſs their children, and could never hear news of them; now of late ſome have found them in this Country, where I alſo leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is ſaid to happen the 22 of *July* 1376. ſince which time it is ſaid that the people of *Halberſtade* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other inſtrument to be ſounded in that ſtreet: and eſtabliſhed a Decree, that in all writings of *Contract* or *Bargain*, after the date of our *Saviours Nativity*, the date alſo of this their childrens *tranſmigration* ſhould be added *in rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain ſtill ſome of the old *Scythians*, planted there by *Attila*. Out of thoſe Members is the body of this State compoſed: ſo ſtrong and populous that it is conceived to be able to raiſe an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 horſe and 12000 foot for the battel of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1596. being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* ſent unto that ſervice.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1. *Hermanſted*, in *Latine*, *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was ſituate) ſo named of one *Herman* the Founder of it; little inferiour to *Vienna* for ſtrength or greatneſs, well-fortified both by Art and Nature. 2. *Cronſtad*, in *Latine* called *Corona*, by ſome *Braſſovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*, this laſt name given it by *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it. Situate on the borders of *Walachia*, amongſt fruitfull Mountains, remarkable for a fair Library, a kind of *Academy*, and the moſt noted *Emporie* or *Mart-Town* of all this Country: of great reſort, eſpecially in the time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. 3. *Biſtricium* (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) ſo called from the River *Biſtrice*, which runneth through it: ſo pleaſant and ſo ſweet a Town, that there is no durt or mire to be ſeen at any time; or if there be, the people preſently ſwel up the River, and ſo cleanſe the ſtreets. 4. *Medieſus*, (by the *Dutch*, *Medniſh*) ſo called *quaſi medius Conſeſſus*, becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Country; a Town almoſt as neat as *Biſtrice*. 5. *Segoſwaria*, or *Schesburg*, on the declivity of an hill. 6. *Zabeſus* or *Laiz*, once the chief Town of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; ſituate in a very deep Vally, well-fenced with waters, and thoſe waters well ſtored with fiſh. 7. *Clauſenbourg*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolemie*, in *Latine* called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the ſecond, Emperour, by whom re-edified: at firſt a Colonie of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians* coming in as ſtrangers, were at laſt privileged as Citizens, and inhabit it together with them. The Town well-ſeated in the middle of a pleaſant Plain, encompaſſed with an handſom wall, and beautified with elegant buildings. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Weiſſenberg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemie*, ſituate on a ſmall brook then called *Apnus*, (but now *Oratas*) whence it had the name. Built on the ſide of an hill near the River *Maruch*, (or *Moruſus*) over-looking a large and fruitfull Plain: heretofore a Biſhops See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Prince or *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*; but now a garriſon of *Hungarian* Souldiers, holding it for the Emperour, as King of *Hungarie*.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are 1. *Varadin*, much mentioned in the ſtories of theſe later times, ſince the invaſions of the *Turks*; ſituate on the borders of *Hungarie*. 2. *Thorda*, built in or near the place where ſtood the *Salinæ* of *Ptolemie*, ſo called from the abundance of *Salt-pits* which were then about it. 3. *Enguedine*, by the *Romans* called *Annium*, from a *Cauſey* leading to it, raiſed by one *Annius*, and from him ſo named; ſome fragments whereof are ſtill remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a vein of the beſt Wines. 5. *Fennſchium*, affording very pleaſant Wines alſo, not inferiour to thoſe of *Vennſium* in *Italy*. 6. *Zilahi*, 7. *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8. *Millenback*, not far from which, betwixt it and the Town of *Bros*, is a very ſtrong fortreſſe, commanding a ſtrait and narrow paſſage leading into this Country out of *Hungarie*.

In the North part hereof lyeth the Province called ZACULEIA, inhabited by the *Scyculi*, or old brood of *Scythians*; brought hither by *Attila*, on his firſt conqueſt of this Country; and here ſtill continuing. A people which have much in them of the antient *Huns*, and had heretofore a peculiar

liar language to themselves; but now they speak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the *Dialect* only. But though, by the necessity of commerce and co-habitation, they are brought into the same language; they still retain their antient customs, governed by their own Laws, and living after the same manner as the *Switzers* doe: each of their *Cantons* (seven in number) being absolute in and of it self, but all united with the *Transylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Country, against the several pretensions of the *German* and *Turkish* Emperors. And though they do acknowledge some subjection to the Emperor, as King of *Hungarie*; yet it is but what they list themselves: being antiently privileged from all taxes, more than the paying of a *Bull* for every houshold, in the way of an Herriot, at the *Coronation* of the new King, when and how oft soever it may chance to happen. Their *Cantons* (*Seds* they call them,) are 1 *Sepsi*, 2 *Orbay*, 3 *Kisdy*, 4 *Czyk*, 5 *Gyrgio*, or *Udvarheli*, 6 *Marous Zeek*, and 7 *Aranias Zeek*; so called from the chief town in each division. In former times no *Nobleman*, nor any one of better means and greater eminence than other, was known amongst them: but now of late, that *parity* (or confusion rather) is grown out of credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in power and title, as in other places. *Transylvania.*

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Tauriſci*, *Rhatacenſii*, *Cancoenſii*, the *Burredenſii*, and *Biephi*, *&c.* first conquered by *Lysimachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander* the *Great*; in token whereof, innumerable *medals*, in the age of our *Grandfathers*, were found in this Country, having his Image on the one side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperor *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been shewn already. Being forsaken by the *Romans*, it was won by the *Goths*; their constant dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Hunns*, the next possessors of this Countrie; the road or *thorow-fare* from that time of those barbarous Nations, which out of *Asia* made their inroads on the *Europeans*. Having been successively subdued by the *Sclaves* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen* the first King of *Hungarie*, surnamed the *Saint*; by whose perswasion and inducements, they received the Gospel. Governed after this time, as a member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfectus Militiæ*, or a *Lord Lieutenant*;) a man by reason of the greatnesse of his place and power, of most authoritie in that Kingdom. The names and succession of these *Vaivods*, till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more clear and constant in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of *TRANSYLVANIA*.

1 *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made *Vaivod* hereof by *Uladislaus* the 4th. A man of great valour and renown, the great *Defender* of his Countrie against the *Turks*; whom he overthrew in many battels, especially in that of *Marous*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.

2 *Stephen*, of the noble family of *Battori*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* king of *Hungarie*, the son of *Huniades*.

3 *Stephen* II. surnamed *de Sepusio*, from the place of his Honour or Estate, not so much memorable for any thing, as for being Father of *Barbara*, the wife of *Sigismund* king of *Poland*, and of

4 *John* II. called also *de Sepusio*, after the death of *Lewis* the 2d. chosen king of *Hungarie*, of whom before, amongst the kings of that Realm.

1526 5 *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepusio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungarie*; treacherously murdered for not complying with the *Turks*, *Anno* 1534.

1540 6 *Stephen* III. surnamed *Mailat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the *Vaivodship*; was in the year 1540. confirmed in that dignity.

1541 7 *Stephen* IV. son of *John de Sepusio* the late king of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant; (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungarie* not long before) incroached upon not long after by the said *Solyman*, this Countrey was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* king of *Hungarie*, other lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.

1551 8 *Stephen* V. surnamed *Dobus*, for his valour shewed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made *Vaivod* of this Country by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Countrey should be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the same (under the Vassallage of his Empire) upon one

9 *John* III. whose Family and surname I have no where found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his successors in the kingdom of *Hungary*.

10 *Stephen* VI. surnamed *Battori*, (of which house he was) made *Vaivod* by the *Turk*; and afwards on the commendation of *Amurath* the 3d. chosen king of *Poland*.

1575 11 *Christopher Battori*, brother of *Stephen*, on whose election unto *Poland* he succeeded here, and was the first who leaving the title of *Vaivod*, took that of *Prince* of *Transylvania*.

Moldavia.

12 *Sigiſmund*, ſon of *Chriſtopher*, ſhook off the *Turkiſh* bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and ſlew ſome of their *Baſſas* (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out againſt ſo potent an adverſary, he reſigned his eſtate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour; having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Sileſia*, and an annual penſion of 50000 *Joachims*. But finding his penſion ill paid, he made a new reſignation of it to

1599 13 *Andrew Battori*, couſin of *Sigiſmund*, ſlain within the year by the *Vaivod* of *Valachia*. After whoſe death

1601 14 *Rodolphus* Emperor, and king of *Hungarie*, is admitted Prince of *Tranſylvania*, on the ſecond reſignation of *Sigiſmund*. But his Souldiers behaving themſelves with too great inſolence, *Sigiſmund* was called back again, but never well ſetled: ſo that at laſt he was fain to leave the Country in the power of the Emperor, and retire to *Pragne*, where, in the year 1613. he died unlamented. In the mean time

1604 15 *Juſtine*, or *Iſtivan*, ſurnamed *Botſcay*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the Great *Turk*, and ſupported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*, and being followed by great Companies of thoſe of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperor *Rodolphus* a confirmation of this eſtate unto himſelf, but liberty of Conſcience, and the Free exerciſe of Religion for both the Nations, preſently after which he died, *Decem.* 30. 1606.

1607 16 *Sigiſmund* II. of the noble family of *Ragotzie*, elected in the *February* following by the *Tranſylvanians*; but finding himſelf not able to make his election good againſt the Emperour, and being unwilling to ſubject himſelf unto the *Turks*, after the end of one year he relinquiſhed the Government, and betook himſelf again to a private life.

1608 17 *Gabriel Battori*, of the familie of the former Princes, ſucceeded by the favour of *Achmet* the Great *Turk*: after whoſe death ſo welcom unto his Neighbours and ſubjects

1613 18 *Bethlem Gabour*, by the ſame *Achmet* was made Prince of *Tranſylvania*; a profeſſed Enemy of the houſe of *Auſtria*; but one that with a great deal of noiſe did them little hurt.

1630 19 *Stephen* VII. ſurnamed *Ragotzi*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabour*, ſucceeded Prince by the power and favour of the *Turk*; under whoſe *Clientele* and protection he doth ſtill enjoy it, (as his predeceſſors did before him) againſt all pretenſions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungarie*; as on the other ſide, defended by the *Emperour*, and Crown of *Poland*, from being made thrall unto the *Turks*.

2. MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Sea; on the Weſt, with *Tranſylvania*; on the North, with the River *Nieſter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemie* and the Antients, by which parted from *Podolia* a Province of *POLAND*; and on the South, with *Walachia*.

It is ſo called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Mœtavia*, from its nearneſs to the fens of *Mœotis*; or rather from the *Hunnes* and other people of thoſe fennes, who poſſeſſed the ſame. Others conceive that it was at firſt called *Maurdavia*, i.e. *nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the countrey of the *black Davi*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and ſome others:) ſo named from their complexion, or the colour of their *Caps* and other garments; as *Nigra Ruſsia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occaſion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldava*, which runneth thorow it; as the *Moravians* had that name from the River *Morava*. The nature and Religion of the People we ſhall find in *Valachia*, whereof antiently reckoned for a part.

The country is very fruitful in corn, wine, graſs, and wood; but more uſed for *paſturage* than *tillage*, by reaſon of the great want of people to manure the land: by means wherof it affordeth great plenty of *Beef* and *Mutton*, whereby they ſupply ſome parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Conſtantinople*. And theſe they iſſue out in ſo great a number, that the *tenth penny* exacted by the Prince or *Vaivod*, in the way of *Cuſtom*, amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per annum*: and yet the *Clergy* and the *Gentry* are diſcharged of this *impoſt*. But the main trade of this Country is not driven by the *Natives*: the Port-towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguzian* Merchants, who foreſtall the *Markets*, and barter all their corn and wine into *Ruſſia* and *Poland*; their ſkins, wax, honey, powdered *beef*, Pulſe, and butter, into *Conſtantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 ſhips laden with corn, victuals, and other proviſions neceſſary to the life of man are yearly ſent unto that City.

The country is in a manner round, the *Diameter* each way being near upon 300 *Engliſh* miles: but ſo ill-inhabited by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Coſacks*, that certain *Engliſh* Gentlemen having in the year 1609. travelled at leaſt 240 miles in the country, could meet in all the way but nine towns and villages; and for an hundred miles together, the graſs ſo high that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattel to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities, or towns of note: though it afford two Archbiſhops, and two Biſhops Sees; followers (as all the reſt of the people are) of the traditions and doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The

The principal of those which be are 1. *Occazoma*, or *Zucconia*, the *Vaivods* seat. 2. *Fucciania*, 3. *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4. *Kotjm*, a place of great strength, on the borders of *Poland*; by some called *Cochina*; the ordinary *magazeen* of the Country. 5 *Iassy*, commonly called *Yas*, the chief Town for wealth and trade in all this Province. 6. *Bender*, a strong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7. *Polada* near the *Danow*. 8. *Biaclograd*, or *Bologrove*, situate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Niester*; a strong Town against the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9. *Kele*, anciently called *Achilleia*, situate on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the most part compassed round with the waters of it; and therefore said by *Ptolemie* to be an Iland. 10. *Ac-Germen*, of old called *Asprocastron*, and *Moncastrum*, a very strong Town in the same Coast also: both taken by *Bajazet*, the second Emperour of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1485. But these three Towns are not so properly in *Moldavia*, at least not in *Moldavia* properly so called, as in a little Province called *Bessarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*; formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks* in the year aforesaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A tract inhabited by the *Bessi*, in the times of *Ptolemie*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, setled themselves (as some say) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Bosnia*. *Valachia.*

The whole Country following the fortune of *Transylvania*, and the rest of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Rosses*, was for a while accompted part of the *Russian* Empire; till the dismembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was sometimes *Homager* to the *Polanders*, sometimes to the *Hungarians*, according as the *Vaivods* or Princes of it could find best conditions. By *Mahomet* the *Great* it was made *tributary* to the *Turks*; but the *tribute* at the first very light and easie, not above 2000 Crowns *per annum*: that mighty Emperour, who aimed at more profitable conquests, being loth to spend his forces on so poor a purchase, as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his son, finding how fit it lay for the more absolute command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Bessarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkish* Province, *Anno* 1485. as before was said; imposing on the rest an increase of the former *tribute*, and so left it unto the disposal of its natural Princes. After which time the *Vaivods* fearing to be made Vassals to the *Turks*, did many times rise in Arms against them; aided therein sometimes by the *Hungarians*, and sometimes by the *Polander*; which last pretended to the Soveraignty and *chiefage* of it. *Bogdanus*, *Vaivod* hereof in the time of *Selimus* the second, uniting himself more closely with the *Polonians*; became thereby suspected by the *Turkish* Tyrant, who with a great power chased him out of his Country, and gave the same unto one *John* a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the most part in the *Turkish* Court (where he renounced his faith, and was circumcised) under the yearly tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new made *Vaivod*, was no sooner setled, but he returned again to his first *Religion*, and for that cause grew lesse affected by the *Turks*. Which being observed by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he practised to obtain that dignity for his brother *Peter*; offering to double the said *tribute*, and to assist in subjugation of the Country. The *Turk* accepting of these offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fall into *Moldavia*: and were so gallantly received by the noble *Vaivod*, that few of them escaped the slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old friend *Czarnieviche*; and against faith given barbarously murdered by the *Turkish Bassa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, *An.* 1574. the *Vaivods* from that time forwards, being nominated by the *Turkish* Emperours, and governing as *substitutes* and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Aaron*, one of the succeeding *Vaivods*, did shake off this yoke, and confederated himself with *Sigismund* Pr. of *Transylvania*, and *Michael Vaivod* of *Valachia*, for defence of themselves and their *Estates*, against that enemy: yet being afterwards supplanted by *Roswan*, one of his own ambitious subjects, and that confederacy disjoynted, it became subject first unto the *Polonians*, by the power and practice of *Zamoyskie*, Chancellour of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turk*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some opportunities, in imposing *Vaivods* on this Country, in despite of the *Turks*; yet was it commonly to their own loss, little or no benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole power of the *Turks* upon themselves in the reign of *Osman*, never since intermedling in the affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* disposing; who receive hence some yearly tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

3 *VALACHIA.*

VALACHIA is bounded on the East, with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Ister*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the West, with *Rascia*; on the North, with *Transylvania*, and some part of *Moldavia*; and on the South, with the *Danubius* wholly, by which parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus*, a Noble *Roman*, who on the conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colonie; afterwards by corruption *Ulachia*, and at last *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Ulachia*, was at first of a more large extent, than it is at present; comprehending all *Moldavia* also: divided in those times by a ridge of Mountains, into *Cisalpina*, and *Transalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The people of both, in token of their first extraction, speak a corrupt *Latine* or *Italian* language: but in matters of *Religion* follow the dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; under whom all *Ecclesiastical* affairs are governed by one *Archbishop*, and two *Bishops*. In other things they partake generally of the rudeness

and

Valachia. and barbarity of thoſe Nations which have ſince ſubdued them; being a rough-hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the moſt part of *letters* and all *liberal ſciences*; not weaned perfectly (in ſo long time of their profeſſion of *Chriſtianity*) from the ſuperſtitions of the *Gentiles*; ſwearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marying and unmarying at their pleaſures: much given to *magical* charms, and incantations, and burying with their dead both clothes and victuals, for their relief in that long journey to the other world.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles: the country for the moſt part plain, and very fertile; affording ſtore of Cattel, a breed of excellent horſes, iron-mines, ſalt-pits, and all proviſions neceſſary to the life of man. Some *vines* they alſo have, and not few *mines* of gold and ſilver, more than for fear of the *Turks* and other ill neigbours they dare diſcover: begirt about with woody mountains, which afford them fewel, and very well watered with the Rivers of *Pruth*, called antiently *Hieraſus*. 2. *Stertius*, 3. *Fulmina*, 4. *Teln*, 5. *Alluta*, all of them falling into 6. the *Danow*; which in this Province, at the influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Iſter*. Yet is it not (at the preſent) very populous, the ſpaciouſneſſe and fertility hereof conſidered; by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Coſſacks*: their late long wars againſt thoſe Nations and the *Dutch*, having much decreaſed their former numbers; with which they ſo abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Country in the year 1473. was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the field for a preſent ſervice.

Places of moſt note herein are 1. *Galatz*, on the influx of the River *Pruth* or *Hieraſus*, into the *Danubius*; the waters of which River are ſo unwholſome, that it cauſeth the body to ſwell. 2. *Treſcortum*, not far from which they dig a bituminous earth, ſo refined and pure, that uſually they make Candles of it inſtead of wax. 3. *Prailaba*, by ſome called *Brailovia*, the Town of moſt trade in all this Country: ſituate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle, fortified by Art, and Nature, and furniſhed with a ſtrong Garriſon of *Turks*, as the key of this Province, opening the door unto the reſt. The Town moſt cruelly deſtroyed, and razed to the ground, with an incredible ſlaughter of the Inhabitants of all ſexes, and ages, for the ſpace of four days together, by *John* the *Vaivod* of *Moldavia*, ſpoken of before, at his firſt revolting from the *Turks*: but the Caſtle, in regard of the great ſtrength of it, ſcarce attempted by him. 4. *Teina*, a Fortreſs of great ſtrength; but in the hands of the *Turks* alſo. 5. *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, ſeated on the *Danow*, with an arm whereof the Caſtle of it is encompaſſed; garriſoned by the *Turks*, and by them held to be ſo ſtrong, and ſo ſafe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigiſmund*, the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1595. there were found in it 39 great peeces of Ordinance; with ſuch ſtore of *Armes* and *Ammunition* as might well have ſerved for a whole kingdom. 6. *Tergoviſta*, ſometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Vaivod*, till the taking of it by the *Turks*: once beautified with a fair and famous Monaſtery, by the *Turks* converted into a fortreſſe, environed with deep trenches, ſtrong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great ſtore of Ordinance; but many times loſt and got again, acording to the changes and chance of war. 7. *Bucareſta*, about a days journey from *Tergoviſta*, ſeated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two bridges built near unto it: the one of Boats (the laying whereof took up no leſſe than an whole moneths time) for the tranſporting of the Army of *Sinan Baſſa*, againſt *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* before mentioned; and broken down by the ſaid *Baſſa* in his flight, having been worſted in all places by the *Tranſylvanian*. The other was the work of the Emperour *Trajan*, in his war againſt *Decebalus*, King of *Dacia*, built all of ſtone, and laid on piles and Arches of a wonderfull greatneſſe; 24 piles or pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebum*, of old called *Lycoſtomos*, in vain beſieged by the forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in perſon to ſubdue this petit Province. 9. *Zarmizegethuſa*, the ſeat Royal of *Decebalus* king of *Dacia*, taken and deſtroyed by *Trajan* in his war againſt him: who cauſing it to be repaired and more beautified than formerly, gave it the privileges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*; which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Now a ſmall Village called *Vetzel*. Some ſtones have been digged up hereabouts with this inſcription, *COLONIA ULPIA TRAJANA, AUG. DACIE. ZARMIS*: which clearly ſhew as well the dignity and eſteem, as the antiquity of the place, before *Trajans* times.

This Province, as the reſt of *Dacia*, on that ſide of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was under Princes of their own; whom they called (as thoſe of *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in peace, till ſenſible of the approaching danger, which the conqueſt of moſt part of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, by the *Turks*, was like to bring them; the *Vaivod* of it, in the time of *Bajazet* the firſt, paſſed over the *Danow* with his forces, and having done great ſpoil on the *Turkiſh* Territories, returned again into his Country. Rather provoked than weakened with which invaſion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the *Vaivod* in a pitched field, compelling him to ſue for peace, and to pay him tribure. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and the ſucceſſion controverted amongſt his ſons, the impoſed *tribute* was with-held, till *Mahomet* the fifth King of the *Turks*, having ſetled the affairs of that tottering State, *An.* 1417. enforced them to a new compoſition, and the payment of all former reckonings. The fortunate ſucceſſes of *Huniades* in ſeveral battels, induced them once more to change their *Maſters*, and to put themſelves under the protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had been formerly; but they paid dear for it: their Country being made the *Thorow-fare* of the *Turkiſh* forces, in their attempts upon that kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquiſhed at the battel of *Caſſova*, by *Amurath* the ſecond; the accuſtomed *tribute* was brought in, and the *Turks* ſatisfied for the preſent, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year

1462.

1462. *Mahomet* the *Great* undertook the conquest of this Countrey, upon advertisement that *Wladus* the then *Vaivod* of it, intended to joyn with the *Hungarians* in some war against him: and finding how unprofitably he had spent his Forces, in fighting against woods, mountains, and a wasted Countrey, he set up *Dracala* the younger brother of *Wladus* to claim the Government; who making a party amongst the people, and having the *Turk* for his assistance and support, possessed himself of the estate, to be holden of him as a *Vassal* to the *Turkish Empire*. And it continued in this state, the *Vaivods* being after this at the *Turks* appointment, and paying all exactions imposed upon them, till the revolt of *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, *An.* 1595. at what time *Michael* the then *Vaivod* hereof, taking that opportunity to shake off this yoak, confederated with him and the *Moldavian* for their common safety. And though he held out longer against *Turk* and *German*, than either of the other did; discomfited the *Turks* by his own proper forces, at the battel of *Nicopolis*; vanquished the *Transylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto this Estate: yet being at last outed of his countrey by the *Polanders*, and another put into his place; he was shamefully slain in his own Tent by the privity and consent of *Basta*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperour and King of *Hungarie*. After whose death the countrey miserably distracted betwixt two *Vaivods*, the one placed by the Emperor *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the *Grand Signieur*; endured all the spoil and wrack which so calamitous a competition could bring upon it: till in the end the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were constrained to submit unto their disposal, and receive their *Vaivods* from that Court, as they had done formerly; performing their accustomed duties, and paying such yearly *tribute* as is laid upon them. Which notwithstanding, partly by their own natural unquietnesse, and partly by the ambition of such persons as contend for that dignity, they have since been many times embroyled in wars; never so quietly composed, but that a new hope, or the artifices of the *Turkish* Ministers, starts them into action. By means whereof, when they have tired and spent themselves in their own combustions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkish Monarchy*.

Rascia.

Of what revenue these Provinces severally were to their natural Lords, and of what severally to the Turk, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they stood at the time of the revolt so often mentioned, and they yeelded one way with another into the Treasury of the *Grand Signieur*, no less than a million of Ducats yearly. *Knolles* in his Turkish History doth report it so. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the said Revolt, did yearly, yield unto the Turk a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 horses for service, 10000 great measures of wheat, with as much barley, and a wonderfull proportion of butter, honey, and other victuals. Adding withall, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly tribute. After which rate, the Estimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But since the reduction of these Countries to their former obedience, the Turks have been more moderate in their exactions than they were before, for fear of startling them to some new engagement: whom they have brought to this obedience and conformity with such a vast expence both of bloud and treasure, as would have purchased the best Kingdom of Christendom in the open market. Insomuch that the ordinary tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 *Chequins*, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the same coin: Besides a 1000 horses yearly sent from both. Such bribes and presents as are given by the *Vaivods* hereof, either to get or hold their places, being merchantable ware, and wholly at the Turks disposing, not being part of this accompt.

4. *RASCIA.*

RASCIA is bounded on the East, with *Valachia*; on the West, with *Hungarie*; on the North, with *Transylvania*; and on the South, with the River *Danow*; encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines*, *Samus*; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Alluta*. Called *Rascia* from the *Rasciani*, a *Sclavonian* people, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this tract, and from him *Maginus*. But here it is to be observed, that, besides this Country, the *Rascians* held some Towns and Territories on the other side of the *Danow*, and amongst others the strong Town of *Chrysonicum*, whereof more anon.

The Country poor enough, but the people poorer, oppressed in former times by the *Servians*, and of late by the *Turks*, which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occasions, as commonly those people are, who give themselves the hope of bettering those fortunes which they cannot make worse. Places of most note here, 1. *Bodon*, a town of trade, on the *Danow*, memorable for the *Marts* or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*, 3. *Covin*, 4. *Novebarde*, 5. *Severin*, not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucarest* a town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trajans* bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella*, of which little memorable.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a tribe of *Sclaves*, setled in this country at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots*: that being once the title of the heir apparent, or designed successor of the *Eastern Empire*; as *Cæsar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Monsieur* in the same sense in the Realm of *France*, to signifie the eldest Brother, (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperours did affect new titles, so that of *Despot* fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the *Governours* of *Provinces*; as the *Despot* of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the end assumed by the several Princes of *Rascia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this estate became united unto *Servia*, I am

yet

Servia.

yet to seek: but sure I am it was united in the person of *George*, *Despot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his estate surprized by *Amurath* the second: who boasted his success therein (in a speech made unto his souldiers at the siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with *hunger*, *thirst*, *labour*, and *desperation*. Nor have I found at what time, or under whose conduct they passed over *Danubius*, and there possessed themselves of *Chrysonicum*, and some other towns and territories on that side of the river, which they still retain; either surrounded by the *Servians*, or at least intermingled with them; which makes some writers of opinion that the *Rascians* and the *Servians*, are but one and the same People under divers names; to which conjecture they, being subject to the same Prince, gave some further ground. But whensoever they passed over, most probable it is, that proving either troublesom neighbours, or unwelcom Guests, they gave occasion to the *Despots* of *Servia* to make war upon them; and having vanquished them on that side of the River, to carry the war over unto this, till in the end the whole Country was made subject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was said before. But being more impatient of the yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the Turks much mischief many times, as they came in their way; never so much nor so effectually, as when *Mahomet* the 3d. warred against the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently distressed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the provisions of arms and victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Bassa*. After which, at the time when *Sigismund* Pr. of *Transylvania* had won so many noble victories against the *Turks*, 10000 of these *Rascians* casting off that yoke offered themselves unto his service; the only memorable actions which are told us of them; though this last was only the attempt of some private Adventurers, the whole Nation still continuing in obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the fortunes of *Servia*, and having a concernment on that side of the water, we shall there say something further of them.

Thus have we seen when, and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part subject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to passe over the *Danow*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia nova*, or *New Dacia*; containing after our accompt four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to say, both *Mysias*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacias*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysias*, as before is said: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the East, with *Bulgaria*; on the West, with *Bosnia*, and some part of the *Lower Hungarie*; on the North, with the *Danubius*, by which parted from *Rascia*, and some part of *Valachia*; on the South, with *Albania*, and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Servii*, or *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* people, of whom more hereafter.

This Country, with the neighbouring *Rascia*, and the modern *Sclavonia*, was first converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembred, between the year 860. and 890. of both which there is reserved some especial Monuments. For *Methodius* having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all divine Offices in their natural Language, translated the whole Bible into the *Sclavonian* tongue, which still they have amongst them in high esteem. And *Cyril* is said to have devised the *Servian* Character, not used in this Country only (though here originally) but also in *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Moldavia*, and most parts of *Russia*: which Character from this *Cyril* (or *Chiuril*, as they prononnce it) is still called *Chiurlizze*.

The Country very rich and fruitfull, before the conquest of it by the *Turks*, well stored with *mines* of gold, and silver, especially about *Zerbenic*, a strong town hereof. The people rude and grosse, and much given to wine; false of their promises, and that upon slight occasions; so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Country are 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*; 3. *Ibar*, falling into the 4. *Morava*; as that into the *Danow* at *Chrysonicum*, or *Crusoveccia*, a strong town of the *Rascians*. Principal towns hereof 1. *Nissa*, the *Nessum* as I take it of *Ptolemie*; by whom said to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the *Metropolis* of this Countrey, and the key thereof: besieged and taken by *Amurath*, the third King of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1367. 2. *Vidina*, by the *Turks* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Feris Beg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first, and ever since the seat of a Turkish *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* or Bassa of *Temeswar*. 3. *Cratova*, and 4. *Zerbenic*, rich in silver mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Country. 5. *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by some called *Spenderobe*; by the *Hungarians*, *Zendrem*; by the Turks, *Semunder*; situate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the second, *An.* 1438. since governed by a Turkish *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6. *Novegrad*, in the borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7. *Stonibourg* (in *Latin*, *Stovibrigadun*) the ordinary seat of the antient *Despots*. 8. *Prisden*, said by *Mercator* to be the birth-place of the Emperour *Justinian*; most like to be *Taurestum*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the birth-place of that Emperour; by whom repaired and fortified with four great *Turrets*, thence called *Tetrapyrgon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrida*, a town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9. *Scopi*, by *Ptolemie* called *Scupi*, and 10. *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trajan*, whose fore-name was *Ulpius*; afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima* being in *Bulgaria*:) now a poor Village called

led *Pirethy*, as *Lazius*; or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhætiaria*, by *Ptolemie* for distinction sake, called *Rhætiaria Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Mœsians*; of which now no ruins are remaining. 12. *Raveniczen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolemie*, but not else observable. *Servia.*

Besides these Towns, and many other of less note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Rascians* also hold some towns on this side of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chrysonicum*, or *Crysovectia*, an old Town, almost wholly ruinated, till repaired and fortified by the Turks, *An.* 1449. who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the fall or influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood, both to command and to annoy the rest of this Country, and for transporting of their forces to the other side of that great River, made it their first work to possess themselves of it, and have held it ever since with a very strong Garrison: Such other Towns as the *Rascians* have on this side of the River, or of lesser note, are looked on by our Author but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the *Despots* whereof they were long since Conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mœsi*: the *Tricorneſii*, and *Piceniſii*, spoken of by *Ptolemie*, being either branches of the *Mœsi*, or else an obscure people not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most antient, inhabiting near Mount *Hæmus*, on the borders of *Macedon*; a barbarous people, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown; most mischievous in their attempts and designs against it, in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the spoils whereof they inriched themselves. Insomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* finding no other likely means to be rid of that trouble, negotiated with the *Bastarnæ*, a strong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own dwellings, and come to him with their wives and children; promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them possession of their Country. But *Philip* dying as the *Bastarnæ* were in their march through *Thrace*, & no care taken by his son to pursue the business, they returned all home again, except 30000, which peirced into *Dardania*, and made their own fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of quarrel to the *Romans*, against the *Macedonian*; so it occasioned *Perseus* the son of *Philip*, to make use of these *Bastarnæ* against the *Romans*; at whose request 10000 *horse*, and as many foot passed over the *Danow*, under the conduct of *Claudicus*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Perseus* was too strait-laced to part with money for their pay, they returned again; forraging the Countrey as they passed: but whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philips* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. Howsoever, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Country, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them; insomuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joyns them both together, either as the same, or a neighbouring Nation; first vanquished and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the *civil* wars, raised by *Spartacus* and the *Fencers*, or *Gladiatores*: the *Mysians*, or the *Mœsi*, being broken at the same time also, *An. U. C.* 681. As for the *Mœsi*, being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colonie of the *Mysians* of the *lesser Asia*, antiently called *Mysi*, and the Country *Mysia*, as those *Asians* were; and as those *Europeans* are by the *Greek* writers generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the *Latines*: though after, for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most *Latine* Authors give them the name of *Mœsi*. A fierce and savage people they were held to be, *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them; more *barbarous* than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but for all that, subdued by *M. Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who overcame them in two battels, and after vanquished the *Bastarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight; the Countrey reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. Continuing in this estate, till the fall of the Eastern Empire, when it was subjected by the *Sclavi*, or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the division of the spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* people; contractedly called *Sorbi*, and at last *Serbi*, *Servi*, and the Countrey *Servia*. Reduced again to the obedience of the Eastern Emperours by *Basilius Porphyrogenitus*, *Anno Ch.* 1000. or thereabouts; more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his successors: but so as they were suffered to live under their own *Princes*, whom they called *Despots*; Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Inriched with the Conquest and addition of *Rascia* (the certain time whereof I have no where found) They were first set on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the *Despot*, from whom *Amurath* the first took the town of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Country: provoked thereto by the great forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian Despots* had raised against him, for the siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus* terrified with this loss, made his peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open war, in which he was overcome and slain in the plains of *Cassova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroyled in war amongst themselves, by the sons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely setled in his Fathers throne; the *Turks* begun again to pursue this quarrel: which *George* the son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the second, son of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turk* an yearly *tribute*, and giving him his daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this alliance did not so well unite their affections, (though *George* did many ill offices in regard thereof to his *Christian* neighbours) nor so well settle his estate: but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Rascia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Huniades* escape; whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the peace made with *Uladislaus* the King of *Hungarie*; yet *Mahomet the Great*, on the death

Bulgaria.

death of *George*, soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus* the youngest of *Georges* sons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them uncapable of the Government) of the principality; compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for aid. But dying whilest these matters were in agitation, his widow put her self and her three sons *Peter*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State a while: till the people finding no assurance in that kind of government, and weary of the daily harms they received from the *Turks*, yeelded themselves absolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the Year 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish Empire*.

6. BULGARIA.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East, with the *Euxine* Sea; on the West, with *Servia*; on the North, with the River *Danow*, which is here called *Ister*; on the South, with *Thrace*. Called formerly by the name of *Mysia inferior*, as lying lower than the other on the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the water, was called *Mysia superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*; born in this countrie near the borders of *Thrace*, not far from the Citie of *Sardica*: who therefore in the Martyrologies of the middle times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finallie, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* people, who in the Year 566. possessed themselves of it.

The Countrie for the most part full of sharp and rugged hills, branches of the great Mountain *Hæmus*, which divides it from *Thrace*, and spread themselves over all this Province, insomuch that even the midlands of it are rough and stonie: and though the lower parts have some plains and vallies, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deserts, the most unpleasant, and least peopled part of both the *Dacias*. The Inhabitants hereof in some conformity to the counrrie, are patient of all toil and labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesom than their conversation: more full of courage, than of valour; their courage not proceeding by the rules of reason, but issuing only out of brutishness, or a natural fierceness.

They first received the *Christian* Faith towards the later end of *Justinian* the 2d. who died in the year 713. *Trebellius* being then their Prince; afterwards by the perswasion of *Leo* the 4th. surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, about the year 789. But those Conversions being but partial, and for private ends, they relapsed shortly after to their former *Gentilism*: not totally gained unto the Gospel, till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace, 860. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*: but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid claim unto them.

Places of most note in it, are 1. *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the banks of *Danubius*, which from this town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great fame otherwise. 2. *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dinigutia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the influx of of *Hierasus*, and the town of *Galatz*. 3. *Mesembria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by some errour of the *Transcribers*, called *Menebria*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister*, or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Goths*, at their first irruptions on this countrie; and afterwards much mentioned in the stories of that warlike people, for many bickerings, and some great battels they had near it with the Emperor *Claudius*; in one of which overthrown by him with a mighty slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis*, (by the *Turks* called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the fall of the River *Jatre*, at his return from the conquest of *Dacia*, whence the occasion of the name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the *City of Victory*: sufficiently memorable for the founder of it, more for the many great battels fought near unto it; whereof two the principal. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperor and King of *Hungary*, besieging it with an Army of 130000 *Christians*, in the time of *Bajazet* the first (whose father *Amurath* had taken it from the K. of *Bulgaria*) the issue of which siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the siege, obtained the victorie with the loss of 60000 *Turks*: the army of the *Christians* being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest almost taken prisoners, and the young Emp. forc'd to flie by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*; and at last, after 18 months absence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. The other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the *Vaivod* got a remarkable victorie: and as the fruits thereof, sacked the Citie it self, carrying thence great spoil and bootie, & infinite multitudes of people; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desert places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Ptolemie*, repaired by the Emperour *Justinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple, founded and dedicated by him unto St. *Sophia*. The ordinary *Residence* for these late times of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, who hath the chief command of *Europe* under the grand *Signieur*: once taken by *Huniades*, and by him at the command of *Uladislaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt unto the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more strongly fortified, than it had been formerly. 7. *Varna*, antiently called *Dionysiopolis*, situate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great defeat there given the *Christians*, the first flight of *Huniades* from the face of the *Turks*, and the death of *Uladislaus* King,

King of *Hungary*, ſpoken of before. 8. *Sumium*, 9. *Pezechium*, 10. *Calacriam*, 11. *Galata*, and 12 *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and loſt again upon the iſſue of that battel. 13. *Silliſtria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary abode of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*: delivered to *Amurath* the firſt, by *Saſmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to ſave thereby the reſt of his Country. 14 *Paraſtlaba*, or *Perſtlaba*, the antient ſeat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*; till the taking of it by *John Zimiſces* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, by whom cauſed to be called *Johannopolis*: but it ſoon loſt that new name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretalaw*. 15. *Ternova*, the uſual ſeat or *reſidence* of the later Princes of this Country, at the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Huniades* in the courſe of his victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cauſe of much war to the *Chriſtians* there: ſuppoſed to be built in or near the place, where once ſtood the old City of *Oeſcus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oeſcus Triballorum*; though ſome will have that City to be now called *Blida*. 17. *Venuzina*, a Town of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt peeces taken by the *Turks*. 18. *Coſſova*, fatal to the *Chriſtians*, who in the plains hereof had two main defeats. The firſt by *Amurath* the firſt, who here diſcomfited *Lazarus* the *Deſpot* of *Servia*, and the greateſt Army that the *Chriſtians* ever raiſed againſt the *Turks*: *Lazarus* himſelf being ſlain in the fight, and *Amurath* himſelf ſhortly after the battel ſtabbed in the belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and half dead ſouldier, as he was taking a view of the dead bodies which lay there in heaps. The laſt by *Amurath* the ſecond to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here diſcomfited after a cruel fight continuing three days together: in which were ſlain 17000 *Chriſtians*, and amongſt them the greateſt part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight, and forced to ſome extremities to preſerve his life: the *Turks* buying this great victory with the loſs of 40000 men, as themſelves confeſſed. The place in which theſe fields were fought, called the *Plains* of *Coſſova*, extendeth 20 miles in length, and 5 miles in breadth, incompaſſed round with pleaſant Mountains, in the form of a *Theater*; as if it were deſigned by Nature for a *ſtage* of action. 19. *Doroſtorum*, by ſome of the Antients called *Rhodoſtolon*, the ſeat in *Ptolemies* time of the firſt *Legion* called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Town which the *Roſſes* and *Ruſſians* had in this Country: from whom taken by *John Zimiſces* the *Eaſtern* Emperour, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinate. 20. *Achrida*, the birth-place of *Juſtinian*, by whom beautified and enlarged, and called *Juſtiniana Prima*: who raiſing the *Dioceſſe* of *Dacia* into a *Præfecture*, placed here a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church, (which honour it doth ſtill retain, the Biſhop hereof being the *Primate* of all *Dacia*) and a *Præfectus Prætorio*, for affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *L' Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Acre*; by the *Turks* called *Giuſtandil*; a diſtinct Principate of it ſelf in the time of *Amurath* the firſt, and by him made *tributary* at his firſt war with this Country. *Rulgaria.*

And here it is to be obſerved, that thoſe parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea, had antiently the name of *Pontus*, as had ſome parts of *Aſia Minor*, which bordered on the ſame Sea alſo: and that the City of *Tome*, as *Ptolemie*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calls it, to which *Ovid* was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, was a City of this *Europæan Pontus*, and not of the *Aſian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolemie* placed amongſt the Cities of *Mœſia inferior*, and by *Ovid* on the Weſt or left ſide of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by theſe lines of his.

Cum maris Euxini *poſitos ad læva* Tomitas
Quærere me laſi Principis *ira jubet.*

that is to ſay,

My wronged Princes wrath commands me bide
At Tomos *on the* Euxines *Weſtern ſide.*

The place at this day called *Tomiſwar*, according to *Cœlius Calcagnius*; but others would have it to be the ſame which is now named *Kiovia*, in the ſame tract alſo; not far from which is ſaid to be a Lake called to this day *Owidow Jezcocoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cauſe hither baniſhed is not yet agreed on. Some ſay it was for the unlawfull pleaſures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperours daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had ſeen *Auguſtus* himſelf unnaturally uſing the company of the ſame *Julia*, his daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his book *de Triſtibus*, ſaying, *Cur aliquid vidi? cur noxia lumina feci, &c.* A Crime, of which I dare not think that noble Emperour to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatſoever was the true reaſon of it, that which was openly pretended was the writing of thoſe laſcivious and inflammatory Books *de Arte amandi*, tending to the debauchment of youth, and corruption of manners, which he in divers places of his works acknowledgeth for the cauſe thereof.

But to return unto the buſineſſe of this Country, the antient Inhabitants hereof were towards the Eaſt the *Troglodytæ* dwelling near the mouth or fall of the River *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini* inhabiting on the very mouth of it, and in a little Iſland oppoſite thereunto called alſo *Peuce*, now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenſii*, and *Dimenſii*: the Weſtern parts being wholly taken up by the *Tri-*

Bulgaria.

balli, the moſt potent Nation of them all: who only had the happineſſe to vanquiſh *Philip*, King of the *Macedonians*. For *Philip* having, or pretending a quarrel againſt *Mataas* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Country, overthrew him in a ſet fight, carried with him great booties, and among other things, 20000 *Mares*, for breed, which he took in the battel: it being the cuſtom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*, to uſe *Mares* only in their wars; becauſe their not ſtopping in the midſt of a race to piſſe, could be no impediment to them in their flight. In his return homeward, theſe *Triballi* deny him paſſage through their country, unleſſe they might partake of the ſpoils. This being denyed, they fall from words to blowes, and next to a pitched field. In which fight *Philip* was wounded with an Arrow, which paſſing thorow his thigh nailed him to his ſaddle: his horſe being galled with the wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* ſeeing, and ſuppoſing him dead, fled out of the field, leaving all their ſpoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been ſent out only to be their Receivers. So true an obſervation is it, that the very *life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in the veins of the General*, or ſupreme Commander. Overtopped after this by the *Mœſi*, or mingled with them, they were firſt broken by the *Romans* under the conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, ſpoken of before, the abſolute conqueſt of them and the reſt of the *Mœſians* being reſerved for the times of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. By him or his ſucceſſors, the whole Country of the *Mœſians* being caſt into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mœſia inferior*; that lying Weſtward up the Water being called *Mœſia ſuperior*, for diſtinctions ſake. By the Emperour *Aurelianus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other ſide of the *Danow*, by the barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Myſias*, divided afterwards into two Provinces, taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripenſis*: which with the help of the higher *Myſia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Dioceſe of *Dacia*, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof now paſſing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces alſo: another Province being taken out of the Eaſt parts of the *Lower Mœſia*, lying betwixt the River *Phaniſſus*, and the moſt northern branch of the *Iſter*, which they called *Scythia*, becauſe the *Aroteres* a *Scythian* people did once poſſeſs it; the *Romans* ambitiouſly affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Succeſſively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*: recovered again in or before the time of *Juſtinian*, who had here his Officers; ſubordinate to the *Vicar* or *Lieutenant* of *Thrace*, to which Dioceſe they properly belonged.

But long they held not in that State; The *Sclavonians* firſt, and after the *Bulgarians*, being maſters of them. Of the firſt of theſe enough hath been ſaid elſewhere. Theſe later being a *Scythian* people inhabiting on the banks of the River *Volga*, were at firſt called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though ſome conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation; but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperour *Anaſtaſius*, they made their firſt ſally into the Provinces of the Empire, forraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*: afterwards in the reign of *Heraclius* hired by *Coſrhoes* the *Perſian* (with many other barbarous Nations) to beſiege *Conſtantinople*. In the reign of *Conſtantine*, ſurnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or caſting out the *Sclaves*, they planted themſelves in theſe Countries; compelling the Emperour to compound with them for a ſum of money, from making any further inroad into his Dominions. From this time forwards, we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*; the firſt of which after their ſetling in theſe parts, was *Trebellius*, or *Trebellis*, as ſome call him, the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Juſtinian* the ſecond was firſt reſtored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Abſimarus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to flie unto *Conſtantinople* on ſome breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eaſtern Emperours, they aided them againſt the *Saracens* then beſieging the *Imperial* City; of whom they ſlew 22000 as they were forraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenitus*, they became *Homagers* to the Empire, by whoſe perſwaſion *Telericus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*; and thereupon was honoured by him with a wife of the *Imperial* family, and the honourable title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many privileges indulged them by the *Conſtantinopolitans*, not uſually communicated unto other Princes, *viz.* their *Crown* of gold, their *tiar* or *cap* of ſilk, and their *red ſhoes* for their *Regal*; which were alſo the *Imperial* ornaments. To theſe Kings alſo, and to theſe only, did the *Greek* Emperours allow the title of Βασιλεὺς, as being meerly *Imperial*. Other Kings they called Ρηγὰς, from the *Latine* word *Reges*. Inſomuch that when *Baſilius Macedo* had received letters from Pope *Adrian* the ſecond, wherein *Lewis* the ſecond the Weſtern Emperour was called *Baſileus*; he raſed out that *Imperial* attribute, and diſpatched an Embaſſie to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar *Epithete*. Some quarrels after falling out, *Crunus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus* ſucceſſor to the Empreſſe *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, taketh the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperour in his tent, and worſteth *Michael* (who ſucceeded) in the open field; *Meſembria*, a principal City of this Country being taken and ranſacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, which many of his Predeſſors had intermitted; but brought his ſubjects (who rebelled on the change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with, and vanquiſhed by him) to the ſame *faith* alſo: gratified for that cauſe by *Theodora* the Empreſſe, with ſome large acceſſion unto his eſtate. After long wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperours, the fortune of the *Conſtantinopolitan* did at laſt prevail: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his ſouldiers taken and deprived of ſight; and the country conquered by *Baſilius* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Porphyrogenitus*. *Anno* 1015. from that time *tributary* to the *Empire*: to which they did good ſervice in the time of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, uſing their help againſt the *Uzi*, a new ſwarm of *Scythians*,

thians, passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and wasting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John* another of the King, thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople* being taken prisoner, sent in bonds to *Termova*, and there cruelly murdered, *An.* 1206. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire, by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the recovery whereof, they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discomfited by the Forces of *Amurath* the first, *Anno* 1369. Provoked with which invasion, *Amurath* having setled his affaires in *Asia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Sasmenos* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his *winding sheet* about him, to shew that he had deserved death, prostrates himself most abjectly at the Tyrants feet, offering to put *Silliſtria* (his strongest City) into his possession. For not performance of which offer, his Country is again invaded, most part of it taken from him; permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard conditions, as *vassal* and *tributary* to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amuraths* successor, not content herewith picked a quarrel with him, and made an absolute conquest of *Bulgaria*; converting it unto a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, *Anno* 1396. In which State it hath ever since continued, governed by three *Turkish Sanziacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanziacks* residing at *Nicopolis*, *Silliſtria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the *Beglerbeg* himself doth sometimes reside. *Bulgaria.*

There are in *DACIA*

Archbishops. Bishops.

And so much for *DACIA*.

MOVNT HÆMUS.

Before we enter into *Greece*, we muſt croſſe *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a ridge of hills, extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*; and thereby ſeparating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. So high and ſubject to the weather, that *Stratonicus* an old *Grecian* did uſe to ſay, that *for eight moneths of the year it was alwayes cold; for the other four, winter.* It was affirmed by ſome of the Ancient writers, that from one of the higheſt heads hereof, as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been diſcerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reaſon, hath been called in queſtion. But out of doubt, from ſome one top or *Summit* of it, there is ſo full a proſpect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perſeus* taking a ſurvey of the ſite of theſe Countries, *poſitis per abruptis Caſtris, &c.* as the ſtorie hath it, was able to make choice of the fitteſt places for Forts and Caſtles, whereby to lock up all the paſſages againſt his enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* ſo rough and craggie, that it is not to be paſſed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be ſeen a mighty ſtrong gate built of great ſquare ſtone: by which the paſſage that way was either opened or ſhut, at the pleaſure of them who had the keeping of the ſame; with a ſmall force exceeding eaſily defended againſt puiſſant Armies. The other being ſituate near a little River, by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether ſo ſtrait and narrow as the other, but riſing high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous precipices, is alike impaſſable; defenſible at eaſe, and without any great danger: as was experimentally found by the famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his forces this way, for the ſiege of *Adrianople*. Thoſe parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though ſomewhat opener, are not much eaſier of *aſcent*; the paſſages through the broken rocks and precipices, being very difficult, and not eaſily mattered: inſomuch, that when *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon* had fortified the ſtreights hereof againſt the *Romans*; *non reliquiſſe aditum niſi è cœlo venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (ſaith *Florus*) that there was no paſſage left for any forces, unleſs they fell immediately from the heavens themſelves.

This great and rockie chain of hills, as they were vehemently expoſed to wind and weather, ſo were they deſtitute of thoſe commodities, which were either comfortable or indeed meerly neceſſarie to the life of man: which made the paſſage over them in a manner impoſſible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of cold and hunger. Yet were they not left deſolate and void of people, eſpecially in thoſe ſides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the ſpurres and branches of the hills ſpreading farre and wide, and taking up a great part of the Countrie; occaſioned the *Romans* in the diviſion of the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* into ſeverall Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mœſia*, by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uſcudoma*, and *Anchiala*; the principall Governour hereof a *Roman Preſident*. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common impreſſions of the *Code*, *Lib.* VII. *Tit.* 62. *Leg.* 23. where we find *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*: the firſt being the name only of the mountain; and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But

But to return unto the *Mountain*, there is another of this name in *Theſſalie*, mentioned (or miſtook for this) by *Servius* in his notes on the firſt book of the *Georgicks*; in the top whereof was ſaid to be the habitation of *Mars*, on the bottom, the moſt pleaſant valley of *Tempe*: ſo called from *Hæmus*, the ſon of *Boreas* and *Oriſhya* amongſt the Poets. And poſſibly to diſtinguiſh this from that of *Theſſalie*, *Ptolemie*, and others call it *Æmus*, without the *Aſpirat*: though it may well be, that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places, or in divers Authors, by other names: one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Ariſtotle*, an other *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Traſobus*. The like may be obſerved at the preſent alſo, *Pinetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuſpinianus*, *Caſtegnazzo*; *Lazius*, *Krivicznę*; the *Italians*, *Mont Argentorato*; the *French*, *Monte de Caſtegnao*; the *Sclavonians*, *Cumaniza*; and the *Turks*, *Balkan*. Which I have therefore here obſerved for the Readers ſake, that meeting any of theſe names in the ſtories either of the antient or modern times, he may know what hils or mountains are intended by them. Which ſaid, I now paſs on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF GREECE.

GREECE, in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Propontick*, *Helleſpont*, and *Ægean* Seas; on the Weſt, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Mount Hæmus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and ſome part of *Illyricum*; and on the South, with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninſula*, or *Demy-Iland*, environed on three ſides by the Sea; on the fourth only united to the reſt of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the preſent extent hereof, the name being antiently reſtrained within narrower bounds. Confined at firſt to *Attica* and the parts adjoyning; *ab Iſthmi anguſtiis Hellas incipit*, as it is in *Plinie*: and took he name of *Hellas* from *Hellen*, the ſon of *Deucalion*; as that of *Greece* or *Græcia*, from *Græcus* the ſon of *Cecrops*, the firſt King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponneſus*, then to *Theſſalie* alſo: and finally when the *Macedonian* Empire had enlarged it ſelf over the petit Commonwealths, and Eſtates hereof; it came to be communicated to that Country alſo. The people for this cauſe known by divers names, by ſome *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*; ſometimes *Pelaſgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, *&c.* But the name whereby they are beſt known in *ſacred Writers*, is that of Ἕλληνες, ſo called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece*, in the ſtricteſt notion and acception. A name uſed frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both *abſolutely* to denote this Nation, as where it is ſaid, σοφίαν Ἕλληνες ζητοῦσι, that the *Greeks* ſeek wiſdom, 1 *Cor.* 1.22. and *relatively* as in oppoſition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and the *Helleniſts*, or *Græcizing Jews*. Firſt with *relation* to the *Jews*, and then it ſignifieth the whole body of the *Gentiles* generally, of which the *Grecians* were the moſt eminent and famous people; as Ἰουδαίῳ τε πρῶτον καὶ Ἕλληνι, to *the Jew firſt, and alſo to the Gentile*, *Rom.* 11.9, 10. *Give none offence*, καὶ Ἰουδαίοις καὶ Ἕλλησι, *neither to the Jews nor to the Gentiles*, 1 *Cor.* 10. 32. and elſewhere frequently. In, which and all other places of that kind, where the *Antitheſis* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to underſtand the *Gentiles*, the whole body of them; though many times our *Tranſlators*, I know not why, render it *literally* the *Greeks*; as *Rom.* 1.16. 10. 12. *&c.* Secondly with reference to all other Nations, not ſo well verſed in the learning and *civilities* of that Age, as the *Grecians* were, whom by a common name of ſcorn they called *Barbarians*: according unto that of *Strabo*, Barbaræ *ſunt omnes Nationes præter* Græcos; the *Romans* themſelves, though then the great Lords of the world, being included in the reckoning. And ſo the word is taken, *Rom.* 1.14. *I am a Debtor*, ſaith S. *Paul* Ἕλλησι καὶ Βαρβάροις, *both to the Greeks and the Barbarians, to the wiſe and unwiſe*, in which as well the *Romans* as thoſe of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Laſt of all, for the *Græcizing Jews*, whom the *Vulgar Latine* calleth *Græcos*, and our *Engliſh*, *Grecians*; they were ſuch of the *Jews*, who living diſperſed among the *Gentiles*, uſed the tranſlation of the *Septuagint*, making that the *Cannon* both for life and doctrine. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judæa*, who kept themſelves unto the Scriptures in their *mother-tongue*, and uſed the *Hebrew* only in all ſacred actions, occaſioned many jars amongſt them; which ſometimes brake out into

to open violence; insomuch as *R. Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hierusalem*, and therin committed many outrages. Of this unfriendlines between them, mention is made, *Act.* 6. 1 where it is said, that there *arose a murmuring of the* Grecians *against the* Hebrews, *&c.* In which place, though the *English* and *Vulgar Latine* use the name of *Grecians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendred *Hellenists*, or *Gracizing Jews*, as in all others places, *viz. Acts* 9. 29. 11. 20. *&c.* where they are called Ἑλληνισταὶ, and not Ἕλληνες, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our description of the Country, we find it situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, under the fift and sixt *Climats*; the longest day being 15 hours: inhabited by a people which were once brave men of war, sound Scholars, addicted to the love of vertue and civil behaviour. A Nation once so *excellent*, that their *precepts* and *examples* do still remain, as approved rules, and *Tutors*, to instruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be vertuous; famous for government, affectors of freedom, every way noble. For which vertues in themselves, and want of them in other, all their neighbours and remote Nations were by them scornfully called *Barbarians*: a name now most fit for the *Grecians* themselves, being an unconstant people, destitute of all *learning*, and the means to obtain it, *Universities*; uncivil, riotous, and so lazie, that for the most part, they endeavour their profit no further than their belly compels them; and so perfidious withall in all their dealings, especially towards the Western Christians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Grego, fara in trigo, i. e.* He that trusts to a *Greek* is sure to be cousened. When they meet at feasts or banquets, they drink small draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increase, till they come to the height of intemperancy: at which point when they are arived, they keep no rule or order; whereas before to drink out of ones turn is accounted a point of incivility. Hence, as I belive, sprung our by-word, *As merry as a Greek*; and the *Latine* word *Græcari*.

The women for the most part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well-favoured, and excessively amorous. Painting they use very much, to keep themselves in grace with their husbands; for when they once grow wrinckled, they are put to all the drudgeries of the house. Both sexes generally in their habit and outward garb, apply themselves to the State under which they live: such as are subject to the *Turk*, conforming unto the dress and fashions of the *Turks*; as those who live under the *Venetians*, do to that of *Venice*.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted by S. *Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, *Acts* 16. 12. passing from thence to *Thessalonica*, the chief Citie of *Mygdonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, *v.* 16. then unto *Corinth*, the *Metropolis* of *Peloponnesus*, *ch.* 18. 1. watering the greatest part of *Greece* with the dew of heaven, and planting Bishops in most Churches where he preached the Gospel, as *Dionysius* (the Areopagite) at *Athens*, *Aristarchus* at *Thessalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Philippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Isle of *Crete*. The like he did in many other Countries also, accounted members of the *Greek* Church, though not of *Greece*: the name of the *Greek* Church extending over all the Provinces of the Eastern Empire. Governed by the 4 Patriarchs, 1 Of *Alexandria*, who presided over *Egypt* and *Arabia*; 2ly, Of *Hierusalem*, whose Patriarchate (erected only in regard of our Saviours passion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrewed unto it) confined within the bounds of *Palestine*; 3ly, Of *Antioch*, whose jurisdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*; and whatsoever else was within the diocese of the *Orient*; And 4ly, of *Constantinople*, to whose charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek* Church, as *Greece*, *Russia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Ilands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Ægean* Seas; together with all *Asia minor*, and the Isles thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria*) and the Countries lying on both sides of *Pontus Euxinus*, and *Palus Mæotis*. The reasons of the large increase of whose *Jurisdiction*, confined at first within the Diocese of *Thrace*, were 1 The reputation of being seated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Council of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Asia minor*, (*Cilicia* and *Isauria* excepted only.) 2ly, The voluntary submission of the *Grecians* upon their separation from the Church of *Rome*; by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Isle of *Crete*, and all the Ilands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no superior but their own *Primate*, the Archbishop of *Thessalonica*, became subject unto them. 3ly, The diligence of the Patriarchs hereof, in converting by his *Suffragan* Bishops and other Ministers, the *Russians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Sclavonians*, to the faith of Christ; which made those people to look upon *Constantinople* as their Mother-Church. And 4ly, the pietie and care of the later Patriarchs, in supplying with new *Pastors* and *Ministers* those parts and Provinces of the West, which being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forsaken by their old *Clergy*, and left like sheep without a shepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward members, is very much straitned and impaired at home: the Country being thinly peopled, and many of those people trained up from their infancie, in the *Mahometan* Law. So that it is a greater wonder, that there should be any remainders of Christianitie left amongst them, than that the open Professors of it should be so few: the tyrannie of the *Turks* on the one side, and the *temptations* of *preferment* upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find 20 Churches of Christians in *Constantinople*, the seat and ordinary residence of the *Turkish* Emperors; or that in *Salonichi*, or *Thessalonica*, there should be 30 Christian Churches, and but three *Turkish Mosquits*; that the Primate of this *Salonichi* should have under him 10 suffragan Bishops, whereof he of *Philippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his *Jurisdiction*: or finally, that under the *Metropolitans* of *Athens* or *Corinth*, there should be as many? So mercifully hath God dealt with this luxurious and perfidious people, as not to take away their Candlestick, though he hath darkned and obscured the light hereof.

As

As for the Fathers of this Church, antiently and at this preſent held in moſt eſteem, they were no other than ſuch as had been *Biſhops* of the greater Sees; that is to ſay, 1 S. *Chryſoſtome*, firſt a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: 2 *Baſil*, and the two *Gregories*, 3 *Nyſſen*, and 4 *Nazianzen*, all in *Aſia Minor*; this laſt of *Conſtantinople* alſo: 5, 6. The two *Cyrils*, the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*; the other, of *Hieruſalem*: 7 *Epiphanius*, Biſhop of *Salamis* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*; 8 *Theodoret*, Biſhop of *Cyprus*, &c. men of renown and precious memorie amongſt them, to this very day. From whoſe writings, if they deviate in any material point of doctrine, it is in that of the *Proceſſion* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not *à Filio*. And though *Clichthoveus*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather, *in modo explicandi, quam in ipſa re*; and that the Clauſe *à Filioque*, was added by the *Romaniſts* to the antient Creeds, the *Grecians* not being privie nor conſenting to it: yet ſo uncharitable is that Church towards theſe poor men, languiſhing under the tyrannie of *Turkiſh* thraldom, as to perſecute them with reproach and ſcorn, brand them for *Schiſmaticks* and *Apoſtates*, and ſolemnly to *anathematize* them, in *Bulla Cœnæ*, every *Maundie Thurſday*. And it is a very hard meaſure *to adde and anathematize too*, as is right well obſerved by the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterburie*, in his notable Diſcourſe againſt the *Jeſuite*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek* Church differeth from the *Romiſh* and *Reformed* (as in ſome points it doth from both) have been already ſpecified in our Deſcription of *Ruſſia*: the Churches of the *Greeks*, and *Moſcovites*, differing in no material points, but 1. the manner of diſtributing the Sacrament; 2ly, the exacting of mariage by the *Moſcovite*, in the party admitted unto Orders; 3ly, the frequent admitting of divorces upon light occaſions; and 4ly, finally in being leſs ſtrict in obſerving the *Lent* before Eaſter than in any of the other three. For whereas the *Grecians* account it a damnable ſin to eat fleſh or fiſh which hath bloud in it, in any of their other *Lents* or times of abſtinence, (they have in both Churches four in all:) in that before *Eaſter*, which of all reaſon ought to be kept moſt punctually, the *Laity* eat all ſorts of fiſh without any exception; the bloud of ſome of which, as the *Cuttle* by name, is held to be a delicate food, and in great requeſt.

The Language they ſpake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, *viz.* 1 the *Attick*, 2 the *Dorick*, 3 the *Æolick*, 4 the *Ionick*: beſides the common phraſe of ſpeech moſt in uſe among them. A language of great fame for the liberal Arts, but more for ſo great a part of the holy Scripture, firſt delivered in it: and for the lofty ſound, ſignificant expreſſions, genuine ſuavitie, and happy compoſition of words, ſo excelling all others, that even in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire, it ſo much overtopped the *Latine*, that the Hiſtories of *Rome* it ſelf (as of *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion Caſſius*) were written in it. It was once alſo the general language of *Anatolia*, ſome parts of *Italie*, *Provence* in *France*, and almoſt all the Ilands of the *Mediterranean*. But now partly by the mutilation of ſome words, and contraction of others; partly by confuſion of the true ſound of Vowels, Diphthongs, and Conſonants, and the tranſlating of the Accents; and finally, by the admixture of forein Nations, it is not only fallen from its natural elegancy, but from its largeneſſe of extent. For it is now ſhut up within the limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coaſt of the leſſer *Aſia*, oppoſite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almoſt quite devoured by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues: but ſpecially by that which they call *Franco*, a *Mungrel* language, compoſed of *Italian*, *French*, and ſome *Spaniſh* words; uſed as the ordinary ſpeech for commerce and intercourſe betwixt *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks*, themſelves, who do not underſtand, and much leſs ſpeak the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they ſtill retain for ordinary dayes, S. *Chryſoſtoms* Liturgie; and that of S. *Baſil* for the *Feſtivals*: yet being both written in the antient and learned *Greek*, they are no more underſtood by the Vulgar *Grecian*, than the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate *Papiſt*.

The ſoil queſtionleſs is very fruitfull, and would yeeld great profit to the *husbandman*, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things ſubject to the *Grand Signieur* and his ſouldiers; neglect the tillage of their lands, on the ſame grounds with thoſe who ſaid in the Poets *Eclogues*:

Impius hæc tam culta novalia miles habebit?
Barbarus *has ſegetes? en queis conſevimus arva!*

Shall misbelieving *Turks* theſe acres ſpoil,
Which I manur'd with ſo much coſt and toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See neighbours, ſee,
For whom theſe goodly corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain commodities which they tranſport into other parts, are Wines, which in memory of the water which our Saviour turned into wine, and on the ſixt day of *January* being that day whereon this miracle was wrought, they uſe to baptize: for which cauſe the *Jews* will drink none of them. They ſend alſo into other parts of the world, Oil, Copper, Vitriol, ſome Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turkie-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, and *Themiſtocles* of *Athens*; *Liſander*, and *Ageſilaus*, of *Sparta*; *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas*, of *Thebes*; *Aratus*, and *Philopœmen*, of *Achaia*; *Pyrrhus*, of *Epirus*; *Philip* of *Macedon*, the ſubverter of the *Grecian* liberty, and *Alexander* his ſon (to omit infinite others) the ſubverter of the *Perſian* Monarchy. For the divine Philoſophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Ariſtotle*, and *Theophraſtus*; for the moſt eminent Law-

givers, *Solon* and *Lycurgus*; for the moſt exquiſite Poets, *Heſiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles*, and *Ariſtophanes*; for the famous Hiſtoriographers, *Xenophon* the condiſciple of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch*, and *Herodotus*; the eloquent Orators, *Æſchines*, *Demoſthenes*, and *Iſocrates*; and laſtly, for the authors and eſtabliſhers of all humane learning whatſoever, only the *Mathematiques* excepted. *Peloponneſus.*

The chief Rivers, are 1 *Cephiſus*, which ariſing in the Frontires of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it ſelf into the *Ægean* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and 3 *Alaicmon*, which beginning their courſe in the more Northern parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thirmiacus Sinus*. 4 *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 5 *Athicus* and *Niſus* in *Thrace*. 6 *Stymphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stymphalian* birds; An 7 *Ladon*, in *Arcadia*. 8 *Inachus*, whoſe daughter *Io* turned into a Heifer, was worſhipped by the *Egyptians* under the name of *Iſis*. 9 *Achelous* in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the antient Poets, eſpecially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*. As is alſo 10 *Peneus*, the chief River of *Theſſalie*, and there ariſing from Mount *Pindus*, and increaſed with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay tree, lived near or on the banks of this River *Peneus*; and is therefore ſaid to be his daughter: as *Io* above-mentioned was the daughter of *Inachus*. Of leſs note,

Populifer 11 *Sperchius*, *& irrequietus* 12 *Enipeus*,
13 *Apidanuſque ſenex*, *leniſque* 14 *Amphryſus*, *&* 15 *Æas*.

That is to ſay:

Cool *Sperchie*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphryſe*, *Æas*, and old *Apidan*.

The reſt of leſſe note, and the moſt eminent Mountains in each part hereof, ſhall be remembred in their places, as we ſee occaſion.

Thus much of the whole Country in groſſe. And as for the diviſion of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceſes, *viz. Thrace* and *Macedon*: the firſt under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*. Of theſe the Dioceſe of *Macedon* lying wholly within the bounds of the modern *Greece*, contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*. 2 *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris* (now, as in former times, called *Albania*.) 3 *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and ſo much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that ſide of the River *Achelous*. 4 *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the reſt of that Country, 5 *Theſſalie*. 6 *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia*, and *Peloponneſus*; the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only. And 7 *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Iſles adjoyning. And for the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of 1 *Thrace*, ſpecially ſo called. 2 *Europa*, 3 *Rhodope*, 4 *Hæmi-montum*, 5 *Mœſia Inferior*, and 6 *Scythia*: of which the four firſt make up the body of *Thrace*, and ſhall there be ſpoken of; the two laſt being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been deſcribed already in their proper places. But not to bind my ſelf preciſely unto this diviſion, (though I ſhall look on this as occaſion ſerveth) I ſhall conſider *Greece* in the ſeveral Provinces of 1 *Peloponneſus*, 2 *Achaia*, 3 *Epirus*, 4 *Albania*, 5 *Macedon*, 6 *Thrace*, 7 The Ilands of the *Propontick*, 8 *Ægean*, and 9 the *Ionian* Seas, and 10 finally the Iſle of *Crete*.

1 PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Cretan*; on the Weſt, with the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Seas; on the North-eaſt, with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*; on the North-weſt, with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras*, or *Lepanto*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almoſt an Iſland, properly called a *Peninſula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tyed to the main land of *Greece*, by an *Iſthmus* ſix miles in breadth: which the *Grecians*, and *Venetians*, fortified with a great wall and five Caſtles. This was called antiently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the 2d. who haraſſed and ſpoiled all the Country. It was afterwards in the year 1453. upon the rumor of a war, built up again by the *Venetians* (who then had the greateſt part of this Country) in 15 dayes; there being for that time 30000 men imployed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other, which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was haſtily made up; or as it was well fortified, had it been as well manned; might eaſily have reſiſted the *Turks*, untill more means had been thought on to defend it. Not leſs obſervable, but more fruitleſſe was the deſign of ſome in the elder times, to cut thorow this *Iſthmus*, and make a perfect Iland of it. Attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæſar*, and *Caius Caligula*; by none more eagerly purſued, than by the Emp. *Nero*: who to hearten on his ſouldiers, loath to attempt ſo fruitleſſe an enterpriſe, took a ſpade in hand, and buſily began the work. Yet at laſt the ſouldiers, being frighted with the bloud which abundantly broke forth; with the *groans*, and *roarings*, which they continually heard; and with the *Hobgoblins* and *Furies*, which were alway in their ſight; perſwaded the Emperor, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoyn them ſome more profitable ſervice: given over by the former Princes on the like diſcouragements. But of this *Iſthmus* we ſhall adde no more, than theſe words of *Ovid*, and ſo paſſe forwards to the deſcription of the Countrey: That is to ſay,

Æquor a

Achaia propria.

Æquora bina ſuis oppugnant fluctibus Iſthmon,
Et tenuis tellus audet utrumque mare.

Which may thus be Engliſhed,

Two Seas aſſault the *Iſthmus* with their waves,
And that thin neck of Land both Seas outbraves.

As for this Country of *Peloponneſus*, it is in compaſs 600 miles, and was called at firſt *Ægialia*, from *Ægialus* the firſt King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Apis* the 4th King; after that *Sicyonia*, from *Sicyon* the 19th King thereof; and finally *Peloponneſus*, from *Pelops*, the ſon of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆσος, *Inſula*; the word ſignifying as much as the Iſle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that, *à Maurorum incurſionibus*, from the incurſions of the *Mores*, as *Mercator* thinketh: but by the *Mores* he means the *Saracens*, as ſome others do.

It is conceived to be the moſt pleaſant Country of all *Greece*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the life of man; and in ſuch alſo as do ſerve for delicacy and contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains, ſwelled with fruitfull Hils, well ſtored with Ports and Havens on all ſides thereof. And though no Country in the world, for the bigneſſe of it, hath ſuffered in the ruine of ſo many brave and ſtately Cities; yet is it ſtill the moſt populous, and beſt inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of note in all this *Peninſula*, but what might eaſily be ſeen. A moſt gallant proſpect. The whole divided commonly into theſe 7 Provinces, 1 *Achaia propria*, 2 *Elis*, 3 *Meſſene*, 4 *Arcadia*, 5 *Laconia*, 6 *Argolis*, and 7 *Corinthia*.

1 *ACHAIA PROPRIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Argolis*, and *Corinthia*; on the Weſt, with the *Ionian* Sea; on the North, with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, or the *Golf* of *Lepanto*; on the South, with *Elis*. So called from the *Achæi*, the Inhabitants of it; the adjunct *propria*, being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or main land of *Greece*.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, are 1 *Dyme*, ſituate in the moſt Weſtern point of it, on or near the *Promontory* called *Araxum*; the town now called *Chiarenza*, and the *Promontory Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another *Promontory* or head-land, of old called *Rhium*, oppoſite to another in *Ætolia*, that was called *Antirrhium*: divided by a very narrow ſtreight or *fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each ſide with a Caſtle for defence thereof, commonly called *Caſtelli di Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bajazet* the ſecond, when he had finiſhed the Conqueſt of *Peloponneſus*, to ſecure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demoliſhed by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the 5th, to lay the Bay open to the Chriſtians; and finally, both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as they ſtill continue. 2 *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been nurſed by a *Goat*, whence it had the name; Αἴξ in *Greek* ſignifying a ſhe *Goat*: once a ſtrong town, now ruined and deſtroyed by the *Turks*; called at this day *Voſtiza*, or *Boſtizan*. 3 *Ægira*, once the chief City of all this tract, ſituate on a ſteep and inacceſſible hill; now a ſmall Village, called *Xilocaſtro*. 4 *Olenus*, ſo named from *Olenus* the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Anaxithea*; now called *Chaminiſa*. 5 *Patræ*, ſituate at the very mouth of the *Golf*, oppoſite to *Lepanto*. Firſt called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patreus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patræ*, which name it holdeth to this day, being ſtill called *Patras*: the town of moſt note on the Bay of *Corinth*, called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A town of good trade, and much frequented not long ſince by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who had here their *Conſul*, called the Conſul of *Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, who here ſuffered Martyrdome. 6 *Pellene*, diſtant from the Sea about 60 furlongs: the people whereof being conſtant to their old faſhions of apparel, occaſioned the Proverb of *Pellenæa veſtis*, applyed to old cloaths out of faſhion. Here were once alſo the two Cities of 7 *Helice*, and 8 *Buris*, ſunk by the violence of a tempeſt into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the battel of *Leuctres*. Not to ſay any thing of 9 *Tritæa*, and 10 *Phera*, two other towns hereof, of note in the former times; ſo little now remaining of them, as if they had been ſunk at the ſame time alſo.

But the chief town of all this Province, (if not a Province of it ſelf) is that of *Sicyon*, ſitnate not far from the *Iſthmus*, in the moſt Eaſtern parts hereof, and giving to the territory or adjoyning Country (as once unto the whole *Peninſula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The territory rich, eſpecially in Olives, and works of *Iron*; the City the moſt antient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general floud, and reſtauration of mankind. Firſt called *Ægialia*, after *Sicyonia*, by the names of the firſt and nineteenth Kings hereof: by whom and their ſucceſſors much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues, and Images of their ſeveral Gods: the antienteſt Kingdom in the world, the *Aſſyrian*, and *Ægyptian* excepted only, and perhaps not thoſe. It took beginning in the perſon of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*; continuing in a race of Princes who ſwayed the affairs of *Peloponneſus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reaſon of the undoubted antiquity of this Kingdom, I ſhall here ſubjoin, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The

The Kings of SICYON.

A.M.		A.M.		A.M.	
1860	1 *Egialeus.*	2234	10 *Peratus.*	01	19 *Sicyon.*
1910	2 *Europs.*	2280	11 *Plemnæus.*	2645	20 *Polybus.*
1950	3 *Telchin.*	2328	12 *Orthoulis.*	2686	21 *Ianiſchus.*
1980	4 *Apis.*	2391	13 *Marathon.*	2728	22 *Pheſtus.*
2004	5 *Telxion.*	2421	14 *Marathus.*	2736	23 *Adraſtus.*
2055	6 *Ægyrus.*	2441	15 *Echyreus.*	2740	24 *Polyphides.*
2089	7 *Eurymacus.*	2496	16 *Corax.*	2771	25 *Pelaſgus.*
2134	8 *Leucidpus.*	2526	17 *Epopeus.*	2791	26 *Xeuxippus*, the laſt King of *Sicyon*; After whoſe death, *A. M.* 2812. the eſtate hereof was governed by the Prieſts of *Apollo*, ſeven of them ſucceſſively one after another: the firſt five, only years a peece; *Amphictyon*, who was the ſixt, continuing 9 years in the *Regence*; and *Charidemus* the laſt of them ruling 18 years. After whoſe death, or departure, I know not which, *A.M.* 2844. the *Heraclidæ*, who about that time returned into *Peloponneſus*, made themſelves Maſters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyonia* from this time forwards.

Of theſe Kings the moſt memorable were *Ægialeus* and *Apis*, the firſt and fourth, from whom this *Peninſula* had the names of *Apia* and *Ægialia*; *Ægirus* the 6. giving name and being to the City *Ægira* ſpoken of before; *Marathon* the 13th. of whom perhaps the famous fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Epopeus* the 17th. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Tropheys; *Sicyon* the 19th. the Founder of the City of *Sicyon*, or at leaſt the repairer and enlarger of it; *Pelaſgus* the 25th. from whom perhaps the *Grecians* might be called *Pelaſgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare ſway in *Sicycon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the ſpecial ornament of this Town (of which a Native) and one of the principal eſtabliſhers of the *Achæan* Common-wealth againſt the *Spartans*, and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the general Hiſtory of *Peloponneſus*.

2. The Country of *ELIS* hath on the Eaſt, *Arcadia*; on the Weſt, the *Ionian* Sea; on the North, *Achaia propria*; on the South, *Meſſenia*. The chief Cities are 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Eliſha* the ſon of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himſelf in theſe parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his poſterity in honour of him did the Iſles adjoyning; mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel*, by the name of the Iſles of *Eliſha*, *Ch.* 27. *v.* 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Sicilia*: and in this City reigned the King *Augeas*, the clenſing of whoſe Stable is accompted one of the wonders or twelve labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympicus*, one of the 7 wonders, being in height 60 cubits; compoſed by that excellent workman *Phidias*, of gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* games inſtituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A.M.* 2757. The exerciſes in them were for the moſt part bodily, as running in Chariots, running on foot, wraſtling, fighting with the Whorlbats, and the like. But ſo that there repaired thither alſo *Orators*, *Poets*, and *Muſicians*, and all that thought themſelves *excellent* in any laudable quality, to make trial of their ſeveral abilities: the very *Cryers* who proclamed the *Victories*, contending which ſhould cry loudeſt, and beſt play his part. The rewards given to the *Victor* were only *Garlands* of *Palm*, or ſuch ſlight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no leſſe eſteemed that ſmall ſign of conqueſt and honour, than the *Romans* did their moſt magnificent triumphs: thoſe which were *Conquerors* herein being met by all the principal men of the City, in which, or under which they lived, and a paſſage broken in the main walls thereof for their reception; as if the ordinary *Gates* were not capable of ſo high an honour, or able to afford them entrance. Inſomuch that when *Diagoras* had ſeen his three ſons crowned for their ſeveral victories, a friend of his came to him with this gratulation, *Morere* Diagoras, *nunquam enim in Cœlum aſcenſurus es*, that is to ſay, Die now *Diagoras*, for thou ſhalt never go to heaven: as if no greater happineſſe could befall the man either in this life, or that to come, than that which he enjoyed already. The *Judges* and *Preſidents* of theſe Games, were ſome of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it; highly commended for their juſtice and integrity in pronouncing who beſt deſerved, without partiality. Of theſe thus *Horace* in his *Odes*.

Sunt quos Curriculo *pulverem* Olympicum
Collegiſſe juvat; metaque *fervidis*
Evitata rotis, Palmaque *nobilis*
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos,
Quos Elea *domum reducit*
Palma *cœleſtes*.

That

Messenia.

That is to say:

Some in *Olympick* dust take pride
Their *Chariots* and themselves to hide;
Whom the shunn'd mark, and *Palm* so priz'd,
Like to the *Gods* hath eterniz'd.
Such as like heavenly wights do come
With an *Elean Garland* home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules*, these games were discontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the *Oracle of Apollo*, renewed them; causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year: from which custom *Olympias* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years; as *quinque annorum Olympiades*, for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the floud to be *obscure*; those before the *Olympiads*, and after the floud, to be *fabulous*; but those that followed these *Olympiads*, to be *Historical*. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the restauration of them by *Iphitus*, until the reign of the Emperour *Theodosius*; the *Grecian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their *accompt*: the first of them being placed in the year of the world, 3174. before the building of *Rome* 24 years; the last in the 440 year after Christs nativity. According to which reckoning this accompt continued for the space of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus*: the town at this day called by the name of *Sconri*. 3. *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nestor* to the wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by tempest driven to the coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Pisa* in *Tuscanie*. 4. *Torneſe*, a new Town, or the new name of some antient City; from whence the adjoyning *Promontorie*, of old called *Chilonites*, is now called *Cabo di Torneſe*.

3. *MESSENIA* hath on the East, *Arcadia*; on the North, *Elis*; on the South, and West, the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messenaicus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylos*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Novarino*; a desolate and poor village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*.

Nos Pylon, *antiqui* Neleia Nestoris *arva*,
Misimus, *incerta est reddita fama* Pylo.

To *Pylon*, aged *Nestors* seat, we sent;
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3. *Methon*, or *Methone*, seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus*, which joineth it to the rest of *Greece*, are reckoned 175 *Italian* miles; the Town commodiously seated in a Demie Island, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the land, that in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South side with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, secure from all winds except the North, and shut up with a little Iland called antiently *Odusse*, but now *Sapientia*, which makes it one of the safest harbours in all these Seas: possessed once by the *State* of *Venice*, but conquered by the *Turk*, after many sharp and fierce assaults, *Anno* 1500. both *Pylus* and *Corone* yeelding on the noise thereof; The best retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Zanziack*, who hath the government of this whole Province of *Morea*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. 4. *Corone* or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Coron*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea-coasts of *Peloponnesus*. 5. *Cyparissi*, now called *Arcudia*, from whence the Bay adjoyning hath the name of *Golfo di Arcudia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphusium*, now *Cabo Zanchio*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a league, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another, for their publick sacrifices: but afterwards *Corrivals* with them for the Supreme power. The *Spartans* at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable servitude. The occasion this. In the confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here ravished: which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their war; the true reason indeed being their covetousness of the sole Empire. This war broke out three several times. The first continued 20 years, in which space, the *Lacedæmonians* fearing their absence would hinder the supply of children in the City; sent a company of their ablest young men home to accompany their wives. Their *off-spring* were called *Parthenii*, who coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italie*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Aristomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*; in which they prospered till *Aristocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their confederates, revolted to side with *Lacedæmon*. Then began they to decline, and *Aristomines* was thrice

thrice taken prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where by chance espying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her tail. The Fox running away, guided *Aristomenes* after; till the straitnesse of the hole by which he went out, made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his nails: which exercise he never left, till he had made the hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, dyed in *Rhodes*. The third war was like drops after a tempest. In which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become slaves unto the *Spartans*; who put them to all drudgeries and servile works, as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their *bondmen*: and to this life some of them did apply themselves with so much obsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messena servilior*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heavy yoke, passed into *Sicil*, and there built the City of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedæmonians* at the battel of *Leuctres*, restored them to their antient possessions. *Arcadia* and *Laconia*.

4. *ARCADIA*, hath on the East, *Laconia*; on the West, *Elis* and *Messene*; on the North, *Achaia propria*; and on the South, the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly called *Pelasgia*: the people whereof thought themselves more antient than the Moon.

Orta prius Luna, *de se si creditur ipsi*,
A magno tellus Arcade *nomen habet*.

The land which of great *Arcas* took its name,
Was ere the *Moon*, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are 1. *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 foot, and 3000 horse; routed the Army of the *Spartans*, and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 foot, and 2000 horse. In this battel *Epaminondas* that famous Leader, received his deaths wounds, and not long after dyed. At his last gasp one of his friends bemoaning his untimely death; *Alas*, said he, *thou dieſt* Epaminondas, *and leaveſt behind thee no Children*: Nay, replyed he, two daughters will I leave behind me; the victory of *Leuctra*, and this other at *Mantinea*. It was afterwards called *Antigonia*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of *Philip* the father of *Perseus*, King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperour *Adrian*, restored to its old name again; and is now called *Mantegna*. 2. *Megalopolis*, the birth-place of *Polybius* that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestia*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it; the whole now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3. *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Psophis*, so called from *Psophis*, one of the sons of *Lycaon*, once King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Stymphalus*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Stymphalian* birds; so great in number and in body, that they darkned the sun-beams, and terribly infested this little Province; till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6. *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped, and from hence called *Tegæus*; more for the war made upon the *Tegeates*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedæmonians*: who thinking themselves assured of victory, brought with them store of chains and fetters, wherewith to lead captive their conquered Enemies; but being overcome in battel, were themselves bound with them, and forced as slaves, to till the grounds of these *Tegeates*. Here is also in this Country the River *Styx*, whose water for the poisonous taste was called the water of Hell: by which Poets feign, that the Gods used to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God soever swore by *Styx* falsly, he was banished from heaven; and prohibited *Nectar* for 1000 years.

This Country for the fitness of it for pasturage and grazing, hath made it the subject of many worthy and witty discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a book, which besides its excellent language, rare contrivances, and delectable stories, hath in it all the strains of *Poesie*, comprehendeth the universal art of speaking; and to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable rules for demeanour, both private and publick. Which noble Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodore*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melintus* and *Ariana*, may deservedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5. *LACONIA*, is bounded on the West, with *Arcadia*; on the East, and South, with the Sea; on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it, afterwards *Oebalia* from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedæmon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones*, who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof, on their removal, into the Ilands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some writers also called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The soil hereof exceeding rich, and the fields very spacious; yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountainets which overthwart it. Well-watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair *Bayes* and *Promontories*: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea* and *Tænaria*, now called *Cabo Malio*, and *Cabo Matapan*: and of the Bayes, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the antients; into which the River *Eurotas*, (now better known

Laconia

by the name of *Vasilo Potamo*, or the Kingly River) pours his gentle streams. The nature of the people we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Leuctres* situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messeni*; of which name were two others in *Greece*; the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*, but this last most memorable. 2. *Amyclæ*, so called from *Amyclas* the third King of *Sparta*, by whom first founded: renowned afterwards for the birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the foundresse of the City of *Amyclæ* in *Calabria Superior*, at first a Colonie of this, distant from *Lacedæmon* about 20 furlongs. 3. *Thalama*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*: and not far off Mount *Tænarus* near the Promontorie *Tænaria*, in which the Natives shew a Cave, (beleeved in former times to be the descent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus* (seated on the *Bay*, named *Golpho di Napoli*) now called *Malvasia*; a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malvesey*, or *Malmesey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6. *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta* the son or brother of *Phoroneus*, the 2d. King of *Argos*, the Founder of it: but afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Lacedæmon*, the second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a most famous Commonwealth; but at first governed by Kings, as most of the *Greek* Cities in antient times. *Tyndarus* the father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof, After whose death, and the death of the said famous brethren; *Menalaus* was admitted King of *Sparta* or *Lacedemon*, in right of *Helena* his wife, their sister. And though *Nicostratus*, and *Magapenthes*, sons of *Menelaus* by another *venter*, succeeded after his decease; yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the son of *Agamemnon* to be their King; marying him to *Hermione* the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Neece of *Tyndarus*. *Tisamenes*, the son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heraclidæ* or posterity of *Hercules* returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Temenus*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Aristodemus*, sons of *Aristomachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms, of the City of *Argos*; the second, of *Messene*; and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*: which dying very shortly after, he left unto his two sons *Eurysthenes* and *Procles*, the roots of the two Royal families, which joyntly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*: first absolutely as *Soveraign Princes*, without any controul; afterwards at the direction of the *Senate*, and finally under the command and check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period, were for the most part men of action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time: I will first make a Catalogue of them, and then subjoyn such observations and remembrances, as I think most pertinent.

The KINGS of *SPARTA*

Of the first Family.

A.M.

1 *Eurotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
2 *Lacedæmon*, brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedæmon*.
3 *Amyclas*, son of *Lacedæmon*, the founder of *Amiclæ*, a *Laconian* City.
4 *Argalus*, son of *Amyclas*.
5 *Cynorta*, son of *Argalus*.
6 *Oebalus* son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7 *Hippocoon* son of *Oebalus*.
2700 8 *Tyndarus* brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was king of *Oebalia* only.
9 *Castor* and *Pollux*, sons of *Tyndarus*, famous among the *Argonautes*.
2740 10 *Menelaus*, son of *Atreus*, and brother of *Agamemnon*, Kings of *Mycene*, together with *Helena* his wife, the daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the destruction of *Troy*.
2770 11 *Nicostratus*, and *Megapenthes* sons of *Menalaus* by a former wife.
12 *Orestes*, son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his wife, daughter of *Helena*, and *Menelaus*.
13 *Tisamenes* son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclidæ*, reigned in *Achaia*; and left his kingdom there, unto his posterity.

The KINGS of *SPARTA*.

Of the race of the HERACLIDÆ.

1 *Aristodemus*, the first King of the race of *Hercules*, left the Kingdom joyntly to his two sons.

A.M.

A.M.	
2848	1 *Eristhenes.*
2890	2 *Agis*, from whom this line were called *Agidæ.*
2891	3 *Echestratus.*
2926	4 *Labetas.*
2963	5 *Dryssus.*
2992	6 *Agesilaus.*
3046	7 *Archelaus.*
3096	8 *Teleclus.*
3136	9 *Alcumenes.*
3173	10 *Polydorus.*
	11 *Eurycrates.*
	12 *Anaxandrus.*
	13 *Eurycrates* II.
	14 *Leonidas.*
	15 *Anaxandrides.*
	16 *Cleomenes.*
	17 *Leonidas* II.
3470	18 *Plistarchus.*
3471	19 *Plistonax.*
3539	20 *Pausanias.*
3553	21 *Agesipolis.*
3567	22 *Cleombrotus.*
3576	23 *Agesipolis* II.
3577	24 *Cleomenes* II.
2911	25 *Arius.*
3655	26 *Acrotatus.*
	27 *Arius* II.
	28 *Leonidas* III.
	29 *Celombrotus* II.
3714	30 *Cleomenes* III. the last of the line of the *Agidæ*; who having slain *Eurydamidas* the son of *Agis* the 3d. substituted his brother *Epielides* in his place. But being himself shortly after vanquished by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his wife and children; the Government of the *Heraclidæ* ended, after it had continued here for the space of 900 years, or thereabouts.

A.M.	
2848	1 *Procles.*
	2 *Euripon*, from whom this line were called *Eurypontidæ.*
	3 *Prytanis.*
	4 *Eunomus.*
	5 *Polydectes.*
3076	6 *Charilaus.*
3140	7 *Nicandrus.*
3176	8 *Theopompus.*
	9 *Archidamus.*
	10 *Zeuxidamus.*
	11 *Anaxidamus.*
	12 *Archidamus* II.
	13 *Agasicles.*
	14 *Ariston.*
	15 *Demaratus.*
3447	16 *Leotychides.*
3478	17 *Archidamus* III.
3520	18 *Agis.*
3547	19 *Agesilaus.*
3588	20 *Archidamus* IV.
2611	21 *Agis* II.
	22 *Eudamidas.*
	23 *Archidamus* V.
	24 *Eudamidas* II.
3700	25 *Agis* III.
	26 *Eurydamidas*, the last King of the line of the *Eurypontidæ*, slain by *Cleomenes*, the last of the other line also.

Under these Kings the Government at first was ἀγαν Μοναρχικὸν, as *Plutarch* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus*, the fourth king of the second house, the people finding the reins of Government let loose, began to mutiny and grow too head-strong. To bridle whom; and to restrain the Kings withall, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus* the Protector of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that house, did ordain the *Senate*; committing to them the *supreme power* in maters civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all *military* and *sacred* businesse. To curb the insolencies of this *Senate*, who quickly found their own strength, *Theopompus* the eighth King of that house with the consent of *Polydorus* the tenth King of of the other; instituted a new *Magistracy* chosen out of the *Common people*, whom they called the *Ephori*, which grew in fine to such an height of pride and Tyranny; as not only to controll the *Senators*, but to censure, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the spirit of sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon*, was at first a *Monarchie* under Kings; than an *Aristocratie*, under the command of the Senate; next a *Democratie* under the *Ephori*; and finally by those *popular Officers* made so plain a Tyranny, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths men, who died before they had embrued their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms τυραννίδα & τὸ τυραννικὸν, a most absolute tyranny. What think you would these men have called it, had they lived to see *Leonidas* the 3d. deposed; and *Agis* the third of that name also, most barbarously murdered by these *popular Villains.*

But being the foundation of this Commonwealth was first laid; and the good Laws and *politique* Constitutions by which it did so long subsist in great power and splendour; established by the wit and power of *Lycurgus*, as before was said: we are to know concerning him; that he was the son of *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the second house, slain in a popular tumult by the common people. Who finding by this Essay, that the people were become too head-strong for the Kings to govern, unlesse reduced to extreme bondage by their Kings, which he wished not neither; took the advantage of the minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government: and what he could not doe by fair means to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flie for sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and setled such a form of government as himself best fancied, the better to decline the envy of so great a change, he got leave

Argolis

to travel, binding the people by an oath to observe all his laws until his return: and being gone, commanded at his death, that his ashes should be cast into the Sea, lest being carryed back to *Sparta* the people might conceive themselves released from their oath. By means whereof his laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flourish in all prosperity: the particulars of which institutions he that lists to see, may find them specified at large, by *Plutarch* in the life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the wars for no other reason, than on an hope to rid themselves from so hard a life: and that *Diogenes* returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that that he returned from *men to women*, ἐκ τῶν ἀνδρῶν εἰς τὰς γυναῖκας. And being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the compleatest men; made answer, that he could no where meet with men, but that he had found some boyes amongst the *Spartans*. A *Cynical* and rugged answer, but such as carryed a great deal of judgement in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their actions, and less effeminate in their lives, than the rest of the *Grecians*. But besides the strictness of the discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wish for wars abroad: namely the little or no power which either the Kings, or People, had in civil matters, or affairs of State; entirely left to the disposing of the *Senate*, and the power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings having by the laws the command of their armies, were willing to engage in war upon all occasion; and the common people as desirous to attend them in such imployments, as the Kings could wish. Upon these grounds the *war* is made a *trade* amongst them; beginning with the *Helots* a neighbouring people; then with the rest of the *Laconians*; afterwards quarrelling the *Messenians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued and made subject to them. In the war which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder house, went forth to aid them; slain at the straights of *Thermopylæ*, courageously fighting for the liberty of *Greece*: and when it was thought fit, to set upon the *Persian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of this war against the *Persians*, *Pausanias* and *Agesilaus* were of most renown: the first in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making war upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Persians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their *Rivals* in point of *Soveraignty* and glory. Hence the long war betwixt these Cities, called *Bellum Peloponnesiacum*, managed for the most part in *Peloponnesus*, from thence transferred into *Sicil*, and at last ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an *Aristocratie* under 30 *Magistrates* of their own appointment, commonly called the *thirty tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate successe, their next quarrel was with the *Bœotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Persians* openly assisting the enemy. Here their prosperity began to leave them. For besides many small defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* so discomfited them, at the overthrowes of *Leuctres* and *Mantinea*; that *Sparta* it self was in danger of utter ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy war*, chiefly undertook against the *Phocians*, wherein also they made a party: but this war being ended by King *Philip*, they scarce breathed more freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexanders* Captains fought for the Empire of their Master, all these flourishing Republiques were either totally swallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedemonians* held the chief strength of a Town to consist in the valour of the people; and therefore would never suffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediatly following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not those fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Doson*, King of *Macedon*; who having vanquished *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entred the Town, and was the first man that ever was received into it as Conqueror. So much different were the present *Spartans* from the valour and courage of their ancestors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forsake his Country, and the race of the *Heraclida* failing in him, they became a prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no sooner freed, but they were made subject (in a manner) to the power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town so weak and inconsiderable, that it was not able to resist the poorest enemy; now a small Burrough called *Misithra*. And so I leave them to the thoughts of their former glories, having now nothing else to boast of, but the fame and memory of their *actions* in former times.

ARGOLIS, so called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South, with *Laconia*; on the West, with *Corinthia*, and *Achaia Propria*; on the East, and North, with the Sea. A territory remarkable for a most excellent breed of *Horses*, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argus* the fourth King of this Country, and the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, so 1. for the death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*; who having forced his entry into it, was here ignobly slain, after all his victories, by the hands of an old woman, throwing a Tyle at him from the top of an house. 2ly. For the long race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the cotemporary of our Father *Abraham*, *An.* 2003. unto *Acrisius* their last King. Whose daughter *Danae* being shut up in a Tower of Brass, was deflowred by *Jupiter*; to whom she bare the renowned *Perseus*, so memorised in antient Poets. But *Perseus* having by misfortune slain his Grandfather, the old King *Acrisius*; quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the kingdom to *Mycene*, a City of his own foundation, and so better fancied, by means hereof, the second City of esteem in this little Province. Growing in small time unto so great riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*; as appeareth by *Horace*; in whom the horses of *Argos*, and the wealth of *Mycene* are placed in one verse together;

Apium

Argolis.

Aptum dicis equis Argos, *ditesque* Mycenas.

For horses *Argos* is of fame,
For wealth *Mycenæ* hath the name.

3. *Trœzen*, situate on the *Sinus Argolicus*, now called *Golfo di Engia*, the Royal seat of *Pytheus*, the Father of *Theseus*, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath sometime the name of *Pytheia Trœzen*, and *Theseus* many times is called *Trœzenius Heros*, as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from 4 *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nursed. 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* slew the dreadfull Lion which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act, were instituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exercises were, running with swift horses, whorlbats, running on foot, quoiting, wrastling, darting, shooting. Some have referred the original of these Games to one *Opheltes* a *Lacedæmonian*; and in whose honour they conceive them instituted: and others fetch it higher from the war of *Thebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Seaside, famous for the Temple of *Æsculapius*, and the cure of all sorts of diseases there; so called from *Epidaurus*, the son of *Argus*, the founder of it. Of the same name, but of a different situation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being seated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Melissa*, and *Æmera*, at that time an Island: but by a Earthquake laid unto the continent: now called *Pigiada*. 7. *Nauplia*, so called of *Nauplius* King of *Eubœa*, and father of *Palamedes*, to whom it antiently belonged. A station then, as now, for shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*, the richest and best traded in all this tract; giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*; into which the famous River *Inachus*, having passed through the City of *Argos*, doth disgorge it self; so called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the original and *Progenitor* of

The KINGS of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A. M.

2093 1 *Inachus*, the supposed father of *Io*, from whom the *Grœcians* are sometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.

2143 2 *Phoroneus*, the son of *Inachus* and *Melissa*, from whom the said *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.

2223 3 *Apis*, the son of *Jupiter*, and *Niobe* the daughter of *Phoroneus*, who leaving *Greece* went into *Ægypt*, where he taught the people *tillage*, and was there worshipped afterwards in the form of an *Oxe*.

2238 4 *Argus*, the son of *Apis*, and the founder of *Argos*, in whose time *Agriculture* was taken up amongst the *Grecians*; from him called *Argivi*.

2308 5 *Criasus*, by some *Peirasus*, the son of *Argus*.

2363 6 *Phorbas*, the son of *Criasus*; in whose time *Atlas*, and *Prometheus*, are said to flourish.

2397 7 *Triopas*, the son of *Phorbas*, and the brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himself in the Isle of *Rhodes*.

2442 8 *Crotopus*.

2464 9 *Sthenelus*, outed of the kingdom by

2475 10 *Danaus*, the brother of *Ægyptus*; by whom driven out of *Ægypt*, he was made King of *Argos*, by consent of the people: the Father of those many daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Grœcians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.

2525 11 *Lynceus*, son of *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.

2556 12 *Abas*, the son of *Lynceus*, and *Hypermnestra* the Daughter of *Danaus*.

2566 13 *Pretus*, the son of *Abas*.

2606 14 *Acrisius*, the brother of *Pretus*, and the father of *Danae*, foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a son of that daughter, shut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with *Gold*, got the Ladies consent, by whom he had *Perseus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.

2637 15 *Perseus*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, exposed by his Grandfather to the Seas. Miraculously preserved, and grown into great fame by his brave exploits; he restored *Acrisius* to his throne, from which he had been deposed by his brother *Pricus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Acrisius*, he removed his seat unto *Mycenæ*; where he reigned together with his son *Sthenelus*.

2645 16 *Eurystheus*, the son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult tasks, which, at the instigation of *Juno*, he imposed on *Hercules* his foster-child, and the supposed son of *Amphitryon* his Cousen German.

2688 17 *Atreuus* and *Thyestes*, sons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the line of *Perseus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Mycenæ*; infamous for their murders and adulterie: *Thyestes* abusing the bed of *Atreus*, and *Atreus* feasting him with the body of his own son, whence *Suum fratris fratrem* in the *Proverb*.

Corinthia.

2753 18 *Agamemnon*, the ſon of *Atreus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the war of *Troy*, in which action there ingaged 69 Kings of the *Grecians*, wafted over with a Navy of 1224 ſhips, killed at his coming home by *Ægiſthus*, his Couſen German.

2768 19 *Ægiſthus*, the ſon of *Thyeſtes*, having defiled *Clitemneſtra* the wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his abſence; by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and uſurped the Kingdom.

2775 20 *Oreſtes*, ſon of *Agamemnon*, revenged his fathers death on *Ægiſthus*, and *Clitemneſtra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and reſtored again unto his wits, he maried *Hermione*, daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the kingdom of *Sparta* alſo.

2803 21 *Penthilus*, the ſon of *Oreſtes*, and the laſt King of this line; outed of his eſtate by the *Dores* and *Heraclidæ*; who made themſelves Maſters of all *Peloponneſus*, which they poſſeſſed until the conqueſt of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Iſthmus* or neck of land, which joineth *Peloponneſus* to the reſt of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis*, and *Achaia Propria*. It containeth only the territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitfull of thoſe commodities which the reſt of this *Peniuſula* doth abound withall: as being mountainous and hilly, and by reaſon of the nearneſſe of the Sea, full of craggy rocks. The chief, and indeed the only Cities of note in it, 1. *Cenchrea*, the naval Road or ſtation of ſhips for *Corinth*, mentioned *Act.* 19. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a diſtinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was. 2. *Corinth* it ſelf, commodiouſly ſituate for the command of all *Greeee* (had not the Inhabitants been more given to *Merchandiſe* than unto the *wars*) as being ſeated on the bottom of the neck or *Iſthmus*; the *Ionian* Sea upon the Weſt, and the *Ægean* on the Eaſt, waſhing the walls thereof, and giving it on each ſide a capacious Haven, in which regard called by *Horace*, *bimaris Corinthus*. In compaſſe about eleven miles, for ſtrength impregnable, for command as powerfull; maſtering both Seas on which it ſtood, and cutting off all paſſage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which laſt end the Caſtle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, ſerved exceeding fitly; and was therefore called one of the *Fetters of Greece*. The City rich, well-traded, and neatly built, moſt houſes beautified with handſom pillars, from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the wealth of the people, and the conveniency of the ſituation; than for any notable exploits performed by them, or any great influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the wealth, greatneſſe, and ſituation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage*, and *Capua*, being the other two. In this City lived the famous or infamous whore, *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a ſingle nights lodging: which made *Demoſthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*, and occaſioned the old *By-word*,

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every mans avail,
Unto *Corinth* for to ſail.

Near hereunto ſtood the *Acrocorinthian* mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Caſtle called hence *Acrocorinthus* were ſeated: out of which flowed the famous fountain named *Pyrene*, of old conſecrated to the *Muſes*; by *Perſius* called *Fons Caballinus*, becauſe feigned by the antient *Poets* to have been made by the Horſe *Pegaſus*, daſhing his foot againſt the rock. And on the other ſide hereof in the *Iſthmus*, were celebrated yearly the *Iſthmian* games, ordained by *Theſeus* in the honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* deviſed by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The exerciſes much the ſame, and the reward no other than a Garland of *Oaken boughs*; yet drawing yearly a great reſort of people to them: partly to exerciſe themſelves, and behold the ſports, and partly to ſacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the fortunes of this City; it was at firſt called *Ephyra*, at that time a ſmall and obſcure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus* the ſon of *Pelops*, took the name of *Corinth*; Governed by him and his poſterity, till the comming of the *Heraclidæ* into *Poloponneſus*: at what time one *Aletes* of the race of *Hercules*, poſſeſſed himſelf hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his line enjoyed it for the ſpace of 220 years and upwards: when the houſe failing in the perſon of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this government 124 years, the City was ſeiſed on by one *Cypſelus*, *A. M.* 3294 who left it to his ſon *Periander*, one of the *ſeven wiſemen* of *Greece*; counted a *Tyrant* in thoſe times, for no other reaſon, than that he had ſuppreſſed the popular government: after whoſe death, *An.* 3364. the City did recover its former liberty. In the buſtle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the eſtates of *Greece*, for the ſuperiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being wealth, not honour: not intereſſed in any action of renown in all thoſe times; but in the ſending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracuſans*, againſt the Tyrant *Dionyſius*, who did lord it over them. Subdued together with the reſt, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the reſt reſtored to liberty by the power of *Rome*; under whom growing ſtill more rich, and withall more inſolent, they abuſed certain *Roman* Ambaſſadours. But *iraſci populo* Romano *nemo ſapienter poteſt*, as is ſaid in *Livie*, which the *Corinthians* found too true: the City being beſiedged, ſacked, and burnt unto the ground by *Lucius Mum-*

Nummius a *Roman* Conſul, *An. V. C.* 607. In the burning whereof there were conſumed ſo many goodly *Statuas* of gold, ſilver, braſſe, and other metals; that being melted into a lump, they made up by that fatal chance, the ſo much eſtimated metal, called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great eſteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by S. *Paul* to the *Chriſtian* Faith; and having flouriſhed a long time in pride and pleaſures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a ſmall Burrough called *Crato*. *Achaia.*

Having thus ſpoken of the ſeveral eſtates of *Peloponneſus*, it reſteth that we ſpeak ſomewhat of the eſtate of the whole; varied according to the fortunes of thoſe particulars, which had moſt influence on the ſame. The affairs hereof a long while ſwayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, reſtrained afterwards to the territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleaſures; from *Apis* the third king whereof (if not rather from *Apis*, the fourth king of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of ſome writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops*, the ſon of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia* coming into *Greece*, and marying *Hippodamia*, daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the moſt powerfull Prince of all this *Peninſula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponneſus*. The kingdom of *Mycenæ* growing into power and credit, had the next turn in ſwaying the affairs hereof for a certain ſeaſon; as after that the *Dores* and the *Heraclidæ*, poſſeſſed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Meſſene*. The *Spartans* getting the preheminence over all the reſt, were the next who governed the affairs of it, and they held it long; having firſt conquered *Laconia*, and ſubverted the eſtate of *Meſſene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate ſucceſſe againſt the *Perſians*, they became almoſt abſolute in their commands, without any *Competitor*. But their power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, in the *Theban* war, the *petit States* hereof began to take heart again, and ſtand upon their own legs, as they did a while; till the Kings of *Macedon* ſucceeding *Alexander* the *Great*, brought them once more under, and made them fellow-ſervants with their *Spartan Maſters*. In the confuſions which enſued in *Macedon*, amongſt the *Competitors* for that kingdom, *Patræ* and *Dime*, two Cities of *Achaia Propria*, firſt united them in a ſtrong league of amity, at ſuch time as *Pyrrhus* firſt went into *Italy*: into which confederacy the Cities of *Tritæa* and *Pheræ* ſhortly after came, and not long after that, *Ægira*, and the reſt of *Achaia Propria*: their affairs firſt governed by two *Prætors*, with advice of the *Senate*, as afterwards by one alone with the like advice; of which *Marcus Carinenſis* was the firſt, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the ſecond. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this *new Commonwealth* increaſing by the virtue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Trœzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became members of it: maintaining gallantly the liberties of *Peloponneſus*, till finally maſtered by the *Romans*. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire it fell, with all the reſt of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and in the declining of their fortunes, when the *Latines* got poſſeſſion of the *Imperial* City, moſt of the Sea-coaſts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*: the inland parts formerly parcelled out amongſt many Princes, whom they called *Deſpots*, continuing as before they were. By *Iſabel*, a daughter of one of theſe *Deſpots* (and as it ſeems the chief among them) maried to *Ferdinand*, ſon of *James* the firſt, and father of *James* the 2d. King of *Majorca*, the title of Prince of *Morea* came into that houſe, uſed by them and the reſt of theſe petit Princes, till all together made a prey to the Turkiſh Tyrants, *Mahomet* the *Great*, and *Bajazet* the ſecond, by whom wholly conquered. For howſoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Conſtantinople*; and were received and obeyed by thoſe *Petit Princes*; yet being unable to hold out againſt the *Conquerour*, they became his *tributaries*. But falling out amongſt themſelves, and neglecting then to ſend in the *tribute* agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the *Great* occaſion to invade the Country; and under colour of aiding one brother againſt the other, to deſtroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*; and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponneſus*; and flee to *Italie*, *Anno* 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged ro the State of *Venice*, followed the ſame fortune alſo in the time of *Bajazet*; by whom all taken at the laſt, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, *Anno* 1500 or thereabouts. Governed ever ſince that time by a *Turkiſh Zanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his reſidence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horſe to ſecure the Country, and 700000 *Aſpers*, (that is to ſay, 14000 Crowns) a year, for his entertainment.

ACHAIA.

ACHAIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Epirus*; on the North, with *Theſſalie*; and on the South, with *Peloponneſus*, and the Seas thereof. Called antiently *Hellas*, from *Helles* the ſon of *Deucalion*: but whence it had the name of *Achaia* is not yet agreed on; though ſure I am, that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Græcians*) to difference them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia Propria*.

The Country famous in the Authors of elder times, more for the gallantry of the men, than any great goodneſſe of the ſoil and place: yet that ſufficiently memorable for the hill *Hymettus*, ſwarming with Bees, plentifull of the ſweeteſt honey, and rich in mines of excellent Marble; as alſo for the River *Cephiſus*, which runneth almoſt through the whole length hereof; divided into two main ſtreams, of which the one is called *Aſopus*, the other retaineth its firſt name. Upon the banks hereof ſtood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the reſtauration of mankind, as the Poets fable.

It

Achaia. It was divided antiently into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1. *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*. 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A diviſion now as much diſuſed as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Levadia*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the Weſt, *Megaris*, and ſome part of *Bœotia*; on all other parts compaſſed with the Sea: So called from *Athens* the chief City. The ſoil for the moſt part very barren, and craggy, yet by the arms and induſtry of the people made both rich, and famous: inſomuch as the yeerly Revenues of the ſtate of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The money current in this countrey was commonly ſtamped with an Oxe, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applyed to ſuch *Lawyers* as were bribed to ſay nothing in their *Clients* cauſe. Not much unlike to which was the Proverb riſing from the coin of *Ægina* (an Iſle adjoyning) ſtamped with the figure of a *Snail*, viz. *Virtutem & ſapientiam vincunt* Teſtudines.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Philæ*, a ſtrong Fortreſſe on the borders of *Bœotia*, ſurprized by *Thraſibulus*, and others of the baniſhed *Athenians*, during the government of the 30 Tyrants: the taking whereof was the firſt ſtep towards their own and their countries liberty; which ſoon after followed. 2. *Eleuſis*, on the borders of *Megaris*, almoſt impregnably fortified by the 30 *Tyrants* when they had the command of *Athens*; by whom deſigned for their retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Philæ*, and *Piræus*, by the *Thraſybulians*, they found ſtrong wals a weak defence for ſo much wickedneſſe; being trained out as to a parly, and ſo deprived of the place and their power together. It was firſt built by one *Eleuſius*, who entertained *Ceres*, as ſhe was in queſt of her daughter *Proſerpine*; who to reward him taught him the uſe of *Agriculture*; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleuſina*, and her ſacrifices *ſacra Eleuſinia*; and ſometimes the City alſo, *Cerealis Eleuſis*, ſo called by *Ovid* in the 7. book of the *Metamorphoſis*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Aſopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiaraus*, and the *Statua* of the Goddeſſe *Nemeſis*, hence called *Rhamnuſia* in the Poets: this *Nemeſis* or *Rhamnuſia*, being the Goddeſs of *indignation*, puniſhing thoſe who made themſelves unworthy of their preſent fortunes. 4. *Trichoritum*, of more Antiquity than fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the ſouthſide of the river *Aſopus*, oppoſite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the diſcomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian*, to the numerous Army of *Darius*, conſiſting of 200000 Foot, and 10000 Horſe: the Emulation of which noble victory ſtartled ſuch brave reſolves in the breſt of *Themiſtocles*. As memorable in the Poets of thoſe elder times for the *Marathonian* bull there ſlain by *Theſeus*. 6. *Moſopia*, the ordinary dwelling place of *Theſeus*, before he fixed his ſeat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he reſtored *Helena*, (whom he had before ſtoln from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Reſtitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epiſtle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Oreſtes*; in which laſt it is ſaid expreſly, *Reddita Moſopia Tyndaris urbe ſoror*. That is to ſay, that ſhe was delivered to her two Brethren, (who had took much pains in ſeeking for her) in the Town of *Moſopia*. 7. *Pyræus*, the Port-Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their ſhipping; the Haven hereof being capable of 400 ſail: diſtant from the City about two miles, but joined unto it by two long walls reaching from the one to the other, for ſecuring the conveyance of their Merchandize to and from the ſea. The Port it ſelf impregnably fortified by the advice of *Themiſtocles*. But as theſe long walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them: ſo were the fortifications of *Pyræus* it ſelf demoliſhed by the command of *Sylla*, in his war againſt *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-Town alſo, and of very good trade, but not of ſuch importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, ſituate from the Sea two miles, as before was ſaid: the Haven of *Pyræus* ſerving it with all commodities, which came from other parts by ſhipping. Firſt built by *Cecrops* the firſt King of it, by whom called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409. repaired afterwards by *Theſeus*, and furniſhed with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva* (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whoſe honour there were yearly kept ſome ſolemn games called *Panathenaia*. A City heretofore adorned with all thoſe excellencies of ſtrength and beauty, which Art or coſt could adde unto it. Renowned, as for many things, ſo for three eſpecially. 1. For the inviolable faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and moſt firm affection to their friends: ſo that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an *Adage*. 2ly. For the famous ſcholars which here taught and flouriſhed: this being ſo happy a Nurſery of the choiceſt wits, and ſo fitly ſeated for the *Muſes*, that the very *Natives* being in other Countries, could ſenſibly perceive ſome want of that natural vigour, which at home was reſiant in their ſpirits. *Ita ut* corpora *iſtius gentis ſeparata ſint in alias Regiones*, ingenia *vero ſolis* Athenienſium *muris clauſa eſſe exiſtimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. Yea and to ſay the truth, it was a moſt famous Univerſity, from whoſe great Ciſtern, the Conduit-pipes of learning were diſperſed over all the world. Yet did not learning ſo effeminate or ſoften the hearts of the people, but that by this one City yeelded more famous Captains than any in the World beſides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, *Themiſtocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and inlarged this Commonwealth: yet were the people ſo ungratefull to them, or they ſo unfortunate in the end, that they either dyed abroad in baniſhment, or by ſome violent death at home. *Themiſtocles* the Champion of *Greece*, died an exile in *Perſia*; *Phocion* was ſlain by the people; *Demoſthenes* made himſelf away by poiſon; *Pericles* many times indangered; *Theſeus* their Founder firſt depoſed, and then deſpitefully impriſoned: *Ariſtides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. baniſhed for 10 years by the *Oſtraciſm*: A form of puniſhment ſo called, becauſe the name

of

of the partie banished was writ on an *Oyster-shell*; and only used toward such, who either began to grow too *popular*, or potent among the men of service. Which device, allowable in a *Democratie*, where the overmuch powerableness of one might hazard the liberty of all; was exercised in spight oftner, than desert. A Countrey-fellow meeting by chance with *Aristides*, desired him to write *Aristides* in his shell: and being asked whether the man whose banishment he desired, had ever wronged him, replyed, *No, he was only sorry to hear folk call him a good man.* We find the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans*, so re'oubted in war. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others: only because their virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*; *Agricola* poysoned, with the privity of *Domitian*; *Corbulo* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an age, wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In later times it so hapned to *Gonsalvo* the *Great Captain*, who having conquered the kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to stand at the *Spaniards* devotion; was by his Master called home, where he lived obscurely, though honoured after his decease with a solemn Funeral. Worse fared the *Guise*, and *Biron* in *France*; worse *Essex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberlund*, with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who having served 34 years in our wars with *France*, and for 17 years together never coming home; at his return was quarrelled and basely murdered. It were almost an impietie to be silent of *Joab*, the bravest souldier, and most fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lords battels; and yet he died at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that such men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and such as have best opportunity to indeer men of warre unto their Soveraignes, know not the way of commending their great deserts; or that Envy the common Foe to Vertue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are distrustful of men of Action; and are not willing to make them greater, whose name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the souldiers themselves, by an unseasonable over-valuing of their own performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cause of the death of *Silius*, in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, that over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets hate in stead of favours. *Beneficia eo usque læta sunt dum videntur exolvi posse; Ubi multum anteverterunt, pro gratia odium redditur*, saith that wise Historian. *Athens.*

But to look back again on *Athens*, it was first built by *Cecrops*, the first King thereof; governed by him and his posterity with no lower title, for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The KINGS of *ATHENS.*

A.	*M.*	
2394	1	*Cecrops*, who first made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained sacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pausanias* writeth.
2444	2	*Cranaus*, outed of his kingdom by
2453	3	*Amphictyon*, the son of *Deucalion*, and Uncle to that *Amphictyon*, who first instituted the supreme Court of the *Amphictyones*, or *Common-Councel* of all *Greece*.
2463	4	*Erichthonius*, the son of *Vulcan*.
2513	5	*Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, so famous in the old Poets, of whom more hereafter.
2553	6	*Erichtheus*, whose daughter *Orithya* was ravished by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603	7	*Cecrops* II. brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643	8	*Pandion* II. son of *Erichtheus*.
2668	9	*Ægeus*, son of *Pandion* the second, of whom the *Ægean* sea took name.
2706	10	*Theseus*, the son of *Ægeus*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquished the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the people of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746	11	*Menestheus*, the son of *Peteus*, Grandchild of *Erichtheus*, served with the other *Greek* Princes at the war of *Troy*.
2769	12	*Demophoon*, the son of *Theseus*, restored unto his Fathers throne on the death of *Menestheus*.
2802	13	*Oxyntes*, son or brother of *Demophoon*.
2814	14	*Aphydas*, son of *Oxyntes*, slain by his brother.
2815	15	*Thymades*, the last of the line of *Erichtheus*.
2823	16	*Melanthius* of *Messene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heraclidæ*, obtained that of *Athens*.
2860	17	*Codrus*, the son of *Melanthius*, the last King of *Athens*; who in the wars against the *Peloponnesians*, having Intelligence by an *Oracle*, that his Enemies should have the victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King; attired himself like a common Begger, entred the *Peloponnesian* Camp, and there played such prancks, that at the last they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy understood, they thought themselves by this means deprived of all hopes of success, and so broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the people of *Athens* did so honour his memory, that thy thought no man worthy to succeed, as King; and therefore committed the managing of the Estate to Governours for term of life, whom they called *Archontes*: the first *Archon* being *Medon*,

Athens. don, the ſon of *Codrus*. Not differing from the former Kings in point of power, but only in the manner of their *admiſſion*: the former Kings claiming the government by *ſucceſſion* in right of bloud; and theſe *Archontes* holding by *election* only: whoſe names here follow in this liſt of

The perpetual *ARCHONTES* in the STATE of *ATHENS*.

A. M.		
2882	1	*Medon*, the ſon of *Codrus*.
2902	2	*Acaſtus*, the ſon of *Medon*.
2938	3	*Archippus*, the ſon of *Acaſtus*.
2957	4	*Therſippus*, the ſon of *Archippus*.
2998	5	*Phorbas*, the ſon of *Therſippus*.
3029	6	*Megacles*, the ſon of *Phorbas*.
3059	7	*Diogenetus*, the ſon of *Megacles*.
3087	8	*Phereclus*, the ſon of *Diogenetus*.
3106	9	*Aritthon*, the ſon of *Phereclus*.
3126	10	*Theſpieus*, in whoſe time began the kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153	11	*Agameſtor*.
3173	12	*Æſchilus*, the ſon of *Agameſtor*.

After whoſe death, *anno mun.* 3195. the *Athenians* weary of theſe *Governours* for *term of life*, as being leſs obnoxious to the check and cenſure of the *people*, choſe themſelves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yeeld up their places, and make room for others. But being a people greedy of *Novelties*, and deſirous of change, they had onely ſeven of thoſe *Decennial Archontes*: their Officers from that time forwards being choſen *annually*: which Officers being nine in number, we may call moſt properly the *Provoſt*, the *Chief Biſhop*, the *Marſhals*, and the ſix *Chief Juſtices*, all choſen out of the *Nobility*. And ſo it held for the ſpace of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*; who was the firſt which put the *Supreme authority* into the hands of the *People*; and gave the firſt hint unto that *Democratie*, which afterwards prevailed in *Athens*, by the help of *Pericles*. Who being one of the great Councel of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding Controverſies, and ſutes in Law, putting them over to the judgement of the common People. A Government ſo dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered or reſtored to *liberty*, or won to their party from the *Spartans*, they cauſed it to be admitted: as on the other ſide the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed the *Ariſtocratie* (their own loved Government) in all the places where they proſpered. As for the *Court* of the *Areopagites* of much fame in *Athens*, it conſiſted from the firſt beginning ἐκ τῶν κατ' ἐναυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of ſuch as had born ſome of the nine chief Offices; who being once admitted, held for term of life. Firſt inſtituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the ſon of *Theſeus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the *ſtreet of Mars*, ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ, mentioned *Act.* 17.22. or becauſe *Mars* being accuſed for a Murder, did firſt plead before them. A Court which held in eſtimation under all theſe changes, and ſo continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to return again to the ſtory of *Athens*; in or about the later end of the life of *Solon*, *Piſiſtratus* altered the *Free State*, and made himſelf the abſolute Maſter of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their libertie, driving thence *Hippias* the ſon of *Piſiſtratus*; who hereupon fled for ſuccour to *Darius* the *Perſian* Monarch, occaſioning by that means the firſt coming of the *Perſians* into *Greece*. What ſucceſſe the *Perſians* had in *Greece*, the Hiſtories of thoſe times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquiſhed by *Miltiades*, at *Marathon*; and *Xerxes* by *Themiſtocles*, at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* ſcape ſo clear, but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed firſt abandoned, and voluntarily diſmantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perſians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* re-edified their town, and ſtrongly fortified it with high and defenſible walls: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and ſpoiled the coaſts of *Perſia* in all quarters; inriching their Ciy with the ſpoils, and inlarging their power and Dominion by the addition of many Ilands and Sea-townes. Hereby they grew unto that wealth and potency, that they were ſuſpected by their weaker neighbours, and envied by their ſtronger, the *Lacedemonians* eſpecially: who fearing to loſe their antient priority over *Greece*, but pretending the ſurpriſal of *Potidea* a Citie of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and ſome hard meaſure, by them ſhewed upon the *Megarenſes*; made warre upon them. In the beginning of this warre, the *Athenians* not only reſiſted the whole power of all *Greece*, confederate againſt them; but ſo exceedingly proſpered, that the *Spartans* ſued for peace, and could not get it. But the ſcales of fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of their City, and ſubmit themſelves to the will and pleaſure of the *Spartans*, now by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Lyſander*, become their Maſters: by whom the Government was changed, and an *Ariſtocratie*, (or rather *Oligarchie*) eſtabliſhed under 30 Magiſtrates, known commonly by the name of the 30 Tyrants; expelled not long after by the valour of *Thraſibulus*, and his aſſociates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this warre, which the Hiſtorians call *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, the *Perſians* ſeeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppoſe them, began to work upon their Empire: furniſhed *Conon* a Noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy ſo well provided, that they overcame the *Lacedemonians* in a fight at Sea; and thereby put his Countrey-men into ſo good heart, that they made a partie in the warre called *Bellum Sacrum*: compoſed at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*: who brought not only the *Thebans* whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the reſt of the adverſe partie, under his command. A ſervitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon*, as the reſt became fellow-ſervants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then loſt her power in point of *Arms*, yet ſhe ſtill kept her credit as an Univerſity in point of *Arts*; *Origen*, *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and *Gregory Nyſſen*, men of renown and eminence in the Primitive times, are ſaid to have ſtudied at *Athens*: the like affirmed of

Pope

Pope *Joane*, if the Tale be true, for the middle ages. And so it held, as I conjecture, though not so eminently as before, till the year 1440. when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Author telleth) at the extreme beauty of the Castle, and the strength of the walls, not having lost in so long time, their former excellencies. Since that it sensibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough (by the *Turks* called *Selines*) but still preserved the Reputation of an Episcopal See, the Bishop of it holding up the title of *Athenienſis*. *Bœotia.*

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the East, with *Attica*; on the West, with the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North, with *Bœotia*; and on the South, with the *Isthmus*, and the *Golf di Engia*. So called from *Megaris*, the chief City.

This the least Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitfull; the Countrey for the most part being hard and rocky. Not beautified with many Cities; the principal of those which were 1 *Pegæ*, or *Pagæi*, situate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and spoken of both by *Plinie* and *Ptolemie*; but not otherwise memorable. 2 *Megaris*, (now *Megra*) first built by *Megareus*, the son of *Apollo*; and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philosophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide* a Disciple of *Socrates*; of whom see *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Nisus*, once the King of this little Territorie: on whose head there is said to have grown a Purple Hair, on which the preservation of his life and Kingdome did depend. Which Jewel his daughter *Scylla* is said to have delivered unto King *Minos* her Fathers Enemy; on whom then besieging this City, upon the sight of him from an high Turret, she became inamoured. But he rejecting her, and her Present both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which the unhappy woman seeing, threw her self after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the *Mythologists*: observing only by the way, the antiquitie of that politick practise, to *love the treason and hate the Traytor*. But the glories of this Citie did not end with *Nisus*. For shaking off the *Cretan* yoke, it became *sui juris* once again: and being conveniently seated on the very *Isthmus*, amounted to that height of prosperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Iland of *Salamis*. And in this war they so crushed the power and spirit of *Athens* by one fatal overthrow; that the *Athenians* to prevent all the like disasters, did ordain by Law, that whosoever mentioned the recovery of *Salamis*, was to lose his life: so that *Solon* was compelled to feign himself frantick, the better to propound the enterprise. In which, although the State of *Athens* got the Isle of *Salamis*: yet did the *Megarenſes* continue a *Free-people*, till brought under (with the rest) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made subject unto *Rome*.

3 *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South, with *Megaris*, and the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North, with the River *Cephisus*; on the East, with *Attica*, and a branch of the *Ægean* Sea; and on the West, with *Phocis*. Thus named from Βοῦς, which in *Greek* signifieth an Oxe: because when *Cadmus* weary of seeking his sister *Europa* (whom *Jupiter* had stollen out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle at *Delphos*; he was commanded to follow the first Oxe he saw, and where the Oxe did rest it self; there to build a City.

In the Countrie nothing singular, but an antient custom of burning before the door of an house in which a new-married wife was designed to dwell; the *Axle-tree* of the Coach which brought her thither; giving her by that Cermonie to understand (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his Morals) that she must frame her self to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country also are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring Bathes, called *Thermopylæ*, not above 25 foot in bredth: which in the war that *Xerxes* made against the *Greeks*, were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta*, with no more than 300 of his men, who having valiantly resisted that Armie which in its passage out of *Persia* had drank Rivers drie, and slain at least 30000 of them, dyed every man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which loss, lest it should terrifie the rest of his Army which were coming on; *Xerxes* commanded all the slain men to be buried in several pits, except a thousand; as if no more than they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it: 1 *Thespias*, on a River of the same name, at the fall whereof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated: shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*; and consecrated as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Thespiades* in the Poets. 2 *Platea*, nigh to which, *Mardonius* General to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the losse of *Mardonius* himself and 160000 men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenſes*. In memorie of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those *Worthies*, who there laid down their lives for the libertie of *Greece*: there was a festival kept annually by the *Plateans* in the month of *September*, with solemn *Sacrifices*, and a kind of divine acknowledgement unto the deceased; continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian* who first ordained them, to the dayes of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great fight the Commander in chief was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanias*, who afterwards having a design to make himself Soveraign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the practice; fled for sanctuarie to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted sacrilege to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the entrances; his own Mother laying the first stone. It is recorded, that before the fighting of this battel, the *Athenians* had been told by the *Oracle* that they should be *Conquerours* if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Plateans* within whose territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged

their

Bœotia, and *Phocis*.

their Citie; having been first burnt, and sacked, by the *Persians*; and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedæmonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the war against them. 3 *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great overthrow, which the *Thebans*, under the conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans*, and their King *Cleombrotus* there slain: by which victory they did not only preserve their own libertie, but brought their enemies to that fall of courage and reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine vengeance overtaking them in that very place, where some of their Nation had deflowred the daughters of *Schedasus*, who had given them courteous entertainment. For which, when no reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damosels slew themselves, to avoid the infamie of consenting to their own dishonour, and were buried in those very fields where this battel was fought. 4 *Ascra*, the birth-place of *Hesiod*, a man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleased that proud Critick *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worst verse in the *Georgicks* of the one, before the whole works of the other. 5. *Lebadia*, near the River *Cephisus*, the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the Den or Cave of *Trophonia*, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius*. Into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many ointings, washings, and the like superstitious preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A town which still preserves so much of its antient estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Levadia*; by which the Turks call it at this present. 6. *Cherona*, or *Ceronea*, the birth-place of *Plutarch*. Near unto which was fought that memorable battel, betwixt *L. Sylla* and the *Romans*, against *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Armie of 120000 souldiers; of which 10000 only escaped with life, the *Romans* losing but 14. 7 *Orchomenon*, no lets memorable for another victorie, obtained by the same *L. Sylla*, against *Dorilaus* another of that Kings Commanders, having an army of 80000 men, of which 20000 lost their lives that day. After which victories, when *Sylla* might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a peace up with him, that he might hasten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his faction under foot; preferring by that act the pursute of his own private quarrels, before that of his Countrie; endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8 *Aulis*, a Port town on the shores of the *Ægean* Sea, where the *Grecians* took shipping when they went to the war of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the enterprize, until they had destroyed that Citie. Concerning which, thus she in *Virgil*:

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam *excindere Gentem*
Aulide juravi.

That is say:

I took no oath at *Aulis* to destroy,
As did the *Greeks*, the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chief City of this Countrie, and such as had a special influence over all the rest, was the City of *Thebes*, situate on the banks of the River *Cephisus*, where built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician* after all his wandrings. Famous in old times for the wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and wife *Jocasta*. The historie of which war is the most antient piece of storie, that we finde of all *Greece*; the former times and writings containing nothing but fables, little savouring of *humanity*, and lesse of *truth*; as of men changed into Monsters, the adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who so crushed the *Lacedæmonians* at the battel of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that they could never after re-obtain their former puissance. This Common-wealth long flourished, and at last being overburdened in the *Phocian* war, was glad to submit it self to the protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*: who by this means first got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thrust his whole body. Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedons*; but *Alexander* his successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the *Greeks* in the like attempts, he razed the Citie, selling all the inhabitants of age and strength; only *Pindarus* house he commanded to be left standing, in honour of that learned Poet. At this sack of the town, one of the *Macedon* souldiers entred the house of a principal woman, named *Timoclea*, ravished her, and rifled her coffers; but still demanding more treasure, she shewed him a deep Well, saying, that there all her money was hidden. The credulous villain stooping down to behold his prey, she tumbled into the Well, and overwhelmed with stones; for which noble act, the generous Prince not only dismissed her unhurt, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Cassander*, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the *Bœotians* did, the fortunes of *Macedon*. Reduced at this time to the State of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Scibes* by the *Turks*.

4 *PHOCIS* is bounded on the East, with *Bœotia*; on the West, with *Doris*, and *Locris*; on the North, with the River *Cephisus*; and on the South, with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Countrey somewhat swelled with Mountains, but those of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof 1 *Helicon*, 2 *Citheron*; both consecrated to the *Muses*, and both contending with *Parnassus* for height and bigness. 3 *Parnassus*, of so great an height, that in that great *deluge*, in which most of these parts of *Greece* were over-

over-whelmed with the waters, *Deucalion* and *Pyrrha* ſaved themſelves, and many others, on the top hereof: for which and for its two ſummits reaching to the clouds, of great renown amongſt the Poets; as in *Ovid* thus:

Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus aſtra duobus,
Nomine Parnaſſus; *ſuperatque cacumine nubes.*

Parnaſſus there with his two tops extends
To the toucht ſtars, and all the clouds tranſcends.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1 *Anticyra*, ſituate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an herb very medicinal for the Phrenzie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyras*, applyed to mad men. 2 *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, ſaid to be ſeated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the world: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter* deſirous to know the exact middle of the earth, let looſe two Eagles, one from the Eaſt, and the other from the Weſt, which flying with an equal wing (ſo we muſt conceive) and meeting at this very place, ſhewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reaſon of which convenient ſituation in the heart of *Greece*, it was made a Seſſions town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and general Aſſembly of the *Amphictyones*; men choſen out of the prime Cities of *Greece* who had power to decide all Controverſies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court firſt inſtituted by *Acriſius*, as *Strabo* telleth us; or as *Halicarnaſſeus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the ſon of *Helles*, from whom they ſeem to have their name. The Commiſſioners from the ſeveral Cities, with reference to the places for which they ſerved, had the name of *Pylagoræ*; when aſſembled, they were called the *Amphictyones*: their meetings at the beginning of the Spring, and Autumn. Some inſtances concerning their authoritie will not be amiſſe. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cyrrhenians* having by Piracie wronged the *Theſſalians*, were fined by this Councel. And after that the *Lacedæmonians* for ſurprizing *Cadmea*; and the *Phocians* for ploughing up the Land of *Cyrrha*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and becauſe they continued obſtinate, and paid not their amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiſcate unto that Temple. But they diſobeying this Decree alſo, ſpoiled the Temple it ſelf: for which, war being proclamed againſt them by the reſt of the *Grecians*, who by the aſſiſtance of *Philip* King of *Macedon*, brought them to obedience; the Councel was again aſſembled. In which it was decreed that the *Phocians* ſhould raze the wall of their Cities; that they ſhould pay the yearly tribute of 60 *Talents*; that they ſhould no more keep Horſe and Arms, til they had ſatisfied the Treaſurie of the Temple; nor any longer have a voice in thoſe Conventions. It was alſo then enacted, that the loſt ſuffrages of the *Phocians* ſhould be veſted in King *Philip*, and his ſucceſſors, Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they alſo did confer the perpetual Preſidentſhip, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the 70 Elders, among the *Jews*; and in our times, the Diets of the Empire, and the Aſſemblies of the *Switzers*, carry moſt reſemblance. 3. *Cyrrha*, on the Sea-ſide, the Port town to *Delphos*. 4 *Criſſa*, ſo called from *Criſſeus* the ſon of *Phocus*, and grandchild of *Æacus*, ſituate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*; called ſometimes from hence *Criſſeus Sinus*. 5 *Scarphia*, memorable for the defeat of *Critolaus* Captain of the *Achæan* Armie, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman Prætors*: the loſſe of which battel drew after it the deſtruction of *Corinth*. It was obſerved in the ſucceſs of this great fight, that a band of *Arcadians* eſcaping out of the battel came unto 6 *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained, on memory of ſome former alliances; til news came of the overthrow of *Critolaus*: when ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquiſh the town, (for *adverſity ſeldom meeteth with returns of friendſhip*) they were ſet upon, and all ſlain by the *Romans*, in the ſelf-ſame place, in which their Anceſtors had unworthily forſaken the reſt of the *Grecians* in their warre againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick *Libertie*. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who having maried *Progne* the daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, raviſhed her ſiſter *Philomela*, and cut out her tongue the better to keep his villany undiſcovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double injury, firſt made him ignorantly eat his own ſon *Itys*, whom ſhe had baked in a Pye; and after killed him, with the help of her raviſhed ſiſter. 8 *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the moſt famous *Oracles* of the antient *Gentiles*: dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with ſo much cunning, that the meaning of them was moſt hidden, when it was thought moſt eaſie to be diſcerned. Inſtance of which that given to *Cræſus*, in the war by him projected againſt the *Perſian*, which was thus delivered;

Cræſus Halyn penetraus magnam ſubvertet opum vim.

When *Cræſus* over *Halys* goes
A mighty Nation he o'rethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, croſſed the River; was vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* King of *Perſia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who before he made war againſt the *Romans*, conſulted with the *Oracle*, and received this anſwer.

Aio te Æacide Romanos vincere poſſe.

Locris. Which doubtful prediction he thus construed; *Te posse vincere Romanos*, that he should overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romanos posse vincere te*, that the *Romans* should overcome him; as indeed it happened. By another kinde of the same fallacie which the *Logicians* call *Amphibolia*, did this great enemy of mankind overthrow another: who demanding of the Oracle what successe he should have in an expedition which he was in hand with, received his answer in these words:

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis, redibis, nunquam per &c.* engaged himself in the war, and was therein slain. Whereupon his followers canvasing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis, redibis nunquam, per &c.* The like jugling he also used in those supernatural Dreams, which Philosophers call Φαντάσματα. For *Cæsar* dreaming that he carnally knew his own mother, the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common mother of the *Romans*: and *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same projects the same dream, was killed and buried in the bowels of his mother the earth: so that had *Cæsar* miscarried in his action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet still had the Devil been reputed his crafts-master, and the father of truths. But as the Ecclesiastical history telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostata* consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no answer, because that the body of *Babylas* the Martyr, was entombed nigh his Altar: so neither could the Devils deceive the world as formerly they had done, after Christ the truth it self was manifested in the flesh, and tormented these unclean spirits, though as they alleged, before their time. *Augustus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his successor, received this not satisfying answer:

Παῖς ἑβραῖς κέλεταί με θεοῖς μακάρεσσιν ἀνάσσων
Τόν δε δόμον τοῦτον λιπεῖν καὶ αἶψα λυθῆς ἰκέσθαι,
Λοιπὸν ἀπ' ἐμεῖο σιγῶν ἐν βωμῶν ἡμεσιδέων.

An *Hebrew* child, whom the blest Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave these *shrines* and pack to hell,
So that of *Oracle* I can no more:
In silence leave our *Altar*, and farewell.

Whereupon *Augustus* coming home, in the *Capitol* erected an *Altar*, and thereon in Capital Letters caused this inscription to be ingraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by Christs birth lost much of their wonted vertue, so after his *passion* they lost it almost altogether. Concerning which *Plutarch* in a tract of his *Morals*, called Περὶ τῶν ἐκλελοιπότων χρηστηρίων *why Oracles cease to give answers*, telleth us a notable story, which was this. Some company going out of *Greece* into *Italie*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed; when on a suddain there was heard a voice, loudly calling on one *Thamus* an *Egyptian*, then in the ship. At the two first calls he made no answer, but to the third he replyed, saying, *Here I am*: and the voice again spake unto him, bidding him when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known, that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain shelves and rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus* standing on the poop of the ship, did as the voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noise of many together, who all seemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous shreekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the learned men in his Empire, to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* should be; by whom it was answered, that he was the son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*; with ignorance enough, and little satisfaction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the circumstances of this accident, found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the *Crosse*; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the *chief Shepherd and Bishop of our souls*, as the Scripture calleth him: and that upon this divulging of his death and passion, the Devils who used to speak in *Oracles*, did with great grief and lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so gainful to them in seducing mankind. That all *Oracles* at that instant ceased, I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the reign of *Domitian*, Delphis *Oracula cessant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying sensibly in a short time after.

But to proceed, the Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the war betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans* being likely to have the worst, sent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the quarrel by subduing both. The treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple, was reckoned at 60 talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Tolosanum*, and brought a sudden ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so impardonable a crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a people, hath brought destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ransacked by *Brennus* and his *Gaules*, in the main of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it.

5 *LOCRIS* is bounded on the East, with *Phocis*, and a branch of the *Ægean* Sea; on the West, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with a long ridge of hils which part it from *Thessalie*; and on the South, with parts of *Achaia*, *Bœotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straits of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian*

Ionian Sea. So that for largeneſs of extent, and the commodiouſneſſe of the Seas, it yeeldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not ſo fruitfull as ſome others. Divided into the three Nations of the *Locri. Ozolæ*, lying towards the South, on both ſides of the *Straits*; ſo called from ſome ill ſmels of the Country, or people; 2ly. the *Epicnemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, ſo named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnaſſus*; and 3. the *Opuntii*, ſo called from *Opus* their chief City; lying on the North ſide of the River *Cephiſus*, on the Coaſts of the *Ægean*, or *Eubœan* Seas. *Doris* and *Ætolia.*

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the head City of the *Opuntians*, ſituate on the River *Aſopus*, being one of the main branches of *Cephiſus*. 2. *Cynus*, the Port Town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime town of the *Epicnemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolemie*. 4. *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphiſſa*, the chief City of the *Ozolæ*, ſituate in the inland parts of it: the people whereof refuſing to yeeld to the ſentence of the *Amphictyones*, againſt their confederates the *Phocians*, were the cauſe that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Againſt whom grievouſly infeſting the *Bœotian*, and manifeſtly aſpiring to the command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* deſperatly oppoſed; not ſo much with poſſibility of prevailing, as by the ſharp and biting Orations of *Demoſthenes*, made againſt his proceedings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occaſioned *Tully* to call his bitter invectives againſt *M. Antonius*, by the ſame name alſo. But the ſucceſſe hereof was ſuch, as commonly attendeth a broken fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquiſhed at *Charonea*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* againſt the *Perſians*, obtaining under that title the command he ſought. 6. *Evantia*, as *Ptolemy*; *Oeantia*, as *Plinie* and *Pauſanias* call it; oppoſite to *Ægira* in *Achaia propria*. 7. *Molychria*, by *Ptolemie* placed here; and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*; Not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, ſo called becauſe juſt oppoſite to that of *Rhium* in *Achaia propria*: between which runneth a narrow ſtreight (not ſo wide as the *Helleſpont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; each Promontory for that cauſe fortified by *Bajazet* the 2d. with a very ſtrong Caſtle, that on this ſide being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when beſiedged by *Doria*, *Anno* 1532. For being forced with great ſlaughter into a ſtrong Tower, which commanded the Caſtle, they rather choſe to blow it up, together with the ammunition, victuals, and themſelves to boot, than that the Fort ſhould come intire into the hands of the Enemie. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* alſo; but following the authority of *Ptolemie*, I have placed it here. 8 *Naupactus*, ſo called from the building of ſhips there by the *Heraclidæ*; ſituate on the *Corinthian* Bay near the mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Meſſenians*, when after the end of the third war, the *Lacedæmonians* unwilling to have them troubleſome neighbours (and they ſcorning to be quiet ſlaves) compelled them to ſeek new habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the *Golfe* of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name ſubject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1499. Of theſe *Locrians*, thoſe of *Italy* were a branch or Colonie, whoſe Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, ſpoken of elſewhere.

6. *DORIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis*; on the Weſt, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with the hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theſſalie*; and on the South, with *Ætolia*, and part of *Locris*. The air hereof is very healthy, and the ſoil ſufficiently fruitfull if well manured, but now the greateſt part lyeth waſt for want of tillage. Firſt peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorienſes*, deſcended from *Dorus*, the ſon of *Hellen*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*; by whom placed in *Theſſalie*; afterwards ſpreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper dwelling: though many of them following the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the greateſt part of *Laconia* alſo: imprinting on the ſame their *Dialect* or form of ſpeech, from them called the *Dorick*.

Chief Cities hereof are 1. *Doris*, ſo called in memory of *Dorus*, the firſt Progenitour of this people. 2. *Erineus*, ſeated at the foot of *Parnaſſus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemie*, and the reſt of the antients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolemie*; or *Boion*, as *Strabo* and *Plinie* call it. 4. *Cytinum*, near *Parnaſſus* alſo, in the common impreſſions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Hiſtorian, falſly called *Cynthinium*. 5. *Lilæa*, ſituate not far from the ſpring or fountain of the River *Cephiſus*; which riſing hereabouts paſſeth thorow the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Ægean* or *Eubœan* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the Eaſt, *Locris*; on the Weſt, *Epirus*; on the North, *Doris*; on the South, the *Ionian* Sea. Said to be ſo called from *Ætolus*, the ſon of *Mars*, who being by *Salomoneus* caſt out of *Elis*, fixed himſelf in this Country.

Here is the Forreſt of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the flower of the *Greek* Nobility, ſlew the wild Bore. Here is the River *Evenus*, over which the Centaure *Neſſus* having carried *Dejanira* wife of *Hercules*; and intending to have raviſhed her, was ſlain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other ſide of the River ſhot at him. Here alſo is the River of *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things, as that being rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountred him in the ſhape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluck'd off one of his horns, the *Nymphs* made of it their ſo much celebrated *cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the moſt turbulent, and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at peace with their neighbours, and ſeldom with themſelves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reaſon of the cragginеſſe of the Country: yet they brought them to ſuch terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were 1. *Chalcis*, ſituate near the ſpring-head of *Achelous* before mentioned.

Achaia.

ned. 2. *Arachthus*, near the river ſo called; which ariſing hereabouts paſſeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olenus*, not far from the Foreſt of *Calydon*. 4. *Pleurona*, giving name to the adjoyning Country, called hence *Pleuronia*, the people whereof had the name of *Curetes*, ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their ſhaving; it being their cuſtom to ſhave the fore-parts of their heads, and let the hair grow on the hinder parts only; *ne hoſtes eos cæſarie apprehenderent*; becauſe their enemies ſhould not lay hold on them by the fore-tops, and ſo pull them down. 5. *Thermus*, the Parliament City, or place of general Aſſembly, for all the States of *Ætolia*, which meeting was called *Panætolium*; choſen for thoſe meetings, in regard of the ſituation and ſtrength thereof; as ſituate well-near in the midſt of the Country, environed with rockie Mountains, of ſteep and difficult aſcent. For that cauſe made alſo the receptacle of their wealth, and treaſure, in all times of danger; but taken by the laſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the ſpoil in it, in his war againſt them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Foreſt ſo called, giving name unto it: the royal ſeat of *Oeneus*, father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Evenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*,

Et Meleagream, *maculatus ſanguine* Neſſi
Evenus, Calydona *ſecat*.

That is to ſay:

Calydon, *Meleagers* Town, the flood
Even divides, defil'd with *Neſſus* blood.

Adjoyning hereunto were the *Athamanes*, whom *Plinie* makes a people of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athemania*; but ſuch (as little as it was) as gave it the title of a Kingdom to *Animander*: a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made ſpecial uſe of in their wars againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the father of *Perſeus*, ſuggeſting to him and his children, that they were deſcended of the houſe of *Alexander* the great, and ſo ingaging them in a hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of moſt note is 1. *Dium*, 2. *Athanæum*, both took by *Philip* in that war.

Theſe, as they were the laſt Actors on the ſtage of *Achaia*; ſo had they the moſt deſperate part in all the tragœdie of that Country. The affairs whereof, governed ſucceſſively by that State which was moſt powerfull, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*: whoſe Counſels and concluſions went for law amongſt them. But that *Eſtate* being broken, if not ſubverted by the power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians*, who came next in play, had the chief command; uniting almoſt all the reſt in deſign with them againſt the *Spartans*, who now grow terrible to all. Becoming inſolent by the courſe of too much proſperity, and the many great victories which they had againſt the *Spartans*; and thereupon quarelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cauſe of *Philips* coming into *Greece*; who as he had learned amongſt them the uſe of arms, ſo made he uſe thereof at laſt, and of their diſſentions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his command: *Thebes* it ſelf being took and ſacked by *Alexander*, the ſon of *Philip*, as before is ſaid. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by force, but ſpecially by art and practice, there was no people in *Achaia* that durſt oppoſe them; till theſe *Ætolians*, a reſtleſs, and impatient people took the cauſe in hand. Who thrived ſo well under *Antigonus*, and *Philip*, two of the laſt Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Theſſalie*, attempted *Macedon* it ſelf: and when they could not otherwiſe obtain their purpoſe, in the deſtruction of that kingdom; opened a paſſage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no ſuch favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* againſt them, drawing thereby thoſe forces againſt themſelves, which they had invited into *Greece*: and were the firſt people of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though by the mediation of the *Rhodians* and ſome other friends, their Country was reſtored unto them, with the loſe only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and ſome other Ilands, which the *Romans* were reſolved to keep as the fruits of the war. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then *Conſul*, and chief Commander in this war. After which time the ſeveral *Eſtates* hereof enjoyed ſo much liberty, as the *Romans* their new *Maſters* thought fit to give them: till finally made abſolutely ſubject in the time of *Veſpaſian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponneſus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the diviſion of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, the Weſt parts hereof being divided from the reſt, was called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Macedon*, under the *Prafectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; The principal Officer of this part being called the *Proconſul* of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his ſucceſſors, Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, till the deſtruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*. But ſo that it remained not always under the command of one ſole Officer, the *politie* of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments: eſpecially after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, or Weſtern *Chriſtians*. At what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Grecian*, and one of the (then) *imperial* family, ſeiſed on *Ætolia*, and *Epirus*, part of which laſt, and all the firſt he left to *Michael* his ſon: who held them, though with ſome diſpute betwixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the firſt Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, after the expulſion of the *Latines*. *Charles* the laſt Prince of that family dying without iſſue, about the year 1430. bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the ſon of his brother; and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus*, which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his baſe ſons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many quarrels happening upon this diviſion

sion *Amurath*, the 2d. having then newly conquered *Thessalonica*, composed the differences, by taking all unto himself, *Anno* 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*, but the first the chiefest: as honoured not only with the title of Dukes of *Athens*, but the Princes of *Achaia* also; such being the fortune of that City, as to have the first and last great sway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the translation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *Frenchman*, was made Duke of *Athens*, and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* speaketh, *Anno* 1220. which honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter di Brenne*, a kinsman of *John di Brenne*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, Protector of *Baldwin* the 2d. the last Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the said *Æmilius*, *Anno* 1288. And though on the defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalonians* then ransacking those parts of *Greece*; the Title of Duke of *Athens* was assumed by *Frederick Alphonso*, the son of *Frederick* King of *Sicil*, and by other Princes of that house: yet upon better grounds by the heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in mariage to *Izaulus di Accio*, a Noble man of the Realm of *Naples*; whose son *Walter* for a time obtained the soveraignty of the State of *Florence*, *Anno* 1342. but lost it suddenly again by his too much cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the last Prince of this house, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his *Favourites*; surrendred his estate herein, at the perswasion of that *Tyrant*, in change for the Country of *Bœotia*, and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no sooner had received, but he was sent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at first courteously received, at last cruelly murdered. And so the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1454. or thereabouts.

Epirus.

EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the East, with *Ætolia*; on the West, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Thessaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Albania*; and on the South, with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the solidity and firmnesse of it; the word *Epeiros* in the Greek tongue, signifying as much as *terra firma*, or the firm land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the lands and Countries in their possession, lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first foreiner, who made tryal (though to his own losse) of the power and puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the second great souldier of the world. Here is also Mount *Pindus*, sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*, dividing this country from *Thessaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acroceraunian* hils, so called, because they are so much subject unto thunder and lightning; eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners: who when they see a little cloud rising on the top hereof, are sure of a tempest. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron*, and *Cocytus*, which for their *black waters*, and unsavoury tast, are said to be the Rivers of Hell: from which last the sacrifices and solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine*, whom *Pluto* ravished and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence by a *Metonymie*, these Rivers are taken sometimes, for hell it self, as in that of the Poet;

Flectere si nequeo superos, Acheronta *movebo*.

Since those in *Heaven* I cannot move,
The powers of *Hell* I mean to prove.

The soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of *Forests*, and thin of people; but towards the Sea side reasonably fruitfull: plentifull of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more than ordinary bigness, and yeelding the best breed of Horses. The people use a distinct language from the *Grecians*, though of the *Greek* tongue not utterly ignorant: and by reason of the barrenesse of their own Country, become great wanderers, especially in summer time, when they travell into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Asia minor*, hiring themselves to work in harvest under the *Turks*, as also to thresh, winnow and make clean their corn; and in the Winter time return to their wives and children. Able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergoe any toyl and labour; having withall good courages, and high projections: which makes such of them as delight not in works of drudgerie, to look for action in the wars; and otherwise to rob and spoil in the neighbouring mountains of *Albania*. Till their subjection to the *Turks*, much used both by the Kings of *Hungary*, and the State of *Venice*, in their several wars; serving on Horse, or Foot, as occasion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithless to the party by whom entertained.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West; and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which parted by the River *Achelous*; the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in old times, and so continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the conquest of *Macedon*, overthrew 70 of their Cities. Few of which being since re-edified, and the Country for a long time languishing under the *Turks*, here are not any fair Towns, or well-peopled Cities, at the present to be spoken of; and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times foregoing. The principal whereof, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and *Oracle* of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*; situate in a fair grove, the trees whereof were said to be *Vocal*, and to give the *Oracle*; though others say, it was de-

Epirus.

delivered first by a pair of *Pigeons*; whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the antientest *Oracle* of all *Greece*; and so perhaps was the Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodone*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably so called from *Dodonim*, the son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Country (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* text,) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Cassiope*, a Port Town, with a fair *Promontory* of the same name adjoyning to it. 3. *Oncheſimus*, by *Strabo* called *Orchimus*, and by *Pliny Echinus*, a Port Town also, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*, on the Sea side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5. *Antigonia*, more within the land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro Castro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phœnice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being sacked by the *Illyrians* under *Teuta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occasion of quarrel with them, upon complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodes*, a Port Town, the principal in that part which was called *Thesprotia*; as 8. *Torona*, on the River *Thyamis*, and 9 *Sybota*, an antient Haven Town (now called *Syoita*) was in that part hereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus*, the son of *Pyrrhus* and *Andromache*, remarkable for the best breed of Mastives, hence called *Molossi*: and afterward *Chaonia*, by *Helenus* the son of *Priamus*, whom *Pyrrhus* the son of *Achilles* setled in this Country; who having unfortunately slain his brother *Chaon*, caused it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; *Chaoniamq; omnem* Trojano *à* Chaone *dixit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of these *Molossians*, *Pluto* the third son of *Saturn* was sometimes King, called from the flat and hollow situation of this Country, consisting much of deep valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of especial note in *Acarnania*, 1. *Anactorium*, on the bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoyning Town, situate in or near the place where *Ambracia* stood. Once subject unto *Periander*, King or *Tyrant* of *Corinth*, who being slain by a woman named *Lionna*, whom he kept as his *Concubine*; occasioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their deliverance, to worship a *Lion*. Afterwards being taken from the children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by the *Ætolians* in the time of their greatness; it was besieged by *Fulvius*, a *Roman* Consul, spoken of before. Who seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other friends of both parties, to conclude a peace; but so that he despoiled this City at his going hence, of much excellent *Imagery*; carrying away with him unto *Rome*, the Pictures of the nine Muses, most admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rarest Painter of his times. 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colonie, by *Plinie* called *Colonia* simply; now a small Village called *Butrinte*. 4. *Leucas*, situate on the point of a *Promontorie* of the same name also, antiently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*: from the top of which *Promontorie*, by leaping into the Sea, such as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady; the first trial of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous *Poetesse*. At that time joyned unto the sand, but since by the violence of the Sea, or the hand of man, made into an Iland; according unto that of *Ovid*,

Leucada *continuam veteres habuere Coloni*,
Nunc *Freta circumeunt*; ——

That is to say:

Leucas in former times joyn'd to the land,
Environ'd round with waters now doth stand.

It was called *Leucas*, from the whiteness of the Rock or *Promontorie*, having before the separation or disjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory: both Town and Iland at this time called S. *Maure*, taken by *Bajazet* the second, from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of *Spain*. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colonie of the *Romans*, of great both wealth and beauty in the time of S. *Paul*, who from hence dated his Epistle to *Titus*: called in that Postscript, *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, because *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a distinct Province of it self. It was first built by *Augustus Cæsar*, on a Promontory opposite unto *Actium*, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place, where his Land-souldiers were incamped before the Naval battel betwixt him and *Mark Anthony*: and was thus called, either in memory of his victory; or from a poor man and his Asse, whom he met there the day before. For asking the mans name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, *i, e.* Fortunate; and that the name of his Asse was *Nicon*, *i. e.* Conquerour; which happy *Omen* made his souldiers couragious, and hopefull of victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Asse, the other of his Master. It is now a small village called *Prevesa*.

6. *Actium*, on the Sea shore, nigh unto which *Augustus* and *Antony* fought for the Empire of the world. The Navy of the later consisted of 500 Galleys; the former had 250 only, but those crowned with victory: *Antonius* shamefully deserting his souldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very first charge fled away for *Ægypt*. The Town now ruined, the *Promontory* upon which it stood called *Cabbo di Figula*.

The

The Country was first peopled by *Dodonim* the son of *Javan*, or at least by some of his posterity, coming hither from the Isle of *Rhodes*, whose memorie was preserved a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him so denominated. Afterwards being parted into several Nations, and those Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*; it became a great and powerfull Kingdom: governed by a race of Kings descending from *Pyrrhus* the son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus* the son of *Æacides*. A man of such courage and magnanimitie, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Cassander* had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Cassanders* Children: outed of which, he tried his fortunes with the *Romans*, Anno Mundi 3683. U. C. 471. After his death this Kingdom was shrewdly shaken by the *Macedonians*, and shortly after subdued by *Paulus Æmilius*, who as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For, desirous to satisfie his souldiers after his victory in *Macedon*, he sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the gold and silver which they had; and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain companies of souldiers along with them; unto whom he gave secret instructions, that on a day by him appointed, they should fall to sack every one the town, whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloudy decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and sold for slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to so great a cruelty, was by dispeopling this countrey, lying with a long and fair Sea-coast over against *Italy*; to give the *Romans* opportunity to land their Armies without any resistance, for the further progress of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Mœsia*, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly policie was afterwards imitated by *William* the *Conquerour*, who laid wast all that part of *Hampshire*, since called *New Forest*, and therein 36 Parish Churches: that he might have a safe landing place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *English* should at any time endeavor to make head against him. Being made subject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards when *Macedonia* was made a *Diocese*, it became a distinct Province of it self, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eastward of it. At the division of the Empire it belonged to the *Constantinopolitans*; and so continued till the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Western Christians*: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the *Imperial* family, seised on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, as before is said; and sped so well in his designs that he took the strong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice* (to whom it fell in the division of that spoil) and cunningly (if not treacherously) intercepted *Peter* the third Emperor of the *Latins*, whom, as some say, he caused to be murdered at a banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, *Ætolia*, with that part hereof which is called *Chaonia*, continued in his house till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Ætolia* and *Epirus* spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by *Amurath* the second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called *Albania*, fell to the family of the *Castriots*: the last of which named *John* (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his neighbour Princes; submitted his estate unto him, and gave unto him all his sons for hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but *Amurath* seised on his Estate, murdered his three eldest sons; and caused *George* the youngest, to be train'd up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards escaping out of his power, and recovering all his Fathers countries, assumed also the style or title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whose death his children not being able to make good their game, lost it to *Mahomet* the *Great*; as shall be shewn more fully in the storie and description of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

Albania.

ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East, with *Macedonia*; on the West, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Sclavonia*; on the South, with *Epirus*. The Country mountainous and barren; watred with few Rivers, and those of no great note amongst the Antients, as 1 *Laus*, 2 *Apsus*, 3 *Paniasus*, 4 *Celidnus*; all of them falling into the *Adriatick*.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this tract; from whom the chief City hereof was called *Albanopolis*. Other Towns of most consideration, are 1 *Stetigrade*, or *Vestigard* (called by some the *Holy City*) situate in the borders of *Epirus*, on the top of an hill; where it is fenced about like an Eagles nest: one of the last Towns in all this Countrey which was taken by *Scanderbeg*, at his recovery of his birthright and estate herein; but being once taken by him held good courageously against the *Turk*, the souldiers neither fainting in their oppositions, nor corrupted by mony. There was in the town one only Well, into which a treacherous *Christian* cast a dead dog; at the sight of which, being the next day drawn up, the souldiers gave up the town: being so unseasonably *superstitious*; that no perswasion, nor the example of the Captain, or the *Burgo-masters*, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3 *Durazzo*, a town of great strength, first called *Epidamnum*, and afterwards *Dyrrhachium*. Under the wals of which town, was the first bickering between the souldiers of *Cæsar*, and *Pompey*, not only to the present losse, but also the utter discomfiture of *Cæsar*, as he himself confessed, if the enemies Captain had known how to have overcome. I must not omit the valour of *Scæva* at this siege, who alone so long resisted *Pompeys* Army, that he had 220 darts sticking in his shield, and lost one of his eyes, and yet gave not over til *Cæsar* came to his rescue.

Albania.

Parq; novum fortuna videt concurrere, bellum
Atque virum ---- denſamq; ferens in pectore ſylvam.

Fortune beholds an unaccuſtom'd ſight,
An *Army* and a *man* together fight,
Whoſe breſt a wood of Arrows covered quite.

In the diviſion of the *Eaſtern* Empire amongſt the *Latins*, it fell into the power of *Venice*; taken at laſt after a long and tedious ſiege, by *Amurath* the ſecond, *An.* 1474. 4 *Dibra*, in the hill countries, near *Epirus*: the firſt town which ſubmitted to the valiant *Scanderbeg*, at his revolting from the *Turks*; ſuppoſed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolemie*. 5 *Croia*, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of *Ptolemie*, the chief Town of all this countrey, ſeated amongſt inacceſſible mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by wile: who having got into his power the Secretary of the principal *Baſſa*, forced him to write letters in his Maſters name unto the Governour hereof to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly. Afterwards in vain beſieged by *Amurath* the ſecond, who under the wals hereof gave up his wretched ſoul to the Devil; and thrice beſieged by *Mahomet* his ſon and ſucceſſor, before he could again poſſeſs it: but taken at the laſt after *Scanderbegs* death, as if the *Genius* or tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him. 6 *Petrella*, a town of great ſtrength, ſeated on the top of an hill (as almoſt all the Towns of *Albania* are) about 25 miles from *Croia*; delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his firſt ſitting down before it: as alſo was 7 *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, near the borders of *Macedon*, and ſituate like the other on the top of a mountain; the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8 *Stelluſa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high hill in the middle of a pleaſant and fruitful valley, with great and ſpacious plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the hill country towards *Sclavonia*; for the poſſeſſion whereof aroſe a war betwixt *Scanderbeg*, and the State of *Venice*: but the *Venetians* being worſted at the battel of *Drino*, relinquiſhed their pretenſions to it. 10 *Aulon*, a Port-town, now called *Vallona*, ſituate over againſt *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, from which diſtant about 60 miles. The Town unwalled, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. A town unfortunately fit for the invaſion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made uſe of by *Achmetes* the chief *Baſſa* under *Mahomet* the *Great*, who from hence paſſed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*, and had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the combuſtions thereon following amongſt the *Turks*, altered the deſign, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Conſtantinople*. 11 *Apollonia*, a town of great note in the time of the *Romans*. A Sea-town furniſhed with a commodious Haven, which they held as their entrance into *Greece*; to that purpoſe ſerving them as commodiouſly, as *Calice* did the *Engliſh* in their wars with *France*.

This countrey antiently was a part of *Macedon*, inhabited by the *Talauſii*, *Æſtræi*, and *Albani*, from which laſt (but not till theſe latter times) it had the name of *Albania*: but whether theſe *Albani*, were a Colonie of the *Albanians* of *Aſia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When made a Province of the Empire, it contained all *Prevalitana*, and ſome part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; under the Dioceſe of *Dacia*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, but at firſt of *Macedon*. Diſmembred from the main bodie of it, when the *Latines* had ſubdued *Conſtantinople*; it fell unto the Noble family of the *Caſtriotes*: who though they took unto themſelves the title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (moſt of which they held) as the countrey of more note and eminence; yet was *Albania* the greateſt ſtrength, and *Croia* the chief City thereof, the ſeat of their reſidence: called in that reſpect by ſome writers, the Kings of *Albania*. *John Caſtriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt the *Turks*, became their *Homager*, and delivered four ſons for *Hoſtages*; whom *Amurath* the ſecond, in their Fathers life-time, cauſed to be circumciſed, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his deceaſe murdered the three eldeſt, and ſeized upon *Croia* the chief City, with the reſt of the countrey. But *George*, the youngeſt of thoſe ſons, being reſerved for better fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath*, (who ſomewhat paſſionately loved him) in the arts of war; though ſome of his Courtiers then told him, that he nouriſhed a *Serpent in his boſom, which would one day ſting him*. *Amurath*, to make trial of his diſpoſition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replied, that he *preferred the honour of his ſervice before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a ſword, than his head for a Crown*. Satisfied with which anſwer, the *Tyrant* preferred him to the place of a *Sanziack* or *Provincial Governor*: and gave him ſome Office of Command in all thoſe Armies, which he ſet out againſt the *Chriſtians*. Eſcaping out of the battel, wherein *Caramben* the great *Baſſa* was overthrown and taken Priſoner by *Huniades*; he got the Town of *Croia* by a piece of wit, as before was ſaid: and in a very ſhort time after, made himſelf Maſter of *Petrella*, *Petra Alba*, *Stelluſa*, and all the reſt of the countrey, by the reputation and terrour of his firſt ſucceſſe. Having recovered his inheritance out of the hands of the *Turks*, he reconciled himſelf to the *Church* of *Chriſt*: ſtyling himſelf the *Souldier* of *CHRIST JESUS*, from that time forwards. Invaded by a vaſt Army of *Turks*, he overcometh *Alis Baſſa*, and kils 20000 of his men. With no more than 20 horſe and 50 foot, he aſſaulteth *Muſtapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 *Turks* were ſlain, and 300 taken: with whom encountring not long after in the open field, he ſlew 10000 of his men, took many priſoners, and *Muſtapha* himſelf for one, whom he ranſomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Hoſt of *Amurath*, then beſieging *Croia*, he killed *Feriſſes Baſſa*, hand to hand in a ſingle combat: and in the time of *Mahomet* who ſucceeded *Amurath*, vanquiſhed *Iſaac* the great *Baſſa*, routed his whole army, had

the

the ſpoil of his Camp, took 20 of his faireſt Enſigns, and ſlew 30000 of his ſouldiers. Not to inſtance in the reſt of his noble Actions, it is reported, that in the courſe of his war againſt the *Turks*, he killed no fewer than 3000 of them with his own hands: uſing a *Turkiſh Scymitar* in all his fights, of great weight and bigneſs. Which when *Mahomet* on a peace between them had deſired to ſee, and afterwards returned again with this cenſure of it, that he *ſaw nothing in it more than ordinary*: the gallant Prince ſent back this anſwer, that the *vertue of the weapon depended on the ſtrength of his Arm, which he could not ſend him, for that he did reſerve it for the death of his Enemies.* Finally, having held his Cards againſt *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two moſt fortunate *Gameſters*, for the ſpace of 24 years; he ſet up his reſt at laſt a winner: dying in peace at *Lyſſa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*, *Jan.* 17. *An.* 1466. and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the *Turks* about nine years after, his body was digged up by them, not in ſpight, but honor: that man accompting himſelf happy who could get any of his bones, to preſerve as a relick; ſuppoſing that as long as he had it about him, he ſhould be invincible. But with him died the liberty of his Country alſo, not long after ſubdued by the *Turks*, and made a Province of that Empire, as it ſtill continueth: the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and ſo much of *Dalmatia* alſo as is under their power. *Theſſalie*

The Arms of this Kingdome (or rather of the Kings thereof) were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sable*.

5. *MACEDONIA.*

MACEDONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Albania*; on the North, with *Mœſia Superior*, and a part of *Thrace*; and on the South, with *Epirus*, and *Achaia*.

It was firſt called *Æmonia* from Mount *Hæmus*, which ſhutteth up that ſide hereof which is towards *Mœſia*; after *Æmathia*, from a King of it called *Æmathus*; *Macedonia*, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the Father of *Caranaus*, the firſt King of the line of *Alexander*: and finally *Kittim* or the Land of *Kethim*, whereof ſee *Maccab. c.* 1. *v.* 1. & *cap.* 8. *v.* 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who was planted here. Antiently of more large extent than it is at the preſent; extending from the *Ægean* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath ſtreightned it upon that ſide, but the reſt as formerly.

The Country, taking it together, is very fruitfull and pleaſant, though on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough mountains and thick foreſts: in former times much celebrated for its *mines* of Gold and Silver, but long ſince exhauſted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Æmathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelaſgia*, *Eſtiotis*, *Phimotis*, *Theſſalie*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of leſs note; inhabited by 152 ſeveral Nations: now principally divided (beſides *Albania*) into 1. *Theſſalie*. 2. *Macedon* ſpecially ſo called, and 3. *Mygdonia*, which the *Turks* call *Jamboli*.

1. *THESSALIE* hath on the Eaſt, the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, *Albania*; on the North, *Macedon*, and *Mygdonia*; on the South, *Achaia*. A ſweet and delectable Country, the pleaſures and delights whereof inclined the people to be very effeminate, and diſſolute in their courſe of life: in love with luxury and eaſe, and much like the *Perſians* in behaviour; whoſe entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithſtanding this debauchedneſs, they were eſteemed the beſt Horſemen of all the *Grecians*: by their excellent managing of which creature (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horſe their minds, or borrowed his body) they gave occaſion unto the fiction of the *Centaures*; half men, half beaſts.

It is now called *Comenolitati*, and of old was very famous for many things, eſpecially for the Hill *Olympus*; of ſo great height, that it ſeemeth to tranſcend the clouds: and therefore frequently by the Poets took for Heaven it ſelf. 2ly. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithæ*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. 3ly. For the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Oſſa*, the dwelling places of the *Centaures*; who intending to raviſh *Hippodame* the Bride of *Pirithous*, on her wedding day, were ſlain by *Hercules* and the *Lapithæ*. 4ly. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, ſituate betwixt *Oſſa* and *Olympus*; extending in length ſix miles, and five in breadth: ſo beautified with Natures gifts, that it was ſuppoſed to be the Garden of the Muſes. 5ly. And laſtly, for the *Dolopes*, and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had command at the ſiege of *Troy*: theſe laſt, by reaſon that they were a laborious and thrifty people, being fabled by the Poets to have firſt been *Emmets*; transformed unto men at the prayers of *Æacus*, when he wanted ſouldiers.

——Mores quos ante tenebant,
Nunc quoq́; habent, parcum genus eſt, patienſq; laborum,
Quæſitiq́; tenax, et quod quæſita reſervet.

The cuſtome they of *Emmets* ſtill retain,
A ſparing Folk, and unto Labour ſet;
Strangely addicted to all kind of gain,
And wary Keepers of what ere they get.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Tricca*, the Epiſcopal See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious piece, called the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory: which he ſo prized, that he choſe rather to loſe his Biſhoprick, than conſent to the burning of his Book; which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A piece indeed of rare contexture, and neat contrivances, without any touch of

Theſſalie.

of looſe or laſcivious language: honeſt and chaſt affection being the ſubject of it, not ſuch as old or modern Poets ſhew us in their Comedies, or other Poems. For here we have no inceſtuous mixture of Fathers, and daughters; no *Pandariſm* of old Nurſes; no unſeemly action ſpecified, where heat of blood and opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one paſſage unworthy of the chaſteſt Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians* after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their freedoms, beſieged *Antipater*, which was the laſt honourable enterpriſe, undertaken by that great and renowned City; known in old Hiſtories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Lariſſa*, ſituate on the South of *Demetrias* but on the ſame Bay; memorable for the birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Lariſſæus Achilles*, his birth aſcribed by others to the Town of *Phthia* (from whence the Region called *Phthiatis* takes the nomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account, and poſſibly being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his birth, and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrias*, ſituate on the Bay, called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, (now the *Golf* of *Armenia*) of very great ſtrength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Iſle of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*; kept all *Greece* in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*: the *Grecians* never thinking themſelves at liberty, till thoſe Towns were diſmantled by the *Romans*. 5. *Pharſalis*, nigh to which was fought the great battel betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, for the Soveraignty of the *Roman* Empire: a battel more famous than bloody; 6000 only of 300000, which were in the field on both ſides, being therein ſlain. A battel before which the *Pompeians* were in ſuch a miſerable ſecurity, that ſome of them contended for the Prieſthood, which was *Cæſars* Office; others diſpoſed of the *Conſulſhip*, and preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himſelf being ſo rechleſſe, that he neither conſidered into what place it were beſt to flie, if he loſt the day; or by what means he might provide for his own ſafety, and end the war. As if the war had been made againſt ſome ignoble Enemy, and not againſt that *Cæſar*; who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took priſoners one million of men, and ſlain as many. 6. *Philippi*, ſo named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the firſt founder of it; ſituate in the further part of the ſame plains of *Pharſalia*, and famous for as memorable a battel as that before, and of no leſs conſequence: that namely, betwixt *Auguſtus*, and *M. Antonius* on the one ſide, againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the other; theſe later being rather overcome by chance, than valour. For either of them thinking the other vanquiſhed, ſlew himſelf in the field: being the two laſt that ever openly ſtood out for the common Liberty, and therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum*, or the laſt of the true *Roman* Spirits. 7. *Gomphy*, an antient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Pheræ*, in which City *Alexander* the *Tyrant* reigned, againſt whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting, was ſlain in battel: the *Tyrant* being not long after murdered by his wives brother, and by that means all *Theſſalie* recovering liberty. 9. *Pegaſa*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, which from hence is ſometimes named *Pegaſicus*; in which the ſhip called *Argo*, was ſaid to be built, ſo famous for the renowned voyage of the *Argonautes*. The hill *Pelion* ſpoken of before, is not far from hence. 10 *Pythion*, or *Pythæum*, of great note for the *Pythian* games, there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerour in which games were crowned at the firſt only with an *Oaken Garland*, but afterwards with one of *Lawrel*. Of which thus the Poet:

Neve operis famam poſſet abolere vetuſtas
Inſtituit ſacros celebri certamine ludos,
Pythia *de domiti* Serpentis *nomine dictos, &c.*

Thus made to ſpeak *Engliſh* by *G. Sandys*:

Then leſt the well-deſerved memory
Of ſuch an act in future times ſhould die,
He inſtituted the ſo famous Games
Of free contention, which he *Pythia* names.
Who ran, who wreſtled beſt, or rak'd the ground
With ſwifteſt wheels, the *Oaken Garland* crown'd.

Theſe games, together with the *Olympick*, *Iſthmean* and *Nemæan* ſpoken of before, made the four annual meetings amongſt the *Grecians*; renowned for the univerſal concourſe of the nobleſt ſpirits. 11. *Doliche*, which together with *Pythium*, and 12 *Azorium*, another City of this tract, ſtanding near together; are called in *Livius* the *Hiſtorian* by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the *Metropolis* of *Theſſalie*, ſo called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick* Hiſtory before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Ziton*, and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*, upon which Mountain, *Hercules* being tortured with a poiſoned ſhirt, ſent by his innocent wife *Dejanira*, is ſaid to have burned himſelf; thence called *Hercules Oetus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pegaſa*, and *Demetrias*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Lariſſa*, *Doliche*, *Phthium*, and *Azorium*, in that called *Pelaſgia*; *Gomphi*, and *Tricca* in *Eſtiotis*; the reſt in *Theſſalie* properly and ſpecially ſo named.

This Country at firſt called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelaſgia*, then *Pyrrhæa* from *Pyrrha* the wife of *Deucalion*, & finally *Theſſalia*, from *Theſſalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Plinie* is called *Driopis*; *Eſtiotis*, by *Strabo*; *Pelaſgia*, by *Diodorus*; and by *Homer*, *Argos*: the name of ſome chief City or particular Province

vince, being figuratively used for the whole. Divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Thessaliotis*, 2. *Estiotis*, 3. *Pelasgiotis*, and 4 *Phthiotis*, the name of *Thessalie* or *Thessaliotis* in the end prevailing; accordingly distributed into several governments, united finally in the person of *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*; who partly by force, but specially by art and practice, made himself Master of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt *free* and *subject*, under the *Macedonian* Kings of the second Race; it became subject with that Kingdome to the State of *Rome*: first reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*, after, a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a *Dioceſe*, part of which it was. But from a Province of that *Dioceſe*, and a member of the *Eſtern* Empire, it was made a Kingdome: given with that title to *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Mont-ferrat* in exchange for *Candie*, together with the City of *Theſſalonica*, and ſome part of *Peloponeſus*, at the diviſion of that Empire amongſt the *Latines*. Which title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created *Prince* of *Theſſalie*, by the Emperor *Emanuel*; whoſe Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to wife. In him as it began, ſo this title ended; *Theſſalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theſſalie* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom ſubdued, and added to the *Turkiſh* Empire in the reign of *Amurath* the 2d. *Anno* 1432. *Macedon.*

2. *MACEDON* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Mygdonia*; on the Weſt, with *Albania*; on the North, with Mount *Hæmus*; on the South, with *Theſſalie*. The Country, for the moſt part fruitfull, as before was ſaid; but not ſo ſurfeiting with delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their courſe of life: as being naturally good ſouldiers, exact obſervers of military diſcipline, and inured to hardneſſe: which their many ſignal victories do moſt clearly evidence, both in *Greece* and *Aſia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits, reckoned them amongſt the barbarous Nations; and yet by a ſtrange kind of contradiction, aſcribe unto their country the *ſeats* of the *Muſes*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimple*, with a Fountain of the ſame name at the Foot thereof; both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here alſo was the Hill *Libethris*, and the Province of *Pieria*, from hence the *Muſes* had the names of *Libethrides*, and *Pierides*: by this laſt called more frequently than by any other name what ever, eſpecially by the *Greeks* themſelves. But the birth of *Ariſtotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Grecians* of this fooliſh arrogance, than all the *Muſes* in the world. A man ſo admirable in the generall courſe of learning, ſo univerſally comprehenſive of all Arts and Sciences, that the beſt-witted *Grecian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great happineſs, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children but to be *tutored* by him.

The principal Rivers hereof, beſides *Erigon* and *Alaicmon*, ſpoken of before; are 1. *Axius*, now called *Vardari*, riſing out of the hill *Scardius*, a branch of Mount *Æmus*; and paſſing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Golf of *Theſſalonica*, as it is now named: the faireſt River of thoſe parts, and of ſweeteſt waters; but ſuch as maketh all the cattel *black* which drink of it. 2. *Chabris*, 3. *Echedorus*, both riſing out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the ſame Bay alſo. Beſides which there are three other fair and capacious Bayes, aſcribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to ſay, *Singeticus*, now *Golfo di monte Sacro*; and *Toronicus*, now the Golf or Bay of *Aiomama*; and the third common unto *Thrace* alſo, which is *Sinus Strimonicus*, now the Bay of *Conteſſo*.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopes*, 1. *Hormia*, called afterward *Seleucia*. 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*. 3. *Apſalus*. Of *Syntice*, 4. *Triſtolus*, 5. *Parocacopolis*, 6. *Gariſcus*, 7. *Heraclea*, for diſtinction called *Heraclea Syntica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis* bordering towards *Thrace*, 8. *Scotuſa*, 9. *Berga*, 10. *Amphipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which encompaſſed, whence it had the name; ſeated ſo cloſe on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is queſtionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garriſoned by the *Athenians*, and from them took by *Philip* the *Macedonian*, in the firſt riſe of his fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* alſo, and by ſome Writers laid unto it, but I think erroniouſly: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom called *Philippi*; and ſituate in a Country ſo rich in mines of gold, that the ſaid *Philip* drew thence yearly 1000 *talents*, which make 600000 *French* Crowns, or 140000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* mony. Afterwards made a *Roman* Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the people of which S. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. Next in *Emathia*, we have 12. *Tyriſſa* in the mid-lands, bordering upon *Theſſalie*, now called *Ceresi*. 13. *Ædeſſa*, called afterwards *Ægeas*, and now *Vodena*; the firſt town of all this Country taken by *Caranaus*, the founder of the firſt race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Berœa* on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honored with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by S. *Luke* commended for their readineſs in receiving the Goſpel. 15. *Pella*, on the ſame Bay alſo, the birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellæus*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the ſame Bay, at the influx of the River *Alaicmon*, in which *Caſſander* beſiged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the wife, and *Hercules* the heir apparent of *Alexander*: all whom he barbarouſly murdered. This cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himſelf of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the wall together: and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Aridæus* the baſe Son of *Philip*, and *Euridice* his wife; with whom *Caſſander* was ſuppoſed to be over-familiar. Memorable alſo is this Town for the great battel fought near it, betwixt *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon*, and *P. Æmilius* the *Conſul*, in which *Perſeus* having ſhamefully deſerted his Army, loſt both the battel and his Kingdom, with no leſs than 20000 of his foot which were therin ſlain; the *Romans* having ſo cheap a victory, that it coſt them not above an hundred or ſixſcore men. 17. *Dium*

not

Mygdonia.

not far from the hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea; of which mile the River *Helicon* becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphirus*, taketh up one half. Situate in the borders towards *Theſſalie*, the way unto it out of the *Tempe* being ſtrait and narrow, and almoſt impaſſable, by reaſon of the ſpurs of the mountains running overthwart it: which had it been well defended by the *Macedonians* would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted it. But *Perſeus* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his treaſure out of *Dium*, and ſo abandoned both the paſſage, and the Town together. 18. *Phylace*, more within the land; as is 19. *Eribœa*. But theſe four laſt are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the Eaſt, the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, *Macedon*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North, *Edonis* and *Sinus Strimonicus*; on the South, *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the *Golf* of *Theſſalonica*. So that it is almoſt a *Peninſula*, environed on three ſides with water.

Here is in this Country the hill *Athos*, ſtanding in a *Peninſula* (the *Iſthmus* being once cut thorow by *Xerxes*, but ſince cloſed again) ſaid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long, half a days in breadth, reſembling the ſhape of a man lying with his face upwards: the higheſt point whereof covered perpetually with ſnow, is ſaid to caſt a ſhadow as far as *Lemnos*. Exceeding fruitfull in graſſe, fruit, oil, and wine; and wondrous plentifull in hares; according to that of *Ovid*.

Quot Lepores in Atho, *quot Apes paſcuntur in* Hybla.

How many Hares in *Athos* feed,
What ſwarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed.

Inhabited only by *Greek* Monks, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of St. *Baſil*, to whom the hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long ſince dedicated: the place being ſo privileged by the *Grand Signeur*, that neither *Turk* nor *Grecian* may inhabit in it, except ſuch *Grecians* only as profeſs this life. Of theſe there are about 6000, diſperſed in 42 *Monaſteries*, built after a military manner, for fear of Theeves and Pyrats, wherewith much infeſted in times paſt: frequented with great concourſe of people coming thither to behold and adore ſome *Reliques* (for which they are of much eſteem;) the free oblations of thoſe *Pilgrims*, and ſome benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much reſpect them, being the chief means of their ſubſiſtence. The manner of their life is like that of the antient *Hermits*; poorly clad, their ſhirts of *Woollen*, which they both ſpin and weave themſelves: none of them idle at any time, doing ſtill ſomewhat for their lively-hood, and the advancement of the houſe of which they are, as dreſſing vines, felling timber, yea and building ſhips. Few of them giving themſelves to ſtudy, and ſome of them of ſo groſs an ignorance, that they can neither write nor read: bound by their Order to lodge and entertain ſuch ſtrangers as have occaſion to paſſe that way, according to their rank and calling, and that of free coſt too, if it be deſired.

Towns of moſt note, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, are for *Mygdonia*, ſpecially and properly ſo called, 1. *Antigonia*, ſo called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the firſt founder of it. 2. *Xilopolis*, 3. *Terpillus*, 4. *Phyſco*, 5. *Aſſorus*, all mentioned by *Ptolemie*, but not elſe obſervable. 6. *Apollonia*, for diſtinction ſake called *Apollonia Mygdoniæ*, to difference it from *Apollonia* in *Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the ſtudies of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here learnt the *Greek* tongue. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7. *Arethuſa*, 8. *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the birth of *Ariſtotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9. *Theſſalonica*, ſituate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the Town. Antiently the *Metropolis*, or head City of *Macedon*, the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as alſo of the *Primate* of the *Greek* Church, who reſided here. To the people of this City did St. *Paul* write two of his Epiſtles, continuing in great power and credit till the fall of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was beſtowed firſt on *Boniface*, Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, the new King of *Theſſalie*; after whoſe death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432. when forced by *Amurath* the 2d. to become *Turkiſh*. Which notwithſtanding it ſtill preſerves the reputation of a beautifull and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great trade, eſpecially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, riches, and magnificence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greateſt number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 *Churches* for the uſe of *Chriſtians*. As for the *Jews*, they ſwarm here in ſuch great abundance, that in this City and that of *Conſtantinople* only, there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all ſorts of people. 10. *Syderocaſtra*, of old called *Chryſites*, remarkable for its mines of gold and ſilver; ſo beneficial to the *Turk*, that he received hence monthly 18000. and ſometimes 30000 crowns *de claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port Town, 12. *Stratonice*, in the *Peninſula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Athos*, or *Athoſa*, in the ſame *Peninſula*, with a Promontory of the ſame name, nigh which it ſtood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called *Eryſſa*, on the Bay of the *Holy Mountain*. And finally in *Paraxia*, we have 15. *Ampelus*, 16. *Torone*, giving name to the Bay adjoyning, called antiently *Sinus Toronicus*, now *Golfo di Aiomama*. 17. *Caſſandria*, on the Sea ſide, ſo called from *Caſſander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidea*. 18. *Derris*, 19. *Merillus*, 20. *Pallene*, ſituate in the *Cherſoneſe*, or Demy-Iſland, called *Petalene*, and by ſome *Petalia*: formerly conſecrated to the *Muſes*, but before that infamous for the war which the Giants are fabled to have made here againſt the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the fields adjoyning *Campi Phlegræi*, in which this great battel is ſuppoſed to be fought. The occaſion of the Fable was

(as

(as both *Theagenes* and *Eudoxes* do expound the same) that the Inhabitants hereof in those elder times being men of a most impious and insolent life, got the name of *Giants*, whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to subdue, and reduce to reason, it happened that there fell a great tempest of thunder and lightning, by which they were constrained to flee and submit themselves. Hence the report that those *Giants* made war against the Gods. Others have placed these *Phlegræan* fields in *Thessaly*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am that some place nearer to the hills of *Pelion*, *Ossa*, and *Olympus*, doth agree best with it: if at least *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes those Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the saying is. For thus that Poet: *Macedon.*

Affectasse ferunt regnum cœleste Gigantes,
Altaque congestos struxisse ad sydera Montes.
At pater omnipotens misso perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excussit subjectum Pelion Ossæ.

Which may be Englished in these words:

The *Giants* once the Throne of heaven affected,
And hils on hils unto the Stars erected:
Till *Jove* with thunder high *Olympus* brake,
And *Pelion* did from under *Ossa* take.

☞ But from those Fables to proceed to more real stories: this Country was first peopled by *Citim*, the son of *Javan*, passing over out of *Asia Minor*; in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Citium*, spoken of by *Livie*, l. 42. but the whole land of *Macedon* is in the book of *Maccabees* called the land of *Keitim*, *Maccab.* 1. *v.* 1. and the inhabitants hereof called *Citims*, in the 8 chapter of the same book, *v.* 5. spreading in tract of time from one Sea to the other, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, some Colonies of them passed from hence to *Italy*, and first inhabited that Country, as hath there been said. Such as continued in these parts, divided into several tribes, as in all parts else, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*: a people not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painfull life, *Goatherds* and *Shepherds* for the most part, scarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next invader; much less to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Persia*. And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him spoke in passion, and to their disgrace) that *his father* Philip *had first made them Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the *Rudiments* of war under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hostage with the *Thebans*) and by that means acquainted with the temper and state of *Greece*: not only freed his own kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the factions raised amongst the *Grecians*, (which he knew how to feed and cherish for his own improvement) brought them at first wholly to rely upon him, and after to be subject to him. Insomuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter growth, nor a more speedy dissolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*; in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broke to pieces. For the foundation being laid in *murder*, *perjury*, and *treason*, as at first it was; was never likely to be blessed with a long continuance.

The KINGS of *MACEDON*.

A.M.		A.M.		A.M.	
3155	1 *Caranaus*, 28	3415	9 *Amintas*, 50	3574	17 *Argæus* II.
3183	2 *Cænus*, 12	3465	10 *Alexander*, 43	3575	18 *Amintas* III. 19
3195	3 *Tirimas*, 38	3508	11 *Perdiccas* II. 28	3594	19 *Alexander* II. 1
3233	4 *Perdiccas*, 51	3536	12 *Archelaus*, 24	3595	20 *Alorites*, 4
3284	5 *Argæus*, 38	3560	13 *Orestes*, 3.	3596	21 *Perdicas* III. 6
3322	6 *Philippus*, 38	3563	14 *Archelaus* II. 4	3605	22 *Philip* II. 24
3360	7 *Europus*, 26	3567	15 *Pausanias*, 1	3529	23 *Alexander* the Great.
3386	8 *Alcetas*, 29	3568	16 *Amintas* II. 6.		24 *Aridæus*, 6.

Of these 24 Kings, only 6 are famous, *viz.* *Caranaus*, the first king, originally of *Argos*, of the race of *Hercules*; and by an *Oracle* commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the first flock of Cattel he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espyed a herd of *Goats* flying the fury of the weather. These *Goats* he followed unto *Ædessa*, into which by reason of the darkness of the air he entred undiscovered, won the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Country. 2. *Perdiccas* the fourth King, who at *Æga*, built a burial place for all his successors; assuring the people that as long as their Kings were there buried, his race should never fail; and so it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carryed in a cradle against the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious. This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being present: or perswaded themselves that there was none so void of *honour* and *compassion*, as to abandon an infant, no way able to save himself from destruction, but by the valour and fidelity of his servants. 4. *Alexander*, the son

Macedon. of *Amintas*, famous for a notable exploit on the *Persian* Embassadours; who being sent from *Megabizus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entred, but *petulantius eas* Persis *contrectantibus*, as *Justine* relateth the story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young springals maidenly attired; who upon the like indignities offered, slew these effeminate *Asians*. After which he behaved himself so discreetly, that the *Persian* Monarch gave him all *Greece*, between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. *Philip* father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the son of *Perdiccas* his elder brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the kingdom and title of King: which he continued in the deposition of his Nephew and natural Soveraign, the murder of the rest of his brethren, and the destruction of all such as opposed his practice. But being otherwise a man of approved abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*; subdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen General of the *Greeks* against the *Persians*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was slain by one *Pausanias* a young Gentleman, whom he had formerly abused in the heat of his unnatural lusts. 6. *Alexander*, the son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece*, as on the death of his father had befooled themselves with a hope of liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Persia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Grecians*, and in the height of his successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains: his revenue at the time of his death, amounting to 300000 talents yearly. After his death his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of succession; he himself dying without lawfull issue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him, who was thought most worthy by his Army: and the souldiers according to their several affections and relations, thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the title of King (and in effect nothing but the title) was by consent of the Commanders cast on *Aridæus*, a bastard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector (for *Aridæus* was a little crazed in his brain) and to be general of the Army, by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice* daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before dispossessed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were assigned unto the government of the chief Commanders, *viz.* *Ægypt* to *Ptolemie*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotus*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia*, and *Phrigia major* to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lidia* to *Minander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Assyria* to *Seleucus*, *Persis* to *Peucestes*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the others parts of the *Persian* Empire being left to them, unto whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this division held not long, for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolemie*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*; these two became quickly too great for the rest: *Ptolemie* adding *Syria*; and *Cyprus*, to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his command not only all *Asia minor*, but *Assyria*, *Media*, and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Persian* Empire. *Antipater* in mean time succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the mother of *Alexander*, out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a step-dames love unto *Aridæus*. But he being dead, she returned out of *Epirus* (the place of her banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong party amongst the people, she put *Aridæus* and his wife *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander*, the son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, both slain not long after by *Cassander* the son of *Antipater*, who to make sure work, murdered also with the like cruelty *Hercules*, the son of *Alexander* on *Barsina* (another *Persian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last survivor of that house. And so the royal family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Persian* Provinces, beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolemie* in *Ægypt*, and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the *MACEDON* KINGS.

A.M.		
3648	1	*Cassander*, sonne of *Antipater*, supposed to have been the poisoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the blood-roya of *Macedon*, his reign full of troubles and difficulties, 19.
3667	2	*Alexander* and *Antipater*, sons to *Cassander*, but not well agreeing, called unto their aid *Lysimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in short time murdered, 4.
3671	3	*Demetrius*, son to *Antigonus*, the powerfull King of *Asia*, after he had in one battel against *Seleucus*, lost both his father, and all his *Asian* Dominions; settled himself in *Macedon*: but being there outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him dyed, 6.
3677	4	*Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, was by the souldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*; but after 7 moneths, the souldiers revolted to *Lysimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born.
3678	5	*Lysimachus*, King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquished and slain by *Seleucus*, the last survivor of *Alexanders* Captains, 7.
3685	6	*Ceraunus*, or *Ptolemie Ceraunus*, son of *Ptolemie* to *Ægypt*, having traiterously slain his friend and Patron *Seleucus*, seised on *Macedon*; but lost it, together with his life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countries. After whose death, this Kingdom being distracted amongst many Competitours, setled at last upon
3687	7	*Antigonus Gonatas*, the son of *Demetrius*, who for his valour shewn in expulsing the *Gauls*,

was

was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italy*; yet after the death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his estate; but outed once again by *Alexander* the son of *Pyrrhus*, 36. *Thrace.*

3723 8 *Demetrius* II. son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander*, the son of *Pyrrhus*, 10.

3733 9 *Antigonus* II. surnamed *Doson*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquished and crushed the *Grecians*, beginning then to cast off the yoke of *Macedon*, 12.

3745 10 *Philip*, the son of *Demetrius*, 42.

3787 11 *Perseus*, the son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*, the subversion of which estate was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Ætolians*, and others of the *Greeks*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but sided with *Hannibal* against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Consuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquished at the battel of *Cunos-cephalos*, and his Kingdom made tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a quarrel against *Perseus* also, managed with variable success by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders; they dispatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perseus* led captive unto *Rome*, *Anno* 3789. In which triumph, besides the pomp of leading a Captive King in bonds, *Æmilius* caused the ready money which he brought out of *Greece*, to be carryed in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing 3 *Talents*: which made so infinite a sum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after, from all taxes and impositions. A. M. 3798.

Macedon thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, and *Prevalitana*; in the new model of *Constantine* became a *Dioceſe*, the *Dioceſe* hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *old* and *new Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*, the residue of *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana*, (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire, till towards the last fatal dissolution of it; though many times harassed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and others of the barbarous people at their several invasions of it: finally conquered by the *Turks*, first under the conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonius*, now the Bay of *Contesso*; and after unto *Amurath* the second, their sixt King, making themselves masters of *Thessalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country. By reason of which many invasions and last desolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mentioned, now of any eminence; except *Thessalonica* only: the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Country it self it is governed by a *Turkish Sanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, his annual *Revenue* being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him than to maintain 100 horse in ordinary pay, for defence of his Province; and to find 400 horse on extraordinary occasions, as the *Grand-Signeur* shall command him.

7 THRACE.

THRACE hath on the East, *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and *Hellespont*; on the West, *Macedon*; on the North, the Hill *Hæmus*; on the South the *Ægean* Sea, and part of *Macedon*. A very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 7 days journey in breadth: and in relation to the heavens, reaching unto the 44 degree of the Northern latitude; so that the longest day in summer is about 15 hours, three quarters.

By several men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus*, *Aria*; by *Suidas*, *Odrysa*; by *Lycophron*, *Crestona*; by some writers, *Scythia*; by *Josephus* the *Hebrew*, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that as some say from *Thrax*, the son of *Mars*, as others from *Thraca*, an Inchantress: more probably from the ferity and barbarous condition of the first Inhabitants; the name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction: Most likely from *Thyras*, the son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Josephus*, besides many other footsteps and remembrances of him, in the name of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes: of which we have already spoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*, either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here; or because *Constantinople*, the chief City of it, was antiently called *Nova Roma*: and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich soil, nor a pleasant air, the corn and other fruits by reason of the coldness of the *Climate*, leisurely ripening, the Vines yeelding more shade than juyce, and the trees for the most part more leaves than fruit: yet in some parts there be many large and goodly plains, where they reap good store of corn, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea-side they have plenty of wine, which *Plinie* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The people antiently were very bold and valiant, and called by some Αυτόνομοι because every man was a law to himself. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one mind, or under one King, they had been invincible. Of manners they were rude and savage, somewhat near to brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their sons and daughters, as in open market: in which, since imitated by the *Turks*, who possess their Coun-

Thrace. Country. The men were more couragious than comely, wearing Cloaths according to their conditions, ragged and unseemly. The *maryed* women were in love to their Husbands so constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The *Virgins* were bestowed, not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither beauty nor vertue for their dowry, were put off according to their monie; most times sold as other Cattel, in the Markets. In matters of *Religion*, they worshipped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: swearing especiallie by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their chief *national deity*, was one *Zamolxis*, sometimes a native of this Country, who having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws; assuring them that if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World, in which they should enjoy all manner of pleasure and contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a *divinity* amongst them, he absented himself; after was worshipped as their God. Upon these principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other friends sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his comming into the World; ripping up all the miseries and afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present life, and so deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhaphy. But on the contrary, when any one chanced to dye, they buryed him with all joy and alacrity; highly rejoicing that by this means he was freed from the crosses and disasters of this wretched World. Expressed thus briefly, after his wonted manner, by my Author. *Lugentur Puerperia, natiq; deflentur; funera contra festa sunt, & veluti sacra cantu lusuq; celebrantur.* A piece of such sound and Orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in these times of darkness; and savouring very much of the Primitive piety: by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as *Festivals*, no notice being taken of the day of their births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non navitatem sed mortem* Sanctorum *Ecclesia pretiosam & festam judicat.*

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villanously murdered *Polydorus*, a younger son of *Priamus*; for which fact, *Hecuba* the young Princes Mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phocis*: and *Diomedes*, who using to feed his Horses with mans flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And finally, here reigned King *Cotys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare temper, both in mastering and preventing passion. For when a neighbour Prince had sent him a present of Glasses, of the purest metall, and no lesse accurate in the workmanship or fashion of them: (having dispatched the Messenger with all the due complements of Majesty and gratitude) he broke them all to pieces; lest if by mishap any of his servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate choler.

Chief mountains in this Country, besides *Hæmus* spoken of already, are 1. *Rhodope*, the highest next Mount *Hæmus* in those parts of the World; craggy and rough, the top whereof continually white with snow: memorable for the fate and fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholy humour (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains; where with his *Musick* he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto his *Musick*: from this place of his abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his Country *Thracius*; *Non me carminibus vincet nec* Thracius Orpheus, *&c.* as the Shepheard boasteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a man of an heavenly *Muse*, and by his dictates and good counsell laid down in verse, first of all civilized this people, and weaned them by degrees from their bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it self, it is in the midst of this Country, thwarting it from Mount *Hæmus* towards the West: which with the spurs and branches of it, and the plains adjoining, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the East, made up the Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in mines of Silver; 3. *Melapus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of rocks and cliffs; and 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia.*

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon* spoken of before, the boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are 1. *Nessus*, by the *Grecians*, now called *Mestro*, by the *Turks*, *Charason*, which rising out of Mount *Hæmus* falleth into the Sea, near the Isle of *Thassus*. 2. *Athyras*, in which name, the memory of *Thyras* the son of *Japhet*, seems to be preserved: which rising in Mount *Hæmus* also, loseth it self in the *Propontick*; as doth 3. *Bathynias*, another River rising from the same Mount *Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the most noted River of all this country, rising out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægean* near the Isle of *Samothrace*; a River of so slow a course, that it is not easie to discern which way it goeth: but memorable in the Poets for the fate of *Orpheus*, who being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* women, had his limbs thrown into it by those *Furies*. 5. *Thearus*, good against the scab both in Man and Beast, issuing out of 30 Fountains, some hot, some cold; with the pleasantnesse of whose waters *Darius* the King of *Persia*, was so delighted, that he erected a Pilar in honor of it.

The chief Towns 1. *Abdera*, now called *Polystilo*, situate not far from the fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægean*, the birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole life in laughing at the follies of others. 2. *Potidea*, of old a Colonie of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians* not enduring the affront, beleaguered it, and after two years siege, and the expence of 2000 Talents, could not recover it again but on composition. 3. *Anus*, on the *Ægean* Sea, a Town of great strength and safety, and therefore used by the later *Constantinopolitan* Emperors for the securing of great persons. For hither *Michael Palæologus* sent *Jathatines* the *Turkish Sultan*, flying to him for aid; and hither *Mahomet* the Great sent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Peloponnesus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for

their

their eaſe and ſafety, but in plain terms to keep them in honorable Priſons. 4. *Lyſimachia*, on the Sea-ſhore, once of great importance, built by *Lyſimachus*, who after *Alexanders* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garriſoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus*, on the withdrawing of whoſe Forces for ſome other ſervice, it was taken and razed to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the people of it carried into captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified, and new peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient ſituation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philipolopolis* ſo called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as a bridle to hold in the *Thracians*; called alſo *Trimontium*, from three hills on which it was ſituate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly *Amphitheatre*, continuing entire and whole till theſe latter days, and might have laſted longer by many ages, did not the *Turks* dayly take away the ſtones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are alſo many other antient Monuments, though the Town be much waſted and deſtroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 perſons: which notwithſtanding it is populous, and well-frequented, by reaſon of the convenient ſituation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, ſo called from the Emperour *Trajan*, by whom either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and ſtill preſerving its old name. 7. *Selimbria*, on the coaſt of the *Propontick* Sea; beautified with a commodious port for receipt of ſmall veſſels, and many Bayes adjoyning capable of greater: by *Ptolemie* called *Selibria*, and *Olibria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus*, or the *Black Sea*, now *Siſopoli*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the ſame Sea alſo. 10. *Nicopolis*, at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*, there being another of that name near the River *Neſſus*. 11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* ſea, near the influx of the River *Arſus*. A Town of great note in the antient buſineſſes of *Greece*; of great ſtrength, and peopled formerly with men of ſuch reſolutions, that they maintained their liberty againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almoſt all the reſt of *Thrace* had ſubmitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at firſt a Colony of the *Thebans*, and afterwards of much reqneſt in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Veſpatian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of *Rome*; as alſo with an *Amphitheatre*, cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the worlds ſeven Wonders: and finally, made the *Metropolitan* City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon*, the greateſt City of *Thrace*, as poſſibly enough it was in power and riches, though not in greatneſs of extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in trade, and miſtreſs of a fair and goodly territory adjoyning to it: the people whereof had been malicious enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip*, ſpoken of before, to ſet upon them. In which attempt he ſped ſo well, that what he could not get by force, he obtained by money; bribing ſome of the principal Officers to betray it to him: for the recovery whereof, *Demoſthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens*, in thoſe elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14. *Seſtos*, in the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*: which being a *Peninſula* abutting over againſt *Troas*, on the *Aſian* ſide, is now called Saint *Georges Arm*. Oppoſite whereunto, on the other ſide of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the *Tragical* Loves of *Hero*, and *Leander*, celebrated by *Muſæus*, an old *Greek* Poet. 15. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this *Cherſoneſe*, the firſt City of note that ever the *Turks* poſſeſſed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the ſon of *Orchanes*, the ſecond King of the *Ottoman* race, *Anno* 1358. from whence they eaſily, and in little time, ſpred themſelves all over the reſt of *Thrace*: the ordinary paſſage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*, by reaſon of the convenient Harbour, and ſafe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, ſeated on the Weſtern ſide of it, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lemnos*, and the birth-place of *Eumenes*, who being a poor Carriers ſon, attained to ſuch an ability in the art of War; that after the death of *Alexander* the *Great*, under whom he ſerved, he ſeiſed on the Provinces of *Cappadocia*, and *Paphlagonia*, and ſiding (though a ſtranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias*, and the Blood-royal, againſt the *Greek* Captains; vanquiſhed and ſlew *Craterus*, and divers times drave *Antigonus* (afterward Lord of *Aſia*) out of the field. But being by his own Souldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him ſlain. 17. *Sardica*, ſituate towards Mount *Æmus*, memorable for the Council there held againſt the *Arians*, An. 351. 18. *Adrianople*, ſeated near the midſt of *Thrace*, called antiently *Uſcudama*, but got this name from *Adrian* the Emp. who repaired and beautified it, made ſubject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, *An.* 1362. from the firſt taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkiſh* Kings, till the taking of *Conſtantinople*, by *Mahomet* the *Great*; by whom removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, on the further ſide of the water (as the word doth ſignifie in the *Greek*) by ſome called *Galata*, once peopled by a Colony of *Genoeſe*, as the Mart and Factory of that State, taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, *An.* 1453. but ſtill repleniſhed, for the moſt part, with *Chriſtian* Merchants & Artificers.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the Eaſt, is the renowned City of 20. *Conſtantinople*, ſeated in ſo commodious a place for Empire, that it over-looks both *Europe*, and *Aſia*; and commands not only the *Propontis* and *Boſphorus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. Firſt founded by one *Byza*, from whom named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Perſians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans* (unwilling that the *Perſians* ſhould grow ſtrong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pauſanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the birth of our Saviour. In vain beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great ſtrength in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls of a juſt height, every ſtone whereof was ſo joyned with Couplets of Braſs, that the whole ſeemed but one intire piece; adorned beſides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger*, in his war againſt *Severus* the Emperour, it indured a ſiege of three years againſt all the forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were ſo diſtreſſed by Famine, that men meeting in the ſtrees, would draw and fight; the Conqueror feeding on the Vanquiſhed. For want of Artillery to diſcharge on the Aſſailants, they caſt down upon them whole *Statuas* made of Braſs, and the like curious imagery. Houſes they pulled down to get timber for Shipping; the women

Thrace. cutting off their hair to inch out their tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, loſt it all by one Tempeſt. Compelled to yield by this miſfortune, the principall of the Nobility were put to the ſword, the wealth of the Inhabitants given for a prey to the Souldiers; the walls thereof diſmantled, the Town left in rubbiſh. Yet there appeared ſo much of Majeſty and beauty in the very ruines: *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps ſunt demoliti, vires ſint potiores*, as *Herodian* hath it. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, he honored it with his own Name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City finiſhed *May* 11 *Anno* 331. And being ſo finiſhed, was endowed with all the privileges of *Rome*, an equall number of *Senators*, one of the Annual *Conſuls*, and all other Officers of State choſen out of both; the Citizens of the one being *Free* of the other, and capable of all places of moſt truſt and power. For that cauſe called *NOVA ROMA*, in ſome following times. This City he adorned alſo with magnificent Buildings, curious *Statues*, and ſuch like Ornaments, tranſported hither from *Old Rome*: which City he ſpoiled of more coſtly pieces, than any twenty of his Predeceſſours had brought unto it. At this day the chief buildings are the *Turks Seraglio*, and the Temple of Saint *Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and ſituation, ſo as little in magnificence and State. The Temple of Saint *Sophia*, was, if not built, yet re-edified by the Emperor *Juſtinian*. It is built of an ovall form, ſurrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanſhip, adorned with ſpacious and beautifull Galleries; roofed all over with *Moſaique* work, and vaulted underneath, very ſtrongly for the Fabrick, and pleaſing for the eye. The Doors are very curiouſly wrought and plated; one of which, by the ſuperſtitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noahs* Ark. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the antient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth: and yet to our Saint *Pauls* in *London*, may ſeem for the bigneſſe, to have been but a Chapel of eaſe. But what it wants in Greatneſſe, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the elegancy of the building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the fabricks in the whole World: the ſides and floor, all flagged with excellent Marble, and before the entrance a goodly *Portico*, or *Porch*, in which, as well the *Chriſtians*, who viſit it out of curioſity; as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their ſhoos. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, converted to a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as it ſtill continueth; frequented by the *Signeur* almoſt every *Friday*, which is the *Sabbath* of that people. Near hereunto ſtandeth the Palace, or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperors, on the North-eaſt Angle of the City, where formerly ſtood the antient *Byzantium*: divided from the reſt of the City by a wall, containing three miles in Circuit; and comprehending goodly groves of *Cypreſſes* intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of pleaſures which luxury can affect, or treaſure compaſſe. The *Palace* it ſelf injoying a goodly proſpect into the Sea, was firſt built by *Juſtinus* the Emperor, afterwards much inlarged by the *Ottoman* race; containing three great Courts one within another: the buildings yielding unto thoſe of *Franee*, and *Italy* for the neat contrivances; but far ſurpaſſing them for coſt, and curiouſneſſe.

As for the City it ſelf, it is ſaid to be 18 miles in compaſs, and to contain 700000 living ſouls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel *Tertian Ague*, did not every third year ſo rage amongſt them. Fortified towards the Land with three ſtrong, and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermoſt higheſt of them all: towards the Sea with one wall only, built after the old faſhion with many Turrets, which very ſtrongly flanker, and defend the ſame. But formerly both the Town and *Cherſoneſe* in which it ſtanderh, was defended from the incurſions of the barbarous people, by a ſtrong Wall built on the very *Iſthmus* of it, ſome ten miles from the City, reaching from one ſide to the other. The work of *Anaſtaſius*, who ſucceeded *Zeno*, *Anno* 494. A City which a farre off gives to the eye a moſt pleaſing object; ſo intermixt with Gardens, and beſet with Trees, that it ſeems a City in a Wood: but being entred, much deceiveth the expectation which it promiſed, the buildings of it being mean if not contemptible. The *ſtreets* for the moſt part exceeding narrow, but raiſed on each ſide for the greater cleanlineſſe: the houſes but of two ſtories high, ſome of rough Stone, and ſome of Timber; without any outward grace, or exterior garniſhing: in many places nothing but low Sheds, or rowes of ſhops; and in ſome places long dead walls belonging unto great mens houſes. The principal beauty of the whole, next to ſome Monuments of Antiquity, which are ſtill preſerved, and the Tombs, or Sepulchres of ſome of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very ſumptuous; are the *Moſques* or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thouſand in number: And the Port or Haven, ſo conveniently profound, that Ships of greateſt burden may ſafely lay their ſides to the ſides thereof, for the receit or diſcharge of their lading; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated on the *Thracian Boſphorus*, that there is no wind, whatſoever it be, which brings not in ſome ſhipping to it. But that which gives the greateſt pleaſure to the ſight, from the Hills adjoining, is the ſituation of it on ſeven Mountenets, moſt of them crowned with magnificent *Moſques*, built all of *white Marble*, round in form, and finiſhed on the top with gilded *Spires*, reflecting the ſun beams with a marvellous ſplendour. On the firſt whereof, ſtandeth the ruines of *Conſtantines* Palace, exceeding ſtately to behold; On the ſecond, a fair *Turkiſh Moſque*, built on the Palace antiently belonging to the *Greek Patriarch*; On the third, ſtands a ſtately *Moſque*, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the ſecond; and a very large *Hoſpital*, for entertainment of Pilgrims, and relief of the poor: the Annual rents wherof are valued at 200000 *Checquines*. On the fourth and fift, the Sepulture of *Selimus* the firſt, and *Bajazet* the ſecond. On the ſixt, the *Moſque* and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the *magnificent*, numbred amongſt the preſent *wonders* of the World; and on the ſeventh, the Temple of Saint *Sophia*, and the *Turks Seraglio*, ſpoken of already. In which reſpect it is called Πόλις ἐπτάλοφος, by *Nicetis*; *Urbs ſepticollis*, by *Paulus Diaconus*; and ſo acknowledged to be by *Janus*

Dou-

Douza, *Phines Moriſon*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern travellers, the eye-witneſſes of it. So that if there be any Myſtery in the number of *Seven*, or that the ſiting of the *Great Whore* on a *ſeaven-headed* Beaſt; be an aſſured direction to find out the *Antichriſt*: we may as well look for him in *Conſtantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the *Great Turk*, the profeſſed enemy of *Chriſt*, and the *Chriſtian Faith*, hath his ſeat and reſidence; as amongſt the *ſeven hils* of *Old Rome*, where the *Pope* reſideth. Or if his ſitting in the *Temple* of *God*, ſhew us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the *Temple* of Saint *Sophia*, now a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as in Saint *Peters* Church at *Rome*, ſtill a *Chriſtian* Temple. *Thrace.*

But to return again unto *Conſtantinople*, as it was made by *Conſtantine* the *Imperial* City, and conſequently the chief City of the Eaſt, in all *Civil* matters: ſo it became in little time to have a great way alſo in affairs of *Religion*. The *Chriſtian Faith* ſaid to be firſt preached in *Byzantium*, by Saint *Andrew* the Apoſtle, the firſt Biſhop thereof. Afterwards ſpreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches of it regulated by many Biſhops; the chief preheminence in matters which concerned thoſe Churches, was given unto the Biſhops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the *Metropolis*, or principal City of the Province. But after that *Conſtantinople* was built by *Conſtantine*, and made the *Imperial* City, as before was ſaid; it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it ſelf the *Metropolitan* dignity, but ſtood in competition with the other *Patriarchal* Churches, for the Supreme Power; inſomuch as at the ſecond *General Council*, holden in this City, it was unanimouſly decreed, that the *Patriarch* hereof ſhould in degree of honour be next unto the Biſhop of *Rome*, and above thoſe of *Antioch*, and *Alexandria*; the ſame Decree confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* alſo. By which, not only all the Churches in the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace*, but alſo of *Natolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no leſſe than 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made ſubject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the firſt, pretending only the preſervation of the Privileges of thoſe two great Churches; but indeed fearing leſt *New Rome* might in the end get the precedency of the *Old*, did oppoſe this Act; and ſome of his Succeſſors perſiſted in the ſame reſiſtance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, eſpecially after the Emperour *Juſtinian* had by his *Imperial* Edict confirmed the ſame. By whom it was finally ordained, *Senioris Romæ Papam primum eſſe omnium Sacerdotum, beatiſſimum autem Archiepiſcopum* Conſtantinopoleos, *Novæ Romæ, ſecundum habere locum*: that is to ſay, that the *Pope* of *Rome* ſhould have the firſt place, in all *General Counſels*, and the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, or *New Rome*, ſhould have the ſecond. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperour *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the *Great*, took to himſelf the title of *Univerſal* or *Oecumenical* Biſhop, the *Paſtor General* (as it were) of the Church of CHRIST. And though Pope *Boniface*, by the grant of that bloody Tyrant *PHOCAS*, got that title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople* made good their ground, never ſubmitting either themſelves, or their Churches to the Popes Authority; for that cauſe ſpecially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for *Schiſmaticks*, accordingly reviled, and perſecuted with all kind of indignities. How it ſucceeded with theſe Patriarchs in the times enſuing, and by what means their juriſdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muſcovie*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and Eaſt, hath been ſaid already. Certain it is, the conſtant reſidence of the Emperours, from the time of *Conſtantine*, gave great ground unto it: of whom I ſhould here adde the names, but that I muſt firſt ſum up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the building of this mighty and predominant City; and take a brief view of the reſt of thoſe Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which we are to know, that the antient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strimonii*; *Bardi*, *Dolongi*, *Sapæi*, *Saii*, and ſome others; united by moſt writers in the name of *Thracians*. Governed at firſt by the Kings or Princes of their ſeveral Tribes, as moſt Nations elſe: diſtinguiſhed from the common people as in other pomps, ſo moſt eſpecially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themſelves apart, and were not to be worſhipped by the beſt of their Subjects. Theſe not agreeing well together for the common good, gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to ſeize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in thoſe times being meanly peopled, and conſequently giving that advantage unto the *Grecians*; as the *Indies* in theſe later times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portugueze*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon* proving bad neighbours hereunto upon all occaſions, at laſt provoked *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a ſhare; who being choſen *Arbitrator* betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom (drawn at laſt into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with ſuch poor attendants as *Juſtice* and *Piety*, but with a great and puiſſant *Army*: wherewith having vanquiſhed and ſlain the two *Pretenders*, he pronounced ſentence for himſelf, and made *Thrace* his own; compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their *Revenue* for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander*, this Country was ſeiſed on by *Lyſimachus*, as his part of the ſpoil, who here built the City *Lyſimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians* now accuſtomed to a forein yoak, were either Subjects, or at leaſt Tributaries to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their wars againſt the *Romans*, they incurred the diſpleaſure of that people; who having ſetled their affairs in other place, and repulſed the *Cimbri*; thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to accompt for their former Actions: but ſped ſo ill in the attempt, that *Porcius Cato* loſt his whole Army in the on-ſet, cunningly intercepted in their woods and faſtneſſes. *Didius* the *Prætor* coming in, whilſt the *Thracians* were buſie in the chaſe, gave them ſuch a ſtop, that he deſerved a *Triumph* for it: and made the Victory more eaſie to *Metellus*, who ſuc-

ceeded

Thrace. ceeded *Cato* in that charge, and *triumphed* alſo over them; as alſo did *Lucullus* on another Victory. A. U. C. 680. Broken with ſo many ill ſucceſſes, that they were finally ſubdued by *Piſo* in the time of *Auguſtus*: becoming ſo obſequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhitemalces*, a great and puiſſant King hereof, aided him with a ſtrength of Horſe againſt the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Conſtantines* new Model it became a *Dioceſe*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*: *Thrace* it ſelf being caſt into four Provinces, that is to ſay, *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia*, and the *Lower Mœſia*, ſpoken of before, being added to it: of which the Preſidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum*, were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were; but only to the *Præfect* of *Conſtantinople*, the *Imperial* City. But as *Alfonſus*, King of *Caſtile*, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, was once heard to ſay (never the *Wiſer* for ſo ſaying) That *had he ſtood at the elbow of* Almighty God, *when he made the World, he would have ſhewed him how ſome things might be better ordered*: ſo give me leave to play the fool, and to ſay this here, that had I ſtood at *Conſtantines* elbow, I would have counſelled him to lay the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* to the *Præfecture* of *Illyricum*, who had originally only the Dioceſes of *Macedon*, and *Illyricum* under his command; and not have placed it under the *Præfect* of the Eaſt, who had both *Aſias*, and all *Ægypt*, under his Authority. For being that there lay *Appeals* from the *Vicars* of Lieutenants of the ſeveral *Dioceſes* to their ſeveral and reſpective *Præfects*, how great a trouble muſt it be to the ſubjects of *Thrace*, on every occaſion of *Appeal*, to poſt to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Præfect* of the *Orient*, when *Sirmium* and *Theſſalonica*, the ordinary reſidences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, were ſo hard at hand. But *Conſtantine* was an abſolute Prince, and might doe what he liſted. He had not elſe removed his ſeat ſo far towards the Eaſt, and left the weſtern parts of the Empire open to the barbarous people, out of a fancy only to preſerve the Eaſtern. For that it was a fancy only the event did ſhew, the *Perſians* for all this, prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it ſelf, though honoured with the *Imperial* City, and planted with ſo many *Roman* Colonies, ſo ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waſt and deſert many ages after. Inſomuch as the *Goths* being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperour *Valens* planted in this Country, (the Emperour having a deſign to uſe them in his following wars) where not contented with the portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, waſting the whole Province, taking divers towns, and endangering *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, from whence not driven (*Valens* himſelf being killed in the war againſt them) but by the coming of ſome *Saracens* to the aid of the Citizens. Nor could the reſidence of the Emperours ſo protect this Country, but that it was continually haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, *Saracens*, and other barbarous people falling in upon it: nor hinder one *Bryonnius* in the time of *Michael Ducas*, and *Nicephorus Botoniates* from aſſuming to himſelf the title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race from getting ground every day on the *leſſer Aſia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it ſelf, and in the end obtaining the *Imperial* City.

And here perhaps it is expected, conſidering the *Turks* are now poſſeſſed of *Thrace*, and the reſt of *Greece*, that we ſhould make relation of the nature of that People, their cuſtoms, forces, policies, original, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe thereof we will deferre till we come to *Turcomania*; a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt inundations, like to ſome unreſiſtable torrent into *Perſia*; and after into the other parts of the world now ſubject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our deſcription of the reſt of *Greece*, conſiſting of the Ilands ſcattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas: leaving out ſuch as properly belong to *Aſia*, to our deſcription of that Country, though otherwiſe *Greek* Ilands, and ſo accompted both for their Language and Original.

The ILANDS of the *PONTICK* and *PROPONTICK* SEAS.

Before we come to the deſcriptions of theſe Ilands, we muſt firſt look upon the Seas in which they lie: beginning with the *PONTICK* firſt, becauſe the *Greateſt*, and that which doth communicate and convey its waters unto all the reſt. A Sea made up Originally of the confluence of thoſe mighty Rivers (the greateſt in thoſe parts of the world) which do fall into it: that is to ſay, the *Danow*, *Boryſthenes*, and *Tanais* falling out of *Europe*, beſides many other fair and large Rivers (though of leſſer note) to the number of at leaſt an hundred, which pay tribute to it: the whole compaſſe of it being 2700 miles; in form, by ſome reſembled to a *Scythian Bow* when it is bended. A Sea not ſo ſalt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with ice in winter; ſeldom remitted in the ſpring on the Northern ſhore: the Traffick of it wholly in a manner engroſſed by the Turks, who is maſter of all the Sea coaſt of it, ſave what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crimi-Tartar*. At firſt called Ἄξενος from the inhoſpitableneſs of the neighbouring people; which being brought to ſome conformity, cauſed the Sea to be called Εὔξενος. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Siniſtrum*, becauſe in the way from *Rome* to *Aſia Minor*, it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatneſſe; and the *Black Sea*, becauſe of the great miſts thence ariſing. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black ſhipwracks here happening. For it is a very dangerous ſhore full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cauſe there is on the top of an high Tower, a Lanthorn, in which there is a great pan full of pitch, rozen,

tozen, tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the ſhore. This Sea being the biggeſt of all thoſe parts, gave occaſion to them which knew no bigger, to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, deerant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place of the ſame Poet,— *nil niſi pontus & aer*; a better reaſon doubtleſs of the name, than that of the *Etymologiſts* : *Pontus, quia ponte caret.* Of this Sea the chief Iſles are *Thinnius*, and *Erithinnus*, little famous. *Propontis.*

From hence the Sea bending Southward, is brought into narrow bounds, not being fully a mile broad; and called *Thracius Boſphorus*; *Thracius*, for its ſite nigh *Thrace*; and *Boſphorus*, for that Oxen have ſwom over it, and hath no Iland worth naming. Fortified on each ſide with a very ſtrong Caſtle, that on the *Aſian* ſide being the elder and the leſſer, is by the *Greeks* called *Aſio Caſtron*; by the Turks named *Acce-chiſar* : The other juſt oppoſite to it, by the *Turks* called *Genichiſar*; by the *Greeks* named *Neo Caſtron*, or New Caſtle. This laſt the work of *Mahomet* ſurnamed the *Great*, in the beginning of his reign : in bigneſs not inferiour to a little City; built by him in or near the place of the antient *Damalis*, environed with a wall 22 foot broad, and containing three great Towers; their wall exceeding 10 yards in thickneſs, exceedingly well ſtored with all ſorts of Ordinance and Ammunition. By the *Engliſh* commonly called the *Black Towers*, partly becauſe ſeated at the entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and partly becauſe they ſerve as a Priſon for Malefactors of principal note, who ſeldom are diſcharged thence, til releaſed by death.

This Streight having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it ſelf into the *Propontis*, 30 miles in compaſs; confined with *Thrace* on the one ſide, and with *Bythinia* on the other : ſo as they which ſail in the middle, may deſcry the land on all parts. Now called *Mare di Marmora*, from the Iland *Marmora*, which formerly called *Proconneſus*, hath for its abundance of *Marble* purchaſed this new name. The ſoil apt for Vines, and not deſtitute of Corn, yielding alſo good paſturage for Goats, wherof here is plenty, with an incredible number of *Partriges* amongſt the Rocks : the Country of *Ariſtæus*, a famous Poet, who flouriſhed in the times of *Cræſus*. Antiently it had in it two Cities of the ſame name with the Iland, called the *Old* and *New* *Proconneſus*; the former firſt built by the *Mileſians*, an *Aſian* people; the latter by the natives of this Iland. But both theſe being long ſince decayed, it hath now only a ſmall Village towards the North, with an Haven to it; inhabited by *Greeks*, as is all the reſt of the Iland : ſuch *Chriſtian Slaves* as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks* in digging Marble for their *Moſques*, and other buildings, being only ſojourners, not houſe-keepers, and therefore not accompted amongſt the Inhabitants. Here is alſo in this *Propontick* Sea, the Iſle of *Cyzicus*, but being it is on *Aſia* ſide, we ſhall there ſpeak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a leſſer Chanel, is called *Helleſpont*, from *Helle*, daughter to *Athamas*, King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous *ſtreight* did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a bridge of boats to paſs into *Greece* : which when a ſuddain tempeſt had ſhrewdly battered, he cauſed the Sea to be beaten with 300 ſtripes; and caſt a pair of *Fetters* into it, to make it know to whom it was ſubject. *Xerxes* in this expedition waſted over an Army conſiſting of two millions, and 154710 fighting men, in no leſs than 2208 bottoms of all ſorts. When all the *Perſians* ſoothed the King in the unconquerablenes of his forces; *Artabanus* told him that he feared no enemies but the Sea and the Earth; the one yielding no ſafe harbour for ſuch a Navy; the other, not yielding ſufficient ſubſiſtence for ſo multitudinous an army. His return over this *Helleſpont* was as dejected, as his paſſage magnificent; his Fleet being ſo broken by the valour of the *Greeks*, and the fury of the ſea : that for his more ſpeedy flight, he was compelled to make uſe of a poor fiſher-boat. Neither yet was his paſſage ſecure; For the boat being overburdened, had ſunk all, if the *Perſians* by caſting away themſelves, had not ſaved the life of their King. The loſſe of which noble ſpirits ſo vexed him, that having given the *Steerſman* a golden Coronet, for preſerving his own life : he commanded him to execution, as a Co-author of the death of his ſervants. It is now called the *Caſtles*, or *the ſea of the two Caſtles*; which two Caſtles ſtand one on *Europe*, the other on *Aſia* ſide; in the Towns of *Seſtos*, and *Abydos*. Theſe Caſtles commonly by the Turks called *Dardanelli*, are exceeding well built, and abundantly furniſhed with munition. They ſearch and examine all Ships that paſs that way : they receive the *Grand Signeurs* cuſtoms, and are in effect the principal ſtrength of *Conſtantinople*. At theſe Caſtles, all Ships muſt ſtay three days; to the end, that if any *Slave* be run away from his maſter, or thieves have ſtolen any thing, they may be in that place purſued and apprehended. So that theſe Caſtles are as it were the out-works of *Conſtantinople* to defend it from all invaſions, and from any forces which may come unto it by Sea, out of the *Mediterranean*; As for the ſafety thereof, from ſuch as may find paſſage out of the *Euxine*, there are ſituate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Boſphorus* the two ſtrong Caſtles, the one above *Conſtantinople* on *Europe* ſide : the other on the *Aſian ſhore*, which before we ſpake of. No *Europæan* Iſle of note in either Streight. And therefore on unto

The ILANDS of the *ÆGEAN* SEA.

Helleſpont, after a forty miles courſe, expatiateth its waters in the *Ægean* Seas; ſo called either from *Ægeus*, the father of *Theſeus*, who miſdoubting his ſons ſafe return from the *Minotaure* of *Crete*, here drowned himſelf : or ſecondly, from *Ægæ*, once a principal City, in the prime Iland *Eubœa* : or thirdly, becauſe that the Ilands lie ſcattered up and down like the leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* αἴγες.

The chief Ilands of it are, 1 *Samothrace*, 2 *Thaſſus*, 3 *Imbrus*, 4 *Lemnos*, 5 *Eubœa*, 6 *Salamis*, 7 *Ægina*,

Lemnos. 7 *Ægina*, 8 the *Cyclades*, 9 the *Sporades*, and 10 *Cythera*: all which, especially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Ilands* of the *Arches*; the Sea being by the *Mariners* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness, compared unto the narrow Seas which lie about it.

I. *SAMOTHRACE* is a small Iland opposite to the Coast of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called *quasi Samos Thraciæ*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle* writing of the Common-weal of these *Samo-Thracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucosia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Saus*, the son of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter M. being interposed. It is now called *Samandrachi*, plentiful in Honey, and Wild Deer, and better stored with commodious harbours, than other in these Seas. It hath a town of the same name with the Iland, situate on an high hill on the North part hereof, over-looking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infesting of these Seas, in a manner desolate.

II. *THASSUS*, another little Iland on the same Coast, opposite to the influx of the River *Nessus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria*, and *Æthria*; by *Ptolemy*, *Thalassia*; at the present, *Thasse*. In compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, sufficiently fruitfull, well repleniſhed with woods, and yielding good store of the best Wines. Mountainous in some places, but those mountains fraught with *Quarries* of excellent *Marble*, which the *Romans* called *Thassian*, from the Iland: and in the times of *Philip*, and *Alexander* the *Great*, so rich in Mines of useful metals, that those Kings received yearly 80 talents for their *Customs* of them. It hath one town of the same name with the Iland, situate on a large plain in the north part of it; bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an *Haven* to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two towns more, each of them situate on an hill; but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authors.

III. *IMBRUS*, another small Iland, now named *Lembro*, is situate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian Chersonese*: in compass about thirty miles, but more long then broad, stretching north and south; and distant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Iland mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered plains: in which a town of the same name situate at the foot of the mountain, once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not else observable.

IV. *LEMNOS*, an Iland of more note, lyeth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous fall of *Vulcan*; who being but an homely brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great passion thrown out of Heaven, and falling on this Iland, came to get his halting. Howsoever, he was antiently worshipped by the people hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. In compass about an hundred miles, but more long than broad, extended from the East to the West: on every side well furnished with convenient *Creeks*, and some pretty Havens; by which the want of Rivers is in some sort recompensed.

The Country for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Ilands, but otherwise swelled with rising mountainets; the enterposed valleys being very fruitful of wheat, pulse, wine, flesh, cheese, wool, flax, linnen, and all other necessaries, only wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good fishing on the Sea-coast, for their use and sustenance; and in some parts *Hot-baths* for health and medicine. But the chief riches of this Iland is in a *Mineral Earth* here digged, of excellent Vertue for curing wounds, stopping of fluxes, expulsing poisons, preservative against infections, and the like: called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place; and *Terra Sigillata*, from the seal or *Character* imprinted on it. For being made up into small pellets, and sealed with the *Turks* Character or *Signet*, it is then, (not before) sold unto the *Merchants*; by whom dispersed over most parts of the *Christian* world. Upon the sixt of *August* yearly they goe to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious preparations: brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Iland; and still continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one hill only where it groweth, the top whereof being opened, they discover the vein, resembling the casting up of worms; and having gathered as much of it that day, as the *Priests* think fit, it is closed again; certain bags of it being sent to the *Grand Signeur* yearly, the residue *sealed* up, and sold to the forein Merchant.

But to return to the *Topographie* of the place, the eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the western very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*; who being Lords of the whole Iland, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Diospolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Iland, as large and well-peopled now, as ever formerly, but of no great estimation, when it was at the best: seated upon an high hill looking over the Sea; with a handsom market-place, on which mount *Athos* casts a shadow, though distant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name, called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2 The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephæstias*, memorable for the temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæstiades*; since desolate and destroyed, and a new town built in the place of it, being called *Chochino*. This town not great, but of a reasonable strength,

ſtrength, memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance, which a notable *Virago* named *Marulla*, made againſt the *Turks*, in the time of *Mahomet* the *Great*; the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Iland. For ſuddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpoſe to ſurpriſe this town, they found more reſiſtance at the gates than they did expect: none more commended than this Maiden, who ſeeing her Father ſlain, took up ſuch weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, untill the reſt of the Citizens wakened with the *Alarum*, came unto her reſcue and forced the enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the hil on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell; more eminent for the *mineral earth* here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a *Labyrinth* to have ſtood in the dayes of old, little inferiour unto thoſe of *Crete* or *Egypt*; the ruines of it ſo decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3 The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their *Oriſons* on the ſixt day of *Auguſt*, before their gathering of the Earth, ſo often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Thoas*, the ſon of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whoſe time the women of the Iland upon ſome diſpleaſure murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preſerved by *Hypſiſſe* his daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jaſon* with the *Argonautes* were ſo kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almoſt forgot their intended expedition for the Golden Fleece; ſhe her ſelf being gat with Child by *Jaſon* at his being there, the other women probably following her example. Following the fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at laſt under the power of the *Conſtantinopolitan* or *Eaſtern* Emperors; In the ſubverſion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Weſtern Chriſtians (of which more hereafter) it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year 1463. or thereabouts. *Eubœa.*

Beſides theſe on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, there are alſo ſome of leſs note on the ſhores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are 1 *Peparinthus*, as *Ptolemy*; *Euonus*, as *Pliny* calls it; containing about 40 miles in compaſſe: now, called *Sarquius*, as *Caſtaldus*, or *Limene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eaſtern part with a Caſtle built upon a Rock. Others of leſſe note are, 2 *Scyathos*, now *Scyati*; 3 *Scopelos*, 4 *Alloneſus*, 5 *Cicynethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6 *Dromus*, of which little memorable. All which, together with thoſe formerly deſcribed on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, being but the *Acceſſories* of the ſeveral *Continents*, upon which they border; followed the fortune of the *Principall*, and were conquered in them.

V. *EUBOEA* known to the antients by the names of *Macris*, and *Abantis*; to the moderns, by that of *Necropont*; frontireth all along the Coaſt of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in fertility: one part hereof, torn away from it by an *Earth-quake*, and lying ſtill ſo near unto it; that between the Iland and the *Continent* is only a little *Euripus*, which ebbeth and floweth ſeven times in one day. The reaſon of which, when *Ariſtotle* could not find, it is ſaid, that he threw himſelf in the Sea, with theſe words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me.* In this Iland is the Promontory *Capareus*, where *Nauplius*, the father of *Palamedes*, placed his falſe fires, to the deſtruction of ſo many *Greeks*. For underſtanding how his ſon *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been ſlain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherouſly circumvented by the policy of *Ulyſſes*, and *Diomedes*: he conceived ſuch a diſpleaſure againſt the whole hoſt of the *Grecians*, that he intended their general deſtruction. To this end he cauſed fires to be made on the tops of the moſt dangerous and unacceſſible rocks, in this whole Iland: which the *Greeks* taking (according to the cuſtom of the time) to have been the marks of ſome ſafe Haven, made thitherward; and were there miſerably caſt away, there periſhing 200 Ships, and many thouſand men. But when *Nauplius* underſtood how *Diomedes* and *Ulyſſes*, whoſe ruine he principally intended, were eſcaped; he drowned himſelf for very vexation, in this very ſame place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius* ſon, is ſaid to have invented four of the *Greek* Letters, *viz.* θ, χ, ξ, φ; to have firſt inſtituted *Sentinels* in an Army, and to be the firſt inventer of the *Watch-word*.

It is in length 150 miles, ſtretched out from the North-weſt, to the South-eaſt, in bredth, not above twenty, where it is broadeſt; the whole compaſs 365 *Italian* miles. The Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not only for greatneſs, but for fertility and ſtrength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit, and wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours, and capacious *Bayes*, and thoſe well fortified: watred alſo with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Neleus*; two Rivers of ſo ſtrange a nature, that if a ſheep drink of the former, his wool turneth *white*, but *coal-black*, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a ſtone called *Amianthus*, which is drawn into threed like hemp, and good cloth made of it: which, when it is ſtained, in ſtead of being ſent unto the *Fullers*; is thrown into the fire, and ſo cleanſed. But whether this be ſo, or not (for I put it only upon hear-ſay) certain it is, that it was once enriched with *Mines* both of Braſſe, and Iron, though thoſe now decayed; and *Quarries* of pure *Marble*; which continue ſtill.

The Iland, before it was conquered by the Turks, was very populous: but the people moſt delighted to live in Villages; the Cities or walled towns being only three. 1. *Cariſto*, anciently *Caryſtus*, with little or no variation, but by *Plinie* called *Ægea*, and *Chironia*; memorable for its marble quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Caryſtiæ*. 2 *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the Turks, *Eribos*, ſeated on a plain near the waters ſide, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay, called the *Golf of Negropont*; a populous, ſtrong, and wealthy City, ſo fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgement of moſt men, it was held invincible, when the *Turks* firſt ſate down before it. Nor was it purchaſed by the *Turk* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Conſtantinople* undertook the buſineſs) at a lower price, than the loſſe of forty thouſand men, who were ſpent upon it; but taken at the

Salamis. the laſt, and the people put unto the ſword, without conſideration of Sex, or Age. A town in former times of ſo great wealth and power, that it ſent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia* (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as alſo into *Sicil*, and ſome parts of *Italy*: and had a ſtrong influence on the affairs of *Achaia* alſo, as being ſituate near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a bridge. When it was in the hands of the K. of *Macedon*, this town, together with *Demetrias* in *Theſſaly*, and the Caſtle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the fetters of *Greece*: inſomuch, that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the father of *Perſeus*, to ſet the *Grecians* at liberty; the *Grecians* made anſwer, that in vain was their *liberty* reſtored them, unleſs theſe three towns were firſt diſmantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Lawes, in memory of that benefit, they refuſed to declare againſt them in behalf of *Antiochus*; who thereupon made himſelf maſter of the town, and conſequently of the Iland. But forced to leave the place upon the loſs of the battel at *Thermopylæ*, it became free again; til finally made ſubject unto *Rome*, with the reſt of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eaſtern Empire. In the diviſion whereof amongſt the *Latines*, it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*; who from hence uſed with their Gallies to infeſt the ſhores of *Turkie*, and diſturb their trade. Provoked wherewith, eſpecially with their taking of *Ænus* a City of *Thrace*, under the conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that enterpriſe had took 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Iland: *Mahomet* the *Great* reſolves upon the conqueſt of it; and with a puiſſant Army ſets before the Town. And though it coſt him dear, yet at laſt he got it, and therewith all the Iſland alſo, which depended on the fortunes of it, *An.* 1471.

VI. *SALAMIS* is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the overthow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes*, by the *Athenians*, and their confederates. What was the number of the ſouldiers and gallies of the *Perſian* ſide hath been already declared. The *Grecian* fleet conſiſted of no more than 270 veſſels, whereof 127 were rigged and ſet forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only; the reſt by the *aſſociates*. Yet was the *admiralty* committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common ſafety, before an unſeaſonable contention for priority. The *Spartans* ſeeing the inequality of forces, intended not to have hazarded the battel, but with full ſail to have retired to *Peloponneſus*, into which country the *Perſians* had made incurſions; reſpecting more the welfare of their own country yet defenſible, than the deſperate eſtate of *Attica*. This deſign was by *Themiſtocles* (as careful for the eſtate of *Athens*, as they for *Sparta*) ſignified to *Xerxes*: who getting between them and home, compelled them to a neceſſity of fighting; but to his own ruine. For in the conflict more than 200 of his ſhips were ſunk, and moſt of the reſt taken; the *confederates* having loſt of their Navy, forty onely. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenſes* were many contentions for this Iland; the fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the ſame name, the royal ſeat of *Telamon* the father of *Ajax*, ſo famous in the warre of *Troy*: more memorable for giving birth to *Solon* the *Legiſlator* of *Athens*, one of the ſeven wiſe men of *Greece*.

VII. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engie*, an Iland ſituate over againſt *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*: hence called *Golfo di Engia*, the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his juſtice and integrity one of the three *Judges of Hell*: the other two being his brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but took this name from *Ægina* the daughter of *Aſopus* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is ſaid to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people hereof are properly called *Æginenſes*, and *Æginetæ*, much ſpoken of in the wars of *Athens*, from which diſtant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very ſtony, but good for barley, of which very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving people, to whom they gave in thoſe days the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Iland being alſo called *Myrmydonia*) *quod formicarum more terram foderent*, becauſe *Emmet-like*, they digged up and under the earth, to make it the more fit for tillage; and dwelt at firſt in *Caves* without any houſes. Hence the occaſion of the fable of turning *Emmets* into men at the prayers of *Æacus*; both tale and people, after (I know not how) carryed into *Theſſaly*, where before we found them.

VIII. The *CYCLADES*, ſo called becauſe they lie in a *circle* round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are alſo called the *Ilands* of the *Arches*, becauſe they are in the ſea called *Archipelago*. They ſtand ſo cloſe together, that in a clear day a man may ſee 20 of them at a time; for which cauſe it is with good reaſon accounted to be a dangerous place for ſaylers in a ſtorm. The chief of theſe *Cyclades*, are 1 *DELOS*, *quaſi* Δῆλος, ſignifying *apparent*, becauſe when all the earth had abjured the receipt of *Latona*, at the requeſt of *Juno*; this Iland then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her; and in it was ſhe delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus *Ovid*,

——— *Erratica* Delos
Errantem accepit, tunc cum levis inſula nabat,
Illic incumbens, ſub Palladas *arbore, palma*;
Edidit, invita, Geminos Latona, *noverca.*

Unſetled *Delos* floating on the wave,
A little Iland entertainment gave
To wandring *Laton*, ſpight of *Juno*'s head,
Under *Minerva*'s Palm-tree brought to bed.

Nota-

Notable also is this Iland for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a custom, neither permitting men to die, or children to be born in it; but sending sick men, and great-bellied women to *Rhene*, a small Iland, and not much distant. By a more antient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets both *Greek* and *Latines*. The chief town of it called also *Delos*, is situate on a plain environed with rocks, near the hill called *Cynthus*: whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Iland. In this town had *Apollo* both his Temple, and *Oracle*, delivered here more plainly than in other places, and for that reason (as some say) called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* signifying *manifest* or apparent: made famous by the resort of people from all places hither, especially from the neighbouring Ilands; who sent yearly multitudes of men, and troops of *Virgins*, to celebrate his solemnities with herds of *Sacrifices*. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the trade of *Corinth* hither; that town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the *Merchant*; partly by reason of the immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. Continuing in great wealth and power, til *Mithridates* laid it waste; and at last on the ceasing of *Oracles*, utterly forsaken. Both Town and Iland now called *Diles*. By which name also *Rhene* an adjoyning Iland (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polycrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the least in name. *Cyclades.*

2. *TENOS*, by *Aristotle* called *Hydrusa*, by some *Ophiussa*, by the Moderns, *Tyna*. The chief Town of it of the same name; so called from one *Tenes* the builder of it, and giving name unto the Iland. Memorable for a fountain called *Dipnosus*, of which *Aristotle* and *Athenæus* do both affirm, that the waters will not mix with wine. The only Iland of this sea, which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*; the rest being subject to the *Turk*; deserving therefore the first place in our description of those Ilands that incompass *Delos*; though antiently

3. *ANDROS*, (*prima inter Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Cauron*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at last *Andros*; from *Andrus* the son of *Eurymachus*, who founded the chief town in it, of the same name also. Memorable for a pleasant fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof, on the *nones* of *January* yearly, had the tast of wine. It still retains the name of *Andros*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nicsia*, one of the biggest of the pack, as being about 80 miles in compass. In antient times called *Veneris insula*, or the Iland of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionysia*, by reason of its abundance of Wine, and the goodness of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionysius*: From its wonderful plenty of Wheat, called by some *Sicilia minor*, or the *lesser Sicil*; but at last *Naxos* from one *Naxos*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* hither. But notwithstanding this new name, *Bacchus* did still retain the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theseus* had left upon the *Rocks*: whose *Coronet* or Chaplet being by his means made one of the heavenly *Constellations*, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Iland; though commonly by Astronomers, *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The women of this Iland are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth moneth; as *Bacchus* was; more certainly famous in true storie for the beauty and fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent *Marble* called *Ophitis*, or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapred with blew or purple spots, in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Ilands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino*, a *Patritian*, or Gentleman of that City, (as they did divers of the rest on other *Undertakers*) from whom it came to the Noble family of the *Crispos*, who held it til the year 1572. when *James* the last of that house lost it to *Selymus* the second.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Iland into which the *Romans* used to banish *delinquents*: hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*,

> *Aude aliquid brevibus* Gyaris, *vel carcere dignum,*
> *Si vis esse aliquid; probitas laudatur, & alget.*
>
> If thou intend'st to thrive, do what deserves
> Short *Gyaros*, or *Gives*: prais'd vertue sterves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Paria*, by some of the Antients called *Pactia*; by others, *Minois*; but obtained this new name from *Parus*, a son of *Jason*: memorable for quarries of the whitest *Marble*, of which commonly the *Statuas* of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. In compass about 50 miles, running in a long Plain from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North; once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careless of keeping their promises and contracts: whence παροιμιάζειν, grew into a *by-word*, applyed to those who made no reckoning of their promises. There is now a town in it called *Cephalo*, but of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, opposite to *Magnesia* in *Asia Minor*, famous for the birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*,

Cyclades. and that it was the lurking place of *Achilles*. For his mother *Thetis* being forewarned by an *Oracle*, that he ſhould be ſlain in the *Trojan* war, ſent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Iland; where he was brought up in womans attire among the Kings daughters, and deemed a *Virgin*; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the Kings daughter, it was proved to be otherwiſe. Others relate that *Ulyſſes* diſcovered him by a wile, who coming thither like a *Pedler* or Petit-Merchant, with *armes*, and other ware to avoid diſtruſt; expoſed his Merchandiſe to the view of the Damoſels: and that the other Ladies falling on the *tires* and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the *Spear* and *Shield*. Which when *Ulyſſes* had obſerved, he made him leave that Company, and away for *Troy*. The handſomneſs of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus,

Conſcia venturi genitrix Nereia *fati*
Diſſimulat cultu na: um; *& deceperat omnes;*
In quibus Ajacem, *ſumptæ fallacia veſtis.*
Arma ego fœmineis animum motura virilem
Mercibus inſerui, &c.

Thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys* in his Tranſlation of the *Metamorphoſis*:

The whole deſign in Order to relate,
Thetis fore-knowing great *Achilles* fate,
Diſguiz'd her ſon, ſo like a *Virgin* dreſt,
That all miſtook, and *Ajax* with the reſt.
When *Arms*, with womens trifles, which might blind
Suſpect, I brought to tempt a manly mind.
Yet was the *Heros* Virgin-like araid;
Who taking up the *Shield* and *Spear*, I ſaid,
O Goddeſſe-born, for thee the fate of *Troy*
Her fall reſerves; why doubtſt thou to deſtroy
Great *Pergamus*! then made him d'off thoſe weeeds,
And ſent the mighty unto mighty deeds.

There is another of this name, betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the *Scene* of this action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that the greater:) to which the ſituation of it amongſt the reſt of thoſe Ilands, where reigned ſo many of the *Greek Kings* intereſſed in the war of *Troy*, ſeems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in thoſe dayes, ſo much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, ſituate betwixt *Crete*, and *Peloponneſus*, and equally diſtant from them both: the Promontories of *Scylleum* in the one, and that of *Dyctymeum* in the other, ſhooting out againſt it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Biblus*, a town of that country, gave that name unto it: called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philoſopher, hence ſurnamed *Melius*, but more properly Ἄθεος, or the *Atheiſt*: the firſt who in thoſe dark times of ignorance, abſolutely denyed that there was a God. *Protagoras Deos in dubium vocavit*, Diagoras *excluſit*, ſaith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compaſs. The ſoyl ſufficiently fruitful in corn and oyl, but defective in wine. Here is great plenty of *marble* curiouſly beſpotted, and no ſmall ſtore of *milſtones*; as alſo great quantities of pitch, and brimſtone, and ſome ſulphury or hot ſprings, good for many diſeaſes. The chief town of it called *Milo* alſo.

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the education of *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Danæ*. It is reported of this Iland, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but ſuch as are brought from other places, keep their natural tone: from whence *Proverbially*, ſilent and ſullen perſons were called *Ranæ Seriphiæ*. It is now called *Serphena*, a ſtony and rocky Iland, and hath a town of the ſame name.

10. *CI*, by ſome called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, oppoſite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compaſs about 50 miles; made towards the Weſt in faſhion of a *Creſcent* or half-Moon. Mountainous and hilly, except towards the North. By *Pliny* ſaid to have been torn from *Eubœa* by a ſudden violence of the Sea, many men periſhing in the waters. Of old times beautified with three fair townes, 1 *Julis*, 2 *Carthæa*, and 3 *Careſſus*; of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whoſe names occurre amongſt the Antients, as *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12 *Cythnus*, now *Cauro*; 14 *Syphnus*, now *Stfino*; 15 *Therafia* or *Theuſia*, now *Santorini*; 16 *Cimolis*, called formerly *Echinuſa*, but now *Polino*; 17 *Olyarus*, now *Quiminio*; 18 *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 19 *Polyegros*, now *Falconara*; 20 *Amurgos*, now *Murgo*, one of the biggeſt of them all, but not elſe obſervable.

The *SPORADES*, ſo called from σπείρω, *ſpargo*, *eo quod in mari ſparſæ ſunt, & non in* circulum *coactæ*, becauſe they lie diſperſed and ſcattered; not formed into a *Circle*, as the *Cyclades* are. In

number

number twelve, *viz.* 1 *Anaphe*, ſo called by the *Argonautes*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀναφανείσης σκοτώσης, becauſe the Moon did ſuddenly, and beyond her natural courſe, appear unto them, then grievouſly diſtreſſed by tempeſt. *Apollo* worſhipped here, is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now called *Nimſio*. 2 *Aſtypalea*, now *Stampalia*, in compaſs 88 miles; by ſome of the *Antients* called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *table of the Gods*. In *Aſtypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worſhipped, from hence ſometimes called *Aſtypaleus*. 3 *Helene*, ſo called from that fair *Greek Dame*, whom *Paris* is here ſaid to have firſt deflowred; now called *Macroniſo*. 4 *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is ſaid to have been buried: But others find his grave at *Naxos*, and ſome at *Chios*; the difference being almoſt as great about the place of his *burial*, as the place of his birth. Then are 5 *Laguſa*, 6 *Phocuſa*, 7 *Phacaſia*, 8 *Philocandros*, 9 *Schinuſa*, 10 *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or ſtory. And finally *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calliſte*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the ſon of *Auteſion*, conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Minyans*, (theſe laſt of *Theſſaly*) caſt out of *Lemnos* by *Pelaſgus*: in memory of whom, as the founder of their name and Nation, the Ilanders uſed to celebrate an Annual Feaſt. A ſedition after happening amongſt this people, the weaker partie under the conduct of one *Battus*, admoniſhed ſo to do by the *Oracle* of *Apollo*, paſſed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*: the birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who aſcribes his Original to this Iſland, as himſelf thus witneſſeth. *Sporades.*

Καλλίστη μεν πάτρωϊς, τὸ δ' ὕστερον ὄνομα Θήρη,
Μήτης ἐμοὶ πατρίδος ἠμαθόεσσα.

That is to ſay:

Calliſte, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Country, the *Originall.*

X. *CYTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lyeth in the bottom of this Sea, not above five miles diſtant from *Capo Malo* in *Peloponneſus*; formerly called *Porphyris* from the abundance of *Marble*, whereof the Iland yeelds good plenty. In compaſſe about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful ſoyl, and many Havens, but thoſe ſmall, and unſafe, and very difficult of entrance: environed on all ſides with rocks, of themſelves inacceſſible, by which defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have ſuffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it; to whom it fell in the diviſion of the ſpoil amongſt the *Latines*, ſo often ſpoken of before. It had a Town of the ſame name; ſome two furlongs from the Haven ſtood the Temple of *Venus*, (the antienteſt dedicated to that godeſs which the *Grecians* had) and therein her *Statua* in complete Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the ruines whereof are ſtill to be ſeen) was *Helen* the wife of *Menelaus*, willingly raviſhed by *Paris* the ſon of *Priam*; but not enjoyed by him, til he had brought her to a ſmall Iſland of the *Sporades*, by her name called *Helene*, as before is ſaid. From the devotions of this people paid ſo duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*; by which often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil.*

Parce metu Cytherea, *manent immota tuorum*
Fata tibi.

That is to ſay:

Drive fear fair *Cytherea* from thy mind,
Thou thy ſons Fate immovable ſhall find.

And ſo I paſs from the *Ægean* to the *Cretan* Sea, obſerving this only by the way, that moſt of the 69 Kings, which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the warre of *Troy*, were Kings only of theſe ſmall Ilands; or elſe of other places as inconſiderable for wealth and potencie: every ſmall town and territorie having in thoſe early times, amongſt the *Grecians* (when *ambition* had not taught the great ones to devour the leſs) a peculiar King.

The ILANDS of the *CRETAN* SEAS.

The *CRETAN SEA* is properly that part of the *Ægean* or *Ionian* Seas, which lieth about the ſhores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the command and power thereof: as in thoſe times, the Sea about *Carpathos*, another Iſle of the *Ægean*, had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; though ſituate in the *Ægean* alſo. The Iſles hereof are 1 *Crete*, 2 *Claudi*, 3 *Dia*, and 4 *Letoa*: for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolemie* amongſt the Ilands which adjoin on *Crete*, have been alreadie ſpoken of amongſt the *Cyclades*, in the accompt whereof they paſſe by conſent of Writers.

1 *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Carpathian* Sea; on the Weſt, the *Ionian*; on the North, the *Ægean*; on the South, the *African* or *Libyck*. In form extending Eaſt and Weſt, with three points or *Promontories*, whereof that towards the Eaſt, called antiently *Samonium*, is now called *Cabo di Salamone*; that on the South-weſt, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermea*, now

Crete. *Capo Grabaſſe*; and finally that on the Northweſt towards *Peloponneſus*, of old called *Cimarus*, and now *Capo Cheſtin*. This laſt directly oppoſite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being ſo troubleſom and tempeſtuous, eſpecially on *Laconia* ſide, that at laſt it grew into an ordinary *caveat*, *Maleam prætervectus obliviſcatur quæ ſunt domi*, viz. that he which was to ſail by the point of *Malea*, ſhould lay aſide the care of all other matters, and attend his preſent ſafety only.

It hath in ſeveral Ages, and in ſeveral Authors, obtained ſeveral names: by *Homer* and *Euſtathius* called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it; by *Plinie* and *Solinus*, *Macaros* and *Macaroneſos*, that is to ſay, the *happy Iland*, from the goodneſs of the ſoil, and temper of the Air. By *Stephanus*, *Idæa*, from *Ida*, a famous Mountain of it; by *Giraldus*, *Telchionia*, from the *Telchini*, the Prieſts of *Cybele*, who was here had in great requeſt. At the preſent, *Candie*, either *à candore*, from the *whiteneſs* of the rocks wherewith environed; or from *Candie* the *Metropolis* or chief town thereof. But the general name, which hath prevailed moſt in all ſorts of writers, is that of *Crete*, ſo called *quaſi Curcta*, by a *Syncope*, or abbreviation from the *Curetes*, the firſt inhabitants hereof: who together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini*, were the Prieſts of *Cybele*, the principal godeſs of this Iland; and they ſo called ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *tonſure*, or ſhaving of the head. A cuſtom much in uſe amongſt the Prieſts of ſome of the *Pagan* Deities, and poſſibly enough from them tranſmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this *Etymologie* I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Crete*, the ſon of *Jupiter*, and the Nymph *Idea*; or from *Crete*, the daughter of *Heſperus*: though both theſe have their Authors alſo. Nor dare I to reject the conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the *Etymons* of moſt people from the *Punick* language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be deſcended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philiſtins*, well known in Scripture: the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans*, is no difficult paſſage. But in my mind his conjecture is better than his proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience, that the chief arms of the *Philiſtins*, were their *Bow* and *Arrows*, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* antiently were expert at thoſe weapons alſo: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the race of the *Philiſtins*, than that almoſt all Nations elſe had the ſame Original; the *Bow* and *Arrows* being the ordinary weapons of moſt people formerly, til cuſtom and experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himſelf acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate tractates.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is ſituate under the beginning of the fourth *climate*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter. And in relation to the earth, ſet in the middle of the Sea, at ſo even a diſtance from *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, as if naturally deſigned to be what *Ariſtotle* hath pleaſed to call it, the *Lady* and *Miſtreſs of the Sea*. For it is diſtant from *Peloponneſus*, an hundred miles, as many from *Aſia the leſſe*, and not above 150 from the ſhores of *Africk*: So verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis *magni medio jacet inſula* Ponto.

Joves birth-place Crete, a fruitful land,
In the middle of the Sea doth ſtand.

It is in length 270. in breadth 50 miles, in compaſs about 590. The ſoil is very fruitful, eſpecially of wines which we call *Muſcadels*, of which they tranſport yearly 12000 *Buts*: together with Sugar-Candie, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orenges, Lemmons, Raiſons, Melons, Citrons, Pomgranats. Yet as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in corn; the moſt or greateſt part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponneſus*.

The Iland is very populous, inſomuch that it is thought that upon any ſudden occaſion, the *Seigneury* of *Venice* can raiſe in it 60000 men able to bear arms. The people have formerly been good ſea-faring men; a vertue commaculated with many vices, which they yet retain, as envie, malice, and lying: to which laſt ſo infinitely addicted, that an horrible lye was called proverbially *Cretenſe mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a native of this Iland, whoſe words thus cited by S. *Paul* in that to *Titus*, *cap.* 1. *v.* 12.

Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί.

The *Cretans* alwayes lyers are;
Unruly beaſts, of labour ſpare.

To which this Proverb may be added, *viz.* Τρία Καππὰ κάκιστα, that is to ſay, There are three Nations whoſe names begin with the letter K, worſe than any others; *viz.* Καππαδόκαι, Κρῆτες, Κίλικες, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though ſome I know apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the ſame letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are ſick of their old diſeaſes, as great Lyers, and as idle as ever formerly; covetous withall, and very ſubtile, impatient of labour, and not caring to learn any ſcience perfectly: only well practiſed in ſhooting, to which accuſtomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the *Turks* themſelves.

The language generally ſpoken is the *Greek* tongue, though the Gentleman and Merchant by reaſon of their dependence on the State of *Venice*, ſpeak *Italian* alſo. Both languages uſed alſo in divine

vine offices; the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* service uſed alſo in many places, ſince the ſubjection of this Iland to the *Venetians*. Converted firſt unto the faith by S. *Paul* the Apoſtle, who having planted the Goſpel of life amongſt them, left the *watering* of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Biſhop of this Iſle: recommending unto him the care of the Churches there, with power of *Ordination* and *Eccleſiaſtical cenſure*, as appears clearly by the Text. Which power, that it belonged to *Titus* as Biſhop, and not their *Evangeliſt* only, is affirmed expreſly, not only by the ſubſcription of the ſaid Epiſtle, where he is plainly called ὁ Κρητῶν ἐκκλησίας πρῶτος Ἐπίσκοπος, the firſt Biſhop of the Church of the *Cretans*: but by the concurrent teſtimonies of *Euſeb. Eccl. Hiſt. l.3. c.4. S. Ambr. in præfat. ad Tit. S. Hieron. in Tit. c. 1. v. 5.* and in his tract *de Scriptor. Eccleſiaſticis*. *Theodoret* cited by *Oecumen. in præfat. ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himſelf in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact*, in his preface to the ſame Epiſtle. All which in plain terms call him *Biſhop*, and the Biſhop of *Crete*; according to that ſenſe and meaning of the word *Epiſcopus*, as it was uſed in their times diſtinct from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof whileſt wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchs was governed by four Archbiſhops, and 21 Biſhops. But ſince the ſubjection of this Iland to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbiſhop, which is he of *Candie* the chief City, and eight Biſhops only: beſides the titular Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who hath there his reſidence; ſome Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been alwaies honoured with that empty title, ever ſince the recovery of that City from the Weſtern *Chriſtians*. *Crete.*

Famous was this Iland amongſt the Antients for many things, memorized both by the *Poets* and old *Hiſtorians*. For here reigned *Saturn* in the firſt ages of the World, father of *Jupiter*, born here, and ſecretly nurſed in the hill called *Ida*. For ſeeing that by the compact betwixt *Saturn* and his brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own life only, but all his male children to be murdered as ſoon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and ſecretly nurſed in Mount *Ida*, as before was ſaid: the crying of the Infant being drowned by the noiſe of loud-ſounding Cymbals, purpoſely uſed by his *Rockers* to avoid diſcovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes* or Prieſts of *Cybele*, uſed in her ſacrifices the like *muſical* inſtruments, continually ſounding, and withall ſhaking of their heads (like *Fidlers*) in an *antick* and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*.

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *ære canoro*
Luſtravit Corybas.

That is to ſay:

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou waſt born, did on his *Cymbal* play.

Here alſo lived *Minos* and *Radamanthus*, whoſe Laws were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*; and who for their equitie on earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Æacus*) the *Judges in Hell*. In this Iland alſo lived the lewdly-luſtful *Paſiphae*, wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who they ſay, begat on her the *Minotaure*: *Dædalus* having framed for her an *artificial cow*, into which ſhe conveyed her ſelf, and by that means obtained her deſire. The fable is thus expounded, that *Paſiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos* Secretaries: whoſe company by the *pandariſm* of *Dædalus* ſhe enjoying, was delivered of two ſons; one called *Minos*, the other, *Taurus*. And whereas it is ſaid, that the *Minotaure* was ſlain by *Theſeus*, like enough that the annual tribute of 7 children which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in ſome priſon, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the keepers or jaylors. As for the action of *Paſiphae*, I think it not altogether impoſſible to be true, conſidering how *Domitian*, to verifie the old relation, exhibited the like beaſtly ſpectacle in his *amphitheatre* at *Rome*: for thus ſaith *Martial*.

Junctam Paſiphaen Dictæo, *credite*, Tauro;
Vidimus: *accepit fabula priſca fidem.*
Nec ſe miretur (Cæſar) *longæva vetuſtas*,
Quicquid fama canit, donat arena tibi.

The fable's prov'd a truth; our eyes did ſee
The *Cretan* Bull ſport with *Paſiphae*.
What cauſe hath then *antiquity* to glory?
We ſaw it done, ſhe only heard the ſtory.

Finally, here was the ſo much celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and ſafe keeping of the *Minotaurus*; ſo full of various windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impoſſible for him to come out, but by the help of a clew of threed. By this *Minotaur* (half a man, half bull) the children of the *Athenians* paid yearly to *Minos* in way of tribute, are ſaid to be murdered; til killed by *Theſeus* ſon of *Ægeus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monſter, and gave him the clew of threed before ſpoken of, to conduct him out again: the moral or hiſtorie whereof hath been ſhewn before. Nor muſt it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the *Geographer* who flouriſhed in the time of *Tiberius Cæſar*,

Crete.

Cæſar, was of *Cretan* parents (though born in the City of *Amaſia*, in the Realm of *Pontus*) which adds unto this Iland as much true renown, as any of the fictions or ſtories, (be they which they will) of the former times.

Things moſt obſervable at the preſent are theſe that follow, 1 That it breeds no ſerpents, nor venemous worm, or ravenous or hurtfull creature; ſo that their Sheep graze very ſecurely without any Shepheard. 2 If a woman bite a man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it; which if true, then the laſt part of the privilege foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) muſt needs be falſe. 3 They have an herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he ſhall feel no hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed who ſpeaks it. 4 Here is (beſides many other *medicinal* herbs) that called *Dictamum*, or *Dictamnos*, of eſpecial virtue againſt poiſon, either by way of prevention or preſent cure; peculiar only to this Iland: it affordeth great ſtore of *Laudanum*, a juyce or gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain tree *Ciſto*, of which the mountains yeeld abundance; good to cauſe ſleep, if moderately and carefully taken, but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the laſt ſleep upon a man, out of which not to be awakened, till the ſound of the laſt Trumpet raiſe him.

Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Ida*, now *Pſiloriti*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iland, begirt about with many fair and pleaſant villages, ſheltred by it from the violence of wind and Sun, the hill being ſo high, that from the top hereof both ſides of the Iland may be eaſily ſeen. Here *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been ſecretly nurſed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* uſe to ſhew ſome tracts of the antient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other than the ruines of ſome larger Quarry: the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being ſo defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any ruins of it. 2 *Dicte*, now called *Sethia*, in ſome places *Laſti*, ſo high, that all the winter long it is covered with ſnow; yet all the ſides thereof garniſhed with *Cypreſs* trees; a mountain of ſuch fame, that the whole Iland ſometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dictynna*, the Promontory *Dictynnæum*, and the Herb *Dictamnos*, all ſeeming to take name from hence. 3 *Leuci*, a long chain of hils, ſo named from the whiteneſs of them, now called *De Marara*, and by ſome *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1 *Melipotamus*, 2 *Scaſinus*, 3 *Epicidnus*, and 4 *Divotro*, towards the North; 5 *Populiar*, towards the Eaſt, and 6 *Limens*, towards the Weſt: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of burden, ſcarce of little Barks. But that defect ſupplyed by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many *Creeks* and *Bayes*, ſome capacious Havens, and great ſtore of fiſh, among which a kind of bearded *mullet* reckoned among the delicacies of the antient *Romans*. By the convenience of which *Harbours*, their Fiſh-trade, and the ſituation of it in the midſt of the Sea; the people antiently were eſteemed ſo good *Sea-faring* men, that when the people of thoſe times did tax a man with any incredible report, they uſed to ſay, *Cretenſis neſcit pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no *Sayler*.

In former times there were reckoned in this Iland an hundred Cities, thence called *Hecatompolis*, of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolemie*: for ſo many of their names he gives us. Thoſe of moſt note were 3 *Gnoſſus*, the ſeat-royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne*, the daughter of *Minos*, had the name of *Gnoſſis*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2 *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a Midland City (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apple, which the *Latines* call *Poma Cydonia*, amongſt whom they were in great requeſt, as they are at this day, (though by the name of *Adams apples*) amongſt the *Turks*; the moſt antient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at firſt Colonies of this; for which reaſon it was called commonly *mater urbium*. 3 *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolemie*; *Erythræa*, as the printed Copies of *Florus*, corruptly call it, one of the firſt Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4 *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolemie*, the place in which S. *Paul* left *Trophimus* ſick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20. which happened when the Apoſtle hovered about that coaſt, as is ſaid *Act.* 27. 7, 8. &c. For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Epheſus*, appeareth by his being at *Hieruſalem*, *Act.* 21. 19. and other circumſtances of the ſtory. 5 *Cortyna*, nigh to which ſtood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*: memorable alſo for a reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (near to which it ſtood) of which they made their ſtrongeſt Arrows, by *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Cortynia*; as alſo for a light garment much uſed by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Cortyniam veſtem*, apparelling *Diana* the great *Huntreſs* with it. 6 *Dictamum*, as *Ptolemie*; or *Dictynna*, as *Pliny* cals it, ſo named from the hill *Dicte*, near to which it is ſituate; one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Iland; as 7 *Ampelas*, ſo named from its plenty of vines was upon the South. 8 *Minoa*, a Port Town (now called *Altomara*) ſo named from *Minos*, in the Eaſt; and 9 *Corytus*, on a Promontorie of the ſame name in the Weſt ſide of it.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*, being ſo deſtroyed by time and wars, that the ruines of them are hardly viſible, we muſt behold it in the preſent condition and eſtate thereof: divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities, that is to ſay, 1 *Sittia*, 2 *Candie*, 3 *Rhetimum*, and 4 *Canea*.

In the firſt part called *SITTIA*, lying towards the Eaſt, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Pariſhes, of which ſix only are of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue holding the *Communion* of the Church of *Greece*; the principal whereof are 1 *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by ſome to be the *Ciſteum* of *Ptolemie*; a ſmall Town, but populous and very well fortified. 2 *Gerapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candie*, ſeated on the Sea ſide on a lofty rock, at the bottom whereof is ſaid to be a dangerous whirl-pit, ſuppoſed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolemie*. 3 *S. Macor*, the dwelling place of one of the Biſhops of the *Latines*.

2 In

Crete.

2. In the ſecond part hereof called the Territory of *CANDIE*, lying directly Weſt of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongſt them 99 Pariſh Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of theſe the principal, 1. *Candia*, an Archbiſhops Sea, the *Metropolis* or head City of the Iland, which takes name from hence; ſituate on the North-coaſt hereof towards the *Ægean*, beautified with a ſafe and commodious Haven, and fortified ſo ſtrongly, that it ſeems impregnable; affirmed by ſome to be the *Matium* of the Antients; but I find no ſuch place in *Ptolemie*, or in *Ortelius* his *Theſaurus*. The City fair and large, built for the moſt part of free-ſtone, with low roofes, after the manner of *Italy*, the ſtreets broad and ſpacious: from whence a fair and pleaſant plain leadeth to a place called the *Cave* of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2. *Malviſin*, 3. *Themene*, 4. *Caſtell novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*, of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the territorie of *RHETIMO*, lying North-weſt of the territory of *Candie*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Pariſhes, whereof 36 are *Grecians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are 1. *Rhetimo* in the ſhore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Biſhops Sea; but not elſe obſervable. 2. *Melipotamo*, an Epiſcopal Sea alſo, ſo called of the River *Melipotamos*, on which it is ſeated. 3. *Agiſtiman*, 4. *Mandrus*, 5. *Lappa*, hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and laſt part hereof, being the territorie of *CANEA*, taking up all the Weſt of the Iland, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, diſtributed into 47 Pariſhes: of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church, and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Thoſe of moſt note are 1. *Canea*, built by a Colonie or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentleman on the North Coaſt alſo, ſuppoſed to ſtand in the ſame place where once *Cydon* did; ſecond to none but *Candie* for wealth and beauty, but far before it for the commodiouſneſs of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thouſand good Gallies at a time, and therefore ſtrongly fortified with two Citadels, or Caſtles, on each ſide of the Haven, one; as the door and entrance of the Country. 2. *Chiſamo*, in *Latine* called *Cyſamum*, old and decayed, the wals thereof only holding good againſt the ruines of time, ſituate in a low mooriſh place towards the *Ægean*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a hill on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to *Chiſamo*. 4. *Sfachia*, or *Spachia*, ſituate on the foot of the mountains, of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia* from this Town: unwalled, but fortified with a Caſtle, built for a place of refuge againſt the Incurſions of ſuch *Pirats* as annoyed the Coaſts; in which the Governour for his part hath his chief aboad. By which account it will appear that in the whole Iland are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, 207 Pariſh Churches: of which there be but 48 which are accompted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the ſtory of this Iland, we can aſcend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the ſon of *Uranus* and *Veſta*, or of *Heaven* and *Earth*: who better favoured by his Mother, obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon wars ariſing betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, that *Saturn* for his own life ſhould enjoy the kingdom, which after his deceaſe ſhould return to the *Titans*: and for performance of this contract the ſons of *Saturn* to be ſtrangled as ſoon as born. But *Cybele* the wife of *Saturn* unawares to her husband, preſerved firſt *Jupiter*, and after other of her ſons, which coming to the knowlege of *Titan* and his ſons, they made war againſt *Saturn*, but in concluſion were ſubdued by the aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring againſt the *Gods*, *Saturn*, and *Jupiter* his ſon, being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquiſhed, a new war aroſe betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occaſioned only (as many unnatural wars ſince theſe times have been) by *fears* and *jealouſies*: which ended at the laſt in the flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became ſole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death: and dying was interred at *Gnoſſus*, with this inſcription or Epitaph in old *Greek* letters, ὁ Ζεὺς τοῦ Κρόνου, that is to ſay, *Jupiter, the ſon of Saturn*. After his death worſhipped by the blind *Gentiles*, as the chief of their Gods; and honoured frequently with the title of Πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν τε θεῶν τε, the Father both of Gods and Men, though moſt incongruouſly and abſurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thouſands living, in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed, he being dead, *Minos* begotten by him on *Europa*, ſucceeded here: who wiſely taking the advantage which the convenient ſituation of the Iland gave him, made himſelf *maſter of the Seas*; and afterwards enlarged his Dominions, by the conqueſt of the *Megarenſes* and *Athenians*, upon which laſt he impoſed amongſt other hard conditions, a tribute of ſeven male children yearly, to be kept as *hoſtages*; determined after three years, by the valour and good fortune of *Theſeus*. But *Minos* being ſlain in *Sicil*, and his poſterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themſelves after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, or *Free State*: the Laws and Ordinances whereof firſt deviſed by *Minos*, were of ſuch eſteem, that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large deſcribed by *Ariſtotle* in the 2d. Book of his *Politicks*, ch. 8. Under this government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the reſt of *Greece*, picked a quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his war againſt them, yet *Florus* ſtates the matter rightly, affirming, that the war was undertaken on no other ground, but *ſola nobilem inſulam vincendi cupiditate*, a covetous deſire only of ſubduing ſuch a wealthy Iland. And to this war they went with ſo proud a confidence, that *M. Antony* who commanded in it, carryed more *chains* with him to bring home his Priſoners, than Arms to conquer them. An inſolence which he paid right dear for, his

Navy

Crete. Navy being vanquiſhed by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his ſlain ſouldiers hanged upon the *Maſts*, and himſelf periſhing in the action, by a fit of ſickneſs. *Metellus*, who ſucceeded him in that charge went on more ſucceſsfully, firſt taking *Gnoſſus*, *Eleuthera* (or *Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydonia*, their principal Cities; and not long after all the Iland: uſing the vanquiſhed Ilanders with ſuch inhumanity, that moſt of them poiſoned themſelves to avoid his cruelty: rewarded with no other honour for ſo great a victory, then that he got the ſurname of *Creticus*; his triumph being denied by the faction of *Pompey*, againſt whoſe will he had put himſelf upon that ſervice. Thus added to the *Roman* Empire, it was united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a *Proconſul* till the death of *Nero*: afterwards ſeparated from it, but the time I find not. During the reign of *Conſtantine*, in 36 years together there fell no rain, ſo that this Iland was in a manner wholly deſolated. But *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine* having obtained rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by ſeveral Colonies brought out of *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoyning. By *Conſtantine* made a Province of the Dioceſe of *Macedonia*, it continued a member of the Eaſtern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when ſubdued by the *Saracens*: from whom recovered under the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire *Anno* 963. In the diviſion of the ſpoil amongſt the *Latines*, it was firſt given to *Boniface*, Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, by whom ſurrendred willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be poſſeſſed of all the Ilands of that Empire: he being recompenſed with the Kingdom of *Theſſalie*, the fair and wealthy City of *Theſſalonica*, and many Towns and territories in *Peloponneſus*. Under that State it ſtill continueth, in vain attempted by *Selymus* the ſecond, in the year 1571. at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*: and gallantly defended for this year laſt paſt, againſt all the forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Signeur. What the ſucceſs of this war will be we ſhall ſee hereafter.

For the defence hereof againſt the inſurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at firſt ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are ſome ſtanding forces kept in conſtant pay; beſides ſuch as are maintained in ſeveral Garriſons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer than ſix companies of ſouldiers; *Candie* 2000 ſouldiers, and the leſſer Cities proportionably: over which there is ſet ſo ſtrong a guard, that a natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preſervation of their intereſt in it from a forein power, they have furniſhed the Iland with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the ſhores: and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda*, with two ſtrong Caſtles, this Haven being capable of more than 1000 Veſſels, and therefore meritoriouſly reputed the door and entry into the Country. It is reported, that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the ſecond, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven, money more than enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* ſeemed only to intend the retreat and relief of his own Navy, when he ſhould undertake any expedition againſt the *Turk*; yet the wiſe *Venetians* ſaw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he liſted, ſurprize the whole Country.

II. The other Ilands of this Sea, as of leſſer note, will be paſs'd ouer in few words. The firſt of which is called *CLAUDA*, mentioned *Act.* 27. 16. ſituate on the South-weſt of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Plinies* time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*; now called *Golo*, with the Iland. 2. *DIA*, now *Standia*, a very ſmall Iland, and of little note. 3. *LETUA* on the South-eaſt of *Crete*, now called *Chriſtiana*. And 4. *ÆGILIA*, or *Ægialia*, by *Pliny*, *Æglia*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponneſus*; now called *Ceterigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which, and others of leſs note (if leſs may be) there is no more to be ſaid, but that they have always followed the fortunes of *Crete*, on which they ſeem to have their principal dependence.

The ILANDS of the *IONIAN SEA*.

The *IONIAN SEA* is ſo called either from *Ionius*, the ſon of *Dyrachius*, whom *Hercules* having ignorantly killed, threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preſerve his memory, as *Didymus* is of opinion; or from *Iona*, a Region in the extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean*, which lieth from the *Ægean* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which parted about *Epidamnum* (otherwiſe called *Dyrrachium*) as is ſaid by *Ptolemie*: or rather at the ſhooting out of the *Acrocerauneau* hills, as affirmed by *Pliny* and other writers; and ſo along the ſhores of the two *Calabrias*, to the Iſle of *Sicil*. Chief Iſles whereof which paſs in the accompt of *Greece*, (for of thoſe lying on the Coaſt of *Italy* we have ſpoke elſewhere) are 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalenia*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. The *STROPHADES* are two ſmall Ilands, now called *Strivali*, lying againſt *Meſſene* in *Peloponneſus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpies*, ravenous birds, affirmed to have the faces of women, but the talons of *Vultures*, ſent by the offended Gods, (as the fable goeth) for the puniſhment of *Phineus* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the eyes of his ſons by a former wife, at the inſtigation of their *Step-dame*. For which ſo plagued by theſe *Harpyes*, that he could ſet no meat on his Table, whereſoever he was, but theſe ravenous creatures firſt devoured it, and then bewrayed the diſhes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonautes*, whom he had curteouſly entertained, they ſent *Zethus* and *Calais* the winged iſſue of *Boreas* and *Orythia*, who drave them thence, and having purſued them to thoſe Ilands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which fable was con-

contained the ſad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by *Flatterers*, Informers, and falſe accuſers, by whom their name and Government was made diſtaſtful; til by good counſel they had purged their Courts of ſuch ugly monſters: concerning which *Alphonſus* King of *Naples* was uſed to ſay, that theſe *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades, and dwelt at Rome*. They are inhabited only by ſome few *Greek* Friers: and in one of them there is a ſpring of freſh water, which hath his fountain in *Peloponneſus*, and paſſing under the Sea, ariſeth here. The *Greek* Prieſts are called *Caloirs*, *quaſi καλοὶ ἱερεῖς, boni Sacerdotes*. About 30 in number: they wear long hair, never eat fleſh, and but ſeldom fiſh: feeding uſually on herbs, olives, oyl and the like. They never go out of the Ilands, neither do they, on any occaſion, permit women to come amongſt them. They all labour for their ſuſtenance, ſome in tillage, ſome in vineyards, ſome in fiſhing, ſo that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of theſe ſomewhat hath been ſaid elſewhere already. *Zant.*

2 *ZACINTHUS*, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compaſs; and diſtant from *Peloponneſus* 20 miles; ſo called of *Zacinthus* ſon to *Dardanus*. The countrey is wonderfully ſtored with oil, wines, currans: of which laſt they made yearly 150000 *Zechines*, for their own coffers; and 48000 Dollars, which they pay for cuſtom to the Signeurie of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the *Engliſh* uſed to traffique there firſt, but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants firſt frequenting the countrey, they much marvailed to what end they bought ſo many *currans*, and demanded whether they uſed to dye cloathes, or fat hoggs with them; for ſo they themſelves did: but now they have learned a more profitable uſe of them. Here are alſo very good ſalt-pits, freſh water plenty, but little or no wood, and leſſe Corn; their ground being husbanded, as the caſe ſtands with them, to their better advantage: but ſo that many times they are ready to ſtarve, if either the wind or the Sea prove croſſe unto them, and hinder them from fetching their proviſions both of fleſh and corn out of *Peloponneſus*. In which reſpect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the *Turkes*, conſidering how eaſie it is for him to diſtreſſe them for want of victual. The Iland is much troubled with *earthquakes*, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their houſes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Prieſts are to ring the Bels, to ſtir the people to prayers. They have a cuſtom here at Weddings to invite many young men whom they call *Compeers*; of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring. Which done, it is accompted as deteſtable a ſin as Inceſt, to accompany her in any carnal kind; and therefore they chooſe ſuch to be their *Compeers*, who have formerly been ſuſpected of too much familiarity with her.

The Iland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a ſpiteful and vindicative nature, not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof which paſſeth by the name of a Citie is called alſo *Zant*, ſtretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in bredth not anſwerable: beautified with a fair and convenient *Haven* opening towards *Greece*, ſafe from the danger of Pirates, though not of winds, capable of great fleets of ſhipping, both for bulk and number; and ſo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to goe out of it, need not ſtay for a paſſage: yet notwithſtanding this great concourſe and reſort of ſtrangers, the Town is rather rich, than well built or beautiful: the ſtreets hereof uneven and rugged, and the buildings, by reaſon of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the Eaſt ſide of it, on a round ſteep Mountain, ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, a little Citie of it ſelf, well garriſoned, impregnably fortified, and of a verie difficult entrance: which commandeth not the Citie and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoining. Upon the wall thereof continnually ſtands a watchman, to deſcrie what ſhipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many flags as he diſcovereth Veſſels. And over the door of the *Town-hall* (the better to inſtruct the Magiſtrates in their publick dutie) it is ſaid theſe Verſes are inſcribed.

Hic locus 1 odit, 2 amat, 3 punit, 4 conſervat, 5 honorat,
1 Nequitiam, 2 pacem, 3 crimina, 4 jura, 5 probos.

Thus *Engliſhed* by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1 hate, 2 love, 3 puniſh, 4 keep, 5 requite,
1 Voluptuous riot, 2 peace, 3 crimes, 4 Laws, 5 th' upright.

In matter of *Religion*, the people being generally *Greeks* both in birth and language, are for the moſt part of that Church alſo; but ſome adhere unto the *Latine*, each partie having their own Biſhop: of which the *Greek* Biſhop hath his *Cathedral* in the Church of S. *Nicolas*, near unto the Haven (which it giveth name to) and therein a Monaſterie of *Caloirs*, or *Monks* of *Baſil*; the *Latine* Biſhop hath his reſidence and *Cathedral* within the Caſtle, and therein a *Convent* of *Franciſcans*. The *Jews* have in this Town their *Synagogue* alſo: but there are not many of them, if not lately increaſed. In *civil* matters they are ſubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his reſidence in the Caſtle, aſſiſted by a *Chancellour*, and two *Counſellours*, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The fortunes of this Iland in former times, and by what means it fel to the *Venetias*, we ſhall ſhew anon.

The *ECHINADES* are certain little Ilands, or rather great rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for no-

Cephalenia. nothing but the great battel of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the *Turks*: the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 ſail of ſhips, the *Venetians* and their *confederates* but 145 of all ſorts. But it pleaſed God to give the victorie to the weakeſt: the iſſue of it being ſuch, that the *Turks* loſt 29000 men, who were killed in the fight; 39000 more which were taken priſoners; 140 of their Gallies, 400 piece of Ordnance, and 200 *Chriſtian* Captives, which were then redeemed: the *Chriſtians* buying this great victorie with the death of 7656 men or thereabouts; too great a price, could it have been purchaſed with a leſſe. A victorie obtained not far from the point of *Actium*, wherein *Auguſtus* overcame the Navie of *Marcus Antonius*; and thereby got the Empire to himſelf alone, of which before he was but *Joint-tenant* with his Adverſarie. So that this place ſeems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent actions; and that this latter *Naval* fight was but the ſecond part of the firſt.

But to return unto theſe Iſlands, they ſtand juſt againſt the mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus the Poet,

Turbidus objectas Achelous *Echinadas exit.*

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt
Where the *Echinades* (great rocks) are fixt.

Theſe Ilands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be ſo many *Naiades*, or Sea-Nymphes, whom *Achelous* the River God upon ſome diſpleaſure *Metamorphoſed* into theſe Rockie Ilands. But the truth is, that they were cauſed by the dirt and mud, which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laſt it ſetled to firm ground. Of which himſelf ſaith thus in *Ovid.*

Fluctus noſtriq; marisq;
Continuam deducit humum, pariterq; revellit,
In totidem, mediis (quod cernis) Echinadas, undis.

The fury of the Sea-waves, and mine own,
Continual heaps of mud, and Earth drew down;
Which parted by the inter-running Seas,
Made, as thou ſeeſt, theſe five *Echinades.*

4. CEPHALENIA.

CEPHALENIA, the moſt populous Iland of this Sea, is ſituate over againſt *Acarnania*, part of the Province of *Epirus*, having on the South-Eaſt, *Zant*; on the North-weſt, *Corcyra*, or *Corfu*. In length containing 80 miles, 40 in bredth, the whole compaſs being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it: but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolemie*, who takes notice of no more than one, and that of the ſame name with the Iland. Woody and mountainous in moſt places; but the mountains intermixt with Valleys, and the Woods with champagn: plentiful in Wheat, Honey, Currans, *Manna*, Oil, incomparable, though not long-laſting *Muſcadels*; as alſo in Cheeſe, Wool, Turkies, and Powder for the dying of Scarlets. So deſtitute of water, as having no River and not many Fountains, that when their Cattel would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the dew diſtilling inſenſibly from the clouds.

The people are for the moſt part *Greeks*, ſome few *Italians*, naturals of the Signeury of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 families; the number of the towns and villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof 1 *Cephalenia*, fortified with good works, and a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2 *Argaſtolie*, an Haven town, diſtant ſix miles from *Cephalon*; the Port thereof capable of a ſufficient Navie. 3 *Sydre*, another Port-town alſo, lying towards the South.

As for the fortunes of this Iland, it was firſt called *Melena*; after *Teleboas*: and being known by that name, was made ſubject to *Thebes*, by the valour and good conduct of *Amphitryon*, the *Theban* General, by whom *Pterelas*, the King hereof, was ſlain in battel. During which warre, and the ſtay of *Amphitryo* in this Iland, it hapned that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by miſadventure killed his wife *Procris* with an Arrow, which he ſhot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own countrey, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*: who pitying his caſe, made him the Governour of this Iſland, (ſince from his name) called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for ſome time in the power of the *Thebans*, it paſſed, together with *Zant*, and ſome other Ilands, into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom in the declining of their affairs, the *Achæans* got the Iſle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians*, *Cephalenia*: But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of ſetting the *Continent* at libertie, made themſelves maſters of both the *Iſlands*, that ſo they might at leiſure poſſeſſe the whole, as in fine they did. In the diviſion of the Empire they fell as parts of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and on the taking of that Citie by the Weſtern Chriſtians, they fell with almoſt all the reſt of the Ilands, to the State of *Venice*: the Governours whereof retaining *Corfu*, and ſome others of moſt importance in the hands of the *Signeury*, permitted theſe, (as many other of leſſe note) unto private Adventurers. At the concluſion of the peace betwixt *Mahomet* the *Great*, and the State of *Venice*, theſe two, with *Neritos* or *Leniadia*, (ſpoken of in *Epirus*) were ſeiſed on by that Tyrant in deſpight of that treatie or concluſion; as belonging unto private perſons, not to the *Republick*: recovered

after-

afterwards by the *Venetians* in the reign of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof ſtill governed and defended by them. *Corcyra and Ithaca.*

6. CORCYRA.

CORCYRA (now *CORFU*) more antiently was called *Phæacia*; but took this latter name from a Nymph ſo called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowred. Situate over againſt *Epirus*, from which 12 miles diſtant, ſtretched out from Eaſt to Weſt in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth: and ſo the biggeſt of theſe Seas. Commodiouſly ſeated for the trade and eſtate of *Venice*, as the Center of their Dominion, and command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous, and defective in water, much ſubject to be blaſted with Southernly winds, and therefore they ſow little corn, and plant leſs fruits. The Northern parts levell and delighfull, adorned with whole Groves of Lemmons, Orenges, Figtrees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of grain, abundance of Wines, great ſtore of Oil, and Olives, and moſt excellent Honey. Bleſt with a very temperate and healthfull Air, made Odoriferous by moſt pleaſant and ſweet-ſmelling fruits, which grow moſt plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who ſo courteouſly entertained *Ulyſſes* after his ſhip-wrack, was once King of this Iland: whoſe Gardens, anſwerable to the natural delights and ſweetneſs of it, are ſo much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus.

Quid bifera Alcinoi *referam pomaria voſq;*
Qui nunquam vacui pradiſtis in æthera Rami?

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words,

Why ſhould I name *Alcinous* fertile ground,
And trees which never without fruit are found?

Towns of moſt note and ſtrength herein, 1. *Pagiopoli*, 2. *Caſtello S. Angelo*, of good eſteem in reſpect of many others, but far ſhort of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and ſtrongeſt of the Iland, which the *Turks* have found by their frequent repulſes to be impregnable. For it is ſituate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inacceſſible Fortreſſes, as being ſtrongly fenced with a natural Rock. The one is called *The Old Fortreſs*, and the other, *The New*: juſtly eſteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whoſe Trade and Power would ſoon decay, ſhould theſe Forts be loſt. For which cauſe the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are ſworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold intelligence with one another, by word or writing: leſt by the treachery of the one, the other might be wrought alſo from his faith and duty. Neither is their command here for more than two years; their commiſſion then terminating, and new ſucceſſors being ſent them. The Town inhabited for the moſt part by *Grecians*, as is all the reſidue of the Iland: beautified with one of the moſt commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the reſidence of an *Archbiſhop*. A Town of ſuch a publick concernment, in regard of the ſtrength and ſituation, that it is accompted of as the key of *Venice*, and one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarkes of *Chriſtendom* againſt the encroachment of the *Turks*. The ſtory of it ſince diſmembred from the Eaſtern Empire, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before.

7. ITHACA.

ITHACA, now called *Val de Campare*, lieth on the North-Eaſt of *Zephalenia*, being in compaſſe 50 miles: moſt famous for the birth of *Ulyſſes*, the ſon of *Laertes*; Of which thus the Poet.

Effugimus ſcopulos Ithacæ, *Laertia Regna*,
Et terram altricem ſævi execramur Ulyſſis.

From th' *Ithacan* Rocks, *Laertes* Realm we fled,
And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulyſſes* bred.

It was alſo called *Dulichium*, or elſe there was ſome other Iland of that name, not far from *Ithaca*, whereof *Ulyſſes* was alſo King; who is hence called *Dulichius Heros*, among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* ſignifieth the head of *Ulyſſes*.

Sed neq; Dulichius, *ſub* Achillis *caſſide, vertex,*
Pondera tanta feret;

Achilles

Achilles helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak *Ulysses* head to undergoe.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Master-wit of *Greece*, for the times he lived in, and one that did as good service in the war of *Troy*, as the best sword-man of them all. A warre to which he went somewhat unwillingly, as fearing the sad consequences and events thereof: insomuch that he feigned himself mad; ploughing the shore, and sowing salt in stead of corn. But *Palamedes*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only, cast young *Telemachus* the son of *Ulysses* before the Plough: which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him. Discovered by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan* war, he found out the design of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it also; in the course whereof, by his wit and courage, he did very good service: associated with *Diomedes* in the action against *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*; and with *Palamedes* in forraging the Country for provisions. By his policy was the *Palladium* stollen out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and destroyed; whose fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the war, which held out ten years, he was with-held from *Ithaca* ten years longer by winds and tempests, and the displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he saved himself from the inchantments of the *Sirens*, the allurements of *Circe*, the cruelty of *Polyphemus*; and after many dangers came home in safety. A man of so compleat a vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the pattern of a temperate and prudent man, in the Books called *Odysses*, (by his name as the *Greeks* pronounce it) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect souldier.

The Country is generally very rockie, and barren, exceeding plentifull of *Goats*, but no *Hares* live in it: inhabited for the most part by Pirates and exiles, men banished out of civill society, and willingly acknowledging no Superior over them: but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*; which hitherto hath maintained these Ilands against the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their arms and victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified at the taking of *Constantinopole* by the *Latines*, with almost all the Ilands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas (as being a people strong in shipping, and so most able to preserve a possession of them:) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their riches, or commodiousness of situation, were furnished with convenient garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they did bestow on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own costs and charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two, or more of them, as they were of ability to set out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the *Signeurie* having nevertheless a care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals: whereby they did not only preserve those Seas from the *Genoa* Pirats, but for long time defended all their Islands also aswell against the *Greeks*, as the *Turkish* Emperors. But all the Isles of the *Ægean* being lost to the *Turk*, except *Cythera*, and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpathos*, or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side: they have now only *Crete* with the Isles adjoining, and those of the *Ionian* Sea, under their command, and these (but especially the Isle of *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant.

Thus having took a view of the severall Provinces and Isles which belong to *Greece*, according to the antient and present state of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Grecian* Emperors, who have had here their principal residence, and possessed the whole, though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East; as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

The *Constantinopolitan*, *Græcian*, or *Eastern* EMPERORS.

A. Ch.		
331	1	*Constantine*, surnamed the *Great*, having reigned 21 years in *Rome*, translated his imperial Seat to *Constantinople* which himself had founded.
341	2	*Constantius*, the second son of *Constantine*, in the division of the Empire, had for his partage *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the death of his two Brethren he remained sole Emperor, but resided for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arians*; and as great a Persecutor of the *Orthodox Christians*.
366	3	*Julian*, surnamed the *Apostata*, son of *Constantius* the Brother of *Constantine* the *Great*; at first a Christian, afterwards a professed enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilst he was a Christian: prodigiously slain in the *Persian* war, when become a persecutor.
368	4	*Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, chosen by the Army, a religious Prince, made peace with the *Persian*, and setled the affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean birth, but great abilities in war, was elected Emperor.
368	5	*Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople*, and the East; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome*, and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* faction, and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side

of

of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the desert parts of *Thrace*, to the destruction of the Empire and himself to boot.

382 6 *Gratian*, the eldest son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East; after whose death he left *Italy* and the West, to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7 *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2d. on the traytor *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppresst the Pagan superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it self; and strengthened the Church of Christ with good Laws and Ordinances.

399 8 *Arcadius*, the eldest son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last division of it, being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.

412 9 *Theodosius* II. son of *Arcadius*, made peace with the *Goths*, whom he imployed against the *Hunnes* and *Persians*, his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephesine* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.

454 10 *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and maried with *Pulcheria* his Masters sister; he called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Dioscorus*.

461 11 *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joint consent of the *Senate* and *Souldiery*, sitting the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12 *Zeno*, the son-in-law, and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*: A Tyrant and a great drinker, in one of his drunken fits, buried quick by his Empress. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by fire; in which perished amongst other things 120000 Volumes of good *Manuscripts*.

494 13 *Anastasius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empress created Emperor; a great Patron of *Eutiches*; yet fortunate in his wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople* besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great distress, if *Proclus*, a famous *Mathematician*, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

521 14 *Justin*, the son of a *Thracian* shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasius*, a Catholick Prince, and Patron of the *Orthodox* Clergy, whom he called from banishment.

528 15 *Justinian*, the Sisters son of *Justinus*, with whom first consort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Vandals*, by *Belisarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths*, by *Narses*: and finally reduced the laws of *Rome* into form and method.

566 16 *Justin* II. Nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himself to oppose the *Persian*, he chose

577 17 *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be consort with him, who afterwards succeeded in in sole command.

584 18 *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*; by whom at his return maried to *Constantine* his daughter, and declared his Successor. Refusing to ransome some of his Souldiers, taken prisoners by *Caganus* King of *Avares*, he lost the affections of his army.

604 19 *Phocas*, a common Souldier, in a military tumult chosen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his wife and children; and made Pope *Boniface* supreme Bishop or *head of the Church*: slain in a popular tumult by the common people for his lusts and cruelties.

611 20 *Heraclius*, a noble man of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general consent, repaired the ruines of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Hierusalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Crosse unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner, whence the feast called *Exaltatio crucis*, *September* 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his dotages.

641 21 *Constans* or *Constantine* II. son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places; picking a quarrel with the *Romans* he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments, which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left: and ransaking the Isle of *Sicil*, was there slain by the women.

670 22 *Constantinus* III. son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early beard surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danow*.

987 23 *Justinian* II. son of *Constantine* the 3d. subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*; forcing the *Saracens* to sue for peace, and become his *tributaries*. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Absimarus* on the other, severally taking arms were declared Emperors; *Justinian* taken by *Leontius*, hath his nose cut off, and his person committed to custody: but making an escape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial dignity; and being too violent in the pursute of his revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of

713 24 *Philippicus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Souldiers, a great enemy of *Images*, which he caused to be cast out of the Church: whereby incurring the displeasure of

715 25 *Anaſtaſius* II. called alſo *Artemius*, his principal *Secretarie*, who thruſt himſelf into the Empire; forced to relinquiſh it by that army which he had raiſed againſt the *Saracens*: in which tumult the City of *Conſtantinople* was ſacked and ſpoiled.

717 26 *Theodoſius* III. made Emperor in this tumult by the Souldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eaſtern Armies, reſigned the Empire, and took *Orders* to preſerve his life.

718 27 *Leo Iſauricus*, in whoſe time *Caliph Zulciman* beſieged *Conſtantinople* the ſpace of three years, and when by cold and famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were ſlain, they deſiſted. At this ſiege was that fire invented, which we for the violence of it call *wild fire*; and the *Latines*, becauſe the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*: by which the *Saracens* ſhips were not a little moleſted. He was alſo a great Enemy to *Images*, for which cauſe hated by the Pope and Clergie of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the nick-name of *Iconomachus*.

741 28 *Conſtantinus* IV. ſon of *Leo*, ſurnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized, he berayed the font; followed his Fathers zeal in removing *Images*, which created him much trouble; one *Artabardus* being choſe Emperor againſt him, but at laſt defeated.

777 29 *Leo* III. ſon of *Conſtantine Copronymus*, honored with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the 4th. (*Leontius* the Uſurper, (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one) an enemy of *Images*, and fortunate in his wars againſt the *Saracens*.

782 30 *Conſtantine* V. the ſon of *Leo* and *Irene*, firſt governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at laſt ſupplanted, and deprived of ſight, he dyed of a melancholy.

798 31 *Irene*, wife of *Leo* the 3d. firſt conſort with *Conſtantine* her ſon, and afterwards ſole Empereſs of *Conſtantinople*: for her better ſupport in which eſtate ſhe ſided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the ſecond Councel of *Nice* for defence of *Images*. In her time *Charls*, ſurnamed the *Great*, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the Weſt. For the Popes knowing their own greatneſs to grow out of the ruines of the *temporal* power, committed the Empire of the Weſt unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperors became much weakened; and the *French* being the Popes Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. pronounced non-Emperor; *Emanuel* of *Conſtantinople* ſued for a re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this anſwer, *Non licere illi conjungere, quæ majores ejus de induſtria diſjunxerunt*: Let no man preſume to joyn, what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put aſunder.

803 32 *Nicephorus* a Patritian, made Emperor by the Souldiers, perſwaded that *Irene* had made choiſe of him to be her Succeſſor: ſlain in a pitcht Field againſt the *Bulgarians*.

812 33 *Michael*, ſurnamed *Curopalates*, from his office, (the *Mayre* of the Palace as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, aſſumed the Empire: which, finding his own weakneſſe, he did ſoon relinquiſh, and betook himſelf unto a Monaſtery.

814 3 *Leo.* V. ſurnamed *Armenius* from his Country, General of the Horſe to *Michael*, demoliſhed the *Images* which his Predeceſſors had ſet up; ſlain in the Church during the time of Divine ſervice.

821 35 *Michael* II. ſurnamed *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo*, aſſumed the Empire; unfortunate in his government, and dyed of madneſs.

830 36 *Theophilus*, the ſon of *Michael Balbus*, an enemy of *Images*, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; loſing many battels to the *Saracens*, at laſt dyed of melancholy.

842 37 *Michael* III. ſon of *Theophilus*, firſt with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto her ſelf the ſupreme command; and after of himſelf ſole Emperor; his mother being made a Nun.

865 38 *Baſilius*, ſurnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his birth, made conſort in the Empire by *Michael* the ſon of *Theophilus*, whom he baſely and treacherouſly murdered; killed caſually by a Stag.

886 39 *Leo* VI. for his learning ſurnamed *Philoſophus*, the ſon of *Baſilius*, a vigilant and provident Prince; moſt of his time, with variable ſucceſs, ſpent againſt the *Bulgarians*.

912 40 *Conſtantine* VI. commonly called the VII. ſon of *Leo Philoſophus*, firſt under his Unkle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire: by which laſt ſo miſerably depreſſed that he was fain to get his livelyhood by painting. But *Lacopenus* being depoſed and turned into a *Monaſterie* by his own ſons, *Conſtantine* at laſt obtained his rights, and reſtored learning unto *Greece*.

961 41 *Romanus*, the ſon of *Conſtantine*.

963 42 *Nicephorus*, ſurnamed *Phocas*, firſt Governor or Protector to the young Emperor *Romanus*; after whoſe death created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia minor* from the power of the *Saracens*; ſlain in the night by *John Zimiſces*, his wife *Theophania* being privy to it.

971 43 *John Zimiſces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it; vanquiſhing the *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the *barbarous* Nations: and left it at his death to the ſons of *Romanus*.

977 44 *Basilius* II. surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their births they were wrapped in purple (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial colour: subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.

1027 45 *Constantinus* VII. or VIII. brother of *Basilius*, and with him partner in the Empire; after whose death he governed three years by himself, but did nothing memorable.

1030 46 *Romanus* II. for his prodigality surnamed *Argyropolus*, husband of *Zoe*, the daughter of *Constantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the treason of his wife and her Adulterer.

1035 47 *Michael* IV. surnamed *Paphlago* from his Country, first the Adulterer, and afterwards the husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.

1042 48 *Michael* V. surnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obscure birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monasterie. Out of which being again taken, in a popular tumult, she put out the eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 years of age, bestowed both the Empire and her self upon

1043 49 *Constantine* IX. surnamed *Monomachus*, formerly husband to a Neece of *Romanus* the 2.

1055 50 *Theodora*, sister unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Constantine*, managed for two years the affairs of the Empire, with great contentment of all people. But grown in age surrendred it to

1057 51 *Michael* VI. surnamed *Stratiotticus*, an old, but militarie man, deposed within the year by

1060 52 *Isaacius*, of the noble family of the *Comneni*; valiant, of great courage, and diligent in his affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with consent of the Senate and people, to

1063 53 *Constantine* X. surnamed *Ducas*, a great *Justiciar*, and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his subjects, and contemned by his enemies.

1071 54 *Romanus* III. surnamed *Diogenes*, maryed *Eudoxia* the wife of *Constantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Took prisoner by the *Turks*, and sent home again, he found a faction made against him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himself at his return, deposed, and so dyed in exile.

1075 55 *Michael* VII. the son of *Constantinus Ducas*, surnamed *Parapinacius*, by reason of the famine which in his time happened, made Emperour in the aforesaid tumult. But being found unable for so great an honour (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monasterie.

1081 56 *Nicephorus* II. surnamed *Bolionates*, of the house of the *Phocas*, succeeded in the place of *Parapinace*, deposed within 3 years by the *Comneni*.

1084 57 *Alexius Comnenus*, son of the Emperour *Isaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whose time the Western Christians with great forces prepared for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. Of whose purposes being very jealous, he denyed them passage through his Country; in the end forced to find them victuals and other necessaries.

1113 58 *Calo-Johannes*, the son of *Alexius*, had a good hand against the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea* and some other places of importance. He also vanquished the *Scythians* or *Tartars* passing over the *Ister*, most of which he either slew in battel, or sold as captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this side that River. He also conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bithynia*.

1142 59 *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemie to the Western *Christians*, and an open enemie to the *Turks*; by whom intrapped in the dangerous streights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honorable terms permitted to return again.

1180 60 *Alexius* II. son of *Manuel*, deposed and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*, the *Cousin German* of his father, with his wife and mother.

1183 61 *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous & ambitious practices; after his death, pretending to reform the State came unto *Constantinople*: first made *Protector*, afterwards *consort* in the Empire with yong *Alexius*. Whom having barbarously slain, and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular tumult.

1185 62 *Isaacius Angelus*, a noble man of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* race, designed to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular election proclamed his successor; deposed by *Alexius* his own brother, and his eyes put out.

1195 63 *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his brother, and excluded his Nepew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64 *Alexius Angelus* II. son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperour, whose daughter *Mary* he had marryed: who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land*, was employed to restore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Usurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperour is seated in his Fathers throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divide it amongst them: alotting to the *Venetians Candie*, many good towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Boniface* Marques of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to others of the *Adventurers* other liberal shares; and finally, to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main body of the Empire, with the title

of Emperour. The ſeat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice* a City of *Bithynia* in the *Leſſer Aſia* by *Theodorus Laſcaris*, ſon-in-law to *Alexius* the Uſurper, continued there til the regaining of *Conſtantinople* by the *Greeks* again; after it had been 60 years poſſeſſed by the Weſtern Chriſtians.

EMPEROURS of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE.*

1200 65 *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, firſt Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and ſent priſoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66 *Henry*, the brother of *Baldwin*, repulſed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and dyed a Conquerour.

1215 67 *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the ſon of *Peter*, youngeſt ſon to *Lewis* the *Groſſe* of *France*, and Husband of *Yoland* the daughter of *Henry*, ſucceeded in the Empire after his deceaſe: cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus* a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had beſieged in *Dyrrachium*. But of an Enemy being perſwaded to become his gheſt, was there murdered by him.

1220 68 *Robert*, the ſon of *Peter*, having ſeen the miſerable uſage of his beautifull Empreſſe, whom a young *Burgundian* formerly contracted to her, had moſt deſpitefully mangled, cutting off both her noſe and ears; died of hearts grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his melancholy had carried him to conſult the *Pope* in his affairs.

1227 69 *Baldwin* II. ſon of *Robert* by a former wife, under the protection of *John de Brenne* the titulary King of *Hieruſalem*, ſucceeded in his fathers throne: which having held for the ſpace of 33 years; he was forced to leave it: the Citie of *Conſtantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to ſue in vain for ſuccours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the *Weſt*. And though both *Philip* the ſon of this *Baldwin*, and *Charls* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* French King, in right of *Catharine* his wife, daughter of that *Philip*, did ſometimes pleaſe themſelves with the title of Emperours of *Conſtantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or poſſeſſion there.

The EMPIRE *reſtored unto the GREEKS.*

1260 70 *Michael* VIII. ſurnamed *Palæologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperours, Emperour of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, moſt fortunately recovered *Conſtantinople*; the town being taken by a party of 50 men ſecretly put into it by ſome Country labourers under the ruines of a mine. Preſent in perſon at the Council of *Lyons*, at the perſwaſion of the Pope he admitted the *Latine Ceremonies* into the Churches of *Greece*; for which greatly hated by his ſubjects, and denied the honour of Chriſtian burial.

1283 71 *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled againſt him.

1328 72 *Andronicus* III. firſt partner with his grandfather, afterwards ſole Emperour.

1341 73 *John Palæologus*, ſon of *Andronicus* the 3. in whoſe minoritie *Contacuzenus* his Protector uſurped the Empire, and held it ſometimes from him, and ſometimes with him, till the year 1357. and then retired unto a Monaſterie: leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whoſe reign the *Turks* firſt planted themſelves in *Europe*.

1384 74 *Andronicus* IV. the ſon of *Johannes Palæologus*.

1387 75 *Emanuel Palæologus*, the ſon of the ſaid *John*, and brother of *Andronicus* the 4. in whoſe time *Bajazet* the ſixt King of the *Turks* did beſiege *Conſtantinople*; but found ſuch notable reſiſtance, that he could not force it.

1417 76 *John* II. ſon of *Andronicus* the 4.

1420 77 *John* III. ſon of *Emanuel Palæologus*, in perſon at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches; in hope thereby to get ſome aid from the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, but it would not be.

1444 78 *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, the brother of *John* the 3. In whoſe time the famous Citie of *Conſtantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great, 1452. the miſerable Emperor, who had in vain gon from door to door to beg or borrow mony to pay his ſoldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may obſerve ſome fatal contrarieties in one and the ſame name: as firſt, that *Philip* the father of *Alexander* laid the firſt foundation of the *Macedonian Monarchy*, and *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the firſt, and *Baldwin* the laſt Emperour of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*. Thirdly, that this town was built by a *Conſtantine*, the ſon of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch: and was loſt by a *Conſtantine* the ſon of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch alſo. And fourthly, the *Turks* have a Prophecie, that as it was won by a *Mahomet*,

ſo

ſo it ſhall be loſt by a *Mahomet*. So *Auguſtus* was the firſt eſtabliſhed Emperor of *Rome*, and *Auguſtulus* the laſt: *Darius* the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*, the reſtorer; and *Darius* the ſon of *Arſamis*, the overthrower of the *Perſian* Monarchy. A like note I ſhall anon tell you of *Hieruſalem*. In the mean time I will preſent you with a fatall obſervation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus verſed in *Albions England*.

Not ſuperſtitiouſly I ſpeak, but *H* this letter ſtill
Hath been obſerved ominous to *Englands* good or ill.
Firſt *Hercules*, *Heſione*, and *Helen* were the cauſe
Of war to *Troy*; *Æneas* ſeed becomming ſo outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with forein arms did firſt the *Brutes* invade,
Helen to *Romes* imperial Throne, the *Britiſh* Crown convey'd.
Hengiſt and *Horſus*, firſt did plant the *Saxons* in this Ile:
Hungar and *Hubba* firſt brought *Danes*, that ſwayed here long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute*, the *Dane*:
Henries the firſt and ſecond did reſtore the *Engliſh* raign.
Fourth *Henry* firſt for *Lancaſter* did *Englands* Crown obtain.
Seventh *Henrie*, jarring *Lancaſter* and *York*, unites in peace:
Henry the eighth did happily *Romes* irreligion ceaſe.

A ſtrange and ominous letter; every mutation in our State being as is it were uttered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire ſince the diviſion of it into the Eaſt and Weſt, I could never yet learn. That they were exceeding great, may appear by three circumſtances, 1 *Zonaras* reporteth, that the Emperour *Baſilius* had in his treaſury 200000 talents of gold, beſides infinite heaps of ſilver, and other monies. 2. *Lipſius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a *Jew* in his diſcourſe of *Europe*, ſaith, that the cuſtome due to the Emperors, out of the victuals and Merchandize ſold at *Conſtantinople* only, did amount to 20000 crowns daily. 3. We find, that at the ſack of *Conſtantinople*, there was found an invaluable maſſe of gold, ſilver, plate, and jewels, beſides that which was hid in the earth. For ſo the covetous Citizens choſe rather to imploy their wealth, than afford any part of it to the Emperor: who with tears in his eyes, went from door to door to beg and borrow mony, wherewith he might wage more ſouldiers for the defence of the town.

The arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a croſs *Sol* between four *Greek* Betaes of the ſecond: the four Betaes ſignifying, (as *Bodin* ſaith) Βαριλεὺς, Βασιλεὼν, Βασιλεόων, Βασιλεῦσι,

It may perchance be expected that we ſhould here make an additionall Catalogue of thoſe *Turkiſh* Emperors, who have reigned in *Conſtantinople*, ſince the taking of it: and being they are poſſeſſed of *Greece* and do now inhabit it, that we ſhould here alſo ſpeak of the *Turks* themſelves, their cuſtoms, forces, policies, original, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe of thoſe things we intend to reſerve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt inundation into *Perſia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now ſubject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the *Peninſula* called antiently *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (now part of *Tartaria Procopenſis*) be within the bounds of *Europe* alſo: yet we will defer the deſcription and ſtory of it, till we come to the affairs of the *Tartars*; and will here conclude our diſcourſe of *Europe*, and prepare for *Aſia*.

And ſo much for *GREECE*, the laſt of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

A TABLE OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE OF THE CHIEF TOWNS and CITIES Mentioned in this BOOK.

A

	Long.	Lat.
Amsterdam	27.39	52.40
Antwerp	24.30	51.48
Athens	46.10	40
Ausburg	32.30	48.20
Aulona	51.20	41.30
Arras	24	51
Anslo	36.30	59.20

B

Bamberg	39.15	50.10
Belgrade	45	47.40
Bergen	34.16	61.25
Bern	29.45	46.25
Brandenburg	35.30	52.36
Breme	30.20	53.23
Bruges	24.36	51.30
Brunswick	32.40	52.30
Brussels	26.42	51.24
Buda	42	47.20
Boden	52.30	45.30.
Bornholm	40.50	55.30.

C

Cleve	29.35	51.58
Constantinople	56	43.5
Confluentz	27.30	50.30
Constance	28.30	47.30
Copenhagen	34.50	56
Corinth	54.20	39
Colen	27.40	51
Cracow	42.40	50.12
Cephalone	52	38.30
Casan	96.10	35.10
Corfu	42.	39.30

D

Dantzick	45	54.50
Darsaw	63	48.40
Deventer	33.25	51.50

Dort

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

	Long.	Lat.
Dort	26	52
Doway	25	51
Dreſden	36	51.3

E

Emden	28.26	53.34
Erford	34.30	51.10
Elſenore	36.30	57

F

Flensberg	36.40	55
Franeker	27	54
Frankford ad Moen	30	50.30
Frankford ad Oderam	24	52.30
Friburg	20	48.1

G

Glogaw	43.50	51.25
Gran	42.30	48
Gratz	34	48
Grodesk	56.30	51.30
Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Gueſna	42	52.10
Groyningen	32.10	53

H

Haderſleve	35.5	60.50
Hallar	3	67.14
Halberſtat	32.40	52.10
Heidelberg	28	49.35
Hamburg	30	54.30

I

Jena	34	52
Ingolſtad	32.10	48.40
Inſpruch	32.50	44.55
Juliers	27.30	52

L

Ariſſa	70	33
Leige	22	50.50
Leopolis	52.50	49
Lipſich	30.30	51.20
Lubeck	31.20	54.48
Lucern	29.53	46.42
Lunemberg	32.18	53.27
Luden	26	53
Luxenburg	28	50

M

Magdeburg	37.50	52.18
Marpurg	30.10	51
Mentz	27.30	50.30
Metz	27.40	49.9
Madleburg	25	52
Minden	31.30	52.58
Munchen	32.50	48
Munſter	29.10	52
Montz	26	51
Moſco	70.30	55.40
Melvin	48	54.50

N

Nancie	28.45	49.20
Norlingen	33	49
Nurenberg	31.30	49.30
Nimmegen	28	52
Novogrod Magn.	62.50	60.30
Novogrod Infer.	80	55.20
Nicopolis	56.30	40
Negropont	56.10	41
S. Nicolas.	69	64

Olmuntz

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

O

	Long.	Lat.
Olmuntz	41	40.30
Osnabrug	29.36	52.29
Olant	43.30	57

P

	Long.	Lat.
Pague	39.15	50.10
Preslaw	46	51.10
Pasnaw	42	52.48
Presburg	40	48.26
Plescow	59.10	59
Pechora	66.50	67
Pernow	53.30	58.40
Plotzcow	57.30	57.40

R

	Long.	Lat.
Rab	40.35	48.50
Ragusi	44.40	42.30
Regensberg	32.15	48.59
Rostoch	34.18	54.20
Rustow	72.50	57
Rugen	40.20	55.10
Riga	53.30	58
Regimont	49.10	55.30

S

	Long.	Lat.
Saltsburg	35.40	47.40
Schalholt	3.14	65.42
Schleistat	28. 6	48.22
Slesvitk	31.20	55.15
Spires	27.40	49.20
Stetin	37.40	54
Stockholm	42	60.15
Sibiore	99.20	59.30
Slowada	86.30	58.50
Strasburg	27.50	48.44
Stagira	55.30	43.30

T

	Long.	Lat.
Thessalonica	53.40	44.20
Triers	26	49.30
Trent	33.40	45.20
Tubing	30.30	48.40
Twer	68.10	57.10

U

	Long.	Lat.
Valenciennes	26.29	50.10
Ulme	32.30	48.20
Vienna	37.45	48.20
Vilna	54.30	55
Vpsal	40.30	60.52
Visting	79.30	61.30
Vtrecht	27.33	52.10
Vicegrod	61.30	51.30
Vesalia	31.30	51.30

W

	Long.	Lat.
Wiburg	55.58	63.6
Witteberg	35.10	50.55
Wismar	33.30	54.14
Wologda	74.30	60
Wormes	28	49.45
Woortzburg	30.10	49.57
Wardhuys	50.30	70.30

Z

	Long.	Lat.
Zara	46.25	45.40
Zemla Nova.	83.30	74

The End of the second Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE,

The Third Book

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL THE PRINCIPALL

Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof:

By PETER HEYLIN.

JUSTIN. HIST. l. 1.

Imperium Asyrii *qui postea* Syri *dicti sunt, annos* MCCC *tenuerunt. Imperium ab* Asyriis *ad* Medos Arbaces *transfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur; & vario exitii genere tollentur.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1656.

LONDON:
Printed for Henry Seile, 1656.

COSMOGRAPHIE,

The Third Book

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE

of the Lesser and Greater

ASIA,

And all the principal Kingdomes, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF ASIA.

ASIA is bounded on the West, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægean* Seas, the *Hellespont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Mæotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Duina*, a line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East, the Streights of *Anian* (if such there be) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which separated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* sea, washing the shores of *Anatolia*; and the main Southern Ocean, passing along the *Indian*, *Persian*, and *Arabian* coasts: and finally, on the South-west, the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Isthmus* in the South-west, which joyns it to *Africk*, and the space of ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt *Duina*, and *Tanais*, on the North-west, which unites it to *Europe*.

It took this name, as some will have it, from *Asia*, the daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the wife of *Japetus*, and (by him) mother to *Prometheus*: as others say, from *Asius* the son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country first, afterwards all *Anatolia* or *Asia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent, had the name of *Asia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Asius* the Philosopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in memory whereof that Country first, and after the whole Continent did receive this name. But these *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language) will have it called so from *Asi*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying *Medium*, or the middle: because *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And so far the Conjecture doth find countenance from some antient writers, that *Asia* is said by *Plinie* to be *inter Africam & Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *Medium nostris æquoribus excipi*, to be embraced in the *middle* of two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*) and finally, by *Eustathius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*) μέσην ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν, to have a *middle* situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds soever it be called by the *Greeks*, and *Latins*; it is otherwise, and with better reason called in holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole posterity of *Sem* had their seats and dwellings; if the observation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is situate East and West, from the 52. to the 169 degree of *Longitude*; and North and South, from the

the 82 degree of *Latitude*, to the very *Æquator*; ſome onely of the Ilands lying on the South of that *Circle*: ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve hours only; but in the moſt Northern parts hereof, for almoſt four whole moneths together no night at all. And for a meaſurement by miles, it ſtreteches in length 5200. and in bredth 4560 miles.

This Country hath heretofore been had in eſpecial honour, 1. For the Creation of man, who had his firſt making in this part of the world; 2ly, Becauſe in this part of it ſtood the garden of *Eden*, which he had for the firſt place of his habitation; 3ly, Becauſe here flouriſhed the 4 firſt great Monarchies of the *Aſſyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Perſians*; 4ly, Becauſe it was the Scene of almoſt all the memorable actions, which are recorded by the pen-men of the holy Scriptures; 5ly, Becauſe that here our Saviour *CHRIST* was born, here wrought he moſt divine miracles, and here accompliſhed the great work of our Redemption; 6ly, And finally, becauſe from hence all Nations of the World had their firſt beginning, on the diſperſion which was made by the ſons of *Noah*, after their vain attempt at *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the bounds of any one Province (for of thoſe we are to ſpeak in their ſeveral places) are 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lycia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, palleth directly Eaſtwards to the *Indian* Ocean: and reckoning in its ſeveral windings and turnings, with its ſpurs and branches every way, is ſaid to be 6250 miles long, and 357 m. broad. This Mountain, or rather ridge of hils, divideth the *Greater Aſia*, as the *Æquator* doth the World, into North and South: memorable for three difficult paſſages from the one to the other, the firſt out of the reſt of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the ſecond out of *Scythia* or *Tartarie*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucaſiæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Perſia*, called *Portæ Caſpiæ*. Of which, and of the whole courſe of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning near the ſhores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South; dividing the *Greater Aſia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into Eaſt and Weſt, and croſſing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other name among the *Latins*, than *Imaus* only; and by that name divideth *Scythia*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: but by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*; by ſome writers, *Belgion*. And on the South-ſide of that Mountain is known in *Ptolemy* by the name of *Bitigo*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus*, or ſome other Branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean: ſuppoſed by ſome to be Mount *Sephar*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. of which we ſhall ſay more alſo when we come into *India*.

The eſtate of *Chriſtianity* in this vaſt Continent is in ill condition, diſcountenanced and oppreſſed, though not quite extinguiſhed. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*; the moſt that can be hoped for of the Chriſtian Faith, is a *toleration* or connivence: and that not found but with an intermixture of ſuch afflictions, as commonly attend diſcountenanced and diſgraced *Religions*. Yet is not *Chriſtianity* ſo over-powered either by *Mahometaniſm*, or *Paganiſm*, but that in *Aſia* the *Leſſer*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Goſpel*, under their ſeveral *Patriarchs* and *Metropolitans*: differing in ſome few points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither correſpondency nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Chriſtian* Churches in the Empire of *Perſia*, nor in thoſe of *Tartarie* and the *Indies*, antiently planted in thoſe Countreys; beſides the late increaſe thereof in the *Eaſtern Ilands*, by the diligent preaching of the *Jeſuits*, and ſome late *Factories* there ſetled by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*: of all which I ſhall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman* Empire, whoſe Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Euphrates*, this Continent conteined only three *Dioceſes*, or *Juridical Circuits*; that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Oriental*: which with the *Dioceſes* of *Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of power and juriſdiction, next to the Emperors themſelves, in the *Roman* Monarchie. And theſe three *Dioceſes* conteined in them to the number of thirty ſeven Provinces, *viz.* the Provinces of *Bithynia*. 2 *Helenopontus*. 3 *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 4 *Galatia Prima*. 5 *Galatia Salutaris*. 6 *Honorius*. 7 *Paphlagonia*. 8 *Cappadocia prima*. 9 *Cappadocia ſecunda*. 10 *Armenia prima*, and 11 *Armenia ſecunda*, conteined in the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant thereof. II. the Provinces of *Pamphylia*. 2 *Lycia*. 3 *Caria*. 4 *Piſidia*. 5 *Lycaonia*. 6 *Lydia*. 7 *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8 *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9 *Aſia* ſpecially ſo called. 10 *Helleſpont*, and 11 the *Iſles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia*: whereof the three laſt were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Iſauria*. 2 *Cilicia prima*. 3 *Cilicia ſecunda*. 4 *Cyprus*. 5 *Phœnices*. 6 *Phœenices Libani*. 7 *Syria*. 8 *Syria Salutaris*. 9 *Paleſtina prima*. 10 *Paleſtina ſecunda*. 11 *Paleſtina Salutaris*. 12 *Euphratenſis*. 13 *Oſroene*. 14 *Meſopotamia*, and 15 *Arabia*, conſtituting the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The reſt of *Aſia* ſubject unto the *Parthian* or *Perſian* Kings, beſides thoſe of *India* (and of many Regions and Countreys not then diſcovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*: and therefore not within the compaſs of this diſtribution.

At this time *Aſia* ſtands divided amongſt 6 great Monarchs; that is to ſay, the *Turk*, commanding all thoſe parts and Provinces, which antiently belonged to the *Roman* Empire: 2ly, The *Perſian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, poſſeſſed by the *Perſian* Kings in the time of *Alexand:* the *great*, or the *Arſacidæ* or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*: 3ly, The *Great Cham* of *Tartarie*, commanding over all the North parts of *Aſia*, antiently known by the name of *Scythia*: 4ly, The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5ly, The King of *Barma*, whoſe dominion comprehends all or the greateſt part of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*; and 6ly, the *Great Mogor*, whoſe Empire is extended over all *India* on this ſide of that River. And ſome there be who in the deſcriptions of this

great

great Country, follow this diviſion. But for our parts, for the better underſtanding of the *Greek* and the *Roman* ſtories, and the eſtate of the *Aſſyrian*, *Babylonian* and *Perſian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do ſo much relate; we ſhall conſider it as divided into the Regions of 1. *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*. 2. *Cyprus*. 3. *Syria*. 4. *Paleſtine*. 5. *Arabia*. 6. *Chaldæa*. 7. *Aſſyria*. 8. *Meſopotamia*. 9. *Turcomania*. 10. *Media*. 11. *Perſia*. 12. *Tartaria*. 13. *China*. 14. *India*; and 15. the *Oriental Ilands*.

ANATOLIA, or *ASIA MINOR*.

ANATOLIA or *ASIA MINOR* is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Aſia*; on the Weſt, with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean Sea*, by which parted from *Europe*; on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called alſo the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*; and on the South, by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphylian* Seas, ſeveral parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it is a demi-Iland, or *Peninſula*, environed on all ſides with waters; excepting a ſmall *Iſthmus* or neck of land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine* Sea, by which joined to the reſt of *Aſia*.

It was antiently called *Aſia Minor*, to difference it from the reſidue of this great *Continent*; afterwards *Anatolia*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνατολῆς, from the more Eaſtward ſituation of it, in reſpect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former name. But here it is to be obſerved, that as this *Leſſer Aſia* was a part of the greater, and the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* the *Leſs*: ſo was *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, but a part only of the *Aſian Dioceſe*; the *Lydian Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Proconſular Aſia*, but a part of that. The limits of *Aſia* the *Leſs*, and the ſeveral Provinces contained in the *Aſian Dioceſe*, have been ſhewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the name of *Aſia* properly and eſpecially ſo called, it contained only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which falling unto the *Romans*, by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Attalus*, the laſt King of *Pergamus*, were by them made into one Province, and called *Aſia*, after the name of the whole *Continent*; this being as it were the *earneſt-penny*, to make ſure the reſt. So witneſſeth *Strabo*, where he ſaith Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπαρχίαν ἀπέδειξαν τὴν χωρὰν Ἀσίαν προσαγορεύσαντες ἀπὸ μέρους τινὸς ἐλαχίστου τῇ ἡπείρῳ, *Lib.* 13. And for the *Lydian Aſia*, that contained only ſo much of the *Roman* or *proper Aſia*, as antiently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to ſay, *Lydia* it ſelf, together with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, and ſome parts of the *Greater Myſia* adjoyning to it. Which as it had originally the name of *Aſia*, from *Aſia* a chief City of it near the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas*, and the *Great Etymologiſt* have taken notice of; before that name became to be communicated to the Greater *Continent*: ſo it retained that name to it ſelf in ſeveral, diſtinct both from the *Greater*, and the *Leſſer Aſia*; as alſo from the *Aſia propria* of *Ptolemie*, and others of the antient writers. And of this *Aſia* only is it, which the Scriptures ſpeak; both in the Book of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the ſeven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Aſia*, and the paſſges in the other concerning *Aſia*, not to be underſtood of any, but of this alone. For whereas it is ſaid *Acts* 16. That when they had gone throughout *Phrygia*, and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghoſt to preach the Word in *Aſia*; after they were come to *Myſia*, they aſſayed to go into *Bithynia*, and came down to *Troas*: moſt clear it is, that neither *Galatia*, nor *Bithynia*, though Regions of the *Leſſer Aſia*; nor *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, or *Troas*, all Regions of the *Proper Aſia*; were any part of that *Aſia* which the Scripture ſpeaks of. So alſo where it is affirmed, that upon St. *Pauls* preaching and diſputing for two years in *Epheſus*, all *they which dwelt in* Aſia *heard the word of the Lord*: *Acts* 19. *ver.* 10. It is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Aſia*, whereof *Epheſus* at that time was the principal City. So alſo *Acts* 19. *verſ.* 22, 26, 31. and *Chap.* 20 *verſ.* 18. Finally, for the *Proconſular Aſia*, which together with *Helleſpont* and the *Iſles*, made up a government a part, exempt from the command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, it contained only *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countries lying about *Epheſus*. So witneſſeth S. *Hierom* for the *Chriſtian* writers, where he affirms, that although all the whole *Peninſula* have the name of the *Leſſer Aſia*; *Specialiter ubi* Epheſus *Civitas eſt*, Aſia *Vocatur*; yet more particularly the parts adjoyning unto *Epheſus* have the name of *Aſia*. And this appeareth by the diſtribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, diſtinct from the *Proconſular Aſia*, which we now inſiſt on.

So having cleared our way in regard of the name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the notion in the largeſt latitude; extending from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which account it reacheth from the 51 to the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and from the 36 to the 45 degree of *Latitude*: the length hereof from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, being eſtimated at 630 miles; the breadth from *Sinus Iſſicus* in *Silicia*, to the City of *Trabezond*, at 210. As for the ſituation of it, in reference to the *Heavenly* bodies, it lyeth almoſt in the ſame poſition with *Italy*, extending from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the middle *Parallel* of the ſixt: So that the longeſt ſummer day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen hours and a half; and one hour longer in thoſe parts which lie moſt towards the North.

The temperature of the air is exceeding ſound, and the ſoil generally exceeding fruitfull; abounding in moſt excellent paſtures, which breed a notable race of Horſes, of very good ſervice in the wars, if backed with *European* Riders; it being a by-word amongſt the *Turks*, that the Horſes of *Aſia*, and the Horſemen of *Europe* are of greateſt action. It was antiently very plentifull of all fruits, both for uſe and pleaſure, as ſtill it would be were it cultivated as in former times. Once very populous, and repleniſhed with goodly Cities, now in a manner waſte and deſolate; lamenting the deſtruction of

Bithynia.

4000 Towns; ſome of them deſtroyed by *Earthquakes*, (the falling likneſs of moſt great Cities in the Eaſt) but moſt by war; and have little now to boaſt of but the commodiouſneſs of the Havens, which are very many; though moſt of them but meanly traded, as in a Country ill manured, and of little *manufactures*.

The people antiently, eſpecially thoſe of *Greek* original, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very warlike and induſtrious: the reſt, eſpecially the *Lydians*, and thoſe of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleaſures. All of them at this time affected with the ſame diſeaſe; inſomuch that the *Turks*, (unleſs compelled thereto by extreme neceſſities) never inroll their Children in the number of *Janizaries*. The greateſt part of them generally profeſſe the *Chriſtian* faith; but overpowred by *Mahometaniſm*, which is here moſt prevalent: all followers of the Church of *Greece*, and ſubject all (except thoſe of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. And as they are of the *Communion* of that Church, ſo they retain the *Greek Liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not ſo well underſtood amongſt them as in former times, when it was more generally ſpoken there than it is at the preſent; now over-topped in moſt places by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues. And though in former times, by reaſon of the many *Greek* Colonies planted in this Country, the Conqueſt of it by *Alexander* the *Great*, and the ſubjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* race, that language became generally underſtood amongſt them; inſomuch as three of the *Greek Dialects*, *viz.* the *Dorick*, the *Ionian*, and the *Æolick*, were ſpoken here: yet did it never ſo prevail, as to become the Vulgar language of the people, or to extinguiſh any of the Vulgar tongues. For it is ſaid of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he underſtood two and twenty languages, without any *Interpreter*; which were no other than the languages of ſo many Nations ſubject to himſelf, whoſe Dominion was contained for the moſt part within *Aſia Minor*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida* in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Myſia*, *Tmolus* in *Lydia*, *Amamus* in *Cilicia*, and finally *Antetaurus*, and *Scordiſcus* in *Armenia Minor*: Out of which, for the moſt part, flow the chief Rivers hereof, that is to ſay, 1. *Iris* (now *Caſilmach.*) 2. *Thermodon.* 3. *Hallis* (now *Ottomangruch.*) 4. *Parthenius* (now *Diſop.*) 5. *Sangarius* (now *Sangri.*) All of them falling in the *Euxine Sea*. 6. *Aſcanius*. 7. *Rhyndacus*. 8. *Æſapus*, and 9. *Granicus*, paſſing into the *Propontis*. 10. *Simoeis*. 11. *Scamander*, called alſo *Xanthus*, ending their ſhort courſe in the *Helleſpont*. 12. *Caicus*. 13. *Hermus*. 14. *Cayſtrus*. and 15. *Meander*, loſing themſelves in the *Ægean*. 16. *Calbis*. 17. *Xanthus*, called alſo *Lycus*. 18. *Limyrus*. 19. *Cataractes*, diſchanelling into the *Mediterranean*; and 20. *Melas*, adding to the waters of the great river *Euphrates*. Of moſt of which we ſhall ſpeak more particularly in their ſeveral places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Diocele of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the *Greater*; the *Aſian Dioceſe* intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; together with the Provinces of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the Eaſt. But becauſe the names of many of thoſe Provinces were of new invention, and ſome of them of as ſhort continuance, we will conſider it according as it ſtood divided antiently, and before the *Romans* had made any conqueſts in it, into the Provinces of 1. *Bithynia*. 2. *Pontus*. 3. *Paphlagonia*. 4. *Galatia*. 5. *Cappadocia*. 6. *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the *Pontick Dioceſe*. 7. *Phrygia Minor*. 8. *Phrygia Major*. 9. *Myſia* the Greater and the Leſſer. 10. *Æolis* and *Ionia*. 11. *Lydia*. 12. *Caria*. 13. *Lycia*. 14. *Lycaonia*. 15. *Piſidia*. 16. *Pamphilia*. 17 the Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. 18. *Iſauria*. 19. *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the Eaſt, as before was ſaid.

1. *BITHYNIA.*

BITHYNIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the weſt, with part of the *Euxine*, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Myſia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at laſt *Bithynia*, and that as ſome ſay from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof; more probably from the *Thyni*, a people of *Thrace*, who paſſed over the *Boſphorus*, and ſubdued it, called therefore by ſome writers *Thraſia Aſiatica*. So witneſſeth the Poet *Claudian*, ſaying,

Thyni *Thraces erant, quæ nunc* Bithynia *fertur*.

By *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reaſon of its neighbourhood to the *Euxine*, and the *Pontick* Regions.

The Country naturally rich, and in thoſe parts hereof which lie next the *Boſphorus*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, ſo plentifully enriched with fruitfull hills, and pleaſant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Chriſtians*, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the ſo much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all thoſe former beauties by the careleſſeneſs of the *Turks*, who affect neither art, nor ſumptuoſitie, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers hereof are *Phillis*. 2. *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea; this laſt ariſing from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furtheſt parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3. *Aſcanius*, which riſing alſo in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*. Which with a lake in the ſame Country called *Lacus Aſcanius*, doth plainly manifeſt, that the *Bithynians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the ſon of *Gomer*, and grand-ſon of *Japhet*.

The

The Principal Towns hereof are 1. *Scutari*, over against the Haven of *Constantinople*, called anciently *Chrysopolis*, for that there the *Persians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of *Asia Minor*. An ample Town, well garrisoned within, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and watch-tower; and being furnished for defence with 20 pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Calcedon*, on the same shore also, a Colonie of the *Megarenses*, called *blind* by the *Oracle*, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and choosing the lesse convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Constantine* the *Great* resolve upon the same place also for his *Regal* City; but changed his resolutions on a kind of miracle: it being observed, that when his workmen began to draw the plat-form, some *Eagles* conveyed away their lines to the other side of the *Bosphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there assembled by command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repressing the heresie of *Nestorius*, in which were 500 and 30 Bishops: now so decayed, that it can only shew some few of the ruines of it; *Scutari* being risen on the fall thereof. 3. *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the son of *Zipes*, and grandchild to that *Bithynian* King, who so valiantly defended his own and his Countries libertie against *Calantus*, one of great *Alexanders* Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an hill, environed with a pleasant and delightfull plain, honoured with the seat and residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, when their affairs called them into the East, before the building of *Constantinople*; on that occasion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, especially in the persecution under *Diocletian*. In those times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the commodiousnes of the fresh springs which are thereabouts. 4. *Libussa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Ascanius*; memorable for the death and sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made prisoner to the *Romans*, when *Prusius* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by poyson. 5. *Prusa*, founded by another *Prusius*, whose name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in *Asia*: honoured for a long time with the residence of the *Turkish* Kings, till the removal of their seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the first; and still ennobled with the sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* race, except the Emperours themselves. By the *Turks* called *Bursa*. 6. *Nicæ*, or *Nicæa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but most commonly *Isnichs*, situate near the fennes of the River *Ascanius*, occasioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by some affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. First named *Antigonia*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicæa*, by the name of *Nice*, wife unto *Lisimachus*: both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*; which last had the happinesse to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those great Commmanders. Sufficiently famous both in *Ecclesiastical* and *Civil* story, for the first *General Council* there holden, by the appointment of *Constantine* the Great, *Anno* 314. for settling the peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the *Arian* Heresie. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318. yet of such high esteem for learning and piety, that never Council hath been held in so great an Honour. Here was also held the Council by the Empress *Irene*, for establishing the veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Nicene* Council, the Acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongst ignorant men. In which it was decreed by such doubty Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a *Legate* of the Eastern Churches; that they should be reverenced and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed *Trinity* it self. This City was also the *Imperial* City of the *Greek* Emperours, after the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, and there continued till the expulsion of the *Latines*, under these

Emperours of the GREEKS residing at *NICE*.

A. Ch.

1200 1 *Theodorus Lascaris*, son-in-Law to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, passed over into *Asia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of his Kingdom, containing *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygias*, both the *Mysias*, *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and *Ionia*.

1223 2 *John*, surnamed *Ducas*, the husband of *Irene* daughter of *Theodore Lascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, most of the Isles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it self.

1256 3 *Theodorus* II. the son of *Ducas*.

1259 4 *John* II. the son of *Theodore* the second, an Infant of about six years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.

1259 5 *Michael Palæologus*, descended from the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his *associate* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate successes, as well against the *Latines*, as some *Greek* Usurpers in *Thessalie* and *Peloponnesus*, especially the taking of *Constantinople*; he deprived the young Emperour of his sight, made himself sole Emperor, and left it unto his posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual disquiets, till the year 1452. when conquered by *Mahomet* the great, as before was said. But this recovery of *Constantinople* was the losse of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the *Imperial* seat, by *Sultan Ottonar*, *Anno* 1299. who presently thereupon took on himself the stile of *King*, from which before he had abstained.

Pontus.

As for the fortunes of the *Bithynia* it ſelf, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo*, and *Herodotus* ſpeak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of ſuch a King of theirs as *Bithynius*, I find ſome mention in my Authors; and poſſibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni*, in this expedition; that being the name rather of his Nation, than his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flouriſh of the *Roman* greatneſs, they begun to reign here ſome few generations, before the time of *Philip*, & *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which laſt, having other imployment, & lying out of the road towards *Perſia*, they were little troubled. *Calantus* one of *Alexanders* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquiſhed by them: and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexanders* greateſt Princes;) who though he humbled them for the preſent, yet got he neither title nor poſſeſſion by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Pruſias*, ſo ſhuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they ſtill preſerved their own eſtates. This *Pruſias*, when the *Romans* became ſo conſiderable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, peeced himſelf with them: and having aided them in their wars againſt *Philip*, and *Antiochus* both, and moſt unworthily promiſed to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for ſuccour) unto their Embaſſadors; made all ſure on this ſide. His ſon and Succeſſor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and reſtored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Feudatarie*, as did *Nicomedes*, his next Succeſſor, ſurnamed *Philometor*: who dying without iſſue in the time of *Auguſtus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing ſo till the diviſion of that Empire into the Eaſtern and Weſtern; when falling to the ſhare of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, who do ſtill poſſeſs it.

2. *PONTUS.*

PONTUS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the Weſt, with *Bithynia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, from *Bithynia*, to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*; but not of anſwerable breadth: and gives name to the Sea adjoyning, *à Ponto regione illi adjacente ità appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it; called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latines*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* comming on another occaſion, which we have ſpoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Maſters of it) into theſe four parts, viz. *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called. 2. *Pontus Galaticus*. 3. *Polemoniacus*, and 4. *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1. PONTUS, ſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Parthemius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*; had for the chief Cities thereof, 1. *Claudiopolis*, ſo called in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman Emperour*, as 2. *Flaviopolis*, in honor of *Flavius Veſpaſianus*; and 3. *Juliopolis*, in honor of the *Julian* family; all midland Towns. 4. *Dioſpolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, ſo called from a Temple conſecrated to *Jupiter*, of great reſort. 5. *Heraclea*, a Colonie of the *Phocians*, called for diſtinctions ſake, (there being many of that name) *Heraclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the ſeat or reſidence of a branch of the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern Chriſtians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into theſe parts: the firſt fixing here his Royal reſidence, commanded over this part of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*; the other poſſeſſing himſelf of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or Imperial City. But theſe two Empires, though of the ſame date, were of different deſtinies: that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperours reſiding at *Nice*, and partly ſeiſed on by the *Turks* in the beginning and firſt fortunes of the *Ottoman* family; the other keeping up the Majeſty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461. when ſubdued by *Mahomet* the *Great*. 6. *Phillium*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phillis*, upon which it is ſeated. 7. *Amaſtris*, the fartheſt Town of this part towards the Eaſt, on the Sea-ſide alſo; once of great ſtrength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, *Amiſus*, and other Towns, in the war againſt *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.

2. Eaſtward of *Pontus*, ſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*, as *Juſtin* the hiſtorian calls it, lyeth PONTUS GALATICUS, ſo named, becauſe added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were 1. *Sinope*, pleaſantly ſeated on a long point or *Promontory*, ſhooting into the main; remarkable in antient ſtory for the birth and ſepulture of *Mithridates*, before menrioned; & in the later times for being the chief ſeat of the *Iſfendiars*, a noble family of the *Turks*; who had taken it with the reſt of this tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the ſame year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was ſubdued by *Mahomet*. Firſt built by the *Mileſians*, and continuing in a *free eſtate*, til taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the *Metropolis* of that kingdom. 2. *Caſtamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Iſfendiars*, before mentioned; preferred by them for ſtrength and conveniency of ſituation, before *Heraclea*. or *Synope*. 3. *Themiſcyra*, now called *Favagoria*, ſeated on a ſpacious plain near unto the Sea, and antiently giving name to the Province adjoyning. 4. *Amaſia*, the birth-place of *Strabo* the *Geographer*, remarkable in the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtories for the *Martyrdom* of St. *Theodorus*, and of late times for being the reſidence of the eldeſt Sons of the *Grand Signeur*, ſent hither as ſoon as circumciſed, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongſt the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province: a midland Town, as alſo is 5. *Cabira*, cal'd afterward *Diopolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*; more for the trick which *Mithrid.* ther put upon *Lucullus*. For being wel acquainted with the covetouſ-

neſs

neſs of the *Romans*, he ſaw no better way to ſave himſelf and the reſt of his forces after the defeat, than to ſcatter his treaſures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his enemies might ſlacken the purſuit to collect the ſpoils, and he preſerve himſelf to another day; and ſo accordingly it proved. 6. *Comana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in ſafety by the trick aforeſaid, and thence eſcaped unto *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 horſe.

3. Eaſtward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies *POLEMONIACUS*, ſo calld by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium* a chief Town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the laſt King hereof; after whoſe death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Polemonium* on the Sea-ſide, ſpoken of before. 2. *Hermanaſſa*, a Sea-town alſo. More in the land, 3. *Neo-Cæſarea* (now *Nixaria*) the *Metropolis* of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it ſelf. 4. *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*; by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5. *Sebaſtia*, ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebaſtos*; a place of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt Towns in the *Leſſer Aſia*, which held out againſt *Tamerlane*: in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he cauſed 12000 men, women, & children, to be moſt cruelly buried alive in ſome hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpoſe. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where alſo *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turk* coming to the relief of *Sebaſtia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting men. The iſſue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having loſt 200000 of his ſouldiers, was himſelf taken priſoner, and carried by the inſolent Conqueror in an iron cage, againſt the bars whereof he beat out his brains. 6. *Barbaniſſa*. 7. *Megaloſſus*. 8. *Gozalvia*, *&c.* not much obſervable in ſtory.

In this part of *Pontus* is the riſe and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the banks whereof the *Amazons*, a ſort of warlike women, are ſaid to dwell; ſo called either *quaſi* ἀμάζας, becauſe they uſed to cut off their right pappes, that they might not be an inpediment to their ſhooting; or from ἀ and μάζα, *ſine pane*, becauſe they uſed not to eat bread; or from ἀμαζὼν, becauſe they uſed to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their husbands to theſe parts, about the time of the *Scythians* firſt irruptions into *Aſia*, in the time of *Seſoſtris* King of *Ægypt*. The leaders of this people into *Cappadocia*, where *Plinos* and *Scolpythus*, two young men of a great houſe, whom a contrary faction had baniſhed. They held a great hand over the *Themiſcyri*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At laſt they were by treachery all murdered: But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood, and extremity of grief and fear producing its uſual effect, deſperateneſs; they ſet upon the Conquerors, under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpeſia*; and not only otherthrew them, but alſo infinitely inlarged their Dominions, and for ſome time continued in great reputation: the names of whom, or of ſo many of them at leaſt as occur in ſtory, we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

The *Amazon Queens*.

1 *Lampedo*, *Marpeſia*, } First *Queens* of the *Amazons* in theſe parts.

2 *Orteva*.

3 *Antiopa*, whoſe ſiſters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theſeus* to ſingle combate, and were at laſt hardly vanquiſhed, to their eternal credits.

4. *Pentheſilea*, who came with a troop of brave *Viragos*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: ſhe invented the *Battail axe*, and was at laſt ſlain by *Pyrrhus*, ſon to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thaleſtris*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him that ſhe came to be his bedfellow; which done ſhe returned; and at laſt by little and little this female Nation was extinct. They uſed in matters of *copulation*, to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year: if they brought forth males, they ſent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them, and trained them up in all diſcipline of war and courage. Of theſe more elſewhere.

4. The moſt Eaſtern part of *Pontus*, called CAPPADOCIUS, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmoſt boundaries of this Country. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2. *Ceraſus*, by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought firſt to *Rome*, An. V. C. 680, called therefore *Ceraſa* by the *Latines*; brought firſt into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his war with *Mithridates*, no leſs deſerving for that ſervice to be made a God (as wittily *Tertullian* ſcoffs it) then *Bacchus* was for his tranſplanting of the Vine from the Eaſtern Countries. 3. *Iſchopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And ſo is alſo, 4. *Trapezus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni*, here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and theſe parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded firſt by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his ſon *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, fled into theſe parts, which willingly ſubmitted unto his command, *Anno* 1200. Here his poſterity flouriſhed in great proſperity, preſerving the Majeſty of the Empire in a better meaſure, than the *Conſtantinopolitans* themſelves, till the time of *David* the laſt Emperour; in whoſe reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*; the poor Emperor led priſoner unto *Greece*; and there cruelly murdered. A famous Emporie, and ſpecially for the trade of fiſh, caught by the people on the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea; here ſalted, and from hence tranſported in great quantities, to *Conſtantinople*, *Caffa*, and other places. And for their better help herein, it is ſaid that there is a Mountain not far from

Paphlagonia this City, affording a black ſtone, which being beaten in a Mortar ſerves inſtead of ſalt, wherewith they ſea ſon the fiſh, which they ſend abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Grecian* Emperor; for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* againſt the *Perſians*; and now the Station of ſuch Gallies, as are maintained by the *Grand Seigneur*, to ſcour the coaſts of the *Black Sea*, and ſecure their trade. More in the land ſtand 5 *Zephiriam*, 6 *Aza*, 7 *Cocalia*, 8 *Cordyle*, and many others named in *Ptolemy*, but not elſe obſervable.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were called *LEUCOSYRI*, or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings deſcended from the Royal houſe of *Achmenes* King of *Perſia*. The firſt of them called *Mithridates*, one of the ſeven Competitors for the *Perſian* Kingdom, on the death of *Cambyſes*. But that honour falling on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he ſeated himſelf in theſe remote parts of *Aſia Minor*; the Anceſtor of many great and puiſſant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own name, *Regum Orientis poſt* Alexandrum *Magnum Maximus*, the moſt potent King of all the Eaſt ſince the time of *Alexander* the great, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities both in war & counſel, and one who longer held it out againſt the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon*, and *Syria*, had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part againſt *Ariſtonicus*; who would not conſent to the admiſſion of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the will of *Attalus*. Afterwards, conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Aſia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Souldiers diſperſed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *Engliſh*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then reſident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* maſſacred all the *French*, inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He diſpoſſeſſed *Nicomedes*, ſon to *Pruſias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ariobarzanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philomones*, King of *Paphlagonia*, of their eſtates; becauſe they perſiſted faithful to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebell, poſſeſſed himſelf of *Athens*, and divers places of importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Aſia*; and allured all the Iſles: except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having diſturbed their victories, and much ſhaken their eſtate, for the ſpace of 40 years, he was with much ado vanquiſhed by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greateſt Souldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puiſſance ſo much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of his ſon *Pharnaces*, againſt him; which he no ſooner heard, but he would have poiſoned himſelf; But having formerly ſo uſed his body to a kind of poiſon allaied, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridat*) that the *venom* could not work upon him; he ſlew himſelf. He is ſaid to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have ſpoken perfectly the languages of 22. Nations; the languages of ſo many Nations which were ſubject to him. But neither his learning nor his courage could preſerve him from thoſe common miſeries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatneſs. And ſo ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troubleſom to the *Romans*, but withall very beneficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armeniaes*: inſomuch as it is truly ſaid by *L. Florus*, *totum penè Orientem & Septentrionē involvit*, that in his ruines he involved both the Eaſt, and North. But to proceed, after his death the kingdom continued unto his poſterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, til the time of *Nero*: when *Polemo* the laſt King hereof dying without iſſue, it was *cantoned* & divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was called *Polemoniacus*, retaining the dignity of a Province, diſtinct and ſeparate. And ſo it remained til the reign of *Conſtantine* the *great*, who changing the names, leſſening the bounds, and increaſing the number of the Provinces; left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, in the ſtate he found it. And for the reſt, he caſt it into two new Provinces, that towards the Eaſt, retaining the name, but not the bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæſarea*, *Ceraſus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palæmonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, called afterwards *Juſtiniana*; of which *Neo-Cæſarea* was the *Metropolis*. That towards the Eaſt, ſeparated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, by the River *Parthemius*, he cauſed to be called *Helenopontus*, by the name of his Mother; and thereunto aſſigned the Cities of *Amaſia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Ægeum Climacus*, *Sinope*, *Amiſus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this diviſion held not long, both being united into one, and called *Helenopontus*, by *Juſtinian*; continuing after that a member of the *Eaſtern* Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni* from *Conſtantinople*; whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is ſaid. But their eſtates being overthrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it.

The Arms of the Emperous of *Trabezond*, the greateſt Princes of theſe parts, till the *Turks* ſubdued them, were *Or*, an Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. *PAPHLAGONIA.*

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the Weſt, by the River *Parthemius*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; on the North, with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*, which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the ſon of *Phineus*, eſtated in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Countrey was but ſmall, and of little power, and conſequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of ſuch as were, were 1. *Gangra*, obſervable for a Council holden there in the *Primitive* times, *Anno* 339. commonly called *Synodus Gangrenſis*. 2. *Conica*, or *Coniata*, of ſo convenient a ſituation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was maſter

of this Countrey. 3. *Pompeiopolis*, raised out of the foundations of some lesser town, by *Pompey* the great, and by him so named. 4. *Germanopolis*. 5. *Xoana*. 6. *Andrapa*, called afterwards *Nova Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*. *Galatia.*

This Province, though but small in circuit, was heretofore the seat of four different Nations, *viz.* 1. The *Tibareni*, of whom it is said, that they never waged war on any enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand, of the time and place of their fight. 2. The *Heptacometæ*. 3. The *Mossynoeci*, both which were a people so beastly and shameless, that they used to perform the work of generation in publique; not knowing that *Multa sunt honestè facta, quæ sunt turpia visu*: And 4. the *Heneti*, to whom the *Ventians*, as we have already said, do owe their first original. The Kings which ruled in this Country, derived themselves from *Philomones*, who assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*; in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philomenia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were alwaies favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, til the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Lesser Asia*, deprived *Philomones*, then King hereof, and took the kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief towns and places of it. Restored again unto his kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Countrey being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and desolated in the course of that war; it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of Saint *Peter*, who writing to the *Jewes*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Ptolemie*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus*, by the Emperour *Constantine*: part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and called *Honorius*, in honour of his son *Honorius*; whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly so called, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Justinian* the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again; the whole Country, as before limited, was governed by an *Imperial* Officer, whom he called *Prætor Justinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Latines*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabezond*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

4. GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the East, with *Cappadocia*; on the West, with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Metapontus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*; on the South, with *Lycaonia*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Mysia* and the lesser *Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Country. It was also called *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Grecians*; who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, where commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas*, *Græco-Galli*, and the Country suitably *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Grecians* notwithstanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Partie) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Country. And it continued so till S. *Hierom's* days, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on S. *Pauls* Epistle to this People, that it was *Simillima Trevirensium*, a language like to that of the *Trevers*, or people of *Triers*. A sure and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of fruits, even unto voluptuousnes; and providently provided of the stone called the *Amethyst*, which is said to preserve from drunkennes the man that weareth it. The name doth signifie as much, derived from A *privativum*, and μέθυσος, *ebrius*, which cometh from μέθυ, signifying wine.

The people had a custom in their publique funerals, to cast letters fairly written, into that last and fatal fire, wherin the dead body was to be burned; supposing that their friends should read them in the other world. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency wherof they excelled all Nations: insomuch that *Athenæus* telleth us of one *Ariamnes* a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Buls, Sheep, Swine, and other provisions, boyled in great Caldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Boothes erected for that entertainment. A brave flash of a vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1. *Ancyra*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tectosages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country; memorable in Church-story for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, *An.* 299. called *Synodus Ancyrana*, but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamlets*, now called *Angauri*. 2. *Olenus*. 3. *Agrinama*, Cities of the same people also. 4. *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both names) the chief City of the *Trocmi* or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen statue of *Jupiter*, whose temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. 5. *Androsia*. 6. *Phabarena*, Cities of that nation also. 7. *Thermæ*, a *Roman* Colonie, so called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Toliboski*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Tolistobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8. *Talachbachora*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Proseliminitæ*; who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Ptolemy* but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of

all

Cappadocia. all which Nations, only the *Tectosages* were of *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Countrymen under the conduct of *Belgius* and *Brennus*, having ransacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expulsed by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lammorius* and *Lutorius*, they ferried over the *Hellespont*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make war without their assistance. The very *Switzers* of that age; as *mercenary*, but more *faithful* unto those that hired them. But being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbor Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*; they inforced *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had setled about the *Hellespont*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrained to contein themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Gallogræcia*. Here for a while they kept their antient courage and estimation, molesting many times their neighbors, and sometimes setting themselves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Galls* only in name, retaining little in them of their Ancestors valour. For as most plants and trees lose much of their vertue, being transplanted into another soil: so these men lost their native courage, strength, and hardiness, being weakned by the *Asian* pleasures and delicacies. And as *Tully* saith, for a man to be good in other places, is no mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praise-worthy: so might one have said to the *Galls*, that to be couragious and patient of travel amongst the mountains, was no whit to be admired; but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so far from assailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A war which *Manlius* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable act performed herein, but that of *Chiomena* the Kings wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilst he busied himself in telling the money agreed on for her ransom, to cut off his head; which she presented to her husband. But *Manlius* got little honour by this success, not being welcomed with a *triumph*, at his coming home, according to the *Roman* custom; because he undertook the war of his own accord, without commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Feudatories*. This hapned *An.* U. C. 564. After which time, I find *Deiotarus*, by consent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his war against *Cæsar*, incurred the anger of the *Victor*; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the first President or Governour of it: enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticus*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperour *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*; the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris*, from its *medicinal* waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire it was partly seised on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabezond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

5. CAPPADOCIA.

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the East, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South, with *Lycaonia*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of a River, as *Plinie* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom: affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabaster*, good store of *Chrystal*, *Jasper*, and the *Onyx* stone. But the greatest wealth hereof is their breed of horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any service they can be put to. And this is universal, in all parts of the Country, but not the other: there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the spurs and branches of the *Amitaurus*; which is a chain of hils thrusting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themselves unto the North, upon the edges of this Country, and the two *Armeniaes*. Here is also in this Country the mountain *Argæus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of perspicuous eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of wickedness, that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* proverb, of τειὰ Καππὰ κάκιστα, they had some proverbs to themselves: Καππαδόκης, & Καππαδόκιον τέρας, that is to say, a *man of Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian Monster*, being used *proverbially*, to signifie a man most extremely wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, understand him rightly. And they made good the *Proverb* in the times of the Gospel: *Gregory* that bloody butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Eustathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*, being all of this Country. Yet such is the influence of *Christianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and restrained by it; that this Countrey afforded as many godly Prelates, and couragious Martyrs, as any others whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred; who with *Gregory Nyssen*, and

and St. *Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy, St. *George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of souldiers under *Diocleſian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, than any other Saints in all the *Calender*, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by K. *Ed.* the third. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venemous also; insomuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poison to the snake, and killed him. *Cappadocia*

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1. *Halys*, spoken of before, which had here its fountain and Original; the end of *Crœsus* Empire both in site and fate, the utmost bound of his dominions on that side: which purposing to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2. *Iris*, which ariseth in this Country also, and passing thorough it, and a part of *Pontus*, dischanelleth it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, by him called *Cæsarea*: the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renowned St. *Basil*. 2. *Nyssa*, the See of *Gregory*, surnamed *Nyssenus*, the brother of *Basil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory*, surnamed *Nazianzenus*: three men, which as for the piety of their conversation they were not equalled in those times; so for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, nothing inferiour to the most eminent of the antient *Grecians*. 4. *Tyana*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia secunda*, after the subdivision of it by the Emperour *Valens*. 5. *Archelais*, in the *Præfecture* of *Garduacreta*, so called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or repairer of it. 6. *Comana*, for distinctions sake called *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*; by *Ptolemie* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is also *Nyssa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Bellona*, whose *Priests*, and other inferiour Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the *Priests* received the *Revenue* of the Region next adjoyning to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the same kinred also. 7. *Dio-Cæsarea*; called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8. *Faustinopolis*, so called in honour of *Faustina*, wife of the Emperour *Antoninus*. 9. *Andraca*. 10. *Phiara*, 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campe*, spoken of by *Ptolemie*, with many others as obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the antient Writers, is 13. *Erzirum*, situate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cause made the *Rendez-vous*, or place of meeting for the *Turkish* Souldiers when there is any expedition in hand against the *Persian*; at which place also after the ending of the war for the present year, they are disbanded and sent home to their several quarters. And 14. *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolemie*; but memorable for the great battel fought in sight thereof, between *Crœsus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*; in which *Crœsus* having lost the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the *Oracle* true (though not in the sense which he expected) that *Crœsus* passing over the River *Halys*, should overthrow a great estate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Persians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been so fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we shall not trouble our selves to repeat it here: Nor shall we need to say more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Capithorim* out of *Egypt* from the rest of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been said. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: subjected by the *Persian*, with the rest of *Asia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Crœsus*, who before had given the law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Mysians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given, together with *Atossa* his Sister, to *Pharnaces* a noble *Persian*, who had saved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was a hunting. A nobly loyalty, and no less royally rewarded. From him descended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*; continuing stedfast in his duty to the Crown of *Persia*, when almost all the rest of the Kings of *Asia* yeelded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Persia*. But after his decease, *Perdiccas* having the command of the *Army*, set upon him, vanquished him, and most cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kinred as could be found. One of his sons, who fortunately had escaped this slaughter, spying his time, when the *Macedonians* were at wars amongst themselves, recovered his estate again, and passed it over to his off-spring: continuing in his line, without any subjection, till the time of that *Ariobarzanes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Successors, by their *curtesie* only: Continuing yet in state of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the last King hereof. Who having angred *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life-time of *Augustus*, as did others of the *tributary* States and Princes; was by him then possessed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting somewhat against the State. Where the old Prince, even spent with Age, the Gout, and some other diseases, had without question been condemned by the servile Senate; but that one of the witnesses deposed, that he had said, that *if ever he went back into* Cappadocia, Tiberius *should find*, quales sibi nervi essent, *what a man he was*. Which moved such a laughter in the *Senate*, the old King being neither able to sit nor stand, that he was dismissed: *Tiberius* thinking that he could not punish him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King construed to the best, and in the way of gratitude, bequeathed his kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly inlarged by the addition of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and so it stood in the time of

Ptole-

Armenia Minor.

Ptolemy, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided beſides thoſe into theſe eight *Præfectures*, that is to ſay, *Clanianienſis*, *Sargaranſene*, *Gardiocreta*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycaonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycaonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Piſidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themſelves, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*; it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Caſarea*, as is ſaid before, was the *Metropolitan*: and ſo remained, till the Emperour *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpoſe to deſpight St. *Baſil*, who oppoſed that Hereſie, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia ſecunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, til the erecting of the new Empire of *Trabezond*; together with which it fell unto the hands of the *Turks*; by whom the whole Province with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Amaſia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his reſidence; and is ſaid to yield yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* 60000 Ducats.

6. *ARMENIA MINOR.*

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South, with Mount *Taurus*, which ſeparates it from *Cilicia*; on the Weſt, and North, with a long chain of Hills, called *Mons Scordiſcus*, by ſome called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reaſon of the name hereafter.

The Country of the ſame nature with *Cappadocia*, before deſcribed; in ſome parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* ſo incloſed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance: in others pleaſant and delightfull, well watered with ſweet ſtreams, and ſome fair Rivers iſſuing out of the Mountains, the principal whereof is *Melas*, ſo called from the *blackneſs* of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into theſe four Regions, that is to ſay, *Laviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*; *Mariana* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*: each of which had their ſeveral Cities, whoſe names are to be found in *Ptolemie*. The principal 1. *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region ſo called, and the *Metropolis* of the leſſer *Armenia*. Called afterwards *Malaxia*, and now *Suur*: the territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferiour to the beſt of *Greece*. The City ſaid by *Onuphrius* to be a Colony of the *Romans*; much ſpoken of by *Euſebius*, and other writers of *Eccleſiaſtical* ſtory, for the piety of the *Chriſtians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Perſecution*. 2. *Nicopolis*, and 3. *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained againſt the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenias*. 4. *Garnace*, a well-fortified town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5. *Cucuſun*, and 6. *Arabyſſus*, memorable for the exile of St. *Chryſoſtom*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, confined unto theſe places by the power and malice of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxie* in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their incurſions and Colonies poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*: continuing part of their eſtate till the war of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; who being diſcomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thouſand horſe to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had maried his daughter. By whom at firſt neglected, and not ſuffered to come into his preſence; but afterwards on the apprehenſion of the common danger, more eſteemed and ſet by: inſomuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refuſal of *Tigranes* to yeeld him up when required by the *Romans*, occaſioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into theſe parts, ſubduing all before him to the banks of *Euphrates*. His victories being ſeconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Auguſtus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other ſide of that River, though conquered alſo in that war, not being taken into the accompt of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan*; *Auguſtus* thinking it an high point of wiſdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond thoſe banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eaſtern Empire; when waſted by the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by the *Turks*; by whom called *Genech*, or as ſome ſay *Pegia*.

And ſo much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Dioceſe, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*; converted to the *Chriſtian* faith by the two great Apoſtles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*; as appeareth by St. *Paul's* Epiſtle to the *Galatians*, and St. *Peter's* to the *Strangers* diſperſed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Aſia*, and *Bithynia*.

7. *ASIA PROPRIA.*

Come we now to the ASIAN *Dioceſe*, and firſt to that part thereof which *Ptolemy* and others (for the reaſons ſpoken of before) call *Aſia Propria*. Antiently the moſt rich and flouriſhing part of all this *Peninſula*; and ſo affirmed to be by *Tullie*, who telleth us that the *tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly ſufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Aſia verò tam opima eſt & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine paſtionis, & multitudine earum rerum quæ exportentur, facilè omnibus terris antecellat*. But as for *Aſia* (ſaith he) it is ſo fertile and ſo rich, that for the fruitfulneſs of the fields, variety of fruits, largneſs of paſture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence, it very eaſily excelled all other Countreys. The

for-

fortunes of the ſeveral Provinces we ſhall ſee anon. Brought under the command of the *Perſians*, they continued ſubject to that Crown, for ſome generations: but at laſt taken from them by the *Grecians*, under the proſperous enſigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whoſe deceaſe, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Aſia* fell to the ſhare of *Antigonus*, whoſe ſon *Demetrius* ſeized on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Aſia* to *Seleucus Nicanor*, King of *Syria* and the Eaſt, being alſo one of *Alexanders* heirs. The ſixt from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the *Great*, who waging war with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the *Romans*; and otherwiſe practiſing againſt their eſtate, provoked the *Senate* of *Rome* to ſend *Scipio* (ſurnamed from his *Aſian* victories) *Aſiaticus*, againſt him; who compelled him to forſake *Aſia*, which the *Romans* preſently took into their poſſeſſions. But finding it agreeable to the preſent eſtate of their Affairs, (the kingdom of *Macedonia* ſtanding in their way) to make further uſe of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former war, they gave unto *Eumenes* the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodians*: knowing full well, that they could eaſily take them back again, when they ſaw occaſion. More hereof in the ſtory of the Kings of *Pergamus*; on the deceaſe of *Attalus* the laſt King thereof, theſe Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*. *Phrygia minor.*

It contained only after the accompt of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will conſider it as divided into 1 *Phrygia Minor*. 2 *Phrygia Major*. 3 *Myſia*. 4 *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* more eſpecially ſo called. 5 *Lydia*, and 6 *Caria*.

8. *PHRYGIA MINOR.*

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Myſia*, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia*; on the Weſt, with the *Helleſpont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*; on the South, with the *Ægean* Sea. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx* a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as ſome ſay, from *Phryxus*, the ſon of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous ſnares of his Mother-in-law, did here ſeat himſelf. *Minor* was added to it to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was alſo called *Phrygia Helleſpontiaca*, from its ſituation on that *Streight*: and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it; by which name it occurreth in the book of the *Acts*. It was called alſo *Epictetus*, but the reaſon of the name I find not, except it came from the *Epicteti*, a People dwelling on the Eaſt parts of *Bithynia*, and conſequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Scamander*, on whoſe Banks ſtood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Heſiod* with the title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Countrey a little before they were to be maried, uſed to bath themſelves, and to ſay theſe words, λαβε σ μῦ Σκαμανδρε παρθενίαν, that is to ſay, *Take O* Scamander *my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River-god, and ſo deflowred *Callirhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another: occaſioning thereby the leaving off of this fooliſh cuſtome. It was alſo called *Xanthus* by the *Poets*, *Xanthumq́ bibiſſent*, as in *Virgil*; and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his firſt Epiſtle uſeth *Lyciam haſtam*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus* Lyciam *tepefecerat haſtam*) to ſignifie a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2. *Æſapus*, parting this little Region from the *Leſſer Myſia*, the boundary of it on the North; as the Promontory called *Lectium*, is the furtheſt point of it towards the South. 3. *Simoeis*, now called *Simores*, falling into the *Helleſpont* not far from the Promontorie called *Rhœteum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*;) but riſing out of Mount *Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father expoſed to the fury of wild Beaſts) judged the controverſy of the golden ball in favour of *Venus*; reſpecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wiſdom of *Pallas*, but tranſported with a ſenſual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dardanum*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Aſſus*, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 13. by *Plinie* called *Apollonia*; who telleth us that the earth about it is of ſuch a nature, that it will conſume a dead body in forty days. 3. *Trajanopolis*, whoſe name declareth its founder. 4. *Lyrneſſus*, on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, deſtroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the very firſt beginnings of the *Trojan* war, who brought thence amongſt other captives the Lady *Briſeis*, reſerved by *Achilles* to himſelf for his part of the bootie, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which cauſed ſuch a deep diſpleaſure in him, that he would not goe into the field, till ſhe were reſtored. 5. *Sigæum*, the Port-town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the ſame name. 6. *Troy*, ſituate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the Eaſt; called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus* for the reaſon to be ſhewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations deſire to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as ſome write) yet ſeen in the ruines, which with a kind of majeſty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, conſiſting of a black hard ſtone cut four-ſquare; ſome remnants of the Turrets which ſtood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombs and monuments of curious workmanſhip. But certainly theſe are not the ruines of that *Ilium*, which was deſtroyed by the *Grecians*, but 7. *Troas*, or *New Troy*, built ſome four miles from the ſituation of the old, by *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains; who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander* the *Great*, who begun the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called

Troas

Phrygia minor.

Troas only, and by that name mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruine only; but every day made more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the ſtones and Pillars of it to *Conſtantinople*, to adorn the houſes of the *Baſſas*. 7. *Scamandria*, a ſtrong piece, but of later foundation; cunningly ſurpriſed by *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*, in the time of a funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this ſtory with you.

The KINGS of *TROY*.

A. M.

2487 1 *Dardanus*, ſon to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Jaſius*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that verſe of *Virgil*,

Dardanus Iliacæ *primus pater urbis, & autor.*
Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* race,
Dardanus the firſt founder was.

2518 2 *Erichthonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.

2593 3 *Tros*, the ſon of *Erichthonius*, who ſo much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the people *Troës*. By ſupporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* againſt his ſon *Jupiter*, he loſt his own ſon *Ganimedes*: who being taken priſoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Enſign, is by the Poets ſaid to have been ſnatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.

2653 4 *Ilus*, the ſon of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace called *Ilium*; and did withall ſo enlarge the City, and added ſo much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turrets of it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called Πύργοι, and ſometimes Πύργαμα, occaſioned the whole City to be called *Pergamus*. 54.

2707 5 *Laomedon*, who new-built *Troy*: which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (juſtly conceiving diſpleaſure againſt the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himſelf being ſlain the later time. 36.

2743 6 *Priamus*, who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his ſon *Paris* to raviſh *Helena*, wife to *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their antient quarrel: who after a ten years ſiege, forced the Town, having loſt of their own men 860000. and killed 666000 of the *Trojans*, and their Aſſociates, A.M. 2783. So as that of *Ovid* was moſt true,

Jam ſeges eſt ubi Troja *fuit, reſecandaq; falce,*
Luxuriat Phrygio *ſanguine pinguis humus.*
Corn fit for ſithes now grows where *Troy* once ſtood,
And the ſoyl's fatted with the *Phrygian* bloud.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be conſidered. Firſt, whether the *Grecians* in theſe ten years lay continually before it: and it ſeems they did not; but that rather they did beat up and down, waſting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the firſt nine years; and in the tenth only laid a formal ſiege. This is the more probable, becauſe that in the tenth year of the war, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have ſat on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders: which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had ſo long together lain in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken: and here we find a difference. For ſome Hiſtorians tell us, that *Æneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the war, or diſcontended that it was not managed by their ſole advice, or otherwiſe corrupted by the *Grecians*, betrayed it to the enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Æneas*, whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth us of a *wooden-horſe*, wherein divers of the *Greek Princes* lay hidden, which by *Sinon*, one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy*-gates: and that the people deſirous of that monument of the enemies flight, made a breach in their walls, the gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on hiſtory, it is thought by ſome, that over the *Scæan* Gate where the *Greeks* entred, was the portraiture of a large and ſtately horſe: and by others, that the walls were battered by a *wooden Engin* called an *Horſe*, as the *Romans* in after-ages uſed a like Engin called a *Ram*. Neither of which is much improbable: but with me perſwade not the integrity of *Antenor* or *Æneas*, for whoſe ſakes the fable of the *wooden horſe* was firſt invented.

The City being thus deſtroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forſaken it, began to think of ſome other place for their habitation: which having often ſhifted, they fixed at laſt by advice of an *Oracle*, ſome four miles from the former; giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and ſorry village when *Alexander* came thither; who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had, and a mean one too) offered up his own ſhield, and took down another, which he uſed after in his fights againſt the *Perſians*; honouring it with gifts, and promiſing the people to rebuild and inlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good was performed by *Lyſimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Troas*, at laſt *Troas* ſimply. A free City it continued till the war of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; in the courſe whereof *Fimbria* a *Roman Queſtor* having ſeditiouſly ſlain the Conſul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himſelf Maſter of the Army; being refuſed entrance here as a thief and a rebel, beſieged the City, and in the ſpace of eleven days took it. And when he boaſted that he had done as much in eleven dayes as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilians* tartly anſwered, *That they wanted*

ted an Hector *to defend them*. Afterwards *Julius Cæsar*, emulous of *Alexanders* attempts, and descended from *Julus* of *Trojan* race, restored them to their liberty, and inlarged their territories: a *Colonie*, and an *University* of the *Romans* of no mean esteem. But time and war, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto rubbish, as before was said. *Phrygia major.*

In the distributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, this little Region, with that of *Mysia Helleſpontiaca* adjoining to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Helleſpontus*, subject with *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Asian* Isles, to the exempt jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Following the fortunes of *Constantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Latines*, it became then subject to the *Greek* Emperors residing at *Nice*; conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. In the division of whose Empire on the death of the second *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Helleſpont*, with part of the greater *Mysia*, and *Æolis*, adjoining to them, and some part of *Lydia*, were seized upon by *Carasus*, a man of great power amongst the *Turks*, who here erected a small kingdom, called from him *Carasia*, or *Caraſi-illi*; long since swallowed up by the *Ottoman* race, in the time of *Orchanes*, son of *Ottoman*, and the second King of that house.

9. PHRYGIA MAJOR.

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Galatia*; on the West, with *Mysia*, interposed betwixt it and the lesser *Phrygia*; on the North, with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called; on the South, with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reasons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for distinctions sake, because the *greater* of the two.

The People of this Country were antiently more *superstitious* than the other *Asians*, as appeareth by the rites used in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and some other Godesses: said to be also the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the most part men of after-wits, and all for *had I wist*; whence the Proverb, *Sero sapiunt Phryges*, applyed to those who wanted forecast, and knew better to lament misfortunes than to keep them off; and used not to bethink themselves of what would follow, till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightness of conversation; and for fear they should not of themselves be wanton enough, their very *Musick* was so fitted as to dispose them to *lasciviousness*. Where by the way, I find three sorts of *Musick* spoken of amongst the Antients: the first, that which *Aristotle* calleth ἠθικὸν, because it setled and composed the affections; and *Boëtius*, the *Lydian Musick*, because much used by that people, before corrupted by long ease and ill example. It consisted principally of long notes or *Spondees*, such as is that supposed to be which *Elisha* called for, *Kings* 1.*ch*.3.*v*.15. to invite the spirit of prophesie to him; and was played by *David* before *Saul*, to drive away the ill spirit from him. And of this sort was the *Church-Musick* of the *Primitive* times, fitted to calm mens passions, and raise their devotions; *ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as Saint *Augustine* hath it) *assurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleasure of the ears the passions might be calmed, and the soul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The second sort is that which *Aristotle* calleth πρακτικὸν, or *Active*, (as the other ἠθικὸν or *moral*) commending it before the other in the education of youth, because more stirring them to action; consisting of *Dactiles*, or one long note, and two short ones, by him and *Boëtius* both called *Dorian*, as most peculiar to that people. The third and last by the Philosopher called ἐνθουσιαστικὸν, or ravishing, because it unhingeth the affections, and stirreth men to lascivious gestures, and wanton thoughts; consisting of short notes or *Tribrachies*. *Boëtius* terms it *Phrygian*, as most in use amongst this loose and ungoverned nation; such as the *French Musick* in our age. A sort of Musick forbidden to be used by *Aristotle*, but upon the *Theatre*, for contentation of the rude and unpolished people, by reason of that influence which it had upon mens behaviour. *Mutatâ Musica* (saith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores*; *Curandum itaq; ut* Musica *quàm gravissima & sedatissima retineatur*; that is to say, the change of *Musick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore to be taken in the Common-Wealth, that the Musick be composed and grave, and such only used. But see how far this fidling humor hath led me out of the way; I return again.

The Country very rich and pleasant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marsyas*. Of which the former hath its spring or fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the banks whereof standeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The later was so called from one *Marsyas*, who striving with *Apollo* for preheminence in *Musick*, was by him flead; which fact (say the Poets) was so lamented, that from the tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Towns 1 *Gordion*, the seat of *Gordius*, who from a plowman being raised and chosen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in such a knot, that the Monarchy of the world was promised to him that could untie it; which when *Alexander* had tried and could not undo it, he cut it with his sword. 2 *Midæum*, the seat of *Midas*, son to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched should be turned into gold; which petition granted, he was almost starved, his very victual turned into gold, 'til he had repealed his wish; and afterward for preferring *Pan*'s Pipe before *Apollo*'s Harp, his head was adorned with a comely pair of Asses ears. 3. *Colosse*, where dwelt the *Colossians*, to whom Saint *Paul* writ one of his Epistles. 4. *Pessinus*, where the Godess *Cybele* being worshipped, was called *Dea Pessinuncia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they should be Lords of the world, if they could get this Godess into their possession. Hereupon they send to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to please a potent neighbour, especially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as descended from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their request, and the Godess is shipp'd away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckinesse of fortune. The Ship, Godess and all made a stand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forward by force

Mysia.

or art. It hapned that one of the Vestal Virgins named *Claudia*, being suspected of unchastity, resolved to put her self upon this experiment: and fastning her girdle to the ship, prayed to the Godess, that if she were causelesly suspected, the ship might be suffered to go forward, which was no sooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the ship up the water to *Rome*, where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot placed in it also; but neither rightly. Not far off stood the mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usual residence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5 *Apamea*, situate not far from the banks of *Meander*, antiently a most flourishing Emporie, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Countrey, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*: making 6 *Synnada*, the *Metropolis* of the first. 7 *Hierapolis*, and 8 *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in those times, the principal of the other Province. 9 *Juliopolis*, and 10 *Tiberiopolis*, so called from the Emperours to whose honour dedicated. 11 *Dorylæum*, &c. Not known unto the antient Writers, but of more note in modern stories, are 1. *Sagnta*, the habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2 *Chara-chisar*, by the *Grecians* called *Melampyrgus*, or the *Black Tower*. 3 *Billexuga*, 4 *Einegiol*, places of consequence and importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the Christians, in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest son of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz* the eldest son of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the posterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preserve his memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he first took up his dwelling in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Hellespont*; where was antiently a City and Territory called *Ascania*, some Isles adjoining called *Insulæ Ascaniæ*, the name of *Ascanius* also very frequent in *Troy* it self. An antient people they were doubtless, esteemed the antientest of the world by *Psamnuticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this experiment. Desirous to inform himself to what Nation the privilege of Antiquity did of right belong, he caused two children to be kept in a fold, where they were suckled by goats; all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties, to have recourse to them. All the language which the children learned from their speechlesse nurses, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language signifieth bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their side. But other Nations of the world not yielding to this sentence, by a *Writ of Errour*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impannell'd a new *Jurie*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* side, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like use of this experiment, to prove the *High-Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world: because *Becker* in that language signifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Countrey reigned *Niobe*, who preferring her self before *Latona*, the mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her children slain before her face by an unseen means, and was her self turned into a stone, as the Poets fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in hell up to the chin in water, and that too under a tree whose fruit toucheth his lips; yet both the one and the other flie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*,

Tibi Tantale *nullæ*
Deprenduntur aquæ, quæq; imminet, effugit arbor.

In English thus,

Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those waters tast,
The tree just at thy lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the stronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battel of *Ipsus*, to *Seleucus* the Conquerour, the first King of that race: following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, til they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to it the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it: the one called *Salutaris*, from some miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other called *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was *Prafect* for the *Pratorium* of the East, and divers years before had begun his honors with the *Lieutenantship* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinopolitans*, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the last King of that race: when seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkish* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; extorted shortly from his heirs by the house of *Ottoman*.

10. *MYSIA.*

Interposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Countrey of MYSIA, bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*; on the West, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with parts of *Bithynia*,

Bithynia, *Propontis*, and the *Helleſpont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Myſians*, the Inhabitants of it. *Myſia.*

Whether theſe *Myſians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or ſome inter-lopers which thruſt in afterwards amongſt them, I find not determined. Moſt probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*; being as ſuperſtitious in the worſhip of their ſeveral *Deities*, as any *Phrygian of them all*; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongſt them, by them called *Myſæ*. A people of ſo baſe and contemptible quality, that it grew into a common proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Myſiorum poſtremus*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that called *Olympus*, ſituate in the north-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Myſius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; ſo the people of the *Greater Myſia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Myſii* or *Mœſi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, thoſe of moſt note beſides *Æſopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, are 1. *Caicus*, on whoſe banks ſtands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence paſſeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elæa*; and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his fountain in *Myſia Major*, and paſſing through *Myſia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his firſt eſſay againſt the *Perſians*: by whom upon the firſt noiſe of his preparations he was ſo ſlighted, that *Darius* K. of *Perſia*, gave command to his Lieutenants reſiding in *Aſia Minor*, that they ſhould take him alive, whip him with rods, and ſo convey him to his preſence; A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Perſians*. But *Alexander* ſoon taught them another leſſon. For though the *Perſians* were poſſeſſed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to ſtop his paſſage; yet he reſolved to charge them in the face of their ſtrength: knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of ſo great advantage, he ſhould not only leſſen them in point of reputation, but beget an opinion of himſelf that he was invincible. And ſo accordingly it proved, the *Perſians* being vanquiſhed by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Aſia*, ſubmitting to him on the noiſe of the Victory (as an Enemy not to be reſiſted upon equal terms) ſome few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wiſely adviſed by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a paſſage, ſhould with his ableſt forces oppoſe the *Aſſailant*; becauſe in all Invaſions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only diſhearten their Souldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers, of being ſuccoured and defended by ſuch weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Perſian* Commanders had obſerved either here, or at *Pylæ Ciliciæ*, ſpoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not ſo eaſily ſubverted the *Perſian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or elſe prodigiouſly beſotted.

It is divided commonly into *Myſia Minor*, or the *Leſſer Myſia*, which lying on the Weſt towards *Troas* and the *Helleſpont*, is called ſometimes *Myſia Helleſpontiaca*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Conſular Helleſpont*: and *Myſia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Myſia Olympena*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joyned by that Emperour to the weſtern parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he cauſed to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reaſon formerly delivered.

Places of moſt obſervation in the *leſſer Myſia*, were 1. *Abydus*, ſtanding on the narroweſt of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite unto *Seſtos* in *Thrace*; firſt built by the *Mileſians* with the conſent of *Gyges* K. of *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged. Memorable both in the antient and modern ſtories. In antient ſtory for the famous reſolution of the Inhabitants, when beſieged by *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into ſome diſtreſs, and hopeleſs of good conditions from him, the young men of the town who had bound themſelves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, ſet fire thereof, & barbarouſly ſlew themſelves, with as many of the women & children as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved ſo litle compaſſion, that he ſaid he would give the *Abydeni* 3 days leiſure to die; and therfore would not ſuffer any of his ſoldiers to enter the Town, then ſet open to him, either to take the ſpoil therof, or hinder this bloudy execution, til the 3 days end. In Modern ſtory no leſs memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orchanes* the ſon of *Ottoman*, through the treaſon of the Governors daughter: who bewitched with the perſon & valor of *Abderachmen*, a young *Turkiſh* Gallant, whom ſhe had beheld from the Towers of the Caſtle, threw a letter to him as he drew neer the wall; wherein ſhe manifeſted her affection, and promiſed to make him maſter of that fortreſs, if he would perſwade his General to raiſe the ſiege, and come with a ſtrong party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The town continuing ever ſince in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Caſtles ſpoken of before, which defend *Conſtantinople* on that ſide from all force by ſea. 2 *Cyzicus*, ſeated in the *Propontis*, in an Iland of the ſame name alſo, but ſo near the Continent, that it joyned to it by 2. bridges. The *Metropolis* of the *Conſular Helleſpont*, by conſequence an Arch-biſh. See in the proſperous times of Chriſtianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Provinces. A town of wonderful ſtrength & beauty, when firſt known to the *Romans*, called therfore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome* of *Aſia*, who gives this character alſo of it, *Cyzicū nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribuſq; marmoreis* Aſiaticæ *plagæ littora illuſtrat*, that is to ſay, that the noble City of *Cyzicum* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illuſtrate the ſhores of *Aſia*. Honored amongſt many other goodly & magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple the pillars wherof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one intire ſtone only; the whole fabrick all of poliſhed Marble, every ſtone joyned unto the other with a line of *Gold*. In vain be-

Pergamus.

ſie ged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who loſt before it by the ſword, peſtilence, and famine, no fewer than 300000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *falling Sickneſs* of the Eare, as before is ſaid, it could never be reſtored to its former luſtre: the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by tranſporting the ſtones and Marbles to *Conſtantinople*, for the Embelliſhing of that City. 3 *Lampſacus* on the ſame *Propontis*, in which the beaſtly god *Priapus* was worſhipped in as beaſtly a figure: *quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* ſcoffeth it) *ne quid appareat riſu dignum*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame with the *Syrian* or *Phœnician Baal*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on ſome other reaſons, *Alexander* had conceived againſt it ſuch an high diſpleaſure when he was in *Aſia*, that he reſolved to raze it to the very ground. And ſeeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambaſſadour from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace; and ſware as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatſoever he requeſted of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* intreated him to deſtroy the City, which now for his oaths ſake he could not do; and ſo this wicked City at that time eſcaped. 4 *Parium*, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from *Parius* the ſon of *Jaſon*, a Colonie at firſt of the *Mileſians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* called *Adraſtia*; as *Lampſacus* in the ſame Author, is called *Pityuſa*. More in the land, are 5 *Scepſis*. 6 *Hiragerme*, both mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but of more antiquitie than fame.

Chief Cities in MYSIA MAJOR or OLYMPENA, are 1. *Dainta*, in the North-parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2 *Apollonia*, near a large Lake ſacred to *Apollo*, in the ſame parts alſo. 3 *Palæ Scepſis*, or *Scepſis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*. 4 *Adramyttium*, mentioned *Acts* 27. where Saint *Paul* took ſhip to go to *Rome*. 5 *Antandrus*, on the ſame Sea alſo, now called Saint *Dimitri*; named at firſt *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmeritans* here inhabiting (which ſheweth that *Myſia* antiently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterwards *Edonis*, and at laſt *Antandrus*, and that either becauſe built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Iland of the *Ægean*, ſpoken of before, amongſt the *Cyclades*; or becauſe the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the ſon of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ranſom or rather in exchange for him, as the word doth intimate. 5 *Protoſelene*, on the ſame coaſt alſo. More in the land, 6 *Præpemiſſus*. 7 *Trojanopolis*. 8 *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 9 *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, ſituate in a goodly plain on the banks of the River *Caicus*; of a ſmall Town or Fortreſs made a ſtately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent *Library* containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing or tranſcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here firſt invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here alſo were thoſe coſtly hangings firſt invented which we now call *Tapeſtry*; by the *Romans* called firſt *Aulæa*, from *Aula*, ſignifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the firſt room furniſhed and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Phyſician*, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preſerved to ſo great age, by theſe means ſpecially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2ly, Never eating any thing that was raw. 3ly, Alwaies carrying about him ſome ſweet perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *ſeven Churches* to which Saint *John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Myſia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of the *Lydian Aſia*; within the limits whereof thoſe *ſeven Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof which flouriſhed here for ſome ages in ſuch wealth and ſplendor, they came but from a poor and obſcure original. The firſt of them one *Philetærus*, an *Eunuch*, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexanders* greateſt Captains; and after his death to *Lyſimachus* K. of *Thrace*, by whom truſted with his money and accompts. Fearing the fury of his Maſter then grown old and tyrannous, he ſeized on the Caſtle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 talents, which he offered with his ſervice unto *Seleucus*, the firſt King of *Syria*. But both *Lyſimachus* and *Seleucus* dying ſhortly after, he kept the money to himſelf, and reigned in this City as an abſolute King; leaving the kingdom at his death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better man than a poor Carter, til raiſed by the fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furniſhed with mony, though of no great territory, was able by the *Galls* and other Mercenaries, not only to preſerve himſelf againſt the *Syrian* Kings, who laid claim to his City, but alſo to enlarge his bounds as he ſaw occaſion. But the main improvement of this kingdom hapned in the daies of *Eumenes* the ſecond, the ſon of *Attalus*, the brother and ſucceſſor of this *Eumenes*: who being uſeful to the *Romans* in their wars againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Myſias*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that war. The reſt of the affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this ſhort Catalogue of

The KINGS of *PERGAMUS*.

A. M.

3668 1 *Philetærus*, the firſt King of *Pergamus*, of whom before. 20.

3688 2 *Eumenes*, brother, or as ſome ſay, the brothers ſon of *Philetærus*, vanquiſhed *Antiochus*, ſurnamed *Hierax*, in a fight near *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Callinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.

3710 3 *Attalus*, brother of *Eumenes*, reſtored *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian* to his kingdom, and diſcomfited the *Galls*, compelling them to keep themſelves within the Country ſince named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.

3754 4 *Eumenes* II. ſon of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the ſpoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditarie Enemie to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured the *Romans* to deſtroy,

destroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more use of these *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to less liking with them. *Asia spec. Dict.*

3782 5 *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans* in the life of his brother, then less gracious with them; but he most gallantly refused it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.

3792 6 *Eumenes* III. brother of *Attalus* the second, and Tutor or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whose minority he governed the estate, as King.

3813 7 *Attalus* III. son of *Attalus* the second, succeeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceased without issue, and bequeathed it by his last Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had possession of so great a Legacy, *Aristonicus* the base son of *Eumenes*, made himself master of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and estates hereof. Against whom the *Romans* making war were aided by the greatest part of the *Asian* Kings; not seeing their own danger and destruction to draw near unto them, by letting such a potent neighbour come amongst them, to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this war, though they had the better of it. For being now made masters of the riches and sweets of *Asia*, they took with them their vices also: growing thereby to great riot, and unparalleld luxurie; which overcame the rigor and severity of their former discipline, and made them apt for faction, and those bloody quarrels, which proved the ruine of their State. So truly was it said by *Justine*, *Sic* Asia *facta* Romanorum, *cum opibus suis vitia quoque sua* Romam *transmisit*. This kingdom, taking it in the largest extent thereof, being thus subdued and setled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Asia*, according to the name of the Greater *Continent*; by *Ptolemie*, and others, called *Asia Propria*: continuing under the subjection of the *Roman* Emperours, til the translating of the Imperial seat unto *Constantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. Which being ended in the person of *Aladine* the second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi*; as those which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Aidinian*: both of them swallowed up long since by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Accessories* running the same fortune as the *Principals* did.

II. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

Besides the *Proper Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* kingdom, there was one part hereof which antiently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Continent*, or this whole *Peninsula*. This for distinctions sake the *Romans* called the PROCONSULAR ASIA; because committed to the government of one of their *Proconsuls* (who had his residence in *Ephesus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the *Consular Hellespont*, and the Province of the *Isles of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Countrey lying about *Ephesus*, had more especially the name of *Asia*, than any other: so specially, that *Erasmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more peculiarly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* only in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This being agreed on for the name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was antiently a part; on the West, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with *Mysia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of ÆOLIS, and IONIA: that of *Æolis* lying on the North, towards *Mysia*; as *Ionia* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: possessed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them so named.

Principal Towns in ÆOLIS, are 1. *Acarnea*, over against the Isle of *Lesbos*, the Royal seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Aristotles*, but unworthy of so good Master, seized on this City, and here committed so great cruelties, that at last he was taken by the people, sewed in an Oxes hide, and so baited to death. 2 *Pitane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making bricks which would swim on the water. 3 *Elæa*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4 *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Augustus*, called *Sebastopolis*. 5 *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Cannæ*, not far from a *Promontorie* of the same name. 6 *Cuma*, the principal and greatest of all *Æolis*, the birth-place of *Ephorus* a learned man of elder times; and the habitation of *Sibylla*, sirnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, so named from *Cumæ*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7 *Phocæa*, a Colonie of the *Athenians*, so named from the multitudes of Sea Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocæ*) which thrust themselves ashore at the building of it. The people hereof over-burdened by the *Persians*, and impatient of so great servitude as was laid upon them, forsook their Countrey, binding themselves by a fearful oath, never more to return unto it and after many and long wanderings came at last into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marseilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Josephus* said to be descended of *Elisha* the son of *Javan* who therefore calleth them by the name of *Elisæi*. And it is possible enough that so it was. *Elisha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponnesus*; from whence some of his race in succeeding times might pass over into *Asia*, and possess those coasts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confessed by all; the *Æolick dialect* or phrase of speech, taking name from hence. Not otherwise much mentioned in the course of story, than as partakers of the same fortunes with the rest of their *Asian* neighbours before related, and so not necessary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular and punctual description. For here the River

Asia spec. dict.

Lycus falleth into the *Mæander*, and here *Mæander* and *Caystrus*, two of the most famous Rivers of *Asia Minor*, (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Ephesus*, honored with one of the worlds *seven wonders*, the long abode of S. *Paul*, and the death & sepulture of Saint *John*; the Promontory *Trogyllium*, with a little Isle adjoyning of the same name, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 15.

Principal Cities of this tract, are 1. *Myas*, on an arm of the Sea, assigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampsacus*, and *Magnesia*, to *Themistocles*; when being banished his own Country, he fled to his greatest Enemy for entertainment; and there met with more safety than *Athens* would, and more honour than it could afford him; So that he well might say (as he often did) *Periissem nisi periissem*. And on the other side, the King was so overjoyed at his coming to him, (as having now upon his side the man who had most hindered him in the Conquest of *Greece*) that many times in his sleep he was heard to clap his hands, and say, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem*. In after times, the water drawing further off, the soyl brought forth such an innumerable multitude of fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forsake the City, and with their bag and baggage to retire to *Miletus*: nothing hereof being left but the name and memory in the time of *Pausanias*. 2. *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from hence called *Sibylla Erythræa*; of which Propheteſſes we shall speak more when we come to *Africk*. 3. *Lebedus*, of most note in the elder times, for those publick Plaies which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4. *Clazomene*, situate on a small Ilet, near unto the shore, of much esteem amongst the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no less honoured by the *Asians* for a beautifull Temple of *Apollo* seated near unto it. 5. *Priene*, the birth-place of *Bias*, one of the seven *wise-men* of *Greece*. 6. *Ipsus*, renowned for the great battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adversary, estated him in all the Conquests of his Master, except *Egypt* only. 7. *Teos*, the birth-place of *Anacreon*, that lascivious and drunken Poet, hence surnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians* both for wit and wantonesse: of both which it may well be doubted, whether the smoothnesse of the verse, or the wantonesse of their expressions, be the more predominant. 8. *Smyrna*, a fair and antient City, on a Bay thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greatest part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the fairest on the side of an hill overlooking the waters. Destroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antigonus* and *Lysimachus*, two of *Alexanders* great Commanders; of good accompt in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the *seven* Asian *Churches*, to which Saint *John* inscribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, especially for Chamlets, Grograines, and such stuffs; made for the most part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the forein Merchant. For government of the trade whereof, and of other commodities of these parts, the *English* Merchants have an Officer called the *Consul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongst others, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, said to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9. *Colophon*; most memorable for the Inhabitants of it, so skilled in horse-man-ship, that the side on which they served in war was sure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any business, grew into a Proverb. It was also another of those Cities, which so ambitiously contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were seven in all, as the old Verses tell us, saying,

Septem urbes certant de stirpe insignis Homeri,
Smyrna, Rhodos, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.

Whether *Homer* purposely concealed his Country, that all places might challenge him for their's, I am not able to say: But sure I am that *Paterculus* speaketh it in the commendation of *Hesiodus* (the next *Greek* Poet after him in course of time) that he had specified his birth-place: *Qui vitavit ne in id quod* Homerus *inciderit, patriam & parentes testatus est.* 10 *Ephesus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Roman Asia*, and the seat of the Primate of the *Asian* Diocese: memorable in the purest times of *Christianity*, for being the Episcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangelist, the first Bishop hereof; 2ly. In that St. *Paul* directed to the people of it, one of his Epistles; and 3ly. for the burial of St. *John* the Apostle, who by some learned men of the elder times, is said to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but sleeping; building that thought upon that saying which went abroad among the Brethren, *that that Disciple should not die. John* 21. *v.* 23. And no lesse memorable amongst the Gentiles for that sumptuous and magnificent Temple here consecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeneſse, furniture, and workmanship of it, was accompted one of the wonders of the World. The length thereof said to be 425 foot, 220 foot in breadth; suppported with 127 Pillars of Marble seventy foot in height; of which twenty seven were most curiously engraven, and all the rest of Marble polished. The model of it contrived by one *Cteſiphon*, and that with so much Art and curiosity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finished. When finished it was fired seven times, the last time by *Erastratus*, only to get himself a name: which hapning on the same night in which *Alexander* the *Great* was born, gave occasion to that weighty but witty scoff, that *Diana* (she was counted one of the Godesses of *midwifery*) could not attend the preservation of her Temple, being then busied at the birth of so great a Prince.

As for those *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the descendants of *Javan*, the fourth son of *Japhet*, as hath been shewn before in our *general Preface*: but whether they came hither out of *Græcia*, or passed from hence into that Country, hath been made a question. The *Athenians* boasting of themselves to be *Aborigines*, men growing as it were out of the Soil it self, without any *Ancestors*; report that those *Ionians* were a Colonie of their Plantation. But *Hecataus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the anti-

contrary, Saying, that the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from thoſe of *Aſia*; for that *Attica* was antiently called *Ionia*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theſeus* doth declare expreſly. Moſt probable it is, that *Heccataus* was in the right; theſe parts of *Aſia* lying ſo directly in the way from the valley of *Shinaar* unto *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave ſome of his company here, when he ferried the reſt over to the oppoſite Continent. I know *Pauſanias* ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the ſon of *Xuthus*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came ſo near the truth, though he miſſed the men, that it was the Grandſon of that man who eſcaped the flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and thoſe *Ionians* had their true original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to thoſe *Ionians* againſt the *Perſians*; who on the overthrow given to *Cræſus*, pretended to the Lordſhip or Dominion of *Aſia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the ſending of freſh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King firſt undertook the invaſion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the ſucceeding Kings purſuing that firſt quarrel with great animoſities. After this yeelding to the times they followed the fortune of the ſtrongeſt, ſubject ſucceſſively to the *Perſians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Conſtantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine* before mentioned: when both *Æolis* and *Ionia* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcan*, from *Sarachan* a Turkiſh Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine* ſeiſed upon this Country, and erected here a petit Kingdom, long ſince ſubdued by thoſe of the race of *Ottoman*.

Lydia.

12. *LYDIA.*

LYDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Phrygia Major*, and ſome part of *Piſidia*, from which ſeparated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt, with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with the *Greater Myſia*; on the South, with *Caria*. So called from *Lud*, the ſon of *Sem*, by ſome of whoſe poſterity it was firſt inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as antiently, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, the adjoyning Provinces, it made the *Lydian Aſia* ſpoken of before; within the verge whereof all the *ſeven Churches* were contained, mentioned by Saint *John* in the *Revelation*.

The people of this Country are ſaid to have been the firſt coyners of money, the firſt Huckſters and Pedlers, and the firſt inventers of dice, ball, cheſs, and the like games: neceſſity and hunger therunto enforcing them, according to that of *Perſius*, *Artis Magiſter, ingeniiq; largitor venter*. For being ſorely vext with famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the progenitors of *Omphale*, they deviſed theſe games; and every ſecond day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years, they continued playing and eating by turns: but then ſeeing that themſelves were more fruitfull in getting and bearing children, than the ſoil was at that time in bringing forth ſuſtenance to maintain them; they ſent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the ſon of *Atis*, who planted in that Country, called at firſt *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuſcany*.

This Country was alſo called *Mœonia*, and was thought to have been the native ſoil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the ſeven contending Cities, and thoſe which ſeem to have moſt colour for their claim, were antiently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was ſaid before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mœonides*, and *Mœonius Vates*: and in ſome Authors *Carmen Mœonium* is uſed for *Homers* Poetical abilities, as *Carmine* Mœonio *conſurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is alſo called ſometimes by the name of *Mœonius*; but for a very different reaſon, *viz.* becauſe antiently there were no trees in all this Country but the vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1. *Sipylus*, and 2. *Tmolus*, this laſt of moſt accompt in regard of the great fruitfullneſe of it, covered over with Vines, and yeelding abundance of the beſt *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1. *Hermus*, which riſing out of *Phrygia Major*, paſſeth only by the skirts hereof, and ſo falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Iſle of *Clazomene*. 2. *Pactolus*, which riſing at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongſt the Poets for its golden ſands. 3. *Cayſtrus*, no leſſe notable for the abundance of Swans which ſwim thereon, whoſe fountain is in *Phrygia Major* alſo, near the borders hereof; and his fall in the *Ægean* alſo over againſt the Iſle of *Samos*. 4. *Mæander*, which riſing out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furtheſt parts of the ſaid *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*; paſſeth by *Magneſia*, and endeth his courſe in the ſame Sea, near the City of *Epheſus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the leaſt, as *Pruſeus* counteth them. Of which in general thus the Poet,

Mæander *toties qui terris errat eiſdem,*
Et lapſas in ſe, ſæpe retoquet aquas.

That is to ſay,

Mæander wandring in the ſelf ſame ſoil,
Whoſe waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another paſſage thus.

Quique recurvatis, ludit Mæander *in undis.*

Mæan-

Lydia.

Mæander plaies his watry prancks,
Inhis ſo many winding banks.

The Country by reaſon of theſe Rivers was exceeding fruitfull, abounding in all ſorts both of wealth and pleaſures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and under-neath inriched with prodigal veins of Gold and Silver, and ſome precious gemmes. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more ſenſual and voluptuous, and leſſe fit for action, than any plot of their new Matters could have brought them to; had not the natural delicacies of the ſoil it ſelf contributed to the advancement of their deſign. And yet before they were ſufficiently infamous for their luxury, and exceſs of riot, when beſt ſeen in wars: ſo that it is a marvail they were able to prevail on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their command; as in the times of ſome of *Cræſus* predeceſſors, it is ſaid they did. Unleſſe perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mœcenas*, the great favorite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *ubi res vigiliam exigeret erat ſanè inſomnis, providens, & agendi ſciens; ſimulac aliquid ex negotio remitti poſſit, otio ac mollitie penè ultra fœminam fluens*, No man more vigilant than he in times of buſineſs, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leiſure.

Principal Cities of this Country were 1. *Sardis*, on both ſides of *Pactolus*, the ſeat royal of *Cræſus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*; till the conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*. After which time, being taken by the *Græcians*, it ſo ſtartled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his Attendants, to ſay aloud every day, whilſt he was at dinner, that *the Grecians had taken Sardis*; continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which courſe (I note this only by the way) was commonly obſerved in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands of the *Engliſh*; and might be profitably revived, till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a moſt terrible *Earth-quake* (to which diſeaſe moſt of theſe *Aſian* Cities had been very much ſubject) it was re-edified again at the coſt of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the *ſeven Churches* of the *Lydian Aſia*, of which the holy Spirit took ſuch ſpecial notice. The others (beſides *Pergamus*, already mentioned in the *Greater Myſia*, and *Epheſus*, and *Smyrna*, in the *Proper Aſia*) were 2. *Philadelphia*, near, or on the banks of the River *Cayſtrus*, the ſecond City in accompt next to *Sardis* it ſelf: and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, as appeareth by the Acts of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Council, where *Euſtathius* Biſhop hereof doth ſubſcribe himſelf, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Φιλαδελφέων Μητροπόλεως, Biſhop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3. *Thiatyra*, honoured with the ſame privilege alſo, as appears by the conſtant Order, obſerved as well in the *Civil* as *Eccleſiaſtical* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reaſon whereof (for otherwiſe it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the reſpect had to thoſe ſeveral Churches, in regard of their primitive antiquity, and the foundation of them by St. *John* the Apoſtle, as it was generally believed. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolemy* placed amongſt the Cities of this Province, as it ſtood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Conſtantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well obſerved by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not diſpoſe of their Provinces according to Nations; ἀλλὰ κατ' ἄλλον τρόπον διατάξαι τὰς διοικήσεις, ὃν ἂν τὰς πολιτικὰς διαιρέσεις, but according to thoſe *diſtricts*, or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of juſtice. Next unto theſe, there were of eſpecial conſideration. 5. *Magneſia ad Mæandrum*, ſo called becauſe ſituate on that River, to difference it from 6. *Magneſia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the ſame name near the hill *Sipylus*. The firſt aſſigned over to *Themiſtocles*, together with *Myus* and *Lampſacus*, as was ſaid before. The other memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loſs whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occaſioned the loſs of all his *Aſian* Provinces on this ſide of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 talents for the charge of the war, beſides ſome other hard conditions then impoſed upon him. 7. *Alabanda*, oppoſite to *Magneſia* on the other ſide of *Mæander*, the people whereof, immediatly on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only ſent Ambaſſadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did; but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniverſary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Goddeſſe*. A thing more to be wondred at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for beſtowing on their City ſo divine an honour. 8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cayſtrus*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Biſhop and godly Marty, writ the Epiſtle *ad Trallenſes*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the ſon of *Sem*, is teſtified by the general conſent of ſuch antient writers as treat of the diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*: to which opinion the nearneſs of the names of *Lud*, *Ludin*, and *Lydi*, (or Λύδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) ſeems to give good countenance. Nor ſhall I here diſpute it further, as a point unqueſtioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman that ſhould name this Country, being taken up amongſt the *Greeks*, for want of more certain truths. Once ſetled here, they grew up ſuddenly to a kingdom; Amongſt the antient Kings whereof are numbred *Manes* as the firſt, *Cotis*, and *Atis*, and then *Aſius*, (from whom *Lydia* firſt, and after all the Continent, had the name of *Aſia*) as his immediate Succeſſors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, ſaid by *Athenæus* to be ſo great a Gormandizer, that in his ſleep he eat his wife; and finding her hand in his mouth next morning, ſlew himſelf for ſhame: and of another named *Andramytes*, as infamous for his filthy luſts, as *Cambletes* for gluttony. But the race of theſe Kings ending in *Omphale*, the miſtreſs of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion ſpin amongſt her Damoſels; the *Heraclidæ* or poſterity of *Hercules* ſucceeded next: of whom there is no conſtant and

continued

continued ſucceſſion till the time of *Ardiſius*, the 19. in order of that line; who began his reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his ſucceſſors the affairs hereof ſo exceedingly proſpered, eſpecially under *Haliattes* the Father of *Cræſus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themſelves Vaſſals to this Crown: conceived both in wealth and power to be equal to the *Ægyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conqueſt of *Syria* and *Egypt*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, gave him the preheminence. But being come unto the height it received a fall in the perſon of *Cræſus*, the Succeſſor of him who ſo much advanced it. The Kings hereof from the time of the ſaid *Ardiſius*, take in order following. *Caria.*

The KINGS of *LYDIA*.

A.M.

3190 1 *Ardiſius*. 36.

3226 2 *Haliattes*. 14.

3240 3 *Melos*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.

3252 4 *Candaules*, who ſhewing his wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him ſlain; who marying his wife, ſucceeded him in his kingdom. The whole ſtory is this. *Candaules* had to his wife a woman of unparalleld beauty. And ſuppoſing the greatneſs of his happineſs, not to conſiſt ſo much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it; intended to ſhew her in natures bravery to *Gyges*, the Maſter of his herds. *Gyges* at firſt diſſwaded him from an attempt ſo fooliſh; but ſeeing no perſwaſion coulſd prevail, he condeſcended. When he had ſeen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *Eſto fidelis, Gyges*: which words the Queen marking, and ſeeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the chamber, the next morning ſent for him: When holding a poynyard in her hand, ſhe gave him his choice, either preſently to be ſlain, or elſe to kill the King, and take her to wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dower. Of which two evils he made choice of that which he thought the beſt, and ſo killed *Candaules*.

5 *Gyges*, the firſt of this new line, added *Ionia* to his other dominions. A Prince of ſo great wiſdom, for the times he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours ſate as (it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occaſioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made inviſible, when and as often as he pleaſed.

3305 6 *Ardis* II. the ſon of *Gyges*. 37.

3342 7 *Sardiattes*. 15.

3357 8 *Haliattes* II. of whom before. 57.

3406 9 *Cræſus*, the laſt King of *Lydia*, ſubdued *Doris*, and *Æolis*; after which victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus*, King of *Perſia*: in which battel, a ſon of *Cræſus* who had been dumb from his cradle, ſeeing a Souldier ready to kill his father, ſuddenly broke out into theſe words, *Rex eſt, cave ne occidas*. After this overthrow, and the captivity of *Cræſus* (one of the richeſt Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Perſian* Province, A. M. 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again ſubdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horſes of ſervice, deſpoyled them of all their armour, and trained them up in all manner of looſe and effeminate living; weakning by this means a powerfull Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoyning. After this they continued *Perſian* till the Conqueſt of *Aſia* by the *Macedonians*, in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoils they fell to the portion of *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the reſt of this *Aſia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire; it had the *Lower Myſia*, or *Myſia Olympena* annexed unto it: by means whereof the limits of each became ſo confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times aſcribed to the other. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire it was made (as all the reſt of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, ſubject to the *Caraſian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major*, were to the *Aidinian*.

12. *CARIA*.

CARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lycia*; on the North, with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the Weſt, with the *Icarian* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpathian*. So called from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof; who is ſaid to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others aſcribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Latmus*, the dwelling or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the ſtudy of *Aſtronomy*, found out the changes and courſes of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a cave under this Hill, and caſt him into a dead ſleep; (which notwithſtanding, ſhe deſcended ſometimes to kiſs him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis ſomnium dormit*. Here is alſo in this Country the River *Salmacis*, ſaid to infeeble all ſuch as either drink of it, or bath in it: from whence the Poets raiſe their fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus* deſcribed by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida ſpolia ſine ſanguine & ſudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his book of *Offices*, and there uſed for effeminate and wanton exerciſes.

Places

Lycia. Places of moſt note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Latmus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the ſeven wiſe-men of *Greece*, from hence called *Mileſius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Plinie* ſaith of 80) Colonies, diſperſed in ſeveral places of *Greece* and *Aſia*: antiently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, ſurnamed *Didymæus*, whoſe Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Mileſians*, to ſo vaſt a greatneſſe, that it remained without roof; compaſſed about with a *Grove*, and dwelling houſes, and ſumptuouſly ſet out with coſtly workmanſhip. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Acts* 20. to which Saint *Paul* called together the Biſhops of *Epheſus*, and of other the adjoyning Cities, *ab Epheſo & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, ſaith St. *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lions*, Lib. 3. cap. 14. Antiently it was called *Lelegis* and *Anactoria*. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a ſmall Town, had ſo great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cryed out, and ſaid, *Ye men of* Mindus, *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3. *Heraclea ad Latmum*, ſo called becauſe ſituate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name. 4. *Borgylia*, or *Borgylos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where antiently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Epheſus*. 5. *Milaſa*, in old times famous for two Temples ſacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with ſtone for the eaſier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Proceſſions; the principal of the Citizens ſerving there as *Prieſts*, which office they held unto their deaths. 7. *Primaſſus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*. Who meaning to force it by Mine, and finding the earth ſo ſtony that it would not work, commanded the *Pyoneers* notwithſtanding to make a noiſe under the ground, and cauſed great Mounts of *Rubbiſh* to be raiſed ſecretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the work went very well forwards. At laſt he ſent word unto the Townſ-men, that two parts of their wall ſtood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they ſhould find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yeelded up the Town unto him. So uſefull in the art of war is a piece of wit, that it prevails ſometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South-weſt of this Province, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea like a ſpacious Promontory, ſtands the Country of DORIS, ſo called of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1. *Cnidus*, not far from a foreland or Promontory of the ſame name, famous of old times for the Marble image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidea*. 2. *Creſſa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time of *Ptolemie*. 3. *Halicarnaſſus* (now called *Neſi*) the birth-place of *Herodotus*, and *Dionyſius*, named hence *Halicarnaſſeus*; two famous Hiſtorians; and the ſeat-Royal of *Artemiſia* Queen of the *Carians* (called from hence ſometmies the Queen of *Harlicarnaſſus*) who in the honour of her husband *Mauſolus*, built a ſtately monument, accounted one of the worlds *ſeven wonders*; of which thus *Martial*, ſpeaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*,

Aere nec vacuo pendentia Mauſolæa
Laudibus immodicis Cares *ad aſtra ferant.*

That is to ſay,

Mauſolus tomb filling the empty Air,
Let not the *Carians* praiſe beyond compare.

That the *Carians* were ſo called from *Cares*, the ſon of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been ſaid before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them ſo called from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* language ſignifieth a Sheep, or a Ram; with numerous flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may ſeem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians*, next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called ſheep by the name of *Cara*, Κάρα Ἴωνες τὰ πρόβατα, ſaith *Heſychius*, the old *Grammarian*. But from whomſoever they had their name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people, *eo armorum pugnæq; amans*, (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appetterent*, who when they had no wars at home, would ſeek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mauſolus* reigned here, whoſe wife *Artemiſia* (lately mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings againſt *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, we meet with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him againſt the *Perſians*; adopting him for her ſon and ſucceſſor; Subject after her deceaſe to the *Macedonians*, it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of theſe Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magneſia*: in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoils it was given to the *Rhodians*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wreſted from the Eaſtern Emperours by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greateſt part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* 2d. was raiſed unto a petit Kingdom by the name of *Menteſia*, ſo called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the reſidue being laid to the *Caraman* kingdom: both long ago ſubdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Menteſia* by *Mahomet* ſurnamed the great, who diſpoſſeſſed *Elias* the laſt Prince thereof, *Anno* 1451.

LYCIA.

LYCIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the Weſt, with *Caria*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three ſides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above mentioned; by conſequence naturally ſtrong, and not very acceſſible: the Sea, for the ſpace of 20 miles ſhutting up the fourth. And here it is to be obſerved, that beſides, this there was a little Region of the ſame name, not far from *Troy*, not much obſerved by our *Geographers* either old or new; but mentioned ſometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil Æneid.* 4. *Qualis ubi hybernam* Lyciam, *Xanthiq; fluenta deſerit, &c.* which is meant

plainly

plainly of the *Phrygian*, or *Trojan Lycia*; the word *hyberna* being added becauſe of its Northern ſituation, in reſpect of this. Of this ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in *Phrygia Minor*.

The people hereof were ſometimes called *Xanthi*, from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which riſing in two Springs from the foot of Mount *Cadmus*, paſſeth by a Town called *Xanthus* alſo, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were called *Lycii*, and the Country *Lycia*, from *Lycius* the ſon of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either conquered them, or did ſome memorable act amongſt them, which deſerved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Aſia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath his beginning in this Province, extending Eaſtward to the great *Oriental* Ocean: of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid hereafter, when theſe hils are grown unto the greateſt.

One of the branches of it, and the moſt notable in this Country, is that called *Chimæra*, vomiting flames of fire like *Sicilian Ætna*: the bottom whereof was infeſted with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monſter, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat, and the tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*,

Quoque Chimæra *jugo mediis in partibus Hyrcum,*
Pectus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat,

In Engliſh thus,

Chimæra from a Goat her mid-part takes,
From Lion head and breaſt, her tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was firſt planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monſter; employed upon his buſineſs by *Jobares* the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been ſent by *Prœtus* King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him; and ſent his letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the ſaying, *Bellerophontis literas portare*; applied to thoſe, who were unawares employed to carry letters tending to their own deſtruction: ſuch as thoſe carried by *Uriah*, to *Joab* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was ſo populous, that antiently there was reckoned threeſcore Cities in it, of which ſix and thirty remained in the time of St. *Paul*; now nothing left of them but the names and ruines. Thoſe of chief note were 1. *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by conſequence an Arch-Biſhops See, when Chriſtian. St. *Nicolas* one of the Biſhops hereof in the primitive times, is ſaid to have been a great Patron of Scholars: his feſtival annually holden on the ſixt of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with ſeveral paſtimes; and ſtill in ſome Schools here in *England* (as in that of *Burford* in the Couuty of *Oxon* (where I had my breeding and my birth) for a feaſt and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Acts* 27. *v.* 5. 2. *Telmeſus*, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South-ſaying*, and accounted the firſt Interpreters of dreams. 3. *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly called *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an *Oracle* in it, for wealth and credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaſelis*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, a neſt of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatneſſe, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algier* is now: but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at ſuch time as *Pompey* ſcoured the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this Town the former ages were indebted, for the firſt invention of thoſe ſwift Veſſels, which the *Romans* called a *Phaſelus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5. *Cragus*, with a Mountain of the ſame name, thruſtiug out eight points or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6. *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Plinie* calleth it, moſt probably the foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Piſidia*; the people of which were conquered and added unto *Lycia* by the ſword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobares*, with a mind to kill him, according to the requeſt of *Prætus*, imployed in that ſervice. 8. *Corydalla*, near the Mountain called *Maſigrum*, the *Maſſycites* of *Plinie*. 9. *Podalea*, the chief Town of *Mylias*; as 11. *OEnoanda* is of *OEbalia*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puiſſant people, extending their power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Perſian* not without great difficulty; the people with ſuch obſtinacy defending their liberty, that ſome of them being beſieged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, they firſt burnt their wives, children, ſervants, and riches, in a common fire; and then made a furious ſally upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the ſword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted without any reſiſtance. After whoſe death they fell with the reſt of theſe parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the battel of *Magneſia*, it was given to the *Rhodians*, for their aſſiſtance in that war; but governed as a free eſtate by a *Common-Council* of 14 Senators, elected out of their principal Cities: over whom was one chief Preſident, or Prince of the Senate, whom they called by the name of *Lyciarchus*. In theſe remained the ſole power of impoſing taxes, making war and peace, appointing *Juſticiaries* and inferiour Magiſtrates, and all things appertaining to the publick government. A ſhadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a ſhadow only: the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty name, and the vain privilege or ordering and diſpoſing the publique games, wherein by his office he preſided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the ſame fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*: after the death of the ſecond *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

Lycaonia.

15. LYCAONCA.

LYCAONIA is bounded on the East with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Pisidia*. So called from the *Lycaones* a people of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycaonians*, inhabitants of *Lycaonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who inlarging themselves into these parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I should prefer before their conceit, who derive it from *Lycaon* King of *Arcadia*, dispossessed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom, or think that *Lycaon* was a King of this Conntry, and not of that.

Places of most note herein, 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province: a place of great strength and consequence; situated advantagiously in the Mountains for defence and safety, and therefore chosen for the seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Lesser Asia*, at such time as they were most distressed by the Western *Christians*; who under the command and presence of the Emperour *Conrade* did in vain besiege it, forced to depart thence with great losse both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former race being extinguished by the *Tartars*, and finally of the Kings of the house of *Caraman*, whose kingdom called the kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South parts of the *Lesser Asia*, that is to say, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, *Pisidia*, and this *Lycaonia*. 2. *Lystra*, the birth-place of *Timothy* the *Evangelist*: where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculously healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the instigation of some *Jews*, which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, most despitefully treated; *Paul* being stoned into the bargain, though it pleased God to raise him to life again, *Acts* 14, *v.* 19, 20. Such was the divine pleasure of Almighty God, that he that did consent to the stoning of St. *Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the Cloaths of his Executioners, should suffer in the same kind wherein he had trespassed, and feel some smart remembrance of his former Actions. 3. *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the said Apostle. 4. *Laranda*, so called by *Ptolemie*; and still preserving its old name; the second place for reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5. *Adopissus*. 6. *Paralais*. 7. *Canna*. 8. *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolemie*, but not else observable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycaonians* themselves, from whomsoever they descended, of any great note or observation in the former times: subject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Ptolemy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Dismembred from it by some of the following Emperours, either to create new Offices and preferments for some *Court favourite*; or to satisfie the *ambition* of some Prelates, aspiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, it was made a Province of it self. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at first a member of the *Selzuccian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*. Which last founded by *Caraman* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the 2. the last king of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great eye-sore unto those of the house of *Ottoman*, from the time *Amurath* the first, who first warred upon it, to the reign of *Bajazet* the second, who in fine subverted it, *An.* 1486. as shall be shewn hereafter when we come to *Cilicia*, the last of the Provinces of that kingdom, in the course of this work.

16. PISIDIA.

PISIDIA hath on the East, *Armenia Minor*; on the West, some parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycaonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the Main body of Mount *Taurus*. So called from the *Pisidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Country small, but furnished with great plenty of all provisions, as appeareth by that passage of *Livie*, where speaking of the expedition of *Manlius* unto these parts, he telleth us that he came into the fields of *Sagalassa*, (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich soil, and plentifull of all manner of fruit. *Inde ventum est* (saith he) *in agrum* Sagallassarum, *uberum fertilemq; omni genere frugum*: But this to be understood only of the plains and champain; the mountainous parts hereof, being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, called for distinctions sake *Antiochia Pisidiæ*, mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by St. *Pauls* preaching, the sum of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the first king of *Syria* of the *Macedon* race, and by him so called in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2. *Seleucia*, the foundation of the same *Seleucus*, called also to distinguish it from others of that name, *Seleucia Pisidiæ*. 3. *Lysinnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4. *Selge*, a Colonie of the *Lacedemonians*. 5. *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitfull part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livie* before mentioned. 6. *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a *Roman* Colonie. 7. *Termessus*, strongly situate in the *Streights* of the Mounts; the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Milyes*. 8. *Olbanassa*. 9. *Plutanessus*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Pisidæ*, they were originally descended of the *Solymi*, Inhabitants of the borders of *Lycia*. A valiant people, and so affirmed to be by *Livie*, who calleth them *longè optimos bello*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small Nation holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were subdued. Against these, *Cyrus* the brother of *Artaxerxes Mnemon* king of *Persia* did pretend a quarrel, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province.

Which

Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to leavy an Army, pre- *Pamphylia.*
tending revenge on them; but intending to dispossess his brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: but *Tisaphernes* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Pisidians*, made the King acquainted with his suspitions, who accordingly provided for resistance. The Army of *Cyrus* consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Persians*: the kings forces were no fewer than 900000 fighting men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* lost both the victory, and his life. The *Grecians* who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of composition, being by *Tisaphernes* betrayed, lost the best of their Company. The rest under the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despight of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon* was an agent in, and the Historian of this expedition: by whose example the *Spartans* first, and after them the *Macedonians* were encouraged to attempt the conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*, they fell with others of their neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the *Romans*, and setled in obedience by the Military progress of *Manlius*, spoken of before; they were in *Ptolemies* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a distinct Province of it self, and so continued till those parts of the Eastern Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: first part of the *Selzuccian*, and *Aladinian* kingdoms, after of the kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

17. *PAMPHYLIA.*

PAMPHYLIA is bounded on the East, with *Isauria*, and *Cilicia*; and on the West, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it, is called *Mare Pamphylium*. The reason of the name I find not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes*, that it was so named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus constata esset*, because inhabited by a mixture of many Nations: for so *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* tongue doth expresly signifie. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea with an open shore, opposite to *Africk*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, several Nations from those parts might repair unto it; and from thence the name.

The Country for the most part is very mountainous, over-run with the branches of Mount *Taurus*; but these branches feed great store of Goats, of whose hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograins*, not inferiour unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of a hundred and fifty miles coasts along this shore, more pleasant, populous, and fruitfull; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1. *Cataractus*. 2. *Cestrus*, and 3. *Eurymedon*; Nigh to which last, *Cimon* the son of *Miltiades*, Captain General of the *Athenian* Army, overthrew in one day, both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians*. The manner thus: having by plain force broke their Navy, of which he took and sunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thousand Gallies, he stowed the *Persian* Vessels with his best men, attired in the habit, and wearing the colours of the *Persians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Country-men; but the *Greeks* once in, suddenly put them to the sword, and took twenty thousand of them prisoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1. *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolemy Philadelpus* King of *Ægypt*, and for long time the greatest and most flourishing City of all this Province; well fenced, and seated very commodiously for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the *Romans* did confer the honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aspendus*, yet still *Attalia* had the start in point of riches; and is to this day a wealthy and well-Traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair *Tapestries* which are herein made. Of this Town there is mention, *Acts* 14. *v.* 25. 2. *Perge*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly festivals there held in honour of her; from hence called *Diana Pergæa*: more famous *in the fullness of time*, for St. *Pauls* preaching in it, mentioned *Acts* 14. *v.* 25. 3. *Side*, renowned in times of *Gentilism*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4. *Magydis*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Side*. 5. *Aspendus*, an inland Town, but strongly situate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*: remarkable for the Fidlers or *Musicians* of it, who with one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainfull uses; whence the *Proverb* of *Aspendus Citharista*, an *Aspendian Harper*, by which they signified a Theef. The Town first founded by the *Argives*, the Colony sent thither being led by *Mopsus*, from whom the Countty hereabouts had the name of *Mopsia*. 6. *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7. *Caracensium*, and 8. *Colobrassus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof, which had the name of *Cilicia aspera*: as 9. *Cretopolis*, and 10. *Menedemium*, of that part which was called *Carbalia*.

Of these *Pamphylians* there is little to be said in point of story, but that they were for the most part on the suffering hand; subject from time to time to those mightier Princes, who would not let their neighbours rest in quiet by them. Being on the same side of *Taurus*, and of easie access, they became first Vassals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Persian* Kings. When *Alexander* passed that way, in his march towards *Persia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it: the whole brought under with the rest of the *Asian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* first, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whose line, this people and their neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themselves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his faction, began to be troublesom on the Seas, and proved notable *Pirates*, and were the first Authors or inventors of those Gallies of a hundred and forty, or an hundred and sixty Oars a-piece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this trade at

Isauria, Cilicia

laſt, being warred upon by the *Romans* with great forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller narrative whereof we ſhall have in *Cilicia*) in the concluſion of that war, they loſt that liberty which ſo ſmall a time they had enjoyed; and were made Vaſſals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, they ran the ſame fortune with the reſt, till ſubdued by the *Turks*: and at the death of *Aladine*, were ſeized on by *Caraman*, and ſo became a part of his kingdom. Of which we ſhall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And ſo much for the Provinces of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, (the Provinces of the Iſles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the *Chriſtian* faith by three great Apoſtles; but moſt eſpecially by Saint *Paul*, of whoſe travels through moſt Cities and Regions of it, there is ſuch pregnant evidence in the book of the *Acts*. And that Saint *Peter*, and Saint *John*, had alſo their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the firſt Epiſtle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God himſelf giving the increaſe*. Pais we on next unto *ISAURIA* and *CILICIA*, which though Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom: of which having taken a Survey, and ſo cleared our ſelves of this *Peninſula*, we wil then ſail about ſuch Ilands as make up the remainder of the *Aſian Dioceſe*.

18. *ISAURIA. CILICIA.*

Theſe two, though diſtinct Provinces, I have joyned together, becauſe the firſt was only a part of the laſt; *Cilicia* antiently comprehending both. The fortunes of both being the ſame alſo in point of ſtory, which makes the conjunction the more natural.

ISAURIA, a mountainous and hilly Province, ſeated on both ſides of *Taurus*, hath on the Eaſt and South, the reſt of *Cilicia*, whereof antiently it was a part; on the North, *Piſidia*; on the Weſt, *Pamphylia*. So called from *Iſaurus*, the chief City of it, when firſt made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, imployed by *Pompey* in that ſervice, reduced the conquered Country under the command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conquerour the ſurname of *Iſauricus*.

The quality of the Soyl, and whole eſtate of this ſmall Proviuce, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had ſeen theſe Countries. Ciliciæ *lateri dextro adnexa* Iſauria, *uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile* Calicadnus *interſcindit, &c. i. e.* "On the right hand of "*Cilicia* lieth *Iſauria*, a Province of a wealthy ſoil, plentifull of Vines, and much other fruits, which "the River *Calecadnus* parteth in the very midſt. Beautified beſides many Towns with two principal Cities, 1. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*: and 2. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperour brought a *Roman* Colonie. For as touching 3. *Iſauria*, hereroforе a walled City, and of moſt eſteem, it hath been long ago deſtroyed, as yielding too ſecure a refuge to the neghbouring Rebels; inſomuch that now there are ſcarce any viſible tracts of its former greatneſs. And not much after, *Hæ duæ Provinciæ bello quondam* Piratico *catervis mixtæ Prædonum, a* Servilio *Proconſule miſſæ ſub jugum, factæ ſunt vectigales; i.e.* "Theſe Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore in the *Piratical* war joyning with "thoſe Robers, were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, and made ſubject to the State of *Rome*. And here, we have in brief, the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the Principal Cities with ſo much of the ſtory as relates to the firſt ſubjugation of it. What further doth concern it we ſhall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2. *CILICIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is called *Comagena*, ſeparated from which part by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, called *Amanus*; on the Weſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the North, with *Iſauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, ſpecially ſo called. It was thus named, as the old tradition was, from *Cilice*, the brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a near neighbour to it: but as *Bochartus* (of whoſe humour I have told you often) from *Callukim*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying ſtones, *quia lapidoſa eſt Regio*, becauſe in ſome parts, eſpecially in that which is called *Cilicia Trachæa*, or *Cilicia Aſpera*, it was very ſtony. It it is now called *Caramania*, as the laſt Province of the *Caramanian* kingdom, which held out for thoſe falling Princes, when the reſt was conquered by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race.

The Country ſaid by *Marcellinus*, to be *terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitfull of all neceſſaries. Which Character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eaſtern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campeſtris*; the weſtern parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly called *Cilicia Aſpera*, being rough and ſtony. But generally where the lands lie in ſeveral, and are duly cultivated, it anſwereth to the former *Character*: being alſo very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of three hundred miles and upwards. Which notwithſtanding, it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited, a great part of the Country lying in large and common fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep: out of which the Commoners on all ſides raiſe good profit by cheeſe and butter, by their fleeces chiefly. Here is alſo a good breed of Horſes, of which ſix hundred yearly are culled out for the ſpecial ſervice of the *Grand Signeur*. But as they have ſome profitable and uſefull creatures; ſo have they others as dangerous and hurtfull to them; eſpecially thoſe which the Vulgar *Grecians* call the *Squilachi*, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in troops, and are ſo bold, and theeviſh withall, as they uſe to ſet upon a man as he is aſleep, and leave him neither hat, cloak, nor fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are 1. *Pyramus*, now called *Malmiſtra*, which riſing on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, and forcing his paſſage through that Mountain, makes ſuch a noiſe in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as reſemblanceth at a great diſtance a clap of Thunder. 2. *Orymagdus*. 3. *Calicadnus*

cadmus ſpoken of before. 4. *Cidnus*, which riſeth in the *Anti-Taurus*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo cold a water, that as *Plinie* writes, it cureth the Gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the *Great*, the coldneſs of them ſtriking violently into his ſtomack; and deadly to *Frederick* the firſt Emperour of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himſelf, the violence of the ſtream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover was preſently drowned. *Cilicia.*

Of their chief hils I need add nothing, having already ſaid that the Country is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*; and by *Taurus* it ſelf from *Piſidia* and *Armenia Minor*; not eaſie of entrance by the firſt, but very difficult by the laſt: the *Streights* therof called *Pylæ Cilicia*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed ſo ſtreight, & almoſt impaſſable that had they been guarded or regarded by the *Perſians*, as they ſhould have been, the progreſs of *Alexanders* victories might have ended there. But *Arſenes* who had the charge of them, durſt not ſtand his ground, and ſo left them open to the enemy: whom by thoſe Ports he put into the poſſeſſion of the kingdom of *Perſia*. With better faith, though no better fortune, did the Souldiers of *Peſceninus Niger*, make good theſe *Streights* againſt the Emperour *Severus*; the Monarchy of the world lying a ſecond time at the ſtake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* poſſeſſed of theſe *Streights* and entrances, couragiouſly withſtood the *Severian* party; till at laſt a ſudden tempeſt of rain and thunder continually darting in their faces (as if the very Heavens had been armed againſt them) they were fain to leave the paſſage, and therewith the victory to the adverſe faction; having ſold that at the loſs of 20000 of their own lives, which *Alexander* had the happineſs or the hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe or Nation called the *Soli*, originally of *Attica*: but in long tract of time diſuſed from converſe & communication with their Country-men, they ſpake that language ſo corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude expreſſion, came the word *Solœciſmus*. Yet amongſt theſe were born three men of eminent note, that is to ſay *Chryſippus* the Philoſopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets; out of the writings of which laſt St. *Paul* vouchſafed to uſe this paſſage τοῦ γὰρ γένος ἐσμέν, i. e. *for we are alſo his off-ſpring*, *Acts* 17. *v.* 28. That bleſſed Apoſtle thought himſelf never the worſe *Preacher*, for being brought up in humane learning at the feet of *Gamaliel*: nor held it any diſparagement to the influences of the *Holy Ghoſt*, to make uſe of it in his *Sermons*, and divine diſcourſes, and therefore to prevent thoſe *cavils* which ignorance or miſprſion might chance to make in times ſucceeding, he hath thrice vouchſafed the words and teſtimony of the heathen writers; *viz.* of *Epimenides*, *Tit.* 1. *v.* 12. of *Menander*, 1. *Cor.* 15. *v.* 33. and that of *Aratus* before-mentioned. So lawfull is it in this Kind, for thoſe of the *ſpiritual Iſrael* to rob the *Egyptians*; and to make this *Hagar* ſerviceable to her Miſtreſs *Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Solæ*, the habitation of the *Soli*, before remembred; by ſome ſaid to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian*; but generally affirmed to have been planted by thoſe of *Rhodes* and *Attica*: miſtakingly called *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis civitas*, or the City of the Sun. On the ſite hereof then decayed and ruinous (the Town having been deſtroyed by *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King in his late wars againſt the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his victory over the Pirates; who not only lorded it over the Seas, and conſequently obſtructed trade and merchandize, but waſted and ſpoiled the Villages of *Italy* it ſelf. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary puniſhment on the Ring-leaders, with the reſt peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoyning, allowing them competent poſſeſſions, leſt want and neceſſity ſhould again inforce them to the like courſes. An action truly commendable, and worthy ſo great a Captain, rather to take an occaſion of offending from the people, than after offence done to puniſh them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, ſomewhat bitterly, though perhaps not unjuſtly, inveigheth againſt the laws of *England*, for ordaining death to be the puniſhment of theft, *Cum multò potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis eſſet proventus vitæ; ne cuipiam ſit tam dira furandi primùm, deinde pereundi neceſſitas.* Where as (ſaith he) the laws ought to make proviſion for putting men into ſome orderly courſe of life, and not let them run upon the neceſſity of ſtealing firſt, and then being hanged for it. 2. *Tarſus*, the birth-place of Saint *Paul* the Apoſtle, for that ſufficiently famous, were there nothing elſe to commend it to conſideration. But it was a Town withall of great note and conſequence, the *Metropolis* firſt of all *Cilicia*, and after the diviſion, of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the privilege of *Roman* Citizens. Situate in a goodly plain on the banks of the *Cydnus*, and by ſome ſaid to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the laſt King of *Aſſyria*; it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarſus*; and 3. *Anchiala*, another City of this Country, near the Sea-ſide, and not far from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the ſame date (if the ſaid Monument ſpeak truth,) but neither of the ſame fortune nor continuance: that being utterly decayed, but *Tarſus* ſtill remaining of great wealth and ſtrength. Much ſpoken of in the wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the ſtories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarſians* to ingratiate themſelves with *Julius Cæſar*, would needs have their Country called *Juliopolis*; yet the old name ſurvived the new, and it is to this day called *Terſia* or *Teraſſa* by the vulgar *Grecians*; but *Hamſa* by the *Turks*, as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4. *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolemy*, a large Town, but unwalled, inſtead whereof defended by a very ſtrong Caſtle. Situate in a fruitfull ſoil, both for wine and corn, wherewith the Town is always furniſhed for the uſe of thoſe that are to travel over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three days proviſion. 5. *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian* Biſhop of *Alexandria*; thruſt on the world of late by ſome learned men (but of more induſtry than judgement) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6. *Mopſueſtia*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving title to *Theodorus Mopſueſtenus*, Biſhop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Neſtorian* hereſies, in the time of St. *Chryſoſtom*. The City otherwiſe of good note, and of great conſequence, in the courſe of the *Roman* wars,

Cilicia.

described at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Issus*, upon a spacious Bay, called hence *Sinus Issicus*, near the borders of *Syria*: memorable for the great battel here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handfull (in comparison) of his *Macedonians*, and that vast Army of *Darius* (himself there in person) consisting of 600000 undisciplined *Asians*; whereof so many lost their lives, that the dead bodies seemed to have buried the ground. For partly by the unskilfullness of the Commanders, who chose so ill a place to fight in, that they could make no use of their mighty numbers: and partly by the effeminateness of the *Asian* Souldiers, unable to endure the charge; there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Persians*, 40000 of them being taken Prisoners, amongst them the wives and daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the Story. A victorie which assured *Alexander* of his former purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: the *Persian* not being able to make head again, till he had peirced into the bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria* & *Egypt* to his former Conquests. Of so great consequence is one full Victory to the losing and getting of a kingdom. This Town it self now called *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it standeth *Golfo di Aiazzo*. 8. *Alexandria*, built by command of the Conquerour near the place of battel, commmodiously for trade, as upon the Sea; but otherwise in a fenny and boggy soil, which makes the air there to be very unwholsome to men not used to it; little now remaining, but a few houses on the Sea-shore built of straw and mud hardly affording it the reputation of a sorry Village, and would not long continue such, but that it is the neerest Haven to the Town of *Aleppo* (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the resort of some *Christian* Factors, whose houses are of clay and timber; but of them not many. The Town at first called *Alexandria*, as before was said; diminished first to *Alexandretta*, now called *Scanderone*. 9. *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexanders* foundations, so named in memory of his great Victory before mentioned. 10 *Amavarza*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11. *Heraclea*, mentioned by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitfull and wel-cultivated plain, at the foot of Mount *Taurus*; a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and distant from *Adana* towards the North-west about three days journey. But I find no such Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolemie*, or any other of the Antients. 12. *Scandeloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aspera*; or that part of *Cilicia*, which lieth towards *Pamphylia*, heretofore with the adjoyning territory governed as a State distinct, when all the rest of this Country was under the Kings of *Caramania*: against whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan*, had preserved his liberties, by the assistance of the knights of the *Rhodes*, and the king of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* kingdom was subdued by *Bajazet*, he made so good conditions for himself, that he had other lands and estates in the *Lesser Asia*, assigned to him in exchange for this, and so surrendred this to the will of the conquerour.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of *Tarshish*, the son of *Javan*, by whom, or some of his posterity, to preserve his memory, the City of *Tarsus* was first built. Increased in tract of time by some new Colonies out of the neigbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the most part the fortunes of it; successively together subject to the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining fortunes of the house of *Seleucus* they began to stand upon their own legs, and might have continued longer in so good a posture, had they not hearkned to ill Counsels. Tempted by *Mithridates* to joyn with him against the *Romans*, of whose greatness all the Eastern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylians*, to infest the Seas. At first they ventured no further than the shores adjoyning. But after emboldned with successe, and finding that the *Romans* were sufficiently embroiled in *domestick* troubles, and a sharp war with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coasts of *Greece*, and in fine of *Italy* it self; *Publius Servilius* the *Proconsul* first employed against them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good fortune, set upon them in their Harbours and retiring places. In which pursute he not only took from them *Phaselis*, a strong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their best and strongest *Receptacles*; but wasting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Isaurus*, the most defensible Town thereof, which he took and ransacked. No sooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the creeks and ports of the Eastern Seas with their Frigots, *Brigantines* and other light *Piratical* Vessels, insomuch that *Pompey* himself thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatnesse, to undertake the war against them. And he pursued it to such purpose, that having armed 500 sail of all sorts, and stored his ships with 130000 men, he set upon them all at once; and in the space of one sole moneth made an end of the war. An action not sufficiently to be wondred at, if we consider either the speedinesse of it, done in so little time as a moneth; or the cheapness of the victory, purchased without the loss of one *Roman* Vessel; or finally the importance and consequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infest the Seas, and all *Cilicia* subjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards disposed of hath been shewn already. After this they did very good service unto *Pompey* in his war against *Cæsar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids.

Atq; Cilix *justa*, *nunc non* Pirata, *carinâ*.

And the reformed *Cilician*, now
No *Pirate*, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conquerour; but generally so tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the first *Proconsuls* or Lord Deputies which were sent to govern them; that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province: save that the *Panthars* (some of which, one of his friends had prayed him to send to *Rome*, for the adorning of his triumph) were

for

for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the first conquest by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campestrem* and *Trachæam*, as was said before; of which *Campestris* was reduced immediatly to the form of a Province. *Aspera* or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the government of Kings, till the time of *Vespasian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the succeeding Emperours, on some reasons of State (if not those intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being increased (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole was divided into three: that is to say, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campestris* wholly; *Cilicia secunda*, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia Aspera*; and *Isauria*, taking up the mountainous part of this last division. Laid by the Emperour *Constantine* to the *Diocese* of the *Orient*; and consequently subject in spiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis* had his usual residence. In the falling of the Eastern Empire, it was conquered by the *Saracens* in the time of *Muhaveas* or *Muavi*, the sixt *Caliph*. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the *Greek* or Eastern Emperours, and from them conquered by the *Turks* in the course of their victories. But the first race of *Turkish* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the second; it was part of the new kingdom of the *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the destruction of that line by *Bajazet* the second, *Anno* 1486. by whom incorporated with the rest of the *Ottoman* Empire. *Cilicia.*

Thus having made our progress over all the Provinces of the *Lesser Asia*, and shewn how every one of them was made subject to the *Turkish* Tyranny: we must next draw down the succession of such *Turkish* Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the house of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themselves Masters of the kingdom of *Persia*, and following their successes into *Syria* also, fell to a breach amongst themselves. For making up whereof it was condescended unto by *Axan*, the then *Persian* Sultan, that *Meloch* and *Ducat*, two of his discontented Kinsmen, should be infeoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and their several Territories, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, possessed at that time of most part of *Syria*, and some of the adjoyning Provinces. It was also then agreed upon, that a third but nearer Kinsman called *Cutlu Moses*, another of the *Leaders* of the opposite faction, should have leave to conquer for himself, whatsoever he could win from the *Christian* Princes: And he accordingly being furnish'd with a competent Army, subdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Asia*; with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in *Asia Minor*. Which and the rest of their affairs take here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family;

1075 1 *Cutlu Moses*, Nephew to *Trangolipix*, the first *Persian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*.

2 *Solyman*, son of *Cutlu Moses*, for a while dispossessed of most of his estates by the *Western Christians*, in their first passage towards the *Holy Land*.

3 *Mahomet*, the son of *Solyman*, recovered most of his estates in the *Lesser Asia*; but outed of them, and subdued by

4 *Musat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium*; but of the same *Selzuccian* Family, who was thereby possessed of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.

5. *Calisastlan*, the son of *Musat* (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces,) wrested *Amasia*, and *Ancyra*, from his brother *Jagupasan*; *Sebastia*, and *Cæsarea*, from his brother *Dodune*; which with their several Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperour *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his kingdom.

6. *Reucratine*, the third son of *Calisastlan*, having dispossest his three brethren, *Musat*, *Cappatine*, *Caicosrhoes*, of the estates left them by their Father, became sole Monarch of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*. In the later end of whose reign, *Occata* the *Tartarian Cham* having driven the *Turks* out of *Persia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the same *Selzuccian* Family, joyned themselves to their Countrymen here, with whose help they won *Cilicia* from the *Grecian* Emperours, who in the reign of *Calo-Johannes*, (the *Turks* being then embroyled by the Western *Christians*) had not long before regained it; and after the decease of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole estate.

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*, of the race of *Aladine*.

7 *Aladine*, descended in direct line from *Cussanes*, the last *Turkish* Sultan in *Persia*, having with many of his Nation seated himself in *Cilicia*, first made *Sebastia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief seat or residence: which after the death of *Reucratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the antient Regal City of the former kings.

8 *Azalide*, by some called *Azadine*, eldest son of *Aladine*, wasted the most part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jathatine*; whom at last he forced into exile.

9 *Jathatine*, on the death of his brother possesseth the kingdom, slain afterwards in single combat by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Emperour of the *Greeks*, at *Nice*.

10 *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in exile: the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vassals unto the *Tartarian*.

Tenedos.

11 *Maſut*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the ſame *Selzuccian* family (but whether the ſons of the ſecond *Jathatine*, I am not able to ſay) ſubſtituted in his place; as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.

12 *Aladine* II. ſon of *Cei-cubades*, ſucceeded his father in the kingdom, but as Vaſſal and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whoſe death, leaving no iſſue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongſt them his Dominions. To *Sarachan* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarchan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the reſt of *Lydia*, *Phrygia major*, and the greateſt part of the *Greater Myſia*, from him called *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Carajus*, the *Leſſer Phrygia*, with the reſt of *Myſia*, from him denominated *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi*; to the Family of the *Iſfendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lyeth next to *Bithynia*. There were alſo leſſer *Toparchies* or ſubdiviſions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a ſecond of *Amaſia*, a third of *Amiſus*, a fourth of *Scandeloro*; beſides many others. But the main body of the eſtate was ſeized by *Caraman*, who for his ſhare had the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, *Piſidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the greateſt part of *Caria*, (the reſt of it appertaining to the Prince of *Menteſia*) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and ſome Towns in *Phrygia*; continuing in his family for as many deſcents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and luſtre, under

The *Turkiſh Kings* in *Aſia Minor*, of the houſe of *Caraman*.

13 *Caraman*, the firſt raiſer of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the firſt King of that race.

14 *Aladine*, ſon of *Caraman*, and ſon-in-law of *Amurath* the firſt of the houſe of *Ottoman*, by whom ſubdued, but pardoned and reſtored unto his eſtate, on the humble entreats of his wife.

15 *Aladine* II. ſon of the former, ſubdued by *Bajazet* the firſt, and hanged by *Tertumaſes*, one of *Bajazets* great Commanders.

16 *Mahomet*, ſon of *Aladine* the ſecond, recovered his Kingdom on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquiſhed and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquiſhed by *Mahomet* the ſon of *Bajazet*, redeemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally ſlain at the ſiege of *Attalia*.

17 *Ibrahim*, the ſon of *Mahomet*, and ſon-in-law of *Amurath* the ſecond, againſt whom unadviſedly raiſing war, he was forced to ſubmit and become his *Tributary*: after whoſe death, rebelling againſt *Mahomet* the *Great*, he was then alſo vanquiſhed, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.

18 *Ibrahim* II. by ſome called *Pyramus*, the ſon of *Ibrahim* the firſt, ſupported *Zemes*, brother of *Bajazet* the ſecond in his war againſt him: for which *Bajazet* having ſetled his affairs, invaded and ſubdued the kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in battel, and ſo united that Eſtate unto the reſt of the Dominions of the houſe of *Ottoman*. The ſtrange ſucceſſes of which houſe, from the firſt riſing of it to theſe preſent times, ſhall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation firſt attempted and atchieved the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and which only of all their large poſſeſſions doth retain any thing of their name. In the mean time we will ſurvey the Iſlands of this *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſo proceed to their poſſeſſions in the *Greater*, as they lie before us.

19. *The Province of the* ASIAN ISLES.

The Province of the ASIAN ISLES comprehendeth all the Ilands in *Aſia Minor*, from the mouth of the *Helleſpont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one: united firſt into a Province by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Helleſpont*, and that of *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, making up the peculiar or exempt juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Thoſe of moſt conſideration are, 1 *Tenedos*. 2 *Lesbos*. 3 *Chios*. 4 *Samos*. 5 *Coos*. 6 *Icaria*. 7 *Patmos*. 8 *Claros*. 9 *Carpathos*. 10 *Rhodes*. Others of leſs note, having nothing memorable but their names, are ſcarce worth the naming.

1. *TENEDOS*, is ſituate at the mouth of the *Helleſpont*, over againſt the noted Promontory called of old *Sigeum* (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, from which diſtant not above five miles. The Iſle it ſelf in circuit no more than ten; ſwelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts levell; in both producing as good wines as the beſt of *Greece*. It took name, as the general tradition was, from *Tenes* the ſon of *Cycnus*, King of a little City in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, who being falſly accuſed by his Step-dame for ſolliciting her to that inceſtuous mixture which ſhe had violently importuned, and he as pioufly refuſed; was by the command of his Father put into a cheſt, expoſed to the mercy of the Sea, and there miraculouſly preſerved. Here for a time he is ſaid to reign, with great commendation for his juſtice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been ſlain by the hand of *Achilles*: of whom therefore it was not lawfull to make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples hereof. But *Bochartus* caſting off all this as an old wives fable, will have it ſo called from *Tin-edum* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Red clay*, which the Potters made uſe of in their earthen veſſels. A town it had of the ſame name with the Iland, in which a Temple ſacred to *Apollo Smynthius*; and another called *Aſterion*, ſituate neer a little River

well

well ſtored with *Crab-fiſh*, whoſe ſhells were made in the form of an Ax or Hatchet. From which Town as the Ilanders have in ſome Authors the name of *Aſterii*; ſo from the other circumſtance, they are ſaid to have had the ſtamp of an Hatchet on their coin or money. Memorable for an old cuſtom obſerved amongſt them, which was, that at the back of the Judge there alwaies ſtood a man with an Ax advanced; as well to terrifie the Witneſſes from giving falſe evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a falſe ſentence upon the evidence. Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia Securis*. More memorable for the final deſtruction of *Troy*, which was plotted here, the *Grecians* withdrawing their forces hither, as if gone in earneſt; but from hence ſetting ſail again to ſurpriſe the Town, when they ſaw their plot had took effect. And ſo I leave it with that *Character* which the Poet gives it. *Lesbos.*

Eſt in conſpectu Tenedos, *notiſſima fumâ*
Inſula, *dives opum* Priami *dum Regna manebant*.
Nunc tantum ſinus, *& ſtatio male-fida carinis*.

In Engliſh thus,

In ſight of *Troy* an Iland ſtands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*: rich, and of great renown,
Whilſt *Priams* kingdom flouriſh'd; now (they ſay)
Grown a poor Road, for ſhips an unſafe bay.

2. *LESBOS*, the largeſt of theſe *Aſian* Iſles, is diſtant from the main land of *Troas*, about ſeven miles; 168 in compaſs: reckoned the ſeventh in bigneſs of the *Mediterranean*, which *Ariſtotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, ranketh in this Order following. τυγχάνει αἱ μὲν ἀξιόλογοι, Σικελία, καὶ Σαρδοὶ, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Κρήτη, καὶ Εὐβοία, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Λέσβος. That is to ſay, The moſt conſiderable of theſe, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, *Crete*, *Euboea*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameleſs Poet in *Euſtathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Antients, vary in ordering of the reſt, according as their information or fancies led them: yet *Lesbos* comes in the ſeventh place conſtantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it called *Lesbos* from *Esburith* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying ſeven: contracted firſt to *Esbu*, by leaving out the laſt ſyllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough ſet, and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies: this Iland being reckoned in the ſeventh place for no other reaſon, but becauſe it lay furtheſt off, and moſt North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their accompt, and not any myſtery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the ſon of *Lapythus*, who maried *Methymna* the daughter of *Macarius* Prince here of: from which *Macarius*, it had ſometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly called, from *Mitylene*, another of the daughters of the ſaid *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole family might be preſerved in this Iland, *Methymna* alſo had a City called by her name, one of the principal of the Country.

The Country towards the Weſt, and South, reported to be mountainous and ſomewhat barren, the reſt level and fruitfull; plentiful of excellent corn, and abounding in delicious wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambroſia*, the liquor of the Gods, as the Poets fable, affording alſo plenty of ſheep, and ſtore of horſes; theſe laſt couragious and ſtrong, though but low of Stature. More memorable for the eminent perſons which it hath produced, as 1. *Sappho*, an *Heroick* woman, whoſe invention was the *Sapphick* verſe, and therefore called the *tenth Muſe*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *ſeven Wiſemen of Greece*. 3. *Theophraſtus*, that notable Phyſician and Philoſopher. 4. *Alcæus*, the ſucceſſour of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyrical* poeſie; and 5. *Arion*, the *Muſician*, who was ſo perfect on his *Harp*, that being caſt into the Sea playing on that inſtrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his back, and wafted him ſafe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole ſtory unto *Periander*, atteſted by the Marines who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by ſome rejected as a poetical fiction; yet paſt all doubt, the man was not only an excellent *Muſician*, but an eminent Poet, the firſt inventor of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the verſe called *Dithyrambick*.

Principal towns herein, 1. *Lesbos*, ἀφ' οὗ ἡ ὅλη νῆσος Λέσβος ἐλέγετο, from whom (ſaith *Stephanus*) the whole Iland had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Methymna*, ſo named from *Methymna* one of the daughters of *Macarius*, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, ſo named from the other daughter, and wife of *Lesbus*, now the chief City of the Iland; ſeated on a *Peninſula* looking towards the main land ſtrong by nature, and fortified by Art: enjoying on either ſide a commodious Haven, that on the South moſt fit for Gallies; the other capable of ſhips of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent buildings, and ſweetned with variety of delights and pleaſures: little now left of it ſince ſubdued by the *Turks*, but a ſtrong Caſtle, manned with an able Garriſon, and a well-ſtored *Arſenal* for Gallies, kept here in readineſs to preſerve thoſe Seas from Pirates, with which much infeſted. But the two firſt long ſince decayed and grown out of knowledge, thoſe of moſt note next *Mitylene*, are 4. *Vaſilica*. 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Caſtel-Gera*: all of late daies, and therefore of no obſervation in point of Story.

The Iland was firſt inhabited by the *Pelaſgians*, conducted hither by *Zanthus* the ſon of *Triopus*; whence named *Pelaſgia*: afterwards by ſome *Ionians*, and people of ſundry nations, planted here by *Macarius*, (the father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*;) who by his prudence and the reputation of his juſtice, obtained a kind of Soveraignty over the neighbouring Iſlands. *Lesbus* the ſon of *Lapythus* ariving here with his Family, maried *Methymna*, and had the Iland for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Iland conſequently called by her name. Made ſubject to

the

Chios. to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponnesian* war (when almost all *Greece* banded against that City) they revolted from it, and were so streightly besieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they submitted unto mercy. The General sends to *Athens* to know what should be done with the *Mitylenians*; Answer was sent, that he should put them to the sword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, sent a countermand. These latter Messengers made no stay, but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene*, just as *Paches* was reading the former Order; by this speed prevented. So near were these miserable people to a fatal destruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and some other of these Isles, *An.* 1124. by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperour. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperour *Baldwin*, and all the rest of the *Ægean* added to their portion; those above-named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas* the *Greek* Emperour, then residing at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335. the Emperour *Calo-Johannes* gave it to *Franciscus Catalusius*, a Noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his sisters, for her Dower. By whose posterity enjoyed, till the year 1462. when *Mahomet* the *Great* incensed against *Dominicus Catalusius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder brother, a Vassal and Tributary of his Empire (those Princes paying to the *Turk* an annual tribute of 4000 Ducats;) but more for harbouring the Pirats of *Spain* and *Italy*, besieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 dayes (for so long it held) he constrained to submit unto him, and therewith all the Iland also. Some of the chief families being removed unto *Constantinople*, upon some reasons of State, the main body of the people were permitted to remain here to till the land; and so continue to this day, with some few *Turks*, inconsiderable for their strength or numbers, intermixed among them.

3. *CHIOS*, the next to *Lesbos* both in site and bigness, lyeth opposite to the shore of *Ionia*, from which distant not above four leagues, is in compass about 126 miles. So called, as some say, from *Chione* a fair Nymph hereof, much sought after by many Suters: as others say, from χίων, a *Greek* word signifying *Snow*, wherewith the mountains of it are sometimes covered. And some again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* letter χ, first got that name unto it self, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Iland. *Isidore* in his *Origines* gives another reason, and will have it called so from a *Syriack word* signifying *Mastick*, whereof there is plenty in this Isle. *Chios insula* (saith he) *Syrâ linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi* Mastyx *gignitur; Syri enim* Mastychen Chion *vocant*. And were it so, that *Chios* in the *Syriack* did signifie *Mastick*, there could no better reason be assigned for the name: this Iland being more furnished with that commodity, than any place in the world besides. A gumm it is growing out of the *Lentisk* tree, which in the moneths of *July* and *August* the Inhabitants force out of those trees, by making with sharp instruments a deep incision into the barks of them; out of which the juice dropping is afterwards hardned like a gumm, and in the *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultanie* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the selling of the *Lentisck* tree, at the time of the distilling of this precious juice interdicted, on the penalty of losing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Iland are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, some *quarries* of most excellent *Marble*, a certain green earth like the rust of brass; some Silks and Cotton-Wool, but short in worth to those of *Smyrna*, and other places: Honey as good as any the world affordeth; and a vein of most delicious vines, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amista*. Of which *Pliny* gives this commendation, *In summa gloria fuere* Thasium, Chiumque; *ex* Chio, *quod* Arvisium *vocant*. Of all wines (saith he) those of *Thassus*, and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvisian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the *Superlative* degree, and calleth the wine hereof, οἶνον ἄριστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν, incomparably the best of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean*, or voluptuous liver, affirms, that he conceived it the supreme felicity Καὶ δὲ συγκῶμος, καὶ μετὰ οἴνου Ἀριστου, to *lie with* Thais, *and drink these* Arvisian *wines*. Here are also infinite store of *Partriges*, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in flocks like Geese, in the Streets and *Greenswarths* of their villages: some little Boy or Girl driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *whistle*, when the night comes on.

The Iland divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher*, called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West; hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful vales and pleasant Rivers; the *Lower* opposite unto it, called *Catamorea*, swelled here and there with gentle hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisck*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their conquest by that people) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity: the better sort of people both in apparrel, and manners, coming neer the *Genoese*, once the Lords of this Iland; the common sort continuing their old *Greek* humor of mirth and jollity (not sensible of the *Turkish* thraldom under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions still distinct and separate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it six and thirty Towns and villages, the principal whereof are, 1. S. *Elias*, in the North. 2. *Pigrine*, in the midst hereof; and 3. *Chios* it self, now called *Sio* (as is all the Iland) one of the seven Cities contending for the birth of *Homer*; whose Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle neer the Mount and Town of S. *Elias*, (which were it his, would be a better argument for his burial here, than it is for his birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of the Country,

Country, to which both industry and Art have given great advantage: here being few houses without Orchards of excellent fruits, as Oringes, Limons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and a kind of Fig, much praised for their quickness of tast by the antient *Romans*. It standeth on the East-side opposite to the shores of *Asia*, stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the West-side backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwise secure once entred; and for directing of the entrance, a Lantern advanced by the *Genoese* (when Lords hereof) to give light by night, and serve for a land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-side by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep ditches, well furnished with munition, and a *Turkish* Garrison. And because the Iland is on all parts accessible, not naturally fortified with rocks, and dangerous precipices, as many others; besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small *watch-towers*, which with smoke by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: the *Guards* about the Castle being so intent also about their charge, that every minute of the night there goeth a word about the walls to declare their vigilancie. *Samos.*

The *Chians* were at first a *free people*, governing themselves as a Commonwealth; and by reason of their many harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sayl, which gave them the *Lordship* of those Seas, till eclipsed by the *Rhodians*. Besieged by *Philip* the father of *Perseus*, with his utmost power, who when he could not get it by force, proclamed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters wives, if they would rebel against their Masters. And when this policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he gave over the siege. At last they became subject to the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of *Lesbos*; which we have spoken of before: till given by *Andronicus Palæologus*, one of the last *Greek* Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Genoesian* family, assistant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as *tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent* picking a quarrel with them for some suspected correspondencie with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassas*, to seize the Iland. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City, with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of his Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day*, being the same day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their *Religion*, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4. *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant about five miles from the shores of *Ionia*; about eighty, or eighty seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially on the North-west, with inaccessible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of the *Pirates* which infest those Seas. The soyl sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits, abundantly plentifull of Oyl, and Olives, but of *Vines* altogether unfurnished; which is the more to be admired, in regard all the Ilands and shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West: and on the South part of it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Iland; now wholy desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very useful to those *publick enemies*, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a ship to Sea, for pursute of their *Robberies*. The chief commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a *medicinal Earth*, usefull for *Chirurgery* and *Physick*: of which in former times were those Vessels made, called *Vasa Samia*, in great request amongst the *Romans*.

Antiently it had the names of *Dryusa*, *Anathemusa*, *Melamphylas*, and *Ciparissa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it still retaineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wise-man *Pythagoras* (a wiser than any of the *seven wise Masters* so renowned amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a *free Commonwealth* of no small esteem, the Institutes whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being: afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deservedly esteemed; that so it might be said he had some mis-fortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fish brought accidentally to his table, he was overcome by *Orontes* a *Persian*, and brought to a miserable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp sting, hath alwaies some misery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same fortune with the rest of these Ilands; subject successively to the great *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5. *ICARIA*, (now called *Niceria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the West-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compass seven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Ilands, of old called *Melanthii*, now the *Fernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meanly inhabited at the present, though abounding in pasturage, and yielding sufficiency of corn; Havenless, and therefore the less frequented, yet that defect supplyed by commodious Roads. In former times called *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Ichsiæsa*: which name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*. Who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandar* to his wife

in

Patmos, Claros, &c.

in her loves with *Taurus*, ſecretly with *Icarus* his ſon, fled out of that Iland. And becauſe he would be ſure to out-ſtrip the *Rowers* who purſued him, he added ſails unto his Boat, which it is ſaid he firſt invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvaſs, and bearing too great a ſayl, was here caſt away. Hence the new name both to this Iland, and the Seas adjoyning to it: and the occaſion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting wings upon his ſhoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his ſons flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were faſtned with, and ſo he periſhed in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*,

Dum petit infirmis nimium ſublimia pennis
Icarus, Icariis *nomina fecit aquis.*

In Engliſh thus,

Whilſt *Icarus* weak wings too high did ſoar,
He fell, and gave name to th' *Icarian* ſhore.

6. *PATMOS*, now called *Palmoſa*, is ſituate on the South of the other two; A little Iland, not above 30 miles in compaſs. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, eſpecially of wheat and pulſe; of other commodities, and fruits, not ſo well provided. On one of theſe Mountains ſtands a town of the ſame name with the Iland; having on the top thereof a Monaſterie of *Greek Caloires*; and on the bottom a fair haven (I mean in reference to the Iland.) Forty ſail of Ships are ſaid to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in thoſe proviſions which the ſoyl affordeth not: the ſoyl about the town being ſo incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on ſuch earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Iland (as to others in other patts of the world) did the *Roman* Emperours uſe to confine offenders. A puniſhment laid by *Domitian* on S. *John* the *Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Aſia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Iland. And the Inhabitants by *tradition* point unto an houſe on the North-ſide of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off, the *Cave* where it was *revealed*. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They alſo ſhew a dead mans hand, which they affirm to be his, the nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (ſaith *Maginus*) claim it for the hand of oue of their *Prophets*. Let them diſpute the controverſie, whilſt we haſt to

7. *CLAROS*, another Iland not far off, containing about 40 miles in compaſs. Well ſtored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous; ſome of thoſe hils of ſuch an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Epheſus* in *Ionia*, (though diſtant at leaſt eighty miles) may be eaſily ſeen. It is now called *Calamo*. Neighboured by *Lero* (of old called *Ileron*) a little Iland not above eighteen miles in circuit; but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furniſhing the neighboring Countries with ſome ſtore of *Aloes*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckoned by him amongſt his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*: where he declares,

——————*Mihi* Delphica *tellus*,
Et Claros, *et* Tenedos, Pataræaque *Regia ſervit.*

That is to ſay,

The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,
And Royal *Patara*, my Vaſſals are.

8. *COOS*, *COS*, or *COUS*, for by all theſe names it was called of old, is ſituate over againſt *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægean*, that is to ſay, in that part thereof whith is called *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea ſo called, as ſome ſay, from one *Myrtilus*, the Coachman or *Charioteer* of *OEnomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Plinie* leſs probably conceiveth that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Iland not far from *Eubœa*, a little too far off to extend its name to the ſhores of *Caria*. And therefore conſidering that *Lydia* antiently was called *Myrtus*, and that in thoſe times *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, lying on this Sea, were accompted but as parts thereof, I think we may reſolve with more probability, that it derived this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea ſtands the Iſle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylers as they paſs by a moſt beautiful proſpect, lying for the moſt part flat and level, but ſwelling towards the Eaſt with ſome graceful mountains, out of which iſſue many ſweet and pleaſant ſprings to refreſh the Iland, which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypreſs* trees, *Turpentine*, and ſundry others, both delightful and *medicinal*; but moſt eſpecially celebrated for thoſe rich wines, which the Good Fellows of *Rome* ſo much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compaſs 70 miles, having a Town of the ſame name, in the ſuburbs whereof, ſtood antiently the Temple of *Æſculapius*, famous and rich with the offerings of thoſe, who having by his aſſiſtance (as they ſuppoſed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vowes, and expreſs their gratitude. It is now fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held by a Garriſon of *Turks*: and beſides this, two Villages only in the Iland, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæa*, and at laſt of *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous men who were herein born; *viz.* of *Hippocrates*, the Revivor of *Phyſick*, then almoſt decayed, who is hence called *Hippocrates Cous*. 2. *Sinius*, a Phyſician alſo; 3. *Ariſton*, a *Peripatetick* Philoſopher; 4. *Philetas*, as good an Oratour, as a Poet; 5. *Nicias*, who for a time oppreſſed the liberty of this peopl[e]; and 6. of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to expreſs his

art

art in the picture of *Venus*, (rising naked out of the Sea) assembled together all the most beautiful women of this Iland, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Iland, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and there dedicated to *Cæsar*, as the mother of the *Julian* family: the *Coans* in regard hereof, being eased of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much less memorable for that fine thin stuff (such as now called *Tiffanies*) so much in use amongst the Chief Ladies of *Rome*; which at once shewed them cloathed and naked. *Perlucida utuntur veste, ita ut nudæ conspici possint*, as my Author hath it. These they called *Vestimenta Coa*, and *Vestes Coas*, so often mentioned by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis Vestis*, in *Tibullus*; *Induc me Cois*, in *Propertius*; *Sive erit in Cois*, saith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others also, too many, and too long to be added here. I pass to

Carpathos and Rhodes.

9. *CARPATHOS*, situate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Iland, called hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleasing soil, full of difficult mountains, but those mountains stored with quarries of most excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than bredth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathos* being still remaining, and still the principal of the Iland; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the shore, and every one of them furnished with some Port or Haven; but small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*, it hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately:) to whom being given with other of the Ilands of these *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western forces, it hath the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almost all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a State of *Italy*.

10. *RHODES*, situate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over against the coast of *Lycia*, in *Asia Minor*, from which distant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiusa*, *Asteria*, *Æthræa*, *Trinachia*, *Paessa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at last *Macaria*; it setled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the soil produceth, *Rhodos* in that language signifying a *Rose*, the *Isle of Roses*, as it were: but as the Poets say, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here deflowred by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollo* begat on *Venus*. For so one of them thus declareth;

Insula dicta Rhodos, *de Sole et* Cypride *nata est.*

Rhoda, from whom this Isle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Iland 140 miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate air, and a fertile soyl, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent pastures, adorned with trees which alwaies do continue green: and in a word, so blest with the gifts of nature, that it gave occasion to the fable of those *Golden Shewers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The *wines* hereof so excellent, and so rich of taste, that by the *Romans* they were used in their second courses, or reserved for the sacrifices of the gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and continuall spring, is to be ascribed to the powerful influences of the *Sun*, so dearly cherishing this Iland, or so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed that no day passeth wherin he shineth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with clouds, or obscured by mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meer Marish, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters; til loved by *Phœbus*, and erected above the waves by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon; Look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1. *Lindus*, (now *Lindo* a pety Town, but formerly of more esteem:) of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the birth of *Chares*, the *Architect* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the *seven wise* men of *Greece*: the other six being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilo* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Miletum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mitylene*. Seven men of whom the *Grecians* most immensely bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number: for which derided handsomly by *Lactantius*, an old *Christian* writer, who scoffs their paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous age, *in quo septem Soli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accompted men. 2. *Rhodes*, antiently, as now the chief City of it, the Iland from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in later times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superiour to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and commodious Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Sconces, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal *Universities* of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marseilles*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old *Academies* of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius*, (afterwards Emperour) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his

Rhodes. his 2 Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his heirs: pretending only a desire to improve himself in the ways of *literature*; whereas the true cause was his envy at their preferment. Honoured in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the *seven wonders* of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum*, before mentioned. Composed of Brass, in height seventy *Cubits*, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and consecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Iland. Twelve years in making, and having stood but 66 years was pulled down in an instant by an *Earthquake*, which terribly shook the whole Iland. The *Rhodians* being forbid by an *Oracle* to erect it again (or possibly pretending such an *Oracle* to save that charge) yet held the brasse and other materials of it (in a manner) sacred. Not medled with, nor sacrilegiously purloined till *Mnavias*, the General of *Osmen*, the *Mahometan Caliph*, finding in himself no such scruple of conscience, (after he had subdued this Iland) made a prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very brasse of it. From this *Colossus* was the Iland sometimes called *Colossa*, and the people *Colossians*: not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom St. *Paul* writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was also in this City antiently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*; of both which people the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair esteem; but the *God* and the *good Wines* in greater. Towns of less note, are 3. *Villanova*, 4. *Russicare*, and some others, but as little memorable.

This Iland was first peopled by *Dodanim* the son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly *Rhodanim*; mistaking the *Hebrew* letter *Daleth* for that of *Resh*, letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Iland too narrow for him, he left here a Colonie, and with the main body of his people passed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here being mistakingly called *Rhodians* (or called so by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roses* herein growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime affairs, that by *Florus* they are stiled *Populus nauticus*; and that not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of power and government; holding for many years the command of these Seas, and prescribing Laws for the Regleiment of Navigarion. Which being called the *Rhodian* Laws, became the general Rule for deciding *marine* causes, and ordering the affairs of Sea, in all the parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and so continued till supplanted in these western parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearfull of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*; whom first they aided in their wars against *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his composition; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Ilands of the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Seas revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*; this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their strength at Sea, or of those good Officers, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themselves fit men to advise their *Masters*. Grown troublesome by their frequent interpositions, and losing much of their esteem by such *impertinencies*; they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*; whose Father they before opposed with their utmost power. A change which *Parterculus* expresseth with some admiration. *Rhodii ipsi fidelissimi antea* Romanis, *dubia jam side proniores in* Regis *partes visi sunt*, as his words there are. But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, as before was said; and served their turn on all occasions, until insensibly they betrayed their liberty to the power of their friends; and of *Confederates* and Allies, became their *Vassals*. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with the rest of the Isles, the Governour or President of that Province fixing here his residence, as the chief of those Ilands; which gave the title of *Metropolitan* to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued, (or under that of *Constantinople* after the division) till the year 1124. when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperour *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*. Won from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, the Knights of Saint *John* of *Hierusalem*, being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel* the then Emperour, who aided them in the conquest, *An.* 1308. Afterwards proving bad neighbours to the *Turkish* tyrants, whom they ceased not to infest upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded: *Mahomet* the *Great*, famous for taking *Constantinople*, and the Empire of *Trabezond*, spending some time before their City, with both loss and shame. At the last *An.* 1522. it was again besieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamus Villerius* being then great Master: who did as much in defence hereof as policy and puissance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Christmas* day, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conquerour; though possibly he might have said (as *Pyrrhus* once said of a like victory against the *Romans*) that *such another victory would have quite undon him*. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banished out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the *Christians* which are licensed to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of death to stay there all night. And so we pass from the Ilands of the *Asian Diocese*, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a near neighbour unto *Anatolia*; but no member of it: the rest of that *Diocese*, and those Seas, as 11. *Possidium*. 12. *Arcesine*. 13. *Bugiales*. 14. *Minyas*. 15. *Sirne*, 16. *Cesi*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of observation besides their names.

OF

OF CYPRUS.

CYPRUS is situate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from East to West two hundred miles; in breadth, sixty; the whole compass reckoned five hundred and fifty. Distant about sixty miles from the rocky shores of *Cilicia*, in *Asia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main land of *Syria*: towards which it shooteth it self out with a long sharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main land, from which rent in former time by a violent *Earthquake*, as is said by *Plinie*; and worn unto this narrowness by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed his name, or at least had more names on the By than this. Called at first *Cethin*, or *Cethinia*, from *Ketim* the son of *Javan*, who first planted in it. 2. *Cerastis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thrusting like *horns* into the Sea, (as the Word intimates in the *Greek*,) 3. *Amathusia*. 4. *Paphia*. 5. *Salaminia*; these three last from the principal Towns in those parts hereof. 6. *Macaria*, from the fruitfulness and felicities of it. Besides these it hath in some times had these By-names also, as 7. *Asperia*, from the roughness of the soil. 8. *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9. *Æroſa*, from the Mines of Brass, which abound therein. 10. And finally, all those forgotten or laid by, it setled at the last in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, say some, from the abundance of *Cypress* Trees, with which most plentifully provided; as other, from *Cryptos* a *Greek* word, signifying *Concealed*, or hidden, because sometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Saylers; but most improbably said by others to take name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodisia*; whereas indeed six hundred years before *Cyrus* his birth we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, ἀπὸ Κύπρου τῆς θυγατρὸς Κινύρου, from *Cyprus* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* wars: though in my mind the first comes neerest to the truth, the *Cypress* Tree, not only growing here in so great abundance, but being antiently peculiar in a manner to this Iland only.

But on what ground soever it was called *Cyprus*, certain I am it had the name of *Cerastis* upon very good reason: no Iland or Region that I known of (for the bigness of it) thrusting out so many sharp Promontories. For on the West, there is 1. the Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Pisano*. 2. *Drepanum*, now *Trapano* and *Melechia*. 3. *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South, 4. *Phrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5. *Curias*, or *Capo della Gatte*. 6. *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7. *Throni*, or *Capo Pila*. On the East, 8. *Pendalium*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9. *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andrea*. And on the North, 10. *Crocyon*, now *Capo Cornochiette*; besides some others of less note. Some of the Poets give another reason of this name, as that *Venus* offended with the people of *Amathus* for sacrificing their guests, should turn them into *horned* Cattel, *Unde etiam nomen traxere* Ceraſtæ, as it is in *Ovid*. But that meerly fabulous; somewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentish Long-tails*. Yet so far we may joyn with *Ovid*, that the Iland was not only called *Cerastis*, but that the people were also called *Cerastæ*, of which there wants not proof from some other Authors; with which we need not trouble our selves, that name being altogether worn out of use, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common speech. Nor is it a matter of more strangeness, that *Cyprus* should be called so by the *Grecians*, from its abundance of *Cypress* Trees, antiently and originally peculiar to this Iland, as before was noted: than that the same *Grecians* should give unto the neighbouring Iland, the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roses*; or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm-trees*; the words so signifying in that Language.

It is situate under the fourth *Climat*, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a half; and for that cause the air in Summer time exceeding hot and sweltry: the soil moistned with some few brooks, meriting rather the name of torrents, than Rivers, which being generated for the most part by rain water, are not seldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; insomuch that in the reign of *Constantine* the *Great*; this Iland was for 36 years together almost utterly for-

forsaken, no rain falling all that time. These inconveniences notwithstanding, it is stored with such plenty of all things, that without the help of any forein Nation, it is of it self able to build a tall ship from the keel to the top-sail, and so put it to sea furnished with all things needfull for a voyage, or a Sea-fight. It also aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Allom; Verdegreece, all sorts of Metals, store of Salt, Grograms, and other commodities, whereupon this Iland was once called *Macaria* (*i. e.* happy.) By reason of which wonderful affluence of all necessaries, and that variety of pleasures (even to sensuality) which the place afforded, it was antiently consecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence called *Venus Cypria*, and *Dea Cypri* : *Sic te diva potens Cypri*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

Festa dies Veneris, *tota celeberrima* Cypro,
Venerat; *ipsa suis aderat* Venus *aurea festis*.

Venus feasts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,
And *Venus* with her presence grac'd the same,

The people hereof are warlike, strong and nimble; of great civility, and hospitality to their neighbors, and love to strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Egypt* and the adjoyning Countreys, drew themselves together, and chose one *Alexander* for their Captain: under whose conduct they entred into this Iland, and laid it desolate, killing in it 240000 persons of all sexes and ages; not without much bloodshed vanquished and slain by *Lucius* the Emperors Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Iland; but come he hither voluntarily or by force of tempest, they lay hands on him, and lead him presently to execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity reprieve from that cruel custom.

The women in former times much noted for their Unchastity, to which their worshipping of *Venus* was no small incentive; it being the custom of these women, to prostitute themselves on the shores, to the passers by: their very *Virgins* not refusing to be hanselled there, before their mariage; either to raise their portions by the sale of their bodies, or else to please their Godess with such beastly sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Qu. *Carlotte*, when she came to *Rome*, to seek for aid against *James* the bastard, who had dispossessed her of this kingdom, shewed themselves little chaster than those antient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the men, *Æsclepiades*, the Author of the verse so named; 2. *Xenophon*, an old Poet; 3. *Zeno*, and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philosophers; 5. *Epiphanius*, the learned Bishop of *Salamis*; and 6. above all, Saint *Barnabas*, the dear Associate of St. *Paul*, being all natives of this Country.

The Christian faith was first here planted by Saint *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as the very first fruits of their Apostleship, after they had been separated to the work of the Ministry by the Imposition of hands; as appeareth *Acts* 13. v. 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reason of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint foundation, so privileged in the best ages of Christianity, that the Archbishop of this Iland had all prerogatives of a *Primate*; consecrated by his own Suffragan Bishops, and acting in all sacred and Ecclesiastical affairs, without dependence on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*; whereunto all other Bishops in the Eastern *Diocese*, were either subordinate or subject. Which privilege being questioned in the Council of *Ephesus*, was by the Fathers there assembled, on a full hearing of the cause, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil sanction of the Emperour *Justinian*, whose wife was a native of this Iland, and by the name of *Jus Cyprium*, the privilege or exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, transmitted to the Prelates of succeeding times. Which notwithstanding, they continued in good correspondence with the Eastern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the rites and forms thereof; til the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latine* Service into some of their Churches, and appointed Bishops and other Ministers of the *Papal* party, for execution of the same. And for the Government of these Churches, they had at first fourteen Bishops and Archbishops, to gratifie Queen *Alice* (who had a mind to enrich her friends with some of the spoils of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to say, the Archbishoprick of *Nicosia*, the Bishopricks of *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each Sea furnished with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latines*: of which the Bishops for the *Latines* have all the Lands, and annual *Revenues* which of right belong to those Cathedrals; the *Greek* Bishops living upon stipends, levied on the Priests and Deacons of their jurisdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was said, here are very few; and of those few, the principal are called *Lycus*, and *Lapithus*; the first running towards the South, the last towards the North; both not seldom so dried up, that they leave their empty Chanels without any water. Both also have their Source from the hill *Olympus* (the highest Mountain of the Iland) garnished with trees and fruits of all sorts; in compass about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty *Italian* miles) and at the end of every League a Monastery of *Greek Monks*, or *Caloires*, and a fountain of fresh water for the use of the house. Here are also two other little Rivers, the one called 3. *Bodeus*, the other 4. *Tolius*; but of the same nature as the former.

By *Ptolemy*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces, but since it fell into the hands of the *Lusignan* family, distributed into twelve Counties or *Cantrades*; most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. *viz.* 1. *Nicosia*. 2. *Famagusta*. 3. *Paphia*. 4. *Audima*. 5. *Limissa*. 6. *Masorum*. 7. *Salines*. 8. *Messoria*. 9. *Crusocus*. 10. *Pentalia*. 11. *Carpassus*. 12. *Cerines*. The whole containing, besides these Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages or thereabouts, which they

they called *Casales*; whereof the one half antiently belonged unto the *Crown*; the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility*, and the *Ecclesiasticks*; the Patrimony of these last being computed at 80000. Crowns of annual rents, besides casualties, and the vails of the Altar. But because the tracing out of these *Cantrades* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the division made hereof in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of 1. *Paphia*, 2. *Amathusia*, 3. *Lapethia*, and 4. *Salamine*. *Paphia, &c.*

1. *PAPHIA*, so called of *Paphos* the chief town thereof, taketh up the West part of the Iland: in which the Towns of most importance and observation, are 1. *Paphos*, on the Sea-side, by *Plinie* called *Palæ-paphos*, or old *Paphus*; built as some say, by *Cyniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and so named in memory of *Paphus* his father: but as others say, by *Paphos*, the son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phœnicia*, and *Cyprus*; to which last *Ovid* doth agree, who speaking of *Pygmalions* statue, turned into a woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautifull wife, fabled, for the surpassing whiteness of her skin to be made of *Ivorie*) he adds this of her,

Illa Paphum *genuit de quo tenet insula nomen.*

She *Paphus* bare, from whom the name
Of *Paphia*, to the Iland came.

Here *Venus* had her so much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both sexes in their natural nakedness, did perform her sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearfull *Earthquake*: or as the *Legends* have it, by the prayers of Saint *Barnabas*; the ruins of it still remaining. 2. *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now called *Baffo*, five miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Law-giver, after the sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent tempest: consecrate to the same impure Godess, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; those which here offered, not thinking they had done her sufficient service, unless they went in a solemn manner of procession, and paid their vowes also at the other. 3. *Arsinoe*, situate betwixt both; built by, or called so in honour of *Arsinoe* daughter of *Ptolemy*, the first King of *Egypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that house. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trepano*, under the Promontory so named, a well-traded Port, but miserably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Iland. 5. *Connelia*, one of the richest of the Iland, by reason of the plenty of Sugar, and Cotton-Wool, growing thereabouts. Built in the place of 6. *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* also, but differing from the Iland of that name in the *Ægean* Sea, rather in pronunciation than the purity of her oblations: the last syllable save one, in the name of that Iland, being short in verse, but this of *Cyprus* sounding long, as in this of *Virgil*.

Est Amathus, *est celsa mihi* Paphos, *atq;* Cithera.

Cithera, *Amathus* divine,
And lofty *Paphos*, are all mine.

2. On the South-East of *Paphia* lieth the Province or *District* of *AMATHUSIA*, taking up the South-parts of the Iland which look towards *Egypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Amathus*, giving name unto this division, then of most note, and much frequented for the annual sacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: the ruins of both hardly now discerned. Built, as some say, by *Amasis*, King of *Egypt*, when he conquered this Iland; but as others say, by some of the *Anathutes* descended from *Anath* one of the sons of *Canaan*. 2. *Cetium*, or *Citium*, (for I find it called by both names) the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence called Κίτιος, or *Citiensis*; and memorable for the death of *Cimon* the *Athenian* General. A Town wherein the memory of *Cittim*, the son of *Javan*, is most apparently preserved. 3. *Episcopio*, one of the chief of all the Iland, built on the place, or out of the decay, of 4. *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the same name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*: his Altars in those times held so sacred, that whosoever presumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoyning. 5. *Salines*, or *Salinæ*, so called from the rich Saltpits; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of those twelve *Cantrades*, into which the whole is now divided.

3. *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Iland, lyeth on the North thereof, opposite to *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*. Places of most importance in it, 1. *Nicosia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Arch-Bishop, and the chief of the Iland: antiently called *Ledronsis*, and *Lentenis*; but those names long ago laid by. Situate in the middest of the Isle, and in a plain and champain Country, abundantly fertile and delightful. Enironed with a fair wall, so exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of compasses: in circuit about five miles, and both for situation, numbers of people, and magnificent buildings of all sorts both publick and private, compared by some to the most beautifull City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their possession, with new walls, deep ditches, and eleven strong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern fortification. But notwithstanding all these works, and the help of 250 piece of Canon planted on the walls and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the second or third assault, *Septemb.* 9. *Anno* 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more strengthened by the

Salamine.

gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2. *Cerines*, ſituate near the Sea, ſtrong by art and nature, and furniſhed with all things neceſſary to endure a ſiege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alfonſus Palacins* the unwarlike Governor, terrified with the great ſlaughter made at the ſack of *Nicoſia*, before the enemy came near it. At firſt called *Ceurania*, and ſaid to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* King, when he firſt ſubdued the nine Kings hereof and united the Iland to that Crown; bleſt with a more temperate and wholeſom air, than any other in the Country. 3. *Tremitus*, the birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Biſhop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 10. and other *Eccleſiaſtical* writers. Wholly decaied, the ruine of it much contributing to the riſe of *Nicoſia*. 5. *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapeto*) on the banks of a ſmall Riveret of that name. Of ſo great note in former times, that it gave to this Diviſion the name of *Lapethia*. In this part ſtandeth the hill *Olympus*, (now the Mountain of the *holy Croſs*) deſcribed before.

4. *SALAMINE*, the fourth and laſt Province of this Iland, taketh up the whole Eaſt-parts hereof: So named from 1. *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Iſle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Deſtroyed by the *Jews* in the reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, ſacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that ſubverſion, being removed to *Nicoſia*. It was ſometimes, and by ſome writers, called *Conſtantia* alſo; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilſt it ſtood for the founder of it, being *Teucer* the ſon of *Telamon* King of *Salamis*, an Iſle of the *Ægean* Sea; baniſhed his Country by his Father, and ſeled in this Iland by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phœnicia*: as alſo for a famous Temple ſacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminius*. Out of the ruins hereof aroſe 2. *Famaguſta*, now the prime City of theſe parts; built as is ſaid by *Coſta*, the Father of *Saint Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the Eaſt end of the Iland, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape* of Saint *Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the head of *Græcia*. In compaſs not above two miles, in form four-ſquare, but that the ſide towards the Eaſt ſtretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in bredth, an old ſtone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (oppoſite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South eaſt, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow paſſage not above forty paces broad: but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather ſafe than large, aſſured both by the difficult entrance, and a chain croſſed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the works of it of the old faſhion generally decayed except one Bulwark, which was built according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Paliſadoes*, Curtains, Caſemates, and all other Additaments: moſt gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who ſpent no leſſe than 118000 great ſhot upon it; and at laſt yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3. *Aphrodiſium*, ſo named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4. *Arſinoe*, built alſo by one of the *Arſinoes* Queens of *Egypt* (there being two others of this name, and the ſame foundation,) now called *Leſcare*, and antiently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5. *Tamaſſus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for rich Mines of Braſs, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitriol* found plentifully in the fields adjoyning. 6. *Idalium*, neer a Mount of the ſame name, ſo called by accident. For *Chalcenor* the founder of it being told by *Oracle*, that he ſhould ſeat himſelf, and build a City, where he firſt ſaw the riſing Sun: one of his followers, ſeeing the Sun begin to riſe, cried out ἴδου ἅλιον, that is to ſay, *behold the Sun*. Which *omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were ſo or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian Groves*, ſo memorized and chanted by the antient Poets. So ſtrong an influence had luſt and ſenſuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Iland was defiled with thoſe brutiſh Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deitie: though to ſay truth, it was no marvail if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place, their *glory their ſhame*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Iland were the poſterity of *Cittim* the ſon of *Javan*, and grand-ſon of *Japhet*: who having ſeen his brother *Tarſhiſh* ſetled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is ſtill preſerved in the City of *Tarſus*) planted himſelf and his retinue in this oppoſite Iland. The City of *Cetium*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Citium*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the antienteſt of the Iland; which with the authority of *Joſephus*, and others of the antient writers, put it out of queſtion. But being this Iland was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to ſeek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here ſo many of his followers as might ſerve in time to plant the Countrey; and with the reſt paſſed into *Macedon*, where we have already ſpoken of him. Made tributary firſt to *Amaſis* King of *Egypt*, from which diſtant about three or four dayes ſailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near neigbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themſelves maſters of the Sea-coaſts and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grand Father to *Adonis*) is ſaid to have been K. of both. The like affirm'd of *Belus* one of his Succeſſors, who is ſaid to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named ſo (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the firſt Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer* the ſon of *Telamon*, baniſhed his Country, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was ſettled in the Eaſt parts hereof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his firſt plantation. Yet ſo, that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in

Story

Story, that *Elulæus* one of the ſucceſſors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*,) and a Co-temporary with *Salmanaſſar* King of *Aſſyria*, paſſed over into *Cyprus* with a puiſſant Navy to reduce the *Citiæans* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Iland at firſt comming of *Teucer* hither ſo infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the land. Inſomuch, that notwithſtanding the great waſte made of them, both in building ſhips, and caſting metals, a law was made that every one which would ſhould fell them, and take as much ground in ſeveralty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Egyptians*, ſo beſtirred themſelves, that at laſt they brought it unto *Champagn*: parcelled out in ſucceeding times amongſt nine Kings, for ſo many *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did ſubdue all thoſe petit Princes, yet he took not from them their Eſtates or titles: contented with the conqueſt of it, and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras*, and *Nicocles*, to whom *Iſocrates* inſcribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, *Citium* it ſelf (ſuch was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not ſubject unto any other. The King whereof to indear himſelf with the Conquerour, gave to him a ſword, μαχαίραν δαμασκὴν, ſaith *Plutarch*, an admirable ſword, both for colour and lightneſs, which he after uſed in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his eſtates amongſt them, the Princes and people of this Iland were in great diſtractions, not knowing to whom they might ſubmit for their beſt advantage. But *Ptolemy*, who had ſeized on *Egypt* for his part of the ſpoil, being ſtrong in ſhipping, ſetled them by a perſonal viſit; and fortifying ſome of the beſt pieces in it, aſſured the Countrey to himſelf. To him and his poſterity it continued ſubject till the time of *Ptolemy Auletes*, the ninth King of this line in our Accompt, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whoſe time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themſelves with the ſpoil of the Iland, ſent *Portius Cato* to ſubdue it. And he at firſt aſſayed to get it with the Kings conſent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Prieſt-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainfull Office, and of high eſteem among that people. But when *Ptolemy* for fear of a worſe miſchief had made away himſelf by poiſon, *Cato* without more ceremonie takes poſſeſſion of it. And becauſe *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath ſo ſignificantly expreſſed this buſineſs, and withall deſcribed ſo punctually the eſtate of this Iland; we will adde to this diſcourſe from him, though ſomewhat be repeated which was ſaid before. *Cyprum inſulam procul à Continente diſtantem, & portuoſam*, &c. "The Iſle of *Cyprus*, far diſtant from the Continent, and well ſtored with *Harbours*, is famous, beſide, many *Municipall* Towns, by two principal Cities, that is to ſay, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*, the one ſacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Iſle ſo admirably fruitfull, and with all things furniſhed, that without the help of any forein Nation, it is able of it ſelf to build and rig forth a ſhip, from the very keel unto the top-ſail, and trim it with all tackle neceſſary for a preſent voyage. Nor do I ſhame to ſay, that with greater Avarice than Juſtice, the *Romans* did invade this Iland; King *Ptolemy*, our old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily proſcribed, for no other reaſon, but that our Treaſury was bare, our *Exchequor* empty. And he no ſooner had prevented this diſhonour by a quick and voluntary death, making away himſelf by poiſon, but the Iland was forthwith made tributarie, and the riches of it, *velut hoſtiles exuviæ claſſi impoſitæ & in urbem adductæ per Catonem*, as the ſpoils of ſome conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-bord, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

I know there is another cauſe alleged for the ſending of *Cato* on this Errand, *viz.* that *Clodius* who was then *Tribune*, and ſped the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his abſence to revenge himſelf on *Cicero*, and ſome others of the oppoſite faction: but the main buſineſs was the money, as before was ſaid; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thouſand Crowns of coin now current. Which money and movables, amounting unto ſo vaſt a ſum, he fearing to loſe by Sea, divided it into many ſmall portions, which he put into ſeveral boxes, *viz.* in every box two *Talents* and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every box he faſtned a long rope with a piece of cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack loſt, might be eſpied again: which was not much unlike the *buoyes* which Mariners faſten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be the ſooner found. We ſee by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avariùs magis quam juſtiùs ſumus aſſecuti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* alſo. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the diviſion of the Empire aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours: under whom it ſuffered, as all other parts of the Empire did, by the violent invaſion of the *Saracens*, who ſpoiled and ranſacked it in the time of *Conſtans* the ſecond, deſtroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Conſtantia*. But that tempeſt being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a ſucceſſion of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* uſurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Iſaacius Comnenus*, one of the bloud Royal, to ſhift for himſelf: who ſeiſing on this Iland made himſelf King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the firſt of *England*, being denyed the Common courteſie of taking in freſh water, and ſeeing his Souldiers abuſed by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Priſoner, but ſubdued the whole Iland. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamaſdes* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis*, *ſed ne quid honeri deeſſet, aureis vinxit*; So did our *Richard* keep a *decorum* towards this Priſoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but ſilver. King *Richard* having thus poſſeſſed himſelf of this Countrey, ſold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended warrs againſt the *Turks*, he moſt needed) unto the Templers: and taking it, upon I know not what diſcontent, again from them, he

bestowed it on *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the titulary and miserable King of *Hierusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwracked kingdom; with which title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Iland continued free and absolute, til the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechella* (or *Melechnaser*) Sultan of *Egypt*, invaded this Country, took *John* King hereof Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanies, restored him to his kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors, the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whose two children were *Carlotte* a legitimate daughter, and *James* a bastard Son. *James* after the death of his father, dispossessed his sister *Carlotte* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the *Sultan* of *Egypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catherine Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senate*: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child she went withall (having then none by her) should die without issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and she seeing the factious Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, *Anno* 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and after to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570. when *Mustapha*, General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his master *Selimus* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of succours, means of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Iland. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Bragadin* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be flead alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoils were in two tall ships, and one Gallion, sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady destinated to the lust of the *Grand Seigneur*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick act; inferiour unto none of the *Roman Dames*, so much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman*, than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the affairs of this Iland, from the first plantation of it, till this last sad conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *CYPRUS*.

1 *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the titulary King of *Hierusalem*, estated in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the first of *England*.
2 *Almericus*, the brother of *Guy*.
3 *Hugh*, the son of *Almericus*.
4 *Henry*, the son of *Hugh*.
5 *Hugh* II. son of *Henry*.
6 *Hugh* III. son of *Hugh* the second.
7 *John*, son of *Hugh* the third.
8 *Henry* II. the brother of *John*.
9 *Hugh* IV. son of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
10 *Peter*, the son of *Hugh* the fourth.
11 *Petrinus*, the son of *Peter*.
12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13 *Janus*, the son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechnaser*, to the kingdom of *Egypt*.
14 *John* II. the son of *Janus*.
15 *Carlotte*, sole daughter and heir of *John* the second, first maryed to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her estate and kingdom, by
16 *James* II. the bastard son of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it, and by help of the *Venetians* kept it during life.
17 *James* III. born after the decease of his father, whom he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be blest with a long fruition, of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here it is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hierusalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deserving Servitors, both titles of Honour and Offices of State, belonging antiently to that kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæsarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneschal of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and High Chamberlain of that kingdom also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopricks and Archbishopricks in *Greece*, or *Egypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the titles of honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta*, and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Iland did

did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny. The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either most cruelly massacred in the sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their native Country, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new conquest. But the Countrey people, Artificers, and persons of inferiour rank, permitted to enjoy both their lives and livelyhoods; together with their several & respective religions, in the same manner as before: paying such ordinary taxes as were laid upon them. And so this goodly Iland came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoyed the possession of it: For notwithstanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the Pope and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable overthrow, at the famous battel of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing in pursute of so great a victory for the recovery of this Iland; and indeed they could not, the confederates returning home, and dissolving their Fleet, as soon as they had secured their own estates by the overthrow of the *Turkish* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the best face they could on so great a losse, so highly pleased themselves with the following Victory, that they put the same in ballance with the lois of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them see the folly of so vain a boasting, compared the losing of *Cyprus*, to the loss of an Arm, which could not without a miracle be recovered; and the loss at *Lepanto*, to the shaving off of ones beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting, as indeed it proved: For the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no less formidable than the other had been before; braving therewith the whole Christian Forces, either not then disbanded, or re-assembled.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Custome-house, yielded yearly to the Seigneury of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a million of Crowns. For the Customs and profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns *per annum*, which being turned into the chief *Cyprian* commodities, were counted double worth that mony, when unladed at *Venice*. To which if we should adde the lands of the former Kings, and other wayes of raising mony on the Subject, I cannot see, but the *Intrado* of the Crown must needs amount constantly to a million and an half yearly, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, first *Argent*, a Cross *Potent* between four Crosses *Or*; secondly, Barre-wise of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, supporting a Lion Passant *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; thirdly, a Lion *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*; as *Bara* a *French* Herald hath given the *Blazon*.

On the East of *Cyprus* towards *Syria* lie four small Ilands, which *Ptolemy* calleth by the name of *Clides*, not far from the Promontory of that name; both Promontory and Iland now called Saint *Andrews*: and towards the West another little knot of Islets, which he calls *Carpasiæ*; but nothing memorable in either. So I pass them over.

There are in *Cyprus*,
Arch-Bishops 2. Bishops 6.
And so much for *CYPRUS*.

OF

OF SYRIA.

SYRIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Cilicia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from the last parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Palestine*, and some parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is said to be five hundred twenty and five miles; the bredth from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and seventy; drawing somewhat near unto a square.

In the Scriptures it is called *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, because first peopled and possessed by *Aram* the son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the sons of *Canaan*, did also put in for a share: and yet not called thus by the Scriptures only, but by some of the Heathen writers also. For *Strabo* doth not only acknowledge, that the *Syrians* in his time were called Ἀραμαῖοι, but citeth *Possidonius*, a more antient Writer, for proof that the Ἄραμοι, which *Homer* speaketh of, must be those *Syrians*: further averring, that the *Syrians* called themselves by the name of *Aramai*, or plainly *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are called *Syrians*, or *Surians*, from the City *Tyre* called antiently by the name *Sur*, or *Tsur*, (of which more hereafter:) either because the *Tyrians* or *Tsurians*, had in those times the command of the Sea-coasts of this Countrey; or else that *Tyre* or *Tsur* being the chief Mart-town of all those parts, was the place where they traded with these *Aramites*. Conform to which antient Appellations, the City of *Tyre* is again called *Sur*, and this Country *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* first knew it, a part of the *Assyrian* Empire, the seat of which was then at *Ninive*, it was called *Syria* for *Assyria*: as afterwards *Assyria* had the name of *Syria* (of which more anon) when the seat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be so, considering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hispania* into *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to understand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet antiently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude: of which, because it may be usefull to the understanding of *holy Scriptures*, and of some *Classick* Authors also, I shall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largest acception of it, extendeth from the coast of *Cilicia*, North, to *Idumæa* towards the South; from the River *Tygris* in the East, to the *Mediterranean* Sea upon the West; conteining besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans* (in which *Palestine* also was included) *Arabia* the *Desart*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all those Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed or subjoyned in the Book of God, as *Aram-Naharaiim*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachah*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, all mentioned in the holy Scriptures. Some do extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whose neighbourhood to *Syria*, may give some colour to the errour; but even those People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine* Sea, the Inhabitants of which were antiently called *Luco-Syri*, or *white Syrians*. But this not having any good warrant or authority wherewithall to back it, shall not come under the compass of this consideration. But for the rest, I find it generally agreed upon amongst the learned, that *Aram-Naharaiim*, is the same with the whole Countrey of *Mesopotamia*, so named both by the *Jews* and *Grecians*, because it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; which *Priscian* by a meer *Latine* name, would have to be called *Medamna* (but *Inter-Amna* by his leave would express it better.) And as for *Padan-Aram* wherin *Laban* dwelt, which is called *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hosea*, *ch.* 12. *v.* 13. that is a part onely of the other: the whole Country of *Aram Naharaiim*, or *Mesopotamia*, being divided into two parts; whereof the more fruitfull lying Northward, is called *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and more desart lying towards the South, which by the same Author is called *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachah*, mentioned 1 *Corin.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of

Syria,

Syria, which was after named *Comagena*, whereof *Samosata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother City. And as for *Aram-Sobah*, of which and of *Adadezar* the King thereof, there is so frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-East of *Damascus*, and so extending to the banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the same with that which afterwards was called *Palmyrena*, from the City of *Palmyra*. South-west of which amongst the petty kingdoms on the North of *Gessur* in the land of *Palestine*, lay the kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon*, in the war which they had with *David*, 2. *Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* lesse extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did the name of *Aram*, if they stretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Assyrians* in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over-ruled all *Asia*, καταλύσασι τὴν Σύρων ἀρχὴν, the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Assyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is said, that those whom the *Barbarians* call *Assyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were called *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpose *Justine* also, *Imperium* Assyrii, *qui postea* Syri *acti sunt*, *Annos* 1300 *tenuere*. But these all writ after the time that *Seleucus* and his race had the possession of the Eastern Empire: who living for the most part in *Syria*, from whence they might more easily furnish themselves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, (as they did most commonly for all their military expeditions) caused all the other parts of their large dominions to be called, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other side, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not so far to the East and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did: so it contained some other Regions, that is to say, those of *Phœnicia* and *Palestine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*; as being planted by a people of another race, and of different fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat severally of the natures of the soil and people; their originals, government, and successes, till we have brought them into one hand: and then continue their affairs as one joynt estate. But first we will survey the antient and present fortunes of Christianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Country here is choice enough; those namely of the *Mahometan*, *Christian*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Drusians*. The *Mahometan* imbraced by the generality of the people throughout the whole, and by all that be in any office or authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though all the rest be tolerated. The *Pagan* entertained only in the mountainous Countries bordering on *Armenia*; inhabited by a people whom they call *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, supposed to be descended from the antient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their most usual Arms. A race of people who are said to worship alike both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut prosint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm of the antient *Grecians*. But their principal devotions are addressed to the Devil only, and that upon good reasons, as themselves conceive, For God they say is a good man, and will do no body no harm, but the Devil is a mischievous fellow, and must be pleased with sacrifices, that he do hurt them not. And for the *Drusianss* they are conceived to be the remainder of those *Frankes*, (by which name the *Turks* call all Western *Christians*) who driven unto the mountains, (when they lost the Soveraignty and possession of the Holy-Land) and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length to afford them both peace, and liberty of their Religion. But they have so forgot the principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but *Baptism*; and not that generally neither; accounting it lawfull most unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Sisters, or Mothers: and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their habit only, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumcision, and indulging to themselves the liberty of wine, by law forbidden to the *Turks*. A people otherwise very warlike, stout, and resolute; with great, both constancy and courage, resisting hitherto the attempts of the *Turkish* Sultans. The Country they possess environed with the confines of *Joppa*, about *Cæsarea Palestinæ*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eastwards as far as the plains of *Damascus*: so that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their habitations reach not.

But for the *Christian* Faith it was first preached here by some of the dispersed Brethren, (which fled from the rage of persecution) in *Phonice* and the City of *Antiochia*; amongst whom St. *Peter*, *as he passed through all quarters*, *Acts* 9. 31. is by the Fathers said to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* first, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* joyntly. Who spending there a whole year together, inlarged the borders of the Church, and gained much people, as is said *Acts* 11. *v.* 19. &c. insomuch that *here the Disciples were first called Christians*, *v.* 26. Not called so accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a serious consultation had amongst themselves, and a devout invocation on the name of God, to direct them in it. The word Χρηματίσαι used in the original, importeth somewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it standeth with reason that it should be so. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptist*, there was not only a consultation had of the Friends & Mother, but the dumb Father called to advise about it; and if we use not to admit the poorest child of the parish into the Congregation of Christs Church by the door of *Baptism*, but by the joint invocation of the name of God for his blessings on it: with how much more regard of *Ceremony* and *Solemnity*, must we conceive that the whole body of Christs people were *baptized* into the name of *Christians*? And there is some proof of it too, besides *probability* and *conjectures*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old *Cosmographer*, do expresly say, that in the days of *Claudius Cæsar*, ten years after the *Ascension* of our Lord and Saviour, *Evodius* received Episcopal consecration, and was made Patriarch

trierch of *Antioch* the *Great* in *Syria*, ſucceeding immediatly to St. *Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Diſciples* were firſt called *Chriſtians*, τὸ πρῶτον ἐπικληθῆναι Εὐοδίου μεταμληθέντος αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἐπιθέντος αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, &c. *i. e. Euodius* their Biſhop calling them to a *Solemn Aſſembly*, and impoſing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarites* and *Galilæans*. A people ſo hated by the *Heathen*, that they ceaſed not to ſlander them from the firſt beginning. *For as concerning this Sect, we know that it is every where ſpoken againſt*, ſaid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apoſtle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *homines per flagitia inviſos, & noviſſima meritos exempla*; the calumny in his time being ſtrong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Siſters. Which defamations notwithſtanding, they grew in few years to ſo great numbers, that they were a terrour to their Enemies; though grievouſly afflicted, tortured, and put to ſeveral kinds of death, under the ten *Famous Perſecutions*, raiſed againſt them, by *Nero*, *Anno* 67. 2. *Domitian*, *Anno* 96. 3. *Trajanus*, *Anno* 110. 4. *Marcus Antonius*, *Anno* 167. 5. *Severus*, *Anno* 195. 6. *Maximinus*, *Anno* 237. 7. *Decius*, *Anno* 250. 8. *Valerianus*, *Anno* 259. 9. *Aurelianus*, *Anno* 278. 10. by *Dioclesianus*, *Anno* 293. All, but this laſt eſpecially, ſo extremely raging, that (as St. *Hierom* writeth in one of his Epiſtles) there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the firſt of *January*, on which they uſed not to ſhed blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*. This little grain of Muſtard-ſeed, ſowed by Gods own hand, and watered by the blood of ſo many holy men, grew ſo great a tree, that the branches of it ſpred themſelves over all the world: and got ſuch footing, even in the *Roman* Army it ſelf, (men commonly not of the ſtricteſt kind of *Religion*) that when *Julian* the *Apoſta* had vomited out his ſoul, with *Viciſti tandem Galilæe*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Chriſtian*, for his Succeſſor, with this acclamation, *Chriſtiani omnes ſumus*, We are alſo *Chriſtians*. But ſee how the *baptizing* of Gods people by the name of *Chriſtians*, in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way. I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whoſe evidence, beſides what doth concern the impoſition of the name of *Chriſtian* upon the body of the faithful, we have a teſtimony for St. *Peters* being Biſhop of *Antioch*, the firſt Biſhop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at leaſt) as is ſaid poſitively by *Euſebius* in his *Chronologie*, St. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of Eccleſiaſtical writers, Saint *Chryſoſtom* in his *Homilie de tranſlatione Ignatii*, *Theodoret Dialog.* 1. St. *Gregory Epiſt. lib.* 6. *cap.* 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his ſixt *Homily* on St. *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in reſpect that *Antioch* was accompted always the principal City of the Eaſt-parts of the *Roman* Empire (the *Prefect* of the Eaſt for the moſt part reſiding in it) the Biſhop hereof in the firſt Ages of Chriſtianity, had juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Eaſt, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Conſtantine* the *Great* the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, with thoſe of *Meſopotamia* and *Oſroena* were after added; containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioceſe* of the Orient. And though by the ſubſtracting of the Churches of *Paleſtine*, and the decay of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts by the conqueſts of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the juriſdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much leſſened: yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flouriſhed in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiſcopal*, 21 *Metropolitical*, and 127 *Epiſcopal* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminiſhed, *Mahometiſm* more and more increaſing, and Chriſtianity divided into Sects and factions: inſomuch as of three ſorts of Chriſtians living in theſe Countries, *viz.* the *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are ſubordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And firſt for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greateſt body of *Chriſtiant* in all the Eaſt; they are ſo named in way of ſcorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite Schiſmatick*, ſeparating without juſt cauſe from their communion. The name derived from *Malchi*, ſignifying in the *Syriack* language a King, or Emperour: becauſe adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and deciſions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperour *Leo*, by whom ſubſcription was required to the Acts thereof; and were in that reſpect, (as we uſe to ſay) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate divine ſervice as ſolemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*: ſubject to their true and original Patriarch, who ſince the deſtruction of *Antioch* doth reſide in *Damaſcus*; and on no terms acknowleging the authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they firſt inhabited; or from the Monaſterie of Saint *Maron*, mentioned in the firſt Act of the Council of *Conſtantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Chriſtians*; other in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the firſt ſort, 1. That the *Holy Ghoſt* proceedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2. That the Souls of men were created all together at the firſt beginning. 3. That male Children are not to be baptized together, but at ſeveral times by one and one. 4. That *Heretiques* returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her *purification*, and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be paſt, which after the birth of a *Male Child* muſt be forty days, of a Female eighty. 6. That the *Euchariſt* is to be given to Children preſently after *Baptiſm*. 7. That the fourth Mariage is utterly unlawfull. 8. That the Father may diſſolve the mariage of his Son or Daughter. 9. That young men are not to be ordained *Prieſts* or *Deacons*, except they be maried. 10. That nothing ſtrangled, or of blood, may be eaten by *Chriſtians*. 11. That Women in their monethly courſes are

not

not to be admitted to the *Eucharist*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally (which was indeed their first discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one will and action in *Christ*; the Fautors of which opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the last kind, 1. That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administred in *both kinds*, 2. and in Leavened bread; 3. that bread to be *broken* to the Communicants (and not each man to have his wafer to himself) according to the first institution. 4. Not *reserving* that Sacrament, 5. nor *carying* any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6. That *Mariage* is nothing inferiour to the single life; 7. That no man entreth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgement; 8. That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath* is not to be fasted; 6. Nor the Sacrament upon days of fasting to be administred till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriarch of their own, many ages since (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof. Dispersed about the spurres and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true antient *Syriack*: that is to say 1. *Eden*, a small Village, but a Bishops See, by the *Turks* called *Æchera*. 2. *Hatchieth*. 3. *Sherrie*. 4. *Belfa*, or *Blousa*, little superiour to the rest in bigness or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western Christians were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulsion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His residence for the most part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an accompt of his Suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at *Blousa*, as is said before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptist* a Jesuite, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from *Rome* printed in the *Arabian* language (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion: yet so that their Patriarch still retains his former power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgies of those Churches, in the *Syriack* tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one side, and ostentation on the other; without any increase of power or patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though dispersed in many places of this Country; yet since they are more entirely settled in *Mesopotamia*, where their Patriarch also hath his abode or residence, we shall there speak of them.

The language vulgarly here spoken is the *Arabick* tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countrys by the *Saracens*. But antiently they spake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* languages. Of which, the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very same with the *Chaldean*, (as the learned *Brerewood* hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which respect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*; being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldean* tongues: *Chaldean* for a great part of it, as to the substance of the words; but *Hebrew* as to the notation of points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to *Palestine*. But whatsoever their language was in former time, it is now so overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is spoken in some Villages of the *Marorites* only in all these Countries; the *Arabick* being generally used in all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts, are, 1. *Chorsæus*, called *Chison* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its fountain in *Palestine*, but his fall in *Phœnicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2. *Orontes*, now called *Saldino*, and by some writers *Jordan* the lesse, ariseth out of the hills called *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia*, and passing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was first called *Typhon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built the first bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3. *Eleutherus*, which riseth out of some part of *Libanus*, and glided with a speedy course thorow a strangely-intricate Chanel, into the *Mediterranean* Sea: guilty of the death of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, who falling from his horse as he pursued the *Infidels*, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Casmer*. 4. *Singas*, by some said to be called *Marsoas* also, which arising in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and passing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we shall there speak of it. 2. *Pieria*, out of which the river *Orontes* hath its first original. 3. *Casius* not far from *Antioch*, said to be 4 miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of *Frankincense*, that some derived the name from λίβανος, signifying Frankincense in the *Greek*: and so repleniſhed with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen used to sing (as *Gallen* telleth us) that *God rained honey*; and yearly filled their pots and vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to say from *Sidon* a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Cœle-Syria*: and taking seven hundred miles in compasse. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Christians, who to keep that dwelling to themselves without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, do yearly pay to the *Great Turk* seventeen *Sultanies* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age: each

Phoenicia. each *Sultanie* being reckoned at seven shillings and six pence of our money. And yet those *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the smallest *Sect*, for numbers, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand households, by reason of the indisposition of this Mountain, in most places unfit for habitation. For besides the craggines and steepnesse of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with snow, not melted in so hot a Climate at the nearest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name; the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* language, signifying *White*, or *Whitenesse*; even as from the like *whiteness* of snow, the highest part of the *Pynæan* hils had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5. *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former, and from that so called; a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excursion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was antiently divided into these six parts, *viz.* 1. *Phœnicia*, 2. *Palestine*, 3. *Syria* specially so called, 4. *Comagena*, 5. *Palmyrene*, and 6. *Cœle-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But *Palestine*, coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

1. PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Syria*, properly and specially so called; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word φοινιξ in that language signifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was antiently the special *Cognisance* or Ensign of this Country; as the *Olive branch* and *Conie* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* of *Ægypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperour *Vespasian*'s, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judæa*, the Impress is a woman sitting in a sad and melancholick posture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with these two words, *Judæa Capta*, inscribed thereon: in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate woman signifyeth the Land of *Judæa*, and the Palm *Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediatly on the North, at the back of *Jewrie*.

But it was thus first called by the *Grecians* only, the *Latines* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the people of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose sons, *viz. Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here: the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may adde these reasons: first, that the same woman which in Saint *Matthews* Gospel, *chap.* 15. *vers.* 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by Saint *Mark*, *chap.* 7. *vers.* 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the book of *Joshuah*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them βασιλεῖς τῆς φοινίκης, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would answer that they were *Chanæi*; meaning (as Saint *Augustine* that Country-man doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the stock of *Canaan*. And lastly, from the language of it, which antiently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the house of *Jacob*: as appears plainly by those names, by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them, which are merely *Hebrew*. And so much, as unto the language is acknowleged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* tongue; *cujus* Phœnicia *lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a *dialect* only.

The Countrie of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Palestine*; to the River *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: but withall so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coast, and therefore very rightly called *terrarum angustissima* by a modern writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural commodities which the land afforded: yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with Oyl. Wheat, the best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being designed for the seat of *Asher*, of whom *Moses* prophesied, *Deut.* 33. *v.* 24. *that he should dip his foot in Oyl*. So that the Country generally, it was well-conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautifull Cities, than such a span of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acclivis monti Libano* Phœnicia *Regio, pleva gratiarum & venustatis, urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris, &c. i. e.* Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lieth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautifull Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their soyl, and the fame of their atchievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People antiently, by reason of their *Maritime* situation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon forein

Planti-

Plantations than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenuous people, ſaid to have been the first *Navigators*, the firſt builders of Ships, the firſt inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on ſome other occaſion) and the firſt authors of *Arithmetick*, the firſt that brought *Aſtronomy* to an Art or Method, and the firſt makers of Glaſs. Defamed in holy Scripture for their groſs *Idolatries*, by which they laid a ſtumbling block at the feet of the *Iſraelites*: *Aſtaroth* (or *Aſturte*) the Godeſs of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or ſome other, I diſpute not here) being ſo highly prized amongſt them, that *Solomon* himſelf, when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Euſebius* telleth us, they ſacrificed ſome of their ſons to *Saturn*, whom in their language they called *Moloch*. And in the inmoſt retreats of *Libanus* had a temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of moſt filthy luſts; intemperately uſing the natural Sex, and moſt unnaturally abuſing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Chriſtian* faith prevail ſo far, as to extinguiſh theſe ungodly rites, till *Conſtantine* finally deſtroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the ſhame and infamy. St. *Auſtin* addeth, that they did proſtitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they maried them: and it is moſt likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cypriots* being ſo near neighbours, and ſubject for a time to the ſame Princes alſo; could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another. *Phœnicia.*

Rivers of note there can be none in ſo narrow a Region, but what are common unto others, and ſhall there be ſpoken of. Moſt proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now called *Canis*,) ſo named moſt probably from *Adonis* the Dearling of *Venus*, whoſe rites are here performed with as much ſolemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obſequies celebrated yearly in the moneth of *June* with great howlings and Lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River uſually ſtreameth bloud upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*,) to give the better colour to their Superſtitions. But the truth is, that this *redneſs* of the water ariſeth only from the winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the ſtream a great quantity of *Minium* or *read Earth*, from the ſides of thoſe hils, wherewith the waters are diſcoloured. Such uſe can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the underſtandings of beſotted people.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Libanus*, ſpoken of before, which hath here its firſt advance or riſing. 2. *Carmel*, which *Ptolemy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmoſt part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Paleſtine*. Waſhed on the Northſide with the Brook *Chiſon*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea: ſteep of aſcent, and of indifferent altitude; abounding with ſeveral ſorts of Fruits, Olives and Vines in good plenty, and ſtored with herbs both *medicinable* and ſweet of ſmell. The retreat ſometimes of *Elias*, when he fled from *Jezabel*; whoſe habitation here, after his deceaſe, was converted to a *Jewiſh* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Iſrael*) did that Prophet aſſemble the Prieſts of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* follies, cauſed them to be cut in pieces on the banks of the River *Chiſon* near adjoyning to it. Upon this viſible declaring of the power and preſence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew perſwaded that *Oracles* were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where ſpeaking of *Veſpaſian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial dignitie, he addeth, *Apud Judæam* Carmeli Dei *oracula conſulentem ita confirmavere ſortes, &c.* that conſulting in *Judæa* with the *Oracle* of the God *Carmelus*, he was aſſured that whatſoever he undertook ſhould ſucceed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friers Carmelites*, as ſucceſſors unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Eliah*, had their name from hence: the Ruines of whoſe *Monaſtery* are ſtill to be ſeen, with a Temple dedicated to the bleſſed *Virgin*; and under that a *Cave* or *Chapell*, ſaid to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Ptolemais*, now nothing but a ruine of what it hath been, but formerly of great ſtrength and conſequence. Named *Ace* at the firſt, a refuge for the *Perſian* Kings in their wars againſt *Egypt*: enlarged, or rather new built, by *Ptolemy*, the firſt of that race, by whom called *Ptolemais*, which name ſtill continued; though *Claudius Cæſar* planting there a *Roman* Colonie, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudii*: after the conqueſt of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its firſt name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*; both names ſtill remaining in *vulgar* ſpeech, as that of *Ptolemais* amongſt *Latine* writers. Situate in the flouriſh of it on a flat or level, in form of a triangular-Shield; on two ſides neighboured by the Sea which comes up cloſe to it; on the third looking towards the *Campaign*: environed with a double wall, to each wall a Ditch, fortified on the outſide with Towers and Bulwarks; within the wals ſo ſtrongly houſed, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of fortreſſes, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midſt of the City was one Tower of great ſtrength and beauty, which had ſometimes been the Temple of *Belzebub*, and was therfore called the *Caſtle of Flies*: on the top whereof was maintained a perpetual light, like the *Pharos* of *Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to ſuch Mariners, as made towards this Port. Took from the *Chriſtians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wreſted by the *Turks* with the reſt of *Syria*; it became *Chriſtian* again *An.* 1104. in the reign of *Baldwin* the firſt, brother of the famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, by the help of the *Genoeſe*; who for their pains had the third part of the City aſſigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, and from him taken again by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, under the conduct of *Philip* of *France*, and *Richard* the firſt of *England*, *An.* 1191. it continued in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, notably defended by the *Hoſpitalers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. when beſieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand *Turks*, it was forced to yeeld, though loſt by inches: and the *Turks* fearing leſt the *Chriſtians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground: demoliſhing the

Phœnicia.

large walls and arches of it, which lie like many Rocks on their old foundations. Memorable in those times for the brave service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts, of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This later here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poisoned knife, the venom whereof could by no means be asswaged, till his most vertuous wife (herein proposing a most rare example of conjugal affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace, King* Richard *is coming*: and when their horses started, they would spurre them, saying, *What you Jades, do you think that King* Richard *is here?* By the *Mamalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not Peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the haven adjoyning: which though a small Bay, and of very ill anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western world, trading here for their Cotton Wools; with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furnished. I have staid the longer in this place, by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last hold which the Christians had of all their conquests; with the loss whereof they laid aside all thoughts of those *holy wars*.

2. *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Iland; about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnably fortified. A Colonie of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Esay*, *ch.* 23. *v.* 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high hill; the ruines whereof by the name of *Palætyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Ilands by *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rockie situation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latines*, though known to them also by the name of *Sarra* (the *Tyrian purple* being by *Virgil*, and some others of the antient Poets, called *Sarranum Ostrum*:) and now at last returned to its first and original name, vulgarly at this day called *Sur*. A City in elder times of great trade and wealth: the Prophet *Esay*, *ch.* 27. *v.* 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the Word*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning and Manufactures, especially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* saith, by a very accident: the Dog of *Hercules*, (or if not his, some Dog or other) whose lips by eating of the fish called *Conchilis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the wealth and pleasures, her destruction was fore-signified by the holy Prophets: accomplished in Gods own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*; who with great industry and toil joyned it to the Continent. But his works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the great was again demolished; to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the Chanel with the stones and rubbish of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a passage for his Army: and having once approached the walls, so over-topped them with Towers, and frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it; putting to the sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the Shore, for a terrour to others. This rendition of the Town was divined by the *South-sayers*, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a dream which he had not long before. For dreaming that he had disported himself with *Satyres*; the Diviners only making of one word two, found that Σατυρος was no more than Σὰ τύρος, that is *Tua Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her riches and beauties, she became a confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their fortunes; endued by them with the priviledges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the best times of *Christianity*, the *Metropolitan* See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year six hundred thirty and six, and having groaned under that yoke for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years; was at the last regained by *Guarimund* Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, in the reign of the second *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their assistance in it, *An.* 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine*; but finally brought under the *Turkish* thraldom, *Anno* 1289. as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of ruines, but the very ruines of it of so fair a prospect, as striketh both pity and amazement into the beholders; shewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the present to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the *Levant*; but of no great trading.

3. *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* called *Sarphath*, situate on the Sea-coast betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in holy writ for the miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widows Son: in Heathen writers, for the purest *Wines*, little inferiour unto those of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*, Of which thus the Poet.

Vina mihi non sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quæque Sareptano *palmite missa bibas.*

In English thus,

I have no *Chian* or *Falernian* wines,
Nor those of *Gazas* or *Sareptas* vines.

4. *Sidon*, the antientest City of all *Phœnicia*, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the portion of the sons of *Aser*: beyond which the Country of *Phœnicia*, having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of *Syria* with a very strong

ſtrong wall, long ſince demoliſhed. It was ſo called from *Zidon*, one of the ſons of *Canaan*, who firſt planted here; not (as ſome ſay) from *Sida*, the daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof: this City being mentioned in the Book of *Joſuah*, when no ſuch *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightfull ſoyl, defended with the Sea on one ſide, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*; from whence deſcended thoſe many Springs, with which they watered and enriched their moſt pleaſant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are ſaid to be the firſt makers of *Chriſtal Glaſs*; the materials of the work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fuſible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel*, had their principal workmen, both for Stone and Timber, in their ſeveral buildings of the Temple. The People hereof ſo flouriſhing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zecharish*, *chap. 9. v. 2.* calleth them the *wiſe Sidonians*. A City which at ſeveral times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heathenism*, *Tyre* being a *Colony* of this People; and the Daughter of it when inſtructed in the *Chriſtian* faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother-Church. The City in thoſe times very ſtrong both by *Art* and *Nature*, having on the North-ſide a Fort or *Citadel*, mounted on an inacceſſible Rock, and invironed on all ſides by the Sea: which, when it was brought under the command of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-ſide of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks* with the reſt of this Country from the *Chriſtians*, and ruined by thoſe often interchanges of fortune: it only ſheweth now ſome marks of the antient greatneſs; the preſent *Sidon* ſtanding ſomewhat Weſt of the old, and having little worth a particular deſcription, in reſpect of what it was in her antient glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or ſerving at the beſt for Gallies; with a poor *Block-houſe*, rather for ſhew than ſervice: the walls of no greater ſtrength, and as little beauty, and the buildings ordinary; but that the *Moſque*, the *Bannia* or Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are ſomewhat fairer than the reſt: yet gives a title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greateſt Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5. *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergeſhi* the fift ſon of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a *Phoenician* Idol herein worſhipped; and now called *Barutti*. Deſtroyed by *Tryphon* in the wars of the *Syrians* againſt the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colonie, and honoured with the name of *Julia Felix*; *Auguſtus* giving it the Privileges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean eſteem in the time of the Chriſtians, when made an Epiſcopal See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a place of no great ſtrength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath ſped better than the reſt of theſe Cities (though ſtronger than this) retaining ſtill her being, though not all her beauties; well ſtored with merchandiſe, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call Saint *Georges*; in which there is a Caſtle, and in that an Oratory of the ſame name alſo. All ſacred to Saint *George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the *Dragon*, and thereby delivered a Kings daughter, but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6. *Biblis*, ſometimes the habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth ſon of *Canaan*, and then called *Hevæa*: afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, father and grandfather of *Adonis*, by his daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already ſpoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of ſuch eſteem in the Primitive times of Chriſtianity, that it was made a Biſhops See; deſolate and of no repute ſince it loſt that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7. *Orthoſia*, called alſo *Antaradus*, becauſe oppoſite to *Aradus*, another old City of this tract; but in after ages called *Tortoſa*, and by that name well known in the Hiſtories of the Holy War, undertaken by the Weſtern Chriſtians. To whom it made ſuch ſtout and notable reſiſtance, that though beſieged on all ſides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, ſitting down before it;) yet after three moneths hard ſiege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themſelves with ſpoiling the adjoyning Country.

Phœnicia.

8. *Tripolis*, ſeated in a rich and delightfull plain, more fruitfull than can be imagined: one of which fruits they called by the name of *Amazza Franchi*, i. e. *Kill-Frank*, becauſe the Weſtern Chriſtians, whom they call by the name of *French*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is ſaid to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis*, no leſs than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town, it ſtandeth about two miles from the ſea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; ſo called becauſe built by the joint purſes of 3. Cities, that is to ſay, *Tyrus*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, til made one of the Epiſcopal Sees, belonging to the Archb. of *Tyre* in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal Accompt by the time that the Weſtern Chriſtians warred in the Holy Land: when conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the 4. Quarters of their Empire; which were, *Hieruſalem* for *Paleſtine*; *Edeſſa* for *Comagena*, or *Meſopotamia*; *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phoenicia*. Committed at the firſt taking of it, to the cuſtody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe* in *France*: whoſe poſterity, whileſt it laſted, had from hence the title of Earls of *Tripoli*. A City, which, I know not by what good hap, hath ſped better than any of thoſe parts, retaining ſtill as much in ſtrength and beauty as ever it had; if not grown greater by the ruine of all the reſt. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is ſaid, but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the Weſt ſide of it; compaſſed with a wall, and fortified with ſeven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, becauſe built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in bed with a *Turkiſh* woman; for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of ſand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Prophecy which ſaith it ſhall quite be choaked: On both ſides of it many ſtore-houſes for the Merchant to ſtow his goods in, and ſhops to ſell them; the way from thence unto the City having on both ſides very pleaſant

Phœnicia. Gardens, more curiously kept, than usually amongst the *Turks*. The Town it self stretched out in length from South to North, is situate, as before was said, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleasant springs into the chief of their gardens: in which, and in those towards the Haven, and on other sides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great store of Silk-Worms; selling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. There buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the East-side of the City are built two Bridges; and on the South-side a strong Castle mounted on an hill, built by the *French* when they had the custody hereof; now garrisonned for the *Grand Signeur* with 200 *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the residence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the most part dwelling in this Town; and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither some forty years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phoenicians* were descended of the sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being descendants of that stock, they were at the first governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their families, whom they honoured (as most Nations did) with the title of Kings. But most of the *Canaanitish* Kings being overcome and slain by *Josuah*, *Agenor*, a stout and prudent man, one of those many Kings which commanded in those parts of the Country, seeing how impossible it was to resist that enemy, borrowed some aid from *Egypt*, where he had his breeding, to make good the Sea-coasts of his Country: in which the *Philistims*, who interposed upon those coasts betwixt him and *Egypt*, concurred also with him. By which assistance, and by the fortifying of *Zidon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace*, (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Country that were then in being; he did not only preserve his own estate, from the present danger, but left it so assured to the Kings succeeding; that neither *Solomon* nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Israel* durst attempt upon them. To *Agenor* succeeded his son *Phoenix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder brother, going into *Greece* in search of his sister *Europa*, ravished by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as some conceive, this Country had the name of *Phoenicia*. And though I have declared my self for another reason of this name, which I like much better; yet I shall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*; who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the sons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phoenicians* were such Giantly men) which must first be contracted in *Beanack*, then by the *Grecians* turned into *Pheanac*, and at last into *Phoenix*. Such farre-fetched and extorted Originations never please my Fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the first Originals of names and nations, where there is not very pregnant reason to perswade me otherwise; than strain my self so far for a new invention, or hearken unto those that do. But for what cause soever they were named *Phoenicians*, certain it is, they were a very active and industrious people, trading in the most parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage*, in *Africk*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may beleeve *Bochartus*, there was no Iland, or Sea-coast in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *British* Ocean, wherein they did not keep some factory, or erect some *Colony*. What Kings succeeded *Phoenix* in a constant and continued course, I can no where find. Most like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince: and that besides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were some others who called themselves Kings of *Phoenicia* also, as well as they. Of which sort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pygmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did also *Belus*, who gave some part of that Isle to *Teucer*, as is said before. There is also found mention of one *Phasis*, a *Phoenician* King, at such time as the *Grecians* conquered *Troy*. After him none, till the subjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramnestus*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in succeeding times, being Tributaries to the *Persian*, and no absolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phoenicians* were made subject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preserve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre* came in short time to be of very great repute, and to possess themselves of the coasts of *Syria* and *Phoenicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby, and by the benefit of their trade and shipping, they grew rich, and powerfull, and of great consideration in affairs of the World. The names and history of whom I shall here subjoyn, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *TYRE*.

A. M.

1 *Abibalus*, as *Josephus*; *Abemalus*, as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporarie with *Samuel*; supposed to be the same which the Sonne of *Syrach* mentioneth, *Eccles.* 46. verse 18.

2 *Saron*, the son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Eusebius* saith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Psal.* 83. v. 7.

2931 3 *Hiram*, the son of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he sent Cedars, with Carpenters and Masons, towards his buildings in *Jerusalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebusites*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the *Temple*. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings*, and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955 4 *Baleastartus*, or *Bazorus*, succeeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962 5 *Abdastartus*, son of *Baleastartus*, slain by the four sons of his own nurse, having reigned 9. years; the eldest of which four, did for the space of 12. years usurp the kingdom.

2983 6 *Astartus*,

2983 6 *Aſtartus*, brother of *Abdaſtartus*, recovered the kingdom to his houſe, out of the hands of the *Uſurpers*. 12.

2995 7 *Aſtorinus*, or *Athorinus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger brother of *Aſtartus*. 9.

3004 8 *Phelles*, the Brother of theſe three Kings, and youngeſt Son of *Baleaſtartus*, reigned eight moneths only.

9 *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *Kings* 16. 13. ſon of *Aſtorinus*, ſlew his Uncle *Phelles*, and ſo regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the *High-Prieſt* of the Godeſs *Aſtaroth*, or *Aſtarta*, (a dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezabel*, the wife of *Ahab*, ſo often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, ſon of *Ethbaal*. 6

3043 11 *Mettimus*, by ſome called *Matginus*, ſon of *Badezer*, and father of *Eliſa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the ſon of *Mettimus*, who ſlew *Sicheus* the husband of his ſiſter *Eliſa*, to get his riches; but yet was coſened of his prey: his ſiſter *Eliſa*, accompanyed with her brother *Barca* (the founder of the Noble *Barcine* family, of which *Annibal* was) and her ſiſter *Anna*, flying into *Africk*; where ſhe built the renowned City of *Carthage*. 47. The names of his ſucceſſors we find not, till we come to

13 *Elulaus*, deſcended from a ſon of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salmannaſſer*, the *Aſſyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.

14 *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as *Daniel*, and to know all ſecrets, as ſaith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *chap.* 28. *v.* 1, 2. And yet not wiſe enough to preſerve his kingdom from *Nabuchadonoſor*; who after a ſiege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and ſubjected it unto his *Empire*.

15 *Baal*, the ſon and ſucceſſor of *Ethbaal* the ſecond, but a *Tributary* to the *Babylonians*. After whoſe death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by ſuch titular Kings only as were ſent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unſetledneſs of the *Perſian*: yet being of the *Perſian* faction, and having dependence on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therfore depoſed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*; in the taking whereof he had ſpent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Aſia*.

After this time *Phœnicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, ſubject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the houſe of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; ſubject to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, till the fatal year 636. when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Succeſſively conquered by the *Turks*, *Chriſtians*, and after their expulſion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the reſt of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the firſt united to the *Turkiſh* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Druſians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have ſpoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath* the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or Princes; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who ſo reſolutely reſiſted *Ibrahim Baſſa*, Ann. 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or reſidence at *Andirene*, a ſtrong place ſituate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he ſent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuſes, 20 packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a ſecond time he preſented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuſes, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Buffes, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By theſe rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the preſent *Emir* of *Sidon*; who ſince the year 1600. hath reduced almoſt all the Countreys belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his ſeat of reſidence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, Mount *Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This preſent *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long ſince driven out of his Country by the *Turk*, and forced to flye to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid ſiege to *Damaſcus*, and cauſed a notable rebellion in *Aſia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having poſſeſſed himſelf of the City and Caſtle of *Damaſcus*, prepared for the taking of *Hieruſalem* alſo; threatning to make the Chriſtians once more Maſters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he ſped afterward, and whether his Son, as ſtout and valiant as himſelf, hath ſince his death ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, I am not able to ſay: having of late heard nothing of them.

2. *SYRIA PROPRIA.*

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Palmyrene*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*, on the South, with *Phœnicia*, and ſome part of *Cœle-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and ſworn Enemy to *Adadezer* King of *Aram-Sobah*: who hearing of the great diſcomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, ſent his Son *Joram*, or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Preſents to him, as well to congratulate his ſucceſs, as to be aſſured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the ſons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in theſe parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Paleſtine* (which we ſhall meet withall in the courſe of this work) either built by him or his poſterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am perſwaded to believe by theſe

Syria propria following reasons, *viz.* 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoined together, as in *Esay* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, *viz.* *Where are the Gods of* Hamath *and* Arpad? 2 *Kings* 18. 34. *The King of* Hamath, *and the King of* Arphad, *Esay* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Iland over against the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Countrey: so called from *Arvad*, one of the sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Isle was known unto them. 2ly, By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open war. Of which see 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10, & 1 *Chr.* 8. 9, 10. 3ly, From the authority of Saint *Hierome*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, ch. 6. v. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*:) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from some other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4ly, from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josephus* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hierusalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchadnezzer*, being then at *Riblath*, 2 *Kings* c. 2. v. 6. to *Riblath in the Land of Hamath*, *v.* 21. where the poor Prince first saw his children slain before his face; and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josephus* where this sad tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq. l.* 10. *c.* 10. And if we ask Saint *Hierome* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc* Antiochiam *vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the same name also.

The Countrey is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoining fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry; as being very meanly peopled, and those few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their Sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overladed in the tail, both with flesh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wool upon them. *Natur. Hist. l.* 8. c. 48. And modern Travellers report, that the tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds & upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palestine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reason why the rumps or tails of sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Levit.* 3. v. 9. But besides the store of Wooll which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotton Wool, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough as a Beans; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a stone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bombast* intermixed with seeds; which parted with an instrument, they keep the Seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wool unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that little shell, than can be imagined by those who have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious, especially about their gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their herbs, and plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But withall they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole daies and nights in feasting; great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtile in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security: and so were the *Phœnicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, Σύρος πρὸς Φοίνικας, *Syri contra Phœnices*, used by them when two crafty knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great worshippers of the Godess *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Godess, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a womanish and effeminate nation, prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of plaies and publick pastimes, and easily stirred up unto Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown servilely officious to them that govern them: not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Country belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow; but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phœnicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it self. The whole by *Ptolemy* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, *and Cœle-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and subdivisions, as 1. *Pieria*. 2. *Casiotis*, from the hils adjoyning. 3. *Seleucis*. 4. *Apamene*. 5. *Laodicene*. 6. *Cyrrestica*. 7. *Chalcidice*, and 8. *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he musters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as antiently were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story: with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Ptolemy*, as they come in

in my way, reckoning *Cyrreſtica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Caſiotis*, and the territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*. *Syria propria*

First then to begin with thoſe Cities which lye moſt towards the Eaſt, we have in *Cyrreſtica*, 1. *Zeugma*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the paſſage of *Alexander* the *Great*, who there paſſed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. 2. *Berrœa*, ſuppoſed by ſome both antient and modern writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*, but the poſition of the place agreeth not with that ſuppoſition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Coſmographers*, in the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and the 38 of *Latitude*: whereas *Berrœa* is aſſigned by *Ptolemy*, to the 36 degree of *Latitude*, and the 71 of *Longitude*. Beſides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is ſituate, keepeth it ſelf almoſt on an even courſe in the *Latitude* of 37. between 20 and 30 minutes over: which is more by a degree and a half than the ſite aſſigned unto *Berrœa*. 3. *Cybros*, as in the *Latine* Copies of *Ptolemy*, miſtook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrreſtica*. 4. *Heraclea*, neer which *Minerva* had a Temple: in which, as in that ſacred to her in *Laodicea*, they uſed once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a ſacrifice; but afterwards on the ſight of that groſs impiety, changed it to an *Hart*. 5. *Regia*, now *Rugia*, two dayes journey from *Antioch*, took by the Chriſtians in the beginning of the wars for the *Holy Land*. 6. *Hierapolis*, of great renown in thoſe dark times of ignorance and idolatry for the *Syrian Godeſs* therein worſhipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy Citie*: being formerly by the *Grecians* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the firſt ſeats of *Magog* the ſon of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The *Godeſs* ſo eſteemed of in thoſe wretched times, that from all parts, *Aſſyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and coſtly offerings. *Nero* himſelf, who ſcoffed at all Religions elſe, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midſt of the City, compaſſed with a double wall, about the height of 300 Fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with gold, and made of ſuch a fragrant and ſweet-ſmelling wood, that the clothes of them which came thither retained the ſent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places incloſed for Oxen, and beaſts of Sacrifice; and not far off a lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their ſacred fiſhes: the Prieſts attending here for their ſeveral Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, beſides many more ſubſervient Miniſters. The tricks and jugglings of theſe Prieſts to deceive the people, he that liſt to ſee, may find them copiouſly deſcribed in the *Metamorphoſis* of *Apuleius*: which, changing but the names and times, may ſerve for a relation of thoſe gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main* which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practiſed in the Church of *Rome*. 7. *Chalyban*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybanotis*; conceived by *Poſtellus*, and ſome others to be *Chalepium*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground: this City having one degree leſſe of Northern Latitude, than *Berrœa* had. 8. *Barbariſſus*, in the ſame ſubdiviſion, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9. *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwiſe memorable. 10. *Telmedſſa*, another Town of the ſame diviſion, and as little famous. 11. *Seleucus*, ſo named from the Founder of it, the firſt Eaſtern Monarch of that race, and the greateſt Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, ſixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, ſix by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his firſt wife; beſides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Country hereabouts had the name of *Seleucis*. 12. *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoyning is called *Laodicene*. Built by him in the place where formerly ſtood the City *Rhamantus*, ſo called from a certain Shepherd, who being ſtrook with a flaſh of lightning, cryed out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to ſay, *Deus ab excelſo*; before which time it had been named *Leuca Acte*, from the whiteneſs of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is ſituate: the Country round about commended antiently for the beſt wines, and choiſe of very excellent fruits. 13. *Apamea*, ſo named in honour of *Apamia*, the wife of *Seleucus*; which, together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucus* before mentioned, having the ſame founder, and maintaining a ſtrict league of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Siſters. From this the Country near is called *Apamene*. 14. *Emeſa*, (now *Hamſe*) the Epiſcopal See of *Euſebius*, hence called *Emeſenus*, who flouriſhed in the time of *Conſtantius*, the ſon of *Conſtantine*: in whoſe name are extant certain Homilies, juſtly conceived to be of a later date. The City ſeated in a ſpacious and fruitful plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant and cheerfull Riverets: once of great note, as may be eaſily conjectured from the walls hereof, which are ſtill perfect and entire, built of poliſhed ſtone, and of very large circuit; but the dwelling-houſes ſo decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy obſervation. 15 *Epiphania*, in the cantred or ſubdiviſion of *Caſiotis*; called at firſt *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it, and upon that account miſtaken by Saint *Hierome* for another Town of the ſame name, in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; ſo different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we ſhall ſhew hereafter when we come to *Paleſtine*) that they can by no means be the ſame. But that old Town being gone to ruine, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein, as *Joſephus* telleth us, by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* ſtill called it *Amatha*, as in former times, *Antiqu. l. 1. c. 7.* 16. *Lariſſa*, which ſtill preſerveth its old name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the wars of the *Holy Land*, eſpecially for the death of *Baldwin* the firſt, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1118. 17. *Gebal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the antient Writers, ſituate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which twelve miles diſtant; mentionned *Pſal.* 83. as a confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumciſed Nations, in their hatred and deſigns againſt the *Iſraelites*:

at

Syria Propria.

at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 18. *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, situate in a rocky Iland of a mile in compass, directly opposite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and distant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezech. ch.* 27. *v.* 8, 11. This once a kingdom of it self, containing not this Iland only, but some part of the Continent; especially about *Antaradus* (so called because built over against it) situate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have spoken in *Phœnicia*. 19. *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; so named of *Daphne*, one of the Mistresses of *Apollo*, who was here worshipped by the name of *Apollo Daphnæus*, and had here his *Oracle* and his *Groves*, with other the Additaments appertaining unto those Idolatries: as much esteemed of, but more sumptuous than those of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypresses*, and other trees, so tall and close to one another, that they suffered not the Sun to enter in his greatest heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choicest Tapestry of Nature, watered with many a pleasant stream, derived from the *Castalian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the most excellent fruits both for taste and tincture, to which the wind and air participating the sweetness of the place, did add a most delightfull influence.

A place devised for pleasure, but abused to lust: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transformed not himself unto a Beast, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curtezan*; insomuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller description of it he that lists to see, may find in the first Book and 18 chapter of *Sozomens Ecclesiastical* History, who is copious in it. The Temple said to have been built by *Seleucus* also, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperour; and therefore much resorted to by *Julian* the *Apostata*, for that purpose also. But the body of *Babylas* the *Martyr* and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cæsar* by *Constantius*, the Devil and his *Oracles* were both frighted away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*. Who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, that no *Oracle* could be given as long as those divine bones were so near the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the *Idol* and the *Temple* were consumed by a fire from Heaven; as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it: though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 20. *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof which is called *Casiotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the battel of *Issus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the ruines of an antient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah in the Land of Hamath*; *Hamath* the *Great* in the sixt of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblata*. Memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Johoahaz* and *Sedechias*, Kings of *Judah*: the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Egypt*, 2 *Kings* 23, 33. the other of his eyes and Children by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some Greek writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearness of it to that *Grove*: as afterwards in the times of *Christianity*, by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God, either from the many miracles there done in the Primitive time; or from the great improvement which the *Christian* faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royal seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*, and in the flourish and best fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary residence of the *Præfect* or Governour of the Eastern Provinces; next of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the *Diocese* of the *Orient*, though that large enough; but also of the Dioceses of *Egypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending so his jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Verus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the second in accompt to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it: that is to say, the *true Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarchs* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schism*, do assume this Title; and finally a *titular Patriarch* nominated by the Pope, who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these *Eastern* Countries, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontis*, about twelve miles distant from the shores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Parfar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compassed with a double wall, the outermost of which was stone, the other of brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Castle at the East-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoyning a deep Lake, coming out of the River *Parfar*, before mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces, and magnificent Temples, answerable to the reputation of so great a City: till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamalucks*, men careless of all State and beauty in their fairest Cities, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a siege of 7 moneths, *June* 3. *Anno* 1098. confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very sight hereof within few days after, (*June* 28) obtained against

Cor-

Corbanas, Lieutenant to the *Perſian Sultan*; in which, with the loſs of four thouſand and two hundred of their own, they ſlew a hundred thouſand of the Enemy. The Town and territory given by the Conquerours to *Bohemund* a noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarentum*: who by practiſing with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called St. *Georges* Tower, was ſecretly let into the City, and ſo made way for all the reſt. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as ſome ſay, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his ſon, about ten years after; ſucceeded in this principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great renown in thoſe *holy wars*: which laſt unfortunately ſlain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the ſecond having revenged his death by a ſignal victory, joyned this eſtate to the kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. Betrayed about ſixty years after this, that is to ſay, in the year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damaſcus*; and therewithall no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City ſo delining after this laſt *Tragedy* (but whether laid deſolate of ſet purpoſe, or deſtroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the ſepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own ſad ruines; hardly preſerving the repute of a ſorry Village. Such is the inſtability of all worldly glories. Soms other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the ſame day with *Antioch*. Of which the moſt obſervable is 21. *Albaria*, diſtant two daies march from *Antioch*, remembred in the wars of the *Holy Land*.

Comagena.

As for the ſtory of this Province, as a State diſtinct, we find it had a king of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the kingdom of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembred;) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Iſles adjoyning. Vaſſals in time ſucceeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-coaſts hereof, and conſequently had great influence on the Inlands alſo. And it continued in this State till the *Aſſyrian* Kings began to turn their forces Weſtward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglath Phileſer*, after the ſubverſion of the kingdom of *Damaſcus*; or by *Salmanaſſar*, after the deſtruction of that of *Iſrael*. The proud but dreadfull vaunt which *Senacherib*, the Succeſſour of thoſe mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Kings of Hamath and Arphad*, ſhews clearly that thoſe Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanaſſar*, or *Tiglath Phileſer*. Afterwards in the ſtruglings betwixt the *Babylonians*, and *Egyptians*, for the chief command, it was a while at the devotions of the Kings of *Egypt*, it being at *Reblatha* in this Province, that *Johoahaz* King of *Judah* was put into bonds, by the command of *Pharaoh Neco*, as was ſaid before. But *Neco* being not long after vanquiſhed by *Nebuchadnezzer* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown; and after followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Syria*.

3. COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divide it from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with *Palmyrene*. Called alſo *Euphratenſis* and *Euphrateſia*, when a *Roman* Province; by reaſon of its ſituation bordering on that River.

The reaſon of the name I find not amongſt my Authors: but find that many learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maacha*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron. cap.* 16. *verſ.* 6. gain-ſayed by others, becauſe they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; but with no great reaſon as I take it. For being it is joyned (in the 2. of *Chron.* 19. *v.* 6. above-mentioned) in the ſame action with *Meſopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not ſo only, but placed between them in the Method of that holy pen-man; I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural ſituation of them. Which agreeth very well with the ſite of *Comagena*, having *Meſopotamia* on the Eaſt, and *Aram-Sobah* on the South. Nor is it any ſtronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; than if a man ſhould ſay that there is no ſuch Province as *Mansfield* in *High Germany*, becauſe there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no ſuch place as *Savoy* amongſt the *Alpes*, becauſe there is a houſe of that name in *London*.

As for the people hereof, beſides what they have common with the reſt of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divinations*, and for that cauſe derided thus in the ſixth *Satyr* of *Juvenal*,

Spondet amatorem tenerum vel divitis orbi
Teſtamentum ingens, calidæ pulmone Columbæ
Tractato Armenius *vel* Comagenus *Aruſpex.*
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli,
Interdum & pueri. Faciat quod deferat ipſe.

Thus Engliſhed by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapylton*.

A childleſs rich mans Legacy, or young love,
Are found i'th' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Sooth-ſayers; they look into

Comagena.

A dead Chicks breſt, the ſame th' *Armenians* do.
They view the entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Childs perhaps: They do it, and then peach.

Chief places of this part, 1. *Samoſata*, the *Metropolis*, or head City of it, when a *Roman* Province, ſituate near the banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a bridge for paſſage into *Meſopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the birth-place of *Lucian* that profane Scoffer of *Chriſtianity*, though otherwiſe a man of a quick wit, and of great abilities: as alſo of *Paulus Samoſatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, condemned of *Hereſie* in a Council holden in his own City, *An.* 273. (by the great and moſt learned Biſhops of that Age, there aſſembled together) for teaching that our Saviour was no other than a natural man; but neither God, nor the ſon of God, as the Scriptures teſtifie. 2. *Germanicia*, (by ſome called *Germanicopolis*) on the other ſide of the Country, near the mountain *Amanus*; no leſſe unfortunate than the former, in being the birth-place of *Neſtorius*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: who troubling the peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie* and impertinent niceties, about the bleſſed Mother of Chriſt, as alſo about the nature and perſon of Chriſt himſelf, was thereupon condemned of *Hereſie* in the Council of *Epheſus*, *Anno* 435. In former times called *Adata*, as ſome write *Adapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Cæſar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus*: teſtified by this inſcription extant in *Onuphrius*, viz. *COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, SACRA, AUGUSTA, FELIX.* 3. *Singa*, ſo called from the River upon which it is ſituate. 4. *Antiochia penes Taurum*, ſo called becauſe ſeated at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5. *Pinara*, one of the chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6. *Doliche*, a ſmall Town; but made an Epiſcopal See in the beſt times of the Church, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councils of *Antioch*, and *Conſtantinople*, in which there is ſome mention of the Biſhops of it. 7. *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Country, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. 24. It was thus called as ſome ſay from *Halep*, which in the language of thoſe parts ſignifieth milk, afforded liberally by the rich paſtures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the firſt letter of the *Hebrew* Alphabet, becauſe the firſt in eſtimation of the Cities of *Syria*; Moſt probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, who did here many notable exploits, and amongſt others, in or near the ruines of ſome old Town of theſe parts, not yet agreed on in caſe it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the banks of the River *Singas*, which riſing out of the hill *Pierius*, with many windings and turnings runneth thorow *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. Deſtroyed by *Haalon*, King of the *Tartars*, at ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reaſon of the commodious ſituation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the world. Situate in the midſt betwixt *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkie* on the one ſide; and the *Perſian* territories on the other: it was made choice of for the Staple of the Eaſtern commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then boated to this Town by the River *Singas*. A City of great trade at preſent, the *Engliſh* Merchants (amongſt others which frequent the ſame) having here three houſes for the Stowage and diſpoſing of their commodities; and a chief Officer, or *Super-Intendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Conſul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the trade hereof in the former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to thoſe Eaſtern Countries, ſince followed by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and other Nations. The building of it low, but of one Roof high, (as in moſt Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaiſtered to walk upon: and with Arches before their doors, or houſes, as well to paſſe dry under them in time of rain, as to ſhew their wares. Pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Gardens, with the ſweet ſmels whereof very much refreſhed; the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*; ſafe rather in the remoteneſſe of it from any Enemy, than the ſtrength of the place, as being nothing leſs than well-fortified. Near one of the Gates they ſhew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *Georges* (whom of all the *Chriſtian* Saints they only worſhip) before which they maintain a lamp which burns continually. 8. *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *Kings*, *chap.* 17. 12. A City of a large Circuit, pleaſantly ſeated on two hills, which give it a fair proſpect over ſix of the neighbouring Villages: a thing not to be boaſted of as the world now goeth, by many of the *Syrian* Cities. On a third hill once ſtood a Caſtle, now decayed and ruinous, beneath it a fair River which runs gently by it; environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees, and very good fruits. 9. *Chalmodora*, ſeated by *Ptolemy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruines now remaining; unleſs the name be changed to 10. *Byrrha*, as perhaps it may be: that being made by *Ptolemy*, the moſt Northern Town of *Comagena*; this the utmoſt Town which the *Ægyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Perſia*. Memorable for an old Ceremony here uſed by thoſe *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themſelves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Egypt*, till in this place in ſolemn pomp in the ſight of their Army, they had forced their horſe into the River, and made him drink of the waters of it: teſtifying by that Ceremony as well the extent of their Dominions, as their readineſs to defend the ſame againſt all Invaders. A ceremony performed with great State by *Campſon Gaurus*, in the war betwixt him and *Selimus* the firſt. But for all this he loſt the field, and his life to boot in the fight near *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his Victory; but opened him a fair way to the conqueſt of *Egypt*, which ſoon after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11. *Hena*, and 12. *Ivah*, with their ſeveral Territories; mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Eſay* 37. *v.* 13. and 2 *Kings* 18. *v.* 34. it being probable, that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the

the *Jews* that dwell there say it was; that then the other two joyned together with it, must be hereabouts, though we find no tract of them in the old *Geographers*. *Palmyrene.*

And if they were (as it seems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times, than the King of *Maacha*; unless perhaps it may be said that the kingdom of *Maacha* (or of *Aram-Maacha*) being broke in pieces, these petit States arose from the ruins of it. Of little observation in the course of business, whether entire or subdivided into parcels; but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* against *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confess (as one who lay more out of the danger than the rest of the *Syrian* confederates did) but sufficient to ingage him in the quarrel with them. Nor find we any thing after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Hena*, *Ivah* and *Sepharvaim* (who shared the greatest part amongst them) being swallowed up by the *Assyrians* (as the forementioned Texts doe expresly say) some Colonies of the people hereof were sent by *Salmanassar* the *Assyrian* Monarch, to plant the desolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Israel*, as appeareth plainly in the 2 of *Kings chap.* 17. *v.* 24. A course in which the Conqueror dealt exceeding wisely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Country, which otherwise might have been apt enough to revolt again; and strengthning therewithall their conquests in the Land of *Israel*, which otherwise had lain open to the next invader, and yeelded little or no profit to the publike Treasury. More politick in this than the *Babylonians* in the like desolution and destruction of the Kingdom of *Judah*. After this time it followed the same fortune with the rest of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the last King hereof was subdued by the *Romans*. At what time all the rest of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the possession of *Antiochus*, son of that *Antiochus* surnamed *Eusebes*, whom *Tigranes* had spoiled of his estates; was left unto him by the Conquerours with the title of King. Continuing in his line till the death of another *Antiochus*, the last King hereof; when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Cæsar*, as is said by *Tacitus*; *Qu. Servæus* being sent hither as the first *Roman Prætor* for the government of it; though *Sueton* doth refer it to the times of *Vespasian*.

4. *PALMYRENE.*

PALMYRENE is bounded on the East, by the River *Euphrates*; on the West, by *Syria* properly and specially so called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Cœle-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deserta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a distinct Province of it self, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*. Called *Syria Secunda*, to distinguish it from *Syria* specially so called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the *medicinal* waters springing in many places of it. But before it had any of these names, it was in the Scriptures called *Aram-Sobah*, whereof *Adad-ezar* was King in the time of *David*, as we read 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. and 1 *Chron.* 18. 3.

The Countrey destitute of Rivers fit for Navigation; save that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furnished with those hot springs, good for many diseases, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus* lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum nusquam visitur flumen, at in locis plurimis aquæ suapte naturâ calentes emergunt, ad usum aptæ multiplicium medelarum.* So he. The sense whereof we had before.

Places of most observation, are 1. *Palmyra*, seated in a desart and sandy plain, one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderness*, mention of which is made 1 *Kings*, *chap.* 9. *v.* 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being supposed to be that City which is there called *Tadmer*, or *Tamer* in the *Vulgar Latine*. The cause for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as situate in the borders of either Empire: not fully setled in the *Romans*, till that they had subdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old name in short prevailing above the new. 2. *Gezer*, 3. *Bethhoron* the upper, and 4. *Bethboron* the nether, said to be fenced Cities with *Walls*, *Gates*, and *Bars*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 4. and 5. *Baalath*, four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowlege, or called by new names in the time of *Ptolemie*, who saith nothing of them. 6. *Adada*, built, as the name doth intimate, by some of the *Adads*, Kings of this Country, or of *Damascus*, to which last made subject. 7. *Sura*, more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia Firma Sura*; which sheweth that it was either repaired, or made a Colonie by the Emperour *Vespasian*, whose fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Episcopal See also in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Council of *Constantinople*. 8. *Alamath*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawfull for me to *criticize* upon my Author, I should conceive to be that *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is called *Hamath-Sobah*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 3. against which *Solomon* prevailed: the mistake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha*, being not uneasie in the *transcripts*. Confirmed herein by that passage in the second of *Chron. ch.* 18. *v.* 3. where it is said, that *David* smote *Hadad-ezar* King of *Sobah* unto *Hamath*, *as he went to stablish his Dominion by the River Euphrates*: By which it seemeth that *Hamath* stood upon that River, as the *Camatha* or *Alamatha* of *Ptolemy* is said to do. And if it were the same, as I think it was, I should conceive it to be the chief seat of those kings, and the principal City of this Kingdom: the word *Sobah*, being added to it, not only for distinctions sake, but in way of eminency. But if the judicious Reader approve not of this criticism, I should next think that this *Alamatha* of *Ptolemy* were that *Ælam*, or *Helam*, near unto which *David* discomfited that great Army of the *Mesopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam.* 10. *v.* 16, 17. 9. *Resapha*, a Town of note

in

Cœle-Syria. in the time of *Ptolemy*; but of greater in the holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Reseph*, *Esay* 3. 20. *Reseph Civitas Syriæ*, as St. *Hierom* hath it: and if a Town of *Syria*, then most like this. 10. *Betah*, and 11 *Berothai*, two other Cities of this kingdom, taken by *David* in his war against *Hadad-ezar*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 8. the last supposed to be the *Barathene* of *Ptolemy*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia* the *Desart*, to which it seems it was alotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the rest, was once a distinct kingdom of it self, by the name of the kingdom of *Sobah*, or of *Aram-Sobah*. The first King thereof, whose name occurs in holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Co-temperary of *Saul* King of *Israel*, by whom discomfited in battel, as is said 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command, (as is said 2. *Sam.* 10. 19.) conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, *as he went to recover his border at the River Euphrates*. In which action though he lost a thousand Charets, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not so end the war; but first with the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the quarrel. But being discomfited also in this last enterprize with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the kingdom of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The story of this war we have in the 2 of *Sam.* cap. 8. and 10. in the first of *Chron.* cap. 18. and 1 *Kings* 11. 23, 24. yet were not the *Kings* of *Damascus* so well setled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Betah* and *Berothai*, and other peeces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Soba* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his conquest. But the kingdom of *Solomon* being rent in peeces in the next succession, the kingdom of *Zobah* fell again unto those of *Damascus*: and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Assyria*: unless perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 *Kings* 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Soba*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the affairs of this Country, till the time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperour: during whose reign, amongst the rest who *cantonned* that Empire betwixt themselves (commonly called the Thirty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and vertue assumed the imperial habit, and took unto himself the command of these parts of *Syria*, together with *Mesopotamia*, and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Persia*; against whom he had so good an hand, that he discomfited him in battel, seized upon his Treasures, and took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after slain by *Mœonius* his Cozin German. Who by that murder hoped to obtain the principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate widow, a most masculine Lady, not only preserved the principality of *Palmyrene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the *Purple habit*, and the command of his Army: which she managed with great wisdom and gallantry, the rest of the time of *Gallienus*, and all the reigns of *Claudius*, and *Quintilius*, his two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to unite the broken limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) she was led in triumph thorow *Rome*. The terrour of her name, and the unusualness of the sight, so heightning the general expectation; *ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilius*, saith *Trebellius Pollio*; That never any shew was esteemed so glorious. A Lady of so strong a virtue, and of such command upon her self, that she is said never to have made use of her husbands company, when she perceived her self with child. After this nothing singular in the story of *Palmyrene*, but that when all the rest of *Syria* was subdued by the *Christians* of the West, this Province and the next only was made good against them by the *Turkish* Sultans of *Damascus*.

5. COELE-SYRIA.

COELE-SYRIA is bounded on the East with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and some part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Ituræa*, and *Arabia Deserta* also.

This is the *Syria* so much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, called by the *Greeks Cœle-Syria*, i. e. *Syria Cava*, because partly situate in the hollow vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and sometimes also *Syro-Phœnicia*, from the intermixture of those people; as the *Phœnicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africk*, were called *Libo-Phœnicie*. By the *Romans*, when made a distinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phœnice Libani*, or *Phœnicia Libanensis*, to difference it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they call *Maritima*. But before all this by the *Hebrews* named *Aram-Damasek*, *Syria-Damascena* in the *Latine*, from *Damascus* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasek* contained only that which lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; the rest being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palestine* and *Arabia-Deserta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof, are 1. *Abanah*, and 2. *Pharphar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *Kings ch.* 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already: the other that which *Ptolemy* callerh *Chrysorrhoas*, or the Golden flood; which rising in the Hills of this Country, passeth by *Damascus*, and so together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it 1. *Alsadamus*, by the *Phœnicians* called *Syrion*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the East point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting up on

that

that side the land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palestine*; 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deserta*. *Cœle-Syria.*

Towns of most consideration in it, 1. *Heliopolis*, so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in the time of *Paganism*; now *Ballebec*, or (as some say) *Balbec*. 2. *Chalcis*, more Eastward towards *Damascus*, which gave the title of a King to *Ptolemy Mennæus*, and his son *Lysanias*, the kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Iturea* in *Palestine*. But that Family being either expired, or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Iturea* otherwise disposed of; the title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and territory, was given to *Herod*, brother of *Agrippa* the first, King of *Jewrie*. Erroneously supposed by some learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called *Chalcidice* takes denomination: that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolemy* a degree and a half more East than *Damascus*, and two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lyeth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern *Latitude*. 3. *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis*, from whence the Country round about is called *Abilene*: given to *Lysanias*, the son of the former *Lysanias*, king of *Chalcis*, with the title of *Tetrarch*. Mentioned *Luke* 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palestine* amongst them. Not that he was the son of *Herod*, as antiently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late-times some very industrious men have been of opinion: but partly because the Cities of *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to those of the Tribe of *Naphthalim* (though never conquered or possessed by them) and so to be accompted a part of *Palestine*; and partly because the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila-Lysania* in the time of *Ptolemy*. 4. *Adida*, memorable for the victory which *Aretas* king of *Arabia* obtained near unto it, against *Alexander* king of *Jewrie*, the kingdom of *Syria*, then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5. *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Plinie* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6. *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7. *Gadara*. 8. *Scythopolis*. 9. *Gerasa*, and 10. *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolemy* as Cites of *Cœle-Syria*, but of right belonging unto *Palestine*; where we mean to take more notice of them. 11. *Damascus*, situate in a large plain environed with hills, and watered with the River *Chrysorrhoas*, which with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the houses have their fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enriched with plenty of most excellent wines (the vines hereof bearing grapes all the year long) and great store of Wheat; as their Orchards with variety of most delicate fruits: our *Damascens*, (or *Pruna Damascena* as the *Latines* call them) coming first from hence; as also doe our *Damask* Roses, but infinite short of their natural sweetness, by the transplantion. A place so surfeiting of delights, so girt about with odoriferous and curious gardens, that the vile Impostor *Mahomet* would never be perswaded to come into it: for fear (as himself was used to say) lest being ravished with the ineffable pleasures of it, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make there his Paradise. But *Muhavias*, one of his Successors, having no such scruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the most part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph*, about an hundred years after this Removal: the Regal seat before that time, being at *Mecca*, *Cuta*, or some other of the best Towns of *Arabia Felix*. The chief buildings of it of late times (till destroyed by the *Tartars*) were a strong Castle, in the opinion of those times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamerlane*, whom nothing was able to withstand: and as Majestical a Church, garnished with forty sumptuous porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanterns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the said *Tamerlane* most cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto the ground. Repaired by the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt*, when Lords of *Syria*, it hath since flourished in Trade, the people being industrious, and celebrated for most excellent Artizans: the branching of Satins, and fine Linen, which we call by the name of *Damasks*, being amongst many others, one of their inventions. Renowned in the Old Testament for the Kings hereof, and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abrahams* Steward (so honourably antient was this City) and in the New, for the Conversion of Saint *Paul*, who first preached the Gospel in this place, and here so narrowly escaped the snares of his enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the house in which he was, by the help of a *Basket*. 12. *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and antiently of such esteem, that the whole Country of *Damascus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5.

But antient and honourable though this City of *Damascus* was, we find nothing of the story of it, til the time of *David*, the Kings thereof until those days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the kings of *Zobah*. The first exploit ascribed unto them in the Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-ezar*, upon his first defeat by *David*: in which action having lost 22000 men, they were so broken, that they did not only suffer *David* to put Garrisons in the best Cities of *Damascus*: but patiently became his Servants, and brought presents to him, 2. *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Josephus* affirmed out of *Nicolas Damascenus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cherished and assumed by the kings Successors) who keeping constant to the party of *Adad-ezer* in his following wars, was at last slain with him in that great discomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in the 2 of *Sam.* ch. 10. v. 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of those Kings, that being supplyed to us by *Josephus* out of their Records. Who also addeth, that *Rezin*, one of the chief Commanders of *Adad-ezer*, taking this advantage, not only usurped his Masters kingdom, but made himself Master of the kingdom of *Damascus* also. From this time forward the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the tradition of *Josephus* only

only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which see 1 *Kings* 11. *v.* 23, 24. the Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the name of Kings of *Syria*, but of those that reigned in *Damascus*; who in short time had swallowed up the petit kingdoms of *Gessur*, *Ish-tob*, *Rehob*, besides that of *Sobah* before mentioned.

The KINGS of *SYRIA* or *DAMASCUS*.

1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobah*, in whose quarel he was vanquished and slain by *David*.

2 *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture saith, in the 2 of *Chron.* that when *David* slew them of *Sobah*, *he fled from* Adad-ezar *his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to* Damascus *and dwelt therein, and reigned in* Damascus.

3 *Adad* II. an *Idumæan*, supposed to be of the family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Ægypt*, where he maried *Taphnes*, the Queens Sister: and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as some write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damascus*, and reigned there as King.

4 *Hezion*, Successor unto *Adad*.

5 *Tabrimon*, the son of *Hezion*, as is said 1. *Kings* 15. 18.

6 *Ben-hadad*, the son of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Asa* king of *Judah*, to aid him in his wars against *Baasha* of *Israel*.

7 *Ben-hadad* II. son of the former, twice invaded *Israel* in the reign of *Achab*; but both times notably repulsed; the first time by a sally of 700 men at the siege of *Samaria*; the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect he was taken prisoner, and his Army routed.

8 *Hazael*, Captain of the host to *Ben-hadad*, annointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Elisha*, whom God appointed so to do, that by his hands he might avenge himself on *Ben-hadad*, whom *Hazael* slew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of *Israel*, as those before him. He attempted upon *Judah* also in the time of *Joas*, but bribed with the treasures of the Temple, he withdrew his forces.

9 *Ben-hadad* III. Sonne of *Hazael*, discomfited in three set Battels by *Joas* King of *Israel*.

10 *Ben-hadad* IV. son of *Ben-hadad* the third.

11 *Ben-hadad* V. son of *Ben-hadad* the fourth.

12 *Ben-hadad* VI. son of *Ben-hadad* the fifth, in the time of one of which three kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the son of *Joas* king of *Israel*, subdued both *Chamath*, and *Damascus*: of which see 2 *Kings* 14. *v.* 18.

13 *Rezin* II. son of *Ben-hadad* the sixt, and the last king of *Damascus*, who joyning with *Pekah* king of *Israel*, against *Ahaz* of *Judah*; enforced him to call unto his aid *Tiglat Phalaser*, king of *Assyria*; by whom *Rezin* was taken and beheaded, and the City of *Damascus* won; the kingdom of *Syria* by that means united to the *Assyrian* Empire.

After this time, the *Syrians* continued subject to the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Persians*, became a part of their estate: remaining so till the first battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, fought near *Issus* in *Cilicia*. The victory wherein falling to the *Macedonians*, gave him without more trouble than the siege of *Tyre*, the possession of *Syria* and *Phoenicia*. He dying not long after his conquest of *Persia*, this Country lay as it were at stake betwixt *Ptolemy* king of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* the chief Lord of *Asia*: but the possession of it, together with the rest of the *Persian* Empire, in both *Asias*, fell in conclusion to the share of *Seleucus*, for his many great and signal victories surnamed *Nicanor*; a man strangely preferred. For being at the first, Governour of *Chaldea* only, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and forsake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadfull to all the *Macedonian* Captains; and to flie into *Egypt*, where he became *Ptolemies* Admiral. After which *Ptolemie* fighting a pitched field with *Demetrius*, son to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him, and having won the battel, gave him aid and license to recover his former goverment. *Seleucus* wel-beloved of the people, soon made himself Master, not of *Chaldea* only, but of all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being seconded by his good friends *Ptolemy*, *Cassander*, and *Lysimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipsus* in *Ionia*, where *Antigonus* himself was slain, and his whole Army routed. This victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Asia*, from whence passing over into *Europe*, he vanquished and slew *Lysimachus*: Seven moneths after which victory, he was slain by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, whose patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the last survivor of all *Alexanders* Princes, and the only possessor of all the Dominions which his Master had, by the way of conquest, *Ægypt* excepted. His Successours, although they were Lords of all *Asia*, yet since in *Syria* they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, upon all occasions, as was said before, they were commonly called the kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatness of estate and power, which *Seleucus* left them: though being a ful-bodied tree, and of several limbs, it endured the lopping off of many branches, & many a sad blow at the very root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the 4th. of this house, *Arsaces* a noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire, lying on that side of *Euphrates*; & erected the so much celebrated *Parthian* king-

Kingdom, whereof more in *Perſia*. And in the reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, ſo called for his victories in *Egypt*, *Judæa*, and *Babylonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Aſian* Provinces, on this ſide Mount *Taurus*; not wanting many provocations to incite them to it. For he not only had made war againſt *Ptolemy Philopater* King of *Egypt*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but ſtirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* againſt them; invaded *Lyſimachia*, and ſome other parts of *Europe* in defiance of them, and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their moſt mortal enemies, into his dominions, governing his Counſels by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that ambition and avarice, to add to their fame and Empire by the overthrow of ſo great a Prince, did perſwade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready iſſue, they pleaded it on both ſides in the battel of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia*; to which *Antiochus* brought an Army of 300000 foot, and as many armed *Chariots*, beſides ſtore of *Elephants*, if the *Roman* writers be not over laviſh in their reports. But rejecting the advice of *Annibal*, and commiting his affairs wholly to *Evil-Conſellors*, he was vanquiſhed by no more than four *Legions* of enemies; and for his peace compelled to quit all his *Aſian* Provinces, on that ſide of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 *Talents* in ready money for the charge of the war. The reſt of his eſtates they were content he ſhould enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile ceſſiſſet* (as *Florus* handſomly puts it on him) becauſe he had ſo eaſily relinquiſhed that. Afterwards in the civil broils among themſelves, about the ſucceſſion of the kingdom, *Alexander*, king of the *Jews*, took from them many of their beſt Towns in *Paleſtine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Anthedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocorura*, almoſt all *Samaria*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Sythopolis*, *Gadara*, and many other ſtrong Towns in *Cœle-Syria*. Finally, when they had conſumed almoſt all the Royal race, and changed their Kings no leſs than ten times in 40 years (a ſure ſign of a falling and expiring kingdom) they were fain to caſt themſelves upon *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, a puiſſant and ſucceſsfull Prince, til ingaged in the quarrel of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*: by whom ſtripped of all his eſtates on this ſide *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himſelf with his own *Armenia*; leaving *Syria* to the abſolute diſpoſal of *Pompey*, who preſently reduced it to the form of a Province. This ſaid, we have not much more to do with the houſe of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their names, and times of their ſeveral governments, till we draw towards the laſt end of

The *MACEDONIAN* KINGS of *SYRIA*.

A. M.

3654 1 *Seleucus Nicanor*, the firſt King of this houſe. 31.

3685 2 *Antiochus*, ſurnamed *Soter*, or the *Saviour*; memorable for nothing ſo much, as marying with *Stratonice* his Fathers wife, in his Fathers life-time.

3704 3 *Antiochus* II. by his flattering Courtiers ſurnamed *Theos*, or the God; but being poiſoned by his wife he proved a mortal.

3719 4 *Seleucus* II. ſurnamed by the like flattery, *Callinicus*, or fair Conquerour; becauſe ſhamefully beaten by the *Parthians*.

3739 5 *Seleucus* III. called for the like reaſon *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunderer*; the eldeſt ſon of *Callinicus*.

3742 6 *Antiochus* III. ſurnamed *Magnus*, the younger ſon of *Callinicus*, a Prince that imbraced many great actions, and was fortunate in his ſucceſſes beyond *Euphrates*: he plagued the *Jews*, but loſt all *Aſia Minor* unto the *Romans*.

3778 7 *Seleucus* IV. called *Philopator*, the ſon of *Antiochus*, who firſt began to caſt his eye upon the riches of the Temple at *Hieruſalem*.

3790 8 *Antiochus* IV. ſurnamed *Epiphanes*, or the *Illuſtrious*, but more truly *Epimanes*, or the *mad*, the great ſcourge of the *Jews*; brother of *Seleucus Philopator*. With whom begineth the ſtory of the firſt Book of the *Maccabees*.

3802 9 *Antiochus* V. called by the name of *Eupator*, the ſon of *Epiphanes*; who by *Lyſius* his Captain tyrannized over the poor *Judæans*, for the little time that he reigned; as did alſo

3804 10 *Demetrius*, ſurnamed *Soter*, ſon of *Seleucus Philopator*, by the hands of *Nicanor*: having poſſeſſed himſelf of the diadem by the death of *Eupator*, ſlain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards depoſed for a time by *Alexander Bala*, pretending himſelf to be the ſon of *Eupator*, ſupported herein by the *Antiochians*.

3814 11 *Alexander Bala*, diſcomfited in his firſt battel by *Demetrius*, whom he ſlew and vanquiſhed in the ſecond; maried *Cleopatra* Daughter of *Ptolemy Philometor*, by whoſe aid he was victorious. But a quarrel breaking out between them, *Ptolemy* invaded *Syria*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned King of it; *Alexander* being ſlain by ſome of his Souldiers.

3819. 12 *Demetrius* II. ſurnamed *Nicator*, Son of *Demetrius* the firſt, recovered his Fathers kingdom, a friend of the *Maccabees*, but ſo cruel to his own people, that he was driven out of his kingdom by *Tryphon* General of his Armies.

3821 13 *Antiochus* VI. ſurnamed *Entheus*, the Son of *Alexander* and *Cleopatra*, advanced unto the Throne by *Tryphon*, and after ſlain by him to make way for himſelf unto the Diadem.

3824 14 *Tryphon*, called alſo *Diodorus*, having driven out *Demetrius*, and ſlain *Antiochus*, made himſelf King.

3827 15 *Antiochus* VII. ſurnamed *Sedetes*, brother of *Demetrius*, having overcome and ſlain *Tryphon*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate; for a while victorious againſt the *Parthians*, but afterwards overcome and ſlain by them. After whoſe death *Demetrius Nicator* (having lived in *Parthia* ſince the loſs of his kingdom) was reſtored again unto the Throne; which having held about 4 years, he was again diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by

3843 16 *Alexander* II. ſurnamed *Zebenna*, an *Ægyptian* of mean birth, ſet up by *Ptolemy Euergetes*, and pretending himſelf to be the adopted Son of *Antiochus*, afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by

3845 17 *Antiochus* VIII. from the crookedneſs of his noſe ſurnamed *Gryphus*, Son of *Demetrius*, aided herein by the *Ægyptian*, with whom reconciled: having reigned about eight years in peace; embroiled himſelf in war with his half brother *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Cyzicenus*; which with variable ſucceſſes on both ſides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29 years in all.

3874 18 *Seleucus* V. Son of *Antiochus Gryphus*, in the beginning of his reign overcame and ſlew his Uncle *Cyzicenus*; but being vanquiſhed by *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Euſebes* or *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Cizicenus*, he fled into *Cilicia*, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 *Antiochus* IX. ſurnamed *Euſebes*, having firſt vanquiſhed *Seleucus*, and afterwards *Antiochus*, another of the Sons of *Gryphus*, was crowned King of *Syria*; but ſlain not long after in the *Perſian* wars.

20 *Philip*, and *Demetrius* III. ſurnamed *Eucærus*, younger Sons of *Gryphus*, joyntly Kings of *Syria*; but reigning in their ſeveral parts. Of which *Demetrius* intending to diſſeize his brother, was himſelf vanquiſhed, and forced to fly into *Parthia*; leaving the whole kingdom unto *Philip*. During which wars amongſt themſelves, *Syria* was invaded, and in in part conquered by *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, and *Alexander* King of the *Jews*.

3884 21 *Tigranes*, King of *Armenia*, during theſe diſſentions was by the *Syrians* choſen king, that by his power they might be freed from the *Jews* and *Arabians*: the moſt puiſſant Prince that reigned in *Syria*, ſince the time of *Antiochus* the *Great*, as being king of *Syria* by election, of *Armenia* by ſucceſſion, of *Media* by conqueſt. But ingaging himſelf with *Mithridates* (whoſe daughter he had maried) againſt the *Romans*, was vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*: who with the loſs of five *Romans* only, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have ſlain of his Enemies above a 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*, he yeelded himſelf to *Pompey* (who being appointed *Lucullus* ſucceſſor, deprived him of the honour of ending that war) and retaining to himſelf *Armenia* only, he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*, having reigned eighteen years. And though *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Sonne of *Euſebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for a reſtitution to the Throne of his Anceſtors; yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying, that he would not truſt the Country into ſuch weak hands as were not able to defend it againſt the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like invaders; and ſo reduced it preſently to the form of a Province. The government of this Country under theſe new Lords, was accompted to be one of the greateſt honours of the Empire: the *Præfect* hereof having almoſt regal juriſdiction over all the Regions on this ſide *Euphrates*; with a ſuper-intendency over *Ægypt*. *Niger*, the concurrent of *Severus*, was *Præfect* here; and on the ſtrength hereof preſumed on that competition. So alſo was *Caſſius Syrus*, who being a Native of this Country, and well-beloved by reaſon of his moderate and plauſible demeanour, had almoſt tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this occaſion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter ſhould have any *militer* or *legal* command in the Province where he was born: Leſt perhaps ſupported by the natural propenſion of the people to one of their own Nation; and heartned by the powerableneſs of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himſelf, which was common to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and paſſed but for one Province only, *Phœnicia* being alſo taken into the accompt; which made the *Antiochians* ſo proud and inſolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to ſubduct *Phœnicia* from it, *ne tot civitatum Metropolis* Antiochia *diceretur* (ſaith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of ſo many Cities. But what he lived not to accompliſh, was performed by *Conſtantine*. By whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it ſelf divided into four diſtinct Provinces, as was ſhewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City: but all ſubordinate to the command of the *Comes*, or *Præfect* of the Eaſt, as he to the command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often ſpoke already.

For the defence hereof aſwell againſt all Forein invaſions, as the inſurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconſtant people) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For ſo many *Mutianus* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the ſtrength and reputation of thoſe Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Veſpaſian*. And though the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours to whoſe ſhare it fell, in the diviſion of the Empire, rather increaſed than diminiſhed any part of this ſtrength: yet when the fatal time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haumer* their third *Caliph*, *An.* 636. poſſeſſed themſelves of it; *Heraclius* then reigning in *Conſtantinople*. And it continued in their power till *Trangrolipix* the *Turk*, having conquered *Perſia*, and the Provinces on that ſide of *Euphrates*, paſſed over the River into *Syria*, and made himſelf Maſter of a great part of that alſo. A quarrel falling out betwixt him and his neareſt Kinſ-men, and thereby a great ſtop made in their further progreſs, was thus compoſed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* in the time of *Axan* his Succeſſor.

To

To *Cutlu Moſes* was aſſigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed againſt the *Chriſtians*, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained; without relation or ſubordination to the *Perſian* Sultans: of whoſe ſucceſſes and affairs hath been ſpoke elſewhere. To *Melech* and *Ducat*, two others of his diſcontented kinſmen, but all of the ſame *Selzuccian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and thoſe parts of *Syria*, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-coaſts of *Paleſtine*; to be held in fee and vaſſalage of the Crown of *Perſia*. To theſe two brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkiſh* kingdom in *Syria*: who, with their Succeſſors, by reaſon that here they held their reſidence, cauſed themſelves to be called

The *TURKISH* KINGS of *DAMASCUS*.

1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Kings of *Damaſcus*, by the gift of *Axon*, the ſecond Sultan of the *Turks* in *Perſia*, added to their dominions all the reſt of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and ſome neighbouring Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

2 ——— Sultan of *Damaſcus*, at ſuch times as the *Chriſtians* of the Weſt won the *Holy Land*: againſt whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damaſcus*; and in a ſet battel diſcomfited and ſlew *Roger* the *Norman*, Prince of *Antioch*.

1146 3 *Noradine*, (the ſon of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-Law to the former King, ſucceeded him in the eſtate. A noble Prince, memorable amongſt other things for a gallant anſwer made to his Commanders, when they perſwaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third, and to invade *Hieruſalem* whilſt the *Chriſtians* were buſie in ſolemnizing his Funerals. Not ſo, ſaith he, *Compaſſion and regard is to be had of the juſt ſorrow of thoſe* Chriſtians, *who have loſt ſuch a King, as could not be equalled in the world.*

1175 4 *Melechſala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reaſon of his youth, by his Nobles, and Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom diſpoſſeſſed firſt, and after vanquiſhed.

1176 5 *Saladine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Egypt*, having vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechſala*, to reſtore that Prince to his eſtate, remained King of *Damaſcus*: and by the puiſſance of his Armies, recovered from the *Chriſtians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* alſo.

1199 6 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzel* the eldeſt Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Damaſcus*; which he exchanged for that of *Egypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, the ſecond Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded upon this Exchange in the Realm of *Damaſcus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine* the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarouſly murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngeſt called *Saphradine* eſcaping only, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) poſſeſſed himſelf of the kingdom of *Damaſcus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death, left *Sultan* of *Damaſcus*; to which all *Syria* and *Paleſtine* were then made *Provincials*. But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar*, in the year 1262. having taken the King of *Damaſcus* Priſoner (but whether *Corradine*, or ſome other, I am not able to ſay) brought him before the walls of the City; threatning to kill him in the ſight of the people, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refuſing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by aſſault: the kingdom by the Conquerours conferred upon *Agab* the Son of *Haalon*. And ſo ended the *Selzuccian* family of the Kings of *Damaſcus* in the perſon of *Corradine*, or the ſon of *Corradine*, moſt miſerably murdered by the *Tartars*: as it had done in *Egypt* 17 years before, in the perſon of *Melechſela*, and *Elmutam*, the Son of *Meledine*, as villainouſly diſpoſed and murdered by the *Mamalucks*. So ſlippery is the foundation of thoſe kingdoms which are laid in blood.

Nor did this kingdom hold long in the hands of the *Tartars*, recovered from them in ſhort time by the *Mamalucks*, then Kings of *Egypt*; from them once more regained by the furious *Tamerlane*: who in the year 1400 beſieged *Damaſcus* with an Army of 1200000 men, (if the number be not miſtaken, and one Cypher added more than ſhould) in purſuite whereof he filled up the ditches with his Priſoners, put all the people to the ſword; and with great Art raiſed three Towers as a Trophey of his victory, built with the heads of thoſe whom he had ſo ſlaughtered. A man ſo ſtrangely made up of vice and vertues, that it is hard to ſay which had the predominancy. But the violence of this tempeſt being overblown, the *Mamalucks*, from whom he had alſo conquered the kingdom of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damaſcus*, continuing in their power till the year 1516. when *Selimus* the firſt diſcomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Ægyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the news whereof the Citizens of *Damaſcus*, fearing the ſpoil of their rich City, then of very great trading, ſet open their gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next year of *Egypt* alſo, by the vanquiſhment and death of *Tonombeius* who ſucceeded *Campſon*: ſo rooting out the name and government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding thoſe rich kingdoms to the *Turkiſh* Empire. And ſo much for *Syria*.

Mount Hermon.

MOUNT HERMON.

In our passage out of *Cœle-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross Mount *Hermon*; a ledge of Hills, which beginning at the East point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places and by several Nations called by divers names. By *Ptolemy* called *Alsadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; and by that name remembred in the Book of *Psalms*. But *Alsadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Cœle-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Traconitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moses* and the Scriptures *Hermon*; part of the kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Basan*, as is said, *Josuah*, *ch.* 12. *v.* 6. *Syrion* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut. ch.* 3. *v.* 9. Running farther after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonita*, after the name of the Region along which they passe, and are conceived to be the highest part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And so we are to understand the words of the Prophet *Jeremie*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to say, that as the head is the highest part of a man; so these hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the branches, or spurres of *Libanus*. Called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of stones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witness of the *Covenant* wch was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. *v.* 27. the word signifying in the Original, *an heap of Witnesses*. And *Laban* said, *this heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this day; therefore was the name of it called* Galeed, *ver.* 28. By these hills, and the main body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the West; the land of *Palestine* it so shut up on every side, that no Fortress can be stronger by wit or Art, than that Country by Nature: the passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Clauditur undiq; montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concursu Torrentium, inde altis & implexis anfractibus sic contractis, ut per angustos colles vix pateat transitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, that that part of these hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut.* 4. *v.* 48. where it is said that the *Israelites possessed the Land from* Aroer *on the bank of the River* Arnon, *even to Mount* Sihon, which is *Hermon*. As also that one of the highest tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*; by some mistaken for *Amanus*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Lesser *Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Traconitis*, as a part of that Country.

OF

OF PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounden on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from *Cœle-Syria*, and *Arabia-Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and some part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus* which divides it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phoenicia*; and on the South, with some part of *Arabia Petræa*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistims*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Herodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adæquate name of the whole Country, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much hereof, as was in the possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort, are 1. *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the floud. 2ly, The *Land of Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham*, and his seed, for an habitation; 3ly, *Israel*, from the *Israelites*, or sons of *Jacob*, whose firname was *Israel*; 4ly, *Judæa*, and by us *Jewrie*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most prevalent of the Tribes of *Israel*; And 5ly, *Terra Sancta*, or the *Holy Land*, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithanding we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synechdoche*, express the whole Country of *Palestine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of the whole: except only in the times of *David*, and of some of the *Maccabean* Princes, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable people of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will first look upon the Country People under that capacity. And for so much hereof as was held by them, it is situate between the third and fourth Climats; the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length, but 200 miles, and not above 80 in the breadth; yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the coming in of the *Israelites*, it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, so extremely populous, that *David* numbred a Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi*, and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulness hereof more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a midle stature, but strong of body: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked generation, never well pleased either with God or man, with their Priests or Princes; seldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves. So crippled in their goings betwixt superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly. Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as superstitious and severe, in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No *Medium* on either side, but extreme in both. Divided antiently into these four ranks, that is to say, 1. *Jews*, 2. *Hellenists*, 3. *Profelytes*, and 4. *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the son of *Sela*, grand-son of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*; were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Country; adhering to the Law of *Moses*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the book of *Genesis* to the book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loins of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Israel*, for his greater honour. But after the ten Tribes were carryed away by *Salmanassar* to an endless captivity; and the two tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Israelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: called by that name (we may *English* it, the *Græcizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* or *Septuagints* translation; and performed all publike offices in that language also. In other things, as *superstitious* in their Sabbaths, as tenacious of their *Circumcision*, and others of the rites and ceremonies of the law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine*: and for that reason, scorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongst whom they lived; *Credat Judæus apella*, saith one of their Poets, relaring to their circumcising; *Recutiaq; Sabbata palles*, saith another of them, with scorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cœteris mortalibus contrarii*, saith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or Acts of worship.

3. The

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Jews* by birth, or descent of parentage, conformed themselves unto their customs, and desired to be admitted into their Religion. And these were also of two sorts, the one called *Proselyti Portæ*; and the other *Proselyti fœderis*. The first of these, admitted by the *Jews* to the worship of God, and instructed in the hopes of the life to come; were only tied to those precepts which the *Hebrew* Doctors call the *Precepts of the sons of Noah*: but were neither circumcised, nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the sons of *Noah*, so called, because supposed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were seven in number: that is to say, 1. That they dealt uprightly with every man, 2. That they blessed and magnified the name of God, 3. That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry, 4. To refrain from all unlawfull lusts and copulations, 5. To keep themselves from theft and robbery, 6. And from shedding bloud, And 7. not to eat the flesh or member of any beast, taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. These, though they were admitted to the worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet because of their Uncirumcision they were not suffered to converse with the *Jews*, nor to come into the same Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the worship of God, which was called *Atriam Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermost of all. The other *Proselytes*, which were called *Proselyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Jews*, privileged as they were, to worship in the *Inner Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their race or parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Proselytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of Σεβόμενοι, or the *worshipping Gentiles*, of which see *Acts* 16. *v.* 14. & *ch.* 17. *v.* 4. 17. & *ch.* 18. *v.* 4. &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Country, which the *Proselytes* did not; yet were not so much *Jews*, as they. But of these more anon when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves they are divided also into several *Sects*; as *viz.* 1. *Esseni*, 2. the *Sadduces*, 3. the *Scribes*, 4. the *Pharisees*, 5. the *Herodians*, and 6. the *Gaulonites*, or *Gallileans*. The *Essenes* or *Esseni*, derive their name, as some conceive, from *Asca*, which signifieth *facere*, to doe, because they laboured with their hands; as others say, from *Asa*, which signifieth θεραπεύειν, or to *cure diseases*, because they were much given to the study and practise of *Physick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan*, the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before *Christs* nativity; then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. lib.* 13. *cap.* 9. A *Pythagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did, 1. Community of goods, 2. Abstaining even from lawfull pleasures, 3. Forbidding of Oaths, 4. Forbearing Wine, & drinking Water, 5. Ascribing the conduct of affairs to *fate* or *destiny*, 6. And Using only inanimate or unbloudy Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principal: *forbidding mariage* not being common to the *Sect*, but onely to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the New *Testament*, the *Sect* in those times being small and inconsiderable; yet it is thought that Saint *Paul* alludeth to their *Tenets*: as where he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of *Wine*, and glanceth upon those who prohibited *mariage*, 1 *Tim.* 4. 3. or condemned others in the use of *meat and drink*, 2 *Colloss.* 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monasteries*, or *Colleges*, and in every one had their συμνεῖον, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their fellowships or society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury; and not then neither under a three years *Probationership*. More of them he that listeth to see, may satisfie himself in that tract of *Philo*, intituled *De vita contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their *Institutes* and course of life: mistakingly applyed by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, and is thought to be the first founder of them; or from *Sadock* an *Hebrew* word, signifying *Justice*; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justiciaries*, as if they would justifie themselves before Gods Tribunal. The occasion of the Sect or heresie (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, Who teaching that we ought not to serve God, as Servants do their Masters, for the hope of reward; occasioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his *Auditors*, to conceive that there was no reward nor recompence for a godly life; and consequently no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act.* 23. 6. 8. *Matt.* 22. 3. *Luke* 20, 20. 27. &c. But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the holy Scripture: ascribing nothing unto Fate, or Predestination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will; 2. Teaching the soul to be annihilated, at the hour of death; 3. Rejecting all Traditions; and 4. Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, but joyning with them both in opposing Christ: and though like *Sampsons* foxes they looked divers wayes, and were tied together by their tails onely; yet in those tails they carried fire-brands to destroy Gods harvest, and had done it, if they had been able.

3. But indeed the Pharisees were the men, who were the Master-wits in the Arts of mischief, *Homines robustioris impietatis*, in the Fathers words. Fellows of such a perfect and concocted malice, that they were almost able to possess the devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separists* we may rightly call them. For they were first ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸν νόμον, separated to the study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel*: And 2ly, ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸ ἁγιωσύνη, separated from the rest of mankind, by a more strict profession of sanctity; as the *Pharisee* boasted of himself that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might so seem

unto

unto ſimple men, they did thirdly ſeparate themſelves from the ſociety and converſation of others not ſo pure as themſelves, whom they called *populum terræ*, or the Sons of the earth, upbraiding Chriſt that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more than ſo, uſed a particular kind of habit, and had a garbe unto themſelves which no others had; uſing it for a by-word amongſt themſelves, that *Veſtes* populi terræ, *ſunt conculcatio Phariſæorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and ſevere than others; ſo did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader ſize than others did: which, by the way, were *ſcrols* of *Parchment* bound about their heads and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandements of God; fooliſhly ſo interpreting the words of *Deut. And they ſhall be as frontlets between thine eyes*, *chap.* &c. *6. v.* 8. They began at the ſame time with the *Sadduces*; which was about 300 years before Chriſts nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, beſides thoſe ſpecified above, which were alſo *practicable*, they mentioned 1. a *Pythagorean Metempſuchoſis*, affirming that the ſoul of a righteous man paſſed from one into another, at the time of his death: from whence the divers opinions touching Chriſt our Saviour, *Mat. 16. v.* 14. are ſuppoſed to ſpring; as if his body had been animated with the ſoul of *Elias*, *John* the *Baptiſt*, *Jeremy*, or ſome other Prophet. 2. They adhered ſo tenaciouſly to unwritten traditions, that in compariſon of them, they neglected the written Law, as either inſufficient or impertinent: And 3. aſcribed ſo much ſanctity unto frequent waſhings, eſpecially when they came from Market, *Mark 7. v.* 4. (where poſſibly they might meet with ſome unclean perſons) and before their ſitting down to meat, *Mat.* 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and waſh, the *Phariſee* would rather chooſe to waſh than drink, though he died for thirſt. More of them he that liſt to ſee, may find it copiouſly ſet down in the four and twentieth chapter of Saint *Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretenſions to ſo great a *ſanctity*, and ſome other arts they had to abuſe the people; they grew ſo ſtrong, and had ſuch ſtore of followers, and dependants on them, that they became formidable in ſhort time, to their Kings and Princes. Inſomuch that *Alexandra* durſt not enter on the government, in her Childrens nonage, as *Joſephus* relleth us, *Antiqu. lib.* 13. *cap.* 23. untill ſhe had permitted all things unto their diſpoſing; ᾧ μηδὲν δίχα τῆς ἐκείνων γνώμης, *&c.* and promiſed to do nothing without their advice. And this ſhe did be the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whoſe Government, as ſhe found by too ſad experience had in many things proved unſucceſsfull, διὰ τέτες ὑβριζόμενος παρ' αὐτῶν, becauſe ſhe had put ſome ſcorns upon them, and otherwiſe offended that prevailing faction. A faction ſo predominant amongſt the People, ſaith the ſame *Joſephus*, *Antiqu. lib.* 19. *cap.* 18. ὡς ᾧ ΧΡ βασιλέως πλέγοντες, ᾧ καθ' Ἁρχιερέως, *&c.* that whatſoever they pleaſed to ſpread abroad either of the *High Prieſt*, or the King himſelf, how falſe or ſcandalous ſoever; it was received for truth without more diſpute, or any enquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Phariſees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of Religion in the *Jewiſh* Church; but as the names of two oppoſite factions in the Civill State. The firſt were ſuch who depending upon *Herods* fortune, as he did on the pleaſure of the *Roman* Emperors; ſollicited the paying of tribute to the *Romans*: and earneſtly preſſed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more indeared to his Maſters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick-named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatneſs and eſtate of *Herod*, than the proſperity and liberty of their native Country. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome amongſt them ſeeing the magnificence of *Herods* Palace, and experimentally knowing his prowels; might fancy him to be the *Meſſiah*, ſo long looked for: and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Oppoſite unto theſe were thoſe called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-faction*, the other the *faction* of the *Country* or Common-people:) ſo named from one *Judas*, a *Gaulonite* as *Joſephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Galilæan*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Acts* 5. 37. from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Iews* were practiſed with to deny this tribute, telling them that it was a manifeſt token of their ſervitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this grouud into open arms, in which action he and his adherents periſhed, and were brought to nothing. Moſt of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had ſome Diſciples in *Hieruſalem* and *Samaria* alſo: and of theſe *Galilæans* were thoſe poor men, whoſe bloud *Pilate* is ſaid *to mingle with their Sacrifices*, *Luke* 13. 1.

The language of this people by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the ſame which *Abraham* found in the land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither: as hath been ſhewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Uſed by them conſtantly till their ſubjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Country, and conforming themſelvs to the ſpeech and dialect of it; they came at laſt to ſpeak a kind of broken language, neither true *Chaldean*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it, but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugations; being the ſame with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after ſeventy years, had ſo far loſt the knowlege of their Mother-tongue; that they were not able to underſtand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing: inſomuch that he was forced to employ ſome learned in that tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* ſo often mentioned in the New Teſtament, muſt refer their original: there being no ſuch Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the feaſt of Tabernacles. For this cauſe they were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra* 7. 6. *Doctors of the Law*, *Luke* 5. 17. and ſimply by the name of *Lawyers*, *Luke* 7. 30. as men whoſe office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the people. Theſe we may beſt reſemble to the Canoniſts in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity Reader in ſome School or College: and grew to ſo great eſtimation in the *Jewiſh* State, that it was hard to ſay at laſt whether the *Phariſees* or they were the better men. For what the *Phariſees* gained on the common people by pretence of ſanctity, theſe got more juſtifiably by their zeal to the written word; which they endeavoured to preſerve from the common

dangers

dangers both of corruption, and contempt. And though I look on those men especially, as the name of a function, not a Sect: yet being they held so close to the *Pharisees*, and concurred with them in most of their superstitions, as appeareth, *Mat.* 23. I consider them as a strong and potent faction, of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of *Religion*, the people of this land were privileged above all others, had they had the grace to make good use of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Gospel preached amongst them by God the Son, and that Gospel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous operations of the Holy Ghost. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a subordination of Priests and Levites to their several heads; the Priests divided by King *David* into 24 ranks or *Classes*, each *Classis* serving in their turns at the holy Temple: the Chiefs or Heads of which several *Classes* made but that body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or chief Priests, so often mentioned in the writings of the holy Evangelists. Over all which there was one supreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotem*, or the High-Priest, descended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of avarice and reason of State made the Office saleable. And because possibly the High-Priest might be under some *pollution*, and so uncapable by Law to perform his Office; he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to discharge it for him. Of which sort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or second Priest to *Semiah*, mentioned *Ier.* 52. 24. And of this sort is *Annas* thought by some to have been to *Caiaphas*; and for that cause the title of High Priest to be given to both, *Luke* 3. 2, though others think that *Annas* was High-Priest in right, and the other in fact; the one being deposed by the *Romans*, and the other super-induced into the place. In time of *Christianity* they were governed as in other Churches, by a subordination of Priests to Bishops, the first Bishop said to be Saint *James*, the son of *Alphæus*, commonly called the *Lords Brother*: affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apostles, in his Epistle *ad Trallianos*; by *Egesippus*, who lived in the Apostles times, as Saint *Hierom* and *Eusebius* cite him; as also by *Clemens* of *Alexandria* cited by *Eusebius*, hist. lib. 7. cap. 14. by *Cyrill* of *Hierusalem*, *Catechism* 4. and 14. *Epiphanius*, *Hæres.* 78. n. 7. Saint *Ambrose* in *Gal.* 1. Saint *Chrysost.* on the last of Saint *Johns* Gospel; Saint *Hierom* in his Catalogue of *Ecclesiastical* writers; Saint *Augustine cont. Crescon.* lib. 2. cap. 37. To whom there may be added the joint consent of 289. Prelates, assembled in the sixth General-Council holden at *Constantinople*, affirming *Iames* the *Lords Brother* to be the first Bishop of *Hierusalem*: all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word Bishop in that sense, in which it generally passed for the times they lived in. His successors subject at the first to the Bishop of *Cæsarea*, as their *Metropolitan*; though privileged in their own Diocese, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Bishop of *Hierusalem* should have as well the jurisdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*; the three *Palestines* (for *Constantine* had before divided it into so many Provinces) being suducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So stood it in elder times; but now by the incroachment of *Mahometanism* the Christian faith is so obscured, and the beauties of it so ecclipsed, that were it not for some Sects of Christians dwelling in Mount *Sinai*, and about *Hierusalem*, it might be said without any manifest untruth, to be quite extinguished.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be described more fully, and significantly, than *Moses* hath done it to our hands, in the 8. of *Deut.* Where it is said to be *a land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountaines and depths, that spring out of the Vallies and Hills; a land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Figtrees, and Pomegranates; of Oyl-olive, and Honey; a Land, wherein was bread, without scarceness; a Land whose stones were as Iron, and out of whose Hills one may dig brass.* An ample commendation; and yet in some sort short of the fertility of this flourishing Country; which did not only consist in the choice & plenty, but the perpetuity of its fruits: it being on record in the Epistles of the Emperour *Julian* (surnamed the *Apostate*) that the Fig-trees, and other fruit-trees herein, were seldom or never without fruits; the old not fully falling off, till the new come on. Which his report, if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour so well as to flatter the Country for his sake) we have then an answer to the difficulty, which hath so much perplexed all Commentators of former times; and that is, why our Saviour should curse the Figtree for not bearing fruit, when the Text saith, that *the time of fruits was not yet come*, *Mar.* 14. 13. For though the time for new fruits was not come as yet (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find some of the old, and failing of his expectation lay that curse upon it. Nor is this solution of the doubt discountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and condition of the Country, as it stands at present; naturally adorned with beautifull mountains, and luxurious valleys, the rocks affording excellent waters, and the Air never pinched with colds, nor scorched with heats. And though either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or some curse laid upon the land, far short of that fertility with which once it flourished; Yet still *Figs*, *Olives*, *Pomegranates*, *Palmtrees*, are here very frequently to be seen; some store of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradice*, which they preserve upon the trees all the year long (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* spoken of before) as well-furnished with *Honey* and *Sugar-canes*; as also with Goats, Swine, Hares, Quailes, and Patriges: but pestred so in many places with Rats and Mice, that if it were not for certain *Birds* which feed upon them, it were not possible for the people to have any Harvest. *Balm* they had antiently, not now. Nor any Nuts, Pears, Plums, or Cherries, but what are brought hither from *Damascus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1. *Chison*, the *Chorsæus* of *Ptolemy*, which riseth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel* in *Phœnicia*. 2. *Cedron*, a *Torrent* rather than a River, passing betwixt *Hierusalem* and the Mount of *Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable actions, than many others of a greater both name and course. For over this Brook did *David* pass when he fled from *Absalom*; and over this our Saviour the Son of

David

David passed, when he went to his passion. On the Banks hereof did *Asa* the King of *Judah*, burn his mothers *Idols*, 1 *Kings* 15. as *Josiah* did the Vessels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *Kings* 23. 3. *Zared*, and 4. *Napthea*, which arising out of the hills of the Tribe of *Iudah*, have their fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Arnon*, which hath his spring in the hils so called, and endeth his course in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6. *Iaboc*, oft mentioned in the Scriptures; which issuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*, and 7. *Hermon*, which springing from the Hils so named, lose themselves in *Iordan*. 8. *Iordan*, so called from *Ior* and *Dan*, two neighbouring fountains, out of which he seems to take his source: though they do also fetch their spring from *Phiala*, a round deep well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about twenty four miles from these Fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole* under ground. A River of more fame, than length, breadth, or depth, running from North to South, almost in a strait line to the *Dead Sea*, where he endeth his course; not navigably deep, nor above ten yards in breadth, where broadest; shadowed on both sides with *Poplars*, *Tamariks-trees*, and reeds of many several sorts, of some of which the *Arabians* make darts and *Iavelines*, of others *Arrows*, and some again they fashion into pens to write with. Passing along it maketh two *Lakes*, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the antients called *Samachonitis*, dry for the most part in the Summer, and then covered with shrubs and sedge; not mentioned in the Holy Scriptures: the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about an hundred furlongs in length, and about fourty in breadth; called the *Sea* of *Galilee* from the Country, the *Lake of Tiberias* from a City of that name on the banks thereof, and for the like cause called also the *Lake of Genezareth*. And here it is to be observed, that the River passeth thorow this Lake with so swift a course, that it preserves it self distinct from the waters of it both in tast and colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long space in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their falls. Finally, having run thorow the plains of *Hierichо*, it finisheth its course at last in the *Mare mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the name of a *Sea*, because salt, and large, seventy miles long, and sixteen broad; furnishing with salt the whole Land of *Iewry*: but called the *Dead Sea*, either because it had no visible efflux into the *Ocean*, nor is at all increased with the waters of this River and many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or because no living Creature is nourished in it, suffocated with the *bituminous* savour which it sendeth forth, from the aboundance of which matter it is also called *Lacus Alphaltites*. Nigh hereunto stood the once-famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, with three others more, whence the valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitfull in shew only, but not in substance; the fruits here growing, being very fair unto the eye, *sed levi tactu pressa in vagum fatiscunt pulverem*, but if touched, to moulder in ashes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, besides *Anti-Libanus*, and Mount *Hermon*, spoken of already, which be only borderers, are, 1. Mount *Sion*. memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the *Holy Hill of Sion*, 2. Mount *Moriah*, famous for the intended sacrifice of *Isaac*, and the Temple of *Salomon*. 3. Mount *Chalvarie*, on which *CHRIST* suffered, supposed to be the burial place of our Father *Adam*. 4. Mount *Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5. Mount *Olivet*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6. Mount *Garizim*, whereon stood the *Samaritans* Temple, their ordinary place of worship, mentioned *Iohn* 4. 20. 8. The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed Vallies, from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a white clif, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sayler. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragrant smels of Rosemary, Sweet Marjoram, Hyssop, Baies, and other odoriferous plants which do grow there naturally: but for all that, destitute of any other Inhabitants than Leopards, Boars, Jaccalls, and such savage Creatures. 9. The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Iordan*; as 10. those of *Basan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Psalmes*; and 11. those of *Abarim*, on the East side of it: from one of the Summits of which last called *Nebo*, by some writers *Pisgah*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the *Land of Promise*.

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the People, or the will of those who have been formerly masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistims*, *Perezites*, *Hutites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sonnes of *Canaan*, on this side *Iordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the sonnes of *Iacob*, it was divided into the twelve Tribes, of 1. *Iudah*, 2. *Benjamin*, 3. *Simeon*, 4. *Dan*, 5. *Aser*, 6. *Nepthhali*, 7. *Zabulon*, 8. *Issachar*, 9. *Gad*, 10. *Reuben*, 11. *Ephraim*, and 12. *Manasseth*. When that great breach was made by *Ieroboam*, in the Kingdome of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdomes of *Judah* and *Israel*; of which the first contained only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other ten. When the *Israelites* were led Captive into *Assyria*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-comers, from *Samaria*, their Capitall Citie, had the name of *Samaritans*: and when the men of *Judah* were released of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the name of *Jews*. After which time, the whole Country of *Palestine* antiently possessed or subdued by the seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1. *Peraea*, 2. *Iturea*, 3. *Galilee*, 4. *Samaria*, 5. *Iudaea*, and 6. *Idumaea*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joined into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at lest subordinate. But *Constantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himself, and cast it into three Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Palestina Prima*, 2. *Palestina Secunda*, and 3. *Palestina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the first being *Cæsarea Palestina*; of the second, *Samaria*; of the third, *Hierusalem*. But this division of *Constantines* growing out of use, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning first with those parts hereof which lay on the other side of *Iordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the house of *Israel*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the rest; and comming round to *Idumaea*, which last of all these Provinces was added to the State of *Iewry*. In the *Chorographie* whereof, I must confess my self a Debter to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, whose industry herein hath saved me a great deal of search; though sometimes I make bold to differ from him, and adde to him, as I see occasion.

PE-

Peræa,

PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Paleſtine*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the mountains of *Arnon*, (which divide *Paleſtine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) Eaſt and Weſt; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petræa*, in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Egypt*, who deſcribes it thus. *Peræa* Judeæ *pars eſt ulterior*, Arabiæ & Egypto *proxima*, *aſperis diſperſa montibus*, & *à cæteris* Judæis Jordane *amne diſcreta*. *Peræa* (ſaith he) is the furtheſt part of *Judæa*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Egypt*, interſperſed with rough and craggy mountains, and parted from the reſt of the *Iews* by the River *Iordan*. So called from the *Greek* word περαν, in regard of the ſituation of it on the other ſide of that River; and not improperly might be rendred by *Tranſ-Jordana*. Bleſſed with a rich ſoil, and large fields beſet with divers Trees, eſpecially of Olives, Vines, and Palms. The habitation in times paſt of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*; as alſo of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I ſhall ſpeak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the firſt occupants hereof; upon the knowledge of whoſe affairs, the State and ſtory of the *Iſraelites* hath ſo much dependance.

And firſt the *MADIANITES* inhabited on the South-Eaſt of the *Dead* Sea, at the very entrance of the Country; deſcended from one or more of the five ſons of *Madian*, the Son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25. v. 4. Who leaving the reſt of their brethren to ſeek themſelves new habitations, more towards the Banks of the Red Sea, and the deſarts of *Arabia Petræa*; continued near unto the place of *Abrahams* dwelling: and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in blood and mariages, came in ſhort time to loſe all the knowledge of the true God, and to worſhip Idols, as the reſt of their Neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1. *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was ſlain, by *Ioſuah*, afterwards called *Selah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Iſmaelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hagar*. Beſt known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we ſhall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2. *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead* Sea, the ordinary reſidence of their Princes, abſolute of themſelves at firſt, as in other places; but at the time when *Moſes* and *Ioſuah* led the people into their poſſeſſions, ſubjected unto *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; whoſe Dukes their five Kings or Princes, are ſaid to be, *Joſuah* 13. 21. A people whom the *Iſraelites* had neither Commiſſion or intent to make war upon, if they had not cauſeleſly provoked them, at the requeſt of the *Moabites*, by ſending amongſt them (as *Balaam* the falſe Prophet had adviſed) the moſt beautifull of all their women, not only to intice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worſhip of their Idols alſo. A miſchievous and ſucceſsfull plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God ſending a fierce plague amongſt the *Iſraelites*, which coſt them the lives of 24000 perſons, beſides ſuch as periſhed by the Sword; and giving a command to *Moſes*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had ſo provoked him. On which Commiſſion, *Moſes* culled out 12000 men, and ſent them under *Phineas* againſt the *Midianites*: by whom all their Princes were ſlain, their Cities and goodly Caſtles burnt with fire, their men, women, and male-children put unto the ſword; as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numbers*. Yet notwithſtanding this great ſlaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barac* the Judge of *Iſrael*, did for the ſpace of 4 years ſo afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themſelves in the *Caves and ſtrong holds of the Mountains*, as is ſaid *Judg.* 6. 2. their Enemies having left them neither ſheep, oxen, nor aſſe, or any ſuſtenance at all, v. 4. But *Gideon* being raiſed up by God for their deliverance, encountred with their four Kings, and put them to flight: of which four, *Oreb* and *Zeb* were taken and ſlain by the *Ephraimites* at the paſſage of *Iordan*; *Zebah* and *Salmanah*, taken by *Gideon* himſelf, and executed by his own hand as the ſtory telleth us. In this war there are ſaid to have periſhed of this people and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 perſons, by which ſo weakned that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any action of importance: their name and Country being firſt incorporated into that of the *Edomites*; and after into that of the *Iſmaelites*, and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petræa*.

2. The *MOABITES* poſſeſſed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as to *Eſebon* in the North, on both ſides of the River *Arnon*: having *Iordan* on the Weſt, and the hills of *Abarim* on the Eaſt. Poſſeſſed at the firſt by the *Emmims*, a race of *Giants*, whoſe chief City was *Sheneth Kiriathaim*. But theſe being vanquiſhed and broken by *Cherdorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, of which ſee *Gen.* 14. 5. their forlorn ſeats were taken up by the *Moabites*, deſcended from *Moab* one of the ſons of *Lot*; who lived here in great proſperity, till the time of *Vaheb*. Grand-father unto *Baalac*, the ſon of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab*, on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North bound or border of it. In which eſtate it ſtood in the time of *Moſes*.

Chief Cities of it at that time were 1. *Rabbat*, the Regall ſeat of *Baalac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolemy*. 2. *Diblatham*, deſtroyed with the reſt of *Moab* by *Nebuchadnezzer*, as is ſaid *Ier.* 48. 22. 3. *Gallim*, the principality of *Phalti* the ſon of *Laiſh*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly maried unto *David*, 1 *Sam.* 25. 44. 4. *Muthana*, and 5. *Nathaliel*, thorow which the *Iſraelites* paſsed, after they had left the well called *Beer*. 6. *Bamath*, where *Moſes* was encamped when he ſent to *Sehon* to demand a paſſage thorow his Country, *Numbers* 21. 19, &c. 7. *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and mother of *David*, in the time of his troubles under *Saul*. 8. *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not medled with by *Moſes* in his march this way, the Lord himſelf forbidding him to touch upon it, or diſtreſs it; becauſe it had been given by him for an inheritance

to

to the Children of *Lot*, *Deuter.* 2. 9. Which probibition was only for this place particularly; (though this particularly there mentioned) but for all the lands and territories then in their poſſeſſion. 9. *Kir-haſareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Meſha* the *Moabitiſh* King, who being beſieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom*, without hope of eſcape, ſacrificed his own eldeſt Sonne on the wall hereof; which ſo moved the Kings of *Judah*, and *Edom*, that they forſook the King of *Iſrael* whoſe the quarrel was. So the ſiege was raiſed, 2 *Kings* 3. 17. *Peræa.*

Now as *Moſes* did not at the preſent diſobey Gods Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; ſo neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to it; giving him a free and open paſſage in his march for *Canaan*: out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were ſubdued, they ſhould be put into poſſeſſion of their loſt eſtates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Iſraelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the ſpoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a poſſeſſion to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durſt they not do any thing in the way of Armes, but ſent for *Baalam* the falſe Prophet, to caſt them by his curſes and incantations into ſome diſeaſes, wherby their ſtrength and courage might be taken from them. *Baalac* the Sonne of *Zpppor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon*, and *Amalek*, over-maſtered *Iſrael*, and for the ſpace of 18 years tyrannized amongſt them: when ſlain in his own houſe, and afterwards 10000 of his people, by the hand of *Ehud*. But this indignity was in the times ſucceeding revenged by *Saul* in ſome part, who made war upon them; but more by *David* who ſubdued them, and made them Tributaries. And not ſo only, but ſubjected them to the vileſt offices, as is intimated in that form of Speech, *Moab is my waſh-pot*, *Pſal.* 60. 8. Taking their opportunity they withdrew themſelves from the houſe of *David*, and put themſelves under the command of the Kings of *Iſrael*, to whom they paid for tribute in the time of *Ahab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their fleeces on: but quickly weary of thoſe payments, and revolting from the houſe of *Ahab* alſo, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquiſhed, *Meſha* their King was fain to ſhut himſelf up in *Kir-haſareth*, as was ſaid before. After this joyning with the *Ammonites*, and the *Idumæans* or ſons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoſophat* King of *Judah*; to whom God gave a memorable and ſignal victory, without blow or battel: the *Ammonites* firſt ſetting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almoſt all deſtroyed, 2 *Chron.* 20. 23. From this time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered ſome part of their former dwellings, when that two Tribes and a half on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, were carried away captive by *Tiglath-Pileſer*. Poſſeſſed hereof and of other their habitation, till the reign of *Zedekias* King of *Judah*; when vanquiſhed, with the reſt of theſe Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Aſſyrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the ages following; the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of uſe: the South parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petræa*, as the Eaſt parts were to that of *Arabia Deſerta*; and all the reſt, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, ſwallowed up in the general name of *Paleſtinians*.

3. The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-Eaſt of the River *Arnon*, and poſſeſſed all that tract from *Arnon*, on the head of the River, to the City of *Rabbah*; and on both ſides of the River *Iaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the ſame. The ſeat in elder times of the *Raphaims*, and *Zamzummins*, a Giant-like race of men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquiſhed alſo, as the others, by *Cherdorlaomor*; *Aſhtaroth*, and *Heth*, being then the principal of their habitations. Succeeded to, in their deſolate and forſaken dwellings by the children of *Ammon*, the other Sonne of *Lot*, and the brother of *Moab*; both houſes running the ſame fortune; theſe *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the beſt part of their Countrey on the South-ſide of *Jaboc*, by *Og* King of *Baſan*; as the *Moabites*, at the ſame time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A monument of which ſubjection was the bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbah*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be ſeen, when *Moſes* had ſubdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth *Deut.* 3.

Chief Cities at ſuch time as the *Iſraelites* firſt conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were, 1. *Rabbah*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Baſan*, as is ſaid before; but again quitted as it ſeemeth on the comming of *Moſes*, that he might be the better able to keep the field. Memorable in ſucceeding times for the death of *Uriah*, ſlain here by a deſign of *Davids* when beſieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to terms of yielding, ſent for the king to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place ſo defenſible; environed in a manner with the River *Jaboc*, and therefore called the *City of waters*, 2 *Sam.* 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, King of *Ægypt*, who having made himſelf Maſter of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the ſituation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*. 2. *Dathema*, ſuppoſed to be *Rithma* by the learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb.* 33. 18. (the *Hebrew* letters *D.* and *R.* being much alike) a place of great ſtrength amongſt the *Ammonites*. 3. *Minneth*, in the South border, and 4. *Abel vinearum* in the Eaſt border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the purſuit of that people when ſubdued by *Iephthe*. 4. *Mitſpa*, ſometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, and at that time honoured with the reſidence of *Jephta*; but afterwards recovered by the children of *Ammon*: in whoſe hands it was, when utterly deſtroyed and burnt by *Judas*

Perea. Maccabæus. 1. *Macc.* 5. 35. 6. *Magod*, and 7. *Bosor*, two other strong places of the *Ammonites*, there also mentioned; but said to be in the *Region* of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this side of the Mountains, was at that time called.

As for those *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Israel* as they passed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor provoked by them, to any acts of hostility. Afterwards not well pleased, that they were not restored to the possession of those lands, which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Basan*, (conferred by the decree of *Moses* on the Tribe of *Gad*;) they joyned with the *Midianites* in their expedition. But worsted by the puissance and good fortune of *Gedeon*, they lay still a while, till stirred up by some secret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that sinfull and Idolatrous people, who by worshipping the Gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger. Prosperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified; who having made use of them to chastise his people, delivered up his rod to be burnt by *Jephthe*, vanquished and driven home by him with a very great slaughter. Not so much chrushed by the unsuccessfullness of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they brake out again, and besieged *Jabesh Gilead*; *Nabas*, a cruel tyrant, being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loss of every mans right eye; to the end that using to carry a great Target on their left Armes, wherewith the eye on that side was wholly shadowed, they might by this means be disabled from all future service. But *Saul* came time enough to save them from that shame and loss; for that cause so offensive to *Nabas*, that to despight him, he shewed friendship to *David*, in the time of his trouble. A curtesie which *David* was so mindfull of, that he sent Ambassadours to *Hanan* the Son of *Nabas*, to make acknowledgement of it, and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father: but found so ill requital from him, that instead of thanks and kind acceptance, his messengers were despitefully handled, their beards half shaven, and their garments cut off by the knee. Incensed wherewith he sent *Joab* against them; by whom the Country was laid wast, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken, their Kings Crown, weighing a Talent of Gold, set on *Davids* head, and all the Prisoners executed with great severity, some of them being cast into lime-kils, and the rest torn in peeces with saws and harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the reign of *Jehosophat*, against whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open war; but fell by one anothers swords, as was said before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were subdued and made *Tributaries* by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and so continued in the time of *Joatham* his son; who so increased the *tribute* laid upon them by his father, that it amounted to a hundred *Talents* of Silver, ten thousand measures of Wheat, and as many of Barly. Taught by this lesson how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet neighbours, or obedient subjects, though much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greatest part of their antient dwellings, on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the East of *Jordan*, to the land of *Assyria*, by *Tiglath Phul-Assur*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King was so strict a confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Country; *Ismael*, one of the blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was sent by *Baulis* to slay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Country being shortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Grecians* when they came to Lord it over them, to those of *Gileaditis*, and *Philadelphia*; according to the new name of their principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and hills adjoyning.

4. The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the eldest of *Jacobs* sons by *Leah*; of whom in the first muster which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the second muster, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their dwelling was on the East of that famous River; having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Desart Arabia* on the East, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of most observation here, 1. *Abel-Sittim*, seated in that part of the Country, which was called the *Plains of Moab*; the last incamping place of *Moses*: afterwards by the *Jews* called simply *Sittim*; memorable for the *wood* so often mentioned in the *Scriptures*, of which the *Ark of the Lord* was made. In after times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, mistook by some for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lysanias* was *Tetrarch*: that Town and Territory, as *Josephus* doth affirm expressly, being situate amongst the spurres and branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2. *Bethabora*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moses* made his last and most divine exhortations to the Tribes of *Israel*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3. *Macherus*, the strongest in-land City and Castle in those parts of the world, standing aloft upon a Mountain every way unaccessible: first fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, as a frontire Town against the *Arabians*; and afterwards demolished by *Gabinius*, one of *Pompeys* Lieutenants, in the war against *Aristobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *John Baptist*, where murdered by the command of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, and Lord of this Countrey of *Perea*. 4. *Lasa*, or *Leshah*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirhoe*, by reason of the fair fountains rising from the Hills adjoyning, out of which issue springs both of hot, and cold waters, as also bitter and sweet; all which soon after joyned into one stream, make a wholsom *Bath*, especially for *convulsions* and contraction of sinews. 5. *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*,

1 *Chron.*

1 *Chron.* 19. 7. In the time of the *Greeks* laid with ſome other Towns of this Tract unto *Cœle-Syria*; but in the declining times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jewry* by *Alexander*, he being of the race of the *Maccabees*; and finally with eleven others in thoſe parts, delivered by *Antipater* the father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the ſide of *Hyrcanus* the ſon of *Alexander*, whoſe cauſe *Antipater* moſt favoured. 6. *Boſor*, or *Bozra*, a City of *Refuge*, and one of thoſe that were aſſigned unto the *Levites* on that ſide of the water. 7. *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod* in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Cæſar*; different from that which the *Geographers* call 8. *Libias*, (though by ſome confounded) the ſame with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut.* 1. 1. 9. *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoyning Deſart, from whence *Moſes* ſent his ambaſſage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10. *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the worſhippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curſe the *Iſraelites*. 11 *Hesbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Joſ.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes paſſed dry-foot over *Jordan*, oppoſite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moſes* took a view of the land of *Canaan*: an hill as it ſeemeth, of two tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Jerico*, is called *Paſgah*; that which looketh toward *Moab*, being called *Hnir*. Here is alſo an high hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worſhipped alſo, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*. *Peræa.*

5. The *GADITES*, were ſo called from *Gad* the ſeventh ſonne of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilphah* the hand-maid of *Lea*; of whom were found at the firſt muſter when they came out of *Egypt*, forty five thouſand five hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the ſecond when they entred the land of *Canaan*, forty five thouſand bearing armes. Their ſituation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the South, and the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the Weſt, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on Eaſt; by the which laſt parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of moſt obſervation, 1. *Aroer*, on the banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2. *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the time of *Joſuah*, and of no ſmall accompt in the time of Saint *Hierom*. 3. *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Eſay* propheſied that the waters thereof ſhould be dried up; ſeated upon the *Arnon* alſo. 4. *Nattoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5. *Bethharam*, mentioned by *Joſuah*, chap. 13. v. 27. by *Joſephus* called *Betaramptha*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the wife of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, tranſlated into the *Julian* family; who alſo laid unto it fourteen villages, to make it of the greater power and juriſdiction. 6. *Beth-ezob*, by *Joſephus* called *Vetezabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the ſiege of *Hieruſalem* when deſtroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by famine to eat her own ſon. 7. *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* ſet up there, in his paſſage from *Meſopotamia* to the land of *Canaan*: the People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon* as he followed the chace of *Zeba* and *Zalmanah*, were by him miſerably tortured at his return, under a *tribulum* or *threſhing carre*, wherewith he tore their fleſh, and bruiſed their bodies. 8. *Jahzer*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; firſt taken by *Moſes*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Eſay* 16. 8.) then poſſeſſed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1. *Macc.* 5. 8. 9. *Mahanaim*, ſo called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen.* 32. 2.) as ready to defend him againſt all his enemies, the word in the original importing a *double Army*. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore made by *Abner* the ſeat Royal of *Iſhboſeth*, the ſon of *Saul*, during the war he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the rebellion of his ſon *Abſolom*. 10. *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, ſo faithfull to *David* in that war. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, ſo called from the ſituation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of ſpecial note in the book of God; particularly for the pacification here made, betwixt *Jacob* and *Laban*; for the death of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*, who loſt his life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally for the election of *Jehu* to the Crown of *Iſrael*, Anointed at the ſiege hereof, by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12. *Penuel*, ſo called from the enter-view which the Lord pleaſed to beſtow there on his ſervant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Meſopotamia*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. the word ſignifying the place of the *face* or viſion of God: defaced by *Gedeon* for their churliſh uſage of him, when he craved relief of them againſt the *Midianites*; to whom together with the *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, the whole territory appertaining to theſe two Tribes, did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Baſan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of thoſe Kings to the hands of *Moſes*; by whom aſſigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben* for their habitation. Continuing theirs till the fatal period of the Kingdom of *Iſrael* began to approach; at what time theſe two Tribes with the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* lying on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Philaſer*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their antient dwellings. Of which poſſeſſed till their ſubverſion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Peræa*, for the reaſon formerly delivered. And being won peecemeal by the *Maccabeans*, came with the reſt of the kingdom of *Judah*, to the poſſeſſion of *Herod* the *Great*; by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipas* one of his ſons, who held it, together with both *Galilees*, under the name of *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, as *Joſephus*; or of *Galilee* only, as Saint *Luke*; who being dead, it was beſtowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

Ituræa.

ITURÆA.

ITURÆA hath on the East and North, *Cœle-Syria*; on the West, the River *Jordan*; and on the South, *Peræa*. So called from *Ietur* one of the Sonnes of *Ismael*, seated in this tract; though lost by his posterity to the *Amorites*, one of the most powerfull Tribes amongst the *Canaanites*; and by them made the patrimony of the Kings of *Basan*. The race of which Kings ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasses*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being seized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it self, called the Kingdom of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first Inhabitans, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Gessur*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasses*, shifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Grecians*; the name of *Ituræa* revived again and grew into very good esteem: the *Ituræans* being reputed for good Soldiers, especially at the Bow and Arrows; of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks lib.* 2.

——— Ituræas *taxi torquentur in arcus.*

Of the best Eugh that can be had
The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonitis*, and *Ituræa* specially so called: this last again being subdivided in *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*. For whereas it is said it Saint *Lukes* Gospel, that *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Josephus*, that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*: it must needs be that the four last mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by Saint *Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Ituræa*; distinct from that of *Trachonitis*, though a part thereof. Inhabited in the time of *Josephus*, as in those of *Josuah* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous, and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was assigned them in the time of *Moses*: the whole not yeelding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground, but far inferior to it for wealth and fruitfullness; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desart and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild fruits. Such was it in the time of *Josephus*, and not bettered since.

1. *TRACHONITIS* is that mountainous and hilly Countrey, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Gilead*; extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the Hills in those parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syrion*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Grecians*, for the craggedness and roughness of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people mischievously bent and much given to witch-craft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanam regionem incolunt* Ituræi & Arabes, *malefici omnes*. So he, or his Translator rather, for I have not the original by me. Where by *Arabians*, he meaneth those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Ituræa*, though differing from it as the *Cots-wold* Countreys doe from the rest of *Glouceſterſhire*, or as a part doth from the whole, because united by that name into one estate, at the time he lived in. *Solet* & Trachonitis Iturææ *nomine appellari*, saith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general consent of the antient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoil and robberie, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Country, to the end that by strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Josephus* are thus described. "The *Trachonites* (saith he) have neither towns nor lands, nor heritage, or any other possessions, but only certain retreats and caves under "the ground, where they lived like beasts: and having made abundant provision of water and "victuals, were able to hold out a long time against any assailant. For the doors of their "Caves were made so narrow, that they could be entered but by one at once; and the way "to them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not possibly to be found out but by "the help of a Guide: The whole Countrey naturally consisting of craggy Rocks. The passages "of the Caves once entred, they were found to be very large and spacious; sufficient to contain "great multitudes of those Theevish people, who when they had not opportunity to spoil their "neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedness; being so accustomed to theft, that they could not live otherwise. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some body of theeves or out-laws, which possessed themselves of the streits of the Mountains; and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herods* death, and cōmitting new out-rages; they no sooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themselves unto a strong Castle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of 1000 persons. So that there is no question to be made at all, but they had

had Villages, and Towns, and Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongst those Mountainers which *Josephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1. *Gerra*, 2. *Elere*, 3. *Nelaxa*, 4. *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolemy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees, or upwards: more towards the East than well agreeth with the position of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Iturea*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of 5. *Tishbe*, the Countrey of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*, 6. *Tob*, where *Jephta* lived in exile, when oppressed by his Brethren, till the necessities of his Countrey called him to the publike government: 7. *Hippus*, at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Cœle-Syria*, differing in soil as well as Etymologie from another of the same name in *Batanea*: this being so named from the Mountain *Hippus* under which it standeth; that, from a Garrison of Horse there placed, as shall there be shewn. 8. *Bathira*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colonie of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to suppress the insolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this theevish people, accustomed (as before is said) unto spoil and rapine. *Iturea.*

2. *BATANEA* is that part of *Iturea* which antiently made up the best and greatest part of the kingdom of *Basan*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S.* to *T.* as *Assyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being usuall among the *Greeks*. But that kingdom being brought to an end by *Moses*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manasses*, so called of *Manasses* the sonne of *Joseph*; of whom there were found at the first muster near Mount Sinai, 32200 men able to bear armes; which though consumed in the Desarts, yet were they of such a swift increase, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that side of the River, stretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Gessur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto *Jordan*, East and West, was exceeding fertile: repleniſhed with all sorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodliest woods in that part of the world; the Oaks of *Basan* being celebrated in the Holy Scriptures.

It had in it sixty fenced Cities when first conquered by those of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1. *Pella*, formerly called *Butis*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus*, the Great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his greatnesse and whole estate. Destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, because not willing to admit of the Law of *Moses*; it was afterwards restored by *Pompey* to its former lustre. Memorable in Church-story for the Admonition or premonishment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Christians dwelling at *Hierusalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that so they might escape that destruction, which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2. *Edrey*, the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Basan*. 3. *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabæus*, who set fire on the Temple of the Idols there; and burnt therein all such as fled thither for sanctuary. 4. *Ephron*, a strong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the same *Judas Maccabæus*, for refusing to give a passage to his Army. 5. *Jabesh Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that *Adjunct*; memorable in the Scriptures, for the siege of *Nabas*, king of the *Ammonites*, the raising of that siege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the people towards him again, in taking down, imbalming and intombing the bodies of him and his Sonnes, which the *Philistines* had most despitefully hanged on the walls of *Bethsan*. 6. *Astaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times; the seat of the *Rephaims*, a Giant-like race of men, of whom descended *Og* of *Basan*; from whence the Country adjoyning had the name of the *Land of Giants*. *Astaroth* the Godess of the *Sidonians* had here her worshippers. 7. *Gaulon*, sometimes possessed by *Og* of *Basan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of such esteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Basanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, so often mentioned by *Josephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, spoken of in the fift of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8. *Gamala*, in the Lower *Gaulonitis*, so called because the Hill upon which it stood was fashioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly situate, strengthned both by Art and Nature; and at the last with so great difficulty and hazard of *Vespasians* person, stormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, spared neither Women nor Children; insomuch that all the Inhabitants perished, except some few Women which had hid themselves. 9. *Gadara*, after ten moneths siege, taken and destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five seats of Justice for the whole Country of *Palestine*: the other four being *Hierusalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sephorah*. 10. *Gerasa*, or *Gergesa*, the chief City of the *Gergesites*, the people whereof on the loss of their Swine, intreated our Saviour to depart out of their coasts, as Saint *Matthew* hath it. Saint *Luke*, and Saint *Mark* ascribe it to the people of *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangelists at ods in their Relation; but because they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in Common *pour cause de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phrase it: and so the story might be common to both alike. 11. *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, so called from a Garrison of Horse there placed by *Herod*: not from the Mountain *Hippus*, as some suppose, which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12. *Iulias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Iturea*, in the Southern border of his estate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Perea*; to ingratiate himself with *Julia*, the wife of *Tiberius Cæsar*. 13. *Abel*, by *Josephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for distinctions sake: where *Sheba* that Grand Rebel besieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into some danger, had his

Iturea. head cut off, and thrown over the wall, at the perſwaſion of a wiſe woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was ſaved.

North of *Baſanitis*, or *Batanea*, lyeth the kingdom of GESSUR, by a latter name called *AURANITIS*, from *Hauran*, a chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, chapter 16. 18. A kingdom ſpoken of by *Moſes* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*; *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Joſuah* as the Northern border of the kingdom of *Baſan*, chap. 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria*, becauſe held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A kingdom, though of no great territory, yet of ſome conſideration in the eye of the world: *David* eſteeming the alliance of the kings hereof of ſome uſe unto him; and therefore marying *Maacha* the daughter of *Tolmui*, king of *Geſſur*, by whom he had *Abſalom* and *Tamar*. And to this king it was that *Abſolom* fled on the killing of *Amnon*, abiding here three years, as the ſtory telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at leaſt not very much diſtant from it, was the petit kingdom of *Iſh-tob*, which ſent 12000 men to the aid of the *Ammonites* againſt *David*: and not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobah*, that of *Beth-Rehob*, confederate in the ſame war alſo with the other *Syrians*; mention whereof is made in the ſecond book of *Samuel*, chap. 10. *verſ.* 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to thoſe North-parts of *Iturea*, is of no great certainty, and as little conſequence. For after this their greateſt and laſt exploit we hear no more news of them; ſwallowed up not long after (as it ſeems) by the Kings of *Damaſcus*.

To return therefore into *Geſſur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Paleſtine*, the places of moſt obſervation in it were, 1. *Geſſur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2. *Mahacath*, of *Macuti*, as ſome call it: conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. But of this we have already ſpoken in *Comagena*. 3. *Chauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel* chap. 47. whence theſe Northern parts of *Paleſtine* were called *Auranitis*. 4. *Chatſar-Hevan*, there mentioned by that Prophet alſo. 5. *Uz*, near the borders of *Damaſcus*, the firſt habitation of *Uz* the ſonne of *Aram* and Grandchild of *Sem*, by whoſe name ſo called: ſuppoſed to be the founder of *Damaſcus* alſo, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts ſhould be the Land of *Hus*, enobled by the dwelling and ſtory of *Job*. 6. *Sueta*, mentioned by *Brochardus*, and by ſome conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad*, ſurnamed the *Shuchite*, one of *Iobs* three friends, mentioned in that ſtory: but both of him, and *Iob* himſelf, and the Land of *Hus*, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great ſtrength and uſe, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the ſecond, by digging with incredible labour through the very rock upon which it was ſeated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that ſide of *Jordan* were led Captive into *Aſſyria*, and the kingdom of *Damaſcus* ſubverted by *Tiglah-Phalaſſar*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian*, and *Perſian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* kings of the race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which houſe it was conquered (or at leaſt the greateſt part thereof) by *Alexander* the 2 king of the *Jews*, of the race of the *Maccabes*; but loſt again for the moſt part in the time of *Hircanus* the ſon of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greateſt part of the kingdom of *Chalcis*; poſſeſſed by *Ptolemy* the ſon of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herods* greatneſs: who dying, left it to *Lyſanias* his eldeſt ſon, murdered about ſeven years after by *Marc. Antonie*, on the ſuggeſtions of *Cleopatra*, who preſently ſeized on his eſtates. But *Antonie* and *Cleopatra* having left the Stage, *Lyſanias* a ſon of the murdered Prince entreth next upon it, by the permiſſion of *Auguſtus*. During whoſe time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and territory of *Paneas*, farming his demeſnes, and paying a very great rent for them, not only ſuffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infeſt the Merchants of *Damaſcus*; but received part of the booty with them. *Auguſtus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Country of *Trachonites*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, before created King of *Jewrie*; that by his puiſſance and power he might quell thoſe Robbers, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lyſanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoyning territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herods* good fortune end in this. For preſently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Auguſtus* gave him alſo the diſtrict of *Paneas* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Galilee*) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lyſanias*, made up the *Tetrarchie* of *Philip* his youngeſt Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500 l. of *Engliſh* money. On *Philips* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula*, conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his ſon *Ariſtobulus*; whom he had alſo dignified with the title of King; after whoſe death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next ſucceeded, his eſtates eſcheated to the *Romans*, and have ſince had the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

5. GALILEE.

GALILEE is bounded on the East, with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manasses* on that side of *Jordan*; on the West, with the Sea-coast of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called, as some say, from *Geliloth* a *Phœnician* word, signifying as much as *borders*; because the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*.

The Country not so large as that on the other side of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of it self, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and so well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waste ground to be found in it. Thick set with Cities, Towns, and Villages in the time of *Josephus*, and those so populous and rich, that the smallest Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitans. A number beyond all parallel if reported rightly, and not mistaken in the transcripts. The people from their childhood very stout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which seconded by their vast, and almost incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough peece of employment, when subdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewish* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was something in them of the antient *Israelite*, and that they were not meerly of an *Assyrian*, either stock or spirit; but intermixt with such remainders of the Tribes as had saved themselves, either by flying to the Mountains, or hiding themselves in Caves and Desarts, or otherwise were inconsiderable for strength and numbers; in the great transplantation of them made by *Salmanasser*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their speech or language, which was the same with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwise from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *English* doth from that which is spoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the Damosel had with St. *Peter*, in the High-Priests Hall; in which she plainly understood him, but so, that she pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Transplantation* been so universal, as some think it was, and that both sick and sound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Assyrians* to fill up their places; it must needs be that those New-comers would have planted their own language there; as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britans*, on this side of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this side of *Jordan*, especially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or subjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was antiently into the *Higher* and the *Lower*. The *Higher* so called from its situation more amongst the Mountains, had also the name of *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*. And that either because it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the rest of the *Jews*; or because a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cause soever it was called so first, certain it is, it held this name unto the last; known by it in the time of the Apostles, as appeareth by Saint *Matthews* Gospel, Chap. 4. v. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is situate on the South of the other, memorable for the birth and Education of our blessed Saviour; whom *Julian* the *Apostata* called, for this cause, in scorn, the *Galilean*: as for the same, the Disciples generally had the name of *Galileans* imposed upon them, till that of Christian, (being a name of their own choosing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greatest part of both, known in the New Testament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to say, 1. *Cæsarea Philippi*, 2. *Aser*, 3. *Cedes-Nepthalim*, 4. *Sephet*, 5. *Chorazim*, 6. *Capernaum*, 7. *Bethsaida*, 8. *Jotopata*, 9. *Tiberias*, and 10. *Scythopolis*. By which accompt it stretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, East and West; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a square of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Israel*, the whole *Galilee* was so disposed of, that *Aser*, *Nephthali*, and a part of the tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulun*, and *Issachar* in the Lower: according to which distribution we will now describe them.

1. The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was so called from *NAPHTHALI* the sixt son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the handmaid of *Rachel*; of whom at their first muster were found 53400 fighting men, and at the second 44540 able to bear arms. The land alotted to them lay on the West-side of the River *Jordan*, opposite unto the Northern parts of *Iturea*; where before we left: having on the West, the Tribe of *Aser*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the tribe of *Dan*: the chief of those which were with-holden by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accompted of as belonging to *Cœle-Syria*; where they have been spoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-east part hereof, confronting the most Northern parts of *Iturea*, as before was said; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many others of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old presage; the Eastern fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its originall in this tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Cherdorlaomer* and his Associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen.* 14. *v.* 14. The Town of moment first called *Leshem*, by some Writers, *Laish*: afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those

Galilee. those of *Naphthali*, but taken by some Adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said *Josuah* 19. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, *they went up and fought against* Leshem, *which they took, and called* D A N. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beersheba* in the South: remarkable for one of the *Golden Calves* which was placed here by *Ieroboam*, and for the two spring-heads of *Iordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans*, it was called *Paneas*, from a fountain adjoining of that name: which, with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before is said, was given by *Augustus Cæsar* unto *Herod* the Great; and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Sonne, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Ituræa* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæsar*; partly to preserve the memory of his own name; and partly to distinguish it from another *Cæsarea* situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæsarea Palestinæ*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name *Mat.* 16. 13. when Saint *Peter* made that confession or acknowledgement of his Lord and Master, *That he was* C H R I S T *the Sonne of the living God*. By King *Agryppa*, who succeeded him in his estates, in honor of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæsarea Paneæ* in the time of *Ptolemy*; and simply *Paneas*, as before, in the time of Saint *Hierome*. Of this *Cæsarea* was that woman whom our *Saviour* cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the hem of his garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two *Statuaes* in this place, representing C H R I S T, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the *Apostata*, by whose command it was cast down, and a *Statua* of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long time before, an Episcopall See. Of less note there were, 1. *Haleb*, and 2. *Reccath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3. *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a Sign of our Saviour C H R I S T, as is said *Mat.* 15. 39. 16. 1. the same, or some place near unto it, being by Saint *Mark* (reporting the same part of the Story) called *Dalmanutha*. Chap. 8. 10, 11. But whether this Castle did antiently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the Half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of N A P H T H A L I, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1. *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendez-vous* of 24 *Canaanitish* Kings in the War with *Josuah*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But being afterwards re-built it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israel*; till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Destroyed in that war, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviours time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*: in being still, but known by the name of *Antiopia*. 2. *Capernaum*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Country it was accompted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitans*. Some marks of its former greatness it retained when Saint *Hierome* lived, who confesseth it to be a Town of some good capacity; but so decayed in the time of *Breidenbech* and *Brochardus*, that it consisted but of six poor Fishermens Houses. 3. *Hamath*, so called from *Hamathi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *introitum Hamath*, or the *entrance of Hamath*; as *Numbers* 34. 8. *Jos.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 3. &c. Mistaken by Saint *Hierome* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolemy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cæsarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this mistake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jerboam* the second the Son of *Joas*: and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some other of the Cities of this tract) unto *Cœle-Syria*. 4. *Kadesh*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadesh-Naphthalim*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said *Jos.* 20. 7. the King whereof being taken and slain by *Josuah*, it was made one of the Cities of *Refuge*, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the birth of *Barac*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the Host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Jewish* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity. 5. *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Daphnis*, a little Riveret, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who caused his Children to be slain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it, the scæne of this sad Tragedy being by *Josephus* laid in *Riblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was governour of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Country. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town

was

was taken. 6. *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, strongly if not impregnably seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western *Christians*, as it was after their expulsion, of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence wasted and subdued all the neighbouring Country, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Country only, but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shew or shadow of a Comuon-wealth. 7. *Bethsomes*, mentioned *Ios.* 15. 38. made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwise possessed by the *Cananites* who held out against them. 8. *Carthan*, or *Kiriathaim* situate near the Mountain which in following times was called *Moas Christi*, because much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choise of his Apostles, as is said *Mark* 3. 13. and where he also made that Divine Sermon, recited in the 5, 6, & 7 Chapters of Saint *Matthews* Gospel. 9. *Masoloth*, a place of great strength, but forced by *Baccludes* General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10. *Cinnereth*, a strong City, after called *Gennesareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is sometimes called the Lake of *Gennesareth*, as *Luke*. 5. 1. &c.

2. The Tribe of *ASER*, was so called from *Aser*, the 8th. son of *Iacob*, begotten on *Zilphah* the hand-maid of *Leah*: of whom at their first muster when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41500 persons, able to bear Arms, all above 20 years of age; and at the second muster when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentifull in wine, oyl, and wheat, with great store of *Balsam*; extending from the Coast of *Sidon*, to *Ptolemais*, 30 miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward, to the Tribe of *Naphthali*, some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command: yet had they in this narrow compass many beautifull Cities, and Towns of note; which they were quietly possessed of, till their subjugation by the Kings of *Assyria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1. *Aphek*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when besieged by *Benhadad*: of whom 100000 were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of the Wall. 2. *Gabala* mentioned by *Ptolemy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe; one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards re-built and strongly fortified by *Herod* the *Great*. 3. *Giscala*, a Town of great strength and consequence; the birth-place of *Iohn* or *Iehochanan*, one of the three seditious in *Hierusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischef than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being re-built by the Authority of *Iosephus*, then Governor of *Galilee* for the *Iews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon composition. 4. *Cana*, for distinction sake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that woman, whose Daughter, *Christ* delivered of an evil Spirit: called by Saint *Matthew* a woman of *Canaan*, Chapter 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by Saint *Mark*, Chap. 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5. *Hethlan*, or *Cethlan*, the furthest City of the North; as 6. *Messal*, or *Masheal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aser*. Of later date there are 7. *Thoron*, a strong piece built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitfull Soil, of great importance in the wars of the *Holy Land*, and giving name to the noble family of the Lords of *Thoron*: one of which being Constable to King *Baldwin* the third, lyeth buried in the Chapel adjoining to it; a curious piece of work-manship, and Dedicated by the name of the blessed Virgin. 8. *Belfort*, so named from the strength and beauty of it, seated on the high grounds near the River *Naar*: and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladine* the Victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raise his siege with dishononor and loss, on the comming of the *Christian* Armies. Some other Forts here are of the same erection, as 9. *Montfort*, and 10. *Mount-Royall* (or *Castrum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the Infidels.

3. The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the tenth Son of *Jacob* by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there mustered near Mount *Sinai*, 57400 able men; and 65000 at their second muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Teritory lay on the South of *Aser* and *Nephthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*; extending from the *Lake* of *Tiberias*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Jokneham*, the King whereof was slain by *Josuah*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2. *Zabulon*, or the *City of men*, a stately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Cestius*, a *Roman* President. 3. *Cana-Minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aser*, the birth-place of *Nathaneel*, and as some say of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the mariage, at which our *Saviour* wrought his *first miracle*, of turning water into wine. Called in St. *Johns* Gospel *Cana of Galilee*. 4. *Bersabe*, standing in the border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josephus* against the *Romans*. 5. *Dothan*, where *Joseph* found his brethren as they fed their flocks; and where the Prophet *Elisha* strook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6. *Bethsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-

place

Galilee. place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but moſt renowned for the *miracles* and *preaching* of our Lord and Saviour. 7. *Nazareth*, now a ſmall village, ſeated in a vale betwixt two hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two hills it was formerly built; where ſtill are to be ſeen the ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Chriſtians*; it being in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity*, an *Arch-biſhops* See. Of great eſteem, for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*; who was here ſaluted with thoſe joyfull tidings by an *Angel*, as ſhe ſate in her chamber. Of which Chamber it is ſaid in the Popiſh legends, that it was after the *Virgins* death had in great reverence by the *Chriſtians*; and remained in this Town, till the *Holy Land* was ſubdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1291. Then moſt miraculouſly tranſported into *Sclavonia*; but that place being unworthy of the *Virgins* Divine preſence, it was by the *Angels* carried over into the Sea-coaſt of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place alſo being infeſted with theeves and pyrats, the *Angels* removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her *miracles* were quickly divulged: inſomuch that *Paul* the 2d. built a moſt ſtately Church over this *Chamber*, and *Xiſtus* the fift made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our bleſſed Saviour ſpend a great part of his life before his *Baptiſm*; from whence both he and his Diſciples had for many years, the name of *Nazarites*. 8. *Iotopata*, ſtrongly ſeated on the top of a Mountain, near the Lake of *Genneſareth*; fortified by *Joſephus* in the war with the *Romans*, but after a long ſiege taken by *Veſpaſian*, and in it *Joſephus* the Hiſtorian, Chief Governor of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9. *Tiberias*, raiſed out of the ground by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, and named thus in honor of *Tiberius Cæſar*. Situate in a fruitfull ſoil, on the edge of the *Lake*, which afterwards took the name of the *Lake* or *Sea* of *Tiberias*: this City being held to be the greateſt of the *Lower Galilee*, and the *Metropolis* of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called Saint *Matthew* from the receipts of the *Cuſtome-houſe*; and near unto it that he raiſed the Daughter of *Jairus*. 10. *Bethulia*, more within the Land, ſeated on an high Hill, and of very great ſtrength, as appears by the ſtory of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11. *Iapha*, a place of like ſtrength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the ſtorm ſlew in it above 15000 perſons, and carried away with him 2000 Priſoners. 12. *Sephoris* or *Sipphora*, the habitation of *Ioachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the bleſſed Virgin; fortified with ſtrong walls by *Herod* the *Tetrach*, who made it his Regal Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinius*, one of the five *Iuridical Reſorts* for the *Paleſtinians*: after that, not without great difficulty forced by *Veſpaſian*; and is nothing now but a Caſtle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Reſidence, for the moſt part, of the *Turkiſh Sanziack* who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not ſtill, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziack* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is Mount *Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a ſumptuous Chapel built on the top of the hill in memory of it, by the Empreſs *Helen*, mother of *Conſtantine* the Great: and for the Fountain of the brook *Chiſon*, which preſently divided into two ſtreams, runneth Eaſtward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Weſtward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4. The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is ſo called from *Iſſachar* the ninth ſon of *Iacob*, by his wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the firſt muſter 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the ſecond muſter. Their lot, in the partition of the land amongſt the *Tribes*, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the Half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on this ſide *Iordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land* Sea. A territory not ſo well repleniſhed with ſtrong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding ſo much matter of obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs.

Thoſe of moſt note in it, 1. *Tarichæa*, on the ſide of the *Lake*, about eight miles from *Tiberias*, of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature; as witneſſed the notable refidence which *Veſpaſian* found when he beſieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible ſlaughter. 2. *Ciſhion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3. *Remeth*, called alſo *Iarmuth*, an other Cty of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Weſtward, and the City of *Iezreel* towards the Eaſt. 4. *En-hadda*, near which *Saul* being diſcomfited by the *Philiſtims*, ſlew himſelf for grief; or elſe for fear of falling into the hands of thoſe mercileſs Enemies, againſt whom he had ſo often returned victorious. 5. *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chiſon*, where *CHRIST* raiſed to life the Widdows Son. 6. *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, on the banks of the ſame River alſo. 7. *Endor*, of chief note for the *Witch* with whom *Saul* conſulted; and the diſcomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who periſhed at *Endor*, and *became as the Dung of the Earth*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. 8. *Dabarath*, one of the *Cities of refuge*. 9. *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the two Theeves, which ſo greatly infeſted *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10. of a later date the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* (*Caſtrum Peregrinorum* in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the ſecurity of ſuch as travelled to the *Holy Land*; and for long time the *Magazine* or *Store-houſe* of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*: now called *Tortora*. Situate on the ſhores of the *Mediterranean* near a ſpacious bay; on the North-ſide whereof Mount *Carmel*, deſcribed already.

As for thoſe *Galileans* which ſucceeded in the place of theſe Tribes, they were for the moſt part originally ſuch as were ſent hither by *Salmanaſſar* to inhabit there, when the *Iſraelites* were led away into endleſs thraldome; but intermixed with ſome Remainders of the ten Tribes, as was ſaid before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the ſame extraction, with the reſt of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much deſpiſed as the *Jews*, (as witneſſeth that ſcornfull by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though theſe as *Orthodox* in *Religion* as the *Jews* themſelves.

In

In which ſo zealouſly affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer ſacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperors; whom they looked on as the enemies of their Law and liberty. Brought under the command of the King of *Iewry* by the *Maccabeans*, and with the reſt of that Kingdome beſtowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod*, ſurnamed *Antipas*, the ſecond of his ſons then living, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he enjoyed till the death of our *Saviour*: and on his deprivation (being baniſhed to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperor *Caligula*) beſtowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers ſon, the firſt King of the *Iews* ſo named. Under him and his ſon *Agrippa* the ſecond, it continued till the general revolt of the *Jewiſh* Nation. Subjected by the ſword of *Titus* to the power of the *Romans*, it hath ſince followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*. *Samaria.*

4. *SAMARIA.*

SAMARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South, with *Judæa*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably compoſed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for tillage, and full of trees, yielding variety of fruits: watered both with the dew of Heaven, and many freſh ſprings which the Earth affordeth it; occaſioning thereby abundance of graſs, and conſequently of Milch-beaſts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no leſs populous, but now famed for neither.

The people for the moſt part, were originally the deſcendents of thoſe *Aſſyrians*, whom *Salmanaſſar* ſent hither to poſſeſs the dwellings of the Captive *Iſraelites*. Gentiles at firſt, till better inſtructed by the *Lions* whom God ſent amongſt them, and after by the Prieſts ſent hither by the Kings of *Aſſyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moſes*, and out of them learned *the manner of the God of the Land*, 2 *Kin.* 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the reſt of the ſacred *Canon*; and no ſtrict obſervers of this neither. And though at firſt they ſo embraced the worſhip of God, as that they ſtill adhered to the Gods of the Nations, where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Aſhimah*, *Nibhan*, *Tartak*, and the reſt of that rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17: yet they were ſoon taken off from thoſe impieties, and became zealous in the worſhip of one only God; erronious chiefly in the place which was deſtined to it. The wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, was as natural to them, as if they could not have poſſeſſed his eſtates without it: and therefore would not ſuffer their people to go up to *Hieruſalem* to worſhip, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predeceſſors, that they erected no *Golden Calves* in *Dan*, and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the people from the *Temple of God*, they would have a *Temple* of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as ſacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. *Schiſmatical* enough in this, but not idolatrous and *Schiſmatical* too, as the others were; yet ſo conceited of themſelves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themſelves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had viſited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return, they uſed to ſprinkle themſelves with urine: but if by negligence, or the neceſſity of buſineſs, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themſelves, cloaths and all, in the next fountain. But in this the *Jews* cryed quittance with them, not ſo much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other ſide, with all the bitterneſs of reproach and hatred. There are two *manner of people* (ſaith the Son of *Sirach*) *which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that ſit on the Mountains of* Samaria, *the* Philiſtims, *and the fooliſh people that dwell at* Sichem. *Eccluſ.* 50. And this continued to the times of our *bleſſed Saviour*; whom when the *Jews* endeavoured to reproach with their heavieſt calumnies, they could find out none ſo great, as to ſay that he was a *Samaritan*, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converſe with *Devils* and familiar ſpirits.

Of theſe there were ſome *Sects* alſo as amongſt the *Jews*, 1. The *Doſitheans*, ſo called from *Doſitheus* or *Doſthai*, ſuppoſed to be the firſt Prieſt who was ſent thither by the King of *Aſſyria*: agreeing with the *Jews* in *Circumciſion*, and the *Sabbath*, and the doctrine of the *Reſurrection* (in which laſt they differed from the common *Samaritan*, who was a *Saducee* in that point) but differing from them in ſome points of as ſignal conſequence. For they rejected the writings of all the *Prophets*, as not θεοπνευστοι, inſpired by the holy *Ghoſt*; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*; abſtained from mariage, like the *Eſſenes*; and in the point of *Sabbath-keeping* out-went the *Phariſees*; it being reſolved upon amongſt them, that in what poſture ſoever a man was found on the *Sabbath-day-morning*, in the ſame he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2. The *Sebvians*, ſo called from *Sebva* or *Sebviah* one of the Companions of that *Doſthai*; who though they kept all the publike *Feſtivals*, as the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the ſame time: transferring the *Paſſeover* to *Auguſt*, the *Pentecoſt* to *Autumn*, and the feaſt of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paſſeover*; not ſuffered for that cauſe to worſhip in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Gortheni*, who kept the ſame *Feſtivals*, and obſerved the ſame times of thoſe Solemnities, as the *Law* required; but kept only one of the *ſeven days* of thoſe great

Samaria. great *Festivals*, and laid by the rest, as dayes of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who though at first possessed of all the land belonging to the *ten Tribes* of *Israel*, were yet reduced at last to a narrower compass: shut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judæa*, within the antient territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manasses*, on this side of the water.

1. The *half Tribe* of *MANASSES* on this side of *Jordan*, was situate betwixt *Issachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South, extending from the *Mediteranean*, to the banks banks of that River. In which the places of most consequence and consideration, 1. *Beth-san*, environed almost with the land of *Issachar*, situate near the banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to streighten and be like it self, having been almost lost in the Sea of *Galilee*: first called *Nysa*, and so called by *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater* the founder of it, in memory of his Nurse there buried; but the children of *Manasses* not being able to expell the natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-san*, or the *house* of an *Enemy*. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded those parts of *Asia*, and compelled some of the *Jews* to serve them against the rest (whom notwithstanding their good service they put all to the sword) they new-built this City: called therfore by the *Grecians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cœle-Cyria*. Memorable in the *old Testament* for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philistims*; in the time of our *Saviour* for being the greatest of all the *Decapolitan* Region; as afterwards in the flourishing times of *Christianity*, for being the See of an Arch-bishop: now nothing but a desolate village, and an heap of rubbish, out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble are often digged. 2. *Terzah*, used by the Kings of *Israel* for their Regal Seat; till the building of *Samaria*, and the Removal of it thither. 3. *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabatena*, was afterwards made one of the ten *Toparchies* of *Judæa*. 4. *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Bastard *Abimilech* was wounded with a Stone which a woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to slay him, that it might not be said he perished by the hands of a Woman. 5. *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there stood an Altar, consecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*; and not far off, the fatal Stone on which *Abimilech* slew 70 of his Brethren. An heathenish cruelty, and at this day practised amongst the *Turks*. 6. *Asophon*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolemy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the *Jews*: which victory he used with so great barbarity, that he slew all the Women as he passed along, and caused young Children to be sod in *Caldrons*. 7. *Bezek*, the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezeck*, whose story (touched upon before) see at large in *Judges* Chap. 1. By *Josephus* it is called *Bala*; and seemeth to be the place in which *Saul* assembled the chief strength of *Israel* and *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jabesh Gilead* then distressed by the *Ammonites*. 8. *Jezreel*, the Royal City of *Ahab*, and the Kings of his race, situate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*; So near unto the borders of *Issachar*, that some have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in sacred story for the stoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Iezabel*; and the breaking of *Iezabels* neck, by command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the plains adjoining, called the valley or *Plains of Jezreel*, (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 12.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*: famous for the great and many battels which have been fought in it, as namely of *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistims*, of *Ahab* against the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* against *Jehoram*, and finally of the *Christians* against the *Saracens*. 9. *Megiddo*, unfortunately observable for the death of the good King *Iosiah*, slain hereabouts in a battel against *Pharoah Neco*, King of *Egypt*; and before that, of *Ahaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoining: when pursued by *Iehu*. 10. *Dora*, or *Dor*, as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Castle of *Pilgrims* in the Tribe of *Issachar*. A very strong and powerfull City, and therefore chose by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having first treacherously taken, and barbarously murdered *Ionathan* the *Maccabean*, after he had received 200 talents for his Ransome; and no less villanously slain *Antiochus* the sixt of *Syria*, his Lord aud Master, whom he succeeded in his Throne: was by *Antiochus* the seaventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horse, besieged in this City, and most deservedly put to death. 11 *Cæsarea*, antiently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large *Theatre* and *Amphitheatre*, both of polished Marble, with a fair and capacious haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honor of *Drusus Cæsar*, Son-in-law of *Augustus*, he caused one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Drusus*; the City it self to be called *Cæsarea Palestina*. The stateliness and magnificence of which City (when first built by *Herod*) he that lists to see, may find the same described at large by *Iosephus* the *Iew*, in the 15th Book of *Antiq.* cap. 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptised by St. *Peter*; Here did St. *Paul* plead in defence of *Christianity*, before *Festus* then the *Roman* President; and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by an Angel, and devoured by worms, after his *Rhetorical* Oration, which his *Parasites* called the *voice of God and not of man*. The Metropolis of all *Palestine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Palestina Prima*, when by *Constantine*, or some of his Successors, cantoned into three: the first Bishop hereof being said to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint *Peter* here initiated in the faith of *CHRIST*. 12. *Antipatris*, another City of *Herods*

rods building, in the place where *Kapharſalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had ſometimes ſtood, who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabæus* overthrow a part of *Nicanors* Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Abdia*, the Steward of *Ahab*, hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preſerved againſt the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally to this City it was that Saint *Paul* was conveyed by the command of *Lyſias*, to ſave him from the *Iews*, who lay in wait to deſtroy him. *Samaria.*

2. The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was ſo called from *Ephraim*, the ſecond and youngeſt Sonne of *Joſeph*; of whom were muſtered in the *Deſarts* 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South; extending from the River *Jordan*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Saron*, on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitfull Valley, which reacheth from *Cæſarea Pateſtinæ*, as far as *Joppa*. 2. *Lydda*, upon the ſame ſhores, where Saint *Peter* (*virtute Chriſti, non ſua*) cured *Æneas* of the *Palſey*. By the *Gentiles* it was called *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the *Chriſtians* in the time of the *holy wars*, it had the name of Saint *Georges*: partly from a Magnificent Temple which the Emperour *Iuſtinian* there erected to the honour of that bleſſed *Martyr*; but principally from an opinion which they had amongſt them, that he ſuffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded on miſtakes, firſt of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument, erected in this City to preſerve his memory, for the grave in which he was interred: the other, in taking the word *Paſſio*, uſed in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his ſuffering, which is meant only of the ſtory or *celebration*. But howſoever they intituled it by the name of Saint *Georges*, as was ſaid before, and made it on that account alſo an *Epiſcopal* See. 3. *Ramatha*, or *Aramathea*, a City of the *Levites*, ſuppoſed to be the dwelling of *Joſeph*, who begged of *Pilate* the body of *CHRIST*. 4. *Helon*, or *Aialon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo; by ſome placed, and perhaps more fitly in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. 5. *Themnath-Chares*, given by the *Iſraelites* to *Ioſuah*, who enlarged the ſame, and made it a ſtrong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the nine *Worthies* of the world; and afterwards made one of the *Prefectures* of *Judæa*, by the name of *Thamnitica*. 6. *Adaſa*, or *Adarſa*, where *Iudas Maccabæus* with 3000 *Iews*, overthrew the Army *Nicanor*. 7. *Ieſleti*, called otherwiſe *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *Davids* guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8. *Silo*, ſituate on the top of a lofty mountain; the receptacle of the *Ark*, till taken and carried thence by the *Philiſtims*. 9. *Michmas*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, ſituate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hieruſalem*, now called *Byra*. 10. *Naioth*, where *Saul* propheſied. 11. *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow, which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyſias*. 12. *Pirhathon*, on the Mountain *Amalec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Iſrael*. 13. *Sichem*, called alſo *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times times, of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who deflowred *Dinah* the daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cauſe deſtroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*: repaired again, and afterward by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Sonne of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damaſcus*: yet notwithſtanding theſe blowes it was of good eſteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacobs* Well which was very near it; more for its neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the bleſſings were to be read to the people (of which ſee *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Joſ.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the uſe of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the coſt and charge of *Sanballat* a great Prince amongſt them. Who having married his Daughter to *Manaſſes*, brother of *Jaddus* the *High Prieſt* of the *Jews*, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the ſentence of excommunication, which he was involved in for that match: promiſed him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple anſwerable unto that of *Hieruſalem*, and make him the *High Prieſt* thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not ſtood above two hundred years, when deſtroyed by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*; the place remaining notwithſtanding a place of worſhip, as appeareth *Ioh.* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem* or *Sichor*, it was by the *Grecians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, who cauſed it to be called *Flavia Cæſarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Iuſtin Martyr*. 14. *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the kingdom of *Iſrael*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron*, (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coaſt) whence it had the name. A ſtately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brochardus*, who had traced the antient ruines of it, to be bigger than *Hieruſalem*. Deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians* when they carryed away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sonnes of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod* the Great, who was pleaſed with the ſituation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more ſtately manner than before; as appeareth by the great ſtore of goodly Marble pillars, and other carved ſtones, in great abundance found amongſt the rubbiſh: and having re-built it to his mind, incloſed it with a ſtrong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*, he cauſed it to be called *Sebaſte*. Memorable after this new erection from the Sepulchre of *John Baptiſt*, and being

Judæa. made the *Metropolis* of *Palestina Secunda*, (by consequence an *Arch-Bishops See*) now nothing but a few cottages filled with *Grecian* Monks.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themselves (so called from this their principal City) less subject to the vicissitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Descended for the most part from the *Assyrians*, and such other Nations, as were sent thither to fill up the empty places of the Captive Tribes: but called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, either because most of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Persia*, as *Josephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzestan*; or else by way of scorn, for *Chusites*, as being of the posterity of the accursed *Cham*, by *Chus* his son. Having imbraced the Law of *Moses*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the observation of the said *Josephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any prosperity, then they called them *Cozins*, and would be of the same Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were strangers which came thither out of forein Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that *Character*. For when *Alexander* the *Great* had granted the *Jews* a release of the seventh years tribute, the *Samaritans* desiring the like exemption, pleaded for themselves Ἑβραῖοι μέν ἐσμεν, *&c.* that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleased the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged against them with fire and sword, the *Samaritans* sent Letters to him, disclaiming all relation to those of *Judah*, and challenging their descent from the *Medes* and *Persians*. Nor were they content only to disclaim all kinred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any persecution rose against them for the Law of God; but did them also all ill Offices, and joyned with their Enemies to their destruction: especially after the *Jews* had refused to admit of their assistance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindred with great malice, and no less perverseness. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at last prevail, the whole Nation being subdued by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*, who destroyed their *Schismatical* Temple also, and levelled *Samaria* it self to the very ground. After this subject to the *Jews*, who possessed themselves of most of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compass than they were in formerly: but still so hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appease that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to seek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman* Empire, by the name of *Palestina Secunda*; successively subject with the rest, to the *Persians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who doe now possess it.

IUDÆA

IUDÆA.

IUDÆA, is bounded on the East, with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterrancan*; on the North, with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumæa*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the Captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Iudæa*, to this part of the Country.

The Soyl of the same nature with that of *Samaria*, before described; but that it is more swelled with Hills, and more stored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we shall say no more, as to the general character and description of it; but look on the particular parts as it stood divided betwixt the *Philistims*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Iudah*, and *Benjamin*.

And first, the *PHILISTIMS* commanded all the Sea-coasts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumæa*; or from the *Castle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Ioppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Israelites*; they held no more than six Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoyning to them: but those so populous and strong, that by their own power, and the assistance of the *Edomites*, and the rest of their neighbours, not well affected to the *Tribes*, they kept them under harder terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we sum up the story and successes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us survey the Country which was holden by them, notwithstanding all that could be done against them by the kings of *Israel*: and therein we shall find worth our observation, 1. *Geth*, or *Gath*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliah*, slain by *David*; as also of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, slain by *Davids* worthies. Destroyed by *David*, or rather slighted and dismantled, it was re-built by *Reboam* the sonne of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Iudah*, who found the *Philistims* there garrisoned but ill neighbours to him, and finally laid wast by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in S. *Hieroms* time; till in these last Ages *Fulk* the King of *Hierusalem* erected there a new Castle, from the antient ruins. From hence as I conceive, the *Idol Dagon*, so much worshipped by these *Philistims*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is said by many. 2. *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably against the *Danites* and *Judæans*. Much spoken of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worship of *Bel-zebub*, that is to say, the *Lord of Flies*: so called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the *Idolatries* committed to him, or because of that great multitude of *flies* which attended his Sacrifices, whereof some say, the Temple of *Hierusalem* was wholly free. But whatsoever he was, or for what cause so named, certain it is that he was here had in especial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the God of *Accaron*: and hither *Ahaziah* the King of *Israel* sent his messenger, to enquire of this *Idol*, concerning his health. 3. *Ashdod*, (by the *Grecians* called *Azotus*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the *Ark* of the Lord was brought; that *Idol* falling down before it, as not able to stand upright when the *Ark* so near. Near to this Town was *Iudas Maccabæus* overcome and slain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*, and not long after the Town it self was taken by *Ionathan* the brother of *Iudas*, who put the Citizens to the sword; and burnt all such as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very *Idol*, consumed in the same fire with the *Idolaters*. Re-built by *Gabinius* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Christianity* it was made an *Episcopal* See; and continued a fair Village till the dayes of St. *Hierom*. 4. *Ascalon*, on the Sea-side also, said to be built by *Ascalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war against the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and strongest Cities of the *Philistims*, of great note amongst the *Gentiles* for a Temple dedicated to *Dirceto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worshipped in the form of a *Mer-maid*: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the father of *Antipater*, and Grandfather of *Herod* the *Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod* the *Ascalonite*) is said to have served as the *Priest*. It had in the first times of *Christianity*, an Episcopal See; and in the course of the *holy wars*, was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the first. 5. *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Besor*; a fair and strong Town, formerly called *Assa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the *Heathens*; or else it was so called by the *Persians*, in regard that *Cambyses* here laid up the Treasure which he had provided for the war of *Ægypt*, the word *Gaza*, in the *Persian* language, signifying treasures. Of which *Cambyses* it is said by *Pomponius Mela*, *cum armis Ægyptum peteret hoc belli opes & pecuniam invehi curavit*. After which it was made the Receipt or Treasury, in which the *Persians* laid the *tributes* of the Western Provinces; whence all riches had in time the name of *Gaza*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it against the *Philistims*, he again deserted it. Destroyed by *Alexander* the *Great*, and re-built again, it made notable resistance against the *Maccabees*; till at last forced by *Simon*, the brother of *Iudas*, who liked the place so well, that he intended to have made it his place of residence: not so decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*; And it is still the best of all this coast, built on an hill encompas-

Judæa.

sed with rich and pleasant vallies; the building low and mean, as in other places; but some of them adorned with Pillars of fair *Parian* marble, digged out of the remaining ruins. 6. *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it self by *Constantine*, by whom called *Constantia*: but restored again by *Julian* unto those of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

These were the chief places holden by the *Philistims*, a strong and Giantlike race of men, such as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the *Sons of Anak*. Originally descended from *Casluhim*, and *Capthorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the son of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common consent of antient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jerem.* 47. 4. and *Amos* 9. 7. These being setled first in the borders of *Egypt* and *Idumæa*, where the *Casluhim* gave name unto the Province of *Casiotis*, and the Mountain *Casius*; proceeded North-wards and subdued the *Avim*, a *Canaanish* people, planting themselves in their habitations, as is said expressely *Deut.* 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Isaac* went down to *Gezar*. Governed at first by one King whom they called alwaies by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Egyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; sometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but still united in the times of approaching dangers. Too strong to be subdued by the Tribes of *Israel*, they made head against them, and mastered them at several times, for above a 150 years, Tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Sampson*, and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquished the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they dicomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarously on the Walls of *Bethsan*. But *David* a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many set battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the strongest Towns they had; and by that means so weakned them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the daies of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their army overthrown, *Ita* and *Amnia*, two of their strong Forts, took and razed; and the Town of *Gath* again dismantled. In the time of the *Idolatrous Achaz*, associating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethsemes*, *Aialon*, *Timnah*, and some other Towns; carried away many Prisoners, and slew much people. But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them the greatest part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Country had from them the name of *Palestine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they lost both their power and reputation, passing in common estimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the times succeeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN*, is so called from *Dan* the fifth son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were mustered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the second muster, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North; *Simeon*, on the South; the Tribe of *Benjamin*, on the East; and the *Mediterranean* on the VVest.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once of a famous Mart-town, and the only Haven to *Judæa* in foregoing times: the Town, where *Jonah* took ship to fly unto *Tarshish*; where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a vision taught the conversion of the *Gentiles*. This City they report to have been built before the *flood*. And here they say reigned *Cepheus*, whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perseus* delivered from a seamonster; some of whose bones the people used to shew to strangers, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our Citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick*, shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunsmear* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, slain by *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*; who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and strength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the Fire fell upon his Sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers, by King *Lewis* of *France*, in the year 1250, the *Holy Wars* then drawing to their final end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Turrets where are certain *Harquebusses* for defence of the Haven; none of the best; defended from the South and VVest winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas, when inraged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchant, who trade here but for Cottons only; and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2. *Rama*, by the *Moores* called *Ramula*, situate in a sandy plain on the rising of a little Hill; built of free-stone, but the streets thereof narrow, and the Houses contemptible. More beautifull in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip* the Good of *Burgundy*, where the House of *Nicodemus* stood; than in any of the remaining edifices. 3. *Iamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and in the times of *Christianity* an Episcopal See; now not discernable in the ruins. 4. *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Cendæus* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees*. 5. *Modin*, a small Town, but honored with the birth and sepulchre of those *Maccabæans*; the Sepulchre being seven Marble Pillars of so great an height, that they served as a mark for Seamen. 6. *Gibbethon*, in the Country called *Makats*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards possessed by the *Philistims*; at the siege whereof *Nadab*, the son of *Jeroboam* King of *Israel*, was slain by *Baasha*, who succeeded; and *Omri* chosen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7. *Cariathiarim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the house of *Aminadab*; that is to say, from the sending

it

it home by the *Philiſtims*, till brought to *Hieruſalem* by *David*. 8. *Beth-ſemes*, to which the *Ark* was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned looſe by the *Philiſtims*: for irreverent looking into which, there were ſlain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 perſons of this City. 9. *Tſarah*, near which is a fountain, called the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, becauſe *Philip* there baptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10. *Caſpin*, taken with great ſlaughter by *Judas Maccabæus*. 11. *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah*. 12. *Aialon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo, touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the borders whereof we find it ſituated; and therefore by ſome Authors reckoned to the ſame Tribe, and by ſome to the other, in the valley whereof the Moon is ſaid to have ſtood ſtill at the prayers of *Joſuah*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being ſtaid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe alſo belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Leſhem*, afterwards called *Cæſarea Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*; whereof we have there ſpoke already. *Judæa.*

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was ſo called from *Simeon* the ſecond Sonne of *Jacob*, by his firſt Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the firſt muſter 59300 able men; and but 22200 at the ſecond muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a ſmall Territory to themſelves, their lot falling amongſt the *Philiſtims*, whom they were not able to expel: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah*, where they were permitted to enjoy ſome Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards, in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, ſome of them poſſeſſed themſelves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others paſſing Southwards into *Idumæa*, ſmote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the Mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themſelves and their Children, many of them undertook the Office of *Scribes* or *Scriveners*, and diſperſed themſelves amongſt the reſt of the *Tribes*, teaching their children to write, and giving themſelves to the employment of *Publike Notaries*: God herein verifying the curſe which *Iacob* had denounced on *Simeon*, that he *ſhould be divided and ſcattered in* Iſrael. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the Eaſt, and the *Philiſtims* upon the Weſt.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Gerar*, the Royal ſeat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philiſtims*, with whom *Abraham* and *Iſaac* had to doe; and probably of ſome other of their Kings and Princes, till ſubdued by the *Iſraelites*. Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the wilderneſs of *Beerſheba*, but in a very healthfull air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times ſucceeding. 2. *Siceleg*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philiſtims* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achiſh* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when perſecuted by *Saul*; from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages: ſacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them ſpeedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3. *Hain*, a City of the *Levites*. 4. *Cariath-Sepher*, that is to ſay the *City of Books*, ſeated within the bounds of *Simeon*, but belonging to *Judah*: which ſome hold to be the Univerſity or *Academie* of old *Paleſtine*. A City of the *Levites* alſo, and at firſt poſſeſſed by the Sonnes of *Anak*, or men of a *Gigantine* ſtature; but taken by *Othoniel*, the Sonne of *Kenan*, on the promiſe and encouragement which was given by *Caleb*, that whoſoever took it ſhould have his Daughter *Achſah* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, *Judg.* 1. 11. known in the time of Saint *Hierom* by the name of *Daema*. 5. *Chorma*, conceived by ſome to be that place mentioned *Numb.* 14.45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* purſued thoſe of *Iſrael*. 6. *Beerſheba*, or *Puteus juramenti*; ſo called of the Well of waters, and the Oath which was there ſworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the *Grove* which *Abraham* there planted; the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when ſhe was caſt out of *Abrahams* houſe with her young ſon *Iſmael*; and the dwelling of *Iſaac*, for which cauſe called the City of *Iſaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often meaſured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cauſe well fortified by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Coutry; as ſtanding on the borders of *Idumæa*, and the *Deſarts* of *Arabia*, in the way from *Egypt*.

4. The Tribe of *JUDAH* was ſo called from *Judah* the fourth ſon of *Jacob*, by his wife *Leah*: of whom there were numbred at the firſt general muſter taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greateſt Tribe, and therefore anſwerably fitted with the largeſt Territory; bordering on the *Dead Sea*, Eaſt; upon *Simeon*, Weſt; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwiſe unable to contain or feed thoſe infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* muſtering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the reſt of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Soveraignty over all the others; the *Scepter*, the *Legiſlative* power, and the Worlds *Meſſiah*, being all promiſed unto this.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Arad*, ſituate in the entrance of *Judæa*, in the way from the Wilderneſs of *Edom*. 2. *Hebron*, one of the antienteſt Cities of *Canaan*: the Seat of *Giants*, called *Anakim*, or the ſons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* ſignifieth a chain worn for Ornament, and it

Judæa. seemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the ſpoils of his enemies, wore a chain of gold, leaving both the cuſtom and name to his poſterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman* Hiſtories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a burial-place for his dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was firſt buried, and after her four of the *Patriarchs*. Adjoyning to this Town is the plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham* the Father of the faithfull, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited from Heaven by God in the ſhape of a man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hieruſalem*; to this place came the Tribes to anoint him King over *Iſrael*; and hither came *Abſalon*, under the pretence of paying his vowes, to uſurp the kingdom of his Father. 3. *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and alſo that woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her mouth, perſwaded the King to call *Abſalon* from exile. In the wilderneſs of this *Tecoa*, there aſſembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Juda*. But the Lord being appeaſed by the *publique Faſt*, proclaimed and kept by *Jehoſaphat* and the people, ſowed diſſentions amongſt them. So that *the children of* Ammon *and* Moab *ſtood up againſt the inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *utterly to ſlay and deſtroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *every one helped to deſtroy one another*. 4. *Cerioth*, or *Carioth*, the birth-place of *Judas*, hence ſurnamed *Iſcariot* (or the man of *Carioth*) who betrayed our Saviour. 5. *Jether*, or *Jatter*, in the North border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City antiently of the *Levites*, and called in Sr. *Hieroms* time *Jethica*, and then altogether repleniſhed with *Chriſtians*, now nothing but the name remaining. 6. *Mareſa*, the native Soyl of the Prophet *Michah*, near whereunto firſt *Aſa* King of *Iudah* diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Terah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, conſiſting of above a Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Iudas Maccabæus*. 7. *Emaus* (after called *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Iudas* gave to the ſaid *Gorgias*; for our Redeemers ſhewing himſelf after his *Reſurrection* to *Cleophas* and another of his Diſciples; and for the *hot Bathes* hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Paleſtine*. The Sovereign vertue of which waters *Sozomen* a *Chriſtian*, attributes to the waſhing of *Chriſts* feet in them, as he paſſed by at that time; but *Ioſephus*, a *Iew*, aſcribes (as it is moſt likely) unto natural cauſes. 8. *Haſor*, or *Chatſor*, one of the frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9. *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an antient and magnificent City, taken and deſtroyed by *Ioſuah*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Ionathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10. *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* ſometimes hid himſelf when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the aſſaults of the *Philiſtims*. 11. *Eleutheropolis*, or the *Free City*, not farre from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judah*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and much remembred by St. *Hierom*. 12. *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joſuah* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Aſſociates, whom he diſcomfited in the cauſe and quarrel of the *Gibeonites*; moleſted by them for ſubmitting to their common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great ſtrength; preſuming upon which, it revolted from *Ioram* King of *Iudah*, at the ſame time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13. *Beth-Sur*, or (*Beth-Sora*) that is to ſay, the *houſe* on the *Rock*, ſo called from the ſituation on a rocky hill, one of the ſtrongeſt places of *Iudah*: Fortified firſt by *Roboam* the ſonne of *Solomon*, after by *Iudas Maccabæus*, and finally made impregnable by his brother *Simeon*. 14. *Adoram*, bordering on the *Dead-Sea*, beautified alſo by *Roboam*. 15. *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took his name from the words of *Lot*, alleging that it was but a little one, *Gen.* 19. 20. as the word *Tſohor* doth import, in whoſe eſcape it was preſerved, being otherwiſe one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto deſtruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gomorrha*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the ſame time deſtroyed by fire and brimſtone. 16. *Maſſada*, frequently mentioned by *Joſephus*, as a place of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature, and as it is by him deſcribed (in the 7 Book *de Bello Jud. cap.* 28.) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his troubles) the place of Refuge, in which he diſpoſed of *Mariamne* his betroathed wife, her mother *Alexandra*, with divers honourable Ladies, and where they were preſerved in ſafety againſt all his Enemies, till he came armed with power from *Rome*, to diſlodge their forces, which was done accordingly. Firſt built by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, as a ſure place of Refuge againſt the *Syrians*; and afterwards ſo eſteemed by *Herod* for the reaſon above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it, with all the requiſite additions of ſtrength and beauty, but built within the verge thereof, a magnificent Palace. The whole environed with a wall of 7 furlongs compaſs, 12 cubits high, and 8 cubits broad, built of white ſtone, and ſituate on an high Mountain called *Collis Achillæ*, waſhed on the Eaſt-ſide by the Dead Sea, or *Lacus Aſphaltites*, and by that ſecured; on the other ſides fenced with ſuch deep ditches, that it was a terrour to any man to look down into them: beſides which natural ſituation it was fortified by *Herod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein as in a place impregnable and inacceſſible, a *Magazine* of Armes, and all warlike furniture, for an Army of 10000 men, all ſorts of victuals to ſuſtain them, and ground enough within the walls to yeeld corn ſufficient, when time and a long ſiege ſhould conſume thoſe victuals. A place of ſuch ſtrength and ſo great concernment, that it held out againſt the *Romans* (when *Veſpaſian* and his ſon *Titus* managed that great war) after all the reſt of *Judea* had been conquered by them. 17. *Libna*, a ſtrong City ſeated in a Corner of *Judah*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time the *Edomites* did, and continued a *free State*, even as long as *Judah* continued a kingdom. 18. *Ziph*, in the wilderneſs, wherein *David* hid himſelf frō the fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* purſued him, *David* came into his Camp (the watch being all aſleep) and took thence his ſpear, and a *Cruſe* of oyl, and departed. *Abiſhai* indeed would fain have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by Gods com-

command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himself was appointed in his stead, would not touch him; but left him to the judgement of the Lord, whose annointed he was. 19. *Bethlem*, or (to distinguish it from another of this name in *Zabulon* so called) *Bethlem-Iudah*, where Christ was born; and the *Innocents* suffered for him, before he had suffered for them. In this general Massacre of young Children, a son of *Herods*, which was at nurse, was also slain; which being told unto *Augustus*, he replyed, *he had rather be* Herods *Swine than his Sonne*: His *swine* being safe in regard the *Jews* were forbidden hog-meat; but his *sonnes* frequently made away, upon *fears* and *jealousies*. A Town for this cause had in great respect by the Primitive *Christians*, beautified by *Helen* with a stately Temple, which yet standeth entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by Saint *Hierom*) with some goodly Monatteries, in one of which the body of that Father lieth; and by the *Western Christians*, with a See Episcopal. 20. On the frontier of this Country towards the *Philistians*, was that strong Castle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*; seated on a hill, the ascent unto which was made with 200 steps of *Marble*, exceeding fair and large. In this Country also are the hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Opobalsamum*, the trees of which, were by *Cleopatra* (at such time as she governed *M. Antony*, and the East) sent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Ægypt*; and *Herod*, who durst not deny them, plucked them up by the roots, and sent them to her. *Judæa.*

5. The Tribe of *BENJAMIN* took name from the twelfth and youngest son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his best beloved wife, who died in that Child-birth: of which at the first muster near unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbred 35000 able men; and at the second muster, when they entred the *Promised Land*, there were found of them fit for Arms, 45600 persons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of *Gibeah*, all *Israel* arming against it as one man. For besides those that perished in the former battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the sword: the fury of the Conquerours after that great victory sparing neither man nor beast, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities also which they came unto. So great an havock was there made even of innocent maidens, that when the edge of this displeasure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for those young men which had escaped; The other Tribes having bound themselves by a solemn Oath, nor to bestow their Daughters on them: insomuch that they were fain to provide themselves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabesh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manassites* beyond *Jordan*, which they took by assault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole story see at large in the book of *Judges*, chap. 19, 20, 21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt those of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the East, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the West-ward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* brethren. 1. *Macc.* 9. 73. 2. *Mispah*, famous in being the ordinary place of assembly, for the whole body of the people, in matters of war or peace: as also in that standing in the midst of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the seat of *justice*, to which *Samuel* went yearly, to give judgement to the people. 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the kingdom of *Judah* toward *Israel*. 4. *Gibeah*, the Country of *Saul*, the first King: where the abusing of the *Levites* wife by the young men of this Town, had almost rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Israel*. 5. *Ai*, a great and strong City, in the siege of which the *Israelites* were first discomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had stoln the *accursed* thing, the Camp was purged, *Josuah* by a warlike stratagem surprized it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother City of the *Gibeonites*, who presaging the unresistable victories of the *Israelites*, came to the Camp of *Josuah*, and by a wile obtained peace of him and the People. Employed by them in hewing wood, and drawing water for the use of the *Tabernacle*, after the fraud was made known unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezr.* 43. from *Nathan*, which signifies to *give*, because they were *given* to the service of the *Tabernacle* first; of the *Temple* after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, slew some of them, for which fact the Lord caused a famine on the Land: which could not be taken away till seven of *Sauls* Sonnes were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This famine did God send, because in killing those poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken, which *Josuah* and the Princes swore concerning them. In defence of those *Gibeonites* it was that *Josuah* waged war against the Kings of the *Canaanites*; and stayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent prayers. 7. *Iericho*, destroyed by the sound of *Rams-horns*, was not only levelled by *Iosuah* to the ground; but a curse inflicted on him that should attempt the re-building of it. This curse notwithstanding, at the time when *Ahab* reigned in *Israel* (which was about five hundred years after the ruine of it) *Hiel a Bethelite*, delighted with the pleasantness of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Iosuah*) as he laid the foundation of the walls, he lost his eldest Son; and when he had finished it, and was setting up the Gates thereof, he lost also the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this work minded not the prophecy; it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Iosuah*, not so much to proceed from the spirit of prophecy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wish, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the eternity of his name on so pleasant and beautifull a City, than on the lives and issues of two young men. 8. *Anathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the patrimony of *Abiathar* the *high Priest*, sent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when deposed from

Judæa. from his office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called, 1 *Sam.* 22. 19. the *City* of the *Prieſts*, deſtroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the high Prieſt had given to *David*; the *Ark* of the Lord then reſiding there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the banks of *Jordan*, where *Joſuah* did firſt eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his firſt *Paſſeover*; where he *circumciſed* ſuch of the people, as were born during their wandring in the Wilderneſs; and nigh to which he ſet up twelve ſtones for a memorial to poſterity, that the waters of *Jordan* did there divide themſelves to give paſſage to the twelve Tribes of *Iſrael*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*, and here *Samuel* once every year adminiſtred Juſtice to the people. For being ſeated in the midſt of the Land of *Iſrael* betwixt North and South, and on the Eaſt-ſide of the Country near the banks of *Jordan*, it ſerved very fitly for that purpoſe: as *Miſpah* alſo did, which ſtood in the ſame diſtance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but ſituate towards the Weſt Sea, near the Land of the *Philiſtims*; uſed therefore interchangeably for the eaſe of the people. 11. *Bethel*, at firſt called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the viſion which *Iacob* ſaw here, at his going towards *Meſopotamia*, as is ſaid *Gen.* 28. 19. It ſignifieth the houſe of *God*, and was therefore choſen by *Jeroboam*, for the ſetting up of one of his *Golden Calves*; though thereby, (as the Prophet ſaith) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the *houſe of vanity*, *Oſee* 4. 15. and 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdome of the *ten Tribes*, and the Southern border of that Kingdome on the coaſts of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his kingdome, till the deſtruction of it by the *Chaldæans*. Called with the reſt of thoſe parts, in the time of the *Maccabees* by the name of *Apharema*, which ſignifieth a thing taken away; becauſe taken away from the *ten Tribes*, to which once it belonged, 1 *Maccab.* 11. 34. where it is ſaid, to have been taken from the Country of *Samaria*, and added unto the borders of *Iudæa*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and ſaid to have been added to the Realm of *Iudah*, having been formerly the South border of the kingdome of *Iſrael*; and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Baaſha*, in the time of *Aſa* King of *Iudah*. 13. *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14. *Lod*, and 15. *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity. Deſtroyed in the wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards rebuilt by *Simon* the *Maccabæan*.

But the chief glory of this Tribe, and of all the reſt, and not ſo only, but of all the whole world beſides, was the famous City of *Hieruſalem*; ſeated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be aſcended with ſteep and difficult aſcents (except towards the North) environed on all other ſides alſo with ſome neighbouring Mountainets, as if placed in the midſt of an *Amphitheatre*. It conſiſted in the time of its greateſt flouriſh of four parts, ſeparated by their ſeveral Walls, as if ſeveral Cities; we may call them the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, ſeated upon their ſeveral Hills. Of theſe, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the Houſes of many of the *Prophets*, as in our Saviours time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *Iohn Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Chriſtians*: the Weſtern part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod* (a wicked, but magnificent Prince) for coſt exceſſive, and for ſtrength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fiſhponds, places deviſed for pleaſure, beſides thoſe for exerciſe. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it, that on the South-eaſt of the VVall, 50 Cubits high, of excellent workmanſhip, called *Mariamnes Tower*, in memory of his beloved but inſolent wife, raſhly murdered by him. Oppoſite to which on the South-weſt corner, ſtood the Tower of *Phaſcolus*, ſo called by the name of his brother, 70 cubits high, and in form reſembling that ſo much celebrated *Ægyptian Pharos*: and on the North wall on an high Hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the reſt in height by 14 Cubits, and having on the top two *Spires*; in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear Friends, ſlain in his ſervice by the wars.

2. On the South-ſide ſtood that part which was called the *Old City*, poſſeſſed if not built by the *Iebuſites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, becauſe taken by him; who thereon built a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, the Royal Court and Manſion of the Kings ſucceeding. In the VVeſt part hereof ſtood the *Tower* of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæſar*, compoſed of Marble, and every where enterlaid with gold; and not far off, the houſe of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conſpirators led our Saviour to receive his tryal,

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, becauſe it had more in it of the *Valley*, was alſo called the *Daughter of Sion*, becauſe built after it, and did in Majeſty and greatneſs exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *Moriah*, ſtood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for his VVife the Daughter of *Ægypt*; and that which he founded for himſelf, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the *Temple*. Weſt hereof on a lofty rock over-looking the City, ſtood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabæans*, reedified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa* (though of *Herods* race:) and not far off the *Theatre* of *Herods* building, adorned with admiral Pictures, expreſſing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In this part alſo ſtood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a *Citadel* built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, but razed by *Simon*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brothers, becauſe it over-topped the Temple; the houſe of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganiſm* to *Iudaiſm*, had here her dwelling, and here died; and finally *Herods Amphitheatre*, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained ſometimes with ſuch ſhews and ſpectacles, as were in uſe amongſt the *Romans*. And in this part alſo on an high and craggy rock, not far from the Temple, ſtood the *Tower of Baris*, whereon the ſame *Herod* built a ſtrong and impregnible *Citadel*, in honor of *Marc. Antonie*, whoſe Creature

ture he firſt was, called by the name of *Antonius*; having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them 50 Cubits high, and the other 70. afterwards garriſoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Iews* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Temple, might take occaſion to rebel. *Judæa.*

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the *City* of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the reſt; inhabited by none but mechanical perſons, and the meaneſt Tradeſmen; but after incompaſſed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety Turrets. The whole City fenced with a ſufficient circumvallation on all parts thereof, having a Ditch cut out of the main Rock, as *Joſephus* an eye-witneſs writeth, ſixty foot deep, and no leſs than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. Firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Melchiſedeck* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebuſites* themſelves, ſay others: by whomſoever built, called at firſt *Jebuſalem*, afterwards *Jeruſalem*, with the change of one letter only: inlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the Houſe of *David*, to the magnificence and greatneſs before deſcribed, till it attained unto the compaſs of ſixty furlongs, or ſeven miles and an half. Unconquered for the firſt four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Iſrael*: and when *David* attempted it, the people preſumed ſo much on the ſtrength of the place, that they told him in the way of ſcorn, that *the blind and the lame* which they had amongſt them (as the Text is generally expounded) ſhould defend it againſt him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Chriſt-Church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, that the *Iebuſites* by the *blind and lame* (as they knew well the *Iſraelites* called *blind and lame*) did underſtand thoſe *Tutelar Idols*, on whoſe protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning muſt be this, thoſe Gods whom you of *Iſrael* call *blind and lame*, ſhall defend our Walls. Why elſe ſhould *David* ſay (had they meant it literally) that his ſoul hated *the lame and the blind*? 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. or why ſhould the people of *Iſrael* be ſo uncharitable, as to ſay that the *blind and lame ſhould not come into the Houſe* (or Temple of God) were it meant no otherwiſe? But notwithſtanding theſe vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Ioab*, that fortunate and couragious Leader; and made the Royal ſeat of the Kings of *Iudah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 workmen, which wrought by the ten thouſand every month; 70000 Labourers, which carried burdens; 80000 Quarry men, that hewed ſtones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overſeers of the work, no leſs than 3300 men. The deſcription of this Stately Fabrick, we have in the firſt of *Kings*, cap. 6. 7. In the year of the World 2350 it was deſtroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hieruſalem*: rebuilt again after the return from the Captivity; but with ſuch oppoſition of the *Samarians*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tooles in one hand, and their ſwords in the other, to repulſe, if need were, thoſe malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not anſwerable to the magnificence of the former; ſo that the Prophet *Haggi* had good occaſion to ſay to the people, cap. 1. ver. 3. *Who is left amongſt you that ſaw this Houſe in her firſt glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in compariſon of it?* Nor fell it ſhort thereof only in the outward ſtructure, but ſome inward *Additaments*. For it wanted, 1. The *Pot* of *Mannah*, which the Lord commanded *Moſes* to lay up before the *Teſtimony for a Memorial*, *Exod.* 16. 32. &c. 2. The *Rod of Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Iſrael*, and was commanded to be kept before the (Ark of the) *Teſtimony*, for a token againſt *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Num.* 17. 10. 3. The *Ark of the Covenant*, the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the *Oracle*, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 *Kings* 6. 19. 4. The *two Tables of the Law*, writ by Gods own finger, and by *Moſes* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5. *The fire of Sacrifice*, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Levit.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Prieſt was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This ſecond Temple, partly becauſe it was grown ruinous, partly becauſe it ſeemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jews*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* pulled down, and ſet up another in the place: making it not much inferiour (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far ſuperiour to the other; *immenſæ opulentiæ Templum*, as *Tacitus* moſt truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did ſometimes vouchſafe his preſence.

But here we are to underſtand, that by the Temple is not meant the *Fabrick* only, or the houſe it ſelf; but alſo all thoſe ſeverall *Courts* with which encompaſſed, being four in number. That is to ſay, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the *Prieſts Court*, which was next unto the *Temple*; wherein ſtood the *brazen Altar* for the daily ſacrifice, and the *Laver* for the waſhing of the Prieſts and the Sacrifice alſo: into which *Court* might none enter but the Prieſt alone. 2. Then there was *Atrium populi*, or the *Peoples Court*, ſeparated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the people did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to ſay their prayers, and to make payment of their vows. In the middle of this Court, did *Solomon* make a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Succeſſors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afwards in imitation of his *Porch* built before the *Temple*, were many *Porches* built about it, for the people to repair into in rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomons Porch*, whereof ſee *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that ſtood 3. *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the *Womens Court*, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jehoſophat* King of *Judah*; in which ſtood their Treaſury, or poor-mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Lukes* Goſpell: from whence this whole Court had ſometimes the name of Treaſury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is ſaid that *theſe words ſpake JESUS in the Treaſury*, that is to ſay in the *Womens Court*, where the *Treaſury* or *Alm-Box* ſtood. Betwixt theſe laſt was an Aſ-

cent

Judæa.

cent of 15 steps, on which the *Levites* used to sing those 15 *Psalms*, which do immediatly follow the hundred nineteenth *Psalm*; upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica graduum*, *i.e.* the *Psalms* or Songs of *degrees*. And so far all was counted *holy Ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural *Jews*, or *circumcised* Proselytes, whom they called *Proselyti fœderis*, as before was said; or such of the other *Sex* (not natural *Jewesses*) who having received all outward *initiations*, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of *Moses*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the *Court* of the *Gentiles*; designed for the use of those *Gentiles*, whom they called *Proselyti Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the *Precepts* given the Sons of *Noah*. For in that, as unsanctified ground (though counted part of the *Temple* also) did they permit a market of sheep and oxen, the sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of money-changers, for the oblations of the people: stabling the poor *Gentiles* amongst their Cattel, and ranking them with the worst of men. And out of this *Temple*, or *Court of the Temple*, did *CHRIST* our Saviour cast the *buyers* and *sellers*, and overthrew the *Tables of the money-changers*; asserting it to its primitive and original use, which was to be an *house of prayer for all the Nations*. This last *Court* separated from the other by a wall of three Cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal distance, bearing this inscription, Μη δεῖ ἀλλόφυλον ἐντὸς τοῦ ἁγίου πορεύεσθαι, *i.e. Let no Alien* (or one that is no *Jew*) *enter into the holy place*, And to this wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, *He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us* (i. e. between the *Jews* and *Gentiles*) *making one of twain*, *Ephes.* 2. 14, 15. inferring hereupon, that the *Gentiles* are no more *strangers and foreiners*, *but fellow-Citizens with the Saints*, *and of the houshold of God*, v. 19.

But to go forwards with the *Temple*, having continued in the glories to which *Herod* brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by *Titus*, the son of *Vespasian*, in the 69 year after *Christs* nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrown by *Earth-quakes*, and *Thunderbolts* from Heaven; neither of them ever since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the *Jewish* Ceremonies, and *Heathen Idolatries*, that so the kingdom of his son might be all in all. For this destruction of the *Temple* of *Hierusalem* I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of *Titus*; who was not only carefull to preserve it, before his Souldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, Ῥωμίων γὰρ ἴσως ἡ βλάβη, as *Josephus* hath it, because the loss thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the *Roman* Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he what he could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of *August*, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one and the same day hath been found unto divers persons. In the wars betwixt the *French* and *Spaniards* for the *Realm* of *Naples*, *Friday* was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonsalvo*; he having on that day given the *French* many notable overthrows. *Wednesday* is said to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* the fifth; for on that day he was born, on the same made a Monk, on that day created *General* of his Order; on the same made Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope, and finally on the same inaugurated. To *Henry* the seventh of *England*, *Saturday* was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24 of *February* unto *Charls* the fifth, on what day soever: for on that he came into the world, and in that he took King *Francis* Prisoner at the battel of *Pavie*, and on the same received the imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or *Saturday* it was taken by *Pompey*, on the same by *Herod*, and on that also by *Titus*.

But go we forwards to *Hierusalem* as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuilt (after the destruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the reign of *Julian* that Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminish the infinite number of *Christians* by the increase of the *Jews*, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible *Earth-quake* cast them up again, and fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self, after the desolation in it which was made by *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperour *Ælius Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drave thence the *Jews*, and gave it to the *Christians*. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this Mount *Calvary* is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of *Herod*, and the Soyl where the *New City* stood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other still remaining visible, to shew the antient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the *Sepulchre*, built by *Helena* (whom most report to have been daughter to *Coylus* a *British* King) Mother to *Constantine* the Great. Much adoe had the good Lady to find the place where the Lords body had been laid; for the *Jews* and *Heathens* had raised great hillocks on the place, and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the earth digged away, she found the three *Crosses*, whereon our blessed *Saviour*, and the two *Theeves* had suffered. To know which of these was the right *Cross*, they were all carried to a woman, who had been long visited with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The *Crosses* of the two *Theeves* did the weak woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the Cross on which the *Lord* died, she leaped up and was restored to her former health. This *Temple* of the *Sepulchre*, even at the first building, was highly reverenced and esteemed, by the

Chri-

Judæa.

Christians of these parts. And even untill our daies, it is much resorted to, both by *Pilgrims* from all the parts of the *Romish* Church, who fondly and superstitiously hope to *merit* by their journey: and also by divers Gentlemen of the *reformed Churches*, who travel hitherward, partly for curiosity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly because their generous spirits imitate the Heaven and delight in motion. Whosoever is admitted to the sight of this *Sepulchre*, payeth nine crowns to the *Turkish* Officers; so that this tribute only is worth to the *Grand Signeur*, eighty thousand Ducats yearly. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of flint stones, Low, and but one roof high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with battlements of a yard in hight to preserve them from falling: the under-rooms no better than vaults, where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some houses near the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches towards the Street, where the Passenger may walk drye in a showre of rain; but not many such: nor any thing but the ruins left of the antient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to those that take a survey thereof from some Hills adjoining, where the ruines are not well discerned from the standing edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasing prospect. And as the place is, such is the people, inhabited for the most part by *Artizans* of the meanest quality, gathered together of the scum of divers Nations: the greatest part consisting of *Moores*, and *Arabians*; a few poor *Christians*, of all the *Oriental* Sects, which dwell there for *devotion*; and some *Turks*, who for the profit which they make of *Christians*, are content to stay in it. Insomuch that when *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of this rascal people; he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him say, that he saw *Duke* Robert *carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils*.

Come we now to the *Tribe* of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a *Tribe*, because not planted close together as the other were; nor had whole Provinces to themselves, but mingled and dispersed amongst the rest of the people; having forty eight Cities assigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other *Tribes*. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being set apart for his service, might be at hand in every place to instruct the People; and partly to fulfill the Prophecy which he had spoken by *Jacob*, who had fore-signified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he should *be divided in* Jacob, *and scattered in* Israel. The like fortune he had propheſied of *Simeon* also; of the accomplishment whereof, so far as it referred to him, and the dispersion of his *Tribe*, we have spoke before. Now to make up the number of the *twelve Tribes*, *Joseph* was divided into *Ephraim*, and *Manasses*; and the *Levites* were reckoned to belong unto that *Tribe*, within whose Territory, that City which they dwelt in, stood. Their maintenance was from the *tenths* or *tithes*, the first fruits, offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in the eighteenth of *Joshua*, *v.* the seventeenth, *The Priesthood of the Lord was their Inheritance.* There were of them four kinds. 1. *Punies* or *Tirones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their offices. 2. *Graduates*, ἀυλαὶ, which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it; 3. *Licenciates*, μεσαυλαὶ, who did actually exercise the *Priestly* function; And. 4 *Doctors* (*Rabbins* they use to call them) who were the highest in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the *tithes*, first fruits, and offerings of all the rest of the People; besides the 48 Cities assigned for their habitation: which last, with the severall Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the space of two thousand *Cubits*; seems to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other *Tribes* (with reference to the small number of *Levites*) had in their possessions. Then for the *Tithes*, there was not only a full *tenth* set out of all kinds of increase; but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of six thousand bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixtieth part at least, (and that they termed the *Thermah* of the *evil eye*, or the *niggards* first fruits) was to be set forth as the *first fruits* of the threshing-floor; which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred Bushels; the *first Tithe* paid unto the *Levites*, came to five hundred and ninety Bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty Bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the *second Tithe*, unto the *Priest*, which ministred in the *holy Temple*; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in hand unto *Hierusalem*, must pay the price thereof at the *Priests* own estimate. Laying which several sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand Bushels (*& sic de cæteris*) there will accrew one thousand two hundred seventy and one Bushels to the *Priests* and *Levites*; and but four thousand seven hundred seventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a sixt part, as was said before. Then had they the first born of mankind and all unclean beasts, redeemed at a certain rate; the *first fruits* of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the *first fruits* of the dough, and of the firstlings of clean Beasts (their bloud being sprinkled on the *Altar*, and the fat offered for a burnt offering) the *Flesh* remained unto the *Priest*. They had also the meat-offerings, the sin-offerings, the trespass-offerings, the shake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as also of all *Eucharistical* Sacrifices the breast and the shoulder; of others the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the Skin; besides the free gifts of the people, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the *Tribes*, though they had no whole Country allotted to them, as the others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of *Palestine* as were possessed in part, or wholly, by the Sonnes of *Jacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Esau*.

IDUMÆA.

Idumæa.

IDUMÆA.

IDUMÆA, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the East and South, with *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Judæa*; and on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Eſau*, whoſe name is *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, verſ. 43. by whom it was planted and poſſeſſed: or as others ſay, from the *Idumæi*, a people of *Arabia*; who in a mutiny being forced to forſake their Country, came and ſetled here. The firſt the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that.

The Country towards the Sea ſide very fat and fruitfull; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded *Balm*, not now: but ſtill it hath ſome ſtore of *Palmtrees*, for which much celebrated by ſome writers of antient times; as *Arbuſto* Palmarum *dives* Idume, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vaſt deſarts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many Wells there for the uſe of the natives, yet to them only are they known, and not obvious at all to the eyes of ſtrangers, no not upon the ſtricteſt ſearch that can be imagined. But all places are not ſo well furniſhed, as appeareth by the ſad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Deſarts of this Country, againſt the *Moabite*, finding herein no water for man or beaſt: inſomuch that the King of *Iſrael* ſaid, *Alas, that the Lord hath called theſe three Kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab*, 2 *Kings* 3. 10. Not otherwiſe delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God ſending them the next day an abundance of water, without wind or rain, or any other viſible means, ver. 17, 20.

The people antiently rude and barbarous, greedy of change in government, eaſily ſtirred to inſurrections, and in love with tumults. Profeſſed enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Jewiſh* Religion, they were at the beſt but falſe friends; and in the ſiege of *Hieruſalem* by *Titus*, did them more miſchief than the *Romans*. At this time ſubject to the *Turk*, and differ not much in life and cuſtome from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where ſo little waters. One Lake it hath, though poſſibly it had been better had they been without it, now ſmall, and every day growing leſs; the paſſage being long ſince barred which it had to the Sea. Antiently, though then narrow, it was two hundred furlongs, or five and twenty miles long; bordered on each ſide by hills of ſand, which born by the winds into the water did ſo thicken the ſame, that it was not eaſie to be diſcerned from the dry land; inſomuch as whole Armies have been ſwallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latines*; The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Sirbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Teveſo*, by the Natives *Bayrema*; the utmoſt bound of *Paleſtine*, where it joyneth on *Ægypt*.

The chief Mountains of it, are, 1. Mount *Seir*, the firſt habitation of *Eſau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan*, to make room for *Jacob*, as is ſaid *Gen.* 36. 7, 8. Not called ſo unleſs by *Anticipation* (a thing not unuſual in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Eſau* thither; the word *Seir* ſignifying *hairy*, or *briſled*, ſuch as *Eſau* is deſcribed to be, *Gen.* 27. 11. To this St. *Hierom* doth accord, deriving the name of *Seir* from *Eſau*, *Sumpto ab autore nomine*. His reaſon is, *Seir quippe interpretatur hiſpidus & piloſus qualis* Eſau *fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Eſaiah*, *cap.* 21. For the ſame cauſe, is the whole Country of *Edom*, ſometimes called Mount *Seir* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20. 10, 23. The 2d. hill of note is that called *Caſſius*, not far from the Lake of *Sirbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of ſand; formerly famous for a Temple of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great. Who being baſely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharſalia* by *Julius Cæſar*) by the command of *Ptolemy* the younger, King of *Ægypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Acrillus* who then governed his Counſells) by the piety of a ptivate Souldier was here interred, in an obſcure and homely, but honeſt Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified, and made more ſuitable to the man, by the Emperour *Adrian*. The piety of the Souldier not a whit the leſs for the coſt of the Emperour; in whoſe name *Lucan* had beſtowed this *Epitaph*, on that firſt Monument.

Hic ſitus eſt Magnus, *placet hoc, Fortuna, Sepulchrum*
Dicere Pompeii; *quo condi maluit illum*,
Quam terrâ caruiſſe Socer.

Which may be *Engliſhed* to this purpoſe.

Here *Magnus* lies, Such, Fortune, is thy doom
That this vile earth ſhould be great *Pompeys* Tomb.
In which even *Cæſars* ſelf would rather have
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a grave.

Places

Idumæa

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Dinhabath*, the City of *Bela*, the firſt King of *Edom*. 2. *Anith*, the City of *Hadad*, and 3. *Pan*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32. 35. 39. 4. *Berzamna*, placed here by *Ptolemy*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame with *Berſhabee* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, the utmoſt border South-wards of the Land of *Canaan*, of which more there. 5. *Caparorſa*. 6. *Gammararis*, and 7. *Elaſa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolemy*; which ſheweth them to be of ſome conſideration in thoſe times; though now forgotten with the former. 8. *Anthedon*, on the South-ſide of the River *Beſor*, oppoſite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, which is ſituate on the Northern bank. A port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Jews*: re-ediſied afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honor of *Agrippa* the favourite and Son-in-law to *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 9. *Roſſa*, a Fort of conſequence, not far from *Maſſada*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judæas*; taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Caſtle. 10. *Raphia*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolemy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Magnus*. 11. *Rhinocurura*, ſo called from a miſhap which befell the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their noſes. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this time *Pharamica*. Memorable for an old but ill-grounded *tradition*, that here the world was divided by lots, betwixt the poſterity of *Noah*: and ſo conſiderable in the wars of the *Holy Land*, that it was ſtrongly fortified by *Baldwin* the firſt, to obſtruct the paſſage of ſuch forces as uſually came out of *Egypt*, to aid the *Turks*. 12. *Oſtracine*, now *Stragioni*; on the Sea-ſide beneath *Anthedon*, and in that part of the Country which from Mount *Caſius* hath the name of *Caſiotis*: aſcribed by *Ptolemy* to *Egypt*; but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Sirbon*, more properly belonging to *Paleſtina*. But moſt of theſe being now buried in their ruins, there are left none but a few Caſtles and ſcattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the moſt part by *Arabians*, the Caſtles garriſoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the road to *Egypt*, are, 13. *Hamones*, a ſmall Caſtle not far from *Gaza*, uſed chiefly for a *Toll-booth*, to receive cuſtome of ſuch Merchants as paſs that way. 14. *Hariſſa*, a ſmall Caſtle alſo, ſerving ſpecially for the ſame uſe; but ſtronger, and of more importance becauſe near the Sea, from which not above two miles diſtant; and for that cauſe garriſoned with an hundred Souldiers: environed with a few houſes, by reaſon of the commodity of the water, which is ſweet and wholeſome; elſe little better than a Deſart. 15. *Catio*. another Caſtle, or rather *Toll-booth*, with a garriſon of about 60 Souldiers in it: ſeated in a place ſo deſert and unfruitfull, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few ſtarved *Palm-trees*; The water which they have there, ſo bad and brackiſh, though eſteemed good enough for the common Souldiers; that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from, 16. *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-ſhore, about twelve miles diſtant, and the laſt upon this Coaſt towards *Egypt*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, the *Horites which dwelt in Mount Seir*, as we read in *Geneſis* cap. 14. v. 6. that is to ſay, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called Mount *Seir*. But whether it was ſo called from *Eſaus* dwelling here, as is ſaid before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Geneſis* 36. 20. as perhaps may probably be ſuppoſed; need not now come into diſpute. Broken by *Cherdorlaomer*, and his Aſſociates, they were the more eaſily ſubdued by *Eſau*. Who leaving the Land of *Canaan* to his brother *Jacob*, *Geneſis* 6. 7, 8. becauſe thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel; came into this Country; and having *deſtroyed the* Horites *from before them*, *ſucceeded* in their habitations, *and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day*, *Deut.* 2. 22. Tis true, we find *Eſau* in *Mount Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Jacob* at his firſt comming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent Meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his brother, unto the *Land of Seir*, the *Country of* Edom, *Gen.* 32. 3. And hence a queſtion hath been moved, how *Eſau* dwelling there before *Iacobs* comming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this Sir *Walter Ralegh* and ſome others anſwer, that at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lye on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and *Mount Hermon*, by which *Iacob* muſt needs paſs in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians*, or *Phœnicians* in the ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites* at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moſes* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a *Mount Seir* with him, whereſoever he went; it doth expreſſely differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in the occaſion, and the time of his ſetling there: the victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites and Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten, when *Moſes* with the children of *Iſrael* came into theſe parts; which was at the leaſt 200 years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf to the Land of *Edom*. And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* mariages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*; departed from them, and ſojourned in the South parts amongſt the *Horites of Mount Seir*; that thither *Iacob* ſent his Meſſengers, to make peace betwixt them, that the reconcilliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his children, cattel, and the reſt of his ſubſtance, fixed himſelf again near the houſe of his *Fathers*: and finally, that on *Iſaacs* death, finding his family increaſed, his heards and flocks augmented, and the reſt of his ſubſtance alſo doubled by the death of his Father; he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling, and ſo removed once more to *Edom*. A thing not needfull to be done had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract: conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe

Idumæa. Mountains and the City of *Hebron*, in which *Isaac* dwelt; nigh to which *Iacob* also had set up his dwelling.

But on what ground soever *Esau* left the possession of the land of *Canaan*, to his brother *Iacob*, certain it is, he did it not without some strong impulsions from the Spirit of God, by whom the possession of that Land was designed for *Iacob*; to whom the blessing and the birth-right had been both preferred. And though *Esau* over-ruled by Almighty God, seemed to have forgotten all displeasure against his brother: yet the quarrel began by them in the womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violentlie in the time of their posteritie. Insomuch that *Moses* could by no means obtain a passage thorow *Edom*, into the *Promised Land*, though he sought it by fair address, and pressed it by all those motives and inducements, which a wise and an understanding man could have set before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, seemed to pretend nothing but the safety of himself and his people; both which he might have hazarded (in all humane reason) by opening the closures of his Mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is possible there might be as much of stomach as worldly policy; and that as well the buying of the birth-right for so sleight a trifle, as the getting of the blessing by such fraudulent means, might not be forgotten. For he not only denyed them passage, and sent word expressely they should not go thorow; but came against them with much people and a strong band, as is said *Numbers* 20.20. But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their destiny, or make the word of God to be ineffectual; by which it had been signified, when they were yet in their Mothers womb, that the *elder should serve the younger*. Not verified in *Esaus* person, for *Jacob* called him his *Lord Esau*, professed himself to be his servant, and willingly submitted to his superiority; but in the issues of them both: then specially when *David* had subdued the *Edomites*, and made them homagers and vassals to the Crown of *Judah*. 2 *Sam.* 8. 14. Nor is less intimated in those words of the 60 *Psalm*, where it is said, *Over* Edom *will I cast my shooe*; it being a custome of old times to fling their shooes upon a Country conquered or designed for conquest. *Projectio calceamenti super Regionem aliquam, denotat subjicere*, as my Author hath it. And in allusion unto this, there is a story in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the *Isles* sent his Embassadors to *Murchard* a King in *Ireland*, commanding him on the next *Christmas* day to carry openly the shooes of King *Magnus* upon his shoulders; in testimony, saith the story, that he was his Vassal. The casting of the shooe on a conquered Country, or the treading of it under feet, another ceremony of this nature mentioned *Deut.* 33.29. do come both to one, and signifie that vassallage or bondage, which such a captivated Country was reduced unto.

But on the other side, there was another part of the heavenly *Oracle*, which made for *Edom*: *Isaac* had signified to *Esau*, that though the blessing given to *Iacob* could not be revoked, and that he must content himself with being a servant to his brother for a certain season: yet there should one day come a time, in which he should not only break that yoak from off his neck, but obtain the dominion over him. *Gen.* 27. 40. The first part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the kings of *Iudah*, in the time of *Ioram*, or *Iehoram*, the Son of *Iehosophat*: and instead of a *Vice-Roy* sent unto them from the Court of *Hierusalem*, set up a king of their own Nation; never returning after that to the house of *David*. For though *Joram* made war presently upon them, and got the victory; yet he did not prosecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their strong holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honor enough in the eye of the world, by being master of the field; or shewing his abilities in command of a greater army, than the *Edomites* could bring against him. The like error was commited also by *Amaziah*, who by a vast army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders, than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left garisons in any of their defensible places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latet part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, *Herod* the *Ascalonite* his Son, and their Successors; who in the decrepit age of the house of *Iacob*, became king of the *Iews*, and lorded over them with insolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate passages of their state and story: It seemeth that at first they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of those several families, of which they were the heads or Princes. But as ambition and power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquished or awed the rest, took to himself the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their several Cities in which they reigned, seem to have been chosen by election; or otherwise to come in by strong hand, as the sword could carry it. The names of which are thus set down in the book of *Genesis*.

The Kings of *Edom*.

1 *Bela*, the Son of *Beor*.
2 *Jobab*, the Son of *Zerah*.
3 *Hasham*, of the Land of *Temani*.
4 *Hadad*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred against the *Midianites*, and vanquished them in the fields of *Moab*, *Gen.* 36. 35.
5 *Samlah*, of *Masrekah*.
6 *Saul*, of *Rehoboth*, by the River *Euphrates*.
7 *Baal-Hanan*, the Son of *Achbor*.

8 *Hadar*,

8. *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whose death, the heads of the several Families resumed the Government again; ruling over their own *Tribes*, without any one *Soveraign* or Supreme. And all these Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Israel*, *Gen.* 36. 31. that is say, before any form of *Supreme* Government was established amongst them, in the person of *Moses*, called by the name of a King in the book of *Deut.* ch. 35. v. 5. But this distracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at such time as the Children of *Israel* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the *King of Edom* that *Moses* sent Messengers from *Kadesh*, to desire a passage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their passes, *Moses* forebore to force his way, though the nearest for him: partly because he had no mind to spend those forces in fighting with hills and desarts, which were designed for the conquest of another Country; but principally because God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take so much as a foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no such *obligation*, having vanquished the *Syrians*, and other Nations round about him; followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garrisons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites became his servants.* Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or *Viee-Roy* (as is said before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehosophat* King of *Judah*; in whose Reign they revolted, as before was said. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that so the word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simeonites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting pasture for their Cattel, and room for themselves, seized on the parts that lay nearest to them, destroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their habitations, because there was pasture for their flocks, 1 *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked herewith, and with the natural *Antipathy* which was between them, no people were more mischievously bent against *Judah*, than these *Edomites* were: no men so forward of themselves, to assist *Nabuchadonosor* against *Hierusalem*; none that so vehemently cryed *Down with it, down unto the ground*; none half so ready to set fire to the *holy Temple.* But they got little by this service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldome following close upon that of *Judah*: with whom made fellow-subjects to the *Chaldæans*; as afterwards to the *Persians*, and Kings of *Syria* of the race of *Seleucus.* In the declining of that house, subdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabæan* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be *Circumcised*, and to receive the Law of *Moses*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Iewish* Kingdome, but as natural *Jews.* Which notwithstanding, and that the setting of that Crown on the head of *Herod* and his house, being originally *Idumæans*, might in all reason have extinguished their inveterate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians*, they would needs aid the *Romans* against them also: putting themselves into *Hierusalem*, when besieged by *Titus*, only of purpose to betray it; joining with the *seditious* there, doing more mischief in the City than the enemy had done without; and finally, setting fire to the *second Temple*, as they had done unto the *first.* Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine.* *Idumæa.*

Having thus gon thorow with the story of those neighbouring Nations which encompassed *Canaan*: it will be seasonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* first, and after of the house of *Iacob*, who possessed their Country. First for the *Canaanites*, they descended from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, who with his eleven sons were here settled immediatly after the confusion at *Babel.* Of those twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phœnicia*, and the coasts of *Syria*, that is to say, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, or *Hamathi*: the other seven in those parts which we now call *Palestine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Ammonites*, and *Ituræans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of those 7 came those 7 Nations, which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, *viz.* the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Iebusites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeshites*, and the *Perizites.* But from which of the sons of *Canaan* these last descended, is not yet agreed on; unless perhaps they were descended of the *Sinites*, (not otherwise reckoned in this muster) and got the name of *Perizites*, on some new occasion. Governed at first by the *chiefest* of their several Families, with the names of kings; the number of which increased, as their Families were subdivided into smaller branches: insomuch as *Ioshuah* found 31 kings of the *Canaanites* only, besides what might descend from those who were setled in *Phœnicia*, and the borders of *Syria.* The most potent of those Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Iebusites*, and the *Chanaanites* properly so called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only inlarged their borders beyond *Iordan*, but in the reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the same time in their several parts, had thrust the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites*, and *Moabites*, out of most of their Countries: and so restored the same again to the race of the *Emmims*, and *Zanzummims* (of which line *Og* and the Kings of *Bason* were) who had been dispossessed thereof by the sons of *Lot.* These vanquished in the time of *Moses*, and their habitations assigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half-tribe of *Manasses.* The *Canaanites* properly so called, as they were the first which fought with the house of *Iacob*; so they were the last of all these people that contended with them. They first fought with them under the conduct of *Arad* their king, who thinking it more safe and prudent to encounter the enemy in an other mans Country, than to expect them in his own; gave battel unto *Moses* in the *desarts* of *Moab*: & having cut off some of the out-parts of his army, and taken a few Prisoners, he went home again. But *Iabin*, under whom they made their second onset, went to work more resolutely; and taking a time when the iniquities of that people cried aloud for vengeance, so prevailed against them, that he tyrannized over them for the space of 20 years. After which time, his army being discomfited by *Barak*, in the time of *Debora*; *Sisera* his great Captain slain by *Iael* the wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and most of his Cities taken and possessed by the *Israelites*; he perished himself in the close of that war: for it is said, that they prevailed against *Iabin the King of* Canaan, *till they had de-*

Idumæa. destroyed him, Judg. 4. 24. As for the *Jebusites*, they were grown so formidable (at the time of the comming of the *Hebrews*) to the rest of their Neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged that he had cut off the Thumbs and great toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crums which fell under his Table. But being vanquished by *Judah*, he was served in the same kind himself by *Iudah* and *Simeon*, and carried to *Hierusalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Iebusites*, and the City of *Hierusalem* it self, the fortress of *Mount Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Iebusites* held that fortress till the time of *David*, yet being they were only on the defensive side, and made no open war against those of *Israel*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the last which did contend with them for the chief command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered, and for the most part worn out of the Country, the *Israelites* succeeded in their possessions; according to the promise of God made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Isaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moses* and *Josuah*, by the *Congregation of the Elders*, as appears by many passages in the book of *Iudg.* the *Judges* (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the *ordinary* Magistrates, but raised up *occasionally* by God for some special purpose, according to the exigence of their affairs. Carrying in this a likeness unto the *Dictators* in the State of *Rome*. So that the government at the first was an *Aristocratie*; though to say truth, it rather was a *Theocratie*, as the Fathers call it; that is to say, a Government wherein GOD presided more immediately, than in other Nations. And thereupon when the people cryed out to *Samuel* to have a King, God said unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the people, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I should not reign over them*, 1 *Samuel* 8. 7. God was their king, and he had mightily reigned over them since they came out of *Egypt*; but they desired to have *a King like other Nations*, to go in and out before them, and to fight their battels; a king whom they might see with their bodily eyes, and converse with him in such manner as the people did, which dwelt round about them. And so came in the *Monarchy* or kingly Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*, the first a *Benjamite*, the second of the Tribe of *Iudah*; of which *Iacob* had fore-told at the time of his death, that the kingdome of his people should be vested in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole house of *Israel*; the kingdome after *Solomons* death, being rent in twain: ten of the twelve *Tribes* revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and so much of the Tribes of *Dan*, and *Simeon*, as lay intermingled with and in the Tribe of *Iudah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who misguided by some *evil Counsellers* which were about him, had given occasion to the breach. A breach that could never be soldered or made up again, notwithstanding the fair opportunities which were after offered, of uniting *Iudah* unto *Israel* (for so the two kingdomes were distinguished) in the time of *Ioas*; and rejoining *Israel* to *Iudah*, in the time of *Asa*. The opportunity offered to *Asa* king of *Iudah* for regaining the revolted Tribes, was the confusions which in his time had fallen out amongst them, by several factions; each challenging the privilege of making a king unto it self: *Nadab* the Son of *Ieroboam* being slain by *Baasha*, *Ela* the son of *Baasha* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* deposed by *Omri* the Father of *Ahab*, and *Tobni* a Competitor against *Omri* also. During which time, as the people must needs suffer many great oppressions, which might make them think of their allegiance to the house of *David*: so could not *Asa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his best use of them) of working on that divided kingdome, and reducing it back unto this House. But there were two reasons which prevailed more against this re-union, than any that could be presented to invite them to it. First the imperiousness, and arbitrary Government of the kings of *Iudah*, putting to death without formality of Law, those that had displeased them, as in the case *Shimei*, *Ioab*, and *Adonijah*, in the daies of *Solomon*: and raising on the Subject what sums they pleased, though more for ostentation of their own magnificence, than the necessities of the State. Of which exactions *Rehoboam* the son of *Solomon* was so far from promising a release, or some mitigation at least; that he threatned to make them more than double what they had been formerly: and how knew they, but that *Asa*, and all such as descended from him, might be of the same temper also, and act according to those Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the kings of *Israel* holding by no other title than the love of their people, and the moderate and regular form of their government over them; had put their mouths in such a tast of the sweets of libertie, and made them so much masters of their own both lives and fortunes, that *Naboth* durst deny his vineyard to *Ahab*, though offering full compensation for it; and *Ahab* durst not question the life of *Naboth*, but by suborning witnesses to accuse him of blasphemy. So that the present confusions under which they suffered, by the change and violent death of so many kings one after another, being only temporatory, and not likely to continue long, were no perswasions unto them to accept of *Asa*, and much less to offer themselves unto him; who conceived all adversity to be far more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that house. And there was something also of preceding profit, which swaied the business. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moses* to make 3 chargeable journeys yearly to *Hierusalem*, to worship there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double tenth yearly out of their estates (beside offerings and other casualties) to the *Priests* and *Levites*. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly policy, fearing these frequent journeys unto *Hierusalem* might be an occasion of reducing them to the house of *David*, released them of that charge and trouble, by setting up a new form of worship: erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan*, and *Bethel*; and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, so it tended not to the establishment of the *old Religion*. And on the other side the *Levites* which dwelt amongst them, and received their *Tithes*, not willing to conform these new impieties, and finding that their Ministry was no longer usefull, withdrew themselves into the king-

Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the antient places of their habitations: by means whereof, the people were releaſed of thoſe payments alſo. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Aſa* for their King, they muſt return again alſo to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own imaginations and inventions, muſt no more be worſhipped: and (which no doubt prevailed moſt on the common people, who like that Religion beſt which coſts them nothing) the antient payments to the *Prieſts*, and *Levites*, muſt come up again. Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to ſuffer yet a little longer, to pleaſe themſelves in expectation of more ſetled times: and ſo no falling off to *Aſa*, though as moderate and religious a Prince as they could have wiſhed for, had they had power of faſhioning a King to their own deſires. Now as this opportunity of rejoyning *Iſrael* unto *Judah*, proved unſucceſsfull unto *Aſa*, ſo did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehoahaz*, and grand-child of *Jehu* King of *Iſrael*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made war upon him; and not only diſcomfited him without battel, and took him priſoner without blows, but led him captive to the very walls of *Hieruſalem*; and by his authority, got the gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with his honour, (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Iſrael*) he cauſed 400 Cubits of the wall to be broken down; thorow which breach he entred triumphantly in his chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entred, ſacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Ioas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*; and this the loſs of it. For the people, otherwiſe like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whoſe noble Acts they had heard much ſpeech; were ſo exaſperated by theſe raſh and unſeaſonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the *Holy Altars* were not ſafe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to concoct the fullneſs of his own proſperities. If he were thus unſatiable in his covetouſneſs, and inſupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdom; when in all common prudence he ſhould have ſought their loves, and inſinuated into their good opinions, by eaſing them of former taxes, and ſhewing them fair hopes of his moderate government: what muſt they look for when their Towns were fill'd with garriſons, *Hieruſalem* ſtuffed with armed troops; and all the Princes of the houſe of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from cruel bondage, deſtroyed or baniſhed, or otherwiſe made unable to afford them ſuccours? Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to riſe as one man againſt him, and let him ſee, that neither their Army was ſo ſcattered, nor themſelves ſo cowed, but that they durſt adventure it to a farther tryal. The fear of which made *Joas* ſenſible of the loſs of his opportunity: and ſo content with hoſtages for his ſafe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his victory, than the ſpoil and honour. And that this poſſibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the ſucceſſe of the affair to a further hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the ſtory of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this. *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the gates of *Florence* to *Charls* the eighth, then in his paſſage towards *Naples*. *Charls* entreth it *triumphantly* as a conquered City, armed in compleat manner, and his lance on his thigh; his whole Army with him. Many inſolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their liberties. *Charls* willing to go forwards on his march towards *Naples*, propounds conditions in writing: but ſo intollerable, that *Peter Capponi* one of the chief Citizens catching the papers out of the Kings Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you*, ſaith he, *ſound your trumpets, we will ring our bells, and ſee what will follow.* Which ſtout and peremptory dealing did ſo daunt the *French*, that they condeſcended upon very eaſie terms to abandon the City; and reſtore all the places appertaining unto their eſtate, which were then in his power. The like conſideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charls*; and prompt him not to fight with an inraged multitude in the ſtreets of a City, where he could make no uſe of his horſe: and where he might be more galled with women and children, throwing ſtones or darts out of their windows, and from the tops of their houſes; than with an armed enemy in the open field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebet*, and forced all the men and women into the *Caſtle*, was ſlain there by a peece of a Mill-ſtone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hands of a woman. *Idumæa*

To proceed further in the ſtory of theſe ſeveral Kings, or recapitulate the ſumme of their principal actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unneceſſary: the Scripture being in the hands of all ſorts of perſons, in which their actions and ſucceſſions are at large contained. So that I only ſhall ſubjoyn their names, with the time of their reigns, and the year of the world in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the reſt unto the induſtry and ſearch of the Chriſtian Reader, of whoſe acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no queſtion. This only I premiſe as concerning the *Judges*, that the time of their continuance in that authority, is not to be meaſured from the time of their coming to it, til the entrance of the next Succeſſor, as in that of the Kings: theſe being occaſionally raiſed by Almighty God, for ſome preſent ſervice, and no ſtanding or eſtabliſhed *Magiſtrates*; except *Moſes* and *Ioſuah* only, who held the government during life, and managed it as abſolute Princes.

The

The Judges and Captains of the HEBREWS.

A. M.	
2454	1 *Moſes*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Egypt*. 40.
2494	2 *Joſuah*, an *Ephramite*, who ſetled them in the land of *Canaan*. 33.
2526	3 *Othoniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Meſopotamians*.
1530	4 *Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who reſcued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.
2610	5 *Deborah* the Propheteſs, and *Barack* the *Nephthalite*, who diſcomfited the hoſt of *Jabin* King of the *Cananites*.
2650	6 *Gideon*, a *Manaſſite*, who ranſomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.
2690	7 *Abimelech*, the baſe Sonne of *Gideon*. 3.
2693	8 *Tola*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. 23.
2716	9 *Iair*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
2760	10 *Iephtah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the people were redeemed from the hand the the *Ammonites*.
2766	11 *Ibſan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2773	12 *Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2783	13 *Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
2790	14 *Samſon*, a *Danite*, the Avenger of the People upon the *Philiſtims*.
2809	15 *Eli*, the High Prieſt, in whoſe time the Ark was taken by the *Philiſtims*.
2849	16 *Samuel*, the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the latter end of whoſe govenment, the people being weary of the command of their former Rulers, deſired to have a King, to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the HEBREWS.

A. M.	
2878	1 *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the firſt King of the *Hebrews*, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17
2890.	2 *David*, the Sonne of *Jeſſe*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930	3 *Solomon*, the Son of *David*, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterward divided into *Judah*, and *Iſrael*.

The Kings of JUDAH

A. M.	
2971	1 *Rehoboam*, the Sonne of *Solomon*, the firſt King of *Judah*. 17.
2988	2 *Abijah*, the Sonne of *Rehoboam*. 3.
2991	3 *Aſa*, the Son of *Abijah*, diſcomfited the numerous Army of *Zerah*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian* King.
3031	4 *Jehoſaphat*, the Son of *Aſa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Eccleſiaſtical and Civil. 35.
3056	5 *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jehoſophat*. 8.
3064	6 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Jehoram* by *Athaliah* his wife, the Siſter of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*. 1.
3065	7 *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Siſter of *Ahab*, having deſtroyed the Regal race of the houſe of *David*, uſurped the Kingdom for 7 years.
3072	8 *Joaſh*, the only ſurviving Heir of the houſe of *David*, reſtored by *Jehojada* the Prieſt, to the Throne of his Anceſtors. 40.
3112	9 *Amaziah*, the Son of *Joaſh*, vanquiſhed by *Joaſh* King of *Iſrael*, and a breach forced thorow the walls of *Hieruſalem*. 29.

The Kings of ISRAEL.

A. M.	
2971	1 *Jeroboam*, the Sonne of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the firſt King of *Iſrael*. 22.
2993	2 *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam*. 2.
2995	3 *Baaſha*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*, having ſlain *Nadab*, reigned in his ſtead. 24.
3019	4 *Ela*, the Son of *Baaſha*. 2.
3021	5 *Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of *Ela*, and his own executioner.
	6 *Omri*, the Captain of the hoſt, who removed the Regal ſeat from *Tirzah* to *Samaria*. 8.
3029	7 *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and husband of *Jezebel*, a *Phœnician* Princeſs.
3051	8 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2
3053	9 *Jehoram*, the Brother of *Ahaziah*. 12.
3065	10 *Jehu*, the Captain of the hoſt, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Jehoram*, reigning in his ſtead. 28.
3093	11 *Jehoahaz*, the Son of *Jehu*. 17.
3110	12 *Ioaſh*, the Son of *Iehoahaz*. 16.
3126	13 *Ieroboam* II. the Son of *Ioaſh*. 41.
3178	14 *Zachariah*, the Son of *Ieroboam* the ſecond, after an *Interregnum* of 11 years ſuc-

3141 10 *Azariah*, the Sonne of *Amaziah*, called alſo *Uzziah*; ſmote with a *Leproſie* by the Lord. 52.

3192 11 *Iotham*, the Son of *Uzziah*, or *Azariah*. 16.

3208 12 *Achaz*, the Son of *Iotham*, in whoſe time, and on whoſe occaſion, the kingdom of *Damaſcus* was ruined by *Tiglath Pileſer* king of *Aſſyria*; and the Tribes on the farther ſide of *Iordan* led into captivity. 16.

3224 13 *Hezekiah*, the Sonne of *Ahaz*, a religious Prince; in whoſe time the kingdom of the ten Tribes was deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians*, and that of *Aſſyria*, by the *Babylonians*.

ſucceeded in the Throne of his Father: ſlain at the end of 6 moneths by

15 *Shallum*, who at the moneths end was ſlain by

3178 16 *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.

3188 17 *Pekahiah*, the Son of *Menahem*; ſlain by

3190 18 *Pekah*, the ſon of *Remaliah*; ſerved in the ſame kind after a reign of 20 years by

3210 19 *Hoſeah*, the Son of *Ela*; in the fifth year of whoſe reign, and the 18 year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmanaſſer* king of *Aſſyria*, having by a ſiege of three years carried the City of *Samaria*, deſtroyed the kingdom of *Iſrael*, and led the greateſt part of the people into Captivity.

3253 14 *Manaſſes*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, reſtored *Idolatry*, and put to death the Prophet *Eſaiah*, for oppoſing his irreligious courſes. 55.

3308 15 *Amon*, the ſon of *Manaſſes*, and as bad as he; ſlain by a conſpiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two years only.

3310 16 *Joſiah*, the ſon of *Amon*, a right godly King; unfortunately ſlain by *Pharaoh Necoh* king of *Egypt*, at the battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17 *Jehoahaz*, the ſon of *Ioſiah*, a king of three moneths only, depoſed and ſent Priſoner by *Pharaoh Necoh*, to *Riblah* in the land of *Hamath*, ſince called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehoiakim*, the ſon of *Ioſiah*, and half Brother of *Iehoahaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necoh*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Iehoiachia*, or *Iechoniah*, the ſon of *Iehoiakim*, at the end of three moneths led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the ſons of *Joſiah*, and brother by the whole blood of *Jehoahaz*, made king by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehoiachin*, or *Iechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling againſt his Benefactor, contrary to the Counſel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Priſoner in the 11th. year of his reign, *Hieruſalem* deſtroyed, the Temple ruinated, and the People carried Captive to the land of *Babylon*, A. M. 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years. Which time expired, *Cyrus* the king of the *Perſians*, gave them leave to return to their Coutry, and to re-edifie their City and Temple. Which work being finiſhed, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again ſetled in ſome part of their old poſſeſſions; they were after governed by their *High-Prieſts*, and the *Counſel of the Elders*, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the *High-Prieſt* bearing the chief ſtroke, and being looked on as a man of the greateſt power. And therefore I will here ſubjoyn the Catalogue of ſo many of them, as governed the affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the eſtate hereof both as *Prieſts* and *Princes*, till their ſubjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Prieſts of the *JEWS* after the Captivity.

A.M.

3427 1 *Ioſuah*, the *High-Prieſt* at the time of the Return, aſſiſtant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the *Temple*, which he lived not to finiſh; though continuing (as ſome ſay) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the names of his Succeſſors being loſt, the whole time is aſcribed to him.

3530 2 *Joiakim*, ſaid to be the ſon of *Joſuah*, in whoſe time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the *Temple* was finiſhed, and the worſhip of God reſtored.

3580 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.

3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the *Great*, coming to *Hieruſalem* (of whom more anon) the brother of that *Manaſſes*, for whoſe ſake, and on whoſe occaſion, the Temple on Mount *Garazim*, was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.

3630 5 *Onias* ſucceeded *Iaddus*, as *Iaddus* had done *Ionathan*; not by birth (as formerly) but by the Election of the People.

3651 6 *Simon*, ſurnamed *Iuſtus*. 9.

3660 7 *Eleazer*, the brother of *Simon*. 32.

3692 8 *Mene-*

3692 8 *Menelaus*, the brother of *Eleazer*, and *Simon*.
3718 9 *Onias* II. 14.
3732 10 *Simon* II. 10.
3742 11 *Onias* III. the ſon of *Simon* the 2d.
3787 12 *Iaſon*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.
3789 13 *Menelaus* II. the brother of *Iaſon*, in whoſe time the Temple was profaned by the *Syrians*, at the command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whoſe Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country, and *Religion*, by whom ſucceeded in the office of High-Prieſt, after his deceaſe. Among theſe none of greater note than *Iaddus*, High-Prieſt at ſuch time as *Alexander* the *Great* having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hieruſalem*, and was encountred by this *Iaddus* in his *Prieſtly* veſtments; aſſuring him in the name of the moſt high God, and making it demonſtrable from the Prophecy of *Daniel*, that he ſhould proſper in his enterprize againſt the *Perſians*. An hope which *Alexander* did imbrace with the greater confidence, becauſe (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his chief Commander) he had once at *Dia*, a City of *Macedon*, ſeen in a dream or viſion ſuch a perſon as *Iaddus* was, ſo habited, and profeſſing the ſame one God; by whom he was encouraged to purſue the action which he had in hand, with aſſurance of victory. And upon this the *Iews* were ſo much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time. For ſhortly after his deceaſe, they were on both ſides plagued by the kings of *Egypt*, and *Syria*, who ranſacked their Cities, ſlaughtered their People, made havock of their goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden meats, and offer ſacrifice unto Idols. At the laſt God raiſed up *Mattathias*, and his five ſonnes to reſiſt theſe inſolencies; who in the reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* king of *Syria*, undertook the protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows, inſomuch that the *Iews* made choice of *Iudas* ſurnamed *Maccabæus* (the eldeſt of the five brethren) for their Prince or Governour.

The *MACCABÆAN* Princes of *IEWRY*.

A.M.

3799 1 *Iudas Maccabæus*, one of the nine Worthies, vanquiſhed three great and puiſſant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lyſias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.
1805 2 *Ionathan*, the brother of *Iudas*, vanquiſhed the forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* king of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacherouſly murdered by *Tryphon*, aſpiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.
3823 3 *Simon*, the brother of *Iudas* and *Ionathan*, ſubdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Ioppe*, and *Iamnia*, and cleared *Iudæa* of the *Syrians*: perfidiouſly ſlain in the courſe of his fortune, by his Son-in-law *Ptolemy*. 8.
3831 4 *Iohannes Hyrcanus*, the third ſonne of *Simon* (his two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolemy*) ſucceeded in the Government. He deſtroyed the Temple on Mount *Garazim*, conquered *Alſamaria*, and ſubdued the *Idumæans*, compelling them to be *Circumciſed*; transferred the war into *Syria*, and dying left the Sovereignty to his eldeſt ſon *Ariſtobulus*.

The *MACCABÆAN* kings of *IUDAH*.

3862 1 *Ariſtobulus*, cauſed himſelf to be crowned, and was the firſt king of *Iudah* after the *Babylonian* captivity; he ſtarved his mother, and ſlew *Antigonus* his brother.
3863 2 *Alexander*, the brother of *Ariſtobulus*, exceedingly inlarged the kingdom of *Iewrie*; by the conqueſt of all *Ituræa*, and ſome parts of *Syria*; but was withall ſo great a Tyrant, that he cauſeleſly ſlew of his own Subjects fifty thouſand in battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face, he left behind him 2 ſons: *Hyrcanus* who was himſelf ſlain by *Herod* after all his troubles, leaving no iſſue male behind him; and *Ariſtobulus* the father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon, of which two *Alexander* was the Father of another *Ariſtobulus*, the moſt beautifull Prince of all his time, and of *Mariamne* the Wife of *Herod*, by whoſe command they were moſt villanouſly murdered.
3905 3 *Alexandra*, by ſome called *Solome*, the wife of *Alexander*, following the counſell of her husband at the time of his death, committed her ſelf and her Children into the hand of the *Phariſees*, then in great power and credit amongſt the people; by means whereof ſhe procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the kingdom for her ſelf, and finally left it to her Children, whoſe diſagreements cauſed the ruine of this famous Family.

4 *Hyrcanus*,

3899. 4. *Hyrcanus*, elder ſonne to *Alexander* a Prince of weak parts and of little action, and therefore at the firſt diſturbed in his ſucceſſion by his younger brother *Ariſtobulus*; but was at length firmly eſtabliſhed in his Throne, by *Pompey*: who carried *Ariſtobulus* with his ſonnes, *Alexander* and *Antigonus*, captives to *Rome*; from whence *Alexander* eſcaping out of priſon, troubled the quiet of his Countrey, till he was ſuprized by *Gabinius*, and ſlain by *Scipio*, two of *Pompeys* Captains: after whoſe death, *Antigonus* by the aid and power of the *Parthians*, deprived *Hyrcanus* of his Kingdome, and cut off his eares; But Revenge ſuddenly followed this villany; he being not long after ſlain by *Marcus Antonius*, and his Kingdom given to a ſtranger. As for the unfortunate *Hircanus* the rightfull Prince of this Country, he remained priſoner for a time amongſt the *Parthians*, till hearing of the death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Iewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whoſe greatneſs he had layed the firſt foundation, and was by him in fine moſt wickedly murdered.

The *Idumæan* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M:

3940. I. *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, ſurnamed the *Great*, ſonne of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, was by *Mark. Antony* created, and by *Auguſtus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdome was more enlarged, and in greater ſplendour, than ever it had been in the time of *David*. A Prince of great magnificence, but of great vices. During his reign, the *Scepter being now departed from*

A.C. *Judah*, the Lord CHRIST was born.

6. 2 *Archelaus*, eldeſt ſonne of *Herod* at the time of his death, ſucceeded with the title of King but in truth and reality poſſeſſed onely of a *Tetrarchie*, or fourth part of the Kingdome, though the beſt and largeſt of the four, containing *Judæa*, *Samaria* and *Idumæa*. The reſt of *Herods* Kingdome was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i.e. the *Tetrarchie* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, given to *Herod Antipa*; Secondly that of *Ituræa*, given to *Philip*, another of the ſonnes of *Herod*; And thirdly, That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lyſanias*. Baniſhed into *France*, his *Tetrarchie* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate*, at our Saviours Paſſion.

16. 3. *Herod* II. ſurnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, on the baniſhment of *Archelaus*, ſucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* family, but not in his *Tetrarchie*; and at laſt followed him in his baniſhment alſo. This is he who murdred *Iohn Baptiſt*, and in whoſe time CHRIST ſuffered.

40. 4. *Herod* III. ſurnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa* the ſon in law, and moſt truſty favourite of *Auguſtus Cæſar* Nephew to *Herod* the *Great*, by his ſon *Ariſtobulus* begotten on *Mariamne* of the race of the *Maccabees*; was by *Caligula* firſt inveſted in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the title of King, and next in that of *Antipas* alſo; and finally by *Claudius*, in that alſo of *Lyſanias*; ſome part of the *Tetrarchie* of *Archelaus* being added unto his dominions. This was the man that murdered *Iames*, and impriſoned *Peter*; and in the end was ſtricken by an Angel, and devoured by wormes.

47. 5. *Agrippa Minor*, ſon of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom Saint *Paul* pleaded in defence of the Goſpel; and the laſt which had the title of King of the *Iews*: for in his time the City of *Hieruſalem* was deſtroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Anno 73.

And here it is to be obſerved, that when *Salmanaſſar* had ſubdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, he ſent new Colonies of his own to plant this Countrey; that ſo fruitful and well-ſituate a part of his Empire might yield its juſt tribute, and not lye open to the fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it ſeemeth) ſo much policy or providence, as thoſe whom they accounted barbarous; having laid the Countrey deſolate, left it unfurniſhed of new Colonies: whereby the *Perſians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entring the *Roman* Empire at this door; have ſucceſſively driven the *Romans* out of the whole houſe. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakned, and almoſt utterly rooted out the *Iewiſh* Nation, we will relate ſome of their particular *maſſacres*: which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the enemy, then juſtly deſerved by themſelves; they whiſhing, though (I ſuppoſe) not deſiring, that the innocent Bloud of our Saviour ſhould *be on them and their children*. Firſt then the inhabitants of *Cæſarea* ſlew of the *Iews* in one day, about 20000, and ſuch as fled were took and impriſoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Iudæa*. To revenge this ſlaughter, the *Iews* ſet upon the *Syrians*; in which ſkirmiſh 13000 of them were ſlain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the ſword; they of *Damaſcus*, 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* Captain, ſlew in *Aſcalon* 10000 of them; and *Geſtius* another Captain, 8040 perſons. Now to come to the wars here managed by *Veſpaſian*. This *Veſpaſian* in the ſiege of *Aphaca*, ſlew and took priſoners, 17130 perſons; In *Samaria*, 11600. perſons; in *Iotopata*, 42200 perſons: In *Ioppa*, ſo many killed and drowned themſelves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the reſt ſo totally periſhed, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hieruſalem*, of the loſs of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were ſlain, and made captives, 45000 perſons; beſides thoſe which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there periſhed 90000. and none left alive but only two women: In *Gaſcala* 5000. men dyed by the ſword; in the City of *Gadera* there were ſlain 32200, beſides an infinite number of ſuch as had drowned themſelves. In *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the ſword, and partly by the famine; the worſer enemy of the two, there were found 2000 in prives and ſinks; and 9700 taken priſoners, inſomuch that 30 *Iews* were ſold for a penny. So punctual was the *Divine Iuſtice* in *retaliating* to this wretched people, according to the mea-

Arabia Petræa.

ſure of their iniquities; that they who bought their Saviour for thirty *pence*, ſhould be ſold at thirty for a peny in the open market.

Now that *Jeruſalem* was able to contain ſuch a number of people, is evident, in that when *Ceſtius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the *High-Prieſt* did at his requeſt, number the people which came thither to eat the *Paſchal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand living ſouls, all ſound and purified: For to leapers, or men having a flux of ſeed, or women in their monethly terms, or to ſtrangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid ſiege to the City, it was in the feaſt of the *Paſſover*, when moſt of the people were there aſſembled; God (as it were) having thus impriſoned them. All theſe maſſacres, beſides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite number which were ſlain in the fields and villages, which drowned themſelves, and which were privately made away, amounting all to almoſt 2000000 of people, hapned in the compaſs of four years; beginning at the 12 of *Nero*, and ending at the 2 of *Veſpaſian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miſerable people, having ſtirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the laſt under *Adrian* the Emperors: were generally baniſhed their native Countrey, and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwiſe then as ſtrangers. After this diſſolution, the *Jews* were diſperſed all over the world, and eſpecially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell: yet they found every where ſo little favor, that having divers times been put to grievous mulcts and ranſoms, they were at laſt thruſt out of moſt of the Kingdoms of *Europe* alſo. They were baniſhed out of *England* by *Edward* the firſt, *Anno* 1290 Out of *France*, by *Philip* the Fair, 1307. Out of *Spain*, by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charls* the fift, 1539 Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romiſh* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*, in moſt Cities of *Italy*, eſpecially *Rome* it ſelf, where there are no leſs then 15000. or 20000 of them; and alſo in the Popes Countrey of *Avignion*. The reaſon why they are permitted to live thus under the Popes noſe, is pretended to be an expectation of their converſion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reaſon being the benefit hence ariſing to his Holineſs coffers: the hopes of their converſion being very ſmall, and the means leſs. For beſides the ſcandal, *datum & acceptum*, by the *Papists* fond worſhipping of Images, ſo peremptorily contrary to the firſt table of the Law: they are not permitted to ſee any book of the Chriſtian Religion, no not ſo much as the New-Teſtament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) becauſe at their converſion they muſt quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill-gotten, and by conſequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptiſm they promiſe to renounce. They have alſo a Synagogue at *Amſterdam*, and are pretty thick ſpred over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who notwithſtanding ſo hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they uſed to ſay in deteſtation of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unleſs he be firſt baptized. And though their multitudes be ſo great both in *Theſſalonica*, and *Conſtantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 perſons; yet are they not only contemned and hated, but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous aſſembly of the common people, and conſtantly every *Eaſter*, whereſoever they be, in danger of death. Inſomuch that if a *Jew* do but ſtir out of doors betwixt *Maundie Thurſday* at noon, and *Eaſter Eve* at night; the *Chriſtians* of the Eaſt amongſt whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be ſure to ſtone them; becauſe at that time, they buffeted, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* Dominions, becauſe imployed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhauncing the publike tributes, which they exact with all ſeverity that may be, and improve unto the moſt. And no leſs hated in all parts of the the *Chriſtian* world, as enemies to the *Croſs of CHRIST*: ſo unclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaiſm*, and ſo abhorring from the converſation of other men; that is not poſſible that they ſhould reap any other harveſt, then contempt and ſcorn, from thoſe amongſt whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief. They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; eſpecially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like dogs, and uſed like ſlaves, yet never ſhew ſo much as an angry countenance. A Nation which will thrive whereſoever they come, but moſt by *uſury* and *brocage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and thoſe once forfeited, never more redeemable. The beſt of both *Sexes* ſaid to have an unſavory rankneſs, not incident (if not cauſed by ſluttiſhneſs) to other people: from whom as different in their habit, as in their *Religion*. And as for that, they retain ſtill *Circumciſion*, as the bade and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many ceremonies not preſcribed by the Law, nor obſerved by the Antients: placing a void chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be preſent, though unſeen, at the ſolemnity. And upon this they are ſo beſotted, that they conceive the female ſex uncapable of eternal life, becauſe not capable of *Circumciſion*; and therefore uſe to name them with no other ceremony, then at the ſix weeks end to have ſome yong wenches lift up the Cradle with the childe in it; which ſhe that ſtandeth at the head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabboth* ſo extreamly doting, that they have added to the *ſuperſtitions* left them by the *Phariſees*: And herein they are ſo preciſe, that if a *Jew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the evening fall ſo ſhort of his journeys end, that it amounts to more then 2000. Cubits, or ſix Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* journer; there muſt he ſit him down and keep his *Sabboth*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way ſide, without fear of winde or weathes, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *periculo latronum prædonumq; omni, penuria item omni cibi potuſq; neglectis*, as *Buxdorfius* hath it. And ſo far have they gone in deſpight of Chriſt, as to declare it unlawful to lift *the Ox or Aſs out of a ditch*; permitted in the ſtricteſt times of *Phariſaical* rigor. So pertinacious in retaining the *difference of meats and drinks*, that they will by no means ſit at the ſame table with other men, and ſo preciſe in the dreſſing of it, that they will eat of no fleſh but of their own killing onely; and that too with ſuch cautions and reſervations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or diſlocated, they will ſell the whole beaſt to the

Chriſtians

Christians for a very trifle. Beneficial in that onely to the neighbouring Christians. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies; as for fear the wine would be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes, that there is no great Warrier stirring, but they look upon him as the man; till some sad tragedy or other, which they suffer under that perswasion, makes them see there error: promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a restitution of their Kingdome; and such felicities ther ein, in the literal sense of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more *mystical* and sacred meaning. That in good time (but Gods, not theirs) they shall be made partakers of the several blessings which those Texts do speak of, is both the hope and wish of all pious men; who cannot choose but grieve to behold the *natural branches*, so long dismembred and cut off from the *tree of life*. And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by Saint *Paul*: who said expressely, that when the *fulness of the* Gentiles *is once come in, that then all* Israel *shall be saved*; *Rom.* 11. 25, 26. The words are so plainly positive that they need no commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the antients, besides the constant current of most modern writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their *conversion to the Gospel*, which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanasius*, *Hierome*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorram*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the *Reformed* Churches; besides divers others of great note, so expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth desire to see, may find them with the expositions of most *Christian* Writers, in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, entituled *De generali & novissima* Judæorum *vocatione*; and thither I referre the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of Saint *Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita* Judæi *perierunt, ut nullæ de illorum salute spes super sit*; The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remain some hopes of their salvation. Of their *Salvation* then by the Gospel of *Christ*, when the *fulness of the Gentiles* is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their restitution to their *temporal* Kindom, is a further question; and not so cleerly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be somewhat in that Book which may seem to intimate it. That the opinion of being restored by the *Messiah* to that temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongst *Christs Disciples*, as the rest of the *Iews*; is, as I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel. In such a Kingdome and no other, did the two sonnes of *Zebedee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master: and the same was it and no other, which all of them expected, as appeareth by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke* 24. 21. that *Christ should have restored unto* them. *We thought* said he, that this would have proved the man, that should have *redeemed Israel*. Redeemed *Israel*? from what? from sin and Satan, or the curse and bondage of the Law? Not so, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῦ ζυγῦ τῆς δουλείας; but from the yoke of vassallage, which the *Romans* had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him saying, *Lord wilt thou at this time, restore again the Kingdome of Israel*? *Acts* 1. 6. In answer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no deniall, as unto the *thing*, nor tells them that they never must expect such a *restauration*; but only puts them off as unto the *time*, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father, in whose hands the disposing of all *Kingdomes* was. *It is not for you* (saith he) *to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power*, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their *Kingdome* also; though not in the τὸ νῦν, at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a secret, which the *Father* hath reserved to himself alone.

But leaving these speculations of a restitution of the Throne of *Israel*, and the great power and privileges it may then enjoy; let us look back on the estate in which it flourished in the former times, when the forces and Revenue of it were at the highest. And first for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is said 2 *Chron.* 9 13) to 666 *Talents* of Gold, besides the benefits of his *Customes* and *Impositions*; which cometh to two Millions, and nine hundred ninety and seven thousand pounds, of yearly income. A vast summe for such a litle Kingdome. Nor can we reckon them at less, if they were not greater, in the time of *David*: of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22. 14. that he left to *Solomon* an hundred thousand *Talents* of Gold, and ten hundred thousand *Talents* of Silver, towards the building of the Temple: besides three thousand *Talens* of Gold, and seven thousand *Talents* of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 *Chron.* 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jews Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at four thousand and five hundred pound, and a *Talent* of Silver, at three hundred seventy five pound; will amount in our money to eight hundred and forty millions, and one hundred twenty and five thousand pounds. So past a summe, that it had been sufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in those places we are to understand a far lesser summe, than the ordinary *Hebrew Talents*: which whether it doth there signifie a *Sicle* onely, which is half a Crown of *English* money, as *Eupolemus*, cited by *Eusebius*, was of opinion; or that every *Talent* of Gold, came to three golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five shillings of *English* money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomasticon*; I am not able to determine. But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions & two hundred ninety & five thousand pounds: a vast summe for a King to leave in ready money, which was alwaies exercised in war. And though I doe not find expressly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto, after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written 2 *Kings* 18. 14. that the yearly *tribute* imposed upon *Hezekiah*, by the King of *Assyria*, was three hundred *Talents* of Silver, and thirty *Talents* of Gold; amounting (according to the ordinary *Hebrew Talent*, (which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred pounds

The Kings of *Hierusalem.*

of *English* money: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* must be thrice as much, above that tribuet; Else the *Assyrian* had not left him a subsistance for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this Crown were less to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*: considering his vast expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon *Augustus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death; not paralleld by any King before or since, though of a larger and more ample territory than he stood possessed of.

What forces the Kings of the *Hebrews* were able to bring into the field, may best be estimated by the muster which *David* made, when he numbred the People: the enrolment of such as were able to bear arms, and fit for service; coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting men, in *Judah* onely, and eight hundred thousand men, in the Tribes of *Israel*. Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field so vast a multitude; but when the Kingdomes were divided, and warre denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almost the whole number brought into the field: that is to say, eight hundred thousand on the side of *Jeroboam*, the King of *Israel*; and four hundred thousand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that small Kigdome, *Asa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zerah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand men which was more than the enrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdome; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief: had not that God who said to *Abraham*, that his *seed should be as the stars of Heaven for multitude*, been able to have made it good.

As for the story and affairs of this Countrey since the time of *Adrian*, the *Iews* being all expelled their native Soyl, and *Christianity* in fine prevailing over all those parts; it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by men of that *Religion* onely: in this Countrey so advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the miracles of *Christ* our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his *Disciples*. In the year 615. the *Persians*, under the conduct of *Chosroes* their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of *Hierusalem* also: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperour *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Cross* on which *Christ* suffered, out of the hands of the *Pagans*; carried it with as great a triumph into *Constantinopole*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hierusalem*. But this glory and rejoycing did not long continue: For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the *Persians*, it was again conquered and subdued by *Homar*, or *Aumar*, *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, Anno 637 Under this yoak the captivated *Christians* had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant but not the tyranny: the *Turks* about the year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their steed. Twenty years did the *Christians* languish under this oppression, when one *Peter* an *Hermite*, travelling for devotion to the *holy Land*, and being an eye-witness of the miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his addresses to Pope *Urban* the second, acquainting him with the sad condition of the poor *Christians* in those Countries. A *Councill* thereupon is called at *Clermont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to imploy the *Christian* Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home;) did so effectually advance and endeer the business: that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting men, under severall Leaders, undertook the service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Asia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and most of the strong Towns of *Syria*; they incamped before *Hierusalem*, and in short time took it, *Anno* 1099. after it had been four hundred years and upwards, in the power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *William* the *Conquerour*: but he upon the hopes of the Kingdome of *England*, refused honour; never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusall. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorreine*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of, though on the day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a *Christian* Prince, to wear in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World ware a *Crown of Thornes*

The Kings of *Hierusalem.*

1099. 1. *Godfrey* of *Bouillion*, Duke of *Lorreine*.

1100. *Baldwin* of *Lorreine*, brother of *Godfrey*, wonne *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.

1118. 3. *Baldwin* II. surnamed of *Bruges*, Cousin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the Former Kings; overcame the Sultan of *Damascus*, and inlarged his Kingdome by the addition of *Tyre*.

1131. 4. *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having maryed *Millisent* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 2d. succeeded after his decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his horse.

1142. 5. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Fulk* and *Millisent*, fortified *Gaza* against the *Calph* of *Ægypt*; and recovered *Paneade* from the King of *Damascus*.

1164. 6. *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the 3d. so distressed the great *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdome transferred on *Sarracon*, the *Turkish* Generall.

1173. 7. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turkes* in a fight neer *Ascalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.

1185. 8. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Sibyll* the Sister of *Baldwin* the 4th. by *William* Marquess of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poisoned by his own mother, having reigned onely five moneths, to make way for her second husband, called

1185. 9. *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the last King of *Hierusalem*, that had the possession of the City, during whose time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Ægypt* won that Kingdome, *Anno* 1187. which his Succes-

sours

fours defended against all invasions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the first, Emperour of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Ægypt*, to his Empire. When *Hierusalem* was taken by the *Christians*, it is said that the *German* Emperours name was *Fredericus*; the Popes, *Urbanus*; the *Hierosalymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and that so also were they called, when the *Christians* again lost it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the life of *Henry* the second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not see.

After the taking of *Hierusalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Christians* retired their forces into some of the other Towns of the *Holy land*; which they made good against the enemy: and defended them under the government of these three Kings following, viz.

10. *Conrade* Marq. of *Monferrat*, husband of *Isabel* the daughter of *Almericus* King of *Hierusalem*.

11. *Henry* Earl of *Campagne*, second husband of *Isabel*.

12. *John di Brenne*, husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland* as some call her, daughter of *Conrade* and *Isabel*, the last *Christian* King that ever had possession in *Syria* or *Palestine*: inhabited ever-since by *Moores* and *Arabians*; few *Christians*, and not many *Turks* but such as be in garrisons onely. *Yoland* the daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her right intituled himself King of *Hierusalem*: and so now do the Kings of *Spain*, as heirs unto, and possessors of the Kingdome of *Naples*. Concerning which title it would not be amisse to insert this story. When the wars, in Queen Elizabeths time, were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were *Commissioners* of both sides appointed to treat of peace. They met at a Town of the *French* Kings, and first it was debated in what tongue the negotiation should be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *English* Commissioners a shrewd gird, proposed the *French* tongue as most fit: it being a language which the *Spaniards* were well skilled in; and for these gentlemen of *England*, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the language of their fellow-subjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *Engeland*. Ny in faith my masters, replyed Doctor *Dale*, (a Civil Lawyer and one of the masters of the Requests) the *French* tongue is too vulgar for a business of this secrecy and importance, especially in a *French* Town. We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the language of *Hierusalem*, whereof your master is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this title.

The Armes of the Christian Kings in *Hierusalem* was *Luna*, a cross crosset crossed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hierusalem Cross*. But for their forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purses and the Forces of the *Western* Christians; more or less active in that service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knight-hood in this Kingdome after the recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, Were

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, said to be instituted originally by Queen *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine* the Great, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed first built: but more truly by *Philip* King of *France*, Anno 1099. at such time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Armes the same with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, representing the five wounds of our Saviour *CHRIST*. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of blood and fortunes; now saleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a Convent of *Franciscans* doth reside neer that Temple.

2. Of Saint *John of Hierusalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, Anno 1114. and confirmed by *Pope Paschalis* the second. Their badge or Cognizance, is a White Crosse of eight points. Their duty to defend the *Holy land*, relieve Pilgrims, and succour *Christian* Princes against the Infidels. They were to be of noble parentage, and extraction: and grew in time to such infinite riches, especially after the suppression of the *Templars* (most of whose lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of *Christendome*, no fewer than 20000. Mannours; and of such reputation in all *Christian* Kingdomes, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accompted the Prime Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue it not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*: who on that change, seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries, and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reside: advertising onely at the present, that their first *Great Master* was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the last that had his residence in the *Holy land*, one *John de Villiers*, in whose time being driven out of *Palestine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret* Anno 1309. to the Isle of *Rhodes*. Outed of which by *Solomon* the *Magnificent* Anno 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of *Charles* the fift Anno 1530. they were setled in *Malta*: and there we shall speak farther of them.

3. *Of the Templers*, instituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their ensign was a *Red Cross*, in token that they should shed their blood to defend *Christs* Temple. They were burried *Cross-legged*, and wore on their backs the figure of the Cross; for which they were by the common people called Cross-backs or Crouch-backs, and by corruption, Crook-backs. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaster*, second son to our *Henry* the third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the fourth a foolish occasion to faign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was descended) was indeed the eldest son of King *Henry* the third, but for his *crookedness* and deformity, his younger brother was preferred to the Crown before him. These Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their subordinate governours, in which they possessed no lesse than 16000 Lordships: the greatness of which Revenue was not the least cause of dissolving the Order. For *Philip* the fair, King of *France*, had

a plot to inveſt one of his ſons with the Title of *King* of *Heruſalem*, and hoped to procure of the *Pope* the revenue of this order to be laid unto that Kingdome, for ſupport of the Title: which he thought he might the better do, becauſe *Clement* the fift then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had transferred his ſeat from *Rome* to *Avignion*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being diſſolved, the lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hoſpitallars*, or of Saint *Iohn*. The crimes objected againſt this Order were, firſt, their revolt from their profeſſed obedience unto the Patriarch of *Ieruſalem*, who was their viſitor; Secondly, their unſpeakable pride; and thirdly their ſins againſt nature. The houſe of our Law-ſtudents in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief houſe of the Knights of this order in *England*: and was by the Knights of Saint *John*, whoſe principal manſion was in *Smithfield*, ſold unto the ſtudents of the Laws, for the yearly rent of 10 l. about the middle of the reign of *Edward* the third.

Theſe three orders M. *Selden* (and deſervedly) putteth not in his *Titles of honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiſs a woman, honourary Knight-hood, and the love of Ladies, going together like vertue and reward.

Thus much for *Paleſtine*.

OF

OF

ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the East, *Chaldæa*, and the Bay or *Gulf* of *Persia*; on the West, *Palestine*, some part of *Ægypt*, and the whole course of the *Red-Sea*; on the North, the River *Euphrates*, with some parts of *Syria* and *Palestine*; and on the South, the main Southern Ocean. But at some times the name extended somewhat further. *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as to *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tigranes*; and *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greatest part also of *Mesopotamia*; because situate on the West of the River *Tigris*, and consequently the Western part of the *Assyrian* Empire, as the word *Ereb* doth import; from whence some derive the *Etymon*, and name hereof. Which notwithstanding, in the general esteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the name, there be some that derive it from *Arabus*, a supposed Son of *Apollo* and *Babilonia*; others from three suppositious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand Sons of *Cham*. Who is fabled to have sent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deserta*; *Petreius*, into *Arabia Petræa*: and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Felix*, the dwelling place of the *Sabæans*. And for this trim conceit, we are beholding to the *Berosus*, of *Frier Annius*. More probable is their conjecture, who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, signifying *black*; by reason of the swarth or tawny complexion of the inhabitants, who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witness hath informed us of them; on the same reason as one of the Provinces of *Affrica*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the most likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which signifieth in the *Hebrew* a Thief or Robber, such as the *Arabians* in all ages, have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *In the ways thou hast sate for them, as an Arabian in the wilderness*, as our English reads it; *Tanquam Latro insidians in solitudine*, saith the Vulgar Latine, *Jer.* 32. St. *Hierome*, though he render it, *quasi Latro*, as the Vulgar doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth also signifie an *Arabian*, *quæ gens latrociniis dedita usq; hodie incursat Palestinæ fines, &c.* which people being addicted to theft and robbery, do to this day (saith he) infest the coasts of *Palestine* which border neer them; and lay in wait for those which had any occasion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the observation of *Martin del Rio*; *Adeo latrociniis infames sunt, ut Hebræis Arabs, latronem denotat, sicut Chananæas Mercatorem, Chaldæus Mathematicum*; *i. e.* So infamous were they for their theft and frequent robberies, that it was as familiar with the *Jews* to call a thief by the name of *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to signifie a Merchant, or to use the word *Chaldean* for a *Mathematician*. In the same sense they came in the succeeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak* or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which signifieth to steal; whereof more anon: No otherwise then one of the *American* Islands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Insula latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thievishness of the Inhabitants, who had stoln his Cock-boat.

I have staid the longer on the name, because it doth express so much of the *Character* of the people also; living for the most part upon spoil and robbery, as all that travel that way know by sad experience. Of mean statures, raw-boned, tawny or swart-complexioned, having feminine voyces; of swift, but noiseless gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no set-dwellings (except onely in *Arabia Felix*) living in tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of pasturage, and hope of booty: for this last cause hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countreys; and having robbed, retire with a marvellous speed. Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpose, a beast of most incredible swiftness, satisfied with little food, though without water to it, and will easily carry a man a hundred miles a day, without any refreshing. Nor are such horses as they have, though but poor and lean, of less speed, or less patient of travel: whom they feed twice a day with the milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to outgo an *Ostrich*. As now, so formerly, all horsemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and spoil than to deal with Souldiers; as riding stark naked, and trusting rather to the swiftness of their horses than any other way of resistance, where they were opposed.

Their language is the *Arabick*, so called from this Countrey, but not proper to this Countrey onely. Spoken in all places where *Mahometanism* hath got any footing: The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick offices of their Religion performed in it, and the tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the Latine: but made the natural language in *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, the three *Arabia's*, *Egypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdom of *Morocco*. A great extent, but short of that which some give to it, who will have it spoken in two parts of the whole habitable world.

The Christian faith was first here planted by St. *Paul*, of whose being in *Arabia*, after his conversion, he telleth us, *Gal.* 1. 17. to which the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great increase, in the time of *Maviæ* their Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian* the first; *Moses* a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many miracles, being created their first Bishop; after more generally propagated over all the Countrey, by their

Arabia Deserta.

their King *Alamundarus*; *Anastasius* then reigning in the East. But long it had not been received, when supplanted by *Mahometanism*, which had its first beginning here; and hath so universally overspred the whole face hereof, that now there are no *Christians* left in all the Country, except onely in *Eltor*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*; in *Petra*, the chief City of *Arabia Petræa*; and in two small Monasteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of so unequal and *heterogeneous* composition, that no general *Character* can be given of it: and therefore we must look upon it, as it stands divided into *Arabia Deserta*, 2. *Arabia Petræa*, 3. *Arabia Felix*, and 4. the *Arabick* Islands.

1. ARABIA DESERTA.

ARABIA DESERTA (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the East, with *Babylonia*; on the West, with parts of *Palestine*, and *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Mesopotamia*, from which last it is parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by some parts of *Petræa*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deserta*, from the vast deserts which are in it, and the un-inhabitedness thereof; called also by *Aristides*, *Aspera*, from the roughness; by *Servius*, *Inferior*, or the Lower, in regard of the situation of it more towards the River; by *Lucian*, from the frequent bottoms and valleys in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally, by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the *blackness* or swarthiness of the People, the word in *Hebrew* signifying as much as *Sun-burnt*; whence the people are by some writers called *Kedareni*; and by *Pliny Cedræi*.

But the common and most usual name of it, is *Arabia Deserta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a sandy Country full of vast *deserts*; in which all such as travel use to carry their Provisions with them, and to guide themselves in their journey by the course of the *Stars*, though in some parts which lie neer *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it have some few towns, and those resorted to by Merchants. But this is onely in those parts, the residue of the Country being so desolate and waste, that one who had travelled in it, doth describe it to be so wilde a place, *ut nec homines nec bestiæ videantur, nec Aves; imo nec arbores nec germen aliquod, sed non nisi montes saxosi, altissimi, asperrimi*, A Country, saith *Guilandinus Melchior*, where are found neither men nor beasts, no not so much as birds or trees, nor grass, nor pasture, but onely stony, high, and most craggy mountains.

The people for the most part, used to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, Psal. 120. v. 5. which they removed from place to place, as the pasture for their cattel failed them: taking no other care for houses than the boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scenitæ*, or men dwelling in Tents (in which respect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians Kedarim*, from the like course of life which these *Kedareni* or *Arabians* lived:) but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* also, where they use the same kinde of living: of whom more anon.

Yet notwithstanding most memorable is this Country in sacred story, both for the dwelling place of *Job*, and the habitation of those Wise-men, who came out of the East unto *Hierusalem*, to worship *Christ*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an inhabitant here, appeareth by the situation of his dwelling, being in the East, as is said in the story of him, *chap.* 1. *v.* 3. that is to say, in the Country lying East to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called simply by the name of the *East*, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Children of the East*, are meant expresly the inhabitants of *Arabia the Desart*, who together with the *Midianites*, and *Amalikites* oppressed those of *Israel*. Secondly, by the ill neighborhood which he found from the *Sabæans*, who inhabited in this part also; and of the *Chaldeans* mentioned, *v.* 17. the next borderers to it: and Thirdly, by the inconsequences which needs must follow, if we place him, as some do, in the land of *Us*, neer unto *Damascus*. For how improbable must it be for the *Sabæans* of the *Red-Sea*, or the *Persian-Gulf*, or the *Chaldeans*, dwelling on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Jobs* Cattel grazing neer *Damascus*, the Countreys being dis-joyned by such vast *Desarts*, and huge Mountains, that it is impossible for any strangers to pass them, especially with any numbers of Cattel, in respect of those large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of water in all that passage? and how impossible must we think it, that the pen-man of the story of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the *Holy Ghost*, should be so mistaken, as to place *Jobs* dwelling in the *East*, if the *Land of Us*, wherein he dwelt bordered on *Damascus*; which lay not on the East, but the North of *Canaan*? A City called *Us*, or *Uz*, there was, situate neer *Damascus*, so called from *Uz*, the son of *Aram*, Gen. 10 23. A *Land of Uz* also amongst the *Edomites*, spoken of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, chap. 4 v. 21. so called from *Uz*, one of the posterity of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 28. And finally, a *Land* of *Us* or *Uz*, so called from *Huz* the son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*, mentioned *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that situate in this Tract, the habitation and possession of that righteous man: the Country hereabouts being called *Ausitis*, and the people *Ausitæ*, though by mistaking in the *transcripts*, we finde them named Αυσιται, or *Æsitæ*, in the fifth of *Ptolomy*. The like I say also of the *Wise-men*, or *Magi*, who came to *Hierusalem* from the *East*, that they dwelt in this Country, where the said *Ptolomy* placeth the City *Saba*; according unto that fore-signified by the Royal Psalmist, that the *Kings of Arabia and Saba should bring their gifts*, Psal. 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the situation of the Country lying East of *Canaan*; the authority of those Fathers who lived neerest to the time of our Saviours birth, *Justin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the testimony of *Guillandinus Melchior* abovementioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out of *Mesopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wise-

men

men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Desert*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judged, called *Semiscasach*. *Arabia Petræa.*

Cities of note, in a Countrey so desart and uninhabited, we must look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those onely, who live roming and robbing up and down. *Ptolomy* gives the names of forty Cities and villages in it (*civitates & vicos*, saith the *Latine*) the memory of most of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1. *Sabe*, or *Saba*, the habitation of those *Sabæans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sheba*, the grand-son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.*25.3. Of whom, and of the rest of that line, it is said, in the sixt verse of that chapter, that *Abraham gave them gifts, and sent them away from Isaac East-ward unto the East Countrey*: now called *Semiscasac*, as is thought by *Melchior.* 2. *Theman*, which possibly may be the Countrey of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the *visitants* of *Job*. As 3. *Shuah*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence surnamed the *Shukite*. 4. *Tharsacas*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5. *Zagmais*, near the *Persian* Gulf, in the Countrey of the *Raubeni*, supposed to be descended from *Mishma* the fourth son of *Ismael*. 6. *Phunton* the 36th 7. *Oboth* the 37th mansion of the Children of *Israel*. 8. *Rheganna*, another of those named by *Ptolomy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of note now being more then *Semiscasac*, before named, I finde nothing certain.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey, of whom there is any certain Constat, were the posterity of *Huz*, the son of *Nachor*, and the sons of *Abraham* by *Keturah*; of whose being settled in these parts, we had before good testimony from the Book of God: and intermixt with them lived some of the descendants of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adbeel* the third, and the *Raubeni*, from *Mishmai* the fifc son of *Ismael*, as some say they do, I see no reason but the whole Countrey might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the second son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations spoken of by *Ptolomy*, that is to say, the *Orcheni. Chaucabeni*, *Ausitæ*, *Masæi*, *Materni*, and *Agræi*, besides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already specified. But being a dis-joynted people, not under any settled form of Government, not possessed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or else unconquerable, in respect of their Countrey, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldeans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty Monarchy; subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme power. Not looked at by the Romans, or regarded by them, who aimed at wealth and honor, in their expedition: nor otherwise subject to the *Turk* at this present time, then as they can make use of him and his protection in their frequent robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish* Empire, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his subjects.

2. *ARABIA PETRÆA.*

ARABIA PETRÆA (now called *Barra*, *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*) hath on the East, *Arabia Deserta*, and part of *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West, the *Isthmus*, which joyneth *Affrica* to *Asia*, and part of the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North, *Palestine*; and on the South, a long ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockiness of the soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Æthicus*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the Hebrews, *Chus*, generally translated *Ethiopia*; by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathæa*, which name it had from *Nabaioth*, the eldest of the twelve sons of *Ismael*, though properly that name belonged onely to those parts of it, which lay next *Judæa*: fruitful, though joyning to the Desarts: and thus remembred by the Poet, as an Eastern Countrey.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabathæaque regna recessit.
Eurus unto the East did flie,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Countrey much of the same nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich land, flourishing with variety of trade and traffick. But for the most part, full of untravelable Desarts, except to those which carry their provisions with them for fear of starving, and go in great companies, or *Carvans* for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Egypt*, and *Babylonia*; the commodities whereof they lay on *Camels*, which are the ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the Desarts. For upon one of these *Camels*, they will lay ordinarily 600. and sometimes 1000. pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the *Camel* carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer then 500. going in one voyage; the Merchant, if he scapeth robbing, makes a rich return. Of these Desarts, the most memorable are those of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the Israelites so long wandred: not beautified with grass nor adorned with trees, the Palm onely excepted; nor furnished with water, but by raign or miracle.

The people of it for the most part, descended of the sons of *Chus*, and *Ismael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*, descending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amalek*, the grand-son of *Esau*, mention *Gen.*36.6. but all united at the last in the name of *Saracens*. This name

Arabia Petræa.

name derived, as ſome think, from *Sarra*, ſignifying a deſart, and *Jaken* which ſignifieth to inhabit, becauſe they live for the moſt part in theſe deſart places: as others ſay, from *Sarak*, ſignifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This laſt moſt ſuitable to their nature, and beſt liked by *Sclaiger*. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab Eſarak*; i.e. λωστρικοὶ νομαδικοὶ, *quod rapinis victitent*. So he, in his ſecond book *de Emend. Temp.* A people not reckoned of in the former times, till made remarkable by their conqueſt of a great part of the world; but always counted warlike and martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*, 'The *Saracens* (ſaith he) whom we are neither to wiſh 'for our friends, or enemies, are a martial people, half-naked, clad as far as the groin with painted 'Caſſocks, ranging up and down on *Camels*, and ſwift horſeſs as well in peace as troubleſome times. 'Not uſed unto the Plough, to plant trees, or get their living by tillage, they wander from one place to 'another, without houſe or home, or any conſtant dwelling place, or the uſe of Laws; nor can they 'long endure the ſame either Air or Soil, the manner of their lives being always flitting, like ravenous 'Kites; which if they chance to ſpy a prey, ſnatch it up in their flight, or if they chance to faſten on it 'as it lieth on the ground, they make no long ſtay. Their food is chiefly upon Veniſon, and ſtore of 'milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but altogether ignorant of corn and wine. Their wives they hire onely for a time, though for a ſhew of Matri-'mony they preſent their husbands, with a ſpear and a tent, as in way of dowry; but they part with 'them when they pleaſe. Both Sexes moſt extremely given to carnal luſts; the women as rambling as 'the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their children where they fall, without more care of them. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1. That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which paſſing thorow this Countrey endeth his courſe in the *Red Sea*. 2. *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent* of *Egypt*, which riſing in this Countrey, and paſſing by the borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better ſtored, and thoſe of eminent obſervation, as 1. Mount *Sinai*. famous in all ages, for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monaſtery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The hill ſo high, that both ſhores of the *Red Sea* may be thence ſeen; but eaſie of aſcent, by reaſon of ſteps cut out of the rock: which notwithſtanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monaſtery made an Epiſcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the letters of *Eugenius* Biſhop thereof to the Arch Duke *Charls*, *anno* 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had ſold all their lands, and that himſelf and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Veſſels, and take up money on uſury. Here is alſo a *Meſque*, or *Meſquit* of *Turks*, who reſort in pilgrimage to this hill, as well as the Chriſtians. 2. Mount *Horeb*, where the *Iſraelits* worſhipped the *Molten Calf*, about a mile and an half diſtant from Mount *Sinai*, but not ſo high: on the top of which is a Church alſo; and a Monaſtery of *Coloires*, or *Greek Monks*, at the bottom, exceeding hoſpitable to ſtrangers, whom they entertain of free coſt, and cheerfully ſhew them all the places worth obſervation, which the Scripture memioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Pto'omy* called *Melani*, or the Black Mountains; the laſt now called *Orel*. 3. Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Petra*, the name-giver to this part, at firſt called *Recem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Selah*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Beſt known in holy Scripture by the name of *Selah*, beforementioned, which ſignifies the ſame with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and ſtrength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 Kings 14.7 and by him called *Jock-heel*, but in vain beſieged by *Scaurus*, a Roman General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perſwaſion of *Antipater*, to take a ſum of money and raiſe his ſiege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* ſpeed much better at it, his Souldiers being ſtill beat off in all their aſſaults, the very next man to him ſlain with a dart, and himſelf forced to caſt away his *Imperial* habit, and flie for his life; the heavens themſelves, if *Dion* (who is never ſparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting againſt the Romans with thunder, lightning, whirlewinds, and tempeſts, as often as they made any approaches to it. But in the end ſubdued with the reſt of the Countrey. In ſuch eſteem, by reaſon of the ſtrength of it, by the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, that they kept here their choiceſt treaſures; and in the courſe of the *Holy Wars*, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Chriſtians*, as the key that opened the Gates of *Paleſtine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor* beforementioned, the Town is ſituate. The *Metropolis* of the Province when firſt under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latine* Biſhop, when the Chriſtians of the Weſt were the Lords thereof. 2. *Boſra*, ſaid to have been built by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, becauſe by him repaired, when decayed and ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This laſt moſt certain, and for ſuch teſtified by this ancient inſcription, in an ancient coyn, *C O L. BOSTRAN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ?* Memorable alſo for the birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexanders* next Succeſſors; by whom it was cauſed for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the *Metropolitan* dignity removed hither from *Petra*, ſomewhat before the time of *Juſtinian*, but by whom I finde not; and for being the Epiſcopal See of *Titus* (hence ſurnamed) *Boſtrenus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtate*. A City of as great antiquity as the moſt that be, mentioned *Gen.* 36.33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is ſtill remaining, and well known by the name of *Buſſereth*. 3. *Elama*, on a bay of the *Red Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elaniticus*. 4. *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderneſs of *Paran* ſeems to take its name. 5. *Berenice*, ſo called

called from some of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Esion-geber*, one of the Stations or Incamptings of the Children of *Israel*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships, which sailed to *Ophir* in the *East-Indies*. 6. *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderness or Desart of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first incamping of the Tribes of *Israel* after their miraculous passage over the *Red Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalakites*, whom he smote from *Havilah* to this place. 7. *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the son of *Chus*, being the furthest border of these *Amalikites*, and *Ismalites*, on the Gulf of *Persia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8. *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, situate towards the *Red Sea* also; the City of *Jethro*, whose daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moses*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by Gods secret providence directed hither; that keeping the flocks of *Jethro* in the Desarts adjoyning, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages, thorow which he after was to lead the house of *Israel*. 9. *Rephaim*, the incamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*: and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his wife and children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the government of so great a people would else bring upon him. 10. *Kadish-barnes*, the station of the Tribes, when the spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan*, returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Propheteſs. And 11. *Thara*, no less memorable for the mutiny and punishment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abirom*, the place remembred *Numb.* 33. 27. But others will have 12. *Makheloth*, mentioned *v.* 25. of that Chapter, to be the stage of that action; the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their encamping places, being most of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accompted of by *Ptolomy*, as Cities of this Province; but spoken of already in our Description of *Palestine*, to which more properly belonging.

Judæa.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Madianites*, the *Ismalites*, the *Amalikites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiscuously together, are sometimes used for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joseph* of his Brethren being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Ismaelites*, Genes. 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the wife of *Moses*, who questionless was a daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam*, and *Aaron*, called an *Ethiopian* or *Chusite*, as in way of reproach, *Numb.* 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and such as had some special engagemen with or against the Children of *Israel*; we will consider them by themselves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chusites*, *Ethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the same.

And first, the *MADIANITES* were such of the posterity of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, who preserving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themselves from all communion with the idolatrous *Canaanites*, at such time as the rest of their brethren did associate with them; and setled themselves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good offices to the children of *Israel*, as they passed thorow their Countrey. Of these the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judges* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or *Priest* of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: some of which turned *Proselites*, and dwelt with the *Israelites* in *Canaan*; of which race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who slew *Sisera*, was undoubtedly one. The rest, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former courtesies) to withdraw themselves from them; lest they should perish with them in the same destruction. Aftewards we hear little of either people, losing their name in the greater Nation of the *Ismalites*, with whom intermingled; or passing with them into the same common notion of *Arabians*, *Chusites*, or *Ethiopians*.

Secondly, Nor were the *AMALIKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; descended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-son of *Esau* (though I deny not but there are some reasons to be urged against that opinion) and planted on the back of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or *Out-work*. A people mischeivously bent against those of *Israel*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Esau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently set on at *Rephidim*, when they supposed them spent and wearied with their flight from *Egypt*. And though discomfited in that battel, yet they continued in their malice against the *Tribes*, joyning first with the *Canaanites* against them when they were in their *March*; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well setled in their new possessions. A provocation so ill taken by the *Lord oo Hosts*, because unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his resolution from the time of the Battel of *Rephidim*, to put *out the remembrance of Amalek from under Heaven*, *Exod.* 17. 14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Israel* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to set upon them, ond to slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, yea, their sheep and cattel. But some of them escaped this slaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ransacked; but being by him followed on the first intelligence, they were easily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet survived their power; and what they could not do by their forces, they endeavored to effect by joyning with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other enemies of *David*, in their wars against him. And this was *ultimum conamen*, one of the last flashes of their dying light: nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times succeeding, most of the Nation being worn out, and those few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof also dispossessed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, The *ISMAELITES*, descending from *Ismael*, the son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nrtions, and grown wondrous populous, spred themselves over a great part of

Arabia Petræa.

of these three *Arabia's*: all of them either *Theives* or *Merchants*; trading to *Egypt* in *spicery*, and *balm*, and *myrrhe*, or robbing those which traded in the like commodities. Called also *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5. 10. *Psalm* 83, 6, &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient writers. A people for the most part of a vagabond and roguish life, more given to spoil, than any honest course of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed against them; so verifying the prediction which was given of *Ismael*, that he should be a wilde man, *having his hand against every man, and every mans hand against him.* Saint *Hierome* so conceives that Prophecy to have been accomplished. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens* (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were most generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made such foul havock in the world, and were esteemed the common enemies of all Civil Nations. Never so governable in their best and most orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chusites*, and the rest of those Nations: and then no further, then it stood with their lust or liking.

Fourth, As for the *Chusites*, though they permitted the Nations above specified, to inhabit in those Desarts and waste places, which themselves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of most power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deserta*, and the mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the *Old Testament*, by the name of *Ethiopia*, first by the *Septuagit*, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latine*, the *Vulgar* Translation of the Bible, and almost all the other Translations at this day extant. And rendred right enough at first, as in all times since, though by some mistaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* then that in *Affrick*, have transferred thither all those actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The *Septuagint*, no doubt, were not so ignorant of the affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Masters. And he that looks into the History of *Herodotus*, who lived 150. years before that Translation; will finde, that by the *Grecians* they were called *Ethiopians*; and called so questionless from the self same reason; that is to say, the swarthiness, or Sun-burntness of their complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Affrick* were; that name being framed of the *Greek* word Αἴθω, signifying to burn; and Ὤψ, a countenance; by reason of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For speaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, Ἀραβίων δ' ἦν Ἀρσάμης, ὑπ' ὑπερ Αἰγυπτίε οἰκημένων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης, &c. "*Arsames*, "(saith he) was Captain of the *Arabians* (he meaneth the *Troglodites*) and *Ethiopians*, which are be- "yond *Egypt*: but the Eastern *Ethiopians* were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other "in the structure of their bodies, but their hair and voyce onely; the *Eastern Ethiopians* wearing their "hair smooth, those of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops of Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops* "*of Affrica* were arrayed with the skins of beasts. Here then we have an *Asian Ethiopia* in the time of *Herodotus*; the same acknowledged by *Pausanias* an old *Greek* writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: the first amongst the *Seres*, in the North of *Asia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Æthicus*, one of the old *Cosmographers*, published by *Simlerus*, shoot more neer to the mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith that it burieth it self, and runneth under the ground in *Ethiopia*: Which though *Simler* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*, yet questionless that Authour meaneth it of the Countreys about Mount *Taurus*; where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to finde out the situation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the holy Scriptures? For when it is said of *Zipporah* the wife of *Moses*, that she was an *Ethiopian* woman, *Num.* 12. 1. who is well known to have been a native of this Countrey, and when it is said in 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. that *the Lord stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistims, and of the Arabians that were neer the Ethiopians:* it must needs be that the *Ethiopia* there spoken of, must be conterminous to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Countrey wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he *would lay waste the land of Egypt, from the Tower of Syene, even unto the borders of Ethiopia*, chap. 29. 10. that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other: it followeth necessarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, must be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Egypt* most remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all *Geographers* acknowledge to be in the extream South parts thereof, towards the *Cataracts* of *Nilus*. For to expound it as some do, of *Ethiopia* in *Affrick*, on the borders whereof *Syene* stood; and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus* an ancient Writer makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture speak plain *non-sense*: as plain as if a man should say, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands*, from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the sword hath ranged over all *England*, from *Berwich* to *Scotland*. As when we have found this *Ethiopia* of the *Old Testament*, to be neer the *Philistims* on the one side, and the Land of *Egypt* on the other; so may we finde it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: the River *Gihon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia* (or the Land of *Chus*) *Gen.* 2. 13. being no other then a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the translation of the *Septuagint* in reading *Chusites*, or the Land of *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The mistakes (whereof there have been many) which arise from hence, not being to be charged on them or on their *Translation*, but on the *ignorance* of the *Reader*, or *error* of such *Expositors*, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* then *of that in Affrick*, have made the Scriptures speak such things as it never meant, and carried these *Chusites* into the *African Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may

be

be ſaid, that this poſterity of *Chus*, being ſtreightned in their own poſſeſſions, or willing to ſeek new adventures, might have croſſed over the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but ſeven miles broad where narroweſt) and mingling with the ſons of *Ludim* on the other ſide, might either give the name of *Ethiopians* to them, or receive it from them. *Arabia Felix.*

Now to go forwards with the ſtory, the firſt great action attributed to theſe *Chuſites*, or *Arabian Ethops*, incorporated with the reſt of thoſe mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerah*, the King hereof, againſt *Aſa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a *million*, and three hundred Chariots of war (the greateſt Army ever read of in unqueſtioned ſtory) but for all that, diſcomfited by the *Lord of Hoſts*, on the prayers of *Aſa*, and all the ſpoil of that huge Army carried to *Hieruſalem*. After this *Tirrakah*, another of theſe *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Aſſyrian* Kingdom might prove unto him, prepared a puiſſant Army againſt *Senacherib*, then beſieging *Libna*, threatning the conqueſt of all *Judah*, and invading *Egypt*: upon the news of whoſe approach, *Senackeribs* forces which were even upon the gaining of *Peluſium*, the Gate of *Egypt*, were fain to diſlodge and provide for their ſafety. For though *Herodotus* call *Senacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Aſſyria*, yet was he Maſter onely of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Iſrael*, being no more then ſome few Cities of *Petræa*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called ſo onely in reſpect of thoſe parts of *Syria*, and *Meſopotamia*, which were ſometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is ſaid. What part they after took in the great war betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, is not hard to ſay. For beſides that, the ſame *reaſons* of *ſtate* obliging them to ſide with the *Egyptian*, were ſtill in force; their giving *Necho* leave to paſs through their Countrey with his Army, to invade the *Babylonians* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirrakah* and *Zerah*; were Kings of this *Aſian*, and not of the *African Ethiopia*, is moſt clear and evident: partly in regard the Kings of *Egypt* would never ſuffer ſuch huge Armies to paſs thorow the whole length of their Dominions; but principally becauſe it is ſaid in the holy Scriptures, that *Aſa* having overthrown that vaſt Army of *Zerah*, ſmote all the Cities about *Gerar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philiſtims*, but were then poſſeſſed by theſe *Chuſites*, and their Aſſociates. After this, either as *Confederates* or Subjects, we finde them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his war on *Greece*: and like enough it was, that in *Alexanders* march from *Egypt* towards *Perſia*, they ſubmitted to him, as did all the other Countreys thorow which he paſſed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, ſent *Athenæus* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambuſh was diſcomfited by them. *Demetrius* the ſon of *Antigonus*, thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to ſue for peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* race in *Syria*, we finde them governed by Kings of their own, moſt of them called by the name of *Aretas*; of which one was of ſpecial note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucidans*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Countrey; and being a great ſtickler in the wars of *Jewry*, in the time of *Hirlanus* the fourth, King of the Race of the *Maccabees*, to whom at the requeſt of *Antipater*, the father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on thoſe hopes was poſſeſſed of *Medaba*, and other Towns of good importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hirlanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jewry*, to which, as parts of *Ilgrea*, and anciently poſſeſſed by the Tribes of Iſrael, he might make ſome claim. Another there was of the ſame name, and of no leſs power, whom we finde to have been warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the battel of *Actium*, and for the moſt part vanquiſhed by him; and finally a third of more power then either, mentioned by St. *Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damaſcus*. In the flouriſhing of the *Roman* fortunes, the Kings hereof having firſt aided *Mithridates* and *Tygranes*, in the war againſt them, ſubmitted themſelves unto *Lucullus*, being then no neerer to them then *Armenea major*. The like they did to *Pompey* alſo, being then in *Judea*. Firſt vanquiſhed by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Auguſtus*; but the victory not improved to an abſolute conqueſt, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his perſonal preſence, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquiſhed, and brought into the form of a *Roman* Province: but ſo that they had Kings of their own (*Vaſſals* and *Feudataries* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the riſe of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3. *ARABIA FELIX.*

ARABIA FELIX is bounded the Eaſt, with the *Perſian*; on the Weſt, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North, with a long ridge of of mountains, which part it from *Deſerta* and *Petræa*; and on the South, with the boundleſs Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impaſſable mountains; in ſituation and figure much reſembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being eſteemed the moſt fruitful and pleaſant Countrey in all *Aſia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balſamum*, *Frankincenſe*, *Gold*, and *Precious Stones*: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincenſe*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a ſtory, that when *Alexander* in his Adolaſcency or boyage was ſacrificing to the Gods, and caſt into the fire with both hands great ſtore of *Frankincenſe* and *Myrrhe*; *Leonidas*, his Governor, bid him be more ſparing of thoſe precious and dear commodities, till he was Maſter of the Countrey in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembring, when he had brought almoſt all the Eaſt under his obedience, he ſent unto *Leonidas* a ſhip laden with *Frankincenſe*, biding him from thenceforth ſerve the Gods more liberally But aſwel for the reaſon of this adjunct, as a more perfect character and deſcription of it, take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who deſcribes it thus, 'On the eaſt and ſouth hereof (ſaith he) are the *happy Arabians*, ſo called be-
'cauſe ſo rich in corn; aſwel as plenteous in cattel, vines, and *odoriferous ſpices* of all kinds; ſhut up betwixt
'the *Red Sea*, & the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo acquainted with all bleſſings, which either element can afford:
'well furniſhed with *Roads*, and quiet harbors fur ſhipping, the Towns of trade and merchandize ſtanding
'very thick; the retiring houſes of the Kings, paſſing neat and ſumptuous. Beſides moſt wholeſom foun-

Arabia Felix.

"tains of *medicinall* waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very cleer and pure, and a temperature "of Air exceeding healthy; ſo that whatſoever conſidereth all things aright, may well conclude, that "there is nothing wanting to the accompliſhment of its felicity in the higheſt degree. So *Ammianus* "*Marcellinus*. To which we need adde nothing more to ſet forth its happineſs, than that *Danæus* in his comment on Saint *Auguſtines Echiridion ad Laurentium*, is perſwaded that it was the *local* place of *Paradiſe*. *Dicitur* (ſaith he) *Paradiſi terreſtris Regio pars quædam eſſe* Arabiæ, *quæ nunc dicitur* Felix. But it hath other names beſides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themſelves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ayaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that tongue ſignifieth the South, or *Southren* Region, By *Virgil* it is named *Panchaia*, *quaſi tota dehiſcens*, becauſe of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the ſands thereof, though by him much extolled alſo for its plenty of *Frankincenſe*.

Totaque thuriferis Phanchaia *pinguis arenis*,
Famed are the whole *Panchaian* lands
For rich and incenſe-bearing ſands.

The People antiently, though more civil than the reſt of the *Arabians*, had yet many ſtrange and barbarous cuſtomes. *Adultery* amongſt them was puniſhed with death, as in other places, but onely he was held an *Adulterer*, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinſwoman, be ſhe his Siſter or his mother: and ſo they kept themſelves in their own families, community of wives or women was eſteemed no crime. And of this there is a tale in *Strabo*, that a King of this Countrey had 15. ſons, and but one daughter, who according to the cuſtomes hereof, was the common wife of all her Brethren: every of which had a *ſtaff* of like making, which when he went in unto his Siſter he did leave at the door; and by ſo doing did forbid entrance to the reſt, till it were removed. The young Lady wearied with a continual exceſs of dalliance, ſecretly procured a *ſtaff* like unto the reſt, which when ſhe was deſirous to prohibit their acceſſes to her, ſhe left at her chamber door; and by that means did many times enjoy her deſired privacy. At laſt it hapned that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Siſters lodging; Where finding a *ſtaff* before the door, and knowing that he had left his Brethren in one place together, he accuſed her of *Adultery*: but the truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and there viſits afterwards reſtrained. Of *dead bodies*, they took no care, not ſo much as of their *Chiefs*, or *Princes*; but left them to the cuſtody of the next *dung-hil*. They bragged much of their deſcent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all ſciences and arts, as diſparagements to ſo great nobility. Commendable onely in the keeping of their faith and promiſes, and in that moſt punctual. Much of the ſame condition are the preſent Inhabitants, ſave that leſs faithful in their contracts; and by their law reſtrained from medling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themſelves to the grazing of cattel, and the reſt to Merchandize, wherein very cautious, and cunning; but hating to this day all *Mechanical* Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongſt them, of which but few, and thoſe diſpoſed of in garriſons: boaſting of their nobility, and *glorying* in nothing more than their greateſt ſhame, namely that the falſe Prophet *Mahomet* was their Countrey-man; whoſe impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongſt the rarities of this Countrey, ſome account the *Phœnix*, which growing old burneth her ſelf in a neſt of *ſpies*, and from thence a young one is ingendred; one of them onely at a time, which after a life of five or ſix hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this *tradition*, queſtioned in former times by *Pliny* and ſome others, is now proved a *fiction*; contrary both unto divinity and natural reaſon: though ſome of the Fathers made uſe of it as an argument to prove the *Reſurrection* againſt the *Gentiles*, by whom the *tradition* was believed. More common, but of no leſs obſervation, is the *Oſtrige*, a Bird which ſwalloweth all it findeth, be it ſtones or Iron, They delight chiefly in the *Deſarts*, in the ſands whereof they lay their eggs, and then forgetting where they left them ſit on thoſe they meet next. In that reſpect accounted for a ſimple fowl, though otherwiſe of wit enough to preſerve themſelves; keeping in flocks, and oftentimes with their fearful ſhreeches affrighting *Paſſengers*, to whom they do appear a far off like a Troop of horſemen. Their wings too little for their bodies, ſerve them not for flight, but to run more ſpeedily; and by that means not eaſily caught, though much laid in wait for for their ſkins, which the people ſell unto the Merchant with the fathers on them. Nor of leſs note is the *Frankinſence*, though of common uſe; almoſt peculiar to this Countrey, and here but to thoſe parts thereof which were formerly poſſeſſed by the *Sabæi*: the wood out of which this *gum* proceedeth being about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; gathered onely in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Countrey is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the principal whereof are ſaid by *Ptolomy*, to be 1. *Betius*. 2. *Prion*. 3. *Harman*. 4. *Lar*; but the modern names thereof I find not. Many fair *lakes*, and ſtore of large capacious *Baies* on each coaſt of the Sea, as 1. *Sinus Eliniticus*. 2. *Sachalites*. 3. *Leanites*. 4. *Sinus Magoram*. 5. *Sinus Ichthy-phagorum*. 6. *Meſſanites* 7. *Sacer Sinus* or the holy Bay, and 8 the Road or *Naval ſtation* called *Neogilla*. Mountains of moſt note, 1. Thoſe which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf. 2. *Cabubuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf* of *Arabia*. 3. *Hippus*. 4. *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence ſo denominated. 5. *Climax*. 6 The Mountains called *Dedymi*, &c.

Towns of good note in ancient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongſt thoſe, many commodious Ports for traffick, the ſea begirting it for the ſpace of three thouſand miles, and upwards. Of moſt importance and obſervation in thoſe times, were 1. *Zebrum*, 2. *Badeo*. 3. *Rhabana*. 4. *Carman*, 5. *Manambis*, 6. *Sabe*, 7. *Are*; the Royal ſeats of ſo many ſeveral Kingdomes, and therefore honored by *Ptolomy* with the title of *Regiæ*. Then there are 1. *Macoſmos*, 2. *Meara*, 3. *Nagara*, 4. *Sabbatha*, 5. *Mapha*, and 6. *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of ſome ſeueral Nations. Amongſt the Ports, he reckoneth, 1. *Seſippus*

pus, 2. *Trulla*, 3. *Tretos*, 4. *Cryptus*, 5. *Itamos*, and 6. *Moscha*: amongst the most noted Empories or Towns of Trafick, 1. *Musa*, 2. *Ocelis*, 3. *Arabia*, 4. *Cane*. Besides which there are some which do preserve the memory of their first Plantations, as, 1. *Saphta*, upon the *Persian* Gulf, so called from *Sabta*, the third Sonne of *Chus*, 2. *Rhegama*, or *Regma* (as the *Greek* copies of *Ptolomy* have it) so named from *Regma* or *Raama* his sixt Sonne; on the same Gulf also. 3. *Sabe*, on the shores of the Red Sea. And 4. *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, so named from *Seba* the eldest Sonne of the same *Chus*, from whom the rich and potent nation of the *Sabæans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we shall take more particular notice of some that follow. 1. *Musa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the *Red Sea*, frequented antiently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants; who there laded their ships, with *Frankincense*, *Myrrhe*, *Spices*, and other commodities of this Countrey, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, corn, wine, ointments, purple dies, &c. 2. *Sabe*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabæans*, particularly of that Queen so memorized in holy Scripture; called in the old Testament the *Queen of Sheba*, from her Countrey and place of dwelling, in the New Testament, the *Queen of the South*, because of the Southern situation of it in respect of *Judæa*: said there to come from the furthest parts of the world, because there was no part of the world which lay south to the Countrey of the *Sabæans*, over which she reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agatharcides* to be πολὺ κάλλιστον τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀραβίαν, the most beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabæans*: rich in all the excellencies of *Nature*, especially in *Frankinsence*, a gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a wood of about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Countrey hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this sweet gum appropriated soly to it. Sabæi Arabum *propter thura clarissimi*, as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis est thurea virga* Sabæis, as it is in *Virgil*; and finally---*Thuriferos*, *felicia Regna*, Sabæos, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called also *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in some antient Writers. 3. *Saphar*, more towards the *Persian* Gulf, on the South-side of the mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeritæ*; adorned in times of Christianity with a beautifull Temple. 4. *Sabbatha*, or *Sabota*, as *Pliny* calleth it, seated about the middest of the Countrey, on the top of an high and lofty hill, from whence it had a gallant prospect on the fields adjoyning: antiently large and populous, and strongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the walls; the principal that consecrated unto *Sabis*, the God of their Nation, to whom they offered the tith of their *Frankincense*, *ubi decimas Deo quem* Sabin *vocant*, *mensuræ non pondere capiunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*. *Arabia Felix.*

But these and almost all the rest being grown out of knowledge, there have risen in their rooms, 1. *Egra*, on the shore of the *Red Sea*, neer the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*; by *Ptolomy* called *Arga*, by the *Arabians* themselves, *Algiar*: the Port Town to *Medina*, from which about three daies journey distant. 2. *Jathrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the way betwixt *Aygiar*, and *Medina*, the birth-place of *Makomet*; by whom fortified with a mud-wall as his place of retreat in the first beginnings of his fortunes. 3. *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talmabi*, corruptly for *Medinatho luabi*, that is to say, the City of the *Prophet*: so called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile *Imposture*, which is there to be seen; although not in such an iron coffin, or drawn up to the roof of the Temple by vertue of an *Amant* there placed, as some deliver. The Town situate in a defolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petræa*; but of great trade, rich, and well inhabited: the Sepulchre of that false Prophet drawing thither a continuall resort of *Pilgrims*. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb inclosed within an Iron grate, but of no magnificence or beauty: covered with a carpet of Green Velvet, which is sent hither yearly by the *Grand signeur*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable shreds or peeces, and sold for *Relicks* by the Priests, (to such as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. 4. *Cufa*, the ordinary residence of the fift *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperiall Seat to *Damascus*, in *Syria*; and after that, the usuall place of meeting for consultation in affairs of State, relating to the peace of this Countrey, and the common interest of this People: as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Persian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. 5. *Mecca*, supposed to be the *Mechara* of *Ptolomy*, situate in the like barren soyl, not far from *Medina*, but of far greater resort and trafick: the whole wealth in a manner of this Countrey, together with the commodities of *Persia*, and *India*, being first brought hither; and from hence on Camels backs, transported into *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and other parts of the *Turkish* Empire. Unwalled, and either for that cause, or for concealement of their fopperies from the eyes of Christians, it is made death for any Christian for to come within five miles of it. Utterly destitute of water, but what they keep in cisternes, from one shewer of rain to another, or else brought thither with great charge; otherwise pleasantly seated, rich, and containing about 6000 families: every year visited with three *Caravans* or troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Caire*: who having done their business and devotions there, go afterwards in *Pilgrimage* to *Medina* also, to the great enriching of both places. 6. *Ziden*, the Haven Town to *Mecca*, from which distant about 40 miles, situate on the *Red Sea*, in a sandy soyl, unwalled and much exposed both to wind and weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great resort. 7. *Zebit*, now the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, situate about half a daies journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large plain, between two mountains; a Riveret of the same name passing by it: well-traded for Sugars, spice, and fruits; the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom taken, not longe after *Aden*. 8. *Eltor*, a Port Town of this Countrey, and the onely town where the Christians are suffered to inhabit. 9. *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, neer the Streights called *Babel-Mandell*; supposed by some to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing in situation, with the famous Emporie by him called *Arabia*. The fairest Town of the whole *Peninsula*, of great strength,

The *Arabick Ilands.*

both by Art and Nature; well-traded, and well-fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldome without good store of shipping, and containing to the number of six thousand persons. Once a distinct Kigdome of it self, but treacherously surprized by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Countrey: made afterwards the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebit*, are supposed to be no fewer than thirty thousand *Timariots*. 10. *Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11. *Thema*, or *Theman*, the same I take it, which our later travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the land: affirmed by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, surnamed *Tude Censis*, to be a Town of 15 miles square, but to have within the walls thereof great quantity of ground for tillage. 12 *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Countrey. 13. *Hor*, on the point or Promontory called *Chorodemus*, a Garrison not long since of the Kings of *Ormus*. 14. *Muskahat*, on the *Persian* Gulf, neer the point of Land called *Cape Rozel gate*: opposite to *Surat*, in the East *India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Castle, for defence of their Ships and Frigots which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were since setled here. Of the affairs of this Countrey we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Ilands, which belong unto it.

4. THE ARABICK ILANDS.

THe *ILANDS* which lie round about the shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been antiently accompted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the 1. *Red-Sea*, 2. *Southern Ocean*, or 3. the Gulf of *Persia*.

1. The *RED-SEA*, (called also by the Antients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern *Ocean* which interposeth it self betwixt *Egypt* on the East; *Arabia Felix*, and some part of *Petræa*, on the West; the North-East bound of it touching upon *Idumæa*, or the Cost of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Sues*, antiently called *Arsinoe*, in the bottom of it, to the streights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean; for the space of one thousand and four hundred miles: in breadth, for the most part but one hundred, but in some places almost two; the Streights themselves not being above a mile and an half, antiently chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is said by *Strabo*, but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and inquiet Sea, full of sands and shelves; insomuch as they who passe in and out, are fain to make use of *Pilots* which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the channel. Sufficiently famous in all times and stories, for the miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*, and the drowning of *Pharaoh*, King of *Egypt*.

It took the name of the *Red-Sea*, as some conceived, from the *redness* of the sands; as others have delivered, from the *redness* of the waters: but later observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea, and Sands being coloured here, as in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour either of the sands or waters; but from one *Erythras* supposed to be the Sonne of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eastern shores hereof. And these come neerer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the coasts of that Countrey: which word in the *Hebrew*, signifying *Red*, as appeareth *Gen.* 25. 30. first given as a nick-name to *Esau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latines*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reason of the name to few.

Of the great traffick which was antiently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Egypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Ilands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do. Known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of 1. *Adani*, 2. *Æni*, 3. *Are*, 4. *Cardamine*, 5. *Combusta*, 6. *Damanum*, 7. *Hieracum*, or the Isle of *Hawkes*, 8. *Maliaci*, 9. *Polbii*, 10. *Socratis*, 11. *Timagenis*, and 12. *Zygena*. But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing so doubtfull, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalaqua*; with a City in it of that name, where they gather *Pearls*. 2. Then there is *Camaran*, most extreamly hot, of most note for the many spoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3. *Xamoa*, the earth whereof is said to be *Red*, (perhaps to countenance the vulgar tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the sands or shores) and the King a *Moore*. 4. The *Samaritan Iland*, spoken of by *Scaliger*, inhabited by a remainder of that people; who assoon as they saw any stranger land upon their coasts, would most religiously desire him not to touch them. Such other Ilands as lie upon the opposite shores, and seem to appertain unto *Ethiophia* shall finde their place, in our description of the *African* Ilands.

II. The SOUTHERN OCEAN comprehendeth that vast body of waters, which from the Eastern banks of both *Æthiopia's*, coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and so directly East-ward, to the furthest *India*: in this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Australe*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum* or the *Red Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they suppose) reigning hereabouts, and giving name not onely to the *Red Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea-coasts also from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia* to the coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum*.

In this vast Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Ilands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, viz. two Ilands by the name of *Insulæ Agathoclis*. 2. Three more by the name of *Cocconati*. 3. *Dioscoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioscurias*, with a City of the same name in it. 4. Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*,

Sachalites, by the name of *Zenobii*. 5. *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before mentioned, being a great Hill planted with trees. 6. *Sarapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol. None of them now of any Credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two laſt excepted. *Arabia Felix.*

III. On the Eaſt-ſide of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Perſia*, lieth another large Arm of the *Southren* Ocean, antiently called *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*, now *Golfo di Elkadiffe*. A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combatting or claſhing of which two great waters, makes it ſo unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*,) 1. *Tylus*, which *Arianus* ſets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian Seas*, affirming it to be well ſtored with vines, and olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophraſtus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place miſtaken) affording good materials for ſhipping. 2. *Apphana*. 3. *Tharo*. 4. *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To theſe ſome late Travellers have adjoyned two others, if not ſome of the former under thoſe new names, that is to ſay, 5. *Bayren*, and 6. *Gonfiar*, where they take the beſt *Pearles* in the World, in beds of *Oiſters*. Other Ilands of this Bay (if any) do belong to *Perſia*; where, if occaſion ſo require, we ſhall ſpeak more of them.

To return therefore to the main-land of *Arabia-Felix*, the firſt Inhabitants thereof were the ſonnes of *Chus*, and the families which they brought with them. Their memories preſerved in the names of ſome of the chief Towns and Nations, till the dayes of *Plinie*, *Ptolomy*, and ſome others of the antient writers. Divided afterwards into the ſeverall Tribes or Septs of the *Caſſanitæ*, *Cinædocolpitæ*, *Homeritæ*, *Adramitæ*, *Eleſari*, *Sachalitæ*, *Anaritæ*, *Gerræi*, *Ægæi*, *Sabæi*, *Minæi*, *Leanitæ*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each governed ſeparately and apart by their ſeveral *Chiefs*; whom they honoured, as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which ſpoken of by *Juſtine*, named *Hierotimus*, is ſaid to have been the Father of 500 Children. Eaſie to have been overcome, becauſe ſo divided, if any potent neighbour had attempted the conqueſt of them: as it is wondrous ſtrange they did not, conſidering the richneſs of the Countrey, and the many temptations which it had to invite them to it. More worthily deſerving the name of *Felix* in that never conquered, than in all the other rarities and delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deſigned for the ſeat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the conqueſt of it, having finiſhed his warre againſt the *Perſians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, though once *Auguſtus* did attempt it; employing in that action, *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Egypt*: one *Sames* being then King of thoſe parts which lay neereſt to him. The *Romans* at their firſt entry found no reſiſtance. But when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking ſalt waters, they began to grow diſeaſed and ſickly; the *Arabians* fell luſtily upon them, and made them return back both with loſs and ſhame. After this nothing done by the *Romans*, to diſturb their quiet; nor much done by the *Chriſtians*, to advance their glories: the whole divided into almoſt as many *Religions*, as Principalities and Eſtates. Moſt of them Gentiles, but *Circumciſed*, as the *Iſmaelites* and other *Arabians* had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and ſome ſtore of *Chriſtians*, but thoſe divided alſo into *Sects* and *factions*. And in this ſtate it ſtood, when *Mahomet* firſt began to broach his blaſphemous dotages. By birth, of *Jathripp*, an obſcure village then, not far from *Medina*; his Father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous *Pagan*; his mother named *Hemina*, as perverſe a *Jeweſs*. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him education, nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, ſold him at ſixteen years of age to the *Iſmaelites*; by whom expoſed to ſale in the open markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at firſt in *drudgery*, and ſervile offices, till noting his great wit, and fitneſs for better ſervices, he at laſt uſed him as his *factor*: ſending him with his *Camels* and loads of Merchandize, into *Syria*, *Perſia*, *Egypt*, and other places; wherein he did behave himſelf with ſuch dexteritie, that he much increaſed his Maſters wealth, and his own eſtimation. Of perſon he is ſaid to be low, and withall ſcald-headed; but otherwiſe comely to the eye, and of good aſpect. Much troubled with the *falling ſickneſs*, which infirmity he made good uſe of afterwards; affirming that thoſe fits were nothing but *heavenly raptures*, in which he did converſe with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is ſaid to have been alſo well skilled in *Magick*, by which he taught a *white Pigion* to feed at his ear, which he gave out to be the *Holy Ghoſt*, by whom he was inſtructed in the law which he was to publiſh: but this not till afterwards. By *Sorceries*, comelineſs of perſon, and the great knowledge which he had in his maſters buſineſs; he gained ſo farre on the affections of his *Miſtreſs*, that on the death of *Abdalmutalif*, ſhe made him her husband. Poſſeſſed of all his maſters wealth, he affected eaſe; and being till then of no *Religion*, or at beſt a *Pagan*, he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Neſtorian* Monk: who flying out of *Syria* for fear of puniſhment (the hereſies of *Neſtorius* being newly both revived and cenſured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the houſe of *Abdalmutalif*, the Maſter of *Mahomet*. By his perſwaſions, who found him a fit Inſtrument for the *devil* to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a *new Religon*; which might unite all parties in ſome *common principles*, and bring the *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles*, (into which the world was then divided,) under one *Profeſſion*. Reſolved on this, he retired himſelf unto a Cave not farre from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but *meditations*: *Sergius* in the mean time ſounding in the ears of the people, both his parts, and piety. The people being thus prepared to behold the *Pageant*, outcomes the principal *Actor* with ſome parts of his *Alcoran* (pleaſing enough to *ſenſual* minds) which he profeſſed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclamed liberty to all *ſlaves*, and *ſervants* as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the *natural liberty* of mankind was moſt dearly tendred: which drew unto him ſuch a rabble of unruly people,

The *Arabick* Ilands.

that without fear of oppoſition, he diſperſed his doctrines, reducing them at laſt to a book or method. The Book of this religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to ſay, the *Collection of Precepts*: the Originall whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angell *Gabriel*. A Book ſo highly reverenced by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the cover of it, *let none touch this but he that is clean*. The body of it (as it now ſtandeth) was compoſed by *Oſmen* the forth *Caliph*, who ſeeing the *Saracens* daily inclining to divers *hereſies*, by reaſon of ſome falſe copies of *Mahomets* Lawes; and that the Empire by the ſame means was likely to fall into civill diſſention; by the help of his wife, who was *Mahomets* daughter, he got a ſight of all *Mahomets* papers, which he reduced into four *Volumes*, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expreſly upon pain of death, that that book, and that onely, ſhould be received as *Canonicall*, through his Dominions. The whole body of it is but an expoſition and gloſs on theſe eight Commandments.

1. *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God; and one onely God, and Mahomet is his Prophet.* They hold *Abraham*, to be the *friend* of God; *Moſes*, the *meſſenger* of God; and *Chriſt*, the *breath* of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the *Holy Ghoſt*, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with child of him by ſmelling to a Roſe, and was delivered of him at her breſts. They deny the myſtery of the *Trinity*; but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*; whoſe Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not, comming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have *merited*, or bettered himſelf any thing by his journey.

2. *Every man muſt marry to encreaſe the Sectaries of Mahomet.* Four wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubins as he will: between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference, either in affection or apparrell; but that his wives onely can enjoy his *Sabbaths* benevolence. The women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches; nor after death, to Paradiſe: and whereas in moſt or all other Countries, Fathers give ſome portions with their daughters, the *Mahometans* give money for their wives; which being once paid, the contract is regiſtred in the *Cadies* book, and this is all their formality of Marriage. More of this theam we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *TURCOMANIA*, and among the *Turkes*.

3. *Every one muſt give of his wealth to the poor.* Hence you ſhall have ſome buy ſlaves, and then manumit them; buy birds, and then let them flie. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe bond-ſlaves, build caves or lodgings in the waies for the relief of Paſſengers, repair bridges; and mend highwaies. But their moſt ordinary almes conſiſt in ſacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which when the ſolemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo, on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the tith or tenth part of their gettings in the year fore-going: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly find any beggers amongſt them.

4. *Every one muſt make his prayers five times a day.* When they pray they turn their bodies towards *Mecca*, but there faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-riſing; the ſecond, at noonday; the third, at three of the clock after noon; the fourth, at Sun-ſetting; the fift and laſt, before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers keep a bauling in the ſteeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no bells) for the people to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come, muſt when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5. *Every one muſt keep a Lent one moneth in a year.* This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This faſt is only intended in the day time, the law giving leave to frollick it in the night as they beſt pleaſe, ſo they abſtain from Wine, and Swines fleſh; prohibited by their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their *Lent*.

6. *Be obedient to thy Parents*; which law is the moſt neglected of any; in all the *Alcoran*; never any children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7. *Thou ſhalt not kill*; and this they keep unviolated among themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this law, the actual ſhedding of bloud only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their offenders, worſe than death it ſelf. As firſt the *Strappado*, which is hanging of them by the arms drawn backwards: when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which unjoynteth all their back and armes. Secondly, they uſe to hoiſe up their heels, and with a great cudgell to give them three or four hundred blowes on the ſoles of their feet. Thirdly, it is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbit or Tower, full of hooks; and cutting the rope to let them fall down again; but by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8. *Doe unto others as thou wouldeſt be done unto thy ſelf.* To thoſe that keep theſe Lawes he promiſeth Paradiſe, a place of all delights, adorned with flowry Fields, watered with Chryſtalline Rivers, beautified with Trees of gold; under whoſe cool ſhade, they ſhall ſpend their time with amourous Virgins, whoſe manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty; nor the women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their virginities renewed, as faſt as loſt.

Fryday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to diſtinguiſh his followers from the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the daies enſuing; but principally becauſe he was on that day proclaimed *King* or *Emperor*, & ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines-fleſh are the principall things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from the laſt whereof they all unanimouſly refrain; but on the firſt they are ſo ſotted, that when they come at it, they ſeldome go home again unled; inſomuch that all the wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown about

about the ſtreets, and death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them that every one ſhould be ſaved by his own *Religion*; him onely excepted that revolted from the *Alcoran*, unto another Law: but ſo that under the notion of Religion, he means onely ſuch as worſhip the one and onely God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles, from the hopes of ſalvation. And he taught too, that at the end of the world all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion, ſhould go into *Paradiſe*, the *Jews* under the banner of *Moſes*, the *Chriſtians* under the banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no man therefore to abjure the faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they finde zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new *Proſelytes*, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, that it is better for a man that would enjoy liberty of conſcience, to live in the Countreys profeſſing *Mahometaniſm*, then *Papiſtry*; for in the one he ſhall never be free from the bloody *Inquiſition*; in the other he is never moleſted, if he meddle not with their *Law*, their *Women*, or their *Slaves*. The *Arabick Ilands*.

The opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding of a horn, not all fleſh onely, but the *Angels* themſelves ſhall dye, that the Earth with an Earthquake ſhall be kneaded together, like a lump of dough; that a ſecond blaſt of the ſame horn, ſhall after fourty days reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be the Captain or Ring-leader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of dogs, and ſwine; that they ſhall paſs over the bridge of Juſtice, laden with their ſins in ſatchels; that the great ſinners ſhall fall into hell, the leſſer into purgatory onely; with a thouſand of the like fopperies: which it is needleſs to adde here, conſidering that the *Alcoran* it ſelf is now extant in *Engliſh*, and every one that liſts may read it. A thing ſo full of *Tautologies*, incoherencies, and ſuch groſs abſurdities, of ſo impure and carnal mixture, that he muſt lay aſide the uſe of his natural reaſon, who is taken by it, if force, ambition, or the want of *Chriſtian* education do not lead him on. For if we ſeriouſly look into the cauſes of the deplorable increaſe and long continuance of this Religion, we ſhall finde them to be chiefly theſe, 1. The Greatneſs of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*; who eaſily compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Law. 2. The great zeal and diligence of the *Arabians* themſelves, who being a numerous people, and much given to Merchandize, have poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Sea-coaſts of *Affrick*, from the ſtreights of *Babel-Mandel*, almoſt as far as to the *Cape of good hope*; of all the Ilands in thoſe Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the coaſts of *India*: in all which they have ſetled their Religion alſo, as a thing inſeparable from their Nation. 3. A peremptory reſtraint of all diſputation, in any point of Religion whatſoever it be. 4. The ſuppreſſing of Philoſophy, and the ſtudy of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might eaſily detect the groſſeneſs of their Superſtitions. 5. The ſenſual liberty allowed of having variety of wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6. The promiſe of the like ſenſual pleaſures in the other world, with which a ſenſe not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the moſt part uſe to be more affected, than with the ſpeculative hope of ſpirituall happineſs. 7. The forbidding of *Printing* and printed Books, by which the People might come to ſee the verity and purity of the *Chriſtian* faith; the falſhood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. Theſe laſt not uſeful, or at leaſt not able to enduce belief, if the firſt had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Armes was the ſtrongeſt Argument by which *Mahomet* himſelf confirmed, and his Succeſſors in their times have ſince propagated and diſperſed his doctrines. Strengthened by the reſort of that *raſcal Rabble* which repaired to him, he aſſaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulſed at firſt with loſs of men, and a wound in his face, by which ſome of his fore-teeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new *Religion*, if not recovered by his Souldiers for a further miſchief. At the next onſet he prevailed, the battel being fought neer a place called *Bedez*, ſituate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof ſo ſtartled the *Phylarchæ*, or nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their powers againſt him, and ſped ſo well in the beginning of the warre, that they drove him forcibly from their territories; which not long after he ſubdued, and ſet his chief ſeat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their computation of years (as we from CHRISTS Nativity) which they call the *Hegira*; which beginneth about the year of our Redemption, 617. Concerning which time, I cannot but obſerve, that *Mahomet* compiled his deviliſh doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Boniface* the third aſſumed his *Antichriſtian* title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy, nigh about the ſame year. It was called the *Hegira*, from the Arabick *Hegirathi*, which by the learned in that tongue, is rendred by διωγμὸς ὑπερτὴς θρησκείας, i. e. *the perſecution raiſed about Religion*. *Joſeph Scaliger* in the firſt edition of his moſt laborious work *de emendatione temporum*, caſteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Æræ fugæ* or *perſecutionis*, but *Æra Hagarenæ*: becauſe for ſooth the *Arabians* were by ſome called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzled *Joſeph*, with all his reading, to ſhew unto us any *Epoche* or *Æra*, which is taken from the name of a Nation. And therefore other reaſon he giveth us none but this. *Nos autem ſcimus vocem illam primogenia ſignificatione ab* Hagarenis, *non à fuga duci*. But time, and oppoſition, at the laſt reclamed him from this error: and in the ſecond edition of his work, he is conten to follow the common opinion of thoſe men, whom in the firſt he whiſtled off with the infamous appellation of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperour, joyned themſelves unto him. They had long been diſpleaſed with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exaſperated by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, when they ſerved in his warres againſt the *Perſian*,

Emperours of the *Saracens.*

Persian, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he *had more store of steel than Gold*: but then they wanted a fit head to resort unto. Now serving *Heraclius* in the same warre, they were used by his Officers in the same ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treasurer* of the *Army* made them this churlish answer, that *there was scarce mony enough to pay the* Roman, *and* Grecian *Souldiers*; *and must those* dogs *be so importunate for their wages?* Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themselves to him: who strengthned by their forces, and the coming in of the rest of their Countrey-men soon brought the three *Arabias* under his subjection. To which, having defeated the Emperors forces sent against him, he added some parts of *Syria*, and *Egypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there dyed frantick and distempered, in the 70th. year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his *impostures*: of which he had spent thirteen at *Medina*, and the rest at *Mecca*; from his first setling in which City, the years of his Empire were computed. His dead body being kept four daies in expectation of a *resurrection*, which he promised to perform at the end of three; grown full of stench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there interred: his Successors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that *Religion* after his decease, which they derided in his life; and calling themselves *Caliphs*, or *Vicars* Generall, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we hasten; made intricate, not more by their own *confusions*, than by the difference of those names by which they are presented to us by severall Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Calips* or Emperours of the *Saracens.*

A.C.	A.H.	
622	5	1. *Mahomet* the Impostor, of whom before.
632	15	2. *Ebubezer*, or *Uquebar*, *Mahomets* Father-in-Law, and one of his Great Captains, supplanted *Ali*, to whom the Empire was designed by the will of *Mahomet*; and took unto himself the name of *Caliph*. 2.
634	17	3. *Haumar*, the second of *Mahomets* Great Captains, having the command of the Army under *Ebubezer*, succeeded him in the estate; and added to it *Persia*, *Egypt*, *Palastine*, with great part of *Syria*, and *Mesopotamia*. 12.
647	30	4. *Osmen*, the third of *Mahomets* great Captains, Husband of *Zeineb*, his second daughter; succeeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire. Distressed by the faction of *Hali*, and besieged in his own house, he slew himself, in the eighty seventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
657	40	5. *Hali*, the Kinsman and next heir of *Mahomet*, and the husband of *Fatime* his eldest daughter, succeeded on the death of *Osmen*: murdered by the procurement of *Muavias*, neer *Cafa*, in *Arabia Felix*.
650	43	6. *Muhavias*, having murdered *Hali*, his Sonne *Hasem* or *Ossan*, and eleven of the Sonnes of that *Hasem*, the twelfth onely escaping with life (from whom descended the Family of the *Alaveci*, and the *Persian Sophies*) assumed the Government as rightfull Successor to *Osmen*, whose widow, the daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Asia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.
681	64	7. *Gizid*, the Son of *Muhavias*, more skilled in Poetry than in Armes. 8. *Habdalla* and *Marvan*, Competitors for the Supreme dignity; but carried at last by *Marvan*.
685	68	9. *Abimelech*, the Sonne of *Marvan*, established the begun conquests of *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia* 22.
707	90	10. *Vlidor Vlit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* first conquered *Spain*. 9.
716	99	11. *Zulcimin*, Brother to *Vlit*, whose Captain *Mulsamas* besieges *Constantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his men consumed with the Plague. 3.
719	102	12. *Homar* or *Haumar* II. Son of *Vlidor Vlit* 2.
721	104	13. *Izit*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Haumar*, with whom during his life he was joynt *Caliph*, and after his decease enjoyed it wholly to himself.
725	107	14. *Evelid*, by some called *Ischam*, in whose time *Charles Martel* made such havock of the *Moores* in *France* Anno 734 their General then named *Abderamen*. 18.
743	125	15. *Gizid* III. the Son of *Gizid* the second.
744	126	16. *Hyces*, by some called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, slain by *Marvan*.
745	127	17. *Marvan* II. the last of the house of *Ben-Humeya*, slain by *Abdalla*, of the house of *Fatime* and *Hali*.
752	134	18. *Abdalla*, of the house of *Alaveci*, or *Alabeci*, descended from *Hali*, and *Fatime*, the eldest daughter of *Mahomet*: called also the Family of *Abas*, because of their descent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
756	138	19. *Abdallas* II. 20. *Mahomet* II. surnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdat*, made from that time the constant seat of his Successors till their fatall period.
777	156	21. *Mahadi*. 9.
786	168	22. *Musa*, or *Moyses*. 1.
787.	169.	23. *Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empress of *Constantinople*, to pay him tribute. 23.
810.	193.	24. *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.

825.

825. 198. 25. *Abdalla* III. who took and ſpoyled *Crete*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he alſo ſpoiled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*. 17.
832. 215. 26. *Mahomet* IV. waſted *Italy*, burnt the ſuburbs of *Rome*, and haraſſed the fore-named Ilands. 40. The *Babylonian Caliphs*.

Others reckon theſe *Caliphs* to have ſucceded *Mahomet* 2d.

815. 198. 25. *Mamon* 12.
827. 210. 26. *Mutetzam* 8.
835. 218. 27. *Wacek* 4.
839. 222. 28. *Methucall* 12.
851. 234. 29. *Montacer* 1.
852. 235. 30. *Abul Hamet* 6.
858. 241. 31. *Almatez* 4.
863. 245. 32. *Motadi Bila* 7. After whoſe death, the *Ægyptians* with-drew themſelves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and choſe one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and thoſe of the *Mahumetan* religion, in *Africa*, and *Europe*, ſubmitted themſelves. Of the *Ægyptian Caliphs*, when we come into that Countrey: take now with you the names onely of the *Syrian*, and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for ſtory of them I find little or none: the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the ſeverall Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an aiery title, the ſhadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had ſpread it ſelf over moſt parts of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the diviſion.

A.C.	A.H.	
870	252	1. *Mutemad* 21.
891	273	2. *Mutezad* 8.
897	281	3. *Muchtaphi* 8.
907	289	4. *Muchtedar* 24.
931	313	5. *Elhaker* 1.
932	314	6. *Ratze* 7.
939	321	7. *Muctade* 4.
943	325	8. *Muſteraphe* 2.
947	325	9. *Mocia*, and *Taia* 44.
989	361	10. *Kadar* 41.
1030	412	11. *Kaim* 5.
1035	417	12. *Muctadi.* 60.
1095	477	13. *Muſtetaher* 22.
1117	499	14. *Muſteraſchad* 18.
1135	517	15. *Raſchied* 25.
1160	542	16. *Muſteneged* 9.
1169	551	17. *Muſtazi* 10.
1179	561	18. *Narzi* 39.
1225	597	19. *Taher.*
		20. *Muſtenatzar.*
1255	638	21. *Muſtatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* or *High-Prieſt* of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the accompt of a Prince or Emperour; or looked on as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: ſtarved in his Caſtle of *Bagdet*, and his whole poſterity rooted out, by *Allan*, or *Haulon* the *Tartar*, in the firſt year of his reign. Yet there is ſtill remaining a carcaſs of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whoſe hands the neighbour Princes uſe to receive their *Diadems* and regalities: ſo do we find that *Solyman* the *magnificent*, after his conqueſt of *Chaldæa*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*, to have been by one of theſe poor titulary *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, Anno 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: loſing to the Kings of *Oviedo*, and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoeſe*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*; to the *Normans*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally moſt of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haallon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, ſtarved *Muſtatzem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his poſterity: and *Sarracen* the firſt *Turkiſh* King of *Egypt*, brained the laſt *Ægyptian Caliph* with his horſemans Mace; leaving not one of his iſſue or kindred ſurviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern thier religion, and the ſupreme determination of the doubts and controverſies which occur therein) is now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Muſti* or chief Prieſt of the *Turkiſh Mahometans*.

As *Mars* ſhewed himſelf a friend unto thoſe *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; ſo alſo did *Phœbus* powre down no leſs celeſtial influence, on ſuch as addicted themſelves to Scholarſhip. *Bagdet* in *Chaldæa* *Cairoan*, *Feſs*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their *Univerſities*: out of which came the Philoſophers, *Avicen*, and *Averroes*; the Phyſicians, *Rhaſis*, and *Meſue*; the Geographers, *Leo*, and *Abilfada*; and almoſt all the *Textuaries* and profound Writers (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Albumazar*, &c.) in *Aſtrology*; from whom a great part of our *Aſtronomicall*, and *Aſtrologicall* termes are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdome, Iland or Province, which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdome of *Feſs* and *Morocco* onely: *Arabia* it ſelf, the very firſt ſeat of their power, acknowledging a ſubjection to the *Turkiſh* Empire. For firſt *Petræa*, and *Deſerta*, being ſubdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Perſia*, or otherwiſe following the fortunes of the preſent *Victor*, were afterwards accounted of as ſubject unto the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, who out of that Countrey and all *Syria*, had by degrees diſſeized the *Selzuccian* Family. And as the vaſſals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more moleſted *Selimus* in his march towards *Egypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night-Alarms; than all the forces of the *Mamalucks*, in the field againſt him. But *Egypt* being ſubued, and the *Mamaluoks* utterly deſtroyed, ſome of their *Chiefes* being gained by money, and the reſt by promiſe of preferment; the whole Nation of theſe wild *Arabs* ſwore *alleageance* to him: continuing in accompt as Subjects, unto his Succeſſors, but in effect doing what they liſt; governed as formerly by the *Chiefes* of their ſeverall *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk*, than they do of the

The Babylonish Calyphs.

the *Christians*. And as for *Felix*, it continued also in a *free condition*, in respect of any foreign power; till of late times the *Turks*, and *Portugals*, entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red-Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Island of *East-India*, then in their possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*; invited the King thereof aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of *Zibit*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Countrey, bordoring on the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* still continue Masters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Persian* Gulf, of no power at all; not suffered to travel up and down without a *Pass*, from some of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by the *Natives*, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Isl. of *Ormus*, made one Kingdome with it; but the Kings originally of this Countrey, by whom the City of *Ormus* was first builded; and so continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Muskahat*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Countrey *cantonned* amongst a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And so much for *Arabia*.

6 CHALDÆA.
7 ASSYRIA.
8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the *Assyrian* Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, becaus united in the Story, and affairs thereof; though severally to be considered in the Description, and *Chorography* of them.

CHALDEA is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian* Bay, and the rest of *Deserta*. Originally called *Chasdim*, from *Chesed* the fourth Son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. *Chesed quoq; quartus est, à quo Chasdim, id est Chaldæi postea vocati sunt*, as St. *Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their name from *Chæsed*, being a People long before *Chesed's* birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day by *Bellonius*, *Azamia*; by the *Arabians*, *Keldan*, by the *Turks*, *Curdistan*.

But the name of *Chaldea* sometimes went beyond thrse bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia*, as appeareth by that passage of St. *Stephen*, saying, *Acts 7. v. 2, 3, 4.* That *the God of glory appeared to our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran; and said unto him, Get thee out of this Countrey, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then came he out of the Land of the Chaldees, and dwelt in Charran, &c.* Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia* which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Countrey by *Heroditus* said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily *two hundred*, and in some places *three hundredfold*; the blades of wheat and barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their corn twice, and feeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the worst of their Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundredfold encrease. Nor is the nature of the soil so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and delights of this Countrey, then that it pleased Almighty God to make choice of some part hereof for the *terrestrial Parndise* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first Creation. For here that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity, and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we finde different opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of pleasure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but these allegories on the Scripture are not warrantable. Others place it in the air, under the circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honor it with a confutation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided also into three ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the Æquator; but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*: *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must also follow that he was driven out of the world, which were absurd. Those of the soundest judgements place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called *Pison* (falsly rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the land of *Havilah*, or that part of the land of *Havilah*, which is now called *Chusestan*, or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the lowermost is named *Gihon* (improperly by some translated *Nilus*) which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Petræa*, by the *Septuagint* for the reasons abovementioned, rendred *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the

position

position of this Countrey, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* text called *Hiddekel*, and *Perah*) do here joyn their streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other then that River by *Ptolomy* called *Basilius*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more neerly *Piso Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*, *Pervenit ad fluvium, Pasitigrin incolæ vocant*, as his own words are. A little stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Countrey of the *Charelei*, or *Chaulasei*, or *Chaulterrei* (for by these several names they are called amongst the Antients, who place them betwixt the *Babynians*, and the *Nabatheans*, an *Arabian* people) poureth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it in the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gihon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maarsares*, and by others *Marsyrus*, it is no other then a branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Ethiopia Asiatica*, take which name you will, loseth it self at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Countrey was extremely fruitful, yet in some places was it covered with a slimy matter, which the overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their buildings, instead of morter, then which more durable and binding; and therefore chosen for the cement of the Tower of *Babel*, Gen. 11. 3. Some also tell of a clyff, which opening sendeth out such a stink, that it killeth birds as they flie over it; and others of a like open place neer a Town called *Ait*, which continually throweth out boiling pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoyning fields; and that herewith the people use to pitch their boats. But this in some places onely, the Countrey generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was said.

The people anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-saying and Divinations; and no less noted for being Authors of the first Idolatry, that was ever practised in the world. Induced unto the last perhaps by the power of their Kings, who would needs confer divine honors upon some of their Ancestors. But to the first inclined by their own disposition, and the situation of their Countrey, yielding a fair sensible *Horizon* (for the *Rational* is alike in all places both in hills and valleys) and consequently profitable to the observation of the rising and setting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Vesperline*, as the *Artists* phrase it. Whereunto may be added the length of life in those elder times, furnishing them with the greater measure of experience, concerning the distinct motions of each several *Orb*, and the full period of the courses of each several Planet. Certain it is, that they grew so noted in this Art, that at the last every *Astrolagaster*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldean*: *Gentis nomine ad eos homines translato, qui sese illius sapientiæ specie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath observed in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the people thus flouted by the *Satyrist*.

Chaldeis sed major erit fiducia, quicquid
Dixerit Astrologus, credent à fonte relatum
Ammonis, &c.

That is to say,

Joves Oracles no greater credit have,
Then *Sooth-sayings* of a *Chaldee* cozening knave.

The language which was spoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldæan* tongue; of great antiquity; and sanctified by the *Holy Ghost*, some Chapters of the prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not understand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. desiring *Rabsheketh* to speak to them in the *Chaldee* tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his blasphemies. A further proof may be, that a man may have some knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of thee *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this present day. But whatsoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards, when the *Jews* came to live amongst them, during the Captivity: out of whose long commerce with them, both Nations lost their proper languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we spake before when we were in *Syria* and *Palestine*. And this is now the natural language of this Countrey, and its neighbor *Assyria*, but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: not vulgarly spoken elsewhere, for ought I can finde, but used by many others, in their sacred offices, by whom not commonly understood. For in this language, all the Sects of the Eastern Christians do officiate their publike *Liturgies*; that is to say, the *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites* (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who use the *Greek Liturgy*, amongst the Sectaries.) The like do also the *Indians* or *Christians* of Saint *Thomas*, the *Cophties* or *Christians* of *Egypt*, and the poor remainder of the Christians in the Isle of *Zocatara*, an Island on the coast of *Affrick*. Used to those *Liturgies*, when the language was more understood amongst them; though now worn out of *Vulgar* knowledge by the overspreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkish* Conquests. In which the Prelates of these Churches have fallen into the great error of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the *Vulgar* tongues of those several Naations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a language in their *Liturgies* which they understond not: as if the capacities of the people could be sooner raised, to the understanding of an unknown language, then the publike *Liturgies* be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient piety of the Church, and the modern languages of Gods people, are not inconsistent; though out of private ends some have taught us otherwise. But I fear this error (as some others) will not be so easily remedied, as reprehended. From the tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, pass we to the Religion it self, whose Sacred Offices are so celebrated.

The Christian faith was first preached in this Countrey by St. *Peter*, of whose being in *Babylon*, (the chief

chief City hereof) himſelf aſſureth us in the laſt words almoſt of his Firſt Epiſtle: and other buſines he had none here, but to preach the Goſpell. Much perſecuted by the *Perſians*, (who were then poſſeſſed of all theſe parts) it prevailed at laſt; *Chriſtianity* growing up the faſter for the cutting down. The *Patriarchall* See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, ſucceſſour unto *Babylon* in repute and greatneſs, if not alſo in name: the Biſhop whereof, by order of the *Nicene* Councill, had the *Eccleſiaſticall* juriſdiction of theſe parts with the name of *Catholique*; and the next place in *Seſſion*, at all publick aſſemblies of the Church, next after the *Patriarch* of *Hieruſalem*. And beſides this the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, acknowledge him for their *Primate* or *Metropolitan*; as they did afterwards in his right, the Patriarch of *Muzal*. At this preſent here are ſome remainders of *Chriſtianity*, part of them *Jacobites*, but the moſt *Neſtorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief *Rivers* hereof we have ſpoke already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our paſſage forwards. So that without more delay we may take a view of their principall places. And in the firſt place we meet with *Babel*; (in the *Hebrew* ſignifying confuſion) famous for the confuſion of languages which here happned. For immediately after the Univerſal deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, perſwaded the people to ſecure themſelves from the like after-claps, by building ſome ſtupendious Edifice, which might reſiſt the fury of a ſecond deluge. This Counſel was generally imbraced, *Heber* onely and his Family, (as tradition goeth) contradicting ſuch an unlawfull attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majeſty, 5146 paces from the ground: having its *baſis* and circumference equal to the height. The paſſage to go up, went winding about the outſide, and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for horſes, carts, and the like means of carriage, to meet and turn; but lodging alſo for man and beaſt, and (as *Verſtegan* reporteth) graſs and corn-fields for their nouriſhment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, ſent amongſt them (who before were of one *language*) a confuſion of tongues. which hindred the proceeding of this building, one being not able to underſtand what his fellow called for.

2. *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the antienteſt City in the World, on this ſide of the flood firſt built by *Nimrod*, in the place deſtinated to the raiſing of the Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*, one of his Succeſſors; and finally much increaſed both in bulk and beauty by *Nabuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himſelf the whole glory of it, ſaying in his pride, *is not this the great* Babel *that I have builded*? *Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and ſtate, accompted one of the worlds nine wonders, and deſervedly too.

The compaſs of the walls 365 furlongs, (or 46. miles) according to the number of the dayes in the year; in height 50. Cubits, and of ſo great breadth, that carts and carriages might meet on the top of them; finiſhed in one year by the hands of 200000 workmen, employed dayly in it. Situate on both ſides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a ſumptuous bridge, and at each end of that bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified alſo with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Penſile Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with moſt ſtately Arches. In a word, ſo great and vaſt it was, that *Ariſtotle* ſaith, that it ought rather to be called a Countrey, than a City: adding withall, that when the Town was taken, it was three dayes before the furtheſt parts of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town muſt be underſtood of the ſurprize thereof by the *Medes* and *Perſians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his marginal notes upon the *Politicks* of that Author, hath moſt vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gares at the end of every ſtreet, which made it be ſo long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken feaſt, in the time whereof it wes ſurprized, I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as ſhe was ordering her hair: whereupon, leaving her head half-dreſt ſhe went and beſieged it; never ordering the reſt of her hair, till ſhe had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophons Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euprathes* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whoſe banks, the politick Prince cut many and deep chaunels: into which when the *Babylonians* were ſecurely merry at a general feaſt, he ſuddenly drained and emptied the River, conveying his own forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel; and in a little time made himſelf maſter of it. From the *Perſians* it revolted in the reign of *Darius Hyſtaſpes*: and that ſuſtenance might not be wanting to the men of warre, they ſtrangled the moſt part of the women, being thought in actions of this quality, not ſo much as neceſſary evils. When they had for twenty moneths ſo obſtinately defended the Town, that the *Perſians* had leſs hope than ever of prevailing; *Zopyrus* one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body, and diſfiguring his face by cutting off his noſe and ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words, and knowing his proweſs, committed the charge of the whole army unto him, as a man, to whom ſuch barbarous uſage had made the King irreconcilable. But he taking the beſt opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Soveraign. Which made *Darius* often ſay, that he had rather have one *Zopyrus*, than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander* the Great, after whoſe death the *Grecian* Captains regardful rather of their own ambitions, than the common loyalty, divided the Empire among themſelves; leaving the body of the King 8 dayes unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living, thought the world too ſmall for his valour, being dead ſhould find no place big enough for his body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the glories and magnificence hereof began to decline, leſſned unto a fourth part in the time of *Qu. Curtius* the hiſtorian; *in ſolitudinem redacta*, reduced to deſolation in the dayes of *Pliny*; & being turned into a *Park*, in which the Kings of *Perſia* did uſe to hunt, in the time of Saint *Hierome*. That wondrous change occaſioned partly by the injury of time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but

principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of *Seleucia*.

3. *Seleucia*, the second City of note in all this Countrey, ſituate in a place more commodious and healthy, neer the meeting of *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, and about 40 miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 perſons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old onely of its power and greatneſs, but alſo of its very name; being called *Babylon* in ſome of the antient Authors; Βαβυλων περσικὴ πόλις, Μητρόπολις, Σελευκία καλεμένη, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the primitive times of *Chriſtianity*, the Biſhop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldæans*; with a ſuperintendency over the *Chriſtians* of *India* alſo, as before was ſaid. But this *Supplanter* was in time brought to ruin alſo, And

4. *Bagdad*, a new City raiſed from the ruins of it: built neer the foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as ſome write) of eighteen millions of Crowns; which becauſe of the many Gardens contained in it had the name of *Bagdad*, the word ſo ſignifying in the *Arabick* tongue. Firſt built upon the Weſtern bank of the River *Tigris*, neer to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other ſide of the River, by *Muſtetaher*, the 45 *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; becauſe leſs ſubject to the inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned ſtill for the ſame City, as if built by *Bugiafer*; By whom being made the ſeat of his Royall Reſidence (whoſe Succeſſors were from hence called the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*) it flouriſhed in great pride and ſplendour: till taken and ſacked by *Allan*, or *Haalan* a *Tartarian* Captain, who here ſtarved *Muſteatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole poſterity; as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great wealth and traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was for beauty and bigneſs; being not above ſeven miles in compaſs, and having nothing in the buildings to be juſtly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* with the reſt of the Countrey, it became ſubject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks*, about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvell that ſhe hath loſt much of her former ſplendour. Maintained eſpecially at the preſent by the trade of *Aleppo*, to which, beſides ſuch goods as go up the water, there paſſe yearly many *Caravans*, or troops of Merchants, each of them having in it ſome hundreds (if not thouſands) of *Camels* laden with commodities. For whoſe ſafe lodging, as they paſs (the waies being generally ill provided for Travellers, in theſe Eaſtern Countreys;) there are ſome houſes of receipt built at the publick charge, or by ſome ſpeciall Benefactor, to preſerve his memory: moſt of them ſtrong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the dominions of the *Perſians* they call *Caravane Ruwes*; in the *Turkiſh*, *Canes*. And for communicating the ſucceſs of their buſineſs unto the place from whence they came, they make uſe of *Pigeons*, which is done in this manner. When the *Hen-Pigeon* ſitteth, or hath any young, they take the *Cock*, and ſet him in an open Cage: whom, when they have travelled daies a journey, they let go at liberty, and he ſtrait flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occaſion to ſend any advertiſements, they tie a letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by ſome of the houſe, advertiſed thereby of the eſtate of the *Caravan*. The like is alſo uſed betwix *Ormus*, and *Balſora*. But of this enough.

5. *Cteſiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whoſe fall it roſe; occaſioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, ſpeaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Seleucia* ſo neer unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, Cteſiphontem *juxta tertium ab ea Lapidem condidere Parthi*. Firſt built, ſaith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*, afterwards beautified and walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royall of the *Perſian* Kingdome. Many times beſieged and aſſaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but moſt commonly without ſucceſs; and amongſt others, by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, that bitter enemy of the Goſpell, who here breathed out his ſoul to Satan, in theſe dying words, *Vicisti tandem Galilæe*. But *Vardanes* (whoſoever he was) cannot of right be called the firſt founder of it, who raiſed it rather from the rubbiſh of an old foundation: this City being the ſame with that which *Moſes* calleth *Calne*; and *Ezekiel*, *Canneh*, *Gen.* 11. and *Ezek.* 27. 23. and therefore rightly ſaid by *Pliny* to be built in *Chalanitide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6. *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made neer it, to receive the over flowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwiſe might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compaſs 1280 furlongs or 160 miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vaſt and expencefull work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it ſelf was up and in full proſperity.

7. *Apamia*, a City of *Seleucus* foundation alſo, ſituate at the fall of *Piſon* into the River of *Tigris*.

8. *Vologeſia*, placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Cities of *Chaldæa*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Aſſyria*; built or repaired by one of the *Vologeſes*, Kings of *Perſia*, and from him denominated.

9. *Borſippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, memorable for the great victory, which *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch obtained here againſt *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus*, (of which more anon): whom having vanquiſhed, he pardoned him (as he ſaith) his life, and gave him the government of *Carmania*.

10. *Balſora*, the Port Town to *Babylon*, ſituate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Perſicus*, and conſequently of great weath and trading: The riches of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and ſome part of *India*, being landed here, and ſo carryed to *BABYLON*, and thence up the water to *Aleppo*. Suppoſed to be the the City of *Teredon*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long ſince taken from the *Turke* by *Abas*, the *Perſian*,

7. ASSYRIA.

ASSYRIA is bound on the East, with *Media*, from which parted by the mountain called *Coathras*; on the West, with *Mesopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South with *Susiana*; and on the North, with some part of *Turcomania*, and part of *Chaldæa*. So called from *Assur* the Son of *Sem*; by whom first inhabited. But having long since lost that name, as to vulgar speech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinsa*; by *Murcator*, *Sarh*; by the *Turks*, *Arzerum*.

The Countrey very plain, and levell, exceeding fruitfull, and abounding in Rivers. For besides *Tigris*, which washeth one whole side thereof, *Ptolomy* assigneth to this Countrey the Rivers of 2. *Lycus*, 3. *Cuprus*, and 4. *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increasing, with their tributary Streams, the greatness of *Tigris*.

The people were antiently great warriers, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans*, commanded a great part of the East; extending their dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; insomuch that not the people of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almost of this spacious Empire, had the name of *Assyrians*. The men for all this, exceeding formall in their habit, wearing long robes which trailed on the very ground, their hair long, their hats or *Caps* *Pyramidall* like the *Persian Miters*; not stirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands; and very frequent in their washings, especiall after copulation. As for their women, it was an antient custome with them, to expose the fairest unto sale in the open Market; and with the money given for those, to put off such as were deformed and not so amiable. And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this lesson, of giving less portions with such daughters as will sell themselves; but greasing the fat sow (as the saying is) with the addition of some hundreds: which made the merry fellow say, *That the money were a good match if the wench were away.*

The *Christian* faith was first here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took such deep root in that plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithstanding the cruel persecutions raised against it, by the Kings of *Persia*: who when they saw there was no means to destroy it by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with heresie. And to that end, as also to revenge himself upon the Emperor *Heraclius*, a great Champion of the *Orthodox* belief against *Nestorianism*, *Chosroes* the great King of *Persia* inforced all the *Christians* of his Empire unto those opinions, which he knew that Emperour condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks* within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to instruct them otherwise, (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Persian* Empire) *Nestorianism* prevailed so far, that it extended over all the Countreys East of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongst the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own *Patriarch*, who resideth at *Mosul*, now the chief City of this Countrey; and honoured by his people with the Title of *Jacelich*, mistaken or pronounced amiss for *Catholique*: an atribute given antiently to all *Orthodox* Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Nestorians*, were, 1. That there were two persons in our Saviour, as well as two natures; but yet confessing that *CHRIST* from the first instant of his conception, was both God and man. 2ly. That the *blessed Virgin* ought not to be called Θεοτόκος, or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Son*. 3ly. That *Nestorius*, condemned for these opinions in the third and fourth *Generall Councills*, was an holy man; for whose sake they condemn Saint *Cyrill* his profess'd *Antagonist*, and all those Councils wherein any censure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough, (their rejecting *Episcopall Confirmation* excepted only.) As 1. in celebrating the Sacrament of the Lords Supper with leavened bread; 2ly. communicating in both kinds; 3ly enjoining no necessity of *auricular* Confession; 4ly. contracting marriages in the second degree of Consanguinity; 5ly. permitting second and third mariages unto men in *Orders*, after the death of their first wives: 6ly. not praying before the *Cross*, nor giving religious worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorians*, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Nostranes*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these Christians use in contracting mariage, because not very usual, I will here relate. Their Wives they never see till the day of their mariage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancell of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the *Bridegroom* and his friends standing on the one side; the *Bride* and her kindred, on the other. When there, the *Cassisse* or Church-man biddeth the *Bridegroom* to put his hand thorow the hole in the Partition, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the mother of the *Bride*, with a sharp-pointed instrument, made of purpose, pricking the *Bridegrooms* hand all over, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till she cry again, they take it for a very good *Omen*, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the mariage is consumate, if a male-child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses*, and his Sons name *Joseph*; the Father is no more called *Moses*, but *Abda-Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly do they reverence mariage, and the fruit thereof, posterity.

It was antiently divided into these six parts, 1. *Arraphachitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the Son of *Sem*. 2. *Adiabene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, *quasi* Ἀδιάβατος, or inaccessible, because fenced with such unfordable

Rivers, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, that there was no easie comming to it; δια δυχερεσίαν ϑ διάβασιν, as it is in *Sidas*: or rather for *Adiavenena*, from *Diuvas*, and *Adiavas*, the chief Rivers of it (the same which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus*, and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3. *Calacine*, and 4. *Sitacene* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5. *Arbelites*, and 6. *Apolloniates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principall Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Assyria* brought unto our hand, 1. *Calach*, one of those fou which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Assur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and one of them to which the *Ten Tribes* were transplanted by *Salmanassar*, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. & 18. 11. of such esteem in those elder dayes, that *Calacine* as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* more rightly calleth it, did take name from hence, 2. *Sittace*, situate about two miles from the banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City, when it gave name to the parts adjoyning, both great and populous; well seated, in a fruitful soyl, and well shaded with trees of several sorts; supposed by the situation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or neer the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrods* Kingdome. 3. *Arbela*, on the banks of the River *Caprus*, built as some say by *Belus*, (or *Belochus*) *Priscus*, an *Assyrian* King, whence it had the name. Neer unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth Κυπρεήσσων, or *Cupressetum*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the *Ark*. 4. *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conquest, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwise observable, but for giving the name of *Apolloniates* to the Countrey adjacent. Adde unto these, 5. *Geguamela*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lycus*, and *Caprus*, memorable for the last and greatest battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Persia*; who had he made good the Eastern banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have hindered the *Macedonians* from coming over: the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it, but by linking their hands and armes together, and making one entire body to oppose the current; and therewithall of so great depth, that the footmen were fain to hold their Bows and Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moistned and made unservicable. But having miserably lost this opportunity by the cowardise of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this pass; he was inforced to venture all upon a battel: drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 horse, and 200000 foot, in their accompt who speak least of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million.) Opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, and 7000 horse of his *Europæans*; but those victoriously successeful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* speaks of 90000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonians* onely, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain neer the place of the battel, was by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo*, and some other antients. 6. *Rehoboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Assur*; by some supposed to be *Birrha*, an antient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering so neer unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7. *Rhesen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrods* building, seated by *Moses* between *Calach* and *Ninive*, *Gen.* cap. 10. v. 12. and there commended for *a great City*. Which *Character* with the site thereof, have induced some learned men to think it to be the same, which is by *Xenophon* called *Larissa*; seated by him on the River *Tigris*, much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that it was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four miles in compass: the walls in height a hundred foot, twenty five in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could have never taken it, if a casual Eclipse of the Sun had not discouraged the defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissa* for another of the principal Cities. 8. *Ninive*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines* called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whose steps he followed; of whom it is said that he *built a City*, *and called it after the name of his Son*, Enoch, *Gen.* 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Assur*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen.* 10. 11. *Out of that land went forth* Assur, *and built* Ninive, *&c.* But I like better of their judgement, who take *Assur* in this place for the name of the Countrey, and not of the man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, and to say of him, *Et egressus est in* Assur, &c. that is to say, *And he went forth to* Assur *or the land of* Assyria, and *there built* Ninive, Rehoboth, *and the rest* there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 480 furlongs, or 60. miles; and therefore said in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three dayes journey, in circuit, as indeed it was: accompting 20 miles for a dayes journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times; as also of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, in the times succeeding. Nor was it of less strength than greatness, the walls an hundred foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abrest on the top thereof: and in those walls 1500 Turrets, each of 200 foot in height. So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable, especiay because of an antient *Prophecy*, which signifyed that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the seat of his war against *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in armes against him: who having besieged it three years without hope of success, at last the River over-flowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident so terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himself in the midst of his enemies, and left the Town to the Besiegers. Threatned destruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it escaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courses, it was destroyed by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Assyrians* to rebel against him, as formerly against some of his Predecessors: and so destroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as himself affirmeth in the commont on the Propht *Nahum*, ὡς μηδὲ ὅπου ποτὲ γέγονεν ὀφθῆναι λοιπὸν, that one could scarse discern in what place it stood. 9. *Mosul*, at this time, and for long since, the chief of *Assyria*; seated on the *Tigris*, and raised out of the ruins of *Ninive*: of most note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, who either in the City it self, or the Monastery of Saint

Hermes

Hermes neer adjoyning to it, hath his constant Residence. The *Nestorians* in this City so considerable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Persians*; yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Christian Churches*, and at least 40000 souls. A *Sect* so maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Bishop*) for the greatness of the jurisdiction which this Patriarch hath: that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, set up an *Anti-Patriarch* against him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholique* of *Musal* also; to whom the *Nestorians* dwelling in the Northern parts of *Mesopotamia*, (if some writers of the *Papal* party may be believed) do submit themselves. 10. *Arzeri*, of greater strength than *Mosul*, though of less antiquity and repute; from which the whole Province of *Assyria*, is now called *Arziruni*. And 11. *Scheheruzal*, at this time of the greatest note, as being the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*; who hath 10000. *Timariots*, under his command, to defend this Countrey, and be ready for any service, as occasion is.

MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the East, with the River *Tigris*, by which parted from *Assyria*; on the West, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia Deserta*, from which last it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* also.

In the Scripture it is called most commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culta*; but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it; *Aram* or *Syria*, because inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culta*, from the fruitfulness and riches of it, exceeding plentifully stored both with corn and wine, and furnished with all necessaries for the life of man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Mesopotamia Felix*. The Southern parts hereof being barren and full of Desarts, not having any herbage in them, ἃ δὲ ἄλλο δένδρον, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongst some of the antient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*: partly because so like in nature to *Arabia Deserta*, and partly because planted with *Arabian Colonies*. The name which comprehends both parts is sometimes *Syria Trans-fluviales*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*,) of which see 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Aram-Naharaijm*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Mesopotamia*, or the Countrey in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the East, and *Euphrates* on the West and South; the River *Chaboras* or *Abaras*, passing also thorow it. The *Latines* generally call it by the same name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priscian* only to shew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medamna*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbech*.

As is the Countrey, such the People, the most *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to stand by themselves, but still requiring the addition of some neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Countrey. Beholding for their *Name* in the North, to *Syria*; in the South, to *Arabia*: the *Chaldæans* also putting in for a share, and challenging those parts which lie next *Assyria*, to belong to them. Their *Language* antiently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Countrey successively subjected to the *Babylonians*, *Assyrians Medes*, and *Persians*. From them first conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Trajan*; more fully setled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Persians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themselves on the *Stage* of action, but when once God shewed his mighty power in their many weaknesses; and raised them up to be a Scourage to the house of *Israel*, of which see *Judges* chap. 3. v. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadezer* King of *Syria Zobah*, in his war against *David*; by whom most shamefully defeated, 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 18. Yet notwithstanding memorable in the Book of God, for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his Children in that respect affording an *Original* to the *Hebrew* Nation.

The *Christian* faith was first preached here by Saint *Thaddæus*, one of the 70. Disciples; Anno 43. upon this occasion. *Agbarus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edessa*, one of the chief Cities of this Countrey, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of JESUS; beseeched him by a special message, to come and help him: whereunto our *Saviour* made this Answer, *that he could not visit him in person, the things he was to do, whilest upon the earth, being to be performed onely in the land of* Canaan; *but that he would take care of his health in convenient time.* Accordingly, not along after his *Ascension*, Saint *Thomas* the Apostle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, sent *Thaddæus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Gospel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it: the *Acts* whereof, together with the Copies of the several Letters from *Agbarus* to CHRIST, and from CHRIST to him, preserved in the *Archives* of *Edessa*; were by *Eusebius* translated out of the *Syriack*, and inserted into the body of his *Ecclesiastical History*, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good increase, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (so called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took on him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the unity of natures in CHRIST our Saviour. Whose followers finding the Patriarchs of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the most part further off; setling themselves in *Babylonia*, and *Mesopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers: Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are also subject, who takes unto himself the title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is successively called *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted Successor of that Saint and Martyr; superior in that regard, to the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, who is also a *Jacobite*. The Patriarchal Sea, fixt in the Monastery of *Saphran*, neer the City of *Merdin*; but the Residence of the *Patriarchs* for the most part, at *Garamit*: the number of *Chri-*

ſtians under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced ſince unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, diſtinct from all other *Chriſtians*, is 1 The acknowledgement but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one perſon) in Chriſt our Saviour. 2ly. In ſigning their Children before Baptiſm, in the Face or Arm, with the ſign of the Croſs, imprinted with a burning iron. 3ly Retaining *Circumſion*, and uſing it in both Sexes. 4ly. Affirming the Angels to conſiſt of two ſubſtances, Fire, and Light; and 5ly. Honouring the memory of *Dioſcurias* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syrus*, condemned by the antient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*,

1. Not enjoining the People the neceſſity of *Confeſſion* to a Prieſt, before they admit them to communicate.

2. Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt* in both kinds.

4. Allowing the mariage of Prieſts; And

5. Teaching that the ſouls of men deceaſed, are not admitted preſently to the *Viſion* of *God*, but remain ſomewhere in the Earth, to expect Chriſts coming. In which laſt, (ſetting aſide the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; ſo to the firſt (touching the unity of natures in our Saviour Chriſt) they have of late added ſuch qualifications; as poſſibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe.

Chief Rivers of this Countreys (beſides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1. *Chaboras*, which riſing in Mount *Maſius*, paſſing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; as alſo doth, 2. *Syngarus*, by *Pliny*, called *Maſca*, ariſing out of the Mountain *Syngarus*; which is but the more Weſtern part of the ſaid Mount *Maſius*. Which names of *Maſca*, *Maſius*, and the *Maſieni* (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) ſhew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place *Maſch*, or *Meſech*, one of the ſons of *Aram*, in theſe parts of the Countrey.

It was divided antiently into, 1. *Anthemaſia*, 2. *Chalcitis*. 3. *Caulanitis*. 4. *Accabene*. 5. *Aucorabitis* and 6. *Ingine*: each part containing ſeveral Cities or Towns of name. Theſe ſix when conquered by the *Romans* reduced unto two Provinces onely, viz. 1. *Meſopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Maſius*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2. *Oſrhoene* on the North: this laſt ſo named from one *Oſrhoes*, the Prince or Governour of theſe parts in the time of the *Perſians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief places of the whole, 1. *Edeſſa*, the Metropolis of *Oſrhoene*, ſituate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth thorow the middeſt of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the Story of *Agbarus* before related, amongſt Church-Hiſtorians: and in the *Roman* Hiſtories, for the death of the Emperor *Caracalla*, ſlain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his guard. The occaſion this. The Emperour conſcious to himſelf of his own unworthineſs, employed one *Maternianus* to enquire amongſt the Magicians in the Empire, who was moſt likely to ſucceed him: by whom accordingly adverti ſed that *Macrinus* was to be the man. The letters being brought unto *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the reſt of the Packets, to the hands of *Macrinus*, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperours perſon) that he might open them, and ſignifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leiſure. Finding by this the danger in which he ſtood, he reſolved to ſtrike the firſt blow; and to that end entruſted *Martialis*, one of his *Centurions*, with the execution; by whom the Emperour was here killed, as he withdrew himſelf, *Levandæ veſicæ gratiâ*, as my Author hath it. So impoſſible a thing it is to avoid ones Deſtiny; ſo vain a thing for any Prince to think of deſtroying his Succeſſor: and therefore very well ſaid to *Nero* in the times of his tyranny, *Omnes licet occideris*, *Succeſſorem tuum occidere non poteſt*, that though he cauſed all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Succeſſor would ſurvive him, and eſcape the blow. But to return unto *Edeſſa*, in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrarchies* of the Weſtern Chriſtians, when they firſt conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*; the two firſt Governors or *Tetraches*, ſucceſſively ſucceeding *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the Kingdome of *Hieruſalem*. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by *Sanguin* the *Turk*, Father of *Noradin* Sultan of *Damaſcus*, and by the loſs thereof, no fewer than three Arch-Biſhopricks withdrawn from the obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

2. *Cologenbar*, another ſtrong peece adjoining, beſieged on the taking of *Edeſſa*, by the ſame *Sanguin*, who was here ſtabbed in a drunken quarrell by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort ſaved for that time.

3. *Niſibis*, ſituate ſomewhat to the Eaſt of Mount *Maſius*, called alſo *Antiochia Mygoniæ*; from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards *Conſtantia*, from *Conſtantius* the Sonne of *Conſtantine*. A City of great note in thoſe elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Meſopotamia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called: which being beſieged by *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*, (*Conſtantius* ruling in the Eaſt) and in no ſmall danger to be loſt, was gallantly defended by *James* the then *Biſhop* of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not onely, *Epiſcopum Civitatis*, *ſed Principem & Ducem*, not the Biſhop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *libr.* 2 *cap.* 31. So little inconſiſtencie was there found in thoſe early daies, betwixt the *Epiſcopall* function and civill buſineſſes; that the Biſhops were not interdicted from the Acts of war, when the neceſſities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after moſt unworthily delivered to the ſaid *Sapores*, by the Emperour *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in ſhort time, the loſs of the Province.

4. *Ur*, ſeated on the Eaſt of *Niſibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and ſo placed by *Ammianus* who had travelled this Countrey. Conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Gen.* 11. 28. either becauſe the *Chaldees* were in thoſe daies poſſeſſed of the place; or becauſe the name of *Chaldæa* did comprehend alſo thoſe parts of this Countrey which lay towards *Tigris*, as was ſhewn before.

before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Mesopotamia*, was rather situate in this coast where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, then betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldea* and the *Persian* Gulf, where most Writers place it, may appear probable for the reasons which are here subjoyned, 1. Because it is said by *Joshua*, chap. 24. ver. 12. That *Terah* the *Father of Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt *on the other side of the Flood*; that is to say on the further side of the River *Euphrates*, and that too ἀπ' ἀρχῆς, as the *Septuagint*, *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*; in the first beginning. Which cannot be understood of any *Ur*, placed on or near the Lakes of *Caldea*, those being on this side of that River. 2. Because all the rest of *Abrahams* Ancestors from *Phaleg* downward, were seated in the Northern parts of *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*: and it were strange that *Terah* should be planted so far from the rest of his kindred. 3. Because from *Ur* in *Mesopotamia*, neer the banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*: whereas if he had dwelt (as some say he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldea*, his way had been directly West thorow *Arabia Deserta*, and not to have travelled, with his family, so far North as *Haran*; and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, crossing *Euphrates* twice with his herds and cattel. 5. *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove, when he went from *Ur*, and from which *Abraham* did remove, when he went towards *Canaan*; so named in memory of *Haran* the son of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Crassus*, that wealthy *Roman*. Whose estate (besides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three moneths corn distributed amongst the poor) amounting to 7100. Talents, which comes in our money, to one Million, 331250. l. But all his wealth could not preserve him from the slaughter, slain neer this City, with the routing of his Army also, by *Horodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

———*miserando funere Crassus*
Assyrias Latio maculavit sanguine Carras.

Which may be *Englished* to this purpose,

By a defeat lamented *Crassus* stains
With *Roman* blood the *Assyrian Carras* Plains.

Called the *Assyrian Carræ* by Poetical licence, because the *Assyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no less memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the *Moon*, worshipped here (but in no place else) under both *Sexes*: some honouring it as female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the shape and dress of a man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this fortune and success, as saith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam fœmineo nomine putabat nuncupandam, is mulieribus semper inserviat*; that they who worshipped it in the form of a *Woman*, should be always subject to their wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui vero Maremdeum credaret, is uxori dominetur*; but he that worshipped it as a man, should preserve the mastery. 6. *Amida*, neer the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, when one Province onely, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*; much beautified by *Constantius* the son of *Constantine*, by whom named *Constantias*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great strength, as a frontire Town against the *Persians*, and by them much aimed at. Honored of late times with the Residence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Christians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cause also made the dwelling of the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Nestorians* (or *Nestranes*) of the Popes erection; and the chief Seat also of the *Bassa* or other Officer, governing this Countrey for the *Turks*; by whom called *Caramit*, or *Kara Amida*, that is to say, *Amida the black*, because it was walled with black stone. 7. *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaboras* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*; mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arrianus*, and by *Ptolomy* mistakingly called *Pharga*: the seat or first plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abrahams* Ancestors: *Serug*, another of them giving name to 8. *Sarug*, about a days journey off from *Haran*, spoken of by some later Writers. 9. *Singara*, on the River so named, a fortified City in the time of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *lib.* 20. 10. *Bezabde*, mentioned by the same Author, by whom said to have been a very strong Fort, seated on a pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of *Tygris*, before whose times it had anciently been called *Phœnicha*. 11. *Virta*, supposed to have been the work of *Alexander* the Great, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unaccessible: in vain besieged by *Sapores* the *Persian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The same perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monastery of *Saphran*, is the Patriarchal See of the *Jacobite Sectaries*.

The first Inhabitants of these Countreys, though united from the first beginning under the same Princes, and form of Government, came from several Families: all the three sons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the posterity of *Chus*, the son of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*: with whom *Chesed* the son of *Nachor*, of the house of *Sem*, intermingling families; or being the Author of their langurge, or of some other signal benefit; gave to them the name of *Chaldim*, where came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, and those of *Arphaxads* posterity, intermingled with the sons of *Mash*, the son of *Aram*, came the *Mesopotamians*, and *Assyrians*. And that *Japhet* also and his children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the *Medes*, and *Albanese*, descended from him, makes it somewhat probable.

But, whatsoever Parents they descended from, *Nimrod* the son of *Chus*, made so bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Calne*; in *Assyria*, *Ninive*, *Rhesem*, and *Calach*; and finally *Rehoboth* (if that were *Birtha*, as some think it was)

The *Assyrian* Monarchs.

was) in *Mesopotamia*. By these strong Forts he curbed the native, and assured his power; being the first that altered the Paternall from of Government, and drew unto himself the government of severall Nations, not having any dependance upon one another. The foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the building to a wondrous height; advancing the *Assyrian* Empire, from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*: and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the world was then divided into petit States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy: For though there be litle found of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*, but that he spent most of his time in draining the marishes, and making firm ground of those vast fennes which lay neer to *Babylon*, which were works of peace: yet by those and the like works of peace, he so setled his affairs at home, that he gave his Son *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad: who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greatest and most powerfull of all that line; extending his dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caspian* Sea, to the Southern Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The *Assyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.

1798 1. *Nimrod*, called by some *Saturnus Babylonius*, the Son of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the first who altered the Paternal government, and usurped dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperiall City. 47.

1845. 2. *Belus*, or *Jupiter Babylonicus*, the Son of *Nimrod*, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters, under the names of *Bel*, and *Baal*. 62.

1907. 3. *Ninus*, the Son of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Persian* Provinces; and removed the Imperiall Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.

1959. 4. *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus* subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, she was vanquished and slain by their King *Staurobates*. Of this great Lady it is said, that she was born in *Ascalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the fury of wilde beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, we was brought up by shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in mariage to his onely Son. Going with him to the wars, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her person and spirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, so that he granted her at her request, the command of the Empire for five daies; making a *Decree*, that her will in all things should be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, she put on the Royall Robes, and (as some Writers doe report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the *Empire*, she exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of war, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horse. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her insatiable lusts: in which if the *Greek* writers say true (as we have noe reason to believe it of so gallant a woman) she was very guilty.

2001 5. *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.

2039 6. *Arias* 30.

2069 7. *Arabius* 40.

2109 8. *Belus* II. 30.

2139 9. *Armamatrites*.

2177 10. *Belochus Priscus* 35.

2212 11. *Belochus Jun. Baleus* 52.

2264 12. *Altades* 32.

2296 13. *Mamitus* 30.

2326 14. *Mancaleus* 30.

2356 15. *Spherus* 20.

2376 16. *Mancaleus* II. 30.

2406 17. *Sparetus* 40.

2446 18. *Ascatades* 40.

2486 19. *Amintes* 45.

2511 20. *Belochus Jun.* 45.

2556 21. *Bellopares* 30.

2586 22. *Lamprides* 22.

2618 23. *Sasares* 20.

2638 24. *Lampares* 20.

2668 25. *Panmas* 45.

2713 26. *Scramas* 19.

2732 27. *Mitreus* 27.

2759 28. *Tatanes* 32.

2791 29. *Tautes* 40.

2831 30. *Tineus* 30.

2861 31. *Dercillus* 40.

2901 32. *Eupales* 38.

2939 33. *Loastines* 45.

2984 34. *Pyrithiades* 30.

3014 35 *Ophrateus* 20.

3034 36. *Ophraganeus* 50.

3084 37. *Ascrasapes* 24.

3126 38. *Sardanapalus*, by *Eusebius* called *Tonoscolos*, the last King of this Race. Of which, being 38. in all, there is scarce any thing remaining but the very names: registred in this order by *Berosus*, or rather by Frier *Annius* a Monk of *Viturbum* in *Tuscany*, who hath thrust upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that antient Historian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the *Arrians*, *Bactrians*, and *Caspians*; but was otherwise a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, so much celebrated amongst the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the second, who recovered that Countrey which afterwards was called *Judæa*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predecessor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the sword of *Abraham*,) and subdued many other nations.

3. *Belochus*

3. *Bolochus Priſcus*, the tenth King, who by ſome Writers is ſaid to be the Author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auſpicium*. For of Sooth-ſaying there were in all four kindes. *The new Kings of Aſſyria and Chaldea.*

1. This *Auſpicium*, *quaſi Aviſpicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *avi ſiniſtrâ*, good luck, becauſe in giving, the right hand is oppoſite to the receivers left) or from the number of the Birds, whence *Romulus* had promiſed to him the Empire, before his Brother, becauſe he had ſeen the double number of Vultures: or laſtly, from the nature of them, whence the ſame *Romulus*, ſeeing the *Vultures*, was (ſaith *Florus*) *ſpei plenius urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi ſanguini, & prædæ aſſuetæ aves pollicebantur.*

2. *Aruſpicium*, *ab Aras inſpiciendo*, in which the *Sooth-ſayers* obſerved whether the Beaſt to be ſacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of a natural colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Hiſtories afford variety of Examples in this kinde; I need give no particular inſtance. A kinde of *Divination* ſaid to be practiſed firſt by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians*; inſtructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this myſtery, and ſo vaniſhed.

3. *Tripudium*, ſo called *quaſi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or ſhaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future ſucceſſes, by the rebounding of crums caſt unto Chickens. We have an inſtance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being ſeditiouſly buſie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickens to deſiſt from that enterprize; becauſe when he had thrown the crums to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens onely, and the ſame without eating went back again; which was taken for a ſign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been of good. But *Tiberius* ſlighting the advertiſement, and purſuing his deſign, was the ſame day ſlain.

4. *Augurium*, ſo called *ab avium garritu*, was a prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as alſo from the ſounds and voyces heard they knew not whence, nor on what occaſion. In which later kinde the death of *Cæſar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his houſe; and the poyſoning of *Germanicus* by the ſounding of a Trumpet of its own accord: In the former, an Owl ſcreeching in the Senate-houſe, was deemed ominous to *Auguſtus*; and a company of Crows following *Seianus* to his houſe, with great noiſe and clamor, was judged to be fatal to that great Favorite: and ſo it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the ancient Diſcipline, corrupted by the ſloathfulneſs and effeminacy of his Predeceſſors; and by the terrour of his name awed the *Egyptians*.

5. *Aſcatades*, the eighteenth King, more abſolute in *Syria*, and the Weſtern parts, then any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapalus*, the laſt King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern ſo great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conſpire againſt him: By whom, aſſociated with *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was beſieged in his City of *Ninive*: and there reduced unto ſuch extremities, that gathering his treaſures all together, he burnt himſelf and them in one funeral Pile; *eo ſolum facto virum imitatus*, as is ſaid by *Juſtine*. The treaſure which he is ſaid to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thouſand Millions of Talents of Silver: which in our *Engliſh* money comes to twenty thouſand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A maſs of money, which as it muſt be long in gathering, ſo probably it had not ſeen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown ruſty, might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*: It may be in ſpight unto his enemies, and it is poſſible it might be in policy, that ſo great a treaſure not falling to the poſſeſſion of his foes, might ſo much the more diſable them from making reſiſtance againſt, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Succeſſors. For it is of all things moſt fooliſh, both to loſe our Treaſure, and with it to inrich our Adverſaries. On which conſideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian Fleet* at *Gades*, and the *Genoeſe* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their lading might not come into the poſſeſſion of their enemies, the *Engliſh* and *Mahomitans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, and *Perſia* with the confining Provinces; *Belochus* ſtrengthed himſelf in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Aſſyria*.

The new Kings of *Aſſyria*, and *Chaldea*.

A.M.

3146. 1. *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new *Monarchy*, or race of Monarchs.

3194. 2. *Phul Aſſur*, deſtroyed *Galilee*, and ſubdued the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*; the ſame who is called *Tiglah Philaſſar* in the holy Scriptures.

3217. 3. *Salmanaſſar*, who deſtroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabenaſſar* of the *Chronologers*.

3227. 4. *Sennacherib*, whoſe blaſphemous hoſt was vanquiſhed by Angels from heaven, and he himſelf murdered by his two ſons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7.

3233. 5. *Aſſerhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his brothers, was depoſed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*. 10.

3243. 6. *Merodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, ſucceeded his Maſter in the Throne, conceived by ſome, to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*; by others, to be alſo the ſame King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* did ſo plague *Judea*.

3283. 7. *Ben Merodach*, the ſon of *Merodach Baladan*. 21.

The new Kings of Assyria, and Chaldea.

3304. 8. *Nabopullassar*, who vanquished *Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt.* 25.

3339. 9. *Nabuchodonozar* the Great, by some called the *Hercules* of the *East*, who conquered *Egypt* in the life of his father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyned also with *Astyages* King of *Medes*, in subverting the proud City of *Ninive*; and in the eighteenth year of his reign destroyed *Hierusalem*, and carried the people captive unto *Babylon*. But in the last seven years of his reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the field; according to the word of God spoken by *Daniel*, *Chap.* 4. during which time his son *Evilmerodach*, his daughter *Nicocris*, with *Nigliſſat* her husband, and *Laboraſoradach* their son, governed his Empires as *Protectors*; and therefore are by some reckoned as Kings. Finally, *Nabuchadnezzar* having recoved his senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and dyed, when he had reigned in all 44. years.

3383. 10. *Evilmerodach*, the son of *Nabuchadnezzar*, slain by *Astyages*, King of the *Medes*. 26.

3409. 11. *Balthaſſar*, son of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabodinus* of *Berosus*) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel nature, was in the later end of his reign assailed by *Cyaxares* the son of *Astyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus* the *Persian*: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Persians*. A.M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Balthaſſar*, is the common opinion. But *Joſephus Scaliger* in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the *Medes*, called in prophane stories, *Nabonidus*; in divine, *Darius Medus*; who after a 17 years reign was slain by *Cyrus* King of the *Persians*. But by the leave of so worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced (*Chap.* 27.) *That all nations should serve Nabuchadnezzar, and his son, and his sons son*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of strange blood, and so the Nations were not to serve him; and in *Balthaſſar*, the sons son of *Nabuchadnezzar*, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his arguments, and withal the scoffs, which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of *Chronologers*; *boni & diligentes viri*, good simple meaning men; *& addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his first complements. *Ut igitur, quod Chronologorum eſt, omnes reſipiſcant, &c.* therefore that they may repent their ever being *Chronologers*, he bringeth in *Berosus*, cited by *Josephus*, in his first book against *Appion*. But *Berosus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he saith the Kingdom of *Balthaſſar* was by the people delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him say, a Nobleman of the *Medes*; neither can the authority of *Berosus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in *Chap.* 6. telleth *Balthaſſar*, that his Kingdom should be *divided among the Medes and Persians*. His second argument is drawn from the nature of the word, ἀναιρέομαι, ᾧ Δαρεῖος ὁ Μήδος ἀναιρέομαι τὴν ἀρχήν, as it is in the same Chapter, *and Darius the Mede took the Empire*: by which word *took* is implyed (saith he) not a forcible invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his army consisting of *Medes* and *Persians*, who according to the word of God, had taken it from *Balthaſſar*, *Darius* being then absent. *Quid ſi probavero* (saith he) *eum cognominatum fuiſſe Medum?* he hath yet one trick more then all these; and *Medus* must not be the *national* name, but the surname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megasthenes*, cited by *Eusebius*, in his work *De Præparatione Evangelica*, where he is called Μήδης ἀπὸ Μήδης, &c. an argument of all others the most slight and trivial. For besides that Μήδης may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and besides that, it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is diametrally opposite to another place of the same *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter; where he is called *Darius, of the seed of the Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, questionless he was the same with *Balthaſſar*. For besides that *Josephus*, and *Berosus*, attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the same *Josephus* (who might best know the truth in this case) telleth us that *Balthaſſar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Naboandel*, a name not so great a stranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaligers Darius*, or *Herodotus* his *Labonitus*. But in this we must pardon *Joseph*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his essence. For had he not been in some things singular, in all, peremptory, he had neither been a *Scaliger*, nor the son of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joseph* to the singularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the *Assyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of so great an Empire. Successively inslaved by the *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Persians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Persians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavoring to assert in the way of war, or opposition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelsome Masters, as if they had no title to their own Countrey, but were born to follow the fortunes of all pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the *Persians*, which was so *Despotical* and absolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of slaves; not suffering any to grow great in a state of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince; as it is now used amongst the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliances amongst themselves, and as few dependants amongst the people, were never able to take head against the Conqueror; but in the fall of the present Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the antient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferior people;

people; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of slaves, there both the conquest will be easie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conqueror, or stand any longer to their King, then he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens, then they were accustomed to before; and have withal a flattering hope, that their new Masters may be gentler to them, then their former were? It fares with them no otherwise then with *Esops Ass*, which refused to make the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the enemy, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back, then his old Master made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* being brought by the *Persians*, and never accustomed to the taste of a better fortune: have followed the same successes as the *Persians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another; the particular accompt of whose estate we shall finde in *Persia*, taking this onely for the *close*, that when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had discomfited *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*; *Caramit*, *Merdin*, and the rest both in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garrisons. And for a confirmation of his estate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* (who by an old *Prerogative* had the nomination or confirmation, at the least, of the Kings of *Assyria*, and the Sultans of *Egypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Ensigns, *Anno* 1534. incorporating by that means those Regions into his estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdat* to command in chief, and divers *Sanziacks* in their several and respective Provinces. And though the *Persian* Kings have since taken, and are still posted of some places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said investiture, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Persian*, though *Tauris* and some other pieces of it be possessed by the *Turks*.

OF

OF

MOUNT-TAURUS.

MOUNT-TAURUS is a conſtant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Aſia* from Weſt to Eaſt, and dividing it, as the *Æquator* doth the Globe, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriack* and *Chaldean* ſignifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reaſon of its greatneſs and continued length: yet ſo, that it had other names alſo in ſome parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it paſſed, and on which it bordered. The courſe whereof is thus ſet down by Sir *Walter Raleigh*: premiſing onely, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Aſia Minor*, neer the *Mediterranean*. 'Theſe 'Mountains (ſaith he) which ſunder *Cilicia* from the reſt of *Aſia* the leſs, on the North thereof are 'called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Amanus*. On 'the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it ſelf a way thorow it) it ſometimes reſumeth the 'name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolomies* three firſt Tables of *Aſia*, and ſometimes taketh the name of *Niphates*, 'as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, ſo long as they bound *Armenia* from *Meſopotamia*. 'After the River *Tigris* hath alſo cut them aſunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, un-'till they ſeparate *Aſſyria* and *Media*, but then they call themſelves *Coatras*: although between the up-'per and lower *Media*, they appear not always, but are ſeen diſcontinued, and broke in pieces; ſuch 'parts of it as are found in the middle of that Countrey being called *Orontes*; thoſe which lie more to-'wards the Eaſt being named *Coronus*; out of the Southern parts whereof iſſueth the River of *Bagradus*, 'which divideth the ancient *Perſia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eaſt-ward by the name of '*Coronus*, they give unto the *Parthians* aud *Hyrcanians*, their proper Countreys: and afterwards change 'themſelves into the *Mountains* of *Seriphi*, out of which riſeth the River *Maurgus*. And now beginning 'to draw towards the end of their courſe, they firſt make themſelves the South border of *Bactria*, and 'are then known by the name of *Paropamiſus*: and after take unto themſelves the name of *Caucaſus*, 'where the famous Rivers *Indus*, *Hydaſpis*, and *Zaradrus*, have their firſt beginnings. In this point do 'they hold their heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of *Imaus*, whom they encounter within 'the 35, 36, & 37. Degrees of *Latitude*, and the 140 Degree of *Longitude*: known by no other name then 'this, till finally they terminate their courſe in the *Indian* Seas. So far, and to this purpoſe, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient Writers could trace the courſe of this Mountain, no further then the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet later obſervations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucaſus* being now known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Naugrocot*. But this is to be underſtood onely of the main body of theſe Mountains, which hold on in an even courſe from Weſt to Eaſt; not of thoſe ſpurs and branches of it, which ſhoot either to the North, or South: ſuch as are the *Anti-Taurus* in ſome parts of the *leſſer Aſia*; the *Gordiæan* Hills, and the *Montes Moſchici*, with thoſe which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Pariardri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which ſheweth it ſelf on the North-Eaſt of *Aſſyria*, with divers others.

In ſuch a continual courſe of Mountains it muſt needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not eaſily ſubdued, nor ſo ſoon reduced unto civility, as ſuch who were poſſeſſed of places leſs defenſible, and fitter for commerce and trafick with the reſt of mankinde. And they continued in theſe late times, the laſt which were brought under by the *Turks* and *Perſians*, the mightieſt Monarchs of thoſe parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the Weſt where it cloſeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the Eaſt, ſeparating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to deſcribe them by, we will call the firſt the Kingdom of *Aladeules*, and the laſt the Kingdom of *Babaman*; according to the names of the two laſt Kings.

1. The Kingdom of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it ſelf as far towards the Eaſt, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Meſopotamia* from *Armenia major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing then their want of all things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themſelves by *husbandry*, and therefore gave themſelves to *grazing*; breeding on their paſtures ſome ſtore of horſe and camels, which they ſold to others, but eſpecially maintaining themſelves and their families by hunting and ſtealing. Suppoſed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the leſſer *Aſia*, which by long and continual wars in the former Ages, were forced to forſake their dwellings, and for ſafety of their lives to fly to theſe unpeopled and deſolate Mountains.

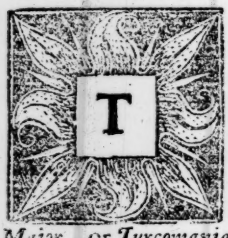
tains. Where ſearching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, the chiefly the mildeſt *Temperature* of the Air, and moſt cheerfull aſpect of the Sun: they built in many places poor villages, and afterwards ſome better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, ſo called as it is conceived from the River *Marſias*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Cœlene*, paſſeth by the ſame, and not farre off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdome firſt, it is hard to ſay, the Kings hereof being mean and inconſiderable in the eye of the world; not worth the conquering, and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himſelf with reigning over rocks and Mountains. The laſt was *Aladeules*, ſo much ſpoken of in the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories; and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by ſome writers to have been the Author of ſuch a *Paradiſe*, as we ſhall find deſcribed when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him moſt really and truly known, in the ſtories of the former times; was the ſtout oppoſition which he made againſt the *Turks*, in their wars with *Perſia*: He had before given no ſmall check to the proceedings of *Bajazet*, the ſecond, in his conqueſt of the *Caramanian* Kingdome; and no leſſe troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his *Perſian* wars, impeaching what he could the greatneſs of the *Ottoman* family. Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alis Beg*, General of his horſe; and ſeeing his Army terrified by the ſhot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flie. But being at laſt taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdome was converted to a *Turkiſh* Province, Anno 1515. and ſo continueth to this day.

2. The Kingdome of *BAHAMAN* was ſituate more towards the Eaſt, amongſt the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was ſaid. The Mountains in thoſe parts ſo high, that Travellers at the end of a two daies journey, may diſcern the *midle Region* of the Air to be beneath them. exceeding troubleſome to aſcend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reaſon of the Rocks and *precipices*, in the going down: full of inhoſpitable ſtreights, and ſo cold and barren, that were not *Sove eignity* a temptation above all reſiſtance, no man would take upon him the command of ſo poor a Kingdome. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it ſparkle in the night, like the hill *Veſuvius*, in *Italy*: by means whereof here are many *Hot-Bathes*, three of them walled about, two open; to which reſort unſound and decrepid people, in the very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary road or paſs betwixt *Omoal* the laſt Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Damoan* the firſt of *Media*. But the Kings Seat was in a village called *Reyna*, where he had a Caſtle ſo built upon the beſt advantages of art and nature, that it ſeemed invincible: adorned, above, with gardens, flowers, and moſt pleaſant fruits; and furniſhed beneath with a Rivulet of pureſt water, which pleaſantly paſſing thorow the Caſtle, fell into the *Vallos*. A Caſtle of ſo large a circuit, that beſides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garriſon of 10000. men.

The laſt King hereof was the foreſaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long deſcent of Royal Anceſtors, comparing for antiquity with the *Perſian Sophies*: who though ill-neighboured on both ſides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Perſia* on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valour, maintained their *Royalties* againſt all pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Perſian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*: pretending that by the opportunity of his ſcituation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his progreſs towards the *Hyrcanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which riſing from Mount *Taurus* watered and enriched his *Perſian* territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected; yet it was cauſe enough of quarrel that he might ſo do: and therefore is beſieged in his Caſtle of *Ryna*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no poſſibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Perſians* proceeds by *treachery*: invites the old King into his Camp under colour of parley, and by his means drew his two Sons out of the Caſtle to the *parley* alſo. Whom having got into his power, he firſt cauſed their heads to be cut off; and after making uſe of their ſeales and ſignets, obtains a ſurrender of the place; and with it the poſſeſſion of this mountainous Kingdome, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever ſince to the Crown of *Perſia*.

OF TURCOMANIA.



TURCOMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and the *Caſpian* Sea; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North, with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*; who from hence made their firſt expedition for the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and after ſpread themſelves over all thoſe parts of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, now in their poſſeſſion. A Countrey which conſiſteth of four ſeveral Provinces, each province having to its ſelf its particular ſtory; and therefore we muſt look upon it, as it is now divided into thoſe four parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and ſpecially ſo called; 2. *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3. *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4. *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1. *ARMENIA MAJOR.*

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and ſome part of the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the *leſſer Aſia*; on the North, with *Colchis*, or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Meſopitamia*, and ſome part of *Aſſyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as ſome ſay *quaſi Aram-Mini* or the *Minni* of *Syria*: but as others ſay, *quaſi Har-mini*, that is to ſay *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini* or *Minni*, being a region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremie* the Prophet, chap. 5. ver. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat*, and *Askenaz*, which ſhew the ſcituation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* was added to it for diſtinction ſake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the firſt ſeat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themſelves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Countrey in the moſt part overſpread with hills, branches of thoſe huge mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful vallies, liberally furniſhed with Cattel, and good ſtore of fruits, though much ſubject to deep ſnows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better eſtimated than by the frankneſs of *Tigranes*, once King hereof. Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not onely very readily laid down that ſumme; but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Souldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every *Colonel* a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added ſome part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdome of *Syria*, unto his eſtate: yet thoſe being new Acqueſts, and not fully ſetled, were not much likely for the preſent, to enrich his coffers: new conquered Provinces being for the moſt part, more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely perſonage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, but careleſs of honour got by war; merry, deſirous to be at eaſe, and apt to be ſoothed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, moſt of them skilfull at their bow, or ſome other weapon. Their families for the moſt part great, the Father and all his poſterity to the third and fourth geneſation, living under a roof; after whoſe death the eldeſt whether Son or Brother hath the chiefeſt Rule. In diet and clothing all alike; and in moſt places they are ſaid to be very induſtrious; painful in tillage, and well ſeen in *manufactures*, eſpecially rich *tapeſtries*, Grograins, and watred *Chamlets*: with which they trafick into moſt Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*; privileged as they ſay, by a *Charter under Mahomets* own hand, above other *Chriſtians*, and upon that occaſion more diſperſed in the Eaſtern Countries, than any Nation in the world, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a language of their own which they call the *Armenian*, not onely uſed amongſt them in common talk, but in ſacred offices: the Scriptures being tranſlated into that language alſo, and that as the people do affirm, by the hand of Saint *Chriſoſtome*, at ſuch time as (on the ſolicitation of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, his moſt eager enemy) he was confined to the leſſer *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Arcadius*; to whom alſo they aſcribe the invention of the *Armenian Characters*, or letters, ſtill in uſe amongſt them.

They received the *Chriſtian* faith by the preaching of Saint *Bartholmew*, and were antiently of the juriſdiction of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Dioceſe*; which together with the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the *Council* of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchate*. But falling into the opinions of *Eutyches*, touching one nature onely in *CHRIST* our Saviour; they withdrew themſelves long ſince, from the communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater deteſtation than all other *Chriſtians*; and choſe two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold beſides thoſe of *Eutyches*, (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe and

and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1. Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead; 2. Admitting none to be made *Priests*, except those that be maried; 3. Denying the body of Christ to be really under the *species* of bread and wine; and 4. *Rebaptizing* such as come to their *Communion* from the *Latine* Churches; are these that follow: in which they differ also from most Churches else, viz. in receiving *Infants* to the *Lords Table*, immediately after *Baptism*. 2. In abstaining from *unclean* beasts; 3. In fasting on *Christ-mas* day: and 4. In holding their children over the fire, as a necessary circumstance in *Baptism*, because *John the Baptist* told the people which followed him, that CHRIST would baptize them with the *Holy Ghost*, *and with fire*; in which place he meaneth not *materiall fire*, but the lively purgation of the *Holy Ghost*, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this sect is Governed by two *Patriarchs*; whereof the one hath under his jurisdiction this *Turcomania*; comprehending 150000 Families, besides very many *Monasteries*: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the lesser, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The first residing antiently in *Sebastia*, the *Metropolis* of the greater *Armenia*; the second originally at *Melitene*, the *Metropolis* of *Armenia Minor*, but of late at *Sis*, a small City, not far from *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30. Bishops. *Armenia Major.*

Chief Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Araxes*, which rising out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, first runneth Eastward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it self towards the *North*: and after a long course is divided into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caspian* Sea, the other into, 2. *Cyrus*, another great River of this Countrey. The fountain of this last in Mount *Caucasus* in the furthest North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with. 3. *Cambyses*, another great River of these parts; and so together hasten to the *Caspian* also. 4. *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews*, *Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the garden of *Eden*, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as is said by *Strabo*. A River of great length and swiftness. For having forced it self a passage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the West of *Mesopotamia*, with a stream so violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* or *Birra*, a Town on the North-West of *Mesopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are fain to come back again by land; selling those Boats for eight crowns which they bought for 50. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldæa* it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greatest branch of it passeth thorow the City of *Babylon*, and so into the *Persian* Gulf: the rest of it being cut into many *Channels*, for fear it should overflow and drown the Countrey, are quite lost in the *Lakes* of *Chaldæa*. 5. *Tigris*, a swifter stream than that, whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* tongue signifying an *Arrow*. A River of so strong a course, that it passeth thorow the Lake *Thonitis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an easie passage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* born up with *Goat-skins* blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Heddekel* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the garden of *Paradise*; situate in an Iland made by the imbracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their several Branches. Rising originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis*, in *Armenia Major*, where now we are; it is presently almost swallowed by the gaping Earth; and passing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compassing the East parts of *Mesopotamia*, which it divides from *Assyria*; meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its first and second birth, thus the Poet *Lucan*.

At Tigrin *subito tellus absorbet hiatu,*
Occultosque tegit cursus; rursusque renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to say.

Tigris, soon swallowed by the thirsty earth,
Finds there a buriall where it had its birth:
But breaking out at a new spring, vouchsafes
With the Salt Seas to mixt it sweeter waves.

Mountains of most note, are, 1. *Abos*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2. *Periardes*, or *Periarges* as *Ptolomy*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or spurre of the great mountain *Taurus*. 3. *Udacespes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4. Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5. The Mountains called *Montes Moschici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea: which name they took from *Mesech*, or *Mosoch* the Son of *Japhet*, preserving the remembrance of his planting there. 6. *Niphates*, one of the spurres of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is said to issue. 7. The *Gordiæan* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is most generally affirmed to rest. Affirmed by many antient writers of the Christian Church, and countenanced not onely by *Josephus* and some others of the Elder Historians; but by the *Septuagint* themselves: who in the 37 chap. of *Esay* v. 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it so, let *Arara* be *Armenia*, and consequently the mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark rested on the *Gordiæan* mountains, or any others of this Countrey, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can see, that the Garden of *Eden* must be looked for in *Armenia* also; because situate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Those Rivers have indeed their fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compass not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long course they encounter each other in the spacious plains of *Babylonia*. And so those mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, because there first grown

Armenia Major.

to a diſcernable and ſuper-eminent height above all the mountains of thoſe parts: became not the reſting place of the Ark, till after a further courſe towards the Eaſt, they were grown to their fulleſt height; which is in thoſe parts of it betwixt *Scythia*, and *Perſia*, which are called Mount *Caucaſus*: not that Mount *Caucaſus*, which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is ſaid to riſe; but that which lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Caſpian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do croſs each other. But of this elſewhere.

It was divided herefore into many Provinces, the principall whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordiæan* Mountains, called in ſome writers, *Cordiæi*, from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiene*, but moſt commonly called *Corduene*, bordering on *Aſſyria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbienus*, who ſiding with *Luculus* againſt *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his wife and Children; but honoured by *Luculus* with a ſtately and magnificent funeral. 2. The 2d. Province of note is called *Cotacene*, neer the *Montes Moſchici*. 3. *Toſarene* bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4. *Colthene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5. *Sophene*, neer the turnings of the River *Euphrates*; miſtook by ſome induſtrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6. *Baſiſine*, on the North-Weſt, neer the ſprings of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where ſpecified.

Thoſe of moſt conſequence in the whole, 1. *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of moſt eſteem in thoſe times, and the Seat-royall of the Kings of *Armenia* from its firſt foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perſwaſion of *Annibal*, whileſt he abode in this Countrey: who liking the ſituation of the place, drew on it the model of a ſtrong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was preſently built. Taken and ſacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*; it never could revive again to its former ſplendour: in the midle ages called *Eſechia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*; if not built rather out of the ruines of it. A City memorable for two great battells neer unto it; the firſt between *Lucullus* on the one ſid, againſt *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were victors: the ſecond between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*, and *Hyſmael* the *Perſian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were conquerors, *Anno* 1514. A victory which he bought with the loſs of 3000 of his beſt men, and ſuch a terrour to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it, the only day of doom. The fields adjoining to the Town wherein this cruel battel was fought, called the *Chalderan fields*. 2. *Sebaſtia*, now *Suaſſia*, ſeated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the *Mountain Taurus*; the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their firſt ſeparation from the See of *Conſtantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: ſo named in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*. But of late diveſted of that dignity, the *Patriarchall* See, by reaſon of the fierce wars raging in this Countrey, betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monaſtery of *Eomeazin*, neer the City of *Ervan* in *Perſia*; in the dominions of which King theſe *Armenian Chriſtians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelpbelins*. 3. *Tigranecerta*, beautified and inlarged, if not firſt founded, by *Tigranes* above-mentioned; by whom repleniſhed with people of ſeverall Nations, whoſe Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdome: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Paiſant, who ſent not ſomewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great reſiſtance, thoſe ſeverall Nations not agreeing amongſt themſelves: and therein beſides other Treaſure, no leſs than 8000 Talents in ready mony. The City ſituate neer a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Niceſorius*. 4. *Arſamoſata*, by *Pliny* called *Arſimote*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5. *Cholna*, ſo called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the firſt Planters of this Countrey, 6. *Baraza*, by the Emperor *Leo* much enlarged and beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7. *Arſarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8. *Theodoſiopolis*, built on the foundation of ſome of the more antient Cities, by the Emperor *Theodoſius*, and of him thus named. 9. *Colonia*, the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible City hereof, when poſſeſſed by the *Romans*. 10. *Clamaſſum*, a ſtrong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the firſt in his way towards *Perſia*, and therewith *livery* and *ſeiſin* of the reſt of this Countrey, ſince wholly conquered by his Succeſſors. 12. *Chars*, not far from the ſame River alſo, ſuppoſed to be the *Chorſa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long ſince the ruins onely; but in three weeks ſo repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, Anno 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 13. *Theſpia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Theſpitis*, and to the Region called *Theſpites*; but now not in being. 14. *Arminig*, now of greateſt name, and eſteemed the *Metropolis* of this Countrie: ſituate in that part of the Lake of *Vaſlan* (the *Martiana palus* of the antient writers) which lieth next to this Countrey; and by that well fortified: the onely City of *Armenia* poſſeſſed by the *Perſians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 15. *Van*, both for natural ſituation, and the works of art, accompted by the *Turks* for their ſtrongeſt Bulwark in theſe parts againſt the *Perſians*; and for that cauſe well garriſoned, and as well munitioned.

This Countrey was firſt planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Meſech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their families or Colonies poſſeſſed the ſame: the one leaving the remainder of his name, in the *Montes Moſchici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colthene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholobatene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdome aſſoon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Bazanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his ſuperiority, and to aid him in his wars againſt *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of moſt note in times ſucceeding, (for we have no conſtant Catalogue of them) were 1. *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Perſians*, was promiſed victory by the *Oracle*, on the ſacrifice of his two fair daughters. Willing to ſatisfie the Gods, and yet ſpare his children, he ſacrified two of the daughters of *Mieſalcus*, a noble man of this Countrey: by whom in revenge hereof his own daughters were ſlain, and himſelf

ſelf ſo ſolely followed, that ſwiming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2. *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; ſpoken of before. 3. *Tigranes*, the moſt mighty King that ever reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his proweſs, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Aſia Minor*, the whole Countreys of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*. But ſiding with *Mithridates*, whoſe daughter he had married, againſt the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two great battels, and outed of the greateſt part of his dominons. Hearing that *Pompey* had ſucceeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and truſting more unto his goodneſs then a wiſeman would, he put himſelf into his power: by whom condemned in a great ſum of money for the charge of the war, and ſtripped of all the reſt of his eſtates; he was ſuffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it ſelf, and the leſſer *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of ſome practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried Priſoner unto *Rome*, and his Countrey brought into the form of a Province. 4. *Artavaſdes*, circumvented by *Mar. Antonie*, who led him Priſoner to *Rome*, but (*catenis, ne quid honori ejus deeſſet, aureis*, as the Hiſtorian tells us of him) it was in chains of Gold for his greater honor; giving *Armenia* to one of the ſons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5. *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Succeſſors held it but as Vaſſals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and ſometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this eſtate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Dioceſs*) who adding *Meſopotamia* alſo unto his Dominions, make *Tigris* the Eaſtern border of his Empire, which *Auguſtus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajans* time, in the reign of *Conſtantius*, *Julian*, and the Emperors following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Juſtinian* the ſecond (he began his Empire, *Anno* 687.) when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperor, but ſoon loſt again, it continued ſubject to the *Saracens*, till the breaking in of the *Turks*, *Anno* 844. of whom more anon. The greateſt part of the *Turks* emptying themſelves into *Perſia*, and other Countreys which they took from the Eaſtern Emperors; the Chriſtians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again ſubdued by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata* ſon of *Cingis*, the firſt *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make ſo abſolute a conqueſt of it, as to extinguiſh either Chriſtianity, or the race of the Kings: *Haithon*, ſirnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in perſon to *Mongu*, the great *Cham* of *Tartarie*, 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the reign of King *Richard* the ſecond, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to ſue for aid againſt the *Turks*; by whom then diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtates. By *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, one of the Princes of this Countrey, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdome: and ſo continued till the year 1515. when conquered by *Selimus* the firſt, and by him made a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire; more fully ſetled and aſſured in the reign of *Amurath* the third, who by cauſing many Forts and Garriſons to be planted in it, made the conqueſt abſolute.

Colchis.

The Armes of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Chriſtian faith, were *Gules*, 3 heads of a Buck *Argent*, Crowned *Or*.

2. COLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Iberia*; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenſes*; on the North, with *Tartarie*, from which parted by thoſe vaſt hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucaſi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which ſeparated by the *Montes Moſchici*.

The reaſon of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochertus*, who fetcheth the orginal of the name and Nation, from *Cuſluhim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*: the *Etymology* of the name being too much wreſted, and *Egypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in thoſe early daies: though poſſibly in times ſucceeding, the *Ægyptians* hearing by the *Grecks*, of the wealth of the Country, might ſend Colonies of their people thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Countrey ſaid to be very fruitful, if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. Their vines they plant at the feet of great trees, which twining about the armes thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits riſing from the Earth, they uſed of late times to furniſh the Store-houſes of their Kings, for want of ready money to fill his Coffers; their tributes being paid in ſuch commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of gold, found in the ſands of their Rivers iſſuing from the *Caucaſian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; χρυσοφορεῖσθαι δὲ τὰ Καυκάσου πολλὰ πηγὰς ἔχοντα ἀφαλεῖς, Many of their ſprings, ſaith he, which come out of *Caucaſus*, carry veins of Gold. The like ſaith *Strabo* alſo, and ſome other Antients. With which, and out of their rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were ſo well furniſhed with thoſe metals; that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now ſo deſtitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and ſell with, are inforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the preſent very rude & barbarous; ſo inhumane & voide of naturall affection, that they ſell their children to the *Turks*. The better ſort of them much given to belly-cheer, dancing and ſinging looſe ſonnets of love and daliance; uſing much wine in their entertainments, which the more their Gueſts drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their wives or Siſters, with

Colchis. charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averse from the entertainment, whether to place themselves, or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The *Christian* faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperor *Justinus*, by whose perswasion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian; and being baptized, was returned back into his Countrey, with the title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Persia* much offended at it, proclaimed war against him: which hindred the further progress of the Gospel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two reverend men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this service; which they successfully effected: in that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch. To whom conform in most dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a distinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate their Divine Offices in the *Greek* tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of them understand any better, then the *Vulgar Papists* of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* Service. Whether it be that they have no learned men amongst them, either to translate their old *Liturgy*, or to compose a new, or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that ignorance is the best mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Countrey, are 1. *Hippus*, 2. *Cyaneus*, 3. *Charistus*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4. *Phasis*, the principal of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Boas*. Navigable with smaller Vessels a great way up into the Countrey, and with great ships, 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongst the Antients for the landing of the *Argonautes*, in the mouth thereof; and those delicate Fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiani* (*Pheasants*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonautes*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* vertues; it was no other then the adventure of some noble *Grecians*, for the gold of *Cholchos*. The age wherein it hapned, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jason*, *Orpheus*, the famous Poet, *Castor*, and *Pollux* the sons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon*, and *Peleus*, the sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiaraus* the South-sayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noise of the wealth of *Colchos*, and the riches of King *Æetes*, then therein reigning, resolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ship called *Argos* (whence the name of *Argonautes*) whereof one *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellespont*, *Propontick*, and *Thracian Bosphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which such *Knights Errants* could not chose but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the Kings Court, and there were kindely entertained. But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a *Dragon* always waking) they practised with *Medea*, the daughter of *Æetes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jason*, on promise of marriage with him, assented to it: By whose Artifices (which the Poets call *Magical* charms) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treasure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, imbarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Grecians* in those early days had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many fictions, and ingenious fancies: But not without some ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design.) For the Rivers, as before was said, having Golden sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have:) it was the custom of the people to lay many Fleeces of wool in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, though the water passed through; which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these *Adventures* to pursue their fortunes, let us go forward to survey the *Cholchian* Cities; the principal whereof, 1. *Dioscurias*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two *Spartans*, the Charioters of *Castor* and *Pollux*, and so named in honor of their Masters, whom the *Greeks* call Διόσκυροι: which two *Spartans* passing further East, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the world, that here were spoken 300 different languages; insomuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* saith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters, for dispatch of business, and negotiating with those Merchants. 2. *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3. *Sigameam*, neer the mouth of the River *Cyaneus*: as is also, 4. *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Egyptian* Colony, planted there by *Sesostris* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without success, the conquest of *Colchis*. 5. *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or late foundation of it, when that name was given. 6. *Phasis*, so called from the River, upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglegbeg*, by whom called *Phassum*. 7. *Alvati*, a well fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy*, 8. *Mechlessus*, 9. *Sirace*, 10. *Zadris*, 11. *Surium*, *&c.* not much observable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey, most probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the posterity of *Hul* or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*; to whom in tract of time,

time, ſome Colonies out of *Ægypt* (a ſeafaring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoin themſelves; the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from ſome part of his Army left there by *Seſoſtris*) being ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-ſpring of the *Ægyptians*. The moſt antient of their Kings was *Ætes*, ſpoken of before: who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his ſtepdame *Ino*, with great ſtore of treaſure; occaſioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchos*, diſguiſed under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of moſt note after him, *Selances*, and *Eſubops*, who firſt diſcovered the rich mines of Gold and Silver; of which metals they made all their *Utenſils*, even the beams of their Chambers. The fame whereof drew thither *Seſoſtris*, the great King of *Ægypt*; who being vanquiſhed in the field was fain to lay aſide all thoſe hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Ægypt* in worſe ſtate than he came; but that he left behind him an *Ægyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*; which after occaſioned others of that Countrey to repair hither alſo. Living in peace and unmoleſted from this time forwards, they were unhappily ingaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to ſide with him againſt the *Romans*, and in his overthrow gave ſuch advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to ſubmit himſelf to *Pompey*, to diſmiſs his forces, leave his faſtneſſes; and finally to redeem his peace, by ſending to him a Bedſtead of pureſt Gold, and many other rich preſents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents, and received hence ſome annuall profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Diſtreſſed between the *Perſians* and *Conſtantinopolitans*, they had much ado to ſtand upright; though betwixt both they kept themſelves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Perſians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neigbours. But at the laſt *Anno* 1579. *Amurath* the third, to make the ſafer paſſage for his forces in *Georgia*, ſent *Uluzales* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea: who comming up the River *Phaſis* took the City of *Faſſum*, fortified it; and laid ſo certain a foundation of a future conqueſt; that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demoliſh ſome of his fortifications, yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Faſſum* made the ſeat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, as it ſtill continueth. *Iberia.*

3. *IBERIA.*

IBERIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Albania*; on the Weſt, with *Colchus*; on the North, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moſchici*; by the firſt mountains parted from *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and by the laſt from *Armenia Major*.

It was ſo called from the River *Iberus*, which running thorow it, falleth at laſt into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*, and that as ſome ſay from Saint *George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence, as their tutelary Saint and Patron: as others ſay, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Biſhop, by whoſe preaching they were brought unto *Chriſtianity*; and ſome again will have them called properly *Gordiæans*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their neer neighbourhood to thoſe mountains. But the moſt probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongſt other of the *Caſpian* nations. Though to ſay truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth ſomewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending alſo that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Countrey of *Albania*, if I gueſs aright.

The Country for the greateſt part, is covered with Mountains, woods, and thickets, and in that regard unconquerable for the difficulty of the mountainous paſſages; yet notwithſtanding it is very fruitfull in many places, having many fertile plains, and wealthy vallies; well watered, and of great increaſe to the husbandman, if he be not wanting to himſelf in care and induſtry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike nation, and uſed to ſet as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had ſlain Enemies in his life: as alſo that thoſe of the ſame Tribe or family had all things common; he being the Ruler, which was eldeſt: and that ſome of them did derive themſelves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cauſe never marying out of their own kindred. The preſent *Georgians* very warlike, ſtrong of bodie, and valorous in fight; for a long time defended themſelves and Countrey from the *Turks* and *Perſians*, with great prudence making uſe of the one againſt the other. But overpowred by the vaſt multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have loſt many of their beſt Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt here planted in the time of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, by means of a Chriſtian captive woman (ſuch extraordinary waies doth God find out to promote his Goſpell): who being of a moſt devout life, and exemplary piety, had by her prayers to *CHRIST* reſtored a young child to health which was thought paſt cure; and healed the Queen hereof of a deſperate malady, when no help of *Phyſick* would prevail. Whereupon the King ſent Ambaſſadours to *Conſtantine*, deſiring Miniſters and Preachers to be ſent to *Iberia*, to inſtruct the people in the faith; which was done accordingly. Since that time, Chriſtianity hath flouriſhed in this Countrey without interruption; though by *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*, on all ſides encompaſſed: agreeable in doctrinal points to the Church of *Greece*, whoſe *Rituals* alſo the *People* do to this day follow. Not ſubject for all that to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* onely; who hath under him about 18 Biſhops, and reſideth for the moſt part, in Saint *Catharines* Monaſtery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principall Paſtor, *Mahometaniſm* hath got ſome footing, and *Jeſuitiſm* begun to creep in amongſt them. The occaſion of which laſt was this.

About the year 1614. the *Perſians* making an inrode into this Countrey, took the City of *Cremer*, and therein *Cetaba*, the mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her captive into *Perſia*, an not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they moſt cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jeſuites* then travelling in thoſe

Iberia. thoſe Countreys, and willing out of that ſad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholique cauſe; cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anointed it with oyl and odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and ſignified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the bleſſed Martyr *Cetaba*: deſiring leave to live in ſome Monaſtery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This eaſily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of Saint *George*, at *Aberdall*; much reſort to it from all parts by diſeaſed perſons: whom if paſt cure, the *Jeſuites* ſent home again, preſcribing them in the way of preparation a long time of repentance; if curable by outward means which they applyed, the cure was preſently aſcribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proſelytes* to themſelves; and had no ſmall hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to ſubmit himſelf to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their glories, a letter cometh from *Maacla*, a Lady attendant on the Princeſs; (but then living in *Perſia*, as a ſlave or bond-maid) ſignifying that her Maſter by her perſwaſion, had got into his power the body of his mother *Cetaba*; which he might ranſome if he pleaſed: two Travellers withall, who came out of *Perſia* with the *Jeſuites*, reporting what they ſee them do with the dead mans head. By which means the *Impoſture* being diſcovered, the body of the Queen was ſent for; the falſe *Relique* was caſt out of the Church, and the falſer *Jeſuites* into priſon, and next out of the Countrey.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy* or any of our modern writers, but what are touched upon before, except onely the River of *Iberus* ſpoken of before, from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general ſo deſtitute of waters, that *Pompey* in his march this way againſt the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water, for the uſe of his Army.

Paces of moſt antiquity and importance in it, 1. *Artaxiſſa*, 2. *Vaſada*, 3. *Lubium*, 4. *Armaſtica*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this laſt by *Pliny* called *Harmaſtis*. 5. *Cremen*, the chief City now poſſeſſed by the *Georgians*. 6. *Cachete*, honoured with a fair Church, the moſt beautifull of all the Countrey, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7. *Triala*, where are to be ſeen the ruins of a large City, and many Churches; by what name antiently called, I find not. 8. *Altuncala*, or the *Golden Caſtle*, a ſtrong fortreſs, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Georgian* Princes, ſince the time of the wars betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*. 9. *Archichelech*, a ſtrong Caſtle taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his wars againſt *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and ever ſince holden by the *Turks*. 10 *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forſaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Muſtapha*, Generall of *Amurath* the third againſt the *Perſians*: who liking the ſituation of it, cauſed it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred peeces of Ordinance, and left therein a Garriſon of 6000 Souldiers. 11. *Lori*, diſtant from *Teflis* about two daies journey of a Carriers pace, ſtrengthned with a lofty Caſtle, environed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compaſs. Seiſed on by *Ferat Baſſa*, the Succeſſour of *Muſtapha*, who repaired the walls, planted thereon 200 ſmall peeces of Ordinance, and garriſoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12 *Tomanis*, a ſhort daies march from *Lori*, the Countrey lying betwixt both full of rich fields and paſtures, abounding with corn, fruit, and cattel. Nigh unto which the ſaid *Ferat* raiſed a new Fortreſs, for the better command of the Streights and paſſages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and ſo to *Teflis* (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the wall whereof being 1700 yards in compaſs, he cauſed to be planted with 200 peeces of Artillery and with incredible diligence cut down a thick wood which lay before it, and otherwiſe would have been a receptacle of theeves, or Enemies. 13. *Gliſca*, 14. *Baſcapan*, *&c.* poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Countrey. But poſſibly moſt of theſe ſtrong holds now poſſeſſed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Countrey of the *Georgians*; that name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was ſaid before.

The firſt Inhabitans hereof were ſuch who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the ſonne of *Japhet*, from whom this people at the firſt, as *Joſephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the nations in it of moſt note were the *Tibareni*, *Moſſynœci*, *Chalybes*; and of leſs eſteem the *Biſeries*, *Sapires*, *Macrones*, *&c.* united at the laſt in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* ſpeaketh, the principall of all this Countrey. Too fruitfull of increaſe for ſo narrow a dwelling, ſome of them put themſelves to ſeek their fortunes; when after long wandring they fell upon the Coaſt of *Spain* next the *Pyrenees*, where they ſtaid themſelves; giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Countrey. Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid againſt the *Romans*, they came in accordingly: and in his fall diſcomfited by *Lucullus* in three ſeverall battells, were fain to ſtand upon their guard as well as they could: firſt holding fair with *Pompey* who ſucceeded *Lucullus* in his charge; But breaking out again on a new temptation, they were incountred by him. In which battel 9000 of their men being ſlain, and 10000 taken, they were conſtrained to ſue for peace; not otherwiſe to be obtained till *Artaces* the King of theſe *Iberians*, gave his ſonnes for Pledges. After this *Feudataries* to the *Roman*, and *Grecian* Emperours, till the fatall inundation of the *Saracens* had ſo weakned that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more ſubjection to thoſe of *Conſtantinople*, till *Conſtantinople* it ſelf became the Impeperiall ſeat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whoſe quarrels with the *Perſian Sophies*, this Country began to ſuffer a new invaſion; ſome Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his march or paſſage againſt *Tamas*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who ſet his mind moſt eagerly on the war with *Perſia*, a great part of it was ſubdued by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh Generall*: who inviting the widow Princeſs and her two Sons to come to his tent, ſent the young Princes to *Conſtantinople*; and by that means had opportunity to aſſure his purchaſes. And though the *Perſians* did their beſt to aſſiſt the *Georgians*, yet proved they but a kind of miſerable comforters; as much puniſhing or plaguing this poor Countrey with their aides, as the *Turks* by their armies. So that now it ſtands divided betwixt the *Grand Signeur*, and

its

its naturall Princes: the *Georgian* Princes holding the greateſt part, but the *Turks* being in poſſeſſion of the ſtongeſt holds; kept by them under colour of ſecuring their way to *Perſia*, for which this Countrey is indeed but unhappily ſeated. *Albania.*

4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Moſchici*. So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Sairia*; but reckoned in theſe laſt ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Countrey of ſo rich a ſoil, that without the leaſt labour of the husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her ſtore; and where it is but once ſown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands on it in former times, they occaſioned *Strabo* to give them this note for a remembrance, That they *needed not the uſe of the Sea; who knew no better how to make uſe of the Land.* The people antiently ſo ſimple, that they could not reckon above an hundred; ignorant of weights, meaſures, and the uſe of money. Old age they had in high eſteem, but held it utterly unlawfull to make ſpeech of the dead. And of theſe *Pliny* doth report, that they were gray-headed from their very youth, and could ſee as well by night as by day; the verity of which laſt may be ſomewhat queſtionable. But withall they are affirmed to have been a ſtout and couragious people, ſtrong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be couragious and ſtout, where the whomen are ſo truely maſculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were exerciſed in Arms and martiall feats, as if deſcended lineally from the antient *Amazons*; whom *Plutarch* placeth in this tract; reporting ſome of them to be aiding to theſe *Albanians*, in their war with *Pompey*: which poſſibly might be no other, than ſome the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principall Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Soana*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of theſe parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2. *Gæſius*, 3. *Gerrus*, 4. *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this people. 5. *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) ſpoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Countrey; becauſe herein it hath its ſpring, and the greateſt part of its courſe alſo. For riſing out of the Mountain *Caucaſus*, which ſhuts up this Province on the North, it paſſeth thorow the middeſt of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*; where it beginneth to bend more towards the Eaſt: and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, beſides many others of leſs note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caſtian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Mountaines of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: the *Montes Moſchici* on the South, and *Caucaſus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt ſeverall Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the laſt the *Iberians*, and theſe *Albanians*, be in ſome writers called *Caucaſiæ Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very names. 1. *Chabala*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Inſignior Albaniæ urbis*, the moſt noted City of this Countrey. 2. *Albana*, ſo called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was ſeated. 3. *Teleba*, 4. *Namechia*, 5. *Thelbis*, 6. *Getarra*, neer unto the influx of the River *Cyrus*. How theſe are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to ſay. The chief now being, and worthy to be ſo accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, ſituate neer the *Caſpian* Sea; from which to *Teflis* a City ſpoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall; affirmed to have been built by *Alexander* the *Great*, to defend theſe parts, againſt the irruptions of the Northen unconquered nations. The Town environed with two walls, and ſo defended by difficult and narrow paſſages of the rocks, that it is not eaſily acceſſible: but taken for all that by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General, *Anno* 1587 and made the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. Conceived to be the *Caucaſiæ Portæ* of the Antients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *ingens naturæ miraculum*: by *Egeſippus*, for the ſtrength of it called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which, by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word ſignifying in their language, a *gate of iron*. The other places of this tract are either of no accompt and eſtimation, or elſe are ſpecified before amongſt the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whoſe Countrey this is now a part: yet we may add 2. *Sabran*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3. *Sancta Maria*, north of *Derbent*; both of them on, or neer the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey, ſeem to have been of the plantation of *Gether* the Son of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whoſe memory was long preſerved in the City of *Getara* before-mentioned; So called by him, or ſome of his poſterity, in remembrance of him. The People living ſomewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with Invaders from forreign parts; neither the *Perſians*, nor *Macedonians*, looking ſo far North. Nor poſſibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not ingaged themſelves with *Tigranes* firſt, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to ſue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* alſo had took up Arms, they ingaged again; leavying an Army of 12000 horſe and 50000 foot, in which *Oroezes* their King, with his brother *Coſis*, were in perſon preſent. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the moſt part only with skins of beaſts, they made but ſmall reſiſtance againſt the *Romans*: notwithſtanding the gallant charge of *Coſis*, who aſſaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be ſlain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges unto *Pompey* for their good behaviour; we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*. Who having conquered, and reduced *Armenia Major* to the form of a Province, reſolved to ſhew his power to theſe neighbouring nations: and to that end impoſed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, do their homage to him. In times ſucceeding no news of them; either becauſe remote from the ſtage of Action, or ſerving under the

Albania. the command of ſome greater nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata* the *Cham* of *Tartarie*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*; they were a while ſubject to that Empire: and paſſing in ſucceeding times by the name of *Georgians*, part-took of the ſame fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turk*, who by reaſon of the ſtrong footing which he hath gotten amongſt them, is become a dreadful neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of all the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, both in *Europe*, and *Aſia*, and touched upon the means by which they are poſſeſſed of *Ægypt*, whereunto all the reſt of their hold in *Africk*, ſerves but for an acceſſory: we will now look upon the ſtory of this people, their firſt originall, the great ſucceſs of their affairs, the Princes under whoſe command they have made theſe conqueſts. Which having done, we will proceed to a Deſcription of the Perſons, Manners, and Conditions of the *Turks* themſelves, their power and policy; with other things conſiderable in ſo great an Empire.

And firſt for the original of the *Turkiſh* Nation, they were moſt probably the Deſcendants of thoſe *Turcæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the fennes of *Mæotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, ſpeaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people. *Juxta* Thyrſagetæ, Turcæque, *vaſtas ſylvas occupant., aluntur que venando*, &c. Next unto them (ſaith he) live the *Thyrſagetæ*, and the *Turcæ*, poſſeſſed of vaſt woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and deſart Countrey with continuall rocks, as farre as to the *Arympheians*. And *Pliny* muſtering up the barbarous nations of thoſe parts, joins the *Tuſſagetæ* (or *Thyrſagetæ*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympheians*, as *Mela* doth, *uſque adſolitudines ſaltuoſis vallibus aſperas*, ſpreading themſelves unto the rough deſarts, and woody vallies. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the ſecond, who began his Empire *Anno* 577. when preſſing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forſake their ſeats and paſs into *Europe*; where they made themſelves maſters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we find them with other barbarous nations, at the ſiege of *Conſtantinople*, but under the command of the *Perſians*. After which they began to ſet up for themſelves, and in the year 763. made a road into thoſe Countreys which we laſt deſcribed; and loading themſelves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of theſe parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844. they brake once more thorow the *Caſpian* Streights; and paſſing through *Iberia*, ſeized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themſelves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*. In which wide and ſpacious Countrey they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their heards and families from one place to another; as they had formerly been uſed to do, in the fennes of *Mæotis*; and as the *Tartars* and wild *Arabs* do untill this day. And ſo they lived, a poor and contemptible nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Perſia*, rebelling againſt his Lord and Maſter, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in theſe *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a ſignall victory. The victory obtained, the *Turks* deſire their wages, and a fair diſmiſſion; but could ſpeed in neither: the Sultan being loth to part with ſuch a neceſſary miſchief, till his affairs were better ſetled; and therefore ſhutting up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*; their principal Leader, they began to ſpoil and waſt the Countrey; a multitude of needy people, and ſome of the diſcontented Souldiers, coming daily to them. Aſſaulted by the *Perſians*, in the firſt battel they not onely got a notable victory, but ſuch ſtore of Armour, horſes, and other neceſſaries, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having overthrown and ſlain in the ſecond fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclamed King of *Perſia*, in the year one thouſand and thirty, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongſt the *Turks*, two moſt noted *Tribes*; the *Selzuccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selzuccian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Muſes*, *Melech*, and *Ducat* were the heades: of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family, was ſetled in the throne of *Perſia*: *Cutlu Muſes* furniſhed with an Army againſt the Chriſtians, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of *Aſia Minor*: *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Couſen the *Perſian* Sultan, were veſted into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, with their ſeverall Territories. But the line of *Tangrolipix* and the reſt being all worn out, as hath been ſhewn in our deſcriptions of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*; the man of moſt nobility amongſt the *Turks*, was *Ottoman*, the chief of the *Oguzian* family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a ſmall territory in the Realm of *Perſia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Perſia*, was drowned in croſſing the River *Euphrates*, as he paſſed with his few Subjects towards *Aſia Minor*, the beſt place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ſhip of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son: who obtained of the laſt *Aladine* of the *Selzuccian* Family, the village of *Saguta* in *Bithynia*, for himſelf and his ſmall handfull of people. To him ſucceeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge ſome injuries done unto his people by the improvident Chriſtians, took from them Caſtle after Caſtle; and in the end poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperiall Seat of the *Grecian* Emperors. Emboldned with ſuch great ſucceſſes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the ſecond, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himſelf the Title of *Sultan*, *Anno* 13000 from which before he had abſtained. To this time, and theſe ſmall beginnings, we muſt reduce the firſt foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increaſed unto its preſent greatneſs, by the courage and good fortune of theſe Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

1300. 1. *Ottoman*, or *Oſmon* the Son of *Ethrogul*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Sultan of this line, added to his ſmall territory the greateſt part of *Bithynia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*. 28.

1328.

1328. 2. *Orchanes*, took the City *Prusa*, and made it his residence; and was the first that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other peeces. The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1350. 3. *Amurath*, wonne the *Thracian Chersoneſe*, the ſtrong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was ſlain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Coſſova*. 23.

1373. 4. *Bajazet*, made himſelf maſter of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himſelf in an iron cage, in which the inſolent Conqueror uſed to carry him. 26.

1399. 5. *Solyman* the eldeſt Son of *Bajazet* ſucceeded in the peaceable Pallace of the Turkiſh Provinces in Europe; but paſſing with an Army in to *Aſia*, for the recovery of thoſe parts thereof uſurped by *Mahomet* his youngeſt brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head againſt *Muſa Bajazet* his third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diverſion); who haveing there vanquiſhed and ſlain him, *Anno* 1406. ſucceeded for a time in the Throane at *Adrinaple*.

1404. 6. *Mahomet* the youngeſt Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince firſt wreſted from his brother *Iſa* (*Bajazets* ſecond Son then living) the City of *Pruſa* with the dominion there unto belonging, there upon takeing to himſelf the Title of King or *Sultan*, by degrees recovered all which his Father had loſt unto the *Tartars*: afterwards makeing uſe of *Muſa*, for the ſupplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him preſently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquiſhed, and ſlew him about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own perſon the whole Turkiſh Kingdome, which he enlarged with the more abſolute conqueſt of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the reſt of *Macedon*. 17.

1416. 7. *Amurath* II. ſubdued from the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Theſſaly*, *Epirus*; he ſhaked the State of *Hungary*, and dyed before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1450. 8. *Mahomet* II. ſurnamed the Great, and firſt Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the two Empires of *Conſtantinople*, and *Trabeſond*, twelve Kingdomes, and two hundred Cities. 31.

1481. 9. *Bajazet* II. ſubdued the *Caramanian* Kingdome, and part of *Armenia*; and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.

1512. 10. *Selimus*, having poiſoned his Father, ſubverted the *Mamaluks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palaſtine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7.

1519. 11. *Solyman* II. ſurnamed the *Magnificent*, ſurpriſed *Rhodes*, *Belgrad*, *Buda*; with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*. 48.

1567. 12. *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians*, the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moores*, the Kingdome of *Tunis*, and *Algiers*. 8.

1575. 13. *Amurath* III. took from the diſagreeing *Perſians*, *Armenia*; *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the fort *Guaino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1595. 14. *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungarie*; which Kingdome in all will likely had bin loſt, if he had purſued his victory, at the battel of *Kereſture*. Never but then in any battell, and then ſo frighted that he durſt never ſee the face of an Army afterwards.

1603. 15. *Achmat*, who the better to enjoy his pleaſures, made peace with the *German* Emperor, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618. 16. *Muſtapha*, brother to *Achmat*, ſucceeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdome; it being the *Grand Signeurs* common policy to ſtrangle all the younger brothers: howſoever this *Muſtapha* was preſerved, either becauſe *Achmat* being once a younger brother, took pitty on him; or becauſe he had no iſſue of his own body, and ſo was not permitted to kill him.

1618. 17. *Oſmen*, or *Ottoman* II. ſucceeded his Unkle *Muſtapha*; and being unſucceſſful in his war againſt *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* ſlain in an uproar, and *Muſtapha* again reſtored: yet long enjoied he not his throne; for the ſame hand that raiſed him, plucked him down again and ſeated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623. 18. *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Oſman*, of the age of 13. year, ſucceeded on the ſecond depoſition of his Unkle *Muſtapha*; who proved a ſtout and maſculine Prince, and bent himſelf to the reviving of the antient diſcipline. To the great good of Chriſtendome, he ſpent his ſtomach on the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.

19. *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Morat*, preſerved by the *Sultaneſs* his mother in his brothers life; and by her power depoſed again for interdicting her the Court. He ſpent a great part of his reign in the war of *Crete*, againſt the *Venetians*; but without any great ſucceſſe.

1648. 20. *Mahomet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vaſt Empire, containing all *Dacia*, and *Greece*, the greateſt part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Iſles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in *Europe*; of all the Iſles, and Provinces, which we have hitherto deſcribed, in *Aſia*; and in *Africk* of all *Ægypt*, the Kingdomes of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Snachem*, and *Erocco*. Nor is their ſtile inferiour to ſo vaſt an Empire, *Solyman* thus ſtiling himſelf in his Leter to *Villerius*, great Maſter of the *Rhodes*, at ſuch time as he intended to invade that Iland: i. e. Solyman *King of Kings*, *Lord of Lords*, *moſt high Emperour of* Conſtantinople *and* Trabezond, *the moſt mighty King of* Perſia, Syria, Arabia, *and the* Holy Land; *Lord of* Europe, Aſia, *and* Africa; *Prince of* Meccha, *and* Aleppo, *Ruler of* Hieruſalem, *and Soveraign Lord of all the Seas and Iſles thereof*.

As

As for the persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good stature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; hot and venerous, servile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hair upon their heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns; by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of judgement. For which reason they keep on of all sides, though never so poor, accounting it an approbrious thing to see any men uncover their heads; saying when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear, *I had as liefe thou hadst shewn me thy bare skull.* In their familiar salutation they lay their hands on their bosomes, and a little incline their bodies; but when they accost a person of rank, they bow almost to the ground, and kiss the hem of his garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder, at the often walking of Christians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory exercise with his companion; a *Turk* demanded them whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? If to the neither end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief recreation, which they also follow with much lazines; sitting on carpets in the shadow, and sending some of their slaves to fetch their arrowes. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made master of his sword with whom they walk. As they shave their heads, so they wear their beards long, as a sign of freedome; but their slaves keep theirs shaven and close cut.

The women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polished *Ivory*; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the baths: of a very good complexion, seldome going abroad, and then masked; lascivious within doors, pleasing in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most beautiful, which have the greatest eyes, and are of the blackest hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four wives, and as many slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending women being drowned, and the man dismembred. These women live in great awe and respect of their husband, never sitting with him at the table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some room. If their husband hath been abroad, at his comming in they all rise from their stools whereon they sate, kiss his hand, and make an obeisance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The children which they have, they carry not in their arms as we do, but astride on their shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the world: and permit not any male children, no not their own sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but their husbands may put away their wives, or give them to their slaves, when and as often as they list. Far better is it with the sisters or the daughter of the Sultan; to whom when her Father or brother bestoweth her on one of the *Bassas*, he giveth her a dagger, saying *I give thee this man to be thy slave or bedfellow; if he be not loving, obedient, and dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this* Canzharre *or dagger, to cut off his head.* When they are maryed, their husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the beds feet. That ever any of their Ladies made use of their daggers, I could never read. Onely I find, that *Lutzis Bassa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himself, and of him very much beloved; having given his wife, which was sister to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, a box on the ear, was upon complaint by her made, thrust from all his honours, banished into *Macedon*, and had doubtless been slain, if the Emperours love and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the Sultans daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* onely, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the *Turks* use the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the vulgar speak the *Turkish* language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persians* their words of State; from the *Arabick*, their words of Religion; from the *Grecians*, their words or terms of war; and from the *Italians*, their terms of navigation.

They were formerly idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated in *Mahometanism*, when they got the Soveraignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saffi* or *Novices*; 2ly. The *Calfi*, or readers; 3ly. The *Hegi*, or writers of books, for printing they use not; 4ly. The *Napi*, or young Doctors; 5ly. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City, to judge of offences; 6ly. The *Mudressi*, who use to oversee the *Caddis*; 7ly. The *Medlis*, or principal Church Governour under the *Mufti*. 8ly. The *Caldelescais*, whereof there are onely three, one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*; and these sit with the *Bassas* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporall suits. 9ly. The *Mufti*, whose sentence in law and religion is uncontroulable. He abaseth not himself to sit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more reverence to the Emperor, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the land. His Sea forces are great in regard of his spacious sea-coasts, vast woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he shewed his Navy whole, and entire. Gallies are his only vessels, which being unable to cope with ships of any bigness, were not onely the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartned the *Florentine*, with six great ships of war onely, to swager in the Seas; so that for more safety, the tribute of *Egypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by land. The Captain *Bassa*, or Admirall, notwithstanding with a Navy of 60 sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas, and Sea Towns, to annoy the enemy, suppress Pyrates, collect the tributes, and to redress the abuses committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the Admirallity: which annuall circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

Their land forces are either horse, or foot. They which served on horseback, are either the *Spali*, *Asapi*: these latter serving to weary the enemies, and dull their swords with their multitudes; of whose bodies the *Janizaries* use to make mounts, whereon to assault the wall of a besieged Town; and are by them

them ſo contemned, that a *Janizary* once ſold two of them for a ſheeps head. As for the *Spali*, the till they are inrold into pay, are of the ſame originall and education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the ſame name, *Azamaglans*. Their pay is ten Aſpers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 150000 Horſes at little or no coſt, which no other Prince can do with 14. millions of Gold. For whereſoever any Parcell of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men; whom they call *Timariots*. Theſe are to pay unto the Emperour certain rents; and at their own charges, to ſend to his wars ſo many horſe, excellently appointed for the field: and which is the chief point of their ſervice, to keep in awe the ſubjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, diſperſed in all quarters of his Dominions; the people can no ſooner ſtir, but theſe will be aſſembled and fall upon them. Theſe *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in *Europe*; and 402000 in *Aſia*, and *Africa*. Were it not for theſe *Timariots* as the *Turks* ſaying is, no Graſs would grow, where the *Grand Signeurs* horſe hath once ſet his hoof: for if the care of manuring the ground were commited to Paiſants, and not to military men; the greateſt part of this Empire would grow waſt and deſolate. Theſe *Timariots* were inſtituted by *Ottomon*, the firſt *Turkiſh* King of this Family, and a curſe by him laid on them that ſhould annihilate the inſtitution. The name is derived from the *Turkiſh* word *Timax*, ſignifying a ſtipend.

But the nerves and Sinews of this warlike body, are the *Janizaries*; who by originall being Chriſtians, are choſen by the *Turkiſh* Officers, every five years, out of his *Europæan* dominions: and ſo diſtributed abroad to learn the language, cuſtomes, and religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their ſtrength, will, or diſpoſition, placed in divers chambers. They of the firſt chamber are preferred, ſome to be *Chiauſies*, ſuch as go on Embaſſies, and execute judgements; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governours of Cities; ſome to be *Baſſas*, or Commanders of horſemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs* (*id eſt*, Lord of Lords) to command the reſt in generall. They of the other chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Souldiers of the Guard; to whoſe faith and truſt the care of the Emperours Perſon is committed. The tithing of theſe young ſpringals is as we have ſaid, every fifth year; and ofttner ſometimes, as occaſions ſerve. By which means he not only diſarmeth his own ſubjects, and keepeth them from attempting any ſtirre or innovation in his Empire: but ſpoileth all the Provinces he moſt feareth, of the Flower, Sinews and ſtrength of their People; choice being made of the ſtrongeſt youths only, and fitteſt for war. Theſe, before they are inrold in pay, are called *Azamoglans*, and behave themſelves with much ſubmiſſiveneſs towards their Seniours and governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride, and haughtineſs; till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their ſons be accounted any other than a naturall *Turk*, (whom of all the reſt they account the baſeſt) the eldeſt onely excepted: to whom this Prerogative was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000. of which 16000 are alwaies reſident in *Conſtantinople*. In this City they are diverſly employed, being as Conſtables, to ſee the Peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to ſee to the weights and meaſures; as Officers, to arreſt common offenders; as Warders, to look to the gates, to guard the houſes of Embaſſadours, and to travell with ſtrangers for their more ſafety; in which charge they are very faithfull. Their pay is but five *Aſpers* a day, and two gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, and 100 men being their greateſt preferment: yet are they very obſequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferiour to the meaneſt *Baſſa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefeſt. For the crafty *Turks* join not power and authority, and if they obſerve the *Janizaries* to love and reſpect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of life and office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1365. their greateſt eſtabliſher *Amurath* the ſecond: their name ſignifieth young Souldiers. Now concerning theſe *Janizaries*, we will farther conſider the ſway they bear in deſigning the Succeſſour; 2ly. Their inſolency towards the Emperour, and his Officers; 3ly. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the throne; and 4ly. Their puniſhments.

1. Concerning the firſt, I never find any particular ſway the *Janizaries* carryed, in the deſignation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet* the Great: when the *Baſſas* having choſen *Corcut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were overruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*; who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant, that when this *Mahomet* ſucceeded in the Throne, the joyfull acclamations made by the Souldiers, was accounted the chiefeſt ſign of his ſecure and perpetuated eſtabliſhment. But the chief inſtance of their power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the firſt, who being but the ſeventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferred by them before his brethren in his Fathers life time; but by their aids alſo he ſeverally maſtered them, and in the end poiſoned his Father. To omit other examples, even of late *Anno* 1622. they ſlew the young Emperour *Oſmen*, drew his Unkle *Muſtapha* out of priſon, and eſtabliſhed him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the firſt example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the reign of the above mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Baſſa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, *They would teach him like a drunkard a beaſt and a raſcall as he was, to uſe his great place and calling with more ſobriety and diſcretion.* Not long after, conceiving further diſpleaſure againſt the ſaid *Bajazet*, they ſhook their weapons againſt him, and refuſed to take him into the middeſt amongſt them; and were not, without great and vile ſubmiſſion on his part, appeaſed. Againſt *Selimus* the firſt, they alſo mutined, when being reſolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better purſuit of his victories againſt the *Perſian*; he was by them forced to return home unto *Conſtantinople*. Againſt *Solyman* they mutined ſo violently, that they compelled him to diſplace *Ruſtan* his chief *Baſſa* or favorite. Againſt *Amurath* the 3d. for placing over them

a new *Aga*, they ſo ſtrongly oppoſed themſelves; that firſt they ſet fire on *Conſtantinople*, and burnt therein, beſides ſhops and ware-houſes, twenty five great Innes, ſeven Temples, and 15000 houſes: and in the end conſtrained him to give them money, and to yield alſo into their hands two of his chief Counſellors, by them ſuppoſed to be their adverſaries; whom they drew about the ſtreets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622 above-named) in the year 1630 they grew ſo diſcontented with *Mahomet* the 3d. that they not onely threatned to deſtroy the Principal Officers of the Court, and the baniſhment of the *Sultaneſs* his Mother, but the depoſing of himſelf alſo.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the cuſtome of theſe *Janizaries*, between the deaths of an old *Emperor*, and the beginning of a new, to commit divers inſolencies; as the rifling of the houſes of the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Baſſas*, and principall men about the Court, whom they ſuſpected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outragious miſchiefs. Of theſe we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the 2d. and *Mahomet* the *Great*: at which laſt time the Merchants of *Conſtantinople*, being naturall *Turks*, eſcaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Baſſa* avoid the fury of their ſwords. This ſpoil they took for ſo certain a due, that if they were diſappointed of it, they would preſently raiſe commotions both in Court, Field, and City; unleſs ſome preſent ſatisfaction were made them. To this end, *Ackmat* diſtributed among them, two millions and an half of Ducats; *Selimus* the firſt, two millions; others made an encreaſe of their dayly pay. But *Selimus* the 2d. diſtributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* onely, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had inlarged his bounty: and the great *Baſſaes* were rapped about the pate with their *callivers*, for perſwading them to quietneſs. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was uſually committed; the death of the old Emperour was with all ſecrecy concealed, till the arrivall of the new. To omit others, I will inſtance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the firſt, and *Solyman* onely. This *Solyman* died at the ſiege of *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, which was ſo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Baſſa* the ſpace of twenty dayes; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Conſtantinople*, and came alſo to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately ſtrangled the Phyſicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his death, commanded the Souldiers to go on in their ſiege; and divers times ſhewed them the Emperor ſitting in his horſe-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he uſed to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead body, ſitting ſtill in the ſame manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the firſt, the *Baſſaes* of the Court called their *Divanos*, as formerly they uſed, gave order for the levying of an Army, as if ſome war were intended; and the Kings Phyſicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him ſtill in cure. But the Penſioners and *Janizaries* miſdoubting the matter, with all egerneſs deſired to ſee him; which when the *Baſſaes* durſt not deny, they appointed the next day for their viſit. The next day the body was apparrelled in royall large robes, placed in a chair, at the end of a long gallery; and a litle boy cunningly ſet behind him to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he ſhould ſtroke his beard, as his manner was: which ſignes of life and ſtrength the Souldiers ſeeing, held themſelves contented, and ſo was his death concealed the ſpace of 41 dayes.

4. As for the laſt, Theſe inſolent and unſufferable pranks committed ſo commonly by theſe maſterfull ſlaves, ſo exceedingly ſtomached *Bajazet* the 2d. that he ſecretly purpoſed with himſelf, for curing ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to uſe a deſperate a remedy; which was to kill and deſtroy ſuddenly all the *Janizaries*. It is like that this *Bajazet* being a Scholar, had read how *Conſtantine* the Great had caſſed the *Prætorian* Souldiers, and deſtroyed their camp; as men that were the cauſes of all the ſtirs in his Empire, and whoſe pride was come to an intollerable height: and having the ſame cauſe to deſtroy his *Janizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much eaſe and ſafety as the other did. But they having notice of the plot, for the time continued ſo united and linked together, that he durſt not then attempt it; and afterward ſiding with his Son *Selimus*, caſt him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durſt puniſh them openly, but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is ſent privately in the night time to *Pera* over againſt *Conſtantinople*; where, by the way he is drowned, and a peece of Ordinance ſhot off, to ſignifie the performing of the *Sultans* command.

Now for the Emperors themſelves, we will conſider them in matters of pleaſure, in matters of ceremony, and in matters of State; the laſt being conſiderable in three main points, which are the murdering of their brethren, the removing of their Sons, their revenue, and therein a touch of their government. To theſe we will adde, what apparent *ſymtomes* may be obſerved to prognoſticate the ſtanding, decreaſing, and increaſing of this puiſſant Monarchy.

1. For the firſt, he hath not ſo few as 500. (ſometimes a 1000) choice virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themſelves, all ſlaves born of Chriſtian Parents, and indeed the rareſt beauties of his Empire. When he is diſpoſed to take his pleaſure with any of them, they are all ranked in a gallery; and ſhe is by the *Aga* of the women prepared for his bed, to whom he giveth his handkercher. She that beareth him the firſt Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultaneſs* (Queen Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unleſs he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are ſtrictly looked too, and liberally provided for, and not ſeldome times are beſtowed by the ſucceeding *Sultan*, on his great *Baſſaes*, and ſuch as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principall honour. They are attended on by women, and Eunuches; theſe being not gelded onely, but deprived of all their genitalls, and ſupplying the uſes of nature with a ſilver quill: which inhumane cuſtome was brought in among them by *Selimus* the ſecond, becauſe he had ſeen a Gelding cover a mare.

2. Theſe ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the moſt part the building of a *Moſche* onely to help to the ſalvation of their ſouls; or towards them by others, which are moſt apparent in the entertainment of Embaſſadors. For when ſuch come to his preſence, they are led between two of his Courtiers,

Courties, and comming before the Throne (on both sides whereof the *Bassaes* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather *Statuaes* than men;) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breast, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we before noted) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have, lest the *Grand Signieur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassie, should be stabbed. Which wariness they have used, ever since the time that *Miles Cobiletz*, a *Servian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battel of *Cassona*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow; stabbed him into the belly with his dagger.

3. Amongst all the jarres and discontents that be, none have been with more unkindness begun, or more eagerness prosecuted, than those of brothers; and that not only in private families, but in the stems of Princes: the multitude of Pretendants, being the originall of most *civill wars*. To prevent these publick emotions, the Emperors of *Habassia* use to immure up all their younger children, in the hill *Amaza*; the *Persans* do put out the eyes of their younger brothers; and the *Turks* do murder them: strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a war in the State, they stirre up a war in their own bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he strangled with a bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood-royall of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the *Great*, caused his young brother then at nurse, to dy the death; and was not without much ado perswaded from being the executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*; his Son, no fewer then nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Mustapha* a younger Son, stirred a rebellion against *Amurath*; and *Zemes*, against *Bajazet*; both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musa*, and *Isa*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first; and *Corcut*, *Selmus*; the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into these acts of hostility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural death: whereas were they but sure of life, and a liberall and Princely maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdomes the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *counterfeits* have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessours: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Mustapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of sedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these *Mock-kings*, as *England*; a counterfeit *Richard* the 2d. being made in the time of *Hen.* the 4th. a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Hen.* the 6th. a counterfeit *Duke* of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the 7th. and a counterfeit *Edw.* the 6.h. under *Q. Mary*. To prevent these walking spirits, *Mahomet* the third, laid out the dead bodies of his Father and nineteen brethren, as a common spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Signieur Mustapha*, miraculously scaped the bow-string twice; 1. when his brother *Achmat*, and 2ly. when *Osmen* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the first in this Empire that ever were succeed in the collateral line. as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the second, on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the fourth, his elder brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three reasons: 1. to wean them from the pleasures of the Court; 2ly. to train them up in arms, and inure them to hardness; 3ly. and principally to avoid the danger of a Competitour, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places destinated to this Princely exile, are *Amasia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magnesia*, in *Lydia*; and such like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old Sultans by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons actions, and have intelligence of almost every particular thought: the least suspition being cause sufficient to destroy them. So we find *Mustapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefullest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his Father; upon a rumour onely of a mariage, which he was said to have negotiated with the *Persians* Kings Daughter. When these Princes are once setled in their government, it is a crime meriting no less punishment than death, to depart thence and come unto *Constantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the fashion of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia* to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a seafaring man to *Constantinople*, and having obtained his desire he returned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously entercepted; stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in mony received, or in money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the spoil of the Enemie. And secondly by the *Timariots*, who nourish and bring into the Field more horses, than any Prince in Christendome can keep (as we have already said) for 14 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of *Sultanies*, which is nothing in respect of so great an Empire: the chief reason whereof is the Tyrannicall government of the *Turk*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their estates; as knowing all

their gettings to lie at the *Grand Signieurs* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is uncredible. For beſides that no Ambaſſadour commeth before him empty handed; no man is maſter of his own wealth, further than it ſtands with the Emperours liking: ſo that his great *Baſſaes* are but as ſpunges, to ſuck up riches till their coffers ſwell; and then to be ſqueezed into his Treaſury. Theſe men, as he advanceth without envy, ſo can he deſtroy without danger: no man here hoping for Partakers, if he ſhould reſiſt, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the deſired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperors coffers; who giveth only what he pleaſeth to the Children of the deceaſed. Theſe *Baſſaes* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanoes*, or Law-Courts, where juſtice hath bin adminiſtred formerly with great integrity; but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that ſuch as miſcarry in their right, ſhall without delay know what to truſt to; and the *Baſſaes* upon complaint to the Emperor, are ſure to die for it. Over theſe *Baſſaes* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Baſſa*, or Preſident of the Council) preſide two *Beglerbeggs*; one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the preſent ſtate of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increaſe; which judgement they ground upon good reaſons, whereof theſe are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monſtrous for the head: the Sultans ſince the death of *Solyman* never accompanying their Armies in perſon (except *Morat*, or *Amurath* the fourth) but rioting, and waſting their bodies and treaſures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principall ſtrength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp: corrupted with eaſe and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled with the continual converſe of women, and fallen from their former auſterity of diſcipline.

3. They have of late given no increaſe unto their Dominions: and as in the paths of vertue, *non progredi eſt regredi*; ſo in Empires, by violence gotten, when they ceaſe to be augmented, they begin to be diminiſhed.

4. Rebellions have in theſe latter times been in this Empire ſtrangely raiſed, and mightily ſupported; which commotions the former Sultans were never acquainted with.

5. The greatneſs of the Empire is ſuch, that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightineſs of it ſelf; ſo that it muſt in a manner needs decline *Pondere preſſa ſuo*, overburdened with its own mightineſs. For as in a naturall body, a ſurfeit killeth more than faſting; ſo in the body *Politick* alſo, too much extent doth ſooner draw on a ruin, than either too little or a mediocrity.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Signieur*, whoſe bravery of mind is ever ſuſpected by their Fathers, are nurſed up (contrary ſometimes to their natural inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth alwayes after ſubject them to the ſoftneſs and baſeneſs of libidinous pleaſure.

7. They have loſt much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: inſomuch that not the *Venetians* onely have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withſtood their greateſt forces, for the ſpace of 200 years, by land; the *Polonians* forced them to diſhonourable retreat and compoſition: but the poor Prince of *Tranſylvania* did divers times diſcomfit them, with the death of many of their *Baſſaes*; the *Florentines* with ſix ſhips onely, intercepteth their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out againſt them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court; all peace and war, all Counſels and informations, all injuries and favours, being now made ſaleable. And

9. It is viſible and apparent, that their Empire was long ſince at the higheſt: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non poteſt, recedit*, as *Velleius* hath it: when an Empire can aſcend no higher, by the ordinary courſe of nature it muſt have a fall. All theſe are more than probable *Prognoſticks* of a ſinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater than any of theſe, that is to ſay, the preſent State of Affaires. The young Emperor *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak ſtaff to ſupport ſo vaſt an Empire: conſidering not onely the infinite caſualties, to which children are naturally ſubject; but the dangers which he may juſtly fear from a Rebellious Souldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the murder of one Emperor, and the depoſition of two, have made themſelves ſo formidable, but withall ſo odious in the ſight of the Imperiall houſe: that there is no way left to ſave them from a merited vengeance, but to tranſlate the Empire to ſome other Family; though by the rooting out of this. Which whenſoever it ſhall happen, either by the naturall death, or unnaturall deſtruction of the preſent *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* race: which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by miracle. Suppoſing then the line of *Ottoman* to fail, (as it is moſt probable that it will) what will become of this vaſt Empire? Three there will be, to offer at it, viz. the *Crim-Tartars* the *Janizaries*, and the *Baſſas*. And firſt the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a compoſition, made by his Anceſters, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* family; which is, that he ſupplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, ſhould on the failer of the heirs males ſucceed in this Empire. Beſides which, he may hope for no ſmall ſuccors, not onely from the reſt of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himſelf, to recover his Eſtate herein, if withholden from him: thereby to adde unto the Preſent greatneſs and renown of the *Tartars*, the acceſs of ſuch a ſpacious Empire. 2ly The *Baſſaes* may conceive no ſmall poſſibilities, of dividing this great Empire among themſelves, partly by the Example of *Alexanders* Captains, who after their maſters death (there being yet ſome of the blood Royall remaining) parted amongſt themſelves not onely the new-gotten Provinces, which they had conquered from the *Perſians*; but even the Kingdome of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an example in their own Hiſtories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the 2d. *Caramau*, *Sarachan*, *Ædin*, *Caraſus*, and the reſt of the more powerfull Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdome in the *Leſſer Aſia*: and partly by the opportunity

which

which they have as Governours in their ſeverall Provinces, and having ſo many bands of Souldiers under their command; which may eaſily inveſt them as *Proprietaries* in thoſe Eſtates, of which they have already ſuch a fair poſſeſſion. And ſo we find the *Sultans* or Provincial Governours of the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3^ly. The *Janizaries* may alſo build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the Enterprize have the Example of the *Prætorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body farre more Politique and better compacted than this is); who out of their own company created the farre greater part of the *Roman* Emperors, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppoſe them in it. But above all Examples, that of the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt* doth make faireſt for them; who were born of *Chriſtian* Parents, as theſe are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as theſe are; purpoſely entertained and inured to the wars, to take from the naturall ſubjects, the uſe of Armes, as theſe are; men of approved valour, and the cheif Bulwark of that Kingdome againſt the *Chriſtians*, as theſe are: and then why may they not be like them in this laſt Attempt, for ſetting in their Maſters Throne, as theſe *Mamalucks* did. Adde hereunto, that they are already in (a manner) poſſeſſed of *Conſtantinople*, the head town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part, I hold them to be the men moſt like, to carry it unleſs the Princes of *Chriſtendome* laying a ſide private malice, joyn all in arms to ſtrip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon ſo bleſſed an advantage) to break in peeces with a rod of iron, this inſolent and burdenſome Monarchy. A thing rather to be deſired than expected. But this by way of ſuppoſition, and as in a dream, I awake again.

The enſign of this Empire (or armes of it) is the *Croiſſant*, or half moon; but how blazoned I cannot tell you: nor are the learned yet reſolved on the begtnnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eaſtern *Gentiles*, who worſhiped the Moon under both ſexes; as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them, with the other *Mahumetans*; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*; who to ſhew his power, is ſaid to have made the Moon fall into his lappe in two peeces, and to have reſtored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Signeur* at the winning of *Conſtantinople*; *ut ſignum victæ gentis penes quam orientis imperium eſſet*. And of this mind is *Juſtus Lipſius*, induced thereto as it ſeemeth, by the figure of the *Croiſſant* born in ſome old *Bizantine* coins. A pretty plauſible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may paſs as currant as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to inſert in this place, concerning the originall, proceeding, and continuance; the naturall diſpoſitions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the onely Province which retaineth their name; ſo both the firſt they were poſſeſſed of, and the laſt which they have fully conquered, of all their Dominions.

And thus much of *Turcomania*.

OF

MEDIA and PERSIA.

THese I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the same fortunes ever since; that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have unto it self a distinct *Chorographie*. First then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North, with the *Caspian* Sea, and those parts of *Armenia Major*, which now pass in the accompt of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Persia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongst the antients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time called *Sheirvan* by the *Turks*, and *Persians*: the word signifying in the language of this Countrey, a *Milky-Plain*.

The Countrey of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Venison*, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the *Taurus*, the soyl is very rich, and the Countrey pleasant, plentifull both of corn and wine, and all things necessary; full of fat pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 horses do graze upon it.

The people antiently great warriers, as those who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own vertue, the foundation of the second *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not onely ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their *Charctater*, when we come to *Persia*. *Polygamie* antiently amongst them, so far from being esteemed a sin or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven wives; or the woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five husbands. In their wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Naphta*; whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The oyl called *Oleum Mediacum*, from this people only, because their invention, and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a slacker bow (for a swift and strong motion took away its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian Religion* was first here planted by Saint *Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places; alwayes opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganism* in the time of the old *Persian* Kings; or by *Mahometanism*, since the first conquest of this Countrey by the power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be amongst them either of the *Armenian*, or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of whose *Religion* have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their *Religion*: many of which are Descendants of those *Tribes*, which were transplanted hither by *Salmanassar*. But the *Religion* generally embraced and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite*, or *Persian*, as appeareth *Acts* 2. *v.* 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief not, 1. *Orontes*, 2. *Coronus*, 3. *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, 4. *Jasonium*, 5. *Lagoas*; all them (except *Chaboras* onely) the disjointed branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principall Rivers, 1. *Amandus*, 2. *Strato*, and 3. *Carindas*; of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4. *Canac*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Adde hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis* (by the *Persians*, *Vusthlan*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, situate in the confines of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fish whereof dryed by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countreys, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many *Provinces*, the principall of which 1. *Tropatene*, 2. *Charomithrene*, 3. *Darites*, 4. *Marciane*, 5. *Amariace*, and 6. *Syro-Media*: these and the rest reduced to two in the later reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2. *Media Major*.

1. *ATRO-*

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governor of theſe parts in the time of *Darius*, the laſt perſian Monarch; who ſo valiantly held out againſt the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the antient Writers. A barren, cold, and unhoſpitable Countrey, as before deſcribed: and for that cauſe allotted for the dwelling of many of the captive *Iſralites*, brought hither by *Salmanaſſar* when he conquered that Kingdome: their numbers being found ſo great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the *Jew*, reckoned no fewer than 50000 of them in one City onely, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of them were tranſplanted hither, appeareth by that paſſage 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is ſaid, that they were placed in *Halah* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and *in the Cities of the* Medes. Now *Halah* or *Chalah* ſeems moſt probably to be that Region of *Aſſyria*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chalatene*, in the North of that Countrey, towards *Media*; *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Countrey from *Aſſyria*, in which Mountainous tract there was in thoſe times a City of the ſame name alſo. Betwixt which City and the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea, I find in *Ptolomy* the City *Gauzania*, in the 40th. degree and 40 *minutes* of Northern *Latitude*: in which there are apparent footſteeps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whoſe banks it was moſt likely to be ſeated. *Atropatia.*

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Hamadum*, by *Benjamin* the *Jew* called *Madai*, repleniſhed in his time with families of the captive *Iſraelites*. 2. *Gauzavia*, another dwelling of thoſe Tribes, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mandagarſis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4. *Gelan*, the *Gelæ* of the antients, whom the *Greeks* call *Caduſii*. 5. *Bochu*, more towards the *Caſpian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6. *Eres*, a place of great ſtrength, but poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and made the reſidence of ſome of their principal Officers: taken by *Muſtapha* Generall of the *Turkiſh* forces in the time of *Amurath* the 3d. and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Countrey. 7. *Sumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Oſman Baſſa*, at the ſame time, Anno 1578. and made the Reſidence of a *Beglerbeg*, Anno 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyropolis* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Perſians* called *Cyreckbata*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the preſent for a Pillar of flint-ſtones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Perſian* Nobility, moſt barbarouſly ſlain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terrour to others.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* ſpecially ſo called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Antients, for one of the godlieſt Countries in all *Aſia*: the fields (ſaith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatneſs and fertility very rich, and no leſs pleaſant for freſh Springs and cleer veins of water: where one may ſee plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous horſes, which they call *Niſæi*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity uſe to go unto the wars, and charge furiouſly upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (κ) πὶς ἀρετὴς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Countrey.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus* in a war made againſt the *Medes*, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, cauſed water-courſes to be made to it from the further ſide of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a paſſage thorow the hills, with great charge and labour. Deſtroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by *Deioces* the ſixt King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*, Succeſſor unto *Alexander* in his *Aſian* Conqueſts. For beauty and magnificence little inferiour to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before deſcribed. In compaſs 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the book of *Judith*, to be 70. *Cubits* high, 50. *Cubits* broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 *Cubits* higher; all built of hewn and poliſhed ſtone, each ſtone being ſix *Cubits* in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be underſtood only of the innermoſt wall, there being ſeven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each diſtinguiſhed by the colour of their ſeverall Pinnacles; which gave unto the eye a moſt gallant *Proſpect*. From which variety of colours, it is thought to have the name of *Agbatha*, or *Agbathana*. In former times, the ordinary reſidence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*, in the heats of the ſummer; as *Suſa* (the chief City of *Suſiana*) in the cold of winter. The Royall Palace being about a mile in compaſs, was built with all the coſt and cunning, that a ſtately manſion did require: ſome of the beams thereof of *ſilver*, and the reſt of *Cedar*; but thoſe of *Cedar* ſtrengthned with Plates of *Gold*. Said by *Joſephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which muſt be underſtood no otherwiſe in the truth of Story, than that he over-ſaw the Workmen, or contrived the *Model*; appointed to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the ſame is aſcribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* race, it became a ruin. 2. *Tauris*, ſituate in or neer the place of *Ecbatana*, out of whoſe rubbiſh it was built. Diſtant a 150 miles from the *Caſpian* Sea, under the ſhadow of *Orontes*, now called *Baronta*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and ſpacious *Campagn*: in compaſs about ſix miles, and beautified on the South-weſt within a large and pleaſant garden, the work of Sultan *Tamas*, who reſided here often; the buildings for the moſt part of brick, with flat Roofs (as generally in all the Eaſt) well peopled, as containing 200000 perſons of all ſorts and Sects. Of great trading, till ſubdued by the *Turks* by whom it was thrice taken with in very few years, viz. by *Selimus* the firſt, Anno 1514. by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1530. and by *Oſman Baſſa*, generall of *Amarath* the 3d. Anno 1585. But this laſt finding it too chargeable to be always garriſoned, and not otherwiſe tenable but by force; pulled down the walls, and built a large and capacious *Citadel*: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Perſia*, and father of Sultan *Soffy*, Anno 1614. after it had been for a hundred years a continuall prey unto the *Turcks*. 3. *Arſacia*, ſo named by *Ptolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by ſome of the *Parthian* race. Ruined long ſince, but more beautifully revived than ever in the preſent. 4. *Casbin*, raiſed from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which ſerveth it for houſhold uſes, but not for trafick.

Exceedingly

Exceedingly enriched by removall of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*; partly invited thereunto by the richneſs of the ſoyl, and the commodiouſneſs of the place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his dominions. In compaſs about ſeven miles, beautified with a large market-place, many ſtately *Moſques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this laſt adjoyning to the firſt, convenient enough, but neither of great ſtate nor beauty. 5. *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, ſo called from *Ragas* the Son of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: ſituate neer the ſpacious Plain, ſo memorable for the great breed of horſes ſpoken of before; and therefore in that book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and ſo ſtands in *Ptolomy*. 6. *Naſſivan*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Artaſata*, more probably the *Naſuana*, of the Antient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Perſian* wars. 7. *Ardoville*, on or neer the banks of the great lake *Argis*, ſpoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the firſt Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the buriall place of Sultan *Hyſmael* the firſt *Perſian* Sultan of that line. 8. *Sultania*, about ſix dayes journey from *Taurus*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually covered with ſnow, may be ſeen farre off: founded by *Alyaptu*, the 8th. King of the Sixt or *Tartarian* Dynaſty; and by him made the Royall Seat of the *Perſian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruinated by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former ſplendour, but the *Moſques*, or Temples (one of them, the faireſt in the Eaſt) which the *Tartars* ſpared. 9. *Tyroan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, ſituate in a large Plain, but not farre from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleaſant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a wall of greater Circuit than the City. 10. *Turcoman*, in the midle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Casbin*. 11. *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houſes, not here conſiderable but for the ſignification of the name; which is ſaid to ſignifie a *Second Plantation*: and being ſituate at the foot of ſo high a Mountain, occaſioneth ſome of the *Jews* to think, that the *Ark* reſted not farre off, as perhaps it did not. 12. *Marant*, in the Extremity of the Countrey, but of leſſer note.

The firſt Inhabitans hereof were the poſterity of *Madai*, as before was ſaid; *Ragan* the Son of *Phalag* taking up thoſe parts, which lay next *Aſſyria*. Divided in long tract of time into ſeveral *Tribes*, as the *Coduſii*, *Amariacle*, *Margaſi*, *Sagartii*, *Debryces*, *Tapyri*; and ſome others. Governed by *Kings* immediatelly from the firſt *Plantation*; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and ſlain by *Ninus* the grand-ſon of *Nimrod*. After this made ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, their Kings were onely *titular*, at the beſt but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governours, under that great Monarchy. Of moſt eſteem amongſt them was that *Arſæus*, who with an Army of 800000. men (if the number be not miſtaken) incountred the *Caduſii*, by whom diſcomfited and ſlain. But the *Caduſii* ſo broken, that they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Perſians*; and ſo continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the laſt of theſe *Provincials*, and the firſt Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to ſee his Lord and Maſter in a womans dreſs, ſpinning among his Concubines, and otherwiſe behaving himſelf in a brutiſh manner; which ſo moved him, that he reſolved to be no longes ſubject to ſo vile a Monſter. Communicating his thoughts unto *Belochus*, Governour of *Babylon*, and well ſeen in *Aſtrology*, he was incouraged to proceed; and ſped ſo well, that having made themſelves Maſters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them ſhrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Eſtates. To *Belochus* fell *Aſſyria*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the Weſt of *Tigris*: to *Arbaces*, *Media* and the reſt, which now make up the Kingdome of *Perſia*. But being a mild Prince, and deſirous by fair and gentle means to aſſure his Empire, he confirmed the *Perſian Satrapaes* in their former Governments; reſerving noting to himſelf but a *titular Soveraignity*. Of whom and his Succeſſors more, when we have taken in the reſt of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *India*; on the Weſt, with *Media*, *Aſſyria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Perſis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave law to all the reſt: as that is ſaid to do from *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered theſe *Eaſtern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Iſidore*, Perſæ *populi à* Perſeo *Rege ſunt vocati*, *qui à* Græcia *in* Aſiam *tranſiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoque bello perdomuit*, *& victor nomen ſubactæ Genti impoſuit*. In the Scripture it is conſtantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the ſon of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Perſians* had ſubdued *Babylon*, and transferred the ſupreme Monarchy to themſelves; we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Perſian* ſeems to come), the word *Paras*, (or *Pharas*) ſignifying as much as horſemen. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is ſuppoſed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not onely taught them the art of *horſemanſhip*, but ſet forth a law, that it ſhould be a repoach to any man to go on foot; *ſive multum ſive parum itineris eſſet conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called ſometimes alſo *Achæmenis*, from *Achæmenes* the Son of *Perſes*, one of the firſt known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot* Achæmeniis *armantur* Suſa *Sagitis*) they occurre in the ſecond of *Propertius*. Where by *Achæmeniæ Sagittæ*, he means *Perſian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, ſtretched out in length from the 82. degree of *Longitude*, to the 120. being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23. degree of Northern *Latitude*, to the 43. being 20 more. According unto which poſition, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we ſhall find it ſeated under the third, fourth, fift, and ſixt, *Climates*: the longeſt ſummers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almoſt three quarters; and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts moſt Northwards.

The

The Countrey not alike in all places, as it is impoſſible it ſhould in ſo great a compaſs. But generally it is of a pure and wholeſome air, the high hills ſhading it on the one ſide from the heat of the *Clime* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sea, wherewith encompaſſed, cheriſhing a great part thereof. And ſo it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*. *Regio non alia in tota Aſia ſalubrior habetur; temperatum cœlum, hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & umbroſum, quod æſtus levat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modico tepore terras fovet.* Then for the Earth, it is by reaſon of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and ſandy, in many places deſtitute of water, few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by conſequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatneſs of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the uſe of water. Which notwithſtanding, it is furniſhed with all neceſſaries both for life and pleaſure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as ſhall be ſhewed in the deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces.

The people antiently were trained up to the wars, but chiefly unto *Archery* from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleaſed, they never ſaw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At thas age ſent unto their Fathers, they were tought preſently to handle the *Bow* and *Arrows*. Upon this ground we finde the *Bow of Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the *Quiver of Elam* by the Prophet *Iſaiah*, Chap. 22. v. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or moſt uſed amongſt them. They were good *horſemen* alſo, and well skilled at their darts and ſlings, till wealth, and eaſe, and the pride of ſo great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of thoſe abilities both of minde and body, wherein they did excell moſt Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obſequious, if not ſervile, to their Kings and Princes; in whoſe preſence it was a crime to ſpit: but to deny obedience unto his commands an offence ſo heinous, as was not to be puniſhed with leſs than the loſs of life, and want of burial. In this obſervance of their Kings, followed, if not out-ſtripped, by the modern *Perſian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitiſſimi*, the moſt meek or patient of the world, eſpecially compared with thoſe of the ſame Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of learning, as the *Turks*; but ſtudious, many of them in *Phyſick* and *Aſtrology*; moſt of the better ſort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the moſt part addicted to *hoſpitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantaſtical in their Apparel, maintainers of *Nobility*, and deſirous of peace. Such as apply themſelves to *Trades*, and Mechanick Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloth of Gold: thoſe which betake themſelves to war, proving very good Souldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their coſt, who by their long wars againſt them have got nothing but blows. The women ſaid to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the ſequeſtrations of pleaſure.

Their *Religion* at the firſt was *Paganiſm*, wherein directed principally by their Prieſts or *Magi*; men of a ſtrict auſtere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the uſe of gold; making the ground their bed, and the herbs their food; their whole time ſpent in offering to the Gods the prayers and ſacrifices of the people, as if they onely might be heard; or elſe in divinations, and foretelling of things to come, from whence the names of *Magick* and *Magician*, are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not onely *Philoſophy*, lovers of wiſdom; but *Philothei*, the lovers of God. Of ſuch eſteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Perſian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the diſcipline of the *Magi*: and of ſuch power and intimacy in the Royall Court, that one of thoſe *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyſes*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the *Perſian* Monarchy. In a word, ſuch as the *Druides* were to the *Galls* and *Britans*, the *Gymnoſophiſts* or *Brachmans* to the antient *Indians*, and the *Chaldæans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the ſame, if not of greater ſway in affairs of moment, were the *Perſian Magi*. And *Perſians* they muſt be if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Countrey being to be admitted of that Society: though by a *Metaphor*, applied to the Profeſſors of the ſame Arts, though of other Countries; as thoſe which came from the Eaſt to worſhip *Chriſt*, are by Saint *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat.* 2. 1.) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and beſides other Gods which the *Gentiles* worſhipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*: which they offered ſacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Dietie*, in the time of war. At what time (eſpecially if the King were there in perſon) it was born in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Prieſts*, and followed by a train of boyes all clothed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the daies of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp beſides, did *Darius* ſet forwards to fight with *Alexander*, at the battell of *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. A ſuperſtition derived from them to the *Medes*, and *Aſſyrians*, their next-neighbouring Nations, and not extinguiſhed to this day in ſome parts of this Countrey; in which many of theſe *Fire-worſhippers* are ſtill remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Uſher*, and to attend on Kings and perſons of greateſt eminence: uſed to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of *State*. Inſomuch that *Commodus* though fallen out with his Siſter *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithſtanding to enjoy her Seat in the publique *Theatre*, ἐν πυρὶ περιπατοῦσαν αὐτῇ, an fire to be born before her, as in former times; as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt planted in the Provinces of the *Perſian* Kingdome, by Saint *Thomas* the Apoſtle, and held in all points anſwerable to thoſe of the *Catholick* Church; till *Sapores* to deſpight the Emperour *Heraclius*, a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Chriſtians in his Dominions ſhould conform themſelves to the opinions and tendries of the *Neſtorian* Sect, by that means univerſally ſpread over all theſe Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled ſome *Armenian* Chriſtians, who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Countrey was made the ſeat of a long and miſerable war betwixt the *Perſian*, and the *Turk*; but found not here ſo ſafe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being ſlain by *Abas* the late *Perſian* Sultan, on a ſuſpicion that they went about to recon-

Suſiana. reconcile themſelves to the Pope of *Rome* (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year, 1609. Which notwithſtanding (ſo miſerable a condition do theſe Chriſtians live in) he ſuffered two Convents of *Auguſtine* and *Carmelite* Friers, to be ſettled at the ſame time, even in *Spaw-hawn* it ſelf; and many *Jeſuits* to live peaceably up and down the Countrey, which ſerve for little elſe than to give intelligence. Here are alſo many *Jews* diſperſed over all the Provinces of this Empire; allowed their *Synagogues*, and Publique Places of Aſſembly. But the Religion publikely authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, impoſed on this Countrey by the *Saracens*, when by them ſubdued: differing in ſome points from the *Turks*, eſpecially about the true Succeſſor of that falſe Seducer (of which more anon;) the cauſe of the long wars betwixt thoſe Nations.

As for the *Perſian* Language, it is very ancient, ſuppoſed to be as old as the Confuſion at *Babel:* ſome words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Perſian* Court, have been made uſe of in ſome parts of the holy Scripture. A tongue which ſtill hath left ſome remainders of it, in the language of the modern *Perſian* (as thoſe of judgement in this tongue have delivered to us:) notwithſtanding ſo long tract of time, and the conqueſt of this Countrey by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not ſpoken onely in this Countrey, nor limitted within the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; but uſed alſo in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mongul*, and ſome parts of *Zagathay*; and where not *vulgar* unto all, ſtudied and underſtood by perſons of more eminent ſort, as the *Latine* by the Gentrey of theſe Weſtern parts. Inſomuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the *Eaſt* without an *Interpreter*.

Rivers here are but few, as before was ſaid, and thoſe few not navigable; by conſequence of little note or eſtimation. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1. *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Suſiana*, emptying it ſelf into *Sinus Perſicus*: a River of ſo pure a ſtream, that the great *Perſian* Kings would drink of no other water. 2. *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongſt the Antients, becauſe it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caſpian* Sea, to which it haſtneth from *Mount Taurus:* and ſo doth alſo, 3. *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to theſe great neighbors. A River which the *Perſians* have ſeldome paſſed to inlarge their Dominions, but they received ſome notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invaſion of *Perſia*; they were ſhamefully beat back again by *Hyſmael Sophie*. Nor is it leſs memorable in old ſtories, for the famous paſſage of *Alexander* over it, in purſuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Beſſus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to paſs over his men, there being neither ſhips upon it, nor timber neer at hand to build them, he cauſed a great number of bags and bladders to be ſtuffed with ſtraw, and ſo in three days tranſported his Army. So that I may truly ſay with his own Hiſtorian, *Unum id Conſilium quod neceſſitas ſubjecerat, iniit*; neceſſity is the beſt Author of fine inventions. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which riſing out of the ſame mountainous tract (as the two laſt-mentioned) after a long courſe above ground in the open light, hideth himſelf again for the ſpace of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new fountain, and falleth into 5 *Rhadaga*; another chief River of thoſe parts. And this *Alexander* the *Great* found to be true, by caſting two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the ſtream were carryed under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its riſe again. 6. *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Antients I am not able to ſay, but of great note amongſt modern *Travellers*, for the fall thereof into the Sea: ſo ſteep and ſtrong, that the people are ſaid to ſacrifiſe or banket under the fall thereof, the ſtream ſo violently ſhooting over their heads, that it never wetteth them.

Mountains of moſt note, are thoſe which paſs by the name of *Taurus*, which having left *Media* on the Weſt, paſſeth thorow the Northern Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamiſus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Goronus*, the *Seriphian* hills, *Paropamiſus*, *Gaucaſus*; whereof more as occaſion ſerveth in their proper places.

It is divided into the particular Provinces of 1. *Suſiana*, 2. *Perſis*, 3. *Carmania*, 4. *Ormuz*, 5. *Gedroſia*, 6. *Drangiana*, 7. *Aria*, 8. *Parthia*, 9. *Arachoſia*, 10. *Paropamiſus*, 11. *Hyrcania*, and 12. *Margiana*. Which we will ſeverally ſurvey in the *Chorography* and ſtory, till we have joined them altogether in the *Perſian* Monarchy; and then purſue the hiſtory as conjunct and faſhioned into the body of one Empire.

1. *SUSIANA.*

SUSIANA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Perſis*; on the Weſt, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; on the North, with *Aſſyria*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tigris*, and ſome part of the Gulf of *Perſia*.

It was ſo called *quaſi Cuſiana*, or the Land of the *Chuſites*, from *Chus* the eldeſt Son of *Ham*, and the Grand-ſon of *Noah*; by whoſe Son *Havilah*, it was firſt peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the land of *Havilah*: this being that land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, in the Book of *Geneſis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that land of *Havilah* lay on both ſides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Countrey of *Suſiana* doth not) and was the Eaſtern bound of the *Iſmalites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in thoſe parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is ſaid in the firſt of *Sam.* chap. 15. ver. 7. to *have ſmitten the* Amalekites *from* Sur *to* Havilah, that is ſay from the *Red Sea* to the gulf of *Perſia*: it muſt be underſtood of *Havilah* in the firſt extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the *Eaſt Indies* (ſo called from a Son of *Jocktan*) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the Eaſt ſide

of

of *Euphrates*, and is that *Suſiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was ſo great a Traveller as to ſee the *Indies*; or of ſuch puiſſance as to force a paſſage thorow the Countreys of the *Chaldæans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being loſt, that of *Cuſiana* or *Suſiana* did ſtill remain; preſerved to this day in that of *Chuſeſtan*, by which now called. *Suſiana.*

The Countrey memorable in the Scriptures for *Gold*, *Bdellium*, and the *Onyx*-ſtone; which doth abundantly ſet forth the richneſs and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be ſaid) about the bigneſs of an *Olive*, yielding a certain *Gum* very ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter of taſte; which in time hardneth to a *Pearl*, as *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided antiently into many particular Regions, or at leaſt known by ſeverall names in its ſeverall quarters. For where it bordered upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Cabandone*, where it touched upon *Perſis*; where it confined on the *Elymeans*, it had the name of *Ciſſia*, and neer the wall or Ditch called *Vallum Paſini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered beſides *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before ſpoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes*, and *Maſæus*; with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolomy* called *Baſilæus*; *Curtius*, *Paſi-Tigris*; and the Scriptures, *Piſon*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Aracca*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, the ſame which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the firſt beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Naphtah* (of which the *Medians* made their oyl ſpoken of before) a bituminous liquor, eaſily taking fire, but not eaſily quenched. Of which thus the Poet:

Audet Areecæis *aut unda perhoſpita Campis.*

Whereby *unda perhoſpita*, he meaneth that *bituminous* liquor called *Naphtha*, iſſuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmaſius* hath obſerved in his notes on *Solinus*. 2. *Suſa*, the *Shuſan* of the Book of *Heſter*, and *Nehemiah*; honoured with the reſidence of the *Perſian* Monarchs in winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Ulai*. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, ſlain by the *Theſſalans* in the *Trojan* wars: the walls whereof as *Caſſiodorus* hath reported, comented with Gold. But howſoever, it was doubtleſs a magnificent City, and of infinite wealth: *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talants* of gold uncoined, beſides Silver wedges, and Jewels of ineſtimable value. Memorable for the great feaſt here made by *Ahaſuerus*, of 183 dayes continuance, for his Lords and Princes: imitated by the *Perſian* Sultans to this very day; who with a Royall Feaſt of the like continuance, do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruin, and perhaps not that. 3. *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elimæi*, by *Ptolomy* (unleſs his Copies be corrupted) miſtakingly called *Eldimæi*. Situate on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo, neer the border of *Perſis* (the Nation of the *Elamites* or *Elymæi* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great note antiently for a ſumptuous Temple of *Diana*, ſacrilegiouſly ranſacked by *Antiochus*, of which ſee 1 *Mac.* 6. 2. and of ſuch wealth, by reaſon of the concourſe of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulantiſſimum*, a moſt opulent City. 4. *Sela*, on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongſt the moſt eminent of this Province: ſo named from *Selah*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who firſt planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Suſa* is aſcribed by *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, Σαλαὲφ' ὃν Σουσάνοι, are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Originall of the *Coſſæi*; whom *Ptolomy* placeth in this tract, is referred by *Euſebius*. 5. *Tarſiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice onely of the chiefeſt,) the ſame no doubt which *Ptolomy* calls *Tariana*, and joyns next to *Sela*. 6. *Agra*, upon the banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of theſe, but what is to be found in the antient Writers; now hardly viſible in their Ruins. The Towns of moſt note now remaining, being 1. *Jaaroone*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Jewes*, of which here are no fewer than a thouſand Families; ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of thoſe whom *Salmanaſſar* tranſplanted out of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*. 8. *Saum*. 9. *Caſa*, of which little memorable.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chuſites* of the houſe of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; the *Coſſæi* and the *Suſiani*, deſcended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymæi*, the poſterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the two laſt Nations long and frequent wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* compoſed the differences, by making both ſubject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the ſtory of it, till the tranſplanting of the *ten Tribes* into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Iſraelites* were removed hither; ſo many of this Nation were ſent out (with others) to poſſeſs themſelves of the void places of thoſe *Tribes*. Called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, becauſe the moſt conſiderable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cuſh*, by *Joſephus Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Perſia*, as indeed it was, the time wherein he lived conſidered; different onely in the Dialect or form of ſpeech; that Countrey which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cuth* by the *Chaldæans*; by the *Perſians*, *Chuzeſtan*: that name continuing to this day.

2. *PERSIS.*

PERSIS hath on the Eaſt, *Carmania*; on the Weſt, *Suſiana*; on the North, *Media*; and on the South, ſome part of the *Perſian* Bay or *Sinus Perſicus*, which took name from hence. The reaſon of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both name and Law to the reſt of this Empire. It had antiently been called *Cephene*, but now moſt commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*; more neer to *Pharas*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such

Persis. Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either fruit or corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very cleer. Those parts which lie towards the *Persian* Gulf, of as bad a nature, though of different quality; sandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Dates*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lyeth a rich and pleasant Countrey, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattell; great store of Roses, of Rose-water consequently: wherewith and with those skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occasion, they use to furnish all the adjoyning Provinces. And to make up the *Character* of a happy Countrey, to which nothing wanteth, it is well stored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are 1. *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2. *Rhogomanes*, by some called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whose banks stood the renowned *Persepolis*. 3. *Orontes*, dividing *Persis* from *Susiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4. *Brisoana*, ending its course in the same Sea also.

Mountains of note I find not any, but those which part this Region from *Susiana*. Not known by any speciall name (for ought I can find;) but of sufficient note for the difficult passages out of one Countrey into the other, called *Pylæ Persidis*; defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Persian*, against *Alexander* the *Great*, who was here very handsomely beaten, and forced to save himself by a close retreat. And though *Alexander* was shewed a *By-path* afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard lesson, that if those who kept the straits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like resistance; he had not bought the *Persian Monarchy* in so cheap a Market.

It was divided antiently into *Paraticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2. *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*. 3. *Misdia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the severall Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their severall Cities. The chief whereof 1. *Ausinza*, seated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Brisoana*. 2. *Jonacapolis*, on the same Bay also, neer the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3. *Axima*, more within the land, now called *Lansilla*. 4. *Marrasium*: 5. *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as some Copies have it. 6 *Pasarracha*, in the *Greek* text of *Ptolomy* called *Pasacgada*, and *Pasagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch. Which violated by a Souldier of *Alexanders*, in hope of finding some rich booty, he met with nothing but this modest inscription, *Cyrus ego sum qui* Persicum *regnum constitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invideas, qua corpus meum obtegitur*. The Sacrilegious Souldier though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7. *Persepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis*, by *Qu. Curtius*; situate neer the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the most part of *Cypress* wood, the walls of the houses being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoyning Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large describes it, to be the richest and goodliest City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richness of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talants*, in ready money for his own share, after the Souldiers had made what spoil they listed, of coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unspeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royall Palace, built on an Hill, environed with a treble Wall, the first of 16 Cubits height, the second of thirty, and third of sixty; all of them of black polished Marble, with stately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and neer a most goodly Prospect. Nor was the inside of less beauty, than the out-side of Majesty: the Roof thereof shining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings throne being wholly composed of Gold and the richest Pearls. But rich and stately though it were, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the Eastern world; it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit consumed with fire, as the instigation of *Lais* that infamous strumpet; as in revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Persians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecian* wars. And though *Alexander* in his sober sense did repent him of it, and gave order that it should be re-edified; yet did it never rise to its former height: the Conquerour dying shortly after, and that purpose with him. So ruined in the age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*,) that he professeth *vestigium ejus non inveniri nisi* Araxes *annis ostenderet*, that no footsteps of it had been found, if not shewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whose banks it stood. But by the fall thereof rose 8. *Shyras*, now the chief City of this Province, situate in a fair large plain hemmed about with mountains, under one of which it is pleasantly seated; in compass about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent *Mosques*: two of which larger than the rest, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*; the fabricks for the most part of *Mosaick* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a modern *Traveller*) which for *good wine, pretty women, pleasant fruits, and a gallant People*, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. 9. *Moyown*, on the North-east of *Shyras*, delightfully situate amongst woods and fruitfull pastures, and blessed not onely with good wine, but wholesome waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to brag. 10. *Bannaraw*, on the South-west of *Shyras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruins of an ancient Castle, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11. *Goyaam*, a Town of a thousand houses. 12. *Berry*, of no great bigness, but of most esteem, by reason of a fair *Mosque*, a School for the *Arabick* tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, & *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and such who under his conduct were setled here; called from hence *Elamites* in the usuall stile of holy Scriptures, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymæi*: who spreading themselves into *Susiana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown: having a language to themselves distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Act.* 2. and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoyning Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where

where *Susa* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Mesabatæ*, *Rapsii*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzæi*, *Megores*, and *Stabæi*, were at first under the command of their own Princes onely: amongst which *Cherdorlaomer* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of some *Adventurers* of this Nation, associated himself with *Amramphel* the Leader of some *Assyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Assyria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* prisoner, and in the end were overthrown by the forces of *Abraham*. Of no note after this expedition, till the time of *Perses* the Father of *Achæmenes*, who being *Provincial* Governor of these Countreys under *Sardanapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the war against him: and by the victory, got for himself the dominion over those estates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the *Supreme Lords*. Whose Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus. *Carmania.*

The Kings of *Persis*.

1. *Perses*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perseus* the son of *Danae*; or the son of that *Perseus* by *Andromeda*.
2. *Achæmenes*, from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achæmenii*, and the succeeding Kings were called *Achæmenides*.
3. *Cambyses*, in some places of *Herodotus* called also *Darius*.
4. *Cyrus*, from whose second son named *Teispeus*, descended that *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
5. *Cambyses* II. the son of *Cyrus*.
6. *Cyrus* II. sirnamed the *Great*, son of *Cambyses*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Astyages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

CARMANIA.

CARMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Gedrosia*, and some part of *Aria*; on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence called also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*, on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief People of it: but the reason of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrman*; those parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by some *Dulcinde*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a wilderness or very *Desart*, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some scattered houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessaries; full of unprofitable Sands, destitute of Water; and of a very hot and unhealthy ayr. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coast of above 200. Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they not the richer by it: the shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities hereof (besides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Arsenic*, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of Alabaster. In which regard, the Inhabitants hereof were anciently called *Ichthyophagi*, because they lived wholly upon *Fish*, the Country yielding little else for the life of man. Carmani *sine veste ac fruge, sine pecore ac sedibus, piscium cute se velant, carne vescuntur, præter capita toto corpore hirsuti.* The *Carmans* (saith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor rayment, nor house, nor cattel; but cloath themselves with the skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of fishes; hairy not only in their heads, but over all their bodies also. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* must be out in his informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmans*, that their Country though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obscure; was as well repleniſhed with Rivers, and for fertility of soyl not inferior to it. But we must understand the one of the best parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deserta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth 1. *Saganis*, 2. *Sagareus*, and 3. *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers or the same under divers names, being 1. *Dara*, 2. *Andanius*, 3. *Cathrappis*, 4. *Achindana*, 5. *Salarus* (the *Sagareus* as I take it of *Ammianus*) 6. *Caudriaces*, 7. *Zoramba*, and 8. *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navagable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most note 1. that called *Semiramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady. 2. *Strongelus*, so named from the roundness of it; and 3. a continued ridge of hills, dividing this Countrey from *Gedrosia*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Cantharis*, 2. *Agris*, 3. *Tisa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities. 4. *Cyrza*, and 5. *Gecharta*, two Port-Towns. 6. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conqueror, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7. *Portospana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortospana*, and by him reckoned amongst the faireſt and richeſt of all the Country. 8. *Armuza*, (or *Armuzium* as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory neer-adjoyning, and to the Noble Isle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9. *Gunbroone*,

Carmania. not long ſince a poor village; but ſince the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles diſtant) grown a populous Town, conſiſting at the leaſt of a thouſand houſes. 10. *Jaſques*, at the opening of the *Perſian* Gulf into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capodi Jaſques*. 11. *Carmania*, the *Metropolis* or mother City of the Province, in former times of good eſteem; and now of paſſing good repute both for cloth of gold, and the making of the beſt *Scymitars*. A weapon of ſuch value amongſt the *Mahometans*, and ſo eſteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of their Navy at the battle of *Corfu*, *Anno* 1574. moſt of them who were taken *Priſoners*, threw their *Scymitars* into the Sea, for fear the *Chriſtians* ſhould be maſters of ſuch excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12. *Lar*, more within the land towards *Perſis*, ſeated in a barren and inhoſpitable Countrey, full of huge heaps of ſands, both looſe and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind ſitteth into plains and Mountains: without graſs, water, herbs, or any other neceſſary for the uſe of Travellers; the City being ſerved with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in ciſterns. The City notwithſtanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long ſince to the number of 5000 houſes; of which the greateſt part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an earthquake: now moſt remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces ſquare; a goodly *Moſque*, adorned with *Maſaick* work, and a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on the top of an hill, furniſhed with great plenty of Ordinance brought hither from *Ormus*. This once a Kingdome of it ſelf, or the head City of a Kingdome, acknowledging no ſubjection to the *Perſian Sophies*: till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn* Duke of *Shyras*, who ſent hence as much treaſure as was ſaid to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole poſterity, *Anno* 1604. or thereabouts. 13. *Tecoa*, or *Dea-chow*, a Town of the juriſdiction of *Lar*, not far from that which is a huge wall cut out of the ſolid rock by incredible labour, which ſerved formerly both for the boundary and defence of that ſandy Kingdome againſt the *Perſians*.

The antient Inhabitans hereof, were the poſterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the coaſt of *Arabia Felix*, where they were firſt planted; paſſed over into *Sophta* (from them ſo named) an Iſland of the *Perſian* Gulf; and afterwards into the main land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name to the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in ſome tract of time into the ſeverall Nations of the *Sazotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadræ*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Paſagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Countrey memorable in the way of ſtory; but by Accident onely: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who firſt conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feaſting with his friends, on a ſcaffold drawn with eight horſes; his Companions following in their Chariots: ſome adorned with Purple and Silk, others with Flowers and Green Boughs; themſelves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their Carowſing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was nether Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler ſeen: all their Armour, was Cups, Barrells, and Flaggons; their Skirmiſhing Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minſtrells, playing on their Fluits; by Women, dancing; Boyes, ſhouting; all playing the drunken Fools moſt naturally. Thus march they through the Countrey of *Carmania*, in as great diſſoluteneſs, as if *BACCHUS* himſelf had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for ſeaven whole daies this ſottiſhneſs continued. So that *Curtius* well obſerveth, *Si quid vitiis ſaltem adverſus comeſſantes animi fuiſſet, mille hercule viri, modo & ſobrii, ſeptem dierum crapula graves in ſuo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thouſand *Perſians*, ſober and well provided, had their hearts been anſwerable to ſo good an opportunity, might have deſtroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Countrey, and their own liberty.

4. *ORMUS.*

ORMUS, not ſo much memorable for the greatneſs, as the wealth, and the conveniency of the ſituation of it, is an Iland ſituate in the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf: commanding not long ſince, over ſome part of the Contient of *Carmania*, and ſome few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and moſt of the Ilands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to ſpeak of the Iſle it ſelf, we muſt take a brief ſurvey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Perſicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, ſo famous, ſo full of Ilands, and ſo much frequented (I uſe the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the name which *Ptolomy* calls, *Armuza*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maces*, the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that one may very eaſily ſee to the oppoſite ſhore. The Strait once paſſed, the Bay beginneth to open and inlarge it ſelf, as farre as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balſora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is loſt in the Sea. The whole Gulf meaſured by the ſhores, of *Orbicular* from, in compaſs 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian* miles) in all the coaſts and ſides whereof the Villages and Towns ſtand exceeding thick, affording frequent paſſage to and fro for ſhipping. So farre, and to this purpoſe he. To which deſcription of his, ſo exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much; but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkariffe*, and the entrances thereunto the Streits of *Balſora*; theſe laſt ſo called becauſe they opened the way to the Town of *Balſora*, the moſt noted Empory of thoſe parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Iſles hereof, beſides thoſe on the *Arabian* ſhore, of which we have already ſpoken, are, 1. *Taxiana*,

Taxiana, on the coaſt of *Suſiana*. 2. *Tabiana*. 3. *Sopththa*, and 4. *Alexandri*, or the Iſle of *Alexander*, on the ſhores of *Perſis*. Of which that which is called *Sopththa*, ſeems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the oppoſite ſhore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Saphta*, which we find in *Ptolomy*: And finally joyning to *Carmania*, there are the Ilands called 5. *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was antiently named *Miltus*; and 6. *Vorochtha*, ſituate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called *ORMUS*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuza*, in *Carmania*, neer adjoyning to it, and unto which it did in former times belong. *Gedroſia.*

This Iland ſituate as is ſaid at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, is in compaſs about 20 miles; ſtony, and full of rocks, in a manner barren of all neceſſaries except ſalt, wherewith their very Rocks are covered, and of ſalt-ſtones many houſes built. So deſtitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from ſome of the adjoyning Countries. The air is ſo hot in time of Summer, that the people reſt themſelves in caves, covered over with wood, where they ſtand or ſit in water up to the chinne; and have loop holes in the tops of their houſes to let in the wind. Which notwithſtanding, in regard of the ſituation, it was of late one of the richeſt *Empories* in all the world. the wealth of *Perſia* and *Eaſt-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and ſo by boats or on camels backs, to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence diſperſed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to ſome beyond.

The people hereof in their perſons, habit, and Religion, participate ſomewhat of the *Arabians*, but moſt of the *Perſians*. *Mahometans* for the moſt part, of the *Sophian Sect*: the reſt, but few in number, of the *Chriſtian* faith; to which converted by the preachings of Father *Gaſper*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, ſince the ſetling of that Nation there.

The chief and onely City was of the ſame name with the Iland, founded ſome ſeven hundred years a goe by one *Mahomet Dranku*, deſcended from the Kings of *Saba*, in *Arabia Felix*: who with many families of the *Sabæans*, paſſed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Iſles adjoyning, and liking the ſituation of this Iland, built this City in it; which he called *Ormus*, or *Armuzium*, according to the name of the Twon and Promontory, upon which it lieth. The City ſeated at one end of the Iſle, about 2 miles in compaſs; well built, and adorned with a fair market place, ſome Churches, and a well fortified Caſtle furniſhed with all neceſſaries to maintain a Siege. By reaſon of its wealth and reſort of Merchants, grown to ſuch eſteem, that it gave occaſion to this *Diſtick*,

Si terrarum Orbis quaqua patet annulus eſſet,
Illius Ormuſium *gemma decuſque foret.*

That is to ſay,

Were all the World a Ring, this Iſle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was firſt under its own King, whoſe dominion extended alſo into ſome part of the Continent on either ſide, and over all the reſt of the Ilands within the Gulf. His *Revenue* of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was diſcovered under the conduct of *Albukerque*, *Anno* 1506. Who having fortified ſome part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their trade for the *Indian Merchandiſe*, ſo enriched the ſame; that the *Revenues* of thoſe Kings (though *Vaſſals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flouriſhing ſtate it ſtood till the year 1622. when *Abas* the *Sultan* of *Perſia* having received ſome affront at the hands of the *Portugueze*; or deſirous to remove the trade of *Ormuz*, to ſome Port of his own; gave order to *Emangoly Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay ſiege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who ſeeing no hopes of maſtering it by his land-forces only, furniſhed himſelf with the ſhips and Cannon of ſome *Engliſh* Merchants, to whom he promiſed many things which he never performed. For being once maſter of the City he deſtroyed it utterly, removing the Ordinance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own treaſurie of *Shiras*, the materials of the houſes to *Gombroon* ſpoken of before: the *Portugueze*, and *Chriſtian* natives paſſing over unto *Muskabat*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *Engliſh* Captains that adventured in it, were diſappointed of the ſpoyl which they did expect; yet ſo much honour hath been given by the King of *Perſia*, to the *Engliſh* Nation; that their *Agent* who reſideth at *Gambroon*, takes cuſtome of all ſtrangers which do trafick thither.

5. *GEDROSIA.*

GEDROSIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Carmania*; on the Eaſt, with *Cambaia* or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Aarachoſia*. The reaſon of the name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Geſt*; by *Caſtaldus*, *Circan*.

The Countrey deſolate and barren; like the worſt part of *Carmania*, much deſtitute of freſh water, and covered over with looſe ſands, dangerous to the native and ſtranger both. Some rain they have, but not ſufficient to allay the heat and drouth which they ſuffer under; and yet by reaſon of that heat it affordeth in ſome places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with ſome other ſpices. Some *Brooks* here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the hills do ſomewhat qualifie the indiſpoſition of the ſoyl, and make it habitable. The chief of which was called *Arbius* antiently; the chief Mountain, *Bætius*.

Towns of moſt name in it, 1. *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2. a Port or Harbor called *Mulierum portus*, or the *Haven of women*. 3. *Arbis*, upon the banks of the

Drangiana. River *Arbius*, presented to us also by the name of a City. 4. *Musarna*, the chief of the *Musarnæ*, a chief tribe of this Countrey. 5. *Parsis*, or rather *Easis*, as the *Greek* text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6. *Gest*, the chief City at the present; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Masarnæ* bordering on *Arachosia*, the *Parsiræ* towards *Carmania*, ths *Rhamnæ* on the banks of *Indus*, and the *Orbitæ*, or *Arbituri*; on the shores of the Ocean. The Countrey of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*. Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conquest of *India*, would needs make a fruitless voyage to see the Ocean. And having satisfied himself with the sight of that furious Element (as if his very seeing it had sufficiently subdued it to him), landed his Army on this coast. Where in his march, for want of victuals, water, and other necessaries, he lost more men in the vast and uncomfortable Desarts of this Country, than in all the military services he had put them too: the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting to 15000 Horse, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiscretion.

6. DRANGIANA.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedrosia*; on the North, and West, bounded with *Aria*; on the East, with *Arachosia*. So called from *Drangius*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the modern name thereof being *Sigestan*, from *Sige*, the now principall City.

The Countrey very hilly, and so closed with Mountains, that the River above named is scarce able to force its passage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite, or reward a Conqueror, yet with the rest, brought under the great *Persian* Monarchs; the fortunes of which Crown they have alwaies followed. So meanly planted, that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of name: the chief whereof, 1. *Ariaspe*, mistook perhaps for *Agriaspe*; and if so, then the mother City of the *Agriaspæ*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2. *Propthasia*, by some of the Antients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province: much boasted of by the old Inhabitants hereof who had seen no better, (as Countrey-villagers use to brag of the next market-Town) and said by *Ammianus* to be rich, and of high renown, the quality of rhe place considered. Still of some note amongst the Natives, by whom called *Sistan*. 3. *Arivada*. 4. *Pharazana*, of which nothing memorable. 5. *Sige*, now of most credit in this Countrey, from hence called *Sigestan*. 6. *Timocani*. 7. *Mulebet*, the chief seat of the Kingdome of *Aladine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fools-paradise* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batrii*, and the *Darandæ*, from which last, the greatest of the two, the Countrey might perhaps be called originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Drandiana*, and at last corrupted easily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this onely as conjecturall. They were called also by some Writers by the name of *Arabians*, and that as *Ammianus* thinks, because they descended from that people; but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabius*, which parteth this Countrey from *Gedrosia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wise, to forsake their own Countrey, and go so far, to get so little by the bargain. Together with the rest of the *Persian* Provinces, subdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Countrey, hapned on the discovery of the treason intended against him by *Philotas* the Son of *Parmenio*, the most renowned of all his Captains. After this little memorable till these later daies, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine* a seditious *Persian*, Lord of the valley of *Mulebet*, spoken of before; who there made a *terestrial Paradise*, which he promised to all his *Partizans*: but the company growing too great for the safety of the Kingdome, they were quickly dispersed; and *Aladine*, with his *Fools-paradise*, both, taken away together, Anno 1262. Some attribute this fiction of *Paradise* to *Aladeules*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*, vanquished by *Selim* the first. The whole story is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine* inhabited a valley in this Countrey, the entrance into which he fortified with a strong Castle called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the lusty youths and *beautifull maidens* of the adjoyning Provinces. The women were confined to their chambers, the men to prison; where having endured much sorrow, they were severally cast into dead sleeps, and conveyed to the women: by whom they were entertain'd with all the pleasures, youth and lust could desire, or a sensuall mind affect. Having injoyed this happiness a whole day, they were in a like sleep conveyed to their irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradise*, and that he could seat them there eternally, if they durst hazard themselves in his quarrels. This when they had sworn to do, they were destinated to the *massacre* of such Princes as were like to prove his bad neighbours; and they accordingly did execution. But neither he, nor *Aladeules*, were the first who trained up their followers in the Arts of murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of those times call the *Old man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the mountainous parts of *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; and from thence sending his Disciples on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Western Princes whom he stood in fear of, during the course of the *Holy wars*. For out of his *School* came those Wretches, who murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions; and desperately slew *Conrade* Marques of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the market-place at *Tyre*; and with like carelessenes of their own lives, dangerously wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) sitting in his Tent. These the *Italians* call *Assassines*, (whence the word to *Assassinate*) intimating thereby a desperate *Cut-throat*, but the reason of that name is not yet agreed on: mistakingly by some *Latine* Writers of the darker times, called *Arsacidæ*, and their commander *Rex Arsacidarum*; as if descended from *Arsaces*, the founder of the *Arsacidan* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

7. ARACHOSIA.

Arachosia and *Paropamisus*.

ARACHOSIA hath on the West, *Drangiana*; on the East, the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedrosia*; and *Parepomisus*, on the North. So called from *Arachosia* the chief City of it; but now best known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at this present.

Of the Countrey I find little spoken, but that it is watered with a branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with some nameless River which falleth into it. By the overflowings whereof is made a Lake, which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoscrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*; after the name of *Arachotos* the chief Town of it, neer to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whose names and situation we find in *Ptolomy*; but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principall, 1. *Arochotos*, on the Lake so named, said to be built by *Semiramis* in her march towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2. *Alexandria*, or (for distinctions sake) *Alexandria Arachosiæ*, the work of *Alexander* the *Great*, in his like march against the *Indians*: built at the foot of one of the branches of Mount *Taurus* shooting towards the South, and peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Souldiers, forespent with age, and with the travel of the wars, whom he left there to inhabit it: his Army being here recruited with the forces which had served under *Parmenio*, consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. 3. *Arbaca*, seeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*, but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to say. 4. *Choaspa*, neer some River of that name, as I conjecture; there being besides *Choaspes* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name also in *India*; and probably another hereabouts to give name to this Town. 5. *Phoclis*, 6. *Sigara*, 7. *Dammana*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8. *Sin*, now a Town of name amongst them, but not much observable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetæ*, called also *Arimaspæ*, and *Euergetæ*, a powerfull Nation of themselves, brought under the command of *Alexander* by means of *Amenides*, sometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governour. And besides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitæ*, and the *Eoritæ*; which three made up the main body of the *Arachosians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and Command of *Menon*. Following after this the fortunes of the *Persian* Empire, they changed their Masters as that did, till the comming in of the *Tartars*. Since that time governed for the most part, by a King of ther own, especially since the dividing of the Kingdome of *Persia* amongst *Tamerlanes* children: some of which held it as a distinct estate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conquest of some parts of *India*, they took unto themselves the name of the *Great Mongul*; Now Lords not onely of this Countrey, but of the greatest part of *India* on this side of *Ganges*; of whom we shall speak more when we are in *India*, that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8. PARAPOMISUS.

PAROPAMISUS is bounded on the South, with *Arachosia*; on the North, with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called *Paropamisus*, by the name of the Countrey: on the East, with some part of *India*; on the West, with *Aria*. So called *quasi Paropanesus*, from the resemblance which it hath to an Island, begirt on all sides almost with Rivers: in which respect by *Ptolomy* called *Paropanisus*, and not *Paropamisus*; by which last name the *Latines* for the most part call it; some of them *Paropamissus*, with a double *ss*. But that name being lost long since, it is now by some called *Dache*, by others *Candahor*, but most commonly *Sablestan*.

The Countrey mountainous and hilly, here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, & exceeding barren; the Valleys indifferent fruitfull, but soover-shadowed with those hills, that the cleerest day in some places seems but like a twilight. The people as obscure as their Countrey, scarce known to any of their neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the barbarous Nations neerest to them esteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreste hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime inconditum*, as it is in *Curtius*

Rivers of most note herein, 1. *Oxus*, (of which before) which rising out of Monnt *Caucasus*, passeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2. *Dargamanis*, 3. *Coacus*, both owing their original to some of the branches of Mount *Taurus*. Which chain of hils, beginning here about to draw towards their end, are towards the west called *Paroetes*, where they give being to the river *Dargamanis*, before named; more Eastward they have the name of *Paropamisus*; and *Caucasus* they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point, as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Persian* territories do encounter each other. The hills in that place mounted to so great an height, that from the tops thereof the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the rising & setting of which are from hence easily discerned: made memorable by the fable of *Prometheus*, who is said to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *victum Promethea fuisse antiquitas tradit*, saith the Historian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have stoln fire from heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which presumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucasus*; where a *vulture* continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of Story, or their guess at least, who make some Story the ground of every Fable; *Promethus* being a very wise man, instructed the dead and clayie carcasses of others with wisdome; and that being very desirous to learn the nature of the Stars, (hich is the fire hee

Aria.

ſtole from heaven) he made the higheſt part of Mount *Caucaſus* his ſtudy: where the inward care he had to accompliſh his deſire, might juſtly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is Saint *Auguſtine*. But far more memorable is it made for being the reſting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have already ſpoken in our Generall Preface.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Naulibis*, and 2. *Ortoſpana*, both named by *Ptolomy*, and rekoned by *Ammianus* for the moſt famous of this Countrey. But in what their fame conſiſted I cannot find. 3. *Parſiana*, 4. *Gazaca*, 5. *Daroacana*, 6. *Bagarda*; all named by *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable. 7. *Candahor*, now the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, a Town of great Trade, by reaſon of the ſituation of it on the borders of *India*; in that reſpect giving to the whole Countrey the name of *Candahor*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdome, and uſed amongſt the many Titles in the *Stile Imperiall*. Nothing conſiderable of it in the courſe of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Perſian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the reſt till theſe latter times; when the *Perſians* being overlaid by the *Tartars*, it became ſubject to ſome Kings of the race of *Tamarlane*, reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the ſame extraction. Finding thoſe Kings intent on the conqueſt of *India*, they freed themſelves from all ſubjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or therabouts; when the laſt King, unable to defend himſelf againſt *Abduxa*, King of the *Uſbeques* (a *Tartarian* people, but ſubject in ſome ſort to the Crown of *Perſia*) ſurrendred his Kingdome to *Echebar* the *Great Mongul* (deſcended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whoſe dominions border cloſe upon it. Recovered to the *Perſian* Crown by *Mirza* the Son of *Abas*, and Father of *Soffie* the now Sultan; a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes: the *Perſian Sophies*, ſince that conqueſt, uſing the Title of Kings of *Candahor*, in the Regal ſtile.

9. ARIA.

ARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Paropamiſus*; on the Weſt, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which laſt parted by the mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, eſpecially by the *Grecians*; till changed (as they ſay) into *Media*, on the comming thither of *Medea*. For ſo *Pauſanias*, amongſt others, Παραγενομένη δὲ εἰς τὴν λεγομένην τότε Ἀρείαν, τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἔθηκε τὸ ὄνομα καλεῖσθαι Μήδους ἀπ' αὐτῆς, i. e. comming into the Countrey then called *Aria*, ſhe cauſed it after her own name to be called *Media*. But the name of *Aria* was not loſt, though it were removed; remaining proper to this Countrey till theſe latter ages; now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Conntrey much ſubject unto heats, environed with deſarts, Heaths, and Forreſts; yet neer the mountans which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have ſome fruitfull *Champagnes*; bearing very good fruits, and amongſt others, a ſtrong wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taſt and colour above 80 years. They have alſo here a *Drug* ſomewhat like to *Myrrhe*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a *Lake* of the ſame name. The Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamiſus*, and the fall thereof in the ſaid *Lake*: the waters of it firſt increaſed by a nameleſs Stream, falling from the Mountains called *Seriphi*; being that part of *Taurus*, which divideth this Countrey from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well-inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Thoſe of moſt conſequence, 1. *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arias*, the ſeat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* ſpeaketh of in this Tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or beſtowed their own name upon it, I determine not: 2. *Bataxa*, 3. *Sotera*, 4. *Orbitana*, 5. *Sarmagana*, 6. *Artacandæ*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*, 7. *Niſibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*, 8. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Countrey, which by ſome former rebellions had been troubleſome to him. But theſe, and moſt of thoſe remembred by *Ptolomy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of ſpeciall note, 9. *Heri*, or *Eri*, ſeated not far from the place of the antient *Aria*, but much ſuperiour to it in ſtrength and greatneſs. Said by *Maginus* to be in compaſs thirteen miles, and ſo plentifully ſtored with *Roſes*, that the inhabitants of the Countrey call it the *City of Roſes*. Naturally of a ſtrong ſituation, compaſſed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that moſt puiſſant *Tartar*, by whom either founded or repaired. 10. *Saſuar*, a place of good importance, and the ſecond in eſteem next to *Heri* it ſelf.

The old Inhabitants were the *Maſdarami*, *Niſæi*, *Aſtareni*, the *Caſſirotæ*, *Obares*, *Drachmæ*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united altogether in the name of *Arians*, by that name ſubject to the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by *Alexander*. Againſt whom when they had rebelled, and were worſted by him, they were compelled to betake themſelves to the ſtrength of a Cave, ſeated upon the top of an inacceſſible Rock, and with ſmall force eaſily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impoſſible. For piling up a great maſs of Timber, equall unto the mouth of the Cave, when the wind ſerved opportunely, he put fire unto it; and by that means ſo filled the Cave with fire and ſmoak, that ſome of them were ſtifled, ſome half-burnt, and the reſt forced to yield to the Victors mercy. Nor was this the onely action of note during that Rebellion, though it was the greateſt. The common Souldier alſo had his honour in it. *Sarlibarzanes*, a *Perſian*, whom *Alexander* had truſted with the command of this Province, had drawn them unto this *Revolt*; and became their head. Who to expreſs his courage in the ſight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudeſt He of the *Macedonians*, to a ſingle combat. The challenge cheerfully accepted by one *Eriguis*, one of the moſt aged in the Army:

Army: and saying aloud, *ostendam quales milites* Alexander *habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebell; and at the second *venew* slew him. The *Arians* after this triall of their disabilities, remained in quiet, taking the same fortunes as the rest of the *Persians* did, in their change of Masters. Of late, by *Mahomet Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Persia*, and given to Sultan *Abas*, his second Son; who took unto himself in his Fathers life-time the title of the King of *Heri*. But comming to the Crown by the murder of his elder Brother, and the death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the *Regal Diademe*; but kept as a distinct title in the *Royall stile*. *Parthia.*

10. PARTHIA.

PARTHIA is bounded on the East, with *Aria*; on the West, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolomy* and others of the Antients, was called *Deserta*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. But that name being laid aside, it is now called *Arach*.

The Countrey walled as it were round with Mountains, and in most parts overgrown with *woods*: by which defended from those heats to which otherwise it would be subject, it produceth many things of necessary use for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and excess. In other places where the shade of the wood is wanting, the whole Countrey is in a manner but a *sandy Desart*, dongerous to Travellers, and impassable even with the help of *Guides*; the sands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all tracts of a beaten way. For which cause there be certain Castles at each three miles end, built at the Kings charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Passengers; and Cawseys of many miles in length, in some other places, for their better travelling to the sands on each side of them so loose and light, that if a man should fall aside, he were lost remediless.

The people antiently were very couragious and stout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withall of a *Scythian* extract and originall. Exceeding spare of diet, and good reason for it, the Countrey not affording any superfluities; but otherwise much given to pleasures, allowing themselves plurality of wives and Concubines. Good horsemen, and to that so used, that they consulted of all business both private and publique, when they were on horse-back. Such lovers of the wars, that they accompted no man happy after his decease, but who died in battel; esteeming of all others but as fools or Cowards. Their Souldiers for the most part *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto their weapons; and to manage horses: insomuch as of 50000, horse which the *Parthian* King had in the field against *Marcus Antonius*, there were not above 800 *Free-men*. But their greatest fame consisted in the handling of their *Bow and Arrows*, esteemed the best *Archers* in the world, and not undeservedly; having the Art of shooting backwards, and making their Retreat or flight more terrible, than their charge or onset. Whence that of *Seneca*.

Terga conversi metuenda Parthi.
The *Parthians* flight
Doth most affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiously described by *Lucan* thus.

Pugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmæque fugaces,
Et melior cessisse loco quam pellere moles.
Illita terra dolis, nec Martem *cominus unquam.*
Ausa pati virtus, sed longè tendere nervos.

Which I find thus *Englished* to my hand.

Light skirmish, fleeing war, and scattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they run away,
Than to cut off an enemy that stands.
Their crafty *Gall-thraps* on the ground they lay,
Nor dares their courage come to down-right blows,
But fight best furthest off, most trusting to their bows.

From hence it was that *M. Crassus*, in his expedition against them, being told by an *Astrologer*, that his enterprise would prove unprosperous, by reason of some *ill aspect* which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tush* (said he) *I fear not* Scorpio, *but* Sagittarius. And to these warlike exercises of horse and Archery, the temper of the Air and Soyl, gave no smal advantages; the dry Air seasoning their Bow-strings, and their large fields affording them sufficient room to train their horses. *Cœlum enim quod siccum est, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana est, & ob eam rem equis accomodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be understood not of *Parthia* onely, but the whole Countrey of *Persia*; subject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to these *Parthians*, the *English* have been looked on formerly, as the ablest Bow-men; having gotten by their *bow and arrows* as many notable victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time *Archery* both here, and elsewhere, is quite laid aside, the *Gun* silencing all offensive weapons; how justly I determine not. The point hath been long since debated betwixt Sir *John Smith*, and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great wits appearing upon either side; and the sum of their severall Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds*, in his judicious observations upon *Cæsars Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his satisfaction. All I shall

Parthia. shall say is only this, that victories as great as any in those elder daies, have been obtained with far less bloodshed, since the *Gun* came up, than in any of the times before it.

The *Religion* of this People hath suffered under the same changes with the rest of *Persia*, but they have a language of their own, mixt of *Mede* and *Scythian*. For which besides the testimony of humane Authors, we have the Authority of Scriptures; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes*, are named as Nations of a severall language, or a different *Dialect* at the least, *Acts*, 2.

Rivers of note I find not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus*, part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Masdoramus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Desarts* of *Carmania*. So that for want of such known Landmarks, the finding out of their antient Cities would be very difficult, if any learned *Antiquary* should undertake it.

The Countrey antiently more populous, the towns and villages thicker set, than they be at the present many Cities, and 2000 villages having been overthrown with *Earth-quakes*. In *Ptolomy* we find the names of 25. of the Cities, distributed into the 4 Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camisene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene*, bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring *Carmania*. The principall of which, and of those that are now in being, 1. *Genonia*. 2. *Charax*. 3. *Artacana*. 4. *Apamia*, which by the name seems to have been of the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5. *Dardamana*. 6. *Syndaga*. 7. *Pasacarta*. 8. *Hecatompyle*, the Royall City, so called from the number of an hundred Gates in the walls thereof, by which we may conjecture at the antient greatness: the *Parthians*, which had seen no greater, calling it by the glorious name of *Half the world*. 9. *Hispaan*, commonly called *Spahan*, or *Spawhawn*, raised out of the ruins of *Hecatompyle*; and as that was, the Regal City for these parts. In compass about nine miles, of figure round, and seated in the middest of a large and capacious Plain, beautified with many pleasant Gardens, goodly Baths, and handsome *Mosques*. But the greatest glory of it lieth in the market-place or *Midan*, quadrangular in form, but the sides unequal; cloistred about, and well stored with merchandise of all sorts, but drugs especially: the Court or *Quadrangle*, serving for horse-races, and other warlike exercises which are done on horse-back. On the west-side a magnificent *Mosque*, built of white Marble five yards high, and the rest above that of brick; curiously interwoven with *Arabick* Poesies. In the middest a fair Conduit, wherewith they purifie themselves, when they go to their prayers. On another side the *Royall Palace*, wrought in the Front with *Antique* works; the Floors on the inside covered with rich *Persian* Carpets, and the Roofs chargeably embossed with Gold and *Azure*. 10. *Jelphea*, on the other side of the River on which *Spawhawn* is seated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Christians, from hence called *Jelpheliues*; who live here in great freedome, both for person, and conscience, but that their *Poll-money* is taxed at an higher rate. 11. *Croom*, a right pleasant and healthy City, well built, of large streets, and seated on the banks of a small but delightfull River, issuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, neer to which it standeth. Consisting at the present of 2000 Families, but antiently, as may be gathered from some ruins, of far greater compass. Much honoured by the *Persians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet* from whom the *Sophian* Sect and Princes do derive their Pedegree. 12. *Casham*, a rich and pleasant City, about 60 miles from *Spawhawn*, well-built, and peopled by a number of *Artizans*; who for the making of Silks, Sattens, and cloth of Gold, are in great esteem. Beautified amongst other things with a stately and magnificent *Caravans-Raw*, built by Sultan *Abas*, for the reception of Strangers, whether Merchants or other Travellers, but fit to entertain any Prince of *Asia*. The City of no great age, the work either of *Ussan-Cassanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Persia*, in the year 1470. or at the highest of *Cassim*, the Son of *Axan*, and Grand-son of *Tangrolipix*, the first *Turk* here reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13. *Tawgebawt*, where the *Persian* Kings have a house of pleasure, of no great receipt; but for the cost and ornaments of it, and the delectableness of the Gardens adjoyning to it; not yielding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Ecchoes*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not fellowed in the world; especially considering that it standeth in the midle of a sandy Desart.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation, banished their own Countrey, and glad to plant themselves in this barren Region; calling themselves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their language signifieth as much as *Exiles*. A People so obscure and poor, either not knowing or not caring for the use of money, that none of *Alexanders* great Captains would vouchsafe to be their Governour; but let it lie as an Appendix of *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been subject; till one *Philip*, a man of small regard, took the place upon him. Falling at last, with the rest of *Alexanders Asian* purchases, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was governed by the Lieutenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Gallinicus*, the fourth of that house. During whose reign, *Arsaces* a noble *Parthian*, provoked by some indignities, slew the Governour, and took the estate upon himself; perswading all the rest of the Provinces to do the like: and thrived so well in his design, that he not onely gained the Kingdome of *Parthia*, but united to it all the Provinces lying on the East of *Euphrates*. Of whom and his Successors more, in the story of *Persia*. After this nothing singular which concerns this Province, but that as this *Arsaces* did recover the *Persian* liberty from the power of the *Greeks*; so *Gempsas*, one of the Sultans of this Province also, redeemed (though but for a little time) this *Parthia* and the parts adjoyning, from the yoak of the *Tartas*; as shall be shewn in prosecution of te *Persian* History.

II. HYRCANIA.

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South, with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caſpian* Sea; on the Eaſt, with *Margiana*; and on the Weſt, with *Atropatia*, or *Atropattene* (as *Ammianus* calleth it) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interpoſition of *Coronus*, part of the main body of mount *Taurus*. The way thorow which, ſaid by the *Perſians* to be cut out at one blow, by the *Scymitar* of *Mortis Haly*, their ſecond *Mahomet*, is not above fourty yards in breadth; in the broadeſt parts of it; the hills on both ſides towring to the very clouds: With ſmall ſtrength eaſily defended againſt mighty Armies, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the Antients called *Portæ Caſpiæ*, before deſcribed.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcana* a large and ſpacious forreſt betwixt it and *Scythia*; ſometimes called *Caſpia* alſo, from the *Caſpii*, a chief People of it: of whom it is reported, that when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they uſed to ſhut them up, and ſtarve them; as being then no longer uſefull to the Common-wealth. But both thoſe names growing out of uſe, it is by *Mercator* called *Diargument*; by ſome late Travellers *Mezendram*; by ſome others, *Corcam*.

Thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the South, are ſaid to yield abundance of wheat, wines, figges, and fruit: thoſe towards the *Caſpian* Sea, as plentifull of Graſs and paſture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but continuall forreſts, and thoſe ſo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no ſmall difficulty to find paſſage thorow them. Full, as moſt other Forreſts are in thoſe Eaſtern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*; *Tigers*: theſe laſt of ſuch an horrible fierceneſs, that it grew into a common Proverb uſed of cruel men, that they had ſucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger; *Hyrcanæque admorunt ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principall Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Zioberis*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Maxera*, or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*; and 3. *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caſpian*, and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caſpii* and *Hyrcani*, bordering next unto it; now from the Town of *Bochu*, in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochu*. Faſhioned in an *Ovall* form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from Eaſt to Weſt. Stormy, and troubleſome, by reaſon of thoſe many great Rivers which fall into it, from all the Provinces adjoyning: which notwithſtanding it hath no viſible commerce with the *Ocean*; nor doth it at any time overflow its banks; finding ſome paſſage under ground, to diſcharge it ſelf of thoſe vaſt ſtreams of water which are powred into it. Well traded by the *Moſcovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volge* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) ſail over it, and land at *Farabant*, or ſome other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for ſilks. Some Iſlands here are in it, but not many, or of any great fame, but onely that they ſerved the Nations which lay neer it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tempeſt under *Tamerlane*; as the Iſles of *Venice* did to the *Italians*, at the comming of *Attila*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Hyrcania*, once the *Metropolis* of the Province, and ſo called by *Ptolomy*; ſtill extant, but of leſs eſteem, and ſtill called *Hyrcan*. 2. *Tambrace*, in old times of the greateſt ſtrength, and moſt defenſible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the war againſt *Arſaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of thoſe Countries then revolted from him. 3. *Adrapſa*, 4. *Maſaca*, 5. *Anaroſa*; of which we find the names, amongſt others, in the antient Writers. 6. *Aſharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a ſpacious Plain, containing about 2000 houſes, and now of moſt reputation of all this Province, by the long Reſidence therein of *Abas*, the late *Perſian* Sultan; who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abaſſebant*. The furniture whereof, beſides coſtly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at ſuch time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Ambaſſadour, is ſaid to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of Pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in ſilks than Jewels: ſuch a vaſt ſumme to be expended on the furniture of one Palace onely, being beyond the poſſibility of the *Revenue* of the *Perſian Sophies*; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7. *Farabant*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caſpian* Sea; for beauty, wealth, and greatneſs, of moſt note in this Countrey. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, eſpecially by the *Ruſſian* Merchant, as before is ſaid: whoſe ſhips come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Aſtrachan* but ten daies ſail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal manſion of the Kings, and a ſpacious Market-place. 8. *Chiacoporo*, neer the Sea alſo, but on the banks of a River; the water whereof is ſaid for eleven moneths to be freſh and ſweet, and for the twelf moneth very ſalt. 9. *Barfruſhdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furniſhed with wood and water. 10, *Omoall*, a Town of about 3000 houſes, ſeated on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl; reſorted to by the people of ſo many Nations, that ſeven languages are there commonly ſpoken. Once larger, as appeareth by ſome ruins, than it is at the preſent; by ſome conceived to be the *Nubarca* of the Antients, honoured in thoſe times with an Oracle. 11. *Strava*, a Town of great trafick, for raw ſilks eſpecially. 12. *Meſandre*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoyning to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitans hereof, beſides the *Caſpii*, were the *Maxeræ*, *Aſtabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arſitenſes*; united in the name of *Hyrcæns*, in the time of the *Perſians*; and by that name well known at the comming of *Alexander*. Againſt whom they ſo defended themſelves, by tying the boughs and twigs of their Trees together, that it was impoſſible for him to come at them; till with incredible pains and labour he had cauſed their woods to be cut down: at ſight whereof the People, who ſuppoſed the King had too much other buſineſs, and of more importance, than to put himſelf unto that trouble, did ſubmit unto him. Falling to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, they were the firſt people that were gained by *Arſaces*, and joined with him in recovering their former liberty; though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their

Maſter.

Margiana and Bactria.

Master. In all times since, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian* Empire, till the conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the distractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlanes* death, it fell to some Princes of his house, who governed here under the vassallage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long since to their old obedience, by Sultan *Abas*: who for the better setling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat Royall from *Spawhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin*; to *Asharaffe*, then a small town, now the chief of this Countrey.

12. *MARGIANA.*

MARGIANA is bounded on the West, with *Hyrcania*; on the East, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which severed by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runnes thorow the Countrey: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Countrey environed with Mountains, and in most places of it full of sandy Desarts. But where it is watered with the Rivers, *Arias*, and *Margus*, it is very fruitfull, streching it self into a large and spacious plain, containing in the circuit neer 200 miles. The Plain once compassed with a wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*: more memorable for the huge stocks of *Vines* which are said to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and sometimes bearing branches of grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place neer unto it, where the vine will grow. And if the *Ark* rested on the top of Mount *Caucasus*, as it is most probable it did; why may not this be some of the remainder of that first *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he descended from these Mountains, as is affirmed by the constant tradition of the people which inhabit here?

The people mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fierceness of the one, and the behaviour of the other. Conform unto the *Persians*, in Religion, language, and apparell; distinguished from them in the colour of their *Turbants* onely, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jesetbas*, or *Green-caps*; the *Turbants* of the *Persian* being alwayes Red.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey are, 1. *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rising out of the foot of the Mountains, and passing thorow the middest of the Province, receiveth into its channell the River, 2. *Arias*, hastning out of *Aria*; and so together lose themselves in 3. *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*. Out of the joint streams of which several Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacamber*, but antiently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principall River.

Places of most observation in it. 1. *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margianæ* for distinction sake; one of the six towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Countrey: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter* King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very strong wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed for the chief of the Countrey. 2. *Jasonium*, seated on the confluence of *Margus* with a nameless Rivers issuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3. *Nigæa*, as the printed books of *Ptolomy* call it; but mistook for *Nissa*, or *Nysæa*. 4. *Argadina*. 5. *Rhea*; of which nothing memorable. 6. *Maran*, neer to which *Ismael* the first of the *Sophian* race, discomfited the forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Massagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the midlands; the *Derbiccæ*, bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians*, they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to assure himself hereof built six Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East; all situate on the tops of hills, and built at such convenient neerness that they might afford succour to each other, as occasion served. After this nothing singular in the story of them; involved in the same fortunes with the rest of *Persia*, till *Persia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the rest of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoak by *Gempsas*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactriana*, are still subject to them.

13. *BACTRIA.*

BACTRIA or *BACTRIANA*, is bounded on the West, with *Margiana*; on the East and North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamisus*, from which parted by the hills so named, and the Mountain *Caucasus*. It took this name from *Bactra*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Chorassin*, but by some named *Batter*.

The Countrey towards the River *Oxus*, is for the most part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all sorts of fruits excepting Olives; rich metals, and some precious stones, as *Emeralds*, *Chrisolites*, and *Jacinthes*. Plenty of pastures there be also, well stored with Cattell, and those of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greatest part hereof to the South and West, is nothing but a sandy Desart; and by reason that the sands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be discerned: insomuch as Travellers rest all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the course of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being lost or buried, whilst alive, in that sandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puissant and warlike nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Assyrians*, nor with less by the *Persians*; alwaies in armes, cruel, and resembling the *Scythians*, whose neer neighbours they were. and (which may very well pass for their greatest vertue) *multum a* Persarum *luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* luxuries. But withall unnaturall to their Parents, whom when old they cast unto their dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or buriall dogs. The women gorgeous in apparell, and proud of gesture, but prodigall of their bodies to their meanest

meaneſt ſlaves. The men to this day do retain their antient ſtoutneſs; but hard beſet betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Tartars*, who ſeverally pretend a dominion over them. *Bactria.*

No Province of the *Perſian* Empire hath ſo many Rivers. The principall of which are 1. *Artamis*, and 2. *Zariaſpes*, mingling ſtreams together; as do alſo 3. *Ochus*, and 4. *Orgomanes*: all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either; we have ſpoke already.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Bactria*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of it, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains *Sogdii*; giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and ſtill keeps the dignity of the *Metropolitan*: the ſeat of the Chief-Prieſt or Biſhop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Countrey alſo, doth now belong) having here his reſidence; in power and reputation equall to the King himſelf. Well fortified, and ſtored with all military proviſions: the birth-place (as *Maginus* ſaith) in theſe latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philoſopher and Phyſician; and in the firſt Ages, of *Zoroaſter* the more learned *Aſtrologer*. 2. *Ebuſmi*, once the Regal ſeat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of *Regia*. 3. *Zariſpe*, or *Chariſpe*, the chief City of the *Chariſpæ*, a great Tribe of this Countrey. 4. *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: theſe two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5. *Eucratidia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being meerly *Greek*, doth ſeem to intimate. 6. *Alicodra*, as antient as the reſt, but of no great note in the courſe of buſineſs. 7. *Iſtigias*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of thoſe before ſpoken of: ſuperiour to *Bochor* in elegancy, ſtate and greatneſs, though not in dignity; and held by ſome to be the pleaſanteſt of the Eaſt.

This Countrey was as ſoon peopled as any ſince the generall *Deluge*. It had not elſe been poſſible that *Zoroaſter* King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him aſſaulted, ſhould bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps ſome other of the neighbouring Provinces, as moſt credible writers ſay he did. Encountring *Ninus* with this Army he prevailed at firſt, and ſlew of the *Aſſyrians* neer an hundred thouſand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his forces, invaded him a ſecond time with an Army of 1700000 foot, and 200000 horſe (the greateſt on record in all ages ſince that time, except that of *Semiramis*): with which he overcame *Zoroaſter*, ſlew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaſter* is aſcribed the invention of *Aſtronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being ſtudied before the flood, (if *Seths* Pillars mentioned by *Joſephus* be of any credit): and therefore probably no otherwiſe to be aſcribed to *Zoroaſter*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or becauſe he firſt committed that unto writing, which he had received by *tradition*; or becauſe he brought thoſe confuſed notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being ſlain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semeramis*, then the wife of *Menon* (but on the merit of that ſervice made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became ſubject unto the *Aſſyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Beſſus* a falſe and cruell Traitor, did command this Province: and having villainouſly ſlain *Darius*, his Lord and Maſter, aſſumed unto himſelf the tittle of King of *Perſia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes* one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruell death: the *Bactrians* became ſubject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that State; one *Theodatus*, who formerly had the Government of it for the *Syrian* Kings; taking unto himſelf the tittle of King, and the poſſeſſion of the Countrey, about the ſame time that *Arſaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wreſted from his poſterity by one *Euthydemus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cauſe put to the trial of a battel. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and ſhewed more perſonal valor in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a compoſition, and left to *Euthydimus*, both the Crown and the Countrey. Made not long after an acceſſion to the *Parthian* Kingdome, it continued part thereof whileſt that Kingdome ſtood. and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief tribes or nations of it, the *Salatarę*, and *Zariaſpæ* towards the North; the *Comani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, ſaid to be *gens magna*; the *Scordæ*, *Savadii*, *Maricæ*, *Tambyzi*, *Amariſpe*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Perſian* State, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the new *Pretenders*: and at this time ſo neutrall betwixt the *Perſians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is wholly under the power of either. More averſe from the *Perſian* government, ſince the alteration of *Religion* made there by *Hyſmael*, and the reſt of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: theſe *Bactrians* being of the old race of *Mahometans*, which adhered to *Haumar*, *Oſmen*, and *Abubecher*, as the true Succeſſours of their falſe Prophet; and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of thoſe ſeveral Provinces, which conſtitute the *Perſian* Empire, and ſhewn by what means they were firſt united into one eſtate: we muſt next look upon the names and actions of thoſe mighty Monarchs, who have ſucceſſively, and from time to time enjoyed the Soveraignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diademe for himſelf, we have ſhewn before: and we have ſhewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the ſeverall Provinces (which in the diviſion made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his ſhare) in the propriety and command of thoſe Countreys, which before they held. Nothing reſerved unto himſelf, and his poſterity, but the tittle onely; and perhaps ſome acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he leſs liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the reſt of the Provinces; which turning to licenciouſneſs was ſo hurtful to them, that they were glad at laſt of that wholeſome ſeverity, which *Dioces*, a more Lordly King, began to exerciſe: who taking to himſelf a guard, building the Royall City of *Ecbatana*,

Kings of the *Medes*

tana, and fortifying ſome other places of importance, firſt brought the people under the command of law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*. the firſt King of the *Medes*.

Kings of the *Medes*.

A. M.

3146. 1. *Arbaces*, at firſt Governour of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Aſſyrian*; but joining with *Belochus*, overcame his Maſter, and was the firſt founder of the *Median* Monarchy.

3174. 2. *Mandanes*, the Son of *Arbaces*. 50.

3224. 3. *Siſarmus*. 30.

3254. 4. *Medidus*, by ſome called *Artyras*. 25.

3279. 5. *Cardiceus*, whom ſome call *Arbianes*. 13.

3292. 6. *Deioces*, the founder of *Ecbatana*, and the *Legiſlator* of the *Medes*, whom he firſt brought under the command of Law, and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the reigns ſo looſe on the necks of the people, that they ſeemed to reign by curteſie only; and had no more authority amongſt their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vaſſals.

3303. 7. *Phraortes*, a man of great proweſs and fortune: He made all *Aſia* ſtand in fear, and compelled the *Perſians* to be his tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.

3331. 8. *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Parthians*. The King was ſo overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*; that he was little better than their rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he plotted their finall extirpation, and committed his deſign to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night, they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a banquet; where having well liquored them, and put them all to the ſword, the baſer ſort willingly returned homeward. 40.

3371. 9. *Aſtyages*, the Son of *Cyaxares*, who having maried his Daughter *Mandane*, to *Cambyſes* the Tributary King of *Perſia*; dreamed that ſhe had made as much water as drowned all *Aſia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble men, to ſee the Child killed; but he loathing ſo cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the Kings Commandment, to *Mithridates* the Kings heard-man. He preſerved the life of the young infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whoſe fortune at laſt lifted him up to the Kingdome of *Perſia*: when abhorring his Grand-Father for that intended cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdome, and confined him to *Hyrcania*; when he had reigned thirty five years. A. M. 3406.

3406. 10. *Cyaxares* II. in the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, Son to *Aſtyages*, at the age of 52 years ſucceeded his father. For *Cyrus* pretending no quarrel to his Unkle who had never wronged him, left him the Kingdome of *Media*; and took unto himſelf the Soveraignity of *Perſia* which before was tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this diviſion of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annalls*, (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was alſo agreed on, that *Cyrus* ſhould take the daughter and only child of *Cyaxares* to wife; that they ſhould both join together, in ſubduing of their neighbours; that whatſoever they won, ſhould belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his life; and that *Cyrus* ſhould be his heir. In the twentieth year of their ſeverall reigns, they took *Babylon*, ſlew *Baltazar*, and deſtroyed the Empire of the *Chaldæans*. This action, the Scriptures atribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof Saint *Hierome* alledgeth three reaſons: 1. *Ordo ætatis*, 2 *Regni*, 3. *Propinquitatis*. 1. *Darius* was the elder; 2. the Empire of the *Medes* was more famous than that of the *Perſians*; and 3. the Unkle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may adde to theſe three, the compoſition above-mentioned, made between theſe Princes, at the beginning of their reigns on the death of *Aſtyages*. The *Greek* Writers atribute the victory onely to *Cyrus*, and that on three reaſons alſo. The *Perſians* deſirous to magnifie *Cyrus* their own Countrey-man, gave him all the glory of the action; and from the *Perſians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly *Cyrus* was only imployed in the ſige, (*Darius* then being abſent) and by his valour and conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldæans* ruined. And thirdly, *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great victory; ſo that before remote Nations had taken notice of the conqueſt, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Joſephus* onely in the 11 Chapter of his Book, cutteth the thread even between theſe two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius, with Cyrus his Ally, deſtroyed the eſtate of the Babylonians*. That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel*, is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifeſt. For *Joſephus* in the place above-cited telleth us, ὃς ἦν Ἀστυάγους υἱὸς ᾧ ἕτερον παρὰ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὄνομα ἐκαλεῖτο ὄνομα: *That he was* Aſtyages *Son, and is otherwiſe called by the* Greeks: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Aſtyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joſeph Scaliger* in ſpight of reaſon, and the whole world of Chronologers, would truſt upon this *Darius Medus*; we have already reſelled it: though we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calviſius*, two moſt worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, ſo alſo in this particular Error. But to proceed unto the courſe of the *Perſian* Hiſtory; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* ſucceeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated in that of the *Perſians*, (as it hath ever ſince continued) if not ſubject to it.

The

The first *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Monarchs, of the house of *Achæmenes*.

3406. 1. *Cyrus*, who having vanquished *Astyages*, united to the Empire of *Persia* the whole Kingdome of *Media*; the Countreys of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, some part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces possessed by the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs. After which victories, he was slain by *Tomyris* a Queen of the *Scythians*, as some Writers say: others affirming that he escaped alive (but wounded) out of the battel, died in his own Kingdome, and was buryed at *Pasagarda*, a Town of *Persis*. This *Cyrus* is magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Ænas* is by *Virgil*, and *Ulysses* by *Homer*. 29.

3434. 2. *Cambyses*, the Son of *Cyrus*, subdued *Psammiticus* King of *Ægypt*, which Countrey he united to his Empire. Having a mind to marry his own Sister, he was told by his Lawyers that they knew no law which admitted such mariages; but that there was a law, that the *Persian* Kings might do what they listed. This King was a very bloudy Tyrant.

The *Inter-regnum* of the *Magi*.

Cambyses at his expedition into *Ægypt*, constituted *Patizithes*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his absence. He hearing of the Kings death, conferred the Kingdome on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the people believe, that he was the brother of *Cambyses*: A matter of no difficulty, considering, how retirement from the publique view, was a chief point of the *Persian* majesty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be slain, or suspecting the overmuch retiredness of the new King; began to search out the matter. *Otanes* had a daughter, which was one of the Kings Concubines. Her he commanded when the King took next his pleasure with her; to feel whether he had any ears: for *Cambyses* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the ears of this *Magus*. This commandment she obeying, found out the falshood. The *seven Princes* informed of this imposture, join together, and slew this *Pseudo-Smerdis*, in the eighth moneth of his reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themselves, that the *seven Princes* meeting on the Palace green, should acknowledge him for King, whose horse before the rising of the Sun, first neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the horse-keeper of *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspis*, brought his Masters horse into the green, together with a mare, which the horse then covered. In the morning the Princes met; and *Darius* his horse knowing the place, and longing for his mare, neighed lustily: on which the Princes presently acknowledge *Darius* for their King.

The restoring of the Kingdome.

3413. 3. *Darius Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, thus elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopirus*; and over-ran all *Asia*, and some part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the battell of *Marathon*. 36.

3479. 4. *Xerxes*, to revenge the overthrow at *Marathron*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*: by whom he was overthrown in the navall battle of *Salamis*; and that famous and honourable exploit of the *Græcians*, at *Thermopylæ*. 21.

3508. 5. *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who sent *Esdras* to re-build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themistocles*, being banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahasuerus*, the Husband of *Hester*; though others choose rather to place that story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.

3541. 6. *Darius* II. surnamed *Nothus*, in whose time the *Ægyptians* revolted, and chose a King of their own. 19.

3563. 7. *Artaxerxes* II. from the greatness of his memory surnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with an handfull of his *Græcians*, thorow most of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how easie a Conquest they might make, of that mighty Empire. 36.

3599. 8. *Ochus*, a great Tyrant, but a valiant Prince, recovered *Ægypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some part of *India*; and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber.

3625. 9. *Arses*, the Son of *Ochus*, most villanously murdered by the same Eunuch, for fear he should revenge the death of his Father.

3629. 10. *Darius* III. Governour of *Armenia*, and Cousin German of *Ochus*, before his comming to the Crown named *Codomannus*; by the means of the said *Bagoas* made sole Monarch of *Persia*. But being vanquished by *Alexander* the *Great*, in the three battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Græcians*, A.M. 3635.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the last *Darius* received yearly. But what the casuall and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not easie to say; though manifest it is, and demonstable by many strong and evident reasons, that they farre exceeded the *certain*. For first, the *Persian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces; Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the ransome of his mother and two daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander*

found in the Treaſury of *Damaſcus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Suſa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoyned; in that of *Paſagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Preſepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; beſides the infinite riches of the Treaſury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly ſpecified: An huge and moſt unſpeakable ſumme. Fourthly, in that the gold and riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, ſent from *Perſia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (beſides that which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thouſand Mules, and five thouſand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Perſian* Monarchy, the *Perſian* Nation lay obſcure 535 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the world, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Succeſſors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arſacidan* Kings of *Parthia*. Μετὰ τὰς Δαρείου, &c. as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had loſt his Kingdome to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after "the Victor himſelf was dead alſo; the more potent Captains divided *Aſia* among them. But diſcords "often ariſing, and the *Macedonians* puiſſance, by theſe often broiles, not ſmally broken; *Arſaces* one "of the *Parthian* Nobility, perſwaded the barbarous people of the Eaſt, and among them the *Perſians*, to "caſt off the *Greek* yoak, and ſtand for their liberty: he himſelf taking upon him the title of King, and "inveſting himſelf with a Diadem, A. M. 3718. The *Perſians* by this revolt, got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* onely: theſe *Parthian* Princes lording it with as high an inſolencie, as ever the old *Perſian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria*, did before. From this *Arſaces*, all the reſt of his Succeſſors, and thoſe too of the family of *Artabanus*, or the ſecond race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cæſar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their uſual ſtile was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that ſtile with arrogance and inſolence enough, *Vologeſes* thus inſcribed his letters to *Veſpaſian*, the *Roman* Emperor, viz. *Arſaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavio Veſpaſiano*: giving himſelf the title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names onely. To which, *Veſpaſian* without taking notice of the *Parthians* pride, returned his anſwer to him with this ſuperſcription, *Fl. Veſpaſianus Regi Regum Arſacidi*: whether with more ſcorn, or modeſty, it is hard to ſay. They alſo called themſelves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefeſt Gods they worſhipped. Great Princes queſtionleſs they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world beſides: whoſe names and acts occurre in theſe following Catalogues of

2. The *Arſacidan* or *Parthian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

A. M.

3718. 1. *Arſaces*, the founder of the *Parthian* family.

3741. 2. *Mithridates*, or *Arſaces* the 2d. aſſaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without ſucceſs.

3761. 3. *Pampatius*.

3773. 4. *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius*.

3783. 5. *Mithridates* II. brother of *Phraartes*, ſubdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.

6. *Phraartes* II. ſlain in a warre againſt the *Scythians*.

3857. 7. *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the 2d.

8. *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.

9. *Mithridates* III. brother of *Pacorus*.

3903. 10. *Horodes*, brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and cauſed to be ſlain in his own ſight. He alſo vanquiſhed *M. Craſſus*, and ſlew 20000 *Romans*: and becauſe *Craſſus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he cauſed molten gold to be poured down his throat. A miſerable death, but in reſpect of the divine Providence, a moſt juſt revenge upon him for his ſacriledge; in robbing the Temple of *Hieruſalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the diſgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompenſed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*; who ſlew great numbers of them in a pitched field, and amongſt others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the battell being the ſame, in which *Craſſus* had before been vanquiſhed. After this victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the firſt Triumph that ever the *Romans* had beheld for a *Parthian* victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have ſhrewdly ſhaken it at the leaſt; had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that ſervice. Finally, *Horodes* was ſlain by his Son *Phraartes*.

11. *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruell, as the murther of his own father and many of his brethren doth cleerly evidence. Againſt him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an abſolute overthrow; of 16 legions, ſcarce ſix returning home in ſafety. This King ſubmitted himſelf and Kingdome unto *Auguſtus*, reſtoring the *Roman* enſigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Craſſus*. The onely mark of the *Parthians* ſubjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperours of *Rome*; which alſo was of no long continuance.

12. *Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the 3d. whom he ſlew and ſucceeded.

13. *Orodes* II. Son of *Phraartes* the fourth, ſlain in a conſpiracy.

14. *Vonon*,

14. *Vonon*, substituted in the place of *Orodes*, but outed by
15. *Tiridates*, who was also dispossessed of his life and Kingdome by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of Courage, and being offended with the two last Kings, because they either had received the Kingdome, or at least the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperours. Which *Artabanus*, though descended either from a female, or some of the Collatorall line of the former family, yet being not the direct heire thereof, he is looked on as a stranger to the blood of the *Arsacidæ*, the family of *Arsaces* giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which family we have the names of twelve Kings successively reigning: the most considerable of them being *Chosroes*, the 8th. King of this line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Persian* Crown, by *Sapores* the 9th King of the next *Persian* Dynasty. But for those twelve Kings of this house they are these.

The 3d. Dynasty of the Kings of *Persia*, and the 2d. of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanus*.
2 *Bardanes*.
3 *Goteres*.
4 *Vonones*.
5 *Vologeses*.
6 *Artabanus* II.
7 *Pacorus*.
8 *Chosroes*.
9 *Parmaspates*.
10 *Vologeses* II.
11 *Vologeses* III.
12 *Artabanus* III. the last King of this new race of the *Parthians*, whose overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the first *Persian* King of the 4th. *Dynasty*, occasioned the translation of the Diadem to the naturall *Persians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* families, for the space of 470 years. Which Translation, as it was wrought by the unresistable power of God, who onely hath the disposing of Crowns and Scepters; so in the way of second causes it may be principally referred to the barbarous massacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor. Who having negociated a mariage with the daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to solemnize the nuptials; was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicest of his Souldiers, and other Subjects, in Triumphall Ornaments. Which honourable train was no sooner come neer his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers, (on a watch-word given) to put them all to the sword, the King himself hardly escaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* succeeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* set upon him to revenge that slaughter. But understanding after a long fight of three daies continuance, that *Macrinus* had slain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him: but were so weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation, the Regall power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian* (his name perhaps suggesting some high thoughts unto him) did so well husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the royal seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easilly effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining a cruell fight for three dayes together. so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation, when their forces were broken; impossible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory embassie to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman Emperor*, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an enemy, marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his enemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*, the second into *Persia*; the third himself led in the mid-way between both, to succour both as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and hast retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Kingdome, the establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquished, and taken prisoner by *Sapores*, the second King of this race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine* the *Great*, transplanted many of the Colonies and Garrisons of the North-west part of the Empire, into the East; to keep the *Persian* from growing to farre upon the *Roman* Provinces: and removed also the seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shown the beginning and establishment, the foundation and building of the new Kingdome of the *Persians*: take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, untill they once more lost the soveraignty of their own Nation, and became slaves again, to more barbarous Masters.

The 4th. Dynasty, or race of the *Persian* Kings.

228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
243 2 *Sapores* 31.
272 3 *Ormisdates* 1.
275 4 *Vararanes* 3.
278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
294 6 *Vararanes* III.
294 7 *Narses* 7.
302 8 *Misdates* 7.
310 9 *Sapor* II. 70.
380 10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.
391 11 *Sapores* III. 5.
396 12 *Varanes* IV. 10.
406 13 *Isdigertes* 21.
427 14 *Vararanes* IV. 20.
447 15 *Vararanes* V. 17.
464 16 *Perozes* 20.
484 17 *Valens* 4.
488 18 *Cabades*, dispossessed by

499 19 *Lambaſes* 4.
503 20 *Cabades*, again reſtored.
533 21 *Coſroes Magnus* 48.
581 22 *Hormiſda* 8.
589 23 *Coſroes* II. 39.
628 24 *Siroes* 1.
629 25 *Adhefir.*
26 *Sarbatus.*
27 *Barnarius.*
630 28 *Hormiſda* II. the 28. and laſt King

of the race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynaſty*: of whom beſides the two firſt Kings, whoſe Acts are ſpoken of before, the moſt remarkable were, 1. *Vararanes* the ſecond, in whoſe time *Carus* the Emperour paſſing over *Euphrates*, and laying ſieige to *Cteſiphon*, was there ſlain by a thunderbolt. 2. *Narſes*, the ſon of *Vararanes*, who firſt diſcomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæſars*, in the Empire of *Diocletian*, and totally ruined his *Army*: for which *Galerius* being forced to lacquey it by the Emperors Chariot in his purple Robes, was ſo highly ſhamed; that to recover his credit he ſet upon *Narſes* once again, routed him, and took Priſoners his wives and children. 3. *Sapores* the ſecond, the Son of *Miſdates*, who began his reign before his birth. For his Father dying without iſſue, left his wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having ſignified by their art to be a male, the *Perſian* Princes cauſed the Crown and Royall Ornaments to be ſet upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puiſſant Prince he proved; holding continuall war with *Conſtantine*, and his Succeſſours, till the death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the beſt part of *Meſopotamia*: but withall a great Perſecuter of the *Chriſtians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are ſaid to have ſuffered in time. 4. *Isdigertes*, a Prince ſo eſteemed of by *Arcadius* the Eaſtern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodoſius*: which truſt he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Chriſtians* in his own dominions. 5. *Cabades*, firſt outed of his Kingdome by *Zamaſpes*, and reſtored again, was the firſt *Perſian* King who permitted the free exerciſe of the *Chriſtian* Religion. He ſlew *Zeliobes* a King of the *Hunnes* comming to his aid againſt the *Romans*, becauſe he had before promiſed to aſſiſt the Emperour; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his eſtate. 6. *Coſroes* the Son of *Cabades*, ſurnamed the *Great*, a Conſtant enemie of the *Romans*; from whom he conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and ſacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the war brought home to his own doors, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperour, and his own Countries in a flame; he took ſuch thought of it, that he died of a feaver. 7. *Coſroes* the ſecond, as great an enemie to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf; moſt of it recovered by *Heraclius*: in deſpight of whom he cauſed all the *Chriſtians* in his Kingdome to turn *Neſtorians*. 8. *Hormiſda* the ſecond, the laſt of this *Dynaſty*, who being firſt weakned by Civill and Domeſtick diſſenſions, was vanquiſhed by *Haumar* and his *Saracens*, *Anno* 634. burying ſo the glory of this renowned Nation, in the grave of oblivion, or at leaſt ſubjection.

The *Saracenicall Caliphs*, having added this Kingdome to their huge Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*: not one Supreme for the whole Kingdome, but ſeverall Governours or *Sultans*, for each ſeveral Province: called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Mauzenabar*, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themſelves, and warring upon one another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which buſtles it ſo hapned, that *Mahomet*, the Sultan of *Perſia* (ſo called becauſe he was the chief in command and power) picking a quarrell with his neighbour the *Sultan* of *Babylon*, (*Piſaſiris* he is called in ſome *Chriſtian* writers, by whom taken or miſtaken for the *Caliph* himſelf) made war upon him. But finding him countenanced and ſupported by the power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then poſſeſſed of ſome part of *Armenia Major*, to come in to his aid: by whoſe means he overthrew the *Caliphs* forces, and might have got the Soveraignty of *Perſia* unto himſelf; if he had uſed his victory and his friends, with any tolerable diſcretion. But denying to pay theſe *Turks* their wages, and ſend them home, he occaſioned them to make head againſt him, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix* their principall leader; to whom being once in armes, ſeverall diſcontented perſons of the naturall *Perſians*, did unite themſelves. Encouraged with which additions, and being furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, and other neceſſaries, by the ſpoil of the Countrey; they give battell to the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having vanquiſhed and ſlain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint conſent of both Armies is made King of *Perſia*; the Founder of

The fift Dynaſty, or the *Turkiſh* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1030. 1. *Tangrolipix*, of whom ſufficiently before.
2. *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cutlu Muſes*, his neer Kinſman, was ſent with great forces againſt the *Chriſtians*; whom he diſpoſſeſſed of a great part of *Aſia Minor*.
3. *Balak*, Sultan of *Perſia*, in the beginning of the wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*; againſt whom he is reported to have ſent his forces. Of whoſe Succeſſors I find nothing till the time of
1198. 4. *Caſſanes*, the laſt King or *Sultan* of the *Turks*, vanquiſhed in the year 1202 by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axan*, or his next Succeſſor, the *Turks* loſt the Soveraignty of *Perſia*, though they kept the poſſeſſion of ſome parts of it; the Soveraignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was ſo held by both, till the *Tartars* diſpoſſeſſed the one, and deſtroyed the whole progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Benjamin Tudelenſis*, a learned Jew, which had travelled moſt part of the Eaſt; to whoſe judgement herein I ſubſcribe, as moſt ſound and rationall.

The

The Sixt *Dynasty*, or the *Tartarian* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1260. 1. *Haalon*, or *Ulah-Kubkan*, by *Occata* the great *Cham*, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole race of the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*.
1266. 2. *Habkakaihon*, the Son of *Haalon*.
1282. 3. *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton* called *Tangador*, who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*; the brother of *Habkakaihon*.
1284. 4. *Argon-Khon*, the eldst Son of *Habkakaihon*.
1292. 5. *Geniotukhon*, brother of *Argon-Khon*.
1295. 6. *Badukhan*, the Unkle of the last, of which three there is little memorable.
1296. 7. *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial seat.
1305. 8. *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the brother of *Gazun*.
1317. 9. *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyaptu* the last of the race of *Haalon*, that reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, *Anno* 1337. (being the 736. of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the severall parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that part or Province, which he was possessed of. And amongst them *Gempsas* the Sultan or Soldan of *Parthia*, (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining: made on that ground by some of our Christian writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Countrey) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the comming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind driving all before him, composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance, so the course of business and the successe of actions may instruct us also, that a Kingdome forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor; but that the fury of the war once past; it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easie passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the conquests and successes of *Tamerlane*, whose issue quickly lost this Kingdome, and almost all the rest of his other purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successours in the Realm of *Persia*: this Kingdome did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Soveraign Kings, as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the house of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynasty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous successes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia* (and well enough content with that): such as they were, we find them in this order following.

1405. 10. *Mirza Charok*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded by his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.
1447. 11. *Oleghbeg*, Son of *Mirza Charok*, vanquished and slain by his owne Son.
1450. 12. *Abdalatife*; slain not long after by his own Souldiers.
1451. 13. *Abdula*, the Son of *Oleghbegh*, and brother of *Abdalatife*, vanquished by
1453. 14. *Abusaid* II. descended from *Moroncha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdula*.
1461. 15. *Zeuzes*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others *Malaonchres*, discomfited and slain in battel by *Ussan-Cassanes*, *Anno* 1472. which was about 70. years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The seventh *Dynasty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1472. 1. *Ussan-Cassanes*, by some calld *Asymbeius*, by others more truely *Ozem-Azembec*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Bajazet* the first, and restored by *Tamerlane*, Encroaching on his neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zeuzes* last *Persian* King; with whom encountring in a pitched field he overcame him, and got that Kingdome by the victory.
1478. 2. *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne; and repulsed the *Mamalucks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, which they had invaded: He was after poisoned by his wife.
1490. 3. *Julaver*, a Kinsman of *Jacubs*, succeeded him in the estate, which he held only three years, and then left it to
1493. 4. *Baisinger*, a Prince of the same blood; who living in adultery with the wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his death. 2.
1495. 5. *Rustan*, assaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* faction, who then began to be of power.
1498. 6. *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the last King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* race; first vanquished *Secaider* at the battel of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and

and ſlain by *Hyſmael* the ſon of *Aider*; upon the quarrel and occaſion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impoſtor and firſt Emperour of the *Saracens*, by his laſt Will and Teſtament, bequeathed the ſucceſſion unto that Eſtate, to *Hali* his neer Kinſman, and Husband of *Fatime*, his Eldeſt Daughter. But *Abubezar*, *Haumar*, and *Oſmen*, three powerfull men, and the Chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, ſucceſſively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, ſupplanted firſt, and afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Muhavias*, a great man of war, who ſucceeded in it; and to ſecure himſelf therein, ſlew *Haſem* or *Oſſan*, the ſon of *Hali*, and eleven of the ſons of that *Oſſan*; the tweli called *Muſa Ceredine*, eſcaping with life. From him deſcended lineally one *Guiene*, the Lord of *Ardoville* in *Media*; who conſidering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the eſtabliſhing of that high honour in his own family, as the right Heirs to it. A man of ſo great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conqueſt of *Perſia*, thought it no diſhonour to his greatneſs, to beſtow a friendly viſit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his ſon, called *Aider*, who afterwards for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word ſo ſignifying in that language: who alſo proved of ſuch eſteem and power with all ſorts of men, that *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, the firſt King of the *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* race, thought fit to make him Husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the ſon of *Uſſan*, and ſome of his Succeſſors, ſeeing him grow unto ſuch power and eſtimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depreſs him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the Caſe then ſtood, practiſed to add unto his party under the popular pretence, of reforming things that were amiſs in their Religion; and grew ſo powerfull in the end, that he gave battel unto *Ruſtan* and *Alamat*, the two laſt Kings of the former race. But *Alamat* having got the victory, cauſed him to be ſlain; and delivered *Hyſmael* and *Solyman* his two ſons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual priſon. But *Amazar* a man of a more ingenuous diſpoſition, afforded them not only liberty, but alſo good education: inſomuch that *Hyſmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and ſlain King *Alamat*, and his ſon *Elvan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King, or *Shaugh* of *Perſia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himſelf the true Succeſſors of *Mahomet*; but condemning *Abubezer*, *Haumar*, and *Oſmen*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schiſmaticks*.

Hence proceeded the divers Wars, which to the *Perſians* loſs, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Perſians* burning whatſoever book or Monument they finde concerning thoſe three; and the *Turks* holding it more meritous to kill one *Perſian*, than ſeventy Chriſtians. *Surius* in his Commentaries, writing purpoſely of the Acts of *Hyſmael*, ſaith, that the Jews on ſome fond conceit, were perſwaded that he was the *Meſſiah*, they had ſo long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eigth *Dynaſty*, or *Sophian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1505. 1. *Hyſmael Sophi*, the founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the firſt, in the *Calderan* fields. 20.

1525. 2. *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyſmael*, vanquiſhed by *Soiyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countreys of *Chaldæa*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with ſome part of *Media*. 53.

1578. 3. *Aider*, the ſecond ſon of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, impriſoning his elder brother; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Siſter, having reigned only 15 dys.

4. *Hyſmael* II. eldeſt ſon of *Tamas*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne; but murdered with the privity of his Siſter alſo, who found him of too rough a nature for her to govern; having reigned neer two years.

1579. 5. *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced unto the throne by his Siſters faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his firſt entrance cauſed her to be beheaded for the former murders. During his time, not fully ſetled in the State, *Amurath* the 3d. by his Lieutenants won from him almoſt all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.

1585. 6. *Abas*, the ſecond ſon of *Mahomet*, having treacherouſly practiſed the death of *Mirze*, his elder brother, ſucceeded his Father, recovered almoſt all which the *Turks* had gained. and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candahor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of *Perſia*.

7. *Soffie*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his ſon *Mirza*, (whoſe eyes he cauſed to be put out on a falſe ſuſpition) at the age of fifteen years ſucceeded: committed by his Grand-father during his minority to the protection of *Emangoly*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shyras*. A Prince, who ſince he came to age, hath had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in the time of *Abas*.

The Government of theſe *Perſian* Kings, though it be *deſpotical* and ſevere, hath a great deal leſs of the *Tyrant* in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: theſe cheriſhing their Brethren, maintaining

maintaining *Nobility* amongſt them, and encouraging induſtry; which makes them to be better ſerved than the *Turks* or *Tartars*, to both whom they are farre inferiour both in power and treaſure. Their Officers of State, and men of principall imployment, for the moſt part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the Eaſt): ſuch Perſons being thought moſt truſty, becauſe abſtracted from the obligations of wife and children, they ſtudy more the Princes ſervice than their own advantages. Their forces conſiſt moſt of *Horſe*, to which they are inclined more generally, than to ſerve on foot; and yet the greateſt body of horſe which they have brought at any time into the field, came not to above 30000; but thoſe well furniſhed and appointed, maintained on *Lordſhips* and Eſtates after the manner of the *Turkiſh Timariots*. The *Foot-Souldiers* of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very ſeldome ſtand their ground, that defect being for the moſt part ſupplied by *Mercinaries*. The inconvenience of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he ſerved himſelf of children bought of *Chriſtian* Parents, neer the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian Sultans* had their *Mamalucks*) whom they call by the name of *Cozel-Baſſas*, or *Red-caps*, ſo named from the colour of their *Turbans*: trained up by them in their Religion, and warlike Diſcipline, as the *Turks*, their *Janizaries*; yet farre inferiour to the *Turks*, againſt whom if they have prevailed ſince the time of *Abas*, they may aſcribe the greateſt part of their good fortune to thoſe diviſions and *Rebellions*, which in theſe late times have been frequent in the *Turkiſh* Empire. And as for their *Sea-forces*, they are inconſiderable. For though they have a large Sea-coaſt both on the *Perſian* Bay, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean; yet are they very poor in ſhipping: ſuffering the *Moſcovite* to ingroſs the trade of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the *Southern* Ocean; as formerly that alſo of the *Perſian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The *Reveneus* of this Kingdome in the time of *Hyſmael* the firſt *Sopby*, were exceeding great: inſomuch that *Tamas* his Succeſſor, to ingratiate himſelf with all ſorts of people, releaſed them of all kinds of *Cuſtomes* impoſed on *Merchandiſe*, either imported or exported. And this they ſay amounted to the ſumme af 900000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a million and 800000 Crowns of annuall income. Which notwithſtanding, his *Revenue* was computed at four or five millions of Crowns yearly; raiſed out of *Domain* lands, the *tenth* of fruits, the profit of *mines*, and the *fine* payed by every ſubject when he ſets up ſhop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be ſufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the preſent his *Revenues* alſo. Since that they have been much empaired by the Conqueſts made upon them by the *Turks*; who had got from them ſo much land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*, and yielded to the grand *Signeur* one millon of yearly income: whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And ſo much for *Perſia*.

OF

OF

TARTARIA.

TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the *Orientall* Ocean, and the streights of *Anian* (if such streights there be), by which parted from *America*; on the West, with *Russia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean: and on the South, with part of *China*, from which separated by a mighty wall; the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Persian* Provinces; the *Caspian* Sea, which separates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucasian* Mountains interposing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puisant and mighty people now possessed hereof; the reason of whose name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the antients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*: extending it self the whole length of *Asia* from the River *Tanais*, to the *Eastern* Ocean; taking in *Taurica Chersonesus*, and some other parts of *Europe* also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkish* Empire, but of less fertility and accompt.

In measuring by the way of degrees, it reacheth from the 50. degree of *Longitude*, to the 195. which is 145. degrees from West to East: and from the 40th. degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 80th. which is with ten degrees of the *Pole* it self. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the fixt *Clime*, where the longest day in summer is 15 hours; till they cease measuring by *Climates*; the longest day in the most Northren parts hereof, being full six moneths; and in the winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Countrey lying under such different *Meridians*, and such distant *Climes*, must needs be such, as no generall *Character* can be given of it; and therefore we shall deferre that, with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the description of the several and particular Provinces. But for the people, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly Countenances; swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps farre enough off) as their naturall sluttishness. Barbarous every where in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call *Asiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withall very strong of body, swift of footmanship, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women suitable to the men, scorning or wanting ornaments to set themselves out; or when they do, they seldom go beyond copper, feathers, or such precious *gew-gawes*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of revenge; first letting out their blood which they receive into *Cups*, and use it as wine unto their feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on *Oxen*; about whose necks, as about their horses, when they travell, they use little bells, with which *musick* they are much delighted. Their *speech*, even in their common talk, is a kind of *whinning*; and their singing little better than the *howling* of wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the durt and grease about their fingers serving as a sawce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink use mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the coursest stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go to the charge of furrs, contrary to the custome of other people, they wear the hairy side outwards, and the skin next their own bodies; onely to shew the richnes of their Apparell. And yet so proud in this beggery, that they account the *Christians* but as dogs, contemn all the rest of the world, and think their *Cham* the onely considerable Prince; by whose name they *swear*, as by their Gods.

In matter of *Religion* it is hard to say, whether *Mahometanism*, or *Paganism*, be of most extent. some parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, some wholly *Mahometan*, and some mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the *elder* house, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of *Christianity*, of which there are amongst them many severall *Churches*. The *Christian* faith first planted amongst the *Scythians*, by the preaching of Saint *Andrew*, and Saint *Philip*, two of the Apostles. Overgrown in these later Ages by the Sect of *Nestorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to instruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, besides the *Circassian* Christians of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdomes of that *Religion*; as namely

that

that of *Tenduch*, then the chief of all: besides some numbers of them in *Tanguth*, *Cauchinteles*, *Cassar*, *Samarchan*, *Karthim*, *Suchair*, *Ergimul*, and *Caraiam*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who surveyed these parts about the year 127 they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not so diminished since the conquest of those Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cathay* it self: where they are said to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambalu* (the principall City of that Empire) and he so honoured by the Great *Cham*, that for a time they receive their Crowns from no hands but his. *Tartaria Precopensis.*

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanasser* led away captive; and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tatari*, by which name (saith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* tongues, a *Remnant*. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* and תרתר signifie a remnant, yet can it not properly be applyed to the *Tartars*; who so infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof thereof, that this people use *circumcision*, the character of the *Jewish* Nation. And hereunto it is replyed, that *circumcision* was common to many people, besides the *Jews*, as to the *Ægyptians*, *Æthiopians*, *&c.* and that rather as a national custome, than a religious ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *circumcision*, before they received *Mahometanism*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this opinion, a place of *Esdras*, cap. 13. lib. 2. where it is said, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep Gods Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Countrey called *Arsareth*. To resell which, those of the contrary opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it: For the *Tartars* (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewish* religion: and so the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep Gods Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Assyria*, and those places, to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the *Israelites*: and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And Thirdly, it is very improbable, that the *Ten Tribes*, should either be so simple, as to leave *Assyria*, where they were peaceably setled; or so valiant, as to force a passage thorough those Countries of *Scythia*; which neither *Persians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans* were able to withstand in the best of their fortunes,

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a forein Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tenduch*, unto whom they were subject; armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable victory, and setled *Cingis* their chief Captain, in the Royall Throne. Anno 1162. After which, growing of more power, and inlarging their dominions further; they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations: as *Mahomet* did those of the three *Arabia's*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many severall *Tribes* of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many great and signall victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth, it decaied as suddenly; the greatest part of their *European* purchases, being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Moscovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*; as their acquests in *Asia*, and *Africk*, by the *Turks*, and *Persians*. Yet still they are possessed of so large a territory, that were they not distracted into severall States; or did those severall states depend upon one *Supreme*: that one *Supreme* might very easily give law unto all his Neighbours; and make the *Turks*, and *Persians*, tributaries, as in former times. But laying aside these speculations, of what they might do if united under one command: let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1. *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2. *Asiatica*, 3 *Antiqua*, 4. *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. *TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.*

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East, with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the West, with the River *Borysthenes*, now called *Nerper*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with part of *Russia*; and on the South, with some part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the name of *Precopensis*, from *Precopia* a chief Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Minor*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that people: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*; in which their *Cham* or Emperor doth reside most usually. The Countrey by them now possessed, part antiently of *Sarmatia Europæa*, was inhabited by a warlike nation called the *Tauri*: from whom those parts hereof which lie betwixt the Empire of *Russia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Borysthenes*, were called *Tauro-Scythia*; that which shooteth out into the Sea, encompassed with the *Euxine* on the one side, and *Palus Mæotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Chersonesus*. In the description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with some part of *Asia*, to lay together the estate of the *Russian* Empire: so now to satisfie for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the discourse and affairs of *Tartary*,

The whole Countrey plentiful of fruits, and the soyl indifferently disposed to tillage and grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their heards of cattel, than in the fullness of their *Garners*. Camels, Horse, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great store of delicate

Precopenſis. licate fowl, and abundance of fiſh, bred in the large *Fens* of *Mœotis:* and in their Foreſts plenty of all ſorts of *Veniſon.* Which *Character* as it belongeth generally to all the Country, ſo moſt eſpecially to the *Cherſoneſe* or Demy-Iland. United to the main land with ſo narrow an *Iſthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow: from whence ſome ſay they had the name of *Precopenſes*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* tongue, ſignifying a deep trench, or a digging thorow. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Bleſt with a very temperate Air, and a gentle winter: which beginning with the laſt of *December*, ends the firſt of *March.* Never extream, and when the froſts are at the ſharpeſt, but of ſhort continuance. Divided in the midſt with a chain of hills, extended from the Eaſt to Weſt; the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar.*

The people of the ſame complexion and compoſition, as the reſt of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their diet, Roots, Cheeſe, Garlick, and of the poorer ſort, for the moſt part horſe-fleſh (none but the better ſort preſuming upon Beef or Veniſon, though of both abundance) which they eat without bread or any thing elſe: and therefore when they go to the wars, every Souldier takes two horſes with him, the one to ſerve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of horſefleſh, there are few years in which they ſell not 40 or 50 thouſand in the fairs of *Moſco.* Towns they build none, ſcarce willing to maintain thoſe which were built to their hands. Nor have they (except men of trades and *manufactures*) any ſtanding houſes; removing up and down with their Droves of Cattel, moving their houſes with them, (which they build on wheels) from one place to another. Of money they make no eſteem, preferring braſs and ſteel before other mettals; becauſe more uſefull to them for Swords and Knives. Good Souldiers for the moſt part, eſpecially at the *Bow* and *Arrows*; to which ſo accuſtomed from their child-hood, that they can ſhoot as readily backward as forward. Trained alſo of late times, to the *Harquebuſe*, well skilled in handling the *Turkiſh Scymetars*, and their horſemens ſtaves. Not to be vanquiſhed but by death, as men that are reſolved rather to die than be taken *Priſoners*: and if victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (eſpecially young Boys and Girls, whom they ſell to the *Turks*) than upon any other Booty or ſpoils of war.

The *Religion* moſt embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, mingled with ſome of their old Principles of *Chriſtianity*: for they confeſs that CHRIST ſhall be the *Judge both of the quick and dead*, in the day of Judgement; and puniſh thoſe that ſpeak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Chriſtians*, than other *Mahometans*; which makes great ſtore of *Grecian*, and *Armenian* Chriſtians to dwell amongſt them. The language which they ſpeak is their own *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick*, and *Turkiſh* Tongues; and when they write, they uſe either *Chaldæan*, or *Arabian* Characters.

Rivers of moſt note in it, are 1. *Boryſthenes*, and 2. *Tanais*, which though they have their ſpring-heads in the Empire of *Ruſſia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the firſt in the *Euxine* Sea, in the 57th. the other into *Palus Mœotis* in the 67th. degree of *Longitude*; by which we may conjecture ſomewhat of the length of the Countrey. 3. *Hipanes*, 4. *Carcinitis*, falling into the *Euxine*, 5. *Agaris*, and 6 *Byces*, which loſe themſelves in the Fens of *Mœotis*; As do alſo 7. *Paſtaſcus*, 8. *Gerus*, 9. *Lycus*, from the main land, and 10. *Iſtrianus* from the *Taurican Cherſoneſe.* By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling from the *Aſian* ſide, the Lake or Fens of *Mœotis* are of great extent, in compaſs at leaſt a thouſand miles; well ſtored with fiſh, and ſtill retaining ſomewhat of the ſweetneſs of thoſe many Rivers, which are emptyed into it. So called from the *Mœotæ*, who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof; and giving name to an excellent kind of fiſh which were called *Mœotides* by the Antients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zabahe*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the ſea of *Tanais*; and ſometimes alſo *Mer Bianco*, or the *White Sea*, to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reaſons formerly delivered. Paſſing directly towards the South, it is ſtreightned by a narrow Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24. in length, called antiently by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*: *Boſphorus*, becauſe Oxen did uſe to ſwim over it; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who poſſeſſed the adjoyning Countrey, on the *Aſian* ſide: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*; from the City *Capha* neer unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Voſpero*, more neer the Original. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Mœotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine.* According to that of *Lucan.*

Quaque Fretum currens Mœotidas *egerit undas.*
Where the *Mœotick* Pools at laſt
Thorow a narrow Streight makes haſt.

Chief Cities of it at the preſent, 1. *Capha*, or *Caffa*, in the *Cherſoneſe*, not far from the Streight called hence *Stretto di Caffa*; a flouriſhing Empery, and furniſhed with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North ſide of *Conſtantinople*; engroſſed into their own hands the whole Trade of the *Euxine.* Taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, Anno 1475. it became ſubject to the *Turks*, and drew into that thraldom all the Southern parts of the *Cherſoneſe*, which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greateſt part of its former luſtre, the *Chriſtian* Churches being deſtroyed, the Towers and publique buildings razed; the houſes of the *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautifull, deſtroyed and ruined: yet ſtill the principal of this *biand*, or Demy-Iland; and anciently better known by the name of *Theodoſia*, and by that name remembred in *Ammianus.* 2. *Precoph*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*; a Town and Caſtle ſituate in or neer the place, where ſtood the *Eupateria* of the Antients: called alſo *Pompeiopolis*, *Heraclea*, and *Achillis*, *Curſus.* 3. *Corſunum*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Ptolomy*, anciently a *Greek Colony*; and then accompted for the chief of

the

the whole *Peninſula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by reaſon of the Haven which was ſafe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins teſtifie. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari Germanum*, or the *yellow Tower*, the ſoyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *Cremam*, or *Crim*, the antient Seat of the *Chams*, or Princes of theſe *Tartars*; and at that time the faireſt and greateſt of this *Biland*. Situate in the middeſt thereof, and fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle; for the height of the walls, and depth of the ditch eſteemed impregnable: ſuppoſed to be the *Taphræ* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Ptolomy*. Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by ſome *Roman* Emperor, and ſo moſt likely to be *Trajan*; the firſt that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Danubius*, and the *Euxine*. Situate in the very *Iſthmus*; and ſo commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of *Mœotis*; as *Corinth* betwixt the *Ægean*, and *Ionian*. Seas. 5. *Panticapæum*, ſituate on the very *Boſphorus*, and now called *Voſpero* by the natives: the antienteſt City of this *Peninſula*, and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greek* Colonies, which were planted in it. 6. *Tanas*, the *Tanais* of *Ptolomy* and other antients, becauſe ſituate on the mouth of that River; or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, diſtant from one another a degree of *Longitude*. A town of great trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all thoſe Countries, which border on the *Euxine*, Sea: but ſubject to the *Turks* who hath there a Garriſon, and by them called *Azac*. 7. *Ingermenum*, ſituate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Caſtle of ſtone; under which there is a Church, with great charge and Art cut out of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decaied and ruinous. 8. *Jamboli*, by ſome called *Balachium*. 9. *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutum*, 10. *Circum*; all boaſting of their ſeverall Caſtles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*, ſituate neer the influx of the great River *Boryſthenes*, into the Bay of *Carcimitis*; and ſo moſt like to be built in the place of that, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Olbiah*, *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*. Honoured of late times (ſince the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the reſidence of the great *Cham*: from whence theſe *Tartars* are by ſome called *Olſanenſes*. 12. *Metropolis* as *Ptolomy*, or rather *Miletopolis* as *Pliny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Mileſians*, not farre from *Olbia*. Beſides all which, and many others mentioned by the antient Writers, of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the great *Cham* in Summer time makes a moveable City; built upon *Wheel-houſes*, and tranſported from one place to another, as occaſion ſerveth: which houſes at every ſtation are orderly diſpoſed of into Streets, and lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carts. *Precopenſis.*

The antient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* race; for by that name, ſome elder writers call not onely the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both ſides of *Imaus*; but even the *Sauromatæ* or *Sarmatians* alſo: and thoſe not onely of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, bordering next unto them; but even ſuch *Europæan* nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Iſter*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And ſo they are affirmed to be by *Ptolomy* himſelf; though otherwiſe more exact than any, in diſtingniſhing *Sarmatia Europæa*, from *Aſiatica*; and *Aſiatica* from the *Scythians*. For ſpeaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, inhabiting on the *Palus Mœotis*, he ranks them thus. Καὶ πᾶς ὅλως ὁ παρὰ τὴν Μαιώτιδα, &c. *i. e.* And all along the coaſts of *Mœotis*, dwell the *Iazyges* (diſtinct from thoſe called *Metanaſtæ*) and the *Rhoxolani*; and more within the land, the *Hamaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Cherſoneſe* it ſelf, dwell the antient *Tauri*, ſubdivided into the ſeverall Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi*, and *Arinchi*, by the ſaid *Ptolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro Scythi*. To none but theſe, of all the *Europæan Sarmatians* doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been thoſe *Scythians*, againſt whom *Darius* King of *Perſia* made his fruitleſs war. Picking a quarrell with this people, becauſe their King had denied to give him one of his daughters to wife; or to revenge, as others more improbably ſay, the inrode which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Aſia*; he drew together an army of 700. thouſand. Paſſing over the *Thracian Boſphorus*, he came at laſt to the banks of the *Iſter*, where it parteth *Moldavia*, and *Bulgaria*; and there for the paſſage of his men cauſed a bridge to be built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60. knots: commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were united, to return to their houſes. This done he marched towards his enemies, who ſtill fled before him; leading him into the moſt deſert and unhabitable parts of their Countrey: and when they had brought him into a ſtreight, ſent Ambaſſadours to him with a *bird*, a *mouſe*, a *frog*, and an handfull of *Arrows*; willing the *Perſians*, if they could, to expound that *Ridle*. *Darius* willing to hope the beſt of his deſign, conjectured that the *Scythians* did ſubmit unto him; by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, *Hieroglyphically* ſignified in their preſent. But *Gobrias*, one of the *ſeven Princes* made this expoſition, that if the *Perſians* could not flie like a *bird* thorow the air, or like a *mouſe* creep under the earth, or like a *frog* ſwim over the water; they could by no means ſcape the *Perſian* Arrows. And to ſay truth, this *Commentary* beſt agreed with the *Text*. For theſe *Scythians* following cloſe upon him, or rather driving him before them, and vexing him with continuall skirmiſhes; forced him to make ſuch haſt to get over the River, that he loſt 80000 of his men in the fight and flight. This was the onely memorable Action of theſe *Europæan Scythians*, in thoſe elder ages: more memorable in the times ſucceeding, for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is ſaid of theſe *Tauri*, or *Tauro-Scythæ*, that for the pleaſing of their Gods, eſpecially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orſiloche*; they uſed to ſacrifice all ſuch ſtrangers, as they could lay hands on, and with their heads moſt barbarouſly adorned the walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Chriſtian* Advocates of the Primitive times, did much uſe to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the ſacrifices of *Diana Taurica* (ſo named from hence) as inconſiſtent with the nature of a God or goodneſs; moſt rightly giving them this brand or cenſure, that they were not *ſacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præſtat profanus eſſe quam ſic religioſus.* Better it was to be of no Religion, than of one ſo cruel.

But to go forwards with the ſtory, in the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unleſs it were that the Emperour *Trajan* (as *Florus* ſeems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*. Which if he

Deserta.

it he did, he added by that action somewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongst their Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name, of their infesting the *Roman* territories (as the other barbarous Nations did): except they passed in the account of the *Gothes*, *Alani*, *Hunnes*, *Avares*, or other of the *Scythians* or *Sarmatian* people; by which the majesty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with ease effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jocchata*, or *Heccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Batku*, or *Roydo*, one of their most renowned Commanders, subdued all these parts; together with *Russia*, on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungarie* on the East. Subject at first to the command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathaia*, as the rest of the *Tartarians* were, they came at last to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, descended from the aforesaid *Batku*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at last of so great power, by conquering the *Asiatick Tartars* which lay neerest to them, that *Mahomet* the *Great* thought fit to keep them down before grown too strong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then possessed by the *Genoese*, made himself master of the greatest part of the *Taurican Chersonese*; and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mœotis*, and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the first, who had maryed a daughter of this *Crim-Tartar* (for so they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men against his Father; the *Turks* and these *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* should aid the *Turk* upon all occasions, with 60000 horse, if it were required; that they shall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Moscovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they shall pay yearly to the *Grand Signieur* in the way of tribute, 300 Christians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or deposition of his Predecessor, shall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royall Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that estate; that in reward of these services, the *Crim-Tartar* shall have yearly from the *Grand Signieur* 5500 *Ducates*, in the way of pension; and succeed finally in the *Turkish* Empire, if ever the male issue of the house of *Ottoman* should chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, against the *Persians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not; and that with great and puissant Armies; the Great *Cham* sometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an house to attend their cattel); and sometimes adding 50000 *Circassians*, and others of the *Asian Tartars*. And for the *Moscovite*, whom he is left at liberty to assault by this *Capitulation*; he hath had so hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571 they pierced as far as to the City of *Mosco*, and set fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City built most of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compass; within the space of four hours burnt the greatest part of it, and therein no fewer than 800000 of all sorts of people: A quarrel not to be composed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdomes of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, which the *Russe* possesseth; but even to *Moscovie* it self, as hath there been shewn. Nothing so punctuall is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his slave or *Vassall*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a design to intercept *Osman Bassa*, in his way from *Persia* to *Constantinople*; authorised the said *Osman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Counsellers (corrupted with *Turkish* Gold) were strangled with a Bowstring; *Islan* a brother of the *Crims*, first sworn a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish* Empire, if the house of *Ottoman* should fail, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his subjects having little money, and living most upon the bartery of their Cattel. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth from the *Turk*; he hath the *tenth* of all the spoils which are got in the wars, and a *Checkine* for every Captive, for some, two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their estates.

As for his power, what he can do in horse we have seen already; and as for foot, and Ammunition, and other necessaries, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes espouse his quarrels); by whose assistance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Signieur*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori* (whom *Amurath* the 3d. commended to the Crown of *Poland*) sent Ambassadours to negotiate his election to that Kingdome: and to induce them thereunto promised them in his letters amongst other things, that their *Pope* should be his *Pope*, their *Luthur* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Horse-flesh*. His Embassie entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deserved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Precopensis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which last parted by the River *Spane*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from East to West: on the North, with the *Scythick* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Desarts* which are in it; and is called also *Asiatica*, to diffetance it from *Precopensis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole Continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolomy*, except some part hereof incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The

The Countrey of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Mill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receive very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread); neglect all that which is not of a rank pasture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the grass faileth them; which maketh it so full of *Desarts*, and so empty of Towns, as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*. *Deserta.*

The people or Inhabitants of it are of severall sorts; derived from three severall Originalls, and disposed of in three severall parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters. 2. the *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and 3. the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. These again subdivided into severall Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the most considerable are, 1. the *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. the *Zavolhenses*, 3. the *Thumenenses*, 4. the *Kirgessi*; besides the *Hordes* or Kingdomes of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, were described already; and others of inferiour note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak of these people in their severall places, we must first look upon the whole Countrey, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: bounded by *Ptolomy* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it; now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of fourty severall Nations which did then inhabit it; and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principall of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rhombitus* the Greater, and 3. the Less; 4. *Anticus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Psathis*, 7. *Thesyris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Mœotick* Fennes. 10. *Udonis*, 11. *Alnuta*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principall is *Rha*, by the modern *Latines* called *Volga*, by the *Tartars Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it.) Most memorable, besides the seventy mouths or Channels, wherewith it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a *medicinable* and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof; which the Physicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for distinctions sake *Rha Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolomy*, rising out of the lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Ilands (most of them inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the *Northern* Ocean; the present boundary betwixt the *Russian*, and the people in the North of this Countrey.

Principall Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceraunii*, lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known unto my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasus*, or *Caucasii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica*, from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *acumine & latitudine omnium maximi*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightned by the Sunbeams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark-night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place onely, called *Sarmatiæ Pylæ*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasiæ Portæ*, from the hills adjoining. Situate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caspian* Sea: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. So carefull did Almighty God in his heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous people, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfordable Waters, and impassable Mountains: not to be freed out of their prison, till he thought good to use them, as the executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impenitent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now possessed of it in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Precopenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fennes of *Mœotis*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the space of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*: whereas before, they were called by *Pliny*, *Zigæ*, by some writers *Zychi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolomy*.

The Countrey very fitly seated for trade and merchandise, as having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before passing thorow these tracts): and not a few capacious Baies, and commodious Havens. Of which the principall were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Synda*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the wars, than to trades, or *merchandise*. A stout and military people, trained to their weapons from their child-hood; and sold as soon as trained to it by unnaturall Parents. For from these parts did the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt* fetch their first *Originall*; from hence supply themselves with a perpetuall *Seminary* of slaves and Souldiers raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire. And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with thier *Cozzel-Bassas* disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

Deserta.

The *Christian* faith was here planted in the year 860 or thereabouts, by the Ministry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiarill*) and *Methodius*; employed in that service by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In which respect their Churches are of the *Greek* Communion, conform thereto in rites and doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practicall*. For it is ordinary with these half *Christians*, not to baptize their children till eight years old; to hear divine service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldome enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the 40th. or (as some say) the 60th. year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto theft and Robbery, their old Age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance.

Places of most observation amongst the Antients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief people of these parts; of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; situate on a little Hand raised out of the Sea, by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a *Factory*. 3. *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apaturia* (which name she gave unto this place): because (saith *Strabo*) when the Giants assaulted her, she craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4. *Geruſa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*; the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called Saint *Georges*. 5. *Oenuntia*, neer the mouth of the River *Thesyris*. 6. *Araza*, more within the land, which with 7. *Ampsacis*, hath the name of a City also. The name of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these, or any other mentioned by the antient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant, are 1. *Locoppa*, 2. *Conioce*; but of no great note.

The people antiently though divided into the severall Tribes of the *Therſagetæ*, *Zigæ*, *Turcæ*, the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and *Mæotæ*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coaxtræ*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambæ*, *Pselii*, and others as obscure as they; were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several tribes concentred. Descended in the right of that common originall, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, first planted in the mountainous places of *Albania*: his posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whose time it was extant: and others in some tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themselves in these parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people descended of them. From these particularly, as the stout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedegree; so from these and the children of *Mesech*, *Magog*, and *Tubal*; the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Originall: all of them great and puisant Nations, and all involved promiscuously in the name of *Scythians*. Renowed for no other action more than the memorable expedition, which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principall; the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together, as a *Scythian* People. Distressed with want, or to disburden their small Countrey of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulassar*, or *Salmanassar*, King of *Assyria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the course of the *Euxine* Sea, and passing thorow the Contrey of *Colchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their carriages, and the weakest of their train, with sufficient guards; they marched into *Lydia*; reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the royall City, and after of the rest of the Countrey, or the most part of it; *Ardis*, the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both besides being wearied with long war, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons*, and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the business: assigning to the *Cimmerians* all those parts of his dominions, which lay beyond the River *Halys*; and setling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares*, King of the *Medes* invaded the Countrey of these *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invasion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*; *Halyattes* did espouse the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and blood, they became one people; or at least passed not under the accompt of strangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this most notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembred after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petit Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his son *Machares* having married into some of their families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*, by whom subdued, they acknowledged at first the Great *Cham* for their Soveraign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*; but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their neareſt neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnish on command, with 50000 horse for the *Grand Signeurs* service: yet so that they supply the *Persian* with his *Cozzel-Bassas*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Suissers*, by their severall *Commonalties*: yet so, that every *Commonalty* hath some principal man (which the *Suissers* have not) whom they call *Morseys*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the ZAVOLHENSES, one of the greatest

Hords

Hords or *Tribes*, of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crims*, or *Percopenses* were a *Castling* onely; proceeding out of this great *Swarm* or Nest of Hornetts, though afterwards they became their masters. Of the Countrey or the People we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar*, and *Bolgar* differing but little in *Orthographie*, and not much in sound. *Deserta.*

This Countrey, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance; or that he had made any *conquests* there, or from some other Prince of the same name; I determine not. And in this tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being also *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, neer the Banks of *Tanais*; occurring in the same Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander*, in pursuit of the *Scythian* warre, as farre as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his actions, that he never got beyond the River *Taxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in the year 1506. subdued by the *Grim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilius* the *Great Duke* of *Moscovy*, who thereupon assumed the title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town it self; well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they mannage the great trade of the *Caspian* Sea. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a limb of the same body with him; and are subject unto his commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation; they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*. Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruell than the rest: void of all Arts, not having, or contemning money, or the use of Corn. *Horse-flesh* and *Mares Milk*, their best diet; the flesh either rosted by the Sun, or heated by continuall hanging at their sadle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travells to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharayirzik*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Sellisture*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by severall *Morseys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their severall *Clans*: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*; whom they infest with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continuall Garrisons, at *Casan*, *Astrachan*, and *Wiatra*. Their wars for the most part only *prædatorie*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their dominion: and therefore commonly pacifyed, and sent home with presents. The *Great Duke* is so good a Statesman, as to think the expence of money cheaper than that of blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blowes. Their *Morseys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayirzik* was the Chief; to whose direction, and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heselites*, and *Baschurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continuall motion, removing with their wives and families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the sight of the *Pole-star*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentiles*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number: not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a tree, though they stink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetned; before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture, compounded of blood, milk, earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet *confection*, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some presents; for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*, or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the territory of *Viatka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike people, and living neer a dangerous neighbour: for which cause they do not straggle so abroad in petit companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *conjurations*. In which the devill so befools them, that he suffereth them to raise tempests; and sometimes, by *Diabolicall* illusions, to defeat their enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their naturall Lord, the great *Cham* of *Cathay*. And unto these we may adjoin the *Molgomozans*, all *Gentiles*, and the most barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon worms, and mice; and Serpents, and such other Vermine; as would be poison unto any but such *Molgomozans*, who are more poisonous than those creatures.

These *Hords*, together with the Kingdomes of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, and such of the *Russian* Provinces, as lie on the East of *Tanais* and the River *Düina*, make up that Countrey which antiently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: inhabited originally, by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mesech*, *Tubal*,

Zagathay. bal, Magog, the Sons of *Japhet*; ſpreading themſelves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, but of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colches*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimmerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimnitæ*, *Agaritæ*, *Merdi*, *Conapſeni*, *Chænides*, *Baſilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: theſe laſt ſo called from their eating of horſes, which dyet they have left unto their Succeſſours. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they paſſed commonly by that name: and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Aſia* the *Greater*; at ſuch time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Aſia Minor*. For paſſing without oppoſition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been eaſily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Countrey of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were incountred (but victorious,) by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*. Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, aſſayed it by cunning; and firſt perſwaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countryes, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of prey and preſents, they marched towards *Ægypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Pſamniticus* the *Ægyptian* King; who had heard of their comming; and thought it beſt to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his greater coſt. Out-vying the *Median* (as of the two, the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treaſure, and ſo ſent them back again into *Media*; from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that people, and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their tributes, and uſing all kind of inſolencies: till in the end; *Cyaxares*, the Son and Succeſſour of *Phraartes*, acquainting ſome of his moſt faithfull ſubjects with his deſign, cauſed the better part of them to be plentifully feaſted, made them drunk, and ſlew them; recovering thereby the poſſeſſion of his whole eſtate. Afterwards, imitated by the *Engliſh* in their *Hock-tide* ſlaughter. Such of them as eſcaped this blow, and were not willing to be ſubject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were); were ſuffered to return home by the ſame way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their wives and their ſlaves, the ſtory whereof we had when we were in *Ruſſia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the ſtories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unleſs thoſe *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Thaleſtris*, when ſhe beſtowa viſit on *Alexander*, were rather of theſe *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of thoſe of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the neerneſs of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to his opinion. But poſſible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that ſome of theſe *Sarmatian* tribes, though by other names, hearing of the ſucceſſes of the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and other barbarous nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire; might join themſelves unto them, and make up their numbers: thoſe nations being elſe too ſmall to compound ſuch Armies, as by them were brought into the field againſt the *Romans*, with out ſuch like helps. What their eſtate hath been ſince ſubdued by the *Tartars*, hath been ſhewn already.

3. ZAGATHAY.

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen Ocean*; on the Weſt, with *Tartaria Deſerta*, from which ſeparated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Perſia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum*, of the antient writers.

The Countrey ſpreading out ſo far, on all ſides; as before appeareth, comprehendeth all thoſe Provinces and tracts of ground, which antiently were called 1. the Countrey of the *Sacæ*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3. *Zagathay*, ſpecially ſo called, 4. and *Turcheſtan*, included antiently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra incognita*, which *Ptolomy* makes to be the Northern boundarie of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a ſurvey of all which particulars, we ſhall find the temper of the whole.

1. SACÆ, or the Countrey of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the mountain *Imaus*, on the Weſt, with *Sogdiana*; on the North, with *Zagathay*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their name I find not.

The Countrey antiently either barren, or ill manured; full of vaſt Foreſts, wide Deſarts, and the like unhabitable places. Few or no Cities in it, and not many villages (*civitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath it) the people living for the moſt part in Caves, or otherwiſe wandring up and down with their droves of cattel. Called for that reaſon *Nomades* by ſome antient writers. The name not proper to theſe onely, but common to all thoſe who followed the like roving life; as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Libya* and *Numidia* in *Africk*. Onely one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (Λιθινος πυργος, in the *Greek*) or the Caſtle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the moſt part by *Camels*, or travellable onely with thoſe Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was antiently into many Tribes, the *Caratæ*, and *Comari*, neer the River *Jaxartes*; the *Maſſagetæ*, and *Gomedæ*, neer the hills called *Aſcatanas*; the *Bylcæ* and *Grynæi*, more within the Countrey. All joyned in one by the name of *Sacæ*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progreſs into *Armenia* (to which they had an eaſie paſſage by the Northern banks of the *Caſpian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacaſena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there ſlain by the *Perſians* in the middeſt of their Feaſtings, they left there alſo ſome reſemblance of their name, in an annuall feſtivall called *Sacea*; celebrated by the *Perſians*, in memoriall of their good ſucceſs in the warre againſt them. Such as ſtayd here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, did ſo good ſervice to that Prince,

Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Sacæ*, is said to have rescued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwise he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdome, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* warres; who hereabouts, by *Cohortanes* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Bevy of beautifull Ladies; one of the which was that *Barsine* whom he made his wife, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polysperchon* and his faction proclamed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others. Who building *Castles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Originall: as if they were called *Saxons*, *quasi Sac-sonnes*, or the *Sonnes* of *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Sacæ*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it possible, they should force their way thorough those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatias*; who to the last maintained their liberties and estate against the *Romans*. If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Chersoneef*. The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no *Sons* of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelihood they were hath been elsewhere shewn. *Sagdiana.*

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Sacæ*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Countrey, though of themselves a spurre or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Countrey indifferently fruitfull, and very rich in pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1. *Dymus*, and 2. *Araxates*, both navigable, and capable of very good ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing thorough the champain Countrey, empty themselves at last in the lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolomy* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration is, 1. *Drepsa*, the *Metropolis* or mother-City of this people. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus Darapsa*: situate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Maruca*, on the same River also. 4. *Alexandria*, called for distinctions sake, *Alexandria Oxianæ*, which name declareth both the founder and the situation. 5. *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts, or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*; against whose invasions or irruptions it was said to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7. *Cyroschata*, more memorable, and not less antient, than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time: and he himself comming nigher to the walls, than discretion would permit an ordinary Generall, had such a blow on the neck with a stone, that he fell to the ground, his eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain. But reviving he took the Town by a mine, and levell'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydracæ*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cheraſmii*, neer the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jasii*, and *Tachori*, neer the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepsianii* in the East parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whose chief City was *Drepsa*: descended from their severall roots, but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said, at the sollicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it rebelled again. Who being suppressed, and the Countrey in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 300 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise, to shew themselves at the back of the Enemy. Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*, to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back: who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of war-fare is a peece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. *ZAGATHAY* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turchestan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Countrey of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Antients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Antiently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof, since the time of the *Tartars*.

The Countrey reasonably fruitfull, but not so rich in the naturall temper of the soyl, as the industriousness of the people, more civill farre than any other of the *Tartars*; studious of good letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skilled in *manufactures*, and very seldome without the confluence of forein Merchants. Populous, and well-stored with Towns and villages; Both for their own more handsome dwelling, and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Countrey: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2. *Daix*, another River of good note, rising out of the mountain called *Norosus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with whose streams they are dischannelled in the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Jartus*, and 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are

Zagathay. whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many. As viz. 1. *Norosus*, spoken of before. 2. *Aspisii*, on the North of that. 3. *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4. The mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5. Those called *Anarei*, besides 6. *Imaus*, of most name, but common unto *Gathay* as well as to *Zagathay*.

Cities of most observation in it, 1. *Aspabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Ptolomy* to this Countrey, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaspia*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time. Situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caspian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of forrein Countreys, chiefly from *India*, and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, antient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy* (why I know not) amongst the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being slain, with some of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own wife, and his head presented to the Conqueror. Here was it also that *Alexander*, being then Master of the Town, in a drunken fit slew his dear friend *Clytus*; who at the battel of *Granicus* had saved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the seat-Royall of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the spoils and treasures he got in the wars; there being brought hither from *Damascus* only (and by that one instance we may guess at the rest) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choicest moveables. Still the chief Residence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far short of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of such great name as the Regall *Samarchand*; but at this time of greater wealth: situate somewhat in the mid-land, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvous* of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raised against the *Turks*, consisting in the totall of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggest. 6. *Maranis*, from which place the said *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

These *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Countrey, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though subject to him at the first: and have so been ever since the time of *Zaicham* or *Bathu*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* succeeded *Og*, by some called *Zain-Cham*, (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather studied to preserve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fiercer and more warlike nature, made the first proof of his valour and good fortune against the *Moscovite* (for spoyling a City which had put it self under his protection) whom he overthrew with the slaughter of 25000 foot; and 15000 of his horse. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greatet, *Gino Cham*, the great Emperor of the *Tartars* gave him to wife his onely daughter, and therewithall declared him his heir apparent. Incouraged and inabled with this advancement, he first brake down the wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battel, and imposed on him the summe of 300000 Crowns of yearly tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the forces of *China*, he advanced forwards against *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatness of whose growing Empire he began to be jealous. Passing along the left-hand shores of the *Caspian* Sea, and so through *Albania*, and the rest of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at last into *Asia Minor*: where neer the City of *Sebastia*, he encountred with *Bajazet*, vanquished him, slew 200000 of his men, and carried him away captive in an iron Cage. Restoring those Princes dispossessed by *Bajazet* unto their estates, and taking to himself all the *Turkish* Provinces in *Anatolia*; he bestowed a private visit on *Constantinople*: which seen, he marched towards *Syria*, subdued both that Province and the Kingdome of *Egypt*, then possessed by the *Mamalucks*; visited *Hierusalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia*, and *Assyria*. And taking *Persia* in his way, impatronized himself of that Kingdome also; and such parts of *India*, as either lay neer *Persia*, or his own dominions: now made the *Soveraign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdomes in both *Asias*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdome of *Egypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at last to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of strong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them such raies of majesty, that ordinary men could scarce endure to look upon them. His hair long, contrary to the custome of the *Mahometans*, (for the most part shaved on their heads) for which he pretended a descent from *Sampson*. Perfect in the *Arabian* learning, and a lover of all learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheism*, and a great friend to the *Christians*. More fortunate in the conquering of so many Kingdomes, than in laying any sure foundation to maintain his conquest. For by holding his seat Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and other the chief Cities of *Cathay*; he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governours: and by parcelling his estates amongst his Children, and kindred, this mighty flood which had so quickly overflown both *Asias*, returned in very little time within its own proper and originall banks. Even *Zagathay* it self, divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the *Lord in chief*) the most considerable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unsetledness of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Persia*: But instead of recovering that Kingdome into the power of the *Tartars*, he lost some Provinces of his own: *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and some part of *Bactria*, being since subdued by *Abas* the late *Sultan*. Nothing since memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounden on the East, with *Zagathay* specially so called; on the West, with the River *Soane*, parting it from *Deserta*; on the North, with those desarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth under

under the name of *Terra incognita*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from the *Turks*, ſome of which people when they left their firſt Seats near the Fens of *Mœotis*, ſetled in this Country, and here ſtill continue. *Turcheſtan*

The Countrey as deſert and ill planted, as the reſt of *Tartary*, not ſo much out of any defect in the ſoyl it ſelf, as in the humor of the people: who though originally *Turks*, do yet compoſe themſelves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than that place affords them paſturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greateſt treaſure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the fleſh.

Amongſt the Rivers of moſt note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the poſition of it in the 91. degree of longitude, ſeems to be of this Tract. It riſeth out of the mountains called *Montes Rymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2. *Ardock*, not known by that name amongſt the Antients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to ſay. Shaping its courſe towards the North, and weary of ſo cold a clime, and ſuch barbarous people; after a long and ſwift courſe of a thouſand miles, it hideth it ſelf under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loſeth it ſelf for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongſt a people which delight not in ſetled houſes, were a labour loſt: yet ſome I finde aſcribed unto them. The principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*. Then there is 3. *Cruſtina*, ſituate on or neer the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the company of *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Ruſſians* ſailing to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayan Tartars* travelling to it by land. By theſe two nations more peopled, to maintain their traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themſelves, in whoſe land it ſtandeth.

Theſe *Turcomans* are of the poſterity of ſome of thoſe *Turcæ*, who wanting room, or otherwiſe oppreſſed with want; forſook their ancient dwelling neer the Fens of *Mœotis*, and the coaſts of the *Euxine* Sea, to ſeek new ſeats, *Anno* 844. That their whole body ſetled here, and from hence made their conqueſt of *Perſia*, as ſome very induſtrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the Sultan of *Perſia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix* and thoſe Mercinary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the victory; and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his ſervice: it is ſaid he ſhut up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The ſhutting up of which River, and fortifying againſt them all the paſſages and bridges of it, had not ſerved his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place: for then he muſt have manned againſt them the River *Oxus*, and ſuch as lay betwixt them and him in the common rode. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Volga*, would undertake the foarding of that dangerous and violent Water; and force themſelves a way thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers, than 3000. men, which was the whole ſtrength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted, but that they came firſt into *Perſia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turcheſtan*: and probable enough, that when they firſt left their own abode, and came unto the Northweſt ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea, they might there divide themſelves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and paſſing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and thoſe parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The reſidue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and croſſing the *Volga*, where they found the paſſage moſt eaſie for them, ſetled themſelves in theſe parts of *Scythia* which they found leſs peopled, now from them named *Turcheſtan*. Some of which hearing of the good ſucceſs of their Country-men in the Conqueſt of *Perſia*, might afterwards joyn with them to aſſure that purchaſe. Governed ſince their firſt coming hither, by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them tributaries, and vaſſals to the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently paſſed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accompted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*; hath on the South, *Turcheſtan*, and part of *Zagathay*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and bounded on the Weſt, with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samoyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black haired, naturally *beardleſs*, and not to be diſcerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer*-skins, or *Seil*-skins, with the hairy ſide outwards; (nothing more wiſe in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of houſe or dwelling; the Leader of each company their Prieſt, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their Removes is to offer ſacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and moſt of them *Witches*, eſpecially ſuch as live moſt towards the Eaſt, and furtheſt off from the *Moſcovite*, who many times deſtroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith thoſe Idols are ſet forth to the publick view; but beſtow on them greater heats in a good Fire; into which they commonly uſe to caſt them.

Theſe *Zagathayan* Provinces, with thoſe of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before deſcribed, made that part of *Scythia*, which antiently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Perſia*; this *Scythia* was reſtrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended onely *Turcheſtan* and the *Speciall Zagathay*. Inhabited, beſides the ſeverall Nations dwelling in the four *Perſian* Provinces, by many fierce and ſavage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanoeſi*, *Saubeni*, and *Maſſei*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectoſages*, and *Aſiotæ*, neer the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxartæ* on the banks of the River ſo called; and the *Mologeni*, not far off; the *Zaratæ*, and *Saſones*, neer the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galactophagi*, or milk-

Scythia. milk-eaters, more towards the East; the *Taporæi*, and the *Sychi*, by the hills so named; and many others not material to be here remembred. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom first subdued.

And now we are at last come to *Scythia*, truely so named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Asiatica* being called so onely by way of participation and resemblance; because the inhabitants thereof had so much in them of the manners and conditions of these naturall *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to speak some-thing of them, their name, Antiquity, disposition, customes, and the most memorable actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of story.

First, for the name, the *Græcian* Fablers have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monster, half woman, half Viper. The *Gramarians* ἀπὸ τῆ σκύζης signifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is said of the *Jewish Puritans*, who *fasted to be seen of men* σκυθρωποὶ ἀφανίζουσι that they looked with a sower, severe, and a disfigured Countenance. *Goropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, signifying to shoot: agreeable enough to the custome and exercise of the *Scythians*; who are observed by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the antient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* signifieth the same in the antient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the tongue of the *Scythians*, will not so easily appear.

Letting that pass therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of these *Scythian* Nations: and we shall find it to be great, if not greatest of all. *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*, That the *Scythians* were of all others, the most antient people, was received for an *Oracle*, in the elder ages of the world: and so resolved by way of verdict, when the great controversie touching the *Antiquity* of those Nations, was to be determited, betwixt the *Ægyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath passed with such a generall approbation, that it is, not now to be disputed. In which regard I am so far of the judgement of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countreys lying on the North of Mount *Caucasus* (on which the *Ark* is thought most probably to have rested) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the West, or set themselves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had else no doubt heard somewhat amongst or Antiquaries, of the setling of some of those *Adventurers* in these Northern Regions; when giving off that enterprise, and falling upon new plantations, they either went themselves, or sent forth their *Colonies*, into all places of the world. But of any such plantations, *nec gry quidem*, not one word say they. Nor can it probably be supposed, that *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria* could have raised 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though some of the adjoining Provinces were took into the reckoning) in those early daies, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the great *Assyrian*; had the *Bactrians*, and the rest of these *Scythian* nations, been but a *Castling* as it were of some second swarm, and not *coævall* with the first. But besides these presumptions we have other proofs: viz. an old and constant tradition on this side the Mountains, that the great *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of *Noahs* planting; and 2. the affirmation of *Porcius Cato*, (though one of the writers of Frier *Annius*) *in Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in these parts of *Scythia*, so called from *Sabatius Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whose Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of strong presumption, if not demonstrably concludent, that these People were of the first plantation which was made after the flood; before the rest of the world was peopled by the *Confusion* of *Languages*: *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*, could not else hold good.

As for their dispositions, and naturall inclinations, they are said by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Justine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aspera*, "A Nation patient of labours, and fierce in war; of bodily "strength immense and vast; yet so much masters of their affections, that they made no further use of their "greatest victories, than the augmentation of their fame. Theft they esteemed the greatest crime, and "that they punished so severely, that their Flocks and Herds might and did safely wander from one place "to another, without fear of stealing. In them they placed their greatest wealth, feeding themselves "with the milk thereof, and making their rayment of the skinns. Silver and gold they contemned as "much as it was coveted by others; there being no desire of riches, where there was no use. *Meum*, and "*Tuum*, those common *Barretours*, and authors of debate amongst other men, were not known amongst "them: and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any inclosures, not troubled themselves with the "care of building. But puttting their wives and children upon wains, or wagons, covered with hides "against the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer staying upon one, than they "found grass and herbage to sustain their Cattel. So just in all their actions, that they needed not the "restraint of lawes; and had attained to such an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. "In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of learning and "Philosophy, was to these so naturall: that the ignorance of vice did as much contribute to their wel-"fare, as the knowledge of vertue. Such are the antient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world who had wealth at will, should make war upon them; amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conquerour. Yet either on desire of glory, or to adde unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch: who quarrelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Massagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her Son *Spargapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a second battail obtained the victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a boul of blood, with this scornfull taunts *Satia te sanguine quem sitiisti*, now drink thy fill of blood which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some *Elephants*, which came from *India* to her aid, and himself dangerously wounded; the

the *Scythians* had won the victory, but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacons*, (who of a conquered Enemy was become his Confederate:) by whom he was reſcued, and by the 20000 freſh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day; though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are ſaid to begin the war, as loth to be behind hand with him; arming themſelves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, ſo neer their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulſed, and wiſe enough to ſuffer what they could not hinder, they ſued for peace, and had it granted; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*, a matter of more conſequence than theſe *Scythian* brables. With *Alexanders* Succeſſors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Perſian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race: the *Parthians* being their *Allies*, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well obſerved by the *Hiſtorian*, *Romanorum arma audivere magis quam ſenſere*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it: Remaining undiſturbed in their honeſt poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obſcure and beggerly people brake out of their *Priſon*, and carryed the whole World before them. *Cathay.*

As for their Kings, I finde ſome of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be ſuppoſed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the ſame place, or over the ſame Nations, or that they ſucceeded one another. Howſoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this liſt of

The Kings of *Scythia*.

1. *Scythes.*
2. *Napis.*
3. *Phitra.*
4. *Sagillus.*
5. *Targitana.*
6. *Plinus.*
7. *Scholypethus.*
8. *Panaxagora.*
9. *Tanais.*
10. *Indathyrſus.*
11. *Saulius.*
12. *Spargapiſis.*
13. *Tomyris.*
14. *Aripethes.*
15. *Seiles.*
16. *Octimaſdes.*
17. *Lanthinus*, the laſt of all thoſe *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the government of theſe warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not ſay that ever any one King did command the whole people generally; each *Tribe* or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for thoſe Kings, if ſuch Kings there were (as for ſome of them I durſt venture to ſwear the contrary) they muſt be ſuch as in their ſeveral Countries were of greateſt fame, moſt taken notice of in the world, or imployed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces; and ſo conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation: as *Caſſibeline*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by ſome writers ſaid to be the King of the *Britains*; becauſe he had the conduct of their forces againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus*; on the Eaſt, with the *Oriental* Sea, and ſome part of *China*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South, with part of *India*. So called from the *Propper* or *ſpecial Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2. *Altay*, 3. the Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*.

1. *CATHAY.* more properly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *China*; on the weſt with the mountain *Imaus* by which parted from *Zagathay*; on the North with *Altay*; and on the South with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chatæ* an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Seres*, and the reſt of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Cuſtom of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be meaſured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*; who placeth *Auzacia*, the moſt Weſtern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *longitude* of 144. degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and moſt Eaſtern City of *Serica* in the longitude of 177. degrees and 15. minutes; as on the other ſide he placeth *Seta* the moſt Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum* in the *latitude* of 35. degrees, and 20. minutes, and *Danma* the moſt Northern town of *Serica* in the latitude of 51. degrees, and 40. minutes. By which accompt, ſuppoſing theſe four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out parts of this Country, it muſt extend from North to South 960. miles and ſomewhat upwards, and about 1500. miles from Eaſt to Weſt in the length thereof; which as it ſheweth the dimenſions and extent of it to be very great, ſo it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility; the Weſt parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and conſequently not very fruitfull, as being overgrown in moſt places with the ſaps and branches of *Imaus*. But in thoſe parts thereof which lie towards the Eaſt, it is ſaid to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk, and Muſk; Great ſtore of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have alſo very great herds of *Camels*, of whoſe hair they make thoſe ſtuffs which are hence called *Camelets*, or *Chamlets*; and ſuch an infinite breed of horſes, as beſides thoſe which they preſerve for their own uſe, they furniſh the whole Realm of *China* with ſuch multitudes of them that at one time there were ſent no fewer then 80000. for a preſent to the King

King of that Realm by the Princes of theſe Weſtern *Tartars*, as the *Chinais* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bellum Tartaricum* affirmeth himſelf to have been an eye-witneſs, and to his credit I refer it; That the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their milk. Some of their Rivers are reported alſo to yield *golden ſands*. But whether it be ſo or not, certain it is, that it is ſo well provided of all things both for neceſſary uſe, and the pleaſures of life, that it is thought to be inferior to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not ſo temperate, as in many places; in Summer-times extreamly hot, and in winter miſerably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here ſo terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no leſs violent than the thunder, do ſometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horſes; but ſeldom bring with them any ſtorm of rain: the greateſt ſhowers which they have, hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, ſtrong of body, quick of action, fearleſs of the greateſt dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean ſtature, little eyes, ſharp-ſight, and thin beards. Induſtrious they are in ſeveral *manufactures*, of a good wit for diſpatch of buſineſs: more honourable than the reſt of the *Tartars*, as loving to dreſs themſelves gorgiouſly, to fare ſumptuouſly (if there be occaſion) to live in handſom houſes, and to frequent the moſt populous and beſt-traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you wills together with the greateſt part of their Arts and Manufactures they firſt learned of the *Chineſe*, during the time, that the *Chinais* lived as Subjects under the great *Cham*, and the nations had continual entercourſe with one another. They accompt not any for a wife till ſhe bear them children, nor till then do meddle with their dowrier; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they finde them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperour, even to *adoration*; not ſuffering any Stranger to come in his preſence, except he be firſt *purged*: if any otherwiſe preſume, it is preſent death.

The *Religion* publiquely allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, but ſo that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moſes*, and obſerve many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they ſhould receive the *Chriſtian* faith; and they found ſome inclinations in the people, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *ſuperſtition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleſhly luſts; they conformed to that: Yet ſo, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it ſelf (I mean *Cathay* ſtrictly ſo called) and ſome *Chriſtians* alſo; the ſtate of whoſe affairs we have ſhewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole, 1. *Palyſanga*, which falling into the Eaſtern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great ſtore of merchandiſe. 2. *Caromoram*, ſo broad and deep that no bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quian*, one of the greateſt in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in moſt places ſix miles, in many eight, and in ſome ten. 4. *Quiantu*, about half a mile over, and well ſtored with fiſh: of all which we ſhall ſpeak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are alſo very many *Lakes*, both large, and uſefull, as 1. the Lake of *Caniclu*, in which are ſaid to be ſo many pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fiſh for them: which is therefore interdicted (without ſpecial licence) upon pain of death. 2. the Lake of *Caraim*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and ſo full of fiſh as might ſuffice for all the the Countrey, did they love to eat of it. Their mountains we ſhall climb over in their ſeverall places.

Principal Cities of the whole at this preſent time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are 1 *Canbula*, ſuppoſed to be the *Iſſedan Serica* of the Ancients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* the firſt King of the *Tartars*, in his firſt attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards in regard of the pleaſentneſs of the ſituation, and extream fertility of the ſoyl. the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to ſay the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the ſame ſenſe as the chief City of *China* had the name of the King, ſignifying in that language the Court or *City of the King*. Built of Free-ſtone, and ſituate in the midſt of the Country as the heart and center to the reſt. It is ſeated on the River *Palyſanga*, honoured with the Great *Chams* reſidence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all ſorts. Beſides other Merchandizes there are every year 10000. Carts loded with ſilk ſent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compaſs 28. miles beſides the Suburbs, in which beſides other Inhabitants of all ſorts are 50000. Aſtrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2. *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a fourſquare figure, every ſide extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whoſe ſides are ſix miles long, and within that another of four miles ſquare, which is the palace it ſelf; between thoſe ſeveral Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fiſhponds, places for all manner of exerciſe, and Parks, Forreſts, and Chaſes for all manner of Game. 3. *Caraio* where the women are ſaid to guild their teeth: 4. *Gonza* a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monaſteries. 5. *Careanfu*, near which there growth an herb called *Chiny-Cathay*, of admirable effect againſt many Diſeaſes, and ſo eſteemed of by the Natives that they value one ounce of this at a ſack of *Rubard*. 6. *Segni* the reſidence of a *Neſtorian* Biſhop.

Having thus took as good a view of the preſent face of this Country, as the times afford us, we will next look upon it in thoſe integral parts, of which it ſpecially conſiſteth, comprehending (as before was intimated) thoſe two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1. *Serica*, and 2. *Segthia extra montem Imaum*, according to thoſe bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. *SERICA*. hath on the Eaſt ſome part of *China*; on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and ſome part of the Country then inhabited by the Ancient *Sinæ*: on the North, *Altay*: on the Weſt, the mountains

tains of *Imaus*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in theſe remote Countries which theſe latter ages have afforded; is fain to ſhut it up on the North and Eaſt, with a *Terra incognita*. At the preſent it is called *CATHAY*, and that moſt probably from the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* People, who ſubduing the old Inhabitants, became Maſters of it. *Serica.*

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres* very induſtrious in their times, and amongſt other things in the making of *ſilks* (made of a fine wool growing on the leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great eſteem amongſt the *Romans*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe potitur, ut in publico matrona tranſluceat*; being far fetched, and dear-bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they induſtrious only, but chaſte and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongſt them. They eat not any unclean fleſh, nor uſed the company of their wives, either after conception, or during their menſtrual purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietneſs and mildneſs of their diſpoſition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good compoſure. Men of few words, but very juſt in all which they ſaid or did. Governed by a common Councel of five thouſand men, every one of which was to finde an *Elephant* for the uſe of the State.

If you will take the character both of the Country, and People, from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "Firſt of the Country, that it is plentifull and large, circled about with a chain of mountains, the two famous Rivers *Oechardes* and *Banthiſis* with a ſtill and ſlow ſtream running thorow the middle of the incloſed plain, ſpaciouſly ſtretched out to the ſides of the *precipices*: in one place large and open, in another lying flat and low with an eaſie deſcent; in which regard they have abundance of Corn, ſtore of Cattel, and plenty of *Orchards*. The temperature of the Air pleaſant and wholſom, the conſtitution of the weather clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds moſt commodious, and the woods with a pretty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with much ſprinkling of water, ſoftning that which the trees bring forth like a kinde of *Fleece*, kemb a moſt fine and tender matter, which they ſpin into *ſilk*, ſerving in former times for the Nobility and gentry, now become common to thoſe alſo of inferiour rank. Then for the *People*, he ſaith that they are a frugall Nation, lovers of quiet, not troubleſom unto their neighbours, without the uſe of Arms, and the knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers; and ſo far from covetouſneſs, or curioſities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *ſilks*, without much beating of the price, they let them have ſuch things as are bred amongſt them, without looking after the commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did not over-act the *Panegyriſt* (as I ſee no reaſon why he ſhould) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Caſii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the Eaſt. 3. the *Annibæ*, environing a great part of the Country. 4. the *Aſmiræi*, 5. and thoſe called *Serici*, neer the City *Sera*. 6. *Tagurus*. 7. *Ennodorus*, and 8. *Ottorocorus*: But all of them probably the ſpurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imaus*; But by what names now called it is hard to ſay; and no leſs hard to ſay how to accomodate the names of the Rivers ſpoken of before, to thoſe which we finde mentioned in the Ancient Writers; the principal of which (all flowing out of theſe great Mountains) are, 1. *Oechardes*, by *Pliny* called *Cambris*, riſing out of the *montes Auzaccii*; 2. *Pſitara*, iſſuing out of the *Aſmiri*; 3. *Bautiſus*, whoſe fountain is in the *montes Caſii*; and 4. *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongſt them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and people. 2. *Ottorocora*, neer the hills ſo called; whence it had the name. 3. *Iſſedon*, for diſtinctions ſake called *Iſſedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Iſſedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Iſiedones*, *gens magna*, one of the greateſt Nations in all the Countrey, as is ſaid by *Ptolomy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* (which before I ſpake of) in his firſt attempts upon this Country. 4. *Oroſana*, 5. *Droſache*, 6. *Daxata*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about nine more being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we finde nothing but the names, and therefore I ſhall paſs them over without further mention.

But here it is to be obſerved, 1. that *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and to ſome of the Towns or Cities of it ſuch a Northernly latitude (ranging the furtheſt parts thereof in the ſame *parallel* with the Iſle of *Thyle*) as cannot poſſibly agree with that fertility of ſoyl, and delightfull temper of the ayr, which is given to *Serica*. 2. That he tels us of a *Promontory* called *Tabyri* ſituate in *extrema terræ*, in the extremeities of the Country between North and Eaſt, which I cannot but extreamly wonder at, conſidering that he ſhuts up this Country on the Eaſt and North with a *Terra incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendring it thereby uncapable of any ſuch *Promontory*. 3. That ſome of our late Writers both in their Tables and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambula*, ſo far towards the North, as very ill agreeth with that pleaſantneſs and ſweetneſs of ſituation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we may eaſily pardon theſe miſtakes of *Ptolomy* in places ſo far diſtant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; ſo we may as eaſily pardon theſe of the latter times, who grounding on the authority of ſo eminent an Author, have in ſome things been miſguided by him: it hapning very many times (which I find ſome where mentioned on the like occaſion, *Magnis erroribus, magnorum virorum authoritate, tranſmiſſis*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their Authors.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in thoſe parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are ſaid to have been *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters, moſt probably a *Scythian* Nation, that cuſtom being ſo abhorrent from the mildneſs

Altay. ness of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolomy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the self same tract. The other Nations not distained with the like reproaches, are the *Sizyges*, and *Anabi*, not far off the *Auzacian* mountains; the *Pialæ* neer the River *Oechardes*; the *Geranæi*, and *Rhabbanæi*, their neareſt neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the East, the *Batæ* and *Ottocororæ* more towards the South. These with the residue, governed by a Common-Council of 5000. men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the service of the Commonwealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad to vent their wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is likely that it took the name of *CATHAY*; (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continuing under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being besieged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their engines, they supplied that want with molten silver; and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperor (as some call him) slain: after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the title of *Cham*, or Emperor. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM was bounded on the East with *Serica*, on the West with *Imaus*, on the South with *India extra Gangem*; and on the North with the Countreys comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolomy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia*, because planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the West side of that mountain, neareſt unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Countrey, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring nations: the mountains called *Auzacii*, *Casii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imaus* joyntly to both the *Scythia's*, which it divided antiently the one from the other: though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it, profess themselvs subjects to that *Cham*. This the most famous mountain in the East of *Asia*, beginning at the shores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean; and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *Greater Asia* into East and West, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was anciently most memorable for dividing the vast Countreys of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills so named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranæi*. 3. *Sæta*. 4 *Issedon Scythica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolomy*, inhabited by the *Abii*, *Hyphophagi*, or horse eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or Modern *Scythians*. 2. The *Issedones* who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make carousing cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and guilded, 3. the *Chauranæi*, and 4. the *Chatæ*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to the conquered *Seres*. Besides the possessions of which Tribes, there was also the Regions, of *Albassa Cusia*, and *Auzuatis*; these last so called from the mountains upon which they stand. More then this we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Scythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the course of story, or worth the observation in the way of Corography.

ALTAY is bounded on the South with *Cathay*, specially so called, and part of *China*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, on the West with the great Mounts in *Imaus*, and on the East with the Nations or Countries of the Eastern Tartars. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty mountain, which the Tartars in their Language call by the name of *Altay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the Ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our Modern pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch on the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces the principal of them are, 1. *Cascar*, 2. *Chesmur*, 3. *Lop*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Caindu*, 7. *Carazan*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Erginul*, 10. *Taguth*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering on the North West of *China*, a *Mahometan* Countrey, but admitting of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Altay*, except *Tanguth* only, and furnished with many Town or Cities both of Trade and Note, the principal whereof are, 1. *Hiachan*, the Royal City of this Country, and a Mart famous for concourse of Merchants, and variety of Merchandises. 2. *Cialis*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Cascar*, who in the year, 1603. was called *Mahomet Chan*, a Prince of some credit in those parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the Kings of *Targuth*. The people generally rude and barbarous, in so much that in some parts hereof both sexes do indulge themselves this mutual priviledge, that if the husband or the wife be absent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. *CHESMUR*.

2. *CHESMUR*, the inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters*, and *Inchanters*, causing the dumb *Idols* to speak, the winds to rise, and the sun to be darkned. For studying which *black Arts* (if they come to them by study) they have many *Monasteries*; in which their *Hermits* or *Monasticks* live a strict kind of life, and are very abstemious. *Altay.*

3. *LOP*, memorable for a great Desart of thirty daies journey; so true a *Desart*, that whosoever doth not mean to be starved, must carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the *evill spirits* using to call men by their names, and make them go astray from their company; where they perish with famine, or are devoured with wild beasts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Countrey, the people whereof accompt it a great honour to them, to have their wives and sisters at the pleasure of such as they entertain. From which brutish custome when restrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be restored again to their former liberty; *protesting* they could never thrive since they left that custome. Which desire of theirs was at last granted, and is still in use.

5. *TAINFU*, more civil than the rest, the people being very industrious and good Artificers; making the most part of the Arms which are used by the *Cham*; and some also which they sell to Merchants.

6. *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the same name, of great resort by Merchants (such as we commonly call *petit Chapmen*) for the *Womens veils* here made, with very great Art, of the barks of Trees. And it is well that they have veils to hide their shamelessnenss, the women of this Tract being prostituted unto every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and savage people, who in the day-time live in dens for fear of *Serpents*, with which (and some of them ten paces long, and ten spans in thickness) they are much infested; and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lyons. They have an use, that when any stranger cometh into their houses, of an handsome shape, to kill him in the night: not out of desire of spoil, or to eat his body; but that the soul of such a comely bodie, might remain amongst them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, neer *Carazan*, and as savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greatest Ornament. In case of sickness they send not to the *Phhysian*, but the next *Inchanters*: who taking Counsail of the Devil, apply some remedy; or if they think the man past cure, they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help; and so put him off.

9. *ERGINUL*, possessed by an *Idolatrous* people, but mixed with som *Mahometans*, and *Nestorian Christians*. In which Countrey they have certain *Bulls* as big as *Elephants*, with mains of fine *white haire* like silk, some of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a race of strong and laborious Beasts, not inferiour in that kind to Oxen. Here is also found a beast of an exquisite shape, but not bigger than a *Goat*, which at every full Moon hath a swelling under the belly; which being cut off by the *Hunters*, and dryed in the Sun, proveth to be the best *Musk* in the World.

10. *TANGUT*, the greatest and most potent of all the rest, bordering on the North of *Cathay* specially so called, and (like to that) inhabited by an industrious and laborious people, amongst whom the Art of printing is said to have been extant a thousand years. Blessed heretofore with a great increase of *Christianity*; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greatest part, with some *Mahometans* amongst them. And for the serving of those Idols, they have not onely many large and beautifull Temples, built in the manner of *Christian* Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 persons; but also many fair *Monasteries* for the use of their *Votaries*, and *Recluses*. They are possessed of many Towns, most of them well fortified, and planted with good store of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sachian*, bordering on the *Desart* of *Lop*, inhabited by some of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they first used the *Art of printing*. 2. *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of this Countrey: where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair *Churches*: now over-numbred by the *Gentiles*; who have here many *Monasteries* for the use of their *Idols*, and many Religious persons dedicated to their service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their *Order*, and hold it an impiety to tempt a woman to the act of lust; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no small sin to refuse her curtesie. 3. *Sauta* a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as being 5 daies journy from the one, and 6 daies journy from the other; by which we may Conjecture at the long extent of this Kings Dominions. 4. *Succuir*, situate amongst Mountains clothed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the world; but so neglected by the natives, that did not the forein Merchant bring it into request, they would scorn to gather it. This once a Kingdome of it self, made subject afterwards, with *Tanguth*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the *Great Cham* of *Tartary*; But the fury of this *Tartarian* tempest being overblown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover their antient Royalty; but by degrees possessed themselves of the most part of the rest of *Altay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* also, being looked on at the present as the greatest and most puissant Prince betwixt the Mountaines of *Imaus*, and the Easterne *Tartars*, to the discription of whose Countries we do next proceed.

The Countries of the Easterne *Tartars*, are bounded on the West with *Altay*; on the East with the *Orientall Ocean*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, and on the South with *China*; so called from their Easterne situation, in regard of those of *Cathay* and *Altay*, which by the *Chineſe* are called commonly the Western *Tartars*.

Altay. The Country not very fruitfull, becauſe ill cultivated, ſo that the chief commodities which they ſend abroad, are, the Root called *Ginſem* ſo much eſteemed amongſt the *Chineſes*, and all ſorts of pretious skins, as thoſe of *Caſtar*, *Martrois* and *Zibellens*; and alſo Horſe-hair, of which the *Chineſes* make their Nets, and the men (though madly) uſe it in tying up their Hair, as the handſomeſt dreſs they can appear in. With theſe Commodities, they Trafique into *Leaotong* a Province of the North-Eaſt of *China* (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Marchandize being thence diſperſed into all parts of that Kingdome. The people are generally of broad Faces, their colour white, but their noſe is not ſo flat, nor their eyes ſo little, as the *Chineſes* are, ſparing of ſpeech, and ſomewhat penſive, but neither ſo unſociable as their Neighbours of *China*, or ſo barbarous and rude as the *Tartars* of *Europe*. They ſhave both the Head and Beard, reſerving only the *Muſtachoes*, which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their Head they leave a Tuffe, which being curiouſly Woven and Plated, they let hang down careleſly below their ſhoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garniſhed round with ſome pretious skin three fingers broad, of *Caſtor* or *Zebellin*, and ſerveth to defend their Temples, Eares, and Fore-heads from Colds and other Tempeſts. That which appears above the skin being covered over either with curious Red Silk, or elſe with Black and Purple Horſe-Hair, which they dye and dreſs moſt curiouſly; ſo as their appurtenances being handſomely joyned together makes the Cap both commodious and handſome. Their Garments are long Robes falling down to the very Foot, but their Sleeves are not ſo long and large as the *Chineſes* uſe, but rather ſuch as are uſed in *Poland* and *Hungarie*, only with this difference that they faſhion the extremity of the ſleeve, ever like a Horſes Hoof. At their Girdle there hangs on either ſide two Handcherchiefs to wipe their Face and Hands, beſides there hangs a knife for all neceſſary uſes; with two purſes, in which they carry *Tobacco* or ſuch like commodities. On their left ſide they hang their *Seymiters*, but ſo as the point goeth before, and the handle behind, and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the *Scabbord* with the other: They ſeldome were *Shooes*, and uſe no *Spurrs* to their Boots, which they make either of *Silk* or of Horſe-skin very neatly dreſſed; but they often uſe fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they uſe *Stirrups*, but their *Saddles* are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of war they are very nimble, never carrying any baggage with them, nor taking care for proviſion, but filling themſelves with what they find; yet commonly they eat fleſh, though half waſhed or half boyled and if they find none they fall upon their Horſes and Camells. The Earth covered with their Horſe Cloath is their Bed, for they care not for Houſes, and Chambers; but if they be forced to dwell in Houſes, their Horſes muſt lodge with them, and they muſt have many holes beaten in the Walls to let in the Air; but yet their Tents are moſt beautifull, which they fix and remove with ſuch Art and dexterity, as they never retard the ſpeedy march of an Army.

They inhabit, amongſt many other Provinces, thoſe of *Sumahania*, *Tanius gupi Niulham*, and *Niuche*; of which I am able to ſay nothing in the way of *Corographie*, or of the four firſt in way of Hiſtory, only I find that thoſe of *Niulham* were aiding to the King of *Niuche*, in the Conqueſt of *China*; and of the *Gupy* it is written, that they are ſo called, by reaſon they make their Coates of defence or Breaſt-places of Fiſhes-skin which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnible.

Yet either terrified by the noyſe of their great ſucceſs, or willing to partake of ſome part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Warres on that ſide of *Imaus*, but were content to take their very name upon them never invaded nor ſubdued till the time of *Hombu* King of *China*, who having driven the weſtern *Tartars*, then landing it over that Kingdome from one Port of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themſelves unto thoſe Ports and Provinces of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdome or Province of *Niuche*, where the War followed after them alſo, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to beg their peace of the Conquerring Enemy; divided into ſeven *Hordes* or Tribes, and Governed for a long time by their ſeverall *Cheefes*, they became at laſt united into one Kingdome called the Kingdom of *Niuche*; Anno 1550. or thereabouts. Oppreſſed by the *Prefects* of *Leaolong* in the way of their Trade, and ſuffering amongſt many other indignities the death of their King, whom thoſe *Prefects* had entrapped and murdered, they make complaint of theſe outrages to the King of *China*; and finding no remedy at his hands, put themſelves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leaolong* take the City *Leaogang*, and having beſieged the King himſelf in the Royall or imperiall City of *Peking* they returned home (finding no hope of taking it at that time) with the ſpoil and plunder of all thoſe parts through which they marched. The War thus firſt begun was managed for many years with great loſs on both ſides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eaſtern parts of the Province of *Leaolong*, and the honour of having ſhewed themſelves twice more at the Walls of *Peking*; till in the year, 1644. Being invited into *China* by *Uſanguius* to ſupport the then falling fortune of the Royall Family, they husbanded the opportunity ſo well, as to make themſelves the abſolute Maſters of that mighty Kingdome. The whole ſtory and ſucceſſes of that notable action, we ſhall ſum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of,

The

The Kings of *Niuche*.

1550. 1,2. N.N. advanced unto this Kingdom after the reducing of the ſeverall *Hordes* into one main body, and Father of the King ſucceeding, who was ſlain at laſt by the treachery of the Prefects of *Leolong*, as before was ſaid.

1616. 3. *Thienmingus*, who to revenge his fathers death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leogang*, braved the great Emperor at the walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himſelf with the ſpoils of the Country returned home again.

1627. 4. *Thienzungus*, the ſon of *Thienminges*, followed the War with the ſame fortune as his father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches then in Power and Patrimony.

1636. 5. *Zungteus* the Son of *Theinzungas* ſecretly brought up amongſt the *Chineſe*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that people, but their weakneſſes alſo, and conſequently was the better prepared to lay the foundation of that greatneſs to which the Tartars have attained by the Conqueſt of it. Called into *China* by *Uſangueius*, as before is ſaid, he poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Peking*, and though he died aſſoon as he was Maſter of that City only, yet left he ſuch inſtructions to his Brothers, and the reſt of his Councel, that very eaſily and ſpeedily they poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Kingdom.

1644. 6. *Xunchius* the Son of the former of the age of nine years only at the death of his father, the management of his affairs both for war and peace being committed to his Uncles, but chiefly unto *Amavangus* the eldeſt of them, by whom ſo prudently conducted, that within the ſpace of four years he was quietly ſetled in that throne, all oppoſition and pretenders to the Royal Succeſſion being beaten down, of which more hereafter.

5. *TARTARIA ANTIQVA.*

TARTARIA ANTIQVA hath on the South, *Altay*, and the Countreys of the Eaſtern Tartars on the Weſt, and North, the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the Eaſt the Streights of *Anian*, (if ſuch Streights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, becauſe the firſt habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or Jail, made their firſt etuptions, and have ſince over-grown ſo much of *Aſia*.

The Countrey cold, and comfortleſs, as lying under the *Polar Circle*, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but ſuch as can live no where elſe: yet heretofore a receptacle of many *Chriſtians* (though thoſe of the *Neſtorian* Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion, which the *Perſians* and *Saracens* denyed them in more pleaſing Countries. It containeth many Regions, ſome not conſiderable. Thoſe of moſt note, are 1. *Thebet*, 2. *Tabor*, 3. *Tenduc*, 4. *Bargu*, 5. *Anian*, and 6. *Tartar*.

1. *THEBET*, a fenny *Region*, and full of woods; rich in *Coral* which they finde on the Sea-ſhore, and uſe it inſtead of money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abaſſi*, or Pope of this Idolatrous people; much reverenced, and having in his power the diſpoſing of all Offices, which concern the ſervice of their *Idols*; They have alſo ſome good ſtore of *Muſk*; and abundance of wild beaſts which are bred in their Forreſts. But no beaſts wilder than the people, who in times paſt (if not at the preſent alſo) uſed to bury their Parents in their own bowels, and to make drinking cups of their ſkuls; for fear leſt in the midſt of their jollity they ſhould forget their Progenitors. Yet not more barbarous than immodeſt; it being contrary to their cuſtom to take a wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers uſe to proſtitute their daughters to the Merchant-Strangers, who having had their pleaſure of them gratify them with a Jewel or ſome other preſent, which they wear on their Wedding day: ſhe being the moſt acceptable Bride to her husband, who bringeth the greateſt *Dowry* with her of thoſe baſe rewards. It contained once petit Kingdoms, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tendue*) with many Cities; but now laid deſolate by the *Tartar*.

2. *TABOR*, once a diſtinct Kingdom alſo. One of the Kings whereof in the year 1540. came to the Courts of *Charls* the fift, and *Francis* the firſt; where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a *Factor* for the *Jews*, and ſecretly ſolicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles*, he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. *TENDVC*, a populous Kingdom of it ſelf, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all theſe North-Eaſt parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Chriſtian in Religion, till the Conqueſt of it by the *Tartars*, though accordiug to the *Neſtorian* tendries: but now *Mahometan* for the moſt part, with ſome remainders, and but few, of Chriſtianity. Divided into many large and ſpacious Provinces, as *Chinchintales*, *Cerguth*, *Egrigaia*, *Cercham*, others of leſs note; ſo called according to the names of their principal Towns, or having ſome Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Antiqua. Thoſe of moſt note in *Tenauc* it ſelf, 1. *Coras*, the ordinary ſepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, and ſince that alſo. 2. *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was firſt honoured with the Title of King. The Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the office of Prieſts, were antiently called by the name of *Presbyter Johannes*, or *Preſter John*: a title now erroniouſly conferred by ſome on the Emperour of the *Abaſſines*, or *Æthiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joſeph Scaliger*, a man of ſuch infinite reading, ſhould be ſo deceived: and by the authority of his judgement deceive ſo many. For finding that there was a *Presbyter Johannes* in the North of *Aſia*, and hearing vulgarly that title given unto him in *Africk*; he fell upon a fancie that this *Abaſſine* Emperour was formerly of ſo great power, as to extend his empire over *India*, and the *North* of *Aſia*; and in this laſt, for the aſſurance of his conqueſts, to hold his reſidence. A monſtrous, and undefenſible fancy. For beſides that all hiſtories, even thoſe of the *Abaſſines* themſelves, are ſilent in it: how improbable is it, that a King reigning in the heart of *Africk*, ſhould ſubdue the moſt remote parts of *Aſia*; and there keep his Court: ſo many great States and moſt puiſſant Nations, being interpoſed, or that ſo memorable an exploit ſhould be buried in ſilence, and found in no record but in *Scaligers* head. Beſides it is well known, and generally granted, that the *Persbyter John* of *Aſia*, was by Sect a *Neſtorian*; but he that is ſo called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the Chriſtians of *Æthiophia* are circumciſed, which never was reported of thoſe of *Aſia*.

Letting this paſs therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill-grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin-Cham*, the King thereof. After whoſe death a certain *Neſtorian* ſhepheard (that is to ſay, the maſter of great flocks of ſheep) being Governour of the *Taymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himſelf the title of king of *Tenduc*; whom they called by the name of *Preſt John*, or Prince *John* (the ſame word in their language, as in the *Hebrew*, ſignifieth both *Prieſt* and *Prince*.) Dying he bequeathed his eſtate and flocks to his brother *Unt-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater ſheep-maſter than he; whoſe flocks ranged over all the paſtures of the *Moles*, or *Monguls* and *Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen daies journey off, whom he had in ſubjection: the title of *Prieſt John*, or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the dignity and Royall eſtate. And though afterwards this *Uncham* was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, yet his poſterity for long time were ſuffered to enjoy the title of Kings, and Presbyters; (but Vaſſals, and *Homagers*, to the Great *Cham*): the *Great Chams*, in regard of their nobility, and royall parentage, beſtowing their daughters on them in marriage; as is ſaid by *William de Rubraquis*, who travelled in theſe Countries, Anno 1253. the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *BARGU*, on the extreme North-weſt, bordering on both thoſe ſides the cold *Scythick* Ocean, ſituate under the *North-ſtarre*; of the ſame nature, both for the ſoyl and people, as that of the *Tartars*. And

5. *ANIAN*, on the North-Eaſt, oppoſite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights* of *Anian*, lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which Streights (if any ſuch ſtreights there be) the *Tartars*, and ſome other of theſe Northern nations, are thought to have paſſed over, and to plant that Countrey.

6. *TARTAR*, ſo called of the great River *Tartar*, the principall of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Originall Countrey, where they lived like beaſts, having neither faith, nor letters, nor habitation, nor the uſe of Arms, nor any reputation amongſt their neighbours. In matter of *Religion*, the worſt ſort of *Gentiles*, worſhipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth: to which they offered in the morning faſting, the firſt of their meats and drinks.

Their *Idols* made of *Felt*, and placed on both ſides of the doors of their tents or booths, as the preſervers of their Cattel, and the Authors of milk. Divided into five *Clans*, or Tribes, denominating ſo many Towns and territories, in which they dwelt, that is to ſay, 1. *Mongul*. 2. *Teka-Mongul*, or the *Great Mongul*) 3. *Sommongul*, or the *water-Mongul*, 4. *Mercat*. 5. *Metrit*: each of them Governed by its *Chief*; as commonly it is amongſt barbarous Nations; though all thoſe *Chiefs* ſubordinate to ſome higher power. Oppreſſed by *Unchani*, or *Unt-cham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their paſtures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joint conſent they removed ſomewhat further off, and denied their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka-Monguls*, and ſo well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publiſhing abroad amongſt the Credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his ſleep, with a white horſe, and ſaid, O *Cangius*, or *Cingis*, *it is the will of immortall God, that thou be Governour of the* Tartars, *and free them from bondage, and paying tribute*; he found, a generall belief: eſpecially amongſt thoſe of his own *Clan*, who joyning themſelves to him, followed him, as their *Ring-leader*, in all his actions. Thus backed and ſtrengthned he made war againſt the *Sommonguls*, ſlew their Commander, and ſubdued them: and by their help, ſucceſſively aſſaulted the *Mercats*, and *Metrits*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed. And having thus ſubdued all the *Clans* of the *Tartars*, and added the eſtates of *Thebet*, and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the conſent of the *ſeven Princes*, or *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, (*Thebet*, and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a ſeat on a peece of *Felt*, (the beſt throne they had or could afford) and ſaluted King; with as great reverence and ſolemnity as their ſtate could yield. And firſt to make triall of his power, and their obedience, he commanded the *ſeven Chiefs* or Princes to ſurrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldeſt Son: which was done accordingly. Had *John of Leiden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Botcher*; I ſhould think he had ſtudied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Aſſured by this of their fidelity and obedience, he ſet upon the *Naymans*, a people of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himſelf fit for ſome great alliance, he ſent to *Uncham*, and demanded one of his daughters for his wife, Which *Uncham* with ſome threats, but more ſcorn, denying; he marched againſt him, ſlew him in the field,

field, and poſſeſſed his daughter, and with her alſo his eſtate. Proud with this good ſucceſs, and encouraged by ſo great an increaſe of power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that alſo the authority of an *heavenly viſion*, in the name of the *immortal God*: in which attempt, diſcomfited at firſt with a very great overthrow, but at laſt victorious; conquering the ſeveral nations of it by one and one, till in the end he brought the war to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at laſt he took, and therewithall the title of *Cham* or Emperor. Continuing in this dignity for the ſpace of ſix years, and every year adding ſomewhat to his dominions, he was at laſt wounded in the knee at the Caſtle of *Thaygin*; of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*. *Antiqua.*

This is the beſt accompt I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the original of this ſpreading Nation, and the deſcription of the Country of their firſt habitation. They that have *chriſtned* ſome of the moſt Northern parts of it, by the names of the *Tribes* of *Dan*, and *Napthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more credit have ſupplied thoſe vacant places, which they knew not otherwiſe how to fill, with the pictures of wilde beaſts, or monſtrous fiſhes; which might well enough have pleaſed the eye, without betraying the judgement of the looker on. Of his Succeſſors I am able to make no certain Catalogue; their names being doubtfully delivered, and the ſucceſſion much confounded amongſt our writers: the names of the *Provincial* Sultans being many times impoſed upon us, inſtead of thoſe of the *Chams* themſelves. But we will wade through thoſe difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of ſtory will direct me: firſt adding (what ſhould have been before remembred) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned battel with *Uncham*, conſulted with his *Diviners* and *Aſtrologers* of the ſucceſs. They taking a green reed, cleft it aſunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other: and placed them not far aſunder. Then fell they to reading their *Charms*, and conjurations; and the reeds fell a fighting in the ſight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcoming the other: whereby they foretold the joyfull news of victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly hapned. And this was the firſt ſtep, by which this baſe and beggerly Nation began to mount unto the chair of Empire and Soveraignty; whereas before they lived like beaſts, having neither Letters, nor faith, nor dwelling, nor reputation, nor valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was ſaid.

The great *Chams* of *Tartars*.

A. C.

1162. 1. *Cingis*, *Cinchius*, *Zingis*, or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he ſubdued *Tenduch*, and *Cathaia*, changing the name of *Scythians*, and *Scythia*, to *Tartarians*, and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168. 2. *Jocuthan Cham*, or *Hoccata*, ſucceeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was firſt known in *Europe*, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Poleſockie* from the banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Bathu*, or *Roido*, he ſubdued *Moſcovia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*; waſted *Hungary*, *Boſnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains, took *Perſia* from the *Turks*.

3. *Zaincham*, *Bathu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, and *Aſia* the leſs.

4. *Gino Cham*, whoſe daughter conveyed the Empire unto her husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.

1370. 5. *Tamir-Cutlu*, *Tamir-Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great tyrant, but withall an excellent Souldier. It is thought, that he ſubdued more Provinces in his life-time, than the *Romans* had done in 800. years. Of whoſe acts we have ſpoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongſt his Children, as *Perſia* to *Miza Charok* his fourth ſon, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldeſt ſon) and ſo to others.

1405. 6. *Lutrochin*, the ſecond ſon of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded in *Cathay*, though the eldeſt was at firſt proclaimed, which his Father had before prognoſticated: who when his ſons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautochus* who was the eldeſt, but lifting up the chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the ſecond. He lived not long, ſucceeded to by

7. *Allan*, who added little to his eſtate.

8. *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* Hiſtory) went for ayd againſt the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. By whoſe perſwaſion the ſaid *Mango Cham* is ſaid to have been *chriſtned*, with all his houſhold, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9. *Cublay Cham*, the ſon of *Mango*.

10. *Tamor Cham*, the Nephew of *Cablay* by his ſon *Cingis*.

11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540. or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are, who have ſince reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable acts have been done among them. The great diſtance of Countries, and difficulty of the journey have hindred further diſcoveries. For the great *Cham*, and his next neighbour the King of *China*, will neither ſuffer any of their ſubjects to travel abroad, nor permit any foreiners to view their dominions, or enter into them: unleſs either Embaſſadors or Merchants, and thoſe but ſparingly, and under very great reſtraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; ſaving that in theſe latter times the Jeſuits have found ſome footing in *China*, by whom notwithſtanding, we have received little or no intelligence in matters which concern this Country.

The Government is tyrannical, the great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his *tongue* (beſides which they have almoſt no Laws) conſiſteth the power of life or death. He is called by the ſimple vulgar, *The ſhadow of ſpirits*, *and ſon of the Immortal God*: and by himſelf is reputed to be the *Monarch* of the whole

Antiqua. whole world. For this cauſe every day aſſoon as he hath dined, he cauſeth his Trumpets to be ſounded; by that ſign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth, to go to dinner. A fine dream of univerſal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the ſeven chief Princes aſſemble to crown his ſon; whom they place on a black coarſe cloth: telling him, if he reign well, heaven ſhall be his reward; if ill, he ſhall not have ſo much as a corner of that black cloth to reſt his body on: then they put the crown on his head, and kiſſing his feet, ſwear unto him fealty and homage. And at the Funeral of theſe great Monarchs, they uſe to kill ſome of his *guard Souldiers*, whereof he hath 12000. in continual pay; ſaying unto them, *Ite & domino noſtro ſervite in alia vita. Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obſequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer than 10000. were ſlain on this occaſion.

Theſe *Chams* are for the moſt part ſevere juſticers, and puniſh almoſt every ſmall fact with ſudden death; but theft eſpecially: Inſomuch that a man in *Gambalu* taking a pail of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut aſunder with a ſword; ſo that the blood and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* puniſhed with leſs than death, and ſo ordained to be by the Laws of *Zingis*, their firſt Emperor: a wiſer man, than poſſible could be expected from ſo rude a Country, and of ſo little breeding in the knowledge of Books or Buſineſs; the *Tartars* being utterly without the uſe of Letters, till the conqueſt of the *Huyri*, a *Cathaian* nation, but of Chriſtian faith.

What forces the *Great Chams*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, conſiſting of 1200000. horſe and foot, as was ſaid before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we ſhall finde them not inferiour to the greateſt Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the diviſion of this great eſtate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field againſt *Naian* his Uncle, and one *Caidu*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000. foot, and 360000. horſe: there being 500000. horſe on the other ſide. Which made almoſt a million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay* and thoſe of *Turcheſtan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the firſt is ſaid to have been able to raiſe 300000. horſe, and the laſt an hundred thouſand more. For ſtanding forces, he maintains 12000. horſe, diſtributed amongſt four Captains, for the guard of his perſon; beſides which he hath great forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occaſion be: ſo that he need not fear any outward invaſion, and much leſs any homebred Rebellions. But on the other ſide, admitting this for truth which before is ſaid, we finde him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are expoſed moſt commonly to the invaſions and affronts of ſuch as are ſtrong in Shipping: For either the Eaſtern Tartars interpoſed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is landlocked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he hath any Port in the North-eaſt parts of this long Country, where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*, it is ſo far off, and ſo much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his power, and not much to his purſe.

Of the *Revenues* of the *Cham*, I can make no eſtimate, but may conclude them to be what he liſt himſelf: he being the abſolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of wool, ſilk, hemp, corn, and Cattel. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the gold and ſilver, which is brought into the Countrey; which he cauſeth to be melted, and preſerved in his treaſury: impoſing on his people inſtead of money, in ſome places *Cockle-ſhels*, in others, a black coyn made of the bark of trees, with his ſtamp upon it. And beſides this he hath to himſelf the whole trade of *Pearl-fiſhing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fiſh for, but by leave from him. So that his Treaſury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual in-come be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have proſecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors; yet muſt confeſs I am not very well ſatisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it ſelf: it being rather my opinion, that there is no ſuch man at this preſent time as a great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Soveraign Power and Juriſdiction over all the other Members of that vaſt body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countries did a little and little return again to their former Governments, or elſe were ſeized on by the *Viſi Chams* or Governors of the ſeveral Provinces. For firſt I conſider it as impoſſible, that there ſhould be ſuch a mighty Monarch, of ſuch abſolute authority, ſuch an infinite power, and ſuch unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the ſpace of an hundred years and more we ſhould hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not ſo much as of their names, eſpecially in an active age, and when this great building of the world, hath ſuch Caſements in it. For it muſt needs ſeem ſtrange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinſon* who paſſed into *Perſia* by the *Caſpian* Sea, nor Sir *Robert Shirley* who ſpent much time in the *Perſian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dodmore Cotton* (the firſt Embaſſador to the great *Mongul*, the other to the *Perſian Sophie*) ſhould tell us any of this Prince, if ſuch Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India* the next neighbouring Country, ſhould bring us home no tidings of him, or the *Jeſuits* with all their diligence ſhould not finde him out. Secondly, I conſider it is a thing improbable, that if there were any ſuch mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, ſo near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he ſhould permit the beggerly Nations of the Eaſtern *Tartars* to conquer that rich and mighty Empire in ſo ſhort a time, he in the mean ſeaſon ſitting ſtill as a dull ſpectator, neither conſidering his own danger, nor putting in for a ſhare of ſo great a booty. Thirdly, I obſerve that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xunchius* the great King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, now raigning in *China*, with a daughter of the King of *Tanguth*; the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental* or Weſtern *Tartars*, by which name the *Chineſes* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vaſt Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, ſpecially ſo called, as being Weſtward of themſelves, and the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which

title

title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durſt have aſſumed unto himſelf, if there had been any ſuch great *Cham* then raigning in *Cathay*, and reſiding in *Cambalu* as our Authors ſpeak of. And Fourthly, I obſerve it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces in the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precopenſes* or *Europæan* Tartars ſubmitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whoſe Succeſſors, they do ſtill continue; and much of the *Aſſatick Tartary* being ſubdued by the *Meſcerites*, the neighbouring Tartars did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that ſo the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees poſſeſs themſelves of the greateſt part of all *Altay*, if not of ſome part of the *Proper Cathay* alſo. And therefore that ſome of the laſt great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other then the Kings of *Tanguth* or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the Succeſſion of the Houſe of *Cingis*. *Antiqua.*

From theſe Premiſes I conclude, that all which hath before been ſpoken touching the great power, authority, and revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, muſt either be referred unto the times of their greateſt glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much diſmembred; or elſe relate, with ſome qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But theſe my *obſervations* and *conſiderations*, with the concluſion iſſuing from them, I willingly ſubmit unto better Judgements.

And thus much for *Tartary*.

OF

OF

CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the North with *Altay*, and the Easterne *Tartars*, from which separated by a continued chain of hills, part of those of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built as they say, by *Tzaintzon*, the 117th King hereof: on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the East with the Orientall Ocean, and on the West with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; from which no other wise separated then by such naturall bounds, and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern parts hereof were utterly unknown unto the Antients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; But for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Countrey which *Ptolomy* called *Sinæ*, or *Sinarem Regio*, by which name the whole Countrey is called at the present by our modern *Latinists*; and from whence that of *China* seems to be derived. By *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the natives *Taine*, and *Taybinco*: which last, signifies no other than a Realm; or by way of excellence, *the Realm*. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzinin*; and the inhabitants call themselves by the name of *Tangis*.

It is said to contain in circuit 69516 *Diez* of *China* measure, which reduced to our *European* measure, will make a compass in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the borders of *India*, to the most *Northern* Provinces of this Continent; 1800 Leagues. But they that say so, speak at randome. For besides that 1800 Leagues in length, must needs carry a greater compass than 3000 Leagues; they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no sober man will grant. And answerable to this vast compass, it is said also to contain no fewer than 15. Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greatest Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of wast ground, or full of unhabitable Desarts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all, to lay down in this *Diagramme* following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns.
in *China*.

Pro.	Cit.	To.	Pro.	Cit.	To.
1 *Canton*	37	190	9 *Honan*	20	102
2 *Foquien*	33	99	10 *Pagnia*	47	150
3 *Olam*	90	130	11 *Taitan*	47	78
4 *Sisnam*	44	150	12 *Quinchen*	45	113
5 *Tolenchia*	51	155	13 *Chagnian*	43	95
6 *Cansay*	24	122	14 *Susnam*	41	105
7 *Minchian*	25	29	15 *Quinsay*	31	114
8 *Ochian*	19	74			

By which it doth appear, that in these fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and besides them 1154 Castles, 4200 Towns unwalled; and such an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Countrey seems to be but one City onely. But here we are to understand that these great Provinces are divided into many lesser, and some of them presented to us (in late stories) under other names, according to the Languages and appellations, of these severall Nations, which either have recourse unto them, or do trafique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with lesse doubt or wonder, in regard that the maine Countrey of *China* it self is called by so many severall names, as before was showen.

It reacheth from the 130th, to the 160th Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, to the 53d degree of *Latitude*. So that it lyeth under all the *Climes* from the third to the ninth, inclusively: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours and fourty minutes; increased in the most Northern parts, to 16 hours, and 3 quarters. Enjoying by this site an air somewhat of the hottest, especially in those parts which ly neer the *Tropick*; but withall very sound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choisest fruits.

The Countrey very rich and fertile, insomuch that in many places they have two, and in some three harvests in a year: well cultivated, and sowed with all manner of grain, and planted with the best kind of fruits; which do not onely come to a speedy maturity, but to more excellencie and perfection than any of these Western parts. The like is also said of their *Pearls*, and *Bezoar*; fairer and of greater vertue than those of *America*, or any other part of the world besides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley,

ley, Rice, Wooll, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of metals, Fruits, Cattle, Sugar, Honey, *Rhubarb*, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, *medicinall woods* called *China-wood*, by the name of the Countrey, Musk and Salt: the customs for which last in one City onely, which is that of *Canton*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crownes. It yieldeth also an *Herb*, out of which they press a delicate juice, which doth not onely serve them instead of wine, but preserveth their health, and freeth them from many of those inconveniences, which the immoderate use of wine doth breed to others. Such store of *Poultry* of all sorts, but of Ducks especially, that in the Town of *Canton* onely before mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the most part of swart complexion, but more or less, according to their neerness to the heats of the Sun; short-nosed, black-eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their garments very long, with long loose sleeves, and their hair much longer then the neighbouring *Tartars*; who ware their hair exceeding short, and their cloathes much closer; to which two fashions so addicted that more of them took up Armes for their hair and habit (when required to conforme in those particulars to the will of the Conquerour) then had done either for their King, or their common liberty. So much delighted with their own fashion and composure, that as the *Negroes* use to paint the devil *White*, as a colour contrary to their own: so when these *Chinois* use to draw the picture of deformed persons, they set him forth in a short coat, broad eyes, long nose, and a bushy beard. They are much given unto their Bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their drink hot, and eat their meat with two sticks of *Ivory*, *Ebonie*, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of linnen. The use of *silver forks* with us, by some of our Spruce gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence to *England*. Their mariages they celebrate most commonly in the *New-Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: in which solemnity they spare for no cost or charge, musick, and Stage-plays, and good cheer many daies together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural industry, and their proficiencie in *Manufactures* and *Mechanick* Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his fathers occupation: which law preventing the roaving about of idle people, and exciting in each breast an emulation of every Art; maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving almes they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blind, as being sufficiently able to get sustenance for themselves by corporall labour; as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing*, before it was known in *Europe*: but print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand, to the left; but from the top of the leaf, downward to the bottom. *Gunnes* also have been used among them time out of mind: whence they are so well conceited of themselves, that they use to say, They themselves have two eyes, the *Europæans* one, and the rest of the people of the world, not one. A pretty flourish of self-praising. Now that *Gunnes* were in use in these Eastern Countries, and consequently also amongst them, even when *Bacchus* made his expedition into *India* (which was some three or four years before, or after the departure of *Israel* out of *Ægypt*,) Sir *Walter Rawleigh* seemeth to affirm: because *Philostratus* in the life of *Apollonius Tyanæus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of *Oxydracæ*, by thunder and lightning; which he interpreteth to be the *Cannon*. But certainly himself in another place of his most excellent book, acknowledgeth this *Philostratus* to have written fabulously; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit so contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Besides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of thunder and lightning from Heaven, *Severus* discomfited *Pescininus Niger*; and by the same means, was himself repulsed from the wall of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as easily maintain, that *Severas* had great Ordnance in his Camp; and the *Arabians*, in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Gertrudenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good inventions, like good wits, do sometimes jump, I dare not determine: sure I am that he first taught it in *Europe*; and as some say, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland*, it is first said to be practised; and at *Mentz*, perfected. Now whereas it is by some doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I must not herein be both a Judge, and a party: but must leave the decision of the point to men unintereſſed. Onely this I dare boldly say, that this most excellent Invention hath been much abused, and prostituted to the lust of every foolish and idle paper-blurrer: the treasury of learning being never so full, and yet never more empty; over-charged so with the froth and scumme of foolish and unnecessary discourses. In which (though all Nations have their share therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accompted the most blame-worthy: who not content to scatter their *poor conceptions* amongst themselves, and print them in their own tongue onely (as our *English Paper Blurers* do); publish them in the *Latine* to the eye of others, and send them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptorum plus est hodie quam muscarum olim cum caletur maxime*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the present.

But not to dive too deep into this dispute, the people, as before was said, are good *Artificers*, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *porcellan* dishes, curious carvings, and the fine painted works which we have in Tables, Leathers, Stuffes, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much ease and pleasure, they are not much given unto the wars which make them the more easy prey to the neighbouring *Tartars*, whose very name hath bread more terrors in them, then their Armes, or Conquests. Insomuch that when *Usunynates*, requested aide of *Zungters* King of the *Eastern Tartars*, against *Lycanyzas*, and his rabble of Rogues, which sacked the Citie of *Peking*, and placed himself in the Throne Imperiall. The *Tartarian* haveing but few men in readiness, advised him to array a good part of his own Soldiers with the Armes and Coulers of the *Tartars*, that on the terror of that sight he might obtaine the cheaper, and more certaine victory; which prudent Councell

was

was perſued, and it proved accordingly; but what they want in courage they ſupply with wit, being ſaid to be a politick and judicious people; but withall very jealous of their women, and great tyrants over them, not ſuffering them to go abroad, or ſit down at the Table if any ſtranger be invited, unleſs he be ſome very neer kinſman. A tyranny or reſtraint, which the poor women give no cauſe for, being ſaid to be very honeſt, and much reſerved; not ſo much as ſhewing themſelves at a window for fear of offence: and if they uſe painting, as moſt of them do, it is rather to preſerve themſelves in the good affections of their husbands, than for any other lewd reſpects. For the moſt part of a fair hair, whereof very curious: binding it about their heads with Ribbands of ſilk, garniſhed with pearles and pretious ſtones. Neat in their dreſs, and very coſtly in their apparel, with reference to their eſtates, and the degree of their husbands: the richer ſort wearing Sattin ſtriped with Gold, and interlaced with very rich *Jewels*; the poorer in Serge, and razed velvets. They have moſt of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cauſe bind them up hard from their very infancy: which they endure patiently though it be very painfull, becauſe a ſmall foot is accounted for ſo great a grace. And yet it is concived that this proceedeth not ſo much from their own curioſity; as from the jealouſy of the men, who have brought it in: to the end that they ſhould not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with ſo ill a grace, and ſo little eaſe, they ſhould have no deſire to ſtirre much abroad. A cuſtome ſo antient and received, that it hath got the force of law; and if any mother ſhould do otherwiſe in breeding their daughters, they would undergo ſome cenſure or mark of infamy. If a deſire to ſee their *Parents* get them the freedome of a viſit, they are carryed to them in cloſe chairs, and attended by ſo many waiters, that it is not poſſible that any man either ſo ſee them, or hold any diſcourſe with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Countrey containeth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it ſeem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we conſider the ſpaciouſneſs of the Countrey; 2. The ſecret goodneſs of the ſtars, and temperature of the air; 3. The abundance of all things neceſſary to life; 4. That it is not lawful for the King to make any war, but meerly *defenſive*, and ſo they enjoy perpetuall peace; 5. That it is not lawfull for any *Chenois* to go out of the Countrey; and 6. That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elſewhere. For the ſhips do reſemble a City, in which they buy, ſell, are born, and die. And on the River which watreth the walls of *Nanquin*, up to *Paquin*, which is no leſs than 300 leagues, the ſhips are ſaid to be ſo thick ranked, that it ſeemeth to be a continuall ſtreet.

The people hereof in matters of *Religion*, are generall all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the creation; *viz.* That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzon*, and *Panzona*, whoſe poſterity remained 90000 years: but they for their wickedneſs being deſtroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzam*, who had two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloath him in his beſt apparell, all perfumed, ſet him in his beſt chair, and there all his neereſt kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is *coffined*, they place him in a room richly furniſhed, and ſet by him a table full of viands and good cheer, with candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which *ceremonies*, we find, how whilſt the funerall was preparing for *Francis* the *French* King, his *Statua* apparelled in royall robes, with the Crown, Scepter, &c. was laid on his bed; whither dinner and ſupper was daily ſerved in, with the like ſtate and ſolemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinois*; when he had lain, as is above ſaid, fifteen dayes, he is carried forth to his funerall, the place whereof is in the fields: for to be buried within the walls, were a thing of all others the moſt wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a proceſſion, come; they burn his body, and with it men, cattell, and other proviſion, for his attendance and ſuſtenance in the other world: as they uſe in the funerals of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* as any, ſacrificing to the very devil, and that upon the ſame reaſon, as the moſt ignorant ſort of the *Gentiles* do; becauſe forſooth he is a wicked and miſchievous creature, and would otherwiſe hurt them.

Yet in the midle of this darkneſs there appeareth ſome light, whereby we may perceive that *Chriſtianity* had ſome footing here, in the times forgoing; For they believe, that *God* is an *immortall ſpirit*; that by him the firſt man was made of nothing; that the ſoul dieth not with the body, but is capable of reward and puniſhment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which leſt they ſhould be thought to be onely ſome remainders of the light of nature, (the learned men amongſt the antient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having ſo much *divinity* as this, without the *Goſpel*): we may here add, that the *Idol* moſt generally worſhipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another; ſignifying, as themſelves affirm, that they have all but one *will*: which makes ſome think they had been antiently inſtructed in the doctrine of the *holy Trinity*. They have alſo the picture of a very *fair woman* holding a *Child* in her Arms, who as they ſay, was daughter of ſome great King; and that ſhe was delivered of that Infant when ſhe was a *Virgin*. And as ſome add, they have portraitures, of the faſhion, and with the marks or *Characters* of the twelve *Apoſtles* (as uſually painted in ſome part of the *Chriſtian* Church): of whom they are able to ſay nothing, but that they were great *Philoſophers* who lived vertuouſly here, and were therefore made *Angels* in Heaven. And finally they hold that there is a great number of Saints, or men eſtated in an eminent degree of happineſs, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, induſtry, or valour, or lived an auſtere life without wronging any man; or otherwiſe deſerved nobly of the commonwealth, as the Authors of ſome ſignall benefit unto their Countrey. Theſe I conceive to be ſome evident remainders of *Chriſtianity*, or the Remembrances rather of that *Chriſtianity*, which formerly was known amongſt them: Firſt planted here (as may be probably collected) by Saint *Thomas*, or ſome of his Diſciples; an antient *Breviary* or Liturgy of the *Indian* Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is ſaid, *Per D.* Thomam *regnum cœlorum volavit & aſcendit ad Sinas*: i. e. that by Saint *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was preached unto thoſe of *China*. Some *Characters* here were alſo of it, in the time of the *Tar-*

tars,

tars, though now obliterated, and not visible but in these defacements. And in this state it stood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jesuites* (commendably industrious in the propagation of the *Christian* faith) not without great danger to themselves, have endeavoured, and in part effected, their *conversion*. For though they have gained but few *Proselytes*, (in regard of those infinite numbers of people which are said to live here) yet some *Converts* they have made amongst them; and thereby sown those seeds of that saving truth (though mingled with some *Tares* of their own) which may in time increase and spread over all the Countrey. For at the present they have not onely got footing in the Ports and Sea Townes; But also in many mid-land Cities, and in some also very farr distant from the Sea, in all of which, they have both Churches for their followers; and Cells or Monasteries for them selves; and finally have gained so farr upon the Court, as not onely to have their doings well approved of by authority Royall; but have also gained unto the faith, the Mother, wife, and eldest Son of *Jungly* the last declared Emperor of the *Chinese*, which eldest Son they have baptized (and be it an *happy Omen*, for the good of Christendome) by the name of *Constantine*.

Hills of great note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolomy*, in his description of the Countrie called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the observation of modern writers, by whom it is affirmed to be so plain and levell, and so unswelled with hills; at all, that they have *Carts* and *Coaches* driven with *sayles*, as ordinarily as drawn with horses, in these parts. Not the less destitute of Rivers for this want of mountains; *Ptolomy* naming in it, 1. *Aspihara*. 2. *Senus*. 3. *Ambastus*, and 4. *Cotiaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Countrey onely. But because the Countrey of the *Sini* of which *Ptolomy* speakes make; but a South part of this great Countrey, and that the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*; passed into it also, its possible enough, that we may finde them all, amongst the cheef Rivers of this Countrey, whensoever we shall come to have a more perfect Corographie hereof then former times have given unto us. In the meane season we may know, that the names by which the principall Rivers are now called, are *Yalo*, which rising in the Northest parts of the Countrey, and passing by the Southern skirts of *Leaotong*, falleth into the Ocean over against the Island of *Corea*, makeing a little Islet at the Influx of it fortified with a strong Castle called *Xainghai*, to secure that entrance. 2. *Croceus*, which arising in the West Borders hereof, first bendeth its course to the Northeast, watering the Citie of *Kaiancheu*, and after passeth directly Eastward till it falls at last into the *Yalo*. 3. *Palyfangas* which issueing out of some of the branches of Mount *Imaus*, first passeth by the great Citie of *Cambalu*, and falls at last into the mighty Lake of *Quinsay*, and finally again contracted to its propper chanell, doth either lose it self in the Eastern Ocean or in the great River of *Kiang* of which more anon. 4. *Cacamaton*, another of these great Rivers, which falleth into the Lake of *Quinsay*, and possibly may be the same which the *Chatayan Tartars* call by the name of *Caramanam*. 5. *Kiang* (or *Quiam* as the *Tartars* calls it) which haveing its originall from Mount *Imaus*, and passing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Countrey which it divideth (like an Equator) into North and South, watering therin the stately Cities, of *Nanguin*, and *Casung* where it is no lesse then 4 miles broad increasing more and more in breadth by the falling in of many other principall Rivers till it came at last to be 10 miles over, and casting up such Mountains of water, that the *Chinese* call it not undeseruedly. *The Son of the Sea*, 6. *Cienthany*, the same (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quiantu*, which rising out of some other spors or branches of the Mount *Imaus*, fall th at last into this Countrey, and passing by the goodly Citie of *Quanychen* on the North, and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its course at last in the Eastern Ocean. 7. *Quei*, a River of the Southern parts; but not much observable. Here are also many great *Lakes*, not inferiour to some Seas in bigness; so plentifull in fish, as if they contended with the soyl, which should be most profitable: and yet so little swelled with winds (though the winds many times blow strongly) that both upon these *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea coasts, they pass up and down in small barks, with no other sail than a bough set up an-end in the middest of them; by the help wereof they make good speed in their navigations. Nor do these *Lakes* or Rivers use to overflow their banks, or endamage the Countrey: but when they do, it brings some fatall ruine with it; as in the year 1557 when the *Lake* of *Sancey* breaking out overwhelmed seven Cities, many Towns, and Villages, and Countrey people, almost infinite numbers.

Towns of most note amongst the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Brama*; and 2. *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*. 3. *Aspithra*. 4. *Achatara*, more within the land; but all four under some degree of Northern *Latitude*. 5. *Thine*, the *Metropolis* of the Countrey, by some called *Sinæ*. 6. *Sarata*. 7. *Catoranagara*; these on the South-side of the line. But in this *Ptolomy* was mistaken; it being found by the more certain observations of our later writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Æquinoctiall*; and so not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a *Southern* Latitude. Here was also a large bay called *Sanarum Sinus*; a Promontory named *Notium*, in the fourth degree of Northern *Latitude*; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Æquinox*. More than this of the Cities of the antient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to say, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are presented to our view in the modern *China*, it hath been said, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities; and those so uniformly built, so conformably to one another, that they differ not in form, and fashion, but in quantity onely. Much like the Cities of *Utopia* mention by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem situs omnibus, eadem; quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; so neer resembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Most of their Cities have the benefit of some navigable River, neer which they stand: the waters whereof serve them both for navigation, and domestick uses. Two great Streets crossing one another in the very middest, so broad, that ten horsemen may ride a breast in the narrowest of them;

them; ſo ſtrait, that a man ſtanding in the middle, may ſee either end: each end being ſhut up with a Gate of great ſtrenghth and beauty; and thoſe Gates fortified and ſtrengthned with thick plates of iron. Generally greater and more ſtately than thoſe of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more ſumptuous buildings for the diſpatch of publique buſineſſes, in theſe parts abound with. Their private houſes for the moſt part are alſo low, and deſtitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principall ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built onely for reſort, or teade, but for ſtrength and ſafety, environed with deep and broad diches, the walls of brick or ſtone, ſtrong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates not only locked but ſealed; not to be opened till unſealed by the principall Magiſtrate. So like they are to one another that we may ſay with *Ovid* on the like occaſion.

——Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diverſa tamen, qualem decet eſſe ſororum.

Which I finde thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandis*,

Amongſt them all no two appeare the ſame,
Nor differed more then Siſters well became.

But not to reſt our ſelves on this generall *Character*, let us take a more particular veiw of ſome of the principall. And in that liſt we find. 1. *Quinſay*, called *Suntien* by the natives, ſituate ſome what towards the South, on the Weſtern borders of this Kingdome, where it confineth on *Cathay* of this Town many thing are reported beyond all beleif, as namely that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the middeſt of it a *Lake* of 30 miles compaſs; in which *Lake* were two goodly Ilands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all neceſſariet, either for majeſty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publique feaſts, and the mariages of the better ſort; The *Lake* nouriſhed with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyſango*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers 12000 bridges are ſaid to have lifted up their ſtately heads: and under whoſe immenſe Arches, great ſhips, with ſails ſpread abroad, and *top* & *top-gallant*, might & did uſually paſs. It is alſo ſaid to have had ten market-places, each of them four miles aſunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the ſides thereof half a mile in length. Here were ſaid alſo to be twelve *Companies* of tradeſmen or Artizans, each company having 12000 ſhops; and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatſoever it was in the former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any beeing at all partly on the removall of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and ſince to *Nanquin* and *Paquin* by the *Princes* of the houſe of *Hombu*, and partly the fury of the wars, and partly by the violence of Earth-quakes; it hath loſt no ſmall part of her ancient beauty, and renown. 2. *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of *ſugar* there made. 3. *Nanquin*, ſeated 9 leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kuny*, whereon ride for the moſt part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings ſhips, beſides ſuch as belong to private men. The Town in compaſs 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and ſtately Gates: The ſtreets in length two leagues, wide, and paved; the number of houſes is about 200000. ſo that it may equall four of the faireſt Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Paquin* or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Provence ſo named (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdome) where the King continually reſideth; and that, either becauſe the air hereof is more healthfull and pleaſant, than any of the other; or becauſe it lieth neer unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetuall warre: ſo that from hence the dangers which may by their invaſions happen unto the Countrey, may with more convenience be either prevented, or remedied. The City ſaid to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magiſtrates, occaſioned by the Kings abode. Environed on the South, with two walls, of ſo great breadth that twelve horſemen may run abreſt upon them; on the North, with one wall onely, but that ſo ſtrong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that ſide as they do on the other. But the greateſt Ornament hereof is the Royall Palace, compaſſed about with a triple wall, the outwardmoſt of which would well inviron a large City, within which ſpace, beſides the many lodgings for *Eunuchs* and other Courtiers, are Groves, hills, fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleaſure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royall Palaces of *Europe*: Firſt built by ſome of the *Tartar* Kings of this Countrey in imitation of the Royall Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Chatay* honored ſometimes with the reſidence of the *Chams* themſelves, which as it gave unto the Citie the name of *Pequin*, that is to ſay the Court or *Citie of the King*, in the language of *China*, ſo gave it occaſion unto ſome Writers to make this and *Cambalu* the ſame, both names being of the ſame ſignification, though in divers languages. 5. *Canton*, ſuppoſed to be the *Caligara* of *Ptolomy*; by the *Chinois* called *Quamchen*, the leaſt of the *Metropolitan* Cities of this Countrey, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large ſtreets, and many goodly bridges. Fortified with deep trenches, 83. Bulwarks, and ſeated in ſo rich a ſoyl both for Fowl and Cattell, that here are ſaid to be eaten dayly 6000 hogs, and 12000 Ducks, beſides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the leaſt of their *Metropolitans*, what may we fancy of the greateſt? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it ſelf; but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reaſon of which reſtraint they have ſetled their Mart at *Macao* the Port Town to this, where they have their Factor and many families; the Town being all moſt wholy peopled by them. 6. *Leaogang* the chief Citie of *Leaolong* (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the firſt Town taken by the Eaſtern

Tartars

Tartars in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themselves an entrance into all the rest. 7. *Ningaiven* made the Metropolis of *Leaolong* after the taking of *Leaogang* by the Eastern *Tartars*. 8. *Sigan* or *Singan*, the chief City of *Xensi* another of the four Northern Provinces, and honoured sometimes with the Kings residence. 9. *Xaoking* on the south side of the said River, one of the fairest Cities of *China*, so inviroued with sweet Waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty as rendring it in a Boat; consisting of large and fair streets paved on both sides with white square stones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whose sides are garnished with the like ornament; and of the same stone there is also built many fair Bridges, and triumphant Arches; the houses being all of the same stone also, which render it the neatest (though not the biggest) City in this mighty Kingdom. 10. *Sucheau* seated in Marishes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those Marishes are of fresh water; the streets and houses founded upon Piles of *Pine-tree*; with many bridges, and conveniences for passage both by land and water. Well traded, as the fittest *Center* for dispersion of Merchandise from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of ships, almost denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the ships of *China* to be here assembled. So infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the head containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12. millions to the King of yearly income, 11. *Hamseu*, or *Hanychen* on the Northside of the River *Cinithang*, out of which furnished with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea (of which distance from the Sea is *Suckeau* also) in compass less than *Namquin*, but better builded: no place in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleasures; but all employed for shops, houses, and other edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one street there are 300. of great mass or workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every street, beset with trees of shade, and most excellent fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high mountain, which gives the eye a gallant prospect into every street. And not far off a pleasant *Lake*, of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with groves and gardens, and the *Lake* it self even cloathed with vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens use to feast, and entertain their idle time with plays and spectacles. Two Cities so replenished with all kinde of pleasures, that the *Chinois* use it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamsu hum*, that is to say, look what the Hall or Presence Chamber is in heaven, that *Hamseu* and *Suckeau* are on earth. 12. *Fochea*, beautified amongst many other stately Structures, with a Magnificent Tower erected on 40. marble pillars, of great elegancy, cost, and bigness, every pillar being 40. spans in height, and 12. in breadth: not to be paralleld, as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13. *Lochiau*, in which are 70000. families. 14. *Colans*, famous for the best *Procellane*. 15. *Scianhay*, by some called *Thiencin*, a station to which an incredible number of Ships resort, both by Sea and River from all parts of this Kingdom; seated within 24. hours sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a strong Garrison, and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholsom soyl, the whole Countrey so set forth with trees, as it it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it conteineth 40000. housholds, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons: it being supposed that here are 200000. persons which attend that Manufacture. 16. *Chinchiamsu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a passage to *Sucheau*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause so clogged with ships in time of winter, that the passage is stopped with the multitudes of them. 17. *Zuangchen* a most rich and beautifull City environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land, to which Ships or Boats may have access. 18. *Caiton* or *Caisung*, seated upon the River *Kiang*, a City once of three Leagues in compass, whose harbour was seldom without 500. ships, and sometimes honoured with the Seat or Residence of the Kings themselves; most miserably destroyed *Anno* 1642. by *Zunchinius* the late King of this Country, who breaking down the dams and sluices to let in the River, for the dislodging of some Thieves and Out Laws, who had then besieged it, gave it so great and forcible a passage towards the Town, that it bare down the greatest part of the houses of it, and therein drowned above 300000. of the Natural Citizens; before which time the Metropolis or chief City of the Province of *Honon*. 19. *Kaiangchen* on the South-side of the River *Croceus*, the richest and the fairest City in these parts of the Country, commodiously seated to command that River. 20. *Chatking* the head City of the Province of *Guangtuang*, for the strength and conveniency of its situation thought fittest for the seat of *Jungly*, the last declared Emperour of the *Chines* against the *Tartars*. 21. *Queilin* the chief City of the Province of *Quaingsi*. 22. *Taitung* the Metropolis or chief City of *Xansi* or *Cansay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not else observable for any thing I finde of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23. *Nancheng* a chief City of the Province of *Kiansi*, of which little memorable; and less of 24. *Cergiron*, but that it is like unto the rest in form and structure.

Besides the Provinces before mentioned, there are three others not directly under the dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to say, 1. the Province of *Suchuen*, 2. the Island of *Coreas*, 3. the Island of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Suchuen*, lieth on the Southwest of this Kingdom of the same nature both for *soyl* and *Air* with the rest of *China*, but possessed by a more warlike people; the women here being trained up to feats of *Arms*, and so well practised on their weapons, that when the Queen hereof went to the aid of the Emperour *Vanley* against the *Tartars*, *Anno* 1618. she took with her a small Army of 3000. women, performing Actions not unworthy the bravest men: the chief City hereof is called *Cingtu*, of great capacity, and so exceeding populous withall, that *Licungzus* (that most barbarous Tyrant) caused no fewer theen 600000. of them (men women and children all indifferently, to be slaughtered in one day before his face, the whole Country governed for a long time by its own Kings of the same *Tai-*

mingian race with the Kings of *China*, from whom having received their Inveſtiture, they were afterwards of abſolute authority over their own ſubjects, who acknowledge no other King but him. And in this ſtate it did continue, till the year 1644. when *Licungzus* whom before I named, entering into this Country with his rabble of Rogues made a Conqueſt of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we ſpake of: diſpeopled the great City of *Cingtu*, butchered at one time twenty thouſand Prieſts, at another time eigteen thouſand Students; and finally committed ſuch unſpeakable outrages, that the *Tartars* in meer pity to that wretched people, ſent an Army againſt him, by which he was vanquiſhed, and ſlain; this Province thereupon ſubmitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is an Iſland of the *Eaſtern Ocean*, not far from the North Eaſt of *China*, over againſt the fall of the River *Galo*. The quality of the ſoyl, the demenſions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The people far more warlike then thoſe of *China*, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Japanites*, with whom they have always either open wars, or uncertain peace. Invaded by thoſe Iſlanders and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Countrey to the King of *China*; who having repulſed the Invaders, reſtored their Country freely to them, without layiug any other Impoſition on them, then of love and gratitude, which obligations thoſe of *Corea* have diſcharged moſt fully. For when *Vanley* the late Emperour of *China* was firſt invaded by the *Tartars*, they ſent unto his aid twelve thouſand men well Armed, and exerciſed in the Wars; increaſing their ſupplies in the time of *Theinkius*, who next but one ſucceeded *Vanley*; drawing the whole ſtorm upon themſelves by thoſe friendly ayds, they were accordingly aſſiſted by the King of *China*, whoſe forces came ſo ſeaſonably in the heat of a Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Iſland, but with ſuch incredible loſs on all ſides, that few or none eſcaped of the Army of *China*, ſeventy thouſand of the *Coreans* ſlain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thouſand of their men behinde them; after this they were unmoleſted, till the fatal and final Conqueſt of the Kingdom of *China*, when ſeeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no poſſibility of reſiſtance, they ſubmitted to them, about the year 1648. upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of perſonal danger, or fear of publique deſolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Iland of the ſame Seas, on the South of *Corea* oppoſite to the City of *Nympus* in the Main Land of *China*; an Iland which being heretofore a dwelling place of poor Clowns and Fiſhermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Lu. Regulus*, choſen by a party of his own to ſucceed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withſtanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himſelf into this Iland with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the Natural *Chineſe*, who choſe rather to forſake their Country, then to conform in hair and habit to the will of the *Tartars*; Inſomuch that there are now found in this Iland threeſcore and ten Cities, with a ſtrong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for ſome happy occaſion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sinæ*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini*, bordering a mountain of that name, and the only one remembred in all this Countrey: more Southward, the *Acadræ*, and *Aſpithræ*; Towards the Sea the *Anabaſtæ*, and *Ichthyophagi* (theſe laſt ſo called from living wholly upon fiſh.) United into one body by the name of *Sinæ*, and known by that name to the *Romaas*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the Weſt with *India extra Gangem*, and on the Eaſt and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the leaſt part of the Modern *China*, *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the Northweſt of it, and the main Ocean waſhing it on the Eaſt and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late Latine Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinenſium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they ſtretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, and whether they ſubdued the Eaſtern and more Northern Nation, or were Conquered by them, it is hard to ſay; nor is it eaſie to reſolve, from what original theſe and the reſt of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythes*: or that it was primitively planted by ſome of the poſterity of *Noah*, before the enterpriſe of *Babel*: which laſt may probably be concluded from the extream populouſneſs of the Country, the many magnificent Cities; their Induſtry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their neighbours, more ignorant in thoſe things than themſelves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* ſeem to give ſome ground, which tell us of three hundred and fourty Kings, which for the ſpace of four thouſand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may be credited) the Countrey being without Rule or ſetled Government, was firſt reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Son of *Ezolcm*; by whom the people were inſtructed in *Phyſick*, *Aſtrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or ſawing Timber, added the uſe of *Ships* and *Houſes*, and many other the effects of *Mechanical* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of his Commanders, ſubdued a great part of the Countrey, he drew them into Towns and Villages; diſtributed them into Offices, and ſeveral Trades, diſpoſing thoſe of the ſame Trade into Streets by themſelves; and commanding that no man without leave from himſelf, or his Officers, ſhould follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He preſcribed them alſo the faſhion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well eſtabliſhed unto his poſterity. Of this race there are ſaid to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years.

The

The laſt of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighboured by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is ſaid to have built that vaſt wall ſpoken of before: extended 400. Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a ſtrong *Rampart* or *Bulwark*, continually garriſoned, and well furniſhed with all warlike neceſſaries. He being ſlain by ſome of his Subjects, burdned and waſted with this work, the race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchoſan* ſucceeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his line it continued under 25. Kings, but ſhrewdly ſhaken towards the cloſe by a Civil War, betwixt *Trunthey* the 23. of his houſe, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well ſetled under *Quiontey* the laſt of this houſe, when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other faction, ſet upon him, and ſlew him. And ſo the majeſty of the blood-royal being trod under foot, the Crown was alſo toſſed from one hand to another, and made a prey unto the ſtrongeſt: there being of the race of this *Tzobu*, eight Kings, reigning 62. years; Of the race of *Dian*, five Kings, who reigned thirty one; Of the race of *Tzoy*, three only, who reigned thirty ſeven; Of the race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 291. years; and eight there were who reigned 120. years, of the houſe of *Tautzom*. Of other upſtart families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings alſo, who governed only for the ſpace of 66. years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himſelf from *Vitey*, the firſt King of this Countrey, obtained the Kingdom; which he, and ſeventeen of his poſterity, for the ſpace of 320. years, governed with much peace and honour. *Forfar*, the laſt King of that Royal Family, foretold by prophecy that he ſhould be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had *an hundred eyes*, neglected the *Advertiſement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that prediction, when vanquiſhed by *Chiſan-baan* (which word ſignifieth *an hundred eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Uſan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but *Feudatary* and Vaſſal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the ſpace of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham*, and dependants on him: the *Chams* themſelves many times paſſing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleaſures or affairs did invite them to it, which occaſioned ſuch a continual entercourſe betwixt thoſe of *Chinay* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated ever ſince that time, of the manners and cuſtoms of each other. But here it is to be obſerved that the *Tartars* ſpent almoſt as much time in the Conqueſt of *China*, as they did in the poſſeſſion of it; the war being firſt begun, *Anno* 1206. finiſhed 1268. the *Tartars* being totally outed when they had reigned here 90. years only, that is to ſay, *Anno* 1358. or thereabouts. For then it hapned that a mean perſon called *Hugh*, conſidering with himſelf the diſcontentedneſs of the *Chineſe* under ſo long Bondage, the luxury of the Tartars, effeminated with the pleaſures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Ciina Cham*, then raigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raiſed to himſelf ſo ſtrong a party, that in ſhort time he drave the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themſelves to thoſe parts of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Nieuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the Weſt, he not only recovered back to *China*, ſuch parts thereof (as had been layed unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by she *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable neighbour to the Cham himſelf. Advances for this great ſervice to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269. he took unto himſelf the name of *Hunguus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which ſignifieth as much as the *famous Worker*, and gave unto his children, and their poſterity, the name of the *Taimingica* Family; which they ſtill continue for the recovery of this Country; great *Tamerlane* muſtereth up his forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the field 350000. horſe and foot, yet nothing could reſiſt the powerfull genious of that mighty Conqueror, who obtained here a ſignal victory with the death of 60000. *Chineſe*, But wiſely moderating his proſperity, and mainly upon his war againſt the Turks, he thought it his beſt and ſafeſt way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own; impoſing on him a fine of 300000. Crowns in ready money, a certain Annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions, which as they were pleaſing to the Victor, ſo they were not deſtructive to the vanquiſhed. By means hereof come to paſs that ſuch a long communication in affairs of ſtate, having paſſed between *China Cathay* (thoſe of *China* in old times lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Caythayans* in our times did over the *Chineſe* there grew a great reſemblance between both Nations, in manners, conditions, arts and manufactures, as before is ſaid, which circumſtances layed together may afford ſome reaſon why ſome Writers eaſily miſguided by ſuch probabilities; *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the ſame. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in thoſe times, onely over part of *Scythia*, but alſo over part of *India*, and moſt of the *Oriental* Ilands. But the Princes of the houſe of *Hombu* finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their deſires; abandoned all the *Acceſſories* and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto, not only by their own moderation, but by ſome misfortunes which befell them. For as we finde that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempeſts, loſt no fewer than 206. of their ſhips and gallies, reſolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had uſed them ſo unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loſs of 800. ſhips, nigh unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Ilands from obedience unto them, and contented themſelves with the bounds which nature had beſtowed on them. And of their moderation herein, we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corea*, a ſmall Iland abutting on the confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*; they ſubmitted themſelves unto the King of *China*: who having repulſed the enemy, and thereby cleared his own Countrey from danger, preſently redelivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and liberry. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this family hath the Realm continued under 15. Kings, for the ſpace of 266. years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this line, ſucceeded his elder brother, unfortunately ſlain with a fall from an horſe. Reported for a Prince of good diſpoſition, great judgement, and a ſevere Juſticiary. This *Boneg* (otherwiſe called *Vanly*) begun his Raign, *Anno* 1573. governing this King-

dome in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40. years and upwards; when causing the Christian Subjects and the Jesuites their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Justice to the *Eastern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his presence in the Province of *Lealoung*, he drew that people into Armes, as if marked out for Executioners of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618. of a part of *Leaolong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Peking*, he contracted some melancholick distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Tiachangus*, who having held it but four months left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinkius*, a valiant Prince and fortunate against the *Tartars*, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627. he was succeeded in that Kingdome by his Broeher *Zonchinius* a Prince of contrary dispostion, cruelly bent, a great Oppressor of his Subjects, and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, then for love of him) untill the year 1640. or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine arise in 8. Companies or Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungzus* and *Changhienchangus*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several wayes, the last of them falling into *Suchmen*, whose vilanies and deserved destruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate vilain, in the year 1641. besieged *Caifung* the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches, on the ruine whereof by the Kings improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province or *Kenfi*, he took to himself the title of King, and would be called *Lycunzus* the *Prosperous*; and not long after easing the people of the Taxes which the avaritious King had imposed upon them, puting the Tax masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his curteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperor. *Zunchinius* succeeds his Brother, hindred by Factions in the Court, from sending seasonable forces against the Rebels, who passing over the great River *Croceus* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Pallace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperor seeing no way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, *Anno* 1644. his example therein followed by the Empress and his principally servants. The bodie of the Emporor cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Kenfi* by *Usangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaolong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge these Out-rages, the Rebels taking with them all the wealth and treasure which the Emperours of the *Taimingian* family had amassed together in the space of 260. years and upwards. *Zungleus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking* died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years old to succed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully discharged the trust reposed in them; Infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occasion, and these not only of the Eastern but the Western Nations.

By these the Infant King was proclaimed Emperour of *China*, by the name of *Xanchius*, stiling the new Imperial family by the name of *Taiting*, the eldest of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of Affairs.

Usangueius by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Kenfi*, out of which he shortly drove the Rebels, and possessed himself of it; *Lycungzus* being either killed in the fight, or else otherwise lost. *Hungquengus* Nephew to *Varley*, and Cozen Germane *Zunchinius* elected Emperor by the *Chineses* of the Southern parts, is opposed herein by one that pretended himself to be the eldest Son of *Zunchinius*; which division gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their forces, and the great City of *Narquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperor being shortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Wals of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count most noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinius* discovered and served in the same sort also. And though *Loangus* first, and afterwards *Iungly*, and *Lu Regulus*, were chosen and declared Emperors by their several parties, *Anno* 1648. yet nothing could prevail against the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Loangus* being forced to put himself into their power, *Iungly* to flie into the Mountains, and *Lu Regulus* to secure himself in the Isle of *Cheuxan*.

What hath succeeded since that year future times will shew.

The Government of this Kingdom is meerly *tyrannicall*; there being no other Lord but the King, no title of dignity or nobility ever known amongst them; nor tol or duty paid unto any but to him: the younger Princes of the blood being maintained by *stipends*, and *annual pensions*, large enough to support their trains, but withou any Lands or *Tenants*, for fear of drawing on them any great *dependances*. The King alone is the general Landlord, and him the subjects do not onely reverence as a Prince, and adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the Kings portraiture made of gold, which is alwayes covered with a veil: and at every New-moon, the Magistrate and other inferiour Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were the King himself. By these and other artifices of like contrivement the Common people are kept in such awe and fear, that they are rather slaves than subjects: calling their King the *lamp of the world*, *and Son of the evershining Sun*, without whose light they were able to see nothing.

In

In every Province, except *Paquin* and *Tolenchia* onely, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Royes*, maintained by liberall ſtipends from the publique treaſury: but thoſe he governeth by himſelf. Some laws they have and thoſe affirmed to have been written 2000 years ſince, as is like enough they were. So ſtrongly do they ſavour of the ignorance and *Atheiſm* of the darkeſt times: the manner of life by them allowed, moſt *obſcence* and ſhameleſs; their *idolatries*, moſt groſs and palpable; their *exoriſms* ridiculous, and the proſtitution of their *Virgins* moſt abhominable; and the variety of ſenſuall prophanations, to an illuminated mind moſt baſe and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their courſe of life (notwithſtanding the brags which they make of themſelves) but their Arts and induſtry.

The *forces* which this King is able to draw into the Field muſt needs be infinite, conſidering that incredible number of ſubjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people; *Italy*, with the Iſles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above ſeven Millions, and the Kingdome of *Engeland* about four: this Countrey onely is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies muſt be ſo much greater, than can be ordinarily raiſed out of thoſe Countries. But becauſe it may be thought that his ſubjects, though more in number, may be leſs trained to the warres than thoſe of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by ſuch as have taken an eſtimate of the forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continuall readineſs. And by that eſtimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557 (though a time of peace) there were diſperſed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horſe. Which not with ſtanding it may be ſaid and not unfitly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongſt ſuch multitudes of men; but few good Soldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before obſerved of them, in their generall *Character*. Nor is he leſs powerfull for *Sea-ſervice*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his coſts, in continuall attendance; and many more ready to ſet out when there is occaſion: inſomuch that the *Chinois* uſe to ſay in the way of a *Proverb*, that their King is able to make a bridge of ſhips from *China* to *Malsea*, which are 500 leagues aſunder. Some of theſe ſhips (whereof the King hath above a thouſand of his own, beſides thoſe of his ſubjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Souldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded anſwerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raiſe greater forces than any, from his own eſtates; ſo doth he alſo *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs do require it of him: his ordinary ſtint being 300000 foot, and 200000 horſe; without which compleat number (not onely in the *muſter-rols*, but in bodies of men) he vouchſafes not to go into the field.

Anſwerable unto theſe great *Levies* of men, muſt be his *Revenue*: which they who have travelled in this ſearch, (if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 120 millions of Crowns: anſwered unto him out of the profit of the *mines* of Gold, Silver, and other metalls; the *tenth* of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; the *tolls* impoſed on that uſpeakable quantity of merchandiſe, which paſſeth on ſo many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *cuſtomes* taken of all thoſe rich wares, which are brought into *Europe*; and the *Gabell* laid on Salt, in all parts of his Kingdome. Out of which ſumme, the payment of his Fleet diſcharged, the entertainment of the Souldiers ſatisfied, and his Court defraied; there remaineth 40 millions of Crowns *de claro* to be diſpoſed of, either in his treaſury, or private pleaſures, or the works of magnificence, and oſtentation.

And thus far alſo according to the generall current of received opinions have I followed the deſcription and affaires of *China*, as a diſtinct Countrey from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reaſons which might incline us to believe them, to be one and the ſame, for firſt it is alleaged in favour of this opinion that it is neither new nor ſtrang, for one and the ſame Countrey, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of ſeverall Nations; that Countrey which we call *Germanny* being by the Natives called *Duchland*, not long ſince known moſt commonly by the name of *Almaine*, that part of *Britane* which we call, *Wales* being by the *Franch* called *Galles*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; thoſe mountanous people which the *Romans* know by the name of *Rhæti*, being by ſome of our Northern Latiniſts called *Canſederati Cani*, *Campi Camini*, by *Ammianus Morcellinas*, *Grauntpuntnor*, by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Griſons*, by the *French*, which fower laſt names do carry all the ſame ſence, and ſignification though in different words; that *China* it ſelf, is by the Natives called *Tabinco*, *Tzinin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglag*; that as it can not be inforced from the like diverſitie of appallations that *Almanie*, *Germanie*, and *Duch Land* make there ſeverall Countries (*& ſic de Cæteris*) ſo neither can it be concluded on the ſame grounds that *China* and *Cathay* make two ſeverall Empires. In the next place it is alleaged that ſince by later voyages and navigations, this mighty Kingdome hath been diſcovered, and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*; the name and Empire of *Cathay*, hath grown out of knowledge. For proofe whereof they bring in the *Itinerarie* of *Benedictus Goes*, a *Ieſuite*, who in the year 1605. craſſing from the Northeaſt parts of *Perſia* to the Realme of *China*, and naming all the ſeverall Countries, and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any ſuch Countrey as *Cathay*, nor any ſuch Prince as the great *Cham* thereof: telling us alſo that *Martin Martinias*, who had lived long in *China* in his Books entituled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Imaus*, under the generall name and Nation of the Weſtern *Tartars*, not taking notice of any ſuch Countrey as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongſt them, then the King of *Tanguth*; and that *Ramuſio* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reperteth ſome conference which he had, with *Chaggimemet* a Perſian Merchant, who told him that he had ſeen, *Campion* and *Succuir* Cities of *Cathay*, in the raigne of *Deimercan*, which muſt be underſtood of *Cathay* in the generall Nation, as it

comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imaus*, it being well known that *Campion* and *Succuir* are two Cities of *Tanguth*, and not of the *propper Cathay*, or *Cathag* especially so called. In the third rank of prooses they instance in the similitudes, or resemblances betwixt both Countries, and both people, which are so great and visible in temperature of Air, fertilitie of soyl, and plesantnesse of situation, in customes, in ingenuitie, arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identitie, or sameneſſe with them; which sameneſſe or Identitie they do also finde, in *Pequin* the chief Citie of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the supposed chief Citie of *Cathay*, being two words of the same sence, and signification though of divers sounds; for *Pequin* signfieth the Court or Citie of the King in the *Chinian* langugue, and *Cambalu* signifieth the Court or Citie of the *Cham*, in the languge of *Tartary*. The like they also have observed of the Royall Palaces, adjoyning to the said two Cities, so like in the vast greatneſſe and extent of the outer walls, the Parks and Forrests intermingled, the magnifisent form and structure of the inner Palaces with all the rest of the particulars before recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the same, adding withall that such an immense, and unparalleld a work, as the great *Chams* Palace called *Xamdu*, most needs require more hands & a longer time, then the great *Chams* (considering their continuall wars, and little interualls of leasure, could bestow upon it. But their 4 head prooses, which seemes indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimonie of *Benedict Goes* above mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Countrey as *Cathay*, in so long a journy, telleth us that at *Ciales* a Citie of the Kingdome of *Cascar*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same; 2ly. from the Testimonie of and old *Mahametan* Pilgrime, who returning from *Meca* by *Lahor* (the Royall seat and Citie of the great *Mongull*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu* the chief Citie of *Cathay*, which Kingdome had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malaca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into that Countrey by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudest lyes that ever came from the mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrime* either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially so called, no accesse thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malaca*, which the Pilgrime dreamt of 3ly. a clearer Testimonie of some other *Mahometans* repairing to *Paquin* every fift year, either as Merchants or Embassadors, or as both together; by whom the Jesuites there living were informed, that in the Dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongull*, from whence they came, the Kingdome of *China* was called by no other name, then by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Countrey of that name, but *China* only. And 4ly. from the asseverance of *Pantogia*; another *Jesuite* who in his letttrs dated from *Paquin* much blameth our ordinary maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*, whereas (saith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay*, and this *Paquin* where we now are is the Citie of *Cambalu*, which two last evidences coming from the pen of one who had lived many years in *China*; and not conducing any way to the advancement of the *Catholique* cause, most needs be thought to carry some great credit, and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then act *Penelopes* part, and ravelling all the web which before was woven, *Atque iterum in lanas omne redibit opus*, in the Poets language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole peece as possibly we can. I shall thus proceed first then it is be conceived that *Cathay* specially so called was an aggregate bodie, containing many severall Kingdomes, and distinct Estates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependants on them: as antiently in the Realme of *France*, besides the King of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Borgundie*, a King of *Metz* a King of *Saissons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandie*, a Duke of *Bretayne*, a Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Earle of *Champagne*, and Earle of *Tholouse*, all absolute and an uncontrolable in their owne Estates. And then the Kingdome of *Tanguth* which we placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdomes of *Cathay*; and *Deimercan* whom we ranked in the Catologue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only, and no more then so. 2ly. It must be taken for granted, that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realme of *Cathay*, and after wards by the helpe of that people, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same latitude and parrallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soyl and Aire; giveing unto the Southeren parts (which was the true and propper Countrey of the *Sinæ*) the name of *Mangi*, transfered afterwards by the *Tartars* to the Countrey generally: and having thus extended the name and Territorie of *Cathay*, the first foundation of their greatnes, they fixed their Regall seat in the Citie of *Naguin*, which by a new Tartarian name (but of the same Seal and signification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the first place the *French* Kings of the *Carroline* familie, communicated the name of *France* (East *France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germanie*, then conquered by them; the *Gastillians* of *Spaine* extended the uame of *Casteile* on every side, as they gat ground upon the *Mores*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that continent; and *Roger* Earle of *Cicilie*, having conquered the Eastern parts of *Italie* (which now make up the Kingdome of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the forther *Cicilie*, and himself to be Crowned King of both, by the name of King of both the *Cicilies*. And in the second place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germanie*, are by the *Franch* called Dukes *De Deux-ponts*, by the late Latine Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same sence and signification; the Town of *Shertzogen Bosch* is by the *Franch* called *Bois le Duc*, by Latine Writers *Siloa-ducis*; and here at home the Military Towns or Statians of *Lectodurum*, *Colonia*, *Præsidium*, *Papidem*, and *Portus Magnus*, were turned by the conquering Saxons (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warwick*, *Stoneham*, and *Portzmuch*, commonly now

now called *Portſmouth*; *Caſtrum Allatum* into *Edinborg* by the Picts unconquered *Britaines*. 3ly. We may take it for a truth unqueſtioned, that *Hombu* having expulſed the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed his Royall ſeat at *Nanquin*, on the South ſide of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlanes* engagements beyond the Mountaines and the cantonizing of that great Empire amongſt his children, expelled them out of the North parts alſo; his ſucceſſors there upon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from hence forth known again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that daingerous Enemie. *Jeruſalem*, commanded to be called the *Elia* by the Emperour *Adrian*, and London named *Auguſta* Trinobantum by ſome other of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to ther old names again, aſſoon as that authoritie failed which impoſed the new. And 4ly. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might ſtill retain the name of *Cathay*, and being moſt traded by the *Perſian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be beſt known by that name in their ſeverall Countries: ſo by dividing this great Empire into ſo many parts, removing the Emperiall Seat to *Samerland*, on the other ſide of the mountaines, entring many new eſtates one of the antient Prefectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it ſelf, and parcelling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Caſcar*, and ſuch other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themſelves in thoſe opertunities, the true *Cathay* might looſe that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to thoſe parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, left thoſe names at home, in their antient and native habitations, which ſtill remain unto thoſe Countries that were conquered by them. Theſe reaſons and conſiderations I willingly ſubmit to the Readers Judgment, being my ſelf ſo great a *Sceptick* in this point that I dare determine nothing poſitively on either ſide. It is enough that I have layed the cauſe open without partialitie, or byaſſing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

OF

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the East, with the Oriental Ocean, and some part of *China*; or as some others say with a great Country called *Mang* (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the West, with the *Persian* Empire; on the North, with some branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divide it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the neareſt of eſteem and note in all the Country, towards theſe parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largeſt Country of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of ſuch a great extent on the Sea-coaſts of it, that it was as much as a ſhip could ſail in 40. days. Extended from 106, to 159. degrees of *Longitude*; and from the *Æquator* to the 44th. degree of Northern *Latitude*. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the firſt, to the end of the ſixt *Clime*: the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12. hours only, and in the parts moſt North, 15. hours and an half.

Concerning the monſtrous Fables, which the ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Countrey, give me leave to ſay, that as the Poets uſed of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with ſtrange fixions, and prodigious *metamorphoſes*; or as our modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the world, fill up thoſe unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain deſcription, with ſtrange pictures and uncouth ſhapes of beaſts and trees; ſo alſo the Writers in former ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with ſuch impoſſible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the fables of men with dogs heads; of men with one leg only, yet of great ſwiftneſs; of ſuch as live by ſent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their foreheads; and of others, whoſe ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported alſo that this people by eating a dragons heart and liver, attain to the underſtanding of the languages of beaſts; that they can make themſelves, when they liſt, inviſible; that they have two tubs whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But theſe relations, and the reſt of this ſtrain, I doubt not but the underſtanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the ſame mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem tranſcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare auſus ſum quæ dubito, nec ſubducere ſuſtineo quæ accepi*: I may perhaps relate ſome things which I do not credit, but ſhall not let them paſs without ſome cenſure; that ſo I neither may impoſe any thing on the Readers belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducible to his contentation.

The Countrey, (to report no more of it than it doth deſerve,) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air; two Summers, (or one as long as two,) and a double encreaſe; bleſt with all things which are ither neceſſary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious ſtones; with ſpices of all ſorts, and Civetts; with the beſt *medicinable* drugs, metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all ſorts of Cattel, except horſes. Somewhat defective alſo in Wheat and Vines, that ſo this Countrey might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed alſo for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants. Theſe laſt more favouring of reaſon and human ingenuity, or elſe more tractable and docile, than any brute Creature whatſoever. Of this we have a fair inſtance in the ſtory of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* ſate on, finding his Maſter ſtrong and luſty, ruſhed boldly into the thickeſt of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himſelf out of the battel, kneeled dwon, and into his own trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his maſter. The greatneſs of the Creature makes it yet more admirable, that either he ſhould have ſoul enough of his own, to actuate ſo vaſt a body; or being of ſuch ſtrength and bigneſs ſhould ſubmit himſelf to the inſtructions of another: ſome of theſe *Indian* Elephants, as *Ælianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickneſs about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford leſs plenty or variety, than we find on ſhore: yielding abundance of the richeſt and faireſt Pearls, huge ſholes of fiſh, and amongſt them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that land-monſter the *Elephant*. For though the ordinary dimenſion of the Whale be but 36 *Cubits* in length, and eigh in thickneſs: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is ſaid to have meaſured one, in theſe *Indian* Seas, which was of the length of 50 *Cubites*, and of breadth proportionable: not to ſay any thing of that incredible report of *Plinie*, who ſpeaketh of ſome *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threeſcore Foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five ſorts, and as many *Religions*, that is to ſay the Naturall *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2.ly. *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, poſ-

ſeſſed

ſeſſed themſelves of ſome Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Countrey 3ly. *Jews*, ſcattered and diſperſed (as in other places) into all parts of it; 4ly. *Tartars*; in thoſe parts and Provinces which are under the *Great Mongul*; and 5ly. *Portugueze*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Iſlands, but brag as if they had made a conqueſt of all the Countrey. Which notwithſtanding, conſidering that the Naturall *Indians* are by far the greateſt number, we muſt relate to them only in the *Character*, which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of ſtature, ſtrong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negreos*: of manners Civill, and ingenuous, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The Common ſort but meanly clad, for the moſt part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their ſhame. But thoſe of greater eſtates and fortunes (as they have amongſt them many antient and Noble families) obſerve a majeſty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; ſweetning the laſt with oils, and perfumes, and adorning themſelves with Jewels, Peatls, and other Ornaments befitting, They eat no fleſh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey, and other things without life.

The *Women* not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and looſe, but covered with a thin vail of *Calicut Lawn*. Their ears hung with many rings, ſo great and heavy, that they are torn, and ſtretched to much diſproportion; their noſes alſo ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their eſtate and quality. Servilely obſequious to their husbands, whoſe affections they divide amongſt them without jarre or jealouſy: the men allowed here, as in all the Eaſt, the uſe of many wives, whom they buy of their parents for a yoke of Oxen; and many mary as often as they liſt. In which they have too great a privilege above the women, who after the deceaſe of their common husband, do either burn in the ſame flame with him, or elſe are forced to doom themſelves to perpetuall Widow-Hood. But of this we may ſpeak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted in theſe Countries, by Saint *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of *Chriſtianity* take denomination; and unto whom the Records and *Miniments* of that Church do aſcribe their converſion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the *Chaldean* tongue, and tranſlated into *Latine* by Father *John Maria Campanin* a *Jeſuite*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis, &c. i. e.* By Saint *Thomas*, the errors of Idolatry vaniſhed out of the *Indies*; by Saint *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, and the Adoption of Sonnes; by Saint *Thomas*, they believed and confeſſed the Father, the Son, and Holy-Ghoſt; by Saint *Thomas*, they kept the faith received of one God; And finally by Saint *Thomas*, the ſplendour of ſaving doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body as they ſay, intombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coaſt of *Choromandell*; the truth of which tradition I diſpute not here. But this plantation of the Goſpel by the hand of Saint *Thomas* was not univerſal over all the Countrey; but in ſome parts and Provinces only: or elſe was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heatheniſm*. For in the reign of *Conſtantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further-ſide of the River *Ganges* (for ſo I underſtand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the miniſtery of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having ſpent the greateſt part of his time amongſt them, was employed in that ſervice, and conſecrated the firſt Biſhop (for thoſe Churches) by the great *Athanaſius* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by Soint *Thomas*, the remainder of *Chriſtians* here being, aſcribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*. Governed originally by their own Biſhops, ſubordinate to an Archbiſhop of their own alſo, reſiding at *Augamale* fifteen miles from *Cochin*; one of the chief Cities of this Countrey: who for long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Muſal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by theſe *Chriſtians* of *India* he is ſtill termed. The number of the *Chriſtians* computed at 15 or 16 thouſand familes; or at 70000 perſons in the accompt of other: inhabiting for the moſt part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſtretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*. The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Their adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Euchariſt in bread ſeaſoned with ſalt; 2. Adminiſtring in both kinds, but uſing inſtead of wine (which is ſcatce or not all to be had in this Countrie) the juice of raiſins ſoftned in water over night, and ſo preſſed forth; 3. Not baptizing children untill 40 dayes old, except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Croſs; 5. Allowing one mariage to their Prieſts, but debaring the ſecond; 6. In painting God with three heads on one body, to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the uſe of *extreme Unction*; and 8. Not acknowledging the Popes Supremacie: but beſides theſe remainders of thoſe antient *Chriſtians*, there are ſome others now of late of a new plantation, by the paines and travell of the Jeſuites, though not with ſuch ſucceſſe here, as they found in *China*: many of the Inhabitans partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the Power of the great *Mongull*, having embraced *Mahometaniſme*; and being conſequently leſſes inclinable to admit the Goſpell, then when they ware in the condition of their naturall *Gentiliſme*. Yet have they made ſuch good progreſſe in it, that *Echebar* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the uſe of the *Chriſtians* in the Citie of *Agra* (the Regall Citie of that Empire) but committed to the care of the Jeſuitess the education of two Princes of the Regall Familie. And poſſibly they might have made a great increaſe of *Chriſtians* before this time, had they not been oppoſed therein, by *Sultan Coroen*, a bitter Enemie to their proceeding, in the raigne of his Father, and no great favorour of them ſince. Inſomuch that hearing a Jeſuites, called *Franſiſco Carſi* report unto his Father how miraculouſly a wooden Croſſe of his had eſcaped the fire; he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire preſently made, and the ſame Croſſe to be thrown into it, upon theſe conditions, that if the Croſſe conſumed not his Father and himſelf would became *Chriſtians*; but if it did, the Jeſuite ſhould be burned in the ſame fire with it. A firery tryalls which the poor Jeſuite had much a doe to put

off

off, and preſerve his credit. Howſoever by their practiſing amongſt the old Chriſtians they have gained one point of very great conſequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599. by the ſolicitation of the Jeſuits and the other Indian Chriſtians, renounced their obedience to the *Patriarch* of *Muſal*, and ſubmitted their Churches to the Juriſdiction of the *Pope* of *Rome*, in a *National Synod* held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Arch-biſhop of *Goa* (the Primate of the *Portugals* in thoſe parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Romiſh* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and reformed by the ſaid Arch-biſhop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But theſe comparatively to the reſt, come not to an handfull; the main body of the People wallowing in their *Gentiliſm*; and ſtill retaining many of thoſe ancient Cuſtoms, which they uſed of old: as *viz.* 1. Not knowing their Wives after they have born them two children: 2. Nor keeping them, if after five years *cohabitation*, they can raiſe no iſſue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 3. Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy: 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or ſickneſs. To theſe they have ſince added others of a latter invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to ſpeak anon. Their Prieſts or learned men, in the time of old were called *Brachmanes* from one *Brachman*, the preſcriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom inſtructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philoſophy*; ſome of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnoſophiſts*; who were to them as the *Chaldæi*, to the *Aſſyrians*; the *Magi*, to the *Perſians*; and the *Druides*, to the ancient *Britans*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the moſt part an auſtere and ſolitary life, in Caves and Deſarts; feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abſtaining from all carnal pleaſures; but that time paſt, they may indulge themſelves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Prieſts. Of theſe, the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Countrey ſurprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many ſtrange queſtions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himſelf confeſſed) ſome not unſatisfying though ſtrange anſwers. To theſe *Gymnoſophiſts*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now ſucceed, both in place and authority; but differ from them moſt extreamly in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives: theſe *Bramaines* being the moſt impure, libidinous, and ſenſual beaſts in all the Countrey; priviledged with the firſt nights lodging of every Bride, which when ſated with their filthy luſt, they ſell, or traffick with, to ſtrangers, ſerving as *Stallions* to old men, and as *Pandars* to young; ſo fleſhed in wickedneſs, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and ſhape. *Makometaniſm* is alſo entertained in a great part of the Countrey, firſt brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Perſians*, unto whom conterminous; but much increaſed by the victories of the *Great Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath cauſed it to be propagated in moſt parts of his large dominions.

Mountains of moſt note in it, beſides *Caucaſus*, and ſome other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Perſian* Empires, 1. *Sardonix*, full of Mines of thoſe precious ſtones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2. *Vindius*. 3. *Bittigo*. 4. *Adiſathras*. 5. Thoſe called *Apocopi*, and 6. Thoſe named *Orodii*. And on the further ſide of *Ganges*. 7. *Bepyrrus*. 8. *Mæandrus*. 9. Thoſe called *Damuſi*, and 10. *Semanthinus*; part of this laſt extending alſo unto *China*. All of them very fruitfull in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all is that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern part of the great Mountain *Imaus* ſpoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucaſus*, where it croſſeth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Induſtan*, or the hither *India* (which is divideth into Eaſt and Weſt) for the ſpace of 400. leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Poſtellus* a Learned Writer, to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the 10th. of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sons of *Joktan*, *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. With probability enough, for ought I can ſee; the ſons of *Joktan* being ſetled in theſe parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire which lie neareſt to them. And ſo far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Poſtell*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons Indiæ*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of them grounding on Saint *Hierom*, who expreſly ſaith, *Sophera mons Orientis in* India, *juxta quem habitaverunt filii* Jectam, i.e. that *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the Eaſt in *India*; neer to which dwelt the Sons of *Jocktam*. More probably, without doubt, than that we ſhould transfer it into *America*, as I ſee ſome do; and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other and thence as ſome will have it to the Streights of *Magellan*. Which ſhould we grant, we muſt not look for *Joktan*, or the ſons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eaſtern parts of *Aſia*, where moſt probably they may be found; but we muſt croſs the vaſt Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; beſides, that granting this for true, we muſt allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moſes*, which no Author that I ever met with did ſo much as dream of.

Rivers of moſt note are, 1. *Indus*, which ariſeth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients calle *Paropamiſus*, the Moderns, *Naugrocot*; and having received into it 19. other Rivers, after a courſe of 900. miles, falleth into the Ocean at ſeven Mouths, that is to ſay, 1. *Sagappa*, being the moſt Weſtern, 2. *Sinthum*, 3. *Aureum*, 4. *Cariphi*, 5. *Sappara*, 6. *Sabalaſſa*, 7. *Lonibare*, the moſt Eaſtward. But five of theſe being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country, and that ſo celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who ſailed down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage holding

holding above five moneths, of which there is ſaid to have paſſed no day wherein he ſailed not 15. miles, or 600. Furlongs. 2. *Ganges*, which riſeth as ſome ſay from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is firſt collected into a Lake, or Pool (ſuppoſed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it paſſeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, 30. navigable Rivers. In the narroweſt place of eight miles breadth, in the broadeſt 20. ſeldom ſo ſhallow but that the depth thereof is 100. foot, or 20. *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at laſt into the Sea; the firſt of which moſt towards the Weſt, is called *Cambyſum*, 2. *Magnum*, 3. *Camberychum*, 4. *Pſeudoſtomum*, and 5. that which lyeth furtheſt towards the Eaſt, called *Autiboli*. This River erroneouſly ſuppoſed to be that *Piſon* which watred *Paradiſe*: and to encreaſe the reputation of the error, we finde it countenanced by *Ioſephus*, and other no leſs eminent names; and alſo backed by ſome traditions of the people which inhabit neer it. By whom it is affirmed that one of the *Bengalan* Kings ſent men up the River, who came at laſt to a pleaſant place, bleſt with a fragrant Earth, ſweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth ſo poſſeſs them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangaſagie*, ſuch as are weary of this world uſe to caſt themſelves into the current, and are preſently devoured by a fiſh called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to finde a quick paſſage to *Paradiſe*. The occaſion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from thoſe words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Piſon*, that it compaſſed the land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River muſt be *Piſon*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For beſides *Havilah* the ſon of *Iocktan*, planted in ſome part of *India*; there was another *Havilah* the ſon of *Chus*, ſetled in the land of *Havilah* or *Chuſiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this laſt indeed watered by the River *Piſon*, and the firſt by *Ganges*; too far aſunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or miſtaken one for another. But not leſs famous, becauſe none of thoſe which neighboured the garden of *Eden*; perhaps of greater fame than any of thoſe which did. For to this River do the ſuperſtitious *Indians* make their ſolemn Pilgrimages; vainly conceiving that they ſhall be ſure of their eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the People aſcribe the fertility of the Countreys adjoyning, as the *Ægyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this preſent is, divided into two main parts, (each ſubdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1. *India intra Gangem*, 2. *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will firſt take a brief ſurvey, with reference to the ſtate and ſtory of it in preceding times; and then conſider them with reference to the preſent age.

Intra Gangem.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea, and after that with that large and ſpacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*: on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, *Arachoſia*, *Gedroſia*, Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas: on the North, where it is broadeſt, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a ſharp point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being ſituate on this ſide of *Ganges*; by the moderns, *Indoſtan*.

The Country of the ſame nature formerly, as it is at the preſent, not altered but by changing of the channels of *Indus*; which being ſhifted by an *Earthquake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a ſandy Deſart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and enriching all the land which it overfloweth. The people of thoſe elder times much like the *Scythians*, eſpecially in their courſe of life; living without Cities, Temples, Houſes, in their moveable Tents: their food the bark of a tree called *Tala*, which ſerved for bread; and the fleſh of Bucks, Does, and other Veniſon, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found amongſt them. Leſs warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they: the very women contending eagerly amongſt themſelves, which ſhould accompany their Husband (one husband having many wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus Saint *Hierome*, *Hæ igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio ſumma certantium eſt ac teſtimonium caſtitatis dignam morte cenſeri.* A Cuſtom ſtill retained amongſt them; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaſpes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him only) called *Bidaſpes*, one of the furtheſt boands of *Alexanders* conqueſts. 2. *Suaſtus*, 3. *Coa*, 4. *Aceſines*, very memorable in the Geſts of *Alexander*. 5. *Sandabilis*, 6. *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains, and all falling (*Hydaſpes* with three other Rivers firſt received into it) into the greater bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Serabus*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragonas*, iſſuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adiſathris*. 13. *Tindis*, from the hill called *Vxentius*: and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains; with many others of leſs note. By what names called at the preſent, I determine not; nor finde I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtleſs to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Gebcha*, 3. *Ray*, 4. *Chenao*, 5. *Rebeth*, all tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harunda*, 8. *Chambel*. 9. *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with ſuch others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name us, ſhall occaſionally be touched on in that which followeth. Beſides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Geſts of *Alexander*,

ander, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with woods; memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexanders* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Country so exceeding populous in time of *Ptolomy*, that it afforded him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the world. Of which 1. *Corniara*, 2. *Nigama*, 3. *Sageda*. 4. *Rarassa*, 5. *Masopelle*, and 6. *Pityndra*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of their several and respective Nations. 7. *Ozene*, 8. *Sora*, 9. *Palibothra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocura*, 13. *Garara*, 14. *Modura*, 15. *Orthura*, and 16. *Malanga*, mentioned as the Royal seats of several Princes, by the name of *Regiæ*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyndis*, 19. *Argari*, 20. *Curula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River so called. 22. *Palura*, on the shores of the Golf of *Bengala*, and 23. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysum*. 24. *Tilegramocum*; marked out above the rest with the name of *Civitates*, (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally 25. *Monogassum*, 26. *Simylla*, neer a Promontory of the same name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maziris*, 29. *Elancorum*. 30. *Colchi*, 31. *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34. *Melange*, 35. *Maliarpha*, 36. *Contacissyla*, 37. *Nosygne*. 38. *Barygaza*. Specified as the most noted and celebrious *Empories*; besides 39. *Canthymus*, 40. *Stathmus*, (and 41. a Road opposite to *Chrysas*) two commodious *Stations* or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these places is the most we finde of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recital, only to shew how populous and well planted this Countrey was in the time of my Author.

Of lesse name, but of more note in the course of story, 1. *Nysa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conquest, and called thus by the name of his *Nurse*, to preserve her memory; his mother dying in Child-birth of him. Repleniished by him with his sick and wounded Souldiers, whose posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who spared the City and the people for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Bays, Vines, and Ivy, whose shady branches covered the roof of it. In the midst thereof an Image, with all the Instruments belonging to a plentifull *Vintage*, all of gold or silver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala* as *Ptolomy* calleth it, seated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaspes*, in the Region called *Varsa*; and built most probably by *Taxiles* a puissant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sun*, and therein with an *Ivory* Image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statua of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of King *Porus* made in Copper. The floor of *Mosaical* work pouldred with Pearls, the walls of red marble interlayed with gold, which made it shine afar off, like a flash of lightning. 3. *Nagarna*, called also *Dionysiolepolis*; in memory of *Bacchus* who was also called *Dionysius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornos*, and *Averuus* by *Strabo*; so strongly seated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, imitating, and therein out-going the acts of *Hercules*, assault it with the greater force, and at last he carried it. 5. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaspes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus* his beloved horse, which had served him in all the course of his Fortunes, and died hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his foundations, so called by the name of his dog, whom he dearly loved. 7. *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations also. 8. *Mazage*, on the West of *Indus*, one of the first Towns of *India* taken by the *Macedonians*, though garrisoned within, and environed without by an host of 300000 men: but yielded after some resistance, with the use of her own body, by *Cleophe* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conqueror. 9. *Nora*, a strong City on the same side of *Indus*, taken by *Polyspercbon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the same River, taken by *Alexander* in the course of his Navigation down that sea of Waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought against him with poisoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolomy*, afterward King of *Ægypt*, was dangerously wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had seen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydracans*, at the siege whereof *Alexander* is said to be the first that scaled the walls, and the last that could do so: the ladder breaking assoon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their darts, he was by the Souldiers desired to leap down amongst them; but he in a daring *bravado* leaped into the Town among his enemies, where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old tree at his back to defend him behinde. In this posture he is said to have maintained the fight a long time, against all the Souldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the rest to be more mannerly; till being wearied, and dangerously wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this case *Leonatus*, *Peucestes*, and some other of his Captains, came to assist him; who defended their dying Master, till the whole Army entred the Town, and put all the people to the sword, in revenge of their King, whose life they had little hope to enjoy, though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this story, ranging it in the same Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel del Phœbo*, *Rosicleer*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the rest of the rabble of *Knights errant*. Neither is this the first time that *Curtius* hath disgraced the soundness of *Alexanders* judgement, and the truth of his actions, with the like idle and impossible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he saith that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam ad gloriæ famam*. And 12. *Nicæa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Acesines*, in memory of his many great and signal victories. Not far from which, finding how unwilling his Souldiers were to pass further East, he purposed to leave behinde him some Monument of his great exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongst the *Indians*. And to that end he caused the form of his Camp to be inlarged, and the *Cabbins* to be made bigger than sufficed for his men to lodge in; the *Mangers* to be set higher than his horses could reach; *Armour* and *Bits* for horses of too great a size (made not for use, but ostentation of his might,)

might) to be ſcattered up and down the Camp, for the ſavage people to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongſt knowing men, but a ſuſpicion that his actions were intended leſs memorable than they are reported to have been; ſince he ſo vainly laboured to have them thought greater than indeed they were. *Gangem.*

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Indo-Scythæ*, inhabiting on the North-Weſt of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadani*, *Piratæ*, *Limyrices*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvari*, *Oxydracæ*, *Malli*, and *Lambatæ*, the *Gandarides*, or *Gangarides*, neear the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caſpiræi*, under the ſhades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Muſicani*, *Chatziæi*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bittigi*, *Chadramotitæ*, *Pezuari Adiſathri*, *Mandalæ*, *Dryllphitæ*, *Sabaræ*, *Pandioni*, with many others to the number 122. ſeverall Nations, if *Megaſthenes* be not out in his reckoning: too many and too impertinent to be muſtered here.

Originally deſcended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left theſe Eaſtern parts to go towards the unfortunate v lley of *Shinaar*. We could not elſe have found this Country ſo full of people in the daies of *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of ſeverall nations, to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Cteſias*, and *Diodorus Siculus* who reports it from him, be of any credit, but certainly the greateſt Army that ever was raiſed) was encountered by *Staurobates*, a King of *India*, with greater forces made up of naturall *Indians* only; by whom ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth part of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than ſome one of thoſe Colonies, which were ſent from *BABEL*; or rather a ſecond or third *Swarm* of thoſe former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the firſt *Adventurers*. For that any of the firſt *Adventurers*, who were preſent at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled ſo far Eaſt, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the ſearch of their *plantations*. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the plantation of *India* preceeded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be ſaid, for certain. Yet if I might have liberty to expreſſe my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eaſtern parts of *Perſia*, with *China*, and both the *Indiaes*, were peopled by ſuch of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the reſt to the Valley of *Shinaar*. For otherwiſe I can ſee no reaſon, that the poſterity of *Japhet* ſhould plant the greateſt part of the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof; and that the ſons of *Cham* ſhould ſpread themſelves over *Babylonia*, *Paleſtine* the three *Arabiaes*, and the whole Continent of *Africk*: the poſterity of *Sem* being ſhut up in a corner the greater *Aſia*, hardly ſo big as ſome one of the Province taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the ſons of *Sem* an equall Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in theſe Eaſtern Countries; ſpreading themſelves this way as they grew in numbers, before the reſt of the *Adventurers* went to ſeek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that (the Country was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to ſpare for ſome ſecond commers eſpecially deſcending from the ſame root with them): I doubt not but to place here all the ſons of *Jocktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatſarmaveth*, *Saba*, *Abimail*, who have left here ſome tract or monument of themſelves, as htth been ſhewn at large in our *GENERALL PREFACE*; and as concerning *Ophyr*, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our Story, the next who made any invaſion on this Country, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Ægyptius*; not much more fortunate than ſhe: the forces of *Bacchus* being defeated, and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by *Arms*, they effected by *Arts*. *Bacchus* inſtructing them in the uſe of *Wine*, Oyl, Sacrifices, and the Art of *Architecture*, and drawing them into Towns and Cities; for that cauſe honoured as a GOD. To *Hercules* they aſcribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a daughter of his called *PANDÆA*: the memory of both preſerved in Statutes and Pillars erected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full conqueſt of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of an 120000 fighting men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Mazagæ*, a people of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, poſſeſſed himſelf both of her perſon and eſtate; on whom he begat a ſon called *Alexander*, who is ſaid to have ſucceeded in her Dominions. Being paſſed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by ſome called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince, whoſe Kingdom is affirmed to bigger than *Egypt*, ſubmitted of his own accord: offering his ſervice and aſſiſtance to promote his conqueſt, and preſenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcome, but his money not ſo much as looked on: the *Macedonian* being ſo far from fingering of this *Indian* gold, that gave him a thouſand Tallents of his own treaſure. Encouraged by this Royall dealing, *Abiajares*, another puiſſant Prince of the oppoſite faction unto *Taxiles*, ſubmitted alſo, and was as graciouſly received: *Porus*, whoſe Kingdom lay on the other ſide of *Hydaſpes*, would not be ſo conquered, and therefore muſtereth up his forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanqueſhed at the laſt, not without much difficulty, he was made a Priſoner to the Victor; who honouring the man for his brave reſiſtance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom with a great inlargment. The Conqueror had a great deſire to go further Eaſt, but the Souldiers would not be perſwaded: ſufficiently taught by *Porus*, what they were to look for, if the *Indians* ſhould unite their forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve *Altars*, as high as *Towers*, where he obſerved many ſolemn Games and Sacrifices: and having ſacrificed to *Hydaſpes*, *Indus*, and *Aceſines*, he ſailed down *Indus* towards the Southern Ocean; which ſeen at diſtance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he died.

After his death *Eumenes* raiſed ſome part of his forces hence. But the *Macedonians* being plunged in

Gangem. a *Civill* war, one *Androcottus*, ſtirred up the *Indians*, to recover their freedomes; making himſelf at firſt their Captain, but at laſt their King. Poſſeſſed of all that had been conquered by the *Greekes*, he was encountred by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: againſt whom he brought an Army of 600000. fighting men. Frighted wherewith, *Seleucus* made peace with him, and contracted a ſollemne League betwixt them; continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongſt their poſterity; & more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the *Great*, and *Saphagaſenus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Andracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was preſented with 150 Elephants, and the promiſe of ſo me treaſure to be ſent after him. By the poſterity of *Andracottus* was the Kingdome held, till the proſperity and full hight of the *ROMAN* Empire. The power whereof though they rather knew by report, then triall, yet was it not a miſſe to entertaine a potent, though remote State, in tearms of amity. Therefore they ſent Embaſſadors unto *Auguſtus*, who peſented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which beaſts) (ſaith *Dion*) till then, the *Romane* people had never ſeen) and which was the moſt pleaſing, a little Boy born without armes; who with his feet could bend a bow, ſhoot and play on wind inſtruments, as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperor had a great deſire to ſee this Country, but was diverted from that purpoſe by matters of more neceſſary importance to the State of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antonius*, the *Romane* Emperor, they ſent a ſolemne Ambaſſi to him; making him Umpire in ſome Controverſies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Ambaſſadors it is probable that *Ptolomy* the *Geographer* who then lived, might receive his informations of the eſtate of this Country. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his expedition againſt the *Perſian*; deſiring his friendſhip and alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewn already. After theſe times by little and little, hiſtories have been in a manner ſilent concerning the affairs hereof; but for ſome conqueſts made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdet*. For notwithſtanding that there was continual traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh*, and *Indian* Merchants for ſpices, and the other commodities of this Region: yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Country, becauſe they entered not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Sarmachand*, being as it were the common Emporie. Neither did the *Egyptians* at all enter into *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iſland: even as now the *Chinois*, make ſome of the *Philippinæ*, the ſtaple of their trade with the *Spaniards*; whom they licence not to come into the *Continent* among them. But our modern Travellers navigators have withdrawn this mask of obſcurity, and ſhew us her lively protraiture in as lively colors. One of the firſt which brake the ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompted at his comming back, for the greateſt *Fabler* in the world: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kings, and the wealth of their Countrys, and the many rarities which he found amongſt them. But better thought of by our neighbours, he obtained a monument in a Convent at *Leige* (where he ended the long courſe of his life and travels, 1372) the Friers of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honorable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honourable memoriall of his Excellencies. Many of his *Relations* ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Country, by the new way of the Cape of *good hope*, *Anno* 1499. or there abouts. For ſo it hapned, that the *Portugals* having diſcovered all the Coaſts of *Aſrich*, as far as to Cape *Verd*, by the encouragement, and at the charge of *Henry* Duke of *Viſe*, one of the younger ſons of King *John* the firſt; began to think upon ſome way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich trade of that Country. To which end it was firſt thought, that *Pedroid Cannanibla*, and *Alphonſo de Pagua*, ſhould make a journy into the Eaſt parts, to learn the certainty of the ſpice trade, and make report of ſuch other commodities, as theſe Countries yeelded. Being come at laſt by long journies to the City of *Calicute*, and having ſatisfied themſelves in the inquiry which they came about, they prepare for their return to *Portugal*. *Pagua* dying in the journey, and *Cannanilla* though detained by the *Hebbaſſine* Emperor, (commonly but corruptly called *Preſter John*) ſends home a full relation of his ſucceſſes; inflamed with which, King *John* the ſecond ſends out *Bartholomew Diaz*, *Anno* 1587. to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having ſayled as far as the Cape of *good hope*, without giving end to the Adventure, returned back to *Portugal*: Undertaken with better fortune 10. yeares after; at the command of King *Emanuel*, by *Vaſquez de Gama* above mentioned; who doubling the Cape, and ſayling Northward, all a long the ſhores of *Affrick*, as far as the kingdome of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both *Pibals*, and inſtructions to bring him to *Calicute*, where he found all true which *Cannanilla* had before reported. Full of good news as the end of 26. months, from his firſt ſetting out he returnes to *Lisbone*, received for the preſent with joy and triumph, and about two years after (that is to ſay 1502) furniſhed with 13. Ships, and 3. Caravells, he ſets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the ſame year with 5. Ships more, by which great ſtrength he made himſelf Maſter of ſome Ports, and by that meanes layed the foundation of that great command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in theſe Eaſtern Countries. Seconded in this great enterpriſe by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by ſuch of the *Europæan* Nations, as had the benefit and trade at the Weſtern Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Caſtilians*, or *Spaniards*, being ſtrong in ſhipping bent not themſelves to the diſcovery of theſe wealthy Countries; it may be anſwered. 1. That they were buſied at the ſame time in the diſcovery and Conqueſt of the *new world*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no leſs profitable booty then this of *India*. 2. ly, The commodities of this Country, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were ſold to them at far cheaper rates; then they could have fetched them in their own bottomes. 3 ly. And chiefly, becauſe by the definitive ſentence of Pope *Alexander*, the 6. both the *Caſtilians*, and the *Portugals*, were ſo limitted in their Navigations, that the *Caſtilians* might not intermedle in the Eaſtern, nor the *Portugals* in the diſcovery or Conqueſt of the Weſtern parts, beyond the bounds which

he

he had ſet to thoſe ſeverall Nations before mentioned, and by ſome later obſervations we have been informed, that in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof ſome few have ſtill their own natural Kings; the reſt all ſubject to the power of the *Great Mogul*. Contracted into a leſſer number by joining many leſſer territories into one Diviſion, we ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15. Provinces. Some have reduced them unto five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties, (moſt of them being men of trades and ignorance) that though they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with; yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were: or to what part the ſeveral Towns thorow which they paſſed, did of right belong. So that our paſſage thorow theſe Countries having ſuch blind guides to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not ſo ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howſoever, I deſire him to bear me company, whileſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Dulſinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Delly*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Cambaia*, 8. *Decan*, 9. *Canara*, 10. *Malabar*, 11. *Narſinga*, 12. *Oriſtan*, 13. *Botanter*, 14. *Patenaw*, and 15. *Bengala*. *Dulſinda*.

1. *DULSINDA.*

DULSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the VVeſt, with *Paropamiſus*, and *Arachoſia*, two *Perſian* Provinces, but for the moſt part, under the command of the *Great Mogul*; on the North, with *Caucaſus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Cambaia*. So that it taketh up all the Northern parts of this Eſtate, which lie upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*: from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probable it is that it took this name: and therefore I have written it with an *ſ*, *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* with a *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good reaſon, for any thing that I am able to underſtand.

The Country by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, more temperat, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India*. The ſeat, in antient times, of the *Mazagæ*, and *Indo-Scythæ*, when ſubdued by *Alexander*. Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdomes, and ſmaller Provinces; denominated, for the moſt part, from the principal Towns and Cities of them, as in other places.

Amongſt which thoſe of moſt eſteem, are 1. *Caximir*, *Caſcimir*, or *Chuſmur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mogul*; who in a pleaſant Iland, (in the midſt of a great and deep Lake, about three leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Lahor*, partly the better to aſſure this new conquered Kingdome; but principally becauſe his Palace at *Lahor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treaſure, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſituate in the moſt healthy Country of all *India*, encompaſſed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with ſnow: the reſt a delicate, goodly plain, diverſified with Paſtures, Woods, Corn-fields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers; even to admiration. The air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, and the ſnowie Mountains, very cool and temperate. The ſoil abundantly productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines; which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulberry-tree, which ſeemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdome ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mogul*, about the year 1597. their own diſſentions more conducing to that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. 2. *Roree*, a Fort of the *Moguls* towards *Paropamiſus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which People it properly belongeth: garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſian*, (for *Paropamiſus*, now called *Cabal*, is his antient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the People from the ſpoil of Thieves, who alwaies hang about the Mountains. 3. In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Seſtan*, the chief City as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; ſituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the Temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5. *Multan*, a great an antient City, and the chief of a Kingdom; on the South of *Caximir*, or *Cheſmur*; and about three *French* leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorow-fare of the *Caravans*, in the way from *Lahor* to *Spahan*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Perſia*) forced to abide there divers dayes, ſometimes ten or twelve, to enrich the Town; which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this device; famed moſt eſpecially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of horn; excellently glued and put together: the Arrows of ſmall Canes or Reeds, both of them ſet off by rich *Paint* and *Varniſh*. They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *Eaſt India* beſides. There is another Town and Kingdom of of near this name on the other ſide of the River *Indus*, of which we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. 6. *Duckee*, a Fort or Garriſon, ſituate in the Streights of the Mountains to ſecure the *Caravans*, and protect other Paſſengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in theſe hill-countries, the out-parts of this Empire.

2. *PENGAB.*

OPpoſite to *Dulſinda*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South, lieth the Country, or Diviſion rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *PENGAB*: bounded on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulſinda*; on the South, with the Kingdome of *Mandoa*; on the North, and Eaſt, with thoſe many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanter*.

Mandao. The reaſon of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambatæ*, *Caſpiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sauſtene*: ſubdued by *Alexander* in his expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Aceſines*, and *Hydaſpis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their courſe. So that it ſeemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of moſt importance in it. 1. *Lahor*, on the Eaſtern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the faireſt and moſt antient City in both the *Indies*; of moſt eſteem for wealth and greatneſs. In compaſs about ſixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Reſidence of the Great *Mogul*; till on the burning of his Palace: ſpoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caximir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at laſt to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldeſt ſonne, or heir apparent, ſent hither for avoiding all occaſion of factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in theſe parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence tranſported into *Perſia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principal Town of *Arachoſia*; and ſo to *Spahan* the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are ſold, by reaſon of ſo long and chargeable a journey, at exceſſive rates. It is ſaid that 12000 camels at the leaſt, paſs every year thorow it with their lading; beſides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormus* till that Town was taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great Maſs of treaſure which a late Governour hereof did leave behind him. At whoſe death *Echebar* the *Mogul* (for the *Mogul* is the heir Generals unto all mens wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coined, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoined, and ſome ſtore of Jewels: beſides Horſes, Elephants, Houſhold-furniture, and other goods almoſt invaluable. 2. *Sultan-puare*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good eſteem. 3. *Athec*, in the common Road from *Lahor* to *China*; reported in the deſcription of the travels of *Benedictus a Goes*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, to be a moneths journey from *Labor*, and yet in the ſame Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province muſt be large, or his journies ſhort: or if not true, we muſt remember that we had it from the pen of a *Jeſuite*. And yet as great as this Province or Diviſion is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns, of conſideration which may be ſaid with confidence to belong unto it; unleſs perhaps we may reduce under this Diviſion the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*, of which laſt the chief City is called *Bucorſuccor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not elſe obſervable.

3. *MANDAO.*

THe Ringdome of *MANDAO* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the Eaſt, with *Delly*; and on the Weſt, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more mountainous & ruged than the reſt of theſe Provinc. by reaſon of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imaus*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as moſt of thoſe who live in ſuch mountainous tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the reſt of the *Indians*: the women here antiently as a valiant as the men in other places; riding aſtride, and practiſed in the Arts of Horſemanſhip; for that cauſe called *Amazons*; ſome of which are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. Inſomuch as it is written in the ſtories hereof, that the King of this Country not long ſince going to the warres, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thouſand women, all well mounted and prepared for ſervice.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Mandao*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Mandavo*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolomy* and the Antients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, ſaid to be 30 miles in compaſs; yet ſo well fortified, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for defence and reſiſtance, that it held out twelve years againſt *Mirumudius*, or *Merhamed*, the Great *Mogul*, who then beſieged it. Surrendred at the laſt, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battel fought before it, betwixt the ſaid *Merhamed*, then coming to the relief thereof; and *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* who had then diſtreſſed it: in which *Badurius* loſt his tents and Treaſures, and was fain to flie diſguiſed unto *Diu*, to grave aid of the *Portugals*. 2. *Moltan*, which being miſtaken for another Town, of or neer the ſame name, on the Weſtern ſide of the *Indus*, is by ſome writer ſaid to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it ſelf, but of no great note: the women whereof though not ſo good ſouldiers as their Anceſtors of the female ſex, yet to come as neer them as they can, uſe boots and ſpurs when they take a journey, and ſo fitted ſit aſtride the ſaddle. 3. *Scernus*, on the River ſo called, of more Antiquity than greatneſs; as is alſo. 4. *Polymbothie*, the *Palibothra* of *Ptolomy* and others of the antient writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothei* (by *Plini* and *Strabo*, called *Praſii*) a people of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf of great power & wealth, til *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this alſo. *Galgee* then King of *Mandao* finding himſelf too weak for ſo ſtrong an Enemie, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Miramudius* as the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*; then reigning in *Chabul* or *Arachoſia*, and poſſeſſed of ſome parts of *India* alſo ſince the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own ſubjects, ſome mercinary *Perſians*, and a great body of *Zagathatan Tartars*, from whom originally deſcended, came in accordingly: diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Badurius*, conſiſting of 150000 horſe, and 500000 foot, in two ſet battels, the firſt at *Doceti*, the next at *Mandao*; and follow his blow poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Kingdome of *Cambaia*. But not content with that ſucceſs, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whoſe aid he came; beſieged him in his principal City, which at laſt he won, and therewithal the

Kingdom

Kingdome alſo: the wretched King ſhewing hereby a fair both evidence and example to ſucceeding ages, that the eaſieſt way for a Prince to ruine his own eſtate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Forrein power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as eaſily thruſt out, as he hath brought them in. 4. *Delly.*

4. DELLY.

DELLY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Mandao*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Botanter*; on the North, with the Eaſtern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eaſtern parts alſo of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from DELLY the chief City of it, by ſome called *Delin*.

The Conntry, beſides what is common to it with the reſt of *India*, is ſaid to be more abundantly ſtored than any other dart of it, with Horſes, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing ſingular, except it be that many of them taking more delight in theevery than honeſt trades, live for the moſt part upon ſpoil: but thoſe eſpecially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being ſuch of the nobillity or better ſort, who ſince the conqueſt of their Country by the *Great Moguls*, have lived like *Out-Laws* on the Mountains. Of the ſame temper with the *Resbutes* in *Cambaia*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulſinda*; who rather than ſubmit themſelves to a Forrein yoak, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chooſe to forſake their proper dwellings, and all honeſt waies and meanes of living.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Delly*, A City not only honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the great *Moguls*, who from hence paſs in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongſt their moſt knowing Subjects; but beautified with many ſepulchres of their antient Kings, whoſe funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deſerted of late times, by the *Great Moguls*, moving their Courts from place to place, as they inlarged their Empire, and increaſed their conqueſts: yet ſtill a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains & Commanders, do frequent the ſame; and have their houſes and pleaſure of retirement in it. 2. *Tremel*, upon the Weſtern ſide of the River *Mandova*; but not much obſervable. 3. *Doceti*, memorable for the great battle fought, neer unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Badurius*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Country governed a long time by its naturall Princes, was at laſt conquered by ſome *Moores*, or *Saracens*, comming from *Perſia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to ſo great power and wealth, that *Sanoſaradine*, a *Mahometan*, one of their *Deſcendants*, dreamt of no leſſe than the conqueſt of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Aſia* alſo. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) ſubdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes, which made head againſt him; he pierced at laſt into *Canora*, now called *Decan*: and conquering a great part of it returned back to *Delly*. The purſuit of his victories he left unto one *Abdeſſa* his Lievtenant there, who added the reſt of that Country to his Maſters Territories; but kept the poſſeſſion to himſelf: confirmed therein by *Sanoſaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanoſaradine* dying in a war againſt the *Perſians*, left for his Succeſſor a ſon ſo unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other *Maſters*, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithſtanding of ſufficient power to preſerve it ſelf, from many of their equal neighbors, till the riſing of the *Great Monguls*: whoſe puiſſance being unable to withſtand, it ſubmitted at the laſt to *Adabar*, the ſon of *Merhamed*, the ſecond Emperor of this line: who to aſſure himſelf of the peoples loyalty, and confirm his conqueſts, ſettled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next proſperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. AGRA.

THe Realm of AGRA is bounded on the North, with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the South with *Sanga*, and *Cambaia*; on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the King dom of *Cambaia*; on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*, or *Orixa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royall, of late times, of the *Great Monguls*.

The Country ſaid to be the beſt and moſt pleaſant of *India*, plentifull in all things, and ſuch a delicate, even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be ſeen. Well watered, as with other Rivers, ſo moſt eſpecially with thoſe of *Tamlico*, and *Jemena*; which laſt runneth thorow the middeſt of it, North and South, or rather from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, from whence bending more directly Eaſtwards, it falleth at laſt into the *Ganges*, or that which is ſuppoſed to be *Ganges*, for the bed of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the moſt part Gentiles, *Mahometaniſm* coming in with the *Great Mogul*; and generally inclining ſomewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For ſuch as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena* neither eat fleſh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they eſteem ſo ſacred, that thereof they uſually make their Temple, and ſay their prayers therein, but naked (in which poſture they both dreſs their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being impoſed by them as a penance, and ſo conceived.

Places of moſt eſteem herein, 1. *Fatepore*, or *Fettibarri*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River, a very fair and goodly City; once beautified with a Royall Pallace here built by *Echebar* (after the removall of his Court from *Caſcimer*) with many ſpacious gardens belonging to it; but much decaied, ſince the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which moſt of the ſtones are carried, and no ſmall quantity of Corn ſowed within the Walls. 2. *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferiour to *Labor* for wealth and greatneſs, but far more populous: the conſtant reſidence of the Court here in theſe latter times, drawing to it

great resort of all sortes of people. By some supposed to be the *Negara* of *Ptolomy*, but such a supposition as is built on no better ground, than some resemblance of the names. For *Ptolomies Nigara* is by him placed on the Western-side of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33. whereas this *Agra* standeth on the East of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it looseth in Antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdome, till *Echebar* the *Mogull* subdued it, Anno 1598. in his passage from *Lahor* to *Decan*. But it lost nothing by the hand. For *Echebar* delighted in the situation of it (and that withall it stood in the middest of his Kingdomes) made it the Seat Royall of his Empire; fixt there, for the most part ever since: by meanes whereof exceedingly increased in wealth, beauty and greatnesse: the very Castle in which the *Mogul* usually resideth, being two miles in compasse, invironed with most high & unscalable walls, and fortified with great store of Ordnance. The whole space betwixt it and *Fatipore*, being 18. miles, beautified with many *Mahometan* Temples, and with one also built by *Echabar*, for the use of such *Christians*, as had been gained nnto the faith, by the care and dilligence of the *Jesuits* for the supply hereof with victualls, and other necessary provisions, and the security of such as resort unto it, affirmed to be a continuall Market: and all the *Intervall* from hence to the Town of *Lahor* (from which distant 400. miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rowes of Trees on both sides of the waies, most of them bearing a kind of Mulberry; and at every ten miles end, houses erected by the King or some of the Nobles) for beautifying the way to the Regall City, for preserving their own memory, and the safe lodging of Passengers, in danger otherwise, by night of theeves and Cut-throats. 3. *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a faire Castle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about; fortified with 50. peces of Ordnance, and thought impregnable: for that cause made a Prison for great persons. Here are also two Hospitals for such Captains (and Captaines only) as are maimed in the wars. 4. *Biani*, twelve course or 18. miles from *Pattipore*; the most noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve milles, Which *Indico*, (by the way) groweth on a small shrub like our Goose-berry-bushes, bearing seed like a Cabbage-seed: which being cut down, are laid in heapes for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a vault, to be trodden with Oxen from the Stalks; and being ground small and fine at the Mills, is last of all boiled in furnaces, refined, and sorted, and so sold to the Merchants.

To this division also we may reduce the Kingdome of *Gwaliar*, so called of *Groaliar* the chiefe City, where the *Mogull* hath a very rich treasury of Gold and Silver; kept in a very strong Castle, wherein his Prisoners are secured likewise; And for those reasons, continually guarded by a strong Company of stout and well apoynted Souldiers.

6. *SANGA.*

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the East parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South, and West, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the West, by the Mountaine *Gate*; and on the East with *Oristan*. The reason of the Name I find not: this Country being too far South to be so called from *Sangalassa*, a Town of chiefe note neare the fountaines of *INDUS* where placed by *Arianus*, lib. 5.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Azmere*, or *Agimer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every course (each course a mile and a half) a fair pillar erected, and at every tenth course a fair *Seraglio* (such as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellors. All built by *Echebar*, who wanting Children, is said to have gone in Pilgrimage, on foot from *Ayra* to *Azimere*; saying his prayers at the end of every course, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdom of it self, or the chief of that Kingdom. Situate in the midle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia*, and *Agra* spoken of before: and most magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the passage is so narrow, and so well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the midle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of Art and Nature, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12. miles in compasse, beautified with many goodly buildings both publick and private; but once more glorious than it is; here being to be seen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houses, either demolished by the wars, or suffered to decay by the *great Moguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity, than themselves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold the old. The greatnesse and Antiquity of it have made some men think, that it was the Royall seat of *Porus*. Others affirm the same of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdom of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not so far South. Governed not long since by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more faire then valiant, who revolting from *Baburius* King of *Cambaia*, to wom she formerly had paid tribute was dispossessed of the Town of *Citor*, where she had fortified her self with 30000. foot, and 2000. horse: the People in a desperate resoluion, laying all their treasures on a heap, which they burnt together with themselves; in which flame it is said that there perished 70000 persons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his victory. For not long after both the City & a great part of the Country, was conquered by the *Great Mogull*; the mountainous parts hereof being held against him by *Ramee*, the Son or successor of Qu. *Crementina*: till seeing himself destitute of all better helps, he put himself into the hands of one of the Sons of the late Sultan, by whom reconciled unto his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province, and in the rest before mentioned, and those of good esteem perhaps amongst the natives; but of no observation or importance in the course of business. Under this name we may also comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagracol*, so called of the chief City of it; and that most memorable

for

for a rich and sumptuous Chappel, seeled and paved with plate of pure silver, most curiously imbassed over head in several figures, which they keep exceeding bright, often rubbing, and continual burnishing. *Malway*, another of these Kingdoms, far as near neighbourhood to *Citer*, may be placed here also, affirmed to be a fruitful Province, and the chief City of it to be called *Rantipere*.

7. CAMBAIA.

CAMBAIA hath on the East, *Delly* and part of *Mandao*; on the West, *Gedrosia* a Province of the *Persian* Empire, on the North, *Dulsinda*, and the rest of *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and some parr of *Decan*. It lieth on both sides of the *Indus*; and is so called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into. 1. *Sinda*. 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambaia* especially so called.

1. *SINDA* (by some called the Kingdom of *Tatta*, from *Tatta* the chief City of it) hath on the East the River *Indus*, by which separted from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulsinda*; on the West, parts of *Gedrosia*, and *Guzarate*; and on the South, the rest of *Guzarate* only: coasting along the Western banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Sind*, as was said before. And for this reason, as I take it, the Western part of *India* lying North of this, took the name of *Dulsinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a C) as most commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile; but in some places nothing but a sandy *Desart*; inhabited for the most part by wild Asses, Foxes, Deer, and some wilder beasts: but none so wild as the *Cælies*, a robbing nation, so numerous withal, that they sometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they pass that way; notwithstanding the many Forts and Castles built of purpose to secure those passages.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tutta*, (or *Gutu Negar Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great trade, but most frequented by the *Portugals*; who here receive such *Indian* commodities, as come down the water from *Lahor*; returning Pepper in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2. *Lawribander*, at the mouth or cut-let of the *Indus*, three dayes journey from *Tutta*, the Port-town unto which it is, notwithstanding that distance. Supposed to be situate in or neer them place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, because free from worms; which about *Surat*, and other Havens on these Seas, so infest the ships, that without much cost and care bestowed upon them, they make the unable to return. 3. *Galwalla*, memorable for the *Tenure*; as given by *Echebar* the *Mongul* to a company of Women and their posterity for ever, to bring up their draughts to dancing, and more wanton exercises. 4. *Radempoore*, a great Town wth a strong Castle, seated at the edge of the *Desarts*: thorow which those that are to pass, use here to provide themselves of water and other necessaries for their journey. 5. *Nuraquemire*, a pretty Town on the further side of the Desarts, esteemed a *Paradise* by such as have passed thorow those uncomfortable and dangerous sands, for the space of ten or twelve daies journey. 6. *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*; the Center in which all lines meet, and from whence the distances of all Towns in *Sinda*, are accustomably measured.

The Countrey antiently subject to the King, of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the Great *Mongul*: but the people for the most part so untamed and masterful, that except in some of the greater Towns, they pay no *Tributes*; and in some places even within half a dayes journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledge no King, but rob and spare whom they please. If at any time the *Mongul* sends a force against them, (as he doth sometimes) they fire their houses, made like a *Bee-Hive* of straw and mortar, which are soon rebuilded; and retire themselves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongst many ill ones. When they have robbed a *Traveller*, took money of him in the way of toll or custome for his passage by them, they will conduct him honestly to the end of the *Desarts*, lest any should rob him but themselves.

2. *GUZARATE* hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South, the main Ocean; the River *Indus* on the East; on the West, *Gedrosia*, which the *Indians* call *Nawatacos*, but the *Persians*, *Circam*.

The Soil of the same temper and fertilitie with that of *Cambaia*, specially so called; and there we shall speak further of it. The common people whom they call *Guzorates*, of the same disposition generally with the rest of the *Indians*: but the greatest part of the Country is possessed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches*, the antient Inhabitants of this tract. Who when their Country was subdued by the *Moores* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains and fastnesses of it; standing upon their gaurd, and were never yet subdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though possessed of the Sea-shores, and most Towns of consequence, are fain to leave the inland parts and open Countries to these power of the *Out-laws*: who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain prices. Their Arms most commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Launce; well-horsed, and resolute in any thing which they undertake: which made one of the *Moguls* say of them, *that no men in the world knew to die, but they*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Din*, in a *Peninsula* looking towards *Persia*, but on the Eastside thereof, neer the mouth of *Indus*. Possessed by the *Portugal*, and by them fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel; built with the leave and liking of King *Badurius*, thereby to buy their aid against *Merhamed* the *Mongul*, who had newly vanquished him. A matter of such consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Botelius* confined to *India* for some Crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that service to obtain his pardon) to carry the first news of it in a smal vessel, not above 18 foot long, and but 6 foot broad (the best which for the present could be provided): which with great

cou-

Cambaia. courage be performed, and thorow that large, wide and tempeſtuous Ocean came in ſafety with his news to *Lisbon*; to the great joy of the King, but greater admiration of all ſorts of people. Scarce ſettled in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged by *Solyman Baſſa*, Admirall to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537. offended with the *Portugalls* for aiding the King of *Perſia*, more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had ſo ill ſucceſſe, that having aſſaulted it in vain with his Land-forces, he was fain to raiſe his ſiege in ſuch haſt and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2. *Sauran*, a Town and Caſtle of the *Resbutes*, ſpoken of before; and by them held againſt the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3. *Boldra*, a very fair and beautifull City, but of no great compaſs. 4. *Ardovat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5. *Madabat*: by ſome called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatneſſe the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *London*; well walled, and ſituate on a plain near the Rivers ſide: ſeldome without Merchants of all Religions: *Jews*, *Gentiles*, *Chriſtians*, *Moores*, ſome of all, and neither. 6. *Saringa*, 7. *Periano*, 8. *Serkeſſe*; this laſt remakable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*; fair, and well kept, and viſited from all parts of the Kingdome.

Nothing conſiderable in this part of the Countrey: as to point of ſtory, but what is common to them with the reſt of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Raſpooches* ſtil remain uncorquered. Poſſeſſed not onely of the hills and Mountains, but of ſome ſtrong holds; and governed by the Heads of their *Caſts* or Tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour* in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Soveraign: conceiving it to be ſome abaſement of their own authority, if they admit of him as an Umpire to compoſe their differences, which they ſometimes do.

3. *CAMBAIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North, *Mandao*, on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*; on the Eaſt, *Surat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the Weſt, the Main Ocean, with ſome part of *Guzarate*. It ſtandeth on the Eaſt-ſides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-ſhore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia* the chief City of it.

The Countrey ſaid to be the moſt fruitfull of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all ſorts, and choiceſt fruits: of Silk and Cotton ſo great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty ſhips with thoſe commodities. In the mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onix*-ſtone, which are called *Cornelines*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongſt the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great Beaſt, twice as big as a Bull, having on their ſnowts a little horn, and the hide ſo hard, as no man can pierce it with a thruſt; which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Antients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much uſed by the *Moguls* in a war of conſequence; to ſupply which defect he furniſheth himſelf with Souldiers out of *Perſia*, of which his ſtanding bands conſiſt; moſt of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation alſo. More given to Merchandiſe than war, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitfull withall) as any people in the world: treacherous in their truſt, proud in their carriage, bloody upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of letters, but well practiſed in *Mechanicall* Arts. In matters of Religion for the moſt part *Gentils*, not knowing or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctuall in their own heatheniſh ſuperſtitions. The *Bannians* in this Countrey: being naturall *Indians*, nuſled in Paganiſm, and ſo wedded to their old Idolatries, that no perſwaſions can prevail with them, make the greateſt number: and ſeem to be all *Pythagoreans* in ſome opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantons and ſuch naturall fruits; paying a large *Revenue* yearly to the *Great Mogul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongſt them. And becauſe new opinions ſhould not grow amongſt them, they marry in their own *Tribes* onely, and never out of their own *Trades*; ſecure thereby as they conceive from all *innovations*.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. in *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compaſs, one of the neateſt and beſt built in all the Eaſt. So populous withall, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families, and is therefore called the *Caire* of the *Indies*. Of moſt eſteem in all this Kingdome (though far leſſe than *Modabat*) to which it doth impart its name. 2. *Barocho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it: well-walled, and noted for the beſt *Calicuts* (a kind of linnen Cloth ſo called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was firſt made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3. *Swalley*, ſtill more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea ſhore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ſhips ride which trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and ſhallops fortified with a Caſtle of ſtone well ſtored with Ordnance. The houſes for the moſt part of Sun-dried bricks, very large and laſting: built with flat roofs, but battlemented on all ſides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomgranats, Melons, Figs, and Limons, interlaced with Riverets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *Engliſh* Merchants, who have here their Preſident, and a magnificent houſe for the reception, and ſtaple of their Commodities. 5. *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indico*, of the matter and making whereof we have ſpoke already, when we were at *Biani*, Town or City of the Kingdome, or Diviſion of *Agra*, as memorable for that commodity as this *Neriand*, a or any other of all *India*. 6. *Daman*, upon the Sea-ſide over againſt *Diu*, and poſſeſſed as that is by the *Portugalls*. A beautifull and pleaſant Town fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle at the North-end of it, of white chalky ſtone, well planted with Ordnance: oppoſite whereunto on the South-ſide of the Town, a goodly Church, edged a top with white. Which with the houſes for the moſt part of the ſame colour alſo: afford a pleaſant proſpect to the Sailors by. 7. *Campanel*, ſituate on the top of an high mountain, and environed with a ſeven-fold wall, once the ſeat Royall of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8 *Dacaiotote*, a place of ſuch ſtrength, that the great *Moguls* could never get it by force. Rendred at the laſt upon compoſition, conditioned they ſhould ſtill be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Netherby*, a great

great market of brazen ware, beasts, and Armour. 10. *Bandore*. 11. *Tanai*, &c. Decan.

This Kingdom taken in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts hereof, is extremely populous; said to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accustomed to, or unfit for wars. Antiently governed by Kings of their own, it was first subdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, Anno 1423. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*; who having forced the *Resbutes* or naturals of the Country to betake themselves unto the Mountain, was made King hereof. To him succeeded his sonne *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was supplied by his sonne *Badurius*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* also. His Army for that warre consisted of 500000 foot, 150000 horse, 1000 great pieces of Ordnance, 500 wagons loaded with powder & shot, & as many wain-loads of gold and silver to pay his Army. But being discomfited in two great battels by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgee* the *Mandoan* King had called in to his aid; he shaved his beard, and fled in a disguize to *Diu* then possessed by the *Portugals*, whom he licenced in that distress to build the *Citadel*: slain afterwards by a mean Mariner, at his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had visited on ship-board. And though *Mamudius* his Successor endeavoured to free his Kingdome from both pretenders; yet weakened with the loss of so great an Army, he was not able to effect it. First driven from *Diu*, which he had besieged both by Sea and Land, to his great dishonour; and after vanquished in battel by *Adabar* the sonne of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkesse*, the antient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdome; which by that victory fell to the *Great Monguls*, who have since enjoyed it.

DECAN.

DECAN is bounded on the East, with *Narsinga*; on the West, with the *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South with *Malavar*, and *Canara*. The reason of the Name we shall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea coast, for the space of 250 miles, betwixt *Aliga*, and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending East, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thrusting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and those mountains; till it meet with *Cambaia*. The soil much of the same nature with the rest of *India*, but not so flourishing as *Cambaia*. The people for the most part *Mahometans*, which Religion was first planted there by the Conquests of *Sa Nosaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without some entermixture of their antient *Gentilism*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat Royall of *Mamudza*, once sole King of this Country, Who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Prefects*, or subordinate Governors, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reside therein certain moneths in the year; each one to leave a son there in perpetual hostage. Situate in the most Northern parts of the Country more neer the borders of *Delly*: from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make sure of this place, as most in danger. 2. *Visapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Idalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was dismembred into several Kingdoms. 3. *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flourishing City, once the chief Seat of *Nisalamoccus*, or *Nizalmoxa*, another of the Kings hereof, after that division. 4. *Decan*, so called by the name of the Province, of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompassed with an high wall, and kept by a strong Garrison, because of the great store of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The town so wealthy, that the people generally are attired in silks, or the purest *tiffany*. 5. *Sintacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea-Town also, situate in a little but most pleasant Iland called *Ticuarinum*, fifteen miles in compass; opposite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandavo*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleasantness of situation, one of most note in all this Country. Possessed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arsenall*, and harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they do command these Seas. So strongly fortified withal, that though *beleagured* by *Idalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 horse, 6000 Elephants, and 250 piece of Ordnance, Anno 1573. yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient situation and strength thereof, the ordinary Residence of the *Portugal Vice-roy*, who hath here his Counsell, Chancellor, and other Officers, for the government of such parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as also of the Arch-Bishop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-Bishop of *Goa*. 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* also, and by them well fortified: Insomuch as *Nisamalocoo*, assaulting it at the same time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Balaguate*, in the uplands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Bala* in the *Persian* language signifying a top, or summit of a mountain; and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are subject to the *Great Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the middest of a spacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great trading; in bigness equall unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mogul*, without any resistance, Anno 1600. *Miram* then King thereof forsaking it, and betaking himself to 10. *Syra*, a strong hold both by Art and Nature. Situate on the top of an hill, which is in compass five leagues, and environed with a triple wall: furnished with victuals, and all other necessary provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great pieces of Ordnance planted on the walls. Besiedged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out against him; till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his hold (some of his Counsellers being bribed to perswade him to it) he was detained by the *Mogul*: and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Roall family, accustomably kept therein when the *Throne* was full; which vacant, the next *Heir*

was

Canara. was taken hence, to ſucceed unto it. Of the ſame nature, as it ſeemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Ethiopia*, or the *Abaſſive* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari*, by Religion Gentiles, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sanoſaradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Delly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of it, compelling them to ſubmit unto his Religion. The reſidue hereof ſubdued by *Abdeſſa*, whom *Sa Noſaradine* left here to purſue the war, was by him governed with great juſtice for 20. years; when dying, he left his government to his ſon *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Succeſſor of *Sa Noſaradine* in his Fathers *Regency*, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* ſoon finding that the young King was of no great Spirit, not only refuſed to pay the tribute impoſed upon him, but took unto himſelf the title of K. of *Decan*: giving this name unto the country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mungril body of *Chriſtians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Cuſtoms, or Religion; the word *Decan* ſignifying in that Tongue, as much as an illegitimate brood, or a body of Baſtards. Out of theſe he made choice of twelve (others ſay eighteen) whom he appointed Governors of ſo many Provinces: not daring to truſt any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the country; and hoping that theſe *Slaves* thus prompted by him, would be more ſubject to command. But here his ſilly hopes deceived him. For theſe *Slaves* either governed by their maſters example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Noſaradine*; or preſuming on their own ſtrength, and ſome forein aids, left to their maſter nothing but an empty title; each one becoming abſolute in his ſeveral Province. Nor did his Succeſſors for any long time enjoy that title; *Daquem* the laſt of them being taken at *Bider* his chief City: and thereupon the name of King uſurped by every one of thoſe petit Tyrants. Reduced at laſt into fewer hands, ſuch of them as were left became conſiderable Princes; as appeareth by the great Army raiſed by *Idalcan* for the ſiege of *Goa*. But in the end, diſtreſſed on the one ſide by the *Portugals*, who embarred their trade, and invaded on the other ſide by the *Great Mogul* with moſt puiſſant Armies; *Melic* entituled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine ſubdued by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Againſt whom and his Succeſſors, though the *Venazararii* ſtill hold out, as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amdanager*, and perhaps ſome other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country; the reſidue of theſe *Roytelets*, and petit Princes, (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vaſſals to him. Againſt whoſe further Progreſs to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* ſo greedily aimed at, the puiſſant Kings of *Narſinga*, and thoſe of *Malabar*, have oppoſed their power: whoſe Kingdoms and Eſtates we muſt next ſurvey, before we take a view of thoſe other Provinces, which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9. CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof anciently it was a part) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga*, from which ſeparated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the Weſt, with the Ocean. The reaſon of the name I finde not, nor much worth the ſearching.

The Countrey hath a fair Sea-coaſt, with many capacious Harbors to it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furniſhed in the in-land parts, with Rice, Figs, and Sugars; but deſtitute of Wheat, Pulſe, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing or not regarding the uſe of bread; but living on ſuch fruits as the earth produceth of it ſelf, without the charge or care of the husband-man. In other things, but little differing, if at all, from the reſt of the *Indians*: their Religion for the moſt part *Paganiſh*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2. *Onor*, a Port-Town of good note, ſometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Baticalia*, ſituate in the richeſt part of all this Country; never poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalor*, a Town of great wealth and Trade; fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, once deſtroyed by the *Portugueze*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narſinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5. *Mayendre*, more within the land. And ſo is alſo. 6. *Liſpor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7. *Solſette*, in a *Peninſula* of 20. miles compaſs, containing 36. Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9. miles from *Goa*, and ſubject with the whole *Peninſula*, to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now ſubject to the Kings of *Narſinga*; but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara*, comprehending in thoſe times all that Countrey alſo, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Noſaradine* and *Abdeſſa*, and by *Mamudza* cantoned into many *Præfectures*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narſingan*, who taking his advantages, in the minority of one of their Princes, became Maſter of it. And when the *Idalcan*, (for I take that not ſo much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his poſſeſſion of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdoms of *Decan*; *Chriſmarao* then King of *Narſinga*, brought a powerfull *Advocate* to defend his right; that is to ſay, an Army of 606030. Foot, 29650. Horſe, and 537. Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it; With which ſtrong *Argument* the *Idalcan* being confuted in the *Schools* of war, with much difficulty ſaved himſelf, though he loſt his cauſe: the *Narſingan* ever ſince continuing quiet in the poſſeſſion of this Country; except only ſome of the Sea Towns in the power of the *Portugals*. Who in the year 1567 deſtroyed in thoſe few places by them poſſeſſed, no fewer than 200 of their *Idol-Temples*, with many of their *Pagodes*, or *Idols* in them; converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raiſed from the ſeveral Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a College of *Jeſuites* in *Salſette*, and other *Religious* houſes founded by them, in their other Cities.

10. MALABAR.

Malabar.

10. MALABAR.

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the East, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narsinga*; on the West and South, with the main Ocean. On the Coast whereof it doth extend for the space of 300. miles that is to say, from the River *Gangeraco*, to the Cape *Comori*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolomy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing answerable to the length, not above 50. miles where broadest, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conus*.

The Country more populous, for the bigness, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful Soyl; well watered, and indented with many *Creeks*: unfit for Corn, but plentifull in *Rice*, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinnamon, *Cassia*, Pepper, and most excellent fruits. Amongst their Trees, there is one whose name my Author speaks not, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only wood for Fewel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oyl, fine Cloth and cordage; another tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cypress, or Cobweb-lawn, of the leaves whereof they make a fine stuff like to *Sattin* or *Taffata*. They have also great store of Apes, and Monkeys, Parats, Paraquitos, and other Creatures not known in these parts but from thence: not to say any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian* neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reason that the Air is so sweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the rest of the *Indians*, swarth and complexioned like the *Olive*) well limbed, and wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an hankerchief wrought with gold and silver; and about their middle a cloth, which hangeth down to conceal their nakedness. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed desperate than stout and valiant; and for more surety in their wars, they use poisoned Arrows, as they do also in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In *Religion* for the most part *Gentiles*, and more besotted generally on their Idolatries, than the rest of these Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worship, seated upon a brazen throne, and crowned with a rich Diadem. From his head issue out four horns, from his mouth four Tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his nose flat and ugly, his visage terrible, his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like those of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure, than they do their *God*. Unto this *Pagode*, or his *Priest*, they offer the virginity of all their daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a *Bodkin* of gold or silver, upon which the *Bride* (married most commonly at ten or twelve years of age) is forcibly set; the sharpness of it being such, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if she prove with child that year, it is said to be of his begetting, and more esteemed. Others with more humanity, instead of torturing their daughters on this wretched *Idol* (parallel almost to the offering of their sons to *Moloch* amongst the *Syrians*) present them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Priest*, to be deflowred the first night of the wedding: and without one of these two hand less, no man is suffered to enjoy the use of his wife, not their Kings themselves. More priviledged yet than many women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themselves with their husbands bodies: but may have many husbands either successively or at once, as they list themselves: and if at once, she sends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who she thinks to have the best right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we said before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be *cantonned* into many Kingdoms. Divided at present, and long since, into those of 1. *Cononor*. 2. *Calecut*. 3. *Granganor*. 4. *Cochin*. 5. *Cai-Colam*. 6. *Coulan*, and 7. *Travancor*.

1. *CONONOR*, joineth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the shore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1. *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built, & beautified with a very fair Haven, no more safe than spacious, capacious of the greatest vessels, and for that cause much frequented by forein Merchants; but especially by the *Portugals*, who for the assuring of their trade have here a *Citadel*, erected and well garrisoned with the Kings consent. 2. *Cota*, not far from *Cangeracco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*, 3. *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicute*. 4. *Marabia*. 5. *Tramopatan*. 6. *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much observable.

2. *CALICUTE*, South from *Cononor*, extending on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitfull part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2. *Tanor*, a retiring place of the Kings. 3. *Partangale*. 4. *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5. *Chale*, a strong piece, once in the hands of the *Portugueze*, but in the year 1601 recovered by the King of *Calicute*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6. *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicute*. 7. *Calicute*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles, and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses, but standing some of them far asunder; mean and low built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horse-back; the soil being so hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cause unwalled. Insomuch that Merchants houses are here valued but at 20. Crowns, those of the common sort at no more than ten. Which notwithstanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; these last from the furthest parts of *Cachay* (taking *Cathay* in that generall sense, as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartars*, between

the

Malabar. the moores of *Imaus*, and the Eastern *Ocean*) being 6000 miles distant from it, insomuch, that it is said by some of the *Spanish* writers, that when *Vasaius* and *Imaus*, the first discoverer of the way to the East Countries by the Cape of good hope first arrived in this Haven, he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all sorts, but without anchors on the compasse, few of them fit for a Sea-fight, nor able to sail (in regard they had not the use of the compasse) but by fair winds onely. The common Staple in those times of all *Indian* Merchandise, till distracted into severall Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more industrious, and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the Shore for a very strong Castle; by which they do command the Haven, and receive custome of all Merchandise going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicute*, he besieged it with 100000 men: and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but first demolished it to the ground, that it might not be made usefull to those of *Calicute*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no lesse wantonnesse; the men here using to change wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the women spending their whole time in adorning themselves with Rings and Jewels, about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their brests; though going naked for the most part, one would think that a little dressing might suffice them. If covered, it is onely with a smock of *Calicute*, a kind of linnen cloth here made, and from hence so called: and that not used but by those of the better sort.

3. *CRANGANOR*, lieth on the South of *Calicute*, a small Kingdom, and affording little worth the speaking of: but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of those old *Christians*, whom they call *Christians* of Saint *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be so full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and exposed to publick scorn both by the *Idolaters* and *Mahometanes*, amongst whom they live. The City rich, commodiously built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked streams the most part of the Country, makes it fat and flourishing.

4. *COCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the shore for the space of 40 leagues: and therein many *Christians* of the first plantation, besides some *converts* made of later times by the *Jesuites*. Towns of most note herein. 1. *Augamale*, the Arch-Bishops See of those ancient *Christians*, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2. *Cochin*, a Bishops See, but of later *erection*; and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almost encompassed like a *Demy-Iland*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very safe and spacious; as also by the friendship of the *Portugal* Nation. By whose power and favor they have not onely freed themselves from the King of *Calicute*, to whom before they did acknowledge some subjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick also: this King permitting them to erect a Castle on the Haven, to secure their trade, which the other on good reasons of State forced them to destroy. The King hereof in some respect *superiour* unto him of *Calicute*, when a *Vassal* to him: this King being the *Pope* or *chief Bishop*, as it were, of all the *Bramines*: for which cause reverenced by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of these Western parts) who look upon him as the head of their *superstition*, and pay him many annuall duties.

5. *CAI-COLAM*, is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in the temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithstanding, the King hereof is not so rich as his other neighbours. Here live also many of the old *Christians*, taking name from Saint *Thomas*: but those so destitute of *Priests* and Ministers to instruct them in the Principles of *Christianity*: that once in three years there came some formerly from the Patriarch of *Muzall* in *Assyria*, to baptize their children. Better I hope provided for in those later dayes, since their emboso ming and reconcilement to the Church of *Rome*. Their Chief Town of the same name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven, in the fashion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till destroyed by the *Portugals*, but since that re-edified. Of less note there are many both Towns and Villages, but such as do deserve here no parricular mention.

6. *COULAN*, upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the Shores; is said to be destitute of corn, but plentifull of *pepper*, and most sorts of Spices. So stored with Horses, and fit Riders to serve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horse in continual readiness either for invasion or Defence. This Kingdome, as the rest before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulan*, 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a Member of that Kingdom; of great resort by forein Merchants, by reason of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary seat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Priest* of the *Bramines*, till removed to *Cochin*: and held to be the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of all *Malabar*; the rest being thought to be but *Colonies* of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many *Christians*, as well of the originall foundation of *Christianity*, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jesuites*.

7. *TRAVANCOR*, called also *TRANCANOR*, reachrth from the Kingdome of *Coulan*, to the Cape of *Comarim*, and turning towards the East, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar* or *Narsinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all sides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the West Seas unto the East about 90 miles. The Country as the rest before, inhabited by many with the name of *Christians*, if they may be called so which want *Sacraments*: the condition of these *Thomæan* Christians in former times being so unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jesuites*, (if the *Jesuites* may be believed from whom we have it) they had seen no Priest, not other Minister of the Gospel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of those many others of less note I shall make no mention) are 1. *Travancor* the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well-built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the head City of a peculiar Signeury,

Signeury, but held of the Kings of *Trancanor*, as their next and immediate Lords, though all those Kings also *Feudataries* of the Crown of *Narsinga*. And were that the worst *Tenure* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worse consequence which attendeth these besotted Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of 12 years continuance, and then endeth in a sad *Catastrophe*. For at the end of those twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the *Idol* above mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry, and in the sight of all his People, gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, cutteth off his nose, ears, lips and other parts, which he casts towards the *Idol*, and in conclusion cuts his own Throat for his finall Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at so dear a rate: For though all *Crowns* be lined with *thorns*, yet here the pomps of Soveraignty be less lasting than in other places; the *entrance* full of fears, and the end, of horrors. *Narsinga.*

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900 or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into these seven, by *Sarama Pereimal*, the sole Monarch. He by the sollicitation of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein so devout, that he resolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, there to end his dayes. At his departure he divided his estates into these seven parts, distributing them amongst the neareſt of his kindred: assigning unto him of *Coulan*, the preheminence in sacred matters, and the *Imperial* dignity unto him of *Calecute*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to say, *Chief Emperor*, or as some write, a God on earth. He onely priviledged with the right and power of *coinage*; the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Pereimals* setting forwards to the City of *Mecca*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings and begin their years; as the Christians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Hests were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Calicute* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection, and in the end to cast off all relation to him, and to his *Prerogatives*. Yet still he is esteemed of more power and Majesty, than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*: and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; first in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in his Port of *Calicute*; the customes and impost upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africk*, and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini facient? audent cum talia Fures
And if the man such riches have,
Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What *Forces* he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men besieging and taking in the fort of *Chalen*, with another of 100000 beleaguring the Castle which the *Portugals* had built near his City of *Calecute*. And when the said *Portugals* stirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Souldiers, and 200 good vessels of war for the Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the rest of these petit Kings to their old acknowledgements, but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassallage*, or protection at the least, of the *Great Mongul*: others by suffering the *Portugals* to build forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their estate against this pretender. His forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unserviceable in these Countries, by reason of those many Rivers which interlace it. and these *Foot* are compounded most of Gentry which they there call *Nairos*, trained to their weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that weapon which he most delighteth in; which makes them very expert and nimble at them: much priviledged for that cause by the Lawes of the Countrey; and so esteemed of by the King, that out of them his Sisters choose what men they please to their *Husbands*; some of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King succeeding.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Calicute*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom: the Crown descending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the son of his Eldest Sister, or neareſt kinswoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath alwayes the maiden head of his Queens, and that some of these *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company; it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines* and not the Kings.

8. *NARSINGA.*

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the West, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Orissan* or *Orixa*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say of as much extent as can be travelled in six months: plentiful in the same commodities which the rest of *India* doth afford, except *Pepper* and some other spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers as some other places: which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfully cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*; in which if any year passeth without rain, they fall in to such extremities, that they are fain to sell their children.

The people in Religion *Gentiles*, so worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they join the *Devil* or their *Pagodes* in Commission with him, whereto induced

Narſinga. ced by the perſwaſion of their beaſtly *Bramines*, who thereout ſuck no ſmall advantage. Some Chriſtians there are intermixt, of the *old plantation*, eſpecially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*: but not ſo well inſtructed in the *Principles* of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to diſſwade them from the uſe of ſome *Heatheniſh* cuſtoms, though barbarous, inhumane, and againſt all reaſon; not uſed in any place, but amongſt the *Indians*. Amongſt which I reckon for moſt ſavage, the forcing of poor women to burn themſelves with their husbands bodies, the womens kindred not the husbands thruſting them on theſe hard conditions, who reckon it a diſgrace to their familie, if ſhe ſhould refuſe. And becauſe they will be ſure not to have that infamy ſtick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who ſhall ſo refuſe, muſt ſhave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be ſuffered to eat, drink or ſleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miſerable than the Flames which they ſeek to ſhun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greedineſs, and to contend which ſhall be formoſt: ſhe being thought to have been moſt loving during his life, which is now moſt willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her ſelf to his *Manes*, at the funeral pile: whereunto thus alludeth the Poet.

Et certamen habent lethi, quæ viva ſequatur.
Conjugium; pudor eſt non licuiſſe mori.
Ardent victrices, & præbent pectora flammæ.
Imponuntque ſuis ora peruſta viris.

A ſhame 'tis not to dy: they therefore ſtrive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive.
The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breſt;
And her burnt face doth on her husband reſt.

Chief Cities of this Countrey, 1. *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancer*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to thoſe of *Narſinga*; the people whereabouts called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Chriſtians*, who live for the moſt part by fiſhing for *Pearl*, which they ſell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan* Merchants. 2. *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Muſulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vaſſal to the Kings of *Narſinga*. 3. *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4. *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for a yearly feaſt here celebrated in honour of *Pereimal* (once ſole King of *Malavar*) reckoned for a Saint at leaſt in theſe parts of *India*: the offerings at which accuſtomably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5. *Chadambaram*, the Mother City of thoſe *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Pereimal*, who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of annual rent, all conſumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimals* head. 6. *Madura* hououred with the Reſidence of the *Chochanada* or the Chief Prelate of the *Bramines* of this Kingdome; ſo numerous, that in this Town, and the territories of it onely, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thouſand. The ſeat alſo of one of three *Naichi*, or tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narſinga*: the other two reſiding at 7. *Gingi*, and 8 *Tanajor*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not elſe obſervable. 9. *Maliapur*, called alſo St. *Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apoſtle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whoſe poſterity in other things like unto other men, are ſaid to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephant*: a puniſhment inflicted on the whole Generation for ſin of their Anceſtors: How true this is, I cannot ſay, but ſure I am that *Dorotheus* ſaith, that he reſteth at *Calamina*, where he was ſlain with a dart. However the Portugals to make ſome uſe of the old Tradition removed ſome bones from this place, which were ſaid to be his, and enſhrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much viſited by profitable Pilgrimes, to their great enriching. The City once ſo large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the uſe of divers Nations which reſorted thither. In theſe latter days deſolate and forlorn, inhabited onely by ſome old Chriſtians, till the *Portugueze* began again to people it with new Colonies: 10. *Choromandel* giving name to a large Sea-Coaſt, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11. *Caſta*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Countrey, but buried quick in the ſame grave with him. 12. *Negapatau*, in the ſame Region, inhabited for the moſt part by Saint *Thomas Chriſtians*. 13. *Tarnaſſari*, once the head City of a Kingdom ſo called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field, 100000 horſe and foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now ſubject to the King of *Narſinga*. The people black, but ſo out of love with their own colour, that they willingly proſtitute their wives or daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14. *Biſnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is ſometimes called the King of *Biſnagar*. In thoſe times 24 miles in compaſſe, with nine Gates in it, (amongſt others) continually guarded with Soldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elſe where equalled. In the year 1565. ſacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joint forces had invaded this Kingdome, it became deſolate and forſaken; and the Court removed to 15. *Penegardo*, eight dayes journey within the Land (*Biſnagar* being ſeated on the borders of *Decan*, but long it had not ſtaid there when removed to 16 *Narſinga*, where it hath ever ſince been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdome, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himſelf by the name of that City where he reſideth for the preſent.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to ſay, theſe Eaſtern parts not being known at all till theſe later times, nor well known in theſe. About the year 1550. their King then reigning was impriſoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who ſhewed him onely once a year to his Subjects, parting the power and government amongſt themſelves. He being dead, and his ſon kept in the like reſtraint, *Romaragio* the firſt Captain aſcended the Throne, *Timaragio* mannaged the Eſtate, and *Bengahe* commanded the Army. But theſe Uſurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565. *Timaragio* the

Survivor

Survivor took the charge of all; whole ſonne, to make himſelf ſure of the Kingdom, murdered his impriſoned Soveraign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the ſucceſſion, till ſettled in the perſon of *Chriſmarao*, the undoubted Heir; who did not onely reſtore peace and quiet to *Narſinga* it ſelf, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Idalcan*, who had before endangered his eſtate therein. Of the great Army which he led againſt this *Idalcan*, we have ſpoke already: adding here onely, that before he went upon this enterpriſe (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he ſacrificed in nine dayes 2036 Beaſts to the Countrey Idols, the fleſh whereof he cauſed to be diſtributed amongſt the poor. Routed at firſt, and being perſwaded by ſome about him to go out of the field, he is ſaid, to have made this Noble Anſwer, that he *had rather the Idalcan ſhould boaſt that he had ſlain him, than vanquiſhed him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickeſt of his enemies, and well followed by the valianteſt of his Friends, he obtained the victory. But this vaſt Army of 600000 foot, 30000 Horſe, 537 Elephants, with neceſſaries anſwerable to ſuch infinite multitudes, ſpeaks onely what he can do on extreme neceſſity: or when he hath ſome long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better meaſured by their ſtanding forces, than by premeditated *Levites*. And herein this Prince comes not much ſhort of his greateſt neighbours: his ſtanding bands conſiſting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which ſerve on foot; 20000 Horſe, who are either *Perſians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continuall readineſs: his foot defraied out of his *Revenues*, his Horſe maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands diſtributed amongſt his Captains (ſome of which are ſaid to have a million of Crowns *per Annum*) to furniſh him with theſe ſtable bands of Horſes and Elephants. *Oriſtan.*

As for his *Revenue* it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the reſt the expence of his houſhold, and the entertainment of his Foot. This ſum amaſſed together out of the Lands, mines, and forreſts of the Countrey: which are wholly his; and the waters of ſome Rivers (ſold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth; the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which the mines, forreſts, and one third of the lands, he retaineth to himſelf; the other two being divided amongſt his Captains. So that it is no marvel if ſo rich a Countrey yield him ſuch an *income*, conſidering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it ſhould yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with *Delly* and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*: ſo called from *Oriſſa*, the chief City of it.

The Countrey hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine ſtuff like ſilk, made of graſſe, and there called *Yerva*; with which together with *Long Pepper*, Ginger, *Mirabolins*, and other commodities here growing, they uſe to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Oriſſa* onely. The people ſo well governed, or ſo hating theft; that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Moguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the ſame temper and religion, with the reſt of the *Indians* ſubject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moiſten and refreſh it; but none ſo beneficiall to the Kings hereof, as the River *Guangen* (of old called *Chaberis*) the waters whereof eſteemed ſacred by the Kings of *Galicute* and *Narſinga*, and much uſed by them in their ſacrifices and ſuperſtitious purgations; are wholly ingroſſed by this King, who ſelleth them to thoſe Princes at exceſſive rates. Beſides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coaſt, of 350 miles in length; that is to ſay, from Cape *Guadarino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narſinga*; to Cape *Leogoræ* in the Eaſt, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, becauſe not ſo well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far leſs Territory.

Towns of moſt note herein, 1. *Oriſſa*, on the Sea-ſide, or not far from it, the beſt traded Port of all this Kingdome; to which the name thereof is to be aſcribed, as the Head-City of the Counrey. 2. *Cateoha*, ſix dayes journey within the land, the ordinary reſidence of their Kings, before it was ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. 3. *Angeli*, a well-frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4. *Bacolli* or *Bacola*, more within the land, and once the head City of a Kingdome, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat fleſh, or kill any beaſt. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deſerves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom; but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, ſubdued not many years ſince by the K. of *Patanaw*: and both, grown weaker by that war, by *Echebar*, the *Great Mongul*.

10 BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all thoſe Petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-Eaſt of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oriſtan* and *Patanaw*; on the Weſt, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Penout* on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the Eaſt, the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Bottia*, the principall City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of theſe ſmall Kingdoms.

The Countrey great, of three moneths journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be

Patanaw. ſeen five dayes journey off; in which are ſaid to dwell a people with ears of a ſpan long or more, whom otherwiſe thoſe of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In thoſe parts which are next *Bengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more enclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear cloſe to their bodies, ſo ſtreight that one cannot ſee a pleit or wrinckle; & thoſe they never put off by night nor day, whilſt they are able to hang on: nor do they waſh at any time, for fear of defiling ſo pure a Creature as the water. Content with one wife (deſerved to be held a miracle in theſe Eaſtern parts) and yet *cohabit* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *Sooth-ſayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whoſe direction (firſt conſulting his Books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongſt them. The principall, 1. *Bottia*, the *Metropolis* of it. 2. *Clamur.* of which little memorable. 2. *Kukares*, the ſecond Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as Being over-run by the branches of Mount *Caucaſes*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by ſome called *Negariot*, their Staples for the ſale of their cloth, (moſt of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinoys*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who reſort frequently to thoſe markets. This is a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, the Kings whereof are called *Dermain*, but *Vaſſals* to the great *Mongul*. And ſo is he of 3. *COUCHE*, another Kingdom of this Tract, frontiring upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; ſo callled from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reaſon that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good paſtures by that means, and thoſe well ſtored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build *Hoſpitals* for them, in which when lame and old they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their ſmall money being *Almonds*:

4. *GOVREN* or *Citor* the moſt Northern Realm in this General diviſion, ſo called of *Goror*, *Goren* the chief Town of it. The Country in ſome parts mountainous, out of which ſpringeth the River *Sicilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the reſt a kind of Deſart or unpeopled Country, joyneth cloſe to *Couche*. In which are few Villages, graſs (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffes*, Tigers, and other wild Beaſts; none wilder than the Theeves, who frequent the wildernesſes.

In this Tract alſo are the Kingdoms of 5. *RAME*; and 6. *RECON*, joining upon *Zagathay*, or enclining towards it; poſſeſſed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, it not before: but *Feuditaries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachoſia*, who commanded in the North Eaſt of *Perſia*, and theſe North parts of *India*; and from thoſe places drew his Army or the greateſt part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgee*, the King of *Mandao*. Here is alſo the Kingdom of *7 TRIPPVRA*, naturally fenced with hils and mountains; and by that means hitherto defended againſt the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad neighbours; with whom they have contiual warres. But of theſe Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be ſaid, and that little of no certain knowledge; thoſe parts being hitherto ſo untravelled, that they may paſs in the Accompt of a *Terra Incognita*.

11. PATANAW.

PATANE or *PATANAW*, is bounded on the North, with the Realms of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt, with *Ganges*; on the Weſt, with *Oriſtan*; and on the South, with the Kingdome and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were ſo called becauſe a Colony of this; or from ſome reſemblances in the nature of the ſeverall Countries, or from the ſignification of the word in the *Indian* language; I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the ſame name, yet they are under ſeveral Governments, and ſituate in far diſtant places: no otherwiſe agreeing than in ſome reſemblaces, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnſhire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and waſh away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of ſlender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great diſſemblers. The women ſo bedecked with ſilver and copper, eſpecially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a ſhooe. Both Sexes uſe much waſhing in the open Rivers, and that too intermixt togethor in their natural nakedneſs; eſpecially ſuch as live neer the banks of the River *Jemena* (eſteemed more holy than the reſt) which from *Agra* paſſing thorow this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Patane*, a large town and a long one, built with very broad ſtreets; but the houſes very mean and poor, made at the beſt of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The *Matropolis* of this Kingdom, becauſe the antienteſt, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Bannaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the Gentiles from remote Countries uſe to come in *Pilgrimage*, to bath themſelves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flouriſhing, & beautified upon the Rode with handſom Villages. 3. *Sriipur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet ſubdued by the Great *Monguls*. 4. *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Ieſuites* when blamed by them for the worſhip of ſo many *Pugodes*, as contrary both to the law of God and nature. For cauſing them to rehearſe the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more againſt thoſe commandements in worſhiping ſo many *Pagodes*, than they themſelves in worſhiping ſo many *Saints*. 5. *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moores*) once part of *Patanaw*, ſince aſcribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Pataneans*, but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in theſe parts of *India*. Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*,

la, into which driven by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their laſt King being ſlain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joined in an *Ariſtocraty*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their ſucceſſors attempted *Oriſtan*, and added that alſo to their Eſtate; but they could not long make good their fortunes; ſubdued by *Echebar the Mongul*, and made ſubject to him. Three of them, viz. the Prince of *Siripur* the King of *Ciandecan*, and he whom they call *Mauſadalim*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their antient *Paganiſm*, as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometaniſm*, have vaſſaled themſelves to the great *Mongul*, now the Lord *Paramount* of the Country. *Bengala.*

12. *BENGALA.*

BENGALA is bounded on the North; with *Patanaw*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and Weſt, with the *Gulf* of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country ſtored with all things neceſſary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and Long-Pepper. Such aboundance of Silk, & Cotton, and of Fleſh and Fiſh, that it is impoſſible that any Country ſhould exceed it in thoſe commodities: And which crowns all, bleſt with ſo temperate and ſweet an air that it draws thither people of all ſorts to inhabit it. Here is alſo, amongſt other rarities, a Tree called *Moſes*, which beareth ſo delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to ſin.

The natural Inhabitants for the moſt part, are of white complexion, like the *Europæans*, ſubtil of wit, and of a curious diſpoſition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not ſomewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with ſome ſmattering in *Philoſophy*, *Phyſick*, and *Aſtrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparell: not naked as in others of theſe *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a ſhirt or ſmock reaching to their feet, with ſome upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchaſtity, though *Adultry* be puniſhed with cutting off of their noſes. Neat, if not curious and too coſtly in this one cuſtom, that they never ſeeth meat twice in the ſame Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In *Religion*, for the moſt part *Mahometans*, eſpecially on the Sea-ſhores, which lay moſt open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometaniſm* was here planted many ages ſince.

Of Rivers we need take no care having ſpoken of *Ganges*. That with its many channels may abundantly ſerve to water ſo ſmall a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principall whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, ſituate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the moſt beautifull Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*; by reaſon of the holineſs and divine operation, aſcribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it; there being few years in which not viſited by three or four hundred thouſand *Filgrims*. 2. *Gouro*, the ſeat-Royall of the antient Kings. 3. *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and ſituate in thoſe times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the Channel (occaſioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a league off from the River. 5. *Porrow Graude*, and 6. *Perror Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Aſylum*, which was built by *Romulus*: whereunto ſuch as dare not ſtay in their own Countries, or any well-regulated Cities, uſe to make their reſort; priviledged here to live in all kind of licentiouſneſs.

Here is alſo in the North parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of ARACHAN. Lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but ſo remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles diſtant from the neereſt branch of it. Wealthy and populous withall; governed heretofore by a King of its own, ſo wallowing in wealth and ſenſuall pleaſures, that he had in this City and the parts adjoyning twelve Royall Palaces or *Seraglios*, all ſtowed with women for his luſt. Now ſubject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lyeth, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are alſo ſome ſmall Ilands in the Gulf of *Bengala*, which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Bazacata*, now called *Baſſe*. 2. *Baraſſæ*, of which name there are five in *Ptolomy*, three of them by *Mercator* ſaid to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Subut*. 3. Two, called the Ilands of *Good fortune*, by him placed under the *Æquator*, and ſaid to be inhabited by *Anthropophagy*, or man-eaters; as alſo were three more which he calls 4. *Sabadibæ*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Inſulæ Satyrorum*, or the Iſles of *Satyres*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyres*. And 6. thoſe called *Maniolæ*, in number ten, (now *Iſlas de Pracel*) reported by *Ptolomy* to be ſo ſtored with *Adamant* ſtones, that they violently drew to them any ſhips or veſſels, which had iron in them; for which cauſe they which uſed theſe Seas faſtned the planks of their ſhips with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no ſuch matter, unleſs perhaps it may be in the exploits of Sir *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with ſuch an Iland, in the courſe of his *Errantrie*.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we finde it of a different conſtitution from the reſt of the Kingdoms of theſe parts. Not governed by a family of Succeſſive Princes, deſcended from the Stem of a Royal Anceſtrie, as the others are. Chance, or neceſſity, had brought thither many *Ambaſſines*, or *Æthiopians*, who made a conqueſt of the Conntry; and choſe a King out of themſelves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regall honour to the *Ambaſſine* Nation, they procured thence yearly certain thouſands of *Slaves*; whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the higheſt commands in *civil* and *military* ſervice; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Soveraign: as the *Mamalucks* in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, whom herein they followed. By ſome *Arabians* trading with them,

Mandao. they came in time to admit *Mahometaniſm* amongſt them; on the Sea-coaſts eſpecially. Diſpoſſeſſed firſt of ſome part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Pateneans*; when driven to ſeek new dwellings by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*: and of their whole Kingdom, by the valor and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the reſt of his eſtate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this ſide of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narſinga* being but a *Parentheſis* in the conſtruction of this ſentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his diſcent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of the five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almoſt all the greater and leſſer *Aſia*, unto his eſtates: left *Perſia*, with the parts of *India* which lay neereſt to it on the North, to *Myrza Charrok*, his fourth ſonne. But his iſſue failing in *Abdula*, the 4th. of that line, thoſe eſtates fell to *Abuſaid*, deſcended from *Maromcha*, the third ſonne of *Tamerlane*: Whoſe ſonne and Succeſſor called *Zeuzes*, by ſome *Malaoncres*, being diſſeized of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*: the rights of all, with the poſſeſſion of *Arachoſia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamiſus* (now *Candahor* or *Sableſtan*) together with ſo much of *India* as was held by thoſe Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger ſons of *Abuſaid*: whoſe poſterity laying hold on ſuch opportunities as were offered to them, have made themſelves Maſters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whoſe Succeſſors and their atchievements we ſhall here preſent.

The *Great Mongul*.

1473. 1. *Hamed*, the ſon of *Abuſaid*, of the race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conqueſt of *Perſia* by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, ſucceeded in *Chabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* ſubject to the *Tartars*.

1500. 2. *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, in danger to be diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the neighbouring *Vbeques*, living upon the borders of *Perſia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at laſt he quieted; enlarging his dominions by the Conqueſt of ſome part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532. 3. *Hamoyen*, the ſonne of *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquiſhed by the *Parthians*, or *Pataneans*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the 2d. *Perſian* Monarch of this line, on promiſe to conform to the *Sophian Sect*: and by that aid confirmed and ſettled his affairs, but held himſelf to the former Principles of his *Irreligion*.

4. *Merhamed*, or *Miramudius*, ſonne of *Emanpaxda*, called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, againſt *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquiſhed the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields, and conquered the Kingdomes of *Mandao*, and *Balaſſia*, with ſome other Provinces.

5. *Adabar*, the ſonne of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.

1550. 6. *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the moſt fortunate and victorious Prince of all this family; ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Caximir*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Oriſſa*, *Bengula*, *Patanaw*, and divers other of leſs note.

1605. 7. *Selim*, ſurnamed *Jangheere*, the ſon of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his father conqueſts.

1627. 8. *Bockie*, the grandchild of *Selim* by his eldeſt ſonne, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but ſhortly after made away by *Aſaph Chawn*, ſo to make room for.

1627. 9. *Curroon*, the third ſon of *Selim* or *Jangheer*, and ſon-in-law unto *Aſſaph Chawn*; having by his own Miniſters, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood, ſucceeded into the Eſtates, and was crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, ſtill living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on theſe Princes, their eſtate and power; in matters of *Religion* they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long ſince embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally deſcended. But not ſo ſcrupulous or preciſe in that profeſſion, as to endeavour the ſuppreſſing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his ſon *Jangheere*, being ſo inclined unto *Chriſtianity*, that they permitted the *Jeſuites* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it ſelf, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what *Religion* to adhere unto, he cauſed 30 Infants to be ſo brought up, that neither their Nurſes nar any body elſe ſhould ſpeak unto them; reſolving to addict himſelf to the Religion of that Country, whoſe language ſhould be ſpoken by them, as moſt agreeable to nature: and he did accordingly. For as thoſe Children ſpoke no language, ſo was he poſitive, and reſolved in no Religion. Able to ſee the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the ſtrictneſs of *Chriſtianity*. And though *Selim* who ſucceeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects, declared himſelf for that *Religion*; yet his affairs being once ſettled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father. Sultan *Curroon* now Reigning, of the ſame *Nentrality*, and tis well he is ſo; there being no Religion ſo impure and bloody, which he would not diſhonour by his kown ungraciouſneſs.

The

The Language ſpoken by theſe Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is ſaid by ſome to be the *Turkiſh*. But I think rather that it is ſome Language near it, than the very ſame: And that the Language which they ſpeak is the antient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*, a ſprinkling of the *Perſian* intermixt amongſt them. A mixture not to be denied, in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the entercourſe which their Subjects of thoſe parts have with theſe of *India*; and that the greateſt part of their Souldiers, Officers and Commanders, are ſupplied from thence. *India &c.*

Their Government is abſolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every mans eſtate which is worth the having: the perſons and purſes of his Subjects at his ſole diſpoſing; ſo that he may amaſs what treaſures, and raiſe what forces for the Wars his need requireth; for the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Miniſters ſhall ſuggeſt unto him. Firſt, for his *Treaſures*, it is conceived that his *Revenue* doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns, and there are reaſons to perſwade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impoſt* upon which is of infinite value; beſides the vaſt ſums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countrys whatſoever, which hold traffick here; their comodities not being to be parted with but for ready coin. The whole land being alſo his, he eſtates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himſelf, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleaſure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themſelves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbants death, to enter on the whole eſtate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of courſe, the wife and children of the deceaſed being fairly dealt with, if he content himſelf with the perſonal eſtate, and leave the Land to them to begin anew. For inſtance, of thoſe huge ſums which in ſo rich a Country may be had this way, it is ſaid that when the *Vice Roy* of *Labor* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three millions of Gold, beſides Silver, Jewels, Horſes, Elephants, Furniture and Goods, almoſt invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the Great *Mogal* ſeized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, beſides Plate and Jewels. Beſides theſe means of heaping treaſure, till the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the *Preſents* given by all ſorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his preſence which comes empty handed. Finally, if *Badurius*, which was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of gold and ſilver to pay his Army; and after the loſs of all that treaſure, advanced upon the ſudden the ſum of 600000 Crowns, which he ſent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to ſuccor him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treaſures* muſt we think this Prince to be maſter of, who hath more than four times the eſtate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times.

By the like Parallel we may conjecture ſomewhat at his *Forces* alſo, *Badurius* the *Cambaian* brought into the field againſt *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 pieces of braſs Ordinance, of which were four *Baſiliſks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with powder and ſhot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of ſo much a greater eſtate then he, but that his *Levies* may be raiſed proportionably to ſo great Dominions? But becauſe poſſibly *Badurius* did extend himſelf to the utmoſt of his power, and having loſt two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wiſe Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any ſuch hazards on the loſs of a Battel, can in an inſtant raiſe 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horſe, and Foot proportionable; and yet have ſtock enough for an *After-game*, if that he ſhould chance to loſe the firſt. But it is ſeldom that he hath advanced to ſo high a *Muſter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an Hundred thouſand men, and a thouſand Elephants for fight; though poſſibly of all ſorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in time of *Progreſs*, it is ſaid that his followers of all ſorts amount unto two hundred thouſand; & that his Tents do uſually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithſtanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a ſtand, ſince the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rasbooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puiſſant Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out ſtill againſt him; ſome of them being ſaid to command as much land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have alwayes in readineſs 200000 Horſe & 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

2. *INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.*

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is that part of the great *Continent* of *India*, which lieth on the further ſide of the River *Ganges*, from the ſpring or fountain of it, where ſoever it be, to the fall thereof into the ſea by the fift and laſt mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this ſide of that River. From hence extended Eaſtward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in thoſe elder times ſo renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and an other of *The Golden Cherſoneſe*: this laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition, in the elder times, as thoſe which did inhabit on the hither ſide of the *Ganges*: not ſo well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reaſon of the remoteneſs of their ſituation; nor ſo well diſcovered at the preſent. So that the beſt accompt we ſhall be able to give of it, will not be ſo exact and punctual as of that before; with reference

Bramia. reference either to the ſtate hereof in the times of the Antients, or the affaires of it in theſe dayes.

Mountains of moſt note in it, 1. *Bepyrrus*, 2. *Mæandrus*, 3. *Semanthinus*; and 4 thoſe called *Damaſi*, touched upon before, in our generall diſcourſe of *India*. Out of which, and from other ſprings, flow theſe following Rivers, 1. *Catabeda*, 2. *Bocoſanna*, 3. *Sadus*, 4. *Temala*, 5. *Beſynga*, 6. *Chryſaoras*, 7. *Polandas*, 8. *Attabas*, theſe three laſt in the part hereof called the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, 9. *Daonas*, and 10. *Dorias*, riſing out of the Mountains called *Damaſi*. Others there are whoſe names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now diſtinguiſhed, it is hard to ſay. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1. *Balanga*, 2. *Cirtatha*, 3. *Taſale*, 4. *Tagma*, and 5. *Malthura*, have the name of being the *Metropoles* of their ſeverall Nations. 6. *Triglyphon*, only honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are ſaid to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royall of ſome petit Prince. After theſe 1. *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*, 2. *Samba*, 3. *Sabara*, 4. *Coli*, 5. *Zabæ*, and 6. *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7. *Baracura*, 8. *Berabonna*, 9. *Bebynga*, 10. *Tacola*, 11. *Sabana* and 12. *Thibonobaſtus*: are marked out for the moſt noted *Empories*, or Towns of trade; the memory of *Sabana* being ſtill preſerved in the Frith of *Sabaon*, betwixt this *Cherſoneſe* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by thoſe ſpeciall Adjuncts, of which, 1. *Cocconagara*, and 2. *Balonca*, in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*; 3. *Rhandamarcotta*, in the Midlands, 4. *Pentapolis*, near the mouth of *Ganges* called *Antibolum*; 5. *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6. *Corygaza*, one of the principall Town of the *Marandæ*, may be ſome of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Marandæ* laſt ſpoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangæni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacoræi*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrrus*; as the *Tilædæ* on *Meandrus*; and the *Animachæ*, and *Cabocæ*, near the hills called *Damaſi*. The *Baſadæ*, ſaid to be crooked, ſhort, and thick; but of a cheerfull aſpect, and clear complexion: of which compoſition alſo the inhabitants of the *Golden Cherſoneſe* were obſerved to be: the *Barræ*, and *Cudutæ*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Leſtori*, a theeviſh and Piratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of ſo hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. Theſe, with the reſt, too many to be here receited, the iſſue in moſt likelyhood of *Chavilah* & *Saba* the ſons of *Jocktan*; of whom we find ſo many footſteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco*, *Sinm*, *Sabana Emporio*, *Sobanus Fluvio*; and in the Countryes now called *Ava*, and the Kingdome of *Cavelan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient ſtories, or of the power of any of their former Kings: but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the moſt powerfull King of all thoſe Countryes) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to trie Maſteries with him; yet his Souldiers were ſo terrified with it (remembring the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no perſwaſions could prevaile with them to go further Eaſtward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unleſſe the converſion of the *Indians* in the time of *Conſtantine*, may be applyed to thoſe on that ſide of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the later obſervations and diſcoveries of it, we find it (as moſt barberous Countryes elſe till reduced to Order) diſmembred and ſubdivided into many eſtates; almoſt as many Realms as Cities, and diſtinct governments amongſt them, as Tribes and Nations. Moſt of them *Gentiles* in Religion, with whom the name of *Chriſt* and *Chriſtianity* not ſo much as heard of, till the comming of the *Jeſuits* thither; who have not only obtained leave, but ſome invitations, for the promoting of the *Goſpel*. And for *Mahometaniſm*, though it had got ſome footing on the Sea-coaſts of the Golf of *Bengala*, as lying moſt convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and thoſe towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as litle heard of as *Chriſtianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the reſt as are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are thoſe of, 1. *Brama*, or *Barma*, 2. *Cauchin-China*, 3. *Camboia*, 4. *Jangoma*, 5. *Siam*, and 6. *Pegu*.

BRAMA.

THe Kingdomes of *BRAMA* or *BARMA* have on the Weſt, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*; on the Eaſt *Cauchin-China*; and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, poſſeſſed for many ages paſt of theſe North-Weſt Countryes. By the tranſpoſing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Country of theſe *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the neareſt of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the ſpace of 150 Leagues, but far more from Weſt to Eaſt: watered with many great and remarkable Rivers, iſſuing from the Lake *Chiamay*, which though 600 miles from the Sea, and emptying it ſelf continually into ſo many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compaſs, and is nevertheleſs ful of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the commodiouſneſs of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Ægypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithſtanding, there are in it many huge forreſts, in the Weſt eſpecially; and therein many Lyons, Tigers, Ounces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a miſchievous and hurtfull Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdome of 1. *Calam*; 2. *Prom*, 3. *Melinta*, 4. *Miranda*, 5. *Bacan*, 6. *Tangu*, 7. *Ava*, and 8. *Brama*:

Of

Of 1. *MELINTAY* and 2. *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the reſt, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the firſt riſing of his fortunes; becoming the foundation of his following greatneſs. Of 3. *BACAM*, it is ſaid that it is prentifully enriched with Mines, both of Gold and Silver. In 4. *CAVILAN*, commonly and contradedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-ſteps of the name of *Cavilah* the ſon of *Jocktan*. Of the reſt more is to be ſaid, not much. *Chauchin.*

5. *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdom, is exceeding populous, and ſtored with a warlike people. Given by the ſecond King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger ſonne; who being by his Father commanded to the ſiege of *Marmolan* which had then revolted, not only did decline the ſervice, but rebelled againſt him; and by the ſtrength of this ſmall Kingdom held it out three years. But ſeeing his Fathers fortunes in a manner deſperate, he repented of hit diſobedience; and went unto his aid, with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherouſly poiſoned on the way by his chiefeſt Counſeller, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms, ſo called from the chief Town thereof: formerly ſubject with the reſt of the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their ſeveral Vice-Royes. One of which taking his advantage of the wars betweenthe Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to ſet up for himſelf; and husbanded his affairs ſo well, that he became ſole Lord of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the reſt in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his Succeſſor, when diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by one whom he married to his Siſter, and made Governour of this very Province. In which he bore himſelf ſo ſtiffely, that being ſent for by his King to aid him againſt ſome of hi Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he anſwered that he would ſend one half; to ſend all, unreaſonable. Incenſed with which denial, the King armed againſt him; but he put the Leaders to the ſword, and ſeized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and diſpairing of reconcilement, he took upon himſelf the title of King of *Tangu*; and to ſecure himſelf therein, joined with the King of *Arrachan* againſt his Soveraign; whom he moſt barborouſly ſlew (after he had put himſelf into his hands) with his wife and children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villany, ſubdued not long after, with the reſt of theſe *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of theſe Kingdoms, and one of the plantations of *Cavilah* alſo; is liberally furniſhed with all things neceſſary for the life of man. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Rubies*; which they dig out of the Mountains; a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of horſe & Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, iſſuing out of the Lake of *Chamay*, and communicates the ſame to the whole Province. Subject for many ages paſt to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is ſaid; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling againſt the ſonne and ſucceſſor of his Benefactor, and by him ſlain in ſingle Combat; this Kingdom was conferred on a ſonne of the Conqueror. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother, and one which grew at laſt unto ſo great power, that in the buſtle or cumbuſtions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he ſurpriſed or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*; ſlew all the Souldiers, and ſpited *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the diſperſed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himſelf a good bargain by it; if the ſudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not ſpoiled his markets.

8. *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the moſt Southern of theſe *Bramain* kinhdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatarie* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no accompt when the *Portugals* came firſt acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of moſt renown. For ſitting ſtill when all the reſt of their neighbours were embroiled in wars, they gathered ſo much power and ſtrength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof obſerving how the forces of his neighbouring Princes were conſumed, and their treaſures waſted; levying an Army of 300000 fighting men, 40000 Elephants, with all things ſuitable And with this power ſubdued the kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of theſe parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of it; making in little time all the leſſer Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they ſtill continue.

CHAVCHIN-CHINA.

CHAVCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Eaſt, with part of the Great Realm of *China*; on the North extending towards *Tartary*; on the South, bordering on *Camboia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great ſtore of ſilks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other ſtuffes. It affordeth alſo plenty of *Porcellane* Earth, which being made into Cups, Diſhes, and other Utenſils of houſhold, is ſold by the name of *China-ware*: well counterfeited of late amongſt us, by putting a white cruſt on our *Potters* earth, as neat for uſe and ſhew as the naturall *China*.

The people very ſtout and warlike, eſpecially for Foot-ſervice, though they have many horſes here, and thoſe fit for war. Well-practiſed on their *Peeces* alſo, on which they ſpend great ſtore of powder, but not ſo much in war, as in ſports and triumphs: yet making much more than they ſpend, the earth in ſome parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commadity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, eſpecially to the making

Camboia. ing of Powder, Silks, and *Procellane*, which they ſell to the *Chineſe*. *Idolatars*, for the moſt part, as are thoſe of *China*, whoſe Characters and language they alſo uſe: but ſo that there appear ſome inclinations unto *Chriſtianity*, in many of them, who have erected many *Croſſes*, and do admit the pictures of the *Bleſſed Virgin*, and the finall judgement. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progreſs in the Goſpel, if they had met with better Teachers than theſe *Laymens* books.

The chief City hereof is called *Chauchin-China* by the name of the Province, ſituate on a River coming out of *China*; and paſſing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided into three Provinces, and as many Kings, over which one *Paramount*: but he & they the Tributaries of the King of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Iland called *Ainao*, ten miles from the land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fiſhing for *Pearls*. The only Province of the *Indies*, which is wholly ſubject to the power of a forein Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3. CAMBOIA.

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*; on the Eaſt and South, and he Ocean; on the Weſt, with parts of the Kingdome of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia* the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* ſpecially ſo called.

1. CHAMPA, the Northern part hereof bordereth *Chauchin-China*, and is liberally provided of all neceſſaries: beſides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in ſilver, much uſed in *Bathes*, and at the funerals of great perſons. This a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject with the reſt to the King of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is ſituate neer the Sea-ſide, and of very good traffick.

2. CAMBOIA ſpicially ſo called, lieth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well ſtored with Elephants and *Rhinocerots*, which laſt the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth alſo great plenty of a ſweet-wood, which they call *Calumba*, as precious & as much eſteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the ſame, or ſome *Species* of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Fleſh, and Fiſh; Well-watred with the River *Mecon*, which iſſuing out of *China*, and having received many leſſer ſtreams falleth firſt into a great Lake of 200 miles compaſs, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean; making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Ilands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*): the inhabitants at thoſe times betaking themſelves to their upper Rooms, and paſſing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be ſtrong and warlike, though more enclined to merchandiſe and navigation than to deeds of Arms. *Idolatars* of the worſt kind, eſteeming Men and Beaſts of a like condition in regard of any future judgement: of late beginning to ſet up, and adore the *Croſs*, which is (it ſeems) the firſt *Principle of Religion*, in which the *Friers* are wont to inſtruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet, by theſe new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, uſed only here; but voluntarily to expreſs their loves, not upon conſtraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1. *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before deſtroyed: where it hath its fall into the Sea; well traded, as the Staple for all this Country, the commodities whereof are brought hither, and here ſold to the Merchant. 2. *Cudurmuch*, twelve league from *Camboia*, on the ſame River alſo. 3. *Coul*, on the Sea-ſide in the very South-weſt Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once abſolute, and at their own diſpoſing, till invaded by a vaſt Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being ſlain, and his forces weakened, his ſonne and Succeſſor was conſtrained to become a *Vaſſal* to the crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loſs of his eſtate, when that Kingdom was made ſubject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applied himſelf unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninſula* (part of his dominions) extending three leagues into the Sea; and ſent to the *Jeſuites* for ſome of their *Society* to live and preach amongſt his people. Not able for all theſe honeſt Policies to preſerve himſelf from being made a *Feudatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4. JANGOMA.

JANGOMA or the Country of the LAOS, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Menon*; on the Weſt, with the River of *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for here be three of them in all) being thoſe of *Lavea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joyned together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people, a mighty Nation and a ſtout, by Religion Gentiles, naked from the middle upwards, and truſſing up their hair like a cap. Their Country very rich and level, but very ill neighboured by the

Guoni

Gueoni (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name *Gangigu*) who poſſeſs the mountains: whence falling in great companies to hunt for men whom they kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongſt them. Inſomuch as this people, not able to defend themſelves againſt their fury, or rather wanting good leaders to conduct and order them (for it is ſaid that they can make a million of men) were fain to put themſelves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them. *Siam.*

Towns they have none of any note, exeept thoſe three which give name to the ſeveral Provinces; and thoſe of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the moſt part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber; or elſe upon the Rivers in boats and ſhallops, as the *Tartarians* of the Deſarts in their Carts or wheel-houſes. One of their Rivers (commonly called River of *Laos*) ſaid to extend 400 leagues within in the land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its courſe, and flow back ſtrongly toward its fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they ſubmitted to the Patronage of the king of *Siam*; and then no other than they liſted; though for their ſakes, that king engaged himſelf in a war againſt the *Cannibals*, their moſt deadly enemies, accompanied with 25000 foot, 20000 Horſe, and 1000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of thoſe *Cannibals* (of whom otherwiſe they had been devoured) in the year 1578 they deſcended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000, and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*. But they made an unproſperous adventure of it. For though the king of *Camboia* loſt his life in the battel, yet he gave them ſuch a fatal blow, that they were almoſt all ſlain, drowned, or captived in the fight. Weakened wherewith they became an eaſie prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he firſt made himſelf ſole Maſter of this part of *India*. Who giving to his brother the kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldeſt ſonne the kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, conferred this Country, with the title of king of *Jangoma*, on a younger Sonne. But he, begotten on a daughter of the king of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole *Indian* Empire, was eaſily perſwaded by the *Talapoies*, (ſo they call their Prieſts) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*, by whom that king was ſlain, and his kingdome waſted. How he ſped afterwards I find not. But probable it is, that he ſubmitted with the reſt to the king of *Barma*.

5. *SIAM.*

SIAM, is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, ſave that it toucheth on the Eaſt, with a part of *Camboia*. and on the Weſt, with a point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all thoſe kingdomes which paſs under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length than breadth, ſtretcheth it ſelf South-wards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninſula* or *Demy-Iland*, called antiently *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe*: one of the five famous *Cherſoneſes* or *Peninſulaes* of the elder writers; the other four being *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* neer *Propontis*, the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* in the North of *Germany*, now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the Golden, ſuper-added to it, from its plenty of gold, for which much celebrated by the antients, both *Greeks*, and *Romans* (and therefore not improbably thought by ſome to be *Solomans Ophir*) ſtill famous with the reſt of the Countries of the kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tinn, and other metals; great quantity of Pepper ſent yearly thence, with ſtore of Elephants, and horſes: the whole Country very fat, and fertile, well ſtored with Rice, Corn, Graſs, and all other neceſſaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleaſures, if not to Luxury; delighted much with Muſick and rich apparel; and ſuch as ſtand much upon their honour. For their inſtruction in good letters they have *publick Schools*, where their own Laws, and the myſteries of their own religion, are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in ſtrange tongues underſtood by none but by the learned. To tillage they can frame themſelves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanicall* Arts, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the moſt part Gentiles, worſhiping the four Elements amongſt other Gods; to each of which as they are ſeverally affected, ſo are their bodies to be diſpoſed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their deceaſe; as in their lives they were moſt devoted to the fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Chriſtians here alſo in and about the parts poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; but more *Mahometans*: who poſſeſſing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-coaſts of this Countrey, have planted that religion in moſt part of the Country now by them poſſeſſed.

It containeth in it many kingdoms, ſome of little note; thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Malaca*, 2. *Putane*, 3. *Jor*, 4. *Muantay*, and 5. *Siam*, properly and eſpecially ſo called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Patane* are poſſeſſed by the *Arabians* or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA* taketh up the South part of the *golden Cherſoneſe*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolomy* calleth *Malanconin*, in the extreme South-point hereof neer unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Emporie*, for the ſpace of 270 miles, So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Muſicana*, or built very neer it, from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Muſicani terra*. The City ſeated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here ſaid to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings where of, and the neerneſs of it to the *Line* (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof, and all the territory belonging to it, is very un-

Chersonesus Aurea.

unwholsome; and for that cause the Country but meanly populous. In compass it is said to be 20 miles, of great wealth, because of almost infinite trading; for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls, and precious Stones, the most noted *Emporie* of the East. Insomuch that is said by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more ships than any one City in the world, more by far since the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The people (as in all this tract) of an Ash-colour, with long hair hanging over their faces; bloody and murderous, especially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note in a place so unhealthy, except 2. *Sincapura*, situate East of *Malaca*, neer the Promontory of old called *Magnum*; supposed by some to be the *Zabæ* of *Ptolomy*; and that more probably than that it should be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at the least 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Chersonese*. But whatsoever it was called in the former times, it was in these latter ages the mother of *Malaca*; the greatest part of the Trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the best frequented *Emporie* in these parts of the East. 3. *Palo Zambilan*, 120 miles on the West of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coasting about the Southern Cape (now called *Cape Liampo*) we have a Sea-shore of 270 miles, as before was said. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few sheds upon the shore for the use of Fisher-men, and some scattered Villages in the land: the People dwelling most on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times possessed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258 became a kingdom of it self; founded by *Paramisera*, and some other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own king, came into this Country, where they were lovingly received by *Sangesinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite*, in *Sincapura*. Him they perfidiously slew, and invested *Paramisera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to seek a new dwelling, and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now standeth, which City, pleased with the commodiousness of the situation, he is said to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in short time removed hither also, which so increased the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moores* who began to plant themselves on the shores adjoyning, and receiving withall the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to cast off all subjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the sonne and Successor of *Paramisera* had submitted his new-raised kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incensed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500 sent out a Navy of 200 Sail to distress it by Sea, and an Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to besiege it by land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by Tempests, and the insolencies of some of his Souldiers, the *Portugals*, in the year 1511. under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had possessed themselves of it, who built there a Fortress and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the son of the expelled King (whose name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Estate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor* and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have severally and successively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they still keep it in defiance of all opposition which hath been hitherto made against them.

2. North unto that of *Malaca* lieth the kingdome of *TOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*; so called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the most part by *Moores*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometanism* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country also. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of so much power, that joining his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he besieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it: in which, when taken by *Paul de Lima*, by the defeat of this King, were found 900 pieces of brasse Ordnance. After this, picking a quarrell with the King of *Pahan*, he burnt his Houses, Barns, Provisions, and the Suburbs of the City it self: but in the course of his affairs, was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Isle of *Sumatra*) his old confederate, who after 29 daies siege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom, I am not able to resolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the *Lord* in *Chief*.

3. More North-ward yet lieth the Kingdom of *PATHANE*, denominated from *Patane* the chief City of it: but different from *Patane*, in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-shire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*, as hath been fully shewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and composed together: the *Mesquit* onely (most of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of Brick: The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabisants of it, insomuch that in this small City there are spoke three languages, *viz.* the *Chinese*, used by that people, the *Malayan* (or language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this small Crown is *Feuditary*. Built of such light stuff and combustible matter, it must needs be in great danger of fire; and was most miserably burnt in the year 1613. by some *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of some of their Fellows: at which time the whole City was consumed with fire, the *Mesquit*, the *Queens* Court, and some few Houses, excepted only. The Country governed o late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *English* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that dismall fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Pahan*, who had married her Sister, and reigned in a little Island not far off, she sent against him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men: by which compelled to correspond with her desires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4. The Kingdom of *SIAM*, strictly and specially so called, is situate on the main-land (the rest before described being in the *Chersonese*) betwixt *Camboia* on the East, *Pegu* on the West, the kingdome of *Muntay* on the North, and the maine Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it, 1. *Socotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of mettall 80 spans in height, raised by one of the Kings; it being

the

the cuſtome of this Country, that every King at his firſt coming to the Crown, is to build a *Temple*; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2. *Quedoa*, renowned for the beſt Pepper, and for that cauſe very much frequented by forein Merchants. 3. *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coaſt where it joineth to *Pegu*. Whence meaſuring along the ſhores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned; being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam*(not reckoning the *Cherſoneſe* into this Accompt) we have a Sea-coaſt of the length of 600 leagues. 4. *Lugor*, upon the ſea-ſide alſo, neer that little *Iſthmus*, which joineth the *Cherſoneſe* to the land; from whence to *Malaca* is 600 miles ſail all along the coaſt. 5 *Calantar*, the head City of a little Kingdom but ſubject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6. *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Menam*, for trade and merchandiſe. So populous and frequented by forein Nations, that beſides the Natives, here are ſaid to be thirty thouſand houſholds of *Arabians*. The Houſes of it high built, by reaſon of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the Upper rooms; and unto every houſe a boat for the uſe of the family. Thoſe of the poorer ſort dwell in little ſheds, made of reed & timber; which they remove from place to place for the beſt convenience of their markets. And yet ſo ſtrong that being beſiged by the *Tanguan* Conqueror, then king of *Pegu*, *Anno* 1567. with an Army of fourteen hundred thouſand fighting men, for the ſpace of 20 months together; it reſolutely held good againſt him: not gained at laſt by force but treaſon, one of the Gates being ſet open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Chriſtianity; but hitherto ſo ill inſtructed in the principles of it, that they maintain, amongſt many other ſtrange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years (from what time I know not) the world ſhall be conſumed with fire; and that under the aſhes of it ſhall remain to egs, out of which ſhall come one man and one woman, who ſhall people the world anew.

5. *MUANTAY* the laſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*; memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udie*, the principal of all the kingdomes of *Siam*, and the uſual reſidence of thoſe Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Carpumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the warres, and in continual readineſs for preſent ſervice. For though this king be Lord of nine ſeveral kingdoms, yet he uſeth none of them in his wars but the naturall *Siamites*, and thoſe of this City and the reſt of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is ſaid that for the uſe of this City only (being ſeated like *Venice* upon many little Iſlands not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 skiffes, and ſhallops; ſerving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable. But being beleagured by the *Tanguan* or *Bramain* Conquerour with ten hundred thouſand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this; if every man had but caſt a ſhovell full of earth upon it) it was wonne at laſt.

The Government of theſe kings of *Siam*, was abſolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being ſole Lord of all the land in his kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles or Farmed out to Husbandmen, during life or pleaſure, but never paſſed over unto any, the right of Inheritance. And theſe he grants unto his Subjects, beſides rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horſe, Foot, and Elephants: thereby inabled without further charge unto the Subject, to leavy 20000 Horſe, & 250000 Foot for preſent ſervice; beſides far greater numbers out of the reſidue of his people, if occaſion be. And for his ordinary *Guard* he was ſaid to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which beaſts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the war. By reaſon of ſo great a power he became Maſter of the Realms of *Camboia*, and *Champa*; held thoſe of *Malaca*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vaſſals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Lacs*, under his protection. But when the fatal times was come, and thas his *City* of *Siam* was betrayed to the king of *Pegu*; he poiſoned himſelf upon the news: his ſon becoming *Tributary* to the *Peguan* Victor. This ſonne of his, too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a ſonne of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, (degenerating from the gallantries of ſo worthy a Father by whom he was beſieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to reſiſt his Army if he had preſently declared ſuch a reſolution, he entertained the king with Treaties, & promiſes of delivering the City to him, till the third moneth after, (which was *March*); when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country, for 120 miles about; by which ſudden and violent inundation, and the ſword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there periſhed all of this great Army except 70 thouſand. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite* *Anno* 1600 beſieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon: and dying in the year 1605. left his eſtate unto his Brother. Whoſe ſonne ſucceeding, ſettled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *Engliſh* Merchants *Anno* 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the ſoveraignty of *Pegu*, then deſtroyed and waſted; if the violent and unreſiſtable coming of the king of *Barma* had not croſſed him in it: to whom now ſubject with the reſt of the *Indian* Princes, on that ſide of the River.

6. PEGU.

PEGU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Weſt and South, with the kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that is by the name of the River upon which it ſtandeth. Divided commonly into the kingdoms and eſtates of 1. *Verma*, 2. *Macin*, 3. *Orrachan*, 4. *Martavan*, and 5. *Pegu* ſpecially ſo called.

Pegu.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a ſmall kingdome bordering upon *Bengala*; and ſo denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A kingdome which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moores* and *Mahometans*, which can be ſaid of no other of theſe *Indian* kingdoms.

The People black, naked about the Waſte, and covered beneath it only with a veil of Cotton: in matter of Religion *Gentiles*, and in warre right valiant. This laſt apparent by the long and frequent warres which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in concluſion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, ſo called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of theſe *Peguan* kingdoms. Of ſmall eſteem but for the great quantity of the ſweet wood by the *Latins* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the natives *Calamba*, ſo much in uſe for Funeralls and Bathes, (as was ſaid before) held alſo by the *Indians* for a ſovereign and unparallell'd *Medicine* againſt many dangerous diſeaſes; great quantities whereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the firſt Kingdomes which was conquered by the king of *Barma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN* or *Arrachan*, lieth on the Weſt of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with mountains, and impaſſable woods. Chief Towns thereof, 1. *Dianga*, taken and deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, *Anno* 1608. 2. *Sundiva*, ſituate in an Iſland unto which it gives name, ſix leagues off from the continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1602. and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a member of his Kingdom. The Iſland 30 leagues in compaſs very ſtrong, fruitfull, and the Town well fortified. 3. *Arrachan* the head City, which gives name to all, diſtant from the Sea 45 miles, but ſeated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Deſolation of which State the king hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, beſieged the ſecond *Peguan* King in the Caſtle of *Mecao*; and had betwixt them the whole pillage of that wealty City, together with the poſſeſſion of the beſt Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph, leading with him the *white Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, ſumptuouſly adorned; the brother and two ſons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A ſolemn and magnificent entry. The better to aſſure himſelf of his new dominions, this King beſtowed upon the *Portugals* the fort of *Siriangh*, on the River of *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taked his ſon, and put him to a grievous ranſom; they brake out into open warres. In the purſuit whereof, after many loſſes, the King recovered from them the Iſle of *Sundiva*; and manning out a fleet of 1200 ſail (of which 75 were of ſo great burden, as to carry every one, twelve pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Soulders, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 greater pieces, beſieged the fortreſs: aſſiſted in that action alſo by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his deſign, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613 as before is ſaid, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom, by the King of *Barma*: of whoſe great riſe, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan*, were the firſt foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richeſt of theſe Kingdomes lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the Weſt. The ſoyl ſo fertil, that it yieldeth three Harveſts in a year; and ſent annually 15 ſhips to *Cochin*, aud as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich alſo in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Braſs, Silver, Gold, and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forreſts well-ſtored with Harts, Bores, and *Buffoles*; ſtore of Pines and Palms: the woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and ſhrubs either *Medicinal* or *odoriferous*. The principal City of it called alſo *Martavan*, ſituate on an Haven open at all times of the year, and not choked with ſands, as uſually other Havens are in the *Indian winter*: of great trading, much ſplendor and a temperate air. Faithfull unto the laſt to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were ſubject; and in that conſtancy they twice repulſed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the moſt part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* cauſed two of his cowardly Captains to be caſt into a chaldron of ſcalding oyl; and at the third Aſſault became maſter of it. *Bannalaius* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themſelves in the woods and Deſarts.

5. *PEGU*, the moſt predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Creſcent* or half-moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on that coaſt from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the ſpace of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little leſſe in breadth, if not quite as much. So calld from the River *Pegu*, which runs thorow the middeſt of it, and gives this name alſo unto *Pegu* the moſt noted City.

The Soyl hereof exceeding fruitfull, by reaſon of the annuall overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth alſo many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make wax) ſtore of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parats which ſpeak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place elſe.

The people of a mean ſtature, ſomewhat corpulent, and naturally beardleſs. If any ſtragling hair thruſt forth, they alwayes carry Pinſers with them, to pull them out. Nimble and ſtrong, but yet not very fit for warre; ſpending too much of their ſtrength in the love of women, to which moſt paſſionably addicted. They black their teeth, becauſe they ſay that dogs teeth be white; and wear no cloths but on their heads, and about their nakedneſs. Said by the *Jews* to be deſcended from ſome of the *Tribes* of *Iſrael*, confined hither by *Solomon*: but by the *Peguans* themſelves, to be begotten of a dog and a *China woman*, which

were

were ſaved here upon a Shipwrack. By *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every world: more *Orthodox*, in aſſigning after this life acccording to the merits of the party deceaſed, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and pleaſures, if the had not added a third alſo for *ſatisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdome, 1. *Coſmi*, ſeated in a Territory full of Woods, as thoſe Woods of Tigers, Wild Bores, Apes, and Parats; the houſe made of *Canes*, which ſerve herefor timber, (ſome of them being as big as Hogs-heads) covered over with thach. 2. *Jocabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3. *Dian*, on the ſame River alſo, where they make Barks or Veſſels as big as *Galeaſſes*; which ſerve both for trade and habitation. 4. *Coilan*, a City four-ſquare, and each ſquare four miles. 5. *Lanagon*, a pleaſant Town, and full of *Palm*-trees. 6. *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants: his four *White Elephants* (for ſo many he had) being alwayes kept about the Court, not ſeen abroad, but in great ſolemnities, when trapped in furnitures of Gold, and no leſſe honoured by the people, than the King himſelf; called therefore King of the *White Elephant*, by the neighbouring Princes. 7. *Silvanpede*, where many victualing Barks are made to ſerve for dwelling on the Sea. 8. *Meccao*, where they uſe to unload ſuch goods, as are to paſs by Land to *Pegu*. Neighboured by the ſtrongeſt Caſtle in all this Kingdome, and therefore choſen by the King for his place of Retreat; when diſtreſſed by the Kings of *Arrachan*, and *Tangu*. To the laſt of which making choice to yield up his perſon, with his Wife and Children, becauſe he had married him to his Siſter; he was by him perfidiouſly and baſely murdered. 9. *Siriangh*, a ſtrong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year noe thouſand ſix hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good againſt him, and the King of *Tangu* his Aſſociate, for the ſpace of thirteen years together; was at laſt forced to yield himſelf priſoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a ſpit. 10. *Pegu*, the glory of theſe parts, great, ſtrong, and beautifull: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabitanted by Merchants, the new by the King and his Nobility. The houſes made of Wood, but covered with Tiles; a *Coco-Tree* before every houſe, yielding a comfortable ſhade, and a pleaſant ſhew. The ſtreets as ſtraight as any line, and ſo broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreſt in the narroweſt of them. In figure ſquare, each ſquare having five Gates, beſides many Turrets; all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with walls of ſtone, environed on all ſides with great Ditches; and in the middeſt the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, moſt ſumptuouſly gilded: but ſpecially the Temple or *Idol chapel*, the walls were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleaſure as the world could yield: his Empire not extending only over theſe Kingdoms now deſcribed, but over all the Provinces or kingdoms of the *Bramanes* alſo; which he governed by his ſeveral *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happineſs too great to continue long. For in the year 1567. the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his faction, and reputation of his vertues, entered into rebellion and ſlaying the Nobles of the Land, uſurped that Kingdom. After this he ſubdued the cities and kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramanes*, and therefore taking to himſelf the title of the King of *Brama*, becauſe his fame and fortunes took their riſe from his victories over them. Following the courſe of his ſucceſſes, he firſt aſſailed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulſed with loſſe. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleagured *Pegu*, and ſubdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the ſiege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grandſons; the Kingdome of *Jangoma* to a younger ſon, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, to his eldeſt ſon, a Prince of vicious and tyrannicall nature; and not more cruell to his ſubjects, than they diſobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both ſides, the people to defend their liberty, the King to preſerve his Royalty. During theſe civil diſcords, the titulary King of *Siam*, whoſe late overthrow was not yet fully digeſted, came violently into the Countrey of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Graſſe, and Fruits, killing man, woman, and child, and having ſatisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This ſpoil of the fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unſupportable famine, which conſumed all the inhabitants of this flouriſhing kingdom, except ſuch whom the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preſerved, *Anno* 1598. For here the Fathers devoured their children, the ſtronger preyed upon the weaker; not only devouring their more fleſhy parts, but their entrals alſo: nay they broke up the ſkuls of ſuch as they had ſlain, and ſucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his beſt advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his brother-in-Law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For juſtly fearing the diſpleaſure of his angry Prince, to whoſe aid he had refuſed to come, when ſent for by him; he joined himſelf with the King of *Arrachan*, beſieged his Lord and Soveraign in the Fort of *Meccao*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought beſt to put himſelf into the hands of his brother *Tangu*; who aſſaulted and entred *Pegu*, where he found as much treaſure as 600 Elephants, and as many horſes could conveniently carry away, this havock being made, he villanouſly murdered the King, Queen and their Children, and departed; leaving the gleaning of his ſpoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who, *Anno* 1600, was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Barma* having with an Army of an hundred thouſand fighting men, and four-

Pegu. ty thouſand Elephants, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU*, where he hath built a moſt Magnificent Palace: and is now the ſole Monarch of the twelve kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-ſettled Eſtate, we cannot yet underſtand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whoſe inquiſitiveneſs into the Stat-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full ſatisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statiſts* are not permitted to obſerve; and ſuch of the Natives as could give us the moſt light, are not ſuffered to travell. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of thoſe ſeveral Princes, and the vaſt Armies by them raiſed in their ſeveral Territories; that his *Annual Revenues*, *Caſualties*, and united Forces muſt be almoſt infinite.

And ſo much for *INDIA*.

OF

OF

THE ORIENTALL ILAND.

THE *ORIENTAL ILANDS*, ſo called from their ſituation in the *Oriental* or Eaſtern Seas, may be divided into the Iſlands of 1. *Japan*, 2. the *Philippinæ*, and Iſles adjoyning, 3. the Iſlands of *Bantam*, 4. the *Moluccoes*, 5. thoſe called *Sindæ*, or the *Celebes*, 6. *Java*, 7. *Borneo*, 8. *Sumatra*, 9. *Ceilan*, and 10. certain others of leſſe note

1. *JAPAN*

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Iſlands, ſeperated by ſmall *Gulfs*, Streights, and turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be *66.* in all; others aſcribe that number to ſo many Kingdoms, into which theſe Iſlands (be they in number more or leſſe) uſe to be divided. But whatſoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of accompt, to which the ſeverall petit Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to ſay, I. *Japan* ſpecially ſo called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms; of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. II. *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principall whereof are thoſe of *Bungo* and *Figen*. III. *Xicoum*, which comprehendeth four only of theſe petit *Seigneuries*.

JAPAN, the chief of all theſe Iſlands, to which the reſidue may be accompted of but as *Appurtenances*, is ſituate over againſt the ſtreights of *Anian*, towards which it looketh to the North: diſtant from *New Spain* on the Eaſt 150 leagues, or 450 *Engliſh* miles; and 60 leagues from *Cantan*, a Province of *China*, oppoſite to it on the Weſt. On the South it hath the vaſt Ocean, and thoſe infinite ſholes of Iſlands which are called the *Philippinæ*, and the Iſles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from Weſt to Eaſt 200 leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in ſome places not above ten leagues over, and in the broadeſt parts but thirty.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much ſubject unto cold: yet in ſome places they have Wheat ripe in the moneth of *May*; but their Rice, which is their principall ſuſtenance, they gather not before *September*. The ſurface of the Earth, clothed with woods and forreſts, in which ſome Cedars of ſo tall and large a body that one of them onely is ſufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it ſtored with divers metals, and amongſt others with ſuch inexhauſtable mines of gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth ſome of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in this time, with ſheets of gold, as ours in *Europe* are with lead. But I find no ſuch matter in our latter travellors. Their fields and Medows full of Cattle, but hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their fens much viſited by wild Ducks, as their houſe yards with Pigons, Turtles, Quails, and Pullen.

The People for the moſt part of good underſtanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and ſubtile in their dealings. Of body vigorous and ſtrong, accuſtomed to bear Arms untill 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads ſhaved off. Patient they are of Pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of ſuffering wrong, but can withall diſſemble their reſentments of it till oppertunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, ſo it come not by his own unthriftineſs, for which cauſe they deteſt all kinds of *gaming*, as the wayes of ill-husbandry and generally abhor *Slandering*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feaſts in black; their teeth they colour black alſo to make them beautiful; they mount on the right ſide of the horſe, and ſit, (as we are uſed to riſe) when they entertain. In *Phyſick* they eat ſalt things, ſharp and raw; and in *their ſalutations, they put off their ſhooes*. The very *Antipodes* of our world in cuſtoms, though not in ſite: and the true type or Figure of the *old Engliſh Puritan*, oppoſite to the *Papiſts* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that oppoſition. In other things they do much reſemble thoſe of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: waſhing their Infant-children in the neareſt River, as ſoon as born; and putting off their ſhooes when they go to meat.

The People have but one *language*, but that ſo intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it ſeems rather to be many languages than one. They have long uſed the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough they might have from *China*: the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and ſignifie not only letters, but ſome whole words alſo. In matter of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anticntly the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honour to wild beaſts, and the Stags of the Forreſts: but

Japan. ſpecially worſhiping ſome of their deceaſed Prieſts and *Princes*, by the names of *Fotoques*, and *Cames*; to the firſt of which they uſe to pray for goods of the other world, & to the laſt for *Temporall* bleſſings. Their Prieſts they call By the name of *Bonzes*, ſetled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the providence of God, and the immortality of the ſoul. Of late times by the care and dilligence of the *Jeſuits*, *Chriſtianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with ſuch a large increaſe as their letters, called *Epiſtolæ Japanicæ*, have been pleaſed to tell us, I am ſomewhat doubtfull. They tell us there of ſome Kings of theſe Iſlands, whom they have converted and baptized; that within 50 miles of *Meaco*, they had 50 Churches, 200 at the leaſt in all; and that in the year 1587 the number of their Converts was two hundred thouſand. Of this, if the one half be but true, we have great cauſe to praiſe God for it, and to give them the commendatiou of their pains and induſtry: not letting paſs the memory of the firſt *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the firſt foundation of this *Society*, (employed in this buſineſs by *Ignatius*, the firſt founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Iſland be generally well-watered: more memorable for two mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figenoiama*, is ſaid to tranſcend the clouds in hight; the other (but without a name) uſeth to caſt forth dreadfull flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*: on the top whereof the *Devill* environed with a white and ſhining cloud, doth ſometimes ſhew himſelf unto ſuch of his *Votaries*, as live about this hill an abſtemious life, like the ancient *Hermits*.

Chief Cities of the whole Iſlands, 1. *Meaco*, ſeated in *Japan*, and the chief of that Iſland, formerly 21 miles in compaſs, but now by reaſon of their warrs, ſcarce a third part of it. The ordinary reſidence of the *Triumviri*, or three principall Magiſtrates, which ſway the affaires of all theſe Iſlands: of whom the firſt entituled *Zazo*, hath the chief care in *ſacred* matters; the 2d named *Voo*, doth preſide in *Civill*; and the third called *Cabacama*, manageth the concernments of *Peace* and *Warre*. At this time it is uſed for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*: that people not permitting Merchants to come amongſt them, but bringing to this place their merchandiſe, as the common *Staple*; where they are ſure to meet Chapmen to buie it of them. 2. *Oſſacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richeſt in all the Eaſt; of ſo great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is ſaid to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3. *Fenoiama*, or *Figenoiama*, at the foot of the hill ſo called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An Univerſity of *Bonzes*, for whoſe convenience and ſtudy, one of the Kings of *Japan* is ſaid to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain, 3800 *Convents*, and to indow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdome of *Vorn*. Theſe Colleges or Convents now reduced to 800 only: but ſtill the Univerſity of ſuch fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the Kings ſon, or his neareſt Kinſman. 4. *Banoum*, another of their Univerſities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongo*, the chief of all that Province; in which the *Jeſuits* have a Colledge; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* language, and the *Europæans* that of *Japan*. 6. *Coia*, the ſepulture of their Princes, or of ſome part of them: it being anciently ordained, that if their whole bodies be not here interred, they muſt at leaſt ſend one of their teeth. 7. *Fiongo*, about 18 leagues from *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga* one of the Kings of *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga* one of the Kings of this Iſland, who lived Anno 1550. that which he left, terribly ſcattered by an *Earth quake*, Anno 1596. moſt of the ruins of it ſince conſumed by fire. 8. *Amangaſaqui*, five leagues from the Sea. 9. *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10. *Edoo*, a much fairer then that, and the chif ſeat of one of their Kings. 11. *Firando*, a ſeat-Royall alſo of ſome other King, where, in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* eſtabliſhed for the *Engliſh* Merchants. 12. *Ochinoſamanus*, one of their moſt noted Havens. 13. *Toſa*, or *Touſa*, giving name to one of the Iſlands.

Theſe Iſlands utterly unknown to the Antients, were firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota*, a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Cherſoneſus* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; and I cannot chuſe but wonder at it. The ſituation of it ſo far diſtant from that of the *Cherſoneſe*, that either *Mercator* muſt be groſſely out in his conjecture; or *Ptolomy* as much miſtaken in his informations; which no man hitherto can juſtly accuſe him of. But paſſing by the improbability of *Mercators* fancy, we are to know, that in former times theſe Iſlands were ſubject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and reverenced with great affection: which government continued, as themſelves report, 1600 years in great State and Majeſty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (ſo they call their King) addicting himſelf wholly unto pleaſures, and laying the burden of Government upon other mens ſhoulders; his Deputies or inferiour Officers uſurped *Regal* power, plumed themſelves with the Eagles feathers, uſed in their ſtile the name of *Jucatas*, or Kings and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi*, to their Lord and Soveraign. His iſſue to this day do enjoy that title, but little elſe: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royall ſeat, hardly allowing him ſufficient meanes to find himſelf Victuall and Apparell; but otherwiſe befooling him with as glorious titles, as if he were poſſeſſed ſtill of his ancient power. Only they let him execute the place of an *Harald*, in giving Arms, & ſelling dignities and honours; which brings him in the greateſt profit he hath to truſt to. Of all theſe Kings, he which can make himſelf Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and eſteemed Soveraign of the reſt. Which hight of dignity, *Nabunanga* before mentioned, in his time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and ſince him *Taicoſuma*: that ſovereignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command of moſt theſe ſmall Kingdoms; tranſported the vanquiſhed Kings, and the chief of their Nobles, out of one Country into a nother: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and amongſt ſtrange ſubjects, they ſhould remain without means to revolt againſt him. A merciſull and prudent courſe. Having reduced into his power at leaſt 50 of theſe petit Kingdoms, he divided the greateſt part of the conquered

conquered territories, amongst his own faithfull friends and followers: binding them to supply him with certain numbers of men upon all occasions. By which, and other politick courses, he so setled himself in those estates, that *Taicosuma* his son succeeded without opposition; who had he lived would have abolished the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himself as he had the power; solicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Fereicisama* his son succeeded; and may be still alive for ought I can learn. *Philippinæ.*

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to say. I guess them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reserveth to himself from his own demeasn. The store of Gold, and pretious stones which these Ilands yield, being wholly his, must needs add much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is said that *Faxiba* was able to raise so good an Army out of the estates demised by him to his faithfull followers; that he resolved once on the Conquest of *China*: and to that end had caused Timber to be felled for 2000. vessels for the transporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, tis probable enough he might have shaken that great Kingdom, the *Iaponois* being so much the better Souldiers, that a small party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chinese*. The fear whereof made the King of *China* after his decease, correspond so fairly with his Successour.

2. The *PHILIPPINÆ*, and Isles adjoyning.

SOuth of *Japan*, lieth a great fry of Islands which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ*, in honour of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*; in whose time discovered by *Legaspi* a *Spanish* Captain, *Anno* 1564. Strangely mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Barussæ* of *Ptolomy*, those being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Æquator*; these situate on the East of *China*, in 13. or 14. degrees of Northern Latitude: those being only five in number, these reckoned at above ten thousand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, especially in the mid-land parts; that on the shores, somewhat inclining unto heat. The soil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for necessity, and delights; that is to say, Rice, Pulse, Wax, Honey, Sugar Canes, many pleasant Fruits, the fairest Figs of all the world, plenty of Fish, variety of Birds and Beasts, as well wild as tame, great store of Cotton-Wool, some Mines of Gold, and of other Mettals great abundance.

Of all these Islands there are only fourty in possession of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Asia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*; because Discovered by *Legaspi* at the instigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velasco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In these fourty Ilands there are thought to be at the least a million of people, subject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jesuites* unto *Christianity*. Of these the principal in account are, I. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compass 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, seated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Manilla*; in which resides th. Depnty or Lieutenant Governor for all these Islands; and the Bishop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of those Churches. II. *MINDANAO*, 380. Leagues in compass; in which are many good Towns, as 1. *Cailon*, 2. *Pavados*, 3. *Subut*, 4. *Dapiro*, and some others III. *TANDAIR*, more fruitfull then any of the rest, and of good extent, 160. Leagues in circuit; more specially called *Philippina*, because first discovered and so named. IV. *PALLOHAN*, as much mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolomy*.

These, with the rest, subject in former times to the king of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them, and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquishment the people fell into Civil Wars, every man getting what he could for himself, and the stronger preying on the weaker: which factions and divisions gave great help to the *Spaniard*, in the conquest of those few which are under their power. Ilands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought, and therefore furnished by them at their first Plantations, with Bulls, Kine, Horses, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reasonably abound with. For besides the abundance of victnals, and some plenty of Gold which they find therein, the situation is very fit to subdue the rest of the neighbouring Ilands; to settle the commerce betwixt *China*, and *Mexico*; to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Ilands of this Sea, and those of *America*; and finally to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometanism* any further Eastwards.

Not far from these, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the west, is another great heap of Rocks and Ilands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furnished with very choise fruits, and other necessaries; and peopled with a stout and warlike breed of men, well skilled in *Archerie*. The chief whereof have the names of 1. *Lequin Major*, 2. *Lequin Minor*, 3. *Hermosa*, 4. *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable. but that *Hermosa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formosa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New Holland*, because not long since taken, planted, and strongly fortified by some Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are those called 5. *Ciumbabon*, in which is said to be a *Plant-animal*, or sensible tree; 6. *Mattan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, slain there in a battel with the Natives, in favor of the king of 7. *Sebat*, an adjoyning Island; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained, and whom by his perswasions he had gained to the Christian Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honor of *Charles* Emperor and king of *Spain*, under whom he served in this present voyage. But long this miscreant king (*Hamabar* he was called before his Baptism) continued not in this good opinion; treacherously killing *John de Serran* chief Pilot of *Magellanus's* small Navy, with about 70. of his men, and probably relapsing to his former *Gentilism*.

3. The

Bandan.

3. The Isles of *BANDAN*

THE Isles of *BANDAN* are in number seven, that is to say 1. *Mira*, 2. *Rosalargium*, 3. *Aii*, 4. *Rom*, 5. *Nerra*, 6. *Ganuape*, the least of all, continually burning, and for that cause deserted of its inhabitants, and 7. *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines*, in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitfull of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts, for which cause never without the concourse of forein Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*; and of late times from these Northen Countries of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermost part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it self, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*; and over that the fruit it self, as it is in Peaches, *Malacotons*, and such fruits as those.

The People barbarous and rude, slothfull, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confusedly together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their ancient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*; in which *Religion* very zealous, and so devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly businesses, till they have visited the *Mesquits*, and done their devotions. A shame or Pattern shall I say in this, unto many *Christians*. All of them bloody and revengefull; but yet so farre from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy, that they use to Burie with sweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principall, 1. *Nera*, and 2. *Lontoor*, joyned in a league against the rest; the quarrell rising from the cutting down of certain trees, proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in shew to the King of *Botone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not else entered into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchfull *Hollanders*, they did not only settle four *Factories* there; but for the security of their trade, and to aw the *Natives*, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mesquits* to a *Fortress*. Whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it: who falling desperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Islands, more acceptable than the other, because not so insolent, and grounding their possession on a better title; the people of *Lantore*, voluntarily submitting themselves to the protection of King *James*, the first Monarch of the *British* Islands, and to his use giving possession of their Country to Captain *Robert Hages*, November 24. 1620. The like done at the same time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Rosingeng*, two other Islands, which if they be not the same with those of *Mira*, and *Rosolorgium* spoken of before, are probably some lesser Islands, neighbouring to *Polewne* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter.

There is not far off another Island, not in this accompt, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it; but not else observable; except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants, for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES*

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many, the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being said to have dominion over 70 Islands; but the *determinate* number of them I do no where find. Situate on both sides of the *Æquator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soyl so drie and spongious, that it sucketh up the greatest shewre of Rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can passe into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Mastick*, *Alloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees, yeilding blossome, first white, then green (at which time they yeeld the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all Red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot, that if a Paile of water should only stand in the Room in which they are cleansed and sorted, the *Cloves* in two daies would dry it up. Of which nature the unspun silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the most part *Idolaters*, intermixt with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores; and of late times with *Christians* in their severall *Factories*. Of severall *Originals*, and different languages, but all in generall fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickednesse. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civillized by the cohabitation of more modest and civill Nations. Pitty such ill conditions should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for strength and valour not followed by any of them.

Of all the Islands which passe under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning: that is to say, 1. *Terenate*, 2. *Tidor*, 3. *Macir*. 4. *Rachian*, 5. *Machian*, and 6. *Botone*: none of them above six leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 leagues in the circumference, yet of such consequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Vesentius*, and *Ferdinand Magelanus* the first, employed by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*,

gall, the other by *Charles* Emperour and King of *Spain*, were undertaken onely to find out the next way unto them. *Selebes.*

Of the reſt, *Kachian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; So hath *Botone* alſo, if that be one of them; the King whereof had anciently ſome title and authority over thoſe of *Bandan*, *Macir*, and *Machian*, are ſubject to the King of *Ternate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion, and ſaid to be the Lord of 70 Iſlands. This the moſt puiſſant Member of this ſcattered body; and for that cauſe moſt aimed at by all Competitors; the *Spaniards* having here one Fortreſſe, and the *Hollanders* three: both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they conſume and waſt in the wars betwixt them, but of the two the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other ſtomached and deſpiſed for their *ſordid* dealings. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory of *Chorographie* of them, but that they were diſcovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the reign of *Charles* the fifth, who employed him in it, *Anno* 1519 And that there is in *Ternate* a prodigious mountain, in height above the clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of fire, which it ſeems to mount to; huge flames whereof, with dreadfull thunders, and a dark ſmoak, it ſends forth continually. Reckoned by ſome amongſt theſe Iſlands, but howſoever neigbouring near them are thoſe of *Polerone*, and *Poolaway*; the firſt more plentifull of Cloves, the ſecond more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Kings of *England*; for *Polerone* by the generall and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Countrey, was ſurrendred into the power of King *James*, the poſſeſſion of it being given for his Majeſties uſe to Captain *Courtop*, *December* 23. *Anno* 1616. neither Nation at that time having intereſt in it, for Pretenſions to it, which notwithanding it was not long after ſeiſed on by the inſolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to reſtore it upon Compoſition, cut down all the *Clove-trees*, ſo to deprive the *Engliſh* of the benefit of them, *Poolaway* made the like ſurrender at the ſame time alſo, declared by ſetting up the *Engliſh* colours on the top of their Caſtle, giving to *Courtop*, a green *turf* (whereby as by Livery and Seiſin) to take poſſeſſion of the Countrey, promiſing the annuall tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*, and that they ſhould ſell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to theſe of the *Engliſh* Nation. The like done alſo at or near the ſame time, by *Wayre* and *Roſingen*, two other Iſlands of theſe Seas, which if they be not theſe two of *Randon* pointed at before, muſt needs be brought within the number of this ſcattered Company.

5. The *SINDÆ* or *SELEBES*.

NEar the *Moluccoes*, and almoſt intermingled with them, are a ſet of Iſlands which *Ptolomy* calleth *SINDÆ*, and the Moderns, *SELEBES*; many in *tale*, but not above four of any *weight*, that is to ſay, 1. *SELEBES*. 2. *Gilolo*. 3. *Amboina*. 4. *Macaſſer*; of which the two firſt are ſituate under the *Æquator*, and the laſt ſomewhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; inſomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes*, did uſe to ſend their condemned perſons into theſe Iſlands, there to be devoured. Which ſaid in generall, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the reſt, and hath under it many leſſer Iſlands, is large and rich. The ſoil thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comly, and of colour, not ſo much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petit Princes, the cauſe of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity, and for that cauſe much hated by their heatheniſh Subjects, who thereupon rebelled againſt them. It is ſituate Weſt of the *Moluccos*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Chriſtian Kings: but poſſibly not ſo called untill their converſion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terolli* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called alſo *Batachina*, is one of thoſe Iſlands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*. By that accompt (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilan* is in compaſs, though of leſs reputation: that being governed by its own Princes, this ſubject for the moſt part to the King of *Ternate*. Situate Eaſt of the *Moluccos*, exceeding plentifull of Rice, well ſtored with wild Hens, and on the ſhores, provided of a kind of *Shell-fiſh*, which in taſt much reſembleth mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the ſapor juice of it they compoſe a pleaſing drink, which ſerveth them inſtead of wine. The air intemperately hot; the people well proportioned, but rude and ſavage; ſome of them *Gentiles*, ſome *Mahometans*, of which laſt Religion is their King; The chief Town of it is *Batchame* or *Batachina*, (whence the new name unto the Iſland) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Æquator*, and the third of the *Sinde*, hath many Iſlands of leſſe note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compaſs about five hundred miles ſaid by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which muſt be underſtood with reference to ſome kinds of grain For otherwiſe it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, *Coquo-nuts*, *Sugar Canes*, and other fruits; and very plentifull of *Cloves*. Which at laſt, as it makes ſome to reckon it amongſt the *Moluccos*, ſo may it be the reaſon why the Iſland is defective in ſuch fruits as require much moiſture: the *Clove* being of ſo hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moiſture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infeſt all the neighbouring Iſlands Defamed for *Cannibals*, or man-eaters: it being here a conſtant cuſtome, that when their parents were grown old, or ſick of any incurable diſeaſe, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboyna*, by the name of the Iſland. Firſt taken by the *Portugals*,

Borneo & Java.

gals, and by them secured with a strong, fortress: during whose power here, the *Jesuites* who had in it their severall Residences, converted many to *Christianity*. But in the year 1605. the Island and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagan*, for the States of the united Provinces: who having cleared the Countrey of the *Portugal* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the natives at their first coming, with Joy and Triumphs: but they got little by the change, as they found soon after; their new Masters being more burdensome, and intolerable, than the old had been. For claiming in the right of Conquest, they think they may oppresse the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingrosse all trade unto themselves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest Patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618. they most cruelly tortured, and most wickedly murdered; under colour of some plot to betray their Fortress: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Amboina*, and South-West of *Celebes*, lieth the fourth of these Islands called *MACASSAR*, said to contain from East to West 600 miles; plentifull of Rice, Flesh, Fish, Salt, and Cotton-Wool; not destitute of Gold and Pearls and well stored with *Sanders* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latin*) a medicinall wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of severall colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the best: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with woods, in which certain *fierie Flies* make nightly such shining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Senderem*, the Kings Seat, situate near a large *Lake*, very commodiously for traffick. 2. *Macassar*, an *English Factorie*, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batachina*, are some other Isles, plentifull of all things necessary for the life of man, but inhabited by a thievish and *Piratical* people: the principall of which, 1. *Terrao*, 2. *Sanguin*, 3. *Solor*, 4. *Moratay*, in which last they eat *Battata* Roots instead of bread, besides some others of less note, Most of the people *Gentiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuites*, hath brought many of his subjects to the same Religion,

6. BORNEO.

WEst of these *Celebes* lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in these *Indian* Seas. In compasse after their accompt who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no lesse than three moneths sail about. Situate under the *Æquator*, which parteth the dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus*: opposite on the North to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Celebes*; on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Countrey said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withall to be unfurnished of Asses, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except onely Horses, and these but of small stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and some mines of *Adamants* erroneously conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Insula bonæ Fortunæ* spoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being seated opposite to the out-lets of *Ganges*, in the *Latitude* of a hundred fourty five Degrees, and fifteen minutes; this Eastward some Degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Ptolomy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two *Religions*; the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Laus* still remaining in their antient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially; whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain verses. Their publick businesses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counsellours* of *State* meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-house*. The same Apparell generally of both *Religions*; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Aire: a shirt of Silk, or of *Calicut*, or some such slight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Borneo*, situate in the North-West, part of the Island near a goodly bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and seated as that is, on *Piles*; the building sumptuous, of hewed stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 25000 3. *Taiopura*, 4. *Tamaoratas*. 5. *Malano*; all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodeous Havens. 6. *Sagadana*, a Factory of *English*. 7. *Lavi*, on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 8. *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt these two Kings is the whole divided; but so that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be spoken with, but by the mouth of some of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace served by no other Attendants, than *Maids* or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

OPposite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Isles of *JAVA*, two in number; both situate South of the *Æquator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly distinguished into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the lesser *Java*.

1. *JAVA*.

1. *JAVA MAJOR*, the more Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is said to be in compass 3000 miles, and that by them who elsewhere reckon *Borneo* for the biggest of these Seas. But the truth is, that the South-parts of this Island not being perfectly discovered, make the ameasurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived most probably to be the *Jabadin* of *Ptolomy*, the most Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eighth degree of *Southern* Latitude: said by him to afford much gold and silver, to be exceeding fruitfull of all other necessaries; and finally that the name did signifie ιεσδιν νησον, or the Island of Barly. All which agreeth punctually with the present Island, the word *Jabad* signifying a kind of grain much like our *Barly*; and *Diu* in the *Persian* and *Indian* tongues signifying an Island. And so in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Island of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being very ordinary. *Java.*

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is said to yeeld great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* especially; flesh of all sorts, salted and sent from hence into other Countries; great store of Fowl, both wild and tame; plenty of Gold, some precious Stones, and the best kind of Brasse; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, and some other spices. In a word so befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitomy Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a lesser Volume. But withall it is much exposed unto storms and tempests, from which seldome free.

The people of a middle Stature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, most of them naked or covered onely with a slight silken stuff, and that no lower than the knee; accompted the most *Civill* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their descent from *China*: but withall treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careless of their words; to which so used, that they count it not amongst their *Faults*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promise with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he answered that *tongue was not made of bone*. Cruell they are also said to be, and implacable, if once offended: accustomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends: accounting no buriall so honourable; nor obsequy, so applausive. This also a custom amongst many of the rest of the *Indians*, so hath been ever since the beginning of the *Persian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hystaspes* understanding of this custom, and withall knowing how the *Græcians* use to burn their dead; sent to the *Greekes*, that it was his pleasure they should eat the bodies of their dead: But they used all means of perswasion and entreaty, not to be forced to so bruitish and barbarous a custome. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themselves to the fashion of the *Græcians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greekes* did to eat them. So impossible it is for a custom either to be suddenly left off, or to seem undecent and inconvenient, if once thorowly settled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, acording to the fancy of their severall Kings, whereof in this Island there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerfull Family. Zealous in their Religion which so ever it be, as appears by the sad story of the Daughter of the King of *Ballambua*; murdered by her Huband the King of *Passarva*, the second night after her wedding, with all her Attendants, because they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in some common *Principles* they agree well enough, punishing *Adultery* with death; in wich case the woman chooseth her neareſt Kinsman for her *Executioner*: but otherwise spending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentilism* is the more diffused, because most antient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very swift growth, and of a great increase for so short a time.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Panarucan*, neer a burning hill, which in the year 1586. break forth exceedingly, oppressed infinite numbers of men, and cast great stones into the City for three daies together. 2. *Jortam*, a Town of 1000 Housholds, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the *Chief-Priest* of whose superstition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Island. 3. *Ballambua*, 4. *Passarva*, 5. *Taban*, 6. *Matara*, 7. *Daunia*, 8. *Taggal*, 9. *Surrabaia*, 10. *Catabaon*; the Seats of so many of their Kings; some of them also furnished of convenient Havens, 11. *BANTAM*, the seat also of a King, but of most trade in all the Island, seldom without the company of *English*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*,; the principall *Factory* of the *English* in all the *Indies*, though they have many besides this. The Town unwholsomely seated in a mooriſh ground, and much subject to fire. 12. *Sunda*, situate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13. *Agracan*, a convenient Port. Here was also in the time of *Ptolomy* a Town called 14. *Argrepolis*, or the *Silver City*, long agoe destroyed. And now there is, 15. *Sura*, a new Town in the territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by some of the Subjects of the King of *Passarva*, who being oppressed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a constant Succession; adopting some of the other *Javans* into their *Society*, as they find their number to diminish.

Of the story of this Island I can say but little. Divided into many petit and inconsiderable Kingdoms; & those divided too by Mountains; crossing the Island in the middle from West to East, which cut off all commerce and correspondence betwixt one another. Some of these Kings *Mahometans*, some *Gentiles*, as before was said; all subject or *Homagers* at least to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the middest of the Island. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be the richest, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greatest territory; whose Family, after long war and blood-shed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is said to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Passarva*. These Kings much reverenced by their subjects, and so well obeyed, that whatsoever they command, is done, be it never so dangerous.

2. *JAVA MINOR*,

Java. 2. *JAVA MINOR*, situate on the South of the other, is said to be 2000 miles in compass, and to be very near the firm land *Terra Australis incognita*, of the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not so much on certain knowledge as unsure conjecture) to be of the same nature and condition with the *greater Java*. The inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and dearest friends, and to worship all day whatsoever they saw first in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, distinguished by the names of their principal towns. Six whereof he had seen, which are these that follow. 1. *Felech*, where the Townsmen were *Moores*, and the Paisant *Gentiles*. 2. *Basma*, which did acknowledge the *Great-Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any *tribute*. 3. *Samara*, where none of the *North-stars* could be seen. 4. *Sambri*, in which some men were said to have tails like dogs. 5. *Fanfur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will sink like iron; of which they use to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6. *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it use to eat their neerest kinsmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, because used by others.

To these two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Riee*, but otherwise of so watterish and moist a Soyl, that the men and Cattle use to go knee-deep when they sow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the East of the same *Java* the Island *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigness, supposed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Buls*, *Bussals*, Goats, Horses, Swine, many kind of fruits, and some store of metals.

8. *SUMATRA.*

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the *Greater Java*, betwixt it and the *Streight* of *Sincapura*, the most Southern Town of the *Goldon Chersonese*. The *Streight* in that place so streight & narrow not above a Musket shot in breath; that some concive this Island to have been formerly joyned unto it by some little *Isthmus*; since worn away by the violence and working of the Sea: and that this Island and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Chersonese*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. More probably by far, than that we should run after to the Isle of *Japan*, situate on the East of *China*, so far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North west to the South East, is said by some to be 900. by others but 700. miles, the breadth 200. and the whole compass one and twenty hundred. Strangely affirmed by some writers to be the biggest of all the East; who yet assign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Æquator*, which divideth it into two parts, very near an equality: that on the North-side reaching nnto five degrees, that on the South-side but to seven degrees from the line it self. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by consequence must be very hot, but withall unwholsome: not so much in regard of the extream heats, as by reason of the gross vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers, which are found to be in it; and the thick woods which intercept the free course of a purging wind. The soil not capable of such grain as in other places, except Rice or *Millet* (for I know not otherwise how to render the *Latine*, *Milium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Cassia*, in great abundance. It affordeth also great plenty of Wax and Honey, store of Silks and Cottons, rich mines not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals; but of Gold such quantity, that some conceive this Island to be *Solomons Ophir*. And if *Pedrunka Sirie* one of the Kings of this Island, in a letter written to King *James* did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that letter it appeareth that all the furnitures of his house, and trappings of his Elephants, and horse, withall his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituleth himself in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years since, at what time by the diligence of some *Ariabian* Merchants trading to this Island, *Mahometanism* began to spread upon the Coasts. But in the inland parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* still, and still retain amongst them their old barberous customes. The most loving men unto their enemies that were ever known; for otherwise they would never eat them. Having eaten they use their skuls instead of money, which they exchange or barter for such necessaries, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthiest man amongst them, who hath most of this coyn. Those of the other Religion though in most points and customes they agree with the rest of the *Mahometans*, have this one singular to themselves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go solemnly unto their *Mesquits* to see if *Mahomet* be come; leading a spare horse for him to ride upon: which (missing him) is mounted at their comming back, by the best man in the company. Of any great Progresse that *Christianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been said before, but their names I find not. Here are also many Mountains, and those great and high; that of most note called *Balalvanus*, said to burn continually. Out of which, or not far off do arise two Fountains, of which the one is said to run pure Oyl, and the other the best *Balsamum*: which I bind no man to believe but such as have seen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Achen*, the Seat-Royall of that Kingdome, beautified with the Regal Palace,

lace, to which they pass thorow seven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermost; those three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons, and using both swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his person. The materials of this Palace, mean, but the furniture, costly; the walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and sometimes with cloth of Gold. 2. *Pedir*. 3. *Pacem*, 4. *Cambar*, 5. *Menantabo*, 6. *Aura*, and 7. *Andragide*, the seats of so many of their Kings. 8. *Passaman*, a Town of great Trade, but situate in a Mooriſh and unhealthy place; found so experimentally by too many of the *Englisſh*, who have there their Factory. 9. *Priamon*, and 10. *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not so commodious in their Havens as is that of *Passaman*: these three Towns standing in that part of the Countrey where the *Pepper* groweth. *Seilan.*

All that we know touching the story of this Countrey, is, that the *Portugals*, when they first came hither, found in it nine and twenty kings; reduced since to a smaller number. For *Abraham*, sometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians* subdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who succeeded him, being once a *Fisherman* and grown famous for his exploits at Sea; was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinswomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him trusted with the protection of his son and heir: of whom instead of a Protector he became the murtherer, and usurped the State unto himself. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdoms of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manucabo*; and almost all the rest in the North part of the Iland. In this kings time, the *Englisſh* were first setled in their Factory there. Grown old (an hundred years at least) he was imprisoned by his eldest Son, impatient of a longer stay, alledging that his age had made him unfit for Government, *Anno* 1604. The name of the New King *Sultan Pedrucka Sirie*, who in his Letter to King *James* spoken of before, stiles himself the *Sole King* of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags than truth, or else because the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priaman*, and *Baronse*, being conquered by him, all the rest were become his *Tributaries*. Associated with the forces of the King of *Ior*, or *Iohor*, who had married his Sister, he besieged *Malaca*, and distressed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his displeasure upon his *Confederate*, and subdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (some other petit Prince neer *Ior*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613. brought Prisoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is absolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a minde to, witho it *form of Law*. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no stranger can have *Ingress* into his dominions, or free *Egress* out of them. Nor is admittance to his presence granted unto any whom he first sends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded-Staff*. He is conceived to be strong both by Sea, and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120, or if need be 200. Gallies and *Frigots* fit for any service, most of which carry *Demi-Cannon*, Culverin, Sakar, Minion, and other the like Ordnance of Brass. So great a Master of his Subjects, that in 21. dayes he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues* I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this Kings Gold, I cannot but take notice of some Ilands on the West of *Sumatra*, called *Aureæ Insulæ*, or the *Golden Ilands*; the chief of which named *Andramania*, is possessed by *Cannibals*, or Man-eaters. Opposite unto which on the East side of this Iland, are those called *Linga*, *Banca*, and *Bintam*; which last is said to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for shipping. The houses built of stone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even these sorry Ilands love to have a King of their own, whose house more eminently seated, is more handsomly covered.

9. ZEILAN.

WEst of *Sumatra*, somewhat inclining to the North, is the Iland of ZEILAN, ten Degrees distant from the *Æquator*, and neer adjoyning to the Promontory in the hither *India* which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only; the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the situation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the antient Writers. *Ortelius* and most other intelligent men of these latter times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Chersonese* to the Isle of *Japan*; and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which last I must confess he hath many Partners) will have this Iland to be that which *Ptolomy* cals *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more West than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Isle in former times seems to have been joined.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Antients, we will a little look on the State of that Iland, with reference to the times when those Authors lived. By *Ptolomy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of metals; By *Pliny*, that the Gold is purer, and the Gems fairer than any in *India*; that there were also Groves of Palm-trees, and great store of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian* and some other. Watered with many fair and pleasant Rivers, *viz.* 1. *Soana*, 2. *Azanus*, 3. *Baracus*, 4. *Gandes*, 5. *Phasis*: the hills in many places having a full prospect over the adjoyning Vallie; the chief of which were *Malea*, and those called *Calibi*, the vales perpetually enriched with the choicest fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigness, and stored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magrammum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*. 1. *Margana*, 2. *Jogana*, 3. *Sindocanda*, 4. *Hodoca*, 5. *Nabartha*, 6. *Dogana*, 7. *Dionysiopolis*, 8. *Bocana*, 9. *Abaratha*, 10. *Procurum*, 11. *Nagadiba*, and 12.

Seilan. *Anubingara*, have the name of Cities. 13. *Moduttum*, and 14. *Talacorum*, noted for the Towns of traffick; 15. *Priapis*, 16. *Mardus*, 17. *Rhizala*, 18. *Spatana*, and 19. that of the *Sun*, for commodious Havens; 20. *Anurogrammum* being honoured with the Title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is said by *Ptolomy* to have been first called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Insula*, and finally in his time *Salice*, and the People *Salæ*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* seems to be derived.

To take a view of it at the present, I finde it said to be of an *Oval* form, divided from the main land by a narrow Channel, the Heavens refreshing it with their dews, the Air with a fragrant freshness, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains; the Earth diversifyed into lofty hils, and lowly valleys; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels, her outward Coat of the pleasanteſt colour, stored with whole woods of *Cinnamon*; besides *Fruits*, *Limons*, *Oringes*, &c. bettering those of *Spain*: Of *Fouls* and *Beasts* great plenty both wilde and tame; and the best breed of Elephants in all the world. Destitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which supplied with a pleasant drink made of the juice of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and so preservative of life that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word so abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradise*, and take upon them to point out some of *Adams* footings, left for a memorial in some parts of it. And to confirm them in their Error, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be seven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* ascended into Heaven: for that cause visited by the *Moors* or *Arabians*, with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the most part tall and strait of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto ease and pleasures; So queasie stomached that the pooreſt of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they stretch out with *Iewels* to their very shoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all metals, one of them making a *Crucifix* of such exquisite workmanship, that it seemed to give life to the dead; and was sent by the Archbishop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rareſt *Iewel* which had ever graced his Royal *Cabinet*. They are also very active, and well skilled in *Iugling*, both men and women, travelling thorow *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horses*, by which they get themselves both delight and money. In matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, especially the *Natives*, whom they call *Cingalas*, which live in the Inlands; the Sea-coasts (as in other Ilands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No *Christians* that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of most repute amongst them. 1. *Candie*, the Seat of one of their Kings, supposed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolomy*, memorable for the *statues* of their supposed *Adam*, most artificially wrought, of five or six Fathoms high, *Symetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which they conceive to have amongst them. 2. *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compass 130. paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the *Spires* thereof so gilded, that when the Sun shines, men are not able to look upon them. 3. *Ianasipatan*, 4. *Triqui Lemale* (supposed to be the *Tarichi* of *Ptolomy*, 5. *Batecoloni*, 6. *Vilassem*, 7. *Tanamaca*, 8. *Laula*, 9. *Galle*, the Seats of so many of their Kings. 10 *Nagarita*, conceived to be the *Negiri*; as 11. *Agena*, the *Iogana* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Colmuchi*, the Seat Royal of the chief King of this Iland, situate on a capacious Bay in the Southwest of it, and of most trade in all this Country: many great ships laden with *Cinnamon*, Gems, Elephants, and other *Indian* commodities, going yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very strong Castle, built with the Kings leave at first, to secure their trading; but since used by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compell him to pay *tribute*.

This Country first discovered to be an Iland by *Onesicritus*, Admiral of *Alexanders* Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by several Nations. The principal of which were the *Galthi*, and *Muduttæ* dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani*, and *Nanigiri* in the South; the *Sindocandæ* in the West, and the *Tarachi* in the East; the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi*, *Nagabdi*, *Soani*, *Semmi*. But little or nothing is said of them in the way of story, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of Birds, and could speak to two at once, as if *double-tongued*; that they were very studious of Astrology, and worshipped the Sun and the Host of Heaven; that some of their Ambassadors coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*, *Solem à Læva oriri mirati sunt*, &c. admired to see the Sun rise on the wrong side of them; and finally that the King was chosen by the people with respect had to his age and clemency; who being inthroned, appointed thirty Judges to administer Justice to the Subject, without the *Major part* of whom, sentence of death was to pass on no man. In following times this *Monarchy* (for such it was in the time of those Authors) was broken into many pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their first coming hither, all *Homagers* or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his *Barber*, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while usurped the *Monarchy* to himself. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, six of them (as I have somewhere read, but remember not where) put themselves under the protection of the *Great Mogul*, and became his *Feudataries*.

Neer hereunto on the Coasts of *Malabar*, are the Ilands which they call *Maldivæ*, many in number, but so called from the principal of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and wel-traded *Empery*, where the King resideth: Not very plentifull of necessaries for the use of man, did not the *Palm* alone supply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an industrious and sober people, who make themselves long garments of Silk or Flax brought from other places, wherewith more modestly adorned than the rest of the *Indians*: and by their Fishing draw up shels of such mingled colours, that they serve amongst the *Siametes* instead of mony.

10. ILANDS of leſs note.

BEſides theſe *Ilands* repreſented to us by their ſeveral names, and ſome who have nothing but their names to take notice of; there be many thouſands of leſs note which we finde in groſs: theſe *Indian* Seas being ſo prodigiouſly full of Ilands, that it is almoſt impoſſible to believe there ſhould be ſuch multitudes; but utterly impoſſible to credit what is told us of them. Some of the moſt remarkable of them we have touched upon, as *Acceſſories* or *Appurtenances* to ſome greater Ilands. The reſt we ſhall preſent only in the general *muſter*, together with a taſt of ſome of thoſe ſtrange reports, with which ſome men have fouled their Papers, and abuſed their Readers. Of the *Philippines*, there are ſaid to be 11000. though but 40. of them in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over againſt *China*, is another *frie* of them, affirmed by *Mariners* to be no fewer than 7448. and (as if nature had delighted to diſport her ſelf by ſowing Ilands in theſe Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 127000. all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are ſtill groaning under the burthen of *Heatheniſm*. Theſe *Ilands* ſtand ſo nigh unto one another, that they ſeem not only to ſuch as are afar to be all but one *firm Land*; but whoſoever alſo paſſeth between them, may with his hands touch the boughs of the trees on the one ſide, and on the other. Of theſe and the other *Indian* Ilands, Travellers relate many incredible fables; *viz.* that here be *hogs* that have two teeth growing out of their ſnowts, and as many behind their ears, of a ſpan and a half long; a *tree* whoſe Weſtern part is rank poiſon; and the Eaſtern part an excellent preſervative againſt it. They tell us alſo of a Fruit, that whoſoever eateth, ſhall for the ſpace of 12. hours be out of his wits; and of a ſtone, on which whoſoever ſitteth, ſhall ſuddenly have a *rupture* in his body. We are told alſo that hereabouts are taken *Tortoiſes* of that bigneſs, that ten men might ſit and dine within one of the ſhells; And that there is a Tree, which all the day time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-ſet, is full of them. All huge and monſtrous lies, and not fit for credit. *Galvano* reporteth alſo, that in ſome of theſe Ilands there is a *fruit*, of which if a woman that is with child eat, her childe will preſently move; that there is a River plentifully ſtored with fiſh, whoſe water is yet ſo hot, that it doth immediatly ſcald off the skin of any beaſt that is caſt into it; that ſome of the men have tails; and moſt of their ſwine horns; that they have *oyſters* which they call *Braſs*, the ſhells whereof are of ſo large compaſs, that they *Chriſten* Children in them; that in the Sea there are ſtones which grow and increaſe like fiſh, of which the beſt Lime is made; that there is a bird called *Monicodiata*, which having no feet is in a continual motion: and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs, and hatch her young ones. I bid no man to believe theſe Relations: for my part I ſay with *Horace*,

Quocunq; oſtendis mihi ſic, incredulus odi.
What ever thus thou tell'ſt me, I
Will always hate it as a lye.

And ſo much for theſe *Eaſtern-Ilands*.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the Errata of this part.

IN *the firſt place the Reader is to be advertiſed that Fol.* *I have adventured to prove the* Alamatha *of* Ptolomy *to be the* Chamath, *or* Hamath-Sobab, *of the Holy Scriptures: The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will eaſily find out the ſcope and meaning. Yet if this ſhall not be approved of, I ſhould then think it to be that* Elam *or* Helam, *where* David *diſcomfited the Army of the* Meſopotamians; *mention whereof is made* 2 Sam. 10. *v.* 16, 17. *In the next place he is to know, that Fol.* *within the compaſs of five lines, the victory which* Aſa *King of* Judah *obtained againſt the numerous Army of* Ethopians, *is twice repeated: in the firſt place aſcribed to* Jethir, *in the next to* Mareſha. *But being that Scripture doth more clearly aſcribe it unto* Mareſha, (*though the other alſo hath good Authors*) *let that of* Jethir *be ſupplied in this manner following.* 5. Jethir, *or* Jatthir, *in the North Border of this Tribe, towards* Eleutheropolis: a *City antiently of the* Levites, *in S.* Hieroms *time called by the name of* Jethira, *and then repleniſhed altogether with* Chriſtians; *now nothing but the name remaining,* 6. Mareſa, *&c. And finally whereas* Ajalon *p.* *is placed in the Tribe of* Ephraim, *and page* *in the Tribes of* Dan, *the reaſon is, becauſe being ſituate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by ſome writers aſcribed to* Dan, *and by others to* Ephraim. *The like may be alſo ſaid of* Michpas, *mentioned alſo in two Tribes according as it is diſpoſed on by ſeverall Authors.*

COSMOGRAPHY,

The fourth Book.

PART. I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY

OF

AFRICA,

And all the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN*.

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

Vltra hos (Æthiopes) monstrosæ gentium facies; Aliæ sine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta Ora sunt modicoque tantum foramine calamis avenarum pastus hauriunt. Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem sermonis utentes nutibus, manibusque.

PTOLOM. GEOG. l. 1. cap. 5.

Constat per ipsas temporum traditiones, quasdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam pervenisse: quasdam vero non tales, ac fertur, esse, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis nostri traditionibus penitus quasi adhæreamus.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1656.

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Book.

	A						*Eres*	87	40	40	50	*Ormus*
Achem	132	30	3	40	*Ergimul*	150	0	58	20	*Oxiana*		
Aden	82	0	13	50		F						
Agra	118	10	44	0	*Famagusta*	69	20	30	30	*Pacem*		
Aleppo	72	30	38	0	*Fasso*	57	50	45	40	*Pedir*		
Amboino	162	50	4	20	*A*	G				*Pegu*		
Amodabat	169	50	23	10	*Gabara*	80	50	36	10	*Ptolemais*		
Antioch	72	30	39	0	*Gaza*	70	50	39	10	*Persepolis*		
Apamea	61	30	43	40	*Gest*	107	30	26	30	*Patane*		
Arachan	129	10	10	24	*Gilolo*	161	30	1	10			
Ardovat	140	50	25	0	*Goa*	112	20	14	40	*Quiansu*		
Arminig	76			41		H				*Quinsay*		
Avaa	142	30	27	50	*Heri*	99	53	30	0			
Amasiro	66	30	44	30	*Hormar*	165	25	35	10	*Rhabana*		
	B				*Hierusalem*	72	20	33	0	*Rhodes*		
Babylon	82	20	33	0		I				*Rages*		
Baccu	88	50	42		*Jesdi*	94	40	32	0	*Regis*		
Balsora	82	40	31	10	*Indio*	105	40	38	0			
Banda	164	0	450		*A Jericho*	73		33	0	*Sablestan*		
Baticalla	111	30	13	40	*Joppa*	71	20	34	0	*Sarmachan*		
Bengala	125	10	21	20	*Istigias*	110	30	39	40	*Samaria*		
Bethlehem	65	45	31	50		L				*Sciro*		
Bisnagar	114	20	14	10	*Lequin Major*	165	0	28	0	*Siam*		
Bulgar	88	30	54	30	*Liompo*	160	20	34	40	*Sidon*		
	C				*Lop*	134	20	53	0	*Sind*		
Cabul	112	20	31	0		M				*Siras*		
Caindu	137	30	47	40	*Macao*	140	10	23	20	*Smirna*		
Calecut	112	40	10	30	*Mackan*	160	40	0	30	*Sigestan*		
Cambalu	161	10	51	40	*Macin*	85	30	25	50	*Sultania*		
Camboia	142	20	11	40	*Malaca*	136	30	2	50	*Succuit*		
Campion	148	0	57	30	*Maldiva*	113	0	3	0	*Sunda*		
Cananor	112	50	11	0	*Maliapar*	118	0	13	20	*Susis*		
Candahor	110	40	33	40	*Mamora*	155	40	0	40	*Scarpanto*		
Capha	68	50	48	0	*Mandao*	121	0	25	0			
Calamines	149	0	9	0	*Mangalor*	112	0	11	30	*Tangu*		
Cauchin China	140	30	20	0	*Martavan*	134	30	17	10	*Talcan*		
Cranganor	113	0	9	40	*Mecca*	73	30	25	0	*Tarnassur*		
Ceraso	73	0	44	40	*Medina Talnabi*	73	0	27	30	*Tarsus*		
Choromandel	115	20	22	30	*Meaco*	170	30	37	0	*Tauris*		
Ckesimur	115	10	3	0	*Mindanao*	160	40	7	0	*Tenduc*		
Chiansu	147	30	27	30	*Moltan*	114	20	24	30	*Thebet*		
Chirman	98	30	27	30	*Multan*	109	50	29	20	*Trabezond*		
Cincapura	136	43	1	20	*Mongul*	159	29	60	40	*Tripolis*		
Cochin	114	0	9	40	*Mushal*	84	0	34	50	*Troy*		
Colmuchs	117	30	6	40		N				*Tyre*		
Comori	115	10	7	10	*Naguian*	97	0	53	30	*Tidore*		
Coulan	114	30	7	10	*Naim*	94	10	33	40			
Cantan	149		25		*Nayman*	140	0	65	10	*Van*		
Chaul	109	40	17	30	*Narsinga*	119	40	18	0	*Varma*		
	D				*Nazareth*	72	40	34	10			
Damascus	74	30	35	0	*Nicomedio*	63	10	44	20	*Xamdu*		
Decan	113	20	14	0	*Nisabul*	102	10	38	40	*Xara*		
Delly	114	0	19	10	*Nice*	57	41	40				
Derbent	84	53	42	20	*Ninive*	82	36	40		*Zagaspi*		
Diu	108	0	20	30		O				*Zama*		
Dornate	137	50	7	50	*Odia*	138	30	12	0	*Zibit*		
	E				*Onor*	111	40	19	10			
Ephesus	60	30	39	40	*Orixa*	118	40	20	40			
						91	20	27	30			
						107	41	20				
						P						
						132	0	4	0			
						131	10	4	0			
						135	0	20	10			
						66	40	29	40			
						90	40	30	40			
						138	10	6	50			
						Q						
						144	40	42	30			
						153	0	40	0			
						R						
						196	30	47	0			
						61	40	37	20			
						79	10	28	0			
						82	10	36	0			
						S						
						114	0	30	0			
						130	0	47	0			
						72	20	33	40			
						57	30	41	10			
						139	10	14	30			
						72	10	36	30			
						109	30	27	0			
						90	40	30	40			
						60	20	40	30			
						105	0	31	0			
						91	40	37	20			
						143	10	56	0			
						138	86	40	*A*			
						73	40	48				
						62	10	36	0			
						T						
						152	0	63	30			
						85	0	47	0			
						119	40	17	10			
						71	20	40	0			
						90	30	38	10			
						168	30	67	30			
						158	50	44	0			
						74	30	44	40			
						72	20	37	0			
						59	0	42	30			
						72	10	38	3			
						160	40	0				
						V						
						86	30	36	50			
						130	20	20	10			
						X						
						168	40	55	40			
						130	0	17	0			
						Z						
						101	20	42	30			
						74	40	11	40			
						70	0	22	20			

The end of the third Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The fourth Book.

PART. I.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AFRICK,

And all the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF *AFRICK.*

AFRICK is bounded on the East by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Asia*; on the West, by the main *Atlantick* Ocean, interposing betwixt it and *America*; on the North, by the *Mediterranean* Sea, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*: and on the South, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean, separating it from *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent, Parted from all the rest of the World, except *Asia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Isthmus*, not above 60. miles in length, and memorable for the great design which *Cleopatra* the last Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this. When *Mark Anthony* was encountred by *Augustus* in the Naval battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the success, fled through the midst of all his Fleet, with the 60. Gallies which were appointed for her guard. Being come to the North part of this *Isthmus*, she gathered together all her portable treasures, and intended to hoist her shipping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*: whence she had purposed to take sail, and together with her Sweet-heart *Anthony*, and some other choicest friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*. But from this, *Anthony*, who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last dissuade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reversed; the *Basis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Streit of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Asia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920. *Italian* miles, the *Conus* of it very narrow. But from the *Conus* or *Pyris* to the most Northern part of the *Basis*, it extendeth it self the space of 4155. miles, being much less then *Asia*, and far bigger then *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called most commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Æthiopians*, *Alkebu lam*; by the *Indians*, *Besecath*. But the most noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Iosephus* out of *Cleodenus* and *Polyhistor*, deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher*, one of the Nephews of *Abraham*, by *Midian* the son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Ifriche*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, signifying to *divide*; because more visibly divided both from

from their own Country, & the reſt of the World, then any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the Greek Fablers fetch it from one *Afer*, a Companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*; Some fetch it out of *Aphar*, an Hebrew word, ſignifying *Duſt*, agreeable to its ſandy and duſty ſoyl: *Feſtus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privativum*, and the Greek word φρίκη, which imports a Country void of cold, as ſuitable to the fiery temper of the Aire. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is ſaid to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an Ear of corn; which mollified into *Feric*, came at laſt to *Africa*, that is to ſay, a *Country plentifull in Corn*. Which Etymologie of his may receive ſome countenance, from that great plenty of Corn, which was bred in this Country: eſpecially in thoſe parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the Hebrew *Epher* or *Aqhar*, be not worth accepting) I ſhould prefer the *Etymon* of *Feſtus* before any other: unleſſe we might be ſure that *Carthage* antiently was called *Africa*, as *Sudias* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would ſeek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in ſome elder writers, i.e. *Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eſchatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonis*, *Heſperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps ſome others; it is enough to our deſign to take notice of them.

It is ſituate for the moſt part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* croſſing it almoſt in the very midſt: and for that cauſe ſuppoſed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with ſuch ſtrange people, as hardly did deſerve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, gueſſing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by ſuch ſtrange Brutes, as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2. The *Sciapodæ*, who with the ſhadow of their Foot, could and did uſe to hide themſelves from the heats of the Sun; 3. The *Gamoſaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the uſe of weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the ſight of men; 4. The *Blemmyæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their breaſts; 5. The *Æypani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the ſhape and making of their bodies. Theſe people (as they thought) poſſeſſed ſome ſmall portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the reſt they know not, or conceived to be unhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late diſcoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in moſt parts to be well inhabited; and the coolneſs of the nights, by miſts, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

Quodq; die Solis vehementi excanduit æſtu,
Humida nox reficit, paribuſq; refrigerat horis.
That is to ſay.
What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews.
And doth as much refreſh with moyſtning dews.

For notwithſtanding that it be in ſome places full of ſandy deſarts, a diſeaſe incident to ſome parts of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and other Countries of a more Northernly ſituation: yet it is ſaid by ſome, who ſpeak it upon knowledge, that the greateſt part of thoſe Regions which lie under the Line or near it, (both in *America* and here) have ſo many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, ſuch abundance of Cedars and other ſtately Trees of ſhade, ſo many ſorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing and at all times beautified with bloſſoms; as may make them hold compariſon with any others, ſuppoſed to be of a more temperate ſituation.

But as was ſaid before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore ſpoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-ſay. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian*, imployed by that State, diſcovered much of the Weſtern Shores of this great *Peninſula*, yet he ventured not much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either ſuppreſſed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to purſue thoſe Voyages; being writ in the *Carthagian* tongue, but ſince tranſlated into Greek, and publiſhed at *Baſil* by *Sigiſmund Gelenius*, Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that ſome *Phœnicians* in the dayes of *Pharao Neco*, paſſing down the *Read Sea*, ſhould ſail about the Coaſts of *Africk* to the Streits of *Gibraltar*; and ſo return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what thoſe Ages diſbelieved or eſteemed impoſſible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, ſince firſt performed by *Vaſques de Gama*, an Adventurous *Portugal*, in the year Anno 1497. being 80 years after or thereabouts, from the time that the *Portugals* firſt attempted the diſcovery and circumnavigation of the coaſts of *Africk*, which at the laſt, to the no ſmall glory of their Nation, was accompliſhed by them. For ſo it happened that having extended their Dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withall a large Sea-coaſt, and fit for ſhiping, they turned their Forcer on the *Moors*, which dwelled in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their beſt towns which lay along upon the ſhores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good ſucceſs *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, reſolved to ſpend his purſe and credit upon new diſcoveries. And to that purpoſe, having had ſome conference with men of knowledge and experience in Coſmographie, he draweth together the beſt men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means and his own good fortune he firſt diſcovers the Iſle of *Madera*, Anno 1420. The Iſle of *Holy-Port*, Anno 1428. The Iſlands of Cape *Verd*, Anno 1440. the maritine parts of the Land of *Guinea*, Anno 1452. which fair foundations being layed, and the way opened to thoſe great diſcoveries, which after followed that glorious Prince deceaſed in a good old Age, Anno 1463. leaving this Character behinde him, that he was the firſt that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; diſconti-

nued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John*, the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con*, Anno 1486. discovered the Realms of *Angola*, and *Congo*, with the Isle of St. *George*, and thereupon resolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compassing the whole Coasts of *Africk*, thereby to finde a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond Cape *Verd*, discovered first the *Princes* Island, and sailing from thence Southward to the furthest Promontory (since called the *Cape* of *Good Hope*) returned home again; either discouraged by cross winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by altogether. The man to whom the honour of this enterprize was reserved, was that *Vasques de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emanuel*, Anno 1597. who having in his way, discovered the Ilands of St. *James*, and St. *Hellens*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew De Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena esperonza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*, because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the trade of *India*, and having so doubled this *Cape*, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countries of *Quiloa*, *Mosambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especiall friendship, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Caliculo* in *East India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour, he returned to *Lisbone*, Anno 1500. The design followed the next year by *Alvarez Capralde*, furnished with 12 ships and 1500 Souldiers, but he being lost upon the Coasts of *Brasil*, and diverting wholly in a manner, on the discovery of that large Country it was pursued the next year with greater strength, by *Vasques* and his Brother *Stephan* afterwards by *Ferdinand de Almedu*, and *Alphonso de Albuguerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *English*, *Hollanders*, Merchants of almost every Country which have any trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better instructed in the particulars of it, than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire and some parts adjoyning upon *Egypt*: more then the strange Beasts, and more strange Reports which they had from hence; occasioning hereby the By-word, *Africa semper aliquid apportat novi.*

Touching the State of *Christianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; most of those Regions which *Christian Religion* had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometanism* having since regained from *Christianity*: Insomuch that not only the North part of *Afric* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Gospel once so exceedingly flourished; that three hundred *Catholick* Bishops were at one time banished thence by *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals*; is at this present utterly void of *Christians*, (except some few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*): but even in all this vast Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Christian*, but the Kingdom of *Habassia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the *Christians* are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late Discoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godlinesse*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habassines*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and some *Europæan* Christians: the *Europæan* Christians only in their Forts and Garrisons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns, where Trade is stirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coasts bordering on the Red-Sea; but wandering in great herds or companies all about the Country with their wives and children: the *Habassines* and *Egyptians*, in their severall Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors*, and *Caferes*: of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*; the *Caferes* dwelling in the inland and more Southern parts, not discovered anciently, in their wonted *Gentilism*. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also; The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *Europæans*; 2. The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jewes*; 3. The *Arabick*, by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habassine*, and 5. The *Egyptian*, in those Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble language*, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the inhabitants of *Barbary*, nearest to Mount *Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungai*, used in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubeo*, spoke by those of *Æthiopia inferior*, and such of the *Land of Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the State of the Roman Empire, it contained only the *Dioceses* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Diocese of *Spain*. The Diocese of *Egypt* subdivided into the Provinces of, 1. *Lybia superior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Augustanica*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Ægyptus* especially so called; distinguished by other names in the *Nicene* Council: That of *Africk*, into *Tripolitana*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Zeugitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifensis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Diocese of *Spain*. The rest of this *Peninsula*, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into consideration. But being more perfectly discovered now then in former times, (though not so perfectly as that I can be able to promise an exact accompt of it) it is divided commonly into these seven parts; 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary* or the *Roman Africk*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the same with those of the antient *Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Æthiopia Superior*, and 7. *Æthiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do properly belong unto any of these, shall make up the eighth. In the Descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plautanus*, and begin with *Egypt*; as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

This Country in the holy Scriptures is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the son of *Chus*, and grandson of *Cham*, by whom first planted after the flood; the footsteps of which name do remain amongst the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misre*. Named in the same regard in the Book of *Psalms*, the *Land of Ham*: a name retained in some of the sacred offices of the old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*; for *Chamia* no doubt, as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first stock of their nation. In Prophane Authors it hath had the several names of 1. *Aeria*, from the serenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, washing two sides of it; 3. *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* a supposed King thereof; 4. *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the soil; 5. *Osiria*, from their God *Osiris*, here in high esteem: 6. and finally, it was called *Ægyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the rest, either from *Ægyptus* the Brother of *Danaus* once King hereof, (in the stories of this Nation better known by the name of *Rameses*); or from *Ægyptus* the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whose annual overflowings made both rich and famous; and of the soil and rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was by some supposed to have been raised into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in some Writers by the name of *Nili donum*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet some there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aiguphus*, and that derived from *Ai*, and *Coptus*, which signifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*; that being supposed to have been antiently the chief City of it. And some again will have the name derived from *Chicth*, by which the *Ægyptians* call themselves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Asna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 *Italian* miles: in breadth (exclusively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Rosetta* unto *Damiata*, or from the most Westerly Branch of *Nilus* to the farthest East, 160 of the same miles; to which the adding of those two Provinces, make a great accession: Situate under the second and fift *Climates*, so that the longest day in summer is but 13 hours and an half.

By reason of this Southernly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive; so that to avoid the insupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh wind, the Inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The soyl made fruitful by the overflowings of *Nilus*, (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentifull of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum populi Romani*, the *Granari* or Store-house of the People of *Rome*: which City it did annually furnish with four months provision; insomuch that it was said by *Plinie*, that the greatness of the *Roman* Empire could not long continue without the corn and wealth of *Egypt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It aboundsalso with rich Pastures, in which they feed great store of *Camels*, Horses, Asses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth then usually in most places else; and by reason of the moorishness of the Country, they have great store of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the sitting of the *Hen*, but the heat of *Furnaces*, or Ovens; in which their eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Mettals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as Limons, Orenges, Pomgranets, Citrons, Figs, Cherries, and such as these, excellent both for tast and colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance; of which though we have spoke before, yet we shall here more fully declare the nature and strange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thrust forth Cods full of seed, but the Female is only fruitfull, and that not except growing by the Male, and having his seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Sallad, better than an *Hartichoke*, which in tast it very much resembleth. Of the branches they make Bedsteads, Latices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward husk of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Brushes. The fruit it bears, best known by the name of *Dates*, are in tast like Figs: and finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burden; but still to resist the heavinesse of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this cause planted in *Church-yards* in the *Eastern* Countries, as an *Embleme* of the *Resurrection*: instead whereof we use the *Ewe-tree* in these cold Regions. For the same reason, given to *Conquerours* as a token of *Victory*; it being the Embleme of *Hieroglyphick* of a Souldiers life. Hence *figuratively* used for precedency, as, *Huic equidem consilio palmam do*, in *Terence*; sometimes for the Victory it self; as *Non auferent tamen hanc palmam*, in *Plinie*; & plurimarum *palmarum* homo, for a man that had won many prizes in the *Feuce-School*, as in *Tully*, *pro Roscio*: more naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*,

——————*Palmaque nobilis,*
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

That is to say,

The Palm, *of Victory a signe,*
Equal's man to the Powers Divine.

The

The People, though the Countrie lie in the ſame Clime with *Barbarie*, are not black, but tawnie, or *Olive-coloured*, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead; daubed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having imbalmed them to lay them in ſome inward room of their Houſes: the men to keep themſelves at home, for the houſhould buſineſſes, the women to follow merchandiſe and affaires abroad; the men to carry burdens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their ſhoulders: *Antipodes* in theſe laſt to moſt other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious People, the firſt Inventers of *Geometry*, *Arithmetick*, *Phyſick*, as alſo of *Aſtronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They firſt taught the uſe of *Letters* to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accuſtomed at the firſt to expreſs their conceits in the ſhape of Birds, Beaſts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they pained the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: for a *Year*, they painted a ſnake, with his tail in his mouth, to ſhew how one year ſucceeding another, kept the World ſtill in an endleſs circle. For a *moneth*, they painted a Palm-tree, becauſe at every new Moon, it ſendeth forth a new branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he ſoared ſo high, as that he governeth the leſſer birds. For *integrity* of life, they painted fire and water, both becauſe theſe Elements are in themſelves moſt pure, and becauſe all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was *abominable* to the Gods, they painted a Fiſh, becauſe in their Sacrifices the Prieſts never uſed them; and the like. From this manner of expreſſing ones ſelf, the invention of *Letters* is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no queſtion of the children of *Iſrael*, when they lived amongſt them:) the Hiſtory whereof, take briefly and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Ægyptii, &c.* The *Egyptians* firſt of all expreſſed the conceptions of the minde, by the ſhapes of beaſts; and the moſt ancient monuments of mans memory, are ſeen graven in ſtones; and they ſay, that they are the firſt inventers of *Letters*. Then the *Phœnicians*, becauſe they were ſtrong at Sea, brought them into *Greece*; and ſo they had the glory of that, which they received from others: For there goeth a report, that *Cadmus* ſailing thither in a *Phœnician* ſhip, was the Inventer of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and rude. Some report that *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Grecian*, did finde out ſixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan* War; and that afterward *Simonides* added the reſt. But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines*, of *Evander* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the firſt inventers of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-maſters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with ſafety maintain, having *Lucan* in conſent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices *primi (fama ſi creditur) auſi*
Manſuram rudibus vocem ſignare figuris.

Phœnicians *firſt (if fame may credit have)*
Dar'd in rude Characters *our words ingrave.*

Of this minde alſo is *Iſidore* of *Sevill* in the firſt book of *Originations*, who alſo addeth, that for that cauſe the *Fronts* of Books, and the *Titles* of Chapters were written in *red letters*, as it is by ſome ſtill in uſe. *Hinc eſt quod &* Phœniceo colore *librorum capita deſcribantur, quia ab ipſis literæ initium habuere; cap.* 3. As for theſe leſs vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exerciſed *Stateſman* have peculiar to himſelf; they were firſt invented by *Julius Cæſar*, when he firſt began to think of the *Roman* Monarchy: and were uſed by him in his Letters to his more private and tryed friends, that if by misfortune they ſhould be intercepted, the contents of them ſhould not be underſtood; ὅπως ἄγνωστα τοῖς πολλοῖς τὰ γραφόμενα, *ne obvia literarum lectio cuivis eſſet*. *Auguſtus* one of the greateſt *Politicians* of the World, had another kinde of obſcure writing; for in his Letters of more ſecrecy and importance, he always uſed τὸ πρότερον ἀεὶ στοιχεῖον, to put the letter immediatly following in the order of the *Alphabet*, for that which in ordinary writing he ſhould have uſed. As for *Brachigraphie*, or the Art of writing by ſhort *Characters*, ſo uſefull for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is ſpoken: I finde in *Dion*, that *Mœcenas* that great *favourite* of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and favourer of Learning, did firſt invent them, *ad celeritatem ſcribendi*, for the ſpeedier diſpatch of writing; ᾧ πρῶτῳ σημεῖα γραμμάτων τινὰ (they are the every words of my Author) πρὸς τάχος ἐξεῦρε. *Iſidor* in the ſecond Chapter of his book above mentioned, aſcribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or *freed man* of his *Mœcenas*; and to *Tertius Perſannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tito*, a *freed man* of *Cicero*'s; who had undertaken and compaſſed it in the *Prepoſitions*, but went no further. At the laſt it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole volume of his contractions conſiſting of 5000 words. *Deinde* Seneca *contracto omnium, digeſtoque & aucto numero, opus effecit in quinque millia.* But now I make haſt to take a ſurvey of theſe *Egyptians* as they ſtand at the preſent, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predeceſſors

For ſuch as have obſerved the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Anceſtors; prone to innovations, devoted to luxury, cowardly, cruel, addicted naturally to caviſl, and to detract from whatſoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men more obſervant than faithfull, of a wit much inclining to craftineſs, and very eager on their profit:

Of perſon, of a mean ſtature, tawnie of complexion, and ſpare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themſelves to *merchandiſe*; grow rich by Trading, reaſonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in their dreſs and Faſhion. Thoſe in the Country, who betake themſelves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a ſavage and naſty People, cruſted over with dirt, and ſtinking of ſmoak; fit company for none but thoſe of their own condition. Nothing now left amongſt them of the *Arts* of their Anceſtors, but an affectation which they have unto *Divinations*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders: by which, and by ſome *cheating-tricks* in which very well practiſed, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and ſo get their livelyhood; occaſioning the *vagabonds* and ſtraglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the ſame falſe Arts, to aſſume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hochpot* or medley of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptian* making up the leaſt part of the reckoning.

The *women* of the ſame complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did they not too much affect a ſeeming *corpulency*; which if they cannot get in fleſh, they will have in cloaths. Very fruitfull in child-bearing, and quick of diſpatch when they are in labour: ſome of them having three or four children at a Birth; thoſe that are born in the eighth moneth living to good Age, and not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their faces with black *Cypres* beſpotted with red; their armes, and ancles garniſhed with bracelets and hoops of gold, ſilver, or ſome other Metal. Thoſe in the Country, for a vail, uſe ſome dirty clout, having holes onely for their eyes, which little is too much to ſee and abſtain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the cuſtom in all places elſe, the women uſe to make water ſtanding, and the men couring on their knees.

The old *Egyptians* were ſo eminent in Arts and Learning, that from them *Pythagoras*, and *Democritus* learnt their *Philoſophy*; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their Forms of Government. *Orpheus*, and *Homer*, their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly, here flouriſhed *Ariſtarchus* that famous and learned *Grammarian*; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and ſearcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Maſter of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, ſurnamed *Chalcenteros*, for his indefatigable induſtry in ſeveral Sciences; 5. *Manethon*, an old *Hiſtorian*, of whom we have nothing but ſome fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Hiſtorian of a later date, whoſe works are extant, 7. *Didymus* the *Grammarian*, 8. *Cl. Ptolomæus*, the Geographer; 9 *Achilles Statius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philoſopher *Mercurius*, ſirnamed *Triſmegiſtus*. And after their converſion to the faith of *Chriſt*, 1. *Pantænus* the firſt Reader of Divinitie in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2. *Origen* and 3. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the univerſality of Learning; 4. *Dionyſius*; 5. *Athanaſius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Biſhops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their ſeverall times. Now nothing but ignorance and Barbariſm to be found amongſt them.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here planted by *S. Mark*, whom all Antiquity make h the firſt Biſhop of *Alexandria*. His ſucceſſors, till the time of *Heraclus* and *Dionyſius*, choſen continually out of the *Presbyterie* or Cathedral-Clergie; afterwards out of the *Clergie* at large. Their Juriſdiction ſetled by a Canon of the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Dioceſs* of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Dioceſs* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis* and *Egypt* ſpecially ſo called: to which, though *Epiphanius* addes *Thebais*, *Maræotica*, and *Ammoniaca*, yet he addes nothing in effect; *Thebais*, and *Maræotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Churches became ſubject to this *Patriarch* alſo, and do acknowledge to this day ſome relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the ſubjugation of this Countrey, *Chriſtianity* fell here into great decay; languiſhing ſo ſenſibly ſince thoſe times, eſpecially ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*: that whereas *Brochardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thouſand *Chriſtians*; in the laſt eſtimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty thouſand. This ſmall remainder of them, commonly called *Cophti*, either from the Greek word κόπτω, *ſcindo*, becauſe they retained the uſe of *Circumciſion* with their *Chriſtianity*; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reſide; or finally by *abbreviation* from *Ægopthi*, corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithſtanding in ſome particulars, in ſome from all other *Chriſtians* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points moſt proper to them, 1. Uſing *Circumciſion* with their *Baptiſm*, but rather as a *National* than *Religions* cuſtome; though in that ſenſe alſo laid aſide, as is ſaid by ſome, by the perſwaſion of ſome *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Caire*, An. 1583. 2*ly*. Conferring all ſacred Orders under the *Prieſthood*, on Infants immediately after Baptiſm; their Parents, till they come to ſixteen years of age, performing what they promiſed in their behalf, *viz*. Chaſtitie, faſting on Wedneſday and Friday, and the four Lents of the year. 3*ly*. Reputing Baptiſm not to be of any efficacie, except miniſtred by the Prieſt, in the open Church, in what extremity ſoever: 4*ly*. And yet not *baptizing* any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the *interim*. 5*ly*. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt*, aſſoon as Chriſtened; 6. Contracting marriages even in the ſecond Degree or Conſanguinitie, without diſpenſation; 7. Obſerving not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Feſtivals*, except onely in *Cities*; 8*ly*. And in their Liturgies, reading the Goſpel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Lords Supper* under both kinds; 2*ly*. Adminiſtring in leavened bread; 3*ly*. Admitting neither *Extreme unction*, nor the uſe of the *Euchariſt*, to thoſe that are ſick; 4*ly*. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead, 5*ly*. Not uſing Elevation in the act of Adminiſtring; And 6. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for *Heretical*, and eſteeming no better of the *Latines* than they do of the *Jewes*. In theſe opinions they continue hitherto againſt all *Opponents* and perſwaſions? For though *Baronius* in the end of the ſixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath regiſtred an Ambaſſage from *Marcus*, the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8; wherein he is ſaid to have

have ſubmitted himſelf and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*: yet upon further ſearch made, it was found but a *Cheat*, deviſed to hold up the reputation of a ſinking cauſe. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* ſtill adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practiſe and ſolicitation of ſome buſie *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, and to uſe her *Liturgies*.

What their Religion was before *Chriſtianity*, is obvious to the eye of a vulgar Reader; even the worſt of *Gentiliſm*; theſe People not onely worſhipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, creatures of greateſt uſe and glory; nor onely ſacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the reſt of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their ſeveral times of ſome publike benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine honours to *Crocodiles*, Snakes, Serpents, *Garlick*, Leeks and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Chriſtian* Fathers; ſo moſt deſervedly expoſed unto publick ſcorn, by the pens of the Poets.

Porrum & cæpe nefas violare, & 'ladere morſu.
Felices populi, quibus hæc naſcuntur in Hortis
Numina. —— *Quis neſcit qualia demens*
Ægyptus portenta *colat*, &c.

Which may be rendred to this purpoſe.

To bite an Onion *or a* Leek, *is more*
Than deadly ſinne. The Numen *they adore*
Growes in their Gardens. *And who doth not know*
What monſtrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt *go?*

But the God moſt eſteemed by them, and by all ſorts of the *Egyptians* the moſt adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Oxe, with a white ſtar in his forehead, the *Effigies* of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs onely in his tail. But it ſeemeth his *Godſhip* was not ſo much reſpected by Strangers. For *Cambyſes* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his ſword thorow the thigh, and cauſed all his Prieſts to be ſcourged: And *Auguſtus* being here, would not vouchſafe to ſee him, ſaying, Θεὸς ἀλλ' ἔχι σὺς προσκυνῶν εἰθίζω, that the Gods and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the object of his devotions. A ſpeech moſt truly worthy ſo brave an Emperour.

Among the *Ratities* of his Country, ſome were the works of nature, and ſome of induſtry and magnificence. Of this laſt kinde I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramides*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their ſeveral kindes, the envy of the Ages paſt, and the aſtoniſhment of the preſent. Of the *Labyrinth* we ſhall ſpeak anon, in the courſe of our buſineſs. Look we now on the *Pyramides*, many in number, three moſt celebrated, and one the principal of all; ſituate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Weſtern banks of *Nilus*. This laſt, the chief of the Worlds *ſeven wonders*, ſquare at the bottom, is ſuppoſed to take up eight acres of ground. Every ſquare 300. ſingle paces in length, aſcended by 255. ſteps, each ſtep above three Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top conſiſting but of three ſtones onely, yet large enough for 60. men to ſtand upon. No ſtone ſo little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the reſt for others of thoſe mighty Princes) who imployed in it day by day twenty yeers together, no fewer than 366000. men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food than *Garlick*, Radiſhes, and Onions, being computed at a thouſand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is ſaid to be the work of a daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finiſh her Fathers undertaking, and raiſe her own unto the height, by the proſtitution of her body, requiring but one ſtone towards the Work from each one of her Cuſtomers; but the tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Joſephus*, and ſuppoſed by many good *Divines*, that the drudgery put upon the *Iſraelites* did concern theſe *Pyramides*: the *Materials* of theſe works being *ſtone*; their imployment, *brick*? But paſt all doubt, advanced by thoſe conſiderate Princes upon good advice, and not for oſtentation onely of their power and glories. For by this means they did not onely eternize their memory to ſucceeding Ages, but for the preſent kept the Subject from ſloth and idleneſs; who being a People prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwiſe like enough to have fed that ſin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

Next theſe *Pyramides*, I place the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Iſland oppoſite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile diſtant from the Land, but joyned to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occaſion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea, uſed to exact ſome tribute or acknowledgement out of every Iſland within thoſe Seas; and conſequently out of this. Their Ambaſſadors ſent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this tribute, ſhe detained with her ſeven days, under colour of celebrating ſome ſolemn *Feſtivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and ſpeed, united the Iſland to the ſhore, Which finiſhed, ſhe ſent the *Rhodians* away empty handed, with this witty *jeere*, telling them *that they were to take Toll of the Iſlands, and not of the Continent*. A work of great rarity and magnificence, both for the bigneſs of it, taking up ſeven Furlongs of ground, and for that cauſe called *Heptaſtadium*; and that incredible ſpeed, wherewith it was finiſhed. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latine Pharos*, by the name of the Iſland; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailors, (the Seas upon that coaſt being very unſafe and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deſervedly eſteemed another of the Worlds ſeven Wonders: the other five

being 1. the *Mauſoleum*, 2. the Temple of *Epheſus*, 3. the Walls of *Babylon*, 4. the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the *Statue* of *Jupiter Olympicus*. This Watch-tower, or *Pharos*, was of wonderfull height, aſcended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein lights burned nightly, as a direction to ſuch as ſailed by Sea. The *Materials* were white marble; the cheif Architect, *Soſtratus* of *Gnidos*, who ingraved on the work this inſcription, *Soſtratus* of Gnidos, *the ſon of* Dexiphanes, *to the Gods protecters, for the ſafeguard of Sailers*. This inſcription he covered with *plaiſter*, and thereon ingraved the name and title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings name being ſoon waſted and waſhed away, his own, which was written in marble, might be eternized to poſterity, as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæſar* purſuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having diſcontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Souldiers, had his Navy which here lay at anchor, aſſaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomies* ſervants, *Cæſar* himſelf being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the skirmiſh he haſted to the *Pharos*, meaning to ſuccour his Navy in perſon: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all ſides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and ſwim for his life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he ſometimes ducked; yet held he ſtill his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried ſafe unto his ſhips; and animating his men, got the victory. It is ſaid that *Egypt* hath onely two doors, the one by land, which is the ſtrong Town of *Peleuſium*, or *Damiata*; the other by water, which is this *Pharus*: *Tota* Ægyptus *maritimo acceſſu*, Pharo; *pedeſtre vero*, Peluſio, *velut clauſtris munita exiſtimatur*, ſaith *Oppius*.

Amongſt the rarities of Nature, we may reckon theſe ſtrange Beaſts and Fiſhes, proper almoſt unto this Countrey, *i. e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horſe) the *Ibis*, the *Aſpe*, and many ſeverall ſorts of Serpents. To ſpeak of which particularly were a work more proper to a *Natural* Hiſtory, then a *Geographical*. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* then all the reſt, cannot be parted with in ſilence; A creature of a ſtrange nature, hatched of an egg no bigger then that of a *Turkie*; and yet increaſing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the reſt of his body, with which he is accuſtomed to inchaine his prey, and draw it into the River; His feet armed with claws, and his back with impenetrable ſcales; his mouth ſo wide (of which he moveth onely the upper jaw) that he is able to ſwallow a whole Heifer; equally uſed to both Elements, but better ſighted in the water, then on the land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and ſuch as uſually flies from thoſe which dare ſet upon him; and eaſily vanquiſhed by the *Dolphin*, who ſwimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where aſſaultable onely. Whether ſo eaſily deſtroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kinde of Water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers ſay, hath of late been queſtioned. That which I look on as a rarity of the greateſt moment (if not rather to be accounted *ſupernatural*) is that, about five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place, in which on every *Good-Friday* yeerly, there appear the heads, legs and arms of men riſing out of the ground, to a very great number: which if a man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will ſhrink again into the earth. Suppoſed by ſome to be an *Impoſture* of ſome *Water-men* onely, who ſtick them over-night in the ſands, and keeping them ſecret to themſelves, obtain thereby the *Ferrying* over of many thouſands of People, to behold the ſight. But *Stephen Dupleis*, a ſober and diſcerning man, in the opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwiſe of it: affirming ſoberly that he was a eye-witneſs of the wonder, that he had touched divers of theſe riſing Members; and that (as he was once ſo doing to the head of a childe) a man of *Caire* cried out unto him, *Kali, Kali, ante materaſde*, that is to ſay, *Hold, hold, you know not what you do*. A ſtrange *Fore-runner* (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Reſurrection* of the whole Body, preſented yearly in the *riſing* of theſe ſeveral parts.

Of leſs diſpute, but not leſs *rarity* in nature, are theſe that follow. 1. That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a clould do ſometimes happen to diſſolve upon them, it bringeth on their bodies innumerable ſores, and ſtrange diſeaſes. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are ſaid to follow on the ſame. Of which it is thus ſaid by *Lucan*;

Terra ſuis contenta bonis, non indiga mercis,
Aut Jovis; *in ſolo tanta eſt fiducia* Nilo:

The earth content with its own wealth, doth crave
No Forreign Mart, *nor* Jove *himſelf; they have*
Their hopes alone in Nilus *fruitfull wave.*

This *Nilus* hath his head, not in the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, as the Ancients thought, but in the Lake *Zembre*, in *Æthiopia Interior*: and running in one continual *Channel* (excepting where it brancheth into little Iſlands, as it ſometimes doth) till it waſheth the mid-land of *Egypt*, is before its influx into the Sea, divided into ſeven great ſtreams, opening into the Sea with ſo many mouths. Namely, 1. *Heracleoticum*, 2. *Bolviticum*, 3. *Schaniticum*, 4. *Patinicum*, 5. *Mendeſium*, 6. *Caniticum*, 7. *Peluſaicum*. The firſt and laſt of theſe currents (which are the onely two now left) being far diſtant from other, and growing into one, at the firſt point of the Rivers diviſion, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, becauſe to ſuch as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it reſembleth the *Greek* letter Δ. The other part is called *Thebais*, from *Thebe*, the chief City of it.

This *Nilus* from the 15. day of *June*, ſwelleth above his banks, for the ſpace of 40. days; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen *Cubits*, then the earth is deficient in her abundance of increaſe, for want of moiſture: and if the waters ſurmount the *ſuperficies* of the Earth, more than ſeventeen Cubits, then, like a drunken man, it cannot

produce

produce its natural operation, as having his ſtomack (as it were) over-laid, and ſurcharged with too much liquor: but if the mean be granted, there is no Countrey which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all houſed before the 20th. of *May*. During this *Inundation*, they keep their beaſts and cattel on the tops of ſuch little hils, which either the Providence of Nature, or the induſtry of man, hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decreaſe of the Waters: and on theſe hills alſo ſtand the moſt of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood, like ſo many Iſlands; and holding a commerce and continual traffick by the entercourſe of Boats and Shallops, by which they do tranſport their Marketable commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus over-flow the Countrey, it is not onely the Fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognoſticateth ſome enſuing miſchief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the teſtimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us that in the 10th. and 11th. years of *Cleopatra*, the River increaſed not at all; and that it was noted as a Foreteller of the Fall of thoſe two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweetheart *Antonius*. A ſecond commodity which ariſeth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is the health which it bringeth with it in moſt parts of the Countrey; the Plague which often-times miſerably rageth, upon the firſt day of the flood, abating inſtantly: inſomuch that whereas 500. may die of that diſeaſe in the City of *Caire* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River, is, that keeping its waters united in a body together, after it falleth into the Sea; it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further then any part of it can be ſeen from the ſhore. Add unto theſe the many living creatures which the ſlime thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural channel: whereof *Ovid* thus,

Sic ubi deſeruit madidos ſeptemfluus *agros*
Nilus, *& antiquo ſua flumina reddidit alv'o*:
Plurima Cultores verſis Animalia *glebis*
Inveniunt.

Which I *Engliſh* thus.

So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile *the fields forſakes,*
And to his ancient Channel him betakes;
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the mud that's left behind.

Amongſt which Creatures ſo ingendered, are ſaid to be ſuch innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furniſh this Countrey with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured; the *Plague* of *Frogs* would come a ſecond time upon them, to their utter deſtruction. Now becauſe *Nilus* runneth in its certain *Channels*, and that the people have no other water to make uſe of, for all neceſſities; there are many By-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places, (by the care and munificence of their Kings) to receive its waters, and to communicate them to the people; who know almoſt no other drink then the waters thereof, and indeed they need not; the water of this River being of ſuch excellent, both taſt and vertue, that when *Peſcominus Niger* ſaw his Souldiers murmure for want of Wine; *What* (ſaid he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the waters of* Nile *to drink?*

On the banks of the River ſtood that famous *Labyrinth* built by *Pſamniticus*, which we have touch'd upon before; ſituate on the South of the *Pyramides*, and North of *Arſinoe*, or the Citie of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compaſſe of one continued wall, a thouſand houſes, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had onely one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, ſometimes one over another; and all in a manner invious to ſuch as were not well acquainted with them: The building more under the ground, then above; the Marble-ſtones laid with ſuch art, that neither Wood nor Cement was imployed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers ſo diſpoſed, that the Doors upon their opening did give a report no leſſe terrible, then a crack of Thunder; the main Entrance all of White-marble, adorned with ſtately Columns, and moſt curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Stairs of 90 ſteps conducted into a gallant *Portice*, ſupported with Pillars of *Theban* ſtone; which was the Entrance into a fair and ſpacious Hall, (the place of their general Conventions) all of poliſhed Marble, ſet out with the *Statues* of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus* in the *Cretane* Labyrinth; though that fell as ſhort of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferior unto *Pſamniticus*, in power and riches.

On the Banks of this River alſo grew thoſe ſedgy Weeds called *Papyri*, of which Paper was made in former times. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moiſt'ning them with the glutinous waters of the River, they preſſed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of this invention, books being eaſier to be tranſcribed and reſerved then formerly, *Ptolomy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*: and underſtanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, ſtrived to exceed him in that kinde of magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the uſe of Parchments, made of the skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membranæ*, and *Pergamenæ* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cauſe, that in ſhort time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of uſe; in place whereof ſucceeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authours of which excellent invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the uſe of theſe Papers and Parchments were firſt made known, I obſerve three wayes of writing amongſt the

Ancients, (I hope I ſhall be pardoned this ſhort digreſſion.) 1. On the inward ſide of the Bark of a Tree, which is in Latine called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2*ly*. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Candex*, gave the *Latines* occaſion to call a book *Codex*. 3*ly*. They uſed to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to ſignifie; from whence a Letter-carrier was named *Tabellarius*. The inſtrument wherewith they wrote, was a ſharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a word now ſignifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kinde of *Phraſe* which any man uſeth: as, *Negligens ſtylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus ſtylus*, in *Cicero*. I ſhould have alſo noted, that they uſed ſometimes to write in *Leaves*; That the *Sibyls* Oracles being ſo written and ſcattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the phraſe of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increaſe of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Countrey, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the *Red Sea*, and the great Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of *Trading*. A Sea whereof we have ſpoke already, as to the reaſon of the name, the extent thereof, and the ſeveral Iſlands contained in it; and therefore ſhall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Countrey, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous paſſage of the *Iſraelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaohs Cenchres* and all his people, at large commemorated in the books of Holy Scriptures: as alſo for that through it Spices of *India*, and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*; and thence by the *Venetians* diſperſed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Aſia*. I ſuppoſe I ſhall not do amiſſe to ſet down Hiſtorically out of *Galuano*, a relation of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received ſo great Commodity. *Know then* (ſaith he) *that* Ptolomy Philadelphus, 277 *years before the* Incarnation, *was the firſt that ſet on foot this Navigation:* Coſir (*of old called* Myos: Hormos) *on the Sea-ſide being the ordinary Haven, out of which they hoyſed ſail for* India; *and into which they returned, full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by land conveighed to* Coptus, *and ſo down the* Nile *to* Alexandria: *by which Traffick the Citie grew exceeding rich; inſomuch that the Cuſtom-houſe there yielded* Ptol. Auletes 7 *Millions and an half of Gold yearly. The* Romans *being Lords of* Egypt, *enhanſed the Cuſtomes to double that ſum: they ſent into* India *every year* (*as* Pliny *witneſſeth*) 120 *ſhips, whoſe lading was worth* 1200000 *Crowns; and there was made in return of every Crown,* 100. *When the* Vandals, Lombards, Goths, *and* Moors *had torn in pieces the* Roman *Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to ceaſe. At laſt perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew; conveighing the* Indian *Commodities, partly by land, partly by water, unto* Capha *in* Taurica Cherſoneſus, *belonging to the* Genoeſe. *Next* Trabezond *was made the Mart-town, then* Sarmachand *in* Zagataie, *where the* Indian, Turkiſh, *and* Perſian *Merchants met to barter wares: the* Turks *conveighing their merchandiſe to* Damaſcus, Baratti, *and* Aleppo; *from whence the* Venetians *tranſported it to* Venice, *making that the common* Emporium *of Chriſtendom. Once again,* viz. *Anno* 1300. *the* Soldans *of* Egypt *reſtored the paſſage by the* Red-Sea; *which having continued more than* 200 *years, is now diſcontinued by the* Portugal, Spaniards, Engliſh *and* Dutch, *which bring them to their ſeveral homes by the back ſide of* Africk: *So that not onely the Traffick of* Alexandria *is almoſt decayed, and the Riches of the* Venetians *much diminiſhed; but the Drugs and Spices have loſt much of their vertue, as impaired by too much moiſture.* So much ſaith he, touching the courſe and alteration of this Trading: to which I ſhall take leave to add, That for the better and more quick return of ſuch Commodities as were uſually brought into this Sea, ſome of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it, to the River *Nilus*, paſſable by ſhips of greateſt burden; the marks of whoſe proud attempts are remaining ſtill. *Seſoſtris* was the firſt who deſigned the work, having before with good ſucceſſe cut many Trenches from the River, and ſome Navigable, into many places of the Countrey; by which unprofitable Mariſhes were drained, the Countrey ſtrengthened, Trade made eaſie, and the people better furniſhed with water than in former times. *Darius* the great *Perſian* Monarch, ſeconded the ſame *Project*; ſo did one of the *Ptolomies*; The like is ſaid of a Capricious *Portugal* in theſe later times. But they all gave it over on the ſame conſideration; which was a fear, leſt by letting in the *Red-Sea* they might drown the Countrey, and perhaps make a ſecond Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Aſia Minor* which lay neareſt to them: that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to underſtand, that all which hitherto hath been ſpoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* ſtrictly, and ſpecially ſo called; containing onely ſo much of the Countrey of *Egypt*, as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*: and not to all that tract of ground, which lay betwixt the *Red Sea*, and the borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the compaſſe of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much leſſe as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* alſo, though now accounted Members of that great body, and anciently parts, or Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largeſt ſenſe and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into theſe three parts, *viz.* 1. *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumæa* to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Weſtward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum*: and on the Borders of *Æthiopia Superior*, from the ſaid *Red-Sea*, to the Countrey of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly ſo called, and the Province of *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Lybia*, to the greater *Syrtis*; where it bordered with that part of the *African Dioceſe*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this firſt acception of it we ſhall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains, and Chief Cities; which done, we ſhall deſcribe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in the *General Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, there are very many: there were no living elſe for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of thoſe, 1. Thoſe called *Montes Libyci*, lying

in

in a long chain on the Weſt of *Nilus*; 2. *Alabaſtrinus*; 3. *Porphyritus*; 4. *Troigus*; 5. *Baſanitus* on the Eaſt thereof. Betwixt theſe Hills the courſe of the River is ſo hemmed in on both ſides, that at the upper part of the ſtream, where it firſt entreth into *Egypt*, the ſpace betwixt the Mountains is not above four miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Caire* to thirty ſeven; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Countrey doth increaſe in breadth. On theſe and other of the Mountains and leſſer Hills, ſtand moſt part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Countrey people in the time of the Floud, riſing when leaſt, to fifteen *cubits*, or ſeven yards and an half.

Rivers of note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being ſufficient of it ſelf to enrich this Countrey, which otherwiſe would be nothing but a *Sandy Deſart*. But what they want in Rivers, is ſupplied with *Lakes* and Trenches, which ſerve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Mortar for their buildings, and other ſuch inferior uſes; ſometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer ſort, who cannot be conveniently furniſhed with the waters of *Nile*. Amongſt the Trenches (which were many, as before was ſaid) thoſe of moſt eſtimation were the Works of *Ptolomy*, and the Emperour *Trajan*: the firſt falling into that branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Iſle called *Heracleotis*; the other into the main body of it, not far from *Caire*. Theſe two, by reaſon of the many freſh ſprings which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authours: and betwixt theſe was ſeated the Land of *Goſhen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea*, on the Eaſt and Weſt. The chief of note amongſt the Lakes, were thoſe called, 1. *Marcotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Arapotes*, *Maria* by *Ptolomy*; all which names are now loſt, and changed into that of *Lagodi Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Laccus*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which in the book of *Maccabees* is called *Aſphar*, lib. 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moeris*, now called *Buchaira*, more memorable than the reſt. In compaſſe 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep, in the midſt whereof were two *Pyramides* 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fiſh of this Lake, for one ſix moneths in the year, ſaid to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other ſix, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolomeus*, doth diſcharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts onely. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extream branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which letter it reſembleth to him who ſtanding on the Sea-ſhore could take a view of it. 2. That called *Thebais*, from *Thebe* the principal Citie of it, comprehending all the reſt of the courſe of that River, ſhut up on both ſides with the Mountains ſpoken of before. But this Diviſion leaving out all thoſe parts hereof, which lay on the Eaſt-ſide towards the *Arabian Golfs*, and on the Weſt, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds*, or Diſtricts, by them called *Nomi*; increaſed in the time of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authours hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Dioceſs* of the Empire, it was divided into four Provinces, (not reckoning *Marmarica*, and *Cyrene* into the accompt:) that is to ſay, 1. *Ægyptus* ſpecially ſo called, containing all the *Delta*, and the Diſtrict or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Auguſtanica*, ſo called from *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on the Eaſt of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petræa*. 3. *Arcadia*, ſo called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whoſe time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both ſides of the River, from the *Delta* to the Citie of *Antinous*. 4. *Thebais*, extending on both ſides of the River from the borders of *Libya Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous*, unto *Æthiopia*. Divided otherwiſe by ſome, into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Æthiopia* to the Citie of *Antinous*, *Mediam*, ſtretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the reſt. But at this time, that part hereof, which lieth on the South and Eaſt of *Caire*, is called *Saud*, or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, becauſe neareſt unto *Æthiopia* their moſt puiſſant neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Caire*, *Roſetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Errifia*, wherein the *Ptolomæan* Princes did moſt reſide; becauſe moſt convenient for receiving ſupplies of men, from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Caire*, to *Teneſe* and *Damiata*, is now called *Maremna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamalucks* made the ſeat of their Empire; becauſe more neighbouring to the *Chriſtians*, whom they ſtood in fear of, as likelieſt to invade them upon that ſide. In the whole Countrey there was reckoned in the time of *Amaſis* the 2d. no fewer than 20000 Cities; but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I ſhould much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus* it is ſaid that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius*, on a diligent ſearch, findes 300 onely.

Thoſe of moſt note in the Provnice of *Auguſtanica*, 1. *Peluſium*, the moſt eaſtern Citie of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, ſituate on the moſt Eaſtern Channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Peluſiacum*; by *Ammianus* ſaid to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himſelf in the Lake adjoyning, for the murder of his brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to thoſe who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Auguſtanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, and the Epiſcopal See of S. *Iſidore*, ſirnamed *Peluſiotes*, whoſe eloquent and pious Epiſtles are ſtill extant. Out of the ruines hereof (if not the ſame under another title) aroſe, 2. *Damiata*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the *Chriſtian* Armies; for none more than that under *John de Brenne*, the titulary King of *Jeruſalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, *An.* 1220. During which (being of 18 moneths continuance) the Famine and the Peſtilence ſo extreamly raged, that the Town in a manner was diſpeopled, before the *Beſiegers* knew any thing of their condition: till in the end two venturous Souldiers, admiring the ſilence and ſolitude of ſo great a Citie, in a *Bravado* ſcaled the walls; but found no man to make reſiſtance. The next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every houſe, and every corner of the ſtreets, whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them burial; A lamentable and ruthfull ſpectacle! 3. *Heros*, or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian*

bian Iſthmus, at the very bottom of the *Golf*; remarkable for the firſt interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joſeph*, after his coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the *Citie of the Sun*, now called *Betſames*, in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Aſenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joſeph*) was Prieſt, or Prince, as is ſaid *Gen.*41.45. Given (as *Joſephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the ſons of *Jacob*; by conſequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameſes*, or *Goſhen*: and memorable in times ſucceeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the conſent of *Ptolomy* ſirnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Prieſt, then diſpoſſeſſed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much eſteemed by the *Helliniſts*, or *Grecizing Jews*; and though *Schiſmatical* at the beſt in its firſt original, yet not *Schiſmatical* and *Idolatrous* too, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. 5. *Bubuſtis*, ſomewhat more North then *Heliopolis*, by ſome of the ancients called *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeſeth*, another Citie of that tract; now better known by the name of *Zioth*: ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the *Notitia* calleth *Caſtra Judæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganiſme*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6. *Arſinoe*, on the ſhore of the *Red-Sea*, ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, ſiſter of *Philadelphus*, and wife to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatris*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Sues*? Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*; Now almoſt abandoned; and would be utterly deſerted, were it not made the ſtation of the *Turkiſh* Gallies, that command the *Gulfe*: which being framed at *Caire* of ſuch Timber as it brought thither by ſea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and ſometimes from the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea; are again taken in peeces, carried from *Carie* unto this City on backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceived to be the ſame which in former times was called *Baal Zephon* (of which ſee *Exod.*14 9.) the laſt incamping-place of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, who from hence paſſed through the *Red Sea*, as upon dry land. 7. *Gleba Rubra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and ſometimes *Erythra Bolus* alſo, more neer the *Latine*; the redneſs of the ſoyl giving name unto it: ſituate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a misfortune that befell it than for any thing elſe; purpoſely burnt by *Amenophis* the fift, upon this occaſion? Being blinde, he was aſſured by ſome of his *Wizards*, that if he waſhed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman, which had never known any but her own husband, he ſhould be reſtored unto his ſight. After a long ſearch and many vain tryals, he met with one whoſe water cured him; whom he took to wife: and cauſing all the reſt whom he had made tryal of, to be brought together to this Town, he ſet fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the women there aſſembled; which tale, if true, is little to the credit of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of moſt note and obſervation in the Province of *Egypt*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, are 1. *Alexandria* ſituate Weſtward of the *Delta*, over againſt the Iſle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; with which on the one ſide, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander* the *Great*, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediatly after his conqueſt of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilſt *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom: and afterwards the *Metropolis* of it, when a *Roman* Dioceſe. Adorned with many ſtately buildings; of which moſt memorable the *Serapium*, (or Temple of their God *Saparis*) for ſumptuous workmanſhip, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferiour to none but the *Roman* Capitol: and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had ſtored it with 700000. Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*? A City of great trading, and infinite Riches; μέγιστον ἐμπόριον τῆς οἰκουμένης, the greateſt *Empory* of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens ſo abounded in all licentiouſneſs both of life, and ſpeech, that they ſpared not the Emperour himſelf, if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Caracalla* not ſo patient of a Contumely as ſome wiſer Princes, having felt the laſhes of their tongues, when he was amongſt them; aſſembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have choſen ſome to attend his Perſon: and ſuddenly gave command to this Souldiers, to put them all to the ſword. A ſlaughter ſo great and univerſal, that the River *Nilus* coloured with the blood of the ſlain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red Sea*. In this City, *Anno* 180. *Gantenus* read both *Divinity* and *Philoſophy* to all ſuch as would come to hear him: which as it is conceived to give the firſt hint to the inſtituting of *Univerſities*, in the reſt of *Chriſtendom*; ſo from that ſmall beginning the *Schools* of *Alexandria* grew ſo great and eminent, that *Nazianzen* calleth them παντὸς παιδεύσεως ἐργαστήριον, the ſhop, or work-houſe, as it were, of all kinds of Learning. Much ſhort of what it was even in point of *trading*, eſpecially ſince the diverſion of the Trading from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly diveſted of thoſe beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the preſent by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Chriſtian Cophtives*; more for ſome little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleaſure in the place? Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable onely for the houſe of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the moſt part in *Caire*) and a Church in which S. *Mark* their firſt Biſhop was ſaid to be buried. 2. *Canopus*, ſituate eaſt of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; ſo called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having ſuffered ſhipwrack upon this coaſt, was there interred by his Maſter? A Town ſo branded in old times, for varieties of all kinde of beaſtlineſs, and luxury; that as *Seneca* very well obſerved, he that avoided the viciouſneſs and debauchery of it, could not ſcape the infamy: the very place adminiſtring matter for ſuſpicion. 3. *Roſetta*, on the ſame branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whoſe ruines it aroſe; built by a *Slave* of one of the *Egyptian Caliphs*; unwalled and deſtitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all ſorts of commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4. *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of ſome eminent Victory, and probably of the conqueſt of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town ſtanding within 30. Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Aphrodites* and *Aphoditopolis*, ſo called from *Venus* who was here worſhipped: ſituate betwit the two middle branches of the

Nile.

Nile. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the ſame branches of the River alſo; whence that *Nomus* or Diviſion had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7. *Plinthine*, on the Sea-ſide; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Maræotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called alſo *Heptanomus*, becauſe it contained ſeven of the *Nomi* or Diviſions, into which *Egypt* was diſtributed by the *Macedonians*, the Places of moſt note were and are 1. *Memphis*, on the Weſtern bank of *Nile*, not far from the ſharp point of the *Delta*, where the River firſt beginneth to divide it ſelf; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*: by one of which who removed the Seat Royal from *Thebo* hither, it is ſaid to be built; and called thus by the name of his daughter. In compaſs, when it flouriſhed, about 20. miles; Great, populous, and adorned with a world o. An iquities; amongſt others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, beſet with *Sphynxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of ſome monſtrous Reſemblances, ſufficient to ſhew that it hath been formely. The *Pyramides* before deſcribed, ſtood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, ſaying,

Barbara Pyramidum ſileat miracula Memphis.

Let barbarous Memphis *brag no more*
Of her Pyramides, *as before.*

2. *Babylon*, called for diſtinctions ſake, *Babylon Ægyptiorum*, built on the other ſide of the River, and ſomewhat more unto the North: ſaid to be founded by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch, the firſt that made this Kingdom ſtoop to the yoke of a forreiner; and by him peopled with ſome *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans*, tranſplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruines; amongſt which many of the *Chriſtian* Temples and Monaſteries do lie there in rubbiſh; the Caſtle whereof ſerved long after for the Garriſon of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Countrey in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by ſome to be the *Babylon* mentioned by S. *Peter*, in his 1 Epiſtle *cap. ult.* which the following words, *and Mark my ſon*, (S. *Mark* being the firſt Biſhop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apoſtle of *Egypt*) may make ſomewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I diſpute not now. Out of the ruines of this City aroſe, 3. *Caira*, now, and for many Ages paſt, the chief of this Countrey: raiſed from the aſhes of old *Babylon* by the *Chaliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamalucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compaſſe not above eight miles, but full of Streets, the number of which ſaid to be 18000. every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every ſeveral ſtreet an impregnable fortreſſe. Found ſo by *Selymus* the firſt, when he conquered *Egypt*, who ſpent three dayes in forcing his way through it, with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publique, ſpecially the *Moſques*, beyond thought magnificent. Viſited every ſeventh year with a dreadful Peſtilence; yet ſtill ſo populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thouſand in a day, or 300000 within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards, both within the City, and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleaſant Lake; but made more pleaſant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual ſolace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a ſtately Caſtle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck Sultans*) ſituate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Countrey alſo. So large, that it ſeemeth a City of it ſelf, immured with high walls, divided into many partitions or ſeveral Courts, in times paſt the places of exerciſe; and entred by dores of iron Deſtroyed for the moſt part, by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to ſome rebellion; or envying the *Mamalucks* the glory of having been the Maſters of ſo brave a Manſion: that which is left, now ſerving for the habitation of the *Turkiſh Baſſa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Matared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Caire*; the ſoile whereof is ſaid to be ſo rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with ſand or gravel, ſo moderating the extreme rankneſſe of it. 5. *Arſinoe*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Nile*, and ſomewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before deſcribed; called alſo (to difference it from another of the ſame name on the ſhore of the *Red-Sea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monſter. 6. *Nilopolis*, or *Nili Civitas*, in the Iſland called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River: moſt memorable for being the Epiſcopal See of *Cheræmon*, a right godly Prelate; of whom ſee *Euſebius* in the 6 Book and 34 Chap. of his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory. 7. *Troia*, on the Eaſtern ſtream which makes that Iſland, not much obſervable but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying neer unto it; out of which were digged the ſtones which made the *Pyramides*. 8. *Cynopolis*, in a little Iſland up the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercurie*; called alſo *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antonius*, now *Antius*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his eſpecial favourite; the moſt Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionyſias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, ſituate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Diviſion called *Oaſis parva*. 12. *Cly ſma*, upon the ſhores of the *Golf*, a *Roman* Garriſon.

Cities of moſt note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greateſt of this part. 2. *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodlieſt City of this Province, ſucceeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatneſſe. 3. *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, ſix dayes journy from *Caire*, going up the water; but by what name called amongſt the Antients, I do no where find. Affirmed (erroneouſly, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now ſomewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine*. The City much

reſorted to (on the ſtrength of this Tradition onely) by many aged *Chriſtian Cophties*, who deſire to die there. 4. *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5. *Tentyra*, in a little Iſle ſo called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The inhabitans whereof were the onely men who durſt encounter the *Crocodile*, A creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it aſſaulteth thoſe which flie from it, and flieth from thoſe who do aſſault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is ſaid by the Apoſtle *James*, 4, 7. that if he be *reſiſted, he will flie from us.* Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Eſt Leo, *ſi fugias; ſi ſtas, quaſi* Muſca *recedit.*

Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or water-courſe, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other ſide of the River; in old times a moſt noted *Emporie* for *Indian* and *Arabian* wares: from whence not onely the *Chriſtians* of this Countrey, are thought to have the name of *Cophties*; but the whole Countrey to be originally called *Ægyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebe*, the reſidence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Buſiris*, in compaſs 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called alſo *Hecatompylæ*, from the number of an hundred Gates which were ſaid to be in it. So beautified with Coloſſes, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State; that it was thought μηδεμίαν ἧσσ' ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον' ὅτω κεκοσμῆσθ, to be the *Noneſuch* of the world. Decayed on the removing of the Court to *Memphis*, it became a ruine ſo long ſince, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*; as he telleth us, ſaying,

Atque vetus Thebe *centum jacet obruta portis.*

Old Thebe, *yielding to the Fates,*
Lies buried with its hundred Gates.

8. *Abydus*, now called *Abutick*, once the ſeat-royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*, renowned for the Temple of *Oſiris*; more for the *Statue* of *Memnon*, which though made of ſtone, did at the riſing of the ſun yield a vocal ſound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the banks of *Nile*, neighboured by *Crophi* and *Mophi*, two ſharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Leſſer Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we ſhall ſpeak more fully in *Æthiopia*. The City ſeated in an Iſland of the River *Nile*, on the borders of *Æthiopia ſub Ægypto*, (as the Antients called it) known unto *Ptolomie* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Eccleſiaſtical writers by the name of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heatheniſm for the Town and Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein ſtood the *Nilometrium* or ſtanding pillar, by which they did obſerve the increaſe of the River; removed ſince to the Caſtle of *Michias*, two miles from *Caire*: in times of *Chriſtianity*, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabeniſiotæ*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Aſna*) a little North of *Elephantis*, ſituate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by ſome *Aſtronomers*; which when the Sun entred into that Sign, was wholly enlightened with his beams, without any ſhadow: ſo perpendicularly did the body of it ſtand over the pit. This the laſt City of *Egypt*, towards *Æthiopia*.

And now I ſhould proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Storie of *Egypt*: but being that *Libya*, and *Cyrene*, are now accompted Members of it; the fortunes whereof they have alſo followed in all or moſt of the mutations of State and Government; I ſhall firſt take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and ſhew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2. *MARMARICA.*

2. *LIBYA* or *MARMARICA*, hath on the Eaſt, *Egypt*, properly ſo called; on the Weſt, *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libycum*, and ſometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, ſome part of *Æthiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old *Greek* word λίβυς, ſignifying *black*, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and ſwarthie; λίβυς, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, ſaith a learned Writer: or poſſibly enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word ſignifying *thirſt*, as ſuitable unto the nature of the ſoile, which is drie and *ſandie*, in which reſpect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya ſicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from theſe Coaſts towards *Greece*; and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*; and the Promontorie in *Sicilie* oppoſite unto it, that of *Lilybæum*. It was alſo called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaridæ*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolomie* in *Cyrene*: and ſometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Mamarica*, by both names united.

The Countrey for the moſt part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; inſomuch as *Alexander* paſſing through part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the ſpace of four dayes ſaw neither Man, Beaſt, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in moſt places with a thick, light ſand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning vallies into hils, and hils into vallies. Found by *Cambyſes*

byſes to his coſt, who as baſely eſteeming of the *Gods* as he did of his Subjects, ſent part of his Army into this Countrey to deſtroy the Temple above mentioned: but in the paſſage towards that prohibited place, fifty thouſand of them were overwhelmed and ſmothered in a ſtorm of ſand; the reſt with much adoe eſcaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya ſitiens*, thirſty *Libya*, (—— *per calidas* Libyæ ſitientis *arenas*) in that Verſe of *Lucan*.

The people, Neighbours unto *Egypt*; and conſequently much of the ſame condition. Said by *Herodotus*, (by whom they are called *Adyrnachidæ*) to be governed by the like Laws and Cuſtomes, as the *Egyptians* were; but to differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black, of conſtitution lean and dry, and inclining to *Melancholy*; angry on every light occaſion, very litigious, and eager proſecutors of their dues. By an old obſervation among themſelves, they abſtained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obſtinate in denying their accuſtomed *Tributes*, that he who could not ſhew the marks of his ſufferings for it, either *black*, or *blue*, was accompted no body: And ſo reſolved to conceal any thing diſgracefull to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his name. At this time, little differing in perſon, temper, or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes*, intermixt amongſt them.

Converted to the faith of *Chriſt*, with, or not long after the reſt of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whoſe juriſdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Countrey occaſionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*; who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils* had diſturbed the Church. His *Hereſie* condemned in that famous Council; but his perſon, by the Divine juſtice of God, reſerved to a more remarkable puniſhment. Being ſent for by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to make a *Recantation* of his former *Hereſies*, he firſt writ out a Copy of his own opinions, which he hid in his boſom; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had written: which words the Emperour referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in his boſom. But God would not be ſo cozened, though the Emperour was. For as he paſſed in triumph through the ſtreets of *Conſtantinople*, he drew aſide into a private houſe of eaſe, where he voided his guts into the draught; and ſent his Soul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his body.

Not more infamous for the birth of this *Miſcreant*, who denied the *Divinity* of *Chriſt*; than famous for the birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence ſirnamed *Libyca*, by whom the ſame had been fore-ſhewn. Which *Sibyls* ſeem to have taken denomination from *οἱο βόλας*, i.e. *Jovis conſiliorum conſciæ*. They were in number ten, viz. 1. *Perſica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Samia*, 6. *Helleſpontiaca*, 7. *Tiburtina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythræa*, and 10. *Cumana*; which laſt is affirmed to have written the nine books of the *Sibyls*. They were all preſented by an old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay ſo great a ſumme of money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the old woman burnt three of them, requiring as much money for the other ſix, as for all: which being denied, ſhe alſo burnt the other three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the reſt; which *Superbus*, amazed, gave, and the old Trot vaniſhed. Theſe books contained manifeſt tokens of the Kingdom of *Chriſt*, his name, his birth, and death. They were burned by the Arch-traitor *Stilico*. So that thoſe Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the moſt part onely ſuch as had been extracted out of other writings, where their authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Cauſabon* and ſome other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *piæ fraudes*; compoſed of purpoſe by the Fathers of the *Primitive* times, to win credit to the Faith of CHRIST: yet dare I not ſo far diſparage thoſe moſt godly men, as to believe they would ſupport ſo ſtrong an *edifice* with ſo weak a prop; or borrow help from falſhood, to evict a truth. Or if they durſt have been ſo impudently venturous, how eaſie had it been for their learned Adverſaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the reſt of more eminent note, to have detected the *Impoſture*; and ſilenced the Chriſtian *Advocates* with reproach and ſcorn? But of this enough here, more at large elſewhere.

Rivers of note I finde not any. 'T is well, if in a Countrey ſo full of *Sands*, there be any at all: ſome *Lakes* I meet with in my Authors, the principal of which, 1. *Laccus*, 2. *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linxamo*, 3. *Cleartus*; ſufficient to preſerve their few Cattel from the taint of thirſt. The Mountains of moſt note, thoſe called *Anogombri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this laſt extended Weſt and Eaſt in a ſtrait line, from the 51 degree of *Longitude*, to the 53. 3. *Aliphus*, 4. *Ogdomus*, 5. *Tmodes*, 6. *Alpis*, not much obſervable, but that they ſerve for *Land-marks* to diſcover the Countrey.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of moſt eſteem in former times, 1. *Batrachus*, by ſome called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town 2. *Phthia*, and 3. *Aneſiſphyra*, two Port-Towns alſo. 4. *Tetrapyrgia*, ſo called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolomy*. 5. *Meſuchis*, more within the land. 6. *Mazacilà*, another midland Town. 7. *Chereola*, mentioned among the chief Cities of this tract, by *Ammianus*. 8. *Parætonium*, now *Porto-raſſa*, which with *Peluſium* are by *Florus* called the two *Hornes* of *Egypt*; which whoſoever held faſt, would be ſure to maſter it. By ſome old writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, ſeated very near it. So anciently honoured with an *Oracle*, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is ſaid to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Perſeus*, and *Hercules*, touching their adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the *Oracle* by that time had learnt to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the ſon of that God whom he came to worſhip. The Temple ſeated in the middle of a vaſt ſandy *Deſart*, environed with a pleaſant and delightfull *Grove*, about ſix miles, or more in circuit; watered with wholeſome ſprings, refreſhed with a temperate air, and ſhaded with fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual ſpring. Fortified with a triple wall, within the firſt whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings; within the ſecond a *Seraglio* for his wo-

men, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; The *Oracle* fitly placed (ſo the *Prieſts* would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; Before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the *Oblations* were firſt waſhed, then offered. A place of great repute in *ſacred* and *civil* eſtimate; all the adjoyning Countrey taking hence the name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that name reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9. *Antiphra*, on the Eaſt border of it, towards *Alexandria*. 10. *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolomais*, by the name of one of the *Ptolomies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of ſuch accompt, that from hence the whole Countrey had the name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcæi*, (—— *Lateque furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Libyarchæ* and *Baſſachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniatæ*, and *Proſaditæ*, in the midland parts; the *Libyægyptii*, bordering neareſt unto *Egypt*, with the people whereof ſo intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one name and nation. Others there were of leſſe, or as little note, but all deſcended properly of *Naphtuhim*, the ſon of *Miſraim*; from whom the name of *Neptune*, orginally a *Libyan* Deity, ſeems to be derived: yet ſo, that *Lehabin*, his brother muſt come in for a ſhare; the founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the ſame original with thoſe of *Egypt*, they followed the ſame fortunes alſo, till the times of the *Ptolomies*; by whom ſometimes given for portion, with the title of a Kingdom, to their younger Children. By the laſt will and teſtament of *Apion*, the laſt King hereof, a Baſtard-ſon of *Ptolomy* ſirnamed *Euergetes*, the ſeventh King of that houſe; bequeathed unto the Senate and people of *Rome*. By whom firſt ſuffered to live under them, as a *Free-Eſtate*, till the conqueſt of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and ſo accordingly deſcribed by *Ptolomy*: where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniaca*, occurre amongſt the *Nomi*, or *Diviſions* of it. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of that *Dioceſe*, and governed by a *Lord Preſident*, under the *Præfectus Auguſtalis*, or Supream Commander for the Emperours.

3. *CYRENE.*

CYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Marmarica*; on the Weſt, with *Africa Propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and ſome part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the *Deſarts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene* the chief Citie of it, from whence ſometimes alſo called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and ſome other *Roman* Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, *viz.* 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Ptolomais*, 3. *Arſinoe*, 4. *Darnis*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the ſame reaſon *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of theſe *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the preſent, it paſſeth with that laſt deſcribed by the name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the *Greater Syrtis*, unto *Egypt*, is no leſſe then 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Countrey in the South parts deſolate and barren, ſtored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the people living up and down in ſcattered houſes, and at ſuch a diſtance, as if it were in ſo many Iſlands. Deſtitute not of Springs and Rivers onely, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping: if any fell, it was dried up preſently by the ſands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitfull, and well inhabited.

The people in old times were ſaid to have been utterly ignorant of buying and ſelling, of fraud and ſtealing, not knowing, or not caring for the uſe of money; content with little, not ſuperfluous in their Cloaths, or buildings, their houſes for the moſt part (except onely in their greater Cities) made of Oſier-twigs. Much altered in the firſt part of their *character*, ſince the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieviſh Nation, given wholly to robbery and ſpoil. So lazie, that they will not manure, or till their Land, but provide themſelves with Corn from *Sicily*; laying their Children to *pawn* for it, till by their Thieving they can raiſe a ſufficient ſumme to diſcharge the debt.

One onely River I finde in it, but of fame enough to ſerve for many; By *Ptolomy* called *Luthon*, by *Pliny Lethon*, by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the earth not far from its firſt original, it riſeth up again about *Berenice*; fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulneſſe* in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occaſion of the fancie. Some *Lakes* I finde alſo in it, whereof one occaſioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the land (where indeed more neceſſary) near *Paliurus*. With Mountains better ſtored, (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1. Thoſe called *Herculis Arena*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Countrey Eaſt and Weſt; 2. *Bucolicus*, on the South of thoſe; and 3. *Volpos*, a long ridge of hills; bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the Eaſt parts, near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the Weſt of that; once of ſuch power, that it contended with *Carthage* for ſome prehemmencies: Then the chief Lady of this tract, which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Eratoſthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviours* Croſſe. 3. *Ptolomais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arſinoe*, built, or repaired by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*; the Epiſcopal Citie of *Syneſius*, a learned and religious Biſhop of the primitive times, as appears by his Epiſtles extant. 4. *Arſinoe*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Lathon*; ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, the ſiſter of *Philadelphus*, and wife of *Magas* once King of this Countrey. 5. *Berenice*, on the Weſtern bank of the ſaid River; ſo called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the ſame name) the daughter of *Magas*: the furtheſt Town of all this Countrey,

bor-

bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the *greater Syrtis*. This laſt a Quick-ſand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compaſſe 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Paliurus*, more within the land, but on the borders of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungifari*, by *Ptolomy* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules*, near the *greater Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Heſperides* of their golden Apples. Thoſe *Eſperides* ſaid to be *Aegle*, *Arethuſa*, and *Heſperethuſa*, the three daughters of *Atlas*: their Orchard placed by *Ptolomy* betwixt this Tower and *Paliurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantick* Iſlands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitania*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and poſſibly in all alike. 9. *Zemythus*. 10. *Acabis*, in the midlands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Feſſan*, of greateſt name now, though ſcarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Aſbeta* on the Eaſt, the *Barcita* near the *Greater Syrtis*, the *Macatuta* and *Laganici*, near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably deſcended from *Naphtuhim* the ſon of *Mizraim*; of whom there ſtill remain ſome foot-ſteps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus* by ſome miſtakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Grecians* ſaid to be the ſon of *Cyrene*, and the brother of *Ariſtæus*: who being ſent out to ſeek their fortunes, *Ariſtæus* fell into the Iſle named *Caos*; and *Aptuchus*, or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them firſt planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Countrey, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*, ſeems to come from *Naphtuhim*; moſt highly worſhipped by this people, becauſe he firſt taught them τὴν τῶν ἁρμάτων ἐλαύνειν, the Art of training horſes to the Coach, or Chariot; in which the *Cyrenians* after grew ſo expert, that they could drive their *Chariots* in a round, or circle, and alwayes keep their Chariot-wheels in the ſelf-ſame tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan* landing in this Countrey, had built the Citie of *Cyrene*; and found it in ſo good a courſe of life and Diſcipline, that in ſhort time it came to have dominion over the moſt part of this Countrey, and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apryes* King of *Egypt*, they ſued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their aſſiſtance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themſelves, they craved aid of *Ptolomy* the firſt of that race; by whom they were finally ſubdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a ſon of his laſt wife by a former husband, whom he had married to *Arſinoe* one of his daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice* the daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the ſon of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*. Aliened from which Crown again, for the preferment of ſome of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolomies*, the laſt King hereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by whom united in one Government with the Iſle of *Crete*: but made a Province of it ſelf by the following Emperours: never ſince ſeparated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we haſten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the queſtion in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not eaſily decided. Whether it were ſo ancient, as the *Egyptians* ſay, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and ſtory of 13000 years; and a ſucceſſion of 330 Kings in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, who was Contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if underſtood of *Solarie* years, meaſured by the courſe of the Sun, muſt not be allowed of; becauſe it maketh them many thouſand years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunarie*, which is moſt agreeable unto the accompt of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by moneths: it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and ſo fall anſwerably to the times following after the Floud. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and thoſe of 24 or 25 ſeveral *Dynaſties*; the matter is not ſo ſoon made up. For either thoſe Kings, muſt not be all Kings, or Supream Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their ſeveral *Regents*, or *Vicegerents*, armed with Regal power; thoſe *Dynaſties* not the ſucceſſions of ſo many Regal families, but of their *Subſtitutes* and Lieutenants, many of which might live ſucceſſively under one *Supream*: or elſe we muſt needs look on *Egypt*, as diſtracted in thoſe times, into ſeveral Kingdoms, amongſt the Princes of thoſe *Dynaſties* before remembred; or finally, we muſt look for ſome of thoſe Kings and Princes before the Floud. By either of theſe wayes, the buſineſſe may be well agreed. For if that moſt of them were but the names of ſeveral *Regents*, (as probable enough it is) there might be many ſuch in the reign of one King; according to the Kings fancie, the merit of particular perſons, or the neceſſities of State: Changes of great Officers, eſpecially if grown too great, are not new nor ſtrange. If they were all Kings, or Supream Rulers, (as is alſo probable) we finde not any thing of moment to perſwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their ſeveral parts (as in other Countreys in thoſe times) till the greater had devoured the leſſe. Or if they were the names of ſuch Sovereign Princes, as had the ſole command of *Egypt* before the Floud, (as ſome think they were) they might amount in all to ſo great a number, and ſo many *Dynaſties*; the iniquity of thoſe times, the ambition of great perſons, and conſequently the ſhort lives of the Kings being duely pondered. That *Egypt* and moſt part of the world was peopled before the Floud, hath been already proved in our *General Preface*: If peopled, then no queſtion under ſome form of Government: the names of which Governours (call them Kings, or Rulers, or what elſe we pleaſe) might be preſerved in *Egypt* on pillars of braſſe or ſtone; or otherwiſe tranſmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this Countrey was firſt planted after the *Confuſion* of *Babel*. But that old ſtock of Kings and people being deſtroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* ſucceeded next in their deſolate dwellings: yet ſo, that the poſterity of *Chus* and *Lehabim*, two others of the ſons of *Cham*, had their ſhares therein. From the firſt of which deſcended the Inhabitants of thoſe parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, or Golf of *Arabia*: in which reſpect, not onely one of the *Nomi*, or diviſions bordering on the *Iſthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*: but the people dwelling on thoſe ſhores; were called *Arabes*; di-

vided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-Ægyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together: inhabiting in *Marœotica* and the Western parts. But though these people were derived from several Ancestors, they made one Nation in the total: Subject to *Mizraim* as their chief, and after his decease, unto his Successors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may observe, that in *Cham*, our greatest Antiquaries finde the name of *Jupiter Hammon*; *Mizraim* they guesse to be *Osiris* the great God of *Egypt*. To him succeeded *Typhon*, not by right of bloud, but by usurpation. Who dispossessed by *Lehabim*, the brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Egyptius*) the Kingdom was restored to *Orus*, the son of *Osiris*. During the time of these few Princes, hapned all those things which are recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the first going down of *Abraham*, in the time of *Osiris*, to the advancement of *Joseph*, in the Reign of *Orus*: in which there passed the 15. 16. and 17. *Dynasties* of Regal Vice-Royes; Lieutenants onely, as I take it, to those mighty Princes. The Kings themselves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar names: as afterwards their Successors here had the name of *Ptolomy*, and the *Roman* Emperours, that of *Cæsar*. Not troubling our selves therefore with their many *Dynasties*, we will lay down the Succession of their Kings, as well as we can; the disagreement of Historians and Chronologers, touching this Succession, being irreconcileable.

The PHARAOHS, or Kings of EGYPT, of EGYPTIAN Race.

A. M.	
	1 *Mizriam*, the son of *Cham*, by the *Grecians* called *Osiris*; in whose time *Abraham* went into *Egypt*,
	2 *Typhon*, an Usurper.
	3 *Orus*, the son of *Osiris*, restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabim*; the Advancer of *Ioseph*.
2207.	4 *Amasis*, *Themosis*, or *Amos*, in whose time *Iacob* went down into *Egypt*. 25.
2233.	5 *Chebron*. 12.
2245.	6 *Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*. 21.
2266.	7 *Amersis*, the sister of *Amenophthis*, 22.
2288.	8 *Mephres*.
2300.	9 *Mesipharmuthesis*. 25.
2325.	10 *Thamosis*, or *Thuthmosis*, 10.
2335.	11 *Amenophthis* II. supposed to be *Memnon*, and the *Vocal Statue*, 31.
2366.	12 *Orus* II. the *Busiris* of the *Grecians*, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the male-children of *Israel* to be slain, 37.
2403.	13 *Acencheres*, by some called *Thermutis*, the daughter of *Amenophthis* the second, and afterwards the wife of *Orus*; who preserved *Moses*, and survivid her Husband. 13.
2416.	14 *Rathosis* the son of *Orus*, 6.
2422.	15 *Acencheres*, 12.
2449.	16 *Cenchres*, by some called *Arenasis*, *Bocchoris*, by others; drowned in the *Red-Sea* with his horse & chariots, 16.
2453.	17 *Acherres*, 8.
2462.	18 *Cherres*, 10.
1472.	19 *Armais*, by the *Grecians* called *Danaus*, whose 50. daughters being married to the 50. sons of his brother *Egyptus*, murdered their husbands: for which cause *Danaus* being forced out of *Egypt*, passed into *Greece*; where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Grecians*, the name of *Danai*.
1575.	20 *Rameses*, surnamed *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.
1550.	21 *Amenophthis*, III.
2590.	22 *Sethos*, or *Sesothis*; 55.
2645.	23 *Rhapsaces*, or *Ranses*, 66.
2711.	24 *Amenophthis*, IV. 40.
2751.	25 *Rameses*, II. 26.
2777.	26 *Thuoris* 7. After whose death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Diospolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the space of 177 years. Their names we finde not, but that one of the latest of them, whose daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
2961.	39 *Smendes*, the *Sisac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the son of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Sesostris* of *Herodotus* and others of the ancient Writers. Of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puissance, he had brought under subjection all his neighbouring Princes: whom he compelled in turns to draw his *Chariot*. It hapned that one of these unfortunate Princes cast his eye many times on the Coach wheels: and being by *Sesostris* demanded the cause of his so doing, he replyed: that the falling of that spoke lowest, which but just before was in the height of the wheel, put him in minde of the instability of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the parable, would never after be so drawn in his *Chariot*. He also was the first that

A. M.

that encountred the *Scythians* in battel; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army against them. The *Scythians* much marvelled that a King of so great Revenues would wage War against a Nation so poor: with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquished a perpetual infamy and disgrace. For their parts they resolved to meet him; as an Enemy, whose overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were discomfited, and pursued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythians* could not enter the Countrey, because of the Fens, with whose passage they were unacquainted; and so they returned.

2987. 40 *Pseusenes*, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*; founder of the vast *Pyramis* before described, 41.

3028. 41 *Nepher-Cherres*. 4.

3032. 42 *Amnoiphtis*, V.

3041. 43 *Opsochon*, the *Asychis* of *Herodotus*.

3047. 44 *Psamuchos*, 9.

3056. 45 *Pluſennes*, II. 14.

3070. 46 *Seſonchis*, 21.

3091. 47 *Usorthon*, 15.

3106. 48 *Takellotis*, 13.

3119. 49 *Patubastis*, 40.

3159. 50 *Osorchon*, the second *Hercules Ægyptius*, as some will have it, 8.

3167. 51 *Psamnis*, 15.

3185. 52 *Bochoris*, called *So*, 2 *King*. 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Ethiopia*. 44.

3229. 53 *Sabacon* King of *Ethiopia*, 8.

3238. 54 *Sevacus* son of *Sabacon*, 14.

3252. 55 *Tarachon*, falsly supposed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures, 18.

3270. 56 *Stephinates*, 7.

3277. 57 *Niclupses*, 6.

3288. 58 *Psamniticus*, who first made the *Grecians* acquainted with *Egypt*. 54

3335. 59 *Necho*, who slew *Josiah* at the battel of *Megiddo*, 25.

3360. 60 *Psamnis* II. 6.

3366. 61 *Aprios*, called *Hophra*, Jer. 44. subdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis*, 25.

3391. 62 *Amasis* II. 44.

3435. 63 *Psamnites*, or *Psamniticus* II. a King of six moneths onely; vanquished by *Cambyses*, the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius*, the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*: in the 11. year of whose reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of it self, as in former times.

3555. 64 *Amyrtæus*, the first King after the Revolt, 6.

A. M.

3561. 65 *Nepherites*, 6.

3567. 66 *Achoris*, 12.

3579. 67 *Psamnites* III. 1.

3580. 68 *Nepherites* II. a King of two moneths onely.

69 *Nectanebos*, 18.

3598. 70 *Teos*, 2.

3600. 71 *Nectanebos* II. the last King of the natural Egyptian race, that ever governed *Egypt*, by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus* the eighth Emperour of Persia. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, & without blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him, during his life, the yearly value of 6000 talents. After his death, this Kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolomeus* the son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolomies*.

A. M. The second *Dynastie*, or the *Ptolemean* Kings of *Egypt*.

3641. 1 *Ptolomy*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, reputed the son of *Lagus*; but supposed to be the son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, and half-brother to *Alexander*, 40.

3681. 2 *Ptol.* *Philadelphus*, who filled the *Library* of *Alexandria* with 700000 *Volumes*, and caused the 72 *Interpreters* to translate the Bible.

3717. 3 *Ptol.* *Euergetes*, the son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus*, and probably had subdued that Kingdom, if not called back by domestick dissentions. 26.

3743. 4 *Ptol.* *Philopater*, a cruel, voluptuous, and incestuous Prince; cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his father for relief, in the time of his exile. 17.

3760. 5 *Ptol.* *Epiphanes*, at the age of five years succeeded his father; protected by the *Romanes* against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom, 28.

3784. 6 *Ptol.* *Philometor*, the son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the daughter of the *great* *Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* also: caused himself to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquished it, 35.

3829. 7 *Ptol.* *Euergetes* II. for his deformity called *Physcon*, the brother of *Ptol.* *Philometor*: A wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his reign in a causeless war against *Cleopatra*, his wife and sister, 29.

3858. 8 *Ptol.* *Lathurus* reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his mother, by whom dispossessed of his estate for the

A.M.

the ſpace of ten years; after her death was ſole Lord of *Egypt*. His brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Aſſociate, in the time of his deprivation, and paſſing in the Accompt of the Kings of *Egypt*.

3892. 9 *Ptol. Auletes*, the ſon of *Lathurus*, ſirnamed alſo *Dionyſius*, whoſe brother being ſetled by him in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, was moſt unjuſtly ſtripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: and he himſelf outed of *Egypt* by his own ſubjects, but reſtored by the aid & love of *Pompey*.

3922. 10 *Ptol. Dionyſius*, called alſo *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his wife and ſiſter, ſucceeded *Auletes* in the throne, which they held together by the ſpace of three years. In the laſt of which,

A.M.

Pompey was barbarouſly ſlain on the ſhores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Achilles* the young Kings Governour; and the young King himſelf unfortunately ſlain in the *Alexandrian* tumult againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

3925. 11 *Cleopatra*, the wife and ſiſter of *Dionyſius*, reſtored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Cæſar*; of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which ſhe governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own ſole right, with great pomp and ſplendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc. Antony*, ſhe killed her ſelf not long after his fatal overthrow at the battel of *Actium*; that ſhe might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

Theſe *Ptolomean* Princes of *Egypt*, were for the moſt part in wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquiſhed; neither Prince having cauſe to boaſt of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whoſe life and love with *Marcus Antonius* I will not now relate; this Countrey fell to the ſhare of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*: no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; it being a maxim of State, not to ſuffer men of great houſes to come into that Countrey, whoſe revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*. For beſides the natural ſituation of the place, very defenſible; and beſides the abundance of money, with which it was ſtored; this Countrey alone furniſhed the Citie of *Rome* with Corn, for four Moneths yearly. Whence *Veſpaſian* being choſen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vitellius*, haſtened hither; to this end onely, that detaining the ordinary proviſion of victuals, he might by famine compel the Citie of *Rome* to ſtand at his devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externa opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Hiſtorian hath obſerved. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperours ſole *Peculiar*: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioceſe* of it ſelf, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the diviſion of the Empire allotted to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, whoſe Government being thought to be inſupportable by this wanton people, they called in the *Saracens*: by whom the *Greek* Garriſons were caſt out, and the Countrey made ſubject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards, weary of them alſo, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards we ſhall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one reſiding at *Caire* in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens*, or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk* did ſubmit themſelves: the other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the reſt, at leaſt as to the ſupream title, and ſome chief Prerogatives; though the main power was *cantonned* and diſpoſed of among their Sultans.

The third Dynaſtie, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A. *Ch.*	A. *H.*	
870.	247.	1 *Achmades*, or *Achmat*. 10.
880.	257.	2 *Tolen*. 3.
883.	260.	3 *Hamaria*. 29.
903.	280.	4 *Aharun*, ſlain by *Muſtaphi*, the Caliph of *Babylon*.
940.	317.	5 *Achid Muhamid*, the ſon of *Tangi*. 3.
943.	320.	6 *Abigud*, the ſon of *Achid*. 27.
970.	347.	7 *Meaz Ledin, Illahi*, of the race of *Phatime* and *Hali*. 5.
975.	352.	8 *Aziz*, the ſon of *Meaz*. 21.
996.	373.	9 *Elhachain*. 23.
1019.	396.	10 *Etaber Leazizdin Illahi*. 16.
1035.	412.	11 *Muſteratzer Billahi*. 60.
1096.	472.	12 *Muſteale*. 5.
1100.	477.	13 *Elamir Bahacan Illahi*. 35.
1135.	512.	14 *Elhapit Ladin Illahi*.
		15 *Etzahar*.
		16 *Elphaiz*.
		17 *Etzar Ledin Illahi*, the ſon of *Elphaiz*, the laſt Caliph, or King of *Egypt*, of the race of *Phatime*: the *Turks* ſucceeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know, that *Elphaiz* the father of *Etzar*, being

being over-power'd by *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Damaſcus*; which he received under the conduct of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and ſtout Commander: who taking his advantages, not onely cleared the Countrey of *Almericus*, but got the whole kingdom to himſelf; daſhing out the brains of *Elphaiz* with his horſemans-mace. And though *Etzar*, his ſon aſſumed for a while the title of *Caliph*: yet the deſtruction of himſelf, and the whole *Phatimean* family, rooted out by *Sarracon*, ſoon put an end to that claim; and left the kingdom in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Sultans.

The fourth DYNASTIE, or the Race of the TURKISH Kings or CALIPHS of EGYPT.

1163. 1 *Aſereddin*, firnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracon* by the Chriſtian writers; the firſt of the *Turks* which reigned in *Egypt*: of the Noble family of *Aiub*.

1186. 2 *Zeli-heddin*, called *Saladine* by the Chriſtian writers, the ſon (or as ſome ſay, the nephew) of *Sarracon* or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his eſtate by the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*, under whoſe juriſdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schiſmaticks. He obtained alſo the kingdom of *Damaſcus*, conquered *Meſopotamia*. and *Paleſtine*: and in the year 1190 regained the City of *Hieruſalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to ſucceeding Ages, nor to glorifie him in the kingdom of Heaven; but the ſaving knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.

1199. 3 *Elaziz*, the ſecond ſon of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his brother *Eladel* for the kingdom of *Damaſcus*.

4 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Meledine*, ſucceeded upon this exchange, in the kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Chriſtians*, without the loſſe of a man, at the ſiege of *Caire*, by letting looſe the Sluces of *Nilus*; which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleaſure.

1210. 5 *Elchamul*.

1237. 6 *Melech Eſſalach*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Melechſala*, the ſon of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9th. of *France*: & going with that King towards *Damiata*, was ſlain by the ſouldiers of his guard, called *Mamalucks*.

1242. 7 *Elmutan*, the ſon of *Melech Eſſalach*, ſucceeded, for a time, in his Fathers throne. But the *Mamalucks* being reſolved to obtain the kingdom for themſelves, inforced him to flie to a Tower of Wood, which they ſet on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran cloſe by it) was there drowned: & the *Mamalucks* ſetled in the kingdom, *An.* 1245.

Theſe *Mamalucks* were the ofspring of a People on the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circaſſians*: who *Melechſala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the ſecond hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Maſters of thoſe Countries, to ſupply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate people of *Egypt*; and out of them ſelected a choiſe Band of men, for the guard of his perſon. Knowing their ſtrength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherouſly ſlew *Melechſala* their Lord and Maſter; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turco-man* by nation, and therefore by moſt Chriſtian writers called *Turquimenetus*, (one of their own number) a man of great ſpirit and valour, to ſucceed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*, and not permitting their own ſons to enjoy the name and priviledge of *Mamalucks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circaſſian* ſlaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be inſtructed in the *Egyptian* language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for imployment, they were taught the Diſcipline of War, and by degrees advanced unto the higheſt Offices of Power and truſt; as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkiſh* Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were Precedented by thoſe of *Egypt*; ſo it is poſſible enough that the *Janizaries* may take as great a Change in the *Turkiſh* Empire, as the *Mamalucks* did in the *Egyptians*. So unſafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the ſole guard of his perſon, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of ſuch; whom not the ſenſe of natural duty, but the hopes of profit or preferment, may make uſeful to him. For thus we finde, that *Conſtantius* a King of the *Britans*, was murdered by his Guard of *Prieſts*: moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of thoſe, whom they intruſted, either with the guard of their perſons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Eſtates of *Italy*, have been brought into the extremeſt dangers, by truſting too much to the honeſty of mercenarie Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for inſtance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picinino*, who with his Followers firſt took Pay of *Ferdinand* the firſt of *Naples*; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John* Duke of *Calabria*, the ſon of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*; whom alſo he forſook in his greateſt need. The like we finde of *Franciſco Sforza*, firſt entertained by the Duke of *Millain*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the Pay of the State of *Millain*, made uſe of their own Army to ſubdue that City.

Nor can I ſpeak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kinde with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza's* Dukes of *Milan*; and with whom not, (to ſay the truth) that ever truſted, or employed them.

Now as it is unſafe for a Prince to commit the cuſtody of his perſon, or the defence of his Eſtates to the faith of Forreiners; ſo is it dangerous to him to call in ſuch aids, and to commit his fortunes either wholly, or principally, unto their fidelity. A moderate ſupply of men, money, or munition, from a confederate King, is, I confeſſe, in moſt caſes convenient, in ſome neceſſary: as well to ſave their Natives from the ſword; as to trie a friend, and intereſt an Allie in the ſame cauſe. But to invite ſo great a number of Succours, as from Helpers may become *Maſters*, and oppreſſe the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have ſuffered ſhip-wrack, and which a good *Pilot* of the State ſhould with all care avoid. For as in the ſickneſſe of the body *natural*, it is hurtfull to a mans health and life, to take more *phyſick*, than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digeſt, or put out again: ſo in the body *politick*, it is a perilous matter to receive more ſuccours, than what (after they have done the deed they were ſent for) we may either with conveniency reward and ſettle with us, or at liberty expell Of all Surfeits, this of Forraign ſupplies is moſt uncureable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing elſe true, is in this caſe, oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily perſwaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to inferre ſome, pleaſing to the Reader, and to illuſtrate the point, not unneceſſary. To begin with former times, *Philip* of *Macedon*, called into *Greece* to aſſiſt the *Thebans* againſt the *Phocians*; brought all that Countrey, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans* by aiding the *Sicilians* againſt the *Carthaginians*, poſſeſſed themſelves of that flouriſhing Iſland; by aſſiſting the *Hedui* againſt the *Sequani*, maſtered *Gallia*; by ſuccouring *Androgeus* againſt *Caſſibelan*, ſeiſed on *Britain*; by ſiding with the *Ætolians* againſt *Perſeus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the ſame courſe what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thruſt out of all; the *Iriſh* called in the *Engliſh*, by whom they were in proceſſe of time totally ſubdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mogul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. Theſe forrein ſupplies are invited, or let into a Countrey, commonly in four caſes. Firſt, when ſome one man upon diſcontent, or deſire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Countrey: upon which motives, *Narſes* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Iulian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*: the one to be revenged on the Empreſſe *Sophia*, who had deſpitefully reviled him; the other to revenge himſelf on King *Rodorick*, who had raviſhed his daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cauſe againſt a ſtronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy* being oppreſſed by the faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the fifth to paſſe into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cauſe againſt *Henry* the 4th. Thirdly, when an ambitious Prince makes uſe of a forrein power, to uſurp upon the rights of another man. And for that cauſe *Ludowick Sforze* perſwaded *Charles* the 8th. to undertake the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himſelf the Dukedom of *Millain*. Fourthly, when a King overburthened by a forrein, or domeſtick force, which he is not able to reſiſt, requires the help of a forrein friend: in which caſe, *Plus à medico quam à morbo mali*, the *phyſick* proves many times worſe than the *diſeaſe*. For thus the Kings of *Naples* of the houſe of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the Couſin-German once removed of the King then being; And the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withſtand the forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: by which means, both thoſe Kingdoms were made a prey to their forrein friends, and by avoiding *Scylla* fled into *Charybdis*. Nay many times it ſo happeneth, that theſe forrein ſuccours joyn in deſign with thoſe, againſt whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And ſo we finde that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking in of the *Franks*, or *French*; joyned with them in a common league againſt the *Romans*, whom they diſpoſſeſſed at laſt of all that Countrey. Onely amongſt ſo many examples to this purpoſe, we finde the *Low-Countrey-men* to have proſpered by theſe forrein aids; who by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, ranſomed themſelves from that yoke of bondage, which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the integrity and honeſty of the *Engliſh* Nation; although it be as true withall, that the *Engliſh* never had ſuch an Army there, as to be able to ſubdue them. But give me ſuch another inſtance, I will quit the cauſe: for the ſame *Low-Countrey-men* found it otherwiſe with the Duke of *Anjou*, brother to *Henry* the 3d. of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governour-General; permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his authority, or their own monies were able to raiſe: who was no ſooner ſetled in that command, but he made it his chief buſineſſe to ſeize upon their ſtrongeſt Holds, and to be a more abſolute Prince amongſt them, than ever the *Spaniards*, or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that theſe forrein Succours are the laſt to be tried, and the leaſt to be truſted, of any remedies in State. But it's now more than time to return to the *Mamalucks*; and in them to

The fift DYNASTIE of the EGYPTIAN King, or the Race of the MAMALUCKS.

A. Ch.

1255. 1 *Turquimenenis*, who being promoted to the kingdom, releaſed King *Lewis*, whom *Melechſala* his predeceſſor had taken priſoner; but performed not half of the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by ſome called *Elmutahaz*) taking advantage of the miſeries of the *Turks*, then diſtreſſed by the *Tartars*; ſeiſed on the greateſt part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*.

1260. 3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun-conqueſts of *Clothes*, and took from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much ſpoil.

4 *Melechſait*, or *Melechſares*, reſtored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the ſon of *Henry* the 3. of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1289. 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the diſſenting *Chriſtians*, the ſtrong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more ſerviceable to the affairs of the *Chriſtians*.

1291. 6 *Araphus*, or *Euſtrephus*, by birth a *German*, releaſed *Henry* Duke of *Mecklebourg*, after he had been priſoner 26 years. He rooted the *Chriſtians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolomais* the laſt Town they there held; and ſo razed it; that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechneſar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was diſcomfited by *Caſſanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loſs of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Caſſanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*; for which ſervice he was afterward made Sultan of *Egypt*.

8 *Melechadel*, whom I ſuppoſe to be that Sultan that governed *Egypt*, when *Tamberlane* with unreſiſtable violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any conſtant and

A. Ch.

continued *ſeries* (which I dare relie on) of his ſucceſſors in this kingdom, till I come to

9 *Melecaella*, or *Melechnaſer*, who in the year 1423. ſubdued the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.

1465. 10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a profeſſed enemy of *Bajazet* 2d. the 8th. King of the *Ottomans*.

1498. 11 *Mahomet* the ſon of *Cathbeyus*, depoſed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being againſt their uſual cuſtome, that the ſon ſhould ſucceed his father, in the name and priviledges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499. 12 *Campſon Chiarſeſius*, ſucceeded on the depoſing of *Mahomet*.

13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campſon*, and not long after was depoſed by

1500. 14 *Tonombeius*; outed of his Eſtate by the joynt-conſent of the *Mamalucks*, ſo to make way for *Campſon Gaurus*.

1501. 15 *Campſon* II. ſirnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the diſordered and factious eſtate both of Court and Countrey; and for the ſpace of 16 years governed very proſperouſly. But ſiding at the laſt with *Hyſmael* the *Perſian Sophie*, againſt *Selimus* the firſt of that name, the 3d. Emperor and ninth King of the *Ottoman* family; he drew his Kingdom into a war, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himſelfe ſlain in battel.

1517. 16 *Tonombeſius* II. ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus* both in his Kingdom and misfortunes: vanquiſhed in his firſt year by the ſaid *Selimus* the firſt, *An.* 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was uſed to ſay, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his* Gomoglans, *or young Souldiers.* So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, as it ſtill continueth.

What the *Revennes* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they muſt be, beyond the proportion of belief, or elſe they could never have been Maſters of ſufficient Treaſure, to finiſh thoſe vaſt Structures which they undertook. Twelve thouſand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted Annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolomies*; which of our money makes the ſumme of Two *Millions* and 347750 pounds. Which ſumme, *Auguſtus Cæſar* (appropriating this Province to himſelf)

ſelf) is ſaid to have doubled: But whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the reſt in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly ſhipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, every Meaſure weighing Twenty pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions and an hundred forty thouſand of our *Engliſh* Buſhels; ſold by him, or diſtributed *gratis* amongſt the Poor, as he ſaw occaſion. So that there might be very well ſome abatement in Money, conſidering that the Corn amounted to ſo great a ſumme. Nor were they much leſſe, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Countrey. For *Campſon Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no leſſe than Ten millions of *Ducats*, at one clap, amongſt his Souldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical government, and partly through the diſcontinuance of the uſual Traffick through the *Red-Sea*, receive no more than Three *Millions*: one of which is hoorded in his own Coffers; the ſecond is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Baſhaw*, for ſupport of his charge; the third is diſtributed among his Garriſon-ſouldiers, and ſuch of them as by land guard his own Million to *Conſtantinople*; for by ſea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few ſhips Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And ſo much for *EGYPT*.

OF

OF
BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenaica*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Libya Inferior*, or the Desarts of *Libya*.

It containeth in it the whole *Diocese* of *Africk*, and part of the *Diocese* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninsula*; and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Countrey, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called *BABARY*: either from *Barbar*, signifying in their language an uncertain murmur, such as the speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desart*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*. and after *Barbary*.

It is situate under the third and fourth *Climates*: so that the longest Summers day in the parts most South, amounteth to thirteen houres three quarters, increased in the most Northern parts to fourteen houres and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the *greater Syrtis*, for the space of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest, 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where broadest, almost three hundred.

The Countrey in such parts as lie neerest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of hils, covered with woods, and stored with plenty of Wild-beast; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits; but unfit for Wheat, insomuch that most of the Inhabitants live of *Barley*-bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champain countrey, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with Cherries, Figs, Peares, Plummes: Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oile, Honey, Sugar; some Mines of Gold; and that for purity and fineness no where to be bettered. Here are also besides large Herds of Cattel, some Elephants; Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like savage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horses good store, of excellent both strength and beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it falleth extremely short of that infinite fertility, which is ascribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For besides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on one stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might see a great Date-tree overshadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pom-granat, under that a Vine, and under all, Pease, Wheat, and Herbs; all growing and flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that some fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a peece of ground of four cubits square, was usually rented out at so many *Denarii*: by which accompt, (as the learned *Budæus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground must be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman Sestertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinitie and unparallel'd increase of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a duskish colour, but inclining to *blackness*: much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous families formerly they were overspred; but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in Horsmanship, but impatient of labour; covetous of honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithful; studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the *Liberal* Sciences, especially *Philosophie* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers: They are also said to be stately of gate, exceedingly distrustful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their women beyond all compare. The women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackness, of delicate soft skins; and in their habit and apparel beyond measure sumptuous: so dress, to make themselves more amiable in the eyes of their husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldome to see any body but those of their own houses.

The Language spoken at the present in most of the *Maritime* Towns, except those of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Countrey-villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the antient languages of the Countrey: the *Punick*, spoken in all places where antiently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (what soever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder; which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppresse the old natural tongues: and in the *Colonies* themselves so much degenerated in short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptie*, a *Roman* Colonie, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously; that the Emperour was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of S. *Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were preached in *Latine*, because preached in *Hippo* his Episcopal See, which was then a Colonie of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth that he was sometimes fain to use such words as were not *Latine*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The *Christian* faith was first planted, in that part hereof, which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Epænetus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by S. *Simon* the Apostle, firnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphrastes* addeth, that S. *Simon Peter* preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudius Cæsar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Crescens* his Disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Countrey, that in the year 250. or before, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled in the Synod of *Labesitum*: and in the year 398. when the faction of the *Donatists* was of greatest power, we find no fewer than 214 *Catholick* Bishops, met together in the Councel of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increase of *Christianity* in those parts of *Africa*; so it shewes also that the Church was in ill condition; so over-power'd by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at least 270 Bishops of their own opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was necessitated to increase the number of Bishops, for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a publike meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Diocese* (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them subordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally invested with *Patriachal* jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius fusa est nostra* Provincia: *Habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas sibi cohærentes*, are S. *Cyprians* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better *Geographer*, than an Historian or Divine. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that those of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatrie*, till 250 years before *Mahomets* birth; at what time they received the *Gospel*, and not before. But the good man mistook the reviving of the *Orthodox* faith, in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* faction (who at one time banished hence 300 *Catholike* Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel. Otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Reviver*, it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Christianity* to be discerned in all this Countrey; *Mahometism* being elswhere universally embraced amongst them.

Amongst the men of most note for Souldiery, which have been born in this Countrey, we may reckon *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three sons: 2. *Annibal*, 3. *Asdrubal*, and 4. *Mago*; men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Masinissa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Cotemporaries: and in the following times, 6. *Septimus Severus*, the Roman Emperour. Amongst those addicted to the Muses, those of most note, 1. *Terence*, 2. *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the world afforded men of more eminent note, nor better deserving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Victorinus Afer*, 7. *Optatus* Melevitanus, 8. *Victor Uticensis*, 9. *Fulgentius*, 10. *Primasius*. And above all, the most learned and divine S. *Augustine*; a man of such admirable abilities, and indefatigable industry, so constant a Defender of all Orthodox doctrines against the *Hereticks* of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey besides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1. *Phocra*, 2. *Heptadelphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitania*; 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garas*, 6. *Madethubadus*, and 7. those called *Gariphi*, in *Cæsariensis*; 8. *Thambes*, 9. *Mampsarus*, 10. *Usaletus*, and 11. *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa Propia*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our description of the Provinces in which they are. And for the Rivers of most note, though none of any long course in so narrow a Countrey; we have in *Tigintana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2. another of the same name, and the same *exit* also, but far more to the North, towards the Streit of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Mosocath*, mollified by *Salust* the Historian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Malva*, the boundarie at this day, betwixt the Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Algiers*; 5. *Phthuth*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Cæsariensis*, 6. *Nasabath*, 7. *Sisaris*, and *Sorbetos*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunes*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which issuing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9. *Triton*, which issuing out of the hill called *Usaletus*, and making the great Fen called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its course also in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this tract, which rising out of Mount *Atlas*, first runneth towards the East, and then receiving from the hill called *Mampsarus* the addition of another Stream, passeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his course.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and *Land marks*, I should now proceed to the description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these later times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Storie of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the *Historie* and *Chonographie* of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Countrey was first peopled by *Phut* the third son of *Cham*: who leaving his brother *Mizraim* well setled in the Land of *Egypt*, passed towards the West; and leaving *Lehabim* his nephew betwixt him and *Mizraim*, possessed himself of all the rest from the *greater Syrtis* to the *Ocean*. Remainders of whose name we finde in the River *Phut*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, save that it favoureth more of the *African* roughnesse) near which *Iosephus* findeth a Region called the Countrey of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: seconded herein by S. *Hierome*, who speaking of this *Regis Phutensis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phuth* is placed by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in generall terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as descended of this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several families; but in the end, reduced

duced under the command of the Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two firſt, Natives of this Countrey, of the race of *Phut*; the laſt deſcended alſo of the ſeed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the conqueſt of their Countrey by the Children of *Iſrael*, forced to ſeek new dwellings; and having ſtore of ſhips to tranſplant themſelves and their Families; ſetled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa* properly ſo called. For, that the people of thoſe parts, though loſt into other names and families, were anciently of a *Canaanitiſh*, or *Phœnician* race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearneſſe of their Language, the *Punick*, or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* tongue, differing onely in the dialect and pronunciation. 2*ly*. By the name *Pœni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3*ly*. By this teſtimony of S. *Auguſtine*, who telleth us in the Comment on St. *Pauls* Epiſtle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finiſhed by him; *Interrogati Ruſtici noſtri quid ſint, reſpondent* Punici *Chanani*; that is to ſay, that when any of the Inhabitants of this Countrey (he himſelf was one) were asked what they were, they anſwered, *Chanaanites*. 4*ly*. We finde in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyſes* having totally conquered *Egypt*, intended a vvar againſt the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it ſeemeth) of ſome power: but the *Phœnicians*, being the onely Sea-faring men *Cambyſes* then had, abſolutely denied to be imployed in that ſervice; they being ſprung from the ſame Tree, that the *Carthaginians* were. 5*ly*. We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagarius Scholaſticus*) how on two marble-pillars, ſituate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* language and Character engraved, *Nos fugimus à facie* Joſhuah *prædonis, filii* Nave; that is to ſay, *We flie from the face of that Robber*, Joſhuah *the ſon of* Nun. The ſetling of this people there, a great incitement queſtionleſſe unto *Dido*, to come thither alſo: who feared as much danger from her brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whoſe hands had been embrued in the bloud of her husband; as the others did from the ſword of *Joſhuah*. Gathering together all her Treaſures, which were very great, accompanied with her brother *Barca*, and her ſiſter *Anna*, ſhe ſet ſayl for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after ſtood the Citie of *Carthage*, ſhe obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigneſſe, than ſhe could compaſſe round about with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that Citie; hence the name of *Byrſa*, which at firſt it had. Firſt founded in, or about the year of the world 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomons* Temple; 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the deſtruction of *Troy*. By which accompt (I note this onely by the way) it is impoſſible that *Dido*, or *Eliſa* (for by both theſe names we finde her called) ſhould ever ſee the face of *Æneas*, unleſſe it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impoſſible ſhe ſhould either fall in love with him, or be got with Childe by him, or finally kill her ſelf on her being forſaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with moſt ſorts of men. Hereunto conſenteth *Auſonius*, who honouring the *Statua* of this abuſed Princeſſe with an *Epigram* of 18 verſes, among others gives us theſe four.

Invida cur in me ſtimulaſti Muſa Maronem,
Fingeret ut noſtræ damna pudicitiæ?
Vos magis Hiſtoricis *(Lectores) credite de me,*
Quam qui furta deum, concubituſque canunt.

Why didſt thou ſtir up Virgil, *envious Muſe,*
Falſly my name and honour to abuſe?
Of me let Hiſtories *be heard, not thoſe,*
Who to the World, Jove's *theft and luſts expoſe.*

Credible it is, that *Æneas* being driven on the Coaſt of *Africk*, was by ſome Prince there courteouſly entertained, as a man whoſe fame had been his *harbinger*: but why the ſtory ſhould be faſtned on *Dido*, I ſee not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her ſelf, gave occaſion to the Poet to fain, that it was for the love of *Æneas*: whereas it was indeed to avoid the luſt and fury of *Iarbas*, a potent King of the *Getuli*, a powerfull Nation of thoſe parts of *Africa*, in which *Carthage* ſtood, who violently deſired to have his pleaſure on her.

But to proceed. This Citie thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandiſe, in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire *mercenary* Souldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good ſtore) they conquered all the Sea-Coaſts from *Cyrene* to the Streits of *Hercules* (now called the Streits of *Gibraltar:*) and ſo much alſo towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which ſpace poſſeſſed of 300 Cities. Grown to ſuch height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongſt them the Kings of *Numidia*, and *Mauritania*, were at their devotion: They began to caſt their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Iſland, lying near unto their Coaſt; which queſtionleſſe they had poſſeſſed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatneſſe, and fearing their neighbour-hood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mamertines*, and under that pretence got ſome footing in it. The end of this war, after many brave exploits on both ſides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*; their abandoning all the Iſlands, betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And ſuch end had the firſt *Punick* war, managed for the moſt part in *Sicil*. During which time, and the firſt war there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it ſelf was twice invaded; firſt by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuſe*, (or ſo commonly call'd) & afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General; but with no other great ſucceſſe, than the ſpoil of the Countrey. The ſecond followed not long after, but the *Scene* was altered; begun in *Spain*, proſecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the ſon of *Amilcar*, deſcended from *Barca* the brother of

Dido

Dido or *Eliſa*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increaſed his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it ſelf; defeated the Armes of the *Romans*, and ſlew ſome of their Conſuls: ſo proſperous in the battel of *Cannæ*, where the whole ſtrength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made uſe of his victory, he might within four, or five dayes after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently tranſlated the war to *Carthage*. The iſſue was, that on the loſſe of the battel of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were neceſſitated to ſubmit themſelves to the will of the Conquerour: that is to ſay, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships, and Gallies excepting ten; to make no war without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the charges of the war, 10000 *Talents*; and ſuch other extremities. So ended the 2. *Punick* war, *An. V. C.* 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occaſioned by thoſe of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the people of *Rome*; who would not think themſelves ſafe whileſt that Citie ſtood: and therefore ſent another *Scipio* to lay ſiege unto it. By whom, after a long and ſtout reſiſtance, it was at laſt taken and deſtroyed: the Treaſure which was found in it, notwithſtanding their former loſſes, and the low eſtate it was reduced to, beſides what was conſumed by fire, & reſerved by the Souldiers; amounting to 470000 pound weight of ſilver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thouſand pounds of our *Engliſh* money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and there with all the reſt of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed againſt her, and aided the *Romans* in theſe wars; yet they ſoon found their own fortunes buried in the ſelf-ſame Grave. Subverted, one after another, as occaſion was, they became all ſubject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Eſtates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of theſe were reckoned ſeven in all, that is to ſay, 1. *Africa Propria*, called alſo *Zeugitana*, and *Proconſularis*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Sitiſenſis*, and 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the laſt (I know not why) was laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Spain*, called therefore *Hiſpania Tranſretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, by ſome elder Writers: the other ſix made up the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorius* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till ſubdued by the *Vandals*, a *German* Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedomes of *Mecklenbourg* & *Pomerania*. Their memory ſtill retained there in the ſtile of thoſe Princes, who call themſelves *Duces Vandalorum*; and in the Confederacy of the *Hanſe-towns*, called by ſome *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great power, & numbers, (the *Burgundians* being onely a part of theſe) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th. year of the Empire of *Arcadius* & *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the treacherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Weſtern Empire; and after an abode of three years, paſſed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Aſſociates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them alſo. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperours Vicegerent in *Africa*: who ſtomacking to ſee his Office beſtowed on *Caſtinus* an unworthy man, and his enemy; betrayed the Countrey to theſe *Vandals*, in the laſt year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*; an *Arian* in Religion, as were the reſt of the Nation, to which induced by their neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: which *Hereſie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Chriſtians*; ſo they continued in it till their extirpation.

The VANDAL Kings of AFRICA.

A. C.		
412.	1	*Gundericus*, who firſt invaded *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Africk*. 16.
428.	2	*Genſericus*, who at the requeſt of *Eudoxia* the widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and ſacked the Citie of *Rome*, the ſpoil whereof for 14 dayes he gave to his Souldiers: but at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterward married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was wife to the Weſtern Emperour *Valentinian*; who having a minde to a Lady of *Rome*, the wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly ſlipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token ſent for the Lady to the Court; and when ſhe was come raviſhed her. To revenge this diſgrace, *Maximus* ſlew *Valentinian*, made himſelf Emperour, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his wife. But ſhe ſtomacking a match ſo unequal to her high birth, and having ſome incling of the manner of her husbands death, ſent for *Genſericus* into *Italy*. This *Genſericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
476.	3	*Honoricus*, ſon of *Genſericus*. 7.
484.	4	*Gundebundus*, ſon to *Genzo* the brother of *Honoricus*. 15.
499.	5	*Traſimundus*, brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
523.	6	*Hildericus*, the ſon of *Honoricus*, depoſed by
530.	7	*Gilmir*, the ſon of *Genzo*, one of the Deſcendents of *Genſericus*; overcome by *Beliſarius* a worthy and politique Leader, whom the Emperour *Juſtinian* imployed in that ſervice.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain*, and *Africa*, 146 years) by the valour of *Beliſarius*. Who after this good ſervice, was imployed by *Juſtinian* againſt the *Gothes*, then reigning

reigning in *Italy*; againſt whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being, on I know not what envy, called to *Conſtantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his bread at the Gate of the Temple of S. *Sophia*. A bad reward for ſo good a ſervant. But to go on, *Juſtinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conqueſt, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly ſubject; and increaſing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it ſelf: appointing his *Præfectus Præterio Africæ* to reſide in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his charge; which he then alſo raiſed to a *Conſular* Province, having in former times been *Proconſular* onely. But long it held not in this ſtate: For in the year 647. the *Romans* were finally expulſed by *Hucba*, a famous Leader, whom *Oſmen*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had deſigned to this ſervice. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the *Saracenical* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing leſſe and leſſe, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himſelf; this Conntrey was diſtracted into many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at laſt reduced to four of moſt conſideration: that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of 1 *Tunis*, 2 *Tremeſen* or *Algiers*, 3 *Feſſo*, and 4 *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *Hiſtory* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the fifth place, the Iſles of *Barbary*.

1. *TUNIS.*

THe Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in Latine called *Regnum Tunetanum*) hath on the the Eaſt *Cyrene*; on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Algeirs*, or *Tremeſin*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis* the chief City of it; extended all along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean* for the ſpace of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The Countrey towards the Eaſt, barren and deſtitute of water; but in the Weſtern parts, ſufficiently plentiful of Corn, and other fruits, and generally well ſet with Trees. The people more patient of labour than the reſt of *Barbary*, and for that cauſe perhaps more healthy: but queſtionleſſe of ſo good conſtitution, that they live commonly to great Age, unleſſe a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of ſickneſſe, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as ſome call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called ſince *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the preſent *Numidia*, lying on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, were 1 *Audas*, 2 *Buzara*, 3 *Cinua*, 4 *Dios*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5 *Gillius*, by ſome named *Gigion*, and 6 thoſe called *Thizibi*. Rivers of moſt eſteem with them, though not much with others, beſides the [illegible]entioned before, 1 *Ampſaga*, now called *Collo*, and by ſome *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this King[illegible]m from that of *Tremeſen*; 2 *Catuda*; 3 *Cyniphus*, iſſuing from the hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea not far from *Tripolis*. Beſides which there were ſome great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1 *Hipponites* near Mount *Cinna*; 2 the Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was ſaid to have ſhewed herſelf the Inventreſſe of Spinning and of Oyle, and for that much worſhipped by this People; 3 *Sylura*, another great Lake, but not ſo famous as the former, becauſe not honoured by a Goddeſſe.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Africa* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampſaga* to the Leſſer *Syrtis*; 2. *Tripolitana*, from the Leſſer *Syrtis* to the Greater; 3. *Numidia*, lying on the Weſt of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*: and 4. *Byzacena*, ſo called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the territory whereof ſo extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of corn were ſent to *Rome* in the time of *Auguſtus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one ſtalk. But this Diviſion being long ſince worn out of memory, it is divided at the preſent into the Provinces of, 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Conſtantina*, 5. *Bugia*.

1. *EZZAB* is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A ſmall Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *tributes*): their wealth not riſing from the commodities of their own Countrey, which affordeth them little elſe beſides *Dates* and *Olives*; but from ſuch merchandiſe which they buy of the *Venetians*, and ſell to the *Numidians*. The richeſt, thoſe of *Meſrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath ſome, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Meſurata*, 2. *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the firſt gives name unto that little Province ſpoken of before. Of more note in the former times was *Phileni Villa*, ſituate on the Greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoyning *Altars*, called *Phileni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occaſion. Some controverſies being grown betwixt thoſe of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a ſet houre ſhould be ſent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-ſtone* of their ſeveral Territories. The *Phileni*, two brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were ſo quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Countrey of the *Cyrenenſes*, before they were met; wherewith the *Cyreneans* much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go ſo much back again, or to die in the place. This laſt accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Conntrey before their own; for preſervation of whoſe name and honour to ſucceeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect theſe *Altars*.

2. Weſt of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab* made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley; but more commodiouſly ſeated in regard of the Sea, which is here more ſafe for naviga-

tion; the former lying wholly on the *greater Sirtis*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leptis Magna*, ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from another, but of leſſe note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, ſituate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A town of ſo great wealth and trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2. *Euphranta*, called alſo *Pyrgos Euphranta*, from ſome ſtrong Tower in it on the Weſtern bank of the *greater Syrtis*. 3. *Ciniſterna*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Cyniphus*. 4. *Cabis*, the utmoſt City of this Province weſtward; the ſame which *Ptolomie* calls *Tacapa*, ſituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the *leſſer Syrtis*, 5. *Sabratha*, and 6 *Heva*; not elſe obſervable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7. *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from thoſe three Cities before mentioned. A City of great name and riches, till deſtroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colledges, and Hoſpitals; and flouriſhing in much wealth and luſtre, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject to the Kings of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genoes* with a Fleet of 20 ſail, and by them ſold to the King of *Feſſe*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navar*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the firſt Monarch of *Spain*: whoſe Nephew *Charles* the 5. conferred it on the Knights of S. *John* of *Hieruſalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Beſa* General of *Selimus* the ſecond, diſpoſſeſſed by force, *An.* 1551. Since that the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Begterbeg*, for theſe *African* Provinces; and made an uſual retreat for *Pyrats*, who infeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to the Coaſts of *Sicile*, *Italy*, and others of the *Chriſtian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS*, lying Weſtward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up ſo much of this Kingdom, as antiently conteined the Province of *Bizacena*; and ſo much of the *Roman Africk*, as lieth on the Eaſt of the River called *Gandilharbar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the Antient writers. The Country antiently ſo fruitful, that it yielded uſually an increaſe of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, beſides the teſtimony of approved Authors, the wonderfull, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may ſerve ſufficiently. Now indigent, and ſo unprovided of all Grain for the uſe of their families, that they are fain to furniſh themſelves out of other places: the People not daring to manure or ſow their land, for fear of the *Arabians*; who ever and anon fall into theſe parts, and ſpoil what they meet with.

Places of moſt note in it, in the elder times, 1. *Adrumetum* or *Adrumyſtus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*, by conſequence, in the times of *Chriſtianity*, an Archbiſhops See: walled and repaired by the Emperour *Juſtinian*, and by his command called *Juſtiniana*. 2. *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his battel with *Scipio*. 3. *Nadagora*, memorable for the great battel, betwixt the two renowned *Generals* of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd ſince their own times, nor in thoſe before them. In which the great Controverſie between thoſe Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* ſhewed his ſingular judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in horſe, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage* to fight in a place of diſadvantage, he could do no marvels: the *Romans*, with the loſſe of no more then 1500. of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians*, in the fight and chaſe. 4. *Salera* the firſt place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greateſt ſhips; much ſpoke of in the wars of *Carthage*; and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence ſirnamed *Vtican*) who here ſlew himſelf, for fear of falling into the hands of *Cæſar*. It is now called *Biſerta*. 6. *Bizacium*, ſeated in liberal and fruitful ſoils, as was ſhewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7. *Ruſpinum*, made by *Cæſar* the ſeat of his war in *Africk*, againſt the ſons and faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times ſucceeding, for being the Epiſcopal See of S. *Fulgentius*. 8. *Thyſtrus*, remarkable for the Tragedie of the *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was ſaluted Emperour by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperour, whoſe *Procurator* they had ſlain in a tumult: but his party being diſcomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximinus* ſent againſt him, and his ſon killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the news, he here hanged himſelf. 9 *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longeſt for the *Mercinaries*, in their deſperate Rebellion againſt the *Carthaginians*; by which the Eſtate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the firſt *Punick* war. 10. *CARTHAGE*, once the Lady and Miſtreſſe of *Africk*, ſituate in the bottom of a ſafe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very ſtrongly fortified both by art and nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one ſide only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Iſthmus*, about two miles and an half in breadth. In compaſſe 24 miles, but meaſuring by the outward wall, it was 45. For without the wall of the City it ſelf, there were three walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horſe, and all their Provender, and Lodging in thoſe Out-ſtreets for the *Riders* of the ſaid Horſe, and for 20000 Foot beſides, which never came within the City, to annoy or peſter it. On the South-ſide ſtood the Caſtle called *Byrſa*, which took up two miles and an half in compaſſe: firſt built by *Dido*, on that ground which ſhe obtained of the *Libyans*, when ſhe got leave to buy only ſo much land of them, as ſhe could compaſſe round about with an Oxes hide. In that, the ſumptuous Temple of their antient Deities, *Juno*, *Apollo*, *Æſculapius*, *Belus*. On the Weſt-ſide, a ſtanding Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by ſo narrow a paſſage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a ſtately *Arſenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the foundation and affairs of this mighty City we have ſpoke already. The Government of it firſt by Kings, thoſe *abſolute* enough at firſt, afterwards limited by the *Senate*; and finally made meerly *titulary* by the power of the People: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Ariſtotle*, in the 2. of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the ſecond

Punick

Punick war, when they were at the greateſt, extended on the Sea coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streits*, and ſo unto the River *Iberus*, for the ſpace of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* anſwerable, and readily brought in, by reaſon of their infinite trading. Which made the *Roman* people think themſelves unſafe, whilſt this City ſtood. Reſolved on the deſtruction of it, they ſent againſt it L. *Martius* and M. *Manlius*, their two *Conſuls*, with a puiſſant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preſervation of the City it ſelf, which was faithfully promiſed. But when they had withall given up the ſons of their principal men, to be ſent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future loyaltie; they were told that a *City conſiſted not in wals, but in lawes and government.* Theſe with the *Corporation*, ſhould remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was reſolved to abide the utmoſt: but they wanted neceſſaries for reſiſtance. That want ſupplied for want of Iron to make Arms, with Gold and Silver; the Houſes pulled down to fruniſh them with timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the hair of their heads, to make Ropes and Cordage; 25000 Women liſted to defend the wals. But the fatal moment being come, a ſecond *Scipio* is ſent thither to diſpatch the work; by whom at laſt the Town was taken, and for 17 dayes together conſumed with fire: the Queen and multitudes of the People burning themſelves in the Temple of *Æſculapius*, becauſe they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*. Reedified by *Julius Cæſar*, and made a Colonie, it recovered ſome part of her former luſtre; but ſo, that her chief glory was rather to be ſought for in her antient, then her preſent fortunes. *Populi Romani* Colonia, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax æmula, & priorum exidio rerum, quam ope præſentium clarior*; was her character in the times of *Ponponius Mela.* But in this laſt Eſtate, accompted for the *Metropolis* of the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, the Reſidence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Biſhops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* ſtood. Deſtroyed in the ſucceeding times by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a Citie of no mean importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deſerted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languiſh, and was at laſt reduced to nothing but a few ſcattered houſes, not above five and twenty ſhops, one Temple; all the reſt a ruine. So truly ſaid the antient Poet

Sic patet exemplis Oppida poſſe mori.
Thus by examples do we ſee.
That Towns may die as well as we.

Of chief note at the preſent, 1. *Tunis*, ſuppoſed to be the *Themiſa* or *Thumiſa* of *Ptolomie*; of ſmal accompt till the laſt deſtruction of *Carthage*, by whoſe fall it roſe. Situate not far from the ruines of that famous City, in compaſs about five miles, and in that compaſs ſaid to contain 10000 houſholds. Of great traffick; and well frequented by the Merchants of forreign nations; chiefly from *Genoa*, and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the ſieges and ſucceſſes of two of our *Engliſh* Princes; that namely of King *Edward* the firſt, in his fathers life time; and that of *Henry* the fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*: by both which (though the laſt ſerved only under the command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Compoſition; *Lewis* the 9. commonly called S. *Lewis*, dying at the firſt ſiege of it 2. *Goletta*, a ſtrong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a Demy-Iland, divided from the main Land by two narrow paſſages, but ſo that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty by *Charles* 5. *An* 1535. together with the *Turkiſh* Navy riding in the Lake faſt by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An.* 1574. 3. *Cairoan*, built by *Hucba*, who firſt conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*, in a ſandie Deſart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36. from any part of the Sea, to ſecure himſelf from any invaſion, which the commodiouſneſs of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the firſt founder of it, with an admirable Temple raiſed on Pillars of Marble; who placed alſo in it a Colledge of Prieſts, and made it the chief Reſidence of his poſterity for the ſpace of 170 years, who reigned here nnder the great *Caliphs* as the *Sultans* of *Africk*. Deſtroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco* and ſtill of ſuch eſteem amongſt theſe *Mahometans*, that their chief men are brought thither to be buried from all parts of the Country; hoping by the prayers of thoſe *Prieſts* to find a ſhorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4 More Weſtward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, ſo called from *Conſtantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Guadilharbar*, to *Conſtantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the ſame with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolomie*. The ſoil hereof ſaid to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great ſtore of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Oroſius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the Eaſt; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Weſtern bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this laſt moſt famous, in being the *Epiſcopal* See of renowned S. *Auguſtine*. 3. *Bona*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about an hundred miles from the Sea; but ſituate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25. in breadth: ſo rich and fertile, that the Town flouriſheth to this day; adorned with a ſumptuous *Moſque*, and never without the company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunes*, and the Iſle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4. *Thuburnica* another Colonie of the *Romans*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the ſame nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culcua*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Conſtantina* by the *Latines*, and moſt Nations elſe, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate near a Mountain of the ſame name, near the edge of *Bugia* An antient City, but con-

taining ſtill 8000 families, many ſomptuous Buildings; amongſt which a large Temple, two Colledges, and three or four Monaſteries: frequently viſited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief commodities, Wool, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and ſome ſorts of Fruits; which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good merchandiſe. The City for the moſt part, fenced about with high craggy rocks; and where thoſe want, with ſtrong walls, of a great height, and moſt exquiſite workmanſhip, declaring the antiquity of it. A further argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch* not far from the City, and ſome *Hot Bathes*, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Moſt Weſtward lieth the Province of *BUGIA*, extended from Mount *Conſtantine* to the River *Ampſa*, now called *Chollo*, or *Sef-Gemar*: which with ſo much of *Conſtantina*, as lieth on the Weſtſide of *Rubricatus*, made up that Province, which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half ſo much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *ſed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat ſoil, plentiful both in fruits and corn, but moſt fit for paſturage: to which the people were ſo addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houſes, (inſtead whereof they uſed the *Hold* of a Ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Paſtures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπὸ τῦ νέμειν, ſignifying to feed or graſe. The people of good metal, ſwift of foot, and well skilled in horſmanſhip: but better in the onſet and to give a charge, than in ſtanding to it; ſuch as the wild *Arabians* are now ſaid to be.

Chief Towns hereof (beſides *Thuburnica*, *Culcua*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, ſpoken of before, belonging to *Numidia*, thougth not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by ſome conceived to have been the *Thebuaca* of *Ptolemy*, now the chief City of this Province; adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome Monaſteries, and Colledges for ſtudents in the Law of *Mohemet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for relief of the Poor; fenced alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle. Secured by the ſtrength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulneſs of the ſituation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton; working much miſchief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at ſea; till taught more modeſty by *Peter* of *Navar* a *Spaniſh* Captain, *A.* 1508. by whom the Town was taken and the people plundered. 2. *Chollo*, upon the Sea-ſide, the *Chollops Magnus* (as I take it) of *Ptolomie*; reported for a wealthie City. 3. *Nicaus*, ſeated towards Mount *Atlas*, in a pleaſant and delightful country: which though interſperſed with many hils, yet being thoſe hils are clothed with woods, yield them good ſtore of Goats and Horſes, and feed the Vallies with freſh ſprings, which do iſſue from them; they rather adde than detract any thing from the pleaſures of it. 4. *Madaura*, by ſome called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Tunudromum*, another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a Roman Province, and formely the Seat-royal of *Sypax* King of the *Maſaſyli*, within whoſe country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Ampſaga*, and memorable for the tragedie of *Sophonisba*, the daughter of *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*; a Lady of moſt exquiſite beauty, and yet carried more charms in her tongne than in her eyes. Eſpouſed firſt unto *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon reaſon of State, married unto *Syphax*; who being took priſoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, beſtowed her ſelf on her firſt Lover: but *Scipio* fearing leſt that marriage might withdraw *Maſiniſſa* from the *Roman* party, cauſed the Lady to be ſeized on; which *Maſiniſſa* not being otherwiſe able to prevent or remedie, ſent her a Cup of poyſon, which ſhe drank and died.

Of theſe *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome*, and *Carthage*; imployed by this laſt City in all their wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicil*. Siding at laſt with *Scipio* againgſt that State, they did good ſervice to the *Romans* in the weakening and deſtruction of that City: whoſe fall they did not long ſurvive: firſt conquered in the war of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the ſucceſſion of them, follow in this Oder.

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1 *Gala*, the Father of *Maſiniſſa*.

2 *Deſalces*, the brother of *Gala*; according to the laws of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the brother, not the ſon of the former King, (like the law of *Taniſtry* in *Ireland*) ſucceded *Gala*.

3 *N. N.* a ſon of *Deſalces*, in the abſence of *Maſiniſſa*, then ſerving under the *Carthaginians* in the wars of *Spain*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the throne: ſlain not long after by a Rebel.

4 *Maſiniſſa*, ſon of *Gala*, recovered the kingdome of his Fathers; but again outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Maſiniſſa*, touching *Sophonisba*, there was deadly feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom aſſociated againſt *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own kingdome, but was gratified with the greateſt part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A profeſſed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruine whereof he lived to ſee) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.

5 *Micipſa*, the ſon of *Maſiniſſa*; of whom nothing memorable.

6 *Jugurth*, the ſon of *Maſtanabilis*, one of the Brethren of *Micipſa*, having wickedly made away the two ſons of *Micipſa*, uſurped the kingdom; & manifeſtly withſtood the *Romans*, whoſe attempts ſometimes by force, ſometimes by ſubtility, but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made fruſtrate: *Et fuit in Ingurtha* (ſaith *Florus*) *quod poſt Annibalem*

Annibalem timeretur. At laſt, being broken by *Metellus*, vanquiſhed by *Marius*, and by *Bocchus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*; he was by *Marius* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pound weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the cuſtome of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the riches and money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countreys, to put into the common Treaſury.

7 *Hiempſal*, ſon of *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Fathers treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*; Relieved *Marius* in his exile.

8 *Hiarbas*, another of the *Marian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquiſh'd and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla*'s Captains.

9 *Hiempſal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.

10 *Iuba*, the ſon of *Hiempſal* the ſecond, who ſiding with *Pompey* againſt *Cæſar* in the Civil wars, gave a great overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cæſar*'s Lieutenants; *Curio* himſelf ſlain, his whole Army routed, ſuch as were taken priſoners murdered in cold bloud. But being diſcomfited by *Cæſar*, after *Pompey*'s death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Iuba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which, the Nations of moſt note were the *Nigitimi*, on the Eaſtern parts of the *Mediterranean*, the *Machyni*, near the leſſer *Syrtis*; the *Libyæ-Phœnices* and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Ionii*, *Navatræ*, and *Cirteſii*, taking up all the Sea-coaſts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more South-wards on the back of theſe, not ſo much conſiderable: None of them to be ſtaid upon, but the *Libyæ-Phœnices*, a mixt people of the old *Libyans*, and new *Phœnicians*, as the *Liby-Ægyptii* were of the ſaid *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them ſo defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is ſcarce any tract, or footſteps of them in all the Countrey. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at firſt ſubject to the *Caliph*, or *Sultan* of *Cairoan*: after the ſpoil whereof by the *Arabians*, ſubdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the diſtractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by ſome one of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almohades*, who took unto himſelf the title of King of *Tunis*, that Citie being his chief Seat. By him tranſmitted unto his poſterity, till the dayes of our Grand-fathers; when *Muleaſſes*, one of the youngeſt ſons of *Sultan Mahomet*, having firſt murdered *Maimon* his eldeſt brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the reſt, uſurped the Soveraignty. *Roſetta*, the onely one of thoſe Princes who eſcaped this maſſacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deſerted was feign to put himſelf into the hands of *Barbaraſſa*, King of *Algieres*, and Admiral of the Turkiſh Navy; by whom he was carried to *Conſtantinople*, & ſo preſented to *Solyman*, who under colour of reſtoring him to the throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himſelf; outed thereof not long after by *Charles* the fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaſſes*, An. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Soveraignty, when his eyes were alſo put out by his own ſon *Amida*, and ſo committed to cloſe priſon: Nor did *Amida* enjoy it long, diſpoſſeſſed by *Abdamelech* his fathers brother. To *Abdamelech* *Mahomet* his ſon ſucceeded; who being a childe, and by affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Miniſters of State, gave opportunity to *Arayda* to regain the Kingdom. During which broils the Turks again recovered footing, poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of the Countrey, and forced *Arayda* into exile, who flying to *Don Iohn* of *Auſtria*, then newly victorious at *Trepanto*, invited him to the conqueſt of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for *Don Iohn* having ſubdued the Kings conferred the ſame on *Mahomet* the brothers of *Amyda*, and carried *Amida* in bonds to the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long, for the next year the Turks beſieged and took the Citie of *Tunis*, with the ſtrong Fort of *Galetta*, with all the other Forts and holds of that Kingdom, made ever ſince a Province of the Turkiſh Empire; The poor King being carried priſoner to *Conſtantinople* at the end of the war, which was in the year 1574. and the laſt of *Selymus* the ſecond.

2. *TREMESEN*, or *ALGIERS*.

THe Kingdom of TREMESEN is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Ampſaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, from which ſeparated by the River *Malutha*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremeſen*, or *Teleuſine*, the chief Citie of it. Called alſo the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the Citie ſo named, ſometimes the Seat Royal of their Kings.

In the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*: *Mauritania*, becauſe a part of the Kingdom of *Iuba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæſarienſis*, from *Cæſarea* the chief Citie of it, as that ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on whom the Kings hereof depended. More antiently the Kingdom of the *Maſæſyli*, one of the moſt powerfull Nations in all this tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo*, *Maſæſylilia*, with good propriety; and corruptedly, *Maſſylia*.

The Kingdom extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt, for the ſpace of 380 Miles, but of breadth not anſwerable; Is generally of the ſame nature (as to the Soyl and Air) with the reſt of *Barbary*: ſufficiently fruitfull towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reaſon of the continual ſpoils made by the *Arabians*, who poſſeſſe the *Deſarts*; and the Cities of it much

waſted by continual wars. Nor have the people any peculiar *Character*, but what belongeth to others of theſe *Africans* alſo.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Guagyda*, inconveniently ſeated, as paying their accuſtomed Tributes to the King of *Tremeſen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here ſo numerous and powerfull, that the Kings themſelves of this ſmall Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exceſſive rates. 2. *Tigedent*, ſometimes famous, and abounding with men of learning; now almoſt forſaken, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of theſe *Arabians*. 3. *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the moſt part by Weavers. 4. *Breſch*, the Inhabitants whereof uſe to paint a black Croſſe on their cheek, and another on the palm of their hands: the reaſon of which cuſtom they are ignorant of, but ſome conceive it to be a remembrance of their *Chriſtianity*. 5. *Ned-Roma*, built as the people do pretend, by the antient *Romans*, as an *Epitome*, or Abridgement of that mighty Citie, to which it is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance; and that imported by the name, which ſignifieth in their language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Novum oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Batha*, once a great Citie, ſince decayed by wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, ſaid to contain no fewer then 10000 Families. Powerfull at Sea, and much infeſting with their Gallies the Coaſts of *Spain*; till taken for *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* by *Peter* of *Navar*, An. 1506. ſince which time peopled and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: In vain beſieged by the *Turks*, An. 1562. 8. *Maſalquivir*, a fair and capacious Haven on the ſame Sea alſo, and taken by the ſaid *Peter* of *Navar*, about the ſame time. 9. *Hareſgol*, in former times of much eſteem amongſt the *Moors*; but being deſtroyed by the King, or Sultan of *Cairoan*, it bequeathed his greatneſſe unto *Tremeſen*, which after grew into renown. 10. *Tremeſen*, once adorned with many beautifull *Moſques*, and five ſumptuous *Colledges*, curiouſly wrought with *Moſuick* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families; and ſo well fortified, that it held out ſeven years againſt *Joſeph* the great King of *Feſſe*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakned by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* his ſon ſucceſſor, under a ſiege of 30 moneths. By thoſe, and the ſucceeding troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in ſtrength and beauty. More antient, 11. *Siga*, an *African* Citie, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, ſometimes Kings of this Countrey. 12. *Arſenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after ſuch time as this Countrey was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæſarea*, in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whoſe *Feudatories* the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as ſome ſay, in honour of *Claudius Cæſar*, by whom made a Colony: the *Metropolis* of it alſo when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæſarienſis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now ſtands, which ſeemeth to have riſen out of the ruines of it. 14. *Saldæ*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, out of whoſe ruines roſe *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief Citie of this Kingdom, ſituate near the Sea, in the form of a *Triangle*, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor ſafe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautifull; the publick Inns, *Bathes*, and *Moſques*, exceeding ſumptuous; every Trade having a ſeveral place, or ſtreet by it ſelf. But that which is the greateſt grace of it, is the ſituation of the houſes ſtanding in even ſtreets one above another, upon the riſing of a ſteep Hill; ſo that the windows of one ſtreet, or row of houſing do all along overlook the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a moſt pleaſant proſpect. A Citie not ſo large, as ſtrong; and not ſo ſtrong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retrait-place of the *Turkiſh* Pirats, who domineer ſo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations, that frequent thoſe Seas. Famous alſo for the ſhipwrack which *Charles* the fifth here ſuffered, who beſieging this Town, loſt in the Haven of it at one Tempeſt, beſides an infinite number of Karvels and ſmall Boats, divers ſtrong Gallies, 140 ſhips, a great many excellent pieces of Ordinance; ſuch a number of gallant Horſes, that in *Spain* the race of Horſes for ſervice had like to have been loſt for ever; and above half his men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes, (but *Homagers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremeſen*) till ſuch time as *Selimes*, and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the firſt, and that an irreparable breach in the Government. For *Selimes*, to ſtrengthen his ſide, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbaroſſa*, a noble Pirate; who taking his beſt advantage, ſlew the disjointed brethren, and ſetled himſelf in the Kingdom: which he had ſcarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa* his brother, *An.* 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was ſo renowned for Martial proweſſe, that *Solyman* the *magnificent* made him Lord *High-Admiral* of his Fleet: which Office, when to the prejudice of *Chriſtendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone; he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremeſen* being made ſubject to the *Turks* much about that time. 16. *Tetuan*, and 17. *Sargel*, ſituate Weſtward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpiditani*, *Taladuſii*, *Thaluſſii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chituæ*, and others of as little note; the moſt predominant Nation being the *Maſæſyli*, over whom (and in that over all the reſt) reigned *Syphax*, ſpoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophoniſba*: for whoſe ſake ſiding with the *Carthaginians* againſt the *Romans*, he was vanquiſhed and ſent priſoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then beſtowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whoſe Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperour *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*, it followed the fortunes of theſe laſt, while they ſtood and flouriſhed: But growing into many diſtractions, and every *Sultan*, or *Provincial* Governour ſhifting for himſelf, it became a Kingdom, under the ſtile and title of the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*. The Majeſty of it much impaired by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* King of *Feſſe*; who brought it, not long after, under his command. Recovering after ſome ſhort time

its

its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and ſo continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the hatred of his people, becauſe by his ſupine neglect the *Spaniards* had ſurpriſed and taken *Oran* and *Maſalquivir*, their two beſt Havens; made an eaſie paſſage for his brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal diadem. *Abuzeiden* ſcarce well ſetled, loſt it to *Hairadine Barbaroſo*, *An.* 1515. and he to *Charles* the fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was reſtored, becoming *Homager* and *Tributary* to the Crown of *Spain*. But his ſucceſſor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spaniſh* ſervitude, put himſelf under the protection of *Solyman* the *magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his deceaſe, he left the poſſeſſion of his Kingdom alſo; ever ſince ſubject to the *Turks*: whoſe *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for theſe *African* Provinces, reſides for the moſt part in *Algiers*, and hath 40000 *Timariots* under his command,

3. *FESSE*, & 4. *MOROCCO*.

THeſe Kingdoms I have joyned in title, becauſe united for the moſt part in the ſtorie and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Eſtate under the *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of *Hiſtory*, though of a different conſideration in the way of *Chorographie*.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly ſo called; divided antiently into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*; *Cæſarienſis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Maſæſyli* and the reſt of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accompted any part thereof, till the death of *Iugurth*; when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in reward of his treaſon, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name firſt given; the word *Tania*, ſignifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britannia*, *Luſitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps ſome others, and the name of *Mauri* given them ἀπὸ τῆς Μαυρῆς, which ſignifieth amongſt other things *obſcure* or black, by reaſon of the darkneſſe of their complexion. Accompted in their times, an hardy, but a bloody people; careleſſe of life, fearleſſe of death; implacable, if once offended, their thirſt of revenge not to be quenched but by blood. *Mauri ſunt genus hominum ſuapte natura cædis avidiſſimum, nihilque non facile audens, & deſperatis ſimiles, contemptu, viz. mortis & periculorum.* A character given of them in *Herodians* time, and it holds good ſtill: notwithſtanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the ſame nation with them, and paſſing by the ſame name in the Writers of the middle time. *Poſt hæc* Mauri *totam Hiſpaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam &c. dominio ſuo manciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to underſtand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas Minor*, ſo called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is ſeven degrees more North, but ſhooteth, as that doth, with a point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2. *Durdus*, extended alſo into *Cæſarienſis*. 3. *Diur*. 4. *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Sala*. 2. *Subur*. 3. *Zilia*. 4. *Phuth*. 5. *Diur*. 6. *Cuſa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: this laſt the ſame, as I conjecture, which our modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the reſt, we muſt find amongſt them, 1. *Siſelmel*, 2. *Tenſift*, 3. *Niffis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonitæ* neer the Streits, giving name vnto *Metagonitis* an adjoyning Promontory; the *Succoſii*, *Verbicæ*, *Nectiberes*, *Vacuatæ*, *Voli*; and on the Eaſt-ſide the *Maureſii*: Theſe laſt participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the Latines, *Mauri*; by the Greeks, *Mauruſii*: The Etymologie as before. Their deſcent orignally from *Phut*, the ſon of *Cham*; whoſe memory preſerved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Chanaanites*, of the ſame extraction, ſerved but as an *Acceſſory*. From thoſe two fountains ſprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings; the moſt conſiderable of which, when firſt known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Iugurth* his friend and ſon in law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that treacherie with the Country of the *Maſæſyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempſal* one of his ſons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Eſtates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax* and *Maſiniſſa* united by this means in the perſon of *Juba*, one of his poſterity; the moſt potent Prince of all theſe parts: who falling in the *African* war againſt *Julius Cæſar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Criſpus Saluſtius* being made the firſt Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampſagus*, he gave to *Bocchus*, and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but deſcended of the old Regal family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* againſt *Auguſtus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other ſide, diſpoſſeſſed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Feſſe*); in which confirmed for his good ſervice, by the conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the ſon of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Priſoner made a Prince: inveſted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Auguſtus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the marriage of *Selene*, daughter of *Antony* and *Cleopatra*. After whoſe death, and the death of *Ptolomy* their ſon, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, *viz.*, *Cæſarienſis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampſaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremenſen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Weſtern Ocean. This laſt divided into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*, (the River now called *Ommirabili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: who leaving *Sitifenſis* to the Dioceſe of *Africk*, laid *Tingitania* (why I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*; they became members of thoſe empires; in the declining

ning of the laſt, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, to the deſcription and hiſtory whereof we do now proceed.

3. *MOROCCO.*

THe Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the Eaſt the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. So called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it; in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifenſis*, from *Sitiphis*, in thoſe times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country ſaid to be fruitful of all things neceſſary to life, pleaſing to the ſight, and ſweet to ſmell to: particularly, well ſtored with Grain and Pulſe, plentiful of Oyl, Honey and Sugar, liberally furniſhed with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all ſorts of fruits: exceedingly well ſtocked with Cattel, but with Goats eſpecially; whoſe skins afford a very excellent kind of leather, and of their fleece materials for the fineſt Chamlets, which are here made in moſt of their Cities. The whole Country divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1. *Guzzula*, 2. *Sus*, 3. *Morocco* ſpecially ſo called, 4. *Hea*, 5. *Haſcora*, 6. *Duccala*, and 7. *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the moſt Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the Eaſt, ſome part of *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, *Sus* or *Suſa*, from which parted by a rigde of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the territory of *Morocco*, and the reſt of *Suſa*. The Country rich in Mines of Braſſe, Iron, and other metals, of which are made many *Utenſils* for domeſtick vſes, exported hence into other places.

The People Barbarous and rude, not eaſily acknowledging ſubjection to the Kings of *Morocco*; and at continual wars amongſt themſelves, except only for two moneths in the year; which being the time of their publike Marts, and then much viſited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aſide their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain ſuch *Merchants* as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any, but ſome very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1. *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagreſſa*, not far off, but on the other ſide of the water, towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of theſe nothing memorable.

2. Weſt of *Guzzula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, ſo called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cauſe of continual wars amongſt the people: well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the Inhabitans know neither how to boyl nor purifie; and on the Sea-ſhores, furniſhed with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eaſie rate. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Cape D'Aguer*, on a Promontory ſo called; a place of ſuch importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* alſo) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Country. 2. *Tagavaſt*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greateſt in the Province, and ſituate in a large plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Teijent*, ſituate in a ſpacious Plain alſo, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*: divided into three parts, each a mile from the other; which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4. *Meſſa*, or *Maſſa*, ſeated at the influx of the ſaid River, on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*; three Towns in one: not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as ſeated in a barren and unpleaſing ſoile; remarkable for a fair Temple, the beams and rafters of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which uſually are left dead on the ſhore. 5. *Tarodant*, a large Town, built by the *Africans*, before the conqueſt of this Country by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: the Reſidence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Feſſe*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000. families. 6. *Tedza*, more within the land, bigger than *Taradant*, but leſs wealthy; the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furniſhed with Prieſts and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchiſa*, where it ſnoweth at all ſeaſons of the year, and yet the people go extreme thin in the ſharpeſt Winter. Nothing elſe memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriffe* made himſelf King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a Kingdom; and gave the title of King to *Mahomet* the ſecond *Xeriffe*, made King of *Taradant* or *Sus*, before he diſpoſſeſſed his brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, ſpecially ſo called, the moſt fruitful and beſt peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth, and pleaſures; the very Hills hereof as fruitful as the Vallies in other places. To which fertility of the ſoil, the Rivers 1 *Tenſift*, and 2. *Aſifinuad*, give no ſmall advantage; though much defaced by the frequent incurſions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly ſpoiled this Country. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Aſifinuad*. 2. *Elgiumba*, a ſmall but ancient Town, on the River *Siſſeva*. 3 *Teſraſt*, a ſmall Town upon *Aſifinuad*. 4. *Imizmizi*, ſituate on a Rock, ſpacious. and ſeated neer the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzala*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town, but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tenſift*, all ruined except the Fort, and ſome ſcattered houſes: formerly ſecond unto none but *Morocco*, (from which diſtant 24. miles); the Hils and Valley about it adorned with pleaſant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields ſo fertile, that they yield a fifty-fold increaſe. 7. *Secſina*, where they have ſnow at all times of the year. 8. *Temnella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in opinion from the reſt of the *Mahometan* Sect; and ſo well-grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Oppoſites* to a Diſputation

putation. 9. *Hantera*, very full of *Jewes*. 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, ſituate in or near the place where once ſtood the *Bocanum Hemerum* of *Ptolomy*. Once reckoned amongſt the greateſt Cities of the World, at what time it was ſaid to contain 100000 families ſince ſo defaced and waſted by the depredations of the *Arabians*, and the removal of the Seat-Royal to *Feſſe*, when that Kingdom was in the *Aſcendent*, that it is hardly a thrid part ſo great as formerly. The founder of it *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Teſefinus*, the ſecond King of the houſe of the *Almoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his ſucceſſors. The principal buildings in it, are the Church and the Caſtle: the Church or *Moſque*; one of the greateſt in the World, adorned with many ſumptuous pillars, brought out of *Spain*, when the *Mores* had the poſſeſſion of that Country: and beautified with a ſtately Steeple, in compaſs at the bottom an hundred yards, and of ſo great height; that the Hils of *Azati* (one of the branches of the Leſſer *Atlas*) being 130 miles diſtant, may be thence eaſily diſcerned: the Caſtle very large, and ſtrong, on a Tower whereof ſtand three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Duckets: which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into money, but all deſiſted in regard of ſome croſſe accident or other which befell them in it; inſomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with ſpirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further ſide of *Tenſift* and *Aſifinuad*, is the Province of *HEA*: rough, mountainous, and woody, yet watered with many pleaſant Rils, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the induſtry of the people were not wanting to it. A ſort of people little better than merely barbarous, without all *Artiſts*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except ſome *Chirurgeans*, whom they keep to *circumciſe* their Children; and ſome few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their food a Pap made of Barley-meal, which in ſtead of Spoons, they claw forth with their fingers; the Ground they eat on, ſerving for table, ſtools and napkins. At endleſs feud with one another; yet ſo kind to ſtrangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedneft*, the Gentlemen uſed to caſt lots who ſhould entertain them. A town of good eſteem in former times, ſituate in a large Plain on the River *Tenſift*: but in the year 1514. almoſt wholly abandoned, upon a rumor that the *Arabians* had a purpoſe to ſell it to the *Portugals*. 2. *Teculeth*, ſeated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 families, ſome Hoſpitals, and a beautiful *Moſque*; in the year 1514. deſtroyed by the *Portugals*. 3. *Tenent*, a Sea-town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4. *Elmuridin*, a ſtrong peece, as the name importeth, the word ſignifying the *Diſciples Fort*, ſo called, becauſe a certain *Heretick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yeilds good plenty) retired hither with his *Diſciples*; fortified it and defended it againſt the King of *Morocco*. 5. *Iguillinguiguil*, ſeated on the top of an hill, and fortified by the Country-people (or old *African-Moors*) againſt the *Arabians*. 6. *Teſethne*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great ſhipping. 7. *Tagleſſe*, a Den of Thieves and Cutthroats. 8. *Teſegdelt*; as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous; At the Gates whereof a Guard is ſet for entertainment of Strangers: whom, if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in ſome Genlemans houſe, where it coſts them nothing but thanks, and ſome kind acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, ſtands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. Of three dayes journey long, about two in breadth; thruſting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which ſome of the Ancients called *Ulagium*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*; but by the *Chriſtians* of *Europe* called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Moors*, *Gebelelhudid*. Populous enough, the quality of the men conſidered; ignorant both of letters and of all good manners: Yet not ſo populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*; who have taken all their beſt towns on the Sea-coaſt, and deſtroyed the reſt. Amongſt theſe, 1. *Azaſi*, at the foot of the hills ſo called; ſurpriſed by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Storehouſe for their Merchandiſe. 2. *Azame*, ſeated at the mouth of the River *Ommirobili*, the furtheſt town of this Kingdom towards that of *Feſſe*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till ſubdued by the *Portugeze*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province; but now for fear of thoſe Invaders, in a manner deſolated. 4. *Conte* of the foundation of the *Gothes*. 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. 6. *Subeit*, 7. *Teneracoſt*, 8. *Centpuis*, 9. *Terga*, 10. *Bulahuan*; all ſacked and ruined by the ſame people, when they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is ſaid, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* paſſing through this Province with an Army, to repreſs theſe inſolencies, at every *Altar* (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and ſaid unto this effect: *Lord, thou knoweſt that the cauſe of my coming into this wild place, is onely to free this people of* Duccola *from the rebellious and wicked* Arabians, *and their cruel Enemies the* Chriſtians, *which purpoſe, if thou doeſt not approve of, let the puniſhment fall upon my perſon, but not upon my followers, who deſerve it not.* With greater piety, than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eaſtward of *Duccala*, along the banks of *Ommirobili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful Country, intermixt of rich fields and pleaſant gardens: furniſhed with moſt ſorts of choiſeſt fruits; and amongſt others, Grapes of ſuch extraordinary greatneſs, that they are ſaid to be as big as a Pullets egg. Good ſtore of Honey it hath alſo, and ſome Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil people than any of the reſt, and conſequently more deſerving ſo rich a ſoil. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Ezo*, an old town, ſituate on a lofty mountain. 2. *Elvinina*, of a later erection. *Alemdine*, conquered for the King of *Feſſe* by a Merchant, whoſe Paramour the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleaſant, but little Valley, but begirt with hils, and well inhabithed by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers. 4. *Togodaſt*, on the top of an hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More Eaſt, betwixt *Haſcora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the North, with that of *Feſſe*: from which laſt parted by the

River *Servi*, which on the North east border of it meets with *Ommiroboli*. The whole Province in form *triangular*, of no great either length or breadth, but sufficienly fruitfull, and well inhabited for the bigneſs. Some Towns it hath, and thoſe not meanly populous for ſo ſmall a Province; the chief whereof. 1. *Teſza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Moſques; the walls of which made of a kinde of Marble, which they here call *Teſza*, whence the name of the Town. 2. *Eſza*, ſeated on the River *Ommirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*; which riſing out of *Atlas Minor*, and paſſing by *Teſza* laſt mentioned, doth here loſe its name. 3. *Chythite*, renowned for the ſtout reſiſtance, which it hath made from time to time againſt thoſe of *Feſſe*. 4. *Ethiad*, abounding in all ſorts of victuals.

Theſe Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infeſted miſerably while it remained ſubject to the Kings of *Feſſe*, by the *Portugals* on the one ſide, and the wilde *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which laſt people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk*, they contented themſelves with the command, and left unto the *Natives* the poſſeſſion of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whoſe courſe of life they were well acquainted) to paſſe over *Nilus*. *Elcaim* the laſt of the Succeſſors of *Hucba* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having ſubdued the reſt of *Africk*, and added it unto his Eſtate, paſſed forwards into *Egypt*, which he conquered alſo; aſſuming to himſelf the title of *Caliph*: But in his abſence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africk*, rebelled againſt him; and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdet* for his lawfull Lord, received of him for this good ſervice, the Kingdom of *Africa*. Deſpairing to recover his loſt Eſtate, and yet not willing that it ſhould be uſefull unto his Enemies, he licenced the *Arabians* for a *Ducat* a man, to paſſe over the *Nile* with their Tents and Families. On which agreement, almoſt half the Tribes of *Arabia Deſerta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they ſacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the reſt of the principal Cities: tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till reſtrained at laſt by *Joſeph* the founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they loſt their unlimited Empire, yet they ſtill ſwarm like *Locuſts* over all the Countrey; and neither apply themſelves to tillage, or building houſes, or any civil courſe of life; nor ſuffer thoſe to live in quiet, who would otherwiſe manure and improve the Countrey. The reſt of the Story of theſe Kingdoms we ſhall have anon, when we have taken a Survey of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*.

4. *FESSE.*

THe Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South, with the Realm of *Morocco*, on the North, with parts of the *Atlantick*, and *Mediterranean*; on the Eaſt, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Feſſe* the chief Citie of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, ſo called from the Citie *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greateſt note. Called alſo *Hiſpania Tranſfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, becauſe a part of that *Dioceſe*: and by ſome (*Pliny* amongſt others) *Bogudiania*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cæſar*: by others *Ampeluſia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Countrey of good temperature in regard of the aire, if not in ſome places of the coldeſt: but very unequally diſpoſed of in reſpect of the earth; here being in it many Deſarts and large Forreſts, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightfull Fields. So that taking the eſtimate in the groſſe, it may be ſaid to be a rich and flouriſhing Countrey, hardly inferior unto any. The particularities of which are to be conſidered in the *Characters* of the ſeveral Provinces, into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay. 1. *Temeſna*. 2. *Feſſe*, ſpecially ſo called. 3. *Elchaus*, or *Chaus*. 4. *Garet*. 5. *Algara*. 6. *Erriffe*, and 7 *Habat*.

1. *TEMESNA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*, on the Weſt, the Ocean; extended in length from Weſt to Eaſt 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A champain Countrey, very level; and once ſo populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Caſtles; moſt of them ruined by the wars, and the wilde *Arabians*, the greater deſtroyer of the two. The principal of thoſe remaining. 1. *Teyeget*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited onely by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron inſtruments to manure the Land. 2. *Thagia*, on the courſe of the ſaid River; much viſited by thoſe of *Feſſe*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Feſſans* going thither in *pilgrimage* with ſuch numbers of men, women and children, that their Tents ſeem ſufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Adendun*, more towards the Sea, but on a ſmall River called *Guirla*; well walled, and fenced on one ſide by a Lake, or Pool. 4. *Amſa*, on the ſhore of the *Atlantick*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *Engliſh* and the *Portugals*, by which laſt deſtroyed. 5. *Munſor*, deſtroyed in like manner by the wilde *Arabians*. 6. *Nuchaiaa*, ſituate in ſo fertile and rich a ſoil; that the inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of ſhooes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the wall. 7. *Rabut*, or *Rubut*, built by *Manſor*, or *Almanſor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burugrug*; and by him made one of the beſt peopled Towns in *Africk*: built after the model of *Morocco*, but now ſo waſted, that there are not in it above 500 families; moſt of the ground within the walls being turned into Meadows, Vine-yards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara*, on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolomy*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mahmora*, in the ſame tract alſo, once poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Feſſe*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Caſtilians*. 10. *Salla*, the *Sala* of *Ptolomy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, in ordinary Maps by miſtaking, *Cale*; at the mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almanſor* (who is here interred) with a ſtately Palace, a goodly Hoſpital, a fair Temple, and an Hall of Marble, cut in *Moſaick* works: intended for the burial-place of his poſterity. A Town much

traded

traded formerly by the Christian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Golf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, An. 1287. and within ten dayes lost again: and of late times made a nest of *Pirates*, as dangerous to those which sailed in the Ocean, as the *Pirates* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whose insolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to suppresse for want of shipping, desired the aid of his Majesty *Charls*, King of *Great Brittain*: by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and besieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at last compelled to yield; the works thereof dismantled, the *Pirates* executed, and 300 *Christian* Captives sent unto his Majesty, to be by him restored to their former liberty; to the great honour of his Majesty, and the *English* Nation, An. 1632.

As for the fortunes of this Province, they have been somewhat different from the rest of this Kingdom: trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, whose Estate they very much endangered; sending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being discomfited by *Ioseph*, sirnamed *Telephinus*, he followed them into their own Countrey, which he wasted with great cruelty for ten moneths together; consuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lyons. Repeopled afterwards by *Almansor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province consequently reduced into some good order.

2. Westward of *Temesna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and specially so called. Extended in length from the River *Burugrug* to the River *Inavis*, for the space of 100 miles. A very fruitfull Province, well stored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better sort of Towns in other places: but contrary to the custom of other Countreys, better inhabited on the hills than amongst the vallies; the people making choice of the mountains for their habitation, as places of defence and safety, but husbanding the vallies which lie neareſt to them. Places of most consideration in it. 1. *Macarmeda*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the walls. 2. *Gualili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first founder of *Fesse*. 3. *Peitra Rossa*, where they have some Lyons so tame, that they will gather up bones in the streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lyons to so strange a cowardise, that they will run away at the voice of a childe; whence a *Bracchadochio* is called proverbially a *Lyon* of *Agata*. 5. *Pharao*, by reason of the name, thought by the Vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Volubilis* of *Ptolomy*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accessions. Situate for the most part upon little hillocks, and watered by a pleasant and gentle River (derived by *Aquæducts* and Conduits, into all parts of the Citie) which they now call the River of *Fesse*, conceived by some learned men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the first planter of the *African* Nations. A Citie so beautifull and well seated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their dalliance. The Founder, or enlarger of it, one of the Race of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the East-side of the River; that on the West-side, being the Work of one of his sons: both so increasing, that at last they were joyned together. To these the Suburbs being added, have made a third. The whole called *Fesse*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word, signifying *Gold*; whereof great quantity was found when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 82000 houſholds, and 700 *Moschees*, or *Saracenical* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne*, or *Carnven*, being a mile and a half in compasse. It hath 31 Gates, great and high; the roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publike storehouses of the Town. About the walls are Pulpits of divers sorts, wherein the Masters of their Law read unto the people, such things, as they think to pertain to their salvation. The *Revenue* hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents; for so it was, *An.* 1526. when *Leo Afer* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, inclosed with a strong wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 streets. There is also a Colledge called *Amarodoc*, a most curious and delicate building. It hath three Cloysters of admirable beauty, supported with eight square pillars of divers colours: The roof curiously carved, and the Arches of *Mosaique* work, of Gold and Azure. The Gates of brasse, fair wrought; and the doors of the private Chambers of inlayed work. This Colledge did cost the Founder, King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen*, 480000 Crowns. Here are finally said to be in it many *Hospitals*, little inferior to the Colledges in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *hot Bathes* well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bath themselves: and besides these 200 Innes, built three stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the doors for their Guests to walk in.

3. Eastward of the Territory of *Fesse*, lieth the Province of *CHAUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurngrut*, or *Gurguigarn*, by which parted from *Temesna*, and *Fesse*, to the borders of *Tremesen*, for the space of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom: but meanly populous for the bigneſse, the Countrey being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to prosecute their quarrels, than to Trade, or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Ham Lisnan*, a Town built in the more mountainous parts of the Countrey, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worshipped; to which at certain times men and women resorted in the night; where, after their devotions ended, & the *Candles* put out, every man lay with the woman he first touched; the exact platform of the *Family of Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falsly, charged on the *Primitive* Christians. 2 *Tezza*, adorned

with three Colledges, many Baths, and Hospitals, and some beautifull Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer than that of *Fesse*; in both Towns men of the same Trade have a street by themselves; for greatness, wealth, and numbers of People, esteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3. *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much observable. 4. *Teurert*, seated on the top of an Hill, in the midst of a Plain, but compassed about with *Desarts*. 5. *Beni Jesseten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greatest bravery and wealth consisteth: the women here wearing Iron-rings, for ornaments to their ears and fingers. 6. *Tezergui*, subject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adaggia*, the most Eastern Town of all this Region; situate in a *Peninsula*, made by the confluences of *Muluso* and *Malva*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which rising out of a great Lake in the woods of the Mountain *Seligus*, and receiving many lesser waters; with a large and Navigable stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching East and West, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremesen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Errif*, and *Asgara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The soyl in most places dry and desart, like the Sands of *Numidia*: especially all along the banks of the *Malva*; neer unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly *desart* and unpeopled, not well inhabited in the most fruitfull parts of it, being full of mountains; the worse for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, possessed of 1 *Chesusa*, and 2. *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3. *Pennon* de *Veles*, by some called *Velez de Gomera*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Gothes*; but now in the possession of the *Spaniards* also. 4. *Jafferin*, situate on the Sea also, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family, 5. *Tezzora* standing on an hill, to which there is but one passage only.

5. Westward of *Garet* lieth *ASGARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South east-side with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which last runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix* by *Ptolomy*. The Aire hereof very temperate, and the soyl as fertile; supplying with the over-plus of its Commodities, the mountainous parts of *Fesse*, and the Desarts of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and destroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1. *Giumba*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches, 2 *Larache*, in *Latine Larissa*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolomy*, situate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furnished with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; garrisoned whan possessed by the *Moors* with 300 light horse, and 300 *Harcabuziers*; but better fortified than before, since possessed by the *Spaniards*, into whose hands it was put by *Muley-Shek* king of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, when worsted by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the civil Wars betwixt them. 3. *Cusar Elcabir*, given by *Almanser* to a Poor Fisher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he lost his Company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospital.

6. On the North of *Asgara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT* coasting along the *Atlantick* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 miles, about 80. in breadth. The Country very plentifull of all manner of necessaries, and very well Peopled; the mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times replenished with many Cities, both of the foundation of the *Gothes*, *Romans*, and old *African Moors*, now much diminished by the Wars. Those of most note, 1 *Ezaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient Priviledge granted by the Kings of *Fesse*, were licensed to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a mountain, neer the River *Guarga*, about 35 leagues from *Fesse*; and garrisoned with 400 Horse for fear of the *Portugals*, who sometimes make their excursions thither, 2. *Basra*, once a walled Town, and the Walls still standing, but very little or no Town in them. 3 *Homar*, sometimes wel-Peopled, but now little inhabited, by reason of the ill neighbourhood, of the *Portugals*, who command that Coast. 4 *Banirendo*, in a manner deserted for the same reason. 5 *Alcazaer*, to distinguish it from another of this name, called *Alcazer Guer*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alfonso* the fift of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings *Sebastian* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet*, and *Abdemelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were, slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great *English* Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *Anno* 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his *Holiness* created Marquis of *Leinster*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viscount *Murraugh*, and Baron of *Rosse*. Thus furnished, he began his journey toward *Ireland*, *Anno* 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his honours with his life. 6 *Arzilla* a Sea-Town, 70 miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*. 7 *Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the sword of *Josuah*; testified by the two Pillars erected near this Citie, which before we spoke of: and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitania*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperour *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out-lived the new. Near to this Town it is said that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus*, a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain* was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Hercules* placed his so famous Pillars. 8. *Septa*, or *Senta*, situate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earle to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, An. 1415. and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The onely Town of all the Estates of *Portugal*, which in the late

revolt

revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9. *Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a *Roman* Colony, by *Augustus Cæsar*. 10. *Laxus*, a *Roman* Colony of the Plantation of *Claudius*, in old times said to have been the Court, or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Gerion*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Gerionis Insula*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of *E R R I F*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nochor* (supposed to be the *Meluchath* of the Ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A mountainous and cold Countrey in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forrests; but plentifull enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40 onely; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but excessive *Drunkards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages; The chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town, and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*: in vain besieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 men, *An.*1562. 2. *Mezemme*, seated on a mountain. 3. *Beni-Jerso*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an University; the inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed together with the *Library* of it, by some wicked Tyrant, *Anno* 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4. *Terga*. 5. *Tegassa*. 6. *Gebbe*; of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general story, from the time of the *Saracenical* conquest; First let into this Countrey by the Treason of *Iulian*, and for a while subject to the great *Caliph*, or Successor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or *Caliph* of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces with the rest were afflicted by them; till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fez*: begun in the person of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, & his daughter *Fatima*; commonly called the Family of *Alaveci*; who persecuted by the opposite faction, fled into *Mauritania*; where he grew into such reputation, that in short time he got both swords into his hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hegira*, he left his power unto his son, of the same name with his father; the first founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the water, one of his sons (but his name I finde not) built another Citie, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raising by that means a faction in the house of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the family of the *Alaveci*, for the space of 270 years. The estate hereof first weakned by *Abu Tesin*, or *Texifien*, of the house of the *Almoravides*, or *Lautunes*, and so weakned, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Ioseph Aben Teifin*, or *Telephine*, his son and Successour, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the Citie of *Morocca*, to suppresse that family: Who killing the Princes of that line, and 30000 of their subjects, brake down the walls which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the dissention of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom, unto his dominions: held by his Successours, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the house, or family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings, or MIRAMOMOLIMS of MOROCCO.

A. Ch.

1068. 1 *Teifin*, *Texifien*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Almoravides*, that reigned in *Africk*.

2 *Ioseph*, firnamed *Telephinus*, the son of *Teifin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*; and added the Estate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, An.1091.

3 *Hali*, the son of *Ioseph*.

4 *Albo-Halis*, the son of *Hali*, supposed to be the publisher of the vvorks now extant in the name of *Avicenne*, compiled at his command by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by

5 *Abdelmon*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the first of the *Almohades*; of obscure parentage, but raised to so great power by the practises of *Almohad* a jugling *Prophet* of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of the *Almoravides*, both in *Spain* and *Africk*, An.1150. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.

6 *Joseph* II. or *Aben-Joseph*, the son of *Abdelmon*.

7 *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, firnamed *Almansor*; a puissant and prudent Prince, of whom much before; son of *Ioseph* II.

8 *Mahomet*, firnamed *Enaser*, or the *Green*, the brother of *Almansor*. Discomfited by the *Christians* of *Spain*, at the battel of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. lost his dominions; there being slain in this battel 200000 of the *Moors*, as some Writers say; who add, that the *Spaniards* for two dayes together burnt no other fewel but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their slaughtered Enemies, yet could not consume the one half of them.

9 *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enaser*, by his son *Buxaf*: slain at the siege of *Tremezezir*, a Castle of *Tremesin*, which was held against him.

10 *Almorcada*, a kinsman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his estate, and slain by *Budebuz*, of the same house of the *Almohades*.

11 *Budebuz*, the last of the house of the *Almohades*, setled in this estate by the aid and valour of *Iacob Aben-Ioseph* the new King of

of *Fesse*: but dealing faithlesly and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the said *Jacob Ben-Joseph*, vanquished and slain in battel; the soveraignty by that means translated unto those of the *Marine* family, An. 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine* family, I must again look back upon *Mahomet Enaser*, whom I conceive (the putation of the time being so agreeable) to be the *Admiralius Murmelius* mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, An. 1214. is said to have sent such a degenerous and unchristian Embassage. Which strange name of *Admiralius Murmelius*, was by that good Writer unhappily stumbled at, instead of *Miramomolim* (which also is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to say, *Princeps Fidelium*:) an Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen*-Moors did much affect, and retained it long time amongst them. The Story this. King *John* being over-laid by his *Barons* wars, and the invasions of the *French*; sent Ambassadours to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of *Spain*, and *Barbary*) for aid against them: offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withall the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Ambassadours that he had lately read the book of *Pauls* Epistles; which he liked so well, that were he now to choose a Religion, he would have imbraced *Christianity* before any other: But every man (saith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greatest thing which he disliked in that Apostle, being (as he said) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This said, he called unto him *Robert* of *London* Clark, one of the Ambassadours (a man ill chose for such an Errand, if the tale be true,) of whom he demanded the form of the *English* Government, the situation and wealth of the Countrey, the manners of the people, the life and person of the King: in which being satisfied, he grew into such a dislike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the substance of the story in *Matthew-Paris*: But you must know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy; and therefore this Relation not to passe for Gospel.

But whatsoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of this King (to whom 't is possible enough he might send for aid) certain it is, that he was grown so low in his Reputation, after the losse of that great battel in *Siera Morena*: that not onely the *Spanish Moors* withdrew their obedience from him (as a Prince unable to support them, but those of *Africk* did revolt also from the Crown of *Morocco* (extreamly weakned by that blow) after his decease. For *Gomoranca Aben Zein* of the house of *Abdaluad*, seized upon *Tremesen*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Successour; as *Bucar Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family (descended from a *Christian* stock) did the like at *Fez*. Setled in his estate by the vanquishment of *Almorcada* the *Miramomolim*; he left it to *Hiaja* his son, under the governance and protection of a brother of his called *Iacob Ben-Ioseph*. But the young Prince dying shortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle: who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) dispossessed *Almorcada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: and afterwards having just cause of quarrel against this *Budebuz*, invaded his Dominions, overcame and slew him; and once again transferred the Imperial seat from *Morocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their residence in *Fez*, as the first seat of their power; *Morocco* being governed by an under-King, the rest of the Provinces of that Kingdom *cantonned* into several States; the Sea-coasts in some tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his line (but with great confusions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500. and somewhat after. Three onely were of note in the course of businesse, that is to say, 1 *Iacob Ben-Ioseph*, the advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the establisher thereof in that of *Fesse*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algarir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance; slain treacherously by one of his familiar friends, at the siege of *Tremesen*. 2. *Aben-Ioseph* the second, a younger son of this first *Ioseph* (the issue of *Bucalo* his elder brother being quite extinct) succeeded after *Abortade*, the sixth of the *Marine* Family, in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremesen*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Alboali* his eldest son, continually in Arms against him. 3. *Alboacen*, the son of this *Aben-Joseph*, and the eighth of the *Marine* Family, who after a siege of 30 moneths took the Citie of *Tremesen*, and with that the Kingdom. But not so fortunate in his wars against the *Christian* Kings of *Spain*; against whom he led an Army of 400000 Foot, and 70000 Horse, with all other necessaries: but vanquished by the two Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal*, with far lesser forces; (their Army consisting but of 25000 foot, and 14000 horse) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*, An. 1340. Deposed soon after his return by his son *Alboanen*, who lost all which his Father and the first of the *Aben Iosephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining even in *Africk* it self: the Kingdom of *Tremesen*, and the greatest part of the new Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themselves from their obedience in the East parts of *Barbary*; as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the West. The Kingdom of the *Marines* thus approching near its fatal Period, it fortuned about the year 1508. that *Mahomet Ben-Amet* a Native of *Dara*, in the further *Numidia*, or *Bilodulgerid*, pretending a descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, caused himself to be called *Xeriffe*; the name by which the kindred and Successors of that *Impostor* use to call themselves: and being a poor *Hermit* onely (with which *Mountebanks* and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this people have from time to time been extreamly fooled) plotted to make his sons the chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he sent them in Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, whence they returned with such an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Fesse*, made *Amet* the second of them Governour of the famous Colledge of *Amadurach*; the youngest called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his children; the eldest named *Abael*, staying at home with his Father, to expect the issue; slain afterwards in the war undertaken by the other two against the *Portugals*. In those days the *Portugals* grievously infested the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to represse whose insolencies, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained

obtained Commiſſion: though much oppoſed therein by Muley the Kings brother, who told him how unſafe it vas to truſt to an armed hypocriſie: aſſuring him, that if they once came unto any power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raiſe) it would not be eaſie to ſuppreſs them. But this good counſel was rejected, and the war went forward. Furniſhed with an Army, they diſcomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* forces under King *Emanuel*; compell that King to abandon all his footing there; they ſubdue *Duccala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poiſon the tributary King, and ſalute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, inveſting *Mahomet* the other brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the career of their ſucceſſes died the King of *Feſſe*; and *Amet* his ſucceſſor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam*-Tutors in their new Eſtates, conditioned they ſhould hold of him as the Lord in chief, and pay him the accuſtomed tributes.

The XERIFFES of MOROCCO.

A. C. 1 *Amet* denied both tribute and ſuperiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a ſet field; and was after vanquiſhed and diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdom, (upon ſome quarell breaking out) by his brother *Mahomet*.

1544. 2 *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Feſſe* unto it alſo by the vanquiſhment of *Amet* the King thereof; ſlain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.

1557. 3 *Abdalla*, the ſon of *Mahomet*.

1572. 4 *Abdalla* II. Sonne of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he ſlew ten: *Hamet* being ſpared by reaſon of his ſuppoſed ſimplicity, and *Abdelmelech* eſcaping to the *Turks*.

5 *Mahomet* II. Sonne of *Abdalla* the ſecond, expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal* who together with the two Competitors were ſlain in one day at the battel of *Alcazar Guer*, Anno 1578.

1578. 6 *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Libya*, and *Numidia*, to the Realm of *Morocco*, not abſolutely ſubdued before.

1603. 7 *Muley Sheck* the eldeſt ſon of *Hamet*, oppoſed in his Succeſſion by *Boferes*, and *Sidan*, his two younger brethren; in which War he dyed; as did alſo *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the ſon of *Muley Sheck* had regained *Morocco*.

1607. 8 *Sidan* the third ſon of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed King of *Fez*, (where he was with his father when he died) and having won *Morocco* from *Abdalla* the ſon of *Muley Sheck*, became maſter of that Kingdom alſo. Stripped afterwards of *Feſſe* and *Morocco* both, by the oppoſite factions; diſtreſſed by *Hamet Ben Abdela* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himſelf; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocriſie, who ſeemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Eſtate; by whoſe aſſiſtance he was once more poſſeſſed of *Morocco*. Theſe tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to ſome degree of peace and quietneſs, (though never abſolutely reduced under his command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pyrats neſt themſelves in *Salla*, a Port-town of the Realm of *Feſſe*: creating thence great miſchief to him both by ſea and land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countries, whoſe buſines led them towards thoſe Seas. Unable to ſuppreſs them for want of ſhipping, he craved aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whoſe aſſiſtance he became Maſter of the Port, deſtroyed the Pyrates, and ſent Three hundred *Chriſtian* Captives for a Preſent to his Sacred Majeſty, *An* 1562. Nor ſtaid he here; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he ſent a Letter to His Majeſty to lend him the like aid againſt thoſe of *Algiers*, who did as much infeſt the *Mediterranean*, as the Pyrats of *Salla* did the *Ocean*. The tenor of which Letter, as ſavouring of more piety than could be poſſibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majeſty, I have here ſubjoyned.

The Letter of the King of MOROCCO, to the King of ENGLAND.

WHen theſe our Letters ſhall be ſo happy as to come to your Majeſties ſight, I wiſh the Spirit of the righteous God may ſo direct your mind, that you may joyfully imbrace the Meſſage I ſend; preſenting to you the means of exalting the Majeſty of God, and your own Reward amongſt men. The Regal power allotted to us, makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of thoſe People whom we govern: So that obſerving the duties we owe to God, we deliver bleſſings to the World; in providing for the publike good of our States, we magnifie the honour of God, like the Celeſtial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet ſerve only to the benefit of the World. It is the Exellencie of our Office, to be

Inſtruments

Inſtruments, whereby happineſs is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir! This is not to inſtruct, (for I know I ſpeak to one of a more cleer and quick ſight than my ſelf) but I ſpeak this, becauſe God hath pleaſed to grant me a happy Victory over ſome part of thoſe Rebellious Pyrats, *that have ſo long moleſted the peaceful Trade of* Europe; *and hath preſented further occaſion to root out the generation of thoſe, who have been ſo pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, ſince it hath pleaſed God to be ſo auſpicious to our beginnings in the Conqueſt of* Salla, *that we might joyn and proceed in hope of like ſucceſs, in the war againſt* Tunis, Algier, *and other places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane villainies of thoſe who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whileſt we interrupt the corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we ſhall glorifie the great God; and perform a Duty that will ſhine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may ſee and reverence: A work that ſhall aſcend as ſweet as the perfume of the moſt precious Odours, in the noſtrils of the Lord; A work gratefull and happy to men. A work whoſe memory ſhall be reverenced ſo long, as there ſhall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and magnanimous Spirits; that ſhall laſt as long as there be any remaining amongſt men that love and honour the piety and vertue of Noble minds. This Action I here willingly preſent to You, whoſe piety and vertues equal the greatneſs of your power: that we, who are Servants to the Great and mighty GOD, may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action preſents unto us. Now becauſe the Ilands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered ſtrength of their Shipping, I have ſent this my truſty Servant and Ambaſſador, to know whether in your Princely wiſdome you ſhall think fit to aſsiſt me with ſuch Forces by Sea, as ſhall be anſwerable to thoſe I provide by Land: which if you pleaſe to grant, I doubt not but the* Lord of Hoſts *will protect and aſsiſt thoſe that fight in ſo glorious a Cauſe. Nor ought you to think this ſtrange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and accord of Nations, ſhould exhort to a War. Your great Prophet* CHRIST IESUS *was the* Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, *as well as the* Lord *and* Giver of Peace: *which may ſignifie unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, muſt always appear with the terror of his* Sword, *and wading through* Seas of blood, *muſt arrive to Tranquillity. This made* JAMES *your Father of glorious memory, ſo happily renowned amongſt all Nations. It was the noble fame of your Princely vertues, which reſounds to the utmoſt corners of the Earth, that perſwaded me to invite you to partake of that Bleſsing, wherein I boaſt my ſelf moſt happy. I wiſh God may heap the riches of his bleſsings on you, increaſe your happineſs with your dayes, and hereafter perpetuate the greatneſs of your Name in all Ages.*

Such was the Letter of that King; whoſe motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the deſigne. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purpoſes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire; before the late diſtractions made it leſs conſiderable. And firſt for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffes* are the abſolute Lords of the whole Eſtate, and of his ſubjects, goods and bodies. The tenth and firſt fruits of all ſorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of courſe; though many times contented in the name of the firſts fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land, throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head whether male or female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandiſe he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impoſt alſo upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is ſole Heir of all their Goods: and yet advanceth great ſums by the ſale of thoſe Offices. And in the levying of ſuch Taxes as are extraordinary, he uſeth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate ſomwhat of his Due, may think themſelves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdülla* the firſt, at the ſiege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, *An.* 1562. had no leſs then 200000 men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the battel of *Alcazar Guez*, againſt King *Sebaſtian*, had 40000 Horſe and 80000 Foot, beſides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being ſuppoſed that he might have raiſed 30000 Horſe more (nowithſtanding the ſtrong party wich was made againſt him) had he thought it neceſſary. It is ſaid alſo that *Abdalla* kept in conſtant pay 60000 Horſe, of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kimgdom of *Feſſe*: out of which he called 5000 of the beſt and ableſt for the guard of his perſon, well mounted and as richly furniſhed. Beſides theſe he hath bodies of Horſe in continual readineſs, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Penſions given amongſt the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the mountains, and up and down in the skirts of his Country, is furniſhed at his need with ſupplies from them. Well ſtored with Ammunition alſo, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gun-powder laid up monethly in his famous *Arſenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to ſtay long (not above 3 months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Proviſions are conſumed, to diſſolve and ſcatter.

THE

THE ISLES OF BARBARY.

THe *ISLES* of *BARBARY*, which make up the fifth and last part thereof, are situate neer the *African* shores of the *Mediterranean*, assigned by *Ptolomy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number sixteen: 1 *Hydras*. 2. *Calathe*. 3 *Dracontias*, now called *Chelbi*. 4 *Ægymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Æginarus*, and now *Guietta*. 5. *Laruneſia*, now *Mollium*. 6 *Lapeduſa*, now *Lampedoſa*. 7 *Meſyrus*, 8 *Pontia*, 9 *Gaia*; all of little note. 10 *Inſula Glauconis*, with a City of the same name in it, now called *Goza*, and subject to the Knigths of *Malta*. 11 *Æthuſa*, by some called *Æguſa*, and consequently mistaken for *Ægates*, which lieth neer *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow, *viz.*

1. *COSYRA*, now called *Pantalaria*, equally distant from *Africk* and the Isle of *Sicil*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the most part, and full of a black kind of Stone: the soyl not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-wool; well stored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horses. The People poor, by Religion *Christians*, and subject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both sexes, and in their speech and habit coming neer the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the same name with the Island, situate on the Sea-side in the Northern part of it, defended with a very strong Castle.

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, situate neer the coast of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the lesser *Syrtis*: In length 25 miles, in breadth half as much, but in some places not above five. Exceeding fruitfull in old times, able to furnish (as they did) the wants of *Cæsar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magno frumenti numero* Cercinæ *invento, naves onerarias, quarum ibi ſatis magna copia, complet, atque in caſtra ad* Cæſarem *mittit*, are the words of the History. It hath a Town of the same name. Of no great note in way of story, but for an handsom piece of wit here shewed by *Annibal*. Who flying from *Carthage*, met here some Merchants of that City, who had there some shipping in the Haven, and standing in some doubt lest by their discovery of his flight he might be pursued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailers, and borrowed all their Sails to set up a tent for their entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them asleep, he made on for *Asia*; secure enough not to be pursued untill out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by some *Gerbe*, is situate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the main Land by a narrow Ford. The Iland full of Bogs and Marishes, without other water, and in the midst of it somewhat hilly; indifferently fruitfull, yielding Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill and the like commodities; inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but simply apparelled. It had in it anciently two Cities, 1 *Meninx*, which sometimes gave name unto the Iland called *Meninx* by some elder Writers. 2 *Gerrapolis*, both now destroyed: instead whereof there is now one of more note than the rest, called by the same name with the Iland, and fortified with a very strong Castle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Iland taken by the *Christian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did submit himself; conditioning to pay the yeerly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Ostriches, four Sparrow Hawks, and four Falcons. But the *Christians* were scarce warm in their new possession, when besieged in the Castle by *Pial Bassa*, to whom after some extremities they were fain to yield: there perishing in this unfortunate Action, by sword, famine, and sickness, 15000 *Christians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the Inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is distant about five miles from the Isle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the fift. The Iland 30 miles in compass, well watered and very fruitfull. So great an Enemy to Serpents and all venemous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here brought from other places. The People *Christians*, but they speak the same Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the same name with the Iland, beautified with a Capacious Haven, lying betwixt the West and South. and strongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls, into endless thraldom.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Ilands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Isle of *Sicil*: distant from this last about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about sixty miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. situate in the beginning of the fourth *Clime*, and eighth *Parallell*; so that the longest day in Summer is but 14 hours.

*Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolomy* and other Writers, but also in the Book of the *Acts*, in the story of St. *Pauls* Ship-wrack; this being the place where he and all his company were cast on land: in memory whereof was built a little Chappell in the place of his Landing. So called most probably ἀπὸ τῆς μέλιτος, from the abundance of honey which it yielded in former times: *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 measures of honey, and store of *Melitensian* Rayments: *Jam non quæro unde* 400 *amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum* Melitensium *Veſtium*, saith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the same place for both; this Island being a neer neighbour of *Sicil*, which *Verres* governed then as Prætor. Nor is it strange that an Island of the coast of *Africk*, and using for the most part the *Phœcinian* or *Punick* Language, should borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming hither from the Isle of *Sicil*, and inhabiting here; and the whole Island sometimes subject to the power of the *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the most part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is ſituate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by conſequence, of no great fertility, the want of which is ſupplied with the plenties of *Sicil*. Yet have they here no ſmall ſtore of Pomegranats, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent fruits, both for taſte and colour. They have alſo great abundance of Cotten Wool (*Goſſypium* the *Latiniſts* call it) which they ſowe as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wool, hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commoditie of this Wool, and the cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Iland in great eſteem; thinking themſelves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*.

The natural Inhabitants of it are ſaid to be churliſh and uncivil; of the *African* Language and complexion; but followers of the Church of *Rome*, the *Religion* whereof theſe Knights are ſworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, ſuppoſed to be 20000. poſſeſſed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1 *Malta*, ſo called by the name of the Iland, in the middle of which it is ſituate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the ſtrength and ſafety of the Iland lying in defence of the Shores and Havens. 2 St. *Hermes* a ſtrong Caſtle at the point of a long *Languet* or tongue of Rock, thruſting out betwixt the two beſt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1565, but at no cheaper rate then 20000 ſhot of Cannon, and the loſſe of 10000 of their men. 3 *Valette* ſituate on the ſame Languet, not far from the Caſtle of S. *Hermes*, (or rather lying cloſe unto it) extended the whole breadth of the ſaid Languet from the one Sea to the other: and ſo commanding both the Havens. Built ſince the departure of the *Turks*, impregnably fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valets*, the great Maſter, who ſo gallantly repulſed their fury. In this Town the *great Maſter* hath his Palace, and the Knights their ſeveral *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handſome buildings. 4 *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eaſtern Haven: at the extremity of which Promontory in a Demy Iland ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of 5 S. *Angelo*, built on a Rock, oppoſite to *Valette*, on the other ſide of the Haven; and found impregnable by the *Turks*, who in vain beſieged it. 6 *Iſola* a ſmall Citie and better deſerving the name of a Town, ſituate in another Promontory, on the South of the other, defended on the Weſt-ſide by a ſtrong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the Eaſtſide, by the impregnable Caſtle of S. *Michael*; in vain aſſaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill ſucceſſe at the Siege hereof, gave over the enterprize, and ſailed home.

The people of this Iland originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with ſome *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicil*, as before was ſaid. For the moſt part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till ſubdued by the *Saracens*: By the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the fift given to the Knights of the *Rhodes*; not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1522. Theſe Knights are in number 1000; of whom, 500 are always to be reſident in the Iland. The other 500 are diſperſed thorow *Chriſtendom*, at their ſeveral Seminaries, in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *Germany*; and at any ſummons, are to make their perſonal appearance. Theſe Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number ſeven, *viz.* one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Caſtile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Countrey where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminay* they had in *England*, till the ſuppreſſion of it by *Henry* the 8th. yet they have ſome one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the orignal and riches of theſe Knights, we have ſpoken when we were in *Paleſtine*; now a word or two onely of their places, and the election of their *great Maſter*. None are admitted into the Order, but ſuch as can bring a teſtimony of their *Gentry* for ſix deſcents: and when the Ceremonies of their Admiſſion (which are many) are performed, they ſwear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiours*, to live upon the Revenues of their *Order*, onely, and withall to live chaſtly. Of theſe there be 16 of great authority (*Counſellours of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Croſſes*; out of whom the Officers of their Order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*, &c. are choſen; and who, together with the *Maſter*, puniſh ſuch as are convict of any crime, 1. by degrading him, 2*ly*. by ſtrangling him, and 3*ly*. by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Maſter* is dead, they ſuffer no Veſſell to go out of this Iland, till another be *elected*, leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their *election*; which is performed in this manner. The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*: theſe 16 from amongſt themſelves chooſe eight; theſe eight chooſe a Knight, a Prieſt, and a Frier-ſervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Croſſes*, elect the *great Maſter*. The *great Maſter* being thus choſen, is ſtiled (though but a Frier) *The moſt illuſtrious, and moſt reverend Prince, the* Lord Frier N. N. Great Maſter *of the Hoſpital of* S. John of Jeruſalem, *Prince of* Malta, Gaules, *and* Goza. Far different I aſſure you, from that of the firſt Maſters of this Order, who called themſelves onely *Servant to the poor Servitors of the Hoſpital of* Jeruſalem; or that of the Maſter of the *Templers*, who was onely intituled *The humble Miniſter of the poor Knights of the Temple*.

This Iland is conceived to yield to the *great Maſter* the yeerly rent of 10000 *Ducats*, the greateſt part whereof ariſeth out of *Cotten-wool*: beſides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Eſtate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thouſands of Crowns yearly out of the treaſure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the beſt *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the ſcowring of the Seas, and ſecuring their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 piece of Ordinance, with which they make excurſions many times to the coaſts of *Greece*.

And ſo much for *BARBARY*.

MOUNT

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we muſt paſſe over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of hills, of exceeding great heighth, and of no ſmall length. So high that the top, or *Summis* of it is above the Clouds, at leaſt ſo high that the eye of man is not able to diſcern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen*, Atlas (ſaith Herodotus) *ita ſublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non poſſint.* Yet notwithſtanding, it is alwayes covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of aſcent by reaſon of the ſharp and craggy *precipices*, which occur in many places of it; the reſt where plainer, and more even, of ſuch wondrous ſteepneſſe, that the *precipices* of the Rocks ſeem the ſafer way. Full of thick woods, and yielding to the Countreys on the North-ſide of it, the greateſt part of the Rivers, which refreſh and moiſten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of ſuch ſelf-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth; not planted, graffed, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it is on the ſhores of the Weſtern Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick* Ocean; in the 26 Degree, and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and paſſing on directly Eaſtward, draw near unto the borders of *Egypt*; part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Libya*, only interpoſing. It is now called *Anchiſa*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas* from *Atlas* a King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; fained by the Poets to be turned into this hill by *Perſeus*, and the head of *Meduſa*. Of the daughters of this King, their golden fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Heſperides*, we have ſpoke already; though ſome remove the place of their habitation more into the Weſt (then by us diſpoſed of) and others into certain Iſlands of the *Weſtern* Ocean, which we ſhall meet withall hereafter. He was ſaid to have been a man of ſuch wondrous height, that the Heavens reſted on his ſhoulders; of which, when weary, he diſcharged his burden on the ſhoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction either taken from the *height* of the Mountain, the top whereof ſeemeth to touch the ſky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Aſtronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; In which knowledge he inſtructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* deſcription of it, take it thus from *Virgil.*

——*Jamque volans apicem & latera ardua cernit*
Atlantis *duri, Cœlum qui vertice fulcit.*
Atlantis, *cinctum aſſidue cui nubibus atris*
Piniferum caput & vento pulſatur & imbri.
Nix humeros infuſa tegit, tum flamina mento
Præcipitant ſenis, & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words.

Then flying, he the top and ſides deſcries
Of Atlas, *whoſe proud head ſupport's the ſkies.*
Atlas, *whoſe Pinie head with Clouds incloſed*
Is to the ſtorms of winde and rain expoſed.
Now hide's the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with ice ore-grown.

OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

LIBYA INTERIOR is bounded on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary*, and *Cyrenaica*; on the Eaſt, with *Libya Marmarica*, interpoſed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Nigro's*; and on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reaſon of the name we have ſeen before, given to this Countrey in regard of its contiguouſneſſe and reſemblance to the other *Libya*; or elſe becauſe deſcended from the Children of *Lehabim*, by which that Countrey was firſt planted. For of King *Libs*, or Queen *Libya* (the daughter of *Epaphus*, and *Caſſiopæa*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I ſhall take no notice. Diſtinguiſhed from the other, by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main land of *Africa*; the other being partly a *Maritine* Countrey.

Of the nature of the ſoyl and people we ſhall ſpeak anon, when we come to take a view of its ſeveral parts. Look we now on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: when, though not ſo well travelled, or diſcovered as in theſe laſt times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and ſituation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our later Writers have preſented to us. The Rivers of moſt note. 1. *Salathus*. 2. *Chuſarus*. 3. *Ophiodus*. 4. *Noius*. 5. *Maſſa*. 6. *Sobus*. 7. *Daradus*. 8. *Stachiris*, and 9 *Maſitholus*; all of them paying tribute to the Weſtern, or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of moſt note. 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salatus*. 2. *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*. 3. *Ryſſadius*, from whence *Stachiris*. 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Currus*

(of which more anon) whence *Maſſitholus*; and Mount *Capas*, out of which *Daradas*, have their firſt Originals. Then there are, 5. Mount *Uſurgala*, and 6 Mount *Girgiris*, from the firſt of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the laſt that of *Cyniphus* do derive their waters: & paſſing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which theſe Mountains ſeem to be ſome diſmembred limbs) croſſe the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themſelves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Beſides theſe, more within the Land, we finde the famous Rivers of *Gir*, and *Niger*: of which the firſt maketh the two great Lakes of *Nuba*, and *Cheloindas*; the ſecond, thoſe as great, or greater, called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Libya*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Countrey ſo well watered as this ſeems to be; our Modern Writers ſhould complain of ſuch want of water: as if there were neither Spring nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moiſten and refreſh the earth, but the dews of Heaven, or ſome Pits of Salt and brackiſh water, not worth the taſting. *Ptolomy* muſt either be miſtaken, which I hardly think; or our late *Travellers* not ſo punctual in their obſervations, which I rather credit: or elſe the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenarum vaſtitatibus diſperduntur*, muſt be dried up and ſwallowed in theſe ſandy Deſarts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath hapned ſome later conflagration than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed, than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

Hinc facta eſt Libye, *raptis humoribus æſtu*
Arida. —— Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendeth.
A Sandie Deſart Lybia *then became,*
Her full veins emptied by the thirſtie flame.

Places of note and name in thoſe elders times, 1 *Salathes*, on the River ſo named, 2 *Bagaxi*, 3 *Iarzitha*, and 4 *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of *Cities*. 5 *Garama*, 6 *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Nations. Then there were two Havens of ſome good eſteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphoſius*; beſides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of theſe on the banks of the River *Niger*:) whoſe names and ſituation do occur in *Ptolomy*; which ſhews the Countrey not to be ſo unhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by ſome other (but leſſe diligent) Writers.

Nations of moſt note in it in the former times, were the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a reſolute and unconquered people, *Genus inſuperabile bello*, as we finde in *Virgil*: 2 the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and ſpacious territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*; ſuppoſed to be the moſt remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the Eaſt; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet. 3. the *Pyrrhæi*, an *Æthiopick* Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*: 4 the *Nigritæ*, originally *Æthiopians* alſo, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*; 5 the *Odranguli*, of the ſame original extraction, poſſeſſing the Countrey between the Mountains *Capha*, and *Thala*; 6 the *Perorſori*, dwelling neer the hills called *Deorum Currus*; 7 the *Meinaci*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8 the *Nabæ*, on the Weſt of *Vallis Garamantica*. 9 the *Derbici*, dwelling on the weſt of the hill *Aranga*. And 10 the *Pſylli*, placed by *Ptolomie* amongſt the Inhabitans of *Cyrene*: but ſo neer the borders of this Countrey, and ſo far from the civilities of thoſe Nations which converſed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*; that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a nature ſo venomous, that they could poyſon a Snake. Inſomuch, that when their wives were delivered, they would throw their children amongſt a bed of *Serpents*; ſuppoſing that childe to be born of an *adulterate* bed, the very ſmell of whoſe body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poyſonous vermine. Others there were of leſſe note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of ſmall fame, and therefore not material to be here inſerted; thoſe of moſt note, the *Africerones* (whom ſome Authors call the *Gampſaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greateſt as it ſeems of thoſe leſſer Nations. None of them of much note in the way of ſtory, except they were theſe *Libyans*, which are ſo famouſed in *Herodotus* for an expedition they made againſt the *South winde*. For when this winde blowing abroad the hills and deſarts of ſand, had dried up thoſe many rills and waters they had among them; they to revenge this injury, by common conſent armed themſelves, and went to fight againſt him. But they took not the *South winde* unprepared. For he muſtered up his forces, incountred them with ſuch a brave volley of ſand, that he overwhelmed and ſlew them all. A better friend was the North winde to the Citizens of *Rhegium*, in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having ſcattered a mighty fleet, which *Dionyſius* prepared againſt them, he was by the common-councell, made free of their City. That part of *Cæſars* war, which was managed here, we ſhall hereafter meet with on another occaſion.

Thus having took a view of the ſtate of this Countrey, as it ſtood of old; we will next look upon it in its preſent condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1 *Biledulgerid*, or *Numidia*: 2 *Libya Deſerta*, or *Sarra*; and 3. a great part of that Countrey which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But becauſe the greateſt part of this laſt Countrey is to come under another Accompt, we will here onely take the two firſt into conſideration.

1. *NUMIDIA*.

1. *NUMIDIA*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Egypt*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas* which parteth it from *Barbarie*, and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deſerta*.

It

It was thus first called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whose description of all *Africk* we are much beholding; because of that resemblance which the people of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the custom of the *Nomades*, living without houses, under their Wagons, and Carts, as *Lucan* testifieth of them, thus:

Nulla domus, plaustris habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvectare Penates.

They dwell in wains, not houses; and do stray
Through fields, and with them lead their gods each way.

And worthily may they owe their names to them, from whom they borrow so much of their nature: for the people to this day spend their lives in hunting, and stay but three or four dayes in a place, as long as the grasse will serve the *Camels*. This is the cause why this Countrey is so ill peopled, the Towns so small in themselves, and so remote from others. An example hereof is *Teffet* a great City in their esteem, which yet containeth but 400 housholds, and hath no neighbours within 300 miles of it.

The Countrey aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dactylorum regio*, and in the Arabick *Biledulgerid*, which signifieth also a *Date-region*. These *Dates* (to speak properly) the fruit of the Palm Trees, usually growing in hot Countries, of which some are male, some female; the first bringing forth onely flowers, the other fruit: and yet the male so beneficial to the increase of the *Dates*, that unlesse a flowred bough of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in case they bear any *Dates* at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people: but this sweet meat hath sowr sawce; for it commonly rotteth their teeth betimes. As for the stones of these *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield store of milk. The Aire hereof, of so sound a nature; that if a man be troubled with the *French disease*, he shall there, without any course of *Physick*, finde a present remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Countrey are said to be a base and vile people, Thieves, Murderers, treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding most commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting bread a Diet for their Festival dayes. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in most part of the Countrey, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenuous, liberal, and civil. The Garments of these *Numidians*, of the courset cloath, so short, that they cover not half the body: the richer sort, distinguished by a *Jacket* of *blue Cotton* with wide sleeves. Their Steeds are *Camels*, which they ride on without *stirrop*, or so much as a *saddle*; a leather, thrust through an hole made in the nose of the *Camel*, serves them for a *Bridle*; and to save the charge of *Spurs*, they make use of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometisme*, to which perverted (*Christianity* having once had some footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi* and other people of those parts then subdued by the *Saracens*: who held them for a Nation of so little reckoning, that no man of accompt amongst them would descend so low, as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the *Chiefs*, or Heads of their several *Clans!*

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and possibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolomy*. The rest which are mentioned in that Author, rising out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding these barren wildernesses to afford them the readiest *Channels*; are trained along by the allurements of the Sands; and are either swallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirsty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the last for thirst in the midst of the *Desarts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a distinction into better and worse.) 1 *DARA*; more cultivated than the rest, because of the River running thorow it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of so different a nature from all the rest, that here the Countrey people have some scattered Villages, the better sort their several Castles. 2 *PESCARA*, so called from the chief Town of it, exceedingly infested with Scorpions; the sting whereof is present death. 3 *FIGHIG*, so called from the chief Town also, inhabited by an industrious and witty people (in respect of the rest): some of which betake themselves to *Merchandise*; some to the studie of their Law, which they studie at *Fesse*, and grow rich upon it. 4 *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better than any except *Dara*; as having in it 50 Castles or Gentlemens houses, and 100 Villages. The people wealthy, in regard of the great trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good husbands in manuring their land, on which they are forced to lay much soil; and will therefore let some of it *Rent-free* to strangers, reserving onely the dung of themselves and their cattell. 5 *BILEDULGERID*, specially so called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but destitute of Corn, by reason of the extream dryness of the soyle: and yet hath in it many Towns of good note among them. Of lesse note, 6 *Tesset*, 7 *Segelmesse*, 8 *Zeb*, 9 *Tebelbeti*, and 10 *Fessen*, so called from the chiefest of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of most note both now and in former times, besides those spoken of before, 1 *Timugedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three sons, the founders of the *Xeriffian* Empire. 2 *Tafilete*, in the said Province, to which place *Mahomet* the second of these sons, and second King of *Morocco* of that Family, confined his eldest brother *Amet*, having took him prisoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Teffet*, a great Town of 400 houses, but so poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it; but of that before. 4 *Techort*, the inhabitants where-

of are very courteous to ſtrangers, whom they entertain at *free-coſt*; and chooſe rather to marry their daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5 *Eboacah*, the moſt Eaſtern Town in all this Country, diſtant about 100 miles from the borders of *Egypt* 6 *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for Wells or Fountain of the *Sun*. The waters whereof being luke-warm at the Sun-riſing, cooled more and more till noon, was then very cold, and ſo continued untill midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural *Antipathy* with the Sun, hotteſt when that was furtheſt off: and cold when neereſt, 7 *Maſucha*, ſeated on a Rock, garriſoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Maurius*, in the proſecution of that War. 8 *Capſa*, the chief City of all this tract, ſaid to be built by *Hercules*; but queſtionleſs of very great ſtrength; *anguibus areniſque vallata*, made inacceſſible (ſaith the Hiſtorian) by the thick *Sands*, and multitudes of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but eaſily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly deſtroyed by *Cæſar* in his war againſt *Juba*.

It ſeems by this, that thoſe people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the diſpoſal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing; and ſo they have been alſo in theſe latter times! For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wiſdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve yeers (*Anno* 710.) they ſubdued this Country, and planted their *Religion* in it, though not themſelves. Nor was *Amet*, the firſt *Xeriffe* of *Morocco* warm in that eſtate, when he thought it beſt for him to ſecure himſelf in it by the conqueſt of this: to whoſe ſucceſſors, the chiefes of the Tribes hereof render ſome acknowledgements.

2. *LIBYA DESEETA.*

2. *LIBYA DESERTA*, is bounded on the north with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid*, to which contiguous; on the Eaſt, with *Nubia*, a Kingdom and Province of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, with the land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the Weſt, with *Gualata*, another Province of theſe *Negroes* interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reaſon of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deſerta* was added upon very good reaſons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*; as to expreſs the barren and ſandy condition of it: in which reſpect by the *Arabians* called *Sara*, ſignifying in their language a rude and inhabitable *Deſart*, as this Country is. So truly ſuch, that men may travell in it eight days together without finding water, or ſeeing any tree, and no graſs at all. The water which they have is drawn out of pits, exceeding brackiſh; and many times thoſe pits ſo covered with the Sands, that men die for thirſt: the *Merchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drinke a water with they wring out of ther guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as theſe *Deſarts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Feſſe*, and *Tremeſen*; tracing to *Agades* and *Tombatum*, in the land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in ſhape or qualities; but if a worſe of quality, it muſt be the *Lybian*. They did once worſhip a God called *Pſaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then ſet at liberty, to ſay theſe words, *viz. Pſaphon is a great God*: which the ſimple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at laſt to the *Chriſtian* Faith, they remained a while in the profeſſion of the Goſpel: exterminated by the *Saracens* about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former conqueſts, planted their *Superſtitions* in this Country alſo.

This Country is divided (as others into *Provinces*) into five great *Deſarts*, to which thoſe of leſs note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata* (interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick* Ocean) and extending Eaſtward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South, *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the land of *Negroes*; ſo deſtitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end of each hundred mile, brackiſh and unwholſom; and in the *Deſarts* of *Azaoad* and *Araoan*, which are parts of this, but one in an 150. or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eaſtward, to the *Deſart* of *Targa*: bounded on the North, with *Segelmeſſe*, and *Tebelbeti*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the *Deſarts* of *Ghir* and *Guber*. So void of water, (eſpecially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in nine dayes travell there is not ſo much as one drop to be ſeen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eaſtward to the *Deſart* of *Ighidi*; and reaching from *Tegorarin* in the North, to the *Deſart* of *Agader* in the South: the beſt conditioned part of all this Countrey, well watered, of a temperate Aire, and a ſoyl reaſonably fruitfull. In length from North to South 300 miles; and liberally ſtored with Manna, which they gather into little veſſels, and carry to *Agadez* to ſell. Mingled in water or with pottage it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feaſts, as a ſpeciall dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extendeth from the Deſarts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of theſe two there is little to be ſaid in ſeveral, but that this laſt was diſcovered lately by one *Hamar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants; who blinded with the ſands wandred out of his way, and cauſing ſand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the ſmell at laſt that they begun to draw nigh ſome inhabited Place; and told them of it 40 miles before they came to it.

Cities

Cities of note we hope for none, where we finde no water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most considerable, 1 *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble; which the Inhabitans, being 20 days distant from any habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine; exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the *South winds*, which doeth so drive the sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to loose their sight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the *Merchant* in the midst of these Desarts. 3 *Guargata* on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people, 4 *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or *baiting place* to the wearie Traveller. Of which kinde there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several *Desarts*; the *Havens* of such men as *sail* in these sandy *Seas*, but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing, observable of them in the way of *Story*, but that not looked after by any of the great *Conquerours*, either *Greeks* or *Romans*; much of the Countrey was possessed by *Arabian* Colonies (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations:) at such time as the *Saracens* planted their *Religion* here. The Government of the Countrey since, as it was before, by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clans*, or Families, who as they know no Law themselves, so do the people shew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions: differing but little from brute Beasts, more than shape and speech.

And so much for *LIBYA INTERIOR.*

OF

OF TERRA NIGRITARVM.

TERRA NIGRITARVM, or THE LAND OF NEGROES, is bounded on the East, with *Æthiophia Superior*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*, on the North with *Libya Deserta*; and on the South, with the *Æthiopick Ocean*, and part of *Æthiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*: and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reason of its situation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places alwayes green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, specially in those parts which lie within the compass of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further side of the River *Sanaga*: abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with *Elephants* and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest want (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-trees*, few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of fruit only, which is like the *Chesnut*, but somwhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest welfare consisting in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver, very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering *New-Worlds* as much as *Wealth*; they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitans, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto man; of little wit and destitute of all Arts and sciences, prone to luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Mahumetans*. When the *Portugals* first sailed into these Coasts, the People hereof took the Ships for great *Birds* whith white wings: and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were casually painted on the beaks of the ships, were the eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be the works of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perswaded but that they were the work of *Gods own hands*. The very *Nobles* (if so noble a name may without offence be given to such blockish people) are so dull and stupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to civil society: and yet so reverent of their *King*, that when they are in his presence, they never look him in the face, but sit flat on their buttock, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They use to anoint their hair with the fat of Fishes, which makes them stink more wretchedly than they would do otherwise. Of complexion they are for the most part Cole-black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-side of the River *Senaga* they are only Tawny: the *Blacks* so much in love with their own complexion, that they use to paint the Devil *white*; which I find thus versified.

The Land of Negroes *is not far from thence,*
Neerer extended to th' Atlantick Main;
Wherein the black Prince *keeps his residence,*
Attended by his jetty coloured Train:
Who in their native beauty most delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil *white.*

They have tried all *Religions*, but agree in none. *Idolaters* at the first, as others the Descendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is said that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occasion of it I do no where find); in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the last, *Christianity* prevailed in some Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. *Mahumetism* began to get ground amongst them, by the diligence and zeal of some of the Preachers of that Law: the first who were seduced that way being those of *Melli*; after which *Tombuto*, and then *Gualata*, were infected with the same poyson also. In the end, all the rest of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, some part of *Nubia*, and the Coasts of the *Atlantick* Ocean, which continue in their antient *Gentilism*: *Christianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if still there remaining) and some few Garrisons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different *Religions*, so are they also of several *Languages*: those of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutum*, *Melli*, and *Gugonti*, speaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guberoi*, *Canontes*, *Chæsenæ*, and *Gangrates*, &c. that called *Guber*; *Gualata*, a language of its own; and those of *Nubia*, one resembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldæan*, and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of most note in it, in the former times, were those of 1. *Arvaltes*, and 2. *Arangus*, and 3. that called *Deorum currus*; this last supposed to be the same which is now called *Punta de Lopes Gonsales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Promontory*, thrusting

thrusting it self into the Sea; discerned afar off by the Saylor and the Country-people, as wel by reason of his height, reaching to the clouds, as the continual lightnings and thunders, which do issue thence.

Rivers of most note, besides *Nile*, which watereth it on the East, 1 *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riseth out of the Lake of *Guoga*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolomy* calleth *Lacum Chelonidem*. And if so, then must this be the River *Gir*, of which he saith, that having fallen into that *Lake*, and there swallowed up, it thence produced another River, whose name he telleth not; little inferiour unto *Nilus* for the length of its course, the variety of strange Creatures which are bred therein, or the distinction which it maketh in the face of this Country: the people on the one side of it, being Black, on the other Tawnie; the soyl on the one side very barren, on the other fruitfull. In the end having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantick* by two great Out-lets. 2 *Niger* a River better known to *Ptolomy* by name, than nature; now found to have its rise from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Equinoctiall*; whence running northwards for a time, he hideth himself under ground for the space of 60 miles together: when rising up again, and making a great Lake, called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his course directly Westward; and taking in many less *Channels*, he teareth the earth into many Islands, and at last falleth into the Sea. Of as long course, and the same wondrous nature as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of *June*, it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the space of 40 days together; and in so many more, recollecteth his waters, into their proper *Channels*: the whole Country being indebted to these inundations, for its fertility, which otherwise could be but small, since the dryness of the soyl can afford no *exhalations*, whereby clouds may be generated, and the earth refreshed with moystures, or revived with dewes.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolomy*, 1 *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2 *Panagra*, 3 *Malachath*, 4 *Anygath*, 5 *Thumondacana*, 6 *Suluce*; and others to the number of 17 in all; situate all along the course of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the situation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the Ancient Towns and People being quite defaced; we must look upon it now as it standeth divided at this time into ferveral Kingdoms, 25 at the least in all (some say many more) the chief of which are these that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, A large tract of ground on the *Western Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blance* to the River *Carnuga*, sandy and barren, but reasonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanaghi*, were accompted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized since the *Portugals* and other *Christian* Nations began to trade there; of middle stature, complexioned between black and ash colour; great lyers, very treacherous, poor and parsimonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat, and hunger. The chief Towns, 1 *Porto di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2 *Porto del Riscatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occasionally by the *Portugueze*, at their first coming thither. 3 *Arquin*, a strong Fortress of the *Portugals*, situate on or neer the Promontory now called *Cape Blance*; and giving name unto some Ilands, five or six in number, lying neer unto it, called the Isles of *Arquin*; inhabited by a barbarous People, named the *Azanhays*; but of no great note. These coasts discovered first by the *Portugals*, *An.* 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry*, son of *John* the first; or by his incouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, distant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Anterosa* being interposed) is but a small Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with some Territorie of ground and petty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitfull only in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulse; but of these two last no great abundance. The Inhabitans Cole-black, hospitable towards strangers to their power, but poor and miserable; without Laws, setled form of Governement, Gentry and Judges.

3. *AGADEZ* bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Desarts* of *Libya*; the People of it generally given to grazing, their houses made of green boughs, which upon every change of Pasture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but these moveable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the most part by *Merchants Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremesen*. The Town well walled, the houses of a better building than the Country promiseth; the People civiller, and more fair conditioned than the rest of the *Negroes*, seated commodiously on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The King hereof, a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual tribute.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this side of the River *Canaga*, full of woods, mountainous, and in some parts desart; but plentifull enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons, and Pomgranats, with good store of *Cotton-wool*. Well-watered besides that great River, with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen; as the chief Town called *Cano*, is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat-Royal of their King, a *Tributary* also unto him of *Tombuto*, envir oned with a wall, built of a Chalk-stone, as most part of the houses are.

5. *CASENA*, on the East of *Cano*, but lesse fruitfull far; the Country over-grown with vast woods, and the soyl untractable; affording only Mill, and Barley; but of that good plenty. The People as black as any Coal, with great noses, and most prominent lips. Their houses very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbring more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other side of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory, which by *Ptolomy* named *Arsinarium*, is now called *Cape Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Pastures, goodly Trees, and most sorts of Fruits; plentifull enough of Mill and Pulse, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with *Lakes* and Rivers. No tame beasts about their fields, but Goats, Cows and Oxen; of Lyons,

Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extream black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, exceſſively venereous, and extreamly jealous. A King they have, but ſuch a one as holdeth but by *courteſie* onely, having no certain Rents, or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles.

7. *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBEA*, a ſmall Kingdom on the River ſo named, but bordering in ſome places on the *Atlantick*. In thoſe parts very pleaſant, the Trees alwayes flouriſhing, the aire very hot; in other parts, of the ſame nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good ſtore of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentifull of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Deſtitute of Salt, but what they buy of forrein Merchants at exceſſive rates; and ſmall ſtore of Horſes. Well watered by a branch alſo of the River *Niger*, and many wells of purpoſe made to receive ſuch waters, as by artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The people courteous, rich, and pleaſant, ſpending whole dayes and nights in ſinging and dancing. Their food, Fleſh, Butter, Milk, and Fiſh, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothſom nor wholſom. The chief Towns. 1. *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, ſituate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger*, and founded by the *Saracens*, or *Arabians* in the 610th. year of their *Hegira*. The houſes all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the Kings Palace, both of lime and ſtone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great trade betwixt this and *Feſſe*. 2. *Gago*, the reſidence of the King; large, without walls, the buildings very poor and mean, except ſuch as belong unto the King or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſive dear. The Town about 400 miles diſtant from *Tombuto*, ſituate in a fruitfull Countrey for Rice, Fruits, and Fleſh, and well repleniſhed with freſh water. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building than the other two.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the Eaſt of *Tombutum*, is a ſpacious and fruitfull Province, ſituate all along on a branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, eſpecially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton Wool*: the people generally very wealthy; of greater wit, civility and induſtry than the reſt of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 6000 families; furniſhed with many Temples, Prieſts, and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which thoſe of this Countrey did firſt unhappily admit of. This the Seat-royal of their Kings, who are very curteous unto ſtrangers; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA*, ſituate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but ſo that it bordereth in one place on the *Ocean* alſo; is a wealthy Countrey: but hath neither Town, or Caſtle in it, except that wherein the King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal alſo to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the reſidence alſo of their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants: of which the *Prieſts* and *Doctors* are apparelled in white, but all the reſt in black, or *blue Cotton*. The people have great traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*; and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Countrey, they have great ſtore of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and ſelling at home, they uſe iron-mony.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the Eaſt of the former Province; of the ſame length, and naturally well fenced with lofty mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick ſet with Villages, in which dwell their Husband-men and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all ſorts of Cattel, as alſo great quantities of Rice and Pulſe: the people very induſtrious, and good Artificers. Their principal Town is called *Guber* alſo, a Town of 6000 families, the uſual reſidence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in *Manufactures*.

12. *GIALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of ſuch admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horſe when he is in his full gallop, ſtand in the ſaddle when he runneth faſteſt; turn themſelves about upon his back, and ſuddenly down. Of their Countrey I finde little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin* one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil wars, in the year 1489. went for aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his converſion to the *Chriſtian* faith. But being ſhamefully murdered by *Pedro de Vas* the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-coaſt Countrey, extended from *Sierra Leona* (ſo called from the *Lyon-like* roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the tenth degree of *Longitude*; to the borders of *Benin* in the 30th. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-coaſt of *Africk* from *Cape Blanco* and the Countrey of *Ora Anteroſa*, to *Angola*, and *Congo*, incluſively, in the *Lower Æthiopia*. But take it in the proper ſenſe, as before limited, & we ſhall finde it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barley, Cotton-wool, and a ſort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegneta*, and we *Guinie-pepper*: of double the efficacy of the *Pepper* which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be ſold by the Kings of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian* trade ſhould be diſcontinued. Well ſtored with Sheep and Poultry, and of *Dates* good plenty. All other Fruits which they want, or care for, are brought thither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut doth afford a moſt excellent liquor, more pleaſant, ſtrong, and nouriſhing, than the choiceſt Wines; which they drink of in their great Feaſts, even to drunkenneſſe. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their habit, as their manners; yet amongſt many barbarous cuſtomes they have one moſt commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*. When marriable, they place them in an houſe ſevered from the reſt of their Cities, like a *Cloyſter*, or *Monaſtery*; where for a years ſpace, they are trained up by ſome old man of beſt eſtimation. At the years end they are brought out well apparelled with *Muſick* & dances; where the young men pleaſe themſelves in the

the choice of their wives: for whom having bargained with their *Parents*, they ſatisfie the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of reſt weekly, but therein differ from all Nations in the world beſides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tueſday*. Diſtracted into as many Kingdoms, as great *Tribes*, or Families: the Kings thereof ſubordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a ſubjection to the King of *Mandinga*. Places of moſt note. 1 *Songus*, the principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 leagues Eaſtward from the Cape of *Palmes*. 2 *Budomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom ſo called. 3 *Uxoo*, in the Center of all the Countrey. 4 *Mina*, a ſtrong hold of the *Portugals*, ſituate near the Cape, called *Cabo de Trois pintas* the three pointed Cape; named ſometimes alſo S. *George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines* of *Gold*, which they hoped to finde there. By which, and by the Fort of *Arquin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negro's*; they command all the Countreys which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built untill the year 1486, in the beginning of the reign of *John* the 2d. though the diſcovery of theſe Coaſts had been made before, *An.* 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, Son of *John* the firſt. By whoſe incouragement the *Portugueze* did firſt imploy themſelves in forreign diſcoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this interval, the *Portingals* being more covetous of new diſcoveries, than of fortifying and ſecuring the old, gave opportunity to the *Caſtilians* to look after this Countrey, who having took a view of it, in the year 1477. purſued the Enterprize the next year with a Fleet of 35 ſhips, under the command of *Pedro de Cobides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold: but in the year 1479. by an agreement, or capitulation between thoſe Princes, the trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon diſcovering the Iſle of St. *George*, and finding it a fit place to ſecure, and command the reſt, built in it the ſtrong Fort, or Caſtle of *Mina*, which before we ſpoke of.

14. *BENIN*, lieth directly Eaſt of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it: the King whereof is ſaid to have 600 wives, with all which twice a year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuſe not the name) have moſt of them 80 wives, ſome more; he that is pooreſt, ten, or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people thereof do cut and raſe their skin with three lines drawn to the Navel; eſteeming it neceſſary to ſalvation. They uſe all, both men and women, to go naked till they are married; and then to be cloathed onely from the waſte to the knees: ſo that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in theſe parts, he had in ſome meaſure had his deſire. For he among other ſtrange plots in his *Utopian* Common-wealth, telleth us, how there it is the cuſtome, for ſome reverend *old Sire* to bring in naked the young man; and ſome *hoary* old Matron, to preſent naked, the young woman; between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, ſaith he, in buying a Horſe, the chap-man not onely vieweth his naked carkaſe, but taketh off all his trappings and ſaddle, leſt under them ſome blame might be hidden: why then in chuſing of a wife, ſhould we take one, of whom we ſee no more than the face (*unius Palmæ ſpatium*) and perhaps ſcarce that. The learned and ingenuous Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he diſlike of Marriages made upon ſuch uncertainties, yet he would have this diſcovery made by ſome friends of the parties, not by them themſelves: it being, as he ſaith, very inconvenient, that after ſuch a plain and familiar ſight of each others perſon, there ſhould be a refuſal upon either ſide. But theſe new *Projects* I refer to your modeſt cenſures.

15. *GUANGARA* lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well peopled Countrey; but their Towns and Villages very mean; except that called by the ſame name with the Countrey, where the King reſideth, which is ſomewhat better than the reſt, well traded, and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of ſo great Revenues, that he keepeth ſeven thouſand Archers, and five hundred Horſe in continual pay; but *Homager* and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*.

16. *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Countrey on the Weſt of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Diſtinguiſhed equally in a manner into hills, and valleys: the hills inhabited by Neat-herds, and Sheepherds, breeding great flocks and herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the *Valleys* repleniſhed with many Market-Towns, and as full of Corn. The people are of no *Religion*, but live like beaſts; without *propriety* ſo much as in their wives, or children: nor are they differenced by names, as in other places, but by ſome mark upon their bodies. Which though it ſeem ſtrange to us of this preſent age, yet was it thus in part, with our *Saxon Anceſtors*. Whence have we elſe the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Gray*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or thoſe of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curle*, *Criſpe*, and others, but from ſuch *Originals*? not to ſay any thing of the names of Trades, and Occupations, ſo familiar with us. The name of their chief Citie is *Borneo*, where the King reſideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay three thouſand Horſe, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is ſaid to have no other *Revenue*, than what he getteth by ſtrong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, thoſe Kings muſt needs be good Warriours, and have great ſucceſſes alſo in their undertakings: it being alſo ſaid of theſe Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Horſes, all the Diſhes, Cups and Platters which they eat, or drink in, yea the very Chains for his Dogs, were of fineſt Gold.

17. *Gaoga* lieth betwixt *Borneo*, and the Deſarts of *Nubia*: the Countrey almoſt ſquare, each ſide thereof extended 500 miles. The people ignorant, rude, uncivil, but ſpecially thoſe which dwell in the Mountains: their houſes built moſt of boughs and leaves, which once dry, eaſily take fire; but the beſt is, they are ſoon repaired: their greateſt wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep moſt tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into ſubjection by a *Negro-Slave*, who having ſlain his Maſter, by the help of his wealth grew ſtrong enough to incroach on his Neighbours; and ſelling ſuch Captives as he took, for horſes of *Egypt*, became King of *Gaoga*, and in fine very gracious with the *Mamaluck* Sultans. His Succeſſors have ſince ſo enlarged their Territories, that they are ſecond unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18. *NUBIA* hath on the West *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt* extended Eastward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine* Empire. So called from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and potent people of this Tract, spoken of by *Ptolomy*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A distinct people from those of the same name, dwelling on the shores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Avalites*, who from the shortnesse of their stature passed in accompt for *Pigmies*; Νῆες Πυγμαῖοι, saith *Hesychius* an old Grammarian: these being a strong and potent Nation, and well skilled in wars. Insomuch as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, understanding of some pressures laid upon the *Christians* of *Egypt*, is said to have raised 100000 Horse for their aid and succour; but by the perswasions of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Countrey was wholly *Christian*, and had been so from the very dayes of the Apostles; but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Ministers to instruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the writer of the *Æthiopick* History, that at his being in the Court of the *Abassine* Emperour, there came Ambassadours out of *Nubia* to intreat a supply of Pastors to instruct their Nation, and repair *Christianity* amongst them; but were unchristianly rejected.

Here is a *Poison* in this Countrey, of which the tenth part of a grain will dispatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is sold for ten Ducats an ounce; the Customes, for which, unto the King is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill commodity they have many good; that is to say, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; some store of Gold, and other Metals. The Countrey naturally sandy, but well refreshed with Lakes and Rivers, which do much inrich it; insomuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great trade with the Merchants of *Caire* and *Egypt*. Their chief Citie is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; said to contain no fewer then 10000 families; but their houses built of nothing but thatch and mortar. In other parts, especially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages; few, or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, besides those in *Guinea*, but of lesser note; as 19. *BITO*. 20. *TEMIANO*. 21. *ZEGZEG*. 22. *ZANFARA*. 23. *GOTHAN*, 24. *MEDRA*. 25. *DAUM*. Of which there is nothing to be spoken, but of their poverty, or riches, blessings, or curses common to them with the rest of these Nations; and therefore I purposely omit them.

This Countrey, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Libya Interior*; inhabited besides the *Nubæ* and *Nigritæ* spoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the hill *Arvates*, the *Aroncæ*, near the hill *Arangus*, the *Agargineæ*, *Xylinces*, and *Alchalinces*, *Æthiopick* Nations. Not much considerable in the businesse of former times; nor much discovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a superstitious zeal to propagate their Sect, first opened the way into these Countreys: the people then living like bruit beasts, without King, Law, or any form of Government; scarce knowing how to sow their Lands, clad in the skins of as very beasts as themselves, and challenging no propriety in wives, or children. First conquered by *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *five Nations* of *Libya Deserta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of those *five Nations* possessing three of them. One of the Kings of these *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being slain by *Abuaci Ischia* General of his forces, and the rest terrified with that blow, *An.* 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long lost liberty, and instituted divers Kings of their own. Amongst them, *Izchia* was most deservedly made King of *Tombutum*, who managed his affairs so well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfora*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenaoa*, *Gambea*, and *Casena*; which he made his *Tributaries*. So that his Successors are now the greatest of those five Kings, who have the supream power over all the rest. The other four. 1. the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realms of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*; 2. the King of *Borneo*, the onely one that is descended of the *Libyan* race, in greatnesse of command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. the King of *Gualata*, whose Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein absolute and supream; and 4. the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the rest of these Provinces.

But because the greatest power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who possibly enough may in short time bring all the rest under his command, we will take a more particular view of his estate; affirmed to be the richest Prince in these parts of *Africk*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him, they kneel on both their knees; and bowing their heads unto the ground, cast sand over their shoulders and upon their head, going forwards still upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horse, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bowes and empoisoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his Kingdoms, and confiscateth the goods of all such of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law, and liberal in stipends to the Doctors and Professors of it. Of greater power then any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Habassine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had some hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom, even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire six moneths journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*; yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being since that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And so much for *TERRA NIGRITARUM*.

OF

OF AETHIOPIA SVPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SVPERIOR, is bounded on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the West, with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the Land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North, with *Egypt*, and *Libya Marmarica*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was first called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Plinie* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words Αἴθω, signifying to *burn*, and ὤψ a *Countenance*; because the violent heats of the Sun had so scorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sub Ægypto*, *Superior*, and *Interior*, serve onely to distinguish it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lieth further off from *Egypt*, on the outside of this. It is called also *Regnum Abyssinorum*, from the *Abaseni*, or *Abyssini*, a people of *Arabia Felix*; who passing over the *Red-Sea*, (not above seven miles broad in the narrowest place) came and setled here. And in the Scripture it is stiled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the son of *Mizraim*, who first planted it; as hath been proved by many strong and concluding Arguments in our *general Preface*.

It is situate on both sides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South *Parallel* of seven Degrees, where it meeteth with some part of the other *Æthiopia*; to the Northern end of the Isle of *Meroe*, situate under the fift *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this Accompt it fall short of the dimensions assigned by some, who extend it from one *Tropick* unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no lesse then 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet so, that all this vast tract of ground, is not to be understood of that part of the Countrey, which is under the command of the *Abassine* Emperour, commonly but mistakingly called *Prestor John*: but of the whole Countrey of *Æthiopia*, as before limited and extended; containing besides his Estate, the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two last are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*. The Isle of *Meroe* in the North is possessed by *Mahometans*, the most bitter enemies of this King: all on the West of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an *Idolatrous* and man-eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Streits* of *Babel Mandel* as without, except the Port of *Erocco* onely, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his commands; but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adea* before mentioned.

But taking it in the largest signification and extent hereof (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehendeth the three Countries called antiently *Æthiopia Sub Ægypto*, *Troglodytica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*. Of these the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first: though certainly the *Throglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites* were Originally an *Arabian* people, so called *quia τρώγας subeunt*, from their living in *Caves* and dens: in which respect their part of this Countrey had the name of *Arabia Troglodytica*, in *Dioscorides*, and some others of the Ancient Writers. Of these it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any wealth, and that their speech was rather a gnashing of the teeth, then any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nullarum apum Domini sunt* Troglodítæ, *stridentem magis quam loquuntur*. As for their houses, they were (saith he) no better then *Caves*, and their food then *Serpents*. With whom concurreth *Plinie* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, saying positively, *Troglodítæ spelúncas excavant*. Called for the same reason in the holy Scripture, 2 *Chron.* 12. 3. by the name of *Succhai*; the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not onely signifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves, and Dens: and so translated *Psal.* 10. *v.* 9. and *Job* 38. *v.* 40. As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the Southern parts in the time of *Ptolomy*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing by it; now not a tree of it to be found in all this Countrey, as the *Portugals*, who have looked narrowly for it, have affirmed unto us. Shipped at *Mosylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolomy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt*, and other Countries; as is said by *Plinie*, *Portus Mosylitus quo* Cinnamomum *devehitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mosulum*, by the name of the Town. δεύτερον δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον Μόσυλον, τὸ ἀπὸ Μοσύλης πόλεως. Of *Cinnamon* the best is that which is called *Mosulon*, because brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, saith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract *de Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this onely by the way) it is the inner bark of a Tree, as big as an *Olive*, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sinæ* or the Countrey which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sinæ Amomum*, the *Amomum* of the *Sinæ*; *Amomum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Assyria*, and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*: yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* call it *Bar-Chinæ*, or the wood of *China*. But, of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it ſelf. The people of it in old times were ſaid to have been great *Aſtrologers*; the firſt ordainers alſo of ſacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were alſo noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longeſt and ſtrongeſt Bowes of any Nation: the *Perſian* Bow (though thoſe the greateſt of all *Aſia*) being onely three Cubits long; but theſe of *Æthiopia*, four. *Utuntur etiam Æthiopes quatuor cubitorum arcubus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is ſaid alſo by *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* ſmall, but ſtrong, for the moſt part poiſoned; *Æthiopum geminata venenis Vulnera*, as we finde in *Clandian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to ſpend our time too much upon theſe particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two ſtrange things of this Countrey: 1. That the *Air* and *ground* are ſo parching hot, that the people not onely dare not go out of doors without ſhooes, but that they roſt their meat alſo by ſetting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a *Lake*, whoſe waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding ſalt and unpleaſing; but at all other times moſt ſweet and delicate to the palate.

This Countrey being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together; is but meanly populous; the *diſtemperature* of the *Climate*, and the dry barrenneſſe of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cauſe *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopards* skin, the diſtance of whole ſpots ſheweth the diſperſedneſſe of the towns, and habitations in thoſe *torrid* countries. A Countrey ſcarce in Wheat, but ſufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barly, Beans, Peaſe, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all ſorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Countrey under heaven fitter for increaſe of Plants, and Living creatures, if induſtry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are deſtitute of many neceſſary things, which otherwiſe the natural commodities of the Countrey would ſupply them with. For they have here great ſtore of *Flax*, but make no *Cloth*; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *wine*, except it be to ſerve the palaces of the King and the *Patriarch*; Abundance of *Sugar-canes*, and Mines of *Iron*; but know not how to make uſe of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig *Channels* or trenches, to derive their waters to the reſt of the land which want them; thoſe Rivers almoſt choaked with *Fiſh*, their Woods crammed with *Veniſon*, which they trouble not themſelves to catch.

By this we may conjecture ſomewhat of the people alſo; Lazie and given unto their eaſe, ill-clothed, and not much better houſed; extremely inclined to *Barbariſm*, deſtitute of all learning, not to be credited unleſſe they ſwear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devill: their colour is generally olive-tawny, excepting onely their King himſelf, who is alwayes of a white complexion, (a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackneſſe of their bodies, by the Poet arttributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*:

Sanguine tum credunt, in corpora ſumma vocato,
Æthiopum populos nigrum traxiſſe colorem.

Which may be *Engliſhed*:

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The Æthiopians grew ſo black and ſwart.

But the true cauſe hereof, whatſoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt made known in this Countrey, by the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangeliſt*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally imbraced by the pains and preaching of S. *Matthew* the Apoſtle hereof; but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the reign of *Abraham*, An. 470. who in his life entituled himſelf the Defender and Propagator of the *Religion* of *CHRIST*, and after his death was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppreſſed in part by the coming in of the *Abaſenes* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more univerſally received than in former times, in the reign of *David* king of the *Axumite Æthiopians*: who in a war againſt *Dunmus* king of the *Homerites* in *Arabia Felix*, ſolemnly vowed to the God of the *Chriſtians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory: And ſo accordingly he did, ſendings his Ambaſſadors to the Emperour *Juſtinian*, for ſome Biſhops and other learned men to inſtruct his people. The particulars of thoſe Opinions wherewith they have ſince corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I finde thus regiſtred. 1. They uſe to *circumciſe* their Children, both males and females; 2. They baptize the males 40. and the females 80 dayes after their *circumciſion*; 3. After the receit of the Sacrament, they are not to ſpit till Sun-ſet, 4. They profeſſe but *one Nature*, and one Will in *CHRIST*: 5. They accept onely three firſt General Councels; 6. Their *Prieſts* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg; 7. They *baptize* themſelves every *Epiphany*-day in Lakes and ponds, becauſe that day they ſuppoſe *Chriſt* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. 8. They eat not of thoſe Beaſts, which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean*; 9 They keep the *Saturday* of *Jewiſh Sabbath* equally ſolemn with the *Lords Day*; 10. They adminiſter the *Euchariſt* to Infants preſently after Baptiſm; 11. They teach, that the Reaſonable ſoul of man is derived from their parents by *Seminal propagation*: 12. That Infants *dying unbaptized*, are ſanctified in the womb, by vertue of the *Euchariſt* received by the Mother after her *Conception*. And finally, they ſhew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they ſay, by the *Apoſtles* aſſembled at *Hieruſalem* for that purpoſe; the Contents whereof they obſerve moſt ſolemnly. Theſe are the moſt material points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique* Church. And there are other points in which they differ onely

from

from the Church of *Rome*, as *viz.* 1. Administring in *both kinds*; 2. Without either *Elevation*, or *Reservation*; 3. Rejecting massie Images, and 4. *Extreme Unction*; 5. Allowing the first marriages to their Priests & Bishops: and 6. In renouncing all relation to the Pope of *Rome*; who to the businesse of these Churches is a very stranger, and so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appeares by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna*, as they call'd him) of these *Abassine* Churches, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacie by the Fathers, which were there assembled; and constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches: in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriarch, by an antient priviledge belongeth the seventh place in the *Sessions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbishop of *Selencia* (or *Babylon*) onely interposing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*. Elected by the *Abassine* Monks of St. *Antonies* Order remaining in *Hierusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which *Order*, and of whose jurisdiction he must alwayes be) he is sent into this Countrey to take his charge: where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal priviledge with the Emperour himself; and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole power of excommunicating an obstinate Sinner. All other *Ecclesiastical* Dignities, from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour onely.

The principal Mountains of it in the former times, had the names of 1 *Prionotus*, 2 *Isius*, 3 *Monodactylus*, 4 *Ganrus*, and 5 *Mons Satyrorum*; all of them in that part which was called *Troglodi-tica*: 6 *Garbala*, 7 *Elephas*, and 8 *Maste* in the Isle of *Meroe*: the rest of the Countrey flat and level, or the hils not eminent. Rivers of most note, 1 *Astapus* (now *Abanni*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*. 2 *Astaboras*, now *Tacassi*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3 *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whose spring unprofitably sought for in the elder times, is now said to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*: whence passing through spacious *Desarts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at last entreth into this. Here in some places strugling amongst broken Rocks, and lesse free passages, he falleth with such a wonderful noise into the Vallies beneath; that a Colony planted by the *Persians* neer one of these *Cataracts*, (so they call those huge falls of his) were so dulled and deafned with the noise, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it onely dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hils do seem to tremble at the noise it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albescit fluctibus amnis.

Which may be *Englished* in these words;

The noise the Mountains shakes, who roar for spite
To see th' unvanquish'd Waves cloth'd all in white.

Of these *Cataracts* there are two most noted: the one called *Catarractes Major*, in the borders of this Countrey towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Philæ*, and *Pselcis*, Æthiopian cities; the other called *Catarractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syens*, the last City of that Countrey towards this. So turbulent is this River amongst the Hills. And yet as terrible as these Falls are supposed to be, one may divers times see the Countrey people in a little Boat not able to contain above two persons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long tossed in the waters a great distance off, as if they had been shot out of an *Engine*. Nor is he of such quiet passage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters; which if not curbed and lessened by such wayes as these, might by some sudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in respect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for long time to the *Abassine* Emperours, an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, supposing it a needlesse charge, had once denied: this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and break down the Dams; whereby the water fell so violently and so fast unto *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not onely glad to continue the tribute, but to give them great sums of mony to make up their works. But others say, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not so much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abassine* Emperours should divert the Stream, and so deprive that Countrey of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are also said to be some *Lakes* of that poysonous nature, that whosoever drinketh of them, doth either immediately fall mad, or else is troubled for long time with continual *drowsinesse*. Of which thus *Ovid*,

Æthiopesque Lacus; quos si quis faucibus hausit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate soporem.

Which may be paraphrased in these words:

Who doth not know the Æthiopian *Lake?*
Of which whoever drinks, his thirst to slake,

Either

Either grows mad, *or doth his ſoul oppreſſe*
With an unheard of heavy drowſineſſe.

To look upon the State, as it ſtood in the former times, we finde in it beſides the *Lakes* and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bayes, that is to ſay, *Sinus Adulicus*, 2 *Sinus Avalites*, and 3 *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two laſt neighboured by the now Countries of *Aden* and *Quiloa*. Havens of note, and Rodes for ſhipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1 *Bathus*, or the deep Haven, 2 *Dioſcorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, 3 *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*, 4 *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Goſpel-Port*, or the Port of good News. And 5 *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the ſame name neer adjoyning to it. For other Promontories, which in ſo long a tract of Sea muſt needs be many; the principal were, 1 *Baſium*, 2 *Mnemium*, 3 *Dimetris*, 4 *Aſpis*, 5 *Ara Amoris*, 6 *Colobon*, the Promontory of *Saturn*, 8 *Moſylon*, with a noted *Empory* of the ſame name, 9 *Aromata*, neer another well frequented *Empory* of the ſame name alſo; and 10 that of *Noti cornu*. Then for the Towns of greateſt Trading, beſides thoſe laſt mentioned, we have, 1 *Avalites*, 2 *Malao*, 3 *Mundi*, 4 *Cube*, and 5 *Acane*, in the Bay of *Avalites*, 6 *Opone* in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7 *Eſſina*, on the South of the *Æquinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongſt many others, the names of 1 *Epitherias*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ptolemais Ferarum*, 2 *Adulis*, and 3 *Avalites*, giving names unto their ſeveral Bays, 4 *Rapta*, the *Metropolis* of that part of this Countrey which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the ſhores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is ſituate; ſo they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*. 5 *Meroe*, the chief City of the Iſle ſo called. 6 *Sabath* in the Bay of *Adutis*, which poſſibly might be ſome Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*. 7 *Coloe*, by *Plinie* called *Tolen*, not far from the great *Lake* ſo named, 8 *Cambuſis*, by *Ptolomie* called *Cambyſi Ærarium*, from ſome treaſures laid up here by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian*, in his invaſion of this Countrey. 9 *Auxumi* the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a moſt potent people of theſe parts; and the Seat Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings. 10 *Napata*, as *Ptolomy*; but by moſt others called *Tanape*, of old the reſidence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, ſacked and ruined by *Petronius*, Preſident of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predeceſſour, I believe, of her whoſe *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranſacked and waſted *Egypt* with fire and ſword; *Petronius*, Lieutenant to *Auguſtus*, drave them home, harried the whole Countrey, put this City to the ſpoyle; and to prevent the like inrodes, fortified the Frontires of his Province. 11 *Philæ*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, garriſoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned. Of ſome of theſe, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter; in the ſurvey of ſome of theſe particular Provinces, into which this Countrey ſtands divided at this preſent time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are ſaid to make up 70 Kingdoms; moſt of them ſubject to the *Abaſſine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1 *Guagere*, 2 *Tigremaon*, 3 *Angote*, 4 *Amma*, 5 *Damut*, 6 *Goijami*, 7 *Bagamedrum*, 8 *Barnagaſſum*, 9 *Adel*, 10 *Adea*, 11 *Duncali*, 12 *Dobas*, 13 *Fatigar*, 14 *Xoa*, 15 *Barus*. Concerning which I muſt premiſe, that I finde the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times diſagreeing, ſometimes falſe: So that I muſt profeſſe my ſelf to be leſſe ſatisfied in the deſcription of this Countrey, than in any of the reſt which have gone before. Such as it is, I here preſent it to the Reader.

1. *GUAGERE.*

GUAGERE containeth onely the Iſland of *Meroe*, an Iland of much note and fame amongſt the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Aſtaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Countrey. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125. abundantly plentifull of Gold, Silver, Braſſe, Iron, Ivory, Precious ſtones, and an excellent kinde of *Mineral* Salt. Well ſtored with moſt ſorts of beaſts, both tame and wilde; and of the laſt ſort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants, and Dragons.

The people are of the ſame nature and complexion with the reſt; *Mahometans* by Religion, and the profeſſed Enemies of the *Abaſſine* Emperour; againſt whom they do not onely defend themſelves, by the advantages and benefit of their ſituation; but confederating with the *Turks*, and *Arabians*, fall many times with great forces into his Dominions. It is ſaid by *Plinie* of the Inhabitants of this Iland, that twice a year, *viz.* When the Sun is in the 16th. degree of *Taurus*, and the 14th. of *Leo*, they have the Sun ſo perpendicular above their heads, that he caſts no ſhadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 120 years of Age; and therefore called *Macrobii* by the old *Greek* Writers. The women ſaid to be of ſuch great breſts in the former times, that they did ſuckle their children over their ſhoulders (as ſome women are now ſaid to do neer the *Cape* of *good Hope*): the dug being bigger than the childe. Of which thus *Juvenal*.

In Meroe, *craſſo majorem Infante mamillam.*

In Meroe *the Mothers pap*
Is bigger than the childe in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof, 1 *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Iland, but took the ſame from *Meroe*, a ſiſter of *Cambyſes* King of *Perſia*; or as *Euſebius* ſaith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Chenephris*,

Chenephris, a King of *Egypt*. *Josephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whose mistake it hath been made the *Regal* Citie of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joseph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion so received amongst these Islanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have restored the name of *Saba* to this Citie, as of greater eminence. The Citie said by some to contain about 5000 houses, great and sumptuous; the streets thereof to be large and spacious, with Galleries on each side before the doors of their houses, where men walk safe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (besides others of inferiour note) built of *Alabaster* and *Jasper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to those Gates, of *Cedar*, curiously wrought; the wayes which lead unto them, for the space of two Leagues, beset with Palms, Orange-trees, Cedars, Cypresses, and others no lesse usefull both for shade and fruit. In the place where the four streets going from these Gates, do crosse each other, a goodly Arch erected upon stately Pillars, fairly wrought and gilded; with the *Statue* of St. *Matthew*, made of brasse, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is said to be by some. Others think there is no such Citie; it may not be so beautifull, as some have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times. 2. *Sacolche*. 3. *Darorum Vicus*. 4. *Eser*; of which we have little but the names.

This Island was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being chosen for their King, who excelled the rest in strength, person, or in stock of Cattel; but those Kings so subject to their *Priests*, that by a Messenger, or *Herald* they were sentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it stood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his armed Souldiers, slew all these *Priests*; and freed himself and his Successours from so great a *slavery*. Afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the most part with the Seat of those Kings, and memorable in those times for the *Table* of the *Sun*: which was a place near the Citie of *Meroe*, alwayes furnished with variety of rosted meats, set there by night at the charge, and command of the King (much taken as it seemeth with this costly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, because ascribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occasioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Island was seized on by that people, and hath been ever since kept by them; together with the rest of the Countrey, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*; in which are contained, as some write, the Kingdom of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *Jasculum*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now dismembred from it: not much observable, but for being a thorowfare to great troups of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lent* passe by them out of the *Abassine* Dominions, to the *Sepulchre*, and other like places in and near *Jerusalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the north, *Guagere*, and the River *Marabo*, by which last parted from *Barnagasso*; on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the West, *Nilus*. On the East it is said to extend to the *Red-Sea*; but the Sea-parts thereof possessed by the *Turks*, and the adjoyning Coasts by the *Moors* and *Arabians*: the inland parts promiscuously inhabited, especially more towards the Sea, by *Christians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferiour Regions, the principal whereof 1. *Sabian*, 2 *Torrates*, 3 *Balgada*, so called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4 *Tigrai*, the most large and ample of all these subordinate Provinces; as containing in it 17 great tracts under so many Lieutenants, which rule all affairs both of Peace and War. The people black of colour, deformed of shape, in condition miserable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet so that with a little digging they finde water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Cassumo*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolomie* calleth *Auxume*, *Stephanus Axomites*, *Procopius Auzomide*: by all of them esteemed the *Metropolitan* City of *Ethiopia*, and the Seat Royal of their Kings. In witnesse whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, some Pillars which resemble the *Ægyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanship: 60 foot high, and full of *Characters*, or Letters ingraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the most potent Nation of this Countrey, had their name from hence: more probably conceived to be the Regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other of the Kingdom; and still affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to finde it: some in a Royal Palace near that Lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570. by some *European Architects* sent hither by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*: and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a *Royal Progresse* from one place to another; which *wandring Court*, or *moving Citie*, is said to be no lesse than ten miles in compasse, when the *Pavilions*, which belong to it, are disposed of into rank and order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Homager* and Tributary to the *Abassine* Emperour: to whom he payeth yearly 200 horses of the best *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of silks, great store of *Cotton-wool*, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

3. *ANGOTE.*

ANGOTE is bounded on the North, with *Tigremon*; on the West, with *Nilus*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Amara*; on the East, with *Dancali*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extreamly fertile, productive of the choiceſt fruits, and great herds of Cattel. The people eat but once in 24 hours, and for the moſt part make that meal in the night; their dyet raw Veniſon, or ſmoaked Beef: the money moſt in uſe amongſt them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which cuſtome of uſing Salt, Pepper, and the like inſtead of money, was in former times amongſt moſt people the onely battery, or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus* golden Armour was valued at an hundred Kine, and *Diomedes* Armour at ten onely. Afterward in Juſtice *commutative*, it was deemed convenient, to have ſome common Judge, or valuation, of the equality, or inequality of goods: the invention of which the *Jews* attribute to *Cain*, the *Grecians* to *Hermodice* the wife of *Midas*, the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or νόμισμα from νόμος, becauſe it was ordained by Law: *Pecunia*, either becauſe in elder times the chief of their wealth conſiſted in Cattel, as now among the *Iriſh*; or from a Cow (*Pecus*) which was ſtamped on it: and *Moneta*, *à monendo*, as *Suidas* ſaith; becauſe when the *Romans* ſtood in need of money, *Juno monebat*, *Juno* admoniſhed them that they ſhould uſe Juſtice, and there ſhould be no want of money. To this Goddeſſe, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worſhipped it in the figure of a Woman, holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and a *Cornucopia* in the other: by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatneſſe of her power conſidered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I finde not much ſpoken of the Countrey in the way of ſtory; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unleſſe that 1 *Angote* it ſelf, as alſo 2 *Abugana*, 3 *Giannamora* two of the principal Provinces of it, may poſſibly be ſo called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. *AMARA.*

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damut*; on the Weſt, it ſtretcheth towards the *Nile*, and on the Eaſt, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Countrey very plain and champaigne, little ſwelled with hills, ſufficiently fruitfull, and well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel. The chief Citie of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, ſituate in the midſt of the Empire, and though not much diſtant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet bleſſed with ſuch a temperate aire, ſuch a fruitfull ſoyl, ſuch raviſhing pleaſures of all ſorts, that ſome have taken (but miſtaken) it for the place of *Paradiſe*: So ſtrangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Humane induſtry, have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greateſt Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, ſituate in a large and delightfull plain: the bottom of the Hill in circuit 90 Miles, and a dayes journey high; the Rock ſo ſmooth and even (but leſſer and leſſer towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly poliſhed: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; ſo eaſie of aſcent, that one may ride up with great pleaſure, and in the midſt of the Aſcent a ſpacious Hall, as it were to reſt in: the top it ſelf is a large plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compaſſed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beaſt fall down upon any chance, beautified towards the South with a riſing hill, out of which iſſueth a ſweet Spring, which watering the ſeveral Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it ſelf into a Lake for the uſe of Cattel: the plain enriched with all ſorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Monaſteries*, in each of which are founded 1500 Knights of the Order of St. *Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger ſons of the *Emperour* are continually incloſed, to avoid ſedition. They enjoy there whatſoever is fit for delight, or *Princely education*; and from hence ſome one of them, who is moſt hopefull, or beſt liked, is again brought out, if the Emperour die ſonleſſe, to be made ſucceſſour. This Mountain hath but one aſcent up, as before was ſaid, which is impregnably fortified; and was deſtinate to this uſe *Anno* 470. or thereabouts, by the Emperour *Abraham Philip*, adviſed hereunto, as he gave out, by an heavenly viſion. In one of theſe Palaces is a famous *Library*, wherein are ſaid to be many books, which with us are either in part, or totally loſt: as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the myſteries which eſcaped the floud, being by him engraven on pillars; the whole works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore tranſlated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* tongue (when having plundered all the moſt famous *Libraries* of the Eaſt and Weſt, they burnt the *Originals*, out of a plot to make that language as renowned and as generally ſtudied, as the *Greek*, or *Latine*) are ſaid by ſome good fortune to be here preſerved.

5. *DAMUT.*

DAMUT hath on the North, *Amara*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*, and on the Eaſt, the great Lake of *Barcena*, and ſome part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Countrey plentifully furniſhed with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all ſorts. For none more famed than for their *Slaves*, ſold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Perſia*, *India*; and much eſteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in war, dexterity in buſineſſe, eſpecially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cauſe

placed

placed in Offices of great truſt and power, by many of the *Eaſtern* Princes: who uſing a tyrannical Form of Government, and not daring to truſt the ſword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Counſel; do for the moſt part arm theſe *Slaves*, and truſt them alſo with the conduct of their chief affairs. A truſt, in which they never falſified, or failed in a true diſcharge, but when preſuming of their power, and thoſe advantages, which ſo great a truſt and power had preſented to them; they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala:* and kept it many years in a ſucceſſion of the *Abaſſine Slaves*, wherewith they ſtill made up their numbers; till outed not long ſince by the *Great Mongal*.

The Oxen of this Countrey are ſaid to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns ſo large that they ſerve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either wine, or water. Here is alſo ſaid to be a kinde of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wilde, faſhioned like an Horſe, but no bigger than an Aſſe; but we muſt think theſe *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinocerots*, or elſe we ſhall very much miſtake the truth of the matter. And for the people (to go them both over once again) they are for the moſt part *Gentiles*; ſome *Chriſtians* intermixt amongſt them, who have ſundry Monaſteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Couche*, ſaid to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*; a *Mountain all of Gold*, if the *Friers* ſay true. The people *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long ſince gained to the Chriſtian *Faith*; into which he was baptized by the *Abbot*, or chief Governour of the *Monaſteries* on the hill *Amara: Gradeus* the Emperour being his *Godfather*, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an hill of great height, and very difficult aſcent; from the top whereof they uſe to caſt headlong ſuch of the Nobility, as by the Emperours ſentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom, or this Principality, I am not able to reſolve, unleſſe, 1 *Damut*, and 2 *Couche* may be two, and the two moſt eminent, as giving name to thoſe eſtates.

6. GOIAMY.

GOIAMY, hath on the North, *Damut*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, and Eaſt, ſome Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Countrey in the North parts full of *Deſarts* and Rocky Mountains, in the reſidue plentifully furniſhed with all things neceſſary. Great ſtore of Gold they finde, but *droſſie*; the people not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loth here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way; for fear of drawing in the *Turks*, and *Arabians*, to partake of the booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall; making a noiſe, not much inferiour to a clap of thunder: and amongſt other *Lakes*, two of ſpecial note, which for their greatneſſe ſeem to be Seas; in which, as ſome report, *Mermaids*, and *Tritons*, or Men-fiſhes uſe to ſhew themſelves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilus* do ariſe; and both true alike. But paſt all doubt the *Abaſſines* themſelves are of this opinion; and therefore in the ſtile of the *Negaz* (ſo they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus*. Deceived alike in their opinion touching this particular, the Springs, or Fountains of that River being further South: though poſſibly having loſt himſelf in theſe vaſt *Lakes*, and iſſuing hence into a more contracted Channel; he may be ſaid to have a ſecond birth from hence, though not the firſt. And theſe I take to be the *Lakes*, which were diſcovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the deſign of ſome other great *Potentates*, *Seſoſtris*, *Cambyſes*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in diſcovering the true *Original* of this famous River; imployed two *Centurions* in that ſervice; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are ſaid to have come at laſt unto certain great *Mariſhes* (moſt probably the lower and ſedgy parts of theſe *Lakes* now mentioned) of whoſe extent the Inhabitants themſelves were ignorant; nor poſſible to be diſcovered any further, the Weeds having ſo overgrown the water, that there was no further paſſage to be made by boat, and leſſe by wading.

Betwixt this Countrey and *Damut*, which we laſt paſſed thorow, is ſaid to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whoſe Queen knoweth no man, and by the reſt honoured as a Goddeſſe. Theſe, they ſay, were firſt inſtituted by the Queen of *Saba*; as true, as that which ſome have added of the *Phœnix* viſible in this Countrey, of *Griffons*, and of *Fowls* ſo big that they make a ſhadow like a Cloud. Which ſtrange reports I have here added, to ſupply the defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with ſo much as the naked names; as undiſcovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monſters*.

7. BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or SAGAMEDRUM (for I finde both names) lieth on the Weſt of *Goiamy*; betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus:* and keeping all along the courſe of that River, as far as *Guagere*, or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern point of *Barnagaſſo*. Some do extend it alſo beyond that Iſland, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themſelves. The greateſt Province of this Empire it may probaly be, *cæteris hujus Æthiopiæ ampliſſimum*, as they ſay it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it muſt be 1500 miles, not 600 onely.

The Countrey plentifull in Mines of the pureſt *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long rods, or Ropes of Metal. And yet as large, and wealthy as they ſay it is; I am more to ſeek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the *Deſarts* of *Libya*, or the ſands of *Arabia*.

Merchants and Travellers for the moſt part go no further than the Sea-coaſts of the Countrey, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the Inlands; and of the Natives, ſuch as have travelled abroad into other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire, than the place they lived in. Or probably their beſt Cities not containing above 2000 houſes, few of them ſo many, and thoſe patched up of thatch, dirt, and hurdles (unleſſe ſome of the Nobility, or wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no great reaſon to ſpeak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of ſuch ſorry places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of moſt, or all the Inland Towns in this large Eſtate.

8. *BARNAGASSO.*

BARNAGNES, or *BARNAGASSUM*, hath on the Weſt *Guagere*, or the Iſle of *Meroe*; on the Southweſt as ſome ſay, a point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Dangali*, and *Adel*; on the Eaſt, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it ſtretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jaſculum* and *Sua*, poſſeſſed by the *Mahometans*, being interpoſed.

The Countrey very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well ſtored with pleaſant Rivulets, beſides the neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea* on the one ſide, *Nile* and *Abanhi* on the other. Remarkable for a *Mountain* in the Weſtern part of it, which being ſpacious in the beginning groweth ſtrait by little and little, and then enlargeth it ſelf again to a League in circuit. On the top thereof a *Royal Palace*, a Church, a Monaſtery, and two very large Ciſterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be aſcended one way onely, and that but to a certain mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reaſon of the impoſſibility of aſcent; nor by long ſiege, or any extremity of Family, in regard it yields proviſion enough to maintain it ſelf. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province againſt *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth beſides *Barnagaſſo* it ſelf, the two Provinces of *Canfila*, and *Dafila*; though rather ſubject to the Governour, or Vice-Roy of it, than parts and members of the ſame. Towns of moſt moment in the whole. 1 *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by ſome to be the *Colony* of *Ptolomy*, the Reſidence of the *Vice-Roy*, ſituate on a pleaſant and fiſh-full River. 2 *Zameta*, honoured ſometimes alſo with the *Vice-Royes* preſence; but rather as a retiring place in times of leiſure, than a Town of ſtrength. 3 *Suachen* ſituate in an Iſland of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richeſt Cities of the Eaſtern parts; and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, ſecured by nature from all ſtorms, of ſmooth tides, ſure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great ſhips of burden. Situate in a little Iſland, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up; inſomuch that veſſels of all ſorts, both within the Haven and without, do uſually unlade themſelves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-beaks ſerve for bridges. A wealthy and well traded Town both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-land parts of the *Aabaſſine* Empire, the Mountains open a ſafe paſſage for the carriage and re-carriage of their commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long ſince with all the reſt of the Countrey lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the ſeat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, or *Baſſa*: whom, in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*; as if by the poſſeſſion of this ſmall part of that Empire, they would entitle the *Grand Signeur* unto all the reſt. The Town conceived by ſome, to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Oſtium Sabaſticum*, or rather *Sabaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolomais Ferarum*, or the *Epitherias*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the Ancient Writers. And ſome again will have it to be the *Succhæ* of *Plinie*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are called *Succhæi* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whoſe part of the Countrey it is ſeated, and to which name it hath ſome reſemblance. 4 *Biſam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monaſtery ſituate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadfull Precipices upon every ſide; in which live 3000 *Monks*, eating by three and three together, in a common *Refectorie*: this being the chief of ſix others in this Province of *Barnagaſſo*, the furtheſt not above 30 miles diſtant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they dayly feed, beſides the Tythes of all the Mountain in which it ſtandeth (fruitfull and rich, & at leaſt 30 miles in compaſſe) they have many good Farms at the foot of the ſaid Mountain, and an hundred ſmall Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raiſe yearly great proviſion of Corn, and above 2000 head of *Cattel*; their Revenues out of *Tigremaon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hoſpitality, in regard their *Novices*, or young *Monks* are ſent abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the husbandry of the houſe: the elder onely being found at the charge of the Monaſtery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5 *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a paſſage openeth through the *Streits* of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*, the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*: Now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6 *Santar*, 7 *Giabel*, 8 *Laccari*, and 9 *Abarach*; theſe four laſt in the Province of *Dafila*.

This Countrey at the preſent, and for long time paſt, is ſubject both to the Great *Neguz*, or the *Preſtegian* of *Æthiopia*, and the *Grand-Signeur* of the *Turks*; naturally ſubject to the one, and *tributary* to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagaſſus*, by the name of his Province, a Vaſſal and *Homager* to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly tribute of 150 of the beſt breed of Horſes, beſides ſome quantities of Silk, and ſome other commodities: but ſo ill neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay alſo to the *Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa* reſident at *Suachen*, 1000 Ounces of Gold yearly for a *compoſition*. For the *Turks* having by the conqueſt of *Egypt* made themſelves maſters of thoſe Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mamaluck*

maluck Sultans; within short time (*viz.* An. 1558.) possessed themselves also of the town of *Suachen* and the parts adjoyning; made it the residence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Bassa's*, and gave him the title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abassia*, as before was said: Forgot by the industrious Collector of the *Turkish History*, in his enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Bassa's* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after all the rest of the Sea-coasts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after some short breathing made a further inrode; in which they did so waste the Countrey, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagassian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this *Composition*.

9. *DANGALI*, & 10. *DOBAS*.

SOuth and South-east of *Barnagasso*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI*, and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red-Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans* or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual enmity with the *Abassine* Emperours; and both of like nature, in regard of the soil, and people.

DANGALI hath on the North, *Barnagasso*; on the South, some part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the West, *Dobas* before mentioned. It taketh up some part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*; and without those Streits, the greatest part of that spacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Avaliticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Mosylon*, (neighboured by a noted *Emporie* of the same) now the Cape of *Docono*; neer unto which the Sea makes a little *Gulf*, and suddenly streitneth it self again; so as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve leagues broad. And in this *Channel* are five or six Ilands, which hinder the passage; so as Sailers must have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie neer those Ilands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Bebul*, or *Babel*, which gives name to the Streits of *Babel Mandel*; a narnow *Frith*, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* Ocean. 2 *Vella*, a well-frequented Port, conceived to be the same which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolomy*. 3 *Zagnani*, and 4 *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*. 5 *Docono*, neer the Cape so called, and therefore probably the *Mosylon* of the antient Writters. 6 *Dangali*, not far from the Sea-side, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing else memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-west of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the West to the borders of *Angote*. The Countrey large, containing twelve, or as some say, 24 several *Prefectures*: Of so good Pasturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater size than in other places, and those for number not easily matched in all this Empire. The people such professed Enemies of the *Christian* faith, that they suffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed twelve *Christians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Negus*; but it is onely when they list: so far from being *Contributioners* towards the support of his estate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their towns, 1 *Doba*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom. 2 *Bally*, upon the same River, on which *Dobas* standeth, but more neer the head.

11. *ADEL*.

ADEL is bounded on the North, with some parts of *Dangali*, and the *Red-Sea*; on the South, with *Adea*; on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; on the West, with *Fatigar*: extended on the Sea-coast from the Cape of *Docono*, to the Cape of *Guardafu*, conceived most probably to be the *Ardmata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Countrey plentiful of Flesh, Hony, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of those Sheep of such burdensom Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds: some Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag; others but one horn onely, and that in the forehead, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-coasts, are of *Arabian* parentage and of the *Mahometan* religion; those towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Æthiopick* race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief towns hereof, 1 *Zeila*, a noted Port-town, situate in or neer the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avalites*: stored with variety of merchandise, and yielding some representation of *Antiquity* in the building thereof, being *lime* and *stone*; materials not much used amongst them in these later times. Of great both beauty and esteem, till the year 1516. when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time the most noted Emporie of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* trade. 2 *Barbora*, seated on the same Sea-coast, well frequented by Merchants, and possibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolomy*; neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Fellez*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea-towns neer the Cape of *Guardafuni*; supposed to be the *Acane* of the Antient writers. 4 *Assam*, 5 *Selir*, and 6 *Bidar*, on the Sea-coasts also. 7 *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Countrey formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation: that the Kings hereof have freed themselves from all signs of subjection to that Crown, and think themselves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power, by *Gradogna*, or *Gnadameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Neguz* was so overlaid, and his Countrey so destroyed by continal incursions; that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Estates, and crave aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance and the help of their shot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battel he was vanquished, and in

the fourth *An.*1559. slain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual wars against the *Christians*; did so establish the affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it so well setled unto his successors: that the *Abassine* Emperour hath ever since left it out of his *Titles*; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial stile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is said also, that in the battel wherein *Claudius* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 60000 Foot and 500 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*: the King of *Adel* got into his possession the greatest masse of Coin and treasure that was ever seen. A victory obtained as well by policie, as force: the *Abassines* being seldom fought with, or their Countrey wasted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten* Fast, they were grown so weak; that they were not able to discharge their domestick businesses, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy.

12. *ADEA.*

ADEA, or *ABEX*, as some call it, hath on the North, the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South, and West, some parts of the *Abassine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reason of which name hereafter.

The Countrey plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forrests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagn* Countrey not lesse fruitfull in Wheat, Barley, and other necessaries, besides a great store of Horses. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in some places more inclined to black: Not cloathed, but from the girdle downward; nor very well armed in time of war, but with poisoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original extraction, whose language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observation in it. 1. *Adea*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because the old residence of the Kings. 2. *Carfur* upon the Sea-coast, sometimes called *Opone*, then a noted *Emporie*, and situate near the Promontory, called *Zingis extrema*. 3 *Azun*, and 4 *Zazelle*, supposed to be the *Essina*, and *Tonica*, of the Ancient writers. 5. *Magadazo*, a petit Kingdom of it self; a wealthy and well traded Town, situate in a fruitfull and delightfull soyl, and neighboured by a safe and capacious Haven: much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Ada* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaia* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abassine Slaves*, which last they value as the chiefest *merchandise* which this Countrey yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza*, their mortal Enemy, under the conduct of seven brethren, came into these parts; where they founded this Citie, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-coasts of both *Æthiopias*, as far as to the *Cape dos Corrientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times, *Vassals* to the *Abassine* Emperour, to whom they paid an yearly *tribute*; this Kingdom still remaining amongst his titles: but since the taking of *Magadazo*, made so obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*; that the Estate of the *Abassine* in it is but meerly *titular*.

13. *FATIGAR*, & 14. *XOA.*

FATIGAR hath on the East, *Adel*, and some part of *Adea*; on the West, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Countrey *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitfull of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant and delicious fruits. Most memorable for a *Lake* of twelve miles compasse, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish; from whence and from the rest of the Mountain issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoyning. The chief Town hereof, (if any one be better than other) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering West on *Amara*; Southward upon *Damut*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any consideration. Nothing observable in the History, or Description of it, but that together with *Fatigar* and others of the mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperours; notwithstanding all those *misadventures* which have hapned to that Empire in these later dayes.

15. *BARUS.*

ON the South East of *Adea*, lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Western point, upon that of *Fatigar*. The soyl and people much of the same condition, with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of strength, or consideration in all the Countrey; those of most note. 1. *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, by twelve Aldermen, or *Common Councellors*, descended from the seven *Arabian* brethren by whom first built; the founders of *Magadora* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2 *Pate*, and 3 *Gogia*, all

all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Tristran de Cugna*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of businesse, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to finde their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the body aggregated of these several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Errour of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch; telleth us a story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the Citie of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands, by *Tharbis* the daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the Citie was married to him. All this not onely questioned, but rejected by discerning men, as a *Jewish* Fable, that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth, do the *Æthiopians* tell the story of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*: that from the death of *Dedan* till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Troglodites*, an ancient Nation of this Countrey, in the times long after: that *Arac* first built the Citie of *Aruma*, and by that pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend is the story of *Maqueda* a Queen hereof, and the fourth from *Aruch*, whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the *Royal Visit* which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Childe by *Solomon* when she was in his Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*; and at the age of 20 years, to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and *circumcised*, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Countrey, with *Azarias* the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stollen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her Son. His Successours afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace* returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the *Legend*, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been shewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Countrey was first peopled by the Children of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassenes* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added: and in some tract of time be of such great power, as to put their name upon the Countrey. For that the *Abassenes* were originally an *Arabian* people, appeared by *Stephanus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranius* (An ancienter Authour than himself) hath told us this, Ἀβασηνοὶ ἔθνος Ἀραβίας. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and *Lexicographer*, hath, as he thinks, decided the controversie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cause, hath fitted us with this pretty *Criticism*, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, must be rendred *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversie: it being evidently clear, that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally setled in *Arabia*, as hath there been shewn; though I deny not but that some of the Posterity of *Chus* in those elder time, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* Nations) might either out of too much populosity, or desire of change crosse over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such parts of this Countrey as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And for *Mayneda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtlesse Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*; not of the *Æthiopians*, in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longsomnesse of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady, would never have suffered *Egypt* to have layen in quiet, whilest *Sesac* the King thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon* also, and so by consequence his half brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables, the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching these *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Persia*; conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Ethiopia* unto *Ægypt* also. Upon this resolution, he sent Ambassadours to that King, to search into the passages of his Countrey, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of wine, some Bracelets, a purple habit, and a box of sweet oyntments, to present him with. Which Presents being tendred to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the purple Robe as too slight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be bonds, or fetters, and openly laught at them, as too weak to hold in a prisoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and sorrowed that his Countrey yielded no such liquour. But understanding well enough what this *visit* aimed at, he gave the Ambassadours at their parting (amongst other gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, that untill every *Persian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Persian*, as before was noted) it would be no safe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods, for giving the *Æthiopians* so contented mindes, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vast Mountains, we finde then not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* medled

medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Auguſtus*: who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governour of that Province, brought to ſuch conformity; that ſhe was fain to ſue for peace, and to purchaſe it with the loſſe of ſome part of her Countrey. To keep them quiet for the future, *Philæ* an *Æthiopian* Citie, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garriſon by the *Romans*, and the Seat of their *Deputy* for theſe parts: held by them till the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned, becauſe the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: in ſo much as *Juſtinian* ſent unto *Heliſtheus*, as *Juſtin* his Succeſſour did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Countrey; to crave their brotherly aſſiſtance againſt the *Perſians*.

Of their Converſion to the Faith in the reign of a ſecond *Candace*, (unleſſe as *Plinie* thinketh, *Candace* was the general name of all their Queens) we have ſpoke already. To which the *Æthiopians* add, that after the baptizing of their firſt *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) by the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperours ſucceeding had the name of *Philip*. Till the religious life of *John*, a Cotemporary of the Emperour *Conſtans*, honoured as a Saint after his deceaſe; made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John* prefixed that of *Preſbyter*, becauſe (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal Office*: *Rex idem hominum Divumque Sacerdos*, the very *Anius* of the Poet: And this ſo commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Preſter John*, and his Eſtate the Empire of *Preſter John*; with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Preſter John*, is but a corruption, or miſtake for *Prætegian*, or *Precious John*, and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no leſſe. And yet I more incline to thoſe, who finding that the word *Preſtegan* ſignifieth an *Apoſtle*, in the *Perſian* tongue; and *Preſtigani*, an *Apoſtlical* man; do thereupon infer that the title of *Padeſcha Preſtigiani*, an *Apoſtolick King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxie* of his belief. Which not being underſtood by ſome, inſtead of *Preſtegian*, they have made *Prieſt John*, in Latine *Preſbyter Johannes*: as by a like miſtake, one *Pregent* (or *Prægian* as the *French* pronounce it) commander of ſome Gallies under *Lewis* the 12th. was by the *Engliſh* of thoſe times, called *Prior Iohn*. *Preſtegian then*, not *Prieſt Iohn*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern *French*, who uſually leave out *ſ* before a *conſonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the preſent, ſhrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks*, and *Arabians*: of which the firſt have taken from him all his Countrey, from the Iſle of *Meroe* unto *Egypt*, with all the Sea-coaſts of *Barnagaſſo*; the later as much encroaching on them, on the reſt of the *Maritine* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they ſuffered more, than the Kings of *Adel*; who have divers times laid waſte, their Countrey diſcomfited ſome of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558. ſlain their King in batell. Not cured of thoſe wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who ſucceeded *Claudius* that was ſlain in battel, was ſo far from being able to revenge the death of his Predeceſſour; that being ſuſpected to incline to *Mahometaniſm*, he was defeated by the *under-King* of *Barnagaſſo*. Since which time they have ſo languiſhed by inteſtine diſſentions, that though *Alexander* the third (if there were ever ſuch a King, which I finde much doubted) is ſaid to have ſetled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*; and that ſome ſtrange ſucceſſes have been ſince reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Eſtate hereof hath been ſo imbroyled in *civil* Wars, and ſo many of their Emperours ſucceſſively murdered; that the power and reputation of it is exceedlingly weakned, and the Countrey made a prey to impuiſſant Enemies. For in the year 603. the Emperour *Melech Gogad*, who ſucceeded in the Throne by the depoſition and impriſonment of his Predeceſſour (under colour of baſtardy) was not long after ſlain by one *Zezelezeus*; and *James*, or *Iacob* advanced unto the Empire: *Iames* not long after vanquiſhed, and ſlain in the Fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazinoſius* (contractedly by ſome called *Suſneas*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for their ſafety. What became of the two eldeſt I have no where found. The youngeſt called *Zaga Chriſtos*, after many hazardous wandrings, and accidents arrived at laſt into *Italy*, and thence he came to *Paris*, An. 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being reſtored to the Throne of his Fathers: For *Sazinoſius*, or *Suſneas*, immediately upon the victory had poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Empire; though for a time ſo terribly diſquieted with Treaſons and Conſpiracies, that in the year 1607. he was fain to ſue for aide to the King of *Spain*, and tender a ſubmiſſion of the *Abaſſine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the ſpirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not ſo eaſily be laid down (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within few years after (that is to ſay, about the year 1628) more violently than it did before: a powerfull Rebel ſtarting up, who followed by an Army of 50000. had queſtionleſſe diſpoſed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and diſcomfited beyond expectation. For it hapned that one *Vermeile* a *Frenchman*, a Jueller by Trade, but exerciſed in the wars of *Holland*, underſtanding that the *Abbaſſine* Empreſſe was much delighted with the rarities and Jewels of *Beraſe*, found means to convey himſelf into the Court, where underſtanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels in the Arts of war, he gat leave to have the diſciplining, or training of 8000 men, with which ſmall Army he utterly diſcomfited and routed that vaſt body of Rebels, and was thereupon deſervedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the laſt news of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being *Anno* 1634. in which that victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of ſome new commotions, *Anno* 1648. the particulars and truth whereof muſt be ſought elſewhere.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe diſaſters, theſe later Emperours have ſtill preſerved their Majeſty amongſt their Subjects, whom they hold in ſervitude enough, though they keep not ſuch a diſtance as in former

Ages,

Ages; when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and uſed to ſhew himſelf but thrice in a year, *viz.* on *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Holyrood* day: by which retiredneſſe it was thought that he made his preſence more acceptable; ſome holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majeſty of a King, than to make himſelf too common an object for the eye of the vulgar. The like kinde of ſtate was once kept by thoſe Kings of *France* of the firſt *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themſelves from all publike affairs, uſed onely to ſhew themſelves (as we have already ſaid) on *May-day*. A greater retiredneſſe than this, was that which *Valleda* Queen of the *Tencteri* (a people of the *Rhene*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have uſed; for when the reſt of the *Germans* then in arms, ſent Ambaſſadours to her, to inform her of their victory againſt the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to ſpeak to her, or to ſee her; *Arcebantur aſpectu, quo venerationis plus ineſſet.* Such a keeping of ſtate, the politick Prince *Tiberius* uſed, when the *German* legions mutined; for he daigned not himſelf to ſee them pacified, but ſent his Son; the reaſon was, *quia majeſtati major è longinquo reverentia.* And no doubt the ſame keeping of diſtance ſwayed much with him, when he forſook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propenſion to follow his *unnatural* pleaſures the more ſecurely, together with his deformities on his face, had alſo their powers upon his reſolution.

The title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither ſo great, or mighty in power, as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of GOD, the Pillar of faith, ſprung from the ſtock of* Judah, *the ſon of* David, *the ſon of* Solomon, *the ſon of the Columne of* Sion, *the ſon of the ſeed of* Jacob, *the ſon of the hand of* Mary, *the ſon of* Nahu *after the fleſh, the ſon of* St. Peter *and* Paul *after the ſpirit; Emperour of the higher and leſſer* Æthiopia, *and of the moſt mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, *where are the fountains of* Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremean, Sabaim, *the birth-place of the Queen of* Saba, Bernagaſſum; *and Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of* Egypt.

It ſeemeth by this title, that theſe *Æthiopian* Emperours, however the truth of ſtory goeth, conceive themſelves to be ſprung from *Salomon*, & *Maqueda*, (or *Nizaule*, as *Ioſeph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by ſome reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the ſame with thoſe of the Tribe of *Iuda*, which are a *Lyon rampant* in a field *Or*: and that the Motto of them is to this effect, *viz. The* Lyon *of the Tribe of* Judah *ſhall overcome.* But *Bara*, an expert Herauld, giveth this Prince no ſuch Coat-armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a croſſe portate *Mars*, charged with a crucifix *Sol*, between two ſcourges of the ſecond. And yet not altogether to diſcredit the old Tradition, ſo generally received amongſt them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abaſſens* came into *Æthiopia*, ſome of the *Sabæans* their next Neighbours came along for company, and amongſt them ſome of the *Royal race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with ſome of which, by reaſon of their great Nobility, ſome of the *Abaſſine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impoſſibility, but that *Solomon* (conſidering his courſe of life) might get a ſon upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus deſcended.

As for the Government of theſe Emperours, it is abſolutely *Regal*, or to ſay better, perfectly *Deſpotical*: the people being treated by them more like ſlaves, than ſubjects; taking away *Signeuries*, and giving them unto whom he pleaſeth, the deprived party not daring to expreſſe the leaſt diſcontent. By them ſo reverenced, that it was anciently a cuſtom, if the King were *blinde*, or *lame*, or *maimed*, for the ſubject to inflict on his own body the like *impreſſion*: ſtill had in ſo much honour by the greateſt ſubject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they paſſe by, though he be not in it. He on the other ſide, ſeldom appeareth to his ſubjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver-Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watchet Taffata*, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his *Forces* and *Revennes*, ſome of our late Obſervators ſpeak nothing but wonders. Some ſay his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea*, to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some, that he is of ſo great Riches, that he is able to purchaſe a *moyety* of all the world, if it were to be ſold; others, that he is able to raiſe for any preſent ſervice, a Million of men. And he himſelf is ſaid to have offered to the *Portugals*, one *Million* of money, and another of men, if they would imploy it in a war againſt the *Infidels*. But notwithſtanding theſe great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be ſuch a *Miracle*, as ſome of theſe Reports have made him. For they that ſpeak moſt knowingly of his *Revennes*, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being diſcharged, he coffereth up but three *Millions* of Crowns *per annum*; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of war and trouble, will be eaſily waſted, or brought into a narrower compaſſe. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, beſides the Crown Lands, or *Demain Imperial*, he layeth ſome *Tax*, or other upon every houſe, receiveth the *tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines; and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaſeth to chuſe, ſo it be not that in which the Lords themſelves inhabit.

This, though it be no great *Intrado*, conſidering the large extent of his Dominions, and form of his Government; yet it is greater in proportion than his *Forces* are. For notwithſtanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag, of raiſing a *Million* of men for preſent ſervice; it is well known that he was never able to advance half that number, in his greateſt neceſſity; and amongſt thoſe whom he can raiſe, there are but few who can deſerve the name of Souldiers. For the people being poor and beggerly, and brought up in a ſervile and baſe condition; are naturally deſtitute of that courage and alacrity of ſpirit, which ſhould be in men profeſſing *Arms*, or fit for noble undertakings: and are beſides, on certain *jealouſies* of State, ſo diſuſed from war, that they know not how to uſe their weapons when there is occa-

tion. So that for my part I conſider him as a weak and *impuiſſant* Prince, of no authority, or influence out of his Dominions; nor able to defend himſelf from the continual incurſions of his Neighbours (ſome of them mean and petit Princes) which lie neareſt to him. *Land-locked* on every ſide from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon Northward, by the *Turks*; confronted on the Weſt, by the King of *Borneo*, who poſſeſſeth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the Eaſt, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, ſometimes a *Vaſſal* of his own; and on the South, with the *Gallæ* a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waſte before them whereſoever they come, and finally in theſe later times by his own ſubjects alſo. Injuries not to be indured, had he power to help it.

But the chief Stay of this Eſtate, is an *Order* of *Knighthood*, entituled by the name of St. *Antony*, to which every Father that is of the Degree of a Gentleman, is to deſtinate one of his ſons, if he have above two, but not the eldeſt. And out of theſe they cull about 12000 Horſe, which are to be the ſtanding Guard of the Emperours perſon: their Oath is, To defend the *Frontiers* of the Empire, to preſerve *Religion*, and to make head againſt the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*; where they have two *Monaſteries*; as well for the training up of theſe Knights in the time of their youth, as their *retirement* when grown old and diſcharged from ſervice.

And ſo much for *Æthiopia Superior*.

OF

OF ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East, with the *Red-Sea* (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulf of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the *Æthiolick* Ocean; on the North, with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered. *Inferior* was added for distinctions sake, because somwhat of a lower situation than the other is. By *Ptolomy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge than the neerer did: and by late writers for the contrary reason, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolomies Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia Sub Ægypto*, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Contrey so little discovered in those elder times, that we finde mention onely of some eminent Mountains, as 1. *Canchis*, 2. *Lon*, 3. *Ziphia*, 4. *Barditis*, 5. *Moschi*, one onely Region known by name, called *Agisimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The people not distinguished here, as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kinde of diet; some of them being called *Anthropophagi*, from their eating of men, and others *Ichthyophagi* from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*; the principal of which had the name of *Rapsij*: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Hesperij*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the *Lakes* or Fens of *Nilus*, were occasioned by the great abundance of snow which fell from the *Mountains* of the *Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinocerots*, Tygers, Elephants, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Countrey in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *mountainous* in the West, *sandy* in the midst, and *desart* towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soyl and people, being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *inclosures*, than as presented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills, and Rivers, of most reckoning in it; the principall of their Mountains are 1 those called *Cantaberes* in the Province of *Angola*; 2. *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopias*, now found to belong unto this alone. A chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick* of *Capricon*; full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage People: the valleys underneath of so great a *depth*, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Countrey is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the world; though it self but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1 *Nilus*, which passing thorow some part of this Countrey, and traversing the whole length of the *Abassian* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2 *Zaire* the greatest of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Antients, which running Eastward thorow the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser streams of 1 *Vamba*, 2 *Barbela*, 3 *Coanza*, 4 *Lelunda*, makes many Islands in his way; and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness disgorgeth his full stomack in the Western Ocean. 3 *Cuama*, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers; after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is navigable) loseth it self in the *Indian*, or *Æthiopick* Ocean, and 4 *Fluvius Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, which shaping a course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1 *Zangnebar*. 2 *Monomotapa*, 3 *Cafraria*, 4 *Manicongo*. Some also adde the Countrey of *Aian*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Adea*. But these we have ascribed, with better reason, to the other *Æthiopia*, within the bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

1. *SANGUEBAR.*

ZANGUEBAR, or *ZANZIBAR* is bounded on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, or the *Indian* Ocean; on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*: on the North, with the *higher Æthiopia* only; on the South, with *Monomopata*. The reason of the name I finde not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agisimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Adea*. The Countrey on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoyning bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and was much famed in those elder times, for the best sort of *Myrrhe*: the *Myrrha Troglodytica*, & *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being used for the same, by some of the Antients; because the *Troglodites* and the people of this *Barbaria*, joyned on one another. Here was also in those elder times a good race of Ginger of which saith *Discorides*, Μάκερ φλοιὸς ἐξ κομιζόμενος ἐκ τῆς Βαρβάρου, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbara*. Where by the way, the *Scholiasts* upon that Author, and *Pline* in the 12 *Book* have been much mistaken; of which the first takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh that the *Myrrha* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coursness of it, as if so called only because unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River; seated not far from the Sea; and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolomy*. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called, the Countrey is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withall so full of Woods and Forrests, that for want of passage for the winde, the aire is generally (as in all Fenny Countreys of the like obstruction) exceeding *pestilent*. The people of complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-coasts; in the In-land parts *Idolaters*; extreamly given to Witchcraft, and Divinations. Naked above the waste, and beneath covered onely with the skins of beasts, or some such mingled colour stuffe as the *Scottish Plad*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, sowed together with leathern thongs, and calked with *Gum*; having no other sayls in them then the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as slight a making, as those used anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

Primum cana salix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; cæsoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum superenatat Amnem.

Which I finde thus rendred to my hand:

The moistned Osier *of the hoary Willow*
Is woven first into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks hides, upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1 *Melinde*, 2 *Mombaza*, 3 *Quiloa*, 4 *Mosambique*, 5 *Sofala*, all along the Coasts; 6 *Moenhemage*, 7 *Corova*, 8 *Calen*, 9 *Anzuga*, 10 *Monzalo*, 11 *Badin*, 12 *Mombra*, 13 *Mombizo*, 14 *Embroe*, and 15 *Macaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine last, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the Shores, or neer it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like *Adventurers*, shall be surveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the *Higher Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: so named from *Melinde*, the chief Citie of it, well walled, and seated in a fruitfull and delightfull soyl; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Flesh, Limons, Citrons, and most sorts of fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia*, a Province of *India*. The houses built of lime and stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-coasts, of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; those of the In-lands, which are of the original Natives, for the most part *Heathens*. Most of them of an *Olive colour*, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have some black people also: And all of them more *civil* in their Habit, course of life, and entertainment in their houses, than the rest of this Countrey. Great friends unto the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever since the kinde entertainment which they gave unto *Vasques de Gama*; whom they furnished with *Pilots* to direct him in his way to *India*, when first discovered by that people, An. 1497.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of these petit Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the soyl and people, that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief Citie of it, situate from *Melinde* about 70 miles, in a little Island of 12 miles compasse; but of good influence on some part of the *Continent* also. The Isle and Citie said to have some resemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a wall, and fortified with a Castle; the streets thereof very narrow, but well built, most of the houses being brick, and the *Mosques* capacious. The King hereof a *Mehometan*, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Christians*. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vasques de Gama*, An. 1500. but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy aire, not well agreeing with the constitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg* and five *Turkish* Gallies, the better to enable themselves against the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and ruinated by *Thomas de Cotigno*, sent thither *An.* 1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy residing in *Goa*; there being taken at that time (besides the spoyl of the Citie) all the *Turkish* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many lesser Pieces of Ordinance. Such of the *Turks* and Citizens as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a man-eating people, who had before befieged the Citie; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King; and as many of the principal Citizens, as they could get into their hands. 2. *Ampaza*, the second Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals*, about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Countrey rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of *Arabian* Ancestry; of complexion near unto a white: their women comely, sumptuous in attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houses, which are generally well built and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quiloa* are said to have a strange custome amongst them, more to be mentioned for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the sowing up of the private passages of nature in their female Children, leaving onely a small vent for their urine. Thus sowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And she that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kinde of ignominy sent back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It

It took this name from *Quiloa* the chief Town thereof, ſituate in a little Iland, but neer the ſhore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, oppoſite to the mouth of the River *Coava*, by ſome called *Quiloa*. Firſt built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the ſon of *Sultan Hiſchen*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, becauſe their Mothers were *Perſians*, and his an *Abaſſine*; ſought new Adventures in theſe parts, and bought this Iland. His Succeſſors grown rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land: and ſo adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for ſumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in thoſe parts. Proud of their many good ſucceſſes they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the conduct of *Vaſques de Gama*, An. 1500. the City it ſelf was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave ſome Fortreſſes erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Countrey; whom in the year 1505. they depoſed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* roſe in Arms, diſplaced their new King, demoliſhed their Fortifications, and ſent them to learn better moderation in their proſperous Fortunes, *An.* 1509. The buſineſs coming after to a compoſition, the *Quiloan* covenanted for the yeerly *Tribute* of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*? So called of *Moſambique* the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iland, the principal of three; oppoſite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Praſſum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, and by him made the furtheſt known place of all this Coaſt. In the Iland there are ſaid to be ſheep whoſe tails are 25. pound weight, as in other places of theſe Countries, and ſome parts of *Syria*; Hens, *black* in feathers, fleſh, and bone; and if ſodden make the water as black as ink, but yet ſweeter in taſte than any other. Of *Pork* good ſtore, the more, becauſe the people are for the moſt part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all hog-meat is forbidden. The in-land parts more barren, but very populous: ſo ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* firſt came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they ſold fifteen Kine; and then fell out among themſelves, who ſhould have the *Bell*. The Town conveniently ſeated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, in the hands of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, uſe to call in here, and fit themſelves with all things neceſſary to purſue their voyage. A Town of ſo great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Caſtle in the time of his Government, (which continueth only for three yeares) is ſaid to lay up 300000 *Ducats* for his Lawfull gains, out of the Gold, that cometh from *Sofala*. A gain ſo great, that at the end of his three years, he is to ſerve for three years more at ſome place or other of the *Eaſt Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return to his native Countrey. Such of that Nation as are ſuffred to inhabit here, are enjoyned to be married, to the end the Iland ſhould be well peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwiſe perhaps might have few elſe in it, but the Garriſon Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Moſambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greateſt River of thoſe parts, and thence extended to the mountains which they call *Manica*, by which ſeparated from *Monomotapa*. So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iland (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoyning. Both Town and Iland ſubject unto the power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to ſecure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richeſt in the world; the People bringing hither great quantity of *Gold* (of which they have moſt plentifull Mines) which they exchange with them for their cloth, and other commodities. It is ſuppoſed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two *Millions* yeerly. The ſuppoſition ſo agreable to all other circumſtances, that little queſtion need be made of the truth thereof. Inſomuch as this Countrey for its abundance of *Gold* and *Ivory*, is by ſome thought to be that land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* ſent; and of this opinion *Ortelius* in his *Theſaurus* was the firſt Author; but in my minde, upon no probable conjectures, and againſt very ſtrong preſumption. For firſt, *Ophir* the ſon of *Joctan*, of whom mention is made in the 10. of *Gen. verſ.* 29. and from whom the land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name; is in the next verſe ſaid to have planted in the Eaſt: whereas this *Sofala* is ſituate South-weſt from *Chaldea*; in which the confuſion of Tongues, and diſperſing of the People, began. And ſecondly, it is impoſſible for the Navie of *Solomon* which lay at *Ezion Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*; to have ſpent three years in coming hither, and returning: which we finde to have been the uſual time, of finiſhing the voyage to *Ophir*, 1 *Kings ch.* 10. *Ophir* then is ſome part of *India*; But whether it were the Iland of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Molucco's*, or the land of *Malaza*, called by the Ancient *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I dare not determine; conſidering what worthy men maintain theſe ſeveral opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only inland Province of any note, hath on the Eaſt *Mombaza*, and *Quiloa*; on the Weſt, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, ſome part of the Dominions of the *Abaſſine* Emperours; on the South, *Moſambique*. The Countrey very plentifull of Mines of *Gold*, yet the People uſe it not for *money*; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and *Taffatas*, with which they uſe to cloath themſelves from the Girdle downwards; In ſtead of money, they make uſe of *Red Counters*, much reſembling Glaſs. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacie with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are alſo ſubject a wild and cruel people, called *Agag*, inhabiting on Lake *Zembre*, and the banks of the *Nilus*; diſperſed about the fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aſpect, more horrible than otherwiſe they would be, by drawing lines upon their cheeks with an iron-inſtrument, and forcing their eye-lids to turn backwards. By the aſſiſtance of this people, the

the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preſerved his Eſtate againſt the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themſelves by ſome of their own Leaders did ſo diſtreſs the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a ſmall Iland, where he hardly ſcaped a violent and untimely death, moſt of his people being ſtarved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the reſt of theſe Provinces, we can ſay but little, and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the moſt part from one another, both in ſpeech and behaviour; each Village under a ſeveral King, and each in continual quarrel with its next neighbours; whom if they overcome, they eat. At leaſure times they live by hunting, and the fleſh of Elephants. And amongſt theſe, but more upon the Borders of the *Abaſſine* Empire, I place the *Gallæ*; a Nationleſs nation, as it were, without houſe or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom ſome call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be; who watching their advantages, and joyned together in ſome Arts of doing miſchief, have made of late ſuch deſolations in the Countries of the *Preſtor-John*.

2. *MONOMOTAPA.*

MONOMOTAPA, BENOMOTANA, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all theſe names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, and South, by the River of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, by which ſeparated from *Cafraria*; and on the Eaſt, by the main Ocean. So that it is almoſt an Iland; ſaid to contain in compaſs 750 *Spaniſh* leagues, or 3250 *Italian* miles.

The Air hereof is ſaid to be very temperate, and the Countrey very good and pleaſant, yet full of Forreſts. Well watered, beſides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1 *Panami*, 2 *Luanga*, 3 *Arruga*, 4 *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their ſands. By means whereof, it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great ſtore of Paſturage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beaſts very large and great: ſuch ſtore of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reaſon, but to make merchandiſe of their Teeth: their *Gold*-Mines great and ſmall, reckoned to 3000; ſome in the hils of *Magnice*, others in the Provinces of *Matuca*, and *Boro*: the places where the Mines are, known without further Art in the diſcovery of them, by the dryneſs and barrenneſs of the ſoil; as if Nature could not hoord up gold in her ſpacious boſom, but ſhe muſt needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean ſtature, and black complexions; but ſtrong and active, couragious, and of ſuch footmanſhip, that they out-run horſes. Their Apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make, or buy from ſome other place: their Diet Fleſh, Fiſh, Rice, Mill, and an Oil called *Suſiman*. Their Religion, *Paganiſm* for the moſt part; yet they worſhip not Idols, but believe in one God onely, which they call *Mozimo*; and ſeem not much averſe from the *Chriſtian* faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They puniſh nothing more ſeverely than *Witch craft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the puniſhment of *Delinquents* they uſe no Priſons, but execute them as ſoon as apprehended; which is the reaſon that the Vulgar have no doors to their houſes, that being a priviledge for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the firſt the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much reſpected (as a ſecond *England*) the Emperor himſelf, if he meeteth any of them in the ſtreets, giving them the way. Not to be married, till their *Menſtrua* or Natural purgations teſtifie their ability for conception; and therefore they ſolemnize the firſt *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feaſt.

Provinces of moſt note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of this Empire, are

1. Matuca, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropick*, have in the winter ſuch deep ſnows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not ſpeedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientes* (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in fat paſtures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhauſtible Mines of Gold. Moſt memorable for a large, and in thoſe times an impregnable Fortreſs, built formerly by ſome forrein Prince to ſecure the Mines; built of ſquare ſtones, and every ſtone of marvellous greatneſs, without any ſign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 ſpans thick, but the height not anſwerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the moſt learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of ſome of the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the higheſt. By the Inhabitants, who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by thoſe who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, aſcribed to *Solomon*; though ſituate 510 miles more Weſtward than *Sofala*, by their own accompt. The Air here very cold, by reaſon of the ſharp blaſts coming from the *Pole-Antartick*; ſo much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fewel, but what they make themſelves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4 *QUITICUI*, both furniſhed with Gold alſo in their Mines and Rivers, but not ſo pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet ſuch as ſerve their turn ſo well, as to ſpoil all induſtry: the people here being very careleſs in providing neceſſaires, which they preſume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHAMBAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vaſſal and Tributary to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*; the King whereof in the year 1560 was Chriſtened by *Gonſalvo Silveria* a *Spaniſh Jeſuite*, by the name of *Conſtantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progreſs of *Chriſtianity*. Touching 6 *Matana*, 7 *Melemba*, 8 *Quinbebe*, 9 *Berteca*, and 10 *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houſes being here ſo thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is ſaid, there is no ſign of any building either old or new. The principal of thoſe that be, 1. *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhamban*, and the Seat-royal of thoſe Kings; memorable for the baptiſm of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2 *Simbus*, ſuppoſed to be ſo called from the *Agiſymba* of *Ptolomie*, the chief town of the Province of *Torre*, or *Batne*; diſtant from *Sofala* one and twenty dayes journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruines of the old Fortreſs before deſcribed. 3 *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperour makes his uſual reſidence; giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himſelf, whom they call *Benomotaxa*, or *Monomotapa*, the word in their language ſignifying a King or Emperour.

The King hereof, accounted one of the greateſt of *Africk*, hath under his command, beſides the Provinces deſcribed, ſome part of *Cafraria*. Of great riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which ſo abundantly ſupply all the Royal occaſions, that he exacteth no kind of tribute from his Subjects, but ſome certain dayes ſervice in his Works; and from his Nobles gifts and preſents, without which none of them are to come before him. His forces great, the multitudes of men conſidered but weak, for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern ſervice, the Arms they moſt uſe being only Darts and Targets. For which cauſe, (and in regard the people of the ſubject Kingdoms are ſo prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hoſtages of their Fathers loyaltie) he wageth *mercenarie* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he diſtributeth abroad in his ſeveral Provinces: and amongſt theſe it is affirmed, that he hath a ſtrong Battallion of *Amazons*, a warlike race of women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts of *Zanzibar*; compared by ſome, for their fidelity and proweſs, to the *Turkiſh Janizaries*. And yet not truſting wholly to the faith of theſe *Mercenaries*, it is ſaid that he keeps 200 *Maſtives* for the Guard of his perſon. Much reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is ſerved upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all thoſe that are about him make ſuch a ſhout, that the town rings of it. In one particular they differ from moſt Nations elſe, which is, that ſuch as are admitted into his preſence are bound to ſit down, in token of reverence; to ſtand before him, being a ſign of the greateſt dignity, which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Chriſtianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonſalvo* the Jeſuite, by the name of *Sebaſtian*, (that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning.) But afterwards on the ſuggeſtions of ſome *Arabians* then in great place about him, having cauſed the *Jeſuite* to be ſlain; he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Franciſco Barretio*; to whom he offered very honorable amends for the injury done: But *Barretio* having in hope ſwallowed all the Gold in the Countrey, would not admit of any peaceable agreement; but referred the buſineſs to a battel; in which being overcome himſelf, and his whole forces not long after conſumed by ſickneſs, the hopes of *Chriſtianity*, and the *Portugals* intereſſe in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. *CAFRARIA.*

CAFRARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; on the South, and Weſt, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to ſome parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafras*, which in the *Arabian* tongue ſignifieth an *Heretick*; a name by them given to *Chriſtians*, *Heathens*, and thoſe of their own Religion alſo, which differ in *opinion* from them; but given to this Region by ſome late Writers, becauſe deſtitute of another name.

The Countrey, for ſo much of it as hath been diſcovered, is ſaid to be full of great Herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep; abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Bahoons*, Foxes, Hares, Oſtriches, *Pelicans*, Herons, Geeſe, Ducks, Pheſants, Partriges; in a word all things neceſſary for the life of man, were it ſomewhat better ſtored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally ſtored with Woods, and Forreſts: the Hils thereof ſo intermixt with graſſie Vallies, that pity 't is ſo beautiful and rich a Countrey ſhould be inhabited by ſo barbarous and rude a people; who being utterly unprovided of towns and houſes, live in woods like beaſts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noſes, long-ſhaped heads, and moſt monſtrous ears; extended far beneath their ſhoulders, by hanging in them iron-chains, glaſſe, bullets, Bels, and ſuch ponderous bables. Theſe Ornaments common to both ſexes, who alſo uſe (for their greater beauty) moſt hideouſly to ſlaſh themſelves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better ſort with their naked skins; with which only, except ſome flap of an Hide, or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their beſt habits for the moſt part are the Hides of Beaſts, undreſſed, unfaſhioned, juſt as they tear them from the fleſh; but when they cloath themſelves with Sheep-skins, they have ſo much wit as to wear the fleece next to their bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expoſe (with no ſmall pride and glory) to the open view. Their voice ſo inarticulate, that it is hard to be diſtinguiſhed into words and ſyllables; which, being compoſed with that bruitiſhneſſe, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to ſay, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beaſts, or beaſts created in the likeneſſe, and ſhape of men. But they make a greater uſe of their Cattle, than for Garments onely, their raw fleſh ſerving them for food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleanſed, and with all the filth in them in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearle, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countreys. Gold here ſo vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Braſſe, or Iron, and that quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in ſuch ſenſeleſſe diſproportion, as rendreth Braſſe and Iron the more excellent metals.

But

But amongſt all the ſeveral Nations which inhabit this moſt flouriſhing *C*ountrey, none are more barbarous than thoſe, whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of good Hope*; tall, ſquare, and ſtrong, addicted alwayes to War and *Rapine*, and feeding on the fleſh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying friends, whoſe death they haſten for the *Shambles*. The ſkulls of whom they uſe for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poyſoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they alwayes carry *fire* before them, menacing thereby to roſte, or boyl all ſuch as they overcome. Their King (if ſuch a ſacred name become ſuch an impious Monſter) they account for *Lord* of all the earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not onely threatneth the deſtruction of men, but ſhooteth his poyſoned Arrows againſt *Heaven* it ſelf, as often as the rain, or heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inrode into *Zanzibar*, laid deſolate all the Countrey as far as *Mombaza*, which Citie they beſieged, ſacked, and devoured the people of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our deſcription of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, ſcarce ſo much as houſes; and thoſe ſo mean that they deſerve not to be ſo called: except it be ſome ſheds on the Sea-ſides, for the uſe of Saylors. Of moſt note in it is, *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen, or ſixteen Leagues from the *Cape of good Hope*: not ſo much noted for the buildings adjoyning to it (if there be any ſuch) as the Bay it ſelf; environed on all ſides with a pleaſant Countrey, enriched with variety of Herbs, not onely pleaſing to the ſence, but very Medicinal alſo for many diſeaſes, eſpecially for thoſe that are troubled with the *Scærbute* (or *Scurvy*, as we uſe to call it,) the Hills adjoyning, ſtored with great multitudes of Cattle, both Sheep and Cowes, though leſſe in ſize than thoſe in theſe Northern parts: great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eaſtern voyages, for here ſuch as are to ſayl towards the *Indies*, uſe to take in freſh water, and make proviſion of things neceſſary for ſo long a voyage. I have heard that ſome of our *Engliſh* ſhips in their return from the *Eaſt-Indies*, ſeized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on ſhip-boord, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *Engliſh* tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Eſtate and Affairs of this Countrey. One of theſe who was called *Coore*, being brought to *London* (for the other died upon the way) was dieted and cloathed according to the *Engliſh* faſhion, gratified alſo with braſſe Rings, Beads and ſuch other things, by which they thought they might moſt gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home, is home, though it be but homely*, as the ſaying is. For this poor wretch having learned ſo much *Engliſh*, as to bemoan his own misfortunes, would throw himſelf upon the ground, and cry out with great anguiſh, and vexation of ſpirit, *Coore home go, Soldania go, Coree home go*, out of which unquietneſſe of humour, when they could not get him, they ſent him back in the next ſhips which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he ſaw any ſhip with *Engliſh* colours, he would very joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their cuſtome is) and readily perform all good Offices towards them; yet ſo that it was found withall, that by diſcovering to the Natives how low eſteem the *Engliſh* had of Braſſe and Iron, they thenceforth raiſed the value of thoſe richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for ſuch ſorry trifles, as have been ſpoken of before.

But that which is of moſt conſideration in all this Countrey, is the *Cape* it ſelf; diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their firſt *Indian* undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempeſts which he found about it, it was firſt called *Tormentoſa*. But afterwards the *Portugal* having doubled the *Cape*, and thereby finding good hopes of a proſperous voyage, they cauſed it to be called *Cabo di Bunna Speranza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*: *Vaſques di Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, *An.* 1597. It conſiſteth of three great points or head-lands, of which that which is neereſt us, is the *Cape of good Hope*: the middlemoſt hath the name of *Cabo Falſo*, becauſe miſtaken for the other, by ſome of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Guglia*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reaſon of thoſe ſharp points which ſhoot towards the Sea. On the top of the *Cape*, a large and pleaſing plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a carpet of graſſe; it is called the *Table* of the *Cape*, and yieldeth a large proſpect over the Sea on all ſides. The Sea here is very rough and tempeſtuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkinde: whereupon a *Spaniſh* Captain being ſore vexed with a ſtorm, expoſtulated with GOD, why he ſuffered his *good Catholicks* to endure ſuch torments; and permitted the *Engliſh Hereticks* and Blaſphemers, to paſſe ſo eaſily.

The Countrey is not ſubjected unto any one Prince, the *Natives* being governed by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Glans*; nor finde I hitherto that either the *Portugals*, or *Spaniards*, have took poſſeſſion of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the beſt title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom poſſeſſion was taken of it in the reign of King *James*, by one *Captain Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Aſcent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Countrey lying ſo far off be held worth the owning; I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Stateſmen*.

4. *MANICONGO.*

MANICONGO is bounded on the South, with *Cafraria*, and the *Mountains* of the *Moon*; on the Weſt, with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the land of the *Negroes*; and on the Eaſt, with *Zanzibar*, and ſome part of the *Abaſſine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of thoſe many Kingdoms, which are united in this Name.

The

The Aire hereof ſo temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inſomuch as the people do not uſe to change their garments, or make more *fire* then, than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights ſo equal to the dayes, that for the greateſt part of the year there is little difference; the Countrey being ſituate under the *Æquator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over hot, notwithſtanding in the heats of Summer, by reaſon of the cool windes which then blow continually; and the great dewes, which falling in the night make ſome compenſation for the extream fervour of the day. The ſoyl ſo exceeding fruitfull in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and ſuch ſtore of Paſturage; that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies: Elephants of that bigneſſe, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of ſo vaſt a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; not to ſay any thing of their *fowl*, both wilde and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean ſtature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghaſtly to behold; ſtrong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Heathens*, ſome worſhipping the Sun and Moon, others the earth, as the Mother and Nurſe of all things; and ſome again, wilde Beaſts and Serpents. So populous, that without any ſenſible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is ſuppoſed that they ſell 28000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yeerly; by whom they are ſent into *Braſil*, there to work in the Mines, and Sugar houſes. The *Chriſtian* faith admitted in ſome few of their Provinces, but ſpecially in that of *Congo*; where firſt preached, in the reign of *John* the 2. king of *Portugal*, An. 1490. by *Gonzalvo do Suſa*; who having converted and baptized the Kings Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed ſo far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did imbrace the *Goſpel*. Received there by the people with ſuch infinite joy, that when their firſt *Biſhop* came to live amongſt them, they cauſed the wayes from the Sea-ſide to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partriges, Fiſh, Veniſon, and other neceſſaries to teſtifie their rejoycings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects in the other Provinces were *baptized* accordingly, and for a time imbraced the Faith; yet after ſome ſmall trial of it they relapſed to their former *Heatheniſm*; either unable or not willing to conform to ſo ſtrict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey. 1. *Bengo*. 2. *Coanza*. 3. *Dande*. 4. *Barbela*. 5. *Ambrizi*. 6. *Loza*, 7. *Zaire*. This laſt the greateſt of them all, if not of all *Africk* alſo: Of which, though we have ſpoke already, we ſhall add this here, That it falleth into the *Æthiopick* Sea with ſo great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen ſometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural ſweetneſſe; not intermingled nor corrupted with the ſalt Sea-waters. Nor can the people ſayl above five miles againſt the ſtream, by reaſon of the *Cataracts*, or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than thoſe of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of moſt note, they are 1. *Sierra, Complida*, or the Long Mountain; 2. *Mons Chriſtalli*, or the *Chriſtalline* Mountain, ſo called from the abundance of *Chriſtal*, which is found therein; 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of exceſſive height: 4. *Montes Sal nitri*, ſo called from their abounding in that kinde of Mineral; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich in Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general muſter in the ſtile Imperial; wherein their King calleth himſelf King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Sandi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Matana*, *Quiſoma*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congemes*, *Amolaze*, *Langelungi*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zoanghi*. Many of theſe not ſo well diſcovered, as to afford us any matter fit for our diſcourſe; the principal of thoſe that be, are

1. *ANGOLA* bounded on the South, with *Cafraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of *Silver*, and moſt excellent *Copper*; ſome ſtore of Kine and Horſes brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a ſpecial ornament,) than keep for any other uſe: their chiefeſt diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and ſo that dainty ſo affected, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give twenty ſlaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture ſomewhat at the nature of the people; who beſides this, are ſaid to be much given to *ſorcerie*, and *divinations* by the flight of Birds, skilfull in *medicinal* herbs and poyſons, and by familiarity with the *Devil*, able to tell things to come. Permitted as moſt *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will: who with the reſt of the women, whether maids, or widows, uſe at the firſt ſight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cauſe of their troubleſom purgations.

In this Countrey are the Mountains called *Cantaberes*, rich in Mines of Silver; but thoſe Mines not ſuffered to be digged, for fear of drawing ſome unneceſſary war upon them: ſo that they uſe *Glaſſe-beads* for money, and therewith alſo do adorn the perſons of greateſt eminence. Their principal Citie called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal reſidence of their Kings; but not elſe obſervable.

This Countrey was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486. the King hereof at that time *Vaſſal* unto him of *Congo*; and ſo continued till that King did imbrace the Goſpel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have ſince ſubſiſted of themſelves without ſuch dependance. At firſt they held good correſpondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: But after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many of them as they found in *Cabazza*, An. 1578. under colour of ſome

pretended treason. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of these parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming such people as he had, with two Gallies and some other Vessels passed up the River of *Coanza*, wasting the Countrey on both sides. Against whom the King of *Angola* raised an Army of a *Million* of men (as some Writers tell us:) but amongst those multitudes of men, there were so few Souldiers, that an handfull of the *Portugals*, aided with some of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, An. 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expressed some good affections unto *Christianity*; sending unto the King of *Congo* for some *Priests* to instruct him in it, but obtained them not; the state of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upperhand, built, or repaired a strong Fort, situate near a convenient bay, by which they did not onely serve their Trade, but command a great part of the Countrey, till dispossessed thereof by the treachery and falshood of the *Hollanders*, An. 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themselves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Cessation from all Hostility with them, was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace should not begin in the *East-Indies*, till the end of a year, nor in *Brasil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themselves Masters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold of, who following these instructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, was by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Castles as their special friends, which presently they possessed themselves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to seek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Isle of St. *Thomas*.

To this King belong also the two Provinces of *Matana*, and *Quisoma*, though both used in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the first lying towards the Sea, is said to be of a wholsom air, and a fertile soil; outwardly furnished with fruits, and inwardly with Mines of *Christal* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of some convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great *Lake* called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Commonwealth*; but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke, by reason of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their warrs against him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Conza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*, on the East, *Pemba*; on the West the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of Silver, well stored with Beasts and Birds, as wel tame as wilde. Amongst the Birds, *Parrets* both green and gray, and many which are taught to sing; not much inferior for their musick to the birds of *Canaries*. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the *Zebre*, shaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly so streaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and those streaks naturally set in such even proportion; as yieldeth to the eye a most pleasing object. But wilde, and of so swift a foot, that *Velox ut Zebra*, to be *as swift as a Zebre*, is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Portugals*. The men so strong, that it is said of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or strike a Slave quite thorow the midle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a vessel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a But; and hold it so till it be quite drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signeuries*, most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1 S. *Paul*, situate on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Leanda*; inhabited for the most part by *Portugal* families. 2 *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is situate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Lose* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the West, *Bamba*; on the East, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*, and on the South, *Angola*. Esteemed to be the richest and most pleasant Countrey of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beset with *Palm trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The water of so good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Aire exceeding wholsom, and the earth as fruitfull; productive of all sorts of grain, but specially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *mustard seed*, but bigger, which they grinde in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbarism* since the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparell. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Physitian*, *Chirurgian*, and *Apothecary*. Antiently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained still by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Countrey. Their chief City, formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the Kings Court (as the word doth signifie;) but since the receiving of the *Gospel* it is called S. *Saviours*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a *Bishops* See, and a fair *Cathedral*, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accustomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compasse, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered houses; which are thought to house 100000. persons, most of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the West, and South, *Pemba*, on the East, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and those called *Salnitri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soile and people there is nothing singular to be said, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more military, and better furnished for the Wars than the rest of these Provinces: necessitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jagges* or *Giacchi*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Seirra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous parts of this Region, under the conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are since grown into a people, and

and become a terrour to their neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Beeves, or Mutton; not yet so qualified by the change of their Countrey, as to build houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattell; finding it far the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no children; but strangle them assoon as born, lest they should be an hindrance to their often wandrings. But as *Plinie* once said of the *Essени*, *Gens aterna est in qua nemo nascitur*; so we may also say of these, that they do not want succession, though they breed no children: selecting out of their Captives and stollen children, some of either Sex, (but neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty yeers old) to be the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Monsters* those of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themseves, their wives and children, from their hands and teeth: insomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggest, is able to raise 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province; situate on the banks of the River *Lelanda*, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*; who is always of the *blood Royal*, honoured sometimes with sitting at the Kings own Table, which none else may do, and of so great authority in all *consultations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO*, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which close up this Countrey; on the North, with *Sunda*; and on the West, with parts of *Femba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little singular, of the Countrey lesse. Neighboured on the North-east towards *Sierra de Christall*, with the *Languelungi*, supposed by some to be the *Æthiopes Hesperii*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*; a barbarous Nation, but of so considerable power, that they are found amongst the rest in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it self, not subject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is seated on the Western bank of the River *Barbele*; the ordinary residence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. *SUNDA*, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the North, with the great River *Zaire*; on the East, with *Barbele*; and on the West, with part of *Songo*. The Countrey rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron befor any other; becaus it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furnished also with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great esteeme amongst Forreigne Merchants. This is the best Region of this Kingdom, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*; nor much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicateth to the whole.

7. *SONGO*, is bounded on the East, with *Batta*, and *Anzichana*; on the West, with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Kingdom of *Loanga*; and on the South, with the River *Ambrizi*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of *Islands*, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Countrey; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or people.

8. *ANZICHANA*, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*; extended thence unto the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North, some part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitans of it: The cruellest *Cannibals* in the world; for they do not onely eat their Eenemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withall, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joynt by joynt, than if sold alive; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to ground: and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather choose to be killed, than either to abuse the trust, or betray their Master. For that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same and that onely, worthy of so good a Countrey; said to be rich in Mines of Copper, and very plentifull of *Sanders*, both red and gray; which tempered with *Vinegar*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the smoak thereof against the *head-ache*. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the East, *Anzichana*; on the West, the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guiena*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Countrey very hot, as lying under the *Line*, but well peopled, indifferently fruitfull, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts: stretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed (as the *Anziqui* and other of these barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the Kings of *Congo*: but of late times, both he and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of one *Soveraign* Prince) have freed themselves from that subjection: though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1 *Penga*, the Haven to the rest. 2 *Morumba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the rest, apparell themselves with the leaves of *Palm trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of

the leaves thereof well cleanſed and purged draw a fine long thred, of which they make Velvets, Damaskes, Sattens, Taffaties, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffes.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom ſeated on the Continent, Let us next look upon the Ilands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, ſituate over againſt the Town of S. *Paul*, in the Province of *Bamba*; ſaid to be firſt made out of the ſands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, caſt into an heap; and at laſt made into an Iland. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the ſame name with the Iland, poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. The Iland deſtitute of Rivers, but ſo well furniſhed with waters, that every where within leſſe than half a yard digging, they finde ſweet and good Waters, ſo contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be ſalt and brackiſh; when it floweth towards the Iland, then moſt freſh and ſweet. But moſt remarkable is this Iland for the *Cockle fiſhing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the ſands, in baskets, and part them from the ſand, as they lie on the ſhore; the *ſhels* of which being naturally diſtinguiſhed into divers colours, ſerve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, inſtead of *money*; which is a matter of ſuch moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Iland for no other reaſon, but to take care about this fiſhing.

Beſides this, there are many Ilands in the River of *Zaire*, now ſubject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars againſt them: fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Liconde*. The tree ſo big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: inſomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largeſt of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the ſhores of theſe Ilands, and in others of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have ſo great numbers of *Anchioves*, that in winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of theſe ſeveral Members, and of the reſt expreſſed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: ſo called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Can*, An. 1486. at what times theſe Kings were at the greateſt: called by their ſubjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani*, ſignifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated ſince to the Kingdom alſo. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath ſince hapned in this Kingdom, may beſt be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Kings of CONGO.

1486. 1 *John*, not ſo called till converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*; and then *baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the 2. King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. in whoſe reign this diſcovery and *Converſion* hapned.

2 *Alphonſo*, eldeſt ſon of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Chriſtian* Faith, and for that oppoſed by *Panſe Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very ſmall Army, zealouſly invocating the aſſiſtance of *Jeſus Chriſt*, he is ſaid to have vanquiſhed. A Prince, who during his long reign of 50 years did ſeriouſly promote the *Goſpel*, and cauſed all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furniſhed in convenient places.

3 *Pedro*, the ſon of *Alphonſo*, in whoſe time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the *Cathedral* Church of S. *Croſſe*, in the Town of S. *Saviours*.

4 *Franciſco* the ſon of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.

5 *Diego*, or *James*, one of the kinſmen of *Franciſco*, in whoſe time *Religion* growing into diſcredit, by the ſcandalous lives of ſome of the *Secular Clergie*; *John* the 3d. King of *Portugal* ſent four *Jeſuits* thither; who are ſaid to have *converted* in five moneths 5000 perſons, and to build three Churches.

6 *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a ſharp War touching the Succeſſion, in which were ſlain all the *Portugals* of S. *Saviours*, except the *Prieſts*; at laſt ſucceeded: not long after ſlain in battel againſt the *Anziques*.

7 *Alvarez*, the ſon of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagges* or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himſelf, together with the *Portugal* Prieſts, to an Iland of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till reſtored to his Crown by the aid of *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*; after by famine he had loſt almoſt all his company.

8 *Alvarez* II. Son of *Alvarez* the firſt, who much ſollicited *Sebaſtian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal*, to ſend him a new ſupply of Preachers; the old ſtore being waſted in the Ilands of *Zaire*.

9 *Alvarez* III. Son of *Alvarez* the 2. not being born in Lawfull wedlock, was oppoſed by one of his Siſters and a younger Brother, both of lawfull birth; whom he overthrew, *Anno* 1587. and in the place of the victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe Kings of *Congo*, I am able to ſay nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great power and riches. His *Riches* viſible by the great treaſures which he draweth from the *Mines* of ſilver, and of other Metals in his Kingdome; from the trade of *Cockle ſhells*, the onely money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himſelf; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants teeth; the preſents which he hath in way of Tribute, from the King of *Angola*.

gola. And though it be not easie to say what he layeth up yeerly, because he hath not his *Revenues* in Coin, as most Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things, as any Monarch in *Africk.*

As for his *Forces*, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no garrisons or Towns of war, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Castles of bones*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading neighbours; 400000 men out of *Bamba* onely; all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jagges*, from the Province of *Batta*; besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars*, five swords meeting in Base *Sol*, Which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the battell which he fought against, *Panse Aquitine*; he and his Souldiers saw (or supposed they saw) such a number of shining swords hanging in the Aire, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for *Æthiopia Inferior.*

OF THE ISLES OF AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Ilands not belonging to any part of the *Continent*, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the accompt of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them *indepedent* and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorographie* of which, and the stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel; beginning first with those that lie in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the main *Atlantick* Ocean to the Streits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there σὺν θεῷ χ̣ταῖς Μοναῖς, conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joynt, or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1 The *Æthiopick Islands*. 2. *Socotara*. 3. *Madagascar*. 4. *Mohelia*. 5. St. *Helens*. 6. St. *Thomas*. 7. The *Princes Island*. 8. The *Gorgades*, or Islands of *Cape Vird*. 9. The *Canaries*, or the *Fortune Islands*. 10. *Madera*. 11. The Island of *Holy Port*, and 12. The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four first onely are dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, all the rest scattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called *the Cape of good Hope*.

1. *THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.*

1. *THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, so called, because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all these which lie on the further side of *the Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean* (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here which concerns the same, but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the name and notion of *Æthiopick* Islands, which were onely known unto the Ancients, they are more in number, than in weight: some of them situate within the Streits of the *Red-Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*; others without those Streits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Streits, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1. *Asiarte*, or *Astrata*, now called *Caiussa*. 2. *Ara Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddesse, which was there erected. 3. *Gypseris*, by *Pliny* called *Cyris*, but *Gypsus* in *Justinians* Code, renowned in former times for its plenty of metals. 4. *Macaria*, or the *fortunate* Islands, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5. *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6. *Daphnis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Daphnine*, opposite to a famous Port-Town of the same name in the Continent. 7. *Bacchias*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8. *Anti-Bacchias*, so named, because opposite to it. 9. *Acanthine*, supposed by some to be now called *Anghotina*. 10. *Insula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Streits*, or enterance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Streits of *Babel Mandel*. 11. *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Godesse *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pascua*, as *Bel-forest* thinketh. 12. *Mundi*, an Island in the Bay of *Avalitos*, opposite to a noted *Emporie* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we finde in *Ptolomy* two Islands by the name of *Thrisitides*; two more, called *Chelonitides*, or *Cathratæ*, two others passing by the name of *Gomadæo*; together with the Isles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note, or observation in the course of businesse, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Those of most note in the open Ocean, which still preserveth the name of the *Red-Sea*, and is sometimes called the *Indian*, sometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but four in number, that is to say, 1. *Myrica*, by the Translator of *Ptolomy*, called *Myrsiaca*; 2. 3. two Islands called by the name of *Menan*, a degree more Northwards than the other; and 4. *Amicusia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Insula*, as called by *Ptolomy*, the most North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Island of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Island to be that, which *Ptolomy* and others of the Ancients call *Dioscoridis*: but because *Dioscoridis*, by all those Ancients, is made to be an Island of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our best modern *Geographers*, that *Socotara* lieth over against Cape *Guardafu*, (the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 leagues: which site and distance sort well with *Amicusia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Dioscoridis*: *Amicusia* being placed but two Degrees on the East of that Promontory, in the *Longitude* of 85. whereas *Dioscoridis* is situate from it almost four degrees, in the *Longitude* of 86. and 40 *Minutes*; besides as great, or greater difference in their several *Latitude*. So that supposing it for granted, that *Socotara* is that Island which was anciently called *Amicusia*; and having cleared my way so far; I now proceed to the Description and affairs thereof.

2. *SOCO-*

2. SOCOTARA.

2. SOCOTARA, the greateſt Iſland of theſe Shores, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, againſt Cape *Guardafu*, from which diſtant about 30 leagues; *Abadalenry*, a ſmall Iſland lying in the middeſt, that is to ſay, 15 leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the Iſland. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the moſt part covered with ſands. The Iſland extreamly vexed with windes, and moleſted with dryneſſe, inſomuch as it is deſtitute of moſt things neceſſary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but ſome ſmall quantity of Mill, Dates, and ſome kinde of Fruits. Provided notwithſtanding of ſome good Paſtures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furniſhed with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons bloud*, which is a *red Gum* iſſuing from the bark of a Tree; and the beſt *Aloes* in the world, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The people of an *Aſh-colour*, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the moſt part of *Dates*; the reſt of their food being milk and butter; their hair long, and their cloathing onely enough to hide their nakedneſſe. The *Women* as good Souldiers as the Men, countenancing, or occaſioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*; And the better Husbands of the two, governing all affairs both within and without. All of them by profeſſion *Chriſtians*, governed by a *Biſhop* of their own, with ſome few *Prieſts*; but ignorant enough of all things which concern *Religion*. More generally *Circumciſed* than *Chriſtened*, though both uſed among them. *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abaſſines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worſhippers of the *Croſſe*, which they alwayes hang about their necks. So pertinaciouſly addicted unto *Magick*, and therein ſo expert, that they bring incredible things to paſſe: not to be weaned from thoſe *black Arts*, though the Biſhop excommunicate all ſuch as uſe them. They hold opinion that St. *Thomas* ſuffered ſhipwrack upon their Coaſts, as he ſayled towards *India*; and that his ſhip being drawn to land, was turned into a Church: but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, that any *Apoſtolical* man hath ſet foot amongſt them.

They live for the moſt part in *Caves*, or *Cabbins*, of no other ſtuffe than the boughs of Trees; ſo that we are to look for few Towns among them. The principal. 1. *Zocotara*, giving name to the Iſland, the place of the Kings reſidence, and a Biſhops See. 2. *Tamarind*, and 3. *Deliſha*, two Port-Towns, and reaſonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4 *Coro*, and 5 *Benin*, two other Ports, poſſeſſed and garriſon'd by the *Portugals*. The King hereof a Vaſſal to the King of *Fartac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*; in habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: Attended on when the *Relater* was there, *An.* 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes onely, yet thoſe all in the Iſland.

Nigh hereunto are two Iſlands, (thoſe poſſibly which *Ptolomy* calleth *Monan*) the one inhabited by men onely, and the other by women; who do meet at their accuſtomed times to preſerve their kinde, but make no long ſtay; the Aire of the one, being found unhealthy for the conſtitution of the other Sex. The other Iſlands of theſe Coaſts, ſcattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolomy*) as 1. *Don Garcia*. 2. the three brethren. 3. St. *Brandon*. 4. *Francis*, 5. *Maſcadenna*. 6. *Comoro*, and many others of as ſmall note, are not worth the ſpeaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. MADAGASCAR, the greateſt of the world, is ſituate over againſt *Moſambique* in *Æthiopia Inferior*: ſuppoſed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolomy*, the onely Iſland by him named on the Coaſt of that Countrey; but by the *Portugals* called the Iſle of St. *Lawrence*, becauſe diſcovered by them on the day of that Saint, *An.* 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles, (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compaſſe: the middle part hereof oppoſite to the Promontory, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Praſſum*, now the Point of *Moſambique*, from which diſtant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly bodies, ſituate from the 17 Degree of Southern *Latitude*, to the 26th.

The Countrey plentifull of all things neceſſary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Hony, Wax, Cotton-wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wilde and tame; Limons and other cooling fruits, ſome ſtore of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from thoſe of *India*, red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and ſome Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to ſay any thing of their Beeves and Muttons, ſo large, and good, and ſo good cheap, that for a two-penny Bead, or ſome ſuch trifle, they will ſell Beeves and Sheep of good taſte and bigneſſe: ſuch numbers of Elephants, that they ſend thence yearly great ſtore of *Ivory*. And amongſt other rare fruits, they have plenty of thoſe, which they call *Cocos*, or *Coconuts*; a kinde of *Date* as big as a Cabbage; the liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, taſtes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like *good Ale*, it affords not onely meat and drink, but cloathing; as alſo furniture for their houſes, tackle for their ſhips, fewel for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being ſtrait and high, and towards the top diverſified into many branches. A Countrey far too good for ſo bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and moſt Writers teſtifie, are treacherous, inhoſpitable, ignorant, both of Prayers and Feſtivals; deſtitute of the diſtinction of time into years and moneths, not knowing any proper names for the dayes of the week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked, except their *privities*, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the ſhores. Commendable onely for their hate to *Polygamy*, and reſtraining themſelves to one wife; the defiling of the marriage-bed ſeverely puniſhed: but otherwiſe ſo eager upon *copulation*, that their Boyes at the age of twelve years, and the Girls at ten, think they ſtay too long, if they keep their *Virginities* any longer; ſome

ſome of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin ſo early, *ut nunquam meminerint ſe Virgines fuiſſe*, that they remember not the time when they loſt their *Maidenheads*. Of colour they are black, and of ſtrong compoſition; their breaſts and faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautifull. Much given unto the wars, well armed according to their Countrey manner, and exceeding good *Archers*. Amongſt them there are ſome white people, ſaid to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I finde not: and at the mouths of thoſe Rivers ſome convenient Havens, into which they admit the forrein Merchants, but ſuffer none to come on land; which the Merchant hath no cauſe to be ſorry for, finding himſelf not ſafe on ſhipboard from their treacherous practiſes. So that we can give but ſmall account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their names; as *viz.* 1. St. *Auguſtines*, on a fair Bay in the South-weſt point, as 2. *Gangomar* in the North-eaſt of it; 3. *Antaboſta*. 4. *Point-Antogil*. 5. *Santo-Jacobo*, 6. *Matatana*. 7. *Angoda*. 8. *Herendo*. 9. *Andro-arco*; and 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, ſo entituled by ſome zealous *Romaniſt*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got ſome footing in this Iſland.

This Iſland known, but very imperfectly, in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many ſtrange things of it: but none more ſtrange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of ſuch incredible ſtrength and bigneſſe, that it could ſnatch up an *Elephant* as eaſily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Diſcovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506, as before was ſaid; and ſince frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Eſtate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under ſo many Kings, each of them in continual Wars againſt one another, but well enough agreed to defend themſelves againſt the coming in of ſtrangers. Yet as ſome ſay, they would be well enough content with an *Engliſh Plantation*: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not ſo covetous as the *Dutch*; or elſe by the ſtrength of our ſhipping, and the reputation of our *intereſſe* in it, to keep off all others.

4. *MOHELIA*, & 5. *MAURITIUS Iſland.*

ADjoyning to *Madagaſcar*, and as it were attending on it, I finde divers Iſlands; ſome on the North-weſt, ſome directly Eaſt. On the North-weſt we have 1. *Meottey*. 2. *Chamroe*. 3. *Mohelia*, and 4. *Joanna* Iſland; on the Eaſt, 5. the Iſland of *Mauritius*, and 6. *Englands Forreſt*. Of theſe *Mauritius* is the greateſt, but *Mohelia* the beſt inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA* ſituate on the North-weſt of *Madagaſcar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, *Coconuts*, Limons, Orenges, Pom-Citrons, Pulſe, *Sugar-Canes*; ſtore of Fiſh taken on the ſhores, and other neceſſaries. The people of complexion black, of compoſition large and ſtrong; couragious, affable, leſſe treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagaſcar*. Of the ſame Language and *Religion* with thoſe of *Arabia*, from whence they ſeem to have deſcended; but by reaſon of their commerce and intercourſe with the *Portugals*, they ſpeak that tongue alſo. The *Women* of the like complexion, to amend which, and ſeem more lovely, they pink their arms and faces in ſeveral ſhapes. Both ſexes no otherwiſe apparelled than their natural Garments, with ſome *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their ſhame.

Their *Religon* that of *Mahomet*, as before is ſaid: their *Prieſts* in great eſteem amongſt them; ſo their *Temples* alſo: which they keep clean and neatly matted, not ſuffering any man to enter with his ſhooes on his feet. Their chief Town *Merianguea*, at the Weſt-end of the Iſle, ſtrong and well garriſon'd. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities: one of the laſt Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a *Native*, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the Eaſt of *Madagaſcar*, is the Iſle of *MAURITIUS*, ſo called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whoſe time they firſt ſet footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by ſome *Cygnea*. In compaſſe about 100 miles; well ſtored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, moſt ſorts of Fiſh; and liberally endowed with all the bleſſings of Nature, ſweet Waters, moſt delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any uſe both of food and building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the beſt *coal-black*. Yet altogether deſtitute of humane Inhabitants: inſomuch as we may ſay of this, as the Poet of the World, before man was made:

Sanctius his Animal, *mentiſque capacius altæ*
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari *in cætera poſſet.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

But yet the Chief, *with Supream power poſſeſt,*
Was wanting, he that ſhould command *the reſt.*

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and the Iſles therein.

Having thus looked upon ſuch Iſlands, as lie on the Eaſtern ſide of *Africk* in the *Indian* Ocean, let us come homeward by the *Cape of Good Hope* into the main *Atlantick*, the greateſt body of waters, which is given to us by one name in any of our Coſmographers, either old or new: A name peculiar to that part of the Weſtern Ocean, which lieth between the Streights of *Gibralter*, and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* ſheweth it ſelf with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoyning, but generally communicated to all that vaſt Region of waters, which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk*, on the one ſide,

ſide, and the new world, or *America* on the other ſide: Extended further by *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Ancient writers, who not knowing any thing of the interpoſition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantick* to the ſhores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this Sea on the Eaſt & South. *Macrobius* goeth further in it, affirming poſitively, *omnem terram, quæ a nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundi*, that the whole habitable world (ſo far as it was then known, and peopled) was compaſſed round about with the *Atlantick* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus* alſo, by *Ariſtotle* in his book de *Mundo*, and by others, who have took it up upon their Authourity. And though ſome parts hereof, which waſh the Weſtern-ſhores of *Æthiopia Inferior*, be called the *Ethiopick* Ocean; yet that doth derogate no more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that ſome parts of the *Mediterranean* ſhould be called *Mare Ciculum, Sardoum, Tyrrhenum, Creticum*, according to the ſhores of thoſe ſeveral places which it paſſeth by, which having ſaid in general of the Sea it ſelf, according to our Method in other places; we next proceed unto the reſt of the *African* Iſlands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea, and this ſide of *Africa*.

6. St. *HELENS*, and 7. the Iſles of *ASCENTION*.

And the firſt Iſle we meet with in this ſide of *Africk* is 6. the Iſle of St. *Hellens*, ſituate on the Weſt of the *Cape of good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly Latitude, no other Iſland interpoſing betwixt *Madagaſcar* and it, except thoſe of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tiſtram de Acugna*, near the *Cape* it ſelf; but of ſo little, note as not worth the naming. The Iſland very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with ſo ſteep an aſcent, that the *Marriners* have amongſt them a merry ſaying, that *a man may chuſe whether he will break his* heart *going up, or his* neck *coming down.*

It was thus called, becauſe diſcovered by the *Portugals* on St. *Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor ſince; the King of *Spain* ſuffering none to dwell there, becauſe it had been an unlawfull *receptacle* for *uncuſtomed* Goods; whereby he loſt exceedingly both in power and profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the firſt Diſcovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as alſo with Figs, Limons, Orenges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly; and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refreſh themſelves, and beſtow their ſick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Uſed for the ſame purpoſe by the *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*, who ſo domineer about the Iſland, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their *property*, if they ſee any ſhipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chappel, deſtroyed by the *Hollanders*; and ſome fragment of a little Village begun by ſome *Portugal* Marriners, but demoliſhed by the King of *Spain*.

7. Northweſt from hence is the Iſle of *Aſcenſion*, ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on *Aſcenſion* day: but not inhabited, nor any uſe at all made of for ought I can finde. Of the ſame bigneſſe with St. *Helens*, 30 miles in compaſſe, and about 700 *Engliſh* miles diſtant from it.

8. St. *THOMAS*, 9. the *PRINCES* Iſland, and 10. the Iſle of *ANNIBON*.

8. THe Iſland of St. *THOMAS* is ſituate directly under the *Æquator*; of *Orbicular* form, the *Diameter* being 60 miles, by conſequence the *Perimiter*, or compaſſe 180. and juſt ſo many from the ſhore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the firſt diſcovery nothing but a continual *Foreſt*, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*; theſe laſt brought hither from the oppoſite *Continent*: with whom the aire agrees ſo well, that they attain generally to 110 years of age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The aire ſo vehemently hot, that it ſorteth not with the conſtitution of the *Europæans*.

The Countrey deſtitute of Wheat, which if ſown here, turneth all to *blade*, and brings forth no Ear: nor will any fruits here proſper, that have any ſtone in them: but ſo abundant in *Sugar-Canes*, and well ſtored with Sugars, that 40 ſhips are hence loaded yearly, with that one commodity, for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houſes, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in ſome 300 which belong to the works. Six dayes in ſeven theſe Slaves work for their Maſters, and the ſeventh for themſelves; which they ſpend in ſowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Proviſions. Where, by the way, theſe Sugar-works, or *Ingenios* are a late invention; the boyling and baking of Sugar (as it is now uſed) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new than that: firſt found out by a *Venetian* in the dayes of our Fathers, who is ſaid to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his ſon a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the *Poſt*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boyling and refining Sugars, our Anceſtors not having ſuch luxurious Palates, ſometimes made uſe of rough Sugar, as it came from the *Canes*; but moſt commonly pleaſed themſelves with honey, more wholſome, becauſe more natural than theſe forced Inventions. But to proceed in the deſcription of this Iſland, in the midſt thereof there is ſaid to be a woody Mountain, over-ſhadowed continually with *Clouds*: which ſo moiſten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a ſufficient quantity of waters to refreſh their fields, and feed their *Sugar-Canes*; notwithſtanding the extream heat of the Clime and Aire.

The *Religion* here allowed of is the *Chriſtian* onely, firſt preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a *Biſhop*, his title the Biſhop of St. *Thomas*; but his charge extendeth alſo over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal Citie of it hath the name of *Pavoaſan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, conſiſting of 700 Families, or about that number: ſituate on a fine River, and a pleaſant Haven: ſeldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither

in exchange for Sugars, Wheat, Wine, Cheese, Hides, and other things more necessary than those *Sugars*, for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599. but again recovered, or abandoned; and since possessed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by fraud and falshood, at the same time, and by the same dishonests Arts by which they made themselves Masters of the Castle of *Angola* before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambassadour presented this injurions dealing to the *States* of *Holland*, yet all the answer he could get at the present was, that their people had done nothing, but what was justified by that clause of the Article, that both side might take and keep, and whatsoever they could within such a time, and though the Ambassadour replied very rationally in behalf of his Countrey, and prest the restitution both of this Island, and that Castle, by all honest Arguments, yet he could then get no reason from them; and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Justice since, as to those particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. *THE PRINCES ISLAND*, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latine*) so called, for that the *Revenues* of it were alotted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is situate in three Degrees of the Northern *Latitude*. The Countrey very fruitfull for the bigness of it; but not much observable: except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerehagen*, Anno 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a *Princes* Island, by a *Messe* of *Chaplains*, *viz.* 1. the Isles of St. *Matthew*. 2. St. *Crosse*. 3. St. *Paul*, and 4. St. *Conception*: and waited on by *seven* servants (so many Islands near *Cape Vero*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But because the former four yield no matter of *History*, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. South-west hereof, but on the other side of the Line, lieth the Isle of *Annobon*, (*Insula Annaboni* as the *Latines* call it.) So named, because discovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fishing all along the Coasts of it; but that fishing made unsafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venemous and hurtfull Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The *GORGADES*, or Isles of *CAPE VERD*.

11. THe *GORGADES*, or Islands of *Cape Verd* (*Insulæ Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are 9 in number; called by the last name, because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their names 1. St. *Anthony*. 2. St. *Vincent*. 3. *Buenavista*. 4. St. *Lucies*. 5. *Insula Salis*, the Isle of *Salt*. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of *Fire*. 7. St. *Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. S. *Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brava*. Discovered all in the year 1440. by a *Geneose* called *Antonio de Noli*, imployed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry* Duke of *Visco*, one of the younger sons of King *John* of *Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most little to be said. The principal, and indeed the onely ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, St. *Jago*. 1. *Majo*, is of most repute for a *Lake* of two leagues long; the waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is called from the Flakes of fire which it sends forth usually; and fell so thick upon the ship of Sir *Antony Sherley* when he took the Island, An. 1596. that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all St. *Jago*, yet but seven miles long; Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleasant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautifull Haven: taken and sacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, An. 1596.

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Islands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what grounds) to be the seat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation, or dwelling place of *Meduſa*, and her two fair sisters. This *Meduſa* said, or rather fabled by the Poets, to have been a Woman of great beauty; Who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her self before *Pallas*, had by the said Goddesse, her hair turned into *Snakes*; and this property annexed unto them, that whosoever looked on her, should be turned into *stones*: which quality is retained after she was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate, how this *Meduſa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all men that saw her, were amazed: and of such a wise and subtile brain, that for that cause onely men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in wealth, and by *piracy* molesting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perseus*; who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed; cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece*: where the people beyond measure wondred at the rare composture of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her haire; and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into stones. *Pausanias* in his *Corinthiacks* so reports the story.

12. *The CANARIES*.

THe *CANARIES* are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Libya Interior*; so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Plinie*, *Ptolomy*, and other of the Ancient Writers they were called *Insulæ Fortunatæ*, the fortunate Islands: and amongst them of greatest note, six being made the fixed place of the first *Meridian*; removed since to S. *Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But those Antients knew but six of them by name, and in the naming of these six do not well agree. By *Plinie*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are said to be 1 *Ombrio*, 2 *Junonia Major*, 3 *Junonia Minor*,

Minor. 4. *Capraria.* 5. *Nivaria*, and 6. *Canaria.* By *Ptolomy* thus reckoned. 1. *Aproſitus.* 2. *Hera* (or *Junonia*) 3. *Pluitania.* 4. *Caſperia.* 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Pincuria.* Where we may note alſo to our purpoſe, that though theſe Authours diſagree in all the reſt of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Tranſlatour unto *Ptolomies Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which ſheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canarie* Iſlands unto all the reſt. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulneſſe, and other excellencies; in which reſpects, ſeveral Countreys, in thoſe times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate.* Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canarie.* 2. *Palma.* 3. *Tenariffe.* 4. *Gomero.* 5. *Ferro.* 6. *Lanſerotte*, and 7. *Fuerte Ventura.*

1. *CANARIA*, or *Canaria Magna*, becauſe the biggeſt of the Cluſter, is ſaid to be 90 miles in compaſſe, and to contain 9000 perſons: Plentifull in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which, and of their Cheeſe, and the skins of Beaſts they raiſe great profit: but from nothing more than from their Woad (whereof they have very great abundance) uſed by the Clothier for the well colouring of his Cloath. From hence and from the other of theſe Iſlands which bear this name, come the fine ſinging Birds called *Canary birds*; and ſo do alſo thoſe rich Wines, (the fruit of the *Rheniſh* Grape tranſplanted) which we call *Canaries.* A ſort of Wine, if not ſophiſticated and abuſed, which is ſaid to fume leſſe into the head, pleaſe the *Palat* more, and better help the natural weakneſſe of a cold ſtomack (if moderately and diſcreetly uſed) than any other Wines whatſoever. Brought hence in ſuch abundance to ſupply our luxury, that no leſſe than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* onely.

2. *PALMA*, one of the leaſt in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitfull in Wine and Sugars, abundantly well ſtored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheeſe; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spaniſh* Fleets, as they paſſe to *Braſil*, and *Peru.* This Iſland together with *Canary*, and *Tenariffe*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries.* One of the Biſhops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a *Dominican* Frier; whoſe works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, ſhew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Maſter of a perfect *Ciceronian* ſtile. The reſidue of the Iſlands are of the Dioceſe of *Madera.*

3. *TENARIFFE*, ſomewhat leſſe than the *Grand Canarie*, but of the ſame fertility and condition with it, is moſt remarkable for a mountain of ſo great an height, that it may be ſeen 90 leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15 leagues, and ſome advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough moſt of our *Travellers* and *Geographers* hold it to be the higheſt in the whole world. The Form, *Pyramidal*, in ſhape agreeing to theſe Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Ægyptian Pyramides.* The top whereof ending in a ſharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is ſaid to be ſeldom without ſnow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny.*

4. *HIERRO*, or *FERRI inſula*, ſo called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by ſome thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aproſitus* of *Ptolomy*; and ſome again more probably, the *Ombrio* of *Plinie*, if this and *Ptolomies Pluitalia* be not one and the ſame, as for my part I think they be. And it might poſſibly have thoſe names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe it hath in it no freſh waters but what they do receive in ſhowres, and preſerve in *Ciſterns*: it being added by late Writers (which the ancients knew not) that theſe ſhowres do dayly fall upon them from the *Leaves* of a Tree, which alwayes covered with a Cloud doth diſtil theſe waters; preſerved in a large *Ciſtern* underneath the Tree, for the uſe of Man and Beaſt throughout the Iſland.

5. *GOMERA*, now as *civil* and well *cultivated* as any of the reſt, was the moſt barbarous of all when firſt diſcovered: it being here and here onely, the ordinary ſign and evidence of their *Hoſpitality*, to let their friends lie with their wives, and receive theirs in teſtimony of *reciprocal* kindneſſe: for which cauſe here as in ſome places of the *Indies*, the ſiſters ſon did uſe accuſtomably to inherit.

6. *LANSAROTE* the firſt of theſe Iſlands which was made ſubject to the Crown of *Caſtile*, diſcovered by ſome adventurous *Biſcains*, An. 1393. by whom ſpoyled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality, brought away Priſoners into *Spain.* On this diſcovery the Kings of *Caſtile* challenged a propriety in all theſe Iſlands; of which more anon. In this of *Lanſarote* there was an Epiſcopal See erected by Pope *Martin* the 5th. removed unto the Iſle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick.*

7. *FUERTE-VENTURA*, of the ſame nature with the reſt, ſuppoſed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Caſperia* of *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable. Near unto theſe, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate*, or *Canary* Iſles, are certain others of leſſe note, that is to ſay. 1. *Gratioſa.* 2. St. *Clara.* 3. *Roca.* 4. *Lobos.* 5. *Alegranco*; and 6. *Infierno*, ſmall and of no accompt, nor yielding any matter of obſervation.

The knowledge of theſe Iſlands being loſt with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiſcovered till the year 1330. or thereabouts, when an *Engliſh*, or as ſome ſay, a *French* ſhip, diſtreſſed by tempeſt, did in that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the reign of King *Alphonſo* the fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was deſigned for the conqueſt of them. Who being repulſed at *Gomera*, Anno 1334. gave the enterprize over, though on this ground the *Portugals* build their firſt claim unto theſe Iſlands. But the news ſpreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the ſixt thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, ſon of *Alphonſo de la Cerde* the right Heir of *Caſtile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*; and to aſſiſt him in the conqueſt, cauſed Levies of Souldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy.* Which coming to the ears of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadours in the Popes Court, they feared that ſome tranſport had been made of the *Britiſh* Iſlands (than which they thought that none could better deſerve the name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*) and in all haſte diſpatched a Poſt to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the

danger. The people at the time of this first discovery, were so rude and ignorant, that they did eat their flesh raw for want of fire; and tilled, or rather turned up the earth with the horns of Oxen, for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron; their Beards they shaved with a sharp flint, and committed the care of their Children to the nursing of Goats. To kill a beast was conceived to be the basest Office that could be possibly put upon them, and therefore commonly imposed on Prisoners and condemned persons; who being thus made the common *Slaughter-men*, were to live separate from the rest. Their Government by Kings, in each Island one: when at their deaths, they sit up naked in a Cave, propped against the wall with a staff in his hand, and a vessel of Milk fast by him, the better to enable him for his journey to the other world; and leaving him in the Grave with these solemne words, *Depart in peace, O thou blessed Soul.* The like Funeral they bestowed also on the chief of their *Nobles*. Yet was not the Government in those times so purely *Regal*, but that they had a Common Councel (as it were) out of all the Islands, consisting of 130 persons: who did not onely direct in *Civil* matters, but in Sacred also, prescribing to the people both their Faith and Worship; and for their pains were priviledged with the first nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to some one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in pursuance of the Popes Donation, it hapned in the year 1393. that some Adventurers of *Biscay*, setting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to seek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongst these Islands. And having pillaged *Lanzarote* as before was said, and observed the number, greatnesse, and situation of all the rest; returned into *Spain*, with great store of Wax, Hides, and other commodities, with which those Islands did abound: extremely welcom to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Castile*, and did intend from that time forwards to possesse himself of them. By *Catharine* the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John* the 2d. the Conquest of them was committed to *John* of *Betancourt*, an adventurous *French-men*, (conditioned he should hold them under the soveraignty of the Crown of *Castile*) by whom four of the Islands were subdued, though he himself perished in the action, *An.* 1417. Young *Betancourt* the son, not able to subdue *Canary*, to which most of the Islanders had retired; fortified himself as well as he could in the Isle of *Lanzarote*, and took unto himself the title of King: which he left not long after to one *Menault*; in whose time the Islands under his command received the Gospel, and had a See Episcopal in the Isle of of *Lanzarote*. But this new King making money by the sale of his subjects, (as well of the new *Christians*, as the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Castile*; and *Pedro Barva de Campos* with three ships of war is sent against him: with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Castile*, he sold his interesse in these Islands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchase, and left it unto his Successors. But we must know that the posterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four lesser Islands onely; *Canaria* it self, *Tenariffe*, and the Isle of *Palmes*, being under the command of their own Kings. And so continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, who in the year 1483. under the conduct of *Alphonso* of *Muxica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two noble Captains, became master of them; and translated the Episcopal See from *Lanzarote* to the *Great Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim these Islands in right of the first discovery, yet the possession hath gone always with the Crown of *Castile*. Divided at the present into two Estates, (but the one subordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lanzarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of some private Subjects, those which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte-Ventura*, are said to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats*; the Seat of Justice being fixed in the Isle of *Canaria*, unto which all the rest resort as they have occasion.

13. *MADERA*, & 14. *HOLY PORT.*

13. MADERA, the greatest Island of the *Atlantick*, is situate in the Latitude of 32. over against the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compasse 140 miles, some adde 20 more. So called of the wildernesse of Trees there growing, when first discovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latins* call *Materia*, and we *English* Timber: with which the Isle was so overgrown, that the best way to cleer it and make it habitable, was by consuming them with fire; which raged so horribly for the time, that the people imployed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refresh themselves. But the *Husbandry* was well bestowed; the *Ashes* making so good *compost* to enrich the soil, (as burning the Turf of barren lands, and ploughing the Ashes of it, on some grounds with us) that at the first it yielded *sixty-fold* increase. And though the first vertue of that experiment be long since decayed, yet still it yieldeth *thirty-fold* in most places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant used in dying Clothes, which is hence called *Mader*; and of *Sugar Canes* in such a wonderful manner, that for a time the fifths of the *Sugars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Arnobes*; now not half so much. The Isle wonderfully fruitfull also of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choicest Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more grapes than leaves, and Clusters of two, three, and four spans long. The Hils well stored with Goats, the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thrushes, Pigeons: these last so ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would suffer themselves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Island in all parts well watered, having besides many pleasant Springs, eight handsome *Riverets*, wherewith the Earth refresh'd and moistned, yields the sweeter Herbage; which otherwise by reason of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be so nourishing. The chief City of it hath the name of *Fouchial*, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of Justice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many learned men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times discovered

discovered by one *Machan*, an *Englisb*-man, who was cast upon it by a tempest, *An.*1344. who burying there his wife, or some other woman which he had in his company, writ on her tomb his name, and coming thither, with the cause thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occasion to look further after it. Desolate, and unpeopled at the first discovery, now exceeding populous: and of no small advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which first united, *An.*1420. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Isle of *HOLY-PORT*, is distant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coasts of *Mauritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolomie*. So called, because discovered by some *Portugal*-Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the said P. *Henry*) on *All-hallows* day, *An.*1428. Desolate and unhabited at the first discovery, but now very well peopled. In compasse about 15 miles; well stored with Corn and Fruits, great shoals of Fish upon their shores, plenty enough of Beeves and Goats: but such abundance of Conies (bred of one *Doe Coney* brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no lesse pestered with them in these later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; insomuch that they were out of hope to withstand the mischief, or repair the *damages* sustained by them. A little Island not far off, breedeth nothing else. The chief Town of it *Porto-Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, seated on a convenient Rode, but a sorry Haven; was taken by Sir *Amias Preston*, in our wars with *Spain*, An.1596. but being sacked and spoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was said, and reckoned for the most remote *Colony* which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Western Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unnavigable, (proved otherwise by *Hanno's* voyage) choked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Æthiopum populos alit ultimâ Cernè*) by *Festus Rufus*, and others of the Antient writers.

1. *THE HESPERIDES.*

15. *THE HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are said to be two in number, situate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we finde not where. Much memorized and chanted by the Antient Poets, for giving a safe and pleasant habitation to the daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Hesperides* also); the curious Gardens by them planted, and the *Golden Apples* of it which were kept by a Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Historians* remove these Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already spoken of. Which notwithstanding, it is granted that there were antiently some Islands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and said to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the same which *Plutarch* in the Life of *Sertorius* calleth *Insulæ Atlanticæ*, and describes them thus. "Αι δύο μὲν εισὶ, λίαν ὀλίγῳ πλείοσιν σταδίοις πορθμῷ διακεκριμέναι, &c. They are (saith he) two Islands parted by "a narrow *Streit* of the Sea, distant from the main land of *Africk* 10000 furlongs (which in our ac- "compt cometh to 1250 miles) called also the Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Ilands*. They have "rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew, which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for tillage "and planting fruits, which sometimes grow without any care or labour of the husband-man; sufficient "by their plenty and sweetnesse to maintain the people, much given to ease, and hardly troubling them- "selves with any businesse. The Air for the most part very temperate, never extreme in any changes of "the season; the rigor of the Northern, and Eastern winds, being by so long a passage thither very "much abated; as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern winds do much refresh it with such "Mists, as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the people. A place so generally sweet, that "the Barbarous people in it have a constant and approved opinion, that these should be the *Elysian* "*Fields*, the seats of the blessed souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Sertorius* "was so highly taken, that he intended to have given over the pursuit of the *Civil* wars, and there to "spend the rest of his dayes in peace and happinesse; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, men accustomed "unto spoil and rapine, had not took him off. So far and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great distance from the Coast of *Africk*, they cannot be the *Fortunate Islands* spoken of before) I cannot easily determine: unlesse we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, on the Coasts of *America*; to the Storie and *Chorographie* whereof we are now to hasten.

And so much for the *Isles* of *Africk*.

A Table of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

	Long.	Latit.
A		
Agadez	39. 20.	25.30.
Alexandria	67. 0.	31.20.
Algiers	33. 0.	35.20.
Amara	63. 30.	5. 0. *A.*
Angola	45. 10.	7. 0. *A.*
Asna	66. 30.	25.
Azamor	18. 30.	32.40.
Arquin	11. 10.	20. 20.
Adrimetum		
B		
Babel Mandel	80. 01.	12.50.
Bagamedrum	62. 36.	6. 0.
Barca	62.	
Benin	41. 0.	7. 40.
Bona	37. 10.	35.40.
Borno	44. 30.	17.10.
Brava	74. 30.	0.30.
Budomel	10. 20.	14.30.
Bugia	34. 30.	35.10.
Babylon Egypt		
C		
Caire	67. 30	30. 0.
Cyrene	53. 30	32. 0.
Canaria	9. 30	27.20.
Carthage		
Citta		
D		
Damiata	69. 0	32.40.
Damut	51. 0	11.20.
Dancali	65. 0	17.30.
Dara	66. 50	12. 0.
Docono	78. 20.	12.30.
F		
Fatigar	74. 0	2. 40. *A.*
Fesse	21. 50	32.50.
Fierro	6. 20	26.30.
Forte ventura	11. 0	28. 0.
Fouchial	8. 10	31.30.
G		
Gamba	64.49	17.30. *A.*
Guoga	55. 0	22. 0.
Goyami	57. 0	14. 0. *A.*
Gualata	13. 30	23.30.
Guber	29. 20	10.40.
H		
Holy Port	10. 0	32.30.
L		
Lanserot	11. 40.	29.30.
M		
Madagascar	77. 0	19. 0. *A.*
Midazo	78. 0	5. 10.
Malta	46. 30	35.30.
Manicongo	47. 20	7. 0. *A.*
Merocco	20. 0	30.30
Melinde	71.20	3. 20 *A.*
Meroe	68.20	16. 15
Mezzata	47.40	30. 40
Mina	28.50	6. 20
Mombaza	72. 0	4. 50 *A.*
Mosambique	70. 20	14.40
Memphis		
N		
Nubia	60. 0	17.40
O		
Oran	29.40	35. 0
P		
Palma	6. 20	28. 0
Pascar	59.40	1. 20 *A.*
Q		
Quiloa	69.50	8. 56
R		
Rameses	68.30	30.30
S		
Sabaim	68.20	8. 40
Septa	22. 0	35.40
Suachem	72.40	18.40
Sus	27.30	
Salla		
T		
Tangier	30.50	35. 0
Tefetbne	16.10	30. 0
Tegnit	27.40	28. 10
Teient	17. 0	30.30
Tenariffe	8. 10	27.30
Thesset	20. 0	29. 10
Telesine	29. 0	34. 10
Tigremahon	65. 0	6. 0
Tombuto	20.50	15. 0
Tunis	40. 0	36. 0
Thebes in *Egypt*		
V		
Vella	77. 0	13. 0
Utica		
Z		
Zacatera	88. 0	12.50
Zegreg	96.40	14.40
Zeila	80. 0	11. 20
Zigec	45.50	40. 50
Zimbaus	59. 0	25. 20 *A.*

A is the Mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

GOSMOGRAPHIE,

The Fourth Book:

PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORIE OF AMERICA,

And all the Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By PETER HEYLIN.

Matth. 24. 14.

Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni, in universo orbe, in testimonium omnibus Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.

S. *Hieronym.* in locum.

Signum Dominici adventus, est Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus sit excusabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

LONDON,

Printed for PHILLIP CHETVVIND.

GOSMOGRAPHIE,

LIB. IV. PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORIE OF AMERICA,

And all the Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles of it.

Of AMERICA.

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and the *Vergivian* Seas, by which parted from *Europe*, and *Africa*; which Seas, the Marriners call *Mare del Nort*; on the West, with the *Pacifique Ocean*, by the Marriners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long, but narrow *Streit*, called the *Streits* of *Magellan*; the North, bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island*, or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD: New*, for the late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatnesse of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vespacius* an Adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to finde out those parts, came from the directions and example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places, which *Americus Vespacius* never saw: it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much lesse used than that of *America*, is, the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it, from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-men used to call all Countreys, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on *conjectural* presumptions, than Demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn. 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the world, which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the ancients was by supposition, at the best by Demonstration onely, and not in fact; or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2*ly*. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he sayled not Westwards, but more towards the South: and therefore this *great Island*, whatsoever it was, (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate* Islands, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3*ly*. It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick* Ocean, *Lybiam* & *Africam adæquans* (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Lybia*, and *Africk* properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and

therefore possibly never extant but in some mens fancies. 4*ly.* That *Aristotle* in the book *de Mundo* (if that book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitfull, and full of navigable Rivers; discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author, to be *Multorum dierum itinere à* Gradibus *remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not be as well one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*; or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Hannos* voyage. Certain I am, that one of the best friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of enabling their performances in *Navigation*, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtfull credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5*ly.* Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to inferre a knowledge of this Countrey amongst the ancients, *viz.*

Veniunt annis secula seris,
Quibus Oceanus *vincula rerum*
Laxet, & ingens pateat tellus,
Novosque Typhis *detegat Orbes,*
Nec sit Terris ultima Thule.

Which may be *Englished* in these words:

In the last dayes an age shall come,
Wherein the all-devouring Fome
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another Continent *to view.*
New-worlds, *which Night doth now conceal,*
A second Typhis *shall reveal;*
And frozen Thule *shall no more*
Be of the Earth the furthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers, as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were more Lands discovered, than those formerly known. 6*ly.* Some hold this Countrey to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there also said to be the station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Joppa*, or some other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Streits of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7*ly.* Finally, in the History of *Wales* writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the son of *Owen Gwinedth* Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline ingaging in a *Civil war* raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea; and after a long course of Navigation, came into this Countrey: where after he had left his men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that here is still some smattering of the *Welch*, or *British* tongue, to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Pengwin*, and the like: in which regard, some sorry Statesmen went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Soveraignty of these Countreys; Others more wise, disswaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welch-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon those parts by force of Tempest; and easily implant some few words of their own among the people there inhabiting. And though I needs must say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, than those which look for this new World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Islands of *Aristole* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am I not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of the Marriners *Compasse* being not so ancient (without which such a voyage could not be performed;) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Countrey was unknown to the former ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*; Britannia *qualis sit, qualesque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur; quippe jam diu clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus* (he means *Claudius Cæsar*) *nec indomitarum modo sed & incognitarum ante se Gentium Victor*: so may we say of *America*, on these late discoveries. What kinde of Countrey it is, and what men it produceth, we do, and shall know more certainly than in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open all the parts thereof, inhabited not onely by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembring the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations; stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nervy*, in the Signeury of *Genoa*, to be the instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not perswade himself (the motion of the Sun considered;) but that there was another *World* to which that glorious Planet did import both his light and heat, when he went from us. This *World* he purposed to seek after, and opening his Design to the State of *Genoa*, An. 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulse, he sent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirats, by whom detained a long while,

but

but at last inlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a chearfull entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But God had otherwise disposed of his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where after many delayes, and six years attendance on the businesse; he was at last furnished with three ships onely, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sayled on the main Ocean more than 60 dayes, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; and partly out of scorn to be under the command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Just at that time it hapned, that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour, than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearnesse proceeded from some nigh habitable place, restrained the time of their expectation within the compasse of three dayes; passing his word to return again, if they did not see the Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyfull news) descried fire; an evident Argument that they drew near unto some shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guahanani*; by *Columbus* St. *Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucaios*. Landing his men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Crosse thereof; which he erected near the place, where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this NEW WORLD, for the Kings of *Spain*, *Octob.* 11. *An.* 1492. Afterwards he discovered, and took possession of *Hispaniola*; and with much treasure, and content, returned towards *Spain*: Preferred for this good service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms, *for Castile and Leon, Columbus hath gotten a* NEVV WORLD; and in conclusion unto the title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope *Alexander* the 6. by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countreys, which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western world; advising them to use their diligence and indeavours for converting those people to the Faith, which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 ships for more Discoveries, and his brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countreys discovered by him, they took along with them one *Bayl*, a Benedictine Monk, as the Popes Vicar General, accompanied with the learned Clarks, which were to be assistants to him in the converting of that people to the Christian Faith. In this second voyage he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Isabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hispaniola*; from whence for some severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third voyage, in which he discovered the Countries of *Paria*, and *Camana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagna*, and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500. he began his fourth and last voyage in the course whereof, coming to *Hispaniola* he was unworthily denied enterance into the Citie of *Domingo*, by *Nicholas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it; after which scouring along the Sea-Coasts, as far as *Nombre de Trias*, but adding little to the fortune of his former discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba*, and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, *An.* 1506.) he departed this life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tombe, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a merit, of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip*, whom the *Versifier* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriagus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, Sole Daughter and Heir of the Kings of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*, or else the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the 2. Son of *Charles* the fifth, who was not born untill the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above 20 years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, it is this that followeth:

Christophorus *genuit quem* Genoa *Clara* Columbus,
(Nomine percussus quo nescio) primus in Altum
Descendens Pelagus, solem versusque cadentem
Directo cursu, nostro hactenus addita Mundo
Litora detexi, Hispano potitura Philippo:
Audenda hinc aliis plura, & majora relinquens.

Which may be *Englished* in these words:

I Christopher Columbus, *whom the Land*
Of Genoa *first brought forth, first took in hand*
I know not by what diety incited
To scoure the Western Seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countreys never known before.
Crown'd with successe, I first descried the shore
Of the New World, *then destined to sustain*
The future yoke of Philip *Lord of* Spain,
And yet I greater matters left behinde
For men of more means and a braver minde.

Dying he left two Sons behinde him, of which the youngeſt called *Ferdinand* died unmarried, the eldeſt called *Diego*, ſucceeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Marie* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but (having as it ſeemeth) no iſſue by her, he ſpent the greateſt part of his Eſtate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, ſpoken of before, which he furniſhed with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal revenue to maintain the ſame. But though his Family be extinct, yet his Fame ſhall live, renowned to all poſterities, as the firſt diſcoverer of this new world, and conſequently the greateſt and moſt Fortunate advancer of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy, though in his life time ſo maligned by moſt part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla* being ſent into thoſe parts for redreſſe of grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him priſoner into *Spain*. Nor did they onely ſtick after his death, to deprive him of the honour of this *Diſcovery* (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whoſe *Cards* and Deſcriptions he had ſeen) but in his life would often ſay that it was a matter of no ſuch difficulty to have found theſe Countreys; and that if he had not done it when he did, ſome body elſe might have done it for him. Whoſe peeviſhneſſe he confuted by this modeſt artifice, deſiring ſome of them, who inſolently enough had contended with him touching this Diſcovery, to make an Egg ſtand firmly upon one of its ends. Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruizing one end of it, made it ſtand upright; letting them ſee without any further reprehenſion, how eaſie it was to do that thing which we ſee another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was ſeconded by *Americus Veſpuſius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, imployed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, An. 1501. on a deſign of finding out a nearer way to the *Moluccaes*, than by the *Cape of good Hope*, who though he paſſed not further than the Cape of St. *Auguſtines* in *Braſil*, without ſo much as having a ſight of the great River *de la Plata*, which waſheth the South-Ports of that Countrey; yet from him (to the great injury and neglect of the firſt Diſcoverer) the *Continent*, or main Land of this Countrey, hath the name of *America*; by which ſtill known, and moſt commonly called. To him ſucceeded *John Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*: who diſcovered all the North-East Coaſts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *New-found land*, and *Terra di Laboradar* in the North, cauſing the *American Roytelets* to turn *Homagers* to that King and the Crown of *England*. Followed herein by divers private *Adventurers* and undertakers, out of all parts of *Europe*, bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the firſt that compaſſed the whole world, and found the South paſſage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake*, and *Cavendiſh*, of *England*. *Frobiſher*, and *Davies* attempted a Diſcovery of the North-weſt paſſage; *Willoughy* and *Burroughs* of the North-eaſt. So that according to that elegant ſaying of the Learned *Verulam*, in his *Advancement of learning*, this great building the world, *had never thorow-lights made in it till theſe our dayes*: by which as almoſt all parts of *Learning*, ſo in eſpecial this of *Navigation*, and by conſequence of *Coſmography* alſo, hath obtained an incredible proficiency in theſe later times.

For in the Infancy and firſt Ages of the world, (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort, but not unprofitable diſgreſſion) men lived at home, neither intent upon any Forreign Merchandiſe, nor inquiſitive after the lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours: or in the language of the Poet,

Nondum caſa ſuis peregrinum ut viſeret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidas Pinus *deſcenderat undas.*

The Pine *left not the Hils on which it ſtood,*
To ſeek ſtrange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had inſtructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preſervation of himſelf and his children from the general *Deluge*: the Poſterity, which deſcended from him, had thereby a pattern for the making of Ships and other Veſſels (perfected in more length of time) whereby to make the waters paſſable, and maintain a neceſſary intercourſe betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of ſhipping to ſundry men, according to ſuch informations or traditions, as they had received: *Strabo*, to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus*, to *Neptune*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas; and *Tibullus*, to the people of *Tyre*, a Town indeed of great wealth and traffick, and the moſt famous *Empory* of the elder times; ſaying

Prima ratem ventis credere docta Tyrus.

The Tyrians *firſt the Art did finde*
To make Ships travell with the winde.

And queſtionleſſe the *Tyrians*, and the reſt of the *Phœnicians*, enjoying a large Sea-coaſt, and many ſafe and capacious Havens, being in theſe times moſt ſtrong at Sea, and making ſo many fortunate Navigations into moſt parts of the then known World; might give the Poet ſome good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of *Navigation*; though being an ingenous people, they did add much to it. For whereas the firſt Veſſels were either made of the body of ſome great Tree, made hollow by the Art of man; or elſe of divers boards faſhioned into a Boat, and covered with the ſkins of Beaſt; (ſuch as are ſtill in uſe amongſt theſe *Americans*:) the *Phœnicians* brought them firſt into ſtrength, and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks

unto

unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt* wen he fled from his brother *Rameſes*, the uſe of ſhipping was firſt brought amongſt the *Grecians*: who before that time knew no other way of croſſing their narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one anorher. Nave *primus ab Egypto* Danaus *aavenit*, *ante enim* Ratibus *navigabatur*, as it is in *Plinie*: where we may ſee the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis*, and *Navis*; though now both uſed indifferently for all ſorts of ſhipping. Amongſt the *Grecians*, thoſe of *Crete* were the ableſt Sea-men; which gave occaſion to *Ariſtotle* to call *Crete* the Lady of the Sea: and to *Strabo* to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following time, the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were moſt conſiderable in this kinde; and by the benefit of their ſhipping much diſtreſſed the *Romans*. But ſo it hapned (as all things do and muſt concur to Gods publick purpoſes in the alteration of Eſtates) that a Tempeſt ſeparating a *Quinqueremis* or Gallie of five banks of Oars, from the reſt of the *Carthaginian* Fleet; caſt it on the ſhore of *Italy*: by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, ſoon became Maſters of the Sea. That *France*, and *Spain* were taught the uſe of ſhipping by the *Greeks*, and *Phœnicians*; is a thing paſt queſtioning: *Marſeilles* in the one being a *Phocean*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tyrian* Colony. As for the *Belgians*. and the *Britains*, it is probable that they firſt learnt it of the *Romans* (though formerly they had ſome way to tranſport themſelves from one ſhore to the other.) For *Cæſar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all viſited by Forraign Merchants. And the ſame *Cæſar* found the Seas betwixt *France*, and *Britain*, ſo ill furniſhed with Veſſels; that he was fain to make ſhips to tranſport his Army: *Singulari Militum ſtudio circiter ſexcentas & duodetriginta Naves invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greateſt height which it had in thoſe days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Veſſels, and the *Tackle* unto them belonging. That the *Phœnicians* firſt invented open Veſſels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been ſaid before: and unto them alſo is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two Banks of Oars upon a ſide; which kinde of Veſſels grew ſo large in the courſe of time, that *Ptolomy Philopater* is ſaid to have made a Gallie of 50 banks. Great Ships of burden, called *Cirœra*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphas*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Liburnians*: Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigots or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phaſelis*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phaſelis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*. As for *Tackle*, the *Bœotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalaus*, and his ſon *Icarus*, the Maſts and Sails: Which gave occaſion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made wings to their bodies; and that *Icarus* ſoaring too high, melted the Wax which faſtened his wings unto his ſhoulders, and thereby periſhed; the truth being, that preſuming too much on this new invention, he ran himſelf upon a Rock, and was caſt away. For *Hippagines*, veſſels for the tranſporting of Horſe, we are indebted to the *Salaminians*; for grapliug hooks, to *Anarcharſis*; for Anchors, to the *Tuſcans*; and for the Rudder, rielm, or Art of Steering, to *Typhis* the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*: who noting that a Kite, when ſhe flew, guided her whole body by her Tail; effected that in the devices of Art, which he had obſerved in the works of Nature. By theſe helps ſome great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greateſt, thoſe of *Jaſon*, *Ulyſſes*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of theſe, *Jaſon* and his companions, ſayled in the ſhip called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulyſſes*, through the *Mediterranean* onely; ſmall gullets, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander's* journey ſo famouſed, and accounted then ſo hazardous, was but ſayling down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the *Ocean*. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent, that they went with great leiſure, and crawled cloſe by the ſhore-ſide: otherwiſe it had been impoſſible to have conſumed three whole years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the uſual time of theſe voyages, as appeareth in 1 *King.* 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the moſt potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean*, were the *Genoſe*, and *Venetians*; in the Ocean the *Engliſh*, and the *Hanſ-towns*; neither of which ever attempted any great diſcoveries.

But in the year 1300. one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples*, found out the *Compaſſe*, or *Pixis Nautica*, conſiſting of 8 winds onely, the four principal, and four collateral: And not long after, the people of *Bruges*, and *Antwerp*, perfected that excellent invention; adding 24 other ſubordinate windes or points. By means of this excellent Inſtrument, and withall by the good ſucceſſe of *Columbus*, the *Portugals*, Eaſtwards; the *Spaniards*, Weſtward; and the *Engliſh*, Northwards; have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impoſſible to have been performed, and had been fooliſhly undertaken, when that help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by ſome learned men, to prove the uſe of the *Mariners Compaſſe* to be far more antient, than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and induſtrious man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* tongue, than the *Philologie* of the *Greeks*, and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* (the moſt famous Sea-men of old times): but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cauſe. Nor is it poſſible that ſuch an excellent invention, ſo beneficial to the common good of all mankind, ſhould have been forgotten and diſcontinued, for the ſpace of more than 2000 years; if ever the *Tyrians*, and *Phœnicians* had been maſters of it: who could not poſſibly conceal it (had they been ſo minded) from the *Common-Mariners*, or they not have communicated it for gain, or deſire of glory, to the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, under whom ſucceſſively they lived. As little moment do I finde in ſome other Arguments, as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the Antient writers, or the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, ſhould be by them intended of the *Mariners Compaſſe*. For plainly the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, is no other than that peece of *tackle*, which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*; by

which they uſe to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every wind. And ſo much doth appear by the Poet himſelf, in the Comedie which he cals *Mercator*; ſaying, *Hinc ventus nunc ſecundus eſt, cape modo Verſoriam.* So called from *Verſo*, to turn often; or from *Verſum* the firſt *Supine* of *Verto*: whence *Velum vertere* is a common phraſe amongſt the *Latines*, uſed for the ſhifting of the Sail as the winde doth vary. As for the *Load-ſtone*, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, Ἡρακλεὼς λίθος by the *Greeks*: not becauſe *Hercules Tyrius*, whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had firſt found out the vertue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh; but becauſe firſt found neer *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*, Κέκληται δ' οὕτως ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείας τῆς ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλεως; ſaith *Heſychius* the old *Grammarian.* Called for the ſame reaſon *Magnes*, by the writers both *Greek*, and *Latine*; becauſe firſt found in the Territory of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia* alſo, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us for the *Greeks*, Ἡράκλειον λίθον τινὲς δὲ Μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωσαν, διὰ τὸ τὴν Ἡράκλειαν τῆς Μαγνησίας εἶναι: Heraclium *Lapidem quidam* Magneſiam *reddiderunt*; *quia* Heraclea *pars eſt Magneſiæ.* Called for the very ſame reaſon *Lydius Lapis* alſo, but by them known onely as a *touch ſtone.* Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines.*

Quem Magneta *vocant patrio de nomine* Graii,
Magnetum *quia ſit patriis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the Greeks *do* Magnes *name*,
Becauſe it from Magneſia *came.*

But I have rambled further than I did intend, drawn by the vertue of the *Load-ſtone* too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*; where the *Spaniards* at their firſt Arrival found the people without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in *Agriculture*, making their bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca*: a Root wherein is a venemous liquor, not inferior to the moſt deadly poiſons; but having firſt ſqueezed out this juice, and after dryed and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worſhipped Deviliſh Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of *Cotton wool*, like our *Childrens Babies*: to which they did great reverence, as ſuppoſing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them; and to blind them the more, the *Devil* would cauſe theſe *Puppets* to ſeem to move, and to make a noiſe. They ſtood alſo in ſo great fear of them, that they durſt not diſpleaſe them: for if their wils were not fulfilled, the *Devil* ſtrait executed vengeance upon ſome of their Children; ſo holding this infatuated people in perpetual thraldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not ſeen, that they thought the *Chriſtians* to be immortal: wondring exceedingly at the Sails, Maſts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themſelves knowing no Ships or other Veſſels, but huge Troughs made of ſome great-bodied Tree. But this opinion of the *Chriſtians* immortality (in the ſenſe they meant it) did not long continue: for having taken ſome of them, they held their heads under the water, till they had quite choaked them; by which they knew them to be mortal like other men. Quite deſtitute of all good learning, they reckoned their time by a confuſed obſervation of the courſe of the Moon: and ſtrangely admired to ſee the *Spaniards* know the health and affairs of one another, onely by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honeſt nature, for the moſt part, they were found to be; Loving and kinde in their entertainments, and apt to do good Offices both private and publick, according to their underſtandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond ſome certain Hills (but they knew not where) thoſe which lived honeſtly and juſtly, or offered up their lives in defence of their Countrey; ſhould finde a place of everlaſting peace and happineſſe. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls immortality, and of ſome *Ubi* for the future reception of it, that we finde ſome tract, or other of it in moſt barbarous Nations. And as for *Gold* and *Silver*, which the new-come *Chriſtians* ſo adored, they eſteemed them no otherwiſe than as droſſe: though many times they adorned themſelves therewith for the colours ſake; as they did alſo with ſhels, feathers, and the like fine *Gew-gawes.*

Of complexion, moſt of theſe *Americans* were reaſonably fair and clear, little inclining unto blackneſſe: notwithſtanding that a great part of this Countrey lieth under the ſame parallel with *Æthiopia*, *Lybia*, and the Land of *Negroes.* So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as ſome imagine) the cauſe of that blackneſſe; though accidently it may turn the skin into ſuch a colour: as we ſee in many Countrey-Laſſes, even in colder *Climates*, whoſe faces are continually expoſed to the Sun and Weather. Others more wiſe in their own conceits (but in no bodies elſe) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of colour; contrary both to ſenſe and reaſon, Experience and true natural Philoſophy being both againſt it. And ſome will have this *Blackneſſe* laid as a curſe on *Cham*, (from whoſe poſterity the *African* Nations do derive themſelves) becauſe, forſooth, he had carnal knowledge of his wife when they were in the *Ark*: a fancie as ridiculous, as the other falſe. So that we muſt refer it wholly to Gods ſecret pleaſure; though poſſibly enough the curſe of God on *Cham* and on his poſterity (though for ſome cauſe unknown to us) hath an influence on it.

Touching the Original of this people, it is moſt probable that they deſcended from the *Tartars*; for which there are ſome Arguments of eſpecial weight. For firſt, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainder of the Arts, Learning, and Civilities of it. And ſecondly, that they came not from *Africk*, in regard they have no *black men* amongſt them, except ſome few which dwell on the Sea-coaſts over againſt *Guinea* in *Africk*; from whence they are ſuppoſed, to have been brought hither by ſome Tempeſt, or other. Thirdly, that they have not the leaſt token, or ſhew of the arts and induſtry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that ſide of *Aſia*. The *affirmative* Arguments prove firſt, that they came from *Aſia*; next in particular from *Tartarie*. That they came

came out of *Asia*, is more than manifeſt, in that the Weſt-ſide of the Countrey towards *Asia*, is far more populous, than the Eaſt towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reaſon aſſigned, than that theſe parts were firſt inhabited, and that from hence the reſt was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this people, and the particularities thereof, their incivility, and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are moſt like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the Weſt-ſide of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet disjoyned by a very ſmall Strait, as may be perceived in all our *Maps* and *Cards*, as alſo in the Deſcription of theſe Countreys: ſo that there is into theſe Countreys a very quick and eaſie paſſage. And fourthly, the people of *Quivira*, which (of all the Provinces of *America* is the neareſt unto *Tartary*) are ſaid to follow in their whole courſe of their life, the ſeaſons and beſt paſturing of their Cattel, juſt like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident argument of their Original deſcent.

But from what Root ſoever they did firſt deſcend, certain it is that they had ſetled here many ages ſince, and overſpread all the parts and quarters of this ſpacious Continent; there being no place, which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found deſolate, or waſte, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers much diminiſhed ſince theſe late Diſcoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves moſt inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked people: killing them up like ſheep appointed to the ſlaughter, or otherwiſe conſuming them in their Mines and works of drudgery. And had not *Charles* the fifth ordained with moſt *Chriſtian* prudence, that the *Natives* ſhould not be compelled to work in the *Mines* againſt their wills; but that the *Spaniards* ſhould provide themſelves of *Slaves* elſewhere: the *Natives*, in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of *Chriſtianity* and the Goſpel. For ſo exceeding barbarous and bloudy were they at their firſt coming thither, that *Haithney*, a Nobleman amongſt them, being perſwaded to imbrace the *Chriſtian* faith; demanded firſt what he ſhould get by being of that Religion: and was anſwered, that he ſhould get *Heaven* and the joyes thereof: Then would he know, what place was deſtinate to ſuch as died *unbaptized*; and was anſwered, that they went to *Hell*, and the torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of theſe two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to *Heaven*; he renounced his *baptiſm*: proteſting that he would rather go to Hell with the unbaptized, *than to live in* Heaven *with ſo cruel a people*. The reſt were driven unto the *Font*, like ſo many Horſes to the watering place; and received into the Church of *Chriſt* without any inſtruction: inſomuch that one old *Frier* (as himſelf confeſſed to *Charles* the fifth) had Chriſtened 700000 of them, and another of that rank 300000. never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Chriſtian* faith, or points of Religious converſation, (except it were to be obedient to their Paſtors and Teachers.) Yet here I muſt confeſſe, (for I am loath to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of *Chriſtianity*: the number of *Chriſtians* in this Countrey, being thought by ſome Learned man of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all thoſe of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps conſtrained at firſt unto it as a *new Religion*, and of a ſtricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and education, it is now grown more plauſible and familiar to them. The Church hereof governed by the four Arch-biſhops of 1. *Mexico*. 2. *Lima*. 3. S. *Foy*, and 4. *Dominico*; who have under them 25 Suffragan Biſhops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this new world came firſt acquainted with the old, *Iſabel* Queen of *Caſtile*, would not permit any of her husband *Ferdinando's* ſubjects, to be planted here, viz. *Arragonians*, or *Valentians*; but licenſed the *Caſtilians*, *Andaluſians*, *Biſcains*, and the reſt of her own people onely, envying the wealth hereof to the reſt. When ſhe was dead, *Ferdinando* licenſed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding onely the *Portugals*. But ſo rich a prize could not ſo warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *Engliſh*, and now of late the *Low-countrey-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniards* harveſt; who well hoped to have had a *Monopoly* of ſo wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any *rivall* or competitor the poſſeſſion (I cannot ſay the love) of a Countrey ſo abundantly fruitful. For though ſome of the Kings of *Spain*, have been uſed to ſay, that they loved the *Eaſt Indies* as their *Miſtreſſe* onely, in whoſe favour they could patiently enough endure a *Rival*; but eſteemed *America* as their *wife*, in whoſe love they could not brook a Competitor, without foul diſhonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) ſome of his neighbours have made bold with his *wife*, in theſe later times; though in the affections of his *Miſtreſſe* they have greater intereſt. But theſe attempts of the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, have been an occaſion of great ſtrength to the whole Countrey. For whereas in our firſt Wars with *Spain*, our private *Adventures* found the Sea-coaſts almoſt naked of defence, and thereupon made many a rich and proſperous voyage to theſe parts: the *Spaniards* upon ſight of that weakneſſe and diſadvantage, ſo ſtrongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, we were not able to accompliſh that with great and publick Forces, which before had been performed by ſmall and private. Which cauſed our *Captains* and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in the *Continent*, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of the *Spaniſh* Navies, as they yet do.

This *New World* is very plentifull of Spices, Fruits, and ſuch Creatures which the *old World* never knew; ſtocked with ſuch ſtore of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* ſince the firſt diſcovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thouſands of them yearly, for their tallow and hides onely. Bleſt with ſuch abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines, more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* not regarding, greedily exchanged for *hammers*, knives, axes, and the like tools of iron; for before, they were wont to make their *Canoes* or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of fire. Other particularities ſhall be ſpecified in the particular Deſcriptions of the ſeveral Countries. I ſhall now onely take a brief view of ſuch of their Beaſts and Fowls, as either this *old World* did not know, or knew not in ſuch ſhapes and qualities, as are there preſented. Their *Lyons* leſſe in great-

neſſe

neſſe than thoſe in *Africa*, are ſaid to be of colour gray, and ſo nimble as to climb Trees; their Dogs ſnowted like *Foxes*, but deprived of that property which the *Logicians* call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not *bark*: their *Hogs* with talons ſharp as *Razors*, and the navil of their bodies on the Ridge of their backs: their *Stags*, and Deer, without *Horns*; their *Sheep* (they call them *Lamas*) not onely profitable as with us, for food and raiment, but accuſtomed to the carrying of burdens, ſome of 150 pound weight. Amongſt ſuch ſtrange *Beaſts* as this *old World* knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whoſe name I finde not) whoſe forepart reſembleth a *Fox*, the hinder part an *Ape*, except the Feet onely which are like a Mans: beneath her belly a Receptacle like a Purſe, where ſhe keeps her young, till they be able to ſhift for themſelves; never coming thence but when they ſuck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horſe, ſeeming to be armed all over, and that with Artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do ſhut and open. The *Vicugue* reſembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the *Fleece* whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the *Belly* finde the *Bezoar*, ſometimes two or three, a ſoveraign *Antidote* againſt Poiſons and venemous Diſeaſes. A kinde of *Hare* reſembling a *Want* in his feet, and a *Cat* in his tail; under whoſe chin nature hath faſtned a little Bag, which ſhe hath alſo taught him to uſe as a *Store houſe*: for in this, having filled his Belly, he preſerveth the remnant of his *Proviſion*. The *Pigritia*, a little Beaſt (not ſo named for nought) which in fourteen days cannot go ſo far as a man may eaſily throw a ſtone. Then for their *Birds*, they have them there in ſuch variety of colours; that the *Indians* will perfectly repreſent in Feathers whatſoever they ſee drawn with Pencils: inſomuch as a *Figure* of S. *Francis* made of *Feathers*, was preſented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whoſe eye could not diſcern them to be natural colours, but thought them pencil-work, till he made tryal with his fingers. One called the *Tominejo*, of all colours, ſo little that it ſeems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-flie; the mouth thereof no bigger than the eye of a needle; yet yielding not to the *Nightingale* in the ſweetneſſe of its note and Muſick: the Bird and Neſt put into Gold Scales, not weighing above 24. grains, yet beautified with *Feathers* of ſo many colours, eſpecially in the neck and breſt; that the *Indians* make great uſe of them in their *Feather-pictures*. Others as big, as theſe are little. The *Condores* of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſſe, that they will fall upon a *Sheep* or Calf, open it, and eat it. Like Miracles of nature have they in their *Fruits* and *Plants*, more proper unto *Natural Hiſtory* than to this Diſcourſe: and many *medicinal* Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the conſideration of the Learned *Herbaliſts*. I am too *much a Fool to be a Phyſitian*, and therefore will not deal in ſuch things as are out of my Element. Yet ſomewhat of this kinde we may chance to meet with, in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral Provinces, into which this *new World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninſulas*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*; from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, ſuppoſed (for the moſt Northern parts of it are not yet diſcovered) to contain 13000 miles in compaſſe. That towards the South, hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Countrey of *Peru*; the circumnavigation whereof is reckoned at 17000 *Italian* miles. The *Iſthmus* which joyneth theſe two together, very long but narrow; in ſome places not above twelve miles from Sea to Sea; in many not above ſeventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Streit of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, neer unto the *Iſthmus*: and is ſo ſmall a Ligament for ſo great a Body, that ſome have thought of turning theſe two *Peninſulas* into perfect Iſlands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Councel of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable channel through this ſmall *Iſthmus*, ſo to ſhorten their common voyages to *China*, and the *Moluccoes*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly becauſe if he ſhould imploy the *Americans* in the work, he ſhould loſe thoſe few of them, which his people have ſuffered to live; partly becauſe the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa*, do but ſuffice for the Mines and Sugar-houſes; but principally, leſt the paſſage by the *Cape of good hope*, being left, thoſe Seas might become a receptacle of *Pirats*. Wich doubtleſſe was a very prudent and Politick conſideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finiſhed. *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Perſia*, one of the *Ptolomies*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a paſſage from the *Red-Sea*, to the *Mediterranean*: ſo had *Cæſar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Iſthmus*. Another of the ſame nature, had *Charls* the *great*, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*; the like had *Lucius Verus*, to joyn the *Rhene*, and the *Roſne*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* alſo King of *Syria*, intended to have made a channel from the *Caſpian* to the *Euxine* Sea; an infinite project. But neither he nor any of the reſt could finiſh theſe works; God it ſeemeth, being not pleaſed at ſuch proud and haughty enterpriſes. And yet perhaps the want of treaſure hath not been the leaſt cauſe, why the like projects have not proceeded: beſides the dreadfull noyſes and apparitions, which (as we have already ſaid) continually affrighted the workmen.

Not leſſe obſervable than this great but unſucceſſful deſign of cutting a paſſage thorow this *Iſthmus*, from one Sea to the other; was that notable, but a like ſucceſſeleſſe Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Engliſhman*, in a paſſage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, arriving in a ſmall Bark with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Deos*, the chiefeſt Town of all the *Iſthmus*; drew his Ship on Land, covered it with boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the South Sea, went to the Iſle of *Pearls*, where he ſtayed ten days; intercepted in two *Spaniſh* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that ſide) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of ſilver, and returned in ſafety to the Land. And though by the mutinie of ſome of his own Company, he neither returned into his Countrey, nor unto his Ship: yet is it

an

an *Adventure* not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other; and by the *Spaniſh* Writers recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Diviſion of this Countrey, and the two main parts thereof which this *Streit* uniteth; *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninſula*, may be moſt properly divided into the Continent, and Iſlands: the *Continent* again into the ſeveral Provinces of 1 *Eſtotiland*, 2 *Nova Francia*, 3 *Virginia*; 4 *Florida*, 5 *California*, 6 *Nova Gallicia*, 7 *Nova Hiſpania*, and 8 *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many ſub-diviſions, and leſſer Territories. *Pernana*, or the Southern *Peninſula*, taking in ſome part of the *Iſthmus*, as before we did, hath on the *Continent* the Provinces of 1 *Caſtella Aurea*, 2 *Nova Granado*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Chile*, 5 *Paragnay*, 6 *Braſil*, 7 *Guiana*, and 8 *Paria*, with their ſeveral members, parts, and particular Regions. The Iſlands which belong to both diſperſed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mare del Zur*; where there is not any one of note, but 1. Thoſe called *Los Ladrones*, and 2 the Iſlands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Norte*, reduced unto 3 the *Caribes*, 4 *Porto Rico*, 5 *Hiſpaniola*, 6 *Cuba*, and 7 *Jamaica*. In the ſurvey of which particulars we will begin with thoſe which lie on the North-eaſt of this great Continent, not poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*: and paſſing thorow the Plantations of ſuch other Nations, as have any footing in the ſame, come by degrees to the Eſtates of the King of *Spain*; that we may lay them altogether without interruption: beginning with *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern part, and that which (as ſome ſay) was diſcovered firſt.

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend those Regions of *Mexicana*, which lie most towards the North, and East; hath on the East, the main Ocean: on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the West, some unknown Tract not yet discovered: and on the North, a Bay, or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudsons Streits*, and called so from *Henry Hudson* an *English-man*; who by this way endeavoured to finde out a more commodious and quick passage to *Cathay* and *China*, than had been formerly discovered. It comprehends. 1. *Estotiland* specially so called. 2. *Terra Corterialis*. 3. *New-found-land*, and 4. the Isles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And first *Estotiland*, specially so called, is the most Northern Region on the East-side of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudsons Streits* on the North; and *Terra Corterialis*, on the South. The soyl sufficiently enriched with natural endowments, said to have in it Mines of Gold and other Metals; but I doubt it lieth too much North for Gold, whatsoever it may do for Brasse and Iron. The people rude and void of goodnesse; naked, notwithstanding the extream cold of the Countrey; not having either the wit, or the care to cover their bodies with the skins of those Beasts, which they kill by hunting; though their bellies teach them to keep life by the flesh thereof. Said by the first *Discoverers* to sow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Groen-land*; as also to have many Cities and Castles, some Temples consecrate to their Idols, where they first sacrificed men, and after eat them. The Language which they spake, expressed in *Characters* of their own; but some knowledge of the *Latine* tongue there had been amongst them, and *Latine* books in the Library of one of their Kings, understood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Countrey by the first *Discoverers*, who were certain *Fishermen* of *Freezland*, cast by a Tempest on this Coast about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died save one: who after a long wandring from one Princes Court to another, found means to return into his own Countrey: the King whereof called *Zichumi*, being a great *Adventurer* in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Discovery and Conquest of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*: who desiring to see the fashions of the World, furnished a ship at their own charges, and passing the Streits of *Gibraltar* held their course northward, with an intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by tempest on this Iland, *An.* 1380. they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly prosperous in a War against those of *Norway*: who liked *Nicolo* so well, that he gave him a command in his Navie, and under his good conduct woon many Ilands, discovered *Groen-land*, and provided for the conquest of *Estotiland* also. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the businesse was pursued by his brother *Antonio*, the King in person making one in the undertaking: who liked the Countrey so well, being once possessed of it, that he built a Citie in it; and there determining to spend the rest of his dayes, sent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the most of his people.

This is the substance of the story of the first Discovery, published long since by one *Francisco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been considered of as they might have been, we had not so long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the World. But whether it were that their reports were esteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Discovery; there was nothing done in pursuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Countrey, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite lost again, till these later dayes. Said in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well stored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreshing: the Haven where they landed, to be called *Cape Trin*; the people to be of small Stature, fearfull, and to hide themselves in Caves, at the sight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain alwayes burning, or casting smoak; together with a certain Spring, whence issued a water as black as Pitch; but no such Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the *Fisher-man* spake of. The Countrey West from *Freezland* 1000 miles.

To give you the face of it as it stands at the present, it is said to be well cultivated, fruitfull of all necessaries for the life of man, and rich in metals, but extream cold: watered with four Rivers, which rising out of an high Mountain in the midst of the Countrey, disperse themselves over all parts of it. The people said to be more ingenious, of better judgements, and more skilled in most *Mechanick* Arts, than the rest of the *Americans* were at the first Discovery; which argueth some more civil people to have been formerly amongst them. Their Garments of the skins of beasts, or Sea-Calves; with which also they covered the out-side of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of Cape *Trin* be still remaining, I am not able to discover; this Countrey lying still for the most part hidden in a *Northern Mist*. All we can say, is, that some *English* names have been imposed of late, on some Capes and Promontories, lying on the Northern shores hereof towards *Hudsons Streits*, by *Hudson* and such others of the *English* Nation who pursued that enterprise. Of which sort are *Prince Henry's Foreland*, towards the East, almost at the entries of those *Streits*: and then proceeding towards the West, *Cape Charls*, *Kings Foreland*; and last of all, *Cape Wolstenham*, at the end thereof, where these Streits open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudsons Bay*. But of these more particularly in another place; where we endeavour the Discovery of such parts of the world as are yet *unknown*, and so within the compasse of a *Terra incognita*.

2. TER-

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North, *Eſtotiland*; on the South, *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Gaſpar Corterialis*, who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called alſo *Terra di Laborodoro*, both from the pains required of the Husband-man, and the great recompence which it gives him: in the ſame ſenſe, as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples*, is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the *French*, who ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion hereof after the *Spaniard* had forſook it, it was called *New-Bretagne*; with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural Countrey.

The people at the firſt coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, ſwift of foot, and very good *Archers*: their cloathing of Beaſts skins, their habitations *Caves*, or ſome ſorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganiſm*, or none; their directions, *Sooth-ſaying*. Not ſo forgetfull of the Law which Nature had planted in them, as not to know the neceſſary uſe of *marriage*; but extreamly jealous. Better conditioned at the preſent than in former times, by their near neighbour-hood to the *French*, and commerce with *Forreiners*: affirmed to be very well diſpoſed, to feed moſt generally on fiſh, and to adorn themſelves with *Bracelets* of braſſe, or ſilver. Their chief Towns. 1. *Breſt*. 2. *Santta Maria*. 3. *Cabo Marzo*, of which little memorable.

The Countrey firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the ſon of *John Cabot* before mentioned: who in the year 1499. at the charges and encouragement of King *Henry* 7th. ſetting ſayl from *Briſtol*, firſt made the diſcovery of theſe parts, as far as to the *Latitude* of 67 and an half, (which brings *Eſtotiland* within the compaſſe alſo of his diſcoveries.) The Land which he firſt ſaw, he called *Prima Veſta*; and an Iſland lying before it he called St. *Johns*, becauſe diſcovered on the day of St. *John Baptiſt*. They found upon the Countrey plenty of *white Bears*, Stags greater than ours, Scut-fiſhes of a yard long, and ſuch ſtore of *Cod fiſh* (which the Inhabitants called *Baccalaos*) that their multitudes ſometimes ſtayed his ſhips: hence the occaſion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for a war in *Scotland*; ſo that nothing elſe was done in this Diſcovery by the *Engliſh* Nation. But three years after, *Gaſpar Corterialis* a *Portugueze*, ſetting ſayl from *Lisbon*, fell upon thoſe parts of *Cabots* Diſcoveries, which ſince bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanſhip, left there moſt probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of: drowned in the Sea, or ſlain by the *Salvages* on the Land; as was his brother *Michael*, in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French* having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, caſt an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Breſt* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in *little Bretagne*:) but whether they ſetled any *Colony* in it, or onely did reſort unto it in the way of trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latines* call it) is a great Iſland, lying on the South of *Corterialis*; from which parted by a *Frith*, or Streit, called *Golfe des Chaſteaux*. So called from the late diſcovery of it, when diſcovered firſt, though it be ſome ſcores of years ago: as *Wickhams* Colledge in *Oxford* hath the name of *New Colledge*, though founded divers ages paſt; becauſe it was the *Neweſt* when that name was given.

The dimenſions of the Countrey I have no where met with. But for the quantity hereof, it is ſaid to be better inhabited in the North parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for habitation. Furniſhed upon the Sea-coaſts with abundance of Cod-fiſh, as alſo with Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oyſters, and Muſcles with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Countrey, naturally beautified with Roſes, ſown with Peaſe, planted with ſtately Trees, and otherwiſe diverſified, both for pleaſure and profit: the Aire hereof never very extream, more temperate in the depth of Winter than with us in *England*, the Brooks being never ſo frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and thoſe little froſts but ſeldom holding three nights together. The people of reaſonable ſtature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardleſſe, their faces coloured with *Oker*; their Houſes, Poles ſet round meeting together in the top, and covered over with skins; an *hearth*, or fire-place in the midſt; their Boats of Bark, twenty foot long, and four in breath, not weighing above 100 pound weight; every of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all places of their Removes.

Places of moſt importance in it are the ſeveral *Havens* (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, than any one Iſland of the world for the bigneſſe of it:) not beautified with Towns, or buildings, but yielding very ſafe ſtations to the greateſt ſhips. The chief whereof 1. *Rennoſa*, or *Roigmenſe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-Eaſt Angle of the Iſland; of much reſort for fiſhing, from ſeveral Countreys. 2. *Portus formoſus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three miles North of the other; capable of great ſhips, and bearing into the main Land above 40 miles. Situate in the *Latitude* of 46. and 40 minutes. 3. *Thornbay*, by the *Portugals* named *Enſeada Grande*. 4. *Trinity Bay* on the North of Cape S. *Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Bahia de la Conception*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narroweſt place; yet ſafe withall and of very good *Anchorage*. 5. *Bona Veſta*, the name of a Port and Promontory. 6. *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanche*, as the *French* call it, ſafe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of S. *John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-Eaſt Angle of the Iſland, is no Port of note. Then on the South-ſide of the Iſland, and the Weſt of *Cape de Raz*, is 7 *Port Treſpaſſez*. 8. *Port Preſenza*, and 9 *Port des Baſques* (or the *Biſcains* Haven;) and on the Weſt ſide, having doubled the Cape *de Raye*, in the South-weſt Angle of the Iſland, there is 10 S. *Georges Bay*: all of them ſafe, capacious, and of great reſort.

4. Before the Iſland, at the diſtance of 25 leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lieth a long bank, or ridge of ground, extended in length many hundred leagues, in breadth 24 leagues where broadeſt, in other places but ſixteen: and all about it certain Iſlands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAOS* (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitudes of *Codfiſh* (by the Natives called *Baccalaos*) which ſwarmed hereabouts; ſo numerous, that they hindred the paſſage of his ſhips, as be-

as before was noted, and lay in ſuch ſhoals upon the Coaſts, that the Bears caught them with their claws & drew them on land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the moſt formal expreſſions of duty and reverence uſed to rub their Noſes, or ſtroke their foreheads: which if the King obſerved, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had ſo adored him, he turned his head to his left ſhoulder, as a mark of favour.

The firſt Diſcoverers of this Countrey (but not known then to be an Iſland) were the two *Cabots*, *John*, and his ſon *Sebaſtian*, imployed herein by *Henry* the 7th. 1497. as before was noted. The buſineſſe being laid aſide at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot*, two of *Briſtol*: who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, aſcribed to themſelves the diſcovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the enterprize: which was done *An.* 1527. but with ill ſucceſſe. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britons* of *France* had reſorted to it; and changed the names which by the *Engliſh* had been given to the Bayes and Promontories. But the *Engliſh* would not ſo relinquiſh their pretenſions to the *Premier Seiſin*. And therefore in the year 1583. Sir *Humfrey Gilbert* took poſſeſſion of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, interdicted all other Nations the uſe of fiſhing, and intended to have ſetled there an *Engliſh* Colony. But being wracked in his return, the ſending of the Colony was diſcontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Briſtol*, who moſt ſucceſſefully performed it: the Colony ſo proſpering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, of their own ſowing; ſome probability of Metals, a certainty of *Sables*, *Muſk*, and other precious Commodities, beſides their fiſhing; though that the great occaſion of their ſetling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fiſh, all about the Coaſts, that ordinarily our men take 200. or 300 of them within four hours ſpace; which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

OF

OF CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North, with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean; the Countries lying on the West, either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province onely, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes inlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower channell, with many great windings and *Reaches* in it. Having embosomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Countrey, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of St. *Lawrence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*; being at the mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep.

It is also called *Nova Francia* from the *French*, who following the tract of *Cabot*, and *Corterialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The business first undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, *An.* 1534. received here gladly by the *Natives* with singing, dancing, and expressing much signe of joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542. by King *Francis* the first, not onely to discover the Countrey, but to plant some parts of it, who built there a fair Fortresse for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the soil, and people, we shall best discover in the several parts of it; each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general *Character*. Look we now onely on the principal Rivers of the whole, 1 *Canada*, of which before, 2 *Pemtegonet* or *Norumbegue*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3 *Quimbeque* falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4 *Rio S. Johan*, ending its course in a large Bay called *Bay Francoise*, interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Countrey. 5 *Les trois Riviers*, which rising far north, and passing thorow two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*, 6 *Sagnenay*, of the same Original Course, and Fall. A River of so strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Channel; so deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards; and having received many lesser streams, looseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it the several Regions of *Nova Francia*, specially so called, 2 *Nova Scotia*, 3 *Norumbegue*, and 4 the *Isles* adjoyning.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named, is situate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more in-land parts. The Countrey naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, *Matterns* and Foxes, whose flesh the People did eat raw (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoak or Sun, as they do their Fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowle and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable than the rest, which they call *Adothnel*, whose body and head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Esurgnie*; a shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the stanching of blood: which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentifull of fruits, or fit for tillage; yet it becedeth some Corn, and of pulse good plenty. The Aire more cold than in other Countries of like height, partly by reason of the greatnesse of the River, which being wholly of fresh water, and so large withall, chilleth the Aire on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of snow, which the north-winde passeth over in the way to this Countrey.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with houses, but removing from one place to another, as their food decayed; and carrying all their goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day time they fish in their *Boats*, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their *Privities*. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bush of hair on the top of the Crown; which they suffered to grow to the length of an horses Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three wives apiece; and they so constant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themselves continually in a *mourning habit*: a vizard as it were, made of grease and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their bodies. The women labour more than the men, both in fishing and husbandry; digging the ground insted of Ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they sow their *Maiz* (a Plant of which they make their bread, in most parts of *America*.) *Idolaters* in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts, having added little more unto *Christianity*, than by the *Colonies* they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darknesse they saw so much light, as to believe that when they died they went immediatly to the *Stars*; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleasant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the *immortality* of the soul, and that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga*, round in figure, compassed about with three

Course of timber Ramparts, one within the other; sharp at the top, about two Rods high, with one gate onely to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kinde) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great houses, in the midst of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about six or seven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleasant part of the Countrey; and therefore made the seat of their King, whom they highly reverenced, and carried him on their shoulders sitting on a Carpet of skins. 2 *Stadac*, or *Stadacone*, and 3. *Quebecque*, which the *French* call S. *Croix*, on the course of the same River also; this last a Colonie of the *French*. 4 *Tadonsac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 ships; at the mouth of *Saguenay*. 5 *Franco-Roy*, a Castle built by *Monsieur Roberval*, when he came first into this Countrey. 7 S. *Lewis*, designed for a French Colonie by *Monsieur de Champlain*, An. 1611. but never came to great effect: yet so much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Countrey (full of little Islands) in the Lands of the *Uroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the river *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA* containeth that part of the Countries of *Canada* or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Accadie*, or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninsula* or Demy-Island;) with so much of the main land as lieth between the River *Canada* and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of S. *Croix* upon the West, to the Isle of *Assumption* on the East. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of these Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord *Secretary* of *Scotland*, and by King *Charles* for his approved fidelity most deservedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear Date *Anno* 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their holds here, by Sir *Sam. Argal* Governour of *Virginia*; had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Grant, the said Sir *William Alexander* in the year 1622. sent a *Colonie* hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Countrey, caused the *Peninsula*, lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*; that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which business, he obtained also a Patent for advancing a certain number of Persons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly; distinguished from others by a Ribbin of *Orange tawney*: the money raised upon which Patent, was to be wholly imployed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burden for a private person) or willing to imploy his money to more profit, he sold *Port-Royal* to the *French*; and after discontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Accide* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoise*, once made a Colonie of the *French* by *Monsieur de Monts*, *An.* 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when destroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal* then Governour of the *English* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuites*, whose neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to nest there. Sold since again unto the *French*, as before is said, by whom still possessed. 2 S. *Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3 *Gaspe*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, opposite to the Isle of *Assumption*. 4 *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-east, *Nova Scotia*; on the South-west, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the soil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil; all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting, and therefore never give their daughters to any, unless he be well skilled in that game also. The *Women* are here very chast, and so well love their husbands; that if at any time they chance to be slain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for more nimblenesse, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow and so full of sands, that it is very ill sailing all along these shores. The towns, or habitations rather, so differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniard*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegua*, or *Aranapec*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous, and well-built town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River, of the same name also; But later Observations tell us there is no such matter; that the River, which the first Relations did intend, is called *Pemtegonet*, neither large nor pleasant; and that the place by them meant is called *Agguncia*, so far from being a fair City, that there are onely a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of trees, or the skins of beasts. Howsoever I have let it stand on the first reports, it being possible enough that the Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several *Pretenders*; and that the Sheds, or Cabins which the last men speak of, may be onely the remainders of it.

4. Adjoyning to these Countreys of *Canada*, are several Islands not joyned in any common name, but yet deserving some consideration in this place & time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the Isle of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jaques Carher*, An. 1534. in length 35 leagues, seven, or eight in breadth. The Island very plain and level, of a fruitfull soyl, beautified with Trees of several sorts, repleniished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Rodes, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited, for ought I can finde. 2. *RAMEÆ*, a srie of little Islands in the great Golf of St. *Lawrence* on the South of *Natiscotec*, first found out, or frequented by the Citizens of St. *Malo* in *Bretagne*, An. 1590. of great resort for the *Morse fishing*, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainfull, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. These Morses (take this by the way) are a kinde of Sea-Horses, or Sea-Oxen; with two teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, sold dearer than *Ivory*, because esteemed a Soveraign *Antidote* against poysons. They have also four feet, no Ears, the Horns

about

about half an ell in length; the skin when dressed, twice as thick as that of a Bull; their flesh when young, as sweet & tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the bellies of five of them, there is made usually an Hogs-Head of *Train-Oil*, as good as that of the *Whale*. 3. *BRION*, a small Island on the South of the *Rameæ*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich soyl, fat pasturage, well shaded with tall and lofty Trees; and Neighboured by a smaller Island called *Isle Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Insula Britonum*) so named from *Jaques Breton* a *French man*, in the time of *Francis* the first, called also the Island of St. *Lawrence*; is situate on the South-East of the Isle of *Brion*: in form *triangular*, in compasse about 80 leagues; pleasant and fruitfull, though for the most part swelled with hills. Destitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the *Sea*, well stored with shell-fish; and in the midst thereof a great Lake full of little Islands: the Woods replenished with plenty of Deer, *black Foxes*, and a bird called *Pengwin*. Inhabited by the Natives onely, though the *Portugals* did sometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Aire too cold for them, they again deserted it. The chief Haven is by the *English* called *Newport*; by the *French Port aux Anglois*, from the great resort of the *English* to it, in regard of their fishing. 5. *ISLE DE SABLE*, by the *French* so called from the sands which lie high about it; distant from the *Breton-Isle* about 30 leagues to the South; 15 leagues in compasse, but more long than broad, and of unsafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the safety of the place, attempted twice by the *French*, and once by the *Portugals*; but without successe. 6. Others of lesse note, as *Menego*, and *Les Isles des Oiseaux*, I passe over purposely; there being nothing or but little to be spoken of them.

So it appears by this accompt, that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia*, to all these Countreys; yet they never had the honour of the first discovery, wherein the *English* and the *Portugueze* had precedency of them: nor are possessed of any considerable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large share; the *English* Masters of the best Ports, and all the Islands of the Countrey in the hands of the *Salvages*. Of these some great and powerfull Nations over-sway the rest. The chief whereof are the *Iroquois* on the North-East of *Norumbegua*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Albounequins*, and the *Nebicerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Etechimins*, of *Accadie*, and *new Alexandria*; the *Montagnets*, and the *Attegovantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them stout and hardy people, false of their words, treacherous in their practises, and mercilesse in their revenges. So well acquainted with the factions and divisions of *Europe*, that they know how to make use of one Nation against another; and by that means to keep themselves in their first estate, without being subject unto any. So that the footing which the *English*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtained amongst them, serve rather to secure themselves in the way of their Trading, than to entitle them unto any possession, or command in the Countrey; the *French* being shut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending onely to a Bay, or two in the South of *Accadie*; and the *English* being onely *Tenants at the will* of the Natives, for such conveniency of fishing, as they have in the adjoyning Islands.

OF

OF VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North, *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the East, *Mare del Noort*; the Western boundaries not known, or not well discovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that *Virgin* Monarch; when discovered (to any purpose) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, An. 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name; one of the chief in all the Countrey.

The Inland parts hereof are Mountainous and barren, full of thick woods, a Receptacle for wilde beasts, and the wilder *Salvages*. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitfull, as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; Premising first that *Virginia* in the full Latitude thereof extendeth from the 34th. Degree where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44th. where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The first Discovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *An.* 1497. did first entitle the Crown of *England* to this Countrey. The Design after seconded by one Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings, or Princes hereof; who did Homage to King *Henry* the 8th. then sitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Westminster*: but nothing further done in pursuance of it. And though *John Verazzani*, a noble *Florentine*, at the incouragement and charge of King *Francis* the first, *Anno* 1524. discovered more of the Countrey than *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleasures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongst themselves, looked no further after it: Insomuch that the Countrey lying thus neglected, was re-discovered by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then *Captain of the Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1584. who sending Master *Philip Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take possession of it in Queen *Elizabeths* name; in honour of whom he caused it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he sent hither a *Colony*, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Greenvile*: who not supplied with necessaries for their subsistence, returned home again. In the year 1587. a second *Colony* is sent hither, but as successlesse as the first: the businesse being undertaken onely on a private Purse, not owned as the *interesse* of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Countrey being more perfectly discovered by Captain *Bartholomew Gosnold*, An. 1602. and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into these three parts. 1. *New-England*. 2. *Novum Belgium*. 3. *Virginia* strictly and specially so called. To which the Isles of the *Bermudas* shall come in for a fourth.

NEW-ENGLAND hath on the North-East, *Norumbegua*; and on the South-West, *Novum Belgium*. So called by the *Adventurers* by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Albion*, as some men conceive; as in imitation of the like adjuncts of distinction, given by the *French* and *Spaniards*, to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Countrey situate in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*, betwixt the degrees of 41. and 44. equally distant from the *Artick Circle*, and the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; by consequence naturally of the same degree of heat, with *France*, or *Italy*: But by reason of the thick mists which arise from the Seas adjoyning, those heats so moderated; that the Aire is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *English* body. The soyl not onely fruitfull of such Commodities as grow there naturally; but also of all sorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods, and Trees, both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fish upon the shores; and as for Turkies, Partriges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, such a full variety, as serves not onely for necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Masts, Cables, Timber fit for shipping: in a word whatsoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might be at better rates, and with far lesse trouble be supplied from hence; at least, if we believe the *Relations* of it, published in the year 1622.

The people for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled, hospitable, and more civil than the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of *Religion*, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *English*, at their first setling there, *An.* 1608. they would use to say that *King* James *was a good King, and his* God *a good God, but their* Tanto *naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every *Moon*, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I finde not any great increase of *Christianity* amongst the *Natives*: our *English* Undertakers thinking it sufficient if *they and their houses served the Lord*, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched people; which hitherto have *sate in darkenesse and the shadow of death*, notwithstanding those *New lights* which have shined amongst them. And as for those New-comers which have planted there, all *English*, though some immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what strain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib.* 3. *cap.* 8. where he observeth, *Primos hosce* Colonos, *uti & illos qui postea accesserunt, potissimum aut omnino fuisse ex eorum hominum* Secta, *quos in Anglia* Brownistas & Puritanos *vocant, quales non pauci & in* Belgium *superioribus annis se receperunt, & hinc ad socios sunt profecti*. They were (saith he) either for the most part,

part, or altogether of that *Sect*, which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themselves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Brethren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Tamescot*, where our men found Oysters of nine inches long. 2 *Nansic*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this tract. 3 *Sagahadoc*, of most note, and deservedly too. Of a mile and an half broad at the mouth or influx, and so upwards for the space of a dayes journey: where it maketh a large Lake three dayes journey broad, with six Islands in it; nourished with two large Channels, the one from the North-east, the other from the North-west, each of them rising from a *Lake*, the least of which four dayes journey long, two broad, the other double it. Of lesse note; 4 *Apanawapesk*, 5 *Ramassoc*, 6 *Ashamahaga*, &c.

The Countrey on the Sea-side full of notable *Havens*, populous, and very well inhabited, insomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the space of 70 miles above twenty *Havens*, some of them capable of 500 or 1000 sail: most of them sheltered from the furies of wind and sea, by the interposition of some Islands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coast. In the space of 70 miles he reckoneth forty Villages of the Barbarous people, the chief of which, 1 *Macadacut*, 2 *Segocket*, 3 *Pemmaquid*, 4 *Nusconcus*, 5 *Kennebecque*, &c. all called by the name of some Brook, or water, upon which they were seated. Since added by the *English*, 1 *S. Georges Fort*, the first Plantation of the *English*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagahadoc*, in a Demy-Island, *An.* 1607. 2 *New Plimouth*, seated in a large and capacious Bay; at the first building (*An.* 1620.) consisting of nineteen families only, but in short time improved to an handsom Town: which as it was the first Town, so it was the first Church which was setled there; modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinsons* Church in *Holland*, (that notorious *Separatist*,) and after made a pattern to the rest of these Churches: each absolute and *Independent* in it self, without subordination unto any Superior. For my part, I behold *Episcopacie* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Christ*. But if there were no other Pretenders to it, than *Presbyterie*, and *Independencie*; I should as soon look for the Scepter and Throne of Christ (as they please to phrase it) in the *Co-ordination* of *New-England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the Kirk of *Scotland*. 3 *Bristow*, upon the Sea-side also, but more North than *Plimouth*. 4 *Barstaple*, so called with reference to a noted Sea-town of that name in *Devonshire*; as 5 *Boston*, with like reference to as noted a Sea-port in *Lincolnshire*. 6 *Quillipiack*, on the Bay of *Massachusets*; a Town of an old name, but a new plantation.

This part of *Virginia* first discovered by Captain *Gosnold*, An 1602. and the next year more perfectly surveyed by some of *Bristol*; was by King *James* An. 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentelemen, and Merchants, to be planted and disposed of for the publike: Sir *John Popham*, then *Chief Justice* of the *Common Pleas*, being one of the *Chief* also in that Commission. By his encouragement, and principally at his charge, a *Colonie* was sent thither *An.* 1607. under the Presidencie of Captain *George Popham*, and *Ralegh Gilbert*, who built the Fortresse of *S. George* at the mouth of *Sagahadoc*. But the President dying the next year, and not long after him the *Chief Justice* also, the *Colonie* despairing of good success, returned home again. Successlesly again attempted *An.* 1614. the *Undertakers* were resolved to make further trial of their fortune; and in the year 1616. sent out eight ships more: but it never setled into form till the year 1620. when by the building of *New-Plimouth*, and some encouragements sent thence to bring others on, it grew in very short time to so swift a growth, that no *Plantation* for the time, ever went beyond it. The growth of *old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation: both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turbæ omnis ex finitimis gentibus* novarum rerum *cupida confluxit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; resorted to by such of the neighbouring Nations, as longed for *innovations* in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM* or *NIEU-NEDERLANDT*, hath on the North-east *New-England*; on the South-west *Virginia*, specially so called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their plantation in it *An.* 1614. the Countrey being then void, and consequently open to the next *Pretender*, according to that *Maxime* in the Civil laws, *Quæ nullius sunt, in bonis dantur occupanti*. And yet they had some better title than a bare *Intrusion*, having bought *Hudsons* Cards and Maps, and otherwise contented him for the charge and pains of his *Discovery*, *An.* 1609. Of which more anon.

This part of the Countrey extended from the 38. Degree and an half, to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both of Aire and soil: fruitfull of those things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord, abundance of wilde Grapes, and Nuts, Trees of great height and bulk for shipping; plenty of Herbage, store of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the People did their part, such increase of *Maize* (a Plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their care and industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grain; as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The *Woods* repleniſhed with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the *Rivers* not inferiour to any, in *Sturgeons*, Salmons, and other the best sort of Fish, which can swim in the water.

The People, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other *Salvages*. Clad in Beasts skins, for the most part without certain dwellings; dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their houshold stuff a *Tabacco Pipe*, a wooden dish, and an *Hatchet* made of a broad flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of fishes. Their Religion *Idolatry*, or worse, their chief God the *Devil*, whom they worship under the name of *Menetto*: but with lesse pomp and Ceremony than is used in *Africk*. Of manners, fearfull and suspicious (not without good cause) wonderfull greedy of revenge; but if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithfull unto those who trust them:

conceived to be inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of thoſe, who had ſtudied *godlineſs* more than *gain*.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want ſupplyed by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coaſt; the principal of thoſe that be 1 *Manhattes*, by ſome called *Naſſovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt Rivier*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-Port*, ſo called by *Cornelius May*, the Maſter of a Ship of *Holland*, at their firſt Plantation: another channel of it, which from the noiſe thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it ſelf againſt an Iland called the *Iſle* of *Nuts*. The River about 15, or 16. Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof, affordeth a ſafe Road for ſhipping, but of difficult entrance. 2 *Zuid Rivier*, ſo called, becauſe more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not ſo well diſcovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or *New* Plantations. The *Natural* Inhabitants live together in *Tribes*, many Families of thoſe *Tribes* under one Roof, as before was ſaid; but thoſe Families ſo remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a ſcattered Village. Nor do I finde that either the *Hollanders* or the *Engliſh* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building: The title of the *Dutch* being ſubject unto ſome diſputes; and the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh* not confirmed and ſetled. *Hudſon* an *Engliſhman*, had ſpent ſome time in the Diſcovery of this Countrey, and given his name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, An. 1609. as before is ſaid, compounded for his Charts, and Maps, and whatſoever he could challenge in the right and ſucceſs of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, ſpecially ſo called (having diſpoſſeſſed the *French* of that part of *Canada*, now called *Nova Scotia*, *An.* 1613.) diſputed the poſſeſſion with them; alledging that *Hudſon*, under whoſe ſale they claimed that Countrey, being an *Engliſhman*, and licenſed to diſcover thoſe Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or diſmember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour ſubmits himſelf and his Plantation to his Majeſty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for, and under him. But a new Governour being ſent from *Amſterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes; but began to fortifie himſelf, and entitle thoſe of *Amſterdam* to a juſt propriety. To which end, he gave unto the Countrey the name of *New Netherland*, conferred new names on all the Bays and Rivers of it; and poſſeſſed himſelf of a little Iland neer that Branch of the *Noordt-Rivier*, which themſelves call *Hell-gate*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New-Amſterdam*; and built a Fortreſs by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garriſonned, and planted with five pieces of Cannon, Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him repreſented to the *States* of *Holland*: it was declared by the ſaid *States* in a publick inſtrument, that they were no ways intereſſed in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *Weſt-Indian* Company of *Amſterdam*; and ſo referred it wholly to his Majeſties pleaſure. Which being declared, a Commiſſion was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore* to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*: the like not long after to Sir *Edmund Loyden*, for planting and poſſeſſing the more Northern parts which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *Nova Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then ſeem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there, for the ſum of 2500. l. yet taking advantage of the troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raiſed their demands to a greater height; but furniſhed the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to uſe their Weapons. A moſt miſchievous and wicked Act; not only tending to the damage and diſcouragement of the preſent Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Chriſtians out of all theſe Countries. But the beſt is, they were the firſt that ſmarted by it. The *Salvages* thus armed and trained, fell fowl upon them, deſtroying their Farme Houſes, and forcing them to betake themſelves to their Forts and Faſtneſſes. What hath been ſince done (for the giving of new names to ſome of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *Engliſh*, I can hardly ſay: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpoſe, till it be made a Work of more publick intereſſe.

3. *VIRGINIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North-eaſt *Nieu-Netherlandt*, on the South-weſt, *Florida*; the name reſtrained to this part only, ſince the two laſt Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Countrey lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern *Latitude*: by conſequence the Aire inclined unto heats, if not refreſhed and moderated by a conſtant Gale of Eaſtern winds, which they call the *Brize*; and the blaſts driving on it from the open Seas. Diverſified moſt pleaſantly into hills and valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The ſoil ſo fruitfull, that an Acre of Land well ordered will return 200 Buſhels, or 25 Quarter of Corn. Said alſo to be rich in veins of *Allom*, as alſo Pitch, Turpentine, ſtore of Cedars, Grapes, Oile, plenty of ſweet Gums, ſeveral ſorts of Plants for the Dyers uſe, ſome Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber trees almoſt infinite numbers; as alſo great abundance of Cattel, Fiſh, Fowl, Fruit, and of *Maiz* no ſcarcity. Some *Chriſtall* found amongſt the Mountains, on the ſhore ſome *Pearls*; nothing deficient either in the ſoil, or Aire, for the incouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for ſo large a Countrey, and thoſe as different in ſize, as in ſpeech or manner: Some of them, whom they call *Saſques-hanoxi*, of ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that in compariſon of the *Engliſh* they ſeemed as Giants: clad with the skins of Bears, and Wolves in ſo ſtrange manner, that the head of the Beaſt hung before their breaſts inſtead of a *Jewel*; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other ſide, whom they call *Wigcocomoci*, of ſo low a ſtature, that in relation to the other, they appear as *Pigmies*. But generally they are all of tall ſtature, well limbed, for the moſt part without Beards, and the one half of the head kept ſhaven: clothed in looſe Mantles made of the skins of Deer, with an Apron of the ſame to hide their nakedneſs; the reſt of their bodies painted

over

over with the figures of Serpents, or of ſome other Creature of as horrid ſhape. Strong and accuſtomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconſtant, crafty, and ſomewhat more induſtrious than the reſt of the *Salvages*; but given to anger, and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worſhip all things (and them onely) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, *&c.* So that it may be ſaid of them, as once *Lactantius* ſaid of the ancient *Romans* (did not the ignorance of theſe poor Wretches render them excuſable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and pity, than our ſcorns) *Digniſſimi homines qui Deos ſuos ſemper haberent præſentes.* One Devil-God above all the reſt (they call him *Oke*) whom they worſhip, as themſelves confeſſe, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from theſe horrible and groſſe *Idolatries*, by the long neighbourhood of the *Engliſh*; accuſed in that reſpect moſt juſtly by thoſe of *Rome*.

No Countrey for the bigneſſe of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which 1. *Pawhatan* (ſo called by the name of that petit *Roite let*, whoſe Territory it paſſeth through) which having run a courſe of an hundred miles, and Navigable all that way by ſmaller Veſſels; is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2. *Apamatuck*, 3. *Nanſamund*, and 4. *Chikahamania*, all Tributaries to *Pawhatan*. 5. *Pamanuke*, fourteen miles more North than *Pawhatan*, but of leſſer note. 6. *Toppahanock*, Navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomeke*, paſſable by Boat 140 miles, and ſix, or ſeven miles broad, where it falleth into the Sea; increaſed by many leſſer ſtreams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well ſtored with Fiſh. 8. *Pawtunxut*, of a ſhorter Race, but a deeper Channel than moſt of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choiſe of Fiſh than the others are.

Along the Banks of theſe Rivers dwell their ſeveral Tribes, ſcarce any one of which making up an hundred men (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30. and ſome not ſo many. Their habitations not containing above ten, or twelve houſes apiece, but in thoſe houſes ſundry particular families, are for the moſt part covered with the Barks of Trees; ſo placed, that the common Market place ſtandeth in the midſt, at an equal diſtance: the houſes of their *Weroances* (or the *chiefs* of their Tribes) and that which ſerveth them for a Temple, being ſomewhat finer than the reſt. And of theſe habitations ſome are preſented to us by the names of *Ooanoke*, by the *Engliſh* called the *blinde Town*. 2. *Pemeoke*. 3. *Shycoake*, ſaid by my Author to be *Civitas ampla*, a large Citie, but we muſt underſtand him with Relation to the reſt of this Countrey. 4. *Chowanoak* 5. *Secatan*. 6. *Mattaken*. 7. *Weopomioke*. 8. *Pyſhokonok*, ſaid to be inhabited by none but women. 9. *Chipano*. 10. *Muſcamunge*, both upon the Sea; moſt of them called by the name of thoſe ſeveral *Tribes* which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *Engliſh* and their *Plantations*, we are to know that they made choice of the South-ſide of a large and goodly Bay, for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrutting it ſelf a great way up into this Countrey, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned; is by the Natives called *Cheſepoack*, and yieldeth the onely ſafe entrance into this part of the Countrey: the *Capes* thereof for that cauſe fortified by the *Engliſh*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of moſt note which have been either ſince built, or frequented by them. 1. *James Town* (*Jacobipolis*, ſo named in honour of King *James*, on the South-ſide of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikahamania*: firſt founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and ſome Ordnance planted on the Works. 2. *Henries* Town (*Henricopolis*) ſo named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldeſt ſon of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18 miles from *James Town*. 3. *Dales-gift*, ſo called, becauſe built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, An. 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*. 5. *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Cheſepoack*, very much traded by the *Engliſh*. 6. *Wicocomoco* the chief Town of *Pawhatan*, one of the Roitelets of this Countrey; much courted by the *Engliſh* at their firſt ſetling here, and a long time after: a *Crown* being ſent him by King *James* with many other rich preſents, the better to ſweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithfull Neighbour.

The ſum of the affairs of this laſt Plantation, is, that the buſineſſe being reſumed in the year 1606. and a *Commiſſion* granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work; they fell in hand, by the Counſel and incouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James Town* (having firſt fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a *Colony* of 100 men. Theſe being almoſt conſumed by famine and other miſeries, were the next year recruited with 120 more brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having caſually conſumed their Houſes, once again diſcouraged them. But the Houſes being reedified, and a Church added to the Houſes, by the induſtry of *Smith* their Governour, the *Colony* began to flouriſh, and to increaſe in reputation amongſt the *Savages*: eſpecially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Pawhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 perſons, (and of them 200 expert Souldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition neceſſary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit-Kings Tributaries, and Contributioners to the *Engliſh*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, ſent thither with 9 ſhips and 500 men, loſt a great part of their numbers in the Iſle of *Bermudaz*: the reſt not well according with the old *Plantation*, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ſhips more, *Anno* 1610. But falling into a deſperate ſickneſſe, and come home to *England*, he recommended the eſtate of the *Engliſh* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furniſhed them with Men, Cattel, and other neceſſaries: after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and ſome heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry* Earle of *Southampton*, the affairs here began to ſettle in a proſperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the *Salvages* falling on them (fearing no ſuch treatherie) killed 340 of their men;

and had also then surprized *James Town*, if one of the *Savages*, who had received the *Christian* faith, had not discovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that blow, it went happily forwards: and might by this time have been raised to some power and greatnesse, if the *English* by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by imploying indigent and necessitous persons in so great a work, had not discouraged the design. For certainly one might say of this *Plantation*, as the *Scripture* doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few, or none were sent unto it (except the principals) but such as *were in distresse, or debt*, or some way, or other *discontented*: men never likely to advance and pursue a businesse of such publick *interesse*. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those *Forms of Worship* which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

As for the *Natives* of the whole, they were divided (as was said) into several *Tribes*, every Tribe under the command of their several *Chiefs*: which *Chiefs*, though many in number, and of little power, knew well enough how to keep their *State* unto their Subjects, and to shew it also unto strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleased to give audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him on a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather imbroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsom young woman: on each side of the room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted *Red*, and about their Necks a great Chain of Beads; his principal men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great *State*, (and great it was indeed for such petit Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smiths* time they did not onely pay their *Tributes*, or Contributions, but at his command would send their *Slaves* & Subjects to *James-Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the *Colony*. And it is probable enough that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerfull Plantation (as followed with the *stronger zeal*, and carried on by the united purses of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also amongst the *Natives*, though I finde it not expressed in so many particulars.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number (some say 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 3300 of the same miles from the Citie of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Summer-Islands*, from the shipwrack of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coast; so much delighted with the sadnesse of the misadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to settle a *Plantation* in it.

That of more fame and greatnesse than all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the *Latitude* of 32. & 30 minutes. Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers fruits, Mulberries, *Palmites*, Cedars; as also of Silk-worms, *Pearls* and *Amber*, and such rich Commodities: of Fowl so infinite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one sort, as big as a *Pigeon*, within two or three hours. The Aire hereof very sound and healthy, found by experience (the best Argument in such a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *English* man; yet terribly exposed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder, and Lightning. For which, and for the many shipwracks happening on the Coasts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be said to own it; the Marriners have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The soyl affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentifull in *Maize*, of which they have two Harvests yearly: that which is sowed in *March*, being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August*, being mowed in *December*. No venemous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live, brought hither. And besides these Commodities, of so safe a being, so fenced about with Rocks and Ilets, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the *Haven*; yet with such knowledge, there is enterance for the greatest ships. The *English* have since added to these strengths of nature, such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of *Impregnable*.

It was first discovered (but rather accidently than upon design) by *John Bermudaz*, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a *Proposition* made in the Council of *Spain*, for setling a *Plantation* in it; as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish Fleets*, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the Streits of *Bahama*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, An. 1609. Who being shipwracked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island; which he so liked, that he endeavoured a *Plantation* in it, at his coming home. *An.* 1612. the first *Colony* was sent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight, or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordinance. *An.* 1616. a new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainfull Weed *Tobacco*. An. 1619. the businesse is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the *Publick*, many great Lords and men of Honour being interessed in it: Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men, the Isle divided into *Tribes*, or *Cantreds*, to each Tribe a *Burrough*; the whole reduced to a setled Government both in *Church* and *State*, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623. here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordinance; their numbers since increasing dayly, both by Children born within the Island, and supplies from *England*.

OF

OF FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-East, with *Virginia*; on the East, with *Mare del Noort*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of *New Gallicia*, and some Countreys hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palmes* in the 25th. degree of *Latitude*, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34th. which evidently speaketh it for a Countrey of large dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1497. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took possession of it in the name of that King, *Anno* 1527. and by him called *Florida*, either because he landed there upon *Palm*-Sunday, which the *Spaniards* call *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascha Florida*; or else *quia Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh verdure and flourishing estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaquasa*.

This Countrey lying *Parallel* to *Castile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Aire and Soyl, but that it is abundantly more fruitfull: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize* (the natural bread-Corn of the Countrey) which they sowe twice a year, *viz. March* and *June*, and reap in the third moneth after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chesnuts, Grapes and Plums of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wilde, and tame, of all kindes which these Countreys yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forrests full of the largest Okes, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypresse-Trees, and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood which the Inhabitants call *Pavame*, and the *French* name *Sassafras*, the bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Esquine*, affirmed to be a Soveraign & present Remedy for the *French* Disease It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold, and Silver; neglected by the *Natives*, till the coming of the *Spaniards*, and *French*, put a price upon them: and to have in it *Emeralds* of great worth and beauty, with many *Tarquoises* and Pearls. Others report that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them, came from some ships which had been wracked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the *Natives*, that in the Hills which they call *Apalatei*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an *Olive colour*, great stature, and well proportioned; naked, except their Privities, which they hide with the skins of Stags: their arms and knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their hair black, and hanging down as low as their thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of dissimulation. So stomackfull, that they do naturally love War and Revenge, insomuch that they are continually in War with one, or other. They are crafty also and very intelligent, as appeareth by the answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them, *An.* 1594. For when he went to perswade the people that he was the son of God, and came to teach them the Law: Not so, replyed a *Floridan*, for *God never bad thee to kill and slay, and work all kinde of mischief against us.* The Women when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their hair close to their ears, and strew it on his Sepulchre; and cannot marry again, till their hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermophrodites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kinde of drudgery. They have all a grosse belief of the Souls immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Countrey hath not many, as being generally plain, and level; the chiefest, those called *Apalatei* before mentioned, supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note. 1. *Rio Secco.* 2. *Rio Grande.* 3. *Serravahi*; the two first named so by the *Spaniards*, and the last by the *Natives.* 4. *Garunna.* 5. *Ligeis.* 6. *Axona.* 7. *Sequana*, and 8. *Charente*, so called by the *French*, according to the names of the best Rivers in *France*; both *French* and *Spaniards* having severally and successively the possession it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers; 10 *Rio de Neives*, or the River of *Snow*; and 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico.* A particular description of these Rivers, their rise, course, and greatnesse, I finde not in any of my Authors. Onely *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River, called *Porte Riale*, reckoned the chiefest of this Countrey, the mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with *Crocodiles*, a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

The Countrey not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several *Tribes*; as were all Nations of the World at their first *Discovery.* The principal of these they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avavares*, and *Malicones*, the *Susolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not usual unto us of *Europe*; though these more passable than many which have gone before: mollified perhaps by the *French*, and *Spaniards*, and not presented to us in their natural roughnesse; all governed by their *Paraconssi*, or several *Chiefs*, and those at deadly *Feuds*, and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as

Panuca, *Avanares*, *Abarduoſia*, *Joguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their ſite nor bounds: except it be that *Panuca* lyeth on the borders of *Hiſpania Nova*, beyond the large and ſpacious Bay of the *Holy Ghoſt*; and *Calos* near the Cape, called *Cape di Florida*. Others diſtinguiſh it by the names of the ſeveral Roitelets; which varying with the change of the perſon, makes that diviſion to be very variable and uncertain alſo. But it is generally agreed that the *Peninſula*, which pointeth on the Iſle of *Cuba*, hath the name of *Tegeſta*, or *Florida* ſpecially ſo called; the name of *Florida* being firſt given by *John Ponce* unto this part onely, though afterwards communicated unto all the reſt of this Countrey. A *Demy-Iſland* ſtretching in length from the South to the North, 100 leagues; in breadth where broadeſt 30 leagues, and in ſome places 20 onely. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Iſle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and three goodly Bays; the chief whereof, that entituled to S. *Joſeph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole environed about, ſave where it is joyned unto the *Continent*, with Bars of Sands, and ſcattered Iſlands, which ſerve unto it as the *out-works* to ſome notable Fortreſſe.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Helens*, on, or near a *Promontory*, ſo named, where this Countrey borders on *Virginia*: once fortified and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, but not long ſince abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charles*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*; and ſo called in honour of *Charles* the ninth, in whoſe time the conqueſt of this Countrey was undertaken: but ruined by the *Spaniard* in the War between them. 3. *Port Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining, I am not able to ſay. More in the Land (for theſe lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalche* ſuppoſed to be a place of great conſideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the wealth thereof; (but found to be a ſmall Town, of but 40 Cottages:) and therefore firſt attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their invaſion of this Countrey under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaez*, An. 1528. recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine dayes journey from *Apalche*, where the *Salvages* gave the *Spaniards* a ſharp encounter, and ſlew many of them; but being vanquiſhed at the laſt, they forſook the Town, of it ſelf not tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwalled Town, but conſiſting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houſes) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acuera*. 7. *Oſachile*, the chief Seat of the King ſo called; and 8 *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitacuchus*, both taken by the *Spaniards* at the ſame time alſo. 9. S. *Matthews*, on the Eaſtern ſhore of the *Demi-Iſland* above mentioned, poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. S. *Auguſtines* on the ſame ſhore, but more South than the other; ſituate at the mouth of a ſmall River ſo named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a ſtrong Caſtle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1485. there being found in the Fort of S. *John*, in which the ſtrength of the Town conſiſted, 18 braſſe pieces, and 20000 *Florents* in ready money, for the pay of the Garriſon. Repaired afterwards more ſtrongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have alſo Garriſons in two other places of this Countrey, *viz.* S. *Philip*, and S. *Jago*; but I cannot ſay diſtinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Countrey, is of one kinde onely, though managed by ſeveral perſons: the Supream power reſiding in the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Tribes*; at ſuch continual enmity with one another, that they very ſeldom joyn together in any Counſels, wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the preſent *Floridans*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britans*; *Nec quicquam adverſus validiſſimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non conſulebant.* The not communicating of their Counſels, haſtned on their bondage. Yet in the Government of theſe *Chiefs* there was ſomewhat of the *Parliamentary* way uſed with us in *Europe*. For as in all matters of concernment, thoſe *Chiefs* adviſed with their *Council*: ſo if it were a buſineſſe which concerned the *publick*, their *Prieſts* and others of moſt note for gravity and wiſdom, were admitted to the *Conſultation*. But being ſeverally too weak for a ſtrong Invader; and never joyned together to defend themſelves, they made themſelves an eaſie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*. *Et ſic dum ſinguli pugnabant*, univerſi *vincebantur*; by truſting to their ſingle forces they were all ſubdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce* a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, ſetting ſayl with three ſhips from the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Peninſula* before deſcribed; & for that cauſe, or from the flouriſhing verdure of it, called it *Florida*: but did no more than ſcowre along upon the Coaſts, and give new names to ſuch of the Promontories and Rivers as he had diſcovered, and having onely a ſlight skirmiſh with ſome of the *Salvages*, returned back again. The buſineſſe eight years after was again revived by *Vaſques de Ayllon*, who ſetting ſayl from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hiſpaniola*, attained unto the North-Eaſt parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of S. *Helen*, and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherouſly enſlaved ſome of the *Natives* (whom he had invited to a Feaſt) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiouſneſſe could not proſper. For in the year 1524 coming with his ſhips upon this Coaſt, one of them periſhed on the Rocks; and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more uſe of theſe Diſcoveries, than wickedly to enrich themſelves by ſtealing men, whom as wickedly they ſold for Slaves. Nor had the voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. any better end; though undertaken with a Band of 400 foot, and 80 horſe. For having took poſſeſſion of the Countrey, in the name of his Soveraign *Charles* the fifth, finding ſome hopes of great treaſures to be had at *Apalche* (diſtant above a moneths journey from the place of his landing) he would needs march thither. In which action, though he got that and ſome other Towns, yet he loſt himſelf; few of his men returning ſafe into their Countrey, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitleſſe, but more famous was the enterprize of *Hernandes a Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1543. who with a little Army of 350 Horſe, and 90 Foot, overran a great part of the Countrey, and brought many of the *Petit*

Princes

Princes under the command of *Spain*. But making onely a *Depradatorie* War of it to enrich himself, and waste the Countrey, without setling any *Colony*, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings; the Action ended with his life, which he lost by a Feaver: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had spared, under the conduct of *Ludovico Muscoso di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And so the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; sent on this voyage by *Gaspar Colign*i Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562. under the conduct of *Ribault*; who falling on that part of the Continent, which lyeth on the East-side of the *Peninsula*, gave the first Promontory, which he touched at, the name of *Cape Francois*: and after running Northward along that Coast, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garund*, and others of most note in his own Countrey. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto-Royal*, he there built a little Fortresse, which he called *Fort Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep possession, and returned for *France*: his Souldiers following not long after, as well as they could; destitute of supplies from home, and not able with so small a number to command them there. The Action re-inforced about two years after, under the conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former voyage: by whom some further progresse was made in this undertaking, and a little Town built on the banks of the River *Maio*, (so called by *Ribault*, because in that moneth discovered by him) which he named *Charles-Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*. But a mutiny hapning amongst his men, and some complaints made of him in the Court of *France*; he was called home, and *Ribault* sent again to pursue the enterprize: Who entring on his charge in *August*, An. 1565. was presently set on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his ships forced violently on the Rocks, the new Town sacked, the *Colony* put unto the sword, very few escaping; *Ribault* himself murdered in cold bloud by the Enemy, after faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were slain in this action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new *Civil* War, and loath to engage himself against the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the charge of *Dominicus Gurgius* a private person, out of an honest zeal to the honour of his Countrey, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raised two Castles more on the banks of the *Maio*; which they had furnished with such Pieces as they took from the *French*, and Garrisoned with 400 Soldiers: Yet giving a couragious onset, by the aid of the *Salvages*, (to whom the name and neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demolished the works, and hanged all such of the Souldiers as the sword had spared, and so returned into *France*; where in stead of honour and reward for so great a service, he was in danger of losing both his life and fortunes, compelled to lurk amongst his friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniards* after this, to keep some kinde of possession, though not finding it in riches answerable to their greedy desires, fortified S. *Matthews*, and S. *Augustines*, on the East-side of the *Demy-Island*, with the Castles of S. *Philip*, and S. *Jago*, in other parts of the Countrey towards the North-East: thinking himself so strong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no forrein forces dare appear on that side of the Countrey. So that it seems he playes the part of *Æsops Dog* in the *Manger*, neither resolved to plant there himself, nor willing that any others should.

Having thus taken a survey of the main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of such Islands, as lie dispersed up and down in the Seas adjoyning; called by one general name *LUCAIOS*, or *LUCAIÆ INSULÆ*; many in number, but reducible to these three heads. 1. The *Tortugas*. 2. The *Martyres*, & 3. The *Lucaios* specially so called.

1. *THE TORTUGAS* are seven, or eight little Islands, lying on an heap at the South-west point of the *Peninsula*, called the *Cape of Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; distant from the Port of *Havana* in the Isle of *Cuba* (opposite unto which they lie) about six leagues. Well known among the Saylers, because much avoided; or rather avoided because known; the danger of their company making their further acquaintance shunned.

2. *THE MARTYRES*, called also the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather than Islands, covered with a white sand, and full of bushes; the middlemost of the three the greatest: situate over against the South-East Promontory of the said *Peninsula*, called from hence *Cabeca de los Martyres*, or the Cape of *Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his first discovery of this Countrey, because they seemed afar off to have some resemblance to men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the *Martyrs* were in the *Primitive* times. Infamous for the many shipwracks which have since there hapned; but of great observation amongst *Sea-faring* men, because they know by leaving these Rocks, or Islands on the left hand of them, that they are already entred in the Streits.

3. *THE LUCAIOS* specially so called, lie dispersed on the East of the *Peninsula*; many in number, and so called from *Lucaioneque*, the greatest and most Northern of them, situate in the 27 degree of *Latitude*; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name onely. Of greater note, though not so big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaoneam* and the *Peninsula*; in length 13 leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent current interposing betwixt it and the *Demy-Island*, called the Streits of *Bahama*: yet not so streit but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of so forcible a Course, that many times neither winde nor Oars can prevail against it. 3. *Guanahani*, the most famous of all these Islands, because the first that was discovered by *Columbus*, being then almost out of hope of proceeding further; who thereupon caused it to be called S. *Saviours*: well shaded at that time with Trees, full of fresh Springs, and very plentifull of *Cotton*; now overgrown with shrubs, and bushes. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus* when first discovered, called S. *Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and quick sands, but otherwise of a pleasant and fruitfull soyl, full

of

of delicate Springs. Others there are to the number of 24. or thereabouts, whoſe names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we finde nothing of them but their very names, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf with the *Nomenclature*.

Of all in general it is ſaid that they obeyed their King ſo ſtrictly (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the ſame; though he gave no reaſon but his Will. The *Women* of ſo perfect beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forſook their own Countreys, to enjoy their *Loves*: their ſhape and beauty the more diſcernable, in regard not ſuffered to wear any thing till their *purgations*; nor after that but nets of *Cotton*, filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long ſince, there are neither men, nor women, to be found in any of them: the people being long ſince waſted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*; or conſumed by Famine and Diſeaſes, or otherwiſe made away in Priſons, and by ſeveral Torments; to the number of a Million and 200000. as ſome have told us. And ſo we paſſe unto the other ſide of thoſe Northern Countreys; oppoſite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the main Land of *Florida*: that when we fall into the Countreys now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this work be finiſhed; except it be to take a progreſſe into ſome of the Iſlands, which cannot otherwiſe be viſited but by ſuch a *ſtart*.

OF

OF CALIFORMIA.

CALIFORMIA in the large and general acception of it, containeth all those Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the West-side of that Northern *Peninsula*, beyond *Nova Gallicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province onely which lieth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *Californiia*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and so unto those undiscovered parts which lie furthest North, to the Streits of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*, lib. 6. cap. 11. *CALIFORMIA cummuniter dicitur quicquid terrarum* Novæ Hispaniæ *atque* Galliciæ *ad Occidentem objicitur, ad extremos* Americæ *Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo* Anian *vocant*. Limited in the stricter sense and acception of it, to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the *Chorographie* and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island: the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*; the Island into 3. *Californiia* specially so called, and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And first, the Continent of this part which we call *Californiia*, hath on the East some parts of *Nova Gallicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countreys, which lie on the West-side of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the opposite shore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Streits of *Anian*, if such Streits there be; on the West, with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South, and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Gallicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noort*. A River which rising in the 40. degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tignez* a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*; and after a long course falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided as before was said, into the two great Provinces of 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many houses, nor much stored of people; quite destitute of fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for mans life but the flesh of beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any *chewing*. The men apparelled in Buls-skins, from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Countrey, with no other garment than their hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them in stead of a vail to hide their *nakednesse*. They live in *Hoords* and companies, like the *Hoords* of the *Tartars*; not having any certain dwellings (except some chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomades*. Neer Neighbours unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much distant from it) it is supposed that the Inhabitants first came; and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Countrey being full of herbage, breeds great store of Cattel; differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have an high bunch betwixt their shoulders; bristled upon the back like Bores, with somewhat which resembleth the mane in Horses, and the beard in Goats; their legs short, and clad with fetlocks, their horns short, but sharp; the whole Beast of an aspect so horrid, that an Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their Riches; these being to this people, as we say with us of our *Ale* to Drunkards, meat, drink, and cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the covering of them; their bones, bodkins; their hair, thread; their sinews, ropes; their horns, maws, and bladders, vessels; their dung, fire; their Calveskins, budgets to draw and keep water; their bloud, drink; and their flesh, meat. There is thought to be some traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither. For when *Vasques di Coronado* conquered it, he saw in the further Sea certain ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well laden, and did bear in their prows the figure of *Pelicans*; which could not be conjectured to come from any Countrey but one of these two. I know some place this Countrey more within the Land: and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coasts, upon good authority; though I deny not but that some parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the *maritime* parts being known by other names, the *Inlands* might retain more specially the name of *Quivira*; as we have seen in many other Countreys before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I finde mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tignez*: which I look upon as the *maritime* parts of the same one Countrey, but better peopled and frequented then the *Inlands* are, because lying in the way of traffick. The principal Towns of which *Provinces*: 1 *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible place; about which groweth some store of *Cotton*, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Acuco*. 2. *Tignez*, on the banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and couragious people; who being resolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when besieged by *Vasques de Coronado*, after they had held out above six weeks, laid all their household-stuffe and treasure in an heap together, which they set on fire;

and taking their Wives and Children into the midſt of their ranks, made a deſperate Sally on the Enemy. A reſolution worthy of a better fortune, moſt of them being ſlain in the fight, and the reſt trod under the Horſes feet, or drowned in paſſing over the River. Yet would not thoſe few which were left give up the Town, till it was fired about their ears, and no longer tenable: the *Spaniard* buying this victory (notwithſtanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loſſe of moſt of their Horſes, the death of ſeven of their men, and the wounding of eighty. 3. *Cicuick*, a ſmall *Burrough*, but the chief of that Province, four dayes journey from *Tignez*: from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, ſpecially ſo called, being 90 miles, hath in it neither ſtone nor Tree, nor any land mark; inſomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of *Cow dung*, to ſerve for their direction in their coming back.

The firſt diſcovery of this Countrey is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Viceroy of *Mexico*, who deſirous to get wealth and honour by ſome new *Adventures*, imployed in the diſcovery of theſe Northern parts, Frier *Marco de Niſa*. By him and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was ſome light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but ſo diſguiſed in lyes, and wrapt up in fictions, that that light was little more than *darkneſſe*. Yet by that glimmering, *Franciſco Vaſques di Coronado*, in the year 1540. vndertook the buſineſſe; and ſped ſo well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tignez*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a further journey by the report of the *Salvages*, (who deſired to haſten him out of their Countrey) telling him of the wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*: a bearded man (thoſe of this Countrey wearing none) of a white complexion, and one who in his Chappel worſhipped a *Croſſe*, and the Queen of Heaven. On went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince; maſter of no more treaſure than a brazen plate hanging on his breaſt, and without any ſuch ſign of *Chriſtianity* as they did expect. So fruſtrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the honour of a new diſcovery; with the loſſe of many of their men, they returned to *Mexico*, An. 1542. Some *Friers* made bold to ſtay behinde, but were all ſlain by the people of *Quivira*, except onely one; who like *Jobs* meſſenger was left to carry news of the murder: The *Spaniards* never looking into theſe cold Countreys, where nothing elſe was to be gotten but blows, and hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North, *Quivira*; on the South, and South-Eaſt parts *New Gallicia*, from which divided by the River called *Rio del Nort*, as before was ſaid; the Weſt-ſide of it waſhed with the *Mer Vermiglio*, interpoſed betwixt it and the Iſland, or *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The aire hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much ſubject in the Winter, to froſts and ſnows. The Countrey for the moſt part level, rarely ſwelled with Hills, but thoſe very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly ſupplied both with fewel and timber: plenty of *Maize*, and ſmall white Peaſe, which they make their bread of; great ſtore of Veniſon, but they kill it onely for the skin; ſome quantities of Sheep, known for ſuch by their *Fleeces* onely, but otherwiſe as big each of them as an Horſe, or Ox, ſome of their Horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tygers ſo great a number, that they have more then enough for themſelves, and could well ſpare them to their Neighbours.

The people generally well limbed, and tall of ſtature, ingenious in reſpect of ſome other *Salvages*; and though naked except their privities onely, or covered onely with a Mantle, yet thoſe *Mantles* wrought in divers colours: which, with ſome quantity of *Cotton* which they have amongſt them (none of it growing in their Countrey) ſhew them to be an induſtrious Nation, and to maintain a courſe of trade with ſome of their Neighbours. A further Argument of which is thoſe painted skins, which they have from *Cicuique*, or ſome other Countrey which lies towards the Ocean; my Authour telling that they travel for them eight dayes journey towards the North: and probably enough may be ſome of thoſe Commodities, which the Inhabitants of the *maritime* Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are ſuppoſed to traffick, as before was ſaid. Like induſtry is noted in the women alſo, one of which will grind and knead more *Maize* in a day, than the women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the reſt of the *Salvages*.

This Countrey was firſt made known to the *Spaniards*, by the Travels of Frier *Marco de Niſa*, employed on new Diſcoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was ſaid. Leaving *Couliacan*, the moſt Northern Province of *Nova Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious *Deſart* four dayes journey long; at the end of which he met ſome people, who told him of a pleaſant Countrey four dayes journey further, unto which he went. And ſtaying at a place called *Vacapa*, he diſpatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to ſearch towards the North; by whom he was advertiſed after four dayes abſence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a moneths journey thence: wherein were ſeven great Cities under the Government of one Princeſſe, the houſes of which were built of ſtone, many ſtories high, the Lintels of their Doors adorned with *Turquoiſes*; with many other ſtrange reports of their markets, multitudes, and riches. But neither the Frier nor the *Negro* had the hap to ſee it: the *Negro* being killed on the very borders, and the Frier ſo terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and ſatisfie the *Vice-Roy* with ſome handſome Fiction, than put himſelf upon the danger of a further journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Reports which the *Negro* ſent him; gave to the *Deſarts* in his way the name of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac*, and *Marata*; aſcribed unto this laſt a great Citie called *Abacu*, once well inhabited, but at that time deſtroyed by Wars; to the other a more civil and well-clothed people, than in other places. Inflamed with which reports, *Vaſques de Coronado* undertook the action, but found the Frier to be a *Frier*;

nothing

nothing of moment true in all his *Relations*: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found onely in the Friers brains; *Tonteac* to be nothing but a great *Lake*, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages, now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of such wealth and bigness, he found them to be seven poor *Burroughs*; all situate within the compasse of four leagues, which made up that so famous Kingdom which the *Frier* dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, lest he might be said to return without doing something, he besieged, and took; but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with stones as he scaled the Rampiers: but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of *Maize* to refresh his Army, and caused the Town (consisting of 200 houses, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that Citie in *Spain*. Such as have since endeavoured the Discovery of these North-west parts, and sayled along the shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of some points, or Promontories: known in the Maps by the name of *Po de S. Clara*, not far from the mouth, or influx of *Rio del Nort*. 2. *Las Plaias*. 3. *St. Michael*. 4. *Rio de Teron*. 5. *Laques del Oro* bordering on *Quivira*; and 6. *Rey Coronado*, on the East of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira* specially so called, lieth a Countrey, which the said *Vasques* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Huex*; on the Banks whereof for the space of 20 leagues stand 15 Burroughs well-built, and furnished with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story outlied the Frier) as in other cold but more civil Countreys, against the extremities of Winter. This Region stretching seven dayes journey to the River of *Cicuique*, I reckon to belong to the North-East parts of *Cibola*. As I do also the fruitfull Valley of *Aroia de Corazones*, which they passed in their way hither from *Conliacan*; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticala*, and the Valley of *Nuestra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to referre them to.

Proceed we now unto the Island, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Cibola* and *New Gallicia*, by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*; and by some the Golf of *Californiа*; environed on all other parts by the main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22th. degree of Northern Latitude, to the 42th. but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof, called *Cabo Blance*, of which little memorable. The most Southern, called the Cape of *S. Lucas*, remarkable for the great prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendish*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, *Anno* 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joyned, in the North parts of it, above the Latitude of 27. to the rest of the Continent; and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626. and after that in the Chart, or Map of *John de Laet*, Anno 1633. which I wonder at: himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Island; *lib.6. cap.11.* and that he had seen a fair Map in parchment, a very fair and ancient draught, *Quæ* Californiam *in ingentis Insulæ modum, a Continente divideret*, in which it was expressed for a spacious Island, *lib.6. cap.17.* The reason of the Errour was, that those who first endeavoured the Discovery of it, sayling up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North; till it seemed to be no bigger than some mighty River; but that of such a violent current, that no Boat was able to passe upwards with winde, or Oar, unlesse haled up with Cords by the strength of men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*; known by that name, and continued in the opinion of being a River, till the year 1620. or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers beating on these Coasts, fell accidently upon a strait but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong current into *Mer Vermiglio*: discovering by that Accident, that the waters falling into that Sea, was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by consequence that this part of *Californiа* was not a Demi-Island, or *Peninsula*, but a perfect Island. And looking on it as an Island, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *Californiа* specially so called.

1. And first *Californiа* specially so called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Countrey, though so near to *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting men for new *Plantations*, or finding small incouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they finde in great Islands of Weeds, floating on the Seas: and more within the Land, with a kinde of Beast haired like a *Goat*, and with teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling *Deer*; which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it said to cast Fire Ashes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacofogo*. The people numerous, and thick set; insomuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guia*, were numbred three and twenty Nations, all of several Languages. In their persons like the rest of the *Salvages*; but of different dresses. Some of them painting their faces all over, some half way onely; other with painted *Vizards* resembling faces: holes in their Nostrils, for their Pendants; the tips of their Eares loaded, if not over-loaded, with the bones of Fishes hanging at them. A girdle about their waste, to which they fasten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behinde them like a Tail: the Women using the like bunches before them also. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they most affectionately Worship, as the cause of the increase of their fruits and plants. Joyned in commission with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to Worship a woodden *Crosse* (the more irrational *Idolatry* of the two) which he caused to be erected at his coming away; with instructions to kneel before it every morning, at the first rising of the *Sun*: so teaching them to Worship their two *Idols* at once, or to translate their devotions from the *Sun* a Creature of *God's*, to a plain woodden *Crosse* (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a *Carpenter*.

It is also told us of this people, that each family is ordered by the Father of it, without other government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one wife to a man, and punished *Adultery* with death; the *Maids* not suffered to converse, or talk with men before their marriage, but to abide at home & work; the *Widows* not to marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their husbands. Matters more savouring an *Utopian* Common-wealth, than a *Californian*.

Places of most observation in it. 1. The *Capes* of S. *Clara*, and S. *Lucas*; the first on the South-East point of the *Peninsula* towards *New Gallicia*; the other on the South-West towards *Asia*. 2. S. *Crosses*, (*Sinus S. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the *Cape* of *S. Clara*; so called becaus discovered upon *Holy-Rood* day. 3. *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; so named, because the shore shewed in little Hillocks, without grasse, or shrubs; the *Spanish* word signifying as much. 4. *Cabo Boxo*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the *Latitude* of 29. 5. *S. Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6. *S. Thome*, an Island of 25 leagues in compasse, at the mouth of the *Gulf*; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which a convenient Road for shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7 *S. Abad*, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Countrey which seemed rich and pleasant. 8. *Cape Trinidado*, a Promontory well known to Sea men. 9. *Cape de Cedros*, so called from the *Cedars* growing near it, in the *Latitude* of 28. and 15 minutes; with an Island not far off of the same name also. 10. *Cape Enganno*, in the *Latitude* of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, so named from the multitude of *Boats* (by themselves called *Canoes*) which the people used; four degrees more Northward than that *Cape*. And 12 *Cabo de Galera*, so named from the resemblance which it had to an *Hat*, in the *Latitude* of 36. But these two placed by *John de Laet* within the Countrey of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Understand here, that these are onely the names of places, not of Towns, or Villages, (for whether there be any such, I am yet unsatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bayes, Rivers and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I finde no names for.

The first discovery of this Countrey we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez* (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534. furnished out two ships from the Haven of *S. Jago* in the Western shores of *Hispania Nova*, to search these Seas: who making some small progresse in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in person; and passing up the Gulf as high as to the River of *S. Peter*, and *Paul*, (so called, because discovered on the 29 of *June*, the Annual feast of those Apostles) for want of victuals and other necessary provisions, returned back again. The businesse having slept awhile, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Francisco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not onely search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having throughly canvassed all the Eastern shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Countrey with the wonted ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place set up a *Crosse* to serve as a remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando the Alaroon*, who discovered many leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Naguacatus*, one of the *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, or Tribes, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard news of *Cibala*; but unprovided at that time for a journey thither. And on the other side, *Rodorico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coasting along the Western shores of this Countrey, discovered two small Islands beyond Cape *Galera*; the one of which he called S. *Lukes*, and the other the Island of *Possession*: and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was *Gold* and *Silver*; and hungry honour yielding but a poor subsistence: the further search of these Countreys was quite laid aside; almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first set sayl upon *New Discoveries*.

4. *NOVA ALBION* formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to Cape *Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, *An* 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England*, his own Countrey, which was once called *Albion*.

The Countrey abundantly repleniished with Herds of Deer, grasing upon the Hills by thousands: as also with a kinde of Conies, in their feet somewhat like a *Want*, and on each side a Sack where they keep such victuals as they cannot eat. The flesh of these Conies serves the people for food; and of their skins, the Kings, or Chiefs of their several Tribes, make their Royal robes. The men quite naked; the women with a piece of Mat instead of an Apron, chaste, and obedient to their husbands. Their houses made of Turf and Osier, so wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold: in the midst whereof they have an Hearth where they make fire, about which they lye along upon Beds of Bulrushes. What Towns they have, and whether they have any, or not, and by what names called, if they have any, must be referred to a further Discovery: there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not seated so far North, but that it may be capable of a further light, if any noble Undertakers would adventure on it.

The *English* were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the *General*, with presents of Feathers, and Kalls of Net-work made of Bull-rushes; which he received and requited with great humanity. The news of their Arrival being carried further, one of their Kings thought fit to bestow a visit on them. A person of a goodly stature, attired in *Cony-skins*, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of bone, but the Crowns of knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After

him

him followed many of the common ſort, every one having his face painted with white, black, and ſome other colours; and every one with ſome preſent, or other in their hands, even the very boyes. Being brought into the *Generals* preſence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not underſtood: and that being ended, the King cauſed the Crown to be put upon the *Generals* head, and the three Chains about his neck; the Common people offering ſacrifices about the Fields, in great ſolemnity. Not to be interdicted thoſe ſuperſtitions, though the *Engliſh* (whom they took for Gods) ſeemed offended at them. Finally, after much kindneſſe expreſſed on both ſides, the *General* promiſing in the name of the Queen of *England*, to take them into his protection; he cauſed a Pillar to be erected in the place: on which he faſtned the Arms of *England*, the Queens name, and his own; and ſo returned unto his ſhips. But the Countrey lying ſo far off that no benefit could redound by it to the *Engliſh* Nation, but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at laſt quite left out of the Maps, or Charts; onely a Point, or Promontory, by the name of *Po de Franciſco Draco*, being left unto us to preſerve his memory. And though we have cauſed the name of *Nova Albion* to be reſtored unto the Maps, as it was before: yet we muſt let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia*, which lieth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Oppoſite to Cape *Blanco*, and the extream North parts of *America*, the ſuppoſed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the Streits of *Anian* which are thought by ſome to part *America* from *Aſia*, do derive their name; is conceived to lie. Suppoſed, and ſuppoſed onely, for not certainly known: the very being of ſuch a Kingdom, and ſuch *Streits*, being much ſuſpected.

OF NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hiſpania*, or *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *Californiа*; the Countreys beyond it on the North not diſcovered hitherto. So called becauſe of ſome reſemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain*, in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for diſtinctions ſake.

It is ſituate between the 18th. and 28th. degree of the Northern *Latitude*, which meaſured from the Port of the *Nativity* (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the moſt Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 leagues: the breadth hereof, for ſo much as is poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, but an hundred onely. But taking in *New Biſcay*, and *Nova Mexicana* into the Accompt, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Aire hereof generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat than cold; many times ſubject unto Thunders and great ſtorms of rain; but for the moſt part of ſo ſound a conſtitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious diſeaſes ſeldom known amongſt them. The ground by conſequence ſomewhat of the drieſt; if not moiſtned with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently, and whether by the temperature of the Aire, or Soyl, apt to produce a kinde of Gnat (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a bean, which by their ſtings do very often plague the people, and raiſe bliſters on their bodies as big as *Walnuts*.

The Countrey more Mountainous than plain, and in moſt parts ſandy; Quarries of ſtone in many places, but little Marble, or any other ſtone of value. Good ſtore of Mines of Braſſe and Silver, few of Gold, or Iron; and amongſt all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The ſoyl ſo rich, that it yields 60 meaſures of Wheat for one; and for one of *Maize*, above two hundred: the Rivers plentifull of Fiſh, and the Woods of Beaſts; great ſtore of Bees without ſtings, which make their Honey in the Forreſts without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, *Malcetons*, and other *Europæan* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the *Olive*: of which the laſt is moſt an end undermined by Emmets; and the firſt thruſts out ſuch an harveſt of Leaves (occaſioned by the natural rankneſſe of the ground) that they ſeldom come to their perfection.

The people wavering and inconſtant, apt upon any diſcontent to forſake their houſes, betake themſelves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their antient *Barbariſme*. Crafty, and docile even in matters which concern *Religon*: but ſlothfull and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to ſinging, dancing, and ſometimes to drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquour, few of them would betake themſelves to the cares of Husbandry. Of ſtature reaſonably tall; their Garments for the moſt part a ſhirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, faſtned with two Buckles about their ſhoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatneſſe of their ſeveral Tribes: thoſe *Tribes* commanded by their *Chiefs*, who ſucceed *hereditarily*; but ſubject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themſelves generally to *merchandiſe*, and the ſearch of Metals; ſome few to Husbandry and graſing, but make not the beſt uſe which they might of the Countrey: For though here be great plenty both of *Sugar-Canes*, and of *Caccineel*, yet they neglect to refine the one, and attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an eaſier, or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of moſt note in all this Countrey, is that betwixt *Guadalaiara* and *Zacatecas*; a league in height, but of ſuch a *precipice* withall, that no Horſe nor Cattel can aſcend it: their other Hills Rocky, but cloathed with woods, full of vaſt Pines, large Okes, and great ſtore of Wolves. The River of moſt name is that called *Bazania*, which riſing out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hiſpania*, falls down a *Cataract* about four leagues from *Guadalaiara*, of ten fathoms deep, and ſo tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any paſſage over it but on Reeds and *Rafts*, on which the paſſenger ſitteth with his Commodities, his Horſe ſwimming by; not ſafe at any time, and at moſt times dangerous. Some *Lakes* here be of 20. ſome of 12 leagues compaſſe; environed with rich Paſtures on every ſide. Thoſe of leſſe note ſhall be remembred in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of 1. *Cinaloa*. 2. *Conliacan*. 3. *Xaliſco*, and 4. *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſtern ſhores. 5. *Zacatecas*. 6. *New Biſcay*. 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all theſe ſomewhat ſhall be ſaid, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA*, is the moſt Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the Weſt, with the River of *Buena Guia*, and ſome part of the Bay of *Californiа*; on the Eaſt, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepecſuan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South, with *Conliacan*.

The Aire for the moſt part clear and healthy, the ſoyl fat and fruitfull, productive of *Maize*, Pulſe, a ſort of long Peaſe which the *Latines* call *Phaſeoli*, but we have no proper *Engliſh* name for; of which abundantly plentifull. Great ſtore of *Cotton-wool*, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers. 1. *Petatlan*. 2. *Tamochala*. 3. *Paſcua*. 4. *Taquim*; of no long courſe, all of them riſing from the Hills of *Teperſuam*, and thoſe but 36 leagues diſtant from the Sea-ſhores. By reaſon of theſe Rivers here are very rich Paſtures, which breed great ſtore of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattel.

The people are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by a hand breadth, warlike and ſtrong, not con-

conquered by the *Spaniard* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poiſoned Arrows, with great maſſie Clubs. Their Garments for the moſt part of *Cotton-wool*; their hair nouriſhed to a great length, which the men tye up in a knot, but the Women ſuffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes at the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without cloaths at all, but to hide their ſhame; moſt miſerably poor, worſhippers of the Sun, and not a few *Cannibals* amongſt them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Philip* and *Jacob*, ſituate on the bank of a River, about 42 leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note. 2. S. *Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* planted here long ſince; and re-inforced by a ſupply brought thither in the year 1554. by *Franciſco de Tharra*; ſcarce able to defend themſelves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon diſturb them with a freſh Alarm. Beſides theſe here are onely ſome ſcattered Villages, and thoſe not many: the *Spaniards* finding onely 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they firſt made themſelves Maſters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People every where ſubmitting without any reſiſtance, or if they gathered to an head, ſoon diſperſed again. For what could naked men do againſt an Army?

2. *COULIACAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coaſting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the Weſt; & part of *New Biſcay*, on the Eaſt. The Countrey well provided of fruits, inferiour unto none for all ſorts of proviſions; and not without ſome Mines of *Silver* found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it. 1. *Rio de Mucheras*, or the River of *Women*, in the North part of the Province; ſo called becauſe the *Spaniards* found there more women than men, occaſioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River; both ſides whereof are very well peopled. 3. *Piaſtla*, more towards *Xaliſco*.

The people not much different from the reſt of *Gallicia*, ſave that their *Women* were more handſom, both for dreſſe and perſonage: all cloathed in Garments of Cotton-wool, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the Sin of *Sodom*. Their houſes neatly thatched with ſtraw; and over the *Lintels* of the Doors ſome Paintings, as ſhameleſſe as the very fowleſt of *Aretines* Poſtures. Ignorant of *Gold*, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted, to their coſt, with *Silver*; which they are compelled to dig, and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piaſtla*, on the River ſo called, about a dayes journey from the Sea; well built, and artificially contrived in reſpect of others; never recovered of that blow which it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conqueſt of this Countrey waſted all before them. 2. *Quinola*, near *Rio des Mugeres*. 3. *Quatrabarrios*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, becauſe it conſiſted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough which from a *Lyon* there found, had this new name alſo. 5. *Couliacan*, on a River ſo named, once the chief of this Province. 4. S. *Michael*, on the River of *Women*, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25. but afterwards deſerted, or removed rather to a fitter place: and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two leagues from the Sea, in a flouriſhing and wealthy ſoyl both for Corn and Paſturage. The whole Countrey conquered by the *Spaniards*, An. 1531. under *Nonnez de Guzman*, moſt barbarouſly burning down the Towns, and deſtroying the people; as if they came not to ſubdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as ſome Writers call it, hath on the North, *Couliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſt, the large Bay of *California*. So called from *Xaliſco* the chief Town of it, when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

The ſoyl hereof very fit for *Maize*, which it yields good ſtore of, but not often herbage good for Cattel; which is reckoned for their greateſt want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two moſt fruitfull, and better peopled; having in it ſtore of Wax and Honey, with ſome Mines of *Silver*. The people formerly *Man-eaters*, and much given to quarrel; from which Reformed ſince their *Converſion* to the Goſpel. Tenacious ſtill of one of their ancient Cuſtomes, which is to carry the ſmalleſt burden upon their ſhoulders, and not under their arms; which to do they think very much miſ-becoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. S. *Sebaſtians*. 2. *Rio de Spiritu Sancto*, and 3. the great and famous River of *Barania*, ſpoken of before. Upon the banks of which are ſituate their moſt principal Towns, *viz.* 1. *Xaliſco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards Sierra de Xaliſco*, thruſting it ſelf into the Bay of *Californiia*, over againſt the Iſlands called the *Three Maries*; the Citie taken and deſtroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1530. 2. *Compoſtella*, now the chief Citie of the Countrey, and a Biſhops See; founded by the ſaid *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1531. when he had fully conquered the Countrey: by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in ſo ill a place, and ſo bad an aire, deſtitute both of food for men, and graſſe for horſes; as plainly ſhewed him to have better judgement in Souldiery then in *Architecture*. 3. *Purification*, a ſmall Burrough on the Sea-ſide, and in the extremity of this Countrey towards *Nova Hiſpania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. S. *Sebaſtian* in *Chiametla*, on the River ſo called, firſt built by *Franciſco de Tharra* above mentioned: who having found hereabouts ſome rich Mines of *Silver*, brought hither in the year 1554. a new *Spaniſh* Colony; and building houſes for his *Miners* in convenient places, occaſioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the Weſt, *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt and South, ſome parts of *Nova Hiſpania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*: well watered with the River *Barania*, which runneth through the midſt thereof, ſome of his by-ſtreams moiſtening the other parts. The Countrey very wealthy

wealthy in Mines of *Silver*, plentifull of *Maize*, and fortunate in the production of Wheat and such other fruits, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the people we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but most peculiar unto these.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Guadalaiara*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Castile*, and giving name unto the Province, situate on the banks of the River *Barania*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet aire and a most rich and pleasing soyl; where founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1531. when he had perfected his Conquest: better advised in the choise of the place, than in that of *Compostella* before mentioned. A Citie of so good esteem, that it passeth for the *Metropolis* of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of *Judicature*, the residence of the Kings Treasurers, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compostella*, An. 1570. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair *Cathedral*, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Augustine* Friers. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nonnez* in that part of this Countrey, which is called *Tepique*: but not else observable. 3. *Sancta Maria de los Lagos*, built by the same founder, 30 leagues on the East of *Guadalaiara*; and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimicas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and East parts of this Countrey: who harbouring themselves in the thickest of the Woods, and some unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Countrey; which they would utterly destroy, if not thus repressed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is abounded on the South, with *Guadalaiara*; on the North, with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Culnacan*, and some part of *Xalisco*; on the East, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Countrey of a different nature. In the west parts called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of *Silver*, (no one Province more) but destitute of Wheat, *Maize*, Water, and all other provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthy *Miser*, who could live upon the sight of Treasure. The Eastern parts properly called *Uxitipa*, not so well furnished with *Silver*, but most abundantly provided with all sorts of fruits; their Woods repleniſhed with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving entertainment to some Bird, or other: in a word, nothing wanting in it, either for necessity, or pleasure. Of the people, I finde nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more industrious than the most of their Neighbours; whether by force, or nature (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their *Silver*-mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecas*, neighboured by most wealthy Mines, 40 leagues on the North of *Guadalaiara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. 2. S. *Martins*, 27 leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many slaves, and all things necessary for a War, was sent upon that errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, An. 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colonie of 400 *Spaniards*, besides women and children. 3. S. *Lukes*, and 4. *De Avinno*, built amongst *Mines* as wealthy as those before, by the same *De Tharra*: as also was 5. *Erena*, a small Town, but of the same estate for *Silver*; distant from *Zacatecas* 25 leagues towards the North-west. 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Countrey, 68 leagues from *Guadalaiara*; the foundation of the same *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the *Natives*, and quieted them after some Rebellions by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitfull soyl: and having got the Government of the Countreys which he had discovered, drew hither so many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of some *Silver*-mines; that it became the chief and best peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the valley of *Guadiana*, about eight leagues distant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colonie of *Spaniards* conducted thither by *Alfonso Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this treasure. 8. *Xeres de Frontera*, first built for the repressing of some of the *Salvages*, who used to infest the borders towards *Guadalaiara*, during the Regencie of the Marques of *Villa Maurique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, imployed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1529. at that time Governour of that Province. Dismembred from it since the conquest of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the *Præfecture* of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it called S. *Lewis*, built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colonie of *Spaniards*: the Town not distant from *Panuco* above twenty leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAIA*, or *New Biscay*, hath on the South, *Los Zacatecas*; on the West, *Cinalca*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countreys towards the East not discovered hitherto. So called by *Francisco de Tharra*, by whom first subdued, from the near neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which since reckoned for a part.

The Countrey subject in the Winter to great frosts and snows; but notwithstanding well provided for all things necessary; and wonderfully enriched with Mines of *Silver*. They have also some of *Lead*, which serve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; used to this purpose not alone in these *Mines* of *New Biscay*, but in those also of *New Spain*. The people resolute and stout, not conquered at the first attempt, nor won so much by force, as by fair perswasions.

Places of most observation in it, 1. S. *Barbara*, and 2. S. *Johns*, about three leagues distant; built onely for the benefit of the *Mines* adjoyning. 3. *Ende*, the furthest Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North; of whom a Colonie was there planted (by reason of the adjoyning *Mines*) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did also fortifie it, by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Distant from S. *Barbara*, and S. *John* about twenty leagues, and an hundred and twenty leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by seventy leagues at least, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniard*, are said to be those four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Cienagas*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This

This Countrey firſt ſubdued by *Franciſco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Las Zacatecas*, and aſſured that Province; advanced with a Troop of 130 horſe, for the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the firſt more with hunger and thirſt, than with any oppoſition of the Inhabitants; inſomuch that they were fain to eat their Horſes: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the *Natives*, who killed the greateſt part of ſuch Horſes as were left uneaten. But not diſcouraged herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his paſſage thorow the Woods by the ſwords of his Souldiers; he prevailed at laſt; and having ſetled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinoloa*, which he alſo Conquered; and planted there a Colonyie in the Town of *S. Johns*, as was ſaid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA*, is bounded on the South, with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Quivira*; the Countries on the North, and Eaſt, not diſcovered hitherto; though ſome extend it Eaſtwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 L'eagues from the Town and *Mines* of S. *Barbara*, and how much beyond that none can tell; the *Relations* of this Countrey being ſo uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare ſay nothing poſitively of the ſoil or People, but much leſs of the Towns and Cities which are ſaid to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom diſcovered and ſubdued.

For firſt, they tell us of the People, that they are of great ſtature (and that like enough, but not ſo probable) that they have the Art of dreſſing *Chamois* and other *Leather*, as well as the beſt *Leather-Dreſſer* in all *Flandors*: or that they have Shoes and Boots ſo well ſewed and ſoaled, that no *Shoo Maker* in all S. *Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the houſes well built of Lime and Stone, ſome of them four Stories, and in moſt of them *Stoves* for the Winter Seaſon. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent Manner. Particularly they tell us of a Town called, 1 *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is ſaid to contain eight Market-Places, and all the houſes to be plaiſtered and painted in moſt curious Manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that it is ſituate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by *Ladders*; and in one place a paire of ſtairs but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well fortified by Nature (they ſay true in that, if any things were true which they tell us of it) and all their water kept in Ciſterns (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Conibas*, on a Lake ſo called, the City ſeven Leagues long, two broad; (a ſecond *Ninive*) but the Houſes ſcatteringly built amongſt Hills and Gardens, which takes up a great deal of the room: Inhabited by a People of ſuch ſtrength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and ſo went away. Much of this ſtuff I could afford you, but by this taſt we may conjecture of the reſt of the *Feaſt*.

The Countrey firſt diſcovered by *Auguſtino Royaz*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, *Anno* 1580. who out of Zeal to plant the Goſpel in the North, accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the *Adventure*. But one of the *Monks* being killed by the *Salvages*, the Souldiers plaid the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram* a Frier of the ſame Order (from whoſe mouth we muſt have the former Fictions) deſirous to preſerve the lives of his Fellows which ſtaid behinde, encouraged one *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Native of *Cordula*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in ſuch an *holy Cauſe*: who raiſing a Band of 150 horſe, accompanied with many *Slaves*, and Beaſts of Carriage, undertook the buſineſs. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Paſnugates*, *Toboſi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrahumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many other as hard names, which he paſſed thorow in his way. But coming at the laſt to a great River which he called *Del Nort* there he made a ſtand; cauſed the Countrey on both ſides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*; and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, ſituate in the 37th. degree of *Northern* Latitude, and diſtant from old *Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name ſince changed to that of S. *Fogie*, but ſtill the *Metropolis* of that Province, the *Reſidence* of the Governour, and a pretty Garriſon conſiſting of two hundred and fifty *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, *viz.* 2 *Socorro*, ſo called by the *Spaniards* becauſe of that ſuccour and relief they found there for their half ſtarved Bodies. 3 *Senecu*, 4 *Pilabo*, and 5 *Seviletta*, old Towns but now *Chriſtened* by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Goſpel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6 S. *Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599 by *John de Onnate*, who with an Army of five thouſand followed the ſame way which *Eſpeio* went; and having got a great deal of Treaſure laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the moſt I dare relie on for this Countrey: And this hath no ſuch Wonders in it, but what an eaſie Faith may give credit to: though I had rather believe the *Friers* whole Relations, then go thither to diſprove any part thereof.

OF NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the East, with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Golf of *Mexico*; on the West, with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with the reſt of *New Gallicia*, ſome part of *Florida*, and the *Golf*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-Sea onely. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which the Kings of *Spain* call themſelves *Reges Hiſpaniorum*, in the Plural number.

It extendeth from the 15th. Degree of *Latitude* to the 26th. excluſively, *i.* meaſuring it on the Eaſt-ſide by the Bay of *Mexico* to the North of *Panuco*; but ſix degrees leſſe, meaſuring it on the Weſt-ſide to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our accompt by miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spaniſh* leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other ſide. The length hereof from the Eaſt point of *Jucutan*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 400 leagues; which is juſt double to the breadth.

The aire exceeding temperate, though ſituate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*: the heats thereof much qualified by thoſe cooling blaſts, which fan it from the Sea on three ſides of it; and by thoſe frequent ſhowres which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the hotteſt ſeaſons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhauſtible *Mines* of Gold and Silver, ſome of Braſſe and Iron; plenty of *Coco-nuts*, of which we have ſpoke before; great ſtore of *Caſſia*; ſuch a wonderfull increaſe of *Coccineel*, that 5670 *Arrobas* of it (each *Arroba* containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure) have been ſhipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Coccineel* groweth on a ſmall Tree, or ſhrub having very thick leaves; which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the ſeed whereof ariſeth a ſmall worm, at firſt no bigger then a Flea, and the greateſt not much bigger then our common Lady-cows, which they much reſemble; which feeding on the leaves, and overſpreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the *Natives* twice a year, ſtifled with aſhes, or with water (but this laſt the beſt) dried to a powder in the ſhade, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. Here is alſo great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulſe of all ſorts, and of all ſuch Plants and Roots as we ſet in Gardens for the kitchin; Pomgranates, Orenges, Limons, Citrons, *Malcotoons*, Figs and Cherries, even to ſuperfluity; Apples and Pears in leſſe abundance, few Grapes, and thoſe few they have not fit for wine; Plenty of *Maize*, and other Plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beaſts, wilde and tame of all ſorts, and of each no ſcarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but ſome in one, ſome in another, according to the conſtitution of the ſoyl and aire: which is ſo different in this Countrey, that in ſuch parts hereof as are hot and dry, their ſeed-time is in *April*, or *May*, their Harveſt in *October*; but in ſuch places of it as are low and moiſt, they ſow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harveſts in a year, and yet but one.

The people more ingenious then the reſt of the *Salvages*, exquiſite at ſome *Mechanick* Arts, eſpecially in the making of their *Feather-pictures*; and ſo induſtrious withall, ſo patient both of thirſt and hunger, that they will ſet at it an whole day without meat, or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way, to ſee in which poſture it will beſt fit the place intended to it. No better *Goldſmiths* in the world, nor men more expert anywhere in refining Metals, curious in painting upon Cotton, whatſoever was preſented to the eye. But yet ſo *barbarous* withall, that they thought the Gods were pleaſed with the bloud of men, which ſometimes they *ſacrificed* unto them. So ignorant, that when they firſt ſaw the *Spaniards* on *Horſe back*, they thought the horſe and man to have been one creature; and would ask what the Horſes ſaid, when they heard them *neigh*. So careleſſe of the worth of *Gold*, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Olaſſe-beads, little Bells, and ſuch petit trifles. But whatſoever they once were, is not now material: the *Spaniards* having made ſuch havock of this wretched people, that in 17 years they deſtroyed above ſix *millions* of them; roaſting ſome, plucking out the eyes of others, conſuming them in their Mines, and mercileſly caſting them amongſt wilde beaſts where they were devoured. And as for thoſe who do remain, beſides their own natural *ingenioſities*, they have ſince learned the *Civilities* and Arts of *Europe*. What elſe concerns this ſoyl and people, we ſhall ſhew more particularly, if we finde it neceſſary, in their proper places.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Countrey (though there be many Plants in it of a ſingular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Meto*, ſaid to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dreſſe as we do our *Vines*. It hath on it 40 kinde of Leaves fit for ſeveral uſes. For when they be tender, they make of them Conſerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shooes, Girdles, and Cordage; upon them there grow certain *Prickles*, ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that the people uſe them in ſtead of *Sawes*. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juyce like *Syrrup*; which if you ſeeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar; they may make alſo Wine and Vinegar of it. The *Bark* of it roaſted maketh a good Plaiſter for hurts and ſores; and from the higheſt of the Boughs comes a kinde of *Gum*, a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poiſons.

Nor is it leſſe a *Rarity*, though leſſe uſefull to the good of Mankinde (except it be to keep them in continual minde of the *Fires* of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Countrey, called *Propocampeche*,

(ſituate

(ſituate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth flames of fire like *Ætna*: and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of *red Pitch*, and the other of *black*; a fit reſemblance of thoſe Fountains of *Fire* and *Brimſtone*. Though they have many other Mountains, yet theſe moſt memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watry commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length, or greatneſſe, but *Panuco* onely, of which more preſently. The want thereof ſupplied by ſome famous Lakes, and the neighbourhood of the *Gulf* of *Mexico*. Amongſt the *Lakes*, the principal are thoſe of *Mexico* (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatneſſe hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greateſt beauty is the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of the world: in form completely *Circular*, in compaſſe no leſſe than 900 miles; environed with the main land, the *Peninſulas* of *Florida* and *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*. Two onely paſſages in and out, and both well fortified; the one betwixt the Point of *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent current entreth; the other betwixt the ſaid Iſland and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an *exit*: the Sea ſo heady in the middeſt, and yet ſafe enough, that ſhips are not to ſayl in it directly forwards, but muſt bend either towards the North, or South, as their journey lieth. Upon this Golf the King of *Spain* hath alwayes ſome ſhips in readineſſe; by which he more aſſureth his Eſtates in this part of *America*, then by all his Garriſons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*. 2. *Mexicana*. 3. *Mechoacan*. 4. *Tlaſcala*. 5. *Guaxata*. 6 *Chiapa*. 7. *Jucutan*. Some others of leſſe note, but reduced to theſe.

1. *PANUCO*, the moſt Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by ſome called *Guaſteean*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Golf* of *Mexico*; on the Weſt, with *Uxitipa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Gallicia*; on the North, with *Florida*, and ſome Countreys not yet diſcovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the South-weſt with *Mechuacan*; and on the South, with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which riſing out of the Hills of *Tepecſuan*, bordering upon *Cinoloa* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biſcay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, paſſeth through the middle of this Countrey, and ſo at laſt into the *Golf*.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitfull ſoyl, and not without ſome Mines of Gold; once very populous, till in the year 1522. diſpeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War againſt them. The other called *Chila*, leſſe fruitfull, but poſſibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a ſtout couragious nature, and truſting overmuch to their *Fens* and *Faſtneſſes*, they put the *Spaniards* to ſuch trouble when they warred upon them; that the Conquerours to ſecure themſelves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out and deſtroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palmes*, inclined to barrenneſſe, and unpleaſant; but the name I finde not.

Chief Towns hereof at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, 1. *Las Caxas*. 2. *Yxicuyan*. 3. *Nachapatan*. 4. *Taquinite*. 5. *Tuzeteco*, deſolate and laid waſte by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of moſt note now, 6. *Tanchipa*, and 7. *Tameclipa*, two ſmall Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palmes* (for ſo I call it) inhabited by the *Natives* onely. 8. S. *Kallap*, another ſmall Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few *Chriſtians*, with a Convent of *Auguſtinian* Friers; ſacked by the *Savages* in the year 1571. 9. *Tampice*, or S. *Lewis de Tampice*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, ſituate on the North banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but ſo barred with ſands, that no ſhip of great burden can make uſe of it: the River, otherwiſe ſo deep, that Veſſels of 500 Tun might ſayl 60 leagues at leaſt in it againſt the ſtream. 10. S. *Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern ſide of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65 leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight leagues; now the *Metropolis*, and Town of greateſt trade in all this Countrey. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had ſtood *Panuco*, once the chief Citie of the Province, but by him deſtroyed. Oppoſite hereunto on the other ſide of the River, lie great ſtore of *Salt-pits*, out of which the people of this Town raiſe their greateſt profit. 11. S. *Jago de los Valles*, or S. *Iames* in the *Vallies* 25 leagues Weſt-ward (but inclining to the South withall) from S. *Scevan del Puerto*; ſituate in an open Countrey, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: to the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards*, as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair poſſeſſions, to defend thoſe parts (then being the borders of his Eſtates) againſt the *Salvages*.

This Countrey firſt attempted by *Franciſco Garaio*, but the conqueſt of it finiſhed by *Cortez*, as before is ſaid: each ſtriving, as it ſeemeth, who ſhould moſt deface it, and be enrolled for the greateſt *Manſlayer* of the two. But having carried on the courſe of their Victories almoſt as far as to the River of *Palms*, they deſiſted there; either becauſe already glutted with humane bloud, or that the conqueſt of thoſe parts would not quit the charge. Inſomuch as in all that Countrey from the River of *Palms* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of ground ſecure enough, becauſe it lieth all along that *Golf*, that no other Nation can poſſeſſe it.

2. *MECHUACAN* hath on the North-Eaſt, *Panuco*; on the Eaſt, *Mexicana*; on the South part of *Tlaſcala*; on the Weſt, the main Ocean; and on the North the Province of *Xaliſco* in *New Gallicia*. So called from the abundance of Fiſh, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own language ſignifying *Locum Piſcoſum*, or a Countrey of *Fiſh*.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-Coaſts is 80 leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana*, but ſixty onely. The length I finde not yet agreed on. Bleſt with an aire ſo ſound and ſweet, that ſick Folk come hi-

ther out of other Countreys, to recover their health. Well ſtored with Rivers, ſome Lakes, innumerable ſprings of running water, and here and there ſome *hot Bathes* iſſuing from the Rocks. The ſoyl ſo plentifully productive of all ſorts of Grain (even to admiration) that in ſome parts hereof four meaſures of Seed have brought forth 600 meaſures of the ſame Grain, in the following Harveſt. Well wooded, and by reaſon of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Paſtures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America*, for *Medicinal* Herbs, and Plants, of very Soveraign Nature for the good of Mankinde. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Amber*, Mulberry Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and ſuch other things, as chiefly ſerve for Pomp and pleaſure.

The people tall of ſtature, but ſtrong and active: of a good wit, and skilled in many excellent *Manufactures*. They ſpeak four languages of their own; but that moſt generally uſed, is by the *Spaniards* called the *Taraſcuan* tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious language, yet moſt of them ſpeak the *Spaniſh* alſo. More pliant to the manners and apparel of that Nation, than the reſt of *New Spain* (the *Mexicans* excepted onely) and ſo inclinable to the *Goſpel*, that they are almoſt all gained from their old *Idolatries*. Inſomuch that the whole Countrey being divided into 50 Pariſhes, every Pariſh hath its ſeveral *Prieſts* and inferiour *Miniſters*, who in the language of the place do inſtruct the people, in which they Preach to them, and hear their *Confeſſions*: beſides many Convents of *Dominicans*, and *Auguſtine* Friers.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns, or *Burroughs*, beſides ſcattering Villages; 90 of which have *Free Schools* in them, and almoſt every one a *Spittle* for relief of the ſick. The principal thereof. 1. *Zinzoutza*, the ſeat of the old Kings of *Mechuachan*; in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* in this Countrey, made a Biſhops See, till removed to *Paſcuar*. The firſt Biſhop, *Vaſquez de Quiroga*. 2. *Paſcuar*, of no great note at preſent, but that the Biſhops See was removed thither, becauſe nearer to *Mexico*; from which diſtant 47 leagues. 3. *Valladolit*, now the chief Citie of this Province, and the Biſhops See, removed hither from *Paſcuar*, and here finally ſetled in a fair *Cathedral*, An. 1544. ſituate nea a large *Lake* (ſaid to be bigger then that of *Mexico:*) which doth not onely afford the Citie great ſtor of Fiſh, but yieldeth them the opportunity of ſeveral pleaſures which they take in Boats upon the water. The Lake and Citie by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. 4. *S. Michael*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which diſtant about 40 leagues) to the ſilver *Mines* of *Zacatecas*. Firſt built by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the people of this Province, from the *Chichameehas*; a barbarous, and hitherto an unconquered people who terribly moleſt the Nations upon whom they border. 5. *S. Philips*, built at the ſame time by the ſaid *Velaſco*. 6. *Conception de Saylaa*, ſeventeen leagues from *Valladolit*, 35 from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, *An.* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers, in their journeys Northwards. 7. *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, & not far from *S. Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea, we have 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Gallicia*, two miles from the Ocean; A Town of note above 30 houſes, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and ſafe Road for ſhipping (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it ſeldom without the company of Saylers. 9. *Natividad*, (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly ſet ſayl to the *Philippine* Iſlands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendiſh* in his *Circumnavigation* of the World. 10. *S. Jogo* (or *S. Jago de Buena Speranza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the ſhores whereof are ſaid to be full of *Pearls*. 11. *Colima*, ten leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other, built in the year 1522. by *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatula*, by the *Spaniards* called *Conception*, ſituate on the Banks of a large (but nameleſſe) River; which riſing about the Citie of *Tlaſcala*, paſſeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, was a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject nor ſubordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were moſt of the Princes of theſe parts: the Frontires of the Kingdom fenced with ſtakes of wood, like a *Palizado*, to hinder any ſudden incurſion of the *Mexican* Forces. The laſt King called *Tangayvan Bimbicha*, ſubmitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, An. 1522. and willingly offered himſelf to *Baptiſm*. But the *Spaniards* were not pleaſed with either, becauſe deprived thereby of the ſpoil of the Countrey. But at laſt *Nonnez de Guzman*, then *Preſident* of the Courts of Juſtice in *Mexico*, picked a quarrel with him, accuſed him falſly (as is ſaid by the very *Spaniards*) of ſome practiſes againſt his King, burnt him alive with moſt barbarous and unheard of cruelty, and ſo confiſcated his eſtate.

3. *Mexicana*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Golf* of *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with *Mechuachan*: on the North with *Panuco*, and ſome part of *Nova Gallicia*; on the South, with *Tlaſcala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the chief Citie not of this Province onely, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, meaſuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 leagues; thence growing narrower in the midland parts hardly above ſixty; and on the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*, not above ſeventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other, that is to ſay, from the point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantla*, on the Golf of *Mexico* to the Haven of *Acapulco*, on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of miles I do no where finde. But meaſuring it from 17 degrees and an half of *Latitude*, unto the 22. and allowing ſomething for the ſlope; we may conclude it to be much of the length, as it is breadth, that is to ſay about 130 leagues.

The Countrey is inferiour to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of *Gold* and *Silver*, but far exceeding it both in the *Mechanical*, and *ingenious* Arts, which are here profeſſed, and in the abundance of fruits and Cattel: of which laſt here is ſuch ſtore, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himſelf. Fiſh is here alſo in great plenty; that onely, which is drawn out of the *Lake* whereon *Mexico* ſtandeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yearly, to the Kings *Exchequer*. The people for the moſt part witty and induſtrious, full of valour and courage; good Handycraftſmen, if they ſtoop ſo low as to *Trades* and *Manufactures*; rich Merchants, if they give themſelves to more gainfull traffick; And hardy Souldiers, if trained

trained up and employed in ſervice. Their ancient Arms were Slings, and Arrows; ſince the coming of the *Spaniards* practiſed on the *Harenbuize*. In a word, what was ſaid before of *New Spain* in general, as to the ſoyl and people of it, is moſt appliable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof 1. *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlaſcala*. 2. *Citala*, and 3. *Mitla*, both running Eaſtward towards the *Gulf*. 4. *Papagaio*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair bridge over it 5. *Las Balſas* of a violent courſe, and in bigneſſe equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; paſſable onely by a bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very ſtrongly joyned together. 6. The River of S. *Francis*, both large and ſwift, but in ſome parts fordable. Mountains of note I finde not any which require a more particular conſideration; and ſo paſſe them over the more eaſily.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Mexico*, the ſeat of an Archbiſhop, and of the *Spaniſh Vice-Roy*, who hath the power to *make Laws* and Ordinances, to give directions, and determine controverſies; unleſſe it be in ſuch great cauſes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of *Spain*. This Citie was firſt ſituate in the *Lakes* and Iſlands, like *Venice*; every where interlaced with the pleaſant currents of freſh, and ſea-waters; and carrying a face of more civil government than any of *America*; though nothing, if compared with *Europe*. But the Town being deſtroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land, on the Edge of the *Lake*, and bordering on a large and ſpacious *Plain*. The *Plain* on which it bordereth, is ſaid to be 70 leagues in compaſſe, environed with high Hills; on the tops whereof the ſnow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great *Lakes*, the leaſt of them fourty miles in circuit, the one ſalt, and the other freſh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the ſalt Lake ſtandeth the Citie of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns, and ſtately houſes: on which *Lake* alſo, 50000 Wherries are continually plying. The Town in compaſſe ſix miles, & containeth 6000 houſes of *Spaniards*, & 60000 *Indians*. It is a by-word, that at *Mexico* there are 4. fair things, *viz.* The *Women*, the *Apparel*, the *Horſes*, and the *Streets*. Here is alſo a Printing-houſe, an *Univerſity*, and a Mint; the *Cathedral* Church, ten Convents of *Nuns*, ſeveral houſes of *Ieſuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Orders; ſome *Colledges*, many *Spitles* and *Hoſpitals*, and other publick buildings of great ſtate and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Temiſtatan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occaſion, of which more hereafter: moſt miſerably endammaged by the breaking in of the waters, *An.* 1629. which ſwelled ſo high that they not onely overwhelmed the meaner houſes, but the Vice-Roys Palace; drowned many thouſands of the people, and deſtroyed the houſhold ſtuff of the reſt. Occaſioned by the avarice of the Kings Miniſters, who had inverted the money to their private uſe, which ſhould have fortified the banks. 2. *Tezcuco*, ſituate on the ſame *Lake*, but ſix leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*: and for the beauty of the ſtreets, and elegancy of the houſes not inferiour to any. Served with freſh water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and *Conduits*, though ſeated on the brink of a *Salt Lake*. 3. *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the *Lake* like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuela*; a Citie of 2000 houſholds: the way unto it over a *Cawſey* made of flints; half a league long, and about twenty ſpans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the *Lake*, and half without, with many Ponds of freſh water, and a beautifull Fountain. A Citie of 10000 houſholds, ſix leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5. *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000. and 6. *Cuyocan*. one of 6000 Families: both upon the Lake: beautified in the times of their *Paganiſm* with many Temples, ſo gorgeouſly ſet out to the eye, that afar off they ſeemed of ſilver; moſt of them now converted into *Monaſteries*, and *Religious* houſes. 7. *Chulula*, the faireſt of all the *Lake*, ſcarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for ſtate and bigneſſe; ſaid to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with ſo many Temples, that their *Turrets* equalled the number of the dayes of the year. The people ſo addicted unto their *Idolatries*, and ſo barbarous in their bloudy and beaſtly *Sacrifices*; that no fewer than 6000 *Infants* of both Sexes were yearly murdered on their *Altars*. 8. *Meſtitlan*, ſeated on an high Hill, begirt about with moſt pleaſant *Groves*, and ſhady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: ſituate 14 leagues, or two dayes journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*; the high way on both ſides ſet with fruitfull Trees, to the great comfort & refreſhment of the way-faring man. 9. *Clantinolleper*, twenty leagues from *Meſtitlan*, a *Manour* to which 40000 of the *Natives* do owe ſuit, and ſervice. 10. *Antepeque*, on the South of the Citie of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marquis of *Valla*, and ſeated in the moſt delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11. *Acachicha*, on the North-Eaſt of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the *Golf*, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12. *Acapulco*. an Haven Town of the South-ſea, ſituate on a ſafe and capacious *Bay*; at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient *Stations* & *Docks* for ſhipping: ſo that it is accompted the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas. At the bottom of it towards the Weſt, ſtands the Town and Caſtle, the Caſtle opportunely ſeated on a little fore-land both to command the Town, and ſecure the Port; well walled and fortified with four very ſtrong *Bulwarks*, on which are planted good ſtore of Ordnance; the Garriſon conſiſting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: ſtrengthened the rather in regard of the uſual entercourſe, which is betwixt this Port and the *Philippine* Iſlands.

The Original Inhabitants of this Countrey (as far at leaſt as their *Records* are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the moſt rude and barbarous *Savages* of all theſe parts; together with the *Ottomies*, ſomewhat more civil than the reſt, but yet rude enough. By theſe *poſſeſſed* till about the year 902. as it is conjectured from their *Annals*, when vanquiſhed and diſſeized by ſome new comers, whom they called by one name *Navatlacos*: iſſuing as it is conceived from thoſe parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, An. 720. or thereabouts; but lingring in their march, and waſting all the Countreys as they lay before them. Of theſe there were ſeven *Tribes* in all, *i. e.* the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalcæ*, the *Tepanecæ*, the *Culvæ*, the *Tlaſluici*, the *Tlaſcaltecæ*; all of them ſetled in theſe parts, and the five firſt about the *Lake*, before the coming in of the 7. *Tribe*, which was that of the *Mexicans*, ſo called from *Mexi* their

chief Captain; who much delighted with the situation and conveniences of *Temistitan* then a ruined town, caused it to be rebuilt and beautified, by the name of *Mexico*. This town from that time forwards was reputed the head-City of their *Common-wealth*; the six *Tribes* governing in common, or the *Chiefs* rather of those Tribes in the names of the whole, after an *Aristocratical* manner. But weary at the last of this equal power, which the prevalencie of some Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans*, one of the weakest of the *Tribes*, oppressed by the rest, resolved to separate themselves, and to commit the ordering of their affairs to a King of their own. At first elected by themselves, but afterwards when they had conquered most of the other *Tribes*, the choice intrusted unto six, one for every *Tribe*, (the *Tlascaltecæ* which was the seventh of their *Tribes*, and the Founders of *Tlascala*, governing themselves long before, as a State apart:) who in their choice had an especial eye on those which were strong and active, and fit for military employments; the people holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The *Politie* and *Institutes* of this *Mexican* Kingdom, I forbear to write of, further then as they lie before me in the way of their Story: digested by the government and succession of their several Kings, whose names and actions do occurre in the following Catalogue, of

The Kings of MEXICO.

A. Ch.

1322. 1 *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of *Couliacan*, but of the *Mexican* blood by the Fathers side, elected for the first King; who joyned *Couliacan* and *Tongancam* unto his Estate, and setled that kingdom at his death in the way of *Election*.

1373. 2 *Vitzovitzli*, son of *Acamapitzli*, subdued the Tribe of the *Suchimilchi*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.

1394. 3 *Huizilihuiel* son of *Vitzilovitli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalcæ* and *Culvæ*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.

1415. 4 *Chimal Pupuca*, son of *Huizilihuiel*, won the Town of *Tequixsuiac*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalcæ* under his command.

1425. 5 *Iscoalt* brother of *Huizilihuel*, by the valour of his Cousin *Tlacaellec*, freed himself from the yoke of the *Tepanecæ*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before been Tributaries; and added their dominions unto his estate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whose death the *Electors* by a joynt consent chose *Tlacaellec* for their King, as a man of whose vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refused it, saying, that it was more convenient for the *Commomwealth*, that another should be King, and that he should execute that which was for the necessity of the *State*, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refusal they made choice of *Motecuma* the first.

A. Ch.

1438. 6 *Motecumo*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpupuca*, brought in the custom of using no other *Sacrifices* at their Coronations, but of such *Prisoners* as the new King should first take in the wars. By the valour and good fortune of *Tlacaellec*, he subdued so many of the Nations (whose names I hold unnecessary to be here repeated) that he extended his estate from one Sea to the other.

1467. 7 *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Ischoalt* by his son *Tecozomoeliqueto*, enlarged his Empire by the conquest of *Tetentepeque*, 200 miles from *Mexico*, to fit himself with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlatelulco* who rebelled against him, to so hard a streit; that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.

1479. 8 *Ticoicatzi*, the son of *Azayacaci*, added twelve Cities, with their Territories, to the *Mexican* Empire.

1484. 9 *Abuczozin*, brother of *Ticoicatzi*, extended his borders to *Guatimala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*, and brought thither a channel of fresh water.

1502. 10 *Motecuma* II. Son of *Axaacaci*, before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no *Plebeian* should bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was subdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* stand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medeline*, a Town of *Estremaduram*, 1485. and in the nineteenth yeer of his Age, employed himself in the Trade and business of *America*, for the improvement of his Fortunes, *Anno* 1511. he went as *Clark* unto the Treasurer for the Isle of *Cuba*, where he husbanded his Affairs so well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep, and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in short time he was able to put in 2000 *Castellins* for his stock, as *Partner* with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be Partner with *James Velasques*, in the Discovery of *Tabasco*, and the parts neer *Jucutan*, *An.* 1518. And now resolved to venture all his stock both of friends & money, he furnished himself of eleven Ships, and with 550 men set sail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Iland of *Acusamill* (now called *Santa Crux*:)

and

and ſailing up the River of *Tabaſco*, ſacked the Town of *Potonchon*, the Inhabitants refuſing to ſell him victual. After this by the help of his Horſe and Ordinance, he diſcomfited 40000 of the naked *Savages*, gathered together to revenge themſelves for the ſack of that Town; and received the King thereof in vaſſallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Weſtward he ſhould meet with ſome *Mines* of Gold, he turned his courſe for the Haven of *S. John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Countrey for the King of *Mexico*: who underſtanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of ſo great an Emperour (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by eſpecial Meſſengers) he ſent him many rich Preſents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the ſight hereof, he reſolved to go unto the place where ſuch *Treaſures* were; took poſſeſſion of the Countrey in the name of *Charles* the fift King of *Spain* and Emperour; and building there the Town *de la vera Crux*, left in it 150 of his men. Attended by no more then 400 Foot, 15 Horſe, and ſix pieces of Ordnance, he purſued his Enterprize; by practice gained unto him thoſe of *Zempoallan*, and *Tlaſcalla*, whom he underſtood to be ill-affected to *Motecuma*: aſſiſted with whoſe Forces he paſſed on for *Mexico*, ſacked the Town of *Chololla* (a Town of 40000 houſholds) in his march, kindly received into *Mexico* by the frighted King, whom he cauſed to acknowledge himſelf a *Vaſſall* to *Spain*, and to preſent him in the name of a Tribute, with ſo much Treaſure, as amounted to 160000 *Caſtellins* of Gold. A quarrell growing not long after, *Motecuma* the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult, and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlaſcalans*, and a recruit of more *Spaniards* (ſent thither on a Deſign againſt him) he made up an Army of 100000 *Savages*, 900 *Spaniſh* Foot, 80 Horſe, 17 pieces of Ordnance: and having with great diligence made ready a Navie of 13 *Galliots*, and 6000 *Canons* or Boats; laid ſiege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three moneths, the City is taken, ſacked and burnt, *Auguſt* 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully then it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards*, by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private *Adventurer*; endowed for that good Service by *Charles* the fift with the Town and Territory of *Tecoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair eſtates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the title of Marqueſs of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are ſaid to have worn a *Crown* reſembling that which is now uſed by the Dukes of *Venice*. His *Coronation* held with great pomp, but moſt bloody Sacrifices. His *Revenues* thought to be almoſt infinite, raiſed out of all Commodities and paid in kinde, whether *Natural* or *Artificial* only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens *Labour*, and ſharing with them in their wealth: ſome paying in, Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls a piece; ſome, *Diadems*, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turkeſſe*-ſtones, Golden Targets, rich *Feather-Pictures*, &c. Not to ſay any thing of matters of inferior value: all which in ſuch a wealthy and large eſtate, muſt needs afford him a *Revenue* equall to the greateſt Monarch. And for the incouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of *Knighthood*, (or at leaſt ſuch diſtinctions of perſonall merit, as had reſemblance to ſuch Orders:) the firſt diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribband*, the ſecond called the *Lyon* or *Tiger-Knight*, and the third the *Gray Knight*, all privileged amongſt other things to be clothed in *Cotton*, wear Breeches, to adorn themſelves with gold and ſilver, and to have Veſſell gilt or painted, high points, and not permitted unto any elſe. But it is time that I proceed to the reſt of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana*, and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred Leagues; the breadth along the ſhores of the *Gulf* reckoned 80 Leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of *Maize* which they make their bread of; the word in that Language ſignifying *Locum panis*, or the place of Bread, the ſame with *Bethlehem* in the *Hebrew*.

The Countrey very plentifull both of Corn and Cattell, full of rich Paſtures, and wonderfully ſtored with *Maize*: Level and plain except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large chain of craggie Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for thoſe fair and pleaſant Rivers, wherewith it is watered, the principal of which 1. *Rio de Grijalva*, ſo called from *John de Grijalva*, who firſt diſcovered it; employed herein by *James Velaſques*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2 *Rio de Zempoall* ſo called from the Town of *Zempoallan* about which it riſeth. 3 *Zahuate*, which makes its way thorow the chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the *Golf*. 4 *Rio de Zacatula*, a River of the longeſt courſe in all this Province; riſing neer *Tlaſcala*, and falling many Leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The People much of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mexico*, though upon jealouſies of State their moſt bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good uſe, to advance their Conqueſts on that Kingdom.

Places of moſt importance in it, *Tlaſcala* it ſelf, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a *Commonwealth*, according to the *Democratical* Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers: and in the middle of a large, but pleaſant Plain, 60 miles in compaſs. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants; now ſcarce 50000. It had four *Streets* (or rather *Quarters*) each of them governed by a Captain in time of war: and in the middeſt a Market-place ſo fair and ſpacious, that 30000 perſons might aſſemble in it, to buy and ſell, or for any other buſineſs. 2 *Puebba de los Angelos*, (the City of *Angels*) but moſt commonly *Angelos*; built by *Sebaſtian Ramirez*, An. 1531. in the way from *Vera Crux* to the City of *Mexico*, from which laſt 22 leagues diſtant. A Biſhops See, and thought to contain in it 1500 families. 3 *Zempoallan*, on the River ſo named, the Inhabitants whereof did great ſervice to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his conqueſt of *Mexico*. 4 *Napulnca*; of great reſort for a Fair of Cattel: and ſuch a kind of Court for ordering the trade thereof, as we call the *Pie-powders*. 5 *Guaxocingo*, a pleaſant and well-peopled town, ſituate at the foot of the burning Mountain before mentioned; by the aſhes and embers whereof the fields are many times annoied.

6 *Segura*,

6 *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the conqueſt of *Mexico*, with fair ſtreets and handſome houſes; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. 7 *Vera Crux*, the firſt town built in this Countrey by the ſaid *Cortez*, now a *Biſhops See*: ſituate neer unto the *Gulf*, and a great thorow-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which diſtant about 60 leagues. 8 *S. John de Ullua*, the moſt noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer againſt the fury both of winds and ſea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quickſands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both ſides of the entrance. 9 *Medellin*, built by *Cortez* An. 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: ſo called in memory of a town of the ſame name in *Eſtremadara*, in which he was born: ſituate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlalſcallans* were originally one of the *ſeven Tribes*, which drave the *Chichimecas* out of their poſſeſſions: and either finding no room left for them on the Banks of the *Lake*, or elſe willing to ſubſiſt alone; withdrew themſelves from the reſt, founded the City of *Tlaſcala*, and there erected a *Democratical* Eſtate. Stomacked for this by the other *Tribes*, and many times invaded by thoſe of *Mexico*, after they had ſubdued the reſt; they ſtill maintained themſelves againſt all attempts; and in the end aſſiſted *Cortez*, in the deſtruction of that Kingdom they ſo deadly hated. Privileged for that reaſon by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of tribute (except it be an handfull of Wheat for every perſon) and ſuffered to live under his protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, ſaid to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 150000 of the Natives, beſides *Spaniſh* Colonies. Deſtributed into 36 *Claſſes* or *Rural Deanries*, for *Eccleſiaſtical* Government, in which are thought to be 30 *Convents* and Religious Houſes.

5 *GUAXACA* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Tlaſcala*; on the Eaſt, with *Jucutan*, and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*. Extended on the South-ſea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to fifty only: in breadth from ſea to ſea where it bordereth on *Tlaſcala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca* once the chief town of theſe parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof very ſound and ſweet, and the Soil as fruitfull: plentifull not only of thoſe commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Countrey; but of ſuch quantities of *Silks*, and ſtore of *Mulberries*, that if the *Natives* paid their *Tithes* as the *Spaniards* do, that very *Revenue* would ſuffice to endow five Biſhopricks, as good as that which is there already. Scarce any River of this Countrey, but hath *Sands* of *Gold*: ſuch plenty of *Coccinele* (a rich grain uſed in dying *Scarlets*, of which before) as alſo of *Caſſia*, Gold, Silver, and other metals; that if the people did but adde ſome induſtry to the wealth of the Countrey, they might be the richeſt men in all *America*. But being naturally ſlothfull, and impatient of labour, they loſe all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we uſe to ſay. Docile enough, and ſo indulgent unto thoſe who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 *Convents* of *Dominican* Friers, beſides other Schools: theſe laſt conceived the greater number.

It is ſubdivided into many particular provinces (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*) as 1 *Miſteca*, 2 *Tutopeque*, 3 *Zapoteca*, 4 *Guazacoalco*, 5 *Gueztaxatla*, and 6 the *Vale* of *Guaxaca*; this laſt moſt memorable, in that it gave the title of Marqueſſo *del Valle*, to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of moſt obſervation, 1 *Teozopotlan*, once the chief town of *Zapoteca*, and the ſeat of their King. 2 *Cuertlavaca*, of great note for a *Labyrinth* not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3 *Antequera*, in the Vallie of *Guaxaca*, a ſtately City, and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; as that with Marble-pillars of great height and thickneſs. 4 *S. Illifonſo* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5 *S. Jago* in the Valley of *Nexapa*, ſeated upon a lofty hill. 6 *Del Spiritu Santo*, diſtant about three leagues from the ſhores of the *Golf*, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*, A. 1526. 7 *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South-ſea; much uſed by thoſe which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern ſeas. By conſequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpoſe both by *Drake*, and *Cavendiſh*, in their voyages about the world. 8 *Tacoantepeque* a Port of the ſame Sea alſo, but of far leſs note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to tribute, beſides women and perſons under age, not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6 *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a *Demi-Iland*, is faſtened to the Continent only where it meets with *Guaxaca* the further point of it oppoſite to the Iſle of *Cuba*. Diſcovered firſt by *Fernandes de Cordova*, employed therein by *Don Chriſtopher Morante*, An. 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as ſome conceit it, from *Joctan* the ſon of *Heber*, who they think came out of the *Eaſt*, where the Scripture placeth him (*Gen.* 10. 30.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the language of the Countrey ſignifieth, *What ſay you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither asked the name of the place; the *Savages* not underſtanding what they meant, replied *Jucutan*, that is, *what ſay you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compaſs of it, taking the Province of *Tabaſco* into the accompt, is ſaid to be 900 miles, or 300 leagues. The Air hot, and the Countrey deſtitute of Rivers; not otherwiſe provided of water but by pits and trenches, which abundantly ſupply that want. Sufficiently barren, the ſoile not bearing Wheat, or any *European* fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of *Gold* or *Silver*, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who muſt either live by trades and labour, or elſe beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Countrey, but that here ſeemed to be ſome remnants of *Chriſtianity*, at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither: the people conſtantly obſerving a kind

of

of *Baptiſm*, which they call in their own language a *ſecond birth*, expreſſing by that word a *Regeneration*; not ſuffering any one to marry untill ſo *initiated*. And poſſible enough it is, that this may be the Countrey upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by ſome good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he ſhould make any ſuch ſecond voyage hither, as is ſaid in their *Chronicles*, I by no means grant.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Merida*, almoſt in the navel of it, ſituate in the 20 degree of *Latitude*; the ordinary ſeat of the Governour, and the See of a *Biſhop*: diſtant from the Sea on each ſide, about twelve leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have ſome reſemblance. 2. *Valladolit*, 30 leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a moſt ſumptuous Monaſtery of *Franciſcan* Friers. 3. *Campeche*, (or *S. Franciſco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) ſituate on the ſhore of the *Golf*. A Town when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houſes, and beautified with ſuch monuments of art and induſtry; as ſhewed that there was ſomewhat in this people which was not *barbarous*, ſince that no more obſervable, than for being ſuddenly ſurprized by *Parker*, an *Engliſh* Capt. *An.* 1596. who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many priſoners; beſides a great ſhip full of Gold, Silver, and other the like precious Commodities, deſigned for the King of *Spains* own uſe. 4. *Tabaſco*, ſituate in the beſt part of this Countrey, ſo different from all the reſt, that it is made by ſome a diſtinct province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nueſtra a Sennora de la Victoria*, moſt commonly *Victoria* onely; and that in memory of the firſt fortunate victory which *Cortez* had upon this people; arming themſelves againſt him for the ſacking of *Pontonchan*. 5. *Pontonchan*, ſacked by *Cortez* for denying to ſupply him with victual. 6. *Salamanca*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coaſt of this Countrey lie many Iſlands, *viz.* 1. *La Zarza*. 2. *Deſconoſcida*. 3. *Triangulus*. 4. *Vermeia*. 5. *Los Negrillos*. 6. *Los Alacranes*, all within the *Golf*. Without it, 7. *Zaratan*. 8. *Pantoia*. 9. *Lamanay*. 10. *De Mucheres*, or the Iſle of Women; 11. *Cozamul*, by ſome called *Acuſamil*. This laſt the biggeſt, as 15 leagues long, 5 broad; and the moſt remarkable, as being the uſual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their diſcoveries of this Countrey, from the Iſle of *Cuba*. For here firſt landed *Ferdinando de Corduba*, An. 1517. who paſſing over to *Jucutan* (but four leagues diſtant) brought back nothing but ſtripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the ſame purſuit, who paſſing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxata*, left his name behinde him to a River. And finally here landed the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, who coaſting about the *Demi-Iſland*, landed near *Tabaſco*, and there firſt hanſelled his good fortune with a notable victory. Yet neither the Iſland nor *Peninſula* diſcovered perfectly, till the year 1527. when both ſubdued by *Franciſco de Monteio*, to the Crown of *Spain*. The Iſland now called *Santa Crux*.

OF GVATIMALA.

GVATIMALA is bounded on the North, by *Jucutan*, and the Golf of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 leagues in length, upon the Coaſts of *Mare del Zur*; but meaſuring by a ſtrait line, not above 240: the breadth thereof 180 leagues, where broadeſt; in moſt places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the *Courts of Juſtice*.

The nature of the ſoil and people (if differing in any material thing from thoſe before) we will conſider in the View of thoſe ſeveral parts, into which this Countrey is divided. The principal whereof, 1 *Chiapa*, 2 *Verapaz*, 3 *Guatimala* ſpecially ſo called, 4 *Honduras*, 5 *Niceragua*, 6 *Veragua*. The reſt of leſs note, eaſily reduced to theſe.

1 CHIAPA hath on the Weſt, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur*, upon the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much leſs in breadth; and antiently inhabited by four Nations, all of ſeverall Languages.

The ſoil not very natural for Corn or Fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and *Lentils*; yet Vines and other richer fruits ſeldom come to good. *Wood-vines* they have, which yield a very pleaſant pulp; and if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their trees, moſt of them, greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the *Cypreſs*; whole Woods of *Walnuts*, but the Nut not ſo big as thoſe of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield *Roſin*, ſome ſuch precious *gums*, as in other places are not uſual; and ſome there are whoſe Leaves being dried into a powder, afford a ſoveraign plaſter for *exulcerate* ſores. And they have need too often to make uſe of theſe *Plaſters*, the Countrey being full of *Snakes* and other venemous Creatures (ſome of the *Snakes* no leſs than 20 foot in length) whoſe poiſon being ſtrong and deadly, doth require ſuch helps. Of the People nothing ſingular, that I have met with; but that they are more *muſical* and exact in painting, than the reſt of the Natives.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1 *Cividad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Countrey of the *Chiapenſes*, at the foot of an hill; ſituate in a round Plain, encompaſſed about with Mountains like an *Amphitheatre*: afterwards made a Biſhops See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by ſuch City-Magiſtrates as they call *Alcaides*. 2 *Chiapa*, in a vale adjoyning; before the building of the other, of moſt note in this Province: yet ſtill before it in regard of its ſituation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and *Maize*, than all the reſt of the Countrey. 3 *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoaques*, poſſeſſed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monaſtery of *Dominican* Friers. 4 *Capanavatzla*, the principall Town of twenty five, which the *Quelenes* held in this tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the ſame *Dominicans*. 5 *S. Bartholmews*, another town in the territory of the ſame *Quelenes*: neer which is ſaid to be a great Pit, or opening of the earth, into which if any man caſts a ſtone, though never ſo little, there preſently followeth a loud and fearfull noiſe, like a clap of thunder. 6 *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaridi*, when he was Governour of theſe parts; the chief Town of a little Province called *Soconuſco*. 7 *Caſapualca*, a ſmall Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the fields adjoyning; the waters whereof are noted to riſe and fall, as the Ocean doth flow or ebbe, and at equall diſtances of time. Of thirteen Townſhips which the *Zeltales* were poſſeſſed of, I finde no one named; though painted all of them, and ſet forth to the eye of the Traveller, with *Coccinele*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon theſe *Rarities* of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though ſomewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns wood to ſtones: of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Taſixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry; of another in the ſame *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never ſo little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and ſo ſucceſſively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many leſſer ſtreams, is ſwallowed up neer a Village of the *Chiapenſes*, called *Otztutan*, never after ſeen. None of them famed for *Golden Sands*, as are thoſe of *Guaxata*; though it be thought there be ſome Veins of gold and ſilver, but hitherto neglected for want of *Slaves* to work the *Mines*.

2 VERAPAZ is bounded on the Weſt, with *Chiapa*; on the Eaſt, with *Guatimala*, and *Hondura*; on the North, with *Jucutan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soconuſco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Vera-Pacis*, by the *Spaniards Verapez*; becauſe not conquered by the *ſword*, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain*, by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friers.

The Countrey 30 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitfull plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which ſo hinder the free paſſage of the winds, that the Aire hereof is very ſhewery: Inſomuch that for nine moneths in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reaſon of this moyſture much

annoyed

annoyed with *Mosquits*, a kinde of *Gnats*, very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. No *Mines* of Gold, or Silver discovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. Instead whereof some of their Trees drop a kinde of *Amber*, which they call *Liquid amber*; some, *Mastick*, and some other, Gums: they have also many *Medicinal* woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China* wood, and many others.

The people tractable and conform to the *Spanish* Government, except the *Lecandones*, and *Pachuteci*, some Remainders of the ancient *Salvages*; who keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Countrey, have hitherto retained both their Native freedom, and their old *Idolatries*. No Towns herein possessed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of these St. *Augustines*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a *Cave* betwixt two Mountains; from which the Rain descending turns into *Alabaster*, naturally fashioned into *Pillars* and other *Pourtraitures*. Into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body, make an handsom River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*: but of so little use and Trading, that I finde no name for it, unlesse it should be that *Yztapa* which *Herrera* speaks of, by whom placed in *Guatimala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West, with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the East, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacificque Ocean*. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the shores of *Mare del Zur*, not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Yzalcos*, *Chaluteca*, and S. *Saviours*, three adjoyning *Regions*, by some made Provinces distinct; the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Countrey Mountainous, but withall very full of *Rivers*; by consequence commodious, both for fishing and hunting. Fruitfull of Wheat, *Maize*, and other Provisions, but those fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with winds. Full of rich Pastures, and those Pastures of great Heards of Cattel. Good store of Cotton-wool, some *Balsamum*, and other *Medicinal* Liquors; as also of the best *Sulphur*, and many *Apothecaries* Drugs, which I have no skill of. The people Pusillanimous and fearfull, greater proficients in *Christianity* and Civility, than most of the *Salvages*: but so that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient *Paganism*, and revive again their old barbarous customs, if not held in by the bridle of fear, and the curb of power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Woman good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and Navigable half the way; which falleth into *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of St. *Saviours*, which hath its rise from a great *Lake*, and his fall in the same Sea also. Here is also said to be a *Lake* near the Village of *Ystepeque*, of the waters whereof are made both *Sulphur* and *Allom*. And here is said to be a *Volcana*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being spent; yet the said Monuments of his Furies do remain among them; another not far off which still casts out smoak.

Towns of most note 1. *Guatimala*, or St. *Jago de Guatimala*, the chief Town of the Province, situate on a little River betwixt both *Vulcanos*, by one of which most terribly wasted, *Anno* 1541. But being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. 2. St. *Salvador*, 40 leagues East-wards from *Guatimala*, by the Natives called *Guzculan*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compasse. 3. *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to St. *Saviours*. 4. St. *Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samsonate*, the most noted *Empory* of this Countrey; the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain*, and those of *Peru*. 5. St. *Michaels*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonseca*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xeres de la Fontera*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chulutecan* (by which name it was formerly known) situate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-East of the Bay of *Fonseca*: that Bay so named in honour of *Roderick Fonseca* Bishop of *Burges*, and *President* of the Councel for the *Indies*, An. 1532. by *Giles Gonsales de Avila*, who first discovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Islands, four of which inhabited, and plentifully furnished with Wood, Water, and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South, *Guatimala*, specially so called; on the West, the Bay or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*: on the North, and East, the Sea called *Mare del Nort*; on the South-East, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatimala*, specially so called. In length from East to West by the Banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras* imposed upon it from the *depth* of the Sea, about the principal Headland of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Countrey either Hills, or Vallies, little *Champagne* in it; fruitfull of *Maize* and Wheat, and of very rich Pasturage; made so by the constant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michaelmasse*; which do not onely soyl their grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them. 1. *Hungara*. 2. *Chamalucon*. 3. *Ulna*, all neighboured by fertile fields, and pleasant Meadows. Some *Mines* of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered: the people being so slothfull and given to idleness, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not easily intreated to toyl for others, but where necessity and strong hand do compell them

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Valladolit*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues diſtant from the Sea, Situate in a pleaſant and fruitfull Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*; and honoured with a Biſhops See, fixed here about the year 1558. built near the place where once *Franciſco de Monteio*, Governour of this Province had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530. by the name of S. *Maria de Commyagna*. 2. *Gracios di Dios*, 30 leagues Weſt-ward of *Valladolit*, built by *Gabriel de Royas*, An. 1530. to be a place of defence for thoſe who worked in the *Mines*, againſt the *Savages*. But finding himſelf unable to make it good, he defaced and left it; Re-edified again by *Gonſalvo de Alvarado*, and ſince well inhabited. 3. S. *Peters*, eleven leagues diſtant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but ſeated in a moſt healthy aire; and therefore made the dwelling place of the *Farmers* of the Kings *Cuſtomes*, who have their houſes in this Town, and follow their buſineſſe in the other, as occaſion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallos*, ſo called from ſome *horſes* thrown over-board in a violent Tempeſt; the moſt noted Haven of theſe parts, and ſtrong by natural ſituation: but ſo ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Chriſtopher Newport*, and *An.* 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deſerted on thoſe ſpoils, and not ſince inhabited. 5. S. *Thomas de Caſtile*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally ſtrong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art: to which, as to a place of more ſtrength and ſafety, *Alfonſo Briado de Caſtilla* Preſident of the Seſſions of *Guatimala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Traxillo*, ſeated on the riſing of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) diſtant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the Eaſt, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolit*: ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh*, An. 1576. Not far hence towards the North-Eaſt lieth the *Cape* of *Honduras*, from whence the ſhore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay called the Golf of *Honduras*. 7. S. *George de Olancho*, ſo named of the Vally *Olancho*, in which it is ſeated; a Vally noted heretofore for ſome *golden Sands*, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then ſaid to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North, with *Honduras*; on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Nort* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, on the Weſt, with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salſedo*, who firſt ſubdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom* of *Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither, would not ſo be loſt.

The Countrey deſtitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Coſta Rica*, reckoned a Province of it ſelf. The want hereof ſupplied by a great *Lake*, or a little Sea, called the *Lake* of *Nicaragua*, 120 leagues in compaſſe, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the banks of which ſtand many pleaſent Villages and ſingle houſes. A *Lake* well ſtored with Fiſh, but as full of *Crocodiles*: and having made its way by a mighty *Cataract*, emptieth it ſelf into Sea about four leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (moſt of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well ſtored with Cattel: level and plain, and ſhadowed with frequent Trees; one amongſt others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth preſently. Affirmed to be as full of *Parrets*, as *England* of Crows; ſtored with great plenty of *Cotton-wool*, and abundance of *Sugar-canes*. In a word ſo pleaſing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mahomets Paradiſe*.

The people for the moſt part, ſpeak the *Spaniſh* tongue, and willingly conform themſelves to the *Spaniſh* garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous cuſtomes, retained onely by ſome Mountainers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good ſtature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received *Chriſtianity*, a ſetled and politick form of government. Onely as *Solon* appointed no Law for a mans killing of his Father, ſo had this people none for the killer of a *King*; both of them conceiting that men were not ſo unnatural, as to commit ſuch crimes. A *Thief* they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be *ſlave* to that man whom he had robbed, till by his ſervice he had made ſatisfaction. A courſe more merciſull, and not leſſe juſt, than the loſſe of life.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, ſituate on the *Lake* aforeſaid, the Reſidence of the Governour, and the *Biſhops* See; built in a ſandy ſoyl, and begirt with Woods. 2. *Granada*, on the ſame *Lake*, ſixteen leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*: the Citie ſeated in a liberal and wealthy ſoyl, well furniſhed with *Sugar-canes*; for the refining of which here are many *Work-houſes*, which they call *Ingenios*. 3. *Segovia*, diſtant from the former about 30 leagues, rich in veins of ſilver. 4. *Jaen*, (all called according to the names of ſome Towns in *Spain*) ſituate at the end of the Lake aforeſaid; from whence by a long and narrow Channel it diſembogueth into the Sea, near the Port of S. *John*. 5. *Realeio*, about a league diſtant from the Port of *Poſſeſſion*, in the *Latitude* of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the moſt part, by *Shipwrights* and Marriners. 6. *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof ſtandeth 7. *Avarines* alſo. 8. *Cartago*, 40 leagues from *Nicoia*, equally diſtant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town the principal of that part, which is called *Coſta Rica*.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the Weſt, *Coſta Rica*; on the Eaſt, bounded with the *Diſtrict* of *Panama*; waſhed on both other ſides by the Sea: extended 50 leagues in length from Weſt to Eaſt; not above 25. where narroweſt, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greateſt note in it at the firſt Diſcovery.

The ſoyl hereof Mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for tillage, and leſſe uſefull in feeding Cattel; ſufficiently provided of *Maize* and Pot-herbs: but elſe of little neceſſary for the life of man; unleſſe the people could eat *ſilver*, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but eſpecially of *Gold*, here are ſuch never-periſhing *Mines*, that the *Spaniards* think them able to ſupply all wants, and cure all Diſeaſes. Once being asked what made them ſo greedy of that Metal; it was anſwered, *That they were much*

much troubled with grief of heart, for which Gold was a moſt Soveraign Medicine. And as the Countrey, ſuch the people, hardy, couragious, and warlike, and ſuch as bear the *Spaniſh* yoke with great impatience: the ſtouteſt and moſt untameable people, being bred moſt commonly in Mountainous and woody Countreys.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Yebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purpoſed to have ſetled a *Spaniſh* Colonie, for the better tranſporting of his *Gold*. But finding that the Channel, on the ceaſing of ſome rain which had fallen before, was become ſo ſhallow, that no ſhip could go in, or out; he gave over that purpoſe. 3. *La Trinidad*. 4. *La Conception*; all falling into *Mare del Nort*. Their chief Towns, 1. *Conception*, on the Mouth of that River, the ſeat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the Port of *Belen*, and ſix leagues Eaſt-wards of *La Conception*. 3. St. *Foy (oppidum* St. *Fidis)* twelve leagues from *Conception* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt, and caſt their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the Weſt of *Carlos*. Each ſeated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bays lie a Frie of Iſlands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongſt them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, St. *Marie*, St. *Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the *Continent* to work in the *Mines*.

This Countrey oweth its firſt Diſcovery unto divers men, according to the ſeveral Members and diviſions of it. The laſt in order, being the firſt that was diſcovered, but the laſt that was conquered, had the honour to be viſited by *Columbus* himſelf. Who driving up and down theſe Coaſts in the year 1502. hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he cauſed to be called *Belen*; where hearing that there was plenty of *Gold* in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him as was ſaid before, and finding nothing fit to ſuſtain his men; he bent himſelf, though unwilling, to a further ſearch. He had before touched upon *Honduras* alſo, but I finde not that he landed on it: the ſetling of theſe Countreys being deſtinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the moſt fortunate *Cortez* having fully quieted and compoſed the affairs of *Mexico*, reſolved to make his Maſter Lord of the reſt of *America*. And to that end ſent out his Officers and Commanders into ſeveral parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he ſubdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Chriſtopher de Olid*: *Veragua*, and *Nicaragua*, by *Conſalvo de Corduba*. But fearing leſt the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he reſolved to viſit them in perſon. Attended by a choiſe Band of 150 horſe, and as many foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in *October* 1524. and held on his progreſſe as far as to *Truxillo*: where finding thas *Gonſales de Cordova* had ſo plaid his Game, as there was no neceſſity of going further, he made a ſtand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in *April* 1526. he came home to *Mexico*; with whoſe return we conclude alſo our ſurvey of the Northern *Peninſula*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexica*.

And ſo much for *Mexicana*.

OF PERUANA.

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninſulas*, into which the vaſt Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now ſtand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reverſed: more anſwerably thereunto than *Africk*, though that ſo reſembled. Joyned to the other by a ſtrait and narrow *Iſthmus*, called the *Straits* of *Darien*, whereof we ſhall have opportunity to ſpeak more anon: which looks but like a ſtone miſ-laid in ſo great a building; or the firſt ſtep, by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name derived from *Peru*, the chief Province of it; the *Circumnavigation* ſaid to be 17000 miles. Nothing elſe to be ſaid in the general, but what will ſerve more fitly for particular places; except it be the deſcription of ſome prime Mountains and principal Rivers: which being of too long a courſe to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deſerve place here. Of theſe the chief 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*, called by the firſt name from *Franciſco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who firſt diſcovered it; by the ſecond, from the *Amazons*, a kinde of ſtout and warlike Women, who are ſaid to have inhabited on the banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the fall in the North Sea, or *Mare del Nort*. A River of ſo long a courſe, that the ſaid *Orellana* is reported to have ſayled in it 5000 miles, the ſeveral windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of ſo violent a current, that it is ſaid to keep its natural taſte and colour, above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accompted 60 leagues from one point to the other. 2. *Orenoque*, Navigable 1000 miles by ſhips of burden, and 2000 miles by Boats and *Pinnaces*; having received into it an hundred Rivers, openeth into the ſame Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Iſlands (ſome equal to the Iſle of *Wight:*) the moſt remote of thoſe Channels 300 miles diſtant from one another. By ſome it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the diſcovery and deſcription of it; or rather in diſcovering it ſo far, as to be able to deſcribe it. 3. *Maragnon*, of a longer courſe than any of the other, affirmed to meaſure at the leaſt 6000 miles, from his firſt riſing to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea, to be no leſſe than 70 leagues from one ſide to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of thoſe great *Lakes*, or largeſt Bays, which uſually enjoy that name. 4. *Rio de la Placa*, a River of a leſſe courſe than the other, but equal unto moſt in the world beſides; in length from its firſt Fountain 2000 mile, in breadth at his fall into the Sea, about 60 leagues: and of ſo violent a ſtream, that the Sea for many leagues together, altereth not the taſte of it. All theſe, as they do end their Race in the *Atlantick*, ſo they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at the leaſt ſome *Spur* or branch of that great body.

But before we venture further on more particulars, we are to tell you of theſe *Andes*, that they are the greateſt and moſt noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timama* a Town of *Popayan*, in the New Realm of *Granada*; and thence extended South-wards to the ſtraits of *Magellan*, for the ſpace of 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narroweſt; and of ſo vaſt an height withall, that they are ſaid to be higher than the *Alpes*, or the head of *Caucaſus*, or any of the moſt noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not eaſie of aſcent, but in certain Paths, by reaſon of the thick and unpaſſable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other ſide, or by what people it is neighboured, is not yet diſcovered:) barren, and craggy too withall, but ſo full of venomous Beaſts, and poyſonous Serpents, that they are ſaid to have deſtroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a people as rude and ſavage as the place, and as little hoſpitable. The moſt noted Mountain of *America*, as before was ſaid, and indeed the greateſt of the World. Of fame ſufficient of themſelves, not to be greatned by the addition of impoſſible Figments, or improbable Fictions. Among which laſt I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius* a right learned man, who will have theſe Mountains to be that which the Scripture calleth by the name of *Sephar*, Gen. 10. 30. and there affirmed to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the ſons of *Joktan*: the vanity and inconſequences of which ſtrange conceit, we have already noted when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular deſcriptions of this great *Peninſula*, comprehending thoſe large and wealthy Countreys, which are known to us by the names of 1. *Caſtella Aurea*. 2. The New Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paragnay*. 6. *Braſil*. 7. *Guyana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their ſeveral Iſlands. Such other Iſles as fall not properly and naturally under ſome of theſe, muſt be referred unto the general head of the *American* Iſlands, in the cloſe of all.

OF CASTELLA DEL ORO.

CASTELLA *del* ORO, *Golden Caſtile*, (*Aurea Caſtella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the East and North, with *Mare del Noort*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and ſome part of *Veragua*, on the South with the New Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Caſtile*, with reference to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was firſt diſcovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for diſtinctions ſake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the firſt Diſcoverers found in it. It is alſo called *Terra Firma*, becauſe one of the firſt parts of *Firm land*, which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before diſcovered nothing but ſome *Iſlands* onely.

The ſoyl and people being of ſuch ſeveral tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will conſider both apart in the ſeveral Provinces, of 1. *Panama*. 2. *Darien*. 3. *Nova Andaluzia*. 4. S. *Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. PANAMA, or the diſtrict of *Panama*, is bounded on the East, with the Golf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the main land of this large *Peninſula*; on the Weſt, with *Veragua* one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*; waſhed on both the other ſides with the Sea. So called of *Panama* the Town of moſt eſteem herein, and the Juridical reſort of *Caſtella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narroweſt part of the Streit, or *Iſthmus*, which joyns both *Peninſulas* together: not above 7 or 8 leagues over in the narroweſt place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, if meaſured by a ſtraight line from one Town to the other; though 18 leagues according to the courſe of the Road betwixt them, which by reaſon of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of ſome attempts to dig a Channel, through this *Iſthmus* to let the one Sea into the other; and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by land, we have ſpoke already.

The aire hereof foggy, but exceeding hot, and conſequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November*: the ſoyl either mountainous and barren, or low and miery; naturally ſo unfit for grain, that it yieldeth nothing but *Maize*, and that but ſparingly; better for paſturage, in regard of its plenty of graſſe, and the goodneſſe of it: ſo full of Swine at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither, that they thought they never ſhould deſtroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatſoever they were formerly, is not now material: moſt of the old ſtock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; ſo that the Countrey in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almoſt deſolated, or forſaken.

The Countrey, as before was ſaid, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Lagartos*, or the River of *Crocodiles*, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noort* betwixt *Nombre de Dios*, and *Porto Beleno*. 2. *Sardinilla*. 3. *Sardina*. 4. *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of *Snakes*; and 5. *Rio de Comagre*, all falling into the ſame Sea. Then on the other ſide 6. *Chepo*, whoſe ſands in former times yielded plenty of Gold. 7. *Rio de las Balſas*, on the banks whereof groweth great ſtore of timber for the building of ſhips. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Michaels*.

Towns of moſt note, 1. S. *Philip*, ſeated on a ſafe and ſtrong Haven called *Porto Belo*: built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the ſecond, but by the counſel of *John Baptiſta Antonelli*, to be the ſtaple of the trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*: partly in regard of the unhealthineſſe of *Nombre di Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly becauſe that Town was found to have lien too open to the invaſions of the *Engliſh*. Fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles (on each ſide of the Haven one) but for all that ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently ſeated in the Upper-ſea, for a Town of trade; and for that reaſon made the *Staple* of ſuch commodities, as were trucked betwixt *Peru*, and *Spain*; which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there ſhipped for *Peru*; or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by land brought unto this place, and here ſhipped for *Spain*. It took this name from *Didaco Niqueſa* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, who having been diſtreſſed by tempeſts was driven in here, and bid his men go on ſhore *en nombre de Dios*, in the name of God. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word, it is called *Theonyma*. Of great trade once, on the occaſion before mentioned: but in the year 1584. the trade was removed unto *Porto Belo*, by the counſel of *Antonelli* before named; and ſome years after that, the Inhabitants alſo. To haſten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake*, ſerved exceeding fitly. 3. *Acla*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Sea alſo, but on the South-East of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or S. *Jago de Nata*, ſituate on the lower Sea on the borders of *Veragua*, about 30 leagues on the Weſt of *Panama*. 5. *Panama*, the chief Citie of *Caſtella Aurea*, the Reſidence of the Governour, of the *Courts* of *Juſtice*, honoured with a *Biſhops* See, a *Suffragan* to the Arch-biſhop of *Lima*; and beautified with three fair Monaſteries, and a Colledge of *Jeſuits*. Seated in the 9 degree, or Northern *Latitude*; and ſo near the Sea, that the Waves come cloſe unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain*, and *Peru*, paſſeth every year: yet not containing above 350 houſes; the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6. S. *Crux la Real*, a league from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes* brought out of *Guinea*.

This

This Province was the first of those on the *Firm land*, which were discovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Iland lying on the shore neer *Porto Belo*, which he caused to be called *Los Bastimentos*; because being cast hereon by chance, he found good store of *Maize* and other provisions, called *Bastimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Ilands of this Province, are those which *Columbus* never saw, called the *Ilands* of *Pearls*; situate in the Southern sea, opposite to *Panama*, from which distant 17 leagues or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the rest of them rather *Rocks* than Ilands. Much famed not onely for the abundance, but the excellencie of the *Pearls* there found; fairer than those of *Margarita*, and *Cubagna*, so much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their *cruelty* and *covetousness* they unpeopled the Ilands, and destroyed the *Pearls*. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and some *Slaves* of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Masters Cattel, in the fields and pastures.

2 *DARIEN* hath on the North, the *District* of *Panoma*; on the South *New Granada*; on the East, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the *Golf* of *Vraba*; and on the West, the main Southern Ocean.

The Countrey of a temperate Air, and a fruitfull Soil: so happy in the production of *Melons* and such other fruits, that within twenty dayes after they are sown, they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth *Grapes*, and other fruits; either naturall hereunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A tree here is called *Hovo*, not elsewhere known; the shade of which is conceived to be so wholsom, that the *Spaniards* seek them out to sleep under them. Out of the *Blossoms* of it they distill a perfumed Water; of the *Bark* a Bath or *Lavatorie*, good for the opening of the pores, and redress of weariness; and from the *Roots* they draw a Liquour which they use to drink of. Of Beasts and Fowl great plenty, whether wild or tame; and some of them not heard of in other places.

Principall Rivers hereof, 1 *Darien*, whence it hath the name; A clear water, and much drank of, but of a slow course and a narrow channel; able to bear no bigger Vessels than those of one peece of wood used among the *Salvages*; we may call them *Troughs*. But with this slow course it falleth at last into the Golf of *Vraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is said to be eight leagues over. 2 *Rio de las Redas*, & 3 *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themselves into the *Golf* of *Vraba*. 4 *Corobaci*, on the same side of the Countrey also, 5 *Beru*, a River of the South-Sea, not much observable, but that some have laboured to derive the Etymologie of *Peru*, from thence.

Towns of most note, though few of any, 1 *Darien*, on the Bank of the *Golf* of *Vraba*; oftentimes so unhealthy by the Mists which do thence arise, that the Inhabitans use to send their sick people to the fresh Air of *Corobarie*, to revive their spirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antiqua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Eucisus* a *Spanish* Adventurer. *An.* 1510. and grew so suddenly into wealth and reputation, that within four years it was made an *Episcopal* See. But being built too neer the Banks of the *Darien*, in a mooriish and unhealthy place, both the *Episcopal* See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forsaken by themselves, or destroyed by the Salvages: To that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the *Golf* of *Vraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but some few scattered houses in all that tract, for the use of the Natives; who formerly made their Nests like Birds, on the tops of trees. 2 *Bizu*, 3 *Los Angadesos*, two small villages on the other side of the Countrey, possessed by the Salvages. Besides these, and some sorry sheds here and there dispersed, all the rest a Desart. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a distinct Province, the government hereof hath of late been devolved on the *Prefect* of *Panama*.

3 *NOVA ANDALVSIA* hath on the West, the River *Darien*, and the *Golf* of *Vraba*; on the East, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, the *new Realm* of *Granada*. So called with reference to *Andalusia* a Province of *Spain*. Called also by some Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length from the *Golf* of *Vraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 80 Leagues, and neerupon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of woods, but in those woods great store of Rosin, Gums, and some kinds of *Balsams*. Here is also said to be a Tree, which whosoever toucheth, is in danger of poisoning. The Soil, by reason of the abundance of rain which falls upon it, very moyst and spewie; insomuch that few of our *European* fruits have prospered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Countrey, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards* at their first coming, found great store of treasure. But it was taken out of the graves and *Monuments* of the dead, not found in *Mines*, or digged for as in other places: such being the reputation of that Territory in former times, that the *Nations* far and neer did carry the bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of *Gold*, *Jewels*, and other Riches. The *Natives* very fierce and stout, whiles they were a People: But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrows before fully conquered, they have been so consumed and wasted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Rio de los Redos*, & 2 *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Vraba*. 3 *Zenu*, which passing thorow the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean, over against the Iland *Fuerte*. 4 *S. Martha*, of long course, and much estimation. For rising in the most Southern parts of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, neer the *Æquinoctial*; it passeth thorow the whole length of that Kingdom, and at the last mingleth its streams with that of the River *Magdalen*,

not

not far from *Mopox*. By the *Natives* it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual Ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cordillera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy, and difficult of ascent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 leagues, but the length uncertain, the furthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, situate in a sandy *Peninsula*, ten degrees distant from the *Æquator*: well built, and for the bigness of it of great wealth and state; consisting of 500 houses, or thereabouts, but those neat and handsom. Beautified with a *Cathedral*-Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both sides, since the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by assault, and carried thence besides inestimable sums of money, 240 brasse pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Jago*, twelve miles from *Carthagena*; memorable for the most soveraign *Balsam* of all these parts, called the *Balsam* of *Tolu*; little inferior, if at all, to the *Balsam* of *Egypt*. 3. *Mopox*, or *Santa Crux de Mopox*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalens*. 4. *Baranca de Malambo*, on the banks of the River *Magdalen*, six leagues from the Ocean; where such Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm* of *Granada*, use to be unshipped, and carried by *Lighters*, or small Boats up the River. 5. *Sebastian de Buena vista*, built by *Alfonso de Oieda*, An. 1508. in his first attempt upon this Countrey; situate on a rising ground near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a league and a half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30 leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. S. *MARTHA* hath on the West, *Nova Andalusia*; on the East, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, the New Realm of *Granada*: about 70 leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from S. *Martha* the chief Citie of it.

The Countrey Mountainous and barren, not fit for pasturage, or tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Orenges, Pomgranates, and such other fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The aire on the Sea-Coasts very hot and scalding, and in the midland parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains alwayes covered with snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long Ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievadas*, or the *Snowy Mountains*; discernable by the Marriners 30 leagues at Sea; by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Vally of that name beneath them; the Inhabitants whereof by the advantage of those Hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the *Spaniards*. The rest, though subject to the *Spaniards*, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natured people; made worse perhaps than indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whose government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province, 1. *Rio Grando de la Magdalena*; which hath its fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, not far from the *Æquator*; but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and St. *Martha*, in the *Latitude* of 12 degrees: where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of 5 leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten leagues space from the rest of the *Main*, by the taste and colour of the water. 2. *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*, as doth also 3. *Cæsar*, by the Natives called *Pompatan*: which having its fountain near the Citie of Kings in the Vale of *Upar*, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. *Ayumas*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth West-ward for the space of 70 leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalens*, as before is said, near the Forrest of *Alpuerte*. 5. *Bubia*. 6. *Piras*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*. 9. *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation, 1. St. *Martha*, situate on the shores of the Ocean, in the *Latitude* of ten degrees and 30 minutes; neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an *Episcopal* See. Small, and ill built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the spoil it suffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. and by Sir *Anthony Sherley* the next year after. 2. *Tenariffe*, on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 leagues from St. *Martha*. 3. *Tanalameque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villa de las Palmas*, twenty leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4. *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the Citie of the Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guatapori*; which not far off falleth into the *Cæsar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Toirona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furnished with veins of Brasse, as it is with stones. 6. *Ocanna*, on the Western Reach of the River *Cæsar*, equally distant from its confluence with *Ayumas*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-East of S. *Martha*: environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with a large and spacious Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo de Venezuela*: the extremities hereof North-west, called *Cabo la Vola*; on the North-East, *Cabo di Coqui boccoa*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, consisting of no more than an hundred houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province. Built on a little Hill about a mile from the Sea; the Haven inconvenient and exposed to the Northern winds, but the soyl about it very rich, fruitfull of all such Plants as are brought from *Spain*; well stored with veins of *Gold*, excellent *Salt-wiches*, and some *Gems* of great worth and vertue. Distant eight leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18 leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: surprized and sacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, six leagues on the East of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by *Peal-fishing*. 3. *Topia*, five leagues from *La Hacha*, and almost as much from the Sea: the Fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca*, were terribly wasted by the *English*, in the year

aforesaid; because the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 *Ducats* not to burn that Town, would not stand to his bargain.

These Countreys discovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was said; were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two several men, imployed in the subduing of their several parts, *Anno* 1508. To *Didaco Niquesa* was allotted the government and conquest of those parts hereof, which lie on the West of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Præfectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Castella del Oro*: And to *Alfonso Oreda*, all that lay on the East of that *Gulf*, by the name of *Nova Andalusia*. But these two finished not the work, though they first begun it: *Enciſus* discovering further on the River of *Dariene*, than *Niquesa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the best of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Præfectures of *S. Martha* and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the *Spaniard*) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the *Spaniards*, was called *Abibeia*, who had his *Palace* on the top of a Tree, (as most of his subjects had their houses;) from which when *Francisco de Vanques* a *Spanish* Captain could by no other *Rhetorick* win him to descend, he laid his *Axe* to the Root, and began to fell it: which seen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his life and *Palace* at the will of his Enemies.

OF NOVA GRANADA.

NOVA GRANADA, or the *New Realm of Granada*, is bounded on the North, with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Veneznela*. The Countreys lying on the South, are not yet diſcovered, ſhut up with vaſt Hills, and impaſſable Mountains; except onely in thoſe parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonſalvo Ximenez*, the firſt Diſcoverer; who being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 leagues, and as much in breadth; reckoning *Popayan* for a part of it, though by ſome made a diſtinct government. So that we may divide the whole into theſe two parts, *Granada* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Weſt; and 2. *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, ſpecially ſo called, hath an Air, for the moſt part, well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and ſhortneſſe of dayes. The Countrey full of Woods, but of great fertility, well ſtored with Corn and Paſturage, many Herds of Cattel; ſome veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof, which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of *Emeralds*: and amongſt their Woods, that called *Guajacan*, Medicinable for the *French* diſeaſe, grows in great abundance. The people tall and ſtrong of body, not very induſtrious, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in ſongs and dances. The *Women* of a white and more clear complexion than any of their neighbours, and more handſomly habited; apparelled in black, or party-coloured *Mantles*, girt about their middles; their hair tied up, and covered moſt an end with *Chaplets* intermixt with flowers, and artificially compoſed.

Rivers of note I finde not any, but thoſe of S. *Martha*, and S. *Magdalen*, deſcribed before: nor any diſtinction of it into ſeveral Provinces, but that the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colymæ*, and *Muſi*, by which the *Salvages* were diſtinguiſhed, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the principal of their Towns are by ſome deſcribed.

Towns then of greateſt note, 1. S. *Foy de Bagota*, but commonly S. *Foy*, the *Metropolis* of this new Realm, the See of an *Archbiſhop*, and the ſeat of the Governour. Built by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they uſed to ſacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, beſides thoſe of the Natives; and ſituate in the fourth degree of Northern *Latitude*. 2. S. *Michael*, twelve leagues on the North of S. *Foy*, a well-traded Market. 3. *Tocayma*, in the Territory of the *Panches*, a barbarous and man-eating people, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Maſters of the richeſt part of all the Countrey. The Town about 15 leagues from S. *Foy*, toward the North-Eaſt; and ſeated on the banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is ſwallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela*, is the Countrey of the *Muſi*, and *Colymæ*, two warlike Nations; ſituate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colonie of the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither; but deſerted by them not long after, for fear of the *Salvages*, though the want of Proviſions was pretended. 5. *Trinidado*, on the ſame River, but ſomewhat lower, and more remote from the *Salvages*; by whom notwithſtanding much annoyed; the fields thereof full of veins of *Chriſtal*, *Emeralds*, *Adamants*, and *Chalcedonians*. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the ſame territory of the *Muſi* and *Colymæ*, An. 1572. 7. *Tunia*, ſo called according to the name of the *Tribe*, or Province, in which it is ſituate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might ſerve for a retreat and Fortreſſe againſt the *Salvages*; now a well traded *Emporie*, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impreſſe 280 horſe for preſent ſervice. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 leagues from S. *Foy*, towards the North-Eaſt, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattel. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the furtheſt Town of all this Province on the North-Eaſt towards *Veneznela*: As 10. S. *John de Los Lianos*, or S. *John* upon the *Plains* is in the South-Eaſt, 50 leagues from S. *Foy*, and ſeated in a corner full of veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lieth on the Weſt of *New Granada*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Countrey; on the North bounded with *Nova Andaluzia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the Weſt. Extended in length from North to South 130 leagues at the leaſt; and from the River to the Sea, betwixt 30 and 40.

The Countrey over-cloid with rain, breeds but little *Maize*, leſſe Wheat, and almoſt no Cattel; though in ſome places richer than it is in others. The people anciently *Man eaters*, and as rude as any, now more induſtrious and affable than the other *Americans*; eſpecially about *Popayan*, where the ſoyl is alſo better tempered than in other places. The Rivers of moſt note beſide that of *S. Martha*, which we have ſpoken of already; and ſome leſſer ſtreams which fall into it; are 1. *Rio de S. Juan*. 2. *Rio de Cedres*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greateſt note, 1. *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; ſituate on a nameleſſe but pleaſant River, in the midſt of a Plain, of great wealth, and a healthy aire, in two Degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern *Latitude*: the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, and See of a Biſhop. The building fair unto the eye, but ſlight; excepting the *Cathedral*, and a Monaſtery of the Friars called *De mercede*, which are ſtrong and laſting. 2. *Antiochia*,

(or *Sancta Fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andaluzia*, 100 leagues distant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve leagues distant. 3. *Caramanta* on the *Martha* it self. 4. *Patia* in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5. S. *Anne* in the *Cantred* of *Anzerman*, by which name it is sometimes called: Built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant fruits 6. S. *Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Arma*; situate in a territory very rich in *Gold*, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessaries: Fifty leagues to the North-East of *Popayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 leagues from S. *Jago de Arma*, seated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven leagues from the River of S. *Martha*. 8. *Cali*, a league from that River, but on the banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose foot it standeth; where built by *Sebastian de Betalcuzar*, the first discoverer of this Countrey. 9. *Bonaventure* on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a small Town, but of great use for the conveyance of the Commodities of *New Spain*, unto *Popayan*, and other Towns of this Province. 10 *Timana*, 80 leagues from *Popayan* towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far South-wards as the Streits of *Magellan*. 11. S. *Juan de Pasto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one degree from the *Æquator*. 12. *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called of its Silver *Mines*. in the South-East confines of the Province. 13. *Almagner*, on the sides of a plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren soyl, were not *Gold* a supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean, that is to say, 1. The Isle of *Palmes*, South of the Cape of *Corrientes*, so called from the abundance of *Palms* which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth, or outlet of *Rio de* S. *Juan*, an Island of three leagues in compasse; the Hills so high, the Vallies so extreamly low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking place unto *Francis Pizarro*, in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3. *Del Gallo*, a small Island, not a league in circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Countrey thus divided into two *Præfectures*, but both subordinate to the *Juridical Resort* in the Citie of S. *Foy de Bagota*; is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons. *Granada* specially so called, was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximinez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinand de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canarie* islands, *An.* 1536. who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more than the difficulties of the wayes through Fens and Forrests) as far as the *Cantred* of *Bagota*, was there encountred by that King. whom he easily vanquished: and wasting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of *Gold*, *Emerals*, and other Treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes which then governed in their several *Tribes*, either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*; he caused it to be called *The new Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the spoils he had gotten in this easie war, he found them to amount to 1800 *Emeralds*, 191294 *Pezoes* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a courser and inferiour alloy. In his return he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazars* marching on the other side of the River of S. *Martha*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayana*, was beating out his way towards the North-Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pezarro* the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Countrey to the very Sea; resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province, and *Mare del Noort*: And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Countrey, full of *Gold*, was in that Tract possessed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two Petit Princes, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Roytelets of *Patia* and *Pasto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassable Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where though the *Salvages* entertained him with some frequent skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possesse themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such places as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding *Colonies*: The first Conquest being finished, *An.* 1536. when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximinez*.

OF

OF PERU.

PERU is bounded on the East, with that vaſt ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the firſt of note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Countrey, occaſioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 leagues, but the breadth not equal. In ſome places 100 leagues broad, in others 60. in the reſt but 40. more or leſſe according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of ſo different a nature from one another, as if they were far diſtant both in ſite and ſoyl. Theſe parts the *Plains*, the *Hill-Countreys*, and the *Andes*: the *Plains*, extended on the Sea-ſhore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Vallies; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countreys, compoſed of both. Each part ſtretched out from North to South, the whole length of the Countrey; the *Plains* from the Sea-ſhore to the Hill-Countreys, for the moſt part ten leagues broad, in ſome places more; the *Hill-Countreys* 20 leagues in breadth where narroweſt, and as much the *Andes*. In the *Plains* it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the *Hill-Countreys* rain from *September* to *April*, after that fair weather. In the *Hill-Countreys* the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the *Plains* their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from *Summer* to *Winter* in one day; be frozen in the morning at his ſetting forth, and ſcorched with heat before he come to his journeys end. Some other differences there are, as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forreſts, whereas the *Hill-Countreys* are bare and naked; the *Plains*, where there are ſtore of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea beſides, ſandy and dry, and in moſt places deſtitute both of Fruits and Corn; in ſome parts of the *Hill-Countreys* where there are no Rivers, and a rain but ſeldom, plenty of Roots, *Maize*, Fruits, and all other neceſſaries. In the *Plains* there never bloweth any but the Southerly winde, though it bring no rain with it; and in the *Hills*, winds from every Coaſt, and of every nature, ſome bringing Rain, ſome Snow, ſome claps of Thunder, and others fair weather at the heels of them. Inſomuch that it is obſerved, that ſuch of the Inhabitants of the *Plains* as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do finde ſuch pains in the head and ſtomack, as *freſh-water* Souldiers when firſt Sea-ſick.

Not to purſue theſe differences any further in the ſeveral parts, we will look upon the whole in groſſe: which we ſhall finde but meanly furniſhed for the bigneſſe, with thoſe Commodities which ſo large a Countrey might afford: inſomuch as many of the people live moſt on *Roots*, here being little Wheat, and not ſuch quantities of *Maize* (the ordinary bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to ſerve their multitudes. Nor finde I that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increaſe. Inſtead of which they have in their Woods and Paſtures infinite numbers of beaſts ſomewhat like wilde Goats, (which they call *Vicagues*) and great ſtore of a kinde of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for fleece and burden; as big as a ſmall breed of horſes, but in taſte as pleaſing as our *Mutton*, and no leſſe nouriſhing. A Creature ſo well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himſelf over-loaded, no blows, or violence ſhall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be leſſened; and of ſo cheap a dyet, that he is content with very little, and ſometimes paſſeth three whole dayes without any water. The *Camels* of theſe parts, and not much unlike them.

This as it is by ſome accompted for a Creature proper to this Countrey onely (though in that miſtaken) ſo may it paſſe amongſt the *Rarities* hereof: many of which it hath both in Beaſts, and Plants, and in inanimate bodies alſo. Amongſt their *Plants* they have a *Fig-Tree*, the North part whereof looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its Fruits in the *Summer* onely; the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitfull onely in *Winter*. Some as deſervedly do count the *Coca* for a wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried, and formed into *Lozenges*, (or little Pellets) are exceeding uſefull in a journey. For melting in the mouth, they ſatisfie both hunger and thirſt, and preſerve a man in ſtrength, and his ſpirits in vigour: and generally are eſteemed of ſuch ſoveraign uſe, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the Leaves of this Tree are ſold yearly at the Mines of *Potoſia* onely, each of which at the Markets of *Cuſco* would yield 12.*d.* or 18.*d.* a piece. Another *Plant* they tell us of, but I finde no name for it, which if put into the hands of a ſick perſon, will inſtantly diſcover whether he be like to live, or die. For if on the preſſing it in his hand he look merry and chearfull, it is an aſſured ſigne of his *Recovery*: as on the other ſide, of death, if ſad and troubled. Amongſt their *Beaſts*, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*: of which it is obſerved that the *Males* ſtand *Centinel* on the Mountains, while the *Females* are feeding in the Vallies: and if they ſee any men coming towards them, they ſet out their throats, to give their *Females* notice of ſome danger near; whom when they come up to them, they put in the front of the *Retreat*, interpoſing their own bodies betwixt them and their enemy. Nor want they Rarities of nature even in things *inanimate*: here being ſaid to be a round *Lake* near the *Mines* of *Potozi*, whoſe water is ſo hot, though the Countrey be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themſelves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks: there being in the midſt thereof a boyling of above twenty foot ſquare.

A *Lake* which never doth decreaſe, though they have drawn a great ſtream from it to ſerve their *Metal-Mills*.

More profitable, though leſs rare, thoſe *Metals*, which thoſe Mills are made for; and not leſs profitable, one of thoſe Vulgar Plants, I mean *Tobacco*, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cauſe, and the reſemblance which it hath to *Henbane*, in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane* of *Peru*, by *Gerrad* and ſome others of our Modern *Herbaliſts*. A Plant, which though in ſome reſpect being moderatly taken, it may be ſerviceable for *Phyſick*: yet beſides the conſumption of the purſe, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate, vain, and phantaſtical abuſe of this ſtinking weed, corrupteth the naturall ſweetneſs of the breath, ſtupifieth the brain; and indeed is ſo prejudicial to the general eſteem of our Coutrey-men, that one ſaith of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui hnic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degeneraſſe videntur.* The two chief Vertues aſcribed unto it (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort digreſſion) are, that it voideth *Rheume*, and is found to be a ſoveraign *Antidote* againſt *Lues Venerea*, that loathſom Diſeaſe of the *French* Pox. For this laſt, like enough it is, that ſo unclean a Diſeaſe may be helped with ſuch an unſavory Medicine. But for the ſecond it may perhaps conſiſt more in opinion, than truth or reality; the *Rheume*, which it is ſaid to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the preſent. We may as well conclude that *Botled Ale* is good for the breaking of winde (which effect we finde commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the ſame winde which it ſelf conveyed into the Stomack. But *Tabacco* is by few now taken as *Medicinal*; it is of late times grown a *Good-fellow*, and fallen from a Phyſitian to a Complement. An humour, which had never ſpred ſo far amongſt us, if the ſame means of prevention had been uſed by the *Chriſtian* Magiſtrates, as was by *Morat Baſſa* among the *Turks*: who commanded a Pipe to be thruſt thorow the Noſe of a *Turk* whom he found taking *Tobacco*, and ſo to be carried in deriſion all about *Conſtantinople*. It is obſerved that the taking of Tobacco was firſt brought into *England*, by the Marriners of Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1585. And that it hapned not unfitly in the way of an *Antidote* to that immoderate uſe of drinking, which our *Low Countrey* Souldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, *An.* 1582. Before which time, the *Engliſh* of all Northern People were deemed to be moſt free from that *Swiniſh* Vice, wherein it is to be feared that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken ſo exceſſively by both theſe Nations, that I may juſtly ſay with a learned *Fleming*, Herbæ *ejus, non dicam uſus, ſed abuſus, non modo in* Anglia, *ſed in* Belgio, *& alibi, inſanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greateſt riches of this Countrey is moſt out of ſight, hid in the *Bowels* of the earth, but found in thoſe never-decaying *Mines* of Gold and Silver; more eminently abounding in this one Province than in all *America*. For inſtance whereof we may take the *Silver Mines* of *Potozi*, diſcovered in the year 1545. the fift of which, payable into the Kings Exchequer, amounted in forty years to a 111 millions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at ſix ſhillings and ſix pence; and yet a third part of the whole was diſcharged of that payment. By this one we may gueſſe ſomewhat of the reſt, as by the proportion of one member, the *dimenſions* of the whole body may be probably aimed at; unleſs the riches of theſe Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by ſome knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and ſome other very learned men, that this *Peru* is that land of *Ophir* to which *Solomons* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chron. lib.* 2. *cap.* 3. *ver.* 6. *That the Gold was the Gold of Paruaim.* A fancy not of ſo ſandy a foundation, as many others of that kinde, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Countrey, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof not only *Spain*, but all *Europe* alſo is better furniſhed with gold and ſilver, than ever formerly. For in the firſt Ages of the World our Anceſtors the *Britains* (I muſt digreſs here once again) had no other money than Iron-rings, and Braſs rings, which they uſed for inſtruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the moſt uſual Materials of their coyn, was moſt times Braſs, and ſometimes Leather. *Corium forma publica percuſſum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which laſt ſort we finde that *Frederick* the Emperour made uſe at the ſiege of *Millain*; and the *Engliſh*, in the time of the *Barons* Wars. And why not ſo? conſidering that no longer ſince in the year 1574. the *Hollanders* being then reduced to ſome extremities, made money of *Paſt-boord*. But this hapneth only in Caſes of neceſſity, the two Metals of gold and ſilver having for many hundred years (though not in ſuch abundance as in later times) been the chief inſtruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, & queſtionleſs will ſo continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the ſecond Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, becauſe more neceſſary for all uſes; *Ut ſine quo non magis quam ſine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring gold and ſilver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* uſe to employ thoſe *Metals*, in making Chamber-pots, and Veſſels of more unclean neceſſities, eating and drinking for the moſt part in glaſs or earth. He telleth us alſo how they make chains and fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious ſlaves, and Malefactors; how they puniſh infamous perſons by putting Gold Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their ears, and chains of gold about their necks: how they adorn their little children with precious Jewels, which *gayeties*, when they come to Age, and ſee them worn by none but ſuch little children, they uſe to caſt away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys leave off without conſtraint, their Babies, Cobnuts, and other *Crepundia*. He further telleth us how the Ambaſſadors of the *Anemolij* (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongſt them richly and gorgiouſly attired, were took for ſlaves, by reaſon of their Golden Chains, and the meaneſt of their Followers thought to be the Ambaſſadors: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing jewels, as if they had been children ſtill; and how the People laught at their chains of Gold, as being too weak to ſhackle ſuch ſturdy Fellows. Now though it pleaſed that wiſe State

to

to have any Gold or Silver at all amongſt them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any eſtee n which themſelves had of it; but therewith to provide themſelves of Forreign aids, and pay their Armies, when the neceſſities of their affairs, or other reaſon of State did require the ſame. How this device would ſort with the humours of thoſe People, whom *Lucian* antiently did Fable, and ſome of later times more really do fancy to have their dwelling in the Moon; I am not able to ſay, as having hitherto had no commerce, nor correſpondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though poſſibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and finde it to ſort well enough with their condition. Certain I am this ſublunary World of ours will never brook it. And ſo I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of gold and ſilver, which thoſe and the reſt of the *New-world* have furniſhed the *old World* withall, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cauſe of the dearneſs of all commodities at the preſent times, compared unto the cheapneſs of the times foregoing. For where much is, there greater prices will be given, than in other places. And yet there want not ſome that add alſo other cauſes, of the high prizes of our days: *viz. Monopolies*, Combinations of Merchants and Craftſmen; *tranſportation* of Grain, pleaſure of great perſonages, the exceſs of private men, and the like: but theſe laſt I rather take to be *con-cauſes*, the firſt being indeed the principal. For, (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil*, hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the exceſſive abundance of τὰ νόμῳ μόνον ὄντα, things which conſiſt meerly on the conſtitution of men, draweth neceſſarily τὰ φύσει ὄντα, thoſe things which nature requireth, to an higher rate in the Market. *Capta ab* Auguſto Alexandra (ſaith *Oroſius*) Roma *in tantum opibus ejus crevit. ut dupla majora quam antehac, rerum venalium pretia ſtatuerentur.* As for that queſtion, whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which ſupplieth it ſelf with money by Traffick and the works of Art; or that which is ſupplied by *Mines* growing, as the gift of nature; I finde it by this tale in part reſolved. Two Merchants departing from *Spain* to get gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buyeth *Moors* to dig and delve with; the other fraughteth his veſſell with *ſheep*: and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, ſet his ſlaves to work, and the other hapning in graſſie ground, put his ſheep to grazing. The *Slaves* grown cold and hungry, call for food and cloathing; which the ſheep-maſter by the increaſe of his ſtock had in great abundance; ſo that what the one got in gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and health; he gladly gave unto the other in exchange or Bartery, for the continual ſupply of Victuals, Clothes, and other neceſſaries for himſelf and his ſervants. In the end the Mines being exhauſted, and all the money thence ariſing exchanged with the Shepherd for ſuch neceſſaries as his wants required: home comes the Shepherd in great triumph, with abundance of wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his travels. But I dare not take upon me to dertermine this point. Only I add, that the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick did in concluſion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the ſecond, and out-vied him (as it were) in wealth and treaſure; notwithſtanding his many Mines of Gold and ſilver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, ſome in *Spain* and *Italy*, and theſe of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occaſion unto this Diſcourſe, or Digreſſion rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People alſo, affirmed to be (for the moſt part) of great ſimplicity; yet ſome of them (thoſe ſpecially which lie neer the *Æquator*) to be great diſſemblers, and never to diſcover their *conceptions* freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in the Wars, well ſkilled in managing ſuch weapons as they had been uſed to, and fearleſs of death; the rather prompted to this laſt by an old opinion held amongſt them, that in the other world they ſhall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great perſon, who was attended on in his life; they uſe to kill and bury with him one or more of his ſervants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*; but not in habit: conform therein to the other *Salvages*, but that thoſe cover their upper parts with ſome decent garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only neer the *Æquator*; both Sexes elſwhere wearing Mantles to their very *Heels*. Habited in one faſhion over all the Countrey, except the dreſſing of their heads, wherein ſcarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his faſhion to himſelf. The *Women* leſs eſteemed here than in other places, treated as *Slaves*, and ſometimes cruelly beaten upon ſlight occaſions: the men (as *S. Paul* ſaith of the ancient *Gentiles*) leaving *the natural uſe of the woman, and burning in their luſts towards one another.* For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that *recompenſe which was meet.*

Rivers of moſt note 1 *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2 *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over againſt the Iſle of *Puna*, on the further ſide of the *Æquator*; an Iland of twelve Leagues in compaſs, and exceeding fruitfull. 3 *Guagaquil*, of a longer courſe than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur* on the South of *Tombez*; over againſt the Iſle of *Lobos*. No Iland after this of note upon all this Coaſt. If any come in our way which runneth towards the Eaſt, we ſhall meet with them in the view of the ſeveral Provinces; and ſo we ſhall of the Hills or Mountains which are moſt conſiderable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to loſe themſelves; in compaſs 80 Leagues, and uſually Navigable with ſhips and barks. The waters of it not ſo ſalt as thoſe of the ſea, but ſo thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many habitations, as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair water courſe or River it paſſeth into a leſs *Lake*, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence moſt probably findeth a way into the Sea, or elſe is ſwallowed in the Bowels of that thirſty earth; but the firſt more likely.

It is divided commonly into three *Juridical Reſorts*, *viz.* of 1 *Quito*, 2 *Lima*, and 3 *Charcos*; each having

having under it many ſeveral and ſubordinate Provinces, too many and of too ſmall note to be here conſidered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greateſt reckoning, 1 *Quito*, 2 *Los Quixos*, 3 *Lima*, 4 *Cuſco*, 5 *Charcos*, and 6 *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the midlands; to which the Ilands of it ſhall be joyned in the cloſe of all.

1. *QUITO* is bounded on the North with *Popayan*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur* on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the Eaſt, with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the firſt diviſion.

The ſoil as fertile and as fit for the fruits of *Europe*, as any other in *Peru*: well ſtored with Cattell, eſpecially the *Pacos* or *Peruvian* ſheep; and plentifully furniſhed both with Fiſh and Fowl. In many parts great ſtore of *Nitre*, of which they make moſt approved good *Gunpowder*; and in ſome Rivers, eſpecially that of *S. Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The people generally induſtrious, eſpecially in the making of Cloth of *Cotton*, equal almoſt to ſilks for fineneſs; of *conſtitution* ſtrong and healthy, but given to lying, drinking and ſuch other vices: with which they are ſo much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the *Chriſtian* Faith; nor willingly reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm*. Extreamly puniſhed with the *Pox*, an hereditary diſeaſe amongſt them; the very Girls and untouched *Virgins* ſo infected with it, that neither *Tobacco*, *Guajacan*, nor *Sarſa parilla*, all which this Countrey doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preſerve them from it.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Carangues*, a large and ſumptuous *Palace* of the ancient Kings, ſo named becauſe ſituate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating people; ſubdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightieſt of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withall killing many of his Miniſters and Garriſon-Souldiers, they were upon a ſecond conqueſt brought to the banks of a great *Lake* into which 20000 of them being killed, were thrown. The *Lake* from thenceforth called *Yaguarcocha*, or the Lake of blood. 2 *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferiour to the other; yet giving name unto the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth. 3 *Quito*, the chief of this Reſort, and once the *Regal* ſeat of its proper Kings (till made ſubject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the ruines of whoſe *Palace* are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called *S. Franciſco*, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Equinoctial*; well fortified, and as well furniſhed with *Ammunition*: inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards* beſides the Natives. The ſtreets whereof ſtrait and broad; the buildings decent: the principal of which, the *Cathedral* Church, the Courts of Juſtice, and two Convents of *Dominican*, and *Franciſcan* Friers. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a *Flaming* Mountain, or *Vulcano*; which in the year 1560 caſt out ſuch abundance of cinders, that if a rain had not hapned beyond expectation, had made great ſpoil upon the place. 4 *Tacunga* fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5 *Rhiobamba* in the Territory of the *Purvaſij*, 40 Leagues from that; each of them honoured with another of thoſe ancient Palaces. 6 *Thomebamba* neighboured by another of the Kings *Palaces*, but more magnificent than the former; ſituate in the Countrey of the *Canares*: amongſt whom anciently the *Women* tilled the Land, and did all without doors; whiles the Men ſtaid at home and ſpun, and attended houſewifry. 7 *Cuenca* 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, ſituate in a Countrey full of *Gold*, Silver, Braſs, Iron, and veins of *Sulphur*. 8 *Loxa*, ſixteen Leagues ſouthwards of *Cuenca*, ſituate in the fift Degree of *Southern* Latitude, and in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Riverets. The Citizens well furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, but not otherwiſe wealthy. 9 *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the Eaſt of *Loxa*; and 10 *Jaen*, 35 from that: both ſituate in the Province of *Quachimayo*, and both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*: Then on the Sea coaſts, there are; 11 *Portus Votus* (*Puerto Veio* as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea ſide, but in ſo ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the firſt Towns of this Countrey poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monſtrous Giant; whoſe Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12 *Mantu* the Port Town to *Porto Veio*, from whence the trade is driven betwixt *Panuma* and *Peru*; the town it ſelf ſituate in a rich vein of *Emeralds*. 13 *Guayaquill*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called alſo *Gulata*; ſeated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, neer the influx of the River *Guayaquil*; a noted and much frequented Empory. 14 *Caſtro*, a Colonie of *Spaniards* planted, *An.* 1568 in that part of this Countrey, which they call *Provincia de los Eſmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayan*. 15 *S. Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation. 16 *Payta*, a ſmall Town, but neighboured by the ſafeſt and moſt frequented Haven of all this Countrey; as guarded from the winde by the Cape of *S. Helens* on the North, and *Punta Piurina* on the South; two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt *An.* 1587. by Capt. *Cavendiſh*. Who at the ſame time alſo pillaged the Iſle of *Puna*, the moſt noted Iland of this Tract, ſituate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was ſaid before. Fruitfull of all things neceſſary to the life of man; *Parats* for pleaſure, *Sarſaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times ſo ſtout and Warlike, that they maintained a long War with thoſe of *Tombez*, till in the end compoſed by the mediation of the King of *Peru*, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as ſince their embracing of the Goſpel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2 *LOS QUIXOS*, lieth on the Eaſt of *Quito*, and the Weſt of *El Doradæ*, (one of the Cantreds of *Guiana*, ſo called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the ſoil and people from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is ſomewhat the more barren, and leſs ſtored with thoſe rich metals which the *Spaniards* come for. The People have alſo a diſtinct tongue of their own, though they both underſtand and ſpeak the *Peruvian* language.

Chief

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Baeza*, built in the year 1559 (which was within two years of the first discovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 leagues from *Quito* towards the East: now the seat of the Governour. 2 *Archidona*, 20 leagues on the South-east of *Baeza*. 3 *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; so called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4 *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the East of this Province lieth the Cantred of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockish and ignorant People, and destitute of all things necessary for the comforts of life. Most mercilesly tormented, and cast to dogs to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, because they could not shew him the readiest way to some richer Countrey than their own; this being the most barren Region of that part of *Peru*, which they call *La Sierra*, or the *Hill-Countries*. More Eastwards yet in that part, which they call the *Andes*, lie the Cantreds of the *Bracomori*, commonly called *Juan de Salinas*, by the name of the first Discoverer of it: A Countrey not inferior unto many for the quantity of Gold, superior to any for the pureness of it. Chief Towns of which, 1 *Valladolit*, 2 *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Cumbinama*; 3 *S. Jago de las Montannas* (or *S. James* of the *Mountains*) all *Spanish* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis à Loiola*, once the *Pro-Præfect* of the Province, by whom first thorowly subdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3 *LIMA*, called also *LOS REYES*, is bounded on the North, with *Quito*; on the South, with *Charcas*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Colloa* and the Province of *Cusco*. So named from *Lima* or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the 6. to the 16. Degree of *Southern Latitude*: or measuring it from the Promontorie *del Aguja* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 leagues. The soil of the same nature with that of *Quito*, but more distributed into Vallies, and better peopled.

Places of most observation, 1 *Miraflores* in the valley of *Zanu*, 110 leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about five leagues distant from the Sea; on which it hath an Haven belonging to it, called *Chencepen*. The Town well seated, and inhabited by a wealthy people, made such by the abundance of *Sugar-canes* in the neighbouring Valley. 2 *Truxillo*, in the rich and flourishing Valley of *Chimo*, on the banks of a small, but pleasant River, and about two leagues from the sea; where it hath a large, but unsafe Haven, which they call *El Azzecife de Trugillo*. The Town it self situate in the 7. Degree and 30 minutes of *Southern* Latitude: well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards*, besides the Natives, and beautified with four *Convents* of several Orders. 3. *La Parilla*, in the valley of the *Santa*, in which it standeth, and by which it is furnished with a safe and convenient Road for shipping; 20 leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of silver, not long since discovered. 4 *Arnedo*, seated amongst Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten leagues North of *Lima*. 5 *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Civdad de los Reyes*, or the City of *Kings*, situate in the Valley of *Lima*, the most fruitfull part of all *Peru*, in the *Latitude* of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much art, for all the chief streets answer to the Market-place; scarce any private house which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with sweet fields, and most pleasant gardens. The founder of it *Francisco Pizarro*, who laid the first stone on *Twelf* day (which the *Spaniards* call the *Feast* of *Kings*) whence it had the name, *An.* 1553. A Town of greater wealth than bigness, the Riches of *Peru* passing yearly thorow it; well housed, whether we respect the private, or publike edifices: the *Cathedral* Church, made after the model of that of *Sevil*; the *Convents* of Religious Orders, the *Courts* of Justice, and the *Palaces* of the Archbishop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly buildings; the Cathedral Church so well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbishop do amount yearly to 30000 *Ducats*, besides what belongeth to the *Canons* and other Ministers. 6 *Collao*, the Haven-town to *Lima*, from which two leagues distant, a Town of 600 families, for the most part Sea-men; every house having some Cellar in it for the stowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the use of Mariners; besides those, publike ware-houses for the several commodities, which pass from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579. when sacked and spoiled of infinite treasures by Sir *Francis Drake*; since that time strengthened by two *Bulwarks*, and a wall of earth, with 30 peece of Brass-Ordnance planted on the works. 7 *Pachacama* in the Valley so called, but four leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 90 0000 *Ducats* of gold and silver, not reckoning in those infinite treasures which the Souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8 *Guarco*, a Colonie of 300 *Spaniards*, sixteen leagues on the South of *Pachacama*; environed with the best fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9 *Valverde*, in a Valley of the same name, so called from the perpetual *greenness* of it; best furnished with Vines, and those affording the best wines of all this Countrey. A large Town consisting of 500 *Spaniards*, besides women and children, and other inhabitants of the Countrey: well traded, considering its distance from the Sea (*Puerto Quemado* the Haven to it, being six leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, an Hospital, three Frieries, and the handsomest women of these parts. Distant from *Lima* 35 leagues. 10 *Castro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolococha*, 60 leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the purest Silver, digged out of a dry and barren hill, alwayes covered with snow; and standing in so sharp an air, that the *Spanish* women will not be delivered in it, but are carried further off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that vein of *Tobacco*, which our Good-fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Vereinas*. 11 *Arequipa* in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120 leagues from *Lima*, a pleasing and delightfull town; which situate at the foot of a *flaming* mountain, from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a fresh and temperate Air, and a soil alwayes flourishing. The silver of *Plata* and *Potosi* passeth thorow this town, and is shipped for *Panama*, at an Haven belonging to it; situate on the mouth of the

River *Chile* (upon which *Arequipa* ſtandeth) but diſtant from the town about 14 leagues. 12 *Caxamalca*, more within the land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal *Palace* of the Kings of *Peru*; memorable for the impriſonment and murder of *Atabilaba*, or *Athnalpa*, the laſt King of this Countrey, vanquiſhed not far off by *Franciſco Pizarro*. 13 *Cachapoyas*, in the *Cantred* ſo called, the beſt inhabited of any one *Cantred* of thoſe parts, ſuppoſed to contain in it 20000 of the Natural Inhabitants, which pay duties to the King of *Spain*; and ſo eſteemed for beautifull women, that from hence the Kings were antiently furniſhed with their *Concubines*. 14 *Leon de Guanuco*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it ſtandeth) a Colonie of *Spaniards*, rich, ſweet, and very pleaſantly ſeated: beautified heretofore with a moſt magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with ſome *Religious* houſes, a College of *Jeſuites*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purpoſely paſſed over.

4 *CUSCO* comprehendeth, as the chief, all thoſe ſeveral Provinces of the *Hill-Countries*, and the *Andes*, which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Bleſt with a ſweet and temperate Air, not over-ſcalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the diſtempers of the *Evening* miſts: the Countrey full of freſh Rivers, notable good paſturage, and great herds of Cattel; well ſtored with *Coca*, which is gathered here in ſome abundance, and moſt excellent Veniſon.

Places of moſt repute in it, 1 *Bombon*, in the ſame Latitude with *Lima*; neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chinca cocha*; ten leagues in compaſs, begirt about with pleaſant hils, and built upon with many rich and as pleaſant villages; out of which runneth the River *Marannon*, one of the greateſt of theſe parts, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to end his courſe in the *Mare del Noort*. 2 *Parcos*, once beautified with a Regal *Palace*, ſeated on the top of a little hill, and begirt about with craggie mountains. 3 *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called *S. Juan de la Vittoria*, ſituate under the 13 Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of a freſh and pleaſing ſtream: well built, the houſes being all of ſtone, and tiled or flatted; three Churches, one of them a *Cathedral*, beſides divers Convents. 4 *Bicar*, ſuppoſed to be built in the very Center of *Peru*; where ſtill remain the ruines of a ſumptuous Palace. 5 *Guancabelica*, a new Town, or but newly raiſed into eſteem, ſuppoſed to contain at the preſent 2000 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the *Natives*. Increaſed ſince the year 1566. from a beggerly Village to this greatneſs, by the Mines of *Quick-ſilver* then diſcovered: *Mines* of ſuch Riches, that the Kings part out of them amounteth yearly to above 40000 *Pezoes*, which is about 13000 l. of our *Engliſh* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that *Mineral* being found ſo neceſſary for the purifying and ſpeedy extraction of their *Gold* that it is not ſaid without cauſe by the *Chymiſts*, that *Quick-ſilver gives the matter to* Gold, *and Sulphur the form*. 6 *CUSCO*, in the *Latitude* of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130 leagues on the Eaſt of *Lima*; and ſituate in a rugged and unequal ſoil, begirt with Mountains; but on both ſides of a pleaſant and commodious River. Once the ſeat-royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of his *Nobility* to build here a *Palace* for their continual abode; ſtill of moſt credit in this Countrey, both for beauty and bigneſs, and the multitudes of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 3000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 of the *Natives*, beſides women and children. The *Palace* of the King advanced on a lofty mountain, was held to be a work of ſo great magnificence, built of ſuch huge and maſſie ſtones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of divils than of men. Now miſerably defaced, moſt of the ſtones being tumbled down to build private houſes in the City; ſome of the Churches raiſed alſo by the ruines of it, and amongſt them perhaps both the Biſhops Palace and *Cathedral*, whoſe annual Rents are eſtimated at 20000 *Ducats*. Yet did not this vaſt Building yield more luſtre to the City of *Cuſco*, than a ſpacious *Market-place*; the *Center* in which thoſe high-wayes did meet together, which the *Ingas* had cauſed to be made croſs the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with moſt incredible charge and pains, for the uſe of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. 7 *S. Franciſco de la Vittoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spaniſh* Colonie, and about 20 leagues from *Cuſco*. 8 *S. Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caravayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the pureſt Gold, whence it had the name; a Colonie of *Spaniards* alſo. Beyond the *Andes* lie ſome Countries much famed for wealth: the diſcovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes with loſs, not ſeldom with ſome hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without ſucceſs.

5 *COLLAO* lieth on the South of thoſe Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of *Cuſco*; having on the Weſt, the reſt of *Lima*; on the South, *Los Charchos*; on the Eaſt, thoſe unknown Countries beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the Eaſt and Weſt by two mountainous Ridges; which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cuſco*, do there divide themſelves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Countrey plain and full of Rivers, well ſtored with rich paſtures, and thoſe paſtures with great herds of Cattel, barren of Corn, and not well furniſhed with *Maize*; inſtead whereof they make their bread of a Root called *Popa*, dried in the ſun and bruiſed to powder; of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potoſi*. Yet notwithſtanding this great want, it is thought to be the moſt populous part of all *Peru*; the ſoundneſs and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populoſitie of a Countrey, as the richneſs and plenties of the Soyl. The people alſo of a clearer and more ſolid judgement, than the reſt of *Peru*: and ſo well skilled in the obſervation of the courſe of the *Moon*, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the year diſtinguiſhed into *Moneths*, weeks, dayes; for each of which they had a proper and ſignificant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places

Places of greateſt note in it, 1. *Chuquinga*, naturally ſtrong and almoſt inacceſſible, invironed either with unſordable waters, or impaſſable Mountains: one *Cauſey* onely leading to it, which for the ſpace of three leagues, is ſaid to be capable but of one at once. 2. *Ayavire*, enobled with many fair and coſtly buildings; eſpecially with *Monuments* of the dead, which exceed the reſt both in coſt and number: for that cauſe by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulturas*. The Inhabitants of this Tract much waſted by the *Civil* Wars, which the *Spaniards* had among themſelves. 3. *Hatuncolla*, the *Metropolis*, or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth ſignifie: not far from which the famous River *Caravaya*, famous for the abundance of *Gold* in the ſands thereof, hath its firſt original. 4. *Chiquita*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the banks of the Lake of *Titicaca*; a Town of ſo great trade and riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediatly by the King; his place being eſtimated at the worth of 50000 *Ducats* yearly. 5. *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth, or out-let of that Lake; ſuppoſed to be the moſt ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now moſt remarkable for the ruines of certain great and ſtupendious buildings, ſome of the ſtones whereof are ſaid to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and ſix in thickneſſe: not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this people had not till of late) but by ſome ſtrange Arts. 5. *De la Faz*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*, by the *Spaniards* called alſo *Pueblo Neuvo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiabo*, according to the name of the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth, is ſituate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of winde and weather, but over-looking a large plain of great fertility: well watered, and well wooded both for fruits and fewel. 7. *Chilane*. 8. *Acos*. 9. *Pomata*. 10. *Cepita*; and others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima*, and *Collao*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with ſome Countreys not yet well diſcovered, interpoſed betwixt it and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This alſo called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief Citie of it.

The Countrey extended in length from North to South, but 300 leagues; but meaſuring by the Sea-ſhores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn, or Cattel, though in many places furniſhed with good Paſture-grounds; but for the inexhauſtible Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, not be equalled in *Peru*. Of theſe the principal thoſe of *Porco* and *Potoſi*, but theſe laſt the chief: out of which comes that maſſe of *Silver*, which yieldeth the King ſo much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The *Mine* 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do deſcend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 ſteps: ſome of the workmen not ſeeing the Sun many moneths together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them; and many dying in the works for want of Air. For the refining of this *Silver* there are 52 *Engines*, or *Silver-Mills* upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, beſides many which they turn with horſes. The Poets words never more literally verified than in theſe deep *Mines*; where ſpeaking of the *Iron-Age*, he deſcribes it thus:

Nec tantum ſegetes, alimentaque debita dives
Poſcebatur humus; ſed itum eſt in viſcera terræ;
Quæſque recondiderat, Stygiiſque admoverat umbris,
Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

Which I finde thus rendred by *George Sandys*.

Nor with rich Earths juſt nouriſhments content,
For treaſure they her ſecret entrails *rent.*
That powerfull evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid, and wrapt in Stygian *ſhades.*

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Plata*, ſo called from the rich Mines of Silver; and found in Mount *Porco* near adjoyning, well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but ſearched into again by *Franciſco Pizarro*; who (it is thought) might have raiſed hence 200000 Ducats of yearly income, if hopes of greater at *Potoſi* had not took him off. The Town commodiouſly ſeated in a fruitfull ſoyl, in the 19th. degree of *Latitude*, and 180 leagues diſtant from the Citie of *Cuſco*; honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the *Courts* of Juſtice; and beautified (beſides many Religious houſes) with a fair *Cathedral*; the See of the beſt endowed Biſhoprick of all *Peru*; his *Revenues* being eſtimated at 80000 *Ducats* of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chuquiſacay*. 2. *Oropeſa*, twenty leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Vice-Roy here, in the rich and pleaſant Valley called *Cochabamba*, An. 1565. 3. *Potoſi*, neighboured by thoſe wealthy Mines already mentioned. Diſcovered firſt in the year 1545. before which time this Town was but a ſorry Village; now the beſt peopled and frequented in all the Province: ſaid to be conſtantly inhabited by four, or five thouſand *Spaniards*, many more of the *Natives*; not ſo few as 30000 workmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: beſides the infinite reſort of *Merchants* in purſuit of profit, and idle *Gallants*, who come hither for their luſts and pleaſures. Situate in the 21 Degree, and 40 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, in a cold and very barren ſoyl; yet plentifully furniſhed with all Commodities, both for neceſſity and delight. For as the money is, ſo the *Market* alwayes. 4. *Miſque*, a ſmall Town, but one which furniſheth *Potoſia*, with good plenty of Wine, as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarixa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, the moſt noted *Haven* of this Countrey, in the *Latitude* of 19 Degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potoſia*; the wealth whereof brought hither on the backs of their ſheep,

is here shipped for *Lima*; the truth hereof experienced by Sir *Francis Drake*, who seized here on three *Spanish* ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of silver, each of them twenty pound weight a piece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this Coast, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* story, which we shall sum up with as much brevity as we can: The people generally governed by the *Chief* of their *Tribes*, as in all Countreys else, where neither the Arms of Forreiners, nor the ambition of some few of the Natives, had not diminished any thing of those *Natural* rights. Not subject to any one *Supream* till these latter times; the *Ingas*, or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatnesse but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the first so small, that it was not above five, or six leagues in compasse; situate in that part of the Countrey where the Citie of *Cusco* now standeth. Opposed at their first incroachments by the *Cannares*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themselves by a piece of wit: giving it out, that their Family had not onely been the *Seminary* from which mankinde came; but the Authors of that Religion also which was then in use; particularly that the whole World, having been destroyed by a Flood, except onely seven (so far they hit upon the truth) which seven had hid themselves in a Cave, called *Paticambo*; where having lived in safety till the fury of the waters had been asswaged, they came abroad at last and re-peopled the Countrey; that *Viracocha* the Creator, and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how, and with what rites he would be worshipped; which rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; And finally that the same *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the *chief* of their Family; assuring him that he would aid him with invisible forces against all their enemies. This tale soon gained belief amongst those *Barbarians*; and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas*; by that aid victorious. This is supposed to have hapned 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Countrey, which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoyning Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Ægyptians Pharaoh*, the *Tartars Cham*; the word *Inga* signifying an *Emperour*, as *Capa Ingas* (by which they also sometimes called them) the *onely Emperours*. Much reverenced by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of *Treason*. Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to *indeer* their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new factions. The way of *indeerment*, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands, or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A distribution far more equal than that of *Lycurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of Wars, they kept the people busied in their works of *Magnificence*; as building *Palaces* in every one of the *Conquered* Provinces; which served not onely as *Forts* to assure the Conquest, but were employed as *Store-houses* to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of great trouble, so of chiefest use was the crosse-wayes they made over all the Countrey, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome*, and *Ægypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the heighth of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flattest *Plains*; to cut through some Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even such wayes as were uneasie, and support the *Precipices*: and in the *Plains* to vanquish so many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a sandy Countrey must needs carry with it. Kept to these tasks, the people had no leisure to think of practises; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they saw it tended to the *publick benefit*. And for the *Caciques* (so they call the *Nobility*) the *Inga* did not onely command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons: but cauled them to send their *Children* to be brought up there; that they might serve as *Hostages* for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also that all such as repaired to *Cusco* the Imperial Citie, should be attired according to his own Countrey fashion; so to prevent those *Leagues* and *Associations*, which otherwise without any note, or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such *Politick* institutions were by them devised, which had little of the *Barbarous* in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had *Eyes in their Heads*, besides those of *China*. What else concerns the story of them, offereth it self in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of PERU.

1. Mango-Capac *descended of the chief of the first seven Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchie; subdued the* Cannares, *and built the Citie of* Cusco.

2. Sinchi-Rocha, *eldest Son of* Mango, *subdued a great part of* Collao, *as far as* Chancara.

3. Lonque-Yupanqui, *the Son of* Sinchi, *conquered* Chiquito, Ayavire, *the* Canus, *and the Inhabitants about* Titicaca; *the first advancer of the service of* Viracocha, *from whom he did pretend to have many* visits.

4. Mayta-Capac, *the Son of* Yupanqui, *subdued all the rest of* Collao, *the Provinces of* Chuquiapa, *and a great part of the* Charcas.

5. Capac Yupanqui, *or* Yupanqui II. *the Son of* Mayta, *enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto* Mare del Zur.

6. Ro-

6. Rocha II. *or* Yncha Rocha, *eldeſt ſon of* Yupanqui *the ſecond, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the conqueſt of the great Province of* Antabuyallam, *and many others.*

7. Jahuar-Huacac, *ſon of* Rocha *the ſecond, added to his Eſtates (by the valour of his brother* Mayta) *all the Southern parts from* Arequipa *to* Tacaman. *Depoſed by the practiſe of his ſon.*

8. Viracocha, *the ſon of* Huacac, *having ſetled and inlarged his Empire; raiſed many great and ſtately works, and amongſt others many* Aquæducts *of great uſe but charge. For fear of him,* Hancohualla, *King of the* Chuncas, *with many thouſands of his people, forſook their Countrey.*

9. Pachacutec-Ynca, *ſon of* Virachoca, *improved his Kingdom by the conqueſt of many Provinces lying towards the* Andes, *and South-Sea; with that of* Caxamalcu *Northwards.*

10. Yupanqui III. *or* Yncha Yupanchi, *ſon of* Pachatucec, *ſubdued the* Conches, *and* Moxes, *with ſome part of* Chile.

11. Yupanqui IV. *or* Tapac Ynca Yupanchi, *ſon of* Yupanqui *the third, extended his Dominions as far as* Quito.

12. Huayna-Capac, *or* Guaynacapac, *ſon of* Yupanqui *the fourth, the moſt mighty Monarch of* Peru, *conquered the whole Province of* Quito; *and is ſuppoſed to be the founder of thoſe two great Roads ſpoken of before.*

13. Huaſcar, *or* Guaſcar Ynca, *the eldeſt ſon of* Guaynacapa, *after a reign of five years depoſed and ſlain by his brother.*

14. Athualpa, *or* Atubaliba, *the third ſon* Guaynacapa, *by the daughter and Heir of the King of* Quito: *into which Kingdom he ſucceeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of* Quito, *he came upon him with ſuch power, that he overcame him, and ſo gained the Kingdom. Vanquiſhed afterwards by* Pizarro *at the battle of* Caxamalca, *he was taken priſoner. And though he gave in ranſome for his life and liberty, an houſe piled up on all ſides with Gold and Silver, valued (as ſome ſay) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiouſly ſlew him.*

15. Mango Capac II. *the ſecond ſon of* Guaynacapac, *ſubſtituted by* Pizarro *in his brothers Throne; after many viciſſitudes of Fortune, was at laſt ſlain in the Citie of* Cuſco; *and ſo the Kingdom of the* Ingas *began and ended in a Prince of the ſame name; as it had hapned formerly to ſome other Eſtates.* 1533.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who ſubdued this moſt potent and flouriſhing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spaniſh* Empire; and we ſhall finde that he was born at *Truſiglio*, a Village of *Navar*; and by the poor Whore his Mother, laid in the Church-porch, and ſo left to Gods providence: by whoſe direction (there being none found that would give him the breaſt) he was nouriſhed for certain dayes, by ſucking a Sow. At laſt one *Gonſalles*, a Souldier, acknowledged him for his ſon, put him to Nurſe, and when he was ſomewhat grown, ſet him to keep his Swine: ſome of which being ſtrayed, the boy durſt not for fear return home, but betook himſelf to his heels, ran unto *Sevil*, and there ſhipped himſelf for *America*, where he attended *Alfonſo de Oioda* in the diſcovery of the Countreys beyond the Golf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his voyage to the South Sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the conqueſt of *Panama*. Grown rich by theſe Adventures, he aſſociated himſelf with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Luques* a rich-Prieſt: who betwixt them raiſed 220 Souldiers, and in the year 1525. went to ſeek their fortunes on thoſe Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before diſcovered. After divers repulſes at his landing, and ſome hardſhip which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took ſome of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Countrey; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commiſſion for the conqueſt of it: excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furniſhed he landeth in *Peru* again, at ſuch time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two brethren, for the Kingdom: and taking part with the faction of *Guaſcar*, marched againſt *Atubaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a parley, than to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this advantage, picked a quarrel with him, and ſuddenly charged upon him with his Horſe and Ordnance, ſlaying his Guard without reſiſtance; and coming near the Kings perſon (who was then carried on mens ſhoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him priſoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 *Caſtellans*; and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 *Marks* (every *Mark* weighing eight ounces) of his houſhold Plate; and in the ſpoyl of *Caxamalca*, almoſt infinite riches. This, with the Kings ranſom, came to ſo great a ſumme, that beſides the fift part which *Pizarro* ſent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his brethren kept unto themſelves; every Footman had 7200 *Ducats*, and every Horſman twice as much, for their part of the ſpoil; beſides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miſerable King, their priſoner, hath been ſhewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleaſed with their proceedings; few of the greateſt undertakers going

to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro* in reward of ſo great a ſervice, was made the firſt Viceroy of *Peru*, and created Marqueſſe of *Anatilla*: yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief companion, who had raiſed a ſtrong faction in that State; he was after ſlain at *Lima*, by ſome of that faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befell all the reſt; his brother *John* ſlain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin*, in *Lima* with himſelf; *Ferdinando*, ſecretly made away in priſon; and finally *Gonſales* the fourth brother (with the ſon of *Almagro*) ſeverally executed for their Treaſons and Inſurrections, which they had acted in this Countrey againſt their King. So little joy doth wealth ill gotten bring along with it, to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whoſe ſtrange both fortunes & miſfortunes in the courſe of his life, are to be paralelled onely with the like of *Sinan*, a great *Baſſa* in the Court of *Selimus* the firſt; who being born of baſe Parentage, as he (being a Childe) was ſleeping in the ſhade, had his genitals bitten off by a *Sow*. The *Turkiſh* Officers which uſually provided young boyes for the ſervice of the *Grand Signieur*, being in *Epyrus* (for that was *Sinans* Countrey) and hearing of this ſo extraordinary an Eunuch; took him among others, along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the ſecond, and his ſon *Selimus*, he ſo exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief *Baſſa* of the Court; and ſo well deſerved it, that he was accounted *Selimus* right hand, and was indeed the man, to whoſe valour eſpecially, the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*; in which Kingdom, then not fully ſetled, he was alſo ſlain.

But to return unto *Peru*, no queſtion but the *Forces* and *Revennes* of it were exceeding great. For though we finde no particular muſters which they made of their men; or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field; yet by their great ſucceſſes, and many victories, we may conclude them to be maſters of great Bands of men, and skilfull in the Arts of conduct. Nor can we otherwiſe conjecture at the greatneſſe of their yearly *income*, but by the greatneſſe of their Treaſure; ſo infinite and almoſt incredible, that all the Veſſels of the Kings Houſe, his Table, and Kitchin were of Gold and Silver; *Statues* of Giants in his Wardrope, together with the reſemblances in proportion and bigneſſe, of all the Beaſts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fiſhes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the pureſt Gold; Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Cheſts, all of Gold, or Silver; Billets of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billets of Wood, cut out for the fire; three houſes full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, beſides infinite other Treaſures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew ſo wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an horſe, 60 Crowns for a ſmall Veſſel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shooes, : Conſuming all upon their luſts, and ſacrificing their *Gods of Gold* to their *God the Belly*.

OF CHILE.

CHILE is bounded on the North, with the *Desart* of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interposed betwixt it and *Peru*: on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Streits of *Magellan*; and on the East as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main Atlantick; the Countries lying on the East, betwixt it and *Paragnay*, not yet well discovered.

This Countrey lyeth wholly beyond the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, by consequence in the *temperate Zone*: extended in length from the borders of *Peru*, to the mouth of the *Streits*, 500 Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile*, from the word *Chil* (which in more tongues than ours doth signifie as much as cold) from the extream coldness of the Aire and Clime; so vehement here in our Summer *Solstice*, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardned like a piece of *Marble*.

The soil hereof in the midland parts, Mountainous and unfruitfull; towards the Sea-side, levell, fertile, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of *Maize*, Wheat, and most excellent pasturage; plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattel, and Wine enough for the use of the people; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* prospering here exceedingly, as do also all the Fruits, and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Countrey. The people very tall and warlike, some of them, of a *Gigantine* stature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with this greatness, where not much provoked Their garments of the skins of Beasts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of complexion, but as *hirsute* and shagg e haired, as the rest of the *Salvages*.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces: Divided commonly into 1 *Chile*, specially so called, and 2 *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* specially so called, is bounded on the North, with the Desart of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countries, lying betwixt it and *Paragnay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the soyl and people, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontorie near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2 *Rio de Coquimbo*, 3 *La Ligua*, 4 *Topocalma*, 5 *Cacapool*, 6 *Canten*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*; and besides these, a nameless, but more famous River, which in the day time runneth with a violent current, and in the night hath no water at all. The reason of it is, because this River having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the *Snow* falling from the Mountains; which in the heat of the day melted into water, is precipitately carryed into the Sea; but congealed in the coldness of the night, yields no water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Gopiapo*, giving name to a fertile Valley, in the most Northern tract hereof; and neighboured by a small, but commodious Haven. 2 *Serena*, a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-side, not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whose banks it is seated, where built by *Baldivia* the Conquerour and first Governour of this Province, *An.* 1544. The territory round about it rich in Mines of Gold: the Town it self of 200 houses, but so well peopled, that at the landing of some of the *English* under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compell them back unto their ships, which they did accordingly. 3 *S. Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 houses in it) because the *Residence* of the Governour, and the *Courts* of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friers; situate in the 34 Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topacalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val-paraiso*, the best and most noted of this Countrey; out of which the *English* under *Drake* took a *Spanish* ship, and therein 25000 *Pezoes* of the purest Gold, besides other Commodities. 4 *Conception*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, situate on the shores of a large and capacious Bay (by the Natives called *Penco*) by which and the mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the *Salvages* (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 souldiers, besides the Townsmen. Opposite hereunto lyeth the Isle of *S. Marie*, so near the shore, that it seems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea; fruitfull, and very well provided of Swine and Poultrie, but the people so in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5 *Auraccoa* (so I think they call it) a strong Fortress in the Countrey of the *Auracans*, the most potent Nation of these parts; who weary of the *Spanish* yoke, revolted against *Baldivia*, overcame him in a set fight, and at last killed him: this piece being thereupon forsaken, & of no more use. 6 *De los Confines*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Countrey of those *Auracans*, to serve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongol* near adjoyning: distant from the Sea-shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garsias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Neuva de los infantes*. 7 *Imperiale*, in the 38 Degree and 40 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Cauten*, an Episcopal See, and the best Fortress of the *Spaniards* in all this

this Province. Fortified and made a Colonie of *Spaniards* in the year 1551. and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, becauſe they found an *Eagle* with *two heads* made in Wood, on the doors of their houſes; a monument perhaps of ſome *Germans*, who had here been ſhipwrackt. A Town of ſo great wealth and power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a war betwixt them and the *Araucans*, ſpoken of before, they are ſaid to have brought into the field 300000 men. 8. *Villa Rica*, another Colonie of *Spaniards*, 16 leagues on the South-East of *Imperiale*, and 25 leagues from the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldivia*, the moſt noted Town of all theſe parts, ſituate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a ſafe and capacious *Haven*, and neighboured by *Mines* of Gold of ſuch infinite riches, that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of thoſe Mines) received thence dayly by the labour of each ſingle workman, 25000 Crowns a man, and ſometimes more. Sacked by the *Salvages*, An. 1599 ſince repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Oſorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilve*, (or *Ancud*, as the *Salvages* call it) ſituate in a barren ſoyl, but well ſtored with *Gold*, and thought to be more populous than *Valdivia* it ſelf. 11. *Caſtro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Province, in the *Latitude* of 44. built in a large and fruitfull iſland of the Bay of *Ancud*, ſaid to be 30 leagues in length; but the breadth unequal; in ſome parts nine, in others not above two leagues. 12. S. *Juan de la Frontera*, on the further ſide of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong alſo certain iſlands lying on the Coaſts and ſhores hereof. 1. S. *Maries*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five leagues from the Continent, fruitfull of Grain, and very good Paſturage; ſufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the deſcendants of thoſe *Americans*, who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their liberty againſt that Nation: of which ſo jealous, that they would not ſuffer the *Engliſh* under *Drake* and *Cavendiſh* to land amongſt them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or ſome friends of theirs. 3. *Caſtro*, which we have ſpoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streits of *Magellan*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom firſt diſcovered, of whom we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the *Streits*, 300 leagues in breadth: from one Sea to the other, where broadeſt, above 400 leagues; in ſome but 90 onely, and in others leſſe, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The inland parts of the Countrey not yet diſcovered: thoſe on the Sea-ſide obſerved to be rocky and unfruitfull, expoſed for the moſt part of the year to ſuch bitter colds, that the Snow lyeth alwayes on the Mountains. The people ſaid to be tall of ſtature, and ſome of them of a *Gigantine* bigneſſe, reported to be ten, or eleven foot high; and by the *Spaniards* for that reaſon are called *Patagons*. Both great and leſſe, ſufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurniſhed of any houſes, notwithſtanding the rigour of the cold.

No houſes doth imply no Towns, and therefore we muſt look for none in ſo rude a Countrey, as hath not hitherto converſed with more *civil* Nations. So that the moſt that we can do, is to Coaſt the ſhores, and ſee what names of *Ports*, or *Promontories* we can finde therein. And firſt upon the Sea-coaſts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and ſo deſcending) 1. The Promontory called *Cabo de las Iſlas*. 2. The *Port*, or Haven of S. *Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nueſtra Sennora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Ancon Sinſalida*, on the banks of a ſemi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few iſlands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of *Victorie*, ſituate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the *Streits*; ſo called from the name of the ſhip in which ſome of *Magellanes* Souldiers did firſt compaſſe the World. For *Ferdinand Magellano* a noble *Portugal*, and well ſkilled in *Navigation*, at the perſwaſion, or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon ſome diſcontents received in the Court of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*) he had made offer of his ſervice; undertook the finding out (if poſſible) a ſhorter cut to the *Moluccos*, than diſcovered formerly. In the year 1520 he began his voyage, his Fleet conſiſting but of 5. ſhips, whereof that called the St. *Anthonio* forſook him in ſome great diſpleaſure, and returned to *Spain*, another of them being loſt not long after in a ſtorm, keeping along the Coaſt to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October*, fell upon the *Cape* of *Virgins*, at the very enterance of this Streit, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon: and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of theſe *Narrow Seas*, ſince called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreſhed himſelf in a little Iſland called *Iuvaganava* he paſſed unto that alſo, but not far from the *Philippins*, the Prince whereof called *Hamabar* he perſwaded to become a Chriſtian, baptized him by the name of *Charles*, & finally engaging in a quarrel of his againſt the King of *Mautan*, or *Mattan*, an adjoyning Iſland, where he was there unfortunately ſlain, *An.* 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men being treacherouſly ſlain by *Hamabar*, the other three ſhips departed with no more than 115 men aboard them, which put them to a neceſſity of burning one of their ſhips, that they might have men enough to make good the others, with theſe two ſhips they came at laſt to the *Moluccos*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themſelves; that called the *Trinity*, under Cape *Spinoſa*, deſigned for *Panama* in *New Spain*, from which driven back by contrary winds to the Iſle of *Tedoro*, was ſeized on, and ſpoiled by *Anthonio Britoa* Captain, commanding there a ſmall Navy of the King of *Portugals*. The other ſhip, which by a happy *omen* was called *Villaria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebaſtian del Cano*, after a long and dangerous voyage, wherein it was thought that he had ſayled at the leaſt 14000 leagues, returned to *Spain* in ſafety, and brought the welcom news of their good ſucceſſe.

We

We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that sayled round about the world, which may be true in a qualified sense; *viz*, that he was the first *Captain*, or man of note that atchieved this enterprise, *Magellanus* perishing in the midst of it; and therefore is reported to have given for his device, a *Globe*, with this motto, *Tu primus circumdedisti me*. This navigation was begun, *An.* 1577. and in two years and an half with great vicissitude of fortune, finished; concerning which his famous voyage, a Poet then living, directed to him this *Epigram*.

Drake *pererrati novit quem terminus orbis,*
Quemque simul mundi vidit uterque polus:
Si taceant homines, facient te sydera notum;
Sol *nescit comitis non memor esse sui.*

Drake, *whom th'encompass'd earth so fully knew,*
And whom at once both poles of heaven did view:
Should men forget thee, Sol could not forbear
To chronicle his fellow traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, these *Magellan* straits, are in the 52 degree; and are by *M. John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the *Cape* of S. "*Marie*, lyeth the first *strait*, where it ebbeth and floweth with a violent swiftness: the *strait* not be-"ing fully half a mile broad, and the first fall into it very dangerous and doubtfull. Three leagues his "strait continueth, when it openeth into a sea, eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which, ly-"eth the second strait, right West, South-west from the first; a perilous and unpleasing passage, three "leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This strait openeth it self into another sea, which is extended even "to the *Cape of victory*; where is the strait properly called the *strait of Magellan*; a place of that na-"ture, that which way soever a man bend his course, he shall be sure to have the wind against him. The "length hereof is 40 leagues; the breadth in some places two leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. "The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope of Anchorage, the course of the water full of turnings "and changings; withal so violent, that when a ship is once entred, there is no returning. On both "sides of it are high Mountains continually covered with snow; from which proceed those counter-"winds, which beat with equall fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly not pleasing to view, and ve-"ry hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose *M. Davis*.

But to proceed, the way thus opened, was travelled not long after, An. 1525. by *Garsias de Loyasa*; next in the year 1524. by *Simon de Alcazavo*, and four years after by three ships of the Bishop of *Placenza* in *Spain*, but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thorow; till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1577. after which it grew more familiar amongst the seamen. However, we are so much debtors to the attempts of others, as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bayes and Promontories, which they discovered in the *search*: though many of them since new named by the *English*, and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, 1 *Cabo de Quade*. 2 *Cape Gallant*. 3 *Cordes Bay*. 4 *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Conus* of this great *Pyramis*. 5 *Porto Famine*. 6 A little isle called *Elizabeths Iland*, and at the *exit* of the strait into *Mare del Noort*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending Northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the main Ocean 1 *Rio de la Crux*, neighboured by a Promontorie called *Cabo de las Bareras*; where *Magellano* staid all *September*, and the greatest part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to discover further. 2 The Bay of *S. Julian*, out of which he set sayl for this adventure, about the later end of *August*, leaving there two of his companions condemned of *mutinie*. 3 The Port of *Desire*. 4 A large Promontorie called the *Cape of S. George*. 5 The outlets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6 A goodly Haven entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7 The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8 The Bay of *Amegada*. 9 The Promontorie called the Cape of *S. Andrews*. And 10 the River of *S. Anne*, beyond which lyeth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the most that I can say touching *Magellanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points and Promontories; and this is nothing, (as we see) but a *Nomenclator*. It must be better peopled and more discovered, before it can afford discourse of more variety. All we can adde, is that the passage back again from *Mare del Zur* to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found so safe and easie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted first by *Ladrilliro* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*; and attempted only: performed not long after the voyage of Sir *Francis Drake*, by *D Pedro Sarmiento*, imployed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no less danger; so much, that few have since endeavoured to return that way.

As for the fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to understand that it was first discovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief friends and associates. But he having other designs in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himself, and to out *Pizarro*, did discover it only: the conquest of it being reserved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the setling of his affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had imployed in that action. He going souldierlike to work, not only did subdue the people; but as he gained ground, built some Fortress, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more stubborn and untractable people, than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who quickly weary of the yoke, besieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himself coming with too small a power to relieve his people, vanquished and slew him in the field. Some adde that they poured *Gold* into his throat (as

the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craſſus*) bidding him *ſatiate himſelf with that which he ſo much thirſted* After this blow given in the year 1551. the *Salvages* recovered the rich vallies of *Anranco*, *Tucapel*. and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day: The Towns of *Los Confines*, and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of thoſe vallies, then deſerted alſo. Nor ſtaid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599. (having provided themſelves of 200 Corſlets, and ſeventy Muskets) they brake out again; ſurprized and ſacked the Town of *Baldivia*; forced *Imperiale* after a whole years ſiege, to ſurrender without any conditions; and in the year 1604. took *Oſorno* by famine. Of thirteen Cities, which the *Spaniards* had poſſeſſed amongſt them, they had taken nine; ſome of them ſince recovered, but the moſt demoliſhed. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Starmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies, to command thoſe Streits, *An.* 1584. The one he ſetled near the mouth of the *Streit*, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jeſus*, and left therein 150 of his men; the other he intended on the narroweſt place of the Streit, to be called *Cividad del Roy Philip*, which he reſolved to fortifie, and plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there others of his men, promiſing to relieve them ſhortly with all things neceſſary. But ſuch was his unhappy fate, that after many ſhipwracks and diſappointments which befell unto him, in the purſuit of his deſign; he was at laſt taken by the *Engliſh*, under the command of Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who was there in perſon: and his two Colonies, for want of timely ſuccours, either ſtarved at home, or eaten by the Salvages, as they ranged the Countrey.

OF PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the East, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North, with *Brasil*; on the West, with some unknown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay* (one of the greatest of the world) which runneth through it: the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of *Silver* they expected from it.

The Countrey (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitfull soyl; capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the *Cattel* increase lesse which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horses multiplying in a wonderfull manner. Well stored with *Sugar-Canes*, and not unfurnished with *Mines*, both of Brasse, and Iron; some veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of *Amethysts*. Of Stags great plenty, and of *Monkeys* almost infinite numbers; not to say any thing of Lyons, Tygers, and such hurtfull Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing said, but what hath been before observed of the other *Salvages*.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, so called from the chief Town by which it runneth. 3. *Zarcaranna*, which riseth in the Countrey of the *Diagnitas*, and falling into a *Lake* at the end of his course, doth from thence passe into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Estero*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and passing through two great *Lakes*, meets with 5. the *Bermeio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata*, near the Town of St. *Foy*. 6 *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potosi*, in the Province of *Charcos*; but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North side of that River, there is 7. that of St. *Saviour*, or St. *Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it; 8. *Rio Nigro*, or the *Black* River, of a longer course; but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9. *Tquaan*, and 10. several others, whose united streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Countrey: But swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these 11. *Rio de* St. *Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of 1. *Rio de la Plata*. 2. *Tucaman*, and 3. *La Crux de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniard*, or not well discovered, cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River; ascending many leagues up the water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the soyl and people we have seen before.

Chief Towns hereof 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Neustra Sennora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Cividad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern bank of the River of *Plata*, where built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, *Anno* 1535. Deserted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabesa de Vacca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally in the year 1582. re-edified and planted with a new *Colony*. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34 degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 leagues from the mouth of the River; fortified with a Mud-Wall, and a little Castle, with some Pieces of Ordnance; yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2. S. *Fe*, or S. *Fidei*, 50 leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the water, near the confluence of it with the River *Estero*: of the same bignesse as the other, but somewhat richer: the people here being given to clothing, which *Manufacture* they exchange with the *Brasilians* for *Sugar Rice*, and other necessary Commodities. 3. *Neustra Sennora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* onely, higher up the River, from the mouth whereof 300 leagues distant: situate in the *Latitude* of 25. and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru*, and *Brasil*; well built and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Countrey. Inhabited by three sorts of men, first natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accompted 400 Families; 2. The *Mestizos*, begotten by the *Spaniard* upon the *Natives*; and 3. *Mulatos*, born of the *Spaniards* and the *Negroes*; of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake, called *Ytupuam*, in the midst whereof an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the water. 5. *Cividad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80 leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*; situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitfull soyl, but a sickly Aire; for which cause, and the frequent insurrections of the *Salvages*, but meanly peopled. 6. St. *Anne*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*; 7. St. *Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption*, three noted Ports. 8. *Puerto de Guaybiamo*. 9. *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 10. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or onely Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last save one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men, by the hands of the *Salvages*.

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the confines of *Chile*, through which they make their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Nort*: the exact bounds hereof to the North and South, not yet resolved on.

The Conntrey, for so much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, well manured and fruitfull; that towards *Magellanica*, barren, untilled, and not well discovered, no veins of Gold, or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers of 1. *Salado*, so called from the brackishnesse and saltnesse of it; and 2. *Del Estero*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof 1. S. *Jago del Estero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*: the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishops See, and the seat of the Governour; and distant about 180 leagues from *Buenos Airez*. 2. S. *Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitfull soyl, both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 leagues from S. *Jago* 3. *Talavera* or *Nuestra Sennora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Esteco*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitfull soyl, and inhabited by an industrious people, grown wealthy by their *Manufactures* of Cotton-wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance: with which they drive a great trade at the *Mines* of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for trade, as being equally distant from S. *Juan de la Frontera*, in the Præfecture of *Chile*, & S. *Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*; 50 leagues from each; and seated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Airez*; much travelled consequently by those who go from *Peru* to *Brasil*, or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Cordura*, built at such time as *Garsius de Mendoza*, son of the Marquesse of *Cannete*, and Vice-Roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7. *Morata*. 8. *Chacinoca*. 9. *Sococha*, and 10. *Calabinna*; Townships belonging to the *Natives*.

3. S. *CRUX DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Countrey of the *Chiquitos* and *Cherignanaes*, two Tribes of the *Salvages*. By some accounted to *Peru*, because under the *Juridical Resort* of *Charcos*: but so far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province (100 *Spanish* leagues at least) that I think fitter to accompt it to the Province of *Paraguay*; betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly seated.

The soyl abundantly productive of *Maize* and Wines, plenty of most sorts of *American* fruits, which I can give no *English* name to; a kinde of *Palm*, of whose trunk they make great store of meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither soyl nor aire agreable to the fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So destitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water, preserved in pits: the cause of no small wants, and of many great murders, the people either dying for thirst, or killing one another for some water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Sancta Crux*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in open field, inlarging it self into many Plains, and thirsty Vallies: neighboured by a Brook, or *Torrent* breaking from the Rocks; which four leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with Fish. 2. *Baranca*, 60 leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3. *Tomina*. 4. *Lagunilla*, and 5. *Tarixa*; three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the incursions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6. *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colonie of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice Roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuflo de Chaves*, who in the year 1548. first discovered those parts, was treacherously slain by one of the *Salvages*.

The principal Nations of this Countrey, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurves*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*: the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnitas*, in the *Cantred* of *Tucuman*; more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chunesses*, *Xaquesses*, *Xacoaes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerfull Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first discovery of this Countrey ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* adventurer; who in the year 1515. passing up the River to the *Latitude* of 34 Degrees, and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power; was there unfortunately slain. The design after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1526. who sayled against the stream as high as the River *Parana*: at the reception of which, the great River called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortresse called *Fort Cabot*; and 30 leagues more up the River, that called St. *Anne*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcias* a *Portugal* found him, in the year next following. In the year 1535. the businesse was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*; and sent *John de Aiolas* to discover Northwards of whose unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully setled till the year 1540. when *Alvares Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabesa de Vacca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the further planting of the Countrey, though some places have been marked out for new *Plantations*; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

OF BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounded on the East, with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countreys, lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I finde not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Brasil*-wood, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of *Cypresses*.

It reacheth from the 29. to the 39 Degree of *Southern* Latitude; or measuring it by miles, it is said to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*; which must be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil*, is so short of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they possesse nothing but the Sea-Coasts, and some few leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Countrey full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forrests, diversified into Hills and Plains alwayes pleasant and green. The aire for the most part sound and wholsom, by reason of the fresh winds which do reign amongst them; there being all along the Coasts certain quick winds rising from the South, about 2 hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The soyl in most parts very fruitfull, were it not cloied with too much rain; but howsoever liberally provided of *Sugar Canes*, (no one Countrey more) for refining of which they have their *Ingenios* (as they call them) or *Sugar houses* in most parts of the Countrey; in which they entertain many thousand *slaves*, brought hither yearly from *Guinea*, and *Congo*, and other maritime parts of *Africk*. A trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Brasil* to *Portugal*, 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar, every *Arrobe* containing 25 Bushels of our *English* measure. Here is also infinite quantities of that *red wood* used in dying Cloath, which we commonly call *Brasil-wood*; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Countrey, or the Countrey rather from the Wood, I determine not:) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greatnesse, that whole families live on an *Arm* of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commoditics common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular instance.

Amongst the *Rarities* hereof, are reckoned 1. the *Plant*, called *Copiba*, the bark of which being cut doth send out a *Balm*, the soveraign vertue whereof is so well known to the very beasts that being bit by venomous Serpents, they resort unto it for their cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close the leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of sight. 3. A kinde of *Wheat* in the Valley near unto S. *Sebastian*, which is continually growing, and alwayes ripe; or never wholly ripe, because alwayes growing: for when one Ear doth grain, another doth bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The *Oxfish*, with eyes and eye-lids, two arms a cubit long, and at each an hand with five fingers and nails, as in a man; under the arms two teats, inwards like a Cow, in every female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All Saints*, which had the face of an Ape, the foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a man; of such a terrible aspect, that the Souldier who shot him fell down dead: but this I rather look on as an *aberration* of Nature, than a *rarity* in her. 6. Beasts of such strange shapes, and such several kinds, that it may be said of *Brasil*, as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid apportat novi*; every day some new object of Admiration.

The people here are endowed with a pretty understanding: as may seem by him, who tartly blamed the covetousnesse of the *Spaniſh*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold; and holding up a wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Christians!* But in most places they are barbarous, the men and women go stark naked, and on high *festival* dayes hang Jewels in their lips: these *festival* dayes are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry, over the rosted body of a *fat man*; whom they cut in *collops*, called *Boucon*, and eat with great greedinesse, and much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindfull of injuries, and forgetfull of benefits. The men cruel without measure, and the women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reason of which one being demanded, made answer; because they had amongst them neither *Law*, *Faith*, nor *Rulers*. They are able swimmers, as well women as men; and will stay under water an hour together. Women in travel are here delivered without any great pain, and presently go about their businesse, belonging to good house-wives: The good-man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husbands in *England*, who are said to *breed their Wives Children*) being sick in their stead, and keeping their bed; so far that he hath broaths made him, is visited by his *Gossips*, or Neighbours, and hath *Junkets* sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some *Rarities*, if not *Monstrosities* in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like beasts; such as *Orson* is fained to have been in the old *Romance*; and probably so ingendered also; that the *Guaymares* disbowel Women with Childe, and roast the Children; and finally that the Salvage Nation of *Camucuiara* have their Paps almost down unto their knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster than ordinary.

Rivers of note I finde not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, than proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way, as we crosse the Countrey, we shall not passe them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the division of the Countrey, not into Provinces, or Nations, as in other places, but into *Præfectures*, or Captainships as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of St. *VINCENT* bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil people of all *Brasil*. Chief Towns whereof 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good ships of burden, but distant from the Main three leagues. A Town of no more than 120 houses, yet the best of this *Præfecture*; beautified with a Parish Church, and two Convents of Fryers. Taken and held two moneths by Sir *Tho. Cavendish*, An. 1591. since that environed with a Wall, and fortified with two Castles. 2. St. *Vincents* better built but not so well fitted with an Haven; of about 70 houses, and 100 Inhabitants. 3. *Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5. St *Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Iniambis*. A Town of about 100 houses, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of *Jesuits*; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains, called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. St. *Philips*, a small Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to inlarge it self; and passing thence falleth at the last in the River *Parana*, one of the greatest Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, so called, because entred into that moneth by *John Diaz de Solis*, An. 1515. neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the *French* under the conduct of *Villegagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Chastillon* a great friend of the *Hugonets*, to whom it was intended for a place of *Refuge* (as *New-England* afterwards for the like:) but within three years after their first coming hither (*An* 1558) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the sword. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Collignia*, the Fort and Colonie of the *French*, so named in honour of *Gaspar Colligni* (commonly called *Chastillon*) by whose incouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Ianeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. St. *Sebastians*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four strong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, distant twelve leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; not long since made a *Portugal* Colonie. Besides these, there are two great *Burroughs* of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. *Of the HOLY GHOST (del Spiritu Santo)* one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; well stored with *Cotton wool*, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of fish. The onely Town of note in it, is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church dedicated to St. *Francis*, a Monastery of *Benedictines*, and a Colledge of *Jesuits*; the chief conveniency, a safe and commodious Haven, capable of the greatest Vessels.

4. *Of PORTO SEGURO*, the secure Haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it; when being tossed at Sea by a terrible tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns hereof 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity than *Fame*, of more fame than bigness; as not containing fully 200 Families. 2. *Santa Crux*, three leagues from the other; a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Avera*, in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santo Amaro*, or St. *Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which use here were five *Ingenios*, or *Sugar Engines*: deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Salvages, against whom they had not power enough to make good the place; and the Sugars destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. *Of DES ILHEOS*, or of the *Isles*, so named from certain Islands lying against the Bay on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Island (with like *Analogie* as a Town of good note in *Flanders*, hath the name of *Insula*, or *Lisle*) The town consisting of about 150. or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighboured by a great *Lake* of 12 leagues in compasse (out of which that River doth arise:) full of a great but wholsom fish, which they call *Monatos*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colonie, much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of *Salvages* more *Salvage* than any of their fellows: who being driven out of their own Countrey fell into this *Præfecture*, which they had utterly destroyed; if some of St. *Georges* Reliques, as the *Jesuits* tell us (but I binde no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, An. 1581. had not stayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. *Of TODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth; in breadth two leagues and an half, 18 fathom deep, and full of many little Islands: but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with *Cotton-wool*. A Bay in which are many safe *Stations* and *Roads* for shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyns*, a *Dutch man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who in the year 1627. seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 sayl of ships (four of them being men of War) all lying under the protection of the Forts and Castles, built for the safety of that *Bay*. For thrusting in amongst them with his own ship onely (the rest not being able to follow) he so laid about him, that

that having ſunk the *Vice-Admiral*, he took all the reſt, conditioning onely for their lives; notwithſtanding all the ſhot which was made againſt him from the ſhips and Caſtles, and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the ſhroe. Chief Towns hereof 1. S. *Salvador*, built on a little Hill, on the North-ſide of the *Bay*, by *Thomas de Souſa*; adorned with many Churches, and Religious houſes; and fortified (beſides the Wall) with three ſtrong Caſtles; the one called S. *Anthony*, the other S. *Philip*, and the third *Tapeſipe*. Yet not ſo ſtrong by reaſon of ſome Hills adjoyning which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, An. 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and ſince loſt again. 2. *Paripe*, more within the Land, four leagues from S. *Saviours*. 3. *Seregippe del Rei*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River, but amongſt many rich Paſtures, and ſome veins of ſilver.

7. *Of* FERNAMBUCK, one of the richeſt *Præfectures* for *Tobacco*, *Sugar*, and the great quantity of *Braſil-wood*, which is brought hence yearly for the *Diers*, in all this Countrey; but deſtitute of Corn, and moſt other neceſſaries, with which ſupplied from the *Canaries*, and ſometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns hereof 1. *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Braſil*: containing above 2000 perſons; not reckoning in the *Church men*, nor taking the great number of *ſlaves* which they keep for their *Sugar-works* into the accompt: for whoſe uſe they have here eight *Parochial* Churches, five *Religious* houſes, and ſome *Hoſpitals*. Situate near the Sea-ſide, but on ſo uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a *Regular* fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well built Caſtle; and that well planted with Braſſe pieces. Which notwithſtanding, in the year 1595. the Caſtle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they uſed to ſtow all their chief Commodities) were took by Capt. *James Lancaſter*, and ſome few of the *Engliſh*; who having tarried in the Haven above a moneth, brought home with him eight of his own ſhips, four *French men*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance; all laden with the choiceſt Merchandiſe of *Braſil*, and *India*. 2. *Amatta de Braſil*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by ſelling the *Braſil wood*. 3. S. *Laurenzo*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled. 4. *Poincur*, upon a River ſo named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of S. *Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garaſu*, about five leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the moſt part by poor and *Mechanical* perſons, till the year 1632 when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This *Præfecture*, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque* (a great houſe in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the Town of *Olinda* being took by them in the year 1629. the Port and all the *Avenues* unto it ſo ſtrongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. *Of* TAMARACA, ſo called from an Iſland of that name, diſtant about five miles from *Olinda*; of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a ſtrong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and ſo blocked it up, that it hath ſince been of no uſe to the *Spaniard*. This the leaſt *Præfecture* in *Braſil*, but withall the ancienteſt; extended three leagues onely in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Monſanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thouſand *Ducats*. But his Rents much diminiſhed, if not quite inverted, ſince the loſſe of the Haven.

9. *Of* PARAIBA, ſo called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of moſt note herein. On the banks whereof ſtandeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, about three leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good ſhips to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long ſince by 500 *Portugals*, beſides *Slaves* and *Negroes*. Not Walled, till they began to ſtand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loſſe of *Olinda*; but more ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory, called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, than by any works within the Land. A Caſtle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were poſſeſſed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoyning Haven, called *Port Francois*, but outed by the *Portugal*, *An.* 1584. who have ſince held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; eſpecially ſince their taking of a little iſland lying over againſt them, called the Iſle of *Noronha*.

10. *Of* RIO GRANDE, ſo called from the River *Poteingi* (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River. not made a *Præfecture* till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next *Pretender*, ſome of the *French* began to fix here, *An.* 1597. But the King of *Spain* not willing to have any ſuch neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba*, to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the *Salvages* beginning to riſe up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to ſeek aid from him of *Fernambuck*; by whoſe help having ſlain five thouſand, and took three thouſand of them, the reſt became *Vaſſals* to the *Portugals*: who built here an impregnable Caſtle (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned and furniſhed with Ammunition and all other neceſſaries; very few *Portugals*, except thoſe of the Garriſon, being yet come over.

11. *Of* SIARA, a late *Præfecture* alſo, in which the *Portugals* have no more than a Caſtle, with a dozen houſes, or thereabouts, beſides that of the Governour adjoyning to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Veſſels. Of ſome trade in regard of the *Chryſtal*, *Cotton-wool*, and ſome precious ſtones, found in the Countrey hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and purſue the Conqueſt; here being great plenty of *Sugar-Canes*, but no works to make it.

12. *Of*

12. *Of MARAGNON*, an Island lying in the mouth of the great River so called, in the furthest parts of *Brasil* Northwards, and many leagues distant from *Siara*, the last of their *Prafectures*; the Countrey intervening not yet discovered, or otherwise made known unto us, than by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the *Coast*. An Island of a fruitfull soyl, if pains and husbandry were not wanting: affording naturally *Maize*, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the *Salvages* use for bread; good store of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Brasil wood*, and the best *Tobacco*; and in some places *Balm* and *Amber*. Watered with many fresh Rivers, and pleasant Springs: well-wooded both for Timber and Fewel: and in a word, blessed with so temperate an Aire (though so near the *Æquator*) that no place can be more commodious for the life of man. The people strong of body, healthy and long-lived without any *baldnesse*; industrious in their *Feather-works* and *Manufactures* of Cotton; the *Women* curious in ordering their hair, fruitfull in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old and sometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their marriage; and then apparelled onely from the waste to their knees.

The Villages hereof possessed by the Natives, consisted but of four great Houses; each of them two, or three hundred foot in length, and twenty, or thirty foot in breadth; so placed as they resembled a *Quadrangular* Cloyster: And in each house so many households, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves* (for so they called them) contained three hundred persons, and some twice that number: Of these were twenty seven in all, whose names I hold impertinent to be mustered here: The total estimate of the people when the *French* came thither, amounting to 12000 Souls. For the *French* trading in this Island, and carrying themselves courteously amongst the *Natives*, found them not unwilling to admit a *Colony of* that Nation, if sent over to them: by whose aide they might free themselves from all other *Pretenders*, and be instructed in the Gospel. Accordingly a *Colonie*, and four *Capuchin* Fryers, are sent over to them, *An.* 1612. Some *Salvages* gained unto the Faith, and a strong Castle, called S. *Lewis* commodiously built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not rested there when dis-seized by the *Portugals*, sent thither under the Conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, *Anno* 1614. Who to the Castle of S. *Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added those of S. *Marie*, and S. *Francis*, planted two Villages in the Island by the names of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Jago*, and ever since have held it without molestation.

13. *Of* PARA, the most Northern *Prafecture* of *Brasil*, towards *Guiana*; so called from the River of *Para*, (supposed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it, two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen fathoms deep: on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground than the rest) the *Portugals* have built the Castle of *Para*, in form *Quadrangular*, and well Walled, except towards the River: the Countrey thereabouts inhabited by 300 *Portugueze*, besides the Garrison.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one *Supream*. Divided into many *Tribes*, and each Tribe governed by their *Chiefs*, as in other Countreys. These Tribes so many, and the Muster of their names so useless, that I now forbear it. In this estate they lived when discovered first; but by whom first discovered, will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get some colour of a Title for the Crown of *Castile*, ascribe it to *John Pinsone*, and *Diego de Lepe*, two of their own Countrey; who as they say, had landed on it in the year 1500. before the coming of *Capralis*, though the same year also. The *Portugals* attribute the discovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Caprali*, sent by their King *Emanuel* to the *East-Indies*: who being driven over hither from the Coast of *Guinea*, took possession of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a *Crosse*, giving the name of *Sanctæ Crucis*, or the *Holy Crosse*, to this new discovery. That name changed afterwards to *Brasil* from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongst them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Vespucius* a *Noble Florentine*. An. 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation in the year 1503. were by *Emmanuel* employed in a further discovery. Who speeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly send over some *Plantations* thither. But a great controversie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged: the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull, or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the sixt (by whom the whole undiscovered World was divided betwixt those two Kings) it seemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Castile*. Enjoyed by this *Emmanuel*, and the Kings succeeding till the death of *Sebastian* (which *Sebastian* the *Jesuits* look on as the Founder of all their Colledges in this Countrey) and by the *Spaniards* since the death of *Henry* whose reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being so prudently jealous of their interesse in it, that they would suffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongst them. By them possessed entirely without any Rivals (I mean for so much of the Countrey as they had subdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part; and got the *Prafectures* of *Fornanback*, and *Todos Los Sanctos* (or the Bay) by the Right of War. The rest with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late *Revolt* of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, submitting unto *John* the 4th. of the house of *Bragance*, whom the *Portugueze* had made their King, *Anno* 1639.

OF

OF GUIANA.

GUIANA is bounded on the East with the Main *Atlantick*; on the West with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather some undiscovered Countreys interposed betwixt them; on the North with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South with that of the *Amazons*. The reason of the name I finde not, unlesse it be so called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is situate on both sides of the *Line*, extended from the fourth Degree of *Southern*, to the eighth of the *Northern* Latitude. The Air, notwithstanding this situation under the *Æquator*, affirmed to be temperate, the Eastern winds (which they call the *Brizes*) constantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blasts. The Countrey towards the Sea side flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and swelled with hils: in all places so adorned with Natures *Tapestrie*, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, fruit either ripe or green growing still upon them) that no Countrey in the world could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we shall see anon, when the particular parts hereof come into Discourse.

Of the People it is said in generall, that they have amongst them no setled Government; and though they acknowledge some superiority in the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they please. *Adultery* and *Murder*, which are only punishable, not otherwise expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer sort have two or three Wives, and somtimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any further ceremony or *formalities* of Law, they beat out their brains. Their wives, especially the elder, they use for *Servants*; and he which hath most such, is the greatest man. Without *Religion*, or any notion of a *Godhead*; not so far onwards on the way to the worship of the true God, as to be *Idolaters*: for though *Idolatrie* be mistaken in the proper Object, it supposeth a *Deitie*; and they who have this *Principle*, That there is a God, have learned one, and not the least of the points of their *Catechism*. Their *Accompts* amongst themselves they keep with a bundle of sticks; which they diminish or increase according to the times of their contract. Their *Funerals* they solemnize with a Feast, but with such diversity in the deportment of both Sexes, that whiles the *Women* howl extremely, the *Men* perform the *Obsequies* with singing and excessive *drinking*; the one as improper for a *Feast*, as the other for a *Funeral*.

Rivers of most note in it, besides 1 *Orenoque*, and 2 the River of *Amazons*, and those rather boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, than proper unto this alone. 3 *Arrawari*, 4 *Conawini*, 5 *Casipurough*, or *Cassipure*, all falling into the same main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the last arising out of the Lake of the *Arachosi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five spans deep. 6 *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7 *Wia*, 8 *Cajane*, 9 *Marwine*, 10 *Essequebe*, a River of twenty dayes journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque* or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into these four parts, 1 *Rio de las Amazones*, or the River of *Amazons*, 2 *Wiapoco* or *Guiana* specially so called, 3 *Orenoque*, and 4 the Isles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Countrey which lieth along the tract of that famous River. The soil in some places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choicest fruits. Full of large Woods, and in those Woods most sort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongst others of most note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the *Totock*; a tree of great bulk, and as great a fruit; this last as big as a mans head, and so hard withall, that when the fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the woods without an helmet or some such shelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their brains. The *kernels* of it, for the most part ten or twelve in number, have the taste of *Almonds*, and are said to be *provocative* in point of *Venerie*. Of which the Salvages have this By-word, *Pigue secke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to say, Eat *Totock*, if thou wouldst be potent in the Acts of *Venus*. Here are also *Sugar canes* in some places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taste whereof is said to be like Strawberries, Claret-wine, and Sugar.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Countrey, the *Yaos*, *Cockettuway*, *Pattecui*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackehanes* dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons*, and *Arowians* possessed of the Ilands. Towns of note I have met with none amongst them; though every house (most of them 150 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the least an hundred persons) might pass sufficiently for a Village. Yet they are safer housed than so, for otherwise their houses would afford them but little comfort in the overflowings of the River, which drown all the Countrey: and therefore they betake themselves to the tops of trees, and there remain, like Birds, with their several families, till the waters be drawn in again, and the earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find some of these their dwellings called by proper names, as 1 *Matarem*, 2 *Roakery*, 3 *Anarcaprock*, 4 *Haaman*, 5 *Womians*, and 6 *Cogemymne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The first Discoverer of this River and the parts adjoyning, was *Orellana* the Lieutenant of *Gonsales Pizarro*, whom his brother *Francisco Pizarro*, then Viceroy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noyse of some rich Countreys beyond the *Andes*, he raised sufficient Forces, and passed over those *Mountains*; where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a boat, and sent this *Orellana* to bring in provisions. But the River which he chanced into, was so swift of course, that he was not able to go back; and therefore of necessity to obey his fortune in following the course of that strong water. Passing along by divers desolate and unpeopled places, he came at last into a Countrey planted and inhabited; where he first heard of the *Amazons* (by those *Salvages* called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people: And in the end having spent his time in passing down this River from the beginning of *January* to the end of *August* 1540. he came at last into the Sea; and getting into the Isle of *Cubana*, sayled into *Spain*: the course of his voyage down the water he estimated at 1800 leagues (or 5400 *English* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his passage, as himself affirmed; onely some *masculine* women shewed themselves intermixt with the men, to oppose his landing; and in some places he found men with *long hair* like women; either of which might make these parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got *Commission* for the conquest of the Countreys by him discovered; and in the year 1549. he betook himself unto the service. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at least, he could never hit upon the *Channel* which brought him down, though attempted often. Which ill successe, with the consideration of his losse both in fame and fortunes, brought him to his grave; having got nothing but the honour of the first discovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, since called *Orellana*. The enterprize pursued, but with like successe, by one *Pedro de Orsna*, A. 1560. after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *English* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact discovery, and severally begun some *Plantations* in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the others; their *Quarters* being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were sufficiently fortified to make any resistance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *GUIANA* specially so called, taketh up the middle of this Countrey, on both sides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath his name. A River of a long course, but not passable, up the stream above 16 miles, by reason of a *Cataract*, or great fall from the higher ground; in breadth betwixt that *Cataract* and the *Æstuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Æstuarium*, or influx a whole mile at least, and there about two fathoms deep.

The Countrey on both sides of this River very rich and fertile; so natural for *Tobacco*, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. *Sugar-Canes* grow here naturally without any planting, and on the shrubs great store of *Cotton*, and the Dye by some called *Orellana*. Plenty of *Venison* in their Woods, and of *Fish* in their Rivers; their fields well stored with Beasts, which themselves call *Moyres*, in shape and use resembling Kine, but without any horns. The people generally of a modest and ingenious countenance; Naked, but would wear cloaths, if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their bread is made of a Plant called *Cassavi*; of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a wicker-vessel, they make a kinde of drink in colour like *new Ale*, but not so well tasted, and of lesse continuance. The greatest part of their food is *Fish*, which they intoxicate with a strong-sented wood, and so take them up as they lie floating on the top of the water. Much troubled with a Worm like a *Flea*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Nignas*) which get under the Nails of their *Toes*, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no lesse torture of the *Patient*, without speedy prevention: No better remedy found out, than to pour Wax melting hot on the place affected; which being pulled off, when its cold, draws the *Vermin* with it, sometimes 800 at a pull. The *Women* of such easie *child-birth*, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Childe to his Father (for they have so much natural modesty as to withdraw from company upon that occasion) who washeth it with water, and *painteth* it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Countrey under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the mouth thereof to be large and broad; which passing through the heart of the Countrey, in the fourth degree and 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole, and and this part more specially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*, *Guyana*. Certain I am that by the name of *Wiana* I have found it written in approved Authours. But what need further search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a *Lake* to passe over like a Sea for bignesse, (*magnum, famosum, & vastum instar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Yaos*, or *Jaos* called *Raponowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Countrey) *Parimen*: Situate about a dayes journey from the River *Essequebo*: and neighboured by the great and famous Citie *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado* (or the *Golden* Citie) from the abundance of Gold in Coyn, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be in it. The greatest Citie, as some say, not onely of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordas*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican* Wars, and by him condemned for a mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any victual, and so cast off to seek his fortune; affirmed at his return, that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Manoa*, he entered the Citie at high noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next also untill night before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he saith that he was led blind-fold all the way: And therefore possibly enough this Citie might be no such miracle as the story makes it; *Don Diego* being either abused by the reports of

the

the *Salvages*, or willing to abuse the world with such empty fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *English* have severally sought, and that with incredible diligence to find out this City, yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be said in the Poets language,

——— *Et quod non invenis usquam,*
Esse putes nusquam ——— i. e.

That which is no where to be found,
Think not to be above the ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his *Relations* of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being foorsook, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba* the last King of *Peru*, at the conquest of that Kingdom with many thousands of his Followers came into this Countrey, and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For besides that *Atabaliba* had no brethren but *Guascar* and *Mango* who both died in *Peru*, how improbable must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing so well the thirst of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the secrets of his State; or send him away loaded with Gold, as tis said he did; Who sheweth his Treasure to a Thiefe, doth deserve to lose it. And therefore letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less *Magnificence*, but of greater reality. Amongst which I reckon 1 *Caripo*, most memorable for a Colonie of *English* there planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, *An.* 1608. situate on the banks of the *Wiacopo*, near the mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock so difficult of access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Ayr so sound and answerable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30 which were left there for three years together, there dyed but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some cross accident, than by any diseases. 2 *Gomeribo*, on the top of an hill near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiacopo*, possessed awhile by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3 *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Marwinen*. 4 *Crewinay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*: the King of the first (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a vertuous man, and kind to *strangers*; of the later, *Minapa*. 5 *Tanparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River. And 6 *Moreshego*, four dayes journey from the other; both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King, or *Cacique* of those last, at Captain *Harcourts* being there (of which time we speak) named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of *Buff*.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Yaos*, or *Jagos*, and the *Maraons* spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea-coasts of this Countrey, are said to be *Arwaccæ*, the *Sapayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracouri*; of different Languages, and Customs, though neer neighbours unto one another. Originally inhabitants of the Iland of *Trinidado*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Countrey, possessed themselves of the Sea-shores, and the parts adjoyning: each Tribe or Family being governed by its several *Chief*, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, than to make the People dis-affected to the *English*; of whose pretensions to these parts, and designs to plant them they had good Intelligence. And so much was confessed by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance, how much the *English* were abused in those mis-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604. Captain *Charles Leigh* set Sail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an House and Garden, and his Aide craved against the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took possession of the Countrey in the name of King *James* and the Crown of *England*; and caused the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The design went forwards notwithstanding, and in the year 1608. an *English* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new possession taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned; the Countrey further searched into by that Noble Gentleman, than ever formerly by any, or by many since. After three years, the Colony wanting fit supply, returned home again; the Plantation never since pursued, though by some projected. Yet so far are these *Salvages* beholding to the *English* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there against the *Caribes*, so at their going off they taught them the use of Arms, and put them into a *posture of defence*; inabling them thereby to preserve themselves against all their Enemies.

3. *ORENOQUE*, or the Province of the River of *Orenoque* comprehendeth the North parts of *Guyana*, lying upon and towards the Banks of that famous River of which we have already spoken. The Countrey very rich and pleasant, consisting of large Plains, many miles in compass, adorned with the embroydery of Flowers, and unknown Plants, exceeding pleasant to the eye; and sometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furnished with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally stored with Fish, and the *Forrests* both with Beasts and *Fowls*. No Countrey in *America*, not *Peru* it self, said to be comparable to it for abundance of Treasure. Some also add a whole Mountain of *Chrystall* to be seen afar off from *Winecaporo*: and tell us (but in generall terms) of more goodly Cities than elsewhere in all *Peruana*, but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *English* could ever see them, though they diligently searched into most parts of this Countrey.

The People, as of ſeveral Nations, ſo of ſeveral Natures: The *Capuri*, and *Macureos*, for the moſt part *Carpenters*, live by making *Cunoas* or Boats, which they ſell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidado* for *Tobacco*, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dyeth, they make great lamentation; and after the fleſh is putrified and fallen from the bones, they take up the *Skeleton*, and hang it up in the houſe where he dwelt, decking his ſkull with *Feathers* of all colours, and hanging gold Plates about the bones of his arms and thighs. Of the *Tivitivas* dwelling upon ſome of the Northern branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant People, and to have the moſt manly and moſt deliberate ſpeech of any Nation in the World. A People which eat of nothing that is ſet or ſown: the children of Dame *Nature*, and therefore will not be beholding for their lively-hood unto Art, or Induſtry; uſing the tops of the *Palmito* Tree for Bread; Fiſh, Deer, and Swines-fleſh, for the reſt of their ſuſtenance. The *Aſſawy*, *Saymæ*, *Wikeri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with ſmoother hair: And to uſe Arrows dipt in ſo ſtrange a poyſon, as doth not only bring death, but death with moſt unſpeakable torments, eſpecially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwacæ* of this Tract I finde nothing ſingular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their wives and neereſt of the kindred beat their bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink like ſpice.

Places of moſt importance in it (for to ſpeak any thing particularly of thoſe many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque*, were an endleſs labour) 1 *Comolaha*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but ſomewhat diſtant, in which they keep ſome Annual Fairs for the ſale of *Women*. One of our *Engliſh* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1595. affirmeth that he bought eight of them (the eldeſt not above eighteen) for a half penny red-hafted knife, which he brought from *England*: But withall telleth us for his credit that he gave them to ſome *Salvages* of his acquaintance. 2 *Morequito*, a known Port upon ſome branch of the *Orenoque*; of much uſe to the *Engliſh* in their firſt Diſcovery of theſe parts. 3 *Wenicapora*, ſo called from another branch of that River bearing this name; from whence was ſhewed an high Hill ſaid to be of *Chryſtall*, but ſo far off, that it was thought better to believe than to go and ſee. Others report of this Mountain that above it there is a mighty River, which falling down this *Cataract* on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noiſe, as if 1000 Bells were knocked one againſt another. And poſſible enough it is, that this great fall of water diſcerned far off, may (with the help of Sun-ſhine) carry ſome reſemblance of a *Chryſtalline* Mountain. 4 *S. Thome*, ſituate on the Main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 houſes ſtretched out in length for half a mile, but ſlightly built, a Pariſh Church in the midſt of it, and at the Weſt end a Convent of *Franciſcan* Friers. The only Town of all *Guiana* poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till againſt the laſt coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1617. but taken by him at that time, and ſince that by the *Hollanders*, *An.* 1629. though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The ſeverall Nations of this Tract have been named before, Diſcovered firſt by *Diego de Ordas*, *Anno* 1531, furniſhed with a Patent for the conqueſt of it by *Charles* the fift. But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwiſe not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*: effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, *Anno* 1533. and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded further than the others, *Anno* 1536. and finally by *Gonſalvo Ximenez de Queſada* and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune; who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the ſearch of *Guiana*, fell caſually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly diſcovered till the year 1595. in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Priſoner this *Antonio Berreo*, and learning of him the ſucceſs of his Expedition, reſolved upon the undertaking: and ſearched ſo far into the Countrey by the courſe of this River, that ſome have ſince called it *Raliana*. The buſineſs followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that ſervice, who at his coming found the Countrey poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houſes of the *Salvages* had been laid together like a Town; and all the *Natives*, who wiſhed well to the *Engliſh*, diſperſed and ſcattered. So that without any other effect of his journey, than the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he firſt diſcovered) he ſet ſail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the *Court*, that a Colony of *Engliſh* ſhould be planted there, and ſome porportionable force ſent over to make good the Action. But the motion upon good advice rejected, firſt in regard of the diſtance of it from the main body of our ſtrength: and 2ly. becauſe the *Spaniards* bordering neer upon it, might eaſily caſt out ſmall Forces and make the enterpriſe diſhonourable to the *Engliſh* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of Honourable Atchievements. It was permitted notwithſtanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh*, and *Harcourt*, before ſpoken of. But they not being able to go thorow with ſo great a buſineſs, let it fall again. And ſo it reſted till the laſt unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licenſed by Commiſſion under the great Seal to ſearch into ſome *Mines* of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Countrey. A deſign followed with great hopes, by the *Undertakers*, moſt of them being perſons of honour, and well attended: but ſo unfortunate in the iſſue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of *S. Thome*, he loſt his own Son, and a great part of his Forces; and after his return (not able with the reſidue to make good his ground againſt the Enemy) was executed on a former *Attaindure*, in the old *Palace* of *Weſtminſter*, Octob. 29. *Anno* 1618. Of whom I cannot chooſe but note what is ſaid by *Camden Clarentieux*, in his *Annals*: *Vir erat nunquam ſatis laudato ſtudio & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem* Angliæ *gloriam promovendi.* And ſo I leave him to his reſt in the bed of peace.

4. THE

4. *THE ISLANDS* which properly are accompted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either ſcattered on the ſhore, in the mouths or bodie of the greater Rivers: ſome of them not inhabited, others of no name; and none at all of any reckoning. Onely the Iſle of 1. *Trinidado*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of ſome eſteem: which though ſomewhat further off from the ſhores of this Countrey, yet being that of *Trinidado* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* paſſe but for one *Præfecture*, or *Provincial Government*, we ſhall deſcribe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDADO*, or *Inſula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* over againſt *Paria*, from which ſeparated by a *Frith*, or *Streit*, by *Columbus*, who firſt diſcovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the *Dragons mouth*, becauſe of the dangerouſneſſe of the paſſage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of *Northern* Latitude; the moſt Southern Angle of it, called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North-Eaſt *Punta de Galera*. The *Frith*, or *Streit*, but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the interpoſition of four, or five little Iſlands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving onely two entrances for ſhipping into the Golf, called the *Golf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 leagues, the breadth 18. of a cloudy and unhealthy aire, but a fertile ſoyl, abundantly well ſtored with ſuch commodities as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. *Maize*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Cotton-wool*, and the beſt kinde of *Tobacco*, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidado*. Here is alſo a ſufficiency of Fruits and Cattel for the uſe of the *Natives*; and here and there ſome veins of Gold, and other Metals: ſuch ſtore of *Pitch*, that innumerable ſhips might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of ſhips, becauſe it ſoſtneth in the ſun. The place in which it groweth, by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with the other *Americans*: diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral *Tribes*, but moſt of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forſook their Countrey, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called *S. Joſephs*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the Iſland, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Carone*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, who hath under him beſides this Iſland the Provinces of *Guiana* and *El Dorado* (for ſo go his titles) yet a ſmall Town, conſiſting but of 40 houſes, when it was taken, *An.* 1595. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made priſoner, who furniſhed his taker with many notions (and ſome meerly fabulous) towards the diſcovery of *Guiana*.

This Iſland firſt diſcovered by *Chriſtopher Columbus* in his third voyage, *An.* 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with ſome reference to the form hereof, ſhooting into the Sea with three *Points* or Promontories. Nothing elſe memorable in the fortunes and ſtory of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-Eaſt of *La Trinidad*, from which 8 miles diſtant: full of ſafe Harbours for the bigneſſe, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well ſtored with Woods; amongſt which ſome *Palmito* Trees, ſome like that of the *Braſil-wood*, others not elſewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fiſh ſufficient to maintain it ſelf. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Iſland of that name in *Zealand*, by ſome of the *Low-Countrey-men*, who begin to plant there.

OF PARIA.

PARIA is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Islands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the West with the *Golf*, or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*; on the North, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean, or *Mare del Noort*; the Countreys lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards* (as *Peru*, and *Yucatan* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were answered *Paria*, that is to say, *high Hills*, or Mountains (for here begins that ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the space of 3600 miles, to the Streits of *Magellane*) and so hath it ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some Writers it is also called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the soyl and people being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts: The whole divided into the Continent and the Islands, which with their subdivisions, may be branched into these particulars, viz. 1. *Cumana*. 2. *Venezuela*. 3. S. *Margarita*. 4. *Cubagna*, and 5. the lesser Islands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the Golf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West *Venezuela*: on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof some Dominican Fryers (who first set footing in this Countrey) built themselves a *Monasterie*; that name communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It is extended East and West to the breadth of 110 leagues; the length thereof from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and lesse of it planted by the *Europæans*; except some places near the Sea: there being no part of all *America*, the description whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as they have of this. For except it be the names of some *Bayes*, or *Promontories*, and of two, or three most noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our consideration.

The Countrey, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the lesse looked after: covered with shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable bryers and bushes. Heretofore famed for *Pearl-fishing*, all along the Coast, from the *Golf* of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Costa de las Perlas*; but that gainfull trade hath long since failed it. Now onely of esteem for a vein of most excellent *Salt*, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*; gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and yet never diminishing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontorie bordering on the Frith, called *Boca del Drago*, the title, or appellation of Cape *Salinus*. Of some strange Creatures in this Countrey, as the beast called *Capa*, the soles of whose feet are like a shooe; a kinde of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants, or Pismires; Parrots, and Bats, of more than ordinary greatnesse, I forbear to speak.

Of the people I finde nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good fruits, as of fish and flesh, they use themselves to a far worse dyet, feeding on *Horsleeches*, *Bats*, *Spiders*, *Grashoppers*, *Worms*, *Lice*, and such other *Vermin*. In other things they seem to have a mixture of all ill customs used amongst the *Salvages* of *Asia*, *Africk*, and *America*; as multitudes of Wives, prostituting these Wives for the first nights lodging, to the *Piacos*, or *Priests*; and for any after, to their *Guests*; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours on their bodies instead of Garments; high-minded, treacherous, & revengefull; accustomed to the use of poysoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes bloud, and other mixtures. In one thing onely different from the rest of their neighbours, which is the fencing of their Grounds, or Orchards with a *Cotton-thred*, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whosoever breaketh it, or goes over, or under it, shall die immediatly. More safe in that perswasion, than by brazen Walls.

Rivers of most note, though of little, 1. *Rio de Cumana*. 2. *Rio de Neveri*. 3. *Cumana de Bardones*. The chief Havens, or Roads for shipping, 1. *Moxino*. 2. S. *Foy*. And 3. that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1. *Cumana*, a Colonie of *Spaniards*, on the bank of the River of that name; but distant about two miles from the Sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour; the Town so hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governours house, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2. S. *Jago*, a strong Fortresse built by the *Spaniards* for defence of the Salt Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622. on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to take them from him; fortified by the rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Brasse. 3. S. *Michael de Neveri*, on the River so called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*. 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the *Natives*.

The Countrey first discovered in the third voyage of *Christopher Columbus*; but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*; who out of a *Religious* zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts founded themselves a little *Cell* in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *Anno* 1513. and doubtlesse had sped very well in their *holy* purpose, if some covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherously seized upon one of the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spanish* bondage.

For

For this the poor *Monks* ſuffered death; I may call it *martyrdom*; their death revenged by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after ſlain by the *Salvages*, who alſo at the ſame time deſtroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers, which had been founded in the year 1518. A ſecond force ſent hither under *Gonſalvo de Ocampo*, waſteth a great part of the Countrey, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs ſome of his people. But that ſtrength being withdrawn, or defeated alſo, *Diego de Caſtellon* is ſent over by the Councel reſident in *Hiſpaniola*, to ſecure the poſſeſſion of the Countrey: by whom the Caſtle firſt, and after the Burrough of *Cumana*, was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a further conqueſt, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Caſtle of S. *Michael de Neveri*, by *Hierome* of *Ortal*, and the diſcovery of ſome of the in-land Provinces 150 leagues from the Sea-ſide, by *Antonio Sedenno*, An. 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Regiſtring of that tedious march.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cumana*; on the Weſt with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, one of the firſt Diſcoverers of it, *An.* 1599. becauſe he found a Burrough of ſome of the *Salvages* ſituate in the middeſt of the waters, to which was no paſſage but by boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt 130 leagues; in breadth where broadeſt about 80. The ſoyl ſo plentifull of all ſorts both of Fruit and Grain; the Countrey ſo repleniſhed with all kinde of Cattel, and excellent Paſtures to maintain them, that the neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granarie*. Such ſtore there goeth from hence of Wheaten meal, *Biſcoct*, Cheeſe, Hogs-fleſh, Ox-hides, and Cloath of Cotton ready made, as very well deſerves that title. Here is alſo very great plenty of Fiſh, Wilde beaſts for hunting, *Mines* of Gold and other Metals; beſides an infinite deal of *Sarzaparilla* ſent to *Europe* yearly.

The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with thoſe of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that *Character*. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and ſwim, as well as the men; to till the Land, and look to the buſineſſe of the houſe, whileſt the men hunt, or fiſh, to bring in proviſion. They count it a great part of beauty, to have very thick thighs; which they effect, by binding their legs hard below the knee, from their very Childhood. Shameleſſe enough till married, after more reſerved; though rather for fear of a divorce, than for love of modeſty.

Rivers of note I meet with none; inſtead of which many convenient Harbours and capacious Bayes. The chief, that called *Golfo triſte*, from ſome ſhipwracks, or the like misfortune hapning to the Namer of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and ſpacious, which by a *Frith*, or Streit of half a league over, receiveth the tribute of, 3. The great Lake called the *Lake* of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lugo de Nueſtra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Lake*, in compaſſe about 80 leagues; on the banks whereof dwel many Nations of the *Salvages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain commerce with one another.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Maracapana*, the furtheſt Port upon the Eaſt, and one of the beſt on all this Coaſt; in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagna* had once a Garriſon, under colour of defending the Countrey againſt the *Salvages*, but in plain truth to uſe it for an opportunity to ſeize upon their perſons, and carry them away for *Slaves*. Thoſe parts hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the moſt Weſtern Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro* ſituate in the *Latitude* of 11 Degrees: built on the Sea, where it hath an Haven on each ſide; the one capacious, but not ſafe; the other ſafe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a ſweet and healthy aire, and neighboured by the richeſt ſoyl of all the Countrey, it hath been long the ordinary ſeat of the *Governour*, and the See of a *Biſhop* (Suffragan to the Arch-biſhop of *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*.) Once ſuddenly ſurprized by the *Engliſh*, An. 1595. and burnt to aſhes, but as ſuddenly repaired again. 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Caravalada*, 80 leagues from *Coro* towards the Eaſt, ſeated upon the Sea near an unſafe Haven, and defended from aſſault by the Caſtle of *Caracas*, ſo called from the name of the *Tribe* in which it ſtandeth. Near unto which the Hills ariſe to ſo great an height, that they ſeem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariffe* ſo much talked of. 4. S. *Jago de Leon*, in the ſame tribe of the *Caracas*, took by the *Engliſh* the ſame year. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25 leagues from S. *Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6. *New Xeres*, lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league onely from *New Xeres*; ſituate on the banks of *Baraquicemiti*, the moſt noted River of this tract. 8. *Tucuyo*, in the Valley ſo called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich *Sugar-Canes*, for which ſome *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9. *Truxillo*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*, eighteen leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a *Factorie* for the ſale of their wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the *Lake* it ſelf; not elſe obſervable but for the multitude of *Tygers* which do haunt about it.

This Countrey diſcovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alfonſo de Oreda*, as before is ſaid, was firſt pretended to for Neighbourhoods-ſake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Anpuez*, by order from the Council reſident at *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*, was employed in the Diſcovery of it, *Anno* 1527. But *Charles* the fift having taken up great ſums of money of the *Velſeri* a wealthy Family of *Augſpurg*, pawned this Countrey to them; by whom *Ambroſius Alfinger* was ſent with 400 foot and 80 horſe, to take poſſeſſion. But he and his Succeſſors in that imployment, not minding ſo much the Conqueſt as the ſpoyl of the Countrey; the Council of *Domingo* undertook the buſineſſe once again; and

in

in the year 1545. ſent over one *John de Caravayal*, who treading in the ſteps of the *Germans*, or rather outgoing them in all ſorts of Rapine, was outed on a ſecond order by one *John Perez de Toloſa*, by whom the Province was reduced into ſome good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their Deſign diſcovered, and themſelves all ſlain. Peace and contentment following after all theſe troubles, the Countrey was in little time ſo thorowly planted, and the Natives ſo incouraged in their ſeveral Tribes, that notwithſtanding the deſtructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long ſince above 100000 of the *Salvages*, not numbring thoſe above fifty or under eighteen years of *Age*; who by an Order of the Councell of *Spain* for theſe parts of *America*, are exempt form *Taxes*.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Iland ſituate over againſt the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*; from the Main-land whereof it is diſtant about ſeven Leagues. So called from the abundance of *Pearls* which the *Spaniards* found at the firſt Diſcovery, which the *Latiniſts* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it ſignifie no other than the Vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were alſo ſtore of thoſe of the greater eſtimate, ſuch as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphraſis* called *Uniones*, becauſe they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indiſcreti*, ſaith *Plinie*, *unde nomen* Unionum *ſcilicet* Romanæ *impoſuere delicie*.

The Iſle affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and ſix in breadth; ſituate under the 11. Degree of *Northern* Latitude. Well ſtored with *Pearls* upon the Shores, when firſt diſcovered; but even then when moſt plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, ſhe had not water of her own to quench her thirſt; compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwiſe plentifull enough both of *Maize*, and Fruits. The People obſequiouſly ſervile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; ſo long accuſtomed unto bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Monpater*, in the Eaſt corner of the iland, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for ſecuring their rich Trade of *Pearl fiſhing*, and to defend their ſhips which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the houſe of the Governour. 2 *El valle de Santa Luzia*, two Leagues from the Sea, a *Spaniſh* Colony. 3 *Makanao*, the chief Village of the *Natives*.

This Iland firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, *Anno* 1498. grew ſuddenly into great eſteem, by reaſon of the rich *Pearl fiſhing*, which they found on the ſhores thereof. And in regard the *Natives* were ſo ready to betray their Treaſures (of which themſelves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more liberties from the King, than the reſt of the *Salvages*. Inſomuch that the *Spaniards* either could not or would not compell them to dive into the Sea for *Pearl*; but bought *Negro* ſlaves from *Guinea*, and the Coaſts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive unto the bottom of the Sea, many times ſeven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the *ſhels*, in which that Treaſure was included: where many of them were drowned, and ſome maimed with *Sharks*, and other Fiſhes. But that rich Trade is much diminiſhed of late, if it fail not quite. The cauſe thereof to be imputed to the unſatiable avarice of the *Spaniards*, ſo greedy upon *Pearl*, that they deſtroyed the very *Seed*, and making gain of whatſoever they could meet with, for a little preſent profit loſt the hopes of the future. The Iland ſince leſs famous, and not much frequented. Viſited to its coſt in the year 1601. by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500. l. in Pearls for the ranſom of Priſoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coaſt of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes*, to be ſold for *Slaves*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Iland lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the firſt diſtant but one League, from the other ſix; it ſelf in compaſs about three. Rich on the ſhores, by the abundance of *Pearls* which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Deſtitute both of graſs and water, by conſequence of Cattel alſo, except only *Conies*, and but few of thoſe. So that like many a Gallant who ſpend all upon the *back*, and nothing on the *belly*, ſhe had her out-ſide laced with *Pearls*, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and water brought them out of other Countries; and their Fruits too, if they deſired to have any; here being very few Trees, and thoſe moſt of *Guyayacan*. But ſo abundant in this Treaſure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 *Ducats* yearly out of this poor Iland.

In this reſpect it was preſently reſorted to, and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony which they called *New Cadiz*: and grew in ſhort time unto ſo great power, that they made themſelves Maſters of the Port of *Maracapana Venezuela*, one of the beſt upon thoſe Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the *Salvages* of *Cumana* had deſtroyed the Convent of *Franciſcans* on the oppoſite Shore, they cowardly forſook the Iland, and fled to *Hiſpaniola*. Sent back again by the *Councel* there, under the conduct of *James de Caſtellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautifull and ſtrong than ever formerly. In great eſteem as long as the *Pearl-fiſhing* did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet ſtill the Iland doth deſerve ſome conſideration, for a Fountain on the Eaſt part of it neer unto the Sea: continuing, though the *Pearls* be gone; which yieldeth a *Bituminous* ſubſtance like oyl, *Medicinable* for diſeaſes, and is found two or three Leagues off, floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of Mankinde, and more eaſily found, than the *Pearls* which ſunk unto the bottom, and maintained our pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendant to it, lieth a little Iland called *Coche*, three miles in compaſs, but ſo abundantly ſtored with *Pearls*, that it hath been worth in that one commodity for ſome moneths together, above a thouſand pounds a moneth of our *Engliſh* money. Firſt peopled, upon that occaſion, *An.* 1529. but the occaſion failing, the *Plantation* ended, the Iſle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. *THE*

5. *THE LESSER ISLANDS* of this *Præfecture* or *Provincial* Government, lie all along upon the Coast of *Venezuela*, from East to West; the principal of which 1 *Torgula*, 12 or 14 miles on the West of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in bredth; but yielding such good store of Salt, that three or four ships are laded with it every yeer. Well furnished with Goats and *Guayacans*; but not else considerable: except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the use of Mariners. 2 *Catelina*, by the *English* called the Isle of *Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Association*; both which being void of all inhabitants and tame beasts, were possessed by them about the yeer 1619. at such time as there was often war between *England* and *Spain*; After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the peace ensuing, they were granted by King *Charles* by his Letters Patents under the great Seal of *England*, to certain Noble men and Gentlemen, and their Successors, who for the space of 20 yeers, or there abouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Ilands being planted by them with their several Colonies, and all things necessary to maintain and enrich the same. 3 *Bonaire*, opposite to the Bay of *Golfo triste*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees; wel-furnished with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattel brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with some *Savages* out of *Hispaniola*, whom the Spaniards Christned and sent thither: some Spaniards with their Governour intermixt amongst them. The Iland 16 miles in compass; not fruitful naturally but in trees, which are great and numerous. 4 *Curacaos*, nine miles on the West of *Bonaire*; and as many in compass. Of a more fertile soile by far, and of very rich Pastures: the People given to grazing, and make good store of Cheese, transported thence to other places; the Iland having toward the North, a convenient Harbour. 5 *Aruba*, on the North-east of *Curacaos*, from which nine miles distant; in compass not above five miles, for the most part level. One hill it hath (amongst some others) fashioned like a *Sugar-loaf*. Inhabited by few *Savages*, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Ilands on this Coast, as the *Tostigos*, lying Eastward of 1 *Margarita*, 2 *Blanca*, 3 *Orchilla*, 4 *Rocca*, and 5 the Isle *des Aves*, or of Birds, interposed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*; some of them rather Rocks then Ilands: few stored with any living creatures for the use of men; and none of them at all with men to manure and dress them, I pass over here: and so proceed from these Ilands of the Province of *Paria*, to those which are subordinate to the Councel of S. *Domingo*, and make a Province of themselves. But first we must go back, and bring up some of the Ilands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And so much of PERUANA.

OF THE AMERICAN ILANDS: And first of those which are in *MARE DEL ZUR.*

THe *AMERICAN ILANDS*, scattered up and down the shores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacifique* Ocean; and those of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noort*. The first so called by *Magellanus*, the first Discoverer: who passing thorow those troublesome and tempestuous Streits which now bear this name, found such a change upon his comming into the Main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur* (*quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, saith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it. By the Latines called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard. Called also the *Southern* Ocean, because of its situation on the South side of *America*, in reference to some part of the *Golf* of *Mexico*, and the Streits of *Anian*. Not known unto the *Spaniards* till discovered by *Nonnius Vasques de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or pety Kings of the Countrey about *Nombre di Dios*; Who seeing the Spaniards so greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore, this *Balboa* being the chiefe man in that Adventure: who discovering further on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed to the *golden treasures of Peru*: Executed notwithstanding this good service by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus* and some later Adventurers, though the Spaniards got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the *Southern* sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without losse or charge, and thought their Ports upon that shore to be unaccessible. But after the way unto this sea was found out by *Magelanus*; *Drake*, *Cavendish*, and the rest of our *English* Adventurers did so scoure these Coasts, that they left them neither Port nor ship, which they did not ransack; as hath been evidenced before in some particulars.

As for the Ilands of this Sea, they lie most of them so neer the shores, as if placed there by Nature to serve as *Outworks* to defend the *Continent*. Many in tale, but few of consideration; and of those few some of the chiefe have been described already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The residue which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to these two heads, 1 *Los Ladrones*, & 2 the Ilands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Ilands situate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Ilands, in the Longitude of 185. and the 4 Degree of *Northern* Latitude. So called by *Magellanus* who first discovered them, because of the *thievishness* of the Inhabitants (*Insulæ Latronum* is their name in Latine) who had stoln his *cock-boat*, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue still both their name and nature. Found such by *Cavendish* & *Noort* in their severall voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying *Iron* (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly stealing whatsoever they met with. The people tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extreamly active, and good *Divers*, continuing a long time under the water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; in so much as the *Holanders* then with *Noort*, to make triall of it, cast five pieces of *Iron* into the sea, all fetched out by one of them. The *Women* as good at it as the men. Both sexes given to filthy and promiscuous lusts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their incontinency, the *Pox* having eaten up both their Lips and their Noses.

Their Religion is worshipping the *Divel*, whose Images they have in wood on the head of their Boats: the Chappel and the Saints fit for such devotions. But for the nature of these Ilands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to seek. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Ilands of *John Fernandes*, are two in number: so called from *John Fernandes* the first Discoverer, *An* 1574. each of them five or six miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of *Southern* Latitude; rocky and barren, but well woodded, and those woods replenished with Goats, but their flesh not so savory as in other places. Some store of *Sanders* there is in them, and of Palms no scarcity. Plenty of Fish upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes by the Spaniards lying in *Peru*: and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for shipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they pass this way. None else of note in all this Sea, but such as lie upon the shores of their severall Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore passing thorow the *Streits*, and comming up unto the Ilands of *Paria*, where before we left; we will now look on those of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which washeth the shores of this *New world* (the reason of which names we have seen before) subordinate

ordinate to the Counſell or Government of S.*Domingo*, viz. 1 the *Caribes*, 2 *Porto Rico*. 3 *Hiſpaniola*, 4 *Cuba*, and 5 *Jamaca*. The reſt already ſpoken of in their proper places.

1. *THE CARIBES.*

THe *CARIBES* or *Canibal Ilands* are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names; the reſt, of leſſe note (though ſome of theſe of little enough) not yet ſo diſtinguiſhed. Called thus in general, becauſe inhabited by *Cannibals* and Man-eating people (at their firſt Diſcovery) as the word *Caribes* doth import. They lie extended like a Bow from the coaſt of *Paria* unto the Iſle of *Porto Rico*: of different temper, as muſt needs be in ſuch variety; and therefore not within the compaſs of a generall *Character*. Some of the principal we ſhall conſider more diſtinctly; and for the reſt it will be trouble enough to name them, or elſe paſſe them by.

1. *GRANADA* the neereſt of this crew to the Main-land of *Cumana*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 20 degrees and 15 Minuits; in form like a *Creſcent* or half Moon, the two horns not a mile a ſunder, the whole length but ſix. Shaded all over with thick Woods, but notwithſtanding of a rich and fruitfull ſoil. A Haven in it of good uſe, but no Town of note. The people of the ſame ill condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it; moſt miſchievouſly intended when they ſeem moſt kind; and then the more to be avoyded.

2. S. *VINCENT* 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of ſo bleſſed a ſoil, that it brings forth abundance of *Sugar-Canes* without charge to the Husbandman, Watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and full of ſafe and convenient *Bayes* for the uſe of Marrines. In figure *Circular*, the *Diameter* being ſix miles over; the *Circle* by conſequence eighteen. The people but of mean ſtature, ſlothfull, and ſtudious only for their Belly: their love to which makes them to adventure in their ſmall Boats, hewn out of the body of a Tree, to paſs into the *Continent*, and return again, without help of the Compaſs; though diſtant from it at the neereſt, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS* no the North-eaſt of S. *Vincent*, in the *Latitude* of 13 Degrees, and 20 Minutes. Of an *Oval* form, 17 or 18 miles in compaſs. The ſoil in ſhew like that of *England*, but far more fruitfull: on the Eaſtſide thruſting out it ſelf with Points and Angles, which yield ſome *Bayes*, but full of *Quick-ſands*, and unſafe for ſhipping; on the South furniſhed with a large and commodious Harbour: Not very well provided of for fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *Engliſh*; who have brought thither from their own Countrey, Swine and Kine; *Orenges*, and the like from others. The chief Commodity made hitherto of this Plantation, comes by the planting of *Tobacco*; and by a kind of courſe Sugar called *Barbadoes Sugar*, which muſt be quickly ſpent, or will melt to nothing. Were they in ſtock, and not forced to make a quick return of their Commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation ſaid to be worth all the reſt which are made by the *Engliſh*; who (as I take it) are the ſole Colony in it. The Iland but at the courteſie of the *Spaniard*; without whoſe leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MATININO* on the North-weſt of the *Barbados*, by the Salvages called *Madanina*, with little difference. Everywhere ſwelled with Hils, of which three moſt eminent for height: one of them, which way ſoever a man looks upon it, carrying the reſemblance of an *Hat*. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian, with none but *Women*: afterwards, with a more fierce and barbarous people then the reſt of theſe Ilands: but neither Men or Women to be ſeen of late: whether deſtroyed, or removed further from the ſhores for fear of their deſtruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, ſeated on the North of *Matinino*, twelve Leagues in length; exceeding fruitfull of *Tobacco*, which they ſell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other Inſtruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of *Hot-water*, and a commodious Haven at the Weſt ſide of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever *Cannibals* or *Man-eaters* to this very day: At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man truſty, but where they cannot hurt or dare not. Both ſexes weare their hair long, and colour their bodies over with *Oaket*. Yet bloody and barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, diſtinguiſhed from the reſt in his dreſſe or habit, whom they moſt readily obey.

6. *DESSEADA*, or the Land of *Deſire*, on the North-eaſt of *Dominica*, Diſcovered by *Columbus* in his ſecond Voyage; naked of Trees, and at the firſt ſight afar off, not unlike a *Galley*. Of great uſe to the Spaniards, who alwaies take it in their way from the *Canaries* to the parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like uſe doe they make of 7. The Iſle of *GUADALUPE*, *parallel* to this, but directly Weſtward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* uſe to take freſh water, and there diſperſe themſelves to their ſeverall Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in moſt parts of the Sea adjoyning. North-eaſt from hence lieth

8. S. *Maria del Antigna*, commonly called *ANTIGNA* onely, and by ſome miſtakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven Leagues in length, and as much in breadth; difficult of acceſſe, and deſtitute of freſh water, but well repleniſhed of woods, and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colonie of the Engliſh, who do ſtill poſſeſſe it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHER*, on the North-west of *Guadalupe* in the *Latitude* of 17 Degrees and 20 Minuits. The length six miles, the bredth in many places four, and in some but two: much swelled with hils, and towards the East provided of several *Salt wiches*. The *French* and *Englisb* had sometimes in it several Colonies: by whom the *Natives* were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their dwellings: convict, as was pretended, of some manifest treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable then dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief employment and commoditie lies in their *Tobacco*, by some much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a League from it at the most, is

10. The Isle of *NIEVES*, affirmed to be five leagues in compass; well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; insomuch as the inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come hither for their pleasures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for some *Bathes* or *Hot-waters*, found out by the *English*, who in the year 1528. placed a Colonie in it. But whether subsisting of it self, or a part of their Plantation in S. *Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North-west of S. *Christophers*, and the South-east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 leagues. Woody and mountainous; not well provided of fresh waters; but on the West-side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the covert of the mountains. Amongst their fruits some that resemble a *green Apple*; which tasted, so inflames the tongue, that for 24 hours it swelleth in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless, but after that by little and little it abates again. The like hapneth also to the face, if washed before sun-rising with their *Fen-waters*, which are very frequent in this Iland; after the rising of the sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colonie of the *English* also, but of later standing then those of S. *Christophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the rest, 1 *Anguilla*, 2 *Barbada*, 3 *S. Bartholmews*, 4 *S. Lucies*, 5 *S. Martius*, 6 *Montserrat*, 7 *Rotunda*, 8 *Saba*, 9 *Virgo Gorda*, & 10 *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Onely we are to add concerning the whole Nation of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for Men, as Men for Beasts, roving as far as *Porto Rico* to seek after their prey; and what they caught, was sure to *go to the pot*, in the worst sense too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reserved to be eaten, and in their houses divers vessels filled with *Mans flesh*, and some upon the *spit* ready to be roasted. Nor had they laid aside this diet, till after the year 1564. but how long I know not: For at that time, a *Spanish* ship coming to water at the Isle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Ilands have been of late times well cleered of those Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed as the common Enemies of mankind; the Ilands where they dwelt being either totally deserted, or taken up by the *Europæans* and their several Colonies.

2 *PORTO RICO.* And 3. *MONICO.*

PORTO RICO lyeth on the North-west of *Sancta Crux*, from which distant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hispaniola*, 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Coquibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Hayen of it; but was called by *Columbus* at the first discovery S. *Johannis Insula*, or the Isle of S. *Johns*; by the Natives *Boriguen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern *Latitude*; in form *quadrangular*, but of a greater length then breath, such as the *Geometricians* call *oblongum*: The length thereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Ayr hereof very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious heats in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August*, and *September*) to the troublesomness of sudden tempests, called *Hericanes*. The soyl indifferently fruitful, though somewhat Mountainous; here being (besides other Hils of inferiour note) a ridge of high Hils which run cross the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief commodities *Sugar canes*, *Ginger*, *Cassia*, and great store of Hides: the *European* Cattle having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some *Mines* here were of Gold and silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the *Natives* also; of whom, in that respect, impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Iland, 1 *Cairobon*, 2 *Bayaman*: of divers fountains, and of severall and divided courses. 3 *Luysa*, & 4 *Toa*, two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one in the Mountains of *Guayame*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, doth afterwards divide it self into those two streams. 5 *Guiano*. 6 *Arezibo*. 7 *Guadiabo*; of lesser note; but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in some safe and capacious *Haven*.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Porto Rico* the chief town, built in a little Iland, on the North side of the greater, but joyned unto it with huge piles, and vast expences, by the command of *Philip* the first, *Ann.* 1514. Well built, with large streets, and convenient houses, according to the model of the Cities of *Spain*; and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; the Bishop one of the *Suffragans* of the Archbishop of S. *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*. The town unwalled, but fortified with two strong Castles: the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by Sir

Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1595. but taken two years after by *George* Earl of *Cumberland*, who had a purpoſe to have peopled it with an *Engliſh* Colonie. Diſcouraged from it by the death of 400 of his men, by change of Ayr, and ſome intemperance of Diet; he ſet ſayl for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Iland, but the diſfurniſhing it of 70 piece of Ordnance, and ſome part of their treaſure, which he brought home with him. 2 S *Germans*, in the Weſtern part of the Iland, but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Iland, now both unfortified, and ſmall. 3 *Arezibo*, on the River ſo called. 4 *Luyſa*, the moſt noted Port of the Eaſtern parts, ſituate on the mouth of the River ſo named.

Eaſtward hereof betwixt it and *Hiſpaniola*, lies the Iland of *Mona*, (might not this think we be ſo called by *Madoc ap Owen Gwinedth*, of whom before?) three leagues in compaſſe; rocky and of a brackiſh earth; but fit for the production of Limons, Orenges, and ſuch kind of fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the Weſt, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *Engliſh* call it, where they found ſuch infinite ſtore of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as hail, & made them almoſt deaf with the very noiſe; their Eggs ſo thick upon the ground, that they loaded two boats with them in three hours, and could hardly paſſe forwards without treading on them.

But to reeurn to *Porto Rico*, or the Iſle of St. *Johns*, it was firſt touched upon by *Columbus* in his ſecond voyage, *An.* 1493. but firſt inhabited by *John Ponce of Leon*, *An.* 1510. who being courteouſly entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince therof, planted a Colonie of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Iſland, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony ten yeers after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to *S. Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief town of all the Iland, upon every remove till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it ſince hath fixed. The Iland very populous for the bigneſs of it, when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives long ago conſumed by ſeveral *Butcheries*; and as ſome write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* in all the Country. What elſe concerns the ſtorie of it, we have ſeen before.

HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA lyeth on the Weſt of *Porto Rico*; the diſtance we have ſeen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haitia*, and by ſome *Quiſqueia*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hiſpaniola*, or *little Spain*; and of late times beginneth to be called S. *Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof *Triangular*, extended in a ſharp *Angle*, called *Cabo del Engarno*, towards *Porto Rico*: the Weſtern end faſhioned like a large Bay, or *Semicircle*; the Northern point of which is named S. *Nicholas*; the Southern, *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in ſome places 60. in ſome but 30. thence growing leſs and leſs till it come unto the Eaſtern Angle; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern *Latitude*. Of an Air much infeſted with Morning-heats, but cooler in the Afternoon by the conſtant blowing of a Sea-gale, which they there call *Viraſon*.

The Country for the moſt part beautiful and flouriſhing; the Trees always in their *Summer-livery*, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places ſwelled with high craggie Mountains, whence the name of *Hayty*, that word ſo ſignifying in the natural language of the *Natives*. Of ſuch an excellent herbage, that the Cattel brought hither out of *Spain* have increaſed almoſt beyond *Arithmetick*; grown wilde for want of *proper Owners*; and hunted unto death like the Stags of the forreſt, though onely to rob them of their skins. The ſoil ſo fertile, that in the ſpace of ſixteen dayes Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, and be fit to be eaten. So plentifully ſtored with *Ginger*, and *Sugar-canes*, that in the year 1587. there were ſhipped hence 27500. pound weight of Ginger, and 900. Cheſts of refined Sugar; an evident argument of the riches and fertility of it. A further proof hereof may be, the rich *Mines* of Gold, in which they uſed to find Gold without mixture of droſs or other metals. 2 The great increaſe of Sugar, one Cane here filling twenty, ſometimes thirty meaſures. 3 The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in ſome places to an hundred fold. But the *Mines* were long ago exhauſted, inſomuch as the Inhabitants are fain to uſe braſs-money: but inſtead of thoſe of Gold, they have found out others of Braſs and Iron, and ſome few of *Silver*; but not much ſearched into of late for want of Workmen.

The reaſon of that want to be aſcribed unto the Covetouſneſs and Crueltie of the *Spaniſh* Nation: who out of an unſatiable thirſt for Gold, conſumed the people in their *Mines*; and out of the like thirſt for Blood, killed ſo many of them, that in few years they deſtroyed three *Millions* of the Natives. And it is probably ſuppoſed, that had not *Charls* the 5. reſtrained them by a *Penal Edict* from compelling the *Natives* againſt their wils to thoſe works of ſervitude, there had not been one *Native* left in all this Iſland, nor in any other part of their *Plantations*. Such as are left, are ſaid to be of low ſtature, of black hair, and a complexion ſomewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in manners, habit, or Religion from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Ozama*, on whoſe Banks ſtands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Iſland, capable of the greateſt ſhips to the very Wharf. 2 *Nigua*, which paſſing thorow rich Paſtures, or making the Paſtures rich, by its ſecret vertues, runneth towards the Weſt: as do alſo, 3 *Yaquimo*, 4 *Nizao*, and 5 *Neyba*. 6 *Haynas* of a contrary courſe to the other three. 7 *Yaqui*, or *Jacbo*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8 *Nicayagua*, 9 *Cocitemico*, 10 *Xanique*. Theſe three laſt famous heretofore for their *Sands of Gold*. Some ſpeak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers, which are found in this Countrey; two parts of which vaſt number had their *Golden Sands*. A thing ſo far beyond the charity of the ſtrongeſt Faith, (though reported by a grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what Interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-courſe, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The

The whole divided, when the *Spaniards* first came amongst them, into several Provinces or Kingdoms, as 1 *Higuey*, 2 *Jacuaguia*, 3 *Samana*, in the Eastern parts. 4 *Yaquimo*, 5 *Boaruco*, and 6 *Xaragua*, towards the South. 7 *Guahabu*, and 8 *Cabaya*, in the West: and in the North, 9 *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold; 10 *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbus*; and 11 *Maguana* in the center of the Iland, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greatest power of any of those petit Roytelets. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island into four Divisions: the River *Jache* running towards the North; 2 *Nubiba* hastning to the South; 3 *Yuna*, or *Junna* towards the East; and 3 *Hatibonico* to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us,

And they are 1 S. *Domingo*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus Anno* 1484. on the East bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Iland to the opposite shore. Situate in a pleasant Country, amongst wealthy Pastures, and neighboured with a safe and capacious *Haven*: the houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled, beside a Castle at the West end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the residence of the Governour, the *Courts* of Justice, the See of an *Archbishop* (and besides many Convents and Religious houses) an *Hospital* endowed with 20000 *Ducats* of yeerly Rent. Esteemed of greatest Trade and concourse of Merchants till the taking of *Mexico*, and the Discovery of *Peru*; since that time sensibly decaying; and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negros*, *Mulatos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586. took it by force, and held it for the space of a moneth, burning the greatest part of the houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. 2 St *Salvador*, 28 Leagues to the East of *Domingo*. 4 *Jaguana*, called also *Sancta Maria del Porto*, from a safe and beautiful Haven adjoyning to it; situate in the West part of the Iland, of no great bigness, consisting of no more then 150 houses, when it was at the greatest; but made much less by Captain *Newport*, who in the year 1591, burnt it to the ground. 4 *Cotuy*, in the North of the Island, opposite to S. *Domingo*, from which distant almost 60 Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its *Mines* of Gold. 5 *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*; for whose sake afterwards adorned with a See *Episcopal*. 6 *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore; where built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by whom also fortified: the second Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Iland. 7 *Azua*, now called *Compostella*, a noted Haven, and resorted to for *Sugars*, which it yields abundantly.

This Iland was first discovered by *Colmmbus* (for I believe not that it was any of the *fortunate Ilands* which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the first voyage which he made: conducted hither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*. Landing, and gaining the good will of the *Savages*, by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques* to build a Fortress in his Country, which he called *Navidad*, or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession: whom he found both mastered & murdered at his coming back. Being now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*) near the *Mines* of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colonie removed unto S. *Domingo*: the *Spaniards* sending one Colonie after another, till at last their number was increased unto 14000. besides women and children. But having rooted out the *Natives* by their infinite *cruelties*, and exhausted the riches of the Country with as infinite *covetousnesse*, they betook themselves to fresher *Quarters*, abandoning the Iland to devour the *Continent*. Once had the Ilanders rebelled, and fortified themselves in the Province of *Baoruco*; a place so naturally strong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that *fastnesse* but on such conditions as made the *Spaniards* less insolent, and themselves less *slaves*.

5. CUBA.

CUBA lyeth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a *Frith* or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of S. *Nicholas*, and that of *Mayzi*, Backed on the North with a trie of Ilands, called the *Lucaios*, and some part of the *Peninsula* of *Florida*; extended towards the East to the extream point or Foreland of *Jucutan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which distant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West, that is to say, from Cape *Maxie* towards *Hispaniola*, to the Cape of *S. Anthony*, 230 Leagues; in breadth where broadest hardly 40, but fifteen in others. For the fertility of the soil contending with *Hispaniola* for the preheminence; but in the temperature of the Aire a great deal before it. Liberally stored with *Ginger*, *Cassia*, *Mastick*, *Aloes*, *Cinamon* and *Sugar*, (not reckoning such commodities as are common unto this with others) besides great plenty of Flesh, and Fish; and of Fowl no scarcity. The *Gold* more drossie in the Mine, then in *Hispaniola*, but the *Brass* more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but those Mountaines clad with divers trees, some of which drop the purest *Rosin*, and the Hills sending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Pestered with many sorts of Serpents, not so much out of any ill condition of the Soyl and Air, as by an old Superstition of the *Savages*: in former times not suffered to kill them when they might (this being a Dish reserved for the higher Powers) not able afterwards to destroy them when it would have been suffered.

What other *Savage* Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they should not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the first inhabi-

tants

tants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Iland, addreſſed himſelf unto *Columbus* at his firſt coming hither, adviſing him to uſe his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the ſouls of men have two journeys when they leave this world; the one ſoul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel perſon; the other delectable and pleaſant for the men of peace. It is ſaid alſo of them they knew not the uſe of *money*, nor underſtood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*: *Tenants in common* to the bleſſings which the earth brought forth, and *Coheirs* of Nature.

Amongſt the *Rarities* of this Iland, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy ſubſtance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the *Calking* of ſhips: Secondly, a Navigable River (but the name not told us) the waters of which were ſo not, that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us alſo thirdly of a Valley 15 Leagues from S. *Jago*, which produceth ſtones exactly round, as if made for pleaſure; but yet meerly natural. But theſe no greater *Rarities* then in other places: nor altogether ſo great as in *Hiſpaniola*. Of which they tell us of a fair River, whoſe waters are Salt, and yet none but freſh ſtreams fall into it: Of another Lake (three Leagues in compaſs) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any *Exit*. Neither of theſe ſo ſtrange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or *Beetel*: the eyes and wings whereof when opened give ſo great a light, in the darkeſt places, that a man may ſee to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Cante*, much annoyed with *Crocodiles* (a Beaſt not common in theſe Ilands, nor elſewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to ſuch as repoſe themſelves on the Banks of the River. 2 *Arimao*, which diſburtheneth it ſelf neer the Port of *Xagua*. 3 *Ria de Porcos*, full of Rocks and quick-ſands, at the entrances of it. 4 *Rio Eſcondida*, paſſing betwixt *Habana*, and the Port of *Marcanas*, 5 *Marien*, and 6 *Tanne*, of leſs note: Beſides theſe there is *Xagua*, a ſafe *Station* and Road for ſhipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and ſpacious when once entred, above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all ſides from the winds, that ſhips lie here in ſafety without any Anchor. Some other *Baies* there be as uſefull, though not ſo conſiderable.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1 S. *Jago* in the South part of the Iland, ſituate about two Leagues from the *Main*, but in the bottome of a large and capacious Gulf, the moſt noted Port of all theſe Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velaſques*, *An.* 1514. Afterwards made a *Biſhops* See, beautified with a *Cathedral*; ſome *Religious* houſes; once not inferiour unto any for numbers of People, though now few enough. *Baracao*, 30 Leagues on the Eaſt of S. *Jago*, the ſame Foundation as the other; and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-wood*. 3 *S. Salvador*, by ſome called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it ſtandeth; built by *Velaſco* in the moſt pleaſant and richeſt part of all the Iland; but not ſo fitly, as the other, for Trade and Merchandiſe. 4 *Porto del Principe*, an Haven Town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchie or bituminous liquor, ſpoken of before; which I conceive to be much of the ſame nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the Eaſt. 5 *Trinidad*, another of *Velaſcos* foundations, nine or ten leagues Eaſtward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forſaken, and meer nothing. 6 *Havana* in the North parts, oppoſite to *Florida*, a noted and wel traded Port; ſo ſtrongly ſituate & fortified both by Nature and Art, that it ſeems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Caſtles; a greater then either oppoſite to the mouth of the Haven; all ſo commodiouſly built, and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and ſcatter the greateſt Navy. Neer one of them ſtandeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the *Guards*, of every ſhip that cometh within view of the *Watchmen*. The beſt aſſurance, not only of this Iland but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the moſt part with the ſeat of the *Governour*, and the greateſt Trade of all theſe Seas: the ſhips which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the *Gulf*, tarrying here for one another, till all met together, and ſetting ſail from hence by the *Streits* of *Bahama*, amongſt the Iſles of the *Ducaios*.

This Iland one of the firſt which was diſcovered by *Columbus*: who having almoſt tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, firſt fell upon the Iland of *Guahanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the name of S. *Savious*. From thence he ſailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Iland, which he cauſed to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; at whoſe charge and the incouragement of *Iſabella* his *Heroick* Queen, he purſued this enterpriſe. Landing, he asked the People if they knew *Cipango* (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Iſle of *Japan*) and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao* (of great note for the richeſt *Mines* in *Hiſpaniola*) pointed towards *Hayty*; ſome of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* by this means laid aſide, and all the thoughts of *Spain* upon *Hiſpaniola*, where they found many *golden provocations* to invite their ſtay; till hungring after more Gold, and ſome new Plantations, they paſſed over hither: and in few years by the prudent conduct of *Velaſco*, got ſuch footing in it, and made that footing good by ſo many Colonies; that their title and poſſeſſion was beyond diſpute; and ſo continued to this day.

6. *JAMAICA.*

JAMAICA lyeth on the South of *Cuba*, from which diſtant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more, from *Hiſpaniola*. Diſcovered in the ſecond voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20. the whole compaſs eſtimated at 150. the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern *Latitude*. Of a rich ſoyl, abundantly provided of all things neceſſary: well ſtocked with Cattle, and no leſs plentifully ſtored with moſt ſorts of Fruits, which either Induſtry or Nature have ſupplyed it with. Great ſtore of *Cotton wool*; and ſuch abundance

abundance of *Jaccu* (a Root whereof the *Savages* once made their bread) that it was deemed the *Granarie* of the neighbouring Ilands. And were it not disfurnished of convenient Ports (which is all the want of it) would be as much frequented by the sea-faring men, as any other in those parts. Once very populous, now destitute of all the natural Inhabitants: this Iland, and that of *Porto Rico*, losing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards* cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the men, but destroyed posterity: the *Women*, here and elsewhere so abominating their sad condition, that they strangled their Children in the birth, to the end they might not live to serve such a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof (for though it be well waterd, it hath no great Rivers) 1 *Sevilla*, in the North-part of the Iland, beautified with a goodly Monasterie, the Abbot whereof hath all *Episcopal* juridiction, and is priviledged to wear a *Miter*; in nothing more enobled, then that *Peter Martyr* the Historian (to whose *Decades* all succeeding Ages are to be beholding, for the *Chorography*, and *History* of these parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2 *Melilla*, a small Town, but memorable for the unfortunate shipwrack of *Columbus*, on the shores adjoyning. 3 *Oristan*, on the South of the Iland, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4 *De la Vega*, now a ruine only, once a *Spanish* Colonie; and of great fame for giving the title of *Dukes* to *Christopher Columbus*, and his brother *Bartholomew*. Since whose time nothing hapned prejudicial to the State of this Iland by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*; till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthonie Sherley*, *An.* 1596.

Thus having took a short Survey of the several parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government committed chiefly to two great *Vice-Royes*, the one of *Nova Hispania*, who resides at *Mexico*; the othe of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*; the principal Cities of those Kingdoms. The first hath jurisdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Galitia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Guatimala*, *Castella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican Ilands*; the other over those of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such scattered pieces as they hold in *Guyana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to some of these. Of these the Vice-Roy of Peru is of greatest power, because he hath the nomination of all the *Commanders* and Officers within his Government: which in the other are reserved to the King himself. But that of *New Spain* counted for the better preferment, because of its nearness unto *Spain* (in respect of the other) the beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the administration of *Justice*, and ordering the Affairs of the several Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lyeth no Appeal: that is to say, 1 *Guadalaiara*, for *Gallicia Nova*. 2 *Mexico*, for *New Spain*. 3 *S Domingo*, for the Province of the *Ilands*. 4 *Guatimala*, for the division so named. 5 And *Panama*, for *Castella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, *Quitos*, *Lima*, and *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*. 9 *Imperiale*, for *Chile*. 10 S. *Foy*, for the *New Realm of Granada*. From these, though no *Appeal* doth lie in matter of *justice*; yet both from them and the two *Vice-Royes* an *Appeal* may lie in affairs of State, or point of *Grievance*. And to this end there is a standing *Counsel* in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Counsel of the Indies*, consisting of a *President*, eight Counsellors, two Proctors *Fiscal* (which we call the *Sollicitors* General) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers: to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countries; to appoint the *Vice-Royes*, to dispose of all the great offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual Dignites; to appoint *Visiters* to go into those Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion; but with the Kings privity and consent.

As for the Estates of private men, they which hold Lands or *Royalties* from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life (except it be the Marquesse of *Valsa* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their deaths returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldest son or the next of blood; but so that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of these. And though they have many times attempted to make these *Commanderies* and Estates hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the Fifth, and *Philip* the second; yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the Estates and Persons of their several *Vassals*, would either grinde them into powder without any remedy; or upon any *Inquisition* into their proceedings, take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance, both by this uncertainty of their present *Tenure*, exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence, is said to be three Millions of Ducats yeerly: most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver: the rest by Customs upon Manufactures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the Acknowledgments reserved upon Lands and Royalty. But out of this there goeth great *Exits*, that is to say to the two Vice-roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Counsel of the Indies in *Spain* 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberall Pensions; to every Arch-bishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all, 2000 Ducats at the least, and to some much more to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite Charges, in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate; and the continual keeping of a strong *Armada*, to conduct his *Plate fleets* to *Spain*, there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge more then the keeping of a few Souldiers to aw the Savages; yet after he fell fowl with *England*, and startled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong *Armada* at the Sea to Convoy his Treasures. Before which time, the English (as is instanced in several places) did so share in his Harvest, that they left him scarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any breach, they would finde it very difficult, if not impossible, to effect any thing on the Coasts, as in former times; or indeed any other way but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from comming to him to supply his needs. *And so much for the* AMERICAN Ilands.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods blessing) the *known parts* of the World, and sailed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same: we should now man our Barque again, and try what discovery we can make of the *Parts unknown*, or not so fully known to us as the others are.

——————*atqui*
Quo properas mea cymba? redi, satis ardua Ponti
Navimus; ecce Auster *pluvias jam cogere nubes*
Incipit, hic tutum non est (mihi crede) morari.
Dum licet in Portum tendamus; nubila clarum
Reddiderint ubi pulsa diem, revocabit ab Alto
Nos Triton Scopulo, *atq; iterum tentabimus aquor.*

That is to say,

But whether goes my Bark? Return, for we
Have sliced the capering Brine enough; see, see,
The Southwind 'gins to gather clouds apace,
Tis no safe tarrying in so fierce a place.
While thou hast time retire thou wearied Bark
Into safe Harbour; when the clouds which dark
The Worlds bright eye shall be dispelled away,
And shining *Phœbus* make a lightsome day,
Tritons shrill Trump shall thee recall again,
From the safe Harbour to the foaming main;
And we with all our powers will boldly try,
What of this UNKNOWN WORLD we can descry.

A TABLE

An Advertiſement to the Reader, concerning the enſuing TABLES.

SHort Tables may not ſeem proportionable to ſo long a Work, eſpecially in an Age wherein there are ſo many that pretend to learning, who ſtudy more the Index *then they do the* Book. *But to this Work ſhort Tables will be long enough, conſidering that the Running Titles on the top of each leaf, direct the Reader to a view of thoſe Countreys wh.ch he is to travel; and conſequently to as much knowledge of thoſe things which concern thoſe Countreys as this work can give him. Howſoever, that I may not be wanting in any point to the Readers eaſe, I have drawn thoſe Title into* Method *by the courſe of the* Alphabet; *and added all the reſt of the* Provinces *both great and ſmall, which are herein mentioned and deſcribed: with the names of thoſe Eſtates and Nations, whether old or new, the ſum of whoſe affairs is here drawn together. This being done in the firſt of theſe* Tables, *I have reduced into a ſecond, the names of thoſe particular Nations, with their ſeveral Tribes (the principal of them at the leaſt) which anciently inhabited thoſe Kingdoms, Provinces, and Iſlands, the Chorography and Hiſtory whereof is my chief endeavor: that being* marſhalled *by themſelves, they be no hinderance to the Reader in the ſearch of thoſe places, which he hath more deſire to viſit. And finally whereas there are many things in this work looking towards* Philology, *and ſome particulars not eaſily reducible to the other* Tables, *I have digeſted the chief of them into a* third; *leaving the reſt unto the conſideration of the ſtudious Reader, who poſſibly might take it ill if nothing ſhould be left to his care and memory.*

A Table of the principal Countreys, Provinces, Mountains, Seas, and Iſlands, contained and deſcribed in this Book.

A

A Bruzzo 71
Apulia 73
Apennine hils 37
Alps M. 152
Ænaria 78
Æolian Iſles 86
Adriatick Seas 122
Argow 166
Aquitanica 181
Aquitain 209
Anjou 197
Auxerrois 187,227
Amiens Vida mate 189
Auvergn 203
Aubigni 206
Angoleſm 208
Armaignac 214
Albret *ib.*
Agenois *ib.*
Aurange 219
Avignon 220
Alderney 231
Andaluzia 260
Algarve 276
Azore *ib.*
Aſturia 257
Aragon 285,249
Arran 350
Angleſey 351

Lib. II.

Auſtraſia 409, 424
Artois 367
Alſatia 420
Algow 428
Arthuſen 488
Aggerrhuis 494
Aſtrachan 518
Auſtria 435
Ausbach 444
Aria 491
Allen *ib.*
Abſyrtides 555
Anhalt 446
Arbe 556
Achaia propria 578
Arcadia 581
Argolis 584
Achaia 587
Attica 588
Athens *ib.*
Ætolia 595
Athamania 596
Acarnania 597
Albania 599
Ægean 613
Ægina 616
Andros 617
Anaphe 619
Aſtydalea *ib.*

Lib. III.

Aſia 639
Aſia minor 641
Aſia propria 650
Aſia ſpecialius dicta 657
Anatolia 641
Amazons 645
Æolis 657
Amathuſia 679
Ammonites 713
Auranitis 718
Aſer 721
Arabia 767
Deſerta 768
Petroſa 769
Felix 773
Amalekites 771
Aſſyria 787
Adiabene *ib.*
Atrapachitis *ib.*
Aladeule 756
Armenia major 798
Armenia minor 650
Albania 805
Atropatia 815
Arachoſia 824
Aria 826
Altai 856
Anian 860
Agra 885
Aurea Cherſoneſus 909
Ava 907
Arrachan 903,912
Amboina 919

Lib. IV.

Africa 932
Africa propria 945
Auguſtanica 927
Arcadia Egyptiaca 929
Ammoniaca 931
Aſgara 956
Algeirs 949,950
Atlas M. 965
Agadez 971
Æthiopia ſuperior 975
Æthiopia inferior 989
Æthiopick Iſles 1000
Angore } 980
Amara }
Adel 983
Adea 984
Agaſymba 989
Agags, or *Giacchi* 991, 996
Angola 995
Anzichana 997
Aſcenſion Iſle 1003
Annibon 9004
Atlanticæ Inſ. 1007
America 1011
Andes M. 1056
Amazons 1083
Antigo 1093
Auſtralis Incognita 1091

B

B Aſilicate 77
Bari 75
Belgica 181 *& l.*2,3
Barrois 187
Brie *ib.*
Boulogrois 189
Bretagne 194
Beauſſe 200
Blois 201
Berry 205
Bourbon 202
Beaupolis 203
Buche 211
Bearn *ib.*
Bigorre 213
Breſſe 224
Burgandy *K.* 221
Burgundy *D.* 226

TABLE II.

Burgundy *C.* 228
Burgundy Tranſiurane 153
Biſcay 254
Betica 248
Bæturia 263
Baleares 284
Britaine 293
Bardſey 351
The Borders 330

Lib. II.

Belgium 359
Bovillon *D.* 377
Brabant 378
Buren *E.* 389
Beverland 385
Berg 411
Briſgow 428
Bavaria 430
Bamberg *B.* 444
Baden 447
Bohemia 450
Brandenburg 456
Brunſwick 471
Bremen *B.* 476
Borglave 489
Baltick ſea ib.
Baltick Iſlands *ib.*
Bornholm 491
Bleſcica 492
Bochus 494
Beggerhuis *ib.*
Bodia *or* Bodner 505
Biarmia 516
Boſnia 552
Beſſarabia 563
Bulgaria 568
Bœotia 591
Boſphorus Thracius 613
Boſp. Cimmerius 842

Lib. III.

Bithynia 642
Batanea 717
Beth. Rehob. 718
Benjamin 731
Babylonia 783
Bahaman *K.* 796
Bactria 830
Bargu 860
Boranter 901
Bengala 903
Barma *or* Brama 906,907
Bandam 918
Borneo 920
Bantam 921

Lib. IV.

Barbary 941
Barbaria Antiqua 73
Bugia 948
Biledulgerid 967
Benin } 973
Bornum }
Bagamedrum 981
Bornagaſſum 982
Barus 984
Batta } 996
Bambu }
Bucaalaos 1021
Brion 1025
Briton Iſle *ib.*
Bermudyz 1030
Braſil 1079
Bahama 1033
Bonaire 127
Barbados 1093
Borealis Incognita 1089

C

CEltica 181
Campania 69
Campagna di Roma 100
Calabria 76
Superior *ib.*
Inferior 77
Capitanate 74
Capreæ 78
Capraria 133
Camerine 96
Chioggia 123
Corſica Cyrnus 139
Champaigne 186
Cominges 213
Charrolois 227
Corduba *K.* 260
Corvo 277
Caſtile 270
Catalonia 281
Cerdagne 283
Connaught 344
Caſſiterides 351

Lib. II.

Cambray *B.* 371
Cleveland 409
Colon *B.* 414
Carinthia 438
Carniola *ib.*
Cimbrick Cherſoneſe 484
Codonama 491
Corelia 515
Curland 527
Condora 516
Caſan 518
Croatia 552
Carpathian Mountains 540
Contado di Zara 554
Corinthia 586
Chaonia 597
Conſtantinople 609
Cyclades 616
Cythera 619
Crete *ib.*
Candie 620,623
Canea *ib.*
Claudia 624
Cia 619
Corcyra 627
Curzola 556
Cephalonia 626

Lib. III.

Cappadocia 648
Caria 661
Cilicia 666
Chios 672
Claros 674
Coos *ib.*
Carpathos 675
Cyprus 677
Coel-Syria 700
Comagena 697
Chuſites 772
Colchis 801
Cuſpian ſea 829
Circaſſians 845
Chaldæa 783
Carmania 821
Cathay 853
Caſcar 856
Cheſmur }
Camul }
Carazen } 857
Cardandan }
Caindu }
China 864
Citor *K.* 886
Cambaia, 887,888
Canara 890
Cononor 887
Calecut 887
Cranganor 898
Cochin }
Cai-Coulan } 898
Coulan }
Couche 902
Champa 908
Camboia *ib.*
Cauchin China 907

Lib. IV.

Cyrene 932
Carthage 943,946
Conſtantina 947
Chaus 953
Couche 981
Cafraria 993
Canarie Iſlands, 104
Coſyra 964
Cercina *ib.*
Cano }
Caſena } 971
Canada 1023
Cicuic 1035
Cibola 1036
Couliacan 1041
Cinaloa 1040
Califormia 1035,1037
Chiapa 1052
Coſtu Rica 1054
Chiametla 1041
Caſtella Aurea 1057
Carthagena 1059
Cuſco 1068
Collao 1068
Crux de la Sierra 1078
Charcha 1069
Clide 1073
Capitaniæ de S. Vin-
cent.
di Rio di Ianiere }
di ſpitito Sancto } 1080
di Porto Segaro }
dos Ilheos }
di Todos los ſan. }
di Fernambuc }
di Timaraca }
di Paraiba } 1081
di Rio Grande }
di Siara }
di Muzagnon } 1082
di Paria }
Cumana 1088
Cubagna 1090
Coche *ib.*
Caribes 1093
S. Chriſtopher 1094
S. Crux *ib.*
Cuba 1096

D

DAulphine 223

Lib. II.

Duveland 385
Denmark 481
Ditmarſh 486
Dwina 519
Dalmatia 552
Dacia 558
Dardania 614
Doris 595
Delos 616

Lib. III.

Doris 662
Druſians 693
Decapolis 719
Dan 719,728
Dead ſea 711
Drangiana 824
Dulſinda 883
Delby 885
Diu 887
Decan 889

Lib. IV.

Duccala 953
Dara 967
Damut 980
Dancali }
Dobas } 983
Darien 1058
Dominica 1093
Deſeada *ib.*
Domingo 1095

E

EUrope 32
Exarchate 93
Extremadura 263
Ebuiſa 284
England 294
Eaſt-Angles 314
Eaſt-Saxons 313

Lib. II.

Eaſt-Friſeland 477
Eſtland 526
Elis 579
Epirus 597
Euxine ſea 612
Erithynnus 613
Eubœa 615
Echinades 625

Lib. III.

Ephraim 725
Ergimul 857

Lib. IV.

Egypt 934,928
Erriffe 957
El-Habat 956
Eſtotiland 1020

F

FAvognana 86
Ferrara 93
Flaminia 91
Friuli 120
Florence *D.* 130
France 173
France ſpecial 182
Iſle of France 184
Forreſt 203
Foix 212
Flores ib.
paial 277
Frumentaria 284

Lib. II.

Flanders 365
Flammengant *ib.*
Imperial 366
Gallicana *ib.*
Franconia 442
Fionia *or* Fuinen 490
Fimera 491
Falſtri 490
Frozen Ocean 495
Finmark 505
Finland *ib.*
Freezland 496

Lib. IV.

Feſſe 954,955
Farigar 984

TABLE I.

Fuerte ventura 1005
Florida 1031
Fretum Davis 1090
Fretum le Maire 1092
Fairy-land 1094

G

Iglio 133
Genoa *S.* 136
Geneva *S.* 159
Grisons *B.* 170
Gallia 173
Cisalpina, Togata 141
Comata 181
Braccata *ib.*
Gastinois 184
Guisnes 188
Guise 191
Gerenne 210
Gascoign 211
Garnesey 231
Guipascoa 254
Gallicia 259
Gades 262
Gibraltar 261
Granada 265
Gratiosa 277
S. Georges *ib.*

Lib. II.

Gelderland 388
Groyningen 390
Germany 396
Gulick 410
Gothland *Cont.* 502
Gothland Isle 506
Groinland 497
Greece 574
Gyaros 617

Lib. III.

Galatia 647
Gadites 715
Gilead M. 706
Galilee 719
Geshur 718
Gaulonitis 717
Georgia 803
Geodrosia 823
Gazurate 887
Goa 889
Gouren 902
Gilopo 919

Lib. IV.

Guzzala 952
Garet 956
Goza 45
Gaulos 964
Gualata 971
Gumbra
Ghenega
Gialofi 972
Guber
Guinea
Guangara
Guega 973
Guagere 978
Goyami 981
Gorgades 1004
Gomera 1005
Guanahani 1033
Guanima *ib.*
Guadalaiara 1041
Guaxaca 1050
Guatimala 1052, 1053
Guiana 1083, 1084
Granada 1093
Guadalupe *ib.*

H

Hiero 87
Histria 121
Hetruria 129
Hapsburg *E.* 166
Helvetia 167
Heurepoix 183
Hispania 241
Hebrides 349
Holy land 353

Lib. II.

Hainalt 369
Holland 382
South Holland *ib.*
North Holland 383
Horn *E.* 379
Hegow 427
Hanaw 442
Henneberg *E.* 445
Hassia 473
Holstein 485, 486
Hallandia 491
Hemodes *ib.*
Hyperborean M. 513
Hungarie 541
Hæmus M. 572
Hellespont 613
Helene 619

Lib. III.

Hermon M. 706
Hierusalem 732
Hyrcania 826

Lib. IV.

Hea 953
Hascora *ib.*
S. Helens 1003
Hierro 1005
Holy Port 1007
Hesperides *ib.*
Hondura 1053
Hispaniola 1095

I

Italy 34
Isle of Naples 78
Ischia *ib.*
Isles of the Adriatick 100, 196
Judecha 123
Ilva 133
Ividot 191
Jarsey 231
Ireland 340
Ila 349
Jona *ib.*

Lib. II.

Juitland 487
Iseland 495
Jugra 516
Illyricum 551
Imbrus 614
Ionian Sea 624
Ithaca 628
Illyris 554

Lib. III.

Ionia 657
Isauria 666
Icaria 673
Icarian Sea 674
Ishrob 718
Iturræa 716
Issachar 722
Judæa 727
Iudah 729
Idumæa 736
Ismalites 771
Iberia 803
Imaas M. 856
India 876
Intra Gangem 879
Extra Gangem 905
Isles of Bengala 903
Jangoma 908
Jor 910
Japan 915
Java major 921
Java minor 922

Lib. IV.

Inhamban 992
Imbians 994
S. Iago 1004
Jucatan 1050
Jamaica 1097
Insulæ Solomonis 1092

K

Ent *K.* 311
Kenites 771
Kirgess 847

L

Latium 34
Lipara 86
Land of the Church 91
Luca *S.* 135
Lombardie 141
Liguria 136
Lugdunensis 181, 225
Limaign 203
Limosin 208
La March *ib.*
Languedock 215
Lionois 225
Lusitanica 248, 274
Leon and Oviedo 257
Lemster 343
Lundie 351

Lib. II.

Limbourg 375
Luxenbourg 373
Leige 375
Luickland *ib.*
Lorein 422
Luchtenberg 449
Lunenbourg 471
Lawenburg 467
Lusatia 455
Lippe *E.* 476
Langeland 490
Lawland *ib.*
Lapland 504
Livonia 525
Lettenland 527
Lituania 528
Laconia 581
Liburnades 555
Locris 594
Lemnos 594
Leucadia 614

Lib. III.

Leuco-Syria 646
Lydia 659
Lycia 662
Lycaonia 664
Lesbos 671
Lapethia 671
Lop 857
Lahor 884
Laos 908
Lequin 917
Lusson *ib.*

Lib. IV.

Libya 930
Libya interior 965
Libya Deserta 968
Latophagitis 964
Loango 997
Loande 998
Lanserotte 1005
Lucaios 1033
Lima 1067
Ladrones 1092
Lands of Chivalry 1094

M

Molosse 72
Mazara 85
Mona 86
Muriano 123
Marca Anconitana 96
Marca Trevigiana 118
Mediterranian sea 81
Malamocco 122
Millain 143
Mantura 146
Modena 147
Montferrat 149
Maine 198
Monpensier 216
Murcia 267
Monrpelier 283
Majorca *K.* 283
Majorca Island 284
Minorca 285
Mercia 315
Munster 345
Meath 343
Man 350
S. Maries 277
S. Michael *ib.*

Lib. II.

Marquisate of the Empire 379
Machlyn 380
Mark 412
Muers 409
Mentz *B.* 416
Montbelgard 422
Moravia 454
Mecklenburg 461
Magdeburg 464
Misnia 463
Mansfield 466
Moscovia 514
Mosaiskie *ib.*
Mordwitz 518
Massovia 531
Mellida 556
Moldavia 562
Mæsia 569
Messene 580
Mycenæ 584
Megaris 591
Macedon 601, 603
Mygdonia 604
Melos 619

Lib. III.

Metapontus 644
Mysia 654
Mysia Olympena 656
Mœonia 659
Mentesia 662
Midianites 712, 771
Moabites 718

TABLE I.

Manaſſes 717,724
Meſopotamia 789
Media 814
Margiana 830
Mandao 884
Moultan ib.
Moguls 904
Malabar 890
Maletur
Malaca 909
Muantay 911
Martavan 912
Macin ib.
Meaco 916
Mindanao 917
Macaſſar 920
Madura 922
Maldivæ 924
Moluccoes 918
Lib. IV.
Mauritania 35
Cæſarienſis 949
Sitifenſis 951
Tingitana 954
Morocco K. } 952
Morocco P. }
Mamalucks 937
Malta 964
Melly 972
Meroe 978
Melinde } 990
Mombaza }
Moſambique } 991
Moinhemage }
Monomotapa 992
Matuca 992
Manicongo 994
Madagaſcar 1001
Mohelia 1002
Mauritius ib.
Madera 1005
Mary-land 1028
Mexico 1047
Mexicana 1046
Mechuacan 1045
Martyres Iſles 1033
S. Martha 1059
Magellanica 1074
Magellane Straits 1075
Maragnon 1082
Margarita 1090
Matinino 1093
Mona } 1095
Monico }
Mundus alter & idem 1093

N

Naples K. 68
Narbonenſis 181, 216, 217
Normandy 191
Nivernois 202
Navarre 250
Northumberland K. 314
North-Wales 327
Lib. II.
Namur 371
Naſſaw 440
Northgoia 448
Novogrod the Great 515
Novogrod Inferior 518
Northern Ocean 495
Norwey 494
Nova Zemla 520
Noricum 435
Negropont 615
Naxos 617
Nurenberg 449
Lib. III.
Naphthali 719
Nabathæa 769
Nagaians 847
Narſinga 899
Lib. IV.
Numidia antiqua 948
Numidia nova 960
Nubia 974
Norumbeega 1024
Natiſcoet 1024
Nicaragua 1054
New Bretagne 1021
Nova Francia 1023
New-found-land 1021
Nova Scotia 1024
New England 1026
Novum Belgium 1027
Nova Albion 1028
Nova Gallicia 1040
New Biſcay 1042
New Mexico 1043
Nova Hiſpania 1044
Nova Andaluſia 1058
New Granado 1060
Nieves 1094
Nova Guinea 1093
New Atlantis 1094
New World in the Moon 1095

O

Orleanois 200
Oleron 230
Orange, v. Aurange
Olava 250
Oviedo 257
The Ocean 27
Orcades 349
Lib. II.
Overyſſel 388
Oldenburg 478
Oeland 506
Obdora 516
Oſilia 527
Oebalia 581
Orrygia 617
Lib. III.
Oſtœne 790
Ormus 822
Oriſtan 901
Lib. IV.
Ora Anteroſa 971
Orenoque 1085
Orbis Arctieus 1089

P

Puglia 73
Prochita 78
Principate 71
Papacie 86,87,&c.
S. Peters patrimony 99
Povegia 123
Piſa S. 132
Planaſia 134
Parma D. 148
Piemont 155
Paris 185
Picardy 188
Pontheia 189
Perch 193
Poictou } 206
Perigort 208
Province 218
Pirenean mountains 240
Portugal 277
Pico 276
Powiſlan 327
Pomona 349
Pictland 334
Lib. II.
S. Paul E. 367
Pfirtz 422
Palatinate of the Rhene 417
of Northgoia 448
Pannonia 541
Pomerania 459
Permia 517
Petzora 516
Pleſcow 515
Poland K. 524
Poland Pr. 535
Podolia 530
Podlaſſia 532
Pruſſia ib.
Pharus 553
Pontus 569
Peloponneſus 577
Phocis 592
Propontis 614
Proconneſus ib.
Paros 617
Lib. III.
Pontus 644
Galaticus ib.
Pelemoniacus 645
Cappadocius ib.
Paphlagonia 646
Phrygia major 658
minor 651
Pergamus K. 656
Piſidia 664
Pamphilia 665
Patmos 674
Paphia 679
Phœnicia } 688
Palmyrene 699
Paleſtine 707
Philiſtims 727
Peræa 712
Panchaia 774
Panea 720
Perſia 816
Perſis 819
Parapomiſus 825
Parthia 827
Penega 883
Patenaw 902
Patane 910
Prom 907
Pegu 911,912
Pallohan 917
Polerone 919
Poolaway ib.
Philippine Iſlands 917
Lib. IV.
Pharos 923
Pemba 996
Pango 997
Princes Iſland 1004
Palma 1005
Panuco 1045
Peruana 1056
Panama 1057
Popayana 1061
De la Plata 1077
Providence 1091
Peru 1063
Paria 1088
Porto Rico 1094
Pſittacorum Regio 1091
Painters Wives Iſland ib.

Q

Queeru 209
Lib. IV.
Quiloa 990
Quiticui 992
Quivira 1035
Quitos } 1066
Quixos }

R

Romandiola 91
Rome 101
Rhœtia 170
Rethelois 191
Rochelois 209
Rouvergn 216
Rhe Iſle 231
Rouſillon 288
Rothſay 350
Lib. II.
Raveſtein 379
Ravensburg 476
Rip 488
Ruſſia 510
Ruſſia Nigra 531
Rhezan 517
Raguſi 553,556
Raſcia 565
Rhetimo 623
Lib. III.
Rhodes 675
Rencontres 714
Rio de la Hacha 1059
Red ſea 774
Rame 902
Rancee 1024

S

Sicil 81
Stromboli 86
Sardinia 89
Sabinia 98
Spoletano Ducato 97
Sienna S. 132
Savoy 155,156
Saluzzes } 156
Switzerland 163
Saniterre 189
Soiſſons K. 190
Sologne 200
Sancerre 205
Sark 131
Spain 240
Sobrarbe 151
South-Saxons K. 311
South-Wales 327
Scotland 330
Sodore 349
Schecland ib.
Sorlinges or Sillie Iſles 351
Sunderland 353
Lib. II.
Sedan 373
Schowen 385
Spires B. 418
Stugow 421
Suevia or Schwaben 427
Saltzburg B. 432
Stiermark 437
Solm E. 442
Swartzenberg E. 445
Sileſia 455
Saxionie D. 462
Saxionie Pr. 465
Storemarſh 485
Sleſwick 488
Seland 489
Scandia 491
Sconia 492
Swethland 500
Sweden 504
Scricfinia 505
Smolensko 514
Severia 517
Sarmatia Europæa 520
Aſiatica l. 3. 190
Samogitia 528
Sclavonia 550

TABLE I.

Servia 566
Savia 541, 551
Sicyonia 578
Sparta 582
Samothracia 614
Salamis 616
Scyros 618
Seriphia 619
Sporades *ib.*
Sittia 622
Strophades 624

Lib. III.

Solæ 667
Samos 673
Salaminia 680
Syria 684
Syria propria 693
Syria Sobab 700
Syria Maacha 697
Samaria 723
Simeon 729
Saracens 770,779
Sophene 800
Susiana 818
Schythia 852
Sacæ 848
Sogdiana 849
Samoyeds 851
Serica 854
Sinda 887
Sanga 886
Siam *K.* 909
Siam *Pr.* 910
Sinda *or* Selebes 919
Sumatra 922

Lib. IV.

Sus 952
Sara 968
Sanaga 971
Sofala 991
Sunda 997
Songo *ib.*
Isle of Sable 1025
Seio 1035
Solomons Jus. 1092

T

TErra di Lavoro 99
Terra di Otranto 75
Torcellan 122
Tuscanie *D.* 129
Tyrrhenia *ib.*
Tuscan Isles 133
Tierasche 191
Tourein 198
Tarraconensis 248
Toledo *K.* 268
Tercera 276
Thule 349,496
Thanet 352

Lib. II.

Tolen 385
Triers *B.* 415
Tirol 439
Tesinge 491
Tuver 519
Trondheim 495
Turingia 446
Transylvania 559
Thebes 592
Thessalia 602
Thrace 607
Thracius Bosphorus 613
Thynnius *ib.*
Thassus 614
Thera 619
Tenos 617

Lib. III.

Troy *K.* 651
Tenedos 670
Trabezond *Emp.* 645
Thachonitis 716
Taurus M. 796
Turcomania 798
Turks 806
Turcheſtan 850
Tartaria 840
Precopensis 841
Deserta 844
Antiqua 859
Tartar *Pr.* 860
Thumenses 847
Tainfu 857
Tanguth 857
Thebet, Tabor, Tenduc 859
Tarnassar 900
Travancor 898
Tangu 907
Trippara 901
Tandair 917
Timore 918
Terenate *ib.*

Lib. IV.

Thebais 929
Tunis *K.* 945, 646
Tripolis 645
Tremesen 949
Taradant 952
Tedles 953
Temesna 954
Targa 968
Terra Nigritarum 970
Tombutum 972
Trogloditica 975
Tigrenaon 979
Torra 992
S. Thomas 1003
Tenariffe 1005
Terra Corterialis 1021
Tortugas 1033
Tiguez 1035
Tlascalla 1049
Tabasco 1051
Tucayan 1037
Tucuman *ib.*
Trimdado 1087
Tabaga 1077
Toruga 1091
Terra del Fuego *ib.*

U

VAl de Noto 84
Vulcanian Isles 86
Urbine *D.* 95
Umbria 97
Venice *S.* 118
Venice *C.* 123
Valesia 163
Valois 183
Veromandois 190
Vendosm 201
Venuiscine 226
Valentia 280
Ulster 344

Lib. II.

Voorn 384
Utrecht 387
Vindelicia 431
Veteravia 440
Voitland 446
Volodomir 519
Volhinia 530
Valachia 563
Valeria 541,551
Veggia 555

Lib. III.

Verma 912

Lib. IV.

Virginia 1026,128
Uxitipa 1042
Utrapaz 1052
Veragua 1054
Venezuela 1089
S. Vincent 1093
Utopia 195

W

WAllisland 162
West-Saxon K. 312
Wales 322
North-Wales 326
South-Wales 327
Wight 352

Lib. II.

Walchere 385
West-Friseland 386
Wurtzburg *B.* 444
Wirtenberg 446
Waldeck 474
Westphalia 475
Walfersdike 385
Worms *B.* 418
Waggerland 485
Wardhuis 495
Wheen 490
Wiatka 517
Worotine 519
Wolodomir 519
Willoughbies Island 520
Windischland 551

X

XAntoign 209

Lib. IV.

Xoa 984
Xalisco 1041

Z

Lib. II.

ZEland 384
Zurphen 389
Zemla Nova 520
Zaculeia 560
Zara 554,556
Zant 625

Lib. III.

Zabulon 721
Zavolhenses 846
Zagathay 848,849
Zeilan *or* Seilan 913

Lib. IV.

Zerby Isle 564
Zanaga 968
Zuenziga *ib.*
Zanzibar 989
Zocatora 1001
Zacatecas 1042
Maredel Zur 1092

The end of the First Table.

TABLE II.

A Table of the ancient names of the Tribes and Nations which are herein specified; as they are delivered by Ptolomy, Strabo, Pliny, and the rest of the old Geographers.

A

APuli 73
Allobroges 152
Ambiani 157. 188
Abrincantes 192
Armorici 196
Ambiliates 195
Andes or Andegavi 197
Arverni 204. 217
Aguenſes 211
Auſcii ib.
Agathenſes 217
Albigenſes 216. 217
Arecomaci 217
Apincenſes 224
Acuſiani 223
Aſtures 257
Antrigones 255
Arivacæ 271
Auxitani 282
Attrebatii 308
Auteri 346

Lib. II.

Atrebates 367
Aduatici 363
Alemanni 396
Angeli 431
Alauni 435. 520
Ambilici 435
Ambiſontii ib.
Ambidramuri ib.
Angrivarii 475
Achæi 578
Achivi 587
Ambrones 479
Argivi 574
Arii 491. 536
Agathyrſi 520
Aorſi 529
Avarini 534
Avares 436. 546. 846
Azuli 544
Aravici 545
Anarti 561
Aroteres 570
Athamanes 596
Æitræi 600

Lib. III.

Auſitæ 768
Adubeni 769
Agræi ib.
Adramitæ, Avaritiæ, Abuceni 777
Ægæi ib.
Albani 599, 805
Arymphæi 806
Amariacli 816
Araæ 822
Arbituri 844
Agriaſpæ ib.
Aromaſpæ 825
Arii 826
Aſtorani ib.
Arſitenſes ib.
Amariſpæ 831
Aſtorbeni 829
Æſchienſes 174
Alani 843. 851
Arinchi 843
Argaritæ 848
Anabi 856
Alanoeſi 851
Aſiotæ ib.
Aletrophagi 856
Abæi ib.
Aſpithræ 870
Acadræ ib.
Anabaſtæ ib.
Aii, Arvari, Adiſathræ 881
Animachæ 906
Anurogrammi 924

Lib. IV.

Ægypiani 932
Aóyrmachidæ 931
Arabes Azari, Arabes Adri 934
Asbetæ 933
Africerones 966
Auroncæ, Agargeni, Achalinces 974

B

BRutii, Balari 77
Bellovaci 139
Bellocaſſi 183
Baiocenſes 193
Bituriges Cubi ib.
Bituriges & ubiſci 205
Boii 142, 203, 492, 433, 450
Bigerrones 213
Bitterenſes 217
Bedii 259
Baſtuli 264
Baſtitani 272, 281
Bructeri 232, 388
Belgæ 308, 360
Brigantes 308, 346
Blanii ib.

Lib. II.

Batavi 386
Brixantes 419
Biephi 561
Boiemi 450
Bemi ib.
Bautii 455
Baſtarnæ 567
Boruſſi 532, 534
Breuci 544
Burredenſii 561
Beſſi 552, 563
Bardi 611

Lib. III.

Byceni 647
Batrii 824
Bergii 826
Baſilici 848
Bylci ib.
Batæ 856
Bittigi 881
Baſadæ 906
Bartæ ib.

Lib. IV.

Belemmyæ 932
Baſſachites ib.
Bures ib.
Barcæi ib.
Barcitæ 933

C.

CAraceni 72
Campans 69
Calabri 76
Cyclopes 82
Cenomani 119, 143, 197, 198
Corſi 139
Carni 152
Centrones 157
Celtæ 186
Caralauni 186
Caletes 193
Carnutes 200
Cadurci 209
Convenares 211
Conſerani ib.
Cavari 224
Cheruſci 232
Cantabri 255
Cariſti ib.
Gilini 259
Capori ib.
Carpentani 268, 271
Celtici 264, 278
Caſtellini, 271
Conteſtani 281
Celtiberi 271, 281, 286
Cerretani 283
Caſerani 282
Cantiani 308
Cattiduchlani ib.
Coritani ib.
Cornavii ib.
Caledonii 334
Cantæ ib.
Cantini ib.
Cornubii ib.
Cauci 346
Cariendi ib.

Lib. II.

Caninefates 386
Caleucones 419
Carni 438
Charitini 442
Chaſmari 465
Cheruſci 468, 475
Catti 441
Chauci 472
Chanci majores 475
Chauci minores 478
Chanani 475
Chali 489
Charades 489
Cimbri 484, 489
Cobandi ib.
Chuni 544
Chedni 497
Ceraunii 556
Cucoenſii 561
Cribizi 569
Cureres 596, 620

Lib. III.

Cures 666
Caſſanitæ 777
Chaucabeni 769
Cynædecolpitæ 777
Cattabani ib.
Chalives 804
Caucaſii 805
Coſſæi 819
Caduſii 816
Carmani 821
Chetonophagi 822
Cabadini ib.
Charadræ, 822
Caſpii 829
Chirondi ib.
Chariſpæ 831
Coamani ib.
Cimmerii 846
Coaxtræ ib.
Caſſoritæ 826
Canapſeni 848
Chænides ib.
Caratæ ib.
Camari, Comedæ ib
Candari 849
Cheraſnii ib.
Cabocæ 906
Chatæ 855, 856
Chauranæi ib.
Caſpiræi, Chatzæi 881
Chadrammotitæ
Cadutæ 906

Lib. IV.

Cynophanes 932
Cirteſii 949
Chituæ 950

D

DEcenſes 224
Decroates 137, 221
Dittam 271
Danmonii 308
Durotriges ib.
Dobuni ib.
Damnii 334
Dimetæ 323
Darnii 346. *l.* 2
Dauciones 492
Daei 544
Davi 558
Daurſii 556
Danduti 446
Derii 556
Dardani 267
Dinenſii 569
Danai 574
Dolopes

TABLE II.

Dores 595
Dolopes 601
Dolongi 611

Lib. III.

Debryces 816
Darandæ 824
Drachamæ 826
Derbicæ 830
Drepſiani 849
Dryllophitæ 881

Lib. IV.

Derbici 966

E

Euganei 121
Euburiades 137
Eburones 192,193,375
Engoliſmenſes 208
Edetani 281
Ericni 346

Lib. II.

Elyſii 491, 536
Eſſii 526,527
Ercuniates 544
Epicnemidii 595

Lib. III.

Epicteri 691
Eleſari 777
Elymæi 819
Euergetæ 825
Eoritæ *ib.*

F

Ferentini 72
Faliſci 130
Fidenates 100
Fluſſates 212
Friſii 232,386,477

Lib. II.

Francones 442
Finni 505
Franks 442

G

Gubbales 217
Gagari 257
Gallaici 259
Gallaici Braccarii 278
Gallaici Lucenſes 278
Gereſæni 268
Gadeni 334
Gaugani 346

Lib. II.

Gothini 455
Gutæ 492
Gothones 502
Gythones 534
Galindæ 534
Gepidæ 546

Lib. III.

Gerræi 777
Georgi 803
Gordiæi 803
Gerri 848
Grynæi 848
Geranæi 856
Galactophagi 851
Gandarides 906. 881
Gangeni 906
Galthi 924

Lib. IV.

Goniatæ 932
Getuli 966
Garamantes
Gamoſaphantes 932
Galla 992

H

Hirpini 72
Hetruſci 129
Heneti 125
Hedui 143. 203. 225, 227
Helvetii 167
Helvii 216. 217

Lib. II.

Hermanduri 432
Heruli 459. 460, 461
Helveronæ 536
Hunni 547. 846
Hunugari *ib.*
Helores 584

Lib. III.

Heptacometæ 647
Homeritæ 777
Hyrcani 829
Hamaxobii 843
Hyperborei 848
Hippophagi 821. *ib.*

Lib. IV.

Heſperii 989
Herpiditani 950

I

Apyges 73,75
Ingauni 137
Inſubres 142. 143
Indigetes 288
Illercones 282
Illergetes 249
Jaccetani 282. 286
Iceni 308

Lib. II.

Intuergi 418. 447
Jazyges Metanaſtæ 544
Jaſſii *ib.*
Japides 556
Inachii 226

Lib. III.

Iberi 804
Jazyges 843
Jaſii 849
Jaxartæ 851
Iſſedones 855
Indo-Scythæ 881

Lib. IV.

Jonii 949
Jerbicæ 35
Ichthyophagi 989. 870

L

Latini 38
Laurentini *ib.*
Lucani 77
Læſtrigones 82
Lepontii 152
Libyci 155
Lingones 186
Lexobii 193
Lemovices 209
Leſtoraces 211
Lancienſes 257
Lemari 259
Luſitani 276. 278
Lacetani 286

Lib. II.

Leuci 423
Longimani 460
Longiduni *ib.*
Longobardi 468, 545, 546
Livoni 526. 527
Liburni 554
Latovici 544
Leleges 581
Lapithæ 601

Lib. III.

Leucoſyri 646
Lydians 660
Lycii 663
Lycaones 664
Leonitæ 777
Limyrices 881
Leſtori 906
Lambatiæ 881

Lib. IV.

Libyarchæ 932
Lybi Ægyptii 932
Libyi Phœnices 949
Loganici 933

M

Maſapii 73. 75
Medalli 157
Meldi 187
Morini 189. 367
Maſſilienſes 221
Marbogi 255
Meatæ 334
Menapii 346. 390

Lib. II.

Mattiaci 386
Medionatrices 423
Marſi 409. 485
Marcomanni 436
Marſigni 455
Mazæi 556
Mœli 567
Myrmidons 601
Moloſſi 598

Lib. III.

Maſſinoeci 647
Myſi 655
Materni 769
Maſoni 769
Minœi 777
Margaſi 816
Meſabatæ 821
Megores *ib.*
Maſarnæ 824
Maſdorami 826
Maxeræ 829
Maricæ 831
Mœotæ 842. 846
Merdi 848
Maſſagetæ 830. 848
Maſſæi 851
Mazagæ 881
Malli *ib.*
Mologeni 851
Muſicani 881
Mandaſæ *ib.*
Marandæ 906
Muduttæ 924

Lib. IV.

Marmaridæ 930
Macuturæ 933
Marhymi 949
Medini *ib.*
Malchubii 950
Maccharobi *ib.*
Mauri
Maurufii 951
Metagonitæ
Maſæſili 949
Meinari 960
Macrobii 978

N

Nannetes 195
Novantes 334
Nagnatæ 344

Lib. II.

Nervii 370. 372
Nemetes 418
Norici 432. 435
Noriſci 432. 449
Naithones 457
Neteriates 464
Naharvali 536

Lib. III.

Nyſæi 826
Nabathæi 769
Napæi 843
Nanigeri
Nagaudi 924

Lib. IV.

Nigitimi 949
Novatæ *ib.*
Nectiberres 959
Nigritæ
Nubæ 966
Nabatræ 974

O

Oxilii 137
Oſſiſmi 195
Oretani 271
Ortadini 308
Ordovices 323

Lib. II.

Obitriti 461
Oſyli 520
Oſoniates 544
Ozolæ 595
Opuntii *ib.*

Lib. III.

Olympeni 655
Orbitæ 824
Orcheni 769
Obares 826
Olandæ 848
Oxydracæ 849. 880
Oxiani 149
Ottocororæ 856

Lib. IV.

Ogdoni 932
Odranguli 966

P

Peligni 72
Precutini *ib.*
Piceni 71
Picentes 96
Picentini 71
Piſæ 132
Pariſii 183
Pictones 206
Petrigorii 208
Peſici 257
Pictis 334

Lib. II.

Phrunduſii 489
Pagiritæ 520
Phinni 534
Pagirini 529
Phrungudiones 534
Pæones 544
Parii 555
Peiruſtæ

TABLE II.

Peiruſiæ 556
Picentii 567
Peucini 569
Piarenſii ib.
Pelaſgi 574
Lib. III.
Proſelimnitæ 647
Phryges 653
Piſidæ 664
Paſagartæ 822
Parſuiæ 824
Pargyetæ 825
Parambi 826
Parni 830
Pſelli 846
Piaſæ 856
Piratæ, Pezuari, Polindæ, Phyllitæ, Pandiani 881
Lib. IV.
Proſiditæ 932
Pœni 943
Perafori, Pyrrhæi 966
Pſilli ib.

A

Quadi *l.*2.436, 454

R

Ruruli 100
Rhæti 152, 170
Rhemi 186
Rhodones 195
Ruteni 216
Regni 308
Rhobogdii 344
Lib. II.
Ramuraci 422
Ruguſci 429
Rugii 459
Reudigni 460
Rutheni 520
Roxolani 520, 843
Roſſi 510
Rharacenſii 561
Raſciani 565
Lib. III.
Raubeni 769
Ramnæ 824
Rochitæ 825
Rhabbanæi 856
Rapſii 821, 989
Rhogandani 924

S

Samnites 72
Salentini 73, 75
Sicani 82
Siculi ib.
Sabini 98
Sadani 152
Salii 152, 219
Salaſſi 155
Senones 142, 186, 187
Silvanectes 183
Salures 193
Sueſſiones 188
Samnitæ 206
Seguſiani 203
Sautones 209
Senitii 221
Sigeſtorii ib.
Secuſiani 225
Sequani, 228
Scyrani 194, 195
Seuri 259
Segalauni 224
Silures 322
Selgovæ 334
Lib. II.
Sicambri 81, 232, 390
Suentes 429
Sevates 435
Salii 443 *& l.* 1.198
Suardones 464
Saxons 310, 468, 475
486
Sigalones 486
Subalingii ib.
Suethidi 506, 500, 504
Sitones 506
Suiones ib. 507
Syculi 560
Sauromatæ 520
Savari 529
Sudini 534
Sulanes ib.
Scordiſci 544
Sclavini 557
Siculotæ, 556
Sardiotæ ib.
Scirrones ib.
Soravi ſervi 567
Strimonii 611
Sapæi ib.
Saii ib.
Sulanes 534
Lib. III.
Solymi 664
Soli 667
Sachalites 777
Sabæi ib.
Soani 805
Suſcani 819
Suzæi 821
Stabæi ib.
Sagartii 816
Sazaræ 822
Sieri 825
Salateræ 831
Scordæ ib.
Savadii ib.
Sinchi 843
Sythi 852
Samocolchi 848
Socani ib.
Seci ib.
Seres 855
Scimnitæ 848
Sozyges 856
Semantini 870
Saubeni 851
Saſones ib.
Sadani, Soringi, Sabari 881
Sindocandæ, Soani, Semni 924
Lib. IV.
Sciapolæ 932
Succuſii 951

T

Tarentini 75, 77
Tyrrheni 119
Tuſci ib.
Taurini 155
Tricaſſes 186
Tectoſages 216, 647, 851
Toloſates 216
Turones 197
Tricaſſini 224
Teucteri 232
Turdetani 244, 264
Turduli ib.
Tuditani 278
Trinobantes 308
Talzalli 334
Lib. II.
Tungri 363, 376
Treveri 416
Tribochi 422
Tauriſci 438, 561
Turingi 464
Tricorneſii 567
Teutones 491
Triballi 569
Tegeates 581
Talautii 600
Lib. III.
Thynni 642
Themiſcyrii 645
Tibareni 647
Trogmi ib.
Toliboſti ib.
Turcæ 806, 846
Thyrſagetæ ib.
Tapyri 816, 130
Tombyzi 831
Thocari ib.
Tauri 841, 843
Tauro-ſcythæ ib.
Thyrambæ 846
Tachozi 849
Taporæi 852
Thoani 856
Tacoræi 906
Tilædæ ib.
Tarachi 924
Lib. IV.
Taladuſii, Thaloſſii 950
Troglodites 569, 975

U

Veſtini 72
Umbri 97
Volſci 100
Veneti 113, 125, 195
Veii 130
Veragri 152
Valenſes 152, 162
Vacontii, 152
Veromandui 118, 190
Venelhocaſſi 193
Vaſſates 211
Vaccæi 212, 271
Velauni 216
Volciæ 217
Vencienſes 220
Vaſionenſes ib.
Valentini 223
Vocontii 224
Vaſcones 252, 254
Varduli 255
Ventones 271
Vermines 334
Vacomagi ib.
Volentii 346
Veniculi ib.
Velibori ib.
Utarni ib.
Vodii ib.
Lib. II.
Ubii 414
Vangiones 418
Veredonenſes 423
Vindelici 428, 429, 430, 431
Virthungi 446
Varini 457
Vandali 461
Venedi 456, 534
Vardæ 556
Lib. IV.
Veli, Vacuatæ, Verbiſæ 951

W.

Winithi *l.*2.456, 460, 551
Werciani *l.*2. 544
Winnili *l.*2.545

X

Xilines 974
Xanthi 669

Z.

Zoelæ 257
Lib. III.
Zaviaſpæ 831
Zigæ, 845, 846
Zychi *or* Zinchi, 845
Zaratæ 851

The end of the Second Table.

A TABLE

OF

The *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

A	*Longit.*		*Latit.*		
Acapulo	276	0	18	0	
Almeria	272	15	20	0	
Ancon	321	0	6	20	
Anegadas	296	0	50	0	*A.*
S. Anna Equitum	328	10	27	30	*A.*
Antigna	330	20	16	10	
Antiochia	302	50	6	40	
Arica	300	30	20	0	*A.*
Aſcenſion	353	20	18	50	*A.*
Aravalo	298	10	1	30	
Acuzamil	289	30	19	0	
S. Auguſtin	293	0	29	50	
B					
Bahama	296	30	27	0	
Barbados	322	0	13	0	
Bovincas	296	50	15	50	
C					
Campa	351	40	62	50	
Cartagena	300	0	20	10	
Carthago	299	30	3	10	
Caxamalca	298	30	11	30	*A.*
Cheſſapiake	308	0	38	0	
Chiafmetlan	260	0	25	40	
Chile	299	0	36	30	*A.*
Colima	267	20	19	50	
Collao	300	0	16	0	*A.*
Coquimbo	301	20	20	40	*A.*
Corduba	316	20	33	0	*A.*
Coano	259	40	31		
Couliacan	266	30	27	0	
Cuſco	297	20	13	30	*A.*
D					
Darien	295	40	5	30	
Deſeada	320	0	15	20	
Dominica	359	40	14	0	
E F					
Eſtade	305	10	47	40	
Fernambuc	351	40	9	20	
G					
Gorgona	295	10	3	20	
Granada	318	20	11	0	
Guajaquil	194	30	2	30	*A.*
Guadalquabol	282	20	31	0	
Guanape	294	50	8	10	*A.*
Guardalupe	319	20	15	20	
Guatimala	303	0	24	30	
H					
Hangnedo	310	30	54	0	

	Longit.		*Latit.*		
Havana	292	10	20	0	
Hochelaga	300	50	44	10	
Hunedc	324	0	51	30	
I					
Jabaque	315	15	17	15	
S: Jago	298	10	30	10	
Iſabella	305	20	18	50	
L					
Lempa	274	10	16	50	
Lima	296	40	23	30	
Loxa	293	30	9	50	*A.*
M					
Malagnana	306	0	23	40	
Malones	279	40	13	40	
Maracapana	312	10	8	0	
Margarita	314	10	10	50	
Mexico	283	0	38	30	
Martha	301	20	10	40	
S. Michael	291	40	6	10	*A*
S. Michael	327	10	47	20	
Mona	309	30	18	0	
Monſorate	319	10	15	40	
Montroyal	301	0	45	40	
Mopox	301	10	10	0	
N					
Navaca	300	20	17	10	
Nicoia	284	30	10	40	
Nives	318	40	16	20	
Nombre de Dios	294	30	9	20	
Norumbega	315	40	43	40	
P					
Paca	302	50	13	10	*A.*
Paito	290	30	5	10	*A.*
Panama	294	30	8	30	
Panuco	270	10	22	20	
Paſto	304	0	11	40	*A.*
Pina	296	20	3	0	
Plata	305	0	19	50	*A.*
Popayan	297	20	1	50	
Poſſeſſion	241	30	32	20	
Potoſi	315	10	21	10	*A.*
Q					
Quilcon	298	50	16	30	*A.*
Quintete	303	40	34	40	*A.*
Quito	293	10	0	10	
Quivira	233	0	41	40	

R

Roca	311	0	11	10
Roquelay	314	10	50	0

S

Saba	317	30	17	20
Salinas	321	40	53	0
S. Salvadore	321	10	5	0
Sante	294	40	9	30 *A.*
Saona	309	0	16	50
Sorand	351	40	61	0

T

Tabaco	322	10	10	40
Tarnaco	270	15	24	40
Tavaſco	275	40	18	20
Teſtigos	316	10	11	0
Thomebamba	293	40	1	50 *A.*
Tiquiſana	305	20	16	0 *A.*
Tochtipec	274	40	19	0
Tortuga	303	50	20	20
Totonteac	248	20	36	0
Trinidad	295	50	21	20
Tumbez	291	40	4	10 *A.*

V

Valparaiſo	300	0	33	0 *A.*
Vllao	242	10	30	30
Vraba	297	20	7	30
Vrcos	301	0	14	50 *A.*
Wococan	307	30	34	0

Z

Zacatula	269	4	20	0

A is the mark of Southern Latitude

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN

AN

APPENDIX

To the Former VVork,

ENDEAVOURING

A DISCOVERY

OF THE

UNKNOWN PARTS

OF THE

WORLD.

ESPECIALLY OF

Terra Auſtralis Incognita,

OR THE

Southern Continent

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

Horat. De Arte Poet.

Pictoribus atque Poeti
Quidlibet audendi ſemper fuit æqua Poteſtas.

LONDON,
Printed for *Henry Seile*, 1656.

WORLD.

AN APPENDIX To the Former VVork,

Endeavouring a Diſcovery Of the *UNKNOWN PARTS* of the VVORLD.

AND here we are upon a new and ſtrange *Adventure*, which no *Knight Errant* ever undertook before. Of things *unknown*, as there is commonly no deſire, ſo leſs diſcourſe can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we muſt underſtand *leſs known*, or not well diſcovered; and in that ſenſe we may as well endeavour to ſay ſomewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the *diſcovery*. And to ſay truth, even in the *known* parts of the world there is much *unknown*; as in the beſt & moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of the Earth there is ſome waſt ground, either not cultivated at all, or not ſo well inhabited as the reſt of the Country. For beſides many vaſt tracts of ground in the North and North-weſt parts of *Tartary*, and ſuch parts of *India* as lie Northwards towards *Delanguer*, *Nangrocot*, the Eaſt parts of *Caucaſus*, & the Realms of *Cathay*; it is conceived that the greateſt part of the midlands of *Africk* are *undiſcovered* to this day, or the knowledge of them ſo imperfect as comes near a *neſcience*. And for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders (which are in part to be the ſubject of this enquiry) it is affirmed of the *Midlands* by *John de Laet* (who hath made the moſt exact deſcription of it that was ever extant) *Minima, ſui parte perluſtratum eſſe*, that the leaſt part of them hath been diſcovered hitherto to any purpoſe. Leaving theſe therefore as before without further ſearch, we will divide the *UNKNOWN WORLD* into theſe two parts, 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra incognita Auſtralis*; which with their Subdiviſions we will now purſue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS, is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be conſidered in theſe three notions. 1. As directly under the *Pole*, which for diſtinctions ſake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. As lying to the *North-Eaſt* on the back of *Europe*, and *Aſia*; or 3. on the *North-weſt*, on the back of *America*.

1. *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of *Terra Borealis incognita*, which lyeth under or about the *Arctick Pole*; the ſituation and dimenſions of which being taken with the *Aſtrolabe* by an *Oxford Frier*, are by *Mercator* thus deſcribed out of the Itinerary of *James Cnoxe* of *Bois le duc*, or the *Boſche* a Town of *Brabant*.

"Under the *Arctick Pole* (ſaith he) is ſaid to be a *black Rock* of wondrous height, about 33 leagues "in compaſs, the Land adjoyning being torn by the Sea into four great Ilands. For the *Ocean* violent-"ly breaking thorow it, and diſgorging it ſelf by 19 Chanels, maketh four *Euripi*, or fierce *Whirl-pools*, "by which the waters are finally carried towards the North, and there ſwallowed into the *Bowels* of "the Earth. That *Euripus* or *Whirlpool* which is made by the *Scythick* Ocean hath five *Inlets*, and by "reaſon of his ſtreight paſſage, and violent courſe, is never frozen: the other on the back of *Groenland*, "being 37 leagues long, hath three inlets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Between theſe "two there lieth an Iland, on the North of *Lappia* and *Biarmia*, inhabited as they ſay by *Pygmies*, the "talleſt of them not above four foot high. A certain *Scholar* of *Oxford* reporteth, that theſe four *Eu-*"*ripi* are carried with ſuch furious violence towards ſome *Gulf*, in which they are finally ſwallowed up, "that no ſhip is able with never ſo ſtrong a Gale to *ſtem* the *Current*, and yet that there is never ſo "ſtrong a wind as to blow a *Windmill*. The like reported by *Giraldus Cambrenſis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hibernia*. So far and to this purpoſe he. But *Blundevile* our Countryman is of another opi-

North-East Parts

nion, as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Plinie* or any other of the *Roman* writers came hither to describe this *Promontory*: or that the *Oxford Frier*, without the assistance of some cold *Devil* of the *middle Region* of the Air (and consequently able to endure all weathers) could approach so near as to measure these cold Countries with his *Astrolabe*, or take the height of this *Black Rock* with his *Jacobs Staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucians Dialogues*, than any serious discourse, we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTHWEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the back of *Estotiland*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to goe so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Streights of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Sebastian Cabot*, *An.* 1497. at the charge of *Henry* the 7th of *England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67 Degree of *Northern* Latitude, by the mutinie of his Mariners he was forced to return; where finding great preparations for a War with *Scotland*, that busines for the present was laid aside. Resumed by *Gasper Corteriaglis*, a *Portugal*, *An.* 1500, and after by *Stephen Gamez*, a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525. but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithstanding would not so give over, but first with 5 ships from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, sent out by *Cortez*, pursued the enterprize, which proving as succesless as the former had been, occasioned *Charls* the 5th. then preparing for *Italie*, on the payment of 35000 Ducats by King *John* the third, to suspend the prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as bad succes by Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voyages for these parts (the first of them in the year 1579) and brought home some of the *Natives*, a Sea Unicorn horn (still kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windsor* Castle) and a great deal of the *Ore* of that Country, found upon tryal, when in *England*, not to quit the cost. A great Promontory which he passed by, he called Queen *Elizabeths Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it; and the Sea running not far off, he called *Frobishers Streights*. The Seas full set with Icy Ilands, some of them half a mile about, and 80 Fathoms above water; the people like the *Samoeds*, the worst kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the design, *An.* 1585. at the incouragement of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, then principal Secretary of Estate: and having in 3 Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73. by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprize, and the death of Mr. *Secretary*, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Estotiland*, the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name still called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudson*, *Buton*, *Baffin*, *Smith*, all *English*. The result of whose endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land, which they named King *James* his *Cape*, Queen *Anns Cape*, Prince *Henries Foreland*, *Saddle Iland*, *Barren Iland*, *Red-goose Iland*, *Diggs his Iland*; all of them betwixt 80, and 81. and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea, the names of *Hackluyts Headland*, *Smiths Bay*, *Hudsons Streights*, *Maudlins Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their undertakings. Nothing atchieved of publike moment but the Discovery of an Iland called *Cherry Iland* in the Latitude of 74, and the shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King *James* his *New Land*, most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many *white Bears*, with white, grey, and dun Foxes, Patriges, Geese, and some other Provisions, Sea Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morses*, (or Sea-horses) the Oyl and Teeth whereof yeeld no small commoditie. But most considerable for the Trade of *Whale-fishing*, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones, and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Cœti*, now used as *Medicinal*) they raise very great profit.

3. The *NORTHEAST PARTS* of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartaria*; by which the like passage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like succes. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by whom trained up in the Discovery of the North east parts of *America*. His employment failing here in *England*, he betook himself unto the service of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, *An.* 1549 was by King *Edward* the sixt made *Grand Pilot* of *England*, with an Annual Pension of 166 l. 13 s. 4. d. In the year 1553 he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia*, and the *North-East* Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellour*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinson*, and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their ship being found the next year hemmed about with ice, and a particular accompt of all things which had hapned to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia* (since that time made a common voyage, without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Caspian* Sea, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the conduct and direction of one *William Barendson*, their chief *Pilot*; but went no further than the *English* had gon before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first *Discoverers*; with pride and arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of this North-east passage, or giving us any better accompt of the North of *Tartarie*, or any Countries beyond that; but what we had many ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*; so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant undertakings; yet when I look upon the natures of those Shores and Seas, those tedious winters of ten moneths, with no Summer following; the winds continually in the North, and the *Main* Ocean paved with Ice so long together: I cannot choose but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the difficulties presented in them.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA

Terra Australis.

WIth better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *TERRA AUSTRALIS*, or the *Southern* Continent, though hitherto *INCOGNITA* also, almost as much unknown as the *Artick* Ilands, which none but my good *Frier* of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our learned *Brerewood*, to be as large as *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*: and that upon such strength of Reasons, as cannot be easily over-born by any opposite. His arguments in brief are these, 1. That as touching *Latitude*, some parts thereof come very near to the *Æquator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for *Longnitude*, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents, the Land which lyeth on the North-side of that Line, is four times at the least as large as that which lies South thereof; and therfore since the earth is equally poized on both sides of her *Center*; it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea, on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South-parts of the other two *Continents*, to countervail the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplyed in the *Southern* Continent.

The Country being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice, and endless Winters; I have oft marvelled with my self that no further progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the site and position of the Country, especially in those parts which lye neareſt *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elswhere, either of profit or of pleasures, but may there be found. Whether it be, that there is some *Nil ultra* put to humane endeavours; or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the *Gospel*; or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in *New Discoveries*, till the *Old* be thorowly planted, and made sure unto them; or that the *Merchant*, who in matters of this nature hath a powerfull influence, thinks his hands full enough already; and being setled in so many and so wealthy *Factories*, will not adventure upon more. Which of all these, or whether all of these together be the cause of this stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is that here is a large field enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or Desire of glory to spend themselves in; enough to satisfie the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth, and Worldly pleasures; besides the *Gallantry* and merit of so brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the incouragements of the Vice Royes of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countries called the *Ilands of Solomon*, but whether Continents or Ilands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the honor, who passing thorow the *Streights*, which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which from the *fire* thence seen he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Iland. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did, was rather *Accidental*, than upon Design. For in the year 1593. Sir *Richard Hawkins* being bound for the *Streights* of *Magellan*, was by a cross wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins* his *Mayden Land*; A Promontery of it shooting into the Sea with three points he called *Point Tremontein*; and a pleasant Isle not far off, by the name of *Fair Iland*. Sayling along these Coasts in the 50 Degree of *Southern Latitude*, for the space of 60 miles and upwards, he found the Country as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the fires which he saw in the night to be well inhabited. By the like accident, *Anno* 1599. *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the *Streights* of *Magellan* fell upon some Ilands of this *Southern* Continent, in the *Latitude* of 50 Degrees and 40 Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibalds* Ilands. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the discovery of such parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the Eastern *Indies*; of which we have little but the names, as *Psittacorum Terra*, so called from the aboundance of *Parrats* which they saw on the Coasts, over against the *Cape of good Hope*. 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by *Idolaters*; with the two Kingdomes of 3. *Lucach*, and 4. *Maletur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Royes of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543 the Governor of *New-Spain* then being, sent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccos*, who in that Voyage made a Discoverie of a rich and flourishing Countrie which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli*; and in the year 1563, *Castro* the *Licentiate*, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the conduct of *Lopes Garcia de Castro*, discovered the *Ilands* of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the Discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Lands adjoining; The best Descripriion we can make of this Southern Continent, must be in the Chorography and Hsstory of their Adventures; *viz.* 1. *Terra del Fogo*, 2. *Insula Solomonis*, 3. *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because neareſt to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO*, lies on the other side of the *Streight* of *Magellane*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Iland by one *Jacob Mayre* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15 of *June*, *Anno* 1615. and on the 19 of *January* following they fell even with the *Streight* of *Magellan*. On the 24 of the same Month they had the sight of

ano-

Insulæ Solomon.

another *Streight*, which seemed to separate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the *Southern Continent*; and on the 25 they entred into it. That part of the Land which (being entred into the *Streight*) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauritii de Nassaw*; that on the East, *Statenland*; the Streight it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the *Streight* they found to be in 55 degrees of Southern *Latitude*, and 50 Minutes; the Waters running into the North-Sea with so violent an *Eddie*, *Ut adversum maris æstum difficulter superare possemus*, saith he, who in the way of *Journal* or *Ephemerides*, hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course whereof nothing so much observable (besides this Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a day (as must needs happen unto such, as in so tedious a voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders*, and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such *Morality* in the *Sabbath*, as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen; or otherwise to complie with them, must be guilty of the breach of the *Sabbath* all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this *Streight*, it is said to be seven *Dutch* miles, or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentifull of good fish; especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inserting of which *Streight* into the third Edition of my *Microcosm*, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon*, *An.* 1625 subscribed *G. B.* and a little under that, *Sub granda floridus*: which whether it were the Gentlemans *Motto*, or the *Anagram* of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desires were satisfied in the next Edition of that work. "For my encouragement "wherein he gave me this direction following, The News (saith he) of this *New Streight* coming in- "to *Spain*, it pleased that King in the year 1618, to send and search whether the truth were answera- "ble unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader than the other, and not above seven *Dutch* "miles long; decreed, that being the more ease and compendious way for Navigators, and less sub- "ject to dangers; his Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the *East-Indies*, to defend to *Phi-* "*lippinæ* and *Molucco* Ilands, and the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard that every such "voyage, requireth twice as much time: besides the variety of winds, and often change of the Air, "not only troublesom, but full of diseases, consumeth the one half of the men before they return. "Whereas this way gaineth time (and if need be, they may dispatch business in the *West* as they travel "into the *East*) without any extraordinary danger or losse of men. So far the very words of my letter. The intelligence given me in this Letter, I find confirm'd in a *Relation* of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Iuan de More*, *Anno* 1618. at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who presently arm'd and furnish'd eight tall ships to send this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Moluccos*; under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelis de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience, that even from our parts to the *Moluccos*, through this *Fretum de Mayre*, is but a passage of eight moneths: *Sine ulla insigni navigantium clade*, saith the *Narrator*. But of this streight enough, to satisfie my *unknown well willers* request, and enform my Reader: extremely sorry that the Gentleman was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills apparelled with woods, intermixt with Vallies; the Vallies for the most part full of little *Brooks* which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided of Bays and Roads, not unsafe for shipping: though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white complexion; but their Face, Arms, and Thighs, coloured with a kind of *Oker*: of full stature and well-proportioned, their hair black, which they wear long to seem more terrible. The men most generally naked, the women only shaded on their secret parts, with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of houses; so that the most which we can doe is to Coast the Iland. In which we find towards *Mare del Noort*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea, called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of S. *Ives*. 3. *Mauritius* land. 4. *Promontorio de de Buen Suseio*, or the Cape of *Good Success*. Opposite whereunto in another Iland is the Cape of S. *Bartholomews*; and betwixt them the Streight called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South Sea*, as they call it, there are 5. *Barnwelts* Island. 6. The Ilands of S. *Ildefonso*. 7. Cape *Horn* on a fair Promontory, in the South-west *Ande*: which doubled, the Country goes along with a strait shore, on which I find some Bayes and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the Western entrances of the Streight of *Magellan*, opposite unto Cape *Victoria*, so often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Ilands of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 degrees on the South of the *Equinoctial*. Discovered in the year 1567. by *Lopes Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countries. By whom thus named, in hope that men would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the coast whereof the *Spaniards* sailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the People of it in a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. S. *Isabella* 150 leagues in length,

and

and 18 in breadth; the Inhabitants, ſome black, ſome white, ſome of brown complexion. 38. *Nicolas*, 100 Leagues in compaſs, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but ſaid to be more witty than the other Salvages. All of them ſituate betwixt the Streights of *Magellan*, and the Ilands of *Theeves*; and yet not well agreed upon amongſt our Authors, whether to be accompted Ilands, or a part of the Continent: The *Spaniards* having ſailed 700 Leagues on the Coaſts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they paſſe generally in accompt for Ilands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them paſſe ſo ſtill. *Nova Guinea*

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lyeth beyond the Ilands of *Solomon*, in reſpect of us, proceeding as we have begun from the Land of Fire. Diſcovered, as before was ſaid, *An.* 1543. by *Villa Lobos* (*Herrera* attributes the diſcovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and ſets it higher in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I gueſs aright, by *Fernando de Quir*. Who being ſent with two Ships to make a more full diſcovery of the *Ilands of Solomon*, and taking his courſe about the height of the *Magellan ſtreights*, diſcovered a main Land coming up cloſe to the *Æquinoctial*, on the Coaſts whereof he ſailed 800 Leagues, till he found himſelf at laſt in the *Latitude* of 15 Degrees, diſcovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purpoſed to ſettle a *Plantation*, and to that end preſented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive by the ſite and poſition of it to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up cloſe as that doth, to the *Æquinoctial*; and after turning to the South towards the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maletur*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I ſhall afford the Reader this Deſcription of it, out of his *Memorials*; in which it is ſoberly affirmed to be a *Terreſtrial Paradiſe* for wealth and pleaſures. The Country plentifull of Fruits, *Coco-nuts*, *Almonds* of four ſorts, *Pom-citrons*, *Dates*, *Sugar-canes*, and *Apples*: plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partiges, and other Fowl, with ſome Kine and *Buffals*. Nothing inferiour (as it ſeemeth) to *Guinea*, in the *Land of Negroes*; and from thence ſo named. For, as he ſaith, he ſaw amongſt them Silver and Pearls, and ſome told him of Gold; the Countries on the Coaſt ſeeming to promiſe much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be whole and temperate, the Sea ſhores to be full of *Baies*, *Havens*, and the *Exits* of Rivers, making ſhew as of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, ſome *white*, ſome like the *Mulatos*, others like the *Negros*; diverſified in Habit, as well as Colour. Their bread made of three ſorts of *Roots*: without Government, but not without *Religion*; for they had their ſeveral *Oratories* and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in dayly wars with one another; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other weapons, but all made of wood. Of this Country, whatſoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took poſſeſſion in the name of the *Catholike* King, and ſet up both a *Croſs* and a *Chapel* in it; the Chapel dedicated to the *Lady* of *Loretto*.

The preciſe time of this *Diſcovery* I have no where found, but that the time ſpent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years, to the no ſmall endamagement of his health and fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his *Petition*, or any thing elſe done by others in purſuance of his *Propoſitions*. Whether it were on any of the reaſons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the *Baies* or *Promontories*, as he paſſed along; but either took ſuch names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for ſuch names as were given before (ſtill taking *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontorie called *Cape Hermoſo*, in the Eaſt parts hereof near the Ilands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Æquator*. 2. Another in the Weſtern part, but as near the *Æquinox* called *Point Primiro*. A third in the firſt bendings of the Coaſt towards the South, called *Cape de Buena Deſeada*, or the *Cape of good deſires*. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de S. Auguſtino*, on the Eaſt of Cape *Formoſo* towards the Streights. 7. The Rivers of S. *Peter*. 8. S. *Paul*. 9. S. *Andrew*. And 10. S. *James*, betwixt Cape *Formoſo* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of theſe laſt diſcoveries, and the greateſt certainty we have of that little, is nothing but a Liſt of names without any thing obſervable in the ſtate and ſtory of the ſame, they may ſtill retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I will try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Royes of *Peru*, and *Mexico*, or taking out *Commiſſion* for a new Diſcovery, will make a ſearch into this *Terra Auſtralis* for ſome other Regions, which muſt be found either here or no where. The names of which, 1. *Mundus alter & idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlant's*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. The *Painters Wives Iland*, 6. The Lands of *Chivalrie*, And 7. The *New World in the Moon*.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, another world, and yet the ſame, is a witty and ingenious invention of a learned *Prelate*, writ by him in his younger days (but well enough becoming the auſterity of the graveſt head) in which he diſtinguiſheth the *Vices*, *Paſſions*, *Humours*, and ill *Affections* moſt commonly incident to mankind, into ſeveral *Provinces*; gives us the *Character* of each, as in the deſcriptions of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it: and ſets them forth unto the eye in ſuch lively colours, that the vitious man may ſee therein his own *Deformities*, and the well-minded man his own imperfections. The Scene of this deſign laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Auſtralis*; the *Decorum* happily preſerved in the whole *Diſcovery*; the ſtile acutely clear, the invention ſingular. Of whom and his *New World* I ſhall give you that *Eulogie*, which the *Hiſtorian* doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, nec, poſt illum qui eum imitari poſſet inventus eſt*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country firſt diſcovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord *Chancellor* of *England*; and by him made a Scene of a *Commonwealth*, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the *Legiſlators* of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fancied by *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Tullie*, or any who have written the *Ideas* of a form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have took notice of already, as *viz.* his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making

New Atlantis.

making of those metals, Chains and Fetters for their *Malefactors*, Pans of Close-stools, Camber-pots, and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in mariages, by giving the parties a full view of each other, naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so *unpracticable*, so beyond hope of being looked on in the *modelling* of a *Commonwealth*, that we may reckon this *device* amongst those strange fancies, *quæ nunquam antea spe concepta, ne dum opere tentata erant.* The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the *Meridian* of this *Southern* Continents, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Iland of this *Southern* Continent discovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the learned Viscount of S. *Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas Mores* successors in the place of Lord *Chancellour*, but far before him in the Excellency and feasibility of his invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Iland of the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike invisible. But for his falling on this Iland, his description of it, the City of *Ben-Salem*, and the manner of his reception there, such handsom probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the *State* of the *World*, it would seem a *Reality*, but above all things, the inventions and designs of *Solomons House*, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving nature to the best advantages of life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errours (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded, *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*: not one amongst many thousands (to pursue that *Character*) *qui aut otium valdius diligat, aut facilius sufficiat negotio.* A man of a most strong Brain, and a *Chymical* Head. Who if he had been entertained with some liberal *Salarie*, abstracted from all Affairs both of *State* and *Judicature*, and furnished with sufficiency both of means and helps, for the going on in his *design*, would I am confident, have given us such a body of *natural Philosophie*, and made it so subservient to the publike good, that neither *Aristotle* or *Theophrastus* amongst the Antients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later *Chymists*, would have been considerable.

4. *FAERIE LAND*, is another part of this *Terra Incognita*; the habitation of the *Faeries*, a pretty kind of *little Fiends*, or *Pigmey Devils*, but more inclined to sport than mischief, of which old Women who remember the times of *Popery*, tell us many fine stories. A cleanlier and more innocent cheat was never put upon poor ignorant people, by the *Monks* and *Friers*. Their habitation here or no where; though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings to our parts of the World. For not being reckoned amongst the *good Angels*, nor having malice enough to make them *Devils* (but such a kind of middle *Sprites*, as the *Latines* call *Lemures Larvæ*) we must find out some place for them, neither *Heaven* or *Hell*, and most likely this. Their Country never more enobled, than by being made the *Scene* of that excellent Poem, called the *Faerie Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed so exactly by the Rules of *Poesie*, and representing such *Ideas* of all moral goodness; that as there never was a *Poem* more *Artificial*; so can no *Ethical* discourse, more fashion and inflame the mind to the love of virtue. *Invisurum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*, shall be *Spencers Motto*; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ILAND*, is an Iland of this *Tract*, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *History of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a *Spanish* Gentleman, imployed by his King in planting some Colonies on the *Streights* of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) Who being taken Prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some *Iland* which the *Maps* presented in those *Streights*, and might have been of great use to him in his undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Iland*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that *Map*, his wife sitting by, *desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an* Iland *of her own*. His meaning was, that there was no such *Iland* as the *Maps* presented. And I fear the *Painters wife* hath many *Ilands* and some Countries too upon the *Continent* in our common *Maps*, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. The *LANDS OF CHIVALRIE* are such *Ilands*, *Provinces* and *Kingdoms*, in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any *known* part of the *World*, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of *Writers*, who in describing the *Adventures* of their Knights, in despight of *Geographie* (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many *Ilands*, *Provinces*, and mighty *Kingdoms*, which as the ingenious Author of the *History* of *Don Quixot*, merrily observeth, *are not to be found in all the Map.* Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamants* in Sir *Huon* of *Burdeaux*; the *Firm Iland* in the History of *Amadis de Gaul*; the hidden Iland, and that of the *Sage Aliart* in S. *Palmerin* of *England*; the Ilands of *Lindaraza*, and the *Deviliſh Fauno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra* (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Archisilora* was the rightfull Queen) and many others of that kind in the *Mirrour* of *Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primalion*, and *Belianis of Greece*, *Parismus*, the *Romance of Romances*, and indeed who not of all that *Rabble*? Handsomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Iland* of *Barutaria*, of which the famous *Sancho Panca* was sometimes Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these books of *Chivalrie*) that they may be of very good use to children or young boys in their *Adolescency*. For besides that they

divert

divert the wind from worſe cogitations, they perfect him that take pleaſure in them in the way of *reading*, beget in him an habit of *ſpeaking*, and *animate* him many times to ſuch high conceptions as really may make him fit for great undertakings.

7. *THE NEW WORLD IN THE MOON*, was firſt of *Lucians* diſcovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conſcience, apoſtatizing from the faith in which he was bred. *Ariſtophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the firſt who found out this *New World* in the *Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his *Dialogues* a conceited *Character*. But of late times, that world which he there *fancied*, and propoſed but as a *fancy* only, is become a matter of a more *ſerious debate*: and ſome have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the *Moon*, inhabited as this is by perſons of divers *Languages*, *Cuſtoms*, *Polities*, and *Religions*: and more than ſo, ſome means and ways propoſed to conſideration for maintaining an *intercourſe* and commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the *Earth may be a Planet*, why may not this *Southern Continent* be that *Planet*, and more particularly that *Moon*, in which this other *World* is ſuppoſed to be? Certainly there are ſtronger hopes of finding a *New World* in this *Terra Auſtralis*, than in the Body of that *Planet*; and ſuch perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleaſure the later *diſcoveries* of *America*.

But I am no diſcourager of induſtry and ingenuity, which I love and honour whereſoever I find it. I know great *Truths* have many times been ſtarred upon leſs *preſumptions*. Nor would I be miſtook, as if in my purſute of this *Terra Incognita*, I put ſcorn on any of *ſublimer* thoughts; or that I would have any man ſo much in love with the *preſent World*, as not to look for another *World* in the *Heaven* above. It is reported, that in ſome controverſie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Muſcovie*, the King of *Poland* ſent the *Muſcovite* a curious *Globe*, repreſenting the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each ſeveral Sphere. To which the *Muſcovite* returned this unworthy Anſwer, *Tu mihi* Cœlum *mittis*, *Redde mihi* Terras *de quibus contendimus*; You ſend me *Heaven*, ſaith he, but that will not ſatisfie, unleſs you give me back thoſe *Lands* which are now in queſtion. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not loſe their part on *Earth* for all *Heaven* it ſelf. Whom I deſire, if any ſuch peruſe theſe Papers, to conſider, that as much as the moſt flouriſhing Country which is here deſcribed, doth fall ſhort of that *Paradiſe* wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, ſo much and infinitely more did that Earthly *Paradiſe* fall ſhort of the unſpeakable glories of the Kingdom of *Heaven*. To the diligent and carefull ſearch of which *Heavenly* Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of *GOD* which are here preſented, and that *viciſſitude* of Humane affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to ſome ſerious thoughts of that mighty *GOD* who made all theſe Works, in whom is no ſhew nor *ſhadow of change*. To whom be given all Glory, both in this *World*, and that to *come*.

Quicquid enim Lunæ *gremio complectitur Orbis,*
Permutat variátque vices, trepidóque tumultu
Æſtuat, & nunquam ſentit pars una quietem.
Nam ruit in ſeſe, & civili vulnere ſemper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alióque renaſcitur ore,
Rurſus ut intereat; ſic non eſt omnibus unum
Partibus ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Aſtriferi, *& nitidi ſublimis* Regia *Cœli*
Immunis ſenii, & vultu immutabilis uno
Perpetuum ſervat ſolida & ſincera tenorem.

The Verſes are *G. Buchanans*, in his Book *De Sphæra*. Which I thus tranſlate, and therewithall conclude this Work.

The *World beneath the Moon* its ſhapes doth varie,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarie
Long in one ſtate: but with it ſelf doth jar,
Kils, and is kill'd, in endleſs Civil war.
New form'd again, 'tis but to die. The frame
Neither of *Bodies* nor of *Minds* the ſame.
But *That above the Spheres*, the Heavens on high,
In which *GOD* reigns in glorious Majeſty,
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Alwaies preſents it ſelf in equal Grace.

Non nobis*, Domine, *non nobis, ſed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

FINIS.

A Table of ſome principal things herein contained, not properly reducible to the other two.

A.

Abades, a ſtrange beaſt, the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients 888
Abaſſines, by whom converted 976. their Heterodoxies and opinions *ibid.*
Abilene, the Tetrarchy of *Lyſanias*, where it was 701. 718. why reckoned *Luke* 3. amongſt the portions of *Herod*'s Children 701
Abydus beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, & in diſtreſſe, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewiſe ſlew themſelves 655. betrayed ſince to the *Turks* by the Governours daughter *ibid.*
Adamites, why ſo called, and what 450. by whom deſtroyed *ib.*
Adolphus II. Earle of *Berg*, ſhut up in an Iron veſſel, and miſerably ſtung to death by Bees 411
Adriatick Sea, whence it had the name 122. the great extent thereof in ſome ancient Writers *ib.* married to the Duke of *Venice* every holy Thurſday *ib.*
Adviſe of an old Caſique to *Columbus* 1097
Æolus, why made the God of the Windes 86
Æs Corinthium, what it was, how highly prized, and how occaſioned 587
Ætna, the violent burnings of it. 83. and the cauſe thereof 84
Africa, whence it had the name 931, 932. the eſtate of Chriſtianity in it, how much decayed. 933. the ſeveral languages therein ſpoken. *ibid.* The monſtrous things reported of it by ſome of the ancients 932
Agbarus, Prince of *Edeſſa*, his meſſage to our Saviour 789
Albigenſes, what they were, and why ſo called. 226. The ſumme and ſubſtance of their ſtory 225, 226
Alcoran, the book of the *Mahometan* Law, why ſo called 778. how highly reverenced *ib.* The Doctrinals thereof reduced, *&c.* reduced unto eight Commandments *ib.*
Alfonſine, Tables by whom compiled, and the coſt beſtowed in the compiling of them 272
Alluſion, of a *French* Gentle-man, concerning the cauſe of their civil broils 179
Almans, from whence ſo called, 396. of what ſeveral Nations they conſiſted 429. their affairs and ſtory. *ib.*
Almodad, the ſon of *Jocktan*, where moſt probably fixed 11
Aloes a precious Wood, worth its weight in ſilver 908. *Aloes Zocatrina*, from what place it comes 1001
Amara, a Mountain in *Æthiopia*, deſcribed 980
Amazons, why ſo called 145. their dwelling place *ib.* 848. the ſum and ſubſtance of their affairs 645
Amber, where it groweth, how gathered, and the vertues of it, 532. *Amber liquid* 1053
America, not known to the Ancients 1011. by whom firſt diſcovered 1012. 1013. the people of it not ſo black as the *Africans* 1016. that they are deſcended of the *Tartars* ib. The eſtate of Chriſtianity in it *ibid.* The ingenuity of the people in their Feather pictures 1018
Amethyſt, a precious ſtone, and the vertues of it 647
Amianthus, a ſtone whereof cloath is made 615. which ſtained, is cleanſed by fire *ib.*
Amphictynes, what they were, and of their Authority 593
Amphiſcii, why ſo called, and what they are in Geography 24
Amyclos ſilentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came 77
Amyris inſanit, an old proverb, the meaning and occaſion of it 77
Anabaptiſt cuts off his brothers head 165. their furies and proceeding in the Citie of *Munſter* 476. their demands in the inſurrection of the Boors 542
Anakim, the name of a *Gigantine* race of men, and why given unto them 729
Ananim, the father of the *Hamanientes*, an *African* people 13
Ἀναπαιδίζειν, an old by-word, and the meaning of it 617
Anchorets, whence ſo called 126 buried whileſt alive *ib.*
Annals, what they are 20. & how they differ from Hiſtories *ib.*
Anſwer, a feeling one of an *Engliſh* Captain to a ſcoffing demand of the *French* 179. a ſmart one of *Spinola* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* 68. of *Richard* I. to the Pope, writing for the Releaſment of the Biſhop of *Beauvois* 183. of the *Conquerour* concerning his impriſoning of *B. Odo* 192. of Dr. *Dale* to the *Spaniſh* Commiſſioners 765
Anticyram naviget, a proverb, and to whom applicable 593
Antipodes, what they are 24. The tenet touching them decided by ſome of the ancients *ib.* condemned of Hereſie in the darker times of the Church *ib.*
Antioch, the ſame with *Riblath* 694. its ſtory 696
Antoeci, what they are in Geography 24
Antonius Army in diſtreſſe, relieved by the prayers of Chriſtians 454
Apennage, what 177
Archery, where moſt practiſed in elder times 827. *Cezeremiſſi*, good Archers 518. the excellency of the *Engliſh* at it 827. whether Guns, or that that to be preferred *ib.*
Aram the ſon of *Sem*, the founder of the *Syrians* 9. 684. the large extent of that name in Holy Scripture *ib.*
Areopagites, what they were, and from whence ſo called 590
Argonauts, who they were, and whence ſo denominated 802 their expeditiou into *Colchis* ib.
Argoſies, great ſhips of burden, whence they had their name 554
Ariamnes, a *Galatian* feaſted the whole Nation for a year together *ib.*
Ariſtomenes, ſtrange eſcape out of priſon 589
Ariſtotle, the Precurſor of Chriſt, *in rebus naturalibus* 2. why he conceived the World to have been eternal *ib.*
Arius, the Heretick his diſſimulation and death 931
Ark of *Noah*, where made 788. in what place it reſted after the floud 788. 839.
Armadilla, a ſtrange beaſt in *America*, 429. the deſcription of it 1018
Armenians, in what point they differ from other Chriſtians, 799. how, and by whom their Church is governed *ib.*

Arms, why first used 62. by whom first quartered 259. why those of *England* give place in the same *Escocheon* to the Arms of *France* 321
Arphaxad, the father of the *Chaldeans* 9. first setled in the Region, called *Arrapachitis*, ib. and 787
Arroba, a *Spanish* measure, the content thereof 1044
Arvisian, Wines much celebrated 672. in what place they grow *ib.*
Arundel, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperour *Rodolphus*, and afterwards Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour*, by King *James* 544
Asia, whence so called at first 639. the several notions of the word, and in what sense used in holy Scripture 641. the estate of Christianity in it 640. amongst whom divided *ib.*
Askenaz, the son of *Gomer*, first setled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia minor* 14. 642. 654
Aspendus Citharista, a proverb, and the meaning of it 665
Assur, the son of *Sem*, where planted 9. 787. the *Assyrians* descended of him *ib.* why so easily conquered by all Invaders 794
Athens 588
Attila, the *Hun*, why called *Flagellum Dei* 217. 545. his bloudy end, *ib.* his Coat of Arms 549
Augur, and *Aruspex*, how they differ 793. whence they had their names *ib.*
Augustane Confession, why so called 428. by whom, and where confirmed 428. 432
St. *Augustines* tart reply to an Atheistical demand. 2. the Order of *Friers* by him founded 114
Augustus, or an Essay of the Means and Counsels, by which he reduced the Commonwealth of *Rome* to the state of Monarchy 44
Avi sinistra, what it meaneth, and the reason of it 793
Aulea, Tapestries, why so called, and by whom invented 656
Austrasia, what Provinces it contained, when first made a Kingdom 424. the story and Kings thereof *ib.*
Australis incognita, the vast greatnesse of it 1091: why not yet discovered *ib.*

B.

Babel, the attempt onely of some bold adventurers, and not of all the sons of *Noah* 16. the languages occasioned then, not 72 in number, as by some supposed 9. the stupendious greatnesse of the Project 785
Babylon 785
Bacchus, called *Mœonius*, why 659
Baleares, why so called 284
Baltick Sea, why so called 489. why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas *ib.*
Bathes not permitted by the Emperour *Adrian* to be used promiscuously by both Sexes 165. The inconveniency arising from that intermixture *ib.*
Battel at *Mutina*, and the successe thereof 147. between the *Sarmatians* & their slaves 515. 518. of *Keresture* 544. of *Lepanto* 626. the last betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, King of *Persia* 788
Bdellium, mentioned *Genes.* 2. 12. what conceived to be 819
Beaufort, why made the surname of the Children of *John* of *Gaunt* 197
Bel and *Baal*, whence the names derived 792. why called *Belzebub*, the Lord of Flies 727
Belerophontis Literæ, a by-word, the occasion of it 663
Belgæ, the valianteſt of the *Galls* in the time of *Cæsar*, and for what reasons 360
Benedictines, or *black Monks*, by whom instituted 115. their habit and increase *ibid.*
Berrie, abundantly stored with Sheep 205. *Charls* the 7th. in derision called King of *Berrie* ibid.
Bezar, the Soveraign nature of it 1018. found in the belly of a beast, called the *Vicague* ibid. that of *China*, and the East more excellent than that of *America* 864
Bishop of *Spalato*, his Levity, Apostacy, and death 553
Bishops coæval in most places with Christianity 36, 171, 175, 301, 488, 575, 710, 922. how, and why hated by the *Biscanes* 256. and the ill consequents thereof *ib.* Bishops not anciently interdicted from the Acts of War 709
Black Friers, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded 115. why so called *ib.*
Blind & *Lame*, mentioned 1 *Sam.* 5. 6. what they were most probably 733
Bos in Lingua, a proverb, the meaning and original of it 588
Botelius his strange adventure 887
Brachmanes, what they were amongst the Indians 878. their authority and course of life *ib.* succeeded in the first by the modern *Bramines* *ib.*
Bracca, what 142
Brachygraphie, or the Art of short writing, by whom first invented 921
Britain, from whence the name probably derived 294. not from *Brutus* ib. that there was no such man, proved *ib.* Southern parts thereof called *England* 295. Its plenty and ornaments briefly set forth *ib.* Plenty of Mines therein 297. and number of Parks *ib.* Its Seas stored with fish 298, 361. Quantity of flesh spent in one Citie thereof 298. Christian faith planted therein by whom 301. first peopled out of *Gaul* 307
Bucentaure 146
Burgundians, why so called 222. when first converted to the faith *ib.* their affairs and story *ib.*
Biscainers, some of their Customes 255

C.

Cæsar, the name at first of the *Roman* Emperours 59. after of the designed Successour *ib.* the unfortunate end of most of the 60. *Julius Cæsar's* escape at *Pharus* 924
Cæsar Borgia, son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, after divers changes of fortune where slain 251
Calais taken by the *English*, and retaken by the *French*, when 188
Cales taken by the Earl of *Essex*, 263
Caliph, the name of the Successors of *Mahomet* 780. the succession of them 780, 781, 937
Caloirs, what, and where seated 604. their number, and manner of life *ib.*
Cambyses his present to the King of *Æthyopia*, with the Kings answer return'd 985
Campi Catalaunici, wher 115
Canes sepulchrales, what 830
Capuam esse Cannas Annibali, a by-word, and the occasion of it 70
Capuchin Friers, by whom first instituted, and why so called 116
Cappadocians generally so lewd, that they grew a by-word 649. not onely morally wicked, but naturally venomous 650

Caracalla the Emperour slain by *Macrinus*, where, and upon what occasion 790
Capthorim to be found in *Coptus*, a Town of *Ægypt* 13. carried against all reason into *Cappadocia* ib. & 650
Cardinals, by whom first ordain'd 107. the Election of the Popes assigned to them onely, and by whose authority 146
Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* 689. mistook by the Gentiles for a God *ib.* The Friers Carmelites thence named *ib.* & 114
Carthusian Monks, by whom instituted 115. their strait kinde of life *ib.*
Casluhim, more likely to be found in *Casiotis* than *Colchis* 13
Centaurs, the fable of them, whence it took beginning 601
Chaldæans, great Astrologers 784. the name communicated unto all, who professed that Art *ib.* so called from *Chesed*, the son of *Nachor* 783
Charles the 8th. of *Navar* his strange death 253
Chaos, or first matter of the world, expresly by *Moses* in the names of Heaven and Earth 3. how described by *Ovid.* *ib.*
Chatsermaveth, the father of the *Chadromatite*, and *Indian* people 12
Chersoneses, what they are, why so called, and how many of them 484
Chimæra the Monster, what it was 663. and how tamed by *Bellerophon* *ib.*
Chorography, what it is 28. how it differeth from *Geography* *ib.*
Christians, where first so called, and with what solemnity 685. extreamly hated by the *Gentiles* 686. their persecutions and increase *ib.*
Christmasse sports in *Twelf-tide*, by whom first instituted 310
Chronologies, how they differ from History 20. by whom best performed *ib.*
Chus, the son of *Cham*, first planted in *Arabia* 12,772. His posterity (the *Chusites*) why called *Æthiopians* 772. mistaken for the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* 12, 772,985
Chusites, why rendred *Ethiopians* in our *English* Bibles 772. the Translation justified *ibid.* the actions ascribed unto them not possible to be understood of the *Ethiopians* of *Africk* 985. the mistake laid on the Expositors 772
Cimmerians the posterity of *Gomer* 14,180. first setled in *Albania*, and *Phrygia Major* ib. & 654. gave name to *Bosphorus Cimmerius* 404,842. In *Europe* better known by the name of *Cimbri*, the same with the *Cimmerians* 180.404. the *Cimbrick Chersonese* named from them 484. their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire, and overthrow by *Marius* 219
Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea and Land-forces of the *Persians* 665
Cinnamon, what it is, where, and how it groweth, & from whence so called 975
Ciphers, or private Characters for writing, by whom first invented 921
Carcassians, where they dwell 845. their opinions and practice 846
Cistercians, or *White Monks*, whence so called 115. by whom ordained *ib.*
Cities, by whom first built, and on what design 6. the causes of the greatnesse and magnificence of them 5
Citim, the son of *Japhet*, first setled in the Isle of *Cyprus* 15, 680, his posterity spreading into *Macedonia* 601, 605. from thence into *Ætolia*, and so into *Italie* 37
Climes, what they be, how many, and how distinguished 23
Cloves, where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them 918
Coa, and *Vestis Coa*, a light Garment much used by the Dame of *Rome* 675. the *Coan* Wine (*vinum Cos*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that Citie 674
Coconuts, a most excellent fruit, and of several uses 1001
Cochinele, a precious Die, how, and where it groweth 1044
Codrus his love to his Countrey 589
Colonies, why planted by the *Romans* 216. the number of them, and how distributed *ib.* whether more usefull than a Fortress *ib.*
Colophonem addere, a proverb, and from whence it came 658
Colossus of *Rhodes* 676
Commentaries, what they properly are, and how they differ from History 20
Constantine converted to the Faith, and on what occasion 60 his new Modelling of the Empire 62. of which one of the chief subverters *ib.* He cassed the Pretorian Guards 61. his Donation forged 109
Constance, the Council there holden 417
Consuls, when first ordained in *Rome* 40. who the first sole Consul *ib.* when the Office ended *ib.*
Cophti, the name of the Christians of *Egypt*, whence to be derived 922. their Tenets in matters of Religion, and Estate at the present *ib.*
Corybantes, the Priests of *Cybele* 621
Cosmography defined 28 the general Latitude of the Notion *ib.*
Cotys his rare temper in mastering and preventing passion 608
Cotton-wool, where it groweth, and how 694, 964. & *passim alibi.*
Council of *Trent* 434
Creation of the World, and the Motives of it 1. the concurrence of each person to it 3. the matter of it, and the Method *ibid.* how long since done *ib.*
Crete, things most observable there 622
Cretense mendacium 620
Cretensis nescit Pelagus, a Proverb, the occasion of it 622
Crocodiles their monstrous shape, and where most usual 924
Curetes, what they were, and from whence so called 596,620
Cuspinians happy guesse at the Arms of *Germany* 482
Cyprian women their Unchastity 678. The *Heroik* Act of a *Cyprian* Lady 682
Cyzicum besieged in vain by *Mithridates* 656. its glorious Temple 655

D.

Dayes observed as lucky, or unlucky unto divers men 99
Damascus, how situated 701. *Damascen* Plums, *Damask* Roses, and *Damask* Linnen, thence so called *ib.*
Damiata besieged and taken by the Christians *ib.*
Darius his fruitlesse War against the *Scythians* 843
David George a monstrous Heretick, and what his Tenets 383
Dedan the son of *Regma*, planted on the shores of the *Persian* Gulf 13
Delinquents, how to be proceeded with 72,73. gained more by favours than by rigour *ib.*
Despot the title of Heir apparent in the Eastern Empire 565. com-

municated to inferior Princes *ib* the Despots of *Rascra ib.* of *Servia ib* of *Bulgarea ib.*

Diaries, what they are, and how they differ from History 20

Dictators, what they were in the state of *Rome* 42. a Catalogue of them 42,43

Divination by Birds, and the kinds thereof 793

Diocletian deposes himself, and follows the Trade of a Gardener 553

Dodanim, the son of *Javan*, first setled in *Rhodes* 16,676. his posterity passing into *Epirus* 598. and there naming the *Dodonian* Grove 599

Dog-fish, how taken 386

Dositheans, a *Samaritan* Sect, and their Superstitions 723

Drake Sir *Francis*, how said to be the first that sayled about the World 1075. by whom followed *ib.*

Drahimira her cruelty 450. swallowed alive *ib.*

Druides, what they were, and from whence so called. Their chief seat in *France* 200. in *Britain* 351

Drusians, what they are 685. of their power and strength. 693

E.

Ecco la Tico, a scoff used amongst the *Italians* 144

Edgar rowed over *Dee*, by eight Kings 324

Edward the 3d. his claim unto the Crown of *France*, mistaken in our common Chronicles 178, 179. not prejudiced at all by the *Salique* Law *ib.*

Egypt peopled in probability before the Floud 933. some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have been before it *ib.*

Elam the son of *Sem*, where planted 9,816

Election of Popes 112,113. of the Dukes of *Venice* 127. of the *German* Emperours 481. of the great Master of *Malta* 964. the ordinary means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia.*

Electors of *Germany*, how many 480. by whom ordained *ib.* their Offices, and how performed *ib.*

Elephants their vast greatnesse, and docile nature 878

Elisha the son of *Javan*, setled in *Elis* of *Peloponnesus* 15 & after in the Isles of *Greece* 579. thence called the Isles of *Elisha*, *Ezek.*27.7.15.

Emir of *Sidon*, what he is 691. his power and strength 693

Endymionis somnium, a Proverb, the occasion of it 661

Enemies to be licensed flight 207. how to be dealt withall when they are in our power 73

Enterviews betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient 138

Epaminondus slain at *Mantinea* 581

Escurial 271

Esseni, why so called, their opinions and *Dogmata* 708

Etymologies, ridiculous of *Europe* 32. of the *Hugonots* 198. of the *Wallons* 361. of the *Lombards* 545

Ephesus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* 658

Epoche, what it is in account of time 20. the several *Epoches* in story *ib.*

Eunuchs, why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs 839

Europe, whence so called 32. the Original languages still in it 33

Exarch, what he was, and by whom ordained 93. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and succession of them *ib.*

F.

Fides Attica, a Proverb, the Original of it 588

Fieds, a barbarous custom among the *Scots* 331. abrogated by *K. James ib.*

Fig-Tree, why cursed by our Saviour 710

Fire, Worshipped by the *Lituani* 529. and by the *Persians* 817. carried in state before the *Romans ib.*

Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the Citie *Myas* 658

Flight, to be permitted an Enemy, and debarred a Souldier 207

Formalities of the Homage done by *Edw.* the 3. to the *French* King 215. at the Degradation of Priests 427. at the Investiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia* 439. of *Maurice* Duke of *Saxonie* 439 of *Albert* Duke of *Prussia* 534. of the Duke of *Moscovie* 522. at the admitting the new Duke of *Wurtzburg*, and interring the old 444. at the marriages of the Nestorians 787. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 862. at the presenting of Ambassadours to the *Grand* Signeur 810,811. at the Funerals in *China* 937

Forein Guard dangerous to a Princes person 937. as forreign Aids unto a Kingdom 938. on what occasions usually sought, and when most necessary *ib.*

Fornication and Adultery punish'd with death 542

Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they consisted 232. Their actions and atchievements *ib.* By whom converted to the Faith, and on what occasion 175. their Character 174. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 179. the vastnesse of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 232, 233. The name of *Franks* given by the *Turks* to all Western Christians 691

Frankincense, where it groweth, and how 773, 774. offered to the Gods 775. Frankincense growing out of the 454

Franciscans, or *Grey Friers*, why so called, and by whom founded 115. by the *French* called Cordeliers *ib.*

Frederick the 1. suddenly drown'd 667

Free Cities, what they are, how many, and in what Estates 403

Friers, and their several Orders 114. *&c.* in what esteem amongst the people 116

Fruitfulnesse of *Rhesan* 517. and *Podolia* 530

G.

Gabats, a Leprous kinde of people, in what parts they dwell 213

Galileans, of what stock they were 719, 722. scorned by the *Jews* 722. Their zeal unto Religion 709, 723. our Saviour called a *Galilean* 719

Gallican Church, the power and priviledges of it 176

Gaulonites, what they were 709. for what cause named *Galileans ib.*

Gentlemen of *Venice*, what they are, and in what esteem 127

Geography defin'd 21, 28. the benefit thereof 19

S. *George* the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr 658. his *Cenotaphium* at *Lidda* in the Holy Land 725. highly esteemed among the *Turks* 698. his bank in *Genoa* 140 made Patron of the most noble Order of the Garter 322

Germans, whence so named 396. how terrible at first to the *Romans* 404. their Original extraction 404. possessed of the Western Empire *ib* the power of the Emperours impaired, and by what means 408. now meerly titular 480

Geter,

Geter, the son of *Aram* planted in *Albania* 10,805
Gipsies, from whence they have both their name and feats 922
Gomer, the son of *Japhet*, first setled in *Albania* also 14. 404. of his posterity, see *Cimmerians*
Gothes, their Original, and first seat 502. their Kings before they left the East 503. their successes and affairs in *Italy* 63. in *France* 217. in *Spain* 248,249.
Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome* 276. by which maliciously, and unjustly persecuted *ibid.* their language not of such extent as in former times *ib.*
Gorthens 723
Guelfs and *Gibellines* whence so called, and when 131,449. the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence 131
Guelphian family, their Original 472
Guicciardine yielded by the Inquisition 109 and the substance of him in that place *ib.*
Guns, where invented, and by whom 399. not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* 865
Gyges, how he came to be King of *Lydia* 661. whence said to have a Ring, by which made invisible *ib.*

H.

A Letter ominous to the State of *England* 633
Hamath, or the Land of *Hamath* 693
Hanse-Towns, why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea 403
Harlots, whence used for the name a common Prostitute 192
Harpies, the Fable and the Moral 624,625
Hatto, Arch-Bishop of *Mentz*, devoured of Rats and Mice 417. So also *Popielus* Duke of *Poland* 535
Havilah, the son of *Chus*, first planted about *Babylonia* 12. called thence the Land of *Havilah*, in the second of *Gen.* 818
Havilah, the son of *Joktan*, first seated in *India* 12. the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Chavilah*, so called from him *ib.* 906
Hebrew not the primitive language 17. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ib.*
Hegira, the Mahometan Epoche 20. from whence so called 779. the unsteadfastnesse of *Scaliger* about it. *ib.*
Hellenists, what they were, and why so called 574,707. in what differing from the other *Jews* ib
Hercynian Forest, the beginning and extent thereof 404
Hermias the Tyrant sewed in an Oxes hide, and baited to death 756
Herodians, what they were, and from whence denominated 709
Heteroscii, what they are in *Geography*, and from whence so called 24
Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom first used 921. some particulars of them *ib.*
S. *Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born 544. the Order of Monkes by him instituted 114
History defined 20. the necessary use of it, and to whom 18, 19. how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. 20
Hock-tide sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named 318
Hollanders, their great strength at Sea 382. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of *England* 298. 361. their base cheat put upon the *English* at *Polerone* 919. and bloudy butchery at *Amboyna* 920
Holy Oyl of *Rhemes*, in what state attended 186. not so ancient as the *French* pretend *ib.*
Homers birth, how contended for 658. where born, and why call'd Mœonides 659
Huanacu, a strange beast, and the nature of it 1063
Hugonots, whence so called 198. Their great power once, and and present condition 176
Hul, or *Chul*, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first setled 9, 800, 802
Hydrography, what it is, and by whom best written. 28

I.

Jacobites, what they are, and where most numerous 789 their opinions 790
Janizaries, their institution and number 809. their Office and power *ib.* their insolencies and punishments 809,810. the likeliest men to carry the *Turkish* Empire, if the line of Ottomon should fail 913
Japhet, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Genesis* 9,27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical 33
Japyx, the name of the North-west winde, & why given unto it 75
Jarach, the son of *Joctan*, more probably to be found in *Arachosia* than *Insula Hieracum* 10,11
Javan, the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 15, 578,658
Jealousie a predominant passion amongst the *Italians* 67. as also amongst the *Moors* and *Spaniards* 242. the *English* little subject to it *ib.* 296. and the *Dutch* much lesse 361
Jesuites by whom first instituted 116. their vow of *Mission* ib. grown formidable to the Pope *ibid.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations 867. Chief Factors for the Kings of *Spain* 246. They and the *Presbyterian*, or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendaries of Christendom 116. expell'd *Georgia*, on what occasion 804
Jetur the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Itureans* 716
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* 678. expulsed out of *England*, *France* & *Spain* 762. in danger to be stoned every *Munday*, *Thursday* ib. The hopes and hinderances of their conversion *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by Christ 763
Islands, how caused 21. whether better seated than the Continent 22
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where setled 418. *Imperial Cities* v. Free.
Indians, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion 877. The submission of their Churches to the Pope 878
Indico, where, and how it groweth 886
Influence of the heavenly bodies on particular Countreys 17
Inquisition, when, and why ordained 245. the manner of proceeding in it *ib.* not admitted into many of the Papal Countreys *ib.*
Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties 428
Invention of Clocks and Watches 361. of Pictures in glasse, and laying colours in Oyl *ibid.* of Printing 384. of Guns 399. leather Ordnance 535. of wild-fire 630. of the Battel-ax 645. of Dice, Chess, &c. 659. of Tragedies 671. of Sayls for Ships 674. of Arithmetick and Astronomy 689. of the purple Die 690. of Chrystal glasse 691.

of Pastorals, Hour-glasses, Military Engines 83. of Comedies 84. of the Marriners Compasse 71.1015. of Tackle for Ships *ib.* of Letters and Ciphers 921. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Paper 925. of Watch-words 615

Ireland, why never Conquered till the reign of King *James* 347

Irish, their barbarous customes 341

Isthmian Games 586

Israel and *Judah*, when divided 738. the reasons why no more United, though some opportunities were offered 738. *b.*

Italians derived from *Citim*, the son of *Japhet* 37. so called from the *Ætolians* 37,38. by whom converted to the faith 36. their scandalous lives, how punished, and by what instruments 64

Italie the name at first of the East parts of the Countrey onely 76. communicated after to the whole 34.76. the Kings thereof after the ruine of the Empire 66. abandoned by the Emperours, and for what reasons 66, 67

Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *English* 424. not so miraculously sent as the *French* pretend *ib.* what she was indeed *ib.*

Joktan, and his posterity setled originally in the East 10, 11, 878. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 10. greater of their transplanting into *America* 878,1050

John Baptists head, how pitifully mangled by the Papists

Julius Scaliger his censure of *Hesiodus* controuled by *Veleius* 592. his base character of the *English* 299

Joseph Scaliger his singularity about *Nabonidus* 794. and *Darius Medus* ib. His unsteadfastnesse about the *Hegira* 779

Julian the Apostate where he died 786

Judges of Hell, what, and who they were 616, 621. and why so accounted of *ib.*

Justus Lipsius his unjust Censure of *Cæsars* commentaries

K.

Τὸ καυσὸν, a Proverb, and of whom intended 620

Κατασκιος, & Κατακεκλιμενος τοπος, proverbially used for a wicked person 648

Kings called an Ordinance of man, and why 5. who of them anciently anointed 252. how they take precedency 321. not to use their people to the wars 394. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen* 415. Kings but for twelve years, and then must sacrifice themselves 899. Kings subject to Priests, where 979

Kings evil a disease 152. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* 318

Knighthood vid. Orders.

L.

Labyrinth of *Egypt* 925. imitated by *Minos*, in that of *Crete* 621

Lachryma Christi 138. the expression of a *Dutchman* thereon *ib.*

Lady of *Loretto* her Legend 722. the sumptuosity of her Temple 97

Lamissus thrown an Infant into a fish-pond, found by King *Agilmund*, brought up in Court, and after chosen King of *Longobards* 546

Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called 34. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italie* 36. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ib.*

Lampsacus, how saved by *Anaximenes* when threatned by *Alexander* *ib.*

Laws of *Oleron* 230

League between *France* and *Scotland* 335. the condition thereof *ib.*

Lehabim the Father of the *Libyæ Ægypti* 13,632

Lemmers an infectious beast 494

Lemnia or *Terra Lemnia*, the sovereign vertues of it 614. how made and ordered *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*

Letters, the first Original, and History of them 921

Levites, why scattered & divided among the Tribes 735. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*

Libanus a famous Mountain, why so named 687. the length, course and branches of it *ib.*

Libertas prophetandi, what, and where most in use 525

Liburni the name of a light Vessel 554. and of such Chairs as we call *Sedans* ib. and from whence so named *ib.*

Lions 225. Its famous Mart *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Augustus* ib. before whose Altar exercises instituted of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence *ib.*

Lomi a strange beast in *Bohemia* 459

Lombards their Original and first Kings 545, 546. their affairs in *Italy* 64. the subversion of their Kingdom there 65

Lud the son of *Sem*, the father of the *Lydians* in *Asia minor* 9,659

Ludim the son of *Mizraim*, the father of the Ethiopians in *Affrick* 13. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *English* Bibles Jer. 46.9. *ib.*

Luther his birth 466. his first contention with the Pope 490. the successe and spreading of his Doctrine *ib.* & by what means especially 402. the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches *ibid.* the condition of their Ministers 403. their Rites & Ceremonies not much different from those in the Church of *England* ib.

Lysanias the Tetrarch of *Abylene*, whose son he was 701. why reckoned *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ib.*

M.

Macbeth his story 336

Madai the third son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Medes* 15, 814

Magi, what they were in *Persia* 817. Their esteem & power *ib.*

Magnes, why used to signifie the Load-stone by the *Latine* writers 1016

Magog the son of *Japhet* setled in *Cœlesiria*, and the Borders of *Iberia* 14,694

Mahomet his birth and breeding 777. his design to Coyn a new Religion *ib.* the causes of the great growth & increase thereof 779. his successe and victories *ib.*

Maires of the Palace, their institution and Authority 233. the Catalogue & succession of them *ib.*

Malefactors flying to *Geneva*, how punish'd 161

Man, why created unarmed and naked 4. the Image of God in him what it doth consist in *ib.*

Manly exercises allowed at *Geneva* on the Lords day 161

Marcheta mulieris, a barbarous custome of the *Scots* 332. whence named, and by whom abrogated *ib.*

Mares, why used in battel among some of the Ancients 570

Margaret Countesse of *Hennebergh*, delivered at one birth of 365 Children 384

Marriners Compasse, by whom first invented, and by whom perfected

perfected 71, 1013. erroniously ascribed to *Solomon* *ib.*
Maronites, whence so called, their Tenets, and place of dwelling 686. Their reconciliation with the Pope, but a matter of compliment *ib.*
Marulla her valour in preserving *Hephestion* from being surpriz'd by the *Turks* 615
Massacres, of the *Scythians* by the Medes 832,848. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates* 646. of the *Danes* by the *English* 317. of the *French* in *Sicil* 88. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 176
Mastick, what it is, where growing, and how gathered 672
Mastiffe Dogs, why called *Molossi* by the *Latines* 598
Mamalukes their institution, Office and power 937
Medusa the Fable, and true story thereof 1004
Melchites, what they are, and from whence denominated 686
Merced, an Order of Religious persons, their institution and imployment 598
Mesech the son of *Aram* planted about *Mons Masius* 10,800
Mesech, or *Mosoch* the son of *Iaphet*, setled amongst the *Montes Moschici* in *Armenia major* 15, 799
Mesha, and Mount *Sephir*, mentioned, *Genes.* 10. in what place they were 11,790.791
Message of *Waldemar* K. of *Denmark* to the Pope 484
Messene Servilior, a Proverb, the occasion of it 581
Minotaur, the Fable, and true story of it 623
Mithrideates, the Authour of the Antidote so named 646. the sum and substance of his story *ib.*
Miramomoline, what the word doth signify 958. the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco* 957
Mizraim the son of *Cham*, the father of the Nation of *Egypt* 13 134
Monarchy the nearest form of Government to that of God 5. The Monarchs of *Spain* 289. of the *English Saxons* 316. of the *Assyrians* 792. of the *Medes* and *Persians* 833
Monastick life, how accounted of in former times 116. whether to be preferred before a sociable 117
Money not the onely instrument of exchange in ancient times 982. by what names called, and why *ibid.* made sometimes of Leather and Pasteboard 1064
Monks their Original & increase 114. by whom first brought under certain rules *ib.* their several and particular Orders 114, 115, 116
Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars* 860. the Title of the great Emperour of the hither *India* 904. the Catalogue and succession of them *ib.*
Monument of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, with the answer of *Charls* the 8th. to a Courtier, who perswaded him to deface it 192
Montmorency, the family extinct 184
Moors, the lust of *Roderick* occasioned their coming into *Spain* 249. and the lust of *Magnutza* their expulsion thence 258. forced to quit *Spain* 267
Morses, or Sea-horses, the description, and use made of them 1024
Mosaick work, what it is 124
Moscovites, by whom converted, and of what opinions in religion 511, 512. from what Original they come 520. their goverment Tyranincal 522. the great Dukes habit, and Royal state 523
Mufuli, or *Mufrones* a strange beast 139
Musick, the several sorts and effects thereof 653. used by the primitive Christians in Gods publick service *ib.*
Myrtoum Mare, where it was, and from whence so named 674
Mysierum postremus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it

N.

NAmes fatal to some Kingdoms 632
Naphtha, the nature of it, and where most used 814,819
Naphtuhim son of *Mizraim*, where first planted 13,932,933. the name of *Neptune*, by some said to be thence derived *ib.*
National Animosities, to what cause ascribed 18
Navigation, the Original and story of it 1014. what Nations most famous for it in former times 1015. and who at presene *ib.*
Nemean Games, by whom first instituted, and on what occasion 585
Nethinims what they were, and in what imployed 731
Nestorians, whence so called 787. their Tenets in Religion *ibid.* Solemnities they use in contracting Marriage *ib.* much hated of the Pope, and why 789
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian*, and *Assyrian* Kingdoms 12,791
Ninive 788
Noahs seven Precepts, or the Precepts of the sons of *Noah* 708
Nomades, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated 848, 948
Noradine's gallant answer made to his Commanders 705
Normans what they were Originally 193, 495. Their actions and Atchievements *ib.* when first fixt in *France* 193
North-East passage, by whom attempted and pursued 1090. of the North-West passage *ibid.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ib.*
Nuns, why so called, and by whom first instituted 117. their particular Orders *ib.* of ill report for their unchastity *ib.* Nunnery of *Valdrude* in *Hainalt* 396
Nutmegs, how they grow, and where most plentifull 918

O.

OBits of the Saints kept as Festivals 608
Ocean the Collection of waters 87. the causes of it ebbing and flowing *ib.* the Etymologie of the name, and vast greatnesse of it 292
Offa's Dike 322
Oleum Mediacum, see *Naphta*
Olympick Games, by whom first instituted and restored 579, 580. where held, and who were Judges of them 579. All the Victors at one time of one Citie in *Italie* 77
Onomantia, a kinde of Divination 64. an experiment of it *ib.*
Ophir not the Province of *Sofala* in *Ethiopia* 991. where it rather was 11
Oracles which most famous 593. their ambiguity and decay 593, 594
Oratorians an Order of Religious persons, by whom first instituted 116. used for a counterpoise to the *Jesuites* *ib.*
Orders of Knighthood, of *Avis* 280 *Alcantara* 276. of the *Annunciada* 159 of S. *Andrew* 340. of S. *Anthony* 986. of the *Bloud of Lord Jesus Christ* 147. of the *Bath* 322. of *Baronets* 322. of the *Cresent* 800. of *Calatrava* 276. of Dutch *Knights* 539 of the *Poor ghive* 539. of the *Dragon* 549. of the *Elephant* 500. of the *Golden Fleece* 392. of the *Gennet* 298. of the *Gar-*

ter 322. of the *Holy Ghost* 139. of S. *Jago* 276. of S. *John* 765. Great Master, how chosen, his title 964. of *Jesus Christ* 280. of S. *Michael* 239. of S. *Mark* 129. of *Merced* 275. of *Montesa* 288. of *Nova Scotia* 340. 1024. of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers 238. of the *Round Table* 321. of the *Star* 238. of S. *Stephen* 135. of the *Sepulchre* 765. of the *Templars* 765. of S. *Saviour* 288. of the *Glorious Virgin* 129. of the *Lilly* 254

Ostraciſme, what it was, whence called, and with whom in uſe 588

Oſtrich Feathers, why, and how long the Cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* 329

Ovation, how it differeth from a Triumph 41. from whence ſo called *ib.* in what caſes granted *ibid.*

Ovid, why baniſhed into *Pontus* 569

Oxenham his adventurous attempt 1018

Oyſters grow on Trees 556

P.

Paiſants ſlavery in *Livonia* 526

Palms anciently uſed as a ſign of victory 934. ſet by the Chriſtians in Church-yards, and for what reaſon *ib.* of the rare nature of the Tree 934,967

Pamphyli, what they were 337

Paper, where firſt invented, and why ſo called 925

Paradiſe, where it was indeed 783. the ſeveral fancies and opinions touching the particular *ib.*

Paradiſe terreſtrial of *Ataaine* 824

Parchment, in *Latine* Pergamena, where invented firſt 656

Paris 185. never taken by force, why *ib.*

Paſiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought hiſtorical 621

Pathruſim firſt planted in the land of *Pathros* 13

Partition-wall, alluded to *Eph.* 2. 14. what, and where it was 734

Patriaciatus a new Order deviſed by *Conſtantine*, and what it was 63

Pelethites, who, and why ſo called 725

Pillenea veſtis, a by-word, and the meaning of it 578

Perſepolis 820

Petaliſme, what it was, and where moſt in uſe 85

Peter pence, by whom firſt granted to the Pope 118

Periſcii and *Perioci*, what they are in Geography 24

Phaleg, where probably firſt planted 10

Phariſees whence they had their name 708. Their *Dogmata*, and Authority amongſt the people 709

Pharos 923

Phaſelus, whence ſo named 663

Phileni aræ 945

Philippicks given by *Tullie* for the name of his Orations againſt *M. Antony* 595

Phut, the ſon of *Cham*, father of the *Moors*, or *Mauritanians* 14,940

Phryges ſero ſapiunt 653

Puts, what they were, and the ſtory of them 334

Pigritia, a ſtrange Creature in *America* 1018

Pied piper 560

Pigeons Letter-carriers 786

Piſarro his birth, breeding, riſe, and death 1072

Pledging one another, why firſt uſed in *England* 318

Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell 598

Pompey's ſucceſſull War againſt the *Cilicians* 668

Polycrates for long time fortunate, dies miſerably 673

Pope, or *Papa*, what it ſignifieth 104. Common at firſt to other Biſhops *ib.* the opportunities thoſe of *Rome* had to advance their greatnes 103. the means & ſteps by which they did attain to their temporal power 110. and ſtill keep the ſame 111. how eaſie to be made Hereditary 112. Their Forces and Revenue 113, 114

Portugals their Character 275. their Antipathy to the *Caſtilians* ib. *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *ib.*

Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat 934

Prædiction of the *Moors* conquering *Spain* 249

Pretorian guards, by whom inſtituted, and by whom caſſiered 61. Their power, the great Authority of their Captains 51

Presbyter John, the name of the King of *Tenduc* 860. erroniouſly aſcribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abaſſine* Emper. *ib.* The ground of the miſtake and right name of that Prince 986

Presbyterian Diſcipline, by whom firſt framed 160. and how after propagated 160, 161. The introduction of it into the Seigneury of *Geneva* 160. and the Realm of *Scotland* 332. why ſo importunately deſired by ſome in *England* 302

Prieſts of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance 735. who they were, whom they called the Chief Prieſts 710. of the High-Prieſt, and when made a ſaleable Office *ibid.* how *Annas* and *Cajaphas* were High-Prieſts at the ſame time *ib.* Their power and ſucceſſion after the Captivity 739

Printing, where firſt invented, and by whom 384. how much abuſed in theſe latter times 865. ſaid to have been long uſed in *China* 865

Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vulture 825

Proteſtants, where firſt ſo called, and why 400, 418. the whole ſtory of them 400, 401. the cauſes of the great increaſe of their Doctrines 402. their principal over-ſight *ib.*

Pſalms of *Degrees*, how many, and why ſo named 734

Pyramides of *Egypt* their vaſt greatneſſe, by whom built, and why 923

Q.

Quivira, a ſtrange beaſt there which ſupplies them with moſt neceſſaries 1035

R.

Rain falling turn to *Alabaſter* 1053. Rain obtained by the prayer of *Helena* 624

Rarities in *Egypt* 924. in *America* 1018. in *Nova Hiſpania* 1044. in *Chiapa* 1052. in *Peru* 1063. in *Braſil* 1079. in *Cuba* & *Hiſpaniola* 1097

Red-Sea, whence it had the name 776. how far extended by that name *ib.*

Regma the ſon of *Chus* firſt planted on the ſhores of the *Perſian* Gulf 12,775

Religion naturally ingraffed in the heart of man 31. how it ſtandeth in relation to the parts of the World 31,32

Retiredneſſe from the vulgar eye uſed by divers Princes 987

Rex Romanorum, what he is 408, 481, by whom, and for what cauſe ordained *ib.*

Richard the firſt, terrible to the *Turks* 690. taketh *Cyprus* 681. his ſpeech concerning the Siege of *Verneville* 192. is ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt* 208. the man

man that ſhot him ſet at liberty, and rewarded *ib.*
Riphah the ſon of *Gomer*, found in *Paphlagonia* 14
Rivers, their uſe, and conditions requiſite for Navigation 27. the banks of great Rivers how defenſible 655
Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth 853, 857
Rhamnuſia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemeſis*, and what *Nemeſis* was 588
Rhene, the Fountain and courſe thereof 362, 403. the ſeveral branches by which it falleth into the Ocean 362
Rochel 210
Rhodes taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent 676
Rhodian Laws, the rule in former times of all marine cauſes 676. and for how long they ſo continued *ib.*
Rome, of what circuit in her glory 101. the number of its inhabitants *ib.* the extent of her dominions 61. once made a Goddeſſe, and by whom 660. Her Revenues computed at 150 millions of Crowns 61. Her Empire ſubverted by *Conſtantine*, and how 62
Roman Emperors, the ſucceſſion of them 59. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Conſtantine* 60. and the cauſe thereof 61. their negligence and degenerate ſloth 63
Roſamond wife to *Alboinus*, King of the Lombards procures her husband to be murdered, why 65. her death *ib.*
Roy d'Ividot, a *French* by-word, the meaning and occaſion of it 192

S.

Sabaans of *Arabia*, the *Deſert* from what race they came 775
Sacriledge a Crime unpardonable even amongſt Heathens 594
Sadducees whence they had their name 708. their opinions and *dogmata* *ib.*
Salique Law, what it truely is 177. not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend *ib.* not at all was regarded by them, but ſo ſerve the turns of ſome Uſurpers 778. the inconveniences, and injuſtice of it *ib.*
Salmacida ſpolia, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 661
Salvages lately found in *Spain* 270
Samia vaſa, what, and how highly prized 673
Samaritans, what they were 723. their Religion, Tenets, and Sects 723, 724. how hated by the *Jews* and why 723, 726
Saracens, why ſo called 767, 770. their Character in former times 770. they reſort to *Mahomet* 779. their ſucceſſes, victories, and Caliphs 780
Sardanapalus an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treaſure 793
Sardanicus Riſus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 70
Scava's valour 599
Scanderbeg his life and ſtory 600, 601. what became of his body *ib.* & 555
Sclaves, or *Selavonians*, whence ſo called 557. Their affairs and ſtory *ibid.* given as a name to Bond-men, and on what occaſion 550
Schola Salerni, by whom written, and to whom dedicated 71
Scots, why ſo called 332. their proceedings in the Reformation 333. their Kingdom held in Vaſſalage to the Crown of *England* 339
Scribes, what they were, when inſtituted, and of what Authority 709
Scythians their Original, Antiquity, and Atchievements 852. Their expedition into *Media* 848. and ſucceſſe in *Lydia* 848
Sebe the ſon of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe* 11
Sebvians 723
Sela the ſon of *Arphaxad*, in what parts ſetled 10, 819
Selencus a great builder 695. his ſtrange riſe and fortunes 702
Semiramis 792
Seminaries for the *Engliſh*, by whom firſt erected, and where 186
Seneca's happy memory 244
Seriphia Rana, an old Proverb, the occaſion and meaning of it 619
Serpents worſhipped by the *Samogites*, and *Lituani* 529. the barbarous Cuſtomes of thoſe people *ibid.*
Sforza 144
Sheba, *Sabta*, and *Sabteca*, the ſons of *Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the puiſſant Nation of the *Sabeans* 12, 775
Sibyls, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt 931. not counterfeited by the Fathers *ibid.*
Sicula Gerra 83. *Veſperi Siculi* 88. *Siculi Tyranni* 87. three by-words, & the meaning of them.
Silks, why called *Serica* by the *Latines* 793
Silver and *Gold* where moſt plentifull 1064. the rich Mines of *Potoſi* 1069. how vilified by the *Utopian* 1064. the cauſes of the dearneſſe of things in our dayes 1065. not ſo advantagious to a State, as Trade and Merchandiſe *ib.*
Simeon the ſon of *Jacob*, how diſperſed in *Iſrael*, as his father propheſied 729
Soleciſmus, whence 667
Solomons Porch, mentioned *John* 10.23. where, and what it was 733
Sooth-ſaying, how many kindes thereof 793
Souldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the moſt part, and why 588, 589
Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for what moſt uſefull 378
Spaniards from whence they do deſcend 247. by whom converted to the Faith 244. The dependence of the Popes on the Crown thereof 246. their aim at the fifth Monarchy *ib.* the greatneſſe of their Empire, and weakneſſe of it 290. *Spaniſh* Nobility very ſerviceable to their King, why 291: *Spaniards* their cruelty towards the *Americans* 1017
Squilachi a theeviſh beaſt 666
Sterling money, why ſo called 333
Streights of Mountains not to be abandoned by the Defendants 667. the loſing of ſuch Paſſes of what fatal conſequence 655
Stukely, where, and when ſlain 956
Styx, a River of *Greece*, the uſual Oath of the Gods 581
Sugars, when, and by whom firſt refined 1003. what uſed inſtead thereof in elder times *ibid.* the great quantities thereof ſent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Iſle of S. *Thomas* ib. and from their Sugar-works in *Braſil* ib.
Syrian language, what it was, and of what ingredients 687, 709. when firſt made vulgar to the *Jews* *ib.*
Syrian Goddeſſe, what ſhe was 695. her magnificent Temple *ib.* the deceits and jugling of her Prieſts *ibid.*
Syrorum multa olera; *Syri contra Phœnices*; two Proverbs, and the meaning of them 694

T.

Tabacco, where most plentifull 1064. why called the Henbane of *Peru* ib. the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the vertues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1064

Tails of Sheep (and of no beast else) why used in Sacrifice 694

Tamerlane his birth and Parenrage 850. the summe and substance of his story *ib.*

Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tarteseus*, as some say, 15

Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 841. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 860

Taxus 139

Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differed from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* ib. the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610

Tenedia Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671

Themistocles banished his Countrey flies to, and is entertained by *Artaxerxes* 656

Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by *God* himself 738

Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607

Sr. *Thomas Moor* no friend to the Friers 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 973. his devise to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Utopians* 1064

Thracians their Customs 607

Tigranes his frankness 798

Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 809

Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621

Title of most *Christian* King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholick* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 280. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders* of the *Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basileus*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217

Togarma, or *Torgama*, the son of *Japhet*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

Tolosanum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning & occasion of it 217

Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1018

Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*

Traffick, and the story of it 1065. more advantagious to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*

Treason, how rewarded 544

Tragedies, by whom invented 671

Tree that withereth if touched 1054. beneficial Trees in *India* 887,1001,1058

Triumphs their Original and Majesty 41. in what they differed from an *Oration* ib. in what cases denied a Conqueror 41,42. when discontinued and laid by 42

Troy not besieged ten years together by the *Greeks*, and at last how taken 652. *Fimbra's* boast of taking *Troy* in eleven dayes tartly answered *ib.*

Tubal the son of *Javan* first planted in *Iberia* 15,804. the *Spaniards* how derived from him 247

Turks their Original and Conquests 806. their Kings and Emperors *ib.* Their persons, customs, and religion 808. Their estate and power 809, *&c.*

V.

Vaivod, the meaning of the word 261. the *Vaivods* of *Transylvania* *ib.*

Vandals, their first seat 944. their affairs, story, and the succession of their Kings 944

Vandois the same with the *Waldenses* 226. their life and Doctrines *ib.*

Venus, whence called *Erycina* 85. whence *Cytherea* 619. whence *Dea Cypr.* 678. whence *Paphia* 679. whence *Dea Cnidea* 662. the brutishnesse of the *Cypriots* both men and women in their Feasts and Sacrifices 679

Versoria in *Plautus*, what it is 1015. not used there for the Marriners Compasse, as by some supposed *ib.*

Victorie of *Annibal* at *Canna* 74

Vidames in *France*, how many and what they are 190

Viengue, a strange, but profitable beast among the *Americans*, and the nature of it 1014. the Bezar found in the belly of it *ib.*

Vina Massica, whence so called, and of what esteem 72

Virgils Fable of *Dido* disproved 943. his *Æneas* suspected 652

Ulysses not so far as *Lisbon* 275. the summe and substance of his story 628

Ur, the birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Mesopotamia* 790. that it was not in *Chaldea*, as by most supposed 791

Usurie, the *Genoese* much addicted to it 137. the saying of a merry fellow thereon *ib.*

Uz, or *Hus*, the Countrey and dwelling of *Iob*, whereabouts it was 768

W.

Wallons, what they are, and why so called 322,361

Whales their dimensions and vast greatnesse 878. how driven from the Coast of *Norwey* 494

White Friers, from whence so called, and by whom first instituted 115. called also *Carmelites*, and why *ib.*

Wolves destroyed in *England*, how 298

World, why created 1. How long since 3. Peopled before the general Flood 6. East parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* 16, 17, 881. called *Cosmos* by the *Greeks*, and *Mundus* by the *Latines* from the beauties of it 31. unequally divided in respect of Religion 31,32

Writing the Original of it 921, 926. and the several forms *ib.*

X.

Xeriffe, why used for the Title of the Kings of *Morocco* 958. the Catalogue and succession of them 959

Xerxes his numerous Army, *&c.* 613

Y.

Yeugh-trees why planted in Church-yards 934

Z.

Zaleucus his Laws 76

Zenobia, a most masculine Lady, her story 700

Zopyrus, his act 785

A Computation of the forein Coins herein mentioned, with the ENGLISH.

	l.	s.	d.
Hebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Ægyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sestertium of Rome	7	16	3
A Sheke!	00	2	6
Argenteus Mat 26.15.	00	2	6
A Draehma	00	00	7 ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	0	6	8
A French Crown	0	6	6
A Xeriffe	0	6	0
A Rix Doller	0	4	8
A Floren	0	3	0
A Frank	0	2	0
A Livre	0	2	0
A Gulden	0	2	0
A Spanish Real	0	0	6
A Sous	0	0	1 qo
A Turkish Asper	0	0	1 q
A Maravidis	0	0	0 q

FINIS.